An Accademie of Armory
OR
A Store House of Armory & Blazon
Containeing all thinges Borne in Coates of Armes Both Forraign and Domestick. With the termes of Art used in each Science.
By Randle Holme
Domum Tho: Simpson de civit: Cestr: Ald: et just: pacis
Printed att Chester By the Author

XUM

THE

ACADEMY OF ARMORY,

OR,

A STOREHOUSE

OF

ARMORY

AND

BLAZON.

CONTAINING

The ſeveral variety of Created Beings, and how born in Coats of Arms, both Foreign and Domeſtick.

WITH

The Inſtruments uſed in all Trades and Sciences, together with their Terms of Art,

ALSO

The Etymologies, Definitions, and Hiſtorical Obſervations on the ſame, Explicated and Explained according to our Modern Language.

Very uſefel for all Gentlemen, Scholars, Divines, and all ſuch as deſire any Knowledge in Arts and Sciences.

Every Man ſhall Camp by his Standard, and under the Enſign of his Fathers Houſe, Numb. 2. 2.
Put on the whole Armour of God, that you may be able to ſtand againſt the Aſſaults of the Devil; above all take the Shield of Faith. Epheſ. 6. 11. 16.

By *Randle Holme*, of the City of *Cheſter*, Gentleman Sewer in Extraordinary to his late Majeſty King *Charles* 2. And ſometimes Deputy for the Kings of Arms.

CHESTER,
Printed for the Author, M DC LXXXVIII.

THE

ACADEMY OF ARMORY,

OR,

A STOREHOUSE

OF

ARMORY

AND

BLAZON.

CONTAINING

The several variety of Created Beings, and how born in Coats of Arms, both Foreign and Domestick.

WITH

The Instruments used in all Trades and Sciences, together with their Terms of Art;

ALSO

The Etymologies, Definitions, and Historical Observations on the same, Explicated and Explained according to our Modern Language.

Very useful for all Gentlemen, Scholars, Divines, and all such as desire any Knowledge in Arts and Sciences.

Every Blue Jacket may by his Scutcheon, and mark the Colour of his Tailor's Nurse, or Nor on the Wrist, Lord or of Gold, that you may be able to plead against the Claims of the Devil, above all the Sight of Faith. Fabian. c. 11. 12.

By Randle Holme, of the City of Chester, Gentleman Sewer in Extraordinary to his late Majesty King Charles 2. And Journeytimes Deputy for the Kings of Arms.

CHESTER,

Printed for the Author, MDCLXXXVIII.

In Commendation of that Elaborate Piece of Heraldry, Intituled The Academy of Armory; *Published by his Loving Friend* Randle Holme, *Herald in* Chester.

NOne but thy Sire can faithfully Express,
What vast Expence, and Toyl Brought Thee too Press;
The Expence so Great, so Numerous the Days,
As Thee to a due Estimate may raise:
Days did I say, nor Months, but Years, and those
Not few, tho' well Imploy'd did Thee Compose.
A Work Herculean, in which thy Sire
Must Live always, tho's Vitals shall Expire.

H. Williamson, M. D.

In Commendation of that Ingenious piece of Heraldry, Intituled The Academy of Armory and Blazon; *Composed by my loving Friend* Randle Holme *Herald in* Chester.

SOme Strenuously their Wits do strain,
For the Alluring hopes of Worldly gain;
Many Sinister Ends that others make,
Of worthless Writings which they Undertake.
But this Unfolding th' Mystery of our Arms
In *Heraldry*, preserves us from the Harms
Which Ignorance, or dark Oblivion might
Involve us in, and make our Blazons Light.

J. Rock, Med.

In Praise of that Ingenious, and Chargable Piece of Heraldry, Composed by Randle Holme, *Herald at Armes in* Chester; *Intituled* the Academy of Armory.

KInd Reader do so much as cast your Eye,
Upon this Precious Piece of Heraldry;
Here you may See, both High and Lowe Armes,
Likewise of Honor, and Mechanick Terms.
And other Things, (I may make Bold to say,)
That ne'er saw Light until this present Day.
Of all the Books that hereto hath been Writ,
There's none of *Heraldry* compar'd to it.

T. Tillier, Typog.

RANDLE HOLMES.

A N A G R A M.

Lo Mens Herald.

THis Title *Herald* which doth thee adorn,
Was given thee soon after thou was born.
The Priest e'en at the Font sure could divine,
When he bestow'd on thee that name of thine:
He then foretold thy Calling and thy Fame,
And therefore he Wove *Herald* in thy Name.
Now his Prediction thou hast fulfill'd,
In *Heraldry* there none is better skill'd.
Thou'st drawn a Patern, that may others teach,
What they may aim at but yet never reach:
The best may see portray'd before their Eyes,
A multitude of most rare Novelties;
Which for a long time in abstruse did lurk,
But now appears in thy Laborious Work.
A Work needless of praise, to set it forth,
It self sufficient is to tell its worth.
The World's Indebted for thy great Expence,
Thou well deserves an ample recompence.
Thou hast out vi'd all those, writ thee before,
Succeeding Ages will thy Works adore.
I say but this, least I be said to flatter,
Thou art of all the best, *Caduceator.*
'Twixt *Mercury* and thee, there's but this odds,
Thou art Mens *Herald*, and he was the *Gods.*

By him who Eighty four years hath out worn,
Unfit for Rime, but more fit for his Urne.

Richard Blackbourne, Gent.

THE ACADEMY OF ARMORY, OR STORE-HOUSE of ARMS. In FOUR BOOKS.

LIBER I.

The First Book Treateth generally of the Rules of Heraldry as to the Honorable Ordinaries how they have been Anciently and Modernly termed, with the several Ways or Methods of Blazon.

CHAP. I.

TREATETH of the Original, and Office of Heraulds, their Colledge, and Fees.

CHAP. II.

Treateth of Shields and Bucklers, their various Names, of what made, and the diverse Forms of them, how used: and what Colours have been used in them, their Signification, and worthiness of one above another, and of the points of an Escochion.

CHAP. III.

Treateth of the Antiquity of Arms, and first Painting of Shields; the Colours used in Arms, and Rules of Blazon in General, and in Particular; with the several ways of Blazoning of Arms.

Of the Honourable Ordinaries, and their Composition according to their several Lines. As of the Chief, and its diverse ways of Bearing. Of the Pale; and Pile; the Gyron, and Canton; with their several ways of Composition.

CHAP. IV.

Treateth of the Bend, the Bendlett, and Cost: The Fesse, the Barr, and Barrulett. The Escochion, the Treasure, and Orle: With the Flanch, and Flasques, according to their several Compositions.

CHAP. V.

Treateth of all Sorts of Crosses, that are in Arms, and their Names by whom they are born.

CHAP. VI.

Treateth of the Cheveron, the Cheveronell, and the Couple Close: The Salter, and Frett: The Rundlett, with its Terms answerable to the Colour. Of the Loseng, Fusill, and Mascle. Of the Gutte, or Drop, and its diverse Blazoning. Of the Bordures, and their several Compositions.

CHAP. VII.

Treateth of Furrs, and Tinctures of Fields, according to several Forms and Shapes: As by Abatements, by Ordinaries, Per Pile, Pale, Fesse, Bend, and Per Cheveron. As also Tinctures of Fields by a twofold Ordinary, as Per Pale and Pile; Per Pale and Salter: &c. And also Tinctures of Fields by Obscure Ordinaries, as Barry Bendy: Loseny: &c.

CHAP. VIII.

Treateth of the File, and Lambeaux: Of the bearing of Ordinaries, one upon another; Between one another: By the side one of another; and Commixt. Also of Ordinaries Diminishing one another; And Piercing, or Fretting one another.

CHAP. IX. & X.

Treateth of some Sorts of Bearings, which are Omitted in the Former Chapters. To all the foresaid Bearings, are set down the Name or Sur-names of such Famileys, as have such Charges in their Coats of Arms.

LIBER II.

The Second Book Treateth in General of all Essential, and Created Beings, in whom there is either Life, or Motion, as Vegetives, Sensitives, and Rational Creatures.

CHAP. I.

TReateth of things in Heaven, as GOD the Father, the Son, and Holy Spirit, Cherubims, and Seraphims: The distances of the Heavens. The description of the Heathen Gods and Goddesses; Demy Gods and Countrey-Gods, and Goddesses. The Holy Order of Angels. The Infernal Order of Devils: And the Names the Devil is called by.

Of the Heavenly Sphere, with its Circles Names. Of the Planets, and how described; And the Signs of the Zodiak. With the Names of the Northern and Southern Stars. Of the Sun and Moon. Of the Element of Air, and Wind, with the products thereof.

Of the Element of Fire, and its Products. The Reason of the Change of the Moon, and its Eclipse; Of the Aspects, and their Characters: With some Terms used by Astronomers, and Astrologers, concerning the Celestial Sphere.

CHAP. II.

Treateth of the Element of Water, the Several Sorts, and Terms of Waters. Of the Terrestrial Globe, and Element of Earth, with its Products; Of the Four Parts of the World, and what Kingdoms, Countreys, and Islands, are in each Part.

Of Minerals, Metals, and Moulds. Of Stones, and Precious Gems.

CHAP. III.

Treateth of Trees of all Sorts, Shrubs, Dead Wood, and Perished Trees: Of Roots, Mushrooms, and several Sorts of Corn, and Grass.

CHAP. IV.

Treateth of all Sorts of Flowers, Leaves, and Herbs; with their Descriptions, and Colours. Of Fruitage, and Flowerage.

CHAP. V.

Treateth of the Affinity of Leaves; Also of Seeds, Pods, and Fruit. Of Some Trees before omitted in the Third Chapter. With the Terms used by Herbalists, about the Roots, Stocks, Leaves, and Fruit of Trees: With other Terms used by them.

CHAP. VI.

Treateth of the Affinity of Leaves, and Flowers, belonging to Herbs and Plants; With the Name assigned the Leaf according to its shape and form. Also such Terms as are given to Clusters of Flowers, according to the form they grow in. And Names to perticular, or single Flowers, according to their kinds. With Terms used by Florists and Gardeners; and the Instruments they use. Of the signification of Trees, Plants, Fruits, Flowers, and Herbs used in Coats of Arms.

CHAP. VII.

Treateth of the several Kinds of Beasts, and Cattle, the Terms for all their parts, when they are in Companies, according to their Age: Also Terms for there Engendering, and bringing forth Young. The Voices of Beasts, Lodging and Feeding: With the names of the Male and Female, of Beasts. The several postures of Beasts; how Termed, when standing upright. Of Horsemanship, with the Terms used about the Horse, as its Parts, Bones, Diseases.

CHAP. VIII.

Treateth of divers and various Beasts, Vermin, Lizards, and Amphibious four-footed Creatures. With the terms used, for the several ways of bending the Legs, and Arms in Heraldry.

CHAP. IX.

Treateth of several other Beasts and Cattle, Foreign and Domestick, the parts of a Bull and Cow; their Diseases, the Benefit and Blessing of Cows, Terms used by Cowherds, and Instruments used by them.

Shepherds Terms about Sheep, their Parts, Diseases, and Observations in them. Swineherds Terms about Swine, their Parts and Diseases. Hunters Terms, sorts of Dogs their parts, and Diseases.

Of Insects, Bees, Worms, Serpents, their Voices; terms about Bees and Honey; sorts of Flies and Butterflies, and of what Worms they proceed. Of the several terms used for the turning of Serpents Tails in Heraldry.

CHAP. X.

Treateth of Monsterous Creatures, Amphibious Creatures, and Bigenerous Creatures; of the Caterpiller, and several other sorts of Worms, and Insects, not mentioned before. The signification of Beasts in Armory.

CHAP. XI.

Treateth of Fowl, and Birds of Prey, with other Birds of the Woods, and Mountains, as also Domestick. Observations of Birds of Prey. Sorts of Hawks: The names of the Males and Females: and according to their Age: The parts of an Hawk, their Diseases, and the terms used by Falconers: And things used about Hawks. Of Cocking, and the terms used by Cock-masters, of Cockpit-laws.

CHAP. XII.

Treateth of several other sorts of Fowls, Foreign and Domestick: Also of Monstrous Birds.

CHAP. XIII.

Treateth of several Foreign Birds, with their Parts, and Members, as born in Arms, not mentioned in the former Chapters. The signification of Birds used in Arms; the parts of all Birds in General, inwards and outwards; with other remarkable things in them, and not in other Creatures. Voices of Birds, how termed in Companies. Of Poultry, and Terms for their Age. With the Explanation of Naturalists terms, in their Description of Birds.

CHAP. XIV.

Treateth of Fish of all sorts, their Covering, Form, and Shape; the Parts of a Fish. Of their names according

ing

ing to the Age, and how termed in Companies. As also of all sorts of Shell-fish.

CHAP. XV.

Treateth of other sorts of Fish, and some Shell fish, omitted in the last Chapter Of Monstrous shaped fish.

CHAP. XVI.

Treateth of Monsters of the Sea, and Fish of lesser knowledge, because but rarely seen. The signification of Fish used in Arms: The terms used by Historians, in the Description of Fish; Explained, as also terms of Blazoning.

CHAP. XVII.

Treateth of Mankind, of all the parts, as born in Arms: with the Chyrurgeons, and Anatomists terms used for all the members of the Body, inwards and outward: Of the Senses, and various Voices of Men: And Names given to the Male and Female, according to their Ages. Men and Women Metamorphosed.

Time in all its parts of Time, how severally described, or drawn into Emblems, and Figures; and other things depending upon Time, illustrated. Of Men punished in Hell.

The Emblems of the Faculties of the Mind or Soul; and the Passions, and a Description of them. Of the Diseases of the Body inward, and outward. The terms of the Art of Palmestry, and Names of the Lines in the Hand. And of several Words and terms used by Chyrurgions, and Anatomists, about Man's Body.

CHAP. XVIII.

Treateth of several things omitted in the Chapters of this Second Book, which are here added, and are to be transferred to their mentioned Places.

LIBER III.

The Third Book Treateth of Vestments for the Ornament of the Body according to Places, and Estates; with all the Instruments of the Liberal Sciences, or that are used by Mechanick Trades, and who beareth such things in their Coats Armor.

CHAP. I.

OF the Ornaments for the Head, as Crowns, Laurels, Caps of Dignity, Morions, Mitres, Infulas, Turbots, Hats, Hoods and Tanks. Ornaments for the Feet, as Hose, Startops, Garters, Shoos, Sandals and Broges, with the terms of all parts of them.

CHAP. II.

Treateth of Bands, Ruffs, Gorgets, Sleeves, Manches, Gloves, Coats, Dublets, Robes, Cloaks, Girdles, Scarfs. Ornaments for the Hands and Fingers, as Rings, Annulets, Bracelets, Chains of Gold, Jewels, Scepters, Monds, Maces, Virges, Swords of State, Crosiers, Rods, Crosses, Crucifixes, and Cruches. Purse of Estate, Purses, with the several Names, or terms given to each part of them.

Also all sorts of Coins, or Moneys, used amongst the Ancient *Jews*, *Greeks*, and *Romans*, and what value it beareth with our English Money. Also all our English and Scotch Coins, both of Silver and Gold: With the Names and Descriptions of all the sorts of Coin used in our neighbouring Kingdoms and Countries, Alphabetically set down; whether Brass, Silver, or Gold; and their value with ours.

CHAP. III.

Treateth of Emperors and Kings; of their Robes and Ensigns of Regality, the Ceremonies of their Coronations, Offices for those Festivals; and Officers and Servants belonging to the King's Houshold, with their Fees.

A Description of several Ancient Emperors, Kings and Princes; with the 9 Worthies. The Ceremonies at the Creation of a Prince, Arch-duke, Duke, Marquess and Earl: Of the Domestick and State Officers belonging to the Earl of *Chester*. A Viscount and Baron, and the manner of their Creations.

Several sorts of Barons, Knights: Orders and Statutes for Knights of the Garter, Officers belonging to the Garter. Creation and Habet of a Knight of the Bath. A Knight Banneret and Baronet. A Knight how made, and degrading of Knighthood: A Catalogue of the several Orders of Knights Secular.

The Creation of a King and Herauld of Arms, The Office of a Major, with the Officers of a City, or Corporation, and their Habits. The Lord Chief Justice his Habit. A Serjeant at Law his Habit, and Ceremony at his making. The Officers in the Common Law, and Courts of Chancery: The Chancelors. Doctors of Divinity, Civil Law, and Physick; their Habits, and Ceremonies at the receiving of their Degrees. The Officers in the Universities, and Degrees of Scholars, with their Habits: And of a Beads man, an Hospitaller, or Alms man.

Of the Esquire, and the several Degrees of Esquires. Of Gentlemen, and the several Degrees of them, and how made so. Of Yeomen, Freeholders, Pages, Servants, and Labourers: With the several sorts of them. A Countrey Clown, or Bore described.

The several Countrey Occupations, as the Mower, with what terms is used about Hay making. Thrasher, with several Terms of Husbandry about Tillage, Sowing, and Reaping; Thrashing, Winding of Corn.

Of the Huntsman, Courser, Forester, and Faulconer, with their Terms of Art.

Also the several Occupations in Cities, as Cooks with their Terms in Cookery; and how to send up Dishmeats in their Order, at Grand Feasts. Of the Baker, Tanner, Glower, Currier, with their Terms.

And the Butcher, with his Terms for all the pieces of Meat cut in the Shambles; either from, or in Beef, or Veal, Mutton, Pork, and Brawn.

With the Smith, Farrier, Gun-smith, Lorrinor, Spurrier, Gold-smith, Jeweller, Lapidarie, Pinner, or Pinmaker, Needle-maker, Tyn man, and Cutler with his several sorts of cutting Weapons. Also Pewterers, Founders, or Brasiers, Plummers, Card-makers, and Saddlers, with the several parts of a Saddle, Bridle, Pillion, and Side-saddle.

Of the Taylor, with the parts of the Doublet, Coat, Breeches, Cloak, Womens Gowns, Mantues, Wastcoats, and Petticoats. The Upholsterers, with their terms for the several parts of a Bed, and Hanging about a Room. Of the Semster, Laundress, Needle-work Mistress, with the severall terms of Needle-work.

The Shoomaker, with the names of *St. Hugh's* Bones, and the terms of their Size. And of the Embroiderer, the Joyner, Carpenter, Tallow-chandler, and Wax-chandler, Fisher, or Drawer, Angler, Water-leaders, Beer-Brewers, Malt-makers, Fletchers, Bowyers, and Stringers; with the terms used in their several Arts, and Occupations explained.

And the Hutler, or Huxter, Gardiner, Flax-dresser, with the Ordering of Flax, and Hemp: And Weaver, Cooper, Masons, Stone-cutters, and Stone-getters Potters, Rope-makers, Printers, Barbers, and Hat-makers, with the several sorts of Hats; and terms of Art used in their Misteries or Trades.

An Astronomer, and Astrologer, how they Reckon the Sabbath days throughout the year; to know the moveable Feasts in the year, and the time of the English Kings Reign, with a Calendar of all the Saints days, Jewish Months, with Evil and Good days for any Employ in the year. Of Geometry, and the names of severall parcels of Lands: Of Arithmetick, and how the Jews, and Hebrews, Romans, Grecks, and Arabians, used to express numbers; of casting up Summs by Counters, with several terms taught in the Art of Numeration; with the Description of several Antient Philosophers.

Of the Painter, Graver, Etcher, Glass-painter, and Glasier; And Men famous for Invention, and improvers of Arts. The Musitianer, with several sorts of Musick, both of Voice, Strings, and Wind; with their Musical terms.

The Crate-carrier, Porter, Tinker, Sowgelder, Bedlam, Chimney-sweeper: with what Instruments and terms they use. Of the Witchman, or Salster, the Sailer, with his Terms of Navigation. The Begger, Cripple, and Vagabonds, with their Canting Terms; the Morrice-dancers, with the several Terms used in modest Dances.

CHAP. IV.

Treateth of Holy, and Religious Persons, and Orders; as of our Saviour Jesus Christ's Birth, Life, and Passion, Resurrection, and Ascention; the Jews High Priest, with the terms of his Vestments, and manner of Consecration. The Bishop, his Election and Consecration, as in the Romish Church. A Dean, a Mass-priest, Doctor of the Civil Law, with the names of their Ecclesiastical Vestments.

Of the Orders of Monks, Friers, and Jesuits, their Rules, receiving into Monasteries, and Consecrations: Of the Election of Abbots, and their Consecration, the several Officers in a Monastery; the Places in a Monastery, and their Privileges. The Canons Secular, the degrees of Church Officers, their Vestments, and Consecrations; the Canons Regular, their Vestments, and Orders.

Of the Knights Templars, and Hospitallers, and their Rules: With other Ecclesiastical, or Spiritual Kts of several Orders, and manner of their Installing. Of Hermits and Friers of several Orders; with Pilgrims, or Palmers.

The Description of several Catholick Saints, and of what Countreys, and of what Trades they are Patrons. The Description of the four Evangelists, and twelve Apostles.

Of the Protestant Bishops, their Habit, Election, and Consecration: A Doctor of Divinities Habit, and how made a Doctor: a Minister or Parson, and a Deacon, how Ordained, and their Canonical Habits. A Master of Arts, and his Habit: Of Martyrs. Rhetorick, and Logick described, with some terms of Art used therein.

Also of a Lady Abbess, Nuns, and Religious Women of several Orders, and of their admission into the Nunnery, and Consecration, and Habit. The Description of several Women Saints, and of the seven Cardinal Virtues, and other Virtues. Also the Description of the seven Deadly Sins, with other *Wicked*nesses. The Sibylls described: and Poverty.

CHAP. V.

Treateth of several sorts of Countrey Men and VVomen, as the *Islander*, *Russian*, *Moscovian*, *Tartarian*, *Polander*, *Jew*, *Turk*, *Roman*, *Irish*, *Egyptian*, *Chinensian*, *Arabian*, *English*, *French*, *Spanish*, *German*, *Brittaine*, *Indian*, *Morocco*, *Bristilian*, *Virginian*, &c. with their Habits, Religion, and Climate of the Countrey; the Description of the nine VVorthy VVomen. Apparel now used by VVomen.

Of a Queen, Lady, Virago, or an Amazon, a VVoman, and Maid, a Shepderdess. The Salutation, with its Honours described. Of VVrestling, and the terms used therein. Labour in Vain, with other Bearings both of Men and VVomen, both in Coats and Cognizances of Persons and Houses.

In the Additional Plate, is described more sorts of Crowns, also of some *Hoods*, Caps, and other Ornaments for the *Head*, with Garter, and Boots: which should have been incerted in *chap.* 1. Also to *chap.* 2. add some Variety of *Sleeves*, or Maunches, anciently and now in use.

Of the Description of the Liberal Art or Science of Grammar, with some terms belonging thereunto. Of the Merchant, with several terms about Weights, and Merchandize Goods; the Bricklayers Tools, and the terms used in their Trade.

The Billiard Play, and what terms they use therein. Chess Play, and its terms. Tennis Play, and terms used in that Exercise. The Slater, his Tools, and the terms for Slates. The Carter, and his Gee-wo terms.

The Thrower, or Turner, with their terms. Also certain Heads, and Faces, which should have been in *chap* 3. Of the Roper, and Upholsterer, their tools or working Instruments, with their several Parts and Members, how termed.

CHAP. VI.

Treateth of all the Instruments of Huswifery, and Spinning of Wool, Flax, or Hemp, and Jarsey; with the Names of all the parts of the said Instruments. Also the Working Tools of a Weaver, Fuller, Sheerman, or Clothworker, Taylor, Hatmaker, Shoomaker, Baker, Butcher, Cook, or Victualler, Cooper, Beer-brewer, and Water-carrier; with the parts of a Pump, and the several sorts of them.

CHAP.

CHAP. VII.

Treateth of Smiths Tools, with several Iron-works made by them, their names, and terms for their several Parts, and Members. The Farriers, Spurriers, and Lorrillers Tools, and VWorks made by them: As also the Glaziers, Imbroiderers, Goldsmiths, and the Plummers Tools to work with. And Instruments of Punishment for offending persons, according to the degree of the Crime.

In the Second Plate of this *Chapter*, is the description of some Tools of Trades omitted in the two former Chapters, *viz.* of the Butchers, Bakers, White-coopers, Beer-brewers, Smiths, Lock-smiths, Farriers, Spurriers, Lorrillers, Plummers, and Instruments for Punishment. Also some few things belonging to Husbandry, omitted in the Subsequent Chapter 8.

CHAP. VIII.

Treateth of the Tools, and Instruments of Husbandry, as Plowing Reaping; also such as belong to the Dairy, Stable, Cow-house, and Pasture. The things about Water and Wind Mills. Tools belonging to a Bricklayer, Mason, Pavier, Slater, and Plasterer; of Chariots, Coaches, Sedans, Selashes, and Horse-litters. Of the Saddle, with the terms belonging to each Part of it, the several sorts of Saddles, with the Sadlers tools which he works withall.

In the Second Plate of this Chapter, is the description of some Tools omitted in *Chap. 6.* belonging to the VWeavers, Clothworkers, and Shoomakers: with a further Procession of Tradesmens Tools, as the Tanners, Fletchers, Curriers, Joyners, Carpenters and their Engines, for drawing of great Pecces; Turners in wood, Brass, Ivory, or with the Engine: the Dry Glover. And Geometrical Instruments, to be added to them in the next Chapter.

CHAP. IX.

Treateth further of Joyners, and Carpenters Tools; and such as belong to the Limner, or Painter; the wet Glover, Stationer, and Book binder: Instruments for the measuring of Lands, with certaine terms given to several Geometrical Lines, and Cubical Bodies.

In the second Plate of this Chapter, is the Tools belonging to a Pewterer, Jeweller, and Lapidary; also the working Instruments of a Comb maker, Card maker, Glasier, Felt-maker, Needle-maker, Inkhorn-maker, and Lanthorn-maker.

In the third Plate of this Chapter, it treateth of the omission of some Tools belonging to Husbandry, and Millery; the Mason, Slater, Bricklayer, Plasterer, & Sadler, in Chapter 8. As also of som Chyrurgions Instruments, and Edifices, omitted in the following Chapters. 10, 11, 12.

CHAP. X.

Treateth of the *Roman, Saxon, German, High Dutch French, Italian, Spanish, Greek*, and *Hebrew* Letters, with their Accents; with the ancient *British* Characters.

Of the *Romans* notes of Antiquity, and Numbers, and how expressed by Letters. Also the Breviation of VWords anciently used in old VWritings, explained.

In the Plate of Letters in this Chapter, placed *f lio. 416 a*. It treateth of the Secretary, or mixt Letters; Chancery, or Sett Hand, and Court Hand writting, with the right Pronouncing of the English, Dutch, and French, *&c.* Letters. Also the Alphabets, of the *Goths, Celts, Normans, Franks, Irish, Manks, Phenice, Egypt, Turky, Ancient Greeks, Ethiopia, Phrigia, Illyrick, Slavonia, Croatick, Dalmatia, Israel, Samaria, Chaldia, Syriack, India, Sarjinia, Armenia, and Arabia*, and how pronounced.

CHAP. XI.

Treateth of the Instruments belonging to a Barber, and a Chyrurgion; with Vessels, and other usefull Instruments for Distillation, or Squeezing out of Oyls, and Liquors.

CHAP. XII.

Is a Continuance of Chyrurgions Instruments: Also Instruments for Leger de main, or Art of Juggleing. And of Dweling places, as Huts, Tents, Tabernacles, Houses, Towers, Cities.

CHAP. XIII.

Is a Continuance of several Forms of Towers, Castles, VWalls, Arches, Churches, Chappels, Cathedrals; with the Bells, Alters, Fonts, and other Utensils belonging to the Jewish and Christian Churches. VWith all the terms of Art given to all parts of a Pillar, according to the five Orders.

The second Plate of this Chapter, Treateth of some other sorts of Buildings of Towers, VWalls, Pillars, and Castles. To which is added several sorts of Knots, and interlacing of Lines, and Fretting of Angles, with other Extravagant Things, found in Coats of Arms: which could not fitly be set under any head, or order; therefore as *Heteroclites*, are set by themselves.

Thus far have I with much Cost and Pains, caused to be Printed for the publick benefit; what remains (and is ready for the Press) is as followeth in the succeeding Contents: which if encouraged by Liberal and free Contributers, may appear in the World, else will sleep in the Bed of its Conception, and never see the Glorious Light of the Sun.

The

The Second Part of the Third Book Treateth of Houſhold Goods, Inſtruments of Recreation, Arms Offenſive and Defenſive, Field Fights, &c. With ſeveral other ſorts of Mecanical Impliments, by which it is concluded.

CHAP. XIV.

TReateth of all ſorts of Goods belonging, and uſeful for a Houſe, and Family; and are neceſſary for a Kitchin, Hall, Parlour, or Lodging-room.

CHAP. XV.

Treateth of all ſorts of writing Inſtruments, Scrowls, Papers, Books, Libraries. Alſo ſuch things as are neceſſary for Navigation, as Boats, Lighters, Ships, and Fire-ſhips with Men-of-war: with all the terms given to an Anchor, Mats, Sails, Riggings, and every Part of a Ship, inward, and outward: The Names of all ſorts of Boats, and Ships, with the terms of the Irons about them: with the Sailers Terms, when they are about Sailing: or Sea Fights.

CHAP. XVI.

Treateth of ſeveral ſorts of Muſical Inſtruments, both of VVind, and String Muſick: And ſuch as are plaid on by the Hands, or with Sticks. Things for Gaming, as Cards, Dice, Tables, Tennis, Hunting, Birding, Hawking, Fiſhing and VValking: VVith the Names, and terms belonging to each part of the aforeſaid Inſtruments, and of their manner of Plays and Exerciſes.

In the Second Plate of this Chapter, is an Addition of ſome few things that ſhould have been in Chap. 14. about Houſhold Goods: And in Chap. 15. amongſt things belonging to Shipping, and to be added to this Chapter unto the Inſtruments for Hunting, Birding Fiſhing, and Cheſs, and to be as a Supplement to the ſucceeding Chap. 17, 18, 19. Of ſome Offenſive and defenſive Weapons, and Souldiers: Alſo of the manner of Fortifying of Cities, and great Towns with Walls, or Bulwarks, with the terms uſed by Souldiers in their Fights, Sieges, Marching, Encampings: With Ingineers terms, for all the parts of Mudwall Fortifications.

CHAP. XVII.

Treateth of Offenſive and Defenſive Arms, as Armour, from head to foot, and how each part is termed: Of Spears, Lances, Bows and Arrows, Clubs, Bills, *Halberts*, with ſuch like; with the Names of every Part and Member of the ſaid ſeveral Warlike Weapons.

CHAP. XVIII.

Treateth of all ſorts of flying Field-Colours, as the Standard, Enſign, Penon, Banner and Guydon. Leading Staves, Swords, Rapiers, Fauchions; with great and ſmall Artillery and Engines for Battery, with all the parts, and terms uſed about the ſame, in every branch and member thereof, and the things belonging to them.

CHAP. XIX.

Treateth of men at Arms, and the words of Command and Poſture for the Pike, Pike and Target, Musket, the ſeveral Beatings of the Drum, the Offices of Souldiers from the loweſt to the higheſt Commander. The terms for carrying, and diſplaying of an Enſign, the *Honour*, and Dignity of an Enſign.

The Play at Foils, or Rapier, with the terms uſed at it, and Sword play: with neceſſary things fit to be known in the Art of Defence. The Names and Places of all the *Roman*, *Greek*, and *Engliſh* Army-Officers, from the firſt to the laſt in Command. The 6 Points of War ſounded by the Trumpet. The manner of Muſtering, and the way of *Horſe*-firing, and Office of all *Horſe*-Officers, from firſt to laſt.

Of Combats or Duels for Life, the ancient manner of Challenges, in what Cauſes to be denied, preparations for it, and the manner of the Combatants coming to the Field, the Victors manner of Return. The original of Tilts and Tourneyments, the Exerciſe and Prize. Barriers, and the manly Exerciſe thereof, who admitted to theſe *Heroick* Exerciſes.

Terms for the Riding, and Exerciſe of the War-horſe, Race-horſe, and *Hackney*. The Exerciſe, Motions, Words of Command therein, and their manner of Fireing, and Fighting: Of the uſe of Iron Chariots, Wheels, and Elephants in War. The manner of Exerciſeing the Foot Company, with the terms given to each part of it, being drawn up into a Body: Of Diſtances, Facings, Doublings, Converſions, Countermarches, Wheelings; with Obſervations upon all Motions.

Of the Marching, Imbattailing, Encamping, of an Army; both by the *Greeks*, *Romans*, and our Modern Armies: Of the Name and term given to the ſeveral parts, or diviſions of an Army. Of the manner of Fireing both by Forlorns, Ranks Diviſions, Vollies, *&c.* Of Victory, and of the *Greek* and *Roman* manner of Triumphs after Victory: and Gifts and Rewards given to Souldiers for valour and ſervice.

Of Souldiers Puniſhments; with brief diſcourſes of the Souldiers Priviledges, Wages, Donatives, Apparel, *Hoſtages*, Priſoners, Reſcues, Paroles, Leagues, and Allies, Treaties, Enemies, Ambaſſadors, and Diſmiſſions, or Disbanding after Wars

In the ſecond Plate of this Chapter, Treateth of ſome ſorts of Armor both Defenſive and Offenſive, uſed by the Ancient *Romans*, and in our modern times, ſince the uſe of Fire-Arms. Inſtrument belonging to a Gardiner; a Wax and Tallow Chandler, and the Lanthorn-maker. With ſeveral other Tools and Inſtruments belonging to Trades formerly omitted and therefore ſet in this place.

CHAP. XX.

Treateth of the Inſtruments belonging to a Silk Weaver, Button-maker, Printers of Books, Letter Founders, Pin-makers, and Plate-workers, with ſome Caſtles, and *Heatheniſh* Temple, Alters or Tables, uſed by thoſe people before Chriſtianity.

CHAP. XXI.

Treateth of ſuch Inſtruments as are uſed by Tin-men, or workers of Tin Plate; Braſs Founders, Cutlers, Tobacco pipe-makers, and Tobacco cutters, with their cutting Engine, Preſſes, Mill, and Wheel. Alſo Tools belonging to a Paſtry-Cook; and ſuch as are uſed about Angleing and Fiſhing, with ſeveral ſorts of Nets, *Hooks*, and Decoying Wills. And in the end, thoſe that belong to the Sope-Maker, and Sugar-Boiler.

LIBER

LIBER IV.

The Fourth Book Treateth of the Art of Blazon, both of Single and Double Coats, according as the Charges are interposed with the Ordinaries, or the Ordinaries with them; of Impaleing, and Marshalling of Coats, according to the Degrees of Persons. Badges of Kingdoms; Orders and Processions of State, and at Coronations: The Solemnizing of Funerals, with Precedency of Persons.

CHAP. I.

TReateth of Coats of single Charges, and so proceeding to the Number ten: how Blazoned when Charges are in place of the Ordinaries, on, or between them: or if they be interposed with the Charges: or if confusedly commixt one with another.

CHAP. II.

Treateth of Examples of Coats, which have Variety of Ordinaries, and Charges, in one and the same Bearing. Also of Coats, which are Charged with Variety of Charges, without any Ordinaries interposing.

CHAP. III.

Treateth of the Marshalling part of Heraldry, which is to impale Coats together, as Baron and Femme; or according to the Functions of Persons, putting the Spiritual and Temporal Coats together. Also of Quartering of Coats, according to the number of *Heirs* Married withal; or else according to Coats by the Gift of Princes. And lastly assigning to each Family his due difference, as there are branched out of the main stock, or *House*: giving such those Rebatements of *Honor*, who have carried themselves according to their Significations.

CHAP. IV.

Treateth of the Adorning of Arms above the Escochion, that is with Crown, Miters, Caps, or *Hats*, according to the degrees of Persons. Of the several ways Crests have been born, and in what, before the use of Wreaths: And of the variously contriving of Crests, contrary to simple Charges, of which there is set down many Examples, of things between; things pierced, and things held, or supported, by Crests.

CHAP. V.

Treateth of Beasts in several Postures, Arms diversly bended, Demy-Persons, and in whole, in various Actions: and lastly, several things mixt together for one Crest.

CHAP. VI.

Treateth of the Marshalling of Coats, by adorning them about, either with Compartments, Garters, Collars of Esses, Scarffs, Branches; or else on the side of the Escochions, which is by Supporters, Swords, Feathers, Crosiers, and Crosses; or else by things under the Escochion by Escrowles, Badges of *Honor*, and Emblems, of such Persons, Places, and Dignities. And in the last place, giving Examples of Mantlings, both Ancient and Modern, according to the Degrees, and Offices of Persons, whether Spiritual or Temporal.

CHAP. VII.

Treateth of several Forms of Supporters, composed of, and from divers Proportions; or Examples of divers Antique Supporters, drawn forth according to the Fancy of the Bearers.

CHAP. VIII.

Treateth of the Marshalling of whole Atchievements, due and belonging to each Degree, from the Peasant to the Prince; with all their Titles of Worship, *Honor*, and Dignity; with the Blazon, of all the Coats of the Nobility of *England*, in their several Degrees, with their Crests and Supporters.

CHAP. IX.

Treateth of the Badges, or Tokens of Kingdoms, whereby one is known, or distinguished from the other: the Ensigns, or Banners of all the European Kingdoms, displayed in their proper Colours: the Ensigns, or Coat, or Seals, of the Cities and Towns Corporate in *England*, Blazoned; the Badges of *Houses*, as University Colledges, *Halls*, Inns of Courts, *Abbies*, and such like.

CHAP. X.

Treateth of the Badges of Princes, and Noble Persons, with the Tokens, and Cognizance of their Offices, Degrees, and Orders: both Military and Civil, Spiritual and Temporal. The Signs, Marks, and Tokens of Armies, distinguishing of Regiments, and Companies, that each Souldier may know his Leader and Company. Also the Coats and Cognizance of *Trades*, and *Tradesmen*; with the Mark used by Merchants, and such as *Traffick* beyond Seas.

CHAP. XI.

Treateth of the Orders, and Processions of great Persons Baptized, with the Ceremonies attending such magnificent Solemnities. Also of the Order and Manner of the Solemnization of Marriages of great Personages; several Presidents of such described.

CHAP. XII.

Treateth of the Pompous Progression, and Ceremonies of several great Princes, and Potentates, at their Inauguration, and Crowning; and of divers Kings and Queens riding in Triumph through the City of *London*, before their Coronations; their going to Parliament; with several other Processions of State, both in this Kingdom, and in other Foreign Places: with the Feasts and Banquets used at the time of such Ceremonies. Also of the Precedency of all Orders, and Dignities, according to their Office, and Place and Birth.

CHAP. XIII.

Treateth of Funerals for all degrees of Persons, as of Gentlemen, Esquires, Knights, and Baronets; the manner of Foreign Funerals, both Ancient, and Modern; as *Jews*, *Greeks*, *Romans*, &c.

CHAP. XIV.

Treateth of the Funerals of a Baron, Viscount, Earl, a Bishop, and Arch-bishop; with Persons in high Offices, and Places of great Dignity; with the Form, and Descriptions of *Hearses*, Monuments, and Trophies of *Honour* set over them.

CHAP. XV.

Treateth of the Funeral of a Marquess, Duke, Prince, or any Great Potentate: the Forms of ther *Hearses*, with other Funeral Ceremonies, with which all is concluded.

Post Funera nihil.

IN

IN LAUDEM AUTHORIS.

READER observe, and here you'l plainly See,
The Labyrinthean knots of *HERALDRY*;
Clearly unty'd, and that laid ope' to view,
Which other Writers but till now ne'er knew.
So that if e're you doubt, you need not look
In any other, but in *HOLMES* his Book.

Tho. Simpson, Jun.

In Laudem operis Elaborati Patris Charentissimi Ranulphi Holme, *Nominati* Academia Armorum.

WHAT Art, Labour, Wit, Industry contriv'd,
In former ages is herein reviv'd;
Things long hid is brought to light again,
For the Lovers of Arts, them to attain.
By them Accepted will most kindly be,
Though others it contemn I plainly see.
FOR
Haply thy Appetite likes not that thing,
Speaks of *Honor*, and lasting Fame doth bring.
And apt to Censure that thou dost not know,
And to Carp at Faults, which are nothing so:
If this thou do, making it thy only end,
Know thou art neither Arts, or Learnings friend.
But an Ignorant, Empty, Brainless Sot,
Whose chiefest Study is the Can and Pot.
If this be so, as nought else in't there may,
Then to your Works this Farewel I do say;

Go thy ways Arts Book, and Feare no evill,
Envy'd by none, but Sons of the ☿ ☾

Servus humilimus & filius tuus
Obedientissimus,

Ranulphus Holme, Jun.

TO

TO THE
Honourable the KINGS at ARMS,
WITH THE
Worshipful the COLLEDG of HERAULDS:

R. H. *Your Deputy for the County Palatine of* Chester *and* Lancaster, *with* North-Wales; *Wisheth Prosperity and increase of Happiness.*

After I had read over several English Authors treating of this Subject (Herauldry); *and weighing them altogether, I found there was a great deficiency in them as to those variety of Charges borne in Coats; which caused me to enter into some thoughts of an enlargement, especially in those things which I observed was never taken notice of by publick Authors: And this I was the more encouraged to do, having in those days the liberty of the Office, and other Libraries of that concern. Which endeavour though of many years search and industry in compiling, yet it comes far short of what is born in Arms: That which remaineth I must leave (as an addition) to more diligent Persons, and learned Pens.*

BOOK I. CHAPTER I.

THE Word **herauld** is a Term derived from the *Saxon*, **here-hault**, or **here-auld**; which is as much as to say an old *Lord*, or ancient *Sir*. Noting that he must be a Champion of an Army, a Gentleman of Quality, and an old experienced Man; else he cannot be admitted into so honourable an Order as this of an Herauld is.

The Antiquity of Heraulds.

2. WE have it recorded in sacred Scripture, *Dan.* 3. 4. that in the Reign of *Nebuchadnezzar* King of *Babilon*, there was a Herauld which proclaimed the King's Will and Pleasure. Sir *John Ferne* saith, *Glo.* 158. it took its beginning in the Reign of *Priam* King of *Troy*, in their solemn Plays of Wrestling, and other Feats of Activity, done in the Court of the said King, before the Greek Wars. But Heraulds were far more ancient than either of these: For among all Nations, ever since any Battle was fought, Heraulds and Officers have been appointed to see to the ordering of things belonging to Arms, and warlike Discipline; else there would have been nothing but Confusion, without Victory.

3. At the first they were certain Knights, called *Auncienes*, such as had served in the Wars 20 Years, at the least, who being sore bruised, lamed, and well stept into Years: Such were by Emperors, and Kings made the Judges of Martial Acts, and of the Laws of Arms.

4. We read that when *Julius Cæsar* encamped before the City of *Carthage*, a Debate arose among his Captains, touching the worthyness of their Service upon the Enemy, every Man challenging the chiefest Honour as due to himself, because he had merited the best: Whereat *Cæsar* being greatly astonished, but having pacified this Contention, to prevent the like inconvenience, established the foresaid Office, appointing two old Knights, to whom it was given in charge to oversee each Man's Doing and Behaviour in the Battle, that upon their Report and Judgment, the Emperour or General of the Host might be instructed how to reward them with Honour: And that from the Sentence of those Knights should no Man appeal, no not to the Senate.

5. From which Constitution and Order then begun, have our Officers, called Heraulds, by imitation, drawn their Function and Authority: They were by the *Romans* called *Feciales*, (*a fedore faciendo*) from their making of Leagues; and *Caduceatores*, from their carrying of Rods or Wands, made of the branches of Palm, or Olive, writhen about with two Serpents; like to that of *Mercury*, whom the Poets feign to be the Messenger, the Herauld and Interpreter of the Gods: Whose Rod is called *Caduceus*. The *Greeks* call them *Ceryces*, and *Ireno-phylaces*, Guardians, and Sequestrators of Peace; taken from the effect and issue of their Charge, which was to appease Differences by the way of Mildness, and to appoint Nations and Kingdoms Enemies, before they should proceed to handy strokes.

6. By the ancient *Gals* and *Britains* they were called *Bards* and *Druids*, who also carried their *Caducean* Rods, to shew that those sacred Heraulds or Ambassadors, were the Interpreters of their Princes Will and Pleasure. The *English* and *French* call them *Heraulds*, anciently *Herhault*, *Herold*, *Hyraud*, &c. Which *Stow* in his *Annals*, *pag.* 12. derives them from *Heroes*, *Noble-men*; such as excel in Vertues, Demy or Half-Gods: because to them was committed the office of making Peace, and proclaiming of Wars. And as *Upton* saith, they gave counsel without peril, for the which they were of all Estates had in Honour and Worship, their Persons were inviolable and sacred; to them no outrage ought to be done, neither any violence by words or deeds: Nay anciently they were held so sacred and reverend in account, that none was constituted thereunto, but such as were gentle born, and Free-men.

The Office of Heraulds.

7. TO the Office of an Herauld is requisite the skill of many Faculties, and Professions of Literature; they ought to be well known in several Languages and Tongues, to be of a mild and gentle Spirit, thereby to deliver either the Soveraigns peaceful Congratulations to Foreign Princes being at amity with him, or else the dreadful defiances and indictions of War, to those which do offer cause of Hostility; in which he is to shew Courage and Magnanimity.

8. They are to be expert and knowing in Martial Acts, and of the Laws of Arms, as in Conquests, Fields, Battles, Assaults, Roads, Combates, Tilts and Tournays, Encounters, Recountrings, Rescues, Challenges and Triumphs. They are to be present, as Judges, to assist the Earl-Marshal, and to be diligent in the observation of all actions of Nobleness; to record and register the merits of the Gentle, and Vertuous: As also to brand with infamy the disloyalty of Traitors.

9. They are to be well skilled both in the Laws of the Countrey and the Civil Laws; for that within the body of those great Volumns, lies scattered the Principles and Rudiments of the Laws Martial. Likewise it is most necessary that he be well read in the Books of Holy Writ, for the Office of a Judg, and a Herauld, do of all others come nearest to the Office and Ministration of a Priest.

10. And as to the Laws, so they ought to be well learned in History, to have the knowledg and antiquities of Nations and People: To see strange Countries, and to read the History of the World, to know the needful Forms and Ceremonies of Coronations of Kings and Princes, Creations of Noble-men, the Orders and Dubbing of Knights, making of Esquires: And in Royal Progresses and Triumphs, Princely Marriages, and Christianings; to know the difference of Robes pertaining to the Orders of Regality.

11. They ought to be exquisite in the noble art of Blazon, Painting and Limning: For the better ordering of Arms for such as the Prince shall enoble for their Vertue. As also to know the Nature, Property, and Condition of Birds, Beasts, and Creatures irrational, both on the Land, and in the Water: The vertue of Plants, Trees, Herbs, and Flowers: The Constellations of Heaven, with the courses and operations of the Stars and Planets. And from Heaven to descend into the bowels of the Earth, there to apprehend the nature of Mettals, Minerals, and precious Stones; by whose intermixture they may learn the composition of Colours, which are all necessary for emblazoning of such Arms according to Art.

12. They are to be expert in the Marshalling and Solemnities of Mournings, and Funerals of the Nobles and Gentry; And for that end they ought to be skilful in the Coats of Arms, the Pedigrees, and Tribes of the Gentry within their Provinces; taking great care that one Gentleman do not bear the Coat of others: Lest thereby scandal do arise, and effusion of Blood do persue. Therefore above all, they are (for that purpose) to be well known in old Deeds, Chartets, Manuscripts, *&c.* the perfect reading thereof is requisite to find out hidden Antiquities, and to clear many doubts and scriples.

13. In a word, the Reader may herein perceive that the study of all Arts, Sciences, and Faculties, as well divine, as profane, noble, as ignoble, from the Scepter to the Spade, are to be known, and do all concur in the advancing the skill of Herauldry, to make an absolute and compleat accomplished Herauld, or King at Arms.

14. But alas! now a-days (saith my Author, *Theat.* 35.) this noble Science is so corrupt, and out of order; every office being bought and sold, that such as hold the places of Heraulds, are as ignorant and clownish as if they had never seen any thing: But are so impertinent and unskilful in the noble art of Blazon, and Painting, that they know not how to devise an honourable Arms for a Prince, or great Lord. For every Painter, Tricker, or a meer Blazoner of Arms, will not serve to make such an Officer; but that Man is an absolute Herauld, in whom is found the skill of many Faculties, and Profession of Sciences, and good Literature, and likewise the knowledg of War: Nay he ought to be such a Man as hath skill and knowledg in every thing. In as much as there is nothing but it is born in Arms, or comprehended in this Art or Skill of Herauldry.

The Colledg of Heraulds.

15. THE Office of Herauld began to be respectively known, as also to be in great Honour and Authority, under the Raign of King *Henry* the Third of *England*, whose Court was more magnificent and full of splendour than any King of *England* before him: In the 50*th* year of whose Government (as *Spelman* in his *Glossary* informeth) there was then set up a School of *Heraulds*, consisting of *Kings at Arms*, *Heraulds*, and *Pursevants*; which in succeeding Ages were thus distinguished.

I. **Garter**, *Principal King of Arms*, instituted and created with that Term or Title by *Henry* the First, King of *England*; whose office it is to attend the Solemnities of the Knights of the Garter, the Processions of great Estates, and to martial the Funerals of the greater Nobility, as of Princes, Dukes, Marquesses, Earls, Viscounts and Barons.

II. **Clarencieux**, *King of Arms* for the South-side the River *Trent*, stiled anciently *South-Roy*, but by King *Edward* the Fourth created by the name of **Clarencieux** *King of Arms*, which before was only an *Herauld*. His proper office is to be at the ordering of great Estates, and to martial and dispose the Funerals of the lesser Nobility, as Baronet, Banneret, Knights, Esquires, and Gentlemen through the Realm, on the South-side the River *Trent*.

III. **Norr**

III. **Norroy**, or anciently *North-Roy*, whose office is the same to **Clarencieux**, for the North-side of the River *Trent*.

Heraulds of Arms.

16. BEsides the three *Kings of Arms*, there are six *Heraulds* at this day, whose Names and Offices are,

I. *Windsor-Herauld*, which Title was instituted about the 38*th* year of King *Edward* the Third, when he was in *France*.

II. *Chester-Herauld*, instituted in the time of *Edward* the Third, King of *England*.

III. *Richmond-Herauld*, came first to be instituted by King *Edward* the Fourth.

IV. *Somerset-Herauld*, instituted by King *Henry* the Eighth, about that time when he created his Son *Henry Fitz-Roy*, Duke of *Somerset*.

V. *York-Herauld*, instituted by King *Edward* the Third, in honour of his Son which he created Duke of *York*.

VI. *Lancaster-Herauld*, instituted by *Edward* the Third, when he created his other Son Duke of *Lancaster*.

These inferior Heraulds have no Provinces assigned them, as the Kings of Heraulds; nor any priority in their places, but are superior one to the other, according to the time and antiquity of their Creation. Whose office it is to be Ministers, and Helpers of the Kings of Arms in their office.

17. These are all the present Heraulds, though in elder times we read of several others: As,

Guyon-Herauld, instituted by King *Edward* the First, and continued to the end of *Edward* the Third: And so *Leopard-Herauld* of *Normandy*. *Agencourt-Herauld*, created by *Henry* the Fifth, in memory of the great victory he obtained against the *French* in those parts.

Ireland-Herauld, which was by King *Edward* the Sixth changed into the Title of *Ulster-Herauld*, or *King of Arms* for *Ireland*.

18. *Lion-Herauld*, or *King of Arms* for *Scotland*, these Heraulds pertained to the Kings, and in their several Provinces, were stiled Kings of Arms: But besides these there were other Heraulds belonging to the Nobility, for Dukes, and Earls especially, who had their names from the Duke they belonged unto: As *Moubray* Duke of *Norfolk*, stiled his Herauld *Moubray*. *Humphrey* Duke of *Glocester*, and *Richard* Duke of *Glocester*, called them *Glocester-Heraulds*. And so the Earl of *Pembrook*, *Pembrook-Herauld*. *Charles Brandon* Duke of *Suffolk*, *Suffolk-Herauld*: And *Marleon* his Pursevant. The Earl of *Northumberland*, *Northumberland-Herauld*: And *Esperance* his Pursevant. So *Arthur Plantaginet*, Viscount *Lisley*, *Lisley-Pursevant* And Baron *Hastings*, *Hasting-Pursevant*.

But our Heraulds now being incorporated into a body, and made a Colledg by King *Richard* the Third, by Charter, under the great Seal of *England*, they have swallowed up all these inferior and domestick Heraulds, as I may term them.

Pursevants of Arms.

19. WIth the three Kings, and six Heraulds, there is joined four Marshals, Messengers, or Pursevants of Arms: And are Ministers to them in matters of Heraulcdry, in the execution of their Places: Which are these.

I. *Rouge-Cross*, the first of all for antiquity, and is stiled so from the *Red Cross*, born by St. *George*, Patron Saint of *England*.

II. *Blew-Mantle*, Pursevant of Arms, so stiled by King *Edward* the Third, in honour of the French Coat which he assumed, which Mantle was blew.

III. *Rouge-Dragon*, so stiled from the Coat of King *Henry* the Seventh, which was supported by a *Red Dragon*; which Title he instituted.

IV. *Porculleis*, instituted also by *Henry* the Seventh; which was a Symbol, Badg, or Cognizence used by him.

20. Besides these, in the Raign of several Princes, there were Pursevants of other Stiles, but time wore them away to the four above-said. As,

Faulcon, Pursevant of Arms in *Edward* the 4*th*, and *Henry* the 5*th*, and 6*th*'s time.

Antelope, *Wallingford*, *Cadran* } Pursevants, in *Edw.* 4. *Hen.* 5. and 6.

Roseblanch, Pursevant to the Duke of *York*; with several others, which I forbear to name, as being nothing to my design.

If any desire a fuller relation of the Herauld's antiquity, and office; let them peruse these following Authors.

Accidence of Armory, pag. 40, 41, 42.
Glory of Generosity, pag. 151, 152, 153, 158, 159.
Theatre of Honour and Knighthood, lib. 1. cap. 4.
Spelman's Glossary, *in verbo Heraldus*, fol. 278, 279, 280.
Cowell's Interpreter, in the Word *Herauld*.
Polidor Virgil, lib. 19.
Lopanus, lib. 1. *de Magist. Francorum*, *cap. Heraldi*.
Guillim's Display of Heraldry, fol. 13.
Lord *Cook's Institution of Jurisdiction of Courts*, fol. 126.

Fees belonging to Heraulds.

21. HEraulds are Houshold Servants to Kings, and Princes; in which respect they have their Robes, with an yearly Pention allowed them out of the Kings Exchequer, according to their qualities, which is all mentioned in their several Patents of creation, *viz.* *Garter* Principal King of Arms, 40 *l.* *per Annum*: *Clarencieux*, and *Norroy*, Kings of Arms 20 *l.* each. Six Heraulds, 13 *l.* 6 *s.* 8 *d.* apiece. Four Pursevants amongst them all 93 *l.* 6 *s.* 8 *d.*

22. At the King and Queens Coronations, at the Solemnities of their Marriages; or Princes and Princesses, at the Baptizing of their Children, and also at their Obsequies, and Funerals; they generally have among them the Cloaks and Chaperons, the Cloathes they wear, the Canopies of Estate, the Cup the King drinketh in; the Childs Mantle, Swath-bands, Warming-Pan, Cloth of State, Pillows, Bason and Ewer: The mourning Velver-Pall over the Corps, the Hangings of Velvet, or Cloth, in the Rooms, Chappels, or Churches; all which doth amount to a vast Sum. Also at the foresaid Solemnities, pertaining to Joy, the Heraulds have a right three several times to cry **Largesse**, and throw Medols, or pieces of Gold, and Silver amongst the People, which is some benefit to them.

23. Also at the Creation of Noble-men, either of a Duke, Marquess, Earl, Viscount, or Baron, there is a Fee either of 5, 10, 15, or 20 Pounds, due to the Heraulds, for taking their Names, Sir-names, Qualities; blazoning their Arms, and assigning them Supporters: Which is set down, and depicted in the Book of Nobility. And at the creation of a Baronet, making a Banneret, and dubbing of Knight, a Fee of 20 or 40 Shillings falls to their share; for which they record them amongst the number of such worthy and honourable Persons, with the blazoning of his Arms, and vertuous qualities.

24. Also at the installing or admitance of any new Officer into the King's Houshold, at their entrance into the same, the Heraulds have a certain Fee, according to the quality of the Person, and Office. And if the King please to enoble any Person; or that inferior Men, by their Vertue, Learning, Valour, or any Industry, do attain to Honour or Magestracy; then a Fee accordingly of 10 or 20 *l.* is payable to them, for confirmation or granting such Coats of Arms, and regestring them amongst the Gentry of that Shire, or Province, he or they live in.

25. But the Kings of Arms their principal Fees are those of the visitations of their Provinces; that is once in 20 or 30 years at the most, they ride through their part of the Kingdom assigned to them; where (in certain places most convenient) they summon in all the Gentry, as Baronets, Knights, Esquires, Gentlemen, and Free-holders, (or any whom he pleaseth to call before him) there to give an account unto them of their Family, Matches, Issues, Coats of Arms belonging to them, and their Title, as Esquire, Knight, *&c.* all which is registred or recorded, in a Book called the Visitation-Book for such and such a County, taken at such a time. For which regestring, traveling Expences, and entertaining all his Visiters, the Kings of Arms, and his Marshal, demands from every Gentleman, 25 *s.* an Esquire, 35 *s.* a Knight or Baronet, 55 *s.* All which being summed up through the Kingdom, will amount to such a value, as may sustain them, with good husbandry, till the next Visitation; but that is seldom twice in one King at Arms's life-time.

26. Also at the death of every Gentleman, who was interr'd with Funeral Escochions, or with Trophies of Honour, according to his degree; then the Heraulds had a Fee, besides their Blacks, and travelling Expences, of 12 *d.* a Mile: Which Fees were anciently 20 *s.* for a Knight or Lady, 13 *s.* 4 *d.* an Esquire, 6 *s.* 8 *d.* a Gentleman, 5 *s.* a Gentlewoman, and 3 *s.* 4 *d.* a Citizen in Office, who was not a Gentleman of Blood, but enobled by his Office and Place in the Corporation. Which said Sums the Heraulds received from the Heirs of the Defunct, or his Executors; for which said Fees, the Heraulds are to take a Certificate (under their hands) of the time of the Persons Decease, place of his Burial, his Age, who he married, and when, what Issue he had, and the Coat of Arms of his Family; and to enter the same in a Book of Record, for benefit of Posterity: Called the *Certificate-Book*, for such a part, or County, of the Province.

27. But the Lords Commissioners, for regulating of the Court-Marshal, and for the better support and maintenance of the Heraulds, did in the year 1618, order a larger Fee for them, as a Gentleman, 3 *l.* 6 *s.* 8 *d.* an Esquire, 6 *l.* 13 *s.* 4 *d.* a Knight, or Lady 10 *l.* a Baronet and a Banneret, 13 *l.* 6 *s.* 8 *d.* of every Baron and Baroness, 25 *l.* of every Bishop 25 *l.* of every Viscount and Viscountess, 30 *l.* of every Earl and Countess, 35 *l.* of every Marquess and Marchioness, 40 *l.* of every Duke and Dutchess, 45 *l.* and of every Arch-Bishop, 45 *l.* which Sums were afterwards taken of by the Parliament, in the year 1640, as an oppression of the Gentry, and Subjects of *England*; the Heraulds now being content with their ancient Fees, with what more addition they can get, and what the noblenes of the Gentry, as a free Gift, are willing to pay.

28. There were also, in former time, when Combates, Tilts, and Tournayments were in use; and upon all Marshal, and warlike Affairs, certain Fees due to the Heraulds: But as they are ceased, so the Fees are lost with them. However, in short, take them as my Author delivers them, *Theat. lib.* 1. *cap.* 4. *fol.* 33. In the days of Tournays and Combates, the Combatants stood obliged to give to the Heraulds all that fell to the Ground, and all that was carried between the two Lists, during the Combate, (except the Book whereon the Challengers and Defendants took their Oaths); after the Combate is ended, the Victor is to give a Largesse, that is to say, casts the Herauld a Crown, or more in Gold, or Silver: Also all the Arms and Ornaments of the vanquished, belong to the Officers of Arms, and the Lists likewise, with the Chairs, and the Cup wherein the Combatants drink to each other, with Horse, Armour, Arms, Plumes, Bards, Chaustrains, Caparisons, and other Ornaments of War: And whatsoever is desired to be redeemed, by either party, is to pay the Herauld the just value of them.

See more of this Subject concerning Heraulds, of their Name, Antiquity, Creation, Number, Office, Colledg, Priviledges and Fees: In these Authors,

Thomas Gore, in his Catalogue of all the Authors both in Latine, French, Italian, Spanish, German, and English, which have written of Heraulds and their Office, *chap.* 2.

Elias Ashmole, of the Institution, Laws and Ceremonies, of the Knights of the Garter, *chap.* 8. *sect.* 4.

Edw. Bishe, in his Notes upon *Nich. Upton*, *p.*28,29,30.

Tho. Blount, his *Glossographia*, or Dictionary of hard Words, in the Word [*Herauld.*]

Edw. Chamberlain, in the second part of the present State of *England*.

Sir *Edward Cook*, in the fourth part of his Institutions, *chap.* 17.

Edmund Plowden, his Comments, or Reports, *fol.* 12. *b.*

James Salter, in *Calliope's* Cabinet opened, *p.* 48.

John Stow, his Annals of *England*, *fol.* 11, 12, and 584.

John Weever, his Funeral Monuments, *fol.* 661, to 688.

Matthew Carter, in his Analysis of Heraulds, *p.* 131, *&c.*

Andrew Favine, in his Theatre of Honour and Knighthood, *lib.* 1. *cap.* 4.

Thomas Mills, *de nobilitate politica vel civili*, *fol.* 154, 155, 156.

With many more quoted by these Authors.

TO THE

MAYOR, RECORDER, and JUSTICES;

THE

Sheriffs, Aldermen, Gentry, and Counsel, with the rest of the Citizens:

OF THE

Honourable and Loyal City of CHESTER.

When the whole Kingdom was on Fire, through an home-bred War, and each took up Arms for the defence of his Place, and Person; altho tender Age made me uncapable of that Action: Yet then it was my Study to follow my Predecessors in that way which tended to Marshal (as well as Civil) Discipline, viz. Arms, and Herauldry. Whose Endeavours (as a lover of, and a Free-born Citizen) I do humbly present to all the Loyal, True-hearted, Inhabitants; with my Prayers for the prosperous and flourishing Estate thereof: Whose Servant in all things I am. R. H.

CHAP. II.

A **Shield**, or **Buckler**, is an offensive (in some sence) and defensive Arms; by which we dint and blunt the edg of our Enemies Sword, and keep our Bodies from Blows and Wounds.

Names of Shields.

2. THE Latines gave several Denominations to Targets, Shields and Bucklers, according to their use; as,

Albosta, Shields or Targets.

Clypeus, a Shield, Target, or Buckler, used by the Footmen only: So termed from its painting and engraving.

Scutum, is also a Target or Shield, used especially for an Horseman.

Ancile, a Shield without Corners.

Pelta, a Target, or Buckler, like an half-moon, used by Footmen.

Cetra, is a light Target, whereof the Poet maketh mention: *Levum cetra tegit.*

Parma, is also a Target, or Buckler, which Footmen use.

But the English give the name *Target* (or *Tergate*, as some write it) from the British word *Tarian*; and the French *Thiros* which as *Pausanius* saith, is the Buckler in use amongst the old *Gauls*.

3. An **Escochion** is the form or representation of a **Shield**, and is so called from the Latin word **Scutum**, which hath the same signification: Also the Target is not unaptly deduced from the word, *Tergus*, a Beast Hide, whereof at first Shields were made, or covered; upon which in after Ages, every Warrior had a device drawn by which he might be known, and this he called his Coat of Arms.

Shields of what anciently made.

4. **Shields**, or **Bucklers**, at first were made of Osiers, or Twigs woven together, and then covered: Sometimes they were made of Wood, or the large Scales of Beasts, or Fish, as of the *Rhinoceros*, the *Tortois*, and such like. But they most commonly were made of raw Oxe Hides, or pieces of Leather doubled, (as *Ovid* saith); for *Ajax* had a seven-fold Buckler; and that *Achilles* had one was ten, and that done over with Brass besides: As also elsewhere he describes a Target, *duo taurea terga*; they were made of two Oxe Hides. Whereupon *Pliny* saith, *Tergus ad scuta galeasque impenetrabile*, an impenetrable Hide fit to make a Shield. And the Poet *Statius* saith, *Cæsis clypeos vestire juventis*, that with Bullocks Hides they clad their Shields. The *Carthaginians* were wont to make their Targets of beaten Gold.

The

The several sorts of Shields of Arms.

5. IT is a common Saying, in relation to our first Parents, in the contempt of Shields, Arms, and Gentry: That

When Adam *Digged, and* Eve *Span,*
Who was then the Gentleman?

Albeit there doth from thence arise no degrees of Gentry, and Noble-Blood, or Coat-Armour, as our Armourists, *Ferne* and *Gwillim* set forth, viz. from the Spade and Spindle: Yet from thence we may gather the Antiquity, the Forms and Fashions of Shields and Targets; which was the first degree, and from whence Nobility did arise.

I. *Adam's* Spade then we must set down for the first and most ancient form of a Shield, whose bottom sheweth the making of an Escochion, being a Fusile.

II. *Eve's* Spindle, being the form of a Fusil, is the second sort of Shield, by which mankind is generally saved, and preserved from the furious strokes of Frost, Snow, and cold Winds. Now, as these two plead antiquity above all others, so they continue to this day for the same defence, and without which neither Prince nor People can be in safety. For saith *Solomon*, Eccles. 5. 8. & Prov. 31. 19, 21, 22, 23. *The King is maintained by the Spade; and the Spindle procureth the Womans honour:* Perhaps to denote that Mans Atchievements is to be gained in the Field, because he was formed there; and the Honour of Woman to be at Home, she being formed in Paradice.

III. But those Shields pertaining to War, this third Figure is presented to us for the ancientest fashion; of which the Poets make mention in this wise: King *Phocus* had three Daughters, *Medusa*, *Stena*, and *Euriale*. *Neptune* God of the Sea, committed Adultery with *Medusa* in the Temple of *Minerva*; who in revenge thereof turned the Adulteress into an ugly monsterous shape, and her golden Hair into loathsom Serpents: *Minerva* yet seeking farther revenge, sought by all means how she might take away this Monsters life, gave a Christal Shield to her Lieutenant Perseus, the *Paladian* Knight, wherewith when he had slain the horrible Gorgon *Medusa*, consecrated the same Shield to the Goddess *Pallas*. This Shield (the very pattern whereof is presented to your Eye) was taken out of the City of *Troy*, about the Year of the World 1774, and before the Birth of Christ 1189 years.

This Goddess *Pallas*, taught to the *Libians* all things appertaining to War: So that I take her to be the Goddess of Heraldry and Arms.

IV. This is by some Authors supposed (may set down) to be the true form of *Minerva's* Shield which she gave to *Perseus*: But whether so or not, I will not dispute it, however they may be taken one for the other, as having a near resemblance.

V. It is written of one *Asterial*, the Father of *Olibion*, who made a Target or Shield for his Son, when he warred against the cursed Seed of *Ham*, who greatly troubled them; this Shield was made of an Olive-tree after this form, two corners above his Face, and one to the groundward, in token that he was the chief of the Blood of the three Sons of *Noah*: This Shield was used some hundreds of years after the Deluge.

VI. This is the form of the Shield used by the People that now inhabit *Mesopotamia*, otherwise of the Frenchmen called *Dier-bechias*: They of old have used this fashion of Shields, which (is thought) was from the *Trojans*. It was brought into *England*, by the Ancestors of us English-men, when they came out of *Germany* into *Britain*; which was about the year of our Lord 450, as *Verstegan*, in his Book of Antiquities, *pag.* 117. maketh mention: These People were descended of *Gomar*, whose Posterity used it as in the Figure before.

VII. This is a kind of Target used by the *Catelines*, whose Leader was that worthy Captain *Catulus* that subdued the *Cimbrians*, which was 10 years before the Birth of Christ: This noble man reproved *Silla*, for killing of a 1000 Prisoners (when he had given them their Lives in the Battle); saying with whom shall we live, if in War we kill the armed, and in Peace the unarmed: The People of the Isle of *Sardinia* used Shields of this fashion, who hardned them so by art, that they were impenetrable by Sword or Lance.

VIII. The round fashioned Shield, we read of in Holy Scripture, 1 *King.* 10. 16, 17. that *King* Solomon *caused to be made* 300 *of beaten Gold*; 600 *Shekels of Gold went to the making of one Target*: Which Targets or Shields were taken away from *Jerusalem* in the first year of *Reboboam*, by *Shishak* King of *Egypt*, when he took the City of *David*; instead of which Shields King *Rehobiam* made Shields of Brass, 1 *King.* 14. 25, 26, 27. The old *Britains* used Shields after this form, and was of them called *Parma*, (*quia a me.io in omnes partes jut par*) being equal in all parts from its Center, like a Buckler.

King *David* furnished a Tower with a 1000 of them, and depicted the Arms and Devices of Princes on them; as Sir *John Ferne* testifieth, in *Lac. nobil. pag.* 76. which round form, is in Blazon called a Roundlet, which is a mark of better Dignity than some take it to be.

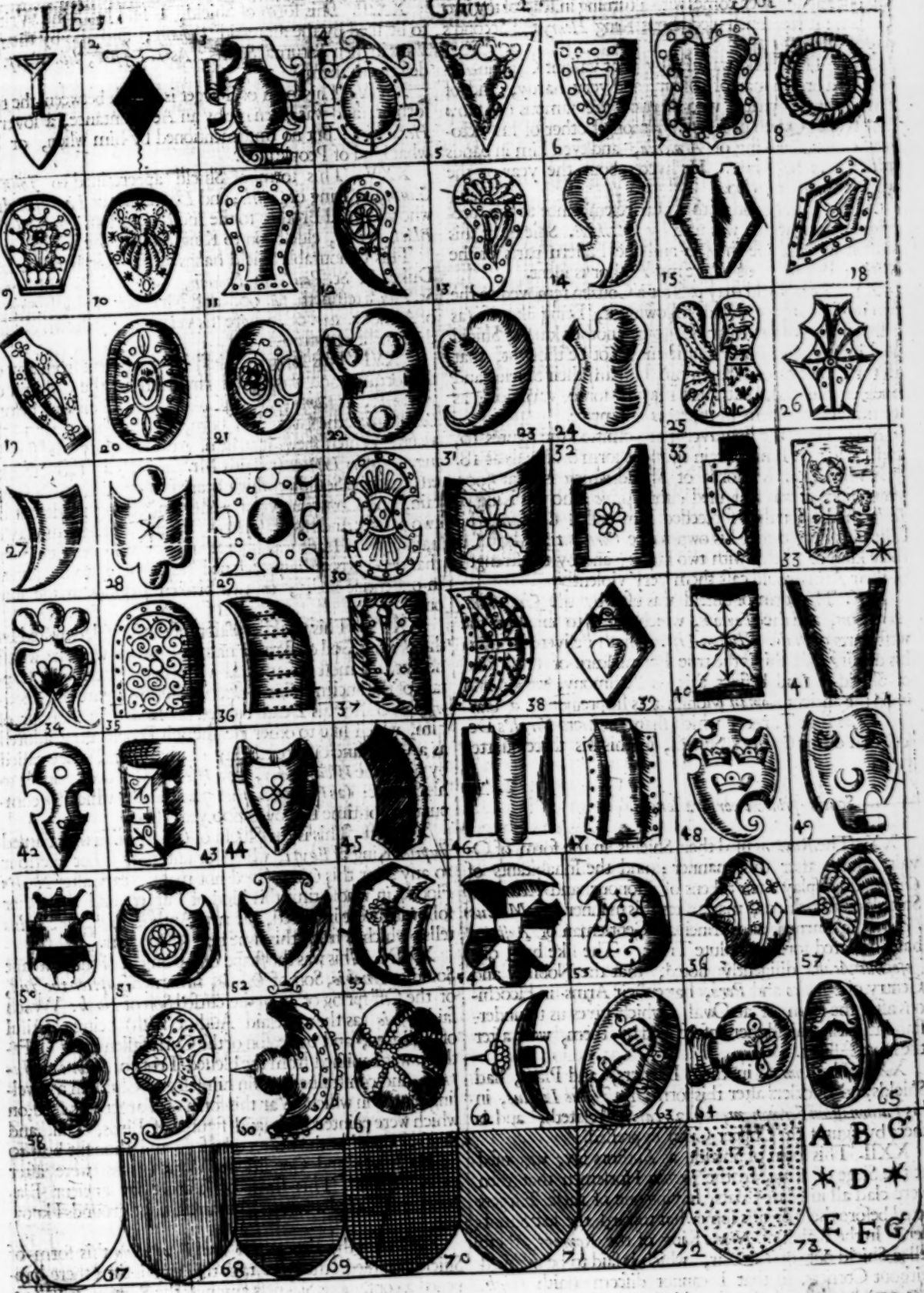
IX. Shields of this fashion were used by the People inhabiting the Isle of *Sardinia*, called *Sardalaries*: This People did, by art, so harden their Shields (which were made of the wood of *Saunders*) that they could neither be cut with Swords, nor pierced with any Spear or Lance whatsoever.

X. This is that kind of Shield, which belonged to the most renowned Prince, *Edward* Prince of *Wales*; whose Tomb is in the goodly Cathedral Church of *Canterbury*, (as saith Mr. *Bolton* in his Elements of Armory, *pag.* 67.) there (with his quilted Coat-Armour, with its half-Sleeves, tabered fashion, and his triangular Shield, both of them painted with the Royal Arms of *England*) hangs this kind of Pavis or Target, curiously embossd, and painted with the Escocheon of the Arms of *England* in the midst thereof, which I omit and only give you the bare shape and form of the Shield of this victorious *Black-Prince*, for so was he commonly called: He died 1376.

XI. This is also another kind of Shield, used by the aforesaid *Sardinians*, spoken of in the ninth form of Shields.

XII. This kind of Shield was used by the Ancestors of the aforesaid *Edward* the *Black-Prince*, as *William* the Conqueror, *William Rufus*, and *Stephen* Kings of *England*, as our Chronoligers and Antiquaries testify, who lived in and about the years 1066, and 1200, it may be called an Oval-Escochion Shield.

I find the Description of another such-like Shield as this, in *Speed's Chron. fol.* 455. only it was not so round at the top,


A B C
D
E F G

top, but flat and then comes with a turning instead of the two Corners: It was much used about King *Henry* the Second's dayes, *Anno* 1175.

XIII. This Shield was used by that valiant Captain *Antonius*, a brown man of colour, and very hardy, and of an undaunted Spirit; who married the famous *Cleopatra* that Royal Queen of *Egypt*. Amongst other of his victories he took the King of *Armenia*, and tyed him in bands and fetters of Silver. He lived about the year of the worlds Creation 3900.

XIIII. This Shield hath a near resemblence to the president before, which was used by *Antonius*. Shields of this fashion were in use in *Asia* and the Eastern parts of the world; But when or where my Author is silent.

XV. This Shield may pass for a Couzen removed to the two next figures of Shields following it, Being likewise (as is by some Authors) supposed to be another kind of Shield used by the *Coribants*. For it may not be thought, that all the People of one Kingdom had all their Shields and Bucklers alike, but that there may be some variation; as we may see by theirs in the *Roman* Empire.

Note, Here the Engraver hath omitted the figures 16, and 17. so that I must begin the next form of Shields at 18.

XVIII. This is a form of Shield which is near 3999 years since it was first used; for *Jasius* who was King of *Italy*, had a Son that succeeded him called *Coribant*, he called his People after his own name *Coribants*, who used these kind of Shields with two Darts; and by the strength of their Arms would cast them very violently.

XIX. This form of Shield was used by the *Cimbrians*, *Ambrians*, and the *Teutons*, which came to inhabite the west parts of *Italy*. *Justus Lipsius* hath delivered it upon his credit, that this is the true Portraicture of those kind of Shields: And besides this his Testimony, we do find upon the ancient *Roman* Monies this Impression of a *Cimbrian Pavis* or Target; which shape answers *Virgil*'s Description of the *Gallick*'s Shields, in this his three quarter verse,

———*Scutis protecti corpora longis.*

XX. The *Romans* used their Shields in the form of Ovals, much after this manner; and the Inhabitants of *China*, do display their tokens of Honour and Arms, in Shields or Escochions, made after this manner; as *Marcus Velserus*, a learned and principal Gentleman of *Ausburg* hath declared for an absolute Truth. The like hath one *Josephus Acasta* diligently noted, that the Nobility and Gentry of *Mexico* and *Peru*, have their Arms in Escochions after the form of an Oval: which gives us to understand that the Shields heretofore used by them, were after the same fashion.

XXI. The *Romans* in their Barriers, and Plays, had Shields and Bucklers after this form; As *Justus Lipsius*, in his *Saturnalium Sermonum*, *lib.* 2. *cap.* 4 relateth, and is there by figures (in Copper Cuts) expressed.

XXII. This form of Shield, as Authors say, was used at the Siege of *Troy*, by the *Trojan* Horsemen that then were clad all in Mail-Coats, having one of these Targets fixed before their Breasts somewhat toward the left Shoulder. In the Raign of *Numa* King of the *Romans*, there fell a Shield out of the Air, which is said to be a Shield without Corners, so that I cannot discern (saith *Leigh*, *pag.* 20.) but it might be after this form and fashion.

XXIII. This form of Shield, I find by some Writers to be used by the aforesaid *Trojans*; and also by the *Romans* in their Saturnal Sports: As *J. Lipsius*, *lib.* 2. *cap.* 21. describeth them.

XXIV. This form of Target is much between the two former, and was given me by an Acquaintance, a lover of *Herauldry*; but no time mentioned by him when, or by what kind of People used.

XXV. This form of Shield appertained to *John* of *Gaunt*, the King of *Castile*; and *Lion* Duke of *Lancaster*, *&c.* who was third Brother to the most victorious *Edward* the *Black-Prince*, eldest Son to King *Edward* the Third.

This honourable Shield hangs at the Tomb of the said Duke, in St. *Paul*'s in *London*, (as *Dugdale*'s History of St. *Paul*'s testifieth, *fol.* 90.) and Mr. *Boltin* in his Elements of Armory, *pag.* 68. where 'tis very exactly drawn out for the benefit of future Ages.

XXVI. This form of Shield is far different from any of the former, and was found engraven in the Column of *Antonius*, at *Rome*; which Column was raised long before *Constantine* the Great was born, which is now near 1378 years: Which shews it to be of great antiquity and standing. *Justus Lipsius* (as saith Mr. *Bolton*, *pag.* 148.) thinketh that the Souldier which beared this Shield was a Captain, and Commander of a Legion, being made out of two parts: And his reason was, because an Eagle display'd having two Heads was figured upon the same, signifying that two parts of Eagles seemed (as it were) to be joined in one entire Body; or two broken Legions made into one.

XXVII. This was the fashion of the Shield, depicted by the *Saxon*'s God of Battle, named *Woden*; who was whilst he lived, a most valiant and victorious Prince, and Captain of the ancient *Teutonicks*, inhabiting a part of *Germany*; who after his Death erected his Image in honour of him, which like to other Heathenish People they adored as a God, and our fourth day of the Week, they called by his name *Woden*-*day*, now *Wednesday*, dedicating it to his Service; (as *Verstegan*, *pag.* 72. relateth) which by computation of time is above 1800 years since.

XXVIII. This is the Shield of *Osyris*, otherwise named *Jupiter* King of *Egypt*, which for antiquity is not inferiour to any; for this *Osyris* lived not many years after *Noah*'s Flood, in whose time this kind of Target, and the other following were invented, (as my Author *Diodorus Siculus* tells) which is from this time near 3800 years.

XXIX. This was the shape of the Shield of that valiant Souldier *Anubis*, Son of *Osyris*, surnamed *Jupiter the Just*, of the Off-spring of *Ham* the cursed Son of *Noah*: Which said *Osyris* (as the aforesaid Author saith) being plentiful of Children, and by reason of the Curse fallen upon his Father, was banished from the blessed Tents of *Shem* and *Japhat*, and constrained to win himself and Children a dwelling place, in which War this form of Target was used, on which were painted signs and figures of Birds, Fish, and Beasts, or what the bearer pleased, and thought best to fit his Estate and Condition: Which signs were after called Arms. This form of Target by ancient Blazoners was called a *Sarcote*, but upon what grounds I know not.

XXX. In the time of *Numa Pompilius* this form of Shield was used, (the Story take thus) in his time there happened a contagious Sickness amongst the *Romans*, which no Sacrifice could remove; and at that time there fell a certain

tain brazen Target, or Escochion (called in Latin *Æneapelta*, or *Ancile*, big at both ends (after this form) and cut like a half Moon on both sides) from Heaven into *Numa*'s Hand, with a certain Voice, promising all Health to *Rome* so long as they could keep that safe, *&c.* Read the farther prosecution of the Story in *Goodwin*'s Antiquities of *Rome*.

XXXI. This Shield is in fashion like those used by the *Greeks* at the Siege of *Troy*; and was also in after Ages used by them, and among the *Morisco* Horsemen: Which is born by them in such sort that it is a good defence for their Bodies, for it guardeth the Breast, and left Side, with the Head and Shoulders, which generally lies most open to the assaults of an Enemy.

XXXII. This is another fashion of the *Morisco* Targets, and is for likeness as the aforesaid, only this difference, that being a kind of a half round, this flat or straight.

XXXIII. This is said to be the *Roman* Souldier's Footmen's Shield (as some give it forth) but I rather take them to be the Shields of the Knights Templers: And so I have seen several of their Monuments with Shields of this manner of form on their Arm, and before their Breast, bending as it were half round. See *Weever*'s Funeral Monuments or the Diocess of *London*.

XXXIII. * Though Shields were at first used by Horsemen, yet since their first Invention, they have been much used by Footmen, which were made of a longer size, than Horsemen could well manage; for short ones were best for them, and long for Footmen: Which did contain near six foot long, and two foot in breadth. For the largeness of these kind of Shields, we have many Examples in ancient Histories; for Sir *John Froysart*, who writ of the great Battle of *Poiettre*, fought by the Flower of Chivalry, *Edward*, sirnamed the *Black-Prince*, who commanded the Body of the Lord *Richard Duras* should be laid on a Shield or Target, and that five Men might bear the same to the Cardinal of *Peregorth* for a Present, *&c.* And in the latter end of the Raign of King *Edward* the Third, the Frenchmen to save themselves from the liberal Shot of the English Archers, had Shields made of Elme-wood seven foot in length, and three in breadth, and an Inch in thickness, which were made sharp at the point to pitch into the Ground. Yet Mr. *Bolton* is of Judgment that the Shields there spoken of, were of the shape and fashion of the 10*th* Figure in the Copper Plate, before shewed. But for the largeness of Shields several Histories make mention (as witnesseth that of *Alexander* the Great) for his Shield was so great, that it served him instead of a Boat, to carry him over a great River, when he went against the puissant King *Porus*.

XXXIV. This form of Shield I found drawn in an old Manuscript, written about 200 years since, but by whom it was used or first invented, I find nothing: Yet (in my Author's Judgment) it is not inferiour to any for the defence of the whole Body, either being on Horse-back or on Foot; for the top is (like the Bever of an Helmet) with holes through, to see how to offend an Enemy, or defend his own Body: Likewise the bottom is so contrived, that the Bearer may either set his Foot forward or backward to his best advantage, and yet be a sure guard and defence for those parts.

XXXV. And XXXVI. These were Shields used by the ancient *Romans*, and were first invented (as *Just. Lipsius*, *l.* 1. *c.* 8. and others believe) for their exercise in their Saturnal Sports and Plays; and after used for defence against their Enemies, both in Battles, single-Deuels, and Combates: The latter whereof they took much delight in, never accounting him a Man worthy of Honour, 'till he had vanquished or slain one in single Combate.

XXXVII. This is also another fashion of a Target, used by the aforesaid *Romans*, and is described to us by *J. Lipsius*, *l.* 1. *c.* 8. in his *Saturnalium Sermonum*, with Figures also of them engraven on Copper Plates: Beside him, if any one desire further satisfaction herein, and of their Laws, Sports, and Exercises in Feats of Arms, with their divers sorts of Weapons: They may peruse the Book entituled, *The History of the Roman Customs*.

XXXVIII. This sort of Shield was of no small account amongst the *Romans*, whereas it hath a rebatement on the one side of it, so was it their use and custom to rebate it (according as the Warrier was either right or left handed) on that side as was most suitable thereunto, and this they did only by altering of the Handle, and Arm-stay, on the back-side of it; as is seen in the 63*d* and 61*st* Figures on the Plate belonging to this Chapter.

XXXIX. This form of Shield, is of the *Latins* called *Tesseræ*, and at this day (using the *French* Term) we call the same a *Lozenge*, which Word (of *Latin*) doth signify any thing four-square, being born with the two sharpest points, one above, and another beneath: But this fashion of Shield was long agoe out of all use in Wars, because of the unfitness of its service, it being the least and worst of all Shields, for a Souldier's use, either to offend his Enemy, or defend himself.

Therefore it is set a-part, and allowed only for Maids, Heir-trixes, Co-Heirs, and Widdows; also to Women descended of Noble-Blood, that on them they may set forth the Arms and Ensigns of the Houses they proceeded from: Women being a Sex unfit for War or Battle, of whom we shall speak more hereafter.

XL. This is the fashion of the *Chinense*'s Shield, being a long square; with which, a Dart, and Curtle-Axe, they hold themselves well armed: And this is used altogether in the whole Empire of *China*.

XLI. This form of Shield is used by the People of, and about, the *Friggid Zone*; called the *Ice-Land* and *Lap-Land* People: And beside that for the defence of the Body, against the shot of the Enemies Arrows (for in those places Shooting is altogather in use) they served also for other purposes; for they are made after such a manner, that they will transport the Bearer over a River, Pond, or any other place of Water.

XLII. This form of Shield, I find was used by some of those Roman Legion Souldiers, which lived in the time of King *Herod*, who under the Roman Empire, exercised power and authority over *Judea*, and the unbelieving Jews, whom God rast off to the hardness of their own Hearts: This *Herod* lived in the time of our Saviour's being upon Earth. And also in the first Persecution of the Church of Christ, in his Members the Apostles and Disciples, which is from this time, near 1680 years.

XLIII. This is the form of the Shield used by the *Indians* and *Moores*, a rude and barbarous People on the borders of *Asia* and *Africa*; and is to this day used by them, they being as yet but little acquainted with the Gun: Their fighting is with Swords, Darts and Arrows. This kind of Shield is four-square, but made after such a manner, that it turns half round, as if it were a defence only for the Breast, and no more.

On Squares, especially in quartered Coats of a Family, we of the western parts of the World, do depict or paint our Coats of Arms.

XLIV. This is another sort of Shield, I am informed doth belong to the *Indians*; and especially to him that is of any authority among them, as being their Head or supream Governour. Whether this be so I dare not averr; but this sufficient Authors affirm, that the *Amazonian* Women, in imitation of *Diana*, the Goddess, or Patroness of Women, were armed with Moon-like Shields, and were buried under *Lozenge* Monuments.

XLV. This is a form of Shield used by the Inhabitants of the Island of *Japan*, in *America*, as Historians do inform.

XLVI. This is the shape and fashion of the Shields used by the Inhabitants of the *West-Indies*, or *Guinny-Islands*.

XLVII. This form of Shield (as I was informed) belonged to the Knights-Templers; but the truth thereof I will not verify: Because I have seen Monuments of Knights-Templers, whose Shields are much after the manner of the English Foot-men's, described in the Plate, under the two 33 Figures; only this difference, that the Knights-Templers were half round, and the English and French Shields were straight.

These three foregoing Targets were shewed me by a Traveller, and a gather of Raretes, who lived near *Fox-Hall*, over against *Westminster* in *South-werck*; (with another Shield like to the 31st Figure in the Plate) which he said was also another form of Shield belonging to the Knights-Templers. But by his favour, in this, I shall not take his Word.

XLVIII. This kind of Shield, I find fixed on the Monument of *Mahomet* the great Emperour of *Turkey*, who was the greatest Scourge to Christendom of all that had been before him; for he subdued *Mentesia*, *Pera*, *Peleponesus*, and *Castria*, wone *Constantinople*, overcame *Crata*, took *Ornito*, and so going against the *Caramanian* King, died: To whose Memory, they of his Empire erected a Monument, by whose Side this kind of Shield was placed, (with a great Battle-Axe in his Hand) having thereon the Arms of his said Empire: Which was done in the year 1481. But whether this was a Shield used by him, or the fancy of the Workman, I leave others to judge.

XLIX. This is also the Shield of *Tamberlain* Emperour of *Tartaria*, called *the Wrath of God*, and *Terrour of the World*: He overthrew, and took Prisoner, *Baiazet*, the Great Emperour of the *Sarazens* and *Turks*, whose Army consisted of 100000 Men, and shut him up in an Iron Cage. He also conquered *Mesopotamia*, *Babylon*, and the Kingdom of *Persia*. He died, as some affirm, in the year 1402. After whose death his Statue was erected, with this Shield by his left Side, and a Truncheon in his right Hand. But (as to the former Shield) so to this, a question may be made, whether such an one was used by him, or only the Invention of the Cutter? If so, then the shapes and forms of Shields, Targets, and Bucklers, would be as many as Carvers, Stone-cutters, Engravers, and Painters please: the variety whereof it is impossible to describe, neither is it my intention, but only give such forms as have been in use by People and Nations, as they have been delivered to us by good Authors, and Men of credit.

L. This represents the form of Shields for Footmen, before described, *Numb.* 33. * save this hath an oval-like hollowness, or vacancy on the right side of it; through which, I suppose, the Archer had a liberty to send forth his Arrow, or Souldier to manage his Spear: These were used by the ancient *Saxons* in their Wars near 1000 years since.

LI. This form of Shield, I had out of Mr. *Morgan's Sphere of the Gentry*, *l.* 3. *fol.* 54. which he tells me is a form of *Pelta*, or a Shield gathered out of old and decayed Monuments: *Et laeva Amile gerabat*, according to *Virgil's Æn. lib.* 9.

LII. This (as the French Armorist informs me) was a kind of Target used by the ancient Romans: But this I take to be a Workman's device, as well as many others, which were never really in use for War.

LIII. Mr. *Dugdale* in his Description of *Warwick-shire*, *fol.* 434. gives me the form of this Shield, which was taken from a Monument, in a Glass-Window, in the Church of *Compton-Murdack*, with these Arms, **Gules besantee a Canton Ermin**: Which Glass-Window shews great antiquity, even to the time of *Edward* the third, above 300 years old.

LIV. This is the form of the Shield of the Earl of *Flanders*, as is described by *Peter Balthazar*, in the Lives and Genealogies of the Earls of *Flanders*, *fol.* 67. where he sets down the Effigies (with this shape of Shield) belonging to *Baldwin de Bonnaire*, the seventh Earl, who lived about the year 1006.

LV. This is a form of Target, which is set forth by a French Armourist, to be the Shield of Sir *Bruor le Noir*, one of the Knights of the Round-Table, to King *Arthur* of *Britain*, above 1100 years since.

To the aforesaid fifty five, may be added these two, which I took out of Sir *John Ferne's Glory of Generosity*, *p.* 154, 155. which he presents there as an ancient form of a Shield.

This (by old Heraulds) was termed a **Tabard**, a kind of Shield resembling or representing a Garment, which in old times was worn of the Female Sex: And in that form of Shield it was thought fit that Women should have their Coats of Arms depicted.

And here I shall conclude the forms and fashions of Shields, with the advice of Sir *John Ferne*, in his *Lacies Nobility*, *p.* 76. (though *Leigh* makes but 9 fashions, and I have produced 57.) Yet I am not so wedded to that opinion as to think there is no more, for there is no Kingdom, People, or Country, but they have their several forms and fashions: So that for 57 we may reckon up fifty times fifty seven; for as Men have altered in their civil Apparel or Vestures, so have they in all Ages, as phantastically, in their forms of Shields, Targets, Bucklers, and Escochions.

6. These foresaid Shields, or the most of them, which were used by the private Souldiers, were generally plain, without any Work or Embossment, till by their Swords they had meritted some Honour, whereby they were advanced to higher places; then had they devices, and tokens of Honour bestowed upon them by their Soveraign the

the General, or his Vice-Roy: Which token they bore on their Shields, as a reward of their adventurous and noble Acts, which being continued by their Successors; at length became Hereditary.

7. Notwithstanding I have seen Shields of that form and make, as have by Plates, Studds, Embossments, with other curious sorts of Workmanship made upon them, both in Steel and Brass, as hath made them look very lovely in the Beholder's Eyes; as the examples shewed by these following Figures in the Plate.

LVI. LVII. LVIII. LIX. LX. LXI. } All which doth manifest, how Shields (which had no Device, or Coat of Arms depicted on them) were adorned in former time.

How Shields were used for a Souldiers Defence.

8. EVery Shield had upon the back-side of it a double buckled Leather, through which they put the Arm and the Hand, which kept it stedfast to the Arm; and so, through the active use of the Shoulder and Elbow, it was managed too and fro according to pleasure: Those Shields or Targets which had double stays for the Arm and Hand were for Horse-men; but such as had only one handle were Bucklers for Foot-men. As the Figures doth manifest.

LXII. LXIV. } Foot-men's Bucklers with one Handle.

LXIII. LXV. } Horsemen's Shields with two Stays.

And these Shields and Bucklers thus supported, were by the Bearers thereof so managed, that by the skill and dexterity of the Souldier, he was able to ward and defend his whole Body from all the Blows of his Enemy. Blows being over it was cast upon the Back, where it hung by a Leather Girdle.

Of the Colours of Shields.

9. THey were for the most part of one Colour (if they were plain); and the reason thereof was, that till some Feats of Chivalry were performed, Devices were not to be put thereon: And that they were before that time of one Colour is apparent from ancient History. *For King Solomon made 200 Targets of beaten Gold; and that 600 Shekels of Gold went to one Target: And also that he made 300 Shields of beaten Gold, and that three pound of Gold went to each Shield, 1 King.* 10. 16, 17. These were *Scuta*, Escochions, or Targets for Horse-men; and the latter *Pelta*, or Bucklers for Foot-men: As *Boswell* in his *Armory of Honour, pag.* 19. explains it.

10. *Alexander* the Great (as *Justin* writeth) in a certain triumphant Journey of his, bestowed Shields of white Plate upon his Souldiers. In the Prophecy of *Nahum*, amongst the Books of Holy Scripture, it is said, *Nah.* 2. 3. that *The Shields of the Mighty are become Red.* And our *Saxon* Ancestors used to cover their Shields with tann'd Hides, which are generally of reddish Colour.

11. We find also that the *Grecians* used Russet Shields; the People of *Lucania*, in *Italy*, had their Shields wrought of Osiers or Twiggs, and covered over with Leather. It was the manner of the *Scythians*, *Medes*, and *Persians*, to have their Shields of red Colour, to the end that the effusion of their Blood should not easily be discovered (when they received any Wound) either to the discouragment of themselves, or animating of their Enemies. Moreover, they used Scarlet, and red Colours in their Military Garments, and Shields, to the end they might thereby strike the greater terrour and astonishment into the Hearts of their Enemies.

12. I find in a Note worthy of credit among the Arms of several Nobles and Gentlemen that attended on King *Henry* the First (in his expedition that he made into the parts of *Scotland*, to the Siege of *Kalaverock*) that one *Eumenius de la Bret*, did bear in his Shield only **Gules**.

To bear nothing in a Shield is now accounted dishonourable, though the Heraulds of old were esteemed ingenious that gave the Field **Sable** to Gown-men; the Field **Gules** to them in favour, rich, and honourable: The Field **Argent** to Divines and Innocent Persons. So the plainer the Coat, the nearest Antiquity; the simpler the form, the more gentile the Person.

13. Yet after Ages conceived it convenient, by outward marks, signs or tokens, to be set on Shields, thereby not only to distinguish the Bearers thereof as well one from another, but also to denote the Honour and Quality of the Person bearing it.

14. Our ancient *Britains* (besides other their Ensigns) had their Shields painted Blew: Perhaps (and as some do conjecture) because the Isle is invironed with the like coloured Ocean. So were the Shields of the German *Arii* (as witnesseth *Cornelius Tacitus*) painted Black.

15. And that this general way of bearing Shields of one Colour, was not only to the Souldiers, but we read of several chief Commanders, who had their Shields of one Colour, not putting any Device thereon, till by their Valour they had merited the same.

16. The King of *Portugal* (as saith *Andreas Resendius*) wore nothing at first but a white Flag, till by reason of a Victory obtained against five *Moriscos* Kings, the five Escochions **Azure** were by King *Alphonso* added. So that *Auriflamb*, that was so much admired by the French, was but of one colour, a square red *Syndon* Banner, which was thought to have been sent from Heaven, to lead the French Hoast: As the Shield at *Rome*, for staying of the Plague.

17. Likewise the Arms of *Aragon*, as they were said to be long since, was only a Field **Or**: Not charged with four Pallets as now it is blazoned, which happened at such time as one of the Kings thereof dipped his Fingers in the Blood of a new slain *Sarazen*. (Or as others say) *Lewis* the Emperour, in the Wounds of *Conde de Barcelona*, fighting on his part against the *Normans*, ennobled that yellow Standard, by drawing upon it those bloody marks which now it hath.

18. So we read of *Helenor*, described by *Virgil*, to wear a white Shield, till he had atchieved some honourable Note to put upon it. So *Agripas* had his Banner of an **Azure** Colour, being given him for a symbolical Argument of Manhood, shewed at Sea. So also was the Banner of *Navarr* all Red, and (as it is said) continued so till *Sanchez le Fort* King thereof, who added those golden Ornaments which now do shine therein. Also *Simon* the

High-Priest of the *Jews*, sent with *Numenius* a Shield of great value to the *Romans*, to confirm the League of Friendship between them, which contained 1000 pound in weight. It may be probably conjectured that there was no Portraicture thereon, in that there is no mention of it.

19. Also all the Seiges of *Tamberlain* the Great, he never used any Flags but of White or Red; but these we must not take to be Coats of Arms, but Flags of Truce, or Signs of bloody War: Neither can a plain Field be called a Coat of Arms, without extream abuse of Speech; more than a plain piece of Wax, a Seal; or a Sheet of unwritten Paper, a Letter. But we must hold such things (as them of one colour) as *Plato* did of his *Abrase* Tables, to be fit and capable of any Form: And till the receiving of such Forms, we must account them as rude and improprious things.

The Significations of the Colours used in Arms.

20. THE Signification, and Names by which each Colour is distinguished, is first by Mettle or Colour; the second by precious Stones: And thirdly, by Celestial Planets, as the Examples following will demonstrate.

LXVI. Is the colour White, which is termed in Blazon **Argent**; derived from the Latin Word *Argentum*, Silver: And by the precious Stone, is understood by *Pearl*: And by the Planet, *Luna*. The colour White, resembleth the Light, and is by *Scribonius* thus defined, *Albedo est color simplex, &c.* White is a simple colour, and subject to every stain, except great care be taken of those that wear or bear the same; for in Blazoning it betokeneth Innocency, Cleanness of Life, and Chastity.

LXVII. Is the colour Red, and is termed **Gules**: By the precious Stone, *Ruby*: And by the Planet, *Mars*. This colour *Vermilion*, or *Red*, is the chief amongst colours, forasmuch as it representeth the Fire, which of all other Elements is the most lightsome, and approacheth nearest to the quality of the Sun: In regard whereof it was ordered, that none should bear this colour but Persons of noble Birth and Rank, and Men of special Desert; for it signifyeth Dignity.

LXVIII. Is the colour *Blew*, and is termed **Azure**: By the precious Stone, *Saphire*: And by the Planet, *Jupiter*. This colour Blew doth represent the Sky in a clear Sun-shining Day, when all Clouds are exiled. *Job* speaking to the busy Searchers of God's Misteries, saith, *Job* 11. 17. *That then shall the residue of their Lives, be as clear as the Noon-day.* Which to the Judgment of Men (through the pureness of the Air) is of an **Azure** colour, or light *Blew*: And signifyeth Piety, and Sincerity.

LXIX. Is the colour *Black*, and is termed in Blazon by the Word, **Sable**; and is derived of the Latin Word *Sabulum*, which signifieth gross Sand, or Gravel, in respect of its heavy and earthy substance: The Blazon by precious Stones, is *Diamond*: And the Planet, *Saturn*. This colour Black, is contrary to White, having no participation with Light: And is by *Scribonius* thus defined, *Nigrido est color in corpore, &c.* For what thing soever there is, that hath either Life, Light, or Heat, if the same be once extinct, the thing it self forthwith becometh Black. This is said to be the colour of Horrour and Destruction; in which respect Mourning Garments are made of this colour, which signifieth and represents to us the horrour of Death and Corruption: As also Counsel and Antiquity.

LXX. Is the colour *Green*, and is termed by the Word, **Vert**, of *Veridis*; which signifies fresh and Green: By the precious Stone *Emyrald*: And the Planet, *Venus*. This colour Green, consisteth of Yellow and Blew, and is the first and principal of those mixt colours used in Herauldry. Which colour *Gwillim* Terms, *Colores medii*, not being colours of themselves, but mixt of two Simples. It signifieth Felicity and Pleasure.

LXXI. Is the colour *Purpure*, or Purple, and is termed in Blazon, **Purpure**: By the precious Stone, *Amethist*: And by the Planet, *Mercury*. The Purple colour is another mixt colour, and consisteth of much red, and a small quantity of black. *Cassaneus* saith, that these six colours White, Black, Red, Yellow, Blew and Green; being compounded and mixt together according to art and proportion, doth make a good Purple colour. This colour is by *Ferne* termed *Plumby*, (but this, and the two colours next nominated, being *Murrey* or *Sanguine*, and *Tawny*; are not in use in *English* Coats, but much used by the *Dutch* and *French* Gentry) it is, and in ancient time was, of that precious esteem, that none but Kings and Princes, and their Favourites, might be admitted to wear the same: As we may see, *Dan.* 5. 16. 1 *Mac.* 10. 20. For it signifieth Honour and Dignity.

21. *Sanguine* or *Murrey*. is a colour termed in Blazon, **Sanguine**: By the precious Stone, *Sard nyx*: And the Star, *Dragons Tail*. It is a colour compounded of Red and Blew, a Princely colour, in high esteem amongst Men of great degree; and by some old Heraulds is termed *Synamer*. (As Sir *J. Ferne*, *Glo.* 147. saith) But being a colour not in use with us in *England*, I forbear to put it in the Plate.

22. *Tawny* or *Orange* colour, is in Blazon termed, **Tenne**: by the precious Stone, *Jacynthe*: And by the Star, *Dragons Head*. This is a colour of worship (and is in *Glo.* 147.) termed by some old Heraulds, **Bruske**: Being compounded of two bright colours, *viz.* much Yellow, and a little Red. This colour is much in use by the *Dutch* and *German* People, but being out of use with us, I do not set it down in the Plate.

LXXII. Is the colour Yellow, or Gold colour, and is termed by the Mettle, **Or**; derived from the Latin word *Aurum*, Gold: By the precious Stone, *Topaze*: And the Planet, *Sol*. Because this excellent Mettle doth represent the colour of the glorious Sun; the possession thereof (as the Wiseman saith, *Eccl.* 20. 29.) *inchanteth the Heart of Fools, and blindeth the Eyes of the Wise.* And therefore such is the worthyness of this colour, which doth resemble Gold, that (as *Christine de Price* saith) none ought to bear the same in Arms, but Emperours and Kings, and such as be of the Blood-Royal: Though now it is of more common use.

23. These are the colours (being six in number) whereof Fields ought to be made; but as for the Charges in the Fields, their colours may be sixty-times six: For every thing that is born in a Coat of Arms, may be figured out in its proper and natural colour, which may be many and divers. And because for them we are allowed no terms of Blazon, therefore they are all comprehended under this word, **Proper**: As painted in its natural and proper colour.

Colours derived from them used in Herauldry.

From Yellow.

24. YEllow, or a perfect bright Yellow.
Gold Yellow is a deeper Yellow.
Fire colour, or Flame colour, a more reddish Yellow.
Lemon colour, is a more pale Yellow.
Box or Straw colour, a weak or imperfect Yellow.
Brimstone colour, a whitish and pale Yellow.
Bright-bay or Pheasant colour, a deep reddish Yellow.

Colours derived from White.

25. WHite, or the most perfect Snow White.
Ivory White.
Silver colour,
Milk-White, a blewish White.
Hoary colour, or white-haired, a mixture of White and Black.
Ash colour, more blackish than White.
Grey, or Crane colour.
Russet.

Colours derived from Red.

26. RED, a pure bright Red.
Scarlet, a Vermilion Red.
Crimson or Stamell.
Carnation or Rose colour.
Flesh or Horse-flesh colour.
Bay colour, a colour of a Horse, being a reddish brown.
Fox colour, more Red than Yellow.
Orenge colour, red Ortment colour.
Bole colour, or Brick colour.
Clay colour.

Colours derived from Blew.

27. BLew, or a bright Blew.
Sky colour, or a light welmish Blew.
Watchet colour, a more light whitish Blew.
Sea-water Blew, or a waterish Blew.
Marble colour.
A Venice or Blunket colour Blew.

Colours derived from Green.

28. GReen, or Grass-Green.
Pine-Leaf Green.
Willow-Green, or Willow colour, a whisish Green.
Sea-water-Green.
Venice-Green.
Popinjay-Green.
Pink-Green, a Green inclining to a Yellow.
Watchet-Green, a light colour between Green and Blew.

Colours derived from Black.

29. BLack, or Ivory-Black.
Jet-black, or a shining Velvet-black.
Ibony, black as Pitch, Satin-black.
Iron colour, or Iron-Grey.
Buck colour, between a Russet and Black.
Deep-Russet.
Rats colour.
Turky colour.
Silver Rabet colour.

Colours derived from Purple.

30. PUrple or Murrey, Blush colour, lighter.
Violet colour, more lighter.
Peach colour, a more light bright coloured Violet.
Bruse or Bruise colour, of Black, Blew and Yellow.
Motley colour, any mixt colours.
Gredeline, pale Peach.
Isabella.

Colours derived from Sanguine.

31. SAnguine, or a blood Red.
Rudy colour.
Deep Red.
Dragons blood colour.
Swart, or Swarvy Red.
Saffron colour.
Synaper, or Lake colour.

Colours derived from Tawny.

32. TAwny, or Swarthy colour, a blackish Yellow.
Hair colour.
Dun colour.
Mouse colour.
Chesnut colour.
Fallow or Dear colour.
Swart, Swarvy or Tawny-moor colour.
Lion colour.
Bay Copper colour, a deep yellowish Red.

33. The signification of the bearing of these aforesaid Mettles and Colours, and how the Bearers Mind should be endowed with Vertue, according to the colours of his Coat; I refer you to *Leigh's Accidence of Armory, pag.* 3. *to* 13. and *Guillim's Display of Herauldry, f.* 18. *to* 22. As also the Etemologies or Significations of the compositions and joinings of Mettles and Colours one with another.

Of the Worthiness of Colours.

34. IN the bearing of Arms, there are sundry degrees of the Worthyness thereof, and they are all of the Superlative Degree; As followeth,

1. Most Ancient.	5. Most Glorious.
2. Most Glittering.	6. Most Honourable.
3. Most Rich.	7. Most Lovely.
4. Most Fair.	8. Most Delightsome.

35. Now you shall understand, that that Field and Charge which consisteth of Black and White, that Coat is most Ancient: Because Light and Darkness, represented by White and Black, are the most ancient Colours of all others, and therefore are accounted more worthy than any in respect of their Antiquity. 36. When

36. When the Field and Charge is Gold and Green, it is esteemed most Glittering, taken from a Saying, in *Eccl.* 10. 19. As the Smaradge that is set in Gold; so is the mirth of Musick, by the mirth of Wine. By which comparison, you may see that **Vert** and *Gold* is very sprightful, glittering and lively.

37. When the Field and Charge is Gold and Black, that Coat is esteemed most Rich; taken from the Diamond set in Gold, where the Mettle honoureth the Stone (which is black) and the Stone the Mettle; both which enricheth each other: So that these colours of all other are the most Richest.

38. When the Field and Charge is White and Red, that is of all colours accounted most Fair and Beautiful; because the same is so held, especially being well mixt in a Womans Face.

39. When the Field and Charge is Gold and Blew, it is most Glorious; for what is more transcendent in brightness and glory (within this visible World) than the shining Sun, in the Azury Firmament.

40. When the Field and Charge is Gold and Red, that Coat is esteemed most Honourable, or most Royal; as an Imperial Majesty, being dect in Scarlet, and adorned with the purest Gold of *Ophire*.

41. When the Field and Charge is White and Blew, that is most Lovely: because when *Aurora*'s Morning Curtains are dipt within that changeable Die, that day is most pleasant, lovely, and admired by the beholders.

42. When the Field and Charge is White and Green, that Coat is accounted ever most Delightsome; and that especially when *Hyems* hath cast away his Furr'd Gown, and Lady *Ver* begins to deck the Fields and Trees, with Leaves and Flowers: O then! How delightsome is it to see, and smell the same, when the Earth is of such a Hue.

43. I do confess, in one thing herein named, I do vary from *Leigh*, who terms Black and White most Fair, which I hold most Ancient: And I'le leave it to any Persons Judgment (for the Reasons therein said) whether is the most agreeable to Truth and Reason.

Of the Points of an Escochion.

44. BEfore you enter into the Rules of Blazoning, you must be informed what is an **Escochion**: And how many several Points are therein contained. For that end, view the 73*d* Example in the Plate of this Chapter.

LXXIII. An Escochion is a triangular form, having two corners above, and one below; the Ancients did usually make it three corner'd, with a little swelling out of the Sides, much like the 5*th* Figure: But our Modern Heraulds draw it streight down in the Sides, and then compass it to a Point in the bottom, like the 6*th* Figure: Or else more round, as the 33*d* *, and 50*th* Figures in the Plate.

45. For the several points of the Escochion, I have by Letters set in the parts thereof, expressed the names given to each place. As,

A, Signifieth the **Dexter Chief Point.**

B, Signifieth the **Precise middle Chief Point,** or **Chief Point.**

C, Signifieth the **Sinister Chief Point.**

D, Signifieth the **Fesse Point,** or **Honour Point.**

E, Signifieth the **Dexter Base Point.**

F, Signifieth the **Exact middle Base Point,** termed the **Base Point.**

G, Signifieth the **Sinister Base Point.**

46. The knowledg of these Points is very requisite, in respect, that when diverse of these Points are occupied, with sundry things of divers kinds and different natures (as oft-times it falleth out in some Escochions, and Coats of Arms) then you may be able thereby to assign unto each Charge, its apt Point, and peculiar Name, according to the dignity of his Place: For no Man can perfectly blazon any such Coat, unless he do rightly understand the particular Points of the Escochion.

A E, Signifieth the **Dexter Side** of the Escochion.

C G, Signifieth the **Sinister Side** of the Escochion.

And that is mentioned only when the Charge doth occupy, or is contained in the whole side of the Escochion.

47. Mr. *Gwilliam* and *Leigh* makes mention of other Points, which they call the **Honour Point,** above the **Fesse Point**: And the **Nombril Point,** under the **Fesse Point.** In place whereof, I have set * Stars, but give them no Names, because I hold them needless, and superfluous; and to burden the Memory with that as is of no concernmenment is troublesome. Therefore I have omitted them, holding no Point more deserving the **Honour Point** than the **Fesse Point.** For I never yet saw that Coat of Arms (let it be of what kind soever) but without the help of those two Points, I could give an intelligible blazon to it, so that any Person that is skilled therein, may trick the same exactly and truly.

TO THE

Right Reverend Father in God, the Lord Bishop of CHESTER;

AND

The Reverend the DEAN,

WITH THE

PREBENDS, and rest of the CLERGY,

OF THE

Cathedral Church of *Christ*, and the Blessed Virgin *Mary*;

WITHIN THE

Honourable and Loyal City of CHESTER.

WHat my Endeavours have been herein, is in all humble manner dedicated to your serious perusal; all that I desire is, that in the reading you will judg candidly, and censure rightly: And then I make no doubt, but when you have done, you will willingly accept of the Labours of the Son of your Church,

R. H.

CHAP. III.

IT may be questioned of some, what those Signs and Tokens of Honour (called Arms) were at first composed off? To this Mr. *Gwilliam's*, gives this resolution, *fol.* 325. and 2. 3. that they must of necessity be *(signa existentium in rerum natura)* a representation of Things in Being and Nature: For it is impossible to represent things which are not.

Arms of what first composed.

2. IF then they consisted of things in Essence, no doubt they were such as the Vulgar (as well as the more Skilfuller sort) did well understand, and knew, through frequent use, what they were: As being the express Portraictures either of Celestial Bodies, as Sun, Moon, Stars, *&c.* Or of Things Sublunary, as Fire, Water: Or else Vegetables, as Trees, Plants, Fruit, Herbs and Flowers, *&c.* Or else they were resemblances of Earthly and Intelligible Creatures, as Men, Beasts, Fowles, creeping Things, *&c.* Or else of Instruments, or Tools of familiar use, and exercise, in Mechanical Trades; which in respect of their common use, were best known to Men: And therefore served most fitly for Notes and Marks of precise differencing of each particular Person from another.

The Antiquity of Arms.

3. TOuching the Antiquity of Arms, *Diodorus Siculus* writeth; of which *Gwilliam* maketh mention, *f.* 5. That *Osyris*, sirnamed *Jupiter the Just*, Son of *Ham*, the cursed Son of *Noah* (called of the Gentiles *Janus*) who being banished from the Blessed Tents of *Shem* and *Japhat*, was constrained to seek some remote place to settle Himself and Children in: For which purpose he assembled a great multitude, and appointed *Hercules* his eldest Son Captain. In which expedition of War, both he Himself, and his three Sons, did paint certain Signs upon their Shields

Shields and Bucklers: Which Signs were called Arms. This *Osyris*, (as saith my Author,) lived not many Years after the Deluge; at which time Arms and Ensigns of Honour were first invented, which is near 3820 years since.

4. And that such Ensigns of Honour were in use in *Moses*'s Time, is evident from the command of God, *That every Man of the Children of Israel, should pitch his Camp by his own Standard, with the Ensign of his Fathers House*, *Numb.* 2. 2, 9, 16, 17, 24, 31, 34. Here you see we have an uncontroulable Warrant, pronounced by the Almighty, for the use of two sorts of Arms, or Ensigns; the one general, being in number four: These only ordered for the Leading and Directing of these four great Regiments, or Battalia's (as I may call them.) And the other particular, serving for the demonstration of the several Families; and for the distinction of the particular Persons in each Family, for the more commodious distributing of them into Bands.

5. There are some Authors of opinion, that these Signs and Tokens (which we call Arms) were utterly unknown to the ancient *Greeks* and *Romans*, there memory not of old being found within those Nations. And again, others say they were first begun at the Siege of *Troy*; others affirm that they were brought to light by *Charles the Great*, and the *Lombards*: And some are of opinion that they began in the time of *Frederick Barbarosa*. Some again (that lash out as far on the other side) there are, who are not wanting to affirm, before the Flood, such a King, Prince, or Common-wealth, bore such and such a Shield, or painted Symbol, *Elem. p.* 10. Insomuch, that I have ever look'd when these kind of Men (who will write any thing) would as readily tell me what Arms, or Badge, *Noah*'s Ark did carry in its Sern: As well as we out of the *Acts of the Apostles*, can inform our selves, *Acts* 28. 11. what name the Ship was known by, that transported St. *Paul* towards *Rome*.

6. That the Discipline of Arms was brought to more perfection, in the foresaid Emperor and *Frederick*'s time, than formerly; I do acknowledg: And then more generally propagated and dispersed. According to the Saying of *Cassaneus*, *non erubescat antiquitas, &c.* nothing is perfectly devised at an instant, but it is continued by time, and much labour, and great industry, that brings it to perfection. So doubtless, Arms have been in use both before and after *Moses*'s time, and yet long before the Destruction of *Troy*: At which Siege it was brought to a certain perfection. And yet more rudely done in those ancient times, than now it is in these our Days; and notwithstanding all our endeavours, there is a want in many things, a refining of others, and an expugning of gross Absurdities.

First Painting of Shields.

7. THE Antiquity of Arms on Shields and Bucklers, we may then derive from the first beginning of Wars, and Field-Battles; for the order of Arms, Fields, and Fightings, were used by the victorious *Scythians*: And as it appeareth that they were Warriers, so were they also bearers of Arms. Also *Justinian* writeth, that *Pallas* did not only teach the *Libians* the Law of Arms, but also the Feats of Defence belonging to War.

8. *Simiramis*, the Wife of *Ninus*, excelled all others in Chivalry; she brought *Ethiopia* under her Subjection, and made war in *India*. Was all this done without Ensigns, and Tokens of Honour, without which neither Battle can be fought, nor Men marshalled to the Wars? These things being first devised, for the more commodious distribution of Nations and Kingdoms, into Tribes and Families; into Regiments and Bands: As also for the marshalling and conducting them into Marshal Expeditions, and for distinguishing of particular Persons in War, as well amongst themselves, as from their Enemies. For it often falleth out, by reason of like Armour and Weapons, *&c.* (in default of such Signs) that much Treachery is wrought, and many Men (after Battle is ended) do make their Retreat to the Enemies Troops, under the Notion of their own Friends, to the endangering of their Lives.

9. So that it is clear, that without these Marks and Tokens of Arms, there would, nor could, be nothing but confusion; therefore this was the only cause, why such Notes or Distinctions (called Arms) were put in use: For if a Man encountreth us, we do forthwith discover, by the Mark he beareth, whether he be Friend or Enemy. Now in the first assumption of these Signs, every Man did take to himself some kind of Creature, as he thought best fitting and agreeable to his Estate and Condition.

Now as their Institution is not new, but very ancient; so their use was not limited, or restrained to some few particular Kingdoms, Nations, or Countreys: But more largely spread all the World over. Insomuch, that there is no Nation, Countrey, or People so barbarous, but they have their particular Signs, and Tokens whereby they may be distinguished, and distinctly known and discerned from others.

10. That several have thus adorned their Shields, Standards, and Ensigns, is manifest from *Homer*, *Virgil*, *Pliny*, *Paulus Emilius*, and several other ancient Writers; all which have writ that both Kings, Emperors, and Captains, have in Wars, had Devices and Emblems, painted on their Shields and Standards. *Plutarch*, in the Life of *Merius* saith, that the *Cimbrians*, a wild and barbarous People, in the Parts of *Denmark*, *Norway*, and *Almain*, had their Shields adorned with the form of divers kinds of Savage Beasts. Also *Amphiaraus* (as *Pindorus* the *Thebean* Poet saith) had a Dragon painted on his Shield. And *Capaneus*, one of the seven Captains that besieged *Thebes*, bore the many headed *Hydra*. (As *Statius* the *Neopolitan* Poet reporteth.) *Polyniceo*, bore a *Phynx*. *Agamemnon*, in the *Trojan* Wars, bore in his Shield a *Lion*, with this Motto, or Epigram; *Terror hic est hominum, & qui hunc gerit est Agamemnon.*

11. *Ulysses* bore a *Dolphin*, and a *Tryphon* breathing out Flames of Fire. *Perseus* bore *Maduja*'s Head. *Antiochus*, a *Lion* with a white Wand. *Theseus* bore an *Oxe*. *Seleucus* bore a *Bull*. And *Augustus*, a *Phynx*. With an infinite more, which to declare would require much time, but I omit them.

12. So of Countreys, Nations, and People in general, it is said, that the *Israelites* bore in their Standard the Letter *Tau*. The *Scythians* a Thunderbolt. The *Egyptians*, an Oxe. The *Phrygians*, a Swine. The *Thracians*, *Mars* the God of War. The *Romans*, an Eagle. The *Persians*, a Bow and Arrows. *Carali*, a Savage People of *Pontus*, bore two Wheels. The ancient *Teutonicks*, an

an Horse, *&c.* These and the like Institutions are not new, but very ancient: For in all these Examples, there is none so young as a thousand Years. But if we ascend to the Worlds younger Age, we shall find them not only of a thousand years Antiquity, but to be Antiquity it self.

Colours of a Coat of Arms.

13. SHields at the first (as you have heard) were of one Colour, but when Devices were put upon them, then more Colours were added, to make the same more compleat; that is to say, the colour of the continent, and the colour of the thing contained: The colour of the Field, and the colour of the Partition, the Ordinary, or the Charge of the Field.

14. So that two colours or more, are absolutely necessary to the making of a perfect Coat of Arms. *Note*, But withal, they are to be ordered according to the grounds of Art and Knowledg: For if there be two colours, one must be a Mettle; for no Armories are proper, without one of the two: Neither are they said to be good and honourable bearing. According to that vulgar Saying of all, and used as a Proverb, for a thing done, and wrong done.

Mettle upon Mettle is bad Herauldry,
Colour upon Colour is false Armory.

15. Shields consisting of Colours and Mettles are honourable; and things of the least worth, are worthy bearings: With this Rule of Priority, wherein we must account the Female less honourable than the Male; the Servant less than the Master; the Subject than the Prince: And things Sensitive less honourable than the Rational; and the Vegitive than the Sesitive. Yet every thing hath its due Honour, thereby denoting the dignity of the Bearer by the thing born.

16. Though I do confess, contrary to this ground, there are some Coats which plead Antiquity, which have in them Colour upon Colour, and Mettle upon Mettle, and yet are from the Bearers, accounted honourable: But these we shall pass over, and place them in a Rule by themselves, like to *Heter clites*, or Extravagants, as not tryable by the general Rule, and tract of Armory. And so proceed to the rules of Blazon.

Rules of Blazon, in General.

17. ARms, or Herauldry, doth principally consist in things born, and the terms or expressions used: The first to delineate the shape or proportion, the latter describes it in its proper action. And this is called Blazon or blazoning.

Note, The Definition then of Blazoning, or the Signification of the word Blazon; is, to give to each thing (whether Vegetive, Sensitive, or Intellective) born in Armory, its apt and significant terms, or words of Art, as they are generally used in those Sciences, to which such things do belong, or appertain.

18. It followeth therefore, by due order, that I should here annex such general Rules as are peculiar to Blazon; as for other particular Rules, I shall reserve them for their due and proper places.

First, Then in Blazoning, you must use an advised Deliberation, before you enter thereunto; for having once begun, again to recal the same, doth argue an inconsiderate forwardness, which merits a just reprehension.

Secondly, The more compendious your Blazon is, by so much the more it is held commendible; for what is brief is alway held to be most delectable. Therefore you must shun multiplicity of Words; yet with this caution, that you omit nothing material to be expressed; for as the one doth eclipse the Understanding, so the other is offensive to the Memory. Therefore you must take special heed to words in Blazon, for by either adding or diminishing makes the Arms cease to be the same.

Thirdly, You must not be too full of Conceits in Blazon, nor use Iterations or Repetitions of words in the blazoning of one Coat, as not to name one Colour or Mettle twice; and especially these four Words (of, or, and, with:) for the doubling of any of these, is counted a great Fault, insomuch as the offender herein is deemed unworthy of the name of a good Blazoner.

Fourthly, In blazoning you must have a regard of the things that are born in Arms, as also whereunto they may be resembled, whether they be natural, or artificial; and so to give them their due terms accordingly.

Special Rules in Blazon.

19. AFter the general Rules, there is some other especial and particular Rules, which hold forth a greater Observation, than any foregoing, and they are these.

First, In the blazoning of any Coat, you must ever remember to begin with the Field, and then proceed to the blazon of the Charge: Moreover, if the Field be occupied with sundry things, whether the same be one or more, or of divers kinds, you must first nominate that as lyeth next, and immediately upon the Field, and then blazon that which is more remote from the same.

Secondly, You are to observe in the blazoning of Coats, that to each particular state of Gentry, to give a blazoning correspondent to their Degrees: As for Example, to Gentlemen as have no Title of Dignity, as all such who are under the Degree of a Baron; their Coats are to be blazoned by Mettles, and Colours. To Persons ennobled by their Soveraign; such as Barons, Viscounts, Earls, Marquesses, Dukes, and all under the Degree of a Prince; their Coats are to be blazoned by Precious Stones. And to Princes, Kings, Emperours and Monarchs, and all such as exercise Soveraignity; their Coats to be blazoned by the Planets.

The several Ways of Blazon.

20. THere are divers ways of blazoning, but especially three Forms, by which the colours of things are described; and these are first by Mettles and Colours, the second by Precious Stones, the third by Planets: And they are these, with their Significations, and Letters, by which they are expressed or marked, in the Tricks or Draughts of all Coats of Arms.

Or,	O.	Topaz,	♌	Sol,	☉	Yellow.
Argent,	A.	Pearl,	♋	Luna,	☽	White.
Gules,	G.	Ruby,	♈	Mars,	♂	Red.
Azure,	B.	Saphire,	♐	Jupiter,	♃	Blew.
Sable,	S.	Diamond,	♎	Saturn,	♄	Black.
Vert,	V.	Emerald,	♏	Venus,	♀	Green.
Purpure,	P.	Amethist,	♎	Mercury,	☿	Purple.
Tenne,	T.	Jacynthe,	♑	Dragons Head,	☊	Tawney.
Sanguine,	M.	Sardonyx,	♓	Dragons Tail,	☋	Murrey.

These are the Significations and Names by which each Colour is distinguished: and either by their Letters, or the Characters of the Stones and Planets, may be marked on any tricked Coat.

21. Besides this, there is a certain way by Hetching to signify any Colour or Mettle, as when a Person hath his Coat of Arms engraven upon his Plate, as Cups, Canns, Flagons, Dishes, and such like; by the several ways of Hetching the Field, the Colour or Mettle thereof may be expressed: For Example, if the Field or Charge be Gold, it is spotted all over. As the Plate before mentioned, *Lib.* 1. *chap.* 2. *Numb.* 72. doth demonstrate.

22. If the Field or Charge be Silver, then they are left plain, without any Hetching at all. But this is to be noted, if the Plate be gilt Plate, then it is contrary; for the Field and Charge then must be plain, and without Hetching with Pricks, and the Field for Silver to be pricked: They ever occupying the place of one the other, according to the colour of the Plates engraved upon.

Note, This would be very good if all Goldsmiths, and Engravers of Plate, would observe it; by reason it makes distinction in Coats, which without would be but the same Coat, though belonging to different Names, and Families.

If the Field or Charge be *Red*, then they are Hetched with Strokes or Lines, drawn down-right, from the top to the bottom; as in the foresaid Plate, *Numb.* 67.

If the Field or Charge be *Blew*, then they are Hetched by Lines drawn right over-thwart the Escochion; as in the Plate, *Numb.* 68.

If the Field or Charge be *Black*, then they are expressed by a double Hetched Line, the one streight down, and the other by Lines over-cross; as in the foresaid Plate, *Numb.* 69.

If the Field or Charge be *Green*, then it is Hetched or Expressed by Lines bendways to the **Dexter Side**; as Plate, *Numb.* 70.

If the Field or Charge be *Purple*, then they are expressed quite contrary; that is to say, by Lines Hetched bendways, to the bend **Sinister**; as the Plate, *Numb.* 71.

And for the rest, not being Colours in use with us, there is no Lines assigned to them: And indeed properly there is no more than four colours in Arms, with *British* men, which are **Gules, Azure, Sable,** and **Vert**: and two Mettles, **Or,** and **Argent.**

Of the Honourable Ordinaries.

23. HAving shewed, by several Demonstrations, the manner and ways of Blazon: It now remains, to consider, what the things are that must be blazoned, and they are called Charges.

Now the Charge of a Coat of Arms is that thing whatsoever it be, that doth occupy the Field, and is the same; as, *continenum in contente*: Whether it be Sensitive or Vegetive, Natural or Artificial, and is placed, either throughout all the Superficies of the Escochion, or else is in some special part of the same.

All Charges, are either Proper or Common, Ordinary or Extraordinary.

24. Those are said to be Proper or Ordinary Charges, in Coats of Arms, which are of ordinary use, and belong to this Art; and therefore are called Ordinaries, they have the Title also of Honourable Ordinaries: In regard the Coat is honoured thereby. Forasmuch as they are oft-times given by Emperors, Kings and Princes, as additions of Honour, to Coats Armour of Persons of merit and descent.

25. Those are said to be Common or Extraordinary, where there is Charges without any of the Ordinaries; or that have Ordinaries between, or charged with (or both) by any other manner of thing alive or dead. Of which we shall treat farther hereafter, *lib.* 4. *chap.* 1.

26. As for the Honourable Ordinaries, they are according to *Leigh*, nine: But *Gwilliam* numbers them not, yet by his distribution of them, by Lines, he intimateth as much as if there were five more; to which, upon that account, I may add as many to them as will make up the number twenty: Which are as followeth,

1. The **Chief.**
2. The **Pale.**
3. The **Bend.**
4. The **Fesse.**
5. The **Barr.**
6. The **Escochion.**
7. The **Cross.**
8. The **Salter.**
9. The **Cheveron.**

By *Leigh.*

10. The **Giron.**
11. The **Quarter.**
12. The **Pile.**
13. The **Flasques.**
14. The **Tresure.**

By *Gwilliam.*

15. The **Fret.**
16. The **File.**
17. The **Bordor.**
18. The **Orle.**
19. The **Inescochion.**
20. The **Canton.**

Added to them.

27. Some

27. Some Heraulds, will not admit of several of these for Ordinaries, because they stand oft-times for Differences: Yet in regard they are as well born for Coats themselves, without any other Charge, as with Charges; makes me take that freedom, as to insert them amongst the rest, for Ordinaries, being in ordinary use in Coat Armour, as well as the rest.

The composing of Ordinaries, according to the several Lines.

28. THE Ordinaries are made, and formed of Lines diversly composed; some single, others double, or three or four-fold: And according to the divers Tracts and Forms, of those said Lines, they do receive a divers Shape and variation of Names. Therefore these Lines must be duely considered, and especially their Properties.

29. Now the Properties of Lines, are either streight, angled, or crooked: Which, because few Heraulds heretofore have treated thereof, I shall give you particular Demonstrations of those several sorts of Lines, by which the Ordinaries are composed or drawn: As they are in the Plate of this Chapter, under these following Numbers, and Names.

I. Is a **Plain Line**, which needs not to be named; for all Ordinaries composed, or formed of streight Lines, you must only name the Ordinary, without mentioning the name of the Line whereof the same is made.

II. Is an **Angle**, this is when the Line of Length is (as it were) cut off in its streightness, by another streight Line, which in the joyning make a perfect Square Angle: Of *Artists* termed **Rect Angled.**

III. Is a **Bevile**, that is when the long Line is cut off by another Line, which makes an accute or sharp cornered Angle; inclining in the Corners to a Triangular form.

IV. Is **Escartelee**; that is when the streight Line is cut off in the middle, with a perfect Square, into an Ordinary, or Partition, framed according to an Ordinary.

V. Is **Nowy**; that is when the streight Line is cut in the middle, by a direct **Semy-Circle**, or half round: By the *French* termed **Tranchee.**

VI. Is a Line **Arched** or **Enarched**, and is termed (when both Sides of an Ordinary are answerably bowed) either **Archee flected**, or **flecked**: But if only one side of an Ordinary be bowed inward, it is termed **Inver, Concave, Champaine**, and of some **Champion**; if the bending be outwards, it is termed **Shapourned**, or **Convexed.**

VII. Is termed **Double Archee**, as having two Bends, or Arches: It is also called **Nuee**, or **Undee** of the *French* Heraulds: And sometimes **Brettissee**, and also **Inveckee**, and **Goaree.**

VIII. Is **Wavee**, or **Wavey**, or **Waved**, or **Unde**, or **Surged**; in respect it beareth a representation of the swelling Waves, or Billows of the Sea, which being tossed by the Winds do rise and fall after this manner: *Upton* calls it **Watery** or **Undatyd**, and **Undee.**

IX. Is termed **Invecked**; that is, when a quantity of half rounds, joining together with sharp points or corners, is turned into any of the Ordinaries: The *French* term it, **Nuagee endevans**, that is cloudy, or clouded inwards.

X. Is termed **Ingraled**; that is when the sharp points turn outward into the Field: As you shall see in the Examples following. The *French* term it **Tranchee en Nuee.**

XI. Is termed **Nebula**; because it hath the representation, or a resemblance of a Cloud: *Upton* calls this **Invecked.**

XII. Is blazoned **Battailled, Imbattelled**, or **Crenelle**; because it represents the Battlements of a Wall or Tower, from whence it takes its name. The *French*, and so doth *Gwilliam*, term it **Crenell**, from **Crene**, which in *French* signifies the Dent, or Notch in the horn of a Bow. By *Upton*, it is called **Indented.** It is by Mr. *Morgan*, called **Brettessed**; but the difference of battelling, and brettessing, you will see in Bends of that nature, *Chap.* 4. *Numb.* 32, 33. The *French* blazon it **Emmanche**, or **Creneaux.** And *Upton* saith, that anciently this was termed **Endentee.**

XIII. Is in blazon called **Battelled-Imbattelled**; because it hath one degree of battelling above another: That before being a single Battlement, and this a double one. Of some termed **Battelled grady**; from the Ascent, Steps, or Degrees on the Battlement.

XIV. This is termed **Potente**; yet some call it **Counter-Potente**, and **Potence-Counter-Potence.** It is by *Leigh* blazoned, **Barmiere**, or **Meitre.** And **Carry Cuppa**, And **Cerrey Tassa.** See *Chap.* 7. *Numb.* 8.

XV. Is termed **Indented**, from its resemblance to the Teeth of a Saw, derived from the Latin Word *Dens* a Tooth, or *Indentura*, a certain Deed, or Writing, whose top is indented, or cut into like Teeth. *Upton* calls it **Racee**, or **Inrased.** And *Boswel* in his Armory blazoneth it, **Ciurie**, and in another place **Dentelle.** And *Leigh* calls it **Lentally**, *pag.* 79. The *French* **Emmancee**, and **Ciuree**, and **Serrated.**

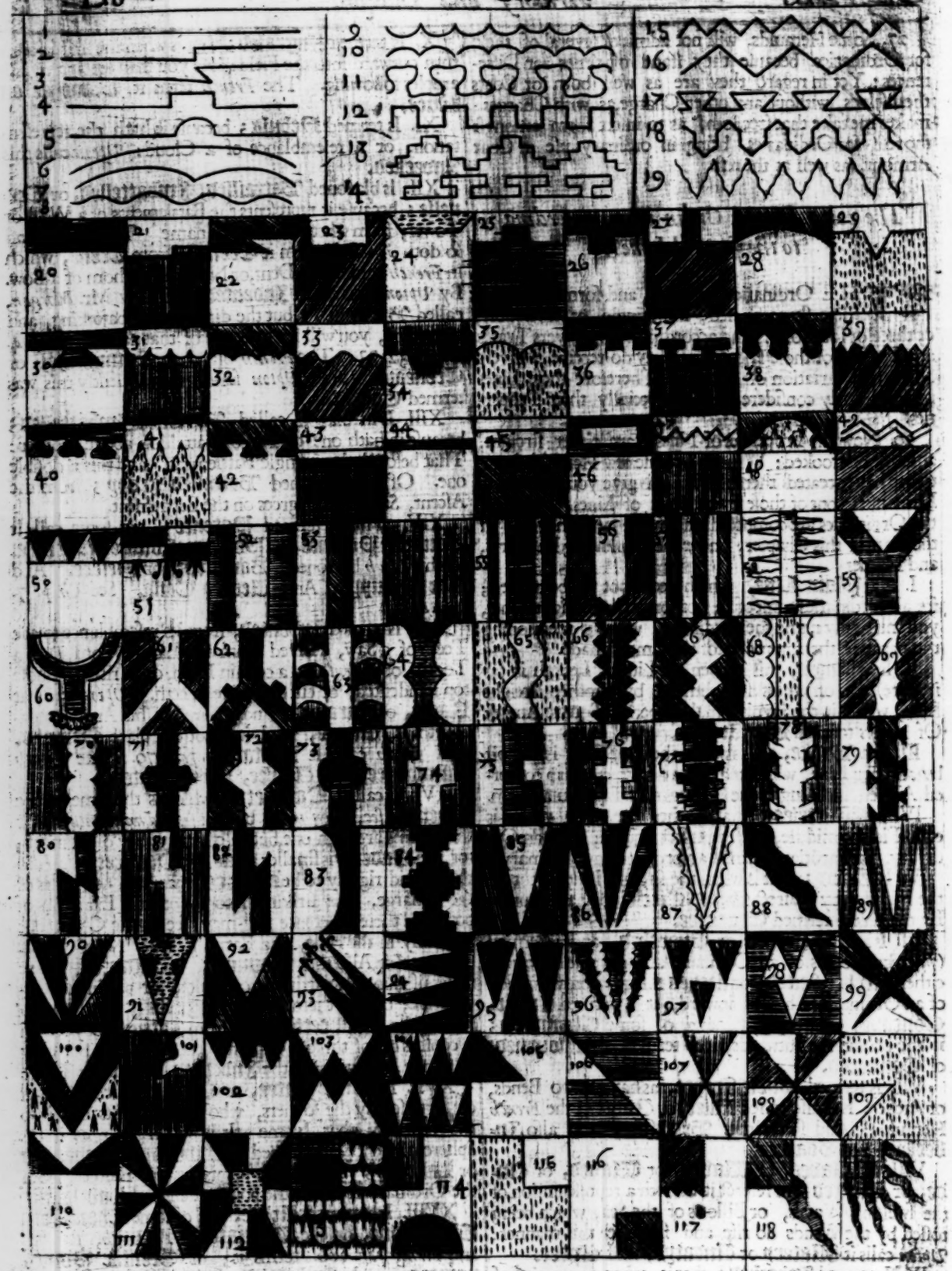
XVI. Is called **Dauncette**, which is the same to the **Indente**, *secundum quale*, but not *secundum quantum*; for their forms are both one, but in quantity they differ much; for the **Indent** is smaller than the **Dauncette.** Also that is said rightly to be **Dauncet**, that hath both sides of the Charge, one striking into the other: Examples of both and their difference you may see in the Chief, but especially in the Fesse, and Barrs, *Chap.* 4. *Numb.* 71, 72.

☞ *Note*, Also that **Dauncett**, and **Invecking** are never used in any partitions of Fields, or parting in Ordinaries; but for them is used **Ingraling** and **Indenting**: Also **Dauncette** differs from **Indented**, by reason it consists but of three Teeth only (never more, but may have one less) whereas the **Indented** hath many Teeth.

XVII. Is termed **Patee**, or **Dovetail**, from a term of Art used by the Joyners, who make Joints one into the other by that Name. It is by Mr. *Morgan* in his Sphere of Gentry, blazoned **Inclave**, and **Lambaured** or **Labelled**; because the points as they proceed from the Ordinary represent the points or ends of **Labels.**

XVIII. Is blazoned **Ardee**, and of some **Champion, Champaine**, or else **Carriated**: As *Leigh*, *pag.* 79. and *Ferne*, *pag.* 200. terms it; or **Crenile Points pointed**, and **Imbattled christed.** *Upton* calls it **Cerree.** There is another kind of Line with the bendings round, which he terms **Inveeree Cerre.**

XIX. Is termed **Rasie**, or **Rayed**; in regard it hath a resemblance to the Rays of the Sun, which shooteth out



out like the warbling of a Flame of Fire, or the Light of a Candle: Of the *French* termed **Flamant**, or Flameing.

These are the forms of Lines by which Ordinaries are composed: I shall now shew you how the Ordinaries themselves are made by them.

Of the Chief.

30. A **Chief** is that which by the striking of any one of the said several forms of Lines on the top part of the Escochion, and by reason of that partition or division, taketh away the third part of the same, makeing it another Colour: As for Example.

XX. He beareth Argent, a **Chief** Azure, born by *Hasselwell*: The Chief saith *Leigh* and *Gwilliam*, containeth in depth the full third part of the Field; which may in some cases be augmented or diminished a little from this Rule, but in no case divided into halves. If it be not charged either in the Field or Chief, then saith *Morgan lib. 1. fol. 9.* It is termed **Per Chief**, but if either be charged, then it is blazoned, only a Chief. *Upton* calls it a **Head**.

Parted per Chief, G. and O. born by *Cumyse*.
O. a Chief G. by the Name of *Lumley*.
B. a Chief A. born by *Monstrell*: and by *Hasselwood*.
B. the like O. by *Beaufeul*: Also by *Lusres*.
O. the like B. by *Lisours*, and *Staunton*.
S. a Chief A. by *Penlay*.

☞ This Ordinary, and all others, being made of a streight Line, needs no naming of it (as before is said) but if it were composed of any other Line but this, then you must mention the form of the Line whereof the same Ordinary is composed, be it **Chief**, **Bend**, **Fesse**, **Cheveron**, *&c.* Saying such a thing either **Invecked**, **Engraled**, **Wavey**, and the like: As in the Examples following.

XXI. He beareth Gules, a **Chief angled** Argent, born by the Name of *Carny*. This is of some termed a **Chief Bevile**, but it cannot properly be so termed in regard that Bevile is not rect Angled, but cornered eskue, as in the next: Therefore this is most properly termed a **Chief rect Angled**.

XXII. He beareth Argent, a **Chief Bevile** Vert, by the Name of *Beverley*.

XXIII. He beareth Gules, a **Chief cooped** Argent, born by the Name of *Cheeslet*: Also *Van Rusdorf* of *Bavaria*, beareth S. such a Chief A. The French term this a **Chief recourse**, but it is more properly blazoned cooped; being that nothing but the ends are taken away, which is a cooping of it.

XXIV. He beareth Argent, a **Chief cooped Bevilwise**, Gules, by the Name of *Doucker*.

XXV. He beareth Azure, a **Chief Escartelee**, Argent: Some blazon this Coat, He beareth in a Field Azure, one **Imbattlement** in a **Chief**, Or. But if the **Imbattlement** or **Crenell** had proceeded from the Chief, it would be best blazoned; as in the next Example.

XXVI. He beareth Argent, a **Chief** with one **Imbattlement** Gules: For Imbattelling ought, and must, proceed from the Ordinary, and not run into it. As you may see by this and the foresaid Coat. This is born by the Name of *Hingley*. And such a Chief A. in a Field G. is quartered by *Van Lauterbach* of *Bavaria*.

XXVII. He beareth Purpure, a **Chief Inclave** Argent. Before I told you from *Gwilliam*, *fol. 64.* that a Chief could not be devided, which is contrary to some; others hold it may: and that it may go through any Partition. Otherwise this may be blazoned Azure, two **Cantons** Argent; born by the Name of *Cantonell*.

XXVIII. He beareth Or, a **Chief Arched** Vert; else a **Chief Flected**, from the Latin word *Flecto*, to bend or bow a thing: Or a **Chief Champion**, or **Champaine**: But more properly a **Chief Convex**: Or after others **convexed** in the **lower side**.

XXIX. He beareth Or, a **Chief** with one **Indent** Sable. This I find is a Coat of no small Antiquity, which I found in an old Book in the Herauld's Office; and is thus blazoned, a Chief with a **sharp point** Sable, in a Field Or: Using the French manner of blazon, in nameing the contained before the continent. Which manner of blazoning is counted by our Heraulds most preposterous.

XXX. He beareth Argent, a **Chief** with one **Potce** Azure: Or a **Chief Inclave**, saith *Morgan*, *fol.* 8. 10. Which cannot properly be, seeing the Inclave goeth through the Partition; as he gives it in another Example, using the term from *Clavis*, a Key: Which (saith he) goeth into the Partition, as a Key into a Lock. But in my Judgment, it is best blazoned a **Chief** with one **Lambeaux**, or one **Labell**. It is born by the Name of *Maschant*, or *Beltoft*.

XXXI. He beareth Gules, a **Chief Invecked** Or: By the Name of *Velaynger*. *Cassaneus* holdeth, that where the Chief is of one Colour, or Mettle, or more, you shall blazon the Chief first: But it is more consonant to reason to begin with the Field, because of the priority thereof in nature, as also in respect it is the continent, the Chief the thing contained.

XXXII. He beareth Argent, a **Chief Ingrailed** Vert. Here you may see the difference between the **Invecke**, and the **Ingrail**: The first ever hath the Points in the Ordinary Invecked, and the other hath its Points coming into the Field Ingrailed. By the Name of *Grindley*.

G. such a Chief O. born by *Havarden*.

XXXIII. He beareth Purpure, a **Chief Wavey** Argent: Or a **Chief Undee**. By the Name of *Waterhead*.

XXXIV. He beareth Or, a **Chief Nowy** Gules: Of the *French* called a **Chief Tranchee**. Born by *Caster ap Nowell*.

XXXV. He beareth Or, a **Chief double Arched** Sable: This is also blazoned a **Chief double Flected**. And by the *French* a **Chief Nuee**; and a **Chief of one Indent**: And of some others a **Chief Goared**, or a **Goare in Chief**. This is a *French* Coat, born by the Name of *Fitz Lesours*.

XXXVI. He beareth Argent, a **Chief Imbattled**, or **Crenelle** Azure. By the Name of *Monstrell*.

G. the like B. born by *Rynceſter*.

☞ Here you may observe, that if an Ordinary have its Line in the form of a Battlement, it is called **Imbattled**, and if both sides of the Ordinary be of that form, it is termed **Counter-Imbattled**: Which may be in the Pale, Bend, Fesse, Cheveron, Salter and Cross, but not in the Chief.

XXXVII. He

XXXVII. He beareth Gules, a **Chief Potence** Argent: Of some termed a **Chief Counter-potent**: And of *Leigh* called a **Chief Bar-Viere.** By the Name of *Lamoy* of *Cripleton.*

XXXVIII. He beareth Argent, a **Chief Champaine** Vert: Of some Heraulds, a **Chief Urdee**; and that I judg the best term for it, from his Name who beareth it: *Urder* of *Urder.* Yet others are of an Opinion, that this is no other than an **Imbattlement rebated** in its Corners.

XXXIX. He beareth Purpure, a **Chief Indented** Or. By the Name of *Dentale*, or *Dentalson.*

O. a Chief Indented B. born by *Bottiler*; or *Butler.*

G. the like A. born by *Barett*; and also by *Sarcester.*

B. the like O. born by *Dunham.*

XL. He beareth Argent, a **Chief Nebulee** Azure. Some term this Argent, in Chief, a **Cloud** Proper.

Per Chief Nebulæ G. and O. by the Name of *Fancy.*

This is also born by *Van Ratzen.*

☞ Which said last blazoning, saith my Author, if you term it per Chief; then you must name the chief colour or mettle first.

XLI. He beareth Or, a **Chief raise** Sable: This is a fit Emblem for Wickedness, which though it florish, and have a golden Field, yet *in the middle of their day the light of the Sun goeth down upon them, Amos* 8. 9.

XLII. He beareth Argent, a **Chief Patee** Vert, or **Dovetailed**: By the Name of *Dowdale.*

A. a Rose G. and such a Chief B. is born by *Watson.*

XLIII. He beareth Sable, a **Chief** Or, in the nether part thereof a **Fillet** Argent: This is the only diminution that belongs to the Chief, and is called a Fillet, because of the length and narrowness of it; as also because of the place where it is set, for did it occupy any other place, save the Chief, it should go under another term; as you shall see in the Examples of **Barulets, Cotizes,** and **Endorses,** *&c.*

The *French* term it, a Chief Or, **Supported** Argent: By the Name of *Kap* or *Cape.*

XLIV. He beareth Argent, a **Fillet** Gules. This is by *Ferne, pag.* 177. called a **Flie**; it is so named from its shape, being long and narrow, like the Fillet used by Women to truss up their Hair, and fasten their Head-Tires: So this is very aptly placed on the Chief, or Head of the Escochion, compassing the utmost borders of the same.

XLV. He beareth Vert, a **Chief** Argent, **surmounted** of another Or: This is another sort of bearing the Chief, **upon a Chief.** ☞ If the under Chief had been the colour of the Field, then it had been termed a **Chief removed**, or fallen out of its place. Though some in such cases will blazon it, a **Bar** in Chief. And such a Chief is born by *Van dem Busch, viz.* **Varrey,** A. and B. a Chief removed G. charged with 3 Flower de lis, O.

XLVI. He beareth Argent, a **Chief** Or, **bordered** Azure. By the Name of *Broderley.* Also O. a Stags Horn G. a Chief A. bordered of the second, is the State of *Goppingen's* Coat in *Germany.*

XLVII. He beareth Gules, a **Chief party per Fesse Indented** Azure and Argent. *Gwillim* blazons it Gules, a **Chief Point in Point Indented** Azure and Argent: This is another sort of bearing of Chiefs; and in it there is no need of saying per Fesse (saith he) for it is alway supposed to run the length of the Chief; if otherwise, either per Pale, or Cheveron, and the like, then to be named. But by his good leave, this cannot be termed Point in Point, but per Fesse, except it were extended to the outmost sides of the Chief; as the Example, *Numb.* 50.

XLVIII. He beareth Argent, a **Chief** Vert, charged with a **Shapournett Ermyne**: This Term Shapournett is derived (if I mistake not) from the *French* Word *Chaperon*, which signifieth a Hood; whereof this is a diminutive, and beareth a resemblance. *Leigh, pag.* 62. is of an Opinion that this is a Partition, and for that end doth draw the Line thereof to the very top of the Chief. But *Gwillim, fol.* 65. takes it to be a Charge of the Chief, and not a Portion thereof: Which makes him to shorten the Head of it, from the top of the Chief; after which Examples this is figured. Some do only call it a Hood or Chaperon.

XLXIX. He beareth Purpure, on a **Chief** Or, a **Bar Daunsett** Gules. I term it a Bar because of its narrowness, containing less than a third part of the Chief; if broader it might be blazoned **Daunsettee,** or else a **Fesse Daunsett.** This is by *Ferne, pag.* 176. blazoned a **Viure.**

L. He beareth Argent, a Chief **Point in Point Indented** Gules and Or: This you see is contrary to the 48*th* Figure, that runs indented through the Chief; and this with its Indents from outside to outside of the Chief. Which some again term a Chief **Pily** Gules and Or. Born by the name of *Partinghead.* This is through an oversight of Mr. *Morgan*, blazoned **per Fesse Indented,** *lib.* 2. *cap.* 5. *fol.* 47. *Upton* terms it **Point in Point Compony**; but Compony in our Days is a far different thing, as *Chap.* 4. *Numb.* 43.

LI. He beareth Or, a Chief **quarterly** Purpure and Argent, **counter-Flory** in the bottom Sable. By the Name of *Flurtal.*

Thus I have given you the several ways of bearing the Chief, according to those Lines of Partitions.

I proceed now to the next Ordinary.

Of the Pale.

31. THE Pale is another Ordinary, and it consists of two Lines drawn perpendicularly from the top to the Base of the Escochion: As in Example.

LII. He beareth Azure, a **Pale** Argent: by the Name of *Hickman.* The Pale containeth the third part of the Escochion, and must not be either inlarged, or lessened, whether it be charged or not: So that there can be but one Pale in an Escochion. This is by *Morgan* termed **per Pale,** *lib.* 2. *cap.* 3.

This Ordinary is subdivided into a **Pallet,** and an **Endorse.**

G. a Pale O. born by *Kinkley*, and *Grandmain.*

A. the like S. by *Calkin.*

LIII. He beareth Or, a **Pallet** Vert: The Pallet is the Moity or half of the Pale, and therefore receiveth his Name of diminution; as being a demy or little Pale: The Pallet is never charged with any thing either quick or dead. There are some Armorists do hold that the Pallet cannot be parted into two; but that it may be parted into four,

four, so saith *Leigh*. And by the *French*, *part.* 3. *fol.* 37. it is called a **coste** cut narrow.

A. 5 Pallets S. born by *Kendrick*.

O. 3 Pallets S. bord by *Percy*: And the Name of *Athel*.

LIV. He beareth Gules, an **Endorse** Argent. The Endorse (saith *Leigh*, *pag.* 63.) is the fourth part of the Pallet. *Ferne*, *pag.* 178.) the eighth part of a Pale, which is all to one purpose. It is not used, but when a Pale is between two of them (saith one) but the Endorse may be born between Birds, Fish, Flowers, Beasts, and such like things (saith another): But then it sheweth that the same Coat hath been sometimes two Coats of Armour, and afterwards by some occasion joined together in one Escochion. For proof thereof, he there gives an example of such a bearing in an Escochion of Pretence, or **Engislet** (as he termes it) between a Lion Rampant and an Eagle display'd, Gules in a field Or.

LV. He beareth Argent, a **Pale Endorsed** Azure: By the Name of *Holdam*. Some Blazon it a **Pale** between two **Endorses**: But that is some-thing of Superfluity.

☞ If the Pale and Endorses were of contrary Colours, then name the **Pale** and Colour, or Mettle first; and then the **Endorses** and their Colour or Mettle after: As Gules, a **Pale** Or, **Endorsed** Argent: Born by *Haler*. The like is to be observed in all the other Ordinaries when they have the like bearing on either side of them.

A. Such a Pale Endorsed B. is born by *Cawley*.

O. the like Endorsed S. by *Naylor*.

LVI. He beareth Purpure, a **Pale Fitched** in the foot or bottom Or. By the name of *Glanfron*. Some call it a **Pale couped** and **Rebated** in the **Bottom**: Others say Pointed in the Bottom: Affirming that if it were truly and rightly **Fitched**, it would loose its name, and become a **Pile**, which is an other kind of Bearing.

LVII. He beareth Or, three **Palletts** Vert: By the name of *Manler*.

☞ If there be more than one in an Escochion, then they are not called **Pales** but **Palletts**: And as this Coat hath three, so you shall have them born to the Number of 8 or 10: Therefore in your Blazoning you must have an especial care to tell the exact Number of them. As

A. 2 **Palletts** S. by *Wentworth*, and *Transfield*.

B. 3 such; Born by *Thornton*.

O. 4 such B. Born by *Sekerley*, and by *Peelor*.

LVIII. He beareth Azure, a **Pale Arrayed** Or. By the name of *Lichtford*. Here the Pale and Arraying is all of one colour, else your Blazoning must have been according to the rule before given in *Numb.* 55. *Grilliam fol.* 197. and *Spher. lib.* 3. *fol.* 38. Blazons it a **Pale Radiant Rajonee**, after the French way: But the foresaid Blazon is after the English way, Short and Pithy: For by Rays we understand the glittering and shining Beams of the Sun, which Pale being so arrayed makes it the more lustrious.

P. such a rayed Pale A. is born by *Whitman*.

P. such a Pale O. charged with a Lion Rampant G. is the Coat of *Coleman*.

After this manner Pales are set with **Floy**, and **counter-Floy**; which are to be blazoned after this Example.

LIX. He beareth Or, a **cross Paule** Gules. Born by the name of *Paulling*. This is another Bearing subdivided from the Pale, being termed a Paule. Now what a Paule is, *Cassaneus* tells us in these Words: *Pallium est quoddam Ornamentum ad modum stolæ Sacerdotalis cum quibusdam crucibus nigris contextis, &c.* This is the old way of making the Paule: Which *Morgan*, *l.* 2. *c.* 15. terms a cross Pall, and that very properly, it representing a Pale cut through the top and opened after the manner of a cross *Tau*.

G. such a Paul A. born by *Deycheler*.

A. the like S. born by *Duningham* Earl of *Glancorn*.

LX. He beareth *Sol*, a **Paule** *Jupiter*: Such a Pall or Paule, is born by the Arch-Bishop of *Canterbury*, and belongeth to the Arms of his See: And is the modern form of the Paule which is most frequently used. If this Paule were garnished or embrodered with any other Colours or Mettle, then in the blazoning you must add the term **edged**, **adorned**, and **fringed** so and so. This may as well be termed a Priests Cope, being a kind of Vestment used by them when they are at the Sacrifice of the Mass, and Altar, as I said before: Which in Latin is called *Pallium*, Englified a Paule, which is a Cope, or Mantle, a Priest's Vestment that covers his Back, Breast, and Shoulders.

LXI. He beareth Purpure, a **Paule reversed**, or a **cross Pale reversed** Or. Here you may see the difference between the Paule, and the cross Pale, the one being edged and fringed in the bottom, terminating in the base of the Escochion; and the cross Pale runs quite through to the side, with all its parts: This Paule is subject to the same accident that the Pale, and Crosses are, *viz.* of being charged with, or interposed between any other thing charged in Coats of Arms. As, A. a cross Paule S. between 3 Mullets G. By the Name of *Paulmulett*.

G. a Paule, or cross Paule reversed O. between 2 Martlets and a Plate. By the Name of *Crossel tt*.

LXII. He beareth Argent, a **cross Pale reversed**, at each side the Base one Imbattle Vert. This is born by the name of *Korbitz*.

G. the like A. born by *Van Chaynach*.

LXIII. He beareth Gules, a **Pale bytessed Nuee firt** Or. Born by *Strongman*. This coat I have known otherwise termed; as a Pale, each side **double Arched**, which I hold the best and propereſt blazon: The Pale stands (as it were) for the Butment, or Foundation, to which the Springalls of the four Arches are fixed.

LXIV. He beareth Or, a **Pale double Arched**, or **Nuee** Azure, or a Pale **Goared** on both sides. Born by the name of *Hortock*.

LXV. He beareth Or, a **Pale Wavee** Sable. By the name of *Ayre*.

A. such a Pale S. born by *Botton*.

LXVI. He beareth Argent, a **Pale Indented** Gules. Born by *Gradlee*, *alias Gadbey*.

G. such a Pale A. born by *Strathum*.

LXVII. He beareth Vert, a **Pale Daunsett** Or: Any Ordinary that is Daunsett, ought not to exceed 3 points on the one (or top) side, let the Escochion be great or small; but they ought (as the French Heraulds say) to be numbred. Such a Pale is born by *Kingslanely*.

G. 3 such Pales O. is the Coat of *Mandwit*.

LXVIII. He beareth Argent, a **Pale** Or, **Ingrailed** Sable: Born by *Palgrale*. Some do term this a Pale Ingrailed S. surmounted of another O. But I judg the first good blazoning, when there is no more to be seen than the Ingraling on either side: This I confess doth exceed my Draught given to the Engraver, wherein the rounds touched the sides of the Pale.

LXIX. He

LXIX. He beareth Purpure, a **Pale Ingraled** Or. Born by *Home*.

G. such a Pale O. born by the name of *Chesnerth*.

A. the like S. by *Gascoigne*, charged with a Pikes Head.

LXX. He beareth Gules, a **Pale Invecked** Argent. Born by the Family of *Veck*.

LXXI. He beareth Argent, a **Pale Nowey Champaine** Azure, or else **Nowey Circle**. Born by the Name of *Vrdall*.

LXXII. He beareth Vert, a **Pale Nowey Losengy** Argent. Born by *Molesine*.

LXXIII. He beareth Or, a **Pale Nowy** Azure. Born by the Name of *Nonellin*. If the swelling out in the middle of the Pale (or any other the like Ordinary) be round, it is termed only **Nowy**; but if it be of any other form, then you must mention the form of the **Noweying**, as in the two Examples aforesaid, & the next that followeth.

LXXIV. He beareth Gules, a **Pale Nowy quadrat** Argent; or else **Nowy Square**, or **quater Angled**, or **quarterly**; For all these terms I have known given to it. Born by the Name of *Quarkall*. See more of this way, in **Crosses Nowyed**

LXXV. He beareth Argent, a **Pale Escarteled** on the right side Azure. Which is the Coat of *Woodward*.

LXXVI. He beareth Gules, a **Pale Bretteled** Or. The French term it a Pale crossed in three pieces; there is much difference between Bretessing and Imbatteling, as you may see in Bends, *chap.* 4. *numb.* 32.

LXXVII. He beareth Argent, a **Pale Imbatteled** Azure. By the Name of *Norman*. A Name much near the device, for by scaling Battlements many a brave Man hath lost his Life.

LXXVIII. He beareth Gules, a **Pale Raguled** Or, Raguled is as much as a knotted, rough, uncut piece of a Tree set Palewise. You shall sometimes find Coats of this nature both Raguled and Trunked; as in Bends you will see an Example, *Chap.* 4. *Numb.* 26. And *Chap.* 9. *Numb.* 5. 15.

LXXIX. He beareth Argent, a **Pale Patee** Vert: It is born by the Name of *Hohenfield*. Mr. *Morgan* calls this **Inclave**; so may I term it a **Pale Dovetailed**, or **Dovetailly**.

LXXX. He beareth Or, a **Pale Fracted** (or **removed**) Vert: by the Name of *Sparacke*. Some term this a Pale removed **Bevil-wise**, because the cutting or breaking of it in the middle is Bevile; that is, not streight, but slopingly with cornered Angles.

LXXXI. He beareth Gules, a **Pale Angled** Argent: by the Name of *Anger*. This is also termed a Pale **Rect Angled**. Such a like Pale is born by *Posingworth*.

G. such a Pale couped at both ends A. born by *Schwent* of *Bavaria*.

LXXXII. He beareth Or, a **Pale Bevile** Purpure: by the Name of *Beviler*.

☞ Here you see there is a manifest difference between these three last foregoing Examples; of Fraction (or removing) of Angled (or Rect Angled) and of Bevile; so that especial care must be taken to give such their due terms, when thus found in any of the Ordinaries.

LXXXIII. He beareth Argent, a **Pale Champaine**, (or enarched on the Dexter side) Vert: by the Name of *Forman*. This hath several other Denominations, as **Inverted**, **Concaved**, or **Shapourned** on the Dexter side. Where you must take notice on what side it is Concave, except it be so in both.

LXXXIV. He beareth Or, a **Pale Battailed Imbattailed** Azure. So I find it termed, but this will never give any Artist (except he know the Coat) that light as to trick it truly; therefore I shall not trust to their Judgments in this thing that so blazon it: but rather to them who say, he beareth Or, a Pale **grady in Chief** and **Base**, the middle **Nowey quadrat Battelled Imbattelled**. Or more briefly thus, a Pale **grady** at the ends and middle: Or else **grady** of three, both in the ends and middle. Others term it a Pale **gricee** in the head, foot, and middle, on both sides, and fixed. See *Chap.* 4. *Numb.* 69.

There are several other ways of bearing of Pales, both charged and otherwise, but in regard they are in every respect answerable to the Bend: Therefore I shall need give no more Examples of Pales, but refer you to the Bends.

Of the Pile.

32. THE Pile is another Ordinary, consisting of two Lines formed after the manner of a Wedg; that is to say, broad at the upper end, and so smaller and smaller, till it come to a Point in the bottom: So that it differeth from the Pale (that being of an equal breadth all along) as the Examples will demonstrate.

LXXXV. He beareth Gules, a **Pile** Argent: born by *Fretton*. A Pile represents a piece of Wood that Builders do usually drive into the Ground, where the Earth is not sound to bear Fortifications, or other great Buildings: And so by them to force an infallible Foundation.

This Ordinary is subject to no diminution, whether there be more or less in the Field all goes under one name: The Pile contains the third part of the Chief if it be alone, but if it be charged upon, then it may well contain two thirds of the Chief for breadth.

B. the like Pile O. born by *Aldham*, of *Aldham*: The same is also the Arms of *Hofwood*.

O. the like S. born by *Dighton*.

S. 2 Piles A. by the Name of *Hulles*.

Er. 2 Piles S. born by *Hollis*.

LXXXVI. He beareth Argent, three **Piles** Gules: This is born by the Name of *Gilliesbrough*. Some term them 3 Piles **in Point**, because they all meet with their Points together in the base.

☞ But this know, that if the Coat consist of three they are ever so placed, and no otherwise; therefore that word may be omitted. See then what needless words are used by *Gwillim*, *fol.* 93. who blazons them 3 Piles meeting near in the base of the Escochion. *Ferne*, *pag.* 205. and *Leigh*, *pag.* 69. terms them 3 Piles in Point. But *Upton* the same blazoning as abovesaid, because they are ever set after this manner: So that to use superfluity of Words, is contrary to the Rules formerly given, where brevity is commended, as being most compendious.

S. 3 such Piles O. born by *Manlait*.

LXXXVII. He beareth Argent, a **Pile** Sable, **Cotized Ingraled** Gules: The Pile I never found in any Coat otherwise than **Waved** and **Ingraled**; but the **Cotizing** of it hath been formed of other Lines, as well as plain. Some term this **Cotizing**, **Ingraled on the outside**, because there may be Coats that have it Ingrailed on both sides. Such a Pile bendwise is the Coat of *Coatgrale*.

LXXXVIII. He

LXXXVIII. He beareth Or, a Pile **in Bend Waved** Azure: born by *Debar*. In this *Gwillim fol.* 84. likewise useth many needless expressions, as issuing out of the dexter corner bendways: And *Leigh, pag.* 69. on the other side is too short, having omitted the waving of the Pile.

Also B. a Pile waved in Fesse between 3 Flowers de lis O. is born by *Blanken* a *German* Family.

LXXXIX. He beareth Gules, a Pile, between two other **reversed, or transposed** Argent. *Gwillim* here adds words of superfluity, *viz.* three Piles, one issuing out of Chief, between the two other transposed. Sometimes you will find Coats with two in Chief, and one in Base, which I conceive thus best blazoned, two Piles with another reversed, or a Pile reversed between two other. Piles are very often couped and transposed to several sides, and parts of the Escochion; and therefore must be taken notice (in such cases) how and where they are removed.

A. 3 such Piles S. born by *Hulse*, or *Hulles*.

A. 2 Piles, and one transposed B. born by *Garnons*.

G. 2 Piles transposed O. born by *Ehinger* of *Germany*.

A. 3 Piles reversed B. born by *Marschalck* of *Brunswick*: Which name in English we call *Marshal*.

B. 2 Piles reversed with Roses on the Points A. born by *Khelinger*.

XC. He beareth Vert, a **Pile Waved** between two other Argent. If they had been all 3 Waved, then there had been no need of saying (the two between;) if the middle had been plain, then you should have said a Pile between two other Waved, or Ingraled, or the like: The Pile hath anciently been called a Sentrie, that is a stick for a Tent, or for any other kind of work.

XCI. He beareth Gules, on a **Pile** Or, 3 demy Flower deluces conjoined to its Sides, and Chief, Sable: This is born by the Name of *Flowermeaine*.

XCII. He beareth Vert, a **Pile Floryed** at the point Argent. A fit Coat (saith Mr. *Morgan, lib.* 2. *fol.* 66.) for a Pioneer, who by his Wisdom hath countermined his Enemies Mines, if under-ground; or that Pallizadoes himself in his Castle above-ground.

XCIII. He beareth Argent, a **Triple Pile in Base Bendwise** Vert, **Floryed** at the point Sable: born by the Name of *Wroton*. This is called a Triple Pile, because it is joined in the top or solid part all in one entire piece. This is by *Ferne, pag.* 179. termed a Pile **Naissant in Bend Triple Floy.** *Gwillim* terms it, *f.* 83. a **Triple Pile Floy** on the tops, issuing out of the Sinister base in Bend towards the Dexter corner: Here is Tautologies, with an Absurdity in naming the tops for the points; for a Man is a Man, though he stand on his Heads and transpose the Pile, how, and where you will, the broad end is the top of it.

XCIV. He beareth Azure, three Piles **Barwise** Or: born by *Platten*. Being on the dexter side you need not mention it: After this sort shall you have the Piles born Waved and Indented, *&c.* Which Examples for tediousness I omit. Some will term this **Barry Pily** of seven Azure and Or. See *Chap.* 7. *Numb.* 98. But here was a great oversight in my Friend *Morgan, lib.* 2. *fol.* 68. who termed this **per Pale Indented.**

S. 3 Piles on the Sinister side Barwise A. born by *Van Rorbach*.

XCV. He beareth Argent, two **Piles couped, with an other between them reversed** Gules: This is the Coat of *Hoslow*. *Boswell* terms these Piles thus, two descending, and one ascending: But this is contrary to the rule of the Pile, before spoken of, where it was shewed, that the nature of the Pile was to have its point down; therefore needs no mentioning of descending, *&c.* Here I blazon the two couped, before I speak any thing of that as is reversed; which I give not the term of couping to, because it is entire, and fixed to the base of the Escochion: Which were it not, I should then have blazoned it thus, two Piles with another reversed couped: Or thus, a Pile reversed between two other couped, or all couped: Or else one couped reversed, between two of the same.

XCVI. He beareth Argent, three **Piles Engraled,** and **Couped** Azure. *Foremanshaw* beareth this Coat Armour.

XCVII. He beareth Or, 3 **Piles couped, two, and one** Gules: This is born by *Proctor*. Here I am constrained to give this term two an one, to set out the manner of their being in the Escochion; because the Piles stand naturally (being three) all besides one another, as the foresaid Examples, *Numb.* 69. 86. 90. doth demonstrate. But these standing contrary, it must therefore by two and one, be expressed how they are disposed of in the Field, that is two above, and one below, *&c.* Some blazons them two in Chief, and one in Base.

The like Piles with Urded or Champaine tops or heads S. in a Field A. is born also by the Name of *Proctor*.

XCVIII. He beareth Azure, 2 **Piles couped** and **reversed,** conjoined to another Argent: born by the name of *Joyner*.

O. three such Piles couped and conjoined, two with their Points in Chief, and one in Base, G. is born by *Heyrling*.

XCIX. He beareth Argent, a **Pile in Bend Sinister, surmounted** of another **Dexter** Argent: Yet others taking no notice of whither surmounts (as I think so too) do blazon them only two Piles in **Salter.** This is born by the name of *Salterow*.

C. He beareth **Parted per Pile** Purpure and Ermine, a Pile Argent: by the Name of *Reylurgh*.

☞ If the Pile had been Ermine, then I should have said a Pile of the second, by reason one Colour must not be twice named in one Coat: Yet I have seen this blazoned a Pile, and two base points parted (or two points in base parted.) If the Pile and the partition of the Field were of one Colour, then upon sight of the Coat, I should have blazoned it a Cheveron reversed, from the Chief to the Base.

CI. He beareth Gules, a **Pile Waved** out of the dexter corner bendwise, determined in Fesse Argent: born by *Van Toppler* of *Brunswick*. I have seen this anciently blazoned a **Gyron Waved,** because it extendeth no further than the Fesse Point, which the Pile ever doth: So that the Artest is at his choise whether to term it a Pile terminated, or a Gyron Waved.

CII. He beareth Or, three **Piles in Chief** Azure: born by the Name of *Van Gaben*. If they be whole Piles, then they ever meet in Point: but being diminutive, or half Piles, then they stand in this order, and manner.

O. a Lion passant S. in Chief 3 Roman Piles of the Second: born by *Loggan*. So termed in *Gwillim's 5th Addition, fol.* 192.

CIII. He beareth **parted per Cheveron in Base,** Purpure and Argent, a **Pile counter-changed:** Otherwise, **per Cheveron** P. and A. and **per Cheveron reversed counter-changed.** This Coat Armour is born by the Family of *Churland.* See such a like Coat as this, but of a contrary blazoning, *Chap. 9. Numb. 64.*

CIV. He beareth Azure, three **Piles,** and as many in **Fesse** Argent. This is a *German* Coat, and is born by the Name of *Magdenburg.* Some have termed them 3 Piles in Chief, and 3 in Fesse. Others 3 demy Piles in Chief, and as many couped in Fesse.

G. 4 Piles in Fesse reversed and couped, and 2 issuing out of Base, A. is the Coat Armour of the Bishoprick of *Olmitz* in *Germany.*

Party per Fesse, B. and G. 3 Piles transposed in Fesse A. by the name of *Van Wolkenstein.*

Of the Gyron.

33. THE **Gyron** is an Ordinary consisting of two Lines drawn from divers parts of the Escochion, and meeteth in an accute Angle, in the Fesse Point: It is derived, as some think, from the Latin word *Germium,* which signifieth a Lap. The *Gyron* is born single; by couples, of six, of eight, of ten, of twelve, and not otherwise.

CV. He beareth Argent, a **Gyron** Gules: by the name of *Gyronell.* If there be but one, it ever stands in this place without naming it: Yet *Gwilliam, fol.* 81. name the dexter Chief Point; which is needless, except it be removed to some other place. This Ordinary is by *Upton* termed contrary, **Coonyd.**

Sanguine, a Gyron on the dexter side (in Fesse after *Gwilliam*) Argent; is the Coat quartered by the Lord *de Wolfs* of *Swesia.*

CVI. He beareth Azure, 2 **Gyrons** Argent: by the name of *Cantelupe.* See four Gyron, *Chap. 9. Numb.* 103. You need not say meeting in Point, the one from the dexter Chief, the other from the sinister Base; because they do evermore meet in the Fesse Point be they never so many. And if you observe, the Gyrons are made of two Lines, one in Bend, the other in Fesse, which make two directly opposite one to the other; and needs no nameing of their places, except they be otherwise disposed.

CVII. He beareth **Gyronny** of six, Azure and Or. by the name of *Amberg.* Some blazon it **parted per Gyron** of six pieces: In the naming of the Colours, I name that first which occupieth the principle part of the Chief, but if it be divided into more then to name that first as occupieth the dexter part of it: As in *Numb.* 111. and the following Example. Some Blazoners of old, termed these **Gyrons** by the name of **Contra Contraconata,** or **Counter-coined:** For that the coins or corners of their contrary or different Colours, do all meet in the center of the Field.

6 Gyrons O. and S. is part of the Coat of *Callarde.*

6 Gyrons A. B. is born by *Van Sintzen-hofen* in *Bavaria.*

CVIII. He beareth **Gyronny** of eight, Argent and Purpure: by the name of *Ockton.* There are some who affirm that they may be born to the number of sixteen; and so I have seen a Coat in the Herauld's Office to have that same number. These Gyrons are never born composed of any other sorts of Lines, but a straight plain Line; except they be either single: or by couples, then you shall have them Waved, or Indented, Ingraled, or Invecked, and no otherwise. Some hold that Gyronny of eight ought not to be numbred; but only Gyronny of such and such colours: And the reason is because one Gyron contains the eight part of the Field.

The like O. and B. on an Escochion G. a Lion's Head Erazed A. born by *Spaune.*

CIX. He beareth Or, a **Gyron in Fesse** Gules: by the Name of *Skatter.* Others a **Gyron in the dexter Base.**

CX. He beareth Argent, two **Gyrons in Chief:** Others say two **Gyrons dexter and sinister in Chief.** Now had these two been upon a Chief they had been termed Squires; as the Examples *Chap. 9. Numb.* 71, 75, 77, 78, 83.

Party per Fesse, O. and G. in Chief, a Talbot S. and 2 Gyrons in Base A. born by *Biberlisburgh* of *Switzerland.* Some blazon it per Fesse O. and Gyronny of 5 G. and A. a Talbot S.

CXI. He beareth **Gyronny** of twelve, Or and Azure: by the name of *Malfering.*

The like O. and B. an Inescochion G. born by *Eller.*

Gyronny of 16 O. and B an Escochion A. born by the Bishoprick of *Revala* in *Germany.*

Gyronny of 12 A. and G. born by *Waldbath Van Bossedheim.*

CXII. He beareth **Gyronny** of eight, Gules and Argent, a **Dexte** Or: by the name of *Muldmay.* As this Square is in the middle of the Gyrons where they meet in Fesse, so you will find Coats with Escochions, Roundlets, and the like; which place you need not mention, becaase such Charges ever stand in the Fesse, or middle part of the Gyrons. *Boswell pag.* 40. calls this a **Quadreate.**

The like O. and B. with an Escochion G. born by *Spon,* or *Spoune.*

The like A. and S. with a Basant, born by *Lovegold.*

Of the Quarter, and Canton.

34. THE Next Ordinary is the Quarter, which is formed of two Lines. both straight through the midie of the Escochion, one from the Chiefe and the other from the Fesse points, where both meeting in the midle of Escochion in an equall Square is called a **Quarter,** because it containes a quarter part, or a Fourth part of the Field: as for Example.

CXIII He beareth Escallopee Argent, a **Quarter** Azure: The Quarter I never found born otherwise, but composed of Straight lines: Though it is usually charged with variety of Bearings. This is a Dutch coate and is born by the name of *Van Scalburgh.* **Escalopee** is born thus on Bends, Fesses, Barrs, Crosses, &c

G & per Fesse **Escalopee** A. born by *Newburgh.*

Escalopee Er a **Quarter** G: born by *Van Iarl orf.*

CXIV He beareth Argent a **Canton** and a **Shapoumett** Gules. born by *Feldwayne.* Though some (in regard of the Honorable bearing of it) do hold it to be an Ordinary: Yet for my own part, I take it to be no other then o Diminution of the **Quarter,** and containes the third part of it: It is called a **Canton,** because it occupieth but a Corner, or Cantell of the Escochion. If it be placed in the

the Dexter Corner of the Escochion, there needs no other mention to be made of it; But if it be placed on the contrary side (or else where) then it is to be named, a **Canton**, or a **Quarter Sinister**: As in the following Examples it will be further manifested.

The **Shapourneff** is ever born in the **Base**, both of the Escochion, and all other Ordinaries, that it is charged withall. See *Numb.* 48. *Chap.* 9. *Numb.* 83. 84. 87.

A. a **Canton**, G: born by the name of *Chester*.

B. the like, O: born by *Canterlin*, also by *Studlex*.

CXV. He beareth Or, a **Canton Sinister** Sable: The Dexter, and Sinister Cantons, are all one as in Form, so in Quantity, and Estimation; but differ only in this from their Local Position: And also that the Sinister is not of so frequent use. And the same Rules as serve for the **Quarter**, Serveth for the **Canton** also.

Such a Canton blazoned as afore, belongs to *Clerke*.

S. the like, A. born by *Eytzenriet* of *Bavaria*.

O. the like B. by *Zol koser* a *Zwitzer* in *Germanie*.

CXVI. He beareth Argent, a **Canton** in **Base** Vert: by the name of *Brucherley*. The **Canton** ever stands in the Corners of the Escochion; never in the midle of the Chief, Fesse, or Base: Therefore I need say no more, but a **Canton** in **Base**, or a **Canton** in the **Sinister** Base, If it be on the other side.

☞ Note that a **Canton** parted Traverswaies, whither it be from the Dexter Corner, or from the Sinister, it doth make two **Base Squires**: *C. 7 N. 75. &c.*

CXVII. He beareth Or, a **Canton Indented** in the **Bottom** Gules: born by the name of *Beyfynburgh*. The **Canton** is seldom altered from its old form and fashion of plainness: Therfore for its Rarity I have caused it to be presented to your view.

B. the like O: born by *Doppock* Van *Hussetz*

A. the like V. with a Flower de Luce O: by *Carmon*.

CXVIII He beareth Vert, a **Canton** Argent, with a **Pile waved**, issuing from the corner therof Bendwayes, Sable: or more briefly, a **Canton** and **Pile waved** in **Bend**, or **Bendwayes**. This is born by *Campile*.

G. the like O. born by *Enefeild*, also by *Feeldiug*.

O. the Canton S. Pile G: born by *Zenilburg*.

V. the like O. born by *Cempiles*, and by *Van Sethoditz*.

A. a Canton and the Pile S. Ingraled G: by *Copewood*.

G. on a Canton A: a Cross G. a Pile in bend O. This according to our English mode, let the Ensign be what Colour the Colonel pleaseth: If there be St. *George's Cross* in the **Canton** thereof, with a **Pile** issuing therefrom either plain or waved it is the cognizence of a *Major*: For a *Major* of all Regiments of foot Souldiers (in our Kingdom) have in their warlike Ensignes a **Pile** from the **Canton**, to distinguish it from other Ensignes of the same Regimente Perhaps to shew the Valour of our English Nation, who will stand to it both by Land and Water: It being the Emblem of both.

CXIX He beareth Azure, a **Canton** Argent, with 5 **Piles** waved issuing there-from, Or. If the distinction in Ensignes, for the Eldest, Second, or Third *Captains, &c.* be by Piles, either waved or plain: Then beginning with one for the *Major's* Companies Ensign, as aforesaid; and two for the eldest or first Captain *&c.* Then this falleth to be the Ensign of the fourth *Captain* in the Regiment, but as it is blazoned in this place it is the Coat Armour of Mounsier *De le Sun*, or *Sund*. Some will blazon this 5 Rayes of the Sun issuing out of the Dexter Corner: Surmounted of a **Canton**. Others again, leave out the words (Surmounted of) because the **Canton** must be seated in the Corner, and the Rayes proceed from under it.

G: the like with 2 Piles O: born by *Van Spingnailz*.

B: on a **Canton** A: a Mulet S: 3 Piles in Bend O: by *Pakmane*: And also by *Guddyer*, Sans Mullet.

A: on the like S: a Leopards face O: 3 such Piles G: by *Van Seltz*: With a Rose O: and Piles waved: by *Vantz*.

O: the like S: and 5 such Piles G: by *Mainschann*.

O: the like with 3 Piles wavey G: by *Voloignez*.

A: the like G: the 3. Piles Engr: S. by *Silversbourgh*.

To the Eminent and Learned

DOCTORS, and PRACTITIONERS of PHYSICK,

WITH THE

Skillful and Industrious CHYRURGEONS;

And their MINISTERS, and OFFICIALS:

Within the Diocess of *CHESTER* and *NORTH-WALES.*

AS after the Welfare and Good of our Immortal Souls, which we must seek for at the Hands of God our Heavenly Father; and Instructions from our Mother the Church: So it behooves us, in the next place, to have a care of our Earthly Bodies; the Safety whereof depends (under God) upon your Knowledg and Care: Frail Life, by Art, may be preserved, but once lost, through neglect, is past recalling.

The Consideration whereof, makes him beg your care at such times; who in the Interim, Dedicates a part of his Labour and Endeavours to your Learned Thoughts: As it is a Work intended for general Good, so it is subject to each Man's particular Censure; but seeing what the whole means, be not too rash in judging the Author, nor too backward in valuing the Pains of Him, Who is Your Divoted Friend, Humble Servant, and Observant Patient,

R. H.

CHAP. IV.

THE Next Ordinary which we shall treat off, shall be the **Bend**; which also consisteth of two Lines drawn over-thwart the Escochion, from the Dexter Chief, to the Sinister base point, by an eqnal distance as the Examples following will shew.

Of the Bend.

2. THE Bend containeth the fifth part of the field, as it is uncharged, but if it be charged, then it is the third part of the field, as the next will demonstrate.

I. He beareth Argent, a **Bend** Vert: born by the name of St. *Nichol.* The **Bend** hath it's denomination from the French word, *Bender*; which signifieth, to Stretch forth: As it doth from on corner to another. Yet in ancient Rolls I have seen the **Bend** drawn somewhat Arch-wise, or after the resemblence of the bend of a bow.

The **Bend** of all the Ordinaries exceedeth the rest in it's Dividings, or Diminutions: as the examples shew.

If the **Bend** stand on the right side to the left, then it needs no other blazoning, [but, a **Bend.**] But if from the Sinister Chief to the Dexter base it be drawn, then it hath the denomination of, a **Bend Sinister.**

G. a Bend O. born by *Kelloberry*, also by *Columbers.*

B: the like O: born by the Lord *Scroup*: and also by *Grosvenator*, or *Grosvenor* of *Eaton* in *Cheshire.* Concerning which Coat there was a great Suit between them, but at length determined by the Kings of *England* and *France.*

O: the like S: born by *Gottlingen* of *Bavaria.*

II. He beareth Gules, a **Bendlet**, Argent: born by *Orron.* This is one of the Sub-divisions of the **Bend**, and it containeth the Sixth part of the field.

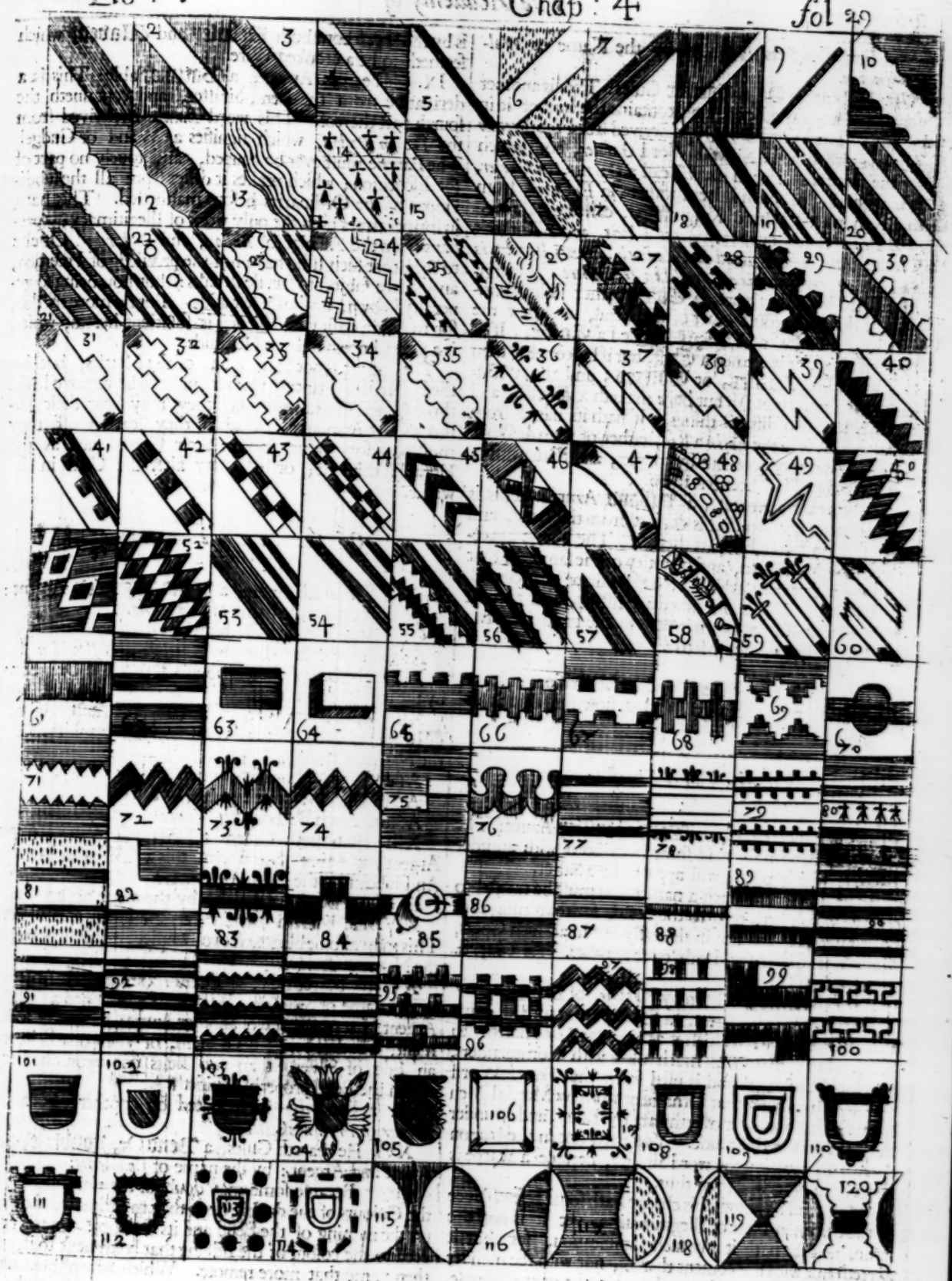
☞ Where Note that if the field contains more than one **Bend**, then they are not called Bends, but Bendlets; but all Partitions of Fields are termed Bendy: If there be never so many Divisions. As *Chap.* 7. *Numb.* 82.

O: 2 Bendlets G: by the name of *Tracy.*

A: 2 such G: born by *Hackett.*

G: 3 Bends O: born by *Greley.*

S: Four



S: Four Bendlets A: born by the Name of *Wolwardington.*

III. He beareth Or, a **Gartier** Gules: This is another derivative from the Bend, and contains the half of it in bigness. The Word *Gorteir*, is derived from the *French Jartier*; or from the *Norman* Word *Gartier*, both which are the same which we in *English* call a *Gartier*, or *Garter*. It is a Bearing of much Esteem with us in *England*, from that Renowned Order of Knighthood, called the *Garter*.

A Bend (saith one) *represents a Belt, or the* Zodiack Circle: *And so every Bend is a Zodiack, every Bendlet is a Colure, every Scarf is a Parallel in the Sphere of Gentrey.*

IV. He beareth Azure, a **Cost** Argent: The continent of this is the fourth part of the Bend, and half the Gartier. It is by most Heraulds called a **Cotise.** If it be born alone, it is termed a **Cost**, but if by couples, then they are called **Cotises, or Cotizes**; and also a **Batune** (as *Leigh* noteth): but *Bara* maketh a **Cotise,** and a **Battune,** two distinct things. It hath its name from *Costa*, which is in the *Latin* a *Rib*, either of Man or Beast. The Cost is rarely born but by couples, and that with a Bend (or such like) between them.

V. He beareth Argent, a **Riband** Azure: This is that other subdivision that is derived from the Bend, and doth contain the eighth part thereof. The Name agreeeth well with the form, and quantity of the same, in that it is long and narrow, which is the right shape of a Riband. This (saith *Leigh*) is also called a **Fissure,** and then it receiveth that Name, when it parteth the Field into two colours, and is of it self Mettle.

Thus much of the Bend and its subdivisions; let us now peruse the Bend Sinister, and see how the same is divided.

Of the Bend Sinister.

VI. HE beareth Or, a **Bend Sinister** Azure: The Bend Sinister is sometimes born with another Dexter, which to sight will appear like a Salter.

☞ In Coats of such a nature you must be careful to observe which lieth next to the Field, for that must ever be first named; and not in this only, but in all such Coats, where one Ordinary lyeth over another. As *Chap.* 8. *Numb.* 26. *to* 36.

A: such a Bend G: born by *Rattaw*, of *Bavaria.*

VII. He beareth Argent, a **Scarpe** Purpure, of some termed a **Scarf**: Which is a thing (as *Leigh* noteth) to be a kind of Ornament, much used with Commanders, and Field-Officers: And is used from the *French* Word *Escharpe*, signifying that Ornament worn by Martial Men from the left Shoulder overthwart the Body, and so under the Arm on the right Side. You need not in the blazon thereof to mention the word Sinister, because a Scarpe is never born otherwise than thus.

☞ And although this charge hath some resemblance of the common Note of Illegitimation, yet it is not the same, neither hath it any such signification, for that it agreeth not with the content thereof, nor with the manner of bearing the same: As is plain by the next Example. The Scarpe containeth the half of a Bend Sinister.

VIII. He beareth Gules, a **Fissure,** or a **Staff of Gold.** This containeth the fourth part of a Bend: And is by the *Dutch* born both **Nebuley** and **Waved,** which seemeth to be a crooked Wire.

IX. He beareth Argent, a **Batune** Sable: This is a derivative from the Bend Sinister, and containeth the fourth part thereof. This word *Batune* is derived from the *French Baston*, which signifies a Wand or Cudgel. The Batune must ever be couped, and touch no part of the Escochion; which makes it differ from all the subdivisions of the Ordinaries before manifested. This hath in former times been the only work of Illegitimacy; (perhaps from the Affinity of *Baston*, and *Bastard*: Or else to shew that such Issue have not the priviledg of Freemen, and so are subject to servile strokes:) but now being so generally known, is wholly left aside. But no more of this, for to give a dash with a Pencil is sufficient herein, which is a secret known only to Heraulds.

The Batune is not born of any of the Mettles, but by the Bastards of Princes, neither ought to be removed 'till three Generations, with which they may bear their Father's Coat Armour: but when they leave it off, they must bear some other mark in their Coat, such as the Heraulds think fit; or else may alter the Coat in the whole.

Of the Bend divers ways.

X. HE beareth Azure, a **Bend Ingraled** Argent: born by the name of *Groveling.*

G: a Bend Ingraled O: born by *Marshal.*

A: the like S: born both by *Ratcliff*, and *Brodd n.*

XI. He beareth Azure, a **Bend Invecked** Or: born by the name of *Braddeler.*

XII. He beareth Or, a **Bend Waved** Azure: **Wavy** and **Undee** are all one terms in Herauldry. By the Name of *Waterfall.*

A: the like S: born by *Burton*, and by *Wallop.*

A: two such S: born by *Hankford.*

A: three such B: born by *Wilbraham* of *Woodhey.*

XIII. He beareth Gules, a **Bend Wavy Waved** Argent and Azure: Some term this a **Bend Watery.** And is born by the Name of *Waters.*

S: such a Bend A: and B: by the name of *Standen.*

XIV. He beareth Ermine, a **Bend voided** Gules: This may also be blazoned two Bendlets. And is born by the Name of *Hacket.*

XV. He beareth Or, a **Bend** Azure, **edged** Argent: by the name of *Swivall.* This is also blazoned a **Bend** Argent, **surmounted** of another Azure: but in my Judgment, it rather represents a Hem, or Welt of a Belt, or an Edge of Silver, than two Belts one upon another; which the Bend properly signifieth.

G: a Bend A: surmounted on another, born by *Zenner* of *Brunswick.*

XVI. He beareth Gules, a **Bend** Or, **double edged** Azure and Argent: by the name of *Doubleing.*

☞ Because some may doubt of the right placing of the Colours of the double edg, they must know, that after the naming of the Bend and its Colours: I next proceed to the colour of the Edging that lyeth next to it, and then name that more remote. Which way of blazoning you are to observe in Coats of this nature, or such like to them; else there may ensue grand mistakes.

XVII. He

XVII. He beareth Argent, a **Bend** Azure, **bordered** Or: by the name of *Bendwaine*. Some old Heraulds term the two foresaid Bends, **bordered**; and some hold that this is the right way of bordering the Bends: To whose Judgment I rather adhere.

☞ Therefore this may be taken for an Observation, that an edg, or hem, or welt, only runs on the sides of the Ordinary; but the Border invirons, or goeth clear round the same, as well the ends as the sides.

XVIII. He beareth Argent, a **Bend** Gules, **Cotised** Vert: by the name of *Titteller*. If the Bend and Cotizes were of one colour, then they are both to be named before the colour, and then it is sufficient: *Boswel* terms it a Bend Cotized, with two Cotizes, and a Bend between two Cotizes; where he had not needed to mention the Number 2, or Word between: For by the blazon of a Bend cotized, we are given to understand there is a Cost, or Cotise, on either side the Bend.

A: a Bend S: cotized G: born by *Maconant*.

G: a Bend A: cotized O: by *Dautre*, or *Dautte*.

O: a Bend cotized S: by *Harly* of *North-Wales*.

S: on a Bend A: cotized Er: a Rose G: between two Annulets S: by *Conway*.

XIX. He beareth Or, a Bend **double cotized** Gules: This of some old Heraulds is termed a Bend between two **Bendlets Gemeles.** What a **Gemel** is you shall know more in Barrs. But in my Judgment this is better blazoned a double Cotize, by reason some Coats are treble; and then, How can they be better expressed than by Cotizes? For their number makes them not to lose their Name: Some again number the Cotises, as a Bend between four Cotizes.

XX. He beareth Argent, two **Bendlets** Azure, between two **Cotizes** Gules: by the name of *Passaw*. Or else thus, two **Bends**, between as many **Cotizes**.

XXI. He beareth Argent, two **Bends**, or **Bendlets Cotized**, Azure. born by the name of *Van Artzat*. If the **Bends**, and **Cotizes** were of contrary colours, then Blazon them thus, Two **Bends** Azure, **Cotized** Gules. As in the last example. Some blazon this Coate, two **Bends**, each **Cotized**: which is good.

☞ Here in this Coat, and the foregoing, *Numb.* 20. You are to take especial notice of **Bends Cotized**, and **Bends** between **Cotizes**: For if there be 2 or 3 Bends, and that all of them stand together, and the Cotizes be on the out-side; Then they are termed 2 or 3 Bendlets, between 2, 4, or 6 Cotizes: Yet if the Cotizes be intermixed (as in this coat) then it is termed 2 Bends or Bendlets, Cotized: That is as much as to say, a Bend Cotized, and a Bend Cotized: For every perticular Bend ought to have it's own Cotizes.

XXII He beareth Or, 3 **Torteaures** between 6 **Cotizes**, Vert: born by the name of *Cotterell*. Some term them 6 Bendlets. If the Cotizes had been of the same colour to the Torteauxes, which are Red; Then you had not needed to have mentioned their colour.

☞ For it is alway to be understood, and observed as a rule, that if the Ordinaries or Charges be of the same colour with them; then the naming of them will serve for the colour. As thus; 3 Torteauxes, between 2 Cotizes, or Bendlets; born by *Inghamburne*.

A: 3 such, betw: 2 Bendlets S: born by *Ince*, or *Ins*.

XXIII. He beareth Azure, a **Bend Engraled** Argent. **treble cotized**, Or: born by *Fortescue*. This is of some blazoned, a Bend Engraled between 6 Costs. Now as the Bend is born both plain, and after the several forms of Lines before specified; so also are the Costs born after the same sort: One or Two Examples thereof I shall give you.

A: such a Bend G; cotized S: born by *Tetlow*.

O: such a Bend V: cotized G: by *Reys*.

B: such O: double cotized A: by *Ormesley*.

S: the like A: treble cotized O: by *Safeard*.

XXVI. He beareth Azure, a **Bend cotized Dauncettie** Argent: by the Name of *Dauncester*. Here I name not the Bend colour, because it and the Cotizes are all of the same. And the Bend being plain, I mention the Dauncettie after the Cotizes, as belonging to them; which had the Bend been Dauncettie also: I would hove said, a Bend cotized both Dauncettie.

It is also blazoned, B: a Bend A: cotized Dauncett of the Second.

XXV. He beareth Argent, a **Bend** Azure, **double cotized Potent Counter-Potent** Sable; anciently termed a Bend between two Bends **Potent-Counter-Potent**: So that Bends as well as Cotizes are made after the same form. *Boswell, pag.* 35. useth a way of numbering the Potents within the Cotizes; saying each to contain so many points or pieces: Which way of blazon is very strict, seeing Heraulds must be tied to number where there is no need of numbring; especially considering an Escochion may contain more or less, according to its greatness or smallness: Therefore, in such cases, not only in this, but in several others (the like bearing) it is but a nice curiosity to stand upon such terms.

Azure four Bendlets Potent-Counter-Potent Argent: born by *Dewrant*.

☞ Cotizes are born both plain, and composed of the several sorts of Lines which the other Ordinaries are. Yet note this, that generally the Cotizes are plain on that side next the Bend (except in those, Waved or Dauncette which ever go alike in both sides; as in the Example, *Numb.* 24. And in this of Potent-Counter Potent, where the inner sides are only stricken in one to the other.) But if the Cotizes be **Invecked, Engrailed, Nowyed, Imbattelled**, or the like, on both sides (as I have seen in Coats of Armour;) then I should think it fit to have the Cotizes nominated, to be Invecked, or Engraled, *&c.* on both sides. But the one side, and that the outer, being composed of the Lines, it needeth no mention of that side, being it is more common and known, when the both sides are more rare; therefore the fitter to mention.

A: a Bend and Cotizes Engraled S: born by *Ducker*.

O: a Bend S: Cotized and Engraled on both sides G: by the Name of *Mildreed*. Yet some have been so exact that they have named the outside, or inside, or both sides, according as they are or have been seen.

S: a Bend A: cotized counter-Flowry O: by *Kelk*.

A: a Bend between two Bends (or Bendlets) Raguled S: born by the Name of *Folesby* in *Durham*.

☞ Some blazon it a plain Bend between two other Raguled: but the naming the one between the two other shews the first to be plain, else it had been as easy to say three Bends raguled, if they had been all alike. See *Chap.* 5. *Numb.* 20. what Raguled is.

XXVI. He

XXVI. He beareth Gules, a **Bend of a Limb of a Tree Raguled** Argent: by the Name of *Penrudock of the Highlands*. ther is a Bend Raguled, which is not after this manner (as if the boughs and branches were cut off) but plain as in Crosses *Chap.* 5. *Numb.* 20, 21. *Gwilliam, fol.* 142 terms this kind of *Bend*, Raguled and Trunked; which neither *Leigh*, nor *Ferne* doth: Neither properly can it be truncked, except it were wholly in the Field, and touch no part of the sides of the Escochion; and then by some, such is called a **Rugged Staff in Bend.** That which is in the Bend Crenelle, *Numb.* 32. being made by Art to Scale Walls; is in this naturally found, as fitted for such purpose, as to set up to the side of a Wall, and so to climb up by it.

Lacellsteter a Family in *Bavaria*, beareth such a Limb e sie-ways, S: in a Field O:

XXVII. He beareth Argent, a **Bend Patee** Gules; this at first view seems to be **Nebulee**, from which it is not far unlike, yet something it differs, for **Nebulee** is round, and this is cornered with accute Angles. this is born by the name of *Pattesson*, or *Patson*.

XXVIII. He beareth Or, a **Bend Potentee** Vert: born by *Crowcler*. Here you see the difference between the single Term **Potentee**, or **Potent**, to that of **Potent-Counter-Potent**; *Numb.* 25. The first having the Lines running on the outside, as all the Lines do; the Second having them on, or in the Ordinary, counter-poising one the other.

XXIX. He beareth Argent, a **Bend Urdee**, or **Champaine**, Vert. It is called also, a **Bend Barrified** on the out sides. And a **Bend Crenelle, Points Pointed**: but then the heads ought to be set one opposite to the other, as in the Bend Crenelle. *numb*: 32. this is born by the name of *Chamser* and by *Lucett*.

XXX. He beareth Or, a **Bend** Gules: **Urdee**, or. **Champained**, (or **Championed** by Some) Sables. & is born by the name of *Immenhausen* a *German* Familey this by reason of the **Champaine's** being of an other colour, is like a Bend Surmounted of an other, Vrdee.

XXXI. He beareth Argent, a **Bend Nowy Quadrant** Sable. by the name of *Beilstaine*. This is also termed a Bend Single Ertettesed: or a Bend Nowy Quaderangled

XXXII. He beareth Azure, a **Bend Brettessed**, Or. This is born by the name of *Brescett*. This differeth from the **Crenell**, or **Imbattelling**, in two things: first the Bend Imbattled hath a larg and broad Bend, and this rather a Bendlet. Againe Imbattleing stands equally proportioned on both sides, with the Nuoches contrary one to the other: whereas this hath them one opposite to the other: as if they were Strong Staves put throw a peece of Timber or a Pole or a tree to clime up thereby. After this maner, Souldiers in default of Scaling Laders, used to put into long Poles and peeces of Timber, Strong pinns of wood: by which they ascended, and surprized the walls of an enimy.

Bends of this nature, have not aboue 3. or 4. of these Nouches, where-as Imbattleing may have as many as one pleaseth: neither is this terme **Brettesse**, used to any of the **Ordinaries**, except the **Bend**, the **Fesse**, and the **Pale**, to which it properly be longeth: And is of some old Heraulds called, **Bettressed**: and **Aspined**. as *c 6 n 62*

A such a *Bend* couped G. by *Van Donop of Brunswick*.

XXXIII. He beareth Purpure, a **Bend Imbattled** Argent. by the name of *Studman*. This is blazoned also a **Bend battelled**: or **Crenelle**. And of others termed, **Counter-battled**: or **Battelled Counter-battled**, because the *Battellings* generally are set on the two sides of the Bend, one contrary to the other, not opposite.

Mr: *Morgan lib: 2 chap:* 23. Saith, That it is to be observed: That if any Ordinary be **Imbattled**, or **Crenelle** on one side, then it is to be blazoned either **Crenell**, or **Battled**, or **Imbattled**. but if the same be so on both sides: Then it is only termed, **Counter-Imbattled**, Which may be in *Bends*, Fesses, Pales, *&c*.

S: such a *Bend* Er: is born by *Marston*.

G; one Imbattled on the top A: born by *Sachkirch*.

XXXIV. He beareth Tenney, a **Bend Nowy** Argent. this is born by the name of *Kutten*, or *Cotton*. As this is only with one Round in the midle of the Bend, so you shall have them **Nowy-Losengy**, and **Nowy-Quadrated**. and Coats also that are double and treble **Nowy'd**. as the next example.

XXXV. He beareth Or, a **Bend treble Nowy'd**, Gules. by the name of *Skarrot*. Some call it a Bend Nowyed, if there be more then one Round upon it. others say It there be more then one, it ought to be termed, **Bottony**, or **Pomety**, and not **Nowyed**. Yet others blazon it **Brettessed-Nowy**: Because they stand one opposite to the other, as Brettessing doth. se *numb*: 32.

XXXVI He beareth Argent, a **Bend Counter-flory**, Gules. Such a coate is born by the name of *Hollerd*, and of *Bromflett*. Sometymes the Florying is of a contrary colour to the Bend: Then blazon it, a Bend G: counter-flory, S. It is of others termed **Flory Counter-Flory**, and **Flory Counter-changed**. se the difference of flory, and counter-flory. *numb*: 78.

XXXVII He beareth Argent a **Bend Debruced**, (or a Bend **Fracted**, or **Removed**) Azure. born by *Barker*. This was in old tyme blazoned; a Bend **Double dauncette**. Which terme I have severall tymes met with in old blasoned coates. Yet could never meet with it manifested by an example, tell in viewing of an old booke in the Heraulds Office, I found a Fesse broken after this maner, and there termed **Double-Dauncette**: Which I do conceive, is nothing agreeable to its being. Also by some it is termed **Double Down-sett**: Which is more proper, then Dauncette. se *numb*: 75.

XXXVIII He beareth Azure, **Bend Angled**, Argent. born by the name of *Squarrell*. This was of old blazoned, a Bend **Bevelle**: but Bevelle is with more Acute corners this haveing them of a perfect Square: Therefore more properly said to be Angled.

XXXIX He beareth Gules, a **Bend Bevelle**, Or. by the name of *Bevile*. This Bend though it be like that *numb*: 37. yet it is much different, Seing this hath a Substance of the Bend in the joyning of the Bevelle, whereas the other hath none, but the two ends standing, or lying, each side the other.

XL He beareth Argent, a **Bend per Bend Indented**, Gules & Or. born by the name of *Corse*. this is (as I have shewed, before in the examples of Chiefs) blazoned **Point in Point**. Which it cannot be except the **Indents** run from one side of the Ordinarie to the other. se *chap*: 3. *numb*: 47. & 50. Thus Fesses are also born

as

as G: a Fesse Indented *A* & *B*. by the name of *Wilden*. And the same in Pointe by *Van Trautenberg* of *Bavaria*.

XLI He beareth Argent a **Bend per Bend Crenell** or **Battled**, Vert & Gules. dy the name of *Manners*. This also is blazoned **Point in Point Imbattled**: &c

XLII. He beareth Azure, a **Bend Gobbony**, Or & Gules, else a **Bend Gobbonated**. This is borrowed from our old English word **Gobbeus**, or small peeces; For so this Bend seemeth to be cut into.

Such a one over 2 *Barrs* A: belongs to *Leigh* of *Adlington*.

A such an other O *B* & G is born by *Cromwallay*.

XLIII He beareth Vert, a Bend **Compony**, or (after some) **Counter-Compony**, Or & Vert. born dy the name of **Goodcompany**. As the aforesaid example doth consist of peeces: So this is framed of two Tracts, or Rows of Colours, Compounded, or **Contecly** placed.

Er: the like A & S born by *Curssune*. & *Armball*.

XLIIII He beareth Or a Bend **Chequie**, or **Checkie**, Argent & Sable. born by *Stirrope*. This way of Chequie, when it is upon Bends, Fesses, *Barrs*, and such like; is never lesse then three Tracts, or Rowes of lines; but in all fields there may be as many as the *Painter* (with discretion) pleaseth. G the like O & V born by *Stilley*.

XLV. He beareth Argent, on a Bend Azure, three **Cheverons**, Or. by the name of *Bencher*. After this maner Bends are charged with Fretts, Fesses, *Barrs*, Crosses, and Salters. As in the next example.

Ers the like O 4 cheverons G born dy *Kendale*.

XLVI He beareth Or, on a Bend Azure, a Fesse Argent, charged with a Salter Gules. born by the name of *Hadden* a *Germane* familey.

A on the like S 2 *Barrs* O. by *Don Garillo* a *Spaniard*.

XLVII He beareth Purpure, a Bend **Archy** Argent. or a Bend **Champaine**, after some Authors: or **Shapcurne**, by others. This is born by the familey of *Archby*.

G the like A: charged with 2 fishes **Najant Respeping** each other *B*. the coate of *Schambach* of *Bavaria*.

G: 2 such Sinister O. is *Glatz's* coate of *Bavaria*, & is quartered by *Monsterberg* a *Germane* familey.

XLVIII. He beareth Or, a Bend **Archee**, **Coronettee** on the top side, Gules. Some say, Haveing the higher side **Coronett-wayes**, *Morgan lib:* 3. *fo:* 39. termeth this a **Coronet** in Bend. but he should then have said (**Extended in Bend**) because it reacheth from side to side of the shielde.

Barry of 10 ☉ & ♄ such a *Bend* ♀ born by *Peter of Savoy* Duke of *Saxony*.

A a Fesse S the like O born by *Van Wageleben*.

XLIX He beareth Argent, a **Bend Traverse**, **Counter-pointed**, Sable. by the name of *Traverse* or *Travis*. This hath the resemblence of a Trench or out worke of a *Campe*, made by Souldiers when they besiege a Fort, or Citty, to keep their enimies from Sallying out upon them. from whence I Suppose it took its name.

L. He beareth Argent, a **Bend Fusill**, Gules. born by *Lymmoll*. Some Heraulds number the Fusils, which is needlesse, when they extend to the out sides of the Escochion: And begin, or end, or both, with Demy-Fusils.

Sometymes you shall find coats with them contrary coloured, that is, one of one colour, and the next to it of an other colour: Which is thus termed, a Bend Fusill, Arg: & Gul: **Alternatively**. or **Losenge**, A. & G. **Gradatim**. or Gradually the one Arg: & the other Gules.

And as these are born in Bend, So are they in Fesse, Pale Crosse &c: Which examples in those Ordinaries I forbear there to shew for brevity sake.

Sone have the Bends plain on the out sides, yet wrought upon with Fusill or, Losenge work, which consisteth of two colours: And then they are blazoned **Fusilly** or **Lozengee**. se *chap: 7. numb:* 113.

A the lik S is the coat of *Glastingbury*.

O the like *B* born by *Hean Foktrum*.

LI. He beareth Azure, a Bend **Mascule**, Or. born by *Wallesey*. Bends, Fesses, Pales, &c Are born Masculy like to the Fusill; Which is the same in shape, only the one is Solid, and this Voyded, haveing the field seene through the midle of it: Of these kinds and sorts of Bearings, You shall receive further Instructions in *chap: 6 numb:* 71 *to* 88.

☞ If the Field or Ordinary are wrought into **Mascles**, then it is termed, **Masculee**, or **Masculy**, or after-others, **Mascle-Wayes**. As afore-said of Fusill, and of Fusilly: Losenge, and Lozengy. For there is a manifest distinction therein, which is to be carefully looked into.

LII. He beareth Argent, two Bends **Fusill**, **Conjoyned**, Gules. or else termed a Double Bend **Fusill**: because they stand not asunder, but touching each other in the points. This is the coat-Armour of *Strongbow*. and of *Van Reinsberg*. of *Switzerland* in *Germanie*.

A two such Sinister G is the coat of *Van Crefwits*.

LIII. He hath for his Coat-Armour Or, a **Bend**, and on the Sinister side two **Bendletts**, Vert born by *Bendy*.

A the like G on the same side two such, V by *Tarry*. If they be of contrary colours as this is: Then first name the Ordinary & its colour: then follow with the Diminutions, observeing the place they stand in, whither on the Dexter or Sinister side of the Escochion, nameing their maner of forme and the colour they are off.

LIIII. He hath for his Armes Argent, three Bends (or Bendletts) in Chief Gules. by the name of *Byron*. These I call Bends in Chief, because they are all seated in the top or head, or chief part of the Escochion, no part of them falling into the *Dexter side*, but all on the *Sinister*; which they could not be, if any of them were drawn out of the Chief. Some term them *Bendletts* on the *Sinister side* of the Escochion: or on the uper part of the Escochion.

A 3 such V by the name of *Monnorell*.

LV He beareth Or, a **Bendlett Endented** on the **Lower side**, betweene two other; that in base on both, Sable. by the name of *Detryment*. Others blazon it thus, Three Bends of which one & an halfe is **Endented** to the base. And others 3. Bendlets, the midle on the neither side and an other in base **Endented**. Others again I finde termes them 3. bends the midle Indented on the bottom, and that in base on both sides.

LVI. He beareth Argent, two *Bends Azure*, **Engrailed**, Sable. Which is born by *Goltzet* in the *Dichy* of *Brabant*. This Coate is also blazoned, 2. Bends Engrailed. Surmounted of as many. se *Cha: 3 numb:* 68. an Example of like nature. G the bend O engrailed A, betw: 6 Coronetts **Contrary-posed** of the *Second*: born by *Elsas*. Quarterly A & G on the first & last a *Bend* & 2 & 3 such a *Bend* **Counter-changed**. is the coate of

the Lyon Duke of Strasburg, in Germane.

V the Bend A Engr: O. is born by *Milforth*.

LVII. He bearetb Or, two Bends, that in dase, **Hnmett**, (or **Hnmetted**) in the Dexter end, Sable. born by *Tanmaker*. Some do blazon it, 2 Bends the undermost **Cooped**, (or cut Short) in the Top. Se the meaning of the Termes: **Humett & Cooped**. In the Examples of Fesses of that nature: *numb:* 63.

LVIII. He bearetb Azure, a Bend **Archy**, Or: **Edged, & Adorned**, with three of the *Celestiall Signes*, viz: ♐ *Sagittarius*, ♏ *Scorpio*, & ♎ *Libra*, Sables. This is and may be termed, a Bend containing the fourth part of the *Zodiacke*; because it hath but three of the *Signs fixed* theron. If six of them were Seen upon it, then it is termed the *Hemi-Spheare*, or the *Hemi-Zodiacke:* That is halfe of the *Zodiacke Circle*, which is as much as can be seen of the *Celestial Globe* at one Instant of tyme & place.

♂ on a Bend Sinister ☽: Three of the *Selestial Signes*, Viz: ♐ ♏ & ♎ of the first. Is born by the *King of Spain* in memory of his Discovery of that Quarter of the World called *America*.

LIX. He bearetb Or, three Bends Gules, **Floried** on the **Cops**, Sable. by the name of **Florisham**. Some of our old *Heraulds* terme these 3 **Gartiers**, or **Costs**, Couped on the Top & **Flowried**.

LX. He bearetb Argent, two Bends, the one at the bottome, and the other at the Top, **Couped & Irradicated** or Rent and Torn, (or else **Splentered**, as some have it) Gules. by the name of *Brekenlt ffe*. In such bearcings as these, the higher, or that next the *Chief*, with its concernments ought to be first named.

G the like A is born by *Splendering*.

Of the Fesse

2 THE Next Ordinary in order to be spoken off, is the **Fesse**, which is Formed of a two-fold Line, Drawn over-thwart the breadth of the Escochion, in the midle thereof. Which in its Contanent, comprehends the third part of the field, and may not be Diminished.

3. This word **Fesse**, cometh from a *French* word that signifieth, The *Loines of a man*. This Ordinary hath bine Ancently taken for the same which the *Latines* call, *Baltheum Militare* or *Cinculum Honoris*, a Belt of Honor, because it divideth the field into equall parts, it selfe occupying the midle between both: even as the Girdle Invironeth the midle part of a man; which was a gift in Ancient tymes, bestowed by Emperours and Kings and their Generalls of the field, unto Souldiers for reward of some especiall Service. As we may se by *Joab's* words to the Messenger that saw *Absalom* hanging in the Oake: *Why hast thou not killed him, that so I might have rewarded thy Service with ten Shekells of Silver, & a Girdle* (or **Armed Belt**) *as it is in 2 Sam:* 18 11. And amongst the *Macedonians* it was ordained by a **Military Law**, that the Souldier that had not Killed an enimy: *Non militari Cingulo, sed Capistro cingeretur*. Should not be gitt with an **Armeing Girdle**, but with an Halter.

LXI. He bearetb Argent, a **Fesse**, Gules. by the name of *Solers*. And also by the familey of *Dodinsels*.

O the like *B* born by *Vernon* Baron of *Shipbrock:* one of the Ancient Barony's in the *County Palatine* of *Chester*.

LXII He bearetb Azure, a **Fesse Voided**, Argent. by the name of *Bluhall*. Some will say, **Voided** of the **Field**, which needs not: for by the terme, **Voyded**, or **Voiding**, is ment, that the colour of the field is seen betweene the sids of the Fesse. If the Voided part were of any other colour then that of the field, it is then blazoned, a **Fesse** Argent, **Surmounted** of an other' Gules: or of such or such a colour. And againe others do terme them two **Barrs**, or a Barr **Gemeile**, Yet it cannot be either, seing it is only the breadth of the Fesse, and set in its own place: whereas the Barrs do equally divid the field. And besides are never born Single. *Se numb:* 86 & 92.

LXIII He bearetb Argent, a **Fesse Couped**, Sable. Anciently this was termed a Fesse **Carneile**, and by some a **Humett**, or an **Hawmed**, as *Legh pa* 106. & *Bosw: pa:* 14. If three such as these be in one Coat, then they are and may be properly termed, three **Humetts**, which by reason of their Extention can be set no other-wayes, then one aboue an other, which in such cases needs no mentioning to be in Pale. S the like A· born by *Bostock*.

O such a Fesse G by *Masham of Essex*.

A 2 such V on each 3 flowers De-lis born by *Rawley*

Er: 3 such G by *Dabrigecourt*. or *Abbriscourt*.

LXIV. He bearetb Or, a Fesse **Humett**, Gules. by the name of *Humets*. This differeth from the Fesse couped in this: That it sheweth its thicknes, whereas the other lyes plain on the field shewing none at all. *Gwilliams folio* 309. is of an oppinion, that this is more properly called a **Table**, others a **Grave ston**, and so the same hath bin anciently blazoned. G the like betw: 3 Trestles A· by the name of *Stratford* of *Glostershire*.

LXV. He bearetb Argent, a Fesse **Imbattelled**, on the Top, (or higher side) Azure. born by *Battlerall*. As this is Imbattled, so you shall finde them **Indented, Engrailed, Champaine**, and the like: according to the severall veriaties of Lines before shewed &c: *Morgan his Sphere l: 2 fo* 41. Saith, This is the only **Imbattelled**, for if it be so on both sides the Ordinary, then it is termed properly **Counter-Imbattelled**.

A such another S by *Walton*, & by *Van Crumenaw*.

A the like G by the name of *Plaunche*.

LXVI· He bearetb Or, a Fesse **Crenell**, (or **Imbattelled**) Gules. by the name of *Crebott*. se the next *n* 67.

A the like betw: 3 Escallops S born by *Beckingham*.

LXVII· He bearetb Azure, a Fesse **Imbattelled-counter-Imbattelled**, Argent. Here you may se the difference of **Counter-Imbattelling**, (or Counter-Battleing) to that as hath but only the terme of **Imbattelling**, the one being a Fesse in its full thicknes, with the Battlements set in good order, & opposite one to the other: but this hath the Battlements the one contrary to the other, so that where there is a void place betweene the Battleing on the one side, it hath that want supplyed, by haveing the Battleing against it on the other side. And besides all this, In the **Counter-battleing**, the Fesse hath not the same Proportion in thicknes, as the **Imbattleing**, for it containes not above the thicknes of a Barr.

The aforesaid coat belongs to the name of *Barnas*.

G 2 such A is born by *Arggeln*. & by *Prancke*.

LXVIII He bearetb Argent, a Fesse **Brettessed**, Gules this

This is likewise no broader then a Barr, and hath the Brettesses set one against the other, as is shewed more fully in the Bend of this nature. *numb:* 32.

LXIX. He beareth Azure, a **Fesse Battled-Imbattelled**, Argent. This is as it were, **Double Imbattelled**: or else, haveing one Battlement upon an other. So that in these five last examples, you may see five ways of bearings in Battlements, and all contrary to others, both in shape, & in the termes of blazoning; Yet neere in resemblance. others call this a Fesse **Grady Imbattelled**. and is born by the name of *Armestronge*. *se c 3 n 84*.

LXX. He beareth Or, a **Fesse Nowye**, Azure. by the name of *Fessermow*. This Nowy is born **Quadrant**, and **Lozeng-wise**, of which I gave examples in Bends, *numb:* 31 34. This is also of some Authors termed a Fesse **Bottony**, or **Pometty**. Which being Gules, in a field Argent. is born by *Ailson*.

LXXI. He beareth Azure, a Fesse **Indented**, Argent. born by the name of *De-bingham*. Here you se the difference of an **Indent**, & a **Dauncett**: The one hath as many Points, or teeth, as you please, standing either contrary or opposite one to the other: but the Dauncett never exceedeth three points (Some say foure) on the top: And that the Points in the bottom, strike directly into the points on the top; So that it seemes to be but a Crooked Fesse, which were it Stretched out, would be Straight, and euen. Which the Indented one could, nor would not be.

A the like G born dy the name of *Barton*.

LXXII He beareth Argent, a **Fesse Dauncett**, (or **Dauncettee**) Purpure. by the name of *Stonmarsh*. or *Standmarch*. This hath anciently bine blazoned a **Dance**; or **Dancee**: & a **Fesse Counter-Indented**. It is the oppinion of some Authors, that if the Dauncetts exceed 3 points on the top they ought to be number'd, as a Fesse of 4 5 or 6. Pecces: That is, hath 4 5 or 6 Points on the higher Side. Yet for my own part, I hold it best made when it consists only of 3. points.

This kinde of Fesse I have not only seen **Dauncett**, but the points have bine **Ingrailed, Invecked, & Waved, &c**: Which is one addition of a Line to an other; makeing such Coats Prodigious, Yet the like beareings are above 300. yeares old.

A a Fesse **Daunsy** G (so called of old) & born by *Chedle* of *Chedle*. also by *Dedeyne*.

Er: the like S. born by *Deincourt*. & G the like A is born by the name of *Papworth*.

LXXIII He beareth Or, a **Fesse Dauncett Counter-Flory** Gules. by the name of *Flower*. And after others, a Fesse **Dauncett** of **two Peeces Floritee**. by some termed thus (haveing but two Points) a **Double**, or two **Cheverons Conjoyned** in **Fesse, Counter-Flory**. In Coats of this nature, it is very necessary to Number the Points, else the Tricker of Coats may be deceived by its terme of blazoning.

B such a Fesse **Flowry**. O is born by *Ploden*.

LXXIIII He beareth Argent, a **Fesse Dauncett Gobony**, Sable & Gules. or else a Fesse **Daunsy, Paly** of 6. For the **Gobony** in such Ordinaryes are ever drawn from Point to Point, or else it will not keep an Handsome Decocoram. This is born by the name of *Courtley*.

B a Fesse Dauncett Parted per Fesse Endented, A & S. is born by the name of *Doling*.

A the Fesse Dauncet Gobony O & G. *Van Cuff-[illegible]*

LXXV. He beareth Azure, a **Fesse Debruced**, Or. This Fesse I finde termed severall ways: as **Fracted, Removed, & Double Downe-set**. all which is as much as to say, a Broken Fesse. *se numb:* 37. Such a Fesse is born dy *Raumburgh* in *Germanie*.

LXXVI. He beareth Argent, a **Fesse Nebulee** on the top, & **Invecked** in the *Bottom*, Gules. This is born by the name of *Wakewater*. The Invecked points ought to answer the midle of the Nebulee points, else it is not rightly Drawn: besids one part of the Fesse will be droader & tricker then the other, if that be not observed in the Composure of the Ordinary, either of this or any other kinde.

LXXVII. He beareth Or, a **Fesse** between 2. **Barruletts**, Azure. This is born by the name of *De la Mare*. It is of some termed a Fesse **Cotized**, or betwn 2. **Cotizes**: but that is very improper, by reason a **Coss**, or **Cotize**, is the Diminution of a **Bend**, and must be set alwayes **Bend-wayes**, else it loseth it name. But this being the Diminution of a **Barre**, and set after the maner of a Barr must therefore have its proper term belonging to it selfe, & not to take its name from that to which it hath no Affinity. It is by others termed, a Fesse between 2. **Gemello**: And that is as farr from the Marke as the other: For a **Gemell** ever goeth by Paires, or Couples, & not to be Seperated, but here being parted the are no more Gemells, or *Twins*, but **Barruletts**.

This is by some more Skilfull, blazoned a Fesse between 2. **Closetts**. Which is more proper then **Cotizes**: because the Closett is the halfe **Barr**, & is a Diminitive of or from it, as you will heare hereafter. *numb:* 81. So then to say a **Fesse Closed**, or **Closetted**, are no bad termes.

A. the like S is born by *Schrp-festen* in the *Palatinate* of *Rhyne*. Also A a Fesse & one Barrulett over it V. is born by the same name. G the like A by *Peyers*.

LXXVIII. He beareth Argent, a **Fesse** Gules, between two **Barruletts Flory** Vert. Here in this Example, take notice of the difference between **Flory**, (or **Floxity**, or **Flurt**, as some call it) and **Counter-Flory**: The Flory or Flurt being only the tops or heads of the **Flowers de lis**; and the Counter-Flory or Counter-Flurt, have both parts of the Flower de lis, but with this difference, that the heads and feet, or bottom part, are ever set contrary one to the other, as in *numb.* 73. and 83. see the same in a Bend Counter Flory, *numb.* 36. born by the Name of *Trient*, of *Holland*.

LXXIX. He beareth, Or, a **Fesse**, Azure, between two **Barrs Gemell**, Imbattelled, Sable. Here is the right term and nature of a Gemell, which like Twins ever go together, there is no parting them: Yet some have blazoned these a Fesse between two **double Cotizes**, or (double Cotized) though improperly. Therefore note, That when the Fesse is between two single ones they are termed **Barruletts**; if they be double, they are **Barrs Gemelle**; if trebble, they are **Barruletts** again; born by the Name of *Lamure*.

A. a like Fesse B. by the Name of *Wlfure*.

G. the Fesse Cheque Az. S. the Gemells. O. born by *Whitwell*.

A. Fesse per Fesse Indented: V and S the Gemells counterchanged, born by the name of *Stowell*.

LXXX. He beareth Azure, a **Fesse** Ermine **edged** between two Barrulets: Or: if the Field had been White,

I should then have said, 4 Ermyne between two **Barrs Gemelle.** This is born by the Name of *Passaw*, a *German* Family.

S. the Fesse Ers. the edging and Barruletts. A. born by *Strudel.*

LXXXI. He beareth Or, a **Fesse** Argent, **edged** Gules: or else you may blazon it thus, Or, a Fesse Gules, **surmounted** of another Argent, born by the name of *Weingartyn.*

O: 2 barrs: G: edged: S: born by *Wittenherst.*

LXXXII. He beareth Azure, a **Fesse** and **Canton** Or. What the Canton is you shall know hereafter: But in this Coat, and such of like nature, you must observe, that if these two ordinaries be both of one colour, then their parts are not severed by their proper and distinct lines, but are joined together as one entire thing: Nevertheless, they may be easily conceived, what ordinaries they be composed of, notwithstanding the defect of the said Lines. And as it falls out in these two, so you shall have the like in Barrs and Cantons, Chiefs and Bends, *&c. numb.* 96. 99.

A the like G born by *Woodvile.*

A 2 Barrs and Canton G born by *Deane.*

A 3 Barrs and Canton born by *Fuller.*

S a Chief and Bend A by *Chiestaine.*

A a Salter and Chief G by *Bruse.*

LXXXIII. He beareth Argent, a **Fesse** Azure, **Counter-Flory** (or **Counter Flurty**) Sable. This is also termed Counter-Flority, Counter-Flurty, and Counter-Flowred; and some Heraulds use this nice distinction between Flurt, and Flurty, as to say, the first signifies the heads of the Flowers de lis only, and the latter for both top and bottom of the Flower de lis, but so as to have them set contrary one to the other, both on Bends, Barrs or Fesses; and the like they observe in Flory and Flority; the first for the heads, and the latter for the whole Flower de lis contrary set, as in this Example; so that by this observation, and Critick distinction, such Heraulds blazon this Coat thus; Argent a Fesse, Azure Flority or Flurty Sable; but I hold it best blazoned, to have the term (Counter) added, and then there is no fear of a mistake in the tricking; which otherwise, upon such nice expressions, there may be. This is born by the name of *Flowerage.*

V such a Fesse O born by *Harold,*

LXXXIV. He beareth Or, a **Fesse double downsett** Gules: Some term it **ramped,** and **coppee.** See more in Cheverons, *chap.* 6. *numb.* 27. this is born by the name of *Beedle.*

Party per Fesse B and G the like Fesse Couped A. is born by the name of *Van Sintzendorf*, in the Dukedom of *Austria.*

LXXXV. He beareth Argent, a **Demi-Belt** fixed in Fesse Azure, **Buckled, Edged,** and **Garnished,** Or, this is the true Fesse, which is meant for nothing else but a Belt encompassing the middle or waist of a Man; and I call it a demy Belt, because but the one half of it is seen; Though some Blazon it a Soldiers Belt extended in Fesse. This is a *German* Coat, and is born by the name of *Beltmaine.*

Of the Barr.

3 THE next in order to the **Fesse** is the **Barre,** and may (without offence) be said to be a diminution of the Fesse, though some Heralds hold that it cannot be divided, but that the Barr is an ordinary of it self, which I shall not much dispute about, but leave it to it self.

LXXXVI. He beareth Azure, a **Barr** Argent. This ordinary differeth from the **Fesse,** not only as it containeth a less proportion, not exceeding the fifth part of the Field (whereas the Fesse occupieth the third part.) but also that it is not tied to any certain or prescribed place, as other ordinaries; but may be transferred to any part of the Escochion.

☞ If there be but one in the Field, by the Rules of Herauldry, it is ever blazoned a Fesse, not a Barr; for it cannot be a Barr, except there be two or more in the Escocheon; as you may see in the following Examples; this I having caused to be set here, for no other end than to shew its diminution from the Fesse.

LXXXVII. He beareth Or, a **Closet** Azure; a Closet is a Charge abstracted from a Barr, and contains the half of it in breadth; and of these there may be five in one Field.

LXXXVIII. He beareth Argent a **Barrulet** Gules; this is the fourth part of a Barr: These are diversly born in Arms, as **plain, engraled, waved, Inbatelled,** and the like, as you have examples in the Fesse between them before shewed, *numb.* 77, 78, 79. The Barrulett saith *Leigh*, p. 67. cannot be born dividedly, but by couples, unless they be parted with a Fesse or a Barre.

LXXXIX. He beareth Argent, two **Barrs** Gules; the Field being divided into five equal parts doth rightly compose this Coat, giving to each a just quantity and proportion: There are diverse opinions concerning the number of Barrs that ought to be contained in one Field; some say more, others less; but after the proportion of the Barr without diminishing it, the Field will contain but three, yet to the number of four may (without offence) be blazoned Barrs, and that in my Judgment can be the uttermost, what are above that number are termed **Barruletts,** or **Closetts.** This is born by that worthy Gentleman, and person of much Worth and Honor, Sir *Thomas Mainwaring*, of *Pever*, in the County Palatine of *Chester*, Baronett.

B the like A born by *Venables*, late Baron of *Kinderton* in *Cheshire.*

A the like S born by the Honorable *William Brereton*, of *Brereton*, Baron *Laughlin* in the Realm of *Ireland.*

XC. He beareth Or, five **Barruletts** Azure. This is also blazoned Or, five **Closetts** Azure: by this example you may see that the Barr doth loose its name when they amount to above four. In Coats of this nature, the pieces of which they are composed, are always of an odd number, as this doth, being of eleven pieces; but if it chance that they fall out to be even, then it is termed **Barry** of 4, 6, 8, 10, 12. as you will see in *chap.* 7. *numb.* 69. 77. where Arms are treated of, which have no predominate colour. Barruletts may be born in

in Coats to the number of fifteen, but not above. This is born by the name of *Youthline.*

O five such S. born by *Selby* or *Selsby.*

A five such G belongs to the Coat of *Valence.*

A six such G with a bend B born by *Scutevill.*

A seven such S born by *Samson.*

XCI. He beareth Argent, two **Barrs** between as many **Barruletts** Azure. This is of some termed two **Barruletts Cotized**, or between 2 **Cotizes.** But Cotizes are the proper term for Bends; yet sometimes the term is borrowed by Armorists to Coats of this nature, for the better blazoning of them, as in the 94. example, and 77. This is born by the name of *De la Mough.*

XCII. He beareth Argent, three **Barrs Gemelle** Sable: This is another manner of bearing the Barr, called of some three **Gemuletts**, or **Gemews**, or **Barrs Cuppulles**: because they are ever born by Couples, from whence the term Gemelle of **Gemellus**, Twinns, is derived: for a Child is no Twinn, except there be two, so these Barrs are not termed Gemelles except they stand by Pairs, or Couples.

☞ This term of Gemelle is used to no ordinary save Barrs, the *French* Herauld *part* 2. *fol.* 14. doth blazon this Coat a Fesse of six pieces, but this is in regard the word (Face) stand both for a Fesse and a Barr. And also three **Gumelles**, they were called *ab antiquo.* This is born by the name of *Creswell.*

G 3 such O born by *Bensted.*

B 2 such A born by *Sipherwast.*

S 3 such born by *Buckton*, with a Canton A.

G 3 such O 2 Canton S. born by Sir *Humphry Briggs*, of *Shafnall*, Barronett.

XCIII. He beareth Azure, three **Barrs Indented** in the neither sides, Argent. born by the name of *Undercut*, or *Undercourt.*

XCIV. He beareth Argent, two **Barrs Cotized** Azure. and some thus, a **Barr Gemelle** between two **Barrs Cotized**: Others term it, a **Barr** between two **Closetts** in Chief, and the like in Base. But the first is most proper, though it have but a borrowed term of blazoning by Cotizes) instead of **Barruletts.**

☞ By which example you may note the difference between the Barrs being together, as *numb.* 91. and this of the Cotizes between the Barrs; for what thing soever is cotized, if they be two, three, or four, if they be said to be cotized, every particular must and ought to have its own Cotizes; so that the two between the Barrs, shews that one of them belongs to one Barr, and the other to the other Barr, as is shewed in Bends, *n mb.* 20, 21. some again blazon this 2 Barrs each between two Closetts. This is born by the name of *Conplecloffe.*

XCV. He beareth Argent, three **Barrs**, the first with three, the second two, and the third one **Imbatell** on the top, Gules: Others blazon it three Barrs Imbatelled on the top, the first with three, the second two, and the last one, by the name of *Van Petschach* in *Holland.* The like is born by *Van Der Warth* of *Bavaria.*

XCVI. He beareth Argent, a Fesse **Imbatelled** (or **Battessed**) **parted** (or **double parted**) Sable. This may very fitly be so termed, from the like parting in the example of Crosses, *chap.* 5. *numb.* 82. 88. being voided, or hollow, save in the places where the Imbatelling doth join the same; otherwise if there were no joining in the middle, it would then be blazoned, a Fesse **imbatelled, voided.** Some term this three **Pales cooped**, and two **Barruletts** conjoined Sable. Being all of one colour, they are joined together without the distinction of the lines of the Ordinories, as in the example before, of a Fesse and Canton, *numb.* 82. Others term it three **Billets** and two **Barruletts** conjoined Sable. This is born by the name of *Van Ysinburgh.*

XCVII. He beareth Or, three **Barrs Daunsette** Vert. by the name of *Balmy.*

O 3 such G by *Delamare.*

G 3 such A born by *Catenham.*

XCVIII. He beareth Argent, three **Pales** Gules, over all three **Barrs** Or; born by *Strongbare.* The like having the Pales S. and Barrs G. by the name of *Barre.*

XCIX. He beareth Or, two **Barrs** a **Canton**, and another in **Sinister Base**, Gules, born by *Deanelbugh.*

C. He beareth Argent, two **Barrs Counterpotentee** Gules, **ergrd** Sable. There is some difference between **potent**, and **potentee** or **potented**, the one having the potents on the outside of the Fesse, as you may see in the Bend mentioned in this Plate, *numb.* 28. And this where they are all composed in the Fesse or Barrs, running contrary one to the other, thereby making themselves a compleat Ordinary: And as it is in this form of Line, so you will often find Fields and Ordinaries, so made, as in *chap.* 7. *numb.* 117. Some term this 2 **Barrs potented**: and also **potented** in 2 **Barrs**, and **Potent counter Potent**, as *numb.* 25. and potency counter potency; and **Potency in Point.** This is born by the name of *Newent.*

Of the Escochion.

4. THE next Ordinary to be treated on, is the **Escochion**, which is an honourable Bearing, representing the form of an Escocheon, and containeth the fifth part of the Field (as saith *Leigh*) but his demonstration, *pag.* 66. demeteth the third part, and may not be diminished: And although it be subject to some alteration, by reason of the different forms of Lines before specified, yet it keepeth its own set form of an Escochion.

CI. He beareth Argent, an **Escochion** Azure. The Escocheon, saith *Grillians*, *fol.* 86. if it be set in the Fesse point of the Field, then it shall be called an **Inescochion**, or an **Escochion of pretence**: but if it be removed to any other place in the Field, or if there be more than one, then you shall term the same **Escochion** or **Escochions** born by the name of *Bartron.*

B the same A born by *Harleston.*

Er. the same G. born by *Hulgrave* of *Hulgrave.*

B 3 of the like A. born by the Worshipful Company of Painters.

A 3 such S. born by *Sudham*; also by *Matzingen.*

G 3 such each per Pale A and S. two Cheverons counterchanged by the name of *Schwartz.*

O 3 such B born by *Van Ahlfingen.*

A an Escochion G by *Van Gerolt-Stein*, of *Rhyne Palatinate.*

CII. He beareth Gules, on an **Escochion of pretence**, Argent, another Azure. This was anciently termed by the name of a **Fesse Target**, because it doth occupy the

the middle or **Fesse point** of the Shield. This is born by the name of *Scutimore*. Sir *John Ferne* terms it an **Escochion** of **pretence**, an **Engiflet**, or **Fessy Target** on an Escochion of pretence, O another B charged with the like A: such an Inescochion is born in the midst of the Quartering of *Hume*, Lord *Hume*, in *Scotland*.

CIII. He beareth Argent an **Escochion** Azure; **Flory** or **Flurt**, Sable, born by *Nichson*. Some use the term Flurt on the outside in form of a Cross, by reason the Escochion (say they) might have had the Flory upon it; but then by their good favour, it would admit of another kind of blazoning, as thus; on an **Escochion** four **Flower de Luces issuant** in form of a Cross: Or after some, four Flower de Lis tops fixed to the sides of the Escochion.

☞ But here is one especial note to be heeded, and then the term (on the outside) needs not to be mentioned, and that is, when the Escochion is Flory on the out parts, then they are both of one Colour, or two; or of the two Metals, for they cannot be of a Colour and a Metal; but if the same **Flory** be a Charge on the **Escochion**, then the one must be Metal, and the other a Colour, except it be false Armory.

A like Escochion to this I have seen **Counter-Flory**, which in number never exceeds three tops and three bottoms of the Flower de Luces, as the next example will demonstrate.

A the like B flory, V born by *Portugal*.

A an Escochion S. from the Dexter Chief Point, a Rose Slip proper, by the name of *Altorf*, of *Switzerland*.

O an Escochion Flory S born by *Van Hagenberg*.

CIV. He beareth Argent, an **Escochion Counter-Flory** of **Tulipas** and **Leaves** Vert; if these were of contrary Colours then blazon it thus, an Escochion Sable, **Counter-flowred**, with **Tulippas** Gules and Leaves Vert. After this manner you will find Escochions flowred and adorned with variety of Flowers, Leaves, and heads or tops of Crosses, with other such like things, of which you will see some examples in the Orle, in the next Section, *numb.* 110. and *chap.* 9, 28, 29, 30. This Coat is born by the Name of *Flowercross*.

G an Escochion Losengee. G and B counter-flowered with Tulipa's and Leaves O by the name of *Schavenburgh*.

Quarterly O and G. an Escocheon B set with 8 flower de luces in point S born by *Mandeville*, some say set in the out-side with 8 flower de Lis all pointing to the Fesse.

CV. He beareth Or an **Escochion indented** (or cut, hacked and hewed) into on the Sinister side Vert. This sheweth to be a Shield much in Warr which hath received many blows upon, and cuts into it. This is the Coat Armour of *Van Zummer*.

Of the Tresure.

5. THE next in rank of these kind of Ordinaries, is that of the **Tresure** with its diminutions, *viz.* the **Orle**, which have the form of an Escochion, but hath not the solid substance thereof, being they are evermore voided as in these following examples.

CVI. He beareth Argent a **Tresure** Sable. This word Tresure, may be thought to be drawn or proceed from the *English* word (Tract) it being only but a **Tract** or Line drawn about the sides of the Field; to which term or signification *Upton* aludeth, giving it this blazon: Argent a **Tract** Sable: It ever runneth answerable to the sides of the Field, if on a Shield, then it is in the form of an Escochion; if oval, the Tresure is oval; if square, then it is square; if the Field be round, or triangle, the Tresure is answerable thereunto. This with a Rose, is the Coat of Sir *Josias Trideman*.

A a Cheveron G betw. 3 Cross crosslets fitched S. within a Tresure counter-flory G. born by *Kenthy* Earl of *Cassels* in *Scotland*.

CVII. He beareth Or, a **double Tresure counter-flory**, Gules. This is all the ways that I ever saw the Tresure born as a Tresure, a **Tresure-flory**, a double Tresure (or double Trace as the *French* call it) **counter-flory**, and a **treble**, or two **double Tresure**, **counter-flowred**.

☞ Now in the Flory, or Counter-flory, if the Tresure be square then it is set with eight flowers, but if it be any other form, it hath but six set about it. This is born by *Comine*.

⊙ the like, with a Lion rampant ♂, is the Arms of the Kingdom of *Scotland*.

Of the Orle.

6. THE next in order of this kind, is the **Orle**, which is an ordinary composed of a threefold line, duplicated, admitting a transparencie of the Field, throughout the innermost Area or space inclosed. This hath the form of an Escochion, though not the solid substance thereof.

CVIII. He beareth Or, an **Orle** Azure. An Orle is taken from the *French* word *Oreiller*, which signifieth a Pillow, as if it were raised like a Pillow about the Field. *Upton* termeth it in Latine *Tractus*, a **Tract** or **Trasle**, and a **Trace simple**; others an **Inner border**; some an **Orle** or **Escochion voided**. This contains only the proportion, as the Escochion of pretence, which is two parts less than the Tressure, and is ever born in the form of an Escochion, let the Field be either oval, triangle, round, or square. This is born by the name of *Bertram*.

B the like A. born by *Spring*.

G the like A. born by the name of *Humfrevill*.

Mr. *Morgan* saith, if two of these be in a Field, it is termed a Tressure, but I cannot judge of it so, because this is unalterable, let the Field be what it will; and again this is ever set in the Honor Point, and the Tressure about the edg of the Field; so that they are two distinct things.

CIX. He beareth Argent, an **Orle** of three **peeces** Sable. The Orle is born (saith *Chassaneus*) of many pieces to the number of six. They are termed a **double**, or twofold, **Orle**, a **Triple Trace**, or Orle, *&c.* This is born by the name of *De la Champ*.

O the

O the like S born of the Bishop of *Main*, as Mr. *Gwilliam*, *fo.* 87. hath set it down.

CX. He beareth Or, an **Orle**, at each point, the head of a **Cross bottony** Azure: The Orle (as the Escochion) is often born **Flory, counter-flory**, and otherwise adorned, which for brevity I forbear to give examples; these may suffice to give instructions for many of this nature. This is born by the name of *Orlance*, or *Orlace*.

G the like A born by *Van Zedlitz*.

S the like O by *Van Kinderbach* of *Swabidia*.

CXI. He beareth Argent, an **Orle Imbatelled** on the outside Azure. This Ordinary is born diversly, according to the several forms of Lines, and that on the inner and outward parts severally: This is born by the name of *Battlerond*.

If the Orle be Indented, Ingraled, Invecked, *&c.* on both sides, then it needs no mentioning, but an Orle Ingraled, and so of the rest; but if it be on the out, or inner side only, then it must be mentioned which side it is.

CXII. He beareth Or, an **Orle Ingraled** Gules. *Upton* (cited by *Gwilliam*, *fol.* 87.) blazons this an Orle Ingraled on both sides.

☞ Note, that diverse Charges, as well Artificial as Natural, are born **Orlewaps**, or **in Orle**: as likewise in form of Cross, Bend, Cheveron, Salter, *&c.* The examples whereof I must pass over, until a fit place be offered to handle things of that nature. The Orle is likewise composed of the sundry sorts of Furrs, but that I hold needless to use examples, seeing by their diverse manner of bearing in other Ordinaries, they may be easily conceived; and therefore shall leave them to observation. The *French* blazon this a Trace engreilee on both sides.

S the like A between 3 Cressants Er. born by *Bateman*.

CXIII. He beareth Argent, an **Orle** and **Hurts**.

☞ Here I mention no colour of the Orle, because it is to be understood to be of that colour as the Hurts are, which is ever Blew. This is born by the name of *Shelhurst*. Also things set in Orle, or about the Orle are ever of the number of eight, which needs no numbring or telling; but if they exceed or diminish, then number them as in the next.

A the Orle with Martlets S. born by *Winnington* and *Leftwich*.

CXIV. He beareth Or, an **Orle** Gules, 10 **Billetts** (in Orle as some term it) Sable.

☞ If any thing be set about the Orle, they are set after the manner of these two examples, and if they exceed 8 in number, they are to be numbered, or under; else not. This is born by the name of *Arrowsmith*.

This was anciently blazoned an Orle of Humets per Border, because they supplied the place of the Bordure.

A the same S. born by *Filkin*

G the like Er Semy de Billets O born by *Welhope* or *Wallope*. The same also by *Walleys*.

C an Orle & Semy Crusilee O by *Bertram*.

S the like A Bazontee by *Hauks*.

Of the Flanches and Flasques.

7. THE next ordinary that follows in order, and according to the method of our Engraving them on the Plate, is the **Flanches**, which is an ordinary composed of a twofold line, drawn somewhat distant (but rather directly) from the corners of the Escochion in Chief, and so swelling by degrees, until they come to the middle of the said Escochion, and from thence descending unto the base points, as in the examples.

CXV. He beareth Gules, two **Flanches** Argent. This word *Flanch*, is derived from the *French* word *Flans*, which signifies the Flank of Man or Beast. I set the **Flanches** in the first place, not for preheminence of place) but because of its greater swelling into the Field than the other, and also by reason they are diminutions from this. In the making of these Flanches I rather follow the form of *Gwilliam*, *pag.* 84. than that of *Leigh*, *pag.* 70. who makes them swell so far into the Field, that they do in a manner touch each other; which they ought not to do.

CXVI. He beareth Or, two **Flasques** Azure. This is held for the more honorable ordinary (although it be but a derivative from the other) in regard it is more usually born. The term **Flasque** is either from the *French* word *Flesshier*, or of the *Latine* word *Flexo*, to bend or bow. These **Flanches Flasques** are never born single, but always by couples; and sometimes you shall find these ordinaries composed of the several sorts of Lines before said, and also charged upon as others. This is the reward of a Gentleman for good service.

S an estoile O between them Er. born by *Hubart*.

CXVII. He beareth Azure, two **Voiders** Argent. This is another deminution from the **Flanche**, and containeth the third part thereof. They are called **Voiders**, from the *French Voire*, which signifieth a Looking-Glass or Mirrour, which in ancient times were made commonly in that bulging form.

CXVIII. He beareth Argent, two **Flasques** Or, **edged** Gules; or after other, 2 **Flanches** charged or **surmounted** by **Flasques**. By the name of *Jury*.

CXIX. He beareth Azure, two **square Flasques** Argent: Some term them two **Flasques rectangled**, or **acute-angled**; but I should rather take them for two Triangles in the place of **Flasques**. Born by the name of *Van Darlipp*, alias *Van erlip*.

CXX. He beareth Argent, a **Fesse** Azure, two **Flasques engraled**, Or; surmounted of as many Gules. Some hold that the **Flasques** cannot be voided, for then instead of **Flasques** they are to be blazoned, two **Cheveron arches couchant** dexter and sinister. This is born by *Van Swalth. rlt*, a *Low Country* Name and Family.

Sometime the Fesse surmounts the Flanches as in these Examples.

A 2 Flanches Chequice O. and B. over all a Fesse Er. by *Waring*.

G 2 Flanches Chequice O and B the Fesse O *Warway*.

TO

TO

THOMAS COWPER,

Of the City of *CHESTER*, Gent.

Son and Heir of *Thomas Cowper*, of the said City, Alderman and Justice of the Peace. Major, 1641.

WOrthy Friend, Your forwardness in promoting this Work hath provoked many of our Citizens to the like Zeal, which is thankfully acknowledged by him who is ready to serve you whilest

R. H.

CHAP. V.

1. THE next ordinary to be spoken of, is the **Cross**, which is an ordinary composed of a fourfold Line, whereof two are perpendicular, the other two are transverse; for so we must conceive of them, though they are not drawn throughout, but meet in couples, in four acute Angles near about the Fesse point of the Escochion. This Ordinary together with the Salter, are subject to no diminutions as other Ordinaries are; yet the Contents thereof are not always the same; but they are made lesser or bigger according to their being or not being charged. For the Cross being single, it is the fifth part of the Field, but charged upon, it contains the third part; as in the examples

Of the Cross.

I. He beareth Azure, a **Cross** Or. In antient times it was drawn after this form, and is taken to be the true shape of the Cross on which it is said our Saviour suffered; yet this form of bearing it, hath been much altered, through the inconsiderate handling of common and unskilful Painters; so that this Cross I have caused to be Cut, only to shew how in ancient Rolls of Antiquity it was formerly depicted; and indeed most consonant to Reason, that the Stem or lower part thereof should be much longer than the cross part, by so much as was requisite for its fixing in the Ground: Yet in the rest of the Crosses following, I shall imitate the vulgar manner of bearing now used. This form of Cross, if it were couped or cut off from the Field, is termed a long Cross, as *numb.* 45.

II. He beareth Argent, a **Cross** Gules. This is so generally known in *England*, that it is usually blazoned only St. *George*'s Cross, or the Cross of *England*. *Upton* in his time saith, that several Armorists gave it this blazoning; the Shield Gules, four quarters Argent, which is a very uncertain way for to decipher a Cross, seeing quarters all meet in the Center of the Escochion; they might far better have termed them Cantons. If it be not charged, some term it per Cross.

Crosses do receive diversity of names, according to the diverse sorts of Lines whereof they are composed.

A the Cross G the Patronal Cross of St. *George* for *England*.

O the same G St. *Patrick* for *Ireland*.

B the same O St. *Dennis* for *France*.

A the Cross G in the dexter quarter a Bloody Dagger; which is the Coat Armour of the honourable City of *London*.

G the same O by the name of *Savoy*.

S the same O by the name of *Fennel*.

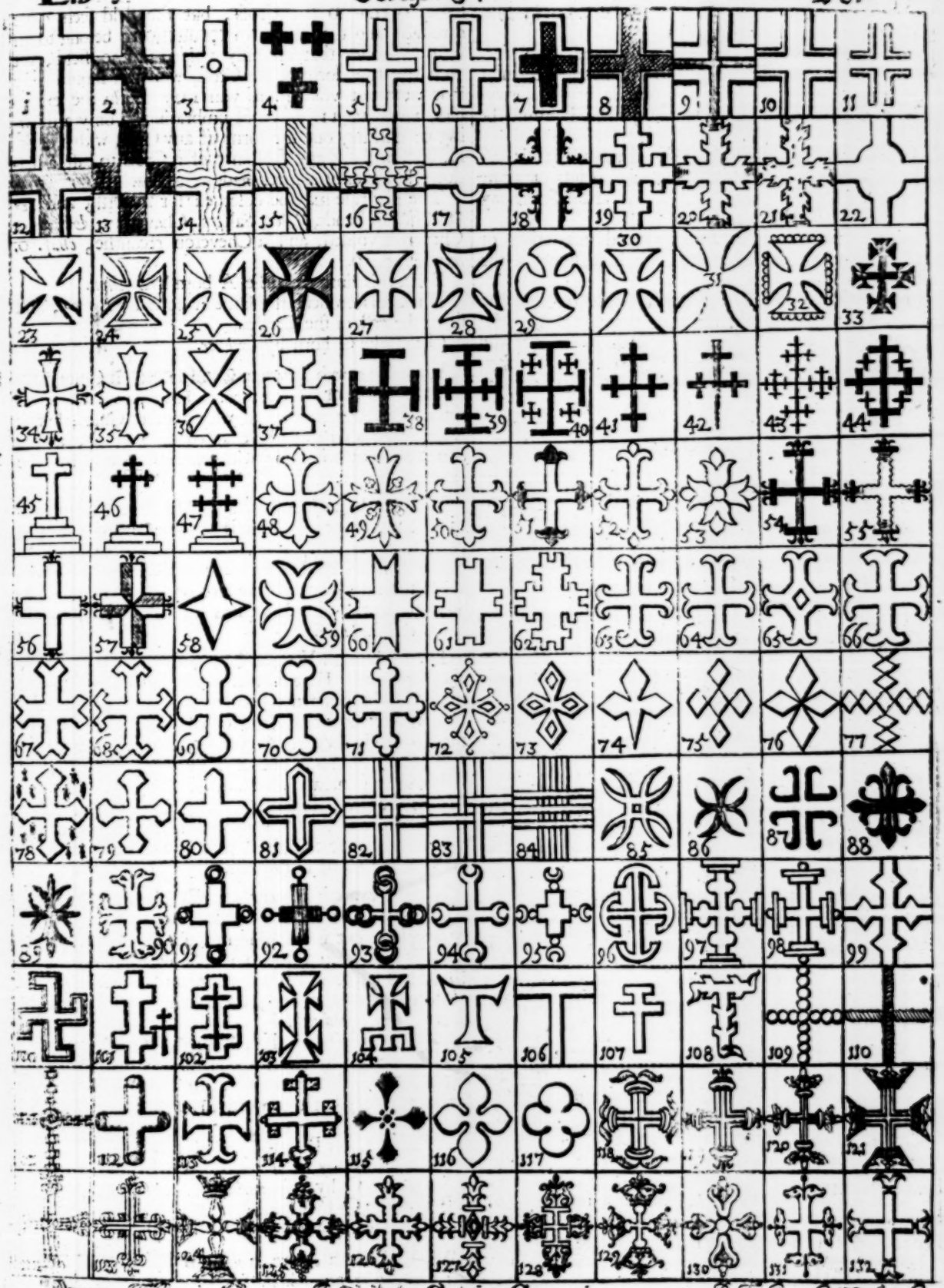
V the like O by the name of *Rising*.

III. He beareth Sable, a **Cross couped and pierced**, Or: Some term this a plain Cross of equal length.

☞ If there be more than one in the Escochion, then they need not to be termed couped; except there be some of the ordinaries between them.

Of Crosses pierced.

2. THere are three ways of piercing the Cross and Salter, which is only in the middle of them, and that is when the colour of the Field is seen through the



Donum Gestrice Generosi de Cognitate Gestrice Generosi

P: Edwards jun: Sculp:

the same; wherefore good heed must be taken in blazoning Coats of this nature; For,

First, if the piercing be round, then the term pierced or perforated, shall suffice to signifie an orbicular or round pierce or hole in the middle of the Cross; but if it be otherwise than round, then it must be named.

Secondly, a Cross pierced Losenge-ways, that is, after the form of a Losenge, with the points or acute Angles, streight upward and downward. Some say pierced Losengee, as *numb.* 65.

Thirdly, a Cross or Salter pierced quarterly; or quarter pierced, that is, when the hole through the Cross is foursquare, as *numb.* 13.

☞ If these piercings be in any other part of the ordinary but in the middle, then they are not to be accounted for piercings, but for charges. Or if the Cross aforesaid, (or a Salter) had with the piercing, any more of the same nature upon any other part; as four of them at the four ends, or else were charged with any other thing, Natural or Artificial, then the pierce is no pierce, but a charge.

IV. He beareth Argent, three **Crosses sable**, they are never termed **couped** if there be more than one in a Field, for they are ever understood to be so: neither can two or three be in a Shield except they be couped; without there be some other ordinary between them to which they may be fixed, as a Fesse between two Crosses, or a Pale or Bend between two, and the like, as in *cap.* 8. *numb.* 67. In which respect they must be termed couped, because they can be fixed to ordinaries, which they cannot in such like coats as this example. This Cross alone in a field, is by *Leigh, pag.* 30. called a **plain Cross humett**, or a **crosslett**, and others a **Crosslett**, that is a little Cross. This is born by the name of *Crosby*. These Crosses are born composed of the several sorts of Lines, as is before described; and to give example of all the kinds thereof, is needless; seeing I have done it fully in Pales and Bends, therefore omit them here, seeing there is plenty of other sorts of Crosses.

B a Cross O charged with 5 Roses is born by *Grange*.

Such a Cross B charged with 9 Beazants, is *Hagken's* Crest of *Westphalia*.

V. He beareth Argent, a **Cross recourse** Sable. This is by some blazoned a Cross Sable, **surmounted** of another Argent: of *Morgan, lib.* 2. *fol.* 55. it is termed a **Cross clechee**, but it is fittest **recourse**, because it hath the substance of the Cross taken away, the outsides and ends of it only remaining; and differeth from the Cross voided only in this, that it hath ends, and the voided, none. This is born by the name of *Hacher*.

VI. He beareth Vert, a **Cross recourse couped**, Or, by the name of *Courser*. This is of some termed a **Cross course voided**; others a **Cross umbrated**, but the umbrated Cross is tied to one colour, which is a blackish or dark colour; but this of recourse may be of any colour of Mettle, neither hath umbrating so full a skore or so thick a line as this, but only a small line, to make as it were the sign or shadow of a Cross.

Some Heraulds are of opinion, (to whom I adhere,) that the term **voiding**, is a term only belonging to Crosses that are conjoined to the sides of the Shield, or those that are couped from it, which in the voiding have no ends to the Cross, but the field seen quite through; and that the term **recourse** to belong to all sorts of Crosses that are only voided of the field, yet hath the true form of the Cross, which it should have if it were not voided, as you may see in the examples, *numb.* 10, 11. and that umbrating is only a drawing or tricking out the form of any Cross with a darkish line, without any substance of a Cross to cast a shadow; but is only a meer shadow, as *numb.* 73.

The like rule may be observed for **voiding** and **recourse**, in Bends, Pales, Salters, Cheverons, *&c.* as a Cheveron voided, and a Cheveron recourse, *chap.* 6. *numb.* 7, 9, 10.

B a Cross flurt recourse A born by *Melton*.

B a Cross crosslett the same A born by *Basing*, and so of the rest of the Crosses.

O the like G born by *Crekner*.

VII. He beareth Azure, a **Cross couped** Gules, **fimbriated** or **bordered** Argent. *Ferne pag.* 173. terms this a Cross Argent charged with another Gules; but it is too large a Cross to be charged on another, as the two examples following will manifest. Born by the name of *Grassior*.

VIII. He beareth Azure, a **Cross** Argent surmounted of another Sable. This is of some termed a **Cross edged**, in regard so little of the under Cross doth appear, as if it were but an edge, or border, or guard about the sides; but to be edged or bordered, ought to be whole at the ends as well as the sides. Born by the name of *Bleashume*.

IX. He beareth Vert, a **Cross** Argent charged with another Gules. Here in these three last examples you may see the difference between fimbriating (or edging,) of surmounting, and of charging; the edges of the Crosses in bordering ever goeth round the Cross, and surmount hath but a little part of the under Cross to be seen, and that on the sides only; but the Crosses charged, have a greater part of the under Cross seen, and the Cross upon it much narrower, not containing above the third part of the Cross charged. Born by the name of *Crosslate*.

X. He beareth Argent, a **Cross voided** Sable. This seems to be like the Crosses before said, one to be on another; but if you diligently observe, it is no Cross, but the Field seen through it. Some term this **voided of the field**, which needs not, for by voiding, is always understood to be of the colour of the field. By the name of *Woodneth*.

This Cross is born also, **waved, voided**, and **engraled**, &c. which is by some Heralds termed **sarcelled engraled**, which is as much as to say a Cross engraled sawen asunder; but this word **sarcelled**, is much laid aside.

A such a Cross B born by *Wastborn*.
S the like A by *Walsham*.
S the like O by *Pulderfield*.
B the like O by *Cruecur*.
G the like A by *Duxbury*.

XI. He beareth Azure, a **Cross voided and couped**, Or. *Morgan, lib.* 4. *fol.* 60. terms this a **Cross recercell disjoint**. By the name of *Crevequer*, of some written *Crevecure*.

XII. He

XII. He beareth Or, a **Cross Gules, voided** of another Sable. *Ferne* terms this a **Cross resarcelled** of another; this is an entire Cross, with another standing at a little distance from it, on every side of it. This voided Cross you shall find composed of the several sorts of Lines before shewed; for the blazoning of which, you must ever have a care to name the inner Cross first, for the other without it, is understood to be cut or sawed from it, as I have given you an example of a Cheveron of this kind, *chap. 6. numb.* 11.

Crosses then of this nature are thus to be blazoned; Vert, a **Cross** Or, **voided** of another (**ingraled, waved, indented,** &c.) Argent. If both be of one colour or mettle, then they are both to be named, with the form of the line they are composed, before the colour; which being but once named, signifieth both to be the same.

☞ Note here also, that the **ingraling, invecking, indenting,** and **imbatteling,** or what other line the Cross is composed of (except **waveing,** ought to be plain on that side next to the Cross, the out-sides only to be composed of the said lines; for in voidings of this nature, the inner side is ever understood to be plain as you see in many examples of this work among the Bends, Piles, Cheverons, *&c. chap.* 3. *numb.* 87. and *cap.* 6. *numb.* 12.

But if it fall out otherwise, that you meet with Coats otherwise **ingraled, indented,** and the like, as it may be Heraulds (who little understand the rules of blazoning) will, and do often invent such preposterous Coats, and **ingrale** or **indent** them (with the Cross also) on all sides, then it is but adding this (**ingraled,** &c. on both sides) in your blazoning; as for example, the field is Argent, a **Cross ingraled** Azure, **voided** of another, **invecked on both sides,** Sable.

XIII. He beareth Or, a **Cross parted** Azure. There is difference amongst Authors in the blazoning of this Coat; some will have it to be a Cross, others to be none. *Morgan lib.* 2. *fol.* 104. *lib.* 3. *fol.* 11. 29. terms it in one place, a **Cross quartered,** and in another place, a **Cross quarter voided,** and **quarter pierced and voided,** which are no proper terms, by reason that quartering is rather understood to be some partition and division of a Cross, or any other Ordinary into quarter colours; and not a breaking or dividing of it into pieces, as this Cross; see a **Cross quartered,** or **quarterly quartered,** *numb.* 57. *Upton* calls this a **Cross perforated,** which is all one to Mr. *Leigh's* term of **quarter pierced;** which it cannot properly be neither; for a piercing doth not extend it self to the utmost sides or limits of the Cross; but doth receive the piercing in the middle, there being the substance of the Cross on all sides and corners of it, which is not so in this.

Others again hold it to be a division of the field into nine equal parts, being three rows of which **Chequie** is said to receive the name; more it may be, but no less; therefore because it is the very least, they give it this blazon, **Chequie of Nine.** The *French* Herald, *part* 3. *fol.* 31. terms it **five points** Or, **squared orderly into four,** Azure; a **Cross charged in the middle** (or heart) **with a point; and also four points made equal.** This Coat is born by the name of *Shattergood.*

A such a Cross G is born by *Hagenbach* of *Switzerland.*

I have seen such a Bearing as this, yet divided from the sides of the Escochion in manner of a Cross, the two squares above and below much longer than the sides, have five Cinquefoils interposed or set between the parted Cross in each void place of the field; which I judg may be thus blazoned, Argent four **long squares,** or **long flat squares** in Cross, with five **Cinquefoils interposed** Azure. By the name of *Squarvile.*

XIV. He beareth Argent, a **plain Cross waved** Azure. Some term it a **watery Cross,** because it represents the Waves of Water, which is drawn upon the Cross by a darker colour than the Blew is. Born by the name of *Wawer.*

XV. He beareth Azure, a **Cross corded** Or, and Sable. These two Crosses are by *Upton* termed quite contrary; for the first he calls a **plain Cross corded,** and this a **plain watery Cross;** but *Leigh* terms them thus, whose example I rather follow, being most agreeable to reason, and the nature of the things. Born by the name of *Cordwiner.*

XVI. He beareth Or, a **Cross Barry Nebulee,** Gules and Argent. As this is wrought all over with **Barry Nebulee** in point, as some term it; so you shall find them born **indented, barry, chequie, gobony, counter-compony,** &c. This is born by the name of *Waterer ft.*

O a Cross G masculed A by the name of *Van Zorn.*

XVII. He beareth Sable, a **Cross** Or **interlaced** with an **Annulett** Gules. Some term it **fretted** with an **Annulett.** Born by the name of *Van Cruchanel.*

XVIII. The field is Or, a **Cross** Azure, with a **demy Flower de lis** on each side Sable; the bottoms all turned (or pointing) to the **Fesse part.** Born by the name of *Flowersly.* What I have said in *numb.* 107. about the flowering either of the sides or tops of ordinaries, will serve as a rule to this, to which I referr you.

XIX. He beareth Gules, a **Cross crosslet,** Argent. Some term it a **Cross botonnee.** Some a **plain Cross crosslet;** and a **Cross crosslet fitt.** Surely that Herauld did greatly mistake himself, who termed it a **Cross raguled,** (for so I have seen it termed in a late Patent) when it is nothing like it; for Ragulings, are Knotches or Knotty pieces standing out of the sides Bevile ways; as in the two next examples. It is termed also a **Cross Nowyed quadrat.** See *numb.* 22. and 99. This is born by the name of *Dazel,* or *Van Dasell.*

XX. He beareth Argent, a **Cross Crenelle** Azure. This is also termed a **Cross raguled,** as much as to say a ragged Cross; but this term Raguled is more proper for the following Cross, being ragged and knotty like the Limb of a Tree whose Branches have been cut or cropped off.

☞ This term **Crenelle** is seldom used but to things of a climing nature, as the Cross, Salter and Bend, where the Knots are set Bevile wise: For the Fesse, Cheveron, or Bars, and the like, it is blazoned (Battled

tled or Imbattelled.) This is born by the name of *Ragdlar*.

S such a Cross O born by *Stoway*.

G the like O by the name of *Lyston*.

A the like S by the name of *Worth* of *Worth*.

A the like G born by *Laurence*.

XXI. He beareth Gules, a **Cross raguled** Argent. *Gwilliams, fol.* 387. terms it **raguled** and **trunked**: And *Morgan, lib.* 2. *fol.* 10. calls it a **Cross trunked**; but I conceive that the word trunked were better used, and more proper for this Cross, when it is wholly cut off from the sides of the Escochion; for to say trunked to this Cross, is the same as couped in another, as *Leigh, pag.* 31. hath it: Yet his Scholar *Boswell, pag.* 136. blazons such a Cross **ragged** and **couped**, see *numb.* 108. This is born by the name of *Ragstaffe*.

Of Crosses Nowy.

XXII. He beareth Sable, a **Cross Nowy** Or; it is also termed a **Cross Nowy** in the **Center**, to distinguish it from the **Nowy Cross** where the rounds are on the shanks of the Cross, as *numb.* 97. but that is termed **Nowyed**, shewing it hath more than one; this being **Nowy**, which signifieth only one, which must then be fixed in the center of the Cross as the fittest place. This is born by the name of *Roundeross*.

There are three ways of **Nowy** in Crosses.

The first is round, that is only termed **Nowy**.

The second is **Nowy Losengie**, which is, when the round part is made after the form of a Losenge, as you may see *numb.* 65.

And the third is **Nowy Quadrat**, or square in the middle, which *Morgan, lib.* 3. *fol.* 68. terms a **Cross quadrat** in the **Center**; as much as to say **Nowy quarterly**. After these three ways are all other Crosses subject to, to which after the naming of the form of the Cross, you must add this word **Nowy**, for usually Crosses are so born in Coats of Armes: If the **Nowy** be on the shanks of the Cross it is termed **Nowyed**, signifying more than one, see *numb.* 97. and 99.

Of the Cross Patee.

2. ALL the former Crosses spoken of, are such as naturally were fixed to the sides of the Shield, and such as are derived from them: I shall now proceed to give you some examples of Crosses which are not fixed, but stand as a charge in the middle of the Escochion.

XXIII. He beareth Gules, a **Cross Patee** Or. This is by *Leigh* termed a **Cross Formie**: And *Upton* calls it a **Cross Patent**. I have seen it in an old MS. blazoned a **plain Cross streight**, from its streightness in the middle. But *Bara* and some others term it **Patee**, and gives this reason, *quia extremitates ejus sunt patulæ*, because the ends are broad and open, and with these agree many of our Blazoners. This is born by the name of *Islip*.

G the like A by the name of *Cross*.

O and G per Pale, such a Cross counterchanged, by the name of *Clapton*.

S 3 such A is born by *Van Schonenburg*.

XXIIII. He beareth Or, a **Cross Patee** Azure, Fimbriated or Bordered, Gules. This is born by *Fombriall*.

For the term **Fimbriated** or **Edged**, and how it do's differ from **Charging** or **Surmounting**, I hawe shewed in the examples before *numb.* 5 6 7 8 9.

Argent a Cross **Patee Voided** Gules. Is born by Sr. Will: *Braconbridg*. This Cross Voided differeth from the Fimbriated, In this that the Voided shews the field throw it; but Fimbriated is a whole Cross, but it is Edged or Bordered with an other colour.

XXV. He beareth Gules, a **Cross Patee Fitched** in the foote, Argent. his is born by the name of *Finchert*. Some blazon it, Fitched (or **Figetive**) in the foote of the fourth: and it is termed **Fitched**, of the Latine word *Figo*, to Fasten, or make Sure: Because by the Sharpness added to the foote thereof, it becometh more apt to be fastned any where in the ground.

O such a Cross G born by *Scudmore*.

G the like A is born by *Fresen*. or *Freswell*.

B the like O is quartered by *Oldenburg* of *Bavaria*.

XXVI. He beareth *Jupiter*, a **Cross Patee Fitched**, *Sol*. This was the Coat Armour of *Cadwallader Maur*, the last king of the native *Britaines* Lineage.

☞ Note that these two kinds of **Fitchings** are Insident to all Sorts of Crosses, of what nature, and Forme soever they be: So that you must take diligent care in the nameing of what kind the Fitching is; whither **Fitched**, (that is all the whole bottom part) or **Fitched** in the foot, which is from the midle of the bottom of the Cross.

S such a Cross O born by *Collyer*.

S the like A by *Maplsden*.

XXVII. He beareth *Diamond*, a **Cross Patee fitched-rebated**, *Topaz*. born by the *Count Littleholden*. this is termed Fitched & Rebated: because the Sharp end of it, is (as it were,) Blunted, or Cut off.

XXVIII. He beareth Pearl. a **Cross Patee-Concaved**, (or **Rebated Cressant-wise**) Ruby. By the name of *Wandley*. Some term this a Cross **Rebated** of all foure, in form of a **Decressant**, or **Demy Circle**. Others a Cross **Patee Blemished**, Because part of the broad ends are taken away which doth disfigure it.

☞ If this were Fitched like the former Cross, and Rebated also, then you must have a Care, that you set the term **Rebateing**, and **Fitching**, in their right places; that it may be understood what part of the Cross is **Rebated**. As thus, a **Cross Patee Rebated Fitched**, Shews the three parts of the Cross to be Blemished, and the Fitching whole. But a **Cross Patee Fitched Rebated**, Shews the Fitched part to de Rebated, or cut off. againe a **Cross Patee Fitched**, both **Rebated**, or **Blemished**, Shews all the parts of the Cross to be Rebated.

The **Cross Patee** is also subject to a **Double Rebatment**, which should have followed, but it is *numb:* 37

XXIX. He beareth Gules, a **Cross Patee Convered**, Or. By the name of *Honsleine*. It is so termed from its Swelling Round, which Artists in *Geomatricall Lines*, term a **Conver**, as you may see *lib:* 3 *chap:* 9 *numb:* 27. It is also Blazoned a Cross **Patee Globtcall**, (and **Patee Cir-**

Circulated, or **Circuled,**) For if the corners of the Cross did but meet a little neerer, it wotld then seem to be a Cross directly in a Compass, or Round Circle. And of others (& that not wery Improperly) termed, a Cross **Patee Flanchee,** or **Flaunched.** Because they swell Round, as the Flanch & Flasque doth. By the *French Armorists* it is termed, a Cross **Patee Alison.** The Bricklayers will quickly tell us when they see it, that it is a Cross made of two **Brick Axes,** or a Cross with the ends of a Brick-Axe forme or shape. see *chap: 9. numb:* 37.

XXX He beareth Saphire, a Cross **Patee fired** in **base,** (or issuing out of base, as sone have it) Topaz. This is born dy the name of *Stidfast,*

XXXI He beareth Venus, a Cross **Patee Entyre,** (or Fixed or Firme) Luna. This is born by the name of *Stronger.* Because it is the nature of these Crosses to be in the midest of the field, and from thence moveable to any place, according to the Bearers fancie. Therefore it is, that this term (**Fixed,** or **Entyre,**) must be added, to shew that contrary to their owne being, they are joyned to the sides of the Escochion. For as the Crosses which naturally are Immoveable, are termed **Couped,** If they be severed or disjoyned from the sides: So these which are moveable are termed **Fixed,** or **Entyre,** if they be joyned to the sides. *Mr: Morgan lib: 4. fol:* 27. Blazons this a Cross **Formed throughout.** from it old name Formee.

And as it is with the Cross Patee, so it is usuall to and with all other Crosses of what form soever; to be also born both **Fitched, Rebated,** or **Entyre.** which in the said perticular Crosses I shall forbear to give examples, seing these to the Ingenious are sufficient ro give Instructions. Only I shall shew you the severall kindes & formes of Crosses used in Armes, which if Fitched &c: you may blazon them according to their being.

A the like S is the Citty or *States* Arms of *Cistantz* in the *Empire of Germanie.*

G the like Endented, A. born by *Van Muderspach.*

XXXII He beareth Amethist, a **Cross Patee Invecked,** Topaz: born by the name of *Victory.* others blazon it a Cross **Patee Invecked at the ends:** But this kinde of Cross is never **Ingrailed, Indented,** or **Invecked,** in any other part but in the broad ends. Therefore needs not to be mentioned, either on the Ends or Toqs.

XXXIII He beaeth Argent, a Cross **Patee Crossed,** Sable. Of others a **Cross Crossed Patee,** or a Cross **Crosslett Patee.** In all which there is no false Blazonry. This is born by the name of *Crossefall,* or *Crossefull.*

XXXIV. He beareth Or, a **Cross Patee Flurt,** Sables. born by the name of *Swineston. Morgan li. 4. ca. 29.* termes it a **Cross Formee Flory,** I have seen it in an Ancient M. S. blazoned a **Cross Flour-de-lusy:** or a Cross **Formed Fleury.**

A. the like G. born by the name of *Sousonhill.*

A, the like S. born by *Swinerton of Swinerton.*

XXXV. He beareth Venus, a **Cross Patee Fitchee** (or a Cross **Patee Fitched on all foure**) Luna. This is born by the name of *Formale.* Of some old writers it was termed a **Cross Patee-formy.** But for what reason I understand not: It being best termed **Fitchee,** to shew that all foure are Sharpned at the ends, as *numb.* 58. & 60. from the word **Fitched,** which shews only one end to be drawn downe Sharp, as *numb:* 26. & 74.

A. the like S. born by *Belgrave of Belgrave.*

XXXVI. He beareth Argent, a **Cross Patee Fitchee Disjoyned,** Sable. Else a Cross **Patee disjoynt fitched** of all foure, which is no more then the former, but a multiplying of words. Others say disjoynt in the **Center,** or midle of the Cross. This is a *Germane Coat* & is born by the name of *Van Nordeckinby.*

B. such alike O. is born by *Brokenerosse.*

XXXVII. He beareth *Iupiter,* a Cross **Patee double Rebated,** *Sol.* by the name of *Debruse.* this is blazoned **Double-rebated** by reason that the two corners on each side of the tops of the Cross are cut off: whereby it looseth its breadth, which otherwise it would have had. And from this its cuting or **Blemishing** in two places, it is (as I said before) termed, **Double-rebated,** both in respect of its own being, as also to distinguish it from that as is but only **Rebated,** as *numb:* 28. that being single & on the Top, but this double & on the sides.

Of the Cross Potent.

3. THESE kinde of Crosses resemble the heads of Crowches, which in Elder days were called **Potents** or **Potans,** as saith old *Chaucer.*

When lust of youth wasted be, and spent,
Then in his hand he takes a Potent.

XXXVIII. He beareth Or, a **Cross Potent** Gules. by the name of *Malthy.* This is by *Leigh pa:* 4 called a **Cross Batune,** And also in many old M S. I find it so termed; the reason (as I suppose) is from its composeing of **Batunes;** or being couped at both ends Batune-like. The *French* call it a **Cross Malthe, Cloche, Crowchee,** or **Potency.**

G: the like A, born by *Peter of Savoy.*

O, the like B, by *Walwin.* & also by *Ward.*

S, the like O, born by Sr: Edw: Allen Baronett.

XXXIX He beareth Argent, a **Cross Potent Crossed,** Sable. This was born by *Crowcher of Crowcher.* Of all Blazoners of old this was called a Cross **Gemelle,** from the doubleing of the **Crouches** in the heads of it. this I have seen born in a coat of Armes Fitched in the foot, & blazoned a Cross **Gemelle pitche.**

XL. He beareth Argent, a **Cross Potent** between 4. other, Sable. The Armes of *Vibert de Moredeville.* This for shortness is Blazoned a *Ierusalem Cross.* And thus it is made by the *French Heraulds:* & after this maner I have seen it born in the Chief of their Shields of Armes, to shew that they were of the holy Society of the Knights *Templers of Ierusalem,* all which bore it: Though *Leigh pa:* 32. & some others make the *Ierusalem Cross* to be a **Cross-crosslett** between 4. **Crosses.** as *numb:* 44,

We read of those that were Enrolled for the *Voyage into the Holy Land* (about the yeare 1187.) received such a *Cross* from the hands of their Bishopps & Prelates, which was Sowed on the left side of their Garment, right against the heart. The *French* wore it **Red,** the *English* **White,** the

the *Italians* **Yellow**, the *Flemings* **Green**, and the *Almaines & Germanes* **Black**.

A, such a *Cr ſs* O, is the Armes of *Ierusalem*, & was born by *Godfrey of Bullen first Christian king* thereof.

Of the Cross Crosslet.

XLI. He beareth Azure, a **Cross Crosslett**, Argent; it is also termed a **Cross crossie**; or a **Cross recrossettee**; else a **Cross crossell**; and a **Cross crossett**, and a **Crosslett crossed**; or more briefly a **Crosslett**; or a **Crucell**, or **Crucellett**. By the name of *Tadington*. *Vincent, pag.* 35. calls it a **Recrossee**.

A the like Sable. Born by *Wickersley*, and also by *Scott*.

O the like B. born by *Wickliffe*, and by *Simple*.

XLII. He beareth Argent, a **Cross crosslett fitched**, (or **Fitchy**) Sable. And a **Crucell fitched** Sable, so anciently. *Bassell, pag.* 38. a **Cross crossettie fitchee**; others a **Crosslett fitched**. By the name of *Scott*.

This Cross Crosslett is born Flory in all the ends of the Cross, by the name of a Cross Crosslet (or Crossette) Flory.

XLIII. He beareth Argent, a **Cross crosslet crossed**, Sable. Of some termed a **Cross double crossed**, and a **Cross crosslet double crossed**. It is (as it were) four cross Crosslets joined in one at the center. In a Manuscript thus I find it termed, a **Cross crosslet crossly**. *Leigh pag.* 32. terms this a **Ierusalem Cross**, but I suppose his meaning is this Cross following. This is quartered very ancient with *Ledesham* of *Ledesham*, and is by the name of *Bradnell* of *Lancashire*.

XLIV. He beareth Argent, a **Cross crosslet** between four **Crosses** Sable. Some term the four Crosses **plain Crosses**, and others **Crosslets**, which is little crosses. This kind of Cross and Crosses, I find by *Leigh* to belong to the Knights Templers of *Jerusalem*; only he joineth the little plain crosses, to the sides of the great Cross, the one over against the other.

Of Crosses on Grieces.

XLV. He beareth Vert, a **long Cross** (or **Christs Cross**,) mounted on three Grieces in base Or. It is called a long Cross, by reason the bottom part is much longer than the overthwart part is. *Morgan lib.* 2. *fol.* 9. 11. calls it a **Cross Calvary**, and is (saith he) usually mounted on Grieces and Steps like *Jacob's* Ladder. *Gwilliams, fo.* 308. terms it a **Cross mounted on Grieces**.

B two Angels volant O supporting of a *Calvary Cross*, on three Grieces A is the Arms of the Abby of *Waltham*.

XLVI. He beareth Sanguine, a **Cross crosslet**, or **Cross crossed**, mounted on three Grieces (or degrees) in base, Argent. Some say **mounted** in **Base** on three **Grieces**.

G such a Cross is born by *Johnes* of *Llanvaire*, in the Principality of *North-Wales*.

XLVII. He beareth Argent, a **Cross Patriarchal crossed, mounted** in Base on **Grieces** Sable. These three examples of Grieces or degrees, should be only termed Grieces, if they were not fixed in the base part of the Escochion. Some number not the number of the Steps, or Degrees, because say they, they are ever three, representing the three Theological Virtues, by which we mount to the Cross of Christ, *viz.* Faith, Hope, and Charity. This is born by the name of *Josbline*.

Of the Cross Flowry and Flurt.

4. THere are several Crosses alike in shew, yet are different in name; and others are very near in Name, yet far different in shew and form; as example.

XLVIII. He beareth Mercury, a **Cross patonce**, Luna. The word **patonce** is derived from **patee**, as well as the Cross is composed of the **Cross patee**, for they are Cousin German, both being broad at the ends, only this of **patonce** is carved or cut with Indents in the end. It is termed also a **Cross potoncee**, and **patontee**. It was the coat of *Boniface*, the 46 Arch-Bishop of *Canterbury*.

V the like O by *Boydell* of *Dudleston*.

A the like S by *Barester* of *Barke*.

G the like Er. by *Paynell*.

S the same O by *Monack*.

A the same B by *David*, le Clark to the Earl of *Chester*.

XLIX. He beareth Gules, a **Cross patonce** Or, at each side proceeding from the Center, a **Trefoil** Argent. As this Cross is beset with these Trefoils, so you shall find these and several other sorts of Crosses born in like manner with other kinds of Flowers, Leaves, and Fruit, all stalked, which are thus to be termed, as in this example.

L. He beareth Argent, a **Cross Floxy** (or **Flowry**, or **Floury**, **Flourey**, **Flouree**) Azure. Here you may see the difference of the **Patonce** and this of **Flowry**; the first from the Center goes broader and broader to the end, even as the **Patee** doth. But this keeps an even Decorum from the middle till it comes to the ends, where it is determinated with a kind of flourish, like to the bottom of a flower de lis. This is the Baron of *Malpas* Coat.

O the like S by Sir *John Brockett*.

A the like G by *Trussell*.

B the like O by *Lamplow*.

LI. He beareth Argent, a **Cross** Azure, **Floxy** Or. By the name of *Florence*.

A the Cross S Flory O born by *Newton* and *Walton*.

LII. He beareth Gules, a **Cross Avellane** Argent. This is another kind of Cross much like to the foresaid, yet of different name and form too, if seriously viewed; this is the old form of it, but of latter times there is another used, as in the example following.

LIII. He beareth Azure, a **Cross Avellane**, Or. This term Avellane is derived from the Latine word *Avellana*,

Avellana, a Filberd or Hasle-Nut; for so the Heads thereof do very much resemble such Nutts. It is the Cross set upon the top of the King Mound; an Ensign that represents the Soveraignty and Majesty of a King.

LIV. He beareth Argent, a **Cross potent flurt,** Sable. Flurt or Flurty doth express the top of the Flower de lis; and Flory the bottom of the flower de lis, at each end of the Cross. Some only term this a **Cross flurt,** which sometime is engraled, envecked, *&c.* but not at the ends. Some term this a **Cross formy flurt.** By the name of *Holmeshaw*, or *Holmshall.*

LV. He beareth Saphire, a **Cross potent engraled** *Sol*, **flurty** Pearl. Of some, a **Cross engraled flurt,** Or; the tops Argent; or at each end the top of a flower de lis.
Now here is to be noted, that these kind of Crosses, when they are engraled or envecked and the like, they are never so formed at the ends, but on the sides only, as in this Cross is manifested. This is born by the name of *Grailinesford.*

A the like S between four *Cornish* Chough. Born by *Edwyn* Lord of *Englefield*, and one of the 15 Tribes of *North Wales.*

LVI. He beareth Sardonix, a **Cross couped** (or **humett**) **flurty** Pearl. Of some a **plain Cross flurt.** Born by *Fernaux.*

A such a Cross B born by *Offley* of *Madely*, being charged with a Lion passant gardant O and 4 *Cornish* Chough. Mr. *Morgan lib.* 2. *fol.* 13. terms this only a **Cross flurry,** without any addition.

B such a Cross A born by *Florence* and *Cheney.*

A the like G by *Trussell.*

LVII. He beareth Or, a **Cross quarterly quartered,** Argent and Gules, **flurty** Sable. Here I name not the form of the Cross, as I did in the blazoning of the former (as **humett** or **couped,**) because in saying **quarterly,** or **quarterly quartered,** it is to be understood that it is a large broad Cross, by reason of the divisions of colours placed in it, which the thinn and small Crosses could not contain. This is born by the name of *Mannaugh.*

Of Crosses Fitched double.

5. THE next sort of Crosses in order to be spoken of, is the several sorts of **Crosses double fitched,** that is, being sharp pointed at all ends; some single, some double, some trebble, as examples following doth demonstrate.

LVIII. He beareth Azure, a **Cross fitched of all four** Or. This is more like a Galthrop than a Cross, and is of some so termed, but being compared together, there is great difference. This is born by the name of *Sharpley.*

LIX. He beareth *Jupiter*, a **Cross Patee double fitched of all four,** *Sol*; or as some of old call it, a **Cross Patee furche; furche** being then used for what we now term **fitched.** Mr. *Morgan, lib.* 2. *fol.* 13. calls it a **Cross Ankred,** or an **Anchorites Cross.** This is the Cross of the Knights of *Malta*, or Brethren of St. *John* of *Jerusalem*; therefore may for brevity take, be blazoned, a Cross of *Malta*, or St. *John* of *Jerusalem's Cross*; but more of this hereafter. The Latine gives it the name of *Crux furcata*, a **Cross furchee,** or a Forked Cross. And the *French* Herald, *part* 2. *fol.* 14. calls it a **Cross encree,** as he doth the **Cross moline,** see *numb.* 63.

LX. He beareth Argent, a **Cross double fitched of all four,** Gules. This Cross I find blazoned several ways; *Bosworth, pag.* 26. terms it **forked.** *Leigh pag.* 34. **pitchee.** In a MS. in the Office, I find it anciently blazoned a **Cross furcee,** and **furchee,** (which we now call **fursh.**) The *French* Heralds *part* 1. *fol.* 13. call it **chappee.** This is born by the name of *Crossfort.*

LXI. He beareth Gules, a **Cross double fitched, and rebated of all four,** Argent. The *French* Herald *part* 3. *fol.* 9. terms it a **Cross double,** or **double doubled:** Some call it a **Cross escartalled, couped;** as if it had only a nick or notch, sarcelled or sawed into the four ends of it. This is born by the name of *Carternall.*

LXII. He beareth Or, a **Cross potent of all four, double fitched rebated,** Azure. Some will have it to be a **cross crosiett, double fitched** of all four, and **debruied** or broken off: Others a **crosiet sarcelled** in the four (or head) ends. Born by the name of *Sawyer.* The *French* call it a **cross double,** being G. in a Field O is born by *Avitus* Abbot of St. *Mesnim.*

Of the Cross Moline.

6. THE next is the **Cross Moline,** a Cross both in nature and shape far different from any as yet presented to your view, from which form there is several others derived, yet of a contrary term in Blazon, as in the examples following.

LXIII. He beareth Saphire, a **Cross Moline** Topaz. This term is borrowed from the Ink of a Mill, of some called the Moline of a Mill, which is an Instrument of Iron set in the upper Mill-stone, whereby it is turned about, whose crooked ends turn after this manner.

There is both ancient and modern terms given it concerning this Cross, *Gwilliams, fol.* 93. and all late Authors, call it a **cross Moline.** *Leigh, pag.* 34. a **cross Sarcell;** and so doth *Boswell, pag.* 25. 35. as being a Disciple of his; and both of them in the blazoning, hold it not to be a Cross Moline, except it be pierced, because the Molyne, or Mill Rind is ever so; but this term of a Cross Moline is not given it, being a right Moline, but borrowed from it, by reason the ends thereof, are much after the manner of the Moline of a Mill. The *French* call it a **cross Encree;** and Mr. *Upton, part* 2. *fol.* 14. a **cross Reversyd,** or inversed, or turned inwards, as having the ends turning round. This is the old way of making it, with the turning of it almost round: And in an old Roll among the Nobles of those times, is blazoned **recersile,** O and V. a *une Croix recersile* G Born by the name of *Ingham*, as saith Mr. *Morgan, lib.* 2. *fol.* 15.

V the like O by the name of *Baynham.*

O the

O the like S on an Escochion B 3 Plates. Born by *Weyer.*

LXIV. He beareth Gules, a **Cross Molme,** Argent. This is the form of the Cross in our times; our Heralds not making it so much round in the turning of the head, as the foregoing Cross. This is born by the name of *Beake.*

B the like O born by *Molineux*, also by *Brun* and *Prham.*

G the like by *Bernesson.*

B the like A born by *Trelesk*, and also by *Hotoste* and *Dune.*

S the like A born by *Folly*, and also by *Upton.*

LXV. He beareth Vert, a **Cross fer de Moline** Argent. This is called *fer de Moline*, because of it piercing; for the Mill-rind is ever so, as I have shewed in the Salter Moline, and Cross Moline aforesaid. This may otherwise be blazoned, a **cross Molyn Nowy Losengie** pierced; or a **cross Molyn Nowy Masculy.** If this Cross had stood Salterwise, it had been termed only (a *fer de Molyn*,) but the Cross being added to that name, sheweth this to stand Cross ways.

LXVI. He beareth Argent, a **Cross Moline rebated** Azure. This may not unfitly be so termed, in regard, the ends are (as it were) cut or worn off. *Upton* calls this a **cross Miller,** because of the near relation it hath to the form and fashion of the Mill-rind. This is born by the name of *Crossmole.* In an ancient MS. I have seen it blazoned by the *French* Armorists, a *Cross Furchee.*

LXVII. He beareth Or, a **Cross Fursh** Gules. This is also termed, a **Cross Miller** rebated, as having the rebatements of the Cross following. Born by the name of *Furshall.*

O and V per Pale, such a Cross G Born by *Hingham.*

LXVIII. He beareth Sable, a **Cross Miller** (or **Milrine**) Or. This anciently hath been Blazoned a **cross Molme.** *Morgan lib.* 2. *fol.* 15. terms it a **cross Milrine,** because it hath the ends cramped and turned again, as the Mill-rine is, which carrieth the Millstone, it ought to be perforated also, as that is. Born by the name of *Miller.*

G the like O born by *Fenny.*

Of Crosses with round Heads.

7. THE next are Crosses with round heads, of which there are several sorts, both of Forms and Blazon, as

LXIX. He beareth Argent, a **Cross Pomell,** Sable. So called from its likeness to the Pomell or Head of a Sword: This Cross Pomell Ovalwise, lying contrary to the Cross, is very anciently born. This Coat is born by the name of *Pommale.*

LXX. He beareth Gules, a **Cross Pomettee,** Or; or of some termed **double Pomelled.** It hath the resemblance of two Shin-Bones set in Cross, the ends being the round Coronals or bunches which go into the cavity of the Bones, to which they are joined; from whence it is by some called a **Cross coronal, or cronal.** This is born by the name of *Corporal.*

LXXI. He beareth Azure, a **Cross Butteny,** or **Bottony,** Or: **Botone** saith *Leigh, pag.* 32. is as much as to say a **crossed Budded,** but rather **Buttoned.** *Upton* calls it a **cross Knotted** or **Knotty,** from the Latin, *Crux Nodulata.* The *French* Blazon it a *Cross Fleuronnee* and *Fleurdelisee*; and *Fleuree*, as being the Budds of Flowers. This is born by the name of *Button* of *Chester.*

A the like B by *Wastnes.*

A the like G born by *Holme*, also by *Bryerlegh.*

A a Croslet Bottony G born by *Gullet*, so termed by *Morgan, lib.* 3. *fol.* 69.

Of the Cross Losengie.

8. THERE are divers Crosses also of this kind of bearing, which have contrary terms, as

LXXII. He beareth Gules, a **Cross Mascle** Or, at each point a **Plate.** The *French* Herauld, *part* 2. *fol.* 18. calls it a *Cross Clechee* or *Clechee, Pomettee*, and a *Cross Tholouze.* The Cross Urdee, with other Crosses of this nature, are often found with Rundletts at the points of them thus; which others Blazon a Cross of such or such a form, and termined or ended with twelve Pomms or Apples; for the term (each end) signifies but four, at the utmost ends of the Cross one: This example may serve for all Crosses thus charged. This Cross is likewise called a **Cross Patee mascled.** This is born by the name of *De la Ballin.*

LXXIII. He beareth Argent, a **Cross Mascle Umbrated.** This sort of Cross or any other that is umbrated, hath no colour mentioned; for of whatsoever colour the field is, (saith *Bajwell, pag.* 25.) the thing mentioned to be in the Field, is to be traced of a contrary colour, so that the body of the thing shadowed is of the colour of the Field. *Gwilliams, fol.* 61. 67. saith, that the Umbrateing must be done with some unperfect or obscure colour, as Black, or deep Tawney, unless the Field be of the same colour: So saith *Ferne* also, *pag.* 174. 175.

This is Blazoned a Cross transparent (*quasi transparens*) because the Field being (as it were) on the further side of the Charge, or underneath the same, yet the Tincture or Colour thereof sheweth clear through the charge, as if it were through a Glass. *Leigh, pag.* 36. calls it **entrailed,** and **purfled,** or **shadowed,** never naming the colour.

This rule for umbrateing, holdeth good for all sorts of charges, whether ordinaries; or any other Creatures, natural or artificial.

LXXIV. He beareth Vert, a **Cross Patee fusil fitched** Argent. Some term it three **fusils** in Cross, and the fourth **fitched**; but I hold it best termed Patee fusil, because it partakes of both, the inner parts of it answereth the form of the Cross Patee, and the outward parts hath the **sharp** ends of the Fusill, or Losenge. Neither can it properly be blazoned a Cross Fusil, except it had a Cross in the middle part, and the Fusils at the ends, as the example, *numb.* 78, 79. three Fusils con-

conjoined in Cross, and fitched in (or of) the fourth. Others thus, 3 **Fusils in Cross fitched.** This is born by the name of *Patit.*

LXXV. He beareth Azure, a **Cross** of **five Fusils** (or **five Fusils in Cross**) Argent. Of these kind of Crosses you shall have three in one Shield, which are thus Blazoned, Azure three **Crosses**, each containing five **Fusils.** These Crosses never exceed five Fusils, yet cannot be called a Cross Fusil, by reason it wants a Cross in the middle, as *numb.* 78. This is born by the name of *Maderine.*

O a Cross of five Fusils B the middle A born by *Bessome.* Else say a Fusil A between four other conjoined in Cross B.

LXXVI. He beareth Argent, four **Fusils in Cross** Gules, else term it a **Cross** of four **Fusils** or Losenges: And if three of them be in one Coat, you must Blazon them, a Cheveron between three Crosses, each composed of four Fusils, *&c.* The first born by the name of *Fusilcross*, and the latter by the name of *Crosburst.*

Quarterly O and B such a Cross between 4 Annulett counterchanged. By the name of *Peacock.*

LXXVII. He beareth Azure, a **Cross Fusilly,** Or. This after *Upton, pag.* 35. is called a **Cross Mascula-ted,** and *Leigh* **Mascuiy,** and **Mascuiy voided** of the Field, when the Escochion is seen through them.

☞ Here note the difference between a Cross Fusil; and the Cross Fusily; which ever extends to the sides of the Shield, and generally begins and ends with half a Fusil, or Mascull, if it be a Cross Masculy. This is born by the name of *Fotheringhay.*

☞ If this Cross Fusilly were on a plain Cross, as other Crosses often are, to distinguish it from this Fusily. Know that when it is but one colonr, then it is thus made; if on the Cross, then it is of two colours, counterchanging one the other.

LXXVIII. He beareth Ermine, a **Cross Fusil** Gules. By the name of *Foscill. Leigh, pag.* 35. terms this a Cross **Urdee**; but I am of their Judgment that call it a Cross Fusil, as having the form of a Fusil on the heads or tops of it; Therefore of some called, a Cross ending Fusilly, or the ends Fusil.

LXXIX. He beareth Purpure, a **Cross Fusil rebated,** Or. By the name of *Blemisher.* This is rebated or blemished, by having the sharp ends blunted, worn, or broken off.

Of the Cross Urdee.

LXXX. He beareth Gules, a **Cross Urdee** (or **champain,** Or. By the name of *Urdhall.* This is an ancient Cross, and goeth under several terms of Blazon, as I have seen in old Manuscripts in the Heralds Office; as, a Cross Mateley, a Cross Flanked, a Cross Clescheе, and a Cross Verdee. The *French* term it a *Cross Aynisee.*

A the like quarterly quartered A and G. Born by *Howel Varf Vehnioc*, a *Britain.*

LXXXI. He beareth Argent, a **Cross Urdee recourse,** Sable: Of others a **Cross Urdee voided.**

☞ But in the speaking of the Cross recourse, I told you it was the opinion of good Armorists, that the term recourse ought to belong to all sorts of ordinary, as if it were in its own proper nature and being; as in this Cross, where there is no substance of the Cross, but only the form of it, which is (as it were) only traced about. And the term voiding, to belong only to such ordinaries which in their voidings have their ends cut through, so that the Field is seen to the very sides of the Escochion; as in the examples of Cheverons **voided** and **recourse,** *chap. 6. numb.* 7. 9, 10. This is born by the name of *Duckingfield* of *Duckingfield* in *Cheshire*, a very antient Family, of whom is Sir *Robert Duckingfield* Barronett, now living, 1680.

Some term this a **Cross Urdee clechee,** shewing that it is pierced through, yet hath its form remaining.

Of the Cross parted.

8. OF the **Cross parted,** which should have been set in this Section, I have spoken of before, *numb.* 13. Now we shall give some examples of double and triple parting.

LXXXII. He beareth Azure, a **Cross double parted,** Argent; as this is double or biparted, so you shall see them divided into three parts, termed a **Cross triparted,** which for brevity I forbear. The first is born by the name of *Doubler.* The latter is born by *Trailemaine.*

G a Lion rampant to the Sinister O debrused with 4 Rods Cross-wise, and bound together at their Joints A is the Coat of *Degernbach* of *Bavaria.*

LXXXIII. He beareth Saphire, a **Cross double parted** and **fretted,** Pearl. Some term it four Batunes (or a Cross of four Batunes) fretted: And so *Leigh, pag.* 31. hath it in a True-Loves-Knott. By the name of *Trulove.*

LXXXIV. He beareth Argent, **three endorses,** Gules, **surmounted** of as many **Barrulets,** in form of a Cross. The like to this you shall find born Salterwise, then they are termed Cotizes; in which always take notice which lieth next the Field, whether the Dexter or Sinister, and mention them first. This is born by the name of *Undermas.*

A two Endorses, two Barrulets G born by *Bare* and *Ware.*

LXXXV. He beareth Diamond, a **Cross double parted, Flort** (or **Flory,** or **Florished**) Topaz. & is born by the name of *Van Kilkilow*, a *Germane* familey.

LXXXVI. He beareth Gules, a **Cross double parted Flory,** Or. This is the old maner of makeing this kind of Cross, which doth much resemble the other save that it is not pierced in the midle. This is also like the **Cross Patee double Fitched,** but that it is much more opened, even to the center thereof.

LXXXVII. He beareth Azure, a **Cross double parted Voided Flory,** Or. such a Cross is born by the name of *Knowles*, the field being **Semy de Crusilee.** *Vytin* termeth this a Cross **Molynee Ambre,** *Morgan lib.* 2. *fol.* 14. calls it a Cross **Sarcele,** or **Resersilee.** others

term these 4. **Tuidern Irons** Endorsed in form of a Cross. It is like the Cross **Moline Sawed**, or cut into 4. quarters, and disposed at a convenient distance; And therefore may fitly be termed a Cross **Moline Sarcelled**, or a Cross **Molyne voyded** disposed. or the Milne Cross Voided: The *French* blazon it, a Cross **Retercelee disjoyned.**

LXXXVIII. He beareth Or, a Cross **Tri-parted Flory** Sable. This is the Modern way of drawing this ort of Cross, Of old these parted Crosses were termed, Crosses **Parted** into three **courses**, or **Thrice partee.** There is another more antient, as in the next following. This coat is born by the name of *Triffler.*

LXXXIX. He beareth Argent, a Cross **Tri-parted Flory**, Sables. This is the old way of makeing it.

☞ Now you must observe that if Crosses Parted be Disjoyned from the sids of the Escocheon, they are ever termed Flory, or Florished. *Ferne* saith, that Double, & Treble Partings are insident to all Crosses, as **Nyle, Molyne, Patee, Sarcelle, Botoney, Flory, &c:** But I never yet found any such in coats of Armes.

Argent, a **Cross Crossed** each end **Triple parted Flory**, Sable. I found born by *Swettenhambergh.*

A, a Cross **Double Tri-parted**, Sable. is born by the name of *Dudeley.* see its form *chap:* 8. *numb:* 4.

XC. He beareth Gules, a **Cross Anserated**, Argent. born by *Van Smacker.* The *French* term for it is, a Cross **Gringolee**; that is, a cross Parted, whole ends are formed into the Shape & fashion of Goose heads. And as this is, so I have seen them with **Lions, Talbots, Eagles**, & severall sorts of other heads; which may be thus Blazoned, a **Cross partee addorned** with **Lions** or **Eagles heads.** Some will tell the number, as **Addorned** with 8, **Lions heads.** Yet others term such; a Cross **Leonced**, when with Lions: & **Aquilated**, if with Eagles heads. These are also born Fitched.

G, a cross **Pavonated**, or **pavonied**, (that is with Peacocks heads) & on an Inescocheon A, 3, Torteauxes. is born by *Huyn Van Austenraet in Amsterdam.*

A, the like **Vulpulated**, (or with Fox heads) G, on a Die (or dice) a cinque, by *Dobbelstein* of the *Rhyne.*

A, the like **Gringolee**, G, born by *Crummell.* & (each head) Crowned by *Havert* in *Flanders.*

Of Crosses Annulated:

9, IN the Ordinaries of this kinde there are diverse compossitures & all receive terms in blazoning according to the nature of their position; for herein are Crosses so **Annuletts** both **Substantiall & Coniunct**, with the Ringes entyre & fixt: as the examples will manifest.

XCI, He beareth Vert, a Cross Argent, at each end an **Annulett**, Or. by the name of *Ringlowe.*

XCII, He beareth Argent, a **Cross Rebated**, at each end, an **Annulet**, Sable. born by *Westley*, or *Westle.* This is termed Rebated, because there is some part of the couped ends on both sids taken away; to which thinner parts there is joyned the form of 4. Rings. Of others this is termed a Cross Rebated at each end, on both sids: with 4, **Annulets** fixed there unto. Others blazon it a Cross the ends **Tenantee**, or **Tenanted**, Because it represents the form of a peece of wood cut square off on both sides, to be fixed, or put into a like square hole made for it: which all workers in Timber, call a **Tenant**, & Mornise.

XCIII, He beareth Argent, a Cross **Annuly**, or **Annulety**, or Annulated, each Fretted with a **Ring**, Sable. born by the name of *De La-Croix-anull.* Others blazon it Cross Ringed at the ends, each Fretting (or haveing throw them) an **Annulet.** From the *Mariners*, terms it may be called a Cross of 4. Anchor heads with Rings in the Eyes.

XCIV, He beareth Or, a Cross **Cressanty**, (or ends Cressanted) Gules. I have seen a Cross after this form, with Horse Shooes at the ends in place of the Cressants; which is termed a Cross at each end an Horse-shooe. as *c:* 8, *n* 5. And this is best blazoned, a Cross at each end a Cressant, or **Cressanted:** which is born by the name *Van Vernam.* The *Germanes & Duch* often adorn the horns, or points of the Cressants with Feathers, Roses, Leaves, *&c.*

XCV. He beareth Argent, a Cross **Couped**, Gules: at each end a **Cressant fixed** on a **Pomell**, Sable. this is by the *French Armorists*, termed a **Cross Fourchee**, And is born by the name of *Baradal.* This is also termed a Cross Pomelled & Cressanted (or Pometee & Cressantee) But by this blazon, the manner of the Cross will not be understood, Therefore to use the word (**Couped**) as aforesaid, is needfull; Thereby to shew that it is a plain full Cross cut off from the field, whose ends are **Pometee, &c:**

XCVI. He beareth Azure, a Cross **Anchored**, or **Anchory**, Argent. Born by the name of **Ancrey**, or **Ancryn** I have seen such a kind of Cross, termed **Ancry**, Because it resembles the form of an Anchor at each end thereof, *Sans Flooks*: that is, the **Shanks** of an **Anchor** without the Flooks; Some term it a Cross at each end a **Demy Annulett Inverted.** If these Shanks were made with Tongs like fish-hooks, Or with Flooks like Anchors, It is then (in my judgment) best blazoned, a Cross the **Stems Shanked & Flooked** like an Anchor. Or **Barbed**, or **Tonged**, like an Angleing hooke. which soever it is.

XCVII, He beareth Or, a Cross **Nowyed Degraded Coniovned**, Argent. born by *Die Hofwart* an *Hollander.* This is also termed a Cross **Nowyed Grady fixed**, (or **Double-grady fixed**) See the difference between **Nowy**, and **Nowyed**, *numb*, 22. I have seen the like in *Leighs Accidence pag:* 35, with the fourth Fitched, which may be thus blazoned, a Cross **Nowyed grady coniovned** in three, And **Fitched** in the foot of the fourth.

XCVIII, He beareth Sable, a Cross **Grady**, (**double Grady**, say some) **Pomelled**, Or. born by *Perrault.* Of others termed more short, a **Cross degraded Pomell.**

XCIX. He beareth Argent, a **Cross Nowyed Losengie**, Azure. This is the Coat of *Nomellcross.* Some term it Nowyed in form of a Losenge: If this Nowying were Masculy, then the part here Losengie should be voided, having the Field seen through it, as it is with all Mascules, see *numb.* 22. 65. 97.

The like Cross is born by the Abby of *Tewkbury*, *l.* 4. *c.* 4. *n.* 6.

Of Crosses of divers forms.

10 WE come now to speak of several sorts of Crosses, which have no affinity, make, shape, or blazoning one to another. as,

C. He beareth Azure, a **Cross potence rebated** on the head of the Sinister sides, **recoursie,** Or; By the the name of *Bulwork*. Turn this Cross which way you will, yet the rebatement will be Sinister; therefore it is that I say rebated Sinister, because the top part is so; and so the rest on the contrary or opposite sides; others more briefly term it a Cross Potence rebated, or diminished on the contrary sides; or a Cross Demy Potence, rebated, recoursie; and some have called it a Cross **Redout**, from its resemblance to a Bulwark or Fortification so called, whose Fancy may hold good therein.

CI. He beareth Vert, a **Cross Patriarchal,** Or. Of the *French* termed a *Cross Lorrainee*, but the lower overthwart part is made by them longer than the top piece. This is the Knights Templers Cross.

S the like A born by *Rodulphus* Arch-Bishop of *Canterbury*.

G the like A on a Mount in Base, is the Coat of the King of *Hungaria*. *Morgan* makes this Cross longest in the bottom, as the little Cross in this same quarter.

CII. He beareth Or, a **Cross Patriarchal** Gules, charged with another Argent. Born by the name of *Ashfen* in *Germany*.

CIII. He beareth Azure, a **Cross Patriarchal Patee,** Argent, as this Cross is here Patee; so you shall often find them to be crossed, Flory, Potence, Potent, Moline, *&c.* They are subject also to fitching, to be mounted on Grices; and I have seen such a Cross as this, with the bottom part only Flory; which you may Blazon thus, a Cross Patriarchal Patee, with the foot of it Flory, as *chap. 9. numb.* 43. This is born by the name of *Cloather*.

A the like G is the Coat of the States of *Aschafenburg* in *Germany*.

CIV. He beareth Argent, a **Cross Patee Lambeaux,** Gules. Of some called a Cross Lambeaux; and a Cross Patee fitched Lambeauxed; as having a File or Lambeaux of three Labels fixed at the end of the fitched part of the Cross; but a Cross Lambeaux, (as *Morgan* terms it) it cannot be without some other term added to it, by reason the Patees are born several other ways, as Crosslet, Flory, Plain, and Flurt, with the like, as *chap. 9. numb.* 42. This is born by the name of *Salmsmorthen*, a *Low-Country* Family.

G the like A born by *Rudetzker*, and *Van Grodirtzky*.

O the like Cross Floury B born by *Faulkencross*.

☞ The Cross is alterable, but the Lambeaux is always the same.

CV. He beareth Ruby, a **Cross Tau** Topaz. By the name of *Tew*, or *Taw*. This hath anciently been so termed, which makes me set it here amongst the extravagant Crosses; otherwise I should have taken that liberty as to have placed it with the *Roman* Letters. The *French, part* 1. *fol.* 12. call this St. *Anthony's Cross. Mark with Thau the Foreheads of them that Mourn* (saith the Prophet *Ezekiel, chap.* 9. *vers.* 4.) that is, set a cross Tau on their Foreheads, signifying the Cross of Christ, which all true Christians are signed with on their Foreheads. This is termed the Cross **Commisse**, being a token of Absolution, especially when the Malefactor hath it stamped on the hand.

A on a chief V 3 such Crosses O born by *Drury*.

CVI. A **Cross portante proper,** in a Field Vert. This is termed portante, from the Latine *porto*, to bear or carry; on which Malefactors were Hanged, it bearing them up. I set not this Cross like to that of *Leigh's*, but upright, as if it were ready fixed for the Malefactor to be hanged thereon; but his, *p.* 31. is Bend-wise, giving this reason, that on that manner it was born by our Saviour to the Mount; and therefore he gave it the term of a Cross Portate; when as long before *Leigh's* time it was called a Cross Portant, from its Office in bearing, and not from its manner of being carried. This was not born by any, neither could be, but by the Lord Jesus, by whom we receive Remission of Sins, and Sanctification in him through his Cross.

O on a Mount A such a Cross couped G quartered by *Dillhern*.

Party per Pale B and A on a Mount O two such Crosses counterchanged. Born by the name of *Pergkhauser* in *Bavaria*.

CVII. He beareth Sol, a **Cross portante double and couped,** Saturn. This is very ancient, Blazoned a **Cross double,** and no more, or a **Cross double portante.** Mr. *Morgan* calls it a **Cross Patriarchal,** but it wants a head, or is a head too short for that; it may more fitter be called Christ's Cross, on which he suffered for our Sins, the top having the Superscription on, wherein was written the cause of his Death; and the lower cross piece, his Hands and Arms were fixed and fastned to.

CVIII. He beareth Argent, a **Cross portant** (or **portate**) **raguled and trunked,** Gules. By the name of *Raggeley*. This Cross, is by *Leigh, pag.* 3. and *Bossewell, pag.* 136. called a **long Cross ragnied and trunked,** the latter adding the term **couped,** which might have been omitted, in regard raguling signifieth the cutting off of the Branches, the Knots or little Notches only remaining, from the Stock or Stem of the Tree; see *numb.* 112. and Trunking, the cutting of the same Tree from its Root and Branches. See more of this term in the Cross raguled, *numb.* 21. and Bends raguled, *chap.* 4. *numb.* 26.

☞ If the Cross were not raguled, but only trunked, it would be a plain Cross having only the ends cut off with a kind of slip at them, as you may see in this example.

CIX. He beareth Azure, a **Cross beasantee.** By the name of *Lovegold. Leigh, pag* 36. saith, That the Beasants ought to be numbred, though they be never so many; but all other things (except Crowns) may be *sans number*, to which may be used (*ty* or *tee*,) as Platee, Billettee, Losengy, *&c.* But I am of that Judgment, that if the Cross extend to the sides of the Escochion (be they

more or less) they need not to be numbred; but if they be in Cross, Salter, Bend, Cheveron, and Fesse, and do not touch the sides, then it is fit they be numbred.

CX. He beareth Argent, a **Cross Cable,** (or **cablee** Gules. By the name of *Cabley*. This is a Cross made of Cable Ropes; and is different from the Cross corded, *numb.* 15. that being a Cross over-cast, or wound about with a Rope; but this is the meer Rope it self in a Cross.

CXI. He beareth Gules, four **chains square linked in Cross,** Argent; **fixt to an Annulett in Fesse,** Or. By the name of *Ironside*.

☞ Chains are born in Crosses, or in the form of any Ordinary, and ought to be mentioned: If round Links, then to say a **Chain** will suffice, it being supposed to be round; but if the Chain be an **S Chain,** a three cornered, or square **Chain,** it must be named what kind of fashion the Chain is. But all sorts of Chains, when they are fixed to Birds, Beasts, or any other Animal, need no mentioning of what sort of Chain it is; for in such cases it is left to the discretion of the Work-man to make what Cain he pleaseth; and the *Artist* to term it a Chain, without any other addition.

CXII. He beareth Luna, a Cross **snagg,** (or **snagged**) Venus. By the name of *Lop* or *Lupe*. This differeth from Couping, that having no thickness or substance of the Cross appearing; and this having all seen, as if it were a plain Bough of a Tree cut off to sight; which Wood-men term Snagging or Lopping; and differeth from trunking, that having a slip left at the end cut off, as *numb.* 108.

CXIII. He beareth Saturn, a **Cross, being Moline in Pale, and Patee in Fesse,** Luna. By the name of *Nevinge*, or *Nevington*. I have found it Blazoned, a Cross Moline and Patee, contrary one to the other; or or opposite one to another. And thus you shall find Crosses composed of the several sorts of Crosses as is before shewed; in blazoning whereof first name the top stame or Staff, and after what manner it is; and then the other parts afterward.

CXIV. He beareth Mars, a **Cross double clavied,** Sol. This term is borrowed from the Latine word *Clavis*, a Key; because it hath the double Bites and Wards of a Key at all the three ends; and the handle of a Key at the fourth. This is born by our Holy Father the Pope, when he walks in Procession in his Pontificials. It is also born as the Coat Armour of *Clavely*.

CXV. He beareth a **Cross of four Queen Ermyne.** Here neither the colour of the Field, nor Charge is named; all being understood by the term Ermine, which is Black upon White, as is manifested in the bearing of Furrs, *chap.* 7. *numb.* 2. This is born by the name of *Hurleston*, of *Picton*, in *Cheshire*.

A Cross of four Peacocks Tail Feathers proper, with a Trefoil in the middle O is the Crest of *Van Der Streithorst* in *Westphalia*.

CXVI. He beareth Argent, a **Cross of four Leaves,** Vert; or else four leaves conjoined in Cross: Or a Caterfoile, set in Cross. This is born by the name of *Cattelin*, or *Catline*. Some term it a Cross quaterfoil, and such a Cross set Salterways, V. in a Field, A. I find born by *Utzingen*.

CXVII. He beareth Or, a **Cross** of four **Pomells,** Sable. By the name of *Hammough*, or *Mac Hammough* in *Ireland*. This is also Blazoned a Caterfoile (or more properly a Quaterfoile) that is, a Flower of four leaves, but the Caterfoile is ever pierced.

S the like A born by *Hottingen*.

G the like A born by *Semmler*.

CXVIII. He beareth Argent, a **Cross quarterly,** (or parted **per Cross**) Sable and Gules; at each end the **Cornish** of a **Pillar** (or **Capitall**) Azure, adorned with two **Oak Leaves,** Vert. Such a Cross as this I find stamped upon some of the Coin set forth in the time of *Richard* the Second, King of *England*. Some term this a **Cross Collarino,** (that is) a large round swelling, with a Fillet on each side, which said ends may be adorned with what the Bearer pleaseth, as in the following examples.

CXIX. He beareth Gules, a **Cross** Argent, **charged with another,** Azure; **Cornished and Flurt,** Or; the like to this, adorned with a Crown, in place of the Flurt and Cornishing; both which Crosses I have observed to be on our ancient *English* Coin, from whence I have taken most of these succeeding Crosses. See *numb.* 121.

CXX. He beareth Argent, a **Cross quarterly** Azure and Or, **Cornished,** Gules; **adorned with an Acorn slip between two leaves proper.** Some will say **the ends Cornished, each adorned with an Oak slip fructed.** Some term this a **Cross quarterly Astrical adorned, &c.** See *numb.* 118.

CXXI. He beareth Azure, a **Cross voided,** Argent; **at each end a Coronett,** Or. This is also termed a **Cross voided Crownated,** or **Coronetted.**

CXXII. He beareth Argent, a **Cross quarterly** Gules and Azure, **in the Center, and at each end a Caterfoile,** Or; **with three Trefoils proceeding from the Tops,** Vert.

CXXIII. He beareth Or, a **Cross Moline parted per Cross,** Sable and Gules **at each side, at the Center, and on the top, a Leaf of three points issuant,** Vert. This Cross, if it were one colour, then it should be Blazoned, a **Cross Moline sarcelled, and joined again,** as much as if it were sawed asunder, and after put together again, so that nothing doth appear but the score or joynt, where it is set together.

CXXIV. He beareth Gules, a **Cross Banister** Argent, **crowned at each end,** Or. This may be termed a **Cross Avellanee Crowned.** Others Blazon it **four Banister Staves, fixed Cross-wise to a Plate, each Crowned on the ends.**

CXXV. He beareth Argent, an **Annulett,** Or, **with four Fruitages joined to it in form of a Cross,** Vert; **the Grapes proper.** Some say, **four Fruitages in Cross, conjoined by their Foot-stalks to an Annulett.** This is also termed, a **Cross Fruitagee, with an Annulett in the Center.**

CXXVI. He

CXXVI. He beareth Or, a **Crosſ Pomell Avellaned**, Gules; or a **Crosſ Pomety Avellan:** And ſome Blazon it a **Crosſ Pomell, Floury.**

O a Crosſ Pomell Molyne G. This is quartered by *Gleichen*, a Noble Family in *Germany*. And ſo Croſſes Pomell or Corniſhed are diverſly born with the heads of other Croſſes upon them.

CXXVII. He beareth Azure, a **Maſcule** Argent, with four **double Fruitages,** (or double **Avellanes**) joined to the points thereof in form of a **Crosſ,** Vert. Others term it **double Avellaney,** (or **Fruitagee**) **in Crosſ,** joyned to a **Maſcle** in the **Center.**

CXXVIII. He beareth Argent, a **Crosſ Patonce** Gules; at each end a **Slip** of three **Leaves,** Vert, between two **Catoſies** (or **Scrowls,**) Azure; *alias*, between two **Modillons,** for ſo your Free Maſons term the Catooſies, and all turning Scrowls.

CXXIX. He beareth Argent, a **Crosſ Pomell,** Gules; at each end a **Coronet** Or; adorned with a **Trefoil** between two flying or nouriſhing **Catooſies** or **Scrowſes,** Vert. This is a **Crosſ Pomell Coronettee,** or **Coronetted,** &c.

CXXX. He beareth Or, a **Crosſ Avellane Inveck,** Vert, **ſeeded,** or **double Buttoned,** Argent; or **double Pometted.** Others term it a **Crosſ Avellane,** with the Leaves or Points inverted. Others ſay four **Avellane Leaves** turned inward, fixed to a **Roundlett** in form of a **Crosſ.**

CXXXI. He beareth Gules, a **Crosſ Anſerated,** (or a **Crosſ Eringolee,**) Argent; from the middle of each end, a **Nail round headed, iſſuant,** Sable.

CXXXII. He beareth Or, a **Crosſ Moline rebated on both ſides, under the revertings,** Gules. See *numb.* 92. Some term theſe **double rebated.**

TO

I. S. M.

VIRORUM CLARISSIMORUM,

Johannis Wainwright Legum Doctoris quandam Cancellarii, Qui fato Cessit: &

Thomæ Wainwright Legum Doctoris, Jam nunc Successoris Cancellarii Diœcensis Cestriæ.

E T

Ricardi Wright Surrogati aliquando ejus, M. A. *& Rectoris Ecclesiæ S. Mariæ super Montem in Civitatis Cestriæ, Generi predicti Johannis. Hoc Caput Dedicatum est*

Per R. H.

CHAP. VI.

1. NOW it follows that we speak of the **Cheveron**, and of its diminutions; a **Cheveron** is an Ordinary formed of a twofold Line, Pyramidal-wise, the foundation being in the Dexter and Sinister Base point, or near thereunto, and the Acute Angle of the Spire near the top of the Escochion, as the examples.

Of the Cheveron.

I. He beareth Topaz, a **Cheveron** Ruby. This was usually the ancient form and manner of drawing the Cheveron, as appeareth by many Seals and Monuments yet extant; but common Painters, the common disorders of these Tokens of Honor, have greatly corrupted both this and other Ordinaries by their Phantastical Inventions, whereby they do not seem to be what they were before; for a little alteration, makes a great alteration in a principal part; so a little alteration, either by augmentation, diminution, transposition, or whatever other means, doth occasion so great a change in them, as to make such things that they differ from themselves.

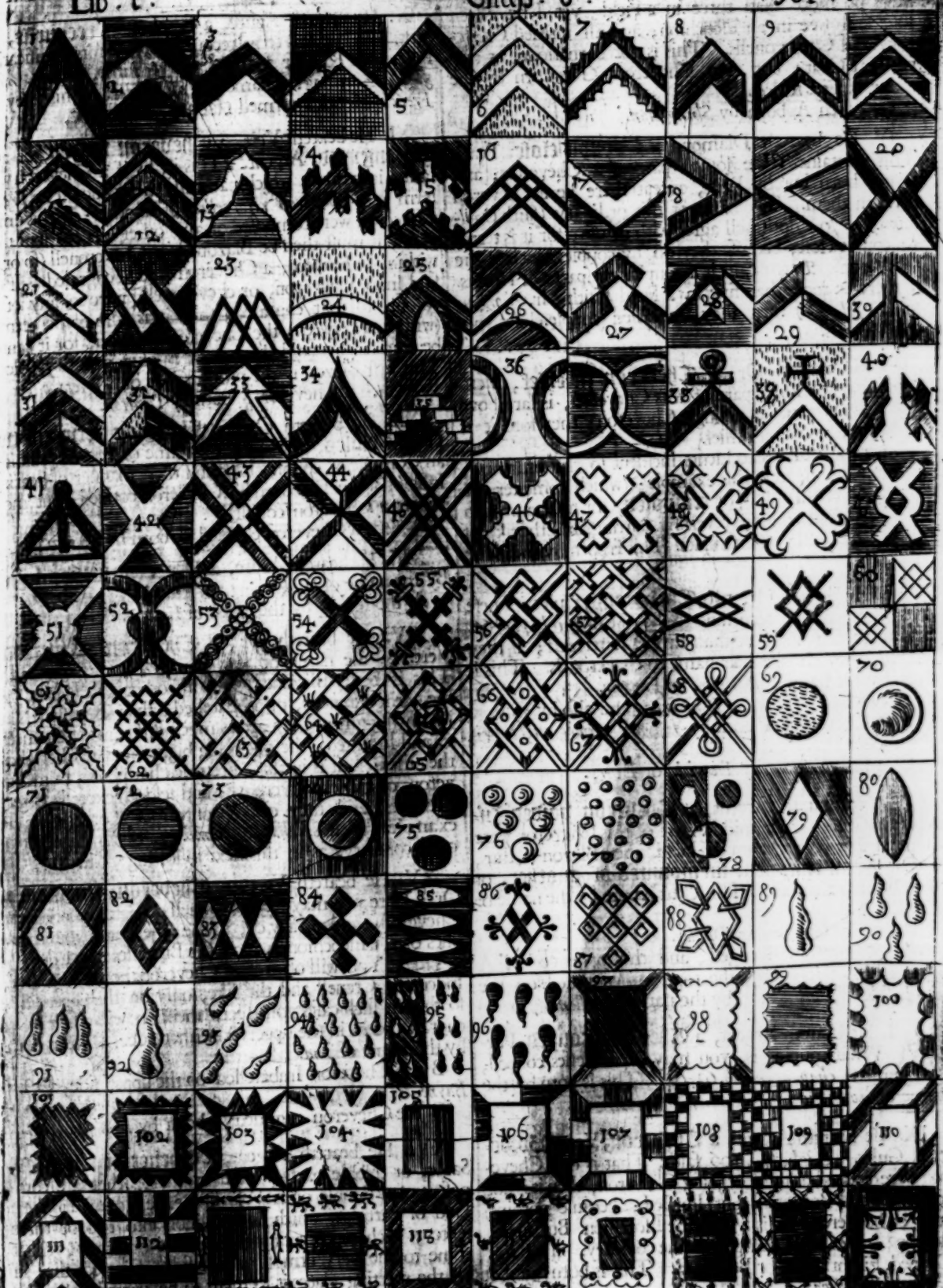
But seeing Ancient things are now adays laid aside, as out of use; I will give you an example of the modern **Cheveron** which is now in use, and according to that Pattern, in all my examples, I mean to follow. This is born by the name of *Stafford*, Lord *Stafford*. And also by the name of *Ile*.

II. He beareth Saphir, a **Cheveron**, Topaz. This Ordinary is resembled to a pair of Barge Couples or Rafters, such as are on the highest part of a House, for the bearing up of the Roof. *Leigh, pag.* 66. saith it is the Attire, which in old time the Women Priests used to wear on their heads, as may be seen in divers old Monuments. See *lib.* 2. *cap.* 17. *numb.* 32.

The content of the Cheveron is the third part of the Field if it stand alone, or be charged upon: But *Leigh, p.* 66. saith the fifth part, and that you may have two Cheverons in one Field, but not above, and if they exceed that number, then to be termed **Cheveronells**, that is to say minutives, or small Cheverons. This Coat is born by the name of *Swennington*, with a Label, Gules.

A the Cheveron G born by the name of *Trye*.
O the like V by the name of *Ingee*.
A the like B born by *Circester*.
B the like O by the name of *Aspul*.
Per Pale B and A a Cheveron counterchanged, born by *Van Daspach*.

III. He beareth Azure, a **Cheveronell** Purpure. This is a diminution of the Cheveron, and containeth half the quantity of it. You may saith *Leigh, ibidem*, have



P·M·Tho: Wainwright: L·D· & Rich: Wright: R·8t·M·

have no more than three in a Field; yet I have seen four and five in an Escochion; and all termed Cheverons and Cheveronells. This is not born alone, as any peculiar Coat; but A 2 Cheverons G is born by the name of *Fitz Robert*.

G 3 such A born by *Shingleton*.

IV. He beareth Diamond, a **couple-close**, Pearl. This containeth the fourth part of a Cheveron; and is not born but by Pairs, except there be a Cheveron between them. The name of this ordinary (saith *Gwilliams, fol.* 79.) doth well agree with its use; for it is termed couple-close, because they do by couples, inclose the Cheveron. *Upton* calls it a couple, or sparrs of Houses. If there be more than five in a Field (saith Mr. *Morgan lib.* 2. *fol.* 53.) then they are called couple-closes, not cheveronells.

V. He beareth Or, a **Cheveron in chief**, Vert. Note that the lower part of this Cheveron, is far above the ordinary place of a single Cheveron; therefore it is termed a Cheveron in chief.

There are divers accidents incident to this ordinary; as transposition, as in this example; (which some term a Cheveron **transposed**, or **traspoſed**, for a Cheveron in chief) couping, voiding, reversing, parting, and the like; of all which I shall give examples. This is born by the name of *Lofty*.

VI. He beareth Or, two **Cheverons**, Gules. These keep the quantity according to the rule of *Leigh, pag.* 66. and there can no more than two be so termed; if they exceed, they change their name to cheveronels. This is born by the name of *Fanmer*, of *Fanmer*.

A two such S born by *Lamborne*, and also by *Ashe*.

G 3 Cheverons A born by *Jestyn ap Gurgant*, a *British* Noble Person.

O 4 such G born by *Everid*, or *Every*.

VII. He beareth Argent, a **Cheveron voided Ingraled**, Gules; if the middle part of this Cheveron were of any other colour from the Field, then Blazon it thus, a **Cheneron engraled, surmounted of another**, of such or such a colour. This Coat is born by the name of *Voyd*.

B the like O born by *Dudley*.

G 2 Cheverons B edged, and the top envecked A others Blazon it edged, the top parts engrailed on the lower side. This is born by the name of *Asten*.

VIII. He beareth Argent, a **Cheveron couped**, Purpure. What couping is, you may see in Fesses couped, and humett, *chap.* 4. *numb.* 63. 64. This is born by the name of *Jones*.

IX. He beareth Argent, a **Cheveron**, Vert, **Bordered**, Gules. *Leigh, pag.* 106, saith, That if this Cheveron were couped as the foregoing Cheveron, then it is not to be termed Bordered, but Purfled; because nothing may be bordered that is within the Escochion. But *Ferne, pag.* 173. gives an example to the contrary, in a Cross Couped, Fimbriated, or Bordered. This is born by the name of *Boardman*.

B and G per Pale, 3 Cheverons couped counterchanged, bordered A by the name of *Saye*.

X. He beareth Azure, a **Cheveron recoursie**, Argent. What this term recoursie is, with its signification, I refer the Reader to the Cross recoursie, *chap.* 5. *numb.* 5. 6. Born by the name of *Skatterley*. This is by the *French* Heralds termed **clechee**, or **percee**.

XI. He beareth Vert, a **Cheveron voided**, of another **engraled**, Argent. This is, as if a Cheveron were sawed into three, which naturally is but one: The *French* term it a *Cheveron resarcelled* of another; if this small Cheveron were composed of any other sort of Lines than plain, it must then be Blazoned, a Cheveronell (so or so) within, or between, a Cheveron voided engraled. If the said small Cheveron, or cheveronell, were of any other colour, to that engraled, then it is also to be termed (within or between) the Cheveron engraled, for it cannot be said to be voided when it is of a contrary colour. The first Blazon is the proper Coat of *Scattergood*.

A such a Cheveron S born by *Dentton*.

XII. He beareth Or, a **Cheveron between two couple-closes**, Gules. By the name of *Fortior*. This is an example of couple-closes and their manner of bearing: It is of some Blazoned, a Cheveron cotized; but more proper a Cheveron coupled.

A such a Cheveron coupled S born by *Granville*.

XIII. He beareth Azure, a **Cheveron waved** Argent. By the name of *Wake*.

A the like B by the name of *Waters*.

XIV. He beareth Or, a **Cheveron Brettissed**, Vert. By the name of *Slatter*. *Ferne, pag.* 179. saith, This is better Blazoned, and all other Ordinaries, by the term Crenelle, or imbatelled, than Bretissed: But in my Judgment they are as much different as Dauncette and Indented; the one being bigger and thicker than the other; so it is in this; Brettissed hath but a thin Cheveron or rather cheveronel; and seldom exceeds 4 or 5 Brettisses; and they one opposite to the other; see an example in Bends, *chap.* 4. *numb.* 32. But Imbatelling is quite contrary, as in this next following Coat.

XV. He beareth Vert, a **Cheveron Imbatelled**, Or. Here you may see the Crenell or Battlements of the Cheveron are contrary one to the other, and join to the sides of the Escochion, which the Brettisses never do.

☞ You will often find Cheverons born, Engraled, Indented, Crenell and the like, only on the upper side; so that in such cases you are to mention what side it is, engraled, *&c.* in the upper or neither side. This is born by the name of *Jud*.

B the Cheveron Imbatelled on the upper side, O by *Bayne*.

G the Cheveron engraled A born by *Hinkley*.

XVI. He beareth Argent, a **Cheneron tripartedd**, Sable, or trebble parted. All ordinaries that are composed of a double or trebble line; are subject to these kind of partings, which is a division into two or three pieces, each piece running along the ordinary, till it come to the very utmost part or side of it; so that in all the meeting places it seemeth to be fretted one of an other, as you see in this; and the Cross parted, *chap.* 5. *numb.* 82. 85, 88. This is born by the name of *Smithley*.

XVII. He

XVII. He beareth Azure, a **Cheveron reversed,** Argent. By the name of *Rumor*. This Cheveron is by *Foswel, pag.* 36. termed Versie. I have seen such a Cheveron with a Cloud at the point of it, with the Sun-Beams issuant proper: and also with three of the same in another Coat. The *French* term it a Cheveron Renversie.

A the like G sustaining or supporting another B. By the name of *Upholder*.

G the like A born by *Van Chontzin*.

XVIII. He beareth Argent, a **Cheneron couched,** Gules. By the name of *Tourney*. If it be couched on the other side, it is termed couched Sinister. The *French part* 1. *fol.* 11. call it a Cheveron pointed or turned.

G the like A by *Marshall Van Stuntzberg*.

XIX, He beareth Purpure, a **Cheveron Couched Sinister,** Or. by the name of *Bightine*. The *French fo:* 10: termeth it a Cheveron **Counter turned,** or Fallen, or Counter Pointed.

XX, He beareth Argent, two Cheverons **Couched,** Vert. by the name of *Couchmaster*. Others say 2 Cheverons Couched in Point. the *French* call them 2 Cheverons Contre-turned. & some of our Heraulds, term them 2 Cheverons Couchant Dexter & Sinister. But note it, that when there is 2 chouchant, they can be placed no otherways⸗ Although very often they are blazoned **Counter-couchant,** as is aforesaid.

O, a Rose betw: 2 Cheverons, the higher **Reversed,** G: Is the coat Armour of *Van Stens*.

XXI. He beareth Or, two Cheverons **Couched, Fretted, & couped,** Gules. by the name of *Loven*. If these were of contrary colours, then blazon them thus: He beareth Or, a Cheveron Dexter couched Azure, Fretted with an other Sinister, Gules, both Couped.

XXII, He beareth Sable, a **Cheveron Fretted** with an other Argent. by the name of *Weigward*. Others blazon it thus, **Fretted,** with an other **Reversed:** Yet the term of Reversing needs not to be named, by reason the Cheveron that is seated in its right place, doth manifest the other to be contrary: else it could not be Fretted.

XXIII, He beareth Or, Three **Cheverons Fretted** in Base, Sable. by the name of *Brasebridge*. others blazon it, 3 Couple-closes **Brased.** or **Minuts,** or Small Cheverons, or 3 **Cheveronells Interlaced,** *Mr: Morgan lib,* 2 *fol,* 52. saith, 3 Cheveronells Brased in the base of the Escochion. B, the like O, born by *Fitz-Hugh*.

A, the like S, by *Brakenbury* of *Sallaby* in *Durham*.

XXIV. He beareth Or, a **Cheveron Arch,** Gules. Of some it is called an Arch **Cheveroned,** or **Cheveronwise;** Others call it only an **Arch.** But of that it wanteth both **Capitalls, & Pedestalls,** which an Arch hath; this being a **Demy**-Circle, and set in the forme of a Cheveron from side to side, And is therefore blazoned a **Cheveron Arch.** Yet *Morgan* termeth it **Enarched** only, without nameing any Cheveron.

XXV. He beareth Argent, a **Cheveron Enarched,** Vert. by the name of *Ouldman*, This is by some called a **Cheveron Enarched voyded,** And is the ancient form which *Legh* sets forth *pag:* 105. but now out of use: And therefore may best be termed a Cheveron **Supported,** or **Proped up,** or **Sustained.**

XXVI. He beareth Purpure, a **Cheveron Enarched,** Argent. This is that which is now in use. And is born by the name of *Archever* of *Scotland*.

XXVII. He beareth Argent, a **Cheveron Double-downsett,** Gules. I find this Cheveron to have diverse blazons, *Guillioms* termes it a Cheveron **Rampee,** But I believe he ment **Coppee,** as riseing in the head higher then ordinary, which in old *English* is called, **Copped,** or *Coppedee*, or **Coppee:** And so in severall Books in the Heraulds Office I find it termed. But I hold **Double-downsett,** or **Double-onsett,** to be a good Explenation of the thing; as haveing the two sides cut off, & Slipped down from its top part. Such a Cheveron betw: 3 Crosses Bottony Fitched. is born by the name of *Greenway*.

XXVIII. He beareth Azure, a **Cheveron Debrused** or **Fracted,** Argent. by the name of *Winterfall*. Some term it a Broken Cheveron, others a **Cheveron Remoned,** But that I hold a more fitter term for the next.

XXIX. He beareth Argent, a **Cheveron Removed** Vert. This is born by the name of *Shak-staffe*. Some blazon it, **Removed** the one **Joynt** (being fallen) from the other. After these three Examples, you will find severall of the other Ordinaries, as Bends, Fesses, Barrs, &c: to be both **Double-Downsett, Debrused,** or **Removed:** which you may by these Blazon accordingly.

XXX. He beareth Gules, a **Cheveron Disjoynted,** Or. by the name of *Discord*. Some say (**Disjoynt at the top**) Which addition needs not, for if it be Disjoynted it must be in the **Top,** there being no other place for it to be Disjoynt in. The *French Armorists* call it, a Cheveron **Brisee:** That is **Burst** on the Escochion, or Shield.

Such a Cheveron as this, but touching in the Bottome of the Joynt, And open in the Head: A. in a field S. is born by *Sorton*, Which may be termed, **Disjoynt,** or **severed at the Head:** or **Fracted** (or open) in the top.

XXXI. He beareth Purpure, a **Cheveron, & a Demy Sinister one,** Argent. This is born by *Rossiall*. It is termed a Demy Sinister Cheveron, to distinguish it from that on the Dexter side: Some blazon it, a **Demy Cheveron Sinister in Base.** To declearе its contrary bearing from the Succeeding Example.

A the like S betw: 3 Roses G born by *Bugallberg*.

XXXII. He beareth Argent, a **Point Dexter Removed,** & a **Demy Cheveron Sinister,** Gules; In **Base a Cheveron** charged with 4 **Squires,** Or & Az: by the name of *Dentrey*. This is also blazoned Ar; a Cheveron Gu: charged with 2 Squires O & Az: with a Sinister Demy one, & a Point Dexter Disjoynt in Chief, of the Second. The like I finde born by *Van Harbourgh*.

XXXIII. He beareth Azure, a **Cheveron** Argent, charged with **two squares** Sable. By the name of *Square*. This I have found otherwise Blazoned, as thus, a Cheveron charged with two Cheveronels counter-couchant; or couchant Dexter and Sinister.

XXXIV. He beareth Or, a **Cheveron in point imbowed,** Vert. And again I find it Blazoned, Vert, **two**

points **Dexter and Sinister Flaunchee**, and **a point in point** Or, else a **cheveron Flaunched.** The *Dutch* generally draw their Cheverons after this form: This is a *Dutch* or *German* coat, born by *Van Oeden.*

S the like O born by *Van Ehingen.*

G the like A by *Hohenrain* in *Bavaria.*

A the same G by the name of *Turndell.*

XXXV. He beareth Purpure, a **Cheveron** of seven Tiles, each projecting other, Argent; or a **Cheveron gradyon both sides.** This is born by the name of *Grice.* Some term it 7 Billetts or Tiles in Cheveron.

Per Fesse O and B the like Cheveron G with a Demy Lion rampant on the top of it S **honoured** O bornby *Rugen.*

XXXVI. He beareth Argent, two **Cheveron Arches couched,** Gules. Some term them two **Flaunches voided,** but those they cannot be, as the examples following will demonstrate, by reason they are born fretted. The *French* call them 2 Demy Wheels, or Circles fixed to the Dexter and Sinister sides. By the name of *Learcher*; that is *Le Archer*; as *Deacres*, or *Dacres*, for *De Acres.*

A the like G charged each with three Beazants, by the name of *Van Pommersheim* of *Hassia.* Also by *Pernsheim.*

XXXVII. He beareth Azure, two **Cheverons arched, couched and fretted,** Argent. By the name of *Brace-Girdle.* These sort of Cheverons do represent the Vault or Arched Roof of a Church, as well as the Piramid Cheveron doth resemble the Gable-end, or Rafters of a House.

XXXVIII. He beareth Argent, a **Cheveron,** on the top of it, the Ring and Cross-Beam of an Anchor, Sable; others more short, term it the Head of an Anchor; but I hold it best blazoned, to term it, a **Cheveron Potonce,** with an **Annulett** on the head of it. Such a Cheveron between three Cressants, was the Coat of that worthy person Sr. *Edward Walker*, Kt. *Garter*, principal King of Arms of all *English* Men; my very good Lord and Master, as pertaining to Arms, whose Deputy I was.

XXXIX. He beareth Or, a **cheveron** with a **Cross Patee** on the top of it, Gules. After this manner the Cheveron is often beset with several sorts of Crosses, the Flower de Lis, and the like; which doth rightly set forth to our view the end of a House, with its Piramid or Pinacle upon it. Born by the name of *Topping.* Also by *Van Neven.*

☞ The Cheveron is not only adorned on the top, but it is very often born flourished on both sides with Flory and counter-flory, as you may see in Fesses of that nature, *chap.* 4. *numb.* 36. 83.

B a Cheveron with the point or top of it in the mouth of a Leopards head O born by *Rotenburg.*

Party per Cheveron B and G a Cheveron with the top of a Flower de Lis on the point O. Some term it a Cheveron Flory on the top. This is born by *Van Friburg.*

A a Cheveron Imbowed G on the top an Heart reversed V Born by *Purren.*

XL. He beareth Argent, a **Cheveron disjointed and crossed,** Vert. By the name of *Lawlesson*, or for brevity *Lawson.*

XLI. He beareth Or, a **Cheveron** supported with a Beam and Standard, Gules. By the name of *De la Dill.* See of this *cap.* 9. *numb.* 95.

Of the Salter.

2. THE next is the **Salter**, which is an ordinary composed of a four-fold Line, whereof two are drawn from the Dexter Chief, to the Sinister Base, and the other from the Sinister chief, towards the Dexter base, and do meet by couples in acute Angles, about the middle of the Escochion. This ordinary is limited to the fifth part of the Field, the same being not charged; but if it be charged, then it shall contain the third part thereof; as the example.

XLII. He beareth Azure, a **Salter,** Or: *Ferne* calls it a Cross traversed in Salter. This Ordinary varieth his name in Blazon according to the diverse forms of Lines whereof the same is composed; for in that it is no less diversly made in respect of its lineaments, than the Cross is; whereof you shall see presidents of this following. The *French* call it *Crux decussata*, being cut or divided like an X, this is also called St. *Andrew's Cross*, or a Cross Saltery. If it have no Charge, then saith *Morgan* it is termed per Salter. This is born by the name of *Windcombe.*

O the like S born by *Helsby* or *Helesby* of *Helesby.*

G the like A by *Nevile.*

A the like Sable. Born by *Cavenham*: and also by *Baldwin.* The like born by both *Duckett*, and *Cornington.*

B the like O born by St. *Albon*, the first Martyr of *England*, *Anno* 286.

XLIII. He beareth Argent, a **Salter voided,** Gules. By the name of *Stevens.*

G a Salter O surmounted of an other V by *Andrew.*

XLIV. He beareth Argent, a **Saltire quarterly quartered,** Gules and Or. Yet the *French* term this quarterly only. Born by the name of *Hatstat.*

B such a Salter O and A is the Coat of the Bishoprick of *Bath* and *Wells.*

O such a Salter A and G born by *Van Andlaw*; also by *Benkham.*

XLV. He beareth Or, a **Salter triparted Sable.** The French term it, three **Tierces in Salter**: it is born by the name of *Trillombers.*

A the like B. between 4 Martletts S. born by *Tiercelin.*

XLVI. He beareth Gules, a **Salter Engraled, couped** Argent. Sometimes three of these Salters are born in a Coat, then the word Couped may be omitted, being understood to be so, when they are removed from the center of the Escochion, except an ordinary interpose. This is born by the name of *Brenecrosse.*

A the like B with 5 Flowers De Luce O. by *Bylingdon.*

A 3. such S. born by *Lesenten.*

Er, 3. such S. by *Newark.*

per **Fesse** O and B. a Salter couped counterchanged by *Manning.*

A. a Salter couped O. by *Van Grefen.*

XLVII.

XLVII. He beareth Argent, a **Salter Saltired** Sable Some term this a **Salter Crossed**, which is very improper; for if the Cross be Crossed, or termed a Cross Crosset, from its little Crosses at the ends; then Justly may this Saltire (and also them that are composed, after the same form, as the Crosses are) be termed a Saltere Saltered, or a Saltire Saltirlet: being there is as much right to the term for one, as in the other. *Leigh pag.* 39. termes this St. *Julians* Cross, of others a Cross Crossed in Salter, and a Salter couped Crossed. This is born by the name of St. *Sebasline* or *Sebasline*.

The Christian Knights and Martyres that bore Salters, were St *Andrew*, who bore it Trunked: St *Laurence* and St. *James*, bore it Raguled, shewing the difficulty of their ascent; St. *Albon* bore it plain, and St. *Julian* bore it Crossed. Some bore it sharp, to shew their Sufferings, others Flowry, to shew their Victory.

XLVIII. He beareth Azure, a **Saltire Saltired, Patee** Or. And so of the rest, according to the diverse Forms of Crosses: these sufficeing to instruct the Ingenious. This is otherwise Blazoned, a **Salter Patee** Crossed, or a **Cross Patee** Crossed in Salter, born by the name of *Frisall*.

XLIX. He beareth Argent, a **Salter Molyne** Gules. *Leigh pag.* 34. terms this, a **Ferre de Moline**, which cannot be, for the **Ferre de Moline** is ever peirced, which this is not: again **Ferre de Molins** are different from this, as the examples of them will demonstrate, see *lib.* 3. *chap.* 8. *num.* 57. 58. to 67. And on the other side, to give it a new name becaus it is shifted, or transferred to another place; is repugnant to common reason, & saith *Gwillians fol.* 93: It is a paradox, that transposition (be-being a thing accidental) should give a new name to the thing transposed: *quia novum nomen dat novum esse rei*; new things are supposed to be where new names are given: Addition and Substraction are of greater force than Transmutation or Location; yet there is no such power in them, as to alter the Essence of a thing: So then the removing of this from a Cross to a Salter, causeth it not to loose its proper and ancient Blazon, but rather to retain that which is most agreeable to reason. Therefore to Blazon it a Cross Molyne in Salter (or set Salterwise) is no improper term. This is born by the name of *Saltmarsh*.

L. He beareth Azure, a **Salter Nowy couped and pierced Losengeways**, Argent. This is also termed a Salter **Ferdon** couped and pierced: and is born by *Mulrin*, or *Milrine*.

LI. He beareth Azure, a **Salter Nowy**, Or. This is the Coat of *Nowilbergh*.

LII. He beareth Argent, a **Salter Nowy arched**, Gules. Some puts the Archee before the Nowy; others term this, a Salter Ferden, from the Ferre de moline as it was made of old.

LIII. He beareth Gules, **Four Chaines in Salter, fixed to an Annulett in Fesse**, O. by the name of *Van Rissenberg*.

G the like A is born by the name of *Jay*.

LIV. He beareth Argent, a **Saltire Azure, Botony** Or. The French call it, a Salter Tholose or Toulouse, and Pometie, which signifies round and circular heads. This may be termed four Bowes (or Key heads,) the Shankes joyned in Saltire: or a Saltire of the handles of Keys. This is a Duch coate born by the nome of *Bassing hold*.

LV. He beareth Or, a **Saltire Saltired** Gules, **Flowry Sable**. This is also termed, a Saltire potent, Saltired Fowry; and a Saltire Gemelle, from its double Saltering, in the the head and steme. This is born by the name of *Salterfoile*.

Of the Frett.

3. THE next ordinary (if I may so term it) is the **Frett**, that is to be treated off: It is as all other of the ordinaries, subject both to change, and being changed; as also to increase, and be diminished, which makes me to impute it as an ordinary, (though no Herauld, as ever I heard, or read off, did ever so account it) therefore I give it a place amongst the rest.

The **Frett** is a thing composed of six peeces, in maner of a true loves knott, an example hereof is in the following Escochion.

LVI. He beareth Diamon, a **Frett Topaz**, the French call this a Frett of six peeces; but *Ferne*, in *Lacyes Nobility page: 69* Saith that a Frett, thus made, cannot be of less then six peeces, and therefore needs no other addition then a Frett: If it consist of more, it is called **Frettee**; as in the next example. This is Born by the nome of *Carter*.

A the like S born by the name of *Vernon*: And also by the names of *Talmache* and *Braine*.

O the like S born by *Morda* and *Champaine*.

LVII. He beareth Argent, **Frettee** Gules: *Leigh pag* 93 saith that if a Frett consist of eight, then it shall be numbred, if more, then to term it Frettee.

☞ Nevertheless, observe this by the way, that if the Escochion be smal or great, either the six, eight, or ten peeces, run from side to side, and that all the ends are joyned, to the parts of Field, then be the peeces more, or less, it is termed Frettee. This is born by name of *Frettermine*, *Hevay*. (*Stanton*.

V the like Frettee O by the name of *Whitmore* of *Thur-*

O the like B born qy *Willoughby*.

S the like O by *Maltrevers* and *Yardock*.

O Frettee G by *Falkenston*, or *Falkenstein* of *Bavaria*.

A the like G born by *Rottengatter*.

LVIII He beareth Azure, a **Frett in Fesse**, Or. The Frett when it is between any other things, then it is ever set thus: And then to say a Frett between such or such things, will suffice without mentioning its being in the Fesse part. *Boswell pag:* 129. Saith, a Frett transverse in Fesse. The like between three Flower de Luces, is born by the of *Idnerth Voil*, a Welch noble personage.

LIX He beareth Argent, a **Frett Couped Sable**. Born by the name of *Yaton*.

LX He beareth quarterly Gules, and Argent; **two Fretts Sable**. in the Blazon of this Coat, you see:

☞ I do not name (on the second and third quarter,

as some do, the two Fretts to be placed) but take no notice of them: For this is to be noted that Colour upon Colour, Mettle upon Mettle cannot be, neither is such good Armory. Therefore the Fretts being Sable consequently must be on the Silver quarters; on the contrary if the Fretts had been Mettle, then they should have been on the Coloured quarters. Born by the name of *Spance*. A and G quarterly two Fretts. O by the name of *Dutton* of *Dutton*, and *Hatton*. This is also born by *Warburton* of *Arley* in *Cheshire*. The like Coat with a Fesse B born by *Norris* of *Speake*, and also by *Robinson* of *Gwersilt*.

LXI. He beareth Vert, a **Frett Ingralled** Or. as this is borne Ingraled, so you shall have them Indented, Crenell, Waved and the like: If this had contained more peeces, then here it hath, (saith *Leigh pag.* 93) then it should have altered from its name, and been termed Diaper; what diaper is? you may see *cap.* 7 *numb.* 17. 18 This is borne by the name of *Hornelow*.

A such an one S. borne by *Camfield*.

G the like Er. by the name of *Eynefort*.

LXII. He beareth Argent, a **Frett bettissed** Sable. This Frett I find very anciently blazoned a Frett **espined**, or **aspined**, and of some, a Frett **crossed**. This is born by the name of *Brettarchby*.

LXIII. He beareth Gules, **Frettee** Or, charged on each joynt, with an Ogress, or Peilett. *Ferne pag.* 188 Blazons this, a **Trillis**, (or Lettice of a Window, or Prison grate) Or Cloved, or Nailed Sable. This is born by the name of *Trollis*, O Frett G Nailed O by *Trussell*.

LXIV. He beareth Argent, **Frettee** Gules, each charged on the joynt (or middle) with a Flower de lis, so you shall find them charged, with several other kinds of things both quick and dead, examples whereof would be numberless, these being sufficient for instruction to things of this nature. This is borne by the name of *Hamdlen*.

A Frettee S between each joynt a Cinquefail G born by *Thornton*. See *lib.* 4 *numb.* 140.

LXV. He beareth Gules, a **Frett** Argent, interlaced with an Annulett in the middle Or. Here I say in the middle to distinguish the place, because the annulett (as I have seen in Coats) may be on the out side of the Frett, which is then thus termed, a Frett, interfretted (or interlaced,) within an Annulett. This is born by the name of *Mardalase*

LXVI. He beareth Or, between the inner part of a **Frett**, Gules, **Four Hurts**: or more short, blazon it, Or, in a Frett Gules, Four hurts: if they were on the out side, then term it a Frett between Four such or such things.

LXVII. He beareth Argent, a **Frett, flory at each point** Gules. This is born by the name of *Florerfort*. I say at each point; to shew they are no where else, for by the term Flory, the Staves of the Frett may be understood to be adorned, with the Flowers also.

LXVIII. He beareth Azure, a **Frett in a true Loves Knott**, Or. It is born by the name of *Truelove*. Termed also a Frett double Fretted; or a **Frett fretted**, with round ends.

Of the Roundlet.

4. HAveing now spoken of the principal Ordinaries and of their Deminutions, it remains to treat of such things, as have a near resemblence among themselves, yet do really differ one from the other in name; of which sorts or charges, I shall in the first place speak of the **Rounds, Roundles**, or **Roundlets**; of which *Leigh pag.* 87. gives examples, of nine sundry sorts, each differing from other, in Terms of **Blasoning**, and that according to their differrent collours; as for example.

	1. Or.		1. **Besants.**
	2. Argent.		2. **Plates.**
	3. Vert.	then	3. **Pomets.**
	4. Azure.	they	4. **Hurtes.**
If they be	5. Sable.	are	5. **Ogresses** or **Pellets**
	6. Gules.	call-	6. **Torteauxes.**
	7. Purpure.	ed	7. **Golpes.**
	8. Tenne.		8. **Orenges.**
	9. Sanguine		9. **Guzes.**

☞ Now this you must note, that it is not requisite in **Blason**, to name the colloars of these nine **Rundlets**, except they be counter changed, as you shall see farther in these following example.

LXIX. He beareth Azure, a **Besant**, or as some call it, a **Tallant**; it is taken to be a massive plate, or bullion of Gold, haveing for the most part no similitude, or representation of any thing thereon, but onely fashoned round and smooth, as if it were prepared to receive some kind of Stamp: Some term them **Bezants**, and **Bizants**, of *Bizantium* the place where mony was Anciently Coined. This is born by the *name of Basinford*.

G. 3. Bezants born by *Babbington*, *Dynham* and *Hidon*.

S. 3. Such born by *Porcer*.

B. 3. Such born by *Nausolyn*.

LXX. He beareth Sable, a **Plate**. This is called a Plate because of the resemblence they have to silver Bullion. This is of some called a Ball; a Margarite, or Pearl: Stones others take them to be, as *Boswell pag.* 89. & others.

G. 3. Plates born by *Botesham*, *Tarys*, and *Musard*.

G. 4. Plates born by *Trotesham*.

S. 6. Plates 2. 2. 2. born by *Bronham*.

LXXI. He beareth Argent, a **Torteaure**. These by ancient Blazoners are called **Wastelles**, which are representations saith *Leigh pag.* 88. of Cakes of Bread; But must be Blazoned by no other name then **Torteaures**. This is born by the name of *Tortox*.

O. 3. Torteauxes, born by *Courtney*.

A. 3. Such born by *Boyzell*, and also *Fitzarmes*.

A. 7. Such 2. 2. 2. 1. born by *Honypot*.

A. 9. Such, 3. 2. 3. 1. born by *Gifford*.

LXXII. He beareth Or, an **Hurte**. This saith *Leigh pag.* 87. Comes from a Stroke or some violent Blow on a mans Body, which becomes Blew, and from thence, it took the name of a **Hurt**. But *Guilliams* saith *fol.* 148. That they are a kind of Fruit, or small round Berry, of colour

colour between, a Black and a Blew: they grow on a many-fold Stalk, about a foot high. And are found most in Forrests and Wood-land Grounds; and are called of some Wind-berryes, and Heurts, or Heurtle-berryes. This is born by the name of *Hurtle*

A. 3. Hurts or Heurts, born by *Baskervile.*
A. 10. Such born by *Hurting* or *Huckling.*

LXXIII. He beareth Argent, a **Pomels.** That is as much as to say, a Green Apple, born by *Pomell*; Ermine 3. Pomeyes, born by *Smith.*

LXXIV. He beareth Gules, on a **Plate**, a **Golpe.** That is saith *Leigh, pag.* 88. and *Gwilliame fol.* 357. as much as to say, a Wound; and it is at your choise, whether you will call them Wounds, or **Golpes.** Born by the name of *Golphmean.*

LXXV. He beareth Argent, 3 Ogresses. These are also termed **Pellets.** and do resemble bullets for Guns, & are often termed Gun-stones, or Bullets.

O. the like G. born by *Courtney.*
G. the like A. born by *Babbington, Bolkesham & Hofreit.*
B. as many O. by the name of *Nassowill.*
A. as many B. born by *Baskervile* of *Old-withington.*

LXXVI. He beareth Argent, six **Orenges**; these are both of the name and colour of an Orenge, therefore have they their name from that Fruit. This is born by the name of *Orenge.*

B. as many O. born by *Rumsey.*
V. as many O. born by *Hewick.*
A. the like S. by *Lacye.* S. as many. A. by *Punchardon*

LXXVII. He beareth Argent, **Semy de Guzes.** They are said to be the ball of the Eye, and are so Blazoned, although it be Sanguineof colour, that is a blood shotten Eye. In ancient Blazoning, I have seen the colours of some of these Rundles named: *glr.* 143. yea and some are of opinion, that one or two sorts of these, differ in there names according to the quantity of their Figures, and not in their colours. Yet of late times amongst our English Blazoners, it is counted a great fault, to name their colours (except they be found counterchanged of the Feild) as in the next examples.

☞ If there be more then six, or tenn, of these said roundletts in the Field: then they are not numbred, but are termed Bezantee, Platee, Pelletee, Torteauxee, that is (as much as to say) the Field is full of Bezants *&c. Upton* termes that of Bezantee, Tallented. See more of this *lib.* 4. *chap.* 1. *num.* 37. 38. and how these kind of numbers were anciently Blazoned.

B. 10. of them (set 4. 3. 2. 1.) O. is born by Zouch or Souche, and also by the the name of *Beseles.*

V. as many, O. by *Liston.*
A. as many S. on a cheif, a Lion Passrnt, by *Bridgman.*
B. 14. Bezants 4. 4. 3. 2. 1. born by *Van Bulow.*

LXXVIII. He beareth Party per Pale Vert and Argent, three **Roundletts counterchanged.** *Upton* calls them three Bals, and *Gwilliams fol.* 357. three Roundlets counterchainged; and by *Boswell pag:* 136 three Roundletts transmuted; and three Roundletts of the one and of the other. This is born by the name of *Greenhall.*

O and G. per Pale, the like counterchainged by *Abtot.*
O. and S. per Bend, the like in bend counterch. by *Hoy.*
O. and B. per Pale 3. counterchainged born by *Paine.*
A. and S. per Pale three the like, by *Pinchon.*
O and G per Fesse six Roundlets counterch. by *Selley.*

Of the Losenge &c.

5. NOW we come to those other things, which have a near resemblance among themselves, yet vary their names, only from their distinction of forms. and these are Fusils, Losenges and Mascules; the Figures of each of them, the following examples will demonstrate.

LXXIX He beareth Vert, a **Fusill** Or. The Fusill is a Figure composed of four strait lines, having its uper and lower parts more acute and sharp, then the other two collaterall or middle parts, which space between the two middle points (if the Fusill be rightly made) is alway shorter then any of the four Lines whereof it is composed. But this is to be understood of the modern Fusill, now in use; for anciently they were depicted after another shape; as the next will shew.

G a Fusill parted per Pale. O and B. by the name of *Fideler.*

Party per Pale A and B two Fusills Counterchaiged, by *Lasmandt.*

B three such and the Field Semy de **crusilets** O was the Coat of *Robert de Stockport* Baron of *Stockport*: One of the eight Barons belonging the Earldome of *Chester.*

LXXX He beareth Argent, a **Fusill** Gules. This is the Ancient Fusill, as I have seen in old Church Windows, and as itis set forth by *Chassaneus part* 1 *conc.* 75.

☞ Fusills if they be born Fess wayes, they are with their accute Angles upwards, as these Figures stand: But if they be pale wise, then their acute angles are set over cross the Escochion: If in bend then the acute Angles lye contrary to their locall Situation.

A the like G born by *Schelmen Van Bergen.*
G three such A by the name of *Cogan:* Also by *Freforsham:*
A three such S by *Pickerd.*

LXXXI. He beareth Purpure, a **Losenge** Argent. The Losenge differreth from the Fusill, in that the space between its two Collaterall, or middle Angles, is equal in the length to any of the Four Geometricoll lines, whereof it is composed: The breadth I do confess I have seen, and you may often find to exceed the length of one of the Lines; But never less, for then it is a Fusill.

Party per Fess A and S three such G born by *Leberskirch.*

O a Losenge G born by *Gibbing.*
A the like G born by *Van Schwerim* in *Brabant.* Also by *Van Eubing.*
S three such O born by *Guterath.*

LXXXII He beareth Or, a **Mascule**, Sable. *Leigh* saith *pag.* 92 35. That the Mascle, or Mascule, is ever Square (with the corners upright) whether it be voided or whole. But if they be Mashes or Masks of a net, as *Ferne pag.* 195 holdeth them to represent, then can they not be either Square or Solide, but must be voided; For if they be whole and Solide they would better resemble qua-

quarrells of Glass. Therefore the Mascule differreth from the Fusill and Losenge in two respects: First they are long this more square: And again they are ever born whole and intire, this is voided.

I have given you the differrence of these; I shall now proceed to give some examples of the several wayes of their bearing in Arms

A three of them S born by *Allen* and also *Hyde*.
A three of them G by *Champaine*, *Gargan* and *Grompes*.

LXXXIII. He beareth Azure, **three Fusills in Fesse** Argent. By the name of *Cathrall*.

A three the like G born by *Mountegue*.
Ermine three S by *Pigott*. And G 3 Er: by *Denham*.
O four in Fess B a bend over all G born by *Angell*.
S five A born by *Dautree*.
A six in Fesse G born by Stotenill.

LXXXIV He beareth Argent, **five Fusills in Cross** Vert. This is born by thame of *Ouzelcroft*: If more be born in a Coat, then say three, or five Crosses, each containing five Fusills.

Er: the like G born by *Mainley*.
O the like B born by *Besome*.
A three Fusills pointed or in point, triangular G born by *Prawn*, and also by *Van Braun*, & *Van Crackaw*.

LXXXV He beareth Azure, **four Fusils in Pale**, Or. This is the Coat of *Fitz Almaine*; and also by *Basiree*. And thus Losenges, Fusills, and Mascles are born in bend Cheveron, or Salter.

G four such in Pale was born by *By John Fitz Nigel* Barron of *Halton*, and *Constable* of *Chester*.

LXXXVI He beareth Argent, a **Losenge flory** Gules, **charged with a Salter**, Or. This is born by *Catsby*. The Losenge and Fusills are not only adorned witih flowers but other things: and charged upon as these examples.

G the Losenge flory O born by *Cassyll*.
Gthe like A charged with a bend S born by *Bonevile*.

LXXXVII. He beareth Azure, **Seven Mascules conjoyned**. 3 3 and 1 Or. This is born by the name of *Ferrars*, with a canton Ermine: Mascules are born either asunder or joyned together: As in this example, there fore you must take notice thereof: And likewise number how many are joyned, or set together in one row.

G the like O by name of *Ferrers*.
A the like G by the name of *Braybroke*.
G the like of 9 Fusills A born by *Crespid*.
A 10 Fusills 5 and 5 joyned S by *Faucombride*.

LXXXVIII He beareth Argent, a **Mascule fretted with four of the same, in Salter**, Or. This is born by the name of *Die Van Dagellin* a *Germain*.

Of the Gutte or Drop.

3 THE next thing (in order of the Engraven Plate) that receives a diverse manner of Blazon, and that according to the colours they are of, is that which we call **Gutte**, of the Latin word *Gutta*, which signifieth a Drop of any thing that is either liquid by Nature, or qualified by Art. These Drops, as I said, do receive a different manner of Blazon, according to their different colours, or diversity of the substance whereof they do consist, as for example.

If they be	1. Or.	they are termed.	1. **Gutte de Or**, else *Aure*.
	2. Argent		2. **Gutte de Eau**.
	3. Vert.		3. **Gutte de Olive**.
	4. Azure.		4. **Gutte de Larmes**.
	5. Sable.		5. **Gutte de Poix**.
	6. Gules.		6. **Gutte de Sang**.

Drops, saith *Gwilliams*, *fol.* 158. ate seldom born of themselves, but rather upon, or with some other kind of charge, either ordinary or extraordinary; or else divided by means of the interposition of some of the lines of partitions.

LXXXIX. He beareth Gules, one **Gutte de Or**. These Drops are taken to be Drops of fusible or liquid Gold; and are termed **Gutte de Or**, else **Gutte de Aure**, from the Latine term, *Aurum*, Gold.

XC. He beareth Azure, three **Gutts de Eau**. This word *Eau*, is *French*, and signifieth as much as *Aqua* doth in Latine; which is as much as to say he beareth three Drops of Water, whose proper colour is Argent.

A and S per Cheveron, three Guttees counterchanged. By *Crosbie*.

XCI. He beareth Or, three **Gutts de Olive**, in Fesse. These are Drops of the Oil of Olives, which is of a Vert, or green colour.

XCII. He beareth Argent, two **Gutts de Larmes**; these Drops called de Larmes, or Larmettes, are derived from *Lacrymæ*, Tears, because they represent them, which are always understood to be Blew of colour.

XCIII. He beareth Or, five **Guttes de Poix**, Bendwise in Salter. This word *Poix* in *French*, is the same to Pitch in *English*, yet among our Heraulds these are termed, Guttes de Sable.

A three Guttes de Poix. Born by *Crosbie*.

XCIV. He beareth Argent, **Guttee de Sang**. These are termed de Sang, *quia ex Guttis Sanguinis constant*; signifying Drops of Blood, which is naturally red.

Some are of opinion, that Gutts are never born so as to be numbred, but ever go under the term Guttee; the contrary I dare not avouch, because I have seen Coats that have had but five Gutts on a Cross, and as many on a Chief and Cheveron, and eight on a Border; which are as so many things charged upon such Ordinaries; and yet in such Coats I never found any numbering in their Blazon, but only the term Guttee: But in Fields I have often seen them numbred, as in this example following; and in Coats after such like manner of Bearings. This is born by the name of *Lemming*.

S Gutte de Eau; a Canton Er. born by *Dannett*.
A the like de Poix, a Chief Nebulæ, G by *Roydenhall*.
A a Cross Sable, Gutte de Aure, else Or. By *Milketfield*.

XCV. He beareth party per pale, Vert & Argent, twelve **Gutts or Drops counterchanged**. The cause as I conceive of the numbering of them, is, because they are

are one directly under another, whereas if they had been set one contrary to the other, as Ermyne are; then they would have been termed Guttee, and not so many Gutts; my Author of this Coat, *Gwilliams, fol.* 370. Blazons it 12 Gutts or Drops in Pale, (rather Palewise in four) else in Pale signifieth no more than to have six in Pale on one side; and six in Pale on the other side the partition; which is a very uncertain way of Blazoning, to give any true knowledg of the manner of their placing in the Field. Born by the name of *Glindall.*

Again, as touching the Blazon of this Coat of Arms, it is in your choise, whether you will give it the Blazon aboveſaid, or else say party per Pale Vert, and Argent six Gutts de Eau, and as many de Olive, paleways.

Per pale O and V twelve Drops counterchanged. Born by *Grindoire.*

XCVI. *He* beareth Or, six **Guttes de Larmes reversed.** By the name of *Drojwater.* These being of some termed exhalations or moist vapours drawn upwards by the heat of the Sun, are therefore rather to be Blazoned, six Drops exhaled Azure, or six exhaled Drops.

Of the Bordure.

7. THE next and last of the Ordinaries to be discussed is the **Bordor**; the Border is an ancient difference, used for the distinction of Coat Armour, of particular Persons and Families, descended from one and the same House, or Original Stock; each from other amongst themselves; and as they have been differences to Coats, so they have anciently been held for Coats.

And this may be proved by many Authentick testimonies, both from Authors, Records, & Seales: As likwise Coats themselues, which I have seen; Which is a sufficient proofe to me, to cause me to set it down amongst the Ordinaries for an Ordinary, though others be of a contrary Iudgment. Examples of Borders, and its severall kinds are as followeth.

XCVII. He beareth Vert, a **Bordure**, Argent. born by the name of *Bordrouch.* The Bordure, (or **Vrisure**, as the *French Armorists* calls it) containeth in breadth the 5 part of the Escochion, as saith *Leigh pa:* 111.

☞ Also it is to be observed that when the Field and Bordure about it, are both of one Mettle Colour or Furr; then you shall not term it a Bordure, but shall say he beareth Arg: &c: **Imbordured.** Which kinde of Imbordu-ring is reckoned amongst the number of differences of Brethren: But that thing is committed to the discretion of Heraulds, and Officers of Armes.

S a Bordure G born by *Tagwaret ap Robert a Brittaine.*
Er: the like B by *Madock Voell* of *Wales.*
G 3 Bordures A is born by *Burdon.*

XCVIII. He beareth Or, a **Bordure Ingraled,** Vert. is born by Sr: Rys Hen of *North Walee.* This word **Ingraled,** is derived from the Latine word, *Ingradior:* which signifieth to enter, or go in. or of *Gradus,* a Step or degree: And therefore it is called, a Bordure Ingraled (as *Vpton* noteth) *Quia eius color gradatim infertur in Campo Armorum.* S the like O by *Ierworth Drwyndyn* of *Powys.*

XCIX. He beareth Azure, a **Bordure Invecked,** Argent. This Bordure is contrary to the foregoing, for as that doth with its points incroach into the field, so this by way of *Inversion,* doth contract it selfe, as haveing the points in it selfe: in regard whereof it receiveth this denomination of **Invecked,** from the Latine word, *Inveho;* which signifieth to Carry in. The *French* term it a **Bordure Engreslee,** Such an one is born by the *Marquesse* of *Blainville.*

C. He beareth Argent, a **Bordure Invecked Gobony,** Or & Gules. born by *Furstenberg* of *France.* This is by the *French* blazoned a **Border Nuagee, Endedans,** O & G every Inveck being of a contrary colour from other. which of some of our *English* blazoners is termed a Border **Contrary Invecked,** O & G see *cap: 9 numb:* 86. G the like A & B born by *Duckhome.*

CI. He beareth Vert, a **Bordure Indented,** Or by the name of *Talliate.* This term **Indent,** is borrowed of the word, *Dentes,* teeth; where-unto the same hath a resemblance, as well in property as in forme. As it is in these Bordures, so you shall have them Composed of the severall other Sorts of Lines, as is before shewed in **Cotes** therefore it is needlesse to retalliate, these being sufficient to Instruct the Judicious.

G the like A born by *Sr: Perducas Dalbreth.*
G the like O born by *Tudor Maur.*

CII. He beareth Argent, a **Bordure parted per Bordure Indented,** Or & Azure. As this is Indented, so you shall have the **Bordures parted** according to the severall sorts of Lines. This by some Antient Heraulds is termed a Bordure **Partie Indented,** *Gwilliams* saith a **Bordure point in point Indented**: But that is a fitter & more proper term for the next example, where the Points extend to the out sides of the Ordinaries. This is also blazoned, a **Bordure** Azure, Charged (or **Surmounted**) with another **Indented,** Or. Such a Bordure A Charged with an other Ingraled S belongs to the Coat of *Birkenhead* of *Manley* in *Cheshire.*

CIII He beareth Or, a **Bordure Point in Pointe Indented,** Argent, and Purpure.

A a Bordure Point in Point Nebulee. O and B over all a Salter G born by *Van Schawenburg* in the Province of *Alsatia.*

CIV. He beareth Argent, **Indentee Borderwise,** Gules. Such a Bordure was born by Sir *Gilbert Talbot,* Kt. of the *Garter.* This is of some termed only Indentee, as if the Indents were set no where, but about the sides of the Escochion: Of the French it is called, a Bordure Canelee, and dentilee of each point.

CV. He beareth Gules, a **Bordure Quarterly,** Or and Argent. Such a Bordure Er. and Chequie or counter Compony. O and B was born by *Henry Fitz Roy* base Son to King *Henry* the eight This is the First sort of compounded Bordure, it is the least of the compositions being only divided into four parts.

CVI. He beareth Argent, a **Bordure Quarterly Quartered,** Azure and Or. This is a double composi-

tion

tion to the former, consisting of eight peeces, which is from the center of the Escochion, to be divided per Cross, and also per Salter.

CVII. He beareth Or, a **Bordure Gobonated** (or **Gobony**) Argent and Gules. Such a Bordure belongs to the Coate of *Adaff Goch* a *Britain*. This is the last of the composed Bordures, of a single tract, & doth consist of double the division of the last Bordure: *viz.* 16 peeces, and not to exceed; a few less it may, if the Border be so small, that it will not contain that number. It is termed **Gobonated**, because it is divided, and cut as it were into small peeces, which we call **Gobbitts**. *Boswell pag.* 35 termes this **Compony**, Argent and Gules.

Er: Such a Bordure A and B belongs to the Coat of *Pickering*.

Such a Bordure A and B belongs to *Beaufort Earl* of *Somerser*. And is by the French *fol.* 8. termed, a Bordure Camp, or Compon.

O a Lion ramp: B Crowned G a Bordure Gobony A and G by *Campusen*

CVIII. He beareth Argent, a **Bordure Counter-Compony**, Or & Sable. The terms **Gobony** or **Compony**, as afore shewed hath but one colour at a tyme in the whole breadth of the Bordure, or other Ordinarie; But the **Counter-Compony**, is made of two Tracts or Lines, And ever hath 2 colours in the breadth of the Ordinary. If this be **Counter-Compony**, the other may fitly be termed **Compony**; being this is Compounded of two colours set foure square contrary one to the other. Of some this it temed **Counter-Gobony**, and **Countre-Camp**, or Campee ro only **Compony**

CIX. He beareth Or. a **Bordure Chequie**, or **Checkie**, Argent & Sable. Upon all ordinaries Chequie is composed of three tracts never less, but in Fields born Chequie; they may cousist of more according to the discresion of the Artist. Therefore you must be carefull to observe the number of Tracts, or else you may easily commit an errour in takeing Chequie for Counter-Compony or Counter-Compony for Chequie: See *chap.* 4 *numb.* 42 43 43 44.

CX. He bareth Gules, a **Bordure** Argent, charged with **three Bendletts sinister** Purpule, there is born upon Bordures, Bends, Bendletts, or Bendy, to any number; therefore ever note in the sume of them to give it, its due termi.

After this manner you shall have Borders charged with Barrs, Cheverons, Fretts, Pales, and such like, of which I shall give one or two examples.

☞ Note also that all sorts of Bordures are subject to be charged with things as well Artificiall as Natural; as by following demonstrations, in part shall appear: where in I shall not be curious either in giveing many in number, nor therein observe much order.

CXI. He beareth Azure, a **Bordure Cheverony of eight**, Agent and Gules. born by *Style*

CXII. He beareth Argent, a **Bordet** Or, charged with two **Pales**, and as many **Squires**, **and Barrs**, Azure. This is born by the name of *Latimer*. *Upton* termes this Bordure Pally Barry, contrary Coonyed, Or, and Azure; with a simple Sheild of Silver.

CXIII. Ae beareth Gules, a **Bordure** Argent charged with **Lucyes**, Azure; and according to some (**Semy de Lucyes**) or charged with eight Lucyes: The Border of any Coate, if charged with any thing quick or dead, it is understood, to have the just number of eight such thiugs charged upon it, and no more, nor less; if with more then to be numbred, else not.

CXIV. He beareth Azure, a **Bordure** Or, **Charged with Lioncels**, or **Lion Passant**, Sable. *Gwilliams fol.* 32. *Leigh pag.* 3. And several others term this, a Bordure **Enurney** of Lioncels: Which word Enurney (say they) is proper to all Bordures charged with any kind of Beast; which Beast must likewise be expressed in Blazon for the more certaintie thereof: Then the term Enurney is needless. Such a Bordure G the Lions O was born by *Hamlyn Plantagenet*.

The Bordure quarterly G and B the first three Lions the second, three Elowers de lis. O *&c.* or more short a Bordure quarterly *England* and *France*, Was born by *Courtney*.

CXV. He beareth Argent; a **Bordure** Purpure, charged with **Trefoiles** Or: else Trefoiled, or semy de trefoiles, (or a Bordure **Verdoy** of trefoiles) which term Verdoy, Saith the foresaid Authors, is appropried to all Bordures charged with Leaves, Flowers, Frute, and other like Vegetables: And so the like unnecessary, is the term Verdoy, which Mr. *Gwilliams* himself in a sort acknowledgeth: When in the usiing of these termes, he giveth this causion; wherefore to make the Blazon more certain, it behoveth that you should expresly mention what kind of Vegetable the Bordure is charged withal.

CXVI. He beareth Purpure, a **Bordet** Argent charged with **Martletts** Sable. Such a Bordure B the Martletts O was born by *Jasper Earl* of *Pembrock* half Brother to King *Henry* the sixt. Or semy de Martlets, (or a Bordure **Enaluron** of Matlets) when any Bordure is charged with any sort of Foul, or Birds, or things belonging to them, this term Enaluron is to be used as a Blason proper and Ancient for such Birds; which term is also alike superfluous.

CXVII. He beareth Vert, a **Bordure** Argent: **Pelletee, surmounted** of another **Engraled** Gules. This is born by the name of *Birkenhead* or *Birket*. Some term it charged with Pelletts, and others with **Entoyre** or **Pelletts** which term Entoyre is proper to all Bordures, charged with dead things, as Roundletts, Cressants, Mullets, Anulletts, *&c.* So that you must name what kind of Entoyre the Bordure is charged with: then what signifieth the word Entoyre; when neither charge or colour is signified by it?

CXVIII. He beareth Gules, a **Bordure Ermine**. After some a Bordure purflew, Ermine: which term purflew is common to all the Furres, so often as they are used in Bordures. Yet *Bosvell* never useth any such terms see his *Armory* of *Honour pag.* 37. and the more wiser man he was in it; take my reasons for these foresaid expression, to be contrary to the rules of *Herauldry*.

☞ In the blazoning of these five last foregoing Bordure, I have given you the five termes used by the foresaid Authors (and not them only but of four of their Disciples, who have followed their rules) but for my own part, I hold them superfluous, and needless to express any such termes, and that for these reasons.

First

First there is in such Blazon, a multiplication of words, which is before forbidden in the rules of Blazon, brevity being ever held the most excellentest way: So then to use words, when the thing is understood without them, is needless, and not good.

Secondly; if in the using of such terms so many kinds of things, as are in the five words, were understood, it were something to be approved, but to use them, and after to name the Birds, Beasts, Flowers, or Furres, *&c.* Makes it to stand as a cypher, and to no use.

Thridly; why should such terms be used to them, more on Bordures, then on those ordinaries, which are much more Honourable bearings, or in Fields. If to one, why not to the rest? Seeing when Bends & Cheverons are charged, they generally have three, and Crosses and Salters have five, the Bordure eight things upon them; if more, then to be numbered.

Fourthly; and again it is very plain that Gutts, Beasants, Plates, Ermine, Varrey, and such like bearings; have the same names and termes wheresoever the stand, in the Field, or on the ordinaries, and yet no such term is then used to them; and why to a Bordure, more especially then to a Feild? [is a paradox.] And so I shall leave it to more able and judicious Judgments: But they that will follow this way of Blazon, let them amongst the rest, find out a terme for Fish, as well as Birds, Beasts *&c.* For they are of a contrary nature to the rest.

Now in opposition to their terme I shall give you a Blazon of a charged Bordure which may serve for all things born after the same nature, kind or maner.

CXIX. He beareth Or, a **Bordure** Gules replenished with **Lions paws Arazed in Salter** Argent. By this you may understand, that these Lions paws in Salter are set in eight places upon the said Bordure, which needs not to be numbred; though, I do confess by some ignorant Blazoners I have heard, and seen it Blazoned; a Bordure charged upon, with sixteen Lions paws in Salter, others sixteen paws two, and two, Salterwise.

CXX. He beareth Azure, a **Bordure Counter-Flory** Or. Of the difference between Flory and Counter-Flory: I have shewed in the Bend, and Fesse of that kind. *chp.* 4 *numb.* 36 83. These are also set about the Bordure to the number of eight and no more, or no less.

B a Lion rampant and such a Bordure A born by Lodge.

T O

His Honored Friends and Kindſmen

IOHN BRERWOOD *Eſquire*

HARBERT BARRINGTON FRANCIS BROWNE THOMAS SWINTON

Eſquires

RICHARD PARKER, RICHARD WRIGHT, THOMAS SIMPSON, BENJAMINE BROWNE

Gentlemen.

OUt of a Pious Affection, and Naturall Love to the Inhabitants of the Place of your Nativity (amongſt other Friends) you have not onely ſhewed a great Willingneſs, But have bine very Zealous in Promoteing the Endevours of him who is your Fellow Cittizen, & much Oblidged Kindſman:

Randle Holme.

CHAP. VII.

1. BESIDES theſe Ordinaries, which make Coats of Armes to conſiſt of two Colours: Yet there are certaine other diſtinct Beareings which are as Honorable as the Ordinaries, And are Inſident both to Fields and Charges; Being compounded of two or more Colours; Which in their Blazon carry not the names of the Colours of which they are made, But go under other terms. Whereof there are 9. Sorts (after *Leigh pa:* 75.) and 8. (by *Gwilliams fol:* 23.) But I hold but 6. abſolute, that have diſtinct terms, and theſe are called **Furrs.**

Of the Furres.

Furres uſed in Armes, are taken for the Skins of Beaſts, ſtriped from the body and Artificially trimed for the Furring, Doubling, or Lineing of Robes, and Garments; as well, both for State and Magnificence: as alſo for wholſome and neceſſary uſes. I ſhall then give you perticular examples of their ſeverall beareings in Coats of Armes.

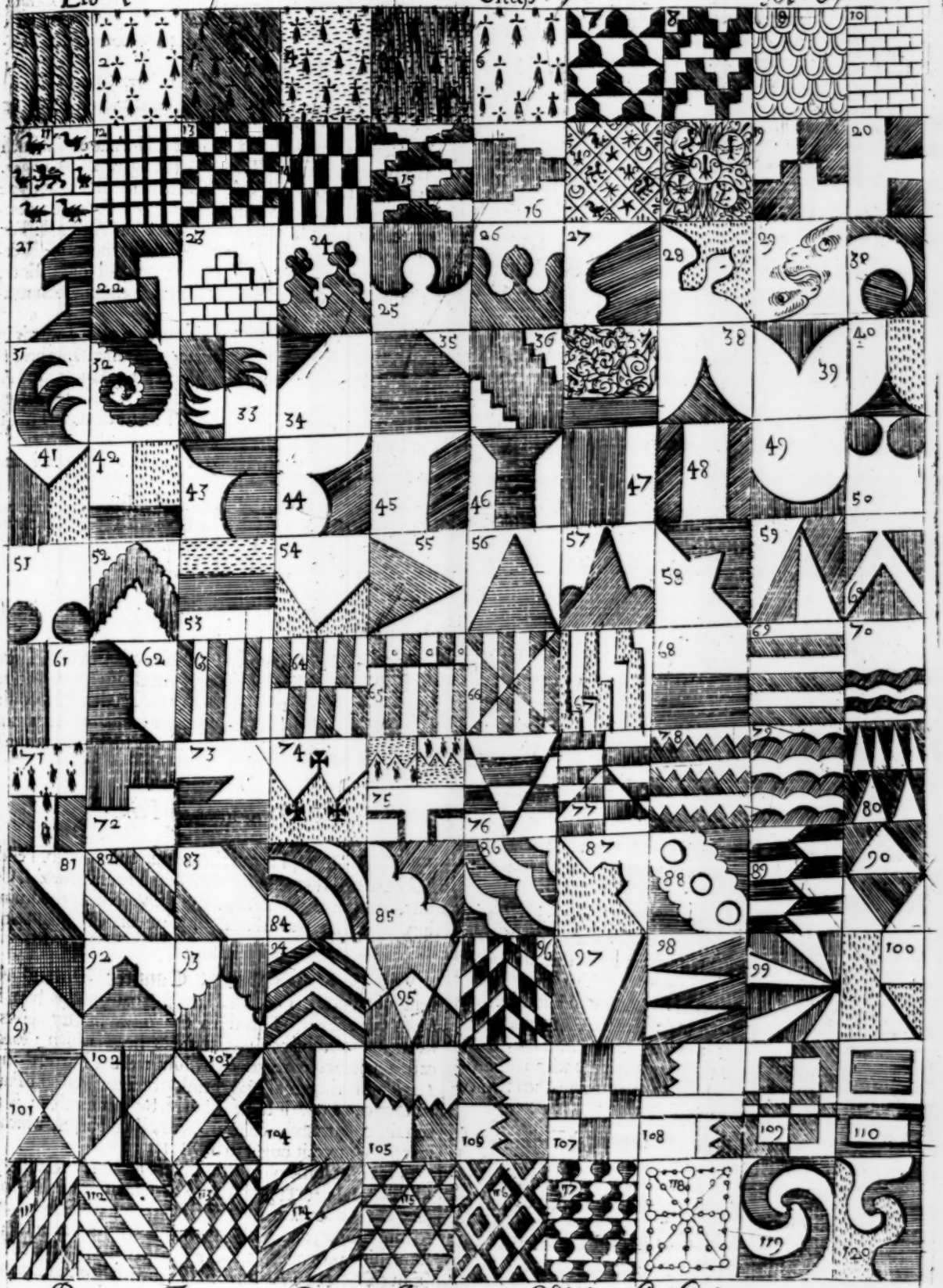
I. This is a **Furr** of one Colour, which is not uſed in Coats, but in Mantles onely; And is all white, which in Doublings, is taken for the **Litvits Skin,** or White Martyne. And is not to be termed Argent, but White: As being a Skin of a Beaſt.

II. He beareth **Ermine.** This is the Second kinde of **Furr,** which conſiſteth of a White ground, and black Spotts. Which you muſt blazon only by the name of **Ermyne,** and not Argent, Pouldred, or Purfled with Sable. For this is taken for the Skin of a little Beaſt leſſe then a Squirell, that hath his being in the Woods of *Armenia,* all White with the Tip of his Taile only Black. Called by the name **Ermyne,** From whence it is, that this term of blazon is Borrowed.

In ſome Coats theſe are numbered, but then they Extend not to a number above fiue: Yet both *Leigh pag:* 75. *& Gwilliams fol:* 24. ſay that they may be numbered to ten, aboue which they muſt not exceed. Which ſeems to me to be too great a number, for we often ſee that Croſſes Salters, Cheverons, Cantons,, & whole Quarters: have but five ſet upon them. And yet ſuch are not numbered, but go under the generall term of **Ermine.** Alſo whole Fields haveing ſome Ordinaries charged upon them, oft tymes have not ten, ſometymes much leſſe, yet are never numbered. Neither do I hold it neceſſary to number them at all, Except they are born as a perticular Charge is, as in theſe few Blazonings.

A 3 Queen Ermyne, born by *Hermoin.*
Foure Queen Ermyne in Croſs, by *Hurleſton.*
Quarterly A & G in the firſt a queen Ermyne, 2 Frets O born by *Warburton* of *Grafton.*
A a Cheveron G betw: 3 ſuch born by *Potter.*
A a Croſs betw: 4 ſuch born by *Croſherm.*
A 5 ſuch betw: 2 Barrulets G born by *Malvarlegh.*

In all which reſpects this is not a Furre, but a Mettall onely; But in all other Doublings & Lineings it is taken for



Domum Francisci Browne Armigeri Lecti in Legibus.

for a rich Furr. In which according to *Gwilliams* rule *fo:* 24. There is a late described Order for the Distribution of the **Powderings**, according to the Dignitie of the wearer: Which is, that an *Emperour*, *King*, or *Potentate*, may have the Powderings of their Mantles, as thick as they please. a *Duke* may have the Cape of his Mantle only foure Rankes. a *Marquiss* three Ranks & an halfe. And an *Earl* three Rowes only. And a *Baron* to have his of white Furr.

These Rowes, or Ranks, before named, are of some Authors call **Tymbers of Ermyne**, for that noe man under the degree of a *Baron*, or *Knight* of the *Garter*, may have his Mantle Doubled with **Ermyne**.

III. The third sort of **Furre**, is that which in Blazon is called **Ermynes**: Which consist of a black field and white Powdering upon it. Yet neither in this or the former shall you make any mention in the Blazon of them, of any such mixture, but only use the name Appropriated to either of them, which doth sufficiently express the maner of their Composition or commixture.

Boswell and *Gwilliam fol.* 25 are of oppinion, that **Ermyne**, and **Ermynes**, ought never to be set in Armes, with the Mettle of their colours, but in colours only: Because they are but **Furres** and have no proper Blazon with any Mettle. Yet antiquity and Custome (which are the vigour of the Law, where there is no written Law) are powerfull in things of this nature, to cast aside his fancy: For as much as it is manyfest, that not only Modern, but Ancient Coates are of such bearings, without any contradiction. Which he himself, in the Blazon of *Walcots* Coate *pag.* 105 36 39. might have taken exceptions against, if he could have produced any good ground to have warranted this his oppinion; but he passeth it over with silence as having no authority to produce.

IV. The fourth sort of **Furre**, is **Compounded** of a Yellow Feild or Ground, Powdered with Black, and is termed **Ermynois**. This Furre is not held so rich as the aforesaid. The use whereof *Bara pag* 14 maketh mention in his Book (*Le Blazon des Armoires*) also *Edell Hiryssen* in his Book, *Le Jardyn d' Armories* &c.

V. He beareth Pean. This is the first sort of **Furre**, which is contrary to the foregoing, it being a Black feild, powdered with Yellow.

VI. He beareth **Ermynites**. This is another sort of **Furre**, which at the first sight may seem to be all one with the second Furre; but it differeth in this, that herein is added one baire of red, on each side of every one of of these Poulderings. And as this differeth but little from the second in Form, so but little in term, that being called Ermyne, this Ermynites; this is the only (& all the Furres) that is composed of more then two colours without nameing thereof; all Furres else that have more then two colours have the colours named.

VII. He beareth **Vair** (or **Varrey**) This is the seventh sort of **Furre**, and doth consist of Argent and Azure. If this kinds of Furre be compounded of any other kind of collour save White and Blew: You are to say, he beareth **Verrey** of Or and Vert; (or Argent and Sable) or else of such and such colours: But the term Vaire and Varrey, will suffice (for Argent and Azure) saying no more.

☞ In all Coates of this nature, and bearing the Mettle is to have the preheminency and chief place; as being the most worthy. But *Leigh* makes to distinctions of the word Vaire, (as Verrey and Varry) giveing to each term, two particular colours which they comprehend under the said termes, as

By Verrey is understood, Or and Vert. O and B saith *Morgan lib.* 2 *fol:* 73 by vaire is understood three or four colours, which must be told.

By Verrey is understood Argent and Azure. Which rules I must confess, I follow not; but agree to *Ferne pag.* 86, who in his Book of *Lacies* Nobility, writteth that there is no other Blazon, or termes allowed to a Furre, or doubleing of this kind, then only Vaire or Variated: For which word (Variated) our English Blazoners use Verrey or Verry or Vaire, holding the foresaid distinctions, or termes Phantasies of *Leighs* own makeing, without any authority.

I shall therefore make no distinction of the words in this work, but some tymes use one, and then another, ever nameing the colours, except they be Argent and Azure: At which either Vaire, Variated, Verree or Verrey and Verry; shall be sufficient, as I said before. This is born by the name of *Beauchampe*

Verrey A and S born by *De la ward* of *Place ward*, and *Hasbell.*

The same A and G by *Grayley* of *Essex.*

The like O and S is born by *Oldfeild.* also by *Stanerton*

The like O and V by *Peverell.*

G and Er: by the name of *Eresley.*

2. HAVING given examples of **Furres**, I proceed to a kind of bearings much after their nature, & often used in Armes, both in the Feildes, & upon the ordinaries; which have no relations to any of the ordinaries, but are of an Independent being, as these examples following.

Of Tinctures of Feilds

BY Tinctures, I mean the colour or colours of Feilds, of which there is a tincture that is to say mettal, Colour, or, Furre predominating Others not predominating, as having two Mettals or Collours of equal being as.

VIII. He beareth **Potent Counter Potent** Argent and Vert. This is a *Spanish* Coate, and is born by *Don Haro Maca.* This term *Gwilliams fol.* 27 gives it from its resemblence to Crowches head which *Chaucer* call a potens; is reckoned by him to be a Furre, though *Leigh* and others make no mention of it amongst the Furre neither can I take it to be a Furre, by reason there is no certain colours assigned to it, as to other Furres, which if it were a Furre, it ought to have

This is of some old Heraulds called Varry **Cuppy** or Cuppa, and **Verrey Tassa**, whih is as much (saith *Leigh pag* 111) as to say a Furre of Cups or of Gobbets, and to ranke Cups, and Gobbets with Furrs, as a Furre; is something proposterous: This is also termed **Meirre** (or **Barr Meirre**) Argent and Vert. So it is well Blazoned, and very Ancient.

XI. He

IX. He beareth Or, **Papellonne** Gules. This a French deviſe and ſo you have th French Blazon for it by *Ferne* in his *Glo: pag.*190 the term **Pampelletee** or **pe pillottee**, in our Engliſh ſignifieth; Spangle beſet with Spangles: But in my Judgment it may fitly be termed according to the Engliſh Language; Or, **mailed** (or **Eſcallopee**) Gules. Being it reſembles, both the Iron rings quilted in Coates of Maile, and the lower part of Eſcallop Shells ſet one contrary to another like Fiſh ſcals. Some Artiſts term this in their profeſſion, Scallop work, which if this were in uſe for Engliſh Coates would be a good term for it. See *chap.* 3 *numb.* 113 and *chap.* 9 *numb:* 85. This is born by the name of *Grimball.*

Per Feſſe O & Mailed G a Lion paſſant S by *Van Schwemke,*

A a bend Eſcalloppee G. born by *Tetenbach*, and by *Tettenbeck* with the bend ſiniſter.

Party per Feſſe G and Papellonne A born by *Newbrig* or *Nevburg.*

X. He beareth Agent, **Maſoned** Sable. This is ſo termed from the joynts of Stone worke made by Maſons: Every joynt being made contrary to the other. This is alſo Blaſoned **ſyled** (or **ſiſed**) or joynted) which are terms ſuch Workmen uſe, and are fit for ſuch kind of Coats as this is. This is born by the nan e of *Maſon,*

A Maſoned S. a chief Battled B by *Van Kalmuntz.*

Party per Feſſe Crenelle A and G Maſoned. Three ſpurr Rowels G. born by *Hoffer.*

XI. He beareth Argent, **Maſoned into ſeven diviſions** Sable, a **Lion between ſix Martletts**, Gules. This is born by *Lenris de Marrilla* Earl of *Beaumont.* Some term it, the Feild containeth ſeven parts 2 3 2. in the Feſſe part a Lion Paſſant, the reſt each charged with a Matlet; ſome ſay parted in three, maſoned into ſeven *&c.*

XII. He beareth Argent **Poxculiced** Sable, or after ſome **Laticed** Sable I confeſs I have diveſe Blaſonings givings to this Coate, as **Batunes Fretted**; other a **Croſs parted** over all the Feild; others a **Lettice**, from its reſemblence to **Lattice Windows**. *Ferne pag.* 188 terms it a **Troiliis**, as being the Grate, or Barrs of a Priſon where Malefactors are kept. But his example is **Frettee** in which the Cutter was miſtaken in not doing his part as he there acknowledgeth, when as it was entended, to be ſtraight down, and directly over Croſs and not otherwiſe. This is borne by the name of *Gaoler.*

G a Cheveron A. Proculiced S belongs to the Coat of *Moulton*, or *Moulſon*; being between three Mullets.

XIII. He beareth **Chequie**, Argent & Sable. by the name of *Thorppe.* Of the Compoſion of **Checkie**, I have in the handling of the **Bordures** of that nature, ſhewed how it is to be born on all kindes of Ordinaries: But being here a **Tincture** in the Field, it is Compoſed of as many Croſs Lines as the Workman pleaſeth, always provoided, it be done with diſcreſſion, viz: not too many, nor on the other ſide, too few Squares.

And as theſe foregoing examples, and ſome others following in this Chapter, are Coats Armour of themſelues; Yet you ſhall often finde them both Charged upon, with Ordinaries, and other things, Quick & Dead: As alſo the Ordinaries charged with theſe kinde of **Tinctures**: In the blazoning of which Coats, you muſt give to each of them their due aud proper Terms.

O & B chequie born by *Warren.* & by *Benton.*

G & O born by *Gilſland.* alſo by *Roos.* & *Molton.* & *Fitz John.* O & V by *Hackford.*

XIIII. He blareth **Billitee Counter = Billitee**, Gules & Argent by the name of *Bellinger*, This term is when the Field is onely divided into Three equall Parts Feſſewayes, And the diviſion per Pale, being as many as is convenient: makeing them always more longer then broad. This is alſo blazoned, **Paly A & G a Feſſe counter = changed.**

XV. He beareth **Barry** of foure, Vert & Argent: a **Pale Battelled Imbattelled, Counter = changed.** by the name of *Mallines*, Or elſe term it, a **Pale Grady** (of two) in the midle & ends, Counter - changed. ſee *chap:* 3 *dumb:* 84.

XVI. He beareth Argent, a **Feſſe Gricee**, by the name of *Grangrice* & alſo by *Newhofer.* Some term this a Feſſe **Double Eſcartelee**, But then (as I conceive) it ſhould have bine like the Pale aforeſaid, ſet Feſſewaves: which it is not. others ſay it is, **Grady** of three, in Feſſe to the Siniſter ſide.

XVII. He beareth Argent, **Diapered**, Sable. born by the name of *Leuchtenberg*, That thing is ſaid to be Diapered that is Fretted all over, and hath ſome thing, either Quick, or Dead, or both, between the Fretts. *Grilliams f.t:* 32 33 34. In the blazoning of this Coat ſaith, **Diapered Entoyre Enurny Evaluron & Cerdoy.** Signifying thereby, That the ſame is Diapered with Birds, Beaſts, Flowers, or Plants, & other dead things, As Mulletts, Creſiants, Starrs &c: So that you ſee **Diapering** is a kinde of Phantaſticall worke, as being Compoſed of ſome thing of all Creatures.

Now as in this Coat you have the Diapering with many, or every thing: So you ſhall have them of one or two perticular things, in ſuch caſes you may uſe this way of Blazoning, **Diapered** with ſuch or ſuch a Bird & Flower, or ſuch a Beaſt & Plant: For Diapering uſually runeth the Field all over with Flowers, & Branches, & other Antickes creatures.

XVIII. He beareth Gules, **Diapered**, with a **Flower de Lis**, between **Eagles & Lions Rampant.** This kinde of beareing (ſaith *Ferne pag:* 189.) is much uſed in *France*, & *Belgia*, But very reare, or never in *England.*

Diaper, or **Damaſke**, for the moſt part is but of one Colour, as you may perceive in this Coat, being the colour of the Feild is either **Damasked** all over, with the ſame colour made Lighter, or darker. Thereby to make it appear to be **Diapered**: as the Feild is born **Damasked**, ſo the Ordinaries are alſo, which are thus Blazoned.

Gules **Damasked**, a **Cheveron** Or. Born by *Damaſin*

Azure, a **Croſs Diapered** Argent. by *Machecoll.*

A and B per Feſſe Diapered, by the name of *Ulme.*

A Diapered, a bend G. Born by *Str. ſb. r. b.*

A Diapered, a Bordure G by *Schweith.*

Tinctures of Feilds by several Shapes and Forms.

3. THERE are several other partitions of Feilds, by which the Coat of Arms is Blazoned, but in a more obscure way: I mean, the division of the Feild having no denomination from any of the ordinaries, nor any of their derivatives; but by proper terms of their own: And others again have a name from the Ordinaries, whose form they do represent. And lastly there are others which have their abstractions from Ordinaries, yet lose their nature and names: examples of each in their places.

XIX. He bearetb **Quarterly per Fesse Escartelee** Argent and Purpure. Some term it quarterly with one Battlement per Fesse: The French, **Escarterly** Argent and Gules with a **Cop** in the middle, one in the other.

And is Born by the name of *Van Clux* of *Germany*.

The same G. and A is born by Trachten.

XX. He bearetb, **Party per Pale Inclave,** Argent and Vert; or **per Clove paleways** Argent, and Vert. And after others per Pale Inclave sinister, thereby shewing the side into which the Inclave was. Again I find it thus Blazoned Argent, two **Cantons Sinister** Vert. because two **Cantons** on that side, must be placed in the chief & base Corners. this is bornby the name of *Clavelland*

G the Inclave to the dexte A born by *Sumiswalde* and *Dennesflen*.

A the like G born by *Aewang*.

G the Inclaver to the Sinister A by the name of *Buttrich* and *Pelkh fen*

A the like B the Town of *Villigens* Coat in *Germany*.

XXI. He bearet **Party per Pale, double bevilled,** Argent and Azure. Rather **treble Bevilled,** being drawn **Bevile** at both ends and middle. See *chap.* 3 *numb.* 82 and this *chap. num* 62. This born by the name of *Swivell*

The like A and G born by *Van Ortell*

XXII. He bearetb Vert, **two Squires contrary Squared in Fesse,** and **conjoyned** to the sides of the **Escutcheon.** Or *Fern pag.* 198 terms these, two **Escutcheons,** or **Pointeels, contrary placed,** and **conjoyned** to the **Dexter side** and **chief;** and the **Sinister side,** and **base; meeting in Fesse.** By the name of *Squirvie*.

A the like G Born by *Van Tale*, in *Brunswick*.

XXIII. He bearetb **Party per Cheveron Gady,** Argent and Gules, **masoned** of the first. Some term this a **party per Fesse, double Escartelee.** Others **per Fesse** with one **Battlement, Imbattled.** Born by the name of *Charvall*. See *chap.* 9 *numb.* 78.

The like B and A Masoned S Born by *Rie'en*.

The like A and V Born by *Van Swarthen-stein*.

Party per Fesse Imbattled G and A Masoned S by *Schneeis*.

XXIV. He bearetb **Party per Fesse indented into** 3 **points Trefoiled,** Or and V After the same manner you will find Coates born, with one Leaf, and several other things, which are thus to be termed, as this example manifests, See *numb.* 26 & 64 see *chap.* 9 *numb.* 90 This is born by the nam of *Van Trackwith*.

Per bend Waveyed and Counter Ttrefoiled O and B born by *Rump*.

Per Fesse indented with three Trefoils fixed to the points Counterchanged A and B Born by *Hillinger*.

XXV. He beareth Gules, per **Fesse pointed,** with a **Ball conjoyned** thereunto, Argent. I have seen this teemed, per **Fesse Archee reversed,** in the middle a **Pomell** (**Ball or Globe**) Gules and Argent. Also a **point Champaine, in Fesse pomelled.** Born by the name of *Blankenstaine*. See *chap.* 9 *numb.* 59.

The like partion with a Cross patee G and A in base a Rose, is born by *Peysing*.

Parted, per point pointed, with an **Heart** reversed there on A and G by the name of *Hermmansdorf*, and by *Hermsdorf*.

XXVI. He bearetb **parted per Fesse waved,** with 3 **Foils (or Leaves) contrary poised** Argent & Vert. as many leaves as there is, one is ever set opposite to the other in all these, kind of pertitions. Others Blazon it per Fesse **nebulee** or three. *numb.* 28 and *chap.* 9 *numb.* 117. by the name of *Crumpach*.

The like A and G. is born by *Wenier'erg*. And also *Hermansdorf*.

XXVII. He bearetb **party per bend sinister in Alave** (a term from *Ala, viz.* in form of a wing) Or and Purple. The *French part* 3 *fol.* 19 term it **per bend Cut, Sliced, or nocked into Ronds,** except the top. Also it is Blazoned, per **bend Bande.** And is born by the name of *Bergon*.

The like O and B by the name of *Warnier*.

XXVIII. He bearetb **Party per bend in form of two Round pointed Leaves,** Or and Azure; or else with two **Foiles contrary coyned,** (or set one against the other) others **per bend** with two **Foiles counterposed.** See *chap.* 9 *numb.* 117. Borne by the name of *Pointalshaw*. And G and A born by *Ordtlieb*.

XXIX. He bearetb **party per bend Sinister,** in form of two **Lions mouths,** holding one the other, Argent, and Gules. By the name of *Shagley* or *Schangley*. The like G and A is born by *Helchner*.

XXX. He bearth Vert, a **Demy Cressant reversed and conjoyned** to the **Dexter base,** Argent. I have seen a Coat that the **round** in the middle or hallow of the Cressant is of a contrary colour of the Feild, and they Blazon it **Trivarted** in form of a **demy Cressant fixed in sinister base:** Vert, Argent and Gules. The first born by *Van Brandeck*.

The latter by *Elverfeild*: And B the like O by *Lindeck zur Ligana*.

XXXI. He bearetb Or, a **Pile of three points reflected** to the **Sinister side,** and fixed in **Base,** Gules. Otherwise thus, a **Pile of three points reversed,** and **bowed** to the **Sinister** side. This is born by the name of *Filesheim*

G the sams A is born by *Schinkey*.

XXXII. He bearetb Argent, a **Pile invecked** on one side, and **ingrailed** on the other, **imbowed,** Azure. This is of some termed, a **Serpents tasse, Enraged,** issue-

ing

ing out of **Chief.** By the name of *Eberbach.*

O the like issueing from the Sinister chief and side G is born by *Van Rordorf.*

XXXIII. He beareth, **Party per pale,** Vert and Argent, **two Piles triple pointed, Bowed and Counterposed, pale wise, Counterchanged.** Some terms the, Feild **per pale** &c. With two **triple Piles, treversed,** one to the **Sinister,** the other to the **Dexter, Counterchanged.** others term them two **triple Piles Counter-bowed** and **fixed** to the **Line of division palewayes**; the higher **pointing** to the **Sinister,** the other to the **Dexter sides** to the **Escochion.** Other will have it to be **double,** or **Counter-escarteled,** each having three **Indents** (or **dents** or **dentells**) the upper into the **Sinister** &c. Others again will Blazon them two **Gonfanons** (or **penons**) of three **points contrary posed,** as these are **palewise,** so they are **Bendwise,** and born Fesswise.

A two such counterposed, the higher to the Sinister G. in the first and last quarter of the Escochion a Spurr rowell of the Second. By the name *Senfetell.*

Tinctures of Feilds by Abatements.

4 WE come now to the Tinctures or Partitions of Feilds, which are caused through Abatements. Now an Abatement is, an accidental mark added, or annexed to a Coate, by reason of some dishonourable, or ungentle Act; whereby the dignity of the Coate is abased, and are generally termed Abatements of honour.

XXXIV. He beareth Argent, a **Point Dexter** Azure, of some called a **point Dexter parted.**

XXXV. He beareth Azure, a **Point sinister** Or. These **points** are usually set in any of the four **points,** (or corners of the **Escochion,** from whence they have their denomination of a **point,** from the place which they occupy.

XXXVI. He beareth Gules, two **points Sinister** and **dexter base Indented** Argent. By the name of *Crooked.*

XXXVII. He beareth Or, **diapered a pointed** Azure; if it be in the **base point,** it needs no other addition. Yet I have seen this termed, a **base point,** or a **point in base parted,** a **plain point,** and a **point in base**: *Leigh pag.* 79 80 calls it **party per bast Barre.** And *Ferne pag.* 183 177 termes it a **base.** This **point** is composed, of all the **crooked Lines,** as the Ordinaries are: and so are these other Abatements following.

XXXVIII. He beareth Argent, a **point pointed** Vert. *Leigh* termes this a **base point pointed,** though others call it a **point in point.** This is removed to any side of the **Escochion,** & then it is termed a **point in Point dexter, or Sinister,** according as it is. See *chap.* 3 *numb.* 103 and *chap.* 9 *numb.* 64. This is born by the name of *Frimenclogh.*

O a point in point, extending to the chief. B born by *Waldenwarth.*

XXXIX. He beareth Argent, a **Point Pointed reversed** Gules. It is here termed **reversed,** because its proper place is ever in **base,** Born by the name of *Van Curneg* or *Kurneck.*

XL. He beareth **Party per Pale in Point,** Argent, Or, and Gules. Others term it, **per pale** Argent and Or, a **point pointed** Azure; and so *Leigh pag.* 35 hath it. Others term it **party per Pale with Gyron in base.** This is born by the name of *Trifeild.*

XLI. He beareth, **party per Paule** Argent, Gules and Or. This is thus Blazoned, as from the form of the Paule, of which you may see more in the Section of Pales. *chap.* 3 *numb.* 60. But I think it may more properly be termed **party per pale,** Gules and Or. a **point pointed, reversed,** Argent, or a **Point in chief reversed.** Born by the name of *Goltaxt.*

XLII. He beareth, **Party per Pale and point,** Argent Or and Azure. By the name of *Fierer.*

G A and S the like is born by *Panwith.*

A G and B the like is Born by *Van Westersleten.* See *chap.* 9 *numb.* 75.

Per pale and Fesse B A and O born by *Hinwill.*

XLIII. He beareth Aznre, a **Goar dexter** Argent. These are removed, to either side, so that you must name that side which it is on.

XLIV. He beareth Or, a **Goare Sinister** Purpure. This is like the **Point pointed,** set in the **Base sinister corner.** But this is the place of the **Goare,** it never altereth to any place, but the sides: And is drawn from either **dexter or sinister chief,** to the middle of the **Base,** and **Pointed.** yet I have seen its form, sometimes set **Fesse wise,** as *numb.* 25 and *chap.* 9 *numb.* 65.

XLV. He beareth Argent, a **Gusset sinister,** Vert. If there be but one in the Coate, then you shall name the side it stands on, whether **Dexter or Sinister.**

XLVI. He beareth Azure, two **Gussets** Argent. These are born also according to the tract of Lines. This is born by the name of *Treslan.*

S two such A born by *Coningham.* Some term this a chief Couped bevile, and a pale conjoyned.

XLVII. He beareth Gules, a **side sinister** Or. The *French* term this, either a **dexter,** or a **sinister,** according to the side it is on. They are not to exceed the sixt part of the Feild.

XLVIII. He beareth Argent, a **dexter** and **sinister side** Purpure. These are born both **dexter** and **sinister,** and by pairs, as in this **Escochion**: and formed according to the several tracts of Lines formerly delivered. They are termed also **two sides,** and of some **two sides dexter** and **sinister.** They are born by the name of *Sidleing* Other charges are often born between them.

XLIX. He beareth Or, a **point Champion,** Gules. Of some termed, a **Point Champaine,** which termes are proper to all the **points** aforesaid, if they be **arched** thus. The **point Chapourn** or **Champaine** is also **reversed,** and set in any of the four **Points** of the **Escochion,** where they are termed **Shapourner** or **Champaine,** only; as in the next examples and *chap.* 3 *numb.* 48 114.

L. He

L. He beareth Argent, **two points dexter** and **Sinister convered, or Shapourned**, Gules; some term them in **dexter and sinister chief**; but they ever are placed in the corner **points**, if otherwise they loose their names,

LI. He beareth Argent, **two points Shapourned**, or **convered**, Azure. Here I say not (**in Base**) by reason, it is the proper place for them, as before is shewed *numb.* 37 and 49

LII. He beareth Gules, **two points dexter**, and **Sister ingraled**, Argent. And a **point pointed envecked**, Or. This may also be Blazoned, a **point pointed envecked**, between two **Dexter**, and **Sinister, endented**. This is good, but if the Feild be charged, then I hold the first Blazon to be the better. As for example, if the Feild had a **Cheveron** charged, then I would say: Gules on a **Cheveron**, Argent. Three **Partletts** of the first between **two points dexter**, and **sinister engraled**, and **a point pointed envecked** Or. This is born by the name of *Parpoint*.

LIII. He beareth **three Points**, Or; Azure, and Argent. This is an old Blazon for a Coate thus divided into three, four or five, parts: But then each must be of a several, and distinct, contrary colour, else this may be better termed, **party per Fesse** Or, and Argent; a **Fesse** Azure. This is Born by the name of *Van Skriggle*. The like A G and B is Born by *Van Fellits*.

Three points parted per pale, connterchanged, Born by *Garren* of *Gwalchmai* a *Welsh* family.

S G and A in the points is Born by *Reutingen*,

The lik G A and B is Born by *Enmerstoffen*.

Tinctures of Feilds from Ordinaries.

5. THERE are such partitions of Feilds, which have no Tincture thereof predominate in them, by way of dividing the Feild into even parts, so that one colour hath nor a greater share then an other, or surmount, one an other, & this is occasioned through **counterchanging** & **Transmutation**. as in example.

Per Pile.

LIV. He beareth, **party per Pile in Base**, Azure, and Or. This you may see comes down to the **Fesse part**, (or there about) of the **Escochion**, before it parts the Feild, which is the cause it is termed a **parting in Base**, the **Chief** beingvoid, haveing no part therein contained. This is of some Blazoned **two Points in Base parted**, or **Per Cheveron reversed**. This is born by the name of *Bastwell*.

LV. He beareth **Party Per Pyle Traverse**, Argent and Vert. This Pertition if it did not begin at the **Dexter Chefe Point**, and **dexter Base**, & so run a long to the **fesse Point** on the **sinister side**, I should not take is to be a division of the Feild, but a **Pile traversed**, or a **Pile in fesse**. Born by the name of *Geraf*.

G the like A Born by *Domantz*: and charged with a Rose, is the Coate of *Volcker*.

LVI. He beareth **party per Pyle transposed**, (or **reversed**) Or, and Azure. *Ferne pag.* 199 Blazons it, a **point** Azure, and **two points** Or: Others term it **party per Pile, point in Chief**, Born by the name of *Service*.

A the like O Born by *Van Raitenbuch*.

LVII. He Argent, a **Pile reversed Goutee**, Purpure. The *French* term it, **Chappe arondy in point**: a **Pile reversed rounded in Base**. it is also Blazoned a **Pile Shapourned**, (or **Champained**) **reversed** by the the name of *Gearing*.

G the like A Born by *Van Tannberg*.

LVIII. He beareth **party per Bend in point** to the **Sinister**,) or **per Bend reversed**) Azure and Or. Others **per Bend Escartelee pointed**, or **per Bend** with one **Indent pointing** to the **Sinister side**. by the name of *Bourcklard*

The like A and G Born by *Van Hernburg*, also by *Kunigell*.

The like A and B by *Van Hernburg*.

LIX. He beareth **party per Pale** Or and Purpure, a **Pile reversed Counter-changed**. *Morgan lib.* 2 *fol.* 52 Blazons this **Chappe** Or and Gules, **Counter-changed**, which is after the *Frech part* 1 *fol.* 10. who term a **Pile Chappe**. But this is best Blazoned **per Pale** and **Pile**, Or and Pupure. This is Born by the name of *Paline*.

The like S and A is born by *Van Weydegh*.

The like B and A by the name of *Raumumb*.

LX. He beareth Argent, a **point pointed**, and **two points dexter, and Sinister, removed**, Gules. Some term them **Cooped**, or **removed** from, or out of the **Chief**. Others Gules, a **Cheveron** and **Chief conjoyned**, Argent. By the name of *Van Windischgratz*.

Per Pale.

LXI. He beareth **party per Pale**, Gules and Argent. This pertition deriveth, his name from the pale which is an ordinary that Stricketh throuh the middle of the **Escochion**, from top to bottom, and this parting being so named, as **party per pale**, yet is not a Pale: aud as this goeth with a right Straight line; so you shall have them parted, with the several sorts of Bouched, Crooked and accute lines, as formerly shewed. *Upton* termes these partitions **Plaine Parted** Gules and Argent: or **Parted Per long**, else **Parted in lenght**.

S and O per Pale Born by *Fairly*. and also by *Farele*.

The some G and O By the name of *Peche*.

A and G per Pale Born by *Troppen*.

O and G per Pale Born by *Lissnick*.

S and A by *Lynckhoffer* of *Bavaria*.

B and A per Pale Born by the name of *Michelsbeck*.

LXII He

LXII. He beareth **party per Pale double Bevileb**, Azure and Or. *Gwilliams, fol.* 73. terms it only **Bevile**, then it ought to have been in the middle, and not at both ende, *chap.* 3. *numb.* 82. This is born by the name of *Althan.*

LXIII. He beareth **Paly of six**, Vert and Argent: or after some **party per Pale of six pieces.** This is another partition per Pale that hath no colour predominate, that is beginning with one, and ending with another Colour or Mettle. Now as this is divided into six, so you shall have them both less and more, as Pally of 4, 6, 8, 10, 12, *&c.* and as they are here composed of strcight Lines, so you shall find them made of the several sorts of Lines before said; so that you must be careful to express both the number of Partions, and the form of the Line that they are framed with. This is born by the name of *Langley.*

A and G Paly of 6. By the name of *Fitznowell*, and *Barescroft.*

O and G Paly of 8. By *Ynyr* of *Yale.* Also the King of *Arragon.*

A and G Paly of 8. Born by *Griffith Malior*, with a Lion rampant over all. S.

A and B Paly of 6. Born by *Strelley.*

G and Er: Paly of 6. Born by *Germayn.*

LXIV. He beareth **Pally of six**, Vert and Or, **parted per Fesse, counterchanged.** Others thus, **Pally of six, parted per Fesse**, Vert and Or. And **Pally per Fesse, counter-paly of six.** This is born by the name of *Fitzing*, a *German.*

The *French* Blazon it Pally counter-pally, And is born by *Fergus*, one of the Knights of the round Table.

LXV. He beareth **Pally of six, parted per Chief**, Argent and Vert, **counterchanged.** The Chief being charged is thus Blazoned; **Party per Pale of six, on a Chief of the Field, as many roundlets counterchanged.** By the name of *Conworth.*

The like A and G six Cressants counterchanged. Born by *Sileto* of *Venice.*

LXVI. He beareth **Pally of six, parted per Salter, counterchanged**, Argent and Sable. This is born by the name of *Van Hawson.*

LXVII. He beareth **Parted per pale of six, Bevile**, Or and Azure. Others **Paly of six Angled, or Rectangled**, and because the Rect Angles run Bendwise Sinister, for either the one or the other way, they must go in Pally; it is therefore by some Blazoned rect-angled in Bend Sinister, or rect-angled Sinisterwise. Born by *Lozenstein.*

A and B the like. Born by *Postingworth.*

Per Fesse and Barry.

LXVIII. He beareth **parted per Fesse**, Argent and Azure. Some will name the Colours first, thus, Argent and Azure party per Fesse.

☞ You are to take notice that in the Blazoning of these or the like, to name that Colour first that occupieth the Chief part of the Escochion; and if the Chief be parted as the partition per Pale, then you must name that first, as in the Dexter Chief Point. Born by the name of *Devon.*

The like O and B. Born by *Susto* or *Zuston* of *Venice.*

Per Fesse Indented B and A. Born by *Wormwood.*

G and Er. per Fesse, a File of five points A. Born by *Betfield.*

A and B per Fesse. Born by *Collingbach.*

O and S per Fesse. By the name of *Marspecken.*

LXIX. He beareth **Barry of six**, Or and Vert. This partition consisting of more than two divisions, hath its denomination from the Barr, being called **Barry**, (and not as in the other partitions parted **per Barr**, by reason Barrs are of a double number, and all the other Ordinaries single, *Boswell, pag.* 32. as from *Upton*, saith, That Coats Barryed, are most commonly born to the number of six or eight, but not above, for then (saith he) they are termed **Barrulettee.** But *Gwilliams, fol.* 373. holds no such rules for divisions or partitions of Fields; for in his Blazoning a Coat of twelve pieces, he terms it **Barry**, and not **Barruletty.** Barry ever consists of an even number.

O and B barry of six. By the name of *Constable.*

Of six Dauncett G and A by the name of *Todenham.*

Of six Nebulæ A and S and also O and S Born by the name of *Blunt.*

Barry of six counter Battelled A and G. Born by *Barre.*

Of 10 A and S. By the name of *Barrall.*

Of 12 A and G. By *Manwaring* of *Pezer. Gwilliams*, 373.

LXX. He beareth **party per Fesse wavey**, Argent, and **Barry of four, undee**, Azure and Or. By the name of *Barle.* This parting per Fesse *Upton* terms partie **Traverse.**

LXXI. He beareth **party per Fesse**, and a **Pale Ermyne** and Vert. This may be termed also **per Fesse Inclave in Base.** See *numb.* 20. Born by the name of *Lowen.*

LXXII. He beareth **party per Fesse Angled**, Gules and Vert. else **party per Fesse rectangled.** By the name of *Angell.* The same G and A is born by *Finsterloe.*

A and B per Fesse dexter rectangled. Born by *Van Leubrechting.*

The like A and G born by *Van Fronberg.*

The like S and A by *Van Langeneck.*

A and G the higher Angle on the Dexter part, is the Coat of *Van Lindt*, whence some have taken occasion from the uppermost Angle, to term this partition per Fesse Angled from the Sinister, *&c.*

LXXIII. He beareth **party per Fesse, Bevile**, Or and Azure. By the name of *Turber.* This also is observed by most, to mention what side the higher acute Angle doth proceed from, as thus, per Fesse **Dexter Bevileb**, then the Line proceeding from the Dexter side is the highest: When it is per Fesse **Sinister Bevileb**, then the Line on the Sinister side is the higher.

LXXIV. He beareth **party per Fesse Indented into three points**, at each **a Cross Patee counterchanged.** This is by *Ferne page* 299. termed, **Emanuchee** of Purpure and Or. Others term it per Fesse **Indented of three**; or having 3 Dents or Dentells, *chap.* 8. *numb.* 95. This is born by the name of *Elbell.* Some Blazon it Indented of three points, one to Chief, and two to Base, else the two points might be drawn uppermost, and the single point below.

The like with Roses on the points B and A is born by *Van Rheling*, and *Reblinger.*

The like with Flower de lis tops G and A is born by *Reichell.*

LXXV. He beareth **party per Fesse, the chief part quarterly Indented in the same**, Or, Ermyne and Argent, in Base two **squires** Sable; but it is best Blazoned **quarterly Indented per Fesse** (or Fesse ways) Or and Ermyne; and **parted per Fesse**, Argent. The naming of the Fesse twice (being in Coats of this and the like nature) is no bad Blazoning. This is born by the name of *Barley.* The **Squires** are no other than Cantons voided.

LXXVI. He beareth **Barry of Four**, Or and Azure, a **Pile counterchanged.** Some term it **Barry of four**, and **party per Pile (counterchanged**, Or and Azure; either of which will pass for good Blazoning; and is born by the name of *Van Tessenberg.*

LXXVII. He beareth **Barry of six**, Gules and Argent, **party per Pale, and per Cheveron counterchanged.** Others, as I said before, will name the colours last; as **Barry of six parted per Pale and Cheveron counterchanged**, Gules and Argent. By the name of *Wichley.*

LXXVIII. He beareth **triparted Barwise, each Indented per Fesse**, Argent and Vert. Some term it **point in point Indented**, but that I have shewed to the contrary in the Chief of this nature, *chap.* 3. *numb.* 47. Some Blazon this **two Barrs Indented in the lower side, with a Chief of the same.** By the name of *Dentall.*

Barry of 4 A and B each Imbattled per Fesse, counterchanged. By the name of *Marschalt Van Oberadorf.*

LXXIX. He beareth **Barry of six Nuee (or goared, or trifole Archee)** Or and Purpure. The *French* term it **Tranche nuage**, or **Nuee**: and **Bretteffe of six pieces**, and **Barry Arondies.** By the name of *Trauwsher.*

LXXX. He beareth Vert, **in Fesse, four Piles couped, transposed (or reversed) in Base two Piles of the same**, Argent. Some Blazon it **four Piles in Chief transposed, and two issuing out of Base.** This is the Coat of *Figolwinder*, of the Kingdom of *Polonia.*

Party per Fesse A and G 3 Piles couped and transposed in Fesse B born by *Bredell.*

A 3 Piles reversed, on each point a Bird standing B. By the name of *Waldner van Frundstein.*

Per Bend.

LXXXI. He beareth **party per Bend**, Argent and Vert: And sometimes you shall find this kind of partition set on the left side of the Escochion, which is then Blazoned, **parted per Bend Sinister**; and likewise composed of the several sorts of Lines, as is before shewed. This belongs to the Family of *Probline.* The *French* call this *Tranche.*

O and V per Bend, is born by the name of *Hawley.*

A and G is a part of the Coat belonging to *Mac Williams.*

S and O per Bend Sinister, born by *Franceis.*

Er. and Ers Sinister, a Lion rampant O born by *Tudor Trevour.*

LXXXII. He beareth **Bendy of eight**, Or and Gules. In the Blazoning of this Coat, it may be disputed what Colour or Metal is first to be named; *Guillians, fol.* 366. saith, That usually they begin in the Chief, as in the foresaid example.

☞ But if it be diversely parted as in this Coat, then to begin in the Dexter Corner, which is ever held to be the most honourable place. But I judg it, in this Coat of Bendy (if it exceed the number of six) to be as an indifferent thing, and it may be in the Blazoners choise, whether he will name Colour or Mettle first: But if the Chief be wholly or in part unparted, as in Barry Cheveronny, Quarterly, Gyrony, *&c.* Or if the Chief be parted, and the Dexter side without lines, as in Pally, *&c.* Then to name that Colour or Mettle first, which occupieth the Chief or Dexter Chief, or the Dexter side, is very requisite. This is born by the name of *Bishopsdale.*

G and Er. Bendy of 6. Born by *Coykin.*

O and B of 10. Born by *Mountfort.*

A and B of 6 Bendy by the name of *Playters.*

LXXXIII. He beareth **triparted in Bend**, Vert, Argent, and Sable. It is so blazoned by *Ferne, pag.* 185. and cannot be taken for a Bend (being too large) but a partition of so many parts; otherwise if it were but of two colours, it might be Blazoned Argent, 2 points Dexter and Sinister Base, Vert. See *numb.* 88. This is born by the name of *Van Burghulme.*

Triparted in Bend Sinister A G and S. is on an Escochion of Pretence, belonging to the Coats of the Duke of *Finland.*

The like O G and B with a Greyhound currant in Fesse A is born by *Rubatsch.*

The like G A and B is born by *Ergoltspach.*

LXXXIV. He beareth **Bendy of six Enarchee** (or **Champaine**) Purpure and Argent. Born by the name of *Bombridge.*

LXXXV. He beareth **party per Bend Nuee**, Vert and Or. This is of some termed **Double Goared**, *&c.* See *numb.* 79. The *French* **Tranche en Nuage**, and **Arondies** Dexter per Bend. By the name of *Gautimor.*

B and O born by *Van Heynspach.*

A and

A and G the like. Born by the name of *Wolkenstaine*.

LXXXVI. He beareth **Bendy of six goared**, Azure and Argent. The *French* term it, **Bendy Cheveronee of six pieces.** Bendy **Goaree** to the Sinister, to shew that the Goare points tend to that side which must be observed in this kind of Bearings, else a great absurdity may be committed; as these two last examples will manifest. This is born by *Havid van Weselheim*.

LXXXVII. He beareth **party per Bend Urde**, Gules and Or. By the name of *Jauffe wan Urdmay*.

☞ Note, There is difference between **Urde**, and **Urdee** or **Urdy**; the first being of a single number, the other signifies many: It is also Blazoned per Bend Champion to the Sinister.

LXXXVIII. He beareth Argent, **three Pellets, a point Sinister, and another in Dexter Base Ingrailed**, Azure: Or else thus, **two points Sinister and Dexter Base, or triparted in Bend Ingrailed.** See *numb.* 83. Born by *Fribeim*, a *German* Family.

LXXXIX. He beareth **Barry of six**, Or and Azure, **party per Pale indented, counterchanged.** Or thus, **Barry of six, parted per Pale Indented**, Or and Azure. By the name of *Changer*.

The like A and G born by *Peyto*.

XC. He beareth **party per Fesse**, Vert and Argent, **a Losenge in point counterchanged.** *Ferne pag.* 201. terms this, **per Fesse a point** Argent, and **two points** Vert; **as many in Base counterchanged.** Some as following his example, Blazon it **per Fesse**, Argent and Vert, **four points counterchanged.** The *French*, *part* 3. *fol.* 5. thus, **per Fesse two triangles counterchanged one of the other.** This is born by *Hinxley*, or *Hinchesley*. see *chap.* 9. *numb.* 100. The Latine Blazons it, *Arma Argentea auplicata de Nigro*: and the *French* say *Argent de coppe*, or cut about, Sable.

Per Cheveron.

XCI. He beareth **party per Cheveron**, Gules and Or. This is born by the name of *Estonber*.

S and A. Born by *Aston* of *Aston*, in *Cheshire*.

S and Er. per Cheveron, two Boars heads. By *Sandford* of *Sandford*.

Per Cheveron in Chief A and G. a chief of the second. Born by *Neydeck*.

XCII. He beareth party per **Cheveron Urde**, Argent and Azure. By the name of *Millerby*.

XCIII. He beareth **party per Pale, and engraled per Cheveron**, Or and Gules. Others term it thus, **per Pale**, Or and Gules; and **per Cheveron engraled counterchanged.** *Boswell*, *pag.* 71. Blazons it, **traversed in four, per pale and Cheveron.** By the name of *Owlerhead*.

XCIV. He beareth **Cheverony of Eight**, Argent and Vert. By the name of *Cheverony*.

Per Pale and Pile.

XCV. He beareth **party per Pile, and Cheveron**, Gules and Argent. Also **per Pile**, Gules and Argent, **per Cheveron counterchanged.** By the name of *Corvile*.

XCVI. He beareth **party per Pale and per Cheveron of six**, Gules and Or. By others he beareth **party per Pale, (or pally) of six**, Gules and Or, and **per Cheveron of the same, counterchanged.** By the name of *Spotworth*.

XCVII. He beareth **party per Pile**, Azure and Or. Some term it **per Pile in point**, but that is a needless expression, because partings ever run from side to side of the Escochion. This party per Pile may be charged (as saith *Leigh*, *pag.* 27.) but no other part of the Field, and it may be used as one only Coat. This is born by the name of *Febley*.

Party per Pale, and per Pile, A and G. Born by *Osterreicher*.

XCVIII. He beareth **Pily of six pieces traverse**, Argent and Purpure, *Gwilliams*, *fol.* 376. terms this **Barry Bendy of six pieces.** *Leigh*, *pag.* 91. gives an example of this kind of Bearing, and calls it **Barry Bendy**, but names not the pieces, because he saith they are ever to be eight; and so doth his Scholar *Boswell*. And *Upton*, *pag.* 102. (not considering it to be a partition derived from the Pile) gives it a better Blazoning, who calls it **Bendy Barried** (or **Barwise**) Argent and Gules. This is by some termed, **per Pale Indented, traverse the Escochion.** Also **per Pale Endented point in point.** If these Points had stood to the Chief and Base, your Blazon had been only **Pily of six**, but standing overthwart, you must express the traverse. The *French*, *part* 3. *fol.* 5. term it **party Emmanchee.** This is born by the name of *Sitchler*.

Pily of 4 G and A transverse in point. By the name of *Krachmar*, or *Van Crachmar*.

The like Pily of 5 B and A. By the name of *Van Wandersleben*. And also by *Selandersberg*.

The like Pily of 6. O and S. Born by *Mueter*.

The like Pily of 6. G and A. By the name of *Lewersdorf*.

XCIX. He beareth **Pily of eight, traverse in point to the Sinister Fesse**, Gules and Or. The term **traverse in point**, will suffice if it be on the Dexter side. This is born by the name of *Sidwell*.

The like A and G is born by *Cayarjiole*, or *Kaiserstul*.

C. He beareth **party per pale**, Or and Sable, with a Gyron Sinister in Fesse. Some name the Giron to be in Sinister Base. By the name of *Dramlinleigh*.

Per pale B and O a Gyron in Chief A. Born by *Dedge*.

Per Salter.

CI. He beareth **Party per Salter**, Azure and Argent. Some term this a **Gyron of four pieces**, all the four parts may be charged with any thing, either Quick or Dead, or any two parts of them; or with one entire thing over all the Field. This partition is likewise subject to the several sorts of Lines according to the foresaid Rules; but are never formed of two distinct Lines in one and the same Coat, that being only peculiar to quarterly bearings, or in such Coats by which two ordinaries are expressed, as *numb.* 93, 105, 106, 108. This is born by the name of *Higson.*

Er. and G per Salter. Born by the name of *Restwold.*

The same B and O is born by *Kall*, or *Call.* Also by *Pymsard.*

The same B and A a Salter G Born by *Gage.* Also by *Dermart.*

The same G and B was born by King *Athelstan.*

CII. He beareth **Party per pale, and Salter**, Or, and Gules. By the name of *Stile.*

CIII. He beareth **Party per Salter.** Argent and Azure, a **Salter counterchanged.** By the name of *Tomlinson.*

Per Cross or Quarterly.

CIV. He beareth **Quarterly**, Vert and Or. This is also termed **party per Crois**, *Sph. lib.* 1. *fol.* 9. 19. that is, when it consisteth either of Colour, Mettle or Furrs, without any other charge, *Grill. fol.* 364. But if it be charged upon, or on any, or all the quarters, then it is best blazoned quarterly; yet *Upton* holds no such rule, but in all his Blazonings terms it quarterly, whose Rule I chuse rather to follow. This is born by the name of *Verait.*

Er. and Chequie O and B quarterly. Born by *Gydethorpe.*

The like G and A Born by *Walleis.*

Quarterly G and Er. By *Stannope* of *Rampton.*

The like O and G a Bend S. Born by *Malbanck*, Baron of *Wich Malbanck.*

The like G and O in the first a Lion passant A. By *Massy*, Baron of *Dunham-Massy.*

CV. He beareth **quarterly endented per Fesse**, Vert and Argent. Born by *Whitelberg.*

The like O and B. Born by *Parrott* and *Baston.*

The like G and O. Born by *Bromley* of *Hampton.*

The like O and G by *Laton* or *Leighton.*

The like S and A by *Bassy.*

CVI. He beareth **quarterly Endented per pale**, Sable and Or. And so in several Coats you will find the one of the partitioned scores according to the other prescribed Lines for the composing of Ordinaries. This is born by the name of *Gunders.*

The like O and B belongs to the Coat of *Audeley.*

The like O and G by *Danco.*

CVII. He beareth Argent, a **Cross Parted**, Gules. See more of this in Crosses, *cap.* 5. *numb.* 13. Some term this, parted into Nine equal Divisions, in which if the Cross part be charged, it containeth but four things, but if on the Field, the Charge will be five, by which numbers (if either charged) you may understand whether the Field or Cross is occupied, without mentioning the same. For this Coat I have seldom seen born, but either the one, or other, or both, have been charged with something or other.

CVIII. He beareth quarterly, **party per pale Endented**, Gules and Argent; and Azure, a **Fesse** Or. The like you shall find endented (or with other lines) per Fesse, per Cheveron, per Salter, *&c.* And that both in the first or second quarters; if the second quarter had had the partition in, then you should have named the colour of the first before any mention were made of the second quarter as thus: **quarterly** Azure, and **party per pale Indented**, Gules and Argent. See *chap.* 8. *numb.* 117. This is born by the name of *Van Kitzingball.*

CIX. He beareth **quarterly** Vert and Or; a **Fesse and Bordere counterchanged of the Field.** *Ferne, pag.* 202. Blazons it thus **quarterly**, V and O. a **Fesse counterquartered within a Bordure counterchanged every one of the other.** And the *French*, *part* 3. *fol.* 21. say **quartered**, the first and fourth Azure, in the Fesse Or, and in the Bordure the same; the second and third of Or, the Fesse Azure, and the Bordure of the same. This is born by the name of *Don Pressignies Verillo.*

CX. He beareth **parted per Fesse**, Azure and Argent, **two Bordures counterchanged.** Others term it **per Fesse** Azure and Argent, **each Bordured counterchanged.** This is born by the name of *Van Liping.*

The like G and A is the Town Coat of *Luberg.* Also the name *Solothurn.*

The like A and S is the Town of *Ulme.*

After the same manner the *German* and *Dutch* bear Coats, thus bordured both per Bend and per Pale; as Azure and Argent per Bend each bordured counterchanged. Born by *Zurich.*

Azure and Argent per Pale, each Bordured counterchanged. By the name of *Lucern.*

Tinctures of Fields from Ordinaries obscure.

HAVING given examples of Coats abstracted from Ordinaries by a manifest Demonstration; now it followeth in Order to speak of such **Tinctures** of Fields as have their derivation from the said Ordinaries, but in a more dark and obscure way, as in these and the like examples.

CXI. He beareth **Paly Bendy**, Pearl and Ruby. Here you may see this Coat is composed of the Lines of

of two kinds of Ordinaries commixt, to wit, of Pales and Bends, born overthwart the other, for which cause they are termed **Paly-Bendy,** a term not unfitly appropriated to it. *Boswell, pag.* 37. Blazons it **Fusilly-Bendy:** And *Morgan, lib.* 1. *fol.* 9. **Bendy Losengie,** but I suppose they mean it by the example following, *numb.* 114. which is the true Losengie or Fusilly Bendy, and not this. This Coat is Born by the name of *Zuzarg*, of *Germany*.

The like A and B. Born by *Bavaria*, Earl of *Leicester*.

Paly Bendy Sinister G and O. Born by *Salomon*, a *Venetian*.

Party per Pale, Paly Bendy B and O and G. Born by *Flitzing*. Some term this from the *French* **Tranche Traverse.**

CXII. He beareth **Barry Bendy,** Or and Azure. This consists of Barrs and Bends; and sometime you shall have the Bends to be Sinister, which you must mention in your Blazon thus, **Barry Bendy Sinister.** *Leigh, pag.* 91. gives an example of a Coat which he terms **Barry Bendy,** which is in the draught **Pily Bendy,** which example I have before shewed, *numb.* 98. under the term of **Pily of six traverse,** which is by divers Heraulds thought to be better Blazoned so than by **Barry Bendy.** Mr. *Morgan, lib.* 1. *fol.* 9. terms this **Barry Bendy Losengie,** or **Bendy Losengie.** This is born by the name of *Barben* of *Venice*. These kind of Bearings are rarely used with us, therefore few examples can be produced. The *French* term this **Tranche Traverse.** This is born by the name of *Sarratt*.

G a Fesse Barry Bendy A and B is born by *Nusberg*.

CXIII. He beareth **Losengie** (or **Fusilly**) Argent and Vert. This is not derived from any ordinary, but is abstracted from a common Charge, as the Fusill or Losenge, which being born all over the Field, is termed Losengie, or Fusilly; that is to say Losenge-ways, Fusill-ways, *&c.* as this is all over the Field, so it, (with the two foregoing Coats) are often born upon the other honourable Ordinaries, which are likewise thus to be termed; as a Bend Fusilly, a Cheveron Losengie and the like.

☞ In the blazoning of these, because there is no certain Colour or Mettle, which occupieth the Chief, therefore the Mettle is always to be named first. *Ferne, pag.* 195. terms this **Mascule, and a Field of Mascles.** If termed from an Ordinary, say **Saltery,** or **Bendy Dexter and Sinister counterchanged.**

CXIV. He beareth **Losengy Bendy** (or **Fusily Bendy**) Or and Gules: So termed because they ly with the Points Bendwise; and as these are drawn Dexter Bendwise so you shall find them (especially in *French* Coats) bending to the Sinister side, which you must term **Losengy Bendy Sinister.** This Coat is often drawn more numerous in the Losengy Bendy. This is born by the name of *Martono* of *Venice*.

The same A and B a Chief G. Born by *Puntzinger*.

CXV. He beareth **Barry of six point in point, endented and counterchanged,** Or and Vert. This I find also Blazoned, **Barry Indented one into the other.** And **Barry Bendy Losengie counterchanged.** There is no doubt but one Coat of Arms may receive two or three, or more ways of Blazon, and yet all good. *Morgan, lib.* 1. *fol.* 9. terms it **Barry Losengie counterchanged,** which is also very proper: And the *French, fol.* 151. term it **triangled, counter-triangled of so many pieces: and Triangles of** Or and Vert: See another kind of Bearing like this, yet different in the Blazon, *cap.* 9. *numb.* 112. This is a *Dutch* Coat born by the name of *Kinsparg all*.

The same A and S is born by the name of *Gise*.

CXVI. He beareth **Masculy,** Argent and Vert. *Ferne pag.* 195. terms Losengie by the name of **Masculy;** but this is the right manner of Mascule-wayes, which is, as if it were Losengie, each charged in the middle with a square piece Losenge-wise, of the contrary colour as you see in this example; for it is ever the property of the Mascule to be voided. See it born otherwise with the points Bendwise, *cap.* 9. *numb.* 118. This is in the Church-Window of *Hartlebury* in *Worcestershire*, from whence I tricked the same.

From Fusils, Mascles and Losenges, when born all over the Field, they are termed in Blazon, Fusily, Losengy, Masculy, that is Fusil-wise, Losenge-wise, Mascule-wayes; which bearings are often found charged.

CXVII. He beareth **Barry Nebulee** (or **Nebulated,** Or and Azure. Some term it of six pieces, but when the whole Field is so occupied, I think it needless to express the number of Barrs. Others Blazon it **Nebule counter-Nebulee;** and **Nebulee in point.** This is born by the name of *Cloudley*.

The like O and G born by *Lovell*.

The like O and S born by *Blount*.

The like B and A on a Chief O a Lion rampant issuant S Born by the name of *Rottelu*.

CXVIII. He beareth Argent, **an Orle of Pellets chained, all fired to another in Fesse Gyron-wise.** This is born by the name of *Nevaire*. This is generally termed the *Navarre* Knot, being the Coat of that Kingdom; thus I have seen it drawn of old, but now it is otherwise, as you may see *chap.* 9. *numb.* 32. 33.

CXIX. He beareth **Gyronny of four Champaine** (or **enarched or flected**) Argent and Azure; or else thus, **quarterly enarched, or parted in four, flected.** Born by the name of *Crookshaw*.

A and G the like. Born by *Braunecke*. Also by *Nagell*.

The like A and B is born by *Van Elershofen*, of *Franconia*.

CXX. He beareth **tiparted, flected, and reflected, conjoined in the Center** (**or Fesse point**) Argent, Or, and Azure. Born by the name of *Tribute*.

The like A G and S born by *Van Fridesheim*.

The like A G and B born by *Teuffel*.

TO

His Honored Friends,

William Ince, William Wilmes, and *John Anderson, Esquires.*

William Wilson, William Bennett, John Wilme, Isaac Swift, John Jones, William Selby, Gentlemen; And to each of them, Greeting.

HAving so rich a Gift bestowed on me from your habitable parts and quarters of our City, as my second Self; I cannot, but in remembrance thereof, and as a return of Thankfulness; first to God, then in perpetual memory of your Favours, Dedicate these few unpolished Lines (in the next place to you) and Subscribe my self your Devoted Servant,

Randle Holme.

CHAP. VIII.

1. THE next thing in order to be treated off, is the **File**, which by *Gwilliams, fol.* 35. is termed a modern difference for Coats of Families that are descended off and from the same Persons or Houses; yet I have seen them born for distinct Coats themselves, therefore rank them among the Ordinaries.

****

The File or Labell.

WHAT these **Files** are, it cannot be certainly avouched, for I find diverse Judgments therein, *Leigh, pag.* 107. and *Upton* calls them **Points**, such as Men in old time fastned their Garments withal. *Budæus* affirms them to be **Tongues**. *Alciatus* names them **Plaitez** or **Plaits** of **Garments**. *Bartolus* calls them **Candles**. Some others call them **Files**, and **Lambeaux** or **Labells**, Taggs that hang at Deeds and Writings to which Seals are fixed.

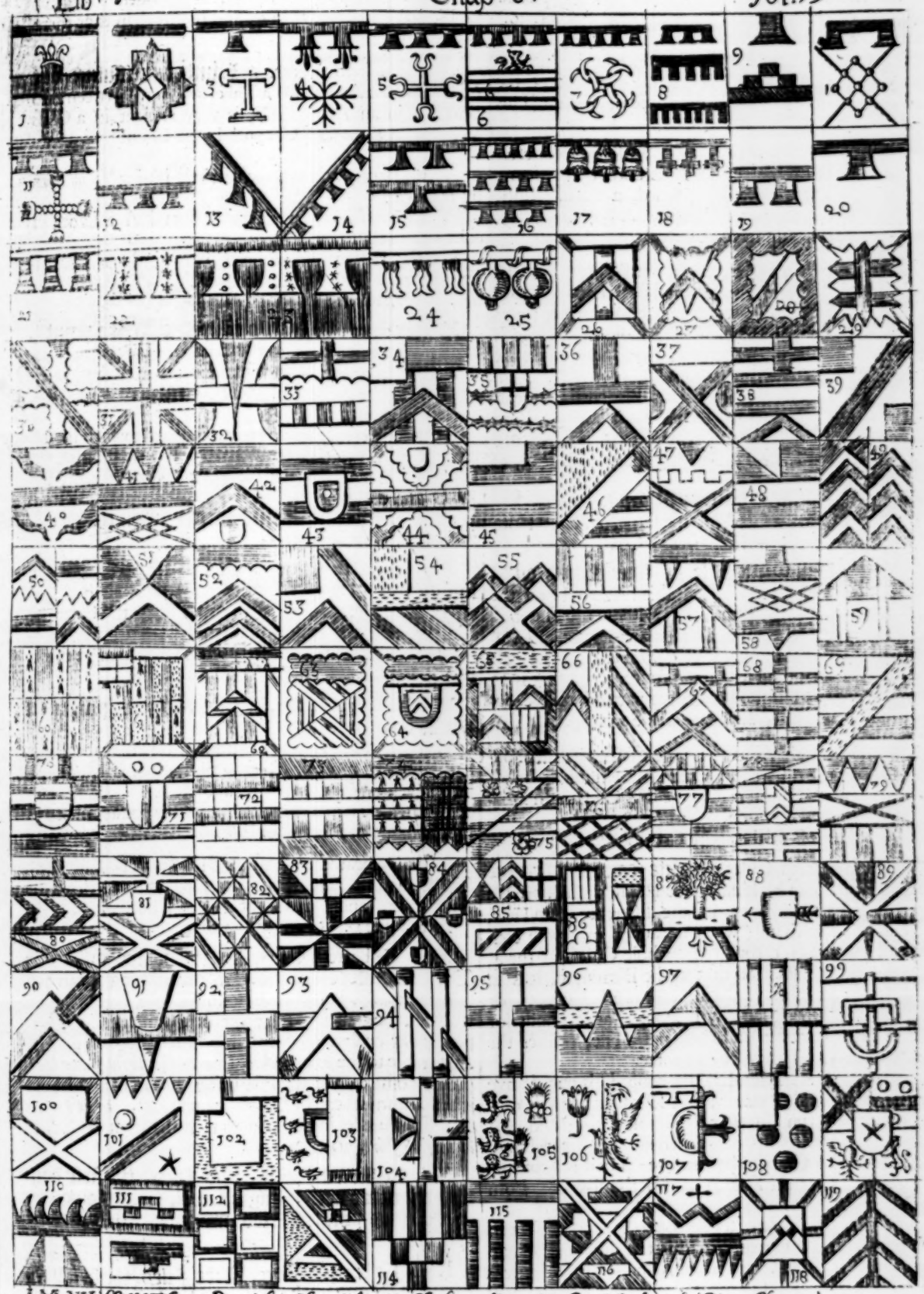
Of the diverse manner of bearing them, these few examples following will give light.

I. He beareth Argent, a **File**, or **Fillett**, Gules. The File is ever placed in the lower part of the Chief, or thereabouts; if it be set any where else, it is called by another name according to the diminutions of the Ordinaries beforesaid, but when it stands in this place, it is (as I may say) in its own Sphere.

In these first rank of squares, for want of other room are several bearings placed, which take as followeth. Sable, a Cross couped on the top and flurt O. Some term it a Cross, the top flurty. Born by the name of *Vanvaile*. This Cross should have had his place in *chap.* 5. after *numb.* 106.

II. He beareth Or, a **File couped**, Azure. A **Cross couped** (or a plain Cross) **fitched**, or fitched on all four, **pierced Losengeways**, Gules. See *numb.* 116. The Fitching of this Cross is not from the outsides, for then it would be a **Cross Urdee**, as *cap.* 5. *numb.* 80. but proceeds from the middle of the ends, as *numb.* 35. 36. This is born by *Crosslate*.

III. He beareth Argent, a **File with one Label**, Vert. The Labells, Lambeaux or Points, call them which you please, they are usually born in Coats even and odd to the number of Nine. Some term this a Label with one point; but *Leigh, pag.* 107. doth dissent from such a term, holding it better to be called a File of so many points



IM Will. Wilson: Regist: Consistorij Cestrensis: & Jo: Massy Armig: Generi:

points or Lambeaux, then a Labell of so many points. This form of Bearing is found (saith *Gwilliams, fol.* 36.) in the Chappel at the Castle of *Camphire* in *Zealand*.

The Cross in this quarter is thus Blazoned, Gules, a Cross Tau with the end **convexed**, mounted upon three **Gieces** or Steps Argent. By the name of *Glochen*. This place in *chap.* 5. after *numb.* 47.

IV. He beareth Or, a **File of two points**, Gules, each **Flurt in the foot**, Sable. This is born by the name of *Trybeck*. And the Cross is termed, a **Cross double tripartted**: of which see more, *chap.* 5. *numb.* 89. after which this should have followed.

V. He beareth Argent, a **File of three Labels** Azure. If the Field be Mettle, the File is a colour made according to the Heraulds pleasure, if a difference: and so on the contrary, if the Field be a Colour, the File is Mettle. This is a difference of an eldest Son, while the Father is living.

The Cross in this quarter is thus Blazoned, Argent, **a Cross, at each end an Horse-shoo**, Sable. Born by the name of *Eschenpach*. Some term it a **Cross ferrated**, from *Ferræus*, as being shod with Iron, as Horses are.

O the like S is born by *Truchses van Kulenthall*.

B the like O on a Chief of the same, a Staggs-Horn Fesse-wise S. is the Town of *Kirchens* Coat.

VI. He beareth Or, a **File of four Lambeaux**, Gules: To which I have added this Blazon, being the Coat of a very worthy Gentleman without the File, *viz.* Argent, a **Fesse Barry of ten** Or and Azure, a **Lion issuant** Sable. By the name of *Vanbrough*. If the Fesse thus divided, had the Field seen through it, then it is to be termed a **Fesse cinque parted**, or parted into five. See more of this **parting**, *chap.* 5. *numb.* 82. to 89.

VII. He beareth Argent, a **File of five points**, Sable. This is the difference of the Heir whilst his Grand-Father is alive: The other Charge is 4 Cressants fretted. See *lib.* 2. *cap.* 1. *numb.* 62.

A such a File B is the entire Coat of *Henlington*.

VIII. He beareth Gules, a **File couped of three points** Argents. This kind of File Heralds usually make in the chief part of a Coat, for the difference of an Heir, the Father being living; when it cannot otherwise conveniently be drawn through the whole Chief, as the 4, 5, and 6, examples. So that in the Blazoning, it is in your choise, whether you will term it a File couped or not: But it is more generally Blazoned (as it stands for the difference aforesaid) a Label, not a File, neither the points numbered if they be but three.

The second example of a File couped, is one of five points, which is thus made; if it so fall out that it cannot occupy or run through the whole Chief; and as I told you before, stands for a difference for the Heir apparent whilst his Grandfather is alive: Yet it is somtimes born in Coats, as per Fesse A and B the like G. Born by *Thalheim*.

The third example of a File couped, is one of seven points, which is thus made; and is the difference for an Heir while his Great Grandfather is sing; all which needs no other Blazoning, but to say; with the difference of the first House, the Father, Grand-father, or great Grandfather living. A File of nine points is, when the great Grand-fathers Father is alive, and higher than that there is not any.

IX. He beareth Argent, **a Lambeaux issuing out of Chief**, Azure. Such a Label as this, between two Beazants in an Azure Field, is very ancient in a Glass Window in *Rayneford* Chappel in the County of

A two Barrs, and two such Labels issuing V. is born by *Hamerstein*.

Parted per Cheveron Enarchee S and A a Label in chief Er. Is born by *Tenberg*.

S a Bar rampee and couped, conjoined to a Barrulett Argent. The like Lambeaux O. Born by *Van Hayden*. See *numb.* 111.

X. He beareth Or, a **File couped with two points**, Azure. This belongs to the Coat of *Kuniesperg*, with some other charges: Also with a Cheveron is (by *Gwilliams* said to be the Seal of *John ap Howel* of *Monmouth*, that lived about the 32 E. 3.

The second charge set down in this quarter which should have been in *chap.* 6. after *numb.* 68. but wanting room, take its Blazon here, (viz. Gules, **a Frett** Argent, the joints and corners debruced with **Beazants**. This is also termed 9 **Beazants in Losenge upon the Frett**. This is born by *Hoolen*.

XI. He beareth Argent, a **File of three Lambeaux issuing out of Chief**, Azure. *Honorius* saith, That one of these Labells betokeneth the Father, the other the Mother, and the middlemost signifieth the party himself that beareth this Coat. The *French* Blazon this a File *mouvant du chief*.

XII. He beareth Sable, **a File of three points in Fesse**, Or.

☞ Be careful to express how many Points each File hath, if it be more or less than three. This is an absolute Coat, by the name of *Fixall*.

G a Bend A in Fesse a File of three points couped B. By the name of *Blewmen* or *Blumenaw*.

XIII. He beareth Argent, **a File of three Labels in Bend**, Sable. This is born by the name of *Morien*, an Alien Born, and Buried in St. *Maries* Church in *Oxford*,

A the like B. Born by *Groithus*.

XIV. He beareth Gules, **a File of five points in Bend Sinister**, Ermyne. In the drawing of this and the foregoing File, I have followed the Patterns from whence I took them; the points of the first hanging Perpendicular or streight down, the other more slopeways, answerable to the File, as if it stood in its right place and proper posture; yet the File being thus in Bend, I hold it best drawn when the Labels are pendant. Four Labels at a File thus set in Bend Sinister, is the Coat of *Curly* of *Warwick shire*. 20 *H.* 3.

XV. He beareth Argent, **two Files, the first double, the other with a single Label**, Gules. Some term it, **two files pointed, two and one**. By the name of *Spinke*.

XVI. He beareth Azure, **three Files, the first with five, the second with four, and the last triple pointed**, Argent, others **three Files, with five, four, and three**

three points, always naming the higher first.

☞ And here it is to be noted also, that if there be but one File in an Escochion when it stands in the Chief, you need not to name the place, but if it stand any where else, you must name the manner of its standing, as in *numb.* 12, 13, 14, *&c.* Also if there be more than one File in the Field, you need not to say Barwise, or one above another, for they must of necessity stand so; yet if they be otherwise, then you are to mention the manner of their being; as, three Files in Bend, *&c.* The aforesaid Blazon is a *Dutch* Coat, born by the name of *Liskirke.*

Now by these few examples, it serves to confirm us, that Files are not only born for differences, but also for Charges in Coat Armour.

A 2 Files of 5 point B. Born by *Vanderlippe.*

XVII. He beareth Or, **a File,** Gules, **with three Bells pendant,** Azure, **Clappers,** Sable. By the name of *Belfile.* Some have Blazoned this, **a file of three campanes, or points campaned,** a term borrowed from *Campana* a Bell; as much as to say, the Labels made into Bells.

XVIII. He beareth Amethyst, **a file of three points crossed,** Pearl. The File is never charged with any thing, but the Lambeaux or points are both charged and formed into several shapes, according to the ends of Crosses, as Flory, Moline, and the like.

A a File crossed G. each charged with a Beazant between 4 Escallops A. Born by *Northscalpe.*

G a File of three points Molyn Or. By *Milfile.*

XIX. He beareth Argent, a **file in fesse of two points,** Gules, **each charged with a Canton sinister,** Or. Files are often thus born in Fesse between things, as *Fearnhead* beareth A a File in Fesse between three Fearn leaves, V.

☞ Note, that as the Bordures before mentioned, so also the Files are often charged with things as well quick as dead, whereof I will give some examples.

XX. He beareth Or, a File **with one Lambeaux,** Azure, **charged in the foot with a Canton Sinister,** Argent, sometime the Canton is placed on the Dexter side, then you need not to name the place, as I have formerly shewed in the Rules for Blazoning of Cantons, *chap.* 3. *numb.* 115, 116. such a File with three Lambeaux Argent, with the Cantons on the Dexter side Gules, was born by *Lionell Plantagenett,* third Son to King *Edward* the 3*d.* The like Ermyne and Canton Gules, by *Thomas* Duke of *Clarence,* second Son to King *Henry* the Fourth.

XXI. He beareth Luna, a File **of three Lambeaux,** Jupiter, **each charged with as many Barrs,** Sol. Else this is of some termed **Gobony,** Or and Azure. Born by the name of *John Nevil,* Marquess of *Montacue,* Duke of *Bedford.* Such is the Dignity of the File (saith *Gwilliams, fol.* 36.) that Heralds have caused them to be laid aside, as to their bearing by private Gentlemen, because of their Dignity; for the Sons of Kings and Emperours cannot bear a difference of higher esteem.

XXII. He beareth Sol, a File **of two Labels,** Jupiter, **each charged with three flowers de lis,** Luna. The Charges are ever on the Points, not the File. Such a File with three Lambeaux thus charged, did *Henry* Duke of *Lancaster* bear (over the Arms of *England.*) *York* Blazons it a File of 3 points charged with 9 flower de luces.

XXIII. He beareth Mars, a File **of three points parted per Pale,** Jupiter and Luna: **on the first six Beasants, and on the second as many Bulletts,** Saturn. Such a kind of File charged with six Castles, and as many Lionceaux or Lionceils rampant was born by *Edward Plantaginett,* Son and Heir to *Edmund Langley* Duke of *York.*

XXIV. He beareth Argent, a File, **having three Taggs pendant (or double Labels)** Azure. These represent the Labels of Charters and Deeds to which the Seals are fixed, which by all Scriveners and Clerks are termed Taggs or Labells.

XXV. He beareth Argent, a File **with two Pomegranates pendant,** Gules, **enwrapped with a Wyer of Gold (or a Rubin** Or) which you please to term it. After this manner you will find several Coats having Flowers, Leaves and the like pendant to the File in place of the Label, which Blazon after this example.

Ordinaries one upon another.

2. FROM the Honourable Ordinaries of their diverse kinds together, with their divisions and subdivisons, with their several terms according to the diversity of Lines, by which they were composed; we shall proceed now to shew you their diverse manner of bearing one with another, commixt; that is to say, how one Ordinary is born upon another, one Ordinary between another, one beside another, and several born together in one Coat; and then in the last place, how Ordinaries Frett and Pierce one another, and diminish or lessen themselves; of all which this Engraven Plate will give you divers examples, by which the Learner may know how to understand and conceive of others when they are presented to his view.

XXVI. He beareth Azure, a Pale, Argent, **surmounted of a Cheveron,** Purpure, a **Bordure** of the second. Some will not use the word surmount, for seeing these Ordinaries lie one upon the other (they say) that the naming of them one after another as they ly, beginning with that next the Field, will be a sufficient and good Blazon; as Azure, a Pale Argent, **a Cheveron** Purpure, **a Bordure** of the second. This is born by the name of *Lingart.*

XXVII. He beareth Argent, a Pile, Azure, **a Cheveron,** Gules, and a **Bordure engrailed,** Sable. Some, and not unfitly, term it, a **Pile debruised with a Cheveron.**

Debrusing in Armory, is when one thing is upon another. This is born by the name of *Parson.*

S Pile A Cheveron G. By the name of *Dixon.*

XXVIII. He beareth Azure, a **Bend and a Bordure enwecked, party per Pale,** Or and Gules **counterchanged,**

ged. Otherwise a **Bend party per pale,** Or and Gules, **a Bordure counterchanged.** By the name of *Cook.*

XXIX. He beareth Argent, **two Barrs,** Azure, **a Pale,** Gules, **a Bordure indented,** Vert. By the name of *Coe.*

G 2 Pales A a Fesse O Born by *Ampringen.*

XXX. He beareth Argent, **a Cross Engraled,** Gules, **surmounted of a Bend Sinister** Azure. By the name of *Trannol* of *Trannol.* Quartered by *Holme* of *Chester,* Author of this Work.

XXXI. He beareth Azure, **a Salter** Argent, **over all a Cross of the second, surmounted of another,** Gules. This is the Union of the Crosses of *England* and *Scotland*, which upon King *James* the First and Sixth Reign, were joined together, and made Great *Britains* Ensign. A like to this is Gules, a Salter Or, surmounted of a Cross ingrailed Ermin. Born by the name of *Prince,* of *Abby Foliat* in *Shrewsbury.*

XXXII. He beareth Argent, **two Flasques,** Gules, **over all a Fesse,** Azure, **surmounted of a Pile of the second.** By the name of *Rowlinson.*

XXXIII. He beareth Argent, a Fesse, Gules, **charged with three Pale** Or; **on a Chief Engraled,** Sable, **a Cross of the third;** that is of the same Colour or Mettle which was thirdly named in the Coat, which (if you take notice of it) was Or. Born by the name of *Wrighting.* Also S a Fesse A with three Pales upon it G is born by *Dudink.*

XXXIV. He beareth Argent, **two Pale,** Gules, a **Cheveron** Vert, **a Chief** Azure, and a **Canton** Or. By the name of *Hobson-Smith.*

XXXV. He beareth Or, **two Barrs Engraled** Azure, **on a Chief** Ermine, **three Pales** Gules; **over all an Escochion** Argent, a **Cross** Gules. By the name of *Hollinpriest.*

Ordinaries between one another.

3. FROM Ordinaries one upon another, I shall in the next place, give some examples of them between one the other, representing (as it were) both Ordinaries and Charges.

XXXVI. He beareth Argent, a Fesse Azure, **between a Pale and a Cheveron,** Gules. If there had been no Cheveron in Base, then this Coat would have been Blazoned a Fesse and Pale in Chief, to shew that it exceeded not the limits of the Fesse point. Born by the name of *Corker.*

XXVII. He beareth Argent, a **Salter between two Flasques,** Azure, a **Chief** Gules. By the name of *Mores.*

XXXVIII. He beareth Argent, **two Barrs,** Azure, between a Cross of *England* and a Cheveron. By naming the *English* Cross, which is always Gules, I mention not the colour of the Cheveron, which is understood to be of the same. By the name of *Gibben.*

XXXIX. He beareth Or, a **Bend Sinister,** Gules, **between two Cantons,** Azure. By the name of *Tippingsell.*

XL. He beareth Or, a Fesse Azure, **between four Piles waved,** Gules. Some term them, (**in Point in Fesse and Base.**) Others multiplying words, Blazon it thus, **a Fesse between two Piles,** issuing out of the **Chief** in point, and as many out of the **Fesse** in point to the Base. By the name of *Otewell.*

XLI. He beareth Argent, a Fesse **between three Piles and a Frett,** Azure. By the name of *Golden.*

XLII. He beareth Or, **a Cheveron** Vert, **between a Chief and an Escochion,** Azure. Yet this may be better Blazoned, as a **Cheveron** Vert, **an Escochion in Base, and a Chief** Azure. By the name of *Hardy.*

XLIII. He beareth Argent, **two Barrs Sable, over all (or debruised with) an Escochion** Azure, **charged with a Plate and a Bordure** Or. Else say, an **Escochion** Or, **surmounted of another,** Azure, **charged with a Plate.** Born by the name of *Hardymett.*

XLIV. He beareth Gules, a **Salter Engraled** Argent, **debruised with a Fesse** Or, **in Chief an Escochion of the third.** Born by *Leather.*

These two last examples should have come in after *numb.* 34, and 35, and those to have been in these places.

Ordinaries beside one another.

4. AS these Ordinaries are born in Coats one upon the other, and between one the other, so they are also in Arms set by the sides one of another, a devise much used in *Dutch* and *German* Coats, but very rarely used by us in *England*; some examples follow.

XLV. He beareth Argent, **two Barrs and a Canton Sinister,** Azure. When they are of one colour, they are ever thus fixed without any division, the like you may see in the Fesse and Pale. This is of some Blazoned **two Barrs Cantoned,** thereby shewing that the higher hath a Canton joined to it. See *chap.* 3. *numb.* 8. This is born by the name of *Gatliffe.*

G the like A born by *Deane.*

A the like with 3 Barrs G born by *Fuller.*

XLVI. He beareth **party per Bend Sinister,** Or and Argent, **a Bendlet,** Gules, and on the same side **two Barrs** Azure. Some will Blazon it, **in base two Barrs.** Born by *Ridgway.*

Party per Bend B and Ar: a Bend Gules, and two Barrs of the first. By the name of *Bendbarge.*

Here you need not mention the place of the Barrs, by reason they are a colour, therefore cannot be set upon a colour.

XLVII. He

XLVII. He beareth Argent, a **Salter** Azure, a **Chief Crenelel** Gules, **Charged** with a **Pile** Or. Born by the name of *Granger*.

A a Salter and Chiefe G Born by *Bruse*.

XLVIII. He beareth Or, a **Canton, Squire sinister,** and a **Barrulett,** Azure: By the name of *Kenardy*.

XLIX. He beareth **party per Pale,** Argent and Vert, **six Cheverons Counterchanged,** three and three. Some per Pale A and V Three Cheverons of the second, and as many of the first. By the name of *Gorlitz*.

L. He beareth **Quarterly indented per Fesse,** Or and Gules,: two **Cheverons** Azure, & as many **Barrs** Argent. By the name of *Grantham*. This seems to be a quatered Coat and so might have been Blazoned, but for the Indenting in Fesse. Some begin it thus **party per Pale,** and **per Fesse indented,** &c. Here I name not the quarters in which the Cheverons, or Barrs are, by reason they are not to be set, mettle on mettle, or Colour upon Colour: Besides in nameing the Cheverons first, shews them to be placed in the first and last quarter, and the Barrs in the second and third, being as it were in opposition or contrary one to the other. By this you see, how to Blazon thecharges, on all quartered Coats.

LI. He beareth Azure, a **Cheveron,** and a **Pile in Chiefe,** Or. This is Born by the name of *Strettell*. Some omitt the term in **Chiefe,** because if it were a full Pile it would have lyen on the Cheveron,or the Cheveron on it; so then the word (**Debuised,** or over all, or surmounted) would have been used to one of them as *numb.* 26 27 32. Yet others use not these terms of **Debusing** &c. As is there shewed; therefore to mention the Pile, to be in Chiefe, is very necessary: as *numb.* 34.

LII. He beareth **parted per Cheveron** Argent, and and Azure; two **Cheverons** Or, a **Chiefe Ingraled** of the second. By the name of *Coppock*.

LIII. He beareth Or,a **Bend,** a **Canton,**and a **Cheveron,** Gules. By the name of *Yarwood*.

LIV. He beareth Gules, and **party per Fesse Bendy,** of six Argent, and Azure, a **Fesse** and **Canton,** Or, By the name of *Hanson*.

LV. He beareth **party per Cheveron,** Argent and Purpure, two **Cheverons** in the **Dexter,** and **Sinister** parts; and a **Salter in Base, Counterchanged.** This is born by the name of *Fasslehurst*. Some say two **Cheverons** and a **Salter, Counterchanged;** But this shewes not the right standing of them, these being besides one another, when as usually they are born one over the other. These being more fitly termed two **Cheverons coupled** or **paired.**

LVI. He beareth **party per Fesse, Pally of six,** Argent & Gules & Azure, a **Fesse** of the second, & a **Cheveron,** Or. Or else Blazon it thus, **Pally** of six A and G **parted per Fesse,** B &c. Others thus, He beareth **per Fesse** Argent & Azure,a **Fesse** and the **Chiefe Paily** of six Gules, and in **Base** a **Cheveron,** Or. Born by the name of *Stubbs*.

LVII. He beareth Argent, a **Cheveron and two Pales in Base,** Gules, a **Chief** Azure, **two Piles** Sable. Others Blazon it a **Cheveron** between two Piles and two **Pales** G a **Chiefe** Azure. Born by the name of *Symcocks*.

LVIII. He beareth Argent, **Fett in** a **Fesse,** Sable: between two **Barrs,** in **Chiefe** a **Pale** and in **Base** a **Pile** Azure. Born by the name of *Hawkeston*. Others say between two Barrs, the one Paled, and the other Piled: that is there is a Pale and pile fixed into them. As in the example of the Barr and Canton *numb.* 45.

LIX. He beareth **party per Fesse,** Or and **per Cheveron** Gules; **two Pales,** Argent, a **point** of the first. Else thus, Party per Fesse, Or and Gules; over all two Pales Argent: in Chiefe party per Cheveron, and a point **Counterchanged** of the Feild. Or thus Party per Cheveron in Chiefe, and per Fesse, with a point, Gules and Or, in the middle part two Pales Argent. Born by *Strettall*.

LX. He beareth **quarterly** Gules and Ermine, two **Pales Counterchanged.** Here the Graver was mistaken, in cutting two Pales instead of four, which would have had an odd one to have been **Counterchanged** in the middle of it, as in the next example. These quarterly's per Pale might better be Blazoned (if they fall to be even divisons) Pally of 6 8 10 12 per Fesse Counterchanged, then to say quarterly, so many Pales. By the name of *Parlor*.

Ordinaries Commixt.

5. I Shall now give you some few examples of mixed Ordinaries, that is to say, two or three or more of them in one Coat Armour, by which the Ingenious may know how to Blazon, or Judge of other such like Coats.

LXI. He beareth **Quarterly Ermine,** and Or, three **Palletts** Gules,a **Bordure** Azure, on a **Canton** Argent a **Crosse Sable,** and a **Chiefe** Gules. This is Born by the name of *Hobson*.

☞ The naming of Gules twice, in this Blasoning is not any absurdity, by reason what is born on a **Canton,** or on an **Escochion of Pretence,** are supposed to be aditionall Coats, and therefore will admit of their own terms, as if the other were not mentioned. Others on the contrary argue, that seeing they are now made one entire Coat, it is not good to mention the colours, or mettle twice, From thence then we may conclude, that till these agree, it is left to the Artists will, and pleasure, whether they be twice named or not.

LXII. He beareth **Pally of six,** Gules and Argent, on a **Cheveron** Or, two **Barrs Gemele,** a **Bordor** Sable, and a **Chiefe quarterly** Ermine and Azure. This is born by the name of *Hatfeild*.

☞ Here by these two examples you may see, that generally the **Bordure** gives place to the **Canton,** and **Chiefe;** but to all other Ordinaries it doth not, but goeth round the **Escochion** as *Grilliams fol.* 389 390 affirmeth, yet by his good favour, I have found some Coats contrary to his general rule, but we shall take them for

Heterocliteſ, and therefore give ſuch a Blazon by themſelves, as in the three next examples.

LXIII. He bearet **Party Per Salter,** Or and Gules, on the firſt and laſt, **two Bends,** and on the ſecond and third, as many **Pallets,** Counterchanged, a **Cheiſe Engraled,** Azure, all **Surrounded** with a **Bordure** of the ſame, Argent. The *French* term the **ſide quarters** of the partition by **Salter**; (the **Flankes** or **Flanches**) as thus, **Party Per Salter** the **Chief** and **Point** with two **Bends,** the **flaſque, or flankes Dexter,** ſo: and **Sinister** ſo and ſo, as the charges are.

LXIV. He beareth Sable, a **Cheiſe,** Azure, **Bordured engraled,** Or, **Surrounded** with an other of the ſame Argent: on an **Escochion** of **Pretence** of the ſecond a **Cheveron** of the third, and a **Bordure** of the fourth. others Blazon it S an **Escochion** ſo and ſo, a **Cheiſe bordure, ingraled,** all **Surrounded** with an other of the ſame, (or **Surmounted** with an other) *&c.* Born by the name of *Crocket.*

LXV. He beareth **Quarterly Pally** of four, Or, and Gules; and Argent, **two Cheverons,** Azure: a **Cheiſe** of the ſecond **filletted** of the fourth, a **Bordure** Vert. Born by the name of *Horne.* Elſe blazon it according to *numb.* 63. or thus **Quarterly,** the firſt and laſt **Pally of four** Or, and Gules. The ſecond and third Argent, a **Cheveron** Azure. Here you ſee the difference of a Bordure ſurmounting, and the **Bordure** that gives place to the **Chief,** which you muſt be ſure to take notice off in the Blazon n 3.

LXVI. He beareth Argent, a **Cheveron** Azure, a **Pale** Or, and three **Bends** Vert: each joyning to the other. This is born by the name of *Key.* Some Blazon this, **Triparted per Pale,** Argent, a **Cheveron** Azure the ſecond Or, and the third of the firſt, three **Bends** Vert. But the moſt properest way, is a **Pale,** between a **Cheveron,** and three **Bends.**

LXVII. He beareth Or, a **Cheveon** Gules betwen two **Croſſes,** and a **Salter** Sable, a **Cheiſe** Azure. By the name of *Redland.*

LXVIII. He beareth Argent, a **Feſſe** Gules, between two **Croſſes quarterly peirced** Sable. *Fern pag.* 181. doth Blazon it, on a **Pallet** Sable, a **Feſſe** Gules, and two **Barrulets** of the ſecond **quarterly Peirced,** of the Feild. By the name of *Kells.*

LXIX. He beareth **Barry** of four Gules and Argent, a **Cheiſe parted per Pale,** Azure, and Or, over all a **Bend** Sable. By the name of *Jackson.*

LXX. He beareth Argent, two **Barrs** and in **Cheiſe** as many **Pales,** Azure, on an **Inescochion,** Or, two **Barrs** Sable. Born by *Brecke.*

LXXI. He beareth Or, two **Barrs** Azure, on a **Chief** Argent, two **Ogreſſes** between as many **Squires**: on an **Escochion** of **pretence** Argent, a **Pale** Gules. Born by *Musket.*

LXXII. He beareth **Pally of four** Sable Argent, two **Barrs,** and a **Point** Gules. Born by the name of *Wats* or *Wyatts.*

Ordinaries more Intricately Commixed.

6. THERE are likewiſe Commixt Coats, which are more hard and difficult to be found out by their ordinaries, I ſhall ſhew you ſome few examples.

LXXIII. He beareth **Pally of ſix** Argent, and Gules, a **Cheiſe** Vert, a **Barrulet t** Azure, and a **point** of the third. This is born by the name of *Lowehart. Fern pag.* 177. terms the **Pally** to be **Fretted** with a **Barrulett in Feſſe, a Cheiſe** and **Baſte.** And ſo he doth of all other Ordinaries, which ly over one another: For which *Gwilliams* uſeth the word **Surmount,** or (all over,) or **Debuſed,** which are more fitting expreſſions.

LXXIV. He beareth **Barry of ſix,** Ermine, & Gules, and **per Pale,** Azure, a **Cheiſe Engraled** of the third and a **point Indented** Argent. Born by the name of *Acton ley.* Some ſay **Barry of ſix per Pale** Er. and G and B *&c.* This ſheweth that the firſt Partition is Er and Gules, **per Pale,** and the ſecond to be wholly Azure having no **Counterchanging** at all; but continned in the ſame to the laſt.

LXXV. He beareth Argent, two **Barrs,** Sable, a **Bend Counterchanged,** between three **Cinquefoiles** (two in **Cheiſe,** and one in **Baſe**) Gules: on a **Chiefe** Or, three **Pales,** between two **Squiers** Azure. Born by the name of *Mortmaine.*

LXXVI. He beareth **party per feſſe,** and **per Pale in Cheiſe,** Sable and Argent and Or, a **feſſe** Gules between three **Bends,** and as many **Sinister Counterchanged,** and **frettee** Azure. Some Blazon this, **triparted in Pale and feſſe,** Sable Argent and Or, a **feſſe** between three **Bends,** of the ſecond, and as many **Sinister,** of the firſt, and **frettee in Baſe** Azure. Others do Blazon it **triparted in Pale** and **feſſe.** S A and O In the firſt three Bends A In the ſecond three Bends Sinister S in the laſt, Erettee B over all a Feſſe of the ſecond.

LXXVII. He beareth **Barry of ſix parted per Pale** Counterchanged, Or and Azure, a **Cheiſe pally of four, party per feſſe, transmuted** Argent and Gules, between two **Cantons gyrony of eight** Vert and Or: An **Inescochion** of the third. The *French* Blazon is thus. He beareth Azure and Or: One **feſſe** of ſix **party au Pee**: a **Cheiſe pallee Counter pallee, feſſe Counter feſſee,** and two **Cantons Girons** of the ſame, over all a **Shield** Argent. This is born by the name of *Marſh.* the ſame with the Cheiſe Pally of four, is born by the name of *Preſſignie. Ferne pag.* 202 the ſame with three Pales on the Cheiſe and two Squires Baſt Dexter and Sinister, born by *Mortymer* Earl of *Marſh.*

LXXVIII. He beareth Argent, two **Barrs** Gules; on a **Cheiſe** Azure, two **Gyrons** Or, a **point** (in **Baſe**) of the third, **charged** with a **Croſs** of the fourth, on an **Escochion of pretence,** Argent; a **Canton, Bend,** And **Cheveron** Sable. Born by the name of *Dragwell.*

The

The **Escochion of pretence** being an **Heiritrix** and having Children, her Husband thus assumes the bearing of her Coat, which is by the name of *Yarley*.

LXXIX. He beareth Or, on a **fesse** Gules a **Salter** Argent; three **Piles in Cheife**, and as many **Pallets in Base** Azure. By the name of *Armstrong*. Some will say on a Fesse, a **Salter**, between three **Piles** and as many **Pallets** &c. Other say **triparted per fesse**, the first, Or, three **piles** Azure: The second Gules, a **Salter** Argent, the last, of the first, three **Pales** of the second.

LXXX. He beareth Argent, on a **Fesse**, Vert: a **Barr** Or, **charged with three Cheverons couched**, Gules, between a **Crois** and a **Salter** of the fourth. By the name of *Northjander*.

LXXXI. He beareth **party per Fesse, Gyrony in Cheif**, Argent, and Gules; and **Quarterly in Base**, Or. and Azure; a **Barrulett** between a **Crosse** and a **Salter**, Vert: an **Escochion of pretence**, of the first. Or else more breifly thus, **per Fesse Gyrony**, and **quarterly** &c. A **Barrulett** between a **Crois** and **Salter** &c. by the name of *Trollocken*.

LXXXII. He beareth **Chequie of nyne**, the first Argent a **Bend** Gules; the second **Gyrony** Or, and of the second, each **contrary Composed** to the other. This is born by the name of *Maslinberg*. Others do term this a **Crois parted**, each **Gyronny** Or and Gules, five **Bends** &c. As *chap.* 5 *numb.* 13 and *chap* 7 *numb.* 107.

LXXXIII. He beareth **Gyrony**, Argent, and Gules, a **Crois Quarterly quartered** Azure, and Or, on a **Cheife** of the first, a Pale between two **Squires** of the third, **charged** with a **Crose** of the fourth. By the name of *Houghtinworth*.

LXXXIV. He beareth **Gyrony** Or and Gules, a **Salter** between four **Escochions, Counterchanged**. By the name of *ffloweristonly*.

LXXXV. He beareth **triparted per Fesse**, the first divided into three **per pale**, the first **per Salter**, Argent, and Gules, the second, Azure, three **Cheverons**, Or: and the last of the first, a **Crois** of the Second: the **Fesse** part Purpure: and the **Base part**, Or, three **Bends Sinister** Gules, with a **Bordure** Argent. This may be thus Blazoned, **party per** Fesse B and O **in Cheife**, three **Cheverons** of the first, beween two **Cantons**, the first A a **Crois** G the other **pary per Salter** of the same: **in Base** three **Bends Sinister** Gules **invironed** with a **Bordure** of the third; over all a **Fesse** Purpure.

LXXXVI. He beareth **party per pale**, two **Bordure** Gules and Argent, the first **invironing a Field pally of foure parted per** Fesse of the second and Azure, and Or, a **Fesse** and a **shapournett shapoured** (or **shapournetted** or **headed**) of the third: The second **Imbordureing Gyronny** of the second and fourth a **Cheife** of the third. Some will Blazon this as two distinct Coates, and so begin with the **Fields** and **Charges** first before they mention the **Bordures**. But I take them to be one intire Coat, for after this way, I have seen **Bordures** born by paires, by division **per Bend, per quarter, per Fesse**, with, and without **Charges** in the **Fields** as examples after will demonstrate. *numb.* 111 112 113 *chap.* 9 *numb.* 91. This is born by the name of *Van Bottfeldt*.

Party per Pale G. and A diapered, two Bordures Counterchanged is the Coat belonging to the Bishoprick of *Augsburg* in *Germanie*.

Ordinaries Pearceing and Fretting others.

7. THE Ordinaries though in themselves Honourable, yet by their varience, and striveing one with another, they are made less noble, and that is by reason of that war which is between themselves, wherein some are pierced, others Fretted, others diminished, and several cut off by the halfes, of which take these few examples for many

LXXXVII. He beareth Argent, a **tressell in Fesse supported with two Stayes issuing out of Base in form of a Cheveron** Gules, **pierced** with an Oake-tree **Eradicated** (or **mooted** up by the roote) Vert. This is born by the name of *Portman*.

A a Fesse G proceeding from the middle of it, an Oake tree proper. by the name of *Sklunzell*.

LXXXVIII. He beareth Argent, a **Dart in Fesse** Or, pierceing of an in **Escochion** Gules: The Feathers and head proper. Born by the name of *Fairfonger*. Or thus, a **Sheild** Gules, pierced with an **Arrow** Fesse-wise, or, Feathered Argent, headed Sable.

LXXXIX. He beareth Argent, a **Pile** Gules, **Debused** with a **Salter** Vert, pierced with a **Barrulett**, Azure. This is born by name of *Don Pile Andrew de Pickee*.

☞ Note that pierceings of this nature are ever understood to be in the middle of the ordinary pierced, if otherwise then to be named how in what place the pierceing is.

XC. He beareth Argent, a **Cheveron** Azure, **pierced with a Bendlett Sinister** Gules. The Bendlett by reason of the Cheverons lying upon the lower part of it hath but very little of it discarned. Others terem it a **bend Perforated through a Cheveron**. This is born by the nome of *Millehurst*.

O the like Bend Er. and Cheveron G Born by the name of *Hadstock*.

XCI. He beareth Gules, a **Fess** Or, **pierced with a pile** Argent. Also Blazoned, a Pile perforated through a Fesse. This is Born by the name of *Nangrave*.

XCII. He beareth Or, a **Fess** Gules, **pierced with a Pale**, Azure. This is born by the name of *Twaxte*. In these two examples you may see a diverse way of piercing; the first proceeding with the entrance from above the ordinary: And this haveing its pierceing proceeding from the lower part of the ordinary: and yet both termed pierced, now in such a case as this, how shall the Tricker draw the Coate true, but may easily mistake one way for another?

To

☞ To this I must say, that generally pierceings are from above, and that the peircer (or ordinary peirceing) doth Debruse, or ly upon the ordinary peirced, upon the higher side of it: But this being contrary, for its distinction may have an additionall expression to it, to shew that the debruseing is on the lower part of the ordinary as thus: a Fesse peirced with a Pale, and debrused in the lower (or contrary) side.

XCIII. He beareth Argent, a **Cheveron** Gules, peirced with a **Barrulett, Debrused** on the **Sinister** side, Azure. This is born by the name of *Longshall* or *Lonhall*. If the Barrulett had lain upon the Cheveron on the right side, then you had needed no such term, as Debrused, for all such kind of ordinaries, as are pierced Fesse wayes, are so to be.

XCIV. He beareth Or, two **Pales** Azure, **Pierced** with a **Bendlett**, Gules. Born by the name of *Dennysgate*. Ordinaries pierced bendways, are ever debrused to the Sinister side, the top part we suppose cannot be seen being higher then sight: except in Fesse, Barrs, Cheverons, and Crosses.

XCV. He beareth Argent, a **Pale** Gules; **pierced** with a **Barrulett, debrused** on the contrary side. This is born by the name of *Formjynter*.

XCVI. He beareth **party per Fesse**, with three **Indented**, Argent and Azure, **Fretted** with a **Fesse** Or. *Ferne pag.* 199 terms this **Emanuchee**. A and B Fretted &c. By the name of *Gilbly*.

XCVII. He beareth Or, a **Cheveron** Vert, **Fretted** with a **Barrulett**, Argent. This is Born by the name of *Okell*. Some, will say, debrused and Fretted, nameing that first which proceeds from the dexter.

XCVII. He beareth Argent, three **Pylletts**, Sable, **Fretted** with a **Barrulett**, Azure. Born by the name of *Iatroboth* or *Antroboch*.

XCIX. He beareth Argent, an **Ogle**, Sable, **Fretted** with a **Palett** and a **Barrulett** Gules, **pierc ng** a **Cheife**, Vert. This is Born by the name of *Trugg..moch*.

Ordinaries diminishing one another.

8. COATS casually abated, or cut off by the halfes, or by other accidentall courses or causes, are ecclipsed and diminished; those Coates, that have the ordinaries diminished, or cut off by the halfe, are when they be joyned either with themselves, or with other charges, as the examples following will manifest.

C. He beareth Or, a **Demy Bordure** Purpure, and a **Salter** Azure. Born by the name of *Bolderfalt*. Some term this a Bordure determined in Fesse, (or proceeding to the Fesse part) and a Salter in Base.

CI. He beareth Argent, a **Bend sinister couped** at the top; between a **Pellet & a Mullett**, Sable, in **Cheife** four **Piles** Azure. Some term these demy Bends, and Piles. This is Born by the name of *Holstych*.

CII. He beareth Sable, a **Bordure** Or, a **Chiefe** Argent and a **Canton** Gules.

☞ In this Coat note two things: In your Blazon name that first which lyeth next the Feild, and the rest in their order, as they are near or fartherest off. Then observe that the Bordure gives place to the Cheife, and the Cheife to the Canton: which generally they do, except some few examples as *numb.* 63 64 65. This is Born by the name of *Breeking*. But the Bordure doth generally give place to the Chiefe Quarter, and Canton.

CIII. He beareth *Baron*, and *Femme*; the first Argent, an **Ogle**, between eight **Martletts** Sable. the second Or, a Bordure Gules this is the old way of impaleing coats belonging to husband and wife; cutting their two coates through the middle, and with two halfes, makeing one entire Escochion; which nevertheless in their Blazonings are to be termed, as if they were the whole Coats, without any diminishing at all. The first is Born by *Leftwich*. And the second, *Tertonbergh*.

☞ Yet this observe in the impaleing of Coats with Bordures, that that side of the Bordure (whether in the man or womans Coate) next to the impale, is ever exempted and taken away after this example: But if the Bordure belonging to a Coate Armour, if the Coate be Born sole and entire of it self, then shall the Bordure Inviron the Coate round, no part shall be diminished. Also if a Bordured Coate, be to be Marshalled or Quartered, among Coates quarterly, then shall no part of the Bordure be omitted, but it shall surround the quarter (except it be honoured with a Chief, Quarter, or Canton, as aforesaid) even as if it were born alone of it selfe.

CIV. He beareth *Baron Femme*; the first Or, a **Cross Patee** Gules: the second Gules a **Cross** Argent. Here I name a colour twice, because they are two distinct Coates being (as I said in the last) husband and wife conjoyned in one; But if it were an absolute Coate of it self, then Blazon it, and the like thus: **per Pale** Or and Gules, a **demy Cross patee** Gules; and a **demy Cross** Or, **conjoyned**. The first by the name of *Wardly*: the second by the name of *Pinchester*.

CV. He beareth **party per Pale**, Gules and Azure: on the first three Lions passant gardant in **Pale issuant**, Or; and on the second a **Garbe**, and a demy one **Conjoyned**, of the third. This is the Armes of the City of *Chester*, being the gift of King *Henry* the seventh, when he made it a County of it self, distinct from the County: which may breifly be thus Blazoned, Half the Armes of *England*, and *Chester*, **conjoyned**.

B an halfe Eagle conjoyned per Pale A to G 2 Bends B by the name of *Hertingshausen*.

CVI. He beareth **party per Pale**, Sable, and Argent; a **Tullippa** (or Lilly) Sliped, and a demy one Or, **conjoyned** to the half of an **Eagle displayed**, Gules. The like to this is Born by the Town of *Kaufbeuren* in *Germany*; the Eagle on the dexter side &c.

Per Pale O and Bendy of 6 A and G and half of an Eagle conjoyned to the Sinister side Sable. This is the Armes of the Town of *Nurnberg*.

G an half Eagle, and half a wheele conjoyned A the Armes of the Town of *Ratibar*.

CVII. He

CVII. He beareth *Baron* and *Femme*: the first Argent, an **Hurt**, and a **Labell** of three **Points** Gules. The second Or, a **Crosſ Flort conjoyned** in the middle Azure. This in the first division is Born by *B. Skerwich.* And the second is Born by the name of *Broklach.*

Baron & Femme, the first O and Eagle with two heads S the second V a Feſſe O Conjoyned in the middle by the name of *Frymanner* uf *Hoken Randeck*, in *Bavaria.*

CVIII. He beareth Gules, ſix **Beaſants**, a **Canton**, Argent. Here I Blazon the full number of Beaſants, although the Canton (or a quarter) doth cover one, & a part of two more. So that as I ſhewed before *numb.* 34 61 102 all ordinaries, & charges whatſoever, give place to them, yet whatthey cover is not to be diminiſhed in the Blazoning. This is Born by the name of *Zouch* or *Souch.*

CIX. He beareth **Quarterly** (or four Coats **Quarterly**) the first Argent, a **Salter** Gules. The ſecond Argent, a Feſſe Gules, between three Pellets (or Bullets) the third Or, an Eagle diſplayed, Sable. the fourth Gules a Lion Rampant Or. Over all an Eſcochion of pretence, Argent; charged with a Mullet Sable. Here again you may ſee that an Eſcochion of pretence, will diminiſh, and hide all or part of the charges in Feilds, where it is ſet; yet in Blazoning the whole is to be mentioned.

CX. He beareth **party per Feſſe**, the **Chief** part divided by the ſame, **Indented, Imbowed**, Argent and Azure. The Baſe of the ſecond, a Pale and two points, Dexter and Siniſter, of the first. Born by *Don Doblecote.*

Per Feſſe, the Chief by the ſame, Urdee in point G & S the Baſe of the first, a Pile of three points reverſed of the ſecond. By the name of *Lerch Van Durmſtein.*

CXI. He beareth two **parts per Feſſe**, the **Chief parted** by the ſame Or and Argent, a **Tile** (or **Billet**) with two other joyned in the Corners **projecting** it: & a **Border** Gules. The Baſe **parted per point Eſcartellee Gady**, (or having two **Gyces**) Azure and the ſecond, a Border of the first: the Tiles, or Billets may be termed, a **Feſſe Rampee**, and **cooped.** See *chap.* 4 *numb.* 84 and *chap.* 6 *numb.* 27 and this *chap. numb.* 9 113.

CXII. He beareth **party per Pale**, Azure and Argent, a **Feſſe Counterchanged**, each part Bordered of the ſame. others, per Pales, ſix Borders counterchanged. Others per Pale, triparted per Feſſe, each Bordered. others will have them to be ſquare Maſcules. This is born by the name of *Bordeaux.* Alſo by the *Landgrave, Leuchtenberg.*

CXIII. He beareth **party per Bend** Vert and Or, on the first, a Feſſe, with one Battlement Imbattelled pierced quarterly (or quarter pierced) a Border Argent: on the ſecond a Squire (or rather a point removed) Gules, Charged, or Surmounted of an other, a Border Sable. Here you ſee Bordures are compoſed according to the diviſion of the Feild. And it is a uſuall way, with the *Germans*, and *High Dutch* ſo to bear them.

CXIV. He beareth **party per Feſſe**, Gules and Argent. two Pales couped in Baſe, conjoyned to an other, all Counterchanged of the Feild. Born by *Wilklowe.*

Per Feſſe G and A the like Caunterchanged, Born by *Roher.*

CXV. He beareth Azure, a **Chief removed** (or by others a **Feſſe in Cheif**) and three **Pales conjoyned**, Argent. Some term it a File of three points fixed, or extending to the Baſe. Born by *Kolben.*

G a like Cheif, and Paly of ſix A By *Heylsberg.*

CXVI. He beareth **parted in four, per Feſſe**, Argent and Vert. over all a Croſs couped, Fitched, in the ends, Counterchanged; charged with an Eſcochion Or, over all a Salter Gules. See this kind of Croſs, more plainly ſet fourth *numb.* 2 This is born by *Van Hobert hager.* The like G and O the Eſcochion B and Salter A Born by *Otingen.*

CXVII. He beareth **party per Feſſe**, Argent, and Indented in the ſame, Azure and Or. In Cheif a Barr **Dauncett** of two pieces, in the middle of it, on the top a Croſs Gules. By the name of *Illſunger.*

O ſuch a Barr of two pieces, and a mount in Baſe B By *Greifenrot.*

CXVIII. He beareth Argent, a **Croſs** and **Salter**, Gules, on a **Quadrat**, or **Quaderangle** Or, a **Cheveron charged** with a **Feſſe.** See *chap.* 9 *numb.* 50.

B the like O on an Eſcochion B a Bend A born by *Bletz Van Rotenſdein.*

CXIX. He beareth Or, four **Cheverons**, and a **Palett conjoyned** Gules. Born by *Buchwits*, Per Pale B and G the like O Born by *Van Beuchwitz.* See *chap* 9 *numb.* 95.

TO

TO

His Esteemed Friends, and Relations,

Henry Lloyd, Thomas Thropp, Mathew Anderton,

As also to

Hugh Starkey, William Allen, Francis Skellicorne, Nathaniell Williamson, John Witter, Robert Fletcher, John Golborn, Robert Hewet, and Lewis Williams, Gentlemen, and of the Councell: And to every of them in particular, with the rest of the Esquires and Gentlemen, Inhabiters in the Bridg-street *in* Chester, *in general.*

TO whom the Paines, and Care of this following Chapters, is most willingly offered, and to your Memories Dedicated, by him who is yours, to serve you more then himself.

Randle Holme.

CHAP. IX.

1. CURTEOUS Reader, these few additions mentioned in this Chapter, and Engraven on this Plate are to be placed in the right Chapters and Sections and numbers as is herein set down.

Chap. 3. *Numb.* 23. 88.

I. He bearth Argent, a **Shapournetted Reversed.** Azure. (Some term it, a **Chiefe Shapourned**; and a Shapournett in Chief Reversed; because the place assigned for the Shapournett is ever in the Base point of the Escochion.) In Base three Piles waved Reversed, or Transposed, Gules. The *French* calls this three **Piles Flameing.** Born by the name of *Wychell.*

B three Piles Waved Transposed in Bend O Born by *Hoser.*

O Five Piles in Base Waved and Reversed by *Fingerling.*

II. He beareth Sable, a **Fesse** and three **Pales** in **Base,** one joyned to the **Sinister** side Argent. Counter-flory on the top Or. Others thus, per Fesse Sable, and Paly of six of the same, and Argent: with a Fesse Conjoyned, of the second, Flory on the top Or. See this otherwise Blazoned. *chap.* 8 *numb.* 115. This Coate is Born by name of *Van-Rein.* And is best Blazoned thus, a **Cheif removed Flory,** on the top, and **Pally** of six **conjoyned.**

Chap. 3. *Numb.* 82.

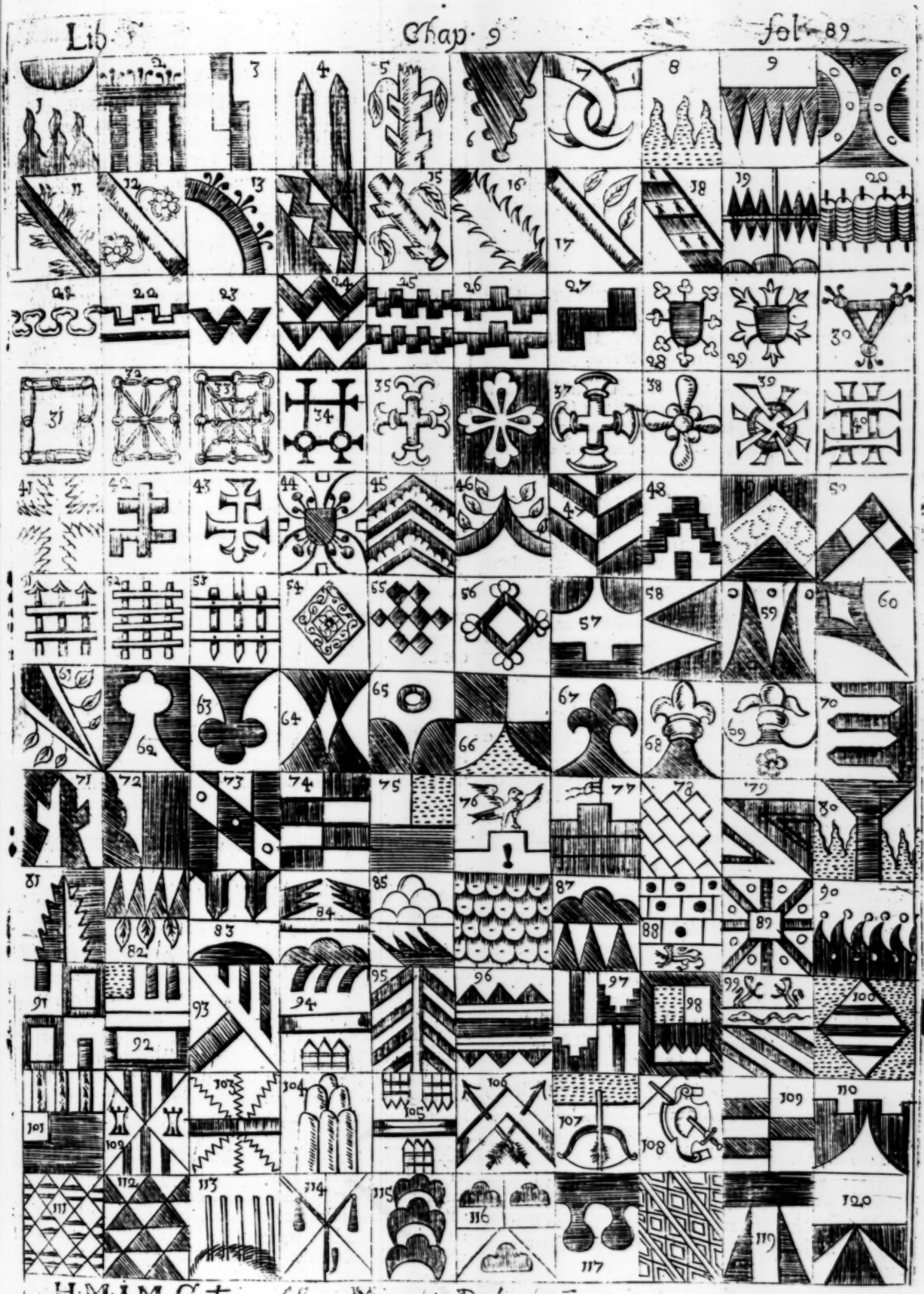
III. He beareth Or, a **Pale Fracted,** (or **removed**) and **overlaid** Gules. Others term it a broken Pale conjoyned. Some a Pale Couped in Fesse, Conjunged to the like issuant from Base: or else conjoyned on the Sinister side to the like issuant &c. By the name of *Van Zirn.* Also G the like A by *Van Ziren.*

IV. He beareth Argent, two **Pales Fitched** on the **top,** Gules. By the name of *Droughda.*

B three such Pales A By the name of *Enhaut.*

V. Vert, a **Pale Raguled, and Razed** on the top which two leaves Pendant Or. Others Blazon it a **Lime** or **Stock,** or **Trunke** of a Tree, **Ragguled fired** in Base, and ragged on the top &c. By the name of *Scowen.*

Arte



H·M·I·M Gutm. Allen. Mercat. Dedicant ē.

A the like proper. Born by *Van Stockhausen.*

S the like trunked on the top, and irradicated (or mooted up by the root) on each side a Leaf and an Acorn pendant O by the name of *Eychler.*

Chap. 3. *Numb.* 91.

VI. He beareth Argent, a **Pile Pomettee,** Vert. Some term it **triple Nowyed**; but Nowy never exceedeth more than one round upon an Ordinary, therefore more fitter to be Blazoned **Bottony** or **Pomettee,** as the *French* do; or Pomelled. This is born by the name of *Dunlablin.*

VII. He beareth Or, two **Piles Imbowed, Fretting** each other, Azure. Others say, two Piles issuing out of the Dexter and Sinister corners, **Imbowed and Fretted.** Born by the name of *Van Hoggey.*

VIII. He beareth party per **Fesse Flamant,** or **Rasie,** Gules and Or. The *French* term this Gules, three **Piles flaming,** Or: But it is more properly Blazoned, a **Partition per Fesse.** Born by the name of *de Rotter.*

IX. He beareth Azure, five **Piles couped and conjoined in Fesse,** Argent. Some term this a Fesse having five indents in the bottom; or five **Dentels** in the neither side. Others make it a partition per Fesse **indentilley,** with a Chief of the second. By the name of *Hearthside.*

G the like A born by *Vom Mistelbach* of *Bavaria.*

Per Fesse Indentilley (or Indented per long, that is long indents) G and A born by *Francken.*

X. He beareth Gules, two **demy Annuletts,** fixed to the sides of the Escochion Argent, each charged with three **Pellets:** There is diverse Judgments passed in the Blazoning of this Coat; some term them, demy Annuletts; others **Cheveron Arches couchant.** Others **Flasques voided**; and such as hold that Flasques cannot be voided, Blazon them thus, Gules, two Flanches Argent, each charged with three Bullets and a Flasque (or Voider) of the first: Others two Flanches Argent, each charged with 3 Pellets and surmounted, with a Flasque Gules. This is born by the name of *Washper.*

A the like Annuletts G charged with Plates. Born by the name of *Pernsheim.*

Chap. 4. *Numb.* 26.

XI. He beareth Or, a Bend Vert, **Flamant** on the sides proper. Some term it a **Bend on Fire,** or fired on the sides. By the name of *Prandtner.*

XII. He beareth Argent, a **Lime of a Tree in Bend,** with two Roses stalked, **counter-pendant,** Gules. By the name of *Drachsler.*

Also G the like A born by *Dillinger.*

XIII. He beareth Argent, a **Bend Archy,** with the higher side **Flurty,** Sable. Born by *Van Elbenor.*

G the Bend Sinister Archy and Flory, A. By *Elben.*

G the Bend leaved on the higher side A Quartered by *Kisell.*

XIV. He beareth Gules on a Bend Argent, another in point **Dauncette,** Azure. Some term it, **double Dauncette.** Born by *Van Lossnitz.*

XV. He beareth a Bend of a **Limb of a Tree,** (or a Limb of a Tree in Bend) **raguled and trunked,** with a **Leaf stalked and pendant** on each side of it, Vert, in a Field Argent: By the name of *Boode.*

A such a Tree Raguled and Trunked with three leaves on each side G. By the name of *Die Stangen:* Also by *Van Oberledel.* Also per Bend Sinister G and A: The like with 2 leaves B by *Seboten.*

G the like with 2 leaves A born by *Besse.*

XVI. He beareth Purpure, a **Bend,** the **Indents Imbowed,** Or; a Bend hacked or hewed on the sides, or cut into the sides. By the name of *Larden* or *Larding.*

O the like Sinister ways G born by *Gundisingen.*

XVII. He beareth Argent, a Bend of the **Limb** of a Tree, with three Leaves growing on the upper side of it, Vert. By the name of *Martincroft.*

G the like O born by *Van Kolnitz*; and with 3 Roses, is born by *Van Annemberg.*

G on a Fesse B a Limb of a Tree trunked with three leaves on each side O is born by *Van Der Amus.*

XVIII. He beareth Or, a **Bend Barry** of six, Ermine and Vert. This is different from a Bend Gobbony, as you may see, comparing them together, *chap.* 4. *numb.* 42. that being streight over the Bend, according to its mounting; but this Bevile-ways, striking off the Bend, as if the Barrs were to be drawn on the Escochion, and so all the Barrs are to be made, let the Ordinary be as the Bearer pleaseth to set it.

Chap. 3. *Numb.* 68.

XIX. He beareth Argent, **6 Losenges in Fesse, surmounted** of a Cross Sable: a **Shapournett shapourned,** Vert. This is more briefly Blazoned by others, on a double Shapournett, a **turn-Pike Gate,** or a Turn-Stile. Born by the name of *Caldwell* or *Caldy.*

G the like A on a Shapournet O born by *Lummingen.*

XX. He beareth Or, five **Pales couped in Fesse, enwrapped** with **Osiers,** Briers or Thorns, Ten. This was the old way of inclosing of Fields, Meadows, and Pasturing Land; and was anciently termed a **Nethering,** our Country-Men, if they were to describe this Coat, would say, it is five **Stakes** wound with **Netherings,** or Windings: From this I may fitly (and that by Art) give it this Blazon, 5 Poles in Fesse Nethered; some pronounce it **Addered,** and **Athered,** and **Addering**; others Tathered and Tathering: Such a Nethered or Fesse of windings, with a Lion passant in Chief, is the Coat of *Paungartner* of *Bavaria,* in *Germany.*

XXI. He beareth Argent, a **Wiure, Nebule, counter Nebule,** Sable. A Wiure is much less than either Barrulett or Cotize; being drawn only by the stroak of a Pencill, or full Pen, after what sort of Line the Bearer pleaseth: This is by some termed a Barrulett Nebule, and others a Viure Nebule. Born by the name of *Wiuredrager.*

A the like in Bend Sinister, belongs to the Coat of *Zerkinden.*

Per

*

Per Fesse O and A in Chief a Lion passant B and in Base the like Wiure B. Born by *Van Cladenbech.*

XXII. He beareth Or, the **Top of a Tower** or **Battlement extended** in Fesse, shewing its thickness Gules. By the name of *Peacock.*

S the like A born by *Van Lauternaw*, of *Switzerland.*

XXIII. He beareth Argent, a **Fesse Dauncett**, of two pieces, **couped in form of a Roman double** W: Azure. By the name of *Bany*, or *Bannie. Ferne, p.* 199. Blazons it a **Fesse Emanuchee couped**, which is the best term, seeing it consists only of 3 points like the double W. See *numb.* 24. and *chap.* 7. *numb.* 74. Yet others call it a Fesse Dauncett with one point on the top, and two under, couped; for when there is but one point above, there must needs be two under; for as this is the least in points, so it can be no otherwise drawn: So on the contrary, if two points be uppermost, then there can be but one at the bottom.

XXIV. He beareth party per Fesse Argent and Gules; two **Barrs Dauncett** in point of 2 pieces in form of a W; counterchanged and fixed: By the name of *Die Illsung.* This ought rather to be termed a Fesse Dauncett of two pieces or points reversed, as being contrary to those mentioned, *chap.* 4. *numb.* 73.

Per Fesse G and B the like A. Born by *Illsung.*

G the like with a Cross Patee on the point A is the Bishoprick of *Raczenberg* Coat.

XXV. He beareth Or, two **Barrs Battelled counter-Battelled**, Gules. Born by the name of *Southerne.* This is the true way of Counter-Battelling, when one Battlement stands opposite to that against it.

XXVI. He beareth Argent, two **Barrs**, each with one **Imbattle** on the top, **counter-Battled** with two in the bottom, Azure. By the name of *Nield.*

XXVII. He beareth Vert, a **Barrulett couped**, with one **Imbattle** at each end, **counter-Battled**, Born by the name of *Darrken.* Others call it a Fesse rectangled at both ends, and couped, the Dexter to the Base.

G two such Barrs A born by *Kol erer zu Hone.*

Chap. 4. *Numb.* 103.

XXVIII. He beareth Argent, an **Escochion** Azure, **Flourished** (or Flowred) with eight **Trefoils**, Vert. This is born by the name of *Scutfoile.*

Per Fesse A and B an Escochion flourished with 8 Staves Pomettee and Florytee. Born by *Hamsmaner.*

XXIX. He beareth Or, an **Escochion Flurt**, Azure. By the name of *Leather.*

XXX. He beareth Argent, a **Triangle, pierced triangular**, each point **Pometted and Flourished**, Sable. After the same manner you shall often find **Quadrants** thus **Flowred**, as in these foregoing examples, by which you may easily give such their true terms in Blazoning. This is born by the name of *Trinelley.*

B the like A born by *Eberstein.*

B a Triangle with a Spur-Rowel of 6 points, at each cant or corner A born by *Geuder.*

B a Triangle pierced, each point Botteney A by *Ulersdorf.*

Chap. 4. *Numb.* 107.

XXXI. He beareth Or, a **Chain** of eight **Links in Orle**, Sable. Born by the name of *de Zuniga*, Duke of *Vejar:* The *French* Blazon it, Argent, a Bend Sable, one Chain Or, (*compose de* 8 *Chain Links*) *in form of an Orle.*

XXXII. He beareth Gules 9 **Annuletts linked** to each other in **form of a Gyron** (or Gyron-wise) Or. This is by the *French* Blazoned no otherwise than he beareth *Navarre*, as being the Coat of that Kingdom: though others term it 8 Annuletts in Orle, linked to another in the Center, and each other Gyron-wise. This Chained Gyron, belongs to the Arms of the Kingdom of *Navarre.*

XXXIII. He beareth Gules, a **Gordian Knott**, Or, else thus, a double Orle of Annuletts linked to each other, and all to another in the Center, Gyron-wise; or after the *French, fol.* 16. 69. the *Navarre* Knot, or the double Knott of *Navarre*, being so born for the Coat Armour of that Kingdom.

Chap. 5. *Numb.* 104.

XXXIV. He beareth Argent, two **Crosses Patriarchal Patee**, conjoined and annulated in the middle of the bottoms, Sable. Some say in the middle of the bottom Cross. This is born by the name of *Flecken.* The same, with contrary colours; and Plates in the places of the Annuletts, is born by *Van Fleckenbull Gem Burgell.*

XXXV. He beareth Or, a **Cross Pomelled Molyne**, Gules. Others call it a Cross Pometee Molined. Born by the name of *Virmont.* See *chap.* 5. *numb.* 126.

XXXVI. He beareth Sable, a **Cross Patee-Botteny Mascled**, Argent. Some call it, a Cross Patee invecked; The *French* term it a **Cross Thoulouse**, or **Toulouse**, from its round Circles at the ends; others a Cross Pomettee. Such a like Cross is in the Coat of *Lavis de Nogarei*, a *French* Family.

XXXVII. He beareth Argent, a **Cross corniced** at each end, Azure. This is termed also a **Cross capitall**; or a Cross headed after the **Tuscan Order.** Or a Cross Brick-axed, because the ends much resemble the Heads of Brick-axes, by which Brick-layers cut their Brick. See *lib.* 3. *cap.* 3. *numb.* 44.

XXXVIII. He beareth Or, a **Cross Pendall**, Sable, garnished in the center (or middle) with five Rubies: Some call it a **Cross Spindle.** Such a Cross as this I find stamped upon the Coin of King *Harold* the Second.

XXXIX. He beareth Argent, four **Roman V in point** Gules, fretted with an Annulett Sable. Others term it 4 V in Cross, fretted with a Ring. This is Stamped upon King *Edward* the Elders Coin.

XL. He beareth Argent, two **Pales Patee couped, surmounted** of as many **Barruletts** of the same, in form of a Cross, Sable: Some term these two **Billetts, behynsed** with the like in Cross, others will have it to be a **Cross double parted Patee.** Born by the name of *Partby*, or *Bartby.*

XLI. He beareth Gules, a **Cross Flamed**, or **Flamant**, Or: Born by the name of *Firecross*.

This is also termed a Cross Raisie, or Rayed, because the Points issuing from the Cross represent the Rays of the Sun.

XLII. He beareth Argent, a **Cross Patriarchal** with **a Lambeaux** on the Dexter side, Gules: If it had not been wanting on the Sinister part in the foot, it should have been termed a **Cross Lambeaux**, as in *chap.* 5. *numb.* 104. though some do term it so, only add (the rebating on the Sinister end:) This is born by the name of *Norcote*.

B the like A born by *Tschetschke*, of *Siletia*.

XLIII. He beareth Vert, a **Cross Patriarchal Patee**, and Flory in the foot, Or. *By* the name of *Dunpatrick*. Also per Pale *B* and A such a Cross G supported by two Lions rampant, *B*arry of 10 O and A Crowned, is the States Coat of *Hirschfelt* in *Germany*, for so they write it in their Language.

XLIV. He beareth Or, a **Cross Patee fixed (or entyre,)** at each end a **Label issuant** Argent, from the Center four Flowers de lis Azure, an Escochion (or Inescochion) Sable: If the Field and Label were of the same Colour or Mettle, then some Authors have termed it, a **Cross demy sarcelled**, as being half sawed through: Others a **Cross Notched**; and a **Cross Patee escarteled** at each end, as having a square piece cut out of it: And again, others will have this Cross fixed, to be charged at each end with a Canton in the middle; but I hold them more proper to be termed Lambeauxes. This Coat is born by the name of *Barbach*.

Chap. 6. Numb. 11.

XLV. He beareth Argent, **four Cheverons**, the first and third engraled on the lower sides, Gules. By the name of *Darwenberg*.

G two Cheverons B invecked on the higher sides, and edged Argent. By the name of *Asten*.

XLVI. He beareth Argent, a **Cheveron in point, Imbowed**, Gules, on each side of the top three **Laurel Leaves**, Vert. See *chap. 6. numb.* 34. This is born by the name of *Die Schutzener*.

S the like Cheveron and Leaves O by *Van Tranbach*.

XLVII. He beareth **party per Pale**, Argent and Gules, two **Cheverons reversed**, counterchanged. By the name of *Von Lerch*.

XLVIII. He beareth Azure, a **Cheveron Potent, counter-Potent**; in Base, a **Pale couped** at the top Argent: This may be fitly termed a **Cheveron Grady**; by reason it ascendeth by degrees, being contrary to Crenell or Imbattleing: See *chap. 6. numb.* 15. This is born by the name of *Stainkircher*.

O Such a Cheveron G with a Demy-Lion on the top of it, is the Coat-Armour of *Rugen*.

G such a Cheveron A and a Label of 5 points O born by *Healy*.

XLIX. He beareth party **per Cheveron**, Gules and Azure, on a Cheveron Argent, a **Chain flexed and reflexed**, Sable. The *French* call this a Chaplett or a Bracelet, a String of *B*eads. This is born by *Alouzo Diego Lopez de Mirandole*.

L. He beareth Or, a **Cheveron** Azure, **charged with a Fesse**, Argent: The Fesse is supposed to be all of one piece, though the bottom part of the Cheveron do separate it; neither can it fitly be termed any thing else; for it must run streight, according to the lines of the Ordinary; yet some term the Cheveron charged with 2 Squares or Quadrants; and that in my Judgment is the most proper term; or else those Blazoning, mentioned, *numb.* 18. and *chap.* 8. *numb.* 62. are not right. This is born by the name of *Merkenby*.

Chap. 6. Numb. 57.

LI. He beareth Argent, three **Darts**, Sans Feathers in Fesse, issuing out of Base, Sable; Pheons or Heads Azure, **surmounted** of **two Barruletts**, couped Gules. Born by the name of *Yatell*.

LII. He beareth Or, three Pales **couped, debruised** with four Barruletts of the same, Sable. This is termed a **Latice**, see *chap.* 7. *numb.* 12. but most proper a **Portcullice disarmed** and **dismembred**, or disjointed, by reason it is pulled to pieces and destroyed, only the middle part remaining; it is born by *Reffler*.

LIII. He beareth Azure, a **Pale**, between two other couped; all **fitched** in the bottom Argent; **debruised** with two **Barruletts** Or; **Nailed** Sable. This is born by the name of *Barcade*.

A the like G Armed in the fitched parts with sockets or Hoops and Spikes B. Born by *Die Schwartzkopf*.

Chap. 6. Numb. 84.

LIV. He beareth Argent, a **Losenge Diapered**, (or adorned with a Branched Border and Flowers) Azure. Born by the name of *Sandelance*.

LV. He beareth Or, eight **Losenges conjoined** in form of a Cross, *viz.* two, four, and two Vert. By the name of *Holson*. The like A in a Field G is born by *Van Grafenegk*. Also by *Blanckenfteiner*.

LVI. He beareth Purpure, a **Vascle**, each **corner Bottonyed**, Argent. By the name of *Van Wallendart*.

A a Quadrant quarter pierced, the points Flurt G. Born by the Family of *Quaternall*.

Chap. 7. Numb. 20.

LVII. He beareth Argent, two **points dexter and sinister Imbowed** Gules, and a **point Escartelled** Azure; or two points dexter and sinister **shapourned** or **convered**, *&c.* Born by the name of *Gaskellinger*.

Per Fesse Escartalled A and G is born by *Dacham*. And A and B with a Vine Leaf, is *Geymanners* Coat.

LVIII. He beareth **Pily** of four pieces **traverse**, Argent and Gules. Others term it Bendy Barwise. See more *chap.* 7. *numb.* 98. This is born by the name of *Van Krechmar*. Also by *Van Greyffen*.

LIX. He beareth Vert, a **Pile**, and two **demy ones Im-**

Imbowed or Flanched, and fixed to the sides Argent, each charged in Chief with a **Torteaux.** This is also Blazoned, Pily of Five, or two **Piles reversed** Vert, in a Field Argent, *&c.* Born by the name of *Borlach.*

The like B and O three annulets in Chief, and two in base counterchanged. By the name of *Die Schutzen.*

LX. He beareth Argent, a **Pile in point Imbowed** Bendwise, **pierced Losengeways,** Azure. Some term this a **point in point** reversed, and in Bend, *&c.* This is born by the name of *Thurnell.* And such a Pile or Point reversed Bendwise Sinister, is quarted by the Earl of *Wiltzer, Van Spiegelfeldt* in *Germany.*

LXI. He beareth Or, a **Pile in Bend,** Sable, having three Laurel leaves on each side Vert, **surmounted,** (or charged) with another Gules. Born by the name of *Diplich.*

A Cheveron thus adorned with 6 leaves O in a Field S is born by *Schutzen Van Tranbach* in *Alsatia.*

LXII. He beareth Azure, a **Point pointed,** on the top a **Pomell pomelled,** Argent. Born by the name of *Hermansdorf.* If the bottom Lines had come higher out of the sides of the Escochion, it should then have been termed per Fesse a point, *&c.* or per Base a point pointed, *&c.*

LXIII. He beareth Argent, a **point pointed reversed Bottony** at the end Azure. By the name of *Hurst.*

G the like A born by *Die Feur van Au.* of *Bavaria.*

LXIV. He beareth Or, a **point pointed** to the Chief, Vert, with the same **reversed** to the Base, counterchangep. Some will term it a **point pointed in point,** the same **reversed** counterchanged. By the name of *Bomstall.*

LXV. He beareth party per Fesse **point in point reversed,** Argent and Purpure; an Annulett Sable. By the name of *Grasswein:* Also by *Waldkirk.*

S the like point in point reversed, between two flowers de lis A, is born by *Pucher van Ringers.* And G the like A by *Van Curnegk.*

LXVI. He beareth **quarterly** Vert and Argent, a **point in point** Or. Some Blazon it **per Cross in point,** see *chap. 7. numb.* 40. the *French* say per Pale, with the point parted into three Escochions. This is the Coat Armour of *Lalain.*

LXVII. He beareth Argent, a **point in point, floxy** on the top, Vert. These kind of bearings are often made both Bend Dexter, and Sinister ways. This is born by the name of *Volsby.* And the Field G and point A by *Hofmairn.*

LXVIII. He beareth Or, a **point pointed,** Gules, **Pomelled** and **Floxy** on the top, Azure. Some term it **Pometee** and **Floxished** or **Flowed** on the top. Born by *Van Hoyer.*

A the like G. Born by *Luiteridt.*

B the like in Bend A by *Hollen.*

S the like in Bend Sinister O. Born by *Schroten.*

LXIX. He beareth party per Fesse, Azure, **point in point, pometee and floxished,** Or, a Cinquefoil, Gules. It is very frequent with the *Dutch* Heralds thus to flourish and adorn the top of these said Points, with variety of Leaves and Flowers, and out of Crowns to have several things to proceed, as Feathers, Branches, *&c.* which the Ingenious may easily give them their terms in Blazoning, by these few examples. This is born by *Baken.*

A a point pointed, with a Crown on the top G, having three Roses with Stalks issuing proper. By the name of *Van Dodge.*

LXX. He beareth party per Pale, **Barry** of six **contrary Urdee,** Argent and Gules. Some term it Barry of 6 Champion. Others per Pale **barriated point in point.** And per Pale crenelle points pointed. Others Barry of 6 Urdee at the ends; or **contrary champion** at the sides. And others **Barry** (or Urdee) **in point** Barwise of six, See *numb.* 83. This is born by the name of *Durdivalle,* or *De Urdevile.*

Per Fesse O and B Urdee Paly, is born by *Negell* and by *Dormister.* See *numb.* 83.

LXXI. He beareth party per Pale, Vert and Argent, a Pile **fitched** (or Urdee) in the top with a Crenell, or ragulee on each side, counterchanged. Some term it a Pile **ragulee transposed.** This is born by the name of *Tanhausener.* The like B and A is born by *Van Waldenburg.*

B and A per Pale, a Cheveron G. Such a Pale in Base counterchanged by the name of *Waldenburg.*

LXXII. He beareth party per Pale, the first per **Bend Nuee,** (or **goared**) Vert and Argent and Gules. The French term this per Bend **Tranchee Nuage,** and **Bendy Arondie.** By the name of *Ratrice.* This should be Blazoned, per Bend Nuee to the Dexter, to signifie the points are that way, else they may as well be set otherwise.

LXXIII. He beareth Azure, a **Pale** Argent, on a **Bend** three **Roundletts** all counterchanged. By the name of *Grisgault.*

LXXIV. He beareth **Barry** of four, Or and Gules, and **per Pale** counterchanged. Of some Barry of four, per Pale counterchanged O and G. Born by the name of *Coppiar.*

LXXV. *He* beareth party **per Fesse,** and **per Pale in Chief,** Argent, Vert, and Azure. Others beginning at the top part say, party per Pale A and O, and per Fesse B. By the name of *Coiteran.*

Per Pale A and G and per Fesse B born by *Van Pannitz.*

Per Fesse G and per Pale A and S. Born by *Girsdorf,* and *Van Parsberg.*

Per Fesse G and per Pale B and A. By *Van Gersdorf,* and *Van Corbitz.*

LXXVI. *He* beareth Argent, a **point** with one **Battlement,** and a **Loop-hole** therein, Sanguine; a Falcon with **Wings displayed** standing thereon, proper. By the name of *Falwall.*

A the same B a Bird thereon G by *Andernach.*

S the same point A and Falcon O by *Hirschvogell.*

LXXVII. *He* beareth Argent, a **Wall** with a **Battlement,** Gules, having a (**Pendent** or) **Pennon** fixed thereon, Azure, Staff Or. This Coat is quartred by the Family of *Van Waselspreeg.* Some will say, a Wall, Masoned; but that term is understood by naming a Wall.

LXXVIII. *He* beareth party per Bend **Escartelle gra-by** Gules and Argent, **masoned** Sable. Born by the name of *Van Klamazenstein.* See *chap.* 7. *numb.* 23.

LXXIX. *He* beareth Or, a **point Sinister removed**, and extending it self to the Dexter side, Gules: Two **Squires contrary coyned.** This Coat I hold better blazoned by reason of the charge of the Squires thus, party per Bend, Gules and Or, two Squires counterchanged, a Chief of the second. By the name of *Haller.*

LXXX. *He* beareth Azure, two **Gussets** Argent, each parted **per Fesse Rasie**, Or. The French term it **flamant** or **flaming**, because they resemble the Rayes of the Sun; as thus B. in Paul Cope; the Flances (or sides) flaming S and O. By the name of *Belisare*, Lieutenant to the Emperour *Justinian. Da obilum Belisareo.*

LXXXI. *He* beareth party per pale, Azure and Argent, a Pile **transposed or reversed**, indented, counterchanged. Such a Coat is quartered by *Die Greifenrot* in the Palatinate of *Rhine.*

LXXXII. *He* beareth party per Fesse, the chief part **Pily of eight.** Argent and Vert, and Or, at the points a Bay leaf fixed, of the second. By the name of *Waldnergh.*

The same A and G, the leaves of the second. Born by the name of *Faulhaber.*

LXXXIII. He beareth party per Fesse, **Barrey in point**, Argent, and Gules, and Or, a **Shapournett** (or **Mount** in Base) Azure. Some per Fesse **Ardee in point Palewise**, *&c.* See *numb.* 70. This belongs to the Coat of *Natel Van Diernstein.*

Per Fesse, the like Barry O and B: In the Base a Lion passant: Born by the name of *Westernof.*

LXXXIV. He beareth Argent, a Fesse Azure, between two **Piles triple pointed**, in form of a Cheveron Gules, and a **Shapournett mounted**, Vert. Others to make a long business of it, will Blazon it a Fesse between two triple Piles in Chief, one out of the dexter, the other out of the sinister side, Cheveron ways (or in Cheveron) and a Shapournett Shapournetted (or a Mount with a Hill upon it) in Base. The *Dutch* Heraulds make all their Hills generally after this form; and of some are called a Shapournet Crested. This is born by the name of *Luczenburgall.* A a Fesse V. and two such Piles G is born by *Kevdell.*

LXXXV. He beareth party per Fesse Gules and Argent, on the first six **mounts surmounting** one another in form of a **Shapournett**, Or; on the second a **Pile** of **four points**, issuing out of Base, Bendwise, Sable. Some term this a Shapournet of six pieces. This is born by the name of *Landsperg van Lerch.*

LXXXVI. He beareth Barry of four **Escalloped**, Argent and Gules. Some term the Barry **countericalloped**, by reason they fall one contrary to the other, after the manner of Scales upon Fish. Others term it Barry Nuagee contra Nuagee, which we may English Barry Clouded contra Clouded. See *chap.* 6. *numb.* 100. and *chap.* 3. *numb.* 113. This Coat each **Scale Nailed**, Sable, is born by the name of *Armourer.*

LXXXVII. He beareth party per Fesse, Argent, a **Shapournett shapourned** (or a **Mount mounted**) Vert and Azure, three **Piles reversed**, (or **transposed**) Or.

If the Field was all of one Colour or Mettle, then you must Blazon it a Shapournett shapourned in Chief, and 3 Piles reversed in Base. This Coat is born by the name of *Hoberg Van Schenborn.*

LXXXVIII. He beareth Argent, six **Ogresses**, and a Lion passant in Base, Gules; **Masoned** between them Sable: Otherwise Blazoned, Argent **Masoned** in four **Divisions** Sable, between six Ogresses 3, 2, 1, and in Base, a Lion passant, *&c.* The *French* Blazon it, A. **Massonee** of seven pieces S. charged with 6 **Ogresses**, and a Lion of the same. By the name of *Ranlach.*

The same charged with 6 Martlets and a Cressant S. By *Marillac.*

LXXXIX. He beareth Or, a Cross and Salter Gules between 8 **Pellets**, a **Delfe** (or **Quadrat**) Argent. By the name of *Bletzen.*

S the like O an Inescochion B charged with a Bend, A. By the name of *Van Rotenstein.*

XC. He beareth party per Fesse **Indented Bowed**, Argent and Gules, each point **Pometee**, counterchanged. By the name of *Pilgram.*

The like Indented Bowed per Bend A and G by *Van Mort.*

XCI. He beareth quarterly Argent and Or, the first, a **Label issuing** out of Chief Azure, the second and third **Bordered** Gules; and the last a **Pale couped** on the top (or a **Demy-Pale** issuing out of Base) of the third. By the name of *Lauderhessen.*

XCII. He beareth Argent, a **Fesse**, **Canton**, and 2 **Lambeaures** issuing out of Chief, Azure, in Base a **Demy-Bordet** (or a Border diminished or determinate in Fesse) Gules. The *French* term these **Lambeaux** by the name of **Pales recoursie.** By the name of *Littlegood.*

G a Canton and two such Lambeaux A. By *Hafner Van Waselheim.*

A 2 such Lambeaux, and as many Barrs S. By *Hamerstein.*

XCIII. He beareth party per Bend, Argent and Or; three **Labells issuing** out of Chief **Pendant Bendways** Azure: In Base a Bend Sinister Vert. These Labels the *French* term, **Pales retracted**, as being one shorter than the other, according to the parting of the Field. Born by the name of *Gaskell.*

XCIV. He beareth Argent, a Fesse Gules, three **Labells** issuing out of Chief, **Imbowed** Sable; in Base three Pales **contrary posed**, and **conjoined** and **Fitched** on the tops, and **Barred**, Vert; these represent the Pales of a Garden or Court. This Coat is born by the name of *Rivall.*

G 3 such Labels O. Born by *De Ligne.*

XCV. He beareth Argent, four **Cheverons** Gules, a **Pallet**, Sable. If this were termed according to the Art or Science of a Master Carpenter, he would say it is a **Standart** supporting four Rafters (or the **Crown-post**, or **Kings-piece**, **sustaining** four **Sleepers**) in Cheveron. This is the Coat Armour of *Shermite.* See *chap.* 8. *numb.* 119.

XCVI. He

XCVI. He beareth Argent, a **Fesse** Azure, between two **Barruletts** Or, **Indented on one side**, Gules, or Indented on the out-sides; or else two **Barruletts**, each having 3 **Dents** into the Field. By the name of *Assor*. But this is better Blazoned, by saying A 3 Fusils in Fesse G over all a Fesse B between 2 Barruletts O.

A 3 Fusils S the Fesse and Barruletts A born by *Onsorg*.

XCVII. He beareth **quarterly**, the first and last Argent, a **Pale** Gules; the second and third per Fesse **Escartelie**; the one **Grady** of three, the other of two, Azure and Or. This is born by the name of *Pillar*.

☞ Note, the **Escartellee Grady**, if it exceed two heights or degrees, are to be numbred, as Grady of 3, 4, 5, and the like. Per Fesse Escartelle of 2 degrees, G and A. By the name of *Profer*.

XCVIII. He beareth party **per Pale**, Or and Gules, and **per Fesse** Argent; a **point Indented**, Azure; a **Bordeur**, Vert. Some term it per Pale in Chief, and per Fesse Indented in Base; but hereby they shew nothing how, or after what manner the partition is in the middle part. The *French* term it **coupe**, the first parted; and the second half per Chief, and Indented into 4 pieces, *&c.* By the name of *Gib van Fernough*.

XCIX. He beareth Argent, three **Bends** Gules; on a **Chief** of the first, two **Lions issuant combatant** or **affrontant**, Sable; in the neither part a Fillet Or, charged with an Adder, Azure. The *French* term the latter part of this Blazon, a Chief supported Or, with an Adder Azure. Such a Coat as this is born by *Paulus Savelus*, Prince *de Albano*.

The like Barry of 6 A and G on a Chief A supported (or filletted O a Rose-branch issuant. By the name of *Des Ursins*.

C He beareth Or, a **Losenge in point**, (or extending it self to all sides of the Escochion) Gules; charged with three Barrs Argent. The *French* Blazon this, Gules, a Fesse of three pieces Argent; **clad or slaved and shot**, Or. Others call them four **points** Or. See *chap.* 7. *numb.* 90. how it is otherwise Blazoned. This Coat is born by the name of *De Santepau*.

CI. He beareth party **per Fesse**, Argent, 3 **Pales**, Gules; and Azure, a **Canton**, Or. Some will say, per Fesse, the first A 3 Pales G. and second B a Canton O. Born by the name of *Rencheil*.

G 3 Mascles A on the Canton A a Lion rampant S Chief O 3 Pales G. By the name of *Bergues*. In this Blazon is lodged 3 Coats, *viz.* the Chief, by *Malines*, Canton by *Brabant*, and the rest by *Bautersens*. Here the Canton gives place to the Chief, contrary to *chap.* 8. *numb.* 102. and therefore first named.

CII. He beareth party **per Salter**, the first and last, Or, four **Pales**, Gules; the others Azure, a **Castle** Argent. The *French* Blazon it quarterly in Salter, the Chief and Base Or, four Pales Gules; the two **Flanckes** (or Costes) Azure, a Castle Argent. Here is two Coats couched in this one Blazoning, yet all born by one name, as was the foregoing examples, *viz.* the Pales belong to the Kingdom of *Arragon*; and the Castles to the Kingdom of *Castile*, which is usually in short thus set forth, per Salter *Arragon*, and *Castile* counterposed.

CIII. He beareth **Gyrony Indented**, Or and Sable, a **Fesse** Gules. Born by the name of *Crackleborne*. If the Girony did not meet all in the points, but made themselves into four, then they are termed S 4 Gyrons, O. which according to the making of them, shewed, *chap.* 3. *numb.* 105, 106. are to proceed from the four chief places of the Escochion and to meet in Fesse.

CIV. He beareth Argent, six **long Stones issuing** out of Base, conjoined, surmounting one another in form of a Pyramid Azure. Some term them 3 Stones out of **Base**, 2 **surmounting** the 3, and 1 the 2. Born by the name of *Slangstone*.

G the like A born by *Preisach*, that is the Town Coat of *Preisach*.

CV. He beareth Argent, a **Barr Gemelle conjoined**, Gules; between three **triple Pales Fitched and Barred**; two issuing out of Chief, the other in Base, Or. Born by the name of *Pallizar*.

B 3 Flower de Luces O between 3 such triple Pales A. By the name of *Van Arnsdorf*.

Chap. 8. *Numb.* 88.

CVI. He beareth Gules, a **Cheveron** Argent, **pierced** with 2 **Darts Salterwise**, in Base, the Pheons (or heads) in Chief. By the name of *Meychsner*. Others Blazon it two **Darts** (or Arrows) in Salter, **points erected** and **piercing** of a **Cheveron debused** on the neither side.

CVII. He beareth Argent, an **Arrow drawn in a Bow**, in Pale proper, the Head **pierced** into the middle of the **Chief**, Gules. By the name of *Schutzenbergh*.

CVIII. He beareth Gules, a **Sword in Bend** proper, **piercing a Shield**, Or, the end **debused by a point Dexter**, Argent. By the name of *Scuten persen*, or *Scutenperes*.

G the same (without the point Dexter) born by *Heldten*.

CIX. He beareth party per Pale, Argent, two **Barrs** and a **Fesse** Vert. This is one entire Coat, though it seems to be two Impaled, and is born by the name of *Bareface Vom Gomarch*. Yet divide the same, and the Fesse is born by *Greenwrag*, and the Barrs by *Futerer*.

CX. He beareth Gules, a **point pointed**, and a **Chief** with 2 **Imbattlements**, Argent. Or a Chief with 2 Crenells. This is born by the name of *Stedrile*.

Chap. 7. *Numb.* 116.

CXI. He beareth **Losengy** Argent and Gules, each Mettle, charged with two Barrs Sable. else say A Losengy, G. each other Barred (or a Bar Gemelle) S. By the name of *Seringrave*.

Parted per three **Fesse-wise**, **Bend-wise**, and **Bend-Sinister**, all counterchanged the one from the other O and B by the name of *Rorbach*.

CXII. He beareth **Barry** of four, Or and Azure, **parted per Frett** counterchanged. This is also termed **Barry** of four **point in point endented** counterchanged; but there is a difference between this and that mentioned, *chap.* 7. *numb.* 115. By the name of *Kettich*.

CXIII. He

CXIII. He beareth Argent, on a **Mount** in Base Vert, five **Hop-poles fixed** in Fesse, Or. By the name of *Mountacheval*. S on a Snowy Mount in Base 6 **Staves** or **Poles fixed** in Fesse A. Born by *Monsterberg*.

CXIV. He beareth **per Pale and Salter** Or and Gules; three **Flales** (or **Threshalls** in **Triangle**, after the form of a Y, the **Swakes pendant**, Sable. By the name of *Hubagdman*.

Party per Pale A and B and per Cheveron G three such Flales in Triangle O. Born by *Ungeraten*. See *numb.* 116.

CXV. He beareth Argent, three **Shapernes in Pale**, Sable, called **Chaperons**, **Chapourns** and **Shapournetts**, from the resemblance they have to Hoods or Head Attires after the old Fashion. This Coat is born by the name of *Adelevesen van Heym*.

A 3 such Chaperons, Gules, edged on the tops, O. Born by the name of *Kramberg*. See *lib.* 3. *chap.* 13. *numb.* 120.

CXVI. He beareth party per pale and point, Sable Gules and Azure, in Fesse (or per Fesse) counterchanged; three **Shapournetts mounted** (or **cristed**) **removed**, Argent. They are here termed removed, or cut from their situation, which is ever at the bottom line of either Field or Ordinary on which they are born, as *numb.* 83, 84, 87. Otherwise this is blazoned by some, quarterly Sable and Gules, a point in point Azure, three *Hoods* Argent. By the name of *Van Howelstall*.

A on a Bend G 3 such Hoods O. Born by *Van Howelt* of *Saxony*.

There are Coats that have another round above the top of these two, as if they were three, one above and less than another, as *Schwartzberg* beareth A a triple *Hood* or Shaperon S.

CXVII. He beareth party per Fesse, **counter Pomettee** of three, Azure and Argent, *chap.* 7. *numb.* 26, 28. of others **per Fesse Nebulee** of three, *&c.* This is born by the name of *Bourgongne*. After this manner partitions of Fields are made with Leaves, Flowers de lis, Roses, and such like set contrary and counterchanged.

CXVIII. He beareth **Masculy Bendy** of four, Argent and Gules; others do term it **Masculy**, A and G. 3 **Bendletts** (or costs) of the same (or of the second) signifying, that as the Ordinary lieth either streight or Bendwise, so the Mascules ly answerable thereunto; else of right their points are direct upright, as you may see *chap.* 7. *numb.* 116. This is born by the name of *Brandreth* or *Brandrelth*.

CXIX. He beareth Azure, a **Pale**, and two **Squires** Argent; a Chief of the first. Some do term it a Pale between two Squires, (or two **Squires** from Chief to the **Base**) others Blazon them two **Points Dexter and Sinister**: or two **squires in point**, because they extend from point. This is born by the name of *Squiroake*.

CXX. He beareth **parted per Fesse**, Argent and Gules; two **Piles reversed in point**; out of the Dexter and Sinister Base, of the first; these two Coats do something resemble each other; and yet by their Blazon, they are of contrary natures and kinds. This is born by the name of *Tidnock*.

Per Fesse B and A in Chief, a Lion passant, and in base two Piles reversed counterchanged. By the name of *Fraventraut*.

TO
EDWARD HARBART,
Esquire.

William Street, Somtimes Major *of the City of* Chester,

Anno Dom. 1666. & 1683.

Richard Harrison Sherriff *thereof,* Anno Dom. 1685. *Son and Heir of Richard Harrison* Alderman, *and* Justice *of Peace:* Major Anno Dom. 1667 *John Warrington, Son of William Warrington* Alderman, *Richard Blackburne, and Joseph Diason,*

Gentlemen:

R. H. Wisheth a continuance of health, in all Prosperity, and Happyness, with a further increase of Honour; Who in perpetual memory of your worths, doth Dedicate this last Chapter of his first Book of Herauldry *to you, who doubts not of your ready acceptance: seeing you have been ever Forward to Promote the Interest of the Author thereof; who for his many Favours received at your hands, obligeth him to subscribe himself, your most devoted Freind and Servant to the Death.*

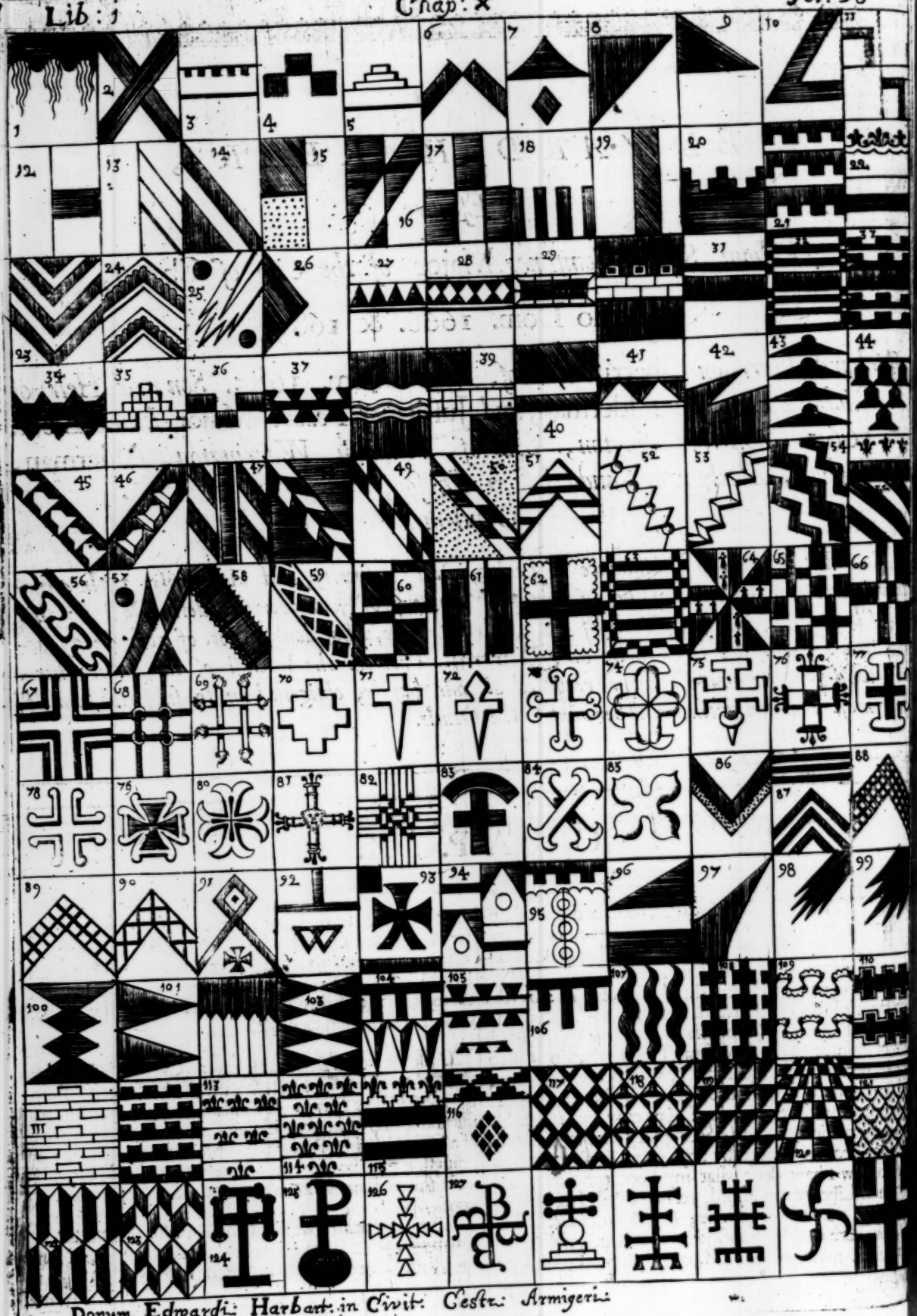
CHAP. X.

1. HAving finished the the content of the last chapter, it was my thoughts to have finished my first Book of Armory, consisting of Ordinaries, with their several Division, Subdivisions, and Tinctures of Field made by and through Lines: But by the Assistance of my good Friend, and fellow Labourer in matters of Armory (Mr. *Silvanus Morgan* of *London* Armes Painter) I obtained some Books wherein upon a Serious perusall, I found some certain Bearings, which I did not formerly take notice off, which though they be born after their due time, yet I hope may be Serviceable to the Instruction of others; Seeing they are such things as have not been mentioned by any of our *English* Authors.

And now I have done what my Poor endevour, and my small Library can afford, yet in the end, I must conclude with that Latine Phraise; *Barnardus non visit omnia*, for there may be thousands of such Kinds, which neither I, nor mine, to the third, of fourth generation shall ever come to see or know: for each Kingdom or Contrey hath some thing therein, which is born in their cognizence & tokens of honour, that is unknown to all but themselves; others in seeing thereof, being not able to Judge of them, what they either are, or signifie. Of such kind take these few Forreign examples.

I. He beareth Azure, from a Cheef **Nebule** or **Waved** Sable, the **Sun Beams** or **Rayes**: Born by the name of *Hesper*. *Guillim* terms it, the Sun resplendant Rayes thereout issuing, And *Morgan* saith out of a Cloud in Chief Rayonee, proper. But according to this draught it may be more fitly Blazoned, a clould in Chief with three Flames of Fire issuant. See *lib.* 2 *chap.* 1 *numb.* 60.

In a Field Saturn out of a Cloud in Chief **Rayonee**, a **demy Sinister Arm** extended in Pale, laying hold on the Wrist of an other: (**extended in Fesse** Or) issuant



Donum Edwardi Harbart in Civit: Cestr: Armigeri

from the Dexter side Luna, with five **demy Flowers de Lis bordering the edges** of the Escochion Sol, and in Base a Pomegranate Slipped and Leaved of the same. is the Coat Armour of the Colledge of Phisicians.

II. He beareth Or, a **Bend Sinister,** Gules, and a **Bend** (Dexter) Azure Born by *Bendall.* You may at the first view, take this to be a Salter, if they were both of one colour, which perhaps you may find jointly thus born.

☞ Therefore in Coats of such Bearing, (if you use not the terms **Surmounting** or **Debruising**) you must carefully observe, which of them lyeth next to the Field, and name that first, and its colour, then the other after. And this rule holdeth not alone herein, but also in all other Coats of Arms formed of diverſ **ordinaries,** or **charges,** or both, one upon an other: whereof the one must necessarily lye nearer to the Field, then the other, as I have formerly given severall examples in *chap.* 8 *number* 26 to 35.

III He beareth Gules, a **Fesse** Or, **Imbatled on the Top,** Sable. This was the Coate of Sr. *Aylis*, one of the Knights of the round table in the time of King *Arthur* of *Britta n.* Some of our Ancient *Brittish* Blazoners, say crenelled into, or on the top with Sable.

IV. He beareth Argent, a **Fesse Downsett** or **double downsett Couped,** Sable. Is born by *Van Sindorfe.* See this otherwise Blazoned, *chap.* 8 *numb.* 111. and *chap.* 4 *numb.* 84.

V. He beareth Argent, a **Fesse Gradie,** or with three **Gyces** on the higher side, Sable. Born by the name of *Hohenstein,* also by *Marquartstein* in the Province of *Bavaria.* See *lib.* 3 *chap.* 13 *numb.* 37.

VI. He beareth Azure, a **Cheveron disjoynt** or open in the head Or. By the name of *Brokmale.* See more of this *chap.* 6 *numb.* 30

S the like between three Losenges A. Is born by *Storton.*

VII. He beareth **Parted per Fesse,** Sable and Argent, on the first (or in Chief) a **point pointed** (or in point) and on the second (or in Base) a **Loseng** Counterchanged. By the name of *Die Graeber.* The like Born by *Die Gruber Van Grub* of *Bavaria.* See the like kind of bearing *numb.* 69.

VIII. He beareth Argent, a **Point dexter removed,** extending to the Sinister side, Azure. By the name of *Westernather* a *Dutch* family. This is the *German* way of Blazoning it, but in my oppinion it is better termed, **parted per Bend Sinister,** Azure and Argent a Chief of the second. See *numb.* 79.

The like B and O a Greyhound **currant in bend,** Sinister A coloured G a Chief O Born by *Van Grosa.*

IX. He beareth Gules, a **point dexter removed,** in Chief Argent. By the name of *Eysersteten.* Else Blazon it, per Fesse, and per Bend in the Chief, G and A. But some are of the Judgment, to which I rather incline, that these two last bearings are more properly termed Gyrons or Squires, in regard one of the sides rune streight and the other Bevile, as they generally do: if so, then Blazon them thus, a **Gyron,** or **Squire** in Chief, **Transverse in point** to the Sinister Fesse. Others affirm that a Gyron cannot extend further then the middle of the Fesse point, and therefore it ought chiefly to be named a Squire.

X. He beareth Gules a **point Sinister removed,** & extending it self to the **Dexter Fesse point,** Argent: charged with the like Azure. By the name of *Sallerburg,* also by *Beurl* of *Switzerland* in *Germany.* Else blazon it a **Squire Sinister transverse in point** to the dexter side, terminated in Fesse, Surmounted of an other *&c.*

XI. He beareth Quarterly Azure and Argent (in the first and last) a **Squire** Or. By the name of *Van Kurmevht* of *Bavaria.* See *chap.* 7 *numb.* 75 and 6 33. These are of some termed Joyners Squares fixed to the dexter side and Base, if two be in a Field, or Quarter, they are ever set endorsed, for the cannot be both on a side.

XII. He beareth **parted per Pale,** Gules and Argent a **Fesse** Vert. Born by the Family of *Van Sintzendorf* in *Bavaria.* Here I name not the Fesse to be on the Sinister side, because being a colour, it could be no where else then on the mettle part.

Per Pale A and G a Fesse of the first. is born by *Van Messenbach.*

XIII. He beareth **parted per Pale** Gules, and **Bendy** of four Argent, and Azure. Born by the name of *Cammer.* Some Blazon it thus, per Pale Gules, and per Bend A and B a Bend Counterchanged.

XIV. He beareth **party per Bend,** Argent and Sable, a Bend of the first. By the name of *Romer zu Marotsch.*

XV. He beareth **party per Fesse** Argent and Gules, and **per Pale** Azure. By the name of *Floriner* of *Bavaria.* Here you see the dexter side partition, which is per Fesse, runs through the Field, till it meets with an opposition, which is per Pale where it stops, not exceeding that limit, which if it did, would not be either per Fesse or per Pale, but Quarterly. See *chap.* 7 *numb.* 42 and *chap.* 9 *numb.* 7.

XVI. He beareth **party per Pale,** Argent and Gules, a **Bend Sinister** by the same, (or counterchanged) Or & Azure. By thename of *Eberhart.* This I set down as a president, that a Bend or Fesse or the like; may & is often divided according to the partition of the Field, yet counterchanged with contrary colours.

Per Pale O and B a Fesse of the same division G and A is born by *Dicason.*

XVII. He beareth **party per Fesse, a Pale** counterchanged. By the name of *Van Halleg.*

The same G and A is Born by *Lavider.*

The like B and O three Buckles of the second. By the name of *Spalding.*

XVIII. He beareth **parted per Fesse,** and three **Pale conjoyned,** Azure and Argent. By the name of *Van Rein* of *Franckford* in the *Low Countryes.* Thus the *Dutch* and *Germans,* often bear their Coats composed of Fesses & Pales conjoyned, Barrs & Cantons, & Chiefs and Pales *&c.* Makeing no division Line between them. which kind of Coats are very rarely used by us of this

Kingdome, for we generally make a division Score between such ordinaries

XIX. He beareth party **per Pale** Azure, and **per Pale** Gules and Argent. By the name of *Ratibor*. This may also be Blazoned per Pale B and G a side A.

XX. He beareth parted **per Fesse Battled counter Imbattled,** Gules and Argent. By the name of *Van Ega*. Thus partitions are not made only with a Single Battlement, but with one Batlement upon the top of another, to two or three height: which some terme counter Battelled of two or three Grieces, degree, or heads.

Per Bend Sinister the like O and G is born by *Drosten*.

XXI. He beareth **Barry of six,** Argent and the Gules **Imbattelled on the top.** By the name of *Dopelstein* of *Alsatia*. Some say Argent and Battled on the Higher side Gules. Other, triparted, each per Fesse Imbatelled A & G.

XXII. He beareth **parted per Fesse,** Argent and Gules, a **Barr Engralled** each point **Flory** & **pometee interposed** on the top, & **invecked** in the bottom, Sable: and a Barrulet, Or. By the name of *Sigelmann*. This Barr ought, and generally doth not exceed five intire Engraled points, whereof three are Flory, and the two between Pomety: and the Inveck to answer the points of the Engrale. See *chap.* 4. *numb.* 76.

XXIII. He beareth **Cheveronny of eight reversed,** Argent, and Gules. By the name of *Wincher*. Either Cheverons themselves, or Cheverony to six, eight or tenn, are much born by the Gentry of the *Netherlands*.

Cheverony of four reversed A and G is born by *Van Witzleben*.

XXIV. He beareth Gules, two **Cheverons** Azure, **edged** having the top part **Engraled in the inner side,** Argent. Born by the name of *Asten* a *German* Familey. This may also be Blazoned, Gules two Cheverons Argent, each **Surmounted** of another **invecked** on the top Azure. See *chap.* 6 *numb.* 7. If these four **edgings** were four **Cheveronells** and all the rest of the Field of one colour, then you may term them four Cheverons, or Cheveronells, the first and third Engraled on the lower, or nether side Argent, in a Field Gules, which is born by the name of *Steelfoxe*.

B four Cheverons, the first and third Engraled on the top O the other A Born by the name of *Innocent*.

XXV. He beareth Argent, a **Pile of five points issuant** from the **Sinister Chief Bendwise,** Gules. Born by the name of *Van Rainsbrune*. Piles of this nature are often born with 2 3 4 and 5 points seldome exceeding that, and are set severall wayes, having also the **points adorned,** with variety of Flowers, Leaves Starrs *&c.* See *chap.* 3 *numb.* 94 and 9 *numb.* 84 85. Sometime the points are born Imbowed as *chap.* 7 *numb.* 31 32.

XXVI. He beareth Azure, a **Square,** or **Squire,** or **point removed,** or **Quarter pointed,** (by all which I have seen it termed) **extending from dexter Chief to the Base,** and terminated in the Fesse point Or. Is born by the name of *Dier*. This is Just the fourth part of the partition of a Salter, and may fitly be termed a Quarter per Salter, as the quarter is from the quarterly partition.

G the like A charged with a Rose. Is born by *Volcker* of *Franckeford*,

XXVII. He beareth Azure, a **Fesse Indented per Fesse in point** Argent and Gules, with a **Fillet** at the bottom Or. By the name of *Vom-moss*. This at the lower part of the Fesse, may be termed, either an Edgeing, a welt, or a Fillet.

XXVIII. He beareth Gules, a **Fesse Losengie,** Argent and Azure, **Edged** Or. By the name of *Avenell*. Some terme it a Fesse Argent edged or, charged with an other Losengie.

XXIX. He beareth Or, a **Fesse Quarterly,** Azure and Gules, **Bordured Gobony,** Argent and the second. Such a Fesse as this, was Born by the Duke of *Somerset*, having the Armes of *France* and *England*, Quarterly thereon.

The like, with a Labell of three points G was born by the Lord *Harbert*.

XXX. He beareth Sable, a **Fesse** with three **Battlements** on the top, each having a **Square Loop Hole,** Or. Such a Fesse between ten Crosses is the Coat of *Winterbecher* of the *Rhyne*.

G the like A **Masoned** having long Loop holes S Is born by *Wegensteten*.

XXXI. He beareth Argent, a **Fesse** and a **Barulet,** Vert. Born by the name of *Scharpfenstein*. Some say a **Barulett,** and a Fesse; others, a Fesse and a Cost at the higher side: or a Fesse with a **Barulett,** or **Closet,** above it. This hath the Barulett on the side, to make it a distinct bearing from one of the same name whose Coat is A. a Fesse between two Baruletts V.

XXXII. He beareth Argent, a **Fesse** between **two Barrs Gemell,** Gules, a **Bordure counterchanged.** By the name of *Priersperg*. In counterchangings of this nature, in several Coats, I have found the **Bordure,** to give place to several ordinaries, and yet is not diminished in its self.

G the like (Sans Bordure) A is born by *Pryers*.

A the same G by *Badelismere*.

XXXIII. He beareth **Barry of four** Argent and Azure, a **Fesse** Gules, between two **Barrs Battelled Counter-battelled, Counterchanged** of the Field. By the name of *Marmion*.

XXXIV. He beareth Azure, a **Fesse with two dents,** or **dentalls** at a distance, on the higher side, and counter-dented on the neither side, Or. Such a Fesse between nine Billetts is born by *Gyncourt*.

XXXV. He beareth **party per Fesse,** Or, and Sable, a **Fesse On-sett,** or **double downsett Grady,** Gules **masoned,** Sable. Is born by *Plottarch*.

XXXVI. He beareth Gules, a **Fesse, the middle removed,** or **debused,** Argent. That is, slipped down, or broken from its place. See *chap.* 6 *numb.* 28 29 This between two Roses is born by *Brokrose*.

XXXVII. He beareth Argent, a **Fesse patee,** Azure See *chp.* 4 *numb.* 27 Such a Fesse charged with 3 Flowers de Lis Or. Is born by *Atwood*.

XXXVIII. He

XXXVIII. He beareth Gules, a **Fesse Wavey, parted per Fesse**, with the same, Argent, and Azure; two of the same, of the first. This between two Leopards Heads Or. Is the Coat of *Reynolds*. Some Blazon it, a **Fesse Wavey, per Fesse**, Argent and **Barry** of 3 4 or 5. **Waved** Azure, and the first.

XXXIX. He beareth **Quarterly**, Azure and Gules, a **Fesse Compony** of the same, **edged** Argent. Is born by *Van Christvitz*.

XL. He beareth **party per Fesse**, Sable and Argent, a **Fesse changed**, or **interchanged**, or **counterchanged**, Or, And the first. by the name of *Schab*. Here is an example of an ordinary, which is **counterchanged** of the Field, yet not of the colours of the Field.

XLI. He beareth Argent, a **Fesse parted in point**, with two **Dentalls**, Azure and the first, **edged** Or. By the name of *Van Morsfach*.

O the like (Sans edge) A B is born by *Mansbofer* of *Bavaria*, and *Van Heinberg*.

XLII. He beareth **party per Bend** and **Fesse**, Or and Gules. By the name of *Van Kaufmen*. This kind of partition is by some termed, **per Bend** and **Fesse Bendwise**, because the lines are all Bendy, though they terminate in the Fesse. But it is best Blazoned, per Fesse Bevile Bendy, or Bendwise. See *chap.* 4 *numb.* 39 and 6 *numb.* 62.

XLIII. He beareth Argent four **points pointed** and **Nowy**, on the top, in Pale Argent, this Coat is Quartered by *Count Gravemeck*, in the Empire of *Germany*. Some of our Heraulds, take them to be four **Varreys in point**, or **per Long**: to which I do adhere, by reason those Heraulds do usually make their **Varry** with the points to the middle of the streight lines of those above them, as I shall shew by some few examples following *numb.* 44 45 46 whereas our Heraulds, if they understand their Rules, draw them so, as the points of the Varry under, meet the points of them above. As you may see *chap.* 7 *numb.* 7 So that their Fields of Varry represent rather so many **Pales** or **Pally**, then a counterchanging.

XLIV. He beareth Argent, six **Varries**, 3 2 1 Azure, a Chief Or. Born by the the name of *Greul Van Greulsperg* of *Bavaria*. Here you have not the Field Varry, as Generally they are born all over, so also upon ordinaries: But by certain numbers, taking up only a part of the field, the head or point of the under, standing against the middle of the bottom score of that which is above it, and so of the rest under, according to their degrees in descent.

XLV. He beareth Argent, on a **Bend** Sable, five **Varries**, Or. Born by *Phallay* or *Valloy* a *Germain* Family. Here the **Varries** touch neither the top, bottom, or sides of the Bend, but are as an intire charge upon it, the pointed top answering the middle of the straight line of that above it.

XLVI. He beareth Azure, on a **Bend Sinister**, Argent, three **Varries**, or **Dutch hats**, Gules. By the name of *Hunnemweler* of *Alsatia*. These are to me no other then **Varries**, only the score in the Hat-band place, makes me also to judge of them to be Hats, set upon the crown of an other.

G one a Bend A the like B born by *Storn*.

G on a Pale A 6 such B Born by *De la Vauguyon* of *France*.

P on a Cross A 9 such, all pointing to that in the center G Born by *Aymard*., Somtime Chancellor of *France*.

XLVII. He beareth Argent, **three Bends**, Gules, a **Pale** Sable, **edged** Or. Born by *Stillingberg*. The like Gules and Bends Argent, a Pale O. Is Born by *Marg-Burgan*.

XLVIII. He beareth Azure, a **Bend per Bend** Argent and Gules, **Cheveronny** of six, **counterchanged**. Born by the name of *Van Greysneck*.

☞ Here it is to be noted, that if the **Bend**, be charged with either **Salters, Crosses, Cheverons, Piles, Files, or Chiefs**, they must be set thereon, as if the Bend were turned into a Pale. But if the Bend be charged with **Barrs, Pales a Fesse**, or **Chief** hey must & ought to be set on either **Bend**, or **Cheveron**, as if they were directly drawn upon the Field, notwithstanding the slopping of the said ordinaries; of which I have given examples before in *chap.* 6 *numb.* 110 111 & *chap.* 8 *numb.* 62 *chap.* 9 *numb.* 50 besides observe these 3 following.

XLIX. He beareth Or, a **Bend parted per Bend**, Argent and Gules, **Pally** of six **counterchanged**. By the name of *Van Sponheim*. Here you see the Pally is drawn perpendicular, or straight down right, notwithstanding the Bends lying Bevile-wise, from corner to corner.

O the like Bend Sinister A and G with a Lyon Rampant to the same, on the Dexter side G is by *Bacharach*.

A Such a Bend Sinister O and G is Born by *Van Viermundt*.

L. He beareth Or, a **Bend party per Bend**, Argent and Gules, **Barry** of six **counterchanged**. By the name of *Wolkenburgh*.

B three Flowers de lis O over all a Bend G charged with a Chief, and Dalphine B. This is quartred By *Adolph de Bourgongne* Lord of *Bures* in *France*.

LI. He beareth Argent a **Cheveron** Gules, **charged with four Barruletts**, Or. Born by the name of *Hoe*. Here though the opening of the Cheveron below, seems to make the two bottom Barrs into four, yet for all their dividing, they are still in Blazoning but two, seeing they stand one opposit to the other.

B on a Cheveron A three Barrs waved G between three Lyons passant of the second. Born by *Rose*.

LII. He beareth Gules, a **Bend Losengy** Argent, and **Beazantie enterposed**. Born by the name of *du Drill*. Some will Blazon it, **Lozengs** and **Beazants** one after an other conjoyned, for the making of a Bend, or in Bend.

A such a Bend of Losenges and Roses **alternately disposed** G is born by *Van Alten* of *Brunswick*.

LIII. He beareth Gules, a **Bend Sinister Dauncett, Gobony**, Argent and Azure. Born by the name of *Van Ban*. Others will term it dauncett of so many points or pieces: now in the drawing of such kind of lineed ordinaries, you must be sure to make the points of the lower to answer the higher, and the division of it to run cross

cross the Bend from point to point, else it is not rightly made. The *German* Heraulds though they make this kind of Bend or Fesse, but of one colour, yet they will draw lines over it after this manner.

G such a Bend Sinister A between two Lions rampant to that side O is born by *Edlibachen*.

G the like, between two Lions rampant to the Sinister O is Born by *Van Diesbach*.

LIV. He beareth Argent, a **Bend dauncett**, Sable, **Cotized** with the like Gules. Born by the name of *Kendall*. If the Bend and Cotizes be composed of one and the same sort of Line, whither Waved, or Dauncett, (for they are the principle concerned herein) you must be sure in the composing of them, to make the points to answer one the other else it will look with a deformed aspect This is a thing some Painters litle observe, for so it go in and out, (Like *Hob* and *John*) it matters not how the Angles are Scituated, it serves them, & those for whom it is made.

LV. He beareth Or, three **Bend** Gules, one a Chief Sable, **Supported** with an other **Ermine**, as many **Flowr de Luces**, Argent. By the name of *Norman*. Some term this a Chief with a Fillet on the neither side. See *chap.* 3 *numb.* 43.

LVI. He beareth Argent, a **Wiure nebulee** between 2 **Cotizes**, Gules. Is born by the name of *Chelrey*. Some term this a Barulet Nebulee, other a Wyer flexed and reflexed several times. See *chap.* 9 *numb.* 21 49.

LVII. He beareth Gules, a **point in point**, or a **point pointed** to the Chief Argent, on the **dexter side**, a **Beazant**, and on the **Sinister**, over all a **Bend Sinister changed** by the Field and **charge**, of the second and Sable. Born by the name of *Mayheir*, Some will blazon it a point pointed extending from the Base to the Chief, between a Beazant, and a Bend Sinister Counterchanged of the Field or charge.

G such a point A on the dexter side issuing out from the Base thereof, an Elephant Snout flexed and reflexed B flory on the out part O. on the Sinister, a Swans foot Couped in the thigh, extending to the Base of the Escochion, and counter coloured according to its position of the second, and S. Is born by the name of *Freher*. When a thing is thus set over the Field, and charg it is by the best Artists term a Swans leg (or what else it is) Jessants. See *lib.* 2 *chap.* 7 *numb.* 26.

LVIII. He beareth Gules, a **Bend edged and Ingraled**, Or. By the name of *Landgarn*.

☞ Here is an example of a Bend, that hath three parts, first the Bend it self, then the edging which is made by drawing of an other score on each side, and lastly an Ingraleing from it, as if it were an other edging under all, yet all but of one colour or mettle, only distinguished by the stroakes of a Pen or Pencill. This may also be Blazoned, a Bend Ingraled, Surmounted of an other, & charged with the same, all Or.

G the like O between six coronetts, the circles reversed, or turned to the Bend O. is Born by the name of *Elsas* of *Bavaria*.

LIX. He beareth Argent, a **Bend** Gules, **Masculed** and **Edged**, Or. Born by the name of *Rodestein*. Sometimes the Bend Masculee and edged, have the Field colour seen through the Mascles, then it is termed only a Bend Masceled and edged; which edge make it an even Bend, else it would stand out in corners. See *chap.* 7 *numb.* 116 and *chap.* 9 *numb.* 118.

LX. He beareth quarterly Gules, and Or, a **Fesse** of the same, and a **Bordure counterchanged** of the Field: Born by the name of *Audomius* Chancellor of *France*, Archbishop of *Roan* and *Abbot* of *Rebez*.

LXI. He beareth Gules, a **Bordure** Or, and a **Pale** Argent. Born by the name of *Lautern*: and is the City or States Armes so called, in *Almane*. Here the Bordure contrary to its usuall way, doth give place to the Pale, as being over, or upon it; the like is done by a cross as you may see in the next example.

LXII. He beareth Vert, a **Bordure Engraled** Argent, a **Cross over all**, Or. Born by the name of *Lucll*. The like I find Born by *Phillip* Prince of *Savoy* and Count of *Genevey*: *viz.* G a Bordure O and cross A.

LXIII. He beareth Argent, four **Barrs** Azure, a **Bordure rebated** or **cut off** in the **Chief**, **compony**, Or and Gules. By the name of *Choller*. In this the Bordure gives place to no ordinary, but is diminished in the chief by the plaine Field.

A three Barrs G such a Bordure Compony counterchanged. Is born by *Tangel*.

LXIV. He beareth **Quarterly** and **per Salter**, Sable and Gules, a **Crose counterchanged Ermine** and the First. By the name of *Denbergen*. If the field were of one colour, then the Cross would be termed Quarterly Quartered, as in *chap.* 6 *numb.* 44 and *chap.* 5 *numb.* 57

LXV. He beareth **Quarterly** Gules and Argent, four **Crosses counterchanged**. By the name of *Standing*. The like bearing to this *viz.* **Ruby** and **Topaz Quarterly**, four Crosses counterchanged. Is born by the Lord *Cartyll*, a Peer or noble man in the Kingdom of *Scotland*.

LXVI. He beareth **party per Pale** Gules and Argent, a **Fesse** and **Pale counterchanged**. By the name of *Van Reideburg*. Some will term this a Cross, but that it cannot be, by reason the Fesse part meeting with the Pale, is checked in its own colour, and receives an other from the Pale, and so again on the contrary side: which the Cross would not do, but by his counterchange would have one halfe from chief to Base of one entire colour, and the other side of the Cross of an other.

LXVII. He beareth Azure, a **Cross double voided**, Or. This Coat is quartered by the Honourable *Edward* Viscount *Conway*, and is born (or taken to be) By the name of *Crevequer*. Some term this a Cross voided Sarcelled, or else Sarcelled resarcelled, that is double or twice Sawed asunder. See *chap.* 5 *numb.* 10 11.

LXVIII. He beareth Argent, a **Cross double parted**, (or four **Batynes in Cross**) each joyning **Fretted**, **tyed** or **held** together with an **Annulett**, Or. Born by the name of *Tyrer*. See *chap.* 5 *nu.* 82 83 someof these kind of Cross are tyed together, with cords, or Rubins.

A a Cross trible parted S. born by *Skyrlowe*, of old termed **Pale-Fece-Seve**, that is a Pale and Fesse of three pieces fretted.

LXIX. He

LXIX. He beareth Gules, 4 **Batunes**, or **Staves** fretted in **Crosſ**, each end **Taſſeled**, Or. Some ſay **Buttoned** and **Taſſelled**. This is born by the name of *Raſh*. Sometimes in Coats you may find Staves thus born in Croſs or Salter with the end Flory, or Flurt, or elſe adorned with Flowers and variety of Leaves and Branches.

Out of A Coronet ſuch a Croſs Taſſelled, O. Is the Creſt of *Printz* a *Dutch* Family.

LXX. He beareth Gules, a **Croſs couped Nowy Quadrate**, Argent. Born by *Coppock*. In an old and Ancient MS. Wherein Coats were drawn and Blazoned, I found this kind of Croſs thus Blazoned. **Gowlys, 3 croyſys Recoppyd, Gold: on a Cheſe ſylvyr, an Egylt ſplayd Sabylt.** And was born by *Rogas de Garbow*. Wherein I did alſo obſerve in other Coats that our old *Engliſh* terms were theſe.

Mert or Synobylt for Vert.
Pourpel or **Purpule** for Purpure.
Sylvyr for Argent.
Dore or **Gayld** for Or.
Gowlys or **Gawlys** for Gules.
Sabylt for Sable
Aſeure or **Aſewre** for Azure.

Armys for Armes or Armour.
Averipe for Semy or *P*owdred.
Armys Harnyſyd f. Armes Armed

Berder or Bordwre for Bordure.
Beſaunte of Gold for Beazantie.
Bende or **Bendys** for Bends.
Bottone for Bottony.
Bolt Hedys, for Bulls heads.
Bouckys for Bucks.
Berly for Barry.

Colorys for Colours.
Counter golorys, or **Coiſerys**, for Counterchanged.
Cheſe for Chief.
Croſſys or **Croyſys** for Croſſes.
Croſs Croſſelettys, f. croſs Croſſets.
Cheſe Entte Pyeche, for point pointed reverſed.
Croſſe Pale fece Newe, for Trible parted, Croſs fretted.
Corbywes for Crows.
Chewerond for Cheveron.
Chewerond daunce, for Feſſe dancett.
Cokke for Cock.
Cheſe Entty, for per Cheveron.
Ceckko or **Cheeche**, for Chequie.
Crownyd and **Cheynyd**, for Gorged with a Crown and Chaine.
2 **Cheverons** for parted per Cheveron.
Combattand for Aſſaulting or lifting up any ſort of Armes.
Diſmembyed for Membred.
Deſſendannte.
Ermyn for Ermyne.

Ermynys for Ermynes.
Engreiyd for Ingraled.
Enttegreie for Engraled.
Enbeiyſe for parted per Bend.
Egiys for Eagles. **Egylt** f. Eagle.
Entte Pyeche, for Point pointed.
Eyronde for Erected.
Embattayllyd for Imbatteiled.
Entty for per Cheveron.

Feide for Field.
Fece for Feſſe.
Fret for Fette.
Feſel for Fuſil.
Fecys for Barrs.
Flour de Lyce for Flower de lys.
Ferde Molyne for Molyne.
Foyne for Patee.
Fere for Salter Molyne.

Gobonet or Gobony.
Gymelys for Gemelle.
Garbys for Garbs or Sheaſes.
Garbys of comyn for Garbs of Comine.
Gowte for Gutte:
6 **Gemelys** for 3 barrs Gemelle.

Heth-cockys for Heath-cocks.
Handys Bend togeddyr f. Hands Griped.
Harnyſhyd for Armed.
Labellys for Lambeauxes.
Loſengys for Maſcles.
Leparddys for Leopards.
Lepardys for Lions.
Lewcys for the Lucie Fiſhes.

Maskelyd for Maſcled.
Molet for Mullet.
Maine for Hand.
Meane Derter, for R: Hand.
Newe or **Neve**, for fretted.
Natand for Najant.
Owndy for Wavey or Vnde.
Ottrys for Otters.

Peſſetys f. Roundlets nameing the colour
Pecys for Quarters.

Point Sabyle, a **Cheſe** Or; f. per Cheveron. O & S
Poynt for per Cheveron.
Pyeche for Fitched.
Parted of 2 Colorys, f. per Feſſe.
Pale Fece, for parting per Pale and Feſſe.
Pynant and **Sayland**, for Pomell and Croſs of a Sword.
Pomelt and **Hylte Anowyd** with Gold.

Quartylle for Quarterly.
Qwartyrly or **Qwartly**, f. Quarterly.

Powdyrdye for Semy or Powdred.
Revenys for Ravens.
Recopyd for Couped.
Raſyd for Enrazed.
Regardande for Regardant.
Rampande for Rampant.
Roys for Roes or Lynes.
Rowland for Riſing.

Seme for Semy.
Synettys for Swans.
Schoychon for Eſchocion.
Splayed for diſplaid.
Sawtry for per Salter.
Swerdys for Swords.

Trewyt for Trevett or brandred.
Trew Armys, for True Armour.
Towre pynakelyd, & **Imbatayllyd** f. Tower roofe & Battlement.
Torteys for Torteauxes.
Trompytys or **Trompyllys**, for Trumpets.
Tongys for Langued or Tongued.

Were for Varry.
Woydyd for Voyded.
Woyde for Void.
Whet-herys, Wheat Ears.
4 **Woydyrs** for four Quarters.

LXXI. He beareth Argent, a **Croſs couped, Fitched per long**, Gules. By the name of *Paſhall*. This is termed Fitched per long, when the part Fitched, exceed in length much more then theother parts of the Croſs: and is generally uſed to the Lines of diviſion, when in length they exceed their uſuall proportion. As you may ſee *chap. 9 numb.* 970.

A 3 ſuch S a Bordure G. Is born by *Cheſenale*.

LXXII. He beareth Gules, a **Croſs couped**, the head or top part **Fuſill**, and the lower **Fitched**, Argent. By the name of *Wrycroſs*. Other term this, a Croſs Loſeng in the head, couped in the ſtems, and Fitched in the fourth to Bottom.

B an Armed Arme, Flected, in form of a Roman V between 3 ſuch, one in Chief, and two in Faſe A. And is born by *Kirch*.

LXXIII. He

LXXIII. He beareth Gules, a **Crosſ Molyne Invertant**, Or. By the name of *Mounſemys*. This Croſs much reſembles the Molyne, or Pomette; ſaving in this, the cut, or ſawed ends, ſo turn themſelves inward that they appear to be Eſcrowles rolled up. Some term it Molyne the ends roulled up.

LXXIV. He beareth Or, a **Croſs Quarterly Quartered, couped,** the ends **Sarcelled** and **reverted,** Gules. Born by the name of *Hofwart*. This is alſo like the Croſs Molyne.

☞ But here you muſt take notice, that if the turned down ends, were turned up again, it would then be no other then a Croſs couped, but the turning of the ends, maketh it reſemble a Molyne, which it is much different from.

LXXV. He beareth Gules, a **Croſs Potence, Pomelled,** and **Fitched** in the foot of the fourth, Argent. This is Born by the name of *Dildill*.

LXXVI. He beareth Sable, a **Croſs couped, parted,** each end **Flower de Lucy,** or adorned with the chief part of a **Flower de luce,** Argent: Born by the name *Harrell*. Some take this to be a Croſs potent Flurt, but I rather take the croſſing of the ends, to belong to the Flower de lis, then to be any thing of the potent. As you may ſee *chap.* 5 *numb.* 13 54 55. Where the potent is far ſmaller then this, this having the full thickneſs of a Croſs; and therefore may fitly be termed a Croſs Flowered with de Luces.

S ſuch a Croſs and Semy de Billets A. Is born by Sir, *John Norrys* of *Gloceſterſhire* in time *E.* 1.

LXXVII. He beareth Argent, a **Croſs potent,** the end **rounded,** Gules, **Surmounted** of a **Croſs couped** (or a plain Croſs) Or. By the name of *Croſhier*. This Croſs is alſo born voided per Croſs, that is the form of a Croſs cut out of the middle of it, the out ſides ſtill remaining entire. Which ſome Artiſts term a Croſs **potent recourſie** but that cannot properly be in this, becauſe the potent ends are not voided, but only the midle croſs part, and that which it is voided off, is only a plain or couped Croſs. See *chap.* 5 *numb.* 5.

G 3 ſuch voided Croſſes O a Chief varrey Er. and Ers. Is born by *Verney* of *Compton Mordack* in the County of *Warwick*.

LXXVIII. He beareth Gules, a **Croſs Pometee voided,** Or. Born by the name of *Braunſton*. The like to this I find born by the name of *Verney* of *Belton* in the county of *Rutland*. *Viz.* Gules 3 ſuch Or, a chief Varrey. See more of Croſſes voided *chap.* 5 *numb.* 10 11.

LXXIX. He beareth Sable, a **Croſs patee Pometee,** Or; charged with another **Fozmy.** By the name of *Motſon*. This is alſo born voided per Croſs Patee, *viz* Gules three ſuch Croſſes Patee Pometee voided, or recourſie, Or; a Chief Varrey. Born by *Verney*.

LXXX. *He* beareth Argent, a **Croſs Patee Molyne,** Azure. Born by the name of *Lannoy*. This Croſs nearly reſembles that mentioned *chap.* 5 *numb.* 59. But there is as much difference between them, as the Croſs Patonce, & Croſs Flory: for that is a Croſs Patee double fitched of all four, yet the points turn not. but this of Patee Molyne hath the points turned half round like to the *M*olyne. *Chaſſanæus* in his *Gloria mundi fol.* 54 call this a Croſs Nyle.

O the like G. Is born by the Count *de la Feuillade* in *France*.

LXXXI. He beareth Gules, a **Croſs** of the **Capitals** of four **Pillars,** Argent, **Flurty** and a Leopards head **Jeſſant,** Or. By the name of *Van Harragdorf*. This is a Croſs compoſed of 4 pillar Heads of the common order, having only 2 Rings or Swelling frizes. And the term Jeſſant, is uſed to ſhew that the charg born is both upon the ordinary and Field. as *lib.* 2 *chap.* 7 *numb* 26.

Such a Croſs O upon a Croſs G. Is born by the *Arch-Duke* of *Auſtria*.

LXXXII. He beareth Sable, a **Croſs triparted** and **Fretted,** Argent. Born by the name of *Skyrlowe*. This in old time was Blazoned **Une Croyſe de Sylvyr Pale Fece Neve.**

LXXXIII. He beareth Gules, a **Croſs** (or **long Croſs**) with a **Semy Circle,** or **Fallow** of a **Wheel conjoyned** to the top of it, Argent. By the name of *Rycalle de Almayne*.

LXXXIV. He beareth Gules, a **Staffe** with **Molyn** ends **Bendwiſe, Surmounted** of an other in **Salter,** Argent. By the name of *Aurele*. This is like the Salter Molyne mentioned *chap.* 6 *numb.* 49. But it is much different from it.

G ſuch a bearing between 4 de lis O. Is born by *Arborio* a Kt. of the order of *Savoy*.

LXXXV. He beareth Argent, a **Caterfoil** in **Salter,** V. Born by the name of *Utzingen*. This is alſo termed 4 leaves conjoyned in Salter.

LXXXVI. He beareth Argent, a **Cheveron reverſed,** Gules, **Supported,** or **Suſtained** by an other, Or. Is born by the name of *Yedding*.

LXXXVII. He beareth Or, 3 **Cheveronells** Gules, a **Chief removed,** of three **pieces, of the ſecond.** Born by the name of *Freemin de Cocherell*, a *French* Familey.

LXXXVIII. He beareth Gules, a **Cheveron** Argent, **double fretted,** Sable. Born by *Strongberg*. This I term double Fretted, becauſe it hath more rowes then is needfull for an ordinary, which makes it ſo thick and ſtrong that little of the Cheveron is ſeen. Such a like Cheveron Gules, double Fretted Or, in a Field parted pe Pale Indented Sable and Ermine. Is born by *Mackworth* of *Empingham* in the County of *Rutland*.

LXXXIX. He beareth Azure, a **Cheveron,** Or, **Fretted,** Gules. By the name of *Feld*. This is the common and uſuall way of Fretting this kind of ordinary, which as it bends both ways, the ſtaves run along it and meet Salterwiſe, which in all other ordinaries, as Croſſes, Chiefs, Bends, Feſſes Barrs, *&c.* (execept the Salter) it doth not, but only croſſeth them.

XC. He beareth Vert, a Cheveron Gules, **Laticed** Sable. by the name of *Weyers*. This is of ſome termed **Perculaſed**: And is in all reſpects quite contrary to the **Frettee,** for being on the Cheveron and Salter, the **Staves** or **Batunes** are drawn Perpendicular, and Streight over Croſs. As the example: But on all other ordinaries, as

Croſſes

Crosses, Chiefs, Bends, Fesses, Barrs, &c. The Staves, run a long the ordinaries (on which there is never less then two) which are again crossed at the like equal distance by lines or Staves over cross the ordinaries.

XCI. He beareth Argent, a **Cheveronell** with a **Mascle Head or Top,** (or the top **Fretted** over in the form of a **Mascle**) in **Base a Cross Patee** Gules. This is in a Glass Window in a Chappell, on the South side of the Chancell of *Okeham* in the County of *Rutland*. And is taken to be a Merchant Marke.

XCII. He beareth Argent, a **Pallet** and **Barrulet conjoyned in Chief,** and in **Base** a Roman W whole at the top, Sable. This I find to be a part of a Seal, as also to be in the Glass Windows of the old Hall of the Hospitall of *Okeham* in *Rutland shire*, with this writting in a circle about it: *Will'mus Dalby fundator istius Hospitalis.*

XCIII. He beareth Or, a **Cross Patee Sarcelled** in the bottome, in form of a Λ **Reverted.** This is Born by the name of *Upingham.*

XCIV. He beaeth **Party per Pale** on the first, or **Dexter side,** Or: **per Cheveron in Chief** Azure, a **Plate: in Base a Fesse** Vert. The **Sinister side counter-opposite, counter-changed.** By the name of *Hibisch.* The same Coate is born by *Kibisch*, by changing the Plate into a Leopard head with a Ring in his mouth. Some doe Blazon this, (not takeing notice of the devision of the Field) **Quarterly**; but it cannot be so termed, in regard the partition Scores per Fesse are not equally set, but one above, and the other below in each side, and that makes the Fesse, or Barre, to be one in Chief, the other in Base, which otherwise would be termed a Fesse and Barre without any other additions. Others Blazon it, per Pale Azure, a Plate, two points dexter and sinister, with a Base point Or, charged with a Baruiett Vert, the Sinister side in all parts counter-changed.

XCV. He beareth **party per Pale,** Argent, and Sable, 3 **Annuletts conjoyned,** in the same, Or; a **Chief ingrailed, parted per Fesse imbattelled,** Argent and Azure. Is born by the name of *Hillbachen.*

Per Pale O and G such a chain S. Is born by *Knipfinck.*

XCVI. He beareth Argent, a Squire in point, from Fesse to Sinister Chief; & a Base point, Gules. By the name of *Sweybrook.*

XCVII. He beareth **parted per Bend Sinister,** Gules and Sable, a **Pile issueing** out of **Dexter Base in point, Bendwise,** Argent. By the name of *Balndorf.* some do term this a point pointed in point, from Dexter Base, to Sinister Chief. others say, Triparted per point pointed from Base Bendwise Sinister.

G the like A. Born by *Blanckenstein.*

Per Bend Sinister B & G the like A. Born by *Walssen.*

XCVIII. He beareth Argent, a **Pile** of five **points** in **Bend Sinister,** Sable. Born by the name of *Piller.*

B a Pile of 3 points out of Dexter Base in Bend A. By *Burrendorf.*

XCIX. He beareth Or, a **Pile** of five **points,** proceeding from the middle of the **Chief** and **Sinister side** in **Bend Sinister,** Gules. By the name of *Collin'ham.*

C. He beareth Argent, a **Pale Losengie conjoyned** Gules. By the name of *Lee.* This Losenged I term conjoyned, because they are thick and strongly set together by an unskilfull hand: whereas Artists make the points but only to touch one the other as you may see *chap.* 4 *numb.* 50 52. This is also Blasoned A two Voyders endented of three points.

CI. He beareth Argent, two **Piles Barwise, parted per Fesse,** Gules and Azure. By the name of *Gulb.*

CII. He beareth Azure, six **Pales issuing** out of **Base conjoyned,** and **extending** to the sides of the Escochion, **Fitched** on the tops, Or. By the name of *Murpale.* they resemble the Pales of a Garden wall. As *chap.* 9. *numb.* 94. 105.

Out of a Coronett, eight such O and A inter-changable. Born by *Arnburg* as his Crest.

CIII. He beareth Gules, two **Piles Barwise** Argent with as many on the **Sinister side, counterchanged.** By by the name of *Troller.* This is by others Blazoned, a **pale Losengie in point,** or **extending** to the **sides,** or uttermost limits of the Escochion; but by that no Arms Painter shall ever trick out this Coat aright; first because there is no certain number of Losenges, or Fusils mentioned, So that 4 5 or six may be drawn, which make it not the same Coat. Again there is no notice take, or mention made, of the demy Fusils both in the Chief and Base of the Escochion, which must be in this, though they may be omitted in the Pale or Bend Losengie.

☞ Therefore take notice, that when Losenges extend thus in point, they are not to be Blazoned Losenges or Fusills, but Piles **traversed** and **counter-traversed** Barwise: in which one Pile with its apposit Pile, make one Losenge, two Piles makes three Losenges, four Piles makes seven Losenges, and five makes nine Losenges; besides the demy ones in Chief and Base.

CIV. He beareth, **parted per Fesse,** Azure and Or. three **Piles solide** and **triangular, couped in Fesse** Argent, a **File of three Lambeaux per long,** of the second. By the name of *Matravers.* Some term these, **three-square Piles** or **Tetragonell Piraundes reversed in Fesse,** because the thickness of them are seen, besides they are couped and take their beginning there, and so proceed to the Base. And the Lambeauxes, I term **per long** by reason they extend to the Fesse contrary to what we draw them now, though anciently they were by us *English*men thus made.

Parted per Pale indented Ermine and Azure, and **per Fesse** Gules, three such **Piles in point,** Argent. Is born by the name of *Seton.*

CV. He beareth Gules, a **File with three Labells in Fesse, counterposed** with an other, the **points erected,** Argent. By the name of *de la Hespaule.* This Coat is also Blazoned, two Files in Fesse, the higher haveing the Labells erected: or two Files in Fesse endorsed, or contrary turned. Yet others will, and do constantly term this, a Barre Gemellee (or Fesse voided) Patee.

☞ This is a *French* bearing, and besides the rarity of the Coat, I have caused it to be set in this place, to shew the several ways Countreys and Kingdoms have in

makeing of these Lambeauxes. The former example shews how our ancient *English* did make them, that is straight and even all a long; from which our modern Heraulds have a little varied by makeing the bottom part a little broader Patee-wise, as the examples *chap.* 8 *numb.* 4 5 6 *&c.* And *Gwilliams fol.* 40 42 contrary whereunto, the *French* make theirs, short and thick, Dovetail like, as them in this Quarter doth manifest, and *chap.* 3 *numb.* 17. The *German* and *Dutch* contrary to both for these make theirs, thick and short, and all of a breadth to the File the hang at, as in the next example. and *chap.* 8 *numb.* 8.

CVI. He bearcth Argent, a **File of three points**, the middle **per long** (or exceeding the other in length) Sable. This is the *Dutch* way of makeing them, save here in we must except the middle, which is longer then they use them; this being a *French* Coat drawn after the *Dutch* way. And is born by the name of *Maquis*.

CVII. He bearcth Sable, **three Piles wavey Fitched** at both ends, Argent. This was born by Sir, *Percyvall Sowdan*, an Ancient Baron or Noble man in *Wales*, as I find it mentioned in an old M S. Some term them (Fitched also on the top) for naturally the Pile is sharp in the bottom, therefore to signifie its sharpness at both ends, they Blazon it as I have said.

CVIII. He bearcth **Pally of six Crenelle**, Argent, and Gules. Born by the name of *Sapalier*.

CIX. He bearcth Azure, **two Wivres Nebulee counter-nebulee Invecked**, Sable. Is born by the name of *Gobard*. In the old times this was termed a Viure Anewyd. See *chap.* 9 *numb.* 21.

Party per Pale A and S a Wivre of the same in Pale, Or. Born by *Fischcoke*.

A the like Cheveron wise, or in form of a Cheveron between three Bulls faces, G Born by the name of *Worthebyne*.

CX. He bearcth Argen, two **Barrs Crenelle** Azure, **Edged**, Or. Born by the name of *Maurvice*.

Sol. four Barrs Crenelled, voided through out (or in all parts) Marrs, is the King of *Macedonias* Caot of Armes.

Barry of eight Crenelle, (or three Barrs Crenelle) Sol and Mars. Is the King of *Siria's* Coat.

CXI. He bearcth **Barry of six**, Argent and Gules, every other with one **Battlement** on the top and **counter-battelled**, under, and and masoned Sable. Is born by the name of *Van Olsey*.

CXII. He bearcth **Cinque parted per Barr** (or the Field divided into five equall parts) each **parted per Fesse Imbattelled** (or counter-imbattelled) Azure and Or. by the name of *Gynet*. This may also be Blazoned Barry of ten, the first and every other counter-imbattelled, Azure and Or.

Barry of four (or Catterparted) each divided per Fesse imbattelled per long B and A. a Base point of the first. Is born by the Lord of *Gyvec* in *France*.

Barry of eight the 2 4 6 and 8 counter-battelled, Argent and Azure. Is Born by *Marschal Van Oberndorf*.

CXIII. He bearcth **Barry of six** Argent and Azure, **six Flower de Luces issuant**, Or. By the name of *Grey*. These are termed issuant, because joyned to the score, and but half seen, being as it were growing up into the Field. See *lib.* 2 *chap.* 7 *numb.* 24.

CXIV. He bearcth **parted per five Barewise**, Or & Azure, (or else say, Or two Barrs Azure) **Flower de Luces issuant** and **contrary posed counter-changed** By the name of *Golding*.

CXV. He bearcth **Barry of four** Argent and Sable, on a **Chief** Gules, 3 **Battellement Battelled imbatelled issuant, Flurty on the tops**, Or. By the name of *Whischa*. Otherwise term the Chief, charged with 3 Grieces, each having as many Heights, or Steps. Others thus, a Chief, in the Base thereof three Mounts, with as many Grieces, the tops Flurt. Some call them three triple Grieces, or else three degrees of as many Steps.

Bendy of six O and G the like Chief O with Grieces Flurty, G. Is Born by the name of *de Trono*.

CXVI. He bearcth Argent, **nine Losenges Losengewise** (or in Losenge) Gules, a **Chief parted per Fesse Battelled imbattelled in point**, Or and Azure **counter-changed**. Born by the name of *Gabrell*.

O eight Hurts in Ovale. 1 2 2 2 1. Is born by *Maximilien de Egmont*.

B nine Losenges so disposed G. Is born by *Van Drebber* of *Westphilia*.

G such a Chief A and S. Is born by *Lenix*.

CXVII. He bearcth **Losengie & Masculie**, Gules and Or. Born by the name of *Briske*. This Coat is framed after that termed Losengie, *chap.* 7 *numb.* 113. But that which is counter-coloured there, is turned into a Mascle here having the Field seen through it, as it is with all such bearings. from whence some Blazon this Coat Gules, Masculie Or. As having the Mascles all over the Field, which may also pass for good Blazoning.

G nine Mascles conjoyned, 3 3 3 O. or else term them 3 Pales each containing as many Mascles. These as they are drawn all over the Fied, may as well be termed Masculie Losengie. This Coat did (in *John Baisean's* time the *French* Armorist) belong to the Duke of *Cuimene* chief Hunter to the King of *France*. And the same belonged to the Duke of *Rohan* and *Mombasson*.

G the Mascles a A. Is born by *Pierre de Rohan* Lord of *Gie*, and Marshall of *France*.

CXVIII. He bearcth **Losengie** Gules and **Varrey**, Vert and Or. By the name of *Stedyrk*. This is an other way by which Fields and ordinaries are Tinctured, the Field being first stricken or drawn over with lines to make it Losengie, whereof one is for a plain colour or mettle, and the next to it, to be drawn into the lines of Varrey, which always consists of two counterchangable colours and mettles: And then after the same maner the whole Field is wrought counter-changable, one Losenge from an other.

Losengie G and Varry A and B. Is born by *Wakerley* of *Yorkshire*.

Losengie, each Varry A and G. Is born by Trigony. which kind of bearing is contrary to the other, this being first stricken into Losengie and them every one of them wrought into Varry, by lines drawn over thwart the corner

corners or points of all the Losenges, as you may see by them which are before shewed.

CXIX. He beareth **Chequie Bendy sinister counterchanged**, Argent & Sable. by the name of *Cammers*. This is a tincture of a Field, and may be a charge to any of the straight ordinaries, as Pales, Bends, and Fesses *&c.* being contrary to all heretofore described by me, this being composed of Squares, each divided Bend-wise from the Sinister to the Dexter Base corners (the others mentioned *chap.* 7 *numb.* 111 112 113 114 115. And *chap.* 9. *numb.* 111 112. Being generally divided Loseng-wise) so that in the whole, this tincture consists of so many Bendys, as the Chequie hath Squares in the Field.

And as this is Bendy Sinister, so on the contrary, it is also born Chequie-Bendy Dexter. And somtime it is born Chequie Salterie, that is when each Chequie or Square is divided per Salter, and counterchanged one from the other: which of some is termed Chequie Diamond like. An example whereof I need not to shew, seeing it is easily conceived from this, how it is made.

CXX. He beareth **Barry Bendy** (or **Pally Barry**) **in Prospective**, Argent and Sable. Born by the name of *Prospect*. Some say Prospective ways: others, by reason of the slopein of the down lines three severall ways, term it Barry and Paliy Bendy towards the center in Chief.

CXXI. *He* beareth Agent **Scaled**, or **Escalloped**, the edges **Jagged**, each containing an **Ermine**, on a **Chief** Gules, two **Fillets**, Or. Born by the name of *Beck*. This is a contrary way of Escallopeing, to those formerly shewed *chap.* 3 *numb.* 113 and *chap.* 9 *nub.* 86: they being plain Scaling or Escalloping, and these having the edges cut into, as they were Scales Scaled, or Escalops Escalloped. This kind of bearing is wrought after the manner of diapering, with a deeper colour then that of the Field, as is directed *chap.* 7 *nmb.* 18.

The Fillet or File to be double, or parted, is very raely found, yet *Chassaneus* in his Catallogue, *Gloriæ mundi*, *fol.* 54 gives an other example of such bearing in the Coat Armour of the Earl *Arthesius*.

A a Bend so Scaled G. Is born by *Tettenbeck*

Party per Fesse, O and the like Escallopeing A in Chief a Lion Passant, Is born by *Van Schwemke* of *Westphalia*.

CXXII. He beareth **Pally** Argent and Gules, **party per Fesse counterchanged**, a **Barr Fusill**, and an other **issuant** *et* **issuant**, Or. By the name of *Glasmo n*. This is a tincture of a Field or ordinary seldom used in *England*, but often in *Italy* and those Forreign parts, the composition wehereof is to be carefully observed, else it will not be, what it ought to be: for in the main, it consists of two Barrs Fusill, or Loseng (for the number it matters not, so the exceed three or four) the one in Fesse the other in Chief and Base, which is but one, signified by the term issuant (explained *lib.* 2 *chap.* 7 *numb.* 28) From which points of the Fusills, or Losenges the Palles are to be made, else the work is not right. Some others Blazon this tincture, a Barr in Fesse, and an other issuing out of Chief and Base, Surmounting a Field Pally, and counterchanged per Fesse.

CXXIII. He beareth Azure, a **Ftett doubled** (or a **double Frett**) **Quartered**, Argent. Others Blazon it a Loseng, or Glass query, double fretted. This is an other way by which I have seen Fields, and half Fields adorned. This is Born by the name of *Losen* See *lib.* 3 *chap.* 16 *numb.* 87.

CXXIV. He beareth Or, a **Long Cross potent pomelled of three**, the other **below**, or the **foot plain**, Gules. Born by *Heraclius*. This I call a long Cross because the bottome stem, is longer then the other parts of the Cross, whose ends are Pomelly.

The like to this Cross set upon four Grieces or Steps, was coyned upon the money of the Emperours *Mauricius* and *Phocas* with this Inscription about, VICTORIA, AUG. G. And under the foot of it these Letters, C. O. N. C. being that form of Cross which was used by the *Jews* before their destruction.

CXXV. He beareth Gules, on a **Globe** or **Ball**, a **Cross fired**, whose top is **Bended** after the form or order of a **Roman** P. Born by the name of *Justin*. And such a kind of Mound and Cross I find among the Roman Coyn, set forth by *Jacob de Bie*, which he terms a P. Set upon an Orbe crossed, which is the *Hieroglyphix* of the name *Christ.* *pag.* 237.

CXXVI. He beareth Gules, a **Cross of Triangles**, or 12 **Triangles in Cross**, the **points** towards the **Center**, and there **conjoyned**, Or. By the name of *Burcher*.

CXXVII. He beareth Vert, a **Cross** on each **Stem**, a **Saxon B. Conjoned** and **contrary-posed** Argent. By the name of *Bon-Burbell-Berge*. After this manner Crosses may be made and framed soe, that the Letters joyned to it may serve to express the Bearers name, or at least the Charrcter of it.

CXXVIII. He beareth Vert, upon three **Grieces** or **Steps in Base**, a **Mound**, or **Orbe**, Argent, **Insigned** with a **Cross Patriarchall Pomettee**, Or. By the name of *Triburbe*.

CXXIX. He beareth Argent a **Cross Patriarchall thrice Crossed potence** the foot **Lambeaured**, Sable. Whether to term this a Coat or a Merchants mark I know not, but judg of it to be the later: being a symbolicall Character of the Owners name, *Edw: Edwards*. And so some have termed it therefrom, a Staff Potent, or a Crouch Staff Lambeuxed in the foot, having 2 Roman E. endorsed and conjoyned to the middle.

CXXX. He beareth Azure, a **Cross Lambeaured** in all **four**, Or. Born by the name of *Van Poinburg*.

CXXXI. He beareth Argent, a **Cross of four Pruning Hooks contrary Imbowed**, Sable. Born by the, name of *Hooker*. Some term these four Culters joyned to a Ball or Bullett, contrary bowed in the points.

CXXXII. He beareth Argent on a **Cross** Gules an **Imperiall Crown** between four **Cantons**, Azure. This kind of bearing was upon the Regimentall Ensignes of the Lord *Ferrers* under King *James* 2 An: Dom. 1685. The Red Cross being over all the Ensignes, from which went another of white, as if the Red Cross were set on another; the remaining part of the said colours were four Cantons, or Squares of a Pale red. Each Captain being distinguished by the number of Crowns set on the Cross.

An

The signification of all the Charges and Ordinaries used in Heraldry within this first Book.

Annulett is a Ring, and is the Emblem of Unity, Friendship, and love to Eternity.

Barr, a stop or hindrance, and signifies invention, industry and labour in Fortifying a Camp, that the Enemy receiveth damage thereby.

Bewile, is broken, or a Carpenters Square moving upon a Joint, and signifies care and foresight of an action.

Battone, a note of Illegitimacy.

Bend, a Shoulder Belt, or a Scaling Ladder; it denotes the Bearer to be the first that ascended or mounted upon the Enemies Wall.

Chief, a Head or Chieftain, and signifies a Senator or honourable Person.

Cheveron, a Barge Couple, the Gable end of a House, it signifies the atchieving of some business of moment, or the finishing of some chargeable and memorable work. *Leigh*, it signifies the Tire of a Womans head.

Cost, a Rib, the Emblem of Fortitude, Strength, and Preservation.

Canton, a Corner, or Cantle. It is a reward for Service.

Cheque, Composition, mixture; The Emblem of Unity, Peace and Concord.

Crenell, is Notched; and signifies Art and Care in Scaleing of Walls, or assaulting an Enemy.

Chaplet, a Garland, signifying Victory and Triumph.

Compony, Compounded; signifying an Agreement.

Couped, Cut off, the Emblem of Mortality and Oblivion.

Cross, it was first bestowed on such as had performed or undertaken some Service for Christ or Christian Profession.

Dented, is Toothed like a Saw; and signifies severity and Justice on Malefactors and Rebels.

Dauncett, is Dented, or cut in more deep.

Delfe, a Pit or Den, the mark of a Coward, or one that revokes his Challenge.

Eau, Water, this denotes Increase and Riches by Water, or Sea-faring.

Endorsed, signifying, help, assistance, aid, and protection.

Erazed, Rent or Torn, and is an Emblem of Strength, Force and Violence.

Escochion, a Shield or Target, and signifies Defence and Safety.

Escochion of pretence, signifies the Bearer and his *Heirs* claim to the Mothers Inheritance.

Fesse, a Girdle both of *Honour*, and for Military Service, signifying Equity and Justice.

Fillet, that which Women bind up their *Hair* withal, signifying Obedience.

File, is a Plait in a Garment, and signifieth servitude and subjection of Children.

Fimbriated, *Hemmed*, Garded; the emblem of humility, and an amicable Spirit.

Fitched, is made sharp to fasten, and signifies stability, constancy, and perpetual aid.

Flasque, a Bow bent, signifies Vertue, Learning and Service in an Ambassage.

Flanch, the Flank or Buttock of a Man, signifying Rest and Ease.

Formey, Broad. See **Pattee**.

Fusils, Skains of Yarn, the Emblem of Invention and Industry.

Giron, is a Lap, or the space between the Thighs called the Groin; and is the Emblem of Unity, Peace and Concord.

Gemell, a Twin, signifying Amity and Friendship.

Gobony, Gobonated, cut in Morsels or Gobbetts.

Gore, a thing belonging to a Womans Smock.

Gusset, a thing belonging to a Shirt or Shift.

Gutte, a Drop; the Emblem of Plenty and Increase.

Humett, a Table, a Tomb-stone, or Coffin; signifieth one that hath disarmed his Enemy.

Invecked, carried in, the points inward; signifying moderation and care not to hurt.

Ingrailed, entred or gone in; and signifies resistance.

Indented, full of Teeth; signifying Justice and Law against God and the Kings Enemies.

Inescochion denotes the Man to Shield and Protect his Wife.

Lambeaux, Plaits of a Garment; and signifies Unity and Agreement, also subjection.

Larmes, Tears; the Emblem of Grief and Sorrow.

Labell of three points denotes Father, Mother and *Heir*, or Faith, *Hope* and Charity.

Mascle, a Mash of a Net, signifieth a prudent and politick deviser of Stratagems.

Mullett, a Meteor, Star or Spur-rowell; signifying swiftness, and the Messenger of some ill Tidings.

Nombrell, the Navel; the Emblem of Strength and Courage.

Nowy, a Fold or Knott, and signifies true Love.

Orresse, a Pellet of a Gun, a Bullet; it signifies Murther, Ruin and Desolation.

Pile, a Pillow; signifying Rest, Quietness and Content.

Pale, a Fence or separation, and signifieth one well skilled in Mines and Foundation of Forts and Castles; a Man of reason and Understanding.

Pattee, broad; and signifies to lay open a matter.

Pile, a Wedge, the Emblem of a sure Foundation, a stedfast support.

Potence, a Crutch; a stay or support, one that will not fail in time of need.

Quarter, a fourth part of the Escochion, signifieth partnership in a Service.

Salter, an Instrument to Torture, also to Scale an Enemies Wall; is a note of Christian Profession.

Scarpe, a Scarfe, a Souldiers Badge of *Honour*.

Shapoune, a *Hood*; the Emblem of Shamefastness, Modesty.

Torteaux, a Cake; the Emblem of Providence and Care, having a regard to them under his Charge.

Voyder, a Looking-glass; and signifies one to have an aspect of danger afar off, and so seeing endeavours a safety.

And so I shall conclude my first Book of Colours, Ordinaries and Partitions, with their variety of Bearings, and terms of Blazoning, both Antient and Modern; wishing they may be as acceptable and delightful to the Reader, as to me it was pleasure (yet painful) in their Collectings; to whose Censure I lay my self open, if pleasing I have my reward; if otherwise, it is but what I expect of some: However, I shall now address my self to the second part of the same, with Hopes that that will amend the mistakes in this; Farewel, R. H.

Laus Deo dabitur.

An Alphabeticall Table,

Containing all the Terms of Heraldry, used in this first Book Of the Academie, or Store-House of Armory.

The first figure stands for the Chapter, the next after, for the number, or numbers of that same Chapter. If an (&) come between numbers, it signifieth, that after it, an other Chapter and Number, is mentioned. If an (*s*) be set before a Figure, It is for Section 1 2 3 &c: of such a Chapter before it.

A

A. *for the term Argent* 3 s 7
Abatements. 7 39.
Affrontant. 9 99.
Alisee, 5 29:
Angle, 3 2 21 81 & 4 38.
Rect Angled, 3 2 21 81 & 4 119 & 7 67 & 9 27.
Accute Angled 3 3 82,
Angled per Fesse, 7 72
Quater Angled 5 74.
Anserated, 5 90.
Annulated, 5 93.
Annuly, 5 93.
Demy Annulets, 9 10.
Anchory, Anchored, 5 96.
Ancry, 5 96.
Antiquity of Heraulds, 1 s 2.
of Armes 3 s 3.
Aquilated, 5 90.
Archy, 4 47 48 58: & 9 13,
Arched, 3 6 28 83: & 9 10.
Enarched, 3 6 83,
Couchant, 4 120,
Double Arched, 3 7 35 63 64:
Archee Reversed, 7 25,
Trible Archee, or Tri-Archee, 7 79,
Arrayed, 3 58.
Arondy, 7 57 79 & 9 72:
Argent, 2 66, & 3 s 20,
Armes, or Coat Armour, 3 s 1.
of Heroick persons, 3 s 8 9: &c:
of what made, 3 s 2:
Antiquity thereof, 3 s 3 7.
Avellane, 5 52 53.
Avellane Invecked, or Invect, 5 130.
Pomel Avellaned 5 126.
Double Avellaned, 5 127.
Aure 6 86.
Aygnisee 5 81 82.
Azure, 2 68 & 3 s 20,

B

B *Stands for Azure*, 3 s 20.
Batune, 4 49. & 5 s 3 38.
Barre, 3 s 8 & 4 s 3 86 *to* 100.
Barrulett, 4 88 & 9 27 40,
Barry, 7 15 69 70 76 *to* 80 89, & 9 (86:
Barry Pally, 3 94:
Barry Pily, 7 98,
Barry Bendy, 7 112 & 9 58
Barry Bendy Losengy 7 112.
Barry Losenzie, 7 115.
Barry Nebulee, 7 117.
Barry Per Pale, 8 74 77 & 9 74.
Barry Per Frett, 9 112.
Barry Point in Point, 9 112.
Barre Gemelle, 4 92. & 9 105,
Per Barr & Pile, 7 76.
Per Barr & Cheveron, 7 77,
Barr & Canton, or Cantoned, 8 45,
Banester, 5 124:
Bar-Meire, 3 14 37 & 7 8,
Baste, or Base, 7 37,
Baste Barre, 7 37,
Battlement of a Tower, 9 22,
Battelled, 3 12 26 77 & 4 33 65.
Counter Battellee, 9 25 26 27, & 4 66.
Imbattelled, 3 12 13 26 36 83 & 4 99
Grady, 3 13 36 83,
Base Point, 2 73 & 8 72:
Dexter Base, 2 73,
Sinister Base, 2 73,
Midle Base, 2 73,
In Base, 9 106,
Bend, 3 s 8 & 4 s 1 1 *to* 60 & 9 99.
Bendlett, 4: 2 53 54 & 9 118,
Bend Sinister, 4 6,
Bend Ingraled, 4 10
Invecked, 4 11,
Waved, 4 12:
Voided, 4 14.
Bend Edged, 4 15.
Double Edged, 4 16,
Bordured, 4 17,
Cottized, 4 18,
Double Cottized, 4 19,
Bends Cottized, 4 21,
Betweene Cotizes, 4 20:
Bend Trible Cotized, 4 23,
Cotized Dauncett, 4 24:
Double Cotized Potentee, 4 25,
Patee, 4 27,
Potentee, 4 28
Vrdee, 4 29 30,
Champaine, 4 29 30.
Nowy, 4 34 *Nowyed*, 4 35,
Nowy Quadrate, 4 31.
Nuee, or Nuage, 9 72:
Tranchee, 9 72:
Brettessed, 4 32:
Imbattelled, 4 33,
Counter Battelled, 4 33,
Arondy, 9 72:
Demy Bend, 8 101,
Bend Debruced, or Removed, 4 37,
Angled, 4 38,
Bevile, 4 39:
Per Bend Indented, 4 40.
Gobbony, 4 42:
Counter Compony 4 43.
Chequie, 4 44:
Charged, 4 45 46, & 9 18,
Arched, or Bowed, 4 48, & 9 13,
Traverse Counter-Pointed,
Fusile, 4 50 52:
Mascle, 4 51,
Surmounted of Another, 4 56,
Humett, or Cooped, 4 57,
Hemi-Spheare, 4 58:
Floried, 4 59,
Irradicated, 4 60.
Escartele Grady, 9 78,
Bendy, 7 82 84

Per Bend, 7 81 85 86 87 & 9 78 93
In Bend, 9 12 15 17 60 61,
Pally Bendy, 7 111.
Lolengie Bendy, 7 111 112 114:
Fusilly Bendy, 7 111.
Barry Bendy, 7 112:
Bendy Barwise, 9 58,
Masculy Bendy, 9 118:
Beasant, or Beazant, 6 69 s 4:
Peasantee, 5 109,
Balls, 6 78, Belt 4 85,
Bevile 3 3 82 & 4 38 & 7 73
Pally Beviled, 7 67,
Double Beviled, 7 62:
Fillett. Billetts, 9 40, & 4 114:
Billettee, 7 14:
Counter Billettee, 7 14:
Blazon, what it Signifies, 3 55,
Rules of Blazon, 3 s 17 18 19.
Severall wayes of Blazon, 3 20
Bordure, 3 s 8 & 6 s 7 97 to 120 & 7 109 110 & 8 61 62 63 102
Per Bordure, 6 102:
Double Bordures, 8 86,
Bordured 3 46 & 4 17 & 7 & 69 & 7 110
Bordure Per Pale, 8 86
Imbowreing, 8 86,
Demy Bordure, 8 100 112 & 9 92
Diminished, 8 92
Determinated in Fesse, 9 92
Bowed, 9 90, see Imbowed.
Bottony, Butteny, or Botone, 5 71 & 9
Bottony Masculed, 9 36
Bottonyed, 9 56 63
Bretessed, or Bretessee, 3 7 12 26 35 63 64 76 & 4 32 68 & 6 14 15
Baisee, 6 30
Brisure, or Bordure, 6 97
Braclett, or Braslet, 9 49
Burst 6 39
Bullets, 6 s 4 75

C

Calvery, 5 45 46
Cable, 5 110
Catoosed, 5 128 129
Canelee, 6 104
Camp, 6 107 Campaned, 8 17
Campanes, 8 17
Canton, 3 114 to 119 & 8 102 & 9 101
Sinister, 3 115
In Base Sinister, 3 16
Cantoned, 8 19 20
Barr Contoned, 8 45
Lambeaux Cantoned, 8 19 20
Center, 9 44
Chiefe Point, 2 73
Dexter Chief, 2 73 & 3 101
Midle Chief, 2 73
Sinister Chief, 2 73
Chief, 3 s 26 10 20 to 51 & 8 51
Angled, or Rest Angled, 3 21
Bevise, 3 22 Cooped 3 23
Cooped Bevilewise, 3 24 & 6 46
Escarteled, 3 25
Inclave, 3 27,
Imbattelment, 3 26.
Imbattelled, 3 36
Arched, 3 28 Double Arched, 35
Indent, 3 29
Indented, 3 32 39
Patee, 3 30 42
Invecked, 3 31:
Wavey, 3 33
Removed 3 45 & 8 115
Nomy, 3 34
Potonce. Counter Potonce 3 37
Champaine, 3 38
Vrdee, 3 38
Nebulee, 3 40
Rayed, or Raisie, 3 41
Surmounted, 3 45
Bordured, 3 46
Per Fesse, 3 47
Charged, 3 48
Shapournett, 3 48
Point in Point Dented, 3 50
Quarterly, 3 51:
Supported, 3 43 & 9 99
Pierced, 9 107
In Chief, 3 104 & 9 75
Per Chief, 3 20
Cheveron, 3 s 26 & 6 1 to 41
Cheveron Couchant, 9 18 19 20 & 6 18 19 20.
Cheveron Arch, 6 36
Demy Cheveron 6 31
Per Cheveron, 7 91
Per Pale & Cheveron, 7 92 96
Per Pile & Cheveron, 7 95
Per Fesse & Cheveron, 8 59
Cheveron & Fesse, 8 118 & 9 50
Cheverons Palleted, 8 119
Coupled 8 55 & 9 95
Cheveronny, 7 94 Cheveronell 6 3
Cheveron in Point Imbowed 9 46
Reversed, 9 47 Grady, 48
Potent Counter-Potent, 9 46
Pierced, 9 106
Champaine, 3 6 18 38 71 83 & 4 29 30 47 & 7 25 84 109
Champion, 3 6 18 28 83 & 9 70
Charged, 5 7 8 9 & 9 61 111
Chequie, 4 44 & 6 109 & 7 13
Chappe, 7 57 59 Chaplett 9 49
Chapournett, 9 1 3 48 see Shapournett,
Reversed, 6 1 Crested, 84 ?
Chapournated, 9 84
Chaperon, or Chapourn 9 115
Closett, 4 87
Cleche, 5 5 10 72 81 & 6 10
Cloche, or Cleschee, 5 s 3 38 80 81
Clavied 5 114
Cloudy Inward, 3 9
Colours of Armes or Shields 2 59
Signification of Colours, 2 s 20
Derivitive Colours, from them, 2 s 24
Worthyness of Colours, 2 s 34
Colours of Coats Armour, 2 s 13
Composition of Ordinaries, 3 s 28
Coupe Parted, 9 98
Commisse, 5 105
Couple 4 92 & 6 4 Coupled 8 44
Couple-Close, 6 4
Cost, or Cotize, 4 22 59 & 9 118
Cotized, 4 18 20 21 94 & 3 67
Double, 4 19 25 Treble, 23
Cost Nebulated, l: 2 c: 18 3
Concave, 3 6 83 & 6 28
Convex, 3 6 28 83 Convexed, 7 51
Conioyned, 3 98 & 8 114 & 9 3 55 94
Capitall, 9 37
Conyd, 3 105 & 6 109 & 7 26 28 (104
Contrary Coonyd, ut ante & 9 79
Cooped, or Couped, 4 57 63 64 & 8 28 10 114 & 3 23 24 95 98 & 9 49
Coronall, 5 70 (91
Coronated, 5 124 129
Couped Fitched in all, 8 2 116 & 9 53
Coppee, 6 27 & 4 6 43 108
Cornished, 5 118 119 120 & 9 37
Couched, or Couchant, 4 120 & 6 18 36
In Point, 6 20 38 (37 & 9 10
Commixt, 8 5 Composed, 8 113
Conjunged, 9 3 Corded, 5 15
Compony, 6 107 & 4 43
Compon, 6 107
Coursie, 5 6
Counter Flory, 4 36 73 78 83 104
Counter Potentee, 4 100 & 7 117
Potent, 3 14 37 & 4 100
Pometee, 9 117
Scallopee, or Scalloped, 9 86
Pendant, 9 12 Nebulee, 7 117
Changed, 7 90 103 & 9 47 74 90
Gobony, 6 108 Camp, 6 108
Compony, 6 108 & 4 43
Battelled, 4 65 67
Flurty, or Flowered, 4 36 78 83
Turned, 6 19 Pointed, 6 19 & 4
Couchant, 6 20 33 (49
Billitee, 7 14 Posed, 7 26 28 & 9
Escarteled, 7 33 (102
Contra Nuage, 9 86
Contrary Vrdee, 9 70
Invecked, 6 100 Composed, 8 82
Cross, 2 s 26 & 51 to 132
Per Cross, 5 2 In Cross, 9 55
Cross Couped, 5 3 4 & 8 2 116
Pierced, 5 3
Pierced Losengwayes 5 s 2
Pierced Quarterly, 5 s 2
Recoursie, 5 5 & 6 10
Recoursie Couped, 5 6
Coursie Voided, 5 6
Clechee, 5 5 Vmbrated, 5 6
Fimbrated, 5 6
Couped Fimbrated, 5 7
Couped Bordured, 5 7

Surmounted

Surmounted, 5 8 Edged, 5 8
Voided, 5 10 Sarcelled, 5 10
Voided Couped, 5 11
Resarcelled, or Recersile, 5 12 63
Parted, 5 13 Porserated, 5 13
Quartered, 5 13 57
Crossed, 5 19 Corded, 5 15
Waved, or Watery, 5 14
Barry Nebulee, 5 16
Interlaced, or Fretted, 5 17
Brettessed, 5 19 Creuelle 5 20
Raguled, 6 20 21
Truncked, 5 21
Nowy, 5 22
Nowy Losengie, 5 22
Nowy Quadrat, or Square, 5 22
Cross Patee, or Formy, 5 5 2 23
Patee Embrated, 5 24
Patee Fitched, 5 35
Patee Fitched Rebated, 5 27
Patee Concaved, 5 28
Patee Rebated, or Blemished, 5 28
Patee Alisee, 5 29
Patee Globicall, 5 29
Patee Fixed, 5 30 31 & 9 44
Patee Invecked, 5 3 32
Patee Crossed, 5 3
Patee Escartelle, 2 44
Patee Flurt, 5 34
Formy Flowry, 5 34:
Patee Fitchee, 5 35.
Patee Fitchee Disjoynt, 5 36:
Patee Double Rebated, 5 37,
Patee Bottony, 9 36,
Cross Potent, 5 5 3 38 40:
Potent Crossed, 5 39,
Potent Flurt, 5 54:
Poent Ingraled, 5 55.
Gemelle, 5 39.
Cross Croslet, or Crosset, 5 41.
Recrossettee, 5 41.
Crucelett, or Crossie, 5 41,
Croslett Crossed, 5 43:
Croslett Fitched, 5 42:
Double Crossed, 5 43,
Cross Griece, 5 45 46.
Calvery, 5 45,
Patriarchall Grieced, 5 47:
Cross Flowry, or Flury, 5 5 4 50:
Flory or Flouree, 5 50 51 54:
Flurt, or Flurty, 5 54 55,
Patonce, 5 48,
Avellane, 5 52 53.
Humett, or Cooped Flurty, 5 56,
Quarterly Quartered Flurty, 5 57.
Cross Double Fitched, 5 5 5 58 59,
Patee Double Fitched, 5 49.
Patee Furche, 5 59,
Anchorites, 5 59:
Furche or Furchee, 5 60,
Forked or Pitchee, 5 60:
Fitched of all foure, 5 35 58:
Double Fitched Rebated, 5 61 62:
Chappee 5 60
Couped and fitched of all, 8, 2,
Cross Moline 5, 5 6, 63, 64,
Sarcell, 5, 63,
Encree, 5 63: Reversyd, 5 63:
Fer de Molyne, 5 65,
Molyne Rebated, 5 66 67.
Miller, 5 66 67:
Miller Rebated, 5 67.
Fursb, 5 67:
Molyne Sarcelled, or Voided, 5 87,
Molyne Double Rebated, 5 132:
Cross Pomell, 5 69.
Pomettee, 5 70 & 9 36,
Double Pomelled, 5 70:
Bottony, or Butteny, 5 71:
Pomell Avellaned, 5 126:
Cross Losengy, 5 75 76:
Mascle, 5 72:
Clechee Pomette, 5 72:
Thoulouze, 5 72 & 9 36:
Mascle Embrated 5 73:
Entrailed, or Purfled, 5 73:
Patee Fusile, 5 73:
Fusill, 5 78 Fusilly, 77,
Fusill Rebated, 5 79:
Cross Vrdee, 5 80.
Champaine, 5 80 Mateley 80:
Aygnisee, 5 80: Cleschee, 80:
Vordee, 5 80:
Vrdee Recoursie, 5 81.
Vrdee Voided, 5 21.
Cross Parted, 5 5 8 13 & 7 107 & 8 82:
Double Parted, 5 82 & 9 40:
Triparted, 5 82 84:
Double Parted Fretted, 5 83:
Batunes Fretted, 5 83:
Double Parted Flory, 5 85 86:
Double Parted Voided Flory, 5 87.
Sarcele, or Resercilee, 5 87.
Miller Voided Disjoyned, 5 87.
Triparted Flory, 5 88 89:
Anserated, or Gringolee, 5 90 131.
Cross Annulated, 5 5 9:
Rebated Annuled, 5 91 92:
Annuly, or Annuletty, 5 93.
Cressanty, 5 94:
Couped Cressanted, 5 95,
Pomelled & Cressanted, 5 95.
Anchored, or Anchory, 5 96:
Demy Annuly Inverted, 5 96:
Nocbed, 9 44:
Cross Nowyed Degraded, 5 97,
Nowyed Grady Fixed, 5 97,
Grady Pomelled, 5 98:
Nowyed Losengie, 5 99:
Cross Potence Rebated, 5 100.
Cross Patriarchall, 5 101 & 9 37.
Patriarchall Charged, 5 102:
Patriarchall Patee, 5 103:
Patriarchall Patee Flory, 9 43:
Cross Patee Lambeaux, 5 104:
Patee Fitchee Lambeauxed, 5 104:
Cross Lambeauxed Rebated, 9 42:
Cross Taw, or Tau, 5 105:
Commisse, 5 105:
Cross Portant, 5 106:
Portante Double, 5 107,
Portante Raguled & Trunked 5 108,
Long Cross Raguled &c: 5 108,
Cross Beazantee, 5 109:
Cable, or Cablee, 5 110.
Chaines, 5 111, Snagged, 112:
Moline & Patee, 5 113:
Double Clavied, 5 114:
of Queene Ermine, 5 115:
Caterfoiles, 5 116 of Pomells, 117.
Cross Cornished, 5 118 120: & 9 37,
Cornished Flurt, 5 119:
Crownated, or Crowned, 5 121,
Quarterly, 5 122: Banister, 124
Moline per Cross, 5 123:
Fruitagee, 5 125: Catooseed, 128
Mascalee, or Mascle Fruitagee, 5 127
Double Fruitagee, 5 127,
Pomety Avellane, 5 126:
Double Avellaney, 5 127,
Potonce Flowred, 5 128:
Pomell Crownated, 5 129.
Avellane Double Pomette, 5 130:
Avellane Inveck 5 130:
Cross Double, 5 62 107,
Cross Capitall, 9 37, Tholose, 36:
Pomelled Moline, 5 126 & 9 35:
Pendall, 9 38 Spindle, 38:
Patriarchall Lambeaux, 9 42:
Lambeaux Rebated, 9 42:
Patriarchall Patee Flory, 9 43:
Patee Intire, or Fixed, 9 44:
Demy Scarcelled, 9 44:
Patee Nocbed, 9 44:
Cross & Salter, 9 89:
Nyle, 5 83:

Ierusalem Cross, 5 40 43:
Christs Cross, 5 45 107,
Knights Templers Cross, 5 45 101
Knights of Malta's Cross, 5 59
St: Iohn of Ierusalem's Cross, 5 59
Iesus Christ's Cross, 5 45 46 107 & 14 0 10 16 21
Holy Ghost's Cross, l 4 c 10 32 47
St: Georges Cross, 5 2
St: Andrew's Cross, 6 42
St: Patrick's Cross, 5 2
St: Anthony's Cross, 5 105
St: Denis Cross, 5 2
St: Saviour's Cross, l 4 c 10 15
St: Dominican's Cross, l 4 c 10 37
Name of Iesus Cross, l 4 c 10 67
St: Lazares Cross l 4 c 10 48 62 67
St: Stephen's Cross, l 4 c 10 13
St: Benedict, or Bennets Cross,
St: Iames Cross, l 4 c 10 25
St: Maurice Cross, ibm, 62
St: John's Cross, ibm, 35
St: Thomas Cross, ibm, 36

St. Geron's Cross, *ibm*, 36
St: Blaze's Cross, *idem* 36
Knights of the Holy Bottles Cross 42
Knight of Brome Flowers Cross, 43
Christian Charitie's Cross, *ibm*, 26
Pater Noster's Cross, 8 11
St: Katherines Cross, *ibm* 68
Our Lady's Cross, *l* 4 *c* 10 21 30 60
Virgine Mary's Cross, *i'm*, 48
Mary Magdalen's Cross, *ibm*, 45
D' Avis Cross, *l* 4 *c* 10 17
Montese, or Mountaine Cross, *ibm* 21
Austria Cross, *ibm*, 24
Theuton's Teutonick Germane or Almane Cross, *l* 4 *c* 10 58
Livonia Cross, *ibm*, 28
Calatrava Cross, *i'm*, 20
Valentia Cross, *ibm*, 21
Lorrainee Cross, 5 101
Calvary Cross, 5 46 46
Anchorites Cross, 5 59
St: Iulians Cross, 6 47 41

Crassell, or Crossett, 5 41 42 43:
Crocell, or Crucellett, 5 41 42 43
Crossed, 5 19.
Crosslett, 5 41 42 43:
Per Cross, 7 104 105,
Crenelux, 3 12.
Crenelle, 5 20 21 & 3 12 26 77 & 9 70 71
Point in Point, 9 70,
Points - Pointed, 3 18 38 & 4 29 30
Crown Post, 9 95.
Crownall, or Crownall, 5 70
Cressanty, or Cressanted, 9 94 95
Crested, 3 18 38 & 9 84 116.
Cuppy, 3 14 37 & 7 8:
Cuppules, 4 92

D

Dauncett, 3 16 49 67 & 4 72 73 74 & 9 14
Dauncettie, 4 24
Dauncett Couped, 9 23 24:
Damasked, 7 18,
Dents, or Teeth, 6 101 & 7 74:
Dented, see Indented,
Dentillee, 3 15 29 32 38 47 66 & 6 104
Dentalls, 7 74
Dexter, 3 99 105 114
Dexter Chief, 2 73 & 3 101,
Side, 5 73 *Base*, 2 73
Point, 2 73
Debrused, 4 37 75 84 & 6 28 & 8 27 51 89 93 & 9 40 52 53 108.
Debruced Fretted, 8 93 97.
Degrady. or Degraded, 5 56,
Delfe, 9 89
Dexy, 4 85 & 6 31 & 8 100 101
Bordure, 8 100 & 9 92
Bend, 8 101 *Piles*, 8 101 & 9 59.
Cheveron, 6 31 *Annuletts*, 9 10
Sarcelled, 9 44
Demy Pile Imbowed, 9 59
Diamond what it signifieth, 2 69 & 3 57
Diapared, 7 17 & 9 54
Disjoynted, 6 30 *Disjoynt*, 9 57
Dismembered, 9 52 *Disarmed ibm:*
Diminished, 8 58 & 9 92 58
Diminution, 8 58 *Division*, 8 113
Divided, 8 113
Double, 5 62 *Double Edged*, 4 16
Dovetaile, 3 17 30 42 79
Double Downe-Sett, 4 37 75 84 & 6 40
Tresure, 4 107
Parted, 4 96 & 5 82 88 & 9 40
Arched, 3 7 35 63 64
Fitched, 5 58 59 60
Fretted, 6 68 *Beviled*, 7 21
Escartelled, 7 23 *Labells*, 8 24
Dauncett, 9 14 *Shapournett*, 9 19
Downesett, 4 37 & 6 27
Dragons Head, what 2 71 & 3 57
Dragons Taile, what it is ibm
Dropps, 6 95 56 *see Guttes*,

E

Eau, or Gulte de Eau, 6 90 56
Edged, 4 15 80 81
Double Edged, 4 16
Edented, 4 71 *Edentee*, 6 10
Entrailed, 5 73
Engraled, 4 10 23 56
Endorse, 3 54 *Endorsed*, 3 55
Envecked, see Invecked,
Enterlaced, 6 65 *Entire*, 8 44
Endentee. or Endenchee, 6 104
Enurney, 6 114 & 7 17
Enaluron, 6 116 & 7 17
Entoyre, 6 117 & 7 17
Engresles, 6 99
Enarchee, 7 84 119
Enwrapped, 9 20
Emmanchee, 3 12 15 29 32 38 47 66 & 7 74 & 8 96
Couped, 9 23 24
Emarald, what 2 70 & 3 57
Emethist, what it sig: 2 71 & 3 57
Embattelled, see Imbattelled,
Ermine, or Queen Ermine, 7 2
Ermines, 7 3 *Ermynois*, 7 4
Ermynites, 7 6
Eradicated, 8 87
Escochion, what it is 2 57
Pointes of an Escochion, 2 57
Escochion, 3 58 & 4 54 101
of Preteuse, 8 78 *Flurt*, 9 29
Florished, 9 28
Escartellee, 3 4 25 75 & 7 19
Escartelled, 5 61 & 9 44 57
Counter Escartelee, 7 33
Double, 7 23 *Pointed*, 7 58
Grady, 8 111 & 9 78 97
Escallopee, 7 9 & 9 86
Extended to Base, 8 115

F

Face, 3 20 *of three Peeces*, 9 100
Fesse, 3 58 & 9 9 & 4 52 61 *to* 85
Fesse, Point, 2 73
Per Fesse, 7 68 72 105 & 8 59 85 & 9 90 101 117
In Fesse, 8 76 & 9 99 92 96
Per Fesse & Pale, 7 71 & 8 76 & 9
Per Fesse Paly, 8 ,6
Per Fesse Quarterly, 8 81
Per Fesse Girony, 8 81
Per Fesse Indented in the same, 8 117
Per Fesse Chief Pally, 9 82
Triparted in Fesse & Pale, 8 66
Fesse Supported, 8 87
Stayed, or Sustained, 8 87
Of three Peeces, 8 6 & 9 100 & 8 6
Rest Angled, 9 27
Fesse & Cheveron 8 118 & 9 50
Fer de Molyne, 5 65
Fissure, 4 8
Fimbrated, or Fimbriated, 5 7 26 & 6
File, 3 58 44 & 8 12 *to* 25 (9
File fixed, or Extended to Base, 8 115
Fillett, 3 43 44 & 8 12 *to* 25 & 9 99
Couped, 8 2 8 10
Wiered, 8 25 *Parted*, 8 23
Figetive, 5 25 26
Fitcht, 9 53 *Fitched*, 3 56 57 & 5 25 26 & 9 71 105
Of all Foure 5 58 70 & 8 2
Double Fitched, 5 50 59 60 & 8 2
Couped & Fitched, 8 2 & 9 53
Fitched in the Top, 9 4
Fixed, 8 115 119 & 9 44
Flasque, 3 58 & 4 116
Voided, 9 10
Flanche, 4 115 57
Flanched, 9 59
Flammant, 3 19 41 & 9 81 41
Flaming, 3 19 41
Flefted, 3 6 28 83 & 7 119 120
Flexed Reflexed, 9 48
Flancked, 5 80 81 *Flancks*, 9 102
Flory. or Flowry, 5 48 49 50 51 & 9 67
Counter Flowry 4 36 78 83 104 & 6 120
In the Foot, 9 43
Florty, or Floritee, 4 73 83
Floried, 4 59 & 3 92 93
Flority, 4 78 83
Flurt, 4 78 83 & 5 54 55 56 & 8 4 & 9 29 68 69
Counter Flurt, 4 73 83 104
Point in Point, 9 67
Flurty, 4 83 & 5 85 *to* 89 & 9 13
Flowered, 4 83 & 9 44
Florished, 9 29 30 *Fleuree*, 5 71
Fleuronee, 5 71
Frett 3 58 & 6 5 3 56

Frettee

Frettee, 6 57 63:
Fretted, 5 89 & 6 37 68 & 9 39 & 10 (89.
Interfretted, 6 65:
True Loves Frett, 6 68:
Frett Fretted, 6 68:
Double Fretted, 10 88 123:
Debrused & Fretted, 8 92 97:
Orle Fretted, 8 99:
Frettings others, 9 7:
Quartered, 10 123:
Per Frett Barry, 9 112:
Fracted, 3 80 & 4 75 84 & 6 28 30 & (93
Foray, 5 23 & 10 78 79:
Fourchee, 5 95:
Fusill, or Fusile, 4 4 50 52 & 5 77 & 6 5 5 79 80 & 9 96 & 10 103:
Fusilly, 4 4 & 5 77 & 7 113:
Patee Fusill, 5 74:
Cross Fusill, 5 78:
Fusilly Bendy, 7 111:
Fusil Rebated, 5 79:
Fusch, 5 67:
Furs, or Furres, 7 5 1 1 2 3 4 5 6 7:

G

Gartier, 4 3 59:
Garden Pales, 10 102:
Gemelle. Gemells, 4 77 79 92 94 & 9 105 & 10 32:
Giron, 3 5 8 5 13 105 106 & 7 100:
Gyron mayés, 7 118:
Girony, 3 107 to 112 & 7 119:
Per Salter, 7 101:
Per Fesse, 8 81:
Girons of Linkes or Chaines, 9 32 33:
Indented, 9 103.
Globicall, 5 29:
Gobbony, 4 44 74 & 6 100 103 107 & 9 18 & 10 53:
Gobbonated, 4 44:
Counter Gobbony, 6 108:
Goare, 7 43 44:
Goarre, or Goary, 3 7 35 63 64:
Gorred, 7 86 & 9 72:
Golpes, 6 5 4 74:
Goufanons, 7 33:
Gorgian Knott, 9 33:
Grady, 3 13 36 83 84 96 & 6 35 & 7 23 & 10 5:
Nowyed Grady, 5 97 98:
Grices, 5 45 46 & 9 48 & 10 5 115:
Double Downsett, 10 35:
Gricee, 7 16:
On the Top, 10 5:
Triple Grices, 10 115:
Cheveron Grady 9 48:
Escartellee Grady, 9 97 98:
Gringolee, 5 90 131:
Gules what it sig: 2 67 & 3 5 20:
Gunshots, 6 5 4 75:
Guzes, 6 5 4 77:
Gussett, 7 45 46 & 9 80:
Guttes, 6 5 6:
Guttee de Aure, 6 89:
De Eau, 6 90: De Olive, 6 91:
De Larmes, 6 92: De Poix, 6 93:
De Sang, 6 94:

H

Hacked, 9 16;
Heraulds Antiquity, 1 5 1 6 20:
Kings of Armes, 1 5 15:
Heraulds of Armes, 1 5 16 17 18:
Pursevants of Armes, 1 5 17:
Office, 1 5 7 to 14:
Colledg, 1 5 15: Fees, 1 5 21 to 28.
Honor Point, 2 73:
Hood or Head attire, 3 48 & 9 115
Honorable Ordinaries, 3 5 8: (116:
Humett, 4 57 63 64:
Hemetts, 4 114:
Hartes, 6 5 4 72:

I

Jeged Edges, 10 121:
Jacinthe what it sig: 2 72 & 3 5 7
Inejcochion, 8 77:
Indent, 3 29: Indentes, 6 104:
Indented, 3 15 29 32 38 47 66 & 4 40 & 8 117 & 9 98:
Per Long, 9 9:
At Distance, 10 34:
In Point, 10 27:
Per Fesse, 7 83 88:
Imbowed, 8 110 & 9 16 90:
In the Inner Side, 9 9:
On the out Side, 9 96:
Indentilley, 9 9:
Inraised, 3 15:
Interchanged, 10 40:
Interposed, 10 22 52:
Invecked, 3 9 31 70 & 4 11 & 9 36:
Invaske, 3 7 11 35 40 63 64:
In the Bottome, 10 22:
Ingraled, 3 10 68 69 & 10 95:
Each point Flory, 10 22 52:
On the Inner, or Neither Side, 10 24:
Inclave, 3 17 27 30 42 79 & 7 20 71
Interlaced, 6 65: Invex, 3 6 83:
Interfretted, 6 65:
Inverted, 5 130 & 10 74:
Intire Charge, 10 45:
Imbattelled, 3 12 13 26 36 77 83 & 4 33 65 69 95 & 6 14 15 & & 10 95
Cristed, 3 18 38: In Point, 10 116
With two Battlements, 9 110:
Point Imbattelled, 9 76 77
Counter Imbattelled, 4 65 67 & 10 20
Imbattelled on the Top, 10 3 21:
With 2 or 3 Grieces, 10 20:
Imbordured, Imborduring, 8 86:
Imbowed, 6 34 & 8 110 & 9 7 169 (& 10 25
In Point, 9 46 & 10 25:
Point in Point, 9 60:
Irradicated, 4 60 & 8 87:
Issuant 9 91 92 94 99 & 10 1 25 81:
Issueing, 10 97 113 114:
Issuant et Issuant, 10 122:
Iumells, 4 95:
Iupiter what it sig: 2 68 & 3 5 7:

K

Kings Peece, 9 95:
Kings of Arms, 1 5 3:
Knott, 5 83: & 6 68:
Navarre Knott, 9 32 33:
True Loves Knott, 6 68 5 3:

L.

Lambeaux, 8 3 to 16 & 9 42 44:
Labells, 8 3 4 5 & 9 44 91 92 94:
Per Long, 10 104; Crossed, 8 18:
Cantoned, 8 19 20:
Double Labells, 8 24:
Labells Pendant, 9 93:
Imbowed, 9 94:
Lambeauxed, 3 17 30 42 79 & 5 104:
Labells in Fesse, & Counterposed, 10 105
How Anciently made, 10 105 106:
Larmes, 6 92 Latice, 9 52:
Laticed, 7 12 & 10 90:
Lentally, 3 15 29 32 38 47 66:
Leonced or Lionced, 5 90:
Limme of a tree, 9 12 15 17
Per Long, 9 9 70 & 10 43 71 104 106
Long Crosse, 5 45 46 & 10 83:
Lopped, 5 112:
Losenge, 4 50 51 52 & 6 5 5 81 & 9 54
In Point, 9 100 & 10 103: (& 107:
In Losenge, or Loseng-wise, 10 116,
Losenges, 10 103:
In Crosse, 9 19 55:
Losengy, 4 50 51 & 7 113 & 7 111 &
Varrey, 10 118: (10 28 52:
Nowy Losengy, 3 72 & 5 99:
Bendy Losengy, 7 111 114:
Barry Losengy, 7 115:
Barry Bendy Losengy, 7 112:
Masculy Losengy, 10 117:
Love Knott, 5 83 & 6 68:
Loope Hole, 10 30:
Luna what it Signifies, 2 66 & 3 5 20:

M

Mascle, 4 50 51 & 6 82 & 10 117
Bottonyed, 9 56:
Head or Top, 10 91:

Mas-

Masclée, 9 36
Mascle-mayes, 4 50 51:
Square Mascles, 8 112:
Masculy, 4 50 51: & 7 113 1 2:
Losengy, 10 117: Bendy, 9 118:
Mascle head, or top, 10 91:
Mateley, 5 80 81:
Mailed, 7 9.
Masoned, 7 11 & 9 88 & 10 111:
Masonee, 9 88.
Mars what it Signifieth, 2 67 & 3 5 20
Mercury what it sig: 2 71 & 3 5 20
Murry, 2 71 & 3 5 20:
Malthe, 5 5 3 38:
Meire, or Bar Meire, 3 14 37: & 7 8:
Miller, Milrine, 5 68:
Moline, 5 63 54:
Inverted, 10 73:
Rebated, 5 66 132:
Fer de Moline, 5 65:
Salter Moline, 6 49:
Mooted, 8 87: Modilion, 5 128:
Mount, 9 84 113:
Mount Mounted, 9 84 87 116:
Surmounting, 9 85 104:
Grieced, or In Degrees, 10 115:
Mascle, or Muscule, see Mascle.

N

Navarre Knot, 9 32 33:
Nebulee, 3 11 40 & 9 117 & 10 1.
Counter Nebule, 7 117 & 9 21 & 10
Nebule in Point, 7 117: (109:
Nebulated, 7 117 & lib: 2 ca: 18 3.
Nethering, 9 20:
Nowy, 4 34 70 & 3 5 34 71 73 & 9 6
Vrdee, 3 71: (& 10 43:
Quadrat, or Square, 3 74 & 4 31.
Quaterangled, 3 74:
Quadrate, or Quadrated, 10 71
Champaine, 3 71.
Losengy, or Lozengie, 3 72 & 5 99.
Nowyed Grady, 5 97 98.
Nocked, 9 44:
Nombrill Point, 2 73.
Nuee, 3 7 10 35 63 64 & 7 79 85 &
Nuagee. 3 9 & 6 100 & 9 72. (9 72.
Contra Nuagee, 9 86:
Nyle, or Cross Nyle, 10 80.

O

Ogresses, 6 5 6 75 & 9 88.
On-Sett. 4 84 & 6 27 & 10 4.
Double On-sett, or Down-sett, 6 27:
Couped, 10 4. Grady, 10 35.
Open in the Fead, 10 6,
Opposite, 10 51, Olive, 6 91.
Or, whan it sig: 2 72 & 3 5 20.
Orenge, 2 71 & 6 5 4 76:
Orle, 3 5 26 & 4 5 6 108:
Fretted with Pale & Bar, 8 99,
Composed of a Chain, 6 31:
Ordinaries what they are, 3 5 24:
Names, 3 5 26 Composed, 3 5 28.
Partitions, 7 5 5
On one another, 8 5 2,
Besids on another, 8 5 4:
Between on another, 8 5 3,
Mixt with on another, 8 5 5,
Intricatly mixt, 8 5 6:
Pierced one of another, 8 5 7,
Diminished, 8 5 8:
Over all, what it sig: 8 31 51 73,
Over-layd, 9 3 Over-Cross, 10 90

P

Papellonne, 7 9.
Pampillettee, or Papillottee, 7 9:
Partitions, 7 5 5 & 10 15 16.
Pale, 3 5 26 5 31 52.
Retracted, 9 93 Patee, 9 40
Removed, 9 3 Fitched, 9 4 53.
Fece Neve, 10 82
Counterchanged, 10 17,
Losengie in Point, 10 103
Pales Edged, 10 47,
Couped Conjoyned, 8 114 & 9 48 &
Conjoyned, 10 102 (10 18
Lozengie Conjoynt, 10 100:
Pale & Fesse, Conjoyned, 10 18.
& Chiefe Conjoyned, 10 18
Per Pale, 7 40 42 61 100 106 & 8 74
& Fesse, 7 71 & 9 75 (76 77.
In Pale, 9 107,
Pally, 7 63 67 & 9 82 101 & 8 62 &
Saltery, 7 66 102 (10 122
Crenelle, 10 108
Bendy, 7 111 & 10 120:
Pallett, 3 53 & 9 20 Palletted, 8 119
Pallett & Barulett Conjoyne d, 10 92
Patriarchall, 5 47 101 102 103 107
Cross Lambeaux, 9 42:
Paule, 3 59 60 62 Per Paul, 7 41
Cross Paul, 3 59 60 62:
Parted, 3 100 & 4 96 & 5 13 82 88
& 7 107 119 & 10 76.
Double Parted, 4 96 & 5 82 88:
Trible, or Triparted, 5 88 89 & 6 16
Triparted per Point pointed, 10 97
Cater, or Quater-parted, 10 112
Cinque-parted, 10 112
Into five, 10 112 Barwise, 114
Parted and Fretted, 5 89
Parted per Bend, 10 8 14
per Pale, 10 12 16
per Pale and Bend, 10 13
per Bend and Fesse, 10 42
per Fesse, 10 15 17 22 28 40 101
per Fesse and Pale, 10 15
per Pale & per Pile, or Pale, 10 19
per Bend & Fesse Bendwise, 10 42
per Fesse and Barry, 10 28
per Fesse and Bend, 10 9
per Bend in Chief, 10 9
In Point, 10 41
Patee, 3 17 30 42 79 & 4 27 & 5 5
23 & 9 40 44 & 10 28
Masculy, 5 72 Fusill. 5 74
Invecke, 9 36 Molyn, 10 80
Sarcelled, 10 93.
Painting of Shields 3 5 7
With Armes, 3 5 13
Pean, 7 5 Pearle, 2 66
Percee, 6 10
Pierced, 5 5 2 & 8 68 88 89 90 & 9
Triangular, 9 30 (106 107 108
Quarterly, 5 3
Loseng-ways, 5 3 & 8 2:
Pendant, 9 15 93 114
Counter Pendant, 9 12 15
Pelletts, 6 5 4 75 & 9 89
Pallettee, 6 117 Pendall, 9 38
Peeces, 10 53 Peeces Removed, 10 87
Perculased, 10 90
Perpendicular, 10 49 90
Pile, 3 5 26 5 32 85 &c: & 9 59 60
Pomettee, 9 6 (61
Reversed, 9 59 120
Cotped, 9 9 & 10 104
Imbowed, 0 59
In Point, 10 97 Barwise, 10 101
Solid and Triangular, 10 104
Fitched at both ends, 10 107
Triple Pile, 3 93 & 9 84 85
Of 5 Points, 10 25 98 99
Points Adorned, 10 25
Piles fretting others, 9 7
Traversed Barwise, 10 102
Traversed Counter-traversed, 10 103
Pilly, 7 98 Barry Pilly, 3 94:
Pilly Bendy, 7 112
Traverse, 7 112 & 9 58
Plate. Plates, 6 5 4 70
Plain 3 1
Pillar Capitals, 10 81
Potent, or Potente, 3 14 37 & 4 28
100 & 5 23 5 3 28 & 10 77
Voided,, 10 77 Crossed, 5 38
Recourse, or Rounded, 10 77
Counter-Potent, 3 14 37 & 4 25 100
Potentee, 4 28 100
In Point, 4 100 & 7 117
Potented, 4 100 & 6 18 36 37.
Potans, 5 5 3 38 Potence 3 14 37
Counter Potence, 3 14 37
Potonce Rebated, 5 100
Pomelled, 10 75.
Potences, 7 22
Potenty in Point, 4 100 & 7 117
Potency, 4 100 & 5 5 3 38 (9 49
Counter-Potency 4 100 & 7 117 &
Point, 7 36 37 & 8 59 & 9 98 100
Champaine, 7 25 49. (116

In

In Point, 4 40 41 100 & 3 47 50 & 6 33 34 & 7 99 115 117 & 9 46
Imbowed, 6 34 & 9 48 (70 83 84
Sinister, 7 35 53 88 90 & 8 111 &
Removed, 8 113 & 9 79 (1094
Dexter, 6 32 & 7 34 52 88 90 & 8
Flory, 9 67 (111 & 10 64
Reversed, 7 39 56 57 & 9 120
In Point Reversid, 9 60 62 64 65
Escarteled, 9 44 57.
Imbatelled, 9 76 77
Dauncet, 19 53 *Imbowed*, 10 25
Dexter Removed, 10 8
Extended, 10 8 *Charged*, 10 10
Sinister Removed, 10 10
Removed Pointed, 10 36
Pointed in Point, 10 97
Pointed Nowy, 10 43
In Point Indented, 9 112
Points, 8 3 4 to 16 & 9 119 & 10 100
Points Pointed, 4 22 30 & 7 38 52 & 9 62 70 110 & 10 57
Three Points, 7 53
Pointed, 7 38 52 & 9 84
In Chief 10 7 57
Crenell Pointed, 4 29 30
Counter-Pointed, 6 19
Squires in Point, 9 119
Porforated, 5 13
Points of an Escocheon, 2 5 44 73
Pomell, 5 69 70 126 & 9 62
Pomelled, 9 6 62 68 69
Pometie, 6 54 & 9 6 30 36 90
Pometted & Florished, 9 30
Counter Pomettee, 9 117
And Fitched, 10 75
Voided, 10 78
Pomeis, 6 73 5 4 *Poix*, 6 93
Portante, 5 106 108
Portant Double, 5 107
Porculliced, 7 12
Porcullice Disarmed, 9 52
Powdered, 7 2 3 4
Proceeding, 10 99
Prospect, 10 120
Purpure what it signif: 2 71 & 3 5
Pursled, 5 73 & 6 9 & 7 2 3 4
Purslewe, 6 118
Pursevants of Armes, 1 5 19
Pyramedes, 9 104

Q

Quarter, 3 5 26 5 34 113
Pointed, 10 26 *Per Salter*, *ibm*
Quarterly, 3 51 & 5 117 & 6 44 105 & 7 75 104 105 108 109 112 & 9 91 87 116 & 8 81 & 10 15 39
Pally, 8 65 *Pierced*, 8 68
In Salter, 9 102
Quartered, 5 13 57
Quarterly Quartered, 5 57 & 6 44 105 & 8 83 & 10 74
Queene Ermine, 5 115 & 7 2
Quaterfoile, 5 116
Quadrant, 8 118
Quadrat, 3 74 & 4 31 & 9 50 89 &
Quaderangle, 8 118 (10 71
Quater Angled, 3 74

R

Rasie, 3 19 41 & 9 8 41 80
Rayed, 3 19 41 & 9 41
Radiant Rajonee, 3 58
Resplendant Rayes, 10 1
Rayonee, 10 1
Raguled, 3 5 20 21 78 & 4 26 & 5 20
Razed, 9 5 (21 & 9 5 15
Rampee, 4 84 & 6 27 & 8 111
Ragged, 9 5 *Ragulee*, 9 71
Rafters, 9 95
Reflected, 7 31 120 & 9 48
Flected reflected, 9 48
Removed, 3 45 80 & 4 75 84 & 6 28 19 32 & 7 50 & 8 112 115 & 9 3 116 & 10 8 9 10 26
Rectangled, 3 2 51 81 & 4 119 & 7 67 & 9 27
Recoursie, 5 5 100 & 6 10 & 9 92
Recersile, 5 63 *Resarcelled*, 5 12
Resplendant, 10 1 *Redout*, 5 100
Reversed, 3 89 95 61 & 6 17 & 7 15 31 39 56 57 80 & 9 1 47 59 60 120 & 10 23 86 93 104
Reversie, 6 17 & 9 81 87 *se Transpos-*
Recrossettee, 5 4 42 43 (ed
Rebated, 5 26 28 52 66 79 100
Double Rebated, 5 92 132
Retracted, 9 93 *Reversed*, 10 71
Riband, 4 5 *Rounds*, 6 78
Roundells, 6 78 *Roun letts*, 6 78
Ruby, *what it sig*: 2 67 & 3 5 20

S

Sable what it sig: 2 69 & 3 5 20
Sarcelle, 5 10
Sardelled, 5 10 5 6 61 & 9 44 & 10
Demy Sarcelled, 9 44 (74
Sang, 6 94
Sanguine what, 2 [illegible] & 3 5 20
Sinopie, *what* 2 [illegible] & 3 5 20
Saltire, 3 5 26 & 9 [illegible] 2 42
Saltire Saltered, 6 47 48
Saltire Solitet, 6 47 48
Saltire Mobile, 6 49
Per Saltire, 7 161 [illegible] & 9 102
In Saltire, 9 102 [illegible]
Saltiry, 7 66
Pally Saltiry, 7 66
Pale and Saltire, 9 114
Saphire what, 2 58 & 3 20
Sardonix what, 2 71 & 3 5 20
Scales, 10 121 *Scales Scaled*, *ibm*
Scarpe, 4 7
Scrowles, 5 128
Turning Scrowles, 5 128
Scalloped, 3 13 & 7 9 & 9 86
Score of Division, 10 18
Semy Circle, 10 83
Serrated, 3 15 29 32 38 44 66
Severed, 6 30
Shields how named, 2 52
Of what made, 2 5 4
Sorts of Shields, 2 5 5
How used, 2 5 8
Colours of Shields, 2 5 9
Shapourne, 4 47 & 7 49 50
Shapourned, 3 6 83
Shapournett, 3 48 & 7 49 & 9 84 115
Mounted, *or Crested*, 9 116
Of six Peeces, 9 84
Shapourned, 8 86 & 9 12 87
Double, 9 19 *Shaperon*, 3 48
Shapernes, 9 115
Shadowed, 5 73 *Side*, 7 47 48
Sinister Side, 2 73 & 4 6 & 7 47 48
Sinister, 3 99 114
Sleepers, 9 25 *Sloppeing*, 10 48
Snagge, 5 112
Spindle, 9 38
Square, 3 74 & 4 31 & 8 112 & 9 50
Muscle, 8 115 *Pointed*, 10 26
In Fesse, *or In Chief*, 10 9
Fixed, 10 11 *Endorsed*, 10 11
Squares, *or Chequie*, 10 20
Bendy, 19 120
Squire, 6 32 33 & 8 113
Squires, 7 22 & 9 79 119 & 10 9 11
In Point, 9 119 & 10 96
Sinister, 8 48 *In Chief*, 10 9
Transverse in Point, 10 9:
Sol what it sig: 2 72 & 3 5 20
Staves, 10 90 *Fretted*, 10 69
Tasselled, 10 69:
With Molyn heads or tops, 10 84
Stayed, 8 87 *Standart*, 9 95
Stems Couped, 10 72
Steps or Degrees, 10 115
Stone, 9 104
Surmount, 5 7 8 9
Surmounted, 3 45 68 99 & 4 15 30 56 & 8 16 31 51 64 69 73 113 & 9 40 [illegible] & 10 10 34 77
Voided Cross, 10 77
Surmounting one another, 9 134 & 10
Surrounded, 8 63 64 (2 122
Supported, 3 43 & 6 17 31 & 10 86
Chief Supported, 3 43 (55
Fesse Supported, 8 87
Supporting, 9 95
Sustained, 10 86 *Sustaining*, 9 95
Surged, 3 8 33 65 90

Swelling,

Swelling Frizes, 10 81

T

Tawney, 2 71 & 3 5 20
Tassa or Vary Tassa, 3 14 37
Taggs, 8 24 Tathered, 9 20
Taw or Cross Taw, 5 105
Tasselled, 10 69
Tenne what it sig: 2 71 & 3 5 10
Terminated in Fesse, 10 10 26
Tetragon Piramedes, 10 104
Thoulouze, 5 72 & 6 54 & 9 36
Tholose, 6 54
Three, Two, & One. what sig: 6 76
Three Dents, 10 100
Tincture, 7 5 2 3 4 5 & 10 111 119
Topaz, what sig: 2 72 & 3 5 20 (122
Torteauxe, 6 71
Tranchee, 3 5 10 68 69 71 73 74 & 7 79 & 9 72
Traverse, 4 49 & 7 55 29
In Point, 7 99
Pily Traverse, 7 112
Tract or Traile, 4 106 108
Transposed, 3 89 95 & 7 56 80 & 9 (71 81 87
Transmuted, 8 77
Transverse, 10 9 10
In Point, 10 9 10
To the Dexter, 10 10
Transparent, 5 73
Tresure, 4 5 5 106
Flory or Counter-flory, 4 106
Double Tresure, 4 107
Triparted, 5 82 88 89 & 6 16 & 7 30 78 83 88 120 & 8 66
In Pale and Fesse, 8 76 112
Fretted, 10 82 Imbordured, 8 ii2
Per Fesse, lit: 2 ca: 18 34
Trianglee or Triangled, 7 ii5
Triangle, 4 ii9 & 7 60 103 & 9 30 (114
Pierced, 9 30
Tri-archee or Trible Arched, 7 79
Triple Nowyed, 9 6
Triple Piled or Pointed, 9 84
Triple Pale Fitched, 9 105
Triple Grieces, 10 115
Troillis, 7 12
Truncked, 3 78 & 4 26 & 5 20 21 (112 & 9 15
Turnstile, 9 19
Turnpike, 9 19
Two & One, what it sig: 3 97 & 6 78 90

V

Vary or Varry, 7 7 & 9 70 & 10 44 (45 46
Vary = Tassa, 3 14 37
Vaire, 7 7
Varriated, 3 18 38 & 4 29 30 & 7 7 & 9 70
Varry in Point, 9 70 83 & 10 43
Vert what it sig: 2 70 & 3 5 20
Venus what it sig: 2 70 & 3 5 20
Verray, 7 7 Verday, 6 7 17 115
Verry = Cuppa, 3 14 37
Verree, Invectee Verre, 3 18
Versied, Turned up side down
Viurie, 3 15 29 32 38 47 66
Viure, 3 49 & 9 21
Anewyd, 10 109
Vnde, 3 8 33 65 90
Vndee, 3 7 35 63 64
Vndatyd, 3 8 33 65 90
Vmbrated, 5 6 73
Voided, 5 6 10 & 9 10 & 10 77
Per Cross, 10 77
In all Parts, 10 110
Voider, 9 10 & 10 100
Indented, 10 100
Vrde, 5 80 81 & 7 87 92
Vrdee, 3 18 38 & 4 29 30 & 5 80 81
In Point, 9 70
Contrary Vrdee, 9 70

W

Waved, 4 12 & 10 1 28
Wavee or Wavey, 3 8 33 65 90
Watery, 3 8 33
Welt or Edge, 10 27
Wiure or Wyer, 9 21 & 10 56
Nebule, 10 56
Nebule Invecked, 10 109
Flexed and Reflexed, 10 56
Windings, 9 20

THE SECOND BOOK OF THE ACADEMY OF ARMORY and BLAZON.

THE

SECOND BOOK

OF THE

ACADEMY

OF

ARMORY and BLAZON.

TO

The Right Honorable, the *Earls*, *Viscounts*, and *Barons*;

The Honourable, the *Barronetts*;

The Right Worshipful, the *Knights* and *Justices*,

The Worshipful, the *Esquires*;

With the *Loyal Gentry* and *Freeholders* within the Principality of *Wales*, the Counties Palatinates of *Chester* and *Lancaster*.

My Lords and Gentry,

IT is a general fault in most Antiquaries, preferring that their Rarities should Die with them, and be Buried in their Graves, rather than others should receive any benefit thereby: To cross which Currant of Corruption, I have presumed to Dedicate these my Labours to your serious Considerations. Let none be offended that I Patronize you at the second hand; for though I confess you are my refuge and support, in relation to your Deceased Friends, yet you are my choice in reference to the surviving Nobility and Gentry; whom God preserve with length of Lives and true Grace, that in your times you may remain Loyal to His Sacred Majesty our Kingdoms Father; a Support and Comfort to our Holy Mother the Church; an Honor to your Country, a Credit to your Kindred; and a Joy to all true Subjects, which is the hearty wishes and desires of

Your most Humble and Devoted Servant R. H.

CHAP. I.

1. HAving performed the Task which my proposed Order imposed on me, touching proper **Charges**, (*viz.* **Ordinaries**,) together with their making, and diverse manner of Bearing; the same orderly Progression calls us to the hadling of **Common Charges.**

By **Common Charges** may be meant all things both Natural and Artificial which are used in Coats of Arms; but in this Second Book I shall only treat of such things as are natural: Now things natural are (according to the Philosophers) Essences of themselves, or subsisting by others, the number of which, is Infinite, as *Zanchius* noteth, *lib.* 1. *p.* 55. *de Operibus*: saying [illegible] *sunt & prope infinitæ, non tam res, quam rerum species, in Cœlis, in Aere, in Terris, in Æquis*: But it is not to be expected that I should speak of all such natural things; only such as fall within the compass of Armory: Those I shall evidence by Examples and Demonstration.

Of Natural things, which are born in Coats, I shall endeavour to set forth the several Varieties thereof, under these heads.

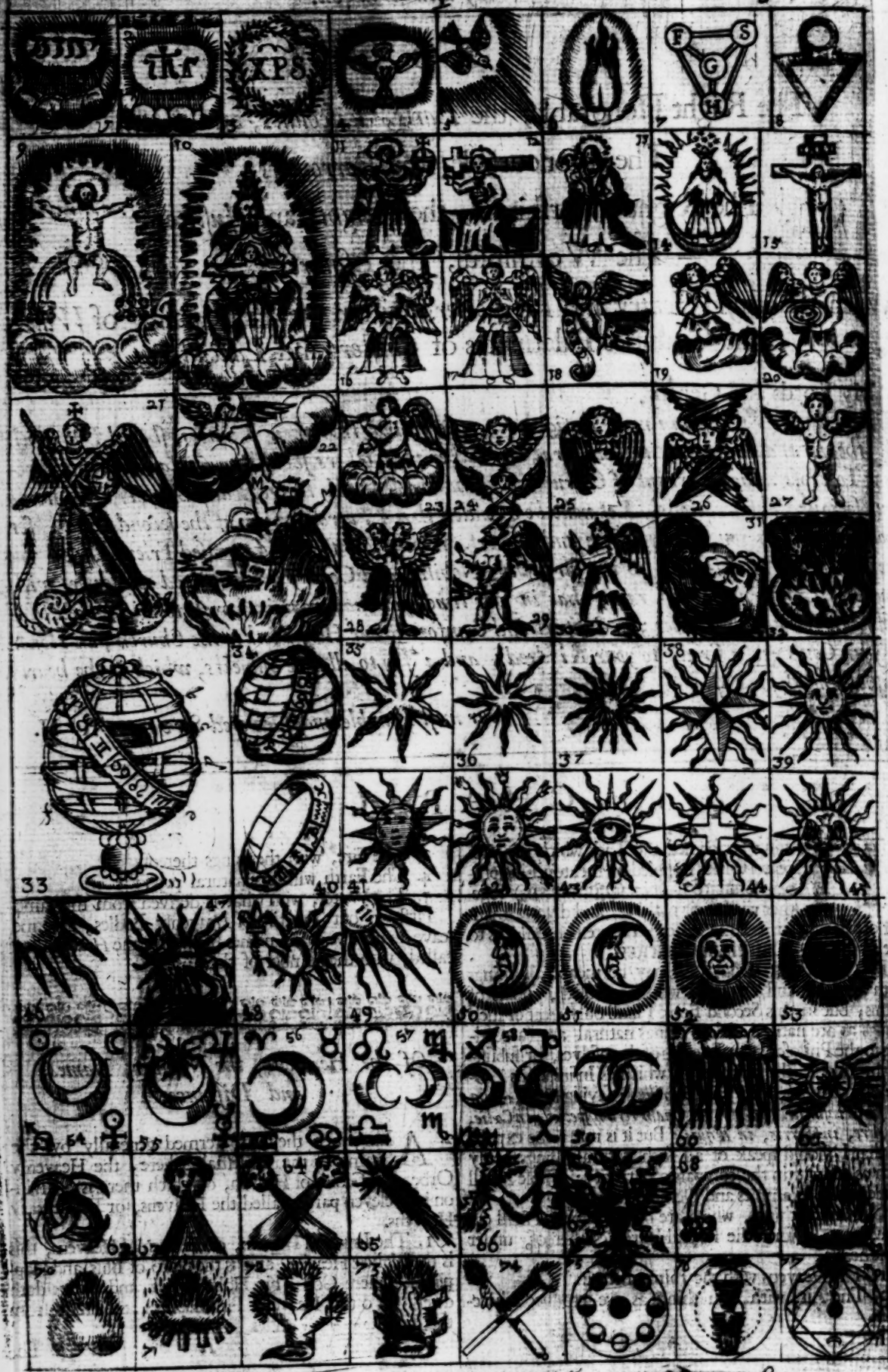
1. The *Heavens* with the things therein.
2. The Air, with such things as are produced therefrom.
3. The Fire, with the things thereof.
4. The Earth with its natural products.
5. The Water, with what is derived from the same.

First, in our Treatise of *Heavenly Bodies*, give me leave to give you the names by which the *Heavens* are called, with the number of them.

Of the Heavens, the Number, Names, and Distance.

2. ALtogether they are termed generally by the name of the Coelestial Sphere, the Heavenly Orbe, the Globe of Heaven, of which there is a division into eleven parts, called the Heavens, or Elementary Heavens.

1. The Imperial Heaven, or Heaven of Heavens, this is the highest Heaven, and is the place of Bliss and Happiness, where God, his Holy Angels and Saints doth dwell. To this Heaven, Philosophers account it from the Earth ------- miles.



I: P: M: Caroli D'ni Montiuerne: vicecomitis Marlborugh.

2. The *Primum Mobile*, or first moveable Heaven, this is round, of a Blew colour, clear and shining, without any Starrs, ever moving, and from East to West maketh his Revolution in 24 hours; it is called also the Diurnal Sphere, or daily moving Heaven. This Heaven is by Astronomers accounted to be ------ miles distant from the Earth.

3. The Christal Heaven, of some called the Watry Heaven, it is also clear and shining, without any Stars: it is distant from the earth-------- miles, and maketh its Revolution about the Earth, according to the motion of its *Primum Mobile*.

4. The Firmament, or Starry Heaven: In this Sphere or Heaven all the fixed Stars are fastned; having no other motion than the moving of the Firmament in which they are fixed; and that is according to the Revolution of the first Mover. This is distant from Saturn, 120485 miles, and therefore the Bodies of these Stars must needs exceed the Globe of the Earth by many hundreds of degrees.

5. The Heaven, or Circle, or Sphear of Saturn, the highest of the seven Planets: It is said to be bigger than the Earth 91 times, and maketh his Revolution from West to East in 30 years; and is distant from Jupiter 18721 miles.

6. The Heaven of Jupiter; it is bigger than the earth 65 times, and makes his Revolution from West to East in 12 years, and is distant from Mars 18721 miles.

7. The Heaven of Mars; it is bigger than the Earth one time and half; makes his Journey from West to East in two years, and is distant from the Sun 15725 miles. It is sometimes called the Sphere of *Herculus*.

8. The Heaven of Sol, or the Sun; it is bigger than the Earth by 162 times; and runs his course round the World in 24 hours, and his Revolution from West to East in 365 days and 6 hours, which is one Year; and is distant from Venus 1437 miles and a half.

9. The Heaven of Venus; this Planet is said to be 37 parts as little as the Earth; runs her course from West to East in the same space of time as the Sun doth, and is distant from Mercury 12812 miles. This is a bright shining Star; going before the Sun, is called the Morning Star; after the Sun the Evening Star.

10. The Heaven of Mercury, this Planet is lesser than the Earth by 32000 parts; and makes his Revolution from West to East as the Sun doth: It is distant from the Moon 12812 miles.

11. The Heaven or Orbe of Luna or the Moon: This is the least of the Planets, being 43 parts lesser than the Earth, and 7000 times than the Globe or Body of the Sun: She maketh her Revolution from West to East in 27 days. It is distant from the Earth 1570 miles.

The whole summ from the Earth to the Firmament, 358463 miles and a half: But others affirm, that to the Firmament or 8 Heaven is 170000103, that is one hundred and seventy millions, a hundred and three miles Geometrical; and from the first movable to the Earth, is ten times so much.

The Jewish Rabbins say there are but nine Heavens or Spheres, 1. That of the Moon. 2. That of *Cochab*. 3. That of *Nogah*. 4. That of the Sun. 5. That of *Maadim*. 6. That of *Tsedack*. 7. That of *Shabthai*. 8. That of the Starry Firmament. 9. The highest Heaven.

2. FROM natural things, such as the Heavens do afford unto us, and is made particular use off in tokens of Honour, are such as these.

I. He beareth Azure, **in a Glory**, in *Hebrew* Letters, the Word **Jehovah**, with a Cloud invironing the lower part of it **proper**: After this manner the Ancients did describe the God-head only from a Glory, having no Image or Form, which they took from the saying of the Prophet *Isaiah*, *Isa.* 40. 18, 25. *To whom will ye liken GOD?* or, *What likeness will you compare him to?* This made the Idolatrous *Athenians* term him an unknown God, as *Act.* 17. 23. *having no known image or form*; and better thus to set him forth than after the likeness or according to the shape and fashion of any Human Creature. This is a part of the Coat of *Nassau*, a Title of Honor belonging to the Prince of *Orenge*.

II. He beareth Azure, in a **Glory**, three Letters, *viz.* **I H S.** Sable, invironed with Clouds in Chief and Base Argent: The I H S signifieth *Jesus Hominum Salvator*, being the Symbolical Letters or Characters, for the name Jesus, the Saviour of the World. This is born by the name *Jesuite*.

III. He beareth Argent, within a **Crown of Thorns**, (or a Wreath of Thorns, three Letters, that is to say X P S, Sable. By the Letters we understand the name *Christus*, being the Symbolical Letters of Jesus Christ, who for our sakes wore such a Crown; which by *Boswell* is termed also a Crown of *Espine*, from *Spina*, the Latin for a *Thorn*: Born by the Catholick Christian. This Crown is worn of all the Soldiers of our Saviour Militant here, and he that feels not the pricks thereof, is in danger never to wear the Crown Triumphant hereafter.

IV. He beareth Gules, in a **Glory**, the visible form of the **Holy Ghost**, in the likeness of a **Dove displaid**, Argent, Legs and Beak, Gules. Others Blazon it a Dove displaid Argent in the Glory of the Sun: But in old Blazoning it was termed nothing else but the Holy Ghost, because it is said to descend on our Saviour in the likeness of a Dove, *Luke* 3. 22. This is part of the Coat belonging to the Worshipful Company of *Stationers*.

V. He beareth Sable, a **Dove volant Descendant**, in the Dexter corner Argent, in the **Glory** of the **Sun**, termed by others in the Glory of the Sun, issuing out of the Dexter corner Bendwise, a Dove volant or descendant) proper. By some termed the **descension** of the **Holy-Ghost** in Bend, in the form of a **Dove**. Born by the name of *Dove*.

VI. He beareth Vert, in a **Glory**, a **Fiery Tonge**, proper. This was the visible form of the descension of the Holy Ghost upon the Apostles and Disciples of Jesus Christ, mentioned *Acts* 2. 3. *And there appeared unto them Cloven Tongues, like as of Fire, and sate upon each of them; and they were all filled with the Holy Ghost, and began to speak with other Tongues, as the Spirit gave them utterance.* Which thing was promised by our Saviour, and foretold by the Prophet *Joel*, as you may read *Act.* 1. 4, 5. *Mat.* 3. 11.

3. 11. and *Joel* 2. 28. This is termed also the Holy Ghost (or Holy Spirit) in the visible form of a Fiery Tongue.

☞ Note, that all things which have a Sanctity in them, are always circled about with a Glory; or have it about the head, as all Saints were of old, so depicted.

VII. He beareth Gules, three **Plates in Triangle**, all conjoined to another in the **Center**: containing four Letters, *viz.* F. S. G. H. Sable; which Letters signify God in the Trinity of Persons, Father, Son, and Holy-Ghost. This I found in an Escochion very ancient in a Glass Window in St. *Mary's* Church in *Wich Malbanck*: which was of old thus Blazoned in short; The **Trinity of Persons** in the **Unity of Essence.** Others a **Trinity and Unity**, each charged with a Symbollical Letter representing the Persons of the Deity: Bishop *Baily* in his *Practice of Piety*, calls it a Tripartite Idol, representing the Trinity.

VIII. He beareth Argent, an **Annulett joined** on the out-side to the middle of a **triangle pierced triangularly**, Sable. This I have seen upon a Monument in a Wall in St. *Michaels* Church in the City of *Chester*, and by the Bearer and Owner of that devise was termed the **Unity in Trinity**, because (if rightly drawn) the triangle is composed from the Annulett. After this manner according to these two examples the Ancients did draw the Trinity, signifying by four Letters the Trinity of Persons in the God-head; and it is very observable, that in all Languages, the name of God hath been of old written with four Letters; as,

יהוה Jehovah in *Hebrew*.
Θεὸς, Theos, in *Greek*.
Deus, God in *Latine*.
Duw, or *Duw*, in *Welsh* or *British*.
God, in *English* and *Scotch*.
Dodd, in *Saxon* and *Teutonick*.
Ndja or *Dhja*, in *Mancks* and *Irish*.
Dieu in *French*.
Dios in *Spanish*.
Idio in *Italian*.
Godt, or *Gott*, in *German* and *Dutch*.
Adad in *Assyria*.
Syre by the *Persians*.
Alla by the *Arabians*.
Dayd, Thoyth by the *Egyptians*.
Boeg by the *Esclavonians*.
Eloi by the *Chaldeans*. *Mark* 15. 34.
Abdi, by the *Turks* and *Mahometans*.
Zimi by the *Indians*.
Kong by them of *China*.
Lsar by the *Etruscians*.
Manu by the *Molucca* Islands in the *Indies*.
Abba in the *Syriack* Tongue, *Mar.* 14. 36.

IX. He beareth Or, on a **Rain-Bow**, a Naked Man sitting; having a **Glory** about his head, all **Invironed** with the **Sun Beams**, and a Cloud under it, all proper. This is more briefly Blazoned, the **Son of Man** sitting on a **Rain-Bow**, in the **Glory** of the **Sun**, and the **Clouds under his Feet.** But *Ezekiel* the Prophet doth best describe this Judge and Judgment Seat, *Ezech.* 1. 26, 27. who saith, *That above the Firmament is the likeness of a Throne, as the appearance of a Saphire stone, and upon the Throne is the Son of Man, with fire round about him, like to the Bow in the Clouds in the day of Rain*, &c.

Here give me leave to give the Reader a brief Description of the Gods of the Nations, and how, and in what manner the Heathens usually depicted the same.

Imperial Gods fained to be Gods.

4. THose are such Gods as no Man might appropriate to himself, but were common, or the chief Gods of all People and Nations in general; who were first by the *Greeks* assigned to their principal Kingdoms and Offices, as,

Saturn, the God of Time and Age, he is drawn like an Old Man, holding a Sith or *Hook* in one hand, and a Child in the other, devouring it, with a Star on his head, with the Character of the Planet Saturn in the body of it; others depicted him a very old Man, holding in one hand a Serpent turned round with its Tail in his Mouth; his Temples girt with a green wreath, *Hair* and Beard milk white.

Jupiter, or Jove, the God of *Heaven* and of Thunder, with a Thunder-bolt in one hand, and a Scepter in the other, and Wings on his Shoulders, with a Star on his head, with his Character in it (as all the other Planets have) others draw him without Wings upon the back of a Flying Eagle. Others draw him Crowned, and a thin Vail over him, in his right hand the Image of Victory, in his left a Scepter with an Eagle at the top of it.

Mars, the God of War, sometimes drawn on *Horse*-back in compleat Armour, with Lance and Shield all Bloody, with a Fiery Star on his head. Sometimes drawn in a Chariot, drawn with *Horses* called Fear and *Horror*, or Fury and Violence, driven by Wrath and Destruction.

Phœbus, *Titan* or *Sol*; the God of Wisdom and of Arts, is drawn like a Young Man with the Sun Rays round about his head, with a Scepter in his hand, with an eye on the top of it. In *England* the ancient *Britains* adored him in the shape of half a Man with Rays of Light about his head, and a Flaming Wheel on his Breast.

Mercury, the God of Eloquence, Thieves and Merchants; he is also called the Messenger of the Gods: he is drawn in the shape of a young Man, holding a Snaky Staff (called a *Caduceus*) with a thin Vail about his naked Body, and two small Wings fixed on either sides his *Heels*, and two in his *Hat* or narrow brimmed Cap. Some set his Star and Character in it, over his head.

Neptune, the God of the Sea and Waters, an old Man painted naked, with a Mantle flying about, riding on a Sea-*Horse* (or a Whale) with a Trident or three forked Mace in his hand. Of some he is set forth standing upright in the concavity of a great Sea Shell or Escallop drawn by two Sea *Horses*.

Æolus, the God of Wind, an ancient Man with swoln Blub Cheeks, blowing a Blast, with two small Wings upon

on his Shoulders: Some draw him with a pair of Bellows under his Arm.

Vulcanus or *Vulcan*, the God of Fire, (or of Arts and Industry) and of Smiths. Drawn like an Old Man, all smoaky, and of a swarthy complexion, with an Hammer and Anvill, or a Smiths Forge by him; in one hand a Thunderbolt, and the other an Arrow.

Bacchus, the God of Wine and Drunkenness, Drawn naked, being Young, without a Beard, but gross and corpulent, with fat Cheeks, having a Garland of Vine leaves fructed (that is with Bunches of Grapes) about his Temples, and middle of his body; riding upon a Tun or Hogshead, with a Glass of Wine in one hand, and a Bottle in the other: Sometime holding a *Thyrsis* or Vine-Spear in his hand, sitting in a Chariot drawn by Tygers and Panthers.

Cupid, the God of Love, a Naked Boy with Wings, a Quiver with Arrows at his Back, and a Bow in one hand and Arrow in the other: He was Son of *Jupiter* and *Venus* Some Picture him with two Darts, the one of Gold, the other of Lead; one is to procure Love, the other to chase it away.

Pan, or *Faunus*, or *Sylvan*, God of the Woods and Groves, and of Flocks of Sheep and Herds of Cattel; or the Country Mans God: He is drawn from the middle upwards like a Naked Man, swarthy, and a ruddy face, with Asses ears and horns; in one hand a Shepherds hook, in the other a Whistle; and from the middle downwards the perfect shape of a Goats hinder parts. A Satyre.

Pluto the God of Hell and Riches, drawn sitting in a Chair, with a Black Scepter in one hand, and a Crown in the other; by his feet either standeth or coucheth in a Chain the Dog *Cerberus*, or else drawn in a Fiery Chariot by 4 Black Horses, having fire and smoak issuing out of their Nostrils.

Manes are Infernal Gods.

Apollo, the God of Wisdom, drawn like a Beardless Youth, with Yellow hair, carrying in one hand a Cythren, and in the other his Bow and Arrows. Sometimes with a Bow in one hand, and an Arrow in the other; either Armed, or loose Robes and Mantle, with Rayes about his head.

Demy Gods.

5. ARE such as were Heroick persons, and after their Decease were Deified, as,

Castor and *Pollux*, the Gods of Marriners and Voyages, the latter being the Son of *Jupiter* by *Leda*, Wife of *Tyndarus*, King of *Oebilia*, and therefore Immortal; the other by *Tyndarus*. They cleared the Coast of all Pirates at Sea, therefore were adored amongst the Divinities at Sea, and were numbred amongst those that did protect from evil, for this cause the Heathens offered to them in Sacrifice a Lamb.

Palemon and *Glaucus*, the Gods of Swimmers, the latter being a Fisher-man who had a way to take Fish in Winter which others had not; he was also an excellent Swimmer and Diver under Water; being at last Drowned, or devoured of some great Fish, was by Superstitious People held for a Sea-god. The former also being Drowned, was made a Sea-god.

Portumnus, the God of Harbours.

Priapus, the god of Gardens and Gardeners, the Son of *Bacchus* and *Venus*, he was so deformed through the Inchantments of *Juno*, that his Mother slighted him.

Aegipanes, are Demy-gods of the Woods and Fields.

Silenus, the god of Drunkards and Debauchery, the foster-Father of *Bacchus*, he delighted much in planting of Vineyards, he is described to be an hairy Man and deformed, old, and riding on an Ass, Bald-pated, Flat-nosed, and Pot-bellied.

Consul, the god of Counsel.

Tithonus, god of the Morning, is an Old Man made Young again by the Physick of *Aurora*, who loved him, he lived long, and being weary of his Life was turned into a Grashopper, and so carried into Heaven.

Libitina, the god of Funerals and Interment; called also *Venus Libitia*, in her Temple were bought and sold such things as were requisite for Funerals.

Momus, the god of reprehension, whose Father was *Sleep* and Mother *Night*, he did nothing himself, but was imployed to look upon the works and actions of others, and reprove where he found cause.

Amphiaraus, a Prophet and Fore-teller of things to come, after his Decease had in the Country of *Athens*, a stately Edifice erected to him; and was esteemed as a god and gave answers by his Oracles, through Dreams, not by a *Pythonissa* as the Oracles of *Apollo* were.

Perseus the Son of *Jupiter* and *Danae*, whom he begat in a Golden shower; he is depicted with a Cristal Shield, and in compleat Armour, with a Sarfe and Lance: On the Shield is painted *Medusa's* head: sometime he is drawn on *Pegasus* the Winged Horse, slaying the Sea Monster that should have destroyed *Andromeda*.

Hercules, he is Drawn in a Lions skin, and a Club in his hand; of him see more *chap. 17. numb. 77.* he was Son of *Jupiter*, by *Alcmena* Wife of *Amphytrion* Prince of *Thebes*, who because of his noble Acts, after his Death was adored as a god.

Orpheus Son of *Apollo* and the Muse *Calliope*, a famous Musitian, is drawn with loose Robes, playing on the Harp, with several sorts of Birds and Beasts about him.

Harpocrates was the *Egyptians* god of Silence, he was the Son of *Isis*, his Statue was made with his Finger to his mouth, and a Wolf skin full of Eyes about his shoulders.

Epires was the great Interpreter of the gods amongst the the *Egyptians*, and was painted with the head of a Hawk.

Genius, the Son of *Jupiter* and *Terra*: he is in shape like a Man, but of an uncertain Sex. *He* is the God of Kingdoms, and every particular persons God, to have an Eye and Watch over them: The Poets say that every Man had two from his Nativity waiting on him, till his Death; the one whereof was a good Genius called *Lares*, the other a bad Genius called *Lemures*: They were worshipped in the form of Serpents, sometimes as a Boy, Girl, or Old Man with a Garland of Palmes about his Temples, a Cornucopia in one hand, and a Dish with Offerings, reaching it out toward an Altar in the other hand.

Janus, the god of foresight or of knowledg of things past, and to come: *He* was the first King of *Italy*, and by reason of his Knowledge was Painted with two Faces,

ces, the one old and gray, with a long Beard looking forward; the other young and youthful and beardless, looking backwards, holding in one hand a Rod or Wand, and in the other a Key.

Agon, the god of actions and enterprises.

Peculiar Gods and their Offices.

6. THese are such gods as were worshipped and adored by the Ancients for several purposes, and by peculiar people; termed also Houshold gods: as,

Statores, *Tonantes*, *Feretrii* and *Jupiter-Elicius*, houshold gods that raised Thunder, which the *Romans* worshipped.

Vertumnus the god of Merchandising.

Cantius, a god to whom they prayed for Wise Children.

Morpheus, the god of Sleep; to whom they prayed that they might Rest and Sleep quietly without disturbance.

Vagianus, a god that kept Children from crying.

Cuninus or *Cunius*, a god that kept Children from misfortune in the Cradle.

Ruminus, a god that preserved Womens Duggs from corruption.

Volumnus, a god that young people adored that desired Marriage, to whom they prayed for good Wives and Husbands.

Agrestis, a god they prayed to for fertility in the fields, and to have good increase.

Bellus, the god of War, which they prayed to for Victory over their Enemies.

Honorius, the god of Inn-keepers, to whom they prayed that Pilgrims and Strangers should be well intreated, and much made on.

Æsculanus, the god of the Gold and Silver Mines, to whom they prayed for discovery, and good success in their Mining.

Æsculapius, the god of Physick, and to Cure the Sick, an Old Man with a long Beard, crowned with Bays, in one hand a knotted Staff, in the other a Serpent; with Flowers and Herbs on his Lap, or Fruit.

Pavor, the god of Cow-herds, to whom they prayed that their Cattel might be kept from Diseases, and be preserved in Strength.

Mauzzim, the god of Power and Riches; this was the god of the *Romans*, who in the height of their power and greatness, esteemed it above all their gods, and therefore worshipped and adored it, *Dan.* 11. 36, 37, 38, 39.

Tellus, the god of the Earth, like an old Woman with Towers on her head, in one hand a Scepter, in the other a Key, her Garments all Embroidered with Flowers and Herbs.

Talisman, or Talismanical Images, were such Figures, or Shapes, or Images of Creatures made by Art Magick, that by the influence and power thereof, they preserved Cities, Countreys and People, from such noisom Creatures, as did molest them. Some say there shape was not Human but of some Cœlestial Figure; though others are of an opinion, that the first gods of the *Latins*, which they called *Averrunci*, or *Dii Tutelares*, Houshold or Tutelar gods, to be no other than these foresaid Images made under certain Constellations, which for their Protection came afterwards to be Idolatrously worshipped.

Countrey Gods and Goddesses.

7. THese were such Gods as were worshipped in particular Kingdoms, Nations and Countreys; now the gods in diverse Countreys were these.

Anubis, the *Egyptians* God, whom they adored in the shape of a Dog, or with a Dogs head, because he loved Dogs and Hunting; they worshipped all living Creatures, namely of Beasts, the Bullock, Dog, and Cat; of Fowl, the Ibis, and Sparrow-Hawk; of Fish, the Lepidotus, and Oxyrinchus.

Succoth-Benoth, the god of the *Babilonians*. Some take it to be a Hen and Chickens: Others an erected Tent, set up in honour of *Mylitta*, or *Venus Urania*, eminent Deities in *Babilon*, 2 *King*. 17. 36.

Memphis, the *Babilonians* God, called also *Succoth Benoth*, 2 *King*. 17. 30.

Tarcat, or *Tartak* the god of the *Evims*, 2 *Kings* 17. 31. *Nibhaz* was also another of their Gods; the one the shape of a Dog, the other an Ass.

Orimasda, a certain kind of Fire which the *Persians* Worshipped as their God.

Motsus, the *Africans* God.

Ashima, the Idol of *Hamath*, 2 *King* 17. 30. in the shape of a He-Goat.

Serapis, a Serpent, the *Naucratits* god; called also *Apis*, it was a live black Bull with a White Star, and List down the back; with a white mark like a Half Moon on the right shoulder.

Yet the *Egyptians* did Paint their god *Serapis* with 3 Heads, of a Lion in the middle, on the right hand a fawning Dog, and on the left hand a ravening Wolf, all which forms joined together by the winding body of a Dragon.

Host of Heaven, as Sun, Moon, and Stars; these were worshipped by the *Israelites*, when they forsook the Commandments of the Lord their God; as we read in 2 *King*. 17. 16. and 23. 5. called 23. 5. called the Image of the Sun; and the Queen of Heaven, *Ezek*. 6. 4. 13. and 8. 16. Jer. 7. 18. and 8. 2.

Nehushtan, the *Israelites* God, this was the Brazen Serpent that *Moses* made, which the people burnt Incense to, which the good King *Hezekiah* brake in pieces, because of their Idolatry, calling it *Nehushtan*, 2 *King*. 18. 4. that is, a piece of Brass, in contempt of it when abused.

Golden Calves, Gods of the *Israelites*, set up by *Jeroboam* at *Dan* and *Bethel*, to hinder them from going up to *Jerusalem*, to worship, which were no other than Devils, 2 *Chron*. 11. 15. 1 *King*. 12. 31. *Jer*. 48. 13. *Hos*. 10. 5. By these we understand Molten and Carved Images, so much spoken against, *Exod*. 32. 2. *Isa*. 48. 5. and Images of the Grove, mentioned 2 *King*. 21. 7. *Hos*. 10. 1.

Beltesbazzar, the God adored by *Nebuchadnezzar* King of *Babilon*, *Dan*. 4. 5. this was probably the name of that Golden Image, which was threescore Cubits high, and six Cubits

Cubits broad, which the said King caused to be set up in the Plain of *Dura*, in the Province of *Babel*; causing all People, Nobles and others, to fall down and worship it, *Dan.* 3. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5.

Succuth, the *Israelites* Idol called their King, and *Chiun* their Images, *Amos* 5. 26. which they carried about, thinking there was a certain Deity in them.

Astartes or *Ashtaroth*, the *Assyrians* god, and of *Sydonia* who as some write was the fourth *Venus* for Beauty, which *Solomon* worshipped at his Concubines inticement, 1 *King.* 11. 5. it had a Bulls head on her head.

Adrammelech and *Anamelech* were the gods of the *Sepharvaims*, for *Sepharvais* was a City of *Assyria*, 2 *King.* 17. 30. to which Idol they burnt and Sacrificed their Children. He was drawn like a King in a Throne, a Scepter in his hand, and a Crown Regal wreathed.

Tibilanus, the god of *Noricum* in *Bavaria*.

Melchom or *Milcom*, the Idol of the Children of *Ammon*, 2 *King.* 23. 10. called also by the *Ammonites*, *Molech* or *Moloch*, *Amos* 5. 26. *Acts* 7. 43. *Jer.* 32. 35. and *Malcham* by the *Jews*, *Zeph.* 1. 5.

Juba, the god of the *Moors*.

Sangus, or *Xanthus*, a god of the *Sabines*, he was their first King.

Dagon, the Idol of the *Philistins*, *Judg.* 16. 23. adored at *Ashdod*, in the shape of a Mareman, with a writhen Tail, and Crowned, 1 *Chron.* 10. 10.

Gabirus, the *Macedonians* god.

Baal-Perith, and *Baal-Meon*, gods of the *Phœnicians*, and of *Egypt*, whom the *Israelites* worshipped in the shape of a King, and so named, because first worshipped in *Berith*, a City of *Phœnicia*, *Judg.* 8. 33. and 9. 4. 46.

Priapus with great Genitals, was the god of *Lampsake*, who was set up at *Hellespont* to be adored, called also *Helespontiacus Vir*; they made him Keeper of their Gardens, setting him up with a Sithe to frighten Thieves and Birds away: *Hor.* They Sacrificed to him an Ass: *Ovid.*

Nebo, was a god of the *Chaldeans*, *Isa.* 46. 1.

Crephaganetus, a god of the *Thebans* in *Egypt*, whom they esteemed Immortal.

Diomedes, the god of *Diomedea* Island.

Venus, the goddess of *Paphos*, *Amathus* and *Cythera*, three pleasant mountains in the Isle of *Cyprus*.

Apollo, the god of *Delphos*, whose Image spake, and told the event of things; called the Oracle of *Apollo*, and the Oracle at *Delphos*.

Diana, the great goddess of the *Ephesians*, *Act.* 19. 28. 34. adored also at *Tarensis*, and in *Persia*.

Asima, the god of the Eastern people, worshipped in the Image of an Ape, or as some affirm, a Goat, or Ram, the *Egyptians* hate all that killed them.

Beelzebub, the Lord of Flies, was an Idol or Oracle erected at *Ekron*, to whom *Hezekiah* sent to know whether he should recover of his Disease, as tho there had been no God in *Israel*, 2 *King.* 1. 2, 3. this was a Devils name which the Jews accounted the Prince of Devils, *Mark* 3. 22. who the *Greeks* called *Pluto*. It is like a King sitting in a Throne.

Nergal, was a continual Fire upon an Altar, which was daily adored in *Ur* of the *Chaldeans*, and from which *Abraham* departed. It was adored by the *Persians* and *Cuthites*, 2 *King.* 17. 30. and 19. 36, 37.

Nisroch, a god of the *Assyrians*, who was worshipped of *Senacherib*, when he was slain by his Sons, 2 *King.* 19. 37. it is thought to be the Ark of *Noah*, or a Figure of it, or the Image of an Eagle; others a King standing (in the *Roman* habit) on a Ball; a Scepter in the right, and supporting a Shield with the left hand.

Nibchaz, the god of the *Egyptians*, 2 *Kings* 17. 31. the *Avims* also did worship it; and is supposed to be the same to *Anubis* beforesaid, and was in the form of a Dog. Some write it *Nabhaz*.

Teraphim, a certain kind of Image, *Hos.* 3. 4. which *Micah* made, and by it told the *Danites* their good success, as it is mentioned, *Judg.* 17. 5. and 18. 17. *Rabbi Eliezer*, surnamed *Gadol*, that is, the great, saith, they were certain Statues made in form of a Man under certain Constellations, whose influences caused them to speak at some certain hours, and give an Answer to whatsoever was demanded of them; being as it were, like those Oracles which oftentimes speak by the mouth of the Devil: But laying aside all other conjectures of them, St. *Jerom*, on 1 *King.* 22. and 1 *King.* 6. 16. tells us, that they were the Images of Seraphims and Cherubims. *Hamahalzel* therefore concludes with this truth; that certainly in the time of the Patriarchs, there were some certain wonderful Images or Statues, by which God made known his Will to his People.

Deumo, the Devil, or a Devilish Idol, most superstitiously adored by the *Painims* of *Calicut* in the *East-Indies*.

Rimmon, the chief god of *Damascus*. He is said to hold a Pomegranate in his hand, to shew he was the Protector of that people who did bear a Pomegranate in their Coat of Arms. Some say it was the Image of *Venus* holding an Apple. He was the god of the *Aramites*, 2 *King.* 5. 18.

Thammuz, the god of the corrupted *Israelites*, mentioned *Ezek.* 8. 14. it is thought to be the Sun.

Moloch or *Molech*. It was a hollow Image of Brass, having seven Repositories, 1. For Meal. 2. For a Sheep. 3. For a Ram. 4. For Turtles. 5. For a Calf. 6. For an Oxe. 7. For a Child. Its form was like a Naked Man, with a Calfs Head Crowned. To this Idol, the *Israelites* burnt their Children in the Valley of *Hinnon* or *Tophet*, near *Jerusalem*. See 2 *King.* 23. 10. 2 *Chron.* 28. 3.

Bel, was another of the chief gods of the *Babilonians*, *Isa.* 46. 1. *Jer.* 51. 44. and *Chaldeans*, a fat Fellow (like *Bacchus*) crowned with a pointed Crown, and in habit of a *Roman*, with a Mantle on his Back, in the left hand a Scepter pointed out; and in the right, holding a Jug or Pitcher by the Ear.

Mero, or *Merodach*, was another god of *Babilon*, whose name the Princes did assume, *Isa.* 39. 1. *Jer.* 50. 2.

Dercetus was a goddess of *Askalon*, and represented as a beautiful Woman.

Melechet, an Idol mentioned by *Jer.* 7. 18. and is taken to be either the Sun or Moon, for they adored it by Offering Cakes to it, as to the Moon.

Adranus was the Tutelar god of *Sicilia*.

Conisalus, the Tutelar god of the *Athenians*.

Sesach, or *Sasceus*, was an Idol of the *Babilonians*, who was adored as *Saturn* in *Rome*: The Festival gave liberty to all manner of Debauchery: Some think this to be *Juno*, it is mentioned, *Jer.* 25. 26.

Cabrus, the Tutelar god of *Pamphilia*.

Rephan, or *Remphan*, *Ciun*, or *Chiun*, named in the *Acts* of the Apostles; some take it to be *Saturn*; others a bright Star in the Firmament, worshipped by the *Israelites*, *Acts* 7. 43. *Amos* 5. 26.

Tanais, the Tutelar god of the *Armenians*.

Tuisco, the Grand-Child of *Noah*, was adored by all the *Germans*, and from them by the *Tuitsh* or *Teutonicks* and *Saxons*, our Ancestors; they drew him like an Old Man, naked, with a rough, hairy Mantle cast over one Shoulder, with a Rod Scepter like, in his right hand.

Woden, is drawn like a warlike Prince, in perfect Armour, holding up a Fauchion in the right and his Buckler in the left hand, with a Crown upon his head.

Ther or *Theramis*, was another Idol God, worshipped by our ancient *Saxons* and *Angles*: It was seated on a Throne, with a Crown of Gold on his head, encompassed about with many Stars; robed, and in his right hand a Scepter.

Seater or *Crodo*, was another Idol adored by the ancient *Saxons*: He was drawn standing upon the Back of a Pearch Fish, being an Old Man, and Lean of Visage; a long Beard, with a Wheel in the left hand held up; and a Basket of Flowers in the right; in a side Coat girt with a long Girdle.

Ermensewl, was a favourable Idol to the Poor, represented by a great Man amongst heaps of Flowers, upon his Head a Cock, on his Breast a Bear; and in his right hand a displaid Banner.

Theutates and *Hesus*, two Idols of the *Gauls*, and ancient *Britains*, supposed to be Warlike and Bloody Devils; for the Adorers were as Bloody here as in other Nations; being the common practice of the Fathers, to cut the Throats of their Sons, and Sacrifice them on the Altars of the *English* gods.

Ogmian, or *Omcana*, the *Gauls Hercules*, whom they painted with many Chains proceeding out of his Mouth, fastned to the Ears of a multitude of little people at his feet.

Fridecast, *Pronz*, *Helmsteed* and *Siwe*, were all Idols of the old *Britains* and *Germans*; whose Descriptions we have not.

Flynt, an Idol so called because he stood, or was set on great Flint Stones, was made like the Image of Death, and naked, save only a Sheet about him; in his right hand a Torch or Fire-blase; on his head the Lions fore feet, and one of the hinder feet on his shoulders; and the other supported with his hand as high as his shoulder.

Eriga, an Idol god also of the old *Saxons*, it represents both Sex of Man and Woman, an Hermophrodite; in one hand she holds a Sword, and the other a Bow.

Luna or the *Moon*, was a god they also adored in the shape of a Woman, with a short Coat like a Man, a Hood covering both head and shoulders round; with two long Ass ears; She holdeth the Moon increasing in both hands before her Belly. Called the Queen of Heaven, *Jer.* 7. 18. and 44. 17.

Baal, or *Baalim*, an Idol of *Amon* and *Zydon*, and *Phænicia*, like a King standing on a Pillar, armed like a *Roman*, bare Thighs and Arms; a Mantle on his left Arm, with a Fauchion advanced in the right hand: His Priests were called *Chemarims*, 2 *King.* 23. 5. *Judg.* 10. 6. *Jer.* 7. 9. *Ezek.* 8. 3. 5. *Hos.* 2. 16. 17. and 11. 2. 1 *King.* 22. 52.

Baal-Peor or *Beel-phegor*, the god of the *Moabites*, *Hos.* 9. 10. adored in the shape of a Naked Man, with a Mantle on the left Shoulder and Arm, holding a Garland of Olive Leaves fructed in his hand above his head.

Chamos or *Chemoch*, or *Chemoz*, an Idol of *Moab*, 2 *King.* 11. 7. it is an Image like a King in the *Roman* habit, a Mantle on his Back, a Sword in the right, and a Shield on the left hand, between two Females in Robes and Vestments, one holding a Scepter, the other pointing up with her Finger, *Is.* 16. 12. *Jer.* 48. 13. 46.

Deumus, is a Devil worshipped amongst the *Indians* in *Calacute*; his Image is most horribly Pictured in a most ugly shape.

Grigr e, is accounted a great God, or rather Devil in *Guinea*, who keepeth the Woods, whose Priests are called *Charobes*.

Houisulsira, is another god or Devil adored by the *Indians*.

Imperial Goddesses so fained to be.

8. THey are such who are said to be Wives of the foresaid Gods; or else such as are their Assistants and Commissioners, as,

Juno, Wife of *Jupiter*, the goddess of Heaven, of Marriages and Riches, is drawn like a Woman of a middle Age, Crowned, with a Scepter in one hand, and a Pomegranate in the other, with a pair of Fetters lying at her Feet, black Hair, and a Sky-coloured Mantle; beset with the Orient Circles of a Peacocks Tail. She is also Depicted drawn in a Chariot by two Peacocks, or a Peacock standing by her.

Proserpina the Wife of *Pluto*, Queen of Hell, the Daughter of *Jupiter* and *Ceres*, whom *Pluto* stole away and ravished, and kept in Hell, who could not be delivered thence, because she had tasted of a Pomegranate in *Pluto*'s Orchard.

Felicitas, a goddess of the *Romans*, whom they Invocated for prosperous success in their Enterprises.

Cybele or *Vesta*, the Wife of *Saturn*, she was goddess of the Earth, and of Fire and Burning; and Depicted with Towers on her head, sitting in a Chariot drawn by Lions. She was also called *Vesta*. *Numa Pompilius* dedicated to her an Eternal Fire, ordaining her Priests the Vestal Virgins to see to its preservation.

Diana or *Cynthia* or *Phœbe* and *Luna*, by all which names this goddess was called, she was Sister of *Apollo* or the Sun, and goddess of Hunting, Child-bearing, Virginity and Dancing. She is drawn in a long Robe, girded about her Paps, with her Bow and Arrows; set in a Silver Chariot drawn by two white Stags; sometimes by two Horses, one Black, the other White; on her head a Crescent, and two Wings on her Shoulders.

Venus, the beautiful goddess of Love and Pleasure, the Wife of *Vulcan*, god of the Fire, she was Drawn like a Beautiful Lady, with rich Ornaments and Jewels, a Star upon her head, set in a Chariot, with *Cupid* by her, drawn by Swans or Doves.

Aglaja is also a Diety of Beauty. And is Crowned with Roses, And Rising out of the Sea.

Aurora the goddess of the Morning and Light, Is drawn like a fresh Virgin, Clothed in Blew: Set in a Chariot of Gold, drawn with White Horses, or Cranes; having her Fingers dropping with Dew: Some say, a handful of Roses, Gilliflowers and Lillies; with a Basket of Flowers in the other hand; and in Purple. Some call her *Tithon*,

Minerva,

Minerva, the goddess of Learning and Wisdom, called also by the name of *Tritonia*. She is painted with a Helmet and a Crest, with a Cock on the top of her Helmet, with a round Target on her Arm, and a Spear in the right hand: The Owl it is Painted by her.

Pallas, the goddess of Arms, a young Woman Armed with an Helmet or Head-piece, a Shield on her left Arm, and a Spear in the right hand, on her Helmet a Phyinx or Cock.

Bellona, the goddess of War, Depicted with the same Habiliments of War, (and Armed Back, Breast and Shoulders) as *Pallas* afore, by her side two Boys with Knives threatning each other.

Victoria, the goddess of Victory, a Woman in Arms like *Pallas*, standing upon Slaves as her Conquest, or else drawing them after her in Chains and Fetters.

Charitas, the goddess of Charity, a Woman with 2 or 3 Children.

Gratia, the Graces, the three Daughters of *Jupiter*, they were Drawn, Fair, Naked, Wings at their Feet, holding each other by the hand.

Ceres, the goddess of Corn and Tillage and Plenty, called *Ops* and *Tellus*; like an Old Woman in a Green Vesture, Crowned; in one hand a Globe, and in the other a Scepter: Some draw her with Corn about her head, and a Poppey head in one hand; and a Torch or Firebrand in the other.

Thetis, the goddess of the Sea; she was Wife of *Oceanus*, the Father of all the gods. She was Daughter of *Celum* and *Vesta*, the Mother of Rivers and Fountains.

Oreades, the goddess of the Mountains.

Hecate, a Monster with 3 heads.

Astrea, the Goddess of Justice.

Vesta, in the habit of a Virgin sitting on the ground, crowned with white Garlands.

Hebe, the goddess of Youth. And *Thalia*, the Deity also of Youth; the first was Daughter of *Juno*, whom she Conceived by eating of Lettice; she was Cup-bearer to *Jupiter*.

Opis, the Mother or goddess of New born Babes, whose Image Women with Child did wear before their Bellies for Nine Months; if the Child any way miscarried, they burnt the Image or beat it to Pouder; else they Adored it if the Child lived.

Volumna, the goddess of Marriage for young People, as Maids.

Lucina, the goddess of Child-birth; crowned with the Herb Dittany, and a burning Torch in her hand.

Flora, or *Chloris*, goddess of Flowers and Gardens, adorned with green, garnished with Flowers of Gold and Purple, having a Garland of Flowers about her Temples, and a Posie in her right hand; with the Horn of Plenty (called *Cornucopia*) in the other Arm.

Nox, the goddess of Hell, the Mother of Eternal Night, Painted all Black, and in a dark Cell or Cave.

Nereiades, *Nymphæ*, the Deities of the Water, as *Nereus*, *Doris*, Nymphs of the Sea. *Thetis* were Nymphs of Fountains and Rivers. *Proteus*, *Neptune's* Shepherd, and the Leader of his Sea Calves, *&c.* All these were Drawn Naked, with Scarfs flying about them; and Wings like the Finns of Flying Fishes.

Occasio, the goddess of Opportunity; painted on a Wheel, with Wings on her Feet, a long Fore-lock, and Bald behind.

Cardinea, a goddess of the *Romans*, to whom they Sacrificed to keep them in Health of Body, especially the inward parts, as Heart, Liver.

Segacia, a goddess to make Seeds grow.

Meditrina, the goddess of Physick.

Nemesis, the goddess of Revenge, Justice and Punishment, Drawn with Wings, standing on a Wheel, in one hand a Golden Ball, in the other a Whip: Some Draw her with a Staff in one hand, and a Bridle in the other.

Suadela, the goddess of Eloquence.

Hamadryades, goddesses or Deities of the Woods. *Feronia* is also the goddess of the Woods.

Musæ, the Muses or goddesses of the Poets, are *Calliope*, goddess of Epiques: *Clio*, of Lyriques: *Aurat*, of Love Poetry: *Thalia*, of Epigrammatists: *Melpomene*, of Elegies: *Terpsichore*, of Dramatiques: *Euterpe*, of Mymicals: *Polyhymnia*, of Panegyrists; and *Urania*, of Mystical Poetry.

Euphrosyne, the goddess of Chearfulness and Mirth.

Meretrix, the goddess of Whores and Bawds.

Metuta, the goddess of Jealousy.

Calatina or *Clotina*, goddess of the Stool, Houses of Office, and the Jakes.

Justa Funebria, and *Justa Exequiarum*, are Gods of Burial, and Funeral Obsequies; Funeral Deities.

Nymphæ, or Nymphs of the Woods, are Virgins of *Diana*; they are Depicted Naked, with their Garments girt about them, Arms and Shoulders Naked, with Bows in their hands, and Quivers by their sides.

Euterpe, the smooth tongued goddess of Flattery.

Fortuna, the goddess of Fortune or Chance, Depicted with two Faces, one Fair, the other Black and Ugly, holding Treasures, Jewels and Riches in one hand, and a Staff or Wand in the other: But she is generally Drawn standing on a round Ball or Bubble, in a large Sea-shell, floting in the Sea, holding a Sail by the Yard, with one hand above her head, and the other holding the skirt of the Sail; all her Body Naked.

Parcæ, or the Distinies, or Sisters, or goddesses of Man's Life; they are three, *Clotho* is young, *Lachesis* of a middle Age, *Atropos* Old and Decrepid: they are Depicted sitting all in a Row; the first and youngest draws a Thread from a Distaff, the second winds it about a Wheel; and the third, with her Kniffe or Scissars cuts the Thread off; they are invested with White Veils, and Coronets on their heads, wreathed about with Flowers of *Narcissus*.

These may suffice, having named the chief; for the rest they may not be set down but with great Labour and Charge; for it is recorded by good Authors; that the gods, goddesses, and demy-gods of the Gentiles, exceeded the number of Thirty Thousand; and what were they (saith King *David*) no other than Devils, *Psal.* 96. 5.

Peruse for a farther Description of these Heathen Gods, the *History* of the *Heathen* Gods. By *Marius D'Assigny*.

View of all Religons. By *Alex. Rosse*.

Polygraphice, *lib.* 4. By *William Salmon*, Professor of Physick.

Mystigogus Poeticus, the Muses Interpreter. By *Alex. Rosse*.

Pisgah sight, or Description of *Canaan*. By *Thomas Fuller*. D.D.

Francis Holyoke, his Etymological Dictionary.

With what Authors they cite.

X. He beareth Or, an **Ancient in Robes Triple Crowned, supporting of a Crucifix** (or Christ upon the Cross,) on the Breast whereof is a **Dove displaid**, all within a **Glory**, and the **Firmament** under his feet. This I have seen in several Glass Windows in Churches in *Cheshire*; and is the Emblem of the Trinity, Father, Son, and Holy Ghost; and may be fitly termed the *Romish* Figure of the Trinity; which *Daniel* describeth, *Dan.* 7. 9, 13. By *the Ancient of Days, and the Son of Man in the Clouds, having Power and great Glory.* Read *Rev.* 20. 11.

Ignorance hath begotten these Idolatrous and Superstitious Adorations in the hearts of People; especially such who are led through Blind Zeal; that they not only frame and fancy a Similitude of God; but also Worship and Adore that Image as God; when the Prophet absolutely forbids it, *Isa.* 20. 17. 18. asking them the question, *That seeing all Nations before God are less than nothing, To whom then will ye liken God? or what similitude will ye set up unto him?*

XI. He beareth Azure, our **Saviour in Purple Vestments**, holding up a **Mound** in his left hand, and his right extended to the **Dexter Chief**, proper. Others to make a long business, Blazon it thus, Christ the Saviour of the World, cloathed in long Vestments, with a loose Mantle flung over his Arm and Shoulders, with the Glory of the Sun about his head, extending his right hand to the Dexter corner, and in his left a Mound, invironed with a Circle, and insigned with a Cross Avellane. This is born for the Arms of the Bishops Sea or Abby of *Sainct Saviours*, in *Italy*.

XII. He beareth Argent, **our Saviour in his long Robe, close girt**, Purpure; sitting upon a **Hurnett**, with **a long Cross** on his Shoulder, supported or held by his right hand, Or; in his left hand before his Breast **a Mound**, Azure, circled and crossed of the third. The like Coat to this is born by the See of *Chichester*, which Mr. *Morgan, lib.* 3. *fol.* 64, 68. Blazoneth thus, Saphire, a Prester John (or Presbyter John) sitting on a Tomb-stone, having in his left hand a Mound, and his right hand extended, a Linnen Miter on his head, and in his mouth a Sword, all proper. It is now since our Protestant Reformation so Blazoned; but of old that Bishoprick did bear the Arms as I have set them forth in this example, *numb.* 12. which may be seen in several Glass Windows, especially in some old Manuscripts which I can produce.

XIII. He beareth Saphire, our **Lady** with her **Babe in her right Arm**, and a **Scepter** in her left hand, Topaz. Others Blazon it, our Blessed Lady, the Virgin *Mary*, in her **long Robes close girt**, with her **Hair pendant**, holding her Son in her right Arm, with Glories about their heads, and a Scepter in her left hand. This Coat belongs to the Bishoprick of *Salisbury*.

Ruby 2 Lions passant gardant Topaz; on a Chief Saphire, our Lady sitting on a Tomb, with her Babe, Crown, and Scepter of the second; is the Arms of the Bishoprick of *Lincoln*.

In the Sun, or invironed with the Sun, a demy Virgin Mary, with the Babe in her Arms, is the Crest of *Van Roker* of *Bavaria*.

☞ Sometime she is born Sitting Crowned and Sceptered. But note this, that our Saviour, Virgin *Mary*, with all the Apostles, Saints and Martyrs, in what posture soever they are born, either in Coats, or for Crests; they ever have either a Glory or Circle about their heads; and their Garments are long Robes close gird, generally with loose Mantles or Vestures carelesly cast over the Shoulders and Arms, as their posture requireth.

XIV. He beareth Jupiter, a **Woman clothed, close girt, and Mantled**, Mercury, standing on a **Cressant**, Luna, **crowned with seven Stars**, within the **Glory** of the **Sun**, Sol. *Morgan lib.* 3. *fol.* 11. Blazons it more short thus, a Virgin standing in the Moon Clothed and Crowned with Stars, Cristal; within the Sun, Topaz. But St. *John* in his Revelation shews himself to be the best Herald in Blazoning this Coat, who saith, that amongst the rest of his Wonders, *Rev.* 12. 1. *He saw a Woman clothed with the Sun, and the Moon was under her feet, and upon her head a Crown of twelve Stars.* This is born by the name of *Glorier*.

This is also the Order of *Burbon*, or the Knights of our Lady in *Burbon*, instituted 1360. with the word ESPERANCE. Mr. *Rosse* in his Religious Orders terms this the Virgin *Mary* entowered with the Sun; crowned with 12 Stars.

XV. He beareth Sable, a **Crucifix** proper. Otherwise Blazon it thus: He beareth Saturn, **Christ Nailed unto the Cross**, proper; having an **Escrowle** fixed over his head, containing four Letters, *viz.* I. N. R. I. Luna. These Letters signifie, *Jesus Nazarethæ Rex Judæorum*, Jesus of Nazareth, King of the Jews. This is the Coat belonging to the Kingdoms of *India*.

XVI. He beareth Jupiter, an **Arch-Angel**, in his right hand a **Palm-Branch**, and in his left a **Sword**, all proper. Others to set forth the habit of the Angel, will say, **habited in a long Robe close girt**, proper.

☞ Here it is at the Artists choice, whether they will use the word proper or not; for Angels in what posture soever they be, if they be in white Robes, with Golden Wings and Hair, are said to be in their proper colours, because they resemble Purity and Holiness, therefore need not to be mentioned; but to say an Angel (or so many Angels in such or such a posture) and no more. But if they be of one distinct Colour or Mettle, or of several colours, then it is necessary we express what colours they are off. By the name of *Raker Van Hoggen*.

XVII. He beareth Mars, an **Angel** with his hands **conjoined and elevated** upon his Breast. In the Blazoning of Coats wherein Angels are, beside what hath been spoken in the former example, take notice of these things.

☞ First, of the difference between **Archangels and Angels**, the former being ever Insigned on the forehead or top of the head with a Cross.

Secondly, if Angels be in a standing posture, you need not to mention it, neither the displaying of the Wings; for if the Angels stand directly with a full Body, or presence (as it were) to our sight; then the Wings do spread themselves on both sides the Body: But if the Angels stand sideways, then their Wings will fall to be one behind the other, which have terms accordingly, as following examples will declare: And,

Thirdly, In the last place to mention the manner of their Robes (saying, habited in a long Robe close girt, and trussed up, and such like, as *Gwilliams* terms it) may very well

well be omitted; for all Angels are Depicted in such kind of Garments; as it is mentioned *Rev.* 7. 9, 13, 14.

This Coat is born by the name of *Brangor de Carvisia.*

Such an Arch-Angel couped at the middle, saith *Gwilliam*, was the King of *Arabia*'s Coat Armour, *Anno* 1413.

The like demy Arch-angel was born issuing out of Base, by *Gideon*, Bishop of *Pellicaster.*

XVIII. He beareth Diamond, an **Angel volant in Fesse**, pointing with his right hand to the **Heavens** and his left to the **Earth**, his Garments Sardonyx, **Winged**, Pearl, having an **Escroll issuing** out of his mouth, containing these Letters, G. I. E. D. of the third: The Letters do signifie the words uttered by the Angels who brought the Shepherds the Tidings of our Saviours Birth. *Gloria In Excelsis Deo*, &c. Glory to God on high, *&c.* This Coat may well beseem any Ambassador or bringer of Happy News, especially such as first plant Religion in any Country.

XIX. He beareth Sol, an Angel in a **genuine posture** (or Kneeling) with his hand **conjoined and elevated** on his Breast, Mars: Wings **in Sepurture**, Luna: Of some, the Wings after this form, being one behind the other, is termed **expenced**: In some Coats you shall find **Arch-Angels** and **Angels genuant** or Kneeling, with their **Wings displaid**, and then you need say no more but an Angel Kneeling.

☞ But if the Angels be sideways, and the Wings behind each other, they are termed **Sepurture** (or **Expenced**.) yet this Kneeling with the Body full in sight, is not termed an Angel Sepurture; but an Angel Kneeling, the Wings Sepurture, by reason they are seen but by the halfs. See *numb.* 23.

And this manner of Blazoning ought to be used to all Charges that stand sidewise, or three quarterwise; as to sight there doth appear but half the Face or little more, with half the Body, with a small part of the Right Arm or Foot; then you shall term such thus, an Angel Demy faced praying, or in such or such a posture, Wings Sepurture; as you shall see in many examples in the handling both of Men and his several parts, as Head, Eyes, *&c. chap.* 17. *numb.* 6, 7. and also in the Treatise of Birds and Fowl, *chap.* 11. *numb.* 4 21, 23, *&c.*

XX. He beareth Gules, a **Demy Angel issuing** out of a **Cloud**, holding the Head of **St. John Baptist** in a **Platter**, all proper. This is the Crest of the Worshipful Company of *Tallow Chandlers*, of the City of *London.*

XXI. He beareth Or, an **Arch-Angel habited in a long Robe**, Argent, ensigned on the Forehead with a **Cross Patee**, and girt over the Breast with a **Salter**, Gules, having in his right hand a **Dart** of the Field, and on his left Arm a **Shield of St. George**, standing in **Triumph**, and **piercing** through of a **Dragon** of the Third. Thus by Mr. *Morgan*, *lib.* 3. *fol.* 10, 11. who saith it is the Badg or appendant Jewel of the Order of St. *Michal* in *France*: Which more short may be termed St. *Michael*, (or an Arch-Angel) in Triumph over the Dragon, or Devil.)

After this manner is an Arch-Angel represented like an Armed Knight, with a Shield and Helmet ensigned with a Cross, triumphing over the great Red Dragon the Devil.

*

XXII. He beareth Gules, out of a **Cloud**, in the Dexter corner, an **Arch-Angel** in a Glory, with a **Dart**, casting **Lucifer** headlong into a Flame of Fire, issuing out of Base proper. This is also termed the Battel between *Michael* and the Devil, with his casting out of Heaven into the Lake of Fire and Brimstone. Here give me leave to tell you after this Fall, how many Orders of Angels still remained.

The Orders of Angels.

9. THERE remained still in Heaven (after the Fall of *Lucifer*, the bright Star, and his Company) more Angels than there ever was, is, and shall be, Men born in the Earth, which God ranked into Nine Orders or Chorus, called the Nine Quoires of Holy Angels.

1. Is the Order of *Seraphims*, whose Governour or chief Arch-Angel is *Uriel*: Whose Ensign is a Flaming Heart and a Cross Staff.

2. Is the Order of *Cherubims*, whose Arch-Angel is *Jophiel.* Who are represented young, having four Wings to cover their Faces and Feet.

3. Is the Order of *Arch-Angels*, whose Head is *Michael*; his Ensign is a Banner hanging on a Cross, and Armed, as representing Victory; with a Dart in one hand, and a Cross on his Forehead.

4. Is the Order of *Angels*, whose Governour is *Gabriel*, whose Ensign is a Book and a Staff.

5. Is the Order of *Thrones*, whose Chief is *Zaphkiel* or *Sachiel*; represented Kneeling, whose Ensigns are a Palm and a Crown.

6. Is the Order of *Principalities*, whose Arch-Angel is *Chamael* or *Samael.* Whose Ensign is a Scepter and Girdle across the Breast; being the Angel Guardian of Kingdoms.

7. Is the Order of *Powers*, whose Leader is the Arch-Angel *Raphael* or *Raphel.* Therefore his Ensign, of some, is made to be a Thunderbolt and a Flaming Sword, thereby to withstand the power of Evil Angels.

8. Is the Order of *Dominions*, whose Arch-Angel is *Zadkiel* or *Sachiel*; whose Ensign is a Sword or Scepter, and a Cross.

9. And the lowest is the Order of *Virtues*, whose Conductor and Leader is *Haniel* or *Anael*: Whose Ensign is a Crown of Thorns in one Hand, and a Cup of Consolation in the other.

Yet some Authors have them thus, 1. *Michael.* 2. *Gabriel.* 3. *Samael.* 4. *Raphael.* 5. *Sachiel.* 6. *Anael.* 7. *Cassiel* or *Gaphriel.*

Some Authors rank them thus, *Seraphims*, *Cherubims*, *Thrones*, *Dominions*, *Vertues*, *Powers*, *Principalities*, *Arch-Angels*, *Angels.*

Kings or Princes Infernal.

10. GOD never Erected any Order, Rule or Government, but the **Devil** did, and will imitate him: For where GOD hath his *Church*, the Devil will have his **Synagogue.** And as there is Orders and Degrees in

Heaven; Hell shall not be without; where it is said by the Learned, that in the Infernal Region there are Nine Orders (others say seven Kingdoms) over which there is as many Kings or Rulers.

1. The Order of **Pride, Vain-glory, and Honor**, whose Leader is **Beelzebub** or **Baell**.
2. The Order of **Lies, Fallacies and Doubts**, whose Head is **Python**.
3. The Order of **Mischiefs, and Evil doings**, whose Head is **Belial**.
4. The Order of **Temptations, Inticements to Wickedness, Accusations and Punishments**, whose grand Captain is **Asmodeus**.
5. The Order of **Deceit, Fraud, Cousenage and Disguise**, whose Leader is **Satham**.
6. The Order of **Airy Powers**, who can give Thunder, Lightnings, Hail, Rain, *&c.* whose Leader is **Merafin**.
7. The Order of **Discord, War, Strife**, &c. whose Head is **Abaddon**.
8. The Order of ---------- whose Leader is **Astaroth**.
9. The Order of ---------- whose Head is **Paimon**.

1. **Baell**, the principal King of all Devils and Evil Spirits; he hath three heads, one of a Toad, a Man, and a Cat. He hath under him 66 Legions of Spirits. Under him are these Princes.

Agares, like an Old Man, riding on a Crocodile, with a Hawk on his Fist. He is the first Duke, having under him 31 Legions.

Marbas, or **Barbas**, is like a Lion; under him are 36 Legions.

Amon, or **Amaon**, like a Wolf, with a Serpents Tail, spitting out Fire; under him are 40 legions of Fiends or Devils.

Barbatos, he is like a Sagitarius: He was of the Order of *Virtues*, and hath 30 legions under him.

Buer, is like a ------ and hath 50 legions under him.

Gusoin, is like a Musitianer, or the Philosopher *Xenophilus*; he hath 40 Legions under his power and command.

Botis or **Otis**, he is like an ugly Viper, if he put on human shape he hath great Teeth and two Horns, with a Sword in his hand; he rules 60 Legions of Devils.

Bathin, is like a Man with a Serpents Tail, riding on a Pale Horse; he ruleth 30 legions.

2. **Purson**, or **Cursen**, he is a great and potent King in the ----- He is like a Man, with a Lions Face, carrying a most cruel Viper, and rideth on a Bear, with Trumpets before him: He rules 22 legions of Devils which were partly of the order of *Virtues*, and partly of the order of *Thrones*. He hath under him

Eligor, or **Abigor**, like a goodly Knight, bearing a Launce and Ensign, and a Scepter; he governs 60 legions.

Leraie, or **Oray**, like an Archer with Bow and Quiver; he governs 30 legions of Spirits.

Valefar, or **Malephar**, the shape of a Lion, and head of a Thief; he rules ten legions of Devils.

Vozar, or **Forall**, like a Bull; and rules 36 legions.

Ipos, or **Apporos**, in shape of an Angel; yet more obscure and filthy than a Lion; with a Lions head, Goose feet, and a Hares tail; he hath under him 66 legions.

Naberius, or **Cerberus**, in form of a Crow, 19 legions obey him.

Glasia-Labolas, or **Caacrinolaas**, or **Caassimolas**, like a Dog, with Wings like a Griffen; and 36 legions hear and obey him.

Zephar, is like a Soldier; 26 legions are at his command.

3. **Bileth** is a great King, and terrible in the ----- he rideth on a Pale Horse, with Trumpets before him, and all kind of melodious Musick; he was of the Order of *Powers*, and hath 85 legions at his command; Under him are,

Sitri, or **Bitru**, appears with the face of a Leopard, and Wings of a Griffin. He is a Bawdy Devil, and hath 60 Legions under him.

Paimon, he is more obedient to **Lucifer** than other Kings are; he is like a Man riding on a Dromedary, and weareth a glorious Crown, before him goes an Host, with Trumpets, Cymbals, and all Musical Instruments. Some say he was of the Order of *Dominions*; others, of the order of *Cherubims*: There follows him two hundred Legions, partly of the Order of *Angels*, and partly of the Order of *Powers*. Note **Paimon** hath ever two Kings following him, *viz.* **Beball** and **Abalam**, and other Potentates, in whose Host are 25 legions.

4. **Belial**, is also a great King, and was the head of all the Angels that were cast out of Heaven, but was inferiour to those that staid in Heaven; he is found in the form of an Exorcist or Conjurer, in the Bonds of Spirits; he hath under him 80 Legions, partly of the order of *Virtues*, and partly of *Angels*.

Bune, is like a Dragon with three heads, one like a Man, he hath 30 legions that obey him.

Foyneus, is like a great Sea Monster; under him are 29 legions, partly of the Order of *Thrones*, and partly *Angels*.

Ronoue, he resembles a Monster, and hath 19 legions under him.

Berith, or **Beal**, or **Bolfry**, he is like a Soldier all in Red; red Colours and Horse, a Crown on his head; 26 legions are under him.

Astaroth, like a foul Angel, sitting on a Dragon, with a Viper in his right hand, he rules 40 legions.

Foras or **Forcas**, is like a strong Man; and rules 29 legions.

Furfur, is like a Hart with a Fiery Tail; rules 26 legions.

Marchosias, like a She Wolf, with Griffins Wings, and Serpents tail; he was of the Order of *Dominions*, under him is 30 legions.

Malphas, is like a great Crow; 40 legions obey him.

Uepar, or **Separ**, is like a Mermaid; rules 29 legions.

Sabnacke, or **Salmac**, like an Armed Soldier, with a Lions head, riding on a Pale Horse; he rules 50 legions.

5. **Sidonay**, or **Almoday**, is a great King, strong and mighty; he hath three heads, one of a Bull, of a Man, and a Ram; he hath a Serpents tail, belcheth Fire out of his Mouth; Feet like a Goose, rideth on an Infernal Dragon; he carrieth a Launce and Flag in his hand, and

and goeth before others which are under the power of **Amaymon.** He hath under his power 72 legions of Spirits; under him are these Princes and Dukes.

Gaap, or **Cap,** is of a Meridional shape; 66 legions obey him.

Shar, or **Scor,** is a dark and great Stork; he hath 30 legions.

Procell, is like an Angel; he was of the Order of *Powers*, or *Potestates*; and hath 48 legions under him.

Furcas, is like a cruel Man with a long Beard, and hoary Head, sitteth on a Pale Horse, carrying in his hand a sharp Weapon; 20 legions obey him.

Murmur, like a Soldier, riding on a Griffin, with 2 before him with Trumpets; rules 30 legions, which were of the Order, partly of *Thrones*, partly of *Angels*.

Caim, is like a great Thrush; he was of the Order of *Angels*, and ruleth 30 legions of Devils.

Raum, or **Raim,** is like a Crow, and was of the Order of *Thrones*, and governs 30 legions.

Halphas, cometh abroad like a great Stork; hath 26 legions.

Focalor, like a Man, with Griffins Wings; hath 3 legions; he was of the Order of *Powers*.

Vine, is a great King and Earl, is like a Lion riding on a Black Horse, with a Viper in his hand.

Bifrons, is like a great Monster; he hath 26 legions.

Gamigin, is in the form of a little Horse; he hath 30 legions.

6. **Zagan** is a great King; and comes abroad like a Bull with Griffins Wings: he is head of 33 legions; under him are,

Orias, is like a Lion riding on a strong Horse, with a Serpents tail; and carrieth in his right hand two great Serpents hissing; and hath under him 30 legions.

Valac, like a Boy with Angels Wings, riding on a two headed Dragon; he hath 30 legions of Devils under him.

Gomory, is like a fair Woman with a Coronet about his middle; he rideth on a Camel; he hath rule over 26 legions.

Decarabia, or **Carabia,** he cometh forth like a Star; 30 legions are under him.

Amduscias, is like a Unicorn; hath 29 legions under him.

Andras, is in an Angels shape, with a head like a black Night Raven, riding on a Black and Strong Wolf; with a sharp Sword in his hand; he is Author of Discord; and hath 30 legions under him.

Andrealphus, is like a great Peacock; he raiseth great Noises, and hath 30 legions under him.

Ose, is like a Leopard, and makes Men Mad, that they suppose themselves to be Kings, Princes, *&c.*

Aym, or **Haborim,** hath three heads, *viz.* a Serpent, a Man, and a Cat; he rideth on a Viper with a Fire-brand in his hand; he hath 26 legions of Devils at command.

Drobas, is like a Horse, and hath rule over 26 legions.

Capula, is a Lion with Griffins Wings; hath 36 legions.

Cimeries, is like a Man riding on a Black Horse; he ruleth in the parts of *Africa*, he ruleth 20 legions.

Amy, is like a Flame of Fire; he hath the rule of 36 legions, which were partly of the Order of *Angels*, and partly of *Powers*.

Flauros, is like a terrible strong Leopard, in human shape he hath a terrible countenance and fiery eyes; he hath 20 legions under him.

*

7. **Balam,** is a great and terrible King; he hath three heads, of a Bull, of a Man, of a Ram, Flaming Eyes, a Serpents Tail, riding on a furious Bear, carrying a Hawk on his Fist; he governs 40 legions; and was of the Order of *Dominions*; under him are

Allocer, a great Prince (as all the other aforesaid are) like a Soldier riding on a great Horse; he hath a Lions Face, very red, with flaming eyes; he rules 30 legions.

Salcos, is like a gallant Soldier, riding on a Crocodile, with a Dukes Crown.

Uuall, is a great and terrible Dromedary; he was of the Order of *Powers*; and ruleth 37 legions.

Haagenti, like a great Bull with Griffins Wings; hath 33 legions.

Phoenix, is like the Bird Phœnix; he rules 20 legions.

Stolas, is in form of a night Raven; he hath 26 legions.

Apollyon, is a hideous Monster to behold, covered all over with Scales; having the mouth of a Lion; feet like a Bear, and Wings like a Dragon; Fire came out of his Belly; the Prince of Destruction, *Rev.* 9. 7, 8, *&c.*

Besides these there are other Infernal Spirits which are said to have power over all the rest, being chief of all, as

Lucifer, the bright Morning Star, being the principal Angel, for his Arrogancy, that he would needs be like God, was cast out of Heaven, and became the chief of Devils; and ruler of the rest.

Amaymon, is the Chief, whose Dominion is on the North part of the Infernal Gulf.

Gorson, is chief King, whose Dominion is on the South part of Hell.

Zimimar, hath his Kingdom on the East part; and is chief Ruler or King there.

Goap, hath the West part of Hell, where he ruleth as King.

Of the Orders of Angels, and the Fall of *Lucifer*, and his Fellow Devils, peruse

The Hierarchy of Angels: By Tho. Heywood.

XXIII. He beareth Or, a **demy Angel in Sepurture,** Gules, issuing out of a Cloud proper, sounding of a Trumpet Argent. This is also termed a demy Angel, half faced, with **Wings Sepurture,** &c.

☞ In the Blazoning of Angels, I do not use the term proper to the Face, Hands and Feet; for they are ever understood to be of a fleshy colour like to that of a Man; except they be all of one entire Colour or Mettle, in which respect the naming of one colour, serves for all parts of the Angel.

Yet if the Blazoner please, he may use the term proper, but then he is tied, and of necessity he must add (that he is clothed in a long Robe, *&c.*) of such a Colour, which in the leaving out the word proper, he needeth to say no more, than an Angel in such a posture, and of such a colour, naming only that of his Garment. This is the Crest of Dr. *John Richardson*, Bishop of *Ardagh*, in the Realm of *Ireland*.

XXIV. He beareth Jupiter, a **Cherub,** Sol. This cannot properly be termed a Cherub; but a **Cherub** (or **Cherubs,** or **Cherubims**) **head,** the Cherub being described after in *numb.* 27. 28. but because Antiquity hath thus drawn them, I shall therefore follow it.

☞ There

☞ There needs no mention of displaying their Wings; for they are ever drawn thus, or according to the next example, *numb.* 25. Note also, that if there be but one in a Coat, it is called a **Cherub**, but if more, then **Cherubims**, Cherub betokening the Singular number, and Cherubims the Plural. Mr. *Morgan*, *lib.* 3. *fol.* 10. to make a distinction between this and the following Cherub, terms this a Cherub displaid, and that a Cherub, without any addition, which are but niceties. This is born by the name of *Hipofer*,

S 3 Cherubims O by the name of *Swift*.

S a Cheveron between 3 Cherubims O born by *Challoner*.

In the Base of this quarter is a **demy Arch Angel sans Armes**, with a Scarf Salterwise over his Breast, and girt about the middle O the Robe A is the Crest of *Halen van Santheim*, a *German*.

XXV. He beareth Gules, a **Cherub**, Argent, **Winged** and **Crined**, Or. This Cherub I have caused to be set here, to shew only the ways of bearing the Wings, and that is according to their being born, if on a Fesse or Chief, then there is a liberty to display the Wings; but if there be three in a Field, or four between a Cross, or five on a Salter, there being in such cases no liberty for an extended Wing, have them drawn more close and pendant, as this is: However, if the Artist will follow Mr. *Morgans* distinction, *lib.* 3. *cap.* 1. *fol.* 10. he is left to his liberty, and offends not.

Cherubims are represented young, to shew their continual strength; having Wings, to signifie their swiftness of motion, and unwearinesse; their Garments White, to shew their Purity; or Gold, to shew their Sanctity; Garments on, to shew their Modesty; and girt, to shew their Readiness.

XXVI. He beareth Venus, a **Cherub** having three **pair of Wings**, the uppermost and neithermost are counterly crossed, and the middlemost displaid, Luna; so *Gwilliams*, *fol.* 108. He beareth a Cherub having three pair of Wings, the upper and neithermost conjoined, the middle displaid; so *Morgan*, *lib.* 3. *fol.* 10. And to save all this labour, it may as well be termed a Cherub with three pair of Wings, and no more.

☞ When the Wings are of two Colours, then Blazon it a Cherub proper, Winged Argent, poniorned Azure, and Crined Or; for the long Feathers are often born in Coats, of one colour, and the Ponion of another; see in Wings, *chap.* 11. *numb.* 2.

XXVII. He beareth Gules, a **Naked Boy sans Armes**, proper, Winged and Crined, Or. This is by some set out for a **Cherub**, being the whole Figure of it, as used in Armory; though according to Scripture Revelation, the Cherubims that covered the Ark of God in the most Holy Place of the Temple, are said to have Feet like Calves feet; by which it doth appear, comparing *Ezek.* 1. 10. and *chap.* 10. 14. together, that the Cherub hath not only the Feet, but the Head of an Oxe, or Calf, or Lion, or Man, as *Ezek.* 41. 18, 19.

XXVIII. He beareth Sable, a **flying Cherub**, with four heads, like a Man, a Lion, a Bull, and an Eagle, the Body of a Man, and Feet like a Calf; having four Wings, two displaid, and two covering his Body, Or. this may for shortness be termed *Ezekiels* Cherub, which he thus describeth, *chap.* 1. 5, 6, 7, 8, 10. *A living Creature of the appearance or likeness of a Man, with four Faces and four Wings, with straight feet, and soles like a Calves foot, with hands of a Man under their Wings; the heads were, one like a Man, another like a Lion, another like an Oxe, and the last like an Eagle:* this was the Prediction of the Spirit dwelling in the four Evangelists, described by the four Beasts in the Revelation, *cap.* 4. *v.* 7. which they were ever Drawn with; as St. *Matthew* with an Angel having a Man's Face, St. *Mark* with a Lion, St. *Luke* with a Bull; and St. *John* with an Eagle; each Beast or Cherub having six Wings, and they were full of Eyes.

XXIX. He beareth Argent, an **Evil Angel demy faced**, in shape of a Naked Man, with **Eagles Tallons, Horned, and Winged like a Dragon**, Sepurture; Cloven Feet, having a Fire-Brand in his right Paw, and elevating the left proper: As the Devil or Satan is the Prince of Darknes, so he is described by dark and blackish colours.

That bad Angels as well as good are sometimes born in Arms, may appear both by this, and in an Escochion pertaining to the ancient Family of *Trolles* in *Norway*, where the Devil was represented without a Head in a Field Or; having a Human shape, but with a long Tail; his Hands and Feet having Tallons like an Eagle, Gules. *Spher. lib.* 1. *fol.* 8.

Also a **Demon** Sable, issuing out of a Flame of Fire, in the Sinister Base; in a Field Argent, is a Coat belonging to a Noble Family in *France*. See *chap.* 18. *numb.* 83.

XXX. He beareth Sable, **the Devil**, or **Satan transformed** into an **Angel of Light**, having short Horns, Dragons Wings, Sepurture; a long Robe close girt, and Eagles Feet, pointing to the Dexter Chief with the left hand, and with the right to the Base.

The **Devil, Satan**, the **Prince of the Air**, the **Ruler of Darknes**, call him what you will; an Evil Spirit, a Wicked Angel; is born in Armory, and looked upon to be honourable, for the subduing of the works of the Devil, as *Medusas* head was to *Pallas*, though neither of them were delightful to others, more than to shew the Deformities of Nature.

The several Names of the Devil.

II. IT hath pleased God to inform our weak capacities of the diverse names ascribed to the Devil, whereby his Nature and Disposition is known to us, as

Behemoth, the great Elephant, a Brutish Creature, which sets forth his greatness and brutish nature, *Job* 40. 10.

Leviathan, a Creature that will not be tamed, *Job* 40. 20. *Isa.* 27. 1.

Mammon, a Covetous desire, so that nothing but ruine and destruction will satisfy, *Mat.* 6. 24. *Luke* 16. 13.

Daemon, one that is cunning and crafty, the Devil, *Mark* 16. 17. *James* 2. 19.

Cacodaemon, is perversly knowing; he will be worshipped as a god, yet he knoweth nothing of good, to be obtain-

obtained thereby, *Psal.* 96. 5.

Diabolus, is an Accuser or a Slanderer, *Job* 1. 9. and 2. 5. *Rev.* 12. 10.

Satan, is an Adversary, one that troubleth and molesteth, *Rev.* 12. 12.

Abadon, a Destroyer, one that delights to hurt, *Rev.* 9. 11. in *Greek* he is called **Apollyon**, that is, Destroying.

Legio, or **Legion**, is many, a multitude, *Luke* 8. 30.

Spiritus, a Spirit, a Lying Spirit, 1 *King.* 22. 21, 22. *Act.* 16. 16.

Angelus, an Angel, the Angel of the Lord, the cruel Angel, the Angel of Satan, the Angel of Hell and Darkness, 1 *Chron.* 21. 12, 15. 2 *Cor.* 12. 7. *Rev.* 9. 11. that is, a Messenger of the Lord, as the Executioner and Minister of his displeasure.

Draco, a Dragon, the great Dragon, for his Pride, and Force, and Strength; the red Dragon, for his Bloodiness, *Rev.* 12. 3. 9.

Serpens, a Serpent for his Policy, Cunning, and Craft, the Old Serpent from his Experience, *Gen.* 3. 10. *Isa.* 27. 1. *Rev.* 12. 9. 14.

An **Owl**, a **Kite**, a **Raven**, a **Pellicane**, from his ravening, and unsatiable desire of Devouring, *Isa.* 34. 11. 15.

Leo, a Lion, the roaring Lion, from his terrible noise, 1 *Pet.* 5. 8.

Homicidus, an Homicide, a Manslayer, *John* 8. 44.

Mendax, a Liar, the Father of Lies, because no Truth is in him, *John* 8 44.

Rex, a King, a Ruler of the Sons of Pride and Disobedience, *Job* 41. 25. *Eph.* 2. 2.

Princeps, a Prince, a Prince of the World, a Prince of the Air, a Prince of Darkness, *John* 8. 12. *Eph.* 2. 2.

Author Peccatorum, the Author of all Sin and Wickedness, 1 *John* 3. 8.

Devils Familiar with Men.

Penates, Domestick Devils, such as are of the houshold, and live quietly within Doors.

Lares, are Devils that trouble or haunt private Houses. Familiar Spirits.

Larvae, Spirits that walk in the Night, Night Spirits, Goblins.

Manes, Walking Spirits, the Souls or Ghosts of the Dead, that vex and trouble Men in the way.

Atrunculi Terrei, a Familiar Spirit or Hagg, that supplies the Office of Servants, especially Maids, as to make Fires, sweep the House, fetch Water, and such like; these kind of civil Spirits, are in some places called *Hob-goblins*, *Robin Goodfellow*, and *Hudgin*, or *Robin-Hood*, because he always wareth a Cap or a Hood. Some Lob ly by the Fire.

Ziim, and **Ohim**, or **Jim**, are Spirits by whom Satan deludes Mens fantasies, *Isa.* 13. 21, 22, and 34. 14.

Guteli, or **Trulli**, are Spirits like Women, which shew great kindness to Men; and hereof it is that we call light Women Trulls.

Familiares Daemones, Familiar Spirits, such as will come when they are called, and do what they are bidden, &c.

Incubus, and **Succubus**, Spirits that lie in Bed with Men and Women; the first Women, the latter Men, pressing their Stomachs; it is of some termed the Night-Mare.

Lamiae, **Fairies**, or **Elfs**, little Dancing Spirits, as *Faunii*, or *Satyri*, *Fairies* of the Woods or Fields; *Naiades*, of the Waters; *Oreades*, of the Hills.

XXXI. He beareth Argent, issuing out of the Base Sinister, a **Dragon**, or **Devils head**, Gules, casting out Fire and Smoak, with ugly Spirits therein, proper: This is termed **Hell-mouth**; according to that saying in the Revelations, *That Hell opened his Mouth, and there arose the smoak of a great Furnace, and Locusts were therein*, Rev. 9. 2, 3.

XXXII. He beareth Sable, in Base the **Bottomless Pit**, casting out **Fire and Smoak**, with **Evil Spirits** therein, in the forms of Serpents, Toads and Adders, all proper; the bearing of these Hellish Vituperious, horrid and vile things, is to deter not only the Bearer, but also the beholder from becoming like them, by degenerating; for all are not Military Civil, yet may thereby become civilly honest.

10. FROM things supernatural, such as have their abiding in the Heavens; we come to such natural things as are under the moveable Sphere, and are contained in the four Elements; as for example.

XXXIII. He beareth Azure, the **Coelestial Sphere**, Or, **invironing the Terrestrial Globe**, proper. This may without any other additions be termed only a **Sphere**; which doth comprehend in it both the **Coelestial and Terrestrial Globe**: Though some will say a **Sphere beautified** (or **adorned and replenished**,) with variety of Coelestial Bodies, &c. which I hold needless, the Sphere being always thus set forth; this was the Shield of *Achilles*, that famous *Grecian* Captain.

Bull, Queen *Elizabeths* Clock-maker bore a Sphere for his Crest.

The Chief Circles in the Sphere.

a the Circle Artick, or the Northern Circle.
b The Tropick of Cancer.
c The Meridian Circle, or mid-days Circle.
d The Tropick of Capricorn.
e The Zodiack or Ecliptick line, or circle of the Sun.
f the circle Antartick; but more particularly.

The names of all the Circles in the Coelestial Globe, as they are imagined by Astronomers to be in the eight Heavens or Firmaments: To the intent that the measure of the Stars, Signs, Images, and other appearances therein contained may be the better demonstrated; of these Circles there are in all ten; of which some are great, others lesser; the greater Circles are such as pass through the Center or midst of the Firmament, and do divide the whole Circle thereof into two equal parts, of which there be these six.

1. The

1. The *Equinoctial Line* or Circle, is that as divides the Sphere in the midst into two equal parts; and therefore is called the Girdle of the World. When the Sun toucheth this Circle which is twice in the year, *viz.* the 11 day of *March*, and 13 of *September*, at which time the Days and Nights are of an equal length, therefore called Equinoctial; and by reason this Circle divides the World in the very midst, those that dwell right under it, are said to have no Latitude either Northward or Southward, to whom the Days and Nights are always equal.

2. The *Zodiack*, or the *Ecliptick Line*, or the Circle of the Sun; it is an Oblique Line, crossing the Equinoctial Line, and doth divide it into two equal parts; one part lieth between the Equinoctial and the South Pole: This Circle is divided into 12 equal parts, and each part hath a particular Sign ascribed to it; and these are called the 12 Signs of the Zodiack or great Circle of Heaven: This Circle hath also its Axeltree and Poles, answerable to the Poles of the World, about which it turneth.

3. The *Colure* of the *Equinoctiums*, or *Equinoxes*; And

4. The *Colure* of the *Solstitials* are two Circles that goeth Crosswise through both Poles of the World from North to South, dividing one another in the Poles in two; the one passing the points of the Equinoctial, is called the Colure of the Equinoctiums; the other passeth through the points of the Solstitials, is called the Colure of the Solstices or Solstitials: The Sun coming to these Circles (by his yearly course in the Zodiack) divideth the Year into four Quarters, as Spring, Summer, Autumn and Winter.

5. The *Horizon line*, or *Sight Ender*, (so called because our sight doth end at it) is a great Circle dividing the Sphere into two equal parts, whereof we see the one above, the other is sunken under it out of our sight: That we term the Horizon in Architecture, which is even with the sight of the Eye, to whose Center all the lines tend thereward; in a word, by Horizon is understood as much of the Heaven as can be seen of us, even from the rising to the going down of the Sun.

6. The *Meridian Circle*, or *Mid-days Circle*, so called from *Meredies*, that is Mid-day; because the Sun coming to the South to this Circle, make Noon day or Mid-day; and after, it doth descend again; this is the great Circle that passeth through both Poles of the World, and through the Zenith, crossing on both sides, the Equinoctial; and right in the South and North the Horizon.

The lesser Circles are such as divide the Sphere into unequal parts, of which there are these four.

1. The *Tropick of Cancer*, or the Suns turning of *Cancer*; because the Sun coming to that point, and being at the furthest from the Equinoctial towards the North; then turneth again through *Cancer* towards the Equinoctial; this Circle is Northward from the Equinoctial, and runs Parallel with the same; and is drawn from the point of the Zodiack or Ecliptick line at the farthest distance from the Equinoctial.

2. The *Tropick of Capricornus*, this Circle is Southward from the Equinoctial; and is so called, from the Suns turning of *Capricornus* in the Ecliptick line; at which point the Sun is the farthest from the Equinoctial in the South; and turneth again through that Sign, towards the Equinoctial.

3. The *Circle Artick*, or the *Northern Circle*.

4. The *Circle Antartick*, or the *Southern Circle*; these two Circles are drawn round the Sphere by the Poles of the Ecliptick Circle; these are of an equal distance from the Poles of the World, as the Tropicks are from the Equinoctial Line, called also the Polar Circles.

Besides these, there are diverse other Circles; some are said to be Parallels, some Right, some Oblique, some Moveable, and some Immovable.

The *Parallel Circles* are the two Polar Circles, Artick and Antartick; the two Tropicks and the Equinoctial, which is in the very midst of them all.

The *Right Circles* be the two Colures, the Right Horizon and the Meridian, because these cut the Sphere of the Globe with Right Angles.

The *Oblique Circles* be the Zodiack, and the oblique Horizon; because they are said to cut the Sphere or Globe with Oblique Angles.

The *Moveable Circles* are these, the Equinoctial, the Zodiack, the two Tropicks, and the Polar Circles; for they continually move with the Firmament, and are alike in all places.

The *Immoveable Circles* are the Horizon and the Meridian, which are said to be Immoveable; because in the turning of the Sphere or Globe they remain immoveable; for though we change both Meridian and Horizon by going from one part of the Earth to another, yet every place hath still its own Meridian and Horizon which remain immovable.

The *Intrinsical* or *inward Circles* of the Sphere, are all such Lines or Circles, as ly inward in the material Sphere or Globe.

The *Extrinsical* or *outward Circles*, are those which inclose on the out-side, all the parts of the material Globe, as the Meridian and Horizon doth.

XXXIV. He beareth Gules, a **Coelestial Globe**, Or. Thus briefly; but others will term it a Sphere without its Meridian or Foot: Others the Coelestial Circles, with the Signs on the Zodiack. This is born by the name of *Cloughby*.

13. FROM the frame of Heaven with all its Circles; we proceed next to those Sparks or Spangled Bodies which give light unto our lower Orbe; and these are the Elementary Signs and Planets, which God the Supream Orderer hath set therein, to be unto us for Signs and Seasons, and Years.

XXXV. He beareth Sable, a **Star** Argent. Born by the name of *Ingleby*. It is better in Blazon to be termed an Estile or Estoile; in which we are to note these rules

☞ If the Star or Estoile, have but six waved points, then you shall need to say no more, but an Estoile or Star, but if they have more (for they never have less) then you must have a care to express the number of the points.

Also if the Estile be Gold, you need not to mention its colour; for yellow is ever held to be its proper colour; if other-

otherwise, then to be named of what colour it is.

If but one Star be in a Coat, it may be termed the North Star, or a Pole Star. If two Stars be in a Coat one opposite to the other, with a Fesse, Bend, or the like between, they are termed the two Pole Stars; or the Artick and Antartick Stars. *Gwillians fol.* 117. *Morgan lib.* 1. *fol.* 44.

XXXVI. He beareth Azure, an **Estoile** of eight points, also a **Star fulgent** of eight Rays. Stars by reason of their distance, and the weakness of our sight seem to have resplendent Rays waving or warbling forth, for which cause Stars are made with their points waved. This is born by the name of *Estlesse*.

S the like A born by *Handford*.

S 3 Stars A born by *Stodart*.

XXXVII. He beareth Argent, a **Star** of sixteen points, Gules. Born by the name of *De la Hay*.

☞ Stars are often found in Coats of Arms perforated or pierced; which some will not then take to be Stars but Spur-Rowels. Though the Teliascope doth discover a seeming hole or spot in the body of the Planet *Mars*. Others are likewise charged upon; but with this difference, not exceeding the body of it; for it is infallibly to be noted, that the Star perforated or pierced, is ever round, all other piercings being repugnant to their nature.

B the like O born by *Mewham*. Also by *Hedeney*.

S the like A born by *Hokenhull*.

B the like A by *Ogard*.

XXXVIII. He beareth Sable, an **Estoile** of sixteen points Argent. The Star of so many Rays is thus drawn by *Morgan, lib.* 1. *fol.* 44. which seems to be rather a **Mullet**, or **Spur-Rowel** of four points, upon an **Estoile** of sixteen. Being now fallen amongst the Stars, it would not be much digression if I give the Reader an account of the Names of the Stars or Constellations, both in the Planetary Heavens, the Zodiack, and the North and South parts.

The Seven Planets described.

1. *Sol*, or the *Sun*; so called *quasi Solus*, being the Image of God and the Light of the World; the Gentiles worshipped him under diverse Epithets and Operations, as by the *Persians Belus* of *Euphrates*; the *Lybians*, *Ammon*; the *Arabians*, *Saturn*; the *Assyrians*, *Jupiter*; the *Egyptians*, *Serapis* and *Osiris*, as having many Eyes; the *Greeians*, *Apollo* and *Pæan*, and *Æther*; by the Eastern World, he was worshipped by the name *Bel*, *Belus*, *Baal*. He is represented as a Young Man, with a Mantle cast about him, with a Glory about his head, with a Scepter (having an Eye on it) in his hand. Drawn in a Chariot with Wild Horses, *&c.*

2. *Luna*, or the *Moon*, she was anciently Adored under the name of *Diana*, *Proserpina*, *Isis*, and sometimes called Sister, sometimes Daughter of *Phœbus*, or the *Sun*.

She is represented like a Young Woman, Robed and Mantled, either holding a Cressant in her hand, or with it fixed on the top of her head, which is by some reputed to be Horns; with a Torch and Arrows, and Wings, to shew her motion.

3. *Saturnus*, or the Planet *Saturn*; he is said to be the most ancient of the Heathen Gods; and worshipped by the name of *Sceter*, by the ancient *Saxons*.

He is described two several ways, as a Naked Old Man Mantled, with a Sythe in one hand, and devouring a Child; signifying thereby, the long continuance of time, and slow Revolution or Motion in the Heavens, being 30 years in running his course through the Heavens; others with a Serpent in his hand, biting of his own Tail; to signifie the virulencie and biting cares of the time. See *Vestegan*, *p.* 78. where he is Drawn like an Old Man, with a Wheel on his left hand, and a Pail of Water full of Flowers in his right.

4. *Jupiter*, by him (as saith *Virgil*) all things receive life and motion, and therefore was called *Xenius*, the god of Hospitality, *Philus*, the god of Love, *Heterius*, of Fellowship, *Homagnius*, of Kindred, *Phratrius*, the god of Tribes; and *Enhorcius*, the god of Oaths, *&c.*

He is described, sitting on a Throne Crowned, with a pair of Globes Celestial and Terrestrial in his hands, to shew his Immutability and Authority, and that both Heaven and Earth were in his power. Sometimes he is Painted with a Thunderbolt, as a Punisher of Impiety; and sometimes with a Scepter in one hand, and a Circle in the other, and an Eagle by him; or drawn in a Chariot by Eagles, with a Vail flaming about his head.

5. *Mars*, by his power Kingdoms and States are said to be defended and preserved. He is the God of War.

He is described to be a Man of War, drawn in a Chariot with two Horses, Terror and Fear; his Star is of a Red, Fiery and Ardent aspect.

6. *Venus*, she is called by the Heathens by the name of *Juno*, and *Isis*, others from her Beauty the Mother of the gods: This Star is so clear and bright, that the Rays of this one Star casteth shadows upon the Earth: When she prevents the Morning, and riseth Oriental, it is called *Lucifer* or the Morning Star; when she shineth from the Occidental or West parts, supplying the place of the Moon, she is named *Vesper*, or the Evening Star.

She is described to be a very Beautiful Woman, Drawn always with *Cupid* by her, with Bow and Quiver. She was Painted Naked, Crowned with Roses, sitting in a Chariot, drawn sometimes by two Doves, sometimes by Swans or Sparrows, to signifie the nature of Carnal Love and Lust.

7. *Mercury*, he is said to be the Herauld or Messenger of the gods. His Star is of a bright shining Gold colour.

He is described to have Winged Shooes and Hat, a Wand wrapped about with Serpents (called a *Caduceus*) to shew his swift and various motion; yet that Wisdom and Eloquence ought to be the guide, whereof the Serpent is the Emblem. He is said to be Red or Yellow Haired.

The Description of the Twelve Signs of the Zodiack.

1. *Aries* or the Ram, is one of the Signs in the Zodiack or Ecliptick Circle; and containeth 13 Stars; and is distant, with the bright Star in his head 68 *degrees* 17 *minutes* from the North Pole.

2. *Taurus* or the Bull, containeth 23 Stars; *Aldebaran* or the Northern Eye of the Bull, distant 74 *deg.* 14 *min.* North Horn of the Bull 61 *deg.* 45 *min.* South Horn of the Bull 69 *deg.* 7 *min.* distant from the North Pole.

3. *Gemini*, or the Twins, of some termed *Apollo*, and *Hercules* others *Castor* and *Pollux*. This Sign consisteth of 18 Stars, whereof three are bright, one on the head of *Castor*, another on the head of *Pollux*; the other on their feet; they are distant 72, 57, 61 *deg.* odd *min.* from the North Pole.

4. *Cancer*, or the Crab, containeth 9 Stars.

5. *Leo*, or the Lion, consisteth of 27 fixed Stars. *Regulus* or *Basiliscus*, the bright Star on the heart of the Lion with three other on the Neck, Back and Tail distant, 76, 68, 67, 73 *deg.* from the North Pole.

6. *Virgo*, or the Maid, is the middle Sign of the Zodiack, it consists of 26 Stars; the bright Star on the Northern Wing of *Virgo*, distant from the North Pole 77 *deg.* 3 *min.* called *Vindemiatrix*; the Girdle Star 84 *deg.* 34 *min.* distance. She holds a Garland in her hand, called by Astronomers, *Vindemiator*.

7. *Libra*, or the Ballance, or a pair of Scales, consists of Stars, the bright Stars one on the North Ballance, and the other on the South Ballance are 75 *deg.* 32 *min.* and 82 *deg.* 2 *min.* distance from the South Pole.

8. *Scorpio*, or the Scorpion, consists of Stars in the heart of the Scorpion, a Star called *Antares*, lyeth 64 *deg.* 28 *min.* distant from the South Pole.

9. *Sagitarius*, or the Archer, or the Shooter, represented by a demy Naked Man, shooting with a Bow and Arrow, fixed on the Neck or Shoulders of a Horse, it consisteth of 31 Stars.

10. *Capricornus*, or the Goat, is a Constellation consisting of 28 Stars; the Northermost of the two Horns and Southermost of the same, are 76 *deg.* and 74 *deg.* some minutes distant from the South Pole; the foremost and Westerly and Easterly of the two Lights in the Tail of *Capricornus* are 71 and 72 *deg.* some minutes distant from the South Pole.

11. *Aquarius*, or the Watery Sign, or Waterer, consists of Stars; the 3 greatest on the left Shoulder, on the right Shoulder (and in the outermost stream of *Aquarius*, called *Fomahant*,) 82, 87, 58 *deg.* from the South Pole.

12. *Pisces*, or the Fishes, consisteth of 24 Stars.

of the Planets and Signs.

14. NOW the Planets, with the Signs in the Zodiack, with their Characters and signification, or things compared unto, take more briefly thus,

☉ the Character of the Planet *Sol*.
☽ the Character of the Planet *Luna*.
♀ the Character of the Planet *Venus*, a Beautyfull Star, and goeth before the *Sun*, and glittereth in the morning for 6 months is called the Morning Star; but following the Sun for other 6 months is called the Evening Star.
♃ the Character of the Planet *Jupiter*, a bright Star.
♄ the Character of the Planet *Saturn*; it is a Pale Star.
♂ the Character of the Planet *Mars*; a Star Red as Fire.
☿ the Character of the Planet *Mercury*, a glittering Star, from whence a Quivering Beam glanceth or flasheth like that of *Venus*.
☋ the Character of *Caput Draconis*, or the *Dragons Head*.
☊ the Character of *Cauda Draconis*, or the *Dragons Tail*.

Next to the Planets, followeth the Coelestial Signs of the Zodiack, or great Circle of Heaven, which are twelve in number; whose Characters and Descriptions, as much as is necessary for Heraldry, is as followeth.

♈ the Character of the Coelestial Sign *Aries*. This is deciphered unto us by Astronomers, by the shape of a Ram; and is the first of the Coelestial Signs; and is ascribed to the Rule and Government of the Month of *March*.

♉ the Character of the Coelestial Sign *Taurus*, or the Bull, which is the second Sign in the Zodiack; and is ascribed to the rule of *April*; and so of the rest as they follow in their order.

♊ the Character of the Coelestial Sign *Gemini*, described by Twins, or two Naked Boys.

♋ the Character of the Coelestial Sign *Cancer*, or the Crab-Fish.

♌ the Character of the Coelestial Sign *Leo*, described by a Lion.

♍ the Character of the Coelestial Sign *Virgo*, or a Maid, or Naked Woman.

♎ the Character of the Coelestial Sign *Libra*, or a pair of Scales.

♏ the Character of the Coelestial Sign *Scorpio*, or the Scorpion.

♐ the Character of the Coelestial Sign *Sagitarius*, described to us by a Shooter, *viz.* half a Man drawing an Arrow in a Bow, fixed on the Body of an Horse in the place of the Horse head.

♑ the Character of the Coelestial Sign *Capricornus*, or the Goat.

♒ the Character of the Coelestial Sign *Aquarius*, signified to us by a Naked Man pouring Water out of two Bottles; a Waterer, a keeper of Water; or a distributer of Waters.

♓ the Character of the Coelestial Sign *Pisces*; represented by two Dolphin Fishes, lying one above the other, with the head to the tail one of the other. This is the twelfth Sign; and as before hinted, ascribed to be governor of *February*, the last of Months: And although the foresaid Signs, singularly and appropriately have their Month especially assigned them; yet all these 12 Signs, in every Month, at all times, every day and hour, every moment and minute of an hour, do concur in the Nativity of every Birth, although not equally, yet according to the more or less; and that Sign and Planet which hath the chiefest Dominion at the Nativity, the same is the Constellation of the Infant.

Names

Names of the Northern Stars.

15. THese Stars standing by the North Equinoctial line have Northerly Declination.

1. *North Pole Star*, called *Alrucuba*, or the North Star is distant from the North Pole 2 *degrees*, and about 39 *minutes*.

2. *Ursa major*, or the greater Bear; called also *Arctos* and *Helice*; it consists of 27 Stars, of which read more in *Charles Wain*, *numb.* 26.

3. *Ursa minor*, or the lesser Bear, is the next of all to the North Pole; it is called also *Helice minor*, or the lesser ------- because of its small Revolution, it is called also *Cynosura*, because it hath the tail of a Dog, though it be termed a Bear; it consists of seven Stars. See more of it in the 26 Constellation called *Charles Wain*.

4. *Draco*, or the Dragon consists of --- Stars, and the brightest in the Dragons head, is 38 *deg.* and 23 *min.* distant of the North Pole.

5. *Cepheus*, or the King of *Æthiopia*, consists of — Stars; the Girdle of *Cepheus* is distant from the North Pole 21 *deg.* 3 *min.*

6. *Arctophylax*, or *Ursæ custos Bootes*, a Star set near the *Ursus major*, or following of *Charles Wain*.

7. *Corona Borealis*, or the North Crown, it consists of 8 Stars; *Ovid* saith 9; and is distant from the North Pole 62 *deg.* 2 *min.*

8. *Enginasus*, or *Ingeniculus*, the name of a Star in *Hercules* right Knee; it consists of 29 Stars, and is distant from the North Pole.

9. *Lyra*, or the Harp, consists of -- Stars, and is distant 51 *deg.* 30 *min.*

10. *Aquila*, or the Eagle consists of Stars, and is distant from the middle and brightest Star in the Eagle (called also the Vulture) to the North Pole 82 *deg.* 2 *min.* the Eagles Tail 51 *deg.* 31 *min.*

11. *Avis*, or the Bird consists of 17 Stars, and is distant

12. *Cassiopea*, or *Cepheus* Wife, is a Celestial Sign, and consists of 13 Stars, whereof there is four bright Stars remarkable, one on the Breast of *Cassiopea*, called *Schedir*; one on her Hip, one on her Knee, and another on her Chair; the first being distant from the North Pole 35 *deg.* 24 *min.*

13. *Perseus*, or the Son of *Jupiter* and *Danae*, a Constellation consisting of 26 Stars, whereof the brightest in his side, is distant from the North Pole 41 *deg.* 31 *min.*

14. *Auriga*, or the Waggoner, called also *Heniochus*, and *Erichonius*, that is, a Man with a Bridle in his hand, for so he is painted; his Constellation consists of 14 Stars; the bright Star on the Waggoners Shoulder called *Capella*, and sometimes *Hircus*, is 44 *deg.* 26 *min.* distant from the Pole.

15. *Serpentarius*, or the Serpent Bearer, called *Ophiuchus*, consists of Stars, the brightest in his head, is distant 77 *deg.* 7 *min.* from the North Pole; the Star in the left hand, and left knee of *Ophiuchus* 87 *deg.* 16 *min.* and 80 *deg.* 16 *min.* distant from the South Pole; the Star on the right Knee 74 *deg.* 49 *min.* from the South Pole.

16. *Serpens*, or the Serpent, consists of -- Stars, the bright Star in his Neck called *Ophiuchus*, distant 82 *deg.* 22 *min.*

17. *Sagitta*, or the Arrow, called also *Telum*, consisteth of 5 Stars.

18. *Delphinus*, or the Dolphine consists of -- Stars.

19. *Pegasus*, or the Winged Horse, called also *Equus alatus*, and *Hippas*, consists of 20 Stars, whereof 4 are most noted, one in the mouth of *Pegasus*, called ----- a bright Star on his Leg, called *Scheat*, one on his Shaft, called *Marcab*, and another on the Wing; the first is 81 *deg.* 47 *min.* distant from the North Pole.

20. *Andromeda*, the Wife of *Perseus*, a Constellation, which consists of 13 Stars, of which 3 are bright ones, which are placed on the head, the girdle, and the southernmost foot, the first being 62 *deg.* 55 *min.* distant from the North Pole.

21. *Triangulus*, or the Triangle, or 3 square, consists of -- Stars.

22. *Guardes*, or --------- consists of 3 bright Stars; the middlemost or brightest, is 14 *deg.* 8 *min.* distant from the North Pole.

23. *Cetus*, or the Whale, consists of 22 Stars, the brightest in his mouth, called *Menkar*, is distant 87 *deg.* 20 *min.* from the North Pole; and the Northermost in the Whales Tail 79 *deg.* 10 *min.* and the Southermost in the Whales Tail 69 *deg.* 59 *min.* distant from the South Pole.

24. *Medusa*, or the Monstrous Woman, a Sign in Heaven, which consists of Stars; the bright Star in the head 50 *deg.* 30 *min.* distant from the North Pole.

25. *Orion*, by some called *Ingulus*, a Constellation which consists of 33 Stars; and by some of 16 Stars. *Orions* Girdle, called the Cloth Yard, and the Ladies Cloth-Yard, are 3 bright Stars at an equal distance one from the other; and are distant from the South Pole 87, 73, and 82 *deg.* with some small number of minutes; the bright Star on his right, and another on his left Shoulders, are 82 and 84 *deg.* some minutes from the North Pole. This is those Bands of *Orion* mentioned *Job* 38. 31.

26. *Charles Wain*, called also the lesser Bear, or the Waggon, is the most remarkable of all the Northern Constellations, it consists of seven bright Stars in form of a Waggon and Horses. *Dubhe* or the North pointer, or the hinder Wheel, which points on the North Pole, is distant from it 26 *deg.* 20 *min.* the South pointer, or South hinder Wheel, is distant 31 *deg.* 40 *min.* by these two Stars is found the North Pole, keeping them in a direct line to it from the North Pointer, which according to computation is five times as far to it, as there is distance between these two Pointers. The North fore Wheel of the Wagon 30 *deg.* 56 *min.* the South fore Wheel of the Wagon 34 *deg.* 15 *min.* the next Horse to the Wagon 32 *deg.* 1 *min.* the middle Horse 33 *deg.* 8 *min.* the fore or outermost Horse 38 *deg.* 49 *min.* distant from the North Pole.

27. *Bootes*, or the Driver of the Oxen or Wain; he is to have the care of, and wait upon *Charles Wain*, consists of 22 Constellations. *Arcturus*, or the bright Star between his Thighs is 68 *deg.* 52 *min.* distant from the North Pole.

28. *Herculus* his Constellation consists of 29 Stars; that on his head is distant 75 *deg.* 8 *min.* from the North Pole. See the eighth Sign or Constellation, called *Engonasius*.

29. *Cygnus* or the Swan, consists of Stars; the Star in the Swans Breast 51 *deg.* 53 *min.* the Star in the Swans Tail 45 *deg.* 59 *min.* distant from the North Pole.

30. *Canis minor*, or the lesser Dog *Procyon*, it consists of 2 Stars, and is distant from the North Pole 83 *deg.* 52 *min.*

31. *Pleiades*, or the seven Stars; they were the seven Daughters of *Lycurgus*, or *Atlas*; they are a Constellation consisting of 7 Stars, six bright, the other seldom seen, they are named *Alcione*, *Merope*, *Eleotra*, *Celano*, *Taygete*, *Sterope*, and the bright shining, *Maia*. These Stars are mentioned by God in *Job* 38. 31, 32. and 9.9.

Galaxea, or White way, doth seem to be a confluence of Stars; feigned by the Poets to be the Souls of the Heroes.

Via Lactea, or the Milky Way, this was occasioned by young *Hercules* spitting some of the Milk out of his Mouth which he received from *Junos* Breasts, which whited all that part of the Sky.

The Names of the Southern Stars.

16. THese Stars here following, standing all to the Southwards of the Equinoctial Line, have Southerly Declinations.

1. The South Pole Star.

2. *Cetus*, or the Whale; of this see in the North Constellations, *numb.* 23.

3. *Orion.* See it also in the North Stars, *numb.* 25.

4. *Lepus*, or the Hare, consists of 12 Stars; it is placed between the Legs of *Orion.* It is distant from the South Pole *deg. min.*

5. *Canis Major*, or the greater Dog, called *Syrius Canis*, consists of 18 Stars, and is distant from the South Pole 73 *deg.* 48 *min.* to this Constellation belongs 11 other Stars.

6. *Lupus*, or the Wolf, it consists of 19 Stars.

7. *Argo Navis*, or the Merchants Ship, consists of 41 Stars; one great Star in this Constellation, called *Canopus*, is never seen in *Italy*, or in any Countrey on the North side of it.

8. *Hydra*, or the Watery Serpent; it consists of Stars, whereof the bright Star on the heart of it, is 82 *deg.* 55 *min.* from the South Pole.

9. *Corvus*, or the Raven, a Constellation consisting of -- Stars.

10. *Centaurus*, or Centaur, or half a Man fixt on the shoulders of a Bull.

11. *Corona Austrina*, or the South Crown consists of 13 Stars.

12. *Spica Virginis*, or the Virgins Spike, it consists of -- Stars, and is 80 *deg.* 48 *min.* distant from the South Pole.

13. *Ophiuchus*, or the Serpent bearer; see in the North Constellations, *numb.* 15.

14. *Caput Argol*, or *Argols* head, also called *Minervas* Shield, a Constellation of Stars.

15. *Equiculus*, or the little Horse, consists of 4 Stars.

17. SUCH is the resplendency of the Sun, that from its glory, all the rest of the Planets and Stars, (whither fixt or wandering) do receive their Light; yet the beautiful and blazing brightness of it, and the Moon, are oftentimes subject to the Passion of Darkness, and Eclipsing; of whose Glittering, Clouding, and Eclipsing, and variety of forms, these few bearings will demonstrate, with *chap.* 18. *numb.* 4. to 10.

XXXIX. He beareth Azure, a **Sun** in his **Glory** (or **Splendor**,) the Sun being thus born, needs no expression of its colour; for who knows not, that the chiefest glory and splendor of the Sun consists in its Beams, which cannot be better expressed than by Gold, or Gold Yellow. But if it be born in any other colour than this, it must be expressed, only Black excepted, as *numb.* 41. This Coat thus Blazoned, hath many Bearers, as by the name of *St. Cleere*, *Aldbraham*, *Elcheham*, *Aldham* and *Nadall*; also by *Breitenacker*.

G the like born by *Richmond*.

S the like born by *Dernely* and *Rake*.

A a Sun G born by *Hurst*.

A the Sun beams G the face of the first, born by *Van Misburn*, and *Sterner*.

A on the top of an Hill out of the Base V a Sun G born by *Van Sonnenburg*.

XL. He beareth Gules, the **Zodiack Circle**, Or, **beautified** or **replenished** with the **Characters of the Coelestial Signs**, Sable. This needs no other Blazoning but the Zodiack or Ecliptick Circle; for it is not the Zodiack, but some other thing, as a Ring, Hoop, or such like, if the Cœlestial Characters be not upon it; again, the Zodiack Circle is ever born Bendways Sinister. This is born by the name of *Girdler*.

XLI. He beareth Argent, the **Sun Eclipsed.** When it is Sable, it needs no naming; for by Eclipsing, it is made dark by the body of the Moon passing between the Sun and us; so the Light is diverted from our sights. See *chap.* 18. *numb.* 8. This is born by the name of *Nightling*.

XLII. He beareth Azure, a **Sun** Argent, at the point of each Beam, a **Flame** proper. The glorious and splendant shining of the Sun, is comprehended under these two Titles, the Sun Beams, or its Rayes.

☞ Now, some will make a particular distinction between these; the Beams are that as shines directly upon a place, without any wavering or sudden motion therefrom; and the Rays (say they) are caused through the weakness of our sight looking upon it, to whom it seems to strain out and warble forth its brightness, which is nothing else but our conceit thereof; in which respect the Sun is ever drawn with Rayes and Beams; the streight ones being the Beams, and the warbling strains the Rays.

So then in such kind of bearing (if all the points be not occupied) take a care rightly to express on which of them the Charge is, whether on the Beams, or on the Rays.

Such

Such a Sun O flamed in the points of the Beams, is the Crest of that worthy Gentleman, Sr. *Tho. Jones*, of *Shrewsbury*, Kt. Serjeant at Law, and one of His Majesties Chief Justices for *South Wales*.

XLIII. He beareth Sable, an **Eye proper, in the Glory of the Sun.** Born by the name of *Suz-Gilbenburgh*. After this manner you shall find several Coats with Charges on the Sun; as a Rose A in the glory of the Sun, was the Badge of King *Edward* the fourth of *England*.

XLIV. He beareth Gules, in the Sun Argent, a **Shield with a Cross**, Gules: Others will term it **a Shield of St. George in the Sun**, Argent. Born by *Segger*.

Such a Shield Losengy A and B in the Sun O is the Crest of *Buern*.

In an old Grant made by *Thomas Clarenceux*, principal Herault and King of Armys of the South parties of this Realm of *England* (for so he termeth himself) dated 26 *Feb.* in the first yere of the Reigne of King *Richard* the Thirde. Was confirmed to *Robert Roos*, Chapellayne and Registrary of the Fraternity of the Holy Trinity, and of LX Prestes of *London*, and all and every of the Brethren of the same Fraternitye, this Coat Armes, *viz.* **parted by Chevron**, Asure and Goules, **iij Obletts set within iij Sonnes** in their propre coloures.

Obletts are certain pieces of Mony, having the stamp of the 3 foresaid letters J. H. S. coined thereon within 2 or 3 Rings or Circles; and was given or offered of old in the *Romish* Church, for the maintenance of their Feasts of Charity; in value it was worth our Penny Farthing, and were called Obletts, from the Latine *Oblatæ*, and it from *Oblationes*. Sir *H. Spelman*, in his *Glossarium*, saith they are round Loaves of Unleavened Bread used at the Consecration of the Eucharist, having that mark Printed upon it.

XLV. He beareth Azure, **a Dove displaid**, Argent, **in the Glory of the Sun.** Some will term it the Holy Ghost, proper; and thus I have found it very ancently Blazoned, because the Holy Ghost descended on our Saviour after his Baptism in the likeness of a Dove; see *numb.* 4, 5.

After these examples, you shall find varieties of things born in Arms in the body of the Sun; now it is in your choise, whether you will in the Blazon, express the Sun first, or the thing in the Sun, as in these examples; for neither way can be reproved.

XLVI. He beareth Gules, **one Raye of the Sun issuing out of the Dexter Chief Bendways.** This is Mr. *Gwillims* Blazon, *fol.* 100. by which I suppose there should have been only a Ray with some small Beams, to distinguish it from a Pile waved; but seeing this hath a part of the Body of the Sun visible; I hold it may as well be termed the Sun issuing out of the Dexter Chief, with one Ray Bendwise.

Morgan, lib. 1. *fol.* 41. will not have either Sun, Moon, or Stars, to be termed issuant, but surmounting; because issuant seems rather to denote an exhalation or Meteor, than a Planet. Yet I hold no such matter; neither can either this or the following Coat be well Blazoned without the term issuant. This is born by the name of *Alderton*.

B the like, born by *Aldam*, or *Aldham*.

XLVII. He beareth Azure, **on a Mount, (or Hill) in Base**, Vert; a **Unicorn** Argent, **Jessant on the Sun.** Others thus, **the Sun issuant from behind a Hill in Base, debruised with a Unicorn**, all proper. This term debruised is, when a thing lies upon another, or hath any thing in part visible behind it, as in this, where the Unicorn seems to be all over the Sun, or the Sun to be behind it. Some term it a Unicorn over the Sun. This is the Crest of *Gillyman*.

A Lamb thus in the Sun, is the Crest of the Worshipful Company of *Merchant Taylors* of *London*.

B on a Bank in Base, a Sun rising, both proper. Born by *Sunnybanke*.

XLVIII. He beareth Vert, a **Naked Arm flected, the hand holding a Flower de Lis**, Or, **issuant out of the Sun.** Thus you will find varieties of Coats, with Hands and Arms, Naked, Clothed, Armed, *&c.* issuing out of the middle of the Sun.

☞ Here then take notice from the examples *numb.* 43, 44, 45. what it is to say (in the Sun) and *numb.* 47. what is (over the Sun) there is yet one other way of Bearing in the Sun, which is an overtopping of the Sun, as a Charge surmounting the Sun, or issued out of the top of it; but this kind of bearing, I never saw or found with any other Charge that demy Men or Women; and those in several habits, and holding of variety of things: I shall give you the Blazon of one, which I determined to have set in this Plate, but was omitted by the Graver.

He beareth Sable, **the Sun in his Glory, surmounted by a demy Maid (or a Woman Naked) holding in her right Hand a Palm-branch, and in her left, a Sword**, all proper. Blazoned also, **a demy Woman issuant in the top of the Sun.** But *Morgan, lib.* 1. *fol.* 47. saith this term surmount, is the most fittest and propereſt term to be used to any thing that is on the top of either Sun, Moon, or Star. By the name of *Shamfast*.

XLIX. He beareth Sable, **a demy Sun arising out of the Dexter Chief**, Argent. Some term it a demy Sun, or the Glory of the Sun, or the Sun Rays out of the Dexter Chief. Born by the name of *Wishlitt*.

B the like A born by the name of *Rising*.

18. FROM the greater Light, we shall proceed to the lesser Light, the Moon; and give some examples of the varieties of its bearing.

L. He beareth Sable, an **Incressant circled.** This Word Incressant, signifieth the Moon in its Increment, or Increasing estate, from her entrance into her first Quarter till she come to her Full. The Moon needs to have no colour mentioned, if it be Silver; for the proper colour in Heraldry is taken to be so, both because of the weakness of the sight, as also to distinguish it from the Blazoning of the Sun. I term this also, an Incressant circled, or invironed in a Circle, or a Glory; to signifie thereby that it is a Moon in its Increse, and to distinguish it from a meer Incressant, that hath no Face at all within it; for there

there ought to be a distinction of the one from the other. See *numb.* 56. This is born by the name of *Increase*.

Er. 3 such G born by *Symmes*.

G an Incressant A born by *Weber*.

G the like O born by *Descus*.

LI. He beareth Gules, **a Decressant circled**, Or. This is the Moon in her Decreasing or last Quarter; when her Light is every Hour by degrees taken away, till she return to her Change. By the name of *De la Luna*. Some term it the Moon in her Wane. Note that the Incressant hath the Horns of the Moon turned to the Dexter side; and the Decressant to the Sinister.

LII. He beareth Sable, a **Moon in her Complement, or Full.** Of some termed a Moon in her Plenitude. Born by the name of *Moonplane*.

B the like, born by *Chaffin* and *Herell*. The colour of the Moon, is always to be understood White; which if it be so, there needs no mentioning of it; if of other colours, then to be named, except Black, as in the next example.

LIII. He beareth Argent, **a Moon in her detriment or Eclipse.** Of some, a **Moon Eclipsed**, Sable; but naming the colour, being Black, is needless. This is born by the name of *Night*.

LIV. He beareth Argent, a **Cressant**, Gules, between four Characters of the Planets, **Sol, Luna, Mars**, and **Venus**, Sable. The Cressant it self, is the Coat Armour of *Cressy*.

Quarterly A and G 2 such S and 2 A by *Tatton*.

S a Cressant O born by *Hovel*.

G a Cressant O born by *Otterburn*.

B the like A born by *Luce*.

B the like O born by *Raby*; also by *Rothby*.

A 3 such G born by *Bunevill. inc.*

LV. He beareth Azure, a **Cressant surmounted by an Estoile**, Argent, between 3 **Planet Characters**, viz. **Saturn, Jupiter**, and **Mercury**, Or. This Blazon sans Characters, is born by *Mynshull* of *Mynshull* and 3 such Cressants surmounted by Estoiles, is born by *Mi shull*, of *Erdeswick* of *Cheshire*.

B a Cressant surmounted of the Sun O born by *Monson*.

S the like surmounted of a Mullet A born by *Densell*.

But in my Judgment it is best Blazoned upon the Horns or Points of the Cressant an Estoile, or the like; surmounted being upon it, not over.

LVI. He beareth Gules, an **Incressant**, between four Characters of the Celestial Signs (or of the Zodiack Signs) *viz.* **Aries, Taurus, Gemini Cancer**, Or. This is an Incressant, as it was anciently used; but the modern Heralds generally make a Face in it; which we not unproperly call a New Moon, or a half Moon; see *numb.* 50. 51. This is born by the name of *Signifer*.

B the like O born by *Balswill*.

LVII. He beareth Gules, **two Cressants in point Fesseways**; between four Characters of the Signs of the Zodiack, *viz.* **Leo, Virgo, Libra**, and **Scorpio**, Argent. These are termed Fesse ways, to shew how they stand in the Field, for they might as well have stood one above the other; and then they might be termed in point Paleways. These I find Blazoned only a Decressant, and an Incressant; and two Incressants respecting one another, or two Cressants respectant. This is born sans Characters by the name of *Locker*.

S the like, by the name of *Doulight*.

LVIII. He beareth Argent, two **Cressants Indorsed**, Azure, between four Symbolical Signs (or Characters) of the Zodiack, *viz.* **Sagittarius, Capricornus, Aquarius**, and **Pisces**, Sable. This is also termed an Incressant, and a Decressant in Fesse. This is sans the Characters born by the name of *Lowmons*.

O two such G born by the name of *Fitzrill*.

S two such conjoined A born by *Fertager*.

S two such O born by *Leiser*. And also by *Van Fulbach*.

B the like with Faces O is born by the name of *Zily*.

LIX. He beareth Sable, two **Cressants Braced**, Or. If their Braceing were with the points upward and downward, then they should be Blazoned a Cressant Fretted or Braced, with another reversed. This is the stamp or impression of King *Charles* the Seconds Two Pences. The like is born *Brajemon*.

LX. He beareth Azure, **a Cloud in Chief, with the Suns resplendant Glory or Brightness issuing thereout**, proper. Or thus, out of a Chief Nebule; the Sun Beams issuant. Born by the name of *Van Burg*.

G the like proper, born by *Lesone*; which Mr. *Gwilliams*, *fol.* 120. thus Blazons, a Chief, on the lower part thereof a Cloud; the Suns resplendent Rays thereout issuing, proper.

LXI. He beareth Gules, **an Estoile**, Argent, **between two demy Circles, with the Suns resplendent Glory**, Or. By the name of *Kettle*.

The like on a Chief, is part of the Atchievement of the Family of *Brocson*.

LXII. He beareth Sable, **three Cressants Braced, and Fretting each other**, Argent. Others will add, Fretting each other in Triangle; but they can be Fretted no way but this; and therefore they need no other term than three Cressants Fretted. The Stamp of a Three Penny Piece, in the now Reign of our Sovereign Lord, *Charles* the Second, *&c.*

He beareth Argent, 4 **Cressants Braced (or Fretted) in Salter**, Gules; and is the Stamp or Impress of a Coin made by King *Charles* the Second, and passeth for Four Pence. Sometimes they are made so, that their Fretting makes a direct Cross; and then they are termed four Cressants Braced in Cross; but when the Fretting is in Salter; then it is named so; though others take upon them to set them forth thus; a Cressant with another reversed, braced (or interlaced) with an Incressant and Decressant. See the Figure, *lib.* 1. *chap.* 8. *numb.* 7.

19. WE shall in the next place proceed to things produced in the Element of Air, in which there are several and various Products, which are born in Coats of Arms, and are such as follow, with their like.

LXIII. He

LXIII. He beareth Azure, **Aeolus Head, or Face, in Chief, sending forth his Blast or Wind, into the Base**, proper. *Æolus* is feigned to be the God of the Wind; and as the Wind Bloweth where it listeth; so this Head may be set to send forth his Blasts which way the Bearer pleaseth. It hath been the fancy of some to term these Winds from the four parts of the World, set forth by the Compass, being East, West, North, and South; assigning the East to the Dexter Chief, the North to the Sinister Chief, the West to the Dexter Base, and the South to the Sinister Base.

I have seen a Devise in a Shield of four Faces in the 4 foresaid corners of the Escochion, which represented the four Winds, all sending forth their Blasts to a Rock fixed in the Fesse, which may be thus Blazoned, he beareth Argent, a Rock Gules, blown upon by the four Winds, proper; I say proper, because the Wind was ever set forth by a Head or full Face, with swollen Cheeks, sending forth a Blast, which is always of an Airy colour, agreeable to that of the Field.

LXIV. He beareth Vert, **two Heads in Chief, Dexter and Sinister, sending forth their Blasts Bendways**, proper; termed the East and North Winds opposing each other. By the name of *Combust*.

B the like, born by the name of *Tempest*.

The Names given to Winds by Seafaring Men.

A Calm, the Wind is Room, a scant Wind, fair, gentle Weather.

A Breeze, a small Airy Wind; a breath of Wind, as doth Daily keep its course, and blows out of the Sea landward.

A Gaile, a little Wind, reasonable Wind, to bear the Top-sails.

A Pleasant Gaile, that it may be perceived to blow, called also a Trip.

A fresh Gaile, the Wind blows brisk and sharp.

A stiff Gaile, when it blows strongly and stiff; termed Wind taught.

It overblows, it bloweth hard.

A Gust, a blast of Wind, Wind that hath intermissions.

A Storm, a Tempest, a grown Sea.

A Spout,

A Loume Gaile, when it is little Wind.

An Eddy Wind,

A Flake of Wind,

A Turnado, a fierce Wind.

A Mounthsoune,

An Herycano, a Terrible Wind that drives down all before it.

The Wind Veers, a large Wind, is a Quarter Wind, such as bloweth not streight, but wavering.

The Wind shrinks, is the Veering of a Wind, which gives notice of a Storm coming.

LXV. He beareth Azure, a **Comet, or Blazing Star, in Bend**, Or. All Flames of Fire, of what form or nature soever they seem, as Comets, Wandring Stars, Fiery Dragons, Fire Balls, and such like, proceed from a dry, hot, slimy exhalation, drawn up to the highest part of the Air, where it is set on Fire, and burneth till it hath consumed it self; and after the same nature is the *Ignis fatuus*, or going Fire upon the Earth. This is born by the name *Fancy*.

G the like, born by *Whithergoe*.

LXVI. He beareth Argent, **on the Sinister side, out of a Cloud, an Arm reflected, the hand holding of a Thunderbolt**, all proper. This is by some Blazoned the Arm of *Jupiter* or *Jove* out of a Cloud on the Sinister side, casting of a Thunderbolt. By the name of *Tremble*.

S the like proper. Born by *Flaming*.

The four Winds described.

20. EVRVS, or the East Wind, is Emblemed by a Youth Naked, with a Scarf flying about, Wings upon his Shoulders, with puffed or blown Cheeks, with Wind coming out of his mouth (as all other Winds must be) his body like a Tawny Moor, and upon his head a Red Sun.

Zephyrus, or the West Wind, is drawn like a Youth with a merry look, holding on his hand a Swan with Wings displaid; on his head a Garland of Flowers.

Boreas, or the North Wind, is Depicted like an Old Man, with an horrid terrible look; his Head and Beard Snow white; with the Feet and Tail of a Serpent.

Auster, or the South Wind, is Painted like an Old Man, his Head and Wings wet; with a Pot or Urn under his Arm pouring out Water, with which descends Frogs, Toads, Worms, Grashoppers, and the like Creatures which are bred by moisture.

Euroclydon, or a Tempest, or Stormy Wind, is set forth by a grim foul faced Old Man, his Mantle torne and flying about, his hands griped as if he would Fight; compassed about with dark Clouds. But it is best described by a Ship split upon a Rock, the Masts and Sails, broken, rent, and flying about; Trees broken, and much bowed, with the Clouds dark.

LXVII. He beareth Sable, a **Thunderbolt**, or *Jupiters* Thunderbolt, Or. This is the form by which it is delineated, and being of one colour, it needs no more Blazon, or terms to set it forth; yet *Grillims*, *fol.* 134. calls it a Thunderbolt in Pale, Inflamed at both ends, shafted Salterwise, and winged Fesewise, *&c.* all which terms are needless, except the particulars named, were distinct and various colours; then he had needed no more, but a Thunderbolt Sable, enflamed at both ends, shafted Gules, and winged Argent; or with such like colours. It is termed also *Jupiters* Thunderbolt, *&c.* But Mr. *Morgan*, *lib.* 1. *fol.* 50. draweth it without Wings, and his reason is good, because Wings being *Jupiters* Bird, was not Fledged till the next days work; therefore till then —— *pars imperfecta manebit*. This is the Arms of the Kingdom of *Scythia*, as witnesseth *Chassanæus*.

LXVIII. He beareth Azure, a **Rain Bow issuing out of two Clouds**. Here you may take your choise whether you will name them proper or not; for a Rainbow is never born otherwise; the natural colour of it, is Red, Blew, Yellow and Green, as it were shadowed one into the other; if it consist all of Yellow, this is palish; if white, its defiled, or whelmish; if Blew, its fading; if red, its

its a Blossom; if Green, its withering; and if it be of a Purple colour, its stanand or staining; *Gwillim fol.* 134. and *Morgan, lib.* 1. *fol.* 51. term it a Rainbow issuing out of two petit Clouds in Fesse, *&c.* This is born by the name of *Cloudingdale.*

B a Rainbow issuant from the sides proper. Born by *Van Mosen.*

G 2 Rainbows issuant from the sides proper, having an Arched Fesse betwixt G... Born by *Weylheim* of *Germany.*

A 2 Rainbows couped and endorsed Palewise proper. By the name of *Hacken.*

B 2 Salmons counter naiant between 3 Rainbows, all between 3 Mullets of six points O is the Town Arms of *Preimbut* in *Germany.*

Products of the Air and Water.

21. THese things are the effects and products of the Airy Element, as it is either hot or cold.

Air, one of the pure Elements, it fills all places, for there is no vacancy but hath it; it is more weighty than Fire; being hot and moist.

Air thick and dark, is Cloudy Weather.

Air thin, is Mists, or that as dissolveth into Misty Vapours.

Air temperate,

Air pure,

Bubble, is a Drop of Water falling into the Water, Air interposing maketh it a Bubble.

Congelate, or Coagulated, is a congealing of such vapours as are exhaled out of the Earth.

Comets, Flames, and *Ignis fatuus*; or such like, seen either in the Air, or wandring on the Earth; Dants or Sulphuty Damps in the Earth; all proceed from dry and hot slimy Vapours drawn out of the Earth, and set on Fire by the heat of the Air; in the Air they are called Comets of Fire or Flames; on the Earth going Fires.

Cold, produced from the moistness of the Air, and want of the Sun, which naturally doth bind and congeal all waterish and moist bodies.

Dew, see **Frost.**

Dants, or **Damps**, see **Comets.**

Darkness or Night, is through Suns declining of our Horizon, and going under the Earth as to us, causeth the Firmament to be dark.

Distillations, are those waterish Vapours which the Sun draws up into the Air, which when the Sun is down, fall to the Earth again, and this we call Dew.

Drought, or **Drouth**, is an over dryness of the Earth and Air.

Eclipses of the Sun, is through the interposition of the body of the Moon between the Sun and the Earth, which taketh away part of its Light, but cannot wholly darken it; being the Moon is a far lesser body; see *numb.* 76.

Eclipses of the Moon are by the like interposition of the body of the Earth, between the Sun and Moon; so that the Moon cannot receive any Light from the Sun.

Exhalations, are such vapours and moistures as are drawn and exhaled out of the Earth by the heat and influence of the Sun.

Elements, see **Air, Water, Fire, or Earth.**

Element pure, is any of the four of themselves, without a Commixture of any of the other, as pure Fire, pure Air, *&c.*

Elements compound, are the effects and working causes in natural Bodies, and produce variety of Forms.

Frost, or Hoar Frost, is a cold moist vapour, drawn up a little way into the Air, and in the Night falls again on the Earth, where it dissolveth; and through the Cold there, congelated, becometh Frost; the more congealed is made Ice, if not congelated, but resolved into Water, it becometh Dew.

Froth or **Fome** is produced from many Bubbles, and the foulness or thickness of the Water, which the heat of the Sun congeals, which coming to an hardness, maketh the Pumice stone.

Fogg or **Mist**, is an unwholesom vapour drawn out of the Earth by the Sun, which at the loss of its Light and Heat, fall to the Earth again, like a white thick smoak.

Heat, or hot season, proceeds from the Sun, and want of Rain to cool the Earth and Air, which are naturally hot. Heat doth thicken and harden all moist Bodies.

Hail, is a Cloudy Vapour, resolved into Water, which in the fall through the Cold Region of the Air, is congealed, and so made Hail; the higher it cometh from above, and the longer it tarrieth in the Air, the greater and rounder it is.

Ice, see **Frost.**

Influence, is the effect or product of things by the mixture of the Elements one with another; as Fire and Air produceth Sweat or Drought, as they are predominant one above the other.

Lightning, see **Thunder.** *Aristotle* affirmeth that it is after the Thunder, but the Fire doth first appear to us, because the Eye is quicker of Sight than the Ear of Hearing. There is three kinds of Lightning.

1. Dry Lightning, which doth not burn but cleave, part, or divide in pieces.
2. Moist Lightning, which burns not, but altereth the colour.
3. Clear Lightning, which is of a Marvellous Nature, doth Kill and never touch; full Barrels by it are emptied; it melteth Money in the Purse; it breaketh the Sword, the Purse and Scabbard not perished, yea the Wax in them unmelted.

Light, or Day; comes from the Suns appearing in our Horizon, which gives a light in the Firmament, called Day.

Liquid body, any thing that is of a Waterish substance.

Mist, see **Fogg** and **Exhalation.**

Moisture, is a waterish cold humour, proceeding from abundance of liquid matter, arising out of a Conjunction of Air and Water.

Moon, is moist, and therefore rules all inferiour bodies that are moist; for by her waxing and waining, the Seas, Flouds, Rivers and Springs rise and fall; neither is there any other apparent reason of the Ebbing and Flowing thereof.

Rain, is a cold Vapour drawn out of the Earth and Water, by the influence of the Sun, into the Airy Region, from whence it falleth upon the Earth.

Rainbow, is caused through the shining and rebounding of the Sun Beams in Airy Clouds, each giving to other,

*

other, a contrary reflection, which hollow, thin and unequal Clouds being in Opposition, and receive from one another the reflection of the Sun, causeth so many Rainbows one above another, at one and the same time. I have seen five Rainbows at a time, one above another, but each had a degree of faintness, or less perspicuous one than another, from the highest.

Snow, is a moist Vapour, drawn up to the middle Regions of the Air, and there thickned, and Frozen into the body of a Cloud; and so congelated descendeth to the Earth.

Slime, or slimy matter ariseth through Water and Earth commixt, being the Quintessence of both.

Sun, it is the Ruler and giver of Light to all inferior bodies, being the governor of the Day, and doth distinguish Times and Seasons. It is naturally hot.

Stars, are great bodies, enlightned by the Sun when opposite, by whose Constellations, Influences and Operations over all Created Bodies, they are guided and governed, as to all Earthly and Natural Actions, touching Life and Death. *Astra Regunt Homines, sed regit Astra Deus.*

Thunder, it is the quenching of Fire in a Cloud; or it is an exhalation hot and dry, mixt with moisture, carried into the middle Region, there thickned and wrapped into a Cloud; of this hot matter, coupled with cold and moisture closed in the Cloud, groweth a strife; the heat beateth and breaketh out of the sides of the Cloud with a Thundering Noise, the Fire then dispersed is the Lightning.

Thick or **Thin** Air; see **Air.**

Temperate, is when the Air is neither too hot, nor too cold, but between both.

Vapours, are Mists, Fogs, or waterishness of the Water and Earth, drawn or distilled out of them by the heat of the Sun, and carried up into the Air by his influence and Virtue.

Water, one of the four Elements, it is Cold and Moist.

Wind, is a multitude of dry Exhalations drawn up from the Earth, and above the Earth enforceth here and there.

22. WE shall in the next place give the Reader some few examples of Bearings, drawn out and extracted from the Fiery Element; there are of Fires three several sorts.

1. Natural Fire, that is only in the Element of Fire, which is above the Air.

2. Artificial Fire, which must be maintained with Fuel, as all Earthly Fires are, else they are extinct and perish.

3. Counterfeit Fire, such are all Fiery Vapours, which shew as if they were Fire, but are not, which soon vanish, like Sparks in Stones, in Glow Worms, and Fire painted on a Wall, and the *Ignis fatuus*, or going Fires.

LXIX. He beareth Vert, **a Flame of Fire**, the finding out of Fire was the Invention of all Trades, and perfection of Skill; yet let all be careful how they deal with it; keep it under, and its a good Servant, else it will prove an unruly Master. This is Born by *Wilding.*

This is termed an *Ignis fatuus*, a Flame of Fire, having no Fuel to feed upon, which soon is extinct. S three Flames proper. Born by Monsieur *Jaques Arnodin.*

LXX. He beareth Sable, **a Flame of Fire.** The *French* generally make their Flame of Fire after the manner of a Heart like this example, which for distinction we may term a Flame in form of a reversed Heart, or a Heart reversed Flamant (or all inflamed) Born by Count *Jadonra*, Knight of the Oracle.

A a Chevron S between three such Flames, proper, is in *Barkley* Church, in the South Window.

A a Mans Heart G between 3 such Flames, is born by *Arnoux*, of *France.*

LXXI. He beareth Sable, **seven Fire Brands Flamant.** This is also termed seven Billets fired in one entire Flame; but more properly a Bone Fire made of many Billets, because they are all burning together; or a Fire of so many Sticks, Cordals or Billets. This is born by *Mechanick Guillim* terms them seven Firebrands flammant and scintillant, that is Flaming and Sparkling.

LXXII. He beareth Argent, **a Billet raguled and trunked on each side**, Sable, flamed (or fired in three places,) proper. Born by the name of *Billetter.*

A 2 such B in Salter, flamed proper. Born by *Sherstab.* A *Dutch* Coat; and the Field O by *Prandner.*

O the like G flamed proper, is the Coat and Crest of *Van Frandt* of *Germany*

O on a Hill V the like with four Flames proper, between two Estoiles S is born by *Grafenreit.*

LXXIII. He beareth Argent, **a Billet raguled and trunked**, Gules, enflamed on the top; or a Stock of a Tree raguled and trunked, fired on the top. By the name of *Stockfire.*

A the like in Bend S enflamed proper. Born by the name of *Prandis.*

B the like on a Hill O flammant on the top, proper. Born by *Prandtz.*

Barry of 6 G and A the like in Bend B born by *Van Brandschidt* of *Alsatia.*

LXXIV. He beareth Azure, **a Candle in Bend**, Argent, **surmounted of a Taper or Wax Light, in Salter, both Flammant on the top**, proper. By the name of *Chandler.*

Products of the Fiery Element.

23. FROM the Element of Fire there are these things produced.

Light, proceeds from the bright shining of the Fire, which ariseth from the Burning of the Fire.

Heat, hot, warm, sultry hot, or burning heat proceedeth from the more or less quantity of Fire.

A Spark, is a part of the Fire, separated from the greater Body of the Fire, which appears for a while, and then dieth or disappears.

A Scintillation, or Sparkling of the Fire, is the ſending of Sparks from the Fire, cauſed through ſomething that will not burn well.

A Flame is a Sulphury Vapour contained in the Fuel fired, which when it comes to Burn, caſts forth a Flame or Light, a bright, ſhining, burning Fire.

Fire, is one of the four Elements, and the pureſt of them all, being the higheſt; it is in it ſelf Hot and Dry.

Glow, is a Fire where there is no Flame, as in the Fire made with Charcole.

Flaſh is a Flame of Fire, ſoon Fired, and immediately gone, like Lightning.

Smoak, the moiſt Vapour, proceeding from the Fuel fired or burning.

Wild Fire, a Maſterleſs Fire, is a Fire that cannot be quenched or put out, a Fire that will burn in the Earth, Air, or Water.

24. HAving given you examples of Bearing from the Element of Air and Fire, it would not be amiſs in the cloſe of this place, to give the Reader a ſhort Diſcourſe of the Nature and Reaſons of the Increaſe and Decreaſe of the Moon, the cauſe of the Eclipſes, and how to underſtand the Conjunction of the Planets, all which is ſhewed in theſe three exemplary Figures.

The Changing of the Moon.

LXXV. The outward Circle is the Circle or courſe of the Sun; the ſecond is the Circle of the Moon, and the inner Circle is the Compaſs or Globe of the Earth.

The Sun in his Courſe, having the Moon in her Monthly courſe, near to the Sun and above the Earth, is termed in Conjunction with the Sun, then ſhe is in her Change, being all dark.

The Moon being in Oppoſition to the Sun, and having the Earth between them, then ſhe receiveth her whole Light, and is in her Full.

The Moon after her Change having run to the eighth part of her Monthly Courſe, is in the Sextile Aſpect, where ſhe is ſaid to wax or increaſe.

The Moon being in the Quartile Aſpect, that is the fourth part of her Monthly Courſe, then ſhe is half Full.

The Moon being in the Trine Aſpect, that is, when ſhe hath run the three eighths of her Monthly race, ſhe hath three parts of her Globe enlightned by the Sun, and is near the Full.

The Moon being in Oppoſition to the Sun as aboveſaid, is in her Full; but paſſing her Oppoſition to the Trine Aſpect again, ſhe beginneth to decreaſe and loſe her Light on the contrary ſide.

The Moon being gotten to the Quartile Aſpect in her Wane, is half full of Light.

Then the Moon being again in the Sextile Aſpect, it is in its Wane, or waneth and decreaſeth, till it come to her Change; by which Figure you may fully underſtand the courſe, and how it Waxeth, and is at Full, and Waneth in all its Monthly ſhining: For the Aſpects, ſee *numb.* 77.

The Eclipſe of the Sun and Moon.

LXXVI. Here you have the Circle of the Sun, which is the outermoſt, the next is the Circle of the Moon repreſented by Pricks; having the Body of the Moon in two places upon it; that is above and below the Globe of the Earth, which lies in the middle of all.

Now the Moon being directly oppoſite between the Light of the Sun and the Earth; as much as it takes the Light from us, ſo much either more or leſs is the Eclipſe of the Sun.

If the Globe of the Earth be in oppoſition between the Sun and the Moon; as much as the Earth doth overſhadow the Moon, and keep the Light of the Sun from it, ſo much, either more or leſs, the Moon is Eclipſed.

☞ Note, That the Sun cannot be totally Eclipſed, by reaſon the Globe of the Moon doth not contain that largeneſs, as to hide it from the World; yet the Moon may be totally darkned by the overſhadowing of the Earth.

LXXVII. In this Figure, which is a Circle, you have preſented to your view, the Courſe of the Sun, with the Sun in the Chief thereof.

The next is a Perpendicular Line, which goeth through the Globe of the Earth, being the Circle in the middle, which Line is the Conjunction Line, if the Planet be between the Sun and the Earth; or the Oppoſition, if the Earth be between the Planet and the Sun.

The next is a Triangular Line, which is the Trine Aſpect, to any Planet that is at the corners of it; by it the Circle is divided into 3 equal parts or diviſions.

The next in the Circle, is a Quadrangle, which divideth the ſame into four equal parts, and the Planets at the points thereof, are ſaid to be in a Quartile Aſpect.

The laſt in the Circle, is a Hexagon, or a ſix cornered Angle, which divides the Circle of the Sun into ſix equal parts, and is termed the Sextile Aſpect to all Planets that do fall upon the ſaid points; always provided, and be it noted, that the points of the Trine and Quartile Aſpect, meeting with the Sextile points, take thoſe points from the Sextile.

So that in ſhort, the Sextile hath the next two points to the Conjunction; the Quartile the two next points below them; and the Trine hath the two lower; and the Oppoſition one point, which is directly at the bottom.

Example,

☿ and ☉ the Sun and Mercury in Conjunction.
☽ and ☉ the Sun and Moon in Oppoſition.
♄ and ☉ the Sun and Saturn in a Trine Aſpect.
♃ and ☉ the Sun and Jupiter in a Quartile Aſpect.
♂ and ☉ the Sun and Mars in a Sextile Aſpect.

Here followeth other Names or Terms uſed by Aſtronomers in the Art of Aſtronomy; and the uſe of the Globes; ſet Alphabetically.

Angles, are certain imagined Points in the Heavens, notifying the fartheſt diſtance of any Orbe, Sphere or Cir-

Circle from the Center of the World.

Axeltree, is the imagined Line going from one side of the Sphere to the other, direct in the Diameter, on which the Earth hangs; therefore called the Axeltree of the World, at which end are two Points called the Poles or Axis.

Axis, see **Poles.**

Alhidada, is the Label or Pointer of an Instrument called an Astrolabe.

Aspect or Radiation, is the meeting of the Planets, or their joining with the Sun or Moon within such and such Degrees. Aspects are of several kinds, each being expressed by a peculiar Character; as followeth.

☌ The Conjunction Aspect is when the Planet is joined with the Sun or Moon, or other Planets amongst themselves, within one degree or less.

⚺ The Semisextile Aspect is when they are under one Sign or Degree.

✱ The Sextile Aspect or Radiation, is when such are together within 60 degrees, or distant from one the other so much as 2 Signs.

Q the Quintile Aspect, when they are distant one from the other 2 Signs 12 Degrees.

□ The Quadrate or Quartile Aspect, when they are together within 90 degrees.

Td. the Tridecile Aspect, is when they are removed 3 Signs and 18 Degrees distant.

△ The Trine Aspect, when they are 120 degrees distant, or parted 4 Signs.

Bq the Biquintile Aspect is when they are removed 4 Signs and 24 Degrees distant.

Vc the Quincunx Aspect is when they are 5 Signs distant one from the other.

☍ The Opposition Aspect, when they are 180 degrees distant one from the other, or 6 Signs or a Semicircle.

Altitude, is the height or elevation of the Pole (or any other thing) above the Horizon; that is, there is so many Degrees, Yards, *&c.* in height between such and such a place.

Astronomy, the Noble Art and Science of measuring the Heavens, and knowing the course of the Planets and Stars, their Rising and Setting, the diversity of Circles, Asterisms, *&c.*

Arithmetick, the noble Art of Numbring, and casting up of an Account from certain Numbers.

Astrology, the Art of conjecturing future Occurrences by the variety of Constellations, Planetical Aspects, and disposing of the Houses of Heaven and such like.

Augury, telling of Fortune by flying of Birds.

Bissextile, or Leap Year, which is every fourth Year, in which Month February hath 29 days.

Center, is the middle point of any round.

Combust, as Mars in Aries Combust, is as much as to say, Mars and Aries being under the Beams of the Sun.

Circulation, taking of rounds, the turning of things round after the manner of Circles, a turning round.

Circumference, the same to **Circulation.**

Coelestial, Heavenly.

Cosmography, the Description of the World, the same to **Geography.**

Charts, Paper draughts, either of the Winds, or scituations of Countreys.

Calculate, the foretelling of a thing, to tell the event of a matter.

Diameter, the breadth of any round body from one side to the other, cross the Center point.

Degrees, the distance of places, or measure; a Degree is 60 miles on the Globe, the thirtieth part of a Sign; for into so many parts are they all divided.

Digits, a Digit; for 10 Digits make a Minute, as 60 Minutes make a Degree: It is the diminution of a Minute into any part under 10: Some write it Digits and Digit, which in Arithmetick is all the single significant Figures under Ten.

Ecliptick, the name of a Circle in the Cœlestial Globe, or Circle of the Moon.

Epact, is a certain number taken out, or known by the Golden Number, through which the Age of the Moon is found out.

Ephemerides, is the consignation of the Planets, and where they be every Noon or middle of the day throughout the Year; and with what Aspect and Conjunction one is with the other.

Eclipse of the Sun or Moon, is the darkning of their Light, by having some solid or gross body interposing between it and us; as the Earth between the Moon and the Sun, is the Moons Eclipse; and the Moon between the Sun and the Earth is the Suns Eclipse.

Elevation of the Pole,

Golden Number, is a number of Years following one the other to 19; for at every 19 Year, it beginneth again at 1, 2, 3, 4, *&c.*

Geometry, the Noble Science of measuring the Earth, with the Longitude, Latitude, and Profundity thereof.

Geography, a Description of the Earth, with its parts. See **Cosmography.**

Horizon, is as much of the Heaven as we can behold at one time about. See **Equinoctial.**

Longitude, the length of any place.

Latitude, the breadth of any thing, or wideness of distance of one place from another.

Magnitude, the greatness or largeness of a thing.

Minutes, the diminutions of a Degree; 60 Minutes make a Degree which is 60 Miles.

Mathematick, one that Calculateth Nativities, an Astrologer, or a Mathematician.

Nadir, or **Nader**, it is that part of the Heaven or Earth directly under our Feet, and so descending through to the Center of the Earth, to the Heavens opposite to our Feet.

North Pole, the height of the Heavens in the North part, about the which all the Planets and Moveable Stars do turn.

Orens, Oriental, the East.

Occidental, the West.

Orbe, the World, else taken for any round thing, as a Ball.

Pole, is the point of the Axeltree of the World; of which there is one in the North, called the North Pole; and another in the South called the South Pole; upon which Poles it is imagined that the Cœlestial Sphere is daily moved about her Axeltree; the like Poles hath the Ecliptick or Zodiack Circle; these Poles are also called the Axis.

Profundity, is the depth of a place, or distance between the top of a thing to its bottom.

Progress, Progression, the going forward of a thing.

Prime, or Golden Number. See **Golden Number.**

Product, produce, a bringing forth or drawing out.

Retrogradation, a going back of a thing.

Revolutions, the turning round of a thing; as to begin here, and not to cease till it turn to this place again; the course of the Sun, Moon, and Planets, the turning of the Year, Times, and Seasons.

Sphere, is the Globe, comprehending both the Heavens and the Earth; or the Lines and Circles of the Celestial Globe, of which there are 3 kinds.

1. **Sphera recta**, or right Sphere, that is, when the Poles of the World lie, as the Horizon and the Equinoctial Line is one with the Zenith, standing upright.

2. **Sphera Parallela**, the equal distant Sphere, so named, when the Axeltree of the World stands right up, having the one Pole in the Zenith and the Equinoctial, and Horizon lying even.

3. **Sphera obliqua**, or crooked Sphere, so called because the Axeltree of the World, nor Equinoctial, do ly flat down or stand upright from the Horizon, but declineth sloping.

Scruple, is the Tenth part of a Minute.

Second, is the half of a Minute.

Scheme, the Draught or Figure in Astrology, by which they know the Houses and Places of the Planets; a Figure to Calculate or tell a Man his Fortune thereby.

South Pole, that Pole opposite to the North Pole.

Terrestial, Earthly.

Terrestial Globe, is the great round body of the Earth.

Zenith, is that part of the Heavens directly over our heads, in what part of the Earth soever we stand.

Zones, or Climates, see *cap.* 2. *numb.* 28.

TO

The Right Honorable,

WILLIAM-GEORGE-RICHARD STANLEY

Earl of *Derby*:

Lord *Stanley*, and Strange of *Knocking*, Viſcount Kington, Baron of *Weedon*, Lord, Mohun, Burnet, Baſſet, and Lacy; Lord Leiutenant of the Counties *Palatines* of *Cheſter*, and *Lancaſter*, and *Admiral* of the *Seas* thereunto belonging; Chamberlain of His Majeſties Court of *Exchequer* of *Cheſter*: And Lord of *Man*, with the *Iſles* &c.

THIS Chapter in perpetual Memory of your Honors Loyalty to your Sovereign, a Pillar of the Church: *And a Support of the* Country: *is Dedicated to your Lordſhip, by him who is your moſt Humble and Devoted Servant.*

Randle Holme.

CHAP. II.

1. WE Proceed now to the third Element, *viz.* Water. Of which we will give ſome few examples of the ſeveral wayes of bearing it in Arms.

Waters freſh and ſweet, are reckoned amongſt God's peculiar Bleſſings, promiſed to the obſervers of his Laws: and thoſe of chiefeſt rank. *Lev: 26 v. 7 For the Lord thy God bringeth thee into a good Land, a Land in the which are Rivers of Waters, Fountains and Depths that ſpring out of the Valleys and Mountains.*

For it is agreed upon all ſides, that the Sea is the Riches of a Kingdom; and a fair River is the Riches of a City, and Springs of water, the Safety of a Houſe or Caſtle.

Now water hath its ſeverall denominations according to the places in which it hath its being, and ſtation, as for examples it is called.

Of moving Waters

1. The *Ocean*, the great and vaſt Waters that inviron the great continent of the World, the main Sea.

2. *Sea*, this is a gathering together of many Waters, ſo called by God himſelf: *Gen: 1 10. And the gathering together of the Waters he called Seas.*

3. *Floods* of *Waters*, is the riſing and falling, or the ebbing or flowing of Waters. Floods in ſome parts are called Tydes or full Seas.

4. *Streams*, is a violent gliding or running of Waters, ſo as not to be Stopped; from whence ariſeth the Proverb. Its hard to ſtrive againſt the ſtream.

5. *Rivers*, is the meeting together of many Springs.

6. *Arm* or *Branch* of the Sea, are ſuch great and broad Rivers, that are near the Sea, and run into the Sea: a narrow Sea between 2 Lands.

7. *Rivulet*, is a ſmall River, or ſome few Springs meeting together.

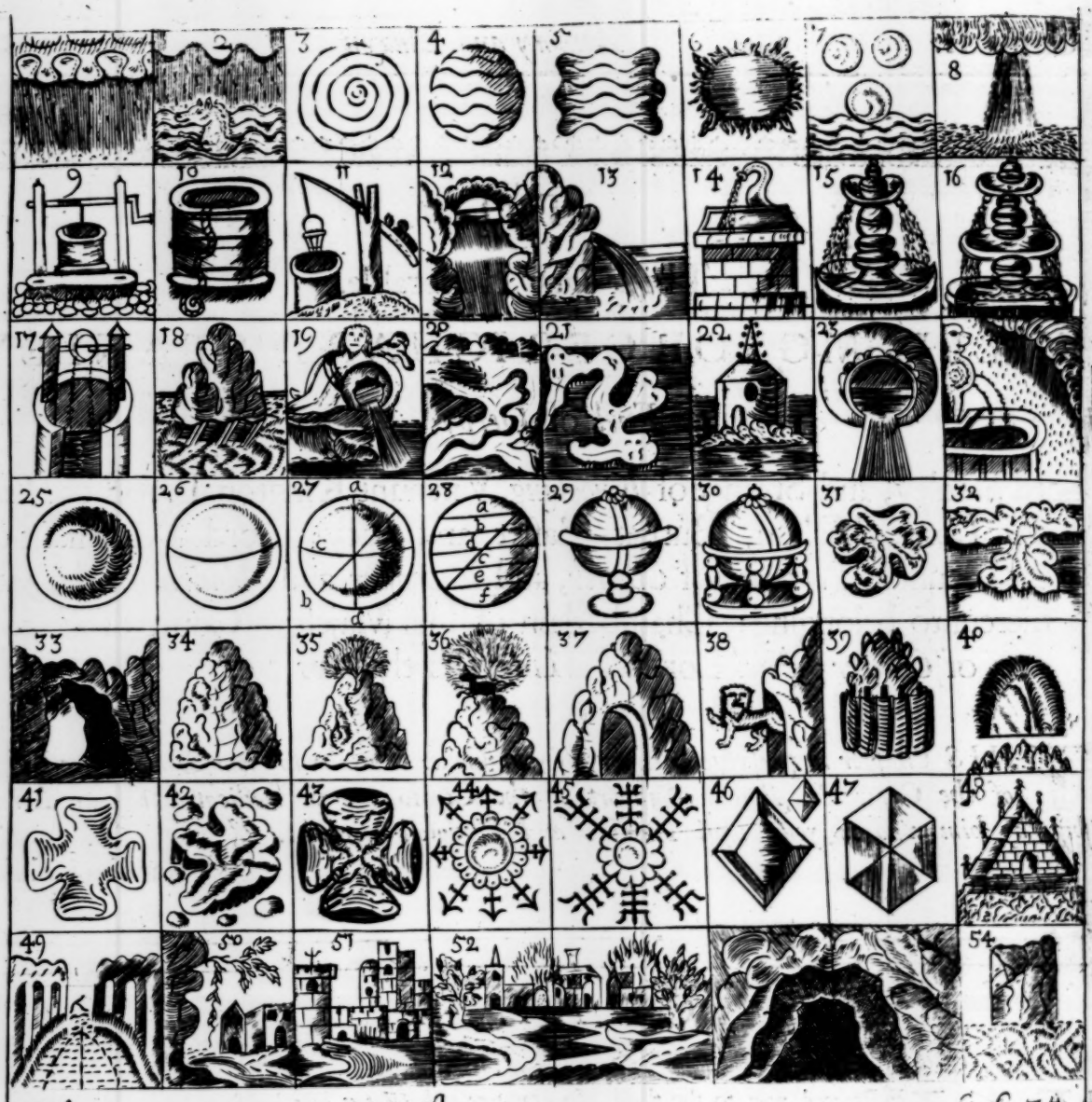
8. A *Brooke*, or *Rile*, a *Torrent*, is a running Water from a Spring.

9. A *Poole*, or *Brook*, is a place of Water kept together and is fed or Supplyed by Springs; the overplus running away through Sluces, Defenders, Wyers and over Cawſies.

10. *Spring* or a *Fountain*, are ſuch places where Waters iſſue out of the Earth.

11. *Baths*, are Springs of Water in which Sick and Infirm people waſh and bath themſelves: of which there are two ſorts the hot Bath, and the Cold bath.

12. *Spawes*,



12. *Spawes*, are Springs of Water arising out of the Minerals of the Earth, which are Phisicall waters, some purging by Urine, others by Vomit, and Stool.

13. A *Streight*, is a part of the Sea or Ocean restrained with narrow bounds, and then openeth again, as a way to the Sea.

14. A *Creeke* or *Bay*, is a Sea contained within a crooked shore.

15. *Whirle Pit*, or *whirle Poole*, is the turning of Water into circles as it runeth away.

16. A *Chanell*, the deepest part of a River, there where the stream runeth swiftest: a runing Ditch.

17. A *Rode*, is a place where a Ship may ride near land, and yet cannot ride Land-locked for all winds.

18. A *Sound*, is any great In-draught of the Sea, between two head lands, where there is no passage through.

19. An *Offen* or *Offing*, is to be out in the open Sea from the shore-ward; so for a ship to lye in the middle of a Channell, and comes not near the shore.

20. A *Cove*.

21. *Surges*, are the risings and fallings of the water in in Waves; which by Sea-men have several other terms ascribed to them, according to their more or less, lifting up. 28

22. A *Gulfe* or *Bosome*, of the Sea. A Whirle pit or deep pit in the Sea, where water falls in, and cometh not out again.

23. A *Raging* or *troubled* Sea, is when the Seas and Waters rage and roare through a tempest in them. A tempestuous storme, Surges and raging waves.

24. A *Wave*, is a rising & falling of the Water through wind.

25. A *Ford* or *shallow* water, where Men and Beasts may go over on foot.

Terms about the Sea, and its Ebbeing and Flowing &c.

A calme Sea.
A becalmed Sea.
A working of the Sea.
A rough Sea.
An over-groan Sea.
The rut of the Sea.
Roaring of the Sea.
The Flowing of the Sea.
A quarter Flood.
High water or still water.
Full Sea.
A Spring tide.
Ebbe, or Ebbeing.
Quarter ebbe.
Halfe ebbe.
A low water.
A dead low water, or a Neptide.
A shoale or shallow water.
A deep water.
A Gulfe.
The froth of the Sea.

Standing Waters.

If the waters be standing waters, having no shew or appearance of motion then they are called.

1. A Pond, or Pit, or Fish Pond; places of water in Fields or Commons, for Cattle to drink at, and where Gentlemen keep Fish: a place always full of water.

2. A *Mote*, is a large Ditch or Trench of water about Mansion or Hall houses.

3. A *Well*, is a sinking into the Earth to the Veins of Water that run through, which water is drawn up from thence by the help of a Rope and Bucket, or sweep.

4. A *Mare*, is a great broad standing Water in *Ireland* called a *Lough*.

5. A *Cisterne*, is a place in a house in which water is kept for the use of the family: under the figure of a Cistern the Prophet *Jeremiah Jer: chap.* 2. *v.* 13. Reproves the Rebellion of *Israel*. *You have forsaken me the Fountain of Living water; and have digged Pits to your selves that will hold no water, and have made to your selves Cisterns, even broken Cisterns, that will hold no water.*

6. *Fens*, are weat & spungy Grounds, called also Flars, Bogges, Moorish ground.

7. A *Lake*, or flash of Water, is a little hole or place of water after a great Rain, not sunk into the Earth.

8. A *Ditch* of water, a place where water standeth and runs not away.

Sorts of Waters Natural.

Besides ordinary waters, there are waters of an extraordinary nature as,

1. *Bathes*, or hot Springs, of which some are very hot others blood warm. Others exceeding cold.

2. *Spawe* waters, are such Springs as proceed from Minerals or Mines of Nitre, Sulphure, Allome, Bitumen, Coperas &c. And have their taste.

3. *Bryne* water, or salt water, which being boiled converteth into Salt.

4. *Cream* water, is such water as hath a kind of Oyl, or fat scume upon it, which being boiled, turneth into several Medicaments.

I. He beareth Argent, a **Cloud issueing out of the Chief** Sable, **Distilling Dropps of Rain.** This is born by *Pilewater*. Rain is a cold vapour, an Earthly humor, or fumosities drawn up out of the Water & Earth, by virtue of the Sun, to the nether part of the middle Region, or space of the Air; and there through cold thickens, then dissolved: being thus ingendred falls on the Earth.

Thus of natural Rain, but for miraculus Rain, as milk, blood, stones, flesh, iron, fowle, corn, wooll, or Jupiters coming to *Dinae*, in a golden shower &c. I leave the Curious to satisfie themselves, both from Scripture, *Josh.* 10. 11. And from *Pliniy's Natural History lib.* 2 *chap.* 58. *Ovid Metamorph.*

II. He beareth Argent, a **Chief waved** Sable, **Distilling Dropps of Rain; in base the Waves** of the **Sea,** with a **Sea-horse Naissant** proper.

☞ This term Naissant is used from *Nascend s* of *Nascor* to be born, as if the same were issueing out of the wombe, or middle of the water. This form of Blazon is peculiar to all liveing things that shall be found issueing out of the middle of any ordinary, or common charge and lyeth upon a part of Field, as this horse doth; haveing his head so much above the water as it comes into the Field. *Here* note also that the *Sea* horse Naissant, is no more then a demy *Sea* horse, the other part is supposed to be within the water. Yet some Blazon it in short thus Argent a Cloud Distilling Rain (or out of a Cloud a shower of Rain) *Sable*, in water a *Sea* horse Naissant (or swimeing) Proper. This is born by the *Hipotempest*.

III. *He* beareth Argent, a **Gurges, or whirle Pool,** Azure. If this Gurges or Gorges, did fill up the vacuity

ty of the Escochion, and that no part of the Field were discerned, then it is to be Blazoned thus, a Gurges, Argent and Azure. And this kind of bearing may be termed the Ocean or Sea, because there is nothing seen in it but Water. A **Gurge** is nothing else but the draught of a Pencil with a blewish Wave round and round inwardly: or after the manner of a Spirall line, beginning at the center, and going further off, as it turneth. And is Born by the name of *Gorges*.

IV. He beareth Vert, a **Fountain**, or a **Well of Water**. Thus Blazoned by *Williams*, and others, but I hold them more properly termed Pitts, or standing Waters; for a Fountain, & Well are contrary things, as you may see *numb.* 9 10 11 and 14 15 16. These are of some termed Roundles or Roundletts Barry waved. And is born by the name of *Wells*.

G the like wavey, A and V. Born by *Thymelten*.

A 3 such A and B. Born by *Fountain*.

V. He beareth Gules, a **Square Pitt of Water, waved** Argent, and Azure. By the name of *Pond*.

VI. He beareth Sable, a **Pitt of Water**, with severall sorts of **Leaves**, and **Flowers** about it proper. Born Anciently for the Crest of *Grosvenor* of *Eaten*, with a Falcon hovering over it.

VII. He beareth Argent, two **Bubbles**, and another **rising out** of the **Water in Base** proper. By the name of *Bubblewrard*. A Bubble is Aire inclosed in Water, which flyeth about.

Azure. 3 Bubbles. Born by *Aire*. Waters are also born Bendwise and in Fesse, as G a Bend Sinister watery waved A and B. Is born by *Stammer*. And O a Fesse the like. Born by *Van Baren*.

VIII. He beareth Azure, a **Cloud** with an **exhalation** out of the **Sea**, all proper. Some term this, a **Pillar** of **Rain issueing** out of the **Cloud**, and **falling** into the **middle** of the **Sea**. But I rather take it for an exhalation, then Rain, for such hath been often seen by Mariners in their Travailes upon the Seas. How ever either term of Blazon may serve. And is Born by the name of *Drought*. Some term it a **Sea spout**, which is a fall of water out of the Clouds for a League, or two in compass, like the fall of the Sea; that what Ship is within that compass, is dasht all to pieces.

IX. He beareth Argent, a **Well** Gules, the **Windle**, or **Turne**, Or, with the **Rope Pendant** into the **Well**, Sable. The Ground **paved** Azure. By the name of *Depwell*.

X. He beareth Argent, a **Well** Gules, with a **Rope pendant**, Or. Or *Jacobs* Well, *Joh.* 4 11. *Because the Well is deep, and thou hast nothing to draw the Water with, (as the Samaritan Woman said to our Saviour) how then shall this Well yield any supplyes*, had not a Rope been there for use? This is born by the name of *Jaques*.

XI. He beareth Argent, on a **Hill** in **Base**, Vert, a **Well** Gules, furnished with a **Pole**, and **Sweepe**, Or with a **Buckett**, and **Chain pendant**, Sable. This is the Coat Armour of *Sweepwell*. The like is born by *Polliard*.

B the like O. Is born by *Pronner Van Tahelhausen* of *Bavaria*.

XII. He beareth Argent, a **Bridge** of one **Arch** (or an **Arch**) over a **River**, runing with a fall into the **Base**, between two **high** and **craggy Rocks**, Gules. Or a fall of water between two Rocks, with an Arch over it. By the name of *Waterfall*.

XIII. He beareth Argent, the **Sea**, with a **Rock** in the **middle**, joyned to the **Dexter side**, from whence issueth a **Spring** or **Spout** of **Water** all proper, Or in a **Sea-skip** of **Aire** and **Water**, a **Rock fixed** to the **Dexter side spouting** out **Water**, (after some, gushing out Water) all proper. By the name of *Rockwater*.

XIV. He beareth Argent, on a **Grice** or **Step** in **Base**, a **Stone Cisterne**, Gule, **Masoned**, with a **Pipe** on the **Sinister side**, **Swan necked casting in Water**, proper. By the name of *Fountaindale*.

XV. He beareth Azure, on a **Hill in Base**, Vert, a **Fountain issueing** water. Born by the name of *Pymley*. This may be termed a Garden Fountain, or a Fountain of pleasure, or delight, to distinguish them from those Fountaines or wells mentioned *numb.* 11 13 19 23.

XVI. He beareth Argent, a **Garden Fountain double Cisterned**, Gules; **issueing** proper. These kind of Garden Cisternes have (in severall Coats and Crests where they are born) variety of Figures set upon the top, as Angels, Lions, or other Beasts sedant &c. Which thing ought to be named what they are: for such things often cause a great alteration in the bearings. This is the Crest of the Company of Plummers, with an Angell on top of it with a Sword in one hand and a pair of scales or ballance in the other.

XVII. He beareth Argent, a **Well in Base, open** on the **side**, Gules; **fixed** on the **top** two **standarts**, with a **Twirle** (or **Pullas**) and **Rod** with the **Rope** (or **chain**) **Pendant**. Born by the name of *Standdearoy*.

XVIII. He beareth a **Sea Skip**, or **Aire** and **Water**, in the middle of the **Water** a **Rock** Gules. Or a cragy Rock. Born by the name of *Fortior*.

XIX. He beareth **Party per Fesse Aire** and **Sea**, on a **Rock fixed** to the **Dexter side**, Gules, a **Naked man lying a long**, with a **Water pott** under his Arm, from whence issueth **Water** into the **Sea**. *See numb.* 23. This is termed by the Poets, the God of the Fountains, on a Rock sending forth Water from his Fontall. By the name of *Fountain*.

XX. He beareth a **Land-skip**, containing three **Hills**, one at a distance in **chief**, extending it self throughout the Escochion; the other in **Fesse fixed** to the **Dexter side**, and the third to the **Sinister** and **whole Base**, in the **Valley** a **Mare**, with a **River issuing** from its **Flecking**, and **Reflecting**, and **Determineing** in the **Dexter Base**, all proper. More breifly Blazoned thus. In a **Land skip** a **River running** in a **Valley** between three **Hills**, with a **Spring**, or **Mare**, at the Head of it, all **proper**. This is known with us by the name of the *River Dee*, or *Deva*, running amonge the Hill from the head thereof called *Pimble Mare*.

XXI. He beareth a **Sea-skip airy per chief**, a **Cape** or **Promontory** or a **Neck** of **Land shuting** it self unevenly into the **Water** from the **Dexter side** with flecking

ing and reflectings proper. See of this *numb.* 31 32 By the name of *Cape* of *Good-hope*.

XXII. He beareth per Fesse, airy and Water, an Island beset with Trees in the middle whereof is a Summerhouse with a Spire proper. By the name *Darington*.

XXIII. He beareth Argent, a Fontall casting out Water (of some called a Water pott) or a Scateyna) which are things, out of which Water runeth. This is Born by the name of *Waters*. The Gods of the Fountaines, and the Water Nymphs, with the description of Fountains and Rivers, are all decyphered by men and Women, lying or leaning on such kind of Potts as this. It is termed a Fontall from Fons a Fountain, as being that by which Fountains, Wells, and Springs, are set forth.

XXIV He beareth Argent, in the Sinister Chief a Cloud distilling drops of Raine, Sable; in dexter Base a Cestern, with theImage of a Demy Lyon with Woman Breasts Spouting out Water set on a Pillar within in it. Born by the name of *Digondover*.

2 IN the next place I shall give some examples of the last and heavyest of all the Elements, *viz.* Earth in which you shall see how the Earth is born in Coats, first in the whole, and then after in its parts.

XXV. He beareth Gules, an Orbe, or Globe, Vert. Born by the name of *Orball*. This is the Figure of the round World without any mention of Land or Water it being nothing else but a direct round Ball.

Azure. 3 Orbes, or Globes, Argent is the Coat of *Round*. This is a general bearing amongst the *Germain* and *Dutch* Familes.

XXVI. He beareth Azure, a Terrestiall Globe with its Equinortiall Line, Argent. If it had been divided into two colours, then it had represented the Earth and Water. This is Born by the name of *Munginator*.

The like to this divided into two, *viz.* A and G. Is the Crest of *Schwaden* a *Swaden*. And the same with a Parrot standing upon it with a Stoned ring in his Beeke proper. Is the Crest of *Schiffer* of *Austria* in *Germany*.

The like parted with the Zenith and Neder line B and A. Is the Crest of *Van Clugheim*.

XXVII. He beareth Vert, a Terrestiall Globe, Argent, with its Horizon, the Elevation of the Pole with the Zenith; and the Neder lines, Sable. Which lines are so called, these letters will demonstrate. Born by *Wordall*.

a. the *Zenith* Line, being that part of Heaven just over us.

b. the *Elevtion* of the Pole.

c. the *Horrizon* or the Equinoctial or Meridian line.

d. the *Neder*. Being that part just under us.

S 3 Roundlets parted per Cross. A and G. Born by *Dreward*. And the same Gyrony of 8 is born by that name.

XXVIII. He beareth Gules, a Terrestiall Globe, with all its Lines, Argent. The names of them, see in the Cœlestiall Spheare: *chap.* 1 *numb.* 33.

In the Globe of the Earth there are five Zones or Climes over hot, two over could, and two Temperate; the two hot Climates are in the middle Circle, signified by. c. d. The two Temperate clymates are between the Circles. b. e. And the two Frozen or cold Clymates between the Circles. a. f. See for them fuller spoken unto in the signification of Words about the Globe in the word Zone.

XXIX. He beareth Azure, the Terrestiall Globe proper, Invironed with the Meridian, Or. This is the Coat of *Fitz Shakerley*.

B. a Cross patee fitcht, and on a Chife, Or: Three Terrestiall of the first. By the name of *Eldred*.

XXX. He beareth Azure, the Terrestiall Globe fixed in the Meridian, with its Pillars, this is an other way of drawing the Terrestiall Globe.

The Globe of the Earth is the Center of the Cœlestiall Sphere and it is no more to be compared to the magnitude of the Heavens, then the point of a Needle, is in comparison of the Circumference of the whole Earth.

Yet this massy Globe, this body of the Earth is of a most vast bigness; for as Astronomers, Geographiers, and the like do writ of it; they say that it is in compass round 21600 *miles*; and that the diameter, or thickness of it is 6872 *miles*, and Eight parts of Eleven, of a mile, as *Archimedes* Rule is; though others affirm it to be but 360 Degrees, which maketh in the Circumference or Circute. 5400 *miles*, the Diameter to be 1800 *miles*, and the Semi-diameter, from the Surface of the Earth to its Center 900 *miles*; But this is to be understood of *German* miles, which is three times as much as an *English* mile.

The Earth hath but one known great, and vast, Continent in it, which is seated about with thousands of Islands both great and small.

It is divided into four parts, which are these *Europe*, *Asia*, *Africa*, and *America*.

Europe.

First is *Europe*, which is the Northern part of the World, and lyeth under the Tropick of *Cancer*, which is divided into Continents, and Islands: the Continent is again sub-divided into severall Kingdoms, and Empires, and Providces, as.

Spain hath these Kingdoms in it, 1 *Leon* and *Oviedo*, 2 *Navarre*, 3 *Corduba* and *Granada*, 4 *Gallicia*, 5 *Biscai*, 6 *Tolledo*, 7 *Murcia*, 8 *Castile*, 9 *Portugall*, *Algarue*, 10 *Valentia*, 11 *Catelogne*, 12 *Arragon*.

France, hath these Provinces in it. 1 *Aquitane*, *Gascoigne* and *Xaintoigne*, 2 *Pictou*, 3 *Anion*, 4 *Maine*, 5 *Toureine*, 6 *Bretagne*, or litt le *Britaine*, 7 *Normandie*, 8 the Ilse of *Franc*, 9 *Belsia* or *la Beausse*, 10 *Berry*, 11 *Burbon*, 12 *Beavois* and *Avergne*, 14 *Limosin*, 15 *Perigort*, 16 *Quercu*, 17 *Daulphine*, 18 *Languedoc*, 19 *Provence*, 20 *Picardie*, 21 *Champagne*, 22 *Burgundie*, 23 *La Bresse*, 24 *Burgundy County*, 25 *Lorreine*, 26 *Savoy*, 27 *Genova*. Which four last acknowledge not the *French* Command.

Italy. hath these Regions in it. 1 *Hesperia*, 2 *Latium*, 3 *Nasonia*, 4 *Oenotria* 5 *Lomlardy* and *Piedmont*, 6 *Tuscary*,

6 *Tuscany*, 7 *Rome* or the land of the *Church*. 8 *Naples*, 9 *Genoa*, 10 *Venice*, 11 *Florence*, 12 *Millaine*, 13 *Mantua*, 14 *Urbine*, 15 *Parma*, 16 *Luca*.

Belgia, or lower *Germany*, low *Countreys* or *Nether-lands*, which hath these Regions in it. 1 *Flanders*, 2 *Zealand*, 3 *Lymburgh*, 4 *Luzenburg*, 5 *Gilderland*, 6 *Brabant*, 7 *Artiys*, 8 *Hainault*, 9 *Namurce*, 10 *Zutphen*, 11 *Holland*, 12 *West Friezeland*, 13 *Utrecht*, 14 *Overyssell*, 15 *Machlyn*, 16 *Growning*.

Germany, hath these Countries in it. 1 *East-Friezland* 2 *Westphalia*, 3 *Clevelandl*, 4 *Alsatia* or *Elsas*, 5 *Franconia* or *Flankenland*, 6 *Rhene Palatinate*, and *Wirtenberg*, 7 *Helvetia*, 8 *Switzerland*, 9 *Valtia*, 10 *Rhetia*, 11 *Suevia*, 12 *Bavaria*, 13 *Northgoia*, 14 *Austria* with *Corniola* and *Tirolisis*, 15 *Bohemia*, which containeth *Silesia*, *Lusatia* and *Moravia*, 16 *Brandenbourg*, 17 *Pomerania*, 18 *Mecklenbourg*, 19 *Saxonie*, which containeth *Toringia*, *Misnia*, *Vottland*, and *Saxonie*, 20 *Brunswick* and *Lunebourg*, 21 *Hassia*, 22 *Veteravia*,

Denmarke, containeth in it these Countries; 1 *Cimbricke Chersonesse*, 2 the *Balticke* Islands, in number 35. Of which the four principall are, *Sealand*, or *Sealandania*, *Fionia*, or *Fuinen*, *Fimera*, and *Bornholmia*, 3 *Scandia*.

Norway, on the Northwest of it lyeth *Finmarchia*.

Sweden or *Swethland*, it containeth these Regions, 1 *Lappia*, *Lapland* and *Scricfinnia*, 2 *Bodia*, 3 *Finland*, 4 *Gothland*, 5 *Suecia* or *Sweden*.

Muscovia, this Kingdom standeth part in *Europe*, and part in *Asia*, called also *Russia Alba* or *Sarmatia*: it containeth these 1 *Novagordia*, 2 *Pliscovia*, 3 *Valadomire*, 4 *Rhezan*, 5 *Permia*, 6 *Severia*, 7 *Gandera*, 8 *Petzora*, 9 *Moscovie*: & ten lesser provinces, which are these. 1 *Smolensko*, 2 *Roscovie*, 3 *Rossowia*, 4 *Corelia*, 5 *Bieleiziozo*, 6 the Kingdom of *Cajan* and *Cytraban*, 7 *Tuver*, 8 *Masaiskie*, 9 *Wologda*, 10 *Jugra*.

Poland, the chief Provinces in it are. 1 *Livonia*, 2 *Lituania*, 3 *Volinia*, 4 *Samgitia*, 5 *Podolia*, 6 *Russia Nigra*, 7 *Mazovia* 8 *Prussia*, 9 *Podlassia*, 10 *Ozwitz*, 11 *Polland*.

Hungary the great, (in which is the *Batchmege* Desert called *Campus Cumanorum*) is divided first into the uper *Hungary*, which containeth: 1 *Jazygia*, 2 *Lumbardy*, in which is a part of *Noricum* and *Austria*.

Secondly, the lower *Hongary*, which containeth. 1 *Pannonia* the higher, wherein are these Provinces. 1 *Valeria* 2 *Stiria* or *Stiermark*.

Secondly, *Pannonia* the lower, in which is 1 *Slavia*, or *Sclavonia*, which containes these Provinces or Regions, *Illiris*, *Dalmatia*, *Croatia*, or *Liburnia*, 2 *Bubalia*, 3 *Mantina*, 4 *Dacia*, which hath in it these, *Transilvania*, *Moldavia*, *Walachia*, *Servia*, *Rascia*, *Bulgaria*, *Bosnia*.

Greece, it is Divided into these Regions. 1 *Peloponnesus*, 2 *Achaia*, 3 *Epirus*, 4 *Albania*, 5 *Macedonia* & *Thessalia*, 6 *Migdonia*, 7 *Thracia*.

Peloponnesus, being divided into these Provinces. 1 *Elis*, 2 *Messenia*, 3 *Arcadia*, 4 *Laconia*, 5 *Argolis* & *Archaia*.

Achaia, is divided into: 1 *Attica*, 2 *Megaris*, 3 *Bœotia*, 4 *Phocis*, 5 *Ætolia*, 6 *Doris*, 7 *Locris*.

The Islands dispersed in the Greek Seas are. 1 *Palus Maeotis*, 2 *Pontius Euxinus*, 3 *Tenedos* in the River *Helespont*.

The Islands in the *Ægean* Sea are. 1 *Samothracia*, 2 *Lemnos*, 3 *Lessos*, 4 *Chios*, 5 *Euboea*, 6 *Scyros*, 7 *Salamis*, 8 *Sporades*, 9 *Cyclades* or Iles, of the *Arches*, being 53 all in a Circle.

The Islands in the *Cretan* Sea are. 1 *Creta*, 270 miles long, 50 broad, 2 *Claudi*, 3 *Dio*, 4 *Ægilia*.

The Islands in the *Ionian* Sea are. 1 *Cythera*, 2 *Strophades*, 3 *Zacynthus*, 4 *Ehinades* 5 *Cephalenia*, 6 *Corcyra*, 7 *Ithaca*, 8 *Leucadia*.

The Islands in the *Adriatique* Sea are. 1 *Absirtides*, 2 *Cherso*, 3 *Weggea* 4 *Grissa* or *Paga* 5 *Lesina*, 6 *Curzola*, 7 *Zara* 8 *Brazzia*, 9 *Lissa*, 10 *Arbe*.

The Islands in the *Mediterranean* Sea are. *Sicilia* a large Ile divided into three Provinces. 1 *Vallis de Nota*, *Mazarra* and *Mona*, 2 *Malta*, 3 *Corsica*, 4 *Sardinia* 5 the *Baleares* being 4 greater Isles, as, *Majorca*, *Minorca*, *Ebuisa*, and *Olbiusa*. And the lesser are these; 1 *Vulcanian* or *Æolian* Islands, 11 in number, the Chief are the *Liparean* Isles. 2 the Isles of *Naples* 18 in number, the Chief are, *Ischia*, *Caprea* and *Ænaria*. 3 the *Ligurian* Isles, the Chief are, *Elba* or *Ilva*, *Gallinaria* and *Giglio* And 6 *Cades* or *Cales*.

The Isles in the Ocean or *Brittish* Seas are these. First great *Brittaine*, which is divided into three Kinddoms: *England*, *Scotland*, and *Wales*.

England Anciently contained seven Kingdoms. 1 *Kent*, 2 *South-Saxons*, 3 *West-Saxons* 4 *East-Saxons*, 5 *Northumberland* 6 *Mercia*, 7 *East-Angles*. This *Heptarchy*, being united into one Monarchy it was divided into 39 Provinces or Counties, as. 1 *Barkshire*, 2 *Buckingham* 3 *Cambride*, 4 *Cheshire*, 5 *Cornwall*, 6 *Cumberland*, 7 *Darby*, 8 *Devon*, 9 *Dorcester*, 10 *Durham*, 11 *Essex*, 12 *Glocester*, 13 *Hant* or *Hamshire*, 14 *Hereford*, 15 *Hertford*, 16 *Huntington*, 17 *Kent*, 18 *Lancashire*, 19 *Leicester*, 20 *Lincoln*, 21 *Middlesex*, 22 *Monmouth*, 23 *Northampton*, 24 *Norfolke*, 25 *Northumberland*, 26 *Nottingham*, 27 *Oxford*, 28 *Rutland*, 29, *Salope* or *Shropshire*, 30 *Somerset*, 31 *Stafford* 32 *Suffolke*, 33 *Surrey*, 34 *Sussex*, 35 *Warricke*, 36 *Westmorland*, 37 *Wiltshire*, 38 *Worcester* 39 *Yorkshire*.

Scotland contained anciently three Kingdoms, as. 1 the *Scots*, 2 *Picts*, 3 the *Isles*. But united under one Sovereign, it is divided into two parts by the great River *Tay*. *Viz.* The South which containes these Provinces or Shires. 1 *Teifidale* 2 *Merch*, 3 *Lauder*, 4 *Liddesdale*, 5 *Eskedale*, 6 *Annandale*, 7 *Niddesdale*, 8 *Galloway*, 9 *Carrick*, 10 *Kyle*, 11 *Cuningham*, 12 *Arran*, 13 *Cluydesdale*, 14 *Lennox*, 15 *Stirling*, 16 *Fife*, 17 *Strathern*, 18 *Menteiht*, 19 *Argyle*, 20 *Camire* 21 *Lorne*. The North is divided into these Provinces, as. 1 *Loquabrea*, 2 *Braidalbin* 3 *Perth* 4 *Atholl*, 5 *Angusse* 6 *Mern* 7 *Marr*, 8 *Buquhan*, 9 *Murray*, 10 *Rosse*, 11 *Sutherland*, 12 *Cathanes*, 13 *Strathnavern*.

Wales

Wales, it contained anciently, three Principalities. *Viz. North-Wales*, 2 *Powis*, 3 *South-wales*. But being united to the *English* Monarchy, it was divided into 13 Counties, as. 1 *Flynt*, 2 *Denbigh*, 3 *Carnarvon* or *Shirevon*, 4 *Mongomery*, 5 *Nerioneth* in the Norh of *Wales* with the Isle of *Anglesey*, which makes a sixt. 7 *Brecknock*, 8 *Caermarden*, 9 *Cardigan*, 10 *Glamorgan*, 11 *Pembrock*, 13 *Radnor*, in *South-Wales*.

2. *Ireland*, which is divided into 4 Proyinces, as First *Munster*, which contains these counties: 1 *Limerick*, 2 *Kery*, 3 *Corke* 4 *Waterford*, 5 *Desmond*, 6 *Holy-Cross* in *Tiperary* Secondly *Leinster*, which contains 1 *East-meath*, 2 *West-meath*, 3 *Kilkeny*, 4 *Caterlough*, 5 *Queens* county 6 *Kings* county, 7 *Kildare*, 8 *Weisford*, 9 *Dublin*. Third *Connagh* which contains in it these counties, 1 *Clare* or *Townmond* 2 *Galloway*, 3 *Maio*, 4 *Slego* 5 *Leitrim* 6 *Roscommon*. Fourth, *Ulster* which contains these counties, as 1 *Dunghal* or *Tyr-connell* 2 *Upper Tyrone* 3 *nether Tyrone*, 4 *Fermanagh* 5 *Cavan* 6 *Monaghan*, 7 *Colrane*, 8 *Antrim* 9 *Downe* 10 *Armagh* 11 *Lough*.

The lesser Islands are. 1 The *Orcades* or Isles of *Orkney* in number 32 the chief is *Pomonia*, 2 the *Hebrides* in the west of *Scotland* 44. in number, the chief are, *Ila*, *Jona* *Mula*, 3 the *Sorlinges* or *Sylly* Islands in number 145. Of which ten are only of any esteem as *Armath*, *Agnes*, *Sampson*, *Sylly*, *Brefar*, *Rusco*, St. *Hellens*, St. *Martyns*, *Arthur*, St. *Marys*. 4 the *Sporades*, which are the Isles of *Man*, *Anglesey*, *Jarsey*, *Gernsey*, *Weight*.

The lesser Isles then the foresaid, are *Preston*, *Helbrie*, *Dennie*, *Londay*, *Chaldey*, *Thanett*, *Cheppie*, *Cocket*, *Holy-farne*, and the *Calfe* of *Man*.

The Islands in the Northern or *Deucalean* Seas are: 1 *Thule*, or *Shetland*, 2 *Greenland*, 3 *Island*, 4 *Freezland*, 5 *Nova Zemla*.

Asia.

Secondly *Asia*, which is divided into Continents and Islands. The Continent is again subdivided into severall Empires, Kingdoms and Provinces, as followeth.

Anatolia, which hath these Regions in it. 1 *Cilicia* 2 *Pamphilia*, 3 *Lycia* 4 *Caria* 5 *Jonia*, 6 *Lidia*, 7 *Æolis*, and *Mysia*, 8 *Phrygia minor*, 9 *Phrigia major*, 10 *Bithinia*, 11 *Pontus*, 12 *Paphlagonia* 13 *Gallatia*, 14 *Capadocia* 15 *Lycaonia*, 16 *Pisidia*, 17 *Armenia minor*.

Syria, which hath these Regions in it. 1 *Phœnicia*, 2 *Cœlo-Syria*, 3 *Syro-Phœnicia*.

Palestine or *Juda*, and the Land of *Israel*, in which there is these Regions. 1 *Gallilea* the higher and the lower, 2 *Samaria*, 3 *Idumea*, 4 *Judea*.

Armenia, which is divided into these Provinces. 1 *Colchis*, 2 *Georgia*, 3 *Turcomania*.

Arabia, which hath in it. 1 *Arabia Deserta*, 2 *Arabia Petrosa*, 3 *Arabia Fellix*.

Assyria, *Mesopotamia*, *Chaldea*.

Media and *Persia*, in this Empire are these Provinces 1 *Persis*, 2 *Susiana*, 3 *Carmania*, 4 *Gedrosia*, 5 *Drangiana*, 6 *Aria*, 7 *Arachosia*, 8 *Parapomisus*, 9 *Saca*, 10 *Hircania*, 11 *Ormus*

Parthia.

Tartaria, in which are these several Provinces. 1 *Tartaria-precopensis*, 2 *Tartaria Asiatica*, 3 *Tartaria Antiqua*, 4 *Zagathai* or *Scythia*. Which containes, 1 *Mahgiana*, 2 *Sogdiana*, 3 *Bacaria*, 4 *Turchestan* and *Zagataie*, 5 *Cathaie*.

India, This is the biggest countrey under one name of all the World, except *Tartaria*, and *China*: this country is divided into two Principal parts, *India* within *Gangem*, and *India* without *Gangem*. *India* inter *Gangem*, called also *Industan* is divided into 47 Provinces or Kingdoms. As 1 *Narsinga*, 2 *Malavar*, 3 *Balassia*, 4 *Cambaia*, 5 *Mandao*, 6 *Bengala*, 7 *Oristan* or *Orissa*, 9 *Canara* 10 *Dellie* &c.

India, extra *Gangem* or *India magnus*, or *India* the great which is divided into twelve Potentates, the most remarkable are. *Macin*, 2 *Arrachan*, 3 *Cambaia*, 4 *Cautin-China*, 5 *Barma*: But the most powerfull are, 6 *Siam*, 7 *Pegue*.

China, is well nigh equal to all *Europe*, for it is said to be 3000 Leagues in compass, and 1800 Leagues in length: it is divided into 15 Provinces, in which there is no less then 70 Kingdoms.

1 *Canton*, which hath in it 37 Cities, & 190 Townes
2 *Fegvien*, 33 Cities, and 99 Townes.
3 *Olam*, 90 Cities, and 130 Townes.
4 *Sisnam*, hath 44 Cities, and 150 Townes.
5 *Tolenchia*, 51 Citties, and 135 Towns.
6 *Cansaie*, 24 Cities, and 122 Townes.
7 *Minchien* 25 Cities, and 29 Townes.
8 *Ochian* 19 Cities, and 74 Townes.
9 *Honnan* 20 Cities, and 102 Townes.
10 *Pagnia* hath 47 Cities, and 150 Townes.
11 *Xaiton* 47 Cities, and 78 Townes
12 *Quinchen* 45 Cities, and 113 Townes.
13 *Chegvian* hath 39 Cityes, and 95 Townes.
14 *Susnam* 41 Cityes, and 105 Townes.
15 *Quinsay* 38 Cityes, and 114 Townes.

The Islands dispersed in the *Mediterranean* Sea, as part of *Asia* are: 1 *Rhodes* 120 miles in Circuite, 2 *Carpathos* or *Scarpanto*, 70 miles in Circuite, 3 *Cyprus* 200 miles long & 65 broad, a Kingdom divided into 11 Provinces.

The Islands in the *Orientall* Ocean are chiefly these. 1 *Japan* 600 miles long, in which are 66 Kingdoms, the cheifest of which is the Kingdom of *Tenz*. 2 *Zeilan* 250 miles long, 140 broad in which is 6 Kings 3 *Mollucca* or *Molluccoes*, being in number 5 Isles: the cheif are *Tidore*, *Gilolo*, and *Terenate*, 4 *Banda*, or *Banton*, 5 *Java* the greater being 3000 miles in compass, and *Java* the lesser 2000 miles in compass, and is divided into 8 Kingdomes, 6 *Borne*, 7 *Summatra* being 700 miles long, and 200 broad in which are 29 Kings, the cheif are the Kings of *Pedor*, and *Acem*, 8 *Phillippine*, or the *Phillip* Islands which are in number 100000: besides these there is a Frie of Islands over against *China*, affirmed to be no less then 7448, and another Skull of them about *India* no fewer in number then 127000. All which layd together would make a continent as large as three of four parts of *Europe*.

Africa

Africa.

Thirdly *Africa* which is a Peninsula, joyned by a small neck of land to *Asia* it is divided into these Kingdoms and Provinces.

Barbarie, it comprehended the countryes Anciently called, *Numidia Antiqua*, *Africa Propria*, *Mauritania Cæsariensis*, and *Mauritania Tingitana:* But at this day it is divided into these Kingdoms. 1 *Tunis*, which is divided into 5 Provinces, *Constantina*, *Bugia*, *Ezzab*, *Tripolis*, and *Tunis:* 2 *Algeir*, it contains these five principall Cities. *Hubeda*, *Tegdenit*, *Guagido*, *Argeirs*, and *Telejine*, or *Tremisen*. 3 *Fesse*, which is divided into 7 Provinces, as *Fesse*, *Ham Lisnan*, *Septa* or *Senta*, *Tanger*, *Mebenes*, *Alcazer Gwer* and *Arguer*. 4 *Morocco*, which is divided into 6 Provinces, as *Morocco*, *Tangovista*, *Fessedet Taradent*, *Massa*, and *Alarach*.

Numidia, is divided into these Provinces. *Staphilet*, *Dausen*, *Dara*, *Lapsa*, and *Teffet*.

Lybia, is divided into these Provinces. *Huaden*, *Guargata*, and *Toherraum*.

Terra Nigritarum, or the land of *Negro's* or *Blackmores*. This is divided into 25 Provinces. 1 *Gualata*, 2 *Guina*, 3 *Tombutum*, 4 *Melli*, 5 *Cako*, 6 *Gialofi*, 7 *Benin*, 8 *Nubia*, 9 *Bornum*, 10 *Goaga*, 11 *Ganaga*, &c.

Æthiopia Superior, it comprehendeth the regions called *Æthiopia* before *Egypt*, *Trogloditica* & *Cinnamomifera*, and at this time there is in it 70 Tributary Kingdoms the chief whereof are these. 1 *Bernagassum*, 2 *Tigremaon*, 3 *Angote*, 4 *Amara*, 5 *Guagere* &c.

Æthiopia Inferior, it is divided into, First *Aian:* in which there are two potent Kingdoms, *Abex* and *Adell*, Secondly, *Zanzibar*, in which there are 15 Kingdoms or Provinces as: *Carova*, *Calen*, *Anzuru*, *Monculo*, *Badin*, *Melinda*, *Momboza*, *Quilao*, *Mosambique*, *Mombara Mombizo*, *Macaos*, *Embroe*, *Mordanugi*, *Safila*. Thirdly *Monomotapa*, it hath these chief Provinces in it: *Montana*, *Tocoa*, *Melchucha*, *Quinibebe*, *Berfaca* & *Barvagal:* Fourth *Cafraria* Fist *Manicongo*, in which are these Provinces *Congo*, *Sango*, *Bambu*, *Sandi*, *Bango*, *Batta*, *Pempa*, *Abundi Matama*, *Qu'sama*, *Angola*, *Cacongo*, *Congeries*, *Amolaze*, *Langelungi*, *Anziqui*, *Cucchi*, and *Laangi*.

Egypt, in it there are near 2000 Cityes, the principall 1 *Alexandria*, 2 *Pelusium* or *Damiata*, 3 *Bubastis*, 4 *Heliopolis* or *Betsamie*, 5 *Siene* 6 *Thebes* 7 *Nicopolis* 8 *Campus* 9 *Arsinoe* 10 *Niloscopium*, 11 *Matared*, 12 *Coptus* 13 *Memphis*, 14 *Rosetta* 15 *Cairo* 16 *Gleba*, *Rubra* &c.

Cyrene, in which are these Cityes. 1 *Fessan* 2 *Barca*, 3 *Cyrene*.

Islands in the *Ethiopick Sea* are, 1 *Magadascar* 1200 Miles long, 2 *Zocotara*.

Islands in the *Atlantick Sea* are. 1 *St. Thomas*, 2 the *Princes Island*, 3 the *Gorgades:* These *Islands* are 9 in number. 4 the *Canaries* or *Fortunate Islands*, they are Seven in number, which are *Palma*, *Tenariffe*, *Gomera*, *Hierro*, *Lansarotte*, and *Fuerte*, *Ventura*. 5. The *Azores*, nine in number *viz.* *St. Mary*, *St. Michael*, *Gratiosa*, *St. George*, *Pico*, *Faiall*, *Flores*, *Corvo* and *Tercera*. 6 the *Hesperides* which are two *Islands:* 7 *Pharos* a little *Island* over against *Alexandria*.

America.

Fourth, *America* or the new World. It is divided into two parts: *Mexicana* and *Pervania*, or North *America* and South *America*.

Mexicana containeth these distinct Provinces. First *Mexico* or *Nova Hispania*, which is divided into four parts. 1 *Gallicia nova*, 2 *Mechuacan*, 3 *Guastacan*, 4 *Tremistitan*. 2 *Quivira*, which hath two Provinces, *Cibola* and *Nova Albion*. 3 *Nicaragua*, in which are the Cities new *Granado* and *Leo*. 4 *Jucutan*, in which are three Provinces, *Jucutan*, *Guatimala* and *Acasamill*. 5 *Florida* whose cheif Cities are, *Arx Carolina*, *St. Helen*, *St Mathews*, 6 *Virginia*, on the North part, whereof is new *England*, 7 *Norumbega*, 8 *Nova Francia*, 9 *Terra Corterialis* 10 *Estotiland*.

Pervana, in which are these Provinces, 1 *Castella del Oro*, 2 *Nova Andaluzia*, 3 *Nova Granata*, 4 *Cartagena* is the South of *America*, and containeth: 1 *Castella Aurea*, 2 *Guiana*, 3 *Peru*, 4 *Brasile*, *Chile*.

The Islands of *America* in the *Vergivian* Sea or North Sea: are 1 *Margarita*, 2 *Cubagna*, 3 *Trinidado*, 4 the *Bacalaos*, 5 *Boriquen*, 6 *Jamaica*, 7 *Cuba*, 8 *Bermudas*, 9 *Hispaniola*.

Islands in the *Pacifique* Sea, or *Mare del zur:* are 1 *Jusule Solomon's*, which are many in number, of which these three are cheif, *Gaudalcanall*, *St. Thomas*, *St. Isabella* 2 *Jusuæ Latronum*, or *Ladrones*. 3 *Jamaica*, 4 *Hispaniola*, 5 *Cuba*, 6 *Camercana* Islands, which are severall, as *St. Martyn*, *Barbados*, *Martinino*, *Lucia*, *Vicente*

Magelana or the *Terra incognita*, which is that part of the World lying near the South Pole, which is yet unknown to us whether Inhabited or not.

Of the Divisions of Kingdoms into lesser Parts.

From this great Division of the Globe of the Earth into Empires and Kingdoms, we may gather that there is a Sub-division of those greater Countryes into less places, each of which hath its several denomination according to its Continent. A Kingdom then may be said to be divided into these severall parts

1 Provinces, Principalities, Archdukedoms, Dukedoms Earldoms and Countries. These are places governed by great persons of such and such qualities under the Soveraign or Supream of the Kingdom.

2 Counties, Shires and Ridings, Barony's.

3 Hundreds and Wapentakes, Knights fees.

4. Lordships, Towns, Maners.

7. Halls, Mansion houses, Castles, Forts, Farms, Cottages, Coats, Sheapards Shealds, or Hovells.

A Second division of Empires or Kingdoms into lesser places, are such as these, whereof some are not inclosed but ly wast, or open and unoccupied, as

1 Wilder-

1. Wildernesses, Forrests, Chases, Champion ground, Plains, Woods, Town Fields.
2. Commons, Wasts, Heaths, Moors, Mosses, Turburyes, Greens, Downs.

Others are inclosed and occupied, as

1. Parks, Warrens, Conyborroughs.
2. Fields, Medows, Pastures, Arrable Fields, Tillage Lands, Feeding grounds, Closes, Closures.
3. Orchards, Gardens, Courts, Backsides.
4. Woods, Groves, Coppies, Thickets or underwoods, Springs.

And these again, are Sub-divided into smaller parcells, according to that quantity of ground it containeth, both for, length and breadth. as

1. Virges, Hydes, Bovates or Oxgranges, Granges.
2. Poles, Acres, Selions, Rods or Roodes, Loons, Lands
3. Ridges, Butts, Flats, Stitches or small Butts, Pikes.

Others are named from length only, as

1. Miles, Furlongs, Pearches, Poles, Rodes.
2. Yards, Passes or Paces, Elles, Cubits.
3. Feet, Span, Palme, Inches, Corne Length.

Now as there is a Term for every Temporall division and place of note in Kingdoms; so in Spiritual affaires, each Church hath its bounds, which is again divided into lesser Jurisdictions, and these again sub-divided into the meanest of all, as

1 The Papall or see of *Rome*, (which claimeth the Universall Bishoprick) and hath the command of *Europe*, except some few Kingdoms, and Provinces, which have Jurisdictions of their own, and doth not acknowledge that place for their Head.
2. Patriarkes, of *Constantinople*, *Alexandria*, *Antiochia*, and *Jerusalem*. Which are the Metropolis of all the Churches of *Asia*, and part of *Affrica*.

And these are all of them again divided into lesser dignities, as

1 Cardinallricks, Archbishopricks, Metropolitans.
2. Bishopricks, Diocesses, Denaries, Ruralls.

And in the last place these are again sub-divided into lesser Ministeries, as

1. Prebendaries, Parishes, Vicarages, Chapellryes, Tythings, and Leets. So much as to the Division of the Earth: now to our Blazon again.

XXXI. He beareth Azure, **an Island** Argent. An Isle, an Island or Iland, is when the Water Invironeth or washeth a piece of Land round on all sides. This is born by the name of *Island*.

A. 15 Islands diversly coloured: which Coate belongs to the King of *Sain*, as Lord of certain Island to that number.

XXXII. He beareth **Aire** and **Water**, a **Rock traversed** in **Fesse** with a **Peninsula** proper. Born by *Peninsule*.

An **Island**, is when the Water runeth round the Land.
A **Peninsula**, or an almost Island, is when it is washed on all sides, & yet hath a neck of Land by which it is joyned to the Continent.

A **Cape**, is a corner or an uneven part of Land, shuting into the Water. *See numb.* 21 having the *Sea* on two sides of it.

A **Promontory**, or a neck of Land. The same to Cape an **Isthmus**, is the neck of Land, which joyneth the **Peninsula** and the Continent together.

A **Continent**, is any great piece of Land that hath not Water about it; *Europe*, *Asia*, *Africa*, and *America*, is called the great Continent of the World. Other great Islands may be termed the Continent, to a Peninsula; though but an Island it self.

Other terms used by Seafaring Men for an Harbour or Landing place

A **Rock.**
A **Leege** of Rocks.
A **Shoule.**
Fast ground, or good Anchoring.
Osie, or foul ground, such as an Anchor cannot stick or hold in it.
Sandy ground.
Clay ground.
An **Head** Land.
A **Furland.**
A **Reach.**
A **Land** Mark.

An **Haven** or **Harbour**, a place where Ships arive with their fraight.

The **Sea Shore**, or Bank, Coast, or side of the Sea: Land lying close by the Sea.

A **Damme**, or **Bank**, or **Causey**, made to keep in the Sea from overflowing the Land called also A Hear, Bulwork, Rampire, or Countermure.

The **Borders**, ends or Confines of a Countrey.

XXXIII. He beareth Argent, a **Craggy Rock in Base, extending** it self throughout the Escochion, with a **Concave** in it Sable. Or with a Concavity, or an Hallow passage through it. Born by the name of *Cragge*.

XXXIV. He beareth Argent, a **Rock, or Mountain**, Gules. Born by the name of *Hill*.

A the like G and a Cheif of the same. Born by the name of *Muchill*.

Several sorts of Hills.

Mountains, are vast great and high Hills.
Precipes, Hills with a steep down descent.
Craggy hills, Hills hard and difficult to go up them.
Hills for Pasture, as Sheep and Goats, and yong Catle.
Hills of an easie ascent, not laborious to go up.
Ridges, or tops of Hills.
Edges, the out sides of craggy steep Hills.
Mould hills, little Hills in Fields, cast up by Mouls.
Hillocks, very little hills, or rising above the plaine Earth.
Valleys, plain ground at the foot or bottom of Hills, termed Vales and Dales.
Clifts, or craggy hills of Stone.
Caves, holes in Rocks and Hills.
Convales, or Valleys enclosed all about with hills.

Straits

Straits, or narrow passages between hills.

Combs or **Quaries**, deep places in hills which Stone hath been taken out.

XXXV. He beareth Argent, a **Mountain in Base** Vert, **Inflamed on the top**. This for shortness may be Blazoned the **Mountain Aetny**: which is said to be the mouth of Hell, being continually with fire & Smoak on the top of it. This is born by the name of *Maclloyd* of *Scotland*.

XXXVI. He beareth Argent, on a **Mount issueing out of Base**, Vert; a **Lamb in Sacrifice** proper. By the name of *Holy Lamb*.

A a Hill in Base with the fire upon it issueing into three flames proper. Is Born by the name of *Flammen*.

XXXVII. He beareth Argent, in a **Rock**, or **Mountain** proper, a **Cave** Sable. Or else thus, issueing out of Base, a hill proper: with a Cave in it, Sable. Born by the name of *Cave*.

XXXVIII. He beareth Gules, a **Lion Passant issueing out** of a **Cave** Argent, the **Hill in Base fired** to the **sinister side**, Vert. By *Lousden* alias *Lions-den*.

XXXIX. He beareth Argent, a **Rock** Gules, **piled** at the **foundation** and **Enwraped** with **Briers**, **Briers**, or **Thornes**, **Tenne**. This we must suppose to be a kind of Sandy Hill, or Mountain; which would in time moulder & fall away, if it were not defended, & supported, or fortified with stakes, and windings to keep it together See *lib.* 1 *chap.* 9 *numb.* 20. and *lib.* 2. *chap:* 18 *numb.* 62 63 64 65 66 This is Born by the name of *Strongill*

Per pale G and A in each the like Counterch: Born by the name of *Heyperger*:

XL. He beareth Argent, a **Hill** Vert. By the name of *Hillok*. It there be but one in the Coat, it is termed an Hill, if more, they are called Moul-hills: which are Hills or Hillocks of earth cast up by Moulwarps.

A Cheveron between 3 V. Is Born for *Tildesley* and *Shakerley*.

A 3 Moul hills V. Born by *Tildesley* of *Tildesley*.

A 3 such V. each charged with an Annulett, O By *Tildesley* of *Wardley*

In the Base of this quarter is placed a craggy Rock, which is diversly Born by famileys in foraign Provinces: some have it thus in the Base, others from the whole Base ascending up the Dexter or Sinister side of the Sheild, with some kind of wild beast climeing up the same. as for example.

A such a Craggy Rock B with a Spur rowel of 7 points upon the top of it G the like is the Crest. And is Born by *Van Sternfels*.

A the like V with a Lion Rampant regardant B crowned is the Coat of the Town of *Velburg* in *Germany*.

G on the lower side of a Bend Sinister O such a craggy Rock extending it self to the ends thereof V. Is Born by *Sibenburger*.

O a craggy Rock in Base ascending the Dexter side Bendwise B a wild Goat climant or ascendant G Born by *Gamlsen*.

G the like A with a Ram A Born by *Rammelstein*.

G the like to the Sinister side O the Ram A. Born by *Ramsperg*.

Minerals.

From these foresaid Rocks, Mountains, Hills and Mountiny places, proceeds Minerals, and Mines for all sorts of Mettals, and Moulds, of which in order.

There are three kinds of Minerals.

First such that notwithstanding their hard growing together, yet will dissolve in Water, as Salt, Allome, Vitrioll or Copperas, Nitre, Salt peter, Bitumen, Armonick, Borax, Brimston &c. whose foundation is generally called aroch.

Second, such kind of Minerals as will flame, or be enflamed by Fire; as Coale, Amber, or Amber-grease, Canole, Chrysorolla or Boras, Petroll, and other Hill-slimes of Bituminous qualities, not of one sort, but many: with several fat Earths both Concrete and Liquid.

Third sort of Minerals digged out of the Bowells of the Earth, are such as Wilte beaten to dust, and turned into Paints or Colours, as Arsenick or Mercury, Open *alias* Auripigmentum, Ortment, Sandarake, Synope, Minium or Vermilion, Ruddy, Stibium or Antimony, Azure, Calx, Bole or Bolarmanacke, Sulphur &c.

Mettals.

Out of the Earth proceeds Mines of Mettals which are by the fire both purged from their dross, refined and made, as

Lead, out of whose Oare, is produced Red-Lead, Cerusse or whit-lead, Litharg or Lithargie:

Tin, a more pure and harder, mettle by it is made **Pewter** with a mixture of Lead.

Iron, it is made of a Stone called Iron Stone by melting: it being refined maketh **Steel**, the hardest of all metatls.

Copper, of its rust comes Verdigrass, but being mixt with Lead Oare, makes **Lattin** and **Brass**, two Brittle mettals, that will not be hammered.

Silver, a mettle Royal, white and clear, having a shril Sound it is the next to Gold for purity and riches.

Gold, the purest of mettals, therefore the most weighty and massy, being mettled an hundred times looseth nothing of its Substance, nor receiveth no rust. There is a certain Veine in the Earth, whether I may call it a Stone or Golden Earth, it is easily digged up and broken, haveing the very look and face of Gold: Some call it the Arsnick Stone, but the Arsenicum or Arsnick is double, one of an Ashie colour, and the other of colour like Gold

Talck, is of the nature of mattals which will not endure to be either melted or hammered, because of its untamable hardness. The Stone is like glass, having as it were about it, Hills and edges naturally set in it. **Quicksilver** a mettal that never groweth hard, for it is always moist, and yet never wetteth or moisteneth any thing.

Electrum, or **Amber**, a mixt mettle of Gold and Silver.

The foundation of these mettals is Oare, save that of Iron which is called a Stone.

Mettals,

Mettals, Sealed or coyned is termed money or goeth for money, that which is wrought or made otherwise, are Vessels or Plate, that which is unwrought is called a Lump, or Bar of raw mettle, of some a Wedge or Bullne.

Moulds.

From the Earth are gathered many sorts of Moulds, or distinct sorts of Earth, which are serviceable for several purposes; as being of verious conditions, all which being layd in the Sun becomes hard, and put into Water, becomes clay, dirt and mire: if burnt in the Fire, it both looseth its nature and colour, and becomes either Stone or Glass. Of earth are several sorts, as

Black earth which is the generall Soil of the Land, Slime, Mould for Gardens.

White earth, which are of two sorts, one more clammy, as Clay used by Potters.

Others more Brittle, as Chalk, Argill, Plaster of Paris, Fullers earth, Rotton stone.

Red Earth, as Marle, Clay, Occar, Spanish red, Terra rubrum, Raddle, Bole, Brick.

Yellow earth, as Durry, Yellow Occar, Sand.

Brown earth, as Umber, Cullin earth, Occar de lis.

Green earth, as terra Vert.

Earth in it self is one of the four Elements, and is a thick and grosse substance, Scraped and compact together out of all the other purer Elements, and is by nature cold and dry.

Atome, or **Mote**, a thing of earth so little, that it cannot be divided.

XLI. He beareth Or, a **Flint Stone** proper. Born by the name of *Flint*.

V 3 such Argent, is quartered by the Earl of *Cumberland*.

A Steell and a Flynt Stone, was the emblem of *John Digionius* Earl of *Flanders*.

XLII. He beareth Argent, an **Island set about with many small Isles** proper. But both *Gwilliams fol.* 136 and others have Drawn the Flynt Stone after this form, so that it may as well be Blazoned, a Stone with many little ones about it. This is Born by by the name of *Stonley*.

XLIII. He beareth Argent, a **Rough stone**, Gules. This is Born by the name of *Mason-Work*.

XLIV. He beareth Or, an **Escarbuncle** Sable: this is the **Escarbuncle** made after the old fashion, being always voided of the Field. *See chap.* 18 *numb.* 37 38 39 This is Born by the name of *Garley*. The Carbuncle hath sparks like Fire, so that by reason of its refulgency it is described with eight Scepters or Rayes.

XLV. He beareth Gules, an **Escarbuncle** Or, this is a kind of precious Stone, &those things that proceed from the Stone, are accounted to be its Rayes or shining luster: But *Gwillims* calls them, Staves or Rayes **Pomette** and Florette. Others **Staves nowed and flowred.**

☞ In which it is to be noted, that if the Staves, or Rayes, exceed the number of six, then they are to be mentioned whether eight ten or twelve; for they are, and ever must be of an even number. The *French* Heraulds term them, Escarbuncles **flourished** or set with Flowers and Pometies. Or thus an Escarbuncle Argent Rayes flowery *et* Pomettie, Or. A on a Bend G 3 such O By the name of *Thornton*.

XLVI. He beareth Or, a **Diamond** proper. This may be more properly termed, a table Diamond, or a table Stone. Three such is Born by the name of *Dimmoker*.

B 3 Topaz Stones in Bend. Is Born by *Payer Van Flach*.

Gemmes are ever Born Losenge like, or 6 or 8 cornered and pointed.

XLVII. He beareth Gules, a **Gemme** or **precious Stone**, Argent. These kind of Stones are generally termed according to there colour, of which kind of Stones there are these several sorts.

Rich Stones or Jewels.

The **Carbuncle**, which is of a Flame colour, like to a fierie coale: of these there are twelve kinds.

The **Diamond** or **Adamant**, are of a blackish colour, the first and most sparkling of all Stones. It will not suffer the Load-Stone to draw Iron to it, being placed near it

The **Jacinth**, is of a waterish blewish colour, or Violet.

The **Emrauld** is green.

The **Jasper** is somwhat green, yet specked with bloody spots, there are sixteen several kinds of them.

The **Azure**, is of a blew colour.

The **Saphire**, is a rich blew, or Sky colour, it is one of the Noblest and Royall sort of Gems, and most meet to be worn of Kings.

The **Topaz** is of a Golden colour: it was first found in *Arabia*: *Pliny* saith it is of a grassie colour.

The **Onyx**, a bright shining Stone having colours all about it, intermingled like a mans Naile. The Onyx of *India* is of a Fire colour, dyed with white veins or zones: that of *Arabia* is black, yet dyed with white lines or zones.

The **Ruby** is red and sparkling: supposed to be found in a Crabs head, some are yellowish.

The **Sardonyx** or **Sarda**, so called because it is red with the Sardus, and white with the Onyx; therefore one Stone from both.

The **Garnet** } are both red, some call them the
The **Corneilan** } Sardy Stone.

The **Agate**, is of a Saffrony or pale yellow colour.

The **Achate**, is variously coloured, being black interlined here and there with white veins: some have stroakes of blew, some with blood.

The **Torqueis**, of the wax colour.

The **Christal**, and **Bristow stone**, or **Pipple**, are bright shineing Stones, which resembles, or is a counterfeit Diamond.

The **Onion**, or **Unions**, or **Pearl**, are little round Stones, white, found generally in the Belly of the horse muscle Fish, and other shell Fish as Sea Snayls, Oysters &c.

The **Toad stone**, is of an Azure, and is found in the head of an old Toad. some give it the name of Nesorpora.

The **Amethist**, is of a Purple or Violet colour, of which there be five sorts.

The

The **Coral** is both white and red, it is a Sea Shrub, growing to the Rocks under Water, and being drawn forth into the Air, becomes hard as a Stone.

The **Gem**, is the generall name, or notion given to all Precious Stones, which are called **Gems** saith *Isodorus*, because they shine, and are as smooth as Gum. And they are called Precious Stones, because they are rare: for all things that are rare, are precious. Of **Gems** some are found in the Veins of the Earth, and are digged up with Mettals: some are cast up to the Land from the bottome of the Sea, whose place of Generation is unknown: other some are bred and found in the bodies and bellys of Fowl, Fish, Birds and Beasts, with other creatures of the Earth.

The **Alabandine**, is a Stone or Gem of the colour of the Herb *Calcedonie*, but clear.

The **Absistos**, is a precious Stone marvellous weighty and black of colour, bestroked with red Veins. This being hot, keep so seven whole days.

The **Amatite**, is that kind of Gem, that touching a man Garment, it makes it able to resist Fire, neither hath it power to burn.

The **Argirite**, is a Gem four square, in colour like Silver, with the appearance of Golden coloured gravel.

The **Asterite**, is a Gem, white coloured, having the light within it self, but looking through it, shews the Suns reflections.

The **Astrion**, is an *Indian* Gem, like to Christal, in whose center there is a shining light, without reflection, much like to the Moon.

The **Calcedon** or **Calchedonie**, is a Stone of a starrie sparkling colour: there are three other kinds of them wherof some are pale, and wan, and of a dull colour. it being well chafed and warmed, will draw a Straw or a Rush to it.

The **Ceraunium**, is a Stone like to the Christal, bespotted with blew: this is an other kind of them Firelike in colour, or resembling a Flame.

The **Chrysopass**, is a Stone of *Æthiopia*, which in the day shineth not, but in the night, it is Flame like, being yellow and wan in the light.

The **Dionise** Stone, is black or brown, all bestrowed with bloody strokes or veins.

The **Aerizula**, is a kind of *Persian* Jasper stone, but of a Skie colour: but that of *Phrigia* is purple coloured.

The **Dracondite**, is a stone taken out of a Dragons head, which is only of a bright Fiery colour, as long as it is come by, the Dragon being alive.

The **Dradocos**, is a kind of stone very pale, yet hath shimmering withal.

The **Echite**, is a stone found in *India* and *Persia* in the shore and Sea-bancks: it is of a violet colour. There are a pair of them Male and Female, and be found most commonly both together in the Eagles Nest, without the which she cannot bring forth her yong.

The **Efestide**, is a stone that being held against the Sun is Fiery coloured.

The **Elutropia**, is a Gem of a green colour or grassie, coloured and bespotted with purple specks and bloody veins. it will cause things a farr off to be presented to your Eyes: being put into a Bason of Water, seems to a mans eye to change, the Sun beams giving them a contrary colour: held between the Sun makes it to appear a bloody Sun, and darkneth the Air in manner of an Eclipse.

The **Ematite**, is a ruddy or somwhat Sanguine stone, it is of some called **stench blood**, for that it stoppeth the vent or course of flowing.

The **Endros**, is a mean and small stone, which continually sweats or drops, yet it doth not for all this lessen or melt away.

The **Gagate**, is of the precious sort of stones, of which there are two kinds, the one russet colour & the other black. The last easie to be fired; and as smoky as Frankinsence.

The **Gelacia**, is a Gem very white, being of the figure and shew of an Hail-stone, and is so excessive cold, that in no Fire it becometh hot.

The **Geratite**, is a kind of black stone: but exceedeth in vertue many others, for if any man carry it close in his mouth, he may tell what every man thinketh of him: as saith the Lapidarie.

The **Aspis** stone, it is a little stone taken out of the Serpent **Aspis**, of a green colour like the Jasper.

The **Iris**, is a kind of a stone, of the colour and as clear as Christal. It is called **Iris** from the likelyhood to the Rain-bow, for the Sun beams pierceing throw it, doth shew the colours of the Rain-bow on the wall next it.

The **Raman** stone, it is in colours very diverse, somtimes black, then white, now shamefac'd and blushing, a none pale and wan.

The **Rabiate**, is a stone clear coloured like to the Christal.

The **Ralpophanus**, is a kind of black stone, yet may be painted with other colours.

The **Ligurius**, is a stone in colour like Tin. It is engendred in the entrails of the wild beast Linx.

The **Lipparia**, is a Gem in *Africa* near to *Egypt*, whose property is to enamour all kind of beasts with its sight, to which they all hastily run when they se it.

The **Mede**, is a precious stone found amongst the *Medes* it is in some places there, seen green, in other black.

The **Melanite**, or Hony stone; it is double coloured, on the one side it is green, on the other yellow.

The **Mirrite**, is a Gem both in tast and colour like to Mirrhe, which being wroong and pressed hard, giveth a pleasant smell like Nardus, or Spikenard.

The **Melochite**, is a green Gem, much like the Smaradge, but more thick and gross: some call it the green **Malue**.

The **Drite**, is a Gem black, and in figure round, there is an other kind that is green having white spots.

The **Pauteron**, is a stone of all colours or most of them: for it is in some part black, others green, others purple, &c.

The **Quiren**, is a stone found in Islands and Fenns, but most commonly in the Lapwings nest: being put under a persons head will make him talk in his sleep.

The **Quandias**, is a stone found in the Vultures head it is but of a durty vile colour, but of great vertue, as saith *Diascorides*.

The stone called **Sol**, is a precious Gem in colour like to the Sun: for it giveth reflections of Sun beams as the Sun doth.

The **Tararippe**, is in colour very fiery and shineth in the night like to a burning gloaring coal.

The **Turches** or **Turky** stone, it is in colour Air like and is clear, some call it **Eranus**, others **Turcois** or **Torqueis**, but they are more yellowish. They are only found in *Turky*.

The

The **Magarite**, of Gems, is the chief of them that be white.

The **Corneole**, is a kind of **Onyx** stone, of a black colour: the other **Cornellis**, is red like to **Coral**,

The **Smaradge**, is of an excellent fresh green, far passing any Leaf.

The **Galact**, is of a white colour, like polisht **Marble.**

The **Berill**, a stone six square, in colour Oyle or the water of the Sea. there is an other kind called the Golden, **Berill** whose green colour interchanged resembleth the colour of Gold.

These are stones for Rings and Jewels, of which those that glitter, or shine are the more costly, but if they have a speck in them, they are held of no great or much value.

Those stones as are clouded, not having a spark but a bright and shineing pollish, are of less price then the other, except them that are rare to be had.

Stones of all Sorts.

There are several sorts of stones besides these; for in stickness stones are no more then earth hardned, and the softest is called Greet or Grit, which being ground small becomes Sand;being more grosser or courser we call gravel

Of these stones, the **Flint**, will take the first place being the hardest of such sort of stones as are common with us: with it we strike fire on a Steel, yet will be broken on a Cushion.

The **Touch** stone, is black, it tricth Mettals.

The **Magnus**, or **Load** stone draweth Iron or Steel to it; and is of an Iron like colour.

The **Jett**, is black, and being rubbed to be hot will draw a Straw to it, as the **Loadstone** doth Iron.

The **Blood** stone, is of variable colours;it **Stancheth** blood.

The **Allablaster**, is white, with it is made Figures and Statues and Monuments, of carved works,being Sawed and easily cut with working tooles: Some is veined with diverse colours.

The **Free** stone is white and worketh like **Allablaster**, but more hard, and durable: it is a kind of greet but finer sanded, and a smoother stone.

The **Slate** stone, is blewish and smooth, of it is made tables, and coverings for houses.

The **Lyme** stone is whitish, being burn in a Kiln maketh Plaster.

The **Mill** stone, is whitish, being nothing but small and round gravel, fixed or hardned together into one entire stone. Of it is made **Grinding** stones to grind or bruse, Corn with.

The **Albeston** stone, is of an Iron colour growing in *Arcadia*; which being once set on fire, can never after be quenched or put out.

The **Ophite**, is a kind of **Marble**, which hath spots on it like a Serpent, of which there are 2 sorts one white and soft, the other black and hard.

The **Caristeum**, is a kind of **Marble** of a green colour: some of this sort are here and there dyed after the manner of golden drops: others of a **Corall** kind, which have certain spots besprinkled on it proportionably.

The **Prasius**, is a stone in manner of a Onyon or Leeke very green: it is found somtime to have bloody drops, and some with drops that be white.

The **Pirrite**, is a kind of stone yellow, like to the flame of fire, and in quality almost all one with the fire: it is soon set on fire and sparkleth.

The **Pionite** stone, it is thought to be a female, for in very short time it conceiveth, and bringeth forth his like.

The **Rhombite**, is a stone after the figure of the Mathematitians **Rhombus**, it is very white; but an other sort there is of them like a narrow rowler, but coloured and dyed within and without.

The **Silonite**, it is a stone in *Persia*, in colour like to *Jasper* or fresh green herb: It encreseth and decreaseth even as the Moon.

The **Marble** stone, of which ther are several colours as white, black, blewish, Ashcolour, some spotted, other veined.

The **Marchasite** stone, or **fire stone**, a blackish stone mixed as it were with Silver Ore, these stones are used in wheele locks for fireing of the Pistals as **Flints** for Ferris in Guns.

The **Antimony** stone is of a Silver colour, and found in Silver Mines.

The **Lazul** or **Azure** stone, of it is made the Smalt and Bize, used by Painters.

The **Grindle** stone, a kind of a whitish Greet, of which there are several sorts some more rough and others very smooth.

The **Porphirie** stone, resembleth **Marble**, but is all spotted and veined with variety of colours: it is the finest and excellent **Marble**: some call it Parius from tee Ile *Para*.

The **Peeble** stone, are stones of various colours, lying amongst gravel by the Sea side, which being cut and pollished have a rich spark in them resembling the **Diamond.**

The **Opal**, stone in Latin *Opalus*, wherein appeareth the Firie brightness of a **Carbuncle**, the shineing purple of the **Amethist**, & the green shew of **Emaral**, all shineing together with an unbelievable mixture.

The **Pardal** stone, a stone all spotted like a **panther** I take this to be fine wrought **Porphire.**

The **Rinoper** or **Ruddle** stone, a soft and red stone found in mines.

The **Sleek** stone, a ball made of glass,which Landresses and Drawers of Cloath use to pollish or sleeken their Linnen with.

The **Pone**, is kind of yellowish colur, being a Hollywood converted into stone, by lying in Water for a cerseason: of this Water I have not heard any where save in some part of *Ireland* and *Italy*. Though *Johnson* in his Herbal *fol.* 1276 signifieth as much, as if such Water were in *England*.

XLVIII. He beareth Argent, in **Base a pavement** (or **paved with Marble**) with a **pyramide** (or an **Egyptian pyramide**) with eight **persons ascending** on the out sides of it, Sable. This is borne by the name of *Jury*. **The pyramides** of Egypt are said to be labours of the *Israelites*, when they were in their Bondage ther: and the **persons ascending** and **descending**, may fitly be compared to the age of Man, who is growing higher and higher till he come to the top or pinecle, and then must descend again, till he come to the earth from whence he had his first being. This may also be termed a **four square Steeple pyramide** lyke.

XLIX. He beareth Airy, the **prospect** of the **Inner part** of a **ruinated Theatre**, or **Church**, proper. This is born by the name *Tyme*. For by it all vast and stately Fabricks, are brought to ruine.

L. He beareth in a Landskip of Earth and Aire, a **Craggy Rock** on the **Dexter side**, with a **Tree pendant growing** out of the side of it, and a **ruinous house of stone**, on the **Sinister side**, all proper. This is born by the Citty of *Litchfeild*, having several Slain or Martyred persons in the Feilds.

LI. He beareth in a Landskip, a **round Tower fired** to the **Dexter side**, **invironed** with a **Water ditch** and a **Castle with thee Towers together**, **compassed** with an **outward Wall**, **port open**, all proper. This is born by the name of *Castlemaine*.

LII. He beareth in a Landskip of Aire **Earth** and **Water** between **two Trees in Fesse** a **Church** and two **Houses** with **Fire issueing** out of the **Rookes** of of them all proper. This may as well be said to be a Town fired for shortness sake. This is the *Soulaiers* Coate of Arms, *viz.* Fire, Sword, Ruine, and Destruction.

LIII. He beareth all over the Escochion, or **Shield**, a **Craggy Rock**, Gules, **double Caved**, (or having one **Cave** within an another, Sable. This may well be termed the **Devils arse of peak**: for they that have ever seen it, will judge this to be such an other kid of Hell hole.

LIV. He beareth Argent, on a **wrought pavment of Marble**, a **broken Columbe**, Gules. This is the Coate Armour of *Collumbel*. This is not only broken (as it were) in the middle, but is cracked through, besides several other flaws in it: so that it may be termed a broken and shattered Columbe, or an half Columbe broken or ragged in the top part, and cracked in diverse places.

Things of most note in these two foregoing Chapter viz. 1 2 *with the places cited where mentioned.*

The *Heavens*, the *number*, *names*, and *distance* one from an other, 1. *S.* 1.
How the name *God* is written in all *Languages*, 1. 7.
The fained *Imperial Gods*, 1. 9. *Demy Gods*, 1. 9.
Names of the Country *Gods* and *Goddesses*, 1. 9.
Particular *Gods*, and their *Offices*, 1. 9.
The fained *Imperial Goddesses*, 1. 9.
The nine *Orders* of the *Holy Angels*, 1. 22.
The *Orders* of the *Devils* or *Fallen Angels*, 1. 22.
The names of the *Kings* and *Princes* of the *Infernal Pitt*, 1. 22.
The several names by which the *Devil* is called, 1. 30.
The *Circles* of the *Cælestial Sphere* named, 1. 33. *S.* 12.
The seven *Planets* described, 1. 38.
The *Northern moveable Starrs* named, 1. *S.* 15.
The names of the *Southern moveable Starrs*, 1. *S.* 16.
The twelve *Signs* of the *Zodiack* described, 1. *S.* 14.
The *Productions* of the *Aire*, 1. 68. *S.* 20.
The description of the four *Winds*, 1. 64.
The names given to the sort of *Winds*, 1. *S.* 19.
The several sorts of *Fire*, 1. 69. *S.* 21. 70.
The *Products* of the *Fiery Element*, 1. 74. *S.* 22.
The reason of the *Change* of the *Moon*, 1. 74. *S.* 23.
The *Demonstration* of the *Sun* and *Moons Eclipse*, 1. 76.
The several ways of the *Conjunction* of the *Planets*, 1. 77.
The terms for *Land* when compassed (or in part) with *Water*, 2. 32.
The terms of *Astronomy* used about the *Globe*, at the end of *Chapter*. 1.
Waters that are *moveable*, 2. *S.* 1.
Terms about Ebbing and flowing of the Sea, ibm.
Several *Standing Waters*, 2. *S.* 1.
Several sorts of *Waters*, 2. *S.* 2.
Of the *World*, its greatness. compass, and parts, 2. 30.
Europia, its *Seas*, *Island*, and *Continent*, 2. 30.
Asia, what *Kingdomes*, *Islands*, *Seas*, contained in it, 2.
Africa, what *Kingdomes* &c. it containes, 2. 30.
America, the *Kingdomes*, *Seas*, and *Islands* in it, 2. 30.
The division of *England* into its several *Shires*, and *Diocesses* and its lesser parts from them *ibm.*
The several sorts of *Minerals*, 2. 40.
Several sorts of *Moulds*, or *Earth*, 2. 40.
The names and colours of all rich *Stones*, *Gems*, and *Jewels*, 2. 47. 44. 45.
Stones of all sorts 2. 47.

The Signification of Cœlestial and Terrestial Bodyes used in Armes..

Sun, signifieth Charity and Splendor, but is the Emblem of Sovereignity, of Royalty, of truth and Unity: and in the **Zodiack** is a token of Honour and Advancement.

Moon, is the Hieroglyphick of Nobility, and signifieth men of publick spirits, for publick good.

Starrs, signifieth men born to publick good, and of examplary Lives amongst the worthy.

Thunderbolt, signifieth a person of an active and stirring Spirit.

Comett, is the Embassador of some extraordinary matter.

Fire, the Embleme of Loyalty, and of working spirits of Zeal, and Counsel.

Angels, messengers of good tyding, Emblems of Embassie.

Clouds, signifieth Troubles and Adverse Fortune; but the **Sun**, out of it shews a Restoration, or giving of Honor after much Peril and Danger.

Cherubins, signifie fullness of knowledge and wisdome.

Water, signifie Instability and unconstant, a man not of sound principles.

Zodiack, is the imitation of a Bend and is esteemed as a Gir-

a Girdle of Honor, or a note of favour, as to the *Romans* who to Honor their confederates gave them Chaines of Gold, and Silver.

Sphere, a Signature of Divine providence; & its constant mobility, shews the perpetual care of the prince.

Water or **Waves**, signifieth Service done thereon by speedy and quick motion.

Ring or **Circle**, the Emblem of Faith, Freedom and Fidelity.

Things on **Fire**, signifieth Envy and Malice, showing that in hurting others they pleasure not themselves.

Precious stones, signifie & are emblems of the graces.

Diamond, is the Emblem of Fortitude, and is of singular vertue against all Charmes, Inchantments, & Witchcrafts.

Saphire, signifieth prudence.

Ruby, denoteth Charity.

Topaze represents Justice.

Emrauld, to it, is attributed the vertue of Hope.

Pearle, by reason of its whiteness, represents Faith.

Chrystal, Chastity and purity of life.

Emethyst, signifieth Temperance and Sobriety.

Terms of Herauldry and Blazon.

A

Artick Star, 1. 35.
Antartick Star, 1. 35.

B

Beames, 1. 39. 42.
Beautified, 1. 40.
Braced, 1. 59. 62.
Bubble, 2. 7.

C

Crucifix, 1. 15.
Celestial Spheare, 1. 33. 34.
Circled, 1. 50. 61.
Complement, 1. 52.
Cressant, 1. 54
Characters 1. 54.
Comett, 1. 65.
Craggy Rock, 2. 33.
Caeve, 2. 53.

D

Debrused, 1. 47.
Decressant, 1. 51.
Detriment, 1. 53.
Demy Circle, 1. 61.
Delineated, 1. 67.
Distilling Drops, 2. 1. 24.

E

Ensigned, 1. 21.
Estoile, 1. 35.
Eclipsed, 1. 41. 53.
Exhalation, 2. 8.

F

Fulgent, 1. 36.
Flected, 1. 48.
Flected reflected, 2. 21.
Fretted, 1. 62.
Fledged, 1. 67.
Flame Flammant, 1. 6.
Firebrand, 1. 71.
Fontal, 2. 19. 23.

G

Glory, 1. 1. 2. 4. 5.
Gurges or Gorges, 2. 3.
Globe, 2. 25. 26. 27. 28. 29. 30.
Genuant, 1. 19.

H

Habited in a long Robe, 1. 16.
Hill, 2. 40.

I

Invironed, 1. 33. 50. and 2. 51
Jessant, 1 47.
Incressant, 1. 50.
In point, 1. 57.
Indorsed 1. 58.
Issueing, 1. 60.
Inflamed, 1 67.
Island, Iland, Ile, 2. 31 32.

K

Kneeling, 1. 19.

L

Landskipe, 2. 20. 50. 51. 52.

M

Mountain, 2. 37. 38.
Mold-hills, 2. 40.

O

Orbe, 2. 25, 26.

P

Points, 1. 36. 37. 38. 57.
Porforated, 1. 37.
Pierced, 1. 37.
Planets, 1. 38.
Plenitude, 1. 52.
Pendant, 2. 9. 10. 17.
Prospect, 2. 49.
Pavement, 2. 48.
Pyramide, 2. 48.

R

Ray or Raies 1. 46. 49
Robe, 1. 11. 16. 21.
Reflecting, 2. 21.
Resplendant, 1. 60. 61.
Roundles or Roundletts, 1. 2. 4. 6. (a) 6.

S

Sepurture, 1. 23:
Splendor, 1. 29.
Surmounted, 1. 55. 48.
Sweepe, 2. 11.
Sea-skip, 2. 18. 19.
Scatebra, 2. 19. 23.
Shafted, 1. 67.
Sea-spout, 2. 8.

T

Terestial Globe, 2. 25. 26. 27 3.

U

Volant, 1. 18.

W

Water pot, 2. 19. 23.

TO

The Right Reverend Fathers in GOD,

The Lords Bishops of St. *ASAPH*, and *BANGOR*.

And the Reverend the *Deans*, and *Prebends*, with the rest of the Clergy within the said Diocesses.

AS it is a great Happiness for me to Present, so it will be accounted no less in you, to accept the Devoted Labours of him, who with a most humble Heart Dedicateth the same to the Holy Altars of your Church; and as I am bound to acknowledg my Happiness to proceed from your Goodness and Bounty in the acceptance thereof, so herein it is desired that you will ever reckon me in the number of your most obliged Servants, and Sons of the English Faith,

R. H.

CHAP. III.

1. HAving spoken of such Natures in the Globe of the World, as have a Being from God the maker of all things; and in a manner are said to live. In the next place, we shall treat of those Creatures or Animals, which by Nature are said properly or perfectly to live; such Natures I mean, as those which have in them express and manifest tokens of Life, and of a Living Soul.

Of this kind some are Vegitive, others Sensitive, and the third sort are Rational: And for as much as I am now to discourse of the Vegetable Animals, and of their particular kinds, I shall first begin with Trees.

Trees are certain Plants springing from a Root, with a single Trunk or Stock, or Stem (for the most part) shooting up in height, and delineated with Lim s, Branches, or Spriggs, on which groweth Leaves, Flowers, Fruits, and the like.

Of these Trees some are more proper to hot Countreys and others to a more temperate, and some again to cold Regions, as the Frankincense to *Arabia*. The Balsamum, Myrrh, Nutmeg and Mace, the Pepper Trees, and such like chiefly grow in *India*, the Plane Tree in *Egypt* and *Arabia*, the Pomegranate, Orange and Lemon Trees in *Africa*; the Apple, Pear, Nut, Cherry, Plumb, and such in *Europe* and the several parts thereof. But this I purposely pass over, and will (omitting their place of growth) give you a Catalogue of such Trees as are born in Arms, and then give examples of their several Bearings, whether in whole or in part.

1. Trees that bear no Fruit but their own Seed, are the **Linden**, the **Plane**, the **Maple**, the **Ash**, the **Elme**, the **Sycamore**, the **Birch**, the **Poplar**, the **Osier** or **Withen**, the **Willow**, the **Cedar**, the **Cypress**, the **Ewe**, the **Palm**, the **Box**, the **Firr**.

2. Trees that bear Fruit, but not for Mans general eating, are the **Oak**, the **Holly**, the **Hathorn** or **Whitthorn**, the **Gall**, the **Cork**, the **Pinett**, the **Cotton**, the **Alder**, the **Bay**, the **Laurel** or **Mirtle**.

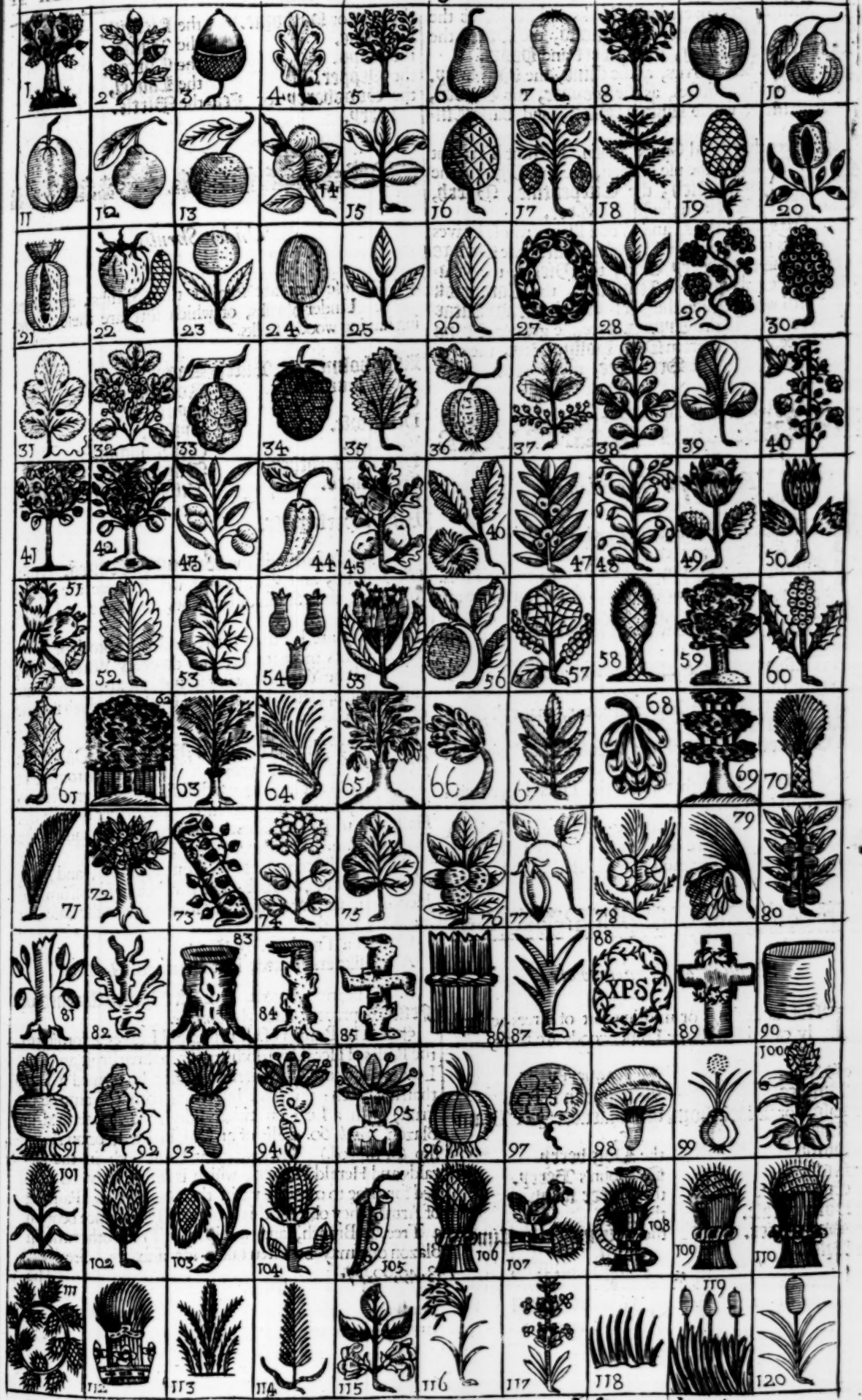
3. Trees that bear Fruit for the use of Man, are of several sorts, and all eatable according to their Seasons and kinds; as

(1.) Such as are covered with Rinds, as the **Figg**, the **Pear**, the **Apple**, the **Orenge**, the **Lemon**, the **Pomegranate**, the **Pomecitron**, the **Quince**, the **Medler** or **Open-arse**.

(2.) Such as have Stones in them, as the **Cherry**, the **Plumb**, the **Peach**, the **Apricock**, the **Olive**, the **Cornell**, the **Bullays**, the **Slow-tree**.

(3.) Such

*



I·P·M·Robti Dni Buckleg jn Bewmaris vicecomitis Co nall jn Hibria

3. Such as are covered with Husks and Shells, as the **Chesnut**, the **Walnut**, the **Almond**, the **Date**, the **Beech**, the **Nutmeg**, the **Filbert** and **Hassel**.

4. Such as bear Berries, as the **Vine**, the **Mulberry**.

5. Such as bear Spices, as the **Pepper**, the **Cloves**, the **Nutmeg**, whose Husk is **Mace**, and Bark **Cinnamon**.

4. Trees that yield Gums, Rosin, Pitch or Tar, out of their Bodies for the use of Man, are the **Cherry**, the **Plumb**, the **Mastich**, the **Turpentine**, **Myrrh**, **Camphir**, **Firr**, and the **Pitch Tree**.

5. Trees and Shrubs, and Wood Plants, whose Leaves are always green, are the **Bay**, the **Laurel**, the **Orenge** Tree, the **Strawberry Tree**, the **Myrtle**, the **Jesamine** Tree, the *Indian* **Jesamine**, the **Tamarisk** Tree with white Leaves, the **Firr** Tree, the **Arbor Vitae** or **Tree of Life**, the **Cypress** Tree, the greater **Stone crop** Tree, the evergreen **Oak**, **Holly**, **Box**, the ever green **Hawthorn**, the **Staff-tree**, the **Privet**.

Terms for Woodlands.

A **Wood**, is a place set thick with Trees.

A **Grove**, is a green pleasant place set with Trees.

A **Spring**, or **Coppy**, a place set with young Trees.

A **Nursery**, Trees sowed, which as they grow up are transplanted.

A **Forrest**, is a place where Trees are thick and unpassable.

A **Wilderness**, is a vast, large and great Wood, not Travelled through.

A **Desart**, a place large and great, made dark by thickness of Trees.

A **Thickett**, a shady place and uncut, the Boughs not lopped.

A **Copse**, a place that hath the Trees lopped and cropped, and grown again.

But more particularly we say a Grove of Oaks, a Grove of Pines, a Grove of Birches, a Grove of Willows or Osiers, or else a Ground or Walk of Willows.

Shrubs, or Underwoods.

3. THose underlings or midling sort of Trees generally called Shrubs or Underwoods are these,

The **Hasle**.	the **Rasberry**.
the **Bullace**.	the **Curran-berry**.
the **Slow** or **Blackthorn**.	the **Blackberry** or **Bramble**.
the **Alder**.	the **Dog-berry**.
the **Holly**.	**St.** John's **Berry**.
the **Rose**.	the **Caper shrub**.
the **Eglantine**.	the **Ivy**.
the **Hony-suckle**.	the **Nutmeg** or **Cinnamon**.
the **Sweetbrier**.	
the **Brier**.	
the **Hay** or **Hathorne**.	the **Licorish**.
the **Vine**.	the **Balm**.
the **Hopp**.	the **Cotton**.
the **Pepper**.	the **Laurel**,
the **Goosberry** or **Fea berry**.	the **Myrtle**.

Under-Shrubs.

4. THose that are smaller than Shrubs, are called Under-Shrubs, of which sort are these following having woody stalks.

Knee-holme or **Butchers broome**.	**Sage**.
Gorse.	**Rosemary**.
Hen-gorse.	**Tyme**.
Thistles.	**Hyssop**.
Heath or **Heather**.	**Wormwood**.
Spikenard.	**Mugworth**.
Lavender.	**Bill-berries** or **Winberries**.
Rue or **Herb grass**.	

To which some add the **Bulrush**, **Sedges**, **Rushes**, **Reeds**, and **Canes**, of which there are several sorts; but their Stalks or Branches cannot be said to be Woody.

Such as are less than these, and have Stock or Stems and Branches more tender, and do every Year as it were Die, and the Year following spring out anew, these are called Plants, Herbs, Flowers and Grain, of which in their order and course.

I. He beareth Argent, **on a Mount, an Oak Tree Acorned** or **Fructed**, proper. This is the strongest of Trees, and is apt for mighty Building, for it groweth to a vast height and circumference. In former times it was Hallowed to Jupiter, and the Acorns made Bread for the Food of Man. Born by *Ockely*.

There is difference between on a Mount, and on a Mount in or out of Base; the first being free from the Escochion, the latter joined or issuing out of the Base. See *numb.* 65, 62, 62.

O such a Tree born by *Wood*.

A the like eradicated, by the name of *Haell*.

II. He beareth Argent, an **Oak Branch Acorned** or **Fructed**, proper. Born by *Amade*.

☞ The Branch of all Fruits and Leaves (according to the Rules of Heraldry) doth consist in three Fruit, and four Leaves; if more, then it may rather be termed a Tree than a Branch; if it have but one Acorn (or any other Fruit) with a Leaf on either side, then it is termed in Blazon, *numb.* 60. a Slip of an Oak Fructed, or an Acorn slip (or slipped.) This is a great Fault both in the Heralds and Herald Painters, which is wished may be rectified for time to come, that in their making and Painting of Arms, they observe this Rule and Differeence between a Tree, a Branch, and a Slip of a Tree, otherwise in Blazon one may be often taken for another. See *numb.* 23, 49, 60, 17.

The

The **Laurel Oak** hath but little seen of its Fruit out of its Cup.

The *Indian* **Leaf** or **Tobacco** hath an Acorn like Seed pod out of a Cup indented in the brim or edge.

III. He beareth Argent, an **Acorn**, proper. That is to say, the Head or Fruit yellow, and the Cup and Stalk Vert.

☞ The Fruit of all sorts and kinds, when they are born themselves without Leaves; they have ever a slipped Stalk to them, which in Blazon you need not to mention, being common to all: Yet if such Fruit have no Stalk as sometimes I have seen in *Dutch* Coats, then term the Acorns (or such a Fruit) sans Stalk. See *numb.* 21.

The **Holme Oak**, and the **Cork Tree Acorns** have the Cups rough and prickley.

The **bitter Oak** Acorn hath the Cup edges cut and jagged, like the Hasle or Filbert Nut.

IV. He beareth Or, **an Oak Leaf.** Born by *Leave.*

☞ Note, That if Trees, Leaves or Fruit be born in Arms in their proper colour, you shall not need to mention it; but if they be of any other colour, then you ought to take notice of it, and name the Mettle or Colour they are off.

And as this is the general way of bearing Trees, Branches, Slips, Fruit and Leaves; so from these examples you may see how all other sorts and kinds are to be Blazoned: So that to give Examples of all Trees after this manner, would require much Time and Cost, and be needless; the meanest Capacity from these may Judg of all the rest: I shall therefore present you with the Examples of Fruit, with the form of their Leaves; by the knowledg whereof the Tree will be easily known.

☞ If the Leaf stand thus, as this example, then it is termed only such a Leaf; if it have the Stalk upward, then it is termed a Leaf pendant; if cross or overthwart the Escochion, then it is a Leaf Barwise, naming the Stalk, either to the Dexter or Sinister side of the Escochion. See *chap.* 4. *numb.* 38, 39, 40, 41.

The white Poplar hath such a Leaf, but broader in the middle, and sharper at the Stalk.

A 3 Oak Leaves V born by *Fowles.*

S 3 such A born by *Lower.*

V 5 such in Salter O born by *Woodward.*

V He beareth Argent, **a Tree**, proper.

☞ If a Tree only consist of Leaves without any Fruit therein, whereby it may be distinguisht what sort of Tree it is; then in such Cases for to Blazon it only a Tree is no absurd term; which may be either drawn thus into open Branches, or all together after the Trees, *numb.* 59, 62. This is a **Tree** neither on a Mount nor Couped, but appears to Sight as much as a Tree doth above the Ground; and therefore is called a Tree absolute. This is born by the name of *Wooday.*

Per pale A and B 2 Trees moted counterchanged. Born by *Aspach.*

A on a Hill in Base, a Tree V born by *Van Birckicht.*

VI. He beareth Vert, **a Pear**, Or. It is by *Morgan, lib.* 1. *fol.* 27. termed a Pear pendant; yet others hold that the Pear only, of all other Fruit, is thus to be Blazoned simply a Pear; beeause say they, true Blazoning teacheth, that what is born in its proper being, or posture, needs no other addition; and that a Pear in its growth doth hang so, none can deny; but such a proposition though true, yet will prove of bad consequence; for then most or all Fruit hanging down, ought to be Blazoned so, which they are not; for doth not the Apple, Cherry, Plumb, Pomegranate, Pine Apple, with variety more, hang down in their growth; yet are Blazoned pendant, which is also a proper term for this, and those not to be faulted that use it. See *numb.* 30. This is born by the name of *Parry.*

B 3 such O born by *Stukeley.*

G 6 such, and a Chief O born by *Alport.*

VII. He beareth Gules, **a Pear**, proper, that is, Yellow and Green intermixed, as one side Yellow, the other side Green. This is also termed by *Gwillim, fol.* 145. **a Pear erected**, which save in the Pear, I never heard any that termed this posture erected, all concurring in this, that Fruit having the Stalk downward, have no other addition to the name of the Fruit; and for my particular, I shall but little observe it. Born by the name of *Parrott.*

VIII. He beareth Argent, **a Pear Tree Fructed.** By the name of *Pear-Tree.* There are several sorts of Pears, as,

St. James Pear, round at top, narrow at stalk, and is red and yellow.

An **Abby Pear**, of a green, or greenish dusky colour.

A **Warden**, it is like a Quince, but brown and spotted; of them there are several sorts.

A **Burgomot Pear**, is a big Summer Pear, of a yellow and red colour.

A **Popperom Pear**, or Popperin.

A **Katherine Pear**,

A **Slipper Pear.**

An **Orenge Burgomot**, is a round, short stalked Pear, of a deep yellow.

A **Musk Pear**, it is great and large, yellow, and of a Musky Taste.

A **Bloody Pear**, is small, brown on the out-side, and Blood red within. I have seen an Apple of the same Nature; but these are but curiosities.

A **Winter Musk Pear**, is large and round, red sided yellow fruit.

A **Windsor Pear.**

IX. He beareth Gules, an **Apple**, Or. Born by *Apple.* Of Apples there are several sorts, as,

The **Pear-main**, of which there are three sorts.

The **Russet Pear-main**, which hath generally a rough brown side, and the Rind oft chopt and choned, the other part greenish; this is called the Summer Pear-main of some.

The **Yellow Pear-main**, hath a fine smooth rind, of a whitish yellow colour.

The **Green Pear-main**, or **Winter Pear-main**, is of a deep green colour, spotted faintly with whitish green spots.

The **Russet Apple**, is a small Apple, brown on one side, and red and yellow, or green on the other.

The **Darling Apple**, is yellow, with a mixture of red on one side.

The **Pippin**, is a green roundish Apple, sometimes reddish on the side; of these there are diverse kinds.

The **Red Strake**, is greenish, striped all over with red; this is a good Sider Apple.

The

The **Daubil**, or **Lady Finger**, of some called a **Beaking Glomaine**, it is a long Apple, red on one side, and green on the other, having a Beak or Hook, by which it hangs to the Stalk.

The **Paradise Apple**, is a delicate Apple for Taste, of a yellow and red colour.

The **Junitting**, is a small Apple, yellow and red sided.

The **Magdalen**, or **Margaret Apple**, is a fair and beautiful Fruit, yellow and thick striped with red; it hath a delicate taste, sweet scent, and early ripe, and is best eaten off the Tree.

The **Giant Apple**, it is a great and long Fruit, yellow, and well tasted, and either to Coddle, or Bake in Tarts, the most excellent of any Summer Apple.

The **Good Housewife**, is the largest of all the Apples I have seen, of a long round, gathering in at the Stalk and Blossom or Crown; of a pure green, or greenish yellow colour.

The **Queening**, is a fair red striped Apple, and beautiful in its Season, being a kind of Winter Fruit.

The **Quince Apple**, is a fair, smooth yellow Apple, something like a Quince.

The **Rennet**, is a fine lasting Apple, of which there are several sorts, but the *Lincoln* Rennet is reputed best.

The **Pear Apple**, so called from its Pear-like form.

The **Pomewater Apple**,

The **Costard Apple**, of which there are three kinds, as the white, gray, and red Costard.

The **Greening**.

The **Fig Apple**, it is without Core or Kernel, or without Blossom, the Fruit coming out of the sides of the Branches (after the manner of Figs) and as bigg as a Pippin.

The **Crab**, is a small round Apple, growing on Trees in Hedges by the Way sides; it is red, green, and when ripe, yellow sided; there are diverse kinds of them, some as large and fair, as other well tasted Apples.

Per Fesse A and B 2 Apples with Stalks and Leaves proper. Born by *Holtsasell*.

Gules in a Bend A 3 Apples sans-Stalks G born by *Hautzendorf*.

B on a Bend G 3 Apples with Stalks A born by *Maenhaupt*.

B a Fesse A in Base 3 Apples O born by *Harlewin*.

X. He beareth Argent, a **Quince and Leaf pendant**. The Quince is full of Burs and bunches, or unequal, covered with a white Cotton before it be ripe, but then yellow. Born by the name of *Quince*.

The **Lion Quince**, is yellow, the sides deep ribbed, with a hollow Crown.

The **Brunswick Quince**, is round and more whiter than the other.

The **Portugal Quince**, is yellow, with the sides full of Chops and Chones.

XI. He beareth Argent, a **Pomecitron (or Poundcitron) pendant**. The Leaf of this Fruit is nicked, or small indented like a Cherry Leaf; the Fruit is generally covered with a rugged, bunched out, and uneven yellow Bark.

The **Limoons** are like the Pomecitron, and larger and more rugged than the former.

XII. He beareth Argent, a **Lemon and Leaf pendant**, or a Leomon with a Leaf slipped, pendant. By the name of *Leomaine*.

B 3 such born by the name of *Flymston*. The Lemon hath a pleasant yellow Rind, some are smooth, others Poery, and others full of Carbuncles, or set here and there with swelling knobs.

XIII. He beareth Argent, an **Orange and Leaf pendant**. By the name of *Orange*. The Orange is between a yellow and red, or of the colour of the mixture of both, which in Heraldry is termed Tenne.

B 3 such born by the name of *Sibell*. This Tree doth at all Seasons of the Year bear Fruit, having Ripe, Green Fruit, and Blossoms on it all at a time; and the Leaves always Green, and sweet smelling Flowers of a whitish colour.

XIV. He beareth Argent, **a Stock slipped at both ends, with three Apricocks in a Cluster fired thereon, and leaved**, proper. They are of a yellowish red colour, and Downy. Born by *Pricock*.

Peaches grow after this manner, and of a light, green, and white colour, turning to yellow, some all red; others red on the side, all downy; the white **Apricocks** have the leaves foulded, seldom opening. The long **Apricock** is long, and of a pale yellow colour.

The double flowered **Peach**, of some written **Beech** or Beach, is like the ordinary Peach, save the flowers which are double, consisting of 3 or 4 rows of leaves, of a reddish blush colour; they seldom come to any Fruit.

The **Nectarine** is like the Peach in the tree and fruit, but smaller, smooth and round, which before they begin to ripen, are much like to a green Walnut; but after, of several colours, as green, yellow, white, red, murrey, tawny and russet, also white painted with red spots.

XV. He beareth Argent, **an Almond slip fructed**. Born by *Almond*. The Almonds grow not with Stalks, but fixed to the Boughs like to Figs and Apricocks, and such like Fruit; therefore a slip of them is to be 3 leaves only on the top, and 2 or 3 Fruit on the Twig or Stem; as in this example, and *numb.* 14 and 38. They are in the husk of a whelmish green and downy; the Stone whitish, the skin which covers the Almond of a Cinnamon or brown colour, and the fruit it self pure white. The Leaves and Flowers of the Almond Tree are like those of the Peach; it blooms early in the year, and many blossoms of a fair, pale reddish colour, consisting of 5 leaves invecked on the top, set about a tufted head, set in a short foot hose, cut into four points. *Barbary* Almonds are small, *Jordan* Almonds long and slender, *Valentia* Almonds short and broad. This is born by the name of *Almonder*, being in a Golden Field.

XVI. He beareth Or, **a Pine Apple**, Vert; the Apple is at first raw and green; but ripe, it is of a yellow colour, inclining to a Red or Chesnut. Born by the name of *Pinner*. Some term it a Pine Apple erect.

G a Cheveron Er. between 3 such O. Born by *Pine*.

V 3 such Pendant O born by *Japin*.

B 3 such O is born by *Van Winter Steten*.

Per pale G and A a Pine Apple V is born by *Augspurg*.

XVII. He beareth Argent, **four Pine Apples**, Or, on a Branch; of some Blazoned, a Branch of a Pine Apple Tree Fructed; or a Pine Apple Branch; but by these Blozonings how can a Man know how to trick out the

the just number of the Apples, except they be first told; this Branch being contrary to the Oak beforesaid, *numb.* 2. that consisting only of three Fruits, as all Branches ought to do; if more, then to be numbred, as in this example.

The Branches and Stock are all scaled with Leaves, the Leaves long and narrow, like the Palm or Date Tree. This is born by the name of *Palmer*.

G 3 Pine Branches proper. Born by *Pinough*.

XVIII. He beareth Argent, **a Firr Tree.** The Fruit of the Firr is the same to the Pine Apple.

A **Savin** Tree is like leaved to the Firr, and the Fruit round like to an Apple.

A **Juniper** Tree, is like leaved to the Firr and Pine, with Fruit Pear like.

The **Larch** Tree, the Body or Stemm scaly like the Palm, the Leaves and Fruit like the Firr, but more fine, thin, and small scales.

The **Pitch** Tree, the Branches all Scaly, the leaves and Fruit, as the Firr.

The **Phyllirea**, or the **striped Phyllirea**, is a fine Plant rising to a Mans height, thick set with small Branches, and those with small ever green leaves, constantly edged and striped with white; this may be by the Garden shears fashioned into what form you please.

XIX. He beareth Or, **a Cedar Apple slipped**, proper. The Fruit of the Cedar much resembles the Pine Apple; and the Tree hath the same kind of Leaves, and groweth aloft much after the manner of the Cypress Tree, Pyramid or Sugar loaf like; the Leaves grow altogether out of a Knot, which are small, long and narrow, as you see on the Slip above shewed. This is born by the name of *Cedarall*.

B 3 such slipped, born by *Wanton*.

Losengy O and G on a Bend Sinister A 3 such Apples pendant. Born by the name of *Winterthur*.

XX. He beareth Argent, **a Pomegranate slip**, (or a slip of the Pomegranate Tree) Vert, **Fructed**, Gules. *Guillim* terms it in Pale slipped. Some write it Pomegarnet; and term it a Pomegarnet leafed. This is the Coat Armour of the City of *Granata*, alias *Granada*.

S 3 such proper, born by *Spenser*, of *Herefordshire*, and *Ford*, O.

The **double flowred Pomegranate** is the rarest of all flowering Trees and Shrubs, it grows in a thick Bush, full of small Branches, with some Thorns thereon, and many small, long shining green leaves; at the ends and sides of the Branches come forth many hard, hollow, reddish Cups, and out of them most Beautiful Flowers, as big and double as a large Province Rose, of a bright Crimson colour. There is also another of this kind, with double Flowers of an Orenge colour; it seldom bears Fruit.

XXI. He beareth Or, **a Pomegranate sans Stalk.** This Fruit is red by nature: They are never born in Arms but with a broken or burst side, to shew their Seed within them, though naturally they are close and have a hard husk, which requires cutting: The end is jagged and cut unevenly. This is born by *Pomgraine*.

A 3 such is born by *Argue*.

XXII. He beareth Argent, **a Medler Slip, with one Leaf on the Sinister side.** It is called generally an **Open-arse**; the Fruit is green in growing, but being laid aside to mellow or rather rot, (for they are not good till then) it goes to a kind of brown or hair colour. Born by the name of *Madder*.

XXIII. He beareth Or, **a Cherry Slip**, others, a **Cherry**, Gules, **Stalk and Leaves**, Vert, **and a Cherry slipped with two Leaves**, proper. By the name of *Cherry*.

The great Preserving Cherry, they are of a blackish red on the outside when ripe, and Blood red within.

The **Biquat Cherry** is a fair kind, of a pale red colour, and spotted with white.

The **Amber Cherry**, hath very large Leaves, the Fruit of a fair Amber colour.

The **Dwarf Cherry** is of two sorts, the one small branches hanging down, the Cherry being small, round and red; the other Branches more erect, having Fruit bigger and pointed.

Mr. *Girle* makes mention of a kind of *Hungarian* Cherry (as saith *Rea* in his *Pomona*, *fol.* 206. that is as large as an ordinary Apple, which he calls *Ciliegi Birrieloni*.

Thus you shall have Cherries like Hearts, called **Heart-Cherries**, and the Black Heart Cherry, of a blackish red colour; the *Flanders* **Cluster Cherry**, they grow on the Stalks in Clusters, 3, 4, and 5, joined together; the white Cherry hath a little red on one side, the Leaf is like to the Medlar, saving that in handling of it it is somewhat more rough; the Flower is white, being 5 round leaves about a pod or head, which having gotten full ripeness, becometh Blood red, but white within, having a Stone in the middle with a Kernel in.

The **double Flowered Cherry** hath double white flowers, and many growing together, which falleth away without bearing Fruit.

XXIV. He beareth Argent, **a Plumb**, Sable. There is several sorts of Plumbs, both round, long, Pear-like, Wheat-like, *&c.* and these are both white, red, green, and black. 3 Plumbs. Born by the name of *Plumb*.

The **Blew Primordian Plumb** is fashioned like a Pear, with a round head, and smaller towards the Stalk, of a red colour, and some of a Violet blew colour.

The **Barberry Plumb** is black, and fashioned like an Egg.

The **Damson**, or **Damasen** is round and black, some of a blackish blew.

The **Wheaten Plumb** is like a Wheat Corn with an incision or cleft all along the side, of a whitish green and yellow.

The **Diapered plumb** is a pale yellow, marbled with red, called also the **Marbled** Plumb.

The **Peastod plumb** is long, some are white, red or green.

The **Pear plumb** and the **Date plumb** are either red, yellow or white.

XXV. He beareth Argent, **a Slip of three Leaves.** Born by *Leasby*. Others say three Leaves in a Slip: It may be Blazoned a Laurel Slip, a Mirtle Slip; if they be of any other Fruit Trees you may term them accordingly, as a Slip of three Orenge Leaves, or three Cherry Leaves in a Slip. Born by the name of *Brobrough*.

☞ The Slip is also born erased in the Foot, which then say some, you are to term three leaves upon a Stalk erazed or irradicated; a Stock, Branch, Stalk or Twig

are

are so termed; but of a Slip it is improper in my Judgment.

XXVI. He beareth Or, **a Laurel Leaf**, or a **Bay Leaf**, or a **Bay Tree Leaf**. By the name of *Leave*.

The **Wild Bay Tree** hath two leaves at every joint of a dark green; at the top of the Branches come forth forth tufts of small white Flowers, with blush edges, which are succeeded with small blew Berries.

The **Wild Bay of** *Portugal*, the leaves are of a brown green; the Flowers inclining to Purple, the Berries blew.

The **Rose Bay Tree** is of two sorts, one beareth red Flowers, the other white.

The **Indian Bay**, it grows in a thick Bush, the branches of a yellowish green Bark; the Flowers grow in a long Spike, of a greenish white colour, succeeded by Berries like small Olives.

The **Mirtle** grows in a thick Bush, the leaves somewhat brod, and long, and smooth edged, being ever of a bright shining green; at the joints of the Branches come forth the Flowers composed of 5 small white leaves, with some white Threads in the middle, and very sweet.

The **Box leafed Mirtle** hath the leaves round, pointed like the Box Tree, in all other things as the aforesaid.

The **upright Mirtle** hath the leaves sharp pointed and narrow, the branches growing upright. Some from thickness of its growth call it the **Birds Nest Mirtle**.

The **double Flowered Mirtle** differeth from the other in the Flowers which are white, but very thick and double, and of a delicate sweet scent.

The **great Spanish**, or **Laurel Leafed Mirtle**, the Leaves are like Bays, but of a whiter green colour, set in a double row on both sides the branches, but in Flowers and Fruit as others.

The **Cork**, the **Clove**, the **Coffee Trees**, have such leaves.

The **Spindle Tree**, and **Pickwood** also.

XXVII. He beareth Argent, **a Laurel Garland**, of some termed a Garland of Leaves. By the name of *Garland*. This form of Bearing is much used in Crests, held by several sorts of Creatures, as Men, Women, Lions, *&c.* as in this work is manifested.

O a Garland of Pine Leaves is born by *Van Lenberg*, one made of a Peacocks Tail, is the Crest of *Van Wethyn*.

A a Garland of Laurel and Roses. Born by *Schappell*.

XXVIII. He beareth Argent, **a Laurel Sprig**, or a **Sprig or Spray of Bays**.

☞ The Slip consists (according to Heraldry) of 3 leaves, the Sprig of 5 leaves, and the Branch being unfructed, of 9 leaves, as *chap.* 5. *numb.* 50.

The **Laurel Tree** is always fresh, and never loseth its green colour; it beareth a Flower of whitish blew colour, which ripeneth to a kind of Black Berry, or of a deep dark red, but the juice within is a most pure Sanguine or Blood colour, and represents the colour of the best *Indian* Lake.

O 3 such born by *Sprigg*.

A a Sprig of Heart leaves G born by *Foster*.

B a Sprig of Bays in Bend Irradicated O born by *Degenberg*. *Boswel* terms it a Spray of such or such a Tree, *pag.* 27.

A on a Mount in Base, a Branch of Heart Leaves G born by *Bacharat*.

Per Fesse O and G in Chief 2 Branches slipped in Salter V in Base a Bend waved Sinister A is born by *Kirspach* of *Alsatia*.

a Branch erazed O in a Field per Fesse S and A is born by *Fridihorf*.

XXIX. He beareth Argent, **a Vine Branch, flected and reflected with Fruit, (or Fructed)** proper.

☞ Grapes are either white or red, if they be in a Field of Colours, they are white, if in a Field of Mettle, then red; so that according to the Field they are coloured, therefore need not to be named; though some term this a Vine Branch Vert, Graped Gules. But if the Grapes be any other colour, as yellow, green, blew, *&c.* then name the same; for such are supposed either to be unripe or overgrown. If this were an absolute Vine, then it should have only one Stem or Stock, which should have shot out it self into several turning Branches, which as it hath not, it is but one winding or turning Branch.

The black **Clustered Grapes** are set thick on the bunches, and are small and black.

The **Muscadine and Canada Grape**, are white, the latter called the **Parsly Grape**, from the Leaves, which are more cut in and divided than any other.

The **Raisin Grape** is large and red.

O a Vine Branch in Pale fructed, flected and reflected proper. By the name of *Maschko*.

O the like on a Fesse S is born by *Van Wense*.

Per pale O and B a Pallet on the one side a conjoined to it, is a Bunch of Grapes between 2 Vine Leaves, and the other side 2 Hares Heads. Born by *Van Moltzan*.

XXX. He beareth Or, **a Cluster (or Bunch of Grapes.** If any Fruit may with this term hang downwards, the Grape may (being of so heavy a body as it is in its growth; but being this is born upright, I see no reason why others should not be termed pendant; see *numb.* 6. and *Guillim, fol.* 146. they grow on short Foot-stalks, which are all fixed to a main stalk, which runs through the middle of the Cluster; so that they are more scattering or separated than this is Engraven. Three of them is born by the name of *Grapyard*.

G a Cheveron between 2 Spur-rowels, and a Cluster of Grapes slipped B. By *Kemmerer*.

XXXI. He beareth Argent, **a Vine Leaf with its Tendrell.** The Vine Leaf hath 5 principal points, each point having 3 indents.

The **Parsley Vine Leaf** hath the Indents long and sharp pointed.

The **Plane Tree** of *Virginia* hath the 5 points Ingraled and then hairy, some have them with deep Indents.

XXXII. He beareth Argent, **a Vine of three Branches from its Root, each Graped or Fructed**, that is to say, Gules, according to the rule, *numb.* 29. This may also be termed a Vine proper. Born by the name of *Viner*.

B on a Hill in Base, a Vine of 5 Branches, sans Fruit A is born by *Van Trutscheler*.

XXXIII. He

XXXIII. He beareth Argent, **the Stem trunked at both ends, with a Mulberry thereunto pendant,** proper. Here I say proper, because the Stem is yellowish or Wood colour, and the Mulberry purple being its proper colour; yet some are black, white, or red. *Grillim fol.* 144. Blazons this a Mulberry with its Stalk trunked, proper. By the name of *Mulbury*.

The Mulberry Tree hath a Sovereign Red colour in the Fruit, being a Cluster of Red Berries set close together; which before they be ripe are white, then flesh colour, lastly a deep blood red; they grow upon the small branches among the leaves. The *Egyptian* Mulberry is not much unlike the aforesaid, but it hath a singular manner by it self in the Fruit bearing; for neither on its Boughs, nor amongst the Leaves, but upon the body of the Tree it beareth the Fruit about the bigness of a Fig, having no inward kernel as other Fruits have.

O 3 such born by the name of *Gascoyne*.

A 3 such, by the name of *Derbrough*.

XXXIV. He beareth Argent, **a Bramble Berry** (or **Black Berry**) pendant. The names shew what colour it is, therefore needs no naming to be Sable. The Leaf of the Bramble is in all respects like the Rose Leaf, being three nicked leaves joined together at the end of the Stalks.

A **Raspes** is the same, the Berries pure red, and is the Coat of *Rasp ie*.

XXXV. He beareth Or, **a Mulbury Leaf.** Some write it a Mulberry, being a Cluster or Knott of Berries joined together, broad at the Stalk, and declining towards the end; of a red or purple colour. *Mulworm* beareth three of these leaves.

O 6 such Leaves born by *Lymmin*.

Per Fesse A and B Escartelee; a Mulbury leaf issuant O born by *Geymanner*.

A a Cheveron between 3 such pendant B is born by *Lemminger*.

XXXVI. He beareth Argent, **a Gooseberry pendant,** Or, with a Leaf. They grow in races all along the slip or twig: the *French* **Gooseberry** is oval like; of which there are black, red, and yellow ones: *Holland* **Gooseberries** are white, the Blew **Gooseberry** is long, of a dark red colour, tinctured over with Blew; the green **Gooseberry** is round, and some long.

XXXVII. He beareth Or, **a Curran Tree Leaf slipped, with a race of Currans on either side,** Sable. The Currans are of three colours at their maturity, *viz.* white, red, and black; therefore in them observe the same rule given, *numb.* 29. Therefore I Blazon these Sable, being thereunto injoined. Some will term this a Curran Branch; others a Curran Leaf slipped, with Fruit fixed thereto.

XXXVIII. He beareth Argent, **a Fig Tree Branch Fructed.** The colour of a Fig on the Tree is a whelmish or light Grass green; when ripe, of a blewish brown. The Fig groweth out at the Stalk of the Leaf, so that there is at every leaf of the Stem a Fig, which is contrary to most other Fruit. This is born by the name of *Figgs*. The colour of the leaf and rind is somewhat wan and pale; the Flower is Medler like; its moisture or sap is like Womans Milk.

XXXIX. He beareth Or, **a Fig Leaf.** By the name of *Frisenberg*. The leaves are large, divided commonly into 5 Sections.

O 5 such in Salter, born by Count *Ferra* or *Farra* in *Spain*.

XL. He beareth Argent, **a Pole issuing out of Base (or a Pole in Base) sustaining or supporting a Branch of Hops.** Some term it an Hop-Pole sustaining the Fruit, proper; for it is their nature to wind about any thing that is set for their support, which needs not to be mentioned; the colour of the Hop is a kind of a light, greenish yellow, near to the colour of Ash Keys: the Hop is only many round leaves growing together in Knotts or Bunches, like to a Grape or Mulbury. A Bunch of scaly leaves; the leaves are a large three pointed dented leaf, or cut into 3 divisions. By the name of *Hopley*.

XLI. He beareth Argent, **a Sycamore Tree Fructed,** born by *Sycmore*.

The leaves of this Tree resembleth the Mulbury leaves; the Fruit is round and very juicy and full of Milk; they grow not at the top of the Boughs as the Figs do, but out of the sides of them, and are sweet like a wild Fig, having grains within the Fruit as the Fig hath.

The **Maple** Tree is the same. This is born by *Maple*.

XLII. He beareth Argent, **on a Mount or Hill, an Olive Tree Fructed.** The leaf is a smooth, long, narrow and streight leaf; the Fruit is a long Berry, something resembling an heart, of a yellowish green colour; they grow generally together by pairs like Cherries.

The **Luke-Olive** is the same, but smaller and longer in the Fruit. This is the Coat Armour of *Oliver*.

XLIII. He beareth Argent, **an Olive Branch Fructed.** Born by *Olife*.

The **wild Olive,** or Tree of **Paradise** is of a dark yellowish colour in the woody shoots, set with long, narrow whitish green leaves, bearing along the branches small flowers, of a greenish yellow, which are succeeded by green Berries like Olives, when ripe will be reddish.

3 such is born by the name of *Oliviane*.

XLIV. He beareth Argent, **a Ginny Pepper and Leaf slipped, pendant.** Or **a slip and leaf of Ginny Pepper, the Fruit Pendant.** By the name of *Pepperall*. Of this kind of Pepper some are Heart-like, others grow directly round.

XLV. He beareth Argent, **a Gall Branch Fructed;** or more exactly as to the number, say three Galls on a Branch. Born by the name of *Gallick*.

This may be termed also an **Oak** Branch with three Apples, the Oak Apples and Galls are like one another; and is born by the name of *Applock*.

XLVI. He beareth Argent, **a Chesnut pendant, with two Leaves, or a Chesnut slipped pendant, with two Leaves.** The Nut is covered with a green rough prickly husk.

The **Beech** Tree is like the Chesnut; only the Leaf broader and smooth without Nicks; the Fruit also like the Chesnutt, covered with a rough husk, which when it is ripe, cleaveth in four parts; and so the Beech droppeth out.

The **binding Bean** Tree, hath a rough husk, which upon the opening, shooteth into four Bean Cods, and hanged at a round head at the end of the Stalk.

XLVII. He beareth Argent, **a Yew Tree Branch Fructed, (or a Yew Branch with Berries) slipped,** This is born by the name of *Jewen*. The Yew is very like the Firr Tree, having long small, or narrow leaves set on either side of all the Branches. The Berries of this Tree are red, growing close to the Branch on short Foot Stalks.

XLVIII. He beareth Argent, **a Barberry Branch Fructed.** By the name of *Berry*. These Berries are long and round, with a seed at the end after the manner of an Apple; they are red being ripe, and grow in races together on a small Stalk after the manner of Currans.

The **Bill-berry** or **Wind-berry** branch hath the same leaves round at the end, and sharp pointed towards the Stalk, the Berries are with a Seed or Flower place like an Apple;they grow in Clusters on small Stalks at the root of the leaves on the main Stem, which generally is but one Stalk; see *numb.* 80. The branch of such is born by *Don Sorettel.*

XLIX. He beareth Argent,**a Hassel Slip and Husk,** Vert, **the Nut,** Or. By the name of *Hassellall.* Else Blazon it, a Slip of an Hassel Tree Fructed; the difference between a branch and a slip, see *numb.* 2. Some term it a Hasle Nut slipped, proper.

The **Cotton Tree,** bears a Fruit not much unlike a Nut, which gaping or opening, discovereth about the Kernels a little Ball or Bottom of Wall, which is unwoven from the Seeds, of which is made Cotton Yarn.

The **Cokar Nut** is like the top of an Apple, covered in a Husk like a Hasle all over, but more Barky, which when ripe openeth in parts and quarters.

The **small Indian Cokar Nut** groweth in a hairy husk or skin.

L. He beareth Or, **three Filberd Nuts inclosed in their Huks with Foot Stalks on a Stalk.**

The **Filbert of Constantinople and Macedonia** are all covered with a jagged and cut husk, as if the husk were many doubles over it.

The **white** and **red Filberds** differ from the common Hassel Nut, in that the Husks are longer, covering the Nut.

LI. He beareth Argent, **a Cluster of Hassel Nuts slipped, in Bend.** Else term it three Nuts in a Cluster slipped, Bendwise, or a Slip with three Nuts in a Cluster. Born by the name of *Thicken.*

LII. He beareth Or, **an Elme Leaf.** It is also called an Elmen Leaf. Three of these are born by the name of *Elmener.*

Er. on 2 Bars S 10 Elme leaves born by *Elmes* of *Lilford.*

The **Elme** Tree is of some called **All-Heart,** it is a Wood that is yellow and Sinowy,but soon breeds Worms, It beareth a certain Grape and nothing else.

LIII. He beareth Argent, **an Aspine Leaf.** Born by the name of *Aspinall.*

*

LIV. He beareth Or, **three Cloves,** Sable; these pertain to the Company of Groces, *viz.* A a Cheveron G between 10 Cloves, S.

LV. He beareth Argent, **a Clove Branch.** By the name of *Clovely*, alias *Clanley.*

LVI. He beareth Argent, **a Nutmeg Branch slipped,** or **a Nutmeg pendant, with a slip of three Leaves.** The Nutmeg is inclosed in a husk, with a dalk or furrow in the middle, the leaves like to the Laurel; when it is ripe, then the husk bursteth open, and the Fruit appeareth out of it, like to an Hassel-Nut, and jagged like to it; the husk of the Nutmeg is that which we call Mace, sold for a rich Spice, and the Bark of the Tree for Cinnamon.

Cinnamon is so called, because his top is as it were folded or plaited together; it is of an ashie or dusky colour, the leaf is like to wild Marjoram, it never smells till it be throughly dry. It groweth amongst Briers on very hard Rocks, being about two Cubits high, and is gathered with much pains and difficulty, the best groweth on the top Twiggs.

There is a kind of counterfeit Cinnamon, called **Cassia,** or *Cassia Lignum.*

LVII. He beareth Argent, **a Pepper Branch slipped.** The leaves are round, and pointed at the end, like to the Trefoil, against every leaf on the stalk groweth a long Cluster of Pepper, like to Races of Onions which Gardiners make up for Market Sale. The Tree groweth on Poles like to Hops, or else they would ly on the ground like Cucumbers; not having strength to support themselves. The Pepper is naturally white, but it is made black and wrinkled by Fire.

The **long Pepper** is after the same manner, the Races being described in *chap.* 5. *numb.* 48.

Ginny Pepper hath a long pointed leaf on a long Footstalk, with a long cod or pod round and thick at top, and taper downward,till it end in a point, see *numb.* 44.

LVIII. He beareth Or, **a Cypresse Tree,** see *numb.* 78. This is born by the name of *Van Brag.*

A 3 such Trees. Born by the name of *Eytonhall.*

G such a Tree. Born by *Madocker.*

LIX. He beareth Argent, **an Holly Tree Berried or Fructed.** Born by the name of *Sylvester.*

The **Haythorn,** or **White Thorn,** or **Haw Tree,** Blossomed, is the like for Draught, see *chap.* 5. *numb.* 52. 53.

LX. He beareth Argent, **an Holly slip;** else **an Holly Slip leaved,** or **an Holly Berry Cluster, with two Leaves slipped, and a Holly slip Berried;** all these ways I have found the Slip termed. This is born by the name of *Hollinworth.*

A an Holly Sprig of Leaves only V born by *Balber van Wintertur.*

A 3 Holly Leaves Barwise, the Stalks to the Dexter side. V. born by *Arnest.*

A 3 Holly Leaves pendant V. by *Jurvine.*

LXI. He beareth Argent, **an Holly Leaf.** Born by *Arnest.*

The **Holly Holly-Leaf** is the same for substance, being

being a thick and hard leaf; but is smooth in the edges, ending in a sharp point, which is strong and prickly.

The **Holme Oak** hath a Jagged, turning pricking leaf.

The **Aegyptian Musk Mallow Leaf** is thus engraled, and so is the red berried **Arrache**, called in Latine *Atriplex*, of which there is the white, red, and green.

LXII. He beareth Argent, **on a Mount or Hill in Base, a Wood or Grove of Trees.** This is the ancient Crest of *Brun*, alias *Bruen*, of *Tarvin* and *Stableford*. The like by *Roughley*, having the Stocks O.

O such a Wood V by the name of *Grove*.

LXIII. He beareth Argent, **a Birch Tree Irradicated or mooted up by the Roots, or erazed at the root,** which last term is not so proper for Trees, though I have often seen them so termed; yet use rather the words Irradicated or Mooted.

The **Birch** Tree, Branch or Slip is ever drawn void of leaves, but full of small twiggs. By the name of *Birchley*. The Birch Tree is the Crest of *Van Tannwitz*.

LXIV. He beareth Or, **a Birch Twig,** Sable; or a Branch of Birch in Bend. 3 such is *Birches* Coat.

The **Broom** Stalk is drawn after this manner, so that in Blazon it may pass for it, when it is Vert. This also pertains to the Coat of *Bromfield*.

LXV. He beareth Argent, **on a Mount in Base, an Ash Tree with its Keys.** There are two kinds of Ash Trees; the He Ash, that never beareth any Keyes, and the She Ash, which beareth Keyes; from hence it is, that the Tree with them hath in Blazon been termed a **She-Ash**; signifying thereby an Ash tree fructed, or with Keys. This is the Arms of *Ashley* of *Ashley*, in *Cheshire*.

LXVI. He beareth Gules, **a Bunch of Ash-Keys,** Or. See *numb.* 68. Thus in *Boden* Church for *Ashley*'s Coat.

The **Service Tree** hath a long winged leaf, like the Ash, and the Fruit hangs in Bunches like the Keys on Foot-Stalks, being covered with green husks like Walnuts; some round, some Pear fashion.

LXVII. He beareth Argent, **an Ash Tree Leaf.** The Ash tree leaf is nine long and narrow leaves nicked, fixed upon a small stalk, one against the other, and the odd one at the end.

G 3 such O born by *Holtzer*.

O such an Ash leaf. Born by *Wallary*.

LXVIII. He beareth Azure, **a Bunch of Ash Keys pendant,** Or. The natural colour of them is a kind of a yellowish green, or that which Painters call Pink. Three such born by *Ashworth*.

In this and 66, the Graver did not do his part, for the Keys have all of them a small stalk by which they hang all together in a Bunch to a little Knot at the root of the leaf, which is on the Branch, and not thus altogether at a Stalk, which is more like a flower than Ash Keys, see *chap.* 5. *numb.* 30. the true form of them.

☞ Note, that when we mention three of any sort of thing, it is always understood that they are placed two above, and one beneath in the Escochion.

LXIX. He beareth Argent, **on a Mount in Base,** (or out of Base) **a Ewe Tree.** Born by the name of *Ewe*.

The Fruit of the Ewe is a red Berry, which groweth to the Branch on a short Foot stalk after the manner of the Slow; see *numb.* 47. 80. they are of a pleasant taste.

LXX. He beareth Or, **a Palme Tree.** This is the Tree of Victory, for in former Ages, when Princes returned from great Battels, and mighty Enterprises, they bore Palms in their Triumphs; and the Saints in Heaven are said thus to Triumph, *Rev.* 7. 8. it never fadeth, but is ever green Winter and Summer. The Palm the more it is oppressed, the better it groweth; to which King *David*, *Psal.* 62. 12. compareth the righteous, who shall flourish like the Palm. By the name of *Palmer*.

A the like Irradicated. Born by *Macy Lonshor*.

Per Fesse O and A the same Irradicated V and in Base two Pales G by *Van Salis*.

LXXI. He beareth Argent, **a Palm Branch.**

The *Indian* **Cokar Nut Tree** Sprig, is after the same form.

A 3 such Branches, born by *Lovetoyle*.

In this quarter is also a Reed or Cane Sprout only in the leaves, being as yet not grown to maturity, as it is in *numb.* 120. and such as this Argent in a Field Azure, is the Coat Armour of *Lorrach*.

LXXII. He beareth Argent, **a Therebinth or Turpentine Tree Irradicated.** From this Tree proceeds the Gum called *Turpentine*; the Flowers or Blossoms of it grow to Grapes or Berries like Olives, and hang in Bunches of a reddish colour, the leaves winged, round and pointed. This is born by the name of *Torquine*.

LXXIII. He beareth Argent, **a Limb of a Tree in Bend, raguled and trunked, enwrapped with an Ivy Branch.** Born by the name of *Ivestock*. The like is born by *Juvine*, in a Field, Or.

LXXIV. He beareth Argent, **an Ivy Sprig with four leaves.** The Flower is a small yellow, mossie one, the Berries that proceed from them stand in an Umbell or close together in round tufts, on short footstalks, of a black colour.

LXXV. He beareth Argent, **an Ivy Leaf.** There is as much variety in the Ivy Leaf, as in any of our home bred Trees whatsoever, for some are round, others 3 pointed, 5 points and single pointed; some long and slender, others short and oval, and such like forms, yet all smooth in the edges.

LXXVI. He beareth Argent, **a Walnut Branch slipped and Fructed.** The Walnuts grow 2 or 3 together in green husks speckled, so that it may be disputed whether this may not as fitly be termed a Walnut Slip, as a Branch, seeing the Fruit is but in one place; the Walnut if on the Slip or Branch is born in its husk; if not on them, then without the husk, as *chap.* 5. *numb.* 17. This is born by the name of *Walmare*.

LXXVII. He beareth **an Indian Apple pendant, with two Leaves slipped;** or **the Slip of an Indian Apple, the Fruit pendant.** Born by the name of *Sagrill*, in a Field Argent; see *chap.* 5. *numb.* 24.

O the

O the like G leaves V born by *Walkervile*.

LXXVIII. He beareth Argent, **a Branch of Cypresse fructed; a Cypresse Branch.** This is born by the name of *Cyprian*.

LXXIX. He beareth Argent, **a Date Tree Branch, with a Bunch of Dates out of the Husk.** Having but one husk or knot of Dates, it may as well be termed a Date Tree slip, the Fruit pendant. Born by the name of *Barrowdate*.

LXXX. He beareth Argent, **a Branch of a Slow Tree, or a Blackthorn Branch Fructed.** Others call it **a Bullas Tree Branch.** This is born by the name of *Slowburgh*.

2. THUS much for Trees, with their Leaves and Fruit, as I have found them born in Arms, either in whole, or in the several parts. Now for such Trees, or part of them, as have lost their Life and are perished.

☞ Which when the Branches are lopped off, is termed Trunked, if cut off is called Couped, but if torn or taken up by the Root, is Blazoned Irradicated or Mooted up by the root.

LXXXI. He beareth Argent, **a Stemme (or Stock or Trunke) of a Tree Couped and Irradicated, sprouting out two Branches,** proper. *Gwillim* terms it irradicated or mooted up by the Roots, as also couped in Pale, *&c.* By the name of *Deadby*.

G the like A born by *Borough*, alias *Stockden*.

LXXXII. He beareth Or, **a Starved Branch,** Sable. Of some termed a withered Branch; a **Thorn** (or a dead Thorn) Branch. Born by *Parrisher*.

The **Coral Tree** is thus drawn, and if either white or red, it may be Blazoned a Branch of Coral, noting the Field it is within.

A 3 such S born by *Black-stock*.

A the like G born by *Carrall*.

O two such in Fesse S with a Bucks Horn in Chief, is born for the Coat of the Town of *Dornstat* in the *Netherlands*.

LXXXIII. He beareth Vert, **a Stock of a Tree Couped, Truncked, and Irradicated,** Argent. This I have seen termed only a Stock erazed. Some term it a Trunk or Stump, or Log erazed; or the root of a Tree sawed off. Born by the name of *Stockly*. S the like in Bend Sinister A is born by *Van Ronaw*.

V 3 such A born by *Stockton*.

Per Fesse A and B the like Stock in Bend O is born by *Van Ahlen*.

LXXXIV. He beareth Gules, **a Stock or Stem of a Tree Raguled, Trunked and Eradicated,** Or. These kind of Stems or Limbs of Trees I have seen born Bendways, and Bends made of them. See *lib* 1. *chap.* 4. *numb.* 26. By the name of *Stoke*.

S the like A gorged in the top with a Coronett O by the name of *Pellin*.

A the like in Bend, couped at both ends G by the name of *Siment*.

Per Pale A and G on a Hill in Base B two such counterchanged. Born by the name of *Kerstdorf*.

G the Stock couped at both ends, and in Bend O is born by *Brandt*.

B 2 such Bendwise Sinister A born by *Van Taubadell*.

O 2 such Couped and Irradicated Pale ways. By *Dorgello*, an *Italian*.

LXXXV. He beareth Azure, **two Billets raguled and trunked, in Cross.** Or **two Billets in Cross raguled and trunked.** When Stocks or Billets are raguled at both ends they are ever set one contrary to the other. 2 Faggot Sticks raguled and trunked. By the name of *Woodmunger*.

G two such in Salter A is the Coat Armour of *Holtzell*.

O 2 in Salter S born by *Berka zu Taub van Leipt*.

A 2 in Salter irradicated S born by *Tettingen*.

A 2 plain Stocks in Salter, couped at both ends G is born by *Waldeck*.

LXXXVI. He beareth Gules, a **Faggot, or Pile of Wood bound up,** Or, **Wreathed,** Argent. Others term it 5 pieces of Cord-Wood bound together: Others according to the Coats they are in, term them either a bunch of Faggots, a bunch of Laths, or a bunch of Sticks. This belongs to the Coat of the Company of *Wood men*: Also is a part of the Coat of the Company of *Slaters*; Where in the first, it is called a Bunch of Faggots or Billets; in the latter a Bunch of Laths. The like out of a Coronet, is the Crest of *Brandt*.

LXXXVII. He beareth Argent, a **Thorn, or a withered Haythorn,** Sable. By the name of *Thornby*.

A 3 **Thornholms** on as many Mounts V is born by *Thornholme* of *York-shire*

LXXXVIII. He beareth Argent, **within a Wreath or Crown of Thorns,** Sable; **three Roman Letters,** *viz.* X P S, which are the Symbolical Letters of Christ; and is as much as to say *CHRISTUS*, others expound the X to be *Christus*, P for *Populorum*, and S for *Salvator*, see *chap.* 1. *numb.* 3. that is Christ the Saviour of the People.

LXXXIX. He beareth Gules, **a long Cross of a Log of a Tree, couped of all four,** Argent, **fretted with a Crown of Thorns,** Sable. This is also Blazoned Christs Cross couped; because the bottom part is longer then the cross piece is. This is born by the name of *Mazarin*.

XC. He beareth Or, **a Stock couped at both ends,** Sable. Others call it a Log or Chub of Wood, the bottom of a Tree sawed off. Born by the name of *Chubbey*.

Such a piece of Wood belongs to the Crest of *Middleton* of *Leighton*, with an Ape sitting upon it, and chained to it, all proper.

B the like in Base O with a Peacock standing on it, is the Coat and Crest of *Van Poppendorf*.

3. WE shall after Trees, and there several parts and members, proceed to Roots and Grain, and shew how they are in whole or part born in Coats of Arms.

XCI. He beareth Sable, **a Turnepp**, Argent, **Leaves** Vert. Some term it a Turnepp root. This is born by the name of *Garmes*.

G the like proper, a Chief O born by *Turpine*.

B 3 such A is born by *Rubben van Pheilberg*.

G one A is born by *Van Ceutescach*.

XCII. He beareth Argent, **a Potata (or a ground Artichoke, or a Jerusalem Artichoke root,)** proper. that is of a sanguine coloured skin, but under it of a pure white. This is born by the name of *Groundling*.

O 3 such born by *Graling*, alias *Grouling*.

XCIII. He beareth Argent, **a Carrat**, Or, **Leaves** or **Wisalls**, Vert. The tops of Carrats and Parsnips are by Gardiners termed Wisalls, and some Wisomes, so then according to the terms of Art, the Carrat is Or, Wisalled Vert. Born by *Carrate*.

The **Parsnip** is the same to the Carrat, but of a white colour; the Flowers are white, in Umbells.

The **Radish** the same, only white at the bottom of the root, and a deep Blood colour on the higher part, next to the Wisalls or Leaves.

G 3 Parsnips is the Coat of *Van Bilritsch*.

XCIV. He beareth Sable, **a Mandrake**, proper. The *Hebrew* Rabbins or Doctors say, this was the Coat in the Standard of the Tribe of *Reuben*; which may probably be gathered from that saying in *Genesis* 30. 14. *that Reuben went out in the days of Wheat Harvest, and found Mandrakes in the fields*.

Mechoachan hath such a kind of Forked root, but not twisted or wreathed together. It hath a Stalk of diverse colours, as yellow, greenish, reddish, the Fruit is like a Grape.

XCV. He beareth Azure, **a demy Mandrake**, Argent, **the top**, Vert. Some describe the Mandrake to be the direct shape and proportion of a Man or Woman, and that it hath extraordinary Virtue in it; which St. *Augustine* hath written much against. Of some it is called *Circea*; it bears an Apple of sweet smell, which of some is called the Apple of the Earth, there is of this both Male and Female, the first hath like leaves to the Beet; the other to the Lettise. This is born by the name of *Mandevile*.

XCVI. He beareth Gules, **a Garlick head**, Argent, **the Bladds**, Vert. Some term it a head of Garlick shanked Vert. By the name of *Garlich*.

The heads of Garlick are divided into so many cotes or houses, which they call Cloves of Garlick, each of which being parted and set in a Garden will encrease to a full head again, which thing the Onion will not do.

The **Onyon** is the same, only the head round, and not distinguished by Cloves; for the Bolls of the heads of Garlick, are termed Cloves, and the Onion it is termed the Coats or Pils.

The **Leek** is like the Onion; so are **Chibols** and The **Thynes**, but of a lesser growth.

The **Scalion** is like to Garlick in taste and smell, but in Stalk and Leaves resembles the Onion.

XCVII. He beareth Sable, **a Mushroom or Toad-stool**, Argent. The Mushroom is much eaten by the Gentry, especially in *Ireland*; but as it may delight one, so it may be Poison to another.

There are several kinds of these Mushrooms, as the **Puffe** or **Brawne** of the Earth, growing most under ground. The **Goats Beard**, of which there are the reddish one and the spungy one, and the Pepper tasted one. The **Fly-Bane** and the **Fus-Ball**, with several others, whose form of growth are like the examples following. This is generally called the Field Mushroom or Garden Mushroom.

G 3 such in Triangle, the roots in Fesse conjoined A is the Coat of *Lemminger* of *Bavaria*.

XCVIII. He beareth Argent, **the House Mushroom** proper, those that grow in old, rotten decayed Houses, or on perishing Trees, out of Walls that receive Water, and on decayed and ruinous Timber Foundations, *&c.* are of a swarthy tawny colour, which upon long growth turn to a Black; of these there are several sorts; the **folding** or **changeable** Mushroom, the **Stone** Mushroom, the **branched** Mushroom, and the **ragged** Mushroom; yet are generally of this form, only some round and flat, others copped rising to a point, and others like long Hatters Blocks, or capped tanks, *i. e.* Hats with Brims.

XCIX. He beareth Or, **an Head of Garlick, bladded and seeded.** The outward skin or rind that covers the Cloves of Garlick, is of a sanguinish white colour. This is born by the name of *Trauner*.

The **Moly**, or **wild Garlick** hath leaves like a Tulip, with some bulbs sometimes growing at the end, sometime on the stalk, which being set, will produce a Plant of the same kind; the stalk is naked without leaves, round and smooth, bearing a great umbel or tuft, of small Star-like Purple flowers upon equal foot-stalks.

The **Indian Moly**, the Stalk hath no Flowers, but only bears a Cluster of reddish scaly Bulbs, each as big as an Acorn standing on foot-stalks, which being set, will produce a Plant of its own kind.

The **Moly of Hungary** hath the Bulbs as aforesaid, of a red colour, which breaketh forth into a Flower like the wild Garlick or Moly, of a pale purple colour.

Serpents Moly hath the Bulbs on the head of the Stalks redder; and the small green leaves twine and crawl, from whence it took its name; the Flowers which grow among the Bulbs are very beautiful.

The **Mountain Moly** hath a tuft of yellow Star-like flowers, greenish on the back, with yellow threads in the middle: Others of this kind have Purple flowers tipt with yellow: Others white flowers.

The **Spanish Silver cupped Moly** hath a Stalk proceeding from 2 or 3 rush like leaves, on which is an head of flower on long foot stalks, which spread much open, of a shining Silver colour, with lines on both sides the leaves, in fashion small and hollow, like a Cup.

The **Sweet Moly** hath 3 or 4 small Bent like leaves, the

the ſtalk bearing many Star-like Flowers; which if the Summer be hot, ſmell like Musk or Civet.

A 3 ſuch Garlick heads proper. Born by *Garlick*.

There is another way of bearing the Garlick without the Seed, which is alſo ſet down in this quarter; and are born by *Knobloch* in *Francford*, *viz.* Sable one in Pale, the other two in Salter, the Blades reverſed Argent.

C. He beareth Argent, **a Dag-ſtone flower, leaves and root**, proper. The Flower is like the **Snap-Dragon**, being many of them together, riſing higher and higher to a point at the top, of a Purple colour. This is generally known by the name of **Prieſt-Pintle**, or **Goat-Stones**, whoſe Flowers are variable, as white, bluſh colour, light Purple, and ſpotted.

4. FROM Roots fit for Mans Uſe, we come to grain, the ſtaff and ſtay of all rational Creatures, and that is Corn of all ſorts; now how they are born in Arms either whole or parted, theſe few examples following will manifeſt.

☞ Where note, that Corn, if it be born Black, it is termed ſuch a Grain *Blaſted* or Mildewed, and ſo needs no mentioning of its colour.

CI. He beareth Azure, **on a Mount**, Vert, **a Wheat Ear, Stalked and Bladed**, Or. Some ſay, a Wheat ſtalk *Bladed* and Eared. 3 on a Hill in *Baſe*, is born by *Garzon* of *Venice*.

Indian Coſtick, Tree, Stalk and Ear, is made directly like to the Wheat.

French Wheat, or **Buck Wheat**, hath a reddiſh Stalk, ſet with leaves on a ſtalk, broad and round, and biforked at bottom, ſmall and pointed at the end, at the top in Branches are diverſe cluſters of ſmall white flowers, which turn to triangular blackiſh ſeed.

CII. He beareth Vert, **a Wheat Ear**, Or. 3 ſuch Seeds are born by *Grainer*.

Maſlin, it is not one kind of Corn, but a mixture of Wheat and Rye.

Blanche, is a kind of Wheat that is hard and thick, it will not be driven from its husk, except it be fried or parched.

Furmenty is a Wheat husked and boyled.

Goats Wheat, it is a Wheat without any husk, much like to our Greats or Furmentie.

Typh Wheat, it is very like to our Rye, it is of an unpleaſant taſte, and doth make very black Bread.

Er. 2 Flanches B on each 3 Wheat Ears couped Or; is born by the name of *Greyby*.

B 3 Ears of **Ginny Wheat** bladed and couped Or, is born by the name of *Grandorge*

Per pale G and A 5 ſuch Ears in Feſſe Stalks couped V born by *Van Holden*.

Per Feſſe B and O on a hill in Baſe V two Marigolds between 3 ſuch ears is the Coat and Creſt of *Roge*.

CIII. He beareth Gules, **a Rye Stalk Bladed and Eared**, Or. Born by *Riſley*.

G 3 ſuch on a Bend S born by *Rye* or *Rey*.

*

Barly hath a longer and rougher **aulne** or awne, or beard than **Rye**.

Secourgion is a lean, wrinkled and ſtarved Corn, ſomewhat like unto Barley.

Amel-corn is a Grain between Wheat and Barley.

CIV. He beareth Or, **a Ginny Wheat Ear**, Gules, **Stalk and leaves**, Vert. Or, **a Ginny Wheat ſlipped and bladed**. It is alſo termed **Indian**, or **Turky Wheat**, the ſtalk is full of joints, from each with the leaf, ſprung an ear, which hath a huſk of many leaves folded over them, with a Buſh of threads or hair hanging down at the ends, which when they are ripe, are to be cut off, and the Ear will appear.

CV. He beareth Or, **a Peaſe-cod pendant**, Vert. 3 ſuch is born by the name of *Codwore*.

The **Tare-Cod**, the **Fitch-Cod** this will ſerve for, being all after one form of making.

The **Bean-cod**, the **Lentill-Cod**, the **Lupine-Cod**, and the **Kidney-Bean-Cod**, are all alike, ſave the end is more fuller and rounder than the **Peaſe**; ſee *chap.* 5. *numb.* 87. the leaves are winged leaves, ſharp pointed, but the **Vitch** and **Tare** have them long and narrow winged, with round points.

In this quarter is another ſort of Garbe, or rather a Faſce or Bundle of Graſs tyed up; and theſe kind of bearings are much in uſe by the *Germans*, or elſe they make all their Garbes thus, which is contrary to all Nations.

S 3 ſuch O is the Coat and Creſt of *Buecheim*.

Per Feſſe A and B 3 ſuch O is born by *Treyen van Derr*.

CVI. He beareth Azure, **a Garbe**, Or. termed alſo **a Wheat Sheaf**, or **a Sheaf of Corn**, let it be a Sheaf or any kind of grain, or any thing tied up in form of a Sheaf; to name it a Garbe of ſuch and ſuch a thing will ſuffice; ſee *chap.* 18. *numb.* 43. This belongs to the Worſhipful Sir *Thomas Greſvenor*, of *Eaton* in *Cheſhire*, Barronet; of whoſe full Atchievement I ſhall ſpeak hereafter.

B 3 ſuch O was the Coat Armour of *Randle Bohune*, the third Earl of *Cheſter* of that name, called *Randle Blundeville*; the Son of *Hugh Bohune*, otherwiſe called *Kevelock* the fifth Earl of *Cheſter* after the Conqueſt, and the ſecond of that name, who did bear for his Coat B 6 Garbes O.

O on a Feſſe engraled B 3 ſuch O born by *Marbury* of the *Mere*.

G 3 ſuch A on a Chief B a Lion paſſant A by *Rutter* of *Kingſley*.

G 2 Helmets A and a Garbe O born by *Cholmundeley* of *Cholmundeley*.

B a Cheveron betwixt 3 Garbes O by *Hatton* of *Hatton*.

Er. a Cheveron B betwixt 3 ſuch O by *Maſterſon* of *Namptwich*.

B a Feſſe G betwixt 3 ſuch O born by *Sandbach* of *Sandbach*.

S 3 ſuch O a Bordure A by *Birkenhead* of *Huxley* and *Back-ford*.

CVII. He beareth Argent, **a Garb dejected**, Vert; **with a Cock ſtanding thereon, to the ſiniſter**, Gules; it

it is also termed **a Wheat Sheaf dejectant, or thrown down, or debased.** This is the Crest of *Williams* of *Anglesey*, and *London*, Herald-Painter.

CVIII. He beareth Gules, **a Garbe**, Or, **with an Adder or Serpent through the top of it, his head aloft, and the tail surrounding it**, Vert. Others, **an Adder enwrapped about a Garbe.** This Crest pertains to Esquire *Dod*, of *Edge*.

CIX. He beareth Azure, **a Garbe**, Or, **banded or wreathed**, Gules. By the name of *Gravenor*, of *Ower*, in *Shropshire*.

CX. He beareth Gules, **a Garbe**, Or, **banded with Roses**, Argent.

☞ Sometime you may find the Garbe bound with a Garter, the ends flourishing abroad; some wreathed or wrapped about with Adders, and such like, which you must be careful to observe and name. This is born by the name of *Gargarle*.

CXI. He beareth Azure, **a Garland of Wheat**, Or. Some term it a Garland or Chaplet of Wheat Ears, or Ears of Corn, made into a Garland. This is the Crest of the *Whitebakers* Company; being held up by two naked Arms issuant out of a Cloud.

CXII. He beareth Argent, **a Fasce of Palme**, Vert, **banded with a Garter or Ribbon, in form of a Garbe**, Gules, **out of a Coronett**, Or. Some term it a **Fascicle**, from *Fascis*, and *Fasciculus*, a Bundle of Sticks bound up, or an handful of any thing bound together in a little Bundle. This is born by the name of *Van Hurson*.

CXIII. He beareth Argent, **a bunch or tuft of jagged Grass.** Or five Piles of jagged Grass in a tuft. Some are so exact, as thus to number them; and considering the numerous ways of bearing Grass, it stands us sometimes upon, for distinction sake, to number the **Piles.** Three such is born by the name of *Tindesly*, alias *Tinsley*.

The like out of a Coronet, is the Crest of *Van Ernaw* and *Naethir*.

The like A on a Cap B turned up A is the Crest of *Luxen*.

CXIV. He beareth Argent, **a Fox Tail Grass.** Of some termed a **Reed-grass**, or **Cats tail grass**, or **Horse-tail**, or **Feather-grass**, and **Tufted-grass** slipped.

The **Horse-tail grass** hath a green spiked head, long and slender.

CXV. He beareth Or, **a Pease leaf slipped with two Blossoms.** The Pease leaf is three together, the highermost at a little distance from the two under, which are fixed in a manner close to the stalk of it under. Born by the name of *Pezs*.

The **Fenugreek** bears the like, only the leaves round, and the cod long, and slender like a Kidney Bean.

CXVI. He beareth Argent, **an Oat-stalk Bladed and Rizomed.** The Corn in the Oats are not called Ears, but Rizomes; though of Old I have seen the Blazon to be, an Oat Ear Bladed.

A **Reed** hath a jaggy head like an Oat, but more thick and closer, and Spike headed, of a kind of deep brown Purple. The Reed is between an Herb and a Tree, but in growth is above the Herb, yet nothing in strength to a Tree; it is without very smooth and plain, save the Knots where the leaves grow, but within is like an empty Vessel; it is carried and bent on every side by the Wind.

CXVII. He beareth Or, **a Lavender flowered**, proper. The knot or knaps of Lavender are of a blewish colour; see *chap. 5. numb. 69.* By the name of *Lavenuer*.

CXVIII. He beareth Argent, **a tuft of Grass**; a single Grass is called a Pile, and many together are a tuft or knot of Grass. Born by *Grassey*.

There is a kind of **Grass in Babilon**, which is like Cane or Reed, which being tasted or eaten of Cattel, Killeth them. And in the Hill *Parnassus*, there groweth another kind of Grass more thick and rank than the other, and of better size, for it beareth a Leaf like Ivy.

In *Cilicia* there is a kind of Grass which is called **Heracha**, which grows in Hedges, about Walls and Vines, whose Leaf is like **Mercury Herb**, and is full of Brisdles.

Rushes are like hereunto, called also **Rush-Grass**; but they are generally round.

CIX. He beareth Argent, **in Base (or issuing out of Base) Sedges or Reeds, with three tops or Spears out of the same**, proper. This is the Crest of *Barnardiston*, with a Crane in the same, proper.

The like in Base with 2 tops bending to the Dextor and Sinister Chief, in a Field A is the Coat and Crest of *Melhosen*.

CXX. He beareth Argent, **a Spear Reed**, Vert, **the top** Sable. These are termed also **Sedges, Flaggs** or **Water-flaggs.** Three such is born by *Sacklich*.

Per Fesse A and V 3 Reed Spear heads issuant, and a Fesse counterchanged, is the Coat of *Mermoser* of *Bavaria*.

A on a Mount in Base 3 Reed Spears (sans leaves or sedges) born by the name of *Van Uttingen* of the same Province.

A 2 Spear Reeds, single sedged and couped in Salter proper, a point G born by *Mosaw* in the Province of *Tyrold*.

G on a Mount in Base V 3 Spear Reed heads (sans Sedges) O born by *Murhaimer*.

Per Pale O and B 6 Reed heads falling from one stalk, each side three counterchanged. Born by *Van Panhesmio*.

O on a hill in Base V 3 Spear Reeds double sedged or leased; is born by *Liesch*.

On a Coronet 3 Spear Reeds, banded in the middle, ends flotant O is the Crest of *Van Holdingen* of *Westphalia*.

7 Spear Reeds, one G another A alternately (or by turns one after another) is the Crest of *Van Krabewinkle*.

Typerus, or **English Galingal**, or the **Bull-rush** hath in the top a few short leaves, out of which proceed (on small stalks) many panicles, or chaffy green spikes, or ears of small leaves.

Camell Day Rush hath the top of divers brownish or purple husks, which cast forth Mossy white threads, or downy hairs.

The **Great Rush**, or **Bull Rush**, called of some, the **Sons Bow**, the *Romans* call it the **Sea Bull-rush**, because it groweth best in moist grounds; there be two kinds, one hath a square top or Crown very plain withall; the other is rather Spear-like, and sharp topped.

TO

The Right Honorable *Robert* LORD *Bulkley* of *Bewmaris* in *Anglesey*, *VISCOUNT CASHALL* in the Realm of *IRELAND*:

And to

RICHARD BULKLEY His Son and *HEIR* apparent.

AMongst others to whom I owe Service, I must acknowledge You not the least, but chief in Vertues, the experience whereof makes me to presume the presentation, of this my Service in the Dedication of this Chapter and Plate to your Pious memory, not doubting of the favourable acceptance from him who is your much Obliged Servant,

Randle Holme.

CHAP. IV.

1. AFter Trees and Herbs Nutritive, let us proceed to such as are of less use to Nature; but more delightsome and for pleasure: and those are Flowers of all sorts, whereof some for the Eye, others for scent, and others for the adorning of houses, or other pleasureable uses; as making of Crowns, and Garlands; from which use they received their names of Coronarie herbs. Of which Herbs and Flowers I shall give some few examples, of the several ways of Bearing them and then shew you the Flowers, and Leaves they bring forth, according to their several kinds.

I. He beareth Argent, an **Unifoile** Vert. This is Born by the name of *Unifoile* or *Unfall*. This is an Herb that never hath more then one Leaf from a Root, till it Shute to a Seed which comes from the middle of it, then it hath but two at the most; it is also called **one blade**, by *Johnson* in his Herbal. *trib.* 5. *cap.* 14.

☞ Some Blazon this a **Unifoile Slipped**, but that is needless; for this, the **Dufoile**, and **Trefoile**, all of them, have them naturally.

II. He beareth Argent, a **Dufoile or Twyfoile**, Vert, **Flowered**, Purpure. The Flower is like that which we commonly call, **Dog stones** or **Pinell-pintle**, but more spireing. This is borne by the name of *Dunfoile*

O 3 such Leaves slipped V is born by the name of *Twybride*.

III. He beareth Sable, a **Trefoile** Or; In the Herbal this is called, a **Feild hony Suckle leaf, or short Vine**, or a **Clover Grass**, it is of sweet smell: some term it a **three Leafed Grass slipt**, which is from the *Dutch* Blazoning, who in their Coats, bear the **Trefoile** very much without the Stalk or Slip: but such Coats are rare here in *England*. This is born by the name of *Tremoil*.

O 3 such V Born by *Barrin*.

G on a Bend A 3 such V Born by *Harvey*.

B on a Mount in Base 3 such their Slips in point (or joyned at the bottom) O Born by *Muelich*.

O on a cheif G 3 such O Born by *Barville* of *Lester*.

Per pale G and O on a cheif Indented A 3 such V by *Gilham*.

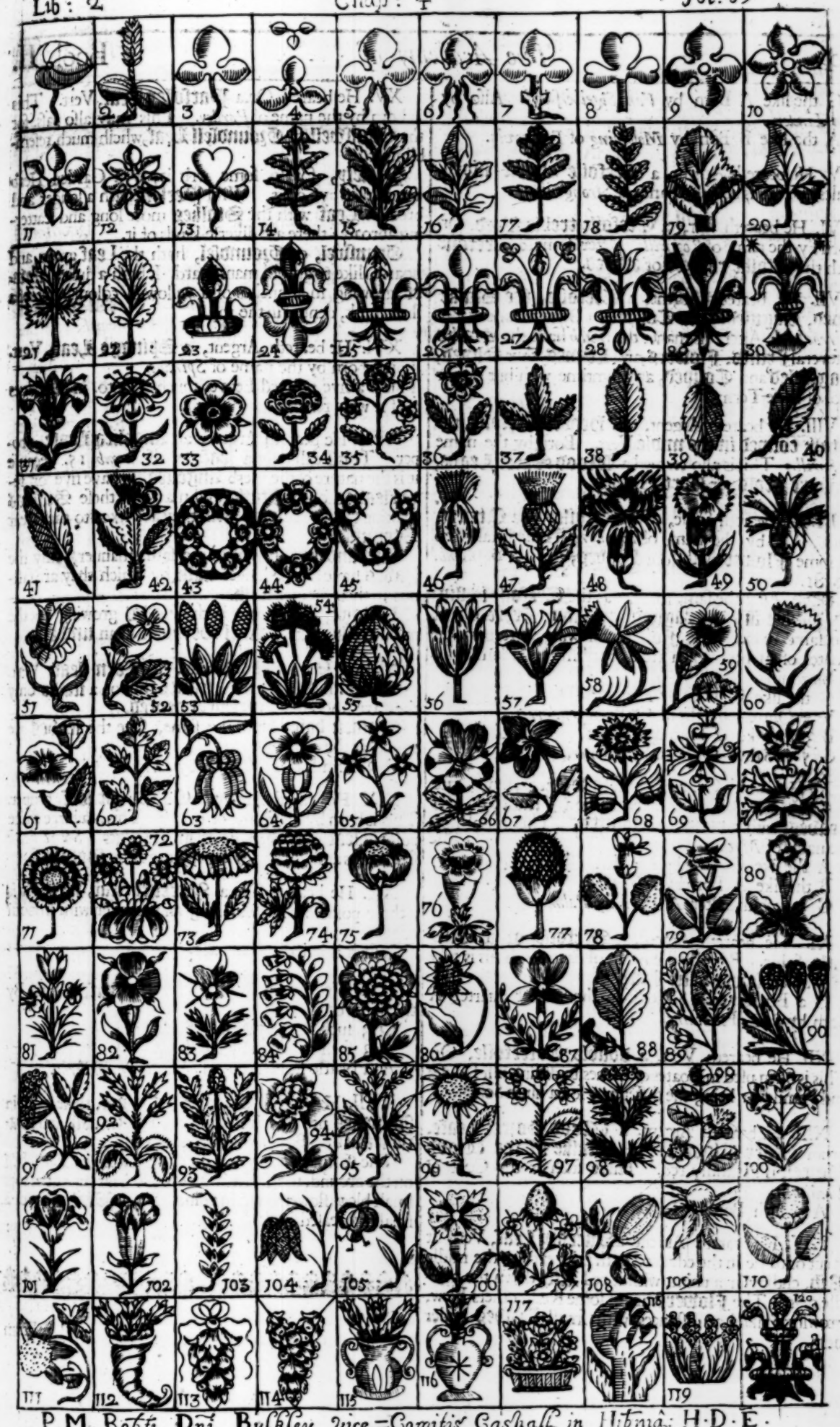
A 3 such S Born by *Champney*.

V 10 such A by *Mare* of *Bankhall*.

IV. He beareth Argent, a **Trefoile Sans slipt**, Sable. This is born by the name of *Schekich*.

G the like O Born by *Van Lencenfeld*.

A 3 such S Born by the Earl of *Bucceclaine*, in *Germany*.



P.M. Robti Dni Bulkley vice-Comitis Cashall in Hibnia: H·D·E·

G the like A Born by *Van Skreibersdorf.* Also by *Van Linden.*

A the like B Born by *Molebling* of *Francovia.*

V. He beareth Argent, a **Trefoile double sliped,** Gules. This is born by the name of *Strongvile.*

VI. He beareth Or, a **Trefoile treble sliped,** Or. Born by the name of *Roswell.* After some, a **Trefoile** with the **Stalke** [illegible] or **erased.**

VII. He beareth Argent, a **Trefoile, the Stalke sliped, ragguled, and Couped.** By the name of *Harraghan.* After this maner the *Dutch* have the **Stalks** of several **Fruits, Flowers,** and **Leaves,** thus **Sliped, Ragguled** and **Couped,** and somtime with but one or two of these Terms.

VIII. He beareth Argent, an **Heart Trefoile, the Stalk couped in the midle** Vert. Born by the name of *Smill.* This is also termed a **Wood Sorel Leaue,** or **Hart grass, or Hart Clover.**

IX. He beareth Sable, a **Caterfoile,** or a **Quater foile,** Born by the name of *Foreign.* This is taken to be some **Flower** with four **Leaves,** as *chap. 6. numb.* 80. 81.

After the same manner as the **Trefoile is sliped, double sliped, ragged** &c. **and Fretted;** in the same maner these **Foiles** following, are born in Coates of Armes, which are to be termed the same way in Blazoning.

G the like O Born by *Row.*

V 3 Ourterfoiles sliped O Born by *Spratt.*

B 3 the like A Born by *Vincent.*

G 5 in Salter O Born by *Palmar.*

X. He beareth Or, a **Cinquefoile** Azure, some write is **Cinkfoile.** This is taken to be a **Flower of five Leaves,** either **round** or **pointed.** This is Born by the name of *Mutton.*

A the like G Born by *Powcher.*

B the like A Born by *Bessington.*

G 5 such in Salter A Born by *Palmer.*

XI. He beareth Argent, a **Sexfoile, or a Sisefoile,** Sable. Born by the name of *Sextill.* This is taken to be a **Flower of six Leaves.**

G a Bend, and a Sisefoile in the Sinister quarter A Born by *De La Fountaine.*

XII. He beareth Vert, a **double Caterfoile,** Or. This is often used in Coates of Armes, to distinguish Houses and Famileys: being the difference for a ninth Son.

XIII. He beareth Argent, a **Wood Sorel Leafe,** or an **Heart Clover.** The **Stalke of the Wood Sorel,** is naturally red. Three such is the Coat of *Tredisgin.*

A 6 such Born by *Lassels.*

XIV. He beareth Argent, a **Succory Leaf,** Vert. It is cut or torne in the edges on both sides even to the midle **Rib,** ending in a point, with a red **Rib,** down the middle of it. The **Flowers** are of some Red, others Blew, growing Spiked at distances with small **Leaves** under them.

XV. He beareth Or, a **Parsley Leaf,** Vert. This is born by the name of *Parkey.* This may also pass, for the **Grunswell, or Groundsell Leaf,** which much resembling it.

Perkely, for so some writ it, is a Garden Herb much used by Cooks. **Wild Perkely** hath a longer and broader **Leaf** with the **Stalkes** more long and scattering abroad: there are diverse kinds of it.

Grunswel, or Groundsel, hath the **Leaf** green and hoarie, like to an old mans beard. It hath a dusky flower growing in branches of a yellowish colour, out of a short husk, dented in the top.

XVI. He beareth Argent, a **Spinage Leaf,** Vert. This is born by the name of *Spinage.*

This is a five pointed Leave, much cut into, in the edges as if it were rent.

XVII. He beareth Argent, an **Angelica Leafe,** proper. This I call only a **leaf,** as also *numb.* 15. because it is the nature of the Herb **Angelica** to have five or seven **leaves** on a **Stalk,** and many of these **Stalkes** making but one **branch** when they are fixed to the great **Stemme.**

Allexanders, grow after the same manner, only the **leaves** have a little longer **stalk,** by which they are fastned to their greater **stalk.**

Lovage, is the same, with **Seeds** growing on the mean **stalke,** like **Fennel Seeds** all in an **umbell.**

XVIII. He beareth Argent, a **Fern leaf,** Vert. **Spleenworth** have the **leaves** thus on a **stalke** only they are smooth not **nicked** or **dented.**

Maiden hair, hath the same, save the **leaves** are round at the end.

O 3 Fern leaves V Born by *Fernall.*

XIX. He beareth Argent, a **Colts foot leaf,** proper. This is born by the name of *Colton* This is a large three pointed **leaf** with deep dents in the edges. Some have five points and tune up in the leaf near the **foot stalk.**

XX. He beareth Or, a **Mercury leaf,** Vert. It is a three pointed **leaf,** but long and slender with smooth edges.

3 such is born by *Marvaile.*

XXI. He beareth Argent, a **Nettle leaf,** proper. By the name of *Stringer*

O 3 such Born by *Nettle* of *Malpass.*

A 3 such G Born by *Malherbe.*

A a Nettle Bunch couped. Born by *Mallerby.*

XXII. He beareth Or, a **Betony leaf,** these grow in **Bunches** near the ground like the **Primrose** and **Daisie leaves.** Born by the name of *Betty.*

The **Endive leaf** is waved and groweth in **Bunches** on the ground, the **stalk** is **Bunched** bearing at the top small blew flowers, cut in points, like a **Pink,** out of a small six leafed husk

From

2. FRom Leaves we come to Flowers, and shall begin with the Flower de lis being the fairest for shew, though the *English* Rose out passeth it for smell.

XXIII. He beareth Gules, a **flower de lis Couped**, Argent. Some write it, **flower deluce**; others **flower de-lice**, or a **luce** or **lis**: and so it hath been ancient: Argent, a **lice**, or **de lis**, Sable.

This is a *Dutch* Coat, and is born by the name of *Dalmhubt*.

And such a like A is the Crest of *Bindemoner*.

Per Fesse A and G 2 Roses, and the bottom of a de lis conjoyned to the Fesses line, Counterchainged born by the name of *Goldly*.

G a Fesse O a de lis issuant, and a Mullet of six points in Base A. Is born by the name of *Walter*.

XXIV. He beareth Argent, a **Dutch flower de lis** Azure. I call this a **Dutch de lis**, because those Heralds there, generally make them after this form.

This is born by the name of *Van Freislinger*.

A the like G is born by the name of *Morden*.

Per Fesse G and S the like A is born by the name of *Buben Hansen*.

B the like A Born by the name of *Digby*.

V the like A born by the name of *Fouk*. and *Van Behem*.

Quarterly B and A the same Counterchanged. Is born by the name *Behem*.

XXV. He beareth Azure, a **flower de lis**, Or. By the name of *Stanwater*.

B 3 such O is the Armes of *France*. Also *Cantelo*.

Quarterly G and O in the first and last three such A. Born by *Massy* of *Puddington* in *Wirrall*. And of *Codainguton*.

B a Fesse between three such Or. Is Born by Sir. *Peter Leicester* of *Tabley* Baronet.

B a Fesse G fretted O between the same. Is born by *Leicester* of *Tost*.

Per pale G and O a Flower de lis Counterchainged. By *Cornburgh*.

G a Flower de lis in Bend A. Is born by *Istein*.

XXVI. He beareth Sable, a **flower de lis**, Argent. This is a **de lis**, made after the old maner; and therefore shall say no more of it, but shew you it form, and figure.

XXVII. He beareth Gules, a **flower de lis**, Argent, **seeded** Sable. This is born by the name *Wadsword*. Others will term it, a **de lis**, between each **leaf a trefoile**. Mr. *Morgan lib.* 1 *fol.* 21. give an example of this kind of **flower de lis**, but add no more to them, (but a **flower de lis, stalks**, and **slipped**,) as if the **Trefoiles** (which they are not) were appurtinant to it. See *numb.* 29

XVIII. He beareth Azure, **three Lyllies in form of a Flower de lis**, Argent. But the most proper Blazon for this, is to term it, a **Flower de lis**, (which it is, as to the principle part of it) composed of **three Tulipa's**, or **Lillyes**, or what else soever the heads are off. And such **Flowers** as these, I have seen of two colours: which you may thus Blazon: a **Flower de lis**, Vert, composed of **three Tulipa's**, Argent. This is born by the name of *Walsingham*.

XXIX. He beareth Argent, a **Flower de lis**, Gules, between each **leafe**, a **Staffe holding of a penon**, Azure. This is born by the name of *Don John Virillo a Spaniard*.

Thus have many *French*, *Dutch*, *Spanish*, and *Italian* Coats, things between the **Leaves** of the head of the **Flower de lis**, with either **Stalkes** or **Staves**: at whose points are **Stars, Roses, Caterfoils**, & **long seeds** as in **Gilliflowers**, and **Tulipa's**, which is accordingly named.

XXX. He beareth Argent, a **Cuped Flower de lis**, Azure, **Seeded in form of Stars**. This is also termed the open **Flower de lis**; or the **Losenge-like de lis**. This is born by the name of *Van Claubitz*.

XXXI. He beareth Azure, a **Bulbous Lilly or Flower de lis**, Argent, **Stalke slipped**, and **bladed** (or **leafed**) Vert, **Seeded** Sable. *Pliny* saith that the **Lilly** is next to the **Rose**, for fairness of colour, and sweetness of smell; for vertue and effect in its working: therefore the *Spouse* in the Canticles, *Cant.* 2. 1. is compared to it. *Gwilliams fol.* 154. terms this a **Lilly**, but I judge it more properly to be termed a **Flower de lis slipped**, &c. For it is the true **de lis**, as it groweth. See the **Lilly** is another thing *numb.* 32. and 57. and so *Morgan lib* 1. *fol.* 23. 27. doth make them.

The **Iris** or **Flower de lis**, hath flaggy leaves standing upright, out of the middle of one of them proceeds a short weak foot-stalke, with a flower first covered with a thin yellowish *Skin*, containing nine leaves, (as all Flowers de Luces doe) whereof three stand upright, and are short and closed together having broad pointed tops: the the three that fall down turn up their ends, having a yellow thrumy substance, or strip down a good part of the middle of the leafe: three other leaves are Arched, which cover the bottomes of the three standing, and the tops of the three falling leaves. These are of diverse colours, as White, Yellow, Blew or Sky colour, Ash, Red, and Peach colour, others variously striped on the leaves. This is most properly called the **Bulbous Flower de luce**, of some, a **Chamolet**.

The *English* **Bulbous Flower de luce** have thick long leaves **Crested** on the back, and hollow on the other side: the stalk beareth on the top out of a thin Skinny hose, one or two Flowers, composed of nine leaves; three turn down, which are longer, and broader then all the rest, each having a yellow freez, or thrum near the bottome; the three arched leaves which cover the lower parts of the falling leaves, turning up again in the ends, which are nicked or divided into two parts, and the three standing leaves are small at bottome and broad at the top, of a deep Blew or Sky colour. Some of this kind have them white, yellow, purple, others with the falling leaves white, the Arched leaves Silver colour, and the standing leaves of a blush purple. Others there are which have the falling leave circled with blew, the Arched pale blew, & those standing purple. Others have the falling leaves yellow, Arched

Arched Sky colour, and top leaves murrey, with other varieties for which the Flowerists have peculiar names.

The **Water flag, Flower de Luce**, the Flower is yellow having three falling leaves, each haveing a freez or fring at the bottome, three Arched leaves, and in place of the three standing, this Flower hath only three short peices standing up.

The **Flower de luce** of *Tripoly*, hath on the top of the Stalk three or four long narrow leaved Gold yellow flowers, in fashion like the **Bulbous Flower de luce**, others are of a bright blew.

The **Flower de luce** of *Lusus*, or the variable **Flower de luce**, hath a thick tunt nhin narrow long leaves, the stalk hath four or five or more flowers one above another: the lower leaves are variable marked with white and bleu, the Arched and top leaves are light blew.

The **double Flower de luce**, the flowers seems like many thrust together, coming confusedly out of one husk; some having the distinct form, others no form nor fashion of a flower de luce, they are white veined, on the blew leaves Some of these are purple, white, and Straw colour.

The stinking **Gladwin**, is a kind of a wild **Flower de luce**, having flag leaves with sharp edges and thick in the middle, the stalk beares three or four flowers at the top, made somewhat like the **flower dowce**, having three upright leaves of a dead or sullen purplish ashi colour, with some veins in them: the three falling leaves and the Arch leaves, in this flower stand out asunder one from the other.

This is born by the name of *Morvein*.

S 3 such A is the Armes of *Winchester Colledge*. But Mr. *Morgan* makes them without leaves.

3 such out of a Coronet, is the Crest of *Van Thell.r*.

XXXII. He beareth Or, a **Lilly** Argent, **Stalk slipt**, and **bladed**, Vert; **Seeded**, Sable. There is two sorts of **Lillyes**, the one groweth with turned leaves half round much after the nature of the turn Cap: the other with leaves upright after the **Tulipa**, but sharper at the stalk, *se numb 56. 57*. So that for distinction this were best termed an **open Lilly, or Lilly flower**, this sort being no other colour, but, white, and the **close Lilly** of several colours, as White, Orenge, &c. This is born by the name of *Lilly*.

B 3 such the Stalks slipt. Born by the name of *Beauty*.

3. FROM the Lilly of the Valley we come to the Rose of Charon. And they are several as,

The **Damask Rose**, of a purple colour so is the **Velvet Rose**.

The **Yellow Rose**, single and double.

The **Rosa mundi**, white veined or striped with red.

The **Varbled Rose**, is a light red veined with a deeper.

The **Hungarian Rose**, is of a pale red with many faint spots spread over the inner double leaves.

The **Dwarfe Rose**, or **Gilliflower Rose**, have small flowers yet very double, which in the bud are as if they were cut, and are of a **Carnation**.

The **double Musk Rose**, one rising out of the middle of the other: or the **Rose in Rose**, being a small **double Rose** of a deep red or **Carnation**, with large great **Bearbes** representing **Winged leaves**, or **Jagged** leaves, rising out of an other larger **Rose**, of the same form, with a small foot stalk. I have seen Roses thus, of three heights, the highest being least.

The **Monthly Rose**, of the purple colour, it bears three times in the year

The *York* and *Landcaster* **Rose**, is half white, half red in the leaves: but in Herauldry it is a white **Rose**, in a red **Rose**.

The **Scarlet Rose** of *Austria*, hath one side of the **Rose leaves** Scarlet, and the other side of a pale Brimston. colour

The **Musk Rose**, grow many together, and the first leaves larger then the inner, which are small and very double; being whitish or of a Cream colour.

The **Eglantine Rose**, is the **Sweet briar Rose**, which is white; some edged with red, there are both single and double Flowers of them.

The **Virgin Rose**, it without thorns, the leaves in the inner side of a pale blush colour, and the out side whitish.

The **Dog Rose**, or **Brier Rose**, it is both single and double, and of a faint whitish blush colour; some are white with Scarlet edges the **Seeds** or **Crown** yellow.

The **Ever-green Rose**, is a single Rose of five leaves like the **wilde Eglantine**, but fall not away in the Winter, untill they be cast off by the new in the spring time, the Flowers stand four or five together at the ends of the Branches, which are of a pure white coloure.

The *Spanish* **Musk Rose**, it is a single **Rose** of five Leaves, white with an eye of Blush colour in them.

The great **Apple Rose**, hath reddish branches with green sharp thornes; the flowers are small and single, standing on prickly Buttons, which after the flower is fallen, grow great, and red, and of the fashion of a Pear. But in all other **Roses**, it grows red and long, but thick in the middle.

XXXIII. He beareth Gules, a **Rose**. This is born by the name of *Rossell* and *Calcost*.

☞ Here note, that as colour cannot be on colour; so consequently the **Rose** must be Argent; but if the Feild be metle, then the name of a **Rose** only, sheweth it to be a red, and because all **Roses** are **seeded** Or, and **Bearded** Vert, it is also needless to express them, except, they be of contrary colours thereunto. As I have seen a **Rose Bearded** Or. And the **Rose** it self, Or.

S 3 Roses A is the Coat of Sr. *Thomas Powell* of *Horsley* Baronet. This was the Coat of *Cune* or *Kune Dda*, a noble man in *Wales* His Paternal Antecessour.

A a Rose G born by *Howell* Lord *Ross* in *Wales*, and *Van Reichneck* in *Germany*

G a Cheveron between 3 such A born *Eignion ap Gerant*. in *Wales*

A 3 demy roses in pale G. born by *Wolfe*.

A Rose with within an other (or a double rose) G by *Rosengberg*.

G a rose A Born by *Bappenberg*.

Barry of 6 O and B on a Canton Er. a Rose G. by *Holme* of *Chester*.

A 3 Roses G by the name of *Yong* of *Kenton*.

XXXIV. He beareth Argent, a **Province Rose** slip, or

or **slipped**, proper. This is born by the name of *Provincial*. It is of a pale red, or Carnation colour.

XXXV. He beareth, Or a **Branch of Roses**, or a **Rose Branch**. Thus born in Crests held in hands, or Lions paws *&c.* belongs to many.

XXXVI. He beareth Azure, a **Rose slip**. See more of the nature, and sorts of Roses, in *Rea's Flora chap.* 4. ☞ Some say a Rose slipped, the Stalk, Blade, and Seed. Now **Barbed** is the green leaves on the back, to which the rose is joyned.

A 5 Roses on a branch Irradicated (**Sans leaves**) G. Born by *Rorschack* of *Switzerland*.

A a Rose Branch G Leaved V Born by *Friesen*.

A a branch of 5 Roses, Leaved, Proper. Born by *Holderman*.

G a Branch of 5 Rose leaved A Born by *Van Hamerstein*.

a Rose slip G is the Crest of *Rosenberg*.

A on a mount in Base V three Rose slips G Stalk and Leaves, V is born by *Clinghart*.

On a Cap A turned up O three such is the Crest of *Van Ruder*.

XXXVII. He beareth Or, a **Rose leaf**, proper. This is the true form of a Rose leaf; they ever growing three together, though some Herald-Painters make them single, as in the four next Examples. This is born by the name of *Rosell*.

XXXVIII. He beareth Argent, a **Rose leaf**. All leaves are generally born with the points upright, if otherwise then to be termed in what posture, as in the next Examples.

XXXIX. He beareth Argent, a **Rose leaf pendant**. A term used from the Latine word *pendo*. to hang; because the point of the Leaf hangs down. Born by *Hagener*.

Per fesse B and O, 3 such O, born by *Keppell*.

XL. He beareth Or, a **Rose leaf bendwise sinister**. Or in bend sinister. Born by *Bendlife*.

Per pale A and V on each 6 leaves in a pale barwise the Stalks endorsed, by *Weidenbach*.

XLI. He beareth Argent, a **Rose leaf in bend**. Which shew the point of these leaves to lye bending towards the corners of the Field, or Escochion.

XLII. He beareth Argent, **party per pale conjoined, a demi-Rose and Thistle** slip, proper. Or as some Blazon it, a Rose and Thistle slipped conjoined in pale, both proper. After this manner all conjoined flowers (whether with slips, or without slips) are to be Blazoned, so that I need give no more Examples of this nature. This is mistaken by my Graver, for the Rose should be before the Thistle, and is an Addition to the Coats in a Canton of the Honored Sir *Gilbert Houghton* of *Houghton*, Baronet, and *Bipsham* of *Billinge* in *Lancashire*.

XLIII. He beareth Argent, a **Garland of Roses**. Born by the name of *Garland*. G the like. A is born by *Krantz*.

XLIV. He beareth Or, a **Chaplet of Roses**.

☞ You see a difference between a Garland, that being full of Roses; and a Chaplet, which is only 4 Roses set upon a Chaplet, or Circle for the head. Born by the name of *Whallerg*. A the like G born by *Trichinden*.

Per pale G and O, a Chaplet of 6 Roses counterchanged, by *Vrede van Amcke*.

XLV. He beareth Gules, a **demi-Chaplet of Roses**. The Chaplet is always the same colour, or mettle that the flowers are that adorn it; if otherwise, say a **Chaplet, Or, adorned with Roses**, or **Lillys**, *&c.* or the like. Three of these are born by the name of *Girdler*.

XLVI. He beareth Argent, a **down Thistle** proper. This is a Thistle that hath its **Bole**, or head of a jagged nature, and the flower out of it is White and Woolly; it is also called a **Cotten Thistle**, and hath a long jagged leaf.

XLVII. He beareth Argent, a **Thistle slipped**. This is the common Thistle, whose head is like the **Artichoak**, and the flower of a purple colour. There are several sorts of Thistles, as

The **French Thistle**, or **Trefoil Thistle**, hath a head as the common, with a purple flower, with 3 long leaves joined together, at the end of the foot stalk smooth and thick.

The **Star-Thistle**, that hath pricks growing out of the top of the round-head, the main-stalk leaved with a long smooth and slender leaf like a **Pink**.

The **gentle Thistle**, hath 3 or 4 heads growing upon stalks together with flower like the **Blew-bottle**, and great broad leaves and long, like **Tobacco**.

The **Tassel or fullers Thistle**, hath a round head with leaves under it, the leaves grow by pairs on either side the stalk, without any little stalk, smooth without any jaggedness.

The **Sea Holly Thistle**, the head grows out in pricks and hath a jagged leaf.

The **Friers Crown Thistle**, hath a round head, and a long leaf, with other leaves (as it were) growing out of the sides of it.

The **Globe Thistle**, hath a round-head, (as it were) all Hairy, with sharp prickly leaves, jagged.

The **Lady-Thistle**, is our common Thistle.

The **Artichoak Thistle**.

The **Pine apple Thistle**.

The **Carline Thistle**, it hath a head like a single Marygold, with abundance of prickly long leaves growing together under it, as if they were a part of the flower.

The **fish Thistle**, like a bunch of Dasies growing together with jagged long leaves under, and joining to each head.

Besides these there is the **dwarf Thistle**, the **Melancholy Thistle**, the **Musk Thistle**, the **Bulbed Thistle**, the **Blood red ball Thistle**, S. **Barnabas Thistle**, the **Chameleon** or **changeable Thistle**, the **Solder Thistle**, the **Milk Thistle**, with several others which are of an affinity one to the other; which whosoever desiers to be farther satisfied let them peruse *Parkinson's* Herbal, Trib. 9. fol. 957. *Plin*'s natural History.

The Thistle is the Badge of *Scotland*.

XLVIII. He beareth Argent, a **double Gillyflower**, Gules

Gules. **Husk and Stalk**, Vert. by the name of *Gilliflower*. To mention the Husk and Stalk is needless, if they be of their proper colour which is Green; there are veriety of **Gilliflowers**, each having a name according to its colour which are generally red, purple, scarlet, and white; with mixt colours from all these, as

Gilliflowers mixed with red and white.

The painted Lady.	**Crown of Bohemia.**
York and Lancaster.	**Crown of England.**
Achilles.	**English Virgin.**

Gilliflowers mixed purple and white.

Sops in Wine.	**Purple Imperial.**
Admiral of Spain.	**Purple Paragon.**

Gilliflowers mixt scarlet and white.

Fair Rosamond.	**Great Scarlet.**
Royal Roab.	**Isabella.**
Beauty of England.	**New Paragon.**

With many more to which Gardiners and Flowerists give name. See *Rea's Flora fol.* 156.

The Julyflower as they are most properly called (though vulgurly Gilliflower and *Gilofer*) takes it name from the Month in which they bring their beautiful Flowers, and indeed are the pride of Summer, as the Tulips are the glory of the Spring; being of all Flowers the most sweet in smell.

A 3 such G is born by *Fourey*.

There is a Tree or Shrub of the name **Gilofer**, of some called **Geum**, or **Benett**, which hath Fruit in taste like the Pepper-corn.

XLIX. He beareth Argent, a **Pink sliped**, Gules, **Stalk and Leaves**, Vert, three such are born by *Jorney*.

Sweet William is (as it were) many Pinks growing together like a Posy; and are of a light purple or peach colour. Some Snow-white, red, others speckled, some of them are double red-flowers.

The **Velvet Armerius**, or **Sweet William**, it is of a deep rich murrey colour, with a paler Circle towards the bottoms of the leaves.

The **Sweet John** is the same in shew to the sweet **William**, only differ thus, the green leaves are narrower, and the flowers are deeper jagged; in some Plants the Flowers are red in the middle, and paler towards the Edges, in others white. Those Flowers of this kind which are double consist of two or three tows of jagged leaves.

The **Pride of London** is the same, only the Pinks are of divers colours in one and the same Flower, as some white, others red, and others purple; of some called the **Flower of Constantinople.**

Single non-such, it hath a head of many single flowers of a scarlet colour.

Pinks are of many sorts, as white, red, purple, peach, and mixed: they are generally single.

The **feathered Pinks**, have broad leaves deeply cut in, and jagged at the edges.

Thrift, is a very small kind of Pink, gloweth low, and is only set in Gardens to keep up Borders; it is of a light purple colour.

The **Childing Pink**, groweth as the Camphir on upright stalks with narrow long leaves, two at a Joynt. See numb. 101, 102.

L. He beareth Argent, a **Blew Bottle**, proper. The Leaf is like the Pink or Juliflower; but they grow far higher than them, or the stock Gilliflower.

The **Corn flower**, is of divers colours, as white, red, blew and mixed. A a cheveron G between 3 such, is born by *Charley*.

The **Sultans flower** is purple, and the Thrume almost white.

LI. He beareth Argent, a **Figworth flower slipped.** This was the ancient way of drawing it, but the true Figworth is as followeth.

LII. He beareth Argent, a **Figworth flower slipped.** The Flower is purple, the Leaves nicked, and grow one against the other on the stalk, at the Root of each leaf, from the stalk groweth the flower, so that each Flower sliped, can bring but one leaf along with it, at the top the Leaves and Flowers grow thick together like a Knot. The name of the Flower tells the name of the Bearer, *Figworth*.

O. 3 such is Born by *Bilterfworth*.

LIII. He beareth Argent, a **bunch of Plantan Leaves**, with three seeds proper. It is generally known with us, by **Wayhead Leaves**, some call it **Lambs Tongue**. The Seed is spiked Head like to Grass.

Buckshorn Plantan, hath a Leaf like a Bucks horn.

The **Ribworth Plantan**, hath nicked leaves.

The like Bunch of Leaves dented, is the Crest of *Vlerdorf*; and also of *Winnington* of *Winnington* in *Cheshire*.

LIV. He beareth Argent, a **bunch of Plantan**, with **Rose Heads**, that is a Knot of them together bearded. The *Leaf* plain but snowy.

The **crumpled Plantan**, is a round crumpled Leaf, with another growing out of the midst of it, and the seed out of it.

LV. He beareth Or, a **Cabbach**. Is born by the name *Cabbasch*.

The **Colewort** is the same to the Cabbach, only the Leaves are more open, not knit together as this is; the Seeds growing out of the middle of it in Husks like Tearfitch, called Cabbach Colewort.

The **Cole-flower**, or **Colliflower**, the same with a knot of whitish Seeds in the middle, which are eaten when they are young.

The **Curled**, or **Roman Colewort**, hath the Leaves curled and crumpled, or foulding in and out several manner of ways.

LVI. He beareth Argent, a **Tulip**, or **Tulipa**, Gules. The Tulip in its variety of colours is Flora's choicest Jewels, and the most glorious Ornaments of the best Gardens. These are those lovely Lilly's, whose bravery excelled *Solomon* in his greatest Glory, *Mat.* 6. 29. Those of Self-Colours are all the Colours that is, saye Blew, of which I never saw any. As for striped Tulips, they have several Names, as

The **Crown Heart Tulip**, is white, streaked with Carnation, the bottom and Tamis are blew.

The **Fools Coat**, is yellow striped with red.

The

The **Crown Imperial**, white striped with purple.

The **None such**, a pale blush almost white, striped, and speckled with Orange-tawny.

The **Auroa Tulip**, is a rich Carnation striped with white.

The **Princess**, a blewish red, striped and feathered with white.

The **Vice Roy**, of a Violet Purple, edged, feathered, and striped with white.

The **Orient Virgin Tulipa**, is pale Scarlet, and white well divided in small marks and stripes, the bottom and **Tamis** both Blew.

The **Pearl**, is of a bright Carnation, marked with white, the leaves twine and stand different from others.

The **Parot** is green, edged with a little white.

The **Agot Tulip**, is of a sad Isabella colour, with some marks of rich Crimson, and great stripes of yellow, a dark bottom, and large black **Tamis**.

The **Star**, at first opening twisteth at the ends, which after open and spread flat like a Star, with 6 points of a reddish Isabella colour, and striped towards the bottom.

The **Crocus**, is a Flower of the Tulipa kind and fashion, but much less; the leaves are long and narrow, of a deep green, with a white line in the midst of them, they grow out of the Earth singly like a tuft, in the middle riseth out the flowers each upon its own stalk; they are in their first rise covered with a thin white or yellowish skin, then comes forth the Flower composed of 6 leaves, with a long pointel in the middle set about with Chives; they never open, but keep close at the top, except the Sun shines very warm on them; these Flowers are some white, yellow, purple, striped, and others feathered and flamed, with other varieties, which by Florists are thus named.

The **pale feathered Crocus**, whose stalk and bottom of the flower is blew, the 3 outside leaves white, and the 3 inner striped with a blewish purple.

The **Bishops Crocus**, are white, finely striped with blew; some flowers will have the 3 outside leaves so, and the 3 inner white, and others will be contrariwise.

The **Imperial Crocus**, is of a Silver colour striped with Purple.

The **Royal Crocus** is the largest kind, and better striped with a deep Purple, especially on the back of the three outward leaves.

The **Blew Neapolitan Crocus**, is of a deep sky colour, with a black Bottom.

The **Duke Crocus**, hath the out-leaves of a deep Purple, except the edges which are white.

The **Saffron** also is of the **Crocus** kind, springing up with many long narrow leaves, and after them the flowers in form like them, of a yellow, and some of a reddish Purple colour; in the middle of the Flower there are some small yellow Chives standing upright; besides which there is 3 or 4 greater and longer Chives hanging down or between the leaves, which are of a fiery red colour, and the true Blades of Saffron.

The **Son before the Father**, so called of some Herbalists, because the flowers come up before the leaves, the one in Autumn, and the other in Winter; the flower hath 6 leaves, some are white, others of a pale purple colour, some half white, half purple, with some chives or threads in the middle: After the flowers are past, the green leaves do not presently come forth, which at first are of a dark brown colour, but with the Spring grow to be large, long and green. Some term these **Meadow Saffron flowers**, which are of diverse kinds, and so by Florists have names given them accordingly; as,

The **Variegated Meadow Saffron**, are white striped with a deep Purple; others a pale blush striped with Purple colour; others are white and red **penached** like a Tulipa.

The **Chequered Meadow Saffron of** *Naples*, hath larger & deeper purplish red flowers, and more eminently chequered like a **Fritillary**. The **chequered** one of *Chio*, is of a pale purple colour thick spotted and chequered with blewish purple, which comes in Autumn before the leaves, which come up in the Spring, commonly 3 in number, of a fresh green colour lying on the ground, twining and folding the edges.

The **double Meadow Saffron**, is like the common *English* kind, that grows in divers moist Meadows, only the flowers of this are double, containing many leaves of the same purple colour, with some chives tipt with yellow pendents amongst them. Some of these double kind will be striped, and garded with white on a pale blush, and some much more doubler and larger than others.

These, with several other varieties, past naming, both for colours and multitude, you may find in Mr. *Rea's Flor:*, *fol.* 46. 92. 94.

Out of a Coronet 5 such A stalks and leaves V is the Crest of *Van Giesenberg*; and *Holevser* hath the same with 3 Tulipa's; so hath *Van Dobritsch*.

LVII. He beareth Sable, a **Lilly**, Or, **seeded** Argent. The Lilly is of diverse sorts and colours; as red, orenge colour, pure white, yellow and fiery colour; it groweth on a strong Stalk, set from the bottom to the top with many long narrow leaves; and at the top from every leaf a Flower, containing 6 leaves.

The **Persian Lilly** groweth with leaves to the top, from thence hanging down their heads, are many small Flowers like this, of a deep Purple; with a Pointil and Chives in the middle, tipt with yellow pendants like to the Tulip.

The **Crown Imperial** groweth with a strong Stalk, with a large tuft of leaves on the top, from whence hang a number of Lilly like Flowers, of a yellowish or orenge colour about the stalk; each flower leaf hath a drop or Pearl at the end of the leaf within, next to the stalk, near the stile, which is compassed with 6 white Chieves.

There are of this kind, which have the flowers of a fair yellow colour; others of a light red, or pale Rose colour.

The **double Crown Imperial**, each flower containeth 15 or 16 leaves (whereas the other kind have but 6) but narrow, each having a drop or Pearl at the head of it within, and are of the same colour to the common kind.

The **double red Lilly** hath many more leaves than the other common Lillies; and bears more flowers on one stalk: Of this kind there is White Lillies.

The **Mountain Lilly Imperial**, the Stalk beset with rundles of green leaves at a distance, and naked between, from the head at the top of the stalk, comes forth many flowers thick set together each on a several foot-stalk, hanging down their heads, and turning the leaves back again. This is by Florists called the **Martagon Imperial**, but common People the **Turn-Cap**. See *numb.* 105.

The **Lilly Convally**, or **Lilly of the Vally**, or **May-Lilly**, is a small tender stalk, with a broad roundish leaf pointed, growing all along it, at the contrary side, against each leaf came forth a round globy flower pure white, the lower opening first, sheweth it self Lilly-like, but hangeth downwards; some are of a pale red.

S on a Mount in Base 3 Lillies, stalks and leaves A is the Coat and Creft of *Gostling* in *Bavaria*.

LVIII. He beareth Gules, an **Avertill** (or a **Daffodill**) **slipped**, proper. The Cup is pure yellow, and the under leaves whitish; the leaves are like them of Onions, the stalk is yellow and hollow within its skin: Some Authors term it *Laus tibi*. Of these there are diverse kinds, as single, double cupped, and little low cups, edged with red; they are generally by Florists called **Narcissus**, which name beareth it for his Coat.

The **Incomparable Daffodil**, the leaves from the root are long and broad, of a greyish green, the stalk hollow, at the top whereof, out of a thin skinny husk (as all others do) comes a large flower of six pale yellow, or white leaves with a wide Chalice or cup in the middle of a deep yellow, cut and indented about the edges.

The **double white Daffodil of Virginia**, hath the cup double, or stuffed full of nicked or jagged flower leaves, the bottom leaves sharp pointed, and many of them lying one over the other, and shorter by degrees to the middle thereof. Others out of the double Cup cometh a small long white Fork or Horn.

The **yellow Daffodil of Africa**, beareth upon one stalk, on the top 10 or 12 large flowers; of these some are of a Brimstone colour; others a fair yellow Lemon or Saffron Cup.

The **Turky Daffodil**, with a double Crown; it bears on one stalk 4 or 5 milk white flower leaves, with a double yellow cup in the middle, or one Cup within another.

The **double Daffodill of Constantinople**, hath many flowers on one Stalk, all white; the Cups yellow, some edged with Purple.

The **great Sea Daffodil**, is much larger than any other kind; one Stalk bears at the top, 10, 12, or more flowers of 6 leaves spread open, with a white, short cup, or crown in the middle, lying flat on the leaves, cut or divided into six corners, from thence comes long white threads, turning up in the ends, and some white threads in the middle, tipt with yellow pendants; of these kinds some have Lilly like reddish Flowers, others with Blush Flowers, others Scarlet Flowers; the Virginian with Purple Flowers; all bearing many Flowers on one stalk.

The **Spanish Daffodill**, is a large great Flower, not hanging the head like others, but standing forth; of a fair yellow colour, the cup or trunk a little crumpled, and wide open in the mouth, turning up the brims; there is also of this kind such as are Snow white.

Some of these double Daffodills are so double in the cup that it bursteth and spreads open like a full Province Rose, the small leaves standing in rows one under another, being shorter and shorter by degrees to the middle of the flower, lying so upon the 6 great bottom leaves.

The **Junquilia**, or **Rush Daffodill**, differs in nothing, but the Cup is shorter, and of a pure white, as the leaves. Of this Flower there are yellow, and some turn back the leaf even to the foot-stalk; the cups of them are double.

The **bulbous Violet**, groweth like the Daffodill, and the Flower hangeth down its head, being 6 short leaves standing round, with a low cup of a pale greenish colour. Some term this the **Snow-flower**.

There is another sort of **Bulbous Violet**, which hath a stalk between 2 leaves of a greyish green; at the top whereof out of a thin skin cometh forth one, sometimes two small white flowers hanging down the head, consisting of 6 short leaves standing round together, with some sharp points in the middle of a pale green colour. Some again have the 6 leaves standing round like a cup edged with green.

The **Indian Jacinth**, hath a thick tuberous knobbed root from whence riseth several stalks set with fair long broad leaves, joined at the bottom close to the stalk; from whose top proceeds many large flowers, each composed of 6 white leaves spread open, like those of a Daffodill, with some short threads in the middle.

The **Starry Jacinth of Peru**, the leaves ly on the ground, being broad, long, and sharp pointed, from whence riseth a thick short stalk, bearing from the middle to the top thereof upon long foot-stalks, very many blew star-like flowers, with some blew threads tipt with yellow pendants, standing about a middle head, which is of a deeper Blew than the outward 6 leaves; there is of this kind which have white flowers, with a little shew of Blush towards the bottom; others have them all of a Blush colour.

The **Lilly leaved Starry Jacinth**, hath the Flowers growing on the stalk, like the White Lilly; the flowers are of a star-like form, of a light blew colour, with 6 short leaves in the midle standing round like a Cup; there are other Colours of this flower, as white and blush Colour.

The **Oriental Jacinth**, or **Zumbul** of *India*, hath a speckled stalk, the flowers are of a blush purple colour, opening into six small leaves which turne back again (as all the Oriental Jacinths do) others of this kind are of a pale, others deep blew, with stripes down the back of the leaves of the flowers; others are pure white, others of a blush colour, others purple; others have the flowers fair and double, consisting of two or three rows of leaves spread open, and of the colours abovesaid.

The **Muscary**, or **Musk Grape flower**, is of the same nature and kind as the **Jacinth**; the leaves at their first springing up are reddish, and after of a whitish green, hollow and guttered on the upper side; on the upper end of the stalk are many flowers like little bottles, of a fair yellow colour, and a musk scent. OF this kind there are ash-coloured, red, white, and pale blew.

The **fair haired Muscary**, or **Grape-flower**, or **Jacinth**, hath the leaves not lying on the ground, but standing upright, yet hollow as the former; the stalk is branched out on every side, with many tufts or knaps at the ends of them.

The **curled Hair Muscary**, or **Grape-flower**, it differs in this; it is a bush or tuft of many branches, subdivided into diverse long curled threads or hairs, of a fine bright Murrey colour, as well the tops of the stalks as the flowers.

The **Grape-flower**, hath many flowers close set together, like unto a small bunch of Grapes, in form like those of the Muscari, of a fine pale blew, or sky-colour. Of this kind there are white, blush, and blew colour: the leaves being all guttered, as the Muscary.

The

The **Star flower of Arabia**, hath leaves like the **Oriental Jacinth**; the stalk is round and green, on whose top, upon long foot stalks are diverse large flowers, with small short green pointed leaves at the bottom of each of them; consisting of six pure white leaves, with six white threds about it tipt with yellow pendants.

The **Star-flower of Bethlehem**, the stalk beareth at the top a great bush or spike of flowers, upon long foot stalks, but shorter and shorter towards the top; the flowers open by degrees, first below and so upwards, consisting of six white leaves, spread open like a Star, with a white **umbone** in the middle, beset with many threds tipt with yellow.

The **Star-flower of Naples**, hath 4, 5, or 6 leaves growing round together, being long and hollow pointed, of a whitish green colour. The Stalk beareth many flowers, each containing 6 long narrow leaves, white on the in side, and of a whitish green on the out-side, turning back towards the stalk, with 6 other small leaves in the middle, standing round together like a Cup, with a white **pointell**, and 6 threds tipt with yellow.

The **Star-flower of Aethiopia**, bears from the middle of the stalk upwards, flowers that be all white, with some yellowness in the bottom of them, with a 3 square head compassed with white threds tipt with yellow.

O 3 such Averills is born by *Averall*.

LIX. He beareth Argent, **a Mallows flower and leaf in Bend Sinister.** It is a spiring stalk, at each leaf a flower, and the top hath a Knot of them together: The Flower is a light Purple.

The **Shrub-Mallow**, hath woody branches, covered with a whitish bark, with soft woolly whitish green leaves, in fashion like those of the **Ribes** or **Currant-tree**; the flowers are large, and like those of the single **Holly-hock**; in some, of a deep reddish or Violet purple; in others paler and lighter, with the bottom of a deeper purple, running into the leaves in small Veins; there are others of this kind that have white flowers, with a large Purple spot in the bottom; others have the flowers striped with faint purple or blush lines; there are also double flowers of them, with the like variable colours.

The **Spanish Mallows**, the Flower Blew.

The **French Mallows**, the leaf with 5 points.

The **Egyptian Mallows**, the flower being 5 leaves, come to a long husk like a Peascod, but it is five square.

The **Marsh Mallow**, groweth right like a Rose, single leafed, like a single Rose of 5 leaves, and white.

The **Holly-hocke**, groweth like it, save the flowers are double, whitish straked with Purple after the **common Mallows**, called of some **double Hocks.**

LX. He beareth Argent, **a blew Bell slip.** This is Born by the name of *Blewcampe*. Some call this **Bind-weed**, or **blew Bind-weed**, the flower in some is Blew, with a white Star in the bottom.

The **Bell-flower**, the leaf is rough and hairy, the flowers blew like this example, but end in six long indents, as if it were composed of so many leaves; some are double.

The **Coventry Bell-flower**, is Purple pale coloured.

The **Canterbury Bells**, have large rough leaves like Nettles, the stalk square, divided into Branches, whereon stand divers long hollow flowers like Bells, wide at the brims, and parted into 5 points, some are white of this kind; others of a deeper or paler Violet purple. Some call this flower **Marians Violet.**

The **double Canterbury Bells**, termed the **lesser Trachile**, have them consisting of 2 or 3 rows of leaves; and of these some are white, others blew or purple.

The **Thorn Apple**, hath the stalk at the joints spread into many branches, set with deep green cornered leaves cut and jagged about the edges, at the joints come forth large Bell-fashioned white flowers, which are succeeded by green round heads, green and prickly or thorny. There is of this in Foreign Countreys, that bear this Flower double; and another kind having the Flower Ingeminated, or Hose in Hose, that is one coming out of another.

Sea Bind-weed, hath a scattering Branch like Pease, the leaf round and smooth, the Bell plain without nicks; growing from each leaf, of a reddish Purple, with small leaves like a Rose inclosing the top part next the stalk.

The **Mervaile of Peru**, the stalk is big and bunched in the joints, which spreads into branches, set at the joints with green leaves, betwixt which the Flowers come forth on short foot-stalks, in fashion like to **Bind-weed**, narrow at the bottom, and wide open at the brims; in several Plants, the Flowers are in some red and white, which have green branches; red branches which have red Flowers only; a dark green, which have yellow Flowers; and a brown stalk that bears red and yellow Flowers. They are like the **Bindweed** open in the Night, but when the Sun shines on them, the Brims shrink inward; therefore of some are termed, **the Flowers of the Night.**

The **Rock Rampions**, or the **Steeple Bell-flower**, the leaves grow in a bunch like Prim-roses, the Bells by multitudes hanging on a small stalk one above another, Pyramidically to the top, blew of colour, and a pointel in the middle. Some of this kind are white.

LXI. He beareth Argent, **a single Poppy and Leaf, slipt.** The single Poppies are of three colours, white, red, crimson, and lighter, and deeper coloured.

The **Poppy** hath a round seed-pod in the middle of it, with a Crown at the top of it, and a round Button like a Rose at the bottom; this Seed-Pod by all Florists, is termed a **Poppy Bolle**, and so I find the same born by the name of *Boller*, viz. Gules, **three Poppy Bolles on their Stalks in Fesse**, Or.

Pash-Poles, or **Chesboule**, are **double Poppies**, which are of two sorts, those with leaves like Roses, the others with jagged and torne leaves like jagged Pinks: the party-coloured, the red, the striped, scarlet, and yellow are best.

The **Thorny Poppy**, the leaves like to thistle leaves.

The **Bastard Poppy**, flower yellow, and leaf a wild jagged leaf, called the **Corn Rose.**

The **Horned Poppy**, is blew, red or yellow; and in stead of a round pod for the seed, as the common Poppy hath, this groweth into a long Cod like a Mustard seed.

The **Spatling Poppy**, many of these white flowers grow together at the top, on a pretty long foot-stalk, every flower standing in a large loose husk, something round.

I have caused a small Poppy to be closed in this square, to shew the out-side as well as the in-side; though generally flowers are born in their full shey; this being as it were a Poppy blooming, not yet come to its growth.

LXII. He beareth Argent, **five Cullumbine leaves on a slip**; or a slip of Cullumbine leaves; they generally grow thus, 5 together on short foot-stalks. Born by the name of *Collumber*.

LXIII. He beareth Argent, **a Cullumbine**, Azure. They are generally of three colours, White, Blew, Purple, and of them varieties, according to the deepness or paleness of the colour.

The **Virginian Cullumbine**, hath a long heel, and is yellow, shaded with red, and deep red spots in the hollow of the flower.

The **double Cullumbine**, are not only the same, being doubled in the bottoms, but are variegated, striped, spotted or poudred; of which some are half White, and half another colour, as Murrey, Violet, or light Red.

The **double Rose Cullumbine**, hath no heel, but stands on the stalk, like little double Roses.

The **double inverted Cullumbine**, hath the heel turned inwards, and coloured as the former.

A Cheveron Sable between 3 such, is born by the name of *Hall*.

A Cheveron engraled between 3 such, is the Company of *Cooks* Arms.

LXIV. He beareth Argent, a **Rose Campher**, (or **Campion**) slipt; the Flower is a light Purple.

The **double Champions** are both red and white; the single and double, grow many Flowers in a branch together.

The **single Non-such**, or **Flower of Constantinople**, I have shewed before, *numb.* 49. though others make it a kind to the **Campion**, because growing many together in form of a Posie. Some call it the **Flower of Bristol**.

LXV. He beareth Argent, **three Wall flowers on a Slip**, Or, **Stalk and Leaves**, Vert. These are also termed **Winter-Gilliflowers**, they grow after this manner, a great many in a Cluster, the out-sides blossoming first; they are of three colours, white, yellow, and purple. This is born by *Chebell*.

The **double Wall-flower**, hath the Flowers growing on a spired stalk, and so blossom by degrees, the lower flowers first; they are called **Stock-Gilliflowers**, and **Winter-Gilliflowers**, and are striped with 2 colours, Purple and White; others all yellow, White, red and pale.

The **Coral-wort Flowers**, in husks of a purple colour, see *numb.* 100.

LXVI. He beareth Argent, a **Pansie** (or **Hearts Ease**) **Slip**, proper. This is a very fine coloured flower, the 2 top leaves are pure Purple, the 2 side leaves are pure yellow, and the bottom leaf a Brimstone colour; each of the three, have a Purple spot at the ends of the leaves, and three black scores from the middle of the Flower: There is double flowers of this kind. The Flower is the Crest of *Fitton*, of *Gansworth*.

LXVII. He beareth Argent, **a Violet Slip, with the Flower inverted**, proper. Of these single Violets, there is three sorts, white, pale blush, and a kind of light Purple.

The **double Violet**, commonly called the **Queens Gilliflower**, is of three kinds, White, Purple, and striped (that is) of Purple, finely striped with White.

LXVIII. He beareth Sable, **on a Stalk, two leaves**, Vert, **between a Marygold in his prime, and two blooming**, Or. There are 2 sorts of Marygolds, single and double; the first is a Pale of slender leaves, set about a large thrum.

The **double Marygold**, hath no seeds, but all full of leaves, less and less, till it do center in the middle of the flower, and is of a gold colour.

The **yellow Star-wort**, hath rough leaves, the stalk divided into branches, bearing at the ends five or six green leaves, standing round like a Star, with a Flower in the middle, of narrow long, pale yellow leaves, compassing a yellowish brown Thrum, like the single **Mary Gold**.

The **Flower of the Sun**, this is the largest of Marygolds, of which see *numb.* 86.

The **French Marygold**, of which there are single and double, some deeper, others paler; they are of a fair yellow colour, the leaves grow out of a pod, long and large, wherein (after they are past) the seeds are contained. It is generally called the **African Marygold**.

A **Corn Marygold**, is single, with a jagged leaf and a large thrum in the middle of the Flower; see *numb.* 73. This is termed **an Ox-eye**.

The **Wind-Flower**, the leaf 5 pointed, each cut with deep nicks, almost jagged.

LXIX. He beareth Or, **an Honysuckle slip**, proper, or a **Woodbine slip**, the Flowers are first red, and then more yellow about the ends, and part of the Flower; some call it **Venus Hair**.

LXX. He beareth Argent, **a double Honysuckle**, Born by *Horyman*.

The **double Hony suckle**, the Flowers are like the common Honisuckle, but in this there is a multitude of them growing 5 or 6 stories one above the other, with round green leaves circling the Stalk between every round of Flowers.

The **Indian Honysuckle**, hath the Flowers coming forth together in tufts from the ends and sides of the red branches, which in the bloom are of a fine red, but after more yellow about the ends, and part of the Flower.

The **Virgins Bower** groweth like the **Honysuckle**, the Flower comes from the joints upon long foot-stalks, and is four leaves Cross-wise, of a liver colour, or deep red; others of a Purple colour; the leaves stand at the joints consisting of three parts; whereof some are notched on one side, and some on both.

The **double Purple Virgins Bower** hath the Flower exceeding thick and double, the outward leaves being broad, and the inner narrow, and folded close together, like a large Button in the middle of a Flower, which opens by degrees: There is of them also of a blush or pale Peach colour, and the other White.

The **Virginian Climber**, the leaves grow out at the joints of the branches, at each one, which said leaves are broad at the bottom, and about the middle divided into

3 parts, and nicked about the edges; the Bud before it opens, is long, having at the top 5 crooked horns, which being open, divideth it self into 10 parts, sustaining the leaves of the Flower, which are very many, long, sharp pointed, narrow, and orderly spread open, one by one, some lying streight, others crooked; these Flowers are of a whitish colour, thick spotted with a Peach colour, having towards the bottom a Ring of a perfect Peach colour, with a white Circle above and beneath it: In the midst of the Flower riseth an Umbrane, which parteth it self into 4 or 5 crooked spotted Horns; from the middle of these riseth another roundish head, which carries 3 Nails or Horns, biggest above, and smallest at the lower end; the Flower fallen, there ariseth from it a Fruit like unto a Pomegranate, containing a whitish Pulp, with black Kernels or Seeds. This Branch hath many claspers to hold it self up, especially at the top.

The **Pimpernell** groweth like the Honysuckle, winding about any thing it can get hold on, the Flower is four leaves, with 4 hairs or chives out of the middle of it; the Flower grows out of the side of the Stalk, from between 2 leaves.

A 3 Wood-bines or Honysuckles proper. Born by *Honysuckle.*

A 3 Woodbine leaves Bendwise. Born by the name of *Theme.*

LXXI. He beareth Azure, **a Daisie**, Argent. They are of 2 colours, White and Red, and from them White tipped with Red. G 3 sans Stalks A Seeds O Born by *Daisie.*

The **Camomile Flower**, like a Daisie, the leaf jagged and small; the double Flower is all White, the middle something yellow.

The **Scabius** hath a jagged leaf, and blewish White Flower, some Red.

LXXII. He beareth Argent, **a Bunch of Daisies**' some in their **prime**, others **blooming**, Gules, **Leaves and Stalks**, Vert.

The **double Daisies**, are of diverse sorts, as Red and White, and partly White and Red.

The **blew Daisie**, groweth thus, but the Stalk is set with small leaves one upon another like scales; on the top is a round head composed of many Blew Flowers.

The **Childing Daisie**, and the **Abhortive naked double Daisie**, is green; and several other varieties there are, but such are scarce worth the Description, much more to be noted for Arms.

A 3 bunches of Daisies, each having 3 Flowers G Born by *Daisie.*

LXXIII. He beareth Sable, **a wild Field Marygold slip**, this is also termed, an **Ore-Eye** if Yellow, and a **Wild Daisie** if White, the **Seeds** or **Thrum** in the middle, yellow.

The **Elecampane**, the Flower and Thrum is yellow.

LXIV. He beareth Azure, **a double Crowfoot**, or a **Ranunculus slipt, with one Leaf**, Or. Before the Flower is budded forth, they are called **Gold-knops.** The leaves are broad and indented about the edges, some are more cut, and divided (as it were into several leaves) then others, the Stalk is branched into 2, 3, 4, or more Stalks, each bearing a fair White Flower double, so that no head or button can be seen in the middle: of this kind, there are many varieties, as Silver colour, Yellow, Red, Scarlet, Isabella, beside the several varieties of striped ones, as

The **Ranunculus**, or **Crowfoot of Candy**, the Flowers are of a pale yellow blush, striped a little on the inside, but more on the out-side with Crimson.

The **Ranunculus of Asia**, hath a large double flower of 6 or more rows one within another, of a yellow, red, or Scarlet colour; when the Flower is in its prime, another small Flower will rise out of the middle thereof.

The **Ranunculus of Rome**, hath leaves scarlet coloured, edged with yellow; others scarlet, varied and marbled with a deeper or a lighter scarlet; others yellow, striped with Scarlet; others White within and Rose colour without; others Isabella within, and Crimson bordered with Isabella without, with diverse other sorts.

The **Wolfs Bane**, hath round cut green leaves on short foot-stalk, and with them the Flowers, which are small and yellow, made of 5 leaves like the single Crovvfoot, vvith yellovv threds in the middle; of this kind the Flovvers are also pale yellovv, and in some almost White: Florists call this the **Aconite**, from its Latine term.

The **Water Lilly**, hath a Leaf like the Heart vvith a long stalk in the indent, and the Flovver very large, some are White, others yellow, vvith a Thrum and a small Poppy like head in it yellovv.

LXXV. He beareth Gules, **a single Crowfoot**, contains 5 leaves about a thrummy head.

The **Sweet Wood Crowfoot**, have 5 long narrovv smooth leaves set in several places, and at the joints all round the Stalk like a Star.

The **Virginia Crowfoot**, both leaves and flovvers grovv from the ground vvith long stalks; they are seven pointed and smooth; the flovver small, long leaves, vvith a small thrum or seed in the middle.

The **Caper**, is a flovver like the **Crowfoot**, or **Globe Crowfoot**, the colour greenish vvith a thrum of Seeds, covered in the blooming vvith 2 roundish leaves; it is called of the Physicians the **purging herb**; of some the **Dogs Bramble**, or **Dogs Apple**, or **Hares Heart**; the Mages call it **Pantheron.**

The **Batchelors Button**, a kind of **white double Crowfoot**, having them 2 or 3 heights grovving one out of another, and are termed double, and **double double Batchelors Buttons.**

The **Yellow Grass Crowfoot**, the leaves grovving in a tuft like Grass.

The **Plantan Leaf Crowfoot**, grovveth vvith a stalk and leaf like the Tulip, having 3 Flovvers upon foot stalks at the top.

The **single Anemone**, and the **narrow leaved Anemone**, are after this manner set about a thrummy or Velvet head, commonly consisting of one rovv or pale of broad leaves, the head being hairy, tipt vvith a Woolly matter, the Flovver being of divers colours, see *numb.* 85. as Red, Scarlet, Purple, White, Peach and Rose colours, both plain, and marked vvith White.

The **single Anemone**, vvithout a **Head or Button**, this consists of something broad leaves, hath no plush or thrum

thrum of leaves in the middle, but a small head or button; and some, inclining to the **double Anemone**, vvill have 2 rows or pales of leaves, some three rows about the head; and some so thick and double, beginning vvith large leaves next the stalk, and so lesser and narrovver to the middle, that the head is not to be seen till the Flovver fall.

LXXVI. He beareth Argent out of a **Tuft, Head,** or **Branch of leaves**, a **Gentian** of the Spring, or a **Gentianella**; the leaves are small, hard and green, grovving close to the ground, ribbed, veined, and pointed; on a short stalk is on flovver large, hollovw, and bell-fashioned vvith open brims, ending in five coruers; having some white spots in the bottom on the insides; some call it also a **Felwort**. The smaller sort of this kind, being long, husked, and slender, is termed a **Uervul-Gentian.**

LXXVII. He beareth Sable, a **Tassel**, Or. this is spoken of before *numb.*47. This is born as a part of the Clothiers or Shearmens Companies Coat.

A 3 Tassel sliped. Born by *Tasseller.*

LXXVIII. He beareth Sable, **a saxifrage flower** slipped, proper. The Mountain Saxifrage groweth many together upon foot-stakes at the head of the stalk, the flower is white. This is born by the name of Saxfrage.

LXXIX. He beareth Argent, **a Tobacco flower slipped.** The flower is of an Olive-colour, they grow many together upon the head of the stalk, with small foot stalks, the lower buding first. It is called, the **Nicotiana,** or **Male petum**, and **Holy Hearbe.** The leaves are large and long growing to a roundish point. It is a thick, spungy, sapy leaf, of a deep Green.

LXXX. He beareth Argent, **a Prim Rose**, growing out of a **bunch of Leaves.** The flower is of several colours each on its own foot, as peach, blew, red, green, yellow, white, and so deeper, and lighter, single and double flowers. This is born by *Prim-rose.*

The **Primroses**, are also double of variable colours, some having the outer row green leaves, with a small pale yellow flower in the middle; others scarlet, or velvet red, with a yellow star in the middle or bottom, as is in all the variable Primroses of these kinds.

The **Hose in Hose Primrose**, hath upon every single stalk two flowers ingeminated, one standing and growing within the other; and of a deep, in others a paler red colour.

The **Cowslip** is the same kind of flower only they grow many together upon the head of a plain naked stalk, by small-foot stalks; we call it a **May-flower.**

The **paigle** is a **double Cowslip**, of a purple colour, gold colour, of a yellowish green, some variable of a fine orange colour towards the bottom, edged with Cinnamon colour, and red on the out-side, some the like with scarlet.

The **Cowslip hose in hose**, it differeth from that of the Field, only in this, that each flower hath another growing out of it, standing at a distance as that in the husk, doth from the husk; being many on a stalk with foot-stalks, of the same colour and fashion with the common kind. The like is in the red Primrose hose in hose.

The **Jack-an-Apes on Horse-back**, or the **fantastick Cowslip**, hath the flower all green and jagged like to a Juli-flower.

The **tufted Cowslip.**

The **jagged hose Cowslip**, hath the hose jagged and divided into four or five parts and purled about the edges, with a small single flower of yellow standing therein.

The **Orlip Cowslip**, is like those of the field, but of several red colours, some deeper, others lighter; some bigger, others smaller.

The **Bears ear Cowslip.** The flower with a deep invecking, and many on the stalk, have five leaves parted at the ends with a white circle or eye in the middle, having long trunks whose ends stand in small Cups; of these **Auricula's**, or **Bears ear**, there are several kinds, but the best is bright murrey, or redish purple; others on the stalk bear a great Truss of many flowers of a purple colour with large white eyes, others a deep black purple, others black, others striped with white on purple, and yellow or Lemon colour, with reddish purple; others are all red, scarlet, yellow or white, with white Circles or Eyes.

The **Virgins Silk Auricula**, hath a large mealy leaf, and a great truss of pure white flowers.

The **Burage-leaved Auricula**, hath rough hairy leaves, spread on the ground like those of the Cowslip or Primrose; the stalks are brown and hairy, having on the top five or six Flowers, each consisting of five leaves large and sharp pointed and of a rich blew, with some small yellow threds in the middle.

The **Bears-ear Sanicle**, first riseth with foulded leaves, which after opens fair and broad a little hairy, cut in divisions and nicked about the edges, of a dark green above, but whiter on the other-side; the stalks are naked, bearing divers small flowers, like in form to the Cowslip, but hang down their heads, of a deep purple colour with a small white eye, and some threds in the middle.

The **Birds Eye**, is a small Cowslip, of which there is white, red, and spotted, all having small yellow eyes in the bottom of the flowers; the leaves are snipt about the edges, of a pale green on the upper, and of a mealy whitish colour on the under-side.

LXXXI. He beareth Argent, **a Flax flower slipped.** The flower is of the broad leafed Flax, both yellow and blew, and the narrow leafed, is the same. These cut down and made up according to Art, are the coverings, or Coat-Armour of the best of Nobility.

The **Wild Flax**, hath a white flower made of five leaves something large, with small lines of purple. There is of this kind that hath yellow flowers, with reddish stalks.

The **Toad Flax**, hath fat narrow leaves of a whitish green colour, snipt about the Edges; the stalk bearing in a spike divers small flowers, like the foresaid, but without heels behind, of a sad or paler purple or violet; it is a gaping flower with a yellow spot in the gaping place; some are of a yellow colour with the gaping mouth downy, and the heel behind of a purple colour; the leaves lying on the ground like those of a Daisie.

The **Broom Toad Flax**, hath it leaves standing all in a Bush, the stalk hath many branches set with green leaves

leaves long and narrow, at the joints are small reddish flowers.

LXXXII. He beareth Argent, **a Cockle flower slipped**, proper. The flower a light purple; the leaf is long and narrow, and hairy, set two at a joint; the husk long and crested, whose ends, or cut-points, are longer than the leaves of the flower. Three of these are Born by the name of *Cockledge*.

LXXXIII. He beareth Argent, **a Larks heel**, (or **Larks-spur flower**,) slipt; they are of divers colours, as white, red, blew; they have small jagged leaves, and are single and double.

The **double Larks heel**, is on a tall and upright stalk, branched at the top bearing many double flowers, in form like the Rose-Colombine, and are of several colours, as purple, blew, ash-colour, rose-colour, a pale blush and white.

The **Indian Cresses**. The flower like a single Larks heel, yellow, they are on stalks like the Fox-glove, the leaves are smooth and round.

The **Balsam Apple-flower**, hath a spur behind the flower, but bendeth downward, the flowers grow together on foot stalks; having round black seed, but the flower have two or three shadows of purple.

LXXXIV. He beareth Argent, **a slip of Fox gloves**, proper. Born by *Foxby*. There is two sorts of them, the Field, and the Garden Foxglove.

The **Common Field Foxglove** hath nicked, and some smooth leaves; the flowers of a purple and white, and some yellow.

The **Garden Foxglove** are double, not in Bells but after that manner in broken-leaves, there are of them, some white, yellowish dun, yellowish brown, yellow, purple, and the like.

The **Corn-flag of Constantinople**, the stalk riseth from three or four broad, long, stiff leaves full of Ribs, one coming out of the sides of another, and joyned at the bottom; which beareth many flowers one above another, standing all one way like the Fox-glove, and are of a deep red colour with two white spots within the mouth of every flower. Some of this kind have the flowers white, carnation, or bright red.

The **Italian Corn-flag**, hath the flowers growing on both sides the stalk, and are of a sad red.

A 3 such Slips is born by *Casheen*.

LXXXV. He beareth Argent, **a double Peony**, (vulgarly called a **Pianet, flower or Rose**,) slipped sanghine.

There are two sorts, Male and Female: The Male hath no Division in the leaf, but always whole.

The Female are single and double, having a pod in the middle of the flower like a pair of Breeches: or **Bicornered head**, with many white Threads tipt with yellow. Their colour for Gardens are red, purple, carnation, and white, or blush colour; and striped of purple, with white.

This flower according to its drawing, will serve for several sorts of flower which are made after the fashion of the Peony, but less, as

The **Marsh Marigold**, yellow, with the out-leaves large, and the inner leaves small and long, and thick set, with a jagged leaf.

The **double Crow-foot**, as in *numb.* 74.

The **Anemone**, or **Amonie**; of which there are divers kinds and colours; as scarlet, red, purple, white, yellow, green, carnation, blew, and striped, according to to the said colours with white, and white with them; of which some are single, like the single Crow-foot with an hairy or thread-like round pod, tiped with a blackish purple. The double, some are broad leafed, and others narrow; there is so many sorts of them, that like to Tulips, the Florists give them names, which Mr. *Rea* is full of. See his *Flora chap.* 23.

LXXXVI. He beareth Argent, **a flower of the sun**, with one leaf sliped. This is called the **Corn Marigold of Peru**, of which there are two sorts, the one bearing round, the other oval yellow flowers, the inner part, or thrum of a deep purple colour, but ripening goeth yellow. This is born by the name of *Sanley*.

LXXXVII. He beareth Argent, **a Jasmine flower slipped**, proper. The flower is white, and is born by *Joslin*.

The **Jasmine** hath divers green flexable branches that come from a larger bow, set with winged leaves of a dark green colour standing two toge her at the joint, made of many small pointed leaves, set on each side of a middle rib; usually three on a side, and one larger and more pointed on the end; at the tops of the branches the Flowers grow in tufts, each on a long foot-stalk, which are small, long and hollow hose, opening in the end into five white pointed leaves.

The **Catalonian** or **Spanish Jasmine**, have the flowers before they be open of a blush colour, and after white with blush edges.

The **double Spanish Jasmine**, have the flowers white, but bigger consisting of two row of leaves, with some smaller, coming forth of the middle, or hollow Bosoms of the Flowers.

The **yellow Jasmine**, is like the former; the yellow flowers being past, round black shining berries succeedeth.

The **Indian Scarlet Jasmine**, have weak branches, supporting it self by some short Tendrils, which it fastens to any wood thing it grows by; the leaves are winged three together, finely nicked and full of veins; reddish at first, but after of a fair yellowish colour; the flowers come forth many together, which are long like a Foxglove, opening into five fair broad leaves, with a stile and small threds in the middle of a yellow or saffron colour: Some of this kind have small red-lines on the inside thereof; others of a deep scarlet, veined with small yellow lines.

The **shrub Trefoile**, or ordinary **yellow Jasmine**. The leaves grow by throes, as the Rose, but smooth.

The **Indian Jasmine**, the flower yellow, and the berry as comes from them are like small Olives. It grows in branches with a purple Bark, the leaves are ever green, and like to the Pomgranate-leaf, but longer and broader. The Flowers grow many together on foot-stalks.

The **Pipe-tree**, or **Lilac, or Persian Jasmine**, the flower groweth (as it it were but blooming) not so open out, as this figure, the Flower blew or purplish.

The **double Pipe-tree**, or **Jasmine of Arabia**, hath the Flowers double, round three or four rows of leaves,

leaves, and white, the middle hollow and something yellow; the leaf great and smooth, set against one the other, on a short foot-stalk.

The **Persian Jasmine** with cut leaves, is like the former, only the Branches are finely decked, with small long cut in leaves, divided almost to the middle rib; some into three small leaves on a side, and a larger at the point.

LXXXVIII. He beareth Argent, **a Balm Leaf**, with a Flower on the Dexter side of the stalk; the Flower is purple, the leaves grow by couples at the joynt, from whence also proceeds the flower. It is rather a shrub, then a tree; though some term it so, *numb.* 5. 13.

The **Turky Balm**, have the flowers growing on the top of the branch spire-like, with several leaves between them, and are of a blew, or purple blew colour.

The **Assirian Balm**, the Flower is out of a short husk, narrow at bottom and open at top with a turn Indented, Bell-like; three grow together from the root of the leaf, of a white colour.

The **Mother-wort**, from the middle of the branch to the top grows the Flower at the joints, with the leaves round the stalk; their fashion like the balm, and are purple coloured; the leaf deep nicked being divided into three points.

LXXXIX. He beareth Argent, **a Sage leaf** and **flowers fired** to it. The Flower is blew and gaping like the **Clary** or **dead Nettle**, growing on small stalks one against another, even to the top. 3 such leaves born by *Sagewerth.*

The **great Sage**, hath the Flowers in bunches about the stalk, with leaves under them.

The **French Sage**, have them grow in bunches at the top, several leaves coming out together round the joints of the stalks.

The **gilted Sage**, or **striped Sage**, the one is with yellow, the other with white, edged and spotted or striped.

The **Stony-Sage**, or **Wall-Sage**, of others called **Titans Blood**, **Scorpions Tail**, or **Dr-Eye**. It hath a leaf like Sage, and most commonly grows on tops of Houses and Walls, some call it **Heraclea.**

XC. He beareth Argent, three **knots**, or **Heads** of **Tansy**, with a leaf slipped. The Tansy Flovver grovveth altogether in a flat head, by several small foot-stalks, joined to the main. It is called also **curl'd Tansy**; the Flowers yellow, the leaf jagged.

The **White Tansie**, or **Agrimony**, the leaves whitish like the **Willow.** It is a short shrub of no height, the leaf is in five parts.

The **Mountain Tansie**, the heads more divided with a Flovver of six white leaves, and a yellow thrum in the middle, like the **Camomile**, or **Daisie.**

The **Featherfew**, the Flower and Leaf like Mountain Tansie.

The **double Featherfew**, hath the Flower very double with little white leaves, so that but a little of the yellow thrum can be seen.

XCI. He beareth Argent, **a bunch** or **knot of Alder-berries**, and three leaves **slipped.** The Flovver is a vvhite blossom, vvhich after grovveth to a small black berry, and they grovv many together upon foot-stalks to a larger stalk, and it to the Alder-branch, *Umbel* like. This is born by the name of *Elderhead.* Some vvrite it the **Elder tree**, vvhose boughs are thick and gross, but vvithin are very hollovv, filled vvith a **soft Mary**, vvhich is commonly called their **Pith.**

XCII. He beareth Argent, **a Comfery slip, flowered**, proper. The leaves are rough and hairy, set by pairs on either-side the stalks at the joints; the Flovvers stand in order, one before another of a vvhitish colour.

The **spotted Comfery**, is the **Cowslip of Jerusalem.**

XCIII. He beareth Argent, **a Burnet slip flowered**, the **tops**, or **Heads**, or **knaps**, stand upon a long stalk, and are of a brovvnish colour.

The **American Burnet**, hath long spiked heads set thick vvith knaps, vvhich vvhen they bloom, each casts out a vvhitish Flovver of four leaves, having many small vvhite long threds in the middle.

The **Mountain Scabious**, the Leaves vvaved, the head full of little yellovv Flovvers, all in a round.

XCIV. He beareth Argent, **the double Lady's Bower slipped**; at every joint vvas a couple of Leaves large and smooth, from whence sprung two stalks with Flowers of a purple colour, their growth is much after the manner of a single Poppy.

The **Nigella**, hath five large blew leaves, with a hairy thrum in the middle, out of which proceeds many small Flowers like stars.

The **Spanish Nigella**, hath leaves like Fennel, the flowers are single, consisting of five large leaves of a bleak colour, with a green head in the middle, compassed about with little gaping hollow leaves, and a yellow line; after the Flower is past, the head grows big with a Crown on the top spread like a star.

The **double Nigella** consists of three or four rows of small leaves, one lying under another, of a pale blew colour; in others white.

XCV. He beareth Argent, **an Hemp stalk leafed**, and **seeded**, proper, or a **Bunch of Hemp seed**, on a stalk, leafed and sliped. The Seed is called **Line-seed.**

The **bastard Hemp**, is with several Burs, or hairy **knobs** at a distance on the stalk; out of which growetb two leaves, one contrary to the other, and so to the top; which endeth in a **knot**, or **bur**, with small leaves out of it.

The **Chast Tree**, or **Hemp tree leaf**, like the Hemp leaf, but smooth long and narrow; the Flowers like **Lavender spikes**, stored with blush white flowers, which turned into round seed like Pepper.

The **Hemp stalk** is much worn by that worthy person Mr. *Fur* alias *Thief*; and is very honorable, and worthy of such an exaltation by him.

XCVI. He beareth Argent, an **Elecampane flower sliped**, proper. The Flower is yellow both in the leaves and the Thrumb about which they are; which in time groweth to Down, which the Wind bloweth away with seed in. It is like the Sun Flower, but not so large. This is born by the name of *Sollar.*

XCVII. He beareth Or, **a Burage slip**, proper. The leaves of the Flower are blew, the stalk and leaves rough

rough and hairy, with a white spike from the middle of the flower having its end black. It is also called **Buglos**, and **Garden Buglos**, answerable to the name as beareth it.

The **Stone Buglos**, the **Viper Buglos**, have hairy leaves and stalks, very long and narrow.

The **Sea Marsh Buglos**, long smooth leaves, growing altogether, after the manner of a Prim-Rose or Daisy.

The **Wild Buglos**, of some called Orchanet; it hath its leaves sharp set and thorny. The root hath a kind of juice that being wrung out, is of a sanguine colour. Some have white leaves.

The **Walwort**, is an herb grows commonly about two cubits high; his Leaf is rifted like Buglos, the root outwardly is black, but within white and oyly.

XCVIII. He beareth Argent, **a Fennel flower slipt**, or a Fennel slip, flowered, Or. it shouteth out into many branches, at the top whereof are Tufts or Umbels of Flowers of a yellow colour, which turns into small round seed, two always together. The Leaf thin, fine, small, long, or a thready branch.

The **Pellitory of Spain**, and the **double wild Pellitory**, have the like Leaves, being finely cut and deeply nipt about the edges; the stalks have at the top many small flowers; the single, is a pale or border of leaves, white above, reddish under, with a middle yellow thrume; the double flowers are very thick and double, all white.

The **dog Fennel**, hath small deep dark leaves, bearing at the tops of the branches divers broad spread white flowers, in some single, others very double.

There are other Flowers and Herbs of affinity to this as

The **Dill**, is leaved and seeded like it. Some call it Annet.

The **Comine** is the same, the Flowers reddish, and the seeds white.

The **Chervil**, the Flowers white, purplish in the middle, they grow in the seeding so, as the Umbels are hollow in the middle, like a Birds nest.

The **Earth nuts**, or **Chest-nuts** of the **Earth**, hath a broader and thicker leaf then Fennel, the Umbels white Flowers.

The **Dropworth**, or **Enanth**, the Flower white like a Daisie, or Field Mary-gold.

The **Dauke** or **wild Carrot**, flower white.

The **red or yellow Carrat**, the flower white, the Umbels do not spread much, the leaves more thicker, and stronger then Fennel.

The **hart-worth**, the leaves more open than Fennel, the Flower white, and sometimes purplish.

The **English Saxifrage**, the Flowers of a yellowish white.

The **Hemlock**, a stronger leaf, the Flower white, having long sharp pointed seed, like Anniseed, but more white. Some writ it **Humlock**.

The **Caraway**, the Flowers of the Umbels white, the seed of a blackish brown.

The **Anise**, the Flowers white, the seeds whitish, and the leaf broad and nicked with large indents.

The **Bishops weed**, white Umbels.

The **Sampire**, or **Golden-flower** of **Sampire**, the Flower all yellow, the leaves long and slender, and thick, like **Prick-my-name**.

The **Shepherds Needle**, the Flowers white, the seed round and pointed at the end, like a Needle, or prick of an **Hedg-hog**.

The **Coriander**, the Seed and Flower both white.

The **Smallage**, the leaves dented something unevenly, the Flower of the Umbels white.

The **Allisanders**, the tufts of Flowers yellowish, the leaves broad and unevenly dented.

The **Lovage**, hath the Flowers yellow.

The **Angelica**, hath large white spread Umbels, the Leaf like the Allisanders, broad and uneven, endented, five together, and sometimes more near the root.

The **Water-wort**, the leaves like Angelica, the tops or Umbels of white, with a thin black seed.

The **Gout-wort**, or **Herb Gerrard**, the flower white, and the leaf broad and nicked, three growing together at a little distance, upon one stalk.

The **Fleawort**, long and slender leaves, thin, set upon stalks.

The **Glasswort**, the same, but turning and winding one among the other.

The **Fumitory**, hath a Fennel like leaf, growing in tufts, at distances on the stalk; the flower reddish growing on spikes.

There is another kind of **Fumitory**, which is a bushy and shrub-like herb, near to the Coriander, whose flower is white or more like ashy colour.

XCIX. He beareth Argent, **a Caper branch**, proper. Born by *Caprel*. The leaves are round at the end, and sharp at the stalk, with a thorn or prick at the branch, just under the leaf, and at the leaf riseth the Flower upon a pretty long stalk. The Flower is four white leaves, with 4 green ones on the back of them, as the husk, having many yellowish threads, and a long stile or pestile in the middle, which afterwards groweth to be a Fruit, and is long and round, like to an **Olive** or **Acorn**.

The **Egyptian Caper**, hath no thorns, and the leaves grow two together at a joint.

The **Bean Caper**, is an herby, not a wooddy stalk, like the other Caper branches, branching forth from the bottom, at each joint cometh forth two leaves one opposite to the other, at each joint cometh forth one Flower as the others; which cometh to a long husk, and round, which openeth into several parts wherein is a brown seed.

C. He beareth Argent, **three double stock Gilliflowers**, on a slip leaved, purple: See *n. mb.* 65. Born by *Stockflower*. Mr. *Rea* in his *Flora*, p. 151, 152. makes a great difference in the **double Wall-flower**, and the **stock Gilliflower**; for though to outward appearance they shew all to be of a kind, yet the scent of them will soon distinguish the one from the other; as also the elegancy of form, and delicacy of colours, the one is more esteemed then ther. The **stock Gilliflowers** are of divers colours, as white, yellow, sad and light purples, and some of that colour striped with white. They have generally hairy green leaves, and a woody stalk, which shooteth into many branches of flowers, growing spike-ways, the lower flowering first, and the rest by degrees.

The **Dame Violets**, are four white long leaves turning down at the ends, out of a green pod or husk growing scatteringly many together on one stalk.

The **double Dame Violet**, groweth many together in a knot upon short foot-stalks. These are also called **Queens Gilliflowers**, or **Rogues Gilliflowers**, or **Close Science**, and are white, purple, and striped in their colours.

The **Water Gillovers**, or **Gilliflowers**, are five white leaves growing on a naked stalk, in rows one above the other, with yellowish threds in the middle.

A. such a Stock-Gilliflower slipped, P leaves, V is Born by *Wellrugh*.

CI. He beareth Or, **an Hoary Pink slipped.** Born by *Markmer*. The leaves are set by couples at a joint of a hoary white (like the white **Live-long**, or Life-everlasting,) the Flowers are five leaves a piece, white, and round pointed.

The **wild Pinks in Tufts**, are another sort of these Pinks, which Flowers grow in tufts, like to an Umbel on foot-stalks, some white, others of a reddish colour; the leaves long and broad are set by pairs, one against another.

CII. He beareth Argent, a **Mountain Pink**, proper. The leaves grow thick in Tufts like grass, the Flower rised out of them by single stalks, having joints and leaves on each side, the husk hairy with five points out of which is a small pale reddish Flower of five leaves. Three such are the Arms of *Mountalion*.

CIII. He beareth Argent, a slip of **Golden Maiden-hair**, proper. Born by *Marley*. The leaves are of a yellowish green (like grass) growing above ground in tufts, from whence springs little small stalks beset with the like kind of hairy leaves, which beareth on it a small gold yellow head, lesser then a wheat corn, standing in a great husk.

The **English Maiden-hair**, is a small spiry stalk with two round leaves fixed to the side; without any foot-stalk, one opposite to the other; and leaves growing less and less set at a little distance till it come to the top, where it ends in a small leaf; of a dark green, spotted in the back.

CIV. He beareth Argent, a chequered **Fritilary** slip. Born by *Fretilar*. It is of a deep brown hair colour, chequered with a deeper, the in-side of the Flower (being six leaves) is of a brighter colour then the out-side, having a stile, and chives tiped, with yellow pendants.

The **double Fritillary**, is in all parts as aforesaid, only the Flower is double consisting of twelve leaves, or more, and is of a pale, purple, or blush colour, spotted as the other.

The **white Fritillary**, is like the other checkered, only the Flower white, and grow two on a stalk.

Of these Flowers there is the yellow, the spotted yellow, the yellowish green, and blackish.

The **sullen Lady**, hangeth her head down (as this Flower doth) and is of an umberish dark hair colour, without any checker or spots. Some call it the **black Fritillary.**

A 3 Fritilary's slipt, proper. Is Born by *Sullen*.

CV. He beareth Argent, a **Turn-cap flower, slipped.** But by Floverists termed, a **Martagon slipped.** They grow with a high stalk, of a reddish brown colour, beset at certain distances with rundles of leaves long, and not very narrow, and naked betwixt; at the top of the stalk come forth, set together, each on a foot-stalk, the said Flowers, hanging down their heads and turning the leaves back again like to a Garland; and is of a light purple, with brown spots on the inner side, which becomes the outer upon the turn of the leaves, having a stile in the middle, with 6 yellow chives, tipt with Vermilion pendants. These are born by *Turnley*.

The white **spotted Martagon**, and the white, are the same only differ in colour; of this kind there are purple, and yellow, orange, and pale greenish, yellow spotted with black specks.

The **Martagon of Canada**, bears four or five Flowers on long foot-stalks on above another, hanging down their heads, of a yellow colour.

The **Martagon of Constantinople**, is of a deep orange, or a scarlet, thick speckled on the inside with many small black spots, and some without specks.

The **Virginia Turn-cap**, is of a gold yellow, with many brown spots about the bottom of the Flowers, the points or ends that turn up of a red or scarlet colour, and without spots.

The **Dogs Tooth flower**, the stalk comes up between two long and narrow leaves, of a whitish green, spotted and striped with white; on the top is one flower hanging down the head, containing six leaves, white narrow and long, which turn up again to the stalk, like the Turn-cap or Martagon; in the middle there is a white three forked stile, compassed about with six chives, tipt with sad purple pendants. Some of this kind are of a purple pale colour, others reddish purple, or pale yellow. The root is white, and like a Dogs Tooth, from whence it is so called.

The **Cyclamen** or **Sow-bread**, it hath divers round cornered and sharp pointed green side-leaves, spotted and circled with white on the upper-side, and red underneath; the Flowers are every one on a small long stalk, hanging down the head and turning up the leaves again, being fine narrow and long, and of a bright shining reddish purple colour, and sweet scent. Some of this kind, have white, pale purple Flowers, some are double consisting of twelve leaves.

The **Ivy leaved Cyclamen**, bring forth the Flower before the leaves which are much spotted on the upper-side; these Flowers are of divers colours.

CVI. He beareth Argent, a **Mountain Avens flower.** This is a Flower of four heart-like leaves, fixed in a long husk, like a Pink, with four other green-leaves on the back of them, contrary set, after the manner of the beards of a Rose; out of the middle proceeds four threds with pendants on them all black, which stand not up, but lay themselves one on the middle of every leaf of the Flower.

The purple, or reddish Mountain, or **Marsh Avens**, are double consisting of ten or twelve leaves with six jagged leaves, spreading behind the brims thereof. This is of some called a **Water-flower.** And is Born by the name of *Wateraven*.

CVII. He

CVII. He beareth Argent, a **Strawberry**, proper. between two **Blossoms**, Argent; **Leaved and slipped**, Vert. Or else thus, a **Strawberry slip with Blossoms and Fruit**, proper. Or more briefly, a **Strawberry with two Blossoms and leaves slipt.** The Strawberry when ripe, is white on one side, and red on the other, as if they were equally divided; the leaf is tripartted and nicked; the Fruit Heart-like.

The **Flat Strawberry**, is more flat then round.

The **Dwarf Strawberry** more round.

The **Strawberry Tree**, hath a Fruit like a Strawberry; the leaves like Bays, and always green, and finely purled about the edges. The Flowers grow on the ends of the branches with long stalks, which are small little **white Bottles**, like those of the Lilly of the Valley, succeeded by **Red Berries** like Straw-berries.

The **Strawberry Cinquefoil**, hath five leaves, two under the other, at a very little distance.

O 3 Strawberries couped in the stalk, proper. Born by *Strawbery*.

CVIII. He beareth Argent, a **Musmillion slipped** in bend sinister, proper. This Fruit when ripe is yellow on one side, and green on the other; when Mellow all yellow: It is also termed a **Mellon:** The leaf is a kind of three pointed leaf, the middle longer by far than the other. Others five pointed like a Gooseberry, but hairy. Born by *Millon*.

The **Citrull**, or **Turky Millcon**, hath a yellow flower (with Claspers like a Vine) having a kind of knot under it, which groweth to the Fruit; the leaves hairy, long and narrow. Called also a **Citteru**, and is oval round and smooth.

The **Cucumber**, is like them only much less; the Flower of a whitish yellow, and some perfect yellow, the leaf great and broad, after the form of a broad fine pointed leaf, turning in at the stalk.

The **long bowed Cucumber**, or **Cowcumber**, the Fruit bending after the form of an S, and is long, flat, and narrow, and sharp at stalk, but more full at the contrary end.

The **Indian Melon**, is Pear or Quince-like, divided into parts as this figure in the Plate.

The **Apple Milleon**, or Apple-like Turky **Citrull**, it is round and smooth; in all things else like the ordinary Million.

The **Pompion**, Is the same in all respects to the **Musmillion**, but of a far greater Bulk, being green and yellow divided, not ribbed, but sometimes rugged.

The **Gourd**, the leaf broad and round pointed at the end, rough and hairy stalk, the flower containing five long narrow leaves fixed on a knop, under it from whence proceeds the Fruit, which is three sorts; first a Bottle-like Gourd, the Quince-like Gourd, and the Lozenge, Cimnel, or Buckler Gourd. Which last is termed the rugged Gourd, being knobby and rough, through Risings or Cornels it hath outwardly. Called also the Egyptian Citrull, or **watry Million.**

The **Indian Gourds** are fashioned oval-like (or Egg-like) Pear-like, or almost round, with Ribbs and spotted with long, square, and diversly spots, on green with white, some red, and others deep yellow spotted.

The **Ethiopian Gourd**, is like leaved to the Bay, the Flower white, the Fruit longer than the Melon, ending in a round point, the Rind is hard with sundry ribbs, covered with a green freezy Cotton.

The **Indian Scaly Musk Melon**, it is in form like a Pine-apple, scaled all over with a thin greenish scaly Rind, which may be paired off it.

The **American Quince Mellon**, the fruit ribbed, and like a Quince, the leaf also.

O a Pempion slipt, proper. Born by *Pompain*. Also by *Millon*.

CIX. He beareth Argent, a Fruit called **True-love**, or **one Berry.** Or the Fruit of the herb Paris. It hath one stalk from a Bulbous root, on which grows three great broad leaves in triangle, out of the middle thereof riseth a stalk which hath onely one flower of yellow leaves, and four green, as it were a husk on the back, from the the middle grew a round Berry of a purplish colour. This is born by the name of *Onnibury*.

The **Dwale**, or **Deadly Night-shade**, hath a black Berry growing on five leaves, after this form.

The **Winter Cherry**, or **Ground Cherry**, is one Berry of a scarlet colour, compassed about with a Cup-like husk of a thin substance, and of the colour of the Berry, but not so deep: as the Berry groweth the husk opens and falleth below the Berry into two or three leaves, which being not blown out, or at his full growth, is a perfect and an intire round Cup all about it.

A 3 such couped in the stalk is born by the name of *Cheicheim*, or *Cheryhine*.

CX. He beareth Argent, a **Stoyar slip**, Fruit and leaves proper. It groweth in all respects like to the Quince tree and leaves; the Blossom stands both at the joynts with the leaves, and at the ends of the branches, consisting of five or six whitish leaves like to the Orange-tree, with some Threds in the middle, after which comes a Berry set in the cup that the Flower stood in before of the bigness of a Nut pointed at the end, and hoary all over, of a reddish colour; they grow by couples each on a long foot-stalk, joined in one near the bottom.

The **Virginian Date Plumb**, is the like in form.

The **sleepy Night-shade**, hath a Sage-like leaf, with a purple Bell-flower, which after seeds to this form, with a round Berry of a deep black purple.

The **Tree Night-shade**, hath a woody stem, and many green branches with small long green-leaves something uneven in the edges; at the joynts of the branches it puts forth two or three flowers together, of a Star-like form, turning back the leaves which are white, with a yellow pointil in the middle, which falling away are succeeded by small green Berries, some red, like little red Cherries, wherein is small flat white seed.

The **Shrub Night-shade**, hath a dark brown stock and branches, the flowers like the common Night-shade, in one white, in another blew: others have the green leaves striped with white.

CXI. He beareth Argent, a **Cotton branch slipped**, proper. It is a tree not very tall; the leaves are five pointed, and smooth without any more nicks; the Flower like a blew Bell-flower, broad above and small at bottom, and parted to the bottom into five leaves of a yellow colour; with a stiff reddish middle pointel, compassed with five or six yellow Threds, which are thrust off by the Fruit rising under it, which groweth to be a round, co-

vered with a husk or skin, which opening when it is ripe, sheweth forth a lump of pure white **Wooll**, or **Cotton.**

The **Thorny Indian Cotton**, hath all the stems set with small pricks, having many fair broad leaves set on a foot-stalk, dividing themselves into seven parts like to a star, the leaves nicked, and the fruit and flower, as the former.

The **Java Cotton**, or the long leafed Cotton-Tree, groweth to a great height, with spreading Arms and Boughs, and long and narrow leaves (like Rosemary) but much longer; the Fruit is like a long Pod, or Cod, growing great from the stalk upward, opening and ending in five points of an Ash-colour and ragged, but full of most pure white Wooll, and divers black round seed within (not involved within the Cotton (as the rest) but growing by themselves upon five long woody partitions, extending all the length of the Cod.

The **Cotton Weed**, or **Cud-Weed**, hath a long stalk beset with small smooth leaves, on the top is a woolly head, set about with many hairy woolly white leaves: And is of some called the Lions foot.

CXII. He beareth Azure, a **Cornucopiæ** Or, adorned with three Tulips Argent, stalks and leaves Vert. The Cornucopiæ is sometimes used with one sort of flower, and sometimes with another, in such cases the Flower is to be named; but if there be divers Flowers, or Fruit, then to say, **addorned with various** (or **varieties** of) **flowers or fruit** proper, is sufficient. The Cornucopiæ is a word, or term used for plenty, abundance, the enioying of all things. It was a Cup used in old time to drink in, which cup of plenty *David* doth elud unto in the Psalms, *Psal.* 23. *When he tells us, that notwithstanding the wicked devises of all his Enemies, God had given him a plentiful Table, and that his Cup* (or Cornucopiæ) *did over-flow.*

A the like proper, is the badge of Peace and Plenty: and may sitly be born of him who hath releived a Country from long Warr and Sieges, restoring to them again their ancient Peace and Plenty of all things.

CXIII. He beareth Argent, a **Fruitage** proper, with a scarlet Ribbon on the top, tyed in two bow Knots, the ends pendant on either side. These **Fruitages** are variety of fruit of all sorts, or any sort hanging out of a Pod, or Cup (husk formed) of green leaves. A **Flowerage** is the same, composed of several Flowers. These kind of Flowers and Fruits are more used for the adornment of Escochions, than born in Coats. Yet I find it born in Arms by the name of *Firtill.*

XIV. He beareth Argent, a **Fruitage** hanging or pendant, by two strings to the Dexter and Sinister Gheif points; with another fixed to it, all proper. After the same manner you will find Flowerages, thus hung. Which is termed, a Flowerage. The like is born by the name of *Dower.* This is also by some and that very properly termed a **Festoone of fruit.**

CXV. He beareth Gules, a **flower pot eared**, Argent; with three **Tulips** Or, **stalked and leafed**, Vert. This is a *Dutch* Coat born by the name of *Van Zurgans.* The like with several Roses G the Pot O is the Crest of *Achalon* of *Bavaria.*

V a Flower pot A full of (or maintaining) Gilly-flowers. G is the Arms of *New June*, or our *Ladies June.*

CXVI. He beareth Or, a **Flower pot eared**, (or a Jugg-pot) Gules: with a **Tulip** purple, stalk and leaves Vert. As in these, so other flowers are born in both, sometimes single, others double, others more, according to the fantasy of the owner. This I find born by the name of *Flowerset.*

An open Lilly A in a like Pot O is the Crest of *Little.* Some term it a blown, or bloomed Lilly.

CXVII. He beareth Argent, a **Twiggen Basket eared**, Or: filled with **variety of flowers** and **leaves**, proper. Also they are filled with variety of Fruit and Leaves, *&c.* and called a Basket of Flowers, or a flower Basket. This is born by the name of *Twiggerberch.*

O the like Basket with Fruit O born by *Van Fruthenbach.*

CXVIII. He beareth Argent, an **Artichoke** with two leaves, the stalk couped, proper. The Flower from the Artichoks, is Thistle-like.

The **Artichoke Thistle**, hath a Thistle flower growing out of the top, and the leaves more indented with sharp pricks.

The **Candy wild Artechoke**, hath indented pricking leaves, the head also be set with pricks, from the end of every leaf.

The **Artechoke** (or vulgarly an **Hartichough**) is a Ladys dish-meat, and from its dainty and pleasant taste well befits the name of its bearer, *Dainteeth.*

O 3 such couped in the stalk, is born by *Van Corkwell.*

Per fesse O and G an Artechoke the stalk raguled and irricated V is born by *Pircheimer.*

CXIX. He beareth Argent, a **Bunch of Madder** leaves Vert, with four seeds growing out of them sanguine. It is an herb that groweth up in stalks, without any branches, and at a certain distance, upon each stalk eight long narrow plain leaves altogether, and so till it come to the top out of which tuft, or bunch of leaves, groweth pale yellow flowers, which after come to a red berry, and when ripe, turn black. This is the Company of *Diers* Crest.

The **Garden Madder**, hath a long rough leaf, as aforesaid.

The **Sea Madder**, hath a leaf veined like the Plantan, and is roundish at the stalk, and pointed at the end; the seed growing altegether in a tuft at the top.

The **Candy Madder**, or spiked head Madder; hath several stalks coming one from another, at the top of each a kind of spike like hairy long tuft; in which the seed groweth much like the Fox-tail, or Cats-Tail grass.

The **Rock Madder** hath small narrow leaves, and groweth in branches like a tree.

The Leaves without the Flowers or Seeds is the Crest of *Swemem.*

Upon a Cap quarterly G and A the like Bunch or Tuft. G by *Van Bensledt.*

CXX. He beareth Gules, a **double flower de lis**, Or. This is, as if one Flower came out of the middle of another, as the **double Hony-suckle**, *numb.* 70. This Coat is born by the name of *Doubler.*

TO

The Honourable

HUGH, Lord *CHOLMONDELEY*, of *Cholmondeley*;

Viscount *KELLIS*, in *Ireland*.

AS the Laborious Bee from several Flowers gathereth much Honey; so I from your several Gardens have produced an Affinity of Leaves and Fruits, which are here set together in one Plate, and Dedicated to your use (from whence they had their first Being) by him, who is your most Humble and Devoted Servant

Randle Holme.

CHAP. V.

1. SEeing neither of the foresaid Plates, of **Trees** and **Fruit**, of **Herbs** and **Flowers**; were able to contain the various and manifold sorts growing in the Universe, and consequently are or may be born in Coats of Arms; I am therefore by this Plate following, constrained to make a further addition of such as are therein wanting.

Of the Affinity of Leaves.

2. I Shall first begin with **Trees**, and therein give a farther Description of their **Leaves**, with the near resemblance or affinity they have to one another; and then give some examples of **Fruit**, and their resemblance or likeness; and then set forth those **Trees** not yet mentioned.

I. He beareth Argent, a **Cork Tree Leaf.** Leaves resembling this in their make are

The **Laurel**, and **Bays**, the **Clove-tree.**

The **Berry**, the **Myrtle**, the **Indian Date Plumb**, and the **Coffee-Berry Tree**, all smooth leaves.

The **Chestnut** is long and slender, and nicked very small.

The **Birch**, small, and slender, and nicked.

The **Hony suckle**, the leaf round at the end.

The **Olive**, smooth, long and slender.

The **Pomegarnet** and **Almond**, are long and slender leafed, but smooth.

The **Strawberry Tree** are of 2 sorts, one nicked, the other smooth.

The **Cherry**, nicked; the **Barberry** long, with small Indents.

The **Nutmeg** hath the middle broad, the ends sharp and bending like a waved leaf.

The **Cinnamon**, smooth on the out-side, only an ingraled Vein in the inner part of the leaf: near the edge, round about, with Veins to every point, and then again double veined; the **Cassia** is the same; so that in Blazoning, it may be termed any of these said Leaves.

B 3 such leaves O. born by *Leveson* of *Trentham*.
G 3 such O by *Cogan*; also by *Fodon*.
A 3 such V born by *Saltersley*.
O 5 such in Salter, the Coat of *Radbrook*.

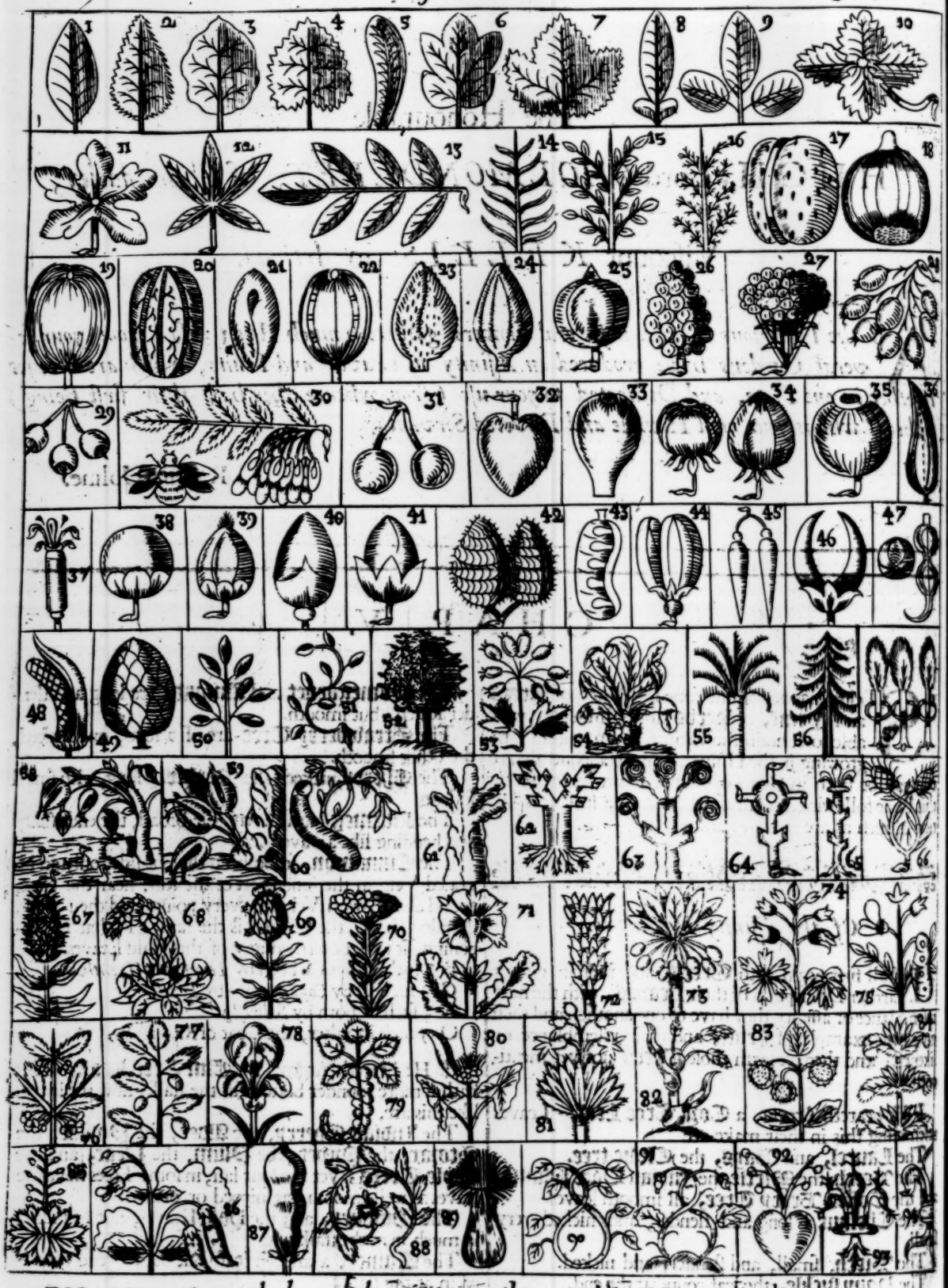
II. He beareth Argent, an **Elm Tree Leaf.** This hath a more rounder bottom at the stalk; now the leaves like this are,

The **Indian Cherry**, the **Alder**, the **Poplar**, the **Storax**, the **Privet**, the **Plum**, the **Pear**, and the **Apple Trees**; yet the four last, in some Trees have the leaves as well smooth, as snipped or dented.

The **Mulberry**, and the **Hazel** leaves, not rounding so much in at the stalk.

The **Quince**, a smooth leaf, but broad, and rounded in at the stalk.

The



P·M: Hirsonis·D·Cholmondeley Vicecomitis Kellis·H·Dedicat.

The **Apricock**, and **Peech**, the leaves smooth; so is the **Pipe-tree**, only the leaf turneth a little in at the stalk.

The **Lignum Vitæ**, or **wood of Life**, hath a smooth leaf.

G 3 Elm leaves A born by *Feldy*.
A 3 such in Chief V a Rose G by *Yatley*.
Er. 2 Barrs S on each 6 such Leaves O born by *Elmes*.

III. He beareth Argent, an **Aspine leaf**. This is a kind of round waved leaf, yet a little pointed both on the top, and at the stalk; now the leaves that have a resemblance to this, are.

The **Bill berry**, or **Windberry**, is round at the end, and long and sharp towards the stalk.

The **Pepper tree**, is round in the middle, but ends are more sharper.

B Such a Leaf O hath to Name, the Family of *Aspine*.
G 3 in Fesse O born by *Stretch*.
A 3 such V born by *Cade*.

IV. He beareth Argent, a Leaf of a **Line**, or **Linden tree**. This leaf is as broad as long; save it something tends to a point on the top, and heart-like in the mean, or part next the stalk.

The **Judas Tree**, the leaf smooth and heart-like, and full of turning and winding veins.

The **Mulberry figg**, hath the leaf smooth, and

A such a Leaf V and 3 Roses in Chief. Is born by *Feldy*.
A 3 Line Leaves V born by *Hofield'a:h*.
A a point pointed with a Line leaf thereat V by *Parren*.
A a Linden tree proper. Is born by *Deryester* in the *Netherlands*.

V. He beareth Argent, a **Medlar leaf**. This is a long and narrow leaf, sharp at the stalk, and broader above the middle, thence tending to a roundish point at the end.

The **Sallow tree**, with long leaves, hath them pointed at both ends.

The **Rose-bay**, or **Oleander**, hath smooth long narrow leaves, at the end somewhat sharp.

The **Date Plumb**, is a long pointed leaf, but round and broader at the stalk.

VI. He beareth Argent, a **wild Figg-leaf**. The leaf of the Figg (as saith Mr. *Johnson* in his Herbal) divideth it self into three, but usually into five points, being all smooth.

The **three leafed Maple**, or **three pointed Maple-tree**, the leaf resembles this, onely it is round at the stalk, not turning inwards.

O 5 Figg leaves in Saltier V born by the Count *Feria*.
G a Fesse between 3 such O born by *Figges*.
B 3 such O by *Figlow*.

VII. He beareth Argent, a **Sycamore leaf**. This is another kind of broad leaf, with three points, and those like to it, are

The **Maple**, the **Curren Trees**, and **Mulberry**.

The **Cotton Tree**, hath in each point three Indents all the rest of the leaf smooth.

The **white Poplar**, leaf is larger nicked.

The **Mountain dwarf Cherry**, hath deep nicks, as if it were almost jagged.

B a Sycomore Leaf O a Chief A born by *Sycomore*.
G such a Leaf sans stalk between 3 Nails in triangle the points to the Fesse A is born by *Holsere*.
O a Maple leaf V born by *Maple*.

VIII. He beareth Argent, an **Orange leaf**. This is, as if it had young leaves coming at the foot-stalk of the leaf; like to it is the **Lemon**.

The **Bead tree**, but the leaves are indented.

B an Orange leaf between 2 Beasants. Is born by *Orange*.
A 3 Bead tree leaves V born by *Beadleffe*.

IX. He beareth Argent, a **Jasmine leaf**. The Flowers grow in bunches or clusters like the Wall-flower; these leaves grow by threes, upon a short foot-stalk; the under leaves being oval-wise, and the top long and pointed at both ends. The like whereunto are.

The **Ben tree**, which is a long and slender top-leaf, with two small ones standing a cross with short foot-stalks.

The **Indian Coral Tree**, the leaves like **Hearts**, or the **Trefoil**, standing cross, on short foot-stalks.

The **Trefoil Tree**, after the same manner.

The **Alder Tree**, long slender leaves, and are at a distance on foot-stalks.

A a Jasmine branch V a Canton G born by *Jaseman*.
G a like Leaf O born by *Denfeld*.

X. He beareth Argent, a **Staff tree leaf**. This is a round leaf with four points, the stalk growing out of the middle of it, from whence comes short stalks of an inch long sustaining five or six Flowers, consisting of four yellowish green leaves a piece, which comes to small berries, like **Asparagus berries**, when ripe are black; the branches do grow through the leaves.

B such a Leaf sliped O is born by the name of *Leaf*.
B on a hill in Base, such a Leaf O born by *Von Hatzmansdorf*.

XI. He beareth Or, a **Dugg tree leaf**. This consists of five, being a round entire leaf, the stalk being fixed in the middle of it; it is a tree that hath no branches, but from the top out of the body of the tree, groweth a long stalk with the leaf, the flowers do the same, which are like unto **Alder-blossoms**, of a pale yellow colour.

O such a Leaf between 4 Roses M are the Arms of *Duleffe*.

XII. He beareth Argent, a **Chast tree leaf**. This consists of five long, slender, smooth leaves, all joyned together at the head of a long stalk; they grow upon the branch one opposite to the other, at the end whereof comes forth spikes of flowers like **Lavender Spikes**, white; which turns to seed like **Pepper**.

The **broader Chast tree leaf**, hath two small leaves coming from the bottom leaf, which make them seven in number, and are dented about the edges, and more wolly: the flowers are blew.

The **Thorny Indian Cotton**, hath seven leaves, long and narrow of an equal bignes; from the middle whereof groweth the stalk: the Flower is like the **Cockle**, or **bell flower**, the stem is all beset with sharp pricks.

A 3 such leaves V a File of 3 points G born by *Chastley*.

A 3 Thorny Cotton-leaves V by *Thorncoat.*

XIII. He beareth Argent, a **Walnut leaf**, or **Sprig.** These leaves upon all the branches grow like winged leaves, one answering another upon the stalk, they are a broad and long leaf, smooth, and are three or four on a side, and one at the end.

The **Ash-leaves**, are long and narrow, indented very small; the lower leaves longer than those next above them, so that it riseth taper, or piramid-wise; they have little or no foot-stalks.

The **Mastich tree leaf**, hath the same.

The **Service tree leaf**, like the Walnut.

The **Fistick Nut tree**, and the **Quicken tree**, are both like the Ash with nicked leaves, but lesser; the later having a tuft or **Umbel** of white flowers, which after turn to red berries.

The **Turpin**, or **Turpentine Tree**, the leaves smooth, four on a side: the **Balsam**, three on a side, smooth, both broad-leafed, like the **Walnut**: the tree is not above two Cubits.

The **Sumack Tree** of *Virginia*, nicked with nine, or ten leaves on a side like an ash.

The **Sweet Gaul Tree**, the leaves smooth and round at the end.

A a Walnut sprigg (or leaf winged) in Fesse Barwise between 3 Walnuts V born by *Walnuttree.*

XIV. He beareth Argent, a **Yew leaf slipped.** It hath long and small leaves without any foot-stalk, joined very close on both sides the stalk. This is by Artists termed a winged leaf (as all others are) which have them growing one against the other, as in the former examples; and those under this number, are.

The **Willow**, or **Withy**, have long leaves thus set; but they are broader at the stalk, one side being a blewish green, and the other white.

The **Box tree**, hath leaves sharp at the foot-stalk, but round at the end.

The **Locus tree**, are oval leaves set on the stalk by short foot-stalks.

The **Silver Bush Tree**, the leaves smooth and indifferent large, and set at a distance one against the other.

A a Yew leaf out of the Base (or Yew slip) V in Chief 3 Cressants G born by *Northshagh.*

A 3 Yew-slips fructed, proper. Is born by *Yewell.*

XV. He beareth Argent, a **Thorn bean tree leaf**, or a **Binding Bean tree branch**; every branch or stalk of this tree, is a sharp thorn; on either side whereof grows three or four winged leaves, one opposite to the other: which to look too, seems a branch, yet all makes but one entire leaf; because all the leaves grow so.

The **Firr Tree**, hath narrow small leaves after this manner, both at the point, and also all over the stalk and branch.

The **Broom Tree**, the branches and stalk are very close and thick beset, with a small longish leaf, one against the other. It is a shrub which of some is called **Mirica**, for the bitterness of its taste; its boughs flourish as well in Winter as the Summer. The Flower is yellow, which groweth to a **Pod** or, **Cod** like a **Fitch** or **Vetch** of a blackish colour. This is the Crest of *Van Bromburge.*

A 3 Broom branches V born by *Brome.*

The **Heath**, hath a stalk contrary set on either side, with a slender winged stalk of short and narrow leaves.

Gorse, of some called **Firse**; it is a sharp and thorny kind of shrub; each leaf being round and sharp pointed: the Flower is yellow in form like the **Pease blossom.** It beareth Flowers all times in the year.

O a Fesse between 3 Gorse slips V born by *Gorse.*

XVI. He beareth Argent, a **Sprigg of Cypress.** These kind of leaves cannot be taken from the tree but in slips, or sprigs; by reason the leaves are so long and slender and grow so thick together, as if it were all jagged.

The **Arbor Vitæ**, or the **Tree of Life**, hath a small scaly leaf, short and narrow; and covers all the stalks and branches.

The **Dragon Tree**, is all from the branches ends, beset with sharp long and narrow leaves, joined together at the bottom where they come out of the tree: the Fruit is a **red Cherry.**

The **Cedar**, hath long narrow leaves, which grow together on a knot, or joint, in the stalk or branch.

The **Larch Tree**, doth the same.

The **Pine**, is fuller of small long, and narrow leaves; the branches or stalks, covered over with a lesser sort of leaf scally. The boughs grow Cross one to another.

The **Palme**, the leaves of this tree is very long and narrow.

The **Pitch Tree**, the leaf not very long but narrow, and grows all over the stalk, sprig, and branch.

The **Date Tree**, is like the **Palm**, with the branches full of long narrow leaves, and the body or stem, scaly as it is.

The **Tamarisk**, and the **Savine Trees**, have short and narrow leaves like the **Arbor Vitæ**: only the mean stems or branches are not covered with them. The first hath the red shoots, set with small, short, hairy, soft, green leaves; and another tree of this kind hath the leaves wholly white, and abide so constantly from year to year.

The **Juniper Tree**, hath small and long narrow leaves; three for the most part growing together almost like **Thorns**; they bear green berries like **Pears**; commonly round.

The **Indian Coker Nut Tree**, hath branches or rather long twiggs, growing only from the main stock.

A a Cypress sprig V a Cheif G born by *Cyprus.*

B 3 such sprigs O born by *Birkin.*

G a Larch tree Leaf or Branch A born by *Larcher.*

A 3 Palm Branches or Leaves. By *Palme*, or *Palmer.*

Of the Affinity of Seeds, Pods, and Fruits.

3. FRom the resemblance of **Leaves**, we come to **Fruit**: whereof a few is here presented to your view.

XVII. He beareth Vert, a **Wall-nut** Or. Some term it out of its shell, which needs not; when no manner of a branch

branch, or slip, is mentioned. It is of a yellowish colour, inclining to white.

B 3 Walnuts O born by *Walnut*.

G 3 such with a Fesse between O born by *Hardshull*.

XVIII. He beareth Argent, a **Chestnut**, proper. As it is out of the husk, it is of a deep brown red colour: the husk smooth without any knots, or furrows on it.

A a Chest-nut proper, on a Chief S 3 Trefoils O by *Nuttell*.

XIX. He beareth Argent, a **Cokar Nut**, proper. It is of a Chest-nut colour, and the flowers like them of the **Chest-nut**, the leaves long and slender like the Date-tree leaves. This is born by the name of *Cakarston*.

O 3 such G born by *Van Kakarburg*.

XX. He beareth Vert, an **Indian Nut** Or. It is of a yellowish colour marked, or spotted with a deep blackish brown. 3 Such is born by *Reddinges*.

XXI. He beareth Sable, a **Fistick Nut**, Argent. It proceeds from a white blossom; groweth many together on foot-stalks. in long clusters, and a winged leaf.

The **Coffee Bean**, or **Berry**, is much like it. The Coffee-berry is of a white brownish colour, they grow two in a thin furrowed husk.

XXII. He beareth Argent, the **Pod** of the **Palma Christi**, or the great **Spurge**, proper. It is a kind of Nut of a brown colour; the leaves are large and uneven, of five points, with a turning in at the stalk.

XXIII. He beareth Argent, the **purple Indian purging Plumb**. It is of a bitter tast. Three such is born for the Coat Armour of *Plume* or *Plome*. This Nut groweth within a Rind or husk which openeth as it ripens.

XXIV. He beareth Gules, a **yellow Indian purging Plumb**. Born by the name of *Don Plomullo*.

The *Ethiopian* **Sower Gourd**, resembles this, onely is longer at the end, with a little bending; and riseth from the stalk with a kind of knot, or joint: the rind is ribbed, of a greenish colour.

XXV. He beareth Argent, a **Bladder Nut**, proper. The tree to this fruit, hath a winged leaf of five, a little dented, the Flowers grow many together on long stalks, which with a round cup in the middle of the white leaves, sheweth like a **Daffodil**; after them comes russetish green **skimy Bladders** with brownish Nuts, with a rough or **furrowed hard shell**.

The **made Apples** of *Ethiopia*, are made so only they have many more Furrows: and are of a red colour. The Flowers are six white short leaves, with a yellow pointel in the middle of divers Threds, joined together.

XXVI. He beareth Argent, a **Cluster of Hony-suckle-berries**, Gules. These Berries are the Fruit, and Seed of the Hony-suckle, set in a bunch or knob together.

Virginia Sumack, hath large winged leaves indented like ash; the Flowers in heads, or **Clusters** white, which turn to threds, or **red Thrumes**: seed round and reddish.

XXVII. He beareth Argent, a bunch (or Umbel) of **wild Ash**, or **Quicken Berries** slipt. They are red, and grow in a round; as the **Alder-Berries**. Born by *Quicken*.

The **Alder-Berries** are black, and grow thus in Ubels. And three such is born by *Alderbery*.

XXVIII. He beareth Or, a **Bunch**, or **Cluster of White-Thorn Berries**. Some term them **Haw-thorn Berries**, and a **bunch of Haws**. The Flower is white, and the Berries scarlet, on short foot-stalks.

The **Pliant Mealy Tree**, grow in Clusters, or bunches like Haws, and are black.

The **Dog-berry**, or **Gatter Tree**, the Berries are round, black, and in bunches.

XXIX. He beareth Argent, three **Wharl Berries**, or **Bill-Berries**, at a slip pendant; they grow generally two and three together, so that these seem to be sliped of from the stalk. They are termed **Whortle Berries**, or **Wind Berries**.

Privet Berries, grow in bunches, and are all black, directly round.

XXX. He beareth Argent, an **Ash stalk**, leaved in Fesse, with a bunch of Keys pendant from the slip proper. These are the right way of drawing the Keys, and not as *numb.66*, and *69*. This is also termed, and that properly, an Ash leaf in Fesse, with a cluster or bunch of Ash-Keys pendant; for though there be several leaves on the stalk; yet all is but one winged leaf, of eleven small, and slender ones.

Here is the true shape of a **Drone Bee**, or a **Humming Bee**, vulgarly termed an **Humbo-Bee**. It is of a yellow Mouse, or hair-colour; with a black streak over cross the back; the tail below the waste, divided into three parts, that part next the body yellow, middle part black, and end, white.

A 3 such proper by the name of *Humbee*, or *Drumble*.

XXXI. He beareth Argent, two **Cherries** fixed at the ends of the stalks, and sliped, pendant.

The **Lawrel Berries** (or **Plumbs**,) are black, and of a pure bloody colour within: See *numb.73*.

The **Cornel Tree**, hath the berries long and round, like **Olives**, red when ripe; the Flower is nothing else, but yellow tufts, as if they were set together; the leaf roundish pointed, and smooth.

A 10 Cherries G stalks V born by *Cherry*.

XXXII. He beareth Or, an **Heart Cherry** pendant. It is red of one side, and a kind of whitish blush on the other of a pleasant taste, and lovely to look upon. Three such are born by the name of *Cherriburst*.

XXXIII. He beareth Argent, a **Figg**, Vert. See *chap. 3. numb.38*.

The **Cardamom**, or **Ginny grains**, are in form like a **Figg**, and full of reddish seed; it is veined on the out-side the husk long-wayes, like the **Goose-berry**, but much thicker, and jagged at the small end.

The **Juniper Tree**, like the **Firr**, the berries pear-like, of a blackish blew colour.

XXXIV. He beareth Argent, two **Lobe Apples**. They proceed from a yellow flower like the **made Apple**, and when they are full ripe, the Fruit is red; with long trailing, winged, and divided leaves. Three such is born

by *Lovaple*. Some of these Apples are Orange colour, and others yellow.

The **Virginia Winter Cherry.** At the joints of the leaves comes forth a yellow blossom, being one leaf of five points, with divers purple threds in the middle, tiped with blew chives; after which comes **Bladders** or thin skins, full of berries, green when ripe, and jagged at the top.

XXXV. He beareth Azure, an **Adams Apple.** The Flower like the **Orange flower**; the fruit yellow rinded, thick, rugged, and uneven; with some rifts and chaps or chones thereon.

The **Sage Apple** of *Candia*, the like in form.

XXXVI. He beareth Gules, an **Indian Figg.** The flower is whitish yellow, growing in clusters, the fruit like **Cucumbers**, of a whitish colour.

The **Beza Tree** fruit, is of a greenish ash-colour, having eight edges or corners, with a white substance within; divided into certain cells, wherein is a seed like to a Pease.

This answereth the **Date husk**, before it be opened, and the Date appear, as *chap.3. numb.79.*

XXXVII. He beareth Sable, a **flowered Pod** of **Aloes.** The Pod out of which the flower cometh, groweth in great numbers together, is green; and the flowers out of it, are yellow, tiped at ends with yellow pendants, with a yellow pointil in the middle of a whitish green colour: The leaves are large growing one within another, chanel-like; with sharp ingraled points, and ends about the leaves. It is a precious wood, and of a sweet smell: the leaves are fat and gross, whereout distilleth that kind of Gum that is most odoriferous. It is also taken by Physicians for an herb that is sharp and bitter, which groweth in *India*, and *Persia*.

XXXVIII. He beareth Argent, a **Mullein Seed head**, or **Seed-Vessel**, proper. The Flower is yellow, the Pod whitish; and the cup it is set in, is a white hairy green.

The **Pod** of the **Virginia Potato**, hath the Pod something pointed.

The **Indian Gristly Plumb**, hath the Pod longer and round at the end of a pale green; the leaves are round at the end, and sharp at the stalk.

The **Tart Indian Apple**, is round in the cup or husk, long pointed, and furrowed into four or five parts, and yellow on the out-side.

The **Stoyar** and the **Virginia Date Plumb**, are so pointed and furrowed.

A a Mullein seed head, proper; a Canton B is the Arms of *Van Mulcinbach*.

XXXIX. He beareth Argent, the **Pod** or **Husk** of **Bush-Cotton.** This before it opens as husk for the Wooll to appear, which is two or three broad leaves much jagged at the top, containing therein a yellowish flower, like a bell-flower, broad above and narrow at bottom, made of five leaves, with a stiff middle pointil, compassed with five or six yellow threds. Three such is born by *Cottenshed*.

XL. He beareth Or, a **Sebesten**, or **Sirian plumb.** The Blossoms are five white leaves, growing many together on a long stalk with foot-stalks. The berries are of a blackish green. Born by the name of *Dago Sario*, a Spanish name.

XLI. He beareth Argent, an **Assirian Made Apple.** The pod is whitish green, and the cup jagged, or cut into four long leaves. The leaves rough and hairy, unevenly cut, being large broad, and pointed.

G a Fesse between 3 Assirian made Apples, the husks,
A the Pod or Apple O born by the name of *Strachmith*.

XLII. He beareth Argent, a **Pod** of a **smooth Scorpion grass**, Vert. This is born by *Breundt*.

There is another kind of **Scorpion grass**, where the head being long, turns round, and is all hairy on the out-side, like a worm; which some call the **Worm-grass**, or **Caterpillar-grass.** The leaves grow in tufts like grass, but is broadder and longer piled, then ordinary grass.

XLIII. He beareth Argent, a **Sena Cod**, proper. Of some a **Pod of Sena** of **Alexandria.** The flower is yellow of five leaves with **Purveins** running through every leaf, the pod of a darkish green, the leaf winged of of seven small round pointed ones.

XLIV. He beareth Or, a **Square Codded Pease**, or else a double **bulbed Pease-Cod**, Vert. These may fitly be termed Cods having a near resemblance thereunto; and so may well answer to the name of the Bearer. For three such Pendant is born by the name of *Codde* or *Coddell*.

XLV. He beareth Argent, a **double Cod** of **Swallow wort**: or a **Swallow-wort Pod double codded**, pendant: they usually have two on one stalk; the leaves long pointed and smooth; at the joints towards the top comes forth 5 white pointed leaves, which comes to long round Pods, thick above and less at point. of a greenish colour.

Star Codded pulse, or **Birds foot**, have five such Pods as these a little bending at the end, and fixed all close together, without any foot-stalk, like to a birds foot, the flowers yellow, the leaf a long winged stalk, with short and slender leaves, set well and thick together.

The **Scorpion like Pulse**, hath two crooked Pods joined together, which stand like two **Rams horns** on the stalk.

XLVI. He beareth Argent, a **Climing Dogs bane horned Cod**, Sable. The Flower is five leaves bending backward, with a green pointil compassed with five chives, of them come two Cods bending out and inward again, after the manner of **Bulls Horns.** The leaf, broad in the middle, like a **Bay** leaf.

XLVII. He beareth Argent, a **Nut ben Cod**, and **Nut.** Every Nut, is in the Pod in a distinct cell by it self, the other part of the Pod being streitned, where there is none. It is of a thin bladder like substance and of a light yellow colour, with many long streaks on the out-side; the Nuts themselves are whitish, in a rough woody shell. Three such born by the name of *Nutben*.

XLVIII. He beareth Argent, an **Oleandar Pease Cod.** The flower like the **Pease**; the leaf long and slender growing altogether in a tuft. From either, the Rose-

Rose-like white, or red flower, proceeds a long cod crooked hard and woody, brown of colour: in which woolly seeds are wrapped. This plant is called the **Rose Bay.**

The **Cytysus**, or **Crefoile Tree Cod**, is crooked like a **Creslant**, or half Moon: the flower is of a gold yellow shining colour.

The **Long Pepper**, without the husk doth much resemble the seed part of the **Oleander Cod.**

Three Oleander Cods, proper: in a field. A is born by *Olevander.*

A 3 Peper pods pendant, S is born by *Bitley.*

XLIX. He beareth Argent, an **Indian scaly Musk Melon**, Vert. The leaves are large and long like the **Pom-Citron** tree; the Fruit covered with a thin scaly green rind, somewhat like the **Pine-Apple** for form, but as easily paired away as a **Pear.** This is born by the Town of *Scalkers.*

The **West India Bay plumb**, like this in form, but not scaly, or a yellowish black colour, shrunken in (as it were) uneven, or withered.

The **Chestnut Gourd**, hath a hard thick rind of a dark green, set with Diamond pointed like blackish pricks.

The **prickly Melon**, have leaves long and pointed, dented about the edges, the flowers pale whitish yellow: the fruit hath a green rind set full of short and thick sharp pricks, having some strakes thereon, as the **Melon** hath.

4 WE now proceed to give some examples of Trees, not before mentioned; or if before, yet their bearing is shewed but in part, there wanting some peculiar presidents, for better demonstration, and rules in Blazon.

L. He beareth Argent, a **Branch** of **Lawrel**, or **Bays.**

☞ Now according to the rule, *chap.*3. *numb.*28. the branch is not to be so termed (**unfructed**, or without fruit) except it be thus made, and consist of nine leaves; that is three slips set together on one stem. But if **fructed** then four leaves is sufficient to have it termed, a **Branch.** As *chap.*3. *numb.*2.

The **Cherry Bay tree**, being young hath a green bark, but old it is grey: It beareth a white flower, which turns to Cherries, black when ripe with stones in, the inner part of the fruit is of a deep blood colour.

LI. He beareth Argent, a **Sprigg** of **Laurel** (**verted** and **reverted**,) or **flexed** and **reflexed.** If it were a **Vine**, or **Hop Stem**, or any other kind of Fruit bearing tree that cannot support it self, but by the help of a pole, there had not needed the term **flexed**, &c. for they bend, and bow naturally: I have seed this Blazoned, a **Twig**, or **Sprig** in pale, **reflected** in form of an S: **reverted.**

A the like V between 3 Cornish Chough. Is born by the name of *Shone.*

A the like V between 3 Rooks. Is born by *Dico ap David ap Madock* ddw in *Wales.*

LII. He beareth Or, on an Hill out of the Base, a **Haws tree Blossomed.** By the name of *Hayes.* The Blossoms are white, which turn to red Berries, which hang in **Clusters** on foot-stalks, the leaf five pointed with a little but sharp dents. See *numb.*28. It is termed a **Haythorn**, or **white Thorn**, or **Hays tree.** This born with an Hare segant at the root. Is the Crest of Ince of Ince and *Chester.*

LIII. He beareth Argent, a **Slip** of **Hay-thorn fructed.** Some Blazon this three **Bunchs**, or **Clusters** of **Hays**, on a slip, Gules: which is the proper colour of them. Born by the name of *Hayshall.*

Argent three such proper. Born by the name of *Van Haihouse.*

LIV. He beareth Argent, on an Hill out of Base, an **Indian fig Tree**, or **Plantan fig-Tree.** It is so called, because it hath long **Plantan** like leaves; having a great thick rib running through the middle; the flowers are of a russetish purple colour, divided into many clusters, which brings forth long fruit, a span long, see *numb.* 36. This is born by the name of *Malewitz.*

LV. He beareth Argent, an **Indian Cokar Nut Tree.** It groweth a great height without branches which causeth the Natives (at certain distances) to strike pins, or pegs into the body of it, or tie ropes about it, that serves for steps to get into it: The flowers of it, are like the **Chesnut**, hanging in bunches at the lower boughs, which comes to large Nuts, see *numb.*19.

A such a tree out of Base, fructed, proper. Is born by *Van Gore.*

LVI. He beareth Argent, a **China Cokar Tree.** It hath its boughs growing downwards from the stock; the leaves are long and slender like the **Palm** or **Date tree** growing all on one side, the boughs do not shoot into branches.

Small **Water Yarrow** groweth much after the same manner, having five or six joints in the stem, at each of them there is several fine small green and winged leaves, being less and less upwards, so as the top of the stalk seems to be piramid fashioned.

A a China Cokar tree fructed, proper. Is born by *Don Diago Cob. ck.*

A the like tree, sans fruit, V is born by *Abank a Polander.*

LVII. He beareth Argent, three **Palm**, or **Cipress trees Irradicated**, (or **mooted** up by the roots) in Fesse, **fretted** with a rubin Gules. Some term them, wreathed, or fretted in form of a **Torce.** Born by the name of *Cyprus.*

B the like O fretted G is born by *Don Aberca* of *Spain.*

LVIII. He beareth **Air** and **Water**; with Fowl swimming therein, a **Barnacle**, or a **Brant Geese tree.** on an Isle issuing out of the sinister side. *Parkinson, fol.*1306. will not have them to proceed from Trees, but from shells growing upon sides of Rocks, and Ships that have taken long North-ward Voyages: Yet others have affirmed them to be from Trees, growing towards the North of *Scotland*, which as they ripen, the Shell (being like a Muscle openeth, and at length the Foul drops down;

which if it fall into the Water, lives: if on the Land, it perisheth. This is born by an *High-Lander* named *Cornajalle*.

LIX. He beareth **Air**, and in **Base**, **Water**: on the sinister side a **Rock**, with a **bung of Barnacle shels fixed** by **foot-stalks**, or strings, with some of the Foul in the Water all proper. Born by the name of *Rocfall*.

LX. He beareth Argent, a **crooked stock double bowed**, couped at both ends, in bend: having **2 sprigs leaved**, issuing from the middle of the sinister side at one place, and bowed crossing each other. Born by the name of *Crosstock*.

O the like V is born by *Van Byswych* in *Rhyne* Palatinate.

A the stock in base barwise with three Rose-sprigs proceeding therefrom, proper. Born by *Van Rostein*.

O the like in base Barwise with three Hollin leaves therefrom V by the name of *Van Gorney*. Also *Morner* the same.

LXI. He beareth Azure, in base a **stock** (or **stem**, or **trunk**) of a tree **couped**, (**croped** or **loped off**) of its its five boughs, or Arms, Or. This is more briefly Blazoned, in base **a croped tree**: For in the cropping of trees, the Wood-men always leave a stump of the bough remaining to the tree, which they cut off. Others say, **trunked** in its **five boughs**; or couped of its branches. By the name of *Deadliffe*.

A the like G in Chief three Pellets. Born by *Brodzic* a *Polonian*.

LXII. He beareth Argent, a **stock of a tree, mooted** up by the root; having two **Arms couped**, and **trunked**, Gules. Born by the name of *Raggott*.

G the like O born by *Don Capatas* of *Spain*.

B the like O born by *Van Marwitz*.

LXIII. He beareth Argent, a **stock** in base, with three **boughs** (or **Arms**) couped; from the middle three **smoaky vapours issuant**, and one a-peece from each other, all proper. Others say, from each one, and middle three **vapours** of **smoke**. Born by *Fimall*; and is the Crest of *Gilford*.

Terms of Herbalists used about Trees and Fruit.

5. THere is no part of a tree, or Fruit, but it hath its peculiar name, which I shall endeavour to set down under these heads; in the **Root**, in the **Stock**, in the **Leaves**, in the **Fruit**, and in the **Excrements**.

First, in the Root there is

The **Main-holder**, which is that part of the root next the tree.

The **sprays**, or **divided Roots** from the Main.

The **Tuber**, the knotted or bunched part of a root.

The **Suckers**, are such as shoot from the Sprays, or Arms of the root, called also **Shooters**.

The **Fibres** are the small threds, or strings that come from the suckers; by which the tree is nourished.

Secondly, from the Body, or stock there is

The **Stem**, or **Trunk**, is the body of the tree to the branches.

The **Stock**, next to the root.

Thh **Bark**, which hath several Denominations according to its being; as **rough**, **smooth**, **scaly**, **hairy**, **mossy**.

The **woody**, or outward bark.

The **rind**, or inward bark.

The **Sap** or **Bait**, is the out-side of the Wood after the bark is taken off with the rind; and by **sap** we understand the moisture in the tree.

The **Heart**, the middle of all the Tree inward.

The **Wood**, or **Timberr**, is between the Sap and Heart.

The **top**, the height part of the body.

The **self-Bore**, the growing up of the bark at a broken bough.

The **Joynt** or **shoot**; is the knot or joynt from whence a years growth proceeds.

The **Knots** or **Knobs**, are woody substances that grow out of the sides of any trees.

The **Thorns**, or **pricks**, are sharp points growing from the branches of some trees, which are straight in some, and crooked in others.

The **Writhing**, is the turning of branches.

The **Arms** of the tree, are the main boughs next the top.

The **Branches**, are smaller boughs that come from the Arms.

The **sprigs**, or **twigs**, are such as are from the branches.

A **slip**, is any part of a branch, sliped from the main.

The **Water shoots**, or **suckers**, are twigs that grow from the roots of trees.

The **shoots**, are such twigs as grow from trees.

The **sprays**, are smaller twigs as grow from them.

The **Cyons**, **Siens** or **Siers**, are underlings, or small twigs of a years growth with a joints, which being cut off, is grafted in another stock.

The **Quill**, is the Cane, or space between two such joints.

The **Pit** or **Hole**, whereat the branches sprout out.

The **Pith**, a soft spungy substance, in the middle of some trees.

Thirdly, in the Leaves there is

The **Lozenge** leaf,
The **round** leaf,
The **round pointed** leaf,
The **smooth** leaf,
The **rough** leaf,
The **hairy** leaf,
The **hoary** leaf,
} of these see *cap.6.numb.1,2. &c.*

The **dented**, **nicked**, or **sniped** leaf, cut in edges.

The **waved**, or **unevenly cut** leaf.

The **crumpled** leaf, such as stand bending, and folding in the edges, and will not lie even.

The

The **foot-stalk**, is so much of the stalk, as is from the leaf, to the sprig or branch it is fixed too.

The **Ears**, or **fines**, are such leaves as grow on the foot-stalk, either naturally small; or through extravagancy, and above natures use.

The **winged** leaf, is such as have 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, *&c.* leaves on the side of a stalk, and as many set over against them, without any foot-stalk, or else very short ones, with an odd leaf at the end.

The **Rib**, is the chief vein, from the stalk to the end of the leaf; the **Master-vein.**

The **middle rib**, which hath leaves fixed to either side of it.

The **nerves**, are such veins as run from the rib, to the sides of the leaf.

The **purvein**,

The **vervain**,

The **Brime**, or **edge** of the leaf.

The **eyes** or **buds**, that which is at the foot of the foot-stalk where it joyns to the sprig, or branch.

The **claspers**, are tender threads, or hearby strings, by which running and climing branches hold up themselves, by winding about what they find in their way.

The **tendrel**, is the same to claspers.

Fourthly, in the Fruit there is

The **Catkine**, which is the hairy bloom of the Willow, or Chestnut, before the flower, and may be generally used for the first knot, or coming forth of any bud.

The **bud**, the **cup**, or **blossom**, &c. See in flower terms.

The **pod**, or **berry**; is the first knitting of fruit, when the Flower is fallen off.

The **rind**, **peeling**, or **skin** of any Fruit, is that as doth cover the out-side, whether it be soft or shell fruit.

The **urchin rind**, is the cover of the Chestnut.

The **pulp**, or **pap**, of an Apple.

The **Cork**, or **Coar**, is the skinny thing that keeps in the seed of any fruit.

The **Cell**, is the hollow places, in pods, husks, or coars, in which the seeds are; one fruit having in it several cells, or places in which the seeds are.

The **Pippins**, are the seeds of Apples, Pears, *&c.*

The **husk**, is a general term, for the thing as covers any kind of fruit, provided it be either rough, barky, or woody, skinny, or bladder like.

The **Hulk**, **hull**, or **pill**, is used for any covering of fruit, that is thin skinned, or easily cut.

The **Dyme**, is the same to husk.

The **Shell**, is any woody substance, as covers either seeds, or kernels outwardly, as Nuts.

The **Stones** of fruit, are such shels as are covers for seeds or kernels; within eatable fruit, as Dates, Cherries, Apricocks, Plumbs, *&c.*

The **kernel**, of shell-fruit, as Nuts, Walnuts, and Almonds.

The **furrow**, is the chones, and clifts, or hollowings, in the corners, or rinds of any fruit.

The **Ridges**, are the swellings of the sides of the fruit.

The **umbil**; is the **navel**, or **daulk** in any fruit, just against the stalk; it is also taken for the **crown**, top, or head of an apple, where the blossom is.

The **Gristle** of the Walnut, is that as lieth between the two halves of the kernel, within the shell.

Fifthly, in the Excrements of Trees and Fruit there is

Agarick, an Excrement or hard **Mushroom**, growing out of the sides of old Trees.

Lungwort, a kind of Moss, with broad tough leaves, diversly folded, crumpled, and gashed in on the edges, and spotted on the upper side.

Mushrooms, growing on branches or bodies of Trees, and are of a skinny, soft, spungy substance.

Jews Ears, an Excrement from old Alder Trees.

Touchwood, a kind of hard, dry, spungy Mushroom.

Moss, as hairy Moss, fennel like Moss, hollow head Moss, broad horned Moss, and knobbed or kneed Moss.

Gums, as **Araback**, a liquid substance from Cherry and Plum Trees. **Gum Hedrea**, from the Ivy Tree. **Gum Tragacanth**, from the Goats Thorn. **Gum Opopanax**, from Panax, the All-heal of *Hercules*. **Gum Sandarack**, from the Prickly Cedar. **Gum Armoniack**, from **Gum Lacke**, from Ants, as Honey from Bees.

Myrrh, a kind of Gum from a tree in *Arabia*.

Camphire, the Gum of Cafar, a tree in *Arabia*.

Mastick, a Gum taken from the mastick, or lentisle tree.

Bdellium, like myrrh, not so bitter, & easily to be broken; of a quicker scent.

Cambugia, whither Gum, or Juice dried, is not certain.

Rosin, a liquid substance from the Firr tree, which after hardens.

White Rosin, gathered by *Carthage* in *America*.

Pitch, from the Pitch tree.

Turpentine, from the Turpentine tree.

Tar, a compounded Rosin, or Rosin made molliable.

Birdlime, made of the green Bark of the Holly tree.

Balsam, or **Balm**, from the Balsam tree.

And to conclude this Treatise, take the terms used about Trees and Wood when they cease to have life in them; for we say the Tree or Branch is

Starved, when it wanted Soil to nourish, or is cut off from the main body.

Blasted, or **Withered**, when Winds have destroyed it.

Rotten, **Decayed**, or **Dead**, when Age hath ruined it.

Cropped, when all its Boughs are cut off.

Pruned, when some extravagant Branches are taken away; called also **Lopped.**

A **Log** is a Stock without Boughs.

A **Pole**, a Tree without Branches or Leaves.

A **Stake**, top of Trees or ends of Boughs.

A **Stick**, a shoot of a tree grown to some substance, then cut from the tree.

A **Winding** or **Writhing**, a Stick bent and wreathen about.

A **Pile**, is many pieces of Wood for Fire, laid together, or a piece of Timber to drive into the earth, to lay a Foundation, or build upon.

A **Faggot**, is many Sticks bound together for Fire, Fuel.

A **Bush**, cutting of small Wood or Branches, and bound in a Bundle for Firing, we call such **Kids**.

A **Billet** is a piece of Cleft Wood for to Burn.

A **Nethering**, is a twig or stick bent about Stakes and Poles, by which fences and hedges are made secure.

A **Stump**, or **Stoe**, is that part of the tree in the ground, remaining after the Tree is cut down.

A **Sliven, Shivered**, or **Cloven Tree**, when it is rent and torn by Winds and Lightnings.

Terms used by Pomarists, or Lovers and Keepers of Orchards.

5. **Bourgening**, is the taking away all dead branches from Trees.

Bud, is the first shooting forth of the leaf or flower from Trees or Plants.

Bud, is a knot in a shoot or lance from a Branch; of some termed an **eye** or joint of a shoote.

Bunch, or **bunched eminencies**, are knots in sprouts or shoots above others in the same **Lance**.

Bareing the roots, is to dig about the roots, and uncovering them.

Climers, are such Trees that cannot support themselves but have a Pole.

Cleaning of Trees, to rub them and preserve them from Mos.

Cleft, is a slit or cutting into the top of a Stock for to Graft in.

Cones, are knots like seeds growing from the sides of branches.

Cyen or **Graft**, see **Syen**.

Catlins, or **Catkins**, are the first bloomings of Willows or Chestnuts, or such like, which come forth with Downe.

Dwarf Tree, is such as are set to Walls, and kept by pruning not to grow any higher; or such trees as are plated in hedg-rows, or such as will not grow thick.

Dressing of Trees, is the cutting and lopping off of superfluous Branches, rubbing off the Mossiness, and keeping them in good order.

Eye, or **Joint**, see **Bud**.

Eminences, are knots in sprouts of the higher sort, such as are above others in the same **Lance**.

Fructiler, a Fruit-seller; of some a Fructerist or Fruterer.

File in Trees, is a Disease that frets and corrupts the Bark.

Graft, see **Syen**.

Grafting, is an artificial placing the Cyen or Graft of one kind upon the stock of another, so as the Sap of the Stock may nourish it, and cause it to grow therein; of which there is four (yet) known ways, as

Grafting in the Cleft, is by sawing off the head of the Stock for Wall trees near the ground, and in Standards much higher, as the growth of the Stock is, in which a Cleft being made, the Syen being cut Wedg-like is placed, and so bound close, and covered with Clay tempered with Horse-Dung.

Grafting by Shouldering, or **Whip-Grafting**, as some term it, is by cutting of the head of the Stock; and by cutting the graft from a Knot or Bud, on one side sloping, with a shoulder at the top to rest on the head of the Stock; and with a Knife to cut away so much of the Bark of the Stock as the cut-side of the Graft will cover, placing both together that the Sap may join, then bound and clayed as aforesaid. **Notch Grafting** is much after the same manner.

Grafting by Inoculating or **Budding**, which is by taking off the eye or small Bud, which grows between the leaf and the new shoot or lance, and so placing it on a fit stock, that it may from thence receive nutrition agreeable.

Grafting by Approach, of some called **Grafting by inarching**, or by **Ablactation**, which is, the young stocks and cyens growing near together, and having both their heads uncut, the branches of both being of one size, are brought together that they may touch each other for the length of 3 inches, where such joining sides are cut to the Pith, that the Saps may exactly meet, in which position bind them, and cover the place with tempered Clay.

Greens, are such Trees or Herbs as are green all the year; Winter Trees or Flowers.

Inoculating, see **Grafting**.

Iule, see **Catlins**.

Joynt, in a sprig or shoot see **Bud**.

Impe, a young shoot or Sience.

Knot, see **Bud**.

Lopping, is the Cuting off all the boughes to the maine stock.

Lance, is a shoot, or a yearly sprig, growing from a tree in one years space.

Lome, a kind of Clay to put about Grafts, made of Clay and Horse-Dung, and such like compositions.

Moxide, is a flat, not high tasted Fruit.

Nursery, is a Bed or parcel of ground where seeds are sowed, or slips are set to take root, or where young Stocks are grafted.

Pallisado Hedg, such supports as are made to uphold young Plants that they keep within pounds, whether they be by Laths or other cloven timber.

Plash.

Planting of Trees, is setting them in an Orchard at due distances.

Plants, are young Trees fit to be set.

Prune, is the cutting off of superfluous branches or sprouts in a tree.

Propagating or **Increasing** of Fruit trees by peeling or cutting the Bark; it is done by tying Mortar and Clay about a sprig or young Branch, and then to cut the Bark all round between the Clay and the Tree: by means whereof roots will shoot forth in the Clay, and at setting time cut it off from the Tree, and plant it where you please.

Syen, is a cutting of a twig under a Bud or Knot, to graft in another Tree or Stock.

Shoot, see **Lance**.

Standards, are trees standing of themselves, not on Wall sides.

Scrambling Trees, are such as grow confusedly wide and spreading, and will not be kept in order.

Suckers, are sprigs or twigs which grow from the roots

roots of trees. **Sprouts:** some call them **Sciences.**

Self Bore, is where the Bark of a tree grows round about an old withered Branch cut from the tree.

Transplant, is the removing of Stocks or Grafts, or any young trees from one place to another.

Verdure, is the greenness of leaves in Trees or Plants.

Whip Grafting, see **Grafting by Shouldering.**

Worms in trees, such as breed in trees between the Bark and Wood, through oldness of the Tree or sweetness of the Sap.

Wall-Trees, called **Wallers,** are such as are planted at Wall sides, and are pinned up to the Wall.

6. HAving done with Trees and Fruit, I shall now in the remaining part of this Plate, and in that following, give some examples of the Bearings and Affinity of Leaves, Flowers, and Seed-Vessels of some Plants, Herbs, and Garden Blossoms; but first I shall begin with the whole Plants, and then proceed to their particular parts.

LXIV. He beareth Argent, a **Stem** of a Tree **trunked** and **raguled,** the top having a round knot, with a **self bore,** and three branches issuing therefrom cross wise, couped or slipped, Gules. Others thus, a Knot or self Bore, with 4 slips, the bottom raguled: But I judg this best Blazoned, **a long Cross trunked, Nowy pierced,** the foot **raguled,** see *lib.* 1. *chap.* 5. *numb.* 108. 112. 22.

This is born by the name of *Proudlove.*

LXV. He beareth Sable, **a Stem of a Tree, Irradicated,** and **raguled,** the top **Flory,** Or. By the name of *Maleflower.*

G 2 such in Salter A born by *Van Wardcotz.*

O on a hill in Base V 3 such couped on the top G born by *Trebach.*

LXVI. He beareth Argent, a **Wheat-stalk slipped, bladed,** or **double eared,** crossing one another, Vert; or **double eared, crossed,** (or fretted or debrused) one of the other. Born by *Earely,* or *Yorley.*

Spelt-Corn, it is lesser and blacker than Wheat, it is found sometime single, sometime double eared, set, with a long Beard. This is an *Italian* Coat, born by *Aldobrand.*

O 3 such is born by *Maltigon,* an *Almaine.*

LXVII. He beareth Argent, **a sprig of Hyssope, flowered.** It groweth in long sprigs, with 4 or 5 long narrow leaves in Tufts, at certain distances about the stalk; the flower is a blewish purple. Born by the name *Hysope.*

The **Golden Hyssope,** hath the leaves partly yellow.

The **jagged or dented Hyssop,** hath only two long dented leaves at distances, on either side the stalk, between which and the stalk appears 3 or 4 small slender leaves smooth.

Savory hath only 2 indifferent broad leaves; but the following, called

Winter Savory, hath 4 leaves set at a joint; the flower a pale purple, set at distances on the top, with leaves under them in tufts.

Tyme, or **Mother of Tyme,** hath small leaves set round the stalk, with white purplish flowers, set with some leaves in roundles, round about the tops of the stalks.

The **greater Mother of Time,** hath but 2 leaves, and they something broad at the joints, with little small ones coming between them and the stalk.

Golden Tyme, is streaked with yellow.

A 3 Sprigs V born by *Tyme,* or *Tymes.*

Sweet Marjarome, hath 2 large broad leaves set on footstalks at each joint; with 4 small and narrow above them in the joint; at the top stands long and round scaly heads, or **Knots,** from whence comes a white flower.

Marjarom gentle, some call it **Mastich,** hath a little broad leaf, four in a joint, the head is round, which groweth to a kind of Downy tuft, out of which comes white flowers.

Organy, or **Bastard Marjarome,** hath 2 leaves by couples in joints, being somewhat round, at the top stands several scaly heads or knots spiked, with whitish flowers; the root is like the Rape, red within and black without.

Goats Organy, hath 2 leaves, and little ones between them and the joint, the flowers stand at several distances about the top of the stalk.

Spanish Goats Organy, or **Marjarome,** hath a long and narrow leaf; in all other things like the other.

Basil hath two leaves at every joint, somewhat broad and round, yet pointed and snipped in the edges; the flowers are small and white, coming out of the top joints with two small leaves spike fashion.

Bush Basil, and **Indian Basil,** have the leaves thicker set on the stalks.

Field Basil, or **Beds foot flower,** the leaves and stalk hairy.

The **Mountain wild Basil,** hath 2 rough leaves with some smaller between them at each joint; the flower is in a head, together with leaves amongst them.

Stone Basil or **wild Basil,** they have 2 leaves at a joint, hairy with the stalk; the flower grows in rundels at every joint, and are white.

Poley, or **Pole Mountain,** have invecked leaves larger than any of the former, with a kind of a whitish hoary spiked head, with pale yellow flowers in a hoary husk.

The **Spanish** and **Purple Poley** have small leaves growing out between the leaves and stalk; and so hath the **candy Poley.**

The **African Poley,** hath very small and hoary white leaves set many together at each joint, all along the stalk by distance; the flowers grow at the top.

Dittany, a hairy stalk set full of leaves, two standing together one against the other, round broad pointed at the end, and hairy; at the top hang several scaly spired heads of stalks, out of which comes pale purple gaping flowers.

Pennyroyal, at each joint 2 roundish leaves on short foot-stalks, with 3 smaller between; the Flowers are white, set in rounds about the top of the stalk.

The **Heart,** or **French Penny-royal,** have at equal di-

distances many small, long and narrow leaves all along the stalk, the flowers purple.

Mint, or **Spear-Mint**, hath long narrow indented leaves in each joint; the flower is of a blush colour growing on a spiked head, with leaves under them.

The **curled Mint**, hath a kind of jagged or torne leaf, turning and crisping, or crumpled every way.

Calamint, or **Mountain Mint**, like the ordinary Mint.

The **Field Calamint**, the flowers set in each joint, from middle to the top, in a Whorle or Coronett about the stalk.

Neppe, at each joint 2 broad leaves nicked and hoary, the flowers grow in large tufts at the top, of a whitish purple colour.

Balm, hath two round leaves (pointed at the end) at each joint, on short foot stalks, and Indented; the flower comes out at the top joints, gaping, and of a Carnation colour, some almost white, others Purple and Blew.

Unpleasant Balme, the leaves are set by pairs at the joints; those crossing them, be lesser themselves, and so to the top.

The **Assyrian Balm** hath rounder and shorter leaves on long footstalks, with fewer Indents; the husk is wide open like a round skin with 5 points, in the middle thereof groweth the gaping flower.

A 3 sprigs of Balm flowered proper. This is Born by *Balme*.

Mother-wort, hath 2 large leaves broad and long, and rough and crumpled, with many large indents and great veins at every joint, almost torne and divided by the indents; at the joints from the middle of the stalk to the top, grows the flowers round about at distances, in husks: of a red Purple.

Horehound, the leaves large and round pointed; rough and hoary; the flowers white and gaping, in rough husks about the joints.

The **Spanish Horehound**, the leaves invecked; the **French Horehound**, the leaf long and broad, and indented waveways.

Sage, it is of 3 sorts, either speckled with red, white or yellow, which is called gilt Sage; the leaves stand by couples at the joints, being somewhat long and broad, rough and wrinkled, the flowers come from the tops, set at certain spaces one above another, which are long and gaping, of a blewish purple.

☞ In many Plants there will be small pieces of leaves, or small leaves growing at the foot-stalk, and the stalk which the Herballists call Ears or Fines. In *Egypt* and *Candy*, and hot Countreys, they bear an Excrement like small Apples or Berries, covered with Down or Cotton.

A 3 Sage Slips proper. Born by *Sage*.

French yellow Sage, hath rugged, hoary, broad, and almost round pointed leaves, many set together large and small, on either side the joint of the stalk; the flowers grow in roundles, towards the top of the stalk, yellowish and gaping.

Clare, or **Clary**, the leaves are long and roundish at stalk, set by couples on the stalk, being rough, wrinkled and hoary, somewhat evenly cut in on the edges or waved; the flower grows at distances, with two small leaves at the joints under them, like Sage, but smaller.

O a Clare Branch V born by *Clary*.

Wild Clare, or **Oculus Christi**, the leaf indented. The **German Clare**, the leaf somewhat torn, or deeply indented on the edges.

Germander, the stalks set with small and somewhat round leaves, pointed and dented; the flowers stand on a long spiked head, gaping, and of a purple colour.

Jagged Germander hath the flowers spiky from the middle of the stalk, at every joint, with the leaves.

Bacchar, hath a long smooth leaf, set variously along the stalk, the same is divided into small branches on the top; at the ends whereof come forth diverse flowers on small foot-stalks, which are only small threads or thrums standing close and round, of a purple colour out of green scaly heads.

Centory hath one stalk with broad round pointed leaves, set by couples at a distance on each side; the flowers on the top, are of a Carnation colour of 5 or 6 leaves; they grow in an umbell or tuft. Some call this Herb the **Gall of the Earth**, or **bitter Herb**.

Starwort, hath a long smooth leaf, set variously along the stalk; the flower is like a **Marygold**, some yellow, others purple, blew, *&c.* called the **Purple Marygold**.

Gromell, the leaves smooth, long and slender, like **Gillflower** leaves, set along the stalk, contrary one to the other, at the top stand diverse small white 5 leaved flowers in rough brown husks, with long leaves amongst them. Some have tufted flowers, with the leaves in a round under them.

A 3 such Sprigs flowered proper. Born by *Gramell*.

Shreslewort, hath the stalk set with smooth, long and narrow leaves, green above, and hoary under; on the top stands a scaly white, silver-like head, with a thrum of a blewish colour, paled about with 12 or 14 small long pointed leaves, as a border.

Aegraton, or **good old Herb**, it is a small shrub, very full of young shoots and slips, like the **Origen** or **Marygold**, and hath its flower alike coloured.

LXVIII. He beareth Argent, a **Mullein**, or **Neth Mullen Bunch flowered**; the stalk is covered all over with broad and long whitish woolly leaves; the flowers come out on all sides, set like a long spike of a yellow colour, some white, of fine round pointed leaves. Born by *Don Mollien*, a *Spaniard*.

Black Mullein, the leaves nicked, with the flowers in the like spiky heads of Gold colour. **Jagged Mullein**, with the leaves jagged, or unevenly cut into.

Sage leafed Mullein, the leaves grow all the stalks over; the flowers in long husks grow all together in a head by several small stalks, umbell like, yellow, with red threds therein.

Woade, hath after the same manner, the stalk all covered with long and slender leaves, the top branched out with yellow flowers.

G a Woad Plant O born by *Woader*.

Houseleeke, or **House-like**, it is an herb always green the top branches Bend the heads downwards, the flowers are many leaves Star-fashion, of a dark reddish colour, they grow on a stalk one above another, with a single leaf at the foot of every one of them: This is called generally with us by the name of **House-green**, Born in a white Field by *Wolick*.

The

The **House-leek** (is compared by one) for his colour to the **Marygold**, for its roundness or figure, to the **Bulls-eye**. The leaf is thick, fat, and spungy, the end thereof is sharp, or like a tongue.

Semgreen, is another kind of it, but much less; it grows upon Walls, and tops of Houses; some call it **sempervivа**, being always well liking and green.

LXIX. He beareth Argent, a **Calsidony slip flowered**, or **French Lavender**, it hath at distances many small or narrow, and long leaves, set in roundels; the flowers proceed out of a long, round, scaly head, of a blewish purple, after the manner of a **Thistle**.

The **long leaked Calsidony**, the leaves are long and slender, and grow thick on the stalk; but the top of the branch is bare without leaves, unto the head or flower; the same is the **dented leaf Calsidony**.

The **Spanish Calsidony**, hath a head like a thistle, of many threds or thrums 4 or 5 together on long stalks.

Candy Calsidony, hath a flower like a blew Bottle, of a yellow colour; or to a single **Marygold**.

Lavender, hath 2 leaves long and whitish, one against another, along the stalk, from which riseth a naked stalk with 2 leaves at a joint, and at the top diverse small husks standing round about them, formed in long round heads or spikes, with purple gaping flowers.

Jagged Lavender, the leaves like **Fennel**.

Rosemary, all along the stalk is long, narrow leaves, and at every knot comes forth 2 blewish gaping flowers, out of a small husk. **Gilded Rosemary**, is tipt or pointed, or striped in the leaves, with a golden yellow; and **Silver Rosemary** with white.

Three slips flowered, is born by *Don Foix*, or *Foilx*, a *Spaniard*.

LXX. He beareth Argent, a **Sprig of sweet Mandeline flowered**. The leaves are nipt about the edges, the flowers set round together, of an equal height in **umbels** or **tufts**. There is a sort that have long narrow leaves and smooth. This is born by the name of *Morlarberg*.

Cost-mary, or **Alecoste**, broad and long green nicked leaves; the stalk in the top spreadeth into 3 or 4 branches, each having a tuft or umbell of yellow flowers.

Tansy, is a kind of a narrow thread like, and long leaf, or rather wings of leaves fixed to each stalk; the flowers are yellow, growing altogether in an umbell, and like buttons.

O 3 Spriggs, is born by *Corwvin*.

Double, or **Curled Tansy**, the leaves are close and thick, and somewhat crumpled together.

Mountain Tansy, a broader and thicker leaf, the flowers on the top branches are like **Camomill flowers**, with a border or pale of white leaves, and a yellow thrum in the middle.

The **great white Tansy**, or **Field Tansy**, is the same, having a broader leaf winged; the flowers stand upon long foot-stalks.

Featherfew, the leaves much torne, or cut in the edges, the stalk set with many leaves; at the top stands many single flowers upon several small foot-stalks, like small Camomill flowers. **Double Featherfew**, hath the flowers with many leaves, so that little of the yellow thrum can be seen.

Camomill, is set with very fine leaves, bushing and spreading over the ground, the tops have flowers like **Daisies**. **Double Camomill** hath the flowers double. There are three kinds of them, one hath a Saffron coloured flower; another hath a purple colour; and the third a white; this herb hath that laudable prehemi-nence, that the more it is trod upon, the better it cometh up and prospereth.

Naked Camomill, hath the flower, a yellow thrummy head, without any border of white leaves about it.

Mayweed, hath a Fennel like leaf, and **Camomil Flower**, but larger, and hath no smell.

The **Oak of Cappadocia**, is a ragged and deep cut leaf, set by long foot-stalks upon the branches, without any order; at the tops of all the sprigs both great and small, stands the flowers, which are small, round, yellow mossy buttons.

Jerusalem Oak, the sprig full of unevenly dented leaves, like **Grunsel** or a **Succory leaf**; from the middle to the top, at every leaf, is a flower, yellowish like to the **Blossom** of a **Vine**.

Mugwort, hath the branches set with a leaf cut in deeply about the brims like **Wormwood**. **Fruitful Mugwort**, the leaf more jagged and narrow, especially about the middle rib, and ending in a longer point; at each leaf there groweth 2 or 3 round berries, hairy all over.

Southernwood hath **Fennel** like leaves, but not so long; from the middle of the sprig hangs yellow flowers like buttons on stalks. **Tree Southernwood**, hath the leaves not so fine, but more like the **Wormwood**. Born by the name of *Southernwood*.

Lavender Cotton, hath a long winged, small leaf, set unorderly upon the stalks to the middle, thence naked to the top, where groweth a round head, which sendeth forth a yellow jagged flower.

Wormwood, the stalk set one against another, with leaves divided or cut into many parts; the Flowers are many small buttons, with pale yellow flowers in them, growing spiked.

White tufted Wormwood, hath thick, bread, hoary leaves cut in about the edges, in some places more than others, narrow at bottom and broader at the point, from the stalk set here and there with smaller cut leaves, riseth a branch, which hath each a scaly Silver like green head, out of which comes a flower of many leaves silver white.

Lavender sea Wormwood, the leaf divided into 5 long and slender leaves fixed on a foot-stalk.

Spicknard, or **Valerian**, hath leaves like the Primrose, growing in bunches, out of which comes a stalk set with jagged leaves, 2 together at a joint, on the top stands reddish Flowers, thick thrust together in an umbell.

The **great Valerian**, hath a jagged or divided leaf on each side, some to the middle rib, being winged as made of many leaves together on a stalk; branched on the top with many small whitish flowers, coming out of husks.

LXXI. He beareth Argent, a bunch of **Mountain Avens**, with the flower inverted. The leaves are winged,

ed, made of many ſmall leaves towards the bottom ſtanding on both ſides the rib, the end leaves being large and whole, but indented on the edges, the flower is of a deep yellow, having many yellow threads in the middle.

The **Purple Mountain Avens**, is double roſed; and the leaf like a **Roſe** leaf 3 together (or trible pointed) and a long ſtalk, having here and there on them, ſome ſmall divided leaves.

The **Cinquefoile Avens**, hath the leaf divided into 5 parts, like a **Cinquefoile**, dented about the edges, which are without foot-ſtalks, fixed at every joint; the flower a little pale yellow one, of 5 round leaves, with many yellow threads, ſomething downy in the middle, that after grows to a round hairy head.

LXXII. He beareth Sable, **a ſlip of Sea Spurge**, Or. 3 ſuch born by *Contriver*.

Cypreſs Spurge, hath the ſcaly leaves contrary way, down to the ſtalk.

2 ſlips of Sea Spurge, the higheſt row of leaves Gules, the next Argent, and ſo changeably, is the Creſt of *Van Reden*.

Out of a Coronet O 2 ſlips S is the Creſt of *Reblinger*.

On a Cap B turned up Loſengy O and B 2 ſuch Sprigs A born for the Creſt of *Mallen van Ulmen*.

The ſame is the Creſt of *Brumfer van Rudiſheim*, with the turn up of the Cap Ermine.

Out of a Lamp parted in three S and A a like ſprig is the Creſt of *Van Wildenberg*.

LXXIII. He beareth Argent, the top of a **Lawrel ſprig berried**, out of Baſe. The leaves are longer and ſofter than **Bays**, the Berries black. Born by the name of *Laurence*.

A the like proper. Born by *Kornich* a *Portuguze*.

A 3 ſuch tops of Laurel ſprigs couped, is born by *Don Carnato* of *Spain*.

LXXIV. He beareth Argent, a **Stavesacre ſlip**. The leaf is ſix pointed, each containing 3 dentals; the flower is a deep blew, aud grovveth at the top of the branch ſpiky one above another, that turn to horned ſeed Veſſels.

LXXV. He beareth Argent, a **Sprig of Sena**, having a **Bloom**, a **Bloſſom**, and a **Pod**, on the top of it, proper. The Flovvers are yellovv, and the cod of a yellovv green.

The **Scorpion Sena**, hath the ends of the pods ſharp and bending, and grovv 3 or 4 in a bunch. This is born by *Senagge*.

Greenweed, or **Diers Weed**, hath a number of ſmall green ſtalks, vvhereon grovvs vvithout order, many ſmall long leaves, and yellovv flovvers at the top, ſpike like, vvhich turn to ſmall pods; it is called **Would** or **Weld**.

Caſsia, or **purging Caſsia**, the leaves are ſmooth, being 2 together at the top, and by pairs ſet on the ſtalk, the flovver is yellovv, many grovving together, vvhich comes to a very long round cod.

The **ſweet Bean**, or **Carob tree**, hath the leaves ſmooth, round and pointed at both ends, the Pod is crooked, turning and ſlender, yet broad in the husk, vvhich proceeds from a long **Catkin** in the Winter, that in Spring-time openeth into Purple flovvers.

Tamarind, hath a long vvinged leaf, ſmooth, and ſet cloſe together, the Pod is like a half Moon.

The **Nut Ben**, hath long pointed leaves, round at ſtalk, vvinged at a pretty diſtance; the Pod or Nut is encloſed in a ſingle husk, ſometime tvvo in the husk, each by it ſelf, the other part ſtreightned betvven them; ſee *numb.* 47.

LXXVI. He beareth Argent, a branch of **Purging Thorn, fructed**. The Flower is whitiſh green, of 4 leaves, that grow to black round Berries.

Cammock, is an herb throughly beſet with Prickles, in ſome places called **Reſt-harrow**, and **Whine**, the the leaf is like **Rue**, it groweth moſt in tilled ground.

LXXVII. He beareth Argent, a **ſlip** of a **Jujube Tree fructed**. It hath a nicked leaf ſet on both ſides the branch one above the other, at each leaf is a ſmall yellowiſh flower of 5 leaves, from whence comes a red berry, large as an **Olive**, and of it make with a long ſtone in it.

LXXVIII. He beareth Argent, **flower de luce ſlipped**, the leaves are long and ſharp edged like a Svvord; the flovver blevv, vvith the turned down leaves, a thrum of yellovv, there are both yellow, white and purple of them. This I have ſet here, to ſhevv you the true and old way of Drawing the flower de luce, after which form it ought to be made.

LXXIX. He beareth Argent, the **Libard bane**, or the **Leopard-bane**, or **Venemous Berry**, leaves and root. Born by the name of *Cucumber*. It is a rough hairy leaf, like the **Cucumber**, full of Veins, of a blewiſh green colour, the root knotted like a **Scorpions Tail**; if it be drawn with Berries, the ſtalk hath 4 ſmall leaves ſet by couples; the flowers are many, growing in a tuft or round head together, of a yellowiſh pale colour, with many yellow threads in the middle, as ſaith *Ambr. Pare*, *fol.* 609.

The **Scorpion rooted Wolfs-Bane** ſet forth by *Parkinſon*, in his Herbal, *fol.* 320. reſembleth this, only the leaves drawn ſmooth, ſomewhat waved, or unevenly dented about the edges; the flovvers are yellovv, ſomewhat like the **Corn Marygold**, having many narrow long yellovv leaves, as a border ſet about a middle thrum, which when they fall away, turns to ſmall whitiſh Downe, the root runs taper-wiſe to a ſmall point, which hath ſmall fibres at it; the whole root is in joints like the **Crocodiles Tail**, or the **Tatus**, or **Guinean Beaſt**, and white. This is born by the name of *Gwinberkentz*.

LXXX. He beareth Argent, a **ſlip** of **Wake Robin**, or **Cuckow Pintle**. The **Hoſe Husk**, is a yellowiſh green; the Peſtle or Clapper, Purple, the threads yellow, and the berries white; and when the Peſtle decayeth, the Berries grow large and red. This is of ſome called **Friers Coule**, becauſe of the hooding of the Peſtle, when it is ſpringing forth. This is born by the name of *Pooreman*.

LXXXI. He beareth Or, a **Viper Bugloſs** of Canby, ſlip. The ſtalk is ſet round and full vvith long hairy

ry leaves, out of which riseth several small hand-like stalks, rough; at whose top stands open tuft of yellow flowers, in long rough husks. This is born by an *Italian* called *Figon*.

LXXXII. He beareth Argent, out of a **Hill**, or **Mount in Ball**, a **Plant** called **Jobs Tears**. It hath round jointed stalk, at every joint is a long narrow leaf, like to **Millet** or **Reed**, at each cometh forth one grain or seed, raped in some husks, round at bottom and pointed at end, whereat hangs 2 or 3 chaffy husks or beards, like small **dark ears of Corn**. This is born by the name of *Job*.

LXXXIII. He beareth Argent, a **Sprig** of **Turnsole**, at the leaves comes forth three berries, on short foot-stalks, round and rugged, and of a blackish colour; which have within them a juice, or moisture of a purple colour, of which that **Turn-sole** is made; sold by the *Druggists*. 3 Turnsole slips with berries are born by the name *Turnsole*.

LXXXIV. He beareth Argent, a **Sprig** of **Bugle**, with blush coloured Flowers. The like slipped is born by *Buglos*.

Common Bugle, hath a broad smooth leaf with blew flowers.

Saint Peters wort, smooth and straight veins through the leaves, like **Plantan**; it hath a yellow star-flower with threds in the middle, in a short green husk.

Saint Johns-wort, like to them, the stalk brownish spreading into many branches, having two small leaves set one against the other at distances of a deep green colour, and full of small holes which cannot be discerned but between and the light; at the tops of the stalks stand yellow Flowers made of five leaves a-piece, with many yellow threds in the middle (which being bruised do yield a reddish juice,) after them succeeds round heads which contain black seed. Some of this kind have the Flowers in circles at the joints, as well as the tops.

The **Woolly Saint Johns-wort**, hath the branches hoary white and woolly; the Flowers are paler and smaller Flowers. This is called of some **creeping saint Johns wort**, because it lyeth on the ground.

The **Indian Saint Johns-wort**, hath woody stems, covered with a whitish bark, from whence springs divers branches, set with leaves one contrary to another, which are narrow below at the stalk, and broad and round at the ends; sometimes two or three at a joint, at which said joints riseth divers white flowers of four leaves, pointed white with a little purple in the middle.

Tutsan, or **Park leaves**, the same; with yellow Flowers, which turn to a round seedy husk, of a purple colour.

Iron-wort, leaves hairy; Flowers gaping, of a pale purple.

Mountain Iron-wort, the leaves long and slender, the Flowers purple and white, gaping.

Dragon flower, leaves broad in the middle, and dented with long foot-stalks; with gaping Flowers.

The **French Catch-fly**, hath at the top, and joints below, many Flowers together standing in clusters, very small and short foot-stalks, in husks of a greenish yellow colour.

Sope-wort, have the leaves ribbed like Plantan, the Flowers grow only on the top in bunches, consisting of five leaves round at the ends, and a little dented in the middle, of a pale Rose-colour, in husks on short foot-stalks.

Eye-bright, the leaves are finely dented and grow two together very thick, and from the middle of the stalk upwards, comes forth white gaping flowers, spotted and striped, with purple and yellow.

LXXXV. He beareth Argent, a **Bunch of Treacle Mustard leaves**, with a **seed sprout**. The Flowers are white, which grow to round long pods, upon short foot-stalks. This is Born by *Bunger*.

Princes Feather, hath the leaves invecked, the Flowers grow in branches, consisting of five pointed leaves, with a round yet pointed stile in the middle; set about with chives, tipped; all white, spotted with purple. This is Born by *Fathefoe*.

LXXXVI. He beareth Argent, a **Pease-stalk**, with **blomes**, and **Blossoms** on the top, and **leafed** and **coded**, with its **claspers**, all proper. By the name of *Peas*.

Cich-Pease, or **Rams Ciches**, or **Cicers**, have winged leaves, six and eight on a side, some smooth, others dented, the Flowers, are a pale yellowish colour.

Wood, or **wild Orobus**; the Flowers white, the cod black, and the leaf, is long and arrow, one in a place.

Cocks head, is a small Cod, with **Vitch** like leaves, the Flower is pale red, and grow spike-manner.

LXXXVII. He beareth Argent, a **Bean-cod erected**, Vert. They grow upright, the leaves winged, consisting of three or five smooth and round leaves, pointed at the ends; the Flowers stand two or three at the joint of the main stalk with the leaf, and are of a light purple, some white, others of a reddish colour.

Greekish Bean, have the stalk with two edges, lying on the ground if the small tendrels at the ends of the winged leaf have not something whereon it may ramp or rise. The Flower is a dead or sullen purple, pale at the bottom.

A 3 Bean Cods bar-ways, two and one proper. Is born by the name of *Hard-bean*.

G 3 Bean Cods pendant O born by the name of *Beane*.

LXXXVIII. He beareth Argent, a **Rose** with a **sprig Imbowed**, (or **recurnant**) leafed and slipt, proper. Born by the name of *Round*.

A the like with the sprig imbowed circularly from the Rose to the dexter side, proper. Is the Arms of the Town of *Rosenbein in Germany*.

O a Cock standing on a sprig G which circles him almost about the Leaves V is the Coat of the Town of *Durnham*.

A 3 berries S on foot-stalks at the end of a sprig slipt imbowed circularly from base to base sinister V born by *Winsbury*.

LXXXIX. He beareth Or, a **stone Mushroom**, proper. This usually groweth among stones, and old decayed buildings, being of a greyish black colour, full of white lines and strakes, on the upper side, embowing a little from the middle to the edge, being hollow within

like a **Bell-flower.** Three such is born by the name of *Mushroom.*

XC. He beareth Argent, a **twigg Wreathed** in form of the figure of 8, (or wreathen and fretted) leafed at the ends, and out-sides, Vert. By the name of *Writher.*

A the like G born by *Van Heinach.*

A a like twig G born by *Van Seckendorfe.*

A the like only crossed at the ends G by *Reinhofen.*

B the sprig with a leaf at the ends, and one in the circular part; the rest trunked or reguled A born by *Stavdinger.*

XCI. He beareth Or, on a **Chapourn mounted** in Base, Sable; two Oak-twigs, **bowed** and **Imbowed, fretting** each other, **fructed** and **leafed,** proper. Born by the name of *Van Marschenostheim.*

S the same O born by *Aycher Van Herngiesdirf.*

XCII. He beareth Argent, out of an **Heart,** Gules, a **Sprig double topped,** Sable, each having three Berries on short foot-stalks, Azure. This is born by the name of *Truchengers.* **Mens Hearts** are often born with one or two, or more slips, of various leaves and flowers, which are to be Blazoned according to this example. Party per Fesse G and O an Heart and Spriggs counterchanged. This is born by the name of *Hertwig.*

XCIII. He beareth Azure, a **Flower de lis,** Or, on each top, a **tuft,** Argent. By the name of *Flowertop.*

*

☞ And thus you shall have several sorts of flowers, leaves, and other things, adorning one another. This is born by the name of *Flowerdorfe, viz.* A the Flower B and tufts V.

XCIV. He beareth Argent, a **demy Flower de lis,** fixed to the Sinister side, Purpure. By the name of *Hauser.*

☞ Thus Roses and other Flowers are born by the half, sometimes fixed to the Dexter, some to the Sinister, some to both sides; some also in Chief, others in Base.

B the like in Base O born by the name of *Billinger.*

Party per pale A and G a demy Rose and Flower de Luce conjoined, counterchanged. Born by *Langen.*

Per pale B and G a Fesse A a demy rose on the first, and a demy Flower de luce fixed to the Dexter side of the latter O by the name of *Van Keselberg.*

Per pale G a culter in bend point upwards A and of the first a demy flower de luce fixed to the Dexter side, of the second. By the name of *Van Denstat.* This may also be Blazoned G a culter in Bend, and a demy flower de luce A.

But herein there ought to be notice given, which side of the flower is rebated or taken away, as in the next Coat.

A 3 demy flowers de lis rebated on the sinister side G born by the name of *Van Mulwitz.*

G a demy flower de lis, in Bend Sinister rebated on that side, and a Rose O born by *Van Konitz.*

TO

The Right Worshipful

Sir ROBERT COTTON *of* Cumbermare *Knight and Baronett,*

Sir HENRY BUNBURY, *of* Staney, *Baronett.*

AND

Sir PETER PINDAR *of* Chester, *Baronett.*

Right Worthy Sirs,

Such an itching desire some have to be known in the World, that rather they will be accounted Fools in Print, then by silent Pens to be esteemed Wise: For my part my Ambition herein was onely to add my Observations, which was never before taken notice of in the rules of Herauldry, (therefore new to some,) though it is but to reform and advance what hath been done by Others. Which in the Conclusion is humbly Dedicated to your secret Memories and Posterities by

Your most humble and devoted Servant

Randle Holme.

CHAP. VI.

1. IN the beginning of the last Chapter, I began with the affinity of leaves, belonging to Trees and Fruit. In this (to conclude the Treatise of Vegatives) I shall follow the same method, in Flowers, and Plants, under these heads.

First, the terms or names given by Herbalists and Artists to **Leaves**, according to their form and tribe.

Secondly, the terms given to the **Parts of Flowers** according to their manner of growing.

Thirdly, **the terms of Flowers**, how called, and in what order they grow, and with what kind of leaves.

And what which moves me unto it, is only to give you the terms of art used by Gardiners, not that these are in Coats of Arms, except some few.

I. **A Lozenge leaf**, or a **double pointed leaf**, or pointed at both ends. Of which kind of leaf these following Herbs and Flowers are of kinds, as,

The **Virginia mouth of America**, the leaves are long and [illegible] and grow all in bunches from the root [illegible] the flowers grow on a branched stalk, being many small long leaves white, out of a green scaly head.

The **Sea purge**, shoots out in branches from the root, all set with long pointed leaves, one against another; the flowers are five small leaves a-piece like a star, **pendulous**, or hanging down from a branched stalk, of a sad purple colour.

Spurge Olive, hath a leaf long and slender, with one vein through it; at the top of the branches grow divers white [illegible] flowers, of 4 leaves.

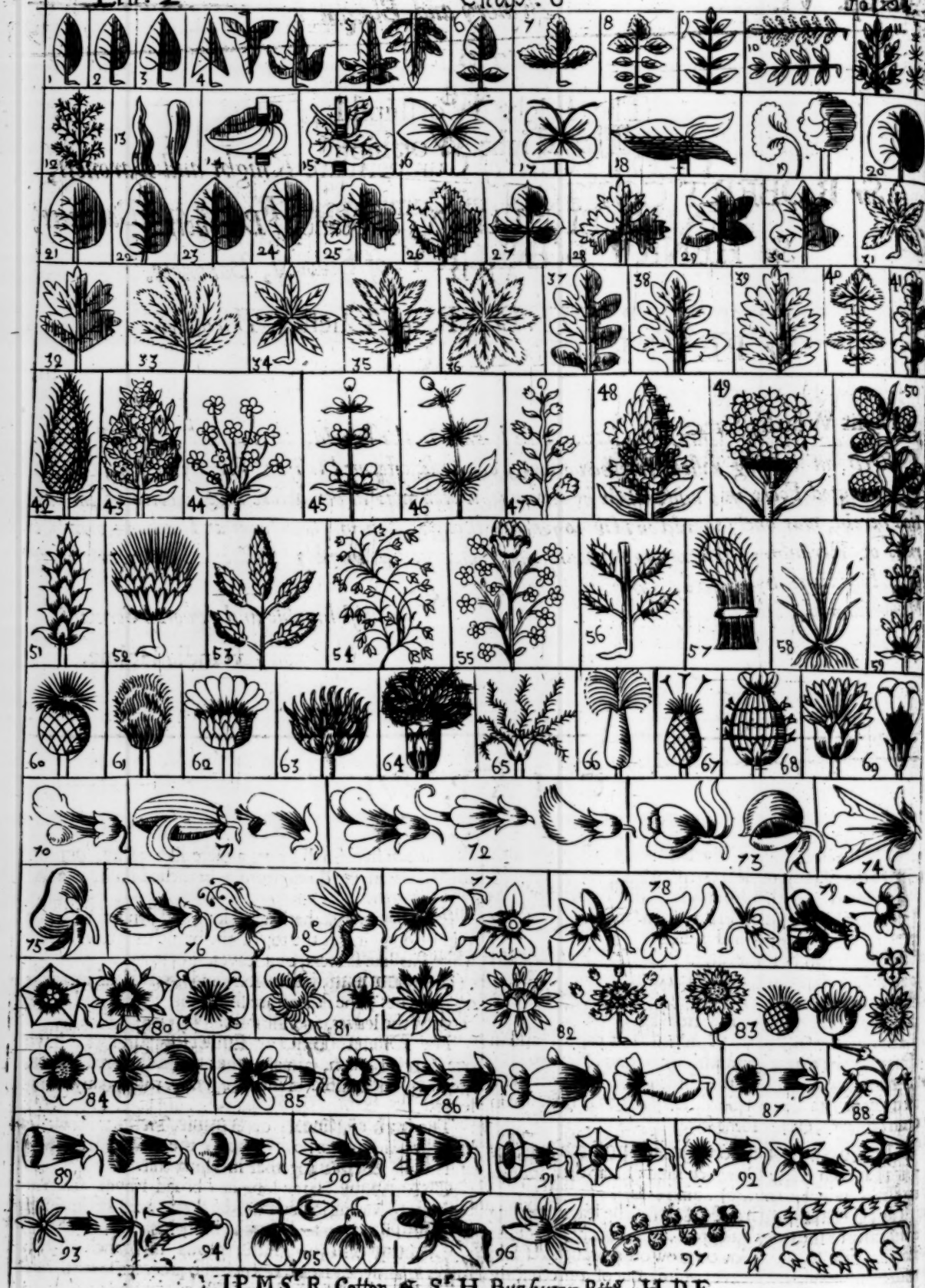
Lithimalus small, hath a long and slender leaf, growing on branches; the flowers are small and yellow, and come between the leaves, and the stalk.

The **Dwarf Dog**, or **flowering Spurge**, have one sort of them, a pale, the other [illegible] growing on flexible branches, below with many long leaves.

The **herb Gerard**, or **trouble Mary**, grows in branches with [illegible] leaves; the flowers are white and small, [illegible] together in a long [illegible]

[illegible] long and broad leaves, sharp at both [illegible] the stalks and like the [illegible] all yellow [illegible] branches.

Cutting Dragon grows in branches, two leaves are joyn[illegible] also proceeds several five pointed flowers, of purple reddish colour, with a green pointil, compassed about with five dark yellow chives, from whence grows a double bending Cod. See *chap.* 5. *numb.* 46.



IP.MS R Cotton & Sr H Bunbury Bto HDE

II. Is an **Oval leaf pointed,** or pointed at the end: those that are of this Tribe, are,

The **Tobacco,** which grows in tufts from the root, then shoots into branched branches, beset with leaves at each joint; the flowers grow in branches being a pale greenish yellow cup-flower, with an invecked turning-out brim, set in a midling **Hose,** or **Husk.**

The **Indian leaf,** the edges are waved, or un-evenly cut.

The **Burrage leaf,** is long and hairy, and rough; a kind of crumpled and uneven cut leaf, without any foot-stalk, set to the sprig or branch.

Hounds-Tongue, a long narrow sharp pointed leaf at both ends, grows in tuffs, the tops are branched with a small leaf at every branch, and flowers all along the same, which open by degrees, as the flowers do blow; which consist of four small purple red leaves, scarce shewing themselves, out of a rough green husk, with some small threads, or pointils in the middle.

Pepperwort, or the **Dittander** leaf, is dented about the edges; the Flower is small and white, growing in branches, on short foot-stalks.

Gomfrey, large and long hairy rough leaves, growing on a stalk; at the top is a bunch of Flowers like bells, in short husks of a white colour; being on several long stalks, set one above another.

Gomfrey with purple Flowers hath smooth leaves.

Mandrake leaf, is a long broad leaf, sharp pointed; the Flowers are pale green, of five round leaves, standing in a green husk with five points, from whence proceeds the fruit, which is as large as an Apple, of a Gold yellow colour.

Mint, or **Spear-Mint,** the leaf nicked, the flower grows on a spiked head, and are of a blush, or purple colour.

Pellitory of the Wall, a long pointed leaf, and rough; at each leaf, from the middle of the stalk (which spreadeth into branches) stands small pale purple flowers, in hairy husks, or rough heads.

Penny-Royal, grows in branches, the Flowers are some white, or yellow, and some purple, and grow in roundles at the tops. The stalks shoot forth small fibres, or roots at the joynts which fasten themselves in the ground, and so become new sprouted stalks.

Balm, the leaf pointed, and a little dented in the edges, they grow by couples on the stalk, at each comes forth a small gaping Flower, of a pale Carnation (almost white) colour, in a husk.

Campion, hath a leaf full of veins, growing on stalks, the Flowers are on branches, some white, some light purple, others peach-colour, containing five round invect leaves, set in a roundish long husk, furrowed and divided into five points.

None-such, or **Flower of Bristow;** is a small Flower of many leaves, round at end, set in a hose or husk growing at the top of the stalk many together in a tuft, or umbel like, with slender leaves amongst them.

Swallowort, a long slender pointed leaf, growing by pairs on a stalk, with which from the middle comes forth small white flowers, of five pointed leaves.

Bugle, broad leaves pointed, growing on a stalk, with little foot-stalks; the Flowers are blewish, growing spiral at distances, with leaves smaller and smaller, to the top, amongst them.

III. Is an **Heart lease,** because it turns inward at the foot-stalk, like to the Heart.

Mechacan of **peru,** the leaf sharp at point, turning thereat a little crooked, it groweth up like hops, by help of a pole, it beareth berries in long clusters, of a yellow colour, and some of a whitish colour.

Rattle Snake-weed; the leaf sharp pointed and bending, set one at every joint of the branch.

A 3 such Leaves V is born by *Van Ratlesnag.*

B 3 such O a Cheif A Born by *Hilrid*; also by *Bonarwas*, two *Polonian* Families.

IV. An **Adder Tongue leaf,** or a long pointed **leaf byforked** at the **bottom;** or a three square leaf, sharp pointed; or a leaf with a forked bottom.

Sorrel, groweth out of the earth in bunches, each on its own stalk, till it come to seeding time, then it shooteth up a small tender branch, with flowers and seeds of a reddish colour; the leaves are long and smooth; of which Cooks makes their Green-Sauce, being of a harsh-taste.

The **Brittannick,** or **English herb,** it hath the look of the largest **Sorrel,** but of a more black colour, being mossy and mealy.

Bryony, is a long winding, or waved leaf, rounded at the stalk, it groweth like **Hops,** by help of a Pole; the Flowers are white growing together in a long tuft like **Stars.** The branches therefrom are black, and are further in sunder than **bunches of Grapes.** Called of some, **Wild Vine;** and **Dog-berries.**

Treacle Mustard, hath the leaf longer.

Hearts Tongue, leaf long and slender, all of a bredth and round at end, streaked on both sides the rib, with small long brownish marks, the bottom of the leaf bowed a little at each side to the stalk, being sharp at the end.

Jagged Hearts Tongue, is the same to the other, only the tops of the leaves jagged, and cut some more, others less.

Buck-wheat, a long pointed leaf, broad about the middle, and round byforked at the stalk; the Flowers grow at top in clusters, all white, much like a knotted head of Flowers.

Bloodwort, a long slender leaf, sharp pointed, and round at stalk.

Bind weed, long waved sharp pointed leaf, biforked at the stalk; the Flower is a white bell, wide in the opening, or brim.

Bind-weed with purple and blew bell-flowers; have the brims turned like the **Mallow**-flower, and divided into five, some six points or indents. It hath clasps and tendrils, by which it supports it self.

Scamony, hath the bell-flower white, with wide open brims and narrow bottoms, set in a short foot husk; the leaf something bending or waved, these last grow like **Hops** by poles.

Syrian, or **Arabian, Aromatical Reed leaf,** is long and waved, the stalk is divided into branches, and they into others, two at a joint which bear small yellow Flowers.

Wake Robin, or **Cuckow Pintle,** the leaf waved.

Fryers Coul, the leaf round at the end, then shooting into a point, with the points, rounded at the stalk.

Second sort of **Adders Tongue leaf,** (or long pointed leaf) **byforked** to the **stalk;** is termed, an **extrinsi-**

cal

cal **Adders Tongue leaf,** or an Adders Tongue leaf externally biforked; that is, having the biforkedness of the leaf (which in the former points to the foot-stalk) in this, they point outwards; which may in English be called an out-pointed Adders tongue leaf.

Mule Fearn, the leaf marked like to Harts-tongue, and bowing on each side the middle rib, like a half-Moon; or an hollow roundness at the bottom, and unevenly dented or waved about the edges.

Third sort of **Adders Tongue leaf;** is that which is biforked to the point of the leaf, and is termed an **intrinsical Adders tongne leaf;** because the biforkedness, or the bottom points, turn inwards to the sides of the leaf.

West India Potato leaf, is much more veined here and there; this is called also the **Negro's,** or **Morocco Potato leaf.**

G three Adders Tongue leaves (the like to the example) V is the Coat of *Alagoras*, a *Spanish* Family.

B a Fesse between 3 such O born by *Browneslane.*

V. The **Adders Tongue leaf,** double parted, or **double forked,** both outward, and to the point. 3 such V in a Field O born by *Sharpall.*

Mule Fearn eared leaf; this differeth from that before, *numb.*4. having a small ear, or piece of leaf set on each side of the forked bottom, which makes it double pointed.

Spinage, hath such a leaf; some only our-forked, others double forked.

Valerian, the points of the leaves more round pointed, as if five leaves were set together being winged, branched at the top with white flowers dashed on the edges, with a pale purple, in husks, growing together in tufts.

VI. An **Eared leaf;** that is having two small leaves growing to the leaf, or at a distance from it on the foot-stalk, a **fined leaf.**

Snake-weed, or **Bistort,** the leaf hath a small fin at the stalk, long and narrower downwards; on the upper side the leaf blewish green, and under ash-colour grey and purplish; being full of veins, bearing a spiky bush of pale flesh colour flowers.

Broad leafed **Sow-Thistle,** is broad at top, triangular indented from thence, a long the stalk or rib; it is rent and torn with fewer division on the edges than the **common-Sowthistle,** the Flowers are white.

Great **Mountain Sow-Thistle,** the leaf parted into four, sometimes five divisions, placed on each-side, one against another, from the upper leaf, each less than other to the bottom, all indented or uneven cut, set with pricks on the edges. The top parted into branches, the Flowers set together umbel like, of a yellow colour, with a more yellow thrum, on a foot-stalk within a long husk, or hose, cut in the top.

Wood Night-shade, leaf hath the two ears joyned to it by an half round; at the top comes forth Flowers, in an umbel, long-wise of a purple colour, of five long narrow leaves, which turn backward to the stalk, with a long gold yellow pointil in the middle.

Wolf Bane of **Austria,** hath the two leaves joined to the great one, by a half round fin; the Flowers on branches like **Marygolds,** all yellow.

Jews Mallow, at bottom of leaf a long pointed ear, which ends in a long thread, or crooked tendrel.

VII. A **Trefoil leaf:** that is three leaves joined at the beginning of the foot-stalk; or a long **pointed Trefoil.**

Strawberry, Raspis, Mountain Avens, and **Black-berry,** alike.

Wild Fenugreek, leaves with deeper dents about the edges.

Harts foot, the leaf round pointed, and endented set at a very little distance, the Flowers yellow, standing in long spikes, thick one above another. It is called also **Melilot,** or **Kings Clover.**

Brier, or **Bramble;** the leaves set at a little distance on foot-stalks the flower white, of five leaves, with a thrum of yellow, which after turn to Black-berries growing altogether in a knot, bulbes like; there is the **Garden Brier,** which is sweet; and the **Field Brier,** which is not.

Bean Trefoil leaf, is smooth, set at a little distance on short foot-stalks.

French Bean, or **Kidney Bean,** have three smooth long pointed leaves, standing at a little distance on short foot-stalk; the flowers like other bean, but grow spiked on a long stalk one above another; some white some scarlet, others purple, which grow to a fat (but narrow) long Cod.

B 3 such V on a Fesse O is born by *Lachingford.*

A a Cheveron between two and a Rose. Is born by *Arelan*, a *Spaniard.*

VIII. A **Trefoil** leaf **gradually eared** down the stalk, or **finned down the stalk,** or a-long the foot-stalk.

Annise, or **Anniseed** leaf, is three at the head indented, onely on the top and two more at a distance set on the stalk without any foot-stalk; the Flowers are white, growing in an umbel.

Night-shade, hath a long and slender leaf at top, with two small ones near joining; and at a distance two large leaves, on foot-stalks a little uneven; the stalks branched which have white Flowers of five small pointed leaves with yellow pointils, of four or five threads set together; they grow on stalks, one above another, spiked in most places, it is called, **Gold-Knape,** or **yellow Crace;** for the Golden colour Fruit.

Avens, hath a winged leaf, made of many small leaves towards the bottom, growing less and less, and set at a little distance, the end-leaf being large and whole, resembling three round endented leaves.

Radish leaf, is roundish at the top growing less and less to the bottom; waved, and set at the rib, without any foot-stalks.

Virginian Potato leaf, is round pointed, smooth and all the winged leaves of an equal distance and bigness, with foot-stalks.

IX. A **winged leaf,** that is, many set on both sides of a middle rib, growing one above another; some having six, eight, or ten leaves on a side, and one at the end: of some called a **stalk of Leaves.** As

Sensitive Plant, or **Herb of Life,** is a rib with small long smooth leaves, set together without any foot-stalks, growing in tufts.

Sena, or **purging Sena,** narrow pointed leaves, three on a side and smooth; the Flower is yellow, of five leaves round at end, which after turns to a Cod.

Sena

Sena of Italy, and **Alexandria**, and **Bastard sena**; have the leaves round at the point, and set to the rib without foot-stalks.

Angelica, the leaves broad towards the stalk, and long pointed, and indented, the Flowers are white, in an umbel.

Parsnip leaf, closer together being broad and long, dented; having the bottom leaves much longer than the topmost, growing piramid-wise.

Water-cresses, have the leaves round and pointed, three on a side, and smooth; set not one against but contrary to the other; the Flowers are white, standing on foot-stalks one above another, which grow to small pods, like horns.

Italian Water-cresses, have the leaves indented.

Allheal, hath a leaf round at stalk, and is a smooth long leaf, sharp pointed; branched or divided, each bearing a tuft, or umbel of yellow Flowers.

Burnet leaves are long and nicked, with an umbel of white Flowers at the head of the branches.

Lady-smock, many small slender leaves on each side the rib; with a stalk of white flowers on foot-stalks. Some bear double flowers.

Muscovy, or **Musk Cranes-bill**, hath the leaves cut into many parts; the Flowers are red and crimson, blew and white, and striped; they grow on a stalk with a tufted head, consisting of five leaves in a husk which proceeds to a long beak, or bill: see *numb.*88.

Rams Ciches, or **Cicers**, or **Cich-Pease**; hath seven or eight dented leaves on a side the rib; at the top of the stalks come forth many tufts of Flowers, thick set together; of a pale yellow colour, after the manner of a Pease-flower, which groweth to a rough cod, small pointed.

Wild Cicer, or **Cich-pease**, have the leaves smooth.

Cassia, the leaves are smooth, having two together at top, and two on each side, long pointed; the Flowers are yellow many growing together on a long stalk, of four or five round leaves, with many green threads standing about a small long crooked unbone, or horn; which groweth to a long slender pod.

Goats Rue, upon the stalk groweth at every joint long winged leaves, which are small and long, and pointed at the end, and smooth on the edges; the top is branched, upon each stands many **leguminous**, or **pulse** like flowers, of a blewish purple colour, one above another in spikes; in some plants they are of a pure white, which after turn to round long pods a little bunched out in some places, wherein lyeth seed, like the **Vetch**, or **small pease**.

Queen of the Meadows, or **Meadow sweet**, or **Mead sweet**: It is a winged and dented leaf, standing one above another, at distances, upon a reddish rib; which are fixed sometimes to the mean stalk, which hath on the top many tufts, or umbels of small white flowers, thrust thick together. This plant hath the two lowermost leaves ever much less than the other, and sometimes small eares, or eared leaves between the large ones, the leaves are of a sad green on the upper-side, and greyish underneath.

English Maiden-hair, hath from a fibres root, many blackish shining brittle stalks, each side set very thick with small dark green leaves, round pointed, and spotted on the back: they grow spiral, the leaves smaller all along to the top, from what they are at the bottom of the stalk.

Spleenwort, hath divers stalks of leaves, rising from the like root, cut on both sides with uneven divisions, dented on the edges with sharp points; and grow spiral.

Maiden Hair, is a long rib set on both sides with a fine delicate, and almost three-square, leaves; dented on the top (or cut in unevenly) without any (or very short) foot-stalks, the leaves grow piramid-wise, the least at the top, and so bigger and bigger down the sides; being 20, 25, or 30 leaves on a side, all marked on the back, with many small brown spots.

Centory, the leaves long, four and five on the side, the rib deep dented; the flower like a Thistle, of a pale blew colour, growing on branched stalks.

Yellow Centory, hath the leaves seven or eight on a side, which are both long and slender.

Celandine, the leaves long pointed at both ends, set on a rib two and three on a side, each leaf divided into many parts, and each of them cut in on the tops of the edges; the stalks are full of a yellow sap, or milk; at the top of the branches are gold yellow flowers of four leaves a-piece, out of which comes small long pods. Some write it **Celedony**.

Pease, the leaves are round at the end, four or five on a side, the flower is white, (some a light red gaping flower) that turns to a **Peascod**.

Vetches, **Lentils**, **Tares**, have leaves like Pease round at end, and pointed on the rib, but small and little leaves, eight, ten, or twelve on a side, the flowers like **Pease**.

Orobus, or the **bitter Vetch**, hath many long and slender smooth leaves on the rib growing piramid, and the top ends in a sharp point, or **wreathing clasper**.

Licorice, the leaves are smooth, five and six on a side.

Fearn, the leaves are nicked almost to the middle vein of the leaf, and set contrary one to the other on the great rib, the bottom leaves being much longer than the top-leaves, growing piramid-wise.

X. A **winged jagged leaf**. That is having the leaves deeply cut in on the edges.

Agrimony, hath divers long leaves, made of many set upon a stalk, some greater, others lesser, all of them indented about the edges; green above, and grey underneath, a little hairy withall; on a stalk grow many small yellow flowers one above another, in long slender spikes. It is also called **white**, or **wild Tansy**.

Curled Cresses, the leaves cut and roundly dented, and curled about the edges; the flowers are white, on long spikes one set above another.

Mustard, the leaves are small and jagged, set together by small fins, running along the rib, and are unevenly cut, or dented; the flowers are yellow, growing along the branches which turn to small pods, hanging one above another.

Round rooted Readish, hath jagged, and deep cut leaves, set at a distance; round, and without foot-stalks.

Smallage, the leaves consist of three parted leaves; each part deep dented, four and five on a side; the flowers white, in umbels, or thick tufts.

Filipendula, or **Drop-wort**, hath divers winged leaves, long, dented about the edges, and set close together on each side a middle rib, like **Burnet, wild Tansy**, or **Agrimony**: the stalk hath such leaves thereon, spreading in the top into tufts of white flowers, of five pointed leaves a-piece, with some threds in the middle of them, each standing upon a small foot-stalk.

Milfoil, or **Yarrow**, hath a long winged leaf dented, the flower is white, growing in tufts, or umbels; some call it **Nose-bleed**, it is a short Set or shrub, the leaf like a Birds **Feather**, dented by cuts, and are sharp also like the **Cummin**.

Corn Parsly, hath sundry long and winged leaves lying on the ground, deeply dented, set close on a middle rib, and pointed; the stalk hath the like leaves at the joints, but less branching on the top, each having small umbels, of white flowers.

English Sea-Fern, on a stalk are placed many rough, thick, shining, blackish, green leaves; broad in the middle, long and pointed at both ends; finely snipt about the edges; with brownish marks on the back, like **land Fern**. These grow from a brownish root, composed of a multitude of threds.

The second is a **winged leaf double set**, or a double winged leaf, of some termed a **Flie Winged leaf**; because set by pairs against one another on the middle rib.

XI. a **Branched Winged Leafe**. a **Winged Leafe** of many parts. or **Winged and Divided Leaves**. that is when the lower winged leafe fixed to the maine rib containeth as may leaves as is on the stalk above it: or from the top leafe each exceeds other in the wing as is above it.

Hemlock, hath set at the joynts very large winged leaves, which are divided into many other winged leaves, one set against another indented; branched towards the top, where it is full of umbels of white flowers.

Parsly, hath upon the rib, or stalk on the top, a three parted leaf, each dented on the top; below it on short foot-stalks is set two such like leaves on answering the other; at a distance below them, on a long foot-stalk, is set on either side such a like winged leaf containing three leaves a-piece; below them again, is set on either-side at a distance on a longer foot-stall, another winged leaf which containeth as many leaves as is above it, growing altogether piramid-wise; the bottom leaves still exceeding them, next above it: thus Parsly is winged, for three or four winged leaves on the side of the main rib; the Flower is white growing in umbels.

Sweet Cisley, or **Chervil**, the leaves are much cut and jagged, being a little hairy on the stalk, and of a whitish green colour, at the top stands small white tufts of Flowers, or spoked tufts.

Lovage, hath great large winged leaves, divided into many parts every leaf being cut in the edges, with three dents, or four at most; the stalk full of joints, out of which towards the top come forth long branches which bear yellow flowers in umbels.

Laserwort and **Allisander**, are leafed like the winged leaves in the plate, with large deep indents, the Flowers in umbels, are white.

All-heal of America, or the **cluster-berry Allheal** of *America*, hath a round pithy brown purple stalk, set at the joints with large leaves divided into many parts, usually by three at a space, on midling foot-stalks; the winged leaves being set at a good distance from the top three leaves; they are a little dented about the edges; and on sundry branches have many tufts of flowers, made of small whitish green threds, like Vine-blossoms which after turns to dark red berries in clusters.

Herb Francumsence, hath the divided winged leaf, set with three leaves broad and dented on the top; then three single leaves on a-side, with as many directly against them, each at a little distance on foot-stalks; and then two winged leaves each consisting of three leaves, set at the lower part of the stalk; from the upper joint, riseth a few branches bearing large umbels of white flowers; smelling sweet as most umbelliferous tops do.

Libstick, or **Sermountain**, hath at the joints a long slender leaf, spreading winged divided in sundry parts, whose foot-stalks usually bear two leaves, some four, set one against another, and three always at the end, with a winged leaf at the bottom.

The second, is a **Rush-leaf**, (or **prickly leaf**) set in **Wharles**; that is, at distances, or several spaces about the stalk, to the top, are set divers roundels of leaves; that are long, and slender.

Horse-Tail, hath only one intire stalk like a rush (called a **rough jointed rush**) it is full of joints up to the top, so made as if the lower part were put into the upper, whereat grows at each side, or round, a bush of small rushes hard and sharp; at the top comes forth small **Jules**, or **Catkins**, like those of trees.

The **greater Medow Horse-Tail**, is the same, only the rushy leaves in the joints are more bushy and longer, and many of them do branch themselves forth into others, and are all of them full of joints, scarce discernable.

Rosemary, hath Wharles or small slender leaves set at distances about the stalk.

Small Maudlin, hath the stalk full of small slender leaves of whitish green; with yellow flowers, thick thrust together, in an umbel, or tuft.

Francking Spurry, or **Spurwort**; on the stalk are set at distances, or joints, small narrow leaves waving, or bending in manner of a star; or spur rowel of many points; the Flowers are small and white, in husks, on branched stalks which turn to small round heads.

Woodroof, the stalk is set at every joint with eight or ten long (& broad in the middle) leaves; on the top is star-flowers of five leaves on branches, of a white colour. Some have blew, others purple coloured flowers, standing on a branch by short foot-stalks.

Maidens-Hair, or **Ladies Bendstraw**; the leaves long slender and sharp pointed, turning downward; the top branching forth into divers parts, with five small leaves at every joint, on which grow long tufts, or branches of yellow flowers, very thick set together, one above another.

Goose-grass, or **Cleavers**, hath six rough hairy leaves on a hairy stalk in wharles, at distances, or set in a round compass, like a star, or rowel of a spur; from between the leaves at the joints, towards the top comes forth many small white Flowers, on threddy foot-stalks which turn to two rough round seeds; the purple flowered **Cleavers**, have the leaves and stalks smooth.

Cross-wort, hath a square hairy jointed stalk, with four roundish (pointed at both end) leaves, hairy yet smooth

smooth of a yellowish green, towards the top at the joints with the leaves, in three or four rows upward, stand small pale yellow flowers in husks.

Stinking Ground-pine, a round stalk, set by joints at certain spaces, with very many small and narrow thred-like whitish green leaves, round the stalk; being longer at the bottom than the top.

The **lesser Ground-pine**, hath the stalk lying on the ground in a compass, upon each there is divers rundels of small long leaves set at spaces, of a yellow green colour; on the tops, divers Flowers do stand together in a tuft, consisting of 5 small white leaves a-piece.

Fair Heath low Pine, a reddish stalk full of joints, each set round in compass, with many small and long, thick fat leaves; the tops have divers Flowers, on short foot-stalks, consisting of five or six long dented leaves, of a whitish red colour, with yellow threds in the middle; the purple **Low-pine**-Flower, groweth in a great spiked tuft, or bush; consisting of four leaves a-piece double forked at the ends, in a brownish husk.

Narrow leaked Salomons seal, hath only one stalk set at several spaces, with long narrow leaves, five or six together round the stalk; at the said joints or spaces, with the leaves, comes forth two or three short stalks, with whitish green Flowers at the ends of them, like bells with dented edges, after which comes round red berries.

Pick Madam, or **stone Crop**, is a sappy stalk, thick set on all sides, with small round sharp pointed sappy leaves, (or as others describe them) with thick fat round yellowish green leaves a little pointed at the end; the Flowers stand at the tops of the branches, many set together, yet somewhat loosly and not in tufts or clusters, consisting of five pointed leaves with some threds in the middle, all of a yellowish colour; others white, some carnation. It is termed also **Trick Madam.**

XII. A **Thread leaf**, or **Hair-like leaf**, or a **leaf finely cut.**

Fennel leaf, or **thredy branched leaves.**

Flixweed, hath a branched stalk, set with green leaves very finely cut, or severed into a number of parts; the Flowers are small and yellow, growing spike fashioned, which after comes to small long pods.

Flax, hath on the stalk, which is slender and pliant, many (or thick beset with) single narrow long thred-like leaves, without order; branched in the top into three or four small foot-stalks, each bearing a blew flower, of five round-pointed leaves with some threds in the middle; in green short, and dented husks.

Ragwort, hath the leaves something broader than Fennel, much cut and rent in the edges even to the middle rib; the top brancheth forth into many stalks, bearing yellow Flowers, set in a pale, or border, with a dark yellow thrum in the middle; set in a round, divided husk.

Sea-Mols, or **Coralline**, and **Sea-Feather**, are all branched with threddy leaves like Fennel.

Camomil, hath small trailing branches, set with very fine hairy leaves, bushing and spreading abroad, the tops have white flowers, with yellow thrums in the middle; some have only yellow thrummy heads, without any pale or border of white leaves, and a small thrum in the middle.

Corn Marygold, and **Ox-Eye**; have both thredy branched leaves, yet something broader than Fennel; The Flowers, out of a green scally head, or husk, a border of broad pointed leaves, cut or dented into three or four parts; about a thrum all yellow.

Nigella, leaves as finely cut as Fennel, the branch hath flowers, containing five blew leaves, laid open like a star, without any green leaves under the Flower, with a green head in the middle, compassed with some few threds.

Carrats, the leaf large and spreading, made of many thin, cut deep leaves, divided into many parts, jagged yet broader than **Fennel**, the flowers are white umbels in branches, dispersed.

Asparagus, or **Sperage**, the leaves jagged, and hairy, branched; the Flowers are yellow, consisting of six leaves.

Bastard wild Poppy; Fennel leafed, the flower 4 round leaves, white, or red, with black threds, about a green round head.

XIII. A **Sword**, or **Flag leaf**, or **Blade leaf.**

Aspodil, or **Asphodil**, have long narrow leaves, compassing one the other at bottom of the stalk, like Flags and Flower-de-luces: the Flowers are yellow, in a spike; six leaves a-piece, with some threds in the middle.

White branched Asphodil, hath white flowers, in little round husks, consisting of six or seven long and narrow leaves, with threds, or chives in the middle, tipt with roundish pendils.

The **Asphodil**, or **Aspodil**, which hath many crawling hollow three square leaves sharp pointed; the stalk is smooth and naked; divided at the top into many branches, bearing many star-like flowers of six leaves, whitish on the inner-side, and striped with a pale purple line down the back-side, having some yellow threds in the middle; there is a kind of these, whose flowers are all white, and the stalk is not branched; others are of a blush colour; others striped on the back with lines, growing on the stalk in a long spike, those below flowering first.

The **small Aspodil**, or **Kings-Spear**, hath many long narrow edged green leaves trailing on the ground, the stalk set with small leaves to the middle, where the flowers begin being many, yellow and star-like.

The **Lilly Aspodil**, it hath many long thin sedgy leaves; the stalk is naked, bearing at the top four or five small Lilly-like flowers, blowing one after another (like the day Lilly) of a yellow colour: Of this kind some are white, others blush, or flesh colour.

The **Spider-wort**, or **Savoy Spider-wort**, hath thin small sedgy leaves of a whitish green; the stalk bears at the top, one above another seven or eight flowers; white flower hanging Lilly-like, with a small forked pointil, with some threds tipt with yellow.

The **Italian Spider-wort**, hath on the top of the stalk many white star-like Flowers, and a grassy leaf.

The **Virginian Spider-wort**, hath a growing grassy leaf; the stalk is in joints, with some short leaves on the top, from whence proceeds the flowers which are many; hanging down their heads at first, and turn up as they come to blow, each containeth three leaves laid flat of a blue colour, with red threds in the middle, tipt with yellow pendants; they open commonly one after another. It may be called the **Day Flower**, for it opens in the day and closes in the night; of this kind there is that have red, others white flowers.

Flag, the leaves hard and stiff, the flower yellow like to the Flower-de-luce, having three falling leaves, and other three arched; that cover their bottoms, with three short pieces of leaves instead of whole ones. Some call them **Sagges** or **Sedges**; others **Sword-herb**; of the Latine **Gladiolus**; Some call it **Arion**; some **Sword-point**, or **Edge-Tool**; and others **Cuttle-haft.**

Rice, the stalk is in joints, at each a thick long leaf, at the top it beareth a seed, in a sparsed juba, or tuft (or a spiked tuft spread in branches) whose blooming is said to be purple; with the seeds standing severally on them inclosed in a hard brown husk, and an **Awn** or **Beard**, at the head of every one of them.

Millet, hath jointed tall stalks, soft and hairy, with long and large Reed-like leaves at them, compassing one another; the top of the stalk, hath a number of whitish yellow long sprigs like Feathers, bowing down their heads.

The **Indian Millet**, hath the seeds in a **Juba** or tuft, standing upright, and boweth not; and are either whitish, yellow, red, or blackish, hard and shining.

Panick, is like the **Millet**, only the top is a whitish long close spike, round at the end, soft (and as it were hairy soft) husks.

New Indian Panick, hath from the joints, and also at the tops, panick-like heads, closer than the former, the stalk and flowers of a blewish shining purple colour, full of hairy husks.

Sampire, or **Rock-Sampire**, the stalk is tender and green, branching forth from the bottom, beset with thick and almost round leaves, and long; sometimes three or four together on a stalk, and are sappy: the tops and branches, have umbels of white flowers. It is called **Pearceston.**

Ginger, the root is that we call **Ginger**, the leaves grow like the **Water-flag**, with a Flower like a Flower-de-luce. But the **Brazil Ginger**, with a blackish root, hath a stalk like to our **Reed**, when it is new put forth, or sprung up to a foot in height.

Dittander, or **Scar-wort**, hath long and narrow leaves, set upon a stalk, which brancheth forth at the top into dark purplish flowers, set together, consisting of five small pointed leaves a-piece, in rough brownish husks.

Toad-flax, or **Flax-weed**, the stalk full of long narrow leaves, at the top is a spike of pale yellow flowers, with gaping mouths, and a spur behind each; growing in a spike fashion.

Flea-bane, hath a long narrow leaf upon the stalk, dented a little about the edges, and pointed at the ends; at the top part of the stalk, at every joint with a leaf, comes forth a yellow Flower, in a green husk, which when it is ripe turns to down.

The **purple Flea-bane**, hath the top of the stalk branched, at the end of each, stands a bluish purple flower of small leaves, white at the top, with a yellow thrum in the middle, out of which doth rise divers white threds.

Spider-wort, hath long narrow leaves all in a cluster at the ground, from whence issue a stalk branched at the top, whereon groweth all along, on short foot-stalks, a purple flower of six pointed leaves, out of a short husk. Some white, others red, or carnation flowers.

Viper-grass, hath long and narrow leaves, the stalk divided into three or four branches, with lesser leaves on; at the top of each a blue purple flower, standing in a short green head, consisting of many long narrow leaves set thick together.

Goats-Beard, hath long narrow leaves compassing the stalk at the joints, and turn down by reason of their length, having a whitish rib all along the middle; the stalk brancheth into 2 or 3 parts, each having a large green head, with long pointed ends, out of which appears a small purple flower. There are some that bear yellow flowers, and rose colour.

English Worm-seed, the stalk set with long narrow leaves, pointed at both ends; at the top of the stalk is 2 or 3 branches, at the ends whereof come forth small yellow flowers, made of 4 leaves apiece, all set together in a tuft, on short foot-stalks.

XIV. A **Through leaf**, or a **pointed Through leaf**, that is a leaf that hath no foot-stalk, but surrounds the stalk or branch it is fixed unto.

Solomons Seal, of some called **St. Johns Seal**, or **St. Maries Seal**, or **Fraxinell**, or **the Seal of Heaven**, is a long stalk bowing towards the top, set with single leaves one above another, at the foot of every leaf almost from the bottom up to the top of the stalk comes forth White and hollow **pendulous** Flowers, something like the **May Lilly**, or **Lilly Convally**, but ending in five longer points on long foot-stalks: That of *Virginia* hath the Flowers only on the top of the stalk, in a spike without any leaves intermixed.

Gold of Pleasure, hath the stalk compassed with a sharp pointed leaf, biforked at the bottom, branched at the top, beset on both sides spike like with white Flowers of 5 round leaves on short foot-stalks, after which comes round heads, each having a point on it.

Dyagzum hath the stalk compassed with leaves pointed one above another, the flowers are small and white, standing together in tufts on the top, which turn to round rugged heads, with a prick at the end.

Hellebor, or **Neesewort**, hath large roundish leaves all along the stalk, compassing one another to the bottom, having eminent ribs along them; the top is divided into many branches, having all along them many small, yellow, or whitish green star-like Flowers.

Ladies slipper, hath the stalk compassed with a large and pointed leaf at distances, on the top stands one flower, sometimes two or three on foot-stalks one above another, with a small leaf at the foot of every one; each Flower is of an oval form, and hollow, open with ears like to a slipper, with four long, narrow and dark coloured leaves at the setting on of the flower unto the stalk, wherein the Flower was at first enclosed, being of a pale yellow colour and purple.

Birthwort, is a kind of a running slender and bending stalk, trailing, having few or no branches issuing therefrom, compassed about with one round pointed leaf, set at distances with the leaves, from the middle, at every joint upwards, come forth a long hollow flower, small at bottom, broad at the top, of a deadish yellow, or brown colour, after which comes a round fruit somewhat longish, as large as a **Walnutt.**

Hairy headed Knapweed, a through leaf, sharp and long pointed, the top branched, with a leaf at every joint; at the top a Flower like a Thistle, with whitish crooked tangling threds, of a purple colour.

Centory, hath yellow flowers, the leaves broad at the

the stalk, and roundish pointed, 2 at a joint; the top 2 or 3 or more stalks rising from between 2 leaves, at the end of each a Flower of five white leaves in a small husk.

Gentian, on the stalk is many broad three ribbed, dark green leaves, pointed at the top, compassing the stalk at the bottom, 2 leaves one against another; at the top comes forth the flowers, compassing the stalk at 2 or 3 of the upper joints, with 2 leaves a piece under them. The Flowers are Star-like, consisting of six long narrow leaves, of a purple colour, with yellow threds in the middle, standing about a long green byforked long head, like a **Fish tail.**

Hony-wort, or **Cerinthe**, the leaves are broad and long, roundish at the ends, and compassing the stalk so much that they seem to go through them, of a blewish green colour, spotted all over with white spots; at every joint or leaf comes forth a branch which at the top are smaller, at every leaf is a long hollow flower like a Bell, of a yellow and purple red colour, set in a green husk, divided into five parts. The great, yellow, and purple and **white Honywort**, have the stalk and leaves all hairy.

Through Wax, or **Through leaf**, hath the leaf round at bottom, and pointed at the end, having the stalk through the middle of the leaf, which stand at distances, at each leaf cometh forth a stalk, and so smaller to the top, the flowers are small, standing in tufts, at the head of the branch of a yellow colour. The common **codded Through Wax**, the leaves are uneven on the edges, long and round pointed, opening in the compassing of the stalk, heart-like; the branches have white flowers one above another, consisting of 4 leaves, in husks, which turn to long and square cods.

Leopards Bane, hath one only leaf compassing the stalk, round and indented, from whence groweth small branches, with small leaves thereon, at the top of each, one pale, smooth yellow flower, of 4 round leaves, with a small greenish head in the middle.

Wolfs-Bane, hath a flower on a double stalk like the **Corn Marygold**, which when it falleth away, turns to a small whitish downe.

XV. A **Slit Through leaf**, or a **Round Through leaf, bipointed** at the opening.

XVI. A **double pointed Through leaf**, or a **Through leaf pointed** at both ends.

Wood Spurge, hath at the tops of the stalks many yellow flowers standing in cups, or leaves under them, like cups (that is) two almost round leaves, compassing the stalk that is yellow also; of which comes small round heads standing up a little higher in the cups on foot-stalks, with 3 little buttons on the top of each head.

Garden Spurge, hath 2 long and narrow leaves, of a blewish green colour, compassing the joint, from whence it riseth into branches; 2 leaves being still at the division or parting of the branches; at the tops are yellow pale Flowers set in leaves like cups, that turn to seed-heads, as aforesaid. There is a sort of Spurge that beareth red Flowers, and yellow, dasht over with purple.

Through leaved Centory, the stalk at every joint, or set at distance, hath a broad and long pointed leaf at both ends, that so compasseth the stalk about, as it seemeth to have run through them, and turn up at the edges, that they may hold Dew or Rain that falleth on them; the Flowers on the top are in small branches 3 or 4 out of a cup, with pale yellow leaves, 6 or 8 about a small thrum or head.

Saint Peters Wort, hath only one stalk from the root, set at distances, with 2 broad and long leaves round pointed at both ends, having sometimes small little leaves rising from the bosom of the greater; at the top is 3 or 4 branches, each having a Star-like Flower of 5 pointed leaves, and threds pointed with small round buttons, all yellow.

Sun turning Spurge, hath only one stalk, whereon grow diverse yellowish green leaves, smaller at the bottom, but broad and round at the ends, endented about; the flowers are yellow, as other **Surges**, standing in cups, of two leaves apiece, the stalks running through them.

XVII. A **four parted Through leaf**, or a **round four parted Through leaf**, a **Caterfoil Through leaf.**

Knobbed, or **Tuberous Spurge**, the top is branched, at every joint is a leaf through which they spring, having a white rib down the middle; at the tops are Flowers set in the middle of a round four parted round leaf, of a yellow colour, after which comes a round seed pod, like other **Spurge.**

XVIII. An **Arrow head leaf**, because like the head of a **Dart**, a **Pheon like Leaf.**

Arrow head Water Plant, hath a leaf like a broad Arrow head, its Flowers are white, growing at the joints in rounds, at certain distances to the top of the stalk.

Wild Colewort, hath the top of the leaves more round, and the forked part the same.

XIX. A **Round leaf**, or a **Roundel leaf**, with a stalk in the middle.

Kidney wort, or **Wall penny wort**, or **Wall-wort**, hath thick, flat and round leaves, growing on stalks all in a cluster or bunch, unevenly cut or waved, and hollow on the upper side like a Spoon, from whence riseth a stalk branched, bearing a number of pendulous Flowers set in spikes round the stalks one above another, like little bells, dented in the edges, of a whitish green colour.

Wood Sorrel is three leaves like **Hearts** set together in a round, with the stalk in the middle.

Marsh Penny-wort, or **Water Penny-wort**, or **Penny-rott**, is a creeping stalk, with round leaves, divided into six inveckes, as if the were six leaves with the stalk in the midle on the back of them.

XX. A **Mushrome leafe**, a **Round leafe Turned in**, at the stalk.

Sea Bindweed, or **Soldanella** leaf, the flower is a purple Bell in a husk.

Asarum, or **Asarabacca**, the veins of the leaf are as if they were scales from stalk to brim, each on their own foot-stalk, the Flower is a brown green husk (on short stalks) divided at the brim into 5 divisions like the cups or heads of Henbane.

Bastard Asarum, hath the leaves uneven or waved; the Flowers like the Camomill, all yellow.

Arch Angel, or **Dead Nettle,** the leaves crumpled and dented, Flowers grow at a distance on the stalk with leaves between, and are white, some red gaping Flowers.

XXI. A **Bulbes leaf,** a **round leaf tending to a point,** or a **broad round leaf a little pointed.**

Dittany, hath a round pointed leafe woolly, or covered with downe, the branch set full of leaves two togather, the tops send forth spikes, of thin leaves like Scales, purple on the out side, and paler within; out of which comes purple gaping Flowers; some are red, others of a deep blood red; others of a pale blew or Ash colour; others of a bleak blew, striped with a deep Blew or Violet.

XXII. An **Egg leaf,** or an **Egg Oval leaf,** being round at both ends, oval like, yet broader at one end than the other, Egg-like; of some called an **Eclip leaf,** or **pointed oval leaf.**

Water Lilly, the leaf is long and roundish at the end, with a return of the leaf at the bottom into the stalk; the Flower is green on the out-side, and the inner very white, consisting of many rows of long and narrow leaves, compassing a head, or thrum of yellow threds.

The **Water Lilly** of **Egypt,** is double flowered, but inclosed or set in a husk of four leaves green on the outside, and White within.

A **Beets Leaf,** and the **Garden red Beets,** the leaves grow on weak tender stalks, at each leaf round the stalk, a Wharle of yellowish green Flowers, and so spiked to the top: There is 2 kinds, White and red Beets.

Winter-green, of some called **Wolves-heart,** or **Juniper-herb,** or **Black Lingwort,** or **Earths leaf;** It is like to our **Beets.**

Egyptian Wake Robin, is a whitish green leaf, full of Veins running every way; the Flower is 3 hose or husks, out of which comes a Pestel or Clapper, in the middle thereof is white Flowers downwards, that turn to pale red berries.

XXIII. A **Bulbes pointed** and **Inverted leaf,** is a Violet leaf, being round, tending to a point at the end, and the bottom turning in at the stalk like a heart. A **Heart leaf.**

Dogs-bane, leaves full of Veins, broad and sharp at the end, 2 at a joint, the Flowers come forth at the joints with the leaves 3 or 4 or more together, consisting of five white pointed leaves, from which grows long crooked pointed cods, fixed to a small foot-husk.

Ale-hoof, or **ground Ivy,** is a creeping stalk lying on the ground, having 2 such leaves at every joint, somewhat hairy and crumpled, or unevenly dented about the edges, with round dents at the ends of the branches, with the leaves come forth hollow long flowers gaping at the ends, of a blewish purple colour, and small white spots on the Labels or lips that hang down, as also in the mouth or jaws.

Spanish Oxpine, on the stalks at distances, are set two leaves thick and broad pointed at end, and unevenly dented; the top hath a tuft of flowers, which consists of 5 small whitish leaves, after which comes chaffie husks.

Marsh Marygold, the leaf is smooth, more open from the stalk, the Flowers are yellow, like to **Crowfoots.**

Horehound, the leaves waved and crumpled; set 2 together on a stalk, the Flowers are white, and gaping set spiral or in spikes with the leaves.

Celandine, or **Pile-wort,** a heart like leaf, set on a weak trailing branch, smooth and shining; the flower is 9 or 10 long narrow pointed leaves, with a round head in the middle, all yellow.

Scurvigrass, or **Spoon-wort,** the leaf stands by it self on a long foot-stalk, the Flowers are white and yellow threds in the middle; growing spikewise in branches on both sides.

Parnassus Grass, a Violet like leaf grows on its stalk, the flower White also, and is five leaves standing round a green head or button, with some yellow threds about it.

A such a Leaf stalk slipped and embowed to the dexter G born by *Van Balcker*; also by *Van Dobskitz.*

The like with the stalk to the Sinister, is born by *Mauskwitz.*

A on a Bend G 3 such O born by *Gosen* or *Godson.*

XXIV. A **round leaf pointed** at the stalk or bottom of the leaf, a **Barberry leaf,** or top like leaf.

Capers, hath a weak woody stalk, lying on the ground, set with crooked thorns like hooks (as the Bramble or Dog-rose) at each joint comes forth 2 leaves one opposite to the other, from whence springs a round head, that being ripe, consists of 4 round white leaves, with 4 other green ones, as the husk wherein they stand, having many yellowish threds, and a long stile or pestle in the middle.

Purslane, hath a round thick fat leaf, growing sharp at the stalk, it hath no veins but through the middle, they are set on a reddish weak stalk, one opposite to the other, and on the top many together in a cluster, after the manner of a knot of leaves, the undermost leaves be in the largest.

Rue, or the **Herb of Grace,** hath such a round end leaf drawing somewhat to a point, it hath but one vein, and is a kind of Sea-green colour, or dark blewish green, growing one opposite to the other, on hard whitish woody stalks, the flowers that stand on the top consist of 4 small yellow leaves, with a green button in the middle, compassed about with sundry small yellow threds, that growing ripe, contains in it small black seed.

Wild Rue, or **Wood-sage,** as some call it; it hath small stalks in manner like to a **Birds Feather,** the leaf is a little bigger than our **common Rue.** It hath a tuft that is full of black seeds.

Indian St. Johns Wort, hath the leaves narrow at the stalk or setting on at the branch, and large, round and broad at the top.

XXV. A **Tripointed crumpled leaf,** or a **Tripointed uneven cut leaf,** by reason the edges are bending to and again, so that the leaf cannot lie flat and smooth.

The **Burrdock,** the leaf green on one side, and grey on the other, it brancheth forth at the top, beareth diverse rough heads or burrs, with crooked pointed prickles, out of each comes many purplish threds, those are the Flowers.

Butter Dock, or **Rubarbe,** is the like, having a large

large crumpled leaf, almost as broad as long, with long stalks.

Saxafrage, or **white Saxafrage**, the leaves are roundish, being unevenly cut or dented about the edges, each on a foot-stalk lying on the ground, of a yellowish green above, and grey underneath; from amongst the leaves riseth a stalk, with a few such little leaves thereon, branched at the top, on each stands a white Flower of 5 pointed leaves, with some yellow threds in the middle, standing in long crested brownish green husks, with another lesser husk of five or six leaves at the bottom of it.

XXVI. A **broad tripointed indented leaf**, whose points all extend forward. A 3 such V is born by *Tripunte*.

Colts-foot, or **Fole-foot**, roundish 3 pointed leaves, dented a little about the edges, with a down or freese over the leaf on the upper side, and whitish or mealy underneath, which may be rubbed away; the flower stands on its own stalk, which is small and yellow, like a single pink in a hose, within a small husk at bottom.

Gilder rose, or **Marsh Elder**; the leaves are broad and smooth, divided at the edges, into three (and sometime into five divisions or incisures and dented about) the flowers consist of 5 leaves, of a white or pale blush, being set many together, in a round tuft or ball on the top of the young branches.

XXVII. A **Round pointed Trefoil** leaf, or divided at the edges into 3 parts.

Fenugreek, round at the top and pointed at the stalk, on the stalk are whitish Flowers, growing in tufts, that turn to long crooked pods.

Hepatica, or **Liverwort**, the leaf is each on his own stalk out of the ground, they grow together in tufts, the Flower is both single and double; the first consisting of six pointed leaves, with a button in the middle; the double consisteth of many, set thick and full together; they are of a violet purple colour, others white, blue, or red.

XXVIII. A **Trefoil tripointed and dented leaf**, that is, a leaf divided or cut into three parts, each containing 9 points: Of some a **Tripointed leaf, each trebble trebbled**; or a **Triparted leaf trebble-trebble pointed.**

Crow-foot leaf on its own stalk; the Flower grows on a naked stalk, and is Yellow, some White.

Muskwood Crowfoot, hath the leaf divided in 3 parts to the stalk, then each part again invecked at the end into three, of a pale shining green colour, from among them riseth a stalk with 2 such leaves on, but smaller; above them is a greenish yellow head, that spreadeth into 4 or 5 mossie heads of threds.

Columbines, have three such like leaves as this example, all fixed on a stalk by short foot-stalks, below them again on the same stalk is set 2 such other parted leaves upon longer foot-stalks; so that in the same, to make it compleat, there is 9 of these leaves, which is termed **a Triparted, Winged and Divided leaf.**

Smallage, hath 5 of these leaves set on a stalk, 2 on a side, one against another on short foot-stalks, and one at the end, which makes it a **Triparted Winged leaf**; but on the top of the stalk, with the umbell of white flowers, there is usually but 3 leaves together.

XXIX. A **Cinque-pointed**, or **Five pointed leaf**; and a **Cinque pointed recurved leaf**; by reason two parts turns (as it were) backwards to the stalk.

Sanicle, hath a great round leaf on its own foot-stalk; being deeply cut or divided into 5 parts, and those parts dented also; the Flowers are branched at the top, every one having a small round greenish yellow head, out of which comes small white leaves.

Bears ear Sanicle, hath the Flowers pendulous, all in a tuft like **Cowslips**, of 5 pointed leaves, of a purple colour.

Spotted Sanicle, hath the Flowers white, all spotted with red spots; the leaves and manner of growing as the other Sanicle.

XXX. A leaf **divided into five Sections**, or a **five pointed leaf.**

Cowcumber, or **Cucumber**, the branch traileth on the ground, the leaf is parted with an uneven cut, into five points, but not deep into the leaf.

Indian Melon, hath the like leaves with claspers on the branches, with five pointed yellow flowers that turns to a Fruit like a Pear, but furrowed, of a green and yellow colour.

XXXI. A **Cinquefoil**, or **five parted leaf, indented, five fingered leaf**; or five leaves standing together on a small foot-stalk.

Cinquefoil, or **five leaved Grass**, the stalk groweth in the middle, some leaves are five pointed and smooth, others are dented all about the edges.

Cranes Bill, or **Storks Bill**, the leaves grow from the root or long foot-stales, each leaf being divided into five parts, and they again cut in on the edges; on the top of a branched stalk, comes forth diverse Flowers together, each on a foot-stalk, consisting of 5 leaves apiece, of a reddish, purple or rose colour, set in short and small husks, which falling away, there groweth a long spike or sharp pointed Nail, or a thing resembling a Stork or Cranes Bill, as in *numb.* 88.

A a Bend between 2 such V is born by *Alozvist*, an *Italian.*

V the like leaf G on a Quarter O by *Hemod* a *Polonian.*

Knotted Cranes Bill, hath only two Flowers together on foot-stalks, consisting of 5 leaves apiece, indented in the middle; (like a **Mallow**,) of a purple colour, veined with a deeper purple running there through; having a reddish **unbone** in the middle, cut into five parts at the top, which turn to long beak heads. This smelleth sweet like musk, and therefore is of many Flowerists, called **Muscovy**,

Hellebor, hath large leaves growing out of the earth on long foot-stalks, divided into five, sometimes six or seven parts or leaves, each nicked or dented from the middle of the leaf upwards; the Flowers grow on their own Stalks from the ground, being naked, and without any leaf thereon; the flower cometh forth in Winter, and therefore called **Christmas Flower**, it consists of five large, white, round leaves, sometime dasht with Purple about the edges, and sometimes all purple, with many

ny pale yellow thrums in the middle, ſtanding about a green head, which after groweth to be the ſeed Veſſel, dividing it ſelf into ſeveral Cells, like the **Columbine Seed-Pod.** Some call this the **Chriſtmas** or **New-Years Roſe.** Some are red, yellow, *&c.*

The **Baſtard black Hellebor,** hath a ſmooth divided leaf, and is both longer and narrower, with flowers like the former, but of a pale green colour, growing in branches with ſmall leaves amongſt them; This is alſo called **Bears-foot,** and **Setterwort.**

Purging Sanicle-like Hellebor, hath a like divided leaf of five parts, endented about the edges, but not ſo deep; from among theſe leaves riſeth a ſtalk with ſome ſmall leaves on, at the top 2 or 3 or more flowers, each of them conſiſting of many ſmall hard whitiſh leaves, as a pale or border, compaſſing many threads in the middle.

Staveſacre, or **Louſe-wort,** the ſtalk brancheth forth diverſe ways, whereon grow large leaves, cut into five diviſions (ſometimes more) each again being trible pointed, the middle longer than thoſe on each ſide; the flowers grow in ſpiked heads, and are ſomewhat like a **Larks Heel,** or **Larks Spur-flower,** for it hath a ſpur or heel behind it, of a deep dark blew colour; after which comes 3 or 4 horned ſeed Veſſels.

Cinquefoil Avens, hath a leaf divided into 5 parts, and dented; each on a foot-ſtalk from the ground, the ſtalks have ſuch like leaves at the joints where it brancheth forth, at the tops ſtand pale yellow flowers, very ſmall, conſiſting of 5 round pointed leaves, with many yellow threds ſomewhat downy in the middle.

XXXII. A **five parted leaf, tripointed;** or a **divided parted leaf** into five, each having 3 dents at the top, or 3 diviſions or ſubdiviſions apiece.

Hathorne, hath diverſe Shoots, Arms and Branches, whereon are ſet in diverſe places ſharp Thorns, the leaves are cut in on the edges into diverſe parts, and they again dented at the top; the Flowers are many, ſtanding together in a bunch, coming out with the leaves at the upper joints, conſiſting of 5 white leaves apiece, with divers white threds in the middle, tipt with red; of a pleaſant ſmell; after which comes Berries ſomewhat longer than round, being red when fully ripe.

XXXIII. A **five parted, feathered,** or **jagged leaf, a jagged fingered leaf.**

Wolfs-Bane, hath 5 jagged or deep cut leaves, fixed to a ſtalk as it were in the center of them; the top a long branched head with diverſe coloured flowers, ſome purple, ſome white and yellow, growing ſpirall many together, the bottom blooming firſt.

White Wood Crowfoot, the leaf cut in five parts, and then dented; the like divided leaf hath the common **Field Crowfoot.**

Helmet Flower, hath a like jagged 5 pointed leaf, with purple flowers like Helmets growing ſpiked on a ſtalk.

Hemp, the ſtalk ſet with many leaves at diſtances, every one divided into 5, 6, or 7 leaves joined together at the bottom, and dented about the edges.

XXXIV. A **Star Leaf,** or a leaf divided into ſeveral parts, or cut into ſeven diviſions, or ſeveral leaves ſtanding together.

Lupine, hath a ſtrong upright ſtalk, ſet confuſedly with divers ſoft woolly leaves upon long foot-ſtalks, each leaf being divided into five, ſeven, or nine ſeveral parts, green on the upper ſide, and woolly underneath; the flowers grow from the tops of the branches, in Spikes, and are ſome yellow, others white, ſpotted with purple, and others blue; which after groweth to a ſoft woolly cod, and hath in them 3 or 4 flat and round peaſe, the flower is like to that of the **Field Bean.**

Madder, the ſtalk is trailing, rough or hairy, ſet at every joint with long and narrow leaves in form of a Star or Rowel of a Spur, at the top come forth ſmall pale yellow flowers growing in branches, each on a foot-ſtalk.

Wild Madder hath the Flowers white, each conſiſting of five round leaves, ſome of ſix.

Small creeping Madder, hath the leaves ſmooth, and the flowers of a blewiſh purple colour, made of five round pointed leaves, with ſome ſmall threds in the middle.

XXXV. A **Sept-foile,** or **ſeven pointed leaf,** a **Setfoil Leaf** of ſeven ends all dented. Such a Leaf I find born by the name of *Setfell* of *Spain.*

XXXVI. A **round eight pointed jagged leaf, Spur-Rowel leaf.**

Navel-Wort, the leaves lie round on the ground, with ribs or veins like to a **Plantan Leaf,** and unevenly dented about the edges, out of the middle riſeth up divers round ſtalks ſomewhat hairy, but bare and naked without any leaves up to the top, where ſtands 4 or 5 leaves like thoſe below, amongſt them ſtarts forth divers foot-ſtalks, having ſmall white flowers of 5 ſmall notched leaves ſtanding in a green husk, divided at the top into five parts, where after the Flower ſtandeth a round Seed-Pod.

Tormentil, or **Set-foile,** the leaves have their own foot-ſtalks from the ground, being round and divided into ſeven, others eight parts, dented about the edges; at the tops of the ſtalks, which is in branches, groweth ſmall yellow flowers, conſiſting of five leaves; at every joint the ſtalk is ſurrounded with a leaf, and where the branches ſhoot forth alſo.

Silver leafed Tormentill, hath the leaf ſmooth ſave the points which are a little ſnipt, being green on the upper ſide, and ſilver ſhining white underneath; the flowers are ſmall and white, ſet about the top of the ſtalk at ſeveral diſtances, and ſtanding in ſmall husks.

Winter Wolfs-Bane, hath each part of the leaf dented into three at the points, all ſtanding upon their own ſtalks.

Ladies Mantle, or **great Sanicle,** the leaves rife from the root upon long hairy ſtalks, being almoſt round, but a little cut into on the edges into 8 or 10 parts (corners or points) and then dented round; and then plated or crumpled in divers places; the flower ſtalk is compaſſed in the joints with ſmall leaves, and divided at the top into three or four branches with ſmall yellowiſh green heads, and whitiſh green flowers breaking out of them.

Cinquefoil Ladies Mantle, hath the leaf divided in the edges into five points or corners.

Palma Chriſti, or **great Spurge,** the leaves grow on ſtalks in branches, from the back of the leaf, being round, and divided into eight or more parts, with a ſmall

Or-

endent about the edges; the Flowers are many round buttons, consisting of many pale yellow threads, standing all along upon a long stalk.

Woodroofe, or **Woodrowel**, the stalk is compassed about at certain spaces, with a long and slender leaf, 8 or more together in a round or Star, at the top stands 4 or 5 flowers made of 5 leaves a piece, white and laid open, like a Star; some have blewish purple flowers.

XXXVII. A **broad** and **round pointed finned** and **winged leaf**, or a **seven pointed (parted** or **divided) finned leaf**, or a **broad finned and winged leaf round pointed.**

Lion leafed Turnep, is cut or divided into diverse parts round, of a dark yellowish green, or Lion colour, from whence riseth up a stalked stalk, spotted with pale purple lines or strakes, divided into many branches, set with small flowers of 5 leaves pointed, of a brown yellow colour.

Peony, or **Piony**, the leaf is cut into the sides in divers parts, and more pointed, green on the upper side, and hoary white under; among which leaves spring stalks with a Flower on the top, of a red purple colour, consisting of eight leaves, with many whitish threds tipt with yellow; standing about the middle bicornered head, which growing ripe, hath the seed in it.

Valerian, hath from the root many leaves rising, which are cut, and unevenly divided on each side, almost to the middle rib; the stalk is branched on the top, having small white flowers edged with purple, set in an husk, growing many together in tufts or umbels, thick thrust together.

Mountain Scabious, the leaf cut in divers places to the middle rib almost, set at distances like a winged leaf, one contrary to the other, and endented on the edges; the stalk is branched at the top, on each is one great large round blackish green head, or knop, or button, from whence shoots forth diverse pale blewish flowers, the outmost larger than the higher innermost, having many threds also in the middle; there is of these flowers, some red, some pure white, others pale yellow, something flat at the top, and not so round Globe-like as others.

XXXVIII. A **Broad deep cut**, or divided leaf, **sharp pointed**, or a **broad Finned, Winged and Pointed leaf.**

XXXIX. A **Broad deep cut leaf**, dented at the brims, or at the ends or points.

Hugewort, hath divers leaves lying on the ground, which are very much divided and cut in deeply about the edges, of a dark green on the upper, and very hoary white on the neather side, the stalk is purplish branching forth at the top, with small leaves thereon; where are also set pale yellow flowers, like Buttons in spikes.

XL. A **Trefoil eared**, and **fined leaf**, a leaf **eared down the rib.**

Avens of the Mountain, or **Mountain Avens**, hath the top leaf large and dented, the other lesser by degrees towards the bottom, standing on either side of a rib without any foot-stalks.

Colewort, hath a waved large round leaf at top, with lesser down the rib, all joined together with Finns, narrow and waved also, or unevenly cut.

Bastard Agrimony, hath long soft hairy leaves, on long reddish hairy foot-stalks, which are divided into many parts or leaves 6 on a side, but little ones between, all round pointed, and set at a small distance, and small dented.

XLI. A **jagged, cut, and torn leaf**, or cut and divided leaf finned.

Succory, see *chap. 4. numb. 14.*

Dandelion, the ends of each gash or jagg, on both sides the stalk are looking downward to the root; the middle rib is white, which broken yieldeth a bitter milk, every stalk beareth a yellow flower, consisting of many rows of leaves, broad and nicked in at the tops or points, with a deep spot of yellow in the middle, which growing ripe, the green husk wherein the flower stood, turneth down to the stalk, on which riseth a head of downe, as round as a Ball.

Gum Succory, hath the like jagged leaves, from whence riseth a branched hoary stalk, with small leaves set without order, whereon are set yellow flowers like **Camomill**, that when ripe turn to downe.

Purple Gum Succory, hath the flowers of a purple red colour, and sometime blewish, others whitish purple.

Hawkweed, hath the same leaves with yellow flowers, having great round **bulbous husks.**

Mountain Hawkweed, hath the leaves hairy.

Sow-thistle, the leaf deep gashed, and much torn in the edges, set with prickles, the stalks rough, on the top are yellow flowers set in rough green husks, which turn to down as the other.

Smooth Sow-Thistle, the leaves jagged and torne of whitish green colour, branching forth at the top into diverse branches, which have on them pale yellow flowers, which pass away into Downe.

Mountain Sow-thistle, the leaves rent and torne, and indented in all its parts, branched at the top with less and less divided leaves; the flowers are blew purple, standing many together in small hairy green tufts; every one having twenty, or more leaves, broad at the end and nicked, that turns to Downe being ripe.

Nip-wort, or **Nipplewort**, the leaf in some places whole without any cuts or indents on the edges; then the lower part some few uneven cuts, like **Hawkweed**, the Flowers are on branches, yellow, small and Star-like in husks.

Rocket, both tame and wild, the leaf broad at the end, cut in on the edges, each part rounder than other, and lesser and lesser down the rib, all jagged; the Flowers are four long and round pointed leaves in bottle husks, growing on a stalk with short foot-stalks, spiked head like, one contrary to another, of a yellow colour.

Winter-cresses, or **Winter Rocket**, leaves cut and jagged in diverse parts, the same growing less and less to the bottom, round pointed, and something waved or unevenly cut; branched on the top with flowers of four leaves apiece, growing together in tufts, of a yellow colour.

Rape, or **Charlock**, or **Turnep**, being wild, the leaf at the bottom not jagged, but the higher and higher are still larger and jagged and waved, the ends roundish; the flowers are four yellow pointed leaves in a small

husk, growing on a stalk with short foot-stalks, one against another spiked.

Wild Hewew, the leaf jagged and round, the flowers yellow, in an umbell.

Shepherds Purse, jagged and pointed, the Flowers are white, growing one above another by degrees spiked, which turn to pouches or Seed-vessels, small at bottom, and broad at the heads.

Wild Rape, or **Turnep**, the leaf rough, hairy and crumpled; the flower is 4 yellow pointed leaves growing both sides the branched stalk in spikes, which turn to small long pods.

Henbane, the leaf much rent and torn in the sides or edges; of a dark greyish green colour; the Flowers grow in tufts or divide themselves at the top of the stalk into small branches of a dark yellow colour, paler at the edges, with many purple veins therein; it is a hollow flower scarce appearing out of the husk, ending in 5 round points at the brim, with a purple point in the middle.

Garden-Gentle, or **Bears-Breech**, the leaf is parted into several deep gashes on the edges; the stalk from the middle up, is set with a spike of white hooded gaping flowers standing in brownish husks, with long sharp pointed leaves under each flower.

2. IN the speaking to these several sorts of leaves, and shewing what sorts of Herbs, Plants and Flowers they had a relation too; I have given several sorts of terms (used by Florists) thereby to set forth the many and sundry ways Flowers grow in; as some in branches, some in tufts, others in spikes, *&c.* Now for thy better information (Courteous Reader) I have caused all these sorts of terms to be Engraven, which take as followeth.

XLII. A **Panick head**, or a **round close spike head**, or a **spired head**. If long and slender then termed a **long panick head**, this is, when the Flowers grow out of a spiked head without any stalks.

XLIII. A **Bulbes**, or **Bulbous head**, are Flowers that grow round yet tend to spire, being more open than the spiked or panick head is, by reason the Blossoms have each of them a short foot-stalk.

XLIV. A **tufted head**, a **Bunched head** (a **spiky head in Branches.**) This is when the Flowers have pretty long stalks; and some with longer than others, by reason whereof they grow at a little distance one from another, yet all from one main stalk.

XLV. A **Spiked head** set at **distances**, or set by **degrees**, or **set at several spaces**; or a **spiral head in spaces about the top.** Some term it a **Lavender like head**, or a **spiked knaped head.** See *numb.* 59.

XLVI. **Wharles** of Flower, or Flowers set together in a **Whorle** or **Coronett.** When the Flower at several distances or spaces grow round the main stalk.

The **Giants Bell-Flower**, or **Giants Throat-Wort**, hath long leaves rough and hollow in the middle, of an over-worn green, and a little indented about the edges; the Stalk is set with leaves, from among which the Flowers come forth Bell-fashioned, divided at the brim into five poins, which turn back, and are of a whitish purple colour.

The **Cardinals Flower**, or the **American Bell Flower**, the stalks are hollow, beset with leaves, smaller by degrees to the top, from the bosom whereof the Flowers come forth, consisting of 5 long narrow leaves, 3 of them stand close together hanging down-right, the other 2 are turned up with an umbone between them, of somewhat a paler colour than the leaves, which are of an excellent Crimson.

The **Yellow Gentian**, hath a stiff round stalk full of joints, with 2 small leaves at every joint compassing the stalk, which from the middle to the top thereof, is adorned with many rundles or coronets of flowers standing at every joint, with 2 green leaves under them, which Flowers are laid open like Stars, of a yellow colour, with some thrums in the middle. Some term this the **great Gentian.**

XLVII. A **Narrow spiked head**; or, a **spiked head set on either** (or both) **sides with distances**; or a **long narrow spike**; or by some called a **Seed sprout**, *chap.* 5. *numb.* 85.

If the Flowers be but on one side along the stalk, they are termed Flowers set in **thin long Spikes**, or set one above another in long spikes; or a **seed Sprout single flowered**; if on both sides termed a **Seed sprout double flowered.**

XLVIII. A **spiked head thick set**; or an **Orchides head**; this is a kind of Spire or Panick head, for the ground out of which the Flowers grow; yet the Flowers start out of the said Spire by long necks or cups; and these kind of Blossoms usually spring out first in the bottom of the Spire, and are perished before the top put forth any blooms.

Such a spiked head, but more rounder on the top, set full of Red and White Rose Flowers, is the Crest of *Truches Van Reinfelden*, of *Alsatia*, a Province in *Germany.*

XLIX. An **Umbell head**, or an **Umbell of Flowers** thrust thick together, or Flowers in an umbell; that is when several Flowers grow together from one main stalk by divers foot-stalks, yet not one exceeds another in height, but are all even set in the top; of some termed, a **shade of Flowers.**

G such a Flower slipt A Leaves V is born by *Franticocy* of *Italy.*

The **Candy Tufts** are small Plants whose Stalks are set with long narrow notched leaves of a whitish green, at the tops stand many small single Flowers close set together, which in some are white, others purple spotted in the middle, others of a pale purple.

L. A **knotted head**; or **round scaly heads**; or clusters, or divers heads of flowers set on branches; a **knop head**; when the heads are in rounds or ovals.

LI. A **scaly spired head**; or a **scaly panick**, or spiked head; that is when there is no flower from the herb,

Herb, but a spired head composed of chaffy, or scaly leaves; and such kind of scaly spires are often born in Arms, as I have observed both in *French*, *Spanish*, *German*, especially *Italian*, and *Poland* Coats, and sometimes in our own home Coats as.

On a cap B turned up Er. 2 such O is the Crest of *Mounsieur De la Loo*.

A a Demy naked man holding in his right hand such a scally head O, born by *Gonzague*.

B 3 such panick heads of scales O Born by *Van Winlbers*.

Out of a Coronet the like Head A is the Crest of *Nowenburg* of *Bavaria*.

LII. A **round chaffy head**, hairy; or a **scally head Quined**, or **Bearded**; but most generally, a chaffy head parted into many threds.

LIII. A **panicle chaffy head**; or scally tufts, or panick, or **spiked chaffy heads in branches**; and a bushing spiked head, thick below and smaller above.

Flower Gentle, of some termed **Love lyes a Bleeding**, it hath a thick and tall crested stalk; with many reddish green leaves, the stalk is divided into branches, bearing long spikes of round hairy tufts of a reddish purple colour, which are divided into several parts; of these there are some purple mixt with green, others of a whitish green, others of a murrey, others have the hair mixt, some purple, scarlet, and gold colour, or green red and yellow.

The **Goldy Locks**, or the **Golden Flower Gentle**, are small stalks beset with narrow long leaves of a whitish green; bearing at the end many double small flowers of a gold colour.

LIV. A **chaffy head** with sparsed tufts; or tufted panicle spread; or a panickle of many sparsed tufts of chaffy heads, standing on small long foot-stalks; a **Rizomed** or Oat-like head.

LV. **Branches of Flowers**, or more generally termed, a **stalk branched**; or the tops of the stalks run into short **sprays**, or foot-stalks, bearing every one a flower.

The **Indian Jucca**, or **Indian Bread**, it hath a great round tuft of hard long hollow green leaves, with points as sharp as thorns, which always remain so; the stalk is strong and round divided into several branches, which bear divers flowers, something resembling the **Fretillary**, but narrower at the bottom, containing six leaves, the three outer veined on the backs from the bottom to the middle, with a reddish blush upon white.

LVI. A **stalk with four leaves**, (or leafed,) couped, or cut of in the top, and sliped at the bottom.

LVII. A **Garb banded**, bowed in the head. This in in a Field Vert. Is born by the name of *Bower*.

G 2 such contrary Imbowed. Is the Coat of *Van Bartensleben*.

LVIII. A **tuft of Rushes**, or a **tuft of Grass** with a **fibrous**, or **Thready root**; or a root composed of strings, and small fibres. Three such Vert, roots Sable, in a field Argent. Is born by the name of *Rusham*.

LIX. A **Spiked**, or **Panickle Head**, with roundels of flowers set at spaces; a stalk with roundels round the top in degrees. A **Lavender Knap**, or the stalk set with leaves at distances, and round heads of flowers. see *numb.* 45.

A 3 Lavender Knaps couped, proper. Born by *Lavender*.

LX. A **round scally husk**, or head, shouting forth at the top many small **threds**, or **thrums**; or a **thredy flower** out of a **round scally head**; or a **bulbous scally head**; or a round head, thick set with sharp bearded husks.

Of these kind, are the **Centory flowers**, having pale blew threds, out of green heads.

The **Knapweed**, hath purple threds.

Saw-wort, the threds are of some white, others red and purple.

Hawk-weed, hath a small head, with a large yellow tuft of threds.

LXI. A **round loose head**, or **knape**; or **scally loose head**, pointed: A **Bur**, or rough head with crooked points; or a husky threddy head; or a tassel of threds.

Of this kind are the Flowers of the herb **Loose-strife**, and the yellow round headed, **Willow herb**.

The **Herb Burnet**, hath the flower purple out of the knap which is of a brownish colour.

The **Burdock**, hath a rough green head.

Hares-foot, is long, spiked, and hairy, of a white, or blush colour.

Bacchar flower, consists only of small threds or thrums, standing close, and round, of a dead purplish yellow colour.

LXII. A **small scally head**, out of which sprung a **Border**, or **pale of leaves**, set about a **middle thrum**, round pointed leaves, compassing a thrum.

Of this kind are the flowers of **Sneesewort**, the pale or border of leaves blew, and the thrum yellow.

The **Blew Bottle**, hath the leaves hollow, and small at bottom and open at the brims, and cut and notched deeply into divers parts, with threds in the middle.

LXIII. A **round spike** of **threads of leaf**; a head of long slender sharp pointed leaves; a **Bush or tuft of leaves**, rising smaller at the top; a **loose umbel**; or a **loose panicle head**.

The **Trefoil flower**, proceeds out of these green heads, and are of divers colours, as white, red, purple, blush colour, and the like. This is called, the **Ground honysuckle**, the head being circle-like.

LXIV. A **long husk noted** on the top, with a **thready flower**, or a flower composed of threds.

The **hoary Mountain Colts-foot**, hath such a purple-flower out of a short **furrowed husk**.

The **Bearded Creeper**, hath such a hairy, or fine cut flower, of a yellow colour. Some call it the **woolly plant**, or **Bears-wort**.

LXV. A **feather flower**, long **Plumes of Feathers** set in a **foot-husk**; or long woolly hairy threds waved; a stalk plumed with a Feather.

Of this sort is the **wild Clymer**, or **Travellers joy**, of a hoary silver colour, which when the flower is past, comes a brownish seed, thus **plumed**.

LXVI. A **Pose**, with a silken down out of it; a **winged seed**.

LXVII. A **Bottle** like **scally head**, out of the top or middle, riseth soft and **woolly threds**, with 3 **chives**, tipt with **pendents**.

The **Thistle gentle**, bears such a like flower, but the colour is variable, in some white, other red, stammel, and blewish.

LXVIII. A **long round scalike head**; or a long round head compact of many scales.

The **Cassidony**, or **French Lavender**, have such flower; some are white, some blewish purple, and yellow, with green scally heads.

LXIX. The first is termed, a **husk composed of leaves**, out of which riseth other long and narrow leaves. See *numb.* 83.

Like this is **Star-wort**, whose Flower is yellow; and **Elecampane**, which is the like. These husks are also termed **foot-husks** of leaves.

The second is termed, a **midling foot-husk, deeply dented**, or cut to the middle, the top sharp pointed; with leaves standing therein round pointed, or broad pointed, and narrow bottoms, according as they are.

Of this kind is **Wild flax**, some having a blew flower, others yellow; in *Spain* white, with purple veins in the leaves.

The **Sweet Nigella**, hath a blew Flower, and the husk cut to the bottom, as if it were small leaves; and so is the **Cockle**, whose flowers are some blew, others purple, but generally between both.

3. FRom the manner of the bearing of Flowers in their heads, we shall now descent to the Flowers themselves, and shew you how they are termed, according to their nature and kinds.

LXX. Out of a short, or small **pointed husk**; a **gaping**, or **hooded Flower**; There is a sort, which hath the **under Lip** hanging down, and round dented at the bottom.

Balm, hath the gaping flower, blewish purple, some have it pale carnation; and **Turky Balm**, perfect white.

Mother-wort, is purple red, out of a sharp pointed rough and hard husk.

Mint, hath the flower some a pale blush, others purplish, and the **Hungarian Mint**, more white. **Calamint** is purplish and of a blush colour.

Sage, have them purplish, and some milk white, others blew.

Bugle, hath a broad hanging lip, of some blew, others ash-colour, or white and blush colour.

LXXI. The first is called, a **hooded gaping flower**, in a pointed husk, or prickly husk; also a gaping flower hanging out its **Tongue**; or with its **Lips hanging down**.

Of this nature is the **Bear breech flower**; which groweth together in spikes, and are white.

The second is called, a **hooded gaping flower**, standing in a **husk**, with three long threds growing out of it, tipt at the ends.

Of this kind, is **Herb-bane**, or **Kill-herb**; of which there are divers colours, as brownish, white, yellow, blue, but most commonly they are of a purple colour.

LXXII. This first, is generally termed, a **Cod-flower**; because there is no Cod-seeding flower, but they have this kind of make, to the flower, though different in the colours; as

The **Wild Bean**, have the flowers purple.

The **French**, or **Kidney-bean**, have scarlet flowers.

The **Manured**, or **Garden-Beans**, white.

Pease, have them white, red, and blush colour.

Wild Pease, are white, and some mixt of purple and ash-colour.

Spanish Pease, are of a pale yellow.

Tichlings, or **Pease-Everlasting**, of a pale purplish red. Some are blew, and of a violet purple.

Wood-earth Nuts, of a purple crimson.

Vetches, of a pale yellow, some purple, white, and bluish purple.

Lentils, of a sad redish purple.

Tares, or **wild Vetches**, purple, some whitish.

Lupines, are white, others yellow, blue, blush, and veined.

Ciches, are either white, purple red, or lighter, or deeper.

Wood Orobus, of a pure white, others of a bluish purple.

Cocks head, of a pale red, with some bluenes amongst it.

Pulse, some white, and pale purple.

The second, is termed a **Cod-flower**, with an **umbone**, or **horn**, growing out of the middle of it.

Cassia flower, is of this nature which being bloomed and full open appears to be four round pointed leaves, having the four points of the husk seen behind them; with many green threds in the middle standing about a long small crooked umbone, or horn, which after turns to be the **Pod**, or cod.

The third sort of **Cod-flowers**, is called the **single Cod-flower**; because it consists of one leaf turned double, within which are set in a short cut hutk, several small threds.

Of this kind is the **Bean-Trefoil**, whose Flower is yellow.

Rest-Harrow, the Flower is also yellow.

LXXIII. The first is termed, **an open**, or **wild helmet flower**, with **Ambones**; others call it, **Larks-heel Helmet flower**; or a cut, or divided helmet-flower.

Wolf Bane flower, is of this kind, and are either blew or purple, or white and yellow.

The second is called the **Helmet-flower**, or **Monkshood**; of which there are divers colours, as blue, purple, white; which grow altogether in long spikes.

LXIV. I

LXXIV. Is an **hooded Water-flower**, out of a **skinny** two **parted husk**; I take this to be of the bell flowers kind.

Water Milfoil flower, is of this kind; being composed of a middle roundish heart pointed leaf, compassed with two other in manner of a **Hood**, till it be blown open out of a **Upointed skinny husk.**

LXXV. A **Monks Hood**, or a **close Helmet flower.** See *numb.* 73.

LXXVI. The first is a **Dragon head Flower**; others term it a **Pulse like Flower**, resembling in a sort those that are called **Cod Flowers**, but much lesser and slenderer.

Goats Rue, hath this Flower of a pale blewish purple.

The second is termed a husk of 4 points, having 4 leaves, of which two (or the lower leaves) hang downwards; out of the middle proceeds many small long threds pointed or tipt. An **unhooded Flower**, a **gaping flower** cut into leaves.

Tree Germander, hath the Flowers of this kind, white, in a round pointed husk.

The third sort of Flower is called, a **gaping Flower cut into parts or leaves**; out, of a **round pointed husk**, with the lower leaves longer, and turning downwards, and three crooked or bending threds tipt, out of the middle.

Dittany, hath a flower of this kind white, and some reddish, consisting of 5 long leaves, 4 standing upwards and the fifth hanging down, and turning up at the end again, with a **Tassel** in the middle, made of five or six long purplish thred that bow down with the lower leaf, and turn up at the ends again, with a little **Freez** or **Thrum** at the ends of each.

LXXVII. An open **Hooded Flower**, an open **French hood Flower**, or after others, a **hooded** open flower with a **Spur**, or **Tail** turned down, with threds in the middle.

The second kind is also termed **the Fly flower**, or an open **hooded flower**, with a **Heel or Spur** behind it (without any threds in the middle) but with a **round stile**, or head.

Of this kind is the handed **Orchis**, which is of a pale purple colour: The **Wasp Orchis**, of a brown yellow.

The **Gnat Flower**, that is yellow and brown.

The **Bird Flower**, which is either White, or Purple, or both.

The **Bee Flower**, hath small narrow leaves, the stalk bears 3 or 4 flowers one above another, each contain 4 leaves, 3 small and sharp pointed, of a blush colour, and turn up towards the top of the stalk; the fourth is round, and in form and colour so like a Bee, that any one unacquainted therewith would take it for a living Bee sucking of the Flower.

The **Gnat Satyrion**, the Flowers grow after the same manner, only differ in the lower leaf, which in this is like a **Gnat**, or **great long Fly.**

*

The **Fly Orchis**, is in all things like the last, except the Flower, which in this the Fly hath **leggs**, a list of Ash-colour crossing the back; and the **lower part black**; others white spotted.

LXXVIII. The first a **Larks Heel** flower, from the **Spur** or **Heel**, turning up on the back of the flower.

The **Larks Heels**, is both white, crimson, purple, and blew.

The second is a **Foots head** or **Cowle**, with a broad dented **lip** hanging down, and a broad blunt tail or horn behind, turning up.

Of this kind is **Dog-stones**, which are of several colours, as white, red, blew and purple spotted.

The third sort is an open round **Helmet Flower**, with a **broad lip** hanging down, with a **streight heel** or **horn** standing upwards.

All these sorts of Flowers mentioned *numb.* 77, 78. are generally termed **Lark Heel**, or **Horn**, or **Spur-Flowers** (except the Florist proceed to a further description) and so are passed over.

LXXIX. The first is a **Snap-Dragon** Flower; so termed by reason of its opening and shutting its mouth upon our pressing it gently with our Fingers; it hath a long leaf jagged; the flower is in some White, others Red or Yellow; or White having the upper leaves in the inner side, striped with feathered lines of a purple colour.

The second is a **round Flower**, consisting of eight leafs round pointed (or broad pointed and round) set about a **head** or **pod**, having three **chives tipt with pendents**; a **Pod paled** with eight round leaves.

Upon the division score of this quarter, is placed a **Trefoil Flower**, it consisteth of 3 round leaves, each having a chive or thred with a pendant lying upon it.

Of this kind is the **Virginia Spider-Wort**, or **Day Flower**, which is of a pure Blew colour, the pendants black, having a thin skinny husk, of 3 leaves or points, on the back of a sullen yellowish hue, in which the Flower is closed before it bloom. See *numb.* 13.

LXXX. The first is a **five cornered Flower**, or a **Flower of one entire leaf**, with 5 corners, with a head or **Pod**, or **Umbell** in the middle, compassed or set about with threds.

The second is a **Cinquefoil Flower**, or a Flower of five round leaves sharp pointed at the ends; standing in a **husk**, whose long points exceed the Flower, or a fine pointed husk.

Of this kind is **Mullein**, which is of several colours, as white, yellow, and blush colour.

The great **Corn Violet**, the leaves round pointed, of one whole Flower, of a fair purplish blew and white at the bottom, with a round white pointel in the middle.

The **Male Cistus**, hath woody branches covered with a whitish Bark, the leaves are long and narrow whitish green, crumpled and hard to handle, a standing

ing at every joint; the Flower cometh forth at the end of the branches 3 or 4 together upon slender foot-stalks, each consisting of five small round leaves, like small single Roses, of a fine reddish Purple colour, with many yellow threds in the middle, which falling away, are succeded by round hard hoary heads, with brown seeds in them.

The **Gum Cistus** hath the leaves of a dark green, but whiter on the back side; the stalk and leaves being bedewed with a clammy sweet moisture, called **Gum Laudanum**,; the Flowers are white, each leaf having at the bottom a dark purple spot, broad below, and pointed upwards, with some yellow threds in the middle; which is succeeded by cornered heads, and brownish seeds.

The third, is a Flower of four round pointed leaves, and a husk on the back of as many leaves, wherein stands a long **Stile** or **Pestle**, compassed about with many threds tipt at the ends. A four leaved Flower in a long pointed husk.

Of this kind is the **Caper Flower**, being white, the husk green, and the stile and threds yellow.

LXXXI. The first is a Flower of 5 **round pointed** leaves (without any husk or green leaves under them) with a long round **double pointed**, or **horned head**, compassed with a few threds tipt. A **five leaved Flower.**

Of this kind is **Nigella**, made of 5 blue leaves laid open like a Star, with a green head and threds. Some of the Flowers are of a yellowish White, with green threds tipt with blue.

Single Peony consists of four, some five leaves, with such a stile and threds tipt about it.

The second, is a small **Flower of four Leaves** round pointed with some threds in the middle; called a **Caterfoile**, or a **four leaved Flower.**

LXXXII. The first is an **open Scaly head**, set in the middle of several long and sharp pointed leaves; out of which thrust themselves many **downy Threds.**

Of which kind is the Flower of **Spanish Bastard Saffron**; they have the threads yellow, and Saffron colour; and some white, but those are very rare.

Candy Saffron, have the scaly heads, set more closer (like a **Thistle head**,) and the threds thick set together.

The second is many long and **narrow leaves**, set as a **Pale** or **Border**, about a **middle Thrum**, at the bottom as a husk, is several long and slender leaves sharp pointed, spreading open by two together, like a **Star-Flower.**

Of this kind is **Winter Wolfs-bane**, having the under-leaves broad and flat pointed, cut into 2 parts.

The third is a **double double pale**, or **border** of broad and flat leaves, cut in 3 or 4 parts at the top; set about a small **middle thrum**, all proceeding out of a **scaly head**, or **husk cut into leaves.** From the bottom of which husk, issueth round the double pale, several foot-stalks, at the end of each is the like pale, compassing a thrum out of a husk.

Of this kind is the **double Marygold**, and the **Jackanapes on Horseback**, being of a gold yellow colour.

LXXXIII. The first is out of a **head of many leaves** (or scaly leaves) or a **round head** composed of small long leaves set close together; in the middle is many long narrow leaves cut into, or dented at the tops or ends, set in a **Pale** or **Border** about a **Thrum.**

Of this kind is the **Stay-wort Flower**, whose colour is of some yellow, others blue, others purple, the thrum in all being yellow, and the leaves in the border sharp pointed.

Elecampane, hath the border of leaves slender and sharp, and the thrum all yellow.

The second is a **round close scaly head**, out of which proceeds **Downy threds**, or a smooth scaly round head, with **Downe.**

Of this kind is **Bacchar**, of a purplish yellow, which turneth to a whitish down.

Gutwort, hath the threds or thrums white.

Woundwort, hath the threds, or downy hair yellow.

Knapweeds, hath five purplish threds or thrums.

The third is a **round head** or **husk**, cut or **sharp pointed** on the top; from whence issues a **pale** or **border** of round pointed leaves.

The fourth is the same Flower laid open, which is a **pale**, or **border** of leaves, with a **thrum** in the middle.

Of these kinds are the **Mountain Tansie**, the border white, the thrum yellow, like to **Camomil Flowers.**

Featherfew, hath the same coloured pale and thrum.

The **Corn Marygold** of **Candy**, the border yellow, and the thrum a yellowish brown.

The **Corn Marygold** of **Pern**, which is that great Monster of a Flower, called the **flower of the Sun**, whose pale is yellow, and the thrum brownish, with Star like Flowers in the middle.

LXXXIV. The first is a **Caterfoile invecked**, or a **four leaved invecked flower**, which is broad and round pointed, with an inveck on the top of each leaf; having a dark spot at the bottom of the leaves pointing upwards; with divers **tipt threds** or seeds in the middle.

Of this kind is the **Male** and **Female**, and **sweet Gum Cistus.** The leaves of the Male, of a fine delayed reddish colour, like the **Eglantine**, or **Briar Rose**, with heads or seeds also.

The **Female Cistus** hath the Flowers White, with a purple bottom and yellow seeds. The **sweet Cistus** hath the leaves of some white, with purple bottoms, and other yellow.

The second Flower, is a **Bottle** like **husk furrowed**, with 5 round pointed leaves, with threds in the middle.

Of this kind is the **Syrian Sage Mullein**, the leaves yellow, many of the Flowers standing together, in a

*

a kind of round, like to those of the **Wild Campion, or Flower of Bristoll**, called by divers **Monesuch.**

LXXXV. The first is a round **long husk**, of some called **hose husk**, with six open broad round pointed leaves.

The second is a **round furrowed head**, or **husk**, with a flower of seven **round pointed leaves**, about an **head** or **Pod.**

Of this kind is the **white tufted Wormwood**, the head is a Silver green, leaves pure white, growing many together in a tuft.

LXXXVI. The first is a **hose dented** in the top, set in a **foot-husk**; (some term it a **Hose in hose husk**; others a long **crested husk in husk**, with a flower of five long sharp pointed leaves.

Of this kind is the **Saxifrage** or **Break-stone**, the husks are brownish green, and leaves White.

The second is a **long cod, winged** or **eared**, set in a **foot-husk** of two pointed leaves; the Flower is composed of one **whole leaf, plaited** into five round pointed peeping ends, a **two leafed husk**, with an **eared round cod-husk.**

Of this kind is the **lesser Corn Violet**, whose flower is of a fair purplish blue colour, with a **pointell** in the middle, when it is bloomed, or fair open.

The third is a thick short **bottle-husk**, compassed in the bottom with a **shoot** or **foot-husk**, composed of two sharp pointed leaves, out of which proceeds a **peeping Flower**, of five or seven leaves broad and round, invecked on the top.

Of this kind is the **Childing Pink**, whose Flower is a faint red, the husk a grayish green; some have the Flowers white, others blue.

LXXXVII. A **hollow Hose Flower**, divided at the brim into four round parts, set in a **shoot husk**, composed of 4 sharp pointed ends or leaves: some call it a **Bell Flower** with a **turned brim.**

Of this kind is the **sweet Mountain Rose**, of a deep red on the out-side, and paler within; having some threds in the middle.

LXXXVIII. This is a **Branch** or **Tuft** of **Crane-bill seeds**, and each is an **umbone**, cut into five parts at the top, with a **Crane Bill** issuing out of the middle, or small beaks pointing forth.

After this manner doth the **Crane-Bill flower**, or **Pink-Needle**, and **Goats Thorn** bear their seed; and **Hustovy** also.

Venus Comb, or **Shepherds Needle**, hath the Flowers in fashion of an umbell, and the Seed Vessel like the long Bill of a Bird.

LXXXIX. These Figured 89, 90, 91, 92, 93. go all generally by the names of **Bell-Flowers**, but that each may perfectly be described, take this further account of them as our Florists deliver them.

The first is a **Bell-Flower**, or a **Cup-Flower**, that is, a round hollow flower, wide at top, and narrow at bottom, set in a **plaited foot-husk.**

Of this kind the **Cotton Tree Plant** Flower hath a resemblance, which is broad above, and small at the bottom, and is parted to the bottom into five thin leaves of yellow, with a fuft reddish middle pointell, compassed with 5 or 6 yellow threds.

The **Dassodil** hath six pale yellow leaves, with a a **Chalice**, or **Bole**, or **Cup** in the middle, of a deeper yellow.

The second is a **pendulous Flower** like a **Bell, dented** at the edge, standing in a short husk, cut into four or five points.

Of this kind is, **sleepy Night-shade**, whose bells are in some red, others purple.

Alkanet, hath a yellow bell, set in a long cut hairy husk.

Comfrey, have them long and hollow, of a pale whitish colour; others pale purple, and some of a sad yellowish colour.

Wild Field Bell-flower, commonly called **blew bells**, are dented in the edges into five sharp points; set in a long and slender leafy foot-husk.

The third is a **Bell-flower**, with a **Lip**, set in a **shoot husk**; or, a large long hollow flower; a little more long, and eminent at the lower edge.

Of this kind is the **Field Fox-glove**, of a reddish purple with white spots within, having some threds in the middle.

Sesamum, or the **Oily grain**, or **purging pulse**; hath a like kind of whitish Flower, made of one leaf, without any division in the edge, with a few **tipt threds** in the bottom.

XC. The first, is a **deep dented Bell-Flower**, plaited, or **cast into Furrows**, set in a long and **slender leafed husk.**

Of this kind, is the **Rampion**, or **Bell-Flower**; which is blewish, with a long **Stile**, or **pointil** in the middle.

Coventry Bells, are more open than the ordinary sort, and parted into seven or eight corners, of a pale purple colour.

The **great Throatwort Bells**, have the long dents turned a little outward, and are of a purplish colour: these are also called **Canterbury Bells.**

Scamony, hath wide open tops cut into four sharp ends, which turn a little outwards, and are of a whitish colour.

Mountain Soldanella, is a bell-flower consisting of one leaf **plaited** into five folds, each ending in a long point; which makes the flower seem to be five leaves, of a fair blew, in some deep, and paler, and others white.

The second is an **open mouth bell-flower**, finely dented about the edges, having a **Rose-like Husk**, with plain **long Barbs**, exceeding in lenth the flower, or bell.

Of this kind is the **Bell-flower**, of the **Thorny Indian Cotton** with five **Barbs**, or pointed corners; or as some describe it, ending in the open in five pointed parts, being yellow with purple bottoms.

XCI. The

XCI. The first is a **Bell-flower**, with a **wide open** and **turned brim**, and **narrow bottoms**; without any division in them; of some only termed, a **Bell-flower** with a **Brim**.

Of this kind is the flower of the great white **Bind-weed**; set in a short husk, consisting of two sharp pointed leaves.

The second is a **Bell-flower**, having the **brim cut**, or divided into eight points; or the brim round dented, or eight cornered; a **Bell** with an **Engraled brim**.

Of this kind is, the **Mallow leafed Bind-weed**, which *Parkinson* in his Herbal, describes thus, it is one whole leaf yet **plaited**, the brim having five corners, where it is broad like a cup, or bell; and small at the bottom, of a fine purple colour.

The **Spanish** blue **flowered Bind-weed**, is the like; being folded into five plaits, which open into so many corners in the brim, of an excellent sky coloured blew, with white bottoms pointed upwards, and yellow in the middle.

XCII. The first is a **Cup**, or **Bell-flower**, with an **Inveck brim**, standing in a short **foot-husk**.

The second is out of a **short dented husk**, a **long hose**, or **hollow trunk flower**, with a **brim parted** into five sharp points; or the **brim rowel like**.

Of this kind is the **Bell-flower of America**, which are small long and hollow, with a five pointed brim; of a bright red colour, and plaited like the bell-flower, with five **clives** or **threads** in the middle, **tipt** with **pendants**.

The **white Jasmine**, is a small long hollow trunk, ending in five leaves pointed, and turned up like the brim of a **Bell-flower**, standing in a small husk.

The **Spanish Jasmine**, have the turn up, or brim-leaves more rounder, and fuller, growing to a point; and are white with purple edges.

The **Indian sweet yellow Jasmine**, have the leaves of the brim round pointed.

The **Virginian climing yellow Jasmine**, have a long hollow trunk, ending in five points, but not laid open into leaves, as the former.

The **blew Pipe-tree**, or **Lilac flower**, is a long hollow trunk, ending in five leaves, or points, turned up; or opening into five pointed leaves.

The third, is a **Bell-flower, plaited** and **inveckt** on the upper edge, and long or more **eminent dented**, at the lower edge; with a **double pointil** in the middle; set in a **hairy** or **threddy husk**. Some term this a **bell-flower with a Lip**, because the lower side with it indented corners, hang down, or reach further out, then the the higher side of it, like the **Bell Lip**, *numb.* 89.

XCIII. This is termed, a **Long**, or **hose husk**, sustained by two small and long leaves (in manner of a foot-husk) from the middle whereof shooteth forth a narrow **hollow trunk**, or **long Hose-flower**, of one entire leaf below, but ending above into five corners, or small pointed leaves, **turned or laid open**, like a **Star**. Others term this a **hose Husk**, **eared** at the bottom. Others a **hose flower in hose, eared**.

The **Vernal Gentian**, is of this kind, whose flower is perfect blue, with a white line, in the middle of each leaf.

XCIV. An **Aspodil flower**, that is, a round **knot**, with a Flower on it, or on a stalk, a **round head**; or the top whereof stands a flower, consisting of six long and narrow leaves, growing in form of a **cup**, or **bell**, with two **chives** in the middle, tipt with **pendents**. Some call it an **Aspod-flower**.

Aspodil, that is the great branched; is of this kind, which is white, some yellow; whose Flower leaves, are round at the bottom, which naturally make a round head at the stalk of themselves, without any other **bulb**, or **head to stand** on.

XCV. The first is a **Bulb**, or **Bulbous flower**; or a **round head flower**, consisting of four, five, or six leaves, growing (as it were) in convix, or half round.

Of this kind, is the Flowers of **Sarsa parilla**, which are white; and also the **Lilly Com-vally**.

The second is a **Bulbous flower**, with a round bottom, being all one flower, only divided in the top into four or five round pointed leaves.

Of this kind is the **Indian Jucca**, which is a **pendulous flower**, hanging downward; consisting of six hollow, or convex leaves (or guttered leaves) which in their growing make a **round bodied flower**, with an **Aspodil**, or small rising towards the foot-stalk, white, with a blush, or reddish colour, spread on the back of the three outward leaves, from the middle to the bottom.

Ladies Traces, are small round white flowers growing on spikes, which when they are extraordinary **blown**, turn to be sharp pointed, like bell-flowers.

XCVI. The **Lady Slipper**, so called from the resemblance the fore-part of the flower, hath to a **Slipper**, or **Pantable**. Thus otherwise termed in its description; the flower is of a long oval form, and hollow, cut in the upper part with ears like slippers; with four long narrow leaves at the setting on of the flower unto the stalks, which was as a husk to enclose the flower.

The **Ladies Slipper** is of this kind, and is of a fine pale yellow; and some browner, other purple, some white, with red strakes through the bellies of them: the back leaves are of a dark colour. This is of some Florists, called the great **wild Hellebor**.

The second is five long **pointed leaves** set about a **Pod**, or **Seed-Vessel**, or a **round head pointed**.

Of this kind, is the **black Hellebor**, or **Christmas Flower**, which is made of five round pointed white leaves; sometimes dasht with purple about the edges, and some all purple, with many pale yellow threds, or **thrumes**, standing about a green head with divers points.

Bastard Hellebor, or **Bears-foot**, have the flower of a pale green, with greenish yellow threds, or thrums, about such a like head, or seed-vessel.

XCVII. The first of these is a **sprig**, or **spike**, set on both sides, one contrary to another, with **mossy** or **hairy buttons**, or **balls**, or **downy catlines**.

Of this kind is the **Oak** of *Cappadocia*.

Rose sponge, or **Byper balls**; are **burs** growing on those twigs, made of brown and yellowish threds, round, soft and hairy.

The

The second is a **spike**, or **twig** of round **pendulous bottle-like flowers**, set opposite one to another, on short foot-stalks; ending in four points, or corners.

Of this kind is the **Sea Housleek**, the flowers grow thick without foot-stalks, of a whitish in some a yellow colour, divided at the ends into five or six parts, hanging down.

Hare bells grow thus, of which there are divers colours; as white, blue, light green.

These Trees and Plants I have read off, but without any certain description.

4 **Cerfoil**, is an herb in operation, and working in a manner fiery.

Cetewale, is an herb whose root Physicians use to gather in the Summer.

Chast Lamb, or **Agnus Castus**, have such virtue in the flower and seed, that being digested of any person, it makes them chast.

Crowtoe of some called **Vacinium**: It hath a leaf like to **Portate**, an handful in height, in bredth it is less or more small than a Maidens finger, of a most curious green colour; his top is full of purple flowers.

Dictamus, an herb which groweth in *Crete*, and is very wonderful (being eaten) in loosning and unbinding the straights of the body; the **Hart** being wounded with a Dart, in eating it, is soon cured.

Dragaunce, is an herb so called, for that it is be spotted, and is specked in his colour much like to a snake, representing the very **Viper** or **Dragon**, which herb the Viper it self stands in dread of. Of some it is called **Colubine**, the Flower is purple coloured, and black in the middle, it is cloven and sharp in the middle as the Serpents tongue is.

Dragon, or **Ayon**, of some called **Isaron** or **Jaron**, the *Romans* call it **Serpentarie**; it is a shrub two cubits high, straight up: it groweth in hedges and sheddy place, for the Sun it cannot abide. There are two kinds of them, the great and lesser, which hath white little spots.

Dwale, or **sleepy Dwale**, is a shrub which groweth near to the Sea, very aboundant and plentiful in young shoots. There is another kind of the same name called **made Dwale**. The one causeth sound sleep; the other, wonders in imagination.

Esele, of some it is taken for **Ey-bright**, but this hath his leaf very thin and plain; it is not of so fresh a green colour, or of the like look, as many other plants be; but this it hath above them, that being prest gives a and juice like milk.

Fenkell, is an herb common both for the Field and Garden; the juice whereof quickneth the eyes; Serpents eating thereof keeps them from many sicknesses, weakness, old age.

Frankincense tree, it is plentiful in boughes; the leaves are like to our **Pear-leaf**, saving it is much more smaller, and in colour as green as **Rue**, in rind and bark as soft as **Laurel**, its Gum or Tears is a most sweet perfume being burnt.

Hares foot, of some called **Hares Cummin**, it is an herb growing in Garden Allies.

Jacinct, or **Jacinth**, is an herb having a purple flower: Some are more airy, bespotted with purple and red. It hath a certain Flax, like snow. See **Gentian**.

Jupiters Beard, or **Goldilocks**: It is hairy like **Isop**, or **Hyssop**.

Kastany, is a tree of good high growth; if it be cut down, by and by it springeth up, spreadeth abroad and beareth infinite of blossoms, of a colour, his fruit hangeth between leaf and leaf double, or by couples, in manner of a **Mans stones**.

Laburnum, is a Tree growing upon the *Alps*; whose wood is white and hard; the Flower is a cubit in length, and so noisom that no Bee will touch it.

Liricum-fancy, or as others judge **May Lilly**, for it resemblance is a-like; the Flower is very white.

Mary-gold of Monardus, of some called, **Wood-warren**; others **Loose-strife**, or **Herb Willow**, because it grows in Medows like to **Broom**. It beareth a red-flower; it is so bitter that no Beast will eat thereof.

Molin, or **Long-wort** as some call it; the root is long, the flower white, and somwhat wan. It is a deadly bane to fish.

Myrh Tree; it groweth most commonly near to the Sea-shore. It is one of the odoriferous kind or sort, which have sweet scent or smell.

Nymphs tree, it is of an exceeding great height, very soft and tender in the bark: In the fruit it is like to the **Cherry**, as sweet and as small also. A Nymph that was Daughter to *Neptune* flying from *Priapus*, was turned into this Tree, and thereupon it had first its name.

Papirus, or the **Rush of Egypt** and **Siria**: In length (it is reported to be) ten cubits, growing in the fen and marshy grounds; of this was paper at first made, as the name yet seemeth to testify; of this rush they make Candles and Torches (as we do of **Bull-Rushes**) without Week or Cotton.

Pearserthnut, the Greeks call it **Astragalos**, the Latine **Ficus Terre**; the **Fig of the Earth**. In manner of growth it seemeth to be but a small and very short shrub; It is in leaf and bearing like to the **Cicer**, or **Parsnep**.

Phleum, is a tree of a strong stock, and as small of height, in his leaf very fertile, and in a manner fleshy. It giveth orderly leaf after leaf, as they fall away.

Plane-tree, so called from its breadth and plainess of leaf.

Oak-fern, called of some **Polipodeck**, is a branched herb growing generally on the tops of old Oaks and Walls.

Spicknard of India, so called, because supposed to come out of those parts, being the leaf is gathered swimming aloft in the Flouds and Streams of *India*, without either root or stalk, which the natives pierce and prick, then lay it up to dry. Yet some say it grows in *India*, and *Siria*.

Terebul, is the name of an herb leaf in *India*, which swimmeth above the pools and ditches, without any root

that is seen, it is of some called **Balabathrum**: whereof cometh a most precious and sweet Oyl.

Tragion, is a Tree or Shrub, that hath his bough, seed, and leaf like to the **Mastich Tree**, but not altogether so great. It floweth and distilleth that humour that is like Gum; in the harvest time the leaves smell ramishly in manner like **Goats**. There is an herb like this, which some call **Scorpion**, and **Tragos**.

Tree of Paradice, is a Tree that beareth fruit like a **cluster of Grapes**, but in bigness of an **Apple**. It is covered with a yellow Coat, and his leaf is very long and broad, for the which it is of very short life, for in the second year his body dryeth up and waxeth barren.

Turbit, whose leaf is like the **Lawrel**, it groweth in *Egypt*.

Vervain, of some called **Holy Herb**; the *Mages* call it **Juno's Tear**, or **Mercuries moist Blood**. The *Romans* **Cocks Comb**; it groweth only in the Waters, where Doves in Companies fly and make their food of it.

The **Virginian Periploca**, or **Virginian Silk-flower** so named by some Herbalists. It rised all in stalks, set at several joints with two long broad veined round pointed leaves, at the top out of a **skinny hose**, comes a great tuft of Flowers thirty or forty, hanging down on long foot-stalks, each consisting of five small hollow leaves of a pale purple colour; after they are past comes long **crooked Cods**.

The **Indian flowering Reed**, it hath fair large leaves coming from the joynts of the stalk, bearing at the top one above another divers flowers like in fashion to the **Corn-flag**, of a bright crimson colour.

The **French Hony-suckle**, or the **Red Sattin-flower**, hath many stalks set with winged green leaves, and at the joints come forth smaller stalks, set with many Flowers, of a shining red colour, and in some white.

The **sensible Plant**, is a woody stalk, set with small winged leaves; this is respected only for that by touching the leaves, you may perceive them to shrink from you.

The **Humble Plant** will fall of its own accord, when you come near it.

Dodder, an herb or plant having no leaves but only strings or wires, it grows upon other Plants from whom it receiveth its nourishment, the root in the ground dying.

Codded Willow herb, or **Codded Loose-strife**, hath the Flower growing out from the top of the cod, and the seeds wrapt up in down.

Sauce Alone, or **Jack by the Hedge**, hath the tast of Garlick, or a hot bitter tast, bearing large cods, which being ripe are red.

Vervain, hath small blue Flowers growing in a spike on the top of the stalk.

Horned tree Trifoil, the body of it is very slender, covered with a whitish bark, the branches more white; the leaves stand three together, lesser, rounder and whiter than those of the **Ordinary Laburnum**; the Flowers are like those of **Broom**, of a gold yellow colour, which come forth at the end of the branches three or four together, succeeded by **crooked** flat thin **Cods**, like **Horns** or half Moons.

Spirea, it is a shrub with divers woody stalks, set with leaves like those of **Sally**, but lesser and nicked in the edges, at the end of the stalk comes forth divers small Peach-coloured flowers thick set together in a long spike; lessening by degrees like a **Pyramis**.

Dwarf Bay grows in a thick bush, full of branches, set with small whitish round pointed green leaves, the flowers are small, of four leaves, set thick and close together, on the sides of the new shoots, wherewith they are on all sides covered; some of a pale blush colour, others white and Peach colour, or a deep red, whose place are succeeded with small **Berries** of a red colour.

Snail Flower, or rather **Snail seed Vessel**, is a kind of **Pod**, in form like a Snail house, smooth and rouled up, others prickley; others like small Buttons, some smooth, others rough, hairy and green.

Catterpillar Seed Vessels have the Plants trailing on the ground, and such are supported; the Seed Vessels are like **Green Worms** or **Catterpillars** turned round.

Other terms used by Florists, about flowers only; with their signification.

5. ALlies or Walks.

Aspodill roots, cloggs, or long knotty roots joined together at the top. See **Glandulous**.

Aulnes, or **Awnes**, are Beards about Ears of Corn.

Aglets, or **Pendents** hanging on the tip ends of chives and threds, as in Tulipa's, Roses, Spikgrass.

Aquietic Flowers, such as grow in Water, or wet and moorish grounds.

Annual Leaves. such as come up in Spring, and perish in Winter.

Bud, is the first appearing of Husks in which the Flowers are.

Bloom, or **Blown** is when the Flower first puts forth out of the husk.

Bed in a Garden, long earth Beds, in which Flowers are set.

Brim of a Flower, the outward edges, or that part of a Flower as turns.

Baccipherous pods, such whose seeds are inclosed in a juicy pulp.

Borders in Gardens.

Borders in Flowers, are such leaves as stand about the middle thrum of a Flower. **Palled** about.

Bulbes, or **Bulbous**, round roots, as in Tulipa's, taken also for round, yet spired heads of Flowers.

Bearded husk, is a Rose husk, or such as are hairy in the edges. Rose **Pod husk barbed**.

Bunched roots, are round roots that have knobs or knots in them.

Bunched cod, is such as stand out in knobs, where the seed lieth in the cod.

Bicornered head or stile, see **Umbone**.

Blade, or leaf of Corn.

Bolle of a Poppy, is the round seed Pod; and also of a Flax Seed Pod.

Compost, is a mixture of Dung and Earth to enrich Gardens.

Creep-

Crenated leaves, such as are jagged or notched.

Creeping flowers, are such as grow along the ground, and rise not upright.

Cells, the partitions or hollow places in husks or pods where the seed lieth.

Corimbiferous, Flowers made of thrums, without any circle of leaves.

Chives, are thick, round and sharp pointed horns that stand in the middle of flowers; which in some are more slenderer than others.

Compressed Pods, flat seed Vessels.

Chives, tipt with Pendents, is when the horn hath a seed hanging and shaking at the point of it, as in Tulipa's and the like. **Chives** are small pointels

Campanulate Flowers, such as have the resemblance of a Bell.

Cullions or **Stone-roots**, round roots, whether single, double, or trebble.

Clove roots, as in Garlick and Lillies, which are of some termed **Scaly Clove roots.**

Compound Flowers, such as consist of leaves, and a thrum of short threds.

Compound leaves, such as are three or four together.

Clogs, or knotty roots, hanging together by threds or small fibres.

Corniculate seed Vessel, such as are divided into several distinct cases.

Cone, or Pine Apple like heads.

Capsulate Pods, little short seed Vessels.

Cod, or Seed Pod, as in Pease, Vetches, Bean.

Couped, or cut off. See **Raguled.**

Pentapelata, Flowers of five leaves.

Clapper, see **Pointell.**

Cluster, or Bunch; Flower or Fruit growing close together.

Cups, are short husks in which Flowers grow, some being pointed into 2, 3, 4, 5, or 6 leaves.

Chaff, or husk which compasseth ears of Corn, and holds them together in the ear.

Delfe, or Spadegraft, a digging into the Earth as deep as a Spade can go at once.

Delve, or dig.

Dented verge, is such leaves as are nicked about the edges or brim; of which some are fine dented; others large or deep dented, or cut into the leaf.

Downy or Friesed leaf, is such leaves as are wooly.

Deciduous, leaf, a deep cut leaf.

Edges, or out-sides of leaves. See **Brim.**

Edged, as Flower leaves often are, especially in the Tulipa; of which there are several terms, as edged, striped or streaked, garded, feathered, agotted, marbled, flaked, spotted, or specked, powdred, variegated, variably, *&c.*

Eminence, or Woolly Eminence, is the outward skin or husk that covers round roots, as in Onions, Tulipa's or Dog-stones, and such like. See **Off-Sets.**

Edgers, are the Spring, or first ripe Tulipa's.

Ear of Corn, are many grains of Corn compassed about with a chaffy husk.

Erect Flowers, such as grow upright without hanging the head.

Echinate seed, rough, prickly urchin like seed.

Esculent seed, such as can be eaten, as Pease, Bean.

Flowers or **Blossoms**, are of several composures, as *cap. 6. numb.* 70, to 97. there are set down, these following shapes, forms and fashioned blooms.

Silken down Flower, *numb. 66.*
Woolly Flower, 67 97
Thready flower, 64 83
Feather flower 65
Scaly or chaffy flower 61
Thrum flower. 82
Thrum or plush bordered 82 83 79 96
Hose flower with turned brim 87 92 93
Cup flower or Bell flower 92 89
Gaping flower 70 71 cut 76
Gaping hooded flower 71 76
Dragon head flower 76 79.
Cod flower 72
Helmet flower 73 75 78 77
Fly flower 77
Spur or heel flower 77 78
Round or one leaf flower 80
Bifoile, or two leafed flower
Three leafed flower, trefoil flower 79
Four leafed flower 80 81, a Caterfoil flower 87
Cinquefoil flower, 80 84
Cinquefoil flower barbed 80
Jagged leaf flower 64
Dented leaf Flower 83
Sharp pointed leaf Flower 69 86 90
Round pointed leaf Flower 69 84 85
Bell Flower 89 92
Bell Flower brimmed 91
Aspod or Aspodil Flower 94
Bulbe or Bulbous Flower 95
Bulbous Flower round bottomed 95
Slipper Flower 96
Bottle Flower dented 97

Fragrant, sweet smell.

Flated, is a cutting of Turfs.

Freeze, or **Fringe**, such as is in the middle of the falling leaves of the Flower de luce. See **Thrum.**

Film, is that thin woody skin as separates the seed in the pod, and keeps them one from another.

Fibres are small threds or strings at roots.

Furrow, is a ridg or swelling on the sides of either Tree, Stalk, or Fruit; of some termed **Ribbed.**

Fruticose, is such stalks as are of an hard woolly consistence.

Florist, is a lover of Flowers and Gardens.

Floriledge, is the description of Flowers.

Fruitage, is the hanging of several sorts of Fruit together in husks with strings.

Flowerage, is the setting of sorts of Flower together, in husks, and so to hang them up with strings.

Foot-husks, or short heads, out of which Flowers grow.

Frumentaceous herbs, a Corn bearing herb.

Graminegus herbs, such as bean Corn for Mans use.

Gristly seeds, are thin skinny flat seeds.

Granuferous seed pods, bearing small seeds like grains.

Gumous or knotty kernelly roots, faſtned to one head.

Glandulous, kernel like roots, faſtned together with ſmall threds or fibres.

Greens, are Trees whoſe leaves fade not away in Winter.

Heads or **husks** of Flowers, are thoſe things, out of which Flowers grow, of which there is ſeveral ſhapes, forms and faſhions, as

Panick, ſpike, or ſpired head, *numb.* 42.
Bulbes head, *numb.* 43.
Tufted head, *numb.* 44
Spike head in ſpaces, 45 59
Wharles, Wharled heads, 46
Seed ſpout head 47
Spike, or ſpired head thin ſet 47
Orchides head 48
Spike head thick ſet 48
Umbell head 49
Shade of Flowers 49
Knotted or ſcaly head 50
Knoppe head 50
Scaly, panick or ſpired head 51
Looſe chaffy or ſcaly head 52
Chaffy panick head 53
Looſe knapped head 61
Looſe panick, or panicle head 63
Poppy head 18 67
Bole head 18 67
Rizome head 54
Chaffy ſpearſed head 54
Branched head 55
Knapped head 59
Bulbes ſcaly head 60
Scaly head 62 82 83
Short husk or head 65 69 70
Leaf foot husk 69 74 86
Slender leafed husk 90
Bottle husk or head 84 86
Round husk 85 83
Furrowed husk 84
Hoſe husk 86
Long husk 85 86 87
Cod or pod husk 86
Hoſe husk eared 93
Roſe pod barded 90 or Seed Veſſel bearbed
Truſs head Flower.

Horned head, or biparted; ſee **Umbone.**

Heads, or buddings of Herbs, elſe pods in the middle of the Flowers.

Husk, is that which a Flower grows out of, of which there are ſeveral, as a bulbes or round husk, a bottle husk, a middle husk and a foot husk.

Hoſe husk, is a long round husk, as in Pinks, July flowers, *&c.* an urchin or prickly husk.

Hoſe in Hoſe, or one long husk in another.

Hollow leaves, as the Flowers of the Blew Bottle, which are ſmall at bottom, and open at the brim, cut and notched deeply in; ſo is the **Hony ſuckle** and **Bell-Flowers.**

Husk creſted or furrowed, when it riſes in ridges.

Hollow ſtalks, when it is Straw-like, as the **Daffodil.**

Inoculating, ſee **Ingrafting.**

Joynts in Stalks, are knots in the ſtalks of herbs.

Ingeminated, is having one Flower ſtanding, or naturally growing out of another.

Inebriating leaf, ſuch whoſe quality is to make fuddled or drunk, as **Tabacco.**

Knots, kernels or bulbes roots, are round or long roots.

Knots or joints in Stalks, Shoots, and Canes.

Kernels, in Nuts and Fruit Stones, or in Stone Fruit.

Knaps, or the tops of Lavender before the Flower be come forth.

Leaves belonging to Flowers have diverſe names or terms according to their ſhape and faſhion, as

Loſing leaf, *numb.* 1.
Oval leaf pointed at the top 2
Heart leaf 3
Adders tongue leaf 4
Adders tongue double parted 5
Eared leaf 6
Trefoil leaf 7 27
Trefoil leaf eared 8
Winged leaf 9
Winged jagged leaf 10
Branched leaf 11
Winged Branched leaf 11
Ruſh leaf 11
Fennel leaf 12
Thready branched leaf 12
Sword, Flag, or Blade leaf 13
Through leaf 14 16 17
Pointed through leaf 14 15
Slit through leaf 15 16 17
Arrow head leaf 18
Round middle ſtalk leaf 19
Muſhroom leaf 20
Bulbes leaf 21
Bulbes pointed and inverted 23
Bulbes heart leaf 23
Violet leaf 23
Barberry leaf 24
Crumpled leaf 25
Tripointed uneven leaf 25
Broad tripointed leaf 26
Triparted winged leaf 28
Trefoil winged 28
Cinque parted leaf 29
Five pointed leaf 29
Five pointed recurved leaf 29
Cinquefoil long pointed 31
Five fingered leaf 31
Five parted leaf triparted 32 33
Jagged finger leaf 33
Star leaf 34
Sepfoile or Setfoile leaf 35
Caterfoile double leaf 36
Spur-rowel leaf 36
Winged finned leaf 37
Winged finned deep cut leaf 38
Torne jagged finned leaf 41
Trefoile leaf eared and finned 40

Laying of Flowers, is the laying of Slips half cut from the main root, and covered with Earth that they may take root, and in time be ſeparated from the main Stock,

Stock; which are termed **Layers.**

Leguminous, Pulse or Pease-like; any sort of Seed like Pease.

Larks heel, are such Flowers as have a Spur or Larks heel at the back of it; called also **Spur-Flowers**; see *numb.* 73, 77, 78.

Monopetala, Flowers consisting of one entire leaf.

Mones, or self coloured flowers.

Mosly, soft, or hairy, and smooth middle of Flowers; see **Thrum, Plush.**

Membrane, or thin husk that covers Corn.

Marine herbs, such as grow in the Sea and Salt waters.

Nervous leaves, such as are full of Veins and Nerves.

Naked, is when a Stalk hath no leaves on it; a naked leaf is smooth and plain, without veins or dented edges.

Nosegay, a Posy of Flowers.

Notches, or notched leaf, of some a forked leaf, is when the leaf on the top is cut or divided into two or three or more, either round or sharp points; as in July-flowers, Marygolds, and Crowfeet, and tops of husks in which Flowers grow.

Narcotick leaf, such as stupifies, makes senseless.

Odoriferous, Odorate, a sweet smelling.

Off-sets, are the young root that springs or grows from roots that are round, tuberous, or bulbous; also the loose, outward brown skins, either in Tulipa's or Onions; *&c.*

Orme or husk, the thing Flowers grow out off.

Orchides, heads of Flowers set thick together Spike-wise.

Panick heads, see **Spikes.** Spired heads set with Flowers.

Prime, as a Flower in its Prime, not over-grown, or fading.

Plush, the middle of Roses, Anemonies, Marigolds, *&c.* of some termed Thrum, or Thrummy heads; of others Hairy heads, or Buttons, or Boss, Tuft or Wart.

Pod, or Cod, in which the seed groweth; the round head in middle of a Flower.

Powches or skinny husks like leather, in which are thin broad seeds.

Procumbent leaves, which ly down flat on the ground trailing on the earth.

Pappous, such as ly in Down, or have some downy part.

Pendulous heads, such Flowers as hang downward, the stalk not being able ta stand upright.

Panicle head, a dispersed tuft of Flowers.

Perenniel leaves, such leaves as last all the year.

Pointel, or Pestle, or Stile, that as stands in the middle of a Tulipa or Peony, and such like.

Papilionaceous Flowers, such as resemble Butterflies, as the Blossoms of Peas and Bean.

Peel, or Peeling, the out skin of Apples, or thin skin as covers the Chest-nut, or other Nut kernels.

Pory, holely, full of small holes. **Spongy.**

Pith, the spungy substance in the middle of Rushes.

Pendants, a kind of seed, as are on threds or chives in the middle of Tulipa's and Lillies. See **Chives.**

Paled Flowers are such as have leaves set about a head or thrum, as in Marigolds.

Rind, is the skin of any Fruit that may be cut off or pared. **Urchin like Rind,** is the outward cover of the Chest-nut, which is all set with pricks.

*

Raguled or couped, that is cut or sawed off, as the branch from the tree, or the Stock from the root.

Rizomes, the spearsed ears of Oats in the Straw, a **Rizome** head, a chaffy sparsed head.

Radiate Flower, bright shining Flowers.

Seed Vessel, or seed head, are such as the Flower seeds are in.

Seed Sprouts, a long spike with flowers thin set to it.

Seedlings, such roots of July Flowers as come from seeds sowen.

Self colour, is a flower of one entire colour, without any intermixture with others.

Spongy, pory or soft, and full of small holes.

Solid Stalks, having no hollowness in them.

Shoots, young sprigs, sucklings, lances.

Siliquons seed, such as are born in husks, cods, or shells, like Pease or any such thing.

Scaly Clove roots, like Lillies, one Clove laid on another by degrees, like an Artichoke, or Thistle head.

Stamineous Flowers, which consist of threddy filaments.

Spokes or Umbel Flowers set together evenly, not one jot above the other. **Spoked tufts.**

Spikes, flowers set thick one above another, *numb.* 48.

Stalk of leaves, and Flowers, of which there is several sorts, as naked Stalk, having no leaves on, but only a flower at the top. A crested stalk that hath furrows or ridges; a striped stalk, which is of two or more colours. A winged stalk that hath leaves set on either side of it.

Serrate leaf, a winged leaf set orderly in a row one against the other, or such as are dented.

Sprayes, or divided roots, as in Carrats, *&c.*

Stile, see **Pointell,** a long head, three square or round.

Shell, the out-side or woody husk or cover of Nuts, and of Stones in Fruit, of which some are smooth, others rough, others Pory and Bark like.

Succulent herbs, such as are full of Juice.

Skinny husk, a soft sappy husk, as of Nuts and Filberts.

Segment leaves, such as are cut and divided into many shreds or slices, as Fennel, *&c.*

Spinous leaves or flowers, are such as will prick, and are thorny.

Siliquous seed Vessel, such as have long pods, and the flowers generally consist of 4 leaves.

Sempervirent shrubs, such as have green leaves all the year.

Sinuate leaves, such as are crooked, bent or crumpled about the edges.

Stellate Flower, such as are Star-like, or are seeded with Stars, or full of eyes like Stars in the thrum or pendals.

Squamous, rough, prickly, or scaly husks or seed Vessels.

Shade of Flowers; see **Umbell.**

Shutes are Rushes.

Sheaths, are thin leaves or rindy husks, which compass about a Flower stalk.

Stellate leaf, so stiled from the manner of the growth, the leaf compassing the stalk at intervals, Star-like.

Stile, see **Umbone.**

Slip, is a rending or pulling of a sprig from a branch, or the branch from the arm of a Tree, and so a slip may have it rent double or trebble slipped, or the stalk ragged.

Sprig,

Sprig, is somewhat more than a slip, as having more leaves and sprays with it than is in the other, being generally that as is of some growth and maturity. or **Sprout**, of some called **Twig**.

Tuberous or knobbed and knotted roots or heads, or small tubers with strings and fibres among them.

Tamis, are the pendents which are on the points of chives, which are thicker and stronger than threds. See **Chives** tipt.

Threddy roots, small hairy roots, **Fibres**.

Thrum or threds in a head in the middle of a Flower. See **Plush**.

Tripelata, or **Tetrapelata**, Flowers which consist of 3 or 4 leaves.

Threds tipt with Pendents, are smaller than Chives as in Roses, Anemonyes, and such like.

Threds tipt with Aglets, or threds with Aglets hanging at them, as in the spiked heads of Grass and Plantane.

Tips, or ends of leafs.

Truls of Flowers, when many grow together on the head of the Stalk, as the Cowslip and Auricula's do.

Variously mixed or coloured, edged, feathered, Garded, Agotted, Marbled, Flaked, or Speckled.

Variegated, Flowers diversely spotted, marked or striped.

Vervous leaves, such as come up in the Spring.

Umbone or horn, is any pointed stile in the middle of a Flower.

Unctious leaf, an oily sappy leaf.

Umbone double pointed, or biparted, as in the Peony sometime the umbone hath 3 or 4 sharp points, then termed an umbone divided into so many heads or pointels, or cut into 4 or 5 parts.

Verticillate Flowers, such as grow about the stalk in Rundels or Whirles.

Verge, the edge, or outside of a leaf, as a dented Verge; see **Brim**.

Umbell, Flowers set thick together, and all of the same height. A spearsed or thin Umbell, when they stand at a distance from one another, yet all of an equal height. Umbrell.

Umball, the middle round head of a Flower set about with threds tipped.

Winged seed, such seeds as have hairs growing at them.

Weeds, and **Weeding**, is the taking out of the Garden, all such things as spring of themselves, and are hurtful to Flowers.

Umbelliferous, sweet smelling umbell Flowers.

Wharles of Flovvers, are such as are set at distances about the main stalk or spike.

Things proper for Fruit Gardens and Orchards.

5. HIGH **Walls** either of Brick or Stone.
A **Fountain** or **Grotto**.
Statues or Figures cut in Stone, set on Pedestals; to be in the quarters of the Garden.

Flower Pots to set Flovvers in, upon Rails of Wood or Ston, in Allies and Walk,.
Green Plats, even laid vvith Turfs or Sods.
Allies, or **Walks** vvell Gravelled.
Tartis Walks, Walks one higher than another.
Pole Hedges or **Pallisadoes**, or **Codling Hedges** are set vvith Trees platted one into another, and supported vvith Poles add Stakes, Laths and Rods, vvhich as the Trees grovv, are cut and pruned even on the sides and top.
Laths and **Rods** to support Flovvers.
Garden part, to be divided into Beds, and them again to be cast into Ovals, Squares, Cants, Frets, Borders or Knots, according to the fancy of the Gardener.
A **Summer house** or **Garden house**, in a corner of the Garden, either square or octangular, finely painted vvith Landskips and other conceits, furnished vvith a Table and Seats about.
A **Nursery** or large Bed of Earth, on vvhich Stock for Fruit, and Seedlings for Flovvers are nourished till they be removed into the Garden Platts.
A **Good Gardener**, that understands the nature of Fruit and Flowers; and the times for sowing, setting, grafting and transplanting.
A **Conservatory**, or a green house, a place to put flower pots in, to keep the Flowers from Frost and Snow.
A **Repository**, a kind of Seller in the Earth to preserve Plants in time of Frost and cold Weather.

Instruments belonging to a Gardener.

A **Spade**.
A **Shovel**.
A **Mattock**.
A **Skreen**, or **Riddle**, with a Wier Riddle.
A **Rake** with Iron teeth, and **Baskets**.
A **Pruning Hook**, and **Knife**.
A **Grafting Knife**, and a fine pointed **Pen-Knife**.
Watring-Pots of several sorts.
A **Mallet**, a **Grafting Chissel**, a **Saw**.
A pair of **Garden sheers**.
Trowels of several sorts, long and short.
A **Dibell** or **setting Stick**.
A **Bilboquet**, an Instrument made of Lines and sharp pointed Sticks or Iron Pins, to square out Beds and make rounds in Garden Knots.
Weeding Tongs, of some called a **Dog**, to pull up the roots of Weeds.
Weeding hook.
Bass, a thing to wind about grafted Trees before they be clayed, and after.
Loam or **Clay** to put about grafted Cyons.
Hand Beetle, to cleave the Stock for grafting.
Grafting Quise.
A **short Ladder** and **Stool**.
Pouch Wallet or **Basket**, to hang in Trees to gather Fruit in.

Trees, Shrubs, Flowers and Herbs may be distinguished into these several Heads, according to their Fruit or Seeds, Leaves, Flowers and Pods.

First, for Seed Trees, such as are contained in a Fleshy pulp, and covered with a soft skin, which are of three sorts, as

1. **Pomiferous** Trees, such as bear Fruit Apple like, as

Apple	Pomegranate
Pear	Orange
Quince	Lemon
Medler	Citron
Lazarole	Adams Apple
Service	Plantane Tree
Figg	Indian Fig

2. **Puniferous** Trees, such as bear Fruit with Stones in them, as

Peach	Olive
Nectarine	Date
Apricock	Mirobalane
Plum	Sebesten
Cherry	Jujubes
Cornelion	

3. **Baccifer ous** Trees, such as bear Berries either single, or many together, as

Mulberry	Holly
Elder	Box
Sumach	Mastick
Quicken	Dragon tree
Turpentine	Clove tree
Nettle Tree	Bede Tree
Bay	Sassafras
Laurel	Indian Mole
Yew	

Secondly, such as are covered with thick or thin husks, and with hard woody shells which are of three sorts, as

1. **Nuciferous** Trees such as bear Fruit in hard husks or kernels in shells, as the

Walnut	Storax
Almond	Hassel
Fistick Nut	Filbert

2. **Echinate** or prickly husks, as the

Chesnut	Beech

3. **Nudated**, or smooth thin husk, bladder like, or more thicker skin, as the

Bladder Nut	Coffee
Coco	Cotton tree
Nutmegs	Anacardium
Chocolate	

Thirdly, such Trees as bear Fruit in Cups Acorn-like, of which there are two sorts, as

1. **Glandiferous** Trees, having kernels in their husks as

Oak	Holm Oak
Bitter Oak	Cork tree

2. **Coniferous** Trees, such as bear Cones

Alder	Firr-tree
Larich tree	Cypress
Cedar	Tree of Life
Pine	

Fourthly, Trees whose Fruit or Seed is in single teguments or coverings, of which there are three sorts, as

1. **Siliquous** Trees, having pods thick or thin, as the

Carob	Tamarind
Cassia	Judas tree

2. **Membranaceous** coverings, such whose seed vessel is a thin skinny husk, as the

Elm	Maple
Hornbeam	Sycamore
Ash	

3. **Juliferous** Trees, such as bear Catkins, as the

Birch	Sallow
Aspin	Lime tree
Poplar	Plain tree
Willow	

Fifthly, Trees which are esteemed for their Wood and Bark, either for Physick, of which there are several sorts, as

1. **Cordial** Woods, as the

Aloe tree	Pockwood
Guajacum, or	Snakewood

2. **Astringent** and cooling Woods, as the

Red Sanders	Lignum Nephriti-
Yellow Sanders	Rosewood (cum

3. **Mechanics** Wood, such as are used in Dying, as the

Brasil	Logwood

4. **Fabrile** Wood, such as Workmen use, as

Ebony	Cabbidg tree, or
Princes Wood	Palmetto Royal

4. **Barks** or **Rinds**, such as the

Cinnamon	Jesuits Pouder
Cortex Febrifugus	Cortex Wintera-
Peruvianus, or	(nus

Sixthly, Trees which bring forth Gums and Rosins, which may be distinguished into two sorts, as

1. **Solid**, or hard Gums, as

Gum Arabick	Gum Hydra
Sarcocolla	Gum Sandarak
Myrrh	

2. **Liquid** or more moliable, as

Liquidambra	Pitch
Balsamum Peruvi-	Rosin
anum,	Tar

3. **Suffumigatious** Gums, or such as are for Perfumes, as

Frankincense, or	Copal
Olibanum	Caranna
Gum Elemi	Benjamin
Gum Animæ	Storax

4. **Volatile** or **Unctious**, such as are easily made soft, as the

Camphir	Tacamahacca
Cambugium	Lake
Bdellium	

Shrubs or Underwoods may be distinguished by these several heads, as

First, **Spinous**, or thorny shrubs whose Fruit may be eaten, as

1. Rasberry, Raspis	Sloe tree, or
Bramble	Blackthorn
Blackberry	Bullas
Rose	Barberry
Briar	Purging thorn
Goosberry	Christs thorn
White thorn or	Box thorn
Hawthorn	Bucks thorn

Se-

Secondly Shrubs which are **Bacciferous**, or have juicy or sappy fruit, not spinous or thorny, yet esculent, or not eatable, but purging, as

Vine, or Grape	Hony suckle or
Raisin	Woodbine
Currant	Upright Wood-
Bilberry	Pepper (bine
Wayfaring tree	Mezereon
White beam tree	Spindle tree
Dogberry tree	Privet
Birds Cherry	Shrub Cassia
Rock Cherry	of Gelder Rose
Austria	Water Elder
Dwarf Medler	Yellow Jessamine
Sweet Wort	Sea Grape

Thirdly, **Sempervirent** Shrubs, such as are always green and flourishing, of which there are these

True Balsom, or	Laurel of Alexan-
Balm	dria
Thorny Burnet	Horse Tongue
Dwarf Balm	Butchers Broom
Phyllyræ	Wild Bay
Ever green Privet	Juniper
Strawberry tree	Savin
Evergreen thorn	Myrtle
Spurge Laurel	Arbor Vitæ
Spurge Olive	Myrtle Symach
Widow Wall	Ivy
	Misselto

Fourthly, **Siliquous** shrubs, such as bear pods and husks, as

Illach, or	Bean tree
Pipe-tree	Locust tree
Caper	Humble Plant
Thorny Broom	Broom
Bean Trefoil	Furs
Shrub Trefoil	Goats Thorn
Sena	Dorycnium
Liquorice	

Fifthly, **Graniferous** Shrubs, such as bear Corn-like seeds in their pods or husks, as

Chast tree	Red Sumach
Spiked Willow	Tree Spurge
Tamarisk	Virgins Bower
Jessamine	Travellers Joy
White Pipe tree	Virginia climbers,
Shrub Mallow	or Virginian Ivy
Galls	

Sixthly, **Graniferous** evergreen Shrubs, such as are always green, and have Seed and Pods like Corn, as

Holy Rose	Sage Mullein
Oleander, or	Hartwort (Rose
Rose Bay	Sweet Mountain
Sana Munda	Sea Purslain
Gutwort	Silver Bush
Herb terrible	Heath
Rosemary *	Rose of Jerico

Flowers, Plants and Herbs may be distributed into these several Classis according to their several beings, as

First, by the fashion of their leaves, as

1. Such as have imperfect leaves, as

Mushrooms	Polipodi
Toadstool	Rough Spleenwort
Mould	Multearn
Trubs, or	Hartstongue
Truffle	Moonwort
Fuzball, or	Adders tongue
Puckfist	Duckweed
Moss	Hairy riverweed
Liverwort	Spunge
Fearn, or	Sea Navel-wort
Brake	Sea Lettice
Oak Fearn	Sea Lare
Maidens hair	Round leaved Ci-
Tentwort	Wrack (sterweed
Wall Rue	Sea fann

2. Perfect **Gramineous**, **Fumentaceous** Herbs or Leaves, such whose Seed is Mans Food, and grow in thin or thick Membranes, as

Wheat	Oats
Rye	Panic
Maize, or	Indian Millett
Indian Wheat	Millett
Barley, or	Bean
Malt	Pease
Rice	Vetches

3. **Gramineous** Plants, not used for Mans Food, which may more properly be called Grasses, as

Canary Grass	Hairy grass
Panic grass	Meadow grass
Fox tail	Sweet Reed
Cats tail	Camels Hay
Wheat Grass	Galingal
Matweed	Rush
Wild Barley	Cane
Reeds	Feathergrass
Jobs tears	Cotton grass
Oat Grass	Reed Mace
Finger grass	Burr Reed
Pearl grass	Mouse tail

4. **Gramineous** herbs of Bulbous roots, such whose roots are either round, long, scaly, or consist of diverse knots, as

Crown Imperial	Lilly
Martagon, or	Turks cap
Bulbous Violet	Star of Bethlehem
Bulbous Iris	Onion
Corn Flag	Leeks
Saffron	Shalot
Crocus	Chives
Son before Father	Garlick
Tulip	Moly
Fritillary	Ramson
Daffadile	Squill, or
Hyacinth	Sea Onion

5. Herbs of an Affinity to **Bulbous** roots, such as grow in dry places, and Water,

Kings Spear	Indian Hyacinth
Spider-wort	Flowering Rush
Dogs-tooth	Birds Nest
Day lilly	Brom rape
Tuberous flower-	Toothwort
Flowering Reed	Dragon
Jucca, or	Wake Robin
Indian bread	Frierscowle

6. Herbs of round leaves, whether large or lesser, and grow in dry and wet places, as

Coltsfoot	Winter green
Butter Bur	Sun-dew
Sowbread	Sanicle
Asarabacca	Ladies Mantle
Burdock	White Saxifrage
Violet	Golden Saxifrage
Pansy	Ground Ivy
Water Lilly	Monywort
Marsh Marygold	Indian Cress
Butterwort, or Sa-	Scurvy grass
nicle of Yorkshire	Sea Bindweed
Grass of Parnassus	

7. Herbs of **Nervous** leaves, such as are full of Veins and Nerves, as

Hellebore	Fleawort
Neezwort	One Blade
Helleborine	Twa Blade
Plantaine	Gentian
Buckshorn	Dwarf Gentian
Snakeweed, or	Solomons Seal
Bistort	Lilly of the Vally
Sopewort	Pondweed
Sea Plantaine	Water Caltrope

8. Such as are **succulent** Herbs, having the leaves full of sap or juice, as

Houseleek	Indented Sengreen
Sengreen	Stone crop
Aloe	Wall Pepper
Orpine	Navelwort
Rosewort	Glasswort
Purslain	Tangg
Garden Brooklime	Cali
Spotted Sanicle	

9. Herbs according to their superficies may be distinguished by their leaves or manner of growing, whether rough or smooth, crumpled or plain, as

Burrage	Buglos

Al-

Alkanet
Vipers Bugloss
Sage of Jerusalem
Honywort
Comfrey
Dogstongue
Grummell
Heliotrope
Asparagus
Ladies Bedstraw
Checserunning
Horse tail
Horned water Mil-
Madder (foile
Crosswort
Bastard Madder
Goose grass, or
Cleaver
Woodrof
Spurry

Secondly, *Herbs may be distinguished according to their Flowers, these several ways*, as

1. **Stamineous** Herbs, such whose Flowers consist of thriddy Filaments, whose seeds are triangular, as

Rubarb
Dock
Sorrel
French Sorrel
Buck Wheat
Black Bindweed
Knotgrass
Hemp
Flax
Hop
Mercury
Ghilding Mercury
Dogs Mercury
Spinace
English Mercury
Orrage
Goosefoot
Beet
Diers Weed
Base Rocket
Meadow Rue
Oak of Jerusalem
Oak of Cappado-
Nettle (cia
Rupture-wort (pine
Stinking ground-

2. Herbs of a **compound Flower**, such as have a thrum and a circle of Leaves about, as

Sun-Flower
Jerusalem Arti-
choke
Marigold
Great Daisy (ry
Alecost or Costma-
Golden Stæchas
Cudweed, or
Cotton-weed
Ox Eye
Maudlin Tansy
Corn Marygold
African Marygold
Camomil
Tansy
Featherfew
Milfoil
Stinking May-weed
Southernwood
Lavender Cotton
Mugwort
Scabious
Devils Bit
Blew Daisy
Thrift or
Sea Gilliflower
Endive
Succory

3. **Pappous** Herbs, such whose Seed lye in Down, or have some downy parts, as

Thistle
Artichoke
Blew bottle (stra
Sneezwort of Au-
Saw-wort
Great Centory
Snapwood
Bastard Saffron
Bearded creeper
Leopards Bean
Elecampane
Groundsel
Ragworth
Dutch Agrimony
Golden Rod
Starwort
Fleabane
Sea Startwort
Golden flowred
Samphir
Lettice
Gum Succory
Hawkweed
Dandelion
Goat-beard
Mouse Ear
Sowthistle
Nipplewort

4. **Umbelliferous** Herbs, such whose Flowers grow in Umbels or Tufts, as

Fennel
Dill
Hogs Fennel
Samphire
Giant Fennel
Herb Frankincense
Spignel
Bishops weed
Water Hemlock
Earthnut
Dropwort
Pellitory of Spain
Scorching Fennel
Hartswort
Carrat
Wild Carrat
Carraway
Cummin
Alhale
Chervil
Hemlock
Spanish Picktooth
Bastard Parsley
Water Milfoil
Milky Parsly
Water Dropwort

5. **Verticilate** Herbs, are such flowered Plants as grow in Wharleas about the stalks, being generally all of them **Odorate**, or sweet smelling, as

Sage
Germander
Mastick
Thyme
Goats Marjoram
Lavender
Cassidony
Polymountaine
Winter Savory
Hyssop
Mint
Cat-Mint
Balm
Basil
Calamint
Dittany
Assirian Balm
Majoram
Organy
Ground Pine
Pennyroyal
Water Germander
Wood Sage
Clary
Dead Nettle
Black Horehound
Iron-wort
Motherwort
Hedge Hyssop
Hooded loose strife
Betony
Self-heal
Bugle
Dodder

6. **Spicate** Herbs, such whose Flowers grow in spiked, or long taper heads, as

Teasel
Eringo
Globe Thistle
Shepherds rod
Agrimony
Enchanters, or
Nightshade
Burnet
Hartsfoot
Star headed trefoil
Arsmart
Pondweed

7. Herbs bearing many Seeds together in a Cluster or Button, as

Wild Tansy
Cinquefoil
Avens
Tormentil
Anemony
Windflower
Pach flower
Crowfoot
Pilewort
Adonis Flower
Mallow
Hollyhok
Marshmallows
Tree Mallow
Vervain Mallow

Thirdly, *Flowers according to their Seed Vessels may be considered under these heads*, as

1. **Corniculate**, divided, or horned, seed Vessels, as

Piony
Flaxinella
Larks heel
Columbine
Wolf Bane
Staves Acre
Cranes-bill
Venus comb
Shepherds Needle

2. **Papilionaceous** climing Herbs, such whose Flowers resemble Butterflies, as

Kidney Bean
Ginny Bean (ents
Bean of the Anci-
Pease
Vetch, Wild Vetch
Lentill
Bitter Vetch
Chickling
Winged wild Pease
Underground
chickling
Earth Nut Pease

3. **Papilionaceous** Herbs, not climing, as

Bean
Lupin
Chich Pease
Wild Licorice
Milk Vetch
Ladies Finger
Fumitory
French honysuckle
Cocks head
Sanfoin
Hatched Vetch
Horse-shoo
Grass Vetch
Goats Rue
Birds Foot
Land Caltrops
Melilot
Wilkwort
Scorpion Grass
Caterpiller Grass
Lotus
Fœnugreek
Camock
Snail Trefoil
Hedghog Trefoil

4. **Siliquous** Herbs, whose Flowers consist generally of four Leaves, as

Stock Gilliflower
Wall-Flower
Dames Violet
Double Rocket
Toothwort
Willow herb
Lose strife
Upright Dogsbane
Silk Grass
Turnip
Navew
Radish
Vervain
Brooklime
Speedwel
Cabbidge
Colewort
Colliflower
Codded-through
Rocket (Wax
Winter Cress
Jack by the Hedg
Sauce alone
Ginny Pepper
Sea Lavender
Mustard
Pepper-wort
Charlock
Swines Crest
Horned Poppy
Great Celandine
Flixweed
Tower Mustard
Codded Mouse ear
Treacle wormseed
Arabian Mustard
Dogs-bane
Swallow-wort
Water cress
Woad
Cuckoe flower or
Lady-Smock
Gold of pleasure
Bulbonach
Madwort
Thlaspi
Shepards purse
Sciatica
Wild Germander

6. **Capsulate** Herbs, whose Flowers consists of five Leaves, as

Gilliflower
Pink
Campion
Catchfly
Venus looking
Sweet John (glass
Sweet William
London Tuft
Bristol None such
Lesser Centory
Cow Basil
Cockle
St Johns Wort
St. Peters Wort
Tutsan, or
Park Leaves
Stichwort (weed
Common Chick-
Pimpernel

Pimpernel	Lose strife	Cucumer	Rampion	Bears ear Sanicle	Codded Arsmart
Spurge	Rue or	Male Bason	Foxgloves	Mooth Mullein	Femal Fluellin
Tithymal	Herb of Grace	Bindweed	Purging Pulse	Birthwort	Speedwell
Flax	Fennel Flower	Tobacco	Henbane	Figwort	Periwinkle
		Scamony			

6. **Capsulate** Herbs, whose Flowers consist of three or four Leaves, as

Fresh Water soldier Scipatica
Arrow head

7. **Campanulate** Herbs, such whose Flowers are of one Leaf, and resemble Bells, as

Pompeon, or quash	Coventry Bells	Primrose	Eye-bright
Melon, or	Throatwort	Cowslip	Snapdragon
Musk Melon	Mervail of Peru	Paigle	Toad Flax
Gourd	Thorn Apple	Bears Ear	Cocks comb
Citrul	Bell-flower	Birds Eye	Cow Wheat
		Mullein	Bears Breech

8. **Capsulate** Herbs, not **Campanulate**, but such as have the Flower Leaves divided into several Segments representing so many distinct Leaves, as

9. **Bacciferous** Herbs, such whose seeds are enclosed in a juicy Pulp, as

Strawberry	Herb True-Love
Apple of Love	White Briony
Mad Apple	Wild Vine
Potato of Virginia	Ladies Seal
Night shade	Black Briony
Mandrake	Prickly Bindweed
Herb Christopher	Winter Cherry
Berry Wolves Bane	Berry Chickweed
One Berry	Danewort

Things hurtful to Gardens and Orchards.

Old Age, for the strongest and firmest of Trees continue not always.

Want of good and **timely Dressing**, Weeding and Pruning, makes a pleasant Garden or Orchard, a Wilderness.

Long shoots in Flower branches, the more they are suffered to grow up, the less nourishment there is for Flowers.

Long Boal, or **Body of a Tree**, the longer it is the more sap it requireth to feed it, and the more it hath, the more it desireth and gets, and the less remains for the Fruit.

Water Boughs, or **Undergrowths**, are such boughs as grow low under others, and are by them overgrown, over-shaddowed, and dropped upon, and so pine away for want of sap, and by that means in time die.

Fretters, are such when as by the neglect of the Gardiner, two, three, or more parts of a Tree, or of divers Trees, as Arms, Boughs, Branches, or Twigs, grow so near and close together, that one of them by rubbing doth wound another, and the longer they grow, they will worse and worse Gall and Wound, and in the end Kill themselves.

Suckers, are long proud and disorderly Cyons, growing streight up out of any lower part of the Tree, which receives a great part of the sap, and beareth no Fruit; therefore are to be cut or slip off.

Principal top Boughs, one or two principal top boughs, are in a manner as evil as suckers, they rise of the same cause, and are cured by the same remedy.

Want of Foiling, that is want of manuring them with fresh soil, Dung, &c. such as are hot, fat and tender; the want whereof makes Trees become mossy, and not to thrive.

Internal Hurts.

Galls, and Wounds in Trees: See **Fretters**.

Canker, is the Comsumption of any part of the Tree, Bark, or Wood, through cutting off of Water-boughs, and not applying a Remedy to the middle of the wound.

Moss, is a Disease in Trees quickly seen, and is caused through want of good foyling and poining.

Weakness of Trees, or their slow growth is from their weakness in the setting, wrong planting, want of room in good soil, or evil, or no dressing.

Bark bound, is through the strength and thickness of the Bark, which groweth and thrives not it self, so hinders the Tree from growing thick & strong in the wood; which is remedied with a sharp knife in the Spring, lengthways to lanch the Bark throughout, on 3 or 4 sides of his Boal.

Worms in Trees, this is a disease discerned, for the Bark will be holed in divers places like Gall, the Wood will dry and die, and you shall see the Bark swell; some think it proceeds from a raw and evil concocted humour or sap: But I rather take it to arise from Worms, because this disease is principally in Trees that brings fourth Fruit of a sweet tast.

Bark pile, when it flyeth off, and will not stick close to the Tree to nourish it; a distemper hard to be remedied.

Deadly Wounds, is when Arborist wanting skill, cuts of Arms. Boughs, or Branches, 1 or 2 inches (or as I have seen sometimes) an hands breadth, or half a foot or more from the Body, these so cut, cannot in any time be covered with sap, and therefore die, and dying they perish the heart, and so the Trees becomes hollow.

Ants, Emmits, Bugs, Caterpillars, Snails, hurt your Trees some by creeping into them between Bark and Tree; others decay and eat the leaves all round about them.

External Hurts.

Deer, Goats, Sheep, Hares, Coneys, Cattle, Horses, &c. are sore hurts both to Gardens & Orchards, by eating the branches, peeling the Bark, and treading under feet whatsoever is in their way, all banding themselves against the most fruitful Trees and delightsom Flowers the earth bears, against which must be provided a good fence.

Crows, Pies, Black-birds, Thrushes, Bullfinches, Tit-mouses, Hopps, &c. do much hurt in Orchards, some devouring fruit in the bud, others when they are ripe.

Oaks, Elms, Ashes, Walnuts, Chesnuts, and such Trees, are hurtful amongst Fruit Trees, which a good Gardiner will not admit to grow in his Orchard; for if soil and sap can hardly be good to feed fruit Trees, why should others be allowed room there, especially those that shortly will become their Masters, and wrong them of of their Livelyhood?

Weeds, in a fertile soil, till your Trees grow great, will be noisom and deform your Allies, Walks, Beds, & Squares, which under Gardiners must labour to keep clean & handsom from them.

Earth

Earthworms and **Moles**, are very hurtful for they open the Earth, and let in the Air to the Roots of Plants and Trees, deform Squares and Walks, and feeding in the Earth draw on Barrenness.

Poisonsom Smokes, cold Frosts, Winds, &c. are all in their Kinds and Degrees, hurtful both to Flowers and Fruit.

Evil Neighbours, and **Orchard Robbers**, are in a great measure destructive to such places, which willful anoyances, must be prevented and avoided by Justice, the Love and Liberality of the Masters and Fruiterers.

General Observations and Rules of Gardiners about the Ordering and Increasing of the Trees and Flowers.

IT is to be noted that in the planting of Gardens and Orchards that the **Ground below**, that the Earth be a black, fat, mellow, clean, and well tempered soil, wherein Trees, Flowers, and Herbs, may gather plenty of good sap. If the soil be **Barren**, it is to be made better by Delving, Dunging, and other means for the manuring of grounds, at least once in six or seven Years.

If the ground be **Boggy**, or be in fear of Inundations, drein and secure it by Trenches, Allies, Walks, Walls, and such like.

Keep **Grass** that it grow not too much about roots of Trees.

If **Weeds** lie on the ground they will grow, but bury them and they will surely die and perish, and become manure for the ground.

Trees against a **Wall** soon ripen Fruit, yet it hurts the Trees more than the benefit, for into a dry Wall the Tree cannot spread it roots as natural it would, but binds it, and so stops the sap which wound the bark and causes disease in the Wood.

All Orchards & Gardens are generally made **Square**, because Walks are straight, at the end or corners whereof are made Summer - houses or places of pleasure.

Fences, for such places are usually made of Earth by Mounts, Ditches, or Moats; or else of wood by Quickset Hedges, or Pales, or Rails; but the Walls made of Brick or Stone is the best.

Sets for Gardens or Orchards are of some propigated from slips, but such are observed not to be durable; the most usual kind of Sets, are Plants with Roots growing from Seeds or Kernels of Apples, Pears and Crabs, or from stones of Cherries, Plums, &c. Else from fruit themselves, as Walnuts, Chesnuts, Almonds.

But next unto these, or rather equal with these Plants, are **Suckers** growing out of the roots of great Trees, which Cherries and Plums do seldom wants, which being taken from the Tree with its root & some **Tawes** of the Tree being set else-where, will soon become Trees of strength, & will bear fruit without grafting. There is another way to increase Sets, by laying of the Cyons or sprigs with their tops in a heap of good & pure earth, the tops coming through ten or twelve inches: In which hill the sprig will put forth roots, and the top new cyons, and so laying from hill to hill every bended Bough will put forth branches and become Trees. This is of some termed a **running Plant.**

Sets, if they proceed from good Seeds, needs neither removing or grafting, because they are apt to bring forth their own kind in time, but not so soon as if they were grafted.

Transplant Trees any time in Winter when the Weather is open, calm and moist; but the best time is at the fall of the Leaves, in or about the change of the Moon: For a Plant set in the fall, shall gain a whole Years growth (in a manner of that which is set in the Spring after.

Grafts and **Sets** must be fenced till they be as big as the Arm, to preserve them from annoyances; and that is done by Stakes and Thorns.

Distance of Trees to be set in Orchards is of some held to be ten foot, others twenty foot, others ten, or twenty yards; for it must be generally observed that the distance must needs be as far as two Trees are well able to overspread, so as not to touch or drop one on another.

And look how far a Tree **Spreds** his **Boughs** above, far doth he put his **Roots** under the earth, or further if there be no stop.

Grafting time is best in the last part of *February*, or in *March*, or beginning of *April*, when the Sun with its heat begins to make the sap stir more rankly.

Cuttings & slips are apt to grow from these fruit Trees, **Codlings, Genitings, Bryts, Sweeting, Genet, Hoyls, Quinces, Goose-berries, Currans, Figs, Vines, Mulberries, Tamarisk, Roses, Hony-suckles.**

Vines are pruned from *December* to the end of *January*, others only in the twelve days of *Christmas*.

Garden Seeds are best sown in the beginning of *March*, though some will venture to sow them any time from *March*, to the Feast day of St. *James*.

Much **Roots** at Plants will produce many tops or branches, which if you use to **stow** or cut the **tops**, will cause them to grow both low and slow, thick of branches slender of Wood.

Great Wood, as Oaks, Elmes, Ash, *&c.* being continually kept down with Sheers, Knife, or Ax; neither Boal nor Root will thrive, but be as an Hedge, or Bush.

Every **Young Plant** (if it thrive) will recover any wound above the Earth, by good dressing, although it be to the one half, and to his very heart.

The Lying or Leaning of Trees against **props** or **stays**, hinders its growth, breeds an obstruction of sap, and wounds incurable.

Removing of Trees as great as the Arm is dangerous, and seldom take root again, if they do, yet will not continue long; for a Tree once Taunted is never good, and will hardly ever thrive.

Diseases are easily discerned in Trees, by the blackness of the boughs at the heart, when you dress or prune the Trees: Also when a Tree hath more tops than the root can nourish, the tops decaying blakens the Boughs, and the Boughs the Arms, and the Arms the Boal, or Body, and so the Heart. Also when the Bark is black, or yellow, and the Tree brings forth small hungred leaves; or when it brings forth Blossoms, and wants strength to shape its fruit, is a sure token of a Taunt, and next Year of its Death.

Dressing, of Trees, and **Lopping** away of superfluous boughs, is to be done in the beginning of the Year, the Moon being in the change when the sap is ready to stir, which will soon cover the wounded place.

Age of a Tree is easily known tell they come to 20 years by his Knots; reckon from his Roots up the Arm, & so to his top twig, & every years growth is distinguished from other by a knot, except lopping or removing do hinder.

Fruit is to be gathered when ripe, and not before, else it will wither & be tough & sower; & gather in the full of the Moon for keeping, & dry for fear of Rotting, & without crushes or bruising, for that causes corruption, if they be not quickly used.

An Alphabet of *Trees*, *Flowers*, *Plants* and *Herbs*. The first Figure shewing the *Chapter*, and the second the *Number* of the *Chapter*, where they are Treated on.

A

All-heart, 3. 52. *Acorn*, 3. 2.
Apple, 3. 9. & 5. 2. & 4. 75.
Apricock, 3. 14. & 5. 2.
Almond, 3. 15. & 5. 1.
Aspine, 3. 53.
Arrache, 3. 61.
Ash, 3. 65, 66. & 5. 13. 30.
Angellica, 4. 17. 98. & 6. 9.
Alexanders, 4. 17. 98.
Averil, 4. 58.
African Marygolds, 4. 68.
Anemone, 4. 85. 75.
Amonie, *ibid.*
Agrimony, 4. 90. & 6. 10. 40.
Alderberries, 4. 91. & 5. 2. 9.
American Burnet, 4. 93.
Annise, 4. 98. & 6. 8.
Avens, 4. 106. *several* 5. 71. & 6. 8. 40.
Artichoke several, 4. 118.
Aspine, 5. 3.
Arbor Vitæ, or *Tree of Life*, 5. 16.
Adams Apple, 5. 35. *Alloes*, 5. 37.
Alecost, 5. 70. *Adder-tongue*, 6. 4.
Aromatical Reed leaf, 6. 4, 5.
Allheal, 6. 9. 11. *Asparagus*, 6. 12.
Aspodil twice, 6. 13.
Arrow head leaf, 6. 18.
Arrow-head plant, *ibid.*
Asarum, or *Asarabacca*, 6. 20.
Arch-Angel, *ibid.* *Alehoof*, 6. 23.
Adder-tongue leafe, 6. 4.
Ancel-corn, 3. 103. *Aegraton*, 5. 67.
Annet, 4. 98. *Arion*, 6. 13.
Apples of the Earth, 3. 95.
Apple Rose, 4. 33.
Armerius, 4. 49.
Auriculos, 4. 80.

B

Blanche, 3. 102. *Bitter-Oak*, 3. 2.
Beech, 3. 14. 46. & 6. 1.
Black-berry, 3. 34. & 6, 7.
Bill-berry, 3. 48. & 5. 3. 29.
Barberry, 3. 48. *Black-thorn*, 3. 80.
Bullus, 3. 80. *Billets*, 3. 85, 86.
Brawn, 3. 97.
Buck-wheat, 3. 101. & 6. 4.
Barley, 3. 103. *Bean*, 3. 105.
Bill-rush, 3. 120. *Betony*, 4. 22.
Blue bottle, 4. 50.
Buckworth Plantane, 4. 53.
Bulbous Violet, 4. 58. *Blue bell*, 4. 60.
Bell-flower, 4. 60. & 6. 46.
Bind-weed of the Sea, 4. 60.
Batchelrs button, 4. 75.
Birds-eye, 4. 80.
Balsam apple-flower, 4. 83. & 5. 13
Balm several, 4. 88. & 5. 67. & 6. 2.
Burnet, 4. 93. & 6. 9.
Bastard Hemp, 4. 95.
Barrage, 4. 97. & 6. 2.
Buglos, 4. 97. & 5. 81.
Bishops-weed, 4. 98.
Bays, 5. 1. 50. 68. & 3. 26.
Birch, 5. 1. & 3. 63, 64.
Bead-tree, 5. 8. *Ben-tree*, 5. 9.
Box-tree, 5. 14. *Bistort*, 6. 6.
Binding Bean-tree, 5. 15. & 3. 46.
Broom, 5. 15. & 3. 63.
Bladder-nut, 5. 25. *Beza-tree*, 5. 36.
Bulbed Pease-cod, 5. 44.
Birds-foot, 5. 45. *Bay-plumb*, 5. 49.
Brant-tree, 5. 58.
Barnacle-tree, 5. 58, 59.
Bastard Marjerom, 5. 67.
Basil several, 5. 67. *Bacchar ibid.*
Bugle, 5. 84. & 6. 2. *Bryony*, 6. 4.
Blood-wort, 6. 4. *Brier*, 6. 7.
Bind-weed two, 6. 4. 20.
Bramble, 6. 7. & 4. 75.
Bean-trefoil, 6. 7. *Bitter Vetch*, 6. 9.
Birth-wort, 6. 14. *Beets*, 6. 22.
Burr dock, 6. 25. *Butter dock*, *ibid.*
Bears foot, 6. 31. *Bears breech*, 6. 41.
Bean-cod, 5. 87. *Bulbes head*, 6. 43.
Bulbes leaf, 6. 21. 23. *Blade leaf*, 6. 13.
Branched Mushroom, 3. 98.
Bastard Poppy, 4. 47.
Bunch of Daisies, 4. 72.
Basket of flowers, 4. 117.
Bunched head, 6. 44.
Brittannick, 4. 72. & 5. 4.
Bitter herb, 5. 67. *Black Lingwort*, 6. 22.
Brier-rose, 4. 36. *Bears ear*, 4. 80.
Bee-flower, 6. 77.
Brake, 4. 18. *Birds-nest*, 3. 93.

C

Cedar-Apple, 3. 19. & 5. 15.
Cork, 3. 26. & 5. 1.
Clove, 3. 26. 54. 55. & 5. 1.
Coffee, 3. 26. & 5. 21.
Curran-tree, 3. 37. & 5. 7.
Cotton-tree, 3. 49. & 5. 7. 39.
Cokar nut, 3. 49. & 5. 10. 19. 55.
Cinnamond, 3. 55. & 5. 1.
Cassia, 3. 55. & 5. 57. & 6. 9.
Cypress, 3. 58. 78. & 5. 16. 57.
Coral, 3. 82. *Crown of Thorns*, 3. 88, 89.
Carrat, 3. 93. & 6. 12.
Cats tail grass, 3. 114.
Camels hay rush, 3. 119.
Cyperus, or *English Galina*, *ibid.*
Clover-grass, 4. 3. *Cater-foil*, 4. 9. 12.
Cinquefoil, 4. 10. & 6. 29. 31.
Colts-foot, 4. 19. & 6. 26.
Cuped delis, 4. 30.
Chaplet of Roses, 4. 44. 45.
Childing Pink, 4. 49.
Corn-flower, 4. 50.
Crumpled Plantan, 4. 53.
Cabbach, 4. 55.
Colewort, 4. 55. & 6. 18. 40.
Coleflower, or *Collisflower*, 4. 55.
Crown Imperial, 4. 57.
Coventry Bell-flower, 4. 60.
Cullumbine, 4. 62, 63. & 6. 28.
Camphir, 4. 64. *Campian*, *ibid.*
Coral-wort, 4. 65.
Corn Mary-gold, 4. 68. 73. & 6. 83.
Camomil, 4. 71. & 5. 70. & 6. 12.
Cockle flower, 4. 82.
Comfrey, 4. 92.
Cowslip of Jerusalem, *ibid.*
Comin, 4. 98. *Chervil*, 4. 98. & 6. 10.
Chestnuts of the Earth, 4. 98.
Caraway, *ibid.* *Coriander*, *ibid.*
Capers sorts of them, 4. 75. 99. & 6. 24
Cittrul, or *Cittern*, 4. 118.
Cucumber, 4. 118. & 6. 30.
Cotton several, 4. 111.
Cotton weed, *ibid.* *Cud-weed*, *ibid.*
Cup, 4. 112. *Cornucopia*, *ibid.*
Cherry, 5. 31, 32. 1. & 3. 23. & 4. 109.
Cornell-tree, 5. 31.
Chesnut, 5. 1. 18. & 3. 26.
Chast-tree, *twice*, 5. 12. & 4. 95.
Cuckoe-flower, 6. 9.
Caterpillar grass, 5. 42.
Cytisus, 5. 48. *Chestnut gourd*, 5. 49.
China Cokar-trie, 5. 56.
Calamint, 5. 67.

Clar,

Clare, or Clary several, 5 67
Century, 5 67 and 6 9 14 16
Calsidony several, 5 69
Cost-Mary, 5 70 Carob, 5 75
Cockow-Pintle, 5 80 and 6 4
Chich-Pease, 5 86 and 6 9
Cicers, 5 86 and 6 9 Cocks head, 5 86
Climing Dog-bane, 6 1 Campion, 6 2
Crane-bill, 6 9 Celandine, 6 9 23
Curled Cresses, 6 10
Cluster-berry All-heal, 6 10
Clover, 6 11 Crossewort, 6 11
Coralline, 6 12 Cerinth, 6 14
Crow-foot, 6 28 33 and 4 74
Christmas flower, 6 31
Cinquefoil Aven, 6 31
Charlocke, 6 41 Costick, 3 101
Cowslip, 4 80 Cardamom, 5 33
Catch-flie, 5 84 Coral-tree, 5 9
Cresses, 6 41 Chub, or block, 3 90
Changeable Mushroom, 3 98
Cut leaf, 6 12 38 39
Crumpled leaf, 6 25
Coronet head, 6 46 Chilols, 3 96
Chives, 3 96 Cammock, 5 76
Celedony, 6 9 Cinkfolie, 4 10
Cuttle-hast, 6 13 Cane sprout, 4 71
Circea, 3 95
Cloves of Garlick, 3 96
Crocus, 4 56 Corn flag, 4 84
Cistus, 6 80 Cardinals flower, 6 46
Childing Daisie, 4 72
Cyclamen, 4 105 Crace, 6 8

D.

Date, 3 79 and 5 16 36
Dog stones, 3 100
Dufoil, or two leaves, 4 2
Double Caterfoil, 4 12
Dutch flower de lis, 4 24
Damack Rose, 4 33 Daffodil, 4 58
Double Cullumbine, 4 62 63
Double Marygold, 4 68
Double Hony-suckle, 4 70
Daisie, 4 71 72 73
Double Crow-foot, 4 74
Double Larks-heel, 4 83
Double Fox-glove, 4 84 Dill, 4 98
Dropwort, 4 98 and 6 10
Dauk, 4 98 Dame Violet, 4 100
Dwale, 4 109
Deadly Night-shade, 4 109
Double flower de lis, 4 120
Date plumb, 5 5 Dwarf Cherry, 5 7
Dug tree, 5 11 Dog berry, 5 28
Dog bane, 5 46 and 6 23
Dittany, 5 67 and 6 21 76
Diers weed, 5 75
Deluce, or De-lis, 5 78 93
Demy flower de luce, 5 93
Double pointed leaf, 6 1
Dwarf Bay, 6 1 Dittander, 6 2 13
Dead Nettle, 6 20 Dandelion, 6 41
Double Wall-flower, 4 65
Dragon tree, 5 16
Date plumb, 4 110 and 5 38
Dulips, 4 56 Dented leaf, 6 39
Dogs bramble, 4 75 Dogs Apple, 4 75
Dog-rose, 4 36 Dwarf Rose, 4 33
Dog Fennel, 4 98
Dog Tooth flower, 4 105
Dodder, 6 97 5 4 Double Rocket, 4 100

E.

Elm, or Elmen, 3 52 and 5 2
Ewe, 3 69 English galina, 3 119
Endive, 4 22 Eglantine rose, 4 34
Elecampane, 4 73 96 and 6 1
Earth nuts, 4 98 Enanth, 4 98
English Saxifrage, 4 98
English Maiden hair, 4 103
Ethiopian Gourd, 5 24
Ey-bright, 5 84 Egg leaf, 6 22
Eared leaf, 6 40 6
Eight pointed leaf, 6 36
Elder tree, 4 91
English herb, 4 72 and 5 4
Edge Tool, 6 13
Earths leaf, 6 22 Echalsle, 4 96

F.

Furmentrie, 3 10
Fir, 3 18 and 5 15
Fig, 3 38 and 5 33 54 6 36
Filberd, 3 50 Fa g t, what, 3 86
Fly-bane, 3 97 Fue-ball, 3 97
Field Mushroom, 3 97 98
Foulding Mshroom, 3 98
French Wheat, 3 101
Fitches, 6 9
Fox tail grass, 3 114
Feather grass, 3 114
Fenugreek, 3 115 and 6 7 27
Flags, 3 119 and 6 13
Fern, 4 18 and 6 4 59
Flower de luce several, 4 23 25 26 27 29 30 31 and 5 78 93
Flower of Constantinople, 4 49 64
Feathered pinks, 4 49
Figwort, 4 51 52
French Marygold, 4 68
Field Marygold, 4 73
Fell-wort, 4 76 Fox glove, 4 84
Flower of the Sun, 4 86 and 6 83
Featherfew, 4 90 and 5 70
Fennel, 4 98 and 6 12
Fleawort, 4 98 Fumitery, 4 98
Frittillary several, 4 104
Fruitage, what, 4 113 114
Flowerage, what, 4 113 114
Flower pot, 4 115 116
Fistick nut, 5 13 21
French Catchflie, 5 84
Flower of Bristow, 6 2
Friers Caul, 6 4 Filipendula, 6 10
Francking Spurry, 6 11
Flixweed, 6 12 Flax, 6 12 and 4 81
Flaxweed, 6 13. Fleabane, 6 13
Feathered leaf, 6 33
Fined leaf, 6 40 6
Fasce and Fascicle, or Bundle, 3 112
Fly winged leaf, 6 10 Fole foot, 6 26
Five pointed leaves, 6 29 30 31 32 33
Firse, 5 15 Flaxinella, 6 11
Flower gentle, 6 53 Fly Orchis, 6 77
French Lavender, 5 69

G.

Grape, 3 30
Ginny Pepper, 3 44 57
Gall, 3 45
Grove, or Wood, 3 62
Ground Hartichoke, 3 92
Garlick, 3 96 99
Goats beard, 3 97 and 6 13
Goats Stones, 3 100
Ginney Wheat, 3 104
Garb, or Sheaf, 3 106 110
Garland of Wheat, 3 111
Grass sorts of it, 3 113 114 118 and (5 46
Groundsell, 4 15
Gentian, 4 40 76 and 6 14 46
Gilliflower, 4 65 67 100 48
Gentionella, 4 76
Gautwort, 4 98 Glasswort, 4 98
Gourd several, 4 108
Gatter tree, 5 28 Ginny grains, 5 33
Golden Hisop, 5 67
Golden Tyme, 5 67 Goats Organy, 5 67
Germander, 5 67 Green weed, 5 75
Gutwort, 6 1 Gomfrey, 6 2 and 4 92
Gromel, 5 67
Goose grass, 6 11 Ground pine, 6 11
Ginger, 6 13
Gold of Pleasure, 6 14
Ground Ivy, 6 23
Gilder Rose, 6 26
Gentle, 6 41 Gooseberry, 3 36
Gaul tree, 5 13 Great Tyme, 5 67
Great Sanicle, 6 36 Great Spurge, 6 36
Gristly plumb, 5 38
Goats wheat, 3 10 Gorse, 5 15
Gilofers: See July-flowers.
Goats Rue, 6 9 Gilliflower Rose, 4 33
Gall of the Earth, 5 67
Gladiolus, 6 13 Gold knape, 6 8
Grape flower, 4 58
Ground Cherry, 4 109
Goldy Locks, 6 53
Golden flower gentle, 6 53
Gum Cistus, 6 80
Gnat Satyrion, 6 77

Gian

Giants Bell-flower, 6 46
Giants Throat-wort, 6 46

H.

Holm Oak, 3 1 61
Hops, 3 40 Hassel, 3 49 and 5 2
Holly, 3 59 60 61
Haythorn, 3 59 and 5 28 52 and 6 32
Hartichoke, 3 92
Honeysuckle, 4 3 69 and 5 1 26
Heart trifoil, 4 8
Heart grass, 4 8
Heart Clover, 4 8
Hemlock, 4 98 and 6 11
Hollyhock, 4 59
Horned Poppy, 4 61
Hearts ease, 4 66
Hose in hose, 4 80
Hartworth, 4 98
Herb Garrad, 4 98
Hoary Pink, 4 101
Heath, 5 15
Hony suckle berries, 5 26
Haws, 5 28 52
Heart berry, 5 32
Hysop, 5 67
Horehound, several, 5 67 and 6 23
Horse leek, 5 68
House green, 5 68
Hounds tongue, 6 2
Heart leaf, 6 3 23
Hearts tongue, 6 4
Harts foot, 6 7
Herb of Life, 6 9
Herb Frenumence, 6 11
Heathlowtine, 6 11
Hairy leaf, 6 12
Hellebor, 6 14 31
Hony wort, 6 14
Hepatica, 6 27
Helmet flower, 6 33
Hemp, 6 22 and 4 95
Hawkweed, 6 41
Henbane, 6 41
Horse tail, 6 11 and 3 114
Horse Radish,
Holy herb, 4 79
Horebell, 6 97
Herb of Grace, 6 24
Hares heart, 4 75
Heraclea, 4 89
Holy Hills, 3 61
Hose in hose Primrose, 4 80

I.

Juniper 2 18 and 5 16
Jagged Filberd, 3 50
Ivy, 3 73 74 75
Indian Apple, 3 77
Jerusalem Hartichoke, 3 92
Indian Costick, 3 101
Indian wheat, 3 104
July flowers, 4 48
Jungilia, 4 58
Jasmine, 4 87
Indian Jasmine, 4 84
Indian Date Plums, 5 1
Indian Cherry, 5 2
Judas tree, 5 4
Jasmine tree, 5 9
Inaia Corall tree, 5 9
Indian Nut, 5 20
Indian purging plumb, 5 23 24
Juniper berry, 5 33
Indian Figg, 5 36 54
Indian Gristly plumb, 5 38
Jagged Hysop, 5 67
Jerusalem Oak, 5 70
Jujube, 5 77
Jobs Tears, 5 82
Iron wort, 5 84
Indian leaf, 6 2
Indian Potato, 6 4
Jews Mallow, 6 6
Indian Melion, 6 30
Jagged leaf, 6 33 41
Indian Cresses, 4 83
Jagged Grass, 3 113
Jacinct, or Jacinth, 4 58
Indian Cokar nut, 3 71
Juniper herb, 6 22
Iris, 4 31
Jucca, 6 55
Indian Bread, 6 55
Jackby the hedge, 6 97 5 4
Jerusalem Sage, 4 89

K.

Kidney bean, 3 105 and 6 7
Knapweed, 6 14
Kidney wort, 6 19
Kings spear, 6 13

L.

Leek, 3 96
Laurel Oak, 3 1
Limoon, 3 11
Lemon, 3 12 and 5 8
Larch, 3 18
Laurel, 3 25 26 27 28 and 5 1
Luke Olive, 3 42
Long Pepper, 3 57 and 5 84
Laths, 3 86
Logg, 3 89 90
Lintel, 3 105
Lupin, 3 105 and 6 34
Lavender, 3 117 and 5 69
Lovage, 4 17 98 and 6 11
Lillyes, 4 28 32 57
Losenge de lis, 4 30
Lilly Convally, 4 57
Larks heel, 4 83
Larks spur, 4 83
Lilac, 4 87
Lady bower, 4 94
Ladies glove, 4 89
Lions foot, 4 111
Lignum vitæ, 5 2
Line tree, 5 4
Linden tree, 5 4
Locus tree, 5 14
Laurel berry, 5 31 73 and 3 28
Love Apples, 5 34
Lavender Cotton, 5 70
Leopard bane, 5 79 and 6 14
Losence leaf, 6 1
Lady smock, 6 9
Lentils, 6 9
Licorice, 6 9
Laserwort, 6 11
Libstick, 6 11
Ladies Bedstraw, 6 11
Ladies slipper, 6 14 96
Liver wort, 6 27
Lousewort, 6 31
Ladies Mantle, 6 36
Lion leaf trefoil, 6 37
Line: See Hemp.
Lingwort, 6 22
London Pride, 4 49
Love lies a Bleeding, 6 53
Lilly Asphodil, 6 13
Loose-strife, 6 97 5 4.

M.

Musk Rose, 4 33 34 36
Moly several sorts, 3 99
Muslin Corn, 3 102
Meadler, 3 22 and 5 5
Mirtle, 3 25 and 5 1
Mulberry, 3 33 and 5 2
Maple, 3 41 and 5 6 7
Mace, 3 55
Musk Mallow, 6 61
Mandrake, 3 94 95 and 6 2
Mushroom, 3 97 98 and 5 89
Mouse-tail grass, 3 114
Maiden-hair, 4 18 103 and 6 9 11
Mercury, 4 20
Marble rose, 4 43
Mountain amson, 4 99
Mountain Lilly, 4 57

Ma-

Mallows, 4 59
Marygold, 4 08 and 5 67 and 6 12
May flower, 4 80
March Marygold, 4 85 and 6 23
Marygold of Peru, 4 86
Motherwort, 4 88 and 5 67
Mountain Tansy, 4 90
Mountain Scabious, 4 91 and 6 37
Mastherwort, 4 98
Mountain Pink, 4 102
Martagon, 4 105
Mountain Avens, 4 105 and 6 7
Musmillion, 4 108
Mellon several, 4 108 and 5 49
Madder, 4 119 and 6 34
Mulberry fig, 5 4
Mastick, 5 13 67
Made Apple, 5 25 41
Mullein, 5 38 68
Mother of Thyme, 5 67
Marerm, 5 67
Mint several, 5 67 and 6 2
Maudlin, 5 70 and 6 11
Mayweed, 5 70
Mugwort, 5 70 and 6 39
Mechoacan of Peru, 6 3
Male Fearn, 6 4 5
Moscow, 6 9 31
Mock Crane bill, 6 9
Mustard, 6 10
Milfoil, 6 10
Millet, 6 13
Miltwast, 4 18
Marsh Pennywort, 6 19
Mushroom leaf, 6 20
Marsh Elder, 6 26
Myarum, 6 14
Mealy tree, 5 28
Male Peony, 4 79
Mechoacan, 4 94
Meadow sweet, or Mead-sweet, 6 9
Mirica, 5 15
Marsh Buglos, 4 97
Mastery, 4 58
Mervail of Peru, 4 60

N.

Nutmeg, 3 56 and 5 1
Nettle, 4 21
None-such, 4 64 and 6 2
Nigella, 4 94 and 6 12
Nut-bane, cod, 5 47 75
Nepp, 5 67
Nesewort, 6 14
Navellwort, 6 36
Night shade, 6 8 and 4 110
Nerew, 6 41
Narrow striked head, 6 46
Nicotiana, 4 79
Narcissus, 4 58
Nose-bleed, 6 10
Naked Daisy, 4 72
Naked Lady, 4 56

O.

Oak, 3 1
Oak Apple, 3 45
Orange, 3 13 and 5 8
Open-Arse, 3 22
Olives, 3 42 and 5 1
Onion, 3 96
Oats, 3 116
One blade, 4 1 4
Ox-eye, 4 68 73 89 and 6 12
Ox-lip, 4 80
One berry, 4 109
Oleander, 5 5 48
Oak of Cappadocia, 5 70 and 6 97
Oval pointed leaf, 6 2
Orobus, 6 9 and 5 86
Orpine, 6 23
Organy, 5 67
Orchides head, 6 48
Origan, 5 67
Orchanet, 4 97
Orchis, 6 77
Oak Fern, 4 18

P.

Pear, 3 6 and 5 2
Pound Citron, 3 11
Pine Apple, 3 16 and 5 16
Pitch, 3 18 and 5 16
Pomgranate, 3 20 and 5 1
Plume, 3 24 and 5 2
Prickwood, 3 26
Paradise tree, 3 43
Pepper, 3 57 and 5 3
Palm, 3 70 71 and 5 16 57
Potato, 3 92 and 6 8
Parsnip, 3 93 and 6 9
Puffe, 3 97
Priest Pintle, 3 100
Peasecod, 3 105 and 5 86 and 6 9
Pease blossom, 3 115
Parsley, 4 15 and 6 10 11
Province Rose, 4 34
Pink, 4 49 101
Pride of London, 4 49
Plantan, 4 53 54
Persian Lilly, 4 57
Poppy, 4 61 and 6 12
Pash-poles, 4 61
Pansie, 4 66
Pimpernel, 4 70
Prim-rose, 4 80
Paigle, 4 80
Peony, or Pionet, 4 85 and 6 37
Pipe tree, 4 87 and 5 2
Persian Jasmine, 4 87
Pimpion, 4 108
Poplar, 5 2 and 3 3
Privet, 5 2
Peech, 5 2 and 3 14
Palma Christi, 5 22 and 6 36
Pliant Medly tree, 5 28
Privet berry, 5 29
Prickly Mellon, 5 49
Poley, 5 67
Polemountain, 5 67
Penny-Royal, 5 67 and 6 2
Purple Marygold, 5 67
Purging Thorn, 5 76
Park leaves, 5 84
Princes Feather, 5 85
Pepperwort, 6 2
Pellitory of the Wall, 6 2
Prick Madam, 6 11
Parick, 6 13
Pointed thrush leaf, 6 14
Pennywort, 6 19
Pointed Oval leaf, 6 22
Pilewort, 6 23
Parnassus grass, 6 23
Purging Scincle, 6 31
Pannick Head, 6 42
Pellitory of Spain, 4 98 12
Pulse, 5 45
Purging plumb, 5 23 24
Penny-wort, 6 19
Pear Ceston, 6 13
Purslane, 6 24
Purging herb, 4 75
Pantheron, 4 75
Phillirea, 3 18

Q.

Quicken, or Wicken, 5 27
Queen Gilliflower, 4 67 100
Quince, 5 2
Quicker tree, 5 13
Queen of the Meadows, 6 9

R.

Reddish, 3 93 and 6 8 10
Ragged Mushroom, 3 98
Rye, 3 103
Reed cross, 3 114
Reed, 3 116 119 71
Rushes, 3 118 120

Hibernia Plantan, 4 53
Rush Daffodil, 4 58
Rock Rampion, 4 60
Rosa Mundi, Rose of the World, 4 33
Rose slip, 4 36 Rose leaf, 4 37
Rose and Thistle conjoined, 4 42
Rose Garland, 4 43
Rose Columbine, 4 62
Rose Campher, 4 64 Rose bay, 5 5 48
Rosemary, 5 69 and 6 11
Rames Cicbes, 5 86 and 6 9
Ragwort, 6 12 Rice, 6 13
Round leaf, 6 19 24
Rubarb, 6 25
Rocket, 6 41 and 4 100
Rape, 6 41 Raspis, 6 7 Rue, 6 24
Rest Harrow, 5 76
Ranunculus, 4 74 Ramson, 4 99

S.

Satyrion, 6 77
Savin, 3 18 and 5 16
Sycomore, 3 41 and 5 7
Service tree, 3 65 and 5 13
Slow tree, 3 8
Stem, stock of a Tree, 3 81 90
Starved branch, 3 82
Stone Mushroom, 3 98 and 5 89
Seages, 3 119 Sper Seed, 3 119
Sexfoil, Sisefoil, 4 11 Six-leaf, 4 11
Succory, 4 14 and 6 41
Spinage, 4 16 and 6 5
Spleen-worth, 4 18
Scarlet Rose, 4 33
Sweet William, 4 49
Sultans flower, 4 50
Snow drop, 4 58 Snow-flower, 4 58
Steeple Bell-flower, 4 60
Spatling Poppy, 4 61
Stock Gillyflower, 4 65 100
Starwort, 4 68 and 5 67
Sun flower, 4 68 and 6 53
Scabius, 4 71
Single Crowfoot, 4 75
Sweet wood, 4 75
Saxifrage, 4 78 98 and 6 25
Shalote, 4 96 Squill, 4 99
Shrub Trefoil, 4 87
Sage, 4 89 and 5 67
Spanish Nigella, 4 94 Spignell, 4 98
Shepards Needle, 4 98
Samphire, 4 98 and 6 13
Smallage, 4 98 and 6 10 28
Strawberry, 4 107 and 6 7
Strawberry tree, 4 107 and 5 1
Storax, 4 110 and 5 2 38
Sleepy Nightshade, 4 110
Sallow tree, 5 5 Staff tree, 5 10
Sumack, 5 13 Sweet Gall tree, 5 13
Silver bush, 5 14
Spurge, 5 22 and 6 16 17 36
Sage Apple, 5 35 Sebesten, 5 40
Sirian plumb, 5 4
Scorpion grass, 5 42
Sena, 5 43 and 5 75 and 6 9
Swallow-wort, 5 45 Star-pulse, 5 45
Scorpion Pulse, 5 45
Scaly Mellon, 5 49
Stocks, several, 5 60 61 62
Stems several, 5 64 65
Savory, 5 67
Sweet Marjerom, 5 67
Sweet Maudlin, 5 70 Sneezewort, 5 67
Sotherwood, 5 70 Stickwaro, 5 70
Sea Spurge, 5 72 and 6 1
Staves-acre, 5 74 and 6 31
Sweet bane, 5 75
Scorpion Wolf-bane, 5 79
St. Peters wort, 5 84 and 6 16
St. Johns wort, 5 84
Sopewort, 5 84 Spurge Olive, 6 1
Sorrel, 6 4 19 and 4 8 13 72
Scamony, 6 4 Snake-weed, 6 6
Sow Thistle, 6 6 41
Sensitive Plant, 6 9
Sea fern, 6 10 Sweet Cisley, 6 11
Sermountain, 6 11 Spurwort, 6 11
Solomons Seal, 6 11 14
Stone crop, 6 11
Sea moss, 6 12 Sperage, 6 12
Sword, or flag leaf, 6 13
Sages, 6 13 Scarewort, 6 13
Spiderwort, 6 13
Slit Through-leaf, 6 15
Sun Spurge, 6 16 Soldenella, 6 20
Scurvy-grass, 6 23
Storks bill, 6 31 Setterwort, 6 31
Setfoil, or seven pointed leaf, 6 35 36
Spurrowell leaf, 6 36
Shepards Purse, 6 41
Spike, or spired head, 6 42
Spiked head at spaces, 6 45
Seed sprout, 6 47
Shade of Flowers, 6 49
Spotted Gomfrey, 4 92 100
Swallowwort, 6 2 Star leaf, 6 34
Spindle, 3 26
Sprig double toped, 5 90 91 92
Spelt, 5 66 Scalion, 3 96
Safron, 4 56 Sons Brow, 3 120
Sword herb, 6 13 Swordpoint, 6 13
St. Johns Seal, 6 111
St. Mary's Seal, 6 11
Stone Sage, 4 89
Scorpions Tail, 4 89
Stone Buglos, 4 97 Sweet John, 4 49
Son before Father, 4 56
Star Flower several, 4 58
Shrub Mallow, 4 59
Spanish Jasmine, 4 87
Sow bread, 4 105 Spiderwort, 6 13
Semereen, 5 68 Snapdragon, 6 79
Sea Onyon, 4 99 Stick dove, 5 69
Sanicle, 4 8 and 6 29 30
Silk Grass, 5 46
Sauce Alone, 6 97 54

T.

Tyth-Wheat, 3 10
Tobacco, 3 2 and 4 79 and 6 2
Tree of Paradise, 4 43
Turpentine, 3 72 and 5 13
Therebinth tree, 3 72
Trunk of a tree, 3 81 Thorn, 3 87
Turnip, 3 91 and 6 41
Turky wheat, 3 104
Tufted grass, 3 114
Tray-blade, 4 2
Trefoil, 4 3 and 6 7 27 63
Three leaf grass, 4 3
Tulipa's, 4 28 56
Thistle several, 4 46 47
Thrift, 4 49 Thorny Poppy, 4 61
Tassel, 4 77 Tansy, 4 90 & 5 70
True lowe, 4 109
Tree of Life, 5 2 16
Trefoil tree, 5 9 48
Thorny Cotton, 5 12
Thorn bane, 5 15 Tamarick, 5 16
Time, 5 67 Turks Cap, 4 105
Tamarind, 5 75
Turnsole, 5 83 Tutsan, 5 84
Treacle Mustard, 6 4 and 5 85
Trefoil eared, or fined, 6 8 40
Thread leaf, 6 12
Through Wax, 6 14
Through leaf, 6 14
Through leaf bipointed, 6 15 16
Trefoil three pointed, 6 28
Tripartted leaf, 6 28 25
Tormentil, 6 36 Tufted head, 6 44
Tare, or Tarfitch, 3 105
Turnsap, 4 105 Tares, 6 9
Toad Flax, 4 81 and 6 13
Tented Hysop, 5 67
Tripointed leaf, 6 25
Trick Madam, 6 11
Thornholm, 3 87
Throatwort, 6 46
Titans Blood, 4 89

V.

Vine, 3 29 31 32
Unifoil, 4 1 4 Virgin Rose, 4 35
Violet, 4 67 and 6 23
Virgin Bower, 4 70
Virginia Crowfoot, 4 75
Vervain Gentian, 4 96
Virginia Date Plumb, 4 110 & 5 38
Virginia Cherry, 5 34
Virginia Potato, 5 38 and 6 8
Unpleasant Balm, 5 67

Ven-

Venemous berry, 5 79
Viper Buglos, 5 81
Valerian, 6 5 37 *and* 5 7
Vetches, 6 9 *Viper-grass*, 6 13
Umbell head, 6 49
Uneven cut leaf, 6 25
Virgins climber, 4 70
Virginia Spider wort, 6 13
Venus comb, 6 88
Upright Dogs-tane, 5 46

W.

White Poplar, 3 3 *and* 5 7
Wild Olive, 3 43
Wind berry, 3 48 *and* 5 3 29
White-thorn, 3 59 *and* 5 52
Wood, 3 62
Walnut, 3 76 *and* 5 13 17
Wheat, 3 101 102 *and* 5 66
Wood Sorrel, 4 8 13 *and* 6 19
Wall-flower, 4 65
Winter Gillistower, 4 65
Wind flower, 4 68
Wild Daisie, 4 73
Water Lilly, 4 74 *and* 6 22
Wild Carrot, 4 98 *and* 3 93
Water Gillovers, 4 100
Wild Pink, 4 101 *Wild fig*, 5 6
Willow or Withy, 5 14
Wild Ash, 5 27 *Wicken*, 5 27
Wharl berry, 5 29
Worm grass, 5 42
Water Yarrow, 5 56
Wormwood, 5 70
Weld, or Would, 5 75
Wake Robin, 5 80 *and* 6 4 22
Wood, or wild Orobus, 5 86
Woundworth, 6 1 *Wielow twig*, 6 1
Wood Night shade, 6 6
Wolf bane, 6 6 14 33 36
Winged leaf, 6 9 10 37
Watercresses, 6 9
Whirled stalk, 6 11
Wharles of flowers, 6 11 46
Woodroof, 6 11 36
Worm-seed, 6 13
Wall Pennywort, 6 19
Wood Cromfoot, 6 33
Winter Wolf-bane, 6 36
Woodrowel, 6 36
Winter cresses, 6 41
Wild Nevew, 6 41
Willow herb, 6 97 5 4
Wallwort, 4 97 *Whine*, 5 76
Wall Sage, 4 89 *Wild Buglos*, 4 97
Wild Rue, 6 23
Winter-green, 6 22
Wolfes heart, 6 22 *Wild Flax*, 4 81
Winter Cherry, 4 109.

Y.

Yew, 3 47 *and* 5 14
York and Lancaster Rose, 4 33
Yellow Rose, 4 33
Yarrow, 5 56 *and* 6 10
Yellow Grace, 6 8

The signification of Trees, Plants, Fruit, Flowers, and Herbs: As they are born in Arms.

Trees and **Plants** in general signify Fertility, and Multiplication, Peace and Concord.

Palm, the Emblem of Victory, Justice and Peace.

Lawrel, the symbol of Triumph and Victory.

Oak, the emblem of Protection and Safety, Force, Strength, and long Life.

Olive, signifies Peace, Concord and Obedience.

Myrrh, the emblem of Pleature, Delight and Venery.

Cypress, signifies Death and Oblivion.

Pine, is also the simbol of Death, Oblivion, Barrenness, being used in old time to the furnishing of Funeral Pomp.

Ash,

Vine, the Emblem of Fecundity and Joy.

Pomgranate, denotes Royalty and Amity.

Apples, the emblem of Fecundity and Industry.

Oranges, the simbol of Dissimulation.

Corn and **Fruit**, do generally denote Liberallity, Opulency, Felicity, Peace, Concord, Provision, Fertility and Prosperity.

Mulberry, the emblem of Shame-fac'dness in Women, and of Judicature in Men.

Amarinthus, or **Flower of Love**, is of colour purple, and born by Virgins in Garlands, it never fadeth, therefore denoteth Immortality.

Leaves also denotes our Frailty, by their falling from Trees in Autum, as well as the Trophies of our Monuments.

Leaves, the emblems of Truth, as being the Tables on which the *Sybils* gave their Answers.

Ivy, is the simbol of the Resurrection, being always green.

Flowers in general, denoteth all kind of Pleasures and Delights.

Roses the emblem of Beauty and Comliness, also the token of silence, *Under the Rose be it spoken.*

White Rose, simbol of Beauty and Purity.

Red Rose, signifies Beauty and Grace.

Marygold, denoteth Piety and Devotion, Adoration and Meditation.

Lilly, the emblem of Purity and Chastity, and is the Ornament Royal of Princely Crowns, representing Love and perfect Charity.

Thorny Rose, signifies the enjoyment of some good, though invironed on all sides with evil.

Trefoil, the emblem of Perpetuity.

Cinquefoil, signifies one that Masters his Affections and Conquers his Senses, and that hath overcome his Enemy not only by Valour but Wisdom.

Broom, the emblem of Humility.

Dock, the emblem of Health, a curer of Wounds.

Mirtle, denotes Love and Generation, being the Garland of *Venus*.

Groves, the simbols of places consecrated to some Deity or other, denoting an apprehension of some invisible power.

Garb, or **Shake of Corn**, signifies community Friendship, Fellowship and Fortitude, and is the type of the Resurrection; it denotes in the bearer, Plenty, Abundance, and a lover of Hospitality.

Tom

Terms of Blazon peculiar to Trees, Flowers, and Herbs.

A.

Aulned, 6 52
Alternately, 3 119

B.

Branch, 2 28 *and* 5 50
Bearbed, 4 33
Bole, or head, 4 46
Bud, 4
Blossoms, 4 107 *and* 5 52 75 86
Bunch, 5 28 30 *and* 3 79 113 *and* 4 59
Bloom, or Blowm, 5 75 86 *and* 4 72 116
Bowed, Imbowed, fretted, 5 91
Blade, bladed, 3 99 103 *and* 4 31 32
Banded, 3 109.

C.

Cluster, 3 51 *and* 5 28 30
Cod, 3 105 *and* 5 43
Chaplet, 3 111 *and* 4 44
Caterfoil, 4 9 12
Cinquefoil, 4 11
Conjoyned, 4 42
Chives tipt, 4 104
Couped, 3 81 83
Couped in point, 18 54.

D.

Dejected, 3 107
Dufoil, 4 2
Double stipped, 4 5
Double Caterfoil, 4 12
Demy, 4 42
Double toped, 5 92.

E.

Erected, 3 7
Erazed, 3 25 63 *and* 4 6
Enwrapped, 3 73
Eared, 3 101 103.

F.

Fructed, 1 2 8 *and* 5 50 *and* 18 57
Flected, 3 29
Fasce, Fascicle, 3 112
Festoon, 4 114
Flowerage, Fruitage, 4 113 114.

G.

Grass pile, 3 113
Garb, 3 106
Gradually Imbowed, 18 46.

H.

Husk, 4 48 106 *and* 5 80.

I.

Issuant, 18 123 124
Interposed, 18 56
Inclosed, 3 50
Irradiated, 3 25 63 *and* 18 49 72 18 84 *and* 5 65
Inverted, 5 71
Imbowed, 5 88
Imbowed and fretted, 5 91.

M.

Mountain in base, 3 1
On a Mount, 3 1 42
Mounted, 3 63.

P.

Proper, 3 4 29
Pendant, 3 4 6 *and* 5 37 *and* 18 50
Pile of Grass, 3 113.

R.

Ragulated, 5 64 65
Raguled, 3 73 84 85 *and* 4 7
Ragged, 4 6
Reflected, 5 51 *and* 3 29
Recurvant, 5 88
Reverted, 5 51
Rizoms of Oats, 3 116.

S.

Slip, what it is, 3 28 49 *and* 5 51
Slipped, 3 3 23 49 & 5 78 & 18 51
Sans, 3 21 *and* 18 143
Sprig, what it is, 3 28
Sustainant, 3 40 *and* 18 57
Supportant, 3 40
Stem, 3 81 *Stock*, 3 81
Stalk, stalked, 3 101
Seeded, 3 99 *and* 4 31 33
Surrounded, 3 108
Sprig double toped, 5 92
Sexfoil, 4 11.

T.

Trunked, 3 33 73 83 84 & 5 64 65
Trunk of a tree, 3 81
Tuft, 3 113 118 *Trefoil*, 4 3
Treble sliped, 4 6.

U.

Unifoil, 4 1 *Unfructed*, 5 50
Verted, 5 51.

W.

Wreathed, 3 86 *and* 5 90
Wisams, Wisals, 3 91

Things of most note within these four Chapters of Flowers, Fruit, Herbs, &c.

WHAT Trees grow in each Country, *folio* 45
Names of Fruit Trees whose Fruit is to be eaten, *f.* 45
Trees whose Fruit is not to be eaten, *f.* 45
Trees that bear no Fruit, *f.* 45
Trees and Shrubs always green, *f.* 46
Trees that yield Gums, *f.* 46
Terms for all sorts of Wood-lands, *f.* 46
Terms for Shrubs and Under-shrubs, *f.* 46
Of the affinity of Leaves and Trees, *f.* 78
Of the affinity of Fruit and Seed Pods, *f.* 80
Terms used by Herbalists for all parts of a tree, *f.* 84
Terms for all parts of the Root and Body, *f.* 84 93
Terms for all parts of the Leaves, and Names according to their form and making, 84 93
Fruit how termed in their several parts, *f.* 85.
The Excrements of Trees, the several sorts, *f.* 85
Terms for dead, and cut Wood, *f.* 85
Terms of Art used by Planters of Trees, *f.* 86
Terms used for Heads of Flowers, according to the manner of their growing, *f.* 106
Terms used about Flowers according to their shape, *f.* 108
Terms of Art used by Florists and Gardiners, *f.* 113
Things proper for Gardens, *f.* 118
Instruments belonging to Gardiners, *f.* 118
Things hurtful to Orchards and Gardens, *f.* 129 *
General Rules and Observations of Gardiners for the Ordering and increasing of Trees, and Flower Plants, *f.* 130 *
Trees distinguished into their several Classis or Heads, according to their Leaves, Fruit, and Seeds or Pods, *f.* 119
The like of Shrubs and Underwoods, *f.* 119.
The like of Flowers, *f.* 120.
An Alphabet of all Trees, Flowers, Plants, Herbs, mentioned in these four Chapters, *f.* 122 123, *&c.*
The signification of Trees, Flowers, Herbs and Fruit, as they are born in Arms, *f.* 127
Terms of Blazon peculiar to Trees, Flowers and Herbs, *f.* 128.

CHAP.

To the Right Worshipful

Sir THOMAS DELVES, *of Doddington, Baronett.*

And to THOMAS *His Son and Heir.*

AND TO THE

Pious and Virtuous Lady, Mary *the Relict of Sir* Henry Delves, *Baronett.*

NExt, *to the Reading of Holy Scriptures, wherein the Mysteries of Our Salvation are contained; yet for Recreation sake, let* me *presume to invite you to spend some few Hours in this, wherein you* may *perhaps find something that* may *please the Fancy, recreate the Mind, or instruct the Understanding; which if it do, I have my desired Wishes, which is that I* may *be any way serviceable to* my *King and Country, and* remain,

Your most devoted Servant,

Randle Holme.

CHAP. VII.

1. HAving hitherto handled that part of our distribution which comprehend things Vegitable; we shall proceed now to the second sort of Creatures which have Life and Senses.

Sensitive things are all sorts of **Animals**, and Created Beings which have Motion; which in respect of Man, are termed unreasonable Creatures, he only being endued with a Reasonable Soul, and an Holy Will; if by Sin and Transgression, he make not himself worse than the Beast that perisheth.

There is no Sensitive, or unreasonable Animal but hath at the least these parts:

The **Head** to receive Food, and wherein the Senses and Life it self, have their residence.

A **Belly** to receive, and concoct his Meat.

Intrails, whereby to eject the Superfluities, or Excrements.

Members for Motion, which also serve for the use, and exercise of the Senses: For without these he can neither Feed, Feel, or Move.

2. WE will proceed to perticulars, concerning things **Sensitive**, Born in Coats of Arms; and first we will give their whole Bearing, and then their Parts and Members; as usually they are Born. For to every one that first hath seen the whole will know and discern the parts the better; whereas he that seeth a part, and never seen the whole, knoweth not whereof it is a part; and herein this is principally to be noted, that the bearing of whole Animals is the most worthy, yet the bearing of part is not to be misliked.

Neither must we esteem every bearing according to its Order of Nature; but be interpreted in the best sense, that is, according to their most noble and generous Qualities. Wherein first observe, that in all sorts of Animals born in Arms, or Ensigns, must be set forth in those excellencies which may give honour to the Bearers. For example, the **Fox** is full of Wit and Cunning, but withal given to filching for his Prey; if then this be the charge of the Escochion, we must conceive the qualities of the Bearer represented thereby, to be a wise, cunning, and politick Man; but nothing to be looked on as to his pilfering and stealing. For it is rather a dishonour than a praise for a man to bear a **Lion** on his Shield, if he bear a **Sheep** in his Heart, or a **Goose** in his Brain, and so of all other Creatures.

Secondly, as Beasts of savage and fierce nature, must be figured and set forth in their most noble and fierce action: as a **Lion rampant**, his Mouth open, his Claws extended, for in this form he is said to be prepared to rent and tear; shewing by that posture he is a Creature of much Vigour and Courage. *Psal.* 22. 13. a **Leopard or Wolf passant**, that is going (as it were) *se ensuy*, step by step, which form of action fitteth best their nature. As a Horse of peaceable and tractable nature must be set forth according to their nature, as a **Horse running, or dancing**, a **Grey hound coursing**, a **Stag tripping**, a **Horse standing**, &c.

Thirdly, as touching the orderly placing of the Feet of **Animals**, this is generally to be observed, that the right foot must be placed foremost; because the Dexter-side is the first in Motion, and the most noble for Strength and Action; and therefore thus to describe is to set them forth in their most commendablest Action.

Fourthly, When **Animals** are set on Banners, they must be made agreeable to the nature and quality of the thing born: Therefore as it is proper for a Banner to be carryed on a staff, according to the use thereof, the staff must proceed, and the Banner cometh after; therefore ought the Face of the Creature to look towards the staff, that is directly forwards. So it must be in every other thing, or else it would seem retrogated, or going backwards, which were Monstrous to behold.

☞ Also here we must note, That in a Banner, that which is made for the right or one side, the same must be made on the other, all looking to the staff; and though the right foot on the Banner, when turned seems to be the left, yet the contrary side maketh no difference or alteration in the work, but the foremost foot on the further side of the **Animal** must be first set out in the delineation thereof.

Fifthly, Though the bearing of all created things in their proper kind and colours be commendable, yet must not such peculiar commendations be extended to derogate from the dignity of other bearings, as if they were of no esteem, in regard they be not born proper: For there is as good and honorable intendments in these as in them; especially when they are as Ancient as the former, and the Bearers of equal Estate and Dignity. For Arms are honored by the Bearers, and not the Bearers by the Arms.

Sixthly, Also in the bearing of **Terrestial Animals**, here are these things to be principally observed.

☞ That those **Beasts, Birds, Fish,** *&c.* which either those Emperours, Kings, or Princes, do bear for their Royal Ensign; the same is accounted there, to be of dignity: So is the bearing the **Lion** chiefly esteemed with us in *England*, because it is born by his Majesty. So is the **Eagle**, by the *Romans*, and the **Flower-de-lis**, by the *French*, &c.

Seventhly, Four footed **Beasts**, whether they be proper or discoloured (that is varying from their natural colour) are no way dishonorable, but are to be esteemed more worthy, than either Foul, or Fish.

Eigthly, Amongst sensitives, the **Males** are more worthy bearing than the Female; in regard they do contain in them more worthy and commendable significations of Nobility, and Soveraignity.

Several kinds of Beast.

3. First Domestick, tame and labouring Beasts of the bigger sort, which are generally called, Cattle, are the **Bull** and **Cow**, **Horse** and **Mare**, **Ass** and **Mule**; **Camel**, and **Dromedary**.

Of the lesser Cattle, are the **Goats**, **Ram**, and **Ewe**, called Sheep; the **Boar** and **Swine**; **Dog**, and **Bitch**, **Cat**, **Talbot**, and **Grey-hound**.

Secondly, Savage Beast of the greater sort, are the **Lion**, **Leopard**, **Tyger**, **Panther**, **Linx**, **Bear**, **Wolf**, **Elephant**, **Rhinoceros**, **Unicorn**.

With Horns, are the **Buff**, **Bugle**, **Ibex**.

With branched Horns, are the **Elk**, **Rangifer**, or **Ratinger**, **Stag**, **Buck**, **Rowdeer**, **Antilope**.

Thirdly, Wild Beasts of the lesser sort, which are naturally wild and fearful, are the **Baboon**, **Ape**, **Marmoset**, **Fox**, **Hare**, **Rabbet**, **Catamountain**, **Civet-cat**, **Pole-cat**, **Hedge-hog**, **Porcupine**, **Marten**, **Sable**, **Ferret**, **Ermine**, **Fitchet**, **Weezel**, **Squirrel**, **Badger**, **Dormouse**, **Rat**, **Mouse**, **Shrew**, **Mole**.

Lastly, Beasts that live both in the Water and Land, are the **Otter**, **Beaver**, **Crocodile**, **Tortois**, **Toad**, **Frog**, **Ruddock**, **Lizard**, **Asker**.

Beasts may be distinguished by their several Shapes, Properties, Uses, Food, their Tameness, or Wildness, &c. into their several Classes, or Orders, as

First, whole footed Beasts, as

Horse,	Ass,	Camel
Mare,	Mule,	Dromedary.
Gelding,	Elephant	

Secondly, Cloven footed Beasts,

1. Such as have Horns, and chew the Cud, as

Bull	Elk	Buck
Cow	Urus	Reindeer
Oxe	Bison	Tarandus
Sheep	Bonasus	Roe Buck
Ram	Buffalus	Stone Buck
Ewe	Stepsiceros	Chamois.
Goat	Stagg	

2. Such as have Horns, and chew not the Cud, as

Rhinocerot	Unicorn	Antilope.

3. Such as chew the Cud, and are not Horned, as

Camelopard	Giraffa.

4. Such as are neither Horned, nor chew the Cud, as

Hog	Bore	Sow.
Swine		

Thirdly, Such as have Nails or Claws, as

1. Such as are not Rapacious, or Ravinous, as

Baboon	Ape	Drill

Mar-

Monkey	Sloth	Marmosit
Haut.		

2. Such as are of the Hare-kind, or be very Timerous and Fearful, as

Hare	Ginny Pigg	Musk Rat
Conney	Rat	Field Mouse
Rabbet	Mouse	Shew Mouse
Marmotto	Mole	Dormouse
Porcupine	Water Rat	Flitter-mouse
Helg-hog	Leming, or Norway Rat	Bat, a Mouse with Wings
Squirrel		

3. Such as are Rapacious, or of a Ravinous kind, and eat Flesh, as

Lion	Cat	Gennet
Bear	Civet Cat	Ermine
Tyger	Ferret	Stoat
Pard	Pole Catt	Weezel
Panther	Fitchet	Fulmort
Leopard	Martin	Gulo
Ounce	Sable	Hyæna.
Linx		

4. Such as are Amphibious, living both in Water, and on Land, as

Castor	Morse	Seal
Beaver	Sea Horse	Sea Calf.
Otter	Crocodile	

Fourthly, Such as are Rapacious, and are

1. Of the Dog kind, as

Dog	Fox	Grey
Bitch	Badger	Brock.
Wolf		

2. Such as go in great Troops together, or singly, as

Jackall	Armadillo	Caraguya
Ant-Bear	Tatus	Ape-fox.

3. Such as are for delight and Game, as

Lap Dogs	Spaniel	Beagles
Currs	Water Spaniel	Grey-hounds
Mastifs	Hounds	Lurchers
Mungrils	Blood-hounds	Tumblers.
Gase-Hound		

Fifthly, Such as are oviparous Beasts such as breed from Eggs, as

1. Such as have Feet, as

Tortoise	Leviathan	Salamander
Turtle	Senembi	Eft
Sea Tortoise	Iguana	Newt
Frog	Scink	Paddock
Tadpole	Lizard	Green Lizard
Crocodile	Chamelion	Facetan Lizard
Allegator	Water Salamander	Cordylus
Cayman		Chalcidica Lizard.

2. Such as Creep, having no Feet, as

Serpent	Adder	Blind-worm
Snake	Slow-worm	Worm in the flesh.
Viper		

3. Such as have Wings,

Dragon	Flying Serpent.

Observations in Beasts.

5. ALL four-footed Creatures are Ranged into two sorts, the greater sort, which brings forth but one yong one at a tyme, and that very seldome.

The Lesser sort brings forth more at a tyme, and that more oftner. These Creatures bring forth their yong alive, and feed them with milk of their Udder.

Their Covering is either, Haire, or Shagged locks, or Wooll, or Downy wooll, or Bristles, or Scales, or Naked Skin.

Their Feete are either Fingered, and Armed with Nails, Pownces, and Clawes: or Hoofed, and that either Solid, and whole Hoofed. or parted and Cloven.

Those that have Horns, and want their uper teeth, do Chew the Cud, who have foure Ventricles clos together, the Cud, the Pawnch, the Tripe, and the Cawle.

Beasts of the Woods and Forrests, are those of Venery, and that because such delight therein more then Plaines, therefore they are called *Silvarstres*. of which there are five kindes, as

The **Hart**, of which there is three sorts: For a **Stag** at the sixt yeare of his age is an Hart, or a **Hart tenner**.

The **Hart Royall**, is such as the King or Queene hath Hunted or Chosed, and he escapeth away with life.

The **Hart Royall Proclamed**, is such an Hart as hath escaped out of the Forrest, for which Proclamation is made in all Townes and Villages neere the place, that none shall kill, hurt, hunt, or chase him; but that he may safely return to the Forrest from where he came.

The **Hynd**, the **Hare**,
The **Wolfe**, the **Boare**,

Beasts of Chase are such as keepe the Fields and Hills in the day tyme, and feed in Corn-fields and Medowes in the night. therefore are called **Campestres**, as

The **Buck**, or **Fallow Deere**.
The **Doe**, The **Roe**,
The **Fore**, The **Badger**,
The **Harterne**, or the **Harton**,

6. I Have thought meet in this place to give a briefe note, or abstract, of such termes, and proper words, as I have odserved in Huntiug: And do belong either to Beasts of Venery, of Prey, or those for Servil uses. Of all which I shall speak in these severall *Classes*. as

First, The Proper terms given to **Beasts** when they are in **Companyes**.

Hares, 2 a Brase, 3 a Lease, or Brase & halse, more an Herd of Hares.

Conyes, 2 a Couple, 3 a Couple & halfe, if more a Game of Conyes, or a Nest of **Rabits**.

Fores, 2 a Brase, 3 a Lease, more a Litter or Stalke.

Deare, 2 a Brace, 3 a Lease, 20 the least to make an Heard of Deare.

Roe Deare, 6 makes an Heard or Beavie

Swine, 12 makes an Heard, or a Sounder, a Scoure, or a Singuler. But we say a Drift of **Tame Swine**.

Wolves, 12 makes a Route: some say 6 makes a Rout or Rowte.

Goates, a Tripp, **Wilde Goates**, an Heard.

Beares, a Slowth. **Marternes**, a Richesses.

Hounds, 2 a Couple, 3 a Couple & halfe: 16 a Kennell of Hounds, or a Mute: 20 a larg Kennell.

Grey Hounds, 2 a Brace, 3 a Leafe.

Oxen, 2 a Yoke, 3 a Yoke & halfe. Some say a Pair of Oxen or **Bulloks**. **Cows**, & **Oxen**, a Drove. or a Drove of Nete, or Cattle, or Beasts.

Horses, an Harrase. **Sheep**, a Flock.

Apes, a Swrednes. **Lipards**, a Leape.

Mules, a Labour. **Asses**, a Pace,

Cats, a Kindle, or a Wauling of Cats.

7 Termes or the **Names** given to Beasts according to the yeares of their **age**, as

An **Hart**, is called 1 yeare an Hind, or a Calfe, 2 a Brocket, 3 a Spayade or Spayde, 4 a Staggard, 5 a Stag 6 an Hart. But some are of an oppinion that he is not to be called an Hart, unlesse he be hunted by a Prince, And if he escape, an Hart Royall. se Sect: 4

A **Buck**, the 1 year a Fawn, 2 a Pricket, 3 a Sorrel, 4 a Sore, 5 a Buck of the first head, 6 a Buck, or Great Buck.

An **Hind**, 1 a Calfe, 2 a Brockets Sister, 3 a Hind.

A **Doe**, 1 a Fawne, 2 a Prickets Sister, 3 a Doe.

A **Goat**, 1 yeare a Kid, or Goatrill, & alway after a Goat. The **Wild Goat**, is 1 a Fawne. And the Buck-Goat being gelt makes a **Cheverell**.

An **Hare**, 1 a Leverett, and then an Hare, or an old Hare, or a Lusty Puss. But this last I looke upon but as a bastard terme.

A **Conie**, 1 a Rabett, & after an Old Cony.

Row Deer, 1 year a Kid, 2 a Girl, 3 a Hemuse, 4 a Row buck of the first head, 5 a fair Row-buck.

A **Boar**, 1 a Pig, 2 a Stearling, or Hog-stear, 3 a young Boar, or a Hogg, 4 a Boar, 5 a Singuler, or more properly a Sanglier, then a Sanglier chaceable, or a Boar of four years without refuss, then a Swine Royal.

A **Fox**, 1 year a Cubb, or a Fox Cubb (for that in all Beasts is to be understood the kind they are come off) and always after a Fox, and then an old Fox.

A **Badger**, 1 year a Whelp, or a Pigg, for Huntsmen use both these terms; and ever after a Badger, great and old.

A **Horse**, 1 a Fole, 2 a Filly, or Filly Fole, 3 a Colt, 4 a Horse; and old, a Stallion: being Gelt, a Gelding.

A **Bull**, or **Cow**, 1 a Calf, then a Sterk, 2 an Heifer, or Bullock, 3 a Bull or Cow, an **Ox** if gelded, a Seage, if but one stone.

A **Ram** or **Ew**, a Lamb, or Kid-Lamb. The **Ram**, being Gelt, is called a Weather, and a Bell-Weather, if with a bell.

A **Swine**, the Female of the Boar, 1 a Pig, or Grees, being weaned they are Shoots, 2 Runts, 3 Swine, being lib'd, spay'd, or splaid, (that is Gelt,) they are called Gauts and Barrow-hogs, a Gilt when a year old.

A **Martern**, 1 Martern Cub, 2 a Mertern, or Marton.

A **Lion**, a Whelp, or Lions Whelp, a young Lion, or Lioncel, a Lion, and an old Lion.

An **Ass**, the Fole of an Ass.

Terme for the several parts of the Body, and first for the Head.

8. An **Hart**, the Head, or the Attire, not the Horns of an Hart.

A **Buck**, the Head or the Attire of a Buck; well headed, is fair or large horned.

A **Row-Buck**, the Horns. Now these foresaid horns, or attires, have their several name for their several parts. As the part next the Head, the Burr; the knots about it, the Pearls; the main Horn, the Beam; the lower Tang, the Brow-Antlier; the next, the Sur-Antlier; the next, the Royal; and the next, the Sur-royal. The top with its branches; are called the Pawm, or Palm; or the head of two or three more Croches; Thus the Hart and Stag.

The **Buck**, is termed the Burr, the Beam, the branch, the Adventers, the Palm, and the Spelers. The Window, if a slit or opening be in the Palm.

A **Goat**, the horns are so termed, or wreaths, because there are certain wreaths or wrinkles about them in the root, that teach men to know the age of them.

A **Bulls** Horns with the Cows, hath the like wreaths.

A **Boar**, his Teeth are called Tushes, or Tusks; or his Gards, or Defenders.

An **Elephant** his Nose or Snout, is called, a Proboside, or Trunk.

Terms for the Belly.

9. In **Deer** called the Paunch or Interels. the Fat about it the Kell, or Caul, noombles, or umbles of a Deer, the Heart; Lights, Liver, with the appurtenances.

Hares Pauch.

Sheeps Belly, or Intrels, the puddings called strings, or Rope; the Heart, Lights, Live, called a Sheeps Pluck.

Calf, the Interels, the other a Mid-calf, the Stomach, the Runnet, or Rennish bagg.

Cat, the Puddings called Guts; though such are ofte made of Sheeps ropes.

Terms of Art for the Feet, and Footing.

An **Harts** foot is called, Claws, or Toes, their footing is called, slot, or portes.

A

A **Buck**, and all Fellow Deer, Dew-Claws; the Footing is called the view.

A **Goat**, the footing, the Breaking, which is also a good term for an Harts footing, which if it be in the grass, is termed; Foiling is not well discerned.

A **Boar**, hinder Claws, Gards, the Tract or Treading, the hinder feet have Plates or wrinkles, by which his Age is known, a plate for a year.

A **Hare**, in running, when she is in a plain field, she Soreth; and when she casteth about to deceive the Hounds, she Doubleth: when she beateth an hard high way when her footing is not perceived, then she Pricketh: Also in tyme of Snow we say, the Trace of an Hare.

A **Fox**, & all such Vermine, their feete are so called, and they have no other term, but Footing, when he Holes, he raiseth a Mould.

An **Otter**, their treade is called Markes, or the Marches of an Otter.

A **Lion**, & **Beare**, and all such Savage Creatures, their feet are termed Paws, and footing Walks.

A **Rabbit**, or **Coney**, their formost feete are Wings, If they scrape or play on the ground with their fore feete, then she Pateth or Beateth: If she siteth on her Breech, she Squateth: when she digs into the earth, she Sinks her Burrow, or Burroweth her selfe.

All **Sheepe**, the feete are called Trotters or Trottles. their footing is the Tract or Treading of Sheep.

A **Bull**, **Ore**, or **Cow**, their feete art called Neats feete. An **Horse**, the Hoofe.

Terms used for the Fat of several Beasts.

11. DEer of all kind their Fatt is called, Sewett: or Deers Greace, if melted.

A **Roe-Deere**, onely of all Deere, the fat is called, Beavie-Greace.

A **Boar**, **Fox**, & **Badger**, it is called Greace.

An **Hog**, or **Swine**, called Grease, if Rendered or melted, Larde: if hung & dried, Bacon.

A **Bull**, & **Cow**, its called both Sewet, & Tallow. If of a **Calfe**, Veale Sewett.

All **Sheepe**, & **Goats**, it's Sewet, or Mutton Sewett.

An **Hare**, it's called by both names, as Greace, or Tallow.

A **Beare**, & all Beasts of Prey, their fatt is termed, either Grease, or Fatt.

The terms used for the Tails of several sorts of Beast of Chase and Prey.

12. AN **Hart**, its called, a Taile, a **Buck**, **Roe**, or any other Deere, it is called a Shingle, or Syngle. a **Goat**, the Taile.

A **Boare**, the Wreath.

An **Hare**, & **Cony**, the Skutt, or Scutte.

A **Fox**, his Bush: or Holly water Sprinkle.

A **Wolfe**, his Stearne, And so the taile of the **Grey-Hound**, & **Hound**, is termed, his Stearne.

An **Horse**, his Dock, or Crupper.

The Stones and Yard.

A **Buck**, **Stag**, **Rame**, & **Goate**, the are called his Doulcets, or Dousetts, and Pissell.

A **Bull**, his Codds, and Pissell. of all other Beasts termed generally Testicles, or Stones, Prick, or Yard.

Terms due and proper for the Ordure and Dung of several Beasts,

13. ANd the reason why Masters of Chase take notice of them, is because by their Ordure, or Excrements, they know their places of Feeding; And somtyme being constrained to talke thereof, it is fit the same should be given forth in their peculiar termes, according to Art.

An **Hart**, and all **Deere**, the Ordure is termed, Fewmets, or Fewmishing.

A **Hare** and **Goat**, it is called Crotising, or Crottrels, or Croteys, Crotizing.

A **Boare**, it is called Lesses, And so of the **Beare**.

A **Fox**, and **Badgar**. & such other like Vermine it is called the Fyaunts, or Feauce, Fiantes.

An **Otter**, its called the Spraynts.

Sheepe, & **Goats**, they are termed Drtppings: but of the **Wild Goate**, the Fewment.

A **Muse-Cate**, the Cyvet, or Muske.

An **Hound**, **Greyhound**, and all sorts of the **Dog** kind, its called, Skommer, or Skomber.

Bull and **Cow**, Shorn.

Horse and **Mare**, Dung, or Muck, from Manuring ground with it.

Terms used for the Engendring of several sorts of Creatures, with 4 Feet.

14. A **Buck**, or **Hart**, when engendreth with the Doe, or Hind: We say, they go to the Rut; or it is Ruting time for Deer, the act of engendring is termed Vaulting.

A **Row-Deer**, goeth to his Tourn.

A **Boar**, goeth to his Brime, the **Sow** goes a Briming, the **Boar** Brimeth.

An **Hare** and **Coney**, goeth to the Buck, or Bucketh; the She taketh Buck, or Knot.

A **Fox**, goeth on Clycketing; is Bagged, when with Cub, or Young.

A **Badger**, as the Boar, Brimeth.

A **Wolf**, seeketh his Make, or Match; or goeth on Clicketting; and Lineth like a Dog.

An **Otter**, hunteth for his Kind, or goes Salt.

A **Dog** and **Bitch**, when that she is Proud, Jolly, or Asalt, or goeth Salt, the Dog Lineth her, Strains her.

A **Bull**, Bulleth the **Cow**, when that she is a Bulling.

A **Bear** goeth to his Make, engendreth Face to Face, contrary to all other four-footed Beasts.

A **Horse** Leapeth the **Mare**, and Covereth the Mare.

A Ram, Rutteth or Rammeth the Ewe, or Leapeth the Ewe, when she is a Rutting; the Ram Blessoms, is Tupping of the Ewe.

A Cat goeth a Catter-wauling, and in Engendring (contrary to other Males) the He stands still over the She, and the She moveth.

Terms used to several Beasts, about the bringing forth their Young, and how they are called Being on their Dames, or while they are Sucking; that is of such four-footed Beasts, as bring forth more than one.

15. AN Hind, bringing forth Yong, is said to Calf; the Hynd Calveth.

A Doe, Fawneth. The **Rain-Deer** Fawneth.

A Coney, Kindleth a Litter, or Nest of Rabbets, or Kindlings.

A Sheep, or Ewe, Yeaneth, or Droppeth her Lamb. Some say Lambeth, a Sucking Lamb; a Kade Lamb, if fed without the help of the Ewe.

A Goat, the Female of a Goat, she Yeaneth, a Kid, or a Kid of the Goat.

A Swine or **Sow**, Farroweth; the young ones are called, a Farth, a Farow of Pigs.

An Hare,

A Bitch, Whelpeth; and the Young are called a Litter of Whelps, or Puppies.

An Hound, whelpeth Whelpes; the yong are called, a Litter of Hounds.

A Fox, Bringeth forth, or Littereth: a Litter of Cubs or Fox Cubbs.

A Cat, Kittleth: a Litter of Kittleings.

A Cow, Calveth, a Suckling Calf, or a Kid Calf.

A Boar, a Den of Cubs.

An Otter,

A Badger, a of Pigs, a Badger Pig.

A Wolf, a of Whelps, or Cubs.

A Mare, Foleth, a Fole, or Filly, or Colt.

A Lioness, Lionseth, a Lioncell, or Lions Whelp.

A Rat, or Mouse, a Nest of young Rats and Mice.

Terms of Art and Science, which our Fore-fathers have used for the distinguishing of the Voices of several Four-footed Beasts.

16. AN Hart, when he sendeth forth his Cry, is said to Bellow; the Hart Belloweth.

An Horse, Neyeth, or Whinnyeth.

A Buck, Groyneth, or Growneth.

A Roe-Buck, Belleth. a Lion, Roareth.

A Goat, Rattleth, or Rotteleth.

A Gelded Goat, Muttereth.

A Boar, Freameth, or Grunteth.

An Hog, Grumteth, or Whineth

An Hare, and Cony, Beateth, or Tappeth, Cryeth like a Child, Squeaketh, Squealeth.

A Fox, Barketh. or Yelps. And when it seeks the Dog Fox, she Howleth.

A Dog Barketh, & Baugheth, being smitten Yelpeth being angry, Grineth and Snarleth. a Whelpe, Cryeth or Whinceth.

A Badger, Shriketh. a Ferret, Whineth.

A Cat, Maueth, and Purreth.

A Weesil, a Sable, a Martyn, Squaketh.

An Elke, Gruntleth. an Otter, Whineth.

A Wolfe, Barketh, and Howleth.

An Hound, hath different noises, for which Huntsmen have several termes, For Hounds they say; Calls on, Bawls, Bables, Cryeth, Yearnes, Lapiseth, Ploddeth, and Bays, with such like.

A Bull, Belloweth, and Roareth. a Cow, Loweth.

A Ram, Belleth, A Sheep, Bleateth, or Beaeth. And a Calfe, is said to Bleat,

An Asse, Braeth, or Brays.

A Rat, Squeleth, or Squaketh. Also the Mouse, is said to Squeake, or Chirp.

A Beare, Grumbleth, and Roars.

A Baboon, Whizeth, hath a Shrill Whizing.

A Panther, Cauteth, which word is taken from the sound of his voice.

A Lynx, Croaketh, and Whineth.

An Elephant, Crayeth.

Terms of Art used for the Resting, or Lodging of several Beasts, with the Terms also of their Rising, or Putting up.

17. A Hart, is Harboured when Lodged. Unharboured when Raised from his Resting place.

A Buck, is Lodged,, or lyeth in his Laire. Dislodged, or Rowsed.

A Roe Deere, Beddeth. we seek & find a Roe.

A Hare, in his Forme, or Musett. Start an Hare.

A Cony, Burroweth. Bolt a Cony, or Rabbet. & both the Hare, and Cony. (we say) doth Sit, & Squat.

A Boare, Coucheth in his Den, or Hold. And when he is raised, he Reareth.

A Fox, is Kenneled, or Couched. Vnkennel a Fox

A Badger, Eartheth, or Holeth. Dig a Badger, is to drive him out of his hole.

A Marterne, and Wild Catt, we Tree. And Baye them, when we put them from the same.

An Otter, We watch. And Vent him, when we disturb him. He forsaketh his Couch; if out of water.

A Wolfe, we Traine; when we Lodg him. And Raise the Wolfe, to hunt him.

A Beare, In his Den. Rouse the Beare.

A Lion, Coucheth in is Den. Rouse the Lion.

A Bull, and Cow, are Housed. The Cattle are Driven forth off the Cow-house. an Ox is Stalled,

An Horse, Is Stabled in his Stall; or the Horse is in his Litter. Draw the Horse out off the Stable.

All Sheep, are either Coated, or Housed, in winter; Else Foulded, in the Fields in Summer; If on the Mountains or Commons, they are said, to Lie Downe. Vncoat, Vnfould, Call in, or Gather the Sheep.

Terms of Art generally used by Huntsmen for Hunting of any Chase.

18. **Hunt** the Hart, Buck or Doe.
Hunt the Fox, the Wolf, the Boar.
Chase the Hart.
Course the Hare, that is with Grey-hounds.
Hunt the Hare with Hounds.
Ferret the Rabbets and Coneys.

Seasons for all Beasts to be Hunted, and Chased.

19. The **Hart** or **Stagg**, **Buck**, and **Goat**, is in Season from *Midsummer*, until *Holy-Rood* Day.
The **Row**, from *Easter* to *Michaelmas*.
The **Hind**, **Doe**, **Swine**, **She-Goat**, when their Males cease, then they begin to be in Season.
The **Hare**, from *Michaelmas* to *Midsummer*.
A **Bear** from *May* to *December*.
A **Fox**, and **Wolf**, from *Holy-Rood* till *Lady-day*.
An **Otter**, from *Shrovetide* till *Midsummer*.
Coneys, are always in Season, either young or old.

Terms used for the Flaying, Stripping, and taking these Beasts of Chase out of their Skins.

20. A **Hart** and all Deer is Flain, and yet Hunts-men will say, take off that Deers Skin.
A **Hare** is Stripped; so is the **Boar**.
A **Coney** is Cased.
A **Fox**, **Badger**, and all other Vermin are Cased, or Un-cased more proper.
A **Horse** is Flayed.
A **Bull**, **Cow**, or **Sheep**.
A **Sheep** is and Fleeced, when the Wool is Sheered.

Beasts as feed upon and eat Grass, and Hay, and Herbs; or such things as the Earth brings forth without any Labour, as

21. The Horse & Mare
The Ass, and wild Ass
The Camel
The Elephant
The Bull and Ox
The Ure Ox
The Bison
The Ram and Ewe
The Bonasus
The Bugle, or Bubalus
The Stepsiceros
Sheep with broad Tails
The Goat, and Rock-Goat
The Ibex, or Ibeck
The Gazel
The Elk or Alces
The Buck & Stag Deer
The Rainger
The Roe-Deer
The wild Goat
The Rhynoceros
The Camel Operdale
The Hare
The Rabbet, or Coney
The Alpine Mouse or Marmote.

Beasts as feed upon Fruit, Roots, and Insects.

The Bear & Sow
The Ape & Baboon
The Marmoset, or Monkey
The Pigratia, or Sloth
The Dormouse
The Hedg-hog & Porcupine
The Squirrel
The Guinny-Pig
The Tatus, or Armadillo
The Tortoise.

Beasts that feed upon Flesh.

The Lion
The Bear
The Tyger
The Pardus
The Lynx, or Ounce
The Cat
The Civet-Cat
The Rat & Mouse
The Pole-cat
The Martin and Ferret.
The Weezel and Ermine
The Indian Mouse or Stoat
The Leopard
The Badger, or (Gray
The Dog
The Wolf
The Fox.

Beasts that feed upon Fish, and sometimes Flesh.

The Otter
The Crocodile
The Bever
The Sea Tortoise.

Terms used for the Feeding, and the Food eaten by several Beasts of Prey, and Venery.

22. **Buck**, **Stag**, and all Deer of Chase, when they eat are said to Feed, if it be in Meadows, or Closes; if otherwise he Browseth.
Bull or **Cow**, Graseth or Pastureth; his feed is Pasture, but in the Winter it is called Hay, or Fodder; then he Foddereth.
Lyon and **Bear**, Preyeth; yet some will term a Bear Feeding. Though all call their Food, a Prey, and their feeding Raping.
Boar and **Swine** are said to Rout, or be Routing, or Worming, if they break into Gardens, Orchards, Closes, or Pastures; but if they be in open Grounds on Heaths and Fearny Places, they are Fearning. But if they root not in the earth, but eat things above ground, as Herbs, then they grase; but all other Meats as Acorns, Apples, Pease, and the like, then they are said to be Mowsing or Feeding.
Hare, at his Relief.
Goat, Browseth; if eating of Bushes, or things which grow as high as her head, then Brouseth on such or such a thing.
Horse and **Mare**, graseth; in the VWinter Foddereth, feedeth at the Rack and Manger.
Sheep, at their Lear. Some say Feeding or Grasing.

The several Names that the Males of four-footed Beasts have with the Females.

23. A **Lyon**, a **Lyoness**; and so the **Leopard**, a **Leopardess**.
A **Bear**, a **She-Bear**.
A **Buck**, a **Doe**; and the **Coney** is called a Buck and Doe.

A

A Stag, or Hart; a Hind.

A Dog, a Bitch; a Dog-hound, a Bitch-hound or a Hound Bitche; and so of a Fox and Wolf.

A Boar, a Sow, or Swine; a Gaut, from their Splaying, or Gelding.

A Badger, or Boar-pigg of a Badger, a Sow of a Badger.

A Horse, a Mare; a Gelding, from the Cutting away of his Stones.

A Goat, a Geat.

A Ram, a Ewe, or Sheep; a Weather, when Gelded, or Libbed.

A Bull, a Cow, or Nete; a Ox, from the cutting away of his Stones.

A Ferret, the Hob the male, Ginn or Jinn, the female.

Diseases incident to four-footed Beasts of Prey; as in Dogs, &c.

24. MAdness, of which there are several sorts; as Burning Madness, Rumble-Madness, Dumb Madness, Falling Madness, Sleeping Madness, Rewmatick, or the Slavering Madness.

Mange, Tettars, Ring-worms, Scabs, Wolf, Ticks, or Canker in a Dog's ear and Stone.

Worms, greedy Worms that keep the Dogs from thriving.

Sun-bested, is a Sorenes of the Feet through Travel.

They that desire further Instructions in the Terms of Hunting, let them peruse a Book, Intitled, The Noble Art of Venery, and Hunting; *which will give them satisfaction to their Desires.*

The complent Gentleman, by Peckham.

An Essay towards a Universal Character, by J. Wilkins, D. D. *Dean of* Ripon.

25. NOw to the end that Rules and Observations formerly set down, may receive both Life and Warrant by Presidents; I will now Exemplifie them in their Order. First for whole Beasts.

I. He beareth Gules, a Lion Rampant, Argent, if there be more than one Lion in a Coat (saith *Leigh, pag.* 44.) they are not termed Lions, but Lioncels: Which is as much as to say young or petty *Lions*, or *Lions Whelps*. But this rule must be understood with a certain limitation in some particular cases (saith *Gwilliams, fo.*193.) for it holdeth not good in our Soveraigns Ensigns, where they are *Lions, propter dignitatem Regiæ Majestatis*. Again this Rule hath no place in Coat-Armours wherein any of the Ordinaries are interposed between these Beasts; for by such interposition, every *Lion* is reputed to be of as great Dignity, as if he were born dividedly in so many several Escochions. But in my Judgment, by this term the honour of the bearing is much eclipsed. therefore as an indifferent rule, I think it may be as indifferently used, *de Leighs Accidence*: p. 48 where the are Blazoned only Lions, And *Saltmarsh* in his *Analysis*. p 57 will have them termed noe other but Lions in all coates let the number be two or more.

Per Bend sinister Er and Ers. The like O born by the name of *Mostyn* of *Mostyn*.

G a Lyon Rampant and Bordure Endented O born by *Tudyr Mawr*.

O a *Lyon* Rampant G born by *Bleddyn ap Kinhyn*.

Er. the same B by *Elider ap Rees Sais*.

Er. the like S born by *Kenarick ap Rhywallon*.

B the like parted Per Fesse O and A a Bordure A by *Kariadock Veichfras*.

V the like O born by *Sandde Hard*, or *Sandeff Hard*.

A the like S born by *Owen Borgentyn*.

Per Fesse S and A the like counterchanged by *Egnius Evell*.

B a *Lyon* Rampant A *Eustace* Baron of *Mountalto* in *Chshire*.

B the like A Semy de Lis O by *Pool* of *Pool*.

G a *Lyon* Rampant O head and mane A is born by *Grace* of *Newland*.

☞ In the Blazoning of the Lyon, you may add, Armed and Langued; but because no *Lyons* (or any other kind of Creatures) are otherways born, but with Claws and Tongues, you may if you please omit the phrase. However observe this, that in the Arming of a Lyon (or other Beast) if either the Field, or Charge be Gules, then they ought to be made *Azure*; and if of any other colour or metal; they ought, and must always be made Gules, else it is not held to be good Armory.

II. He beareth Sable, a *Lyon* Saliant, Or. It is said to be Saliant when his head tendeth to the Dexter corner, and he is (as it were) falling upon his prey. *Gwilliams, fol.*139. saith, The proper form is, when the right fore-foot answereth that corner, and the hindermost in the sinister Base; but that best suiteth to the posture of a Lion Rampant, as in these two figures appeareth. This is born by *St. Armall*.

O the like G born by *Felbridge*.

A a *Lyon* Rampant, or Saliant Incensed G born by *Ire*; it is said to be incensed, or in a Rage, when the end of his Tail lyeth on his side, *number* 12.

III. He beareth Or, a *Lyon* passant Gules. Those Beasts are said to be passant, when the right foot is lifted up, as *numb.* 56. or Passant Rampant, as *numb.* 57.

IV. He beareth Azure, a *Lyon* Argent. Some affirm that the *Lyon* in a standing posture (as *numb.* 43.) ought not to termed Passant; for standing, it is his natural posture; and all other Beasts in this posture, are seldom or never mentioned to be passant, but the beast named, and no more; and why not then the *Lyon*? Let this Leave to better judgments whether needful, or not; some have termed this a Lyon Statant, or standing.

And as touching the Orderly placing of the Feet of Animals either in their going or standing; this is a general Rule in Armory, that the right foot must be placed foremost, *Quia dextra pars est principium motus*. And withal it is the most noble part in regard of its strength and being more active than the other. After which gradually place the left foot, and then the hinder foot on the right

P M Thomæ Delues. de Dodington Baronetti Hæc dedicata est.

right side, and lastly, as coming after all, place the hinder foot on the left side, as the several examples in this Plate doth manifest.

O the like G born by *Games*; and also by *Hames*.

S the like gardant A honored or crowned O born by *Disle*.

V. He beareth Azure, a **Lion Dormant, or sleeping**, Or. Some term him Vigilant or Watching, as it were for his Prey; it is said, that the Lion sleepeth with his eyes open. A Lion lurking. The natural colour of the Lion is yellow tawney, the white, red and black being exorbitant, yet in Heraldry honorable. This is born by the name of *Dorman*.

O 3 such in Pale S born by *Meredith ap Jermorth*.

☞ Lions, Bears, Wolves, Tygers, Leopards, and other Beasts of a ravening kind, when they are born in Arms feeding, are termed in Blazon **Raping**, terming the posture they are in, as also the thing they rape upon. And if you speak of their Teeth, or Tallons or Claws, you shall say they are thus or thus **Armed**; and if you speak of their Tongues, you shall say they are thus or thus **Langued**.

And to bear a living Creature in colour, or in action diverse from nature (saith *Gwillim, fol.* 165.) may be born commendably; but to bear the same repugnant or contrary to nature, is holden disgraceful, or rather is condemned as false Armory, and therefore not worthy of Bearing.

VI. He beareth Sable, a **Lion Couchant**, Or; that is, when he lyeth down upon his four leggs. By the name of *Crouch*.

G the like O being the Ensign of the Tribe of *Judah*.

S 6 such A born by *Bateman*.

O 2 Lions couchant in Pale G born by *Pederwine*.

VII. He beareth Azure, a **Lion seiant**, Argent; that is, when he sitteth on his Breech, and standeth upon his forefeet. By the name of *Counseller*.

G 3 such A born by *Pladerdine*.

VIII. He beareth Gules, **a Lion seiant in his Majesty**, Or; holding in his right Paw **a Sword**, proper; and in his left **a Mound**, Azure. This upon an Imperial Crown is the Crest of the Kingdom of *Scotland*.

Out of a Crown, a demy Lion gardant in **full aspect** holding up both feet G between two Wings A is the Crest of *Van Martorf*.

On a Coronett a Lion seiant in his Majesty or full aspect G in each Paw 3 ears of Corn, or Reed Spear heads S born by *Van Bleschwitz*.

B such a Lion O holding a Key and a Flower de lis A by *Van Burtenbach*.

On a Coronett a Lion seiant in his Majesty, holding out his Paws S between two Wings A is the Crest of *Flandern*. Some term either a Lion or any other Beast standing thus, to be **displaid**; see *chap.* 9. *numb.* 3. and *chap.* 13. *numb.* 63.

IX. He beareth Or, **a Lion rampant gardant**, Azure. He is said to be gardant when he sheweth his full face. The *French* term this **a Lion Leopard**, or **a Leopard Lion**. By the name of *Leonard*.

B such a Lion and Field semy de lis A born by *Holland*.

This Lion, or in any other posture, if crowned with a Coronett is termed a Lion (in such or such a posture) **honored**, naming the colour of the Crown, and no otherwise anciently, though now we say crowned.

X. He beareth Gules, **a Lion rampant regardant**, Or. That is when he looketh backwards; yet *Topsel, fol.* 160. informs us that the Lion cannot look back, because his Neck is but one Bone, without joints, like as a Wolf and Hyena, having no knuckles or turning joints in it called the *Spondyli*. This is Born by *Robins*.

Others in respect of the outward turning of the Tail, which is contrary to all other Lions tails, they generally in the end turning inward to the Back, do Blazon it thus, a Lion rampant regardant, the tail reverberant or beaten back, or reboundant, as having beaten it to his back, and it hath rebounded again from thence.

Now as touching the diversion of the Lions tail, it is a token of his placability and tractableness; but the inversion of his Tail, is a note of his Wrath and Fury, especially if he beat his Back therewith.

XI. He beareth Sable, a **Lion rampant diffamed**, Argent. This is termed diffamed, because he is getting out of the Field (as it were) not daring to look his Enemy in the Face. If he looked back, being in this posture, he is termed a **Lion rampant diffamed, looking back**.

XII. He beareth Vert, a **Lion rampant regardant coward**, Or.

☞ The Lion and all other Beasts with long tails, in what posture soever they be (except dormant, seiant and couchant) if they cast their tails between their hinder legs thus, have the addition of coward added to them in their Blazoning.

Per pale G and O a Lion rampant, tail between his hinder legs, and reflected between his fore feet, and so to the back of his head counterchanged. By the name of *Schetzell Zur Merx-Haysen*.

The tail **resignant**, is when the same is lost or gone, hath no tail, or maketh no shew of a Tail.

The tail **percussed**, when lying on his back or side, as if he were beating and striking himself therewith; see *numb.* 2.

XIII. He beareth Argent, **a Lion ramping cowardly**, Vert; this Lion assaulteth his Enemy, but it is fainthly, not with courage and vigour; which is seen by letting his tail fall and drag between his legs. Some term this a Lion rampant, the tail **descendant**. The Lion thus, Purpure, is born by the name of *Romch*.

XIV. He beareth Sable, **two Lions rampant**, Argent. By the name of *Mull*, alias *Moile*, of *Ruthen*.

☞ Being rampant you need say no more, for all things that extend themseves in height, are ever set Fesse-wise; but if their extention be in breadth, then such things (except they exceed two) are set Palewise, that is one above another, and no mention of Pale-wise, as in the examples, *numb.* 18, 19, 21.

XV. He

XV. He beareth Gules, two **Lions rampant combatant**, Or. By the name of *Wycombe*. If these Lions were of contrary Colours or Metals; then you must add the Dexter Argent, and the Sinister, Or; else of such and such a colour; *Gwillim fol.* 198. terms them **Lioncels combatant**; but I rather adhere to *Carter, pag.* 57. who saith when **Combatant** they are Lions as it were striving for the Mastery; if set otherwise, as in the next, then to be called **Lioncels**.

XVI. He beareth Vert, two **Lions rampant endorsed**, Argent. These Lions thus back to back, are born several ways, as **rampant gardant endorsed, rampant regardant endorsed, rampant endorsed,** with their tails **wreathed**. Some term these **Dors an Dors**, that is back to back.

As these two examples of **rampant combatant** (or **Respectant** termed in some other Beasts) and **rampant endorsed** are; so you shall use the same terms if they be **passant, saliant, couchant,** &c. examples of such bearings I need not manifest, these being sufficient to instruct the Ingenious. This is born by *Wilbroughton*.

Per pale G and O 2 such counterchanged. Born by *Williams*.

B 2 endorsed O born by *Achilles*, a *Grecian*, at the Siege of *Troy*.

O 2 combatant G born by *Wycomb*.

B 2 Lions combatant O born by *Carter*, Author of the *Analysis of Honour*.

A 2 Lions endorsed, their tails wreathed G is born by the name of *Van Rechberg*.

A 2 lions rampant endorsed upon a Cock Boat, the tails wreathed, the ends dismembred (or cut off) G born by the name of *Muzck*.

XVII. He beareth Argent, a **Lion rampant**, Sable; **collared** and **chained**; Or. Born by *Phillips*.

Gwillim, fol. 266. terms this Lion collered, and a chain flexed and reflexed over his back, *&c.* which needs not, for if either a chain, or lease, be fixed thus to the collar of any Beast or Bird, or any other Creature; it is ever thus cast between the fore feet, or under the Belly, and then over the Back, whether they be rampant, passant, or statant.

Sometimes in a **passant** or **statant** posture, the chain or lease is under their feet, or between their fore-feet, or over their back, and between the hinder feet, in such cases it is necessary to use the terms, how and after what manner the chain or lease goeth; see more of this, *numb.* 56. in the following chapter.

If there be any other thing about any Creatures Neck (that is no collar) as a Garland, Crown, Scarf or Lambeaux, *&c.* then they are said to be **gorged with a Crown**, or **gorged with a Garland** of such and such flowers, *&c.* and not to say collared with a Crown, or the like.

XVIII. He beareth Argent, two **Lions passant**, Gules. Here the extention or length of the charge being broader than high, they are ever placed one over the other; and as in this, so all other Bearing, either of Beasts, Birds, or Fish, are to be set thus, and are no otherwise termed in Blazoning; see *Gwillim, fol.* 267. and *Leigh, pag.* 48. This is born by *Strainge*, Lord of *Knocking*, and quartered by the Lord *Strange*, Earl of *Derby*.

O 2 such B born by *Somery*.

All Lions passant have generally their Tails drawn bending outwards, or extended, which extention befits his Regal Authority.

XIX. He beareth Sable, two **Lions Counterpassant** the upper towards the sinister side, Argent. Born by *Glegge* of *Gayton*.

The same collared G born by *Glegg* of *Grange*.

This is Blazoned two Lioncells, the one passant, the other repassant; but such should remember that the higher is the repassant, and therefore should have named it first.

XX. He beareth Argent, **three Lions passant**, Gules. Some term these three Lions two and one, as if they did thereby shew how they were set in the Escochion.

But this is ever to be noted, that when 3 things, of what kind soever they are; if they be thus set triangular, they need no other addition in Blazoning, to shew their places, for they are ever so set; but if they be otherwise disposed in the Field, then to mention how they are, as in the next example. This is born by the name of *Lionell*.

B a Fesse waved between three such O born by *Hawes* or *Harys*.

XXI. He beareth Gules, three **Lioncels in Pale passant**, Argent. *Gwillim, fol.* 193. 424, 425. terms them **passant in Pale Barrways**, and in other places, **passant in Pale** only, but according to the rule given in *numb.* 14. and 18. these might as well be termed only three Lions passant (especially in His Majesties Coat of *England*) where the extention being broad, signifies them to be set on high, one above another. This is born by the name of *Fitz-Paine*.

A 3 such regardant G born by *Howel Dda*.

B 3 such A born by *Canvile*.

G 3 such gardant, the Coat of the Kingdom of *England*. Where you may note, that where any **Lion gardant** is **passant**, O in a field G it may be called a **Lion of England**, saith Mr. *Morgan, lib.* 3. *fol.* 23.

XXII. He beareth Gules, **a demy lion rampant**, Argent. After this manner you will find Lions passant, Lions passant gardant, *&c.* which are to be termed demy lions, or half lions, as being cut off by the middle, and so of other Beasts. This is termed a Lion dimidiated, that is, cut off by the middle. By the name of *Dandelion*.

O such a demy lion G born by *Mallary*.

XXIII. He beareth party per Fesse, Sable and Argent, a **Lion rampant issuant**, Or. The like to this, from the bottom score of a Chief or Fesse, I have seen several Coats with **Lions issuant**, thus. This is not a demy lion, but a Lion issuing or coming out of the bottom of the partition per Fesse, or the bottom of a Chief or Fesse. After this manner must all other Animals be Blazoned, that issue from the bottom of any of the Ordinaries. This term is mistaken by *Leigh*, who calls it **Naissant**, and by *Boswell* **Jessant**.

XXIV. He beareth Azure, a **Lion rampant issuant**, Sable; on a Chief, Or. Some will name the Chief first, as on a Chief, Or, a **Lion issuant**, else with a **Lion issuant rampant**, Born by the name of *Markham*.

G on a Hill a demy Hind, or an Hind issuant, O by *Van Hunderberg*. so termed as if the thing did issue out of the place where it is.

In the base of this Square or Quarter, is another posture of a Lion, which as it was delivered me I thus Blazon, Gules, a Lion sciant, with his right Paw held up, Argent. By the name of *DAWKS*. Some term it his right Paw erected or extended, or elevated, see *numb.* 27. from thence I may give it another term, as sciant ramping with his dexter Paw, or his dexter Paw rampant, *&c.*

The like Lion sciant, the dexter rampant A Crowned B is the Crest of *Hammer* of *Fenns*.

XXV. He beareth Or, a Fesse Sable, a **Lion rampant Naissant**, Gules. This Lion is termed **Naissant**, because he seems to proceed from the middle of the Fesse and go into the Field, *quasi nunc esset in nascendo*; as if he were coming out of the Womb into the wide World. This form of Blazoning is peculiar to all living things that shall be found issuing out of the middle of any Ordinary or Common Charge, and enters into the Field as this doth. Yet *Carter* Blazons this, out of the middle of a Fesse, a **demy lion rampant naissant**. Born by the name of *Emme*.

XXVI. He beareth Gules, a Chief, Azure, a **Lion Rampant Jessant**, Or. This term Jessant (from the Latine word *jacio*, to cast) as being cast over all the Field and Chief: (Some write it Gessant) and is so termed when any Creature surmounts, or is over any of the honourable Ordinaries; though many Blazoners do term him a **Lion** (or the like) **over all**, or a **Lion rampant surmounting**, or **surmounted** with a **Lion rampant**. This is born by the name of *Jessel*.

B Chief G such a Lion his tail forked O born by *Hastang*.

O chief V the Lion G born by *Aston*.

XXVII. He beareth party per pale, Gules and Azure, a Pallet Argent, on the dexter side three **demy Lions passant, fixed**, Or; on the second a **Lion rampant sciant**, Argent. They might be demy Lions, and yet not fixed, but by that term we understand that they are joined to the Pallet, as if they were coming from under it. This is of some Blazoned three **Lions passant issuant**, as if they were coming from the Pallet; but that would have been more proper if they had been upon a Pale or pallet; however take it for no mist Blazon.

If the Field had been all one colour (as it should have been) and no Palet; then you should have said, Azure, three **demy Lions passant** on the **dexter side**, Or. Yet *Leigh*, *pag.* 48. terms them only demy Lions, and yet sets them on that side, as if they were whole in the Field, and yet but the foreparts remaining, all the hinder parts cut away, which is contrary to the example of a demy Lion given by *Gwillim*, *fol.* 199. who placeth it near the middle of the Field, where they ought to be, except any other charge hinder them; as for example, a **demy Lion** between three **Cross Crosletts**, born by *Bennet*. A demy Lion between three Roses and a Chief, by *Virons*: with many such like Coats, where the demy Lion cannot be any where else but in the middle.

A a Lion rampant and sciant S is born by *Nemenburger*; as also by *Hohenhamser*.

XXVIII. He beareth Argent, a **Lion issuant, et issuant**; (or **issuant and revertant**) Sable; as if he were issuing or coming into the Field in the Base part, and going out again in the Chief part: *Leigh*, *pag.* 49. terms this a Lion jessant & jessant, but it was his oversight in the term.

XXIX. He beareth Azure, a **Lion rampant double queue**, (or **double quevied**) Or. This Lion hath several terms for his double tail, as the **tail forked, queue forked, double tufted**, and **double tailed**. The Tail I find born in Arms double quevied these several ways as in the next examples. This Coat is born by the name of *Doubletaile*.

S the like O born by *Kingstone*.

A the like S born by *Cressy*.

A the like S crowned O born by my Friend *Sylvanus Morgan*, Author of the *Sphere of Gentry*.

XXX. He beareth Or, a **Lions tail forked and wreathed**, Gules; it is also termed **twisted** or **platted**. This is born by *Elseger*, an *Italian*.

XXXI. He beareth Sable, a **Lions tail nowed** (or **renowed**, else **newed**) in the form of a Knot (or true Love Knot) Argent. If this were also double tufted, then it is termed Newed in true Loves Knot and forked, or double quevied. This is the Coat Armour of *Quevie*.

XXXII. He beareth Argent, a **Lions tail forked** and **nowed** (or **knotted**, or **fretted** one over the other,) Sable. But the most proper term for this, is that used by the *French* Heraulds, who call it a **double queue furchee**; or a **double tail furcher**. By the name of *Monsieur de Nerveng*.

And a Lion with both tail ends Nowed, as *numb.* 31. Sable, the Field A is born by *Mountpesson*.

XXXIII. He beareth Gules, a **Lion rampant**, Argent, the **head, feet**, and **tail**, Sable. Born by the name of *Nsmane*.

V the Lion A head, feet and tail G born by *Gwrystan ap Gwayth Voed*, a great Warrier in *Wales*, who after took upon him Holy Orders, and so turned his Lion from Red to White.

XXXIV. He beareth Argent, a **Lion rampant**, Gules, clothed in a **Friers Jacket**, Sable. Born by the name of *Loonfer*.

G a Wolf rampant in the like A is born by *Trance*.

XXXV. He beareth Or, a **Lion rampant**, Gules, **covered with a Surplice** or a **Vestment**, Argent. Born by the name of *Gwrystan*. This Coat by that name I have seen anciently Drawn in *Wales*, the Lion having

a Surplice on him, though of latter times it is usually drawn with a Waite Body as aforesaid, *numb.* 33.

XXXVI. He beareth Gules, a **Lion rampant dismembred,** (or **parted**) Argent. Dismembred, is when all its parts, as head, feet and tail are cut off from the body; this is of some old Heraulds called **debruised,** but that is a term now otherwise used, as this example following will manifest.

☞ If the Lion be dismembred of any particular part, then you shall say

Dismembred of his head, if the head be cut off.

Dismembred of his **right** or **left foot,** or of his **tail.**

Disarmed, if he have neither Tongue or Claws.

Sans head, if he have not a head, and so of the rest of his Members which he hath lost.

XXXVII. He beareth Argent, a **Lion Lawrel Fish,** with his **Tail elevated,** and **turned over his head,** Gules. By *In. Hof.* If it were of two or more colours, then say a **Lion Lawrel Fish,** Gules, **tail,** Vert, **Finned,** &c. It is termed a Lawrel Fish, because it doth represent the **Lawrel Garland,** or **scaly Fish,** that is so made with long scales. Born by *Van Sleschcher* being O.

☞ If the tail of the Lion (in what posture soever he be) doth reach so long, as to go over his head) it is termed **his tail elevated and turned over his head.**

A a Lion, tail elevated, &c. S born by *Buxton.*

XXXVIII. He beareth Argent, a **Lion Rampant,** Azure, having a **Peacocks Tail,** or **Train,** proper. It is a common bearing amongst the *Dutch* to have Lions thus tailed, or some thing else instead of their tails, as a **Branch of Roses,** a **Feather** or **Plume of Feathers,** a **Dragon,** or **Hounds Tail,** and such like, which is carefully to be mentioned. This is born by the name of *Elbener.*

O the like G born by *Eppl. van Falenden.*

O a Wolf with a Cocks tail G born by *Leipziger.*

XXXIX. He beareth Azure, a **Lion rampant with two heads,** (or **double headed**) Or. Or some a Lion rampant **bicapited,** which signifies the same thing. Born by the name of *Bipen.*

O the like B born by *Mason.*

XL. He beareth Sable, a **Lion rampant with two Bodies,** Argent, else a Lion rampant bicorporated. Born by the Vanquisher of his Enemy, as Leigh has it, p. 46.

G the like O crowned B born by *Conberton.*

XLI. He beareth in a Field Mars, **a Lion rampant gardant, with three bodies in triangle,** Sol. This is also Blazoned, a tricorporated (or three bodied) Lion in triangle, all meeting under one head in the Fesse point gardant. By the name of *Terlion.*

Leigh makes the **Lion rampant sedant,** and the other two bodies from the two corners sedant also. This was born by *Edmund Crouchback,* Earl of *Lancaster.*

O the like S born by *Carew,* Earl of *Totnesse.*

XLII. He beareth Topaz, a **tricorporated** (or **three bodied**) **Lion rampant,** Diamond; though two of these bodies are in a sort **passant,** yet all the bodies are here termed rampant, from the posture of the Lion they are fixed unto; it being the only Lion; the others being either **Monsters,** or superfluities of Nature, which cannot be drawn or expressed any other way then thus, that the 3 Bodies may be exactly seen.

XLIII. He beareth Gules, a **Lion,** Or, **Winged,** Argent. Here you need not mention the posture of the Lion by the rules aforesaid, *numb.* 4. but if in any other posture mention it.

☞ Note also, that all other four footed Creatures having Wings, if they stand on the back, you need say no more than what this example directs; for the Wings ever stand thus, one behind the other, because they cannot lie close to the Body, as in Fowl and Birds: But if the Wings be set any otherwise, then mention the posture, as you will be further instructed in the Chapter of Fowl, in their several postures with their Wings. This is born by the name of *Strongsly.*

XLIV. He beareth Argent, a **Lion rampant,** Gules, **debruised** with a Fesse, Vert. Some term it, **oppressed** with a Fesse; or **over all** a Fesse; or a Fesse **Jessant,** as being put upon the Lion. By the name of *Whittingham.*

XLV. He beareth Gules, a **Lion rampant,** Argent, **jessant and debruised** with two Bendlets, Or. I name the Jessant first, being next the Chief; if the higher Bendlet had been over and the other under, then your Blazon had been diverted, say **debruised** first, as being next the Chief, and then **jessant.**

I have seen this Blazoned, a Bendlet in Chief, with a Lion rampant jessant, Argent, debruised with another in Base, Or. Or else thus, a Lion rampant between two Bendlets, jessant and debruised, or jessant upon one, and debruised with the other. This is born by the name of *Bendeley.*

XLVI. He beareth Or, a Fesse Azure, a **Lion Rampant, Jessant,** Gules, **debruised,** with two Barrulets, Sable. This Coat will admit of several ways of Blazon; I shall mention one or two.

Or, a Fesse Azure, between two Barruletts, Sable, fretted with a Lion, Gules. *Boswell, pag.* 121. terms this a Lion debruised with 2 Barruletts, and fretted with a Fesse. and a Lion rampant, debruised, and jessant Frettwise, with a fesse & two Barruletts. borne by the name of *Fretleton.*

XLVII. He beareth Or, two **Lions heads erazed, conjoined, endorsed,** the one Argent, the other Azure collared counterchanged. Born as a Crest by the name of *Gregory.*

XLVIII. He beareth Argent, a **Lions head erazed,** Gules, **collared,** Sable, **garnished and studded,** Or. If a Crown were about his Neck, then you shall say gorged with a Coronett or a Crown. This is born by *Gowis.*

☞ As the heads are born **erazed,** so they are born **couped,** that is, cut smoothly off with part of the breast, and cabassed or trunked, that is, with the full face, and no part of the Neck or Breast.

XLIX. He

XLIX. He beareth Gules, a **Lions head gardant, erazed,** Or. This may be as well Blazoned, a **Leopards** head erazed, by reason the **Leopard** in Arms, is never drawn or born but full faced.

B 3 Lions heads gardant (or Leopards heads) couped at the Neck O. This Coat is in the Walk under *Lincolns Inn* Chappel, and is looked upon to be very rare; see *numb.* 62.

In the 41 Quarter, is the form of a Lions head without any part of a Neck, yet is Drawn half faced or sideways, which is contrary to our way of Bearing; yet in *Germany* I find such, *viz.* Argent, a Chapournett, Or, three Lions heads demy faced, G by the name of *Ulsteter*, of *Augspurgia*.

L. He beareth Sable, a **Lions Paw erazed,** Or.

☞ This is the proper posture for the foot to be set in; if otherwise it be put, then mention the same; the like is to be observed and noted of and in all the feet of Creatures, whether **Men, Beast,** or **Fowl:** Some term it a **Lions Gamb,** born by *Gambell*.

A the like Paw erected in Bend G born by *Cartswill*.

A on a Canton S a Lions Paw erazed in Bend O by *Bowtheby*.

LI. He beareth Or, a **Lions Paw erected and erazed** in Bend, Gules. Born by *Griffith ap Meredeth*, Lord of *Powis*. *Gwillim. fol.* 201. leaves out the word erected, being in Bend; but it is then to be with the foot part downwards; yet I judg it in a right posture in Bend, being it it is then (as if it were) lifted up, as to offend or defend.

LII. He beareth Azure, a **Lions Paw erected,** and couped, Argent. Born by *Pawe*.

S 3 such A born by *Usher*.

LIII. He beareth Sable, two **Lions paws issuant in form of a Cheveron,** Argent, *Gwillim, fol.* 200. Blazons them, two paws issuing out of Base, erected in form of a Cheveron; herein there is a superfluity of words, when it is as easily expressed in few; therefore I like his Blazon best, that only saith two paws in Cheveron; for by omitting the terms erazed and couped; it signifieth them to proceed from or join to the sides of the Escochion. This is born by the name of *Frampton*.

LIV. He beareth Gules, a **Lions tail erazed,** Argent; to give it the term of erecting is needless, this being the most proper and genuine posture of his Tail. This is born by the name of *Taile*.

S 3 such A born by *Corke*.

A the like G a chief S by *Traylor*.

LV. He beareth Or, a **Shapournet,** Gules, three **Lions Tails proceeding therefrom,** Azure; or three **Lions Tails** fixed on a Shapournet. Born by the name of *Tratz*. Thus much for the several ways and forms of bearing Lions both in whole and in part; we proceed now to other Creatures, of like nature to him.

LVI. He beareth Gules, a **Leopard passant,** Or, **spotted,** Sable. or else a Leopard, proper; Spotting is a term useless, it being natural to the Leopard, therefore cannot be changed, as the Prophet *Jeremiah* informs us, *Jer.* 13. 23. This is a Bastard kind of a Lions Breed, being ingendred of a Lion and a Pard. *Gwillim, fol.* 259. terms it Passant gardant, but it is neither in the head nor body drawn otherwise in Arms than full faced; therefore needs not to be termed gardant. Born by the name of *Pantherell*. Also by *William*, Duke of *Aquitain*.

LVII. He beareth Azure, a **Leopard passant rampant,** Or. Born by *Righen*. This is another form of passing, with one of his feet lifted up, as if he were about to seize on some kind of Prey; therefore not unfitly termed, **passing-rampant.** The Leopard is born in all the postures as the Lion is, and hath the same terms, as **rampant, passant, couchant, sciant,** &c. but never any term for the face, but still **gardant,** never **regardant.** Born by *Westerhagen*, if Rampant.

The Leopard is like to the Lion, save it is not maned and shagged about the Shoulders; its colour is bright yellow, distinguished into diverse spots, of a brownish colour, very beautiful to look upon.

LVIII. He beareth Sable, a **Leōpards head,** Argent. It is of some called a Leopards face, of old by Mr. *Camden*, a Libards face. The Leopards head is never born any otherwise than thus. This is of some, but very improperly, a Lions head caboſed or trunked. Born by the name of *Ockbard*.

O 3 such S born by *Waldeve*.

B 3 such O born by *More*.

LIX. He beareth Or, a **Leopards head,** Gules, Jessant, a **flower de lis,** Azure. Born by *Proudman*.

S the like A born by *Morlay*.

G 3 such A born by *Nobill*.

LX. He beareth Sable, a **Leopard head reversed,** Argent, **swallowing** of a flower de lis, Or. Born by the name of *Turnleigh*.

A 3 such S born by *Siddington*.

B 3 such O born by *Cantilow*.

A on a Pile G a Leopards face swallowing a flower de lis O by the name of *Tirrey*.

LXI. He beareth Gules, two **Pilgrims Staves,** Or, thrust through the ears and mouth (or out at the mouth) of a **Leopards head,** Argent. Where the thing first enters, that name first; if through the mouth and ears, then the points of the Staves (or ends) had been upward. Some will give the Staves (or Swords, or Spears) the term of Salterwise in their piercing or thrusting through; but it is needless, for all piercings of this nature are ever Salterwise, neither can it be any way else. This is born by the name of *Pilgrimage*.

A Leopards head S with 3 Cross Bottonies fitched, thrust through the top of the head, and out at the mouth A is the Crest belonging to the name of *Peckham*.

LXII. He beareth Azure, a **Leopards head erazed,** Argent, **Gorged** with a **Crown,** Or. Some say **collared** with a **Crown,** which is improper. Born by the name of *Cogshall*. This may be taken either for a **Lions head gardant,** or a **Leopards head,** but because I find it thus termed I set it in this place, to inform Mr.

*

Mr. *Gwillim*, that there is no general rule but it hath an exception. See *numb.* 49.

LXIII. He beareth Sable, a **Panther**, Argent, his mouth and ears **enflamed**, proper. The Panther is a very lovely Beast to look upon, for by the fine coloured Spots which he hath on his Skin, he allureth and enticeth all that see him to draw near to him.

In terming of his colour Argent, Or, Gules, else what other colour the body is of; yet this note, that it is ever Spotted with Spots with several varieties of colours, and that alone makes it to be the **Panther**; else in form and proportion, it is no other than a **Leopard**, and would be Blazoned for a Leopard. Mr. *Topsell* in his History of Beasts, *fol.* 576. affirms the **Panther, Leopard, Pardall**, and **Libbard** to be but one kind of Beast, called by diverse names, grounded upon this Opinion, that this Beast is generated between a **Pardall** and a **Lion**; when the **Lion** covereth the **Pardall**, then the Whelp is called **Leopardus**; but when the **Pardall** covereth the **Lioness**, then it is called **Pantjera**.

LXIV. He beareth Azure, a **Panthers head erazed**, Or. In Heraldry I never saw the Panther drawn, but it was with **Flames** out of his Mouth and Ears, by which he is known to be a Panther; else he would be taken for other Beasts very like him. The Panther is the Crest of *Somerset* Earl of *Worcester*; and the Supporters of the Coat of the Company of *Diers*.

LXV. He beareth Sable, a **Panthers head regardant** and **couped** (or **couped regardant**) Argent. *Leigh, pag.* 133. in his Accidence of Armory makes the Panthers head after this form; but all other Heralds (as ever I saw) make him with round ears like a Lion.

☞ Observe that **couping** and **erazing** are the two common accidents to parts of Animals born in Arms, couping is when a part is cut off smooth, as in this example; erazing, when it is born with ligges like pieces of Flesh or Skin hanging at it, as if it were rent or torn off, as *numb.* 47, 48.

LXVI. He beareth Argent, a **Linx regardant**, proper. Born by *Linxhall*. Some term him, a **Linx** Tenne, **spotted**, Sable, as being its natural colour; but the first Blazon is best for all Beasts of this nature; for if this were not spotted, it would be taken for no other than a Dog, but his name shews his nature. He is said to be engendred between a **Hind** and a **Wolf**; some hold it to be a **Lioness**, others a **Pardall**, a **Panther**, or a **Wolf** begotten as aforesaid; the natural colour is outwardly red, and inwardly white, but specked with black spots set in orderly manner, with a Beard like a Cat.

B a Linx rampant gardant, born by *Luxen*.

LXVII. He beareth Gules, an **Dunces head erazed**, proper: It is also called a **Pardus head**. The body of both in Figure are like to the **Linx** aforesaid, save in the tail, which is like to the **Camels**, or rather a **Cats tail**: It is of a yellowish brown colour, with a whitish Breast and Belly; spotted all over save the Belly, with darkish brown spots; as if all the Spots were made of Four. Doctor *Cay* gives it this Description; it is as large as a **Mastiff Dog**, having the face and ears like to a **Lion**; his **body, tail, feet** and **nails** like a **Cat**; sharp and strong teeth, and of a terrible Aspect. Per Cheveron B and G 3 Ounces heads erazed A by *Smith of Ireland*.

Per Bend G and O on the first an Ounce passant Bendwise A spotted S born by the name of *Esteber van Luchs*. The Crest is a Demy one out of a Crown with o Scarf about his Neck G.

LXVIII. He beareth Sable, an **Hyen**, or an **Hyena Saliant**, proper, a Scarf about his Neck, the ends flying backwards, Or. This is a fierce Beast, of a thin body, therefore swift, and a bushy tail, having bristles or strong hair like a Horse Mane down his back, and spotted with blew spots like eyes. This is bornby *Hyend*, or *Hyen*.

There are several terms of Heraldry used for the mounting of Beasts according to their several natures and qualities, as **Savage** and **Fierce Beasts** are said to **ramp, Beasts of Chase**, to **leap**, as the following Section will manifest.

Terms for mounting of Beasts.

26. THE **Lion, Leopard, Panther, Tyger, Lynx, Hyena, Dragon, Dunce, Pard** and **Bear**, are said to **ramp**, and are termed in that posture **rampant**.

The **Wolf, Fox, Unicorn** and **Goat, saliant**.

The **Gryffin, segrant** or **sciant**, and of some **rampant**.

The **Hart, Stag, Hind, springing**.

The **Squirrel, Weasel, Rat**, and all Vermine **saltant**.

The **Horse Prauncing, Cariering, Rairing, enraged** when in a saliant form, **mounted**.

The **Ram** or **Sheep, mounting** or **leaping**.

The **Boar** and **incensant, chafant, Ringant**.

The **Beaver, erected**.

The **Cat, saltant**.

The **Talbott, rampant**.

The **Greyhound, saltant** and **saliant**.

The **Bull, Bugle, Buff, Furiosant**, in a rage or madness, **rangant**.

The **Hare** and **Cony, Bolting, Boltant**.

The **Unicorn Saliant**.

The **Elephant, Erected**.

The **Ape Monkey, Saltant**.

The **Dragon-Tyger, Lion-Dragon, Wolf-Dragon, Sergeant, sergent**, or **segrant**; see *numb.* 48. used to all four footed Creatures of a double kind, except the **Dragon**, which is said to be **rampant**.

The **Lizard, erected**.

The **Crocodile, Salamander, Camelion, Eiwte, Asker, Spider, Ant**, and all other Egg breeding Reptiles, are said to be either **Erected, mounting, leaping**, or **skipping**.

The

The **Scorpion, erected.**
The **Lobster, Crevice, Crab, Upright.**

The sundry ways that Beasts are besides born in Arms.

27. **Statant** or **standing**, when all the feet are down.

Passant, or **Tripping**, if cloven footed, when one foot is bendingly lifted up, as if the Beast were walking.

Sejant, or **Sedant**, when set on his Breech, and standing on his foremost feet.

Couchant, laid down on his Belly, and the foremost feet stretched out; yet most Beasts have a several term for their lying down in this posture, as I have shewed in the beginning of this Chapter.

Currant, running, **at the full strein, in his course.** All which terms are used for a Beast in a running posture.

Dormant, sleeping, when laid on his Belly and Nose to the ground.

Saliant, assaultant, assaulting, or **falling on the Prey**, when a Beast is rather Bendwise, then mounted upright, this in some Beasts is termed **springing, carrieting**, &c.

Passant-rampant, when three feet are in a going posture, and his right foot lifted up.

Sejant-rampant, when set on his Breech, and the two foremost feet lifted up.

Sejant in his Majesty, sejant extended in **full aspect, sejant extendant**, or **displaid**, when he sits on his Breech, and hath his forefeet extended.

Sejant gardant in aspect, when he sits on his Breech, with his foremost feet standing, having the full sight of his Breast and Belly before you.

Rampant extendant, or displaid, laid open in full Aspect, that is when any Beast stands upright, and stretcheth out his foremost legs on each side his body, so that thereby his whole Face, Breast, Belly, and inner part of the Thighs are fully seen.

Gardant, at gaze, looking with a full face.

Regardant, looking backwards.

Suspectant, Spectant, looking upwards, the Nose Bendwise.

Despectant, Dejectant, looking downwards, or to the ground.

Dorsan Dorsa, endorsed, is back to back.

Combitant, respectant, aspectant, when they are face to face.

Dimidiated, demyed, or **demy**, half, or cut off in the middle.

Dismembred, parted, when either head, feet, or tail is cut off, or separated from the body, and yet not taken away.

Vulned, wounded, when any part is wounded, or made bloody.

Bicapited, double head, when the Beast hath two heads. **Tricapited**, when it hath 3 heads on one body.

Bicorporated, or **tricorporated**, double or treble bodied, when so many bodies are joined to one head.

Umbrated, shadowed, when the Beast is the same colour of the Field, being only as a shadow on it.

Couped, cut off, when either the head or feet are cut even and smooth from the body.

Erazed, rent or torn off, when any member or part is separated from the body by uneven ends or jaggedness.

Stretchant, when a Beast stretcheth out himself either upwards, or backwards or forwards, as *chap.* 18. *numb.* 67.

Trunked, or **Cabossed**, when the head or face of any Beast is born sole, not having any part of the Neck to it.

Close couped, the same to trunked.

28. FROM the **Lion**, King of Beasts, and such as are of his kind; we shall proceed the next, to the **Hart, Stag**, and **Hind**, the timerousest of Creatures, being they are for **Chase**; and I do the rather choose them next, by reason that all the terms of Blazoning concerned in all Beasts and four footed Creatures, are in a manner terminated in these two, the **Lion** and the **Hart**; so that after them I shall need to give but few examples of contrary beatings of other Creatures, save only to give you the shape and form of all other Beasts remaining.

LXIX. He beareth Argent, on a **Hill**, or **Mount** Vert, a **Stag lodged**, Gules. Sir *John Ferne* saith, that if an Hind or Doe ly thus on an hill, or in the field, she is termed a **Doe** or **Hind couchant**. But a right Forrester will call it a **Stag** or **Hart Harboured**. This is born by the name of *Hartkill*.

LXX. He beareth Sable, a **Stag lodged** or **harboured**) having his fore-leggs **extended**, and cross one another, Argent. Or a **Stag couchant**, the **fore-feet crossed**. By the name of *Downes*.

A the like G born by *Bledelyn ap Maenyrch*.

LXXI. He beareth Argent, a **Stag** proper, **attired** and **unguled** (or **Hooked**,) Or. All Creatures that stand directly on their four feet thus, needs no additional term to shew this his posture; but if they take the right foot up, then they are said to be **passant** in most, but **tripping** in all cloven footed Beasts; for thereby is signified a bodily motion; but very often Heralds make no difference between **statant** or standing, and **passant**, or going, which is a great fault in them. *Grillim, fol.* 180. terms this a Stag standing at gaze; but that is more proper at gaze, *numb.* 75. By the name of *Hartley*.

V the like A attired O born by *Jones*, and *Lomarch Holbroch*.

S the like A attired O born by *Hold Molmynock*.

A the like G by *Griffith Gwyr*.

LXXII. He beareth Vert, a **Stag tripping**, Argent,

gent, **attired** (or **horned**) Or. Notwithstanding what hath been said in the foregoing examples concerning other Creatures; yet in Beasts that have long and slender legs, and especially cloven hoofed, this posture must be taken notice of, and is ever to such termed tripping, and not passant. Born by *Llowarch Howlbuch.*

A the like proper, attired O born by *Holme.*

B 3 such and a Chief O born by *Greene.*

S on a hill in Base A a Stag tripping towards the sinister side O born by *Van Brockendorf.* And O the like Stag S with a Swaddle cloth about his middle A by *Van Wiedbach.*

LXXIII. He beareth Argent, a **Stag springing,** Gules. Born by *Gilsland.*

The **Aris,** of which *Pliny* speaketh, is a Beast without Horns, having long tails down to their middle, legs like Deer, of a yellowish colour, spotted with white spots, with a clear sound, like the voice of a Deer.

B a Stag springing O born by *Kuchler* of *Bavaria.*

A a Stag springing to the Sinister G born by *Frewdorf.* The same also by *Van Hirschberg,* of *Frankenford,* and by *Van Langestein.*

A the like to the Sinister side G with a Towel over his back, ends fringed A born by *Van Bodendick.*

LXXIV. He beareth Or, a **Stag** in his **full course,** Gules; or a **Stag** in his **strein.** This is a term used by Huntsmen when the Deer runneth very fast; and when by Hunting he forsaketh the rest of the Herd; it is said, that he **singleth,** or is **emprimed. Currant,** is by some used for to term his running, but it is more proper for other Creatures than these of Chase. This is born by *Lightfoote.*

B such a Stag O pursued by a Brace of Dogs A all Bendway (and at random saith one) born by *Yardely.*

A on a craggy hill out of Base Bendways Sinister, a Stag in his full course G born by *Rechberg.*

A a Stag in his full course Bendways, disattired (or couped) of one Horn B born by *Van Brauchitch.*

V a Fesse between 3 Bucks at strein O born by *Robinson.*

The Stag and Buck are most commonly of a Sandy colour, with a black streak along his Back; their sides and belly spotted with White, which spots they lose through Age; their Females are more variable in colour; as being sometimes all white.

LXXV. He beareth Argent, a **Stag standing at gaze** (or **gardant**) Gules. A **Stag** is said to **stand at Baye,** when he stands in his own defence, with his head downward, to keep himself from the Dogs or huntsman; and to **Stand at Gaze,** when he stayeth or standeth to look at any thing, or to hear any noise. This is born by the name of *Gassell.*

A a Fesse B between 3 such G born by *Robertson.*

LXXVI. He beareth Gules, a **Stag regardant,** Argent, the **Attire tipped** and **Unguled,** or **Hooked,** Or.

☞ When I say the **Attire tipped,** it is to be understood, that the Horns are the same colour or mettle to the Stag, and that the tipp ends of the branches of the horns are only to be Gold, or what other Colour or Metal the Bearer pleaseth to bear them. Born by *Tipborne.*

And this term of **Tipping,** is to be used to all sorts of horned Creatures, who have their horns of two Colours, as in the Bull it is very often, and frequently born.

A 3 such G horned O born by *Vigelfare.*

O on a Stag regardant G a Pale A born by *Nobeck.* Some term it Swadled, or clothed about the middle. See *numb.* 72, 73.

LXXVII. He beareth Argent, a **Stags head couped,** Sable. Couping is, when the head is cut smooth off; and Erazing is when it is (as it were) rent, torn, or pulled off, by which means many jagged pieces remain uneven, as the next but one will farther manifest. This is born by the name of *Stagcope.*

A 3 such S born by *Rigmaiden.*

G 3 such O born by *Deering.*

LXXVIII. He beareth Sable, a **Stags Head,** Argent, **attired,** Or. By the name of *Orton,* or *Horton.* This is also Blazoned a **Stags head cabached,** or **cabhoised,** or a **Stags head trunked,** or a **Stags face.** Yet some hold it sufficient to say the head of such or such a thing, when it is full faced (as in the example of a Leopards head) using no other term, as for example.

A **Stags head,** when it hath no part of the Breast.

A **Stags gardant,** or **at gaze,** when it hath part of the Breast.

A **Stags head couped,** when the Breast is cut smooth off.

A **Stags head erazed,** when the Breast is rent or torne. And these are distinctions sufficient enough.

LXXIX. He beareth Azure, a **Stags head erazed,** Or. The Erazing is ever divided into three parts, made jagged and hairy, and no more. This is born by the name of *Breadfield.*

LXXX. He beareth Sable, the **attire of a Stag** fixed to the **scalp,** Argent. Skilful Foresters and Park-Keepers have certain names and terms for every part of the Horns, which I have shewed in the first Section of this Chapter, therefore say nothing of it here. This is born by the name of *Forester.*

S 3 such with a Cheveron between A born by *Cocks.*

A one such attire G born by *Heldenchorf.* Also by *Brendt.*

G the like A born by *Truchses van Eggenmuhl.*

B the like O by *Churn.*

LXXXI. He beareth Sol, **three Attires** of a **Stag** in **Pale Barrways,** Saturn. This is *Gwillims* Blazoning, *fol.* 185. but I am confident these ought not be termed three Attires, but three Stags Horns, for the Attire of a Stag, is ever to be the two Horns, as in the examples before, and one single Horn to be termed no otherwise than a Stag or Bucks Horn, which ought then thus to be Blazoned.

He beareth Argent, 3 **Stags Horns in Pale,** Gules. This manner of fixing the Horns in the Field, is of some termed **Pale Bar;** others **Pally Barry,** and in **Pale Barways.**

☞ But this is to be noted, that in things of length, which cannot be well drawn in the Escochion, or fixed according to ordinary Bearing, *viz.* two and one, as *numb.* 20. then such are put usually in Pale or in Fesse, as in this, and the next examples doth demonstrate; see *numb.* 14. 15. 18. 21. This Coat is born by the name of *Countess.*

O 3 the like S born by *Frederick*, late Duke of *Wertemberg.*

A 3 such and a chief S is the Town Arms of *Wayblington.* And in a Border G by *Minsingen.*

LXXXII. He beareth Vert, three **Stags Horns in Fesse,** Or. Long things if in Fesse, then they are besides one another; if in Pale they are over one another; and if they be in Bend, they are Bendwise one of another; and these three ways are all the ways such things can be placed, which need no other term than such or such things in Pale, or in Bend, or in Fesse. This Coat is born by the name of *Swiftliby.*

Per Pale A and B 2 Stags Horns (in Pale say some) counterchanged. Born by *Hirchorner.*

LXXXIII. He beareth Argent, a **Stags Horn** of the first years growth, Gules. If the Horn of a Stag have but one **Crouch** or **Branch** in the head there; they are called **Stages Hornes, onely headed.** But if they have two, then they are called a **Forked Head,** or a **Double Forked Head,** as the next examples.

The Hare or Rabbet in this quarter, is termed a **Hare** or **Rabbet gardant,** but according to Huntsmens Phrase, it is an **Hare in her Form** or **Musett,** or a **Rabbet squat gardant,** A 3 such Hares or Rabbets G is born by the name of *Hareward.*

LXXXIV. He beareth Sable, a **Stags Horn,** with a **Forked Head,** Or. Born by *Forkler.*

B a forked attire of a Stag fixed on the Scalp A a Bordure O is born by *Reehburger* of *Switzerland.*

LXXXV. He beareth Gules, a **Stags Horn** with a **double forked head,** Argent. All Horns in a manner be hollow, save that towards the pointed tip, they be solid and massy; only Deer both red and fallow, have them solid throughout the whole Horn. This is born by the name of *Horne.*

A a Stags Horn Imbowed to the Dexter G born by *Van Harkberg.* Also by *Van Hirchorne.*

B the like A born by *Van Mosbach,* and also by *Van Lindenfels.* Se the form in this square.

LXXXVI. He beareth Argent, a **Rain Deers head or face,** proper; see *cap.* 8. *numb.* 42. This is briefly termed a *Rainger* or *Raingifer.*

A 3 such S is born by *Bewitt* in *York-shire,* or *Bowitt.*

LXXXVII. He beareth Gules, a **Bucks face,** Argent, **attired,** Or. Or after others, a **Bucks head cabassed** or **trunked,** see *cap.* 9. *numb.* 2. There is a difference between the Bucks Horns and a Stagg, the latter is round, both in the **Beam,** and in the **Antlier;** and the other is broad in the **Beam** and the **Palm,** like a Mans hand, with the **Spellers** out of it broadish, of a blackish brown colour. That of their body is diverse, but most commonly branded or sandy on the back, with a black strake down all along the back, their Belly and Sides spotted with White. This is called the **Head of a Fallow Deer.**

LXXXVIII. He beareth Sable, a **Roe Bucks face or head,** Argent, **attired,** Or. The **Roe Buck** hath his Horns out of the forehead, or top of the head (as it were) and so standing backwards, whereas the **Stag** and **Buck** have them behind the ears, and stand on either side the head. Besides on the Beam of the Horn, there is but two (or three at the most) of Antliers, which stand directly on the fore part of the Horn by equal distances. This is born by the name of *Roe.*

A a Cheveron S between three Roe Bucks heads G is born by *Parker.*

B 3 Roe Bucks heads erazed in Bend O born by *Roydon.*

A on a Bend engraled S 3 such heads couped A born by *Heydon.*

A on a Bend B 3 such couped A attired O by *Yong.*

The **Wild Horse,** or **Hart Horse,** hath two horns thus, rough; the body of an Ash colour, called an **Hipellaphus.**

LXXXIX. He beareth Argent, a **Stags head double attired,** Gules. All these are bodied like to the Stag, and therefore I shall say no more of them. This is born by the name of *Forsiere.*

In this quarter is a **Stags Horn recurvant,** or **Imbowed to the Base,** which is the Crest of *Van Hornstein,* in the Palatinate of *Rhine.*

O the like S born by *Vog van Sumer*; and also by *Van Prasberg.*

XC. He beareth Sable, two **Hinds countertripping,** Argent. Else termed two **Does:** the **Hinds** or **Does** head is born in all respects, answering the Stags, as **cabossed, couped** and **erazed,** and their colour like the **Fallow Deer,** sometimes vary, and be all White. By the name of *Cottingham* of *Cottingham.*

B a Hind regardant tripping A on a hill in Base V is the Town of *Zirenbergs* Arms.

B a Hind tripping to the Sinister O born by *Hassen.* The same upon a Hill in Base V is born by *Van Thierberg.*

Out of a Coronet a demy Hind O is the crest of *Lufer.*

☞ Here note, that in Crest Demy Beasts are ever set upright, and not termed either rampant, saliant or springing, *&c.* according to the nature of Rising.

XCI. He beareth Vert, the **Hanch of a Buck** or **Stag, couped,** Argent. Some will say **couped** at the **higher part** of the **Thigh,** or near the **Shingle.** Others term it the **hinder Thigh** of a **Buck.**

This kind of bearing both of the **Buck** and **Horse** is much used in the *Netherlands,* by several Families.

A the hinder legg of a stag, Buck, or Hind, couped in in the hanch or thigh and Bowed in the Joint B by the name of *Gaysgoble.* the crest is the same with the foot or hoof erected.

Out of a Coronet O a hinds legg erected A is the crest of *Alfter.*

These are all the ways of bearing of these two Creatures,

*

tures, viz. the Lion and Stag in Coats Armour, that ever I could find amongst those many and various Bearings used by the *English*, *French*, *Spanish*, *Dutch*, or *Italians*. So that as you find them born either in whole or in parts; so you may judg all other four-footed Beasts are; so that by the true Blazoning of these, the gentle Reader and Learner cannot go amiss in the other.

Therefore I shall not in the examples of the various Beasts following, give so many rules with the parts of each Beast; but only give a view of the Beasts, either in whole or in some principal part, by which you may understand the whole, thereby endeavouring to avoid a multitude of needless and superfluous examples, and extravagant Blazonings of such parts; yet if any term of Art, in other Creatures contrary to these happen; in their examples of Blazoning, I shall endeavour to manifest and make plain the same for thy Instruction and farther Satisfaction.

XCII. He beareth Vert, a **Rabbet**, or **Cony**, Argent. Born by *Rabby*.

The **Cony** is of several colours, as White, Black, Silver colour, that is, having some white or silver hairs aspersed in the black, grissel, tawny, blewish, yellow spotted, ash colour, and such like. The young ones are kindled Blind, and see not of 9 days.

A 3 such S born by *Sirvode*.

XCIII. He beareth Argent, a **Rabbet sciant**, Sable. By the name of *Cony*.

A 3 such S born by *Conybur row*.

G 3 such A born by *Conesby*, with a Bordure engraled A.

We say the Wing of a Rabbet, not the fore legg, nor shoulder.

XCIV. He beareth Argent, on a **Hill, a Hare sciant gardant, in full aspect**, proper. By the name of *Harehill*.

The like A on a Cushion, is the Crest of *Van Werdenstein*.

G an Hare boltant or skipping forward O born by *Hasen zur Turnich*.

Quarterly G and A a Hare the like, O born by *Hasfurt*.

B the like O born by *Van Hasenberg*.

Quarterly per pale G and A the 2 and 3 G a demy Hare upright A is born by the Earl of *Oth.* in *Germany*.

B a Hare Boltant to the Sinister O born by *Hasen*.

XCV. He beareth Gules, a **Hare currant**, Or, (or in his **full Course**, as some term it.) This is a Creature for Game, and is of great lightness of Limbs, and nimbleness of Body, which causeth it to be very swift; it is harder to be pursued and taken up a Hill, than in a Plain, by reason his hinder feet are much longer than the foremost, which casts him forwards in his **Coursing**. Born by the name of *Weyerswift*.

S 3 such O born by *Wayward*.

A a Goat B and a Hare G both currant to the Sinister. Born by *Elm van Elmer*.

XCVI. He beareth Sable, an **Hares head couped**, Or. The shape of the **Rabbet** and **Hare** are so like in their draught, that an Herald may mistake one for another in his Blazon, except the **Hare** be in his proper colour, which is a sandy brown with a whitish Belly. This is born by the name of *Hardhead*.

A on a Fesse Nebule S 3 such O born by *Harewell*.

XCVII. He beareth Sable, a **Tyger**, Or. Thus we draw it in Heraldry; but *Topsell* in his *History of Beasts*, describeth it to be in form like a **Lioness** for face and mouth, with round ears and feet like a **Cat**; the tail hath a tuft or bob at the end, like a **Lion**; their skin full of spots, of one colour, some round, others square and long, of a black colour upon a yellowish hair. Born by the name of *Theime*.

A the like S born by *Grimstich*.

Per pale G and B the like A born by *Mabb*. The same G is the Crest of *Maisterson* of *Nampwich*.

O the like G by *Lutwich* of *Lutwich*.

XCVIII. He beareth Argent, a **Tyger regardant, gazing in a Mirror** or **Looking-Glass**, all proper. Thus *Gwillim*, *fol.* 203. But I hold it better Blazoned, a **Tyger regardant dejectant, gazing in a Mirror**; by reason the Glass is on the ground; his Blazon may as well signify its standing upright. This is in *Thame* Church, in *Oxfordshire*.

XCIX. He beareth Vert, a **Lyciske**, Or. This is a Creature engendred of a **Dog** and a **Wolf**, also a kind of **Dog** engendred by a **Tyger**, and so called by *Pliny*, whose fierceness and cruelty was such that they feared not to fix upon a **Lion**. This is the Crest of *Grome* in its proper colours, which is a dusky yellow on the back, more yellow on the sides, and white on the Breast and Belly, with dark spots on the upper parts of the body.

A the head couped S is born by *Van Egolsstein*.

C. He beareth Argent, a **Bear**, Sable. By the name of *Beareford*. They are Creatures of great strength; and are termed (when in that posture) Rampant, like the Lion; they are rough haired, of a dark brown, or earthly colour.

A a Bear passant rampant S collered O born by *Bern* and *Beern*.

A a Bear passant S with a Fardel girded on his back G is the Arms of the Town of *Freisingen*.

O a Bear rampant S born by *Aindorfer*.

A a Bear in Bend Sinister, supporting a bowed Staff S born by *Bernholtz*.

O such rampant sciant S born by *Berneck*.

A a Bear Saliant S born by the Town of *Berlin*.

A the like rampant S born by *Bernstein*.

A the same rampant S and Musled O by the name of *Barnard*.

CI. He beareth Or, a **Bears head couped regardant**, Sable; though some do term it looking to the **Sinister side** of the Escochion; but if it were fixed to the body, it were **regardant**, *Ergo*, Why not as well being without the body? see *numb.* 65.

☞ **Bears** and **Boars heads**, in their couping, have not a part of the Breast to them as other Creatures, by reason they advance not their heads in their going. This is born by the name of *Bearboar* of *Poland*.

CII. He beareth Or, a **Bears head couped,** Gules, **muzzled,** Argent. The **Bears head erazed** ought to be born in Arms after this manner, as most natural to its condition and being; yet no rule but it hath its exception. By the name of *Bearewood.*

CIII. He beareth Argent, a **Bears head elevated** and **erazed,** Gules, **Muzzled,** Or, **garnished and studded,** Sable; or else this ought to be termed a **Bears head** and (or with a) **Breast** erazed; for here is a part of the Breast to the head, which makes the **Snout** thus **elevated,** else the erazing should have been behind the ears, and the head to be in that form, as the foregoing example. This is born by the name of *Curfoe.*

A the like S muzzled O born by *Fermyke.*

A 3 such G muzzled O in Chief 3 Pellets. Born by *Wall.*

CIV. He beareth Azure, a **Wolf saliant,** Or. By the name of *Wolfe.* Some term it a **Lupe saliant,** from the Latine word *Lupus,* a **Wolf.** This is also of some termed a **Wolf rampant.** Wolfs and Foxes, are by some Authors termed a kind of **Wild Mastiffs** and **Wild Currs,** by reason they engender and bring forth after the same manner as **Mastiffs** and **Dogs** do.

B the like A born by *Dunn,* or *Downe.*

A the like B crowned O born by *Reichenburg.*

B the like A born by *Meredith ap Hen dwn* of *Wales.*

Per pale B and A 2 such rampant endorsed counterchanged by *Van Bellendorf.*

CV. He beareth Azure, a **Wolf,** Argent. By the name of *Bleidd Rydd,* of *North Wales.* If there be more than two Wolfs in a Coat Armour, then saith Mr. *Morgan, lib.* 1. *cap.* 83. they are termed a **rout of Wolfs,** that is a **Rout of three Wolves.**

G 2 such A by the name of *Low.*

A the like G born by *Car. dock Hard.*

O the like S born by *Van Wolffshall.*

CVI. He beareth Argent, two **Reynards** or **Foxes counter saliant,** the dexter **surmounted** of the sinister Gules. *Grillim* terms them **countersaliant in Bend,** the dexter surmounted of the Sinister Salter like; and to save all these Tautologies, Why not two **Foxes in Salter countersaliant;** for the term in Bend might well have been swallowed up of the Word **Saliant,** which signifieth as much as the Creature to be in a rising **ramping** posture, and the other **countersaliant,** to be quite contrary to the other, as it were in Salter. These I never saw born any other colour than red or proper. This is the Coat of *Kadrod Hardd,* a Noble person in *Northwales.*

O the like, born by *Colfox,* alias *Colfoules.*

The **Fleck** goeth with rolling feet, and hath often anfracts and turnings; *Isidore* saith he is naturally subtil as the Fox; for when he wanteth Meat, he will ly all along, with every limb of his Body stretched out, as though he were dead; the silly Fowl seeing this, Fly to his Carcase, where unawares he suddenly snatcheth up some of them.

CVII. He beareth Argent, a **Squirrel,** Gules. By the name of *Horton.* This some term a **Squirrel sejant,** but that needs not; for I never saw a Squirrel in a Coat of Arms, or as a Crest, but it is ever drawn thus, this being its **Stational posture;** for it never ceaseth from going or leaping; but it is immediately in this posture, and so continueth till it be going again. Some will Blazon it a **Squirrel cracking of a Nut;** others **holding a Hassel Branch fructed, eating of a Nut.**

A a Cheveron S between 3 such G born by *Littler,* or *Littellor.*

A a Cheveron B between three the like, born by *Lavell.*

O a Squirrel G on a hill in Base V by *Ceateschach.*

V the like proper, turned to the Sinister, is the Coat and Crest of *Wiejener.*

O 3 Squirrels G born by *Van Aschweede.*

The **Pentique Mouse** is like the **Squirrel,** with round Ears like a Rat or Mouse; the colour is white mixed with Ash colour, or else Sandy colour and black. In *Polonia,* they are red and ash colour; it feeds with its fore-feet like the Squirrel, on Walnuts, Chestnuts, Filberds, Apples, and such like.

The **Getulian** and **Barbarian Squirrel,** hath a head like a **Frog,** little round ears, is of a mixt colour between brown and red, white belly, bushy tail at the end.

CVIII. He beareth Gules, a **Weesel,** Or. This may be termed, either a **Weesel, Fulmart,** or **Ferret;** for they are of one and the self same shape of body.

The **Ferret,** is a yellowish white, with a long slender body: See *chap.* 8. *numb.* 14.

The **Fulmart** of a chest-nut colour, with a whitish belly and breast.

The **Marten,** or **Martel,** is of a fuller and larger body, of a deep chesnut colour and white; the Fur is termed, Foins.

The **Fitcher,** or **Pole-cat,** is like in shape, but of a larger body, and of a more rough or shagged hair, of a black brown colour, with round pil'd ears without hair.

The **Lascit Mouse,** is all white, mixt with grisle; it is of the bignes of the **Hermine, Weezel,** or **Squirrel.**

CIX. He beareth Gules, an **Ermine Couchant,** proper. This is a kind of Forreign Vermin, but the Skin is the richest Furr, being all pure white, having the tip of the Tail only black; from this Beast we borrow the term Ermine, as is before shewed in the Furs; If this stood on his feet he would not be unlike the **Weesel,** or **Fulmart,** or **Ferret,** in body and shape, all of them being a kind of field Vermine. This is the Coat of a Bishop in *Scotland,* who lived about the year 1474. *viz.* Per Fesse G and B. In the first 6 whole Ermines couchant Er. 3 and 3.

The like Statant, is the Crest of *Hurleston* of *Picton.*

CX. He beareth Argent, a **Mouse,** or a **Rat,** proper. by *Ratell*; and an **Indian Mouse,** Sable.

The **Mouse,** is a little small Creature, of a kind of blackish brown; sometimes, white, yellowish, brown, and ash-colour.

The **Rat** is three or four times as large, of a blackish russet colour; see *chap.* 8. *numb.* 12. 41.

The **Indian Mouse,** is as large as our Cat, and is sha-

shaped like our English Mouse, having a Tail like to the Goat.

The **Shrew**, or **Ereshrew**, is Mouse bodied, but with a sharp Nose, turned up like a **Swine**; of a dark brown colour, yellowish under the Belly; see *chap.* 8. *num.* 11.

The **Wood-Mouse**, is like the **Domestick Mouse**, save in colour, which is of a brown, or swart colour, having black spots in her Face.

A a Rat Saltant to the Sinister S is both Coat and Crest of *Bullich.*

CXI. He beareth Argent, a **Stoat**, or an **Indian Mouse**, or **Ichnevmon**, Sable. Some call it a **Thyamon**, and a **Neomon**: it is in proportion as large as a small **Cat**, or **Ferret**, it hath Bristles instead of hair, blackish coloured; small Eyes, and a long tail turning up a little, like a **Serpents**, having no hair but scales, not much unlike the tail of a **Rat**: see *chap.* 8. *num.* 40.

CXII. He beareth Sable, a **Dormouse**, Or. The Dormouse in body is like the **Weesel**, only shorter of body, with a large beard like a **Rat**; of a kind of a yellowish white, and gristly colour, with a white belly. This is termed a **Dormouse Dormant**, but it needs no such term, for it is a Creature always sleeping. This is Born by the name of *Dormor.*

CXIII. He beareth Gules, a **Horse passant**, Argent. Horses are termed by several names according to the Country they are bred in; as a **Ripon Colt**, a **Northern Buldor**, a **Scotch** and **Welsh Nag**, or **Cit.** a **Spanish Jennet**, an **English Steed**, a **Barbary Courser**, This is Born by the name of *Steedpasse*, and by *Ingram.*

S Fesse between 3 such A born by *Stamfe.*

A an Horse S Bridled the Reins cast over his head. Born by *Pferdsdorf* of *Frankford*, and also by *Van Rabell.*

O a demy horse saliant, or Rairing; B is the Coat and Crest of *Glaufenberg.* In a field A by *Fullain.*

A the like G born by *Keypper.*

G a demy Horse, A bridled O by *Van Malewitz.*

O on a Hill in Base V a *Horse* Coursing S born by *Rasberg.*

A **Stallion**, is an old Horse or Mare kept for to breed on.

A **Gelding** is an *Horse*, having his Stones cut away.

It is observed of the Horse (and also of other whole footed Beasts) that their Legs are as long as ever they will be upon their Foaling; and therefore young Foals will scratch their Ears with their hinder foot; which after they cannot do, because their Leggs grow only in bigness, not in length.

In this Quarter is an **Horse-head**, or **Face**; of most termed a **Horse head cavossed**; because nothing but the fore-part of the Face and Ears are seen. Such an head S with 3 Hollin leaves in his Mouth V in a Field O is born by *Ridesel Van Eisenbach.*

CXIV. He beareth Azure, a **Horse foot erected**, and **bowed**, **couped**, above the **Fitlock**, Argent; **Hoof**, Sable. Born by the name of *D. Van Embles.* Some term it couped in the middle of the Cambrel.

CXV. He beareth Vert, an **Horse** Argent, **Spancelled** on both Legs, of the **Neerer**, or **Rising side**, Or. Born by the name of *Percivall.*

In the Chief of this quarter is a Bearing which is thus Blazoned.

O a Horse-head close couped S with an *Hollyn* slip in his Mouth devouring it proper. Born by *Ridesel Zu Bellersheim.*

A a Rains-head close couped S born by *Van Busseck.*

CXVI. He beareth Azure, **Pagasus**, or the **winged Horse volant**, or **currant**, Argent, **Wings**, Or. either term of **currant** or **volant** are proper in this posture, and so I have found it both ways Blazoned. By the name of *Pergrave.*

A the like G is born by *Birchenshaw.*

A *Horse* head between two Wings; or the Wings in Sepurture; I have found Blazoned *Pegasus* head only; and is the Crest of Sir *John Warden*, Baronet.

The **Ethiopian flying Horse**, as *Albertus Magnus* relates, hath the head and feet of a **Horse**, but horned; and Wings much greater than an **Eagle**, which he only stretcheth out when he runneth.

29. THere is several things belonging to an **Horse**, and **Horsemanship**, whose Terms are necessary, and ought to be known, else a Gentleman will not, neither can discourse of those matters in a fit Dialogue.

Terms used about Riding and Horse-man-ship.

30. A **Groom**, a Horse-keeper in a Gentleman's Stable.

An **Ostler**, a Horse-tender in Inns and Publick Houses of Entertainment, and in Livery Stables.

A **Horse-Keeper**, is one that brings up Horses and teacheth them their Paces, or orders them for the great Saddle.

A **Farrier**, or an **Horse-Leacher**, an Horse Doctor and Shoeer.

Horse Leachery, or **Leach-craft**, is the Art of curing Horses of Diseases.

A **Rider**, such as ride running Horses.

Amble, is to go a fine easy pace.

Attaint, is an over-reach of the heel by the hinder foot; the **Upper-Attaint** or over-reach is the cutting of the back sinnew of the fore-leg above the pastern. The **Nether Attaint**, is an over-reach on the pastern joint.

Break, or **Back** a Colt, is the first riding of him.

Bound, is to Caper, or Pronce.

Broken winded, is shortness of Breath.

Corvet, is the Rearing and Capering of a *Horse*; See Salts.

Covering the Mare, is the horse Leaping her, or **Engendring.**

Cast her Foal, is to bring forth a dead one.

Cast the Rider, when by a stumble he falls the Rider.

Canterbury pace: See **Gallop.**

Caper, when a *Horse* stands on no ground.

Docking, **Curtailing**, or cutting of the horse tail shorter.

Dung, or *Horse* Muck.

Dunghil, a heap of *Horse* dung, and old Litter put together.

Foal-

Foaling, the bringing forth of a **Foal** or **Colt.**

Further foot before, the further foot on the right side.

Further foot behind, the hinder foot on the right side.

Further side, the right side of the horse.

Gallop, or **Canterbury rate**, between a full or high trot, and a swift running: See **stately** and **swift.**

Handing, or **Handling of a Colt**, is to make him gentle, tame, and quiet to Bridle and Saddle.

Hoof Bound, when his Shoo's are set too straight on.

Interfering, is the casting of an *H*orse feet inward.

Leap, is to mount over a Bar, Gate, or *H*edge.

Leap a Mare: See **Cover.**

Near side, or the **Rising side**; is the left side of the horse, which side Men get on the horse-back.

Near foot before, the foremost foot on the rising side.

Near foot behind, the hindmost foot on the left side.

Nether Attaint: See **Attaint.**

Prance, the skips and capers, and will stand on no ground.

Raisty, or **Resty**, that will go neither forword or backwards, but stand still.

Rack, is a pace wherein the horse neither *T*rots or Ambles, but is between both.

Rising side, or **Saddle Girth side**, the side next the Man.

Rattle in the sheath, when he makes a noise in the skinny part of his Yard.

Stately Gallop, is when a *H*orse Gallops aloft and close, as War-horses, and those for the great Saddle.

Swift Gallop, is when a *H*orse run smooth and easy, as running horses, and hunting doth.

Salts, are the Leaping and Proncing of Horses, a kind of Corveting.

Stumbling, when he is apt to fall, or cast his Rider.

Stale, is the Piss of horses.

Trameis, are Leather to put about horse Legs to cause them to Amble.

Trot, or a **Trotting Horse**, when he sets hard, and goes of an uneasy rate.

Voult, when he Raires, or stands upright.

Upper Attaint: See **Attaint.**

Wince, is to kick.

Walk, is the sloest pace a Horse doth go; it is used to cool a Horse after hard Riding.

Yark behind, kicking with his hinder Leg or Legs.

Kinds of Horses.

31. **Coursers, Swift** or **Running Horses**; for Races and other tricks of Nimbleness and Activity. From hence proceeds Horses for War, for Peace, Pleasure and Necessity.

Hackney, or **Saddle Horses**, are such as man useth to ride upon for the ease of his Body, and hastyness of Travel, and Journeys.

Hunting Horses, and **Post-Horses**, are such as are kept for Game, for which the Male, is better then the Female; because better able to leape, of which saith *Oppianus*, those that are blewish spotted, are fittest to hunt Harts; the bright Bay, to hunt Bears and Leopards; the Bay, or reddish colour, to hunt the Boars; the black with glazen Eyes, are good against *L*ions.

Pack Horses, are such as are imployed for the carrying of burthens, and draught in the Cart, Tillage, and such like; which are termed Cart-Horses, and draught Horses, or labouring horses.

Warr Horses, such as are trained and brought up not to fear any noise or clamour, or to run back at the rattling of Drums, or Roaring of Guns, that will career.

Jade, a **Tyred Horse**, Raisty, That will go but when it own pleasure, that goes backward and side-ways when he is spurred, or whipt.

Feeding for Horses.

Meadows, Pasture Grounds, where is store of good and fat Grass. This is to feed and nourish them.

Bean, Pease, Barley, or **Oats**, called also Provender: this is to strengthen them for labour.

Horse Bread, which is to Diet them for Courses.

Hay and **Chaff**, is their natural Winter Food, which they delight in.

Straw, or *L*itter, for them to lie upon.

Diseases insident to Horses.

32. THE general Distempers are the **Feaver**, which is a Malady or inward Disease, through an unnatural and immoderate heat, proceeding from the heart and dispersetb it self through-out all the Veins and Arteries of the Body.

A **Pestilent Ague**, which is thought to proceed from a **Corrupt Air**, or humors in the Body by unkind Food; it is a **contagious** and **pestiferous** Disease, almost incurable.

A **Pestilence**, through over much labour, heat, or cold, *&c.* or by an infectious air, which poisons the breath.

A **Murrin**, is an infectious disease amongst Horses, and other Cattle.

The **Mange** or *L*eprosy, is a cankered Scab spreading all over the body, being full of mangy and scurvy Scabs, and raw plats about the Neck.

The **Farciu**, or **Pock Farcives**, this is a kind of creeping Ulcer growing in Knots, following along some vein, (proceeding of a corrupt blood ingendred in the body,) till they have over-run the whole body. Some call it the Faucious.

The **Canker**, is a disease that frets, and eateth the flesh.

The **Fistula**, is a deep hollow crooking Ulcer, ingendred in some wound, not perfectly cured.

The **Aubury**, or spungy Wart full of Blood.

Di-

Diseases in the Head.

33. THE **Head-ach**, cometh of some cholerick humors bred in the Pannicles of the Brain.

The **Frenzy** or **Madness**, when some filthy Blood doth strike the film, or pannacle of the Brain; which causeth dulness of Mind and light. But when such blood corrupts the Mid-brain, then it causeth Franticknes; if such blood fill the Veins and Stomach, it causeth alienation of Mind, and Madness.

The **Sleeping Evil**, a disease that causeth the Beast continually to sleep, taking the Memory and Appetite clean away.

The **Sudden taking**, when he is deprived of his feeling and motion, not being able to stir any way.

The **Staggers**, is a Dizziness in the head, called the Vertigo; which comes of some corrupt blood, or rough humor, and causeth dimness of sight, reeling and staggering, which if not instantly helped, is Mortal. It is by some called the **Falling-Evil.**

The **Night-Mare**, a disease that oppresseth either Man or Beast in the night when they sleep, which is through a rawness or crudity of the Stomach, which ascending into the head, doth oppress the brain, and all the sensitive powers, so as they cannot draw their breath.

The **Apoplexy** is a disease that deprives all the body of sence and motion; if it deprive but a part of the body, then it is called a Palsy.

The **Cramp**, or **Convulsion** in the Muscles and Sinews; is a painful contraction or drawing together of the Sinews; sometimes through the whole, sometimes but in one part only.

The **Cold** in the head, is known by a stopping, ratling in the Nose, and Coughing.

Diseases in the Eyes.

34. THe **Weeping** of the Eyes, or watery eyes, comes generally from some strip or blow; a Rhumatick or watery Eye.

The **Blood-shotten Eye**, when the white of the Eye seems to be all bloody.

A **Dimness**, the **Pin** or **Web**, when there is a Pearl or thin film, covering the Light, or ball of the Eye.

The **Haw**, this is a kind of Gristle, which covereth more then half the Eye.

The **Lunatick**, or **Moon-eye**, such as are Blind by times and fits; sometimes seeing well, other times stark blind.

The **Canker** in the Eye, comes from a corrupt blood in the head.

Diseases in the Ears and Head.

35. THE **Poll-Evil**, is like a Fistula growing between the Ears, and nape of the Neck.

An **Impostume**, a gathering in the Head or Ears, by some extream cold, which appears by Swellings.

The **Uives**, are Kernels growing under the Horse-ears.

The **Canker**, or Ulcer in the Nose, is a Disease that consumes the flesh, and makes it all raw within, and not being helpen in time, will eat through the Gristle of the Nose.

The **Gigs**, or Bladders in the Mouth; which grow in the inside of his Lips.

The **Lampass**, is a bleeding of the Mouth from the abundance of blood.

The **Barbles**, or Paps underneath the Tongue, which growing large hinders the Horse in feeding.

The **Tooth-ach**, or pain in the Teeth.

Diseases in the Neck and Throat.

36. THE **Crick** in the Neck.

The **Wens** in the Neck.

The **falling of the Crest**, caused through poverty, or when a Horse falleth away suddenly.

The **Vanginess** of the Mane, is a rankness of blood, which breaketh forth to a Scurf, or Scabbyness.

The **Swellings** of the **Withers**, or back, and gallings.

The **Wens** or **Knobs**, above the Saddle skirt.

The **Navil Gall**, is a bruise on the back behind the Saddle.

The **Swelling** of the **Back.**

Hide bound, when the skin cleaveth fast to the sides, and back, that it cannot be pulled from the flesh.

The **Glanders**, a run of the Horse Nose, with a corrupt humor; **Snivel.**

The **Strangullion**, or Squinancy, or Quinzy, an inflamation of the Kernels, on either side the Throat.

The **Strangle**, an inflamation of the Throat.

The **Mourning** of the **Chine**, a disease that consumes the Marrow in the back.

The **Cough**, or **Cold.**

The **Fretized**, broken or rotten Lungs.

The **shortness of Breath**, of some termed **pur-sick.**

The **Consumption**, an exulceration, or waste of the Lungs.

Inward Diseases of the Stomach and Belly.

37. S**Urfetting**, is through glut of Provender.

The **Hungry Evil**; a **greedinesS**, or emptiness, by lack of meat.

The **pain of the Liver**, is through its putrifaction.

The **Pain** or Disease of the **Gall**, is a stoppage or obstruction in the Receptacles of the Gall, that it can neither receive into the Bladder, or evacuate being full; which causeth a Costiveness by one, and yellowness of skin and Eyes with Jaundice.

The

The **Pain** in the **Spleen**, is a swelling, obstruction, inflamations and hard knobs of the same.

The **Yellows**, or **Jaundice**, a weakness of the body which causeth yellowness in the Eyes.

The **Cholick**, or Griping of the Guts, a Wind in the small guts.

The **Costiveness**, or belly-bound, when he cannot Dung easily.

The **Lax**, or Loseness of the body.

The **Bloody-flux**, is an avoiding of Blood with his Dung, which is through the exulcerations in his Guts.

The **Worms**, the **Bots**, the **Troncheons**; are Diseases that much pain horses, and are the gnawing, and biting of Worms in the Belly.

The **pain** of the **Kidneys**, is the Stone and Gravel there.

The **Pissing of Blood.**

The **Colt-Evil**, is the rankness of Nature, and want of vent, which makes the Yard sheath, and Cods swell.

The **Gonorrhea**, or shedding of the Seed; which is through abundance and rankness of Seed, or the weakness of the Stones, and Seed Vessels.

Outward Diseases on the Body.

38. THE **Falling of the Yard**, is a weakness of the Member.

The **Swelling of the Cods**, or Stones.

The **Incording**, or **Bursting**; is the falling of his Guts into the Cods.

The **Botch** in the **Groins**, a gathering of ill humors in the hinder parts between the Thighs, near the Cods.

The **Itch**, **Scab**, and **Mangyness**, is a foul scurf in divers parts of the body, through ill keeping.

The **Shoulder Wrinch**, a strain by a sudden turning.

The **Shoulder spait**, a slip or slide, which parteth the Shoulder from the Brest.

The **Shoulder Pight**, when the Shoulder point, or pitch is displaced by some great fall, rush, or strain.

Foundering in the **fore-legs**, when the Horse goes crouching on the hinder Legs, the fore being so stiff, that he is not able to move them.

The **Splent** in the Legs, or Thighs; is a spungy hard gristly bone, growing on the inside of the Shin-bone, which by making the Horse stark, causeth him to stumble. It is termed a **Screw**, if it be on the out-side.

The **Helander**, is a kind of Scab, growing in form of a line, or stroke, over-thwart the bent of the Knee.

The **Attaint**, or **upper attaint**; which is the swelling of the Master Vein, by reason the Horse doth overreach, and strike that sinew with the Toe of his hinder foot, which causeth him to halt. An Attaint is a clapping one Leg upon another, or by some other Horse treading upon his Heels.

The **false quarters**, is a soreness on the inside of the hoofs, which are commonly called quarters, which is as much as to say, crased unsound quarters, which comes from evil Shooing, and paring the Hoof.

The **Hault behind**, when a Horse hath any Sorance, either in the Hip, the Stiffle, the Hough, the Ham, the Leg, the Nether Joint, or in the pastern, or foot.

The **string Halt**, when he twitches his Leg suddenly, and so Halts much.

The **Spaven**, an old Halt, which is left as the horse warms in Travel.

The **Horse is hipt**, when his Hip-bone is removed out of its place.

The **Stiffling**, is when the stiffle bone is removed out of its place.

Foundered, is when he is fat, and by labour hath had his grease moulten within him; which causeth Lameness, and a Surteit going, **benumedness.**

The **Selander**, is a Scab in the Ham, which is the bent of the Hough.

The **Hough boony**, is a swelling upon the tip, or elbow of the Hough.

The **Curb**, is a long swelling below the elbow of the hough, in the great Sinew behind.

The **Pains**, a kind of Scab, full of fretting matter, and breedeth in the pasterns, for lack of clean keeping and good rubbing.

The **Mules**, or **Ribed Heels**, this is a Scab breeding behind the feet, somewhat above the neather joint, growing overthwart the fewter-lock; called the **Mellet.**

The **Wind galls**, are Bladders full of corrupt jelly, that grows on each side the joint of the feet, which causeth halting.

A **Wrench** in the neather joint, is by treading awry.

Enterfering, is the Horse trotting so narrow, that he hews one legg upon another; sometimes behind, sometimes before.

The **Shaket-Gall**, when the pasterns are hurt, either with Lock, or Halter.

The **Cratches**, or **Cratchins**, or **Rats-tails**, is a kind of long scab by rifts, growing right up and down in the hinder parts; from the Fewter-lock up to the curb, and cometh for lack of clean keeping.

The **Ring-bone**, is a hard Gristle growing upon the Cronet, and sometimes goeth round about the Cronet; if it grow in any other part of the Legg, it is called a **knot**, or **knob.**

The **Crown scab**, the same to Ring-bone.

The **Quitter Bone**, a hard round swelling upon the Cronet, between the Heel and Quarter, on the inside of the Foot.

The **Gravel**, is a fretting under the foot in the inner side, and sometimes in both sides together of the Heel, it comes by means of Gravel Stones getting between the hoof, or calking, or spunge, and the Shoe; which by treading eats into the quick.

The **Surbating**, a bating the hoof against the ground, by means of evil Shooing.

The **Prick in the sole** of the foot, is by means of treading of any thing that enters the sole of his foot; termed also **accloyd.**

The **Fin**, is the rising of the flesh in the Sole of the foot, where any prick or sore hath been healed.

The **Cloying**, is driving the Nail into the quick Hoof, and Shoo clenched and remaining.

The **Retreat**, is driving such a Nail, and seeing it goes a-miss, is pulled out again by the Smith.

The **Loosing of the Hoof**, when it parts from the cronet and foot; the casting of the hoof, when the Coffin falls quite away; the shrinking of the hoof, when they are kept too dry.

The **running of the Frush**; which is a rotten corrupt humour, that comes out of the Leg.

The

The **Malt-long**, or **Malt-worm**, is a cankerous sorrance, above the hoof, just upon the cronet.

Accidental Wounds or Distempers.

39. **Wounds**, are those Sores or Divisions of the parts of the Body, (called also **Ulcers**, **Gallings**) made by accident.

Tumors, are swelling Sores, or Impostumes.

Bruses, or **Swellings**, are caused through Blows with blunt Weapons.

Shoots, either with Arrows, or with the Harquebush, or Gun-shot.

Burning with Lime, or any hot fiery thing.

Biting of a Mad-Dog.

Hurts, by Tusks of wild Boars.

Stinging, and Biting of Serpents.

Lousiness, which cometh of Poverty and ill Keeping.

Broken bones, or put out of joint; called a **Fracture**.

Excoriations, is Sores in the skin.

Ruptures, are diseases in the Veins, breaking of Veins, or **incowdings**.

Veins to Blood a Horse in.

40. THE 2 Temple Veins.
2 Eye Veins.
2 Pallat Veins.
2 Neck Veins, the Organical Vein and
2 Plat Veins, which are in the Breast between the fore-legs.
2 Breast Veins.
2 fore-Thigh Veins, called the Shank Veins.
4 Shakel Veins before, or Fetlock Veins.
2 Toe Veins before, or hoof Veins.
2 Side Veins, called the Spur Veins.
2 Hough Veins, or the Kidney Veins, are in the inside of the Thighs.
2 Spaven Veins, in the inside of the hinder Legs, from the cambrel to the fetlock.
2 Flank Veins.
2 Hanch Veins, in his Hanch, or hinder Buttocks.
1 Tail Vein, running all a-long his Tail.
4 Cronet Veins, which are in the top of his Hoof, where the Hair is.
4 Shakel Veins behind, or fetlock Veins.
2 Toe Veins behind, or Hoof Veins.

By which it appears a Horse may be let Blood in 37 Veins, all which are easie to find, being they all lie in little Gutters, which by soft feeling with the Finger, you will immediately find.

Bones in a Horse.

41. IN the Head 2 Bones.
From the Forehead to Nostril 2.
Inferiour Gumbles, or Cheek-bones 2.
Teeth 40, whereof the Grinders are 24; the Canyne, or Tushes 4; and the Biting, or Fore-teeth 12, as *Aristotle* saith; yet others affirm but 28 Teeth.
Close Ribs in the Neck 7.
From the Reins to his hole 7 Ribs.
Commissures, or Bones in his Tail 12.
In the Shoulders 2 Regulæ.
From the Shoulder to Legs 2.
From Legs to Knees 2.
In the Knees two Supportets.
From the Shin to the Articles 2.
In the bottom of his Hoof, 16 small bones.
In the Breast 1.
Ribs 26. great and small.
Grinding Bones from hinder part, to the top of the (Reins 2.
From the Reins to the hinder part of the head 2.
From upper part of the Thigh to Cambrel, 2 little Ribs.
From Cambrel or Gamba, to the hair of the Pasterns 2.
In the hinder Hoofs, 16 little bones.
In the Back-bone, 33 Cross-ribs.
In the Heart a Small-bone.
So that with the Heart-bone, there is Bones in a Horse 171.

The Names of all the Bones of a Horse.

43. THe Head-bone, is the Bone that is in the fore-part of his *H*ead to the Nose.

The Jaw-bone, called also the Cheek-bone, or inferior Gumble.

The Rack-bone of the Neck, or close Ribs in the Neck

The Back bone, or Rain bones of his back.

The Ribs,

The Commissures, or Joynt bones of the Tail.

The *H*anch, or *H*ip-bone; called also the Columel or flat-bone of the hips; which hath 12 seaml in it.

The *H*uckle-bones.

The Spade-bone, the bone at the top of the Shoulder.

The Forcels, or canal bones; are the Bones above the Knee.

The Marrow-bones, is the bone above the bent of the Elbow.

The Thigh-bones.

The Shank-bones, the Leg-Bones, are the Bones under the bent of the Knees.

The Articles, are the short bones, between the pastern joint, and the hoof.

The Breast-bone.

The Ankle-bones, or Ankles, or pastern joint, or fitlock joint.

The Stiffle bone, is a little bone two inches long between the lower end of the Thigh and *H*ough.

The Cambrel, or Gamba-bone.

The Names or Terms of all parts of an Horse.

1. *Hair.*

43. THe **Hair** and **Hide**, is generally all the Hair and Skin of the Body.

The **Mane**, is the long hair on the Horse neck; the Maune.

The **Topping**, or fore-top; **Fuke.**

The **Fetter-lock**, or **Fet-lock**, the hair as groweth behind of the Feet; the **Fewter-lock.**

The **Cronet**, is the Hair as groweth over the top of the hoof.

The **Bills**, is the hair on the Eye-lids.

2. *Head, Neck and Breast.*

The **Crist**, or **Crest**, the Ridge or upper part of the Neck where the Mane groweth.

The **Neck**, all from the Head, to the Breast and Shoulders.

The **Brest**, or **Brisket**, or **Chest**; the forepart of the Neck at the Shoulder down to the fore-Legs.

The **star** in the Fore-head.

The **Rache**, down the Face, when the Hair there is, of another colour, contrary to the rest of the head.

3. *Body.*

The **Withers**, is the top of the Shoulder-blades, at the setting on of the Neck.

The **Back**, is the place where the Saddle is set.

The **Navel-Gall**, is the top of the back, or chine, just behind the Saddle-place.

The **Reins**, is all the middle of the back from Mane to Tail; the **Ridge** of the back.

The **Dock**, the Strunt, the Horse-tail.

The **Fundament**, or Tuel, the Arse-hole.

The **Sway**, or **swayed back**, is the hollow, or sinking down of the back-bone.

The **Thoppel** of a Horse.

The **Girth-place**, is the fore-part of the Belly.

The **Belly**, the middle of the Belly where the Navel is, the Navel place.

The **Flank**, the hinder part of his Belly, next the sheath.

The **Groins**, the hinder parts near the Thighs; each side the Sheath.

The **Sheath**, the loose Skin in which his yard is.

The **Yard**, is the Horse-Prick.

The **Nut**, is the bob at the end of his Yard.

The **Cods**, the skin in which the Stones are.

The **Stones.**

The **Fillets**, are the fore-parts of the shoulders next the Breast.

The **sides**, the neerer side; the further side; the rising side.

The **Buttock**, the hinder parts of the horse body.

The **top** of the **Buttock**, is that part next the ridge of the Back and Tail.

4. *Thighs and Legs.*

The **stifle**, or **stifle joint**, the first joint or bending next the Buttock, and above the thigh, which bends forwards.

The —— is the inward bending of the stifle.

The **Thigh**, is that part between the Cambrel and Stifle joint.

The **Cambrel** or **Elbow**, is the joint, or bending of the upper part of the hinder Leg, which bend backwards from the body; the **Camba.**

The **Ham**, or **Bight**, or **bought**, is the inward bent or bending of the Cambrel; it is also used for the bent of the Knees in the foremost Legs.

The **Elbow** of the Hough; the outward bending of the Ham.

The **Hough**, or **Leg**, or **Shank**, is from the Cambrel to the fetlock, or pastern joint of the foot.

The **small of the Leg**, is the small of the Legs both in the hinder, and foremost Legs.

The **Focil** of the Leg, is the

The **back sinews** of the Leg; is the back of the Leg above the Fetlock.

The **Pastern**, or **Fetlock joint**, or **Ankles**; is the joint at the Fetlock which bends in all the feet forwards.

The **Cronet**, the foot above the hoof to the Ankle joint: so named in all the feet.

The **Curb**,

The **Shoulder**, is that part which extends from the Withers to the top joint of the Thigh.

The —— is the top joint of the Thigh.

The **Thigh**, is from the bent of the Thigh to the Knee.

The **Knee**, is the middle joint of the foremost feet, which bends outwards.

The **further Leg before**, is the right Leg before.

The **next**, or **neerer Leg before**, is the left Leg of the **rising side before**, or the rising side.

5. *Feet.*

The **Hoof**, or Horn.

The **Coffin**, is the hollow of the hoof, in which the foot is fixed; the hoof fallen off.

The **Frush**, the tender part of the hoof next the heel, the **Sole** of the foot; the **Frog** of the foot; by some the **ball** of the foot.

The **Rift of the Hoof**, that part as is pared, or cut off being over long grown; the space between the Frush and the Heel.

The **Heel**, the rising in the middle of the Sole; narrow heel.

The **Toe**, the fore-part of the hoof; the quarter, the inside of the hoof.

The **Pastern**, or foot, that part under the Fetlock to the hoof.

Colours of Horses.

44. **White.**

Black.

Sad Iron Gray, black with tips of the hairs whitish.

Iron Gray, white, with tips of the hairs black.

Gray, is a darkish white.

Dark, or **black Bay**, a deep coloured brownish red, a **Chesnut** colour.

Bay, a light whitish brown red.

Flea bitten, white, spotted all over with small reddish spots; **Gray Flea-bitten.**

Dable-Gray, is a light Gray spotted, or shaded with a deeper Gray.

Dable Bay, is a light Bay, spotted with a deeper colour.

Dun

Dun, is a light hair colour, next to a white.
Mouse-dun, is a Mouse-colour.
Sorrel, is more lighter than a light Bay inclining to a yellow.
Bright Sorrel, is more lighter than the former.
Rount, is a kind of flesh colour, or a Bay intermixt with white and gray; a **Roan-colour.**
Gissel, is a light Rount, or light flesh-colour.
Py-bald, a Horse of two colours, as some part of him white, and other parts of him, Bay, Iron-gray, or Dun-colour.

To know the Age of a Horse.

45. THE Age is known by his Feet, Hoofs; but principally by his Teeth.

The first year he hath six Teeth above, and as many below.

At thirty months old, he changeth two above and two below.

At forty two months, he hath four new Teeth on both sides.

At four years old, then the Dog-Teeth fall out, and others come in their places.

Before six year old, the great Jaw-Teeth on the upper side fall out.

In the sixt year they grow again.

In the seventh year all the Teeth is in their full number, and they are all hollow; and from this time there is no certain knowledge of his age.

In the twelfth year, there is seen in them an extraordinary blackness.

Add to this, that so much as the Horse groweth older; so much his Teeth groweth longer.

The tenth year the Temples fall and begin to be hollow, and the Ey-brows Wax gray-haired; especially of dark coloured Horses, as Black, Bay, Chesnut; the gray Flea-bitten becometh white, and the white Flea-bitten becomes dapple-gray.

He hath as many wrinkles or plates in the upper part of his Broom, or bushing Tail, as he is years old.

The Eyes are of a deadly colour, dull and heavy.

An old Horse-Skin drawn up with ones Fingers abideth so a long time; but a young one falls down presently.

If the Bone at the high-most joint of the tail, at the setting on of the tail, next the body; if it stand out and can be felt, the Horse is young; if not felt, it is old and above ten at the least.

If in the upper tush you see a hole, it is young; but if it be worn smooth, and not to be seen, he is eleven years old at the least.

If the nether tush have a ring of new flesh about it discernable from the other, he is young; but if not discernable, but smooth and plain without difference, and the tush a little Blunted, he is inclining to age.

There are other Observations held, but these are the most certain; who so desires further instructions let them peruse *P. Vegetius* Cure of Horses; and *G. Markham* his Countrey Farm.

CXVII. He beareth Sable, an **Ass** Argent. Born by *Assil.*

A Fesse between 3 such S born by *Askerre.*

The **Assiovis**, or **Assioviculus**, or the **Ass-sheep**; is a kind of Beast, whose fore-part is like to the **Ass**, and the hinder part to a **Sheep**; which kind of Creature (as Mr. *Topsell* informs me, *fol.* 29.) was to be seen in the French Kings Court.

O a point G an Ass Jessant S born by *Esser.*

B an Ass with a Tower on his Back A born by *Eselsburg.*

O an Ass S is the Coat and Crest of *Esel Van Beeg.*

A the same Mounting G born by *Van Rietbum.*

CXVIII. He beareth Gules, an **Ass head erazed**, Argent; shot through the Nostrils with an Arrow, or Dart, Or. Feathered of the second, and headed Sable; is *Hockenhull* of *Hocknels* Crest.

The **Scythian Ass** hath horns, but of what form and fashion my Author declares not.

The **Albarach**, is a kind of white Beasts amongst the Turks, very like to an Ass.

CXIX. He beareth Azure, an **Ass ear**, Argent. The Ear after this manner and form, may as well be termed, an Hinds Ear, an Hares Ear, or an Ear of any other Beast, that have them long. This is born by the name of *Eareby.*

A 3 Hinds Ears G born by *Audice.*

Out of a Coronet 2 Ears G is the Crest of *Altmanstein.*

The like, one G the other A is the Crest of *Meallingen.* And *Sans* Crown, belongs to *Van Altendorf*; and also of *Knobell.*

CXX. He beareth Gules, a **Mule passant**, Argent which is born by *Moile.* This is a kind of Bastard Creature, engendred of an **Ass** and a **Mare**; their colour is brown, and some are of an ash-colour, with blackish Mane, and List down their Back and Tail.

An **Hinnus**, is less than a Mule, and are conceived of an **Horse**, and **She-Ass**; which are called also an **Hinnulus**, or **little Hinne**; because they never exceed the quantity of a young **Foal.** Some do affirm them to be bred of a **Bull**, and an **Ass**; or a **Bull**, and a **Mare.**

CXXI. He beareth Vert, an **Ass couched**, or **laid under his Burthen**, Or: **Bridled and Sadled**, Sable; the **Fardels** of his Loading Gules. This is the Standard, or Ensign of the tribe of *Issachar*, *Gen.* 49. 14. according to the Prophetical saying of *Jacob* to his Sons; *Issachar is a strong Ass couching down under his Burthen.* Shewing him thereby the virtue of Patience from the Emblem of that Creature.

TO

The Right Worshipful

Sir *THOMAS GROSVENOR*, of *Eaton*, Baronett;

And his much esteemed Brother *John Grosvenor*, Esq;

And to their Worthy Uncles, *Robert*, *Hugh*, and *John Grosvenor*.

IT is the surest way to make a Mans Name Immortal, either by strong Stone Buildings, or calling their Lands after their Names, or by leaving behind them to Posterity some Witty or Industrious Invention. But above all, David *tells us,* That the Righteous and Virtuous for their Works sake shall be had in everlasting remembrance. *If Vertue deserve a perpetual Remembrance, I must then Canonize you with your Antecessors, amongst those* English Worthies, *who in the midst of all the Fiery Trials of several late Rebellions, have stood to their Pious Principles of Faith and Loyalty; And that all True Hearts may follow their Example, is the Wishes of him who is* *Your Observant Servant*

Randle Holme.

CHAP. VIII.

1. THE four-footed Beasts mentioned in this Chapter, are of various and diverse kinds; some home-bred, others much remote; so that few of them I find mentioned in Coats of Arms; what are, I shall inform you all along who they belong unto, the rest accept only of their description.

I. He beareth Argent, a **Cat Vigilant,** (or upon his **Watch,**) proper. By the name of *Catesby*. This is the posture of any Cat when they are hunting and seeking for Prey; see *chap.* 8. *numb.* 56.

A 3 Cats passant in Pale S born by *Kent*.

Er. 3 such in Pale B born by *Adams*.

II. He beareth Azure, a **Dog Dormant,** Argent, spotted or branded, Sable. The Dog always when he lyeth down to Sleep, turneth himself round, and puts his Nose between his hinder Leggs; see more of Dogs, *chap.* 9. *numb.* 56, 57, 58. This is born by the name of *Lippage*.

III. He beareth Sable, a **Mimick Dog,** (or a **Getulian Dog,** Argent. This is a Dog that will imitate all things it seeth, for which cause some think it to proceed from an **Ape,** but in face, shape and back, it is like the **Hedg-hog,** having a short recurved body, long legs, shaggy hair, a short bushy tail, of a white colour; they are sometimes spotted, branded, or party coloured. This is born by *Minicke*.

The **Melitean Dog,** these are little Dogs also, which were accounted the Jewels of Gentlewomen, and are no bigger than common Ferrets or Weasels.

The **French Dog,** this is a little Dog not above a foot, or half a foot long; the less it is, the more delicate, having a sharp snout, short legs, little feet, long tail, the hair about his shoulders longer than ordinary, of a white colour.

IV. He beareth Gules, the **Head** of an **Assyrian Goat** (or of some called a **Bambyin Goat,** and some an **Indian Goat**) Argent, **Horned,** proper. There are two sorts of these Goats, the greater being as tall as an Ass, having long broad ears pendant, and go narrow again towards the bottom or end; under them next to the Neck, is two things like Dugs or Paps, which hang down from their Throat, having their Body and Tail like another Goat, only the hair is rough, but short; their under-lip reacheth further out than the top; their horns stand not aloft, but ly along the sides of the Neck, it is called also a **Mauritanian,** or **Lybean Goat.**

The lesser **Assyrian Goat** is described, *chap.* 9 *numb.* 21.

V. He beareth Gules, the head of a **Strepsiceros couped,** Argent, **horned,** Or. These Creatures differ in

P·M·R·D·D·Tho: Grosvenor de Eaton Bar.th

in nothing from the common Sheep, but only in the horns, for they bend not like them, but are streight, standing backwards, circled about; some like the Goats horns, others with a kind of Wreath work like the Unicorns horn; others have horns double bended too and again, as *numb.* 35. they are of a reddish colour on the body like a Hart. This is the Coat of *Zimzerin.*

A 3 such B born by *Saimering.*

VI. He beareth Vert, an **Arabian Sheep,** Argent. These Sheep are a little bigger than our vulgar Sheep in *England*; but of the same Wool, Figure of body, and colour, only their shins and forepart of their face, a little red, having short turning horns, with long woolly tails drawing on the ground for a foot or more. This is born by the name of *Ranell.*

The **Arabian broad tailed Sheep,** are of the said form, shape and colour, only differ in their broadness of the tail at the rump, which is near a cubit broad, but lower it went narrower, and at the end like to our Sheep tails.

The **Subus** is a kind of **Wild Sheep,** of a very bright yellow colour; it hath two large horns on the forehead, and liveth both in the Water, and on the Land.

S 3 such Sheep A is born by *Sidenhame.*

VII. He beareth Azure, a **Gena Pig-Cony** (or an **Indian Pig-Cony,** Argent. It is about the quantity of a Cony, but shorter bodied; it hath two little round low eats, and pil'd, without hair, short leggs, five claws apeece behind, and six apeece before; teeth like a Mouse, but no tail, and the colour variable, some white, some yellowish, some branded or party coloured; I have seen of them, that their fore-part, to the Belly and Back hath been all white, and the hinder part all yellow; their crying is just like a young Pigg. This is born by the name of *Grumling.*

S three such O is born by *Lodrome.*

VIII. He beareth Argent, an **Hamster,** or **Field-Mouse,** proper. It is a little Beast about bigness of a **Rat,** living in the Fields, in the Earth, at the root of Corn; the head is of diverse colours, the Back red, the Belly white, when it sits thus, it resembleth the posture of a **Bear,** it hath a little short Mouse-like tail; and sitting on its Breech, useth its fore-feet instead of hands, which are like to a **Moles,** but not so broad, it is called a **Crycetus.**

The **Arcomys,** described by St. *Jerome,* is by some taken to be the foresaid Creature, which abound in *Palestina,* dwelling always in holes of Rocks, and caves of the earth, not exceeding the quantity of an **Hedg-hog,** and of a compounded fashion, between a **Mouse** and a **Bear.**

The **Norician Mouse** is long in body, like to a domestick **Weasel,** tail very short, the colour of the hair like to a grey **Coneys,** but more bright; it wanteth ears like a **Mole,** but hath holes; the teeth are like **Mice.**

The **Scythian Mouse,** or **Brand Squirrel Mouse,** or **Pontick flying Mouse;** it goeth by all these names; the hair at roots is a black brown, and the ends Ash colour, having a round circle of hair about the two former feet, which they call Wings, wherewith they are thought to fly from Tree to Tree; the tail all hairy, four or five fingers long, like a **Squirrel,** their ears shorter and rounder at the top than a Squirrel.

The **Nut Mouse, Hasell,** or **Filbert Mouse,** so named, because they feed on all such Nuts. This is a sleeping Mouse like the **Dormouse,** the colour is red, like the Hasell, and as large as a **Squirrel,** the back like a Mouse colour, the head more red, his ears great, long, and round at the end, pilled without hair, the belly white, so are his legs, and neithermost of his tail, towards the tip, white; his nostrils and feet reddish; the tail long and rough, but most at the end with white hairs; eyes black, hanging out of his head, the Beard partly white, partly black; both above and beneath his ears, and about his eyes, and the upper part of his tail, next the body, all black; on his fore-feete he hath four distinct Toes or Clawes, and five apeece on the hinder, and from the bending of the Knees, to the tip of the Nailes, are altogether bald and without Haire; they clime trees like **Squirrels.**

The **Sorax,** is in nothing differing from the Nut-mouse, but onely that it hath hairy Eares; and maketh a Skreekching noise in her gnawing.

IX. He beareth Argent, a **Barbary Deere,** or a **Deere-Goate,** or **Tragelaphus,** Proper. The horns thereof are like a **Goats,** but more crooked and Bending going backwards like **Rams.** His Face, Nose, and Ears are like a Sheeps, his Codds thick, Leggs and Taile white and like a **Sheeps;** the hair on his Shoulders and Breast, Black; with two gray Spots on his Flanks, on either side; the Nostrills black, and the Face white, so is the Belly. se chap: 9 numb: 23 This Coate is born by *Deiregoffell.*

The **Mauritanian Deere-Goate,** is cloven footed short, and thicke Necked, the colour black and red, set one with another: a beard like a **Goat,** but turning more backwards, his haire long to his Knees, a mane full of Bristles through his whole Neck, but especially on the Shoulder blades, where it standeth like Bunches, being darker then the rest of the body. The hinder leggs more hairy than the former, and the two outward cloves of the hooves in the former feete, both longer and stronger, then the inward cloves; and contrary the inward cloves of the hinder feete, more longer and stronger, then the outward Cloves: it hath onely six teeth on the neither side, the Hornes are like the **Rams,** crooked and distinguished in the midle by a black line all their length.

X He beareth Or, an **Hipellaphus head,** Couped, Proper. born by the name of *Hornwell.* This is a beast bodied in all respects like to a **Deere,** cloven Hoofed, short Taile, bearded all under the sides of his Chops, and his Throate, hanging down like to a **Goat,** the higher lipps over hanging the lower. the hornes standing broad out from either side at the temples, and like the **Roes** horns for forme and shape. The females have no hornes, but a Bunch of flesh under their throats, which is hairy and hangeth down. se numb: 28

A the whole beast G is born by the name of *Van Velluf*

XI. He beareth Argent, a **Shew,** or an **Erd-Shew** or a **Shew-Mouse,** Proper. by the name of *Shrome.* I find this Creature goeth under severall names besides, as a **Mole-Mouse,** a **Mole-Shew,** or a **Musk-Mouse.** because, being dryed it smelleth like Musk, espe-

especially the skin It is as big as a **Mouse**, and of a **Weasell** colour, and supposed to be begotten between a Mouse and a Weasell, but that can neither be true, or probable; The colour is Redesh with black on the Back, and yellowish on the Belly, haveing a long sharp Nose, turned up like a **Swine**,; a short small taile, and a sharp voice. The eyes very little, scarce disearnable; the teeth small, and stand double in the mouth; their biteing is very Poisonous.

The **Shrew Woman**, taketh her name from this Venomous creature, they are generally known to be Sable mouthed, of a Poisonous breath, whose voice stingeth like a **Scorpion**, they are the most------Creatures that GOD made, and the greatest Plague to Man; insomuch that it is a common Proverb with us (*I Be-shrew thee*) that is, I wish thee no more hurt or evil, than the biting of one of these kind of **Vermine.**

XII. He beareth Argent, a **Rat Seiant**, proper, I have, *chap.* 7. *numb.* 110. said something of **Rats** and **Mice**, only in this place give you the form of the Rats posture; it is ever upon three accounts thus, *viz.* when it siteth, when it waiteth for it's prey, and when it is feeding; in all which it gathereth it self together, seting up his back. There are found some Rats white with red eyes, but I judge such are so by reason of great age. This is born by the name of *Rateley.*

O 3 such S is born by *Ratgrave.* & *Ratbach.*

The **Water Rat**, is in all respects answerable to the **Land Rat**, except the Snout or Beak, which is rounder and blunter; they live in runing waters and ponds; not in great rivers. A 3 such S was born by *Mamilne* an ancient Bishop.

XIII. He beareth Argent, a **Cynoprosopy's head couped**, Proper. born by the name of *Cumber.* There are some nations (as the Author of **Man Transformed** p. 245 informes me) placed betweene the Equinoctiall and the Tropick of Capricorn, on that side which is called *America*, who have faces resembling **Dogs faces**, with flat noses, and **Hound** like eares, they are called by the *Latines*, *Cynoprosopi.* Yet they are not so naturally, but made so by Art, for those people from antiquity held it a singular beauty to have their noses flatt, so that when any child was born, their father or mother never failed to flat or quash down that part of the face; as the like I have seen and known to be done to **Little Dogs**, to make them flatt and turn-up noses, which Ladies delight in and keep for fancy and pleasure.

The **Margasans**, are a people bordering upon the *Cynoprosopians*, which have **Dogs faces** like theirs.

Pliny writeth of a people in *Scythia*, which had **Dog-like heads**, and that there are a certaine people in *Tartary* who have **Dogs faces & heads**, yet the women have Human visages.

In *Nicoverra* a citty of *India*, there are men that have **Dogs heads.** In the Iland called *Macumeran*, which is a larg and faire Isle, they have heads like **Hounds.**

And in the Island named *Daganian*, (of some writers *Angamian*) the inhabitants have heads like **Dogs**, and live by feeding on Human flesh; that both men and women have tailes at their Rumps like Dogs, and teeth like Dogs; and that they cannot speak, but bark and howl as Dogs, and make Signs with their Hands and Fingers, as Deaf and Dumb Men use to do; that they engender with Women (*More Canino*) accounting any other way of Copulation shameful; but all these additiments are rather to be read than believed.

XIV. He beareth Sable, a **Ferret**, Or, with a **Coller** and **String fired** to a **Plumett** in Base, Argent. Their body is long, longer for the proportion than their quantity may afford; they are two Spans long, but very thin and small; there are of them Black and White on the Belly, but most commonly of a yellowish sandy colour and whitish, the eyes red and fiery; his voice is a whining cry; see *chap.* 7. *numb.* 108. This is born by the name of *Ferretter.*

XV. He beareth Argent, a **Malabars head couped**, proper; it is reported in *Purchas Pilgrimage*, and *Herbert* in his Travels, that both Men and Women of *Malabria*, had the Lappets of their ears open, and so broad and long that they hung down to their shoulders, and the longer and wider that they be, the more they are esteemed amongst them; which they effect, by hanging ponderous things to them.

Ancient Writers speak of some *Indians*, whose ears did reach unto the ground. And *Pomponius* of these, or some like them, saith they are called *Fanesios* or *Sutmalos*, because they use their Ears for a Couch to Sleep on.

Pliny makes a report of a Nation about *Pontus* and the *Scythian* Islands, who being otherwise Naked, have Ears so large, that they **invelop** or lap their whole bodies within them. And that in the borders of *India* there are Men who cover themselves all over with their Ears.

There is an Island near the *Moluccas*, where a people are which have such vast ears.

The **Fanesians**, a People in *India* have their ears dilated to such a Magnitude, that they cover the rest of their bodies with them, and have no other clothing.

The **Arucettonians** are a people that inhabit the Island *Arucetto*, which is amongst the *Molucca's*, which are not above a Cubit in height, having ears of such bigness, that they lye upon the one, and cover themselves with the other.

The **Carabeus**, or **Carabes**, are a Nation in *Guinea*, upon the borders of *Wiapoco*, where the people have ears of an extraordinary bigness; supposing the same to be made by Art, and effected by them as an excellent Garb of Gallantry; but of these kind of eared people, if any desire farther satisfaction, let him peruse that work intituled, *Man Transformed*, *Scene* 8. *pag.* 141. &c.

XVI. He beareth Azure, the **Brasilian Land Crocodile**, proper. This kind of Serpentine Creature hath a long tail and four feet, the foremost having 5 claws apeece, and behind 4 claws apeece; the skin is covered all over, with an equal, smooth, and fine coloured scale, which are white on the Belly, and greater than in other parts, the tail is marked all over with certain white and yellow spots. This is born by the name of *Gutter-staine.*

XVII. He beareth Gules, a **Scincus**, or a **Scinke**, Argent. The Scinke is a kind of Land Crocodile, or taken to be some Beast like to a **Crocodile**, or to a **Lizard**; it hath cross lines on its back, of a white or dusky

dusky colour; the upper part of the body is dusky, the head, belly, feet, tail are white, with the appearance of some scales, or rather the skin is figured in the proportion of scales; upon each foot they have five distinct claws or fingers.

The **Phattage** is a little Beast in *India*, very like to the **Scinke** or **Crocodile** of the Earth, having sharp scales, as cutting as a Saw.

The **Gorgon Crocodile**, described by *Pliny*, to be a Beast having his Scales growing or turning to his head from his tail, quite contrary to other scales, which are from the head to the tail.

XVIII. He beareth Argent, a **Stellion erected**, Gules. See more of the **Stellion**, *chap.* 10. *numb.* 17. I having caused this to be set in this posture, to shew how these kind of **creeping Serpentine Creatures** (having short legs) ought to be drawn, and not on their feet, like other Beasts, as in old time they were made, as I have seen them. This is born by the name of *Stelliod.*

G 3 such O born by *Auger.*

The *French* Armorist *Bara*, giveth an example of 2 Lizards (Creatures like this) erected one against the other, which he termeth **Rampand**, a Blazon very unfitly applied to such Creatures, to whom **Mounting**, **Leaping**, or **Skipping** are more proper.

XIX. He beareth Gules, the **Head** of a **Calitrich Ape**, Argent. By the name of *Ferth.* This is termed also a **Bearded Ape.** These will live no where else but in *India* and *Ethiopia*; they are very Apish and Playful; see *chap.* 10. *numb.* 1. their bodies are all white, the head, and tip of their tails only yellow.

G a demy Calitrich Ape A wreathed about the head, the ends flotant is quartered by *Parth* of *Austria.*

XX. He beareth Argent, a **Lizard**, Vert, **counter-going**, a **Newte** or **Asker**, proper. These are distinct Creatures, of which there are several sorts and colours, as you may see *chap.* 10. *numb.* 10. This is generally called by the name of a **Green Lizard**, but in the Summer time they are paler; they are altogether in Meadows and green Fields. The Lizard is born by *Levett.*

The **Newte, Asker**, or **Water Lizard**, are one and the same Creature, of several names; they are for the form and shape like the **Lizard**, only smaller; they live in Standing Waters, Pools, Ditches, &c. they are yellow, and sometimes blackish on the backs, and whitish on the throat and belly, or with white small spots on the sides and belly; yet sometimes there are of them that are of a dusky earthy colour, and towards the tail yellowish; their fore-feet have four fingers and claws, and the hinder have five apeece.

The **Coydyll** is like a **Lizard**, but it hath Gills and no Finns, the beak or snout is very blunt and dull, sharp teeth; the claws of the fore-feet are four apeece, and the hinder five; having a fleshy Fin growing all along from the crown of his head, to his tail, upon his back; it is supposed to be a kind of **Water Lizard.**

B 3 Askers heads couped O born by *Auger*, alias *Alsager*, or *Alsacher*, of *Cheshire.*

XXI. He beareth Gules, the **Head of a Lapon Monkey issuant**, proper. This is a kind of Monkey that inhabits the *Lapones* and *Numidia*; for stature, it is the bigness and shape of a Man, for by his face, hands, knees, and secret parts you would judg him to be a **Wild Man**; for he is altogether overgrown with hair, with a long slender tail, **Greyhound like**; the females have Brests hanging down like a **Woman**; they are of a yellowish colour. This Coat is born by *Laponger.*

XXII. He beareth Argent, a **Cynocephale**, or a **Baboon**, proper. It is a Creature that hath the face of a **Dog**, and their other parts like a **Man**, with a short bunting tail, as if it were cut off in the middle; black haired, or of a blackish brown, on their backs; their feet, belly, and tail less hairy, of a tawney brown; the hinder part of the Buttock where they sit, pild, and without hair, red and bright eyes, they have a grim and fearful face, strong and longer teeth than a **Dog.** His Genital Member is larger than might match the quantity of his other parts; and it is most true (though strange) that they are brought forth Circumcised, at the least-wise in the appearance.

A **Tartarine**, or a **Magot**, a Beast much like a **Baboon**, as appeareth by his natural Circumcision; his Voice is like the squeaking of a **Mouse**; his Aspect and countenance was fierce and fearful; his eye-brows overhanging his eyes, nose and mouth like a Dog, but shorter, turning up a little; short round ears like a Man, all hairy on the brest and shoulders, a long tail, with all the rest of the parts according to the **Baboon.**

The **Acephale**, a Beast without a head, whose eyes and Mouth are in the Brest; the shape in all other parts answering the **Baboon.**

XXIII. He beareth Sable, an **Egopitherus head**, Argent. This is also termed the head of an **Ape-Goat**, as having a mixt resemblance of two sorts of Beasts in them; as this is, in head, face and horns, from the Loins downward, a **Goat**; but in his Belly, Breast, and Arms, resembles an **Ape.** This Beast see *chap.* 10. *numb.* 4. which for the strangeness thereof, was by the ancient *Grecians* received for a god, naming it **Pan**; as they did likewise the **Satyr.** This Blazon is born by *Zim.*

The **Arctopithecus**, or the **Bear-Ape**, is a Beast resembling both kinds; see *chap.* 10. *numb.* 51.

The **Leontopethecus**, a Beast resembling a **Lion** and an **Ape.**

The **Cynocephalus**, having the faces of **Dogs**, and bodies like **Men**, or **Apes.** See *numb.* 13. 15.

The **Norwegian Monsters**, or **Wild Men**, they are Beasts in the shape of Men (as Mr. *Topsell* relateth) which have such unresistable Strength, that they can pull Trees of a mean stature up by the roots, and tearing the Boughs from the Bodies, with the Stock or Stem thereof they fight one with another.

XXIV. He beareth Argent, a **Subulons** (or a **Bycards**) **head**, proper. These are a kind of **Hart**, having streight and unforked horns, except one branch; they live in the Mountains of *Jura*, near the Lake *Lemnus*: they live amongst the **Stags** and **Harts**, and are of their colour. This head of a Subulon, is born by the name of *Subell.*

XXV. He

XXV. He beareth Or, a **Palmed Deer Head,** proper; or a **Palmed Bucks head trunked,** proper. This is a kind of Deer with a broad branched horn, each branch shooting out into smaller forks like the Fingers of a Mans hand from his Palme. This is born by the name of *Palmaine*.

G three such O born by the name of *Falham*.

XXVI. He beareth Argent, two **Foxes saliant, endorsed, looking back** at an **Hinds head,** all proper. Born by the name of *Foxcroft*.

The like is born by *Salio* an *Italian*.

XXVII. He beareth Argent, a **Fox sejant,** Gules. By the name of *Foxseat*. See *chap.* 7. *numb.* 106. They are generally of a reddish, yellow, or Sand colour, and more white towards their Throat and Belly, and at the tip end of their Tail.

In *Muscovia* is both black and white Foxes, and black and ash-coloured.

The **Dusky Fox** hath his Throat sprinkled and darkned with Coal Dust upon white, so as the ends of the hair are black, and the foot or bottom part next the Skin, all white, the rest of the body reddish.

The **White Fox** hath a pure white Throat and Belly, the rest red, or Sand colour.

The **Sky colour** or **Bleewish Fox,** hath a bright sky colour under their Throat.

The **Crucigeran Fox,** or the **Cross bearing Fox,** or the **Crossed Fox**; having their backs, from the tip of the Nose, to the end of the Tail, a black list, or line; and overthwart the Shoulders; and down the out-sides of the fore-feet to the Toes, another black line, which make a perfect Cross on the Foxes back; the rest of the colour answerable to the vulgar Fox.

The **Spotted Fox** is the same in colour and nature as the common Fox; but is aspersed over with black spots.

XXVIII. He beareth Argent, the head of an **Hypelaphus** (or the **Hart Horse.**) It is a kind of **Wild Horse** in *Polonia*, which hath Horns like a **Hart, recurved,** or turned contrary to other Horns, forwards to the Nose, on either side the Face; they are bodyed like a **Horse,** only are cloven-footed, like a **Deer.**

The **Equiferus,** or the **wild Horse of Ethiopia**; they have two long venomous teeth, standing out of their Mouth, and have Hoofs or are cloven-footed, like Deer; with a long Mane, growing all along their backs, to their tail; they are of **an untame** nature.

The **Indian Wild Horse,** hath but one horn.

The **Alpian wild Horse,** is of an ash-colour, with a black list down his back; and them of *Scythia*, are clean white.

Equicervus, is a kind of Horse, of a compound kind and shape, between a **Horse** and a **Deer,** and is called a **Buck** or **Deer-horse**; having a well compact body, long and lean Leggs, cloven hoof, short tail, and in all parts you would judge him to be a **Hart,** but in his head and Ears, a **Mule**; and in his Horns, a **Roe**: the upper Lip hangs over the nether, almost as much as an **Elk**; his Mane like a **Horse,** but thinner, and standing more upright. It is of a Mouse, or ash-colour, but growing older, it is more yellowish; especially in the extream parts of his body; the hair smooth, but most of all on his Leggs; but under his Belly, in the inner part of his Knees, the top of his Neck, Breast, Shoulders, and Back-bone, not so smooth. It uttereth a Voice like the grunting of a Swine, being without her Female; see *numb.* 10.

Argent an Equicervus proper. Born by the name of *Horburgh*.

XXIX. He beareth Argent, a **Gulon,** (or **Guly-gut**) proper, **Squeesing** himself between two Trees, fixed upon a Mount out of Base, Vert. It is a devouring Creature thought to be engendred of an **Hyena,** and a **Lioness**; some think of a **Wolf** and a **Dog**: It hath the Face and Beard of a **Cat,** round Ears, the Body of a roagh shagged Dog, and a Tail like a Fox, black of colour; his Feet and Nails sharp; Hair hard and sharp, his Skin rusty. When he hath eaten his fill, that his belly stands out, and that he can eat no more; he betakes himself to 2 trees that grow near together, and their drawetb through his body, by pressing whereof he driveth out the meat which he hath eaten, and being so empty returneth and devoureth as afore. This is a fit Emblem, and truly the badge of a Glutton. And is thus born for the Crest of *Van Quitzow* of *Saxony*.

XXX. He beareth Vert, a **Mannis head couped,** Argent. This Beast goeth under several names, as **Mannus** or **Mannulus**; being little **low Horses,** conceived of a **Bull** and a **Mare,** or a **Bull** and an **Ass,** between whose Ears there are two bony bunches about the bigness of a Walnut, which doth demonstrate that the Syre was a Bull; they want their upper Teeth, and their under Chap (as some say) doth stretch forth it self behind the upper, as it is in many Fishes. It is also termed a **Burdus,** from its bearing burtheus, being very gentle and easy to be handled. Of others termed **Junus,** or **Ginnus**; and **Himus,** or **Hinnulus.**

The **Befus,** is a kind of beast, which in the former part is an **Ass,** and in the hinder parts a **Sheep.**

The **Hinus,** is less than a **Mule,** but more red, having Ears like a **Horse**; and a Mane and Tail like an **Ass**; which is the same (as I conceive) to the Mannus, but they say, it is conceived, by an **Horse,** and an **Ass,** or **Mule.**

XXXI. He beareth Argent, a **Bonicervus head couped,** proper. This is a beast in form and countenance between a **Hind** and **Cow,** and is therefore called a **Bonicervus,** or **Buselaphus,** or a **Cow-hart.** It hath a long thin Head and Ears, lean and slender Leggs and Shin; the Tail about a foot long, like a **Cows**; his upper part yellowish and smooth, his nether part black and rough; the hair of his body betwixt yellow and red; with a kind of hairy star, in his Forehead, and about the Horns, which are black wrinkled at the bottom, but smooth at the top, turning and meeting as it were in the middle, then flying off again to a great distance, then bending again, so as the tops of the Horns do not stand a-sunder above two fingers bredth; it hath eight teeth, and wants them above; it hath two small Udders under the belly like a Heifer. This is the Coat of *Boniman*.

A the like head B horned O is born by *Brog* a *Polander*.

O 3 such G horns tipped A by *Albering* an *Italian*.

XXXII. He beareth Argent, an **Helvetian wild Rock Goats head, issuant,** in Base, proper. This beast also hath a double name, some call it a **wild Goat**; others the **Alpian wild Goat.** This is the true form of the head of it, though I have mentioned it again by an over-sight, *chap. 9. numb.* 23. the horns stand upright on the head, and then bend a little backwards in the ends, black of colour, the Eyes red, they are between red and brown, red in the Summer, brown in the Winter. There is of them seen white and black, in distinct colours one from another; some term it, a **Shamois.** This is Born by *Shalm nis* a *Spaniard*.

Out of a Crown a Demy-Alpian wild Goat S is the Crest of *Fuger Van Fridberg*.

G the like A to the sinister side; is both Coat and Crest of *Van Kagewaitz*.

XXXIII. He beareth Or, an **Elks head issuing** out of Base, proper. They are in shape and body like a **Roe,** or **Hart**; having spotted skins; their Mane is divers, both on their Neck, and under their Throat it buncheth like a beard, or curled lock of hair; they have very short Necks, their Ears and back are very long and hanging down; their colour for the most part is like a Hart, and sometimes white. Some are of a russet-colour and in the Winter time brown and blackish coloured; see *chap. 9. numb.* 10. This is born by the name of *Elkine*.

G an Elk proper, born by *Elthorne*. The same is born by *Konisperg*.

XXXIV. He beareth Argent, an **Ure-Ox head,** Gules, **Horned,** Sable. These **wild Oxen** differ from all other kinds, (rehearsed in either **Bulls, Oxen, Buffes,** or **Bisons,**) although some have taken them for **Bisons.** But in outward proportion it differeth but little from the **Bull**; he is very thick, with his back bunched up, body long, short Legs, Eyes red, a broad Mouth and Head; the Temple and Crown hairy, a short beard upon his Chin of a black colour, his other parts, as Face, Sides, Leggs and Tail of a reddish colour; the Horns short bending in and out again; being all circled about at certain distances from the head to the point; in proportion of body they are twice as big, and more, then the **Bull** or **Ox.** This is Born by the name of *Urtaure*.

The **Bos-Camelita,** or the **Camel-Ox**; these are Beasts round between *Florida* and *Palma* in the new found World, which are a kind of **wild Bull,** whose horns are a foot long, and on his back he hath a **Tumour,** or **Bunch** like a **Camel**; his hair all over his body is very long, but especially under his Chin, and his colour, like a yellow **Bule.**

The **Libian Ox,** is one kind of Ox there, whose horns grow downwards, and for that end they are fain to feed going backwards, because the broadness of their horns doth cover their Ey-sight, having no benefit of their Eyes, in seeing forward.

The **Indian Ox,** have altogether whole hoofs, and but one horn, and are said to be as high as Camels, the horn to be four-foot broad. *Ptolomeus* doth report, that he saw an horn of an **Indian Ox,** which did hold in the breadth of it thirty gallons. Some of these Oxen have three horns.

The **Arachotan Ox,** is of a black colour, with broad and upright horns, with their back bending a little downward.

On a wreath O and G 2 Ox horns O is the Crest of *Hoon Van Cartyls*.

XXXV. He beareth Azure, the **double bended Horns** of a **Strepsiceros, fixed** upon the **scalp,** proper. At the bottom or root they are dusky and rugged, growing less and less to a sharp point, at the top wherein they are smooth and black. There is of these Beasts that have straight horns, as *numb.* 5. which are the most general way of bearing them; see *numb.* 39. therefore it is, that these horns being the more rare, are termed for distinction, either the **bended,** or **double bended horns** of a **Strepsiceros.** *R. Walton* in his Engraven book of Beasts, term this, an **Indian Deer.**

A the like horns, Sable tipped O is born by *Legern*, an *Almaign* Family.

A the like G born by *Sachzenheim*. The Crest the same.

XXXVI. He beareth Argent, the head of a **Rhinoceros couped,** and his **foot cut off under the knee,** proper. This is the true shape of the head and foot; which is by *Pliny*, and others thus described, he is equal to an **Elephant** for height, and length; though some say it is bigger in both; for his form it cannot fitly be resembled to any Beast, for out of his Nose groweth a horn upward to his Eyes; he hath on his body (besides several smaller) six principal Shells, Scales, or Shields; the greatest comes over his back, and compasseth the two sides, which are veined on the side with thick and sharp pointed Quils like the points of the Wings of a **Dragon,** coming from the fall of his back to the middle of his Belly; two other Shields cover his two Shoulders, pointed towards the Shoulder, then spreading it self round, and at the lower part straight compassing about the Leg just at the Knee: two such other Shields, round at top, and inclining to a bavel or declining line, compassing about at the lower part the hinder Leggs about the Knee part; and the other shield or scale, lyeth upon the Buttock and back parts down to the Hams, or Thighs; all which five last said shields, are wrough with certain purple spots upon a reddish yellow ground, after the manner and work of a Tortoise shell; his Ears and Fore-head are hairy of a red colour, the Leggs are all scalled down to the hoof, after the manner of the scaling of the Dragons Leggs; the hoofs are parted into three (some say four) distinct Claws outwardly appearing so, but they are joined altogether in one intire hoof inwardly; the horn on his Nose is flat, not round, sharp at the end and rough and knotty and (as it were) composed of splented piece joined together, with the edges standing out; the Head and Face covered with confused and unorderly scales as small shields, some round, some half round, some square, some again three-square; his Neck covered with a round, yet pointed scales, large and one above another, as if it had a scaly rough band about his Neck; upon the top of his Neck just over the Shoulder lyeth another large scale which hath a small wreathed horn in the midst of it as it were set in an escalloped socket; the

Lips swelling, and as they were cut into divisions or joints, like the back of a jointed Caterpillar; the Tail is short, having some long and thin stradling hairs set all over it. I am the fuller in the description of this Beast, then I would have been, had my Graver done his part; but seeing his hand was out in the Figure, *chap.* 9. *numb.* 32. accept of this to make it up.

The Head O in a S Field, is the Coat of *Don Thanrald*, a *Spaniard*.

A 3 such feet, G is born by *Van Rogenford*.

XXXVII. He beareth Gules, an **Oyx** (or **Oynx**) **head couped**, Argent, **Horned** Or. It is a kind of **wild Goat**, differing in nothing but in this, that the hair groweth averse (not like other Beasts, falling backwards to his hinder parts) but forwards towards his *Head*. In quantity it resembles the **Roe**, having a beard under his Chin, his colour white, or pale like Milk; his Mouth black and some spots upon his Cheeks, his Back-bone reaching to his head, his *Horn* standing upright and sharp; out of the middle of his Head. *Aristotle* and *Pliny* say, that the **Oyx horn** bendeth backward, like the Horns of a **wild Goat**. Others that he hath 4 *Horns*. Some write that it is a small Beast and watry, and of that nature as the **Dormouse** is, for all the Winter he sleepeth, and is as if he were dead, but in Summer awaketh, and cometh to Life again.

The **Indian Oyx**, is said to have four *Horns*, and it may be that both there, and else-where, in diversities of Regions, there may be bred diversity of statures, colours, hair, and horns.

G an Orix head couped A is born by *Obism* of *Rome*.

B 3 such erazed O is born by *Zepaim* of *Poland*.

XXXVIII. He beareth Vert, the head of a **Deer-Goat**, Argent. This Beast doth in all respects resemble the Goat, both in Beard, the rough shagged hair, and the whole proportion of body; except the horns, which turn forwards at the point and not backwards, they being also circled, and not in knouches, or indents, as the Goats are; their body is of a whitish yellow colour on the back. Yet I have seen of these of a black brown. This is Born by the name of *Abeladame*.

XXXIX. He beareth Sable, the **Attire** (or Horns) of a **Goat**, Or. fixed upon the Scalpe, Argent. Some term them the Horns of a **Strepsiceros**; as *numb.* 5. 35. This is born by the name of *Innshall*.

V the like O born by *Colmar* of *Alsatia*.

The like A is the Crest of *Showenburg*.

XL. He beareth Argent, an **Ichneumon** (or **Indian Mouse**) proper. This is the figure of it according as it was taken out of *Oppianus Poems*, as it was found in an old Manuscript; see it described in *chap.* 7. *numb.* 111. It is of a yellow colour, but being angry the Bristles stand upright, which then makes it appear of a double colour, being white and yellowish, by lines or rows, in equal distances entermingled; the body something longer than a **Cat**, the Nose black and sharp, as a **Ferret**, without a beard; the Ears short and round; the Leggs black, five claws on the hinder Feet; the Tail thick towards the Rump, they live both by Land, and in the Water.

A the like S is born *Jelita Poholit*, a *Polander*.

XLI. He beareth Argent, a **Rat** in his **watching and feeding posture**, proper. It is termed a **Rat vigilant**, or **possant**; for in either of these postures he gathers himself in a short lump, (as it were) and so sitteth. See *numb.* 12. and *chap.* 7. *numb.* 110.

The **Mouse** is less then the **Rat** by four times, and is in all respects made like the **Rat** in form and colour, being a blackish dusky colour, more white on the belly; having a long head, short and round Ears, short Leggs, long Feet, sharp Claws, black Eyes, long Tail a little hairy; but most generally pil'd and without hair; see *numb.* 110. as abovesaid. There are also white **Mice**, which have red sparking fiery Eyes.

The Mouse with an Owl upon it, is the Crest of *Standish* of *Standish* in *Lancashire*.

A Rat or Mouse in a Cats Mouth Sejant is the Crest of *Van Caten*.

XLII. He beareth Argent, a **Raingers** (or **Rain-Deers**, or **Reyners**) **head, issuing out of Bale**, proper; see *chap.* 7. *numb.* 86. The similitude of this Beast, is much like to a **Hart**, but it is much bigger, it beareth three orders, or rows of Horns on his *Head*; he changeth his colour according to the time of the year, and place he feedeth in; because some of them have been found to be the colour of **Harts**, others of **Asses**; this Beast is full of long Brisles, or strong hair from the Throat, to the bottom of the Breast, which stands out Mane-like; their Leggs hairy, the hooves hollow and moveable; the *Horns* are generally white; yet sometimes of the colour of Harts-horns. This is Born by *Raingifer*.

The **Female Rain Deer**, have no Horns; horns in all things like the Males; yet they have long side Manes from the Crown to their backs, which is so long and shagged that it covers the Females Ears.

A a Rainger proper; is the Cognizance of *Rainger* of *Ringlow*. The same with Collar and Chain O is born by *Terwall*.

O the head couped G is born by *Leall*.

XLIII. He beareth Vert, a **Marmot**, (or **Alpine Mouse**) Or. This is a kind of **Squerril Mouse**, I may call it, it is in bigness between a **Hare** and **Coney**; but more fat and of a thicker body, they sit on their Buttocks, and use their foremost feet instead of hands. Their back is broad, and for the most part is yellow; in some more clear, and in others more obscure, and brown; full Eyes standing far out of their Head; and Face like the Hair, the Feet not very hairy, with long Nails, as a **Squirrel**; a Beard like a **Cat**, his Belly and Feet more lighter coloured than his Body; his Tail bushed, and in form much like a **Fox**. He goeth on his Feet like a **Bear**, or **Ape**, by jumps; for his Legs are very short. They are like the **Dormouse**, sleep all the Winter; the Mouth and Teeth like a **Hare**, or **Mouse**; their whining, is like the whissling of a Pipe, and bark like little **Dogs**: See *chap.* 9. *numb.* 53. Another draught of them. This is born by the name of *Marmote*.

XLIV. He beareth Argent, a **wild Field Mouse**, Gules. This is born by the name of *Feilding*. This

Beast is not much less than a **Rat**; having a long broad hairy Tail, like a **Cat**; the Head round, the Mouth, Teeth, and Beard like a **Rat**; round short Ears; they are of two colours, some of a brown red, some black, with the Face, Belly, and insides of the Legs lighter.

The **Lesser Wild Field-Mouse**, have short Tails, in all other things they resemble the larger sort, as is aforesaid. This according to the foresaid Blazoning is born by *VVlingsell*.

A 3 such Couchant S is born by *VVilmouth* alias *VVild Mouse*.

Between the Figures 44 and 45, is placed an Horn of a **Cow**, or young **Heifer**; and is so born, *viz.* a Horn couped in Fesse A between 3 Estoils O born by the name of *Kuhorn*.

XLV. He beareth Argent, an **Indian Mouse**, (or the **Bear-Mouse**,) Sable. Many times **Mice** do take their names from the shape, or from the Country they are bred in, as this for form, hath the Head, and Face, and Snout of a **Bear**; being bred in *India*, is called then for its shape the **Bear-Mouse**; or of its place the **Indian Mouse**, it hath a Tail like a **Cat**, and the hinder parts of a **Bear**, of a shagged hair, and of a deep brown colour. See another shape of them, *chap.* 18. *numb.* 40.

The **Eastern Country Mouse**, is as large as a **Fox**.

The **Egyptian Mouse**, hath strong stiff hair like a **Hedghog**, they go on two feet, for their hinder-Leggs are longer than the former; they sit on their Buttocks, and use their fore-feet for hands. Called the **Bipedall**, or **two footed Mouse**.

The **Cyrene Mouse**, or **Viper Mouse**, which have **Hedghog** hair, and a Face like a **Viper**.

The **Arabian Mouse**, is as large as a **Dormouse**, which have very short Leggs, insomuch that nothing doth appear without the body; except the space of the joints, of the Finger; (as it is in the short Legged Fowl called a **Martin**, or **Martinets**, or **Martlets**,) the Fingers or Claws of the fore-feet are as broad as ones hand, and the hinder of the quantity of the joints to the ends of the Fingers.

XLVI. He beareth Vert, the **Horns** of an **Equicerve** (or **Deer-Horse**) Argent. These I take to be such Horns by reason of their turning outwards as the **Equicerves** doth; see *chap.* 9. *numb.* 15. Though by the invecking of the horns, they should belong to a **Bonicon**, and so I have seen them Blazoned; as thus. Two Horns of a **Bonicon endorsed** and **conjoined** at the bottom Argent. Yet some others have termed them two **Horns conjoined**, the **points endorsed**. But I rather take these Horns to be couped, with their endorsing, by reason they have not the Bur, or Root part of the horn at them. These Gobony A and B are the Crest of *Kargen*.

The like Sable is the Crest of *Van Cromsdorf*. And out of a Crown Or: the like horns Argent, is the Crest of *Van Luczendorf*.

XLVII. He beareth Gules, a **Bonicons Horn**, (the **back part reverted to the Dex-ter side**,) Argent.

☞ If there be but one *Horn* born intirely of it self, then you must note, that what horn so ever it be the Face or upper side ever ought to be the dexter-side; this therefore being contrary, is mentioned to be with the back of the *Horn* that way. 3 Such is the Coat of *Van Handersleben*.

B the like, turned to the sinister A is the Coat and Crest of *Switer*.

B the same to the dexter A the Coat and Crest of *VVeyler*.

G 3 such to the dexter A is born by *Schorlin*.

The like horn turned to the dexter A with three Roses on the out-side G is the Crest of *Roten*.

The like turned to the sinister Per Fesse with a Pale counterchanged O and B is the Crest of *Hegenheim*.

G the like, Verted to the sinister, each invecck contrary gobonyed A and B the couped part O is the Coat Armour of *Van VVeiler*.

XLVIII. He beareth Azure, a **Muscat**, proper. It is a beast after the kind of a **Roe**, both for figure, colour, and stature; admitting of no other similitude, except the Teeth which are like a **Dogs**, whereof two are like a **Boars** Teeth, white and straight: Some say, it hath *Horns* like a **Roe**, but that is a gross Errour, because no Man (as ever saw one of these Beasts) doth so much as make mention thereof, the original of which Errour, came from its description (as I believe) that because it resembled the **Roe**, and the **Roe** having *Horns*, therefore the **Muskat** must have *Horns* also. It is called also a **Moschat**, or **Muscat**, or a **Gazel**. Which see *chap.* 9. *numb.* 11. This is born by the name of *Gazell*.

XLIX. He beareth Argent, a **Flying Ape displayed**, proper. This is an **Ape in China**, which hath a kind of loose Skin after the manner of a **Bat**, or **Rear-Mouse** from its back to its four-feet; which upon their opening, spreadeth it self abroad like a Seal, by means whereof he flyeth and leapeth from place to place, at his pleasure. This is Born by *Apely*, alias *Apfrey*.

L. He beareth Gules, a **Horse Legg in pale reverted** to the **sinister-side**, **couped** under the Shoulder, **flecked** in the Knee, and **Fitlock joint**, Argent; Hoof Sable, Shoo, Or. If this were the hinder Legg of a Horse, upon this term of **Bowing**, or **flecking**, in the two joints) then the higher part would bend one way, and the foot another, because their joints are contrary bent: See *chap.* 7. *numb.* 91. Such a Legg is is born by *Abenperg* of *Franconia*.

LI. He beareth Azure, a **Camphurch**, proper. This is a Beast, both for Land and Water; living about the Island *Molucara*, being in the fore-part like a **Unicorn**, but rogh, shagged about the Shoulders, like a **Water-Dog**, a short *Horn* wreathed in his Fore-head, Ears not discernable, by reason of his roughness on the top of his head; the hinder part like a **Deer**, with the fore-feet cloven-hoofed, and the hinder, the feet of a **Stag**. Such a Creature is born by the name of *Camphurcham*.

A the like G is the Coat of *Carslingo* an *Italian*.

LII. He

LII. He beareth Vert, an **Hulpalim**, Or. This is a kind of wild Beast, in the Isle of *Zocotera*; and in the parts of *Ethiopia*; having the Face of an **Ape**, hairy all down to the Shoulders, and a rough shagg on his body like to a **Water-Dog**, a short small Tail, with round feet, each having only two round Toes, with sharp Claws. This is born by the name of *Van Pragan*.

LIII. He beareth Argent, a **Giraffa** (or **Camelo-Pardalis**, or **Camel-Pardal**,) proper. This is a Beast in the *India*, or lesser *India*, like the **Camel-Leopard**, but it hath Horns bending forwards; or bunches rising out of the head, as in **young Calves**, their fore-feet being much longer than the hinder. It is said to be engendred of a **Camel**, and a Female **Libard**, or **Panther**; the colour is for the most part red, and white mixed together (as it were) an interchangeable skin, being full of spots, yet not of one colour; and it is said, that underneath his Belly, the colourable spots are wrought in fashion of Fishers Net, and the whole body, so admirably intercoloured with variety; that it is in vain for the Wit, or Art of Man, once to go about, or endeavor the imitation thereof. This is born by the name of *Scacrusen*. and in a field O. It is born by *Boycza*, a *Polander*.

B 3 such heads couped O born by *Girraff* an *Italian*.

LIV. He beareth Vert, a **Nekrendis**, or an **Ape-Hog**, proper. This is a compound Creature, of an **Ape** in the fore-parts to the middle, and the other half a **Swine**; the first being of a swarthy or tawny flesh colour, and the latter of a yellowish brown. This is also called a **Minotus**, which is half a Man, half a **Swine**. This is the Coat Armour of *Hiragam*.

LV. He beareth Gules, a **Minocane**, proper. This is half a **Child**, and the other half a **Spaniel Dog**, with a bushy Tail. Some call it a **Homocane**. This is born by the name of *Minor*. And such a Creature proper in an Azure Field, is born by *Cammno* of *Ireland*, that is *Mac Cammine*.

LVI. He beareth Argent, an **Angry Cat, roed**, proper. Some term it, a **Cat exasperated**, or **made Angry**, an **Ireful Cat**. These sorts of Rowed Cats have for the bodily colour, sometime white, some grey, some yellow, some yellowish brown, and again the spots or roedness of them, is as variable, as black on the white, black brown, on the yellow; and a black, on the brown. This is born by the name of *Ire*.

B the like A with a Mouse under his fore-feet S Born by *Farouche*.

LVII. He beareth Sanguine, a **Gyffon**, with its Wings **Overture**, and **Pendant**, parted per pale Argent, and Or. This **Gyffon**, I have set here because of the rarity of his Wings, which are seldom seen thus to be born, but above his Shoulders; therefore the Wings are termed (**Overture**) as being on either side his head; and **pendant**, as having the points of the Wings downward, and not up; as in the Examples of Birds, you may see further, *chap.* 11. This is born by the name of *Griffinsham*.

LVIII. He beareth Azure, a **Fox-head couped**, proper; having a **Friers Cowl**, or **Hood**, about his Neck, out of the Crown part, a **Goose-head issuant**, Argent. (In pretence of Peace he bears) in his Mouth an Olive slip, Vert. Thus many a Goose by fair words of a crafty Fox, is brought into a Snare under pretence of safety, and so led captive to destruction. This is the Crest belonging to the Coat of *Schaden*. And also the same is born by *Van Leipoland*.

A the like head couped, with a Cowl, on his head a spired cap turned up G is the Coat and Crest of *Hundbreckham*.

LIX. He beareth Argent, the **hinder Legg** of a **Deer couped below the Hanch**, (or **Buttock**,) **erected**, and **reverted** in form of a Cheveron proper. Born by *Hurtell*. If this had been one of the former feet of a **Stag**, or **Deer**; then the bending of the Hoof (the Leg being in this posture) would have turned inwards, as this doth outwards.

☞ Therefore in your Blazon, you must have an especial care to mention what Legg is born; for there is no Beast (but such as immitate the actions of Man,) but their fore-feet in the Knees, bend outwardly from the body, and the hinder feet in the middle joints, bend inwardly, being contrary one to the other, so that the hoof must turn contrary. The like Rule is to be observed in these Creatures which have the bending of the Hams and Knees, contrary to those aforesaid; as have their Fore-feet in their Knees, or Elbows to bend inward, and their hinder Knees, or Hams to bend outward, as in Man, and his Imitators, as Apes, Baboons, *&c.* O such a Leg flected G. Is born by *Van Hinrzenhausen*.

Terms used for the bending of the Legs and Arms.

2. THere are several Terms to be used according to the form, manner, and scituation of the bended joynts; which I shall set altogether in this place, for readiness sake. Yet with this caution, that the hinder and foremost Feet and Leggs of Beasts, be exactly noted and mentioned, which they are, and whether they be **Couped**, or **Erased**. As

A Leg of a Deer, or **Horse couped above the Knee, or in the middle of the Thigh.** That is when the Leg and Foot stands in that posture of standing, as if it were fixed to the Beast it belonged. That is with the foot down, and the Leg and Thigh, standing upright as it were in pale; as *chap.* 7. *numb.* 50. 91.

A **Leg of a Deer**, (mention whether further or hinder) **couped in the Thigh**, (or **under the Shoulder**) **flecked**, (**bowed**, **reverted**, or **reversed**) **in the Knee**. Or thus, a **Leg of a Deer bowed** and **couped in the Thigh**. That is when the Legg stands upright, and the Thigh (or Knee-joint) bends backwards, as *chap.* 17. *numb.* 57. 59. Or the Buttock or Hanch of the hinder Leg forward, as *chap.* 7. *numb.* 91.

A **Leg of an Horse, couped in the Thigh, and flexed in the Knee and Fitlock joints**; that is, when both the Thigh part is bended, and the foot bended, and the leg stands upright in its own posture, as *numb.* 50.

A **Leg of a Deer couped at the Hanch or Buttock**; (**reverted, or recurved**, or) **bowed in the Knee**,, in the form of a Cheveron, as *numb.* 59. Some term it **erected** and **reverted**, or **Imbowed**. Before the bowing of the leg, we must suppose the leg to stand upright in its proper posture, as if it were joined to the Beast; which being couped or cut off, the Bowing must needs fall to the dexter side, and the sole of the foot be upwards, and so make the form of a Cheveron: But if the joint of the leg bended outward (as all farther legs of 4 footed Beasts do) then supposing the leg to stand upright, upon the couping or cutting of it off from the body; the Bowing will then fall contrary, *viz.* to the Sinister side, and the foot or hoof to the Dexter, with the Sole downwards; this is a thing little regarded in the true draught of things by some Herald Painters, yet ought carefully to be noted.

A **Leg of a Deer in Fesse, couped at the Hanch and Flexed.** That is, when the bending is upwards, as *numb.* 61. 70. This kind of **Flecting** or **Imbowing**; is peculiar and only proper for Arms of Men, Apes, Baboons, *&c.* and for the hinder parts of Beasts; for the foremost cannot naturally bend so, except the fore-part of the leg be turned up-side down.

LX. He beareth Argent, three **Lions tails conjoined in Base**, and **Crossing** or **Fretting** on the other, proper. This is born by the name of *Liontaile*, alias *Lontaile*.

The like O is born for the Crest of *Lobe*, of *Silitiars*.

LXI. He beareth Or, the **hinder Paw of a Lion**, in Fesse, to the Sinister, **couped** in the middle of the Buttock, and **Flexed**, Gules. Born by the name of *Roseg*.

S the like issuant from the dexter side O born by *Seitzen*.

G the like from the sinister side S holding of a Key O by the name of *Hombrachten*.

O the like S (sans Key) born by *Clufer*.

O the left Arm of a Devil or Fiend with a Dragon like fooot S is the Coat of *Spittachar*.

LXII. He beareth Azure, the **Horns** of a **Bonasus fixed on the Scalp** or **Skull**, proper. The Body of this Beast is in all respects answerable to the **Bull** or **Ore**, Some term it a **Bonacons Horns**; see *chap. 9. numb.* 12. 13. but it is best Blazoned, a **Bonasus head caboshed**; the **Horns Imbowed** to each side the face. This is born by the name of *Croucher*.

LXIII. He beareth Argent, the **Horns** of a **Bull fixed** upon the **curled Skalp**, with two **Ears**, Sable. By the name of *Bullhead*.

LXIV. He beareth Argent, two **Proboscides** (or **Snowts**, or **Trunks**) of **Elephants reflexed, endorsed gobony** Or and Gules; **fixed** upon an **hairy skalp**, with two **Ears**, Sable. By *Bosin*.

The same is born by the name of *Hurnkhofen*, of *Swabedin*, *viz.* G the Trunks A and Scalp S.

LXV. He beareth Argent, a **demy Talbot rampant**, to the Sinister, Gules; instead of feet, two **Proboscides** of an **Elephant fixed** on either side (or extendant) **reflexed endorsed gobony**, Or and Azure; issuing out of the **Snowts** thereof, two **Flower de luces**, Sable. Some term it a **demy Talbot**, his feet **converted**, (**turned** or **Metamorphised**) into **Elephants Snouts**, with two flowers de lis, **issuant**; see *chap. 9. numb.* 3. Born by the name of *Rochingford*.

The same G is the Crest of *Van Kettenheim*, sans flowers de lis.

A a demy Child with Bucks Horns G born by *Retsla*.

The like A the Proboscides O is the Crest of *Brandeck* alias *Randeck*. Thus you shall have demy Men, Women, Lions, and other Creatures born with several sorts of things in the places of Hands and Feet.

LXVI. He beareth Azure, the **Trunk of an Elephant erected, flexed**, and **reflexed**, or **curved** and **recurved**, Or, **double Collered** and **Belled**, Argent; on the back thereof four Grass tufts set at distance. This is the Crest of *Van Proboch*.

2 such endorsed G collered, imbattled on the top A born by *Neuenstein*.

2 such B each set on the out-side with 3 Pine Apples, and one in the Snout G is the Crest of *Elwanger*.

LXVII. He beareth Argent, the **Proboscide of an Elephant erected, flexed and reflexed**, Gules; **engrased** on the back part, Azure, on each point the head of a Trefoil, (or each Bottony) Or, with a Ribband about the **Snowte**, turned into a round (or ring) and so compassing the middle of the trunk after the manner of a Bridle, Sable. This is the Crest of *Gilterchiken*, or *Gelderchingen*.

2 Proboscides endorsed, Snowts dismembred G engraled on the out sides O on each point a Pomell or Plate, is the Crest of *Friesenberg*.

Upon the sides of 2 Proboscides G estoiles O in the Snout feathers A is born by *Salingburg*.

LXVIII. He beareth Or, the **Proboscide** of an Elephant, **erected, flexed and recurved**, Gules, **issuing** out of a **pierced place**, towards the Basis thereof; a **Rose Sprig vertant et revertant**, about the trunk to the middle thereof. Some term it, the **Trunk of an Elephant Bowed Imbowed**, with a **Rose Sprig leaves and flower issuing** out of the fore-part thereof flexed and reflexed, proper. Born by the name of *Van Snotslough*.

G 2 such endorsed couped A the Rose-sprig proper, is the Coat and Crest of *Van Grunberg*.

2 such, the one A the other B, the snout and out-sides feathered counterchanged, is the Crest of *Ebner*.

The same B and O by *Ebner*.

LXIX. He beareth Argent, the **Proboscide of an Elephant erected and couped, bowed Imbowed**, Or; **Maned** (or haired) to the middle, Azure, and **Collered** at the bottom, with an **Hawks Bell fixed** thereunto, Gules; out of the **Snowte**, a **Dutch tame** pen-

pendant, Sable. Born by the name of *Oberstagh*.

2 such endorsed, set with Vine Leaves on the out-sides O is the Crest of *Geymanner*.

The like G set with Dutch fanes pendant A is the Crest of *Aristeter*.

2 such maned S the rest A cut of a Coronet, is the Crest of *Kapelan*.

2 such, the A maned B set with Spur-Rowel O is born by *Gaw*.

☞ These things, though I from my Author, and from their similitude to an **Elephants Trunk**, have all along termed them so; yet in my Judgment they would pass better for **Horns**, and I take them to be absolute Horns, if compared with such as you may see, *lib. 3. chap. 16. numb.* 17, 18, 51, 65, 118, 119.

Out of a Coronet O 2 such horns endorsed, gorged with a Crown A is the Crest of *Lissnig* of *Bavaria*.

LXX. He beareth Or, **an Apes right Arm couped** at the Shoulder, **Imbowed**, proper. Some term it an **Arm in Fesse bowed**. Born by *Plonhorst*.

A the like G born by *Van Planta*.

A a Lions Paw in the like posture G is born by *Spechfeldt*.

A an Apes Arm erected to the Sinister, imbowed at the Wrist and Elbow S is the Coat of *Plauta* an *Italian*.

LXXI. He beareth Azure, the **hinder parts** of an **Ape** or **Monkey**, the **feet erected**, Or. This is the **Breech** of an **Ape turned upside down**. Born by the name of *Van Derdart*.

The Legs of an Ape joined at the Thighs, and **reflexed in triangle**, I have seen born for a Coat of Arms.

LXXII. He beareth Argent, a **Beaver**, proper. This is the true shape of it, which I have described more fully, *chap.* 10. *numb.* 20, 21, 22. therefore say no more of it here. This is born by the name of *Beverley*.

Per Bend O and B on the first a Beaver in Bend G on the second 3 Pales waved A born by *Vischer*.

LXXIII. He beareth Argent, an **Hind lodged** or **couched** in a **groath of Ferne**, all proper. Some term it a **Bed of Ferne**, because it is all round about the Hind; others a **Hind couched in Fern**. This is born by the name of *Hindley* of *Hinaley*.

LXXIV. He beareth Vert, two **Trumpets of Rams Horns erected, conjoined, endorsed**, Argent. Others term them two **Hunters Horns**, the small ends **embowed, debused**. Others two **Rams Horns conjoined, endorsed**. This is born by *Trumperch*.

A the like S born by *Van Widerspach*.

A the like endorsed and conjoined G by *Thorer van Eyrasperg*.

LXXV. He beareth Or, two **Horns of a Bonicon couped**, Gules. They stand in that form as they did before they were sawed off the head, and therefore need no other term to shew how they are set in the Field, only by **coupiug**, doth signify so much, as that they want their **Burr** or **Root**, or **Crown part**, where they are fixed to the **Scalp**. This is born by the name of *Roppolton*.

G the same Gobbony A and S born by *Kargen*.

Out of a Crown the like Gobbony each other inveck. A and V by *Helin*.

A two such flected and reflected, the invecks inward and dorsed G born by *Dortzer*.

LXXVI. He beareth Gules, a **Jaw-Bone of an Horse**, Argent. Three such is born by *Trigowle*.

B an Arm flected O the hand proper, holding the like Bone A by the name of *Crato*. Some term it **Samsons Arm** holding of a **Jaw-Bone of an Ass**, because with such a Weapon he slew many of the Philistins, *Judg.* 5. 15.

LXXVII. He beareth Argent, two **Lions Paws issuing** out of Base, **imbowed**, Gules, Flory on the out-sides, and holding of a **Bugle, or Hunters Horn**, Sable, having a **Serpent gliding** through the mouth, and out at the end of it, Vert. This is the Crest or Cognizance of *Don Pedro de Alberto Castro*, a *Spanish* Family.

A 2 such Paws B holding of a Flower de lis G is born by *Ezell* an *Italian*.

*

TO

TO

The Right Worshipful

Sir *THOMAS WILBRAHAM*, of *Woodhey*, Baronett;

And in Remembrance of his Vertuous Brother,

RALPH WILBRAHAM, Esq;

SIR,

YOUR *Goodness hath supplied* my *Wants, in the Loss of your Dear Brother; from whom I have received so many Kindnesses, that I want Words to express* my *Thankfulness; the Contemplation of whose Vertues; as they have shined forth in him, so have they been* much more *Illustrious and abounding in you, which is observed by all, and must be ever acknowledged by* him *who Glories in your Goodness and Bounty; and desires to Subscribe himself,*

Your most Humble and Obliged Servant

Randle Holme.

CHAP. IX.

1. THE **Bull** is the Ring-leader amongst Ruther or Udder Beasts; therefore is fit to begin our Third Plate, or parcel of Beasts therein contained; taking the front of all the other, as a Privileged Beast above them; having liberty to range in all pastures wheresoever he goeth, with free ingress, egress and regress, fearing neither Payage or Poundage for his Trespass.

The **Bull** being Gelt, changeth both his Nature and his Name, and is called an **Oxe**.

There are **Oxen** in *India* which have but one Horn, and some have three, and whole Hoofs, and as tall as **Camels**, which are very swift of Pace. See *chap.* 10. *numb.* 70.

The **Scythian Oxe** hath a Bunch on his back like a **Camel**.

I. He beareth Vert, a **Bull** Argent, **armed** and **unguled**, Or. The Bull is born in whole and in part as the Stag is, and the like terms are given to them, and generally to all cloven hoofed Beasts. This is born by the name of *Bestar*.

G a Bull S the right leg and shoulder A the Crest a demy Bull the same colours, is born by the name of *Rosboldt*.

O the like passant to the Sinister A is the Coat and Crest of *Van Barut*.

A the like rampant with tail on the side G by *Pfulser van Nosteten*.

A Bull, his tail turned upon his back and side tipped S is the Crest of *Houghton* of *Houghton Tower*, in *Lancashire*.

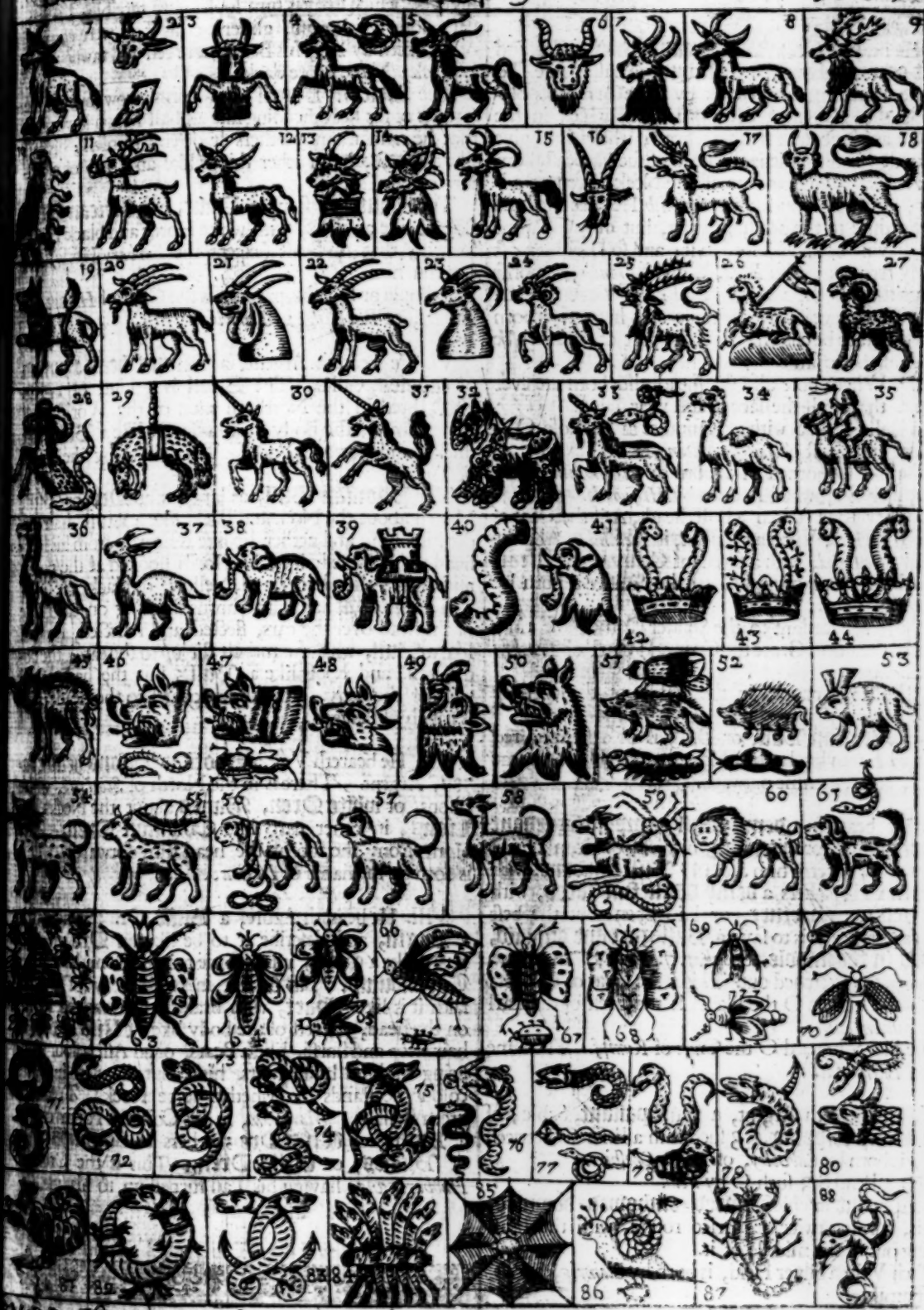
A the like with his tail on his side A is the Crest of *Kuedorfer*.

A the like S born by *Meredith Bull*, of *Wales*, horns and hoofs O.

A a Bull G horns O by *Philip ap Jevan*. And on a hill in base V is the Coat of *Ridley* of *Ridley*, in *Cheshire*.

The **Bull** is born **winged**, as the **Horse** is, and the **Buttons Crest**.

The **Bonicervus**, or **Cow-Hart**, hath a long thin head and ears, slender legs, his tail short, but like a Cows, his upper parts yellow and smooth, his neither parts



M.D.D. Thome Wilbraham de Woodhey Bart. Hæc Sculpturæ dedicata est.

Parts black and rough; the hair of the body yellow and red; the horns smooth at top, and wrinkled at the bottom and black; see the head and horns, *chap.* 8. *numb.* 31.

II. He beareth Or, a **Bulls head** in chief, Gules, and a **foot couped** above the **Cambull**, in base, Sable. To have the head thus trunked, is by some Armorists Blazoned **Cabossed**, from the word *Cabo*, which in the *Spanish* Language doth signifie a head; which is to give us to understand that it is the head of such a Beast, born sole of it self, having no part of the Neck thereunto adherent; by which you see the *Spanish* Heralds used no other Epethite to the head, thus set, but only the word **Head**, having nothing joined to it; and so I hold it most properly termed. Also *Bara*, a good *French* Armorist useth neither of these words at all; but Blazoneth it a Bulls head (or face) only; because any head thus born is understood to be cut off; so as no part of the Neck be dependant to the same.

☞ Where note also that heads thus born are ever gardant, that is all the face in full view.

A a Bulls head S with an Annulet in its Nose O is the Coat and Crest of *Van Bernstein.*

B the like O horned A is born by *Villenbach.*

O 3 such B crowned A born by *Hassuorde.*

S a Cheveron between 3 Bulls heads, A is the Coat of the Lord *Bulkley*, Viscount *Cashall*, in *Ireland.* Also the same by *Prestland*, with a Cressant G.

A a Bulls head couped G to the Sinister, born by *Trutberg.*

B the like regardant to the Sinister O the Nose ringed S and the horns G are the Coat and Crest of *Truchses vau Ringingen.*

A 3 Bulls feet couped in the middle of the leg S by *Cofoote.*

The **Phrigian Bull**, or **Ore**, is of a flaming red colour, with moving horns, which they can turn sometime inward, and sometime outward.

III. He beareth a **demy Bull rampant gardant** and **extendant**, (or **extending** himself,) Sable, in a Field Argent. Some term him a **demy Bull gardant**, with legs extended; others a **demy Bull full faced**, with body and feet **overture**, or laid open; but the best term (as I take it) is to say, a **Bull gardant displaid, couped in the middle.** See *chap.* 7. *numb.* 8. and *chap.* 13. *numb.* 63. stretched out. This is the Coat of *Bulface.*

Out of a Crown O the like A is the Crest of the Earl of *Sprintzenstein.*

The like S horned O the Crest of *Rumpf.* The same by *Van Baymundt.*

IV. He beareth Argent, a **Calf passant**, Sable; of some termed **tripping.** 3 such with a Fesse G between them, is born by *Calveley*, of *Lea* in *Cheshire.*

A on a Bend S 3 such O by *Veal.*

A **Serpent** in chief, **bowed-embowed-debruised**, that is, turning twice or thrice round, with the head coming out of the middle of it.

3 such V in a Silver Field, is born by *Clamrig*, a *Polonian* Family.

V. He beareth Sable, a **Bugle**, or **Bubalus**, Argent, **armed and unguled**, Or. This Beast hath several names, and is in form like a **Bull**, but broader and shorter, and hath a Mane like a **Horse**, down to his eyes, which makes him look more terrible; his proper colour is yellowish, glistering (as if it were combed or trimmed by Art) his Belly more red and tawney than his back; Mane more dark.

The **African Bugill**, his horns grow out of the Crown of his head, bending like an half Moon inwards, so that he cannot annoy others or defend himself; his tail like a **Horse**, in all other things like an **Ore**, of a yellow colour.

The **Laut**, of some a **Daut**, an **African Wild Beast** like an **Ore**, with white Horns and black Nails, so swift, that no Beast (except the *Barbary* Horse) can out-run him.

A Bugle or Bubalus proper, is the Crest of *Hubart* or *Hobart*, of *Blicklinge* in *Norfolk.*

VI. He beareth Argent, a **Bisons head trunked** or **cabossed**, Gules. The **Bison** is a kind of **Wild Ore**, bred in the Northern parts of the World, and never tamed; the Body in all respects like a **Bull**, but thicker and shorter of Body. This is born by the name of *Tison.*

The **Paonian Bull**, as large as an **Ore** or **Bull**, Maned about the Neck and Back, like a **Lion**, hair under his Chin, and nether lip like a Beard, from his forehead to his Nose hairy; his Horns hooked at the points and black; their hair is red, yellow, or black.

The **Alecorn** hath large horns standing on each side of the head over the ears, flected and reflected, headed like a **Bull**, with the mouth slit up to the ears; the body, tail, and hoofs like a **Bull**; but the hair of all parts of the body, groweth backward to the head, and is rough or shagged.

VII. He beareth Vert, a **Scotian Bisons head erazed**, Argent. There is in the North of *Scotland*, white Bisons, or **white Oren**, **Maned** about the Necks like **Lions**, in other parts like **Cowmon Oren.** The Horns from the top of the head turn forwards. This is born by the name of *Matravellin.*

VIII. He beareth Azure, a **Buffe**, Or. Some call it a **Bugill**, and describe it to be like an **Ore**, with a Beard like a **Goat**, it is of some termed from the Latine, **Tarandulus.** But *Gesner*, in his History of Beasts, saith it is like a **Hart**, with branched or ragged Horns on the head, the rest of the body like a **Wild Ore**, his hair deep and harsh, like a Bears, of an Ash colour; but being frighted by Hunters, his colour changeth into any colour he stands by, whether it be Rocks, Trees, or green Boughs. *Markham*, in his Country Farm calls it a **Buffle**, or **Wild Ore**; others call them **Bians**, or **Bianes**, or **Wild Oren.** This is the Crest of *Hubbart*, *viz.* having his Tail turned up to his side.

2. HAving occasion now to speak of the **Bull**, with its variety of kinds, as the **Bugle**, **Buffe**, **Bison**, and such like, which are of affinity one with the other; I am desirous in this place to speak something of the **Cow**, and then as in other Domestick Beasts, give you their sorts of Diseases, with other terms used by Drovers and Cowherds concerning their Ordering and Keeping.

Observations in Cows, Oxen, Bulls.

WHEN a **Cow** desireth the **Bull**, which we call Bulling; she disorderly forsakes her Fellows, resists the Government of her Keeper; besides their Baron hangs down (which is the place of Copulation) more than at other times; they will leap upon their Fellows as if they were Males: Also after the manner of Mares, they Piss ofter than at other times.

At the time of Copulation, if the Bull leap off on the right side, the Cow will Conceive a Male; if on the left, she will bring forth a Female.

A Cow never thriveth after she hath taken Bull; therefore some Herdsmen will not suffer them to be Bulled till four years old.

If Cows in Summer time go to the Bull more than at other times, it betokeneth and foresheweth a Rainy Winter.

If an Oxe lick himself against the hair, or on his right side, it presageth a Storm; if on the left a fair calm day: When he Loweth and Smelleth the Earth; or feedeth fuller than ordinary, it betoken Change of Weather: If in Autumn, Sheep and Oxen dig the Earth with their feet, and lie down head to head, it is held for a sure token of a Tempest.

The parts of a Bull, Oxe, or Cow.

3. THere are some parts and Members of theirs, which go under other names and terms than what are ascribed to other Beasts, and they are these following; as for other parts they are called as in other Creatures, as Head, Eyes, Mouth, Bones, Ribs, Intrals, *&c.*

Head.

The **Muzzle**, the Nose, that part which is not hairy.

Curled Brow, or curled and waved hairy Brow.

Neats Tongue, is the Tongue of either Bull, Oxe or Cow.

The **Wind-Pipe**, or Throat Pipe.

The **Roof** or **Pallet**, the rough top of the mouth.

Horns, and the Rinkles at the bottom, and tip end of the horns.

The **Wizen**,

The **Cheek**, one side of the face.

Body.

The **Brisket**,

The **Dewlap**, that skin that hangs down between the fore-legs from the Throat.

The **Chine**, the lower part of the Neck next the Back, the **Neck Chine**.

The **Ridg**, or **Ridg-bone**, the top of the Back.

The **Flank**.

The **Rump**, the top of the tail next the Body.

The **Hide**, the Skin.

The **Reins**,

The **Crest**, the top of the Neck.

The **Mane**, the hair on the Neck.

The **Pisle**, or **Pizzle**, the Bulls Prick.

The **Sheath**, the Skin in which the Pisle lyeth.

The **Baron**, the Cows place of Conception or Pissing, the Griskin.

The **Navel**, the loose skin, and hair on it, which hangs under a Bull or Oxe Belly.

The **Udder**, or **Alder**, that place under the lower part of the Belly, in which the Milk is.

The **Speanes**, or the Paps, the four Dugs, by which the Milk is drawn from the Udder.

The **Cods**, the Skin in which the Stones or Testicles are inclosed.

The **Fundament**, the Arse-hole, whereat Excrements are evacuated.

Intrals.

The **Runnett**, **Cheeslip Bag**, is the Bag or Stomach of a young Calf.

A **Casling**, or **Castling**, a young Calf never brought forth.

The **Bag**, is that as the young Calf lieth in the Beast Belly.

Midcalf, is the Heart, Lights, Liver and Throat-Pipe, with its appurtenances belonging to a Calf.

The **Belly**, or Tripe.

The **Draught Gut**, or Tuell.

The **Midriffe**, the middle skin that parts the Breast and Belly.

The **Raide**, or Arse-Pudding, the Lady Tripe.

The **Many-fould**, or the Maw.

The **Dirty Puddings**, those that Excrements pass (through.

The **Fat Puddings**.

The **Endless Annat**, or end Pudding, which is whole at the end.

The **Neeres**, is the inward fat on the Loins; in a Swine it is called the Leaffs of a Swine.

The **Tallow** is all the Fat about the Puddings.

The **Umbles**, is the Heart, Pipe, Liver and Midriff Skin as they hang altogether.

The **Reel**, the fat Skin about the Intrals.

The **Sweetbreads**,

The **Kidneys** or **Lullies**. The **Higgarne**.

Legs and Feet.

The **Shanks**. The **Cambrell**.

The **Hough**. The **Fitlocke**.

Neats Feet.

The **Clees** or **Hoofs**, which is termed double clawed, or cloven footed, of which all outward hoofs are larger than the inward.

Diseases in Cows, and their kind.

4. LAssitude, Wearisomness, or tyring, is known by the slow eating, or forsaking their Fodder, by often lying down, or else by holding out their Tongue.

The Malis, or Glanders, which makes their hair rough and hard, the eyes heavy, the neck hang down, and the nose run out with Matter, seldom chewing his Cud, and his Meat loathsom.

The Articular Malis, is a dry humour which causeth a soreness in the hinder legs, and makes them halt; and yet the Hoof appears sound.

The Farciminous, or Farches, which causeth the whole body to break forth into Matry Bunches and Boils; which appearing to be healed, break forth in other places.

The Subterentaurus, an itching humour that is under the skin, and breaketh forth in many places of the body.

The Subrenall, when the hinder legs halt, by reason of a pain in the Loins.

The Maunge, or Leprosy, is a kind of dry scab or scroof, running and spreading it self all over the body, from head to foot, called the Scurf.

The Phrenzy, or Madness.

The Fever, is an immoderate heat all over the body, especially in the Mouth, Tongue and Ears; a running of the eyes, a drowzy head; with a violent beating of the Veins.

Swelling and Torment in the Belly, often comes by eating of Hens Dung in their Meat, which if not speedily helped, is Death to the Beast.

The Sucking of the Leech, Biting of the Bize, and Stinging of Bees, Wasps, Serpents and Adders, are things much tormenting Cattel, and makes them run about, as if they were going Mad.

The Lameness of the Joints, may often proceed from a Strain or Wrench in the Sinews.

The Cephalalgie, or pain in the head, which makes him hang down his ears, and forsake his Meat.

The Swelling of the Veins, in the Cheeks and Chaps, into Ulcers.

Lice and Ticks, a Vermin that breeds upon them, which biting makes them itch, rub and scrub themselves at every Post.

The Worms in the Tail.

Inward Diseases in Cows, &c.

The Cough, or Cold, and shortness of Breath, or Hausts.

The Decay or waste of Liver and Lungs, which appears by a long Cough.

The Crudities or rawness of an evil Stomach, is known by his Belly often rumbling and belching, forsake his Meat, hang down his head and sick himself.

The Hardness of the Excrements, or Costiveness, when he cannot Dung.

The Pissing of Blood.

The Sturdy.

The Gout, pain in the limbs through heat and cold.

The Broken Bones, and all grief in the Bones.

Diseases in the Eyes and Head.

A Suffution in the Eyes.

The Haw.

The Pin in the Eye.

The Web, is a White upon the sight of the Eye; a Cloud in the eye.

The Swimming of the Head, a giddiness in the head.

The Barbes is a fleshy substance growing under the Tongue, which hinders their eating.

The Stithie, or the Mallet, or Hammer, a Disease that causeth the Hair to stand upright, makes them dull and heavy, forsaking their Meat.

The Strangles or Glandules, is a swelling under the tongue.

The Ranula, is a swelling under the tongue.

The Horniooſe,

The Porrum, or Leek of the Eye, is a swelling tumor in the eye.

The Cataract, is a watery humor, or running of the eye.

The Epiphora, is a dry inflamation of Cholor in the eye.

The Snivel, is a snotty running Nose.

The Drivel, or Drivelling, is running of Water or Rheum from the Mouth.

Diseases in the Body and Legs.

Hidebound, when the Skin sticks fast to the Flesh and Bones.

Surbutting, is a lameness in the Limbs.

The Cods swollen.

The Founder, is the hardned foot, that bends with difficulty.

The falling of the Draught Gut, or Tuell.

The Pizzle Sheath swollen.

The feet squat, or bruised.

The Hide Flead and Chafed, when the hair comes off by rubbing.

To know the Bull, Cow, or Oxes Age.

5. WIthin Ten Months of the first year, they change their fore-teeth, and six months after the next, and at the end of three years they change them all; and when they be in their middle or best strength their teeth are white, long and even; but when they grow old, they become short, uneven and black.

Also by the Horns the Age is known, for in the root of the horn there are as many wrinkles as the Bull or Cow is years old, a wreath for a year.

The

The Benefit or Blessing of Cows.

6. **Beest**, the first Milk after Calving.
Milk, a white sweet liquor drawn from the Udder of a Cow.
Cream, the top of Milk standing in a pot or pan-mug.
Afterings, the Stroakings, or last that is Milkt from a Cow.
Bonniclatter, Cream gone thick.
Butter, Cream Churmed.
Butter-Milk, or ChurmedMilk.
Thick Milk, Butter-milk made thick through the heat of Summer, the bottom part falling to a **Whigg.**
Curds,
Cheese,
Whey, the liquid substance drawn from Cheese-curds, which clarified is a good Summer-drink.
Whey-Butter, and Whey-Cream.
Fleetings, the Curds or top of Whey boiled with Butter-milk.
Sweet-Cheese, Fleeting strained through a fine Cloth and Sugared.
Veal, **Beef**, **Neat**, } meat for Men. **Oxen** for Labour.
Hides, for the making of all sorts of Leather either Tanned, or white-Leather.
Horns, to make Combs and Lanthorns.
Hair, for Plastering.
Tallow, for Candles. **Suet.**

Colours of Oxen and Cows.

7. White and Grey.
Black.
Bay, or Brown.
Yellowish.
Farrow, or Fallow, a reddish Cow.
Pie-coloured, part black and part white.
Spotted.
Fildome, part brown, and part white.

Terms used by Ox and Cow-keepers, called Cow-herds.

8. To **Fodder**, is to give them Meat.
To **Litter**, is to give them Straw to stand and lye upon.
Shoon, is the Dung of Oxen and Cows.
A **Neat-heard**, is the Keeper of Oxen or Cows; some call them **Cow-heard**, or **Cow-keeper.**
A **Neat**, is either Cow, or Ox; from hence their Tongues are called **Neats-Tongues.**
To **Moron**, is to make clean their Houses from Dung.
A **Muck-hill**, is the place where the Dung is laid till it be carried into the Field to Manure the ground; some call it a **Miron.**
A **Maiden-Heifer**, one that never took Bull.
Splaid Heifer, that hath her Genitals taken away.
Cut a Calf, that is to **Splay** it, take away its Stones.
Libbing, is Gelding a Bull.
A **Drove** of Cattle, a **Drove** of Beasts.
Cud, as Tue the Cud, is to draw up the Meat again out of the Throat or Maw, and grind it a-new to make it digest.
A **Farrow Cow**, is a Cow that gives Milk in the second year after her Calving; having no Calf that year.
A **Herds-Man**, one that is occupied about Cows and Oxen.
A **Drover**, is a Buyer and Seller of all sorts of Domestick Cattle.

Things used about Oxen and Cows.

9. A **Calf Ride**, a place made of Boughs in the Field, or near the Cow-house in which the Calf is kept whilst he is sucking.
An **Ox-house.**
A **Stale**, the place in the house where the Ox is tyed to feed, from hence we call a fat Ox, a stale feed Ox.
A **Cow-house.**
A **Boosey**, the place where the Cow is tyed.
The **Racks.**
The **Sow**, is the Yoke which is put about the Cow or Ox-Neck to tye him to the Boosey.
A **Goad**, or **Ox-Goad**, a long stick with a prick in the end of it, by which Oxen are pricked to make them quick in their Labour or Travel.
A **White**, a Carters Whip.
A **Yelf**, or **Yelve**, an Iron with three fork ends, by which Dung is taken from the Beast, and the house made clean.
A **Hay-hook.**
A **Fork**, or **Pikel**, **Spade**, and a **Rak.**
A **Rake**, a **Barrow**, a **Wheel-barrow.**
A **Wisket**, or Straw-basket, in which Provender is given Cows or Oxen.
A **Tumbrel**, a kind of Cart to carry away Muck and Dirt.

Feeding of Cows and Oxen.

10. **Fodder**, is Hay kept for them to eat.
Blend Fodder, is Hay and Straw mixed.
Litter, is Straw of any Grain, on which the Beasts lie to rest.
Grassing Pasture, are either Meadows, Fields, or Closes for them to feed in.

IX. *He* beareth Or, a **Tarandre**, Gules; **attired**, and **unguled**, Sable. The **Tarandrus**, is in body like an **Ox**, with the *Horns* of a **Hart**, full of branches; of some he is taken for a **Rain-Deer**, but hath a Mane and Tail like a **Lion.** This is born by the name of *Tarandrell.*
G the like A is born by *Tosteus*, a *Polonian.*

X. He beareth Argent, an **Elks Horn reversed**, proper. That is of a Russet brown colour: *Cesar, lib.6.* in his Commentaries says, They have no joints in their Knees, but sleep to Trees like **Elephants.** But they are like **Roes**, or **Harts**, with spotted Skins; their *Horns* as large again, with broad tops, branched only on one side; his upper Lip is great, and hangeth over the nea ther-

ther very much, that he cannot eat forward for doubling it in his Mouth; but goeth backwards, and so gathers up the grass that lies under it: He hath a Mane on his Neck, and under his Throat; the plain sides of the *Horns* lie towards the back, and the branches towards the face: See the head *chap.* 8. *numb.* 33.

O 3 Elks horns 2 and 1, proper Born by *Elkborne*.

XI. He beareth Azure, a **Gazel**, proper. This Beast in figure and colour, doth represent the **Roe-Buck**; having long Teeth and white, about eight or nine inches long out of his Mouth like a Boar; of this Beast saith *Boswell*, *pag.* 5. 7. cometh Musk: See the true shape of the **Mus:cat**, or **Gazella**, *chap.* 8. *numb.* 48. This is born by the name of *Garell* of *Spain*.

IX. He beareth Gules, a **Bonacan**, Argent; **Armed**, and **Un-guled**, Or. This is also called a **Bonaze**, or **Bonasus**. This is a Beast of a bright Sorrel colour; maned like a **Horse**, of a dark colour, the body in all parts resembles the **Bull**, or **Ox**: This is born by *Kornich*.

Gesner saith, That the horns are smooth like an **Ox**, and turn round to the sides of his Cheeks, like the **Ram**, so that he hath no defence by them; they are maned to the Shoulders, like a **Horse**; their colour between red and ash-colour. They have no upper Teeth like an **Ox**, so that such may fitly be termed, a **Bonacon Ram-horned**.

Others have their horns coming out of their Forehead, bending down all a-long to the side of their Face, and then turn up at the end, or point of the horn, *chap.* 8. *numb.* 62. and *chap.* 18. *numb.* 80.

XIII. He beareth Vert, a **Bonaze**, or **Bonacons head erazed**, Argent; **Armed**, and **Gorged with a Crown**, Or. This is born by the name of *Globier*.

XIV. He beareth Azure, a **Bonacons Head erazed**, Argent; **double horned** (or **attired**) **tusked**, and **bearded**, Or. Thus I find it Blazoned, but I take it rather for an **Equicerves head**, as the figure following; and ought to be termed, **attired counter-attired**; or double attired counterwise, by reason two of the Horns stand contrary to the other two. This is Born by the name of *Tirwell*.

XV. He beareth Mercury, an **Equicerve**, or a **Deer-Horse**, Luna; **attired**, Sol. This is a Beast in the Oriental Countreys, having the body of a Horse with outward bended horns, a mane, and a beard under his chin. But is no greater than an **Hart**: Some draw this Beast with cloven hoofs, but that is not right. This is the Coat Armour of *Grimpmall*, a Family in *Poland*.

O a demy Equicerve G is born by *Magenbuch*.

A the head cabossed S and for his Crest the head couped, is born by *Van Busseck*.

Per Fesse A and S in cheif, the horns on the scalp S born by *Ketenhofen*.

XVI. He beareth Gules, the **Head of a Colus**, Argent; **horned**, Or. It is in stature and form, between a **Ram** and a **Hart**, of a dusky white colour; having a Nose, or Snowt like a Swine; their horns grow upright out towards the top, circled about almost to the end. This is Born by the name of *Coles*.

XVII. He beareth Gules, an **Iber**, or an **Isbeck**, Or. This is by some Heraulds termed a **Man-tyger**. Others an **Isbeck**, with two **Horns**. But I take it rather to be the **Pyrallouppi**, mentioned, *numb.* 431. This is born by the name of *Obrone*.

And a demy Rampant O is the Crest of *Calcote*, of the Isle of *Man*.

Losengy A and V on a bend B 3 such heads erazed O and the like head for the Crest is born by *Yonge*.

An Ibex head A collered and horned O is the Crest of *Wroughton*.

XVIII. He beareth Argent, a **Man-Tyger**, horned, Gules. This Beast hath the Face and Ears of a **Man**; the Body of a **Tyger**, and whole footed like a **Goose**, or **Dragon**; yet others make it with feet like a **Tyger**. I term this **Horned** though it be of the same colour with the body; by reason some **Man-Tygers** are without Horns; for very Ancient I have seen it drawn with the Ears of a **Bull**, the forefeet of an **Ape**, the hinder feet of a **Buck**, and the tail of a **Fox**. This is born as a Supporter anciently belonging to the Family of *Chetwood*, of *Ch.* and *Ockley* in *Shrop-shire*; as descending from the Baron of *Woodhull*, whose Heir he Married.

A Demy one A Horns O out of a Cressant G is the Crest of the Baron *Wahull*, alias *Woodhull*.

O the like G horned O born by *Helter*. Yet I have seen it drawn of old with a Mans Face and Hair, Ears of an Ass, the foresect of a Goose, the hinder of a Goat, and Tail of a Fox.

The Lord *Paget*, Baron of *Beaudefert*, hath for his Crest and Supporters, a Man-Tyger, which in the Face is like a Man, with a sharp Beard, and long Hair, with the body of a Tyger.

XIX. This is by Mr. *Leigh* called a **Man-tiger**, and he thus Blazons it, a **Man-tyger** Argent, **gorged erazed**, Sable, **Coller**, Or. By Gorging he means that shaggy part that is about the Shoulders, so that the Head, Feet, Body, and Tail is white; the Shoulders, or Mane about it is black. But Blazon it thus, a **Man-tiger**, Argent, **Collered**, Or. **Maned**, (or **Haired** on the Shoulder, like a **Lion**) Sable.

XX. He beareth Sable, a **Goat**, Argent; **horned and hooked**, Or. He is also called, a **Capre**, from Caper. If the Goat stand up-right, it is termed **Saliant**. This is Born by *Kelmyn*.

The **Goat**, or **Buck-Goat**, by his *Horns* his Age is known, that is by the Wrinkles next the head. The Female have two Udders under their Loyns, next the small of their Belly. But the **Libian Goats** have their Udders lye under their Breasts, or fore-part of their Belly, like to **Apes**.

The **Deer-Goat**, hath horns wrinkled round, almost to the top, bending back, and then turning forwards again, towards the ends, a small Beard, and shagged like a **Sheep**, not so rough as a **Goat**; of a whitish yellow colour.

The **Iber** doth in all respects resemble the **Goat**, but is both larger in Body and Horns; of a yellowish colour, as the *History of Beasts*, *fol.* 446. informs me. Though in

in Heraulidry it is drawn with the Horns standing forwards as *numb.* 17.

XXI. He beareth Argent, the head of an **Assyrian Goat couped,** Gules. It hath long Ears like a **Hound,** and two round sharp *Horns*, standing (as it were) in sockets on the Crown, or top of the head, all the rest of the Body, Tail and Feet, answereth the **Deer**; with Stones like a **Stone-Horse,** with Dugs, or long Paps, next the Neck, under the Throat; their colour is whitish. See *chap.* 8. *numb.* 4. This is Born by *Kisnick.*

S 3 such A horned O born by *Gibley.*

Er. a Goats head erazed G attired O born by *Gotley.*

B 3 such O Horns A Born by *Gwydo Don Masmo* of *Spain.*

XXII. He beareth Vert, a **Pigage,** or **Buck-goat,** Or. It is a kind of wild Beast, bodied like a **Buck,** and horns like a **Goat.**

Per bend sinister B and O a demy Buck-goat springing to the sinister counterchanged, the Crest is the same B winged O born by *Van Stoten.*

G the like in full course bend-ways A Girthed O the Crest is a Demy one A out of a Crown O born by *Bladorsker.*

O the like climing of a hill Bend-ways G born by *Gramlsen.*

XXIII. He beareth Argent, the head of a **Wild-Goat,** (or a **Buck-Goat,**) with bended Horns, proper. It is also termed a **Tregelaphus,** a **Rock-Goat**; and the **Alpine wild Goat.** Their Horns crooked bending to their Shoulders backwards, Ram-horned: See *chap.* 8. *numb.* 32. This is born by the name of *Pigate.*

The **Hirth,** agreeth with this Beast in all respects; as Horns, Shape, and Bigness; only it hath a long Tail reaching down to the Ground. *History of Beasts, fol.* 643.

The **Cinius,** a Beast engendred of a Buck-Goat, and an Ewe.

The **Tregelaphus,** or **Deer-Goat.** See *chap.* 8. *numb.* 9.

XXIV. He beareth Gules, a **Musimon tripping,** Argent. This Beast is engendred of a **She-Goat** and a **Ram**; and from thence the head pertaketh of both kind of *Horns*; the Ram and the Goat; the rest of the body represents the Sheep. Some term it a **Musion,** and **Musmon.** This is born by the name of *Arnoldus.*

The **Tytirus** is a Beast engendred between a **Sheep** and a **Buck-Goat,** as *Upton* noteth.

XXV. He beareth Argent, an **Antilope,** Gules: **tusked, horned, maned,** and **hooked,** Or. Their bodies are like the **Roe,** with horns growing backwards, like Saws on one side. This is born by the name of *Antilupe.*

S 3 such heads couped O Born by *Broster* of *Chester.*

XXVI. He beareth Gules, on a **Hill** Vert, an **Holy Lamb lodged,** Argent; **Staff** Or, **Banner** of the second, ensigned with a Cross of the first; thus by *Gwillims.* But the holy Lamb I never saw born but in two postures; either **standing,** or **couched,** or **lodged**; but in what-soever posture it is, still it holds the Banner and Staff (as it were) on its right Shoulder bend sinister-ways, as this example doth demonstrate. If so, why needs so long a Blazon be used, but much more short; as, Argent, on a **Hill** the **Holy Lamb lodged,** proper. If standing, on a **Hill,** the **Holy Lamb,** proper. This is born by *Holyhill.*

G 3 holy Lambs Born by *Rowe* of *Lamerton.*

S an holy Lamb couched on a Bible, is the Town of *Preston* in *Amundernes*, Coat of Arms.

G on a hill in Base V a holy Lamb A is the Coat of the Bishoprick of *Brixen.*

B a holy Lamb A born by *Lemblein.*

XXVII. He beareth Vert, a **Ram,** Argent; **Horned,** (or **addorned,** or **attired,**) and **unguled,** (or **Hooked,**) Or.

☞ The term addorned, is most proper for them and all other Beasts who have their Horns more for Ornament than for Arms and Weapons to fight withall: Therefore they cannot be termed Armed, as some unskilful Artificers do. Some term this a **Tup**; if gelded a **Weather.**

G on a hill in base O a Lamb A the Crest the same, and is born by *Lemblein.*

O a Lamb S is the Coat and Crest of *Van Hun.*

☞ These I term Lambs, because they are without horns.

O a Ram springing G born by *Hausner Van Treusa.*

G the like tripping to the sinister and regardant A by *Kotzaw*; also by *Schafen.*

O the like springing A born by *Van Gregersdorf.*

G a Rams head couped at the hinder part of the head S horns O born by *Van Rechenberg.*

The **Sheep,** or **Ewe** is the same, but she hath no horns, except some little stumps in some, which stand up above their Ears bending back and close to the head. Sheep are generally white, some black, near the *Alpes*, grey and reddish, and Honey-wooled. In the Isle of *Man*, yellow, or Lion tawney. They are generally termed **Mutton.**

Gotynus Sheep, are red, and have four horns.

XXVIII. He beareth Sable, a **demy Ram mounting,** Argent; **addorned,** and **unguled,** Or. It is termed unguled, from *Ungula*, the Hoof, or Claw. This is Born by *Mountrame.*

The **Subus,** is a kind of wild Sheep, with two large Horns; the body of a very bright yellow; they live in the Water, and on the Land.

In the Base of this quarter is a **Serpent** with his Tail **erected,** and **torqued** (or **flected,** and **reflected.**) A winged Serpent with his Tail thus erected is the Crest of *Don Sapanco* of *Spain.*

XXIX. He beareth Azure, the **Golden Fleece.** This is so well known in the signs of *London*, by the term of **Fleece,** that I dare give it no other Blazon, neither indeed can I give it a more proper expression. This is a Sheep hung by the middle in a Chain from the cheif point.

Terms

Terms used by Shepheards in Keeping of Sheep.

11. FOr their safety and feeding.

A **Sheep-cote**, to lodge them in, in the Winter time. **Folds**, for the Summer.

A **Shepheards Bower, Hut, Coat**, or **Cabin**, a place to keep him from heat and foul Weather; called **Shades**, or **shaddows**, by the Poets.

Shepherds Dog, or **Cur**, to keep them from Wolves and Foxes, and to fetch them in if they go astray; and to gather them to their Folds.

Cratch, or **Racks**, to give them meat in, in the Winter-time.

Hurdles, or **Folds**, things made of sticks wound together, by which the Folds are made to keep them in one place.

Whoop, Whoopoo. Is the Shepherds call or cry, to call the Sheep together, to bring them to the Fold, or Cote.

Shepherds Crook, a Staff with an Iron hook at the end, with which he can catch any Mutton he desireth among the Flock.

Rich lear, is good ground for feeding and fatting them.

Poor Lear, is barren ground.

Pasture Sheep, are such as are kept in Fields and inclosed Land.

Field Sheep, such as are kept in the tylth of fallow fields, or vast Forests and Commons.

Mountain Sheep, those kept on Rocky hills, and Mountainous places, which are generally very small Sheep.

Yeaning time, when they drop their Lambs.

Lipped, or **Libbed**, or gelded Sheep.

Cut, Heal, or **Geld Lambs**, when their Stones are taken away.

Tar-bottle, or **Tar-box**, a thing to hold Tar in to mark Sheep, and to dress such as have Maggots.

Stragled, gone astray.

Rutting, or **Raming-time.**

Mutton, the flesh of Sheep.

Coat the sheep, is to drive them into their Houses of Folds.

Shut up the sheep, when they are bidden to fetch in the Sheep from pasturing.

Pasturing, or **Grasing**, is the feeding of Sheep.

Beiting of sheep, is the dressing of them from filth.

Turn the Tupe to ride, is to put them to the Ewes to engender, according to the old Proverb. About St. *Luke's* day, Let the **Tup** have his way.

Ewe is Blessom, that is, she hath taken Tup.

Ewe is Riding, when she is Tupping.

Yean, or **Lamb**, when they have brought forth their young, which they usually do in twenty weeks after Riding.

Sucking Lamb, so called all the time of Sucking the Ewe.

Lamb bossing the Ewe, when it Nuds the Dug.

Weaned Lamb, when taken from the Ewe.

Read Lamb, when brought up without the help, or sucking of the Ewe.

Lamb, or **Hog-sheep**, for twelve month.

A **share sheep**, at two years old, at which time he or she hath cast two Teeth.

Two share sheep, at three years old, when cast four Teeth, or hath four broad Teeth.

Three share sheep, at four years old, at which time they have six broad Teeth, then they are called Weathers or Tups.

A **Flock**, or **Theave**, of such an age are called Ewes.

Droppings, is Sheeps Dung.

Shepheards Bag, and **Bottle**, those things he keeps his meat and drink in, his Pantrey and his Cellar.

Gathering and **Washing** and **Coating of sheep**, is to make their Wool clean before it be shorn off.

Sheep shearing, is that time wherein the Wooll is cut off them, which both in old time, and at this day was ever accounted days of Mirth and Feasting, as we may read, *Gen.* 38. 12, 13. 2 *Sam.* 13. 23, 24, 25, 26, 27.

Sheep shearers, are such as tye the Sheeps four feet together, and cut of their Wooll.

Sheep shares, or **Wooll shares**, that with which the Wooll is shorn of the Sheep.

New shorn sheep,

Mark the sheep, is with a Marking Iron, either of the Letters of the Owners name, or of some other devise, dipt in hot pitch or Tar, and clapt upon some place of the Sheep, which will a-bide there, to make them to be known: Some mark them with Raddle, and make Ear-marks.

Strunted sheep, is when their Tails are cut off to keep them from Dunging them, and breeding of Maggots therein.

Fleece, is as much Wooll as comes off one Sheep, and is rolled up in a Bundle.

Diseases in Sheep.

12. PUrples.

Cold, known by their Coughing.

Scab, or **Itch.**

Pox, or **Blisters**, or St. **Anthonies Fire**; an incurable Evil, which neither admitteth Medicine, or Resitation by Knife; for there is nothing that spreadeth itself more speedily.

Warts and **Cratches**, Sores that arise through paring of the Hoof, by bunches rising there.

Worms in the Claws.

Falling-sickness, a disease not known till Beast be dead.

Clouds, or pains in the Eyes, dimness of sight.

Swelling of the Jaws, and **Looseness** of Teeth.

Sighing, and shortness of Breath.

Loath

Loathing of Sheep, is when they have no Stomach, but forsake their Meat.

Flux, or Looseness of their Belly.

Melt of Sheep, an abundance of Blood, which must be taken from them.

Feaver, which is through heat of Blood, which causeth solitariness, and careless feeding, and lying alone in the Night.

Rottenness, or **Pestilence**, a corruption of the vital Spirits; multitude of Evils come by this Disease, and they consume away.

Lice, and **Tikes**, are little Creatures which much vex and molest them.

Cramp.

Worms of the Belly.

Wood-Evil.

Staggers.

Maggots in the Tail, and hinder parts; caused through the Excrement hanging at their Tails, which breeds them to the eating of the Tail, and Buttocks, if not prevented.

Turning Evil,

Pains in the Joynts.

Joynts broken, Put out, Shevered Bones, *&c.*

Parts or Members of a Sheep.

13. THE **Fell**, Skin, or hide of a Sheep.

The **Pelt**, the Skin of a Lamb, or small Sheep.

Wooll, or the Fleece, is that as covers the Skin.

Mutton, the flesh of Sheep.

Lambs flesh,

Head,

Horns,

Wrinkles in the Horns which shew his Age.

Chewing the Cud.

Teeth,

Roof, or **Pallat**, the top of the Mouth, which is rough or wrinkles, as if it were Steps.

Ropes or small Puddings.

Fat Puddings, the large Puddings.

Haggas,

Pommises, the Heart, Lights, and Liver altogether.

The **Trotters**, or **Trottles**, are the Sheeps feet.

Hoofs, or **Claws**, of the out-most in each foot is a litter larger than the inward.

All other inward or outward parts of a Sheep are commonly called after the same Names & Terms of a **Bull**, or **Calf**; of which you may see more, *numb.* 8. *sect.* 3.

Observations of Shepherds.

14. FAt Pastures, breed straight, and tall Sheep. *History of Beast, fol.* 604.

Hills and short Pastures, broad and square Sheep.

Woods and Mountains, small and slender Sheep.

But the best feeding, is in new ploughed ground.

If the right Stone of a Ram be tied in Copulation, he engendreth a Male, if the left stone, a Female.

That both Male and Females, are begotten as well by the virtue of Waters; as by the virtue of the Rams, and also by the virtue of Winds: For when the North-wind bloweth, for the most part Males are conceived; and when the South-wind, Females; so that Shepheards cause the Ram to leap the Ewe, with his Face to the North, *&c.*

Abortives, or casting of Lambs after Copulation, is when there falls a shower on them; if great with young, when they eat Wall-nuts, or Acorns, they will cast their Lambs; and likewise in time of Thunder, if the Ewe with young, be alone in the Field, it will cause Abortment.

When any Frost or Ice, or Snow falls on a Sheep, if he endure it and shake it not off, it is a great hazard, but it will dye of the cold, but if he shake it off, it is a sign of a strong, sound, and healthy Constitution.

If the vein of the Eyes, be red and small, the Sheep are sound; but if white, or red and full, they are weak, and will hardly live the Winter, or cold Weather.

Press the Back-bone near the Hips, if the Sheep bend not, they are sound and strong; else weak and feeble.

Take a Sheep by the skin of the Neck, and if he follow quietly it is weak, and a great sign of imbicility; if it struggle and strive and follow with great difficulty, it is a token of health and soundness.

By the behaviour of the Sheep at their Rutting, or Ramming-time, Shepheards judged of the Winter-Season, if they be lustful and leap often on the Female, it presages Tempests, Rain, and change of Weather. But if they be slow and backwards in Copulation, the Winter will be gentle, and temperate weather.

The Ram, from the Autumnal Æquinoctial, unto the Vernel, as the Sun keeps on the right hand of the Hemisphere, so doth the Ram lye on his right side; and in the Summer Season, as the Sun keepeth on the left hand of the Hemisphere, so the Ram lyes on his left side.

XXX. He beareth Gules, a **Unicorn tripping**, Argent; **Armed, Maned, and Unguled**, Or. The **Unicorn** both whole, and in its parts, are born in as many postures as the **Stag**, and have the same terms of Blazoning, only the **Stag** is termed **springing**, and the **Unicorn saliant.** That there is such a Beast is proved by Scripture; *Psal.* 92. *Deut.* 33. *Job*, 39. and that it is of this form and shape, is testified by Mr. *Topsell*, in his *History of Beasts, fol.* 711. *&c.* This is born by the name of *Musterton.*

G 3 such heads couped O born by *Paris.*

B a demy Unicorn saliant to the sinister A born by *Truchses van Grossperg.*

B a craggy Rock in base O a demy Unicorn issuant A born by *Van Gravenreut* of *Bavaria.*

A a Unicorn Sejant S Armed and Unguled O born by *Harling.*

XXXI. He beareth Azure, a **Unicorn saliant**, Argent. This is born by *Dune.*

The **Pyrassonpri**, it is a barbarous and cruel Beast, in shape and form in all parts like the **Unicorn**, with rough and shaggy hair like a **Goat**, with two Horns standing forward, like the **Unicorns**. They are to be found in the Isles called *Arabibus*, and *Cademotha*, near the red Sea, and in the Regions thereabouts.

The **Monoceros**, is a wild Beast (saith *Pliny*,) hunted by the *Arcean Indians*, which is very curst and untamable; having one horn, which in the Head resembles a **Hart**, in the feet an **Elephant**, in the tail a **Boar**, and in the residue of the body a **Horse**, with a voice like the lowing of an **Ox**, but more shrill; which is never taken alive. Their mane and hair yellow; the horn black, not smooth but rough all over with wrinkles.

The **wild Ass**, hath a Horn in the Forehead, is whole hoofed, white on the body, and purple on their head; the horn is at bottom white, the middle black, the top purple; which is by some interpreted, that the Superficies, or upper face of the horn, to be all purple; the inner part white, and the inward part, or middle black It is call'd the **Oryx**, or **Indian Ass**: See *chap.* 18 *numb* 16. *and* 8. 37.

The **Basman Unicorn**, is like in body to the **Elephant**, and almost as large; having an head like a **Swine**; tail like an **Ox**, and an horn in the middle of the Forehead. Which is a second kind of **Unicorn**, which I call the **Basman Unicorn**, from the name of the Kingdom, in which it is bred.

The Kingdoms of *Niem*, and *Lamber*, in the *India's* are stored with a Beast, having one horn, which is crooked, and not great; with a **Dragons head**, and a beard upon his Chin, his Neck long, and stretched out like a **Serpent**; the residue of his body, like a **Hart**; save that his feet, colour, and mouth are like a **Lions**; which I may call the **Lion Dragon Unicorn**, according to Herauldry.

The **Wild Goat**, that useth the Sea; hath a short horn in his Forehead, each round being smaller than another, till it come to a small point, it is like a **Goat** in all respects, only the hinder feet are whole like a **Goose**.

XXXII. He beareth Azure, a **Rhinoceros**, Or. This is a Beast covered all over with great Scales, like Shields, and hath one horn which is upon its Nose, and stands upright towards the Eyes; termed by all a **Rhinocerot**. The *Indians* call this Beast in their Language **Scandabenament**: It is coloured like an **Elephant**, or like the rind or bark of a Box-tree, his hair on his Face, reddish; the Legs are scally down to the Hoof, which are parted into four distinct Claws. Some call it, an **Ethiopian Bull**. This is the Apothicaries Crest.

B the like O is born by *Don Sackville* of *Spain*.

XXXIII. He beareth Argent, an **one horned Bison**; or an **Unicorn-Bison**; it is in shape almost like the **Unicorn**, for it hath a short wreathed horn on his Fore-head, with a long mane, of a blackish colour to his Shoulders, the rest of the body, tail, feet like to the **Hart**, with a beard under his Chin. This is born by *Van Hornlijonig*.

In this quarter I have set a **Serpent**, whose **Tail** is **erected** and **bowed**, **debruised**, and **embowed** with the Tail **surmounting**, or **crossing**; else double embowed, and fretted; or twice imbowed counter or contrary debruised.

XXXIV. He beareth Sable, a **Camel**, Or. By the name of *Camell*. If the Camel have two risings, or knots of hair, on his back. Then he is termed, a **Camel double bunched**. They are long necked, tail like an **Ass**, they have Knees on all the Leggs, and Ancles like an **Ox**; their feet are cloven; yet the under part hath but two Fissures, or clefts; and in the upper part four clefts. The foot is fleshy like a **Bears**.

The **Bractrian Camel**, hath two bunches on his Back, and one on his Brest, whereon he leaneth; which are said to have a **Boar** for their Sire, which feeding with the flocks of She-Camels, couple together. Their colour is brown, or puke; yet there are Heards of them white in *India*. The Females have four Paps or Speans at their Udders.

The **Nabim**, is a Beast in *Ethiopia*, which hath the Head of a **Camel**, and the Neck of an **Horse**.

The **Dromedary**, or **Camel-Dromedary**, is less than the Camel, but far swifter. The upper Lip is cloven (like a **Hare**,) in the middle, and two broad Nails on his feet, which in the upper part appear cloven, but underneath they are whole and fleshy, without division; he hath a hard bunch on his Breast whereon he leaneth, all shagged, behind the Head, and so round the Neck, with long hair.

V a Camel O born by *Fallows* of *Fallows* in *Cheshire*.

Per Fesse B A the like tripping to the sinister G by *Gardaner*.

O the like G born by *Schomoltzen*; and B the like A by *Crocher*.

XXXV. He beareth Argent, a **Moor**, proper: riding on the back of a **Camel**, or **Dromedary**, Tenne: **hidled**, Sable. There is so little distinction between the **Camel** and **Dromedary**, that you may call them by either name. This was the ancient Crest of the Company of *Grocers* of the City of *Chester*.

The Camel thus furnished (Sans Moor) is the now Crest of the *Grocers* of *London*.

XXXVI. He beareth Azure, a **Camel-Leopard**, Argent. This is Born by *Gamelberg*. This is a Beast engendred of the **Camel**, and a Female **Libard**, or **Panther**; and hath the Head and Neck of a **Camel**; mane of a **Horse**, body of a **Hart**, and cloven-footed like a **Camel**; having the fore-Leggs longer than the hinder; their colour is red, mixed with white, under his Belly; being full of spots.

The **Camelopardal**, hath two little horns growing on his head, of Iron colour, turning a little backwards, and smooth. His mouth but little, like an **Harts**; his Neck long having no Ears; and the fore-Legs longer than the other; which makes his back decline towards his Buttock, which are like an **Asses**. The pass of this beast differeth from all other in the World; for he doth not move his right and left foot one after another; but both together, and so likewise the other, whereby his whole body is removed, at every step, or strain.

A the like G is born by *Choleumpar* of *Poland*.

O the like B is the Coat of *Kemelperdt*.

B 3 such O born by *Van Lmydemell* of *Switzerland*.

Per

Per Fesse A and G in the Cheif, a **Bull-Lion,** G born by *Stierberg*. This hath only a Bulls head, all the rest a Lion, called by the Dutch, **Stierleew.**

Per Fesse A and B a **Gryffon sans Wings adorned** with **Bulls-horns**, counterchanged. Born by *Stiergam*. Some call it an **Horned Gryffon.**

B a **Boar-Dog**, or a **Boar-Hound,** A by the Dutch termed a **Swijnhond,** is born by the name of *Van Swehondt*.

A an **Ape-Bear,** proper. Born by *Simbeir* : See *chap.* 10. *numb.* 51.

☞ Where note, That Creatures thus of a double generation and biformed, in their Blazoning are to have that Beast named first from whence the head is derived, and the other after, which hath the bodily form. Yet neither have these the half of one, and half of the other, as **Lion-Dragons, Wolf-Dragons,** and **Dragon-Tygers,** and those other mentioned, *chap.* 10. *numb.* 45, 46, 49, 50. of the **Serpentine** kind. But have only the head of the first, and all the rest of the body and feet of the second beast, whereof they are made.

XXXVII. He beareth Gules, an **Allocamelus,** or an **Ass-Camel,** Argent. This is a Beast engendred of an **Ass,** or **Mule,** and a **Camel**; having the head of an **Ass,** with a slender neck, the body of an **Hart,** and such a tail, with feet like a **Camel,** or the **Ostrige,** only two claws. Some call it, a **Stag-Camel.**

An **Indian Sheep** of *Peru*, hath the head of a **Mule,** and the body of a **Camel**; the Neck as white as any **Swan,** and rest of the body yellowish; his feet like to an **Ostrige-Camels.** This is another kind of the **Allocamelus** before-said.

B the Ass-Camel A born by *Cabalu*, an *Italian*.

G three such heads couped at the Breast O by *Capoijon*.

XXXVIII. He beareth Gules, an **Elephant,** Argent. They are great and vast Creature, near eleven and twelve foot high, with length and breadth proportionable, of a Mouse-colour; the skin looks pieled and scabby, hard on the back, more soft on the belly; having neither hair or bristles to cover him, nor yet help of his tail to drive away Flyes; but always hath crevises in his skin, which doth invite the flies to a continual feast; but when by stretching forth they have received the swarms, by shrinking together they inclose the flies, and kill them. So that these crevises in his skin are unto him instead of mane, tail, and hair. Their Ears are like the Wings of a **Dragon,** or **Bat.** The long Teeth of the Males are crooked, and stand downward, as from their higher Gums; and the Females stand upward, and are smaller and straight. The Female hath two paps a little beside her breast under her shoulders, and not between her hinder Legs. This Coat is born by the name of *Elphinston*.

O the like S born by *Du-Liet*.

Per Fesse G and A a demy **Elephant upright,** or **mounting,** counterchanged. Born by *Haugen*.

XXXIX. He beareth Gules, an **Elephant,** Argent; with a **Castle on his back,** Or; **girthed,** Sable. In former Ages Soldiers were used to fight in wooden Castles fixed on their backs. Some fighting on the right, others on the left hand, and some backwards, others forward. They would bear an incredible number of Soldiers to the number of fifty or sixty, as is testified by several Authors : See 1 *Maccabes*, 6. 37. This is the Crest of Sir *John Corbet* of *Morton-Corbet* in *Shropshire*, Knight.

A the like S Castle G Furniture O Born by *Zur Gilgen Zu Hilsicken*.

XL. He beareth Or, the **Proboscide, (trunk** or **snout)** of an **Elephant couped, flered and reflered,** (in form of a Roman S) Gules. The Elephants Trunk is a large hollow thing hanging from his Nose to the ground-ward, like the skin upon the bill of a **Turkey-Cock**; by which he draweth in both his meat and drink, using it for a hand, and therefore improperly it is called the **Elephants hand.** It is crooked, gristly, and flexable, but inflexable at the root next the Nose; within it hath two passages, one into the head and body, by which he breatheth; and the other into his Mouth, by which he receiveth his Meat; or whatsoever his Keeper giveth him. *Bara* setteth this down for the Coat of *Cyneus* King of *Scythia*. Where also he noteth that *Idomenes* King of *Thessaly* did bear G the like A.

B the same with the Snout erected O is born by *Barschker*.

XLI. He beareth Argent, an **Elephants head erazed,** Gules. This should be termed a She Elephant, or the head of a Female Elephant; by reason his tusks or teeth stand upwards, and the Male stands downward; but it is a thing in Heraldry not observed, though it were a sussicient distinction for a Coat of Arms between Families; as the bearing of a Ram and a Ewe, or a Lion with red claws, and another with yellow; and much more then Ermyne and Ermynites, being both one, save the last hath one hair of red on each side of every one of the Poulderings; a thing little regarded makes a great alteration in Arms. This is born by the name of *Brodric*.

Per Cheveron S and A 3 such counterchanged, by *Saunders*.

S on a Fesse between three such heads A as many Mullets S born by *Pratte*.

An Elephants head couped G is the Crest of *Van Effern*. And it is also the Company of Cutlers Crest.

XLII. He beareth Gules, out of a **Coronett,** Or, the **Proboscides** of two **Elephants erected and reflected,** Argent. Some will add, their **Snowts inwards,** or **Snowts respected,** being a term used, when things (either Quick or Dead) are (as it were) regarding or looking one at another. This is born by the name of *Beltonie*; with the Snowts endorsed, is the Crest of *Cromair*.

XLIII. He beareth Argent, out of a **Coronett,** Or; two **Proboscides** (or **Trunks**) of two **Elephants reflected endorsed,** Gules, each adorned with three **Trefoils,** Vert. This is a great Bearing amongst the *Dutch*, as their Books of Herauldry inform me, for there is Scores of those Familys, bear the Elephants Trunk thus, some addorned with **Roses, Leaves, Pendants, Crosses,** or with other varieties of things; each set at a certain distance from the Trunk, by a foot Stalk.

☞ Now in the Blazon of such Coates, you must

first observe the reflection of the Proboſides, whether the Snowts ſtand reſpected, or endorſed; and then to tell the exact number of things, each one is adorned with all: for in ſome they will have one thing apeece, others 2. 3. 4. 5. *&c.* Some again will have (with the ſides; and others without the ſides adorning) ſuch and ſuch things ſet in the concave or hole of the Snowt; whereof you will find Examples in this Work. *chap.* 8. *numb.* 69. and *chap.* 18. *numb.* 82. This is the Creſt of *Garwilline*, the like ſet with Hawks-Bells, O is the Creſt of *Barſcher*, one by *Kennap*.

XLIV. He beareth Sable, out of a **Ducal Crown**, Argent, two **Elephants Snowts reflected**, and **endorſed**, Or. This term Endorſed, ſignifieth a turning, or looking back from the other; as if things (either quick or dead) were ſet back to back, looking contrary ways, as reſpected, look one to another. Some term theſe **Counter** or **contrary reflected**. This is the Coat Armour of *Magdebourough*, theſe Snouts are alſo born Barry, Chequy, *&c.*

2 endorſed barry of four A. and B. is the Creſt of *Van Liebenſtein*.

2 the like B. each with 2 barrs A. is the Creſt of *Van Bickn*.

2 the like out of a Crown counter company A. & G. each 2 barrs B. is the Creſt of *Munich*.

The like (Sans Crown) B. and A. the barrs G. is the Creſt of *Van Warninghofen*.

2. the like parted per Feſſe. B. and G. is the Creſt of *Van Leichwitz*, and the like with a Spur rowel between them, O. Is *Van Obſterberg*.

The like endorſed out of a coronet O. per Feſſe, G & A and A & G counterchanged, is the Creſt of the Earl of *Oth*.

2 ſuch the one barry A & B the other G is the Creſt of *Ratzuncz*.

2 ſuch Chequy A & G is born by *Van Noſtitz*.

XLV. He beareth Vert a **Boar** Or. Born by Sir *Roger Powys*, this being a domeſtick beaſt, and brought tame for the uſe of man: ſo man hath given ſeveral names unto it, both according to their Sex and Ages, for in Engliſh we call a young Swine a **Bigg**; a ſucking or weaning Bigg, a **Sheate**, or **Shoate**, a **Pealke** *&c.* Likewiſe a **Sow**, a **Hogg**, a **Barrow**; a **Libd-Hogg**, a **Libd-Sow**, a **Splayed-Sow**, a **Geld-Sow**, a **Gaute**. The Male a Boar, the Female a Sow, and all under the general term **Swine**, or **Pork**, and **Brawn**. This is born alſo by the name of *Boar*.

The *French* call a Swine a **Porceau**: a Sow, **Truye cothe**: a Boar, **Verrat**: a Pig, **Cochon Porcelet**: the barrow Hogg, **Por-chaſtre**.

The *Germans*, call a Swine, **Saw** or **Suw**, or **Suſchwin**, or **Schwein**: a Sow, **Mor**; or **Loos**: a Boar, **Acher**; a Barrow-hogg, a **Barg**; a Splaid-Sow, **Gultz**; a Pig, **Ferle**, or **Scuwle**: and a ſucking Pig, **Spankoerle**. Theſe are the moſt common and vulgar terms of Swins, if there be any other, they are diviſed, or new made.

A the like G born by *Trewarthen*.

G the like A born by *Meuric Goth* of *Divet*.

B 3 Such in Pale, A born by *Yonas*.

O a Boar Currant in bend Sinister B is born by *Siniching*.

O the like in bend Sinister S by *Recken Van Reckenhof*.

G the like A by *Van Schweinichen*.

A a demy Boar couped G Briſled V is the Coat and Creſt of *Cammeraw*.

O a demy Boar erazed G born by *Balbion* of *Spain*.

XLVI. He beareth Argent, a **Boars head couped** Sable: **Armed** (or **tuſhed** or **tuſked**) Or, Snouted Gules, the Snout is the turning up of the Noſe, born by *Swinhead*. For the proper colour of Swine, it is very uncertain and varieth not only from the diverſity of the Countrey, but in every Countrey, it is diverſe in it ſelf; ſome are white, ſome branded, or breended, ſome ſand colour, ſome red, ſome black, ſome pyed, ſome none of theſe, and ſome all of theſe. They are in *Germany* for the moſt part red; in *England* whitiſh yellow; and in *France*, and *Italy*, black. A a cheveron between 3 ſuch S born by *Ednomes Bendew*.

In the baſe, is a **Serpent regardant, recurvant**, the **tail bowed**, or elſe a Serpent regardant, reverſed, the tail embowed. ſee *numb.* 72. This is the Creſt of *Van Drodroll*.

XLVII. He beareth Sable, a **Boars head couped**, Argent; **collered engraled**, Gules, (ſome term it **gorged** with a Pale engraled) by the name of *Ecker*.

In the baſe part for want of other room, I have cauſed a **Chaffer-bee** — to be engraven, which is a kind of Bee, or Fly without wings, being covered with a hard Scale or Shell, of a rediſh yellow colour, ſuch on a chief A the Field B is born by *Chafferbey*.

The Shell fly hideth his wings under a caſe, or ſheath.

XLVIII. He beareth Azure, a **Boars-head**, Argent; **erazed**, Or. after this manner ſhall you find almoſt all ſorts of heads born; having the erazing of a contrary colour, from the head: which are ever Blazoned after this manner. This is born by the name of *Birmeall*.

S. 3 Horſe heads A erazed G born by *Traherne ap Paſgen*.

A Tygers head A erazed, O is born for the Creſt of *Boſtock*.

A Unicorns head, A couped G the Creſt of *Leigh* of *Adlington*.

XLIX. He beareth Argent, a **Boars-head erected** and **erazed**, Sable. Sometimes you will find them in Coates of Arms, **extended bendwiſe**, 3 ſuch is the Coat of *Booth* of *Barton*, and *Dunham-Maſſy*.

A. a cheveron between 3 ſuch S. born by *Lawrence*.

L. He beareth Gules, a **Boars-head**, with **neck erazed**: Argent, or a **Boars-head elevated**, and **erazed**: or as others term it a Boars-head with neck erazed; *lib.* 4 *chap.* 29. ſo *Morgan*. This by the *Welſh Bards*, is called a **Boars-head, riſing erazed**, and only **erazed**; but very improper. For were it not that I am acquainted with this Coat and Blazoning; I ſhould notwithſtanding their Skill and Knowledg in Genealogies, help them, and the Family which bears them thus, to term it rather a **Tygers-head**, (as Heraulds now draw the Tyger) then a **Boars-head**, for this is not a proper poſture for a **Boar**, or **Swine**, or **Bear**, to have their heads thus lifted up. But rather as the foregoing examples, ſer

*

see more of this in the **Bears-head elevated.** *chap.* 7. *numb.* 102, 103.

A. a Boars-head couped in the Breast S born by *Schellenberg.*

O. the like couped regardant, S an Annulet in his ear G is the Coat and Crest of *Rutzen.*

15. THere are in *Illiria*, and *Pæonia*, and *Macedonia*, **Swine** (as *Aristotle* Affirmeth) that have whole Hoofs, like **Horses.**

A Swine-Heard, is the Keeper, or tender of Swine, whose office it is to instruct, or accustom the Swine, to the sound of a Horn, and shouting, or any other noise, whereby to call the Swine together to feeding.

To be careful of their feeding, and observe their time of farrowing · to make choise of Breeders, and those fit for store.

To avoid confusion amongst the Swine, he must see, that the Young Pigs suck none but their own Dams, and if there be more then the Sow can feed, to Kill some, better then to lose all.

To keep the Sty clean, for though their nature be to Wallow in the mire, yet they love to lie clean, and to have in the Styes several Porches or Hatches, to severe and to distinguish their lodging, that so they may not lie one upon another.

To look to the Gelding or Splaying of the Swine, for it is a good thing to have the Art of a Sow-gelder, or Hog-gelder; Such Gelded Swine in *English* we call a Gelded Male, a Barrow-Hog, and a Female Basse, which is best done, and most safely in the Spring and Autumn.

To be careful in ordering remedies, in case any Diseases fall upon them, for they are subject to many distempers.

Parts of a Boar or Swine.

16. **BRistles,** the strong hair on the Swines back.
Swines hair, an hard harsh hair.
Snout, the turning up of the Nose.
Tusk, or **Tushes,** the long teeth coming out of the mouth.
Cheeks, the sides of the head.
Sowce, the head, feet and ears boiled and laid in pickle for eating.
Hack, the Lights, Liver, and Heart altogether.
Brawn, the flesh of the Boar.
Pork, the flesh of Swine and Piggs.
Lard, the fat of Swine; the two leaves are termed Fat.
Puddings, or **Swines meat,** are all the Puddings together.
Pizzle, the Boars Prick which is writhen like a skrew.
Bag, the skin in which the Stones are hanged.
Wreath, the tail which is alway writhen.
Swines feet.
Claws, the Hoofs.

All other parts are termed according to the Bull and Cow; but for the other terms, as they are sold by the Butchers in the Shambles, that you may see farther explained in *lib.* 3. *cap.* 3. *numb.* 32.

Things necessary for keeping of Swine.

17. A **Swineherd,** the Swine keeper, a Tenter of Swine.
A **Hogherd,** a keeper of Hogs.
A **Swinecote,** a place to keep and fatten Swine in.
A **Stie,** is the out-courts, or limits of the Swine coat in which they walk and eat their Meat; but generally we call both the Cote and its outlet a Stie.
A **Trough,** or **Stone Trough,** a hollow place cut in Wood or Stone, in which the Swine have their Wash-meat given them.
Washings, as Whey, Butter-milk, Dish-water, any kind of Draff.
Straw, to ly on.
Corn, as Pease or Beans, Acorns, Chestnuts and other Fruit, to feed and fatten them.
Grass, Roots, Wisells, Grains, to nourish them up till the time of feeding.
Rings, or Staples to put into their Noses to keep them from Rooting.
Yokes, to put about their Necks to keep them from from running through Hedges, and breaking them down.
Trucks, or **Tans,** to carry their Meat and Draff in.

Diseases in Swine.

16. SWine, of all Creatures, if they be Sick, will forbear eating, which if the Swineheard observe, he must diligently enquire into the Disease, whether it be
Poison, for a Swine eating of Hemlock will poyson him; so will Chamelion, and black Hellebor work the same effect upon Horses, Oxen and Swine; Henbane make strange pains in their Belly and Guts like Convulsions; the Herb Goosefoot is Venemous to them, with the black Nightshade, and Hartstongue; the bite or sting of a Scorpion is present Death if they drink upon it.

The **Measils,** or **Measle,** they are like Hail-stones spread in the Flesh, and especially in the leaner part of the Hog; this is a Disease proper to this Beast, for no other in the World (as *Aristotle* saith) is troubled therewith; if a Swine be Measly, the flesh is very soft and loose; and this voice will be altered.

The **Leanness,** or **Pineing,** is a kind of leasy disease, and

and they go as if they were drunk, or weary, they lie down and sleep all day. Called also **Misliking.**

The **Pestilence**, or **Murrin**, which causeth bunches and swellings about their necks.

The **Ague**, is found out by their sudden stop, standing still, and turning their heads about, fall down as if it were by a **Megrim.**

The **Cramp**, is a painfull Convulsion of their members, caused through cold, which hapneth when in their travel, they suddenly lie down through wearinesse.

The **Lice**, with which they are much infested, by which Vermine their skin is gnawed through.

The **Letragy**, is a sleeping evil, called a **Lethargy** which cometh upon them, through much sleep in the Summer, of which they die.

The **Head-ach**, which causeth their ears fall down, and their eyes dejected; by reason of many cold humours in the head, it killeth in three or four days time, after infection being as dangerous as the Pestilence.

The **Gargarism**, it is a swelling about the chaps, joyned with the Feavor, and Head-ach. spreading it self all over the throat, like as the Squinacy in a man.

The **Kernells**, these are little bunches rising in the throat, and unto this Disease belongs another, called the **Rangen**, which is not contagious, but dangerous; for it is a swelling in the lower part of the chap of the swins mouth; which waxing white, groweth hard like a piece of horn, through pain whereof the Beast cannot eat, and within two or three days dieth thereof.

The **Pain** in the **Lungs**, which is caused through want of drink.

The **Diseases** of the **Spleen**, causeth also through want of water.

The **Cathar.**

The **Lar.**

The **Scurf**, or **Manginess.**

The **Maggots** in the ears.

The **Impostume**, a swelling and gathering of a corruption in any part of the Body.

The **Luggs**, or **Swin**, that are Lug'd.

LI. He beareth Gules, a **Badger**, (a **Boson**, of some writ, a **Bauson**) Argent, between a **Bee**, and a **Silk-worme**, Or. The **Bee**, is also called a **Drone**, or **Humbo-Bee.**

The **Badger**, hath several denominations in our English tongue, as **Badger**, a **Brock**, a **Gray**, a **Boson**, their hair is rough and rugged, hard harsh, and stubborn, of an intermingled grisly colour, sometimes white, sometimes black; his back, belly, and face white, having a long face and snowt.

In *Lucan*, there is a wild Beast or **Boson**, resembling both a **Bear**, and a **Hog**; not in quantity, but in form and proportion of Body: in short legs, ears, feet, and tail, like a **Bear**, in nose and fatness, a **Hog**, from whence come our Proverbs, as fat as a **Boson.**

The **Canine Badger**, hath feet like a **Dog**, and a snout: eating flesh like a Dog.

The **Swinish Badger**, hath hoofs, cloven, and a snout like a **Swine**, and eateth roots and fruits, as the **Hog.**

A *Brock* proper is the Crest of Sir *Richard Brock* of *Norton*, Baronet.

A 3 *Brocks* proper born by *Brock.*

In this square is also set a Hony-Bee, and Silk-worm, in their true shapes, of the first, see more *numb.* 62. The latter is a Worm hatched from an egg, laid by a Moth, or dronish kind of a whitish Butterfly, through the heat of the Sun: and fed with the leaves of a Mulbery Tree. At the time of the Year, and when these Wormes are come to maturity, they spin Silk out of their Bowels, as the Spider doth his web: working themselves into a Silken husk about the largness of a Pigeons egg, where they lie all Winter, and in the Spring break forth of the husk, and are metemorphased into Moths, large and full Bodied, with wings of a Measle substance, much after the form of of the Figure set down, *numb.* 69. and *chap.* 19. *numb.* 20. 23. The wings covering all the back, but a small part of the end of the tail, they are of white, and whitish-yellow colour, both in the body and wings; of a slow or no flying at all, only use their wings to drive them forwards in their going.

LII. He beareth Argent, an **Hedg-hog**, (or **Urchin**) Sable, in base a **Field snail** proper.

The **Hedg-hog**, hath the head of a **Hog**, being beset and compassed all over with sharp thorny hairs. both on the face and feet, but not on the belly. He hath two holes under his tail, to eject his excrements, which no creature living hath besides him. They engender, standing belly to belly, because their pricks or sharp quills suffer them not to have copulation like Dogs, they are of a blackish brown, or Mouse colour, called also **Irchin** or **Hiricion**, from the Latin *Hericius.*

The **Porcupine**, is a creature very like the **Hedg-hog**, being full of **Square quills**, **Pins**, or **Pricks**, or **Thorny Bristles**: For all those names were given them by the Latins, which quils stand more confusedly crossing one another (more then the Hedg-hog which goeth all one way backwards) which he shooteth off at his pleasure. Some say that the **Hedg-hog** is for the Woods; and the **Porcupine**, or **Porcuspine**, is for the Mountains. The mouth is like an **Hare**, but with a longer slit, opening; ears like a **Mans**, the fore-feet, like a **Badger**, and the hinder like a **Bear.** He hath a maine standing upright from the top of his head to his shoulders, bending backwards towards the ends; upon the Punches of his lips, on either side, grows forth long black Bristles, the over teeth hang out, or over the mouth, the quills are party coloured, that is, part whitish yellow, and part black. Pilgrims that comes yearly from St. *James* of *Compostella* in *Spain*, do bring back generally one of these quills in their caps, but for what cause I know not.

A 3 Hedg-hogs, S born by *Biram* of *Biram.*

A an Hedg-hog, S a demy one for the Crest, is born by *Standigel*, a porcupine, B the quills, and collered and chain; O is *Sidny's* Crest.

The **Field snail**, without a shell is of a pure shining black; but those that are in moist Sellers, or ruines of houses, are of a whitish-yellow colour.

A. a Cheveron between three Field snailes, is born by *Snelfeld.*

LIII. He beareth Argent, a **Marmot**, or **Alpine Mouse**, Or. See this further described *chap.* 8. *numb.* 43. This Russet colour is the Crest of Sir *Reynold Bray* Knight of the Garter, in time of King *Henry* the seventh.

Some draw it thus, with ears as if they were cut off in the middle, others make it with ears round on the top. The same Sable is the Crest of the Lord *Bray*.

LIV. He beareth Azure, a **Cat**, (or **Cat a mounte**, or a **Wild Cat**, or a **Pus**) Or; **Spotted** Sable, this is or some called also a **Musion**, by reason of his being an enemy to **Myse**, or **Rats**, they are of diverse colours; as White, Black, Sand colour, Gray, and **Roed** and **Stracked** like a **Leopard**, diversly with Black, or deep Brown or Chestnut colour, his tongue attractive, and forcible like a File.

The **Wild Cat** (or **Pool-Cat**, as some in *England* call it) is of a Redish Yellow dusky colour; a Black line, or strack all along the back, with some black on the legs, between the Breast and Neck, a large White spot; her Tail longer then ordinary **Cats**, having two or three or more Black circles about it.

The **Flying-Cat**, they have a certain skin, which when they lie in quiet, cleaveth or shrinketh up to the Belly: but being stirred, the same spreadeth from their fore feet to their hinder, like the wing of a **Bat**; by virtue thereof, they stay up themselves in the Air, passing from Tree to Tree, like a foul: as do the **Ape** and **Pontique Mouse**, of which more in their places, *chap.* 8. *numb.* 49.

The **Heyrat**, a Beast in *America*, as big as a Cat, of a Chestnut colour, a great climber of Trees, and lover of honey, that coming to the caves of Bees, it will with such dexterity take out the honey with its nails, that it neither hurts the Bees, or receiveth harm by them.

a Cat, a Mount, S Gorged with a Crown and Chain, O is the Crest of *Harvey* of *Chester*.

A 3 Cats in pale S born by *Keat*, Er the like B by *Adams*.

B a Cat Saltant to the sinister, born by *Van Schluchter*.

The same with a Mouse in his mouth, S by *Katzen*, whose Crest is a Cat sciant with a Mouse as aforesaid.

LV. He beareth Gules, a **Genet**, proper, this is a beast something larger than a **Cat**, It is of a dark Yellow colour, full of Black spots: the fur of the **Genet**, is very much esteemed off. It hath according to *Gesners* discription, a Head and Nose, as sharp as a **Grey-hound**; round Ears, and a Tail like a **Cats**; having several Black circles about it, and as many White successively, following each other. This is born by the name of *Genet*.

B 3 such O is born by *Genitor* an *Italian*.

In the cheise for want of roome, is a **Glae-worm**, that which shineth in the night; it is of a dusky white colour: having a bright Yellow spot at the tip of its Tail, which giveth light in dark places: the Belly and Legs, are more whiter then the Back, it hath both Back and Belly full of joynts, and 6 Feet all together near the Head, See it with the Belly upwards, *chap.* 10. *numb* 71.

S three such proper, is born by the name *Glworme*.

19. DOgs are the general accepted name, for these kind of Creatures, whereof there are four several sorts which again divide themselves into many kinds, of all which I shall speak in their order and divisions.

Of the Nature of Dogs.

But first a word of the nature of Dogs in general: Seeing there is no Region or Countrey in the World, where they are not braed in some store; some for Hunting some for War, and defence, some for Water, and some for Pleasure and Delight. They have generally wide mouths, and their fore Legs bend like the Arms of Men; and he useth them in stead of Arms, having five distinct Fingers, called Clawes upon each Foot before, and four upon each Foot behind.

A Dog holdeth up his Foot when he maketh Water, if he be above six Months old; till that time he doth it sitting, as all Females ever do, except she be of a very generous Spirit.

They ever smell to the hinder parts, one of another, thereby to discern their several kind, and disposition of Natures.

After they have run a course, and been in the Water, they relieve themselves, by tumbling and rowling upon the ground too and fro.

When they lie down, they turn round in a circle two or three times together, that they may the more commodiously lie round, and from the Wind.

They sleep as doth a man, & therein dream very often, as may appear by their grumbling, & barking in their sleep.

In their copulation they are Limed, or clean together for a certain space, as if their hinder parts were glew'd. Some term it Lineing: and that Bitches are Sait, or proud, when she receiveth the Dog.

They bring forth many at a time, sometimes five, seven, nine, or twelve; for so many cells hath the Femal in her Womb.

All the Whelpes, or Puppits, are at the time of Littering whelped blind & see not for the space of nine days: becaused of their multitude, they cannot be perfected in their Dams belly, which doth not happen to Beasts, which bear single.

The use to carry their Whelpes up and down in their mouths, till they be seven days old, some longer till nine, or eleven dayes, and not after.

The Females have underneath their Bellys great Udders, with many Paps, or Speanes to suck at, in a double rank or row on both sides; the generous Bitch hath twelve others but ten. They bear their young within their Belly next to the midriff, their fime being dry like a Wolves.

There is no creature without reason, more loving to his master then a Dog, nor more serviceable: enduring many stripes patiently at the hands of his master, using no other meanes to pacifie his displeasure, then humiliation prostration, assentation, & after beating, turneth his revenge into a more fervent love.

The solishness of a Dog appears in this, that when a stone or any other thing is cast at him, he followeth the stone, and neglect the hand as threw it.

But to conclude with the basenes of a Dog, those two proverbs in Holy Scripture, will sufficiently convince that they are emblems of vile, cursed, and filthy men: Give not that which is Holy unto Dogs: saith our Saviour. *Matth.* 7. 6. Like the Dog return to his Vomit; 2 *Pet.* 2. 22.

2. 22. for above all Creatures (*St. Peter* informes us) that when the Dog hath cast his gorge, and emptied his stomack, he will afterwards go and lick it up again.

Their diversity of nature, is in this; some will bark, & not bite: some will both bark, and bite; some will bite sore, before they Bark.

LVI. He beareth Azure, a **Mastive** (or a **Ban-Dog**) Argent, **Collar and Line (Slip or Lease)** lying under his feet, Or; the Line thus tyed up, and lying under his Belly, is proper, and needs no mentioning; but if it were cast over his back, and so hung down, then it were to be thus Blazoned, a **Mastiff Dog, collered**, with a **Line flexed and reflexed** over his back, *&c.* yet if the Dog were in a ramping posture, then you need no such term (as flexed and reflexed) see more of this in the Lion rampant, collared and chained, *chap. 7. numb.* 17. This is born by *Mansiffe.*

B a Mastive A collared G born by *Massoner.*

Several sorts of Dogs of the Mastiff kind.

The **Mastive**, which is a vast huge stubborn, ugly, heavy Dog, not very swift, but strong, terrible and frightful.

They are of several colours, as white, black, grey, chestnut and spotted; these kind of Dogs, according to their size, nature and qualities are termed either

The **Bull Mastive**, which is the lesser sort, being active and more nimble for the Bull, and being tumbled and tossed on his horns, receives no great hurt.

The **Bear Mastive**, which is of the largest size, and more fit for Bear Fights, being high, strong and heavy; now these have their names according to their keeping, as,

The **Dog Keeper**, are keepers of Farmers Houses.

The **Butchers Dog**, for keeping and taking his Cattel.

The **Messenger** or **Carrier**, that fetcheth and bringeth.

The **Mooner**, or **Moon-Dog**, which continually is Barking at the Moon.

The **Water-drawer**, that runs in Wheels to draw up Water.

The **Tinkers Curr**, that bears his Budget, and carries his Tools.

The **Defender**, are Dogs that forsake not their Master in Life nor Death.

The second sort of **Mastives**, are **Mungrel**, or a Rascal sort of Curs, engendred between **Spaniels** and **Mastives**, and they are **Bastard Mastives**, as

The **Admonitor**, or **Warner**, such as Bark at all persons that are Strangers coming newly in; these are admonishing Dogs.

The **Turn-Spit**, such as run in a Wheel, to turn Meat at the Fire.

The **Dancer**, such as will stand bolt upright, and Dance after Tunes.

The third sort are such as are degenerated of such Mastives as is aforesaid, but by a wonderful Conception they are

The **Lycistane**, of the Latine *Licisceus*, a Dog of a **Bitch** and a **Wolf**; and may properly be called a **Wolf Dog.**

The **Lacane** of *Lacæna*, a Dog bred of a **Bitch** a **Fox**; of these I believe I have seen some, which the shape of Foxes, but the quality of Dogs; a **Fox Dog.**

The **Urcane**, of *Urcanus*, a Dog begotten between **She-Bear**, and a **Mastive** or **Ban-dog**; Dog excelleth all in cruel conditions; is fierce, is fell, stout, is strong; he careth not for the **Wolf**, the **Bear**, the **Lion**, or the **Bull.**

LVII. He beareth Gules, a **Talbott**, (or **Blood Hound**, or **Hunting Hound**) Or. If the Talbot collared and lined as the aforesaid example: he is termed a **Talbot coupled**, and **Lyamed.**

There are for Hunting several sorts of Hounds as,

The **Baur-hound.**

The **Harier**, having large bagging lips, and great hanging eares down to his chaps.

The **Gressier-hound.**

The **Fallow-hound.**

The **Blood-hound**, that hunts Beasts, or Men by the scent of the foot that are Park Robbers, pursuing them till they be found out.

The **Terryer** or **Terrars**, such as hunt the Fox and Badger, who like Ferrets follow them into their caves, holes, and bite and pull them thence.

The **Bagle**, is a small kind of Hound.

The **Brache**, is the Bitch to all hunting dogs, for *England* they are so called, not **Bitches**; but a **Brache.**

B a Talbot. A born by *Borgoigne*, with a coller, by *Van Hundt.*

The like O is the Crest of *Grosvenor* of *Eaton.*

The like A is the Crest of *Talbot* of *Grafton.*

A the like G born by *Wolseley*

O a fesse dauncet, between three such passant S by *Carrick.*

G on a plot of ground, V a Talbot A collared the Lyam, or string fastened to the sinister chief, bow-knot, O. is the town of *Brakenheims* Coat of Arms.

B a fesse, between three such heads erazed, O born *Burton.*

The colour of these Hounds are generally white, are spotted with black, or chestnut: Some all others part of one colour, and part of another, **Breended.**

LVIII. He beareth Argent, a **Grey-hound**, (or **Courser**) Sable. If it stand upright, then it is **Saltant**, or **Saltant.** If **Collered and Lined** aforesaid in the **Mastive**; it is termed, **Collared** **Leased.** This is born by the name of *Holford*, of *ford.*

The same collared G born by *Moreton* of *Nor*

S 3 Grey-hounds currant A collared G born *Berrington.*

A one Saltant to the sinister. B collared O *Schnorbem Hof.*

20. OF these Grey-hounds ther are several kinds, as

The **Gase-hound**, excellent for perspicuity or sight, that will single a **Deer** out of the herd, or flock, and follows it by eye-sight; prevailing little, or not a whit, by the smell of the Nose.

The **Grey-hound**, is for swiftness, whose service is to course the Hair, and chase the Buck, Hart, Doe, and Fox; with other Beasts of the Game of Hunting.

The **Leviner**, or **Lyemmer**, or **Leamer**; so called from the Leam, or Lyne wherewith they are led; being a midle-size hound, between a **Harier** and a **Grey-hound**, both for kind, and frame of Body: being active, light, and nimble, and therefore may well be termed a **Light-hound**.

The **Tumbler**, or **Lurcher**, is of a small-size, not very tall, but in shape like the **Grey-hound**; in hunting they turn, and tumble, and wind their body; then suddenly and fiercely fly on the beast unawares, and so kills it; his hunt is only for **Coneys**, about their burrough-holes.

The **Theivish-Dog**, or **Night-Cur**: because he hunteth in the dark, and will neither bark, or yelp in his Game, but in his watching will snatch up in course, many Coneys, and bring them to his Masters standing, as he pleaseth.

The **Wolf-Dog**: this is of largest sort, and size of Grey-hounds; which are for the hunting of Wolves, Bears, and Wild-Boars. The largest of this kind are in *India*, *Scythia*, and *Hyrcania*, being gotten by **Tygers**, and **She-Hounds**.

The parts of a well Shaped Grey-Hound.

21. **Snake** or **long headed**.
Chub-headed or **Round-headed**.
Drake or **Long-necked**.
Deep Chested, when his breast hangs low between his fore-legs.
Ebb, or **Shallow chested**, his breast and body all of a thickness.
Beam, or **Wheel Backed**, when the back riseth.
Flat Backed, when it is even between the neck, and spaces.
Spaces, the rising of the two hip-bones, at the seting of the hinder parts, or small of the back.
Wide Spaced, is when it is broad, and open between the two hip-bones.
Narrow Spaced, when the two hip-bones are near togather.
Fillets, is the small of the back.
Broad Filleted, when the small of the back is Broad.
Narrow Filletted, when the small of the back is narrow.
Flanck, is that part of the belly, under the small of the back Ribbs.
Out Ribbed, is when the Ribs stands out.
Flat Ribbed, is when the both side Ribbs, cling and are near to gather.
Stern, is the tail of the Grey-hound.
Fine small, and slender Stern.
Broad, **Besom**, or **Busk Sterned**, when hairy shagged.
Round, or **Cat footed**.
Long, and **Flat footed**.
Shoulders.
Knees.
Stifling Joynt.
Cambyel.

Colours of Grey-Hounds.

White.
Black.
Fallow, sad Fallow, is a kind of sad brown.
Red Fallow, is a red brown.
Light Fallow, is a light whitish brown.
Binded Fallow, is a Fallow colour, Barred with black.
Sandy Fallow, or Cream colour, is a white inclining to yellow, with a little tincture of red.
Binded, or a Spotted Dog in rows, or barrs.
Pyed, is a Grey-hound of two colours, some part of one, and another part, of another colour.
Ticked, when a Dog is spotted with black on white, or with white spots on black, and the like of the fallow and white, which proceeds from the biteing of Ticks, in a Tick cannell.

LIX. He beareth Vert, a **Demy Grey-hound, currant**, Argent; **collered**, Gules; **Edged** and **Terreted**, Or. If there were a **Line** at the coller, he is termed **Collered** and **Leased**, after such or such a form and manner. This is born by the name of *Gland-Villers*.

O a Demy Grey-Hound Saltant, B collered, A the like for his Crest is the Arms and Cogniznace of *Teulingen* of *Bavaria*.

For want of room, this quarter was charged with a **Field Spider**, in the chief: and a **Serpent reverted**, crawling on his belly, with his head **regardant**, and end of his tail **embowed**. But of these we shall discourse further in the Sections of Flyes and Worms. See *numb.* 46. 72.

A 3 Spiders, S born by the name of *Spidercacher*.

LX. He beareth Sable; an **Island Dog**, Argent. This is of an Out-landish kind, and is of a pretty bigness: curled and rough all over, which by reason of the length of their hair, make shew neither of face, nor of body: these Curs are much set by, with Ladys, who usually wash, comb, and trim of all the hair of their hinder parts, leaving only the fore parts, and hinder feet jagged. Some call them **Shoughs**.

The **Water-Dog**, or **Water-Spaniel**; they are a kind

a kind of rough or curled, hairy **Dogs**, whose hinder parts are shorn, or hair cut off, that so they may be the less hinred in swiming; whose figure is then like the **Island Cur**, before spoken of; save they have longer noses, bushed tailes, and bushes of hair their masters generally leave them in their shearing on their two hips behind, and bending of the thighs, of the hinder legs.

The **Tuscan Dogs**, are not beautiful to look upon, having a deep shaggy hair, yet in their Game not unpleasant.

S an Island Dog, A couched on a cushion, O born by *Alaband.*

B a Water-dog, O born by *Wasservile.*

LXI. He beareth Vert, a **Spaniel** Argent, **Spoted** Sable. This is called also a **Land-Spaniel**, whose Game principally, is to attend an Hawk, and are taught by falconers, to **retrive**, and **spring** or raise **Patridges.**

A Spaniel, A spoted S Sejant on a hill before an Haw-thorn tree flowered, proper is the Crest of *Tatton* of *Witlenshaw* in *Cheshire.*

V a Spaniel passant, A spoted, is born by *Treever Van Horaorf.*

Several sorts of Spaniels.

They have several names according to their office, and imployment: and there is several mixt kinds of them, being **Mungrells.**

First for the generous sort of **Spaniels**, there are the **Sociable Spaniel**, which goe up and down with their master, and leave them not in their travel, such was *Tobits* Dog, *Tob.* 5. 16.

The **Shepards Dog**: which are to guid and govern their flocks, and fatch in stragling beasts upon signs given by the master. These Dogs are used by **Herds-men, Swine-heards**, and **Goat-herds**, for the same service.

The **Village-Dog**, or **House-keeper.** These are bigger then the Shepards dog, and stronger, being severally coloured, great mouthed, and bigly barking, so as to terrific Rogues, and Theives. These are likewise brought up in City and Towns, to keep the houses in safety. Called by them **House Dogs.**

The **Seting-Dog**: which findeth out the Game by scent, or the wind, and lieth down by them, till his master hath laid his net over them.

The **Water-Dog**, or **Spaniel**; which taketh the water, to fetch Fowl, or other Game taken by Fowlers. It is also termed, a **Finder**, from his hunting out things lost, or left behind us.

The **Tumbler**, of the Spaniel kind, is the same in condition, and for hunt, as the Grey-hound, kind of Tumbler.

The **Spaniel Gentle**, or the **Comforter**, is a little pretty kind of Spaniel, of the least sort, such as Gentle-Women cary in their bosoms, lay in their laps, and kiss, and dally withal. Of these kind there is of several colour; smooth and curled hair, ears long and short, and for proportion of body of all sizes, from the bigness of an ordinary **Cats**, to as little as a **Ratt**: for in *Chester* I have seen kept by a certain Gentle-woman; a Dog so little, that she would have carried it abroad with her, in her Muff, and I have taken it in one hand, and covered it with the other, so close that no part of it should have been seen.

Of the **Mongrel breed** of Spaniels, with other Dogs, are such, which though they be propagated with, and by Dogs, yet are they not of one kind, as it is ordinary for the **Grey-hound**, to couple with the **Mastiff**; the **Mastiff** with the **Hound**, *&c.* from which breed of **Bastard Spaniels**, sprung those smaller sort of Dogs, called

The **Cur**, is an other sort of **Mongrel**, but of the smallest sort of them.

The **Skaut**, or **Kaut**: is a barking Dog, never ceasing while he hears, or sees any strange object.

The **Puppy**, or **Fisting-Dog**, such as Ladies delight in, and to be playing with.

Difference of Terms used to Dogs.

22. IN these four sorts, *viz.* The Mastive, Hound, Grey-hound, and Spaniel, though they be all for the hunt, and chase; yet their terms in many things are much different: for we say in hunting; that,

The **Hound**, hunts the Deer or Hare.

The **Grey-hound**, courses the Hare.

The **Spaniel**, follows, or runs the Hare: Retrives the Patridge.

So in seting on the Dogs, upon the Game, we say:

Cast off, the Hound.

Let slip, the Grey-hound.

Let go, the Spaniel.

We say, **Ho, So Ho**: or Haw, So, Haw, to the **Hound**, or too him, too him.

Illow, Illow, there there, to the **Grey hound.**

Iryet, Iryet, or Seek out, to the **Spaniel.**

Take him, Take him: we say to the **Mastiff**, when we encourage them to follow their chase.

The Hound hath his **Couples**; the Grey-hound, hath his **Collar**, and the Spaniel, his **Terriet.**

The string wherewith we lead them, for the Hound, it is called a Lyam; for a Grey-hound, a Lease: and for a Spaniel, a Line.

Diseases in Dogs.

23. W**Orms.**
Cold or **Stoping.**
Stone.
Costiveness or **Belly bound.**
Lyce, Fleas, Ticks.

Mad

Mad Dog biting.
Gals, or Tettars.
Itch, Scab, and Mangy.
Galled Feet, or Fretting there.
Canker.
Tiredness.
Pain in the Ears.
Wounds by Blows.
Bruises, and broken Bones.

All which terms have been explained in the Diseases of other Beasts, as Horses, Cows, *&c.* to which I refer you.

24 AND seeing it falls out so as to speak of these terms used to Dogs in Hunting: I shall now give the Reader some other Terms or Significations of words, which are used in the Art of Venery, and that as briefly as I may.

The word or term in Hunting.

Allay, is when Dogs set in a place of reserve tarry there till the rest of the Kennel come in, and then cast off with them: See **Avaunt-lay.**

Avaunt-lay, is when, they set Hounds in a readiness, where they think a Chase will pass, and cast them off before the rest of the Kennel come in; see a **Relay.**

Abatures, and **Foyles**; the Bucks beating down of low twigs and branches, with their Horns.

Angle, Angled, or **Chambered**, when in hunting of the Fox, or Badger, they run to the furthereſt part of the hole.

Assay, as to take Assay of the Deer, is, when the person to whom the Venison is given, if he be Hunting himself, doth (when the Deer is killed) with a long Knife cut a slit down along the Brisket or Brest of the Deer towards the Belly. This is done for him to see the goodness of the flesh, and how thick it is, for which assay the Keeper or Huntsman, hath half a Crown Fee.

Burrows, or Coney-Burrows, or Burroughs; the place Rabbets are kept and fed.

Buttons, the sprouting out of new Horns on a Deers head.

Burnish their Heads, rubbing them against a Tree.

Break head, when a Deer in Chase, leaves or forsakes the Herd. Also to break up a Deer is to cut up his Belly, and take out his Interels.

Beat a brook, or River, when any Deer Swims in a Brook, or River.

Browseth, a term for Deer feeding, upon a Heath, or Common.

Blemish, or **Blemishes**; are the marks or tokens of a Deer running such a way, by the broken boughs, and branches which his Horns hath broken down.

Backsets, or **Receits**, is to make a stand to receive a chased Deer, and to cast upon him fresh Hounds, at the latter-end of the Course; see **Teasers** and **Sidelays.**

Bearing a Hare, is killing it.

Bleinchers, and **Sewels**, are papers and stick laid cross a Fox-hole, to fear him and make him believe some Gin is set there.

Beauty of their Wildness, is the Foresters term which he gives a Deer which hath cast his Horns and hideth himself, as if he were ashamed of his loose.

Covert, is a Grove or Wood to shelter a Deer from the Hounds.

Couce, covreth, when a hunted Deer goeth into the Woods.

Counter, when a Hound hunteth backwards, the same way that the Chase is come.

Change, is when the *H*ound hunts any other Chase than that which he first undertook. Also Change is when a Deer *H*erds, and runs with them to save himself.

Cross and double, when either *H*are or Deer useth any deceit or subtlety to escape the Hounds.

Cote, is when a Grey-hound runs by another, and out-runs him end-ways, and turns the *H*are.

Chase, is taken for the *H*unting scent of the Deer, and flying of the Deer; and sometimes, for the Game of Hunting it self.

Chambered: See **Angled.**

Croppeth the springs, eating Grass after the manner of a Cow; Croping is eating.

Coppys, are small young Woods.

Clappers, the same to **Burrows.**

Clamps, are Pinchers, with which Foxes and Badgers are taken out of the Earth.

Coney-greys, or **Greeves**: see **Burrows.**

Cabased, that is the head of the Deer is cut close by the *H*orns, through the Brain-pan to the Nose, nothing of the hinder part of the Head remaining.

Dole, is the reward of a Roe-Buck, given to the *H*ounds.

Drain to the ground, is fall to the ground.

Doubles, and **Turns**, is to cross the same way again, or again; a wheeling or turning about: See **Cross.**

Default, is when the Hounds have lost the scent.

Discovreth, when the chased Deer comes out of the Woods again.

Doulcets, a Stag, or Bucks stones; and a Goats stones, a Rams stones.

Down, he is down; so we say, when the Deer is dead.

Drawing of the Covert, is when the Huntsmen do beat about with the Hounds for Chase.

Empzimed, or **singled**, when a Deer is hunted and doth first leave the Herd.

Embost, when the Deer through the Chase is foamy at the Mouth.

Eloyn, is the Flying, or Sore running of a Deer.

Flankards, are two little Knots or Nuts in the Flank of the Deer. The like is between the Neck and the Shoulders.

Fee, or **Fees**: See **Rewards.**

Fray their head, is rubbing their Head to scrape of the Velvet from the Horns of the Stag.

Fraying stock, is the Stock or Tree they rub against.

Foyl fresh, the Soil, Grass, or the like; fresh fodder.

Foyls, the beating down of green branches and boughs of trees. See **Blemishes**, and **Abatures.**

Foyloyn, or breaking from the Hounds.

Foyloyneth, he escapeth escapeth the Hounds.

Fells, are the Mountains, Valleys, Pastures, and such like.

Fryths, Springs, or Copyes, or young Groves, Woods, and the like: we say a Deer feeds in the Fells, or Fryths; if he be out of his own place.

Gutters, are the the Slifters, or Krinks, in the beam of a Stags horn.

Gaze, standeth at Gaze, when they stand to look at any thing.

Go-by, the same to Cote.

Hold, take his hold, when a Deer breaketh the Herd, and draweth to the Woods, and Thickets.

Hunt, is taken from the keeper of Hounds, or the chief *H*untsman.

Hallow, is the *H*unters Voice to call the Dogs; *Ho, Ho, Ho.* Also a reward given to *H*ounds, of beast that are not beasts of Venery.

Hardle, to fasten an Hare, or Haunch of Venison to the Huntsman's side.

Hewts, or **Springs**, the places where the Deer feeds; taken for the small Groves, or Copyes; and the Springs the greater Groves.

Hollows, the bottoms, or plain champaign grounds.

Haunch, the hinder quarter; the Breech, or Buttock of a Deer.

Haryers, are *H*are-hunters, taken indifferently for Men, or Hounds.

Hulk, or **Paunch**, is to open the Hare, and take out her Garbage.

Holdfasts; See **Clamps.**

Jerkins, or **Slip**, is when a Grey-hound goes by another, and yet is not able to turn the Hare.

Inchpin, are the Sweet-breds, or sweet Gut in the Deer.

Kell, is the Caul about the Paunch.

Layre, Layres, the place where the Deer lodgeth or Harbours.

Lyam, the string by which the Hound, or Blood-hound is led.

Law, is to give a Hare ground after he is started, before the Grey-hounds are looſed, *viz.* twelve score yards, or thereabouts.

Markounder, is when a Dog is not able to run, sick, subject to Mange.

Meweth, wheen Deer cast their *H*orns, or head.

Main, the Hair on a Stags Neck.

Make-head, is which way the Deer taketh his course, or runneth.

Noombles, or **Umbles**; the Hart, or Bucks plucks; as Heart, Lights, Liver, with other appendices.

Open, is the cry of the *H*ounds; as the *H*ounds open well; they have good Mouths.

Overshot, is when the *H*ounds over-go their Game, and follow a new Chase, because they have lost the old scent.

Pride of Grease, is full Fat, and in good liking.

Prime of his Grease, a term used to a Boar when he is full Fat.

Paunch a Hare, pull out his Guts: See **Hulk.**

Pickets, Fellows that attend the Hounds, and run along with the Huntsman.

Padock, is a Close, closed in a Park railed, or paled in.

Ports, or **Slot**, is the print or tread of a Deers foot.

Quarry, or **Reward**, is a gift or reward given the *H*ounds, being some part of the thing hunted, if they be Beasts of Venery: But of all other Chases, is termed **Hallow.**

Quest, the cast off of the Hounds, when they are to hunt for the scent or smell; also the first opening, or cry of the Dogs when they have found the scent of the Hare. We say they follow the **Quest**; that is, follow the smell.

Receit: See **Allay.**

Relay, is to set on fresh Hounds, from a **Receit**, when the Chase and rest of the Kennel of Hounds be past. See **Avaunt-lay**, and **Allay.**

Rechate, is to answer the cry of the Dogs, with a blast of the horn.

Reward, as it is a term and general word, I shall in this place inform you upon the Killing of a Deer: How all its parts are distributed, as Rewards, or Fees to them who are concerned in the Chase. First when the Deer is killed and broken up; the Hounds shall for their Reward have the Cabasing of the Head with the Brains, after it is cut from the body, (that is, all the Head save the Tongue, and the Horns, with so much of the skull, or horns, or scalp or fore-part of the face of the Deer, as will hold the Horns together) also the Paunch being emptied, and the intrels with the blood of the Deer.

The Horns, the Skin, and the right Shoulder, are the Keepers, or chief Huntsman's Fee. The left Shoulder is the Under-keepers, or the rest of the Huntsmens Fee; with the Brisket-bone, and the two Flaps which hang with it to the Neck.

The Noombles of the Deer, that is the Heart, Lights, Liver, with all the appurtenances, belong to the Lord; so doth the Caul, the Ears, the Tongue, the Doulcets, or Stones; the Tenderlings, (if his head be tender) and the sweet Gut; which some call the Inch-pin.

The whole Venison, as a present from the Lord of the Park, consisteth of no more, than the Haunch and Brests. For which the Keeper hath a ten shilling Fee: though it be a free-gift of the Lord; this is it, as makes it not Venison but Deer. The half Buck, or the side of Venison, is the half Fee. The half Haunch a quarter Fee. A Doe that is presented, is a Noble, *viz.* six shillings and eight pence Fee; and so according as aforesaid.

The Hart, or Deers feet ever go a-long with the Shoulders, and the Haunch, to fasten (or to **Hardle** as some hunters call it) to the sides.

The Midriff, and the Grissel, at the Spoon of the Brisket, called the Ravens bone, or the Ravens Morsel, with other Garbage, is cast to the Crows and Ravens; and thus the Venison, as a Deer, is distributed.

Ring, that is when the *H*unter cast about the Grove, with the Lyam-hound, is to make a Ring.

Rousing, is to raise, or unharbour the Buck.

Steppe, as goeth to steppe; when the Deer in the heat of the day, with-draw themselves from the Flyes.

Streyneth, that is when he runneth very fast.

Singled, or **Empyrimed**, when he is hunted and doth leave the herd.

Spent, or **Done**, is when he holds out his Neck, and is tired.

Sewels, or **Swelling**; is the setting up of clouts, or papers, or the like for marks, and to fear Deer away from a place.

Setting a Hare about, is the Grey-hounds giving him a Turn.

Side-lays, to cast of the fresh Hounds, upon the Deer about the mid-way course: See **Teasers.**

Slip, or **slipping**, is when a Dog gives another the go-by, and yet is not able to turn the *Hare*.

Skommier, or ease themselves by Shitting, Dogs dung.

Spyings, the places where Deer feed. See **Hewts.**

Soyl, as the *Hart* taketh Soyl, is takes the Water; and to forsake the Soyl, is to leave the Water. The Boar to take Soyl, is to Wallow in the Dirt, or Mire.

Strong-holds, are Woods and woody places.

Splayed, or **Gelded**, the cutting away of the Stones of any Beast.

Stripping: See **Jerkins** and **Slip.**

Toil, is to run the *Hounds* in sight of the Chase.

Tenderlings, are the soft tops of the Bucks horns, when they are in Blood, and new coming out of the head.

Trasonings, is a term for the doubling and crossing of a Ro-buck before the *Hounds*.

Teasers, **Tease**, is the first Grey-hounds that are let slip at the *Herd* to bring a Deer single to the Course, or to make them strain, before he come to the side-lays, or Back-sets.

Turn a Hare, is when he is turned about in the course.

Trayl, is when the *Hounds* hunt slowly and leasurely.

Trench, is a by-path, or a more obscure way, or walk in a Wood.

Vault, going to the Vault, is the *Hare* running under ground, like a Coney.

Urine, Pifs of *Hounds*.

Vent, is the scent or smell of *Hares*, or Deer.

Vaunt-chase, is the *Hound*, that leads the rest in the Chase.

Velvet-head, is the horns of a Deer, when they come first out, are covered with a kind of Russet-peel, or pyll, which is called a Velvet-head.

Venison, is the flesh of all sorts of Deer.

Wind, when a Deer smelleth, or venteth any thing, then we say, he hath this or that thing in the wind.

Wrencheth, is a turn in the Chase; not to go straight forward.

A **Wrench**, is not a turn, but as it were, a half-turn.

Warren, or **Coney-greeve**: See **Burrows.**

Wager, is when Gentlemen make Bets on the running of Grey-hounds, in which respect this is the Law for Runnig of a Course for a Wager. In coursing of the *Hare* it is not material which Dog killeth her (which *Hunters* call bearing of a *Hare*,) but he that giveth most Cotes, or most Turns, winneth the Wager.

A Cote is when a Grey-hound goeth end-ways by his Fellow, and giveth the *Hare* a turn, (which is called setting a *Hare* about,) but if he Coast, and so come by his fellow, that is no Cote. Likewise if one Grey-hound do go by another, and then be notable to reach the *Hare* himself, and turn her; this is but Stripping, and no Cote. If there be no Cotes given between a Brace of Grey-hounds, but the one of them serveth the other at turning; then he which giveth the *Hare* most turns shall win the Wager; and if the one do give as many turns as the other, then he which beareth the *Hare* shall win the Wager. A Cote serveth for two Turns, and two Strippings (or Jerkins, as some call them) stand for a Cote; also many times a *Hare* doth but Wrench and not Turn; for it is not called a Turn unless the *Hare* be set about, and do turn (as it were) round about. Two such Wrenches) stand for a Turn. Also sometimes a *Hare* that is commonly Coursed will know the Country; and because she coveteth the hard beaten ways, she will (of her self) Swarve at such a way, and that is neither to be accounted a Turn nor a Wrench: But if neither of your Grey-hounds be able to Turn the *Hare* until the end of the Course; then she which went foremost throughout the Course must win the Wager. And for the better deciding of all these Questions, if it be at a solemn Assembly, they use to appoint Judges which are in Coursing, and shall stand on the *Hill* sides whether they perceive the *Hare* will bend, to mark which Dog doth best, and to give Judgment thereof accordingly.

25. FROM Beasts, we proceed next to all sorts of Flyes, Worms, and creeping Things; being the least of Living Creatures, which are used in Arms. And yet not the least of Creatures, but they receive Life, in being propogated, and born or proceeding from their like; and are continued by being nourished, and by Copulation beget their like; and for that end there is none so little but have a difference of Sex.

The Worm is called *Vermis* from *Vertens*, turning; because of its complication, or foulding of the Body, as it creepeth: Others from *Ver*, the Spring; being the only time that the whole kind cometh forth. Now though they have but one common name (as Worms) yet under that general term, there are divers kinds, and so divers means of Engendring. For some arise from Rottenness of Flesh; some of corrupt humors, some from dry Rottenness, and some again by meeting had between both kinds, being all wonderful in their kind.

They Exercise their Sence (especially for Food-sake) by Touching, Smelling, Tasting, Seeing, and Hearing; and not so little but that they will seek their own Safety, by fleeing from Evil; those that have Wings, by Flying; those that have Fins, by Swiming; those that have Feet by going; those that have either, by panting, crawling, creeping, winding, and turning, or sliding, do set themselves forward.

Feeding for Worms.

The Mite, feedeth on Wax, and old Cheese; the Maggot, on Flesh; the Moth, on Garments, and Cloathes; the Book-worm, on Books; the Wood-Lice, on Wood; the Earth-worm, on moist wet Grounds; the Whirl-worm, or Devils Gold-Ring, (from its lying round) or Cater-pillar, on Vines, Goosberry-Trees; Wievels, or Bods, on Corn; Canker-worm, on Plants; and the Mulberry leaves feeds the Silk-worms; so the Louse, on Man's Bodys; the Flea, the Skipper, and the Tike, are Troublesome to Dogs; the Pume, on Wallows; the blind Beetle, sticketh to moist Walls; the Furry-bear-Worm, called hundred Leggs, and for v

fe-

Feet, ly under the Foundations of old decayed Houses, and Walls; the Ant, or Pismire, on Hillocks; and the Spider, makes his Cob-webs to take the silly Flys. These used to be reconed amongst Serpents also, though they have feet, the Lizard, the Evet, the swift Newt, the Salamander, and the Scorpion.

To which we may add, the Adder, the Snake, both of the Wood and Water; the Dart Snake, the Viper, the two headed Serpent, which goes forward and backward; the Cockatrice, and the Dragon.

To them may also be added, the Glow-worm, Palmer-worm, Lady-Cow, Chafers, Horned Beetles, and Horse Flys, all which hide their Wings under a Case, or Sheath.

Flys proceed from Ants, Butter-flies from Caterpillars, and other Worms; which in time lay Eggs that comes to Ants, and Worms again.

26. BUT a more general account of Exanguious Animals, such which are imperfect, as being destitute of Blood, which are generally called by the name of Insects, may be distributed into these Heads; as,

First, Insects of an **Analogous** Generation, such as have either no Feet, or but six feet; as,

1. **Apoda**, Such as are without Feet, as

Earth-worm	Snail	Fluke-worm
Belly-worm	Ascarides	Asilus.
Leech	Bots	

2. Such as have six Feet, as

Glow-worm	Proscabar	Louse
Meal-worm	Field-Cricket	Flea
Gentle	Cock Roches	Water Scorpion.
Maggot		

Secondly, Insects as are of an **Analogous**, or like proportionable, and resemblance.

1. Such as have Feet and Wings, either two or four apeece, as

Locust	Evechur	Grashopper
Grashopper	Wood Cimex, or	Winged Scorpion
Mantis	Moth	Sauterelle
Cricket	Winged Cockroch	Cloath Moth
Fen Cricket	Water Spider	Herb Moth.
Chur-worm	Water Cicada, or	

2. Such as have no Wings, but eight Feet, as

Spider	Wheal-worm	Flesh-worm
Scorpion	Wivel	Maggot
Tick	Moth-worm	River Skimp
Sheep-Louse	Canker worm	Fruit-worm
Punice	Teredo	Sea-Louse
Wall-Louse	Wood-worm	Sea-fea
Mite	Tarmes	Sugg.

3. Such as have fourteen Leggs, or more, as

Sow	Wood-louse	Scolopender
Cheeslip	Hog-louse	Julus.

Thirdly, Insects of an **Anomalous** Generation, such as have in their production under-gone several Mutations: Such as are generally known by the name Maggot, as,

1. Such as are without Feet in their first production from Eggs, as

Maggot	Shining fly Magot	Wasp Maggot.
Bee-Maggot	Gentile	

2. Such as have six Leggs, or more, as

Libella Worm	Caterpillar	Smooth Caterpillar
Cadew	Silk worm	
Straw-worm	Geometra	Palmer worm
Strait Beetle	Skipping worm	Bear worm.
Whirl-worm		

Fourthly, Naked winged Insects, which in their productions go under several Notations, which may be distributed into.

1. Such as have **Membranaceous** Wings, consisting of thin transparent film, being bred of Maggots, or Worms without Feet, as

Bee	Wasp	Ant fly
Honey Bee	Hornet	Emmet
Drone Bee	Fly	Gnat
Humble Bee	Dung-fly	

2. Such as proceed from Worms with Feet, as

Grashopper	Boltshead	Crane-fly
Butter-fly like-fly	May-fly	Shepherds fly.
Dragon fly		

3. Such as have **Farinaceous** Wings, or covered with a mealy substance, being many varieties of them for colours and magnitude, under these kinds of

Butterfly	Moth	Hawk Butterfly.

Fifthly, Sheathed VVinged Insects commonly called **Scarabs**, or Bettles, as

1. Such as have one or two Horns, as

Rhinocerot	Bull fly Beetle	Knobbed Horned Beetle.
VVeevil	Goat Chaffer	
Stag Beetle		

2. Such as have no Horns, as

Common Beetle	Grey Beetle	Death Watch
Dung Beetle	Green Chaffer	Lady Cow.
Dorr		

3. Such as have half sheathed Bodies, and long Wings, as

Earwig	Cantharides	Glow worm fly.
Water-scarab		

Vivi

Voices of Bees, Worms, Serpents.

The **Bee**, Humeth, Huzzeth.
The **Grasshopper**, Chirpeth, or Chipeth.
The **Cricket**, Creeketh.
The **Serpent**, and **Adder**, Hisseth.
The **Beetle**, Busseth.
The **Frog**, and **Toad**, Croaketh.
The **Worm**, or **Locust**, Grilleth.
The **Wasp** and **Hornet**, Bumbeth.
The **Bise**, Breezeth, or Brilleth.

LXII. He beareth Argent, a **Bee-hive**, Or, beset with **Bees, diversly volant**, Sable. Born by *Rooe*. Or else **Semy de Bees, diversly volant.** If the Bees were all Flying one way, then to say **semy de Bees volant**, signifies as much as if the Field were all filled with Bees. You will see a rule for the word Semy, *lib.* 4. *cap.* 1. *numb.* 38. 39. The true shape of the Honey Bee; see *numb.* 51.

The **Bee** is a **cut-wasted** Creature, having an Insect in the middle of its body, it hath four Wings, six Leggs, two Faungs, one Beak, or Bill, without any Blood, or Breath, Intrals few, only a certain pant, moving or stirring (as the Heart, or Brain doth) by which they are refreshed and made lively, quick and apt for use: They are generally yellowish, or black garnished with divers colours, all of one form and shape, but differ in quantity, sex, beauty, quality, employment and labour; care and providence.

They make their Honey-Combs, of a gummy moist liquor, or glutinous substance, thick, clammy and rough; which they lay for a Foundation; then cover it over with another layer of Wax, or Pitch, made with Gum and Rosin; over that again, they lay **Propolis**, which we call **Bee-Glew.** After this they set up the Cells for their **Kings** and **Princes**, in the highest place being large, fair, and sumptious; and cunningly wrought of the most finest, and purest Wax.

Then each other Comb, contained four orders of Cels, the one for **Labouring Bees**, the next **Drones** possess; the next for the **Issue** of the Bees, and the last for **Honey** making.

Observations and Terms used about Bees, and Honey.

27. A **Hive**, is the little House into which the Bees bring their Honey.

A **Swarm** of Bees, is a multitude of Bees knit together in, or on any place. Also the increase of a Stock.

The **Stock**, or Store are the old Bees from whence the new Swarm hath proceeded.

King of Bees, is the Bee as rules all the rest; or the Queen-Bee.

A **Drone**, is a Bee that hath lost his Sting, and will not work, but liveth on the Labours of others.

The **Comb**, or **Honey-Comb**; is the Cells in which the Honey is laid.

Wax, or **Pitch**; is the substance of which the Comb is made.

Propolis, or **Bees-Glew**; is that which the Comb is last covered withall.

Bees-Eggs, Eggs like Ants-Eggs, which come to be young Bees.

Nature of Bees are hot, & fiery, therefore Honey is so, though extracted out of cold and moist flowers.

Sex, are Male, and Female, and breed by procreation.

Bees are bred by the Females blowing their brood in the cells or holes of their Combs.

Stock, is the whole company of Bees in one Hive.

Swarm, are young Bees, coming out of the Hive, they were bred in, to find a new place to abide, and work in.

Male Bees, are the bigger, which we call Drons, they work not, but live on the labour, of the rest.

Female Bees, are the lesser working Bees.

Weak, and **Poor stock**, when but few Bees in it.

Drone-pots, things made of Osiars, the twigs set so close that drones cannot get through, yet wide enough for the Female Bees to go in and out.

Bees-blow, or breed a small thing less, then or as little a Fly-blote, which come to be as big as a great Maggot, and coloured brown, and about 18, or 20 days, they come forth.

Chiled, starved through cold, benummed.

Beak like a Gnat, by which they suck, and draw up Honey, and carry it home in a bladder.

Combs are made by holes on both sides, not one against another, but placed triangular, one against three.

Ring the Pan, when the Swarm is all out, not before.

Stings, the Bees weapons, which they loose not, in stinging one another, for their skin is dry, and thin, that their Spears come away again, without hurt; but in stinging thick and moist skined creatures, they leave their sting behind them, and die, for their intrails come forth therewith.

Bees-stocks may be bought, lent, given, or kept to part, and will prosper, if carefully looked too, but are not to be stolen.

Removing of Bees, from place to place, is best in *February*, or a little before, they begin to gather Honey; and set the side fore-most, that was fore-most before.

Queen-bees, being lost in stocks and swarms, the same shortly perish, and come to decay.

Bees not working, and yet being good store, shews they are either annoyed with dead brood, or disturbed with enemies, as Ants, Mice, and the like: or else have lost their Queen, which causeth them to make a mourning noise.

Hives must be covered with Boards, to keep them dry, for wet or rain will decay the Hives, and the Bees work.

Place your Hives two foot or more, above ground, let the Bees fly to the Southward, keep winds from them, by trees or other shelter, neither let the Sun shine hot upon them, least their work be in danger of melting.

Salt

Salt laid in the Hives on the places they stand, will quicken Bees, and put vigour into them, if you find them fainty and foggy, lazy or dull.

Enemies to Bees, are Hornets, Swallows, Titmice, Martins and the like, besides Wasps, Robbing-Bees. Their lesser are Emmets, or Pismires, Spiders, also Toads, and Snails, all which are noisome and hurtful to Bees.

Bees that are **Robbers**, are commonly fat, and will not labour.

Stocks may be known to be full or empty of Bees, by looking into them morning and evening, or by giving the Hive a knock or phillip, if there be store they will rush a pretty while; if few, they will give a little quick sound.

Bees come to **Decay**, & be lost many ways, a boisterous winds, by Faintness, by Robbers, by Fighting, by Rotten Combs, or by dead Brood, and other Putrifaction.

Dead-Brood, are young Bees-eggs, that come not to perfection, but putrifie, and infect the cells or holes, they lie in.

Hives in a smoaky or bad air, will not thrive.

Swarms, expect in *May*, if the Year prove warm and kindly.

Swarms knit on Boughs of trees, may be shaken unto the Hive, if setled on a place not to be shaken, then sweep them into it with a little Broom or Green bough.

Set not a **New Swarned Hive**, neither near the old stock it came from, nor to another Swarm set up a little before, for fear they creep together.

Little and **Poor Swarms** may be united, and put together in one Hive.

Great and **Forward Swarms**, going together, may be seperated, and knocked gently out of one Hive into an other, ready trimed, and dress.

Two Swarms are apt to fight, and destroy, one another, for want of a Queen, or having two Queens, they will strive which shall Govern, till one be kill'd, and then they will be at peace.

Swarms will be **apt** to **fly away**, when Honey dews fall, for many Honey dews fall in Gloomy weather.

Feed your **Bees**, with Honey, till they have gotten some provision in their Hives, this will give them content, at home and so keep them, from straying abroad.

Times to **Feed Bees**, is in the Spring, and Summer, in cold or wet weather, or over dry seasons for then Honey is not to be gathered abroad, then feed them, else they may starve, or pine, or be out of heart, and not able to work.

Driveing of full and **fat stocks**, by seting one Hive prepared with Honey, upon the other full of Honey and Bees; then knock or rap on the under Hive, and all the Bees will go up to the empty Hive.

Bees Swarming in the **Woods**, in hollow trees, and being there for some time, and having gotten provision in good quantities, are hardly and with much a do gotten from thence.

Bees newly gon into **Hollow trees**, will the sooner be gotten out, by puting a prepared Hive at the hole, and disturbing them by smoak, or knocking the tree, and so you will make the Bees run up into the Hive.

*

Prepared Hive, is how to dress the Hive when it is new, which is to make them smooth or clean, by cuting of the ends of twigs or straws, then rub it with Bean, Oak, Willow, or other sweet leaves, and then stick the Hive with sticks, cleft in four quarters taking off the edges, and stick them bendingly from the top, to almost the bottom; and other like stick set cross: and when the swarm is ready to come, sprinkle it with Honey, or other sweet thing, as Wort, or Sugar dissolved in fair water, which will make the Bees take a better liking to the Hive.

Provoke Bees to **Swarm**, and go into their Hive, if they hang out: Is by moving the Hive up on that side where the Bees ly out, and by stiring, and moving them, and smoaking them, it will make them go up into the Hive.

Bees in Winter, when they strir not, eat not, but slee: therefore, are not to be fed in that season.

Before they **Swarm**, the Males or Drones, will commonly play forth, three or four days, and the Bees will play **Swarm-play**: and sometime you may see the Queen come out and in, before swarming.

Poor stocks, are to be housed in Winter, or keep them close by puting stones to the Hives mouth, to prevent Mice.

Always in Snowy weather, shut up the Bees in Sun-shine, else they will out, and be drowned.

Several sorts of Bees and Flyes:

28. THE **Drone Bee**, these are great bellied Bees, good for nothing, that bestow no pains in gathering Honey, but live upon the Labour of others. He is of a more shining black than the working Bee, and without a sting.

The **Thief Bee**, are very great, and black, having a larger Belly, and bulk, then the true Bee; yet less than the Drone, which also live upon the Labour of other Bees, and do nothing themselves but eat and devour.

The **Wasp**, it is a kind of Insect, they are swift, living in routs and companies, having a long body, enriched with four Membranous VVings: having six feet, of yellow colour, glittering like Gold; garnished with divers black spots all over the body in form of a triangle. They make a sound as Bees do, but more fearful, hideous, and whistling, and have sharp stings in their Tails. They proceed from a Worm, like a Maggot, or Gentle, white; which being laid in the Sun, will after two days be able to fly about; see *chap.* 10. *numb.* 11.

The **Hornet**, is a kind of great VVasp, engendred (as some affirm) from Horses; their Sting will raise a Carbuncle, with a vehement inflamation of the whole part about. It is a yellow or Orange-coloured Bee, with a long Tail, twice as big as the common VVasp, they have four VVings, the inward not so long as the outward, which are of a dark brownish chestnut colour; and six feet of the same colour, their Breast and Shoulders are of. Their Belly is tyed to their Shoulders by a fine thred, being yellow, beset with a row of brown specks, having certain

main clifts, or flits on both sides, by which they can either draw in, or let out their Bodies. They make a sound, or Buzzing noise, more hideous and dreadful, then the Wasp. See chap. 18. numb 155.

The **Cantharides**, or **Spanish fly**, of which there are two sorts the great, and the little; the greater are thick grois and unwieldy like **Beetles**; they are of sundry colours and changeable hew, with Golden streeks, or Lines, crossing their VVings; but generally of a glittering green; some reddish, or Murrey; but all of a glittering brightness, and marvellous shining gloss.

The **lesser sort**, are lean and thin scrags, and starvelings; hairy, heavy, sluggish, and their Bodies and heads somewhat long and hooked, eyes black, their Wings growing out from the middle of their Loyns, being marked with two silver specks, or pricks, and some few white spots: Feet and Leggs small and long, of a Vermilion red, or purple. They are breed of a little worm, found in the sponge of a Dog-brier, and from **Caterpillers** of the Fig, Popler, Ash, Rose, and Olive-trees. In the night they appear like Flying Glow-worms, with Sparkes of Fire in their tails.

The **Dung**, or **Dun-fly**, of some called the **Horse-fly**, or a **Brimsey**, this makes a great humming noise when he flyeth, and in the summer time doth grivously vex Cattle, having a stiff and strong Sting. They are of a reddish-Tauney colour.

The **Stone**, or **Hay-fly**.

The **Red-fly**.

The **Moore-fly**.

The **Tawny-fly**.

The **Cloudy**, or **Blackish Fly**, are much larger than Ant-flys, and with their Blackness, have a gloss of blew, on their Bodies, and Tails: these proceed from Maggots, or Gentills, that breed of Putrified Flesh. They are called **Black Bees**, and are as big as the **Honey-Bee**.

The **Vine-fly**.

The **Tanker-fly**.

The **Bear-fly**.

Ant-Flys, are small black Flys, with Bodies like to the **Ants**, which towards the latter end of Summer, have wings growing out of their sides, by which they Fly away.

The **Palmer-fly**.

The **Oak-fly**.

The **Dors-fly**.

The **Humbo-Bee**, is a large Bee, bigger and fuller Bodied, then a **Wasp**, and little less then an **Hornet**, the Body is also hairy, the Shoulder, and Back equally divided with an over cross line, from the insect, or cuting in at the wast, to the end of the tail, it hath four joynts, the first set with yellow hair, the second with black, and the two last with white, the head and feet, and wings, as in other Bees. This makee a more Humming noise, then the ordinary Hive, or Honey-Bee, from thence it hath its name.

He that will take upon him to describe, the several sorts of Bees and Flys, will take upon him an endless task, for the several kinds are innumerable; and many, I have seen, of which I could never learn the names, though I have made diligent enquiry after them.

LXIII. He beareth Azure, an **Harvest Fly**, **volant**, Argent. Born by the name of *Butterfly*.

B the like, between 3 Roses, A in chief a crown O born by the name of *Edwards* of *Chester*. The same born by Sir *Robert Pounderling* Knight, of whom he is paternally descended *Gwillims* terms this an **Harvest-fly**, in Pale, *En arriere fol.* 235. which term he adds to all flying Bees, or Butter-flys.

LXIV. He beareth Argent, a **Bee volant**, Sable, born by *Bees*.

The **Wasp**, hath the tail part more sharp at the end, bending down with a sting in it; the body of a bright yellow, the wings more whitish. Note that all insects that have stings in their mouth and tail, have four wings apeece, and none have above two that carry their weapons in their mouth: The first for revenge, the latter to feed themselves.

LXV. He beareth Argent, a **Fly volant**, Sable. These are your black *August* flys, that are troublesome then, to all creatures: for they will be before us, both at our meat, and drink.

If it stand in the posture, as the **Fly** in the base part of this square, it is only termed, a **Fly**; being it is neither flying, nor going, but standing.

A 6 Bees volant, S born by *Trahajarn* of *Emlyn*.

A bend between 6 such S born by *Beeston* of *Beeston*.

S a Lyon Rampant, O with a fly, in his right paw, A born by *Premeu*.

LXVI. He beareth Argent, a **Butter-fly**, Gules; bodied Vert. The **Butter-fly**, of what colour soever the wings be, hath the body generally of a yellowish brown, and sometimes of green, and red colours: in standing, their wings are always erected or upright on their back, and are of great variety, both for colour and magnitude. The great **Harvest-fly**, and fine coloured one, are brown, very rough and hairy. This is born by *Wormsly*.

The **Ante** Sable, I have set in the base point, that you may see the shape and proportion of it, called also an **Emmet**, or a **Pismire**. Some others blazoon it a **Butter-fly**, Vert, **winged** Gules; in base an Ante, Sable.

A 11 Antes, or Pismires, 3. 2. 3. 2. 1. S by the name of wiseman. Others blazon it **Semmie de Emmets**, as much as to say, the feild full of them.

LXVII. He beareth Argent, a **Butter-fly volant**, Vert; **Wings** Sanguine, **Spotted** Sable: in base a **Lady-cow**, proper. The Lady-Cow is all red, having 2 black spots in the cases of the wings.

Butter-flys of all sorts, proceed from the several kinds of **Worms**, that breed in Gardens, Orchards, Woods, and Fields; and are as divise in bigness, as colours. For there are white, grey, yellow, red, blew, green, and these again Spotted: but above all for beauty, it is the fine coloured one, whose wings are of a redish brown, painted with eyes like to a Peacocks tail, with variety of colours.

LXVIII. He beareth Vert, a **Butter-fly volant**, Or; **Spotted** Sable, born by the name of *Canada*.

B 3 such A born by *Berston*.

G 3 such O born by the name of *Wandsr*.

LXIX. He beareth Sable, a **Moth erected**, Or; **Winged** Argent: In base a **Beetle-Fesswise**, Gules; **Scaled**, or **Winged**, Argent. I term this Scalded, because that under these shells that cover her body: lying close her wings are, which when they are opened, and lifted up, the wings both appear, and have liberty to play, and bate the air; by which means she flyeth at pleasure. See a **Beetle** close in her shell, or scale, *chap.* 10. *numb.* 56. 57.

The several sorts of Butter-flys, and from what Worms, they proceed.

29. THe **White Butter-fly**, with three black spots on the wings, with a green cut wasted body, after the manner of Bees; its original is from the green Caterpiller worm, which feeds on Cabbish-leaves, which in Autumn, Husks (or incloseth it self, in the out skin, which turns to a Husk, or hard shell) where it lieth all Winter and in the Spring, out of the said shell (opening at the end) prooceed a white Butterfly, as aforesaid. The form of the shell, which the worm drieth unto, see *chap.* 10. *numb.* 65. and *chap.* 18. *numb.* 158.

The **Harvest-fly**, or the curious colloured Butter-fly, that flyeth about in the Summer, and is the largest of all the Butter-flys that ever I saw, hath its original from the horned worm, set forth in *chap.* 10. *numb.* 7. S. 2. which in the latter end of Summer, spins a web like a cob-web, but more strong, like to Gumed Silk: in the midle whereof it works it self into a Husk of the forme of an egg (as the Silk-worm doth, of whose species it is) and there lieth as dead all Winter, and in the Summer breaks forth into a curious coloured Butter-fly, much larger then the common white Butter-fly.

The **Large Moth**, is of a whitish-yellow colour, and proceeds from the Silk-worm, figured, *numb.* 51. All kinds of Moths have their wings compressed, lying more flat on the body, whereas the Butter-flys have them erected.

The **Midling Moth.**

The **Hawk-Butter-fly**, hath the wings lying flat on the body, and are short, and the tail broad.

The **Small Moth**, which usually eateth garments, coverings of stooles, cushions, and furniture of beds. These in the eating of such things, are small white worms, like **Nits**, which are nothing else but **Flea-Nits**, which in the end turns to **Fleas**, and they are the original of these small **Moths**. And that these kind of Moths do proceed from Fleas, I am fully satisfied from an experience I found out in my own house: for keeping of Pigeons in a Closet for a certain time, and after removing them to an other place, had the closet cleansed with as much care as might be, yet notwithstanding in the Spring following, the walls and windows were as full of these small Moths, as was admirable to see, of the dung they could not proceed, for that was gon; so that I could conceive no other thing from whence they should proceed, but from Fleas crept into crivesses and holes, where they lay in Husks, which turned to winged creatures, as in other Worms.

The **Wasps** do first come from Horses, and **Bees** from Bulls (saith Mr. *Topsell*) from whence he observes that little creatures are the off-spring many time of the noblest: and this is seen in their incredible swiftness of flying, and ardent desire of fighting, shews them to proceed from laborious parents.

All **Bees** of the Favificous or Honey kind, are produced from a Maggot sharp at both ends, and from **Worms** or small **Maggots**, bred in excrescies of Oaks: And from the Tufts of Briars, are produced the smaller sort of shining Fly's or Butter-flys, many of which are **Seticaudes** hairy, or rough tailed.

All of the **Wasp kind**, are from **Maggots**, or **Gentils**, that have broad and flat tails.

The **Libella-worm**, which liveth in the water, and is naked, produceth the **Dragon-fly.**

The **May-fly**, proceeds from the **Cadew-worm**, or **Straw-worm**, which liveth in the water, and is in a sheath or case, with little straws or sticks adhering to it.

The **Beetle**, **May-bug**, or **Chaffer**, is produced from the strait **Beetle-worm**, and **Whirle-worm**, the one being straight, the other having his tail inverted, and turned under his belly.

LXX. He beareth Argent, a **Grass-hopper**, Vert; and a **Gad-Bee**, proper. The Grass-hopper by his noise of chirping, gives notice of the harvest, it is Sir *Thomas Greshams* Crest, who built the *Royal-Exchange* in *London.*

The **Locust**, is such a kind of creature, but larger by much, which is a great destroyer of Corn, the sending of them was a great *Plague to Ægypt*, *Exod.* 14. 14, 15. and will be to any Nation. Their colour is brown-grey.

A 3 Grass-hopper, V born by *Hopperly.*

The **Cricket**, is in form, and shape, nothing different from the Grass-hopper; and therefore may not unfitly be called a **Fire-hopper**; loving to be near fires: it is in general of a grey colour, some I have seen of a pure white.

The **Flea**, is very small, yet is in form of a **Grass-hopper**: leaping and skiping from place to place, by the strength of its hinder thighs. It is of a dark redish colour.

The **Gad-bee**, or **Gad-fly**, or **Dor-breeze**: are several sorts of creatures, made much after this form, being round headed, square in the body part, with a worm like tail, having sharp pricks at the end; six long and slender legs and two wings on a side, of a hard substance, veined after the manner of Silk, Net-work, Pellicles, or fine skins.

The **Bise**, is much larger whose body is of various colours, some yellow, others white, or blew, green, and grey, all very beautiful to see, having the colour like the shining about a **Peacocks**, neck.

The **Spinner**, is the lesser sort of them, having but a small body, and slender wings, but very long legs, and are generally of a yellowish colour. *chap.* 12. *numb.* 4.

The **Gnat**, is a small slender fly, with long legs, and hath a sharp and shrill noise, when it flieth; and will bite or sting very sharply, making a red spot, where it touched the flesh, like a **Flea-bite.**

*

A a Brize B, born by the name of *Brizell*.
G 3 such O born by *Junscike*.

30. WE come now to such creatures as are termed **Glider**, those may be said to be such, which having no feet at all, yet do move and glid from place to place, by a certain motion and moving of the body. Some more swift and speedy, other more slow: And of these also, have for a covering, their skin only, others skins and scales, and others both skin and shell, of the former sort are these now following.

LXXI. He beareth Argent, in chief, a **Finned Serpent**, (or a **Water-Serpent**) **reversed, imbowed** in manner of an Annulet, biting of his tail, Gules. Some term it a **Serpent reversed, biteing its tail**; by reason the heads lyeth downwards, contrary to that in base, which is blazoned: (as *numb.* 82.) and *chap.* 18. *numb.* 102.

In base an **Adder**, or **Caterpillar-Serpent bowed**, or **imbowed**, (or enwrapped round) Vert. or after others an **Adder**, or **Snake**, twisted round. The *French* do give it several denominations, as a Serpent turning, circleing, wreathing about, winding round, turned in a circle line Spiral like, a **Serpent Spirally**.

A a Serpent biteing his tail, V born by *Eayer*.

A a Cheveron S between 2 cross patees fitched, G and an Adder bowed imbowed, V by the name of *Whitby*.

B on a bend O 3 Snakes twisted, round, V born by *Castleton*

LXXII. He beareth Or. In the chief, a **Serpent, regardant**, with his **Taile imbowen**, Azure. *n.* 59.

As this hath his head above his body, so you shall find Serpents born looking back under the body, as if it were looking downwards, with its tail bending upwards, for the tail ever bendeth contrary to the head: then it is blazoned a **Serpent**, or **Adder regardant, reversed**, with **Tail imbowed**. See *numb.* 46. This is born by the name of *Prudence*.

In the base, an **Aspe**, or **Adder**, stoping his ear, with his tail, Gules; Some term it from the *Latine* word *obturo*, to shut, or stop; an **Adder obturant** his ear.

The **Aspe**, is that venemous kind of creature, that when he would not hear any thing, he puts one ear to the ground, and stoppeth the other with his tail, from whence the Kingly Prophet *David*, hath his saying, *that like the deaf Adder, they will not hear the voice of the Charmer, Charm he never so wisely. Psalm* 38. 4. This is the Badge, or Emblemen of deafness, or of such obstinate People as will not be Councelled.

V 3 such in Pale, O born by *Aspenell*, alias *Aspandall*.

LXXIII. He beareth Vert, an **Adder**, or **Serpent nowed**, Or. (of some termed **Nodee**) others Blazon it **fretted**, in a form of a knot; others in **round Freting** himself. This is born by the name of *Nowell*.

G The like O born by *Nathily*.

The **Serpent** will not give place to any other creature for sharpness of wit, *being full of Subtilty*, as *Moses* tell us. *Genesis* 3. 1. For besides his other exterior senses, he is cunning in preserveing his life, in making choice of his lurking dens; in getting his food, hatching his brood, and in casting off his old slowgh.

LXXIV. He beareth Sable, a **Snake nowed**, with the **Head reversed**, Argent, or to say only **nowed reversed**, is sufficient to signifie, it looking downwards. This is born by the name of *Monaw*.

In base a **Serpent Torqued**, with the **Tail Annodated** or **Retorted**, Or. This is also termed a Ser-**Targant**, (or **Flected** and **reflected**) with the **Tail twisted**. This kind of Serpent O in a B Field, is born by the name of *Vigilance*.

LXXV. He beareth Gules, three **Snakes nowed in triangle**, Argent. But three **Adders imbowed** and **fretted in triangle**, is the most propereft term, and so the Welsh Bards blazon it, being a Coat belonging to one of the fifteen Tribes, or Families of great account in *North-Wales*. called *Ednowen ap Bradwen*.

Of Serpents in General.

31. BY the word **Serpent**, is understood, all venemous Beasts, whether creeping without legs, as **Adders Snaks**, or with legs, as **Crocodiles, Lizards**; or more neerly compact Bodies, as **Toades, Spiders, Bees, Scorpions, Lice**, as both *Cornelius Celsus*, *Plynie*, and others take it.

But in this our discourse, I shall apply the word, to those venemous creatures only, which crawle or creep, upon their Bellies: and have long tails, of which there are several sorts, which we shall thus in short describe.

Their colours are for the most part, like the place of their habitation, or aboad: I mean like the Earth they live in, as black ones, in dung; some yellow, living in Sandy Rocks; some green, living in trees, and fields; but generally they have spots on their sides, and Belly, like the scales of fish, which are both white, black, green, yellow, brown, and of other colours also.

The frame of their Bodies do not much very, so that we may express their universal Anotomy, in one view; that is, they are inclosed, in a Kind of a Shell, or crusty skin, called a **slough**, having the upper parts on the back, and neither part on the bell, like a Lizard: their bowells long, and narrow: their heads like to a fish, and flat; never much bigger then the Body, except in monstrous, and great shaped Serpents; as the **Boas**.

Their tongues are forked, eyes small, if their tails be cut off, they will grow again; their heart is in their throat, their gall, in the belly; their stones in their tail; where they have such manner of places, for copulation, as Fishes; their teeth like to Saws, set double.

The **Adder**, its parts differeth not from the general description:

description: it is black on the back, sometimes greenish, and yellowish; the scales more sharp, then of the **Snake**, they lie for the most part round, folded up together, like a rope.

The **Ammodyte**, is a Serpent larger then a **Viper** in in the head, having a hard Wart on the upper chap, like a horn; it is fierce, and wild, of a sandy colour, with diverse black spots, and strakes, or small lines, on the back.

The **Aspe**, if he be angry, will smell in the neck, their eyes are red, and flaming, and there are two peeces of flesh, like a hard skin, which groweth out of the forehead. Of the **Asps** there is these sorts. The **Swallow-Aspe**, is like the colour of the Swallow-black on the back, and white on the belly. The **Athar-Aspe**, is of diverse colours. The **Dry-Aspe**, lived in mid-lands, far from water, have long and sharp teeth, like Boars, standing out; their scales are hard, and dry, and red, yet some affirm the colour of Asps, to be various and diverse. The **Irundo-Aspe**, or **Swallow-Aspe**, is black and white; the **Dypsas**, or **Spiting-Aspe**, resembleth an Ash colour, flaming like Gold, and somewhat greenish. The **Chersan-Aspe**, of an Ash colour, and green, and yellow; being the **Land-Aspe**. And the **Chelidonian**, or **Water-Aspe**, sometimes whitish pale, and green spotted, some red, some black in *Ethiopia*: and of a muddy dirty colour: and a fierce aspect.

The **Cockatrice-Serpent**, or **Bazilisk-Serpent**, this is the King of Serpents, not for his bigness, but because he creepeth on the earth, half upright; besides his poyson is uncurable. He hath a comb, or coronet on his head, the eyes red, back blew, belly yellow, spotted with many white spots. *Cardan* relateth the story of another Serpent, like a **Cockatrice**, that had a big head, too big for the Body, a long tail, two short legs, and feet with claws like to a **Cat**, it had a bunch on the top of his head.

The **Diplas**, it is a Serpent with black tail, the head is small, and so backward it groweth smaller and smaller: the tail exceeding little, and cloven; the fore part is somewhat white, for over with black, and yellow spots. There is no difference between the **Diplades**, and **Hipours**, in proportion: but the difference of habitations, the first living in Salt Marshy places; and the latter, in dryer Countryes.

The **Dypine**, or **Water-Snake**, is a vile stinking Serpent: they have very sharp scales over the back, of a blackish colour, the head is broad and flat, much broader in the head, then that part of the Body which is joyned to it, Viper like. See *numb.* 77. Under the scales of these Dryines, breedeth certain flyes, with yellow wings: which is the end, do eat and destroy the Serpent.

The **Hemorrhe**. It is a kind of **Aspe**, or **Viper**, in the shape; for the head is larger then the neck, which is small, growing thicker and rounder towards the midle, and then again smaller towards the tail; which is very sharp and small; on the head, there is the appearance of a horn, standing backward. It is of a sandy colour, red flaming eyes: their scales are rough and sharp, making a noise, when they go on the Earth, which are all set over with black spots. Some ascribe to it two horns, and call it, the **Horned Serpent**, and that it is milk white, with fiery eyes. See *numb.* 77.

The **Cerast**, or the **Horned Serpent**; with their scales, they make a sound in their going: the colour is branded like sand, yet mingled with an other pale white colour, as is to be seen in a Hares skin, upon the head, there are two horns crooked and wrinkled, like a Ram, they are more flexable, then any Serpent; having onely a gristle, instead of a back bone. They have certain red stracks, cross the back, like the Crocodile of the Earth. Yet others say it is of a white colour, with black eyes, having two short horns, growing out of the eye-lids, the neck small and long, to the other part of the Body, the upper part scaly, of an Ash colour, yet mixed with black, the tail brown, and the belly whitish, with slender joynts. See *numb.* 80.

The **Innocent Serpent**, called **Lybie**, they are a Domestical Snake, and have two ears, like Mice; and black as a coal on their Body. There is an other called **Parea**, which is of a yellow colour, like Gold; upon either side, they have two lines, or strakes, which begins at the neck, and ends at the tail, besides these there are no **Harmless Serpent**, I could never hear off.

The **Myilet**, or **Cenchyne**: It is scally, upon each having a spot, which resembleth the form and colour of a Millet seed; not only the back, but belly, and whole skin, is of the same fashion: the colour of the scales, are dusky and dark.

The **Porphyre Serpent**, is a *Indian* Serpent, about a span long, or more; it is of a most beautiful and well coloured purple, the head is exceeding white, and it wanteth teeth.

The **Palmer Serpent**, doth kill with an unrecoverable poyson: and it is also of a Scarlet colour, to the loyns, or hinder parts.

The **Prester**, it is a Serpent which many take to be the **Dipsas**: it is a Serpent that kills by heat, whereas the Dipsas doth it by thirst. *Junius*, and *Tremellius* thinks that the Serpents, which did sting the *Israelites* in the Wildernesse, were **Presters**, being called **Fiery Serpents**, because their biting was with a fiery burning. *Numb.* 21. 6. *Deut.* 8. 15. *Isa.* 14. 29.

The **Red Serpent**, this is a Serpent of the sea; it is a Serpent that hath gills, and fins all along the back, to swime withal, like the Lamprey: it is of a red or purple colour, being full of crooked, and oblique lines; descending from the back, to the belly, dividing or breaking of the long line of the back, which begineth at the head, and so stretcheth forth to the tail, their mouth little and short, the teeth sharp, and like a Saw: his gills like scally fish, and on his back (as I said) and upon the rimie or brimes of his belly, to the tail, are certain hairs growing, or at the least thin small things like hairs, the tail is shut up, in one undivided simme. *Bellonius* saith, they are red, spotted with small dusky spots.

The **Sea-Serpent**: Of these there are several kinds, some are like **Lamphreys**; some like the **Hydrus**, and many others like the Serpents of the Earth (except in the head) for that is generally like the head of a **Conger**. It particularly hath one kind, in colour, and form, not unlike the **Eele**, blackish, and dusky on the back, reddish white on the Belly; the gills, and fins, like the **Conger**, but it hath a longer snout or beak, which hath many sharp teeth, a smooth and pied skin, without scales, all the Body over set, with spires: so as being a live, it is not handled without danger. It is by *Plin.* called, the **Dragon of the Sea**.

The **Viper of the Sea**, is in shew like other little fishes, about a cubit long, having a little horn in the forehead: of some thought to be the **Araneï**, or **Spider-fishes**, save that they have a sharp sting, in their head, and this an horn.

The **Sepedon**, or **Seps.** It hath a great head, and small tail, of variable colours, as in a peece of Tapestry: in somuch that some have thought, that it can change colour, like a Camelion. The length of it, is about two cubits: the head broad, the neck, thick, and tail thin, and slender, a sharp mouth.

The **Slow-Worm**, it is a Serpent that hath little eyes, or none at all, and is Deaf, not hearing at all, from whence it hath its name; the skin is very thick, the colour is a pale blew, or sky colour, with some blackish spots intermixed at the sides; it hath a smooth skin without scales, the nether eye-lid covereth all the eye it hath; the tongue is cloven, and black on the top. It is about a Span long, as thick as a mans finger, but slender at the tail. Some call it a **Blind Worm.**

The **Snake**, it is an home-bred Serpent, about five spans long, the head compares with the body, teeth above and below; in the neck are two blanches, with a hollow place between them; the back is blackish, and the other parts green, mixed with some white. This is called also a **Land-snake**, and hath no manner of Venom or Poison in them, for if they bite, they only draw Blood, there comes no more harm by it.

The **Hydra**, or **Water-snake**, the back is a blackish green, the belly yellow, and of a Golden colour; they are scally, and in swiming hold up their brest.

The **Viper**, the head is very broad, compared with the Body; and the neck much narrower then the head; the eyes very red, and flaming; the belly winding, upon which it goeth all in length; it hath either two or four Canyne teeth, it hath no ears, the skin is soft, and somewhat yellowish, having upon it many round spots, with a kind of darkish colour stroak, or line endented, very small or thick waved, from the head to the tail, all along the ridge of the back; the tail **curled**, or **rounded** at the end, very small and sharp.

Echidna the mother of *Chimera* (as the Poets faine) was from the Navel upward, a beautiful **Virgin**; and from thence downward, a **Viper.**

The **Jactile**, is a Serpent that flyeth as swift as a dart, and leapeth into trees, and what beast soever he meeteth with, he throweth himself thereupon, and slayeth it: the **Jaculus** is a **Flying-serpent.**

The **Scitale**, is a speckled Serpent, which shineth with such diversitie of spots upon his back, that all that look thereon, do wonder, and delight to see him.

The **Situla**, is the least of all Serpents, and is so little that unless he is seen when men trade on him, his venom is so forcible, that it slayeth before it be felt, and he that dieth thereof, feeleth no sore, as *Lucan* doth write of it. Some call this a **Dipsez** or **Dipsas**, or a kind of **Aspious-serpent.**

The **Sacer**, is a little Serpent, and yet great Serpents and mighty will fly from it, and avoid its society: it is but one cubit long.

The **Chelidos** is a Sepent the abideth both on the land, and in the water, *Isidore* saith, it maketh the Earth to smell well where it creepeth: it goeth straight out in Lim, and Body: for if it bow, it strains and hurts it self.

The **Cencris**, is a Serpent that is very like the former, and doth as he doth, as *Lucan* reports of him.

Isidore saith that there be many kinds of Serpents, as the **Admodita** or **Amodice Serpent**: the Serpent **Elephantia**, which causeth such as are stung with it, to fall into a *Leaprosie*. The **Chamedracontes**, a kind of greenish blew Serpent. But having no further descriptions of them, I leave them.

LXXVI. He beareth Argent, a **Serpent targant**, Vert. **Devouring of a Child**, proper. This form of **bending** and **rebending**, either in **Serpents**, **Adders**, or **Fish** is termed either **torqued**, or **torgant**, the *French* term it **waveing**, and **turging in pale.** See *chap* 18. *numb.* 103. This is born by the name of *Drummer.*

G the like A quartered by the Duke of *Tremoyle*, whose Daughter married to *James Standley*, Earl of *Derby.*

To this may be added, the Serpents both **double** and **single torqued.** The first having as many bending as would make two Roman *S*'s one below the other. The later being not much more then a single *S*, as the example I have set in this quarter, *viz.* G a Serpent double torqued A born by *Kieseweter.*

O a Serpent torqued and crowned, S is a Coat quartered by *Scomberg* alias *Schavnperg* of *Bavaria*, born by the name of *Van Stubemberg.*

Per Pale O and B two Serpent torqued, respectant, counterch: on a chief, A a Bird standing on a Rose slip proper Born by *Hulsen.*

G a Serpent targant, A is the Town Arms of *Ahlen.*

O the like B with 3 Roses on stalks in his mouth, O born by *Lynar.*

LXXVII. He beareth Argent, in chief, a **Serpent Horned**, with his **tail imbowed**, Vert. Some term it a **Serpent Gliding**, or creeping; with his tail imbowed, or turned round. This is born by the name of *Trahmain.*

G 3 such in Pale, O born by *Wekler.*

In fesse, a **Viper**, proper, or a **Viper extended**, or **gliding.** This is a venemous creature, having a round head, and sharp nose, forked sting: the Body slender at the head; thicker in the middle, and small again to the tail, of a yellow colour, full of small blackish brown spots, with a kind of black indented list down it back.

The **Dryine**, is an other like kind of **Snake**, or **Serpent**, scaled all over, from the nose to the tailend, of a blackish colour, they have a most loathsome stink with them.

In base a **Serpent**, **bowed**, **embowed**, **debrused** with the head; that is, the Serpent is twice or thrice rounded, with the head, and tail proceeding out of the midle of the rounds. This is born by *Writhinger*, *viz.* V such a Serpent O.

This is contrary to the turning, or winding of the Body of the Serpent, *numb.* 4. That having the Body turned about the neck of it, the head then proceeding or extending from the midle of the rounds; But this is turned, or winded about the tail, which makes the head be on the out-side of the rounds. So that notwithstanding these kind

kind of ancient Blazonings given them; for distinction sake, that Serpent I hold better termed thus, **Bowed-embowed**, and **Debruised**, with the head and tail from within: Or **Annulated**, or turned into Rings, and the tail **fluant**, or extended from the midle. And this **Bowed-embowed, debruised** with the head extending (or proceeding) from the out-side of the Rounds.

LXXVIII. He beareth Argent, a **Serpent crawling** on his belly, with his **head**, and **tail, elevated**, and **imbowed**, Gules. I have seen a Serpent born in this posture, with a tuft of Moss, fixed on the head, midle, and tail, which is born by *Tilsley*. See *chap.* 19. *numb.* 14. Others a Serpent with his head, and tail elevated, and bowed, O in a Field, G by *Lavator*.

In base, a **Serpent Trochleated**, or **enwrapped round**, in form of a screw, the head **elevated**, Azure. There is an other like posture, of an Adder, or Serpent, enwraping round, with its head proceed from the middle, and the tail contrary Imbowed as, *numb.* 4. 77.

LXXIX. He beareth Argent, a **Serpent Imbowed**, the head **debruised** (or **surmounted**) of the tail, Vert. This I find several wayes termed, to set forth the right way of his bending; some say, **Imbowed** in form of a **Dragons tail**: others turned round, with the head over the tail. But to say a Serpent **Embowed-debruised**; may suffice to express this kind of bearing without any other terms, or additions, in my Judgment.

A the like V is born by the name of *Bendenburgh*.

LXXX. He beareth Gules, the head of a **Ceraste**, or **Horned Serpent**, Or. In chief an **Adder**, the head **reversed**, the midle **Bowed-bruised**, and the tail **circled**, Argent. Of some blazoned more briefly, an **Adder reversed, Bowed-debruised**, and **embowed**. B 3 heads of Horned Serpent couped, O born by *Gnospat*.

LXXXI. He beareth Azure, a **Dragon Serpent, imbowed, debruised**, and tail **reversed**, Argent. It is also said to have his tail **Imbowed, debruised** and **reversed**.

☞ **Imbowing** signifieth a thing Bended, or turned round. **Debrusing**, to have a thing to be over, or upon, or be under another; as the end of the tail in turning goes under the Body. And **Reversed** signifies the tail to bend backwards, and so down, not having the tail upwards, as in *numb.* 79. Yet some Heraulds, terms this a wreathed, or twisted Dragon head Serpent, and his posture they blazon, with his tail turned upward, or Debrused reverting. Others call it a **Bazilisk**, or **Cockatrice Serpent**. This is born by the name of *Effringenser*.

LXXXII. He beareth Argent, a **Serpent Imbowed, biteing** of his tail, Gules: adorned with two Collars, and Tuffs, Or. Others call it, a Serpent in a circle, see *numb.* 71. This is born by the name of *Skraffet*.

LXXXIII. He beareth Gules, two **Adders imbowed**, and **fretted**, their tails turned after the manner of **Dragons** (or **Weevers**) Argent. This is the old blazoning; some term them, **Imbowed, Endorsed**, and **Fretted**: but they cannot be Fretted, except Endorsed, and Bowed: therefore needless to express them. Therefore the most compendious way is to say; two **Adders fretted, Tails debruised**. This is born by the name of *Fretwood*.

LXXXIV. He beareth Argent, seven **Adders**, Vert; **tied**, or **banded with a wreath**, Or, and Gules. Others, **seven Adders erected, Wreathed**; or a **Fasce**, or Bung, or **Bundle**, of **Adders**; **banded**, or **tied** together. This is Born by the name of *Campainfield*.

A such a knot of Adders B is born by *Harbut*.

LXXXV. He beareth Argent, a **Spider** in the midst of her **Cob-web**, Sable. There are several sorts of Spiders, the shapes and proportions, with their description, you will have in *chap.* 10. *numb.* 70, 72.

They are called, **Attercope, Spider**, and **Spinner**, and their Web; vulgarly a **Nattercopes-Nest**. They have all of them three joints a-peece in thier Legs; their Bodies like unto great welled basten **Pismires**, of a dark earthy colour. This is Born by *Cobster* of *Lombardy*.

LXXXVI. He beareth Or, a **House-Snail**, or a **Shell-Snail**, Sable. If they be of contrary colours, then Blazon it thus, a **Snale**, Sable; the **Shell**, or **House**, Gules. The Snail is said to want Eyes, and therefore grope out their way by their little Horns. This is Born by the name of *Snell*.

S a Fesse between 3 such A Born by *Shelley*.

O 3 House-snails shells, purpure. Born by *Shellerworth*.

G a Snail-shell A and the same on a Crown O is the Coat and Crest of *Skeckheuser*, a *German*.

In the sinister chief is the shape of a small Vermin, or Man-troubler, called a **Louse**; it is much about the bigness of the figure in its full growth, which will be from a **Nitt** to that in twenty hours, or less, if warmly kept; they are devilish Biters, especially the little ones.

Of these Creatures there are three kinds, which are bred and brought up on Man's Body, each keeping its proper place and station; from which being removed they are not apt to do well, as being out of their own Sphere; There is the **Head-Louse**, which is of a brown, or yellowish brown colour, with some black on the back, it keeps onely to the Head.

The **Body-Louse**, is more fat and plumper, having a larger pasture to range in, it is generally all white in the body, with a black list down his back, the Head is small and round, with two small Horns and six Feet fixed (not on the Body but) each side the Head, they are hairy, so that they will fasten upon any thing, let it be never so smooth.

The **Crab-Louse**, is contrary to the other two, whose body is round, and made like a Crab; these are of a whitish colour, are sore biters, and fast stickers where they fix themselves: They are nourished chiefly in the hairy parts of the Body of Man, as the Privities, under the Arm-holes, and on the Breasts of such who have Hair there.

The **Tike**, is another kind of **Louse**, (which is placed in the base of this square, it is contrary to the other, being a Companion for **Dogs, Sheep**, and **Cattle**; This Creature hath a round oval body, no head, but

but like two Lips coming from it by which they suck and bite. The back is generally of an earthy brown, and the belly white, as if two small shells of those colours were fixed together: From between them proceeds out of the sides six small feet; so that if they be turned on the back, they cannot rise without help, or much strugling to turn them over. They are as large, as a small or middle sort of Field-bean, or Pease.

LXXXVII. *He* beareth Azure, a **Scorpion**, Or. This is Born by the name of *Gressible*. The **Scorpion** doth much resemble the **Crab-Fish**; of which there are two sorts; the **Scorpion** of the **Land**, and the **Scorpion** of the **Sea**.

The **Scorpions** of the **Earth**, are some Winged, and some without Wings; they are no bigger than a Bean, yet their Biting is most Deadly: They are of several colours, as the white, whose Biting is not Deadly. The pale-colour, whose Biting causeth Distraction, to be without Wit, always Laughing like a Fool.

The Greenish, caused trembling, quivering and cold, as if the Patient were Freezing.

The Blackish pale, causeth after Stinging, heaviness, and a sorrowful Spirit.

The **Crab**-like **Scorpion**, is of a great Body; and hath Tongue, and **Takers**, very solid and strong, like the **Gramuel**, or **Crevish**, and is therefore thought to take beginning from that Fish.

The Reddish, causeth Thirst upon its Biting.

The Honey-colour, or Wax-colour, the Wings it hath on the back, are like the Wings of a **Locust**. Some have six Knots on their Tails, some have seven: some hold up their tails from the Earth, others draw them a-long, a little rowled together.

The **Octopos**, is a little Creature, not much unlike the **Horse-Fly**, except in the Tail, which is distinguished into certain Knots or Seams, of a bright brown colour, with a sharp sting in the same: They have Arms (that is) two cross Forks, or Tongues, which come out on either side in the tops whereof, are little things like Pinsers, by which it taketh hold on a thing; it hath four feet on a side, all like the **Sea-Crab**: See *chap.* 18. *numb.* 153. Some call it a **Scorpion-fly**, some a **Dragon-fly**.

A a Cheveron G between three Scorpions reversed S by the name of *Cole*.

G 3 Pallets Varrey, on a Chief O a Scorpion erected S This Coat is in a Window in St. *Giles's* Church in the Fields in *Middlesex*.

LXXXVIII. He beareth Argent, a **crested serpent, wreathed**; with his **Tail imbowed debruised**, proper. This Serpent of what colour so-ever he is made, hath the Crown, or Crest, on the top of his head, ever red. This is born by the name of *Subtile*. This is of some termed a **Cockatrice Serpent**, from the Crest upon his head after the manner of the Cockatrice.

The like O in a Field V is born by the name of *Stobbell*.

The several Terms for Turning or Winding of Serpents Tails.

32. **Anodated**: See **Enwrapped**, *numb.* 74.

Extended, when it is straight, stretched out at length, *numb.* 77.

Bowed, or **Imbowed**, when it is turned at the end, as *numb.* 72. 77. termed also flected, or reflected, 59.

Bowed, or **Imbowed-debruised**, when it turns round, and goes under the Rump-part, as *chap.* 10. *numb.* 57. 58. and *numb.* 79.

Retorted, turned too and again, one after another, as *numb.* 74.

Enwrapped, or **Bowed-Imbowed**, when it turns twice or thrice round one within another, as *numb.* 71

Intortant, wreathen, wrested, wrapped about, winded inwards.

Embowed erected, when the turning is upwards, as *numb.* 46. above the rump, 57, 58.

Bowed-Embowed debruised, when it turneth round and round and the end of the Tail, comes out from the middle of the round, as *numb.* 77. 78. 4.

Twisted: See **Torqued**, or **Entwisted**, *numb.* 74.

Nowed, when the Tail is fretted, in form of a knot, as *numb.* 73. 74.

Double Nowed, when it is fretted five or six times, as *chap.* 18. *numb.* 106.

Pendant, or **Recurvant**, or **Declinant**, or **Declivant**, or **Reclinant**. When the Tail hangs straight downward, as *chap.* 12. *numb.* 80.

Erected, or **Elevated**, when it is straight up above the rump without any wavering, or turning. Termed also **Reclivant**, **Versant**, and **Sursuant**, as *numb.* 28.

Targant, or **Torqued**, is when the tail hangs downward, wavering or bending, first one way, then another, as *numb.* 76.

And **Torqued**, with the Tail **wreathed**, as *numb.* 74.

Double Torquened, is when it hath so many bending and turnings in the body, as to make an S twice over, as *numb.* 76.

Erected, or **Elevated-Embowed-Debruised**, when the Tail turns upward, and bends round and goes under at the end, as *numb.* 61. *chap.* 10. *numb.* 64.

Erected-flected and **reflected**, or **erected Torgant**, when it turns upward, with a wavering, or bending too and again, *numb.* 28. and *chap.* 10. *numb.* 65.

Embowed debruised torqued, when the Tail turns upward in a round, and falleth down again under, with a wavering in the end, as *numb.* 45. 60.

Torqued, or **Torgant** and **Imbowed** in the middle, as *chap.* 18. *numb.* 103. else **Imbowed enwrapped Torqued**; and some **erected-Imbowed Tuberated-debruised** and **Torqued**.

Wreathed-embowed-debruised, as *numb.* 88.

Fretted in the Tails, as *numb.* 75. 83.

Bow-

Bowed-debruised and **embowed**, when the middle of the Tail is turned one over the other, and then the end of the Tail is bent, or turned round again, as *numb.* 80.

Bowed-debruised, and **Counter-embowed-debruised**, that is when the Tail turns down, and goes under; and above that, turns again a contrary way (at a little distance) and goes under, as *numb.* 33. Some term this, **double-embowed debruised**, or else **double bowed**, and **fretted**, as *numb.* 83.

Bowed with the **tail elevated**, (or turned) over the head, as *chap.* 10. *numb.* 10. yet some term this **elevated**, and turned over the head, onely.

Bowed-debruised, the Tail **Surmounting**, or **Embowed**, the **Head debruised**, as *chap.* 14. *numb.* 41. That is when the turn-part of the Tail turns not under, as in others; but in the turning lyeth highermost, or above the other part.

Bowed knotted-debruised, and **Torqued**, that is when the Head-part is imbowed, the middle is enwrapped round, and close together in the midle, and the Tail-part is fledted, or bent too and again, as *chap.* 18. *numb.* 103.

TO

TO

The Right Worshipful

Sir GEFFREY SHAKERLEY, *of* Shakerley, *Knight, Late Governour of the Castle and Garrison of* Chester.

AND TO

PETER SHAKERLEY, *of* Holme, *Esquire; his Son and Heir:*

Governour of the said City and Castle, and one of the Aldermen and Justices of the Peace in the City, and for the County Palatine of Chester.

I Am *unsatisfyed what Service to present you, that might satisfie for those many Favours I have from time to time Received at your Hands; if you please to Increase my Knowledge, in Informing Me how I may better serve you, I shall be doubly Obliged: In the mean time be pleased to Patronize this my small Dedication, as a part of service owing from him, who is*

Yours to Command at all times,

Randle Holme.

CHAP. X.

1. IN the progress of our former Chapters, touching four-footed Animals, we have been as careful as we could to give every kind of Creature (come to our knowledge) their due, and natural forms, and colours, with some short Descriptions: Yet there remains some other sorts of exorbitant Creatures, differing from others, either in Essence, or Quality; which wanting a place amongst the rest of Beasts, I have reserved for this last plate.

Which may be ranked under these three heads.

Monstruous, Creatures above Nature.

Amphibuous, Creatures living in both Earth and Water.

Bigenerous, Creatures of two kinds.

1. He beareth Vert, an **Ape Sciant**, holding up his hand, Or: **Collered**, and **Chained**, to the sinister side of the Escochion, Argent. These kind of Creatures are all hairy, and in all respects resemble **Man**: very intelligable, being short of Man in nothing but speech; in lieu whereof he hath a Tail. The **Ape**, **Monkey**, **Baboon**, and such Creatures, are ever collered about the middle. This is called an **Ape**, a **Jack-an-Apes**, of which there is several sorts: all of them being of a sad brown, or Mouse-colour. This is Born by the name of *Applegh*.

The **Troglodite Ape**, is maned about the Shoulders like **Lyons**, and are as big as great **Weathers**, or **Sheep**.

The **Pigmyes**, are a kind of **Ape**, about three or four spans high; which though some make them little **Men**, yet *Albertus*, and *Nyphus* prove, that they are not **Men** but **Apes**; by these reasons, that they have no perfect use of Reason, no Modesty, no Honesty, or Justice of Government; and though they speak, yet is their language imperfect; and above all they cannot be **Men**, because they have no Religion, which (*Plato* saith truly) is proper to every **Man**.

The **Satyr**, is by the Poets and Painters, described to have Horns and Feet, and Tail like a **Goat**. Whereas **Satyr Apes**, have neither of both. These are Monsters of the Desarts, or rough hairy **Fawns**, in the shapes of Men, with Tails like Horses, see *numb.* 4. 5.

The **Phynr**, or **Sphynga**, or **Sphynr**: They are hairy, and in the shape of **Women**; having their Breasts like Women, pile and smooth without hair, and their

Donum Dni Galfridi Shakerley de Holme Militis. H Sculp: D. E.

Faces round, with the favour, and visage like them. The hair brown of a swarthy colour, their Breasts spotted, with red spots, like Mullets. The **Sphynx**, which the Poets and Painters feign to have a **Maidens face**, **Lyons feet**, a **serpents tail**, and **Eagles Wings**, is described in the figure, *numb.29.*

The **Bearded-Ape**, or **Calitrich-Ape**, hath a long Beard, and a large Tail, hairy at the end like a **Lyons**; being in *India* all white; see *chap.8. numb. 19.*

The **Prasian Ape**, having curled hair on their heads, and beards like **Men**, being all white, except their tails, which are two cubits and half long; their head and tip of the tail yellow.

An Ape chained and set upon a Log or Block of wood, proper. Is the Crest of *Middleton* of *Leighton.*

An Ape O face, hands and feet, proper. Is the Crest of the Lord *Saint John.*

A an Ape Sejant to the sinister, right hand between his Thighs, and an Apple in his left proper. Born by the name of *Geggenhofer.*

B the like Seiant collered, and the Apple in the right Hand A the hill O by the name of *Kotzell.*

An Ape Seiant, left hand down, the right holding an Apple, is the Crest of *Van Stechow* of *Brunswick.*

G an Ape Seiant collered about his Neck, the Chain pendant down his back between his Legs, and erected or supported a-loft, with his two hands O born by *Van Prag.*

Per Fesse O and B an Ape Saltant collered A by *Van Kutzelor.*

II. He beareth Argent, a **Monkey**, proper, **collered** and **chained**, **reflected** over his Back Or, which is the Crest of *Gerrard* of *Brine.* In chief a **Caterpillar**, (or **Worm**,) Vert. The colour of the **Monkey** is generally of a dusky, or black brown, called by some, a **tailed Ape**, by reason the true **Ape** hath none at all. But such Writers are not always to be credited, for there are **Apes** with Tails, as well as **Monkeys**, but not so often seen.

The **Monkey** is thought to be a kind of **wild Cat**, like the **Ape.** They are very sportful, and given to imitate the actions of Men, it is less than the **Ape.**

The **Mammonet** are less than **Monkeys**, not much larger than an old **squirrel**; brown on the back, white on the belly, having a long hairy Tail, his Neck almost as thick as his body; for which cause they are tyed by the Hips, that they slip not the collar; they have a round head, and Face like a Man; but black and bald on the Crown, his stones of a greenish blew.

The **Coxcolipis**, is another kind of **Monkey**, whose Tail is only hairy, at the end bushy.

The **Martine** (or **Cephus**) **Monkey**; their Feet and Knees, and Hands, like a **Man**, the Face of a **Lion**; some part of the Body like a **Panther**, being as large as a **wild Goat**, a long Tail; their colour is divers, some black, with white spots; some yellow, some tawney, some cole-black. Yet for the most part the back to the Tail, of a fiery colour, with some yellow aspersed amongst them; the Snowt white, with certain Golden-strakes, like a Collar, going about the Neck. The Brest, Neck, and Belly white.

G on a Hill in Base V a Monkey A collered, the Chain erected O and for his Crest on a Crown A the same Seiant; which are born by the name of *Lembach.*

G on a Hill in Base O the like Saltant to the sinister A crowned the Chain erected to the dexter Chief O by the name of *Katzenstein.*

2. NOw a word, or two of the **Caterpillar**; with some other sorts of Worms.

The general name for Worms having more than 6 feet, are **Cater-pillars**; because they are the only destroyers of Trees, Leaves and Herbs, though there be many kinds of them; yet all are of this, or the like kind of making: Their whole length consists of divers Incisions, which the Latins call *Annuli*, or Rings; to the three first *Annuli* next the head, are fixed three pair of slender crooked Legs, to every other Ring of their Body behind, they have two short thick Legs, and at the last Ring of the Tail are two Appendages, or Stays; which in their progressive motion by help of their hinder feet and the Appendages of the Tail, do first gather themselves up into a Loop, then thrust their heads forwards.

The **Caterpillar**, is derived from the Egg of a Butterfly; which comes to a kind of greenish Worm, after the make of the figure, which the next Summer goes to a Butterfly again. The *English* call all sorts of creeping Worms, of what kind so-ever, by the name of **Cater-pillars.** If they be Eaters, or destroyers of Leaves, Fruit, or Herbs: Yet of these there are several sorts, some hairy, others not; some jointed, others plain; some are rough hard and stiff, others soft smooth and tender: Some have Horns on the Head, or Tail, others no Horns at all. Some have no feet, others few, others many feet; yet none exceed sixteen. Some have a bending swift pace, like unto Waves, and others keep on their way, plainly, softly, by little and little, without any great haste. Some cast off, or change their skin yearly, others change none at all. Some cease from eating and motion, are transformed very strangely into a Vermin, or Worm, who being covered with a hard crust or shell, ly as it were dead all Winter, and from these comes in the beginning of hot Weather, our usual **Butter-flyes**, of all sorts and colours.

The **Canker-worm**, or **Cater-pillar**, hath many feet on both sides, is of a reddish yellow, and runs very fast, they are generally found, at the foundation of old decayed Houses, or roots of rotten Trees, they are called by some, **Devils Worm**, or **Hundred Feet**, see *numb. 14.*

The **Green-Worm**, or **Horned-Tail Caterpillar**, it hath a Circle inclosing round both his Eyes, and all his feet, having a crooked horn in his Tail of a blackish red, with spots and streaks going over-thwart their sides half white half purple, the little pricks, or hair in the spots are inclining to red, the rest of the body, is altogether green: See *numb.7.*

The **Elder**, (or) **Cater-pillar**, or **Worm.** So called from its feeding onely on the **Elder**, or **Alder-tree.** It is in all respects, like the green horned Worm, before-mentioned; it is altogether green, wanting those over-thwart cross white marks, or spots, and the other small pricks.

The **Cabbach**, or **Lettice-Worm**: This is a **Caterpillar** of a greenish colour, which when *Autumn*, or the fall of the Leaf, draweth on, is turned into a certain Sheath, or Case, being of a very hard, and horny substance, of colour very brown, which in the Summer following, turns into a **Butter-fly** all white, with black spots on the Wings. These Worms feed altogether upon Pot-herbs; especially those that be soft, from whence it is termed, *Eruca Lactucaria*, the **Lettice-Caterpillar**. See *numb* 16.

The **Oak-Worm**, of some called **Dew-Worm**: This is the least sort of green Worms, and liveth and feedeth upon the Oak-tree leaves especially; it is scarce so big as a **Maggot**, or **Gentle**, and something like it; when cold Weather approacheth, they fold themselves into a rude, plain, and nothing curious Web, scabbard, or case; of a greenish colour, tending to red: They all Die in the Winter; they have all ten feet a-piece; as all they have, which go bending themselves upward.

The **Brandling**, is a coloured Worm, and are commonly found in an old Dung-hill, Cow-dung, Ho's dung, or Tanners bark.

The **Lob-Worm**, or Garden-Worm.

The **Gentle**, or **Maggot**: See *chap*.18. *numb*.148.

The **Marth-Worm**.

The **Flag-Worm**.

The **Green Gentle**.

The **Red-Worm**, is a long small Worm, and is usually found under Stones, and at the roots of Plants; especially at the roots of great Docks: They generally lie wrapped up in a round clue.

The **Cod**, or **Case-worm**.

The **Bob-Worm**.

The **Cad-worm**, or **Cadice-Worm**, of some called a **Passe**, or **Cock-hait**. They lie in a gravelly husk under the Stones in small Rivers.

The **Tag-tail**, is a worm with a yellow tag on his tail, all its other parts of a pale flesh-colour; it is something less than half an inch long: They are found in marled-grounds and Meadows in fair weather, but not to be seen in cold, or after rain. Some describe it to be a red Worm, with a yellow tip on its tail.

The **Colewort-Worm**.

The **Dors**, or **Dor-Worm**.

The **Squirrel Tail-Worm**, is of a colour with red head, and streaked down the back, and a broad tail.

The **Grub**, is a general term for the smaller worms that breed in the Earth.

The **Meal-Worm**.

The **Mite**, is a very small white worm, bred in old decayed Cheese. It is so small that it is scarce discernable, but by its motion.

The **Tassi**, is a Worm bred, and is often found in rotten wood; it is an Insect with six feet, much resembling a **Cater-pillar**.

The **Fruit-worm**, such as are bred in Apples, Nuts, and such kind of fruit; it is a worm that is white; see *chap*.18. *numb*.149.

The **red Wine Caterpillar**, or **Willow-worm**; from its feeding chiefly on the leaves of Willows; his Lips and Mouth are yellow, his Eyes black, his Forehead purple, the Feet and hinder part of his Body green, his tail two-forked, and some-what black; the whole body yellow, yet stained and dyed, with thick red Wine, all along the Shoulder-blades, in form of a *Burgonian* Cross, or letter X, down to the Tail. This VWorm in Latine is called *Eruca Vinula*.

The **Pigs-snout Caterpillar**, so called from the fashion of the head, especially of the greater sort; they are of a yellow blackish colour, having round white specks on their sides; they feed on the leaves of the marsh trefoil; which they consume with an incredible celerity.

The **Smooth horned Worm**, on the Herb called the **wild Night-shade**, there is found a **smooth Caterpillar**, of a yellow greenish colour, having a Horn in his Forehead, the length of a finger. Called in Latine, the *Eruca Unicornu*, the **Unicorn Caterpillar**.

III. He beareth Argent, a **Monkeys head couped**, proper. This is ever born couped without any shew of the Breast at all; and is born by the name of *Monkeys*.

IV. He beareth Sable, a **Satyr**, proper, Tenant, or holding in his right hand, an **Bow-boy**, Or. Poets and Painters, do decipher the Satyr, thus: a **Man** in the upper parts of his Body, with long **Ass-like Ears**, and from the middle to the feet, a **Goat**; with a sharp pointed prick. Some draw him with Horns, and a short tail like a **Buck**. Which may not unfitly be termed an **Horned Satyr**, **Fawn**, or **Faunus**; or **Pan**, or **Sylvan**, or **Wood-Fairy**; for by all these names he is known; see the horned head, *chap*.8. *numb*.23. and this Plate, *numb*. 6. This is born by the name of *Palmades*.

S. a Satyr proper, with a pipe in the right, and a Garland in his left V is born by the name of *Zim*.

V. He beareth Vert, a **she Satyr**, proper, crined, and Tenant, or holding a Club in her right, and a Comb in her left hand, Or. These kind of **Fauns**, or **Sylvans**, or what else they are called, are included in the number of such as we call **Familiar Spirits**. These are also drawn with long Ears, and short stumps of Horns, like **Calves**, wreathed. This is born by the name of *Sansar*.

VI. He beareth Sable, a **Satyrs head**, horned, proper. The long Ears make it to be a **Satyrs face**, else it would have passed for a **Wittals face**. But as it is a Satyr, it is born by the name of *Marvillers*.

G 3 such O born by *Saturmaine*.

VII. He beareth Argent, a **Mole**, (or **Mouldwart**,) Sable. It is as black as a Coal, and soft as Velvet; having only his Feet, and a little tip at the Nose, of flesh-colour. It is termed a **Want**, and a **Mouldwarp**. Some saith *Gesner*, are all white, with a little red on the Belly between the fore-feet; having a Snout like a **Shew-mouse**, or **Hedg-hog**; five Toes, or Claws on the fore-feet; and four Claws on the hinder-feet, a-piece; the Tail short and hairy. This is Born by the name of *Moule*.

A 3 such S born by *Mangotham*, alias *Nangotham* of *Scotland*.

A a Cheveron between three such S born by *Tuston*.

In the Base, there is the figure of the **Green horned Caterpillar**, described before in *numb.* 2. and in chief, a **Frog tail**, or **young Frog.**

VIII. He beareth Argent, a **Cameleon**, proper. It is said of this Creature, that he is of no certain colour; by reason he changeth into that colour immediately, as the thing is coloured, which he sitteth upon. But the usual colour ascribed to him in Herauldry, is green, with the head and belly partly yellow.

Mr. *Topsell* calls it, a **Serpentine**, or **creeping Beast.** Some others, a **Worm** of the **Wood**; or a **Rat-mouse.** Being it is in quantity much between them; from whence some have called it a **Mouse-Lizard**: There is two kinds, one lesser, being all white, set all over with yellowish, or reddish spots. The other of a changeable colour, betwixt white, green, brown and yellow; upon which account some have called it a turn-coat coloured **Cameleon.** But naturally green, but paler and nearer to white on the belly, beset all over with red, blew, and white spots. They have coppell heads, and two bones at the top of their brows, standing upon either side; Eyes clear and bright; the Mouth wide, and long; with Teeth on both sides, like Saws. The back is somewhat crooked, rising with sp tted bunches from the head to the tip of the Tail; which is long and slender, like a **Rats**: the Feet have three Fingers, or Claws, outward, and two within; and contrary the hinder feet have two Claws a-piece without, and three within. They are said to live by the Air, but that is not true; for they eat Flyes, Horse-flyes, Locust, and Emits; yet they can most endure fasting of all other Egg-breeding Beasts, for it many times, eateth nothing of eight months, or a whole year. This is the Coat of *Air.*

The like standing on a stock in Fesse raguled. Is Born by its own name *Cameleon.*

In the chief, I have caused a **Bulhead**, or **Horse Nail**, (so called from its form) which is the engendred seed, or Spawn, of **Frogs** or **Toads**, when they first receive life; and before they come to the shape of such Creatures. The Head is great, and the other part small; for with his tail he swimeth, if they be taken out of the water before they have feet, they die.

IX. He beareth Argent, a **Salamander in flames**, proper. The **Salamander**, is a Creature with four short feet like the **Lizard**, without Ears, with a pale white belly, one part of their skin exceeding black, the other yellowish green, both very splendent and glittering; with a black line going all a-long the back, having upon it little spots like Eyes; (and from hence it cometh to be called a **Stellion**, a Creature full of Stars,) the skin is rough and bald; they are said to be so cold, that they can go through the Fire, nay, abide in it, and extinguish it, rather then burn. I have some of the hair, or down of the **Salamander**, which I have several times put in the Fire, and made it red hot, and after taken it out, which being cold, yet remained perfect wool, or fine downy hair. It is thus born by the name of *Salandine.*

B three Salamanders heads erazed O born by *Augers.*

X. He beareth Or, a **Lizard** with his **tongued Tail**, Vert. This is born by *Lysardell.* The Arms, Shoulders and Hands like a **Man**; the Skin is hard and full of Scales, their Backs a dusky yellow; the Belly somewhat white, on either side they have little pricks, or spots, like to printed Stars; they have long strakes, or lines, to the end of the Tail, with certain rusty spots; their former feet bend backward, and the hinder feet bend forward, like Elbows and Knees of Men. The Fingers of their Feet are very small, being five a-piece both before and behind: See *chap.* 8. *numb.* 20. the true shape.

The **Liacome**, is a kind of **Lizard**; of a silver colour, living in dry Sun shiny places.

The **Seen**, is a **red Lizard.**

The fortuned Islands have **Lizards**, as large as **Roe-Bucks**, long Feet, strong Claws, a speckled Skin, the face of a **Serpent**, from the Nose to the tip of the Tail groweth Bristles like **Boars.**

The *Hispaniola* Isles, have **Lizards**, as large as **Hares**, having Prickles on their Backs, and a Comb on their Heads; their Skin speckled like **Serpents**, and have a Crap, or Craw in their Breast like **Birds.**

There are **Lizards** with two Tails.

In this quarter, is an **Adder**, or **Serpentine-fish**; with his Tail bowed and elevated over his head: that is turned to the top of the head, and is the Crest of *Boale.*

XI. He beareth Argent, a **Lizard**, Vert, between a **Wasp**, proper; and a **two-headed Serpent**, with four feet, Azure: crested, Gules. The **Lizard** I caused to be set here, onely to shew how Heralds in old time drew them with heads lifted up; which is contrary to their own nature: See *chap.* 8. *numb.* 20. See the **Wasp** described in **Bees**, *chap.* 9. *numb.* 62. 64. But the particular Coats are as followeth.

B 3 Lizards erected O born by *De La Gare.*

G a Lizard O born by *Saurandll.*

S a cross A between two Anchors, A and two Serpent Fishes their Tail elevated over their Heads to the sinister O by the name of *Van Stavenberg.*

S a Fesse between three Wasps O by the name of *Wasse.*

S a Serpent with two heads, four short feet and Tail extended A by *Pally.*

Aristotle maketh mention of a Serpent that had two heads; and *Arnaldus* of a Serpent in the *Pireney* Mountains, (that was slain by a Soldier) which had 3 Heads, in whose Belly was found the two Sons of the said Soldier, which the Serpent had devoured.

Such a Serpent we read of in *England*, in the 23 *E.* 3. *Anno* 1349. found in *Oxfordshire*, near *Chipping-Norton*, that had two Heads, and Faces like Women; one being shaped after the new attire of that time; and the other after the manner of the old attire, and it had great wings, after the manner of a **Bat.**

The **Amphybena**, or Serpent with two heads; having one at the tail, he goes always straight forwards never turns about his body. This Serpent alone, of all others most endureth cold; his Eyes shine, as light in Lanthorn. There is some Serpents have trebble Heads, some have many heads, as *Isidore* affirmeth.

The Serpent is a Creature of great quantity; for as *Magesthenes* writeth, there be such huge Serpents in *India*, that

that they swallow and devour all whole, as Harts and Bulls. In *Italy* in the time of *Claudius Cæsar*, was a Serpent slain in whose Belly was found a whole Child. *Alexander* the Great in his Epistle to *Aristotle*, his Master saith, that he saw in *India* cristed Serpents, some having two heads, some three.

XII. He beareth Azure, an **Askers** head erazed, Or. The **Asker** and the **Lizard**, are of the same shape and form, only differ in colour, the **Asker** being all yellow with a whitish belly, or of a dusky or brown yellow, with a yellowish Belly. This is born by *Alsarin*.

XIII. Some draw the **Asker** thus, and in ancient times it was done after this manner, with **Swan-like bending Necks**: But I should rather take these for **Serpents Heads**, then **Askers**, and so they will be best termed in Blazon. But of this more, *chap.* 8. *numb.* 20. and *chap.* 10. *numb.* 10.

B 3 such O born by *Alsagar* of *Alsagar*.

G an Askers head couped, O by the name of *Barr*.

XIV. He beareth Gules, a **Tortois**, Or. It is of some Authors termed a **Shell-Crab**. There are three sorts of **Tortoises**, the one of Land, the other of sweet water, and the third of the Sea, or Salt-waters. They are so large in the *Indies*, that with a Shell they cover a Cottage, and row in them on the Water, as in a Boat. They are covered with two Shells of a brownish and a yellowish colour intermixed, with slender Shells on their heads, their feet are five Fingers or divisions a-piece, with Nails upon them. Their Skin is of an earthy blackish colour; their Voice is an abrupt and broken hissing like a **Serpent**, but much more loud and diffused. It is born by the name of *Tortoas*.

The **Sea-Tortois**, their Eyes are clear and resplendant, casting their beams farr and near, and are pure white; their feet like **Seals**, or the **Sea-Calf**; serving instead of Oars to swim withall; they Breath and Sleep upon Land. The *Turks* have a kind of **Tortois-shell**, which is white and bright, like the Chrisolite, of which they make hafts for Knives.

The **Jambolus Sea-Monster**, has a body like the **Tortois**, having two Cross-lines over their Backs at the end of which was an Eye and an Ear on either-side; they had feet round about, so that they could go backwards and forwards.

The **Troglodite Tortois**, has Horns broad, like the Peggs of a Lute, or Harp; which they move in Swimming.

In the Base, is a **Sow**, or **Devils-Worm**, of some called **hundred feet**; it is a small slender Vermine with many feet, and a jointed body and two horns on the Head and Tail, and is of a reddish yellow colour. I have seen another kind of **Worm** of the shape of this, but much slenderer of a jointed body, and a finger long; the body black, or of a dark earthy colour, with two long and hair-like Horns, with Buttons at the ends like to Snails Horns; it hath feet so thick set together the whole length of the body that they cannot be numbred, resembling so many short white hairs: In its going it is swift, having no motion in the Body (as in divers, and generally all VVorms) but goeth straight, the feet only being seen to move. VVhen it is taken it turneth it self into a round of many doubles.

V a Tortois passant A born by the name of *Gandy*.

B the like erected O by the name of *Cooper*.

G the like erected O by *Van Testudorf*.

S three Sow-VVorms in Pale O by the name of *Sworme*.

A the like in Pale S born by *Brandalo* an *Italian*.

§

XV. He beareth Argent, a **Toad-erected**, Sable; under this shape of the Toad may be comprehended the **Frogg** and the **Paddock**, all being a like, only differ in colours; but the **Toad** is the most venomous. This is the Coat of *Toadell*.

There are **Toads** which have long Serpentine Tails; whose Bodies are much longer than the ordinary Toad.

A three such S born by *Botereux* of *Cornwall*.

A 3 such V born by *Paddock*.

B on a bend sinister waved O three Paddocks V by *Froschen*.

XVI. He beareth Argent, a **Frog**, proper. There is different colours of them, in *Germany* and *Flanders* they are green; some again are ash-colour, yellow, and black, spotted. Their feet are longer behind than before, which maketh them apt to leap; before they are short, having divided Claws which are joined together with a thin broad skin, which makes them apt to Swim. Such is born by *Van Hosserberg*.

The **Green Frog**, is green all over, except the feet, which are of a reddish dusty colour, and is venemous.

O in a Laurel Chaplet, set with Roses, proper a Toad or Frog V is born by the name of *Van Loss*.

The **Paddock**, or **Crooked back Frog**; they have two little horns, or bunches in the middle of their back; they are between green and yellow colour, with red spots on the sides; their Belly is white, and that part of the back directly over the Breast hath a few black spots; they live in Gardens and Grass.

S one erected O is born by *Froschel van Martzell* of *Bavaria*.

The **Toad** is of a durty colour on the back, the belly between white and yellow; Eyes of a gold flaming colour; the Voice shrill, so that it is heard a great way off, like a small Bell or Trumpet.

The **Horned Toad**, so called because his Voice is like a **Cornet**; his colour is like Saffron on the Belly, and a durty filthy colour on the back.

The **common Toad**, is fuller and rounder in the belly, swelled (as it were) more than a **Frog**, of a blackish colour, full of dark spots, with many deformed spots on the sides, whitish under the Throat, the Head broad and thick; the back plain without bunches, and black or durty; the whole Aspect being ugly and unpleasant.

In Base is the figure of the **Green Caterpillar**, or **Cabich-Worm**; described before, *numb.* 2. *s.* 2.

XV. He beareth Gules, a **Stellion**, proper; or a **Stellion Serpent**, to distinguish it from the **Stellion-Horse**. It is of a rusty colour, or whitish, with Stars down his back: There is several sorts of them according to the nature and soil of the Country, and place of breeding. This is born by *Bame*.

The

The **Thracian** and **Grecian Stellions,** are white, full of Lentile spots or specks, making a shrill shricking noise, and is good to be eaten.

The **Italian Stellions** do no great hurt with their teeth, they are covered with a skin like a Shell, or thick bark, and upon their Backs are many little shining spots like eyes; streaming like Stars, or drops of bright clear water.

The like erected, born by *Don Stellono.*

XVIII. He beareth Argent, a **Seale** (or **Sea-Calf**) **regardant,** Sable. This is called a **Sea-Dog,** also by some, but very falsly, for that is an other kind of Fish. The *Germans* call it a **Seal-hound,** and a **Salspeck,** or **Salsleck.** This is born by the name of *Seale.*

O the like with a chief S born by *Grassenshcale.*

A 3 such S born by *Sealhurst.*

The **Seale-Fish,** or **Sea-Calf,** raiseth not up its head as generally we draw it in Herauldry: but thrusts it forwards, like a Swine. It is of a blackish colour, spotted with white, the belly, and throat white, the fore-feet have five Claws apeece, each shorter then the other, the hinder feet, are five Claws all of a length, with a skin, or membrance between each, after the manner of a **Goose-Foot,** as is shewed in the basis of this quarter.

XIX. He beareth Or, a **Seales-Foot, erected,** and **crazed,** proper. Born by the name of *Beringburgh.*

A a Cheveron between 3 such S are the Arms of the Town of *Yarmouth* in *Norfolk.*

A a Cheveron between 3 **Seales-head extended,** bendwise. S born by *Ley* of *Westbury* in *Wiltshire.*

XX. He beareth Vert, a **Beaver erected,** Argent. This Beast is also termed, a **Fiber, a Castor,** an **Amphibion,** from the *Latin,* and *Greek.* Their colour is somewhat yellow and white, aspersed with Ash colour, their tail is taken to be Fish, and the hinder feet are whole like a **Duck,** by which they swim: their head short, ears small and round, their fore-teeth very long, set like a **Rabbet:** hard briscilly hairs about the mouth, which are so hard that they seem rather to be horn then hair. The fore-feet like a **Dog,** and hinder like a **Goose.** The tail covered over like the Scale of a Fish, the Male and Female have bunches on either side their privities which are no stones, for they lie inwardly, as they do both in the **Hare,** and the **Muscat.** This is born by the name of *Newsall.*

G a Beaver erected, A born by *Hubsman Van Biberbach.*

O the like to the sinister, S born by *Van Biba.*

O 2 passant to the sinister, S born by *Skenken Zur Dipen,* in the Dukedom of *Brabant.*

O a Beaver currant in bend S born by *Van Beverford.*

A the same erected S swallowing, or devouring of a Fish proper. This is in a Glass Window in *Newhall,* in the Inn of Chancery near *Temple-Bar.*

XXI. He beareth Argent, a **Beavers tail Erected,** proper between a **Honey-Bee,** and an **Hornet,** Or.

A 3 such tails, G born by the name of *Beever.*

2 Beavers tails erected B is the Crest of *Van Bileram.*

*

XXII. *He* beareth Argent, a **Beaver,** Gules. Mr. *Boswell pa.* 53. draws the Beaver thus, and Mr. *Gwilliams, fol.* 258. as the former, yet both are mistaken in the forme, and likewise in the feet, both making the fore-feet like a **Goose Feet,** when they should be the hinder: whose errour I followed, till Mr. *Tossel, fol.* 44. did better inform me, the true figure I have since set down, *chap.* 8. *numb.* 72.

In this square in chief, is the figure of an other sort, of **Cased-Fly,** called a **Cantharide Beetle,** or **Green Beetle,** or **Chafer.**

XXIII. He beareth Azure, an **Otter passant** Or, with a fish in his mouth Argent. They are of some called, the **Dog of the Water;** and some, **Cats of the Water,** they are of a Chestnut colour, they have a rough shagged skin, soft hair, sharp teeth, and a hairy bush tail more like the **Fox,** then a **Dog:** so that if his tail were cut off, he would differ nothing in outward proportion of Body from the **Beaver.** This is Born by the name of *Cotterell.*

A fesse bettwen 3 Otters S born by *Lutterell.*

XXIV. He beareth Azure, a **Crocodile,** Or; It is a creature thar lives partly in the Sea, partly on Land: he is cruel in devouring, when he hath killed his prey, before he eateth it, he weeps over it: from whence arose the Proverb, of *shedding Crocodiles Tears.* They are of a Saffron colour, between red and yellow, but more yellowish; the belly whiter, the body covered all over with a certain bark, or rind, so thick and strong, that it will not yeeld to any blow. He hath a long **Serpentine tail,** and feet like **Bears,** save they are all covered with scales. The mouth openeth to the place of the ears, and hath a **Swins Snout,** and contrary to all other Creatures, moveth the upper, and not the nether jaw. This is born by the name of *Cabock* a *Spanish* Family.

B 3 such heads couped O born by *Tearshall.*

XXV. He beareth Gules (an *Egyptian,* or) an *Arabian* **Land Crocodile,** Argent, the Scaly parts Azure. The Body of this Crocodile is all smooth; the head Articles and Claws Scaly: the tail is scaly, but standing up in sharp points like the edges of wedges, in bunches from his rump to the end; *R. Walton,* in his Book of Beasts, calls this a **Landiverba.** This is born by the name of *Rabins,* alias *Rabinsbach.*

XXVI. He beareth Azure, a **scaled Sea Lion,** Argent, born by *Merkoxen.* I term this a **scaled Sea Lion,** to distinguish it from the **Sea-Lion,** which is half Lion, half Fish, as you may see in the Chapter of Fish, 16. *numb.* 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12. This is the form of that **Sea Lion Monster,** that was taken, *Anno* 1295, and another 1284, and another 1274, as *Gesner* informs us. The *Germans* call it a **meer-wunder lowen glyych.**

A the like G born by *Wounder.*

The **Thanarth,** a kind of Wild Beast in the *India,* which in their Language they call a **Thanarth** (and we can give it no other term) is a Beast much after this form of Body, without any tail, faced like a **Man** (sans Beard) head, body and legs all scaly, the forefeet like **Hands,** and the hinder, the Paws of a **Lion.** See the Figure it self, *lib.* 4. *cap.* 7. *numb.* 11.

A

A **Sea Lion** about the magnitude of a **Hunting Dog**, with **Goose-feet**, was seen to come out of the Lake of *Argadia*, in *Scotland*, in the year 1510. He was so strong and stout, that he overthrew strong Oaks with a blow or stroak of his tail; he presently set upon his Hunters with a stiff course, and three with three blows he cast down, the rest escaping into Trees; and long he stayed and lingered about; at length afar off he went again into the Lake.

XXVII. He beareth Gules, a **Sea Frier**, Argent; else it is called a **Sea Frier Fish**, or a Fish in form of a Frier; the *Germans* term it a **Wassermane** and a **Wassermunch**; and I suppose *Gwillim, fol.* 264. means this Fish, which he calls a **Monk-Fish**. Such a Monstrous and wonderful Fish as this was taken in *Norway*, as the foresaid Author testifieth.

B such a Fish A is born by *Mermonke* of *Spain*.

3. WE shall come now to Bigenerous Creatures, such as are Monsters by Natures Generation, or rather the Fictions of Poets and Painters, which are usually found born in Coats of Arms.

XXVIII. He beareth Gules, a **Phinx sans Wings** (or the **Lion Phinx**,) Argent; **crined**, Or. This is a Monster having the face and hair of a **Woman**, and the body of a **Lion**. This might more fitly been termed by our Ancestors, a **Leo Virgo**, the Maiden or **Woman Lion**. This is born by the name *Catena*.

A the like B crined O born by the name of *Crackneck*.

XXIX. He beareth Sable, a **Sphinx sciant**, Argent, with **Wings surgiant**, and **crined** Or. The Poets set forth the **Sphinx** thus, the forepart of a **Maid**, the fore feet and wings of an **Eagle**, the hinder part of a **Lion**, and the scaly tail of a **Serpent**. But *Topsell* tells us truly what the Sphinx is, which I have further declared before in *numb.* 1. but an **Ape is an Ape**, for the Fiction must continue in Arms still. This is born by the name of *Barcellonne*.

Oedipus, Son to the King of *Thebes* hath the greatest Right to bear it for his Coat, because he vanquished her by expounding her Riddle.

XXX. He beareth Gules, a **Sagitar** (or **Shooter**) **currant**, shooting of an Arrow, Or. Born by King *Stephen*. Some only term it a **Sagitari**, or **Sagitter**, **Sagitarius**, understanding thereby a Monster to be half a **Man**, set on the Shoulders of an **Horse**. *Virgil* calleth him **Cacus**, and feigneth him to be half a **Man** and half a **Horse**. *Ovid* calls him **Chiron**, who was the Son of *Saturn* and *Phillyra*, begotten in the shape of a **Horse**, for fear of his Wife *Ops* Discovery, who brought forth a Creature, whose upper parts was a **Man**, and the lower part a **Horse**. Some not regarding the Bulls cloven hoof, term this a **Mino Centaure**, but that it is not, see *numb.* 32.

XXXI. He beareth Sable, an **Onocentaure** (sans Armes) or She **Centaure**, **dismembred** of her Arms. This is a Monster being the Head and Breasts of a **Woman**, set upon the Shoulders of a **Bull**. If it had Hands and Arms, it might be termed a She or Female **Minotaure**. This is born by the name of *Sentuary*. These kind of Monstrous Creatures are ever born whole in Arms, never in parts less than half, as in other creatures.

G the like passant to the Sinister A **crined**, and made into a wreath hanging backwards O. The Crest is a demy Onocentaure A with her hair wreathed together and pendant backwards; and born by *Crauter*, of *Brunswick*.

G 3 demy female Onocentaures couped and erected A crined O born by the name of St. *Taure*.

XXXII. He beareth Azure, a **Centaure** (or a **Minocentaure, passant**,) proper; **crined**, and **holding** of a **Scepter** in his right hand, and with his left extended, or pointing to the Sinister chief Or. This is half a **Man**, and the body of a **Bull**.

☞ They are born in Arms, holding several things, as **Clubs**, **Swords**, **Shields**, *&c.* So that you must always be careful to mention what he holdeth, and after what manner. Some call this a **Hippocentaure**. St. *Jerome* saith, that St. *Anthony* saw an *Hippocentaure*, and talked with him, and that there were such Creatures indeed.

The **Lapithe**, are said to be very like the **Centaurs**, and were once very loving to them, but they fell after to deadly Wars, by reason the **Centaurs** in a Banquet being Drunk, offered to Ravish the Females of the **Lapithe**, *Anno Mundi* 2724.

The **Feray**, or **Fere**, that is, **Wild Persons**, as *Homer* calls them; he compares to the **Centaurs**; but the true **Minotaure** seen in *Aristotles* time, had the face of a **Bull**, and the other Members like a **Man**, *Hist. Beasts, fol.* 87.

A a Centaure passant, proper; in one hand a Sword point erected, and the other a Shield in an Escochion form G is born by *Capasio*, in *Italy*.

A a Minotaure currant, in the right hand a Scepter, the left lifted up A on a Bend Sinister S these Letters S P Q R Gold.

This Picture of the *Minotaurs*, the *Romans* of old times did bear in their Ensigns of War, as may appear by the Letters transversed on the Bend, which signifieth *Senatus Populus Que Romanus*, declaring thereby, that the Minotaure was the Noble Token or Ensign of the Senate and People of *Rome*, as is affirmed by *Cicero*, and many Learned Writers.

The **Centaure** is another Monster, of half a **Man** and an **Horse**, which Fiction first arose from the people of *Thessaly*, who first devised to break Horses for War, and ride them, which being seen by other People, were supposed to be but one Creature, which had the upper part like a Man, and the nether part of his body like an Horse. But these are in Heraulcdry more properly called *Sagittary*, as is said before, *numb.* 30.

The *French Armorist* draw this kind of Monstrous creature only with two feete, and not with four, as we do; and such a Bearing I find to be in the Shield of *Sacrabin* one of the Kts. of the Round Table, *viz.* S a Sagitare, O Bow and Arrow B, String G.

XXXIII. He beareth Gules, a **Chymere**, (or **Chymeram**,) Argent. This is a Monster with three heads, one of a **Lion**, the second of a **Goat**, the last of a **Dragon**, the fore-feet one of a **Lion**, the other a Goat, *&c.*

the hinder feet and tail of a **Dragon.** Mr. *Boswell, fol.* 86. and so do the Poets describe the **Chimeram**, or **Chymere**, to have the head of a **Lion**, the middle part of a **Goat**, and the hinder part of a **Dragon**, breathing and casting out of his mouth Sparks of Fire. This is the Coat of *Chymare.* This was the Atchievement of that Noble Warriour *Bellerophon*, who slew such a Monster.

XXXIV. He beareth Argent, **Cerberus**, Sable. This is a Monstrous Dog, with three heads like **Mastiffs.** This is by the Poets feigned to be the Keeper of Hell Gates, and is in Armory called by the name of **Cerberus**, or the **Dog of Hell**, or the **three headed Dog of Hell**, which *Hercules* is said to bring away with him in a Chain, when he fetched *Theseus* out of *Pluto's* Palace. This is born by the name of *Goaler.* It is a fit Badg for a person of that Profession, or one that hath overcome all difficulties, and either conquered or escaped from *Cerberus* his Den.

XXXV. He beareth Argent, the **Scarlet Beast**, (or the Beast of the **Bottomless Pit, Winged**, Or. This Beast I never read of any name that was given it, it is the Figure of the Beast which the Scarlet Whore is said to Ride in Triumph upon, over the Nations and Kingdoms, as it is mentioned in the Revelations, *Rev.* 13. 3. which is said to have *seven Heads and ten Horns, whose Heads and Horns were contrary to all Beasts.* This is the Badge and Cognizance of Whoredom and the Mother of Lies.

XXXVI. He beareth Or, an **Hydra**, Gules; called also an **Hyder**; this was a **Dragon** with five heads, which *Hercules* fought with, and slew by the help of his good Friend *Theseus*: For in his Fight as he cut off one head, another (and very often three other heads) arose in its place, which his Friend percieving, took an hot Iron, and seared the Wounded head, which stopped their farther increase; so *Hercules* overcame him. See the meaning of this Fable in *the Armory of Honour*, p. 63. and *Rosse* his *Mystigoga Poetica.* This is born by the name of *Hydragner.*

XXXVII. He beareth Azure, one of **Hydras heads couped**, Or. *Conradus Gesner*, in his Book of Fish, giveth the description of the **Serpent Hydra**, to have seven heads. After this form, two feet like a **Lion**, and the hinder part of a **Serpent**: Such a Creature (saith Mr. *Boswell*, pag. 63.) was in *Marreis*, called **Lerna**, in the Province of *Arcadia*; but this **Hydra**, *ab aqua dicta est.*

The *Egyptian* **Serapis**, or **God**, was Pictured with three heads, a **Lions** between a **Dog** and a **Wolf**, joined to the winding body of a **Dragon.**

XXXVIII. He beareth Gules, an **Opinicus**, Or, **Wings**, Argent. This is a Monstrous Creature, the body and four feet of a **Lion**, the head, neck and wings of an **Eagle**, and the tail of a **Camel.** This Beast is also born without Wings, then termed an **Opinicus sans Wings.** This is the Crest belonging to the Worshipful Company of Barber Chyrurgians.

Per pale, a demy one, sans wings, counterchanged O and G is the Coat and Crest of *Gossell zum Thurn.*

XXXIX. He beareth Argent, a **Dragon**, Gules. This is the Crest of *Brereton*, of *Handford*, viz. upon a Chepue B turned up Er. a Dragon G.

A a Dragon G born by *Don Drago*, a *Spaniard.*

☞ All four footed Creatures that bear Wings, they are ever set on the back of such Creatures **overture**, or one beside or behind the other, which needs not to be mentioned (though *Gwillim, fol.* 262. terms them Wings displaid, which they are not, except they were each side the head) but if they be set any other way, then mention how they stand, as the examples in winged Fowl will afterwards manifest, *chap.* 11.

Several sorts of Dragons.

4. THE difference of a **Dragon** and a **Wiver**, is not so manifest in the shapes of their several parts as in their natures; the Dragon having 4 legs, the Wiver but two; the ears also of the Wiver being generally made plain, but the Dragons is cut as if it were erazed; in all things else they are agreeable; so that in their divided parts, as Wings, Tail, Feet, *&c.* they may be taken or Blazoned one for the other; see *chap.* 12. *numb.* 79, 80, 81.

There be some **Dragons** which have **Wings** and no **Feet**; others have both Feet and Wings; and some neither feet nor wings; but are known from **Serpents** by their Comb and Beard, or Wattles like a Cock.

The **Epidaurian Dragon**, bred no where but in that Countrey, being tame and of a yellow gold colour; wherefore they are dedicated to their god *Esculapius.*

The **Syrene Dragon**, is a Dragon in *Arabia*, which hath Wings, being as swift as Horses, running or flying at pleasure; which if they wound a Man, he dieth before he feel any pain.

The **Amphisiben** is a Venomous Animal, having a head both before and at the tail, and biteth and stingeth with both, see *chap.* 12. *numb.* 76.

The **Devil** is compared to a **Dragon**, (saith *St Augustine*) *Diabolus Draco dicitur propter insidias*, &c. The Devil is called a **Dragon** because of his Treachery, for he doth treacherously and faumingly set upon Men, with a purpose to ruin and destroy them; but we need not say he is like a **Dragon**, for Holy Scripture tells us plainly he is both a Dragon, and hath the shape of a **Dragon**, *Rev.* 14. 4. 7. 9. *And there appeared a Wonder in Heaven, a great Red Dragon, &c. which with his Tail drew the third part of the Stars of Heaven, and cast them to the Earth: And there was a Battel in Heaven, Michael and his Angels fought against the Dragon, &c. and the great Dragon that old Serpent called the Devil and Satan was cast out.*

The **Python**, or **Pithias Dragon**, which was a Dragon as the Poets feign, bred of the slime of the earth after the *Deucalion* Flood, which was slain by *Apollo*,

lo, god of Wisdom and Shooting (as *Ovid* calls him) see *numb.* 64.

The **Indian Dragons** have combs on their heads, their backs being somewhat brown, and all their bodies less scaly than others; their other part of a yellowish fiery colour, having also sharp backs like Saws, they also have Beards, their eyes shining like Fire; their Wings of a skinny substance, and very voluble, and spreading themselves wide.

The **Georgian**, or **Median Dragons**, have both Wings and Feet like a **Goose**; and are of diverse colours, some black, some red, some yellow, some ash-colour, their shape and outward appearance very beautiful; their teeth double set one within another, their eyes bright as a Star, their **Dewlaps**, or **Wattles** Red.

The **African Dragon**, as the Natives there hold it to be, and say it proceeds from the unnatural conjunction of an **Eagle** and a **She Wolf**, which brings forth a kind of **Dragon**, that in Beak and Wings resembles the Sire, in Feet and Tail the Dam, but in body and skin neither.

The **Dracontopide**, are great and potent **Serpents**, having faces like **Maids**, and the relidue of their bodies like to **Dragons**; it is thought that such a one was the **Serpent** that deceived *Eve*, for *Beda* saith it had a **Virgins Face**.

The **Fire Drake**, is a kind of Fiery Meteor, or Comet in the Air, in form of a **Dragon**, or two legged **Serpent**, flying about, spitting of Fire, these are things often appear over Ships, Houses or Towns, before some eminent Judgments do befal them; of which History gives multitudes of examples.

By and from all these sorts of **Dragons**, our Artists have found a means and way to invent one, which is that we use in Heraldry, being composed of all.

A the like Dragon rampant S born by *Dauney*.

XL. He beareth Sable, a **Dragons head erazed**, Argent. Born by the name of *Drakenell*.

A Dragons head erazed S gorged with a Crown O is the Cognizance of the Lord *North*.

A demy Dragon erazed G a Coronet about his middle O is the Crest of the Lord *Compton*, Earl of *Northampton*.

XLII. He beareth Gules, a **Dragons head erazed Fesse ways**, Or. This I have seen termed only a **Dragons head erazed**, but it ought to be said in Fesse, or Fesse-ways, to distinguish it from the former way of bearing, which is more common than this; or else to be termed erazed in the neck, or at the ears or throat, to shew that no part of the Breast is at the erasing. This is the Coat of *Barsanberge*, a person of the *Spanish* blood. And O 3 such G is born by *Elmore*.

Sorts of Earth-Worms.

In Base is a **Scytall**, which is a kind of **Blind Worm**, very full of marks or spots upon the back; so variable and delectable, that it possesseth the beholders with admiration; it is thicker and flatter at one end more than the other, as long as any Earth or Garden Worm; the brightness of whose skin or scaly hide doth not rightly appear till it hath cast its slough, which it ever doth in the Winter time.

The **double headed Worm**, there is no great difference between this and the **Scytall**; but that this goes or creepeth both ways, and that but one way; the colour is generally both one. It is called in Latine **Amphisbæna**, double headed, because it goes both ways, as if it had two heads and two tails; that as is now the head, is presently the tail, for it is never seen to turn the head, and it is like an **Earth-Worm**, hard to distinguish which is either head or tail, being the whole proportion of his body is of an equal magnitude, of the colour of earth, not black, but blackish, the skin rough and hard, set over with diverse coloured spots in rows, gliding on the ground with an higher bulk than other Serpents.

The **Earth-Worm**, or **Weds**, of which there are two sorts, the greater and the lesser; the greater are long and round, of a whitish colour, and sometimes, though seldom, of a bloody hue; they have a kind of Bloody Chain or Collar about their neck, without eyes, as all other Worms; of some they are called also **Dew-Worms**.

The **Ascarides**, or lesser Earth-Worm, are found in great numbers in Dung-hills, Mixens, and under heaps of Stones; of this sort some are red, which we English Men call **Duggs**; these are much used for Baiting of Angling hooks, to take Fish with.

Some are yellow, called **Yellow-Tails**, or **Golden Tails**.

Some are white, called **White-Tails**.

Some are blewish,

Some are black.

XLIII. He beareth Argent, a **Dragons head couped**, Gules, holding of a **Winged Serpent**, Vert. This is the ancient Crest belonging to *Gamull*, of *Knighton*, in *Shropshire*.

☞ You need not express his holding of it in his mouth, because the head hath no other way of holding, but if it were a **demy Dragon**, or any other thing, whose feet are seen, if then the holding be in the mouth or in the feet, then it ought to be mentioned whether in the mouth or foot. Note also, That **Serpents**, **Adders**, **Eels**, and such sort of long tailed Creatures, often in their holding thus, are apt to be **enwrapped** about the thing holding them; and then they are Blazoned thus, such a thing **holding a Serpent, enwrapped** about the Neck or Leg.

XLIV. He beareth Azure, a **Dragon Tyger**, Argent, **Collared and Chained**, Or. By the name of *Gym*. This hath of some been unadvisedly termed a **Lion Dragon**, as having the head and tail of a **Dragon**, and body of a **Lion**: But such must consider, that the most fittest and general received term, is to give it that name first which the head is of.

☞ For there is much difference between a **Dragon-Lion**, and a **Lion-Dragon**; between a **Dragon-Tyger**, and a **Tyger-Dragon**; the first being the head of a **Dragon**, and the body of a **Lion** or **Tyger**; and the latter the head of a **Lion** or **Tyger**, and the body of a **Dragon**, as I shall shew by ma-

*

many examples of mixed Creatures of this nature; see *numb.* 49, 50, 60, 61.

Some again Blazon this a **Dragon sans Wings**, which is also most improper, seeing it hath neither the body or feet of a **Dragon.**

☞ And here note also, that the tails of these Dragonish Creatures, of what kind soever they be, are turned round, and are **Serpent like.**

A the same sans Collar and Chain G is born by *Dragerdorfe.*

XLV. He beareth Argent, a **Dragon Tiger segrant**, or **rampant** and **winged**, Azure. I say winged, because such Creatures as these are more commonly born without Wings than with Wings; and when Winged, they are made like the Wings of a **Dragon.** This is born by the name of *Almarade.*

O 3 such rampant G is born by *Livershau.*

XLVI. He beareth Gules, two **demy Dragon-Tygers rampant, endorsed**, their **Necks Fretted**, Or. This is the Crest of *Dracolary*, of *Spain.* The word endorsed may be spared, for their Necks cannot be fretted except they were endorsed.

G 2 Dragon-Tygers rampant A their necks and tails fretted A born by *Tygurgon*, of *France.*

XLVII. He beareth Or, a **Chymera Monster**, Gules. I term this a Chymera Monster, being it is Monstrous from the **Chymera**, mentioned, *numb.* 33. that having, as the Poets feign, three heads, one of a **Lion**, another a **Goat**, and the last a **Dragon**, with its body framed thereunto, according to their kinds, as you may there see; but this being but one headed creature, and yet compounded of those foresaid three kinds, can have no better a term given from such a Sire, but be termed its Bastard or its Monster; for it is a creature that hath the head and body of a **Goat**, (except a Beard) the Breasts of a **Womon**, the four feet like an **Eagle**, the tail of a **Lion**, and the Wings of a **Dragon.** It is of some termed **Dlochymera**, and **Semichymera**, smelling, participating, resembling in part the **Chymera.** This is born for the Crest or Cognizance of *Chimalara.*

XLVIII. He beareth Argent, a **Griffon passant**, Sable. This is a kind of Monster that is half an **Eagle** half a **Lion.** If it be **rampant**, it is in that posture ever termed a **Griffon segrant**, (or after some **Segreant** or **Sergant**) others term it **Surgiant**, as if it were rising to fly. And notwithstanding all this, yet there is able Heraulds, who term it **Rampant**, which they say is not improper, seeing it partakes in part with the **Lion**, and is of a Lion like courage, in its assaults. And according to the two examples following, may be called an **Eagle-Lion.** This is born by the name of *Bold* of *Bold*, in *Lancashire.* The like is born by *Halton.*

O the like Rampant (saith *Gwilliams*, but *Legh* saith Sergeant) S born by the name of *Morgan. fol.* 262. *pag.* 51.

☞ The term **Sergeant** saith the later, being a term peculiar to the **Griffin**, as being of a double kind, if that be the cause (saith the former) that then it cannot be peculiar to the **Griffin**, but rather common to all other Animals of a double nature, as the **Wivern-Cockatrice**, **Lion-Dragon**, **Dragon-Tyger**, &c.

G a Griffin rampant, A born by *Odorsky.*

S a Griffin Sans wings, rampant coward, O born by *Van Firdenheim.*

O an Eagles heads with Hounds ears, A is the quartered Coat and Crest of *Arborg.*

XLIX. He beareth Argent, a **Lion Dragon**, Azure. This is a kind of a Creature, that hath the fore parts of a **Lion**, and the hinder parts of a **Dragon**, (that is, in short) half a **Lion**, and half a **Dragon.** If it have wings, then the term (**winged**) is to be used.

☞ This is the fittest, and most properest way of drawing these Creatures, half one, and half the other; yet I find it in antiquity variously drawn, some with all the feet like a **Dragon**, others all like a **Lion**: but all ever have, and ought to have, the tail of a **Dragon**, or **Serpent**, turning round; if the tail be in any other posture then to be mentioned according to its fouldings, or turnings. This is born by the name of *Du Maca.*

A a Lion-Dragon Sergreant, or Segrant, G born by *Don Spido.*

B 3 such passant, O born by *De le Millecko.*

L. He beareth Gules, a **Dragon-Wolve**, Or. by the name of *Aldobrando* of *Italy*, sometimes they may be of two colours, the Dragon part one, and the Wolve and Tail another; then term it, party coloured, Or and Argent: or else per pale Or and Argent: or else a **Dragon-Wolve**, the first part Or, the later Argent. All these ways have I found them termed, in blazon.

B the like Segrant, A born by *Dragolf.*

☞ Here you see in these two examples, the difference of the draught, between **Lion-Dragon**, and **Dragon-Lion**: as I did tell you before, *numb.* 44. The like is to be observed in the commixtures of other Creatures, as **Horse-Dragon**, **Unicorn-Dragon**, the **Swine**, or **Boar-Dragon**, the **Ape-Dragon**, the **Hart-Dragon**, with variety of such like bearings: in which be careful to mention the head part first; and in the draught, to make one half, of one kind, and the other half, of the other. Yet some of these of a double kind have peculiar names to themselves, as the examples following will make manifest: those except out of this rule, see *chap.* 9. *numb.* 36, 37.

Beasts of a Double Kinde.

LI. He beareth Argent, an **Ape-Bear**, proper. This I call so because of the foresaid rule; yet both *Gesner* and *Topsell*, in their Histories of Beasts, term it a **Bear-Ape**, which hath the Face and Feet of an **Ape** and Body of a **Bear**: its proper colour is a deep brown. This is born by *Puttener.*

The **Haut-Bear**, is a kind of **Bear-Ape**, it is a Beast in *America*, as large as a **Monkey**, his belly hangs very low, his head and face like a **Childs**, his skin is of an Ash colour, hairy like a **Bear**, he hath three claws only

only on each foot, and they are the length of four fingers: his tail very short with no hair on. This is called **Arctopithecus** by Mr. *Topsell*, and Beasts of these shapes, and of a double nature, are:

The **Sinivulpus**, or **Apish-Fox**: of some termed the **Fox-Ape**, and that best for our rule in Herauldry, which is a Beast in the Countrey of *Payran*, the fore part is like a **Fox**, and the hinder an **Ape**, except the ears, which are like a **Bate**, round and pil'd, without hair: the Female hath under neath her belly, a skin like a bag, or scrip, wherein she keeps her young from the violence of Weather and Hunters, out of which they seldom come, but to suck, till they be able to provide for themselves, see it *numb.* 71.

The **Sagoin**, as some affirm, is not much bigger then the young **Coney**, it is of a grissel colour, a neat beard somewhat Ash coloured, a tail like a **Rat**, but hairy: the feet of a **Squirrell**, the face of a **Martyne**, or **Satyre**; round ears short and open, they are thought to be begot of a small **Ape** and a **Weasell**. And now seeing I am in the discourse of these Bigenerated Creatures, give me leave to describe some kinds, which I have found mentioned in History; as,

The **Hippopodes**, a Kind of Creatures which hath the bodys of **Men**, and feet like a **Horses**.

The **Rhinocephalus** hath a neck, and all other parts of an **Horse**, but it is said to breath out air, of such a poysonous nature, that it killeth Men.

The **Lamya** are Creatures said to have the feet of **Horses**, but in other parts resembleth **Goats**, see the true **Lamya**, *numb.* 54.

The **African, Arabian Hyena**: is as large as a **Wolf**, but rougher haired, have bristles or hard hairs like a **Horse** mane down its back, the midle of his back crooked and falling in, of a yellowish colour bespeckled on the sides with blew spots, as if he had many eyes, bushing tail like the **Fox**, and it is said to be engendred of a **Wolf** and **Fox**.

The **Crocuta**, is a kind of a Beast engendred of an **Hyena**, and a **Lyoness**; he is between a **Dog** and a **Wolf**, but more fierce then either.

The **Loupchat**, or **Lupus Catus**, the **Wolf-Cat**, having the face of a **Cat**, with sharp claws, of a blackish spoted colour, and is generally called an **Indian Wolfe**.

The **Thoes**, a Beast engendred of an **Hyena** and a **Wolf**, and (of others) of a **Wolf** and a **Fox**: but I rather think of a **Tyger** and **Wolf**, being it is so ravening, and devouting a Creature: called of some the **Night-Wolf**, mentioned by the Prophet *Zephania*. Zeph. 3. Hab. 1. *Who compared the Judges of the Land, to* **Night-Wolves**, *which leave not the bones till the morning.* So devouring were these **Thoes**.

The **Leucrotura**, hath the neck, tail and breast of a **Lyon**, the face of a **Man**, see the figure 53.

The **Burdon**, is a Creature proceeds from an **Horse** and an **Ass**, as the **Mule** is from an **Ass** and **Mare**. The *Italians* call this Burdon, a **Bastard-Mule**, resembling more the Horse, then an Ass.

The **Cinirus**, is a Beast begotten betwixt a **Buck-Goat**, and an **Ewe**; as the **Mulmon** is between a **Ram** and a **Goat**.

The **Hybrides** are Beasts engendred of a **Wild-Boar** and a **Tame Sow**.

The **Castoride**, is a **Dog** engendred by a **Fox** and a **Bever**, as the **Lyciscus** is of a **Wolf** and a **Mastiff**.

The **Tamandua**, or **Ant-Bear**, a name of a Beast I have not yet read of its discription; only find it named by Mr. *Pool*, in his Synopsis of the commentaries of the Criticks, *fol.* 4. *in Sexto Capite Genesis.*

The **Jackall**, or **Lyons Provider**, called in Latin **Lupus aureus**, the **Golden Wolf**, which name I have not read off but in the aforesaid author, yet of what shape or colour I can say nothing. It is reported of him, that he scents out the Prey, for the Lyon, and that when the Lyon has taken the Prey and killed it, he stands by, and lets the Iackall eat his fill, and when he has done, the Lyon begins.

LII. He beareth Argent, an **Arctocyon** proper. This is supposed to be a kind of **Hyena** engendred of a **Bear** and a **Dog**, for they bark only in the night, his feet and legs are like to a **Mans**, and of a Bear Colour, a deep black brown: the face is like a **Baboun**, with a beard like a **Cat**, thick necked, and a short body, with a tail like a **Rabbet**, which it continually holdeth up. It is also called a **Papio** or **Dabuh** from the Hebrew, which we in English may call an **Innocent Bear-Ape**, or **Cat**: as from its nature, being not any way hurtfull to Man, or Beast; delighting much to hear Musick. This is the Coat Armour of *Arctocus* an *Italian.*

LIII. He beareth Argent, a **Mantichora**, of some called a **Leucretura**; Gules. It is an *Indian* Beast, or rather Monster, having the face of a **Man**, the mouth open to the ears, with a treble row of teeth, beneath and above; long neck, whose greatness, roughness, body, and feet are like a **Lyon**: of a red colour, his tail like the tail of a **Scorpion** of the Earth, the end armed with a sting, casting forth sharp pointed quills, his voice like a small trumpet or pipe, and in course as swift as an **Hart**. This is the Crest of *Van Mancorne*, a *Dutch* or *German* name.

LIV. He beareth Gules, a **Lamya** Argent. This is a beast in the parts of *Lybia*, which hath a **Womans Face**, and very large and comely shaped spots on her breasts, which cannot be counterfeited by Art; hawing an excellent colour in their fore parts; they hisse like **Dragons**. They are as some write, scally all over; and the legs the same, to the feet; which foremost are like a **Lyon**, and the hinder a **Goat**, with a bushy tail like a **Spaniel Dog**, or an undoct **Horse**, his stones great and hanging down. Some term this a **Phayre Beast**, because *Lamyæ* is Latin for **Phayries**. This is the Crest of *Laramine* a *Spaniard.*

LV. He beareth Argent; a **Sue** Sable. This is a Monster like Beast, inhabiting in the *Newfound World*; and is of some termed a **Succarath**. It hath the head and face of a **Man**, **Dogs** ears, a rough beard under its chin, maned and bodied like a **Lyon**, but very gont, or slender at the hips, with a large hairy bushy tail, with which he covers his young one, when they sit upon his back. This is the Crest of *Susholl* an *Italian.*

LVI. He beareth Argent, a **Tatus**, of some termed an **Armadillo**, or **Guincan Beast** proper. It is a beast covered with a hard shell, divided and interlined, like the fins of Fish, buckled on its back, like a Coat Armour, within which the Beast draweth up his Body as a **Hedg-hog** doth within his Prickled skin, so that it is of some called a **Brasilian Hedg-hog**, it hath a Snout and Ears like a **Pig**, the Tail long like a **Lizard**, covered all over with a crust or shell, so that it could be drawn all up into the body (as it were) of the Beast, the Head and Legs scally, on the hinder Feet, fine long Claws; and upon the fore Feet, four Claws, of which two are very small, see an other sort of these Creatures, *Chap.* 18. *numb.* 29. This is born by *Gwinlien.*

The Tail being long, and I wanting rome, for some of these small creeping, and flying Creatures, was forced to put on either side it, as followeth,

A **Horse-Fly**, or **Scarabee**, or a **Horse-Dung-Fly**, such as generally feed upon Horse-dung, or Cow-horn, when it is almost new laid, it is of an Orenge or yellowish red in the body, and the wings yellow veined, S three Dung-flys, O born by *Dungall.*

The **Cantharid-Beetle**, or **Cantharid-Shorn-Bud**; It is of some of our Countrey Men, called a **Clock**, or **May-Fly**: It is covered with a Husk or Shell as the **Beetle** is, but of a longer body and slender tail, the colour from the head to the tail is of a shining Green, with a reflection here and there, as the light falls upon it, of a Brownish red, and Sea Green, or Blewishnes. It hath two long and slender horns, which it doth move any way, they are generally carryed bended, and are joynted, each joynt, seeming to be a knot; they are of a shining black colour, with a glose of blew and green; It hath six feet of the same colour to the horns, each consisting of two joynts, to the first joynt the thigh are thick, to the next the legs are more slender, and the feet part more smaller, yet divided into toes or hairs, by which it holdeth fast to any thing it goeth upon. It is of a most pleasant odifferous smell, casting its sweet scent from it a pretty distance, insomuch that while I was taking this small discription from it, I was near being ovecome therewith: and my hands retained the savour for a long time after the handling of it. So that I may well name it the **Sweet Scented Beetle**, or **Shorn-Bud**, they make a great noise with their wings (which are only two) in flying. See the figure *chap.* 19. *numb.* 24, 25.

A **Beetle**, It is a kind of a great black Fly, or dronish Creater that comes not in the light, but creeps under stones, and stocks, and foundations of houses, it hath a most abominable stink, insomuch as those that touch it, shall be infected with its smell. In the night toward evening it flyeth abroad with an hideous huming noise, the wings are covered with two black scales, which when they are about to fly, raise them up above their shoulders, so their wings have liberty to play and baite the Air. They are generally known to us; by the name of **blind Beetles**, and **Devils cows.**

The **Lesser Beetle** is not altogether so stinking, being of a longer body, having six feet, two on either side before and behind, and smooth: whereas the great Beetles are in manner round, with rough hairy feet, see *numb.* 57. O such 3 born by the name of *Beetle.*

A 3 such erected, born by *Blackbeet.*

LVII. He beareth Or, a **Dragon Serpent**, Gules holding a **Baston**, Sable. Some say with a **Batune** in his mouth, or a **Bastinodo** in his teeth. This is the Coat Armour of *Draughadagh*, an *Irish* name.

In this square in the dexter Base is set, the lesser Beetle, see it described, in *numb.* 56.

LVIII. He beareth Sable, a **Winged Serpent**, Or. This is also termed a **Wivern Sans feet.**

☞ All Creatures both real and fained that have long and **Serpent Tails**, if they be **bowed**, or turned round after this manner, needs no mention of the manner of **imbowing**: for it is its proper posture, but if otherwise, it is to be named how, and in what manner it is, either **bowed, wreathed, torqued**, or **nowed**, as you see in the examples of Adders and Serpents tails. *chap.* 9. *numb.* 71. to 88. *Sect.* 9.

Some draw the **Winged Serpent** without ears, placing in stid thereof a **Comb**, and a pair of **Cocks Wattles** under his choppes; but that is too near the shape of the **Cockatrice, Sans feet.** Others without a Comb, only with a redish Crist, or Shem upon the head, like to a fighting Cock, whose Comb is cut off. The natural colour of these Serpents are black, with somewhat green bellies, with shining eyes. This is born by the name of *Mascharez.*

B three such O born by the name of *Barasana* an *Italian.*

LIX. He beareth Azure, a **Boas** (or a **Boas Serpent**) with his tail embowed or enwraped round, Or. in the sinister chief, a **Palmer Worm**: and dexter base a **Wasp**, both proper.

Sorts of Travelling Worms.

The **Boas** is of some Heraulds termed a **Lizard Sans feet.** This is a great bodied **Serpent**, and go all upon their belly; the live generally in sucking **Cows**, and in so doing, they kill them. It is born O in a Field B by the name of *Booz.*

The **Palmer Worm**, of the English Northern People is called an **Dubut**; but them of the Southern parts call them **Palmer Worms**; because of their wandring, for they never stay in one place, but like superstitious Pilgrims do wander now here, now there; of these kind of rough hairy Worms, there are several sorts.

The **Bear-Worm**, is a rough rugged hairy Worm, of a Chestnut colour, which if you touch runs all into a round (as it were) a hairy ball. These cannot indue to be confined to any particular Herb to feed upon, but tast of all, going disorderly where they will, and live as they list.

The **Pityocampe**, or the **Pine Apple Caterpiller**, it is a rough hairy Worm, three fingers long, and three fingers thick. These Worms consist of eleven slits or cuts, or joynts between the head and tail; these have sixteen feet (according as all other hairy Palmer Worms have) that is, near the head, on both sides three, in the midle of their bodies, on both sides four; and at the end of the tail, on both sides one. Their former feet are crooked and small, their other feet are broad with many Jagges,

Jaggets, or noches, like a Saw: their head like a Pismires, the hair or bristles stand upright, and are white on the sides, shining or glittering on the back, the midle whereof is garnished with many spots as if they were eyes, whose biting is most venemous and poysonous, their hair stingeth like a Nettle.

The **Vine-Fretter,** is a little hairy Worm, with many feet, that feeds upon Vines when they begin to shoote.

The **Scolopendra,** is of a loothsome, and an abominable smell; it is like the horned Worms; yet wants horns, it goes bendingly with the head stretched up aloft, with its former two feet; it is the length and breadth of a Mans finger, with a few scattering and rugged hairs, brisly and hard, both on the back and sides; the back was black, belly and sides, reddish enclining to yellow; the whole body was divided into fourteen joints, or knots, and every joint had a furrow or wrinkle running all along the back. The head black, the mouth crooked bending like hooks, teeth notched like a saw, and went on sixteen feet.

The **Weevil,** hath a certain small Beast or Worm like it, which breeds in Trees; they are somewhat bluish or black, many of them have long and sharp pointed beaks, or bills, which do great harm to grafts, and yong Trees: See *chap.* 18. *numb.* 108. 148.

LX. He beareth Or, a **Lion-Wivern,** the Tail **double embowed,** Azure. Some term it a **Lion-Serpent** Tail **double turned:** Which is far more proper for it, then to call it, a **Lion-Dragon,** as I have found it oft in Antiquity Blazoned. These are often born **Rampant** and **Saliant,** the Tails ever being drawn either in this form, or after the next example, which is the common way. This is born by the name of *Lionceler.*

Per Fesse G and S 3 such O born by *Newton.*

LXI. He beareth Vert, a **Wolf-Wivern,** Argent: Some have termed it a **Wivern-Wolf,** a **Wolf Serpent** and a **Serpentine-Wolf;** though of old, a **Dragon-Wolf;** but that was in the days of ignorance, when our Fore-fathers understood but little difference in things: and between things and things. This is born by the name of *Wolsley.*

LXII. He beareth Sable, a **Horse-Wivern,** (or a **Horse-Serpent**) Or.

☞ Here the Artist must take special notice of these three **Wivern composed Creatures;** and the like to them, of the **Serpentine breed:** and those of the Maratine, as **Sea-Lyon, Sea-Wolf, Sea-Horse,** and the like Sea Creatures, for the difference is only in this, that all Sea Monsters have their feet like to **Swans feet,** and their tails like the end of a **Salmons fined** tail; see *chap.* 16. *numb.* 5, 6, 7. Whereas the tails of them of the Serpent kind, are armed with sharp stings and their feet according to their own kinds. This is born by the name of *Horswinne.*

LXIII. He beareth Azure, a **Wivern-Serpent,** Or. This differeth in nothing from the **Winged Serpent,** but in having feet, and a fuller body, it is termed also a **Wivern sans wings,** with the tail **extendant.** This is the Crest of *Farrington* of *Farrington,* and *Werden,* in *Lancashire.*

B 2 Wiverns-Serpents (or Wiverns, Sans wings) rampant Endorsed, their necks and tails fretted, O which in an old MS I find anciently born by the Duke of *Burbunn,* now called *Braband.*

LXIV. He beareth Argent, the **Serpent Pithon,** Azure. This Serpent was fained by *Ovid,* to proceed from the slime of Earth, after the *Ducalion* Flood, which *Apollo* the Son of *Jupiter* by *Latona,* slew with his Bow and Arrows: and afterwards sowed his teeth which grew to an Army of men, the tail of this Serpent is **embowed contrary** to the common way as I shewed, *numb.* 58. Therefore ought to be termed, with his **tail erected, embowed** and **debused.**

LXV He beareth Or, a **Basilisk** (or **Cockatrice**) **Serpent,** proper. This kind of Serpent, hath the head of a **Cock,** with a full round body, and the tail of a Serpent, having six short legs: it is of a brown red colour, with a lighter colour on the belly. This ought to be blazoned, a **Basilice-Serpent,** with its tail **erected, flected** and **reflected,** but seeing that anciently they have bin blazoned, with only the bare name, without any such addition, as I have added to these two last examples, though their tails were also thus anciently turned: I shall therefore leave it to the Judgment of the judicious, whether they be necessary or not. This is born by *Cockfting.*

In the base sinister, I have added the shape or form of a **Caterpillar-Worm;** as it turneth unto a Husky or Shathy hide, in the end of the Summer; in which it lyeth all Winter; and in the Spring, breaketh forth, into a **Butter-fly;** leaving the Husk empty and void.

LXVI. He beareth Azure, an **Hyrconian Leopard,** proper. This Monster-like Creature hath the head, snout, and eares of a **Dragon,** the body of a **Panther,** curiously set with round spots, in form of roses, of variable colours, on a yellow skin, whitish on the belly; the tail of a **Lyon,** and the feet like the **Pounces,** and tallants of an **Eagle.** This is taken to be both the Coat and Crest of the Family of *Royaume* of *Venice.*

LXVII. He beareth Argent, an **Hobdropus,** Gules. This is a Monster-like Creature having the head, body and feet of a **Talbot,** or **Hound,** breasts like a **Woman,** wings of an **Eagle,** and a long tail of a **Serpent.** This is the Crest of *Lodena* of *Spain.*

B the like O is born by *Byragull* of *Italy.*

LXVIII. He beareth Sable, a **Gorgon,** Argent; This is a strange *Lybian* Beast, it hath red fiery eyes, which continually look to the ground, from the Crown of his head, he hath a long **Mane,** which hang down all about his head, to almost his nose: their body is all Scally from head to foot, which are cloven like the foot of a **Deer,** it hath a scally long tail like a **Serpent:** great teeth like a **Boar.** *Plynie* makes mention of these **Gorgon's,** and saith they have scales set all over them like a **Dragon,** having no hair, except on

on the head, great teeth like **Swine**, having wings to fly, and hands to handle; in stature between a **Cow** and a **Calf**.

LXIX. He beareth Argent, an **Estiria**, Gules; **Horned** Or. This is one of the Poets compounded Creatures, having the head and neck of a **Bull**, and the body of a **Griffon**; that is, the forefeet and legs of an **Eagle**, and the hinder part of the body, feet and tail, of a **Lyon**. This is the Crest of *Estiringberge* of *Holland*.

LXX. He beareth Sable, an **Odonta** or **Indian Ox**, Argent, **Horned** and **Hooked**, Or. This is a Beast of a wonderful strength, insomuch that it will compare with the **Elephant** for Maisterie therein. It is a Beast that hath the head and mane of a **Horse**, with three horns like to the **Antalope**, the midle-most with the Noches, or Saw teeth standing upward, and the other two horns with the noches of the horns standing side-ways, as if they were guards for the midle horn: the body and legs are like a **Bull**, with a bushy hairy tail like a **Horse**, extending it self to the ground, and whole hooked.

Several sorts of Spiders.

5. IN this quarter is the true shape and form of a **Field Spider**, like whereunto is the **Horse-Spider** only, the legs are smooth, and a little longer: the body also is smooth, of a black Earthly colour, whereas this of the Field is a brown, and some of a light hair colour, and Ash colour, see *numb.* 72.

The **Long hairy legged Field Spider**, of some called the **Wolf-Spider**, or **Hunting-Spider**, because they are wild, living in the Fields and open Air, see *numb.* 72.

The **Phalangie**, or **Phalanx-Spider**, are of several sort, some great, others lesser, both dangerous, hurtful, and poysonous: they are of changeable colours, violent, libidinous, sharp toped, jumping and leaping, as they go. One hath a red head, body black; speckled, or garnished with many white spots all over.

The **Formicarion**, or **Pismire-like Spider**, hath the body black as Soot, the neck Ash colour, and his back glistering (as it were) with many Stars on it, called the **Star-Spider**.

The **Lybia-Spider**, because found, not elsewhere; the body round as a ball, black and glittering, with very short stumped feet.

The **Pedeoras-Spider**, is of a bright Azure, or blew colour, which hath six or eight, long high and lofty feet: *Plinie* saith, these **Spiders** have a black Mossiness, or soft down upon their bodies.

The **Sphekion**, or **Wasp-like-Spider**; because it is so like a **Wasp**, save it lacketh wings. It is of a passing deep red.

The **Tetragnathan-Spider**, hath half his head divided with a white line, with an other running cross wise: the other sort, is of an Ash colour, and very white in the hinder parts. they have broad, and whitish bodies, rough footed, with two swellings or bunches, standing out on the head, the one broad, the other stands right forth.

The **Kantharides Spider**, is a small **Spider** found amongst Pease, Beans, or other Pulse in harvest time, they are like the **Cantharides** or **Spanish Flys**, of a very red and fiery colour; such as these some Englishmen, call **Twings**.

The **Cranocalaptes Spider**, is a small Creature to see to, noddeth its head as it goeth reeling and staggering, being great and heavy, and somewhat long of body of a greenish colour, it hath a sting on the top of of its neck. *Aetius* saith they have wings like **Butterflys** that are found amongst Barly.

The **Tarantula Spider**, or the **Spider of Apulia**: it hath only six legs, and a streched out tail: of them there are two sorts one of a brown, and other of a yellow colour.

The **Agrostis Spider**.

The **Crab-Spider**, is of a whitish colour resembling scum, or frothy some, the head very little, placed under her belly, being crooked or bendind like a hook, (as is to be seen in the **Crab-Fish**) and his back garnished with many white spots.

Such a Spider S in a Field O born by the name of *Tevfell* of *Tyrold* in *Germany*.

The **long legged Spider** of the Graden, or Field, is of a small body and almost round, of a brownish colour and is called the **Shepherds-Spider**, because they are generally in the grounds where sheepe pasture.

The **black Spiders**, and **white Spiders**, are general seen in all Houses, Gardens, and Fields, in *England*.

The **Spinner**, or **Spining-Spider**, is the smallest of all the **Spiders**, not exceeding a grain of mustard in the body, and is of a deep Ash colour.

LXXI. He beareth Argent, a **Simi-Vulpus**, or **Fox-Ape**, termed by *Amb. Parey*, a **Portentosus**, a Beast in the fore part like a **Fox**, or **Wolf**; except the ears which are round, and pild like a **Bat**: the hinder part like an **Ape**, a tail like a **Deer**, the feet have only three fingers, or opens, with sharp claws. It is a kind of **Ape-Bear**, see *numb.* 51. It hath a bag under its belly, with a pape hanging very low down.

The **Chiura**, is a Beast in *Hispania nova*; and the **Seruvoy**, a Beast in *America*: which have skins, or baggs under their bellys, wherein the Females keep, and lodge and carry their young, untill they be able to provide for themselves.

The **Cynocephall**, the Female hath a womb without her belly wherein lyeth her young ones.

The **Glaucus**, is a kind of Fish whereof the Male doth swallow up all the young ones, when they are in any danger of other Fish: and afterwards yeeldeth them forth again safe and sound.

In the cheif of this square is a **Glow-Worm** with his belly upwards, which is described before. *ch p. 9, numb.* 55. This being set here, to shew the tip of the tail, from whence the brightness doth proceed, that shines so gloriously in the night.

LXXII. He beareth Argent, a **Sea Rhinoceros**, Azure. This is by *Gesners*, and other Authors given us by that name, but none of them mention it colour therefore I shall say no more of it.

In the sinister cheif of this quarter, is the Field Spider; spoken off before. *numb.* 70. whose form and shape is thus, as in the figure.

LXXVIII. He beareth Argent, a **sea Bulls-head couped**, Sable. By the name of *Bullock*. This is by *Gesner* said to be the figure of the Sea Bulls-head, whose fore-head is scaly, having strong bristly hairs, standing in a manner upright upon the hinder part of the head; the horns smooth, not standing up like the Land-Bull, but standing out-wards over the Ears, with a kind of double bending, too and again; and a large **Cat-like** Beard each side his Nose.

The signification of Beasts used in Armory.

1. THe **Lion**, is the *Hieroglyphick* of Heroes, of Illustrious Princes, and great Persons: And denoteth Dominion, Command, Magnanimitie, Vigilancy, Strength and Terrour.

Lion Rampant, signifieth Magnanimitie. So *Ariel is the Lion of the LORD, Isa:* 29 1. He is of great courag, And not to be Daunted.

Lion Passant, sig: Resolution, not to be stayed or hindered in his Purposes and Resolutions.

Lion Dormant, sig: Repose and rest after Victory and Labour; yet Vigilency, for he ever sleeps with open eyes

Lion Couchant, sig: Sovereignity and Majestie, *Iuda shall ly down as a Yong Lion, who shall rouse him up. gen*

Lion Sejant, signifieth Advise and Counsel. (499

Lion Gardant, sig: Prudence, and wise Counsill

Lion Saliant, sig: Valiantness, and Audacitie.

Lion Regardant, sig: Care and Circumspection.

Lion double Headed, sig: Policy and Politick Actions.

Lion Fork Tailed, sig: Stenuousness and Magnanimity: For when the Lion is angry, he shews it by the agitation and moveing thereof.

Lion taile Nowed, is the Embleme of a Person, that though he be angry, yet doth suppresse and keep down that Iracible faculty.

Lion Chained, sig: Homage and Subjection to a Prince or his Leige Lord and Sovereigne.

Beaver, and **Ottar**, are both Emblemes of Sly dissembling companions, who will keep good quarters with contrary sides, in affection to neither, but onely for their own private profit and interest.

Unicorne, is the embleme of Strength, and sig: the bearer to be a lover of his Countrey: One that eshews vice, and loves purity of life; Is a generous warriour, who will rather die then be Captivated.

Bull, sig: Labour and Industry, and denoteth a privileged person out of hopes of an Increase.

Bull Rampant, sig: Wrath, Fury, and Madness.

Bull Passant, sig: Deliberation and Discretion with Industry. *Pas a pas*, that is Step by step: so Industry and Labour with Discretion will overcome the greatest difficulty. it will level Mountaines.

Camell, is the embleme of Sustinence and Abstinence, which is a Prelatical quality in this Creature; denoteing the Indefatigable perseverence of the bearer.

Elephant, the embleme of Vigilency, *nec jacet in somno:* But like a faithful watchman sleeps in a Centinels posture It denoteth Strength, Ingenuity, and Ambitious of peoples praise, it sig: also meekness and Devotion.

Tyger, is the embleme of Cruelty, and signifies quickness in Actions of greatest concernment.

Panther, and **Dunce**, the emblem Felony, variety, & change. But the bearer to be of that sweet and Amiable disposition, as that he draws all men to love him.

Leopard, doth denote Valiant and generous Warriours, which Enterprise hard things by Force and Courage; Clameing valeur by extraction, with activity & Promptitude. And shews the bearer to be of a violent spirit and what he wants in Strength hath in Policy.

Beare, the embleme of Wrath, and for courage is Incomparable being provoked, or robbed of her Whelps; For they are singular in their love towards their yong.It also denotes policy and strength in Fighting.

Wolfe, sig: Valiant Captaines that do in the end gaine their Attempts after long Seiges, and hard enterprises. So that the beareing of them denotes the person to be serviceable to his countrey in destroying such as are fierce, cruel and Treacherous.

Griffin, denotes Vigilency and life, signifying what he cannot do one way he will do another: what his wings will not, his clawes shall, He flyes with the Hawke, and runneth with the Hound.

Ermine, denotes Purity and Sanctity, it being of so pure a nature, that it will chuse rather to be taken and die, then to defile it's skin.

Sheep, is the embleme of Innocency and Meekness, of Peace and Vtility, And sig: the bearer to be a man profitable to his countrey and an increaser of riches. One that denyeth not himselfe for his countrey.

Dog, the embleme of Loyalty, and an affectionate and true friend in adversity. And it is observed that there is not any virtue in a man, but there is found Sparks of it in this creature. It sig: the bearer to love his pleasure abroad, and his profit at home.

Cat, is a Domesticall creature, and is the emblem of good Husbandry and Houswifery, and is cautious of being poluted, or defiled in the least.

Conie, or **Rabbet**, as *Solomon saith, they are but a weak nation, yet they build their houses in the rocks.* The first Bearers of them seemed to be excellent Pyoneers, skilful in pyoning, and lucky in undermineing and subverting of Cittyes, fortified Townes, and Castles.

Squirrell, sig: his bearer to be careful in keeping the love and affection of his followers and Retainers, and is sure they will stick to him in tyme of need. It is the emblem of good Society and Houskeeping, being never unstored.

Fox. is the emblem of a Cuning crafty man, and well becomes Lawyers and Attorneys and such sort of people, who under pretence of doing good, when they have got what they can, and well spunged their Clyents, *Laugh at them for fools in dealing with Knaves.*

Ape, is the emblem of a ridiculous behaviour, and denotes the

the bearer to take delight in ridiculous jestings, more then serious Actions. *Venus chamber, then Mars's* campe.

Horse, is the emblem of War, that doth foretell (by Instinct of nature) the battle afar off. according to the saying in *Iob* 39. 28. and doth denote an excellency, In swiftness of pace, quickness of spirit, courage of stomack and Magnanimity. And signifies the bearer to be a Vanter after victory, but dejected if conquered.

Asse, the emblem of Sloth, a creature that regardeth not blows, neither will he be spurred forwards to quickness of Action, but continueth it Dulness. And denotes the bearer to be of such a nature, that faire words shall work upon him more then Stripes.

Mule, as the Asse, is an emblem of much patience, and willing to crouch under its burthen. and denotes the bearer to be honorable on the one side: recounting of their virtues and atchievements much, but little of their genealogies, or how descended.

Hind, a Symbole of an Harmlesse person, and therefore Armelesse: whereas all other creatures are Armed.

Hart, and **Stag**, the emblem of long life, and heareing; It doth represent those that are apt to be abused by flattery; and born in Armes betokeneth sometymes one skilfull in musick, also a wise and politick man, one that is rather desirous to stand on his guard honestly, than to annoy others wrongfully.

Buck, the emblem of Society.

Roe, the emblem of Love, and Lady of honor: she is called *Tabitha* by the *Hebrews*, which we Interpreted *Dorcas*, her Furre is *Ermynois* being full of spots on a skin delightfull to behold.

Goate, the Symbole of generation, and being provoked will not refuse to assault his enimy: he may betoken one that is willing to fare hard, so he may be honored with high Impliments. And shews also, that the bearer used more policy then strength or valour in atchieveing victory; or got his honor by some such maines.

Antilope, the emblem of valour and Irefulness, folly and madness; it denotes a man to do an action without discression, Virtue is not virtue without good action.

Boare, is the emblem of Sensuallity and beastlyness, yet is an absolute Champion amongst Beasts, beareing weapons both offencive and defencive; and is one that useth himselfe to hardship, the better to withstand his adversary. He betokeneth in *Herauldry*, a man of a bold spirit, skilfull and politick in war; and one of that resolution that he will dy valiantly in the field, rather then secure himselfe by an Ignominious flight.

Ore, as is noted before in the Bull, is the emblem of Labour and industry, it denoteth one to stand up for the common good, and is usefull in plowing up the ground for the increase of corne and plenty in the countrey.

Crocodile, by the *Egyptian Hieroglyphicks* doth denote fruitfulness and plenty; yet it is a *Salvage* & devouring beast, by which is deciphered a mad foolish fellow true to none, nor trusted by any; yet a friend to the Swin onely, & to the Trochilus, but for its one belly. it may also sig: one that hath many enimies but few friends.

Dragon, is the emblem of vigilancy and fortitude, and is a fit bearing for vigilant and strenuous Heroes, that will take hold of an oppertunity & occasion.

Lizard, is an emblem of security, as being Armed with a coate of male; haveing a scaly and painted skin. and sig: one that rests himselfe secure, trusting to his owne strength of Armes.

Adder, is the emblem of Wisdome and Prudence, neither harkens to the Charmer.

Tortoise, lives both in water and on the land, and denotes such as are worthy and deserveing of honor, as from those virtues and operations that nature hath given to them

Sphinx, is the emblem of cuningness and crafty devises, and denotes a man to be of a cuning genius, full of Inventions, but tyrranicall & monstrous in his actions.

Hedghog, the simbol of a good provider, that in tyme of plenty prepares for cold and Scarcity; and sig: a man to be expert in gathering of Substance: and one that providently layeth hold upon proferred oppertunities.

Toad, the emblem of Choller and Splen; and denotes an hasty angry pettish man, that is easily stirred up to anger, where unto he is naturally prone, from his birth.

Ant, or **Pismire**, they are creatures not strong, yet prepare their meate in Summer; denoteing a person to be a good provident caterer for his familey.

Bees, & **Waspes**, shews the nobility of progenitors, as being the offspring of Laborious parents: for Wasps are bred from Horses, and Bees from Bulls. and denoteth an hasty man, one prone to reveng if injured.

Grashopper, they have no King yet go forth by Armys; by the *Athenians* it was a note of an home bred race of nobility and gentry.

Serpent, the emblem of Prudence and wisdome, and denoteth one full of subtilty and sharpness of wit.

Serpent stoping her eare, betokeneth wilfull deafness, or one that will receive no councell or advise.

Butterflie, the emblem of Vanitie, and denotes ficklenes and vnconstancy, never resting satiffied in one state or condition of life they are in.

Worme, and **Caterpiller**, are the emblem of Averice, and sig: a covetous greedy seeking after worldly trash & things below, never minding those above.

Spider, is of an honorable house, for she taketh hold with her hands and is in kings Palaces: by all which is signified Prudence, Fortitude, Providence, Labour, Vnity, and Nobility. for whilest the slothfull is clothed with rags, he that is Industrious in his calling shalbe honored in the gates, and stand before kings.

Heads of beasts, the bearing of heads (next the whole body) is most honorable, and it shews that the bearers of such coates Armour were not forced to stand to the face of their enimy, but did it out of a coragious spirit. It betokenhth also Iurisdiction and Justice.

Heads Erazed, is one of the best maner of bearing, and betokens some memorable action in the first Bearer thereof, as having severed violently, or pulled by force the head from the shoulders of some Turbulent person.

Heads Couped, is the Hieroglyphick of Conquest.

Bear, or **Dog**, **Musled**, signifies the Bridleing of rage and curbing of furious spirits.

Heads Musled, denotes a servile subjection and bondage to a master or Prince.

Horns, are Simbols of Honor, Fortitude, and Empire, not onely among the *Ethnicks* but the *Hebrews* them; selves. in somuch that *Radiancy*, the *Crown*, & *Horn*, are in Secrate Scripture, vnivocall expressions of Glory and Dignity, *Psal.* 89. 24. and so *Moses*, *Exod.* 34. 30. is said to have horns in regard of his faces refulgency.

Broken Horns, on the contrary betokeneth Ruine & destruction. as in *psa* 75 12

Horse Spancelled, or **Fettered**, denoteth Servitude, with homage and Obedience to a Lord or Prince.

Beasts Collared & Chained, (of any kinde) betokeneth the like Subjection to a great Prince.

To conclude, From these Brutish creatures mens minds are plainly taught how to become the Imitators of Virtue and good liveing.

Things of most note in these Chapters of Beasts, Serpents, and Flyes.

How Beasts are Born in Arms 7 s 2
Several parts of Beasts 7 s 1
Kinds of Beasts 7 s 3
Observations in Beasts 7 s 4
Several terms of mounting of Beasts, 7 68
Several terms for their postures, 7 68
Beasts of Venery and Chase, 7 s 5
Terms of Beasts in Companies, 7 s 6
Terms according to their Ages, 7 s 7
Terms for their Heads, 7 s 8
Terms for the Bellys of Beasts, 7 s 9
Terms for the feet and footing of Beasts, 7 s 10
Terms used for their Fat, 7 s 11
Terms for Tails of Beasts, 7 s 12
Terms for their Pricks and Stones, 7 s 12
Names given to several sorts of Dungs of Beasts, 7 s 13
Terms for engendring of Beasts, 7 s 14
Terms used about bringing forth young, 7 s 15
Voices of four-footed Creatures, 7 s 16
Terms for lying down and resting of Beasts, 7 s 17
Terms used for Hunting, 7 s 18
Times for Hunting of several sorts of Beasts, 7 s 19
Terms for taking off their Skin, 7 s 20
Beasts which feed on Grass, Flesh, or Fruit, 7 s 20
Terms for feeding & food for Beasts & Cattle, 7 s 22
Names of Males, & Females of Beasts, 7 s 23
Diseases in Dogs for Hunting, 7 s 24
Several Names to the parts of Buck and Stags Horns, 7 83 84 85
Terms used about Horses and Horsmanship, 7 s 30
Kinds of Horses 7, 113 s 31
Feeding for Horses, 7 s 31
Diseases insident to Horses, 7 s 31, s 32, &c.
Veins in Horses, 7 s 41
Bones in a Horse, 7 s 42
Names of all the Bones in a Horse, 7 s 43
Terms for all the parts of a Horse, 7 s 44
Colours of Horses, 7 s 45
To know the Age of an Horse, 7 s 46
Terms about the bending of Leggs and Arms, 8 s 1 s 2
Observations about Cowes, Oxen and Bulls 9 8 s 2
Part of a Bull how termed, 9 s 3
Diseases in Cows, Bulls, Oxen, 9 s 2
To know the Age of Cows or Oxen, 9 s 5
The benefit coming of Cowes, 9 s 6
Colours of Cowes and Oxen, 9 s 7
Terms used by Cow-heards and Drovers about Cows, 9 s 8
Things useful about Cows and Oxen, 9 s 9
Feeding for Cows and Oxen, 9 s 10
Things useful about Sheep, 9 29 s 11
Diseases in Sheep 9 29 s 12
Parts of a Sheep, how called 9 s 13
Observations of Shepherds, 9 s 14
Things necessary for keeping of Swine, 9 50 s 17
Swinheards Office, 9 50 s 15
Diseases in Swine, 9 s 18
Terms of the parts of Swine, 9 s 16
Of the Nature of Dogs, 9 s 19
Several sorts of Dogs, 9 56 57 58 60 61
Parts of a Grey-hound, 9 58
Colours of Grey-hounds, 9 58
Different terms used to Dogs, 9 61 s 22
Diseases in Dogs. 9 s 23
Terms of Art used by Huntsmen about hunting 9 s 24
Voices of Bees, Worms. Serpents, 9 s 26
Bees and Worms, what they feed upon, 9 s 25.
Several sorts of Bees and Flyes, 9 56 62 s 28
Terms used about Bees and Honey, 9 62 s 27
Sorts of Butterflyes, and what they breed from, 9 63 s 29
Sorts of Serpents, 9 75 s 30 31 & 10 8 9 10 11
Several ways of turning and winding of Serpents, 9 88 s 32
Several sorts of Worms, 10 2 s 2 59 42
Several sorts of Spiders, 10 70 s 5.
Several sorts of Dragons, 10 36 37 to 40

Terms

Terms of Blazoning contained in these three Chapters of Beasts, Bees, Worms and Serpents with the Chapters, and Number or Section, in which they are explained.

A.

Assaultant Assaulting 7 68
Aspectant 7 68
Aspect 7 94 68 *and* 18 74
Attired 7 71 72 78 80 81 & 8 39
Armed 9 1 *and* 7 1 5
Adorned 9 27

B.

Bolant, Bolting, 7 68 s 26
Bitung his tail, 9 82
Bremled, or spotted, 9 57 58 s 21
Incorporated 7 40 68
Bicapitated 7 68 39
Bay, or stand at Bay 7 75
Bowed, 8 59
Bending rebending 9 76
Bowed Imbowed, 9 s 9
Bowed Imbowed debrused, 9 s 9 33 77 *and* 18 105
Boring of the back 10 67

C.

Crawling, creeping, 9 77 78
Curled, or turned round, 9 75 s 31
Counter, or contrary reflection, 9 44
Counter, or contrary debrused, 9 33
Counter attired, 9 14
Converted, 8 66
Couchant, 7 6 68 121 *and* 8 73
Coward, 7 12 13
Cowardly, 7 13
Combitant, 7 17 68
Collered, 7 17 48 *and* 9 47
Collered and Chained, 7 17
Chained, 7 17
Counter-passant, 7 19
Camoined, 7 47 *and* 8 60
Close couped, 7 68 s 26
Couped, 7 49 68 78
Carriering, 7 68 s 26
Currant, 7 68 95
Course, or in course, 7 68
Counter-tripping, 7 90
Counter-saliant, 7 106
Counter imbowed debrused, 9 s 9
Circled, 9 80
Cabossed, 7 87 88 89 78 68 s 26
Crowned, 7 4 9
Carved recurved, 8 66
Crined, 10 28 29 31
Crested, 10 11 58.

D.

Dewlapped, or Wattled, 10 38 s 4
Dormant, 7 5 68 *and* 8 2
Demy, or Demyed, 7 22 27 68 & 8 65
Double queue, 7 29
Double tailed, 7 29
Dismembred, 7 36 68
Double Headed, 7 39 68 & 10 76
Debrused, 7 44 45 46 & 9 79 81
Double debruse, 9 33
Displaid, laid open, 7 8 *and* 9 3
Double Nowed, 9 s 9 *and* 10 60 *and* 18 106
Double Torqueted, 9 76
Declinant, 9 88 s 9
Dejectant, 7 68
Devouring, 9 76
Dispectant, 7 68
Dors and Dors, 7 68
Dexterated, 7 68
Diffamed, 7 11

E.

Endorsed, 7 16 47 68 *and* 10 76
Elevated, 7 37 *and* 9 50 78 s 9
Erazed, 7 49 54 62 64 67 68 78
Erected, 7 52 68 *and* 8 18 *and* 9 s 9
Extendant, 7 68 *and* 9 77 3 s 9 10 63
Exasperated, 8 56 *and* 10 67
Emwrapped, 9 s 9 71 78 *and* 10 43
Embowed, 9 81 82 s 9 88
Edged, 9 59
Enraged, 7 68 s 26

F.

Forked Tail, 7 30 32
Full strein, 7 68 74
Full Course, 7 68 74
Full Aspect, 7 68
Flexed, reflexed, 8 68 *and* 9 s 9
Flexed, 8 68 *and* 9 s 9
Forestretch, 10 21
Fledled, 8 59
Fretted, 9 83
Fretted in quaderangle, 18 94
Furiosant, 7 68 s 26
Full strein, or full course, 7 68 s 26

G.

Gardant, 7 9 49 68 78
Gaze, 7 68 75 78
Garnished, 7 48
Gardant Sejant in Aspect, 18 74
Glyding, 8 77

H.

Honored, or crowned, 7 4 9
Harboured, 7 69 70 *and* 8 73
Hinder stretch, 10 67
Horned, 9 25
Hoofed, 9 25
Holding, 10 43.

I.

Issuant, 7 23 24 53 & 8 58 68
Issuant and Issuant, 7 28
Jessant, 7 26
Jessant and debrused, 7 45 46
Ire, as in its Ire, 8 56
Imbowed, 8 70 *and* 9 77 79
Imbowed debrused, 9 81 88 s 9
Imbowed and fretted, 9 83
Imbowed double debrused Torqued, 18 103
Incensed, or made Angry, 7 2 12 68 s 26
Joyned, 8 71
Insect, cut into, 9 62.

L.

Langued, 7 1 5
Leaping, 7 68
Lodged, 7 69 70 *and* 8 73
Looking back, 7 11

M.

Mounting, 7 68 *and* 8 18 *and* 9 28
Mane, or Maine, 7 1 *and* 9 25 *and* 10 68

Metamorphised, 8 66.

N.

Naissant, 7 25
Nowed, or Nerred, 7 31 32 & 9 s 9
Nowed double, 10 60 and 9 s 9.

O.

Oppressed, 7 44.

P.

Percussant, or percussed, 7 12
Passant, 7 3 18 20 56 68 71
Passant rampant, 7 57 68
Prauncing, 7 68
Pendant, 9 s 9
Passant repassant, 7 19
Pas a Pas, that is step by step, 7

Q.

Quevied, or queve, 7 29.

R.

Rampant, 7 1 9 10 12 14 15 16 (17 68
Ramping, 7 13
Rampant Passant, 7 57 68
Runing, 7 68 *Respectant*, 7 68
Rampant in full Aspect, 7 68
Rampant Extendant, or Displaid, 7 (68
Reversed, 8 59 & 9 46 80
Revertant, or *Reverted*, 8 50 59 68
Recurvant, 9 46 s 9
Recurved, 8 59 66 68
Reflexed, 8 68 & 9 s 9
Rebending, 9 76 *Reverberant*, 7 10
Regardant, 7 10 12 66 68
Repassant, 7 19 *Resignant*, 7 12
Rousant, or *Rouse*, 10 67
Reboundant, or *Rebounding*, 7 10
Raping, or *Feeding*, 7 5
Road, or *Straked*, 9 54
Ringant, or *Rangant*, 7 68 s 26
Raireing, 7 68 s 26

S.

Saliant, 7 2 86 104 and 9 30
Sejant, 7 68 s 26
Sedant, 7 68 s 26
Sejant Rampant, 7 68
Sejant in Majesty, 7 8 68
Statant, 7 4 68
Segreant, 7 68
Sergent, or Segreant, 7 68
Serjant, 7 68
Springing, 7 73 68
Saltant, 7 68
Stat, 7 68 *Strein*, 7 68
Sejant extendant, 7 68
Sejant displaid, 7 68
Sejant Gardant, 7 94 68
Stretchant, 7 68
Stretch, 10 67 21
Spectant, or Suspectant, 7 68
Suspectant, 7 68 *Seperated*, 7 68
Standing at Bay, 7 75
Surmounted, 7 106 and 9 79
Sejant in aspect, 18 74 & 7 68 s 26
Sejant gardant in full aspect, 7 68 s 26
Spotted, 9 54 *Straked*, 9 54
Spirally, 9 7
Surgant, or Surging, 9 76
Sustaining, or Supporting,
Sans, 10 28 44 *Skipping*, 7 68 s 26

T.

Tricorporated, 7 41 42 68
Tripping, 7 68 71 72 and 9 30
Trunked, 7 87 78 88 68 s 26
Targant, 9 76 s 9 and 18 103
Torqued, 9 s 9 and 18 103
Torquened, 9 76
Torqued Fretted, 18 104
Turned, 8 66 67 *Triangle*, 8 71
Tusked, or Tushed, 9 25 46
Teretted, 9 59 *Twisted*, 9 71 74
Tenant, 10 5 4

V.

Umbrated, 7 68
Vulned, 7 68 71 76 and 9 1
Volant, 7 116 & 9 63 64 65 68
Vigilant, 8 1 *Vertant*, 8 68
Vuguled, 9 27 and 7 71
Upright, 9 38 and 7 68 s 26

W.

Winged, 7 43
Wounded, 7 68
Watching, 8 41
Wreathed, 8 s 9 and 9 81 88
Watled, 10 38 s 4 58.

An Alphabet of all known Beasts and four-footed Creatures, both on Land, and in the Sea. The first Figure shews the Chapter; the second, the Number, in the place in which such Beasts are described. If it have an s. before the second number, it shews in such a Section of that Chapter:

A

Asse, 7 117 118 121 & 9 31.
Assirus, or Assiviculus, 7 118.
Alharch, 7 118 Arctomys, 8 8
Asse-Sheep, 7 118. Asker, 8 20.
Assirian Goate, 8 4 & 9 21.
Arabian Sheep, 8 6 Acephale, 8 22
Arucettonian, 8 15 Antilope, 9 25,
Aegopithecus. 8 23.
Archopithecus, 8 23 & 10 51,
Alpian Wild Goate, 8 32,
Arcubotan Oxe, 8 34.
Alpine Mouse, 8 43 & 9 53.
Arabian Mouse, 8 45.
Ape, 8 19 70 & 10 1, & 19 68
Ape-Hog, 8 54.
African Bugile, 9 5.
Ape-Beare, 10 51,
Abcamelus, 9 37.
Asse Camell, 9 37 Amphibion, 10 20.
Asian Dragon, 10 39.
Apish Fox, 10 51. Arctocion, 10 52
Alecorne, 9 6, Ape-Goate, 8 23.
Armodillo, 18 28 & 10 56.
Amphisiben, 10 39 42.
Ant-Beare, 10 51.

B

Buck, 7 87. Beare, 7 100.
Brand Squirrel-Mouse 8 8.
Barbary Deere, 8 9.
Beare-Ape, 8 23 & 10 51 52.
Brocard, 8 24. Buck-Horse, 8 28.
Burdon, 8 30 or Burdon, 10 51
Besus, 8 30 Buffe, 9 8
Bonicervus, 8 31 & 9 1.
Buselaphus, 8 31. Boare, 9 45 50.
Bugles, 8 34 & 9 5 Badger, 6 51.
Bisons, 8 34 & 9 6 7 33
Bubalus, 9 5. Boson, 9 51.
Bos-Camelita, 8 34.
Beare-Mouse, 8 45 & 18 40.
Bonicon, or Bonacan, 8 12 13 14 46
Brock, 9 51 (47 62 75,
Bull, 8 63 & 9 1 2 6 51
Beaver, 8 72 & 10 20 21 22
Bonaze, or Bonasus, 8 12 13 14.
Buck-Goate 9 20 21 23.
Basman Vnicorne, 9 31.
Bactrian Camell. 9 34.
Ban Bull or Beare-Dog, 9 56.
Bastard Mastive, 9 56.
Blood or Baux-Hound, 9 57.
Bugle, 9 57. Bracke 9 57.
Bearded Ape, 10 1.
Bonasus Rame Horned, 18 80.
Beast of the Bottomlesse Pit, 10 35.

C

Cat, 8 1 56 & 9 54,
Cryetus, 8 8 Caraben, 8 15.
Cynoprosopys, 8 13 Corayll, 8 20.
Crocodile, 8 16 17 & 10 24 25.
Calitrich Ape, 8 19 & 10 1.
Cynocephale, 8 22 23 & 10 71.
Cow-Deere, 8 31 & 9 1.
Cow-Hart, 9 1. Colus, 9 16.
Cow, 9 8. Calfe, 9 4.
Camell-Oxe, 8 34. Capre, 9 20.
Campurch, or Camphurch, 8 51.
Camell-Pardale, 8 53 & 9 36.
Canius, 9 23, Cepus, 10 2.
Camell, 9 34 Caster, 10 20.
Camell-Leopard, 9 36,
Carine-Badger, 9 51.
Cat-a-Mount. 9 54.
Curr or Cur-Dog, 9 61.
Conny, 7 83 92 93 Colopus, 18 84
Corcolipis, 10 2. Cameleon, 10 8.
Castoride, 10 51. Cinirus, 10 51.
Cat of the Water, 10 23.
Chymere or Chymeram, 10 33.
Chymera Monster, 10 47.
Cerberus. 10 34. Crocuta, 10 51.
Chivra, 10 71 Cacus, 10 30.
Cyrene Mouse, 8 45.
Centaure, 10 31, Chyron, 10 30.
Crucigeran or Cross-bearing Fox, 8 27.
Castoride 10 51

D

Deere, 7 69 to 76 86 & 8 9 25.
Deere-Goate, 8 9 38 & 9 23.
Deere-Horse, 8 28 46 & 9 15.
Dogs severall, 8 2 3.
Dormouse, 7 112. Duskey Fox, 8 27
Dromedarie, 9 34.
Dog of Hell, 10 34 Dragon, 10 39.
Devell-Dragon, 10 39. (54
Dabuh, 10 52 Daut, 9 5
Dog of the Water, 10 23.
Dracontopide, 10 39.
Dragon-Tiger, 10 44 45 46.
Dragon-Lion, 10 44.
Dragon-Wolfe, 10 50.

E

Ermine, 7 109 Ewe, 9 27.
Erdshew, 7 110 & 8 11 Esturia, 10 67,
Eagle-Lion, 10 48
Equicervus, 8 28 46 & 9 14 15.
Elephant, 8 64 to 69 & 9 38 to 41
Equiferus, 8 28. Elke, 8 33 & 9 10
Egyptian Mouse, 8 45.
Ethyopian Bull, 9 32.

F

Fox, 7 106 & 8 26 27 58
Fulmert, 7 108 Fleck, 7 106.
Ferret, 7 108 & 8 14.
Fitcher or Fitchett, 7 108.
Flying-Horse, 7 116.
French Dog, 8 3. Fisteing-Dog, 9
Field Mouse, 8 8 44. (61
Flying Mouse, 8 8. Flying Ape, 8
Flying Cat, 9 54 (49
Fanesian, 8 15 Faunus, 10 4 5,
Fairies, 10 4 5 32 54.
Familiar Spirits, 10 5 6.
Frog, 10 15 16 Fiber, 10 20.
Fryer Fish, 10 27 Feray, 10 32
Fire-Drake, 10 36
Fox-Ape, 10 51 72.
Fallow-Hound, 9 57,

G

Getulian Dog, 8 3 Gulon, 8 29,
Guinea Pig, 8 7 Ginnus, 3 30.
Gorgon Crocodile, 8 17,
Goate, 8 4 32 39 & 9 20 21 23.
Giraffa, 8 53 Gazell, 9 11.
Griffin, 8 57 & 10 48 & 18 78
Gray, 9 51 Genett, 9 55
Gressier-Hound, 9 57
Greyhound, 9 58 Gorgon, 10 68
Gase-Hound, 9 58
Georgian Dragon, 10 39
Guinean-Beast, 10 56
Getulian Squirrell, 7 107,

Gol-

Golden Wolfe, 10 51

H

Hyen or Hyena, 7 68 & 10 51,
Hart, 7 69 to 76 Hamster, 8 8
Hare, 7 83 94 95 & 19 67 Hound,
Hart-Horse, 7 87 & 8 28 9 57
Hinde, 7 90 & 8 73
Horse, 7 113 114 & 8 48
Hinnus or Hinne 7 109 & 8 30
Hinnulus 7 120 Hirth, 9 23
Hipellaphus, 8 10 28 Haut, 10 51
Hierusalim, 8 52 Homunculus, 8 55
Holy Lamb, 9 26 Hunting, 9 52
Hogg, 9 45 50 Hewart, 9 54
Hedge-Hog, 9 52 & 18 29
Harier, 9 57 Hippopodes, 10 51
Horned Satyr, 10 40
Horned Toad, 10 16
Hydra or Hyder, 10 36 37
Horse-Pewment, 10 63
Hyrcanian Leopard, 10 66
Hippocentaure, 10 31 Hybride 10 51
Hoberophus 10 67 Homotaure 19, 83

I

Indian Mouse, 7 110 111 & 8 45
Ichneumon, 7 111 & 8 40
Innus, 8 30 Irchin, 9 52
Indian Oxe, 8 34 & 9 51 & 10 70
Indian Orix, 8 37 Irish Cow, 18 79
Ivex, or Ibecke, 9 17 28
Indian sheep of Peru, 9 37
Island Dog, 9 66 Indian Ape, 10 1
Iambolus sea Monster, 10 34
Indian Dragon, 10 39 & Wolfe, 10 51
Indian Beare-Ape, 10 52
Indian Deere, 8 35 Jackall, 10 51
Indian Staked Hedghog, 18 29

K

Kaut, Kaut-Dog, 9 61

L

Lion, 7 1 to 36 & 19 60 to 65 Leopard,
Lion a red fish, 7 36 (7 56 57
Lion with two Heads, 7 39 Winged 43
Lion with two Bodies, 7 40 41 42
Lynx, 7 99 & 18 77. Linx, 7 66
Lark Mouse, 7 108
Land Crocodile, 8 15 & 10 25.
Lizard, 8 20 & 10 10 11
Lapor Monkey, 8 21
Lycaome, 10 10 Lion-Goat, 18 30
Leontopithecus 8 23
Libian Oxe, 8 34 Lyemmer, 9 58
Leut, or Daut, 9 5 Lerna, 10 37
Lion-Dragon-Vnicorn, 9 31.
Lyniscane, 9 56 & 10 51
Lizard double Tailed, 10 10
Lion-Phinx, 10 28 Leo-Vergo, 28

Lion-Wiverne, & Lion-Serpent, 10 60
Lion-Dragon, 10 44 49
Lupus, 10 33 Lamya 10 51 54
Luscbatt 10 51 Lupe, 7 104 105
Leucrotura, 10 51 Lambe, 9 26
Lambe with three Heads, 15 55.
Lamber-Vnicorne, 9 31
Landscacka, 10 51
Lupus Aureus, 10 51

M

Marten, or Martell, 7 108 & 10 2
Mouse, 7 107 108 & 10 & 8 41 42
Mimick Dog, 8 37 & 44 45 & 53
Mare, 7 113 Mule, 7 120
Melitean Dog, 8 3 Maco 8 22
Mauritanian Deere-Goat, 8 9
Mole-Mouse, 8 & Mole-Shew 8 11
Muske-Mouse, 8 11 Mamus, 8 30
Marcajan, 8 13 Mulacus, 8 15
Marmot, 8 43 & 9 [illegible]
Muskatt or Muscat, 8 48 & 9 11
Mischatie, 8 48 Mus, 9 54
Musimon, or Mu[illegible] 8 47
Minocane, 8 5[illegible] Mustive, 9 56
Monoceros, 9 31
Mantiger, 9 17 18 19
Monkey, 8 21 & 10 2 3 & 19 84 85
Mammoth, 10 [illegible] Mole, 10 7
Mold or Mouldiwarp, 10 7 & 19 71
Mungrill-Dog, 9 56
Monk-Fish, 10 27
Minotaure, 10 32
Manlion, or Monlion, 18 100. 8 19
Mantichora, 1 53. (62 63

N

Neemon, 7 111 Newte, 8 20
Norician Mouse, 88 Nibim, 9 34
Nut-mouse, 8 8 Nefrendis, 8 54
Norwegian Monster, 8 23
Niem Vnicorne, 9 31
Night Wolfe, 10 51

O

Ounce, 7 67 Otter, 10 23
Oxe, 8 34 & 9 51 Odonta, 10 70
Orix, or Orinx, 8 37 & 9 31
Onocemaure, 10 31
Opinicus, 10 38 & 18 77.
Olochymera, 10 47
Ostrich-Camell, 9 37

P

Panther, 7 63 Pagasus, 7 116
Pontique-Mouse, 7 107
Pontique flying-Mouse, 8 8
Polcatt, 7 108 & 9 54
Pig-Cony, 8 7 Pigage, 9 22
Palmed Deere, 8 25 Pus, 9 54
Paonian Bull, 9 6 Pan, 10 4 5

Pyrassnpy, 9 17 31 Pi maes 10 1
Porcupine, or Porcussine, 9 52
Puppy, or Puppett, 9 61
Phinx. 10 1 28 29 Pithon, 10 39
Prasian Ape, 10 1 Papio, 10 52
Paddock, 10 15 16
Phayrie-Beast, 10 54
Portentosus, 10 71 Pigritia, 18 40

R

Rabbett, 7 83 & 93
Raine Deere. 7 86 & 8 42
Reinger, 8 42 Ratmouse, 108
Reynard 7 106 Rock-Goat, 8 32
Rat, 7 110 & 8 12 41
Rhynoceros, 8 36 & 9 32
Rhinocephalus, 10 51
Rampe horned Bonasus, 18 80
Rame 8 74 & 9 27 28

S

Stag, 7 69 to 79 Squirrell, 7 107
Shew, 7 110 & 8 11 Sorax, 88
Stallion, 7 113 Shew mouse, 811
Scythian Asse, 7 118 Scinke 8 17
Strepsiceros, 8 5 35 Scen, 10 10
Sheep, 8 6 & 9 27 Subus, 8 6 &
Scythian Mouse 8 8 (9 28
Satin, 8 18 & 10 9 17
Subadon, 1 24 Spotted Fox, 8 27
Scythian Oxe 9 51 Sagitar, 10 30
Sagian or Seat sh Lion, 9 7
Scandalabenement, 9 32
Swine, 9 45 50 Sloth, 18 40
Swine-Boar, 9 51 Stoate, 7 111
Shorch Dog, 9 60 Spaniell, 9 60 61
Skaut, & Shepards Dog, 9 61
Satyre, 10 1 3 Siberre 101
Spoynga, 10 1 Silvan 10 45
Salamander 10 9 Sagoin, 10 51
Sea Tortoys 10 14 Sue, 10 55
Seale, or Sea Calfe, 10 18 19
Sea hound, 10 18 19 Simichinus,
Scaled Sea Lion. 10 26 (10 47
Sea Frier, 10 17 Shoter, 10 30
Scarlett Beast, 10 35 Serrapis, 10
Sea Rhinoceros, 10 72 (37
Simivulpus, 10 51 71
Succarath, 10 55 Sea Lion, 10 61
Sea Wolfe, & Sea Horse, 10 62
Scrutoy, 10 71 Sea Wall, 10 73
Sumnis, 8 32 Spirits, 10 56
Stag-Camell, 9 37
Strange Horned Wild-Goate, 18 41
Scaled Hedghog, 18 29

T

Tyger, 7 97 98 Thyamon, 7 111
Tragelaphus, 8 7 & 9 22
Tartarine, 8 22 Tarandulus, 9 8
Tarandre, 9 9 Thoe, 13 51
Talbott, 9 57 Tuscan Dog, 9 60

Ta-

Terrier, 9 57
Tumbler, 9 58
Troglodite Ape, 10 1
Tortois, 10 14
Trogloditе Tortois, 10 14
Toade, 10 15 16 & 18 109
Tyger-Dragon, 10 44
Tatus, 10 56 & 18 28
Titirus, 9 24
Thanatch, lib: 4. ca: 7 11
Tamandua, 10 51

V

Vre-Oxe, 8 34 Vrchine, 9 52
Vnicorne, 9 30 31 Vrcane, 9 56
Vnicorne-Bison, 9 33
Village Dog, 9 61

W

Wild Horse, 7 87 & 8 28
Wolf, 7 104 105 & 10 51 & 19 66 74
Weesell, 7 108 Wood Mouse, 7 110
Water Ratt, 8 12 Want, 10 7
Wild Man, 8 23 Wild Catt, 9 54
Wild Asse, 9 31 & 18 16
Wolfe Dog, 9 56 & 18 76
Water Dog, Water Spaniell, 9 60
Wood Fairies, 10 4 5
Woman-Lion, 10 28
Wolfe-Catt, 10 51
Wolfe-Wiverne, 10 61
Wild-Goat, 8 32 & 9 23 31 & 18 41

The Names of Serpents, Worms, and creeping Insects, Alphabetically.

A

Aspe, 9 72 s 31 Ant, 6 66 s 25
Ammodyte, 9 75 s 31
Adder, 9 62 s 25 71 75 s 31
Alder tree Worme, 10 s 2
Attercope, 9 85 Asker, 10 12
Asker Swan necked, 18 97
Asker Griffin headed, 18 77
Ascarides, 10 42
Apulia, or Agrostis Spider, 10 70
Amphybene, 10 11 & 12 76
Admodita, or Admodice, 9 75 s 31

B

Boas, 10 59 Booke Worme, 9 s 25
Bull-head, 10 8 (26
Basilisk, 9 s 25 62 75 s 31
Blind Worme, 9 42 72 s 31
Black, Spider, 10 70
Beare Worme, 9 s 25 & 10 59
Basilisk Serpent, 10 65
Brandling Worme, 10 s 2
Bobs, or Bob-Worme, 10 s 2
Bowals, 9 s 25 62

C

Caterpiller, 9 s 25 & 10 s 2
Canker Worme, 9 s 25 & 10 s 2
Chafers, 9 s 25 Crocodile, 9 75 s 31
Cockatrice, 9 s 25 Ceraste, 9 75 s 31 80
Cenchrine, 9 75 s 31
Crab Scorpion, 9 87
Crested Serpent, 9 88
Cabbach Worme, 2 2 s 2
Cockatrice Serpent, 10 65
Cramocalaptes Spider, 10 70
Cantharides or Crab Spider, 10 70
Cod or Case Worme, 10 2 s 2
Cad, or Cadice Worme, 10 2 s 2
Chamedra-Contes, 9 75 s 31
Cloth Worme, 9 s 25
Colewirt Worme, 10 2 s 2

D

Dart Snake, 9 s 25 Dipsas, 9 75
Dragon, 9 s 25 62 & 10 39 (30
Dryine, 9 75 s 31 77 Duggs, 10 42
Dragon Serpent, 9 81 & 10 57
Dew Worme, 10 2 s 2 42
Divell, 10 39 Divells worme, 10 14
Divells Gold Ring, 9 s 25
Double headed Worme, 10 42
Double headed Serpent, 9 s 25 & 10 88

E

Earth Worme, 9 s 25 & 10 42
Emmett, 9 66 Evett, 9 s 25
Echidna, 9 75 s 31
Elephantia, 9 75 s 13
Eared Asker, 18 77
Ear-wigge, 19 22

F

Field Snaile, 9 52 Flea, 9 s 25 70
Furry Beare-worme, 9 s 25
Forty feete, 9 s 25 Flag worme, 10
Formicarion, 10 70 (s 2
Fruite Worme, 10 s 2 & 18 149
Field Spider, 10 70 72

G

Globe Worm, 9 55 & 10 71
Greene Worme, 10 s 2 Grub, 10 s 2
Golden taile Worme, 10 42
Garden Spider, 10 70
Gentle, or Gentill, 10 s 2 & 18 148
Garden Worme, 10 s 2 42
Greene Gentill, 10 s 2
Griffin head Asker, 18 77

H

Hundred leggs, 9 s 25 s 26
Horned Beetle, 9 s 25 s 26
Hemorrhe, 9 75 s 31
Horned Serpent, 9 75 s 31
Hydra, 9 75 s 31
House Snaile, 9 86
Horned taile Caterpiller, 10 2 s 2
Horse-naile, 10 8
Hundred feete, 10 14
Horse Serpent, 10 62
Horse Wiverne, 10 62
Hairy legg Spider, 10 70
Hunting Spider, 10 70
Horned worme, 10 2 s 2

I

Innocent Serpent, 9 75 s 31
Iacule, 9 75 s 31

L

Louse, or Lous, 9 8 s 25 s 26
Lizard, 9 s 25 s 26 & 10 11
Lybie, 9 75 s 31 Lyacome, 10 10
Lion-Wiverne, or Serpent, 10 60
Libia Spider, 10 70
Lob worme, 10 2 s 2
Letice-Worm, 10 2 s 2.

M.

M

Mite, 9 s 25 s 26
Magot, 9 s 25 s 26 & 18 148
Moth, 9 s 25 s 26 & 19 23
Mylet, 9 75 s 31
Med, or *Meds*, 10 42
Marsh worme, 10 2 s 2

N

Newt, or *Neut*, 9 s 25 s 26

O

Octopos, 9 87
Oake tree worme, 10 59
Oubut, 10 59

P

Pume, 9 s 25
Prester, 9 75 s 31
Pismire, 9 66 s 25 s 26
Palmer worme, 9 s 25 s 26 & 10 59
Porphyre Serpent, 9 75 s 31
Palmer Serpent, 9 75 s 31
Pig-Snout worme, 10 2 s 2
Pityocampe, 10 59
Pine Apple Caterpiller, 10 59
Pithon-Serpent, 10 64
Phalangie, & *Phalanx Spider*, 10 70
Pismire, & *Pedesrae Spider*, 10 70
Painted Beetle, 11 46 & 18 149 151

R

Red Serpent, 9 75 s 31
Red Worme, 10 2 s 2

S

Silke worm, 9 51 s 25 s 26
Snaile, 9 52 86
Skipper, 9 s 25
Seps, 9 75 s 31
Sepedon 75 9 s 31
Spider, 9 59 85 s 25 s 26 75 s 31
Snake, 9 74 s 25 s 26 75 s 31
Serpent, 9 s 25 71 72 75 s 31
Sea Serpent, & *Sea Viper*, 9 s 25 31
Slow worme, *Situla*, 9 75 s 31
Scitale, 9 75 s 31 & 10 42
Sacer, 9 75 s 31 *Scen*, 10 10
Shell Snaile, 9 86 *Sone*, 10 14
Scorpion, 9 s 25 s 26 87 & 19 69
Smooth horned worme, 10 2 s 2
Stellion Serpent, 10 17
Serpentine Fish, 10 10
Scolopendra, 10 59
Spinner, & *Starr Spider*, 10 70
Sphekion, & *Shepeards Spider*, 10 70
Salamander worme, 9 s 25
Squirrel-taile worme, 10 2 s 2
Swan necked Asker, 18 97

T

Tike, 9 s 25 s 26 86
Tetra-gnathan Spider, 10 70
Tarantula Spider, 10 70
Two headed Serpent, 9 s 25
Tag taile worme, 10 2 s 2

V

Viper, 9 s 25 75 s 31 77
Vine Fretter, 10 59

W

Worme, 9 s 25 s 26
Wolfe Spider, 10 70
Wolfe Serpent, 10 61
Wivern, 10 58 *Worm Beetle*, 12 59
Wiverne Serpent, 10 63
Wood Louse, 9 s 25 s 26 & 18 150
Whirle worme, 9 s 25 s 26
Wievells, 9 s 25 s 26 & 10 59 & 18 (148
Wall Louse, 9 s 25 s 26
Water Snake, 9 s 25 s 26
Willow tree Worme, 10 2 s 2
Winged Serpent, 10 43 58
Wiverne-Wolfe, 10 61
Waspe Spider, 10 70

Y

Yellow Laile, 10 42

The Names of Bees, Flies, and Butter-Flies. Alphabetically.

A.

Ant ffly, 9 62

B.

Brimesey, 9 62 *Brise*, 9 70
Blatta ffly, 11 46 & 18 60
Butterfly, 9 66 67 68 & 18 150
Bee, 9 51 s 25 s 26 62
Beetle, 10 56 & 18 60 149
Blind Beetle, 9 s 25 s 26 & 18 60 149
Beare ffly, 9 62 *Brise ffly*, 12 46
Black ffly, 9 62 *Bupreſtis*, 18 21

C.

Chaffer ffly, 9 47 s 25 s 26
Cantharides, 9 62 *Cricket*, 9 70
Clouly ffly, 9 62 *Clock*, 10 56
Crossed Shorn-Bud, 18 149
Cantharide Shorn-bud, 10 56
Cantharide Beetle, 10 56

D.

Drone, or Drone Bee, 9 62
Dors ffly 9 62 *Dor-Breeze*, 9 70
Dung, or Dun-ffly, 9 62 & 10 56
Dragon ffly, 18 153
Divells Cowe, 10 56

E.

Earth Beetle, 18 149

F.

Fly, 9 s 25 s 26 62 95
French Fly, 9 62
Fovillemerde, 18 21

G.

Grashopper, 9 70 & 18 108
Gad Bee, Gad ffly, Gnatt, 9 70
Greate Horse-Breese, 18 154

H.

Horned Beetle, 9 s 25 s 26 & 18 60
Horse Fly, 9 62 s 25 s 29 & 10 65 & 12 60 & 18 154
Harvest Fly, 9 63
Hornett, 9 62 & 10 21 & 18 155
Hony Bee, 9 51 62 & 10 21
Humbo, or Humming Bee, 9 51 62
Hemp-Fly, 18 152
Horse Breese, 18 154

L.

Lady Cowe, 9 s 25 s 26 67
Locust, 9 70

M.

Moore Fly, 9 62 *May Bud* 10 56
Moth, or Mough, 9 69
May Fly, 9 62 & 10 56

O

Oake Fly, 9 62

P

Palmer Fly, 9 62
Painted Beetle, 11 46 & 18 149

R

Red Fly, 9 62

S

Shell Fly 9 47 *Stone Fly*, 9 62
Sheath Fly, 9 47 & 12 56
Scorpion Fly, 18 153 *Spinner*, 9 70
Stag Beetle, 9 s 26 19 21
Shorn-Bud, 11 46 & 18 149 151
Shorne Beetle, 11 46 & 18 149 151
Sweet Scented Shorn-Bud, 10 56
Scarab, 9 s 26 & 19 19
Sheathed Scarab, 19 19

T

Theese Bee, 9 62 *Tanny Fly*, 9 62
Tanker Fly, 9 62

V

Vine Fly, 9 62
Variable Sheath Fly, 12 56

W

Waspe, 9 62 64 & 10 11 59
Water Fly, or Water Skipper, 15 63
Winged Scorpion, 9 87 & 18 99
Worme Beetle, 12 59

TO

ADVERTISEMENT.

To the Courteous Reader.

HAveing now finished the severall Chapters concerning Flowers and Beasts, And coming in the next place to those of Birds: It may be Demanded, Why I should make such an exact and so perticular a discription of them: As to take notice of the Colours of every Dividuall and Prime Feather, Both of the Body, Wings, and Taile; togather with the Colours of the Shafts, Vanes and Webs. And of the Principles, or Quil Feathers, How they are Painted in their Interiour and Exteriour Filiments? And not to do the like in Flowers, Fruit, Beast, and Fishes; They haveing as much variety of Painting in them, As Birds and Fowles?

To which I shall in brief give this Answer, That the Beauty of the Colours variously dispersed in Flowers Fruit Fish and Beasts, doth principally consist in their Exteriour or outward parts, Therefore needs noe such exactness.

Neither doth their Motion of Shaking, Going, Running, or Swiming, any way cause an alteration in their coloured Spots, Stoaks, or Lines, variagated and here and there intermixed; by makeing them either bigger or less, Wider or closer: As it manifestly doth in the going and flying of all party coloured Birds and Fowles. For if you take notice of them in their standing or walking Posture, with their Wings Complicated, or close to their bodyes, with their Tailes closed, or shut together; They doe generall seeme (at a smal distance) as if they were of one entire, or selfe colour on the Head, Back, Sides, and Scapular Coverts; Some-tymes the Taile and the Quill feathers of a deeper dye; and some with a kinde of a dilute or dusky white, on the Breast Belly and Thighes: Yet in their flying, there may be perceiued severall Spots Lines Borders or Rings, on some parts of them, which before could not be seen or discerned.

And againe some there are all over Spoted, Either with round Circular oblong or square Spots: Or else bespeckled with Lines, either Long or Short, Perpendicular or Transverse; set in opposition, or alternately, with diverse other ways: Which in their flying, will with the opening of their Wings all disappeare from what they were before; And other remarkable things be discerned. As the form of Spots will shew (or become to our sight,) Great Rings, streight or transverse Lines, Stroaks, Semicircles, and such like; either on the Wings, Breast, Back, Sides, along or overcross the Taile; and so in other parts and places; As by their perticular discriptions you may easily perceive. Which reasons did so Sway with me, that I thought it good to be more precise in them, than in any of the other creatures, which I beg of thee not to think too te dious in reading; For for thy sake I have not thought them so in writting.

Farewell.

TO

The Worshipful and Highly Esteemed

RICHARD LEGH of *Lyme*, Esquire;

AND TO

THOMAS LEGH, his Brother.

Worthy Sirs, I am so far from hiding my own Defects, that I must needs acknowledg there is none in their Labours so imperfect as my self, yet Favour covers a multitude of faults: Neither can any plaid perfection in such cases, except he be Adorned with those Abilities of which I am wholy Ignorant. Then be pleased to accept of the Imperfect-perfect, and hiden-found Particles of Herauldry, *gathered in one Body, by the weak Industry of him, who is*

Your most Devoted Servant,

Randle Holme.

CHAP. XI.

WE Proceed now to such Creatures as live above the Earth in the Air, and by Water. Such are termed either Birds or Fowls, nevertheless in their Species they differ much, touching their particular qualities: for some of them are simple, some others Subtile, some Solitary, some Sociable, some Melodious, some more Morose, some Articulate, some Inarticulate and not to be understood, some Docible, some Foolish and indocible. Again, some are only for the Land, some for the Air, and others for the Waters. So likewise some have whole Feet, some Palmed, some divided into Toes or Pounces, and some have either few or little ones, or scarce any at all.

All Fowls are in Coats Armour to be born, as is best suiting their Natural Actions, as going, siting, standing, flying, &c. Otherwise saith Mr. *Gwillams, fol.* 218 Armory shall be said to be false, because Art in such case doth not Imitate Nature, but works preposterously.

☞ Such Birds and Fowls as are born in their Natural colours, whither of one, or diverse colours, shall with *Upton* be only named in Blazon, and no mention made of the collour, or colours, but be only termed proper, but if they be in part, or in whole contrary to Nature, then to be named in each particular part and colour.

I. He beareth Azure, an **Eagles head erazed**, Or. Herauldry make only this distinction between the **Eagle** and **Phanix** and **Pellican**, the two latter have no Tuft, or Beard, fixed to the under part of their Beak. This is born by the name of *Painter*.

A 3 such S born by *Yellen*.

A an Eagles head couped G with a Batune in his Beak bend-ways O born by *Van Trenbach*.

II. He beareth Gules, a **Cherubs wing**, Argent; or else blazon it, a **Wing-Penwant**, Argent. Wings when they are born in Coats, are termed usually the Wings of the Noblest Creatures; And therefore they are not unfitly in this place, or in the like bearing, called the **Wing** or **Wings** of **Cherubims**, the **Wings** of **Arch-Angels**, &c.

☞ With this note of Observations; that if they be Mettle (either Silver, or Gold) then they are **Cherubs Wings**: if they be party coloured (that is) the long feathers Mettle, and the Ponions colour, or contrarywise, the first colour and the other Mettle, they are termed, **Angels Wings**: but if all of one colour, then

P.M. Rici. Ligh de Lime Armigeri. & Tho: fratris eius. H. Consecr. H Ianus fe.

then **Eagles Wings.** This is born by the name of *Wing.*

G 5 such in Salter A born by *Porter.*

G 3 Wings pendant O born by *Band.*

III. He beareth Or, two **Wings** of an **Eagle Pendant** and **Conjoyned** Gules. They are termed also, a **Pair** of **Wings**; or **Wings inverted.** Born by the name of *Hallerouch.*

☞ Two **Wings elevated** (or points of the Feathers upward) and two **Wings elevated**, and **conjoyned**; if they touch or joyn in the bottoms of the ponions, as *chap.* 12. *numb.* 57. Also three Wings conjoyned in triangle are born in Coats of Arms, as *chap.* 13. *numb.* 77.

O 2 such conjoyned and elevated S born by *Halney.*

S 2 such elevated and conjoyned born by *Bresingham.*

G 2 Wings conjoyned, the point reverted or pendant, Er. by the name of *Keney.* *Gwillims* terms them 2 Wings in Pale, or Paleways inverted. *fol.* 391.

IV. He beareth Gules, an **Arch-Angels Wing elevated**, Or: with an other **expansed**, Argent. This is born born by the name of *Interfall.*

☞ If these had been both of one colour, or mettle; then they had only been termed, two **Wings expensed**: yet being of themself, some term them **elevated** and **expensed**; because they may be expensed, and pendant. What this expensed signifieth, see *numb.* 28. 30.

2 such O and G out of a Coronate A is the Crest of *Alden.*

2 such Wings expensed, O each charged with a fesse G is the Coat of *Geroltzeck.*

V. He beareth Sable, an **Eagles foot couped** in the midle of the Arme (or leg) Argent. The Legs of all Birds of Prey are termed **Armes**, especially of the larger sort, as you shall hear hereafter. This is born by the name of *Histeger.*

A 3 such G born by *Hvanser* or *Van Hanser.*

B 3 such turned to the sinister A by *Weistandt.*

G 2 erected in Salter, O born by *Van Greunew.*

VI. He beareth Azure, an **Eagles leg**, or an **Eagles Arm, erazed** in the thigh, Or. *Falconers* term the Eagles legs, his armes: and the toes, his pounches; and the claws, his tallons. This is born by the name of *Canhangell*, this is both by *Gwillim fol.* 226. and *Morgan fol.* 65. termed S a leg in Pale erazed *a la quise*, A tallons G by the name of *Canhanser.* This term *a la quise* in *French* signifies the thigh: as much as to say rent in the midle of the thigh.

A 2 such in Fesse (or Fesse-ways) S or rather Barways, is born by *Die Pesler.*

VII. He beareth Sable, an **Eagles leg erazed**, Or: with 3 **Ostrich feathers conjoyned**, Argent. The quils of the second. Born by *Featherstot.*

The like to this leg, hath a Wing conjoyed and elevated, Argent; which of some is termed to be in Pale. See *chap.* 13. *numb.* 1. and is born by *Bachen* of *Austria.*

An Eagles leg O with a double Rose set about the higher part, G is the Crest of *Greifenklaw Van Volrath*, of *Rheyne Palatinate.*

G a Leg, B and Wing conjoyned S is born by *Sigrot.*

A a Leg G and a Wing conjoyned V born by *Van Nenningen.*

VIII. He beareth Gules and **Eagle** with two **Heads Sans wings, erazed** in the midle of the body, Argent. Others term it the body of Eagle with two heads, and no wings, erazed above the thigs; (or at the rump or crupper) they are born also after this manner, couped in the body. This is born by the name of *Barlow.*

IX. He beareth Vert, an **Eagle Displaid, Sans arms**, and **train**, Or. That is, without legs and tail, born by the name of *Wallis.* Some say **Dismembred** of his **Arms**, and **Robbed** of his **Train**, or the **Train-Moulded**, that is fallen off.

O the like S with a Scarf about his neck, O born by *Schaden.*

A the like, Sans thighs S by *Van Reichaw.*

X. He beareth Argent, an **Eagle sans Legs**, Gules. Some termed it an **Eagle Closse**; because its wings lye to its body. Some term it, an **Eagle Complicated**; having its wings folded, and wrapt together to the sides of the body. But to term it an **Eagle, Falcon**, or any other kind of Fowl or Bird, **if closse**, will be sufficient: but if in any other posture, then to mention in what posture, as the examples afterwards will demonstrate. This is born by the name of *Footloss.*

B 3 such A is born by *Littlegood.*

XI. He beareth Azure, a **Demy Eagle volant**, or **Overture**, or **Displaid**, Or. Others term it, an **Eagles head**, between two Wings: but then the Wings are not to joyn to the body, as you see these do. This is the Crest of *Eaglesby.*

A a Demy Eagle G crowned O in base two Bastons or Batunes in Salter, the dexter surmounting G by the name of *Waldech* of *Bavaria.*

Per Fesse A and G a Demy Eagle issuant S by *Burgraw Van Glett.* Also by *Ogspurg*, the like is born with two heads.

O on a Fesse G 3 Roses, a Demy Eagle displaid issuant, S is the Coat of *Wayssen* of *Frankford.*

XII. He beareth Argent, an **Eagle with her neck imbowed**, Sable; and some say with her **Beak imbowed** to her breast, others her **Head imbowed.**

☞ Some again, termed it, an **Eagles closse**, or **trussed**, or **complicated**: but all winged Creatures, (as I said before) having their Wings close to their sides, needs no other term, but only to name the Fowl, or Bird, what it is, & no more. This is born by the name of *Barger.*

A 3 such B is born by *Halhall* or *Halhaller.*

XIII. He beareth Gules an **Eagle at Gaze in full aspect**, Argent. This is also termed an **Eagle at gaze**, with her **Body displaid**: and an **Eagle Spectant**, as looking forward, having her breast only in sight. Others term it an **Eagle standing at gaze, foreshortned**;

ned; as having little seen but the foreparts, see *numb.* 44, 45, 46. and *chap.* 13. *numb.* 3. This is born by the name of *Egase.*

XIV. He beareth Or, an **Eagle**, Gules; or an **Eagle** with its **Wings complicated**, or **closed** to his body, as some do term it.

☞ But being close I judge it needless to express any such thing, for by nameing an **Eagle** (or any other sort of Fowl) and using no other term, we may suppose it to be such a Bird in a standing posture, as I shall observe it in the future examples. This is born by the name of *Aquila.*

XV. He beareth Sable; an **Eagle Collying**, Argent. This Eagle is (as it were) holding up her head, stretching it self a loft, or upright; and is a posture Birds of Prey often use, which the Artist term in **Falconry Collyeth**, that is the **Hawk** noddeth her head, making a motion as if she would take a flight. This is born by the name of *Colleth.*

XVI. He beareth Vert, an **Eagle regardant**, Argent; by the name of *Gwiller.*

☞ As concerning the Beaks, or Bills, & feet of Birds, most Armorists (if they be found of different colours from the body of the Bird) do term them all generally **Beaked**, and **Membred**; the first for the Bills, the later for Legs, and Feet. Yet Mr. *Gwilliams* holdeth that as there is a distinct difference in the nobility of Birds, so there should be in their blazon: as Bird of Prey and for Battle, to be termed **Armed**: and all others to be **Membred.**

XVII. He beareth Argent, an **Eagle recursant** proper, **perched** on a baston, Or. This term **recursant**, is taken from the *Latin* word *recurso*, to turn backward. Some blazon it, an **Eagle invertant** from *inverto* to turn in contrary to the right way, or to turn the inside outward, see *numb.* 22. 26. This is born by the name of *Turner.*

XVIII. He beareth Azure, an **Eagle in her Majesty**, Argent; crowned, and holding in her right foot a Scepter Or, **Perched** on a **Baston**, or **Bastinado**, Gules. This is born by the name of *Major.*

☞ All sorts of Birds, except Birds of Prey, having their Bills or Beaks and Legs, of a different colour from their bodies, shall be termed **Membred**, and their Claws or Tallons, **Armed**, see *numb.* 16.

XIX. He beareth Argent, an **Eagle** in a **trian Aspect**, Gules, **standing** (or **Perched**) on an escrowl (or rowl) Or. This Eagle standeth so as three parts of the body is seen, and no more: being neither full, as *numb.* 13. 18. nor half seen, as *numb.* 14, 15, 16. but is in a posture between both, which Limners, in a picture term, **three quartered.** This is born by the name of *Fuller.*

XX. He beareth Azure, an **Eagle** Or. **Sejant** or **Seated** on a **Pitch**, issuing out of the dexter side, Argent. This is born by the name of *Pearcher.*

XXI. He beareth Vert, an **Eagle Overt** (or **overture**) (or **Wings disclosed**) Argent; **Beak**, and **Arms** (or **Legs**) Or. **Overture** is a term to shew that the Wings are spread open on either side the head: it is also of some termed, **Flotant**, or **Hovering**, or an **Eagle** with his **Wings displaid**; as if he were betaking himself to flight. This is also of some blazoned an **Eagle volant**, but that term is more proper to them when they have their feet drawn up to their belly, as *numb.* 38, 39, 40, 41. This is born by the name of *Overhead*, or *Ollerhead.*

B an Eagle thus O standing upon a Bible, closed G Leaves and Claspes, and Garnished O with an Inkhorn and Penner in his Beak S is the Coat belonging to the Scriveners Company.

A the like O standing on a round Hill V by *Ernes* of *Chester.*

XXII. He beareth Argent, an **Eagle Tergiant**, Or. This Eagle turned with its back only to our light, is of some termed **invertant**, or **recursant**, see *numb.* 17. 26. This is born by the name of *Terpin.*

XXIII. He beareth Sable, an **Eagle Surgiant**, (or **rowsant**, or **rising**) Or. These terms are given to all winged Creatures, and Feathered fows, when they only lift up their Wings, as if they were about to fly, of old it was termed an Eagle, lifting up his Wings.

☞ In the rising, or surgiant, or preparing of Birds for flying, note this, that the right Wing which is on the further side the Fowl is to be seen only in the ponion, the rest of the Wing (save its point) is hid by the body and neck and other parts. This is born by *Risley.*

A the like S born by *Van Helmstat.*

O the like regardant G is born by *Van Lockmin.*

XXIV. He beareth Argent, an **Eagle Overturt**, with the **points elevated**, Azure. This figure or posture of the Eagle is contrary to that *numb.* 21. That having the points of the Wings (as it were) downwards, but this hath them lifted up on high; mentioned by the term, **elevated.** Some blazon this kind of bearing, an **Eagle** with **Wings disclosed**, and **elevated.** Some the Wings **extended**, or **stretched** out. This is born by *Overlegh.*

B on a Hill in base, O the like A by *Geyst* or *Wildock.*

XXV. He beareth Sable, an **Eagle Mantling**, Argent. That is when he stretcheth out his leg and his wing all along the side of his leg, see *numb.* 27.

XXVI. He beareth Gules, an **Eagle recursant Overture**, Or. Some blazon it **inverted** and **displaid**, and some **tergiant**, having his back toward us, a word borrowed from the Latin, *tergum* a back, and some **Tergiant volant**, see *numb.* 17. 22. This is born by *Levean*, a *Spaniard.*

G the like in dexter chief O and S in sinister base a Spaniel Saltant A by the name of *Compofers* an *Italian.*

XXVII. He beareth Or, an **Eagle Rowsant** proper, born be *Candy* or *Gandy.* This **Eagle** is stretching

*

ing himself, which when any Bird of Prey doth so, Falconers term it (**Rowze**) from whome the term is borrowed, and sheweth a stretching out of himself, and wings: **shaking** and **quavering** the whole body. Some term this an **Eagle Warbling**, that is after he hath mantled, he crosseth his Wings together over his back.

XXVIII. He beareth Vert, an **Eagle Sepurture**, (or **Wings expansed**, or **expensed**) Or. This is when both the Wings are behind the head, and them again the one behind the other, some term it **expandded**, or **disclosed**. This is born by the name of *Penbruge*.

G 3 such O by *Alten*, and *Alterheig*. This is by Mr. *Grillim* termed **Overt**, *fol.* 418.

XXIX. He beareth Argent, an **Eagle Sepurture** and **disclosed**, Sable, **Beak** and **Legs** (or **Arms**) Or. Which sheweth that though both Wings are behind the Eagles head, yet they are not as the last examples, one behind another, but **seperated**, standing at a distance. This is born by the name of *Persley*.

V the like A born by *Hindwell*.

XXX. He beareth Gules, an **Eagle** with **Wings expansed**, and **inverted**, Argent. The outward Wing is as if it turned back again. This is born by the name of *Weber*.

XXXI. He beareth Or, an **Eagle**, the **Wings expansed**, the one **elevated**, **crossing** the other. Some term the Wings, **expenced crossways**. This is another way of bearing the Wings backwards, and is born by the name of *Littleworth*.

XXXII He beareth Azure, an **Eagle regardant**, **pruning** of his **right Wing**, Argent. That is by her Beak layeth her Feathers straight and even: called of some **Proyning** and **Promening**: **Tricking** or **Trymming** her Feathers or Plumes. This is born by the name of *Care*.

XXXIII. He beareth Argent, an **Eagle regardant pruning** of his **train**, Gules, see *numb.* 32. This is born by the name of *Curious*.

XXXIV. He beareth Vert, an **Eagle volant**, with the **Wings expansed**, Or. All Birds are termed **volant**, in what posture soever be the Wings, if **disclosed**; when the Feet are drawn up to the Belly, and not otherwise, an **Eagle volant sepurture** of most. This is born by the name of *Van Malewhite*.

XXXV. He beareth Or, an **Eagle volant**, the Wings **sepurture** and **overture** (or **expansed** and **disclosed**) Gules. The one term signifying the Wings to be behind the head, and the other, that they point one from another. This is of most Heraulds, only termed, an **Eagle volant**, see *numb.* 40. This is born by the name of *Volantail*.

XXXVI. He beareth Sable, an **Eagle volant overture** in full aspect, Fesse-ways, Argent. This is born by the name of *Kenselsly*, in this examples of Eagles volant, you may in their flying, see their whole proportion of the body and feet, as if they were opposite to you, which differeth much from those flying before, or these examples of flyings after.

XXXVII. He beareth Azure, an **Eagle volant in Fesse** (or **Fesswise**) Or. But most generally termed, an **Eagle Tergiant volant**, in Fesse because his backparts is only seen, and some **Volant Tergiant Overture**. This is born by the name of *Volans*, or *Van Volantz*.

XXXVIII. He beareth Argent, an **Eagle volant in bend**, (**soaring**, or flying a lost) **Overture**, Gules. Some term this an **Eagle volant**, **displaid**; and others an **Eagle towring**, or mounting on high, others volant. This is born by the name of *Proudman*.

XXXIX. He beareth Gules, an **Eagle recursant**, or **Tergiant**, (or **invertant**) **volant** in bend, **Wings Overture**, Or. See *numb.* 42. This is born by the name of *Bees*.

A the like S by the name of *Back*.

XL. He beareth Argent, an **Eagle volant** in Fesse, the **Wings sepulture**, and **disclosed**, Azure. This differeth from the figure *numb.* 35. that holding up its head in flying; this stretcheth out its head, therefore termed **volant in fesse**. This is born by the name of *Stagell*.

O the like G ready to sease on a Lewre, B by the name of *Stilgall*, or *Stergall*.

In this quarter is placed, out of the base a pair of **Wings** with the **points elevated**, a bearing contrary to those Wings mentioned, *numb.* 2, 3. Sometimes they are found to be born **conjoyned**, and others **disjunct**, as in *chap.* 12. *numb.* 57.

O 2 Wings elevated B is the Coat and Crest of *Van Halwell*.

O the like S is both Coat and Crest of *Van Adelsdorf*.

Per Pale O and B 2 Wings elevated Counterch: by *Van Jornitz*.

B 2 such party per fesse G and A contrary changed, by *Much*.

A 3 Wings the points elevated G born by *Saxon*, and by *Van Munster*.

O 2 Wings one G the other B born by *Van Wenckheim*.

XLI He beareth Azure, an **Eagle volant overture**, Or. Born by the name of *Orgall*.

G such O is born by the name of *Hirberg*

XLII. He beareth Or, an **Eagle recursant** and **volant** in fesse, the Wings **Overture**. This differeth also in the elevating of the head, from that before, *numb.* 39. This is born by the name of *Shriggall*.

B a Fesse A between 3 such, by *Flyers*.

B 3 Doves thus volant A was the Coat of the *Abby* of *Delacrucis*, founded by the Princes of *Wales*, now dissolved.

XLIII. He beareth Gules, an **Eagle at Gaze** (or **aspect**) **displaid** Argent, lifting up his **Arms** (or his **Legs**) to his Breast, and **Beaked**, Or. This pertaineth to the Family of *Garzall*, or *Garset*.

XLIV. He beareth Argent, an **Eagle displaid foreshortned** in the **Train**, Gules. This is one of the ways I find Birds born in Arms foreshortned, and is only in the **Train**, which is so much behind the body, as but little of it is discerned. This is born be the name of *Trailman.*

XLV. He beareth Azure, an **Eagle displaid foreshortned**, the **Head elevated**, Argent. Some term this, and the next following **Eagles volant**, but that they cannot be, considering they are in **full aspect**, as much as can be seen, the rest being hid by the body. This is born by the name of *Trust* alias *Trusty.*

In the base dexter and sinister is the form of two **Arms** or **Legs of Eagles bowed**, or bent in the Knees. The first being blazoned, Azure an **Eagles leg couped** in the **Thigh**, and **Bowed** in the **Knee** (or joynt under)

B the like, the thigh couped O and the Arm G the Pounces S by the name of *Cotulinsky.*

Per Fesse O. and S the like counterchange is quartered by the Earl of *Ennenkhell* in *Germany.*

O the like, turned to the sinister S born by *Grienthal.*

S the like to the sinister, with an Hawks beil above the bent of the leg O is born by *Van Kalmuntz.*

The second is blazoned, an **Eagles Armed couped** in the **Thigh** & **bowed** in form of a **Roman** V. Some say, a **Leg couped** in the **Thigh in fesse, bowed**, Or, in Fesse the **Pounces**, or **Feet elevated.**

A a Swans foot couped in the Thigh, A. by *Van VVickersheim.*

S an Eagles foot, the like; pounces to the sinister O is the Coat of *Van Tonhausen* in *Bavaria.*

O the like G born by *Van Maisenbug.*

A the like G born by the name of *Van Knesebeck.*

XLVI. He beareth Or, an **Eagle displaid foreshortned**, Gules. These are flying as it were straight upon you, so as no part but the roundness of the head, and body is discerned, with the **Pouion** of the Wings, which are extended, the long Feathers thereof being also foreshortned that little of their length and breadth is discovered. This is born by *Holyland.*

In the sinister base, is the figure of a **Husked creeping** Creature, much after the form of a Bee; having six legs, & two long rough or hairy horns, standing not forwards, but sidewards: it is spotted with diverse colours in quaderangle lines. The name of it I have not yet learned, except it be that which *Pliny* calls a **Blatta**, that is a **Shorn-bud**, or **Shorn-Beetle**: from *Blata*, a painted or **Spotted-Beetle.**

XLVII. He beareth Sable, an **Eagle volant descendant** in bend, Argent. All birds if their flight be downwards, they are ever drawn with their back part to our sight. This is born by *Falman.*

XLVIII. He beareth Gules, an **Eagle volant descending**: or **descendant displaid.** This is born by *Disant.* If the head were towards the chief, and that it were mounting upwards, it is then termed, an **Eagle Tergiant displaid**, or **recursant volant** in **pale**, or **volant ascendant.**

*

XLIX. He beareth Argent an **Eagle seizing** and **feeding** on his **Prey**, Sable. When Hawks feed they do generally hang down their Wings, which the Master of such kinds of Birds of Prey term, (**Lolling**) therefore some from thence have blazoned this an **Eagle lolling** and **feeding** on his Prey: but that is needless, seeing they feed in this posture. This belongs to the name of *Seizridg.*

L. He beareth Vert, an **Eagle stouping** on the **Wing**, Or. This is a Falconers term, by which is to be understood, that the Hawk is coming down in her flight, and is ready to strike at her Prey; as the posture of this Eagle, you see is. Though others have termed it an **Eagle** ready to **Seize** on its **Prey**, the **Wings expanded**: but then there ought to have been some Prey near it, for how can it be said to seize, when nothing is to be seized on. This is born by the name of *Stoupley.*

* LI. He beareth Or, an **Eagle in full Aspect** (or **full bodied**) Gules, standing on a **Pierch**, issuing out of the sinister side Argent. This **Eagle is Pirched** looking full upon you, no part of him turning to any side. This is born by the name of *Body.*

S an Eagle displaid A membred O thus standing on a Limb of a Tree Regulated and Trunked A born by *Barlowe* of *Barlowe.*

LI. He beareth Vert, an **Eagle displaid**, Or. This is also of many termed a **Spread-Eagle**; If there be in the Field more then one Eagle, they are not to be termed Eagles, but **Eagletts**, that is little diminitive, or young Eagles, as saith Mr. *Gwillims* and *Legh fol.* 223. *pag.* 104. But this term is a diminution, or a lessning to the honour of a Coat Armour, and I judge it as good to say 3, 4, 5, or 6 **Eagles**, as so many **Lyons.** This is born by the name of *Aliter.*

V 3 such in Fesse O born by *Owen Gryneidd.*

A an Eagle displaid S born by *Eruen* of *Stapleford.*

B 3 Eagle displaid, and Semy de Crusily O born by *Alpram.*

A an Eagle displaid G born by *Blundell*, also 3 Eagles displaid by the same name.

B the like A by *Cotton* of *Cotton*, and also by *Rudyard.*

Per Fesse S and G an Eagle displaid A born by *Edge* of *Edge.*

Per Cheveron S and O 2 Eagles displaid, and a *Flower de lis* counterchange, by the name of *Stringer.*

A an Eagle displaid S Armed B by *Millington.*

O the like S the Coat of *Edwin* Earl of *Chester*, before the Conquest also Earl of *Leicester*

G the like A membred O born by the names of *Sothil*, *Stenescled*, *Godmanston*, and *Bigberie.*

LII. He beareth Or, an **Eagle displaid, Surgiant**, Gules. Here the Wings are not spread abroad, but only raised from the body, still remaining backwards, which is a kind of **Rousing** posture; but being on the other side full bodyed, for the best understanding of its form, and draught, it cannot be better blazoned then **Surgiant displaid.** And is born by the name of *Earlycomb*: Some term it, an **Eagle** with **Wings disclosing**, as a little open from the body.

LIII.

LIII. He beareth Sable, an **Eagle displaid** with **two heads**, Argent. Some will have the Eagle with one head to be called a **Spread-Eagle**, but if it have two heads to be blazoned, an **Eagle displaid**: So saith Mr. *Morgan, lib.* 1. *fol.* 60. But I never yet found such a nice distinction, but that they were indiffinitely termed **displaid**, or **spread**.

If the Legs and Beak or one of them, be of a contrary colour to the Body, then you are to add (**Beaked** and **Membred** or **Armed**) of such a colour or mettle.

☞ An Eagle with two heads, have them ever **endorsed**, not looking both one way (as the **Lyon**) but one from the other: and therefore needeth no additional term to its displaying, to shew that they are endorsed: note also that it is good Blazon to say an **Imperial-Eagle**, to signifie such displaid with two heads.

A such an Eagle S is the Arms of the Empire of *Germany*.

B the like O born by *Speake*.

Gyrony S and Er such an Eagle O by *Goodman* of *Chester*.

G the like A by *Langton*.

Per Pale B and G the like A by *Mitton* of *VVeston*.

Er the like S membred G born by *VVorth*.

A the like S is the Coat of *Meirick Loyd a Brittain* also by *Kylmin Dioit* or *Troetu*. Armed and Membred, O is the Coat of *De la VVood*.

Per Pale Er and S the like O on a canton B a Martlet O born by *Goodman* of *VVales*.

LIV. He beareth Azure, an **Eagle Sepurture** (or **Wings expenced**) Or, standing upon a **Child** in **Swedling Cloaths** Gules, **Swedles** and **embrathering** Or. This is generally blazoned an **Eagle and Child**, and no more; because it is an Honourable bearing, and well known to all the Heraulds of *England. lib.* 1. *fol.* 61. But the fore mentioned Person was then far wide of the mark, that blazoned this an Eagle **disclosed**. This is the Crest of the Right Honourable the Earl of *Derby*.

A the like Eagle S Child as aforesaid, born by *Culcheth*.

2 THese are the several ways of bearings, and the posture, I have seen Birds drawn in Coats of Arms; by which examples the ingenious, may conceive of the rest, in which I shall only give the figure of the Bird, or Fowl, which if the reader find in Arms in any of the foresaid postures he may add the foresaid examplary terms to them.

Observations in Eagles or Birds, of Prey.

They have great Heads, short necks, hooked Strong and sharp pointed Beaks and Talons.

Thick Fleshy Tongues.

Strong and browny Thighs.

Sharp Sighted.

Deep Feathered.

The two appendices or blind Guts, very short.

Of a Membranous Stomack.

Live Solitary, not gregarious, or in companys.

Long lived, and endure hunger a long time.

The Female larger then the Male.

The Sear, or Basis of the Beak, covered with a naked Skin or Membrane, but night Birds have no such Membrane.

The outward Toes of the Feet are connected, or joyn to the middle-most, by an intervening Membrane, as far as the first joynt.

They have generally all spotted Breasts, except the Kite and Vulture.

Age makes the hook of the upper Chap, grown to that length: as to hinder their feeding.

That the inner sides of their Claws are sharp Edges.

Their excrements, are generally fluid, like Milk.

That the exterior vans, of the prime Feathers of their Wings, and Tails, have white or Pale coloured cross Bars.

That the colour of the Back, or upper parts, are for the most part brown.

They live without drinking, and yet their belly is alway loose.

The several sorts of Eagles.

The proper colour of the **Eagle** is thus: the Bill of a horn colour, inclining to a pale blew, spotted with dusky: the Sear and Bridle of the mouth yellow; the Feathers of the Neck are riged, and ferrugineous; Eyebrows perminent, Eyes of a fiery colour, shining in a pale blew, the colour of the whole Body is a dark Chesnut, sprinkled with white spots on the Belly, the Wings and Tail more dusky, legs Feathered down to the Feet, which were yellow.

The **Golden Eagle**, the Beak of a horn colour, the Shear or Skin covering the Basis of the Beak, of a blewish Ash colour; the space from the Nostrils to the Eyes bare of Feathers: the Feathers covering the Head and Neck, not smooth but riged and standing at distance one from another; the Tallons black, the Legs Feathered below the Knees, the colour of the Wings and Tail dusky, and the whole Body of a Chesnut, speckled with white spots: but few on the Back, and more white an the Belly, with a white Ring abouts its Tail.

The **Sea-Eagle**, or **Osprey**, or **Ossifrage**, is as large as an Eagle, fierce and Preyeth upon Fish, and said to have one flat or webbed Foot to Swine, and the other divided to Prey with, it is of a whitish Ash colour, clouded Eyes, with a beard of small Feathers under the Chin, the flag Feather of the Wing between black and chesnut, the train spotted with black and white, the Feathers growing next or near the Rump almost all white, the Legs covered with dusky Feathers, the lower part of the Legs and Feett scalled, and yellowish with the upper part of the Toes, which were Semicircular.

The **Black-Eagle**, the Jaws and Eye-lids bear of Feathers the Head and Neck and Breast black: in the midle

midle of the Back, is a triangle of white, dasht with red, Rump red, the lesser row of Feathers in the Wings of Chesnut; then followed a black stroak or bar of black, cross the prime Feathers; then a white one, and the remaining part of Feathers to the end, or tips of a dark Ash colour. The Beak yellow, black at the end; the Sear red, Eyes yellow, the Legs Feathered below the Knees: the rest naked and red, Scalled. Some call this a **Valeria.**

The **White Tail Eagle** called a **Pygarg,** or an **Albicilla.** The Nares or Nostrils oblique, the Beak and Sear yellow, the Eye-brows overhanging the Eyes, the Eyes red (in some yellow) the Feet yellow, the Head pale, or whitish; the Feathers being sharp pointed, and their Shafts black, the Neck reddish, the Rump blackish, and the whole Body of a dark dusky colour, the prime Feathers of the Wings black, the lesser row the edges Ash colour, the Tail the upper part, half way white, and the lower part black. This is supposed by many to be only the Male to the **Ring Tail,** or **Hen Harrier.**

The **Morphno Eagle,** is of a dusky colour, the ends of the Wing and Belly hath many oval white spots, the tip of the Beam-feathers white, so is the Tail, the Feet Feathered to the Toes, all spotted with white Ash colour spots. The Eyes yellow, the Toes covered with yellow Scales, towards the Tallons, with annulary Tables.

The **Crested Eagle,** it is flat crowned in the top, whereof it hath two long black Feathers, with two small ones on either side; these it can when it lists, set up an end, and again lay down flat. The Wings reach but to the bottom, or rise of the Tail, the Head is covered with dusky Feathers with yellow edges, the sides of the Neck with brownish yellow, the Throat and Breast white, varigated at the sides with black, the Belly and Legs white Feathers down to the Feet, and the Feet yellow. This is termed the **Crested Eagle of Brasil,** or the **Urutaurana.**

The **Royal Eagle,** is of colour reddish, and is called in Greek *Gnesios*, it is of a midle bigness to the other Eagles: It is a rare Bird, and scarcely to be seen.

LV. He beareth Argent, a **Gerfalcon** Gules, **belled** Or. There are several kinds of Hawks, which Falconers divide into two ranks, that is long winged, and short Winged: the first have their wings when closed, reach to the end of the tail. The other when closed reach far short of the end of the tail, not much further then the Rump. This is born by the name of *Foulgar.*

Sable a **Goshawk,** Argent: **Armed, Jessed,** and **Belled,** Or. Born by the name of *Boulton.*

☞ Where note that where it is not Membred, or Armed, it doth imply, that it is all of one colour: for **Membred** signifieth the Legs; and **Armed** the Bill and Claws, as saith *Morgan, fol.* 59. but to use **Membred** for the Feet and Legs; **Beaked** for the Bill, and **Armed** for the Claws, is the most certain and sure way.

LVI. He beareth Argent a **Falcon** proper. This is also called a **Falcon Gentle,** a white Coronet encompasseth their head near the neck, the head, neck and shoulders are brown, the back of an Azure colour distinguished with transverse brown marks, the Throat white, spotted with oblong lines.

O on a Canton B a Falcon volant O born by *Thurston.*

A a Fesse between 3 Falcons volant B Beaked Jessed and Belled O by the name of *Georges.*

Per Cheveron B and A 2 Falcons volant O by the name of *Stephens.*

A 3 Falcons G born by *Falconer.*

O a Falcon B Beaked, Membred or Armed G born by *Karwed* of *Lwydiarth* an ancient *Brittain.*

B a Cheveron between 3 Falcons A born by *Phillips.*

O on a bend B 3 Falcons A Jesses and Bells O by *Deggs.*

S 3 Falcons A born by *Hawkesworth.*

G a Falcon A born by *Harbrone.*

Several sorts of Falcons.

The **Peregrine Falcon,** hath a long and narrow train, sharp towards the end, the tips whitish, the shafts in the midle of the Feathers red, the Feet a pale green, or between a yellow, and a lead colour; the Beak the same, short Legs, and slender Toes, black Talons; the Thighs long: the Eyes black, the Iris or Circle about it blew, the Head Ash colour, the Back of a livid colour, almost like that of a Goose: The marks of the Wings are of a Copper colour, the Throat spotted with long direct blackish lines, the Thighs with transverse ones, the Legs of a Saffron colour, but more dilute.

The **Black Peregrine Falcon,** hath its Beak of a sky colour, the Membrane which compasses the Nostrils deep yellow, Eyes blew, the Eye-lids the edges round yellow, the Head, Neck, Back and Wings of a dark brown, almost black, sprinkled with black spots in every Feather, the great Feathers being crossed with transverse ones, the Throat of a yellowish white, stained with black spots: Breast, Belly and Thighs, white crossed with transverse black lines; the Train dusky marked with cross bars, the Legs and Feet yellow: the Thighs long, Shanks short, Toes slender, and long, covered with Scales, the Talons black.

The **Sacre Falcon,** the Head is grey, Eyes black, Beak blew, the spots of the Breast and Back brown, the inside of the Wings, and Thighs white; the Train long, and varied with Semicircular spots; the Leg and Feet blew. Yet such as have Mewed or cast their Feathers, have their Backs and Wings on the upper side black.

The **Jer-Falcon,** the Crown of Ash colour, the Beak blew, the Pupil of the Eye black, the Circle blew, the Back Wings and Train, white; yet every Feather of them marked with a black spot like an Heart, or the Eyes in a Peacocks tail, the flag Feathers of the Wings near the tips, have longer black marks, which is inclosed with a white border, the Throat, Brest and Belly pure white, the Tail marked with transverse black bars, the Legs and Feet of a delayed blew, covered all over with a continued Series of board-like Scales.

The **Mountain Falcon,** after he hath Mewed, hath his Head black as a Crow; the Nostrils covered with a Saffron colour skin, Eyes yellowish, the Neck Shoulders and Back to the Rump blewish; the Throat and

and Breast white, marked with round spots; the Train black, the Feathers investing the Thighs brown; It is observed that the oftner they Mew their Feathers, by so much is their Throat whiter, and the spots smaller, and their Back and Loynes of a deeper blew.

The **Grey Falcon**, the Beak black, the Nares compassed with a yellow Membrane, the Iris of a deep black, edges of the Eye-lids yellow, the whole Body in general is of one colour, that is Cinereous, tending to blew, the Legs and Feet covered with a board-like Scales, of a Saffron colour.

The **Haggard Falcon**, so called by reason of the shortness of its Neck: the Head scarce appears above the point of the shoulders, so that it seems to have a bunch on its Back. It is in colour like the common Falcon, or Falcon gentle.

The **Red Indian Falcon**, the Head is of an Ash colour, tending to brown, so is the Neck, Back and Outside of the Wings, the Beak yellow, with an Ash coloured Hook: the Pupil of the Eyes black, circled with brown or chesnut colour, the edges of the Eye-lids yellow, from the exteriour, and lesser corner of the Eyes, is drawn a long stroak of red: the Breast, Belly, inside of the Wings, the Hips and Thighs, are all fulvous or red, of a pale Vermilion colour, but the Chin is marked with a long Cinereous spot downwards; the Breast besprinkled with small scattering specks of the same colour, the Train is long, each Feather varied with alternate spaces of black and Ash colour, in form of a Semicircle, the Legs and Feet are yellow, the Talons black. The Male of this Red Falcon, hath the Bill blew, with a small yellow Membrane covering the Nostrils, the Breast not marked with any spots, the interiour flag Feathers of the Wings, are white, crossed with many transverse brown marks, the rest of the upper side of the Wings of a deep fulvous colour, like red Ocker: the upper side of the Tail, is adorned with a double variety of transverse spots, of white and Ash colour, inclining to blew alternately disposed.

The **Crested Falcon**, the head black, copped with a Crest hanging down backwards from the hinder part of the Head (**like a Lapwings**) but Forked, the Neck red, the Breast and Belly party coloured of white and black, the alternate cross lines very fair, Eyes yellow, the Beak of a deep blew, black towards the point, the base covered with a yellow Membrane, the Legs Feathered down to the Feet, the Feet yellow, Talons black, the lesser rows of the Wing Feathers, were edged with white; the Train was varied with tranverse spaces, or beds of black and cinereous, alternately: the rest of the Feathers were black.

The **White Falcon**, hath the whole Body milk-white, only spotted on the Breast and Tail with yellow; the Beak white, the Feet yellow.

Several sorts of Hawks.

LVII. He beareth Or, a **Goshawk**, proper. It is also termed by the simple name of a **Hawk**. These kind of Birds of Prey are but small, far short of the **Falcon**; of which there are these several Species.

The **Goshawk**, is of a dark brown colour on the head, neck, back, and upper sides of the Wings; the whole Breast and Belly white, with transverse black circular lines, standing very thick; the Thighs are covered over with reddish Feathers, having a black line in the middle down the shaft; the Leggs and Feet yellow, Talons black, Beak blue, and the Sear of a yellowish green; the Train is long, of a cinereous or Dun-colour, with four or five cross blackish bars, standing at a great distance each from other.

The **Spar-hawk**, or **Sparrow-Hawk**, hath a blue hooked beak, black towards the tip; the Basis of the upper chap is covered with a yellowish green skin, eyes yellow, Eye-brows over-hung, white; the head brown; the neck the feathers edged with white, the Back, Shoulders, Wings of dark brown; the Neck, Breast, Belly and under the Wings various of white, and blackish, or russet, waved lines, thick set crossing the whole Breast and Belly; the Feathers under the Chin, and by the Legs are white, with the middle parts next the Shafts; especially towards the tips, brown or russet; the under side of the flag feathers on the interiour Web of each are dark transverse spots or marks: the Train is long, having five or six cross bars of black, the tips of the Feathers are white; Legs long and slender, and yellow; Talons black.

The **Lanner**, or the **Leonard**, it hath blue Leggs, Feet and Beak, the anteriour or Breast feathers, particoloured, of black and white; the black lines or marks not crossing the Feathers, but drawn long-ways down the middle of them, contrary to what they are in **Falcons**. The Back, Wings, and Tail are brown, not much variegated; under the Wings are round marks like little pieces of Money dispersed through the Superficies. The Male is a **Lanneret**, and is almost of the same colour and shape, but of a lesser body.

The **Hobby**, hath the upper mandible prominent, hooked semi-circular, it hath a tooth or angle on each side, at the beginning of the hook part, which is received into a hollow dent or nick in the lower chap, is of a dark blue; the Sear yellow, Eyes of a Hazl: colour, Ey-lids yellow. The head of a deep chesnut, the neck clay-colour, back and wings, a dark brown, or cinereous black. Those on the rump, and lesser pinion feathers, being lighter; the greater pinion feathers, and those on the back, darker; the Chin and upper part of the Throat white, with a dash of yellow; to this white are drawn from the head on each side two lines; one from the aperture, or open of the mouth, the other from the hinder part or noddle. The Breast reddish, spotted with black the edges white; the Belly and Thighs, red, spotted with little black spots. The extream or outmost feathers in the VWings, have their tips black, all of them their interiour VWebs, varied with transverse clay colour spots; and the covert feathers of the under side of the VWings, are black, curiously painted with round spots of white, deluted with red. The train being long in the middle, and shorter, on either side, have their exteriour vanes marked with transverse reddish spots; the utmost tips being whitish; the Leggs and Feet yellow, the middle and outmost Toes connected (as in others of this kind) to the first joint; the Talons black as Jet.

The **Stannel**, or **Stanniel**; of others called a **Kestral**, or **Stone-gall**, and in some places termed a **Wind-hover**. The beak is hooked, the middle next the Sear white; the rest a dark blue. It hath a Tooth or Angle, which is received in a dent or cavity in the lower chap; Eyes and Eye-lids yellow, a great head inclining

to an ash colour, and marked with narrow black lines along the Shafts of each Feather; the back Shoulders, and covert Feathers of the upper-side the VVings, Ferrugineous, or reddish brown, marked with black spots, that is each Feather being tipt with black; the Breast and belly of a paler red, varied with black lines, drawn downwards along the Shafts; but the Chin and lower Belly without spots. The flag feathers of the wing on the outside are of a brown, or dusky colour, but the inner vans, are of a reddish white, indented with the brown, like a Saw-teeth; the under side of the VVings is white, with black spots. The Train have the tips of a rusty white, then succeeds a black bar or ring; the rest of the feathers being of a rusty ash-colour, are marked with transverse black spots; the Leggs and Feet yellow, and Talons black.

The **Merlin** is the least of all Hawks, not much bigger than a **Black-bird**; the Beak is blue, with a tooth on each side, the Eyes of a Hazle colour, the head back and upper part, party coloured of a dark blue and brown; the flag feathers of the VVings black, with ferrugineous spots. The Train of a dark brown or blackish colour, with transverse white Bars; Breast and Belly of a rusty white, with brown spots tending downwards: the Legs are long slender and yellow, the Talons black; the Head is encircled with a whitish yellow ring, like a Coronet. The Male is called a **Jack-Merlin**, and is in all things answerable to the Female, save in the train; the He is said to have but five cross pale red bars, and the She seven.

The **Bald Buzzard**, hath a black beak hooked and covered from the base as far as the Nostrils, with a bluish skin, or sear bunching out; the pupil of the Eye large and black; the Irides yellow, the Feathers on the crown are white, all the upper parts are black and ferrugineous, the Throat Breast and Belly, white; but about the crop the Feathers are ferrugineous, the Legs are cloathed with white and soft Feathers: the prime or flag Feathers in each Wing, especially the four outmost have the interior vans variegated with white and black alternately, that is indented like the teeth of a Saw; under the shoulders are white, spotted with black towards the tips, the third and fourth row of those Feathers as cover the roots, or quills, of the flag Feathers, are marked towards the tips with dusky spots, having their edges ferrugineous, the lesser Feathers above these, or them on the top of the ponion are white, the Train is broad, and of an equal length, having the borders party coloured of white, and a brownish red, indented as in the Wings, the Legs are long, the Feet of a pale blew, or verdigrese colour, armed with Semicircular black Talons, the Toes are so disposed, that the outmost of the Fore-Toes may bend backward, as in Owls and Parrots.

The **Common Buzzard**, or **Puttock**; the Beak short Hooked, and of a deep blew; the Membrane skin yellow, the Bridle of the mouth, or the shin of the corners of it, is yellow; the Irides or circle of the Eyes white, with a dash sometimes of yellow and sometimes of red: the Membrane for Nictation blew, the colour of all the upper parts is a furrugineous black, in the covert Feathers of the Wing, are many white spots, which when it is spread makes a kind of white line: the lower side of the Body is a dilute yellow, or yellowish white, the *Breast* stained with long brownish spots, not transversly placed, but tending downwards, in each Feather drawn according to the length of the shaft; the Chin a reddish brown, the shafts black; on the Back grows no Feathers, but only down; for the scapular Feathers cover the whole Back. The flag Feathers in the Wing, the four outmost are tipt dusky white, the rest more whiter, the interior Webs of all are varigated with broad transverse, dusky and whitish strakes, or bars. The Train is long, which being spread terminates in a circular circumference, the tips are Ash colour, then a transverse line broad, the remaining part being varigated, with black and cinereous, transverse spaces or bars, the Thighs are long, the Legs short, Feathered a little below the Knees, the rest scaled, yellow; Talons black.

The **Honey Buzzard**, hath the Beak black, the same being crooked, and bunching out between the Nostrils and the Head, the Basis a black ruged skin; the Irides bright yellow, the Head Ash coloured, tht Plumage on the Back of a Mouse dun, the tips of the flag Feathers, as also of the second and third row in the Wings white; the tail variegated with transverse obscure, and lucid, or blackish and whitish spaces, rings or bars, the tips white. The lower parts of the *Body* white, the Breast and Belly spoted with black, drawn downwards, the Legs and Feet yellow, the Talons black.

The **Ringtail**, and **Henharrier**, or **Henharrow**: the latter the Male to the former. At the corners of the Jaw grown bristles reflected forwards; from the hinder part of the head, round the Ears, to the Chin, is a Ring or Wreath of Feathers standing up like a Crown, dusky, with the edges of a reddish white, the Ears naked; the Back and Neck of a dark reddish brown, edged with red; the Belly and Breast, of a dilute reddish colour, or white, with a tincture of red, marked with long dusky spots, tending downwards along the shafts of the Feathers. The Rump hath white Feathers, the Tail is tipt with a reddish Ash colour, to which succeeds alternately, red and black bars, the black being much the broader; the flag Feathers in the Wings, the exteriour Webs are of the same colour to the Back, the interiour being variegated, with transverse black and white strokes alternately; the *Bill* is black, the Sear yellow, so is the Eyes, the Legs and Feet, long and yellow.

The **Henharrow**, the Male, hath the Head, Neck and Back, of Ash colour; the Rump white, the Breast white, with some transverse dusky spots, the exteriour flag Feathers are black tipt white, and Ash colour, the covert Feathers cinereous, in other things like the Female.

The **Kite**, or **Glead**, hath the Head and Chin of a pale Ash colour, varied with black lines among the Shafts, the Neck red, the back dusky brown, the lesser row of Wing Feathers are party coloured of red, black, and white, the midle of each Feather along the shafts black; the long Scapular Feathers covering the Back have black lines like the Flags: Inside of the Wing reddish, with black spots; the Plumage of the lower parts hath the edges Ash colour, then follows red, and the midle black. The flag Feathers are six outmost black, the next six of a dark cinereous colour, all the rest black, having in the outward Webs, black transverse lines, with white between: the Tail forked, the two midle Feathers black, the others reddish, with black cross lines, white between and

and so tipt, Beak black, Seat yellow, so is the Eyes, Feet and Legs yellow, Talons black. It only moves its Tail in flying, whereby it directs its course in the Air, without much moving the Wings.

The **Moze Buzzard,** the Beak hooked and black, the Seat yellow, the Irides yellow, the Crown of the head clay or sandy colour, all the rest of the Body, is of a dark reddish brown, only at the midle joynt of both Wings, is a spot of the same clay or reddish sandy colour, and the root or rise of the Tail is fulvous: the flag Feathers are black, the covert Feathers party coloured, brown and fulvous: the Tail spread is circular, being party colour, of a dark and light fulvous or bay, Legs Feathered below the Knees, Feet yellow, Talons black.

The **Brasilian Kite,** called **Caracara:** the colour of the whole Plumage is Tawny, with white and yellow specks, the Tail party coloured of white and brown; hooked Bill, black; Legs Feet yellow; Claws long and roundish, black.

The **Bucher Bird,** or a **Shrike;** it is the least of the *European* rapacious Birds, having a straight Bill, only hooked a little at the point, a Tail like a **Map-pie,** with the outward Feathers, the shortest; about the bigness of a black Bird: the Bill black, having a small tooth on either side, the Tongue is slit, or forked at the end: the Nostrils have about them stiff black hair or bristles; from the corner of the Mouth, through the Eyes to the hinder part of the Head, is drawn a black line, the Head, Back and Rump, Ash colour; the Chin and Belly white, the Breast and Throat varied with black or dark transverse stroaks, the flag Feathers are black, tipt from the four outmost to the tenth Feather, with white; but so as every one inward exceeds the other: from the tenth to the Body, the white diminisheth again; in the Tail the two midle Feathers are black tipt with white, and all the out side Fathers are wholly white, Legs and Feet black: This Bird is of some called a **Wierangle,** and a **Grey Pie,** or a **Murthering Pie,** or **French Pie.**

The **Flusher,** or lesser **Bucher Bird;** it is no bigger then a **Lark:** with a Bill red hooked at the end, near which is two angular appendices or teeth overhanging the lower Chap; about the Mouth and Nostrils grow stiff black hairs or bristles, the Head and Rump cinerous, the Back reddish rusty, or ferrugineous, with a black stroak from the Mouth behind the Head, with a white stroak by and above it; Throat and Breast white, dasht with red; the Belly white, the Wing Feathers dusky, the exteriour vans of those next the Body red, the edges of the midlemost white, the Tail hath the longest Feathers in the midle black, the out side Feathers, next the midle are edged white, the next them on each side, the Feathers half white, especially the interiour Webs: and the outmost the exteriour Webs are wholly white, the Feet are black, or of a dark blew.

The **Aliet,** (which *Upton* saith is the Falcon) but others affirm that it is a little Fowl that Preyeth upon small Birds, of whom it is said, the **Aliet** is a Bird of little power; and little Birds he eats and doth devour.

S an Hawk, or a Sparrow-Hawk, or Falcon Preying O standing with his Wings expanded on a Duck, its Belly upward, A on a chief O a cross Bottony G by the name of *Madden.*

G 3 Spar-Hawks A Jessed and Belled O born by by *Atherton* of *Atherton* in *Lancashire.* Some write it *Atterton.*

S a Gosh-Hawk A Armed, Iessed and Belled O by *Bolton.*

B 3 Hawks A Armed, Jessed or Belled O born by *Penington.*

B 3 such with Wings expansed A born by *Nevile.*

A a Cheveron between 3 Hawks S Belled O by *Worsley* of *Birkenhead.*

G an Hawk with Wings expansed holding a Duck under his right Foot (or right Talons) A by Sir *Rob. ap Madock Lo.* of *Brompton.*

LVIII. He beareth Azure, a **Falcons leg erazed** at the **Thigh** Argent, **Jessed** Gules, **Bells and Gervels,** Or. By the name of *Jerman.*

G 3 such A Jessed and Belled O by *Colwicher.*

☞ As the **Eagle** is born in its several parts, so is the **Hawk** or **Falcon,** with all other sorts of Fowl: as their **Heads couped** and **erazed,** Wings displaid or expansed; demy Bodied, Legs couped or erazed in the Thighs, or Shanks: and the like, as I have shewed in the bearing of the Eagle, and its diverse parts.

LIX. He beareth Argent, a **Sparhawke** (or a **Falcon**) proper. **Jessed** Gules, and **Belled,** Or: standing upon a **Pearch** issuing out of base, Sable. Born by the name of *Chasse.*

S the like Falcon A pearched upon a stock fixed in the base point of the Escochion of the second, Armed Iessed, Belled, O. as Mr. *Grillim f. l.* 229. blazons it, and is born by the name of *Weel,* and could not this more brefly be termed, a Hawk Iessed and Belled on a pearch in base, and not to make so many tautologies.

G a bend Wavey A in the sinister chief a Falcon standing on a pearch Or. Born by *Hawkridge* of *Hawkworth* in *Devonshire.*

LX. He beareth Gules, a **Falcon** Or, **Jessed** Sable, **Belled** and stand on a **Falconers Glove,** Argent. any kind of Bird of Prey, standing upon any thing that is its meat, or that by nature they feed on it, they are then said to seize, or seizing upon such or such a thing, in such or such a posture or else they are termed standing, as in this example, see *numb.* 62.

A Falcon standing on a Lure (or Lewere) proper. Born by *Lewering,* for his Crest.

A Falcon standing on the stock of a Tree, *&c.* Born by *Hewet,* for his Crest.

G a Falcon A standing on a Glove to to the sinister, O by *Eysenwanger.*

LXI. He beareth Sable, a **Demy Falcon Overture,** Argent, **Gorged** with a Crown (or Coronet) Or. This is born by *Gorewort'.*

LXII. He beareth Argent, a **Falcon** with Wings **expansed,** Or; **Seizing** on a **Partridge,** proper, and is the Crest of *Gleed* of *Gr[illegible]ton.* After this manner are **Eagles, Gawshawks** and other kind of Ravenous Birds, and Birds of Prey; born in Coats of Arms, upon **Hares, Coneys, Fowl** and **Fish;** which have the same term of **seizing** &c. And sometimes the Beast, or Fowl, seized upon; are born with their Bellys upward, and with their Wings in several postures.

An Eagle Sepurture, feeding on the ponion of the Wing. Born by *Ponigale.*

A Falcon, Jesse, Belled and Vervels, sieized an a Mouse all proper, by *Cavendish.*

3. HAving now given examples of the several bearings of the Eagles, and other Birds of Prey; generaly called by the name of **Hawks**, of which the **Falcon** is most in use, because she passeth all the rest in boldness, and courtesie; and from hence it is, that the other Titles of the Art or Science of **Falconrie**, and **Falconer**, are derived from her. The first signifying the Art, Profession, and Knowledge of keeping Hawks: and the other the Person that deals in the maning, and luring, and feeding them.

The Names of Male-Hawks with their Females.

A **Sacret** or **Sakaret**, is the Male of a **Saker** or **Sacre.**

A **Tarcel** of a **Goshawk**, the Male of a **Goshawke**, called also a **Tyercelet**, or **Tyercell** of a **Goshawk.**

A **Jerkin**, is the Male of a **Jerkfalcon**, or **Gerkfalcon.**

An **Iron**, is the Male of an **Eagle.**

A **Musket**, is the Male of a **Sparhawk**, or **Sparrowhawk.**

A **Tercell gentle**, is the Male of a **Falcon.**

A **Lanneret**, is the Male of a **Leonard**, or **Lanner.**

A **Jack**, is the Male of a **Merlin**, some call him a **Jack-Merlin.**

A **Boccaret**, is the Male of a **Boccarell.**

A **Henharrow**, or **Henharrier**, is the Male of a **Ring-tail.**

A **Jack**, is the Male of the **Hobby**, of some called a **Robbin.**

A **Tiercell**, is the Male of a **Mylion.** Or **Tassell** is the general Term for the Male of all **Hawks.**

The Names of all Hawks.

1. Long Winged Hawks are,

The **Gerfalcon**, and **Jerkin.**
The **Falcon**, and **Tiercell gentle.**
The **Lanner**, and **Lanneret.**
The **Bockerell** and **Bockeret.**
The **Merlin**, and **Jack-Merlin.**
The **Hobby**, and **Jack.**
The **Stelletto** of *Spain.*
The **Red Rook** of *Turkie.*
The **Moskite** of *Virginia.*

2. Short Winged Hawks.

The **Eagle**, and **Iron.**
The **Goshawk**, and **Tiercell.**
The **Sparhawk**, and **Musket.**
The two **French Pys**, and **Buchers Birds.**

3. Wild Hawks which are Sluggish, and Indocile.

The **Stanyell**, and **Ring-tail**, and **Hen-driver.**
The **Raven**, and **Buzzard**, and **Bald-Buzzard.**
The **Kite.**

The Names of Falcons, or other Hawks, according to their Ages.

1. An **Eyesse**, is a Term used to a young Hawk, as long as she is in the Eyrie, or Place of her breeding. Termed also a **Nyasse** or **Iyas Hawg.**

2. A **Rammage Falcon**, so called after she hath left the Eyrie, for four Month *May, June, July, August*; in the Sparhawk this age is Termed a **Brancher.**

3. A **Soar Hawk**, which Term is given them for about four Months after. It is called also a **Sorage** Hawk.

4. A **Mewer**, or **Mewed Hawk** (of some called **Murzarolt**, or **Carvist**; as much as to say Carry on the fist) they are so called, from *December* to the middle of *May.*

5. An **Entermewer**, from the middle of *May* to the latter end of *December*, they are so called: because they cast their Coats; of some they are Termed, **Hawks** of the **first Coat**, being the second Year of their Age, called also **Haggards** of a **Coat**, or **Hawks** of the **first Coat**, and so as long as they live.

Yet Mr. *Ray* in his Ornithology of Birds, *fol.* 69. saith that in the third Year of their Age, they are called **White Hawks**; and the fourth Year, when the come to their full growth and perfection, **Hawks of the first Coat**; but for what reason, he knoweth not.

The Names, or Terms given to the several parts and members of a Falcon, and so consequently of all Hawks.

I. Of the Head.

The **Border** or **Bridle**, or **Corner** of the Mouth.

The **Beak** is the Bill, called also the **Mandible**, or upper part.

The **Hook** of the Beak, the **Neb.**

The **Appendence**, or tooth in the middle of the Bill.

The **Clap**, or lower **Mandible**, the under part of the Bill, also the Clap of the Beak.

The **Seat** of the Beak, the soft place of the Beak next to the Head, above the Nostrills: the yellow part above the Beak.

The

The **Nares**, the Nostrills or little holes on either side the higher part of the Bill, or Beak.

The **Burrs**, or Ear burs, are the Ears:

The **Front**, the Hawks forehead, or foreparts of the Head.

The **Crynets**, are the little Feathers under the eyes, or hairs about the Sear.

The **Membrane**, is the thin skin which covers the Eyes, though the Eye-lid be open, called **the Nictatious Membrane.**

The **Orbit**, or Cavaty in which the Eye is placed.

The **Pupil**, is the black or sight of the Eye.

The **Iris**, or round circle about the sight of the Eye.

2. The Wing.

The **Pinion**, or Ponion of the Hawk, is the fleshy part of the Wing in which the Feathers are set.

The **Ply**, or bent of the Wing, is the middle joynt in the ponion.

The **Flag Feathers**, the Beam Feathers, the Quill Feathers, the Prime or Principle Feathers, or the Sails of the Wings. All these Terms are used for the first row of Feathers, or the long Quill Feathers in the Wing.

The **Principle**, or the two Principles, are the two first Feathers in each Wing: the long one, and next to it.

The **Flag Feather**, that next to the first and second principle, the third Feather in the Wing.

The **Sarcell Feathers**, are the extream ponion Feathers in the Hawks Wing, those next the Body.

The **Bastard Wing**, or **Secundary Wing**, are the small Feathers being 5 or 6 in number, they cover the Quill Feathers, of most called the Covert Feathers of the Wing, or exteriour covert Feathers, *&c.*

The **Covert Feathers**, of the Wing are such as cover the Quills of the Sails of the Wing: there is a first row, which are longer then those of the second row, and the third smallest of all, which are upon the edg of the pinion.

The **Interiour Bastard** Wing, are the like small Feathers which cover the Quills, on the middle of the Wing.

The **Shaft**, is the middle part of a Feather to which the *Web* is fixed, the higher part of the Quill.

The **Vane**, or **Web**, is the threads of Feathers which are on both sides the Shaft, called also **Margins.**

The **Quill**, is that part of the Feather, as sticketh in the Flesh.

The **Filaments**, see Vane.

The **Ridge**, or base of the Wing, the edge or outside of the Ponion.

3. The Body.

The **Plumage**, is the general Term for the Feathers all over the Body.

Summed, well summed, when a Hawk hath all her Plumes or Feathers.

Unsummed, when she wants any of her Feathers, or that they are not well grown.

The **Mails**, are the Breast Feathers.

The **Pannel**, is the Pipe next the Fundament of a Hawk, in which she disgesteth he meat. It is taken for the Belly or Guts, as empty pannelled, or large pannelled, when they are empty or full bellied.

The **Tuel**, the Fundament, the Arse-hole.

The **Baile**, or Brailes, the small Feathers about the Tuell, both above and below.

The **Gorge**, the place for meat, the Stomach: in other Fowl called the **Crop**, or **Craw**, or **Mewe.**

4. The Train, or Tail.

The ——— Rump, where the Train is fixed.

The **Glandules**, the Oyle Carnells in the Rump.

The **Train**, is the tail, or long Feathers set in the Rump.

The **Covert** Feathers of the Train, are the under Feathers of the Tail next the Rump.

5. The Legs and Feet.

The **Arms**, are the Legs, from the Thighs to the Feet.

The **Pounces**, are the Feet, or Toes, or Fingers of the Hawk, by which she grippeth and holds her Prey.

The **Callens**, are her Claws, by which she kills and teareth what she gets: called of some her Arms, or Weapons.

The **Stretchers**, are the Toes.

The **Singles**, or **Petty Singles**, are the Toes of the Hawk.

The **Sear** of the Foot, is the bottom, or sole of the Foot: it is also called the **Palm** of the Foot.

The **Semicircular** table, or rings of the Pounces; are the rings, or Wrinkles in the Feet, near the Claws.

The **Table**, or square scales, on Hawks Legs.

Annulary Tables, are round scales on the Toes.

6. Diseases in Hawks.

Crabbing, is when a Hawk hurts her Wings, in beating or fluttering with her Wings, in the rach of another Hawk.

The **Pynne**, is a disease in Hawks Feet, as the Gout or numness through cold or swelling: and it riseth in sharp Nails in the Palm, or bottom of the Foot; also it is a Disease in the Eye.

The **Frownce**, a canker or sore in the Mouth of the Hawk.

The **Pantas**, or **Asma**: a Disease in the *Breast*, which causeth shortness of breath, or hinders the drawing of breath, called also the **Pantise.**

The **Filanders**, are the Worms in Hawks, which are as small as a thread.

The **Mytes**, are Lice, or Vermine in Hawks.

The **Pipe**, a Disease often troubleth Chickens, and is a kind of hard skin or horn, that groweth on a Hawks tongue,

tongue, and keeps her from eating, see **Barbillons.**

The **Cataract**, is a Disease in the Eyes by having a skin, or thick film, growing over the sight of the Eye.

The **Dawe**, is a Disease about the Eyes, by the grow- of a lump of Flesh or such like; and it proceeds from Rhume, or from a blow.

The **Film**, see Cateract, called also **Cataract.**

The **Uerol**, the **Web**, are two Diseases in the Eyes of Hawks, some call them the Pynne; they do proceed from Rume.

The **Formica**, a Disease in Hawks Beaks, which eateth and fretteth away the Beak, it is also a Disease in Dogs Ears which torments them by scratching.

The **Escarchillus**, a Disease in the Head by Rhume, and in the Throat, which hindreth the Hawk from casting.

The **Barbillons**, a Disease in Hawks tongues, like the Pipp in Hens and Chickins.

The **Fistula**, is the running of the Nares, with Water, or filth.

The **Swimming** of the Head, a Disease discerned by the often gaping, and bateing of the Hawks Wings.

The **Mophound**, is the cold of a Hawk.

The **Pavy**, or hidden **Evil**, is a glottonous Stomack, a greedinesse in eating, and devouring.

The **Caynte**, a Disease that makes them lose their Feathers, or to fret away the Feathers, that they come like sticks. As the long Feathers, and Flags are full of Taynts.

The **Cramp**, or Gout, is a Disease in the Feet through Gold and Swelling.

7: Terms of Art used in Falconry, with their Explanations.

Abate, is to lose their Flesh, go lean, become poor.

Bate, Bateing or Bateth, is when the Hawk flutter eth with her Wings either from Pearch or Fist, as it were striveing to get away, also it is taken for her striving with her Prey, and not forsaking it till it be overcome, see **Busking.**

Bathing, is when she washeth or dippeth her self in water.

Beaching, as Beach the Hawk before company, is to feed her in company to make her acquainted; a Beaching of good warm meat, is fed with warm meat.

Beak, as a large or a short Beak, but call it not a great or little Bill.

Bind,

Blanck, as blanck seared in the feet, or blanck eyelids, that is of ———— a colour.

Bowze, is when a Hawk drinks often, and seems to be continually thirsty; others take it for her oft washing and stretching of her self, as **Bathing.**

Bowet, is when a young Hawk covets to get out of her Nest, and clambers on the Boughs of the Tree.

Brood, the young Hawks in the Nest.

Breech her, that is, to tie a Leather or such like to the Arms or Leggs of the Hawk, to keep her she shall not stretch her leggs, or open her self too wide, which will rent and spoil her in her flying of the Hare.

Branch or **Stand**, is to make the Hawk leap from Tree to Tree, till the Dogs Spring the Partridg.

Brawned, is when the Hawks Thighs are fat, and in good liking.

Busking, or **Baiting**, is the striving or strugling of the Fowl which the Hawk hath seized upon.

Casting, is any thing you give the Hawk to cleanse her Gorge, and to purge her, whether it be Flannel cloth, Thrums, Thistle Down, or Feathers made up into a Lump or Pellet, if given over night, or any other convenient time, they will naturally cast it up again. This term is also used for a Spaniel or Setting Dogs hunting, as he cast over such and such Fields, that is, he hunted them.

Cawking, time, is treading time, when they build and make themselves Nests, in breeding time

Cauterize, is to burn or sear a greised part of a Hawk, if the Disease so require it.

Cauterizing Iron, is the Searing Iron, or an Instrument to search Wounds in Hawks.

Cadge, is that Circular piece of Wood an which Hawks are carried, when they are exposed to sale.

Carry, is a flying away with the Fowl when taken.

Cast your Hawk to the Pearch, is to put him on the Pearch.

Canceleer.

Countenances, the Hawk Countenances, when she picketh her self.

Cast your Hawk to the Pearch; say not, set your Hawk on the Pearch.

Check, is when the Hawk forsakes her proper Game, and flyeth at Pyes, Crows, or the like, which crosseth her in the flight. A going out: or flyeth a playing.

Coping Irons, are Instruments used in coping or paring of Hawks Beaks, Pounces, and Talons, when over grown; to **Cop**, is to pare them.

Cowing, is when young Hawks quiver and shake their Wings, to their old ones, in their feeding.

Coy, or Coying, is cherished well, made much off.

Collieth, noddeth her Head, maketh a motion, as if she would take a flight: not to say breaketh.

Crabb, or Crabbing, is when Hawks standing too near, fight with one another.

Depium, is to pull off the Feathers: **Dismantle** the same.

Disclose, is when the young just peeps through the shell. It is also taken for laying, hatching, or bringing forth young; as she disclosed three Birds.

Display the Train, is to open the Feathers of the Tail, as they will often do as they stand on the Pearch but generally in their flying.

Disgorge, or casteth her Gorge, is her casting to cleanse the Mew.

Dropping, is when a Hawk mutes, or casts out her Excrements, directly downward in several drops: not Yerking it straight forwards, or longways from her.

Engouted, is of a mixt colour.

Enoyling.

Enured, or **Inured**; taught or brought up to one purpose.

Endewed, is disgested her meat, empty Gorged, having no meat therein, Endeweth her Gorge, cleanseth her Pannell.

Enseame, is the purging of a Hawk from her Glut, and

and Grease. It is also likewise taken for the entering the Hawk, or first teaching them to fly at several Games, to encourage them; to make them willing to fly, of some termed **Entering a Hawk.**

Enterpened, when the Feathers are late in coming forth: when they are entangled; letted or hindred.

Embowelled, and not **fully endued**; is when her Gorge is void and empty, and her Bowels something stiff and full, not well disgested her meat.

Embalmeth, see **Note.**

Eyesse, or **Eyiesse,** but **Eyas** and **Nyas** more proper: which are terms for young Hawks taken and brough away in the Nest. **Eyas** in the Eyrie, a young Hawk in the Nest.

Eyrie, or **Eyree,** is the place where Hawks build, and hath their young.

Falconer, is the Keeper, Feeder and Manner of all sorts of Hawks.

Fair Hawk, or a long thick Hawk, you shall say: and not term it a great Hawk.

Feaking, is when the Hawk wipeth her Bill or Beak after feeding.

Feeding, is to give her meat, as feed the Hawk, not give the Hawk meat.

Firmed, see **Summed** and **Plumed.**

Fly on Head, when Hawks forsake their Game; or on the missing their Game, betake her self to the next she meeteth.

Foye-Hawk.

Foye-Male, the term given to all Females of Hawks.

Frott, or **Rub** themselves, as Hawks will do: Frot her Eyes against the Ponions of her Wings; is to rub her Eyes on her Wings.

Frilleth, is the Cry, or Crying of Hawks.

Fugitive, or a **Rangler,** is a Hawk that rangleth and wandreth abroad, and will not be at command.

Full Gorged, is to have the Croop, full of meat; say not full Crooped or Crawed.

Gaping of the Hawk.

Game, is the term used to any thing the Hawk flyeth at: and sometimes taken for the flight it self.

Gleame, after a Hawk hath cast, she Gleameth, or throweth up filth from her Gorge.

Glytt, or **Glut,** is a slimy substance in the Pannel, or Belly of the Hawk.

Gripe, is to sease, or hold fast the Prey.

Gurgiting, is when she is stuffed or suffocated, with any thing, be it meat, or ought else.

Hack, is the place where the Hawks meat is laid in the Mew, and where she eateth it.

Hawk keeps her mark, is when she waits at the place, where she lays in Patridge, or the like: and stirs not till they be **retrived,** or put up.

Hewe, is a colour.

Herne at seidge, is when a Hern is found standing by the Water side, watching for Prey.

Jack, is the **Male Hawk,** see **Tiercell** or **Tassal.**

Jeouke, or **Jouketh,** sleepeth well and soundly.

Impe, or **Ympe,** is to mend a broken Feather, or to put a Feather into the Wings, or Train, instead of one lost or broken.

Ink, is the Neck from the Head to the Body of any Bird, which the Hawk doth Prey upon.

Intermewing, is from the first exchange of the Hawks Coat, till she turn white.

Lolleth, is when the Hawk hangeth her Wings.

Lure, or **Lewer,** or **Lewre,** is to call the Hawk to Lure, or teach her to come to it, or to the hand; also the Lure it self.

Liking, is when the Hawks fall to choose their mates: to tread the Hen.

Land, a term given to Water Fowl, when they are raised, or bated out of a Pitt or Pond of Water. Land the Mallerd.

Lease, is a long piece of slender Leather, with a Button at the end, by which the Hawk is tyed to the fist, or any thing else, on which she standeth.

Lean, is when the Hawk holds in to you.

Mewing, is the puting of the Hawk in the Mewe, or Chamber fitted for that purpose, it is also taken for the Hawks casting of her Feathers, as a Mewed Hawk of the first, second, or third Coat, when she hath cast her Feathers so often.

Mewte, or the dung of Hawks: muteth, shitteth, dungeth.

Man, or **Maned,** or **Maning,** is the ordering and teaching of the Hawk; well Maned, is the good ordering. To make a Hawk is the same. To **Mannage.**

Mayle, or **Mayld,** as yellow or black Mayld, is yellow or black coloured.

Mettelled, is the Nature quality and disposition of the Hawk, whether good or bad, according to the word added.

Mantle, is to advance her self bolt upright, to stretch out her Leg, and Wing all along the side of her Leg, to gape and stretch abroad her self.

Make Hawk, is an old Staunch Hawk, which inured to her flight, will easily instruct a young Hawk.

Mail a Hawk, is to wrap her up in a Handkercheif, or other cloath, that she may not be able to stir her wings, or struggle.

Mail of a Hawk, is taken either for the Breast, or Plumage of the Breast, in reference to its colour: for they say a Hawk changeth the Mail; or the Hawk is white Mailed, &c.

Muteth, or **Mutesheth,** is when she cast her excrement out behind, shiteth or **Sklifeth** as some term it, see **Slice.**

Moulting, the casting of her Feathers; Moulting time.

Nowsell, to entize or inure, the Hawk to love to fly at her Prey. Is a teaching to fly, an entering the Hawk. Nowsell Hawks at young Fowl; Nowsell her young.

Nipeing, is the biting of the Falconers hand, before the Hawk be well maned or taught.

Note, is her fetching of Oyle from her Rump, wherwith she embalmeth her Feet, and layeth her Feathers straight and smooth.

Ostreger, a Falconer, a Keeper, and Manner or Mannurer of Hawks.

Pelt, is the dead Body of any Fowl, the Hawk hath Killed and dismembred in any sort.

Pill or **Pelt,** of a Fowl, is the remains or flagments, refuse which are left, after the *Hawk* hath been relieved, or fed.

Plumage, are small Feathers given to a *Hawk* to make her cast, it is also meant for the well Feathering of a *Hawk*, see Plume.

Plume,

Plume, is in some sence to pull Feathers, and to feed upon the Prey, when the Faleoner is about to let the Hawk have a reward. Sometime it is ment for the Feathers themselves: as well Plumed, well Feathered; covered with Plume, covered with Feathers; of some termed **Plumage, or Somed.** The Plume, is also the general colour, or mixture of Feathers, in a Hawk, which sheweth he Constitution.

Prey, is the Bird, or Fowl, taken by the Hawk.

Pluming, is after the Hawk hath seized her Prey, doth dismantle it of its Feathers.

Petty, as Petty single, the ------- Toe or Pounce of the Hawks Feet, see **Singles.**

Pruneth, is when the Hawk picketh her self, draws her Feathers throw her Beak.

Preyne, is to lay her Feathers straight and even, called also premeing, or

Puketh, or **puteth over**, is when the Hawk removeth he meat from her Gorge, into her Bowels, Paunch or Belly; by transversing with her Body: she Puketh, is she cleanseth her *Body*.

Puteth over, when she removeth her meat from her Gorge to her Bowels, by transversing with her Body, but cheifly with her Neck.

Quarry, or **quarryon**, is the Fowl which the Hawk flyeth at, whether dead or alive, but it is taken especially for a flight, or the first flight of a Hawk, that is young: as first quarried, first entred to fly.

Quest, quest of a Dog; the calling or barking of a Dog in his hunting.

Raised in flesh, is when a Hawk grows fat.

Rake, is when the Hawk flys out too far from the Fowl.

Ramage-Hawk, or **rancher**, is a young Hawk that just left the Nest, but flys not far from it; leaping from bough to bough, following the old Dame.

Ramage, is when a Hawk is wild, and difficult to be reclaimed or tamed; is proud, stout of a high courage.

Rangle, is when Gravel is given to a Hawk, to bring her to her stomach.

Rangler, a Hawk that will be at no command, see fugitive.

Retrive, or **Retrese**, is when Patriges having been sprung, are to be found out again. It is also used for the barking of the Spanniel, when he springs a Patridge, or any other Fowl,

Rowze, or **Rouse**, is when a Hawk lifteth her self up, and shaketh, her self. to shake and quaver her whole Body.

Ruff, is when the Hawk hits her Prey, and yet not trusses it, or come down to the ground with it, misses it. **Ruff and Stuope**, is to strike it, and descends along with it.

Reclaim, is to make a Hawk tame, and gentle, and familiar, maned: taken of her wild nature.

Repesh, called back from flying. Lured in.

Recover, or **truss the Wings**, is when the Hawk keeps them close to her Body.

Rebate, is to forsake, or leave her Prey, to rebate is also to take her from her feeding, or Prey: to withdraw her.

Rebate, she is said to rebate, when by the motion of the bearers hand, she recovereth the fist or Pearch, from which she endeavoured to fly, see **Bate.**

Reformeth her Feathers, not a pruning, but a kind of picking of her self. see **Countenances.**

Seeled, or **Seeling**, is when a Hawk first taken, hath her Eyes drawn so up, or blinded, with a thread run through her Eye-lids that she sees not, or very little; the better to make her indure the hood: and tame them.

Seale, or **Seaze**, a seizing is when the Hawk, gripes her Prey within her Foot; to take and hold the Prey; or stand upon it.

Setting down, is when the Hawk is put into the Mew.

Slice, is when the *Hawk* muteth or shiteth a great distance from her, also it is taken for the scouring, or purging away the filth out of the Hawk. Able to slice far from her, and drops none.

Sliming, is when she muteth without droping.

Snyting or **Sewing her beak**, is the rubing, wiping and cleansing her Bill after she hath doneseeding.

Spying, is to put up any Land-fowl; spring the Pheasant and Patridge.

Stoup, or **Stouping** on the Wing, is when the Hawk is is aloft upon her Wings, and then descends to strike her Prey.

Soar, or flying aloft, termed also **Towering**: Soar a-loft.

Summed, or **Somed**, full summed, is when a Hawk is in her Plums or Feathers: full Feathered, the Feathers and Quills at the full groath of some termed, **Full-firmed.**

Souse, or **Souse** for **Souse**, is blow for blow, in the fighting and bearing of Hawks, and other strong fighting Fowl, as they Fly in the Air.

Spout, is to spit Water on the *Hawk* out of one's Mouth, when they will not bathe themselves.

Shapt, slender shape.

Singles, the Toes of a *Hawk* which are distinguished, by Long single: Petty single.

Stretchers.

Sowce, is to take the Game in flight.

Sa king, or **Stalking**, is to shadow or hide one's self from the sight of Wild Fowl, by means of a horse, or bush, a Stalking horse.

Swivell, or **Swivile**, a running ring, that *Hawks* are tyed too in the Mew, or other place; which keepeth the lease, or string from twisting.

Smiteth her beak, is wipeth her Beak or Bill, after she hath fed.

Sweepeth her Beak: see **Snyting**, or **Smiteth.**

Straineth, when she snatcheth or clapeth her Tallons on any thing, she is not said to clitch, or clitcheth at her Prey, but strain.

Tiercell, Tercell, or **Tassell**, is the general name for the Male of all large *Hawks*. as **Jack** is for the lesser sort.

Truss a *Hawk*, see Mail a *Hawk*.

Truss, is when a Hawk raiseth a Fowl a-loft, and so descendeth to the ground.

Truss the Wings, see **Recover.**

Towze up, is to mount on high, to rise aloft, to fly against.

Train, here ment for any kind of Fowl for Prey, which the Falconer casteth out for the *Hawk* to fly and seize upon, to enure her to fly.

Tyn,

Tye, Tyeing, is the bare Wing or Ponion of a Fowl, and a Leg of a Bird bare picked, which is given to the Hawk (indifferently sharp set) to pick at, to exercise his Body and Lymbs.

Tayle to Tayle, when the Hawk forsakes her Game, and flyeth another way.

Tune, is either good or bad liking, being or condition, in a good Tue.

Trick and Tryn, her self, is when the Hawk with her Beak doth lay her Feathers even and smooth, of some termed **Proyning:** as Proyn her Feathers.

Truss the Wing, is when the hawk keeps them close to her Body.

Untreclaimed, is when a Hawk is Wild.

Unseeling is when you take away the thread that runs through the Hawks Eye lids, and hinder her sight, is a suffering the Hawk to see.

Unstrike the Hood, is to draw the strings, that it may be in a readiness to pull off.

Unsummed, is when the Feathers of a Hawk are not fully grown.

Urines, are Nets to catch Hawks withall.

Uitell, or **Uiands,** the term for Hawks meat.

Vanes, as long Vanes, and Sails, see in Hawks Wing the term.

Vervells, small rings of Silver or other mettle which are fixed at the ends of the Jesses, through which the Falconer put the lease, to tye her to any place. On the Vervells is usually engraven the name of the Gentleman as oweth the Hawk.

Ventricle.

Unenterpen, when the Feathers grow well out, and are not hindred in the groath, by any obstruction.

Warble, is after a Hawk hath mantled, she crosseth her Wings over her Back.

Whurre, as bate at the Whurre, is the rising and fluttering of Patridge, and Pheasant.

Weathering, is seting abroad your Hawk to take the Air, either by Day or Night, in the Frost, or in the Sun, or by the Fire side, or at any other season.

Things Necessary and belonging to Hawks.

A **Rufter Hood,** is the first hood a Hawk wears, being large Wind and open behind, it is a plain and easie Leather hood.

A **Hood.**

Bewetts, Bewitts, or **Buetts:** Boots or Leathers to which the Bells are fastned, and are buttoned about the Hawds Legs.

Bell or **Hawks Bells;** which are round hollow sounding Balls, with little Pellets, in them, made of Copper, or sounding Mettle.

Jesses; are those short straps of Leather, which are fastned to the Hawds Legs, at the Bewetts; at the ends whereof are Knots. They are about half a foot long, and sometimes have no Knots at the ends, but Vervells, or little round rings of Plate.

Vervells, or **Aniets,** are round rings of Silver, or other Mettle, which are fasted to the Jesses, on which is engraven the name, and place of aboad of him that is owner of the Hawk: throw which rings is put the lease.

Lease, or **Lash,** is a small long thong of Leather, by which the Falconer (having run it throw the Vervels) holdeth his Hawk fast upon his fist, foulding it many times about his finger.

Creance, or **Creance,** is a fine small long line of strong and even wound Pack-thread, which is fastned to the Hawks lease when she is first Lured, or taught to come to the hand: and is only to keep young Hawks from flying away.

Falconers Glove, is a thick strong Leather Glove, with a Button and Tassell at the lower part of it, on whih he carieth his Hawk to secure his hand from her Tallens.

Lure, is that whereunto the Falconer calls his Hawk, by casting it up into the Air; by help of a Lease that he hangs it over his shoulder withall: It is made of Feathers and Leather, in such wise, that in the motion it looks not unlike a Fowl.

Pearch, is a cross peice of Wood, or such like, lapt about with cloath or a straw rope; on which the Hawk rests, when she is off the Falconers fist. This cross piece is usually fastned in a four square planke, of about a Foot and half: and so is capable of removing to be set any where.

Mew, is the place (whether it be abroad; or in the house) in which the Hawk is put, during the time she casts, or doth change her Feathers.

Feeding, is her meat, whether small Birds, Chikens, or the hearts of Motton, or Veal.

Tyeing, is the bare Leg, or Ponion of a Pullet or Pigeon, or such like, to pull at, to exercise his Body and Lymbs.

Casting, is any thing given the Hawk to make her cast, there by to purge, and cleanse her Gorge, and Belly.

We come now to the examples of other Birds which are also born in Coat of Arms.

LXIII He beareth Argent, a **Bird** Gules. I term this a Bird, and no other name, because in Herauldry there are usually such drawn, and put into any of the colours, or mettles belonging to that Art; which as they cannot be distinguished by their shape, or proper colour, they can therefore be termed no otherwise then Birds; or a Bird simply.

Yet some will go so far, as to call a Bird after this form, and shape, by a peculiar name, though all of one colour; as,

A **Gold Finch,** if Or.
A **Dove,** if Argent.
A **Green Finch,** if Vert.
A **Black Bird,** or **Dusell,** if Sable.
A **Bunting,** if Azure.
A **Canary Bird,** if Gules.

Whenas none of these kind of Birds are of a self colour, but generally mixed; and contrary coloured Beaks and Feet, and therefore are in Arms always born proper. And ought so to be termed.

LXIV. He beareth Argent, a **Liguring**, or **Green-Finch**, proper. It is called by some a **Green Linnet**, the Bill is sharp not crooked, the upper mandable dusky, the lower white, the head and back Green, edged Grey, the midle of the back of a Chesnut, the rump of a deep Green, the throat neck and breast of a yellowish Green, belly white: the borders of the quill Feathers yellow, the second row, and covert Feathers Green, but in the inner side yellow, the tail hath the middle Feathers black, next on either side edged yellow, and the out side Feathers, from the middle outwardly are black, but all their inner Webs, from top to bottom yellow, the feet of a flesh colour.

To Birds of this size, and proportion, we may add these following.

The **Bull Finch**, hath a black short strong thick Bill. The head for the body is great, being on the crown, and about the Bill black; the Breast Throat and Jaws to the Eyes of a lovely Scarlet or Crimson colour; Rump and Belly white, Tail all black, the Neck and Back Grey with a certain tincture of red: (of some a blew or Ash colour) the quill Feathers, the last or inmost of the outer half of the Wing, have the outside from the shaft red, and the inner side black: the interiour, or rest of the inner part of the Wing next the Body, are black with a gloss of blew, the Legs dusky. This Bird is called an **Alp**, or **Nope**.

The **Grosbeak**, it is a thick and short Billed Bird, of a whitish colour, the tip black, Eyes Grey, about the Bill Orenge colour, from thence to the Eye black, the under Chap compassed with black, the Head of a yellowish red, the Neck brownish, the Back red, the Rump yellowish, the Breast and sides reddish, Belly white. The quill Feathers, the fore-most of them for half way are white, those next the Body are red, the tips of all shine with a changeable colour of purple and blew, like the Necks of Pigeons The Tail is short, spotted at the top on the middle Feathers with red, on the outward, with black. The Feet and Legs of a pale red.

The **Sparrow**, the Bill is thick and blackish, at the corners of the Mouth, to the Eyes yellowish, the Head of a dusky blew, and Ash colour; Chin black, about the Eyes two white spots; from the Eyes a broad line of black, the Throat whitish, and under the Ears is a great white spot, the Breast and Belly white, the Neck and Back of a reddish black, the rest of the Back and Rump as it were of a mixture of Green, Dusky and Ash colour: the quill Feathers are dusky, with reddish edges, from the bastard Wing, a broad white line, extends to the next jovnt, the Tail a little forked, and of a dusky black: the Feet of a dusky Flesh colour.

The **Chaf Finch**, the Bill strong and sharp, dusky with a whitish under Chap: the Head blewish, about the Nostrils black, the Back reddish, with a mixture of Ash colour, and green; the Breast red, the Belly under the Tail white: the quill Feathers have the exteriour Webs yellow, and interiour white, and the Basis, or Ridge of of the Wing blew. In each Wing is a white spot, after it succeeds a black, then a long white fillet, beginning at the fourth quill, and after the tenth continues through the tops of the covert Feathers. The Tail have the two middle Feathers brownish, edged Green, the next three on either side black, and the out-most black, with the middle part of the Feathers white.

The **Virginian Nightingale**, a thick short bunting Beak, dusky: a black border compasses the Eyes and Bill, the Head is adorned with a towring Crest, which it often moves, towards the Bill, as towards the Tail; the colour of the whole is a lovely Scarlet, in the Head and Tail, more dilute, or browner. It is called of some the **Nut-craker**, because it loves to feed on Kernells, see *chap.* 13. *n mb.* 22.

The **Bramble** or **Brambling**: a thick short Bill from a broad base, ending in a sharp point, black: in some black at point, yellow at bottom. From the Head to the middle of the Back, with the edges of the Feathers, of a reddish Ash colour; the lower part of the Back white; the Throat of a yellowish red, the Breast white, the Feathers behind the vent reddish. The quill Feathers are red, the in-most of all black with red edges: each Feather having a white spot on the out-side the Shaft, by the tips of the Feathers of the second row. The Plumage of the base of the Wing, is Orenge colour, and underneath yellow. The middle Feathers of the Tail black, tipt and edged reddish Ash colour, the out-side Feathers black, with the exteriour Vans, or Webs white: the Feet, a pale dusky colour.

The **Great Pied Mountain Finch**, called also the **Lark Heel Mountain Finch**, or the great **Brambling**. The Bill yellow, the Back Neck sides red, the Breast paler, the Belly and Wings white, the Back, and Scapular Feathers, variegated with black and a reddish Ash colour; the black appearing of a triangular figure. The quill Feathers, have the eight out-most black, edged white: the seven next are wholly white, tipt black: the rest are black, edged red: all the covert Feathers are white. The Tail forked, the middle Feathers are black edged white, the out-side Feathers wholly white edged towards the bottom black. Legs Feet and Claws cole black, the hinder Claw longer then all the rest, as in a **Lark**.

The **Siskin**, the lower mandable of the Bill hath an Angle, or Tooth on each side, which is received in the upper. The Head is black, the Neck and Back are Green, the Shafts black, the Rump of a Greenish yellow, the Throat and Breast of a yellowish Green, the Belly white. The quill Feathers of the Wing are Green: the exteriour covert Feathers are black: the Tail the two middle-most black, the rest on the out-sides, above half way yellow, with black tips, the upper part Grey.

The **Canary Bird**, or **Sugar Bird**, it is as big as a common **Titmouse**, it hath a small white Bill, thick at the base, the Feathers of the Wings and Tail are Green; the Breast Belly and and upper part of the Head, more yellowish, their Feet whitish.

The **Citrill**, or **Citrinella**. The Bill is dusky, the Head and Back Green, the Rump yellowish, the hinder part of the Head and Neck ash-coloured, the neither surface of the Body green, about the Vent, white; the upper part of the Breast and Belly a lovely yellow, the Tail black, the Feathers all edged with Green, the quill Feathers are the same, the lesser row of the Wing Feathers green, tipt with white: the Feet whitish or flesh colour, with black Claws.

The **Himgryll**, or **Serin**: The Bill thick and sharp pointed, the upper Chap something prominent, the

*

the Head yellow: the middle part of the Feathers spoted with black on the back, otherwise all red: the Rump of a yellowish Green, the Breast the same; the Belly white: the sides variegated with oblong black spots. The Tail black, edged with Green, the Wing Feathers the same, the tips of the second row white, and the other lesser Wing Feathers Green. The Feet dusky; Claws black.

The **Brasilian Tangara**, a straight black Bill and Eyes: Legs dusky: on the fore-head at the Bill a black spot, the whole Head and Neck of a shining Sea green, a circle of black lik a collar encompasses the Back, the Back to the Tail yellow, the Belly blew, the Wings blew, without sides or borders black; the ridges of the Wings yellow; Tail black bordered blew. Legs and Feet cinereous, inclining to dusky.

There is another kind of **Tangara**, with a dusky yellow Bill, black Eyes, the whole Head of Scarlet, all the rest of the Body, Wings, and Tail of a shineing black, Thighs white, with a long Scarlet spot on the out-sides, as if stained with Blood, Feet and Legs Ash colour.

A 3 Sparrows proper. Born by the name of *Sparrow*.

A Golden Finch is the Crest of *Harefinch* of *Chester*.

B 3 Linners proper. Born by *Linnet*.

O a Fesse between 3 Bull-finches, proper. Born by the name of *Alpin*.

A 3 Brambling proper: a cheif G. Born by the name of *Brambley*.

A 3 Canary Birds G. Born by *Bullmore*.

B 3 Larks O by *Ayer*.

LXV. He beareth Argent, as **Tyttimous**, proper. Born for the Crest of *Titlow*, or a **Titmouse**, as most term it; of which there is several sorts: as,

The **Great Titmouse**, or **Ox-Eye**, its Bill is straight and black, the Head and Chin black, a broad white line from Mouth to Eyes, which is compassed with black, the Neck, Shoulders, and Back, of a yellowish green, Rump blew: the Breast, Belly, Thighs are yellow, lower part about the vent white: with a broad black line, reaching from the Throat, to the vent, dividing both the Breast and Belly in twain. The quill Feathers are dusky with white and blew tips, the first row of covert Feathers are white, the smaller coverts are blew: the Tail have the exteriour vans of all blew, the interiour black, the two outmost being white: the Feet of a Lead, or blew colour.

The **Cole-House**, the Bill is black, the Head is so, with a white spot behind: the Back of a greenish Ash-colour, the Rump greener; the Wings & Tail blackish, the edges of the Wing green, the coverts have white tips: the Legs bluish. This is the least sort, which we in our Countrey call **Tittimous**, or **Hop**.

The **Marsh Titmouse**, or **Black Cap**; the Head black, the Cheeks white, the Back greenish, the Feet Lead colour, the Belly and under side white. The Wings and Tail dusky.

The **Blew Titmouse**, or **Nun**: the Bill thick short and of a dusky black, the Head of an Azure colour, is encompassed with a circle of white, as it were, a Wreath, or Coronet; an other encompasses the Throat, and hinder part of the Head, a black line from Bill through the Eyes, to the hinder part of the Head. Cheeks white, Back of a yellowish green, the Sides Breast, and Belly yellowish, save that a whitish line divides the Belly and Breast, as far as the vent. The tips of the quill Feathers next the Body, are white, the outward edges the like, the covert Feathers blew tipt white; the Tail blew, the edges of the out-most Feathers white, the Feet blewish.

The **Long Tailed Titmouse**, the Bill is black, the Crown of the Head white, Neck Black, from the Bill about the Eyes, on each side to the hinder part of the Head, is a broad black line, the Jaws Throat and Breast white, varied with small dusky spots. The Back and sides and Rump of a dark Chesnut, the Belly somewhat lighter. The quill Feathers of a dusky colour: the Tail is long, having the middle Feathers longer then the side ones: the out Feathers on each side, the top or outer half from the Shaft are white, the next less white, the next only the outer tip white, all the rest black. The Feet black.

The **Wood Titmouse**, it hath a red spot through the middle of the Crown, with black on each side: the Body green, Belly paler, the Wings and end of the Tail, black: the Legs dusky.

Brasilian Titmouse, or **Guira-senoja**. A short blackish Bill, black Eyes, the whole Head, Throat, Breast and Belly blew, the Neck and half the Back is Black, the rest green, the Wings and Tail black, edged with green; the Feet dusky.

The **Linnet**, it is of biggness between the **Chaf-Finch** and the **Titmouse**, or **Hop**: the Bill is thick and strong, black about, white underneath: the Head party coloured of cinereous, and black; that is, the middle of the Feathers black, edges or sides cinereous: the Back as so, of black with red edges; the Breast white, the Vent yellowish. The Region of the Craw, or bottom of the Gullet, is a lovely red, the edges yellow; the Wing Feathers black, the edges of the exteriour whitish, the interiour red: the fore-most Feathers of the second row of coverts, are black, those next the rite of the Wing are edged with red. The lesser covert Feathers about the base or ridg of the Wing, are red. The Tail is forked by reason the two outward Feathers are a little longer then the middle, being all black; the middle two edged with red, all the rest with white, the Feet a dusky or blackish colour.

The **Red Head Linnet**, the Bill black, the lower Chap at the base white, the Eyes Hazle colour, on the top of the Head, is a red or sanguine large spot, all the rest of the Head cinereous, the Shoulders, Back, covert Feathers of the Wing, are red: the Breast tinctured with red, else it is yellowish. The outward quill Feathers are black, the inner dusky: which by the white edges the Wing being complicated, concur to make a white spot on them. The interiour Margins or Vans, and the tips of the quill Feather toward the Body or seting on of the Wing are all white: the Tail something forked and black, the outward Feathers edged with white. The Legs and Feet small of a reddish dusky colour, Claws black.

The **Mountain Linnet**, it is much larger then the common **Linnet**, and agrees with it in colours: only the

the Rump is of a very fair shining Scarlet or Orange-tawny colour; the edges of the middle quill Feathers of the Wings are white, and so are the tips of the second row of the covert Feathers; the Tail all over brown or dusky, the edges of the out Feathers white.

There are some Birds of the **Red Head Linnet** kind that have the tips of the second row of the covert Feathers of the Wing white, which make a transverse white line cross the Wing.

LXVI. He beareth Sable, a **Dove** Argent **Beak** and **Legs** (or **Membred**) Gules, holding an **Olive Branch** Vert. or a **Dove** or **Pigeon** proper, holding an **Olive Branch** it its Bill. This is the Crest of *Ireland*. The latter Blazon may be good, yet not as the first, for there may be a mistake through the diverse colours found in them, as:

The **Common Wild Pigeon**, hath a sharp and slender dusky Bill, soft about the Nostrils and white, the Eyes yellowish, the Legs and Feet (generally in all) reddish: Talons black. The Head Neck and Breast of a blewish Ash colour, the Belly lighter, having a shineing about the Neck and Breast of a blewish green. The Rump and under the Wings white, the Wings and Tail a dusky Ash colour, the covert Feathers tipt with black. There is also of this wild sort of Pigions, white ones, clay coloured, and light Ash colour near a white, with the covert Feather black, as if there were two or three black lines, over cross the middle of the VWings.

The **Tame Pigeon**, or **Dove**, the Bill dusky, with soft whitish (some more fleshy) Nostrils, the Feet red: as for the colours of the Body it is various, same all white, others all black, others all clay colour: others variable, and contrary mixed, without any kind of order, but in some more, in others less of white and black, white and clay colour. Of these Tame Pigeons there is several sorts; as,

The **Runt Pigeon**, or **Russian Dove**, which are large Pigeons, as big as young Hens: they vary in colour as most other domestick Birds.

The **Cropper Dove**, which will in their mourning blow their Crops or Craws as big as all their Body: they are large Pigeons, and very much vary in their colours.

The **Shaker Pigeon**, or **Broad Tailed Dove**, so called because they shake or wag their Heads up and down, and carry their Tail broad up after the manner of a Hen, or Turky: they vary also in their colour. There is an other sort of these Pigeons, which are without broad Tails, which are only termed **Shakers**.

The **Carrier Pigeon**. They are generally of a dark blackish blew colour, with a naked circle about their Eyes, the Bill covered about half way, with the like naked skin. These Pigeons where soever bread will fly to that place again, carry them wheresoever you please; so that they are made use of to carry Letters too and fro in *Turkie*.

The **Jacobines**, or **Coppers**, or **Cop Headed Pigeons**, because they have in the hinder part of the Head or Neck certain Feathers reflected upwards compassing the Head, behind almost like a Monks-hood. These also vary in the colour, and have rough Legs, others ruff Feeted.

The **Turbit Pigeon**, or **Cortbeck**: these have a thick short Bill like a **Bull-Finch**, with a flat crown depressed, the Feathers on the Breast reflected both ways.

The **Tumbler Pigeon**, is small and of diverse colours, they have strange motions, turning themselves backwards, over their Head, and shew like Foot-balls as they fly and tumble in the Air.

There are several other sorts, as **Smiters**, from their striking their Wings one against the other. **Helmets** whose Head, Tail and Quill Feathers are all of a colour and the rest of the Body of an other colour. **Light Horse-men**, a Bastard kind between a Cropper and a Carrier, and partakes of both. **Turners** having a tuft turning down backwards from the Head. **Nawmets** from their great black Eyes in which they exceed all others. All of varieable colours.

The **Turtle Dove**, is various in colour: but the most usuall, the Bill of a dusky blew colour, Eyes red and yellow, a circle of naked flesh compassing them: Feet red, Claws black. Head and Back blewish, Shoulders and Rump reddish, Breast and Belly white, the Throat tinctured with a lovely vinaceous, graplike colour. The Quill Feathers dusky, the second row Ash colour, and the next black. The Tail dusky, the outmost having the Webs and Tipts white, with a black ring with white tips, behind his Neck.

The **Indian turtle Dove**, the Bill black, the Feet red, the Head, Neck, Breast, and Wings, to the quill Feathers, the Back to the Rump, reddish but faint: Eyes Saffron colour, with a slender black ring compassing the Neck, the Wings and Tail dusky: there Belly near the vent yellow.

The **Barbados Turtle**, is no bigger then a **Lark**, the Bill small and dusky, black Eyes, with a Golden circle: the whole Head, Neck, Sides, Back, and Wings dark Ash colour, or black and blew Feathers, with half-moon like black borders, the Wings and Tail dusky, with the outward Feather white. The Belly white, having the borders black.

The **Ring Dove**, the Bill yellowish, covered for some space with a red or purple skin, wherein are the Nostrils, above them is (as it were) a white Dandroof, the eye circle pale yellow, the feet red, as in all other Pigeons; the Neck hath a semicircular ring of White, above and beneath it is various shining colours, as blue and green and yellow; head and back dark ash-colour, the Breast purplish and red, the belly light ash or white; the Wing is black, the middle part edged with white, the tail brownish with the ends black.

The **Stock Dove**, the Bill pale red, the top of the head brownish, the neck a shining changeable colour, the the Wings, Shoulders and Breast ash-colour, dasht with purplish and red colour; the quill feathers, the five first all black, edged white; the rest have the upper part black and the lower ash-colour; the tail, the lower part cinereous, the upper for one third of the length black, on both Wings are two black spots, the feet red, claws black, the legs feathered below the Knees. It is also termed with us a **Quees**, or **Quiese**.

G a Cheveron between three Doves with branches in their Bills proper, is born by the name of *Dovell*.

Per

*

Per Fesse B and A a Pale counterchanged, three such Doves with branches, is the Coat of Arms belonging to the Worshipful Company of *Tallow Chandlers*.

S on a Cheveron between three Pigeons A Bills and Legs G 3 Pheon S is born by the name of *Page*.

B 3 Doves proper, born by *Hodby*.

Per Cheveron B and V 3 Doves or Pigeons A Leggs and Bills G by *Dove*.

S 3 Doves with Olive branches in their mouths all proper. Born by *Columball* of *Derley*. Else Blazon them thus:

Sable, three Doves Argent, each holding an Olive branch in the mouth proper, **Membred**, Gules. You shall not need (saith Mr. *Morgan*, *lib.* 1. *fol.* 63.) to say, **Beaked** and **Membred**, because the Beak of any Fowl is accounted the Members of that Fowl as well as the Legs, but by his good favour, the term Beaked or Billed are not to be neglected, especially in Fowl, which sometimes have their Bills only of a contrary colour to the rest of the body, and others that have their feet only contrary, all the rest being of one Colour or Mettle, in which cases, to use only the term **Membred** may cause a mistake, therefore it is best and safest to use both, rather than lose one part of the Fowls coloured place.

LXVII. He beareth Azure, a **Dove displaid**, Argent in the **Suns Glory**. This is in old Blazoning termed the **Holy Ghost**; because it is said that it descended on our Saviour in the likeness of a **Dove**. This is a part of the Companies Coat and Crest of the *Stationers*. And it is the Embrauderers Crest, being a Worshipful Society in the City of *London*.

LXVIII. He beareth Gules, a **Jacobine ruff footed Dove**, Argent. Others a Dove with a **cop** on the **head**, and **rough footed**; or a Ruff footed Dove capped or coped; or a capper Dove rough footed. Born by the name of *Dove*.

B 3 such turned to the Sinister A born by *Mitmejer*.

LXIX. He beareth Argent, a **Heath Cock**, Sable, **Crest and legged**, Gules; a **More-Cock**, proper, **Beak, Legs, Comb** and **Wattles**, Gules.

The **Mountain Cock**, and a **Grows**, or Cock of the Wood, in Herauldry we draw thus (as in the Plate is expressed) but its true shape is by *Gesner*, and others thus described.

The **Heath Cock**, or **Black Game**, or **Grows**, is all black, having a hair tuft on his head falling backwards, with a reddish flesh on the eye-brows, which all of this kind have; the Bill is black and crooked, the under chap somewhat prominent and gibbous, the eyebrows bare and red; the legs rough with feathers; the feet naked; the neck and back do shine with a kind of blue gloss; the quill feathers are tipt with white, all under the Wings white; the tail hath the feather on either side turning outwards; see the Figure, *chap.* 12. *numb.* 60.

The **Heath-Hen** is of the colour of a **Wood-cock**, or **Partridg**, reddish, with black transverse lines; the breast and belly hoary, in the tail the outmost feathers are longer than the middle, but not reflected, as in the Cock, and tipt with White.

The **Cock of the Mountain**, or **Mountain Cock**, comes nearest to this used in Heraldry, yet he is mistaken that writes that it hath on its head, a red fleshy Crest, and about the cheeks two red fleshy lobs or gills; for it hath no other than an hairy tuft on his head hanging backward (as is seen in many Hens) with a naked skin about the eyes, of a Scarlet colour, the Bill crooked, with an indent in the higher mandable and blackish, the brest of a pale red, with transverse black lines; the throat of a deeper red, the Belly Ash-colour; the upper side of the body party coloured, of red, black and ash colour, the tips of the feathers poudered with specks, except the head, the wing feathers are dusky and dark, tipt with white, and the exterior vans of all variegated with red and black and ash; the tail black, tipt with white, and carried up after the manner of a Hens tail, see *numb.* 94.

The **Hen of the Mountain**, hath no tuft on the head, but is of a deeper red in the throat and tail, which is crossed with black bars, holding it not up as the Cock; both Cock and Hen have their legs feathered before and bare behind; the toes naked and joined together by a Membrane as far as the middle joint.

A 3 Heath cocks proper. Born by *Peiton*.

G on a Bend A cotized O 3 *Heath* cocks S Combs, Bills and Leggs G by the name of *Heath* of *Chester* and *Weston*.

S 3 *Heath* Cocks A Membred G born by *Hathe*.

A 6 Morecocks S Membred G is born by *Fitz Mores*.

Er. a Fesse between 3 such S Membred G by *More*, of *Hall* of *Heath*.

A a *Heath* cock S comb and legs G born by *Hunerhausen*.

LXX. He beareth Argent, a **Wren**, proper. This is the least of Birds, the Bill is slender, dusky aboue, and yellowish under, the Eyes, Hazle coloured, the Head, Neck and Back of a dark spandiceous, or red chesnut colour, especially Rump and Tail; the Back, Wings, and Vail, varied with cross black lines, which Tail he holds erect. The Throat pale yellow, Breast whiter, the lower Belly of a dusky red, the Feet dusky.

The **Crested Wren**, or **Golden Crowned Wren**; so termed from its Crest of Feathers extended directly, through the middle of the Head, from the Bill to the Neck. Others write, that it is only a bright spot in the Feathers of the head, of a deep Saffron or pale Scarlet colour, the edges yellow: the Neck of a shining yellowish green, Eyes compassed with white, the Back from a dark green, inclines to a yellow, the Breast of a sordid white, the quill Feathers dusky, edges yellow; with a black spot about the middle of the Wing; the tips white of the covert Feathers, which make a white line cross the Wing above the black: at the ridge of the Wing is a white spot. The Tail is of a dusky colour, having the exterior borders, of a yellowish green, Feet blackish.

The **Black Cap**, it is a very small Bird, with the top of the head black, Neck cinereous, Back dark green, quill Feathers dusky, edged green; Tail dusky, with a tincture of green: Throat and Breast Ash colour, Belly white, tinctured with yellow, the Bill black and slender, Feet of a Lead colour. The Head of the Female is red, as the Cock is black.

The **Robin Red Breast**, or **Ruddock**, is a small Bird generally pricking up his Tail, the Breast is of a red, or deep Orenge colour, which compasses also the Eyes and

and upper part of the Bill, or forehead, Belly white, Head Neck, Back and Tail of a dirty green or yellow, rather cinereous with a tincture of green. The Bill dusky, the Male having small hairs, or beards, growing on each side: the Feet black.

The **Gimpel**, or **Brasilian Teitei**: it is a small singing Bird, like the **Robin**: chirips like to the **Redstart**. Hath a thick short black Bill, the Head, Neck, Back and Tail all black, shining with a tincture of blew; Throat Breast and Belly yellow, at the rise of the upper Bill behind the Nostrills, it hath a spot of yellow Feathers: the Legs dusky.

The **Anadavad Bird**, is a small Bird, but holdeth not up his Tail, as the Wren. The upper Body of a dusky colour, the Rump of a Scarlet, or deep Orenge; the quill Feathers and Tail black: the Wings and Coverts spotted with round spots, the Throat red, Breast & Belly black, Legs white, Claws long, & crooked.

A a Fesse between 3 Wrens proper. This is born by *Wren*.

A 3 Robin-red-breasts proper. This is born by *Van Ruddock*.

A a Cheveron between 3 Wrens S born by the name of *Wrenbury*.

LXXI. He beareth Azure, a **Gold-Finch** proper. It is termed also a **Thistle-Finch**. The Bill white, black at the point, a ring of Scarlet compassing the basis of the Bill, a black line from the Bill to the Eyes: Jaws white, top of the Head black, which runs with a broad line, on both sides the Neck. Neck and Back of a fulvous, or reddish Ash colour; the Breast and Rump paler, Belly white, the Tail and Wings black, yet tips of both are white; the Wing is addorned with a beautifull transverse of yellow in the long covert Feathers.

☞ Under this figure may be comprehended all other sorts of small Birds, which usually (if born in Coats, or for Crests) are born proper as the **Black Cap**, the **Gimpell**, and the **Anadavad Bird**, before in *numb.* 70. described.

The **Lark**, the Bill slender and blackish, a cinereous ring compasses the hinder part of the Head, from Eye to Eye: the Head is reddish Ash colour, the middle of the Feather being blacker, the Back the same; Throat yellow, Breast spotted with brown spots, the Wing Feathers cinereous, tipt with white. The Tail borwnish with white tips, the outward Feathers edged with white, Feet dusky, the Claws long and crooked black with white tips, the hinder Toes have a Claw, which is called the **Larks Spur** or **Heel** it is twice as long as the foremost Claws: and reacheth behind his Knees.

The **Wood-Lark**, the Bill slender, and dusky, a white line encompasses the Head from Eye to Eye, like a Wreath, the Head and Back party coloured of black and reddish yellow; Breast and Belly of a pale whitish yellow, the Throat deeper; both spotted with black, in the middle part of the Feathers. Rump yellowish red, or tawny, the Wing Feathers dusky, edged yellow, the Bastard wings have reddish edges, tipt white; the small Feathers on the ridge of the Wing, are Ash colour. The Tail blackish, edged with a reddish colour, outward Feathers have white tips. The Feet pale yellow, claws as the foresaid **Lark**.

The **Tit-Lark**, is less then the other, the Head, Shoulders and Back various, black and yellowish green; the middle part of the Feathers black, & the edges green: the Rump green only. Throat white, Breast and under the Wings, yellowish spotted with black, the lower Belly white. Quill Feathers dusky, the exteriour edges of a yellowish green, the coverts are tipt white, the Tail dark brown, the outmost party coloured of white and brown. Feet yellow, the Claws in the back Toes (as in all **Larks**) very long and dusky.

The **Hedg-Sparrow**. The Bill slender, and pretty long, and black; the upper part of the Body is party coloured, of black and dirty red, (that is) the middle of each Feather about the Shaft black, and the out side, or edges red: the Rump greenish, the prime Feathers of the Wing dusky, edged red; the second row of Wing Feathers have white spots, the lesser row spotted like the Body; the Tail all dusky, Breast brownish, the Belly whitish, or Lead colour. The Feet of a yellowish flesh colour. The hinder Claw, is greater and longer then any of the rest.

The **Red Sparrow**, or **Reed Sparrow**; hath a thick bunting Bill black; Head black, a white ring about his Neck, the Cheeks red about the Eyes, Throat black, Brest and Belly white, Back and Covert Feathers of the Wing party coloured of black and red; Rump red, quill Feathers dusky, edged red; the lesser row of Wing Feathers are Ash colour, edged and tipt red: the Plumage of the base or ridge of the Wing, blewish. The Tail is black, with the two Feathers on the out-side white. Feet of a dark Flesh colour; the Back toe great and strong, the Claws black.

The **Yellow Hammer**, hath a dusky Bill, the Throat and Belly yellow, Breast more reddish, Head greeen and spotted with brown, Back and Shoulders, black, edged with reddish green: Rump red. Quill Feathers dusky, edged with whitish green, Tail forked something, and of a brown colour with the outward edges green, with two white spots obliquely cutting the out Feathers of the Tail, near the tips. Feet of a horn colour, Claws black.

The **Citrus**, the Bill thick and short, Breast and Belly yellow, sprinkled with brown, Head Back Wings and Tail, from a testaceous colour, inclining to a dusky or brown: with two Feathers out-side the Tail partly white.

The **Hortulane**, the Bill short and thick at the base, and red: Feet pale-dusky, Claws black, having the Back toes great, and the Fore-toes all of a length, Throat and Breast Ash colour, Belly to Tail red: Head brown, or dusky Ash colour, spotted black; Back the same, Rump green. The great quill Feathers, edged with greenish white, the lesser or interiour quills edged with red: the tips of the second row white, of the third row, white, and the lesser covert Feathers, edged with cinereous; the Tail dark brown, with the out Feathers white. *Aldrovandus* in his Ornithology, *lib.* 13. *cap.* 24. sets out several other coloured **Hortulanes**, of which he saith one is all yellow, or straw colour, except the ridges of the Wings, and tips of the quill Feathers, which are white. Another kind all over white. And a third kind, the Head and Back cinereous, spotted black: Belly and Legs yellow, ridges of Wings and quill Feathers white: Tail brown, with yellow sides.

The

The **Bunting**, the Bill is great and thick, having a hard Knob, or Eminency, in the upper Bill, the under Chap inclines to it by an indent. The colour of the Head and Back, Earth-like spotted: Chin, Breast, Belly, of a yellowish white; the Throat hath oblong black spots: the quills and covert Feathers are dusky, edged brown; the Tail all of a dusky red.

The **American Bull-Finch**, thick in the Bill, dusky above, white underneath: Eyes blew, the whole Head of a rare sanguine colour, the Back grey, the Neck, Breast, and Belly, white; the Wings and Tails black. The ridg of the Wings, and small coverts grey, interspersed with black.

The **Cold-Finch**, the Head and Back of a dusky greenish ash colour, the Rump black, quill Feathers black, but the smaller next the Body all white, which makes a white spot, or stroak, cross the Wing; second row of Wing Feathers is black, with whitish tips, the coverts are edged with green, the Tail black, with the Webs of the outward Feathers wholly white, the Bill and Feet black. Called also the **Col-Finch.**

The **White Throat**, the upper Bill black, lower white: the Feet of a dusky yellow, the Back-Toes great, the exteriour Fore-toes equal, and less then in other small Birds, joyned in the bottom to the middlemost; and the interiour Fore-toes joyned by an intervening Membrane, or small skin, to the middle of the middle Toe, which is not usual in small Birds. The upper surface of the Body red, inclining to ash-colour, the Head more reddish, Throat white, Breast and Belly red, the great quill Feathers white, the lesser next the Body red; the Tail black, with the cut side Feathers, white in the exteriour Webs.

The **Stone-Chatter**, or **Stone-Smich**, or **Moor-Titling**; the Bill slender and black and a little crooked, Feet and Claws black. The whole Head and Back black, the Rump white, with a spot on either side the Neck of white, the Neck black, the Breast fulvous or of a yellowish red colour, Belly white. The quill Feathers dusky, except two next the Body which are white at bottom: the covert Feathers edged red, the Tail black, with the two outward Feathers in the exteriour Webs, and Tips white.

The **Whin-Chat**, or the **Anthus**, or **Flovus**, the Bill is slender and black, the Feet and Claws also: the Head Back and Coverts of the Wings of a Fenill-mort colour, variegated with black spots, placed in rows. The Breast yellowish, spotted with black, Belly white; from the Nostrils above the Eyes, to the hinder part of the Head is a white line, and under the Bill is a like white line, and the middle space between these lines, through the Eyes is black. The Quill Feathers brown, with yellowish edges; those next the Body tipt with white: the Covert Feathers are black, with two white, on each Wing: the middle Feathers are black, the out sides have the Feathers half black, and half white, at the bottom.

The **American Chat**, the Bill straight and black, Saphire colour Eyes, with a black Pupill; the Thighs or upper Legs are covered with ash coloured Feathers, the lower with a black skin. The Head, Neck, Breast and Belly white, approaching to a dilute grey, but the Back with cinereous, from the Bill, through the Eyes, to the end of the sides of the Head, is a black line, the Wings black, the Tail black, with white tips, which is covered with the middle Feathers, which are white.

The **White Tail**, or **Fallow-Smich**, or **Wheat-Ear Bird.** Bill is slender and black, the Back-Toe armed with a great Claw. The Head and Back is cinereous, with a mixture of green and red; the Rump is all white, the Belly is white, lightly dashed with red; Breast and Throat have a deeper tincture of red, above the Eyes is a white line, continued to the hinder part of the Head; below the Eyes, a black stroak is extended from the corners of the Mouth to the Ears. The Quill and Covert Feathers of the Wings are black, edged with white; the Tail have the two middle Feathers half white above, and half below black, the rest being black, with tips and edges white.

The **Red Start**, the Bill is slender and black, the Legs are the like; the Fore-head marked with a white spot, seperated from the Eyes, and Bill, by a black line. The Throat and Cheeks under the eyes black, tipt with grey, Belly white; the Head, Neck, Back, of a lead colour, the Quill Feathers dusky, the upper Coverts black, the neither Covert Feathers red. The Tail the two middle-most dusky, the others on the out-side red. *Gesner* describs the **Redstart** into several kinds, the one to have a white mark in the Fore-head, the Head and Back cinereous, or dusky, Wing Feathers Dusky inclining to red; Breast Belly and Tail red, the lower Belly white. Another to have a Breast blew, the Belly of a pale yellowish red, with the Rump and Tail the like colour.

The **Fig-Eater**, hath the upper Bill black, the under Chap blewish, the Head, Neck, Back, Wings and Tail, from Ash colour, inclining to green; the Quill Feather of a Mouse dun, with black shafts, and green edges: the Belly white, the Breast darker, the Legs blewish.

B 3 Larks, O born by the name of *Ayer.*
V 3 Gold-Finches, O born by the name of *Golding.*
O a Red-Start proper. Born by the name of *Stanton.*

LXXII. He beareth Argent, an **Ousell**, or **Black-Bird**, proper. The **Ousell** is all black of the Body from Head to Tail, the Bill yellow, and Feet black. The **Red Breasted Ousell**, is the same, only hath a red Breast. The **Indian Mock-Bird**, or **Blew Ousell**, the Bill crooked, under the Nostrils dusky, the Breast and Neck, of a lovely blew; the Back and Wings black yet sheweth something of blew. A long blew Tail.

The **Brisilian black Bird**, or **Ousell**, the Bill is short and dusky; the whole Body is an excellent red, the Wings and Tail black, the Tail is long; the Feet black. The ridg of the Wing red, the Covert black, the next red, and the prime Feathers black. The Feet black, or dusky.

The **Ring Ousell**, is like the common **Ousell**, save it hath a white ring under its Throat.

LXXIII. He beareth Argent, a **Cornish Chough**, proper. The Body is all black, with red Legs and Feet, and

and a red Beak. The Bill is long slender, and crooked, the higher mandable much longer then then either, both red: the Nostrils round having Feathers reflected downwards, which cover them: the Feet red, the Plumage of the whole Body is black. It is called also a **Fulica**, or **Fulice.**

The **White Bill Crow,** is all black in the Body, the Bill is white, being Fleshy about the Nostrils, and of a dusky colour, the Feet blackish. This is of some termed a **Rooke.**

The **Jack-Daw,** or **Daw:** the Bill a dark dusky colour, the Nostrils and half the Bill, covered with little hairy Feathers: the hinder part of the Head inclining to ash-colour, the Breast and Belly more deeper: all the rest of the Plumage is black with a kind of shining blew gross. In some places it is called a **Caddesse** or **Choff.**

The **Collared Jack-Daw,** differeth in nothing from the other common one, save the Head is more blew, and it hath a white ring or colour, about its Neck, and hath a great Head.

A 3 Cornish Choughs proper. Born by the name *Penisston.*

A a cross engrailed Flory S between 4 such proper. Born by *Edwin* Lord of *Englefield* in *North-Wales*, he was one of the 15 Tribes or Houses of greatest account under the *Welsh* Princes.

A on a bend B 3 Garbs O between 3 such Choughs. By *Wixted* or *Whixsteel* of Crownest in *Cheshire.*

A 3 Jack-Daws proper. Born by *Darrson.*

O a Cheveron V between 3 Cornish Crows. Born by *Walthall* of *Wistanston.*

A a Cheveron S between 3 such. By *Hensham* of *Hensham.*

LXXIV. He beareth Or, a **Raven** proper, by the the name of *Corbet.* The **Raven** hath a thick long sharp Bill, cole black, hooked a little at the end, but not as in Hawks: hairs or bristles bending from the Head downwards cover the Nostrils, the Plumage of the whole Body is black with a shining gloss of blew, especially in the Neck, Wings, and Tail, the Feet black and Scally. This is born by the name of *Corbin* in a Field Argent.

The **Crow,** hath a straigh black Bill, the Nostrils covered with hairs hanging over them: the Feet black, so is the Plumage of the whole Body, only the bottom of the Feathers are ash-colour, or a dark lead-colour.

The **Rook,** it is in all respects answerable to the Crow, but it is somthing bigger, and hath a purple Splendor, or gloss in its Feathers.

The **Royston Crow,** hath a black straight Bill, tipt whitish, yet something bowed, the Nostrils round covered with bristle hairs, the Head and Throat to the Breast bone, and Wings with the ponions all black with a blew gloss: the Breast, Belly, Back, and Neck, cinereous or grey, the Shafts of the Feathers blackish, Tail black.

O 3 Crows. Born by *Corbet* of *Atherton.*

A a Cheveron between 3 such S. Born by *Llowrach ap Ryrid* a noble Person in *North-Wales.*

O 2 Crows. By *Corbet* of *Leighton.*

A a Raven standing on a Torteaux. By *Raven* of *Elesworth.*

A a Cheveron between 3 Ravens heads erazed. By *Ravenscroft*

A 3 Crows. Is born by *Crockt.*

LXXV. He beareth Argent, a **Rook Jessant an Ermine,** or **Portant an Ermine,** as Mr. *Boswell*, pag. 23, 24. hath it. The **Rook** is all black with a whitish bill, of most termed, a **White Bill Crow.** This is born by the name of *Rook.*

A a Cheveron between 3 such S. Born by *Lowrach ap Eran*, a Noble Man in *North-Wales.*

LXXVI. He beareth Azure, two **Pheasants endosed,** their **Tails cross, regardant,** or looking back, Or. See more of the Pheasant *numb.* 120. or else blazon it two Pheasant, the **Sinister Surmounted** of the dexter **Salterwise,** and **regardant.** Born by the name of *Pheasantail.*

LXXVII. He beareth Argent, a **Woodcock** proper, born by *Woodcock.* It hath a long slender bill of a dark brown, the upper side of the body party-coloured, of red, black and Grey: the breast and belly are grey, with transverse brown lines: the Wings are black, crossed with red bars in each Feather: the tail is short, the Feathers with bars as aforesaid, the Legs long and of a pale brown or dusky colour, the Claws black. the back-toe very little, having but a little Claw.

The **Snipe,** or **Snite**; the bill black, at the tip it is somewhat broad and chamferd: the Legs a pale green, Claws black. The Head is dusky, with a red line, the Head is divided long-ways, with black on each side, over the Eyes another red line, between the Eyes, and bill is dusky-brown, the back party coloured of red and black, the chin, breast and belly wholly white, the quill Feathers, the outward white, the middle tipt with white, them next the body brown; the greater coverts are grey tipt white; the lesser and ponion, party coloured with red, black, and grey. The tail varied with cross bars of red, and black, tipt white. The Legs of a pale green, Claws black, see *Chap.* 12. *numb.* 62.

The **Gid,** or **Jack-Snipe,** or **Judcock:** it hath a long slender bill, broad towards the end, and rough as if it were carved, or graven, or the point chamfered, yet the very out-most tip smooth, of a dusky colour; the Legs bare somewhat higher then the Knees, pale coloured with a dash of green, the Toes divided to the bottom, back-toe small, Claws black: the top of the Head black, with a red tincture, the Neck and the Scapular Feathers covering the back, are party coloured of brown, white, and pale red: the Rump of a shineing blewish purple, about the Eyes a line of a pale yellow, the Throat a pale red, with white and brown spots. Breast and belly white, between the bill and eyes, a black line. The quill Feathers, the out ten dusky or brown; the tips of the next ten white, the lesser were straked, with red and black: the great covert Feathers, are tipt white, the lesser row are black, tipt with red.

The **Brasilian Gua-rauna.** It hath a long bill a little inclining downwards, yellow: with a dusky sharp tip: the thighs are slender, feathered down half way, long Feet, and long Legs; the whole Plumage is brown, mingled

*

mingled with much shade, the Head and Neck speckled with white. It is in form like the **Woodcock**, only the bending of the Bill, and the Neck something longer.

The **Godwit**, the Bill is white at base, black towards the point, the Legs long, naked to the middle of the second joynt, or Thigh, of a dusky dark green colour; Claws black: the head grey with a tincture of red, middle of the Feathers black, white about the Eyes, Neck and Throat reddish, the Breast of a sordid white, crossed with black lines: the Back party coloured of red, black, and white; the middle of the Feathers being black, the edges red. Rump white, powdered with blackish specks: the Quill Feathers black, with white Shafts, the first and second row, have reddish ash-colour tips, all the smaller coverts are like the Body; the Tail is short, all the Feathers crossed alternately, with black and white lines. This is in some places called a **Parwhelp**, or **Parwip**.

The second sort of **Godwit**, as *Aldrovandus* hath described it, *tom.* 3. *pag.* 430. The Bill is long and slender like the **Woodcock**, black at the end, rest reddish: the Legs long and bare above the Knees, the Head of a dusky ash-colour, white about the Eyes, Back brown, Rump white, Chin white, with a tincture of red: Neck cinereous, Breast and Belly white. The Quill Feathers black, those next the Body half white, the tips of the Feathers of the second row, make a white line cross the Wing, the Tail black, the out-sides tipt with white.

B 3 Woodcocks O born by the name of *VVoodcock*.

G a Woodcock O on a chief A 3 Roses by *VVoodrose*.

V a Cheveron between 3 Snipes S born by *Snipper*, or *Sneap*.

A 3 Woodcocks proper. Born by *VVoodcocks*.

LXXVIII. He beareth Vert, a **Quaile** Argent, **Beak** and **Legs** Gules. The natural colour of the Bill is, the upper Chap dusky, and the lower black; the Head black, edged reddish; middle of the Back and Neck is marked with a yellowish white stroak, the rest party coloured of black and reddish ash-colour, the Breast and Belly of a dirty pale yellow, the Throat hath a mixture of red. The Quill Feathers are dusky, crossed with pale, red lines; the lesser row reddish, the Tail as short as the tip of the Wings, black, with transverse lines of pale red. The Feet are pale coloured, and scaled.

The **Rail**, or **Daker-hen**; the Bill whitish, the lower Chap dusky, Legs bare above the Knees, Feet whitish: the Head hath two broad black lines, and a white line from the shoulders, the Back is black, edged with reddish ash-colour, the Chin, Breast and Belly white Throat more sordid, or dirty: the Thighs variegated with transverse white lines. The lesser row of the Wing Feathers are yellow, and the borders of the prime Feathers yellow: Tail short.

The **Indian Quaile**, their Bill is longer then the common **Quaile**, and in the colour of their Feathers nearly resemble them, see the figure *chap.* 13. *numb.* 20.

The **Giarola**, the Bill red, yellow at corners of the mouth; Crown, Neck, Back, and Wings various, like the **Quaile** of a dusky chesnut colour edged with white and red: a white Wreath or Ring about the Neck, Belly white, Tail short scarce to be seen, yet forked and party coloured, the out Feathers white, the Feet reddish.

A 3 Quails proper. Born by *Quale*.

O a Quaile S is born by *Van Khroe*, a *German*.

G a Fesse between 3 Quailes A born by *Qualett*.

B a Daker-hen, or Rail O born by *Dacer*.

LXXX. He beareth Or, a **Mag-pye** proper, for brevity it is termed a **Pye**, and a **Pye-Annat**, from its cry or chattering note. This is born by the name of *Chatterer*.

The **Mag-pye**, hath a bill black, the Nostrils beset with reflected brisly hairs, in the nictating membrane is a white spot: the head, neck, back, rump, are black, the breast and sides are white, as also the first joynt of the ridge of the Wing, the quill feathers and tail black, yet glitter with green, purple and blew, mingled. The tail hath the middle Feathers longer then the side Feathers, the middle have their bottoms green, the middle blew, and the tips purple. The Feet and Claws black.

The **Brasilian Mag-pye**, hath a large bill, yellowish: the end Scarlet-colour; the head black, the back and Wings shew some whiteness, eyes larg and black compassed with a white circle, the breast is Gold or Saffron-colour, the belly and thighs of a vermillion, the tail black, but in the end red: the feet hath two toes, foreward, and two backward, of a violet ash-colour. Yet *John de Laet* in the description of *America*, *lib.* 15. *cap.* 7. Saith the breast is of a Saffron-colour, compassed about the border with Vermillion, the belly yellow, all the rest of the body black. This is by the Natives called a **Toucan**, see *chap.* 12. *numb.* 28.

A 3 Mag-pyes, proper. Born by the name of *Losen*.

O a Fesse between 3 Water Wag-tails, proper. By *VVag-tail*.

A a cheveron S between 3 Pyes, proper. Born by *Pye*, also by *Evanson*.

LXXXI. He beareth Argent, a **Chattering Mag-Pye** proper. Born by *Chatter*. This is termed a **Chattering Pye**, by reason when he is chattering he moveth his tail up and down, like a **Wren**, or **Water Wag-tail**.

The **Water Wag-tail**; though it be but a small bird to the **Pye**, yet in proportion and colour of body it is of a near resemblance, straight black bill and feet: the fore-most of the head and breast, and about the eyes, white; the throat hath a black spot like a semicircular figure, the points running almost to the jaws: crown of the head, sides of the neck, and back are black; rump also: the quill Feathers are black, the coverts of the first and second row white. The tail is long, and black, the out-most feathers are all white.

The **Yellow**, or **Golden Wag-tail**, the under part of the body yellow, the breast darker, the upper part of a dark green, the back black. The Wings and tail in all respects like the precedent, only the covert

covert Feathers, of a greenish white.

The **Grey Wag-tail,** white about the eyes, head dusky, chin and throat party coloured of white and grey, breast and belly white, dashed with yellow: the rump about yellow, the Wings dusky, or blackish, crossed in the middle, by a vvhite line; the tail black, vvith the out side Feathers all vvhite: the bill and feet black.

The **Brasilian Jamacij,** in shape like a **Wag-taile,** the bill straight, bending tovvards the end, blevvish and black at the end: the head and neck black, all the back, breast, aud belly, yellovv; Wings black vvith vvhite in the middle, tail black and long; Feet dusky, vvith the back-toe very long, vvith a clavv of equal length.

A 3 Pyes proper. Born by *Pye.*

B a Fesse waved between 3 Wag-tails, proper. Is born by *VVag-tail.*

LXXXII. He beareth Argent, an **Hirundo,** or **Swallow,** proper. This is an airy bird, and of all others it loveth to be flying, in so much that it eateth flying. Born by *Swift* for his Crest.

The **Swallow** hath a great head, and short neck; a small bill, long wings, and a forked tail: it hath a black bill; the head, neck, back, and rump are a shineing but very dark purplish blew: under the chin is a deep sanguine spot, the throat to the breast bone like the neck: the breast and belly white with a dash of red: the interiour covert feathers of the Wings are the same. The tail black, with a white line cross it near the rump: Wings black: feet short and black.

The **Martin,** or **Martinet,** is of the Swallow kind. the bill small and short, blackish; the Iris or circle of the eye, Hazle-colour: feet small, Legs short, the soal of the foot bare, all the rest covered with a white down; claws white. The head, neck, back, tail, and Wings are black, having a blevvish gloss: the rump, breast, and belly, milk vvhite: the tips of the interiour quill feathers, or those next the body, are vvhite; the tail is not so much forked as the **Swallow.**

The **Sand Martin,** or **Shoar Bird;** the bill black: the head, neck, and back, of a dark dun or Mouse colour; chin breast and belly vvhite: at the bottom of the throat a ring of the same Mouse colour encompasses the neck. The quill feathers black, the tail not forked, but black. The feet not feathered, but bare and dusky.

The **Black Martin,** or **Swift:** hath a great head and a very small bill, black: the vvhole body is black, vvith an obscure tincture of red and green: only under the chin is a notable spot of vvhite or ash-colour. The Legs very short, but thick: feet small, having all the four toes standing forvvard, none being behind.

The **Sea-Swallow,** the head, Wings and back dusky, the Wings and tail long, and forked, and blackish, but brown on the inside; the bill strong and black: from the bill through the eyes, almost to the breast, is a black line, which near the breast makes as it were a collar. The feet as black as Jet, and whole footed like a Goose, the cheeks, chin, and lower belly, white; the breast hath a tincture of red, rump white. The bill is long and red, with a black end or tip: the back-toe is very small, scarce discernable. It is in some places of *England* and *VVales,* called a **Spurr,** and a **Scray:** in the *North* parts, a **Terne.**

The lesser **Sea-Swallow,** or **Fishenlin:** The bill Saffron, or red, the feet having the fore-toes webbed together to the middle joynt, and are of a Saffron, or reddish colour: the crown, and hinder part of the neck, black; back, ash-colour; breast, belly, rump, white; the tail long and forked sharp, all white.

The **American Swallow,** hath a short broad black bill, a wide mouth, which it can open beyond the region of the eyes, black eyes; the head, neck, back, Wings, and tail, are of a brown colour mingled with grey; the breast belly and under the tail, white; the Wings are long reaching to the end of its forked tail.

O 3 Swallows proper. Born by the name of *VVatton.*

G on a chief, O 2 Swallows with Wings disclosed, proper. By the name of *Speed.*

O 3 such Swallows, proper. Born by *Hast.*

G 3 such A Legs O. Born by *Owen ap Macock.*

S 7 such A. And on a Chapeu S turned up Er. a Swallow A is the Coat and Crest of the Lord *Arundell,* Baron of *Trerise.*

A a bend between 6 such S born by *Tempest.* One is his crest. Sans Legs all of them.

LXXXII. He beareth, Or, a **Swallow volant, displaid,** proper. Of some termed only a **Swallow volant.** But more proper **displaid,** by reason the breast and belly is seen, see *numb.* 36. 84. This is born by the name of *Swallow.*

LXXXIV. He beareth Argent, a **Swallow volant,** proper. By the name of *Speedwell.* This and the foregoing example are thus in Antiquity Blazoned, which I will not alter; but when I consider the several niceties which are in Blazoning, give me leave without offence (according to the examples given before in *numb.* 36. 37. 42.) to make a farther and additional Blazon, as thus to term Birds in this posture of flying, **volant overture** in Fesse when the Belly is seen, and **volant tergiant** in Fesse when the back is seen.

LXXXV. He beareth Gules, a **Martlett,** Or, This is the English Heralds way of drawing the Martlet with rough and jagged Thighs and no Feet; but other Countreys depict them otherwise, as in the next example. This is the Coat of *Martyne.*

B a cheveron embattled between three such O is born by *Judson,* and also by *Hudson.* The Martlets A is the coat of *Bayne,* or *Brayn.*

A a cheveron engraled between 3 S by *Bickley* of *Bickley.*

G a cheveron between 3 such A born by *VValkington.*

A a Fesse and 3 such in chief G by *Cheney* of *Cheny.* Quartered by the Lord *Cholmondeley,* Viscount *Kellis.*

O a Fesse waved, and 3 such in chief S by *Rosengrave* of *Rosengrave.*

A a cheveron between 3 such G by *Knowsley.*

A 8 Martlets and an Orle S born by *VVinnington.*

A a Cross flurt between 4 such G born by *Golborne*, or *Goulsborn*.

The same Coat with a Canton B is born by *Bird*, of *Chester*, and *Broxton*.

A a Cross between 4 Martletts G born by *Burde*.

A an Escochion G 8 Martlets in Orle S born by *Hulgrave*.

Per Bend Sinister S and A 6 such counterchanged, by *Allen*, of *Chester* and *Borrsworth*.

The same S and O by *Allen* of *Brinley* and *Greenhills*.

S 4 such A 2 and 2 born by *Monter*.

A 5 such G 3 and 2 born by *Dowdale*.

O 6 such B 3, 2, and 1, born by *Clamvile*.

☞ Birds may be numbred in one Escochion to the number of ten, if they exceed then they shall be Blazoned sans number, or semy de such or such a Bird.

LXXXVI. He beareth Argent, a **Martlett**, Azure, or a **Martin sans feet**. This is the *Dutch* and *French* way of Drawing the **Martlett** without either Feet or Thighs, as I have seen in many of their Books of Armory, which we for a distinction from others, must term it a **Martlett sans feet**. Three such born by Monsieur *de la Margelbourgh*.

O 3 such in Fesse G by *Van Velen*.

G 6 such born by *Van Low*.

Per pale G and O 6 Martlets respecting each other counterchanged by the name of *Saynelle*.

Godfrey Boullon in Shooting against *Davids* Tower in *Jerusalem*, broched 3 footless Birds called **Allerions** or **Martletts** upon his Arrow, and thereupon gave in his Shield O on a Bend G 3 such A.

LXXXVII. He beareth Or, a **Cock**, Sable, **Crested** and **Wattled**, Gules, **Beak** and **Legs**, Argent.

☞ Some do term it a **Cock armed**, **crested** and **yelloped**; others **membred** and **crested**; but these terms are superfluous when the Cock is intirely of one colour; but when the several parts are of several colours, then to give those said terms, or any of them is necessary. By **Arming**, is meant his **Spurs**, to be of a contrary colour from his Legs, and some take it for his **Beak**.

The **Cocks** natural colour is various, some white, some black, some brown; but one in its most lively and flourishing colours, and most for Beauty, take thus; the Bill of a dark ash-colour, the Comb on the Head and Wattles or Gills under his Chin are naked and of a pure Blood red colour; the eyes black with a white circle about them, in some yellow; the parts about his eyes and ears bare, and of a red colour, the covert long feathers of his Neck which extend from the head to the brest are yellow; the brest and thighs brownish red, the prime feathers black, the covert feathers of the first and second row, brown, inclining to a yellow, the back cinereous, the falling feathers of the lower part of the back yellowish, the under part of the belly and rump whitish; the tail consists all of crooked bending feathers (**Sickle Feathers** as some call them) whereof the two middlemost are longest, and are with the rest most elegantly arcued or reflected, and of a black shining colour; the Spurs, Legs and Feet of a dark ash-colour, claws black.

The **Persian Cock**, in all things resembles our Cock, save that it wants a rump and tail; with us they are generally called **Ruinkines**. The varieties of Cocks according to the Countrey in which they are bred, differs not in form or shape, yet by reason of the difference of Climate, Soil, Food, and other Accidents, do vary and differ much in colours and also in bigness, and in having Combs great and small, single and many doubles like crowns on their heads, or in having or wanting tufts on their heads.

G 3 such Argent, armed, crested, yelloped O by the name of *Cock*.

The like G in a Field A by *Eignion Says*.

A 3 Cocks G born by *Cockiborne*, of *Scotland*.

B a cheveron between three such A born by *Alave Meuric* of *Dyvett*. With the cheveron O is *Jenkin ap Davids* coat.

A a Cock G armed, crested and yelloped O by the name of *Bronchan* and *Broughan*.

G a Cock A born by *Lospitall* of *France*.

A a Coock G born by *Rotenhen*, a *German*.

O the like to the Sinister S by *Stockel van Hertenberg*.

B the like O by *Dachfelden* of *Switzerland*.

☞ The Cock of all Birds, saith *Gwillim*, *fol.* 232. is most properly said to be **Armed**, and to be a Knight amongst winged Creatures; for his **Crest** is his Helmet, his **Beak** his Fauchion or Curtle-ax; his Legs with Spurs, and so Soldier-like armed Cap-a-Pee; his Breast his Buckler, *&c.*

LXXXVIII. He beareth Vert, a **Cock roosted**, Argent, **crested** and **Wattled**, Gules. Some term it a **Cock sans Legs**. This is born by the name of *Cock roost*.

S 3 such A born by *Gisson*.

Idomeneus the Grandchild of *Sol*, bore a Roust Cock, nay every Bird almost for its qualities being born in Arms, as *Seneca* saith in *Agamemnon*, *Act.* 1.

LXXXIX. *He* beareth Sable, two **fighting Cocks sparting**, Argent. These are termed fighting Cocks, because prepared for Fight, having their Combs, Wattles and Tails cut off. If they were **House**, or **Dunghill Cocks** wanting nothing, and were thus sparing, then they may properly be termed two **Cocks fighting**, or two **Cocks combitant**, or **respectant**.

O on a Bridge of Planks in Fesse, extending throughout and supported by pieces Salter-ways G 2 Cocks respectant S born by *Stager Zu Landendorf*.

S 2 fighting Cocks O born by *Courage*.

Terms used by Cock-Masters about fighting Cocks.

The **Cock-pit** is the House, or Hovel covered over, in which the Cocks do fight.

The **Clod** is the green Sod on which they fight, which is generally round that all may see.

The **Seats**, or places on which the Spectators sit, which is three heights, or more, one above and wider then another.

The **Cocks Walk**, is the place where he is bred which usually is a place that no other Cock comes to.

A **Clear Walk**, is the place that the Fighting Cock is in, and none other.

The **Pen** is the place in which the Cock is fed; which is so made, that if there be never so many Cocks in it, they see not one another.

A **Stive**, or **Stave**, is a thing made of straw almost after the manner of a Bee-Hive, to put the Cock in, to keep him warm.

A **Bag** is a linnen Bag made up in the sides and on end, in which the Cock is carried from place to place.

Sorts of Fighting Cocks.

A **Cockrel**, a young Cock bred up for Fighting.

A **Ducker**, or **Dunker**, is such a kind of Cock, as in his Fighting will run about the Clod almost at every blow he gives.

A **Raumer**, is a high fighting Cock, that strikes high: called of some a **High bearing Cock**.

A **Heeler**, or a **Bloody-spur Cock**; is such a Cock as strikes, or wounds much with his Spurs. Cock-Masters know such a Cock, while it is a Chicken, by the striking of his two Heels together in his going.

A **Shake-bag**, is a Cock turned out of the Bag to fight another Cock, unsight unseen, or unmatched; a Battle at a venture.

Terms in feeding Cocks.

To **Feed**, is to take them from the Walk, and put them in the Pen.

High feeding, is when the Cock is too high in flesh to fight.

Low feeding, is when he is poor and low in flesh.

Scouring, is the cleansing of his body weekly from his filth.

Shuting the Body, is to purge it from its grofer dung.

Sparing, is to fight a Cock with another, to breath him, in which fight they put Hots or Huts on the Spurs that they hurt not one another.

Spar the Cock, is breath him to embolden him to fight.

Washing his Mouth, is to make clean his Beak and Mouth after his Meat, least any filth should annoy him.

Terms in Matching and Fighting of Cocks.

Matching of Cocks, is to see they be of an equal height, length, and bigness in body.

Girth, is the compass of the body, which is known by handling.

Handling, is to measure the Girth of him, by griping of ones Hands, and Fingers, about the body of the Cock.

High Bearing Cock, is one that is higher and bigger than the Cock he fights with.

Low bearing Cock, is one over-matched for height.

Sparing, is the first beginning of the fight, which is by rising and striking with the Heels; fighting with Wings and Feet.

Beaking is fighting with their Bills: or holding with the Bill, and striking with the Heels.

Seting is when a Cock hath fought so long, that he is not able to stand, or gives over fight: then he is brough and set to the other Cock, Beak to Beak; and if he do not strike, the Battle is lost.

Shake-back Battle, is a fight between two Cocks unmatched, unsight unseen. To fight Shake-bag, is a kind of Challenge to fight any Cock that is brought to the Cock-pit, or any other place.

Battle Royal, is a fight between either 3 or 5 or 7 Cocks altogether, and that as stands longest, gets the day.

Plate fight, or a fighting of Cocks, for a peece of Plate; or any such thing. Is the fighting of four staves of Cocks (or 16 Cocks) two & two at a time, which makes 8 Battles; and then the eight wining Cocks (by lot) are to fight again, which makes four 4 Battles, and the four wining Cocks of them (by lot) are to fight again, which makes 2 Battles. And last of all, the two wining Cocks are to fight, which of them shall have the Prize.

A **Challenged Cock-fight**, is generally to meet with 10 staves of Cocks, and to make out of them 5 Battles (or more or less) the odd Battle, to have the Mastery.

Ordering of Cocks to Fight.

Dubing of a Cock, is the cuting off his Comb and Wattles.

Shurling of a Cock, is to trim the ends of his band, or neck feathers.

Gubing a Cock, is the cuting the feathers under the Wings. This is a thing not to be done according to Cock-pit Law, neither to cut of his feathers in any handling place of the Cock.

Triming a Cock, is to cut all his feathers of him from behind, as the rump, vent, and belly: which usually is cut all bare.

Spurs, are a kind of Horny Nails naturally set on the inside of the middle of his Legs.

Gablocks are Spurs made of Iron, or Brass, or Silver, and are fixed on the Legs of such Cocks as want their natural Spurs, some call them **Gaffs**.

——————— are the Boots or Stays about the Cocks Legs, by which the Gablocks are kept fast on.

Hotts or **Hutts**, are the Pounces or round Balls of Leather stuffed and clapped, or tied on the sharp end of the Spurs, to keep Cocks that they shall not hurt one another in sparing, or breathing themselves.

Bearing Claws, are his fore-most Toes on which he goes, which if they be hurt, or Graveil'd he cannot fight.

Cock-Pit Laws.

In **Setting** of a Cock, none are to be upon the clod but the Setters chosen for that end.

When the Cocks are fit **Weak to Weak** in the middle of the clod, and then left by the setters; if the set Cock does not strike in the running of 20, and six times 10, and no more at all; then the Battle is lost. If he strike then to begin the counting again.

In **Betting**, if any offer a Mark, to a Groat; or Forty shillings, to one: or Ten pound, to Five shillings. Then the Battle is done, and the Battle is to be lost.

If any take the shillings, then the Cock is to be set, and there is to fight again.

Dun and **Dun**, is a Wager, or sufficient Betting, when Cocks are cast on the clod, or in fighting.

Rules and Observations in Cock Feeders.

When a Cock is taken from his walk, he is to feed a month let to the [illegible].

The first fortnight, he is to be fed with ordinary wheat bread.

The Cock not to be spared of 4 or 5 days, that he has been in the [illegible].

Then to spur twice daily, or every other day, till about 4 days he be to fight.

The second fortnight, he is to be fed with fine bread of wheat, kneaded with white of eggs, and milk. Every meal having a sticke, or Corns of Barly.

The Water is not to be [illegible] by him; then he will drink [illegible]. But to give him Water 3 or 4 times in a day.

If [illegible]; give him, and give him a clove of Garlic [illegible] Sweet Oil for some few days.

If he low [illegible] they give him a yolke of an egg, beaten and [illegible] (till it be as thick as treacle) with his bread.

Four days before fighting, they give the Cock Hyssop, Violet, and Strawberry leaves, made small; in fresh butter.

The morning he is to fight, put down his Throat a piece of fresh butter, mixe with powder of white Sugar candy.

XC. He beareth Argent, a **Capon**, Sable. A **Capon** is no other then a **Cock Gelt**, by reason whereof it hath neither Comb, or Wattles, grown up to that greatness, as otherwise it would; nor the Tail to that lofyness, but hanging or drooping downwards, and instead of Spurs short stumps. This is born by the name of *Capen*.

A 3 such S born by *Capenhurst*.

This is by some termed, a **Cock Kerved**, a **Cock** having his **Carriage abated**; by his Kerving, that being the term of taking his stones from it; else by nature they are as valiant as the rest.

XCI. He beareth Gules, a **Hen gathering of her Chickens**, Argent. Born by *Chuken*. Some term it a **Hen covering her Chickens** with her Wings. The colours of Hens are as various, as in Cocks; some white, some black, some brown, some Pheasant colour. Some having small diminitive Combs, others none, some with high and lofty tufts on their heads, others smaller, and others none at all: such are called **Copped Hens**, that have such tufts. Again there are Hens and Cocks that are **rough-footed**, having their Legs grown over with feathers.

XCII. He beareth Argent, a **Hen feeding with her Chickens**, proper, born by *Gasbrug*. The **Turkish-Hens**, for their largeness, variety of colours, are most esteemed, the description of one take thus. The **Turkish Hen** hath a yellowish Bill, the tuft on her head cinereous, bare about the eyes, of a red colour: the Neck and Back and Tail brown, the Breast yellowish sported with reddish brown, oblong stroaks, and spots; the Belly cinereous, the Thighs and Rump, whitish: the Legs lead colour.

A 3 Chickens S is born by *Poliny* an *Italian*.

XCIII. He beareth Argent, a **Frisland Cock** Sable, **Crested, Wattled,** and **Legged,** Gules. This is of some called of a **Frisled Cock,** because the Feathers are all curled and frisled, by which epithete I belive this Bird was at first named, the same being afterwards by the mistake of the vulgar, corrupted into Frisland. *Gesner fol.* 466. and *Aldrovand, lib.* 14. *chap.* 14. calls this breed, the **Wool-bearing Cock** and **Hen.**

A 3 such S is born by *Cockham*.

O the like Cock S Crested and Jelloped G by *Pesser*.

XCIV. He beareth Argent, a **Urogallus**, or a **Urecock**, or **Urehen**, proper. Called also a **Cock** of the **Mountain**, or a **Mountain Cock.** The colours whereof I have described, *numb.* 69. to which I shall refer you. This is born by the name of *Urgall*.

B 3 such O is born by *Urecock*.

O on a Hill V the like S is quartered by *Hennenberg*, and is the Coat of *Van Rhombild*.

XCV. He beareth Argent, a **Peacock,** Azure. The proper colour of the **Peacock** is, the Bill white, being a little hooked at the tip: the Head, Neck, and begining of the Breast are of a deep shineing blewish green, in the Head there is two oblong white spots, the one above the the Eyes, the other under them succeeded by a black, or deep blew one: the tuft on the Head is of naked green stalks, or shafts of feathers bearing on their tops (as it were) Lilly Flowers, of the same colour; the Back of a pale ash colour, sprinkled with many transverse spots of black. The Wings are blackish, the long Feathers of the Tail are of a Chesnut colour, beautified with most elegant Gold lines tending upwards, but ending in large round tops of a very deep green, the circular spots (or as *Pliny* calls them) the Eyes of the Feathers, are party coloured of a deep shineing Gold colour, the next Chesnut, the third green, and the intermost is a blew, or Saphire coloured spot, almost of the figure of a Kidney Bean. The Hips, Legs, and Feet, of an ash colour, besprinkled with black spots. The Belly near the Stomach is a blewish green

green, near the vent it is black: or of a dusky colour The Cock is Armed with Spurs, after the manner of a Dunghill Cock. This is born by *Peacock*.

The **Peahen** hath little variety of colours, for the Head, the Creſt, the whole Wings, Back, Belly, Thighs and Legs are of a dusky colour inclineing to a cinereous; on the top of the Head, are ſome ſmall ſpots of green diſperſed, and two great white ſpots above and below the Eyes, the Chin white, the Neck is waved, and green; the Tail ſhort, having no ſuch Eye Feathers, as the **Peacok** hath.

A Croſs S between 4 Peacocks B born by *Smith*.
A 3 Peacocks B born by *Proudlove*.
B 3 ſuch head erazed O by *Baconthorp*.
B on a Log of Wood in baſe O a Peacock proper, by *Poppendorf*. The ſame out of a Coronet is his Creſt.
A Peacocks head B is the Creſt of *Geſsler*.
A Peacock is the Creſt of *Butrich*.

The Tail is much born in Creſts, as:

A Peacocks Tail ſet in a cap of dignity is the Creſt of the Lord *Molyneux* Viſcount *Marlsborough*.

The like out of a Coronet, is the Creſt of the Earl of *Julich* and *Cleve* in *Germany*.

The like Tail in its pride, is the Creſt of the Earl of *Bruz* and *Lienitz* in the ſame Empire.

A Peacocks Tail out of a Crown, tyed in the middle with a Ribon G is the Creſt of the Earl of *Monſterberg*.

Out of a Lamp chequy O and G 2 ſuch Tails proper. Born by *VVolf Van Sponheim*.

Out of a Coronet 2 Peacocks Feathers, fretted with two other counterpoſed in quadrangle. Is the Creſt of *Pentzen*.

A Peacocks Tail, is the Creſt of *Schlauderſpach*, a *German*.

Out of a Garland of Roſes A wreath ways, a Peacock Feather proper, between 2 Oſtrich Feathers, B is the Creſt of *Van Dalwick*.

7 Peacocks Feathers each diminiſhing other from the middle, proper. Is the Creſt of *Riemen*.

XCVI. He beareth Argent, a **Peacock in his Pride**, proper. There is a kind of **White Peacock** in the Northern Countrys, ſee *numb.* 98. three ſuch is the Coat Armour of *Pawne*.

☞ When Birds are of their natural colour, they are ever blazoned proper. On a Coronet the like to the ſiniſter, is the Creſt of *Van Stockamer* of *Brunſwick*.

XCVII. He beareth Or, a **Turky-Cock in his Pride**, proper. Some term it rather a **Turky-Cock in his Ire**, by reaſon they prove to be angry and will fight with any one that comes near them, when they are in this poſture. This is born by the name of *Humphrey*.

The **Turky-Cock**, the Bill is of a dark aſh colour, the Eyes black, with a yellow circle, round about the Eyes, it is of a florid blew and purple colour: its Head and Neck is bare of Feathers, and coloured with a purple coloured skin which hangs looſe, and flaggy, eſpecially before, down towards the Breaſt: it hath no Creſt or Comb, but a certain red fleſhy appendix, or worm-like caruncle, ariſing above the upper Chap of the Bill, which is ſometimes in his pride, extended to that length, that it hangs an inch or two below the point of the Bill, which again at his feeding is contracted to that ſhortneſs, that it ſtands like a fleſhy pointed ſubſtance over the root of the Bill. The Feathers are generally from the Stem, or Shaft, party coloured, divided into bars, a ſmall one of white, and a broad one of a blackiſh brown, the ends or tips white. The Legs and Feet aſh colour; having ſmall Spurs, or ſtumps, as in young Cocks. The Cock is diſferenced from the Hen, when they are come to maturity, by a blackiſh briſtly buſh in the upper part of his Breaſt, and that the worm-like fleſhy part on the Head of the **Turky-Hen**, is very ſmall, always ſtanding in a tip, on the root of the Bil.

A Cheveron between 3 ſuch, proper. Born by *Yoo*, or *Yew*.

A 3 ſuch Turky-Cocks S born by *Ireby*.

XCVIII. He beareth Argent, a **Turky**, or **Turky-Cock**, proper.

☞ The **Turky** is alſo born in his **Pride**, or **Ire**, ſide-ways; in which poſture to diſtinguiſh it from the aforeſaid **Turky**, ſtanding in full view; your are to term it a **Turky walking in his Pride**, and ſo of the **Peacock**. This is the Coat of *Turke*.

S 3 Turkys A Beaks and Legs S Creſt and Wattles G is born by the name of *Tuke*, or *Tuck*.

B the like O membred as afore: is born by *Craga*.

XCIX. He beareth Vert, a **Upupa's head, couped**, Argent. This is in our Country ſpeech called a **Whoopoo**, or **Whopee**, or **Hoopoe** and **Howpe**. It hath a long ſlender Bill ſomething bending, black and ſharp at point; the ſhape of the Body is like that of a **Plover**, the Head is adorned with a moſt beautifull Creſt, two inches high conſiſting of a double row of Feathers, reaching from the Bill, to the nape of the Neck, all along the top of the Head; which it can at pleaſure ſet up, or let fall: the tips of them are black, under the black, they are white, all the reſt of the Feathers, under the white are of a Cheſnut colour, inclining to yellow. The hinder part of the Neck is pale red, the Breaſt white, variegated, with black ſtroaks tending downwards. But the older Birds have no black ſtroaks, but only on their ſides. The Tail is a little forked all black, with a croſs mark, or bed of white, of the figure of a creſſant, the middle towards the Rump; the Horns towards the ends of the Tail. The Quill Feathers have croſs bars all the length of them, half an inch broad, black and white. The Limbs or borders of the laſt Feathers, next the Body are red, the Rump white, the long Feathers ſpringing out of the Shoulders, and covering the Back, are all varied with white and black croſs lines. The Legs are ſhort, the Toes as in other Birds, are four, three forward, one backward. Some call this Bird a **Thuet**. It is born by the name of *Thuet*.

B 3 ſuch couped O. Is born by the name of *Joynſon*.
A one ſuch erazed B is born by *VVildthull*.

C. He beareth Argent, a **Tee-Witte**, or a **Lapwing**, proper. This Bird is alſo termed a **Tuewhite**, or **Terwhite**, or **Pewet** from its cry. The Bill is round and

and black, the Feet long and reddish: the top of the Head is shining black, the Crest or Tuft, springs from the hinder part of the Head, and consists of 3 or 4 long slender Feathers, sharp pointed: the Cheeks white, with a black line under the Eyes, through the Eares: the Throat, and under side of the Neck, black; the Breast and Belly, Thighs and Rump, and under the Wings white: the Neck above, and middle of the Back, and Scapular Feathers are of a shineing green, with a purple spot on each side next the Wings, the Tail of a deep bay, the Feathers next them are dusky, with a certain splendour. The Wing Feathers, have the four out-most black, with white tips; the six following are black and white, those next the Body green, the lesser covert Feathers, are beautified with purple blew, and green colours, variously commixt. The outside Tail Feathers are white, saving a black spot in the exteriour Web: the tips of all the rest white. In the *North* of *England*, this Bird is called a **Tewit**, or **Bastard Plover.**

G 3 such O born by the name of *Terwhite*. The same with a Bordure A born of *Terrick*.

G 3 such Heads couped O is born by *Puett*.

CI. He beareth Argent, a **Nyticorax** his Head couped Sable. The **Nyticorax**, or **Night-Raven**, hath three distinct Feathers with strong Shafts in its Head, after this manner; the Body like a **Plover**, or **Pigeon**, but hath no Tail longer then the point of his Wings. The Bill is black, the Legs and Feet long and of a yellowish green; its Back and Crown of the Head, black; Neck ash colour, Throat and Belly tinctured with yellow, a white line from the Eyes to the Bill, Wings and Tail, are cinereous.

A 3 such heads couped proper, is born by *Nightraffe*.

A a cheveron between 3 such erazed S is born by *Durnall*.

The whole Bird proper, is the crest of *Vasant*.

CII. He beareth Argent, a **Pheasant**, proper. Its Bill is whitish, with a fleshy and tuberous Membrane, joined to the head, by which the Nostrils are hid, the eyes yellow; a red or scarlet for a good breadth compasses the eye, the forepart of the head is black, shining with a kind of purple gloss; the crown of the head, and upper part of the neck round about, is dark green, shining like Silk; and in the Sun or shade, sheweth very changeable, in some it shews to be blew; at the ears there grows black feathers longer than the rest, which *Pliny* calls Horns; all the rest of the body, breast, shoulders, back, sides, wings and tail are of a yellowish chesnut colour, each feather tipt with black, and edged with a most beautiful colour, which as it is diversly objected to the light, shews either black or purple; next to the purple is a most splendid gold colour; the tail is long, having the two middle feathers longer than the out-side feathers, they are of an ash-colour, on the sides or edges of a yellowish red, the shafts adorned with black spots, in the long feathers on both webs, opposite one to another, in the side feathers in the outward web only; the wing feathers and the ridges of the Wings are of an ash-colour, dusky, spotted all over with white spots, the legs, feet and claws of a whitish colour, the toes joined together by a thick Membrane as if it were for Swimming, the like whereof is not to be found in any other Pulveratricious or Earth Bird. The Legs are armed with Spurs like a Cock, but shorter and sharp, and of a black colour. This is born by *Phesant*.

The **Jacupema**, or **Brasilian kind of Phesant.** the head round, and neck slender and long; the bill slender and bending; the thighs and legs long, four Toes as in a Hen; the whole Bird is clothed with black Feathers, with which something of brown is mixed; the throat, and for an Inch and half down the neck is bare of feathers, and covered with a red skin, the rest of the Neck hath white spots amongst the black; so hath the Belly and the hindermost half of the wings; the thighs and a long tail are wholly black; the legs and feet red.

B 3 Pheasant Cocks O born by *Pheasant*. The same is also born by *Rede*.

A a Fesse between 3 Pheasants G born by *Staney*, of *Staney*.

A Pheasant sans feet proper, is the crest of *Bromley*, of *Hampton*.

A Pheasant is the crest of the Company of Cooks and Victuallers.

TO

TO

The Right Worshipful

CHARLES HOUGHTON, of *Houghton Tower*, Baronet.

AND

To the Vertuous Lady,

DAME *MARY CALVELEY* his Loveing Aunt.

THE many Examples of your Vertuous, Religious and Heroick Actions, as so many mighty and weighty Motives hath engaged me to present you with my Service, and make my Submissive Applications to you in this succeeding Chapter: not doubting but that under the Shadows of your Auspicious Favours and Smiles of your accepting Aspects, it will be Patronized, and the Author have the Happiness to acquit himself,

Your most Humble and Devoted Servant,

Randle Holme.

CHAP. XII.

I. HE beareth Azure, a **Sarret Overture** Argent, **Beaked** and **Membred**, Or. This Bird I find by *Boswell*, termed a **Sarret**, a name not to be found for any Bird in these parts of *Europe* in any Language, but I suppose it to be a **Sarret**, the Male of a **Saker**, a kind of a **Hawk**, had it not the tuft behind its Head. However seeing antiquity hath fixt the name, we will let it pass as a **Fictious Bird**, as many others born in Armory are, as:

The **Kalader**, or **Kalady**, which is said to be all white, without any other colour; it is by *Boswells* figure, *pag.* 70. much after the form and shape of a **Hawk** or **Kite**, and is said to prognosticate life, or death to a sick person, by his looking, or not looking on them, see *numb.* 31.

The **Disistrage**, or **Dispised Eagle**, which being brought up by the Bird **Cebar**, looseth is name and parents, and natural sight: it is of greater Body, yet of different colour, from the **Eagle**; being of a whitish cinereous, or brown.

The **Gripe**, in Latin called **Vultur**, others a **Gerfa**. It is a Ravenous Bird, shaped like a **Hawk**, they are fabled to be the fore-tellers, who shall be slaine in Battle, and where, for which end he fleeth to such places, waiting the issue, that thereby from the slaine, he may fill himself. It is said that the she conceiveth without the help of the Male, and is of a dusky black colour.

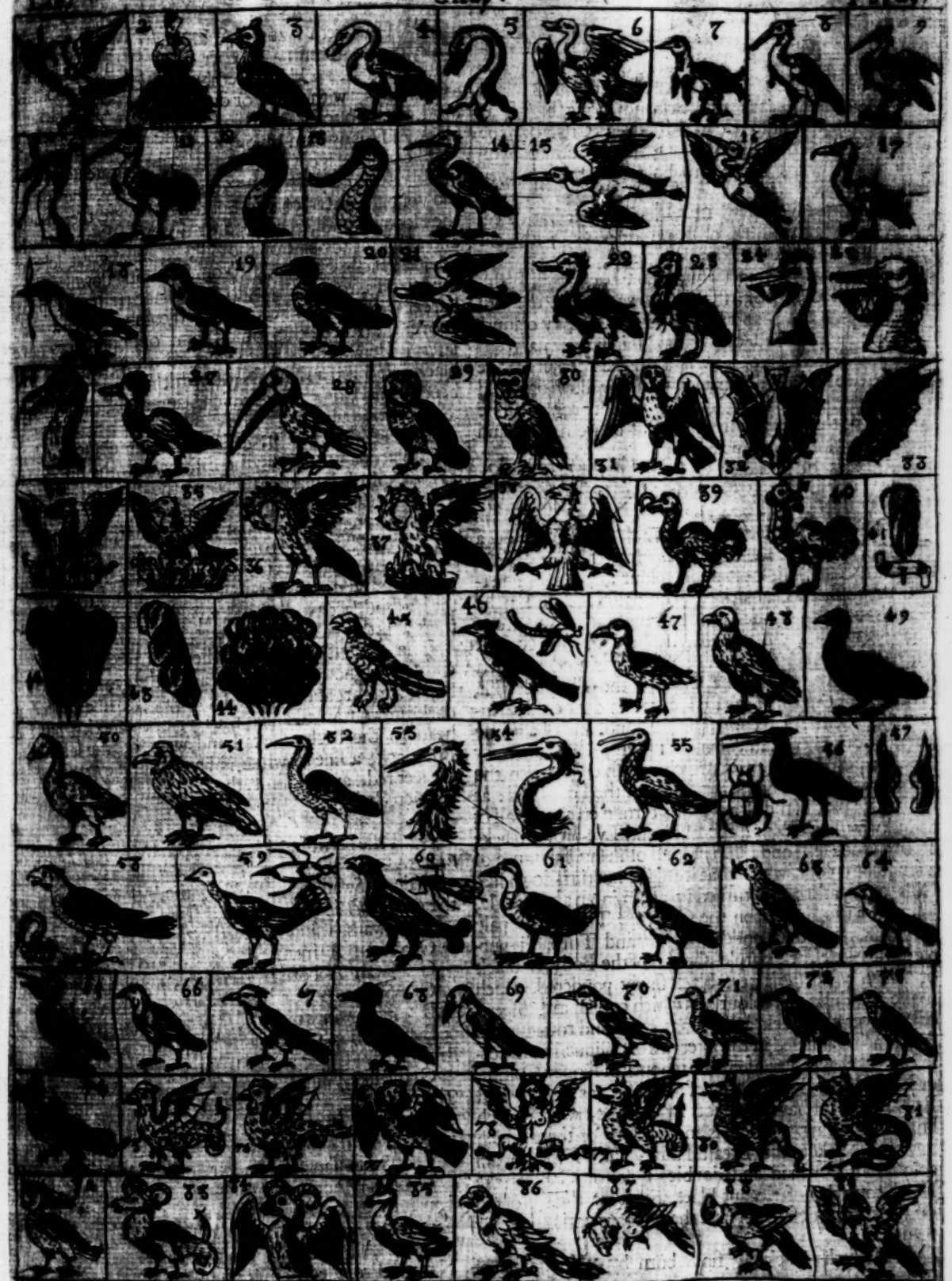
The **Chalcelet**, this is a long, and black Bird, seldom seen, but like the **Ptynr**, or **Ptynge** flyeth most part of the night, and taketh his Prey: it fights so cruelly with the **Eagle**, that they fall down to the ground together wounded, and so are taken of Shepards alive.

S a Sarret Wings overture A born by *Sarrat.*
B a Calader O born by *Chaldorf.*
O a Gripe S born by *Mort.*

II. He beareth Argent, a Bird of **Paradice**, proper, It is but a small Bird in Body not bigger the a **Swallow**, the head is of a bright yellow, shineing like to burnished Gold. The Chin of a blewish green, the Bill long and crooked, and dusky: the Wings of a shining dusky colour, between black and red. The smaller Feathers are half red, or Scarlet, and half Saffron or Gold colour: inclining to red: the Belly and Breast fulvous, or more Liver colour, but very bright and resplendent. The Tail a blackish red.

The

*



P. M. Gonsk. Houghton de Houghton Tower Bart. H. Consecr. H Lones Fe

There is another sort of **Bird of Paradice**, that hath a white Head, spotted with yellow, Eyes yellow, the hair of the Eye-lids red: Bill between yellow and green, the upper part a little crooked. Breast red, Belly, Back and Wings white, tipt with a red, or ferrugineous colour. The Tail Feathers, are of a reddish yellow.

The **Crested Bird of Paradice**, the Bill black long, and crooked, the Head, Neck and Wings black, at the joyning of the Bill yellow; it hath a Crest or Cop near the Neck, almost 3 inches long ridged and of a yellow colour; which seemed to be rather bristles, then Feathers.

The **King of Birds of Paradice**, it hath Legs and Feet as all other Bird, of Paradice have, with four Toes, three forward and one backward, with crooked Claws made for Preying. The whole Back, lower Belly, Wings and Tail, are of a shining brown: about the Bill Velvet hairs, black mixt with a green and a dusky colour; the Neck about of a Gold yellow, shining with a green gloss; the Breast a deep brown: from the Feathers of the Tail are two strings, two foot long, of a yellow or Gold colour; crooked at the ends, and of a dark brown. The Legs dusky, the Claws whiter, the Bill between green and blew, yet whitish at the point.

B 3 Birds of Paradice O born by *Restless*.

A 3 such G is the Coot of *Slingsby*.

III. He beareth Argent, an **African Cock**, or a **Guiny Cock**, or **Hen**, proper. It is called a **Mauritanian Cock**: it is of an ash colour all over, chequered with white spots, a black ring compasses the Neck: the Head is reddish; on the Crown, or top of the Head grows a hard horny Cap, of a dusky red colour; the Cheeks under the Eyes blew, and bare of Feathers, under which is a red gill, compassing the Chaule; the Bill yellowish, Feet blew. *Gesner fol.* 772. gives it this further description that the horny Crown is steep behind, and of a gentle ascent before, being fastned on (as it were) by Labells or slips, proceeding from it, which are fixed between the Eyes and Eares, on both sides, and on the Fore-head: at the hinder part of the Head grows certain erect haits all of a dusky yellow colour; the Eyes, and Eye-brows black: between the Head and Bill, is a kind of fleshy substance of a sanguine colour, which that it might not turn down like Gills, or Wattles, it is turned up again in an acute angle, just under the Eyes upon the Cheeks. The Bill is pale yellowish, the colour under the Jaws and Throat, is purple: the Neck dark purple, the rest of the Body is black or dusky, being (as it were) black finely poudered, which make it a dusky ash colour: in which colour are dispersed all over the Back, and Wings, ovall and round white spots, each contained in the intervals of oblique lines intersecting one another, after the manner of Honey Combs, or Ners. The lower parts of the Body, as Breast, and Belly, and Tail have the spots set in rows, without such lines interposeing. There is another sort of them which have the Neck to the Breast hairy; aud of a blew ash colour, with a round and double Tuft, or Crest on the Head, consisting of elegant black Feathers, the rest of the Body as afore described, save the spots are variegated, or shaded.

O 3 such Cocks I find born by the name of *VVyncock*.

A 3 such Cocks Heads couped B Comb and Wattles G by the name of *Nackthem*.

IV. He beareth Azure, a **Swan**, proper. It is **Rare avis**, to see a **Swan** any other colour then white, with a red Beak, with a black Membrane about the Nostrils, to the Eyes, with black or dusky Feet. Yet in Heraldry they are often Painted in contrary colours, especially black. This is born by *Swinley*.

The **Swan** is covered with a soft delicate Plumage, in old ones purely white, in young ones grey, the Bill in the young, is Leadcolour, but the old have them Red; the Hook or Nail, at the end or tip of the Beak, is black, and above at the base of the Bill, grows a great lobe of tuberous Flesh, of a black colour, bending downwards to the Nostrils, from the Eyes to the Bill is a triangular space, bare of Feathers, the Feet of a Lead colour, bare a little above the Knees, the inmost and outmost Toes have lateral Membranes appending to them; Claws are black. It hath a long Necky which it generally bears bending, and long Wings which being closed to the Body, foulds two double.

The **Wild Swan**, called also an Elke, and in some places a **Hooper**; the Bill towards the tip, as far as the Nostrils is black, thence to the head covered with a yellow Membrane, under the chin yellow; the whole body is white, yet not so pure white as the tame Swan, for the middle of the back, and the smaller covert feathers of the wings are cinereous, sometimes a brown feather here and there is mixt with the white on the back; the legs and feet are of a dusky yellow, being bare of feathers a little above the Knees.

The **Swan-Goose**, is between a **Swan** and a **Goose**; it hath the back of a dark grey, Belly white, breast and throat of a reddish brown; a line or list of dark brown runs all along the ridg of the neck from the head to the back, the tail and wings of the same, the Bill black, a line of white is between the eyes and Bill; the feet red, and in some the Bill too, it walks with its neck erected.

G a Fesse between 3 Swans A born by *Phillip ap Rys* of *VVales*.

A demy Swan to the Sinister, the Wings expanded, is the crest of *VVildberg*.

A 3 Swans, wings disclosed S born by *Folgnardby*.

G a Swan A membred S born by *Guilter*.

G a Swan A born by *Leigham*, and by *Randolph*.

G 3 Swans A born by *Bam rip*.

B 3 such, wings disclosed proper, born by *Swan*.

B a Swan to the Sinister A Billettee O born by *Riet*.

G the like, Wings expanded A is the coat and crest of *Truthingen*.

B a Swan A a Bordure O by *Mansen van Mansenburg*, of *Alsatia*.

O a Swan sans-feet A quartered by *Fortenbach*.

G on a Mount in Base V a Swan sans legs, Wings sepurture O, with a stone Ring in his Beak B by the name of *Grempen*.

☞ All Water Fowl have short tails, wherein Natures Provider hath ordered it so, that their Tails shall not be any Impediment to them in their Swimming, Diving or running. And that all Fowl that have long

long Legs, do in their flying stretch forth their Legs at length to their Tails; but such as have short legs do truss their feet to the middle of their bodies.

V. He beareth Sable, a **Swans Neck erazed**, Argent. All Erazings of Birds heads are generally from the lower part of the Neck, with a part of the Breast to it, and so it is in the **heads couped.**

☞ All other Birds save the Swan, are Blazoned such or such a head erazed or couped; but the Swan by reason of his long Neck is termed a Swans Neck (not Head) erazed or couped.

S 3 such couped, born by the name of *Squire*.

A Swans Neck A is the crest of *Otmarshalk* of *Bavaria*.

B 3 Swans Necks erazed, is born by *Baker*.

S 3 such erazed A is born by *Colley*.

B 2 Swans necks couped at the Brest respectant A born by *Van Niebeljc'iz*.

a Swans Neck A Gutte de sang was the ancient crest of *Leicester* of *Tabley*.

VI. He beareth Vert, a **Truon overture**, Argent, **Beaked** and **Membred**, Gules. This is a Bird like a **Swan**, and Brayeth with his head in the Water like an **Ass**. It is also called an **Onocrotulus**, from the voice of an Ass. This Figure is given me by Mr. *Boswell*, *pag.* 24. but the true shape and description; see *numb.* 24. 25.

G a Truon A born by *Truon*.

G the like, Wings disclosed A born by *Van Lappiter*.

G per Base Barry of 4 A and G on a Coronett, a Truon gorged and crowned with the same O born by *Van Lappitz*.

VII. He beareth Argent, a **Pen-Gwin**, Azure. Born by *Pengwin*. It is said to be half a Bird, and a tail like a Fish; it hath no Wings, but two small skinny Fins hanging down by their sides like two little Arms, the upper side of the Body is covered with black Feathers, and the under side with white; the neck hath a ring or collar of white Feathers, the Bill and Feet flat and black, having no back Toe: See another description of this Bird, *chap.* 13. *numb.* 45.

VIII. He beareth Sable, a **Stork**, Argent, **Beak** and **Legs**, Gules. The natural colour of the common or white Stork; the head, neck and fore part is white, the rump and out-side of the Wings is black, the Belly white; the quill Feathers of the Wing black, the tail short and white, the bill long and sharp pointed, red; the legs long, and bare above the knees, and red; the Toes from the divarication to the first joint, connected or joined together by an intervening Membrane, the claws are broad like the Nails of a Mans hand; the Vertebres or joints in the Neck are fourteen.

The **Black Stork** hath its head, neck, back, and wings all black, with a certain glose of Blew or Purple, and Green; Breast, Belly and Sides are White, the Bill green, the legs and feet green; yet some have the orbits of the eyes, the whole Bill, Legs and Feet, red, or scarlet colour.

The **American Stork**, or **Brasilian Maguari**; it is like a **Stork** in figure, the Bill half, next to the Head, is of a yellowish green, the other half to the tip, of ash colour; white Eyes, with black pupil; and about them a Scarlet coloured naked skin, the like also near the rise of the Bill, or between the Bill and the Throat, which when it is angry, it lets fall like a Gill, or Wattle. The Body all white, and at the lower part of the Neck, above the Breast, the Feathers are longer than the rest: the Tail is black, so are the Wings, near the Back; which hath a gloss of green: the Legs and Feet red, like other **Storks.**

A a Stork S Beaked, and Leged, G born by *Starky*.

G a Stork regardant A Membred, G born by *Storke*.

G a Storke to the sinister Wings disclosed, A Membred. G the same on a Coronet, is the Coat and Crest of *Regall*.

S 3 Storks heads erazed A born by *Warring*.

IX. He beareth Argent, a **Storke rising**, (or **surgiant**) Sable; **Beak** and **Legs**, Gules. This might be blazoned a **Storke** proper, from the description of the **Black Storke**, mentioned in the fore-going example, *numb.* 8.

Antiquity hath drawn the **Stork**, with a tuft behind the Head, but it is most properly thus without it, either on the Head or Breast. Again it hath anciently been depicted, with a bush Tail, like to the **Ostrige**, when it naturally hath but a short bunting Tail, so short that the Wings being closed, or gathered up they covered all Tail.

B 3 Storks rising, proper. Born by *Gibson*.

V in the base Watery, a Stork by the brink thereof rising A by the name of *Storkwater*.

X. He beareth Or, an **Ibis head, couped**; **Erassing**, or **Jessant a Serpent**, proper. It is like to the **Storke** in shape, and is a Bird that eateth and devoureth **Serpents**, and therefore ever drawn in Herauldry, with a Serpent in its Beak. It hath a thick Bill, where it is joyned to the Head, but pointed at the end, and a little crooked, or arched, and wholly red: as are also the Legs which are long, and are little naked about the Knees. The Plumage is all over black. This is born by the name of *Carall*.

A 3 such proper. Born by *Meerthig*.

XI. He beareth Azure, a **Crane**, proper. Born by the name of *Crane*. Antiquity hath made this a bush Tail, like to a **Capon**, whose draught I have too much followed, though naturally it hath a short **Pendant**, or **Dropping tail**: much like the **Storke**. Whose description take thus: the Bill is straight sharp pointed, and of a dark greenish colour; the top of the Head black, being from the Bill to the hinder part of the Head, covered with black hairs, or bristles, rather then Feathers. On the back of the Head it hath a space, or bed, of the figure of a Crescant, bare or thin set with hairs, and of a red

red colour. Below which on the upper part of the Neck is a triangular spot, of ash-colour Feathers. Two white lines, or stroaks, from each Eye, descends down the sides of the Neck, and meet behind, the fore-mentioned white triangle spot, and thence continues all the back part of the Neck. The Throat, and part of the fore-most part of the Neck, of the same black hue. The Quill feathers, and utmost pinion Feathers are black, all the rest rest of the Body is ash-colour: the Tail is small and short, hanging down all of a brown, or cinereous colour, with black tips: the Legs are black, bare of Feathers above the Knees. The Toes black and very long, joyned together at the first joynt, by a thick Membrane.

The **Indian Crane,** is in all respects and colours, like the common **Crane,** only that in this, the top of the Head from the Bill to the Crown is bare of Feathers, and of a red colour.

The **Himantopus,** or **Loxipes,** is of the form of a **Crane,** having long Legs and Bill, and a short Tail: its Belly, and Breast, and under side of the Neck white; the Head about the Eyes is black, and under white: the Back and Wings, black; the Tail above, ash-colour, and under white; the Bill black, the Legs and Feet of a Sanguine colour, bare about the Knees. The Toes of an equall length and short, wanting a hinder Toe, therefore unfit to stand upright, but with a cringing or bending in the Knees; Claws black.

The **Sea Pye,** or **Hematopus,** hath a long straight Bill sharp at the end, red: Eyes and Eye-lids of a curious red, Legs and Feet long and red; it wants a Back-toe. The Toes half way joyned by a Membrane or Skin: Claws black. The Head, Neck, Back and to the middle of the Breast, black; the rest of the Breast, Belly and Rump white, Tail the lower half white, the upper black: Wings black, with a white cross bare, made by the covert Feathers,

S 3 Sea Pyes proper. Born by *Atcliff.*

A on a Hill in base out of Saggs V a Crane to the sinister, with a Fish in its Bill, proper. By *Van Eicke.*

B a Crane A born by *Dobrinskie.* Holding up its right Foot. By *Schilwatz.*

G the like A by *Cranigperg.*

B a on a Hill out of the base V the like to the sinister A by *Westendorf.*

V a Crane pointing his Beak to the dexter side, A by *Utzlingen.*

A a Crane G born by *Vfheim.* Whose Crest is a Crans Head, both to the sinister.

V a Crane A with a stone Ring in his Beak O by *Crenchel.*

A Crane standing in Saggs with Spear heads, proper. Is the Crest of *Barnston,* alias *Barnardston.*

XII. He beareth Argent, a **Falcinellus head couped,** proper. This may be in English called a **Sith-Bill** from the bending of its Bill after the manner of a Sithe: its shape is in all respects like a **Crane,** or **Curlew**; the whole Body is of a spadiceous colour, tending to dusky, but the Neck and Breast are spotted, with certain oblong dusky spots. In the middle of the Back, Wings, and Tail is a kind of glossie green dark colour; the Bill is black, so is the Thighs as far as bare, with the Legs and Feet, which are of a good length. This is born by the name of *Crook.*

The **Brasilian Curicaca,** the Bill is crooked and sharp pointed, and of a dusky fiery colour; the Feet and Legs long and cloven, red; Claws black. The Plumage of Head and Neck white, mixt with yellow; in the upper side of the Neck the Feathers long; the circle of the Eyes yellow, Pupil black: about the Eyes and Throat there is a black skin. The Back and Belly ash colour, and middle of the Wings white, mixt with grey; all the rest of the Body and Tail, black. The Thighs are but half Feathered: there is another sort of these called **Matuitui.**

The **Guara,** it hath the like crooked Bill, long and of a whitish ash colour; black Eyes, a long crooked Neck and Head, and whole Body covered with Feathers of an elegant Scarlet colour, onely the ends of the Quill Feathers are black. The Tail long, the Thighs half bare, without Feathers, and of a light grey. It is by some Authors called an **Indian Curlew.**

The **Water Raven,** or **Acacalot:** the Bill bends like a bow, and is blew: the Legs long, Feet cloved into four Toes, and blackish; the Claws blacker: the Eyes black, the circle about Sanguine, from the Eyes to the Bill bare of Feathers and reddish: the Head and Neck of a dusky white and green Feathers, and some yellowish: the Wings are also of a shineing changeable colour, which varies according to the reflection of the Sun-beams: the Breast, Belly, and Tail, are dusky with red intermingled.

The **Crex,** hath a long crooked Bill black, also black Legs and Head; but the Neck, Back, and Breast, are white, the rest of the uppe parts ash colour: the Wings are blackish, crosted on both sides by a white line, near the ponion, or ridges: his voice is like the sound, *Crex, Crex.*

A 3 Sythe Bill Heads couped S born by *Mourburg.*

A a Water Raven, proper. Born by *Norton.*

O 3 such Heads couped. Born by *Leighby.*

XIII. He beareth Azure, the Head of an **Avosetta** proper, it is from the reflectedness of its Bill, termed a **Recurvirostra**; Which we may very well English, a **Turnbill.** It turns upwards, and ends in a slender weak point, and black: the Head round as a Ball, black; with the fore-part grey. The hinder half of the Neck is black, the Throat and fore-part of the Neck, Breast and Belly, white; the Back partly white, partly black: the Quill Feathers are at the ends, half way black, the rest white; as also the Feathers of the second row; the rest of the covert Feathers to the ridg, are black: which makes in the Wing a broad bed of white, not directly cross the Wing but oblique. On the Back it hath two black stroakes, begining at the Shoulders, and meet at the middle of the Back, and from thence they run in one to the Tail: the Tail is all white, the Legs are long, of a fair blew colour; bare of Feathers above the Knees; Claws black, with a very small Back-toe, the fore-most Toes are long and joyned together with a skinny Membrane, to the outmost joynts; the Skin being cut in (as it were) between the Toes. Three such is born by the name of *Binder,* or *Bender.*

XIV. He beareth Sable, an **Heron** (or an **Ardea**) or **Heart** proper. This is called also, an **Heronshaw**: it hath a long straight Bill and sharp pointed, of a yellowish green colour: the Eye-lids, and the space between the Eyes and Bill green: the Legs and Feet are green, the Toes long and open, the out-most being joyned to the middle Toe, by a Membrane below. The fore-part of the Head white, from the Crown succeeded a black parcell of Feathers, hanging backwards; The Chin white, the Neck long ash colour behind, and white before, tinctured with red, and dilicately painted with black spots. On the lower part of the Neck grew small long narrow white Feathers, which covered the Back and are variegated with long whitish lines tending downwards; the lower part of the Breast and Rump yellowish. The prime Feathers of the Wings are ash colour, the Bastard wing black, which are covered at the root with white Feathers. Then the second row of Wing Feathers are black: and the Basis, or Ridge of the Wing, white: the Tail is ash-colour, being round at the end, reaching but little behind the points of the Wings. 3 such born by *Heron*.

The **Ash-coloured Heron**, hath the Bill of a Rose colour, and white; Eye yellow; the Head, Neck, Back and Wings of a dusky ash colour, all the ends tipt with red; the Wing feathers have white tips, so hath the Tail: the Breast besprinkled with long red, black and white spots, the Belly white, the Thighs reddish: the Legs and Feet greenish.

The **Great white Heron**, is white all over the Body, it hath no Crest or Tuft as the common **Heron**, the Bill yellowish, the naked place between the Eyes and Bill, green: Legs bare above the Knees, with the Feet and Talons are black.

The **Garzetta**, is the lesser **White Heron**. It is all over pure white, having from the hinder part of the Head, a short Crest or Tuft, hanging down: the Bill black, Eyes yellow, Legs green and scally.

The **Cirris**, or **Red Leged Heron**, it is between a Saffron, and Chesnut colour, deeper on the Breast and Belly, then on the Back; a very short Tail: the Pupil of the Eye compassed with a yellow, and that with another Scarlet circle. The Bill at the joyning to the Head green, then blew to the middle, from thence to the tip, black. The Legs and Feet of a deep red, Claws black, see its figure *chap.* 13. *numb.* 34.

The **Black Heron**, the shape in all respects answereth the **Heron**, only the colour of the Body all over is blackish, with a white Ring about its Neck, the Bill is yellow in the middle, and at the end, as well above as below.

The **Bisilian Heron**, hath the Bill serrat, or toothed, above and below; dusky at the point, and of a yellowish green towards the rise; the Head and upper side of the Neck hath long Feathers, of a pale yellow, waved with black; the Throat and Neck before, white; the Breast and Belly is waved with brown, the Back and Wings dusky, waved with yellow: the Quill Feathers are mixt in equal parts of black and green, the tips white, the Tail the same: the Legs as other **Herons**.

G 3 such A born also by *Heron* of *Northumberland*.

G a Cheveron Er: between 3 such A is also born by *Heron* of *Godmanchester* in *Huntingtonshire*.

S a Cheveron Er: between 3 such A by *Hern* of *London*.

S an Heron A. Born by *Heron*.

S 3 such A by *Heron*.

A 3 Herons heads erased S born by *Hernway*.

B 3 such Heads A born by *Hernsich*.

XV. He beareth Azure, an **Heron Volant Overture** Argent, Beak and Legs, Gules. It is of some Heraulds termed **Volant in Fesse**. This is born by *Herndale*

☞ Here note that all long Legged Fowl in flying thrust out their Legs to their Tail; but all short Leged Birds, draw them up to their Belly.

A such a Heron Volant in Fesse, B Membred, O between 3 Escallops S. Born by *Herondon*.

XVI. He beareth Gules, a **Heron Sojant a loft**, in bend, Argent. Of others termed **Volant Overture** in bend. Born by *Hernloft*.

The **Small Bisilian Heron**, of some travellers, called a **Garza**: the Bill is dusky above, and of a yellowish white beneath; a yellow Eye, with a black Pupil, between the Eyes and Bill the skin is yellow, the Head is of a steel colour, mixed with pale brown, the whole Neck, Breast and Belly, are white mixt with cinereous or pale Feathers. The Back is black and partly of a steel colour, mixt with pale brown Feathers; the Wing Feathers are greenish, with white tips, the rest of the Wing is elegantly variegated with brown, steel colour, yellow or Wax colour, and ash colour: the Tail is covered with the ends of the Wings. The Legs are mingled with ash colour, and yellow, Claws brown. This Bird walks erect and stately. The *Brasilians* calls this Bird in their Language, a **Guira-tinga**.

XVII. He beareth Argent, a **Cormorant**, Sable. The proper description of its Body and colour is thus: The Bill is straight, hooked only in the tip of the higher mandable, having sharp dented edges, and black: the Legs are thick and strong, Feet and Claws black; it hath four Toes in each Foot all webbed together by a broad black Membrane, all standing forwards, the outwarmost longest, the rest in order shorter (which in Herauldry we have observed, quite contrary, by making the inner Toes longest, and the outward by degrees shorter) the Eyes brown, the Pupil black, the colour of the upper side is dusky, shining with an obscure tincture of green, the Breast and Belly white. The Quill Feathers, the tips of them and of the second row, are ash coloured. It hath a naked place round the Eye, from the Bill runing under the Throat, in form of a triangle, being partly Flesh colour, and part yellow. A Cheveron between 3 such is born by *Warberton*.

The **Shagge**, **Graculus Palmipes**, the **Palm-Footed Crow**, or **Chough**; made in all respects like the **Cormorant**, the Bill black, the neither mandable between green and yellow: all the higher side is of a black purple colour, or black with a dark tincture of green, shining like Silk. The under side is dusky, the middle of the Belly inclining to ash colour, the Chin white: the Wings reach but to the Basis of the Tail, the Feet and Legs as the **Cormorants**, the Skin of the Legs being cancellated, not scally, the Soles and backsides of the

the Legs black, Claws black.

The **Soland Goose**, hath not so long a Neck as the **Cormorant**, but in all other parts resembles it: for the Bill is long, straight, and a little crooked at the point, of an ash colour; behind the Eyes, the skin is bare of Feathers, the Mouth wide behind the Eyes; it hath no Nostrils, but instead thereof a furrow, or cranny, extended on each side all the length of the Bill; all the four Toes are webed together, and stand forward, Legs Feathered down to the Knees, Legs and Feet black: they are generally coloured as a **Goose**, all over white, except the Quill Feathers, which are black. And the top of the Head, which with Age grows yellow. The Tail as short as the points of the Wings.

The **Sula**, is like the **Soland Goose** for Bodily shape: the Bill only sharp pointed, and that about the Eyes it was black, it hath also shorter Legs and black: the Prime Feathers of the Wings black, so were the Covert, or top Feathers of the Tail. All the rest white, only the Back a little yellowish.

B a Cormorant A born by the name of *Cormoran.*
B 3 Cormorants O born by *Seneus.*
B a Cheveron between 3 such Heads erazed, A by *Lushfield.*
A a Soland Goose proper. Born by *Goose.*

XVIII. He beareth Argent, an **Alcian**, or a **Kings-Fisher**, with an **Ele in his Beak**, all proper. Some term it a **Kings-Fisher Jessant an Ele**, proper. Other **Erassing an Ele**, proper. The **Kings-Fisher** is a fine lovely coloured Bird, it hath a black strong, long straight sharp pointed Bill; yet whitish in the Angles. The Chin white, with a mixture of red, the Breast and Belly the same; the lower Belly under the Tail is a deep red: with the sides under the Wings. From the Bill to the Eyes, and behind the Eyes, is a red Spot; to which succeeds a white mark, the Crown of the Head if of a black green, with cross lines of blew. From the Neck, through the Back, to the Tail, is a bright pale blew, very splenderous, which is crossed with obscure dark lines. The Quill Feathers are blew, the next row to them tipt with blew, the Basis of the Wing dusky; the Tail short and of a dark blew, the Legs and Toes before black, behind with the Back-toes red. The Toes stand two forwards and two backwards, as I have observed in the Bird, though other Authors mention it not.

The **Merops**, or **Bee-eater**, is like the **Kings-Fisher** in shape, the Bill black, the Irides of the eyes of a lovely red, the head great and oblong, the crown red, in some Birds having a mixture of green, the forehead next the Bill is a greenish blew, but in the middle between the nostrils white; from the corner of the mouth through the eyes is a black stroak; under the chin is bright pale yellow feathers, the neck and shoulders are green, with a certain mixture of red, the whole Belly and Brest are blew, which is deeper near the chin, and paler lower; the Wing feathers are the first ten blue tipt with black; the next ten are orange colour tipt with black; the covert wings are orange, those next the ridg or pinion of a bluish green, the long feathers springing from the shoulders of a pale yellow; the Tail longer than the Wings, the top feathers Blue, the under of a Dun colour, with the exteriour Webs of a green, intermixt with Blue, the legs and feet of a dusky red, the claws black; all the foremost toes are joined together to the first joint, as if they were but one toe.

The **Green Merops**, or the other **King of Bee-Eaters**, is somewhat longer than the precedent; the Bill like it, but more Sith like and black; the head, neck, breast, and almost the whole body yellow, from the Bill through the eyes is a great black spot or line; the back is chestnut colour mixt with green and yellow; the Wing feathers are painted with diverse colours, for the first or uppermost part next the ridg is blue; the second row of blue and yellow mixt; the third altogether yellow; the fourth or prime feathers black with red tips; the upper part of the tail a bright green, the lower yellow, so that the tail is half one and half the other colour, the feet yellow, and the claws black.

The **Water Owzell**, or **Water Crake**, the Bill is a little shorter and streighter than the precedent, it is sharp pointed and black; head and upper part of the neck of a dark dusky colour or black; a red eye, all the back and Quill Feathers, and covert feathers of the Wings are parti-coloured, of brown, black and blue, the middle parts of the Feathers being black, the edges blue; the forepart of the breast, and under side of the neck are white, the rump black; the eye-lids round about white, the tail a little longer than the Wings, which it will now and then flirt up; the legs, feet and claws black. It is in some places called a **Wasser-Amzell.**

A such a Kings Fisher, Jessant and Elle proper, born by *Hallum.*
A 3 such proper, born by *Van Bussecker.*
O 3 such with a Fesse between B is born by *Kirkwick.*

XIX. He beareth Argent, a **Sea-Mew**, proper, **Legs** and **Beak**, Gules. Some term it a **Sea-Gull**, and some a **Sea-Pie**; but there is much difference in the colours, though little in the shape.

The **Sea-Mew**, hath a red Bill and red Legs, in some more blackish; the top of the head black, the upper side of the neck, back, tail, and lesser quill-feathers are ash-colour or bluish; the great quill-feathers are black, the Wings very long, reaching behind the tail, they are whole footed, having little or no hinder Toe.

The **Winter-Mew**, called also the **Coddy-Moddy**, the Bill is whitish, the eyes Hazel colour; the head white, spotted with brown, the Neck brown, back cinereous, the long scapular feathers, varied with brown spots, rump white, the tail hath the tips white, then succeeds a black Bar, the rest of the tail white; the throat and under side of the body white; the quill-feathers have the outmost black, the other white only tipt with black; the lesser covert feathers are brown and black mixt; the legs and feet dusky green, the back toe little, armed with a very small claw and black.

The **Sea-Mall**, the Bill white, but yellow towards the tip, bending towards the point; the feet of a pale green, claws black; the Membranes connecting the toes reach as far as the claws; the head and upper part of the neck are clouded with brown spots; the back ash-colour, the tail white, the throat and whole under side of the

the body white; the shoulders and upper coverts of the wings ash colour; the quill feathers are partly white and black in Bars, tipt with ash-colour, but them next the body were all ash-colour tipt with white.

The **Winter Mew**, is another kind of **Sea-Mew**, whose Bill is yellow with a black tip; the eye black compassed with a gold yellow circle, and it with a circle of black, and the black with a circle of white, and it with one of grey or ash colour; the head and breast cinereous and white particoloured; the belly more dusky; the wings and back are of mingled colours, as white, grey, brown; the quill feathers are dusky or blackish, and exceed the length of the tail, which is cinereous, except a cross bar of an Inch near the end; the thighs cinereous; the legs and feet a pale yellow, claws black and crooked.

The **Brown Tern**, or **Ash coloured Mew**, is the least of the kinds of **Sea Mews**; its Bill is a little bending and black; the back and wings of a deep ash colour or blue, the quill feathers brown, tipt at the ends white; the crown of the head in the hinder part black, all the rest of the body pure white, the legs, feet and membranes of a Saffron colour, claws black.

The **Great Gull**, or the **Black and White Gull**, or the **Sea Gull**; the Bill is something bending at the end, and yellow; the lower mandable buncheth out into a knob, marked on each side with a double spot, the lower red, the upper black; the edges of the eye lids round about are of a Saffron colour; the head great, and flat crowned; the neck short, breast, belly and tail white; the hinder part of the head, back and wings black; the quill feathers are tipt with white, the legs and feet white, it hath a whole foot, and a very small back toe, claws black; this is in some places called a **Huge Sea Gull**, and a **Swarth-back**; the wings exceed the length of the tail.

The **Herring-Gull**, hath a yellow bill, with a red spot on the side of the Knob, on the lower mandable; the eye-lids round in some yellow, others red; its head, neck and whole under side, with the tail white; the back and wings (except the outward quill feathers) are of a dark ash-colour; which out quill feathers had white tips; in some the quill feathers are particoloured of white, black and cinereous; the Wings when closed exceed the length of the tail and cross each other.

The **Pewit**, or **Black Cap**, called also the **Sea Crow**, or **Mire Crow**; it is a kind of cinereous or **Brown Gull**; the bill bending a little, of a Sanguine colour, eyes yellow, eye lids red above and below compassed with white; the head and throat of a dilute black; the middle of the back ash-coloured; the neck to tail white, the first quill feathers of the wing had the tips and edges white, the rest of the feathers black tips, all the rest of the wing ash-colour, which gathered together reach behind the tail, that is all Snow white; the Legs of a dark sanguine colour, the back toe small, the feet whole, claws little and black.

The **White Gull**, it is all over as white as Snow, yet the Wings have somewhat of ash colour; the eyes are great, compassed with a black circle, near the region of the ears is a black spot, its wings are longer than the tail, the legs, and feet and bill are all red; the ends of the wings are black.

The **Cornish Gannet**, called also a **Skua**; and the **great Grey Gull**; the Bill is black, bending at the point, and is covered with a Skin from the basis of the bill to the Nostrils, as in Falcons or Land Birds of Prey; the Legs and Feet black, whole footed, without a heel or back toe, save a little stump, the claws crooked; the back is cinereous or brown like that of **Buzzards**, the Belly and under side paler; the quill feathers and the tail are black, all tipt in both with white; see *chap.* 13. *numb.* 71.

The **Catarracta**, or **Spotted Gull**; it is on the back variegated like a **Goshawk**, with brown, white and yellow mingled, on the under side it is all white, spotted with brown; the Bill is black and hooked; the wings even with the tail which is black; the hips covered with feathers to the Knees, the Legs, Feet and intervening Membranes cinereous; claws black and crooked.

The **Cornish Wagell**, or the **Grey Gull**; the colour as well upper as lower parts is all grey (as in the back of a **Curlew**) being mixed with whitish and brown and ash-colour in the back and wings; the rump white, spotted with brown; chin white, the quill feathers all black; the tail is tipt with white, then succeeds a cross bar of black, two inches broad, the rest of the tail feathers are varied with transverse bars of white and black; the Bill is black, a little bending, the head great, the neck short, as in all **Gulls**, legs and feet white, the hinder toe small.

The **Cepphus**, or **spotted Sea Gull**, or **Mew**; the Bill is of a whitish colour, the edges red, at the top (which is hooded) black; the eyes red, encompassed with a white circle; the head, neck, breast, belly, thighs and rump are variegated with white and brown spots, with a mixture of bay or yellow; the wings black, tipt with yellow, the tail all black; the Legs and Shanks greenish, the feet and membranes connecting the toes dusky.

B three Sea Mews A born by *Floyd*, alias *Lloyd*.
A 3 Bars B on the middle 3 Sea-Mews, born by *Pennant*.
The same is the coat of *Ismytton Wyddell* of *Wales*.
O 3 Sea Gulls proper, born by *Gull*.
A a Sea Crow proper, born by *Crowmester*.

XX. He beareth a **Drake** proper, in a Field Argent. This is termed also a **Duck**, a **Wild Drake**, or a **Shell-Drake**, or **Mallard**. They have their feet situate more backwards than other Water-fowl, which makes them go wadling; they have generally a broad and flat bill, and a short sharp pointed tail, the male of this kind having a feather turning up in the tail near the Rump; of these shape of Fowl there is several colours and much variety, as

The **Eider**, or **Ferroyer Duck** hath a black Bill, with oblong Nostrils, from the Nostrils through the crown of the head, above the eyes, are two very black spots or stroaks tending to the hinder part of the head, which have a white line between them, ending in the upper part of the neck; the whole neck, lower part of the head, the back and wings all white; the quill feathers, the breast, rump and tail all black; the legs short and black, whole footed, with a back toe, which hath a skinny membrane also, the claws share and crooked. The **Hen** of this kind is all brown, speckled here and there with black spots; this is in some places called St. *Cuthberts* **Duck**.

The

The **Wild Duck,** and **Mallard**; the first is the Female, the later the Male: the Bill of the Male is greenish yellow, the upper Mandable hath at the end, a tip or nail, downwards: the Head, and upper part of the Neck, are of a delicate shining green, then follows a Ring of white, almost round the Neck: from the white Ring, the Throat is of Chesnut colour, down to the Breast: the Breast and Belly are of a white ash colour, bedewed or sprinkled, with innumerable dark specks: the under Tail is black, the upper side of the Neck, is cinereous or red, sprinkled with small spots: the Back red, the lower part still deeper colour to the Rump, which is black, with a gloss of purple: the lesser row of Wing Feathers are red, the long Scapular Feathers Silver coloured, the Quill Feathers the outmost ten, of a dusky or dark brown, the next ten have white tips, being of a shining purple blew colour, with a border of black, between the white and blew. The covert Feathers have (as it were) cross bars or lines over them, first black, and above that white: the Tail is white, mixt with brown; the reflected Feathers in the middle of the Tail, are black with a gloss of purple. They have a white lower Eye-lid: the Feet and Legs of a Saffron colour, Claws brown.

The **Duck,** or the Female to the **Mallard,** or **Drake:** hath neither green Head, or white Ring on the Neck, or red Breast; but the Back, Neck, and Head, are party coloured, or white brown, and dark red: the middle of the Back the Feathers are dark brown, the edges pale red. The Breast and Belly lighter, spotted.

The **Gadwall,** or **Gray:** it is a kind of **Duck,** and **Mallard,** of a middle size: of some Authors called a **Vitelenten.** It is long Bodied, the Head inclines from blew to black, in the Throat the Feathers edged with ash colour, and a whitish red near the Breast: the lower part of the Neck, and upper part of the Breast and Shoulders party coloured of black and white and red: that is to say, the edges or fringes of the Feathers reddish, then a black line of a Semicircular figure next it, within which is included another Semicircular white line, parallel to it, and in the white again a black: the Breast white, the Belly darker, with transverse black spots. The Back brown, the edges of the Feathers of a whitish red: its Chin and Cheeks white, speckled with brown: its Rump and Tail black, white underneath: the sides are curiously variegated with alternate black and white lines. The Quill Feathers have the first outward ten brown, the three next the tipt with white, the four following have the outward webs black, tipt with white: those next the Body are cinereous: the covert Feathers, are of a black purple shining colour: in the third row are spots, or red scattered. The Bill of a Saffron colour, with the middle part black: the Legs Feathered to the Knees, the Feet whitish, the hinder Toe small. The Membrane connecting the Toes, black.

The **Muggent,** hath a Bill and Legs and Feet of a Saffron colour, with the Membrane black: the Crown of the Head blackish, and so are the Wings which are shorter then the Tail: the rest of the Plumage all over, the Body is party coloured, of a blackish fiery colour, and white, and Weasle colour; almost like that of the **Partridge,** that is testaceous.

The **Wigeon** or **Whewer:** the Bill is of a Lead colour, with a black tip: the Feet of a dusky white, Claws black, short Back-toe. The Crown towards the Bill of a dilute colour, Head and end of the Neck red, upper part of the Breast to the Wings deep red, with small black transverse lines; Back brown, edged Cinereous; Rump above black: Tail black, edges or sides whitish. Breast and Belly white, mixt with yellow: Thighs spotted with a reddish brown: the Quill Feathers, the first ten brown, next ten white tips, the rest purple blew: the covert Feathers next the Quills party coloured, brown and white: the small Coverts are brown, or dark ash colour.

The **Craker,** or **Sea-Pheasant;** the Bill between a blew and black; the Head brown, behind the Eyes is a line of white, which passed down the side of the Neck to the Throat, all the Feathers between and adjoyning to this stroak is black: under the black, the Neck and Back is ash-colour, varied with transverse lines of black and white; the scapular feathers are black, the nether part of the neck, breast, belly and rump, white; the quill feathers are for the first ten cinereous, the second decade, or ten quill feathers are particoloured, the tips white, then red, then black; the rest as remain or appear beyond the incumbent feathers are of a glittering purple and blue colour; the covert of the first row cinereous, of the second row, incumbent on the second decade of quill feathers, are tipt with a yellowish red or Lion colour; the Thighs have long feathers, which are elegantly varied with black and white transverse lines; the tail is forked, by reason the two middlemost run out in two points longer than all the rest, and are ash-coloured edged with white.

The **Brasilian Ipeca-Guacu,** is in shape and form a Duck, the Bill from the end to the middle yellow; rest darker, the middle of the head curiously tinctured with red, the whole body else is pure white, it hath Ducks feet, of a yellowish red.

The **Sheldrake,** or **Burrough Duck,** called by some, a **Bergander;** its Bill is like a Duck, but turneth upward more at the end, is red all but the Nostrils, and the nail or hook at the end, which are black; at the base of the upper mandable near the head is a carneous or fleshy bunch or knob; the head and upper part of the neck are black, with a shining dark green, the rest of the neck and region of the craw milk white; the upper part of the breast and shoulders are of a fair Orange or bright Bay colour (the forepart of the body is encompassed with a broad ring or swath of this colour) the rest of the breast and belly is white, having a black line running through the middle of the white to the vent or rump; the middle of the back is white, the shoulder feathers black; the Wing feathers are all white; the Pinion or joint feathers have black edges; and the ten first quill feathers are black; and those on the second row incumbent on them, tinctured with a dark shining green; the tail is white, tipt with black; the legs and feet of a pale red or flesh colour.

The **Island Duck,** called by the *Islanders* **Havelda,** or the **sharp tailed Duck;** the head is small, having white feathers about the eyes; the crown is black, inclining to brown; the neck and back to the rump black, with a mixture of Isabella colour; the rump is mingled black and white, the tail ends in a sharp point made by two feathers of a good length of the same colour; the under side of the Neck and Belly half way black, the rest white; the feathers of the upper surface of the Wings are of a shining purple black; the Bill is like the common Duck, toothed; the tip and part next the

the Head, black, the middle red: the Feet brown, Claws and Membranes between the Toes black.

The **Scoter**, or **Black Diver**, it is all over of a black, or Sable colour, in the Chin and middle of the Breast, some ash coloured, or whitish Feathers, mingled with the black. The Bill is black, with yellow about the Nostrils, as is in all Ducks kind, pectinated about the sides, and without any bunch in the upper mandable: the Feet black, the Male of the **Diver**, hath yellow Eyelids, the Bill is broad and blunt, having no appendix or nail at the tip: the upper mandable above the Nostrils, bunches out into a notable protuberance, or swelling, being so divided in the middle, as it resembles Buttocks: distinguished by a yellow intercurrent line. The upper mandable is black about the sides, or edges, and yellow down the middle, so broad as to contain the Nostrils, and the Feet dusky, the outer Toes having also membranous borders on the out sides; so that its Oares are broad and large.

The **Pochard**, or **Poker**; of some termed the great **Red Headed Wigeon.** The Bill is Lead colour, tipt with black; lower Chap black: the Feathers of the Fore-head lie on the top of the Bill like a Peak, or Acute angle: the circle of the Eyes a flame colour: the Head and Neck of a deep red, or fulvous colour, the middle part of the Breast white; the sides and lower part of the Belly, as the Back, varied with transverse undulated lines, but paler: the lower part of the Neck is encircled with a ring or swath of black: the Tail is short, covered with the Wings and is of a dark grey. The Quill feathers are all cinereous tipt with black, and the middle ones with white; the Covert feathers are varied as on the Back, with dark brown & cinereous waved lines (or ash colour, with very narrow waved cross dusky lines) The Rump both above and below is black: so that the Tail is circled round with black. The Feet are lead colour, the membranes joyning the Toes, black. The inmost Toe, and the Back Toe, which is very small, have borders, or fins annexed to them.

The **Moxillon**, or lesser **Red Headed Duck**: the Bill dark blew, paler about the edges, and tipt: the tip or nail round and black; the Nostrils long, almost scituate in the middle of the Bill. Eyes white, Pupil black, Head all red: in the angle of the lower mandable is a white spot, the Neck encompassed in the middle with a ring of brown; the whole Back, and Covert feathers of the Wing, of a dark brown, all the Quill feathers are white, with brown tips: except the four outmost, and the four inmost: the Tail is short, and ends in a point, is of a brown or dusky colour. The Breast below the ring is red, the rest of the Breast and Belly is white; towards the Vent or Rump, dusky or dark grey: under the Tail white. The Legs, Feet, and Membranes black, the back Toe hath a broad appendant Membrane or Fin, as in the rest of this kind. Yet *Bellonius* describes the **Moxillon**, or **Gaucium**, thus. It hath its Bill cut in the edge like a Saw, its Legs and Feet, red on the middle, dusky on the out side; the whole Head to the middle of the Neck, of a deep ferrugineous, or red: under it a broad Ring of white, round the Neck: the Breast ash colour, Belly white, Back and Wings black, the Wing stretched out hath white Feathers appears in it, like to the **Pye.** The Tail is black.

The **Golden Eye**, it hath a great round Head and high Fore-head, a short and broad Bill not so much elevated, as in other **Ducks**: all black to the angles of the Mouth. The Head is dark green or changable colour, of black purple and green. At the corner of the Mouth is a white spot, round, as big as three pence. Iris of the Eye yellow, or Gold colour. The whole Neck, Shoulders, Breast and Belly, all white; the space between the Shoulders, all the Back, and Tail, are black. The Ridge of the Wings, and the Quill feathers all black: and the second and third row of Covert feathers all white. The Legs and Feet of a Saffron colour, or reddish yellow, the Membrane black.

B 3 Ducks A born by *David Llwch* a *Brittain.*

A on Cheveron B 3 cross Patees, O between 3 Ducks G born by the name of *Duckworth* or *Ducker.*

A 2 Cheveronells S between 3 Sheldrakes proper. By *Eully.*

A a Cheveron per Pale, G and O between 3 such proper. By *Maddock Goch.*

A a Cheveron between 3 Draks heads erazed proper. By *Draklowe.*

A a Craker or Sea Pheasant proper. Born by *Van Cracer.*

A a Sheldrake B. Born by *Sheldrake.*

G the like A, is the Coat and Crest of *Mittelberg.*

S a Fesse between 3 such A is the Coat and Crest of *Sheldon.*

XXI. He beareth Azure, a **Wild Duck**, or **Drake**, in Fesse **Tergiant volant**, Argent. Three of these thus flying in pale, are of some blazoned, three **Ducks volant** in pale, barwise: and 3 Ducks in pale volant Barwise; when as three Ducks volant in pale, is as sufficient to express the same, yet let the Reader take his choice, there being no breach of good manners, see *chap.* 11. *numb.* 37.

But if there be an ordinarie between several of these, or any other Birds, thus volant: then the only word (volant) will be sufficient. G 3 such with a Cheveron between, born by *Wolrich.*

XXII. He beareth Gules, a **Shoveller** Argent, born by *Lanford.* In Herauldry, antiquity hath drawn this Fowl with a hairy tuft behind its head, and a like tuft hanging down from the middle of the Breast, with a loose droping and falling Tail; which proportion we do keep for a **Shoveller** to this day: though I do confess naturally they have none of the foresaid things: but do in shape, and proportion, very much resemble the **common Duck**, whose description further take thus: the Bill is coal black, much broader at the tip end, then at the base, being of a round form and flat; at the end it hath a small crooked hook or nail, each mandible is pectinated, or toothed, like a Comb, with rays, or thin Plates, falling mutually one into another when the Mouth is shut; the Eyes yellow, Feet and Legs of a Vermilion colour, Claws black, hinder Toe little, the Membrane connecting the Toes, are Serrate or Toothed about the edges: the Head and the Neck half way are of a fair blew, (in some more dark or black, having a tincture

of a deep shining green) the lower part of the Neck, and region of the Craw, are white: the rest of the Breast, Belly and Vent, are red: the under Tail black. The upper side as Shoulders, party coloured of white and brown, the Back brown, with a light dash of a shining green, blew, or purple. The Feathers on the Thighs are adorned with transverse dusky lines. The ten first Quill Feathers are brown, the next ten a deep shining green, those next the Body white: the Feathers on the second row have white tips; the lesser covert Feathers are of a pleasant pale blew. The Tail is black edged on each side with white Feathers.

S the like A born by *Popeler*.
S 3 such in Pale A born by *Peplesham*.
B 3 Shovellers heads erazed A born by *Lacy*.
A a Shoveller B Beak and Legs G born by *Lever* or *Leverpole*.

XXIII. He beareth Argent, an **Emew**, or **Emy**, Sable. **Crested, Palloped,** and **Legged** Gules. This is a Fowl like to an **Ostrich**, of most Authors, named a **Cassowary**: it hath a horny Crown on the top of the Head, the Head and Neck bare of Feathers, only thin set with a hairy down, the skin is of a purplish blew colour, except the lower part of the Back of the Neck which is red, or Vermillion colour: in the lower part of the Neck hangs down two Wattles, or Lobs of flesh as low as the Breast, the Bill is straight, and sharp pointed, the Legs are thick and strong; with three Toes on each Foot, wanting a back Toe, the Claws long. It hath some rudiment of Wings, reather then Wings, consisting only of the naked shafts of Feathers, like **Porcupines** quills, having either no Webs, or else as if the Feathers were fretted away. It hath no Tail, but a great Body invested with blackish or dusky Feathers, of a rare texture which to one that beholds them at a little distance, they seem rather to be hairs then Feathers. Rough or Shagged like a Bears skin. This is born by *Emew*.

B 3 such head erazed A Crested and Wattled G. Born by *Emewshall*.

XXIV. He beareth Argent, the Head of a **Crested Indian Bitterne**, proper. The **Crested Bitterne** hath a long sharp pointed yellowish Bill, with a Comb like a Cock, on his Head red, this is a Water Fowl, in all parts of the Body, and feet like a **Goose**, with a little longer Neck, all over white, here and there spotted with ash colour: under the lower part of the Beak doth hang a kind of Pouch, or Bag, of a skinny substance in which they keep their provision, it is of a yellowish, and red colour. This is the Coate and Crest of *Van Bitterstein*, in *Germany*.

XXV. He beareth Azure, the Head of an **Indian Bittern**, Argent. This is the greater sort of **Bittern** that have Bags, or loose skinny Pouches under their Bill, whose description and colour is as followeth. The Bill is long and sharp pointed, with a hook at the end of the upper mandable, like a Birds Claw: the Eyes having a space between them and the Bill, naked or bare of Feathers; the Bill is of a Lead colour, yet yellowish at the end: the bagg which hangs at the lower Bill is skinny, which at its pleasure can contract and draw up, so to the Bill, that it is scarce conspicuous, other times it suffers the same to be so dilated as to receive and contain much Water and Fish; when this membranous skin is stretched, it appears transparent, so that many Fibres, and Veins may be seen running up and down through it; and are of a reddish yellow colour. Its Feathers are all white, yet those on the top of the Head, and behind off the Neck are longer then the rest, standing out like a Crest, and are of a yellowish colour. The Tail is short and sharp pointed, which with the Wings are of an ash colour, as in **Geese**. The Legs and Feet are of a Lead colour, the Shanks bare above the Knees, all the Toes are web'd together by a membrane, having no back Toe, see more of this *numb.* 65. The whole Bird is born by *Bittern*.

G 3 heads couped. Born by *Scheckenale* of *Germany*.

XXVI. He beareth Azure, the Head of a **Lever couped** proper: of some termed a **Shovellers head**: this fowl is by *Conradus Gesner, fol.* 641. called in *Latin* **Platea**, which he takes to be the **Water Pellecan**, or **Shoveller** in *England*: but in *Low Dutch* **Lepler**, or **Lepelaer**, or **Lefler**; from the *Germane* termed **Loffler**, which we more finely pronounce **Lever**: Yet Mr. *Ray* in the translation of the Ornithology terms this Bird, a **Spoon Bill**: and **Onocrotalus** to be the **Pellecan**, whose figure I have set down, *numb.* 65. which may be taken rather for the **Indian Bittern**: set down *numb.* 24. Upon this account, then to term it either a **Lever**, **Spoon Bill**, or a **Pellecan**, it may pass in Herauldry but no otherwise: whose description take thus: the Bill is long plain and broad, growing smaller from the Head till it came near the point, or end, and then dilated into an all most circular figure of the likeness of a Spoon, the broad part of the Bill graven with lines, or crevises, but smooth in the Mouth; and is black in an old Bird, though a young Bill is white, or of a Flesh colour: the Legs and Feet ash colour, and bare of Feathers half the Thighs, the Toes are joyned by a Membrane, that is to say, the outward and middle Toes, joyned to the second joynt; the middle and inward Toes to the first joynt: the Claws black. It is snow white all over the Body, only the Quill feathers are black; the Tail short. The Body in all parts and shape answereth that of the **Crane**, and the Tail of a **Stork**.

The **Merican Spoon Bill**, its shape of Body is like the **Lever**, or **Spoon Bill**. The Bill of an ash colour, red Eyes: its Fore-head like that of a **Turky**, or **Aura**: the Head, and almost the whole Neck void of Feathers, and white, with a broad black Ring compassing the Head from the Neck: all the Plumage of the Body and Wings are of a most beautiful Scarlet, or pale red.

The **Bastian Spoon Bill**, is the same in Body, but the Bill is white: Neck long, and is white all over, save the Back and Wings are of a pale carnation colour.

A a Lever B the Coat of the Town of *Leverpole*.

B 3 such heads couped. Born by *Lever*.

XXVII.

*

XXVII. He beareth Gules, a **Sea Pye,** proper. Born by the name of *Pye* This is called also a **Turky Sea Pye:** and a **whole Footed Sea Pye.** The Bill is dusky, the Head and about the Eyes bare of Feathers and red, with a white tuft of Feathers, from the Basis of the Bill to the hinder part of the Head, like the Crest of an Helmet; the Neck, Breast, Belly, and Wings all white, a broad Ring compassing the lower part of the Neck: the Back and Tail of a dark dusky colour. The Legs Feet, and Membrane connecting the Toes, ash colour: it wants a hinder Toe.

S 3 Sea Pyes proper. Born by *Atcliffe.*

B 3 Sea Pyes heads couped. Born by *Sapy,* also by *Pijden.*

XXVIII. He beareth Or, a **Toucan,** or a **Brisilian Pye,** proper. It is a Bird in the *New found World,* whose Bill is as large as all the Body: having two Claws before (though some Authors describe it irronionsly, with three) and one behind: It is called by the Natives **Toucan,** or **Toucam;** see it further described *chap.* 11. *numb.* 80. By the name of *Brijilian Pye.*

A a Toucan, proper. Born by *Brodbeak.*

XXIX. He beareth Sable, an **Owle** Or. Born by the name of *Owler.* There are several sort of **Owls** of this shape, which are distinguished only by the bigness and colours, so that being born in Arms in their proper colours ought to be termed by such names; as,

The **Ivy Owle:** of some termed the **Screech Owle:** this is the common **Brown Owle,** which in *Latin* is called *Strix.* The Bill is bending like a **Hawks:** and is of a horn colour or light blue, the Eyes black and great, the borders of the Eyes have red edges, a white circle of feathers compasses the Eyes and Chin, the exteriour edges whereof are variegated with white, black and red. The back part of the Head, brown and dark. From the base of the Bill grows bristly Feathers with black shafts. All the Back part is party coloured of ferrugineous and dark brown; that is, Waved with transverse lines succeeding one another, the Belly is the same, but more whitish. The Feet are covered down almost to the Claws, with durty white Plumage, speckled with small dark specks, or Waved lines: the Wing feathers, and Tail, are marked with cross bars of a dirty white, and brown, or ferrugineous colour. The annulary scales of the Legs a little bare at the parting of the Toes, which are of a blackish colour: they have two Toes standing forward, and two backward, as all **Owls** have.

The **Grey Owle,** hath the same description only useing ash colour, for brown; and it hath long spots on the Breast, black: Feet yellowish.

The **Church Owle,** or **Barn Owle,** or **White Owle,** the Bill white, hooked at the end: a circle or wreath of white compassing the Eyes encompassed with yellow, begining from the Nostrils on each side, passing round the Eyes, and under the Chin, resembling a Hood about a Womans face as they use to wear. The Eyes are covered with a Valve, which arises near the Eyes, and falls backwards. The Breast, and Belly, and under the Wings white, marked with a few quadrangular dark spots. The Head, Neck, and Back Waved with small whitish and blackish lines; the Wings and Tail, (for the Field or Ground seems to be) of a dilute tawny, or Orenge colour, having transverse blackish bars: the Wings closed are as long as the Tail: the Legs covered with a thick whitish down, the Feet only hairy: it hath but one Toe that stands backwards, yet the outmost Toe may be turned either way. It is in *Latin* called *Aluco,* which *Margravius* terms the **Brisilian Tuidara.**

The **Alula,** or **Grey Owle;** the Bill greenish, the Eyes great and black, covered over with an ash coloured nictating membrane: encompassed with white Feathers, within which Ring or Ambit, the borders of the Eyelids was a red circle: the Head, Back, Wings, Tail, were ash colour, speckled with whitish and black spots: the Belly white with blackish spots. The Legs ash colour being hairy down to the Claws. It is in most places with us termed the **Owle,** or **Howlett,** vulgarly an **Hullert.**

The **Stone Owle,** or **Little Owle;** it is no bigger then a **Black Bird,** yet carieth the same shape of Body as other Noctural Birds: the Bill white. The Hood about the Face much less to be discernable; the upper parts of a dark brown, having transverse whitish spots: the Tail with white bars: the Chin and Breast white, the Belly marked with long dusky spots. The Wings marked with round white spots. The Legs hairy to the Feet, which are yellowish, and Claws black. Betvveen the Eyes and the Bill grevv certain Feathers like bristles, its called in *Latin, Noctua.*

The **Brisilian Owle,** called by them **Cabure;** hath a yellovvish Bill, and Eyes, vvith a black Pupil: with dusky hairs about the Bill: the Legs and Feet wholly covered with yellow Feathers: the Head, Back, & Wings, of a dilute umber colour, variegated with white spots: the Tail Wreved with white bars, the Breast and Belly white with dilute umber spots. It is a very tameable Bird, and plays with Men like an **Ape,** and maketh Mouthes, and Antique mimical Faces, and snapeth with its Bill: also it can set up the Feathers on each side its Head as if it were Ears.

The **Aluco,** or **Tuidara** of **Brasil,** it is a kind of **Owle,** not unlike ours in shape, only a little differing in colour: the Bill and Claws white, Eyes black. The prone side, *viz.* the Breast and Belly spotted with great black spots: Head and Back, and Wings, and Tail variegated with whitish specks, the Legs feathered to the Feet, white; but the Feet with hair.

The **American Owle,** or **Goat-sucker,** called by them **Ibijau:** it is no bigger then our **Swallow;** black Eyes, the circle about of a yellowish white; a little small Bill, slit up to the Eyes: short white Legs, with three Toes forward, and one backward. The Breast and Belly specked with white and black, like to a **Sparrow-Hawk:** the Head and Back, Wings and Tail black, specked here and there with white. See *chap.* 13. *numb.* 5.

S 3 Owls A armed O. Born by *Boughton.*

S Cheveron between 3 such A born by *Wood.* The like by *Griffith ap Jenkin.* Also the same is born by *Prescot*; and *Madock de la Holme.*

S Cheveron engraled between 3 such A. Born by *Hewitt.*

A a Cheveron between 3 such B. Born by *Hox,* or *Hooxe,* now *Hookes.*

S an Escochion within an Orle of Owles A. Born by *Calverley*.

A an Owle G. Born by *Harwart*.

B an Owle crowned, standing on a ragged staff, O. Born by *Van Gunterod*.

XXX. He beareth Argent, an **Horned Owle** proper, born by *Ouldbruex*. It is called a **Horned**, or **Eared Owle**, in *Latin* **Otus**, or **Asio**, from certain small Feathers standing out on each side the Head in form of horns, or ears. This is termed also the **Eagle Owle**, and of this shape and form there is several species: as,

The **Great Horne Owle**, or **Eagle-Owle**, called in *Latin* **Bubo**; of the *French* called a **Cat-Owle**, because it resembles a **Cats Face**. The Bill short, black and hooked; the sides of the Nostrils have bristly hairs like beards: the colour all over the Body is various, of whitish, black, and reddish spots. The Legs hairy down to the Claws, of a pale red. The Breast more ash coloured, and marked with blackish spots. The Tail and Wing, Feathers divided into bars.

The **Brasilian Eagle-Owle**; called by them a **Jacurutu**, is as large as an **Eagle**, the least of the kind, as a **Goose**: hath a round Head like a **Cat**, the Bill hooked, and black: great round black Eyes, compassed with a yellow circle, the Feathers like Ears, are black: the Legs and Feet, hairy: three Toes forward, and one backward, yet the outmost Toe stands so as it may be removed back, as in other **Owls**. The Feathers of the whole body are elegantly variegated of yellow white, and black; the Wings and Tail divided into bars.

The **Horned Owle**, or **Horn-Owle**; called in *Latin* **Otus**, or **Asio**. The Bill is black, Irides of the Eyes yellow, the Ring of Feathers compassing the Face is of a double row, the exteriour variegated with white, black, and red lines; the interiour under the Eyes red: the Fore-head or end of the two Wreaths, more cinereous. The Breast, Belly, and Thighs, and Legs, reddish; speckled with white, black, and yellow. The Quill feathers of the Wing, with those of the Tail are crossed with black bars, ash colour and yellow. The Feet, and Claws black.

The little **Horn-Owle**, in *Latin* **Scops**: It is in form like the other **Owls**, but no bigger then a **Thrush**. The Bill black, the whole colour of the Body is a brown-red curiously speckled with Lead colour, and white spots. The Wing feathers, and Tail are crossed with transverse white spots: the Neck, and beginning of the Wings, are besprinkled with a lovly tincture of red: and the Belly is whiter then elsewhere, tipt with black. The Legs Feathered with a reddish ash colour: the Feet of a dark lead colour, Claws dusky. These kinds of **Owls** are termed, **Lich Owls**, **Lich Fowls**, or **Like-Fowls**, because Prognosticaters of Peoples death, when they scrietch about their Houses.

G 3 such Heads erazed O born by *Mousley*. Some take these for **Cats Heads**, or **Faces**.

A 3 such Owls S born by *Brigg*.

☞ The **Owle** is ever born Gardant or full Faced, and never mentioned to be so: because it hath no Face to be see sideways.

XXXI. He beareth Aure, a **Kalader Gardant**, with **Wings disclosed**, Argent. This is a kind of **Hawk** like Bird, (by Mr. *Boswells* figure and description; *pag.* 70.) that is all white, without any mixture; and is of that marvellous Nature, that if it looked on a sick Person steadfastly, that Person will not then dye; but if he turn his countenance from him, then that sickness will surely kill him. **Calidris** is a kind of **Hern**, and **Calandra** a kind of **Lark**, but the **Kaladre**, I could never in any History of Birds find: therefore I take it, and its story to be fictitious, see *numb.* 1.

The **Caladrus**, or **Chaladrius**, is a kind of Bird whose dung cureth the dimness of the Eyes, but of what form and shape it is I have not yet read, except that of *Boswills* above said.

XXXII. He beareth Or, a **Bat** (or **Reremouse**, or a **Flittermouse**) **displaid**, proper. This is of some termed a **Bat volant**: but to blazon it either **Displaid** or **Volant**, are but words of superfluity, by reason I never saw the **Bat** born in Arms otherwise then in this posture; neither indeed can it be drawn otherwise: therefore to name it a **Bat**, is sufficient.

The **Bat** is a Night Bird all hairy on the Body, with the Head of a **Mouse**, and toothed, of a Mouse colour: the Wings are a kind of leather, or skinny membrane, of a dark dusky colour. It may with reason be questioned, whether this kind be Bird, or Beast; seeing it partakes of both. For according to *Pliny* this Bird alone brings forth her young ones alive, and none but she hath Wings made of Panicles, or thin skins: and sucketh her young with her Paps, and giveth them Milk. This is born by *Staninges*.

A the like S born by *Baxter*.

A 3 such S born by *Colira*, or *Collire*.

O the like three S born by *Bate*.

XXXIII. He beareth Or, a **Bats Wing** Gules, **Surmounted** of an other, Azure. These Wings if they had been of one colour, were best termed two Wings expenced and joyned in the Basis. These are also as properly termed **Dragons Wings**, **Weverns**: or **Cockatrice Wings**. This is born by the name of *Alden*.

A 3 Bats Wings S born by *Baston*.

XXXIV. He beareth Azure, a **Demy Phenix** Or, in its **Flames** proper. This is the Crest of the Worshipful company of *Painters*.

XXXV. He beareth Sable, a **Phenix** proper in its **Flames**. This some term a **Burning Phenix**.

The **Phenix in her Flames**, is ever drawn in Arms with her Wings **Overture**, and therefore doth not need an expression thereof: but if they be otherwise, as **Expenced**, or **Close**, then to be mentioned.

The **Phenix** with its story of Burning its self when it is old, out of whose ashes riseth a **Worm**, which grows to another **Phenix**, is looked upon by some Authors to be fabulous, and therefore omitted in *Ray* his English Orthonology: yet *Gesner fol.* 663. in his History of Birds hath discoursed several things concerning it: see Mr. *Boswell* his Armory of Honour, *pag.* 69. 76. what is there said of it.

This

This is the Creſt of *Robert Needham*, Viſcount *Kilmory*, in *Ireland*; farther of that worthy and noble Gentleman *Thomas Needham*, of *Dutton* in *Cheſhire*, Eſquire; one of the Deputy Lieutenants, and Captain of the Horſe, within the ſaid County.

The like Gorged, with a Crown and Chain, is the Creſt of the Company of *Smiths*.

XXXVI. He beareth Vert, a **Pellican**, Or. By the name of *Pellican*. This is the ſhape and form of the **Pellican** uſed in Coats of Arms; and this is alſo the ſtanding poſture that it is drawn in, *viz.* always with a wounded Breaſt. For if it were otherwiſe, it might as well be taken for an **Eagle**, or a **Phenix**, as a **Pellican**. There are two ſorts of **Pellicans**, the one, the **Water-Pellican**, *Deut.* 14. 17. which I have ſpoken of before, *numb.* 26. and the **Land-Pellican**, to be this, with divided feet.

The **Land-Pellican**, the Kingly Prophet *David* in his *Pſalms* maketh mention of; I am (ſaith he) like a **Pellican** of the Wilderneſs, and an **Owl** of the Deſart; which places are not for Water-Fowl to abide, and live in. This kind of **Pellican**, according to *Geſner* his Picture, is of the figure of a yellowiſh earthy colour on the upper parts; and the Cheeks, Neck, Breaſt, Belly, and under the Tail, of a more dilute, or brighter yellow.

B the like O. born by *Fox*.

B 3 ſuch O vulned. Born by *Pelham*.

B a Pellican with Wings diſcloſed O vulned, proper. by *Wakering*.

XXXVII. H beareth Argent, a **Pellican in her Neſt, feeding** of her **young ones**, Sable. Here I do not ſay **vulned**, or **wounded** in the Breaſt, proper. Becauſe (as I ſaid before) it is always drawn ſo, more eſpecially when it is feeding its young. This is born by *Chantrell*; alſo by *Cantrell*.

G the like O born by the name of *Carn*, and *Morgan*.

S the like A Neſt O born by *Linde*.

B the like A Sans Neſt. Born by *Pilaren*. The like is the Creſt of *Hartmaner*, turned to the ſiniſter.

The like A Neſt O is the Creſt of the Lord *Lumley*.

XXXVIII. He beareth Gules, a **Pellican diſplayed**, Or. This is termed here a **Pellican**, for two cauſes: First, becauſe it is **Wounded** on the Breaſt, which all are; which as Authors obſerve, it wounds it ſelf for the reviving and feeding of its young, with its own blood (an Emblem of our Saviour Jeſus Chriſt) elſe this might as well be termed any other kind of Bird that hath a tufted head. Secondly, from the ſpreading of the Tail, which is whole, and Tail-like; which in the **Eagle diſplayed**, is ſet out jagged and torn, as it were; alſo the **Eagle** hath the points of its Wings upwards, and theſe tend downwards; which is (as ſome Heraulds affirm) peculiar onely to the **Pellican**, thus to be diſplayed. This is born by the name of *Winckley*.

B the like O born by *Bawdriffe*.

A the like B born by *Ayer*; alſo by *Henfeld*.

G 3 ſuch O born by *Pellinor*.

O the like wounding her ſelf S born by *Bambell*. the ſame is his Creſt on a Crownet O

XXXIX. He beareth Argent, an **Oſtrige**, proper: **holding** in his **Beak**, an **Horſe-ſhoo**, Azure. This is alſo called a **Struthion**; from its Latine name *Struthio*, and *Struthius*. It is the biggeſt of Birds, which by reaſon of his greatneſs cannot fly, but uſeth his Wings, as Sails onely to help him forward in running. The bill is compreſſed, or flat like a **Gooſe**, triangular of a horn colour, with a black tip; the Eyes hazle colour; Neck, Head and Thighs bare of Feathers, covered with a certain down, or thin ſet hairs, of a fleſhy colour; the feathers on the breaſt pure white; the back is cole-black, or duſky black, the wing feathers the ſame; all the reſt of the covert feathers purely white; the tail is thick, buſhy, and round, curled, not to be ſpread as other Birds do; the component feathers are white: (In a **Hen** they are duſky with white tips.) Its neck and leggs are very long, it hath but two Toes, which with the Legs are covered with annulary disjoyned ſcales, of a duſky tawney colour, claws black; the Toes are connected together by a thick ſtrong Membrane as far as the firſt joint. This is the **African Oſtridge**, which ſome write, **Oſtritch**, or **Eſtritch**.

The **American Oſtridge**, or **Struthion**, is much leſs than the other, they carry their Necks which are long, like a **Swan** bending; flat Bill, black Eyes, the whole body is covered with grey feathers; they have not ſuch buſhy tails made up of creſted, or curled feathers, as in other **Oſtridges**, but the feathers are ſtretched forth along the back, paſt the vent, ſo that the body appears almoſt round; they have three Toes on each foot, two forward, and the back Toe being round and groſs, are armed with thick black claws.

This is the Creſt of Sir *Thomas Smith* of *Cheſter*, Knight.

G the like A is both Coat and Creſt of *Eder Tollinger* of *Bavaria*.

XL. He beareth Gules, an **Oſtridge regardant**, Argent, **Jeſſant**, (or **holding**) a **Key** in his **Beak**, Or. This is another way or form, of drawing the **Oſtridge** in Arms, and that very ancient, *viz.* with a ſharp Bill, and Ears ſtanding at a diſtance from the head, of a circular form. This is the Creſt of the Family of *Keyes*.

XLI. He beareth Azure, an **Oſtridge feather**, Argent: the **Shaft**, Or, **paſſing through a Scrowl** of the ſecond, turned of the third. Others Blazon it, an **Oſtridge feather** tranſpeircing a **Scrowl**, Argent: **penned**, and folding of the **Scrowl**, Or. Others more briefly, and that is beſt, an **Oſtridge feather**, the **quill pierced through an Eſcrowl**, proper; or an **Oſtridge feather perforating** an **Eſcrowl, debruſed** in the **lower ſide**, all proper: See the way and terms for ſuch kind of Piercings, *lib.* 1. *cap.* 8. *numb.* 88. 89. 90. 91. 92. 93. 94.

☞ The gentle Reader is to obſerve, that all **Oſtridge feathers**, have a turning down in the top, or head of it: Whereas all other Feathers are born ſtreight, or bending in the ſhaft, and therefore in this of the **Oſtridge**, needs not to be mentioned. Alſo when the Feather

ther is white, and the **Shaft**, Or: it is in your choice, whether you will term them proper, or omit it: But if they be of any other colours, or mettle, then they ought to be nominated.

Also the **Escrowl** may be so Blazoned, proper, or not; for by **Escrowl**, we understand it to be only a long rowl of paper, turned, or folded up at each end, being white on one side, and gold on the other.

O on a Bend S 3 such Feathers and Scrowles A was born by *Roger Clarendon*, base Son to the puissant *Edward*, called the *Black Prince*.

A 6 Ostritch Feathers, 3. 2. 1. S born by *Jervis*.

XLII. He beareth Sable, a **Plume of Ostritch Feathers**: three Feathers makes a **Plume**, if they exceed that number, then they are to be named, how many they are; as,

He beareth a **plume of five Feathers**, Argent, Azure, Or, Gules, and Vert: **penned of the third**: This is the Crest of *Dutton* of *Dutton*.

☞ When each Feather is of a contrary colour; some will say, the first Argent, the second Azure, the third Or, *&c.* but that is superfluity, for by naming the colours; it is, or may be sufficiently understood; that every Feather is of those named colours, or metal, as they stand successively in the Plume, be they more or less; for in Arms I never yet saw a Feather born either parti-coloured, or commixt; but if any will make a variety in a Feather, it must be termed a Feather tipt, or edged, with such or such a colour.

S 9 Ostritch Feathers conjoyned three and three together A (so *Morgan* hath it, *fol.* 65.) by the name of *Tuffley*.

B 3 such A in a Crown O born by *Schecken* of *Germany*.

3 such A is the Crest of *Rothen*; and B the Crest of *Van Strackwitz*.

Out of a Crown O a Plume of Feathers, one white between two red, is the Crest of *Blancken-Steiner*.

Out of a Crown a Plume of five Feathers one white, another red counterchangeably Is the Crest of *Van Plavsio*. Some Blazon it a Plume of three white and two red set inter-changed; or else two red between three white.

A Plume A. B. G. the Crest of *Durchnabel*: And the like O. B. G. by *Daliber*. The like G. A. B. banded with a Garland of Roses A. is the Crest of *Van Lest*.

Out of a Crown, a Plum O. A. B. is the Crest of *Van Eckersberg*.

A Plume of six Feathers, G. and O. one contrary to the other. by *Bremer*.

Out of a Crown O. a Plume of ten Feathers in falls, 1. 2. 3. 4. B. is the Crest of the Lord *Scroope*.

Out of a Crown O. seven Feathers A. tipped G. was the ancient Crest of *Ardern*, of *Ardern* in *Cheshire*.

Out of a Lamp G. within a Crown O. five Feathers A. is the now Crest belonging to the Family aforesaid. I have seen it born sometimes with two Feathers onely.

Out of a Pye, or Custard Case, a Plume of five Feathers, each shorter then the other from the last to the first, G. A. B. A. G. is the Crest of *Millentz*.

XLIII He beareth Gules, a **Feather in Bend**, of (or with) **three falls**. This is but one **Feather** in the **Pen**, or **Quill**; yet hath three turns in the head, one above the other; as if it were supernatural, like a Creature with three heads. This is born by *Van Nobeckall*.

Two such out of a Crown O. S. by *Golditz*.

XLIV. He beareth Azure, a **Plume** of **fifteen Feathers**, in **three heights or falls**: Or else thus, a **Plume of Feathers**, of three heights, **containing five in each fall**. Some will term them a **fall of Feathers** (instead of a **Plume**) of three heights; naming the number in each, as a fall of Feathers in the first height five, in the second four, and in the third three. This is also in a Field G. born by the name of *Worckenfotz*.

Out of a Crown a **plume of Feathers of two heights** O. and S. each **counterposed**. For the Crest of *Brockhen*.

A **Plume** of two heights, each containing eight Feathers, **half falling** to the **dexter**, the other to the **sinister**, **gradually** A. by *Otterwolfe*.

Out of a Crown a Plume of 4 heights containing 4, 3, 2, and one Feather at the top A. by *Van Freyberg*. Also by *Zur Aschaw*.

XLIV. He beareth Sable, a **Lagopus**, Argent. This is a bird known by divers names, it is all white, as some Authors affirm; and therefore called the **white-Game**, or **white Partridge**, yet these are but erroneous names. It is called in the Latine Tongue **Lagopus**; that is, the **Hare-bird**, and **Hare-foot Bird**, after *Pliny*, & *Bosq. p.* 25. because it hath Legs and Feet all hairy, and like a **Hare**, or **Dogs**-foot, having no hinder Toe. This is born by *Harefoot*.

The **Lagopus**, or **Hare-foot Bird**, hath a black bill, the Nostrils being covered with Feathers, coming out of a skin on the lower side of the holes; above the Eyes in the place of the Eye-brows is a naked skin, of a scarlet colour, and of the figure of a cresant. It hath in the **Cock-bird** a black line, drawn from the upper chap behind the Eyes to the Ears; in the **Hen** this is wanting: all the rest of the body white, except the Tail, which hath the two middle feathers white, all the rest on either-side, black; the Claws of a lead-colour.

The **Lagopus particoloured**, hath its head, neck behind, and back, dusky and spotted. above each Eye, a semi-circular skin of a red colour: all the rest of the body white, but the Tail black; the Bill and Claws black. This is called in some Countreys, the **Stone-hen**, and the great **Colmestre**.

The **Red Game**, or **Gorcock**, or **Moor-cock**, or the **Red Lagopus**: the Bill is black, the Nostrils covered with feathers; skin above the Eyes of a scarlet colour; the Head, Neck, Back, and Covert Feathers of the Wings are particoloured, of red and black transverse waved lines; with two great black spots on the Shoulders; the Throat and Breast red without any mixture; the Belly is like the Back; the Quill feathers all dusky; the Legs and Feet downy to the Claws; the Tail black, except the two middle Feathers which are red, varied.

The **Damascus Partridge**, in the Back and Neck, it resembles a **Wood-cock**, the quill-feathers are cinereous; the covert feathers, and those joyning next the body are white, dusky, and fulvous; Belly white, it hath a

a collar-like mark on the Breast (like the ring **Duzel**,) consisting of red, fulvous, and yellow colours: Head, Neck, Bill, and Eyes, like a **Partridge**; with rough or hairy Legs and Feet, like the **Lagopus**.

G. a Lagopus O. is born by *Don Lagop*, a *Spanish* Family.

A. a Red-Game proper. Born by *Van Gargame*.

XLVI. He beareth Argent, a **crested Lark**, proper. Born by *Larcal*. It is bigger than the **common Lark**, and hath a tuft on his head, pointing backwards; yet the feathers are so scituate transversly, or a cross the Head, that they may be erected, or lowred, spread, or contracted at pleasure: The Bill is dusky; Head blackish, the Back is cinereous; the quill-feather of a dirty white, inclining to red, the Breast and Belly white, with a dash of yellow; the Throat spotted; Tail black, having the exteriour borders white; it hath a long Heel or Claw on the hinder Toe: The Legs and Feet reddish. A. 3 such proper. Born by *Crestall*.

The **crested Tit-mouse**, or **copped Tit-mouse**: The Bill is blackish; the Crown of the Head, and tuft, is black with the edges of the feathers white; at the hinder part of the Head is a black line, which like a wreath or collar compasses the Neck; from the lower mandible to the said collar is a black line; beyond the Ears is a great spot of black; all the rest of the Head and Face, and about the Eyes white; the Breast is white in the middle, and reddish on the sides; the Back from the red inclining to a green; the Wings and Tail are dusky, onely the exteriour edges somewhat green, the Feet and Leggs lead-colour.

The **Garrulus**, or **Bohemian Chatterer**: the Bill is a deep black; the Nostrils are encompassed with hairs of the same colour, which makes as it were a transverse black spot; the Eyes red; the Head is of a chesnut, or ferrugineous colour, adorned with a crest, or tuft, bending backwards; the Neck is black, in the fore and hinder parts, red on the sides; the Breast is a dilute Chesnut, or ferrugineous; the Belly ash-colour, vent white; the Back chesnut, or bay; the Rump, cinereous, or dun; the Feathers of the Wing are black, marked with white; their appendices, or coverts, red; tipt with white and a pale yellow. The Tail is yellow at the end, the middle wholly black, and the rump part, of a dark cinereous, or Mouse-dun; the Legs and Feet dusky inclining to blue; Claws black.

The **Brasilian Wood-pecker**, called by them **Ipecu**: the Bill is long and streight, and sharp pointed, ash-colour: the Head is covered with vermilion feathers, on which it hath a tuft, or crest standing backwards, yet the end or point thereof standing up; Neck black behind and before, white on both sides, produced towards the back; the Wings and Tail all black; Belly and Thighs, white and black. It hath short Leggs with four Toes, two standing forward, and two backwards (like **Parrots**,) of a lead-colour.

The **Brasilian King-fisher**, or **Jaguacati-guacu**: It hath a long streight, sharp Bill, and short black Leggs, with four Toes, as in other Birds; Claws black; the superiour feathers of the whole Body, as Head, Neck, Wings, and Tail, of a rusty, but shining colour; about the Neck, a ring of pure white; the Throat, underside of the Neck, Breast and Belly, are white; near both Eyes, it hath a spot of white; it hath a tuft in its head, like that of **Ipecu**, aforesaid: See *chap.*13. *numb.*15.

The **Rose-Duzel**, or **Carnation Duzel**, of some called the **Sea-Starling**; it is less than a **Black-bird**, with a tuft on its Head; the Bill next the Head black, the rest flesh-colour; the Feet yellow; the Back, Breast, and Wings, of a Rose, or Carnation colour; its Wings and Tail black; the prime feathers being near a chesnut colour.

In the Chief is the figure of a Brise-Fly.

XLVII. *He* beareth Argent, a **Teal**, proper. It is the least of the **Duck** kind, and is in all parts shaped like the **Duck**, or **Drake**: It hath a broad flat bill something reflected upwards, black at the end; Eyes hazle colour; the top of the Head, Throat, and upper part of the Neck, of a dark bay or spadiceous colour; from the Eyes on each side to the back of the Head, is a line of shining green; between these lines on the back of the head, a black spot intervenes; under the Eyes is a white line that seperates the black from the red, or bay; the Feathers on the lower part of the Neck, Back, and Sides, are curiously varied with transverse waved lines of white and black; the region of the Craw, is yellowish, spotted elegantly, as if they resembled scales, with black; the Breast and Belly are of a sordid white, or grey colour; under the Rump is a black spot, encompassed with a yellowish colour; the quill feathers are brown, tipt with white; the covert feathers are brown, with white and some reddish yellow tips, else the Wings are all over brown; the Tail sharp pointed and short, of a brown and dusky colour; the Leggs and Feet of a pale dusky colour, the membranes connecting the Toes together, black.

The **Garganey**, and of some called a **Kernel**; is another sort of **Teal**, its Bill black; its Leggs and Feet livid, with a certain mixture of green, the back Toe small; the crown of the Head black; the Bill spotted with reddish white spots; from the middle of the Eyes, begins a broad white line, which passing backwards under the Ears, almost met in the hinder part of the Head; the Cheeks and Throat below these white stroaks, were a lovely red, spotted with small white spots; the Breast is curiously varied with dusky and black transverse arcuate waved lines; the Belly white, or yellowish white; vent brown; the Back is brown with a purple gloss; the scapular feathers, ash colour; the Thighs varied with black and white transverse lines; the quill feathers, the ten outmost brown, the rest have white tips, with shining green webs; the lesser rows of the Wing-feathers, are all ash-coloured, some having white tips; the Tail short and sharp, of a brown and dusky colour, the outmost varied with spots, of a pale whitish red.

The **Summer Teal**, it is the smallest of this kind, shaped like the **Duck**; yet varieth in the colours; the Bill broad and brown, dusky coloured Leggs and Feet; the upper side of a dark grey, or light brown; the extreams of the edges of the feathers on the back are white; in the Wings, is a line, or broad spot, partly black, partly of a shining green, terminated on both sides with white; the Tail is sharp pointed. The whole under side is white with a tincture of yellow, the Belly hath great black spots; the Legs and Feet of a pale blue; the membranes between the Toes, black.

The

The **Brasilian wild Duck**, called **Mareca**: the Bill is brown, at the rise thereof on each side is a red spot; the top of the Head, grey; the sides of the head under the Eyes, all white; the Breast and Belly a whitish yellow, varied with black points, or specks; Tail, grey; Legs and Feet, black; Wings of a dark grey colour; but the Quill feather of a pale brown, in the middle of a shining green, with a border of black.

The **lesser Mareca**, or **Brasilian Teal**: it hath a black shining Bill; the top of the Head, Neck, and Back, of an umber colour, mixt with brown; under the Throat white; Eyes black; the Breast and Belly a dark grey, with a mixture of gold yellow: the Wings dusky with a gloss of shining green and blew, with a waved line of black the Quill feathers are all tipt with white. The Legs, and Feet are of a bright red.

XLVIII. He beareth Azure, a **Barnacle**, or a **Goose Arbore**: or a **Tree Goose**, proper. Born by *Gleick*. There are Trees in the *Orchades Isles*, in the *North* of *Scotland*; which bringeth forth a kind of a shelly fruit hanging in clusters like ash Keys; which coming to perfection droop down; those as fall on the Earth perish, such as fall into the Water quicken, and become living Creatures, after the form of **Geese**, but much less. The Inhabitants of these *Isles* call them **Clakis**, and **Glaik-Geese**, from them (saith Mr. *Boswell p. g.* 118.) we may fitly term them **Orchadie Geese**. Whose shape he sets down like a **Goose**, with a short pointed Tail turning up above the points of the Wings. But *Gesner fol.* 108. in his History of Birds make it, as I have here done.

The **Barnacle**, hath a **Goose Bill**, flat and broad, with a hooked point, black: all the fore part of the Head, Chin and Cheeks are white, with a line, or bed of black between the Eyes and Bill: the Neck and fore part of the Breast is black, the Belly white, mixt with cinereous: the Thighs blackish. The Back is party coloured, of black and cinereous; Tail black. The Quill feathers are brown, the lesser row of Covert feathers, have white edges, the rest black, and ash colour. The Legs and Feet brown, the binder Toe very small, Claws blakish.

B 3 such A born by *Barnacle*.
S a Barnacle A born by *Barnacle*.
G the like A born by *Barner*.

XLIX. He beareth Argent, a **Coote**, or **Cote**, proper. Born by *Coote*. It is all black, from whence comes the Proverb, as black as the Coot: it is less then a **Duck**, but sharp pointed in the Bill, having a red spot on its Fore-head from the Beak to the top of the Head: or an excrescency, or lobe of flesh, bare of Feathers: it is cloven footed, yet each Toe hath a Membrane, on the sides of them scalloped: the inder Toe, with two scallops aside the middle Toe, with three, and the outer, with four; of a blewish or dusky green: the Back-toe very little.

The **Coot**, or **Fulica**: is in the Ornithology thus described: the Bill is white, with a light tincture of blue; the Legs and Feet long, and blewish or of a dusky green, about the joynts of the Toes are semicircular Membranes appendant. From the Bill to the Crown of the Head, a lobe of flesh without Feathers, red: the colour of all the Body is black, but deeper on the Head. The Breast and Belly of a Lead colour. The ten first Quill feathers, are dusky dark, or black. The next lighter with white tips; the Tail short, and sharp, black.

The **Great Coat**, is so exquisitely black, as if it were laid on with a pencil: the bald spot on the Head, is large, and white; the Bill is blackish, with a white tip at the end; from the back of the Head it hath a kind of falling tuft scarce obvious, except well noted (from hence it is that some time our Herauld-painters draw the **Coot** with a tuft, but they ought not so to do) the Legs, and Toes are as the **Common Coot**.

The **Porphyrio**, or **Purple Water Hen**: it is of the **Coot** kind, the Bill and Legs, of a shining purple; its Body is all over of a blue colour, the extream half of the Tail, of a whitish ash colour.

The **American Porphyrio**, is of a dark purple colour, with some white Feathers intermixt, the Bill is pale at the beginning, Legs yellow: the bald place at the rise of the Bill is red. The Eyes are black, with a fulvous circle about the Pupil. It is like the **common Coot**.

The **Water Hen**, in shape of Body it is like a **Coot**, the Bill is yellow, the bald part on the Fore-head is red: the Eyes red, the Body all over blackish, save from the Shoulders, or seting on of the Wings, all along the base, or ridge to the ends of the Feathers, runs a white line: the Breast and Belly of a Lead colour, under the Tail white: the Back and lesser row of Wing feathers, are ferrugineous: the Legs green, Claws near black. The Toes have no lateral Membranes, but broad, and plain below.

The **Water Rail**, **Bilcock**, or **Brook-owzel**, hath a red Bill, with the point black: it hath a round black bald spot, or naked skin, in the Fore-head; the Head, Neck, Back, and all the upper side is various of black, or dark brown and olive colour; each Feather being black with olive edges. The Chin white, Throat red, the Breast is blue, the Belly, russet, Vent white: the Quill feathers black, along the base, or ridge of the Wing, is a line of white; the Tail short and black. Legs and Feet of a dark flesh colour, the Toes long divided from the very rise; Claws brown.

The **Velvet Runner**; is party coloured all over the Body of black and red, except the Belly white: the Legs and Feet are long and dark coloured.

The **Guinetta**, or **Small Water-hen**; or **Moorhen**, the Legs and Feet green; the Bill yellow, darker towards the tip: a crust of yellow plaster, above the Nostrils; the Crown black, from the Bill above the Eyes, is a line of ash colour; the Back and Shoulders, the Feathers black, tipt with a sordid red, and edged white: the Throat ash colour, Breast white: the Quill feathers of a dark brown, the Coverts red, with transverse waved lines of white, at intervals. The Tail short and brown.

The **Brasilian Water-hen**; called a **Jacana**: its Bill is red at the top, and yellow at the end; the Legs long, and bare above the Knees; Toes very long and open, of a yellowish green, Claws yellow: the Head, Back, Wings, and Belly, mixed with green and black; the Neck and Breast, of a shining bluish green, as is in the Necks of **Peacocks**. The Fore-head is covered with a round Membranous skin of a red colour, and in some of a **Turcois**, stone colour.

The

The **Italian Rail**, answers our **Coot**: the Bill is black, Legs greenish (but it hath no such dissected or scalloped Membrane between the Toes, nor baldness on the Head, as the **Common Coot.**) Yet this hath more white in the Wings, and about the Eyes then it.

A 3 Coots proper. Born by Sir *Charles Coot*, General of the *English* Forces in *Ireland*, in the late Rebellion, 1639.

L. He beareth Vert, a **Gander**, or a **Goose** Argent, **Membred** and **Beaked**, Gules. The colour of tame **Geese**, (as in all other tame Birds) are various, in some brown, in some grey, in some white, in some Hodded, or Flecked, or party coloured, of white and grey, or brown: the Bills and Legs in young ones are yellow; in older red. This is born by the name of *Gossely*.

The **Wild Goose**, doth not much differ in colour from the tame Its Head, Neck, and Back, generally the whole upper side is of a dark grey, or brown: the upper Covert feathers of the Wings are paler, the second, third, and fourth row of Wing feathers, have white edges and tips: the Quill feathers are of a dark brown, almost black: the Breast is a light grey, the Belly whiter, Vent white: the Tail above black, tipt and edged with white; the Bill half way from the Head black, then Saffron colour, the tip black: toothed, or indented, in both Mandables. Legs and Feet, of a Saffron colour, Claws black: under each Eye is a white line.

The **Brent Goose**; the Head, Neck, and upper part of the Breast, are black: a line of white about its Neck: the Back a dark grey; the Tail and the great Quill feathers black; the lesser grey: the Breast a dark grey, the Belly white; the Bill black, Eyes of an hazle colour, Feet black.

The **Rat-Goose**, or **Road-Goose**; the Bill and Feet black: the top of the Head, and Neck black; Throat and Breast brown, the rest of the under side white. The upper side grey, but the ends of the Feathers whitish: the Quills, and the Tail black, with white on each side.

The **Gambo Goose**, or **Spurwinged Goose**; it hath long red Legs: a white Belly; the Back of a dark shining purple colour; its Bill red, Cheeks and Chin, white: its Head hath a red caruncle, or fleshy protuberance, between the Bill and Fore-head: it hath no hinder Toe. But that as is most remarkable in this Bird, is a strong spur proceeding from the first joynt of the Wings, like to three or four sorts of **Brasilian Birds**, mentioned *chap.* 13. *numb.* 31. But no *European* Fowl as I know hath such.

The **Canada Goose**; the Bill is black, having a small hooke at the tip: the Eyes hazle colour: the Head, and half the Neck round, black: the lower part of the Neck white; it hath a kind of white stay, or muffler like, under the Chin, continuing on each side below the Eyes, to the back of the Head: the Back of a dark grey, the Rump white; Tail black; and so is the Quill feathers: but the Coverts, are of a dark grey; the Belly and Vent, white; the Feet, and Membrane, black; having a hinder Toe.

B 3 Geese A by the name of *Hawdrip*.

G a Gander to the sinister A Bill and Legs, G with Coat and Crest of *Van Entzesdorf*.

G the same A Crowned, O born to the sinister. By *Gansen*.

A Goose to the sinister, A is the Crest of *Van Michelsdorf*.

An Hodded Goose (that is party coloured) is the Crest of *Gazeling*.

LI. He beareth Gules, a **Swan-Eagle**, Argent; **Beak** and **Legs**, Or. This is a bastard kind of **Eagle**, which in *Latin* is called **Dupelargus**, or *Gypaetus*: it hath its Feathers standing about its Face, like a white Hood; the Neck short; Shoulders, and Covert feathers of the Wings, Breast, Belly, Back, and Tail, all over white: the Quill feathers, of a light umber colour; the Bill and Face yellow, blew Eyes, and flesh colour Legs and Feet. This is from its colour termed the **White Eagle**; or **Buzzard Eagle.** This is born by the name of *Buzley*.

LII. He beareth Argent; a **Bittern**, proper. Born by *Bittour*. It is called a **Bittour**, or **Bittern**, or **Miredrum.** The top of the Head black; at the angles of the Mouth is a black spot; Throat and sides of the Neck red, with narrow transverse black lines: the Breast have the Feathers black in the middle; the Belly white, the Thighs have a light tincture of red, variegated with black spots. The Back red, with large black spots: the Quill feathers variegated with red, and black, all tipt with black. The lesser rows of the Coverts, a pale red; the Tail short, varied with red and black, as the Wings: the Bill long growing slenderer to the point, of a greenish colour: Eyes yellow, under the Eyes the skin is bare of Feathers, and of a green colour. Legs bare about the Knees, which are very long, and greenish; the Toes long, and armed with long Claws. It is of late writers called **Botaurus**, and **Butorius.**

B the like O born by the name of *Bittersham*.

G 3 such A born by *Bitterer*, or *Butteneck*.

LIII. He beareth Argent, a **Herons head erazed**, Gules. By the name of *Herley*. There is two sorts of Herons, the one hath the Neck beset with a kind of rough sharp pointed feathers, standing out.

The **Brasilian Coco** hath a head and long neck after this form; the Bill streight, black and sharp pointed; black eyes in a golden circle; wings and tail all of a length; legs long, bare above the Knees, covered with a dusky skin; head and neck brown, variegated with small specks; a white stroak down the lower side of the neck; the back and wings black, powdred with very small yellow specks or spots; the Belly is the same.

A 3 such S born by *Hernway*.

LIV. He beareth Azure, a **Herons head couped**, Argent. By the name of *Herlowe*. This is the true form of the **Ardea**, or **Herons** head, and is that other sort mentioned before; whose further description see *numb.* 14.

B. 3 such born by *Hernhead*.

LV. He beareth Vert, a **Curlew**, proper. Born by *Corlews*. It hath a long Bill, narrow and something bowed,

ed, with broad, depressed, or flat points, both in the upper and lower mandable; of a dark brown, or black colour; the legs long, bare of feathers half up the second joint, the toes long, and of a dusky blue colour; all the toes connected together by a Membrane to the first joints from the divarication; the head, neck, and back are black, each feather edged with ash colour, with a mixture of red; in the throat, and forepart of the neck and breast, the feathers are black in the shafts, the edges white, with a tincture of red; the belly, thighs and rump white; the first or outmost quill feathers are all black, all the rest are spotted with white; the first feather of the second row is black; all the rest of the covert feathers are tipt with white.

The **Whimbrel**, or **Taraniolo**, or the **lesser Curlew**, it hath a long Bill moderately crooked, of a yellowish dun colour; the legs greenish; the crown a deep brown, without any spots; the back parts dusky or more bull than in the **Curlew**; the quill feathers black, with semicircular white spots; the lesser rows of covert feathers are of a reddish black, with white edges; the belly and thighs are white.

The **Phacopus**, or **Rain-fowl**, called also **Tarangolo**, it is like the precedent **Whimbrell**; the upper body is black, speckled with red and yellowish spots; slender long black Bill, a little bending; the neck and under side tend to a yellow or red; the Belly white, with dusky or ash colour legs.

The **Curlott**, or **Stone-Curlew**, the Bill is short and thick; in all other things it resembles the **Curlew**, yellow legs, long and bare above the Knees; under the eyes is a bare space of a yellowish green; chin, breast and thighs white, the head, neck, back and throat of a reddish ash colour, spotted with black; the quill feathers black, each having a white spot; those next the body black; the first covert row black, the rest tipt with white; the tail brown, and white bars; the tips brown.

LVI. He beareth Argent, a **Sea Crow**, proper. It is all black, the Bill long and sharp pointed, of a dusky red colour, the legs and feet dark brown, near to a black; with a tuft of Feathers standing backwards. It hath several denominations: Some term it a **Wild** or **Savage Crow**; others a **Scheller**; others a **Sea Crow** or **Raven**, being a kind of **Cormorant**.

In the Dexter side is the form and proportion of a **Shath Fly**, whose colour is variable, as red, blew, green and black with a shining gloss, or a various colour.

LVII. He beareth Argent, **two Angels Wings elevated**, Gules, the **Pommons**, Or. The term **elevating** is used when the points stand upwards, see *chap.* II. *numb.* 4. Some term these **two Wings inverted and elevated**; if they had touched in the bottom, then **inverted, elevated** and **conjoined**; and others Blazon them **two Wings displaid and elevated.**

LVIII. He beareth Argent, a **Cocoe**, proper. This is so named from its cry, which is Cocoe, or Cuckow; of these there is two kinds, the one differing in colour very much from the other; the upper Bill is a little hooked, and a dark or blackish colour; the nether of a pale or whitish yellow; the eyes yellow or Hasel colour, the edges of the eye lids yellow; the throat, breast and belly are white, with transverse dark lines, which are entire and not interrupted; the feathers on the head are a dark brown with white edges; in some cinereous, tending to a chesnut colour; the feathers on the middle of the neck, and back, and shoulders, are brown with a tincture of red, having the edges whitish; the Rump ash colour; the Beam feathers are blackish, having from the two outmost all their exteriour veins spotted with red, the tip ends white; the covert feathers are like those on the back. the tail is black, each spotted with white spots; the feet and claws are yellow, having two toes standing forwards, and as many backwards. The Cuckow is in some parts of *England* called a **Gouke**, from its *German* name **Gucker**. *Gesner* describes it to have three toes before, and a small tuft hanging behind the head, whom I have through a mistake followed.

The other **Cocoe** hath the transverse lines on the Breast, not continued but interrupted, there being here and there one; the neck, back and coverts are particoloured of black and ferrugineous; the Remiges else where black, are in the middle and edges white; the tail variegated with three colours, black, white, and ferrugineous, each colour concurring in the middle of the feathers in an acute Angle, like so many particoloured Cheverons.

The abovesaid Blazon is the Coat Armour of *Coe*, or *Cocoe*.

In this quarter is the Figure of a Swans Neck out of a Cloud, which Bearing is quartered by *Romer*, of *Brunswick*; *Viz.* Or, out of a Cloud, circled in form of a Torce or Wreath, a Swans neck Sable, with an Horse-shoe in its Beak, Azure

LIX. He beareth Vert, a **Bustard**, or **Bistard**, proper. Born by the name of *Bistard*. It is by the *Germans* termed a **Trappe**, or **Trap-Gause**; it is of the bigness and shape of the **Turkey-Hen**; its Bill like a **Hen**, something crooked; the head and neck ash-colour, Belly white; the back variegated with red and black transverse lines; the feet are dusky white; it wants the back toe; the neck and legs indifferent long; the tail long and broad at the end, having cross bars over it of red and ash-colour, the end white.

In the chief of this quarter, is the figure of the **creeping Worm Beetle**, which is of diverse colours, as Black, a dusky red, or dark blew and green. It is covered with two shaths, husks or cods, without any wings: the first from the head to the shoulders ending in an Angle; the other husk to the end of the body being twice the length of the former; from the bottom of it hangs out a Worm like tail, cut into incisures. It hath six long Legs like a Bee.

LX. He beareth Argent, a **Brome-Hen**, proper. This is termed the **Spithen**, the **Dihen**, or the **Laphen** and **Gagel-Hen**. The Male is generally known by the name of **Moore-cock**, or **Heath-cock**, or **Black Game** and **Grows**: This I have in *chap.* II. *numb.*

numb. 69. described, therefore say no more of it here. This is born by *Grizzel.*

In this quarter I have set forth the figure and bigness of a **Horse-Fly**, so called because they sting and bite Horses in the Summer; and will draw Blood out of them though their Hides be never so thick. Some call it a **Gad-Bee**, see *chap.* 18. *numb.* 154.

LXI. He beareth Azure, a **Daker-Hen**, or **Schryke**, proper. It is in some places called a **Waterhen**, or **Waterhen.** It is thick and short bodied, sharp pointed Bill of a brown colour; the legs bare above the Knees, of an indifferent length, the toes very long for its bigness, of a greenish colour; the back and wings incline to a reddish brown; the rest of the body, as head, neck, breast, ash-colour, the Belly white, tail short, standing a little up between the points of the wings, of a dark ash-colour. It is disputed between some Authors, whither this be not the **Land-Hen**, or **Land Raile.**

This Blazoned as aforesaid, is thecoat of *Schoodell.*

O. 3 such proper, is born by *Van Skryck.*

LXII. He beareth Or, a **Snipe**, proper. By the name of *Snipe.* This Fowl I have before described under the name of **Snipe**, or **Snite**, *chap.* 11. *numb.* 77. only here give you the true shape and form of it, which the *Germans* call a **Schnepff**, those of *Flanders* a **Sneppe.**

LXIII. He beareth Argent, a **Loria**, or **Cross Bill**, proper. The *Germans* call this Bird in their Language **Crooked-Bill**, or **Crooked-Nose**, but by us **Shell-Apple** or **Cross-Bill**; because contrary to the manner of all other Birds, the mandables near the tips cross one the other, by bending one up and the other down, and is black; the feet and legs dusky, claws black; the middle part of the head and back, the feathers are black edged with green; the rump green; the chin ash-colour, something of a cinereous mixt with it; the breast green, belly white; vent is black or dusky; quill feathers all black, the foremost are edged with green; the tail black with green edges. It is reported of this Bird, that it changes colour thrice in the year; that it is green in Autumn, yellow in Winter, and red in the Spring; and is a great destroyer of Apples, for the Kernels. This is the Coat Armour of *Crosfeil.*

A. the like proper, and a chief B. born by *Hoberger.*

LXIV. He beareth Argent, a **Nightingale**, proper. Some call it **Nachtgall**, and **Slawik.** It is a long slender Bird, almost as large as a **Goldfinch**, the Bill slender and streight, of a dusky colour; the head and back of a pale fulvous, with a mixture of green; the tail is deeper or more red; its Belly is white; the throat and breast are of a darker colour, with a tincture of green; the quill feathers, with the coverts are of a livid or fulvous colour; the tail long, not forked; the legs and feet and claws, a deep Flesh colour.

This is the Crest belonging to the name of *Fielding.*

A. a Fesse B. between 3 such proper, is born by *Nightingale.*

LXV. He beareth Vert, an **Onocrotalus**, proper. Born by *Crotolus.* It is also termed an **Indian Bitterne**, or **Pelecan of the Sea**; this is the true shape of the Bird, which I have formerly described, *numb.* 25, 26.

The **Onocrotalus**, as Mr. *Ray* describeth it, hath a space between the Bill and about the eyes, naked and bare of Feathers, the Bill towards the head is lead colour, the end yellowish, the upper mandable broad and flat, the nether (as it were) two long ribs or spars joined at the end, with a thick yellow skin interceeding, which reaches backwards to the throat behind the Bill; at the end of the Bill it is hooked, the top having a cranny or furrow running all the length of the Bill; the eyes are yellowish ash colour; the feathers on the top of the head longer than the rest, standing up like a Crest, yellowish as the Neck is; the colour of the whole body is white, the shafts of the back feathers are black; the tail and covert feathers of the wings are of a dusky ash colour, the ends of the quill feathers black; the legs and feet of a lead colour, the shanks bare above the Knees; all the four toes stand forward and are webb'd together having no heel behind.

B. the like O. is born by *Homgall.*

B. 3 such O. is born by *Letscherg.*

G. 3 such heads couped A. is born by *Van Homill.*

LXVI. He beareth Argent, a **Partridge** proper. The Bill and Legs, and Feet white; the Eyes yellowish, under the Eyes are certain excrescencies, the Chin and side of the Head are of a deep yellow, or Saffron colour; the Cock hath on his Breast a red mark, of a Semicircular figure (the Hen hath no such red mark) from the Chin to this red Horse-shoe mark, is blue cinereous, adorned with black transverse lines: beneath the mark on the Belly, the colour fades into a dirty or yellowish cinereous. The upper part of the Body is testaceous, or potsheard colour: the Prime feathers of the Wing are dusky, with transverse yellowish white spots. The covert Feathers have the shafts of a yellowish white. The Tail as the rest of the Body of a sordid yellow, with cinereous tips. Three such are the Arms of *Partridge.*

The **Bisilian Partridge**, called **Jambu**, is the same for shape and bulk of Body, and are all over of a dark fulvuos colour,, mingled and spotted with a dusky colour.

The **Damascus Partridge**, is the same in shape, but much less in Body; and is in colour like to our **English Partridge**, save that it hath yellow Feet.

The **Pernice**, or **Red Partridge**; the Eyes Bill and Legs are red, Claws dusky: the Toes to the first joynt connected by a Membrane intervening, it hath small spurs, whereas others have none: the Head, Neck, Back, and Rump, are ash colour, as also the out parts of the Thighs: the Cheeks, Chin, and Throat white; lower part of the Neck tinctured with a vinaceous colour: a black border, from the Nostrils over the Eyes encompasses the said white. The Breast of a dilute red: inclin-

ing to a yellow, the tips of the Feathers black; with a transverse line over them, of a whitish colour. The quill Feathers dusky, edged with white, tinctured with red: the Tail hath the middle Feathers cinereous, and the out side Feathers have the upper half red, and the lower cinereous.

A the like proper, is the Coat and Crest of *Partridge*.

A 3 such proper, is also by the same name.

A Falcon on a Partrich, I have formerly shewed that it is the Crest of *Glegge* of *Gayton* in *Wirrall*.

The Terms given to a young **Partridg** are these.

First, a **Pecked**, or **Peckled head**.

Then a **Chicken tail**.

Then a **Partridg** of the 1. 2. 3. 4. Feathers. This is when they cast the 1. 2. *&c.* Feathers of the Wing which is about six Weeks old.

Then a **Round set Partridg**, is when it is as large as old one.

A **Cock Partridg**, is known by an Horse-shooe of red Feathers on its Breast. The **Hen** by some stragling red Feathers there.

LXVII. He beareth Argent, a **Bohemian Chatterer**, proper. This Bird I have described before, *numb.* 46. therefore shall say no more of it in this place, only shewing you the true shape of it.

LXVIII. He beareth Argent, a **Wood pecker** Sable, **Crested**, Gules. This for the distinguishing of the several sorts of **Wood peckers**, may be termed, the **Crested Wood pecker**. The Bill above the Nostrils is black, the rest is white: the Nostrils are round covered with reflexed hair, the Eyes yellow, the colour of the whole Body is black, except the Crown on the Head, which down to the Bill is of a lovely red, or vermillion colour. The Legs are feathered down half way, the Feet are of a Lead colour; it hath two Toes backward, and two forward: as all Birds of this kind have, Claws blackish. This is born by the name of *Woodvile*.

A 3 such S Crested G born by *Peckerall*.

O 3 such Heads couped S. Crested G. is born by *Pickervile*.

LXIX. He beareth Argent, a **Wood-pecker**, Vert. Born by the name of *Langiner*. This Bird hath several names with us, the general is **Wood-pecker**, or **Wood, spit**, others term it a **Rain-fowl**, some an **High-hoe**, and in the *North* of *England* **Pickatrees**. The Bill is long and sharp at the end, and black; the Pupil of the Eyes is compassed with a reddish dusky circle, and that with another of white; the tongue, these kind can dart out of their mouths a great way, which ends in a sharp bony substance; wherewith it strikes, and catcheth insects, which it feeds upon. The top of the Head is a crimson or vermilion colour, spotted with black. The Eyes are compassed with black, under is a vermilion spot, the Throat, & Breast, of a pale green; Belly whiter; the Back and Neck, and lesser row of Covert feathers of the Wings green; (the young Birds are spotted on the Back with & white, Throat, & Belly, with blackish.) The Rump of a pale yellow, the Tail green, the tips of the Tail black. The Wing feathers are dusky, with Semicircular white spots, the Covert feathers are green, with transverse white dusky lines: the Feet are greenish and something of a Lead colour, Claws dusky. The Toes stand two forward, and two backward.

The **Witwall**, or **Spotted Wood pecker**, it is as a **Black-Bird**, the Bill is long and slender, thick at the root, but ending in a sharp point, of a triangular figure, and channelled with a furrow or two, the Nostrils covered with black hairs, as the Bill is black. Eyes red, hinder part of the Head red; Head black, shining with green; about the Eyes and Ears white, the Back black; at the insertion of the Wings is a great white spot. From the corners of the Mouth, a black stroak reacheth down to the Back, just below th Head another stroak crosses it. The flag Feathers of the Wings are black, marked with semicircular white spots. The Covert feathers are white, the middle black; the Ridg or base of the Wing white; the Tail have the middle Feathers all black, the side Feathers being party black, party white, tipt with a reddish white. The Feet of a Lead colour, the Toes two forward, two backward.

The **Pickwall**, is a lesser kind of **Spotted Wood-pecker**, the Bill black, Eyes red, top of Head white, the hinder part black; Throat, Breast, and Belly, of a sorded white; Back and upper Covert feathers of the Wing, black: from the Eyes to the middle of the Neck, two broad white lines, the Prime feathers, and their coverts are all spotted with white and black Semicircularly: the Rump and lower part of the Back white; the Tail black, the outward Feathers being transverse bars of white, and black; tipt with white. Legs feathered half way, Feet and Toes as the foresaid. The **Hen** of this kind, hath a red spot on the top of the Head, instead of the white.

The **Brasilian Jacamaciri**, or **American Wood-pecker**, hath the same shape and form of Body and Feet; it is as big as a **Lark**, hath a straight and sharp pointed black Bill; blue Eyes, the Head, upper part of the Neck, Back, Wings, and Tail, are of a green mingled with a Golden colour; a Ring of the same about its Neck; Throat, Breast, and all the lower parts of a dark yellow colour. The Legs and Feet of a yellowish green.

The **American Hang-nest**, called by the **Brasilians Guira-tangeima**. It is as big as a **Lark**, the Bill a little arcuate, or bending, slender and sharp pointed, black; Head and Neck, to the Breast, black: back part of the Neck of a sky colour, so is the Breast and Belly: the Back hath transverse black spots: the Wings black, with a white spot in the middle, scituate long ways the Feathers. The Tail all black: Legs blewish, the Toes standing three forward, and one behind.

The **Brasilian Jupu-juba**, or **Japu**; is of the same figure with the precedent, the whole Body is invested with very black Feathers, in the middle of the Wings, it hath a yellow long spot: bottom of the Back is yellow; the Tail half black at the Rump, the other yellow: Legs and Feet black, the Bill a pale yellow, Eyes of a Saphire colour. This Bird is of some called the **Hang-nest Wood-pecker**, it hanging its nest at the twig of a Tree, as the foregoing Bird doth.

The **Nutjobber**, or **Nuthatch**: is a kind of **Wood-pecker**, the Bill is black, and very sharp, pointed; the Head, Neck and Breast, ash colour; sides red, Throat and Breast, of a pale yellow, or chesnut red; Belly and Vent

Vent red: there goes from the Bill and through the Eyes to the Neck, a black stroak; Chin is white. The Quill feathers dusky; the interiour or those next the Body cinereous, the shafts of all black. The Tail is short, not much longer then the ends of the Wings, round in form, cinereous: the out side Feathers black, with ash colour tips. Legs and Feet, of a darkish colour; Claws dusky. It is called in Latin *Sitta.*

The **Wall-creeper,** or **Spider-catcher:** it hath a long slender Bill, black; the Head, Neck, and Back, cinereous; the Breast white: the Wings party cinereous, and party red; the Tail short and black: the lower part of the Back, the long feathers of the Wings, Belly and Legs, all black. The Toes, three stands forwards, and one backwards; Claws dusky.

The **Red Sparrow,** hath a long arcute sharp pointed Bill, the upper Chap dusky, the lower white: Eyes of a red hazle, not far from the angles of the Mouth, grows in the upper Mandable four or five black hairs: the upper side of the Body is of a dusky yellow colour, above each Eye is a whitish line. The Throat, Belly, and Breast are white, with a kind of yellowish tincture, more yellow about the Vent. The Legs are of a greenish yellow,

The **Reed-creeper,** or lesser **Reed Sparrow,** hath the lower Chap of the Bill white, the upper blackish: Eyes hazle colour, the Back towards the Rump is of a dark Olive, or dusky green, towards the Head more cinereous; the Breast white, the Throat and Belly, have a mixture of yellow; the sides of a dirty greenish colour The Quill feathers are of a dark brown, or dusky colour. Legs long and of a light blew; the soles of the Feet yellow.

The **Oxe-Eye,** or **Creeper;** it is as small as the **Wren.** It hath a long slender sharp Bill, bending downwards like a bow, the upper Chap dark colour, the nether white at the base, and black at the tip: Eyes hazle colour; the Head, Back, and Wings, inclining to a Fox colour, the middle of the Feathers being whitish: about the Eyes is a white spot; the Beam feathers of the Wings, the outmost are dusky, the rest have white tips, and a broad line of white in the middle of them, inclining to fulvous; the Coverts are all black, fulvous in the middle, and white tips. The Tail is of a dusky red, or reddish dun colour. The Legs are of a light brown, Claws white, the Back-toe having a long Claw, like a **Lark.**

A 3 Wood-peckers V born by *Morthwait.*

A a Wall-creeper proper. By the name of *Ha"umag.*

O 3 Oxe-eyes, or Oxe-creepers proper. Born by *Marley.*

LXX. He beareth Azure, a **Wittwall,** (**Woodwall,** or **Widwall**) proper. Born by that name. There are two Birds of this name, one of the **Woodpeckers** kind, which I have there described; and of the **Thrush** kind, having three Toes before, and one backward; which in *Latin* some term **Oriolus,** and **Galbula,** others **Chloreus,** and **Icterus.** Its Bill and Legs are red as Scarlet, Eyes the same: the whole Body and Tail is of a pure yellow, only the Quill feathers are black, the tips of those next the Body yellow, the foremost Feather of the first row of Coverts, are also yellow; else the whole Wing is black. From the Eyes towards the Nostrils there goes a black spot. This is by the *Dutch* called a **Goutmerle,** that is **Goulden Duzel.**

The **Guira-punga,** is an *American* Bird almost as big as a **Pigeon,** hath a Bill broad, and sharp pointed, black; Eyes between black and blew; the Head is dark brown, the Neck, Breast, Belly, Back, and Thighs are ash colour, mixt in the Back with some black Feathers; the Tail is mingled with ash colour, and black Feathers, and some of green; the Legs and Feet are black, the Toes, as in other common Birds. Under the Throat, it hath to the lower part of the Neck many black fleshy Wattles, hanging down before, of the figure of a spear point.

LXXI. He beareth Argent, a **Green Plover,** proper. Born by *Plover.* Though we call this a **Green Plover,** it is not so named from its colour, but for some other cause: for the Bill is black, or a dark dusky colour; all the whole upper part is black, thick set with yellowish green spots; and if you heed each single Feathers you will find the middle part to be black, and the borders, or edges round about, spotted with a yellowish green. The Breast brown, spotted with the same, the Belly white; the Quill feathers, and their Coverts are brown, or dusky, with white tips; those next the Back of the colours of the Back. The Tail is short and round, no longer then the ends of the Wings. Feet and Claws black, no Back-toe.

The **Grey Plover,** the Bill black: Head, Back and lesser Covert of the Wings black, with tips of a greenish grey. The Chin white, the Throat is spotted with oblong brown, or dusky spots. The Breast, Belly, and Thighs, white. The Quill feathers black, those next the Body edged with white, the second row, the exteriour are black; the interiour, next the Body, are tipt and edged white. The third row of Covert feathers, the outward are black, with white tips; the Tail is short varied with transverse bars, or beds of white and black, the Feet of a sordid green, Claws little, and black: a very small Back-toe, the Fore-toes joyned to the first joynt, by a Membrane.

The **Dottrell,** it is of the shape of a **Plover,** the Bill is black, the Head variegated with black and white spots: a white line about the Eyes. The Chin whitish, Throat of a pale ash, with oblong brown spots: The Breast of a dirty yellow, Belly white, the Back brown, with yellowish white tips; the Quill feathers are of a dusky brown, with the edges and tips whitish; the lesser rows of Covert feathers are brown, with yellowish white tips. The Rump and Tail are cinereous, tips white: the Legs are bare above the Knees, and are of a sordid greenish yellow; Toes and Claws darker, it hath no Back-toe. It is a foolish dull Bird, from whence we call a dull fellow, by way of a Proverb, a **Dotterel,** or **Dottill.**

The **Sea Lark,** is something bigger then the **Common Lark,** it hath a straight Bill, at the Head it is deep yellow, towards the point black. Eyes hazle colour, a line of black compasses the base of the upper Bill, which goes from the Mouth through the Eyes to the Ears, and then turns up, and passes cross the middle of the Head, and encompasses a bed of white about the Eyes. The hinder

hinder part of the Head, ash colour; Chin white, the Back, and lesser Covert feathers of the Wings, grey or ash colour; Breast, and Belly, white; there runs two rings, or collars about the Neck, one white, and the lower black. The Quill feathers are black, the middle of the shaft, spotted with white. Those next the Body of the same colour with the Back: the second row, makes a transverse line in the Wing. The Tail is ash colour, the out side Feathers being white. The Legs and Feet, of a pale yellow, Claws black; it wants a Back-toe.

The **Turn-stone**, or **Sea Dottrell**, is in shape like the **Plover**, a straight black Bill, the Head, Neck, Shoulders, Wings and upper part of the Breast is brown (some say black, or purplish black) with white edges; Belly and Thighs, snow white, the middle of the Back white, with a great black spot on the Rump: the Quill feathers are a brown, or dusky colour, from the outmost three, all tipt with white, the second row are black, the tips of them making a white line cross the Wing. The edges of the lesser row are red, near the second joynt of the Wing is a white spot. Tail is of half black, and the lower part white. Legs and Feet, a Saffron, or Oreng colour, Claws black: it has a Back-toe.

The **Glottis**, or **Totanus**, it is a kind of great **Plover**: the Bill is black, long and slender, at the angle of the lower Mandable, red: the upper side, of the Body is grey, a line of white compasses the Eyes, the under side is all white; th Quill Feathers dusky, or dark brown, the inner Quill Feathers are speckled with white, the Tail short, waved with cross lines, or bars of brown and white alternately; Legs very long, bare above the Knees, of a Lead colour, or between a green, and livid, Claws black; a small or no Back-toe.

The **Redshanke**, or **Pool-Snipe**, it is between a **Lapwing** and a **Snipe**: the Bill is long and slender, red; or of a dark red at the base, and black towards the point. Eyes hazle colour, Nostrils oblong: the Head and Back of a dusky ash colour, spotted with black, (in some with dusky, or brown, inclining to green) the Neck more cinereous, the Throat parti-coloured, of white and black, in lines longways the Feathers; the Breast whiter, with fewer transverse lines: the Tail is no longer then the ends of the Wings, and is variegated with transverse waved lines of white, and black alternately: the Quill feathers of a black brown, sprinkled or powdered with white; the interiour next the Body, are tipt with white, with one or two transverse black lines on them; the foremost of the Coverts being the two first rows are black, varied with white lines: the other rows, are dark ash colour. The Legs of a fair pale red, Claws small and black. This Fowl hath a very small Back-toe, and long Legs, bare above the Knees. It hath several *Latin* names, as *Hæmatopus*, *Gallinula Erythropus*, and *Pardalus*, from its being spotted like a **Leoparde**.

The **Gambetta**, is a Fowl near of kind, and shape to the **Redshank**, but lesser, the Bill near the Head of a flesh colour, the rest black; Eyes yellow, compassed with an other black circle: the upper surface of its Body is grey, or cinereous, all over besprinkled with brown spots; the Prime feathers of the Wing black, Belly white, Tail black, the Legs and Feet are long and yellow, inclining to red, Claws black.

[ ]

The **Tringa** or **Steingallet**: it is of the **Plover** kind, though it exceeds not the bigness of a **Blackbird**, or **Duzel**: the Bill is straight and slender, and long, of a dark green, black at the point; Eyes hazle colour. The upper side of the Body is a dusky green, shining like Silk; or brown, with a tincture of green; save the Head and upper side of the Neck, all spotted with many white spots: the circumference of the Eye, and Chin, white: the Throat white, spotted with brown: the Breast and Belly all white. The Tail is short having white tips, and transverse lines of white. The Legs and Feet long, naked about the Knees, of a Lead colour, with a tincture of green. Back-toe small, Claws black.

The **Sandpiper**, or **Pfifferlein**, of the *Germans* so called. It is of kind and shape to the **Tringa** aforesaid, only of a lesser size: it is also as the others are, Water Birds, and feed about Pools, Laks, and Rivers. The Bill is dusky and blackish, bottom whitish, the tip a little bent downwards. Eyes hazle colour: middle of the Neck ash colour; or else the whole upper surface of the Body, Wings, and Tail, is of a dusky sordid green, elegantly variegated with dark transverse lines: only somthing of red mingled in the Feathers. About the Eyes, a white line; the Throat of a sordid white; Breast and Belly, white; the ends of the Wings tipt with white, the Covert feathers all tipt, and the ridg, or base of the Wing white. The Tail hath the out side Feathers white. The Feet are of a pale green, Claws black; Back-toe small.

The **Knot**, or **Canut**; in *Latin* **Callidris**. It is of the same shape with the other, but the Bill not so long yet straight and slender, black; some have their Eyes hazle colour, and others yellow: the Head and Back of a dusky ash colour, or dark grey. The Rump and Tail varied with black and white lines, the out-most Feathers all white. The Breast and Belly white, a white line in some Birds between the Eyes and Bill. The Quill feathers black, the Shaft white. The Covert feathers were tipt with white: the Legs and Feet greenish, the Fore-toes are divided from the beginning of the divarication, no Membrane intervening, as in most Birds there is.

The **Sanderling**, called in *Cornwall* a **Curwillet**; it is of the same make and shape, to the **Plover**, and is bigger then the **Sandpiper**. The Bill is straight, long, slender, and black; the Neck cinereous, the Back and Shoulders, various of black and white (or black and ash colour) the Quill feathers a dark brown, or a dusky colour, them next the Body white; the first row of Coverts have their tips white, which makes a transverse white line through the Wing: them at the ridges of the Wings are dusky. The Wings closed reach behind the Tail, which is black or a dark ash, them on the Sides, cinereous. The Legs, Feet, and Claws black, it wants a Back-toe. The Fore-toes disjoyned from the very rise.

The **Rot-Knussel**, which the *Germans* term **Rothmillis**: and by some Fowlers called **Giarola**. It is shaped after the manner of these examples, the Bill long, and a little bending black. The Head, Neck, Breast, to the middle of the Belly is red or dusky, with some spots of a sordid, or dark colour: the Belly white, with a tincture

ture of red, curiously spotted with black: the Tail is white, but black at the end: the Legs and Feet are cole black: from whence some Authors term it **Melampus**, that is **Black-feet**.

The **Watkern**, is a Bird that much in figure, and magnitude resembles the **Reeve**, the Female of the **Ruffe**. The Bill is black, with something of red at the end, the whole Plumage is red, specked with white on the Neck and Back; the Belly is only whitish, with a faint tincture of red. The Legs and Feet are a pale red, inclining to ash colour.

The **Dunlin**, so called in the *North Country*. It is of the bigness of a **Jack-Snipe**, it hath a straight channelled black Bill, a little broader at the end. The Throat and Breast white, spotted with black: the Belly blackish, waved with white lines, Vent white: all the upper side is red, spotted every where with pretty great black spots, with a little white. The Wings are grey, inclining to a brown, or dusky colour. The Legs and Feet, of a competent length, and black: the Back-toe short; the Tail middle Feathers are dusky brown, with one or two red spots, the Side feathers inclining to white.

The **Stint**, or **Junco**; it is a kind of a **Sea Lark**, with a straight, long, slender Bill, and black; the Legs long of a dusky or blackish colour, with a tincture of green; the Back-toe small: the upper side of the Body is grey, or cinereous, with spots or lines of black in the middle of each Feather; but the Quill feathers, and first row of Covert feathers, are dusky, those next the Body, white edges, with a white line cross the Wing: the Tail middle Feathers, dark ash colour; all the rest paler. all the under side of the Body is white, the Throat and Breast clouded with dark colour spots. These Birds in *Chester* we call **Purres**; they fly together by the Sea, and Water side, in great flocks.

A 3 Plovers proper. Born by *Plover*.
A a Dottrill proper. Born by the name of *Dotterill*
B a Red-shanke O Legs and Beak G born by *Pooller*.
A a Dunlin, or Jack-snipe, proper. By the name of *Dunline*.

LXXII. He beareth Argent, a **Stare** (or a **Starling**) proper. Born by *Starling*. It is of the shape and bigness of an **Ouzel**: the Bill is straight, and sharp pointed, of a pale yellow; the Eyes of an hazle colour; the tips of the Feathers of the Neck and Back are yellow, else all the Body over, it is black with a certain blew, or purple gloss, varying as it is variously exposed to the light. (In the **Hen Stare**, the tips of the Feathers on the Breast and Belly to the very Throat are white) the Belly is more spotted. The Quill feathers are dusky and dark, the Covert feathers glister, the tips of the less covert, yellow: the Tail dusky, with pale yellow edges: they are a gregarious Bird, living and flying together in great flocks, and being brought up tame, is a very notable Bird at Imitation of mans voice, speaking articulately.

The **Redstart**, or **Rock-Ouzell**; and of some called the **Sea-Thrush**; it is of kind and figure like the **Stare**, and of the same bigness: the Bill is broad and flat, yet sharp pointed, not rising in a ridg as in **Black-birds**, black of colour, higher Bill a little bent in the point: the Head, and Back brown, tipt cinereous. The Chin whitish, the tips of the Breast feathers cinereous, below the Breast is a transverse black line, below which the Plumage is of a red, or Orange tawny colour: the Quill feathers of a black brown, with reddish tips. The Tail is of a red tawny colour, with white tips: the Feet and Legs of a Lead colour, Claws black.

The **Solitary Sparrow**; it is of the bigness of a **Black-bird**. The Head and Neck were thicker then to answer the proportion of the Body: the Bill straight, and blackish; top of the Head dark ash colour, Back deep blew, almost black; the edges of the Feathers whitish: Shoulder and Covert feathers, the same. The Quill feathers, dusky, with white tips; Tail black. The Breast, Belly and Thighs, were all variegated with black, cinereous and whitish transverse waved lines; the Throat, reddish and white lines. The Legs and Feet black.

B a Stare proper. Born by *Starne*.
O 3 Stares proper. Born by *Sternhill*.
G 3 Stares O spotted S. Born by the name of *Starlinger*.

LXXIII. He beareth Argent, a **Feldfare**, proper. Born by *Felfare*. This Bird is somthing larger then the **Black-bird**, or **Thrush**. It hath a straight Bill yellow, but the tip is black. The Head, Neck, and Rump, ash colour, the Crown sprinkled with black spots. The Back and Covert feathers, of a dark red or chestnut colour, spotted with black; the Throat, and upper Breast, yellow, spotted with long black spots, tending downwards; bottom of the Breast, and Belly white: the Quill Feathers are black with white edges, the inner are something redder. The first Covert row are white, thence a red or yellow line, seperates the white and black: it hath a black stroake from the Bill to the Eye, and the edges of the Eyelids makes a yellow circle round the Eyes: at the bottom of the Neck a black spot. The Tail is a dark blew, or blackish colour, the edges of the middle Feathers, ash colour, and the tips of the outer white. The Legs and Feet blackish, the Claws more black.

The **Thrush**, or **Missell Bird**, or **Shrit**; its Bill is straight and dusky, Eyes hazle colour, the Head is a dusky cinereous, or Lead colour, spotted with black; the Back, Tail and Rump, are the same having some mixture of yellow, or Olive colour; the under side from Bill to Tail, is speckled with pretty great long spots of black; the Throat being reddish, the Breast yellow, the Belly white; the Covert feathers next incumbent on the Quills, are white; the Legs and Feet yellowish, Claws black.

The **Throstle**, **Mavis**, or **Singing Thrush**: the Bill is of a dusky colour, the Eyes hazle colour: in the colour of the spots on the Breast, and Belly, it agrees with the **Thrush**, or **Missell-bird**; for the spots are dusky, the Breast yellow, and Belly white; the upper surface of the Body is dusky, with a

a mixture of yellow in the Wings, which is very like an Olive colour: the lower Covert feathers have yellow tips. The Legs and Feet are of a light brown, or dusky, the soles of the Feet yellow.

The **Swine-Pipe, Wind-Thrush,** or **Redwing:** it is rather less then the **Mavis,** or **Throstle,** yet it is for outward shape and colour so like it, that they are hard to be distinguished, the under side of the Wings in the **Mavis,** is yellow: and in this kind it is of a red Orange colour; by which mark, they are one known from the other. But if a Man do diligently observe, this Bird hath some other outward marks which the other hath not; as the lower Mandable is partly dusky, partly yellow: the Legs and Feet pale: and the spots are less, and thicker set, then in the **Mavis:** about the Eyes is a long spot, or line of a clay colour, reaching from the Eyes to the hinder part of the Head. The *Germans* call this Bird, a **Wine-Thrush.**

A 3 Fieldfares proper. Born by the name of *Stockham.*

A a Fesse B between 3 Thrushes, proper. Born by *Mavis.*

A a Cheveron G between 2 Throstles proper, and a Rose. By *Throstle.*

A 3 Throstles proper. Also by the name of *Throstle.*

LXXIV. He beareth Argent, a **Vulture,** proper. Born by *Stretton.* It is observable that all kinds of **Vultures** have their Heads, and Necks, bare of Feathers, only covered with down: there are several coloured **Vultures;** as,

The **Cinereous,** or **Ash coloured Vulture.**

The **Black Vulture.**

The **White Vulture,** but it is very rare to be seen.

The **Chesnut Vulture,** hath a short Tail, and long Wings with Feathers on the Legs down to the Feet.

The **Hare Vulture,** so called from Preying on **Hares, Conyes, Foxes,** and **Fawns:** hath a black hooked Bill, foul Eyes, a long straight Train, or Tail, of a dark red colour; and yellow scally Feet. Standing or sitting, it rears up a Crest upon its Head, as if it were horned. See *chap.* 13. *numb.* 2.

The **Golden Vulture,** of which this example is the true shape; the Breast, Belly, and Feet, were of a red colour; more dilute towards the Tail, the Toes of a dusky or horn colour; all the Wings blackish, and dusky, but the ridg of the Wings more blacker, and some of them marked with transverse reddish spots, cross the middle, others with whitish ones, near the bottom: the Back, black shining; the Feather shafts white, but in the Neck pale red: the Tail as the Wings, dusky.

B 2 Vultures O born for the Coat, and one for the Crest of *Vulture.*

G a Cheveron between 3 such O. Born by *Rancorne.*

A 3 such S. Born by *Grimsby,* or *Grimsford.*

LXXV. He beareth Argent, a **Basilice,** or **Cockatrice,** Sable; **Crested, Yellopped,** and **Membred,** Gules.

☞ The **Cockatrice** is generally born in this posture, wth the Wings **expenced,** and therefore I have observed that all Heraulds in their blazoning, have only termed it a **Cockatrice,** without any other addition: but if the Wings, or Tail were drawn in any other posture, then it hath been mentioned, whether the Wings were **Complicated,** or **Trussed** up, or else **Overture,** or **Volant,** and the like: and again if the Tail be **Extended, Erected, Embowed,** or **Torgant,** and such like, as you have many example of the turning and winding of **Serpents Tails,** *chap.* 9. *numb.* 88. in such cases I say the **Basilicke** is to be expressed, in what posture it is, but never in this; so the **Dragon,** or **Wiverne,** are to have the same Rule observed in them, as *numb.* 79.

B the like O. Born by the name of *Lingam.*

A the like S Membred, Crested, *&c.* G born by *Langley,* and *Lingley.*

S a Cockatrice displaid, A Crested, Membred, and Jallopped, O. Is born by the name of *Bagine.*

LXXVI. He beareth Or, a **Basilicke,** having the point of his Tail **converted** (or **turned**) into a **Serpents Head,** Gules. By the name of *Gargraine.*

This is termed the **Amphisiben-Cockatrice,** having a Head before and also at the Tail: after the same manner both the **Dragon,** and **Wiverne** are drawn thus with Heads at the ends of their Tailes; which are called **Amphisiben-Dragons,** and **Amphisiben-Wiverne:** which is as much as to say, a **Wiverne** with a Head behind and before. Which is borrowed from the **Serpent Amphisiben,** which hath two Heads, and goeth backwards, and forwards.

LXXVII. He beareth Gules, an **Harpey, Overture,** or with **Wings disclosed,** Or. This is a kind of fictious monstruous Bird, having the Head and Face of a **Woman,** and the Wings and Body of an **Eagle.** *Guillims, fol.*264. terms it thus, an **Harpey** with **Wings disclosed,** and her **haire, flotant:** This Coat stands in *Huntington* Church. And is Born by the name of *Harpey.*

G. three Harpeys A. born by the name of *Harfield.*

B. such an Harpey Overture, and a Chief O. by *Marshgate.*

LXXVIII. He beareth Azure, an **Harpey displayed,** Argent; **Crowned** and **Crined,** Or. I have seen draughts of old, and the *Dutch* and *French* Heraulds, do draw their **Eagles** (to this day) **displayed,** with Thighs after this manner, as if they were the thighs of

of a **Man**, more like than them of a **Bird**: which to me seems very improper either for the **Eagle**, or this **Harpey**; But Mr. *Gwillims*, is my Master in this shape, which here I have followed; though I would advise, that all sorts of Fowl that is born in Arms (**displaped**,) might be done in imitation, and according to the Pattern, set down in the examples of **Eagles**, and **Pellicans**. *numb.* 38. and *chap.* 11. *numb.* 51. 53. This is born (Sans crown) by the name of *Harpell*.

B. the like Crined, Crowned, and Armed O. is the City Arms of *Norenberga*, in the middle of *Germany*.

B. the like A. Crowned and Crined O. Face proper a Cheif A. is born by the name of *Thalwall*.

B. the like O. is born by *Erlin Van Rorberg*.

LXXIX. He beareth Vert, a **Wivern**, Argent: This is the proper posture for this kind of **Serpentine Creature**, if it be in any other kind, then to be mentioned as in the example, *numb.* 75. This is of some old Heraulds termed, a **Dragon-Wivern**, or a **Dragon-Serpent**, and the **Serpent Pithon**; which some again, draw with four Feet, and no Wings. This is the Coat and Crest of *Wivell*.

G. the like to the sinister A. by *Trachenfels*.

The like A. devouring a Child proper, is the Crest of *Venables*, Baron of *Kinderton*.

V. a Wivern A. born by *Moston* of *Moston* in *Cheshire*.

A. the like to the sinister G. by *Van Breidenstein*.

LXXX. He beareth Argent, a **Wivern**, with the **Tail torqued**, (or **Tortant**,) Azure. This is thus born by the name of *Warmingham*, vulgarly termed *Warminsham*, and *Warmisham*.

S. the like O. by *VVarmingham* of *Chester*.

A. the like holding up his right foot V. by *Burchensham*.

A. the like to the sinister V. born by *Burgchausen* of *Bavaria*.

A. the like to the sinister, the Tail between his Legs B. born by *Wurmblingen*.

LXXXI. He beareth Gules, a **Wivern**, with the **Tail Nowed under his Feet**, Or. *Gwillims*, *fol.* 262. terms this, a **Wivern**, his **Wings displayed**, and **Tail Nowed**. But I suppose he meant the Wings **Sepurture**, or **Overture**, or **Volant**; but never **displayed**, except the Wings are open on either side the Head. The Tail is also termed **fretted**, in form of a **True Loves Knot**. For this is contrary to the common way of **Nowing**, or **Nodeeing** of Serpents Tails, as having a fret, or crossing, more than usually; this four, the other but three. This is Born by *Knott*.

A. the like G. born by the name of *Drakes*.

LXXXII. He beareth Azure, a **Harpey**, with Wings **complicated**: (or else term it thus,) a **Duck**, Argent, with a **Maids Face**, proper, the **Hair trussed up**: on the back part of the Head, an **Infula** Gules, **Fretted**, Or. This is born by the name of *Van Michelsach*.

G. 3 such O. Faces proper. Born by *VValtonwood*.

B. the like with Wings disclosed A. born by *Hombouse*.

LXXXIII. *He* beareth Or, a **Ram-Basilice**, Gules Born by *Scorcogull* of *Holland*. This is also termed an **Arietobasilaquill**: or **Ram-Eagle-Serpent**. Because it partakes of three Natures; the Head of a **Ram**, the Body and Tail of the **Cockatrice**, and the Arms and Pounces of an **Eagle**.

☞ But to avoid Confusion, let such kind of Creatures be termed according to their order and make, and then laying a-side all difficult names, I should term this a **Cockatrice**, or **Basilice Ram-headed**; and why not, a **Ram-Cockatrice**? deriving its name from the head, as well as the **Cockatrice** from his; and so of the like commixture of Creatures, a **Ram-Wivern**.

B. 3 such Wings expansed O. Born by *Van Ramlisch*.

A. a **Goat-Cock**, G. Born by *Van Bockorschen*. This is a Creature having a Goats Head and Feet, and a Cocks Body and Tail; a fancy of the Bearer (as I suppose) in answer to the name: For this is by the *Dutch* termed, a **Bockhean**, **Bock**; and **Bock**, a **Goat**: and **Han**, and **Hean**, a **Cock**. O. the like **Bockhean**, S. is Born by *Kockorsch*.

Per Fesse A. and B. the like counterchanged is the Arms of the States of *Zigenhan*.

O. a **Goat-Eagle** displayed S. is the Town Arms of *Treiss* in *Germany*.

The like rule must be observed in giving names to all these kind of double or compounded fictious Creatures.

LXXXIV. He beareth Argent, a demy **Aroponade**, Sable: Wings **displayed**, (or **Overture**,) Gules. This is called also the **Ram-Eagle** by some; but that is a mistake, for then it should have the entire Head of a **Ram**, whereas it hath but the Horns. It may therefore be Blazoned, a demy **Eagle displayed**, **adorned** with a pair of **Rams Horns**; and so it is Born by the name of *Van Egelhornen*, a *Dutch* Family.

The **Tragoponades**, are Birds in *Ethiopia*, as big as **Eagles**, and have Horns like a **Goat**.

The **Indian Horned Bird**, called by them **Pohvalcuachili**: See it described, *chap.* 13. *numb.* 58. *sect* 2.

LXXXV. He beareth Sable, an **Asnocratalus**, or **Ass-Bittern**, Argent. This name is ascribed to this fictious Bird, onely from the cry of a **Bittern** in the water, which resembleth the harsh, or humping, or bumping cry, which we term the **Braying** of an **Ass**; therefore they ascribe it an **Ass-head**, and a **Bitterns Neck**, Body, and Feet. Some term this an **Onocrotalus**, which is the *Greek* for a Bird that makes a noise like an **Ass**, or a **Bittern**, having an Asses Voice. This is Born by the name of *Asbitter*.

A. 3 such G. is born by *Antrobus*.

B. one such aad a Canton A. is Born by *Shawbrooke*.

G. a **Serpent-Goose**, A. Born by the name of *Weinting* of *Bavaria*. This is a Fowl with a Serpentine Head and Neck casting out a sting, with the Body and Feet of a **Duck**, or **Goose**.

LXXXVI. He beareth Argent, a **Parrot**, or **Popinjae**, Vert. Born by *Parrot*. The **Parrot** alone (with the **Crocodile**) moves the upper Jaw, as all other Animals do the lower. The Bill is hooked, or crooked, of a semi-circular figure, by which it climes Walls or Trees, it is of a whitish colour; the Feet is after the manner of an **Owl**, two Toes standing forward, and two backwards, whitish; with crooked Claws, wherewith it holds its Meat, and brings it to its Mouth after the manner of **Men**. 3 such is born by *Neuton*.

Parrots in respect of their bigness may be divided into three kinds; the greatest sort of them, are equal to our common **Raven**, or a well fed **Capon**, of which kind in *English* they are called, **Macaws**, or **Macaos**, and **Cockatoons**, these have generally long Tails. The mid-

middle, or meanest sized **Parrots**, are as big, or bigger then a **Pigeon**, and have short Tails; these we call in *English* **Parrots**, and **Poppinjayes**. The least sort are of the bulk of a **Black-bird**, or **Thrush**: having very long Tails, and are called in *English* **Parakeeto's**, or **Parrotkeeto's**.

The **Maccaw**, or **Macao**, or **Cockatoon**, hath a long crooked upper Bill, much longer than the neather mandible, black: the Eyes white and black, three black lines branched, goes from the bill, compassing the Eyes underneath; the crown of the head green, the Throat adorned with a kind of black ringe; the Breast, Belly, Rump, and Tail underneath of a Saffron-colour; the Neck above, Back, Wings, and upper side of the Tail, of a very pleasant blue, or azure colour; the Legs very short, thick, and of a dark dusky colour, armed with great crooked black Talons.

The **Arara canga**, or the **Brasilian Cockatoon**, hath the upper mandible wholly white, and the lower black; a white membrane, or kin, about the Eyes bare of Feathers, and rough or rugged; Grey-eyes with a black pupil; the Head, Neck, Breast, Belly, Thighs, and Tail underneath, and the ponions of the Wings, are of a most lovely and elegant red, the middle part of the Wings green, and the lower half of them, from the middle to the end blue; the Rump and lower part of the Back, and Tail blue; the Leggs are short; the Feet divided into long Toes, armed with crooked Claws, both of a dusky, or dark ash-colour.

The **Brasilian Macao**, called by them **Ararauna**: It is the same in shape to the **Parrot**, but of a different colour, its Bill is black, Eyes grey, with a black pupil: the naked skin about the Eyes white, variegated with black, as if it were wrought with a needle; the Legs and Feet dusky; about the Bill is a couple, or tuft of green feathers, the Throat black; the sides of the Neck, Brest, and Belly yellow; the hinder part of the Head, Back-side of the Neck, the Back and out-sides of the Wings blue; the ends of the Wings have yellow Feathers mingled with the blue: the Tail is blue, with some yellow Feathers intermingled. There is some kinds of these Birds that have their Wings and Tail parti-coloured of red and yellow and blue; have the Tail of a great length, especially the two middlemost feathers, which do much exceed the rest, and are blue.

The **Maracana of Brasil**, called also of them **Arara**: Is of the **Parrot** kind, and is all over of a bluish grey; the Bill black, the skin about the Eyes white, speckled with black; Eyes yellowish, pupil black. There is another sort of these **Arara**, which the *Brasilians* term **Amuru curica**; which have the whole Head, Neck, and Wings, green; the top of the head more dilute, and in a manner turning to blue; the Wings are likewise green, with their ends blue: and at the rise of each Wing, a red spot; the Leggs and Feet, dusky.

The **common Parrot**, hath the upper chap of the Bill, at the point black, then bluish, the remainder being red: the under chap white, the Eyes yellow, or red, with a black pupil, the Crown of the head yellow, all the rest of the body green, the under side more dilute and yellowish, the Back, and Wings darker, onely the uppermost ridge of the Wing is red, the rest of the pinion, inclining to blue; the Tail is red, which is but short; the Legs and feet ash-colour, Claws black.

The **parti-coloured Parrot**, hath the Bill white, Eyes ferrugineous, pupil black; the Fore-head and Crown white, variegated with black spots; hinder part of the Head, Neck, Back, Wings, Rump above, are of a dark green; the Throat and Ridges of the Wings, with a vermilion red; the Breast and Thighs, green; the Belly, and Rump, of a dusky red; the covert Feathers of the Wings blue, with a mixture of white; the Tail is red in the middle, the out-side of the Feathers being variegated with red yellow and blue, else are green; the Legs and Feet cinereous.

The **Blue, Parrot**, hath a blackish Bill, the Head, Neck, and Breast are blue, the top of the crown hath a yellow spot, the region of the Eyes white; the circle dusky, and the pupil black; the Belly green, the Thighs white, rump yellow; the top of the back blue; the covert feathers of the Wings, parti-coloured of green yellow and rosie; the end of the Back, or region of the Lovns, yellowish; the Leggs and Feet, ash-colour.

The **Ash-coloured Parrot**, the Bill is black, having a naked white skin in the upper part of the Bill next the head; the whole body is of a dark cinereous, or ash-colour; yet the lower part of the Back, Belly, and Rump, are paler, almost white; the Tail is red, and very short, scarce reaching further than the ends of the Wings. The Region of the Eyes (or sides of the head round the Eyes) are bare of feathers, and white. This is otherwise termed a **Mina Parrot**, being onely brought from *Mina*, an *Indian* City, of St. *Georges*.

The **white Parrot**, the Bill is black, the whole body white, but moderately shaded with dusdy, so that it seems, to be pale ash-coloured; the hinder part of the Back, Rump, whole Tail, and prime Feathers of the Wing, are of a scarlet colour; the Feet, blackish.

The **Paragua**, is a **Parrot**-kind, the Bill is dark ash-colour, the Body black; the Breast, Back, and anteriour, or fore-part of the Belly, red: the Eyes black, with the circle red.

The **Tarabe** of the *Brasilians*; is a green **Parrot**, with a red Head and Breast; and the ridges or pinions of the Wings; the Beak and Feet, of a dark ash-colour.

The **Brasilian Ajurucatinga**, is a **Parrot** of the bigness of a handsome **Pullet**, all green, with red Eyes, and the skin about the Eyes white; the Bill and Legs white; it hath a long green Tail.

The **Ajurupara**, is a kind of **Popinjay**, agreeing in all respect with the precedent; as shape, and colour, only it is of a less body; therefore may be ranked amongst the lesser **Parrots**, called **Parakeets**.

The **Parrakeet**, the Bill all red, yellow Eyes, with a black pupil, it is all green, but the Neck, Breast, and all the under-side, more dilute, or pale; under the Chin a black line is drawn downwards, as far as the beginning of the Breast, which then divides, and goes to each side of the Neck, till it meets with that red circle, or ring, which compasses the back-side of the Neck. The Belly, and Tail, of a yellowish green; Legs and Feet, ash-colour.

The **Ring-parrakeet**, the Bill all red; yellow Eyes, with a black pupil, it is all green; but the Neck, Breast, and all the under side, more dilute, or pale; under the Chin a black line is drawn downwards, as far as the beginning of the Breast, which then divides, and goes to each side of the Neck, till it meets with that red circle, or ring, which compasses the back side of the Neck. The Belly, and Tail, of a yellowish green; Legs and Feet, ash colour.

The **Scarlet Parakeeto**, is no larger than a **Black bird**: The whole Body is of a vermilion colour; the covert Feathers of the Wings yellow; the Tail hath the lower

lower half red, and the upper green, or yellow; the Eyes yellow, the skin bare about the Eyes, of an ash-colour, Legs short and black; a ring of green Feathers, compasses the Leggs above the Knees.

The **Tui** of the *Brasilians*, is of the bignes of a **Swallow**; all over green, having a very long Tail and a black hooked bill.

The **Tuiapute-juba**, is all over green, the Wings darker, the lower Breast and Belly, paler almost yellow; the Tail very long, it is of the bignes of a **Swallow**; it hath black Eyes, and a circle of yellow feathers, about the Eyes, and about the Bill, which is black and hooked; on the Head, it hath a great spot of orange-colour feathers.

The **Tui-tirica** of *Brasil*, is a kind of **Parrakeeto**, something larger then those of *Guiny*, all over of a green colour; deeper on the Back, and Wings; paler on the Breast, and Belly; Bill crooked, of a carnation colour, Eyes black, Feet bluish, the Tail not much longer than the points of the Wings.

The **Jendaya** of the *Brasilians*, is as big as a **Throstle**; hath a black Bill and Legs; black Eyes, with golden irides, or circle encompassing the pupil, outwardly white; the Back, Wings, Tail, and lower Belly, green, enclining to a sea-colour, the ends of the Wings black; the Head, Neck, and Breast, are of a yellow colour.

The **Tuiete**, is of the bignes of a **Lark**, the whole body of a light; but the beginning of the Wings, of a bright blue; the borders also of all the wing-feathers, are blue; on the Back, at the rise of the Tail, is a blue spot, the Tail is short; the Bill hooked, and of a carnation colour; the Legs and Feet, cinereous.

The **Tuipara**, is of the bignes of a **Lark**, all over pale green; Tail short, as the Wings; the Bill of a carnation colour; the Leggs, grey, or grisled; near the rise of the Bill, in the fore-head is a semi-lunar figure, or spot, as it were a crown, of a scarlet colour.

The **Anaca** of the *Brasilians*, is of the bignes of a **Lark**; its Bill hooked and dusky; the Feathers on the top of the head, of a Liver-colour; on the sides of the Head, and about the Eyes, of a brown; the Throat is ash-colour; the Neck behind, and the sides, green; Back green, with a spot of light brown; the Belly is of a reddish brown; the Tail is of a dilute brown; the beginning, or Pinions of the Wings, hath a crimson spot, or border, the rest of the Wings green, the ends of a sea-water colour; the Leggs above, covered with green feathers, below bare, and of an ash-colour, with black claws.

The **Quijuba-Tui**, is all yellow, of the bignes of the **Tuiapara**, aforesaid; with a hooked grey Bill, and black Eyes; the ends of the Wings are of a dark green, the Tail long and yellow.

The **Ajurucuruca**, hath a tuft on the Head of blue and black, with a yellow spot in the middle of it; below the Eyes, is a yellow, and on the Throat, a blue spot; the Breast, Back, and Wings, green; the end of the Wings and Tail are more dilute; the tips of the Wing feathers are yellow, and red, mingled with blue; the Leggs of a bluish ash-colour, claws black; the Bill above cinereous, in the extremities black.

A. a Chevron S. between three Popinjaes V. collered beaked, and legged G. by the name of *Newton* of *Pownall*.

Per bend sinister A. and G. a Parrot V. collered G. by *Maiser Van Pere*.

G. two such respectant O. collered V. born by *Van Uttershausen*.

A. Fesse G. between 3 such V. Beaks and Leggs G by *Lumley* Lord *Lumley*.

LXXXVII. He beareth Argent, a **Parrot**, or **Popinjae, enraged** (or in his **Ire**) Gules. The **Parrot** above all other Birds, have in their delight, and when pleased; or on the contrary, when moved to anger; the most fantastick, or antick tricks and postures of Body, turning and winding so as no other Birds can. Of which this and the two following examples are some parts of such postures, which may properly be termed antick **Parrots**, or **Parrots** in Antick postures. This I term enraged, because here he is ready to pick, or bite, at any that shall annoy him. This is Born by *Parrire*.

The **Ajurucurau**, is a very elegant Bird, of the **Parrot**-kind, being a *Brasilian* Bird, having above the Bill, on the top of the head, a tuft or cop of a lively blue; the Throat, Sides, and upper part of the head, yellow; the whole body of a pleasant green; the Tail edged with black, red, and blue. The Bill dusky, Legs and Feet, ash-colour.

A. three such V. born by *Wildung*; and them G. by *Dungen*.

LXXXVIII. He beareth Or, a **Popinjae in his delight**, Azure. This kind of posture the Parrot will oft be in, when he is delighted in any thing he heareth turning and winding his head, as if he gave attention to the thing in action.

LXXXIX. He beareth Vert, a **Cockatoon Parrot** in a **volant antick posture**, Or. Or if you please take it thus, a **Parrot regardant, Wings disclosed**, holding up his left foot. This is born by the name of *Antick*.

G. three the like A. born by *Birtles*, or *Birchels*.

O. the like V. Beak and Legs A. born by *Bollinger*.

TO

The Ever Honored

ROBERT WERDEN, Esquire;

Collonel of Horse under King *Charles* the First, and Second, of Blessed Memory: And now *Major General* of Horse under King *James* the Second.

AND TO

Sir *JOHN WERDEN*, Knight and Barronett;

His Son and Heir, Chief Baron of the *Exchequer*, for the County Palatine of *CHESTER*.

Right Worshipful,

AS our City of Chester *may highly Glory, not onely in its own Loyalty, but in the Propagation of such noble Persons; being (as) the Place of your Nativity, so of your Watch and Care to preserve the same in her Ancient Rights and Priviledges; which as an Acknowledgment of your Worth, I do humbly present you with my small Endeavours in this Chapter; subscribing My Self,*

Your Faithful and Devoted Servant

Randle Holme.

CHAP. XIII.

1. IN the two former Chapters, I have treated off, and described the generally well known *European* Birds, with some other of the further part of the World; but in this I shall give a further light of some other kinds and shapes of Birds less known in these Countreys; which is, and may be good and honourable Bearings in Coats of Arms, to and for such as have them.

I. He beareth Argent, a **Urubu**, proper. Born by *Scopperg*. This is a rapacious Bird, as big as a **Kite**, it is a **Brasilian Vulture**; called by some Authors, **Benscheneter**, and **Aura**. The *Mexicans* call it a **Tzopilotl**. It hath a pretty long Bill, hooked at the end, and sharp, it is covered half way with a skin of a saffron colour; the rest of the Bill is white; it hath Eyes like a Ruby, with a black pupil; Eye-lids of a saffron colour; it hath a small head, almost of the shape of a **Turkey** covered with a rugged wrinkled skin, of a saffron colour; about the Eyes blue, and on the top of the head; all about

H: Cap: Consecr: P. M. Rabbi Werden: & D. Ioh: Werden: Mit: & Bar:

bout the Neck of a reddish brown: The Plumage, or Feathers of the whole Body, is black, with a little tawny colour here and there mingled. The Tail is long, yet the Wings closed are longer; the Feet white like a **Hens.**

O. the like proper, a Cheif indented B. born by *Bosseley.*

O. the head erazed proper; by *Bradley Van Gomyt.*

A. a Cheveron S. between three **Urubu's** heads couped B. born by *Jackson.*

In the Cheif of this Coat, having spare room, I have caused the Graver to make an **Eagles Wing and Leg conjoined,** in form of a Roman V. which is so Blazoned; else term it a **Leg and Wing conjoined,** in Fesse, Talons to the sinister; see *chap.*11. *numb.*7.

S. an Eagles Leg and Wing conjoined, in Fesse, and elevated, G. born by *Lauginger.* S. the like O. by *Lauginger.*

O. the same in pale S born by the Town of *Villach.*

G. the like in pale with a Wing conjoined and elevated S. by the name of *VVildenstein.*

a Falcons Leg jessed and belled O. with a Wing conjoined A. is the Crest of *Raphall Davis.*

II. He beareth Or, an **Urutaurana.** This is a kind of **crested Eagle** of *Brasil*; which I have else-where described, *chap.*12. *numb.* 54. This is born by the name of the *Harevulture*, but in the Dutch *Hasegier.*

III. He beareth Argent, a **Ruffed Vulture,** proper. This is also termed a **Beatic Vulture.** Having the feathers about its Neck long and narrow (like those that hang down about the Necks of **Dunghill-Cocks**; and **Stares**) which cover the Back, Wings, and Sides; the other feathers of the Body are small, and broad, like scales. The Back, Belly, and whole Body is of a chesnut colour; the Stomach and Rump, more reddish; its Tail short, in respect of its Wings; the Beak black, hooked at the end; the Head and Neck, covered with a soft white Down; the Eyes were fierce looked, having a yellow irides; in the lower part of the Neck, (as it were) a ruff of thick-set narrow feathers, much longer, and more curling than the rest.

The **Gypaetos,** or **Vulture Eagle,** called by some **Perknopteros,** and **Dypelargus.** The Beak is long, and streight to the middle, then hooked, white towards the Head, black to the tip; the lower Chap white; the Eyes white, with a black pupil; the whole head whitish, inclining to dusky; the upper part of the Neck round, bald or beset with small and a few white downy feathers, at the end of this Baldness, or below the middle of the Neck, grew small long feathers, like certain rough curled hairs, standing up above the rest of the plummage: The colour of the whole Body is a dark Chesnut, inclining to black, the Tail long, Feet and Leggs, white; Claws dusky.

The **Alpine Vulture Eagle,** the Bill was long, covered with a skin, or membrane past the middle, the hooked part, or tip end, dusky; the Feet covered all over with scales, dusky; Claws, of a dusky horn-colour; the colour of the whole body was dusky, inclining to a dark chesnut, having an acute angle of white Feathers, running down the middle of the Back; the Tail of a mean size.

The **Dypelargus,** or **Mountain-Vulture**; the Head and Neck, are destitute of Feathers, onely covered with a white Down; from the Bill to the Eyes, the skin is bare, and of a blue colour; on the lower part of the Neck, it hath a collar, or ruff of long white Feathers; all the rest of the body is of a pale ash-colour, or like the colour of a **Stork:** The Bill is covered at the Nostrils with a black membrane, the tip of the Bill white: It is feathered a little below the Knees; the Leggs and Feet, of a lead-colour, Claws black. It stands generally with its Wings stretcht out, or like the figure of this example, with the Wings out from the Body; and therefore it is ever drawn in this posture, with the Body in full sight, whereby the ruff about its Neck, and the Wings standing at a distance from the Body, is best discovered. Else if it were an Eagle in this form, it would be termed, an **Eagle in her Majesty,** or in **Full Aspect,** as *chap.*11. *numb.* 18.

IV. He beareth Argent, a **Bird of Paradice,** Gules. The Bird of Paradice, by the inhabitants of the *Moluccs* Islands, is called **Manu-codiata,** that is **God's Birds.** They are of an excellent shape, and beauty of Body; There are several sorts of them, of which I have formerly treated, *chap.*12. *numb.*2. in this place onely I shall give you the figure of another kind with its description and colour

The **great Bird of Paradice,** or **Hippomanucodiata,** it hath long Wings and a long Tail; the Bill is crooked in the upper mandible; the whole Bird is white, except the Neck, and Belly, which is chesnut colour. The upper part of the Head is ferrugineous, to which succeeds a yellow, and after it a green colour; they have two small long Feathers in the Tail, which exceeds the length of the rest of the Feathers in the Tail.

The **Indian Apos,** or **greater Bird of Paradice,** it is of the bignes of a **Thrush,** wonderful light, and long winged. About the Bill, which is black next the Head, and whitish towards the tip; there is little feathers, resembling filaments, or thrums of silk, of a yellow colour; under the Throat, black. From the Throat to the Breast, of a deep shining green; the Breast black, inclining to red; the Belly, Back and Tail Feathers, were of a ferrugineous, or dusky red colour; the VVings were of a shining Gold, then a dusky red, or black sanguine, and those as covered the rest, of a pale ash-colour; the Feet are like Pullets Feet, foul and unhandsom, which they clap close to their Body; so that the Toes can only appear.

V. He beareth Argent, an **Ibijau** (or a **Brasilian Goat-sucker**) proper. This is also termed, an **Notibo.** The greater *American* **Goat-sucker,** hath a very sharp pointed Bill, bending; the Mouth wide, with large patent Nostrils; Leggs very short and small, all white; the Head and Body, great and round; the Wings reach almost to the end of the Tail; the upper parts are black, white being intermingled; the lower parts white, mixt with black, as in a **Sparrow-Hawk.** The **lesser Ibijau,** see described *chap.*12. *numb.*29.

VI. He

VI. He beareth Or, a **Guira-querea.** It is another kind of **Brasilian Goat-sucker,** of the bigness of a **Lark:** It hath long Wings, and a longer Tail; the Bill is triangular, a little crooked on each side of the upper mandible, there is thick Bristles; the Eyes black; the whole Bird is of a dusky ash-colour, with dark, yellow, and whitish spots, intermingled after the manner of a **Sparrow-Hawk:** round the Neck, and behind the Head, it hath a ring of a deep or dark gold colour; the Tail hath the two out-side Feathers longer by much than the rest, whose shafts are thinly set with the Web, the filaments or threads, standing scattering, and open, as in the **Peacocks** Tail. The like O. in a Field G. is born by *Kudae.*

The **Goat-sucker,** or **Fern-Owl,** or **Church-Owl,** in Latine, **Caprimulgus;** its Bill is very small, and Mouth wide, in proportion to its Body; on the sides of the upper chap of the Bill, under its Throat and Sides, and under the Eyes, there is stiff long hairs like Bristles; the Bill a little hooked, the hinder part of the Head, Neck, and Back, ash-colour; the middle of each Feather being black; the under side of the Body is black, and pale red lines transverse, but not continued; the Wings parti-coloured of black and red, the covert Feathers of of the Wings are poudered with cinereous; the Tail have the out-side Feathers shortest, the middle ash-colour, with very small transverse lines of black, the other have the cross-bars, broader; the ash-colour part being powdred with black, and a tincture of red spots; the Legs small for the Body, feathered on the foreside, half-way; the Feet and Claws, black.

The **Cururui,** is a *Brasilian* Bird, about the bigness of a **Pie;** hath a short Bill of a Brim-stone colour, wide Mouth, under the lower Bill, and on both sides, are black Bristles, in the Eye-lids above, and beneath, black stiff hairs; a blue Eye, with a yellow circle; under the Eye, a spot of white skin, as in Hens; the Throat, black; Breast and Belly scarlet colour; the whole Back, and upper-side of the Tail, of a shining green, with a gloss of blue, and Gold; the Wings are green in the beginning or pinions, the coverts hoary, and the long Feathers, a dark dusky blackish colour, spotted with small grey specks, as **Mallards** Feathers use to be; the Tail broad at the end, which end hath a black border; the Legs are feathered, with black to the Feet; the Toes are dusky ash-colour, two standing forwards, two backwards, Claws black.

VII. He beareth Argent, a **Mitu's head couped,** proper. Born by *Mittus.* The **Mitu,** or **Mutu,** is a *Brasilian* Bird, of the **Pheasant** kind; it is as big as a **Cock,** and will spread its Tail circularly, like a **Peacock,** or **Turkey-Cock:** the Bill is of a Carnation colour, at the tip white; great black Eyes; behind the Ears, a white naked spot like a **Hen;** the top of the Head hath black feathers, complicated into a very low, and flat cop, but being angry, or on other occasions can erect them, into a conspicuous Crest: It is all over covered with black feathers; except the Belly, and under the Tail, which is brown; the Thighs black, the Legs and Feet, like to **Hens,** of a dusky black.

A. 3 such couped is born by *Brownshaugh.*

VIII. He beareth Azure, a **crested Parrot,** Argent. Born by *Swindally.* This sort of **Parrot,** hath and carries his Tail contrary to others, not stretched out in length, but erect; after the fashion of a **Dunghill-Cock;** the Bill is ash-colour, inclining to black; with wide Nostrils, rising up with a round ridge, or bunch, between them; Eyes yellow, with a black pupil; the plummage is generally white; having a Crest of long sharp pointed feathers on its Head, bending somewhat forwards, the Feet yellowish, Claws small and black.

There is another sort of these **Parrots,** called the **Red** and **Green crested Parrot;** whose Wings, Tail, and Crest, are red; the rest of the Body green; red Eyes, and a black pupil.

The **Brasilian Ani,** it is a kind of **Parrot,** of the bigness of a **Thrastle;** wholly black in Wings, Bill, Eyes, and Feet; it hath a long erect Tail, and Feet like a **Parrot.**

The **small Parrakeeto,** hath a grey hooked Bill, Eyes black, with white irides; it can set up specious feathers on the crown of its head, like a Crest, Leggs and Feet ash-colour; it hath a very long Tail; the Head, Neck, and Tail red; Wings green, enterwoven with red Feathers; the Breast and Belly, a pale Rose-colour; the Tail end, hath a border, or edge of blue.

B. three such A. born by *Woodley.*

G. 3 such Heads couped A. born by *Walbank.*

IX. He beareth Argent, a **Rhinocerotis head couped,** Sable, **Beak,** Gules. Some term it the head of a **Rhinocerot** Bird; the **Brasilian Topau,** or the **horned Indian Raven.** It hath a long Bill bending downwards, with a kind of horn fixt on the forehead, bending upward; of a pale or whitish colour, towards the head red; the horn on the Bill, is red in the upper and lower part, and yellow in the middle; of this sort of Bill, there is three varieties, which the two next examples, and this doth manifest. This Blazoned as aforesaid, is born by *Swindall.*

O. three such couped S. born by *Bossen.*

A. two such couped S. Beaks O. and a Rose. Is born by *Schetzcher.*

X. He beareth Argent, the head of a **Rhinocerot** Bird, (or **Indian horned Raven couped,**) proper.

IX. He beareth Argent, the Head of a **Brasilian Topau, couped,** (or **Indian horned Raven**) proper. These are the several shapes, that have been seen of the **Rhinoceros bird;** and if the rest of the body be answerable to the head, it must needs be bigger than an **Eagle.**

XII. He beareth Argent, the head of an **Indian Raven couped,** proper. This is a kind of strange **Raven** in the *Molucca* Islands, it hath a great thick Bill at the head, a little pointed at the tip, wide Nostrils; great and black Eyes, bare of Feathers all about, which skin is red and blue, like **Turkeys;** the *H*ead and Neck long, covered all over, with black feathers; see *numb.* 58.

A. 3 such couped, is born by *Adzwooditz.*

A. one such and a Canton S. is born by *Chelford.*

XIII. He

XIII. He beareth Argent, a **Jay** proper. Born by *Jay*, or *Gey*. It hath a strong Bill, the Irides, or Circle of the Eyes, white; near the lower chap of the Bill, are two black spots, the Chin whitish; Breast and Belly, cinereous, and red; the Rump white: the Head hath taller Feathers, then the rest of the Body, standing more erect, and staring, then ordinary being variegated with black and white Feathers; the Back red, with a certain mixture of blew. The Wings have much variety of colours in them, having the first of the Sail, or Quill feathers black; the six next, have their exteriour Vanes, of an ash colour; the three next ash colour, but mingled with blew, and marked at the bottom with black, and white lines; the six succeding, have the out Vanes, the lower half white, the upper black, but so as each extremity, or end of the white, is terminated with blew as an edge, or border; the remaining long Feathers, have transverse blew, black, and white spots: the Covert feather of the 15 exteriour Sails, are very beautifully variegated, or chequered; with black, white, and lovely shining blew lines; the rest of the Covert feathers, being black: the Tail is wholy black; the Feet are of a ferrugineous dusky colour.

The **Roller**, is of the **Pye**, and **Jay** kind; and alike shaped in Body, but of different colours, for its Bill is black, the Eyes of a pale Hazle colour; near the Eyes, towards the hinder part of the Head, are two bunches, or warts, bare of Feathers, the circumference of the Eyes, is bare or void of Feathers. The Rump, and lesser row of Covert feathers of the Wings, are of a lovely blew, or ultramarine colour. The middle of the Back red; the Head of a sordid green, mingled with blew; the Throat also, with white lines in the middle of each Feather; the Breast, and Belly, of a pale blew. The Sail feathers of the Wings, have all of them, the lower half blew, and the upper half black: the coverts are of a pale blew. The Tail hath the two outside Feathers, extream longer then the rest, the two middle are of a dark ash colour, the next to them are tipt with a bluish white, which colour increases gradually in the rest, till in the out-most, it takes up half the Feather; below the white, the exteriour webs are blew, and the tips of the two out-most are black; the out-most Feather of the bastard Wing is black, the rest blew: the Feet, are of a dirty yellow colour, Claws black.

The **Blew Crow**, of some called a **Wild Wood-Crow**; others a **German Pappagay**, or **Parrot**; it is sent into forraign Countreys for no other end, but the commendation of its colour: there is that call it the **Strasburgh Roller**. The Bill is black, Legs dusky; it is here and there all over the Body, as Head, Wings, Tail, and Rump, and all the under side, of a shining blew colour; in some places more sincere, and in some mixt with green; the Back and upper side of the Neck dusky. The greater Feathers of the Wing, black.

A 5 Jays proper. Born by *Fallowbrome*.

O a Fesse, G between 3 such proper. Born by *Etchellers*.

A Jay is the Crest of *Goddelegh*.

XIV. He beareth Argent, an **Aracari**, or **Brasilian Wood-pecker**, proper. The Bill is long, the upper Chap greater, and longer then the lower; both from the tip, half way are Serrate, or Toothed. The upper Chap white, having a black line, running a long the ridge, or middle, from Head to point, the lower Chap, all black: great black Eyes, with yellow ridges; the Legs and Feet, of a dark green, or black, having two Back-toes, and two Fore-toes; Claws dusky, or black: the Head, and Neck all black, which terminates in a circle; the Breast, and Belly yellow, mingled with a pavonine, or bluish green. Cross the Breast is a broad line, of a sanguine colour; the whole Back, Wings, Tail, and Thighs, of a dark green, or black, with a gloss of green. The end of the Back, and beginning of the Tail, is a sanguine, or blood red, round spot. This is the Badge of the Town of *Hurlfield*.

The **Persian Wood-pecker**, hath a thick Head, and Neck: and a longer Bill, the Feathers from Crown, to end of the Tail, are somewhat ferrugineous: but the Bill is altogether ferrugineous. Feet of a pale blew, and Claws black; the rest of the Body yellow; except the tips of the Quill feathers, which are ferrugineous: and that a spot of the same colour, encompasses the Eyes.

XV. He beareth Gules, the Head of an **Ipecu**, or **Brasilian Wood-pecker**, proper. I have described this Bird else where, only give you the true shape here, referring you to *chap.* 12. *numb.* 46.

The **Jaguacati-guacu**; is a **Brasilian Bird** of this shape, with a tuft behind its Head, which I have described before in *chap.* 12. *numb.* 46.

XVI. He beareth Argent, a **Guira-acangatara**, proper. Or the **Brasilian Cryer**; from the great noise it makes in the Woods; it is as big as a **Pye**, the Bill is a little hooked, and of a dark yellow; the Eyes cristalline, with a dusky circle; Tail long, and broad at the end; the Head hath long Feathers erected like a crest, which with the Head, have dusky Feathers with yellow sides, or edges: the Neck, and Wings have the contrary. The ends of the Wings dusky: the Belly and Back, are pale yellow; the Tail dusky, the end of it white; the Legs and Feet, Sea green, the Toes two forward, and two backward. This is born by the name of *Don Guyrast* a *Spaniard*.

O the like proper. By the name of *Huyde*.

A 3 such B. Born by the name of *Charterer*.

XVII. He beareth Argent, a **Brasilian Guira-guai-numbi**, proper. It is as big as a **Thrush**, Bill black, and Teeth on both sides, like a Saw; the Head hath (as it were) a Crown of Saphire coloured Feathers; Eyes yellow, with black Pupils: under the Eyes is black, mingled with Saphire. Throat, Breast, Belly, of a dark yellow; the Neck behind, Back, Wings, and Tail, of a grass green, mixt with Sea green, as in **Peacocks**; Thighs green. The Tail is very long, and straight, consisting of two or three shafts, which have thin scattering Webs, or Threds; the Feet black.

XVIII. He beareth Or, the Head of a **Vitu-poranga**, proper. This is an *Indian* Bird, of the **Vitu** and **Pheasant** kind; and like them in shape, and proportion of Body, differing only in the Bill, and Crest of curled

led Feathers on the Head. This is born by *Porang* a *Portugal*.

The **Indian Cock**, by the *Brasilians* called, **Mitu-peranga**; and of some, **Tepetototi.** Hath the Bill a little hooked at the end, the tip of both Chaps is black; all the rest is covered with a Saffron coloured skin; the like whereto it hath also about its Eyes, it hath black Eyes: the Head and Neck is black, like Velvet. On the top of the Head, it hath curled Feathers, twisted, and turned up spirally, as far as the beginning of the Neck; which it can erect in manner of a curled, or frisled Crest. All the rest of the Bird is black, here and there having a gloss of green; about the Vent white; Legs and Feet, cinereous; the Tail long and black, but the extremities, or ends of its Feathers, white. Where other Birds had their Nostrils, there this Bird, had a certain yellow protuberance found, and of the bignes of a Cherry.

The **Pauri**, or **Indian Hen**: of the **Mitu** kind; its Bill is red and crooked, having a certain tumour, fastned to the root of its Bill, where it was more slender, of the shape of a Pear; and as hard as a stone, and of a blew colour; its Plumage is all black, but shining almost like a **Peacock.** The Legs of a pale red; the Tail was white, stripted with black lines, and was long, and not erect, but stretched out in length. This Bird hath a great Head, which in some is plain or smooth, in others rough or crested; and in others, in stead of a crest of Feathers, arises a lump, or protuberance, like a stone of a globular Body, yet not very hard, of the colour of Soder.

A 3 such Mitu-porangas, Heads couped, proper. Is born by *Its*.

O 3 such S a chief G born by *Kettleshome*.

A one Head crazed, G born by *Lymhang*.

XIX. He beareth Sable, a **Dodo**: or **Dronte**, proper. By the name of *Dronte*. This Exotic bird, doth equal a **Swan** in bigness, and is of some Authors termed, **Gallus Peregrinus**; and **Cygnus Cucullatus**; a **Hooded Swan**: yet it is of a far differrent shape For the Head is great, covered (as it were) with a certain Membrane, resembling a Hood. The Bill is thick, and long, yellow next the Head, the point black; the upper Chap is hooked at the end, the lower Chap, had a blew spot, between the yellow and black: it is covered with thin short Feathers, and wants Wings; in stead thereof it hath four or five long black Feathers: that the hinder part of the Body is round, flat, and fleshy, wherein for the Tail, were four or five small curled Feathers, twirled up together, of an ash colour. The Legs, thick and short, with long sharp pointed Toes, yellowish; Claws black. Thighs covered with black Feathers, the rest of the Body grey. Yet *Bonius*, *lib.* 5. *chap.* 17. in his History of *India*, describes it to have a great ill favoured Head, covered with a Membrane like a Hood; the Bill bluish white, the tips of the upper Mandable black, the lower yellow, the Body is covered with soft grey Feathers; the soft Feathered Wings, of a yellowish ash colour; Legs yellowish, and both them, and the Toes, ter with broad scales.

XX. He beareth Argent, an **Indian Quail**, proper. Born by *Equitile*. This is the true shape and figure of it, whose description, I have set down else where, *chap.* 11. *numb.* 78.

XXI. He beareth Argent, an **Attagen, regardant**, proper. Born by *Tagen*. This Bird is of the *Italians*, called a **Francolino**; because the common People are forbiden to take them, they are between a **Pheasant**, and a **Moor-cock**, or **Red Game.** It hath a short black Bill crooked at the end, the colour is various, almost all the Body, over; the Head hath a yellow crest, variegated with black, and white spots: the Eyes yellow, the Eye-brows are naked Scarlet skin; like the **Heath-cock**; a beard hangs under the Throat, the Neck long, and slender, of an ash colour, spotted with black & white; the Breast spotted with the same, and some ferrugineous ones, mingled: the Belly, Tail, Hips, and Legs, which are covered with Feathers, are of a Lead colour, and all besprinkled with black spots.

The **Francolino**, is otherwise described by some Authors; who say, it is in figure, and proportion of Body, resembling the **Partridge**, but in bigness exceeds it: the Breast and Belly, spotted with black, and white; the ends of the Wings, and Tail black; the Head, Neck, and Rump, fulvous; inclining to red, with white, and black spots; the Head hath no Crest, nor Legs hairy.

The **Hazzell, Hen** in shape it resembles this **Attagen**; save it hath neither tuft, nor beard: the Bill is blackish and crooked. about the Eyes a naked red skin; the Legs before, are feathered half way down; the Fore-toes are joyned together by a Membrane, from the divarication, to the first joynt, and have serrat borders, or welts standing out on each side the Toes, as in the **Heath-cock**, or **Grous.** The Chin black, Throat red, Breast white, spotted with black spots, in the middle of each Feather; Belly white, Head of a reddish ash colour, from the Eyes to the hind part of the Head is a white line; the Back and Rump, of a more cinereous, the scapular Feathers, which cover the ridges of the Wings are all white. The Quill feathers are party coloured, of dusky, and white; the greater row of Covert feathers are variegated with red, black, and white. The Tail have the two middle Feathers party coloured of white and dusky: all the rest of the Feathers are tipt with a dusky white; next it a bar or bed of black, a good breadth; the rest of the Feather party coloured, of white and black.

A 3 Attagens heads couped, proper. Born by *Don Swansco*.

G the same O born by *Tidnock*.

XXII. He beareth Argent, the **Head** of a *Virginian* **Crested Nightingale, couped**, Azure. Born by *Dungell*. Some only term it a **Virginian Nightingale**, omitting its Crest: but all are not so Crested, as this figure is the example of its true shape; whose description I have given in *chap.* 11. *numb.* 64. Such a Head I take to be the Crest of *Fence*.

XXIII. He beareth Argent, an **Indian Stare**, proper. It resembles our Country **Stare**, or **Starling**, in its dark colours; as Seagreen, and dark blew Feathers, spotted with cinereous, or ash colour spots: but beside this, it hath a yellow Crest; and its Head is set with black soft Feathers, that feeling of it, you would

would think you touched Velvet: as the figure doth lively represent.

XXIV. He beareth Argent, a **Matuitui**, proper. Something it is bigger then a **Stare**, hath a Vermilion colour, straight, long Bill; with some hairs proceeding from the root of the lower Chap; the Head, upper side of the Neck, Back, Wings, and Tail, are browns spotted with a pale yellow; partly speckled, like a **Sparrow Hawk**. Under the Throat it is yellow, a short Neck, a full round Breast, and Belly, are speckled with brown. Short Legs, and Feet, of a dark ash colour.

XXV. He beareth Gules, an **Atinga-guacu-mucu**, Argent. This is a remarkable Bird, and may be born in Arms, in any colour; it is as big as a **Throstle**. The Bill of a greenish yellow, sanguine Eyes, with a black Pupil; Legs ash colour; the upper part of the Body is brown, or fulgineous; but in the Tail it is darker, and in the end, it is white, and between the white, and brown part, shaded with black; the lower parts ash colour; on the Head, at the root of the Bill, it hath Feathers, which it can set up like two horns. It hath a very long and slender Tail; Legs are ash colour.

XXVI. He beareth Argent, the **Head** of a **Tiseguacu-paroara couped**, proper. It is as big as a **Lark**, it hath a short thick Neb, hooked at the end, dusky above, white below; the Head and lower side of the Neck, are yellow, spotted with sanguine (the Male have the Plumage of these parts wholly sanguine) the upper side of the Neck, and Back, ash colour, shaded with umber; Wing feathers, dusky with white borders; so is the Tail. The Covert feathers are cinereous: the Legs and Feet are dusky: Eyes black.

XXVII. He beareth Argent, a **Wyneck**, proper. Born by that name of *Wrynock*. It is in *Latin* called **Iynx**, or **Torquilla**; it is of the bigness of a **Lark**, or less; the Bill is long and slender, of a Lead colour; Eyes, of yellow hazle colour; Feet of a flesh colour; the upper part of the Body, curiously variegated with white, black, reddish, dusky, and grey, or ash colour; from the Crown of the Head, all a long the middle of the Back, runs a list of black: the Quill feathers are dusky, marked in the exteriour Webs, with red spots. The Throat, and Breast, yellow; Belly white; the Feet little, of an ash colour. It hath a strange, and rediculuous way of turning, and winding of his Head; which causeth it alway to be drawn in this posture.

Though I have here termed this a **Wyneck**, as from its posture, and so it may pass: yet upon further examination, I find this Bird, to be by the *Brasilians*, called a **Gauinumbi**, and **Durissia**, and **Tominejo**. Which I have further described, under the name of **Humming Bird**, *numb.* 58. *sect.* 2.

XXVIII. He beareth Azure, an **American Diver**, Argent. Born by *Diver*. This in our *English* tongue is so called, or else a **Dinaper**; it is a kind of **Duck** with a long Bill; and falling Wings, with a downy Tail. Of these, there are several kinds; as,

The **Curle headed Diver**; or the **Venice Diver**. Hath the Bill brown, red on the edges, hooked at the end; the lower Mandable wholly red, both toothed on the edges, like a Saw: Eyes sanguine; all the Head, and Neck, of a dark fulvous colour, but the Crown blackish. The Back is dusky, or dark cinereous; Throat white, under it grisled, of white, black and red; the Belly white. The Wings are very short and little, for the bigness of the Bird, and hanging down: the Quill feathers are black, those next the Body tipt with white; the Covert feathers, are half white, half black; in the base of the Wing, is a great white spot. The Tail short, and droping down; Legs short, Feet red, or of a deep Saffron colour, having no Back-toe, but a little bunch out from the Leg. This is of some Authors termed, a **Serula**; and a **Mergus Circatus**; from its long Crest or Tuft on its Head hanging down backwards, see *numb.* 31.

The **Rhine-Diver**: it is the most **Duck** like of any of those Water-birds, termed by the name of **Mergus**, or **Mergi**: its Body is all over party coloured, of black and white: its Bill and the space about the Eyes, black; the Neck and Belly white, varied with black specks, and cinereous spots; Legs and Toes dusky, the Membranes on the in side black, Tail black; Wings and Back, distinguished by white and black spaces, alternately. It hath no Tuft on its Head.

He beareth A such an *American Diver* G born by *Longendale*.

B 3 such O Legs and Beak, G born by *Maley* or *Motley*.

A 3 such proper, a chief G born by *Mertingale*.

V the whole Fowl proper. Born by *Marepoole*.

XXIX. He beareth Argent, a **Brasilian Jabiru**, Sable. Born by *Jabire*. This is by the *Dutch* termed, a a **Negro**; in bigness it exceeds the **Swan**; its Head great, and Neck thick and long, too great for the proportion of its Body, which is long but slender; its Thighs and Legs, long and slender. The Bill long and slender, towards the point bending down, & blackish: the Thighs half way bare; Legs and Feet, black. The whole Bird is all over white. The Tail is short ending with the end of the Wings.

XXX. He beareth Gules, the **Head** of a **Jabiru-guacu couped**, Argent, this in all respects resembles the **Jabiru**: before said save in this, the Bill at the end turns somthing upwards. The Bill grey, on the top of the Head, doth grow a bony Crown, or Skul of a mixt colour, white and cinereous; Eyes black, and behind them large Eare holes: the Neck long, the upper half, together with the Head, is bare of Feathers, but covered with a scally ash coloured skin. It hath a short black Tail, no longer then the end of the Wings; the long Thighs, are half covered with white Feathers, as is the whole Body; the rest, with the Legs, are ash colour. The Quill feathers only black, with a gloss of Ruby colour.

A 3 such Heads couped, B Bills O born by *Overton*, or *Overton*.

B 3 such Heads erazed, O Bills A born by *Van Prague*.

XXXI

XXXI. He beareth Argent, a **Brasilian Anhima,** Gules. This is a Water-fowl of a rapatious kind, bigger then a **Swan,** its Bill is long and sharp, a little bending, and black: it hath golden Eyes, with a black Pupil, and a black circle without; it hath a horn on its Head, bending forwards, about the horn stands up very fine black and white Feathers; it hath large Wings, in the fore-part of the pinion of each, are two straight triangular horns (or spurs they may more properly be called) springing from the very bones of the Wing, of a dusky colour; Legs and Feet, of a good length, covered with a brown scally skin. The Head white, and black varied; half the Neck and Throat, black; under half, and Breast variegated with cinereous, and black Feathers; Belly all white; Back and Sides, black: white Feathers here and there intermingled, the Wings and Tail, are black.

The **Brasilian Water-Hen,** call'd **Agua-pecaca;** is in shape like the **Jacana** described, *chap.* 12. *numb.* 49. But different in colour; the Back, and Belly, are mixt of green, and black; the Wings browner: it wants the Cap, or Miter on the Head, but hath in each Wing a straight horn. or spur; wherewith it defends its self.

The **Gambo-Goose,** mentioned *chap.* 12. *numb.* 50. Hath the like spur, proceeding from the first joynt of the Wings. The like hereunto *Margrave* hath observed, in four or five sorts of *Brasilian* Birds; but no *European* Fowl, that I know off, hath them. These kinds may be called spur winged Geese. And such another like Fowl A. in a Field B. I find born by *Calcaby* an *Italian* Family.

B 3 such O born by *Gengenbech.*

G 3 such proper, a Fesse between A. Born by *Ranzow Van Snelston.*

XXXII. He beareth Sable, the **Head** of a **Venice,** (or **Curle headed Diver**) Argent. This Bird I have spoken off before, *numb.* 28. Therefore say no more but give you the form of its Head, with its long hooked Bill; toothed on both edges, with its Crest, or Tuft. 3 such blazoned as aforesaid is born by *Romylegh.*

XXXIII. He beareth Azure, a **Belearic Crane,** proper. It is of some Authors termed, the **Sea Peacock.** The shape of its Body is like a **Stork,** but a shorter Bill, of a dark colour; It hath on its Head, a thick round Crest, made of bristles: spread every way, of the colour of bristles, yellowish white; on both Cheeks, it hath a white spot, terminated about a red line: the whole Bird, is of a **Coote** colour, *viz.* black, only the small Quill feathers are white; under the Bill, hangs down a red excrescence, or lob of flesh, on each side, like Gills or Wattles of a **Cock:** having long hairy Feathers, all a long the fore-part of its Neck, to its Breast. The Thighs are half bare of Feathers; the Legs long, of a dusky colour; the **China Ostrich,** it is named by *Visscher,* in his Table of Birds. This is born by the name of *Dibitz.*

The **Brasilian Cariama;** Is a Water fowl of the bigness of a greater **Heron;** on its Head above the rise of its Bill it carries a Crest, or Tuft of Feathers standing upright, of a black, mingled with ash colour; the Bill short, a little hooked in the upper part, and brown: golden Eyes, with a black Pupil; long black Eye-brows, the Wings end a little behind the rise of the tail; it hath long Legs, the Thighs half covered with Feathers, and of a dark yellow colour: it hath a short Back-toe, set higher then ordinary; and a round Heel like an **Ostritch:** the whole Body is covered with grey or ash colour Feathers, waved with brown, (as in **Falcons**) and a dark yellow, intermingled: the end of the Wings, and Tail are brown, waved with a dark yellow, or grey; it carries its Tail low, and Neck high. See its figure, *numb.* 37.

A 3 such proper. Born by *Staveleg.* Also by *Van Girdorf.*

A a *China* Ostritch, proper. Born by *Ingerslegh.*

B 3 Heads of the same couped, O. Born by *Harrop.*

G an Head erazed A a chief O. Born by *Berristall.*

XXXIV. He beareth Argent, a **Cirris** (or **Red Leged**) **Heron,** proper. It is in *Latin* termed *Ardea Hæmatopus,* which may be *Englished* the **Red Shank Heron.** This is the form and shape of its Body, which is described before, *chap* 12. *numb.* 14. This is the Crest of *Van Horting.*

XXXV. He beareth Argent, a **Squajotto, Sans Legs,** proper. It is in all respects like a **Heron,** without a Tail, instead thereof it hath a kind of downy Feathers hanging down, between the points of the Wings; it hath a yellow Bill, black at point; green Feet: it hath a Tuft of Feathers on the Head, some white, some black; there groweth on its Neck, along to the Back and Breast, a sort of long slender Feathers, like to those about the Neck of a **Cock;** elegant Feathers of red, and black, mixt.

The **Squacco,** is in shape like the **Heron,** it hath a Tuft of Feathers, or else standing out roughly, as in **Herons:** its Bill is yellow ferrugineous; the Back the same; Eyes Gold colour, encompassed with a black circle, the whole Head, and Neck party coloured of yellow, white, and black; Belly white, the Wings and Tail, the same; Thighs yellow, Legs and Toes greenish. Both these names perchance are given them, from their cry: **Squacco,** and **Squaiotta.**

The **Bow Billed Heron,** is a kind of **Heron** of this sort but smaller, the Bill is more arcuate, or bending like a bow, more then they; the whole Body is of an ash colour, under the Belly paler, the Back deeper, on the nether side the Neck, and Breast is white, sprinkled with black spots tending downwards: the Thighs in this Bird, is contrary to what they in others of of this kind, for they are all covered with Feahers.

XXXVI. He beareth Argent, a **Cocoi Head,** proper. It is a kind of **Brasilian Heron,** called by them a **Cocoi.** It is almost as big as a **Storke,** hath a long straight, sharp Bill, of a yellowish green; cristal Eyes, with a Golden circle; the skin about the Eyes bare, and ash coloured; the Neck longer then the Body, both being slender and thin; of an equal length are the Wings, and Tail, the Thighs half way Feathered, the Legs and Feet dusky: Head and Neck, brown variegated with

small deeper specks; a long the lower side of the Neck, to the Breast, is a white line, mixt with black, and brown ones; Back, and Wings, black; but powdered with small yellow specks, or points; the Belly the like. On the Head it hath three or four loose stragling Feathers standing up as a Crown, and two the like slender Feathers, hanging down backwards, of a brown colour.

A 3 such Heads, proper. Born by *Turnock*.
Such a Head, A. is the Crest of *Wisterfield*.

XXXVII. He beareth Sable, a **Brasilian Cariama**, Or. This is described before, *numb.* 32. to which place I do refer you, only here give you the figure of the Bird.

XXXVIII. He beareth Argent, an **Heron Bittour, Sans Feet**, proper. I have before in *chap.* 12. *numb.* 52. spoken of the **Bitterne**. This here demonstrated by examples, is an other sort of **Bitterne**, which may properly be termed, the **Speckled-Heron-Bitterne**, because it seems to be a Bastard kind, between both **Heron**, and **Bittour**: whence it borroweth the name. In bigness, shape, and serrate Claw, it agrees with the common **Heron**. The Crown of the Head is dark, adorned with a long hairy Crest: its Back ash colour; from the Head and on the Neck, grows long slender hairy Feathers, which cover almost all the Back, and Breast, each Feather being of a reddish yellow, crossed with waved bars: the Thighs are white, dasht with red; in other particulars it agrees with the common **Heron**, as *chap.* 12. *numb.* 14. This without Feet is the Crest of *Hernbitter*.

A such a spotted Heron Bittour, proper. Is born by *Van Schanwick*.

XXXIX. He beareth Argent, the Head of the Bird, **Ruffe: Couped**, proper. This Bird is called in *Latin*, **Avis pugnax mas**, whether from its great fighting, or being contentious, and never at peace with other Birds: I cannot learn, but that it is the Male to another Bird of that *Latin* name, is certain; which some Authors call a **Reeve**. The Head was of a dusky ash colour, spotted with brown: the circle, or collar of long Feathers, resembling a **Ruffe**, encompassing the Neck, under the Head, is in some white, in some yellow, in some ash colour, in some of a deep blew, or black with a gloss of blew, shining like Silk; for there is much variety in the colours of the Feathers of the Cock. The outmost ten Quill feathers are black, the rest tipt with white; the Covert feathers black, tipt with white; the Tail dusky, with white tips. The Bill is black, but red about the Nostrils: Eyes yellowish, the Legs and Feet, a reddish yellow; a small Back-toe, Claws black. The **Hens** never have any Ruffs.

A 3 Ruffe Reeves heads couped S. Born by *Hollick*, or *Holly*.

O a Ruffs head couped, in chief 3 Roses proper. Born by *Ruffle*, or *Ruffler*.

XL. He beareth Argent, a **Crested Diver**, or **Loons head couped**, proper. It is also termed a **Crested**, or **Horned Douker**; as having long Feathers standing up, upon the Crown of the Head, black; and round about the upper part of the Neck red: the Bill is brownish, the Chin, and space about the Eyes, white; bounded with red; the Neck partly black, and partly reddish; Breast, and Belly blackish, with white and red spots. The Back reddish mingled with black spots: the Wings sooty, the tips and ridges, only white, it hath no Tail; the Legs and, three Fore-toes, are rounder and thicker, at the Claws, then at the divarication, or parting of the Foot, from the Leg; a small Back-toe and stands higher then ordinary. Such a Head proper is the Crest of *Loons*.

A 3 such Heads couped, B born by *Tazall*.
G one head crazed, O. born by *Tingwistall*.

XLI. He beareth Argent, a **Tamatia**, proper. It is no bigger then a **Lark**, hath a long Bill, crooked towards the end, red: Hairs or Bristles, about the Nostrils; it is yellow under the Throat, and about the Neck; the Belly white, with dusky spots: its Head and Bill is bigger then the proportion of its Body.

XLII. He beareth Argent, a **Loon**, or **Arsfoot**, proper. Born by *Lownes*. It is a whole footed Bird, without a Tail; with a straight sharp pointed Bill, its Legs are fixt near the Rump, which makes it stand very upright. Its Head, and Neck brown; Back blacker, Sides and Belly, dusky; Breast white: the Quill feathers black; those next the Body tipt with white; the lesser row of the Wing feathers, are white. The Bill black, yellow at the angles of the Mouth; Eyes ash colour, the Toes round and broad, bordered on each side, with appendant membranes, but not Webbed together, the Claws like Nails of a Man; the Legs broad, flat, serrate behind, with a double row of asperities, or roughness of scales: these kind of Fowl have no Back-toe.

The **Dipper**, or **Dipper**, or **Dobchick**: this is the small **Douker**, or **Loon**, or **Arsfoot**; for shape it is like a **Teal**, but lesser. Higher Bill is black, except the tip, and edges, and under Bill is yellow; Eyes Hazle colour; the Back dusky or dark brown; Belly white, Head and Neck, darker; Chin white, Throat and Sides of the Neck, reddish; so are the Thighs: the Quill feathers of a Mouse colour, those next the Body tipt with white; the Covert Feathers, black and white. It hath no Tail but a little bush, or tuft of Feathers, and the Rump-glandules; as in other Birds, that have their Tails pulled away. The Legs and Feet of a sordid green: the Feet are divided into three broad, and round Toes, finned on each side, and joyned together only to the first joynts, from the divarication.

The **Speckled**, or **Spotted Diver**, or **Loon**: which is called also the **Greatest Loon**, with a Tail and whole Feet; it is of the bigness of a **Tame Duck**; it hath a long Body, round Tail, like a **Goose**; and a small Head: all the upper part of the Body is a deep grey, or dusky, specked or pointed with white spots. The Breast, Belly, white: the Bill streight and black, the under Mandable white. It hath very long Toes, wanting the hinder Toe, or it is very short, being brownish black.

The **Fluder**, is a kind of **Diver**, or **Doucker**, which hath a long hairy Bill, the Feet broad, the Toes web'd together; the upper side of the Body is cinereous and black, the under side white.

The

The **Lumme**, or **Northern Doucker.** Hath a black sharp Bill: his Head, and Neck behind, grey or cinereous, ending in a sharp point, as if it had a Monks-hood, on its Back; the Back, and Wings, black, speckled with square white spots; under the Neck, near the Throat, is a square oblong black spot, compassed on all sides with white, as with a Fringe; the whole Belly, and lower parts of the Wings white, Tail black, being round like a Ducks. The Legs grow out at the Rump, which are slender, flat, and broad; Feet black, joyned together with black Membranes. The Claws crooked.

A 3 Loons proper. By the name of *Waylegh.*

A a Fesse between 3 Lummes S. Born by *Mickelhurst.*

A 3 Loons heads couped, proper. Born by *Longdan.*

A a Loon proper, a chief ingrailed B. Born by *Loonbey.*

A the like proper, Jessant on a Fesse G. Born by *Haveley.*

XLIII. He beareth Argent a **Mergus**, or **Diver**, proper. It is termed, **Mergus Cirratus**, the **Curled Diver**, or **Curle headed Diver**, having (as it were) Feathers turning in way of a circle, on the Back of his Head. It hath a long streight Bill, hooked at the tip, over the lower Mandable. Body and Tail, like a **Duck**; scaled Legs, and Feet web'd together by a Membrane; a little, or no hind toe. There is several kinds of this Fowl.

The **Goosander**, in *Latin* **Merganser**; of some termed, a **Harle**, it is long bodied, its Back broad, and flat: the Head, and upper part of the Neck, a deep shining green, almost black; lower half of the Neck, a glossie white; the Back, and Shoulders, black; Rump, a pale ash colour; the Quill feathers of the Wing black; those next the Body, tipt with white; the Tail cinereous. The Bill black, with red edges, all along the sides of the upper Mandable; the tip being black and hooked: the Bill both edges toothed. Legs and Feet red, a short broad Back-toe, with an appendant Membrane. It hath not a crest on the Head, but the Feathers are more loose, and stand more staring backwards, then ordinary.

The **Dun Diver**, or **Sparling Fowl**; hath the Head red, the Feathers standing backwards in form of a topping or crest; Chin white, Back a bluish ash colour: the under side of the Body, whitish: the Bill and Feet as the aforesaid. Of some it is only called, a **Dun.**

O a Curle headed Diver, proper. Born by *Nungrave.*

A a Cheveron between 3 such S. Born by *Blocklegh.*

B 3 such heads couped, O. born by *Earott.*

G one head erazed, O born by *Winckle.*

XLIV. He beareth Azure, a **Smew** (or **White Nun**) proper. Born by *Abnott.* This is also called, an **Albell**: from its *Latin* name **Albellus.** It is all white, save the spot behind its Neck, and a space from the angle of the Mouth to the Eyes; and the Back, which are all black. The Quill feathers black, those next the Body tipt with white; the Covert feathers black, tipt with white; the ridges of the Wing, dusky: Tail between an ash colour, and black. The Bill a cinereous, or lead colour; both tipt with white; the upper hooked at the end, both toothed on the sides. Legs and Feet cinereous, or lead colour; the Toes joyned with a dusky Membrane, no Back-toe, but a kind of a heel. This is of some Authors called a **Lough Diver.** The Female of this kind, hath no tuft, or crest; but hath a red Head, and brown Breast; the Back, ash colour, and two transverse white lines, over cross the Wings.

G 3 such proper. Is born by the name of *Castidt.*

B the Heads of 3 such couped, A. born by *Werzith.*

B one head couped and canton, A born by *Hockerstege.*

S a Fesse between 3 such heads erazed, A. by *Whentrough*, or *Welltrough.*

XLV. He beareth Argent, a **Pengwin**, proper. Born by the name of *Whitehead.* I have before *chap.* 12. *numb.* 7. given you the form and description of it as then I understood of the Bird, but since being better instructed, take this for the true draught of the Fowl; which comes near the bignes of a **Goose.** The upper side all black, under side all white, the Wings are small, and seems to be unfit for flight: the Bill is dark dusky, having furrows graven on the both Mandables. From the Bill to the Eye is a white spot, and a white ring about its Neck, a short or no Tail, the Feet scally, and joyned together with a blackish Membrane: it hath no Back-toe. They walk erect, with their Heads on high, and Tails down, as the figure sheweth.

The **Magellanie Goose**, is an other sort of **Pengwin.** It is a great lazy Bird, with a white Head, and a coal black Body; which is the true **Pengwin**, or **Whitehead**; according to the *Welsh* Language.

O a Cheveron S between 3 such proper. Is born by *Van Hargwitz.*

O 3 such proper. By the name of *Lazy.*

O one such proper on a Mount in base, V. By *Ashfield.*

XLVI. He beareth Gules, a **Tarrok** Argent, **Beaked**, and **Legged**, Sable. This is a kind of ash coloured **Gull**, with an arcuate, or bending Bill, black: the under side of the Body wholly white: the Eares have black spots, and the tip of the Tail black. The Feet ash or livid colour, Claws black; it hath no hinder Toe, but only a carneous knob, without any Claw. This is born by the name of *Trollock.*

B 3 such A Beaks and Legs, G. Born by *Tarrock.*

G 3 such proper, with an Estoile between them, O. Born by *Gill* or *Gull.*

XLVII. He beareth Argent, an **Anhinga**, proper. this is also termed, a **Brasilian Diver**, or **Water Diver**; Its Body is of the bignes of a **Duck**, the Bill is streight and long, toothed on each side; the Head like a Serpents head, with a very long, slender, Neck. The Bill

Bill is grey, Head and Neck from grey inclining to yellow; the Breast, Belly, Thighs, of a silver colour; the Back brown, spotted with oblong whitish spots; the Rump black, the Tail black, with grey ends or tips; the Wings, have a row of white, then black, then white, the quill feathers all black; Legs and Feet of a dark yellow, inclining to grey.

XLVIII. He beareth Or, the head of a **Razor-bill,** (or an **Auke,**) proper. Born by *Aukes*. This Fowl I I find called by several names here in *England*, as **Razor-bill**, in the West, **Auk** in the North, **Murre** in *Cornwall*; Historians name it **Alka.** It is of the **Pengwin** kind, but no bigger than a **Duck:** The Bill is black, behind the Nostrils, to the end of it there is engraven furrows, or incisions, very deep, the Edges white; the Eyes hazle colour, the mouth within of a lovely yellow; the Head, Neck, and all the upper side black; Belly and Breast, and fore-part of the Neck to the Throat pure white; the Throat dusky, or purplish like a **Duck,** the Legs are scituated as in the **Pengwin,** and are black, it wants the back Toe.

The **Atamania,** or the **Candy Sea-diver:** differs only from the precedent, in nothing but this; that it hath the upper mandable black, and the lower white, and is no bigger than a **Teal.**

The **Coulterneb, Bottle-Nose,** or **Golden-head;** it hath the like furrowed bill, near the Head it is ash-colour, towards the point red; Mouth yellow, Eyes grey; the Eye-lids, have a black cartilage; under the Eyes a carneous protuberance, of a livid colour; the Feet are are red (yellow in young ones) scituate backwards almost to the Rump, as they are in the **Douckers,** so that the Bird walks almost perpendicular upon his Tail; it wants a Back Toe; Claws, a dark blue; the top of the Head, the Neck and Back are black; Breast and Belly white; and white all about the Eyes, with a ring, or muffler of black encompasses the Throat. The wings are small and black, with a white transverse bar in the middle of it; Tail round and short all black. The Bill (to give a further description of its form) is short and broad of a triangular figure, ending in a sharp point; the upper mandable arcuate, and crooked at the point: where it is joyned to the head, a certain callous substance encompasses its Base, as in **Parrots:** between this callous body, and the first furrow, are long holes for the Nostrils, produced by the aperture of the Mouth. This Fowl hath several names in *England*, and the Islands thereunto belonging; at the *Farn* Islands, called a **Coulterneb**; in the Isle of *Man*, a **Puffin**; in *South-Wales*, a **Gulden-head,** or **Bottle-nose,** or **Helegug**; at *Scarburgh*, a **Mullet**; in *Cornwall*, and *Jersey*, and *Guernsey*, a **Barbalot**; in *Latine* it is termed, **Anas Arctica,** a **Northern-Duck**; and **Pica Marina,** or **Fratercula.**

The **Guillem,** or **Guillemot**; of others a **Skout** and a **Kiddaw**; in *Latine* a **Lomwia.** It is in all respects like the **Auk** but greater; onely the Bill is streight, and sharp pointed, without any furrows, and black; the head, upper-side of the Neck, Back, Wings, Tail, are of a dark brown, or black ash-colour; the Belly, Breast, and Throat white; the tips of the outmost Wing feathers are white; the Tail short and round like a **Duck:** the Feet scituate very backward, near the Tail, and are black; it wants the back Toe.

The **Greenland-Dove,** or **Sea-Turtle**; it is like the **Coulterneb,** or **Puffin,** but less; it is whole footed, and wants the back Toe; Legs are red; the Bill is blackish, long and sharp pointed, a little crooked at the end; it hath a large white spot on the upper surface of each Wing, else it is all over black, of the colour of a **Coot.** Some take this to be the same with the **Puffinet,** which breeds in the *Farn* Islands, which is about the bigness of a **Dove.**

A. three Razor-bill heads couped S. born by *Brunstaugh.*

A. three Razor-bills, proper. Born by *Grange*, or *Granger.*

O. a Fesse between three Puffins, proper. By the name of *Puffin.*

A. Green-land Dove S. Born by *Davy.*

XLIX. He beareth Argent, a **Tufted Duck,** proper. Born by the name of *Le Granges.* It is in *Latine* called **Anas fuligula,** and **Querquedula cristata,** a **crested Fen-Duck.** Its Bill is of a pale blue, the tip is black, Eyes yellow, the head of a dark purple, or black with a gloss of purple (from whence it is called by some people **Capo Negro,** as in *Italy* and *Venice*) it hath a cop, or crest hanging down backwards from the Head. Neck, Shoulders, Back, and whole upper part is a dark brown, almost black; the nether side of the neck, and fore-part of the Breast, are black; the Breast below, and Belly to the vent, white; the Wings and Tail short, the quill feathers black, those next the Body tipt with white, the covert feathers black; the Leggs and Feet of a livid, or dark blue colour; the web or membrane connecting the Toes, black.

A. three such proper. Born by *Chorletown.*

A. the Head couped S. born by *Franckelby.*

O. Fesse between three such heads S. Born by *Don Fendock* a *Spanish* Family.

L. He beareth Or, an **Ipocati-Apoa,** or a **wild Brasilian Duck,** proper. This Fowl is of the bigness of a **Goose,** and is of the shape, and figure of our common **Duck.** The bill is black, and hooked at the end; upon and aboue the bill, it carries a fleshy and almost round crest, black of coulour, remarkably spotted with white. The Legs of a dark, or dusky ash coulour; the Head, Neck, Belly and Tail, are white; the Back, Wings, and top of the Head, are black with a gloss of green, as in the Necks of our **Ducks.** In the white are black feathers, dispersedly mingled. It is also termed a **Pata.**

A. the like fowle proper. is Born by *Traveller.*

O. 3. such proper. Born by *Gresseby.*

LI. He beareth Argent, a **Muscovy-Ducks head, couped,** proper. It is far larger than our tame, and common **Ducks,** and severally in their colours, some are of a purplish black, some all white; they have rising feathers on the head like a tuft, and about the Nostrils, and the eyes, they have red caruncles, or a tuberous naked skin; their Feet and Bills, as other **Ducks**; and a small back Toe, with a little Claw, of a chesnut colour; see this further described in *numb.* 58. under the title of **Guiny-Duck.**

A. three

A. three such Ducks proper. Born by *Noctorum* an *Italian*.

A. three such Heads couped, proper. Born by *Ronnatie*, or *Rovaker*.

LII. He beareth Argent, a **Tropick Bird**, proper. It is also termed, a **Tropick Bird displayed.** Born by *Wallia*. The Bill is red, bending and sharp pointed, its Body is white, with transverse lines of black, thick set; with a black line drawn from each side the Mouth to the back of the head; the Wing feathers have one web black, the other white; the covert feathers are all black, with white edges; the lesser covert feathers are black; the ridges of the Wings, white: the Leggs are white, Feet black, all the four Toes are web'd together, the Tail is onely two long Feathers, white and narrow, ending in a sharp point.

The **Caribbee** Island **Sea-Bird**, is the same in all respects, save the Body is all white, the Beak and Leggs red; having a long Tail, only of two Feathers.

A. three such displayed, proper. Born by *Landecane*, or *Lancorne*.

B. three such O. Born by the name of *Irebergh*.

O. one and a Cheif B. Born by *Knockton*.

LIII. He beareth Argent, the **King of all the birds of Paradice**, proper. This is a very rare Bird, and of different feathers to other **Birds of Paradice**, it is a small Bird, from the head to the Tail, not exceeding two inches; the Bill is white, being covered half way with elegant short feathers, or hairs of a red colour, like silken thrums; and so was the forepart of its head; about the Eyes on each side, there is little black spots; the Neck, and Breast, is covered with fine slender feathers of a deep red, or sanguine colour; so that they seem to be no other than silken thrums, or filaments; all the covert feathers of the Back, Wings, and Tail, were almost of one and the same colour: The prime, or quill feathers, are on the upper-side, a dusky red, on the under side, a dusky yellow; the Tail was short being all brown feathers: The Belly is adorned with a kind of ring of black; the rest is white; but that part next the Wings is black, having a shining gloss of green, not unlike that of a **Mallards** Neck. Out of the Rump, amongst the Feathers of the Tail, proceeded two strings (as it were Horse-hairs) black: only the ends are reflected round, and on one side set with very fine Hairs, or downy threads, of a deep shining green, the other side, their Feathers were of a dusky colour. It hath no Feet, but flies perpetually, nor doth it ever rest, but by hanging in some Tree, by those long strings, or bristles twined about a bough. No Ship Sails so swiftly, nor so far from the continent, which it doth not fly round about. It is termed the **Indian Apos, or Indian foot-less Bird.**

LIV. He beareth Argent, a **Rabi-horcado displayed**, Sable. Of some called **Rabo-forcado**, it is a Bird that divides his forked Tail into two parts, sometimes opening, sometimes shutting, or drawing them together.

LV. He beareth Sable, a **Brasilian Tamatia, or an American Water-Hen**, Argent. This Bird is of the bigness of a **Lark**; it hath a long red Bill, dusky; above the Nostrils stands up black slender Feathers, like Hairs, or Bristles; its Head is bigger than the proportion of the Body requires, as also its Bill. It is all spotted like a **Throstle**, or **Mavis**: yellow about the Neck, and under the Throat; the Belly is white, with dusky spots.

LVI. *He* beareth Argent, a **Swallow tailed Shelduke**, proper. This Fowl hath a short Bill, and simous; black at the root to the Nostrils, and at the end, but the middle red; the Head and Neck, all white, even to a good part of the Breast; behind the Ears there is a dusky place; the Breast, to the middle of the Belly, Back, and Wings, are black, but the Wings have the middle pens, inclining to russet: on either side the Back from the Shoulders, goes down divers sharp pointed Feathers all white: The rest of the Belly, and under the Tail, is all white: the Tail is forked, black, but white on the out-side; the Feet are a whitish blue, with black webs. This is of some termed an **Havelda.**

A. the like proper. Born by *Lustarke*, or *Listarcke*.

A. three such proper. Born by the name of *Lairtownes*.

A. a Fesse between three such S. By *Nesse*, or *Nessels*.

LVII. He beareth Argent, a **Shear-water, sedant**, proper. Born by *Sharman*. It is a short necked Fowl, having a long Bill, bending towards the end, dusky; all the upper parts of the Body are black; the Throat, and Breast, Belly and under the Tail white; with a ring of white, pointing to the hinder part of his Neck; the Legs and Feet, ash-colour, the Toes webbed together by a membrane.

A. three such. Born by *Sharbill*.

O. one of them S. is born by *Murfell*, or *Morefall*.

LVIII. He beareth Gules, the Bill of an **Indian Raven**, Or. This Bill I caused to be set in this place, to shew the curious Reader the several species, and varieties, that are found in that Bird, this being contrary to that described, *numb.* 12.

2. AND now I have done with Birds, according to the Figures represented in my Plates; give me leave to give the Courteous Reader an Addition of some other Outlandish Birds and Fowl, with their Discription; which I have found mentioned by some Forreign and Domestick Authors; as,

The **Sea-Pye**, it carryeth the shape of a **Pag-pye**; which *Aldrovandus* thus briefly describes; the Bill is a little longer than a **Pies**, and stronger; the top of the Head, and the third part of the Neck, of a delayed chesnut colour; the lower part of the Head, Temples and Eyes, yellow; Eyes black, with yellow irides, encompassed again with a black circle; the whole body (except part of the Wings) is green; the second row of the Wing

Fea-

Feathers is a dilute Chesnut, ends blew: the Feet dusky, Toes very long, Claws crooked and black.

The **Persian Pye**, hath a thick strong short whitish Bill, and white Eyes, with a black Pupil; the second row of the Wing Feathers, Rump and fore-most Feathers of the Tail, are yellow; else it is all over of a dusky colour: the Feet bluish, with black tabular scales, Claws small, crooked and black.

The **Indian Mock-bird**, it is not much unlike the Jay; but somthing smaller.

The **Carpo-catactes**, is a Bird of the **Pye** kind, the Bill is black, and blunt at the end; the Eyes of a Hazle colour, the Nostrils round covered with whitish bristly reflected Feathers; the whole Body is of a dusky red, all spotted with triangular spots, in the tips or tops of the Feathers; except the Head which hath no spots, between the Eyes and Bill, it is white; the quill, or sail Feathers, of a black, or dark colour: the Tail of a shining black, the outmost Feather on each side are three quarters white, which in the succeeding Feathers, is less and less to the middlemost, the Feet and Claws black.

The **Macu-cagua** of the *Brasilians*, it is a kind of **Brasil Hen**, and as large as ours. It hath a black Bill and Eyes, the Neck slender, Body thick, Wings at the Rump, for Tail it hath none. It hath three Toes foreward, and a round Heel, like an **Ostridge**, and a little above that a short Toe with a blunt Claw, standing inwards. The Head, and Neck, is speckled with a dark yellow and black: under the Throat white; the Breast, Belly and Back, of a dark colour; the Wings are all over of an umber colour, waved with black; except the Prime feathers which are black. The Legs and Feet blew, Claws grey.

The **Livia**, or **Bologna Dove**, or **Rock Dove**; it is of the shape of a **Dove**, or **Pigeon**, but less; with red Feet, and whitish Bill, purple about the Nostrils; the Body all over is cinereous; but the Tail is black, with somthing of red; so are the long Feathers of the Wing, but the lesser Quill feathers are cinereous. It shineth about the Neck with a gloss of purple and green, as it is diversly exposed to the light.

The **Pitanga-guacu**, or the **Cuiriri** of *Brasil*: it is as big as a Stare, a thick piramidal Bill, and a short Neck, which sitting it contracts, or draws in: the Head, Neck, Back, Wings, and Tail, of a dark brown or black, mingled with a gloss of green; the under side have yellow Feathers; the Legs and Feet, dusky. But above, by the Head, it hath a Crown (like that of a Monks-hood) of a white colour.

The **Calandra**, it is in bigness answerable to a **Stare**, or **Thrush**; yet in voice, colour of Body, Feet, and with a long back Claw, which is called the Heel, it is like the **Lark**. Having a circle of black Feathers encompassing the Neck, in fashion of a Collar, or Neck lace. See *chap.* 12. *numb.* 31.

The **Mouche-Rolle**, it is a small Bird of the bigness of a **Hen-Sparrow**; the Bill is streight, and black, the upper Chap, rising up in a ridge; the Legs short & black, the whole upper side of the Body of a dark cinereous, or Mouse-dun; the Wings and Tail, more dark; on the top of the Head are certain black spots, all the nether side is white, with black shafts: under the Throat it is reddish, in some Birds of this kind, the tips of the Covert feathers are yellow.

[]

The **Tije-guacu** of *Brasil*; It is as big as a **Sparrow**, a short triangular, broad black Bill; Eyes Saphire coloured, Legs and Feet yellow or Wax colour; Claws dusky: the whole Body is as black as a **Raven**; but on the top of the Head, it hath a shining sanguine spot.

The **Spipoletta**, or **Spipola**; it is less then a **Lark**. The Bill is streight, and sharp, coal black; the top of the Head, Neck, and Back, cinereous; with a dash of green. The Breast, and Belly, white; the Throat spotted. The Prime feathers, dusky: the out edges whitish, or yellowish; the Covert first row, are the same. The Tail dark colour, almost black, the two out-most Feathers, have the outer Vanes white. It hath a long Heel, or Back-claw, like a **Lark**.

The **Stopparola**, hath a Bill black, long and sharp; Legs slender, and black: the Head, Neck, Back and Tail, brown. The Head on the Crown, specked with white: Quill feathers, and Coverts, black: Breast and Belly white; it is a small Bird.

The **Gisola**, is a small Bird, the Bill slender, streight, and long; Legs and Feet of a dusky colour: the whole Belly is white; the Neck and Breast hath oblong brown spots, tending downwards; all the upper side, Wings, and Tail, dusky; the great Feathers, edged and tipt, with a pale ash colour. This Bird is by some Authors, called the **Glareana**, or **Grien Vogelin**.

The **Asilus**, or **Luteola**: It is a Bird bigger then the **Crested Wren**; the Bill slender and dusky; the angles of the Mouth yellowish. Legs and Feet, of a dusky Amber colour; all the upper Body of a dusky cinereous colour, tinctured with green; a yellowish line from the Nostrils, above the Eyes, almost to the hinder part of the Head; Wings and Tail, dusky: having their out edges green. The nether Side is white, with a dash of green, and somtimes yellow.

The **Humming Bird**; which by several Authors doth pass under diverse names, as **Guainumbi**, and **Guaimini-bique**, and **Gonambuch**, or **Gouambuch**: and **Tominejo**, and **Durissia**, and **Passer Mosquitus**, or the **Mosquit Sparrow**, or **Wren**; and **Citicilin**. This Bird is the least of all Birds, in weight not above twelve graines; and moves its Wings with such swiftness, as it cannot be discerned by the Eye; in its flying it makes a humming noise, like a **Hornet**, or **Bee**: when it moves from place to place, it is carried with that velocity, and swiftness, as a bullet through the Aire. It is reported that it lies torpid, or asleep all Winter, and that there is nine species, or kinds of them. From the Head to the Rump, it is but two inches; the Bill is black, streight and slender, almost as long as the whole Body and Head; the lower Chap towards the rise, is reddish: small black Eyes, small short Legs, black; Claws long and crooked; the Head, upper side of the Neck, and Back, it is green shining as a **Peacocks**, or **Mallards neck**, in which a flame colour, or yellow are strangely mixt: all the lower parts are white, the Breast hath Feathers of an excellent colour, dispersedly mixt. The Wings of a brown, and of a shining spadiceous; the Quill Feathers have the subsequent interiours, much longer then the precedent exteriour; so that the inmost determining the Wing end, is longest of all, and reach almost to the end of the Tail: which consists onely of four Feathers, of a blew or polished steel colour. Their Eggs are white and oval, not bigger then a Pease.

The

The other kinds, are in the Birds somthing here and there differing, which to me seems so little, and of no moment to our buffines in Heraulday; as I forbear to mention them. This Bird by the *Brasilians* is also called by several names, as **Aratica**, and **Aratara-taguacu**, and **Guara-cyaba**, that is a Sun-beam Bird, and **Guara-cigaba**, the hair of the Sun: It it common in all the hotter Countrys of *America*.

The **White Wagtail**; hath a slender and black Bill, Eyes haxle colour; the Feet, Toes and Claws, long and of a dark blackish colour: the Back-claw very long as in **Larks**. It is white all about the Bill to the Eye; the Crown and hinder part of the Head, black: the Breast and Belly white; Back, and hinder part of the Neck, black; some have a black spot like a crescent, under the Throat, the Horns or points reaching almost to the Jaws. The Wing feathers, black; the Coverts of the first row black with white tips; the second row, white: the Tail is very long, the outmost Feathers all white, the middle black. In some places this is called the **Seed-bird**.

The **Brasilian Guira-guacu-beraba**, is a Bird of the bigness of a **Goldfinch**. It hath a streight yellow Bill, black on the upper part; the Legs and Feet, of a dusky colour; the upper part of the Head, and half the Back, the Wings and Tail, of a pale green, in the end of the Wings are some dusky Feathers, intermixed. The Throat, Breast, and Belly, yellow or Gold colour; under the Throat, up to the Eyes, it hath a great black spot of stragling hairy Feathers, hanging down like beard.

The **Brasilian Guira-coereba**, it is of the bigness of a **Chaffinch**; with a black Bill, and Eyes. On the Head, a cop or tuft of Sea-green; the rest of the Head, Throat, and lower parts, and hinder half of the Back, are blew; though the Breast, begining of the Wings to the Back, is blew; the upper side of the Neck, and fore half of the Back is black. The Wings yellow, straked with black; the Thighs black, and so is the Tail. The Feet of a Vermilion colour, Claws black.

The **Japacani**; hath a black sharp Bill, bending a little downwards; Golden Eyes. The Head black: all the lower parts under the Head, mixt with white, and yellow, with transverse lines of black. Legs and Feet, dusky; Claws black.

The **Dalmatic Sparrow**; the Bill is whitish, the upper part like a **Sparrow**; underneath white; the Tail forked, Feet yellowish, with transverse lines of a flesh colour; Claws, long and black.

The **Purple**, and **Black long Tailed Sparrow**; the Bill is thick, white at the Head, black at the end; the Tail and Quill Feathers, black; the Body purple.

The **Tijepiranga**; or **Brasilian**, or **American Sparrow**; the Bill black, and Legs: the whole Body is red, or sanguine; Wings and Tail black, mixt with red: the Head is all black.

The **long tailed Indian Sparrow**; hath a thick Bill, of a Scarlet colour; the Head is black, with a gloss of blew and green; so is the Back and upper part of the Wings; the Wings are on the ridges the same, the next Covert white, the next Covert black, the Covert of the Quills yellowish; and the Quill Feathers, black; with somthing of cinereous; the under side is white; the Tail is double, the under short, and white: the upper consists of four long Feathers, of a deep black; Legs and Feet spotted, of black and white; Claws crooked and black.

The **Indian fork tailed** (or **long tailed forked**) **Sparrow**; its Bill blew, Eyes black, with a white, then a yellow Irides; Neck and Breast, Scarlet; Belly white, and Thighs: the Wings, Tail and Back, black. It hath for a Tail, but two very long and broad Feathers, supported by other short ones. Leegs and Feet white, Claws black.

The **Rumpless Indian Sparrow**; the whole Body and beginning of the Wings, of a lovely scarlet, the rest of the Wings black. It hath on the Back two long black spots. The Bill is is white at the Head, and black at the end, Legs and Feet black.

The **Guiran-beemgatu** of *Brasil*; it is a kind of **Sparrow**; the Bill and Eyes black; Legs dusky: Head and Throat, a pale yellow: lower parts, yellow; the Wings and Tail, mixt of green and yellow.

The **Brasilian Sayacu**. Bill and Eyes, black; the whole Body of a cinereous, and Sea-green, mixt.

The **Brasilian Guira-perea**; is as big as a **Lark**; short black Bill; the upper parts, of a dusky yellow, like Wax: the lower side of the Head, Neck and Breast, black: Tail and Wings dusky; the edges of a Sea-green: Legs and Feet, of a dark grey, or ash colour; Claws black.

The **Denantha-congener**: or **Petronia Marina**. Is of the bigness of a **Chaffinch**; with a strong black Bill; the lower Chap, about the angle yellow: the Head ash colour dusky, with a white line drawn through the middle of the Crown: the Neck ash colour, the Shoulders black, the Feathers edged with light ash, so is the Back: the Rump greenish, tipt with white. The Prime feathers, the exteriour are brown, or blackish, edged with a pale green: all the rows of Coverts are black, with white tips. The base or ridg of the Wing is of a sordid green: the Breast of a sordid, or dirty white; the vent, and under Belly, have yellow tips. It hath a very fair yellow spot under the Throat; the Tail is all black, edged with green; each Feather having a white spot at the tip end; the outmost Feather on each side is half white.

The **Hortulane**, it is equal in bigness to the **Yellow-hammer**; the Bill is thick and short, of a red or flesh colour, with a knob on the upper Chap: with a tooth or angle, which falls into an angular trough in the lower Bill. The Feet reddish: the Head of an ash colour, the middle of the Feathers black: the Back black, with reddish edges. The Throat ash colour, Breast red, under the Bill is a yellow spot; Belly and Rump, of a deep red. The Quill Feathers have the exteriour or out Feathers edged with a whitish green; those Quills next the Body, edged with red. The tips of the second row are white, and edges red; the third row, is tipt with white. The edges of the lesser Coverts, are cinereous; else the middle of all the Feathers on the Wings are black. The Tail, have the middle Feathers of a dark brown, edged with red, the out side Feathers black.

The **Yellow Hortulane**, or **Garden Frequenter**; is all yellow, of a straw colour; except the tips of the Wings, and Ridges of the Wings, which are white.

Feathers is a dilute Chesnut, ends blew: the Feet dusky, Toes very long, Claws crooked and black.

The **Persian Pye**, hath a thick strong short whitish Bill, and white Eyes, with a black Pupil; the second row of the Wing Feathers, Rump and fore-most Feathers of the Tail, are yellow; else it is all over of a dusky colour: the Feet bluish, with black tabular scales, Claws small, crooked and black.

The **Indian Mock-bird**, it is not much unlike the Jay; but somthing smaller.

The **Caryo-catactes**, is a Bird of the **Pye** kind, the Bill is black, and blunt at the end; the Eyes of a Hazle colour, the Nostrils round covered with whitish bristly reflected Feathers; the whole Body is of a dusky red, all spotted with triangular spots, in the tips or tops of the Feathers; except the Head which hath no spots, between the Eyes and Bill, it is white; the quill, or sail Feathers, of a black, or dark colour: the Tail of a shining black, the outmost Feather on each side are three quarters white, which in the succeeding Feathers, is less and less to the middlemost, the Feet and Claws black.

The **Nacu-cagua** of the *Brasilians*, it is a kind of **Brasil Hen**, and as large as ours. It hath a black Bill and Eyes, the Neck slender, Body thick, Wings at the Rump, for Tail it hath none. It hath three Toes foreward, and a round Heel, like an **Ostridge**, and a little above that a short Toe with a blunt Claw, standing inwards. The Head, and Neck, is speckled with a dark yellow and black: under the Throat white; the Breast, Belly and Back, of a dark colour; the Wings are all over of an umber colour, waved with black; except the Prime feathers which are black. The Legs and Feet blew, Claws grey.

The **Livia**, or **Bologna Dove**, or **Rock Dove**; it is of the shape of a **Dove**, or **Pigeon**, but less; with red Feet, and whitish Bill, purple about the Nostrils; the Body all over is cinereous; but the Tail is black, with somthing of red; so are the long Feathers of the Wing, but the lesser Quill feathers are cinereous. It shineth about the Neck with a gloss of purple and green, as it is diversly exposed to the light.

The **Pitanga-guacu**, or the **Cuiriri** of *Brasil*: it is as big as a Stare, a thick piramidal Bill, and a short Neck, which sitting it contracts, or draws in: the Head, Neck, Back, Wings, and Tail, of a dark brown or black, mingled with a gloss of green; the under side have yellow Feathers; the Legs and Feet, dusky. But above, by the Head, it hath a Crown (like that of a Monks-hood) of a white colour.

The **Calandra**, it is in bigness answerable to a **Stare**, or **Thrush**; yet in voice, colour of Body, Feet, and with a long back Claw, which is called the Heel, it is like the **Lark**. Having a circle of black Feathers encompassing the Neck, in fashion of a Collar, or Neck lace. See *chap.* 12. *numb.* 31.

The **Mouche-Rolle**, it is a small Bird of the bigness of a **Hen-Sparrow**; the Bill is streight, and black, the upper Chap, rising up in a ridge; the Legs short & black, the whole upper side of the Body of a dark cinereous, or Mouse-dun; the Wings and Tail, more dark; on the top of the Head are certain black spots, all the nether side is white, with black shafts: under the Throat it is reddish, in some Birds of this kind, the tips of the Covert feathers are yellow.

The **Tise-guacu** of *Brasil*; It is as big as a **Sparrow**, a short triangular, broad black Bill; Eyes Saphire coloured, Legs and Feeet yellow or Wax colour; Claws dusky: the whole Body is as black as a **Raven**; but on the top of the Head, it hath a shining sanguine spot.

The **Spipoletta**, or **Spipola**; it is less then a **Lark**. The Bill is streight, and sharp, coal black; the top of the Head, Neck, and Back, cinereous; with a dash of green. The Breast, and Belly, white; the Throat spotted. The Prime feathers, dusky: the out edges whitish, or yellowish; the Covert first row, are the same. The Tail dark colour, almost black, the two out-most Feathers, have the outer Vanes white. It hath a long Heel, or Back-claw, like a **Lark**.

The **Stopparola**, hath a Bill black, long and sharp; Legs slender, and black: the Head, Neck, Back and Tail, brown. The Head on the Crown, specked with white: Quill feathers, and Coverts, black: Breast and Belly white; it is a small Bird.

The **Gusola**, is a small Bird, the Bill slender, streight, and long; Legs and Feet of a dusky colour: the whole Belly is white; the Neck and Breast hath oblong brown spots, tending downwards; all the upper side, Wings, and Tail, dusky; the great Feathers, edged and tipt, with a pale ash colour. This Bird is by some Authors, called the **Glareana**, or **Gren Vogelin**.

The **Asilus**, or **Luteola**: It is a Bird bigger then the **Crested Wren**; the Bill slender and dusky; the angles of the Mouth yellowish. Legs and Feet, of a dusky Amber colour; all the upper Body of a dusky cinereous colour, tinctured with green; a yellowish line from the Nostrils, above the Eyes, almost to the hinder part of the Head; Wings and Tail, dusky: having their out edges green. The nether Side is white, with a dash of green, and somtimes yellow.

The **Humming Bird**; which by several Authors doth pass under diverse names, as **Guainumbi**, and **Guaimini-bique**, and **Gonambuch**, or **Gouambuch**: and **Tominejo**, and **Duristia**, and **Passer Mosquitus**, or the **Mosquit Sparrow**, or **Wren**; and **Citicilin**. This Bird is the least of all Birds, in weight not above twelve graines; and moves its Wings with such swiftness, as it cannot be discerned by the Eye; in its flying it makes a humming noise, like a **Hornet**, or **Bee**: when it moves from place to place, it is carried with that velocity, and swiftness, as a bullet through the Aire. It is reported that it lies torpid, or asleep all Winter, and that there is nine species, or kinds of them. From the Head to the Rump, it is but two inches; the Bill is black, streight and slender, almost as long as the whole Body and Head; the lower Chap towards the rise, is reddish: small black Eyes, small short Legs, black; Claws long and crooked; the Head, upper side of the Neck, and Back, it is green shining as a **Peacocks**, or **Mallards neck**, in which a flame colour, or yellow are strangely mixt: all the lower parts are white, the Breast hath Feathers of an excellent colour, dispersedly mixt. The Wings of a brown, and of a shining spadiceous; the Quill Feathers have the subsequent interiours, much longer then the precedent exteriour; so that the inmost determining the Wing end, is longest of all, and reach almost to the end of the Tail: which consists onely of four Feathers, of a blew or polished steel colour. Their Eggs are white and oval, not bigger then a Pease.

The

The other kinds, are in the Birds somthing here and there differing, which to me seems so little, and of no moment to our bussiness in Herauldry; as I forbear to mention them. This Bird by the *Brasilians* is also called by several names, as **Aratica**, and **Aratara-taguacu**, and **Guara-cyaba**, that is a Sun-beam Bird, and **Guara-cigaba**, the hair of the Sun: It it common in all the hotter Countrys of *America*.

The **White Wagtail**; hath a slender and black Bill, Eyes haxle colour; the Feet, Toes and Claws, long and of a dark blackish colour; the Back-claw very long as in **Larks**. It is white all about the Bill to the Eye; the Crown and hinder part of the Head, black: the Breast and Belly white; Back, and hinder part of the Neck, black; some have a black spot like a crescent, under the Throat, the Horns or points reaching almost to the Jaws. The Wing feathers, black; the Coverts of the first row black with white tips; the second row, white: the Tail is very long, the outmost Feathers all white, the middle black. In some places this is called the **Seed-bird**.

The **Brasilian Guira-guacu-beraba**, is a Bird of the bigness of a **Goldfinch**. It hath a streight yellow Bill, black on the upper part; the Legs and Feet, of a dusky colour; the upper part of the Head, and half the Back, the Wings and Tail, of a pale green, in the end of the Wings are some dusky Feathers, intermixed. The Throat, Breast, and Belly, yellow or Gold colour; under the Throat, up to the Eyes, it hath a great black spot of stragling hairy Feathers, hanging down like beard.

The **Brasilian Guira-coereba**, it is of the bigness of a **Chaffinch**; with a black Bill, and Eyes. On the Head, a cop or tuft of Sea-green; the rest of the Head, Throat, and lower parts, and hinder half of the Back, are blew; though the Breast, begining of the Wings to the Back, is blew; the upper side of the Neck, and fore half of the Back is black. The Wings yellow, straked with black; the Thighs black, and so is the Tail. The Feet of a Vermilion colour, Claws black.

The **Japacani**; hath a black sharp Bill, bending a little downwards; Golden Eyes. The Head black: all the lower parts under the Head, mixt with white, and yellow, with transverse lines of black. Legs and Feet, dusky; Claws black.

The **Dalmatic Sparrow**; the Bill is whitish, the upper part like a **Sparrow**; underneath white; the Tail forked, Feet yellowish, with transverse lines of a flesh colour; Claws, long and black.

The **Purple**, and **Black long Tailed Sparrow**; the Bill is thick, white at the Head, black at the end; the Tail and Quill Feathers, black; the Body purple.

The **Tijepiranga**; or **Brasilian**, or **American Sparrow**; the Bill black, and Legs: the whole Body is red, or sanguine; Wings and Tail black, mixt with red: the Head is all black.

The **long tailed Indian Sparrow**; hath a thick Bill, of a Scarlet colour; the Head is black, with a gloss of blew and green; so is the Back and upper part of the Wings; the Wings are on the ridges the same, the next Covert white, the next Covert black, the Covert of the Quills yellowish; and the Quill Feathers, black; with somthing of cinereous; the under side is white; the Tail is double, the under short, and white: the upper consists of four long Feathers, of a deep black. Legs and Feet spotted, of black and white; Claws crooked and black.

The **Indian fork tailed** (or **long tailed forked**) **Sparrow**; its Bill blew, Eyes black, with a white, then a yellow Irides; Neck and Breast, Scarlet; Belly white, and Thighs: the Wings, Tail and Back, black. It hath for a Tail, but two very long and broad Feathers, supported by other short ones. Leegs and Feet white, Claws black.

The **Rumpless Indian Sparrow**; the whole Body and beginning of the Wings, of a lovely scarlet, the rest of the Wings black. It hath on the Back two long black spots. The Bill is is white at the Head, and black at the end, Legs and Feet black.

The **Guiran-heemgatu** of *Brasil*; it is a kind of **Sparrow**; the Bill and Eyes black; Legs dusky: Head and Throat, a pale yellow: lower parts, yellow; the Wings and Tail, mixt of green and yellow.

The **Brasilian Sayacu**. Bill and Eyes, black; the whole Body of a cinereous, and Sea-green, mixt.

The **Brasilian Guira-perea**; is as big as a **Lark**; short black Bill; the upper parts, of a dusky yellow, like Wax: the lower side of the Head, Neck and Breast, black: Tail and Wings dusky; the edges of a Sea-green: Legs and Feet, of a dark grey, or ash colour; Claws black.

The **Denantha-congener**: or **Petronia Marina**. Is of the bigness of a **Chaffinch**; with a strong black Bill; the lower Chap, about the angle yellow: the Head ash colour dusky, with a white line drawn through the middle of the Crown: the Neck ash colour, the Shoulders black, the Feathers edged with light ash, so is the Back: the Rump greenish, tipt with white. The Prime feathers, the exteriour are brown, or blackish, edged with a pale green; all the rows of Coverts are black, with white tips. The base or ridg of the Wing is of a sordid green: the Breast of a sordid, or dirty white; the vent, and under Belly, have yellow tips. It hath a very fair yellow spot under the Throat; the Tail is all black, edged with green; each Feather having a white spot at the tip end; the outmost Feather on each side is half white.

The **Hortulane**, it is equal in bigness to the **Yellow-hammer**; the Bill is thick and short, of a red or flesh colour, with a knob on the upper Chap: with a tooth or angle, which falls into an angular trough in the lower Bill. The Feet reddish; the Head of an ash colour, the middle of the Feathers black: the Back black, with reddish edges. The Throat ash colour, Breast red, under the Bill is a yellow spot; Belly and Rump, of a deep red. The Quill Feathers have the exteriour or out Feathers edged with a whitish green; those Quills next the Body, edged with red. The tips of the second row are white, and edges red; the third row, is tipt with white. The edges of the lesser Coverts, are cinereous; else the middle of all the Feathers on the Wings are black. The Tail, have the middle Feathers of a dark brown, edged with red, the out side Feathers black.

The **Yellow Hortulane**, or **Garden Frequenter**; is all yellow, of a straw colour; except the tips of the Wings, and Ridges of the Wings, which are white.

The **White Portulane** is all over white.

The **Spotted Portulane**, the head from cinereous inclines to yellow; the neck speckled with black; belly, legs and feet yellow; ridges of the wings, and quill feathers white; all the other parts partly black, and partly cinereous.

The **Black Portulane**, hath a red bill, green head, and neck; ash colour legs, all the rest black; yet it hath on the crown and quill wings, an oblong white spot; the legs and feet in all **Portulanes** are yellow.

The **Cirlus Stultus**, it is as big as the **Yellow-Hammer**, with the same figure and shape only differs in colours; the head behind, and back are ferrugineous, spotted with black; from the Bill over the eyes to the end of the neck is a whitish ash-colour; the tail and wing feathers are blackish, edged with ferrugineous; the wings have some white spots; and the tail hath two feathers on each side, partly whitish. This Bird is called also **Cia**, from its cry, *Ci, Ci*, and for distinction sake, **Cia seluatica**, and **Cia Montana**, and **Cirlo-Matto**.

Thus much of strange and outlandish Land Birds, which because they have no proper *English* Names, we give them such names as they have in their own Native Countreys; and now proceed to the description of some strange and out-landish Water-fowl, which we have in Authors met withal; which also have no proper *English* Names but what is brought out of their own Country with them, or what *Latine* names Scholars have from their nature, shape, colour, or cry imputed to them, as

The **Iuuco**, it is of the bigness of a **Sparrow**, hath a black channelled Bill, and a little bending; the upper part of the head, neck, and belly, of a chesnut colour; the under side of the neck and breast, white; all the other parts of the body from dusky inclining to black; the tail longer than the wings; the legs and feet [illegible] dark brown.

The **Dacopus**, or **Swimmring**; it is a kind of **Water-Hen**, so named from its yellowish or Brimstone colour legs and bill; only the tip is black; all the [illegible] appears a Russet colour; a white both on the head, and about the eyes, and in the middle feathers of the wing, and in the belly; the quill feathers are black; and the ends of the shortest feathers of the Wings are red like red Ockar. In the back, tail, neck and wings are spots of black; the edges of the eye-lids are tinctured with a Saffron colour; the feet wants the back toe.

The **Wyn-Kernel**, or **Gallinula Ochra**; this is so named from the greenish, but sordid and dark colour of almost the whole body, but more dusky on the upper side; the head, neck, breast and wings are adorned with spots of white; the tail is in part white; the bill is partly purple, and partly black; the legs pale yellow.

The **Indian Horned Bird**, called by them **Pohual-cuachili**; it is as big as a **Dove**, and for figure and likeness it resembles the **Jacana**, *chap.* 12. *numb.* 49. described; long neck, long legs and very long toes; only it differs in colour from that; for the whole body, upper parts are black; the beginning of the wings brown, the remaining part green; the ends of the quill feathers brown; the breast, belly, and upper half of the thighs brown; the Bill is streight, of a Saffron colour, with a red skin at its rise, and on the fore-part of the head; the legs are bare, feet ash colour. In the fore part of each wing it hath the like horn or spur as the **Aguapecata**, mentioned *numb.* 31.

The **Mitered**, or **coped Water Hen**, of *Brasil*, it is so named to distinguish it from other **Water Hens**; it is of the same shape and figure as the precedent; yellow bill, it hath a red skinny Miter, or cap on its forehead, near the rise of its Bill; it hath also processes of red skinny tubrances extending down the sides of the neck, after the manner of **Guiny Hens**, or **Turkeys**; its whole head, neck, breast and lower belly are black; the back, tail, and beginning of the wings red or light brown; the quill feathers of the wing are of a Sea green, with black tips; the legs and toes very long of an ash-colour; each wing hath a very sharp horn or spur, of a Saffron colour.

The **Flammant**, or **Phoeni-copter**; it hath an extraordinary long neck and legs; the Bill is broad, flat, crooked, and toothed; the colour blue, with the tip black; with two long Nostrils on each side the Bill, which makes as if the Bill were furrowed; the neck and body all white; quill feathers black, the covert feathers of a bright purple and flame colour; the tail shorter than the ends of the Wings; it is whole footed in the foremost three toes, yet the membrane connects them but to the second joints.

The **Trochilus**, commonly called **Corrira**, the **Courier**, from its swift running; it hath a streight yellow Bill, black at the tip; white eyes and black pupil; all the upper side is of a ferrugineous colour; underneath it is all white; it hath a little round head, little or no Neck, and full round plump body; two white feathers with black tips, cover the tail, which is but short; it hath short thighs, but long legs; whole footed, something above the middle of the toes.

The **Artenna**, or **Diomedean Bird**; it is of the bigness of a good large **Hen**, but have pretty long necks and legs; the colour of the whole Bird is dusky, or a dark Ash colour, with white under the Belly; the Bill is crooked at the end, like an Eagles, of a pale yellow, the hook black, the feet yellowish.

The **Puffin** of the *Isle of Man*, or the **Mancks Puffin**, it is something less in body than a **Tame Pigeon**; the Bill is narrow, and streight, and black, the upper chap being hooked at the end like a **Cormorant**, its Base is covered with a callous naked skin, in which are the Nostrils; from the Nostrils, on each side a furrow or groove is produced almost to the hook, the head is blacker than the back; the wings long, and tail longer, and black; the legs and feet, are on the out-side half black; and the inner side of a pale or whitish flesh colour, so that the middle toe is partly white, and partly black; it hath a small back toe, and black claws; the membrane joining the toes together, is underneath the foot black; see *numb.* 48.

The **Maiague** of *Brasil*, it is a whole footed Wild Fowl, of the bigness and shape of a **Goose**; the end of its Bill is hooked, it hath a thick round head, shining eyes, a long Neck, decently bowed like a **Swan**; the whole Bird is of a dusky and blackish colour; only the forepart of the neck, adorned with yellow feathers.

The

*

The great **crested**, or **copped Douker**, both mandables where they are joined to the head, are tinctured with a Saffron colour, tips black; the head is black on the crown, beneath cinereous; which meets near the eyes, which are yellow; from the back of the head hangs down a tuft of black feathers; the upper part of the neck, back, and wings black; the ridges and extremities are white; the breast and belly of a whitish ash colour: It hath no tail at all, the rump from cinereous is black; the legs broad and flat, serrate behind with a double row of asperities, the toes are broad, bordered on each side with appendant Membranes like Fins; but not webbed or join'd together, of a dark dusky colour, the claws like the nails of a **Mans hand**, black.

The **Water Hare Fowl**, or the **crested Mexican Douker**; the *Mexicans* in their Language, call it an **Acitli**; it is the same to the precedent, only the head is adorned with a greater and black crest; the belly of a shining silver colour, and the neck beneath of a pure white; above of a dark brown; near the eyes there are white feathers; this Fowl is of the bignes of a **Duck**.

The **Brasilian Gull**, called **Guaca-guacu**; of others **Gaviota**; it is as big as a common **Hen**, a streight and long yellow Bill, the head above black; so are the hinder moities of the wings and tail; the throat and whole neck, breast and lower belly, and fore part of the wings are white.

The **Scare-Crow**, called by the *Dutch* **Brahvogel**, or **Negvogel**: it is a kind of small **Gull**, Bill black, head, neck, breast, belly, back and wings ash-coloured; the wings reach behind the tail; the legs have a light dash of red: the male hath a white spot under its chin; it is no bigger than a **Black-Bird**, and hath web'd feet.

The **Cloven footed black Gull**; it is as small as a **Sea Swallow**; Bill black, head black, upper part of the body, dark cinereous; throat and breast, black, belly white; quill feathers on the out side all white, those next the body ash colour, tail forked, legs bare up to the middle of the second joint, feet small, of a reddish black colour, claws black.

The **Velvet Duck**; It is bigger then our common **Duck**. The Bill is broad and short, yellow on both sids and black on the middle, with a red hook at the tip; the head, and part of the neck, of a black green, or black, with a gloss or tincture of green; the legs and feet are red on the out side, and of a Citron colour on the inside, the web of the foot, and claws of a deep black, all the rest of the body is black, save a cross line of white in the middle of the wings, and a white spot behind each eye; the plumage of the whole body is so soft, as if it were Velvet, and therefore so named; though some Authors call it the **Black Duck** with a black red and yellow Bill.

The **Tufted**, or **crested red head Duck**. It is in all respects like other **Ducks**, but larger; having a greater and thicker head, then in proportion to the body; for the crown is covered with a curious silken plumage, of a pale red colour, they are longer than ordinary, and more erect, so that they appear like a great crest or tuft; the Bill and Eyes are red, beneath the eyes, on each side and under the throat, it is of a deep red; the whole neck, breast, belly and shoulders are black; the outmost quill feathers are black, tipt with white; the smaller quill feathers next the body are grey or ash colour, tipt with black; all the covert feathers are grey, except a white line in the uppermost ridge of the wing; middle of the back grey, with a tincture of red; with two white spots; the rump black, tail short and grey; the legs and feet red, clouded about the joints with black, the web connecting the toes, and soles black.

The **Scaup-Duck**; the Bill broad and blue; the head and neck, of a black with a gloze of green; the breast and under side of the neck black, mingled with some white; belly white, with a sprindling of yellow; the upper part of the back sooty or blackish; the middle white, waved with transverse brown lines; the rump and tail brown; the wings brown, having a cross line of white, the rest adorned with white spots; legs and feet, with the web and claws are of a dusdy blue colour.

The **Wild Brasilian Duck-Goose**, it hath the shape of a **Duck**, yet as big as a **Goose**; it hath a black Bill, and dusky legs and feet; it is all over black, except the setting on of the Wings, which is white, but the black hath a gloss of a shining green; it hath a crest or tuft on its head, of black feathers, and a corrugated red mass or bunch of flesh about the rise of the upper mandible of the Bill, it hath also a red skin about the eyes.

The **Guinny Duck**, they exceed our common **Ducks** in bignes of body; the Bill is very thick and tuberous at the head, from thence to the tip it grows narrower, till it ends in a sharp and crooked hook, it is black, but the end is red; in the head rises up something of a red colour like a Crest, but much different from a Cocks comb; for it is a certain tuberous eminency, scituate between the Nostrils, exactly resembling a red Cherry; the temples near the eyes are without feathers, the skin shewing red; it hath short legs of a chesnut co-colour; its head was black and tusted; the throat was powdered with whitish specks; eyes yellow, wherein appeared many little sanguine Veins; the whole body was also black, in the back having a tincture or gloss of green; in the wings and tail here and there, are some green and white feathers seen. This is by some Authors called a **Cairo-Duck**; of others a **Muscovy-Duck**; others an **African, Libic**, or **Guiny Duck**; see *numb.* 51.

The **Indian Duck**; hath a Head as red as blood, and so is a great part of the Neck adjoyning on the Back side, which is a kind of callous flesh, divided by incisures; and where it ends at the Nostrils, it lets down a caruncle of a different figure from the rest of the flesh (like that of a **Swans**) continguous, or joyned to the Bill. Its Head is bare of Feathers, save that on the top of the Head, through the whole length of it, there is a Crest or Tuft of Feathers, which when it is angry, it sets up. About and under the Eyes, the skin is spotted with white; the Eyes yellow, seperated from the rest of the Head by a black circle. The Bill is blew, with a black spot at the tip: the Feathers all along the rest of the Neck, are white: at the seting on of the Neck, is a circle of black, spotted with a few white spots; below this circle, the plumage of the Belly is white, and the upper side of the Body is brown: the ends of the Wings, and Tail, are of a shining green. The skin of the Legs are brown, with light circular incisures: the Membrane between the intervals of

of the Toes, is more pale, sprinkled with brown spots.

This is by some taken to be the same kind of **Duck** as the precedent, but more accurately described, for without all doubt, there may be many varieties of them: both in the tuberous flesh about the Bill, as also in the change of colours; and this we often see in our own tame **Duck**, that they vary infinitely.

The **Hercynie Birds**, are so called from their place of breeding, *viz.* *Hercina*, which is a Wood in *Germany*, being 11 days journy in breadth, and 40 in length. Whose Feathers in the darkest and closest Night, do shine so bright, that they give light to travailers in their journey, if they be before them in the way wherein they go.

3. I Come now to give some Examples of bearing of Fowls contrary to those shewed in former chapters, and also of other kinds of bearing, proceeding from parts of Fowls omitted before; as,

LIX. He beareth Azure, two **Doves Coambulant**, or **side** to **side**, or **Pigeons in Breast**, Argent; **Beaks** and **Legs**, Gules. These are a loving pair walking together hand in hand, both a brest; which is by some termed, a **Dove surmounted** of another, because some part of the further Bird is hid or covered, by that next in fight; but that can be no proper term in this case. Other a **Pair of Doves**; and no more, which is more likely, seeing they stand together as a friendly couple. This is born by the name of *Truelove*.

So other things after this manner standing, siting, or flying side to side are born, as

A 2 such S born by *Die Holtzadell*.

G two such O born by *Vangall*.

So on a Crown 2 Talbots co-sejant A collered O is the Crest of the Earl of *Unganadt*.

And out of a Crown 2 Swans Necks, side to side, to the sinister O is the Crest of *Thumben van Newenburg*. See *chap.* 19. *numb.* 97.

LX. He beareth Argent, two **Rooks**, or **Crows**, **endorsed**, **regardant**, Sable: In chief an **Eagles foot erected**, and **couped**, in the Thigh Gules. By the name of *Rockfote*. These are contrary to the precedent; going from, & departing asunder, yet like the old Proverb (loth to depart bids oft farewell) so these though going from each other, yet are determined to see each other as long as they can. Some term the Eagle Leg, **erected**, **reflected**, and **couped**: and the Birds **contrary-passant**, or **counter-passant**: **regardant**, or **respecting** each other. This is born by the name of *Passall*: *viz.* the Birds alone **Counter-passant**.

Per pale G and O 2 such Birds, counterchanged. Born by *Die Mounsinger*, and *Van Frundeck*.

Out of a Crown the Eagle foot erected O is the Crest of *Van Tanhavsen*, and being S is the Crest of *Grienthall*.

[ ]

LXI. He beareth Argent, two **Wood-peckers**, **erected**, and **endorsed**, proper. Thus these Birds will by their little sharp Claws, hang by the branches, picking the bark of Trees. This is born by the name of *Dicoben*.

O a **Pheasant Cock Sarcelled**, or cut through the middle and **erected**, **endorsed**, B born by *Die Rummell*. As this Bird is cloven throughout by the half, and set each half back to back. So the like bearing I have seen in the Lyon, Bear, and Bull, *&c.* That is cut in half and endorsed, or set Salter-wise which is very common in *Holland*, and *Germany*. O a Cock the like G. born by *Rothan* of *Brunswick*.

LXII. He beareth Sable, an **Eagle displaid**, with **Eares**, (or **Eared**) Argent, **collared** at the bottom of the Neck, Gules. Some do term this an **Eagles body displaid**, with the **Head of a Gryffon**: or an **Eagle displaid**, headed like a **Gryffon**.

☞ After this manner I have found in diverse *Dutch* Coats, **Birds thus displaid**, with **Wolves-heads**, **Dogs-heads**, and **Lyons-heads**, and the like. Which I should term from their Natures, a **Wolf-Eagle**, a **Lyon-Eagle**, and this a **Gryffon-Eagle**: because the Heads are so, and the rest of the Body wholly **Eagle**, or **Bird-like**, see *chap.* 19. *numb.* 99. This is born by the name of *Wigdorhessen*.

O a Goat-Eagle displaid S on his Breast an Escochion per fesse B and O a Mullet of six points, is the Town Arms of *Newkirchen* in *Germany*. See more *chap.* 12. *numb.* 83, 84, 85.

LXIII. He beareth Or, a **Demy Gryffon displaid**, **sans Wings**, Gules. After this manner, it is very ordinary, to have born in Arms, by the *Low-Country* Gentry: several sorts of Beasts, see *chap.* 9. *numb.* 3. This is born by the name of *Budlarvan*.

A the like G is born by the name of *Mioles*.

LXIV. He bearethe Vert, a **Demy Owle**, **erazed** and **displaid**, Argent. Some say an **Owle displaid**, **erazed** at the middle, or above the Thighs. Born by name of *Bachlingel*.

LXV. He beareth Purpure, an **Eagle displayed**, **sans head**, and the **Tail displumed**, Or. Some term it, without Head and Neck; the **Tail Serpentine**; because it runs out long from the Body. This is born by the name of *Rasin*.

A. the like Born by *Die Geroltowsky*, Sans head only S.

LXVI. He beareth Argent, the Body of an **Eagle**, **with two Heads**, Azure. This is also termed an **Eagle displayed** with two Heads, **Sans Wings**, **Legs**, **and Tail**: Others say, **dismembred** of its **Wings**, **Leggs and Tail**. This is Born by the name of *Sustangen*.

A. the like S. **debruised**, or **surmounted** with 3 bars G. Born by the name of *Die Stangen Zu Cunitz*, of the Dukedom of *Saxony*.

LXVII. He beareth Gules, a **Swans Neck couped**, with its **Head extended**, or thrust out, Argent. The Swan

Swan by reason of his long Neck, (when his Head, either **couped**, or **erazed**, is born in Coats of Arms) it is not termed (as in other Birds) the **Head of a Swan**, or **Swans Head, couped**: But ever termed, a **Swans Neck couped** or **erazed**. Yet some will say, a **Swans Head and Neck**, &c. This is Born by the name of *Swanhead*.

The Head and Neck thus, is the Crest of *Ruseck*.

LXVIII. He beareth Sable, a **Swans Neck couped**, Argent; and **maned**, Or. The **Swan** above all Birds hath ever his **Beak and Head** drawn tending downwards, and it is because of the length of his Neck, which he always carryeth in an arcuate, or bent form; when as all other Birds have their Bills, or Beaks drawn streight forwards. This is Born by the name of *Swanmane*.

The like S. Maned O. is the Crest of *Wyfelcosen*.

Out of a Crown the like S. Nebulee, or clouded proper. Is the Crest of *Aspach*; and also of *Ering*; two Families in *Bavaria*.

LXIX. He beareth Azure, out of a **Chapernon**, (or **Chaplet**) Or: **fretted**, Sable, a **Swans-head**, Argent; **Membred** Sable, **engrailed down the back of the Neck**, Gules; on each point a Beasant. There are Coats, who have each point adorned with several other things; as Roses, Trefoils, Annulets, and divers sorts of leaves, and the like; which are all to be mentioned, as aforesaid. Some Heraulds call that thing out of which the Swans Neck issueth; the **round top** of a **Mast**, the **foretop** of a **Mast**, and others the top of a **Tower**, but I take it rather to be a **Barons Chaplet**, or **Circle of Gold**, which anciently the Barons of our Kingdom, to distinguish them from other sort of People, did wear on their heads. This is the Coat of *Van Montpeir*.

The like O. Is the Crest of *Skaringen*.

a Swans Neck to the sinister O. the back of it adorned with 3 Plates, on each a Plume of Feathers O. and G. Is the Crest of *Sturmen*.

An Eagles *Head* barry of 6. A, and G. the Neck engrailed B. on each point a Peacocks Feather. Is the Crest of *Froburg*.

a Swans Neck per three G. A. and B. on the back of the first 2 Ostritch Feathers G. and on the second the like A. is the Crest of *Falckenstein*.

a Swans Neck A. the Engrail G. each point a Tortean or Button tufted G. Is the Crest of *Dortzer*.

The like O. on the Back 3 Buttons tufted G. Born by *Van Sickengen*: and a Griffons *Head* with four Buttons tufted G. Is the Crest of *Schelmen*, and also of *Van Bergen*; and an Eagles head S. with the like O. Is the Crest of *Van Helmstat*.

The like Neck per Fesse B. and A. on the first 3 Beasants, by *Lorrach*.

The like B. on the points of three Dentals G. as many Mullets of six points O. Is the Crest of *Van Gottesheim*.

The like B. Engrailed G. on each point on Hawks bell O. the like in a Field A. Is the Crest and Coat of *Van Casselberg* of *Switzerland*.

An Eagles head S. 3 indents, and on each 2 Buttons A. Is the Crest of *Cammer-Meister*.

LXX. He beareth Gules, a **Swans Neck** Argent, **fined** on the Back, Or. Some term this a **smooth fin**, and **skinny Membrane**; which in some Authors I have seen **Gobbony** of two colours, which then is to be mentioned. This is Born by the name of *Die Van Nexam*.

The like A. the Fin Gobony O. and G. Born for the Crest of *Van Stagsale*.

And as these **Swans Necks** are **Adorned**, so in many Out-landish Coats and Crests, other Birds, and Beasts, also are set forth: Which for the Blazoning thereof, you may follow these foresaid Rules and Terms.

LXXI. *He* beareth Argent, the **Head** of a **Skua**, or **Cornish Gannet, couped**, proper. This Bird I have described in *chap.* 12. *numb.* 19. under the name of **Skua**.

Therefore shall say no more of it here, only shew you the shape of the Head, being bodyed like the **Gull**, of which kind it is, being whole footed, wanting the hinder Toe.

A. three such heads couped proper. By the name of *Van Escue*.

LXXII. *He* beareth Sable, **two Eagles Legs erected, couped** in the Thighs, the **dexter surmounted** of the **sinister salterwise**, Or. Some again onely Blazon it in short; two **Eagle Leggs erected and couped in Salter**: as mattering not which of them surmounted the other. This is born by *Salterage*.

A. the like G. Born by *Die Heln Van Sutheim*.

LXXIII. He beareth Gules, a **Wing**, Argent. This I have caused to be set here, for two causes: First to shew you the old fashion of drawing Wings, how the **Pyme** or **Quill Feathers** stand open, and at distance, one from another, with a thrid between each Feather, and the Ponion very large and broad.

And Secondly to give you to understand, what I mean by the **exteriour** and **interiour Feathers** of the Wing; so ofter repeated in the foresaid description of Birds: By exteriours, are meant the greater Wing Feathers, or the first halfe of the quils on the Ponion, seated at the end, or outside of it from the Body. And the interiour, or lesser Wing Feathers, are the other halfe of the quill feathers, fixed on the Ponion next the Body. And these are againe divided into three parts, the **Greater Wing Feathers**, which are all those fixed from the end of the Ponion to the first joynt. The **Lesser Wing Feathers**, are those on the second, or middle part of the wing between the Joynts. And the **Least Wing Feathers**, which are those fixed on the Pinion, aboue the second Joynt next the body.

The *Duch Heraulds* make all their **Wings**, after this forme to these very tymes, as is to be seen by many Coats lately extent. se *numb:* 75 76 77.

B 2 Wings elevated A is the coat & crest of *Van Leibwalks*. And out of a Coronet O such a Wing B charged with a Cross cheque G & A is the crest of *Van Ingelheim* of the *Rhine Palatinate*.

2 Wings expansed S is the crest of *Bosen van Weldeck*.

The like A is the crest of *Van Andernach*.

a Wing

a Wing A at the end of each quill feather a Rose G is the crest of *Van Lindaw*.

G a Pilgrims staff erected O between 2 Wings displaid A is the coat & crest of *Van Harstall*.

LXXIV. He beareth Gules, a **Swans head issuing out of Base** Argent, **Pembread** Gules; a **Stable**, (or the *Greek* Letter Pie) thrust through the middle of the **Neck**, points **Erected**, Or; On the ends, two **Coronets**, of the first; with **Peacocks Tails**, out of them, proper. These kind of Crests are in much esteem in the *Low Countreys*; having the **Stable** thrust through several sorts of **Beasts**, and **Fowl**; and out of the Coronets variety of other things, as **Leaves, branches of Flowers, Feathers**, &c. and some instead of **Crowns**, have **Balls** fixt on the points; with such like things as aforesaid, set on them. This is the Crest of *Van Plasenbach*.

The Swans Neck as aforesaid O. is the Crest of *Lupsen*; and *Helfenstein*.

The same with the rest G. Is the Crest of *Gundelfingen*.

Out of a Crown an Eagles head G. holding the like Stable with Coronets Feathered in her Beak. Is the Crest of *Van Trenbach*.

The Swans Neck A. the rest O. by *Justingen*.

a Demy-Horse A. Bridled S. thrust through as afore O. Is the Crest of *Van Fraunberg*.

a Swans head G. thrust through with a Stable points erected and bearbed on the out-sides O. with a plume of Feathers thereon A. by the name of *Ehinger*.

a Unicorns head A. with the like Stable at whose points are Bezants with a tuft of Grass thereon V. Is the Crest of *Rothenham*.

a Demy Lyon G. with a Stable as aforesaid, the points Bottoned A. each with an Acorn slip proper. Is the Crest of *Van Hackenberg*.

a Demy Woman clothed G. crined and flotant O. holding such a Stable before her with both hand points crowned and set with a Peacocks Tail. Is the Crest of *Van Besem*.

LXXV. He beareth Vert, (**Feathers** of two **ponions**) or rather two **Dutch Wings conjoined** in one **pendant**, Argent. By the name of *Tusch*. These would be best termed, two Wings conjoyned in one at the Shoulder-joynt Fesse-waves, the quill-feathers pendant.

The joyning of the two bottom, or Shoulder parts of the Wings together maketh that round Button in the middle, which the *German* Heraulds often make into three Buttons; and by joyning the out-most parts of the Wings, make the said Shoulder parts out-wards, and end them in Bottonies, Crosses, Eagles heads, Lions heads, and such like, as in the next examples.

A. two such in Fesse S. Born by the name of *Wellenberg* of *Switzerland*.

O. two such S. Born by *Strass*.

A. one B. charged with a Cressent O. Is the Coat and Crest of *Pelderzimer*.

LXXVI. He beareth Azure, two **Dutch Wings conjoyned** in one, and in **form** of a **Semi-circle**; (or **joined in fesse** and **displaid**) the **dexter point** of the **ponion adorned** with a **cross Patee**; and the **sinister** with an **Eagles head**, Or. (I call these **Dutch Wings**, because they always make them thus joyned together: See *numb.* 73. 77. 78. This is Born by *Van Mabachful*.

S. the like (Sans Eagles Head and Cross) A. Born by *Van Derspar*.

S. the like O. Born by *Soneck*.

S. the like with Cross Bottony fixt to the middle A. Born by *Van Rudigkheim*.

A. the like G. a Cressant on it O. by *Van Ernberg*.

☞ Some term this a **Cressaut**, the **points adorned**, as aforesaid, and the out-side with Feathers. But that may not be, if the figures of Wings set down in the squares following be compared together; which manifests them to be Wings conjoyned, not a Cressant; and in my Judgment) is best termed, two **Wings conjoyned in one** at the **Prime**, or principal Feathers in a semi-circular form, Fesse-ways. But were an *English* Painter to draw them, he would set them forth, as is depicted in *chap.* 19. 89. and Blazon the same Cherubs Wings, which are always thus conjoyned, as you may see, *chap.* 1. *numb.* 24. and the Cross and Eagles Head to proceed from the rise of the first and last of the Ridge, or covert Feathers of the ponion.

LXXVII. *He* beareth Argent, an **Ogress**, with three **Feathers** fixed to it, having the **Vanes**, or **Filiment** only on the nether sides, pointing to the corners of the Escochion Azure, **variegated** with Or. Some Blazon it more briefly, three **variegated** (or **mixt**) **Feathers in triangle**, fixed to an **Ogress**, (or **Roundlet**, or **Ball**) **vaned** on the lower sides. The *French* say three Feathers in the form of a Y. This is Born by *Featherston*.

G. the like A. Born by *Edovic* of *France*.

A. the like G. Born by *Van Eddaw*.

In the Dexter-Base of this quarter, I have caused to be Engraven another form of a **Wing** made generally by the *German* and *Dutch* Heraulds, which may clearly convince any ingenious person that both the **precedent**, and **subsequent Wings**, are two joined in one.)

☞ Those before, answering to our Wings mentioned, *chap.* 11. *numb.* 3. which we term **Wings conjoyned pendant**, and that following answereth to our Wings mentioned *chap.* 12. *numb.* 57. which we Blazon **Wings conjoyned elevated**: Therefore notwithstanding what I have said before, as from other Pens:) for brevity sake, and also to distinguish these from ours, they may be fitly termed, two **Dutch Wings conjoyned pendant**, as *numb.* 75. and two **Dutch Wings conjoyned circular pendant**, as *numb.* 76. and two **Dutch Wings conjoyned circular elevated**, as in the square, *numb.* 78.

B. a Dutch Wing elevated, the Shoulder end or joint Bottony A. a Canton O. Born by *Velberg* of *Francovia*.

A. the like B. Born by *Statelinbergh*.

LXXVIII. He

LXXVIII. He beareth Argent, **two Feathers in pale**, each **declining** (or **bending**) from the other, in the **tops**, Gules; **Shafts**, or **Quills**, Or.

☞ All Feathers of what kind so ever (except the **Ostritch**, which falls and doubles in the top onely) are either born streight or declining, as this example; but never **doubled into Falls**. This is born by the name of *Die Brobrach*.

The like O. Is the Crest of *Grafen*: having a Rose between the points of them.

In the Chief of this quarter, I have set another form of the *Dutch* or *German* **Wings**, which are **conjoyned** and **elevated**, as I shewed you in the last example G. the like A. in the Chief a Mullet of six points O. Born by *Van Hohenfels*.

S. the like Bottony in the middle; and the **Mullet** A. by *Van Rudigheim*.

B. two Dutch Wings conjoined Semi-circular in Fesse O. born by *Soneck* of the *Palatinate* of *Rhine*.

B. the like A. a Mullet of six points in Chief O born by *Van Derspar*.

XXIX. He beareth Sable, three **Ostritch Feathers** in **triangle**, **fixed** together in the **Center** (or **Fesse point**,) Argent; **Shafts**, Or.

☞ All things born in **triangle** do ever point to the three Corners of the Escochion; and though they be born in a **round**, **oval**, or **square**; yet the same rule must hold, two to be upwards, and one down. This is born by the name of *Ostarch*.

G. the like A. Born by *Van Leuthorheger*.

G. the like A. fixed to a Beazant. Born by the Earl of *Harrach* in *Germany*.

LXXX. He beareth Azure, a **Mullet of six points** Gules; **surrounded** with twelve **Ostritch Feathers**, Argent: the **Shafts in point**, Or.

☞ If these Feathers were of one colour, and another of another colour, and so round **counter-coloured**, then Blazon it thus; a **Mullet of six points**, Gules; at each an **Ostritch Feather**, Argent; between as many, Or: **Shafts**, Sable: In which Blazon you need not mention a surrounding or in point, as in the former. This is Born by *Featherstone*.

Others again term it, a **fall** or **round** of **Ostritch Feathers**,) with a **Mullet** (or such like) in the **Center**, or **middle**. Others have **Roses**, or **Rundlets**, or **Leopards Faces**, *&c.* for the Center of the Feathers.

A. the like G. Mullet O. Born by *Die Steger* of *Hassia*.

A. the like B. Mullet A. by *Steager* of *Carinthia*.

A. the like B. a plate in the middle. Born by *Van Hagenest*.

An Annulet G. **surrounded** with a **Turkeys Tail Feathers** A. edged S. Born by the name of *Koler*, whose Crest it is.

a Rose G. **surrounded** with **Peacocks Tail Feathers**, proper. Is the Crest of *Van Stromergan*.

LXXXI. He beareth Or, on a **Coronet**, Gules; a **Table of six squares**, **Chequey**, Argent and Sable; at each point an **Ostritch Feather** of the third, **quilled** or **Shafts**, Sable. This is by Artists, termed an **Oval Heragon** Table; or **Heragon Oval Table**: because it is framed out of an Oval, being longer one way than another. This is born by the name of *Van Saxogon*.

The like S. out of a Coronet O. charged with a Lion Rampant, debrused with a **Latice** O. the **Feathers Alternatim**, or **interchanged** A. and O. Is the Crest of *Van Lauming*.

The like Octagon Table B. charged with a Fesse O. at each point a **Peacocks Feather**, proper. Is the Crest of *Franckenstien*.

The like A. charged with a Goat Saliant S. at each point the like Feather proper. Is the Crest of *Chur*.

And so I shall Conclude this Treatise of Birds, and such Bearings as proceed from them: Onely making this Addition, which is to give the Terms of Art used by Historians, and such as have written concerning them; which are used in or about, or any way belonging to Birds, with their Explanations.

The signification of Birds used in Armory.

4. **Birds** in general, signifies Activity and Celerity, with speed in Matters of weight, and moment, and high Enterprizes.

Wings, are *Hieroglyphicks* of Celerity, and sometimes of Protection and Coverture; as the *Psalmist* often speaks, *of hiding under the Wings of Gods favour*: Because the Hen doth shelter her young from the Rapine of the Mightier, with spreading her Wings over them.

Feathers of Ostritches, are Emblems of Order and Rule: for *vi nulla invertitur Ordo*, as no Storm can put the Plume out of Order; so it betokeneth such an one, as nothing can disturb his Mind, or Disquiet his Spirits, but is ever one and the same.

Feathers of Eagles, being put amongst others, eats and destroys them; which denotes that to accompany Great Persons, and have too much Familiarity with them, is Dangerous, and Destructive, both to Soul, Body, or Estate.

Eagle signifies Magnanimity and Fortitude of mind, which never seeks to Combat with small ones, but his equals. *St. Johns* Divine Bird.

Eagle displayed, signifies both Protection, or Ruin, and Destruction; for the displaying of the Wings assureth Protection and Safety to the Obedient; and the extending of her griping Talons, doth betoken the renting, and ruin of all that resist and Rebel.

Eagles Legs, they are the Emblems of Warriers; it also denoteth that Devourers shall be Devoured, as the Leg hath destroyed, now it is rent away it self; a worthy

thy Document for all great Men, to stand in fear how they sieze on any Prey against Justice; if they escape the like with Man, yet it is just with God to shew no Mercy to the Mercyless.

Phenix, Is the Emblem of the Resurrection, and her Feathers of Gold are the symbol of Eternal Glory: She is a Bird of so many colours, that she is properly no colour; signifies such as would be every thing, yet good at nothing; except Destroyers and Wasters of their own Estates, and Embalmers of their own Bodies.

Faulcon, signifies fruitfulness, vivacity, celerity and quickness of sight, so that this Bird doth represent the Soul of Man, which mounts from Earth to Heaven, by the Wings of Divine Speculation and Contemplation. It is an Emblem in Herauldry betokening speedy performance in any business; and is also to be taken for such a one, as doth eagerly pursue, vex, and molest poor and silly Creatures.

Hawks, They are generally taken for Persons of Heroick Spirits, and such who are ready and serviceable for high affairs, though they live at rest, and not imployed; and being drawn down to the Lewer, betokeneth a freedom in Bonds.

Crow. Is the *Hieroglyphick* of long Life; and the blacker the Bird, the more noblet the kind; and denotes pulchritude; *though I be Black, yet I am comely*, Eccles. 1. 4. and 5 11.

Swan. Betokens sincerity and purity, it also denotes Beauty and Harmony of the Tongue, being the prevailing Solicitors for the obtaining of Love and Affection: It is the Ensign of the Poets, and well befits the Muses; being the *Hieroglyphick* of a Musical Man, and on that like *Solon* counts none happy till the last end, and then to sing out his own Epitaph, makes himself Immortal.

Ostritch, resembles one who is a better Indicter than an Orator, helping by his Wing, what he cannot do by his Tongue, or Feet.

Raven, signifies an industrious Person that Cherisheth and Fostereth them that are of the like Spirit, Gifts, or Qualifications to themselves: For it is reported of the **old Ravens** that they will not feed their young ones, till they perceive them pen-feathered and black like them; then do they labour to bring them up. It is also the Emblem of a Clamorous, Fraudulent person, stealing filthy things and hiding them secretly; eager and cruel in fighting amongst themselves, tyronizing and subjecting the vanquished to their Wills.

Young Ravens, denotes God's Providence.

Ibis, is a destroyer of Serpents, and denotes Heroes and valiant Persons of ancient times, who were worthy of Praise and Renown, because they destroyed serpentick kind of Men.

Dove. Is the symbol of the Church, which though she have layn amongst the Pots, yet she shall be as the Wings of a Dove, whose Wings are Silver, and her Feathers of Gold: denoting her Simplicity in the one, and her future Glory in the other; which the Bearer of it ought to imitate, expressing that pureness of Life through Innocency and Constancy here, that in the end he may attain eternal Felicity.

Nightingale, is the sister of Harmony, and doth allude to Poetry and Oratory: It signifies Solitariness and Sequestration from the converse of Men, but frequented by the Gods and the Muses.

Swallow. Is the Mistress of Melody; yet delights in solitary places; especially in Houses, Towns, and Cities, where she exerciseth her Eloquence. So that it denotes one that is Industrious, prompt and ready to dispatch business.

Lapwing. Is made the Emblem of Tyranny; his long sharp Bill representing his Tyranny; his tuft on his head signifies his Diadem.

Cock. Is the Herauld of the Day, and the Sentinel of the Night, by whom the Ancients in their *Hieroglyphicks* represented Vigilancy. It is the Emblem of Courage and Chivalry; and denotes a noble Commander that scorns to fly the Field, that keeps a vigilant watch by Night, and rejoyceth for the Victory, boasting when his Enemy is vanquished.

Owl. Is the Emblem of Death, yet hath the faculty of Watching and Musing the powers of the Mind, being in the silent Night more collected and vigorous: She betokens in Arms a prudent Man, vigilant, and of an acute Wit; yet it shews a Melancholy Temper, shuning Company, and loving solitariness. The Owl is *Minerva's* Bird, as consecrated to her.

Crane. is an Emblem of Pride and Arrogancy, and therefore serves as a Monitor to the Bearers thereof to avoid such Vices: For if a Man once begin to admire his own Parts and Features, and those Excellencies wherewith he is endued; it causeth a contempt of those in the higher Powers.

Stork. Is the Emblem of Dutifulness. We are sent to this Fowl to learn their Seasons: *Jer.* 8. 7. *as they take care of their young, when helpless*; so Nature binds them to care for their Parents in old Age. It denotes a thankful Person, one that returns the like for like; as Love, Honour, Obedience, Aid and Succour, all which are found in this Fowl.

Bat, or **Reremous**, signifies men of quick and secret execution, that brings his Stratagems to pass in the Night: They also betoken men of small power or nobility, yet raiseth himself by wit and industry.

Chough, or **Cornish Crow.** It is accounted King of Crows, and is a Bird that many times proves a great Incendiary stealing of fire to the indangering of Houses; and may betoken the Bearers thereof to be Men of Execution of Stratagems to the disadvantage of his Enemies.

Martlet, and **Swallow** are Companions in swiftness, and Companions in the Spring of Prosperity; but forsakes their own Country in the time of Adversity: And therefore a fit Emblem of Feined & Temporizing Friends, who in time of Honour and Abundance will gladly Converse with those; who in Needs and Tribulations will forsake, and scarce acknowledge they ever saw them.

Peacock, is the Emblem of Pride and Ambition; and denotes the Bearer to be an Admirer of himself, though he be basely descended, and of a dirty Condition.

Peacocks Tails, are much Born in Crests, and are Symbols of Honour and Nobleness.

Pellican, is an Emblem of the four Paternal Duties of the Parents to their Children, as Generation, Education, Instruction, and Examples for the Exercise of a virtuous and honest Life. Also is the Emblem of an affectionate Prince; and denotes Christs sufferings.

Hell

Hen and **Chickens**, is an *Hieroglyphick* of Safety, Protection, and Preservation; for by the Hens spreading of her Wings over her Brood to defend them from Rapin: So Christ doth defend his People from the Insolency of all Enemies.

Hen Feeding with her Chickens, denotes care over them, Providence, and Instruction.

Harpey, is the Emblem of Rapine and Man-slaughter, and is fit to be given to such that by their often viewing of their Ensigns, they may be moved to bewail the foulness of their offence.

Cockatrice, is the most pestiferous and poysonful of all Serpents, and is a little King among them; and denotes Devilish and Destructive people; as Wizards, Witches, Conjurers, *&c.* that do work the destruction of silly Infants and Cattle of their Neighbours, whose prosperous Estate is to them a most grievous Eye-sore. Sometimes denotes a Couragious Soul, not to be daunted.

Weavern, is an *Hieroglyphick* of the Keeper and Preserver of Riches and Treasure; and denotes such a one which hath the charge of such things, that he is admirable sharp sighted, and most valiant.

Martinet, is painted without Feet, to denote that the bearer must trust to the wings of Virtue and Merit to rise thereby, and not to their own stay or trust, which is Leggless and therein not able to raise.

Duck and **Mallard**; Creatures of much care by reason of many Enemies, as Men, Eagles, Dogs; and therefore Nature hath assisted with many shifts: if Man, layes wait, they fly to the Water; if the Fagle pursue, there they dive under Water, if there the Dog molest they mount into the Aire: and so it denotes unto us, that wit, and varieties of divises doth often beguile the hopes of Enimies, which most eagerly pursue.

Kings Fisher doth denote tranquility, rest, safety, because she is an observer of the time, and knoweth her season: having an aspect of things before hand.

Heron: is the emblem of security, height, and loftiness of spirit, aspiring minde, and haughty actions; for he flyeth high.

Coccoo: denotes a person to be kept in subjection, to be under anothers care and protection, and that cannot live but by help of them; it signifieth a person to live on anothers labour; *Parit in alieno.* This Bird also betokens feigned friends who in the Summer of honor and prosperity abide with; but in the Winter of adversity will forsake us.

Quale, it is the emblem of rest, and to be void of care and labour, to cease from troubles; after much care, troubles and labour of Body, and Spirit: to bear a conscience and quiet mind, in the midst of calamities.

Pheasant Cock; is a deceitful Bird, and signifieth a person that is of an uncertain judgment, that his fame and reputation is deceivable: unfaithful, unloyal, and unconstant in his actions.

Coot is an emblem of a joyful mind according to the times and seasons.

Finch, or **Chaffinch**: small Birds are of much nimbleness and activity: and therefore are emblems of working spirits, ready to perform and accomplish any actions: but like these Birds fly confusedly, some here, some there, not knowing their lighting place; so it betokeneth such a person as is doing and undoing, acting he knoweth not what, would make himself busie in a matter he understands not: a Busy-body.

Wood-cock; when he flyeth shuteth his Eyes, supposing he is not seen, because he seeth no body. Is a fit emblem of a wicked deceivable person who indeavouring to chate others, chats himself: and denotes a fool that is wise in his own conceit; or would be thought to be wise.

Mag-pye; is an emblem of him who gathereth riches, yet knowes not who shall enjoy them. And by his chattering hath a double voice, which denotes a two fold meaning: a dissembler, a double minded person.

Turtle Dove; is the emblem of conjugal love, and betoketh matrimonial chastity. For if one of the pair dye, the other pineth away, and dieth for grief.

Turky-cock, or

Indian Cock; being enraged, or furiously angry, exalts himself: is proud, stately, and lofty: and therfore fitly deciphers such a person who swells with wrath and malice, when not worshiped, and honoured, as (in his thoughts) he ought to be.

Cormorant, hath but one Gut, and therefore his Prey is no sooner in the Belly but out, so by often swallowing it is at length disgested: which is a fit emblem of this mortal life, being no sooner come into the World but out again. From the Womb to the Tomb.

Duzell, or **Black-birds**; sings in Summer, and in Winter is silent, or tongue tied: which denotes the humours of Men in the various conditions of this life, jocos in prosperity and time of abundance, but dejected in adversity.

Kite, and all Birds of Prey that are armed with Tallons, are emblems of warriours and valours, and that nothing will satisfie such, but the overcoming of their Enemy.

Goose, is the emblem of dulness and dasterlyness, if they go through a Barn-door, they will hold dowe their head: It is a name cast off and dispised of all Men to be termed a **Goose**. Thereby denoting the person to be of no parts or excellency.

Parrat, or **Popinjay**; denotes an excellent Logician one that can be the Mouth of other Men, speak (as the Bird doth) both by Nature, and with Art.

Sparrow, is the emblem of instability and unconstancy of mind (according to the Proverb) off and on, like a **Cock Sparrow**. It denotes a wanderer from place to place, having no certain aboad.

Partridge, is the emblem of charity, and denote one that feeds maintaines, succours, and keep warm even those which are ready to perish.

Wood-pecker, the emblem of advancement, climing high, and gathering of riches: and denoteth one that will rise in the World let him have never so much opposition and molestation.

Of the External, or outward parts of Birds, in general;

4. WE do not intend to treat of all the parts of Birds, but those only which are peculiar, and proper

proper to them, and to no other Creatures, as in shape, size, use, or some other remarkable accident; as,

In the Bill or Beak, Mandable or Chap:

The **Rise of the Bill,** that part next and fixt to the Head.

The **Arcuate Bill,** bends either up or down like a bow.

The **Streight Bill,** and **thick.**

The **long** and **slender Bill.**

The **thick** and **short Bill: a chub Bill.**

The **short** and **hooked Bill,** when it hath a hook or bent in the tip end.

The **short** and **slender Bill.**

The **narrow serrate,** or **toothed Bill;** the edges indented like a Saw.

The **broad Bill, flat,** or **depressed Bill.**

The **sharp pointed Bill.**

The **flat Bill,** and **triangular Bill.**

The **furrowed Bill,** having incisures, or slits cut into the Bill.

The **Angled Bill,** which hath only one tooth in the middle of the upper Chap.

Nostrils.

The **Hairy,** or **Bristled Nostrils,** such as are covered or have hair growing near or about them.

The **tuberous Nostrils,** which have swilling or fleshy rising, about the Nostrils, a lob of flesh on the Nostrils.

The **membranous Nostrils,** such as are covered about with a naked skin.

The **Caruncles,** or knotty pieces of flesh, hanging about the Bill, Nostrils, or any part of the Head, as in Turky-cocks, and Muscovy Ducks.

Eyes and *Eye-lids.*

The **Pupil** of the Eye, is the black spot in the middle.

The **Iris,** and **Irides,** the circle or circles about the black of the Eye.

The **Ball** of the Eye.

The **Nictatious Membrane,** or membrane for nictation, is that skin wherewith Birds cover their Eyes, though their Eye-lids be open. Nictating membrane.

The **Orbit** or **Cavity,** is the hole in the skull, in which the Eyes are placed.

Prominent Brows: that is when the Eye-brows over-hang the Eyes: rising Eye-brows.

Head and *Mouth* and *Ears.*

A **Crested head,** such as have Feathers standing up on the Crown of the Head, like the Crest, or top of a Helmet.

A **Tufted head,** such as have only some few Feathers falling backwards from the Head.

A **Crowned head,** such as carry fleshy Crowns, Crests or Combs, or any other tuberous, or calleous, hard or brawny, substance.

A **Naked head,** when it hath no Feathers on it.

The **Fissure,** the clift, or crevise, in the Pallat of the Mouth.

The **Valves,** the covers of the Ears, Feathers standing about the Ears to cover them.

The **Fronte,** is the fore-part of the Head.

The **Noddle,** is the hinder part of the Head.

The **Aperture** of the Mouth, is the open of the Mouth.

The **Bridle,** or the Membrane connecting the Mandables, are the skins at each corner of the Mouth which tye the two Chaps together: by the softness, colour, and thickness of this part, young Birds may be discovered from old ones.

The **Vertebres** of the Neck, the turning joynts of the Neck.

The **Crest,** or **Comb;** that as groweth on the Heads of Cocks, of several kinds.

The **Gill,** or **Wattles;** that red fleshy part or skin, which hangs under the Chin of several sorts of Cocks, as the Pheasant, Turky, and Dunghill-Cock, *&c.* Some call them, the Cocks **Jelloppes,** or **Jow-loppes.**

Wings and *Feathers therein.*

Rudiments of Wings, useless Wings, such as cannot fly with them, as in the Pengwin, Dodo, and Cassiwary.

Agitated Wings, are Wings that being extended, assist the Bird to run, but cannot fly with them, as in the Ostridge.

Membranaceous Wings, are Wings like thin skin or filme, or pill of a tree, as in the insects: Bees and Hornets.

Cutaneous Wings, Leather Wings, as in Bats.

Calamous Wings, are such as are composed of Quills, and Feathers, a feathered Wing, by which Birds and Fowl fly by beating the Aire.

Secundary, or **Bastard Wing:** It is a certain finger-like appendix, made up of four, or five small Feathers, at the end, or extremitie of the Wing: of which there are two, the exteriour bastard Wing, and the interiour bastard Wing, which is the row of Feathers on the inside, next the Body.

Ridge, or **base** of the Wing, is the very edge, or outside of the Ponion, in which the Quill feathers are; that

Quill that part of the Feathers, as sticks into the flesh.

Shaft, or **Stem,** the middle part of the Feather to which the Vane or Filiment is fixed.

Feather, Plume, Callow, Fledge, or **Pluck; Filiment, Web** or **Vane:** by all which Names or Terms it is called, being the soft hairy part, which is fixt to the Stem, or Shaft of the quill.

Downy Feathers, is the finest and softest kind of Feather, having little or no Quill, or no Shaft at it.

Body and *Thighs.*

Plumage, is the Feathers wherewith the Trunck, or Body of Birds, are covered.

Down

Down, is that which young Birds are covered withall after they are hatched.

Moult their Feathers, is to cast their Feathers yearly, and new ones to come in their room.

Legs and *Feet*, or *Toes*.

Divarication, the parting place, of the Leg, where it shoots forth into the Toes: called the **Divarication of the Foot.**

Membranous Leg, such as be covered with a skinny substance.

Scalled Leg, such as are covered either with scales, or after a scale-like form.

Spur, is a sharp pointed horny substance, fixed on the Legs of a Cock, or Pheasant.

Commissure of the Legs, the joynings of the scales of the Legs and Feet.

Incisures of the Legs, are the impressions, or cutings in, or marks of the scales, on the Legs and Toes.

Whole footed, or Webbed foot, such as have skinny Membranes between the Toes, joyning the Toes together.

Divided foot, such as have the Feet open, without a Membrane.

Connected foot, is such as have a Membrane between the Toes, and yet the Toes are joyned or knit, but to the first joynt.

Finned foot, such as have skinny Membranes on each side the Toes, yet joyn not the Toes together.

Membrane, is that skinny substance, that joyns the Toes together, as in the Toes of Geese, and Ducks.

Claw, or **Talon**, Clutch, sharp **Horny hooks**, or Nails fixed on the end of the Toes of Birds Feet by which they seize on their Prey.

Tail, Rump, and *Hole*.

The **Vent**, or **Orifice**, its the place by which the excrements is avoided. The **Arse hole.**

The **Rump**, is the place in which the Tail feathers are fixed.

The **Stern**, or **Tail**, are those Feathers fixt on the Rump, which serves as a Rudder, for to steer their course. and to turn them in the Aire.

The **Flexures**, of the Tail, are the Birds turning and winding of its Tail, as it flyeth.

Of some remarkable Inward parts of Birds and Fowl, not incident to other Animals.

The **Whiffen**, or Wind-pipe.

The **Craw**, the place for the reception of meat, which hangs at the lower part of the Neck. Called the **Crop.**

The **Merry thought**, is the bone that lieth between the Neck, and the Breast-bone.

The **Gizzard**, or **Gizzarn**, or Stomach in which the meat is ground, brused and disgested; it is not common to all Birds; for Rapacious, and some Piscivorous Birds have a Membranous one.

The **Gullet**, is the thin skinny Gut, by which the meat goes from the Mouth, to the Craw, or Crop.

The **Blind Guts**, or **Appendices**, a Gut that descends from the Somach, downwards to the Fundament; most Birds have two of them, the Heron kind have but one, and the Wood-pecker kind, none.

The **Single blind Gut**, is a small Gut like a Worm, which is nothing else, but the remainder of that passage, by which the Yolk is conveyed into the Guts of the young Birds. In some it is very conspicuous, others very little, and in some, not seen at all.

The **Pancreas**, all Birds have 2 of them, which some call the Sweet-broads in quadrupeds or four footed Beasts.

The **Testicles** or **Stones** of Cock-birds.

The **Labyrinth**, is a kind of a Vessel in which the Wind-pipe ends: made up of bone and intermediate Membranes, in some whole footed Birds; and in some it is made up wholly of bone without any void spaces to be filled up of Membranes: and some wholly want it.

The **Ovaria**, are clusters, or knots of Eggs, which in the Cock are taken for his Testicles.

The **Ante-stomach**: is the supply of the Gullet, by being large and wide, in those Birds that want a Crop, or Craw: where meat is retained till it be ready for the Gizzard.

The **Glandules**, are two kind of kernells which grow in the upper side of the Rump, within the skin.

The **Oyl-bor**, the Holes in the Rump, where the Glandules lye.

Remarkable things in Birds.

All Birds have Bills of horny substance, by which they gather and receive their meat, or are as weapons to fight with, or defend themselves. They use them also, to build their Nests, to feed their young, and climb withal.

All Birds want the Epiglottis, the cover of the Wind-pipe, it being not necessary to them, for the modulation, or articulation of the voice.

That the Cranny in the top of the Head of the Wind-pipe, by which the Aire passes to and fro in respiration, lyes directly under cleft of the Pallate, or the holes which goes to the Nostrils.

All Birds that have long Legs, have long Necks, otherwise they could not gather up their food on land, or in the Water. But on the other side all that have long Necks have not long Legs.

All Birds want the Channel-bones in the Breast, instead whereof they have a bone, which we call the Merry thought.

All Birds have four Toes on each foot, three standing forward, and one backwards; yet some have all four standing forward; some two forwards, and two backwards: others three forwards, and want a Back-toe, the Ostriteh of all other, having but two Toes.

All Birds wanting the Back-toe, never sit, or Roost on trees, and the Leg-bone, and middle Toe, in most Birds are of an equal length.

All Birds that are whole footed (some few excepted) have the inner Toes with an external welt, or border of skin, all along the Toes, of a good breadth, but never welted on the outmost Toes.

All Birds that have four Toes, the Back-toe hath but one bone; the outmost of the Fore-toes, two bones: the middlemost three and the inmost four.

All Birds that have a Back-toe, have generally the outmost and middle Toes, for some space, even to the first joynt from the divarication, joyned together in the bottom by a skinny Membrane: very few excepted.

All Birds have a Rump, even such as want Tails, in which grow two glangules in holes, or excretory vessels, furnished with a certain unctuous humour.

All Birds generally have their bodies covered with Feathers, few with hair: some have their Heads bare, some their Thighs, but most have their Legs, and Feet.

All Birds are covered with down, when and while they are young.

All Birds of the smallest sort generally have 18 flag, or quill feathers in the Wing: and 12 in the Tail. Those of the middle size, have the like number; those of the Poultry kind have 27 Quill, or Wing Feathers; and some 14, others 16, others 18, in the Tail. Those of the greatest bulk of Body, have 38 flag, or quill feathers, and 18 in the Tail.

All Birds have the Vanes, or Webs of the Quill feathers of the Wing, much broader in the interiour side of the shaft, then on the exteriour. All other Feathers on the Body, and Tail, have the Vanes, or Filaments, both of a breadth.

All Birds have the bottom of all the Feathers, such as appear not to sight, of one and the same colour; and for the most part, differ from what is exposed to view.

All Birds in a manner have their lower Belly, & Vent, and under their Wings whitish.

All Birds have a Craw or Croop to receive their meat, and a Gizzard to grind and disgest it, they having no other Stomach, or Middriff, as in quadrupeds.

All Birds though they want a Bladder for Urine, yet have they large Reins, and Ureters; by which the Urine is carried away, so runs down into the common sink, designed for the receiving of the Excrements of the Belly: and being therewith mingled, both are cast together.

All Birds are oviparous; bringers forth of Eggs, which Eggs though they have a different colour, according to the Birds kind, yet the exteriour bark being pilled off, they are white and yolk.

All female Birds, have in them from their first formation, a knot or cluster of Eggs, of all that they shall afterwards lay throughout their whole life time. So that when the cluster is spent they cease breeding, and become effete; past bearing.

In all Eggs, there is first the shell, secondly 4 skinny membranes, two which begirds the thinner outward white; and another thinner and more subtile Membrane, which covers the inner white, and one that contains the yolk. Thirdly a two folded white, both involued in their proper Membranes, the outward thinner, and more liquid; the other thicker, and more clammy. Fourthly the yolk; and lastly the Treddles, or Cock trades, which are two white spots, like hail fastned to the Membrane of the yolk.

All animals are said to proceeded from Eggs, not only Birds, Serpents, Fish, and Insects, which are known to cast forth Eggs: but also Viviparous, or live bringers forth, as all four footed Beasts do, nay Women also: for all femals of what Nature soever have Eggs within them, though they do not bring them forth; that is, those two Bodies, commonly called Female testicles; are nothing else but knots, or masses, of very small Eggs; as will manifestly appear to any that will dissect the same, which Ovaria, have many Eggs of different magnitudes; which by generation being brought forth, or marred, or corrupted, that Female ceases to bear.

All or most Birds, when they sleep turn their Head backward, and put it under their Wing; and also stand upon one foot, the other being drawn up to the Belly, to keep it warm among the Feathers.

All long legged Birds, when they fly streach out their Legs to the Tail; and short legged Birds, draw them up to the Belly.

All Birds naturally make Nest both hear and in forraign parts, all alike; according to their several species, or kinds: using the same materials, and observe the same shape or form as if they made them by the same patterns; meerly by instinct of Nature, not imitation.

All Birds grow faster then quadrupes; for in six weeks they are generally able to feed themselves, and fly about, and in six Mounth attain to their full groath, and maturity of strength.

All Birds with hooked Bills, through age have them grown so much, that they are hindred of feeding.

All Birds as run, and feed themselves as soon as they are hatched; build, and make their Nest, on the ground.

5. BIRDS may be distinguished by their usual places of Living, their Food, Bigness, Shape, Use, &c. which by the Revererend Dr. *Wilkins* are reduced into these eight Classis or Orders.

First, **Carnivorous** Birds, such as feed on Flesh.

1. **Rapacious Diurnal Birds**, such as Prey on Animals in the day time, as

Eagle	Butchers Bird	Gerfalcon
Vulture	Bald Vulture	Falcon
Hawk	Goshawk	Lannerett
Kite	Tarcell	Hobby
Buzzard	Sparrow Hawk	Merlin
Glede	Muskett	Ring Taile
Cuckoo	Bald Buzzard	Goat-Sucker

2. **Rapacious Nocturnall Birds**, such as Prey in the Night, as

Owle	Horned Owle	Scrich Owle

3. **Semi Rapacious**, such as feed on Carrion, or other things, Seldom on liveing Animals, as

Raven	Paraqueto	Woodspite
Crow	Py Magpy	Hickwall
Chough	Woodpicker	Witwall
Rook	Jay	Hiho
Whitebill Crow	Wryneck	Red Sparrow
Roller	Nuthatch	Oxe-eye Creeper
Parrat	Wall Creeper	

4. Erotic

4. **Exotic Birds**, such as have Shapes contrary to other Fowles, as

Toucan	Dodo	Emew
Rhinocerot	Ostritch	Lagopus
Bird of Paradise	Cassaware	

Secondly, **Phytivorous** Birds, such as feed on Vegitables.

1. **Domestick**, living at Houses, and called Poultrey.

Cock Hen	Chicken	Peacock
Capon	Pullet	Turkey

2. **Wild**, Liveing in Fields and Woods. as

Pheasant	Wood cock	Hazel Hen
Partridge	Heath cock	Bustard
Grous	Quaile	Raile
Queese	Field Drakes	Attagen

Thirdly, **Phytivorous Birds**, such which have long wings. as

1. Of the Pigeon or Dove kind. as

Pigeon	Ring Dove	Turtle
Dove	Stock Dove	Queest

2. Of the **Thrush Kinde**, such as feed on Missle Berryes. as

Missle bird	Mountaine ouzell	Starling
Throstle	Solitary Sparrow	Mearle
Ouzell	Stare	Shreight
Black bird		

3. **Birds of Passage**, Coming only in Winter. as

Feldefare	Redwing	Swinepipe
Thursh		

4. **Birds Crested**, having tufts on their heads, as

Galbula	Vpupa	Crested Regulus
Hoop	Crested Tit	

5. **Birds** having their foremost Toes joined together, or two Toes behind, and two before, as

Kings Fisher	Bee-Eater	Merops
Parrott		

Fourthly, **Phytivorous** Birds, with thick, strong short Bills. as

1. **Canorous**, or of a Singing kind, as

Bunting	Alpe	Green Finch
Yellow Hammer	Nope	Bramble
Hortulane	Chaffinch	Brambling
Canary Bird	Shell Apple	Linnet
Bulfinch	Cross-bill	

2. Not **Canorus**, as

Sparrow	Mountain Sparrow	Cocothraustes

Fifthly, **Insectivorous Birds**, that feed chiefly on Insects, and sometimes on Seeds, as

1. **Birds of Passage** coming in Summer, as

Swallow	Swift	Sand Martin
Martlet	Martin	Shore Bird

2. **Canorous Birds**, as

Nightingale	Robin Redbreast	Ligurinus
Lark	Ruddock	Serinus
Tir-lark	Redstart	Citrinella

*

3. Not **Canorous**, as

Atricapilla	Wagtail	Hedg Sparrow
Beccafigo	Stone smich	Regulus
Wheat-Ear		

4. Least kind of Insectious Birds, as

Humming Bird	Great Titmouse	Colemouse
Mope	Titmouse	Long tailed Tit

Sixthly, **Aquatick Birds**, such as live in or about wet places, having long legs.

1. Such as have Bills above an Inch long, as

Lapwing	Green Plover	Dotterell
Puett	Grey Plover	Sea Lark

2. Such as have Bills about two inches long, as

Redshank	Knot	Moor Hen
Ruffe	Stint	Water Hen
Tringa		

3. Such as have Bills about three inches long, as

Woodcock	Sea Pye	Silken Pullet
Snipe	Godwit	

4. Such as have long and crooked Bills, as

Curlew	Guara of Brasile

Seventhly, **Aquatick Birds**, living much in Water, being **Fissipedes**, or having open Toes, as

1. Such as Swim not, but Wade, as

Grane	Hearn	Bittour of Brasile
Stork	Grey Hearn	Shoveler
Phænicopter	Bittour	Spoon Bill
Grus Balearica		

2. Such as Swim, having Finned Toes, but not joined together, as

Didapper	Dabchick	Coote

Eighthly, **Aquatick Birds**, being **Palmipedes**, having their Toes joined together with a Membrane.

1. **Herbivorous**, such as feed on Grass or Herbs, as

Swan	Duck	Brant Goose
Goose	Widgeon	Bernicle
Gander	Teale	Brenta
Gosling	Hooper	Sea Pheasant
Shelldrake	Wild Swan	Gargane
Drake		

2. **Piscivorous**, such as are Fish Eaters, and have their four toes joined together, as

Solan Goose	Shagg	Razor Bill
Pellican	Puffin	Guillam
Cormorant	Pengwin	

3. Such as are of a Diving kind, as

Diver	Sea Mew	Scray
Dun Diver	Sea Swallow	Avogetta
Gull		

6. A more Brief Division of Birds.

1. *Terrestrial, or Birds, such as seldom frequent Waters, of which kind these following are, as the*

Rapacious, or **Carnivorous** Birds, which prey on flesh, and have Crooked Hooked Beaks, and Tallons, as Hawkes.

Fugivorous, or more Gentle Hooked Bills, and Claws, as Parrots.

Rapacious Diurnall Birds, such as prey by day light, as the Eagle, Falcon, Sparrow-Hawk, &c:

Rapacious Nocturnall Birds, such as prey by night, as the Owle.

Insect Birds, such as feed upon Worms, Flyes, Beetles, as the Woodpeckers kind, the Robin. *&c.*

Granivorous Birds, such as feed on Grain, as the Pigeon, and all Poultry kind.

Fructivorous Birds, such as feed upon Fruit, as Apples, Cherries and Berries; as the Thrush, Feildfaire, Mop and Tittimouse.

Promiscuous Birds, such as feed on Flesh, Insects, Fruit or Grain; as the Raven, and Crow kind.

Semenivorous Birds, such as feed upon Seeds, as the Linnet, Jacknicco, and the several sorts of Finches.

2. *Aquatick Birds, such as are in, and much conversant about Water, of which are these,*

Herbivorous Birds, such as eat Herbs and Grass.

Piscivorous Birds, that feed upon Fish, as all Water Fowl generally do, and upon Insects, which may be divided into the

Cloven footed Birds, that swim not, as the Crane.

Cloven Footed Birds, that do swim, as the Water Hen.

Fin-toed, that have lateral Membranes appendant to each side the toes, as the Coote.

Web-footed, and **Cloven-footed,** as the Osprey.

Web-footed Birds, which have the three formost toes connect and joined together by a skinny Membrane, as the Swan, Goose, Duck.

Web-footed Birds, that want the back toe, as the Puffin.

Web-footed, having all four toes joined together by a Membrane, as the Cormorant, Soland Goose, the Shagge, and Sea Pelecane.

Duck-footed, with narrow sharp pointed Bills, as the Gull, Mew, Turrock, Pewit.

Duck-footed, with narrow, serrate, or toothed Bills, as the Goosander, Diver.

Duck-footed, with broad Bills, as Barnacle, Sheldrake, Shoveler, and their kinds.

Of the Voices of Birds.

All young Birds when they are first hatched, when they begin to cry, we say they **peep, cheep,** or **pelp.**

The Cock **Croweth,** the Hen **Cackleth,** when she hath laid her Egg, and **Clucketh** when she hath Chickens; anp the Chicken **Peepeth** or **Chicketh.**

The Turky Cock **Jollopeth.**

The Dove and Pigeon **Waweth, Mourneth,** or **Lamenteth,** in building time; and **Crooweth** in following his Hen.

The Lark singeth **Tyra Lyra.**

The Sparrow **Chirpeth** or **Chirippeth;** being a company of small Birds together, **Tittleth.**

The Cuckow cryeth **Cuckow.**

The Bitter or Bitterne, **Bumpeth,** when he puts his his Bill in the Reeds, some say then the Bitter **Loweth** or **Bellowetb.**

The Chough, Cornish Crow, Jay, and the Pye; **Chattereth,** or **Annotteth.**

The Nightingale **Singeth pleasantly,** tuneably, and by measure.

The Eagle **Frilleth,** or **Scriketh.**

The Hawk, as Falcon, Gawshawk, and all such Birds of Prey, **cryeth, peepeth,** or **frilleth.**

The Gander **hisseth,** or **creaketh,** the Goose **gaggleth.**

The Raven **crooketh,** cryeth **Coyes.**

The Crow **haweth, kaweth,** or **croketh.**

The Partridg **chucketh.**

The Swan **singeth,** the wild Swan **brayeth.**

The Ring-Dove, Stock-Dove, Wood-culver, and Queest **cryeth,** or singeth, rejoiceth.

The Stork **glottereth,** this is a kind of fictitious term from the sound, chattereth.

The Peacock **pupilleth, scriketh, cryeth.**

The Crane **gnueth.**

The Kite **scriketh** or **sorroweth.**

The Drake and Duck or Mallard **quacketh.**

The Throstle, Ouzell, Thrush, **whisseth, singeth.**

The Tittimouse and Mob **twitteth.**

The Quaile **squaileth.**

The Bat **chippeth.**

The Owl, Night Raven, **skricheth, hooteth, wowwoweth.**

The Turtle cryeth **hu, hu,** mourneth.

The Yellow-hammer cryeth **zi, zi.**

The Sea Swallow **scrayeth.**

The Lapwing cries **Teewit.**

The Pheasant crieth **jacu, jacu.**

Birds how termed when many are together:

A **Herd** of Swans, Curlews, and Cranes.

A **Brood** of Cocks and Hens, and a **Peep** or **Flock** of Chickens.

A **Ny** of Pheasants.

An **Exalting** of Larks.

A

A **Watching** of Nightingales.
A **Sore**, or **Safe** of Ducks and Mallards, or a **Team** of Ducks.
A **Chern** of Gold-finches.
A **Muster** of Peacocks.
A **Clattering** of Choughes.
A **Beavy** of Quails.
A **Flight** of Doves, and Stares.
A **flock** of small Birds; or a **dissimulation** of Birds.
A **Sheigh** of Herons.
A **Seigh** of Bitters.
A **Flock**, or **Gaggle** of Geese.
A **Covye** of Partridges, is 3 or more, 2 is a Brace.
A **Spring** of Teals.
A **Desart** of Lapwings and Plover.
A **fall** of Wood-cocks.
An **Eirey** of Hawks, or a **Cast** of Hawks; 2 a lease of Hawks, and three a staff of Hawks.
A **Pack** of Grous, or Heath-cocks.
A **Swearm** of Bees, Wasps, and such like Insects.

The Feeding of several sorts of birds:

The Lapwing, or Plover, on Horse-dung, or Cow-shorn.
The Gnat-Snapper, on Figs.
The Cole-mouse, Titty-mouse, the Hooper, on Bees.
The Robin Red-breast, and Swallow, on Flys.
The Sparrow, on Worms and Corn.
The Wood-pecker, on picking of Trees, and pulling out thence little Worms, lurking in them.
The Thrush and Feldfare, on Juniper and Hay berries.
The Nightingale, Tit-mous, Chaffinch, Gold finch, and Linnet, on Poppy, Flax, and Thistle seeds.
The Duck and Mallard, on Chick-weed, Frogs and Toads, Oats.
The Goose, on Grass and Herbs.
The Cock, Hen, Turkey, and Pea-cock, on all sorts of Corn.
The Vulture and Raven, on raw Flesh, or Carrion.
The Hawks of all kinds, on small Birds, and what they can by way of Preying take.
The Water Fowl, on Fish and Water Insects.
The Stork, Crane, and Heron, on Snigs and Eels.
The Cormorant, on all sorts of small Fish.

Several sorts of Poultry, how called according to their Age.

A **Cock**, first a Peep, then a Chicken, then a Poot, then a Cockrel, then a Crowing Cock; and if his Comb and Wattles be cut off, and Scicle Tail trimmed, then a fighting Cock; if the Cock have his Testicles cut away, then he is a Capon.

A **Hen**, a Chick, then a Chicken, then a Pullet, then a Pullen, then a young Hen, then a laying Hen.

A **Duck** or **Mallard**; first a dig Bird, then a Duckling, then a Duck.

A **Goose**, first a Gazeling, then a Green-Goose, then a Stubble-Goose, then a Goose.

A **Partridge**, first a Peckle-Head, then a Chicken-Tail; then a 1, 2, 3, and 4 Feather, then a round set; then an old Partridge.

Nestlings, are all sorts of young Birds, not yet parted with their Nests.

Branchers, young Birds which when they forsake their Nest, begin to fly from branch to branch.

Fledged Birds, ripe Birds that are able to fly any where, and provide themselves.

Terms of Art used by Naturalists in their description of Birds, explained.

7. A **Uiary**, or **Aviaris**, the place in which many Birds are kept together.

Aperture of the Mouth, is the open of the Mouth.

Ambit, or circle of the Eye-lid.

Arcuate Bill, is an arched, or bending Bill.

Alternately placed, that is when cross Bars in Feathers, or Wings, succeed on the other, as first white, then black, then white, &c.

Appendices, are any little things, which as extravagants in Nature hang by any part of the Body, Dependences, Additions.

Azure colour, a pure blue, or sky-colour.

Aquileous colour, the colour of Water, blackish, or dusky.

Anomalous bird, such a Bird as is not like another Inequality in Birds.

Asperities, things that are rough, rugged, or hard and uneven.

Birds of passage: See **Passage**.

Branchers, are Birds newly forsaking their Nest, and begin to fly from branch to branch.

Baccivorous Birds, are such as eat or devour Berries, and small Fruit.

Crust, or Case of Grashoppers Eggs.

Couvie, to sit as Hens do.

Cyaneous, a bright blue, an azure colour, sky colour.

Cereous, a wax colour.

Croceous, a saffron yellow.

Castaneous, chestnut colour.

Ceruleous, a bluish colour, or between blue and green.

Corrugated, wrinkled or furrowed.

Concoct solid Meat, digest strong feeding.

Carnivorous Birds, such as feed on flesh, flesh-eaters.

Contiguous Bird, a Bird that is very near, or like to another.

Canorous Bird, that Whistles, or Sings; a singing Birds.

Cartilage, or Membrane, or skin in Ducks, or Geese-Feet, which joyns the Fore-toes.

Callous Leggs, having no scales, without scally Leggs.

Cartilagineous, of a gristly substance, full of Gristles.

Cranny

Cranny billed, a Bill channelled, or with furrows in it.

Convolutions, a flying together; also a wrapping, or winding, or compassing about.

Carneous colour, a flesh colour, fleshly.

Coaster, a Keeper of a Decoy, or place to catch wild Fowl.

Calluous, a kind of hard brawny flesh, or hardness of the Skin.

Collision of the Beak, is the knocking or dashing of the upper and lower parts of the Bill together.

Contusion, a brusing, or grinding of the Grain in the Gizzard, or Stomach of Birds.

Connate, born or brought forth together, are of the like Age, and standing.

Capillaments, a kind of Down at the ends of the Feathers of young Birds, on their Heads.

Caruncles, or knotty pieces of flesh, hanging about the heads of some Birds, and Fowl.

Dilated Wings, the Wings spread a-broad.

Dilute colour, a colour more whitish than the colour before mentioned, as the Breast cinereous, the Belly more Dilute, the Belly being of the same colour to the Breast, yet more whitish. **Dilute**, is also often taken for a whitish flesh-colour; or a light pale mixt colour.

Dusky colour, is a colour deep, or more dirty than the colour mentioned before it. As the Head is white, the Back more dusky; that is of a more dirty colour, as if it had a kind of brown, mixt in it.

Divarication of the Leg, the parting of the Leg into Toes; the parting of the Foot.

Dapled, spotted.

Decoy, vulgarly called a **Duye**, a place made to take wild Fowl in.

Diurnal Birds, Birds that fly in the Day to catch their Prey.

Disseminated, thick set with spots; or set here and there.

Decorticate, hull or peel Seeds, as Birds do that that they may feed on the inner part, or pulp of the seed only.

Delayed, as a delayed chestnut-colour.

Exterior part, any part taken to be the out-side, or the out-most part of a thing: See **Interiour**.

Extremities of Feathers, the top, or out-most end of Feathers.

Exenterate, to Gut, or take out the Intrals, or Guts.

Eliptical, arched, bended, crooked; or bending crooked.

Equivocal, one part answerable to another.

Excavated, or made hollow, as in Bills, and Claws; which are generally so.

Effete, Birds that are past Bearing, or laying of Eggs.

Exotic Birds, such as are brought out of a strange Countrey.

Embryon Birds, are young Birds, before they have received their perfect shape in the Egg.

Exclusion, promote Exclusion, that hastens the Hatching of Eggs; forces a shutting out.

Fulvous colour, a Bay colour, or reddish ash-colour; a Lion, Tawny, or Fox-colour.

Feuille-Mort, a dusky, or dirty yellow.

Ferrugineous, of the colour of rusty Iron, black and blue colour.

Frugivorous Birds, are Birds that eat and feed upon Fruit.

Florid, garnished or adorned, beautified with shining Feathers.

Fuligineous colour, a soot-colour, a black brown.

Fledged, or ripe Birds, ready to fly.

Fluid Excrements, the Dung of Birds being liquid and soft.

Flavuos, or **Flavus**, a bright yellow.

Fuscus, a dusky dark brown.

Fissipedes, cloven-footed.

Finn-footed, that have Membranes each side their Toes like Fish-Fins.

Gregarious Birds, such as Love to fly in Flocks, and Companies.

Genuine, a right kind, or off-spring, such as proceed not by Adulteration, or mingling of contrary Species, or Kinds.

Granivorous Birds, such as feed on Seeds and Corn.

Granulated, made into small or little Grains.

Glangules: See **Papullary-Glandules**.

Glauceous, Grey, sky-colour.

Herl of a Pea-cocks Tail, the open or loose vane, or Filiments, on the quill-shaft.

Heronries, places where Herons make their Nests, and Breed.

Herbivorous Birds, such as Feed on Herbs, and Greens.

Interiour, the inner-side, that part of the Wing, or Feather that lyeth next to the Body: As the Interior Wing Feathers, are those quill-feathers next the Body; the Exteriour Wing feathers, those more outward at the first joint of the pinion of the Wing: the Interiour vane of the first quill-feather, is the inner vane or web of the shaft, which lyeth under the second quill feather; the exteriour vane, is the out-most vane of the shaft, to sight.

Insects, are all sorts of Flys and Worms, which Birds feed upon.

Igneous colour, is a fire-colour, or Gold-colour.

Infecund: See **Subventaneous**.

Indocile Bird, such as are uncapable of teaching, or of so wild and furious a nature, as will not receive discipline, or be tamed.

Insectivorous Birds, such as feed on Flys, Worms, Beetles, and such like.

Incisures, the Marks or Impressions in the Legs and Toes of Birds, which makes them look scaly; the cutting of the scales.

Laternal borders of the Wing, the side borders, or edges of the Wing Feathers.

Libidinous, lustful, full of Spirit, time of treading.

Loquacious Birds, tatling, prating Birds.

Liveous, Livid-colour, black and blue colour.

Luteous, yellow like the yolk of an Egg.

Moulting, loosing their Feathers; Moulting time, is that season of the year, when Birds cast their Feathers, and receive new ones.

Multiparous Birds, such as are great breeders, and lay many Eggs, and sit often in a year.

Mini-

Miniaceous colour, a scarlet, or vermilion colour.
Mastication, a chewing, or grinding of Meat.
Multifidous, much jagged, having many slits, or crevices.
Mudsuckers, Birds that suck and dabble in muddy waters.
Marmoreous, a Marble colour, a black blue.

Neb, is the end, or point of the Birds bill; some take it for the whole Bill, some for the top Bill.
Nestlings, young Birds in the Nest.
Nocturnal Birds, such as fly about in the Night, to seek their Prey.
Nictation, is the winking of a Bird, by covering his Eye with a thin skin, or membrane.
Oblong Nostrils, Nostrils which have long holes.
Ovaria, the Egg-cluster in a Hen; a lump of seed-Eggs.
Outer-Toe, is that as stands on the outermost side of the Foot in both Feet.
Ocular Experience, the Learning or Knowing of a thing by the sight of the Eye, and not by hear-say.
Oviparous Bird, such as bring forth Eggs, a She, a Female, that produceth her young ones by Eggs.

Passage Birds, or Birds of Passage, are such as stay with us in the Summer, and go away in the Winter; or that are with us in the Winter, and are gone in Summer.
Pulveratricious, an earthly kind of colour, mouse-colour.
Pellucid, thin and clear, that as may be seen through; a Pellucid Membrane, a skin that is clear seen through.
Panicles, thin skins.
Prominent, longer than another; reaching further, or over the thing next to it.
Prone, the nether side of the Body; as the Head prone to the Belly, the Head stooping or turning to the Belly.
Papilary Glandules, swellings, or carnels in the flesh.
Puniceous, a crimson, or blush-colour.
Pavonine, Peacock colour, or Peacock like.
Pavonaceous, Pea-cock colour, a shining bluish green.
Piscivorous Birds, such as eat, and feed upon Fish.
Prolific, the lengthening, or making of things long.
Plumbeous colour, of the colour of Lead, bluish.
Pallidous, pale, wan, whitish.
Phoeniceous, crimson, or scarlet-colour.
Puniceous, red, or pomgranate colour.
Palmipede, that hath a flat broad foot, like an hand, Goose-footed.
Phytivorous Birds, such as feed on Herbs, and Vegetables.
Pulveratriceous, covered with a dusty colour.
Postica, the postern, or vent-hole of a Fowl.
Processus, a Possess, proceeding, or passage through Birds.

Rapacious Birds, Ravinous, devouring Birds.
Respiration, a breathing too and again.

Remiges, the flying of Birds in the Air; Birds able to fly abroad.
Rigid, rough uneven: lying at a distance.
Ruteleous, bright Gold colour.
Rutileous, bright as Gold.
Roseous, Rose, or Carnation colour.

Spurious kind, a bastard kind, begotten of contrary Birds of other Species; degenerous, degenerated.
Species, all things, as Birds, Beasts, of the like kind
Spadiceous colour, of a chestnut-colour; some dusky.
Salatious, venerious, lustful, given to Lechery.
Scapular Feathers, are such as grow on, or cover the Shoulders.
Serrate billed, the edges of the Bill, toothed like a Saw.
Spantaneous, willingly, voluntary, of its own accord.
Stupified: See **Torpid**.
Spiral Beak, that hath a Bill thick at the head, and grows smaller and smaller by degrees, to the tip end.
Simous Beak, that hath a flat bill; not round, or triangular.
Subventaneous Eggs, such as the Hen brings forth without the Treading of the Cock: **Infoecund** Eggs, Barren or unfruitful Eggs.

Tunicle, or thick skin, that covers the Eye in Nictation, or winking.
Testaceous colour, a reddish brown, or earthly colour like clay, or brick.
Torpid, un-active, lyes dead, stupified.
Tegument, a covering.
Transverse lines, over cross lines in a Feather, or Wing of any other colour.
Torose, mighty and strong in the Legs or Arms.
Terra-vert colour, a kind of a dusky green; it is an earthy Clay Painters use.

Vinaceous colour, the colour of the Seeds or Kernels in Grapes, an olive-colour, or pale green.
Vermivorous Bird, such as lived and feed on Worms.
Voracious Bird, a greedy devouring Bird.
Viviparous Animal, such as bring forth their young alive; it is opposite to **Oviparus**, that brings forth Eggs.
Villose shafts, or **quils**, are quils set with downy threads instead of Feathers.
Umber colour, it is a kind of Earth which Painters use, of a Mouse, or hair-colour.
Vermilion colour, a pure red, or scarlet.
Vivacious Bird, such as are of long Life; lively Birds.
Velocity, swiftness, nimbleness, activity.
Viridis, **viridcous**, green-colour.

There are several other Terms, which I have mentioned in other places, concerning the Art of Falconry; and therefore have omitted them here.

Terms of Blazon contained in these three Chapters of Birds, or Fowl; with the Chapter, Number, and Section, in which they are Explained.

A.

A Spect, 11 43 51 * 19
Armed, 11 87 16 21 53

B.

Beaked, 11 16 21 43 53 87.

C.

Conjoined, 11 3 7
Close, 11 12 14
Complicated, 11 12 14 and 12 82
Collying, Collyeth, 11 15
Crested, 11 87
Cut, Cloven, 13 61
Co-ambulant, 13 59

D.

Displayed, 11 9 43 51 38 26
Disclosed, 11 24 35 28 31 41 29
Disclosed Elevated, 11 24
Displayed fore-shortned, 11 44 45 46
Descendant, 11 47 48
Degenerate, 18 85
Displayed recursant, or Tergiant, 18 95.

E.

Elevated, 11 3 4 31 24
Expansed, 11 4 28 30 31 34 35
Expenced, 11 28
Expensed inverted, 11 30
Expensed elevated, 11 31
Expensed cross-ways, 11 31 & 18 111
Erassing, 12 18 10
Endorsed, 13 61
Endorsed regardant, 13 60
Erected, 13 61 Expanded, 11 28.

F.

Foreshortned, 11 13 44 45 46
Flotant, 11 21 and 12 77
Flying aloft, 11 38 Feeding, 11 49

G.

Gaze, 11 13 43
Gaze Displayed, 11 43
Gradually, 12 44

H.

Hovering, 11 21

I.

Inverted, Invertant, 11 3 17 22 30
Imbowed, 11 12
In Majesty, 11 18
Inverted displayed, 11 26
Jessant, 12 18
Jelloped, 11 87.

K.

Kerved, 11 90.

L.

Lolling, 11 49.

M.

Memmbred, 11 16 53
Majestie, 11 18
Mantleing, 11 25

O

Overt, 11 21
Overture, 11 21 39 26 42 & 12 15
Overture elevated, 11 21 24

P.

Pendant, 11 2 3
Pruning, 11 32 33

Q.

Quarterly, quartered, 11 19
Quise, a la Quise, 11 6

R

Rowsant, 11 23 27
Rising, 11 23
Recursant, 11 17 22 39
Recursant Overture, 11 26
Regardant, 11 32 33 and 13 60
Recursant volant Overture, 11 42
Recursant volant, 11 48
Recursant displayed, 18 95
Recursant Tergiant, ibid.

S

Spectant, 11 13
Sejant, 11 20
Seated, ibid.
Surgiant, 11 23 52 and 18 86
Sepurture, 11 28 35 40 54
Sepurture disclosed, 11 29
Scoarant, Scoaring, 11 38
Seazing, 11 49
Stouping, 11 50
Spread, 11 53
Sarcelled, 13 61.

T

Tergant, 11 26
Tergiant, 11 22 37
Tergiant Volant, 11 37
Trussed, 11 12
Trian-aspect, 11 19
Three quartered, 11 19
Tergiant Surgant, 18 86

V

Volant, 11 11 21 24 37 48
Volant Expensed, 11 34
Volant Sepurture, 11 34
Volant Sepurture Disclosed, 11 35
Vilant Ouerture, 11 36 41 & 12 15
Volant in Fesse, 11 37 42 & 12 15
Volant Tergiant Overture, 11 37
Volant in bend, 11 38 39
Volant displayed, 11 38
Volant descendant, 11 47 48.

W

Wattled, 11 87.

Y.

Yelloped, 11 87.

For

For the Readers better Eaſe, and his more Ready finding the Birds he deſires to ſee, or read of it; I have Annexed the Names of all the Birds, and Fowl; which are mentioned in theſe three laſt Chapters, Alphabetically: The firſt Figure ſhews the Chapter, the ſecond the Number, in the Plate, in which the Bird is deſcribed, the Section, by an *s*.

THE ſeveral Poſtures of Birds, *chap.* 11. *numb.* 1. to 53.

Obſervations in Birds of Prey, 11. 54. s 2.

Several ſorts of Eagles, 11. s 2.

Names of all kinds of Hawks, *chap.* 11. *numb.* 55, 57, 62. s 3.

Names of Male-Hawks from Female, 11. s 3.

Names of Hawks, and other Fowl according to their Age, 11. 62. s 3.

Names or Terms given to each part of a Hawk, *chap.* 11. *ſect.* 3.

Diſeaſes inſident to Hawks, *ibid.*

Terms of Art uſed in Falconry, *ibid.*

Things uſeful and belonging to Hawks, *ibid.*

Terms uſed by Cock-Maſters about fighting their Cocks, *chap.* 11. *numb.* 89.

Sorts of Parrots, *chap.* 12. *numb.* 86.

Signification of Birds uſed in Armory, *chap.* 13. *numb.* 81. *ſect.* 3.

Names of all the parts of a Bird in general, *chap.* 13. *ſect.* 4.

Remarkable things in Birds, *ibid.*

The Diviſion of Birds as to Earth and Water, *chap.* 13. *ſect.* 5.

Voices of Birds, *ibid.*

How termed when many are together, *ibid.*

Feeding for ſeveral ſorts of Birds, *ibid.*

Birds and Poultry, how called according to their Age, *ibid.*

Terms of Art uſed in the Deſcription of Birds, *chap.* 13. *ſect.* 6.

Terms of Blazon uſed about Birds, *ibid.*

A.

Alp, 11 64
Anadovad bird, 11 70
American Bulfinch, 11 71
Anthus, 11 71
American chatt, 11 71
Annett, 11 80 81
American Swallow, 11 82
African Cock, 12 3
American Storke, 12 8
Acacalot, 12 12
Avoſetta, 12 13
Ardea, 12 14
Aſh colour Heron, 12 14
Alcion, 12 18
Aſh-Mew, 12 19
Aluco, 12 29
American Owl, 12 29
Aſio, 12 30
African Oſtrige, 12 39
American Oſtridge, 12 39
American Wood-picker, 12 69
Aſh colour Vulture, 12 74
Arieto-baſilaquil, 12 83
Aroponade, 12 84
Aſnocrotalus, 12 85
Aſſe-bitterne, 12 85
Araracanga, 12 86
Ararauna, 12 86
Arara, 12 86
Amura-curica, 12 86
Aſh colour Parrott, 12 86
Ajurucatinga, 12 86
Ajuru-Para, 12 86
Anaca, 12 86
Ajuru-curuca, 12 86
Ajuru-curan, 12 87
Aura, 13 1
Alpin Vulture, 13 3
Ani, 13 8
Attegen, 13 21
Atinga-guacu-mucu, 13 25
American Diver, 13 28
Agna-Pecaca, 13 31
Avis Pugnax, 13 39
Arſſoot, 13 42
Albell, 13 44
Anhinga, 13 47
Auke, 13 48
Anas Arctica, 13 48
Anas Fuligula, 13 49
Anas Querquedula, 13 49
American Water-hen, 13 55
Aſilus, 13 58 s 2
Aratica, ibid.
Aratara-taguacu, ibid.
Artenna, 13 s 2
Acitili, ibid.
Affrican Duck, ibid.
Anhima, 13 31
Alka, 13 48
Allerion, 11 86
Amphiſiben Cockatrice, or Wiver, 12 76.

B

Black Eagle, 11 54
Brisil Eagle, ibidem
Buzzard, 11 57
Bald Buzzard, ibid.
Brisil Kite, ibid.
Bucher Bird, ibid.
Bird, 11 63 71
Black Bird, 11 63 71
Bunting, 11 63 71
Bull-finch, 11 64 71
Bramble, 11 64
Brambling, ibid.
Black cap, 11 65 and 12 19
Blue Titmouse, 11 65
Brisil Titmouse, ibid.
Broad Tail Dove, 11 66
Barbadoes Turtle, ibid.
Black Game, 11 69
Brisil Ouzel, 11 72
Brisil Magpie, 11 80
Black Martin, 11 82
Bastard Plover, 11 100
Brisil Pheasant, 11 102
Bird of Paradice, 12 2 & 13 4 53
Black Stork, 12 8
Black Heron, 12 14
Brisil Heron, 12 14 16 & 13 36
Bee-Eater, 12 18
Brown Tern, ibid.
Burrough Duck, 12 20
Bergander, ibid.
Black Diver, 12 20
Bitterne, 12 24 25 65
Brisil Spoonbill, 12 26
Brisil Sea Pie, 12 28
Brisil Owl, 12 29
Barne Owle, ibid.
Brisil Eagle Owle, 12 30
Bitt, 12 32
Bohemian Chatterer, 12 46 67
Brisil Wood-Picker, 12 46 & 13 14
Brisil Kings Fisher, 12 46
Brisil Wild Duck, 12 47 and 13 50
Brisil Teal, 12 47
Barnacle, 12 48
Brook Ousell, 12 49
Brisil Water Hen, 12 49 and 13 31
Brent Goose, 12 50
Bastard Eagle, 12 51 and 18 85
Bittern, 12 52
Bittour, ibid.
Botaurus, ibid.
Butorius, ibid.
Brisil Coco, 12 53
Bustard, 12 59 and 18 86
Bistard, 12 59
Brome Hen, 12 60
Bilcock, 12 49
Brisil Partridge, 12 66
Black Vulture, 12 74
Basilick, 12 75 76
Betic Vulture, 13 3
Brisil Goat sucker, 13 6
Blew Crow, 13 13
Brisil Cryer, 13 16
Balearic Crane, 13 33
Bow billed Heron, 13 35
Brisil Diver, 13 47
Battle-Nose, 13 48
Barbalot, ibid.
Bologna Dove, 13 58 s 2
Brisil Sparrow, ibid.
Brisil Gull, ibid.
Branvogell, ibid.
Black Cap, 11 70
Bramlin, 11 64
Bockhean, 12 83.

C.

Crested Eagle, 11 54
Coracara, 11 57
Canary bird, 11 63 64
Chaffinch, 11 64
Citrill, ibid.
Citrinella, ibid.
Cole Mouse, 11 65
Cropper-Dove, 11 66
Carrier Pigeon, ibid.
Capper Pigeon, ibid.
Cop-headed Pigeon, ibid.
Cortbeck Pigeon, ibid.
Crested Wren, 11 70
Crowned Wren, ibid.
Cirlus, 11 71 and 13 58 s 2
Coldfinch, 11 71
Colfinch, ibid.
Cornish Chough, 11 73
Chough, 11 73 and 13 60
Crow, 11 73 74 and 13 13 60
Collared Jack daw, 11 73
Cock, 11 87 88 89 93
Capon, 11 90
Chicken, 11 91 92
Caladre, 12 1
Caladrius, 12 31
Chalcelet, 12 1
Crested Bird of Paradice, 12 2
Crane, 12 11 and 13 33
Curicaca, 12 12
Crex, ibid.
Cirris, 12 14 and 13 14
Cormorant, 12 17
Coddy-Moddy, 12 19
Cornish Gannet, 12 19 and 13 71
Cataracta, 12 19
Cornish Wagell, ibid.
Cepphur, ibid.
Craker, 12 20
Crested Indian Bittern, 12 24
Church Owl, 12 29
Cabure, 12 29
Calidris, 12 31 71
Calandra, 12 1 31 and 13 58 12
Chaladrius, 12 31
Crested Lark, 12 46
Crested Tit-mouse, ibid.
Coped Titmouse, ibid.
Coote, or Cote, 12 49
Canada Goose, 12 50
Curlew, 12 55 12
Curlot, 12 55
Cocoe, 12 58 55
Cuckow, 12 58
Cross-bill, 12 63
Crooked bill, ibid.
Crooked Nose, ibid.
Crested Wood-pecker, 12 68
Creeper, 12 69
Chloreus, 12 70
Canut, 12 71
Cockatrice, 12 75 76
Cockatoon, 12 86
Caprimulgus, 13 6
Curucui, ibid.
Crested Parrot, 13 8
Cuculate Swan, 13 19
Curle Head Diver, 13 28 32
China Ostritch, 13 33
Cariama, 13 33 37
Cocoi, 13 36
Crested Diver, 13 40
Curled Diver, 13 43
Canly Sea Diver, 13 48
Coulterneb, ibid.
Crested Fen Duck, 13 49
Capo Negro, ibid.
Caribbee Sea-bird, 13 52
Caryo-cotacles, 13 58 s 2
Cuiriri, ibid.
Cirlus Stultus, ibid.
Cia, ibid.
Cia Seluatica, ibid.
Cia Moutania, ibid.
Cirlo-Matto, ibid.
Coped Water-Hen, ibid.
Corrira, ibid.
Courier, ibid.
Coped Douker, ibid.
Crested Douker, ibid.
Cloven foot-gull, ibid.
Crested red head Duck, ibid.
Cairo Duck, ibid.
Crested Falcon, 11 56
Curmillet, 12 71
Chatterer, 12 46
Chat, 11 71
Cryer, 13 16.

D.

D.

Dove, 11 64 66 67 & 13 48 58 52 (59
Drake, 12 20
Duck 12 20 21 and 13 48 49 50 51
Damascus Partridge, 12 45 66
Daker Hen, 12 61
Dottrel, 12 71
Dunlin, ibid.
Dragon-Serpent, 12 79
Dragon-Wivern, ibid.
Dodo, 13 19
Dronte, ibid.
Didaper, 13 28 42
Diver, 13 28 40 43 44 47 48 and 12 20
Douker, 13 40 42 58 52
Dipper, 13 42
Dobchick, ibid.
Dun Diver, 13 43
Dalmatic Sparrow, 13 58 52
Diomedean Bird, ibid.
Duck-Goose, ibid.
Dispised Eagle, 12 1
Degenerated Eagle, 18 85
Dawe, 11 73.

E.

Eagle, 11 1 to 54 and 12 1
Eider, 12 20
Emew, 12 23
Emy, ibid.
Eared Owl, 12 30
Eagle Owl, ibid.
Erythropus, 12 71
Eared Eagle, 13 62.

F.

Falcon, 11 55 56 59 60 62
Falcon gentle, 11 56
French Pie, 11 57
Flusher, ibid.
Finch, 11 63 64 71
Fallow Smich, 11 71
Fig-Eater, ibid.
Fulick, Fulice, 11 73
Fisherlin, 11 82
Fighting Cock, 11 89
Frisland Cock, 11 93
Frisled Cock, ibid.
Fesant, 11 102
Falsinellus, 12 12
Flitter-Mouse, 12 32
Feldfare, 12 73
Francolino, 13 21
Fludder, 13 42
Fearn Owl, 13 6
Fratercula, 13 48
Foot-less bird, 13 53
Forked Tail Sparrow, 13 58 52
Flammant, ibid.
Florus, 11 71
Ferroyer Duck, 12 20
Fen-Duck, 13 49.

G.

Grey Falcon, 11 56
Golden Eagle, 11 54
Gerfalcon, 11 55 56
Gamshawk, 11 57
Glead, ibid.
Grey Pie, ibid.
Goldfinch, 11 63 71
Greenfinch, 11 63 64
Green Linnet, 11 64
Grosbeak, ibid.
Great Blamlin, ibid.
Guira-jenoia, 11 65
Grows, 11 69
Golden Crowned Wren, 11 70
Gimpell, ibid.
Gid, 11 77
Gua-rauna, ibid.
God-wit, ibid.
Giarola, 11 78
Golden Wagtail, 11 81
Grey Wagtail, ibid.
Gripe, 12 1
Greese, ibid.
Guiny Cock, 12 3
Guara, 12 12
Garzetta, 12 14
Graculus Palmipes, 12 17
Green Merops, 12 18
Gull, 12 19 and 13 58 52
Great Gull, 12 19
Grey Gull, ibid.
Gadwall, 12 20
Gray, ibid.
Glaucium, ibid.
Golden Eye, ibid.
Grey Owl, 19 29
Goat Sucker, 12 29 and 13 5 6
Great Horned Owl, 12 30
Gorcock, 12 45
Garrulus, 12 46
Garganey, 12 47
Goose-Arborie, 12 48
Gander, 12 50
Goose, 12 48 50
Grinetta, 12 49
Gambo Goose, 12 50 and 13 31
Gypæ-etus, 12 51
Gouke, 12 58
Gucker, ibid.
Grigel Hen, 12 60
Guira-tan-eima, 12 69
Galbula, 12 70
Gout-Merle, ibid.
Golden Ousel, ibid.
Guira-punga, ibid.
Green Plover, 12 71
Grey Plover, ibid.
Glottis, ibid.
Gallinula, ibid.
Gambetta, ibid.
Giarola, ibid.
Golden Vulture, 12 74
Gypaetos Vulture, 13 3
Gods bird, 13 4
Guira-quera, 13 6
Guira-acanga-tara, 13 16
Guira-guat-nomki, 13 17
Gallus Peregrinus, 13 19
Guajnumbi, 13 27 58 52
Goosander, 13 43
Golden Head, 13 48
Gwillem, ibid.
Guillemot, ibid.
Greenland Dove, ibid.
Grisola, 13 58 52
Glareana, ibid.
Grien-Vogelin, ibid.
Guaimini-bique, ibid.
Gonmbuch, ibid.
Garvamboch, ibid.
Guara-cyaba, ibid.
Guara-cigaba, ibid.
Guira-guacu-beraba, ibid.
Guira-coereba, ibid.
Guiram-Heemgatu, ibid.
Guira-Perea, ibid.
Garden Frequenter, ibid.
Gallinulla Ochra, ibid.
Guacu-guacu, ibid.
Gaviotta, ibid.
Guiny Duck, ibid.
Gannet, 12 19 and 13 71
Goat-cock, 12 83
Goat-Eagle, ibid.

H.

Haggard Falcon, 11 56
Hawk, 11 57
Honey Buzzard, ibid. Hobby, ibid.
Henharrier, ibid.
Henharrow, ibid.
Himgrill, 11 64
Helmet Pigeon, 11 66
Horsman Pigeon, ibid.
Heath-cock, 11 69
Heath Hen, ibid.
Hedg Sparrow, 11 71
Hortulane, 11 71 and 13 58 52
Hen, 11 91 92 and 13 18
Hoopo, 11 99 Hoope, ibid.
Hematopus, 12 11 71
Heron, 12 14 15 16 and 13 34 35 (36
Heronshaw, 12 14
Halcion, 12 18
Huge Sea gull, 12 19
Herring Gull, ibid.
Havelda, 12 20 & 13 56
Hullart, 12 29
Howlet, ibid.
Horned Owl, 12 30

Hare-

Hare bird, 12 45
Hare-foot bird, ibid.
High-hoe, 12 69
Hewhole, ibid.
Hickwall, ibid.
Hang nest, ibid.
Hare Vulture, 12 74
Harpey, 12 77 78 82
Hippomanu-codiata, 13 4
Horned Raven, 13 9 10 11
Hooded Swan, 13 19
Hassel Hen, 13 21
Humming bird, 13 27 52
Hern-bittour, 13 38
Horned Doucker, 13 40
Harle, 13 43
Helegug, 13 48
Horned bird, 13 52
Heron, 12 53 54
Hirundo, 11 82
Hercynie Bird, 13 52.

I.

Indian Falcon, 11 56
Jack Merlin, 11 57
Jacobine Pigeon, 11 66 68
Indian Turtle Dove, 11 66
Jack Daw, 11 73
Jack Snipe, 11 77
Jud-cock, ibid.
Indian Quaile, 11 78 *and* 13 20
Jamacaij, 11 81
Jacutema, 11 102
Ibis, 12 10
Indian Crean, 12 11
Indian Curlew, 12 12
Ipeca-guacu, 12 20
Island Duck, ibid.
Indian Bittern, 12 25 65
Ivy-Owl, 12 29
Ibijau, 12 29 *and* 13 6
Jacurutu, 12 30
Ipecu, 12 46 *and* 13 15
Iaguacati-guacu, ibid.
Iambu, 12 66
Iacana, 12 49
Italian Rail, ibid.
Iacamaciri, 12 69
Jupu-juba, ibid.
Jupu, ibid.
Icterus, 12 70
Junco, 12 71
Jendaya, 12 86
Indian Apos, 13 4 53
Indian Raven, 13 12 58
Jay, 13 13
Iracari, 13 14
Indian Cock, 13 18
Indian Hen, ibid.
Indian Stare, 13 23
Inyx, 13 27
Iabiru, 13 29
Iabiru-guacu, 13 30
Ipocati-apoa, 13 50
Indian footless Bird, 13 53
Jacapani, 13 52
Indian long Tail Sparrow, ibid.
Indian Rumpless Sparrow, ibid.
Junco, ibid.
Indian Duck, ibid.
Juba, 12 86.

K.

Kestrall, 11 57
Kite, ibid.
Kalader, 12 1 131
King of Birds of Paradice, 12 2 & 13 (53
Kings Fisher, 12 18 46
King Bee-Eater, 12 18
Kernel, 12 47
Knot, 12 71
Kiddaw, 13 48.

L

Lanner, 11 57
Leonard, ibid.
Ligurine, 11 64
Lark heel Mountain finch, ibid.
Linnet, 11 64 65
Long tail Tit-mouse, 11 65
Lark, 11 71 *and* 12 46 71
Lapwing, 11 100
Lever, 12 26
Lich Owl, 12 30
Lich Fowl, ibid.
Lagopus, 12 45
Land Rail, 12 61
Loxia, 12 63
Loon, 13 40 42
Lumme, 13 42
Lough Diver, 13 44
Lomwia, 13 48
Livia, 13 52
Luteola, ibid.
Long tail Sparrow, ibid.
Libic Duck, ibid.
Laubhen, 12 60.

M.

Morphno Eagle, 11 54
Mountain Falcon, 11 56
Merlin, 11 57
More Buzzard, ibid.
Murthering Pie, ibid.
Mountain Finch, 11 64
Marsh Tit-mouse, 11 65
Mop, ibid.
Mountain Linnet, ibid.
Mawmet Pigeon, 11 66
More-cock, 11 69 *and* 12 45
Mountain Cock, 11 69 94
Mountain Hen, 11 69
Moor Titling, 11 71
Mag-pie, 11 80
Martin, 11 82
Martinet, ibid.
Martlet, 11 85 86
Magnari, 12 8
Matuitu, 12 12
Merops, 12 18
Mew, 12 19
Mall, ibid.
Meb, ibid.
Mire Crow, ibid.
Mallard, 12 20
Mitelenten, ibid.
Muggent, ibid.
Morillon, ibid.
Maxican Spoon-bill, 12 26
Mareca, 12 47
More-Hen, 12 49
Mire Drum, 12 52
Mat-kern, 12 71
Missel-bird, 12 73
Mavis, ibid.
Maccaws, 12 86
Macaos, ibid.
Mara cana, ibid.
Mina Parrot, ibid.
Menscheneter, 13 1
Mountain Vulture, 13 3
Manu-codiata, 13 4
Mitu. Mutu, 13 7
Mitu-paranga, 13 18
Matuitui, 13 24
Mergus Cirratus, 13 28
Mergus, 13 28 43
Merganser, 13 43
Magellanie Goose, 13 45
Murre, 13 48
Mullet, ibid.
Muscovy Duck, 13 51 52
Mock bird, 13 52
Macu-cagua, ibid.
Mouche Rolle, ibid.
Musquit Sparrow, ibid.
Musquit Wren, ibid.
Mitered Water Hen, ibid.
Manks Puffin, ibid.
Majague, ibid.
Maxican Duck, ibid.
Megvogel, ibid.

N.

Nope, 11 64
Nut-cracker, ibid.
Nun, 11 65 *and* 13 44
Nicticorax, 11 101
Night Raven, ibid.
Noctua, 12 29
Nightingale, 12 64 *and* 13 22
Nachtgall, 12 64
Nut-jobber, 12 69
Nut-hatch, ibid.
Noitibo, 13 5
Negro, 13 29
Northern Doucker, 13 42

Nu-

Northern Duck, 13 48

O.

Osprey, 11 54
Ossifrage, 11 54 and 12 1
Ousel, Ouszell, 11 63 72 & 12 46
Ox-Eye, 11 65 and 12 69
Onocrotulus, 12 6 26 65 85
Owl, 12 29 and 13 6
Otus, 12 30
Ostridge, Ostritch, 12 39 40
Orchidy-Goose, 12 48
Oripelargus, 12 51 & 13 3
Orben, 12 60
Oriolus, 12 70
Orissia, 13 27 s 2
Oenanthia congener, 13 s 2
Ochropus, 13 s 2.

P.

Peregrin falcon, 11 56
Puttock, 11 57
Pigeon, 11 66 and 13 59
Phesant, 11 76 102 and 12 20
Pie, 11 80 and 12 11 27 28
Pie annet, 11 57 80
Persian Cock, 11 87
Pea-Cock, 11 95 96
Pea-Hen, ibid.
Penit, 11 100 and 12 19
Pengwin, 12 7 and 13 45
Palm-footed Crow, 12 17
Poker, 12 20
Pochard, ibid.
Platea, 12 26
Phœnix, 12 35
Pellican, 12 36 37 38 65
Partrige, 12 45 66
Porphyrio, 12 49
Purple Water-hen, 12 49
Phæopus, 12 55
Pernice, 12 66
Plover, 12 71
Pool Snipe, ibid.
Pardalus, ibid.
Pfisterlein, ibid.
Purres, Perres, ibid.
Pithon, 12 76
Parrot, 12 86 and 12 8
Parakeetoe, ibid.
Popinjae, 12 86
Paragua, ibid.
Parrotkeete, ibid.
Perknopteros, 13 3
Papagay, 13 13
Persian Wood-pecker, 13 14
Pauxi, 13 18
Puffin, 13 48 s 2
Pica Marina, ibid.
Puffinet, 13 48 Pata, 13 50
Persian Pie, 13 s 2
Pitanga-guacu, ibid.
Purple long tail Sparrow, ibid.
Petronia Marina, 13 s 2
Phoeni-copter, ibid.
Passer Musquitus, ibid.
Pickatree, 12 69.

Q.

Quees, 11 66
Quiese, ibid.
Quaile, 11 78
Quijuba-tui, 12 86.

R.

Ring-tail, 11 57
Red head Linnet, 11 65
Runt Pigeon, 11 66
Russian Dove, ibid.
Ring-dove, ibid.
Robin red breast, 11 70
Robin, ibid.
Ruddock, ibid.
Red, or Reed Sparrow, 11 71
Redstart, 11 71 and 12 72
Ring Ousell, 11 72
Rook, 11 73 74 75 and 13 60
Raven, 11 74 and 12 12 and 13 58
Royston Crow, 11 74
Rail, 11 78 and 12 49
Recurvirostra, 12 13
Red legged Heron, 12 14
Red head Wigeon, 12 20
Red head Duck, ibid.
Reremouse, 12 32
Red Game, 12 45
Red Lagopus, ibid.
Rose Ousell, 12 46
Runner, 12 49
Rat Goose, 12 50
Road Goose, ibid.
Rain Fowl, 12 55 69
Red Partridge, 12 66
Reed Sparrow, 12 69
Reed Creeper, ibid.
Red-shanke, 12 71
Rotknussel, ibid.
Rotmillis, ibid.
Rock Ouzel, 12 72
Redwing, 12 73
Ram-basilice, 12 83
Ram-Eagle-Serpent, ibid.
Ram-Eagle, 12 84
Ruffed Vulture, 13 3
Rhinocerot, 13 9 10 11
Roller, 13 13
Rhine Diver, 13 28
Redshank Heron, 13 34
Ruff, 13 39
Reeve, ibid.
Razor-bill, 13 48
Rabi-horcado, 13 54
Rabo-forcado, ibid.
Rock Dove, 13 s 2
Rumpless Sparrow, ibid.
Red Head Duck, 13 s 2
Ring-Parakeet, 12 86
Ramatrice, 12 83
Rame-Wevern, 12 8.

S.

Sea-Eagle, 11 54
Sacre-Falcon, 11 56
Sparhawk, 11 57 59
Sparrow-hawk, 11 57
Stannell, Stanniell, ibid.
Stone-gall, ibid.
Shrike, ibid.
Sparrow, 11 64 and 13 s 2
Siskin, 11 64
Serin, ibid.
Shaker Pigeon, 11 66
Smiter Pigeon, ibid.
Stock Dove, ibid.
Stone Chatter, 11 71
Stone Smich, ibid.
Snipe, 11 77 and 12 62 71
Snite, 11 77
Sand Martin, 11 82
Shore bird, ibid.
Swift, ibid.
Sea Swallow, ibid.
Swallow, 11 82 84
Spurre, 11 82
Scray, ibid.
Sarrat, 12 1
Sacret, ibid.
Swan, 12 4 and 13 67 68 69 70
Swan-Goose, 12 4
Stork, 12 8 9
Sea Pie, 12 11 27 28 and 13 s 2
Sith-bill, 12 12
Shagg, 12 17
Soland Goose, ibid.
Sula, ibid.
Sea Mew, 12 19
Sea Mall, ibid.
Sea Gull, ibid.
Swarth back, ibid.
Sea Crow, 12 19 56
Skua, 12 19 and 13 71
Spotted Gull, 12 19
Spotted Sea Mew, ibid.
Sheldrake, 12 20 and 13 56
St. Cuthberds Duck, 12 20
Sea Phesant, ibid.
Sharp Tail Duck, ibid.
Scoter, ibid.
Shoveller, 12 22 26
Spoon Bill, 12 26
Stone Owl, 12 29
Scops, 12 30
Struthion, 12 39
Starling, 12 46
Sea Starling, ibid.
Summer Teal, 12 47
Spurwinged Goose, 12 50
Swan Eagle, 12 51

Stone

Stone Curlew, 12 55
Savage Crow, 12 56
Scheller, ibid.
Spilhen, 12 60
Schryke, 12 61
Shell Apple, 12 63
Slawick, 12 64
Sea Pellican, 12 65 26
Spotted Wood-pecker, 12 69
Sitta, ibid.
Spider Catcher, ibid.
Sea Lark, 12 71
Sea Dottrel, ibid.
Streingallell, ibid.
Sand Piper, ibid.
Sisterlein, ibid.
Sanderling, ibid.
Stint, ibid.
Stare, 12 72
Sea Thrush, ibid.
Solitary Sparrow, ibid.
Shirt, 12 73
Singing Thrush, ibid.
Swine-pipe, ibid.
Serula, 13 28
Squajotta, 13 35
Squacco, ibid.
Spotted Loon, 13 42
Sparling Fowl, 13 43
Smew, 13 44
Skout, 13 48
Sea Turtle, ibid.
Swallow Tail Sheldrake, 13 56
Shear-Water, 13 57
Spipoletta, 13 58 s 2
Stipola, ibid.
Stopparola, ibid.
Sun-beam bird, ibid.
Seed bird, ibid.
Spotted Hortulane, ibid.
Schmirring, ibid.
Scare Crow, ibid.
Scaupe Duck, ibid.
Sajacu, ibid.
Serpent Goose, 12 85.

T.

Tangara, 11 64
Titmouse. Tittmouse, 11 65 & 12 46
Tame Pigeon, 11 66
Turbit Pigeon, ibid.
Tumbler Pigeon, ibid.
Turner Pigeon, ibid.
Turtle Dove, ibid.
Teitei, 11 70
Titlark, 11 71
Titling, ibid.
Tern, 11 82
Turkey Cock, 11 97 98
Turkey Hen, 11 92
Thuet, 11 99
Teewit, 11 100
Terwhite, ibid.
Truon, 12 6
Turkey Sea Pie, 12 27
Toucan, 12 28
Tuidara, 12 29
Teal, 12 47
Tree Goose, 12 48
Tarangolo, 12 55
Trappe, 12 59
Trapgause, ibid.
Trinca, 12 71
Thrush, 12 73
Throstle, ibid.
Tragoponade, 12 84
Tui, 12 86
Tuiapute-Juba, ibid.
Tui-tirica, ibid.
Tuiete, ibid.
Tuipara, ibid.
Tzopilot, 13 1
Tije-guacu-paroara, 13 26
Torquilla, 13 27
Tominejo, ibid.
Tamatia, 13 41 55
Tarrok, 13 46
Tufted Duck, 13 49
Tropick Bird, 13 52
Tije-guacu, 13 58 s 2
Tominejo, ibid.
Tije-piranga, ibid.
Trochilus, ibid.
Tufted red head Duck, ibid.
Taraviolo, 12 55
Turn-stone, 12 71
Totanus, ibid. Tarabe, 12 86
Turn-bill, 12 13
Topau, 13 9 10 11.
Tepetetl, 13 18

V.

Urutawrana, 11 54 and 13 2
Virginia Nightingale, 11 64 & 13 22
Urogallus, 11 94
Urecock, ibid.
Upupa, 11 99
Vulture, 12 1 74
Velvet Runner, 12 49
Urubu, 13 1
Virginia Crested Nightingale, 13 22
Venice Diver, 13 28
Utamania, 13 48
Vici-cilin, 13 58 s 2
Velvet Duck, ibid.
Ulula, 12 29

W.

White Eagle, 11 54
White Falcon, 11 56
Wind-hover, 11 57
Wier angle, ibid.
Wood Tit-mouse, 11 65
Wild Pigeon, 11 66
Wren, 11 70
Wood Lark, 11 71
White Throat, ibid.
Whin-Chat, ibid.
White Tail, ibid.
White Ear bird, ibid.
White bill Crow, 11 73
Wood-cock, 11 77
Water-Wagtail, 11 81
Wagtail, 11 81 and 13 58 s 2
Wooll cock, 11 93
Whoophoo, 11 99
Whoopee, ibid.
Wild Swan, 12 4
Water Raven, 12 12
White Heron, 12 14
Water Ouzell, 12 18
Water Crake, ibid.
Wasser Amzell, ibid.
Winter Mew, 12 19
Winter Meb, ibid.
White Gull, ibid.
Wagell, ibid.
Wild Duck, 12 20 47
Wigeon, 12 20
Wherrer, ibid.
Water Pellecan, 12 26
Whole footed Sea Pie, 12 27
White Owl, 12 29
White Game, 12 45
White Partridge, ibid.
Water Hen, 12 49 61 and 13 31 55
Water Rail, 12 49
Wild Goose, 12 50
Whimbrel, 12 55
Wasser Hen, 12 61
Wood-pecker, 12 68 69 & 13 14 15 (61
Woodspite, 12 69
Witwall, 12 69 70
Widnoll, 12 70
Wall-creeper, 12 69
Woodwall, 12 70
Wind Thrush, 12 73
White Vulture, 12 74
Wivern, 12 80 81
White Parrot, 12 86
Wild Wood-Crow, 13 13
Wryneck, 13 27
White Nun, 13 44
Water Diver, 13 47
Wild Duck, 13 50
White Wagtail, 13 58 s 2
White Hortulane, ibid.
Wyn Kernel, ibid.
Water Hare Doucker, ibid.

Y.

Yellow Hammer, 11 71
Yarwhelp, 11 77
Yarwip, ibid.
Yellow Wagtail, 11 81
Yellow Hortulane, 13 58 s 2
Yohval-cuachili, ibid.

Do-

Domino *EDWARDO LUTWYCHE* Militi,

SERVIENTI *Regis ad Legem*

Unii Justiciorum **COMMUNIUM PLACITORUM**

Dicti Domini Regis apud WESTMONESTER,

Et nuper Recordatori Civitatis CESTRIÆ

Et non minus in Legibus perito, quam omnis Literarum generi Amatori; hoc caput Humilissime consecrat.

Ranulphus Holme

CHAP. XIV.

1. FROM the Fowl which fly in the Aire, we proceed now to give example of such Fish as either swim in fresh Water, as Rivers, Pits, and Ponds: or else that dive, and play in the deep Ocean, and Salt Seas.

It is an observotion of the learned, that whatsoever is engendred, or bred in any part of the World, the same is to be found in the Seas: besides many things more are in it, which no where else are to be seen.

And *Pliny* saith that Natures great and wonderful power, is more demonstrated in the Sea, then on the Land: and this may appear by those numerous and various Creatures, which inhabit in and about that Element. The number and the various shapes of these Fishes are not more strange, then they are different in Nature, Inclinations, and Actions.

The Coverings of Fish.

1. Some have **hard** and **crusty Covers**, as **Shells**, or **Bones**; and such are the Tortoice, Escallop, Oysters, Crabs, Welkes, Cockles, Muscles, Periwinkles.

Others have a **softer Shell**, or a **tender** or **brittle Crust**: which are easily bruised and broken to peeces as the Lobster, Crevices.

Others have **Shells**, which are very **tender** and **soft**, as Prawns, Beards.

2. Some have their covering of **Scales**, which are very **hard**, and **unpenitrable**, as the Crocodile, Orobon.

Others have **Scales** of a hard nature, yet may easily be **peirced**, or broken: as the Pearch.

Others with **soft** and **gentle Scales**, which may be fretted or rubbed off the Fish: as the Salmon, Barbell, Bream, Tench, and such like.

3. Some are covered with **Bristles**, or hard, stiff, and strong Hair, as the Rosmare, the Sea-boar.

Others a more soft and **gentle Hair**, as Seales, Waterhorses.

Others with a kind of **Woolly down**.

4. Some have their coverings of **Skinny** coverts, that is hard, thick, strong and rough, as Sea-dogs.

Others **rough** and **gentle**, as Soles, Arbutts.

Others have **Skinny** coverts, that are **smooth, soft** and gentle, yet thick and tough, as the Conger, Eeles, Sniggs, Dolphins.

Others **Skins**, are **thin** and **tender**, as Lampries, Flooks, Flouders

Others no **Skin** at all, as the Pourcuttle, or Cuttle-Fishes.

5. Some are again covered with **sharp pointed Pricks, and Thorns**; as the Stickleback, or Banstickle, Sea-Urchins, Sturgon, Thornback, Harp-Fish.

Others with more **blunter, Knots, Knobs,** and Scab-like Scroose, as Orbe-Fish, Sea-Rhinocereous, Glob-Fish.

Others with **Crusts**, or **Hard-pills**; as the Locusts.

The Form and Shape of Fish.

1. Some are **plain** and **flat**, as Turbots, Soales, Place, Flouders.

2. Others are **long** and **round**, as Eeles, Lamprey, Conger.

3. Others are **bulked Bodies**, as Salmons, Chalbots, Cods.

4. Others are **Monstrous**, as Whales, of all sorts.

5. Some have **two Feet**, as Rana's, Brethmechin, Sea-Horse.

6. Others have **four Feet**, as the Crocodile, Orobou.

Difference in Fish fins.

1. Fins are of different Nature, which to Fish are instead of Feet of which none have above **nine**, as the Salmon, (though Mr. *Morgan lib.* 1. *fol.* 67. saith the most is four; but therein is a gross mistake.)

2. Others have **seven**, some **five**, others **four**, others **three**, some **two**, others only **one**, but few without any.

3. Fins are some **broad**, others **long** and **narrow**, some round at the opening, others straight, all small Fish have them generally ending in a point.

4. Some Fins have the **spine**, or **thorny substance** between each **Membrane**, or **Skinny pannacle**, of a strong and sharp nature, not to be bended, and exceeds the limmets of the Fin.

5. Some are of **less strength**, being of a bone-like substance that is brittle, which in bending will break.

6. Other Fins are **spicked** with a **Gristly spine**, such as is gentle and easily bended.

7. Others have **slender, small, thin,** soft and weak spines.

8. Others have no **Spine** at all, but the Fin made of **Skin** or **thin Pellicle**, or **Membrane.**

BUT Fish may be Distributed better if we will consider them as they are distinguished into these several Classis or Orders.

First, **Vivaperous oblong Fish,** such as breed their young within them: as,

1. **Cetaceous,** such as are of the whale kind, as

Balæna	Porpoise	Dolphin
Whale		

2. **Cartilagineous,** such as are Grisly and have long Snouts and hatch their young within their Bellies, as

Saw-Fish	Spotted Hound-fish	Fox-Fish
Sword-Fish	Thorn-back	Sturgeon
Glaucus	Hog-Fish	Huso or
Shark	Dog-Fish	Huson
Hound-Fish	Zygoena	

Secondly, **Viviparous Cartilagineus Fish,** such as are Flatt and Broad, as

1. **Spinous,** such as have Thorny finns, as

Pastinaca	Sea-Eagle.

2. Not **Serrated,** without Sharp finns, as

Ray	Cramp-Fish	Scate
Maide	Sea-Divell	Angle-Fish
Flare		

3. Such as are **Thick, Short,** and **Round,** as

Mole	Lump

Thirdly, **Oviparous fish,** such as lay Egges, whose back **Finns** are **Soft** and **Flexile**, as

1. Such as are of the **Cod-Kinde**, haveing three fins on the Back, as

Keeling	Haddock	Haak
Codd-Fish	Whitting	Poor-John
Cole-Fish	Ling	

2. Such as have two **Flexile finns**, and are of the **Tunny-kinde**, as

Pelamis	Tunny	Mackerell

3. Such as have **Finny wings**, as

Kite-Fish	Swallow-Fish	Flying-Fish

4. Such as are of the **Herring-kind**, as

Sprat	Herring	Sarda
Shad	Anchovy	Chalcis
Pilchard		

5. Such of the **Lesser kinde** which have **Long Snouts**, as

Sea-Pike	Needle-Fish	Tobacco-Pipe-Fish

Fourthly, **Oviparous Fish,** haveing **Two Finns** on the Back, the one **Spinous**, the other **Flexile**, as

1. such as are of the **Bigger kinde**, as

Amia	Coracinus	Wolfe
Glaucus	Umbra	Mullet

2. Such as are of the **Gournet kinde**, haveing great **Bonny heads**, and **Larg Finns**, as

Rochet	Piper	Weaver
Gournet	Mullet major	Dragon-Fish
Tub-Fish		

3. Such

3. Such as have an **Horn** on some part of them, as

Trumpet - Fish	Uranoscopus	Doree
Monoceros	Scorpena	

Fifthly, **Oviparous Fish**, haveing one **Finn** on the Back which are partly **Spinous** and **Stiffe**, and partly **Flexile**.

1. Such as are **Broad** and of a **Golden Colour**, as

Gilt Head	Salpa	Chromis
Sea Bream	Sargus	Jaguraca
Sparus	Mormylus	Acara
Cantharus		

2. Such whose **Fin** on the Back is so **low** in the middle that it seems to be two, as

Scorpion - Fish	Perch

3. Such as are of **Variety** and **Beautiful colours**, as

Peacock - Fish	Julis	Sechettus
Sea - Thrush	Sea - Pearch	

Sixthly, **Oviparous Fish**, without Scales, having **Slimy Skins**, as

1. Such as are of **oblong Figure**, and are for Salt-Water, as

Conger	Opodion	Lamprey
Murena	Sand - Eeles	Lamporn
Sea - Serpent		

2. Such as are for **Fresh - Waters**, as

Seath - Fish	Eel	Horn - Fish
Eel - Pout	Spada Marina	Remora

3. Such as are **Plain** & **Flat**, having their **Mouths transverse**, as

Sole	Turbut	Plais
Spotted - Sole	Halibut	Flouder
Pole	Bret	Fluk

Seventhly, Fish of an **Hard Crustaceous** skin, as

1. Such as are round, and either **smooth** or **thorny**, as

Orbe - Fish	Urchen - Fish	Wrethen-globe-fish
Globe - Fish	Rough-Globe-Fish	

2. Such as are **Triangular**, as

Triangle - Fish	Horned - Triangle - Fish

3. Such as are **Pentagonal** or 5 angled, as

Holostens	Bonny - Scale - Fish

4. Such as are **Imperfect**, having no Mouths, as

Sea - Needle	Hippocampus

5. Such as are **Radiat**, having Rays in form of a Star, as

Mullet	Star - Fish

Eighthly, **Squamous** River - Fish, such as are Scally, as

1. **Voracious** or devouring Fish, having one Fin, as

Pike	Jack	Pickerel

2. Such as have two **Fins**, the hinder being fleshy and without Rays, as

Salmon	Char	Lavarettus
Smelt	Grayling	Perch
Sparling	Umbex	Ruff
Trout	Farra	Golden - Perch

[ ]

3. Such as are not **Voracious** or devourers, as

Carb	Chevin	Dare
Tench	Bream	Bleak
Barble	Roche	Blea
Chub	Dace	

4. Such as are the least **River - Fish**, as

Gudgeon	Bull-head	Minnow
Loach	Miller - Thumb	Banstickle
Groundling	Gull	Stickle-back

Ninthly, **Eranguious Animals**, such kind of Fish which have no Blood, as

1. **Crustaceous Fish**, such as are covered with hard Shells or Covers, as

Lobster	Sea - Cock	Hermit - Fish
Long - Oyster	Crab	Shouldier - Fish
Sea - Bear	Molucca - Crab	

2. Such as are covered with soft Shells, as

Sprawn	Squill	Cray - Fish
Shrimp	Crevice	Sea - Spider

Tenthly, **Testaceous, Turbinated, Eranguinous Fish**, such as are covered with hard knobbed or crusty Shells, top-like or spiral, as

Water - Snail	Cylinder like Fish	Wrinkle
Sea - Snail	Aporrhais	Welk
Nautilus	Nerites	Periwinkle
Murex	Buccinum	Venus - Shell
Purple	Turbo	Persian - Shell
Cylindroides	Trochus	Sea - Ear

Eleventhly, **Eranguious Testaceous Fish**, not Turbinated, but flat or even, as

1. **Univalvs**, such as have one Shell, as

Limpet	Button - Fish	Mermaids - Head
Center - Fish		

2. **Bivalvs** having two Shells and smooth, as

Mother of Pearl	Muscle	Sheath - Fish
Galades	Chama	Razor - Fish
Pinna	Tellina	Barnicle
Horse - Muscle	Limpin	

3. Such whose Shells ar **Rough**, or **furrowed**, as

Oyster	Scallop	Cockle
Spondyl		

Twelfthly, soft **Eranguious Fish**, such as handle Flesh-like, yet are Blood-less, as

1. Such as are **more perfect**, having Mouths like Beaks of Bird, as

Pourcontrel	Sweet Polipus	Sleve
Preke	Cuttle - Fish	Reddish Sleve
Polypus		

2. **Zoophytes**, or such which are **less perfect**, as being between Plants and Animals, as

Sea - Hare	Sea - Pulmo	Sea - Nettle
Holothurius	Blubber	Tethya

The

The several parts of a Fish.

First of the Head, (seting aside common Terms) as Head, Eyes, Mouth, Throat and the like, which are proper Names for all Creatures, yet in Fish there are peculiar Names for the parts of the Head, which no other Creature have: as,

The **Gills**, is the grisly part which compasses out the Chaules, and so comes down to the Throat. They move and open at the breathing of the Fish.

The **Gill Holes**, are the holes above the Throat, where the Fish lets out the Water that comes into the Mouth.

The **Aggs** or **Dugs**, (which some call the Gills) are four Semi-circles of red Flesh, the out side raged: these lye one upon another by the side of the Gill-holes.

The **Barb, Lobb**, or **Beard**, is any long skinny substance that proceeds from the Fish Snout or Nose, or under Chap.

The **Sliout**, the Nose, or Beak of a Fish.

The **Chaul**, the under part of the Fish mouth which moveth.

The **Wry**, or **Crooked Mouth.**

The **Leather Mouth.**

The **Insition Score.**

The **Body**, all the Fish from the Head to the Tail.

The **Dowle**, is the fore part of the Fish.

The **Tail pecce**, is the hinder part of the Fish.

Fork Tail.

Straight Tail.

The **Scales**, and skin, is the covering of the Fish.

The **Navel**, a small hole at the bottom of the Belly, through which the Fish avacuates.

The **Fins**, are those things fixed on several parts of the Fish, by which they row and move themselves in the Water, and are termed according to the place where they are fixed upon the Body: as,

The **Back Fin.**
The **Lower Fin.**
The **Daule Fin.**
The **Belly Fin**, or **Fins**,
The **Navel Fin.**
The **Tail Fin.**
} are the Fins set on the several parts of the Fish

The **Flesh Fin** or **Skinny Fin.**

The **Thorny Fin**, or **sharp Fins.**

The **Hooked Fin.**

The **Rawnes, Intralls**, or Guts: are the general terms for all that lieth in the Belly of a Fish: the particulars of note are,

The **Heart, Gall, Liver**, and **Belly, Gut**, which runs down to the Navel.

The **Spawn**, or **Frye**, is the seed of the Fish: of some called Eggs; in a Cod-Fish termed the **Breeches.**

The **Milt** or **Rows**, the seed of the Male or Cock fish.

The **Swim** or **Swimmer**, is a white round swollen Bladder in a Fish Bell, which being broken disinables him from swiming.

The **Chin-bone**, or Back-bone.

The **Gristle-bone.**

The **Prickles**, are the small Bones that are set on each side the Back-bone, as so many Ribs.

The **Clees**, or Claws of Fish, as in Crabs, Lobsters and such as have Feet.

The **Beards**, and Hair, and Horns, in shell Fish: are skinny substances proceeding from the Fish in the Shell by which they feel or grope their way, or draw things to them, as in Oysters, Crabs, Scallops, and Sea Snails and such like.

Terms of Fishing for several sorts of Fish.

Anglins, is a fishing for Trouts; which is with a Rod, Line, Hook and Bait.

Draw for a Salmon: and more then two, is called a draught of Salmons. This is with Nets drawn in the Water.

Snigling or **Boggling**, is the way of fishing for Eeles, by a baite and line on the end of a stick thrust into holes.

Bobbing for Eeles, is another way of fishing for them, by hanging the bait in hanks like Yern at the end of a cord.

Spear Eeling, is the way of taking them with an Instrument called an Eel-spear, which is thrust into the Mud.

Trowl, a fishing for a Pike: and this is by walking, and the line to run on a winch, that it may be winded up, or let out at pleasure.

Ledger, is another way of fishing for a Pike, and this is by fixing the Rods in any place, the Angler being absent.

Snap, is a fishing for Pike, which is to let them go away with the Bait, and them strike the contrary way to which he runeth.

Rove, is the fishing for a Pearch.

Leading, is a way of fishing, by which all the Water in the Pond, Pit, or Mare is drawn away by a sluice. Termed **Sue** the Pond, that is cleanse it, to fish it.

Dart, is taking great Fish by darting Hooks cast upon them.

Gorge.

Snare, see Snigle.

Dopp.

Grope, or **Tickle**; is to go into the Water, and gently to play with a Fish with ones Fingers, and seeing an oppertunity suddenly strike them under the Gills, and so cast them out off the Water. This way of fishing may be used to Salmon, Mort, Trout, Chub, & Eels

Places where Fish abide.

1. THE **Pond**, or **Pool-fish**; are the Carp, Bream, Tench, Gilt-head, Eel, Leech.

2. **River**, or **Fresh Water-Fish**; are the Flook, Flouder, Dace, Beards, Trout, Gudgion, Perch, Barbell, Mullet, Conger, Pollard, Lamprey and Lampern.

3. **Sea-Fish**, which usually come to **Fresh-Rivers** in spawning time; ar the Herring, Salmon, Smelt, or Sparling: Whitlings, Aberdine, or Stock-Fish; Cod, Sturgion, Ray, Thornback.

4. Sea,

4. **Sea, or Salt Water Fish,** are the Dolphin, Sea-Calf, Sale, Orke, Whale, Sword-Fish, Crocodile. With several other Sea Monsters, which are like breeders, and proceed not from Eggs, as other Fish do.

Fish Haunts, or Places they delight in.

Barbell, Roach, Dace, and Ruff, delight in sandy gravelly grounds. The **Deepest** part of the **River,** and the **shadows of Trees** are equally delightfull to them.

The Bream, Pike, and Chub, chuse a clay, and ouzie ground. The first delight most in the **midst of the River,** whose stream is not too rapid, but gently gliding. The second for **Still Waters,** full of fry: and that he may the better, and securer seize his Prey; he frequently absconds himself amongst **Water-docks,** under **Bushes** and **Bull-rushes.**

The Carp, Tench, and Eel, frequent still Waters, and what are foul, and muddy. The two first delight in the **deepest** place of the **Water,** and where there are **green Weeds.** The latter lieth **lurking** under **Roots,** and **Stones.**

The Pearch dilight in **gentle streams,** not too deep, yet they must not be shallow; and a **hollow banck** is their chiefest refuge.

The Gudgeon love **sandy ground,** in gentle streams, they effect **small Rivers** above the great, or **small Brooks.**

The Salmon delights most in **Rivers that ebb and flow,** are large, and have a swift current; if the **Rivers** be **Rocky** or **Weedy,** they are so much the better, for in such are the greatest plenty.

The Shad, Thwait, Plaice, and Flouder; have the greatest love for **Salt,** or **Brackish Waters,** which ebb and flow.

The Umber effect **Marly clay Grounds,** clear and **swift streams:** but they must be then far from the Sea, for they seldom come near it.

How several sorts of Fish are named, according to their Age, or Groath.

3. AN **Eel,** first a Fausen, then a Grigg, or Snigg, then a Scaffling, then a little Eel, when it is large then an **Eel,** and when very large, a Conger.

A **Pike,** first a Hurling pick, then a Pickerel, then a Pike, then a Luce, or Lucie.

A **Salmon,** first a Shad, then a Sprat, then a Trout, or Salmon Trout; then a Mort, then a Salmon Mort, then a Salmon Peal, or Samlett, or young Salmon, then a Salmon, then a Scipper Salmon; a Skegger is a little Salmon, which will never be bigger.

A **Smelt,** or **Sparling,** first a Sprat, then a small Sparling, then a Sparling.

A **Minnow,** first a Shad-brid, then a Sprat, then a Minnow.

A **Roach,** first a Rud, then a Roachell, or Roachet, then a Roach.

A **Perch,** first a Hurling, at a Year old a Tranling; second Year, an Egling; third Year, a Stichling, or Perchling; and lastly a Perch.

A **Barbell,** first a Barbett, then a Barbalett, then a Barb or a Barbell.

A **Loach,** first a Lochett, a young Loche, then a Loach.

A **Codd,** first a Whiting, then a Codling, then a Codd.

A **Lamprey,** first a Lampron-Grigg, then a Lampret, then a Lamprell, then a Lamprey.

A **Furn-fish,** first a Forn-fish, then a Gritt, then a Furn.

A **Carpe,** first a Seizling, then a Sproll, or Spraff; then a Carbe, or Karbe.

A **Tunny,** first a Cordly, then a Pelamide, then a Tunny, then a Whale.

A **Frog,** first a Bull-head, then a Frog-tail, then a Frog.

A **Lampron,** first a Barle, then a Barling, then a Lamprell, and then a Lamprey, or Lampron.

A **Mackerell,** first a Colia, then a Lacret, then a Mackerell.

A **Sturgion,** first ——— then a Porceller, then a Sturgion.

A **Gogion,** or Gudgion; first a Sand-Gressen, then a Grundel, or a Grundlin; then a Gougeon.

A **Sprat,** a Shad-brid, then a Sprat, then a large Sprat.

A **Crevice,** first a Spron Frey, then a Shrimp, then a Sprawn, and when it is large then call'd a Crevice.

Fish how Termed in companies.

A **Fray of Fish,** is the general Term when many together.

A **Scoole** of Herring.

A **Draught** of Salmons.

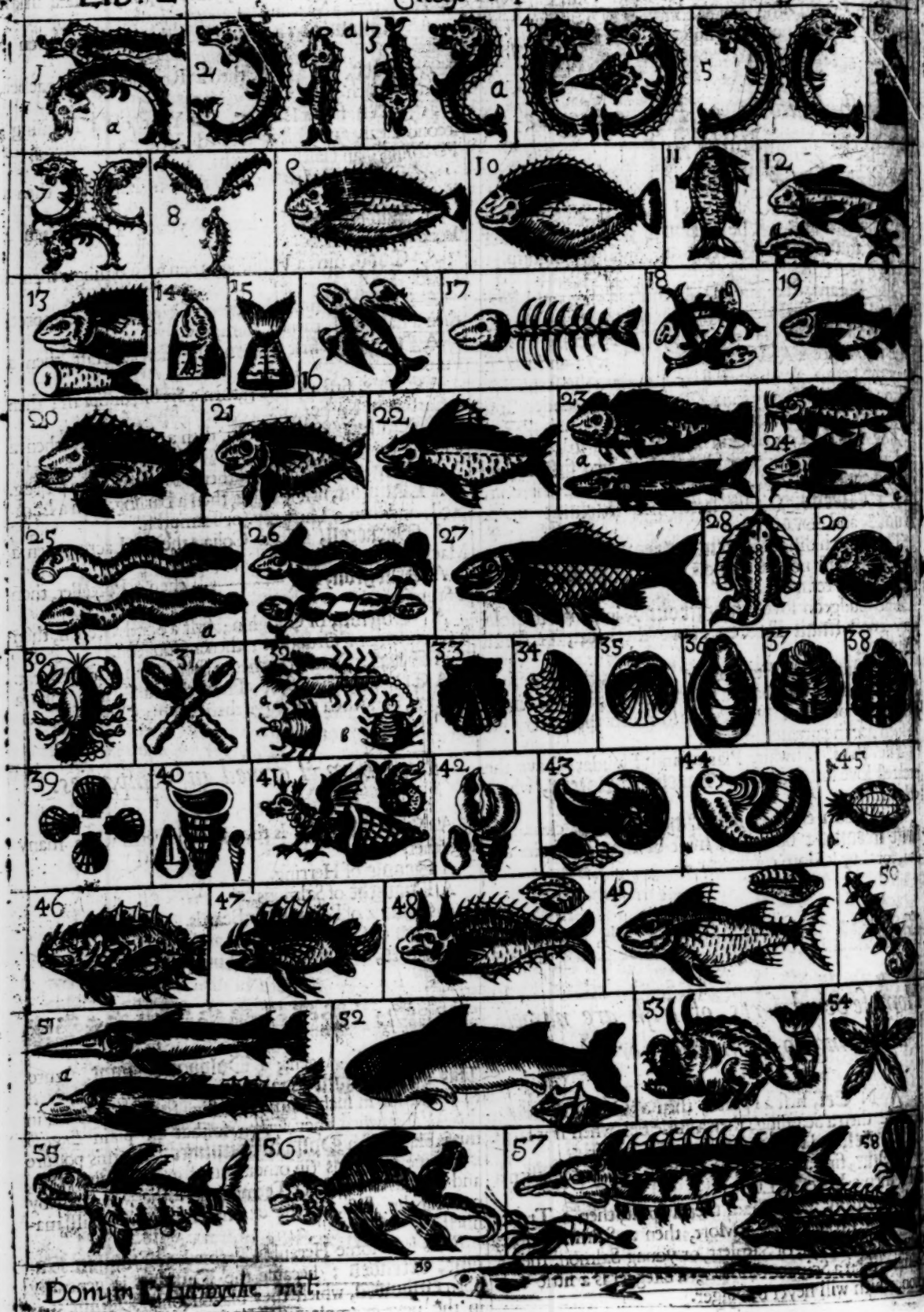
A **Shoale** of Barbells, or Beards.

A **Bed** of Oysters, Muscles, and Cockles.

A **Flote,** or **Troups** of Tunnyes, or Whales.

I. He beareth Argent, a **Dolphin Najant,** Azure. This Term **Najant,** is taken from the *Latin* word, *Nato* to swim, for in such manner do they bear themselves in the Water when they swim; so that in plain *English* this is blazoned, a **Dolphin swimming.** Yet this posture is of some Heraulds (in other sorts of great bodied Fish, and such as have Feet) Termed no otherwise then by naming the Fish, as the examples following will manifest.

This is of some Heraulds Termed, a **Dolphin Najant, extended:** because the **Dolphin** is generally born **embowed,** which they blazon only **Najant;** as in the next example. This is born by the name of *Nabhouse.*



Donum Chymyche mit

B. three such in pale O. Born by *Dolphin*, a *Venetian*.
A. 3 such Naiant S. Born by *Darburg*.
V. 3 such in pale O. Born by *Dolphingley*.

I.* He beareth Azure, a **Dolphin Naiant Imbowed**, Argent. By the name of *Fitz James*.
An **Antaceus**, or **Dolphin kind of Fish**; it is both as big, and like the **Dolphin**; having two Lobs like a Beard hanging at the higher Chap, a little below the Nostrils, each side one; the under Chap much shorter than the other; three double Fins under the Belly, *viz.* two at the Throat, two at the Navel, and two near the Tail. The Tail forked, but the higher much longer than the nether. The *Germans* call it a **Dick**, or **Tick**; and **Daus**, or **Hus**. This Fish is dusky on the Back; with a pure white Belly.
S. a Dolphin Naiant Imbowed, devouring a Fish, proper. Born by the name of *Symonds*.
S. the same Naiant Imbowed, proper. Born by *Fitz James*.
G. a Cheveron Ermine between three such A. Born by *Bleverhasset*.
S. a Dolphin Imbowed Hauriant A. by *Fayston*, also by *Van Ilingen*.

II. He beareth Or, a **Dolphin Hauriant, Imbowed**, Gules. These are the two usual Postures that the **Dolphin** is drawn in, whether they be for Names, for Chambers, or Signs for Houses; *viz.* **Imbowed**, either **Naiant**, or **Hauriant**. This is born by the name of *Fortior*.
B. the like O. Born by the Dolphin, the Kings Eldest Son in *France*.
The like also is born by *Godolphin*.

II.* He beareth Azure, a **Dolphin Hauriant**, Argent; of old it was termed, **Errant**. This word **Hauriant**, is derived from *Haurio*, to draw, or suck out; because Fish do often-times put their Heads above the Water to refresh and cool themselves with the temperate Air; especially when the Waters do so rage, and boile, that they cannot endure the heat thereof. This is Born by *Vischarell*.
G. the like O. Born by *Forgesham*, or *Forsham*.
G. the like A. born by *Fores*, also by *Visatherby* and *Visacher*.
☞ Note that this term **Hauriant**, as saith *Gwillim*, *fol.* 236. is used to all Fish in this posture having Fins; if they have no Fins then they are termed **Erected** or **upright**, see *numb.* 30.

III. He beareth Gules, a **Dolphin reversed**, Argent; (or else a **Dolphin** with the **tail erected**;) but most properly a **Dolphin Urinant**, from the word *Urino*, to duck or dive under Water, as if he were going down to the depth of the Sea. This is born by the name of *Dyver*.
A. 3 such in Fesse G born by *Rein*.

III.* He beareth Sable, a **Dolphin Hauriant torqued**, (or **targant**) Or, Words that are borrowed from *Torqueo*, which signifies to wrest or wreath; to turn one way and another, as this doth. This is born by *Van Doughenber*.

*

O. 3 such B. by the name of *Vandeput*, which *Morgan*, *lib.* 1. *fol.* 69. terms **Dolphins Springing** and **Hauriant**.

IV. He beareth Vert, two **Dolphins Hauriant Imbowed, respecting** each other, Argent. So *Gwillim*, *fol.* 232. Blazons it; but to use the term **respectant** and omit each other, would be more compendious, and more agreeable to the rule; but that I leave to the more judicious; these are by *Morgan*, *lib.* 1. *fol.* 67. termed **Imbowed Inverted**.

Between these Dolphins, for want of other room, I have placed the **Sea Cornet**, a kind of Purple Shell Fish described *numb.* 12. to which I refer you.

V. He beareth Or, two **Dolphins Hauriant Imbowed, endorsed**, Gules. To **endorse**, is to set one thing on the back of another, or a turning back to back. This is born by *Rodolfine*.
A. the like G. born by *Urkingen*.
B. 2 such respectant O. born by *Herdoffine*.
V. 2 such endorsed O. born by *Hammer*.
G. 2 such O. born by *Lamert*.

VI. He beareth Gules, a **demy Dolphin Hauriant**, Or. Born by *Semyster*.
A **Starred Antaceus**, or **Starry Tuck**, or **Dick**, it is of the Dolphin kind, according to its Figure by us Drawn; having a fleshy Fin on the back near the tail, and three under the Belly; the tail forked after a semicircular form within and without; it hath four or five lobs or beards hanging from its higher chap, for an under chap it hath none, but a gristle Bone for its gills; the back shews of a cæruleous or sky colour, the belly white, inclining to a rose colour, and the thorns or hooked fins on the back, and the row of Stars down the sides, which have thorns set in the middle of each, are of a pale or wan whitish hue; the points of the thorns of all are of a dusky or dark brown. This only differs from the **Dolphin** in the shape of its Nose, which is long, flat and slender, almost like the Bill or Beak of a Goose. This is of the Species of the **Antaceus**, mentioned before *numb.* 1. * see *chap.* 19. *numb.* 110.

VII. He beareth Azure, three **Dolphins Imbowed**, 2 **Hauriant endorsed**, the other **Naiant**, born by *Boytong*. Others again term them three Dolphins **Hauriant, Endorsed**, and **Naiant**, all **Imbowed**. Others three Dolphins turned back to back; and three Dolphins **endorsed**; being all turned one from or contrary to the other; and three Dolphins **Imbowed** and **endorsed in triangle**. Sometimes these are thus born with a Fesse or a Cheveron between them, which you may thus Blazon, a Cheveron or Fesse between three Dolphins **endorsed** and **imbowed**.
Some Coats have them, three **Hauriant Imbowed**, and **respecting** each other; others a Cheveron between three **hauriant**, (or **erected**) **imbowed**, them in chief **respectant**. Thus variety of ways are they born and Blazoned.
B. a Cheveron between three Dolphins Hauriant Imbowed them in chief respectant A. born by *Trahairne Goch* of *Llyn*.

S. a

S. a Fesse A. between 3 such O. is born by *Reddings*.

VIII. He beareth Vert, three **Dolphins in triangle**, their heads meeting in Fesse, Argent. Others say, three **Dolphins extended in triangle**, their heads together. Born by *Tredolphin*

Some Coats have them in triangle, their tails in Fesse (or their heads to the three points of the Escochion, as some term it) but that is to be observed that all triangular Bearings are set according to the three corners or points of the Shield or Escochion.

B. 3 such A. born by *Lewgerber*.

B. 3 Salmons so in triangle A. born by *Twymkin*.

IX. He beareth Azure, a **Sole Fish**, Argent, by the name of *Solegh*. Of some called a **Tongue Fish**, It is a long flat Fish, with a crooked mouth like a **Flook**, Finned on both sides from the tip of the Nose to the end of the tail, with an intire Fin, having no intervane; the belly of a whitish blue, or milky colour, the back a little more dusky.

An **Eyed Sole Fish**, is in all respects agreeable to the Sole Fish; but it hath divers spots upon its back part, great, and like Eyes, with a round circle, and a pupil or sight of an eye in the middle; from whence it is called the Eyed Sole, and of some the **Eyed Raye**, or **Eyed Crampe fish**: in *Germany* it is **Augebot**, and **Spiegelbot**, or **Spiegelzunge**.

An **Hounds tongue Fish**, it hath a wrye Mouth like the Sole, finned on both sides, the Body is flat, but thicker and shorter than the Sole, it is covered with small Scales, the out edges being serrate, or toothed after the manner of a Saw; of a dusky, or dark brown colour.

A **Herzungen**, as the *Germans* call it, which is as much as to say the **Lambs tongue fish**, it is a smooth Fish, without any scales; with an intersecante line streight through the middle of it. Other some there are which be covered with a multitude of most slender, thin or small scales, which are subject to fall off, or be rubbed away, by reason of their looseness; the body is so very thin and slender, and white, that it may be seen through.

A **Little Tongue fish**, it is the least of this long and flat kind of Fish, never exceeding 9 Inches in length; it hath a streight line that divides or separates the body; it hath thorny Fins, longer on the higher side than on the nether; the scales longer, and woven together more on the body, more loose in the parts about the Jaws and under side; the *Germans* call it a **Zunglin**, or **Meerzungen**.

An **Hippoglosse fish**, or the **Horse tongue fish**, it is scaled all over the body with small scales, the higher side finned from the head to the tail; the under side from a little distance of the head; with two small slender fins hanging down under the gills.

A **Sandling**, of some called a **Dab**; it is long and flat, like the **Sole** Fish; but it hath sharp fins beginning at the top of the head; the back is with blackish lines divided from head to tail in a Waved Losengy form.

V. a cheveron O. between three Sole Fishes born by *Soley*, and quartered by *Randle Holme*, of *Chester*, Author of this *Academy of Armory*, &c.

V. a cheveron per pale O. and G. between three such A. born by *Soley*, of *Bewdley*, and *Woodson*, in *Worcestershire*.

X. He beareth Sable, a **Flook**, Argent, By the name of *Fisler*. This is a broad flat Fish with a wry mouth; both sides or edges intirely finned from the head, to the fin of the tail; its belly is white; the back of a dark or blackish umber colour, the fins reddish. Of this sort of flat, smooth fish, with spinoseous or thorny fins there are several kinds, yet in shape all one and the same, as

The **Flounder**, of some called **Turbot**, or **Turbut**, and the *Germans* call it a **Thornbutt**. A. 3 such B. is born by *Turbott*. The Turbot is rounder than a Flook in the body and the skin, on the back more rougher, being stroked upwards from the tail.

The **Meerbutten**, it is much less than the **Flounder**, yet of the same shape with it; of the *Germans* called a **Tarbutten**.

A **Plaise**, or **Playse**, in Latine termed *Passer*, because it is of the colour of a Sparrow, white on the Belly, and of an Earth colour on the back, with reddish brown spots on the back and fins.

A **Plye**, of the *Germans* called a **Platysse**, or little **Plaise**; it differs from the shape thereof only in this; the tail is divided in the middle, and it hath a row of short thorny prickles down the middle of its back. I know no *English* name it hath.

A **Gold streine**, or as the *Dutch* call it a **Goldstreymer**, and the *Germans* a **Tippich**, or **Tippicher**. It is finned almost from the head to the tail, on the back, and on the belly, from the Navel to the tail; the body flat like the Flook, the whole body is full of golden short stroaks or lines, and hath a forked tail.

An **Anthias**, is a flat and long Fish, finned like the Gold strein, it is of a Silver colour, with golden blots, strikes or dashes (as it were) smeared on the back, but none on the belly.

A **Holybutt**, or **Hallibutt**; which the *German* call a **Quep**, and a **Raff**, or **Regling**; it is the largest sort of the **Flounder** kind; it hath red spots upon the fins which compass the body; and the back covered with black scales, having a streight line down the middle of the back (as it were) a parting or cutting between the two sides.

An **Arbutt**, in shape and form resembles the **Flook** and **Flounder**, only differeth in colour, for the belly is of a whitish red, and the back brown or umber colour, which is rough under ones hand being rubbed upwards from the tail to the head; and the flesh of it is more solid and flesh like than those of the like form and shape.

A. 3 Playse B. born by *Plasington*.

G. 3 Flooks A. born by *Arbutt*.

B. a cheveron between 3 such A. born by *Holybate*.

B. a Flook O. born by *Ply*.

XI. He beareth Azure, a **Salmon Hauriant** (or erected) **sans head**, Or; else a **Headless fish erected**; or a **fish sans head erected**. Born by *Heedless* or *Headless*.

XII. He beareth Gules, a **Fish Naiant**, Or, by the name of *Samlet*. This Fish, and all Fish after this form born

born in Coats, will pass in Blazoning by the name of a **Fish**, without any other name thereunto appropriated: For though in the several Coats, to whom this is Born according to the Names they belong unto; do give them proper and peculiar Denominations, as a **Lucy**, in the Blazoning of *Lucies* Coat; a **Salmon**, in *Samons* Coat; an **Herring**, in *Heringands* Coat; a **Trout**, in *Troubecks* Coat; a **Mort**, in the Coat of *Mort*, &c. Now if the Blazoner be not acquainted with the name the Coat belongs unto, thereby to give it the true term; then in his Blazoning to call it, or them a **Fish**, or **Fishes**; is no obsurdity, but is held good and sufficient Blazoning; and the Artist not to be counted unskilful in his Terms, when he is altogether unacquainted with the Names of the Owners of such Coats.

Fishes of this form and shape, there is very many, both small and great, of which take these few descriptions.

A **Shade**, of some termed a **Shade-fish**, or **Shad-birds**. This is the least of this form, and shape of Fish; being long and round, tending smaller and smaller from its Head to the Tail, it is covered with soft, and loose, thin, tender scales, easily taken of the Body by handling; it hath a silver colour Belly; the Back and Head tending to a blue. It hath a Fin on the Back, two on either side the Head by the Uggs, or Dugs, or Gills, two pointed, in the middle of the Belly, and a long Fin running from the bottom of the Belly to the Tail; all of them, and the Tail Fin, being more dusky than the Back.

An **Anchovis**, it is also a small Fish, of about five or six inches long; with two Fins under it Gills, and two at the Navel, and one over against them in the middle of the Back. The Belly is white, the Back dusky, and the Fins more dusky then it. The *Germans* call it an **Herring-art**, or **Spiring art**.

A **Trout**, from the Latine *Trutta*. It is a long and slender Fish; on the Back are two Fins, and on the Belly three; they stand contrary, not opposite to them on the Back, only those next the Tail stand over against the one and other; the Belly is white, the back, of a fire or bright Gold colour, with a row of round red spots, down the sides; with several other little spots, here and there sprinkled both above, and below them

B. 3 such Hauriant in Fesse A. Born by *Trutt*.

Vert 3 such Hauriant in Fesse A. Born by *Hame*.

A **Bambele**, or **Sea-bamble**; of the *Germans* called **Meerpfrille**, that is the **Sea pfril**, of the Latine *Hepsetus*. It hath no English name but what is borrowed from the *Germans*; it is all white, hath two Fins on the Back, and two on the Belly, one opposite to the other; with a Fin each side the Head, at the Gills: It is of the **Apua kind**, having thin and slender scales; therefore by some *Germans* termed, **Meerseelen**, or **spirinch geselet**, and **Meerfischle**.

S. in Fesse three such Hauriant A. a Chief O. Born by *Kitson*.

A. three such Hauriant B. Born by *Van Spirinch*.

A **Grayling**, of some called an **Umber**; and an **Ether**: It hath a long round Fin on the middle of the Back, and a small one a little from the Tail; two long, and slender ones, sharp pointed at the Throat; and two on the Belly, opposite to them on the Back; the whole Body is rough, or full of silver scales, or white; and grey on the Back, besprinkled with black points, or spots: It is of the *Germans* called, a **Churling**, or **Kornling**.

A. one such proper. Born by *Curling*.

A **Herring**, it is thick set with whitish scales, which are easily displaced; the Belly is white, the Back a darkish blue, or grey; it hath a Fin in the middle of the Back, two under the Throat, two either side the middle of the Belly; and one between them and the Tail.

G. three such Naiant in pale O. born by *Herringand*.

A **Luce**, or **Lucie**: See this described in the **Pike**, *numb.* 23. G. three such Hauriant A. Born by *Lucy*.

A **Pylcher**, or **Pylcharde**; it is covered all over with round scales, standing one by another, not under one another; it hath a rough or rugged line under its Belly; one Fin on the Back, one on the Belly; and one under the Throat.

A **Groveling**, **Groundling**, or a **Minow**; and of some called a **Peel-fish**; it hath a Fin on each side the head, two opposite one to the other, a little from the Tail; and one on the Back; it is full of small scales: The *Germans* call it a **Sea-Grundel**, or **Sea-smerlin**.

A **Smelt**, or **Sparling**, and in some places a **Spyote**, and being dryed, or smoaked, (which I never saw any of them, as **red Herrings** are) a **red spyote**, or **dyed spyote**; The *Latine* calls it **Apua**, and **Aphya**, being a Fish that will be boyled in an instant. It hath a long narrow Fin on the Back, almost from Head to Tail; that is the whole middle of the Back; two long pointed Fins, either side the Head, at the Gills; two smaller under the Throat, at the beginning of the Belly, and a pretty long narrow Fin, double pointed, or swallow tail finned. It hath a white Belly, the Back inclining to a yellow, else all whitish; covered with soft gentle scales.

Gesner makes mention of three other small Fishes, of the **Sparling**, or **Herring-kind**, which he terms in *Latine*, the one **Atherina**, or **Acerina**; and the other **Encrasicholus**, like to the **Anchovy**; and the third **Hembyas**, or **Bembyades**; of the *French* called, **Calliques** and **Lasches**; like to the **Clupea**, a little Fish with a sharp Snout, Enemy to the **Tuny**, or **Whale**.

A **Aoye**, or **Schiler**; which we *English* the **Changable**, or diverse coloured Fish: in *Latin*, called **Chressa**, or *Piscis Variatus*, or *Variata*. It is fuller, and rounder in the Body then the **Smelt**, or **Herring**; It is bigger then a little white Fish, called a **Bleak**; but in skin and flesh, like the **Perch**. It is of a lustruous spendant purple colour, shining like Gold; being set against the light of the Sun, like the colour about the Neck of a **Pigeon**, or **Wild Mallard**.

A **Zorte**, or a **White Fish**, of some Termed a **Whiting**: It is a numerous, or great breeding Fish; it hath a Finn on the middle of the Back; one each side the Gills; one above the Navel, and one near the Tail; It is fretted all over, with insect lines, with a streight row of pointed dents, each side from Head to Tail; see *numb.* 24.

An **Alson Fish**, or **Haringen**: hath only one Finn on the Back, one at each Gill; and two at the Navil; it is a deep and round bellied Fish, scally, with the line at the bottom of the Belly, sharp rigged, or dented, transverse; the Tail forked with an indenting, but not very sharp.

B 3 Fishes Najant to the Sinister in pale A. born by *Van Drakait.*

G the like in pale A. born by *Lamparter Van Ramsbach.*

B 3 Fishes Hauriant A. born by *Neston* or *Nessetowne.*

S 3 such Hauriant A born by *Pickmere.*

A 3 such Najant in pale S born by *Welsh.*

B 2 such disposed in Salte the dexter surmounting A. by *Gidney.*

B 3 such Najant in pale to the sinister A. born by *Somerfeld.*

Per Cheveron S and G 2 Swans respecting each other, and a Herring Cobb A. born by the name of *Cobb.*

In the base, I have figured the shapes of two **purple shell Fish**; of the *German* Termed a **Purpurschnecken.** So named, because from the Fish there comes a precious liquor, with the which purple cloath is died; It is a kind of a rough shell, open on one side, beset about with certain crooked Hooks, bending some one way, some another: being of the same substance the other part of the shell is of. It is called in the *Latin* tongue, *Pelagia*, and *Purpuria.* There is several sorts of them; as,

The **Sea-Cornet**, called **Buccinum**; fashioned like unto a Horn, or Cornet; It hath a round Back, and is cut like a Saw in the edges, and is of a purplish colour; see its figure *numb.* 4.

The other is the **Purple**, which these two figures do manifest: shooting out a long Back like a gutter, and within on the one side, it doth writh, and turn hollow in form of a pipe; they are bestuded as far as to the sharp top, or turbant thereof, round about with sharp knobs and pointed, generally 6 or 7 in number; which the Sea-Cornet hath nor. But this is common to both these kinds, that look howmany writhings, or roundles, they have like tendrils, clasping about them, so many years old they be.

The **Muddie purple**, from its lying and feeding in Mud.

The **Alga**, or **Algense purple**, is the worst of purples; by reason it feeds on Riets, and Sea-weeds.

The **Tenense purple**, so called from the resemblence of Fillets, or Lists of cloath, it hath about it; it is the best of the fore going purples.

The **Calculosous purple**, or **Sea gravel purple**; because set over all the shell, with great and small rough pimples, representing the Gravel on the Sea-shoar.

The **Dialated purple**; or the **Wandring purple** Shell-fish: it is the best colour of all others, by reason it doth keep no constant place, but doth feed in sundry soiles, in the Sea.

XIII. He beareth Azure, a **Demy Salmon**, Argent. More vulgarly Termed a **Salmond**, or **Samon**: some call this the **Dowle** of a **Samon.** This is born by the *Dowley.*

He beareth Gules, the hinder part of a **Salmon**, or a **Demy Salmons Tail**, proper: or as properly called, the Tail of a Salmon. This is born by *Tailler.*

Thus they are blazoned, when born by parts, and asunder: but tasting them as they now are, for but one entire Coat: then they are thus Termed. He beareth Vert, a **Salmon cut into two**, (or **divided** in the middle) Argent: (or after others) the **Dowle** and **Tail** of a **Salmon.** Others blazon it, to shew that one peece lyeth above the other thus: a **Demy Salmon** in chief, and the **Tail in base.** This is born by Mounsier *Devidall* of *France.*

S the Head to the sinister, and Tail to the dexter sides A. is born by *Thumer.*

XIV. He beareth Gules, a **Salmons head erected**, Or. Born by the name *Salmonhead.* Of some termed a **Demy Salmon**, or a **Dowl** of a **Salmon erect.**

A a Salmons head to the sinister B born by *Deham* alias *Ham* of *Siliciars.*

A a demy Salmon in Bend sinister proper. Born by *Reseyhut.*

A on a pale S a Salmons head, O and the like head for the Crest. Is born by the name of *Gascoyne*

XV. He beareth Sable, a **Salmons Tail erected**, proper. Born by *Van Boffinger.*

This is the Crest of *Laurence*: and also of *Van Sommerfeldt.*

B 3 such erected A. born by *Tail.*

XVI. He beareth Vert, a **Fish Volant** in bend, Argent: Winged Or. Some again blazon it, a **Fish in bend** Argent, Winged Or. And a **Winged Fish**, when they are both of one colour or mettle; but more properly a Fish with Wings, to distinguish it from those **Winged fishes**, mentioned *chap.* 16. *numb.* 44, 46. and 18. *numb.* 115. This is born by the name of *Griffy.*

B 3 such Haurian O born by *Llyderbach.*

G a like Fish Wings expansed A. born by *Truchling.*

G the like Volant in bend sinister, A. born by *Utingen.*

G the like in bend, A Winged O. born by *Van Boltzig.*

A the like volant in pale B. born by *Newton.*

G the like volant in bend A. born by *Van Scniz.*

XVII. He beareth Argent, a **Skelliton** of a **Salmon**, Sable. Termed also by some, the **Annotomy** of a **Salmon**: or the bones of a **Salmon Annottomized.** This is born by the name of *Skelliton.*

G. two such disposed in Salter A. by *Gradel Van Boden.*

S. one such Imbowed to the sinister A. by *Van Pnewmon.*

XVIII. He beareth Sable, three **Trouts**, **fretted** (or **based**) **in triangle**, Argent. They are by others Blazoned, **fretted in triangle**, **Teste a la queue**: that is, they are fretted so, as the Head of the one, lyes over the Tail of the other. But that is a needless expression; for by a triangular fretting, it is presupposed that their Heads are not together, but one contrary to, or

or from the other, else there can be no good Fret made of it. This is Born by the name of *Treutbeck*.

G. three Eels in triangle Fretted O. Born by *Pennoth*.

XIX. *He* beareth Sable, a **Salmon**, Argent. By the name of *Shalme*. Most do term these kind of Fish in this posture, to be **Naiant**, or **wimming**, which as it is the proper posture of all Fish, so being thus, it hath no need of any such term, but if it be otherwise, then it is needful to mention how it is, whether **embowed**, **hauriant**, or the like, as I have shewed in the first six numbers of this Chapter.

S. 3 such Hauriant A. born by *Salmon*.

The **Salmon**, is of a blewish ash colour on the sides; and more dusky or brown, on the top of the back, the belly white; it hath a large fin on the middle of the back, and a small one near the tail; two fins under the throat, two in the middle of the belly above the Navel; and one fin near the tail; the tail is streight finned, not forked.

A **Kypper**, or **Skypper Salmon**, is when the Salmon hath spawned, and is not in season, but is poor and out of order, which is known by the hook which it will have at the end of the lower chap or mandible; and its back and sides spotted.

A **Selmling**, or **Samlet**; or **Salmon-Mort**, are little or young Salmons not yet come to their full growth.

A **Skegger Salmon**, is a **Dwarf Salmon**, such as will never grow bigger, which is known by the head being bigger than for the proportion of the body.

An **Albelen**, or **Wisfisch**, from the *Latine* name, *Albulus Piscis Nobilis*, the **Noble White Fish**, its scales are white, yet there are a sort of them which are of a blewish green on the back, which the *Germans* call a **Vat-Fish**, and a **Felcken**, and a **Blawling** from its colour. It is in all parts scaled and finned as the **Salmon**.

An **Albele**, or **Wigling**, is the same as above, but of a lesser species; it is called by the *Dutch* **Wilgansfish**, and the least of these kinds is called an **Hagling**, or an **Hagele**. These have all forked finny tails.

A **Pool**, or **Pond Carp**, is of the **Pond Trout** kind; the nose or snout is not so sharp, the eyes are bigger, the back inclining to more blackness, and the belly more whiter and swollen up than the **River Carp**, the fins are as many, and placed in the same manner as in a **Salmon** or **Trout**.

An **Amber**, of *Umbra*, & *Umbla*; the *Latine* name, it is of the *Netherlanders* termed a **Rottele**, or **Rottene**, and **Pitzling**. It hath a small little Stone in its Brain, the Fins have no points, by which notes and more it may be accurately known; for they are all over red, and have teeth in their cheek bones or jaws, and on their tongues, to the number of five or six. It hath a Gemill, or double line of Incision cut through the sides of it.

A **Rott**, or **Lake Salmon**, is a kind of **Amber**, and is taken in *Lemanus*, which is a Lake of the *Allobroges*, near *Geneva* and *Lausanna*, there is also there another gross and round bodied Salmon, called *Salma Lemani Lacus*, which the *Germans* call **Grossen Rotten**; the **Great Bellied Salmon**, or **Amber**; which is colored and toothed as in the **Amber**.

A **Rottle**, of the *Germans* called a **Huch**, it is of a **Trout** and **Salmon kind**; the two fins on the back part, one stands on the middle of the back, and the other between and the tail. It is of a red colour, and the flesh of it is also red like to the **Salmon**; it is also termed a **Rot huechen**.

A **Huson** hath two fins on the back at an equal distance from the head and tail; it hath a sharp snout and a blunt under chap, as it half of it were cut off; it is of a smooth skin, after the nature of **Sturgion** the flesh eateth; it groweth to such a bigness that some are taken of a 1000 *l.* weight.

The **Salmon Trout**, or a **Salmon Mort**, are a sort of young Salmons growing to perfection; the **Trout** is so called from a fingers length till it be larger than an **Herring** or **Mackarel**. The **Mort** then begins to take its name, and continueth it till it is a fish of half a yard long, or more, then it is a young **Salmon**; they are on the top of the head of a light umber colour, and about the gills more yellowish inclining to a green, and shines much after the manner of a Drakes neck feathers, the under chap is pure white; the eye black, with a yellow circle or Irides; the mouth is white, having a little tincture of flesh colour; it hath sharp teeth in the higher and lower jaw bones; the tongue is an absolute bone set with sharp teeth, and covered with a fleshy skin; the back of the fish is umber, or a kind of earthy colour; if it be turned from the light, the sides more paler and the belly white; but turn the same about, and it sheweth to be of a pure shining silver colour, intermixed with blew, yellow and green interchangeably; the body appeareth scaly, and they may be scraped of with a Knife; they have an Incision line on each side set with reddish spots, so the back and sides are here and there confusedly and thin set with the like spots; it hath a large fin on the middle of the back, a less near the tail, and the tail fine something forked, all of an earthy umber colour; a long and narrow fin at each side the throat, or at the gills; two such like fins set together at the bottom of the belly; and a fin just below the Navel, all of a yellow colour inclining to a red.

G. 3 Salmons in Fesse Hauriant, proper; born by *Salmon*, and also by *Sammon*.

S. 3 such najant A. born by *Dame*.

V. 3 such Hauriant A. born by *Dodd*.

G. 3 such Hauriant A. by *Gloucester*.

A. one such in Bend Sinister B. born by *Fischborne*; on a Torce or wreath of his colours, an Oak tree proper, with the like Fish cross the body of it B. is his crest.

B. 3 Morts, or Salmon Morts hauriant A. by *Mort*.

A. on a cheveron B. 3 Trouts, the middle hauriant, the other counter naiant A. born by *Pennals*; thus by Mr. *Morgan*, *lib.* 2. *fol.* 52. but more briefly term it a Trout hauriant between two, counternaiant, or two respectant, that is swimming or looking at one another.

XX. He beareth Gules, a **Perch**, Argent. Born by the name of *Perch*. In *Latine* it is called **Perca**; the *Germans* **Bersich**, or **Bersing**, or **Barsz**, or **Barsch** there is of this fish several kinds, as

A **fresh Water Pearch**, hath a broad fin all along the back, divided into two parts, sharp pointed and deep dented; two fins above the Navel, sharp pointed, and

another near the tail; it is of a fuscous, or dusky dark colour (yet in some Rivers they are more white) with transverse lines and a forked tail.

A **Salt Water**, or **Sea Perch**, hath but one long fin on his back, almost from head to tail, a fin each side the gills (which the other hath not) two long pointed fins at the middle of the belly, and a broad round fin near the tail; the tail is not forked but streight; the *Germans* call this the **Puntel Parsch**, that is the **Spotted Pearch.**

A **Rock Fish**; of some termed, **Golden Head** or **Goldeneye**, or **Gilt head**: it is of the *Germans*, called a **Newer**, or **Newling**, & a **Punter Newing.** it is of a tawney colour, the head like gold scaled all over, with an Insicien score on each side; straight tailed; the back fins sharp pointed, extending almost from head to tail, at the gills a broad pointed fin, middle of the belly two, and near the tail a round fin; this Fish, and the following of this kind are termed **Rock fish**, because they love to live among Rocks; the *Germans* call it a **Gold-forn.**

A **Sea Merle**, or **Cock Fish**; so called from the colour of a Bird named so; for the *Latins* term it *Merula Piscis*, the **Ouzle**, or **Black Fish**; yet the Bird is black; but the Fish is of a deep Violet; in *India* the fish is black, and the belly purple; it is a more shorter and rounder bodied fish than the **Golden-eye**, or **Rock-fish** beforesaid; else in scales and fins is the same, only this hath them not so sharp pointed.

An **Alhest**, of the Latine *Alphestes* or *Alphesta*, is a fish of the **Perch** kind; it is of a Cereous, or Wax colour.

A **Channus**, or **Channa**, is a fish of the same kind and the **Phycis**, which are so variable in their colours, that they are often taken for the **Thrush** and **Peacock** fishes.

A **Peacock Fish**, or the **Sea Peacock**, is of the colour which a Peacock hath about his neck, *viz.* green, blew, it is a short thick round fish, scaled, finned, and fork-tail, as the precedent.

A **Kings Mantle Fish**, so called from its variety of colours wherewith it is spotted; it is of the **Thrush** kind in form and shape, but the greatest part of it is green, speckled with pricks of purple, blew, and other confused colours.

A **Sea Parrot**, or a **Parroquet Fish**, is also a kind of **Sea Thrush**, it is of various colours, the back is black, the Fins inclining to green, spotted with several colours like that *Indian* Bird, and white about the eyes.

A **Sea Leoper Fish**, or a **Leprese fish**, it is of the **Sea Thrush** kind, with the higher chap only turned up; the Fins on the back sharp pointed and dented, the tail streight; it is of some called, by reason of its diversity of spots, the **Attagen fish**, and the **Sea African Hen fish**; it is all red, spotted with greater and smaller all over the body and fins, with spots of diverse colours; it is of the *Germans* termed a **Rower Punterfisch**, and a **Rower Krametfisch**; a red fish of the **Thrush fish kind.** See more of this **Thrush fish kind**, *chap.* 15. *numb.* 24.

A **Mormyle**, so named from the Latine name *Mormylus*, and *Mormyrus*; it is a Fish of the **Perch** kind, of diverse colours; it is the colour of Silver with transverse lines from the back to the belly; black or dusky, and at equal and even distances; the *Germans* call it a **Mormelbachsme**, or a **Malbachsme.**

A **Chromis**, or a **Cremys**, is a fish with thorny fins, taking the middle of the back of a chesnut colour; it is from thence named *Castagnus*, from the said castaneous colour, but the whole body of the fish is of a black colour.

An **Dyphe**, of the *Latine* named *Orphes*; it is of the **Perch** kind, and is of a purple colour, inclining to a red: It is like the **Pagrus**, in the number of fins, and in the pricks and sharpness of them.

A **Frombder Fish**, or the **red Dyphus**, hath a red body, in which is seen a glance of other colours; it is a kind of flat fish, compressed more in breadth than in length; the scales firmly fixed; the fins as beheld are of various colours; the lips are carnosous and fleshy to the middle part of the body, it is black and blue; the belly white; the head is almost round, the spots in the root or bottom of the Tail are black.

An **Hepatus**, or **Delcon**, of the *Germans* called a **Schwartsblawe.** It is a Fish like the **Dyphe**, a compressed body, very scaly; great eyes, and a little mouth, the body of a Liver colour, whence it is called **Hepar**, a **Liver fish**; the lips are bright as gold; the head of somewhat an obscure colour, *&c.*

An **Umber**, or **Seerapp**, as the *Germans* call it; or a **Meer Karpfen.** It is of an Umber colour, more white on the belly, with lines or dashes oblique the back, descending to the belly, part gold colour, and part more obscure like umber colour, from whence it took its name.

A **Glaucus**, or a **Gesch-lecht**, or **Seerappen.** It is of the **Umber** kind, it is named also a **Mager**, or a **Mager fish.** the scales are of a gray or blew colour. A. the like B. born by *Mager.*

A **Corazin**, from the Latine name *Coracinus*, or the **Sea-crow-fish**, because it is all black; it is of the **Umber** kind, and by Fishers is often sold for the Umber, and the Umber for it.

A. 3 Umber fish proper, born by *Umlrell.*
A. one such born by *Oxton.*

A **Schroll**, or **Schrollen**; of the *Germans* called a **Schrellele**; it is of the **Perch** kind, with the like fins and pricks on its back; the back is a dusky brown, with a greenish gloss, with very many pricks or spots of brown; the belly is white; the fins on the back have the thorns or pricks white; and the beginning of the fins at the gills are red.

B. a Pearch proper, born by *Don Percy* of *Spain.*
A. the like B. born by *Bersich.*
A. 3 such G. born by *Oldsich.*
G. 3 such O. born by the name of *Oldfield.*

XXI. He beareth Azure, a **Birt** (or **Burt**, or **Bert**) proper by the name of *Birt.* It is not altogether so round a Bodyed Fish, as my engraver hath made it; but rather longer, and slenderer; especially at the Taile, it is a flat Fish like a **Sole** or a **Flooke.** It hath bright yellow spotts in the fins, and also upon the Back, the rest of the Body of an colour; the Skin is rough and full of scales, the fins compass the Body about; the Taile is forked a little; it hath two narrow sharp point-

*

pointed fins under its Throat; and the like fin by it Gills, the line of Intercision, or parting of the Body, hath many turnings and windings, which in the Flooke is stright. It is by the *Germans* termed, a **Brett-fish** or **Brett-cork.**

Aripenser is a Fish of an unnatural makeing and quality, for his scales turne all towards the Head and he ever swimeth against the streame: It was a Fish that the old *Romans* made a cheif reckoning off.

B. 3. Brits naiant proper born by *Bretcick.*
O. 3. such B. born by *Torrold* or *Torrand*
G. one such. O. is borne by *Ormeston.*

XXII. He beareth Gules, a **Chalbott,** proper. All the Face and Head, is of a horny bony Substance, with two sharp pointed hookes standing over his Eyes, and the hinder part of the Head, hooked in like maner; like the **Swallow Fish,** it hath two large round fins on each side, with an Incision downe the Back; the Sides hooked, on fins like hookes; and the Taile forked. This Fish of Authors is termed **Lucerna,** or the **Lanterne-fish;** for it hath a Tongue which shineth like Fire, which in a dark, and calme night giveth light. And also **Milvago,** because it useth to fly. And **Milvus piscis,** the **Kite-fish.** The *Germans* have two, or three names for it, as **Meertwye, Gournard, Curtfisch, Seehan,** and **Redfisch;** but the most vulgar, or general name is **Scheynfisch,** and we call it in *English,* **Chalbott;** from the *French* who call it **Cabote,** and **Gabote;** from the greatness of it Head. And **Redfish,** or **Gournard,** from the *Germans,* and *Dutch;* because it is of a red colour; yet spotted with darke spotts, neither round nor square, but dashed on.

O. 3. such erect G. born by *Chalbot.*

A **Cabot;** it is a Fish of the **Chalbott** kind, it is of a shining hue, and therefore is also called the **Lanterne fish,** for it Eyes shine in the night. It is black of colour, inclining to red; the Head is very much Compressed, or made broad from the Eyes, to the Nose. The fins are sharpe pointed, and reach from the Head to the Tail; and againe from the Tail, to the midle of the Belly; the Tail forked. Two large fins at it Gills, with a kind of star on its Cheecks, under the Eyes. The intersecans line through the midle of the Body, resembles small arrow Heads, put one into an other.

A **Sea Raven fish;** it is of the colour of a **Kite,** yellow: inclining to be somewhat black on the back; it resembles the **Cabote** in all things, only the incision excepted, which is (as it were) two lines wreathen one on the other.

The **Roman sea Hen;** the **Sea Cocoe;** the **Sea Lyra,** or **Harp fish** are all Fish of the **Thrush kind** therefore shall say no more of them.

B. a Chalbott. O. born by *Chalbutter.*
A. the like. G. born by *Merchalden.*
G. a Cabot proper by the name of *Cabott.*

XXIII. He beareth Argent, a **Basiliske fish,** Gules by the name of *Cock-fish.* It is termed also, a **Sea Cockatrice fish;** or a **Cristed fish.** Which *Gesner* calls in *Latine, Exocœtus;* from its use, to come to land and sleep. It hath a finned crest on it Head like a **Cock,** and sharpe pointed fins down all the Back, almost to the Tail; two pointed fins, long and slender under the chin, and two broad sharp fins each side the Head; and a long narrow like sharp pointed or prickly fin, from the midle of the Belly, almost to the Tail; the fin of the Tail streight, with sharp pricks. This is termed, a **Punterhane,** and a **Steinrup.** It hath a plain, smooth Skin, and slippery, spotted all ouer: with an Incision line each side from Head to Tail. There are three kinds of these Fish, whose shape of Body, and fins, in all respects are agreeable; save one is crested like a Cock, smooth not dented, the other hath a bunch or tuberous swelling on the Head; and the other hath no crest at all. Which the *Germans* call **Seeserth.**

*. XXIII. He beareth Vert, a **Pike,** Or. Born by *Pickell.* Of some for distinction sake, and to decipher it from another thing of that name, it is termed a **Pike fish:** also a **Lucie,** and a **Purling.** It is call'd in *Latine,* **Lucius,** from *Lupus,* because it is as great a devourer of fish in the Waters, as the **Wolfe** is on the Land, it hath a long and sharp Snout, with sharp Teeth: a long and slender Body, with two fins opposite one to the other, near the Tail; two fins under the Throat, and two in the midle of the Belly, the one beside the other; the Tail, forked.

G. 2. such Hauriant endorsed. O. are the Armes of the Dominion of *Phiert* and quartered by the Duke of *Wittenberg.*

B. 2. such endorsed. A. is born by *Van Hartutsch.*

A **Menoy,** or **Menow** so called from the Latine word, *Minutus;* it being the least of fish for when it is at its full growth, it exceeds not a fingers length, it is a long slender Fish and Finn'd with as many fins, and in the same places, and after the same maner as the **Pike** is, the *Germans* call it, a **Pfrill,** and a **Milling** or **Mulling;** a **Wettling,** and a **Brechling.**

A. 3. such Naiant in pale. G. born by *Pickton.*

A **Spit fish;** of the *Germans* called, a **Sea Picke** or **Meerbecht,** a **Spitfisch,** and a **Schwirefisch:** so called from the length and form; the later for the length of its under Chap, which in length much exceeds the higher, it is a long slender, ravenous, great Eyed, sharp Nosed, crooked Toothed, Sea-fish, haveing a blackish Back, and a white Belly. The fin of the Tail triforked, or three points.

An **Hautin,** or **Small spit fish:** of the *Germans* called a **Meerbecht,** the Body is of the same Kind as aforesaid, and very like it, it hath a sharp Snout, and forke Tailed.

A **Sandile,** or a **Sandeele;** of the *Netherlanders* called a **Walmester;** it is a litle long Fish with a Head like an **Eele,** with a short little Mouth, without Teeth, from the Nose to the Brows sharp, other parts of the Head great and round; the Body is Congruous **Conger** like and of the same colour, it is a Fish that lives in the Sands, and some writ that it is of a Sandy colour.

G. 3. Pikes Hauriant. A. born by *Pickton.*
G. 3. such Hauriant in Fesse. O. born by *Walthome.*
G. 2. such Hauriant endorsed. A. cheise. O. by *Pattitt.*
O. 2. such endorsed. G. born by *Nesscholt.*

A.

A. 3 Sandeeles najant in pale S. by *Sandile*.
G. 3 Pikes hauriant endorsed A. born by *Siglingen & Blankenberg*.
G. one such Imbowed to the Sinister A. is the coat & Crest of *Colner*, or *Colliner* of *Polony*
G. 2 such hauriant endorsed O. born by *Mumpelgart* & also by *Pivrat* of *Holland*.

XXIV. He beareth Sable, a **Barbell**, Proper. born by the name of *Barbell*. It is called a **Barbell** from the beards which it hath on either side the mouth. It is a long bodyed fish, with a forked taile; one fin on the middle of the back, and three on the belly: it is marked all over the body with transverse lines, one so crosing the other, that it makes the body all Diamon wise, or more properly Lozengie. Two long fleshy lobbs hang downe from the nose; and one on each side at the opening, or corners of the mouth. It is also called a **Barb**, but in *Flanders*, a **Barme**. and in *Saxony*, a **Parme**.

A **Nose Fish**, soe called from the roundness & shortness of its Nose, it answers the **Barbell** else, in all the shapes and makeing of the Body, Fins, and Taile: Save the want of the fleshy lobs. The inner side of the belly is compassed about with a most black membrane, or thinn Skin.

A **Loch**, or **Loach**, It is a small fish in all respects like the **Barbell**, and is called in latine, *Cobitis Barbatula*, a Fish with a little Beard. But the *Germans* a **Grundele**, or **Schmerle**, or **Sengele**, or **Zirle**.

B. 2 Barbells hauriant respecting each other A. born by *Barbe*.
A. the same B. is born by *Colston*, or *Golston*.

* XXIV. He beareth Cules, a **Cod Fish**, Argent. by the name of *Codling*. Of others termed a **Stockfish**, or an **Haberdine**. It is a White fish, the back of a dusky yellow, or inclineing to an Ash colour; haveing three fins on the back, one on either side the Gills, and one at the further end of the Belly neere the Taile. It hath a little Beard, or slender Lobb of Skin hanging under the nether lip, the like also from each side the Throat. It hath noe Scales but a soft smooth Skin. In the North part of this Kingdome it is called a **Keling**, In the Southerne parts a **Cod**, and in the Westerne parts a **Welwell**. The *Germans* a **Bolck**, or **Bollich**, because the head is too big for the body.

A **Morhuel**, which the *Geamans* call a **Meerhuel**, It hath a small thread, or skine hanging from the tip of the under lip, but none at the throat as the **Cod** hath; in all other things it answereth the **Cod**, only it hath two fins, one in the middle of the Belly, and the other neere the Taile.

A **Whiting**, or **Wittling**, Of the *Germans* called a **Wisling**, or a **Gad**, some think that this is but a yong **Sprat** of a **Codfish**, and will come to be a **Cod**. But such are mistaken, for they be a distinct Fish, yet for shap of body very like the **Cod**, especially in a big head, for that is much larger than the shape of the body requires. It hath fins downe the Back, and from the Taile to the middle of the Belly, with two narrow fins hanging under the Throat; It is all white, being a little dusky on the Back: and a long narrow and sharp pointed fin on each side the Gills

*

B. 3 Whitings A. is the coat of *Whitting*.
G. 3 such A. born by *Whitling*, & by *Whittings*.
B. 3 Cods heads couped A. born by *Coddings*.

A **Picarell**, or the **White Cackarell fish**. It is in *Latine* called *Garus* and *Smaris*; the *Dutch* call it a **Witter Scheysserling**; it always remains white; of this Fish the best Garum or Pickle is made. The **Cacarel**, the **Picarell**, and the **Bocque** are fishes of one kind, they have a small fin long and narrow from the navel to the tail; in all other things finned as the **Roch**, *viz.* two at the gills, and two together between the throat and navel; only in the **Bocque** those spots, blots, or dashes are wanting which is in the **Cackarel**, or not having so many; the **Picarel** hath the scales more rough or sharp, with right lines like tile work, or in Losenges orderly; but the **Cackarel** hath them in no order, but confusedly. G. three Pickarels hauriant A. by *Pickerin*.

A **Bocque**, beside what is aforesaid, hath several gold and silver lines or streaks running along from his neck to the tail. There is another species of the **Bocque**, which hath great eyes, as the foresaid hath; but all the fins both on the back and belly, are smooth, not thorny pointed.

A **Saupe**, which the *Germans* call a **Goldstreymer** or a **Meerberschen**. It is of some termed a **Stockfish**, from the Latine name *Salpa*, but those are mistaken, for it is a small headed, little mouthed, blunt nosed, large scaled, unsavoury and unwholesom Sea fish, having many golden lines all along its gills to the tail; it hath a thorny or crooked fin on the middle half of the back; two jagged fins at the gills, two under the throat, and a long narrow jagged fin from the navel almost to the tail.

A **Uergadelle**, or the **Rod-fish**, of the *Germans* called a **Streymbzachsme**; it is of the **Saupe** species, and hath two parallel lines on the sides, meeting in one at the head and tail. This is also called the **lesser Saupe**.

A **Cole-fish**, it is a species of the **Cod-fish**, and hath its name from its colour, being black like a Cole; it doth differ nothing from the shape and make of the **Stockfish**, but in these particulars, the skin is smooth without any scaly incisions; the tail is forked, whereas the rest of this kind are streight or round; and the long fin at the bottom of the belly running from the navel to the tail, is divided into two; the fins under the throat are short and broad, and hang not, but ly along the belly.

A **Milcher**, or a **Mole-fish**, of the *Germans* called a **Truschen**, or **Alputten**; and in some parts a **Wytling**; it hath a wide mouth, with two strings or lobs behind the gills, reaching to the navel, and ending in a double point, with a string from its under chap, an engraled fin almost the length of the back, ending at both ends in a round; the like from the navel to the tail; the tail fin engraled circularly; a round pointed fin on the neck, engraled on the top; and two long fins sharp pointed, set in knots of skin, or tuberous bunches near the gills. These fish are all white, only the backs are dusky and yellowish.

A. a Cole Fish proper, born by *Colsley*.
G. 3 Cod fishes hauriant A. born by *Lairberg*.

B. 3 Cods naiant in pale A. born by *Beck*.
G. a Ling head erected O. born by *Lingly*.
S. 3 Cods heads A. born by *Codhed*. also by *Codding*.

A **Stock-fish**, or **Marling**, else **Merling**; in *Latine Merlanus*, and *Merlingus*. It hath a scaly insect all over the body; with an incision score from head to tail both sides the body; the two fins on the back, one from the tail to the middle of the belly; one narrow fin each side the gills, and two under the throat; the back is earthy colour, else all the rest of the body is white, inclining to yellow.

A **Haddock**, or **Schellfish**, an **Eglefish**, it hath a little short beard or string hanging at the tip of the under chap; three fins on the back, two between the navel and tail, two long narrow fins below the throat; and a broad fin ending in a point at the gills; the head is great, the body thick at the head, but short and very slender at the tail; the tail fin round forked. This is of some called a **Reynfisch**.

A **Goberge**, or **Bergerfisch**, is a kind of **Cod** or **Stock-fish**; We have no *English* name for it but what we borrow from the *French* and *Dutch*; it is a scaled Fish with an incision line through the sides as most Fish have, three sharp pointed indented fins on the back, a streight ended tail; a fin from the navel to the tail, one at each side the gills; and two long and slender hanging down from the throat, the belly is round and full from the head to the tail.

A **Haberdine**, or **Island Fish**; of some called **Poor John**, it is the worst sort of **Ling fish**, though very often it doth pass for it, because it is of so near relation, and so much resembles it in form and colour; it is by the *Latines* termed *Asinus Piscis*, *Leopardus*, and *Molus*; because this Fish is variously spotted, and after the same manner as the **Goberge** is.

A **Ling**, or **Codling**; and of some called a **Haka**, of the *Germans* who term it **Haggen** or **Hacken**; it is much longer than the **Cod**, yet it is of the same colour, but being boiled turns to a kind of dusky yellow; the head and body is proportionable, the two long fins which hang in the others under the throat; in this Fish and the **Haberdine**, hangs a little above the navel; else in other things they are finned like the **Cod**, but hath no incision score along the sides.

XXV. He beareth Or, a **Lamprey**, proper. By the name of *Lamprell*. It is also called a **Lampel**, or more vulgarly a **Lampron**, of some a **Nine eyed Eele**; it hath no mouth but an hole with a round lip about it like an **Horse Leech**; it is pure white all under the belly, the upper side and fins, and tail part coal black; the *Latines* call it *Lampreda*, but the *Germans* **Lamprey** and **Lempfrid**, and **Lampheryn**; and them of the lesser kind **Barle** and **Berling**, and **Bzick** or **Pzick**. It is of some with us termed a **Luckstone**, because it will fix its mouth to a Stone, and hang thereby. 3 in Pale born by *Lamprell*.

A **French Lamprey**, or **Star Lamprey**, is a kind of Fish which in the North of *France* have in their right jaw seven spots resembling the seven Stars about the North Pole, called *Charlemaignes Wain*, they be of a yellow colour, and glitter like Gold as long as the **Lampreys** be alive, but being dead, they vanish away, and are no more seen.

A. 3 Lamprons S. born by *Lampfrid*.
O. 3 such in pale proper, born by *Lampish*.

a XXV. He beareth Gules, a **Sea Lamprey**, Argent. Born by *Hargrave*. It hath two threads of small skin hanging down under its throat, else in all respects it is like the former. It is of some Authors called *Lampetra Serpentina*, the **Serpentine Lampron**; by reason it hath a head and mouth like a **Serpent**, and the neck and tail of a **Lamprey**, or the **Eele-Lamprey**; but the *French* call it a **Lampyllon**, and the *Germans* **Mennaug**.

A **Lamprell** or **Eleponts**, are like the **Sea Lampreys**, both in shape and proportion; the He or Milter, is called **Myrus**, and the She or Spawner **Murena**; the he is of one colour, and is very strong, having teeth standing out of his mouth, but the she is of sundry colours, and spotted, and weak withal; they Spawn at all times in the year, whereas other Fish are delivered of their young at one certain season. If these Fish slip out of the Water to dry Land, it is the common report that they will engender with **Serpents** and **Adders**.

A **Sea Powte**, or **Sea Eele Powte**, which the *Germans* call a **Ruppen**, or **Aruppen**; a **Rutten**, or **Rutelcken**; they differ from the shape of the **Sea Lamprey** only in this, that the fins on the back and belly are thorny and sharp pointed, and reach not to the fin of the tail; they have also fins at the gills, and a string at the nether chap, and like two thorns stand upright on the nose, bending a little in the point; the like thorn also on the hinder part of the head; in all other things it is like the **Sea Lamprey**.

A **Douzelle**, this is the *French* name to another species of a **Sea Eele-Powte**, which in body is like the **Sea Lamprey**, and in the fins, having the two strings falling from the open, or *Rixus* of the mouth, and the body divided by three incision lines, each again parted by bevil or oblique lines, one answering, yet going contrary to the other, on the other sides of the lines, so that in the term of Blazon, the whole body (to the belly which is plain) is by lines divided into Pally Cheverony; it is in all respects shaped like a **Conger**: Some call it a **Gill** from its *Latine* term *Grillus*.

A **Wallfurer**, or a **Walleiter**, as the *Low Countreys* call it; *English* name we have none; it is in all respects like the **Donzelle**, only distinguished from it in the head, by having two black short threads on the upper lip, and one on the under, and the tail to end in a kind of Lozenge form (as the **Sea Lamprey**) in the fin; whereas the **Donzells** tail ends in a sharp point taperwise, as the body doth; it hath small teeth.

There is another kind of **Wulkela**, or **Sea Lamprey**, which hath two threads on the higher lip, and two at the end of the under lip, a fin at the gill, two strings at the throat, and a jagged fin at the hinder part of the head, the body thick and short (which makes it differ from the **Lampreys**) else it is finned on the back, and round the tail, and under the belly, directly like to the **Sea Lamprey**.

XXVI. He beareth Vert, an **Eele** or **Conger**, naiant, proper, and two **Eeles enwrapped**, or **wreathed** together, Or. Some term them **twisted** or **turned** one about the other; the belly is white, all the rest of the

the Head, Body, and fins, of a dark Earthly colour, inclining to a black. It hath two round skinny fins set on each side the neck, which in swimming fly out, else they ly close to the neck; it is finned in some all down the back, and turns the tail for a good space; others have the fin to begin in the middle of the back, and turn a little of the tail. This is born by *Eller*.

☞ The **Eele** because of its length my Graver was forced to wind about his tail, which if the Reader please he may term an **Eele Naiant,** with the end of his tail **emboweb, debyused** and **dejected. Eeles** of all Fish will live the longest out of water, which (as *Pliny* saith) if the North Wind blow, will be for six days; but if any other Wind blow, they will not live so long; and they of all fish alone (if they be dead) will swim aboue the water.

A **Guaicanus,** or the **Satchell Eele;** which the *Germans* call a **Meerseckel.** It is a long fish in form of Body, like an **Eele,** or **Conger;** the Head being of a great stature, in the hinder part thereof was a Skin like leather, made in form of a great purse or Satchell. Such an Eele was taken in the Island of *Cuba*, in the New found World, as *Gesner* relates; it may be called the **Monks Hood Fish.**

A. 3 Eeles in Pale S. born by *Ellis*.
B. 3 Congers Hauriant A. born by *Conghurst*.

XXVII. He beareth Azure, a **Roch,** proper. Born by *Rochley*. It is more generally termed a **Roch fish,** or a **Rochett,** or **Rochell.** It is of the *Germans* termed a **Rotte,** or **Rottel,** from the Latine *Rutilus*. It hath a fin on the back, two under the throat, two at the Navel, and one round fin near the tail; it is made scaly by incision cross lines all over the body in form of squares or Diamond cuts. It is called *Rutilus Piscis*, from its colour, which is a bright reddish yellow, or a fiery red, the belly paler.

G. 3 such in Pale naiant, A. born by *Roche*.

A **Schwall,** or **Furn fish,** of some called a **Blieck,** or a **Roteugell;** it is of the **Alburnus,** or **White-fish,** species, fork tailed, a fin on the middle of the back, and 3 on the belly, as the **Roch** with an incision score or stroak all along the sides, with the whole body made Losengy, with transverse arched, or bending lines crossing one the other. *Gesner* calls it in Latine *Leuciscus*, or *Mugilis*, a **Mullet,** and *Orada, ab aureo capitis fulgore*, from the golden shining of his head.

A **Dace,** or a **Blawling,** or a **Gressling,** or a **Zienfische,** or **Weyssisch;** by all which the *Germans* call it, which in Latine is termed *Leuciscus*. And the *French* **Veingeron,** which is *English'd* to me, a **Dace,** or **Dace-fish.** The shape and figure whereof answereth that of the plate in all points, save that the **Blawling,** and **Dace,** have spots at the corners of all the Joynts of the cross lines in the losenge part which tends to the Tail, and an Incision line, through both sides, and all the fins on the Body and Tail are red at the ends.

A **Carpe,** is in most of the *Europian* Languages so called: it hath 2 Beards of skin, or fleshy lobbs, hanging down from the two sides or corners of his Mouth, and a square Tail, in all other respects answers the form of the **Roach;** only something more round Backed, it being a full Bodyed fish.

G. A Dace. A. by the name of *Dace*, or *Dauson*.
V. 3 Carpe. O. born by *Carpell*.
B. 3 Breames. O. born by *Breame*.

A **Bream** for shape answers the **Carpe,** only the tail as my Author informs me, is three forked; but *Gesners* figure is only forked; the scaly lines are set at a greater distance in this Fish than others of its kind; the body is --------- with dark spots at the angle of each square on the back, not elsewhere.

A **Brambele,** is a small Fish full of scales made after the shape of a **Dace,** it never exceeds six inches in length, it hath a broad compressed body, of a deluce or yellow earthly colour; the fins in number and place agreeth with the **Roch.**

A **Brambelen,** or a **Riemling;** it is a squamous or scaly Fish, full bodied, of the bigness of a **Smelt,** but made like a **Roach** in body and fins; the fins are red at the root or bottom; and the line which cuts through the body to the tail is arcuate towards the belly; it is in its growth about 20 fingers breadth long, and a hands breadth broad.

A **Bleke,** or **Bleake,** or **Blay,** or **Bleis,** of the *Germans* called **Blick** and **Blickline;** of its *Latine* name *Blicca*. It is a full bodied little Fish of the **Alburnus** kind, with red eyes, and a white body, scaled all over, with fins and tail like the **Roach.**

A **Ruffe,** or **Rutt,** or of some a **Gold-fish,** of the *Latines* termed *Porcus Fluviatalis*, and *Porcus Nili*, which some English take to be the **Round Pearch Fish.** It is about the head and Breeches full of thorns or pricks in all other parts, it resembles the **Pearch** of the Sea.

A **Chevyn,** or a **Pollarde;** it is in Latine called *Capitus*, from its great head; the *Germans* **Schwall,** or **Alet;** and **Vyn** or **Vonen;** a **Schupfish,** from whence we title it a **Chub fish.** It is a white Fish of the **Alburnus** kind; in all respects it answers the form of the **Roach,** but it is a small Fish not exceeding a hands length. B. the like Hauriant O. born by *Pollarde*.

A **Macrel,** or **Macril,** which the *Dutch* term **Matfisch,** they are bigger than a **Herring,** yet they never exceed a cubit in length and three or four fingers in the breadth; the back and part of the head is blew, tending to a dark green; the sides and belly of a silver colour, the fins and tail are red; the fins on the belly are one placed above the navel a little, tha other just under the navel. V. 3 such O. born by *Macrell*.

A **Rappe,** of *Rapax* the *Latine*, being a ravenous devouring Fish, which makes more waste than the **Pike,** or **Silurus,** or **Whale** of the River. Its teeth are not in its mouth but in its cheeks; the body is losenged all over by insect lines.

A **Passing,** or **Pasele,** they are a species of the small **Alburnus** Fish; the eyes are red, and a bright yellow over the eyes; its teeth are in the cheeks or throat; the back is fuscous, or of a dusky dark brown, and so is the head, the sides and belly more white; the scales are indifferently big.

A **Mugil,** of *Mugilus*, which the *Germans* call **Zweierley Fisch,** it is a small Fish, not above a hands length some, but very rarely attain to a cubit long; the aspect of the body is like to the **Mullet Fish,** the fins being

being also of that number; it hath a sharp nose or snout, and no teeth.

A **Studder** or **Garnished Carp**, which the Latines call *Cyprinus Clavatus*, and the *Germans* a **Thornbachlmen**, and a **Steinkarpken**, because on the scales in the middle is fixed a kind of knot or button like the round head of a nail; else in all other things it is of the **Carp** kind. It is blunt, or round nosed, with a little mouth, from whence it is by some *Latine* Authors termed *Beccus* or *Becum*, thence also by the *Netherlanders* called a **Becken.**

An **Agon**, which I may so call from the *Latin* name *Agonus*, it is a small Fish ten fingers breadth in length, and two or a little more in breadth; great eyes, the scales of a middle size, the line under the belly is rough and uneven, as the **Thressa**, or **Meerbambele**; the *Germans* call it an **Agunen**, and **Welsche Agunen.**

A **Karas**, or **Garis**, and **Karpkaras**, a name borrowed of the Low Countrey men; it is a round well set Fish, about eight fingers breadth in length; it is of the **Bream** Species, or **Carpe** in the scales; it is of a shining gold colour, with a dusky dark brown on the back; having a cut or pointed incision through the middle on each side. It is called in Latine *Charax*, by Chance, in that it hath firm teeth standing out of its mouth.

An **Orsie**, or **Urse Fish**, of the *Dutch* termed a **Noysling** or **Wursling**, in some places called a **Weysfisch**; the back is reddish, the belly inclining to white, the scales great and broad; this Fish is less than the **Carp**, and bigger than a **Mullet**; the incision line in the middle of the body composed of points scarce discernable.

A **Cackarel** Fish, or a **Cagarel**; It hath a thorny Fin from the neck to the tail almost; fins at the gills, and below the throat, and one below the Navel; the tail forked, it is a kind of small **Herring** having round black spots; the *Germans* call it a **Scheysserling**, and a **Poutinck**; in *Latine Mæna*, and *Manula*.

A **Risele**, or **Rylerle**, or **Rissing**; it is a little Fish not much above a finger long, derived from its Latine name *Risela*. It is by *Gesner* called also **Leuciscus**, which *Thomasius* Englisheth a **River Mugle**, or **Lompe**, or the **Fresh Water Mullet**: It is half a foot long, hath small Gills, scales very small; the back of it is between a blew and green colour, the belly is white, the fins incline to a white, almost like the River **Mullet.**

XXVIII. He beareth Gules, a **Raye** Argent. Born by *Rea*. There are several kinds of this Fish, and diverse names given to them, whose description I shall leave here, and refer you to *chap.* 15. *numb.* 37, 38, 39, 40, 41.

The **Ray**, or **Skait**, the **Maids**, or **Thornbacks**, and the **Cramp fish** are flat and broad Fishes, and in lieu of a back bone have gristles with cartilagineous fins, whose manner is to ly on their back when they feed; and as *Pliny* saith, instead of Egs and spawning, these gristly Fish bring forth their young alive.

A **Smooth Ray**, in Latine called *Raia Lævis*, and so termed from it's glib and smooth Skin, being naked & free from Pricks and Sharpness of the Hide. It is like in Body to this example in the Plate, haveing a sharp pointed Taile, with two small round Gristly Fins, Set one above the other, at the side of the taile neere the end. It Back part is of a Dusky Browne, the Belly much Whiter. The *Germans* call this a **Glatter Rouch**, or a **Rouchling**, or a **Rouchfarb.**

A **Thornbacke**, soe called from the Sharp Crooked Pricks set on Studs, all down the middle of the Back: the Belly is light cinereous, inclining to a white; The Back parts of a dark, durty, Vmber colour; and so rough and sharp, that a man cannot rub upwards upon it, but the Pricks will strike into his hand.

There is an other sort of **Thornback**, which hath a very smooth Skin, and wants Pricks or Thorns, except such as are in the line of the Back, which are few, little, And very rarely near togather: None about the eyes, the taile hath three rowes of them.

A **Sharp Snouted Ray**, or a **Smooth Sharp Snout Ray**, as pertakeing of both: The Body on the uper side is marked with many Spots, after the maner of Lentill seeds. at the eyes it hath foure Thorns, or Pricks: and on the tail three rows of hooks set orderly; see *chap.* 15. 39.

A **Forke fish**, or a **Possen fish**; it is like the **Ray**, only it wants a fin at the end of the tail, which is long and small, running taper till it end in a small point; in the middle of the said tail stands a fork after the manner of a donble or trebble barbed Arrow head, and some with two single pointed nails one above another; with these forks or sharp rods he striketh the Fish that pass by him; the outward colour is as if it were a tanned hide. It is called by some Authors a **Turtle** or **Pigeon Fish** or **Sea Pigeon Fish**, from its similitude to a flying Bird with its Wings stretched out; the *Germans* have several names for it, some whereof are borrowed from other places; as a **Schwartzer Roche**, that is a **black Ray**: a **Peilstert**, or **Arrow Tail**: a **Ratte point**, from its long tail; and an **Angel Fish**, an **Alder Fish**, a **Stachel Roche**, from the prick or radix in the tail: and a **Meertaupe**, *&c.* See more of these *chap.* 15. *numb.* 40, 41. and 19. 90.

XXIX. He beareth Argent, a **Globe Fish**, Gules, born by *Orbell*. It is also termed an **Orbe Fish**, and a **Lump Fish**, and a **Sea Owle**. It is round in the body, having the tail part a little slenderer, with two fins each side of it, at the parting of the body, the tail streight finned; it hath no scales, is set all over with rough pricks in a hard skin; it hath teeth like a human Creature. It is of some called *Calvaria Marina*, a **Sea Scule**; the *Germans* a **Rundling**, and a **Flasthling**, and an **Egiptian Lump Fisch.** See *chap.* 15. *numb.* 35.

The **Urchin**, or **Hedghog Lump fish**, hath its skin set with more sharper and longer pricks, so that one cannot take it in the hand but by the tail; the pricks are all four pointed, like Caltropes. which is an Engine of War with sharp points that are usually cast in the way to hinder the approach of an Enemy. S. the like A. born by *Lumper*.

A **Scuchen**, or **Dual Lump Fish**, is in body like an Egg, covered over with a kind of snotty filth; set here and there in intervals, with pricks like Caltrapes. These the *Germans* call **Snot**, and **Snotolfe**, and **Schnudder.**

The **Brittish Dove Fish**, is of the oval form, with the head extanded or standing out from the body; the back inclines to red, the belly is white from the head to the tail, and all along the sides, it hath crooked recurverated fins like them on a **Sturgeon**; the *Scots* call this a **Paddell.**

XXX. He beareth Or, a **Lobster erected**, Gules.

☞ These Shell Fish wanting Fins saith Mr. *Gwillim*, *pag.* 240. are not, neither can they be termed **Hauriant**, but **upright**; but **erected** is the more proper word in the Art of Blazon.

The **Lobster** naturally is all over blackish, or of an earthy dark colour, but when it is boyled, the Shell or Coat wherein it is invested, turns to a most pure Scarlet or Vermilion colour. It is called in Latine *Astacus* and *Locusta Marina*; see the true Figure of the **Lobster**, *chap.* 15. *numb.* 34. This is born by the name of *Lobester.*

A **Crevice**, or a **Crefish**, or as some write it, a **Crevis Fish**; are in all respects the same in form, and are a Species of the **Lobster**, but of a lesser size, and the Head is set more into the body of the **Crevice**, than in the **Lobster.** Some call this a **Gamwell.**

A. the like G. by *Crevisley.*
G. on a Bend O. a Lobster S. born by *Grilla.*
A. a Lobster G. born by *Lobcock.*
A. a Cheveron S. between 3 Crevices upright G. born by *Crevice.*
B. a Crevice in Bend G. on the dexter side three Mullets of six points; born by *Van Aengern*; sans mullets, by *Gergelaje.*
A. a Lobster in Bend G. born by *Hager.*
O. the same erected G. on a hill out of Base V. born by *Crebsberg.*
B. a Staff raguled and trunked between two Crevices erected, and one reversed G. born by *Hagen Pribern.*

XXXI. He beareth Argent, two **Lobsters claws in Salter, the sinister surmounted** of the **Dexter**, proper; others thus, a **Lobsters claw** in Bend **surmounted** of another **Salterways.** But *Gwillim* is most off the mark, when he saith a Lobsters claw in Bend Sinister, Salter like, surmounted of another Dexter wise. In which Blazon he forgot the Coat and his own rule; not to multiply words when few will serve to express the meaning of a thing. Therefore say two Lobsters claws in Salter, the **Sinister surmounting**; the top part of these claws are, of some termed **Takers**, or **Holders**, **Forceps** or **Pincers.** This is the Coat Armor *Tregarthicke.*

O. the like born by *Van Grientellinger.*
B. three such Claws erected G. born by *Claws.*

XXXII. He beareth Gules; a **Prawne**, (a **Shrimp** or a **Beard**,) Argent. These Fish are naturally of a dunnish white till they be boiled, then like the **Lobster** they turn to a pure red. It is vulgarly called a **Spraune.**

A **Meerbar**, or **Rotes**, **Meerbarlin**, or the **Variable Prawne**, hath a foursquare head, rough and full of indented parts, with two jointed horns, forked at the ends; the feet are five on a side, sharp pointed, each having two joints or bendings coming out from the body under the square head; the tail consists of five pieces, ending in a tail of three broad pieces after the manner of a **Lobster**, see *numb.* 57. and *chap.* 15. *numb.* 6. This is born by the name of *Beard.*

Barry Wavy of 6 O. and G. 3 such in Pale naiant G. born by *Sea* alias *Atsea* in *Kent.*
O. 3 such G. born by *Soane.*
A. 3 such erected G. born by *Prawne.*

XXXII. a. He beareth Azure a **Crab fish** or **Seacrab** Or. some terme them **River Crabs**: the *German* a **Krab** and **Meerkrebba**, and **Suswasserkrabb**; there are of several colours, being yong or smal they are whitish, some inclineing to a durty yellow, but the midle sort of them, are of a darke cinereous, or ash colur, tending to a earthly grey. others of the largest sort are of a redish browne, some about the edges inclineing to a dusky yellow. *Pliny* saith, that in the begining of the spring, they cast their old shell or coat (as **Serpents** do) and then ly hid for five months, til they have new coats again. this is born by the name of *Crabley.*

An **Heracleotic Crab**; so named from it chesnut colour, it is an adult, or **Bastard Crab**, being the least of his species. it is in body made after the form of a Chesnut, the legs short behind. and longer before; the pincers or claws which are forked, are very strong; is rough and dented in the shells of the body, and those that cover the feet all along them, as if the were hairy. the *Germans* call these **Meertaschen** and **Meerkrabben.**

A. cheveron engr. S. between. 3 such G. borne by *Bridger.*

XXXII. b. He beareth Or, a **Sea Crab Erected** Sable. born by *Le Greves.* see the true shape of a Crab *chap.* 15. *numb.* 43.

A **Round Crab.** it is of the colour of the Chesnut Crab, being of that species, the Armes to which the pincers or nippers are fixed are very short, the pincers thick and large, the two being almost the quantity (if put together) as the whole round body; it hath according to *Gesners* figure but four feet, and they all on one side; the first next the eyes longest, containing five joints; the rest shorter and shorter by degrees; the feet seem to come out, or be joined altogether in the belly.

XXXIII. He beareth Sable, an **Escallop shell** (or an **Escallop**) Or. The Shell is the Ensign or mark of the Apostle St. *James*, whereof Pilgrims make use, especially in their Voyages to the Sepulcher of the said Apostle, gathering them on the Sea shore, and fastning them on their Hoods or Hats as a mark of their Pilgrimage; like them that go the great Voiage to *Jerusalem*, who at their return bring Palms with them, which was the occasion of calling such Travellers **Palmers.** The Shell is pure white, yet some (whether it be through Age) incline to a yellow; they are called also a **Cock**, and **Jacobs Muschell** by the *Germans* for the reasons abovesaid, and some St. **Michaels Muschell.** This is born by the name of *Poyton.*

A **smooth head Scallop**, is such whose lines come not streight to the top of the head, but keep at a distance from

from it, and hath ears so large as to equal the breadth of the **Escallop**, it is all white, and called in Latine *Pecten*.

A. the like G. born by *Prelatt*.
B. the like O. born by *Poyton*.
G. 3 such O. born by *Pale*.
B. 5 such O. born by *Shorvill*, 2, 2, and 1.
V. 6 such A. born by *Holbeck*.
B. cheveron Er. between three such A. born by *Townsend*.
A. 3 such S. born by *Arnway*, and by *Strickland*.
A. 3 such G. born by *Barnaby*, and likewise by *Kelke*.
V. 5 such in Salter A. by *Holbeche*, and *Thorley*, alias *Thornley*.

XXXIV. He beareth Gules, a **Cockle** (or **Cockle shell**) Argent. Born by *Cockle*. The **Cockle shell** is white having a tincture of a dusky yellow in it; it is toothed, insected, and furrowed, so exactly to its own fellow shell, that if it be seperated from it, there is not an other shell to be found that will fit it again.

A **Coyall-cockle**; of the *Germans* called, a **Coyall Muschle**: so called from it being red like a Corall, it hath two little, or small Eares comeing on each side the top part.

A **single ear Cockle**, these have ears diversely set, some have an ear on the right side, some on the left side, with a slip or part of one, ever set on the contrary side; they are also diversely coloured; some are candidly white, others growing to a red.

The **rough**, or **sharp pricked Cockle**, because between every insect, on the rising furrow of the shell, there is set rows of pricks bending upwards like hooks. It is by the *Germans* called a **Stahelmuschein**, and a **Rauche-Muschein**.

B. a Fesse between three Cockles A. Born by *Poole*.
G. a Cheveron A. between three such O. born by *Prenton*.

XXXV. He beareth Azure, a **Cockle shell reverted**, Argent; or a **Cockle shell inverted**, that is returned or turned in contrary to the right form, or the inside turned outward. It is of some termed a **Cockle shell opened**, or the inner side turned outward. Born by the name of *Cockler*.

Nature hath made these Shells of divers forms, for some are direct round, with a crooked bending head; others oblong, others broad; and of all these sorts some are furrowed and dented in the edges, and others plain, not having any shew of an insect; others again with lines insected the broad way, not downwards; all which have their several names both in *Latine*, *Dutch*, and *English*, as

Concha Echinata, Rauche Muschein, a Cockle covered or set with pricks. An **Urchin Cockle**.

Concha Striata, Streym Muschein, a **Champhered** or **Channelled-cockle**, a **Furrow** and **Dented Cockle**.

Concha Chama Aspera, Glatt-Muschein, a **Cockle Wrinkled round**, or **Insected round**.

Coucha Fasciata, Glatt Bandel Muschein, a **Banded** or **Swadled-cockle**, a **Cockle double**, or **treeble Channelled** at a place, or near togather.

Coucha Gala, a **Sallet-cockle**, such as Women use to put over the nipples of their Breasts when they are sore. Called also the - - - - - - - they are generally white, or a little yellowish: some are black.

Concha Rugata, Ruzell-muschein; the **Wrinkled** or **Winding** or **Crumpled-cockle**. Such as have no true form, but on part winds one way, and an other part turns another, a wreathed Cockle.

Concha picata, Maler muschein, the **Painted-cockle**, not because the shell is of diverse colours; but because the colour of the shell is easily rubbed, or scraped of the same, and so becomes diversly coloured.

There is a tender, and dainty Shell-fish not much unlike a **Cockle**. But that the shell thereof is much smoother and whitter: the *Latins* term it *Tellina*, the *Germans* a **Tell-muschein**, and we name it the **Dybe** or **Round Cockle**; yet some are Oval-wise, but all are smooth and even in the edges, the out sides being Shelued, rough or rigged.

XXXVI. He beareth Argent, a **Muskle-shell** (or a **Mussle**) proper. Born by the name of *Mussine*. It is generally black, inclining to blew: edges are whiteish; called also a **Mur-muschein**.

A **Horse-muskle**, or **Pearle-muskle** are of an equal breadth at both ends it is of a dusky white colour. By the *Germans* called **Perle-muter**, and **Perle-muschel**.

A **Pirot**, or **Pitot** (in some places called a **Hag-fish**) **shell**: it is a round shell like a finger, which in *Latine* is termed *Unguis Marinus*; the **Sea Finger shell**; it opens like the **Muskle**, and is of it species. It is of the *Germans* named, a **Nagel-schale**, or a **Finger schale**; or a **Langschale**; or a **Nagel-muschein**. It is a long and round shell fish of a bright shining colour; and is in some places called a **Sleeve-fish**, and a **Long Muskle**. *Plinie* saith that of the shell fish kind, this (which he calls **Dactylus**) is of a most wonderful nature, for they will shine in the night when all other lights are taken away; and the more moistue they have, the more light they will give; in so much that if any drop of their fattie liquor fall by, it will shine.

B. a cheveron between 3 such Cockle-shells turnne d inside out. O. by the name of *Barker*.
B. 3 such. Born by *Pulton*, also by *Seacombe*.
G. 3 such A. born by *Spittle*. With a Fesse, by *Puddlington*.

XXXVII. He beareth Azure, an **Oyster-shell** Argent. Called by the *Netherlands*, **Ostre** and **Oster**; the shell is thick and hard, composed of many foulds, or plates. The shell open, it is pure white within, but the out side is of a dusky dirty colour. *Pliny* saith that in *Spain* they are red; fuscous, or a dark brown in *Illyrico*; and black in other places. 3 such is born by the name of *Oistler*.

XXXVIIII. He beareth Sable, an **Oyster shell** Argent. This for distinction sake (and that very properly) terme a **Knotted**, or **Wrinkled**, or **Chaunfred Oyster shell**; being full of carbuncles and rough skab-by knotts.

A **Smooth Oyster** is of variable shapes, as round, long Ovell, *&c.*

A **Crisped**, and **Hairy Oyster**; it is being opened so transparent, that the shell may be seen through: It is of a purplish colour without, and white within. The outside of the shell is full of curlings, crispings, frisleings, and wrinkled, in the several heights of the doublings in the same.

A **Stein Oyster**, which the *Germans* call **Eselshub**: that is **Asses-hoof**, because it very much resembles the foot, or hoof of an Ass; being opened, and the inner side to us.

B. 3 Oyster-shells A. born by *Oster*.

G. a fesse between 3 such O. born by *Raby*.

A **Clamme** is a kind of large shell-fish of the **Muskle** or **Cockle** species, which the *Latin* terms **Chama**; the *Germans* **Ghimmuscheln**, or **Pfeffermuscheln**, or **Flammuscheln**: the shell is soft that it may be prest together with ones fingers, and the fish in its being eaten, doth inflame the mouth like pepper. They are generally round and ovell after the **Oyster** form, some smooth, others rough and shelted; some whitish, others black.

A **Grebling** is a kind of round shell-fish, and thick-shelled of the **Oyster** form, it lives, and lyes altogether in the Mud. The *Germans* call it, a **Kaatmuscheln**; or a **Murmuschele**. The *Latins* term it, **Concha Maria**, and **Conchula Marieta**; because of its various lines and adornings.

XXXIX. He beareth Gules, four **Escallops in Crosse**, their Heads **Revertant** to the Fesse, Argent. Of some, their **Head in point** towards the fesse, or four Escallops in Crosse, their **Heads respectant**; or four escallops **in Aspect Crosse-wise**: This is born by the name of *Ludmaner* of *Bavaria*.

B. the like O. born by *Ausderam*.

XL. He beareth Sable, a **Welk**, Or. Born by the name of *Welk* and *Shellie*. This is of some called a **Periwinckle shell**; but that is a mistake, as you may see *numb.* 42. and *chap.* 15. *numb.* 20. It is called in *Latin* **Turbo**, which is a **Welk**, or **Winkle**; yet there is a difference; for the **Welk** is always open on the top, whereas the **Periwinckle**, or **Winckle** are open on the sides; though both are wreathed, and wrinkled in the bottom. They are generally white, yet some have a tincture of yellow in them. S. a Fesse engrailed between 3 such O. is born by *Shelley*.

A **Troch Welk**, or a **Top Welk**, **Trochus** in *Latin* so called from its resemblence to a Topp; an Instrument that Boys and Children used to play with; ample and broad in the higher part, and presently end in a point; some are long, others are short; the out sides are rough (like the bullions, imbossing, and swelling ornaments in plate) or the rough cast of a plastered wall; less pure or clean, being of a dusky or dirty colour: but the inner sides shine with a splendor like the precious Pearl, called a **Union**. [ ]

A **two Fingered Welk**, are such as at the open point into two corners, as the figure *numb.* 52. Some into three, or more; **Pentadactilo Turbo**, as *Plin.* terms it, a **Welk** with five **Fingers**, or **Corners**, or **Points**. They have usually four or five appendices long and sharp, some have the appendices square; some are white, others black, others purple, and others with various colours. These the *Germans* call **Zinckeser**, and **Zinckestrauben**.

In the base, both dexter and sinister, I have set the forms of two **Welks**, or **Wrinkles**: which the *Germans* call, a **Hanckerley**, and a **Kleine Schneckle**, or **Straupen-Schneckle**.

XLI. He beareth Or, out of a **Welk Dejectant**, proper: a **Demy Dragon Issuant**, Gules. There are some Heraulds that term it, a **Demy Dragon**, or **Wevern passant**, out of a **Welk**. As this Welk is (as it were) cast down with the Wevern out of it: so there are Coats, and Crests, which have them standing **upright** or **erected**, with Lyons, Dragons, Flowers, Leaves, *&c.* issuing out of them; and then we say out of a **Welk**, such or such a thing.

And here give me leave to set down the several Terms used by Artists, by which they express the standing, lying, falling or the like, of senseless or inaminal things: according to their several beings, as they are born in Arms.

Erected, or **Erectant**; is when any thing is raised, and set upright; advanced or lifted up, as *numb.* 40.

Dejected, **Dejectant**; or **Cast aside**: is when a thing that is usually born upright, as in its proper nature; yet by some accident is cast down or laid along on the ground, or field, as it were: as in the example *numb.* 41.

Reversed, **Everted**, **Subverted**, **Subvertant**, or **Debased**: is when a thing from its proper nature and use, is turned over, or downwards. That is turned up side down, as *numb.* 3.

Counterposed, set together, or one to the other, or against one another: as *lib.* 3. *chap.* 17. *numb.* 70.

Point, or **in Point**; or **Point in Point**: when either the Heads, or Feet, or ends of any thing are set or meet together in a place whether it be in cheif, fesse, or base of the Escochion: as *numb.* 39. *lib.* 4. *chap.* 1. *numb.* 15, 16, 17.

Reverted, turned back side, or inside outwards: as *numb.* 35.

Endorsed, or **Dos an Dos**: that is when one thing is set to the back of another, whether they be erected or dejected. Things set on contrary to another; one one way, and another the other way: as *numb.* 5.

Dissevered, put or set asunder, one from the other: as *lib.* 3. *cap.* 17. *numb.* 79.

Respecting, or **Aspecting**; is when not only live things, are looking or turned one to another; but it is used for dead things or inanimals, as when one is set one way, and the other is set in opposition to it; as when two heads, or mouths, or handles of things are set to one another, or turned to one the other; contrary to their proper station, then such turnings are so termed: as *numb.* 4.

For example, two **Cressants respectant**, or two **Cressants** with the **Horns in aspect**; is when the Cressants which usually hath the horns upward, are turned

turned with the horns sidewise one towards the other.

And two **Bottles respectant**, of their **Mouths in aspect**; is when the mouths of the bottles, or such like have the mouths set one against, or in **opposition** to the other, & so of the like. In which kind of bearing we must understand that they cannot be thus set, but they must have their proper way of station, & be turned both sidewaies, as by being **dejected**, & so the mouths are in **aspect**.

Reader in the sinister chief, I have placed a **Dolphin** in such a posture, as in all the turning and winding of Serpents mentioned in *chap. 9.* There is not the like, all of them having their heads over their tails; but this hath its tail over the head. Which is thus termed a **Dolphin** (or any other kind of **Serpent, Adder,** or bending fish in this posture) **embowed debased** the **Tail surmounting**. After some others **embowed**, the **Head debased** by the **Tail**. Here thou may it it please thee leave out the last words (by the Tail) as superfluous, and then it is well blazoned, as **embowed** the **Head debased**. This A. in a field B. is born by *Van Hackham.*

XLII. He beareth Gules, a **Periwinckle** or **Periwinckle-shell**, or as others term it a **Cucooe Shell** Argent, born by *Ronacre.* It is in *Latine* termed *Purpure Operculum*, and *Conchylius Operculum*; the same much resembling the **Purple shell Fish**, and the **Sea Cornett**, being between both. The *Germans* call it, a **Teckele**, of the **Purpurschnecken.** *Pliny* calls them **Scaled Winkles**, because the seeme to have several coats or covers one upon another. Of this kind we may see wonderful varieties, and many sundry colours, with diversity of formes, and figures, for of them we shall have plain, long, round, Horned like a Cresslant, half round, bow Backed, smooth, rough, toothed like a saw, ridged and champhred between; wrinckled and winding to the topp, bearing out sharp points. Some with the open place Spread out, others hath them Rowled in, some Striped, Rayed, Crested, Wreathed, Crisped, Studded, Imbossed with bullions, swellings with net or latise-work. All which are termed according their formes and turnings and adornments. this is born by *Periwincke*, when three are in the Field.

In the dexter base I have set one of the foresaid formes which is called, a **Round plain Periwinckle**; these kinds are generally white, and of some call'd the **Milky-periwinckle.**

A **Pointed**, or **Studded**, or **Imbossed**, **Periwinckle**; whose figure you may see *numb.* 43. which is termed *Turbo Muritus*, of the *Latine*; a pointed, or **Rugged Winckle**. it much resembles the form of the **Buccinus**, or the **Sea Cornet.** The *Germans* call it **Buckelstraub**; from its tuberous, and knotty forme; being short and obtuse or blut the outer part is tumidious, or swelled out and white, the inside is of a purple colour. The fish thrust themselves out of the shells, and goe in, when they please; they have two Horns sharp at the ends (Eyes they have none) but grope with them whether the way be safe, and sure they goe in.

XLIII. He beareth Or, a **Snale shell**, Sable. The Latine calls it, **Cochlea testa**, and the *Germans* a **Schneck.** It is round, the Tail of it, turning inward, or wrapped one upon an other; the largest shells are of a blackish blew colour; some are white, others yellow, others are variegated, and some lines of contrary colours drawne from the first opening of it, turning as it turnes to the very point or center; some have them with gemill lines, others with treble lines. 3 such is born by *Snaile.*

S. 3 such A. born by *Snallton.*

G one such. A. is the coat and crest of *Schneck heuser.* In English *Snalhouse.*

In the Base I have placed, an **Angled Welke**; treated off in *numb.* 42. to which place I refer you, onely here giveing you its form, and shape.

XLIV. He beareth Azure, an **Indian snaile shell** (a **Mother of pearle shell**) proper. This is vulgarly so called, but its true and proper name, is an **Indian**, or **Persian Sea Snaile shell.** The Latine termes it *Margaritifera Cochlea:* a Snaile that brings forth Pearles, from whence it tooke the name of being the **Mother** of **Pearle.** It is of a dusky white without, but within it is very splendide, of the colour of a Unione stone, *viz.* like poolished Silver with reflections according to the light upon it, with purple, red, blew, and Sea-water green. The *Germans* call it a **Meerschneck Aus India.**

A **Carved Snaile shell**, is of the **Welke** species, whose intorted Tail, or Shell end; stand more out in length as the **Periwinckle**, or **Welke**, which rotundity is cut and carved about, as if it were set with round Pearles. It is of the colour of the Union stone within, but redish without, It is called a **Meerboone**, and if smooth a **Sinwel-shneckle.**

A **Navel Snaile shell**; called in Latine *Umbillicum* from the form or shape it hath to a Navel, or turning in of the Skin at the navel; a **Wrethen shell**, or wrinckled. See the figure *chap. 16. numb.* 5. a **Navelschneck.**

A **Crumpled**, or **Rugged Snaile shell**; *Cochlea Rugosa:* being full of wrinckles, crumples or plaits: rough and riviled and withered: it is of some termed, a **Crumpled Navill shell.**

G. 3 Mother of Pearle shells proper. born by *Pearler.*

B. one A. is born by *Saughall.*

B. A Fesse O. between 3 such A. born by *Hamlet.*

XLV. He beareth Vert, a **Cuttle Fish** Argent. Some call it a **Scuttle fish**; and the shell of it **Scuttle bone.** It is by *Pliny* called **Pourcuttle**, or **Pourcontrell**: it is generally known to the Goldsmith which use it by the name of the Goldsmith fishbone; the *Germans* call it **Meerspinn**, and **Ruttelfish.** The bone is something flat, haveing a little concave (in which the Fish lieth) of a spungy substance, covered on the top with a thick Fleshy, soft, & smooth Skin; of an Umber or hair colour, and white, intermixed into spots and lines, after the airynes of a **Toytoice shell.** All the rest of the fish is pure white, and doth resemble the body of a Snaile, and creeps like it: haveing the Tail part divided into two skinny flapps. In the middle of the Head under the long lobbs, or skin like membrances, is a round hole, in which is fixed a Mouth directly like a Hawks beake, black as a coale: turned up side down, the hook standing upward in the lower mandable, and the higher falling into it. This is born by the name of *Cuttle* or *Cuttler.*

G. 3 such A. born by *Goldsmith.*

B. 3 such and a Cheveron A. is born by *Skittell,*

A

A **Sleeve**, of some called a **Black fish**: by reason it is all black as inck within, the Head like the **Cuttle fish**, the Body streight, till it end in the Tail which is like a square Head, four square, or Losenge like. It is called in Latine *Loligo* which as *Thomasius* interpretates, is a Fish whose Head, is between his inner parts, and Belly: it hath two bones, one like a knife, the other like a quill, whereof it is called, a **Calamarie**, and a **Sea Cutt**, or **Cuttle fish**. Se the figure *chap.* 15 *numb.* 31.

XLVI. He beareth Azure, a **Storme fish** (or a **Scorpion fish**) Or. It is a full round bodyed Fish, and more longer and narrower in the Tail (then my graver hath made it) long sharp pointed fins on the midle of the Back, at the end of it a round fin near the Tail, and such an other each side the Gills, under the Belly one, and at the Tail such a fin sharp pointed as is on the Back. The Head is rough, hooked, and the Gills the same, a full black Eye; and the colour of the whole Body inclining to a black on the Back, sides and Belly of the colour of the **Mackrell**; the Tail red spotted with black. The *Germans* call it, a **Scorpfisch**, and a **Meerscorp**.

A **Postken** is a fish very like this **Storm fish**, only differs a little in colour; but in what respects my Authors saith nothing.

B. the like A. born by *Storeton*, or *Stormeton*.

XLVII. He beareth Argent, a Finned **Scorpion-fish**, Gules. This is the lesser Scorpion fish, and differs from the foresaid Scorpion in the Hornes, and large fins, under the Throat, and at the Tail, and therefore for distinction sake may be fittly termed, the finned Scorpion fish, or a **Horned**, and **Finned Scorpion fish**. It is termed *Scorpious Minor*, the lesser Scorpion fish: and is of the same colour in all respects. This is born by the name of *Scorp*.

B. 3 such. O. is born by *Kingston*.

G. one A. a Chiefe. O. born by *Shotwick*.

XLVIII. He beareth Purpure, an **Araneus** or a **Spider fish**, Argent: **Horned** and **Finned**, Or. This is of some termed a **Horne fish**. It hath diverse names given it by writters; in *Latine*, *Draco Marinus*, the **Sea Dragon**, our *English* name is a **Weaver**, or **Sea Weever**, or a **Sea water Wiverne**, of others called a **Peter-manche**, or **Pieterfish**, and a **Corpor**. There are two sorts of the **Araneus**, the greater & the lesser. The **Greater Araneus**, hath a Body and Tail like a **Solmon**, but forked, and spoted; the Scales small, Back dark, sides------- it hath a sharp pointed prick, and long, standing on the fins; that on the Back, reacheth from the Tail, to the Neck; and those on the Belly, from the Tail to the Throat; sharp and long hooked, as the other: a beard at the Throat, a large triangular fin each side the Gilles. A short Nose, and two sharp streight Hornes behind the Head at the tope of the Gilles, called **Cornuta**. The **Lesser Araneus**, or **Spider-fish**: wants the hairy beard which the greater Araneus hath under it Thrat; and is spotted with round spotes all over the Body, which the great one, wants, else in form and shape and colour I know no differance.

In the Sinister cheife is the shell of a Fish called a **Sea Cornett** It is of the Poets termed a **Sea Nymphes horne**, or **Trumpet**, in Latine **Buccicum**; of the *Germans* **Kinckhornen**. It is of the Purple shell fish species being between it, and a **Winckle**, for its excellency hath been often taken for the **Purple**, there are of them two kinds; one with lines, set with little small rough knobbes, with the open part shooting out into corners, or one or two becks like Gutters; the other side turning round, writhen inwards like a horne. Se *numb.* 52.

The other **Sea Cornett**, is round Backed, and is cut like a Saw in the edges: it is made on the out side, as if one long turning plate, or scale, were above the edge of the other, serue like: and is of a dusky yellew on the out side, but smooth within, of a light and whelmish purple colour but the nearer the Mouth whiter, the edges white.

A **Stachel shell**, or a **Stachel Fish**; is a name borrowed from the *Germans*, which the Latins call *Murex*. It is of the **Sea Cornett** species; of which there are several sorts, as the **Marble** coloured **Stachel shell** is on the out side, of a white; and the in side white, inclineing to a purple. The **Triangular Stachel**, hath one side streight, and plain; the other round, with a double hole full of wrinckles, or Rough plaits: it is of a various colour. The **Milky Stachel shell**, so named from its Milky colour; this hath a little swelling, rather then knotts or knobs. The **Fingered Stachel shell**, so called because it hath Pins, or Fingers standing out of the edges of it, like the purple shell, mentioned *numb.* 12.

G. 3 Sea Cornetts. A. is born by *Stick*, or *Stocke*.

XLIX. He beareth Sable, a **Tunny**, or **Tunnie**, Argent. *Gesner* in his History of fish, saith that the **Thunnus**, which we in *English* call, a **Tunie**, according to its age and growth hath several names, and that in it fifth degree becomes a **Whale**; or **Pompili**. This is born by *Tunney*.

An **Orcyn**, of the *Latine Orcynus*, is the great *Tunny*: by the *Germans* called, a **Waltunny**, or **Grosser Tunny**, for it doth in all parts resemble the figure of the **Tunny**, onely the Back fin, by a declineing degree, extends to the other fin upon the lower part of the Back; and the Tail streight, not forked.

An **Amia**; it is of the **Tunny** shape, and fashion, yet is a Fish no biker then a **Herring**: the *Germans* call it a **Macrillen** of the Tunny kind: it is *Cæruleous*, of a blewish shining colour, splendant with green on the Back, and silver colour on the sides, and white on the Belly, it hath sharp Teeth.

Macrell, or a **Macrill** or **Mackerell**; called also a **Bratfish**: it is the shape and form of the **Tunny**, yet no larger then a Scotch **Herring**; only it wants at the tail below, those small fins which are next the tail. It is of a shining silver colour, greenish on the Back, Belly white, the fins and Tail dusky. It is called in *Latine Scomber*, and *Scombrus*. S 3 such najant A. is born by the name of *Mackrell*.

A **Bastard Mackrell**, of the *Germans* called **Maquerelle**: as being of the kinds of two fishes, in figure it is like the **Mackrell**; also in colour, and pleasentness of tast: It is in *Latine Lacretus*, and *Trachurus*. The fin on the lower part of the Back, extends to the Tail, narrower and narrower by degrees; that at the Navel doth the like. The *Germans* call this a **Meer-Heidor**, or **Heidor-fisch**.

In the Sinister cheife is the figure of the shell **Conchile**, or a **Round end Cockle**, which in *Latine* is termed **Conchilus**: it is rough by reason of a certain hollowly-

nes

ness that is on the out side of it, as if it were all over pricked full of pin holes. It is of the **Purple shell** fish species, and is between it, and the **Sea Cornett, Buccinum.** Of the *Germans* called, a **Purpurschnecken**; the middle is round and broad, open almost to the bottome, which is not writhed, but wrought about with a kind of rugged rings shelly or scaly, as if one Scale of the Shell lay over, or stood higher then an other in 4 or 5 straite or narrow rings ending like a **Winckle**, it is of a dusky white, or Earthly colour without, a pale purple within, being more white towards the edges.

L. He beareth Azure, the Head of a **Rake Fish**, in bend, Couped, Or. The Body of this fish is comparable to the **Whale**, and in all respects do answer the figure, or shape of the **Sword fish**, next following *numb.* 51. It is of the *Germans* called, a **Sagfisch**, and **Frombred Walfisch.** This is born by *Rakerley.*

An *Indian* **Rake-fish**: hath the Snout rough, and of an Umber or dark brown, it is something less than the **Whale**, but of it shape, a great fleshy, or thick Skinny Fin on it Back: with the like two hanging down in sharp ends under it Throat, the Tail fleshy, and streight formed. It is in the *Latine* called, **Serra Piscis, a Saw fish**, from the likeness that it Nose was to a Saw.

A. a Rake fish. B. born by *Storton.*

B. 3 such Head couped. O. born by *Waterbanke.*

LI. He beareth Gules, a **Sword fish**, Argent. The *Latine* call it *Gladius Piscis*, and the *Germans* a **Swert fish**, or **Schwerd-fisch.** It is a long slender fish with a long sharp pointed Snout, like a **Wood-cock** bill; two fins on the Back, at a distance; two under the Throat, and one near the tail; the tail is broad and streight yet narrow withall in respect of it latitude. The whole fish Erected in bend, is born by *Sharpine.*

V. 3 such Heads couped. O. born by *Taubridge.*

*LI. He beareth Sable, the **Broad-mouth Sword-fish**, Or. This is the lesser sort of **Sword-fishes**, and for distinction termed the **Duck-bill**, or **Broad mouth Sword-fish.** It is full and round at the Head and slender at the Tail, resembling the figure in all points. The Back fin should have been set higher towards the Head, almost on the crown.

S 3 such najant in pale is born by *Ronmouth.*

LII. He beareth Or, a **Porpose** (or **Purpesse**) proper. This fish is by *Conradus Gesner*, & all other writters; laid to be the true shape, and form of the **Dolphin**, which whosoever saw any of them swim; with him, and them, will conclude the same: for they never swim streight, and extended to its length, as other fish do, but imbowed, tumbling up and down in the water. The fins are all solid fish, as the Body: it is all over of a pure shining black, like satin; the Skin as soft as silk; and all under the Belly from the throat to the tail fin, pure white as Snow. It is in Latine termed *Delphinus, or Delphin*, the *Germans* **Ganz-schweyn**, that is the **Goose-swine fish**, being compounded of the flesh of both: they call it also a **Sea-goose**, and **Swin-fish**; *Orca*, and *Phocana*, or *Pacus*, *Piscis*: from whence we borrow our name **Porpose**, made up of Porck and fish, a **Porck fisch**

A small **Porpose** hath only one fin on the Back, and two pointed, under the Throat: thick and round on the Head, and middle (as it were) all in a round; and so by degrees small at the Tail, with a fleshy forked round fin there.

O. 3 Porposes najant in pale proper. Born by *Purpose.*

In the base Sinister part of this square, I have placed a **Turba Digitatus**, a **Fingered Winckle.** Which is described before *n mb.* 40. to which place I do refer you these kinds of **Welkes**, or **Winckles**, have their insides generally of a purple hue.

LIII. He beareth Argent, a **Sea Frogg Fish**, Gules, Horns Or. It is called **Rana piscatrix**, vel **Marina**: the *Germans*, a **Seetode**, and a **Torsch**, and a **Meer krott.** It represent the shape of a young **Frogg**, haveing the Head bigger then all the rest, a mouth wide and great, the lower chap larp, with two rowes of teeth, with sharp teeth fixed on the tongue; the Feet Cartilagineous, or gristly fins, with two horns like gristles, on it head; double pointed. This is but a youg Frogg, the shape of one at full age and groath see *chap.* 15. *numb.* 36. this is *Merfoggs* coate.

LIV. He beareth Or; a **Star Fish** Sable. This is all hairy & of an earthy colour, and is born by *Stellerby.*

A **Toothed Star fish. Stella Pectinata**, so called because it being a solid shell hath like the teeth of a combe, set on each side the Rayes.

The **Globe Star fish**; or **Dove Star fish** is round like a ball, and is all hairy: or else beset with sharp pricks from its center to all parts; which is by some Authors termed the **Urchin fish**, or **Sea Urchin**, it being laid on the Earth moves not; but put in Water, opens its quills, & turnes it Belly upwards; it hath a mouth and five teeth, it is of some Authors called, a **Sea Apple.**

There are diverse forms, and fashions of **Star fish**: some have three Rayes, or Fins; some 5. 7. 8. others have many which run like Branches, or Boughes of tree from one another. Some are inclineing to Red, some to Black, some to Grey, or Ash colour, others to Yellow.

A **Smooth Star Fish**, of the *Germans* called a **Meerstern**, It is a smooth Shell sharp pointed, the top sides rough with tuberous Knots. The Rays are flexible, and like the bendings of **Mice** tailes, or **Serpents.** In the middle of the Body is a round Globe, in which are five round spots, from which the said five Rayes, variously flexed, do rise, or spring forth.

A **Wheele Star fish**; or a **Tree Star fish**, of the *Germans* called a **Stauden fisch.** From the Body (which is neither round nor square) proceeds five Rayes, or trunckes, like the boughes of Trees, which again shootes into each two apeece; which after shoot in many lesser, and smaller branches; all keeping in the compass of a round, or circle. It is all black, only a white line doth proceed from every corner, or Angle of the Mouth: from whence it is named, the **Black sea Star.**

A. 3. Star fishes S. born by *Stanlow.*

G. a cheueron between 3 such A. is born by *Southton.*

LV. He beareth Argent, a **Dog fish**, or a **Sea Dog fish**, proper. It is by the *Dutch* termed a **Flack hund**, and a **Hundfish**: the Skin is hard and reddish, beset

beset with hard and sharp scales; sharp and rough and black, the Belly is more white and softer. Some attributs a whiteness to the scales: the fins are of the same nature to the Skin on the Body. 3 such S. is born by *Gesse*.

A **Thorn-hound**; in the Latine called, *Galeus Acanthias* which the *Germans* interpretate to be, an **Aschfarber-Hundfish**: it hath it name from its pricks; for in its Back he beares two sharp pricks, to which the fins are joyned, or rest upon; they are not very broad, but wonderful acute, and sharp, as the sting of a *Gnate*. This fish is of a cinereous, or ash colour.

G. 3 Dog fish najant in pale. A. born by *Thingwall*.
B. one such O. born by *Leatherland*.

A **Star Dog fish**, of some called a **Donhound**. Of the *Germans* **Sternhund**, and **Falckhund**; it Skin and shape is like our figure of the **Dog-fish**, only this is longer and slenderer; with it Nose ending in a sharp point, and turned up: it hath spots on in Back resemble Stars.

A **Venetion Dog fish**; it is of the species of a **Dog fish**, only the Nose as broad as the Head, which are both larg; the Body from thence declineing, or lessening to the Tail; it hath three fins on the Back; and one, each side a little below the Gills: the Tail forked. It is of a redish colour, with a multitude of black spots on it Back. The sides and Belly fuscous, or of a durty dusky brown.

A **Naked Dog fish**; so called because it is all white, and pure and free from all spots, scales, or roughness of skin. It is in Latine called, **Carcharia**, of the *Germans* termed; a **Kleiner Hund fish**, or an **Hundle**. It is of the **Dog-fish** kind, and in all respects answers its shape and proportion; setting aside its length and slenderness, with a sharp Nose, in which it exceeds the **Sea Dog-fish**.

A **Spotted Dog-fish**, is the same as above, having two fleshy fins near the Tail, at a little distance: and the fins under the Belly, *viz.* at the Throat, Navel, and near the Tail. The Tail is streight at the end, with two or three dents on the under side; it is spotted all over the Body and fins, with curious separated (or orderly contrariety) spots, of an oval form. The Paps, or teats are white, with the place of conception, which is cut in two places. The *Germans* call it a **Geflackter**, or **Katlachter Hund-fish**.

A **Stone-Dogfish**, or a **Gravel-Dogfish**; so called by reason of its breeding, and living amongst stones and gravelly grounds; the *Latin* calls it, **Canicula Saxatilis**, which is by the *Saxons* termed a **Flackhund**, or a **Steinhund**. It is about two cubits long, freckled all over fins and all: it hath two fleshy fins near the Tail, set at a little distance one from the other; with three under the Belly, *viz.* one under the Throat, one at the Navel, and one near the Tail, opposite to the lower most on the Back. The Tail fin is streight, the higher point extended high to a sharp point; the lower side cut into two or three indents, see more of these **Dog-fishes**, *chap.* 15. *numb.* 42.

LVI. He beareth Or, a **Sea Ape**, proper. Born by *Apety*. It is termed **Simia Marina**, of the *Latines*: when it flyeth, the fins are extended, which are two long fleshy and gristle fins, near the Neck; and two such like on each side, at the ending of the Body; with a fin on the middle of the Back. It hath a long serpentine Tail. It is flat nosed, having an oblique descent from the Eyes to the Mouth: the holes or issues of the Gills, appear round like Eares. The colour of the whole Body is green, but on the Back it is fulcous, or of a dark dusky brown; the sides paler or more wan. The Teeth broad, and continued as (it were) in one.

LVII. He beareth Azure, a **Sturgion**, Argent. Born by *Surgwer*. It is in *Latin* called **Struto**, and **Stura**: the *Germans*, **Stor**, and **Styr**, or **Styrle**. It hath a Fin at the hinder part of the Head, from which down the middle of the Back, goes a row of hooks (bending backwards) almost to the Tail, which ends in another like Fin, as is at the Head. From the Throat along the Belly (as far as the hooks on the Back) is set with bony round buttons, chamfered, or furrowed; each having a hook in the Head, turning to the Tail; at the end of which buttons a little from the Tail, is set another fin answering that on the Back. The Tail fin is forked, ending in two points, the Head is gristley, and uneven: the Snout or Nose, is long and broad, yet ends in a blunt-ish point. It is from thence called, **Acipenser**, and **Aquipenser**: being the only fish set by the Gentry; and as *Pliny* saith, hath its scales growing towards the Head (which I could never observe in our **Sturgion**) and always swims against the stream. It is of kind to a fish called, an *Antacæus*, which is as big as a **Dolphin**, of whose skin, mouth-glew is made, see *numb.* * 1. 6.

A **Prickly Sturgion**; doth in all respects answer the **Sturgion** above said, only in this it differs, that whereas the other hath a row of pricks, tending with the points to the Tail, on each side; this hath the whole Back set and each side, to the middle of the fish, with three or four rows of pricks: and two fins above, near the Tail at a space one from the other, with some gristley strings hanging about his Nostrils.

A **Silurus**, or a **Sheath-fish**; of some called a **Whale** of the river: it is like a **Sturgion**, and is a great devourer of fish.

B. 3 Sturgions in pale A. Born by *Sturgon*.
G. one such O. born by *Gorren*.

In the dexter base of this quarter, is the figure and true image of the small **Sprawne**, or **Shrimpe**: called in *Latin* **Squilla parva**; it hath that name from its species, or nearness it hath to the **Sprawne** not from its age, for this kind of **Shrimpe** will never attain to any bigger stature, then the figure on the plate; which is not in Body and Tail, above an inch long; of some termed from its littleness a **Prane** (instead of a **Small Prane**) and a **Shrimpet**, their colour is so obscure, through their thin and smallness, that it is hard to judge rightly of it; out of the water they appeear to be of a dusky white; in the water they seem to be some reddish, others greenish, others yellowish, or tawny.

A **Sea Prane**, or **Sea Shrimpet**, or **Shrimpet**. It is somthing bigger then those of the river or fresh waters: they are near a fingers length, called **Squillula** and **Cancellus**. The Head is bigger then the little Body requireth; It is all joynts, and hath three or four long beards, turning at the ends, like the clasperes of a **Vine**. They are of a dusky white, but being boiled they

they turn (both the husk or shell, and the fish) to a pure red. The *Germans* call this, a **Zwerg-Krebslin.**

A **Crook-back Prane**, or a **Bunched Shrimpe**; is a small fish also, and is so termed either from its bending of its back, or from the bunch in the end of his Tail, being (as it were) four round fins set together. The Feet are long, and set all together at the beginning of the first joynt, from the Body: the two first are long, consisting of two joynts; the three next Feet, shorter: and the three hindermost shorter then them. The *Low-Countrey Men* give this several names, as a **Spring-Krebsle**, a **Seekritzie**, a **Seergeitz**; and from its bunch, a **Hogerling**, and **Hogergernier**, being alive they are of a dusky white, but boiled wax red. These kind have no horns at all.

A **Cigale**, or **Engraven prawne**; It is a joynted kind of crusted fish, like a many feeted **Worm**: the *Germans* call it, a **Howstoffel**, and the *Latin* **Mantis**, or *Squilla Cælata*. It is grey eyed, thin shelled, white and almost transparent fish (of the species of **Crevises**, or insects of the Sea) having two crimson or eye like spots, upon the Tail; and on either side of the upper part of its Body. It hath three Feet, a long Arm, with a strong Cley: and two long thin joynted horns.

LVIII. He beareth Gules, a **Stoxen**, or **Small Surgion**, Argent; so called, because it is of the **Sturgion** kind, having the like sharp, hook bones on the back, and sides, as the **Sturgion**; only the Nose shorter and blunter. It is in *Latin* called **Galeus Rhodius**, and of some, **Vulpes Rhodia**: It hath a thick short Head, and Nose, no under chap; a large fin at the gills under the Throat; and two fins, or lobs of skin, near the Tail, and one above; the Tail is streight, having a slit in the middle, the higher side stretching it self out into an acute, Angle, or sharp point. This is born by *Sturne*.

An **Attilus**, or **Attil Fish**: It is a cartilagineus, or gristlely fish, of kind to the **Stoxen**; and the *Antecæus*, mentioned *numb.* * 1. and 6. The **Attilus** is of the *Germans* called an **Hausen**. It hath streight sharp bones on his back, slopeing backwards: which ends in a crooked fleshy fin, a little from the Tail; those under the Belly are more large and gross, ending at two like fins, standing at a little distance one from another, and from the Tail. a thick short head, with a sharp pointed Nose, turning upwards; a great round wide Mouth; hath no under chap: from the under side of the Snout or Nose, hangs three or four strings, or gristles, over his Mouth; and a large fin from beneath his gill. It is said, that this fish (when his thorny scales are grown to such a magnitude) doth cast the thorns.

The **Dolphin**, and the *Antecæus*, are of the **Surgion**, and **Stoxen**, species, which because I have treated of them elsewhere, I shall say nothing of them in this place; if not of their kinds, yet they be of their form and shape, as all Painters draw them.

In the sinister chief of this *number* 58. I have caused the figure of a **Fin-shell**; in the *Latin* it is called **Pinna** and **Perna**, which the *Germans* term a **Hamme-Muschell**, because it doth resemble the form of a **Ham**, or **Gammon of Bacon**. It hath teeth in the edges of the shells, which clap one into another, like an **Escallop**, or **Cockle**; and furrowed on the out sides like them, all tending to the sharp point or end, as the center. From these shell fish, proceeds the Union ston, which is ever as large as the fish his eye.

A **Great Ham-Muskle**, or **Pearl Muskle**; It is of a cubit length growing to its extremity; but generally, they are a foot long, or more. It is not furrowed, as the small one is, but plain and smooth, having one round rick, or ridge from the point to the round end; which is broad there, and sharp pointed below; the out shell is straiked, being cut, or (as it were) worm eaten, or graven on, confusedly with crookes, turnings, windings, and crossings all over very thick. They have generally a great bush, or tuft of an hairy substance, growing out of the shell from the fish, which is called the **Muskles Wool**. It is called a **Steck-Muskle**, because one end is sharp: and a **Ham-Muskle** in that it resembles a **Gammon of Bacon**; and a **Pearl-Muskle**, because it breedeth Pearls, as the **Vagarit**, and **Union**.

A small **Ham-muskle**; is of the same form, plain and without teeth in the margents or edges; yet on one side, hath a certain excavaty, or the edges of the shell are made hollow, like the sides of a treble Vial. The top shell, is shelvy, or scally having one crust, lying upon another; after the manner of a **Muskle**.

TO THE

Worthy and ever Honored

Sir *JOHN ARDERNE* of *Arderne*, Knight.

IN token of true Gratitude for unmerited Kindness, and innumerable Favours continually Vouchsafed; doth in most humble manner constrain the Dedication of this Chapter *and* Plate *to your sacred Thoughts and Devotion; not doubting of Your Acceptance and well-wishes, to him who is*

Your Devoted Servant

Randle Holme.

CHAP. XV.

I. HE beareth Gules, a **Fishlin**, Argent. By the name of *Fishlingen*. The *Germans* only have a name for this fish, which they call a **Meerseelen**. *Gesner* calls it from the Latine, *Pisciculus*: a little or small Fish. What other name to give it, is yet to me unknown; It is a flat long fish like a **Sole fish** haveing a fin from head to taile, and the like from the middle of the belly to the taile; a Fin at each Gill, the taile is triparted.

The fish called a **Remora**, or **Echeneis**, or **Stay-ship**: hath amazed the beholders in considering the occult and hid strength and virtue therein: For *Plinie l 9 c* 25. saith it is a very small fish living amongst the Rocks, yet by his strength he will stay a great Ship under sail; when tempests arise. *Aristotle* thinketh that this fish hath fat, placed in a manner like to Birds wings. It is described by *Imperatus* to have a flat head and part of his back in which there are diverse transverse Remulæ's or Chinks.

The **Ephemera**, is a fish which ariseth in the Sea-water, even as a **Bubble** doth, where much rain is; which after three hours of the day dyeth, as *Jorack* in his Book *de Animalibus* reporteth.

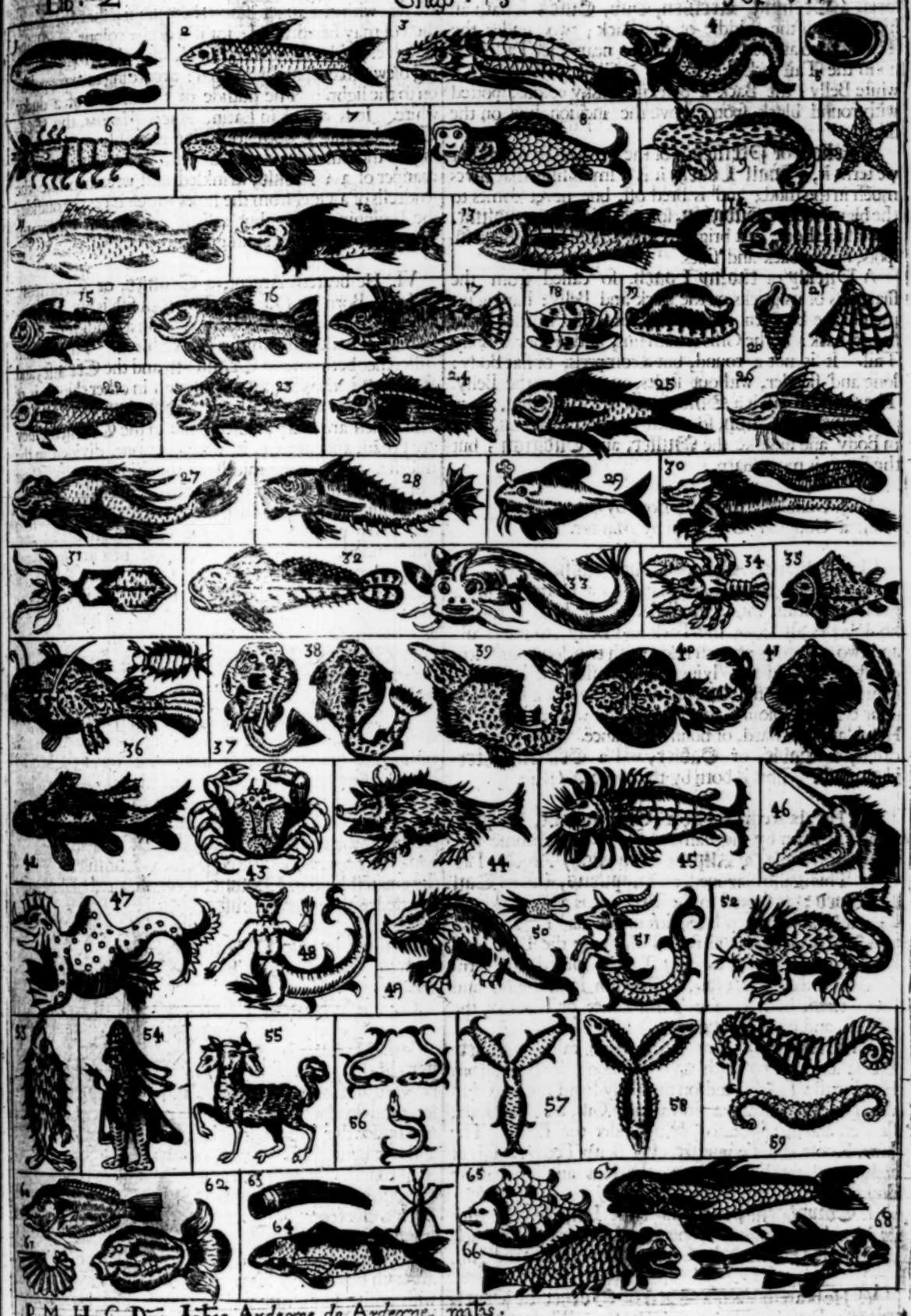
In the base of this quarter, I have given you the figure of a **Sea-worm**, called by the *Germans*, a **Mettlen**, or a **Meer-worm**. It is like an **Earth** or **Garden-worm**, which we call a **Loh-worm**. It is about a finger long and smooth, having no incisures, or joynts: the skin soft and gentle. The Mouth or Snout is obtuse, and hard; a little standing out.

There is another sort of these **Mettlens** which have no Mouth or Snout, but only a hole by which it sucks in its food.

The **Great Sea-worm**, or **Mettlen**; called by the *Germans* a **Long Schnail**. It is near two cubites long: and the Snout much longer, then the **Mettlen** aboveaid, and like the Snout of an **Hippocampus**: It resembles a **Gut Pudding**.

A **Reed**, or **Case-worm**: are Worms about a finger long, which breed in Canes, and Reeds, or any hollow case in the water, which are in form like the **Mettlens**; the hinder part of this Worm ends in a sharp point, like the leaf of a Myrtle tree; and the fore part of it, hath Feet like the **Scolopendra**, (mentioned *numb.* 46) from whence it shuts out a Pipe, in form of a Trumpet, very hard: by which it sucks nourishment into its body: they are all red. The *Germans* call these a **Ranelworm**, and a **Ranelnasseln**, and a **Rotlacht**.

II. He beareth Azure, a **Gudgion** or **Gogion**, proper. Born by *Gogion*. The *Germans* have several names for



P.M.H.C. Dm. Iohis Arderne de Arderne. mitis.

for it, as **Gressling, Kreksen, Gob, Gufe**; It hath an high fin on the middle of the Back; two under the Throat, two at the Navel, and one near the Tail: the fin in the Tail forked. It is of a Silver colour, with a white Belly; the Back a blackish dusky colour, spotted with round black spots, above the incision line on the sides.

A **Fellen**, or **Pfrillen**: of the *Germans* so called, but we term it, a **small Loach**, it is a small fish, that lives much in the mud; and is bred off, but never comes to the bigness of the **Gudgion**, some call it a **Groundling**. It is in the Body of a bright yellow colour, with blackish spots, on the back and sides.

A **Prickly** or **thorny Loach**, so called from the sharpness of its pricks on the Back and Belly: having no membrane between them, but stand like bristles on a Swines back: at the Gills it hath fins, and a forked finny Tail. It is not a round, but a compress, or flat Body: long and slender, without scales, and fins on the Belly. The *Germans* call it a **Smerlin**, or **Stainbyssen**.

A **Zweterley-fish**, so called by the *Netherlands*, it is in Body and fins like the **Mullet, and Gudgion**; but the Snout is more sharp.

A. 3 Gudgions proper. Born by *Cowley*.
G. a Gudgion O. Born by *Mayowe*.

III. He beareth Argent, an **Harp-fish**, Gules. In Latin *Lyra*, from its resemblance to a Harp, having a great vast Head, with a small Body. It hath a row of hook-bones all along the Back and Belly, to the Tail; and two such rows on each side; with two long and slender sharp pointed fins, lying on each side the Belly. It is an eight square fish (*Octagonus*) in Body; of a Phoenicius or crimson colour; the scales of the whole Body and Head, are of a hard, or bonny substance. The *Germans* call it, a **Gable**, or **Gabler**, and a **Geharnischter-Red fish**. This is born by the name of *Lyran*.

IV. He beareth Sable, a **Clip najant, torqued**, Argent. Born by the name of *Clipse*. And some say, he beareth Sable, a **Klip** (or **Klip-fish**) Argent, Fins Or. This is also blazoned, an **Hippurus**, with its **Tail embowed**: or bowed in the Tail. It is a fish that hath a great Head, and two large fins under its Throat, like to a **Bats** Wings; and finned all along the Back and Belly from Head to Tail; the Tail fin forked, and turned backwards in the points. This fish hath round and sharp teeth, both in the Jaws, Pallet or Roof of the Mouth, and on the Tongue.

An **Hippurus**, or as the *Germans* call it, a **Feder-Rob**: because he hath a fin all along his Back, from Head to the Tail. And on the Belly from the Navel to the Tail very near; a fin at each Gill, and two long, slender, and sharp pointed, lying under the Belly. The Jaws, Roofe and Tongue set with sharp Teeth. It is of a sky, or light blew colour; the Fins and Tail more dusky.

A **Coryphaena**, is a fish of the **Klip** species, with its Mouth, Jaws, and Tongue full of sharp teeth; and hath erected fins, from the Crown of the Head, to the Tail.

V. He beareth Vert, a **Shell** of **Mother of Pearl**, proper. Born by the name of *Hougby*. These **Shells** are set with the inner side to the sight, that the beauty thereof may be admired; for it is of the colour of polished Silver, with various reflections, of a glistering and shining blew, green, purple and red: according to its opposition to the light. The outside of the shell is of a dusky white. It is called in Latin, *Auris Marina*, the **Sea-Ear**; because it doth somthing resemble an Ear, swelling on the out side, depicted with many lines after the manner of a **Muskle**, wrinkled and wreathen like the tendrells of a vine, from the holes which is on the outside; the beginning being but a little turned, but afterwards they augment to great and greater turnings.

VI. He beareth Argent, a **Crange**, or **Crangon**, Gules. Born by *Cragge*. This shell fish is but little bigger then a hands bredth: It is alive, in a candide or white shell; but boiled the whitness waxeth red. There is this difference between the **Crangon**, and the **Crevise**, and **Sprawn**: the **Crangon**, though in other things is of their kind, yet in the Tail of the **Sprawne** there are four fins, which are sharp pointed; but in the **Crangon** they are broad, and are (as it were) but one, divided in the middle. And in the middle of the said fins, proceeding from the Tail, is a kind of spinaous or thornlike substance, resembling a sting; which in the **Sprawne** is slender, and sharp pointed; but in the **Crangon** thick, and blunt ended. Again the horns in the first are long and slender, ending in a point; but in the latter thick and short, as if they were broken off in the middle. So the feet of the one are ended in a sharp point or spur, undivided; but in the other, the feet are divided.

A **Venetian Prawne**, it hath six horns standing streight out from the Mouth, long and sharp pointed; with a kind of a hairy beard about the Mouth; the eyes black standing out of the Head. The Body is round, to which is joyned six Feet, each having four joynts, the last ending in a spur, or sharp divided point; near the Mouth there is four other Claws, or Feet of several joynts, ending in a division like the **Lobsters** Claws. The Tail consists of five or six joynts, without and Feet fixed to it; the fins at the end of the Tail, are six crusts, or shells, haired or fingered on the edges, as a **Lobster**. This is the greatest kind of **Prawne**, somewhat resembling, and a little less then the **Crevice**.

B. three in pale O. born by *Shipley*.
A. 3 such G. born by *Thurston*, alias *Thurlaston*.
G. a fesse between 3 such erected. Born by *Cook*.

VII. He beareth Azure, a **Spyall-Eele** (or **Pimper-Eele**) proper. It is a fish supposed to be gendred between an **Adder** or **Snake**, and a **Lampyey**. It is a long and slender fish, with a fin on the middle of the Back; two under the Throat, two in the middle of the Belly, and one between the Navel, and the Tail; the fin at the Tail round. It hath two lobs, or skins like beards, hanging down from the higher Lip near the Nostrils. The Back is cinereous, having a multitude of spots, and pricks transverse; partly black, and partly cæruleous, or blewish; or between blew and green. The lines on the sides are both black and white: the Belly is a bright yellow, with white spots, with pricks of red, and black, very little and sharp, as if a needle had made them. It is

called a **Pipe-Eele**, and a **Pudfish**, and a **Geerpatten**.

B. 4 such Hauriant in fesse A. Born by the name of *Transmole*.

G 3 such Naiant in pale G. Born by the name of *Seabank*.

VIII. He beareth Argent, a **Cyprinus Monstrous**, or a **Monstrous Carp**, proper. This is termed also a fish with a **human face**; several fishes of this form were taken in the Year 1545. and 1557. in the Pool or **Lake Aron**, near **Retz**: in the Dukdom of *Austria*; about 9 inches long, the Head round, the Mouth also round and prominent, the Body short and round, the Belly well knit together, the Tail small and slender: and was of a yellowish colour, only this difference, there was amongst them some were very scaly, and others had no scales at all. *Gesner* terms it, an **Hermaphrodite Carp**.

IX. He beareth Sable, an **Eele-Powte** (or a **Powte**) proper. Born by *Eelspot*: or else term it thus, from the *Germans*, an **Alput naiant**, with the **Tail dextant**. It is a long muddy fish, that is headed, skinned, and finned like an **Eele**, with a smooth skin like a **Snake**, or **Adder**, of a milke colour; (that is a whitish blew) not spotted, but dashed here and there all over the skin with a dusky colour; It hath two large round fins at the Gill; with a jagged fin, above them towards the Mouth; all the fins are coloured as the skin. It hath a lob or beards, sharp pointed under the lower Lip; in the higher side of the Mouth it hath a double row, or two orders of Teeth; and in the Jaws below, but one. It is in Latin termed **Anguilla Fluviatilis**, and **Silurus Nili**; which the *Netherlanders* have several names for, as a **Triesch**, a **Rutt** or **Rutten**; a **Wellfisch**, or a **Guellfisch**; a **Poserie**, a **Rugget**; a **Ruffleich**; an **Alrupp**, or **Rupp**; *&c.* There are diverse kinds of these fish, in shape and fins alike, but of contrary colours; as,

A **Trischen**; which we may call an **Elepowten**, or a **Powten**, or **Powtel**. The *French* call it, **Lote de mer**, a **Sea Lote**, or **Beard-fish**: or a **Bearded Eele-powte**. From the middle of the Back, to the middle of the Belly, the fins compasseth about the Tail; the Nose or Snout is sharper, and they with the fin compassing it, runs to an accute point, the Belly more prominent, or swelling round, where its Guts lyeth; It hath a lob, or skinny thread, hangs down from the tip of the lower chap, two under the Throat, and two fins by its Gills, narrow and sharp pointed: with a fin also on the Back, joyning to the foot of the long fin, which compasses the Tail.

A **Beautiful Eele-Powte**: or the **Starred Eele-Powte**. So called from the variety of colours wherewith it is adorned; the Eyes are large, of a blewish green colour, with a black Pupil: the Body is of variable colours, shining according to the reflection of the light, as bright yellow, saffron colour, white, rose or carnation colour; black and dark coloured spots like stars, dispersed all over the Head and Body.

B. such an Eele-powte A. born by *Alput*.
B. 3 such najant in pale O. born by *Firby*.

[]

X. He beareth Argent, a **Fretted Star-Fish**, proper. It is termed **Stella Reticulata**, or **Cancellata**; that is, a **Star-fish** whose shell is imposed, or carved all over with net-work, or like a lattice, or cross barred: It hath also round tubercous knots or bunches, like round buttons, upon the joynt of each cross bar; from whence some have termed it, **Stella tuberosa**, a **knotty** or **bunched Star-fish**. Others from its resemblance of a **Mullet** or **Spur-rowell**, have called it the **Mullet-shell**, or **Mullet-Shell-fish**; and the **Spur-rowell fish**. This is the Crest of *Starbrig*.

An **Urchin Star-fish**; this is a **Star-fish** of five long and slender Rays, bending and waving like a **Serpents tail**, and all beset with sharp pricks; all proceeding from a small circle in the middle, on which the joyning of the Rays makes a perfect cross. It is of the *Germans* termed a **Worm-star**.

A **Sea Sun**, or the **Sun shell fish**; It differs from the **Star-fish** in this, that all the rays (which are five (and sharp in the points) come out of the sides of the round shell, or circumference in the middle: whereas the rays of the **Star-fish**, all lie upon the body of the circumference, meeting and joyning at the center thereof: In the middle of which round body, is the figure of a Rose expressed, the rays are rough and rigged, as if they were scaly, all white as snow.

A **Sea-Moon**, or a **Moon shell-fish**; hath also five rays out of the sides of the Body of the shell, which are joynted, or knotty like, the Tail of a **Crevice**. The substance of it is testaceous, or shell like; but more softer, as if it were the shell of an egg, which may be crumbled or broken small, and is full of sand and gravel when it is chewed, or grinded in the Teeth.

XI. He beareth Gules, a **Lucioperca**, proper. This is called a **Lucy-pearch**, of *Lucius* and *Perca*, being a bastard fish, resembling both the **Lucy** or **Pike**, and the **Pearch**: that is to say the form and shape of Body, like the **Pike**; in the greatness, order, and roughness, or sharpness of the scales, is like the **Pearch**. The two fins on the Back, (that next the Head hooked, or with pricks, the other smooth) are erected almost three fingers in length; the Eyes white. The fish is at his full growth, near three foot long; in the highest part of the Back, and towards the sides, are many transverse blackish spots, as is seen in the **Pearch**. This is born by *Van Luciperg*.

A **Mullet**, or an **Alet**, or **Meeralet**, in Latin *Mugil*: hath a like Body & fins to the **Lucy-Pearch**, only the head rounder & shorter; the fish in its growth is a cubite long, and is scaly from the Nose to the Tail, with several incision scores through the sides.

A **Cestreus**, is a species of the **Mullet**, and altogether like it, only the Head is less and more sharp, and the lines from the Gills to the Tail are drawn more shorter.

A **Base**, or **Frasling**, or a **Roubling**, as the *Germans* call it: for its delicacy of meat, it is termed, a *Lucilius*: It is of the **Pearch** kind, of which there be two sorts. One hath the Back from white to ash colour, with a white Belly, and black spots conspersed. The other is without spots, and is called *Lanatus*, from its white soft skin and flesh.

XII. He beareth Azure, a **Schaidle** (or **Schied**,) proper. It is a species of the **Lucy-Pearch**, having two

pre minent

Prominent little horns from the upper lip, it is as long as the Pike. It is called in Latin *Cornicula Mystacis*, which may be termed the **Horn-lip, Lucy, pearch.** This is born by the name of *Schadlerne.*

XIII. He beareth Or, a **Spike-nose,** Azure. This is called by the *Germans*, a **Spitznasz,** from whence we have borrowed the name; It hath a snout like the **Sea-Sphyraena,** long, slender and thin; and very sharp, but soft and black: at *Antwerpe* they are frequently taken, where they are called, an **Dautin,** and **Houtinck:** which we may interpretate to be a sharp or **Razor Nose.** It hath three thorny fins on the Back, and one under the Belly near the Tail, which is also thorny, and fork pointed; the two fins at the Gills, and those at the Navel, as other Fish fins. This is born by the name of *Spikley.*

XIV. He beareth Vert, an **American Ostracion,** proper. It is a great thick, yet short headed fish; the Body to the Tail is of a long Pentagonus form, that is, five square; from the Head to the Tail. It is armed (like the **Tatus** a little Beast in the same Region) as with a joynted Plate coat of Mail. It hath sharp bones in the fins on the Back; the Tail is streight, and two fins at the Throat. It is eaten by the inhabitants, who call it **Tamouhata.**

A **Glaucus,** or **Meerblawling,** or a **Meerstichling:** of the *Germans*, which we may English, the **little Blewfish,** or **Blewling:** being of a cæruleous colour; for the Back is ash blew. It hath on its Back short stings or pricks, those next the Tail forked and very sharp, they have no membrane between, like fins. The Tail fin forked; a fin at the Gills; and two at the Throat: It is called a **Bonito-fish,** or **Young Tunny:** the incision line in the Body is endented, the Back scally.

XV. He beareth Sable, a **Salut** (or **Saluten**) Argen. Born by *Schaluchten.* It is in Latin called, *Glanis*; which may be Englished a **Glanin,** for there is no other name for it but what we borrow from the said Language, and *Germany.* It hath a great round Body, with a little short Head, with a sharp Nose; Teeth it hath in its Mouth set in many rows and orders. It hath a forked Tail, a fin on the middle of the Back; a little distant from it, a long, narrow fin reaching to the Tail: with the like under the Belly; a fin at each Gill, and two small fins pointed in the middle of the Belly: It is of a Sable colour.

XVI. He beareth Or, a **Tenche,** proper. Born by the name of *Tenchford.* It is a grose, full round bodied fish, with soft and gentle scales, which in the boyling doth easily wash off. It hath a Wry or crooked Mouth, bending downwards from the Nose: It hath a fin on the middle of the Back; and two under the Throat, two in the middle of the Belly, and one roundish fin, near the Tail; the fin of the Tail is broad and streight. The colour of the Body is blackish, having a tincture of green; the Belly is white. It is in Latin called *Tinca* from *tincta*; because its thick, fat, or grose skin; seems to be dyed or stained, or embrued with a black and green colour. The *Germans* call it, a **Schley,** and a **Schlig,** or **Slip,** and **Slyen:** the *Hollanders* call it, a **Schoemaker,** and a **Graumaker,** or **Grabmaker,** but for what reason I have not learned, except one be from the fatness or thickness of its skin; and the other because it lieth, and is found in holes, and hollow cavities of the Earth, as it were in a Sepulcher.

S. 3 such A. born by *Tench.*

A. a Cheveron between 2 such, and a Star G. by *Capellin.*

B. a fesse between 3 such A. born by *Upton.*

G. 3 such O. born by *Woodbank*, also by *Whitby.*

XVII. He beareth Sable, a **Sand-Eele** (or a **Sandil**) proper. Born by *Gobione.* This is a small Sea-fish of which there is two sorts; this being by *Gesner* termed, the *Venetian* or **great Gobion;** or the **great Sea-Gobion.** It hath two fins on its Back, sharp thorned; the one on the Neck, standing up (as it were a **Dragons Wing**) the other longer pointing down the Back, and reacheth almost to the middle of the Tail. It hath the like thorny fins each side the Gills, and under the Throat, and one near the Tail; the Tail fin is almost semi-circular. It is by some Authors, said to be white and dusky on the Back, others all white; from whence some have called it a **Whiting** and **Smelt.** Others say it is somwhat yellow, with the Belly more paler, or whitish; but those erre that attribute any greenness to it. It is called by the *Germans* a **Meergob,** and a **Steingob:** the *French* call it a **Boulerot,** which is Englished to us, to be a little round **Gudgeon,** that lives continually in fenny, and muddy places: from whence we call it a **Sandil.**

The other sort of **Gobion,** see *numb.* 22.

XVIII. He beareth Argent, the **shell** of a **Sea Tortoice,** proper. The fish of this shell, when he puts himself forth, doth in all respects resemble the **Land Tortoice,** which you may see *chap.* 10. *numb* 14. only it hath a longer Tail; it is of the *Netherlands* called a **Schitkrot,** and a **Schildt-padde,** that is a **Frog** or **Toade, Armed** or covered with a Shield, or Target. *Pliny* saith these Creatures are so great, that one only shell of them is sufficient for the roof of an *Indians* dwell-house; and that they make use of them for Boats, and Wherries.

3 such is born by the name of *Shell*, or *Shuell.*

XIX. He beareth Azure, a **Venus Cockle-shell,** Argent. Born by *Muscheller.* Of some called a **Venus Huskle,** in Latin *Concha Venera*, a **Venus Winckle.** *Pliny* calls it **Murex;** being a round shell with two becks or corners, the edges of the sides turn both inward as if they were rowled up, the edges are not dented, but crumpled, or crisped: It is by many of our fishers termed a **Cuntshell.** The shell is all within and without, of a pure white, shiping as if it were smoothly polished. The *Germans* call it, a **Mutermuscheln,** a **Venus-Muscheln,** and a **Glettmuscheln.**

A **diverse coloured Venus Winckle,** hath all the inside of a candid colour; the outside is variously coloured, not with spots, but dashed all over here and there, dispersedly in lines.

A **Spotted Venus Winckle,** hath the shell all over white, and the back part of it, spotted with dark, or dusky spots.

A **Circled Venus shell**, hath all the outside of a pure white, with a golden circle on the back part of it; and all the inner part of the shell is of a blewish colour: and some again are Reddish. These are called in the Latin tongue by several names, as **Porcellana, Matriculus, Calculus Matricis**; in all these shells nature hath many varieties for some are full round, others half round, some bow backed, and cut as it were just through the middle; some both edges turned in; others but one side, the other a little bowed: some smooth edges, others dented; champhired and crisped, or wrinkled; some fashioned like a hollow gutter, others like the fashion of a womb, some are crooked and byas; others spread out directly in length, others turned inward, crooked like a Cornet: with diversity of other forms, and figures.

B. 3 Venus shells A. born by *Willaston*.
G. a fesse between 3 such A. born by *Whitmore*.
B. 3 such erected A. by the name of *Hiccock*.

XX. He beareth Gules, a **Knoted Welk**, Or. Born by *Welkford*. It is so termed by reason the wreathing of the shell is full of little knots, and bunches like buttons. These **Welks** never exceed the bigness of a mans thum: some are white, others dusky, and others blackish. The *Germans* call these, **Stauben-Schneckle**; the term of **Schneckle**, being generally used both for **Cockles, Welks**, and **Periwinckles**, see *chap.* 14. *numb.* 40.

An **Angled Welk**, or a **Cornered Welk**, this hath all the wreathen part of the **Welk**, cut and carved into knobs, or corners of raised work. It is by the *Germans* termed, an **Eckestraub-Schneckle**. It much resembles the **Buccinus**, or **Sea-Cornet**, by reason the opening is towards the top, being both long, and sharp. It is of a Marmoreous or marble colour. that is a blackish blew; the Mouth or inside is of a light purple. There is also another kind of **Welk** in the form, and tuberousnes like this; but is much more fuller of knots, or studds: and of a shorter figure, and more swelling out. The shell is purple within, without white, like as if it were smeered or laid over with lyme, or chalk. The Latin name for it, is *Turbo Mauricatus*; in *Germany* **Buckelstraub-Schneckle**. G. 3 such knotted Welks O. is born by *Burche*.

B. a Cheveron between 3 such O. born by *Watt*.

XXI. He beareth Sable, an **Oyster-Cockle**, Argent. So called because it partaketh of both: being termed in Latin, *Concha Imbricata*: a Cockle whose shell is like half round gutter tyles, laid (as it were) one upon another. It is furrowed in the shell like the **Cockle**, yet the fish is **Oyster**; which *Pliny* terms **Tridacna**; that is an **Oyster** so large, that every one will be three mouthfulls. The *Germans* call it a **Grosse-Ostern-Bultheln**.

XXII. He beareth Argent, a **Niger**, or **Black Gobion**; This is called a **Black Gobion**, or **Sable Sandill**, to distinguish it from the **Sand Eele**, mentioned *numb.* 17. It being like that in all respects, and fins alike placed on the body; only the **Sable Gobion** hath not sharp thorny fins, but a soft gentle fin, as in other common sort of Fishes.

All other **Gobions** are naturally white, and therefore are generally called **White Fish**, if they live and abide in Stony or Gravelly grounds; though there be amongst them, such as are inclining to a yellow.

XXIII. He beareth Or, a **Snail Fish** (or a **Schneckling Fish**) proper. This Fish in the Latine is called *Scorpioides Piscis*, the **Scorpion Fish**, because the head is like a **Scorpion**, but the *French* call it an **Hare Fish**, because it is like a **Hare**, with a short round face, and a little mouth; the *Germans* call it a **Snail Fish**, because it puts out its Horns like the **Snail**; for it hath above its eyes two sharp bones standing out, which are soft; it hath a thorny fin all the length of the Back; the higher part, or that next the Head of a considerable breadth standing backwards, which by degrees grows narrower and narrower, till it touch the fin on the tail; the like is under from the navel to the tail; a broad thorny fin at each gill, and two slender sharp pointed ones under the throat; the tail is not thorny, but even on the edges, going into the tail with a semi-circle; it hath two black spots on the back fin; the skin smooth, in colour like a **Lark**, *viz.* a yellowish white, spotted with dark blackish small long spots or dashes.

A **Meergropp**, so called by the *Germans*, who also have another name for it, as a **Schleymling**, and a **Zwibel fisch**, which we may English a **Swag fish**, or a **Swagbelly fish**; or the **thorny finned Snail fish**. It is of that species, for it hath two horns like a Snail above the eyes; the fin on the back is divided into two, the tail streight and thorny; in all other things it is of the foresaid figure and shape, only the belly from the head to the navel swells up, and is almost half round.

A **Cristed Lark fish**, of some called a **Basilisk fish**, from that tuberous bunch that is on the crown of the head; in all things else it resembles the **Snail Fish** set down in the Plate; only the back fin in this is all of a breadth; it is a little slender scaleless small mouthed, round headed, and grey eyed Sea Fish, living amongst the Rocks; of a blewish colour, with some spots on the belly; the *Germans* call it a **Seelerche**, and a **Kobellerch**; some Authors call it a **Sea Peacock fish**, because of its crest and cæruleous or blewish green colour like to the **Peacock**.

A **spotted Sea Lark**, called in *Latine Pholis Piscis*, it is of the foresaid Species, hath a most soft and glutinous flesh; the fins in all respects like the crested **Sea Lark Fish**, being sported all over the body, and a round pointed fin at the tail; this the *Germans* term a **Schleymlarch**.

XXIV. He beareth Argent, a **Sea Thrush** (or **Duzel-fish**) proper. It is a **Hog backed Fish**, living amongst the Rocks; it is like a **Tench**, sharp teeth on both sides the mouth, the Snout turning up almost like a **Swine**, the higher part of the back is a dusky or dark brown, like the colour of a Tile, full of black spots; it hath three lines extending from the gills to the tail; of a blue colour; two yellow circles go about the pupil of the eye, the inner being more dusky, or of a browner colour; the fin of the tail blewish, the beginning of the gill fins are blewish, and about the head and gills, and under

under the throat blew; the middle parts of the fins on the back are painted with a fair yellow, the hinder parts with yellow, distinguished with blewish spots; the middle lower parts are yellow with somewhat red spots; two fins round pointed under the belly, and one thorny fin near the breech, of a bright yellow; the long fin on the back is thorny, and (as it were) indented or cut into about the middle; the tail is streight; the *Germans* call this a **Crammetfish**, or **Krammetfischen.**

There is another kind of **Sea Thrush**, which hath only one white line from the eye to the tail; with the spots black, aspersed over the body; it wants those of a yellow or golden colour.

Another kind there is, which hath also but one line from the eye to the tail, of a blew colour, with a long Snout **Eagle** like.

There is another kind of **Sea Thrush Fish**, which hath no line at all, having the back of a gold colour aspersed with green spots; the belly is white with red lines, winding and bending many ways without any orderly disposition.

There is another kind, which differs nothing from the former, but that it hath many lines on the belly *(sese intersecantes)* cutting through, or crossing one another.

Another **Thrush fish kind**, is of a various colour, green waxing to a yellow; one line from the eye to the tail white, with many other confused oblique lines, of a wax or yellow colour.

Another is of a green colour on the back, and white on the belly, inclining to a yellow, the mouth little, lips small; eyes red, the covering of the gills, and the fins of the belly, are inclining to a purple.

A **Venetian Thrush fish**, it is of a ruddy colour, more red on the back, in the belly inclining to a white; there are three spots in the middle of the back, so as the last toucheth the end of the tail; the pupil of the eye black, with a red circle about it, and that inclosed again in a blewish one; his prominent lips standing out, and turned up, of a red colour, sharp white teeth on both sides, the fins red. Some of this kind have many black and blew spots dispersed here and there, which others have not.

Another of this kind hath a blewish green head, the back inclining to a green, the line from the gills to the tail is green, ending in a round spot near the tail; the rest of the body is growing to a red, the fins various, but the major part of them are purple.

A **various** or **diverse coloured Duzel Fish**, so called, by reason there is more variety of colours and painting than all the rest; the principal colour of the body is a dusky brown, or black and red; the fins at the gills yellow; the rest were brown, but the fibres or thorny pricks of the fins are red, the like is the tail; the eye is large, having a black pupil, compassed about with a circle of a luteous colour, somewhat greenish, whose exteriour circle is a Violet colour, which is followed by another of a Luteous, or yellow (like Wax, or the Yolk of an Egg) which is lastly compassed about by a fourth circle which is black; the body is made black with great spots, as if they were dashed on without any form; this is by the *Italians* termed *Papagallus*, and *Pavo*, a **Peacock Fish**, because it much resembles a Peacock colour; and for the same reason it is by others called the **Parrot Fish**, or **Sea Merlin**, or **Sparhawk fish.**

A **Posten**, so called from its Swiftness, and the Kings **Sea Messenger**; and of others called a **Sea**, or **Ocean Carp.** It is of the **Turdus** kind, but the colours various, for the tail and hinder part of the fin on the back are reddish, and the points various; the anterior and major part of the fin on the back, from a dusky brown inclines to a white; the back is a blewish green, the belly white, but towards the tail waxeth black; the spots or points in the whole body are somewhat black and brown, variously mixt; the eye hath a black pupil, circled about with a gold or saffron colour, with another about it of dusky or dark brown; and lastly invironed with a third circle somewhat of a bright yellow.

A lesser **Posten**, in this Fish there is more blewish green, principally in the extremity of the tail, and the prone or lower part of the body and fins; also the middle circle of the eye is white; the body is almost dusky or of a dark brown, but with other colours, every where temperately and moderately mixed; and with points which are more various, of a dusky brown, or of somewhat black colour.

A **Galber**, or a **golden Galber**, in Latine called *Adonis* or *Exocœtus*. It is of the **Turdo**, or **Sea Duzell Fish** kind; the fins not sharp or thorny; it is of a somewhat yellowish colour.

XXV. He beareth Argent, an **Anthia**, proper. Born by the name of *Yokson*. This is by the *French* called **Barbier**, from its bone or prominent gristle hanging down each side the mouth, after the manner of a Munchato Beard; and the **Sacred Fish**, because no ravenous or hurtful Fish doth ever swim near it; the *Germans* call it a **Rotlachter-Rundtkopff**, for the body and fins are red, and the head round: There is several kinds of this Fish, nothing differing in form but in colour; as the **Red Anthia**, the **yellow Anthia**, the **white Anthia**, which we call a **Tod-fish**, the **Black**, or **purple Anthia.**

An **Euopus**, or an **Aulopion**, of some Authors called a **Boniton**, the *Germans*, a **Seebrachsmen**, it is of the **Anthia** Species, but of a rounder and fuller body, else finned and scaled alike; the eyes are round, great and set open, like an **Owl**; the Jaws and Cheeks are not only strong, but fair and large; the back is of a blewish green, the belly white; from the head to the tail goes a golden line, which endeth in a turn about the cheeks, and so under the lower chap.

A **Junckerlin**, or a **Schonling**, is a small Sea Fish, scarce a finger long, of the **Anthia** form and kind, save the tail is streight not forked; the back fin engraled growing taperwise, till it come to nothing near the tail; the back is of a Violet colour; from the head to the tail is a broad line indented on both sides, somewhat of a gold colour; the head and parts under, are blew, the belly white, inclining to a yellow.

XXVI. He beareth Argent, a **Gurnarde**, proper. It is of the *Germans* called a **Gornart**, and a **Gurnaett**, from the crookedness of its nose. It is termed **Cuculus**, the **Cuckow Fish**, and a **Red Fish**, because

cause it is of a reddish or brown colour, like the **Cuckoo**. This is born by the name *Gurnarde*.

A **Gray Gurnard**, is another kind of them, being of the same shape, but of a cinereous, or ash, or gray colour tending to a blew.

A **Rochet**, or **Rotbart**, is a red kind of **Gurnard**, and is so called in the South parts of *England*, and in the East parts it is called a **Curre**, and a **Goldenpolle**.

A **Harp Fish**, so called because the Nose is biforked coming out in two points, the ancient form of the Harp. It is also of the same form and colour as the **Cuculus**. It is in some places of *England* called a **Millers Thumb**, the *Germans* call this a **Sea hen**, and a **Seahalz**.

O. 3 Gurnard G. born by *Gills*.

A. one in Bend G. born by *Eccones*.

XXVII. He beareth Or, a **Sea Swallow Fish**, proper, born by *Van Swall*. It hath long and broad fins, by which it can fly out of the water, as if it were a Water Fowl; the mouth and the eyes so bright that they will shine in the night; it is of body and colour the species of a **Swallow**; the mouth and throat is red, the back black, the belly white. 2 such are born by *Swallow*.

A **Sea Kite Fish**, in Latine *Milvus Piscis*, is shaped in the head and body like the **Swallow Fish**, having two thorny pointed fins on the back, the body scaly, and two long and broad fins (almost like **Hornets** or **Bases** Wings) adorned and set full of Stars, both on and between the fibres or thorny shafts of the fins.

A. 3 Sea Swallow Fishes proper, born by *Leene*, or *Leenes*.

O. 3 such proper with a Fesse between S. Born by the name of *Pooler*.

A. 3 such in Pale naiant S. born by *Forshall*.

XXVIII. He beareth Azure, a **Meeraff**, (or a **Flamlingen**, or a **Leimfish**,) proper; it is in Latine called *Tænia*, a **Fillet Fish**, so named from its length and narrowness; it hath a deformed **Ape** like head, the body is a finger broad and five palmes long, of a Silver colour; a long prickly sharp fin and long, on the back and tail; two fins at the gills, and under the belly not a fin, but bones like hooks standing at a little distance all the length of the belly; there is several other sorts of these Fish which differ in their colour and fins yet like in body, as

A **Binde Fish**, or **Fillet Fish**, with a smooth and sharp pointed tail; it differs much from the other, for the head is round like an **Ape**; the body slender, round and long, like an Earth or **Garden Worm**, with a sharp tail, having a long narrow fin half the length of the back, and two small fins at the gills; the eyes great, and the mouth bending downwards; it is all white, and is born by the name of *Bend*, or *Bind*.

A **Spotted Bind Fish**, differs from the former in this that it is grosser in the body being 3 cubits long when it comes to its maturity; besides the two fins it hath at the gills, it hath two more under the throat of a red colour, of which colour is the fin on the back, and the small fin at the end of the tail; besides it hath 5 round spots on it sides, of a purple colour, the rest of the body is white.

XXIX. He beareth Sable, a **Balena**, Or. This is a kind of **Whale**, after the shape of a **Purpess**, or a **Dolphin**; It is of some Authors called a **Gibbar**, from **Gibber**, a hog back, or a crooked and bunch back, in which there is a large skinny Fin; it hath a Fistula or Pipe in its forehead, out of which it (like the **Physeter**) casts water in great abundance upon such as assault it; It hath also two fleshy or skinny lobs like Beards hanging from each side of the higher Jaw check, therefore of some named the **Bearded Balena**.

A **Capitoleus**, is of some Authors said to be the **Whale with a Fistula** or **Pipe** in its forehead (as the **Physeter**) and that the **Balena** hath no such thing, but only two great round fleshy fins like Hounds ears hanging down under its throat as the Figure doth demonstrate. It is called a **Wall fish**, or a **Hogerwall**, or a **Bartwall** by the *Germans*; and we term it a **Hoze**, a **Spring Whale Bearded**.

An **Orca**, is another such like Monstrous Fish, which to describe (saith *Pliny*) I can resemble to nothing else but a mighty mass or lump of Flesh without all form or fashion, armed with most terrible, sharp and cutting teeth. The **Orca** hath by *Gesners* Figure, a hole or pipe in the head, by which water is cast forth: it hath no Beard like the **Balena**; the skin is as the skin of a Man, very smooth and soft; on the back it is of a black colour, shining blewish; the belly is pure white; the *Germans* call this a **Wallzwal**, and a **Zuberwall**, a **Meerschweyn**, and a **Whale Swine**.

A **Scolopendra Whale**, or the many footed **Whale**; it hath its name from an insect of the earth called a 100 feet; which the *Germans* call a **Massel**; this kind of Whale in Body resembles the **Balena**, having like tail and like fins, with a multitude of feet under the Belly resembling the **Scolopendra**, or like long slender lobs or fleshy fins. This the *Netherlanders* call a **Wallnassel**.

XXX. He beareth Argent, a **Bethmechin**, proper. This is a kind of a **Belva**, or **Whale Fish**, which in the year 1551 was cast up in the *Java* Island, it was 10 cubits long, and 2 cubits high: It is an Amphibious creature, living both on Land and in the Water; it hath the head and feet of a **Panther**, back and belly set with bristles, and the end of the tail; it is of a red colour here and there blewish, the tail is a more dilute cæruleous colour, the hair or bristles be all red. It is of some called an **Arabian Bethmechin**, or **Whale-Panther**. This is born in Bend, by the name of *Paccareno*.

In the chief of this quarter I have set the figure of a **Leech**; of some called a **Horse-Leeche**, a **Lowch-Leach**, and a **Blood-sucker**. The *Germans* term it an **Aegle**, a **Lake**, or a **Lychelake**; in Latine it hath the name of *Hirudo*, but more properly *Sanguisuga*, which is a kind of **Worm** that sucketh blood; there are some of them that are black, others of an earthly colour, and some of a yellowish green, which are spotted, and straked with black or dark colour.

A. 3 Horse-Leeches, proper, born by *Leecher*

XXXI. He beareth Argent, a **Sleeve** (or a **Black fish**) proper. It is another sort of **Cuttle Fish** than what I have described *chap.* 14. *numb.* 45. as the Figure doth manifest. This is also called the lesser **Calamary**, or **lesser Sea Cut**; in Latine *Sepia* and *Loligo*; the *Germans* do, from the Blood which is as black as Ink call it a **Black fisch**, which name we borrow from them; and in some places of *Higher Germany*, **Raankuttel**, that is, the **slender** and **oblong Cuttle.**

A **Polypus**, which some English a **Pourcontrell**, a **Pourcuttel**, or a **Fish with many feet**; it is directly round, with another smaller round set upon it, from whence proceeds many stringed winding feet, and strong Arms knotted and knobbed like Clubs, which they could bend and turn any way; these the *Germans* call a **Bisemer**, a **Bisemling**, or a **Bisemkuttel**; it resembles a round Inkhorn with many Shafts of Pens standing out of it.

There are other sorts of **Cuttel fish**; as **Far cuttel, Schiff-cuttel, Ghist cuttell, Rock cuttel, Seehasz, Seequapp, &c.** but being Shells without all form or fashion, and nothing but confused lumps turning and winding, and therefore as pertaining nothing to our purpose, I refer those to *Gesners* History of Fish that desire a sight of them.

A. 3 Sleeves erected S. born by *Blake*, or *Bleake*.

XXXII. He beareth Azure, a **Bullhead Fish**, proper. This is so called from the greatness of its head; it hath a round fin on its neck, from which proceeds to the tail a long jagged fin; the like goes from the Navel almost to the tail; two large jagged fins from the gills, the tail small; the *Germans* have many names for this Fish, as a **Gropp, Cop, Kap, Kopt, Kaulrapp, Babst,** and **Dull**, &c. but with us it is most known by the term of a **Bullhead Fish** or **Millers Thumb**; **Gull**, and a **Chabot.**

An **Asper**, or **Aspron**, of the *German* called a **Ruchling**, or a **Zindel.** It is a little rough Fish, or **Goudgeon** like Fish, found only in the *Rosne*, which is between *Vienna* and *Lions*; it is flat headed, two rough fins on the back, two at the gills, two under the throat, one in the middle of the belly, the tail somewhat forked; the colour is red, having black spots from the back to the belly, oblong descending variously.

XXXIII. He beareth Vert, a **Silurus** (or a **Salure**, or a **Salut**) Argent. It is the **Whale** amongst Fishes in fresh Water; as the **Balena** is the **Whale** or greatest of Fishes in the Salt Waters; therefore the *Germans* do call it a **Waller**, and a **Walline**, or **Wallarine.** In some places in *Germany* it is called a **Schaid**, a **Welsz**, a **Dick**, or **Tuck**, &c. It hath but small Teeth, but a wide mouth, and a great head; the under jaws have but one row of teeth, but the upper jaws have two; it is a gristly finned Fish all white; at the open of the mouth above and below, are four Beards or gristly strings hanging down; and a few red spots on its belly.

This Fish (or any other in this posture) is termed a **Salut, Spectant, Torqued.** Yet some say **Spectant, Naiant, Torqued.** G. such an one A. is born by *Salute*.

A small (or the lesser) **Silurus**, is blackish, with many spots all over the body; the beards but short; two large fins at the gill; it hath no tail fin, but almost from the throat to the end of the tail, is a fin sharp pointed in the fibres; in the middle of the back a small fin; the belly is whitish.

XXXIV. He beareth Argent, a **Lobster**, Gules. Born by the name of *Zekrab*. This Fish I have described elsewhere, to which I shall refer you; and only here give you the true shape, which in the other Plate was grossly mistaken, *chap.* 14. *numb.* 30. when it is alive, the higher side of it, both in the back, claws and tail, with the horns and small feet, are of a blackish or earthly colour; the undersides of the belly and claws are white, which as it mixeth or enters into the blackish part, doth it with a kind of spotting, some being white, others black; and so, till both be lost, and run faintly one into the other. Now this is to be noted, that what was white, or inclining to that colour, in the boiling doth still retain its whiteness, and goes rather whiter; but all that is of the dark earthly colour, turns to a pure Scarlet; where you shall see the sides of the **Lobsters** body, and of the great claws most curiously spotted with White and Vermilion after the manner of a Shadow, till the back end in Scarlet, and the Belly terminate in white.

A. 3 Lobsters erected G. born by *Krebser*.

XXXV. He beareth Sable, a **bunched** (or **crooked back**) **Globe Fish**, Argent. This is also called a **Camel back Globe Fish**, or **Lump Fish.** It is by the *Germans* called an **Hogerlumpe**, and a **Rucken-Schnottholfs.** They are much taken in the *Baltick* Ocean; the skin or hide is thick and hard, full of rough knobs and knots and thorns; the fins are red. See *chap.* 14. *numb.* 29.

S. 3 such A. born by *Globesfischer*.

An **Oblong Globe fish**, it is a long Fish, rough and bunchbacked, resembling it in all things save length of body. It is called by the *Germans* a **Snotolfi.**

A **Moon Dybe-Fish**, so called because it hath no finny tail, but being a direct round lump, hath in the extream hinder part, from the head the perfect figure of a **Crescant**, or **Half Moon**; in other things it is like the **Globe Fish**; this is also called a **Moon-fish**, and a **Sauwfisch**; and the *French* term it a **Molebout.** It hath two long skinny Fins, but slender, standing out on each side, with short round fins like ears a little below the eyes.

XXXVI. He beareth Vert, a **Sea Frog fish**, Or. This I have described elsewhere, *chap.* 14. *numb.* 55. therefore shall say no more of it in this place: This is a **Frog fish** at his full growth. The like to this was in *Sept.* 26. *Anno* 1680. taken in *Chester* River; it was about a yard and half long, being flat bellied like a **Flook**; all white; the back and top of the tail, and fins of a black earthy colour; the skin soft and smooth like the **Flook**; it had only two fins on the sides, that were visible, being curled or turned up at the edges; and two such like, but very small in the middle of the Belly, which cannot be noted except the Fish be turned up.

In the Sinister chief is engraved the Figure of a **Sea Louse**, *Pediculus Marinus*; the *Germans* call it a

Waſſerlauſz, and a **Meerlauſz**; becauſe they are found both in freſh and ſalt waters. It is covered with a joynted huſk, or ſhell; and is as large and broad as the black Fly, called a **Beetle**. It hath many Feet, and a big round Tail, and is of a blackiſh colour: of ſome it is termed a **Meerſel**.

XXXVII. He beareth Azure, a **Scaled Cramp-fiſh hauriant**, the Tail **imbowed**, Argent. I have in this fiſh taken notice of ſeveral kinds, which I have ſet down in *chap.* 16. *numb.* 38. Yet in this, and the following example: I obſerve a cortrariety both, in the form, and colouring, to thoſe of the common ſorts of **Cramp-fiſh**: as may eaſily be diſcovered if compared together. The **Ordinary Cramp-fiſh** having a Body diſtinct from the fins, theſe having Body and fins, as it were all one, no diſtinction of parts. Therefore *Geſner*, for to deſcribe theſe from the common **Cramp-fiſhes**, terms the one, a **Cramp-fiſh not ſpotted**; and the other, a **Venetian Cramp-fiſh**.

XXXVIII. He beareth Gules a **Venetian Cramp-fiſh hauriant**, the Tail **Embowed**, Or. This might from its reſemblance of the **Bull-head** (the ſpawn of a **Frog**) be fitly termed, the **Bull-head Cramp-fiſh**. This is born by the name of *Crampin* of *Venice*.

3 ſuch A. in a field B. is born by *Crump*, or *Cramp*.

XXXIX. He beareth Vert, a **ſharp Snouted Ray** in bend, the **Tail embowed**, Argent. This kind of **Ray** hath (I find by Authors) ſeveral denominations; one terms it, **Raia Laevis**, a **ſmooth Ray**, becauſe it hath no thorns or pricks, but on the Tail only where there is one Row: It is called, **Oxyrhynchus Raia**, a **Ray** with a **ſharp Snout**, becauſe its Noſe ſtands out like the beak of a Fowl. It is called **Bos**, and **Vacca Raia**; the **Ox** or **Cow Ray**: becauſe of its magnitude, for it exceeds all fiſh of that kind, in ſo much that he will ſeize on a Man ſwiming, and devoure him. The *Germans* in their Language term it, a **Groſſer Eſchroch**; a **pointed Ray**, a **Whale Ray**: and is born as afore blazoned by the name of *Wallray*, or *Whaleray*.

XL. He beareth Sable, a **ſmooth Oculated Ray**, Or. Born by *Reavand*. This **Ray** is called ſo from the ſpots which are on each ſide of it on the griſtly fins, reſembling Eyes: ſet about and all over the Body with ſmall diſperſed and obſcure ſpots, on a duſky or dark brown ground. The Pupil of the Eyes are blew, or ſky colour, the interiout Iris or circle next it, is back: and the exteriour circle is yellow. The *Germans* call this a **Glatter Spiegelroch**, or an **Augeroch**.

A **Starred Ray**, and of ſome termed, the **Starred rough** and **ſharp Ray**; for the fins and body is adorned with painted Stars; and from the Head, to the fin of the Tail, the Back is ſet with crooked thorns. This is called a **Sternroch**.

A **Rough**, or **thorny oculated Ray**: in this the crooked thorns or pricks differs from the other. In that the Tail is ſet full, and in no order, and ſo is the Back, but the foreſaid hath only but one row down. Some of the kind have the pricks ſet in the middle of ſpots, others upon the Heads of round buttons.

[ ]

There is another kind of **Starred**, and **rough pricked Ray**, which hath three rows of hooks on the Tail, *viz.* the top, and each ſide; with many painted Stars, on the fins and body; the whole Body, and Griſtly fins being covered with a rough ſharp skin, upon which a Man (the contrary way) cannot ſtroak his hand, but the pins will run into it. Of this kind of **Ray** there are two ſorts, one have the Body of the Stars white, and the circle about, black: the other have the Stars white: both have their whole Bodys horridly aculeous, or prickly: and theſe the *Netherlands* call, **Rauchet Sternroch**.

A **Nailed**, or **Studded Ray**: which the Latin terms, *Raia Clauata*, a **Ray garniſhed**, or beſet with **Nails**. The Body having round ſtuds, each adorned with a crooked Nail, bending backwards to the Tail. Theſe kind the *Germans* call, **Nagelroch**: of old it was termed, the **Eagle Ray**. The colour of the higher or Back parts is inclining to a black, the hinder part of of the Body beſet with many ſharp pointed and crooked thorns, in boſſes; the forepart towards the Head, only here, and there, ſet one. The fins have each a row of Iron like Nailes ſet upright upon them. The other ſpecies of this **Nailed Ray**, differs from this. In that it hath an acute Snout, and the pricks it wanteth; It is of an aſh colour, and for Teeth it hath ſharp rigged Jaws. See more of the **Ray-fiſh** *chap.* 14 *numb.* 28.

XLI. He beareth Argent, a **Skate** (or **Skeat**) **hauriant**, the **Tail embowed**, and **elevated**, as high as the Head, proper. This is a great long hard, and rough skinned fiſh, like the **Ray**. The *French* call it, the **Sea-Angle**, from its ſimilitude of a **Painted-Angle** with its Wings expenſed; The *Germans* call it an **Engel-fiſh**, and alſo a **Huyghe**. It is named in Latin *Squatus*, and *Squatina*; perhaps from *Squalor*, its filthyneſs and roughneſs of the ſkin: which is of a dark Umber colour, inclining to black; with a fin of crooked ſharp thorny bones down the Back, to the end of the Tail.

A. the like S. a chief B. is born by *Skatell*.

XLII. He beareth Argent, a **Sow-hound-fiſh**, proper. Born by *Sowbach*. So it is called, from its reſemblance of a **Dog**, and its fatneſs like to a **Swine**: though moſt term it a **Dog-fiſh**. It hath a ſmall Head, great Eyes; wide Mouth, rough, ſharp and thick skinned. The *Germans* call it a **Hound-fiſh**. It is of an Umber colour, or ſomwhat more darker and earthy, full of blackiſh ſmall ſpots, diſperſedly ſet all over the Body and fins; which are lobs of fleſhy skins, as is the Body. This is born by the name of *Soundler*.

A **Thorn-hound**; is the ſame in ſhape, only it hath two thorns, or ſtreight pricks ſtanding upright on the middle of the Back, at a diſtance one from the other. A. 3 ſuch S. born by *Kardiffe*.

A **For-fiſh**, or a **Sea-For-fiſh**, is of a **Whale** kind: it hath a round thick groſſe Body, a little Mouth under the Snout; ſharp Teeth, the top part of the Tail fin is longer then the whole Body: for which cauſe it is termed a **Sea-For**, or a **Sea-For-fiſh**. It is aſh coloured on the Back, and white on the Belly.

A **Smooth Dog-fiſh**; or as the *Germans* call it, a **Klein-hundfiſch**: having a ſmooth and gentle skin. It is a long and ſlender fiſh, having three fins under the Belly, and two on the Back, the Tail fin, is (as it were) cut

half off on the lower side, the top part of the said fin, stretcheth out to a great length, and is smooth at the higher side, and rugged under, ending in a point. All other Dog, or Hound, fishes, are rough and thorny beneath; which hath a naked skin, of the colour of a Stock Dove, or Wood-Culver, on the Back; and white on the Belly.

A Blue-hound, or Dog-fish: called in Latin *Galeus Glaucus*. It is usually at full growth, four or five cubits long: It differs in nothing from the Smooth-Dog-fish but in the colour, which is a bright blew, or Azure colour. It hath a little Mouth, lying much under the higher brow, with sharp Teeth.

A Mallet-Dog-fish; so called from the uglines of the Head, which is set cross way over the Body, as the head of a Mallet, or handle of a Spade. It is of the *Germans* called, a Fud, or a Schlegel, or a Schlegel-hund. The Eyes are at the corners of the out side of the Head, and the Mouth is under the Head at the Neck: all the Body in shape and proportion, answerable to the Dog-fish, see *chap. 10. numb.* 100.

A Creolvnet Dog-fish: It is the most ravenous, and the greatest kind of Dog-fish, it is called in Latin, *Canis Carcharias*, and *Lamia Piscis*: It grows to a great stature, according to which it hath several denominations as the *Germans* term it, for if it be small, they call it, a Fraß or a Fraßhund: when large an Arehund, or a Grosser Hund-fisch, or a Whale-hound. It is said that this fish hath the sharpest rough Lide, and strongest teeth of all other fish.

A short Snouted, or blunt nosed Hound-fish; called also a Blood-hound-fish, from the softness of the Body: It hath three fins on the Belly, one on the Back, and one near the Tail: the Tail fin parts in the lower side, as in other Dog-fish, the Mouth opens almost in the Throat.

XLIII. He beareth Argent, a Crab-fish, (or a Sea Crab) erected, proper. Born by *Crab*. These fish are covered with smooth, bare, and slippery shells; they are some long, others broad, and others round; but of what form soever they be, generally the fore-part is narrower then the posterior part. In all these things and many more, as colours, length of Feet, seting of the Eyes, *&c.* manner of going, as forwards, backwards, sidewards *&c.* which shew a manifest difference, and that there is many kinds of them: yet in general they all agree in this, in having eight Feet set altogether, besides the two Cleys, or foremost Feet, which are also called the Pincers, or long Feet; horns thin and slender, little and short. The Head not severed or distinct from the Body, but the Head and Body (in all Crabs) is in one paunch, or Belly: which Head and Eyes, we usually call the Tail, by reason they are seen to go forward, transverse, and sideways; and in fear going backwards with as much celerity, as when they went any other way.

A Bear-Crab-fish: It is so named, not from the form, but the actions and manners of the Bear, in going side-ways, and backwards: this is of the kind of a Sea-Onion, for in form it resembles the head of a Garlick, or the shape of a Chestnut furrowed: the two forked Feet, or pincers, are one much longer then the other, and all the Feet, are a degree from them, shorter then the next about it.

A Pungar, or Pungere is a kind of Crab-fish with a Body of a Heart form; the Eyes and Horns standing in the cavity, or hollowness of the heart; which is again scalloped about after the manner of an Infant, the Feet and Cleys stand on the side, it is of the colour of a red haired Man; freckled and spotted with a deeper brown. It is in Latin called a *Pagurus*, of which kind of Heart Crab-fish there is two other species, one more rounder then a heart, and is bigger, and of a more dusky brown; and this is in Latin called *Maia*, being the largest of all Crabs, to which others are no more to compared then a Child to the Mother; or the Infant to the Midwife. The other is more four square, and less, of a more dilute, and paler colour, with green; and this is called in Latin *Ponessa*. These Pungar Crab-fish have generally, all hairy Feet, and small Cleyes.

A. 3 Crabs erected S. born by *Allym*, or *Aullym*.
A. a fesse between 3 such G. born by *Swinback*.
A. 3 such G born by *Alvanston*.

XLIV. He beareth Or, a Monstrous Sea-Swine, Azure. Such a Swine as this was taken in the *Isle of Thule*, in the North; in the Year 1538. It was of an incredible magnitude (as *Olaus magnus* Writeth) seventy two Foot long, and fourteen Foot high; seven Foot between the Eyes, the Head like a Swine, with two crooked horns in form of a Creslaut, standing on his Back; the Body and Tail full of large scales, and on the sides between the scales, are three Eyes set in triangle, the Feet like Dragons Feet. The *Germans* call it, Herill, and a Schweynwal: or Swine-Whale. See *chap.* 16. *numb.* 23.

XLV. He beareth Azure, a Bartwall (or Bearded Whale) Argent. This is by some termed a Scolopendra Cetacea; a Monstrous Whale with many Feet; It hath a long brittled beard, on both mandables; with great shining Eyes, with several radicated horns, set about his Neck. The Head is great, but the posterior are but small, in estimation of it.

XLVI. He beareth Sable, in the sinister base, the Head of a Sea Monoceros Argent, horned Or. This is also of others termed, a Sea-Unicorn, & the Whale Monoceros.

A Hair-Whale; which *Gesner* names, an Hairwall from its being covered with long hair; the Head only is delineated, which is like an Hound.

A Maned Whale, this is a Monstrous Whale (set down by *Olanus Magnus*) in the *Northren Region*, under *Greenland*; It hath a humane Face, with a brisly beard from the Chin, streight down, like thorns or pricks, with a Mane from the top of the Head, down the Neck, like a Horse.

A Cow of the Sea, or a Sea Cow: and of some the Whale Cow; it hath the Head, and Horns of a Cow: with a long beard under its Chin, as *Olanus* set it forth in his Table of the *Northren Ocean*.

In the chief of this quarter, I do present you with the form of the Sea Scolopendre, it is a reddish long worm, with many Legs; It is like the Earth Scolopendra, which we call a Hundred feet; but this of the Sea is much

much bigger, and longer, and hath also a number more Feet, both at the Head and Tail: It can contract, and draw it self up either shorter, and stretcheth it self out longer, at pleasure.

The greater **Sea Scolopendre**, is about a cubite long, and is of a whitish colour. They will creep into the **Sea Lizards** belly, and live there without hurt. The Germans call these Worms, **Meernasseln, Rotlache,** or **Tunne-Worm.**

XLVII. He beareth Argent, a **Sea Rhinoceros,** Gules: **spotted** and **finned,** Or. It hath a **Dragon** like fin, on the Crown of the Head; a sharp Nose, and Teeth, with a horn at the end of the Nose, and an acute, or sharp pointed bunch on its Back. It is termed, a **Monstrous Sea Rhinoceros**; and the **Whale-Rhinoceros**; and of the *Germans*, a **Nasswal,** and a **Spitzwal**; that is, the **Nosewhale,** and the **Spike,** or **horn-Whale.**

XLVIII. He beareth Azure, a **Monstrous Satyre of the Sea** (or a **Sea Satyre of Nilus**) proper. This kind of Sea monster hath several denominations, to distinguish it from the **Triton,** mentioned *chap.* 16. *numb.* 1. and from the **Satyre-fish** spoken off, *chap.* 16. *numb.* 19. and from the **Sea Pan,** or **Divell fish,** described *ibid. numb.* 39. when it hath no Feet.

Now this having Feet joyned to the fish part makes it both unnatural, and Monstrous; therefore it is by such Authors (as as have written of it) termed by the name of a **Monster Satyre-fish,** & a **Satyre fish with Feet.** *Gesner* expresses it thus, **Monstrum Marinum,** a **Meerwurder, a Sea Monster, a Wonder of the Sea**; but yet gives it no name, to which may fitly be adder, the term (**Satyre**) and that more properly then a **Triton,** or a **Sea Man,** or a **Man-fish**: by reason the **Satyre** is ever drawn with (as he hath long) **Horse-like Eears.** *Pareus* calls it *Monstri marini humana facie effigies*; the shape or figure of a **Sea Monster,** with a **humane Face**; but it is best Englished (with a **Satyres Face**) for the Face is so. Therefore as it is Monstrous, and prodigious being more then Natures first gift, it is best termed a **Monstrous Satyre Fish,** or a **Prodigious Sea Satyre,** *&c.* This may fitly be born of him whose name is monstrous, filthy, and stinketh in the Nostrils of the People.

XLIX. He beareth Argent, a **Rosmarus** (or a **Rosmare Whale**) proper. It is termed by the *Germans*, and *Norwegians*, a **Rusor**: and a **Rostinger,** and a **Worzbey**: the *French* call it a **Rohart.** It is of the **Sea Elephant** species, and far greater then the **Land Elephant.** It hath the Head of an **Ore,** the hide rough and hairy; whose pili hairs, like Reeds or stalks of corn, in grosseness, flow largly about him: for which cause he is of *Albertus magnus*, termed the **Hirsuta Cetenea,** the **Painer Worm Whale**: (which Worm is so covered with a rough stragling hair) It hath two great, and long Teeth growing from it under Jaw. It is of some termed, the **Ocean Sea Horse,** *Hippotamus Oceanus*: and the **Ocean Whale Elephant,** or **Whale Ox,** or **Boar.**

L. Here I present you with the shape of an **Asilus Marinus,** or **Sea Gadbee**: It is a kind of fly that creeps in the Water, and infecteth certain Fishes: It is white of colour; and said that the greatest of Fishes are made mad and ragious, with it stinging, and biting.

LI. He beareth Gules, a **Goat fish Hauriant,** with its **Tail endowed,** and **erected,** Argent: **Horned, Hooked** and **Finned,** Or. I say **hauriant,** to signifie the rising or springing up of the **Goatish part**; else it might be mistaken in the posture, and have been supposed to be on its Belly and Feet, as those mentioned *chap.* 16. *numb.* 5. 10. 12. Some term this a **Goat fish, Springing** or **Mounting,** with the **Tail erected.** This is born by the name of *Meergotten.*

LII. He beareth Vert, an **Orbon fish,** Or. Born by *Orbon* or *Orban.* It is a fish that exceeds the **Crocodile,** and lives both in the Water, and on the Earth: It is a terrible Creature, having Feet like a **Dragon,** and scaled on the Body & Belly, like as we draw the scales of a **Dragons.** This is born by the name of *Don Argoll* a *Venetian*; the Field being Gules.

LIII. He beareth Azure a **Sea Urchen** (or **Hedg-hog**) **fish,** Or. It is a fish that fears not to encounter with any fish: and is a kind contrary to all, having a **Swines head,** with broad serrated Ears; and all the Body covered over with sharp pricks, like the **Hedg-hog,** with a fin at the Tail; and one on the Back, near the Tail of a fleshy or skinny substance. This is born by the name of *Urchenperg.*

B. 3 such erected A. born by *Alstanston.*
G. 3 such in pale A. born by *Astonne.*

LIV He beareth Gules, a **Bishop fish** (or a **Fish** like, or in the **habite of a Bishop**) Argent. Such a shape of a fish, or rather Monster, was seen in *Polonia* in the Year, 1531. *Gesner* calls it, the **Sea wonder** in *Poland.* The Hands and Breast was covered with scales.

LV. He beareth Vert, a **Lamb triping,** having **three Heads,** the middle **Gardant** (or at gaze) and the third **regardant** (or looking backwards) Argent, hooses Or. Born by *Triput.* This is a Monster in nature, of such there might be whole Volumes written, (if it were noted by us, what varieties of procreations and conceptions: and in them mention, the deformities, duplicitie of members, and conjunctions of kinds) there have within these few centuries of Years happened: but of such Monsters I shall say no more, but refer the Reader to such who have spent their time in writing of such things, and conclude with *Albertus Magnus*, that great Astrologer, and Astronomer: that such births are not so much from the generation of contrary species, as from the influence and operations of the Stars, at such conceptions.

LVI. He beareth Argent, three **Eeles** their **Heads in point in fesse, torqued in triangle,** Sable Others blazon this Coat; **three Eeles in triangle, Heads in point, flected, and reflected.** Born by the name of *Stroud.*

B. the like A. born by *Van Hanfstengel* of *Carinthia.*

LVII. He beareth Vert, three **Trouts in triangle, conjoyned under one Head,** Argent. And some will say, under **one Head in fesse:** which must be presupposed to be in fesse, for in triagle they can be joyned no where else. Others a **Trout** with **three Bodies conjoyned in triangle, under one Head.** Born by the name of *Tritrot.*

B. the like A. by *Van Kreckwitz.*

G. 3 Trouts in triangle Tailes in point A. born by *Van Kippenheim* of *Alsatia.*

LVIII. He beareth Azure, three **Sole Fishers in triangle conjoyned** at their **Tails,** Or. Born by the name of *Soletry.*

G. the like O. born by *Van Kippenheim* of *Alsatia.*

G 3 Fish so conjoyned O. Heads S. born by *Bernbach.*

LIX. He beareth Or, a **Skelleton** of an **Hipocampus** (or a **Sea Horse**) Azure. This is taken so by many, but in truth it is an **Insect Vermine** of the Sea, whose foreparts are somthing like a **Horse,** and hinder parts bend in joynts, having many knotty or nappy incisures, by means whereof he is able to turn, and wind his Tail round inward. It is of some called the **Sea Salamander,** the **Sea Dragon,** a **Sea Aspbe.** The *Germans* call it a **Seerossle**; but the proper name for it in English is an **Hipotamus insect,** or **Sea Horse worm.** See the figure of this as I took it from the Worm it self, *chap.* 16. *numb.* 47.

In the base of this quarter, is the figure of the **Sea Leech,** this lives in Salt Waters, as the other mentioned *numb.* 30. doth in the fresh; it is (as some write) seven cubits long, and hath gills perforated or bored through the insect skin, by which it takes its breath; the mouth is round like a **Lampreys.**

LX. He beareth Gules, a **Sittard,** Argent. This is a Fish of the **Flook** kind, flat in the body, with back and belly finned almost from head to tail; the head is round and short, the end of the Snout to the extent of the mouth of the higher mandable turned **Swine** like, it hath large round white eyes, with a black pupil. The Fish is very red or ruddy, a blood red. The *Italians* call it a **Pecten,** or **Comb-fish.** This is born by the name of *Sittardale.*

LXI. He beareth Azure, a **Venetian Worm-fish,** proper. It is called in *Latine,* the *Orthra-gorisous*; it is a Species of the **Worm Fish,** mentioned *numb.* 35. but that it hath no Fins; the skin is smooth without any scales or incision lines; the mouth is gathered into a close round hole, with a kind of brim about it, open and wide eyes, ample and prominent more than usually; the gills close, covered with a fleshy Fin: It hath three round skinny fins behind, of 9 or 10 inches in length (standing out like the husk of a flower) it hath a hard bunch or swelling in its forehead, the jaws are armed with solid teeth of Bone; in magnitude it exceeds the **Whale** called **Belua,** or **Balena.**

LXII. He beareth Argent, the **Shell** of a **Nautilus** (or **Nautick Shell,**) Gules. This is by the *Germans* called a **Farkuttle,** or **Schiffkuttel,** and of some the **Oval like Pourcontrel,** or many feet; because when it opens, it sends forth several long knobbed feet like **Divers Tails**; the Shell is almost like the form of a Boat, it Swims with its Belly upwards, and is of a Gold colour naturally.

LXIII. He beareth Vert, a **Sea Pipe,** Or. 3 such in Pale, is born by *Piper.* This is by several Authors called by diverse names, as a **Dentale,** or **Shell Trumpet,** from its similitude to a Tooth; a **Sea Horn,** the *Germans* a **Sea Roxle.** It may be well called in English **Tritons Trumpet,** who is Trumpeter to *Neptune,* God of the Sea; or **Neptunes Hunters Horn.** It is of a white colour naturally; lined long ways with one or two lines transverse at an equal distance; the substance is very hard, strong and flinty, as in other shells; between the insect lines, clefts or gashes, like Vermine ly lurking, and do hide themselves.

In the Sinister corner of this quarter I have given you the true form of a **Water Skipper,** or **Water Fly,** because the body is like a **Fly** with a cut wast, or parting in the middle, it is covered with a hard husk or cod, and the feet stand Salterwise; it is of an earthy colour.

LXIV. He beareth Sable, a **Zinde** (or **Zindel** or **Zingel,**) proper; it is termed in Latine *Asper Danubii,* which we cannot better English than an **Aspe** of the River *Danubius,* or *Ister*; because its head and body is rough, rugged and hard; and also shaped in the head like to it. It is covered with scales, and hath a parted Fin from the Breech to the Head, of a skinny substance, with the like fin at each gill; the colour is fuscous, inclining to a red; others have distinct intervals, with many black spots on the back oblique; it hath a hard tail, which can scarcely be cut about.

LXV. He beareth Azure, a **Nagmaul Fish,** Argent; of the *Germans* it is called a **Schill**; it is a kind of **Globe** or **Orbe Fish,** scaled on the back; having three rows or orders of fins, one down the back, one on each side; all consisting of three or four Fins. They are taken in the Lake of *Bavaria,* and the River *Danubius.*

LXVI. He beareth Gules, an **Houperou Fish,** Or. In *America* there is found a Fish of a huge length, which devoureth all other Fish (one little Fish excepted, called a **Cyprinus,** a **Carpe** or **Bream,** which accompanies him, and in whose tuition and keeping, he secures himself from the violence of all other devouring Fishes) he is so ravenous, as if he were of the terrible Family of the **Lion** or **Wolf:** The Natives in their Language call it a **Houperou,** from whence the Latine calls it *Huperus.* It hath a short head and nose; two knots or bunches on its crown like two round ears, two Wattles like a **Cock,** two double Fins, at an equal distance in the Belly

Belly; a sharp pointed long fin on the middle of the back; the last sharp point extending behind its tail; the body all over rough, large, and open scaled; the tail streight not forked.

There is another Species of this **Huperus**, which is also termed **Mastopogon**, and **Egomastus**, which hath a head like a **Salmon**, and also the body, with an incision line down the sides; tail and skin like **Salmon**; having two large thorny fins at the gills; the like from the navel to the tail; and from the hinder part of the neck almost to the tail; but what colours these are, my Authors mention not.

LXVII. He beareth Argent, a **Lizard Fish**, or the **Sea Lizard fish**, proper. This is called the **Lizard fish**, from the similitude it hath in its mouth and whole head to the **Land Lizard**, it is of a greenish colour, pleasant to behold; the body is full of scales, a fin at each gill, and two long jagged fins on each side the body, the back and belly none; the tail forked; it is called by the *Germans* a **Frombder Sea fish**; the Latine *Lacertus Peregrinus*, the **Stranger** or **Pilgrim Lizard**, the **Peregrine Lizard fish** of the Red Sea. 3 such in Pale is born by *Lizcarck*.

LXVIII. He beareth Argent, a **Golden head fish**, proper. Born by *Goldhead*. This is a Fish that is black of colour, with a head shining like Gold; it is called in Latine *Corvicius*, from the colour of the **Conar**, or **Raven**. The *Low Country Men* call it a **Groskopff**, a **Rapplin**, or a **Rotlachter**. It hath a short nose, two fins at the gills, two at a distance on the back, and two on the belly; the tail but a little forked.

There is another kind of these Fish that are white and black; and a third Species that are lesser Fish, and of a reddish, or inclining to a red colour.

A **Cephalus** is shaped and finned like the **Golden head**, except the Nose which is longer, and the first fin on the back thorned, and a double fin next the throat.

*

TO

TO THE

Ever Loyal, and most Worthily Honored

THOMAS CHOLMONDELEY, of *Vale-Royal*, Esq;

AND TO

Francis Cholmondeley, his Virtuous and Loving Brother.

NOble Worthies of our County, being your selves so great Lovers of Reading and Learning, makes me out of fear or doubt, but that amongst the rest of your Books, this may find a place in your Library, and not be undervalued, therefore presents the same to your consideration, which after perusal and kind acceptance; it shall abundantly satisfy him that is Devoted to your Service, and desires to remain as ever

Your Devoted Servant

Randle Holme.

CHAP. XVI.

1. HAving in the former Plates given you a brief description of most known Fishes, with their several species or kinds; it now remains that I give examples of **Monstrous** and less known Fish, such as are very rarely seen, and as little used in Arms: Yet for History sake, and because they have never before (as I could heir of) been described in *English*; I am the more willing to give a brief account of them; and what is used in Coats, I shall shew it.

I. He beareth Azure, a **Mere-man** (or a **Man-marine**, or a **Man fish**) holding a Sword in his right hand, and the left upon his side; with an Helmet (or an Head-peece) on his head, all proper. If you desire to have the particulars of the Fish, and the other Charges named, then Blazon it thus; Azure a **Mere-man** to the navel proper, the **fish part** Argent, **crined** and **finned**, Or, holding a **Sword** in his right hand, of the third; Hilt, Cross and Pomell of the fourth; with a **Head peece** or **Vozion** on his head, Gules. This is by *Pliny* and others termed a **Triton**, or **Sea Goblin**, or a **Sea Man**, and that there were certainly such Sea Creatures he assures us, and that they are of the same form and shape as those commonly Drawn and Painted for **Tritons** or **Mare-men**, *viz.* the upper parts from the bottom of the Belly like Men, and the lower part Fish.

☞ You need not in Blazoning mention the bowing or turning of the tail, either in the **Mere-man**, or **Mere-maid**, for they are ever born bending, or **bowed** or **turned**, or **entwrapped**, according to the pleasure of the Work-man.

A Perfect **Sea Man scaled**, was several times seen, and observed to come aboard the Ships on the Coast of *Spain*, near to *Gades*. And in the year 1180. near *Orford* in *Suffolk* there was a Fish taken in the perfect shape of a **Man**, which was kept in the Castle of *Orford* above half

1
2
3
5
6
7
8
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47

half a year, but at last (not being carefully looked to) he stole to the Sea, and was never seen after; he never spake, but would eat any meat that was given him, especially raw Fish, when he had squeezed out the Juice; he was often had to the Church, but never shewed any sign of Adoration.

Triton is by the Poets said to be the Son of *Neptune*, and the Nymph *Salacia*; that is the Son of Air, Water, and Earth: He was a **Man** to the middle, a **Dolphin** below, his fore-feet like **Horse-feet**, and had two circled tails. This Monster (saith *Lycophron*,) did overturn and drown many, and therefore was Superstitiously Worshipped as a God of the Sea.

This is the Supporter of the Worshipful Company of *Fishmongers*.

The like Crowned, holding a Trident S. is the Supporter of the Earl of *Sandwich*.

II. He beareth Vert, a **Mermaide**, proper, holding a **Mirror**, in her right hand, and a **Comb** in her left, Or. The **Mermaid** is generally made holding a **Looking Glass** and **Comb**, yet in Arms I have seen them born holding of **Fish**, of a **Ship**, of **Branches**, of **Flowers**, and the like, which ought to be mentioned; and some do bear the **Mermaid** alone, and of one entire colour, without holding of any thing. The **Mermaid** is also termed a **Syren**, or **Nereide**, it being no Fable (as *Pliny* saith) that goes of them, for look how Painters Draw them, so they are indeed, only their body is rough and scaled all over, even in those parts wherein they resemble a **Woman**. There are three sorts of **Mermen** and **Mermaids**, these are the first, the second have Wings instead of Arms, as *numb.* 17. 19. and the other have feet coming out on either side under the belly, as *numb.* 20. but the two latter are held to be spurious and monstrous, having such things more than Nature hath at first allowed them. See *chap.* 15. *numb.* 48.

Echidna, the Mother of *Chimera*, is by the Poets feigned to have from the Navel upwards the shape of a **Virgin**, and downwards of a **Serpent**, or **Viper**.

The Mermaid is the Crest of *Marbury*, of *Mare*, in *Cheshire*; also the crest of *Wallopp*.

S. a Mermaid to the Sinister, the tail elevated A. by *Zelin*.

III. He beareth Argent, out of a **Coronett**, Gules, a **demy Woman**, Face proper, **cloathed** Azure, **crowned** and **crined**, Or; with **fish tails** in place of Arms or Hands, of the second. Or else Blazon it thus, out of a Crown, a **demy Negro**, or **Blackmore**, proper, clothed Azure, crowned and girded with Arms and Hands from the Elbows **converted** (or **metamorphised**, or turned) into the hinder parts of a **Salmon**, Or. This is born by *Wasserhagen*.

Out of a Coronet a demy Woman crowned O. clothed G. her Arms converted into 2 Fishes O. is the crest of *Mumpelgart* and *Phirdt*.

A demy Woman crowned, clothed G. with Stags horns for Arms A. on each tip or point a Rose G. is the crest of *Thierstein*.

Out of a Crown a demy Boy cloathed B. on the top of his head a Plume of Feathers B. A. G. his Arms converted into Fish hooks the Beards reversed A. is the crest of *Van Angelloch*.

An old Man to the middle clothed O. turned down A. cap B. turned up A. the Arms turned into Goats horns, wreathed G. and A. is the crest of *Van Scharnsleten*.

A demy Boy proper, clothes per Fesse S. and O. his temples adorned with a Garland of Roses G. and Arms Stags horns A. is the crest of *Bavman*.

A demy Woman proper clothed V. hair flotant O. Arms converted into Elephants Snouts, Barry A. and V. is the crest of *Fleckenstein*.

A demy Boy out of a Crown clothed G. Arms turned to Bulls horns A. is the Crest of *Van Stafsenberg*.

The Chronicle of *Belgia* makes mention of a **Sea Monster Woman**, taken in *Holland* in the year 1402, and was brought to *Harlaem*; she was tamed and taught to Spin, and lived 15 years after.

IV. He beareth Azure, a **Mermaid**, proper, **double tailed contrary Imboned**, Argent; supporting, or the Arms extended to them, **fins**, Or, **crined** Sable. Else thus, he beareth Gules, a Mermaid double tailed, holding of them up, proper, crined and finned Or. Born by the name of *Wasser Schwenden* of *Swabidia*.

Such a Mermaid A. is the crest of *Zelin* of *Austria*.

On a Crown the like crowned G. in a field per Fesse B. and A. is the coat and crest of *Ritter*.

G. the same proper tails B. crowned and finned O. born by *Fenden*.

The same, tails erected, crowned, holding a Muller of six points O. the left on its side, is the Crest of the Lord of *Colona van Fels*.

V. He beareth Argent, a **Sea Horse Fish**, (or an **Hippotame**, or **Mare-horse**, a **Water Horse fish**, Azure, **finned** and **tusked**, Or. This is the forepart of a **Horse**, and the hinder of a **Fish**, which in Heraldry is ever turned up after this manner, which needs no mentioning in these kind of Water Creatures, but if they be otherwise, term them according as in the examples given, *chap.* 9. *numb.* 88. *sect.* 9. and in this chapter *numb.* 10, 11, 12, 13. This is the Crest of *Waterman*.

B. a Cheveron imbattled on the top O. between 3 such A. born by *Tucker*.

B. a Cheveron O. between three such A. is also born by *Tuckers*.

On a Sea Horse Fish, a King in Armour sounding of an Horn, all proper, Bridle G. and is the Crest of *Cargrave*.

This is of some termed a Sea Horse Naiant; but that cannot be, except the tail were extended, as *numb.* 10 also Antiquity hath given this the name of a Sea Horse, which I call a **Sea-Horse-fish**, and that for good reason, which is to distinguish it from the whole **Sea-Horse** which hath four feet, as I have described such creatures of the Sea, *numb.* 31.

In

In the chief is the figure of an **Umbilicus** or **Navel shell**; it is a kind of **writhen cockle**, or **shell fish wrinkled** and turned in on the top like a Navel; of which there is two sorts, the lesser **navel shell** is very slender, a little bigger than a Pease or Pulse, some less than a Pease, pointed below and spongy (as if it were) set with grains of red Coral after the manner of a rough cast Wall.

The greater **Navel shell** is admirable, being naturally of all coloured Coralls, the grains or tuberous knots being black, red and white curiously mixed. It is round like an **Egg** at the top, and sharp at bottom.

VI. He beareth Gules, a **Sea Horse head couped**, Argent. All Sea Creatures that are partly **Flesh**, partly **Fish**, or partaking of two sorts of Animals in contrary Elements Land and Water, it is to be noted that, ☞ We do in Heraldry generally make the Land Animal part, partake of something also of the Water, by making the feet generally like **Ducks** feet, and a **Dolphin** like Fin from the Crown of the head down the neck; and all along the back of the **fish** part to the tail end; yet *Gesner*, in his description of the **Hippopotamus**, or the **Sea-Horse**, draws him with the **Mane** and **Topping** of a **Horse**.

3 such is the Coat Armour of *Horsling*.

B. a cheveron between three such O. born by *Hussenpale*.

VII. He beareth Argent, a **demy Sea Wolf couped**, Azure, **Fins**, Or. It is of some termed a **Sea Lupe saliant**, which is a needless term, by reason all such demy Sea Animals, which have their Fishy part either **couped** or **erazed** from them, are ever set in this posture, **erected**, **upright**, These Creatures were in former times termed **Dragon-wolves**, **Dragon-horses**, **Dragon Bears**, &c. This is the crest or cognizance of *Wasserlupel*.

B. 3 such A. finned O. born by *Ridgeway*.

G. one O. is the crest of *Sawlfe*.

VIII. He beareth Argent, a **demy Sea Bear erazed**, Sable; **fins** and **feet**, Or. These kind of Sea Creatures, which are Drawn from the Land Creatures, and (as it were) have a dependance on both kinds, are (as I have said before) delineated after this form, *viz.*

☞ The half of the **Land Beast**, and the other half of the **Dolphin** kind, with a fin from the top or back of the head, down all along the back, and the feet whole like a **Swan** to swim withall. They are called also **Water Bears**, when they are the true shape and figure of the Sea Water, or Ocean Creatures; but these aforesaid being only Devices and Fictions of Men; see how to distinguish them according to their kinds, *numb* 9, 10, 31. This is born by the name of *Wasserfeyn*.

G. 3 such A. born by *Merrill*.

IX. He beareth Azure, a **demy Boar-fish**, or **Hog fish**, Argent; **finned**, **tusked**, (or **tushed**, and **hooked**, Or.

☞ This I do not term as the others afore, a **Sea Hog**, or a **Sea Boar**, but a **Boar** or **Hog-fish**; the reason is, because this is directly the half of a Boar, with Boars feet, whereas them of the Sea have feet like a **Swan** to swim withall, which makes them absolute Sea Creatures; but this being not properly of the Sea, but (as it were) both of the Sea and of the Land, is therefore termed a **Boar-fish**, as being half the one and half the other. In like manner the Artist must be careful to observe this distinction in the foregoing Creatures; for there is a great difference between a **Sea-Horse** and a **Horse-fish**, a **Sea Wolf** and a **Wolf-fish**, a **Sea Dog**, and a **Dog-fish**, (and yet by most Heralds but little observed) and so of the rest of those kinds; for the first have feet to Swim withall like **Duck** feet; and the latter (as I said) the direct half of the Creature with its own proper feet; yet in both kinds or sorts of them, I have observed that Antiquity hath given **Fins** to both alike down the middle of the neck, and back. Some have termed these Amphibious Creatures by the names of an **Horse-Dolphin**, a **Wolf-Dolphin**, a **Dog-Dolphin**, because the Fish part represents the tail of the **Dolphin**, as we draw it in Heraldry; see *numb.* 31. This is the Crest of *Bareson*, or *Borston*.

B. 3 such O. is born by *Hilditch*.

X. He beareth Sable, a **Dog-fish Naiant**, Argent. This is of some termed a **Dog-fish** with its **tail extended**, (or **stretched**, or **thrust out** at length): which I term **Naiant**, being the Fish part with the feet stretched out, is in a Swimming posture. This is another example of half a **Land**, and half a **Water Creature**, which being joined together, makes an Animal of both kinds, which cannot be termed a **Sea Dog**, by the reason aforesaid in the last and foregoing example. This is also of old Blazoned a **Fish** with a **Dogs head**, and **short feet**. Sometimes these Creature are born, one part or half, of one colour, & the other half of another; see *numb.* 31. This is born by the name of *Watling*.

G. 3 such in Pale O. tails A. Finned O. born by *Kenton*.

B 3 such A. born by *Bechton*.

In this quarter also, for want of room elsewhere I have placed a young tailed Frog; having now (as it were) the feet and legs just sprung out of its sides, and is grown from its first term in age, a **Bull head**, to a **Frog tail**, see *chap.* 10. *numb.* 7, 8. G. 3 Frog tails erected O. is born by *Barthomley*, or *Bartomley*.

XI. He beareth Vert, a **Sea Bull**, Argent, the **Tail targant**, Or. Born by the name of *Tauraile*, alias *Taurell*.

B. the like O. is born by the name of *Blaken*, or *Blaknall*.

XII. He beareth Sable, an **Hound-fish**, with the **Tail Erected** and **Imbowed**, Argent. By the name of *Hundley*.

B. the like A. Finned O. born by *Hopefengen*.

A. the Dog part S. and the Fish part B. finned O. born the name of *Linsteele*.

XIII. He beareth Gules, a **Cat fish**, Or. the **Tail detected imbowed**, Argent. As these Tails of the fish

fish bend; so you must give them the same terms, when you observe them so to be in other sea water Creatures, see chap. 18. numb. 112. This is born by the name of *Caterling*.

B. 3 such A. fined O. is born by *Purpach*.

XIV. He beareth Azure, a **Demy sea Hound** (or **sea Talbot**) Argent: tusked and fined, Or. It is termed also a **Water Talbot**. In the great seas by the Isle of *Taprabones*, there are often seen many fishes which have heads like to **Lions, Unicorns, Panthers, Rams,** and other such like land Beasts: which to give examples of all were endless, and of no great effect: these being sufficient to instruct the ingenious how to term such, when he finds them in Coats of Arms, or in Histories. This is the Crest of *Talbotter*. G. the like O. is the Coat of *Houndshall*.

☞ To these kind of Creatures saith *Gwillims fol.* 264. must be added the **Montegres, Satyres, Monk-fishes**, and also **Lion-fishes, Lion-poysons**, or whatsoever double shaped Animal be of any two or more particular kinds.

XV. He beareth Vert, the **Head of a Sea Serpent couped, Or, devouring** of a **naked Man**, proper. This is termed a **Norwegian Sea Monster**, and is of such an incredible length, and bigness, that as *Olanus Magnus* reports, it is above thirty, or forty Foot long; nay, some are a hundred, and two hundred foot long. They will in the *Baltick* and *Swedish* Ocean, raise themselves out of the Sea, and take **Men** out of the ships, and swallow them up whole. The *Germans* calls this, a **Norwaygian Sea Serpent**, in their Language, a **Meerschlange**. This is born by *Van Barthertun*.

A **Cynocide**, is a **Worm** or **Serpent**, with two fins of a side; of a blew colour, and are sixty cubits long.

☞ Note that all fishes of what kind soever, that are born feeding, in their blazon shall be termed **devouring**, or **swallowing**; because such Creatures use not mastication, or chewing: and you must tell whereon they feed.

XVI. He beareth, a **Physeters head couped**, Argent; in a Field Azure. It is also termed, a **Whirlpooles head**, or a **Noxepole**; because it can receive the Sea in his Mouth, and cast it out a great height, by two Pipes, or conduit-tunnells; which are on the top of its Head. It hath two Latin names, *Physalus* and *Flator*; and the *Germans* calls it, a **Wetterwall**, or a **Spyngwall**. *Pliny* saith, that they are so large, that they can raise themselves out of the Water, like a colume or Pillar, higher then the very sails of a Ship, and spouteth out Water enough to sink and drown a Ship. They are generally two hundred Cubits long, having a great, and wide Mouth; on the whole Body it hath a black fat, and grosse skin, like that of a **Black-Moor**: the fin of the Tail biforked, being fifteen or twenty Foot broad.

XVII. He beareth Argent, a **Finned**, or **Winged Syren**, Gules. This is one of the kinds of **Mermaids**, of which I spoke before, *numb.* 2. and is the right **Syren**, two of them, about the Year 1670. was brought dead to our City of *Chester* to be publickly shewed for Money, where I both drew them, and took this discription. The Heads both of the Male and Female, were like **Frogs**; flat and broad: the Breast was Ribbed, they had Paps and Navels like **Men** and **Women**, with the other privy parts; they had two large fins, like Wings, instead of Arms; and their Feet whole after the manner of a **Duck**; from the Nose, to the Tail end, they were about a yard three quarters in length; and covered with a smooth skin of a dusky colour. This **Hauriant** is the Coat Armour of *Surryren*.

B. 3 such Hauriant (or erected) O. is born by *Siran*.

G. 3 such A. by the name of *Barkesford* or *Barsford*, now vulgarly *Basford*.

XVIII. He beareth Azure, a **Balena** or **Whirlpoole**, Argent. This is another kind of **Monstrous fish** of the **Whale** kind, that spouts out water from the conduits, fixed on the top of the Head: In the *Indian* Seas they are so large (saith *Pliny*) that they take up in length, as much as four Acres of Land.

A **Pistie**, is another kind of **Whale**, near two hundred Cubits long. Some make this with two Feet, like to **Lyons Pawes**: but the **Femals** have none, but three or four large Duggs under their Bellies, like to **Womans Breast**.

A **Belva**, is a vast Sea Monster, like the **Balena**; it hath two Feet like a Duck. In the Year 1532 there was one of them cast up on the shoar, which was thirty ells long; from the Belly to the Back-bone eight or nine ells. The open of the Mouth eight ells and a half. The Feet were twenty five Foot long; the genitale Masculine, was of a Prodigeous magnitude. The Tail biforked, and serrated, or cut like a Saw, being seven ells broad: It had two great holes in the Head, from whence it would spout water as through a Coduct, or Pipe.

A **Platanista**, is a large **Whale** like **Fish**, in the River *Ganges* in *India*; Snouted & Tailed, like **Dolphins**, and are fifteen or twenty Cubits long. These I suppose are termed by the *Germans*, a **Teufelwall**, or a **Trolwall**.

In the sinister chief, is the **Limpyn** or **Lempet** shell. It is a shell like an **Oyster**, but riseth more Pyramide in the middle: It is much used by Women to cover their sore Nipples, or Breast heads, that are sore. Some are smooth, others furrowed like **Cockles**, dusky without and white within. It is a single **shelled Fish**, see *numb.* 27.

XIX. He beareth Gules, a **Winged Satyre-fish**, or a **Sea-Satyre, Arms converted into finny wings**, Or; the Tail **double bowed-debruised**, Argent. And it is the Crest of *Bridesmeer*.

☞ In like manner is the **Triton** and **Syren**, born with Wings, instead of Arms; which are to be termed a **Winged Triton**, or **Merman**, or **Manfish**, *&c.* For if they have Wings, they have no Arms; and the Wings of such, ever stand each side the Head, if their Bodies be in **full aspect**, if side-ways then **expanded**, *&c.*

XX.

XX. He beareth Sable, a **Mermaid**, or **Syren with feet** Argent; holding a **Mirror** and **Comb, crined** and **finned**, Or. Some term this, a **Finny footed Syren**, or a **Pedale Mermaid.** This is the Crest of *Middleton*.

Sometimes you will see in Arms **Tritons** and **Syrens**, both **winged** and with **feet**: which are blazoned either a **Triton**, (or **Syren**) **winged** and **footed**, either with **Wings** and **Feet**: or a **Pedale Triton volant**; or **wings displaid.**

XXI. He beareth Argent, the **Serpent Python, Couchant, Winged**, Or. This is the Crest of *Gr. Singin a Spanish* Family; of this Serpent see more *chap.* 10. *numb.* 64.

S. the like O. is born by the name of *Gausley*.

B. the like with *Apollo* striding over him, holding an Arrow in one hand and Bow in another, all O. is the Coat of the *Apothicaries* company in *London*.

XXII. He beareth Gules, a **Falcon fish**, with a **Hound Ecat** Argent, **fins** Or. Born by the name of *Mac Faucorill*. This is best blazon'd (for the better understanding of the posture) to say the Tail **dejected imbowed**; because the general way of bearing them is imbowed, & not to mention the same, is according to the examples, *numb.* 1. 2. 5. 20 But this being as *numb.* 13. ought to be so termed.

XXIII. He beareth Azure, a **Sea-pig** or **Sea-hog**, Argent; **tusked, bristled** and **finned**, Or. This is the true shape of the **Ocean pig** or **Hog**, which *Gesner* sets down, which to distinguish from our **Sea Hog** or **Sea Boar**, it is best termed and that properly, the **Ocean Swine**, or **Sow**: for so in the Latin he terms it, *Oceani Monstrosa Porca, vel Sus Marinus Magnus*; a **monstrous** or **wonderfull Pig of the Ocean**, or a **great Sow**, or **Swine** of the **vast Seas.** *Ambrose Parry* gives the figure of this Monster otherwise, which I have set down in *chap.* 15. *numb.* 44.

XXIV. He beareth Gules, a **Monstrous Owle-fish**, Or; this is termed both an **Owle-fish**, and a **Sele-hound.** It is so large, and terrible a Creature; that it can swallow, or devour a whole **Sea-calf**: It is in Latin termed, *Ziphius*, the *Germans* term it, **Zyffwal**, and **Sauffwal.**

There is a kind of these **Sele-hounds**, that have a spiral bunch upon their Backs, adorned all to the top with straight lines and invecks, as is on the Body, all running one way, as those on the Back.

XXV. He beareth Sable, a **Roken**, or a **Ray-monster**, in chief, Argent; and a **Water Rat**, in base, Or. The latter is a full round bodied Creature, short Legs and hairy, with a bushy Tail, or more hairy then the **house Rat**, and of a brown colour.

G. 3 such Water Rats O. is born by *Farnivall*.

B. the like in pale O. is born by *Rod*. Some term them Conchant, but by reason their Legs are short, they are ever drawn thus, and therefore need not to be mentioned.

[ ]

XXVI. He beareth ~~party~~ per fesse, in base, (or party per base) Aire and Water; **Neptune**, or the **God of the Sea, riding on the Back of a Whale**, proper. Thrusting his **Trident** or **three toothed Mace** into the deeps, Sable: his Mantle flying aloft, Gules. This is the Coat and Crest of that Marshall Hero, *Don Petro Bizangarvill*, (who as *Neptune* by one thrust of his Trident into the Sea, assuaged the tumbling bellows of the vast Ocean, and made a storm a calm) so he at one blow slew threescore and ten, whereby the rest of a great Army fled. This is a noble Atchievement for such Heroick persons.

A King in Armour, riding on a **Sea-horse**, all proper: is the Crest of *Tempest*. And sounding of a horn is *Cotgraves* Crest.

XXVII. He beareth Argent, on a **Mount in base**, Vert: a **Sea Nymph** lying along, (or **sedant**) resting her Arm upon a **Water-pot** or **Fontall**, from whence issues water all proper. This is termed in short, upon a **Mount** or **Hill**, a **Nymph** of the **fountain sedant**, proper: see *chap* 2. *numb.* 23. because such Nymphs of the Water are so painted, resting upon a **Scateba**, or **Water-pot**; representing thereby a **fountain** or **spring** of **Water.** This is the Coat of *Springhill* of *Springhill*.

In the dexter quarter, I have caused to be set, the small **round Cockle**, called the **Scotch-cockle**; which the *Germans* call, **Wassersch-neckle**: if the **Limpine shell** were in furrows or rounds, it would resemble this shell: but that it is not, yet several of those **Limpines**, I have seen shelvy, or scally: as if one crust of the shell, lay upon another: see *numb.* 18.

XXVIII. He beareth Argent, an **Dyka**, or **Spring-wall**, Gules. This is another kind of the **Dyca** or **Spring-whale**, of which I have spoken, *numb.* 16.

In base a **Salmon, adorned** with a pair of **Stags horns**: of some termed a fish Azure, having on its head the **attire of a Stag**, Or. Others a **Fish horned** like a **Stag**; is the Coat of *Ragelhuck* in a Field Argent.

B. 3 such A. Horns O. is born by *Chartley*.

XXIX. He beareth Azure, a **Sea Boar**, Or. This is a very huge Monstrous Creature, as *Olaus Magnus* informs us; but gives no name to it, but by reason of its long Teeth, *Gesner* calls it, a **Sea Boar**; or rather a **Boar-Whale**: for such a one was taken in the Isle of *Thule*, in the Northern Ocean, in the Year 1538. which was seventy two foot long, and fourteen foot high; and seven foot in distance were the Eyes. Its whole Body was rough and sharp, as if it were set with bunched scales: the Head like a **Swine**; the Liver was so large and vast, as five Wine Vessels could but contain it; on the highest part of the Back, and between the Eyes, it had three rows or lumps, like dryed Clay: It had long Teeth in its Mouth, of six, eight, or twelve foot long.

In the sinister base, is for want of other roome; a **Water-Hopper**, or **Water-Grashopper**; they skip and slide on the Water, and Rivers, like the **Land Grashoppers** on the Earth. The *Germans* call them, **Wasser-**

Wassergrillen, and a **Baumgrillen**; it is reversed, having the head turned downwards.

XXX. He beareth Argent, a **Skate**, Azure; **fins**, Or. It is a round bodied, and headed fish, with a Cat like beard, and a coller engraled about its Neck, the like about the Back, and a third about the middle of the fish: to all which, at the sides are fixed long and sharp ended fins; down the Back to the Tail is a row of tuberous knots, or buttons. The Tail large, deeply forked; but what the colour of the fish is, or any part of it my Author saith nothing.

In the Muster chief, is a **Syren, sans Arms, Tail elevated** and **imbowed**. Some term it **erected flect**. Others **flected** and **reflected**. This in a Field Gules is the Coat and Crest of *Van Bardian* of *Francovia*: being in its proper colour.

Such Tails erected, torqued, respecting each other proper, is the Crest of *Carter*.

XXX. He beareth, Argent, a **Sea water Wolf** or **Ocean Sea Wolf**, proper. This is by most Authors described, and set down for the proper shape of the **Sea**, or **Ocean Wolf**; yet for distinction sake, and that we may upon its name, know it from the **Sea Wolf fish**, before spoken off, *numb.* 7. which hath in Herauldry a fish tail; I hold it best to term this a **Water Wolf**, or the **Ocean**, or **Sea Wolf**; It is all hair, of a dark brown, or Umber colour, with strong hair or bristles standing up like a **Swines back**; all along from the top of the Head to the end of the Tail: to answer which, both out ancient, and modern Heraulds, have drawn and do still make all **Sea creatures**, of this nature, as **Wolves, Horses, Hounds, Bulls, Bears**, and such like quadrupedes; to have a **Dolphin** like fin from the Head to the Tail of them, also to have **Swan** like Feet, and a **Tail of fish**, resembling the Tail of the **Beaver**, set down *chap.* 10. *numb.* 22.

3. Sorts of Water-Beasts; Natural, Supposed, Devised: how distinguished.

1. A **Sea Water** or **Ocean Sea Wolf**, or **Water Sea Wolf**: so termed when the Beast is born in its natural shape as in this and other figures, *numb.* 9, 10. *chap.* 14. *numb.* 53, 56. *chap.* 15. *numb.* 44. 47. 49. 52 and the like.

2. A **Sea** or **Water Wolf**, or **Sea Horse**, or the like: so termed when devised by Herauldry, as is aforesaid. Having four Feet **Duck** like, and a **Fish Tail**, as *numb.* 7. 14. *chap.* 10. *numb.* 18. 20. 22. Such a **Sea Wolf**, A. finned O. is the supporters of the Lord *Chandos*: and a **Sea Hound** the supporters of the Lord *Sturton*. Some draw them in their own shapes, and make the Bodies scaly; see *lib.* 4. *chap* 7. *numb.* 19, 20.

3. A **Sea Wolfe fish**: being half the **Land Creature**, and half of the **Dolphin** kind; having whole, or **Duck** like Feet to swim with: as *numb.* 5. 7. 8. and such like.

4. A **Wolf fish**; when the Land creature retains its own shape, having cloven Feet, not to swim with: as *numb.* 9, 10, 11, 12, and the like.

XXXII. He beareth Or, an **Hippotamus**, or a **Sea water Horse**, Sable. It is of Some called a **Water**, or **Sea water Ox**. It is by *Albertus* termed, *Equus Nili*, and *Equus Fluminis*, a **Horse of the River Nilus**; and by others *Bos Marinus*, and *Porcus Marinus*, a **Sea Ox**, and a **Sea Horse** or **Swine**. It is of the bignes of a great **Cow**; a great Head, and deep under Chap, white Teeth on both sides above and below, much like a **Swine**, full Bodied like an **Ox**; short Legs cloven footed, (and some say round indented Toes, like to the **Elephant**, or finger Toes) the Tail of a **Swine**, or **Tortoise**: It lives both in the Water, and on the Land. The *Germans* give it the name of the **Egyptian water horse**, or **Egyptian water swine**.

A Sea Water Horse, is the Crest of *Don Maldanado* of *Spain*.

XXXIII. He beareth Vert, an **Hoga fish**, or the **Venetian Hoga**, or **Andira**, Or. In the Kingdom of *Mexico* in the City *Themistitana*, was a fish seen of the bignes of a **Calf**, which they called **Andira**; but the *Spaniards* **Hoga**: It had the Head and Ears of a **Swine**, with a fleshy beards, half a Foot long hanging down. It was all over hairy except the fin on its Back, and two round pointed fins, like the Oars of a Boat, which were on both sides; and a broad finny Tail. It was for changing its colour, like the **Chameleon**; for in the water it was all green; and taken out, it immediately turned to a bright yellow-red: It is a most furious and devouring fish, and therefore never taken by fishers alive. This is also termed a **Hogs head fish**; that is a fish with a **Hog** or a **Swines head**.

In the base is a **Water Flea**, it is a small **Water Vermine**, like a **Grashopper**, which the *Germans* call, **Kerderle**, and **Karder**: It is in Latin by some Authors called, *Tenea aquatica*, and *Pediculus aquaticus*; a **Water Moth**, or **Water Louse**. It is a little oblong animal, having three Feet on each side; it is included or shut up in a sheath or husk, to preserve it fell from **Frogs**, whence it is called **Ruckle**; and of some **Querclen**, and **Wasserleuse**.

There is another kind of these sheathed Creatures, of which you will see the figure, *numb.* 34.

B. 6 such Water-Fleas O. is born by *Flea*; but they are erected.

XXXIV. He beareth Argent, a **Water** or **Ocean Elephant**, Gules; **tusked** and **finned**, Or. This is an Animal, that lives both upon Land, and in the Sea; It is greater then the **Terrestrial Elephant**; and hath two great Teeth like the **Elephant**, proceeding from the higher chap; by which he climeth the rocks, and hangeth by them, whilest he sleepeth. It is a most cruel and dreadful **Sea Monster**, all over hairy, with four Feet like to an **Ape**, with sharp and long Claws: having a kind of fleshy fin, on each side at the Shoulders. Some Authors call it, *Phoca Marina*, and *Aper Oceanus*: a **Sea Calf**, and an **Ocean Wild-Boar**.

In the base I have placed the figure of another kind of Weathed Creatures call, a **Karder**; see *numb.* 33.

XXXV. He beareth Argent, a **Utelif**, or an **Ocean Sea Unicorn**, Azure; **horned**, and **finned**, Or. This is a fish much seen in the *Atlantick Ocean*, which the Inhabitants of that Country call in their Language, an Utelif; which we may well term a **Sea Unicorn**, the **Rake fish**, or **Sword fish**, having such a horn as this, but it groweth out of the Nose: as *chap.* 14 *numb.* 50 It hath a large Head, rinckled Fore-head; a scaled Body, thick towards the Head, and smaller and smaller to the Tail: with two large fins on each side, resembling **Dragons wings**: with other small fins on the Back and Belly: as the figure doth demonstrate. This is the Coat Unlse a *Venetian*.

XXXVI. He beareth Azure, a **Castily fish** Argent; **Armed** (or **Spicked**) Or. This fish is not above two Foot in length, but it is almost so broad; being a thick short fish; with a great Head, much larger then for the proportion of the Body, with a **Swines Nose**: and a skin or hide, not unlike to that of a **Sea Dog**. It is Armed with spiks, or sharp horns; a long one in the Fore-head, and one on each side if it, something shorter; two on the Back, and three under the Belly; with two fleshy, or skinny fins, on each side the Body. This is born by *Castillian* an *Italian* by Birth.

XXXVII He beareth Or, a **Ocean Sea-Bear**, Sable. This was a **Sea Monstrous Bear**, having the Head of a **Bear**, the Arms, and Fingers of an **Ape**; and the hinder parts of a **Water Animal**. Some have ventured to call it, an **Indian Ocean Serpent**; but it is from its natural, and perticipation with other Animals; best termed, a **Bears Head-Ape, Handed-fish**: or **Bear-Ape-fish** of the Ocean.

XXXVIII. He beareth Gules, a **Cramp-fish**, Argent. It is a flat and braad fish, much after the form of a **Ray**, being cartilagineous, or a gristly fish. It is so called, because it benummeth, or stupifieth all other fish that swim over it, or come near it. It is termed in Latin *Torpedo*, or *Piscis Oculatus*; by reason it is full of spots like Eyes. It is of an Iron colour red, or of the colour of rusty Iron; with five or six circles upon the Body of it, each having a pupil, or spot in it like that of an Eye. The fins are round and solid; not serate, or cut into indents. This is born by the name of *Cramp*, alias *Crump*.

A **Vasculous**, or **spotted Cramp-fish**; hath the Eyes turned into black round spots.

There is another species of these **Cramp-fish**, which have neither spots, nor Eyes; but are speckled all over on the Body, and gristly fins; with black oblong specks: which the *Germans* call, **Zitterling**, or **Zitterfisch**.

XXXIX. He beareth Argent, a **Marin Damon** (or **Damon-Marin**; or a **Sea Divel**, or a **Divel fish**) Gules, **horns** and **fins**, Sable. This **Terrible Sea Monster**, hath several names ascribed to it by several Authors; as a **Sea Pan Monster**, or a **Monstrous Sea Satyre**; or a **Footed Pan** or **Satyre-fish**; and a **Centaur-fish**. Its upper parts are of a humane shape, with long Ears, and two small horns on its Head, the Arms finned behind, after the manner of **Dragons Wings**; from the middle down is fish: having two **Duck** like Feet, in the sides of it. The *Germans* term it, a **Meerteufel**; see *chap.* 15. *numb.* 48.

XL. He beareth Argent, an **Ocean Sea Calf**, proper. It is all hairy like the ordinary **Seal**, or **Sea Calf**: of a kind of a dark Umber, or Mouse colour. There are three sorts of these Water Animals; one see *chap.* 10. *numb.* 18. and this is the other, which *Gesner* terms, the **Ocean Phoca**, or **Sea Ocean Calf**: the third is called the **Mediteranian Sea Calf**; which is more rough, and shaged then either; and spotted, or stripped in several parts, with a contrary or of a lighter colour. This is the Coat of *Meercalfe*, or *Midcalf*.

In the base I have given you the true shape, or image of a **Water Grill**; It is a kind of **Water Locust**, bigger then a **Water Hopper**, with a long joynted Tail, and six Feet. It is covered with a soft crusty shell, ending in a thread at the Tail; the Latin call it, *Grillus Fluvitalis*; the *Germans* a **Wasser-Muheim**. A. 3 such erected S. born by *Grill*.

XLI. He beareth Azure, an **Aloes**, or a **Sea Water**, or **Ocean Goose-fish**, Argent. It hath the Head and Neck of a **Goose**; with a bunch, or tuberous lump upon the Head, the Tail of a **fish**, with a full round Body of a **Goose**, having two long round ended, and smooth fins, set at a little distance on each side the Body, instead of Wings, and Feet: and scaled all over with very small scales, or hardly any at all; making a shew of them, yet wanting them. This is an *Italian* bearing, and is the Coat of *Abysens*.

In the sinister chief I have placed the true form of an insect, called in Latin, according to *Gesner*, *Libella Fluvitalis*. The *Germans* call it, **Sunderliche**, or a **Wagle**. It is in form like a T, or a Smiths instrument, or Carpenters plumet, as the aforesaid Author describeth it.

XLII. He beareth Argent, a **Sea Snail**, Gules; the **shell**, Azure. In the *German* Ocean, there are very great and **Monstrous House Snails**; short round Nosed, with a skinny jagged fin each side the Mouth, hanging down, round horns like a **Deer**, with round balls at the several Ancklers, shining Eyes: having two Feet, by which it creepeth, like **Dragons feet**. It lives both in the Sea, and on the Land, when the Sun shineth clear and splendent. This is born by the name of *Snalsmere*.

In the sinister chief is the figure of the **Water Cantharis**, or **Water Glowom**; or the **Water Lamp-fly**; which the *Germans* call, **Wasser Kaferlin**, and **Glezling**: from its bright shining husk, wherewith it is covered: It is of the magnitude of a **Punie**, or **Wallouse**; with reddish small Legs: the sheath or case, or shard wherewith it is covered, is a shining blackish green, under which it hath Wings.

XLIII. He beareth Vert, a **Whale**, Argent. It is the most vast and Monstrous fish of all others, some have two short

short legs, with whole or webbed feet; they are covered with a smooth skin, the fins also are the same, and of a dusky grey on the back, and more white on the belly. **Whales** if they be come to their full growth are 240 foot long, and 120 foot broad; several have been cast on Shoar, which have been 80, 90, or a 100 feet in length. We with the *Germans* call it a **Whale**, or a **Whale-fish**; in Latine *Cetus* and *Cete*: The skin is without scales, like dressed Leather, of a Lead colour as some Authors say. This is born by the name of *Whalley*.

A. 3 Whales head erazed S. born by *Whaley*.

The **Spotted Whale**, it is a large Fish about 60 or 70 foot long, something resembling the **Great Whale**, but hath no visible Piscel; and the Fins are gristly and webbed, as in other **Fish**. It is spotted all over the body with great and small round blackish spots; from whence *Gesner* terms it *Maculo*, and the *Germans* a **Flackfisch**.

A **Silurus**, a **Lar**, and an **Attilus**, are vast great **Whale-fishes**, which (as *Pliny* saith) keep in the Rivers *Nilus*, *Po*, and the *Rhene*.

There are several other **Whales**, whose names are these, a **Wangwhale**, an **Andwhale**, a **Swinwhale**, a **Ravenwhale**, a **Whittewhale**, a **Schilwhale**, an **Haneckeit**, a **Noywartrack**, a **Trolwhale**, a **Springwhale**, a **Gerwhale**, a **Blotewhale**, a **Hill**, a **Herill**, a **Karckwhale**, a **Ruswhale**, a **Nachtwhalle**, a **Noywal**, a **Wintinger**, a **Fish keeke**, a **Shelle-wyncke**, a **Roye**, a **Rostinger**, and a **Schlictback**; but of these I have no Descriptions here.

XLIV. He beareth Argent, a **Bulampech**, or a **flying Fish**, Azure, the **Wings and Fins**, Gules. This is a kind of Water Animal which will rise out of the Water, and fly for about 50 Paces, and then dive into the Water again; it hath a round head, and is of the **Mackarel** kind, and doth not exceed it in magnitude; and is blewish, or between blew and green on the back, with a white belly; it hath two wings almost as long as the body, of a finny substance. Those who have Sailed in the *New found World*, tell us that they fly in such multitudes, that very often they fall into the Ships, by striking themselves against the Sails, and other Tackle of the Ships. See this truly figured *chap.* 18. *numb.* 116.

3 such naiant in Pale, is born by *Bulamfeck*.
B. 3 such in Pale O. is born by *Van Hoyter*.

XLV. He beareth Sable, a **Sea Pen** (or a **Sea Feather**, or **Quill**) Argent. This is also called a **Feather fish**. There is not that Creature or senceless thing on earth (as saith *Pliny*,) but its resemblance is to be found in the Seas; and many more things therein, which are to be found no where else beside; for there shall you meet with Fishes resembling not only the forms and shapes of Land Creatures; but also of the figures and fashions of many things without Life; there may we find **Bunches of Grapes**, and **Cowcumbers**, **Swords**, **Saws**, **Quills**, **Mullets**, &c. with thousands of such like; which for colour, shape, smell and taste, resemble such things upon earth. Three such in Fesse, the quill part erected, is born by the name of *Penmere*.

B. 3 such erected A. born by the name of *Feadder*, alias *Feather*.

XLVI. He beareth Argent, a **Venetian Monstrous flying Fish**, Vert. I so term this flying Fish, because such a one was catched flying in the *Venetian* Seas, in the year 1550. It was very horrible and monstrous, being four feet long, the head was gross, thick, and very fleshy; the eyes were not set in the region of the head, but hanging down, it had two ears and a double mouth, a Snout like an **Elephant**, very carnous or fleshy, not hollow, double winged, with holes on each side the body like to a **Lampye**, a tail an Ell long like an **Adder** or **Serpent**.

A **Fork-fish**, of a second Species, is in all respects like this **Monstrous flying fish**, having at the lower part of the body, at the coming out of the tail; and above the tail, a fork or dart like rod or prick joined to it; which Fish is called in Latine *Pastinaca*; which we interpret to be a **Forke** or **Poffen fish**. See more *chap.* 14. *numb.* 28. and 15. *numb.* 37, 38, 39, 40. It is of some called a **Sea Eagle fish**, or an **Angel fish**. See also *chap.* 19. *numb.* 90.

XLVII. In the City of *Chester*, amongst other Fish there came to be sold a long and slender Fish after this form, which none of the Fishmongers could inform me what it was called, till perusing my Collections of Fish, I found it was of kind to the **Sea Horse Worm** mentioned before, *chap.* 15. *numb.* 59. saving it run not in so many outward incisures as that. It had no mouth, but a long slender snout or pipe, with a hole in the end; through which it sucked its food and nourishment; the nose and the gills was all one intire bony or hard gristly substance; just at the gills behind, were two small fins narrow and close at the setting on, but broad at the end, when opened it was of the shape of a triangle; it had a small fin on the middle of the back, and another at the end of the tail; from the head to the tail the Fish was perfect four square, declining taperwise smaller and smaller, till at the tail it end in a small point; only the sides near the top of the back, from the head to the fin on the middle of the Fish, was sunk in cornerways after the manner of a Rabbet (as Joyners make on the sides of Doors for another square to fall even and flat into it) the back and sides were not scaly, but spotted scale like, of a light umber colour; the belly was the same **Adder** like, but white inclining to a yellow. It was from head to tail, two spans long; but what to name it I know not, except a **Sea Horse Leech**, or a **Sea Elephant Snout Worm**, or as the *Germans* a **Sea Rolsle**.

*

The signification of Fish used in Arms.

FIshes in general, are the Emblems of Chastity; therefore Vowers of Chastity are tied to that Diet; also typifie times silent motion.

Fish with Wings, or that use their fins to fly with, are Emblems of Safety; such as may go where they will, and none shall make them afraid; also denotes protection and carefulness of safety.

Crowned-fish, is the Emblem of Honour and Loyalty, and that through the Art of Navigation and Fishing, the Bearer hath attained to great Wealth and Glory, and liveth in much fame and splendor.

Mitred-fish, is the Emblem of Hipocrisie and Falshood, in as much as this Fish participates of the outward shew and name, but not of the Nature of the Bishop.

Heads of fish betoken force and valour, boldly daring to enter where he can find place to Harbour; and is a fit Emblem of Jurisdiction and Justice.

Tails of fish betoken strength and agility in the Bearer, and that nothing can hold him from his purposes and designs, no more than keep a Snig by having it by the tail.

Fish and Fowl together, doth denote one to keep a copious and plentiful Table, one ready and apt to relieve those which are ready to famish or starve.

Dolphin, is the Emblem of Love and Society; there being no Fish else that loves the company of Men.

Dolphin, or other Fish Bridled, was by the Ancients represented for the Emblem of Safety.

Dolphin wound about an Anchor is the Emblem of Delay, or an acting of those affairs slowly, and by little, which requireth hast and speed; yet on the other side it betokens seriousness, advise and counsel, not to do those things hastily and rashly which require time and consideration.

Lobster, is the Emblem of subtilty.

Escallop, no other Shell of Thousands of Millions will fit it but its own, and therefore fitly resembles the indissoluable Friendship that ought to be in Fraternities and Societies.

Crab, is an Emblem of Falshood and Dissimulation, for it can go any way.

Barbell, is the Emblem of Pleasantness, Pleasure, and Profit.

Dog-fish, is the Emblem of Plenty and Fruitfulness both with and without the Sea, or Fertility and Increase both by Sea and Land.

Carp, is the Emblem of Hospitality, and denotes Food and Nourishment from the Bearer to those in Need.

Crocodile is the Emblem of Dissimulation, for it weeps over its Prey before it devours it.

Lanthorn Fish is the Emblem of Night guiding and Protection and Safety in the Night, and so denotes help and deliverance out of Danger by the guide and direction of a Friend; a Friend in Adversity.

Luce or Pike, is the Emblem of Tyranny and Oppression, a devourer of themselves rather than not to exercise their power; for when they are grown to maturity it is said of them that they will spare none, but feed upon their own kind.

Purple fish, is the Emblem of hidden Vertues, whose Talent is in a Napkin, and denotes a person of worth and parts, yet layeth not out himself for the World to take notice of him, that which is precious is hid.

Cockle denotes his Value from within, and not by outward appearance, in as much as its Shell covers the Gem, but shews an outside crust.

Scuttle Fish, casts forth a black matter, and so secures it self; and therefore is the Emblem of a Wicked Man that will say or Swear and Vomit out any kind of black Hellish words, to free and save himself from danger, or get out of danger.

Fork-fish, is an Emblem of such an one that is able to defend himself, and make his Argument good; whom he strives with, he overcomes, *Quod pungit, perimit*; where he Stings he Kills.

Sword-fish, is the Emblem of Victory and Valour, for he never assaults but he overcomes, though his Enemy be that great Leviathan who maketh a mock at all inferiour Creatures, *Job* 40. 20.

Cramp-fish, is the Emblem of a Debauched fellow, that disturbs and infects all Societies or persons that he comes into; in as much as this Fish stupifies all that touch it.

Trout and **Mort,** are Emblems of quiet, calm and gentleness, such as love not to be in Troubled Waters, or be tossed to and fro by the blustering of wicked and malevolent Spirits, but rather live quiet at home, than enjoy abundance through labour and trouble.

Salmon, is the Emblem of an unsetled and unconstant mind, and one who through desire and novelty, by seeking after a better Estate and Condition, generally plunge themselves into worse: In Salt Waters they live quiet, but do not increase; in the fresh, by endeavouring to multiply, they are caught in the Snare and so destroyed.

Conger and Eeles, and all such kind of round, smooth and slippery Fish are the Emblems of unsteady and unconstant Minds and be token a pretended friendship, such an one that cannot be known to be had or not had in time of necessity.

Watery Serpents or Adders, denote the Bearer to be very skilful, prudent and subtile in the Affairs of the time, observing the Vicissitude and turning therein, which he improveth, and makes use of to compass his own ends, though never so base and vile.

Shell-fish signifies the first Bearers of them to have been a Commander or Chieftain, who by his Vertue and Valour had so gained the Hearts and Love of his Soldiers and Companions in Arms, that they desired much to follow him, even into dangers mouth.

Terms of Art, or difficult Words used in Blazon within these three Chapters of Fishes, with the places in which they are explained, as

Armed, 16 36.
Aspecting, 14 41.

Bend. In Bend, 15 12 14.
Brased, 14 8.
Bowed, 16 19.
Bowed Imbowed, 16 1. & 18 110.
Bowed Debruised, 16 19.

Crined, 16 1. 5. 20.
Counter-naiant, 14 19.

Devouring, 14 2 & 16 15.
Diveing, 14 3.
Demy, 14 13. 14. 15. & 16 7. 8. 9.
Dejected. Dejectant, 14 26 41.
Debased, 14 41.
Dors an Dors, 14 41.
Dejected Imbowed, 16 13. 22.
Debrused, 14 41. & 16 19.
Debrused Dejected, 14 26.
Double Bowed Debrused, 16 19.
Disposed, 14 12 17.

Erected, 14 2 a. 14. 30. 41. & 15 51.
Erectant, 15 51.
Erected Imbowed. 16 12. 20.
Erected Flect, 16 30.
Eleveted, Imbowed, 16 30.
Extended, 14 8 & 16 10.
Endorsed, 14 5. 7. 41.
Errant, 14 2 a.
Embowed. se Imbowed,
Enwraped, 14 26 & 16 11.

Everted, 14 41.

Fretted, 14 18.
Fretted in Triangle, 14 18.
Flect. Flected. Flectant. 15 56 & 16 30
Finned, 16 1. 5. 20. 35.
Flected Reflected, 15 56. & 16 30.
Fesse. In Fesse. 14 12

Hauriant, 14 2, 2 a. 6.
Hauriant Imbowed, 14 2 & 15 37 38 41 & 18 112.
Hauriant Torqued, 14 3 a.
Hauriant Imbowed Respecting, 14 4
Hauriant Imbowed Endorsed, 14 5.
Horned, 16 28 35.
Hoofed, 16 9.

Imbowed, 15 37. 38. 39. 41. & 16 1 12 13 22 30. & 14 1 a. 2.
Imbowed Erected, 15 51.
Imbowed Respecting, 14 4.
Imbowed Endorsed, 14 5. 7.
Imbowed Debrused 14 41.
Imbowed Debrused Dejected, 14 26.
Inverted, 14 35.
In Point, 14 41. & 15 56.

Mounting, 15 51.

Naiant, 14 1. 12. & 16 10.
Naiant Imbowed, 14 1 a.
Naiant Torqued, 15 4 33.
Naiant Bowed Imbowed, 18 110.

Point. In Point, 14 41.
Pale. In Pale, 14 12.

Queve. a la Queve, 14 18.

Respecting. Respectant, 14 4 41.
Reversed, 14 3.
Reflected. 15 56, & 16 30.

Salter. In Salter, 14 12.
Sinister. To the Sinister, 14 12 13 14
Surmounting, 14 31 41.
Subvertant. Subverted, 14 41.
Spectant, 15 33.
Spectant Torqued, 15 33.
Spectant Naiant Torqued, 15 33.
Springing, 15 51. & 14 3 a
Springing & Hauriant, 14 3 a.
Swallowing, 16 15.

Triangle. Triangled, 14 8 18 & 15 56 57 58
Torqued, 14 3 a. & 15 4 33
Targiant, 14 3 a. & 16 11
Tusked. Tushed, 16 5 9

Vpright, 14 2 a. 30 41
Vrinant, 14 3
Volant, 14 16

Wreathed, 14 26
Winged, 14 19 44 46

Some few terms of Art used by Historians in the description of Fish and Sea-Worms.

Antennae, or **feelers**, strings coming from fish, by which they grope or find out their way; some have buttons or flaps at the ends.

Asperous, of **Asper**, rough, sharp, rugged.

Aculeus, stings or pricks **Aculeous**, full of pricks, prickly.

Armature a covering of fish like Armour.

*

Analagous, generation. Such as are proportionable in shape, equall, resembling their kind.

Annulous, or Ring incisions, as in Worms, whose body is all in round joints. *

Appendages, stumps, or thick short legs at the tail of Worms.

Apoda, without feet.

Apt.

Apertures, opening of the mouth.
Branchia, gills of Fish.
Bonny Lamina, coverings of thin bony plates, that are on Fish, which cannot properly be called scales.
Bivalvs, Fish covered with two shells; two shelled fish.
Connected, knit or tyed together.
Cartilaginous, gristly, or full of gristles.
Callositie, hardness, have thick skins, brawny hard.
Cutis, the skin, **Cuticulaous**, thin skinned.
Corius, or **Coriousitie**, the skin, or skinniness of Man, Beast, or Fish.
Chamfred, ridged and nicked, as in scallop shells.
Crassus, thick, fat, gross nature.
Crustaceous covering, the shell, or pill, or hard skin that any Fish is covered with.
Cavity, the hollowness of any part.
Cetaceous, Whale like, or of the Whale kind.
Callous skin, or Fish of an hard brawny substance.
Convolution, the rolling or tumbling together of parts or things.
Echinuous, or Urchin pricks, or chesnut pill pricks.
Esculent pulpy substance, a pulpy or soft substance, fit to be eaten.
Flexile Fins, such as are soft and easy to be bent.
Fins connected, tied, knit, or fastned together by skinny Membranes.
Fistulous, a thing like a Pipe, Pipe like.
Fasciated, swadled, bound about.
Films, small and tender fleshy threads for Beards to Fish. Also thin skins that divide the flesh or gristles
Furrowed shells, the indents or crevisses in scalops, or such like shells.
Glaber, **Glaberous**, smooth.
Gracilious, slender, small, thin, soft and weak.
Gregariously, such as swim by Flocks, Troops, or Companies together.
Husk or **Cod**, which covers the Wings of some flyes, as the Beetle.
Hirsute, rough or hairy, rugged, any thing opposite to smoothness.
Igneous, fire colour.
Insect, the cutting in, or incision of Water flyes, or Worms, or any kind of Bee into any part of the body.
Imperfect Fish, such which have no mouths, or want any part that another Fish hath.
Ker, or husk of Worms.
Lubricus, **Lubricious**, or **Lubrick**, slippery.
Maculous, spots, full of spots. **Macula**, a spot.
Membrane, the thin skin of which the fins are made, and joins the rays or spikes of the fins together.
Neb, or Beak of a Fish, the nose or snout.
Oviparous Animals, either Birds, Beasts, or Fish, which breed by *Egs* or Spawn.
Oleous, Oily.
Obliquely crossing, awry, crookedly crossing.
Obtuse Angled, blunt, or not right cornered.
Oyound, a round that is longer one way than another.
Oblong, any square whose length exceeds its breadth.
Pinna, a Fin.
Pellicle, or thin skin. **Pallicle**, or **Panicle**, membrane, or the out-shell, or thin skin of Bees or Ants Eggs, of some called **Bladders**.

Pellicles, is also taken for Bees Wings, the fine skins of them.
Panicle Web, is the working of the Flies and Hornets, and Wasps Wings.
Prominencies, prominent rising up or swelling on the outside of any Fish shell.
Pinnules, Fins of a Fish or the quils or shafts in them
Perforated, pierced or thrust into.
Piral Production, thievish base Generation.
Pellucid, shining, bright, that may be seen through.
Revolution, or turning again of a thing to its first place, a course.
Rapacious, ravenous, greedy, devouring.
Radiate, having rays like Stars, bright shining.
Rugated, wrinkled, plaited, crumpled, rough with wrinkles, rugged.
Rays of the Fin, the quills or thorny pricks in the membrane of the fin.
Rimule, or chinks, chaps, or cliffs **Rimosous** full of such
Species, kind, of the like nature, shape, form or semblance.
Striated, channelled, chamfred, wrought inward, furrowed.
Squama, scales of Fish. **Squamaous**, or **squamous**, scaly, full of scales.
Serrated, toothed after the fashion of a *Saw*.
Spinal, thorny, or the Back-bone of any creature.
Sinus, a cavity or hollowness of a part of a Fish.
Sharp, or **Thorny Fins**, such Fins as have pricks standing out.
Sanguineous, blood colour.
Spinosus, thorny Fish, Fish full of pricks.
Spinous Fins, thorny fins.
Scaly Armature, that is covered with scales like great pieces of Armour.
Spiral convolutions, a turning round, or winding about of things together.
Tuberous, knot, bunch, swelling, knotty.
Testaous, shell like, of a shell nature, or substance.
Tumid Jaws, such as have risen, swollen, or puffed up Jaws.
Transverse mouths, such as turn awry.
Turbinated, copped, or top-like.
Testaceous Animals, such Fish as have shells.
Viscous, a slimy substance Bird-lime like.
Visous, or **viscous mucilage**, a kind of Slime or Spawn of Mussles, **Viscid**.
Viscosity, sliminess, or glewiness.
Violeceous, Violet colour.
Voracious, a devouring or greedy eating, or ravening.
Valve, or **Valves**, those that have holes or laps of skin to cover them instead of mouths.
Univalvs, of one shell, such Fish as have only one shell which hath a hole in it for the mouth of the Fish.
Undulated, moved or waved up and down like Waves.
Undulation obliquely, a waving awry or crookedly.
Viviparus, that brings forth their young living, without either Spawn or Egs.
Zoophytes Animals, such as are between Plants and living Creatures, and partake of both.

An Alphabet of all the *English*, *Latin*, or *Germane* Names of Fish, mentioned in these foregoing Chapters, and elsewhere within this second Book.

Things of Note.

Coverings of Fish, 14. s. 1.
Distribution of Fish into their several orders, *ibid.*
Difference in Fish fins, *ibid.*
Several forms of Fish, *ibid.*
Terms of fishing for several sorts of Fish, *ibid.*
Places for Fish, 14. s. 2.
Haunts for Fish, *ibid.*
Names of Fish according to age, 14. s. 3.
Fish how termed in companies, *ibid.*
Several postures of Fish, 14. 1. to 9.
Terms for the postures of Inanimal things, 14. 41.
Natural and fixious Creatures of the Water how distinguished, 16. 8, 9, 10, 31.
Signification of Fish used in Arms, 16. 47. s. 2.
Terms of Blazon used about Fish, *ibid.*
Terms used by Historians in the description of Fish, *ibid.*

A

Antaeus, 14 1 *a.* 6 57 58.
Augelot, 14 9. *Ascher ib:* 12
Anthias, 14 10. *Anthia*, 15 25
Anchovis, 14 12. *Atherina, ibm:*
Ascher, ibid.
Asua, 14 12. *Aphya, ibm.*
Acerrina, 14 12. *Alson, ibm:*
Alga Purple, 14 12 *Albelen, ib.* 19
Albulus Piscis. Albele, 14 19.
Alphest Alphesta, 14 20
Aitegen Fish. African Hen fish. ib. 20
Alput, 15 9 *Alputten*, 14 24 *a.*
Asinus Piscis, 14 24 *a. Alburnus*, 27
Alruppen, 14 25 *a Astacus, ibm:* 30
Alett, 14 27 & 15 11
Agon. Agonus, 14 27 *Agunen, ib.*
Augell fish, 14. 28 & 15 41. & 16 46.
Arrow Taile, 14 28 *Acipenser, ib:* 21
Alder fish, 14 28 *Asse Hoofe, ibm:* 38
Araneus, 14 48 *Amia, ibm:* 49
Angled Welke 14 43. & 15 20.
Ash faber Hound fish, 14 55.
Attill. Attilus, 14 58 & 16 43
Auris marina, 15 5 *Alrup, ibm:* 9
American Ostracion, 15 14.
Adonis, 15 24. *Aulopion, ibm.* 25.
Aegle, 15 30. *Augeroch, ibm:* 40
Asper. Asbron, 15 32 *Aspe, ib:* 59 64
Asper Danubii, 15 64 *Aegomastus* 66
Asilus Marinus, 15 50. *Aloes*, 16 41
Aper Oceanus, 16 34 *Andura, ib:* 33
Andrwhale, 16 43 *Ape fish*, 14 56
Apple fish of the sea, 14 54.

B

Bramble, 14 12 27 *Barsz, ibm:* 20
Bembradies, 14 12. *Bleake, ibm:*
Buccinum, ibm: 12 42 48
Brat fish, 14 19 27 49 *Bersich*, 20
Blawling, 14 19 27 & 15 14
Berling, 14 20 *Barlin, ibm:* 32
Black fish 14 20 45 & 15 31
Birt. Bert. Burt Brett fish, 14 21
Brettcocke 14 21 *Barme, ibm.* 24
Basilisk fish, 14 23. & 15 23.
Brechling, 14 23 *a. Berschen, ib* 24 *a*
Barb. Barbell. Beard fish, 14 24 & 15 9
Barbatula Cobitis, 14 24
Boque. Bolch. Bollich, 14 24 *a.*
Barle, Berling. Brick, 14 25.
Berger fish, 14 24 *a. Blieck, ib:* 27
Bleke. Bleake. Blick, 14 27.
Blickling, Blicca, Becken, 14 27
Brambell, Brambellen, 14 27.
Breame, 14 27. & 15 66.
Beccus. Beccum. Bambele, 14 27.
Brittish Orbe fish, 14 29.
Beard. Bastard Crab, 14 32 *a. b.*
Black Ray, 14 28. *Bauded Cockle*, 35
Buckelstraub. 14 42. *Base*, 15 11.
Bastard Macarell, 14 49
Broad Sword fish, 14 51 *a.*
Bunched Shrimpe, 14 57.
Bearded Eele-Pout. Beautifull Eele-Pouts, 15 9.
Bunched Star fish, 15 10.
Blew fish, 15 14. *Barbier, ibm:* 25
Bonito fish, 15 14 *Boniton, ibm:* 25.
Boulerot, ib: 15 14 *Black Golion*, 22
Buckelstaub Schneckle, 15 20.
Binde fish, 15 28. *Bisemere, ibm:* 31.
Balena, 15 29. & 16 18.
Bearded Balena. Bartwall, 15 29 45
Brethmechin. Bloodsucker, 15 30
Bisemling. Bisem-Cuttell, 15 31.
Babst. Bulhead fish, 15 32.
Bunched Globe fish, ibm: 31
Bulhead Cramp fish, 15 38.
Bos Raia, 15 39 *Beare Crab, ib:* 43
Blew Houndfish, Breake net Dog-fish. Blunt nose Hound fish, 15 42
Blood Hound fish. 15 42.
Bearded Whale, ibm: 45
Bishop fish, 15 54 *Belva*, 16 18
Boare fish, 16 9 29 34
Boare Whale, 15 49. & 16 29.
Baum-Grillen, 16 29.
Beare-Ape fish, 16 37.
Beare-Head Ape-Handed fish, ibm:
Blote Whale, 16 43. *Bulampech ib.* 44
Beare fish, 16 8 37 *Bull fish, ibm:* 11
Bellied Salmon, 14 19. *Boone, ib:* 44
Bate of the Sea, 18 116. *Byssen*, 15 2
Becht fish, 14 23 *a. Butten, ibm:* 10
Black sea Star fish, 14 54.
Brachsmen, 15 25

C

Churling. Cornling, 14 12
Calliques. Changable fish, 14 12
Clupea. Coloured fish, ibm:
Calculosous Purple ibm:

Cock

Cock fish, 14 20 33.
Channa. Channus 14 20
Chromis. Cremys, Castagnus. ibid.
Cracin. Cracinus. ibm.
Crow fish, ibid. Chalbote, 14 22
Cure fish, 14 22. & 15 26
Cabote, ibid. Chabot, 15 32
Coxe fish, 14 22 42. & 15 26.
Cockatrice fish, 14 23 Cristed fish, ib.
Conger, 14 23 a. 25 a.
Cod, Cod fish, 14 24 a. & 15 25.
Cacarell fish, 14 24 a. 27
Cole fish. Codling, 14 24 a.
Carpe, 14 19 27 & 15 8 66.
Cheyn. Capitis. Chub fish, 14 27
Carsh. Cyprinus Clavatus, 14 27.
Charax. Cagarell, 14 27
Cramp fish, 14 28 & 15 37 38 & 16 (38
Calvaria Marina, 14 29
Crevite. Crevise fish. Crefish, 14 30
Crab Crab fish, 14 32 32 b. & 15 43
Cockle, 14 34 35 49 & 16 27
Corall Cockle, 14 34.
Champhered, Channelled, or Crumpled Cockle, 14 35 Concha Echinate, ib.
Champhered or Crisped Oyster, 14 38.
Chama. Clamme shell, 14 38.
Concha Varia. Conchula Variata, 14 38
Cornered Welk, 14 40 Cleine Schnecke,
Conchylus Operculum, 14 42 (14 41
Conchles Testa, ibm. 43
Carved, or Crumpled Snaile Shell, ib: 44
Crumpled Navill Shell, 14 44
Cutt. Cuttle fish. Calamarie, 14 45
Cornuta Piscis, ibm. 48 (& 15 31
Cornett fish Shell, 14 42 48 Cigale, ib:
Conchile. Conchilus, ibm: 49 (57
Carcharia. Cleiner Hound fish, 14 55
Canicula Saxatilis, ibm: 55
Crook-back Prane Cancellus, ibm: 57
Case, or Canell Worme 15 1.
Clippe. Coryphena, 15 4
Crange. Crangon, 15 6
Cyprinus Monstrosus, 15 8 66
Carved Star fish, ibm: 10 Cestreus, 11
Cornicula Mystacis, 15 12
Concha Venera. Cuntshell, ibm: 19.
Circled Venus Winckle 15 19
Calculus Matricis, 15 19
Concha Imbricata, ibm: 21
Crisled Larke fish, ibm. 23.
Grammet, ib: 24 Cuculus Piscis ib: 26
Capitoleus, 15 29 Cop. Cap, ibm. 32
Camel back Globe fish, or Lumpe fish, ib:
Canis Carcharias, 15 42. (35
Cow of the sea. Cow fish, 15 46
Cow Whale, 15 46 Combe fish, ib: 60
Coracius. Cephalus, 15 68
Cat fish, 16 13. Cyonoeide, ibm. 15
Cashily fish. 16 36 Centaure fish, ibm:
Calse fish, 16 34 40 (39
Cantharis of the water, 16 42.
Cetus. Cete, 16 43 Carpfen, 14 20
Cucumber fish. or Cocomber of the sea,
Cow Raya, 15 39 (16 45
Cornett Perewinckle 14 42
Crabben, 14 32 a. b.

D

Dolphin, 14 1 to 9 41 52 58 & 18 110
Dick, 14 1 a. & 15 33 Dab, 14 9
Dialated Purple shell fish, 14 12
Delcon, 14 20 Donzelle, ibm: 25 a.
Dace. Dare fish, 14 27. Dactilus, ibm
Double Channelled Cockle, ibm: 35 (36
Draco Marinus. Dragon fish, 14 48
Done Hound, 14 55 (& 15 59
Duck bill Sword fish, 14 51 a.
Delphinus. Delphin, 14 52
Dog fish, 14 55 & 15 42 & 16 10
Dentale, 15 63 Dragon Beare, 16 7 8
Dragon Horse. Dragon Wolfe, 16 7
Divell fish. Damon Marine, 16 39

E

Eyed Sole fish, 14 9 Eleponts, ib: 25 a
Eucrasicholus, 14: 12 Esels-Hub, ibm:
Exocetus, 14 23 & 15 24 (38
Eagle fish, 14 24 a. & 16 46.
Eele Lamprey. Elepowte, ib: 25 a & 15
Eele, 14 25 26 & 15 7 56 (9
Escallop, 14 33 39 Eared Cockle, ibm
Engraven Sprawne, 14 57 (34
Eare shell, 15 5 Evopus, ibm: 25
Eckestrauben Schneckle, ibm. 20
Eschroch, 15 39 Engel fish, ibm. 51
Eagle fish, 15 41 & 16 46
Equus Fluminis Equus Nili, 16 32
Egyptian water Horse, & Swine, ib: 32
Echidna, 16 2 Echeneis, 15 1
Ephemera, 15 1 Eyed Ray, ib: 40
Elephant Whale, 15 49 & 16 34

F

Flooke. Flounder, 14 10.
Fish, 14 11 12 16 Felcken ibm: 19
Frille, 14 12 23 a. Frillen, 15 2
Frombder fish, 14 20 50 & 15 67
Fish with a little Beard, 14 24.
French Lamprey, ib. 25 Furn fish, 27
Flaschling, 14 29. Finger shell, ib: 36
Fork fish, 14 28 & 16 46 & 19 90
Flying Fish, 14 16 28 & 16 44 46 & 18
Furrowed Cockle, 14 34 (116
Flam Muscheln, 14 38
Finger Welke, & Winckle, 14 40 52
Fingered Stachell shell, 17 48
Frombder Whale fish, 14 50
Frogg fish, ibm. 53 & 15 36
Flack Hound, 14 55
Fishling, 15 1 Fellen, ibm 2
Feder Cope 15 4 Frasling, ib: 11
Fretted Star fish, ib: 10 Frasz ib: 42
Flamlingen, Fillett fish, 15 28
Far Cuttle, ibm. 31 62
Fox fish, 15 42 Frashund, ibm: 42.
Frogg Taile, 16 10 Flator, ib: 16
Finned Syren, 16 17 Faulcon fish 22
Flack fish. Fishkeeke 16 43
Feather Shell fish, 16 45
Fish with many feete, 15 31
Flea of the water, 16 33.
Finned Scorpion fish, 14 47
Finned Snaile fish, 14 23
Finny footed Syren, 16 20
Fly of the water, 15 63
Flying Syren, 16 19 30
Feather of the sea, 16 45

G

Gold Streine, or Streymer, 14 10 24 a.
Graling. Grovelling, 14 12
Grundling, 14 12 & 15 2
Gravell Purple, 14 12 Gabot, ib: 22
Grosten Rotten, 14 19 Garis, ib: 27
Golden Eye, 14 20 Golden Head, ibm.
Gornard, 14 22 & 15 26 (& 15 68
Glaucus, 14 20 & 15 14 42 & 10 71
Gesch-Lecht, 14 20 Gold fish, ib: 27 a
Gad, Garus, Goberge, 14 24 a.
Grundele, or Ground-Eele, 14 24
Grill, Grillus, 14 25 a. & 16 40
Guajcaus, 14 26. Gamrel, 14 30.
Gresling, 14 27 & 15 2
Garnished Carpe, 14 27
Globe fish, 14 29. & 15 65 35
Glatter Rouch, 14 28 Gobion, 15 17 22
Glat Muscheln, 14 35
Glat Bandel Muskle, 14 35
Ghim Muscle, 14 38 Grebling ibid.
Grosser Tunny, 14 49.
Gladius Piscis, 14 51
Goose-Swine fish, 14 52
Goose fish, 14 52. & 16 41
Glob-Star fish, 14 54
Galeus Acanthias, 14 55
Geflackter Hound fish, ibid.
Gravel Dog-fish, ibid.
Galeus Rhodius, 14 58
Gudgion, Gogton, 15 2 17 Gob, ibid.
Goff, Guffe, 15 2 Gable, Gabler, 15 3
Gehar-Nischter Red fish, 15 3
Gnell fish, 15 9
Glanis Glanin, 15 15
Grave maker, 15 16 Grab maker, ibid.
Great Gobion, 15 17
Gett Muskle, 15 19
Grosser Oyster-Muskle, 15 21
Galber, 15 24 Golden Galber ibid.
Gurnart. Gornart, 15 26
Gaernaett, ibid.
Gray Gurnard, ibid.
Golden Polle, ibid
Gibber, 15 29
Grosser Eschroch, 15 39
Glatter-Spiegolroch, 15 40
Galeus Glaucus, 15 42

Great,

Great, or Grosser Hound fish, 15 42
Goute Fish, 15 51 Groskopff, ibi: 68
Gadbree of the Sea, 15 50
Grasshopper of the water, 16 29
Grillen. Grillus Serviatalis, ibm. 40
Grape fish. Grape of the sea, 16 45
Gropp, 15 32 Glezling, 16 42
Great Ham Muscle, 14 58
Grundell, 14 12 Griffin fish, 18 13
Gull. Gull fish, 15 32
Gliffi Cuttell, 15 31 Gitzle, 14 57
Goblin of the sea, 16 1
Glowrme of the Sea, 16 42
Ger-Whale, 16 43 Gezelett, 14 12
Great Sow of the sea, 16 23
Gold Forn, 14 20

H

Haus. Hus, 14 1 a.
Hound's tongue, Horse tongue, 14 9
Holybutt Hippoglosse fish, 14 9
Herring. Herringart. Haringen, 14 12
Hagele. Hadling, 14 19
Huch. Hosen. Huechen, 14 19
Hetsetus 14 12 Hepatus, ibn. 20
Hafar piscis, 14 20
Harpe-fish, 14 22 & 15 3 26
Hurling, 14 23 a Hautin, ib. & 15 13
Hake. Haca. 14 24 a.
Haberdine. Haddock 14 24 a.
Hecht. 14 23 a Hood fish, ibm: 26
Hagen. Hacken 14 24 a.
Hafele. Hulling, 14 27
Hautinck, ibid: & 15 13
Hodghog-Lump fish. 14 29
Heracleotick Crab, ibid: 33 a. b.
Horse Muskle. Hog fish shell, 14 36
Horned Scorpion fish, 14 47
Horne fish, ibid. 48 & 16 28
Hogerling. Hornstiffle, 14 57
Hogeagerinea, 14 57
Hausen, 14 58 Heidox fish, ibid. 29
Hamme Muskle, ibm: Hippurus, 15 4
Hirmophrodite Carpe, 15 8
Horn-lip Luci Pearch, 15 12
Hare fish, 15 23
Hogeback Whale, 15 29
Hoger Wall, ibid.
Hore, ibid.
Horse Leech, 15 30 Hirudo, ibid.
Huyghe, 15 41
Hound fish, 15 42 55 & 16 12 14
Heart, or Heart like Crab, 15 43
Herill, 15 44 Hairy Whale, 15 46
Haarwall, 15 46
Hirsuta Cetenea, 15 49
Hedghog fish, 15 53
Hipocampus, 15 59
Hipotamus Insect, ibid.
Houperon, 15 66 Huterus, ibid.
Hipotame, 16 5 32
Horse of the Sea, 16 5 & 15 49 & 16 5 6 32

Hipopotamus, 16 5 Hog fish, 16 9 23
Horle Pole, 16 16
Horned Salmon, 16 28
Horse of Nilus, 16 32 Hoga fish, 16 33
Hoga of Venice, 16 33
Hogs head fish, ibid. Haneckeit, 16 43
Hill Whale, 16 43 Herillwall, ibm:
Hundle, 14 55 Hogeschumpe, 15 35
Horn Whale, 15 47
Horse Worm of the Sea, 15 59
Horne of the Sea, 15 63

I

Island fish, 14 24 d
John, or Poor John, ibm.
Jacobs Muckle, 14 33
Imbossed Perewinckle, 14 42
Indian Sea Snail shell, 14 44
Imbossed Star fish, 15 10
Junckerlin 15 25
Jud, 15 42 Ister, 15 64

K

Koruling, 14 12
Kings Mantle fish, 14 20
Kramet fish, ibm.
Kite fish, 14 22, and 15 27
Keling, 14 24 a Kutt 14 27
Karpkaras, 14 27 Krab 14 32 a b
Kaat Muscheln, 14 38
Kuttelfisch, 14 45 & 15 31
Kinckhornen, 14 48
Kleiner hund fisch, 14 55, & 15 42
Krebsle, 14 57
Kanelworm, 15 1. Kanell nasseln, ibm.
Kressen, 15 2 Klipfish, 15 4
Knotty Star fish, 15 10
Knotted Welke, 15 20
Kobellerch, 15 23
Kramet fisch, 15 24
Kings Sea Messenger, ibm.
Kopff, ibm: Kap, 15 32 Kopt, ibm:
Kaulrapp, ibm: Kerderle, 16 33
Karder, 16 33 34 Kaferlin, 16 42
Karckwall, 16 43
Knotted Oyster, 14 38
Karas, 14 27 Karpfen, ibm.

L

Lambs tongue, 14 9
Little tongue fish, ibm:
Luce, Lucie, 14 18 23 a
Lasches, 14 12 Lake Salmon, 14, 19
Lepresie Fish, 14 20 Liver fish, ibm:
Lucerna, 14 22 Lanterne fish, ibid.
Lyra, ibm. and 15 3
Lucius, 14 23 a
Loach, 14 24, and 15 2
Lesser Saupe, 14 24 a
Leopardus Piscis, ibm. Ling, ibm.

Lamprell, 14 25 25 a
Lamprey, 14 25 Lempron, ibm.
Lemprid, ibid. Lemphern, ibm.
Lugston, ibid.
Lampetra Serpentina, ibid. a
Lamprillon, ibm. a
Leuciscus, 14 27
Leucorinus, ibid. Lompe, ibid.
Lumpe fish, 14 29, and 15 35
Lobster, 14 30, 31 and 15 34
Locusta Marina, 14 30
Lang Schale, 14 36
Long Muscle, ibid.
Loligo 14 45, and 15 31.
Lacertus, 14 49
Little fish, 15 1 Lobworm, ibid.
Lot de Mer, 15 9 Lote, ibid.
Lucioperca, 15 11
Lucy-Pearch, 15 11 12
Lucilius, 15 11 Lanatus, ibid.
Little round Gudgion, 15 17
Lesser Posten, 15 24
Leim fish, 15 28
Leech, 15 30 59
Lowch Leech, 15 30
Lake, ibid. Lychelake, ibid.
Lesser Calamary, 15 31
Lesser Sea Cut, ibid.
Lesser Silurus, 15 33
Louse of the Sea, 15 36, & 16 33
Lamia Piscis 15 42
Lizard fish, 15 67
Lacertus Peregrinus, ibid.
Lupe fish, 16 7 Limpyn 16 18 27
Lempett, 16 18
Libella Florialis, 16 41
Lamp fly, 16 42 Lax, 16 43
Lark fish, 15 23 Leoper fish, 14 20
Locust of the Water, 16 40

M

Merzungen, 14 9
Meerbutten, 14 10
Mort, 14, 12 Meerfrille, ibid.
Meerseelen, ibid Minow, ibid. 12 23 a
Membras, 14 12 Muddy Purple, ibid.
Merle of the Sea, 14 20
Merula Piscis, ibid. Mormyle, ibid.
Mormylus, ibid. Mormyrus, ibid.
Marmelbrachsme, Malbrachsme ibid.
Mager, ibid. Milvago, 14 22
Milvus Piscis, ibid. Meermye, ibid.
Menoy, 14 23 a Minutus, ibid.
Milling. Mulling, ibid.
Morhuell, 14 24 a
Meerhuell, ibid. Milcher, ibid.
Mole fish, ibid. Marling, ibid.
Marlanus, ibid. Marlangus, ibid.
Molua, ibid. Myrus, 14 25 a
Murena, ibid. Mustella, ibid.
Meerseckel, 14 26
Monks hood fish, ibid.

Mugilis,

Mugilis, 14 27. Mugil, ibid. & 15 11.
Mullet, 14 27 & 15 10 11
Myn, 14 27 Monen, ibid.
Macrill. Macrell, 14 27, 49
Meerbamble, 14 27 Maena, ibid.
Menula, 14 21
Millers Thumb, 15 26 32
Milvus Piscis, 15 27 Meerliff, 15 28
Meerschneyn, 15 29
Mull, 15 32 Molehout, 15 35
Merlaiz, 15 36 Meerfell, ibid.
Mullet Dog fish, 15 42
Maia 15 43
Monstrous Sea Swine, 15 44
Monoceros of the Sea, 15 46
Maned Whale, ibid. Meernasslen, ibid.
Monstrous Sea Satyre, 15 48
Monstrum Marinum, ibid.
Meerwander, ibid. Merenan, 16 1
Man-Marine, 16 1
Man Fish, 16 1 19
Mermaid, 15 2 20
Meermaid double tailed, 16 4
Meer Schlange, 16 15
Meermaid with feet, 16 20
Monster of a Ray, 16 25
Maculous, or spotted Cramp fish, 16 38
Marine Demon, 16 39
Monstrous Sea Satyre, 16 39
Meer-Teufell, ibid.
Mubeme, 16 40 Maculo, 16 43
Monstrous flying Fish, 16 46
Mugle, 14 27 Muter, 14 36
Monoceros Whale, 15 46
Mastopogon, 15 66
Mouth of the Water, 16 33
Maid. Maids, 14 28
Meerbar, 14 32 Meerbarling, ibid.
Meerkrab, 14 32 a b
Meercrabben, ibid. Meertaschen, ibid.
Meertaube, 14 28
Muskle, 14 33 36, and 15 19
Michaels Muscle, 14 33
Muscheln. Muschell, 14 33 34
Maler Muscheln, 14 35
Musile, 14 36
Marmuscheln, 14 36 37 38
Mancherley, 14 41
Milky Perewinkle, 14 42
Mother of Pearl shell, 14 44, and 15 5
Margaritifera Cochlea, 14 44
Meerschneck, ibid Meerboone, ibid.
Meerspinn, 14 45 Mearscorp, 14 46
Murex, 14 48, and 15 19
Marbled Stachell shell, 14 48
Milky Stachell shell, ibid.
Macrillen, 14 49
Makrell. Mackerell, ibid.
Maqueralse, ibid. Meer-Heidox, ibid.
Meerkrott, 14 53 Meerstern, 14 54
Meegeisz, 14 57 Mantis, ibid.
Meerseelen, 15 1 Mettlen, ibid.
Magworme, ibid.
Meerputten, 15 7
Monstrous Carp, 15 8
Mustella Fluviatilis, 15 9 Moserle, ib.
Mullet shell fish, 15 10
Moon shell fish, 15 10. 35 61
Meeralet, 15 11
Meerblawling, 15 14
Meerstichling, ibid.
Meergob, 15 17
Mutter muscheln, 15 19. Matriculus, ib.
Meergropp, 15 23.

N

Noble White Fish, 14 19
Newer, 14 20 Newling, ibid.
Nose fish, 14 24 & 15 13
Nine Eyed Eele, 14 25
Norling, 14 27
Nagel shell. Nagelschale, 14 36
Nagel-Muscheln, ibid.
Navel Snale Shel, 14 44
Nabell Schneck, ibid.
Nymphs horn of the Sea, 14 48
Naked Dog fish, 14 55
Niger Piscis, 15 22 Nasselwall, 15 29
Nagell roch, 15 40
Nasslen, 15 46 Naszwall, 15 47
Nose Whale, ibid. Nautilus, 15 62
Nautick shell, ibid.
Nagmaul fish, 15 65 Nereide, 16 2
Navel shell, 16 5
Norwegian Sea Serpent, ibid. 15
Neptune God of the Sea, 16 26
Nymph of the Sea, 16 27
Neckle, ibm. Norwarfrack, 16 43
Nachtwall, ibid. Nordwhale, ibm.
Nailed or Studded Ray, 15 40
Neptuns Hunters Trumpet, 15 63
Newnaug, 14 25 a
Nosed Ray, 15 39

O

Orphe. Orphus, 14 20
Orada, 14 27 Orffe, ibid.
Orbe fish, 14 29, & 15 65
Owl fish, 14 29 & 16 24
Oval Lump fish, 14 29
Orbe Cockle, 14 35 Oyster, 14 37 38
Ostre. Oster, 14 38
Orcyn. Orcynus, 14 49
Orca, 14 52 & 15 29 & 16 28
Ostration, 15 14 Oyster-cockle, 15 21
Ouzel Fish, 15 24. & 14 20
Ocean Carp, 15 24
Oblong Cuttle, 15 31
Oblong Globe Fish, 15 35
Oxyrrhynchus Raja, 15 39
Oxe Ray, 15 39
Occulated Ray, 15 40
Ocean Sea Horse, 15 49
Ocean Elephant Whale, ibid.
Oxe Whale, ibid.
Orobon 15 52 Orthra-goriscus 15 61
Oval Pourcantrell, 15 62
Oceani Pocca, 16 23
Ocean Swine or Sow, ibid.
Ocean Wolf, 16 31
Oxe of the Sea, 16 32
Ocean Elephant, 16 34
Ocean Sea Unicorn, 16 35
Ocean Phoca, 16 40
Ocean Sea Snail, 16 41
Ocean Wild Boar, 16 34
Ocean Sea Boar, 16 37

P

Plase, 14 10 Ply, ibid.
Plityse, ibid.
Pylcher. Pylcharde, 14 12
Peele Fish, ibid.
Purple Shell Fish, ibid 12 42
Purpura, ibid. Pelagia, ibid.
Poole Carpe, 14 19 Pond Trout, ibid.
Pitzling, ibid.
Perch. Pearch, 14 20 27
Perca, 14 20
Punter Newling, ibid. Phycis, ibid.
Peacock fish, ibid. & 15 23
Parroquet fish, 14 20
Parrot fish, ibid.
Punterhane, 14 23
Pike, 14 23 a Pike fish, ibid.
Pfrill, ibid. Parme, 14 24
Picarell, 14 24 a Poor John, ibid.
Prick, 14 25 Pomte, 14 25 a
Porcus Fluviatilis, 14 27
Porcus Nili, ibid. Pollarde, ibid.
Paddell, 14 29 Prawne, 14 32 & 15 6
Poffen fish, 14 28 & 16 46
Pigeon Fish, 14 28 Peilstert, ibid.
Pecten, 14 33 Prickly Cockle, 14 34
Painted Cockle, 14 35
Pearl Muskle, 14 36 58
Pearl Muter, 14 36
Pyrot, ibid Pytot, ibid.
Pfesser Muscheln, 14 38
Periwinkle, 14 40 42.
Pentadactilo Turbo, 14 40
Purura Operculum, 14 42
Purpur-Schnecken, 14 42 49
Perewinckle, 14 42
Persian Sea Snail, 14 44
Pourcuttle, 14 45 & 15 31 62
Pourcontrell, ibid.
Postken, 14 46 Posten, 15 24
Petermauche, 14 48 Peters-fisch, ibid.
Pompili, 14 49 Porpose, 14 52
Purpesse, ibid. Phocena, ibid.
Porcus Piscis, ibid.
Prickly Sturgion, 14 57 Prane, ibid.
Pinna, 14 58 Perna, ibid.
Pisciculus, 15 1 Prickly Loach, 15 2
Pimper Eele, 15 7 Pipe Eele, ibid.
Pfull-fisch, ibid. Putten, ibid.

Pawten,

*

Powten, 15 9 Powte, ibid.
Powtle, ibid.
Painted Venus Winkle, 15 19
Porcellana, ibid.
Panther Whale, 15 30
Polypus, 15 31
Pediculus Marinus, 15 36 & 16 33
Pointed Rays 15 39
Pungar Crab, 15 43
Pagurus, ibid. Pagrus, 14 20
Poressa 15 43
Palmer Worm Whale, 15 49
Peten Piscis, 15 60
Pipe shell, or Sea Pipe, 15 63
Pilgrime Lizard Fish, 15 67
Peregrine Lizard fish, ibid.
Perfect Man of the Sea, 16 1
Poyseter, 16 16 Physalus, ibid.
Priste, 16 18 Platanista, ibid.
Pedale or footed Meremaid, 16 20
Python, 16 21
Pig of the Sea, 16 23
Pocca, ibid Phoca, 16 34
Pork of the Sea, 16 32
Pan of the Sea 16 39
Pedale Pan, ibid.
Punie, 16 42
Pen of the Sea, 16 45
Pastinaca, 16 46
Piscis variatus, 14 12
Punter fish, 14 20
Pholis Piscis, 15 23
Partridg of the Sea, 14 9

Q

Quercelens, 16 33
Quill of the Sea, 16 45
Quep, 14 10

R

Raff, 14 10. Ruffe, 14 27
Kegling, 14 10
Rottele, 14 19 27
Rotten, 14 19. Rutten, 14 25 a and 15 9
Rott, 14 19 27
Rott-huechen, 14 19 Rutt, 15 9
Rock fish, 14 20.
Rotter Punter fish, ibid.
Rooter Kramet fish, ibid.
Red Orphus, ibid.
Ruppen, 14 25 a
Red fish, 14 22 & 15 26 3
Raven fish, 14 22
Roman Sea Hen, ibid.
Rod fish, 14 24 a
Reyn fish, ibid. Rufelcken, 14 25 a
Roach. Roch fish, 14 27 28
Rochett, 14 27 and 15 26
Roachell, 14 27 Rutilus, ibid.
Roiengel, ibid. Riemling, ibid.
Round Pearch fish, ibid.
Rappe, ibid. Rapax, ibid.
River Mugle, ibid. Risele, ibid.
Risela, ibid. Ryserle, ibid.
Risling, ibid. Rupp, 15 9
Ray, 14 28 Raja 28, & 15 39
Roundling, 14 29
Rootes, 14 32
Round Crab, 14 [illegible] b
Rouchling, 14 28
Rouchfarb, ibid.
Rouch, ibid.
Ratte-pointe, ibid
Rough Cockle, 14 34
Rauche Muscheln, ibid.
Ronnd Cockle, 14 35
Ruzell Muscheln, ibid.
Round plain Perewinkle, 14 42
Rugged Perewinkle, ibid.
Rake fish, 14 50 & 16 35
Rana Piscatrix, 14 53
Ratlachter Hund fish, 14 55
Reedworm, 15 1
Ratlacht, ibid.
Rotlache, 15 46 68
Rugget, 15 9
Ruffelck, ibid.
Rorel fish, 15 10
Roubling, 15 11
Razor Nose fish, 15 13
Ratlachter-Rundt-Kopff, 15 25
Rotbard, 15 26
Raan kutel, 15 31
Rock Cuttel, ibid.
Ruchling, 15 32
Ruchen-schnottholfs, 15 35
Raja Levis, 15 39
Raucher Sterne Roch, 15 40
Raja Clavata, ibid.
Rhinoceros of the Sea, 15 47
Rosmare. Rosmarus, 15 49
Rusor, ibid.
Rostinger, ibid.
Rohart, ibid.
Rossle, 15 59
Rorle, 15 63
Rapplin, 15 68
Roken, 16 25
Ray Monster, ibid.
Rat of the Water, ibid.
Ruckle, 16 33
Raven Whale, 16 43
Russ Whale, ibid.
Rore, ibid.
Rostinger, ibid.
Round end Cockle, 14 49
Remora, 15 1

S

Sea Cornet, 14 6 12 42 48
Starred Antaceus, 14 6
Starry Tuck, ibid.
Sole, 14 9
Sole fish, 15 59
Spiegelbot, 14 9
Spiegel-zunge, ibid.
Sandling, ibid.
Streine, 14 10
Streymer, ibid.
Salmon, 14 12 13 14 15 19
Salmon Mort, 14 19
Salmon Trout, 14 12 18 19
Schaid, 15 33
Shad, 14 12
Spiringart, ibm.
Sea Bramble, ibid.
Spirinch Gezelet, ibid.
Sparling, ibm.
Smerlin. Smerling, ibid. and 15 2
Smelt, ibid. and 15 17
Sprott. Strote, ibid.
Schiler, ibid.
Skipper Salmon, 14 19
Samlett, ibid.
Skegger Salmon, ibid.
Selmling, ibid.
Skelliton of a Salmon, 14 17
Sea Peacock, 14 20 and 15 23
Sea Hen fish, 14 20 22, and 15 26
Sea Perch, 14 20
Sea Merle, ibid.
Sea Parrot, ibid.
Sea Leoper, ibid.
Schwarts-blawe, ibid.
Sea Rappe, ibid.
Sea Crow fish, ibid.
Schroll, ibid.
Skrollen, ibid.
Schrellele, ibid.
Swallow fish, ibid.
Seehen, 14 22
Skeyn fish, ibid.
Sea Raven fish, ibid.
Sea Cocoe, ibid.
Sea Lyra, ibid.
Sea Cockatrice, 14 23
Steinrup, ibid.
Sea Lerch, 14 23 & 15 23
Spit fish, 14 23 a
Sea Pike, ibid.
Spiss fish, ibid.
Squer, or Skwire fish, ibid.
Small spit fish, ibid.
Sea Hecht, ibid.
Sandile, ibid. and 15 17
Sand Eele, ibid. & 15 17
Schmerle, 14 24
Sengele, ibid.
Stock fish, 14 24 a
Sprat, ibid.
Smaris, ibid.
Skeysserling, ibid.
Saupe, ibid.
Salpa, ibid.
Streymbrachsme, ibid.

Shell fish, ibid.
Star Lamprey, 14 25
Serpentine Lamprou, 14 25 a
Sea Powte, ibid.
Sea Eele Powte, ibid.
Satchel Eele, 14 26
Sea Sickel, ibid.
Schrall, 14 27
Schup fish, ibid.
Studder, ibid. Stein-karpfen, ibid.
Scheysserling, ibid. Skait, 14 28
Smooth Ray, 14 28 Snouted Ray, ibid.
Sharp Nosed Ray, 15 29
Stachel-Roche. Sea Pigeon, 14 28
Sea Owle fish. Sea Scule, 14 29
Schuchen-Lumpfish. Snot, ibid.
Snotolfe. Schunder, ibid.
Shrimpe 14 32 57
Sprawne, 14 32 Suswasser krab, ib. a b
St. Jacobs Muscle, 14 33
St. Michaels Muscle, ibid.
Smooth head Scollop, ibid.
Scollop, 14 33
Sea Crab, 14 32 a b and 15 43
Single eared Cockle, 14 34
Stabel-Muscheln, ibid.
Sallet Cockle, 14 35
Streym-Muscheln, ibid.
Sea finger shell, 14 36
Sleeve shell, 14 36 45 and 15 31
Smooth Oyster, 14 38 Stein, ibid.
Strauben-Schneckle, 14 41
Scaled and Studded Winckle, 14 42
Snail shell. Schneckle, 14 43, 44
Sea snail shell, 14 44
Sinwell Schneckle, ibid.
Scuttle. Sea Cut, 14 45
Storm Fish. Scorpfish, 14 46
Scorpion fish, 14 46 47 & 15 23
Scorpius minor, 14 47
Spider fish. Sea Dragon, 14 48
Sea Weaverne. Sea Nymphs Horn, ib.
Sea Trumpet. Stachell shell, ibid.
Stachell fish, ibid.
Scomber. Scombrus, 14 49
Sag fish. Serra Piscis, 14 50
Saw fish, ibid. and 15 35
Sword fish, 14 51 51 a and 16 35
Sweord, or Schwerd fisch. 14 51
Swert fish, ibid. (16 32
Sea Swine fish, 14 52 and 15 44 and
Sea Goose fish, ibid. and 16 41
Small Porpose, ibid.
Sea Frog, 14 53 and 15 18 36
Sea Toad, ibid.
Star fish, 14 54 and 15 10
Sea Apple fish. Smooth Star fish, ibid.
Stauden fish, ibid.
Sea Dog fish, 14 55 and 15 42
Star Dog fish. Sternhound, ibid.
Spotted Dog fish. Stone Dog fish, ibid.
Stein Hound, ibid. Sea Ape, 14 56
Simia Marina, 14 56
Sturgion, 14 57 58
Sturio. Stora. Stor, Styr, 14 57
Styrle. Small Sprawne, ibid.
Squilla Parva. Shrimpet, ibid.
Sea Shrimplet. Squilula, ibm.
Sea Prane. Spring-Krebsle, ibid.
Seegitzle, ibm. Storer, 14 58
Small Sturgion. Steck Muckle, ibid.
Small Ham Muckle, ibid.
Sea Worm. Schnabell, 15 1
Smal-Loach. Stainbyssen, 15 2
Sea Ear shell, 15 5 Strall Eele, 15 7
Silurus Nili, 15 9 33
Sea Lote, 15 9
Starred Eele powte, ibid.
Spur rowel fish, 15 10
Sea Sun, or Sun shell fish, ibid.
Sea Moon fish, ibid.
Schaidle. Schied, 15 12
Stike Nose. Spitz Nasz. 15 13
Sphyrena, ibid.
Salut. Saluten, 15 15 33
Schley. Schlig. Sly. Slyen, 15 16
Shoomaker fish, ibid.
Sea Tortois shell, 15 18
Schilt krot. Schilt Padde, ibid.
Sheild Frogg, ibid.
Spotted Venus Winckle, 15 19
Stauben Schneckle, 15 20
Sable Sandill, 15 22
Snail fish. Schneckling fish, 15 23
Scorpinides Pisces. Schleymling, ibid
Swag, or Swagbelly fish, ibid.
Spotted Sea Lark fish, ibid.
Schleym Larch, ibid.
Sea Thrush, Sea Ouzel fish, 15 24
Sacred Fish. Seebrachsmen, 15 25
Schonling, ibid. Seehasz, 15 26
Sea Swallow Fish, 15 27
Sea Kite fish, ibid.
Spotted Bindle Fish, 15 28
String Whale Bearded, 15 29
Scolopendra Whale, 15 29 45
Sanguisuga, 15 30 Sepia, 15 31
Slender Cuttle. Schiff cuttle, 15 31
Seehasz Cuttel. See squapp cuttel, ibid.
Salure. Salurus, 15 33, and 16 43
Schootholfs, 15 35
Sea Louse, 15 36
Scaled Crampfish, 15 37
Spotted Crampfish, ibid.
Smooth Ray, 15 39
Spiegel Roch. Starred Ray, 15 40
Sternroch. Studded Ray, ibid.
Skate. Skeate, 15 41
Sea Angel fish, ibid.
Squatus. Squatina, ibid.
Sow Hound fish, 15 42
Sea Fox fish. Smooth Dog fish, ibid.
Schlegel Hund. ibid.
Swin-Whale, 15 44 and 16 43
Scolopendra Cetacea, 15 45
Sea Monoceros, 15 46
Sea Unicorn, ibid. and 16 35
Sea Cow. Sea Scolopendra, 15 46
Sea Rhinoceros, 15 46
Spike Whale, 15 47
Satyre of the Sea, 15 48 and 16 39
Satyre Fish, 15 48 and 16 19 39
Sea Wonder. Sea Monster, 15 48
Sea Monster with a Human Face, ibid.
Sea Urchin fish, 15 53
Sea Wonder of Poland, 15 54
Skelleton of a Sea Horse, 15 59
Salamander of the Sea, ibid.
Sea Dragon. Sea Aspe. Sea Rossle, ibid.
Sea Horse Worm. Sea Leech, ibid
Sittard, 15 60 Schiff-kuttel, 15 62
Sea Pipe. Sea Trumpet, 15 63
Shell, or Sea Horn, ibid.
Skipper of the Water, 15 63
Schill, 15 65. Sea Lizard Fish, 15 67
Sea Goblin, 16 1 Sea Man, 16 1 19
Scaled Man of the Sea, 16 1
Syren, 16 2 20 30
Sea Horse, 16 5 6
Sea Wolf. Sea Lupe, 16 7
Sea Bear, 16 8
Sea Bull, 16 11. Sea Oxe 16 32
Sea Talbot or Hound, 16 14
Sea Serpent. Schlange, 16 15
Springwall, 16 16 28 43
Serpent Python, 16 21
Sus Marinus magnus, 16 23 43
Sele-Hound. Sauffwall, 16 24
Sea Nymph. Scottish Cockle, 16 27
Sea Boar, 16 29. Scate, 16 30
Syren sans Arms, 16 30
Sea Water Horse, 16 32
Sea Water Wolfe, 16 31
Sea Water Elephant, 16 34
Spotted Crampfish, 16 38
Sea Calf, 16 34 Sea Pan, 16 39
Sea Water Devil, 16 39
Sunderlize, 16 41
Sea Snale, 16 42
Spotted Whale 16 43
Schil-Whale, ibid.
Shellerynke. Schlicht-back, ibid.
Sea Pen. Sea Feather, 16 45
Sea Sword. Sea Saw, ibid.
Sea Eagle Fish, 16 46
Stichling, 15 14 Sea Boone, 14 44
Sea Weaver, or Weaverne, 14 48
Straddled Cockle, 14 25 Stern, 14 54
Sea Gadbrie, 15 50

T

Tick, 14 1 a
Tuck, 14 6 and 15 33
Tongue Fish, 14 9
Turbott. Turbutt, 14 10
Thornbutt. Tarbutten, ibid.
Tippich. Tippicher, ibid.
Trout, 14 12 19 18 and 15 59
Trutta, 14 12
Thrush-fish, 14 20 and 15 24

Truschen, 14 24 a
Thornback. Turtle-fish. Taube, 14 28
Thornbruchimen, 14 27
Tellina. Tell-Muschein, 14 35
Turbo. Troch Welke, 14 40
Top Welke. Trochus, 14 40
Tekele, 14 42
Turbo Maritus, 14 42 and 15 20
Torpor. Trumpet of the Sea, 14 48
Triangular Stachel shell, ibid.
Tunny. Tunnie, 14 49. and 15 14
Thunnus. Tracharus, 14 49
Turbo Digitatus, 14 52
Toad of the Sea. Torsch, 14 53
Toothed Star fish. Tree Starfish, 14 54
Thornhound, 14 55. and 15 42
Thorny Loach, 15 2
Trieche. Trischen, 15 9
Tamouhata, 15 54
Tench. Tinca, 15 16
Tortois shell, 15 18
Tridacna, 15 21
Tænnia Piscis, 15 28
Thorny oculated Ray, 15 40
Tunne Worm, 15 46
Tritons Trumpet, 15 63 Triton, 16 1
Tailed Frog, 16 10
Talbot of the Sea, 16 14
Teufelwall, Trolwall, 16 18
Triton with Wings, 16 19
Trinia Aquatica, 16 33
Trolwhale, 16 43
Thressa, 14 12 27
Thorn finned Snail fish, 15 23

U

Umber, 14 12 19 20 Vore, 14 12
Umbla. Umbra, 14 19
Vergadelle, 14 24 a
Vengeron. Vrffe fish, 14 27
Variable Prawne, 14 32
Urchin Cockle, 14 35
Unguis Marinus, 14 36
Umbellicum, 14 44, and 16 5
Urchin fish, 14 54
Venetian Dog fish, 14 55
Vulpes Rhodia, 14 58
Venetian Prawne, 15 6
Urchin Star fish, 15 10
Venetian Gobion, 15 17
Venus Cockle shell, 15 19
Venus Muckle. Venus Winkle, ibid.
Venetian Thrush fish, 15 24
Various coloured Ozell fish, ibid.
Vasszwall, 15 29
Venetian Crampfish, 15 37 38
Urehound, 15 41
Unicorn of the Sea, 15 46
Urchin of the Sea, 15 53
Venetian Moon fish, 15 61
Venetian Hoga, 16 33
Utelif, 16 35

W

White fish, 14 12 19 27 and 15 22
Whiting, 14 12 24 a and 15 17
Winged fish, 14 16 19
Wigling. Wisgan fish, 14 19
Wettling. Walmester, 14 23 a
Welwell. Wittling. Wytling, 14 24 a
Wisling. Wisser-Skeysserling, ibid.
Wallfurer. Walleiter, 14 25 a
Weysfish. Welsche-Agunen, 14 27
Worf-sling, ibid.
Wrinkled Cockle. 14 35
Winding Cockle, ibid.
Wrinkled Oyster, 14 38
Welke, 14 40 41 43 and 15 20
Wrinkle, 14 40
Winckle, 14 42 and 15 19
Whale, 14 49 and 15 29 49 and 16 16 (18 26
Wall-Tunny, 14 49
Wheel Starfish, 14 54
Well fish, 15 9 Worm Star fish, 15 10
Wall fisch. Whale Swine, 15 29
Wall-Nassel, ibid.
Waller. Walline. Wallarine, 15 33
Wasser Lousz, 15 36 and 16 33
Whale Ray, 15 39
Whale Hound, 15 42
Whale with many feet, 15 45
Whale Cow, 15 46
Whale Rhinoceros, 15 47
Worszbey, 15 49
Whale Oxe or Bear, 15 49
Water skipper. Water fly, 15 63
Water horse, 16 5 32
Water Bear, 16 8
Whirlepoole, 16 16 18
Wetterwall, 16 16
Winged Syren, 16 17
Winged Satyre fish, 16 19
Winged Triton, ibid.
Winged Men fish, ibid.
Water Rat, 16 25
Wasserschneckle, 16 27
Water grashopper, 16 29
Wasser Grillen, 16 29 40
Water Wolf, 16 31
Water Oxe, 16 32
Water Flea. Water Mooth, 16 33
Water Louse, ibid.
Water Grill. Water Locust, 16 40
Wasser Muheime, ibid.
Wagle, 16 41
Water Cantharis, 16 42
Water Glow worm, ibid.
Water Lamp fly. Wall louse, ibid.
Whale-fish. Wauge-Whale, 16 43
White Whale. Wintinger, ibid.
Wolfe fish, 18 112

Y

Young Tunny, 15 14

Z

Zungen. Zunglin, 14 9
Zorte, 14 12 Zirle, 14 24
Zien fish, 14 27
Zweierley fish, 14 27 and 15 2
Zinckeler. Zinckestrauben, 14 41
Zwerg-Krebslin, 14 57
Zwibell fish, 15 23
Zuberwall, 15 29 Zindell, 15 32
Zinde, 15 64 Zindell, ibid.
Zingell, ibid. Ziphius, 16 24
Zyffwall, 16 24
Zitterling. Zitterfish, 16 38

TO THE

Much Esteemed *ALLEN PENINGTON* Esq;

Doctor of *PHYSICK*:

AND TO

William Pennington Practitioner in *Physick*, his *Son* and *Heir*.

IT may be thought a Presumption in me (having been brought up only in Herauldry) *to Treat of things above my Sphere, and what belong more properly to* Doctors, *and* Chyrurgions. *It is true, yet give me leave to make this Appology; that though for the Practick there may be pleaded an insufficiency; yet as a lover of* Arts *and* Sciences, *it cannot be taken amiss to have the Theorick, and be acquainted as with their Instruments (which are in Arms) so with their Terms, which is for* Gentlemens *discourse; therefore as it is necessary for the Ingenious to know the one, so it is much satisfaction to be acquainted in the other (for Knowledge is no great Burthen) which is here drawn up into an easie Method for the benifit of such as be Discreet. And therefore is hoped will with others be as willingly accepted by You, which is all that is desired from him who is*

Your Devoted Friend Ready to Serve You,

Randle Holme.

CHAP. XVII.

1. I Have long insisted on the bearing of Animimals, or living Creatures unreasonable; distinguishing them according to their kinds, and forms; and as they had a similitude one too anther, which being finished; we proceed in the next place to treat of the most nobler Creature, which above all others is indued with reason and understanding; I mean **Man**: whom GOD hath given a reasonable Soul, and for whose sake He created all other things: subjecting them to His Soveraignity, that they should serve **Man**; and **Man** only should serve, and Glorifie his God, and Creator.

Man in the Creation of his Body is subject to a three fold Estate; to Live, to Dye, to Rise again. The first is to have a Body to live, and have a being therein: to enjoy that outward form and lineament of the Body; which as it is in its self, is divided into several parts and members; not the least, but it hath its peculiar term, or name, by which it is distinguished from its other (whither) external, or internal parts.

We shall then in the first place give you the several terms of Art used by Anatomists, and Chirurgions; for the sundry part of the Body: and to begin with the internals.

Terms for the several parts of the Head.

Brain.

The **Pericranion**, is the skin that covers all the Skull.

The **Dura Menine**, is the thin outward skin, or film, or membrane, or tegument that covers the Brain; and enwrappeth it about, sticking to the inside of the Skull.

The **Brain Tunnell**, which is a thin skin between the two Brains in the middle of the Head; called the **Torcular Vein** of the Brain, or **Sinus** of the **Dura Menynx**.

The **Cerebrum**, or Brain; which is divided in the middle with a duplicated membrane.

The **Cerebellum**, is the little Brain which lyeth in the hinder part of the Head: the **after Brain**.

The **Pia Mater**, is the Caul or Film, or thin skin, that covers the Brain in its several fouldings, ruts, or embossed knots.

The **Dura Mater**, is the outward Tunicles or Kells, which covers the Brain, and divides it from the **Cerebellum**.

The **Ventricles**, are four little Cells, or places in the Skull, in which the Brain lyeth.

The **Choroides**, are thin Membranes in form of Nets, that are called **Plexus Choroides**, the complication or thrumb Vessels of the Head. Called **Rete mirabile**.

The **Conarium**, is a Kernel sticking on the out side of the Brain, in form of a pine appla.

The **Labyrinthes**, or **Meanders** of the Brain; are the curious and manifest turning and twistings of the Brain, as it lyeth in the outward Film.

The **Gandule**, or Kernells called **Penealis**, being a round tuberous lump lying near the **Vertricles** like a Pine apple.

The **Periostium**, is a thin nervous Membrane or skin, which lyeth next the Skull under the **Pericranion**, and may be severed from it by the point of a knife.

The **Sinus** or **Canale** of the **Dura Menynx**; see Brain Tunell.

The **Crasse Menynx**, the skins dividing the Brain, see the Brain Tunnell. Called also the **Sythe** of the Brain.

The **Convolutions** of the Brain, are the several breaches or division, or running of the Film in which the Brain is closed. Called also the **Obicall circumvolutions** of the Brain.

The **Rillets**, are diverse branched, or creeping Fibres, or Veins which run dispersedly on both sides the **Dura Menynx**.

The **Corpus Callosum**, is the callous substance of the Brain, the marrow of the Head.

The **Fornix**, or arch of the Brain: is a kind of a vaulted Body which lyeth in the middle of the Brain, and is like a three footed bridge, or stool; gibbous imbowed and convex.

The **Barke** of the Brain.

The **Testicles** or **Buttocks** of the Brain, are particles of the Brain; and of the same substance, but of a little different colour.

The **Pelvis**, or **Infundibulum**, the Boson or Tunnel.

The **Mamillary Processes**, are the swelling of the Brain.

The **Double Tabulature** of the skull.

The **Region of the Brain**, the whole compass of the Brain, as it is compassed in with the **Dura Mater**.

The **Vermi-formes**, are wormy processes diversly orbiculated or rowled up, consisting of many particles transverse (or oblique or right) but coupled together by a thin Membrane. It is nothing else but the **Pia Mater** corugated, or foulded togethe, or crumpled up like a Worm.

The **Spinall Marrow**, is that silver Cord, mentioned *Eccles.* 12.6. and is the Brain lengthened from the hinder ventricles of the Brain, down the rack bone of the Neck, and Back.

Eyes.

The **Optick Nerves**, are both marrowey and membranous strings, which from the Brain, communicates to the Eye the sense of seeing.

The **Coat of the Eye**, is the cover of the Ball, or Apple of the Eye; of which there are four. The first **Adnata**, the second **Cornea**, the third **Uvea**, and the fourth **Aranea**.

The **Coition** of the **Optick Neves**; is the joyning together of the strings of the Eyes.

The **Motorick Nerves**, are those strings, or sinews which give motion to the Eyes; called **Tendons**

The **Gandule of the Eye**, is a Kernell in the upper part of the Eye near the outer angle, which serves as soft pillows that the Eyes be not offended in their motion, at the hardness of the bone.

The **Obicular Muscle**, or **Semicircular Muscle** of the Eye-lids; are those Muscle which give motion to them.

The **Bladder of the Eye**, is the hollow of the Eye above and below, which swelleth when the Eyes are bleared, or weepeth.

The **Muscles of the Eyes**, are Membranous tendons which compasseth the whole Eye, and grow to the horny, or glassy tunicle, or coat of the Eye; which tendons joyning together makes the **Albugo**, or white of the Eye, which give motion to the Eye, and are called,

The **Attollens**, or **superbus Muscle**; is seated above the Iris, and lifts up the Eye.

The **Deprimens**, or **humilis Muscle**; is that as draws the Eye downwards.

The **Adducens**, or **bibitorious Muscle**; is seated in the great angle, and draws the Eye inward to the Nose: this is termed, the **Gleeing Muscle**.

The **Abducens**, or **indignatorious Muscle**; it is seated on the out side, and draws the Eye to the lesser angle, or temples; and is called the **Scu-muscle** or **Disdainfull muscle**.

The **Orbe**, or **Vessel of the Eye**; is the hollow place or hole, where it is in the Skull.

The **Membranes of the Eye**; ar the Coats of the Eye: of which there are these several sorts.

The **Adnata membrane**, is the utmost Coat or cover of the apple of the Eye, and is termed the adherent, or cleauing Membrane. This is the white of the Eye; as some say, but others affirm it, to be but the cover of the white.

The **Innominata membrane**, is the true white of the Eyes, and is raised from the **Nervous tendons**, or **Chords** of the Muscles of the Eyes, determined near to the Iris, and under the **Adnata**, or **Conjunctive membrane**, **Coat** or **Ligament**: whether you please to call it.

The

The **Cornea membrane**, is the thick or hard Coat, of a thorny substance, which is round, fast, thin, transparent, bright polished, and smooth in the high part: but thick dark and obscure on the Back, or inner part.

The **Uvea**, or **Grapie membrane**; it lieth under the **Cornea coat**, is smooth on the outside, and rough within: and doth adhere to the said horny Membrane by certain surcles of Veins, and Arteries. This circle of the Eye causeth the **Iris**, or Rainbow, which in man is of diverse colours; and is called the **Chorioides**.

The **Aranea membrane**, or the **Cobweb coat**, it is also called the **Cristalloides coat**, or the looking glass, because it is bright and translucid. This is a very thin skin, and contains in it the Cristalline humour, which being broken, falls flat. This is the **Pupilla** or the Apple of the Eye.

The **Retina**, or **Reti-formis**, or **Net Membrane**; or net like body rather: being of a Brain like substance and is inclosed in the **Aranea Membrane**.

The **Foramen Uvea**, is the hole in the middle of the Grapie Membrane, in which the Pupil of the Eye resteth.

The **Pupilla**, or **Visio**; the sight, or apple of the Eye, the little circle in the Eye, or center of the Eye.

The **Orbiculus**, the **Orbe**, or **Ball of the Eye**; is the whole Eye as it is in the Orbe, or hole in the Skull.

The **Humours of the Eye**, are those moist and liquid, or waterish substance, that are contained between the several Coats or Membranes of the Eye: and they are called,

The **Tenuous**, or **thin Humour**, and of some called **Aqueus Humor**, because it is fluide and transparent like water; and the **Albugineous Humor**, because it is like the white of an Egg: it lyes between the **Aranea**, and **Retina Membranes**.

The **Cristalline Humour**, so called because of its splendor and brightness: it is called **Diaphanum Oculi**. It is a pure liquid substance, contained between the two Coats **Aranea**, and **Retina**; called also **Vitreous** or **Glassy Humor**.

The **Vitreous Humour**, or the **Glassy Humour**; it is a liquid humour, that in consistance and thickness is like to melted glass, and lyeth at the Back of the Eye, between the **Adnata**, and the **Cornea Membranes**.

Nose.

The **Ethmoeides**, or **Spongy bone**: situated in the top of the Nose at the Skull. Called also the **Spongoides**.

The **Mammillary Processes** of the Nose; are the outward parts of the inward Nose; which are the Organs of smelling. They are two small things like **Nerves**, round & slender, & arise out of the Marrowey substance of the Brain in the basis of the Nose; and called the **Nerves of smelling**.

The **Gristle of the Nose**, called **Cartilago Nasi** is the pertition of the Nostrils in the middle of the Nose.

The **Wing of the Nose**, is the soft and bottom part of the Nose next to the joyning of the Face.

[ ]

Mouth.

The **Fauces**, or **Os**; is all the void cavity which is between the Lips, and the roots of the Chaps.

The **Lips** are the fleshy part of the Mouth, fugous and moveable. Termed the **Libra**.

The **Puffs of the Cheek**; are the skins each side the Mouth within.

The **Pallate** is the upper part of the Mouth; the skin whereof is somwhat rugous, rough or wrinkled: the **Roofe of the Mouth**.

The **Uvula**, is a peece of flesh in the Roofe of the Mouth, at the top of the Throat. It is called also the **Columella**, and the **Plectrum**; the **Gargareon**, and **Gargulio**: the two last taken from the gargleing or washing of the Mouth.

The **Membrane of the Mouth**, is the skin that covers the whole Cavity of the Mouth, and spreadeth over the Gums, and covereth the upper part of the Lips; which skin being re-duplicated, maketh the **Uvula**.

The **Squadratus muscle**, or square muscle, is one of the muscles in the puff of the Cheeks, and Lips.

The **Buccinator**, or the **Trumpeter Muscle**; is another muscle in the puff of the Cheeks and Lips, by which is the help of Speech, and sound of the voice.

The **Muscles of the Lips**, are the four muscles each side, two in the upper Lip, and two in the nether Lip; which cause their motion.

The **Suture of the Pallate**, is the Seam in the bone in the Roofe of the Mouth.

The **Holes of the Pallate**, or Mouth bone, called **Foramen Pallati**, are two holes at the end of the foresaid Suture through which the Brain is purged, and by holding ones breath we may exspire and inspire, breath in and out by the Nose.

The **Coat of the Pallate**, is the skin on the Roofe of the Mouth.

The **Crenas**, is the Rugous, or Rugged skin on the Roofe or Pallate of the Mouth.

The **Plectrum vocis**, the Quill of the voice, which is that which is called the **Uvula**, for the said peece of flesh hanging between the **Larynx**, and the Cavity of the Nostrils, it makes a repercussion of the aire, and it issues out of the throttle.

The **Fauces** or the Chaps, of some taken for the whole Cavity of the Mouth: but generally it is taken for the Back or lower part of the Mouth, next the Throat.

The **Tonsilla**, or the **Almons of the Throat**, which are **Glandules** seated in both sides of the Mouth at the root of the Tongue, on either side one. Termed also **Antiades** and **Paristhmus**.

The **Parotis** ---------- or the **Almonds of the Ears**, which are two Glandules seated in the Mouth, under the root of the Ears. Called also, the **Parotick Kernells**.

The ---------- are **Glandules** growing at the root of the **Larynx** on the sides of the rough Artery.

The **Isthmus** is a place or space between the **Larynx** and **Pharynx**, seated in the Throat like a neck of Land between two Seas.

Tongue

Tongue.

The **Lingua**, or the Tongue: is the instrument both of Speech and teast.

The **Connexion** of the tongue, is the tying of the tongue to the **Larynx** and the **Bone Hyois.**

Basis linguae: is the root of the tongue, the bottom of it.

The **Ligament of the Tongue**, is that broad and strong membranous skin, which is under the middle of tongue, and tyeth it to the lower Chap.

The **Frenum**, or **Bridle of the Tongue**; is a little chord at the end of the said Ligament & goes toward the tip of the tongue.

The **Coat of the Tongue**, is the thin skin wherewith it is invested, being rough on the upper side, the **Scarfe skin.**

The **Pulpe of the Tongue**, is the soft fleshy substance of the tongue, which is spongy.

The **Fat of the Tongue**, is the hard fat at the root of it.

The **Nerves of the Tongue**, are three. The one Branches, and is disseminated into the Coat of the tongue, which makes it an instrument of the sence of touching. The second **Nerve**, is sprinkled into the fleshy part of the tongue, and makes it an instrument of tasting. The third is a **hard Nerve**, and is placed in the lower part of the tongue; which is the **Nerve of motion.**

The **Arteries of the Tongue**, are two: which lye on each side, one.

The **Median**, is the middle or division, or rather the white line that divides the tongue, into a right and left side, through the middle of the surface.

The **Locutarij Muscle**, is the Muscle that helpeth speech, or speaking.

The **Gustatorij Muscle**, is the Muscle of tasting.

The **Cibi-revolutores Muscles**, are such Muscles and Nerves, which help the motion of the tongue; it is also called the **Rowling Muscles.**

Throat.

The **Aspera Arteria**, is the Wind-pipe or the Channel by which we breath: the **Weazen.**

The **Larynx**, or **Throttle**; which is the Organ of the voice, it is the head of the Wind-pipe, or top of the Semicircular Gristles of the Throat, which we call the **Weazon-pipe.** Some call it the knot of the Throat, or the **Rift.**

The **Glottis**, is the small cleft in the Throat, the Whistle, the Orifice of the **Larynx.**

The **Epiglottis**, or after tongue; it is a gristle that covers the Whistle, or hole of the **Larynx**: that nothing go down it when we Eat or Drink; called the **Flap** or **Guggle.**

The **Arytaenoides**, or the **Ewre Gristle**, which is double; the **Thyroides Gristle**, and the **Crycoides**, are three Gristles at the top of the **Larynx**, of which it is composed.

The **Sheild Gristle**, called **Thyroides**; bunches out in the Throats of Men: and is called **Adams Apple**, or the **Apple of the Throat.**

The **Hyo-thyroides**, are a pair of Muscles belonging to the **Bone Hyois**, and the Sheild Gristle of the **Larynx.**

The **Styloides**, or cerain small processes in bones, like the fashion of a small bodkin.

The **Pterygoides**, are four processes to the outward part of the **Cuneal bone**, at the foundation of the skull, where the teeth called the Grinders are fastned, that is on each side two, spreading like unto the Wings of a Bat.

The **Spine**, or ridge of the ring Gristle, being a ridge.

The **Pylagiosly Muscle**, are Muscles having their places, and dependencies about the root of the Tongue and Throat.-

The **Crycoides**, or the Ring Gristle; is another gristle of which the **Larynx** is framed, it is an immoveable Gristle on whom the other rest as on a Basis, which makes the lower Basis of the Weazon or Larynx larger then the upper Orifice.

The **Membrane of the Larynx**, is that Ligament, or skin by which the Semicircular Gristle of the Weazon are connected and tyed together. The outward sides being crasse and hard, and rugous.

The **inward Coat of the Larynx**, is the smooth skin wherewith the hollow Cavity of the throttle is covered, which is soft stretched out and slipperie.

The **Os Hyoides**, is the **Bone Hyois**, which beareth up the tongue by its Basis.

The **Ploglossis**, is the pointed end of the tongue, which smites against the teeth.

The **Oesophagus**, or Gullet, the Channel by which we swallow Meat and Drink: which is a fleshy Membrane.

The **Pharynx**, is the top part, or beginning of the Gullet.

The **Internal Tunicle** of the **Gullet**: is that part within, whose beginning or original proceeds from the Mouth.

The **Thyroides**, and the **Arytaenoides**; are the two only moveable Gristles in the **Larynx.**

Ear.

The **Auditory Nerve**, is that which is the reception of the sound.

The **Drum**, is a Membrane stretched out before the airy Nerve of hearing, which is supported by.

The **Hammer**, the **Anvile**, the **Stirrop of the Eare**, which are three bones, the smallest of the whole Body; but none formed with more curious Art.

The **Membrane** of the **Tympane**, is the Drum of the Eare.

The **Cavity**, is the hollowness, or pipes of the Eare.

The **Canal**, is the pipes of the Eare.

The **Burrows**, or little holes, in the Cavity of the Eare.

The **Marmoratum**, or **Eare war**, or excrement of the Eare.

The **Window of the Snaily shell**, or the Window holes.

The

The **Mammillary Processes**, is a thing like the Womans dug, hanging on the bone called, the rocky Bone.

The **Styloides**, or **Appendix**.

The **Knub of the Nowle bone**, is that bunch or Knob bone behind the middle of the Ear, which is inarticulated, or joyned to the first **Rack-bone** of the Neck.

The **Semicircles of the Ears**, called **Cuniculi**; Conny burroughs, they are three half round bones, joyned together by their ends to the Snaily shell bone.

The **Cochlea**, is the turning, or winding of that part in the Ear inward, which is like the Snail shell: the interiour face of the Snaily shell; or the Cavity in the stony bone.

The **Sporosity**, or sponginess of the bone about the hole of hearing.

The **Trumpet of the Ear**, is a Cavity for the Organ of hearing.

The **Malleus**, or **Malleolus**, the Mallet or Hammer; is a little bone like a Hammer seated at the beginning of the Cavity of the stony, or rocky bone; at the end of the hole of hearing.

The **Incus**, or **Anvill**, or **Stithy**: is another little bone resembling an Anvil and is situated in the hinder side of the first Cavity, opposite to the Hammer bone.

The **Stapes**, or **Stirrop bone**, is like a triangular stirrop and is articulated to the bone at the Oval window: this stirrop hole is of some called the **Pupilla**, or **Apple of the Ear**: the Pupil of hearing.

The **Cord**, or **Thred**, is a slender and **Nervous Ligament** which runneth through the middle of a Membrane, and is joyned to the joynt where the stirrop bone is articulated.

The **Internal Muscle of the Ear**, is scituated in the stony bone, and so runs length-wise and is determined in the Membrane of the Tympane.

The **External Muscle**, is situated without the Membrane of the Tympane, in the upper part of the hole of hearing.

The **Concha**, is a Cavity or Cave in the rocky bone, which in its turning is like the shell of a Winkle, or Taber: of some called the **Tympane**.

The **Labyrinth**, is a Cavity in the rocky or stony bone, and is so called from its turnings.

The **Fenestra Ovalis**, or the **Oval Window**, is an Oval hole or like an Egg in the **Concha Cavity**.

The **Fenestra**, or **Fenestella**, is another Window, or hole in the said **Concha Cavity**: which is cleaven into a double pipe lying one on another, and are divided by a thin bony scale.

The **Water course**, is the lower of the said divided holes; which is called a **Serpentine Still**, or **Saylie Pipe**: because it is wrethen first forward, then backwards, then obliquely.

Breast.

The **Pleura**, is that Membranous part which incloses all the internal parts of the Chest, or Breast.

The **Mediastium**, is the reduplication or doubling of the **Pleura Membrane** at the Back and Breast.

The **Cavity** of the **Mediastium**, is the separation of the bulk of the chest, into two Cavities, and divides the Lungs one from another.

The **Pericardium**, is the bag or case of the Heart, which contains a Watery humor to moisten the Heart.

The **Diaphragma**, or **Midrif**; is the middle partition between the Breast and Belly: and is made up of a fleshy and sinewy Membrane. It is called the **Fan of the Belly**, because of its motion, which is like that of the Heart.

Lungs.

The **Pulmones**, or the Lungs or lights, they are the instruments of breathing and framing the voice, and are made of a substance soft light and spongy, whitish without, and red within.

The **Bronchia**. or Pipes of the Wizand.

The **Lobs, Laps**, or **Scallops of the Lungs**; are the Wings or out sides so wrought, that if one part be corrupted and rotten, the other may remain whole and sound.

The **Membrane of the Lungs**, is the thin skin, by which they are covered which is porous and full of little holes.

The **Cavities of the Lungs**, are the holes or Cell, of which they are full, each Cavity representing the form of an Ox hoofe.

The **Dyspnea**, is the lesser of the Holes, which being stopped causeth pursines and difficulty of breathing.

The **Spinalis**, or the Spinal Marrow, or Pith of the Back-bone, it is termed also **Dorsalis**. or **Cervicalis**, and **Lumbralis**.

Heart.

The **Cor**, or the Heart, it is a triangular form and the noblest part of all the Body, it is the Fountain of Life, being the first that lives, and the last that dyes.

The **Basis** or **bottom of the Heart**, is the broad end by which it hangs and receives all its Vessels, as **Veins** and **Arteries**.

The **Auriculae Cordis**, the **Ears of the Heart**; are the little hollow cases or covers in the Basis of the Heart placed by the Vessels which carry blood into the Heart; in grown persons the right Ear is larger then the left, in Infants the left is the larger.

The **Conus**, or pointed end of the **Heart**; called **Cone**.

The **Ventricles of the Heart**, are the Cavities or hollow places in the Heart, which are two; the right ventricle which is the wider and softer, the left is harder narrower and compassed with a thick wall, reaching as far as the point of the Heart, which the right doth not.

The **Septum**, or **Septum medianum**, is the middle partition in the Heart between the two Ventricles: which is porous, and full of holes.

The **Valves** or **Shutters**, are three pointed covers set on the Orifice of the **Vena Cava** at the Heart which stops and hinders the going back of the Blood.

The

The **Valves** of the **Vena Arteriosa**, are three shutters at the Orifices of the said Vein, and are fashioned like the old Greek letter Sigma.

The **Carnosity** or **fleshy Membrane**, is the fleshy substance of the Body which lies under the fat, and is joyned inseperably to it: it is more red in the Neck, Forehead, and Codds, then else where.

The **Adeps**, or the **fatty Membrane**; It is of substance soft and Oyly: it is of colour white, except blood by reason of some laceration, is mixt with it.

The **Medulla Spinalis**: the Marrow of the Back-bone, which is of the same substance of the Brain.

Belly.

The **Peritoneum**, is a Membrane stretched out over all the parts of the Bowels or Guts: the Paunch, or Rim of the Belly.

The **Region of the Body**; is all the parts of the higher Belly: all above the Navel, and contains the **Omentum**, the **Liver**, **Gall**, **Stomach**, **Spleen**, **Sweet-bread**, **Bowels**, **Mesenterium**, **Vena Porta**, and the **Caeliacal Artery**.

The **second Region** of the Body includes within the doubling of the **Peritoneum**, which comprehends the **Reins**, **Ureters**, **Bladder**, **Genital** in Men, and the **Womb** with the parts annexed in Women.

The **Omentum**, or **Epiploon**, or **Call**; is a thin Membrane indued with much fat, and covers all the parts of the Belly: it is divided into four parts.

The **Intestinal**, is that part of the **Omentum** as covers, and is stretched out over the Guts.

The **Hepatical**, is that part which riseth from the Cavities of the Liver, including the small lobs thereof.

The **Lienal**, is that part as lyes upon the Spleen

The **Mesenterical**, is that parc which is produced from the Mesenterium. to the external parts.

The **Abdomen**, or Belly.

Gutts.

The **Intestina** —— or **Bowels**, or **Guts**; which are Organical parts and are hollow appointed to carry the **Chyle**, and to receive the excrements: they are placed in the **Abdomen** and fills its Cavitie without confusion, being disposed in various turnings and divided into the thin and thick Guts. Called **Intrales**.

The **thin Guts**, is taken for the **inferiour Orifice of the Stomach**; and consists of thin and narrow Membrance, which is again divided into three parts or Guts: as,

The **Duodenum** is the first Gut, which lies towards the Back-bone under the Sweet-breads.

The **Jejunum**, is the second thin Gut; which begin when the first turns towards the left side, it lies alway in the **Umbilical Region**, and is in length about a cubit and an half.

The **Ilium**, is the third thin Gut; but in length passes all the rest of the Guts. It occupieth the **Ilium** and **Hypogastrium**, and compasseth about the **Jejunum**. In this Gut is the disease which is called the twisting of the Guts: and the **Iliack passion**.

The **thick Guts**, are the interior Guts, but the superior and shorter in scituation, and more capacious or wider; and hath thicker Membranes: which is also divided into three parts or Guts: as,

The **Caecum**, is the first of the thick Guts, and begins at the ending of the Gut, **Ilium**.

The **Gut colon**, is the second of the thick Guts, and succeeds the **Caecum**, and begins at the right Kidney and being turned upwards, it lyes under the Liver and Stomach; no Gut is more large and capatious then this.

The **Rectum**, or the **right Gut**; is the third of the thick Guts, and goes from the **Os Sacrum** to the Fundament, it is stronger then the rest, for besides the internal fleshy Membrane, it hath also an external fleshy musculous covering like a sheath.

The **Mesenterium**, is a double Membrane, between which is fat and a many Glandules or Kernels and a four fold kind of Vessels. It is seated in the midst of the Belly and is the bond of the Guts: keeping them in their places that they pass not into confusion.

The **Pancreas**, or **Sweet-bread**; vulgarly Sweet-breeds. It is a Body neither fleshy or Glandulous, but in a middle between both, yet very spungy to receive the excrements of the Spleen and Liver: it lyes under the Stomach, and stretcheth from the Spleen to the Liver.

Stomach.

The **Stomachus**, or the Stomach; is made of a proper Membrane, the internal side is rugged, and hairy like a peece of Silk; the external is fleshy. also.

The **Somachus**, is the ingress, or the **upper Orifice** of the Stomach; being the seat of hunger and thirst.

The **Pylorus**, is the **second Orifice** of the Stomach, and is seated the lower of the two, it is for the egress and going out of the **Chyle**, when the meat is concockted in the Stomach.

The **Valvus Pylori**, or the **Valve of the Orifice Pylorus**; is the shutter of the hole or orifice, to hinder the **Chyle** that it shall not return to the Stomach.

The **Basis Stomachi**, is the bottom of the Stomach: which is more fleshy then any other part, because there the Meat is boiled for disgestion.

Liver.

The **Jecur** or the **Liver**; it is the instrument of making blood, and is of a substance, like congealed blood, and therefore red: It is seated in the right **Hypochondrium**, under the short Ribs.

The ———— or the cleft of the Liver, where the umbilical Vein creeps into the Liver.

The **Gibbous** part of the Liver, is the superiour or upper Region thereof: or the bunching part of the Liver.

The

The ———— of the hollow part of the Liver, is the lower or interiour Region of it: out of the higher part springs **Vena Cava**; and the lower Region, **Vena Porta** soweth it Suckers.

Gall.

The **Folliculus**, or **Fellis**, or **Cystis Billiaria**; the Gall bladder it is a bladder which is ordained to contain the excrementious collar which flows from the Liver, it is of a Membranous substance, of two Coats; it is fixed to the Liver under the great lob, or lap thereof.

The **Canalis Cysticus**; is the Pipe, or Neck of the Gall bladder.

The **Canalis Hepaticus**; is the Pipe, or Neck of the Liver, to which the Gall pipe obliquely meets.

The **Intestinum Jejunum**; that is the hungry Gut, or **Gut Jejunum** by which the coler passeth away out of the Gall bladder. Called also **Meatum Hypaticum**, or **Liver Channel.**

The **Meatum Cysticum**, or bladder passage, or channel: by which the thinner coler is carried into the Liver, which is a porous Membrane, full of holes.

Spleen.

The **Spleen**, or **Lien**, or the **Spleen**, or **Milt**: It is a spongy soft substance sprinkled all over with very many vessels like fibres, or threds: covered with a Membrane proper to it self. It is seated right against the Liver, as its Lieutenant, or a kind of bastard Liver, that when the Liver is diseated, it may assist the same in Sanguification, or Blood making.

The **Color Lienis**, or the colour of the Milt, or Spleen; is a black and blew, with an obscure reddish.

The **Caput Splenis**, or the head of the Spleen, is the upper part of it.

The **Cauda Splenis**, or the tail of the Spleen; is that part as hangs down the nether end: for it is of an oblong shape, like the sole of a Mans foot; being hollow towards the Stomach, and bunched on the Back part towards the Ribs.

The **Vas breve**, or the short way Veins, are those two or three Veins, by which the Spleen is knit to the Stomach.

The **Spenical Veins**, and **Arteries**; are those which run from the Spleen to the Guts and Kidneys, through which it purges it self.

Kidneys.

The **Ren**, or **Renes**, or **Kidneys**; they are a fleshy substance, of a dark red colour, solid and proper to themselves: covered with a very thin Membrane, or skinny coat, and in shape like a Kidney Bean.

The **Membrana Adiposa**, is the fat loose Coat, or Membrane which wraps and infolds the Kidneys.

The **Glandula Renalis**, is a fleshy substance in shape like the Kidneys, which hangs upon the Kidneys in Children, but by degrees is seperated from them by a partion of the fat which covers the Kidneys.

The **Pelvis**, or bason, is a vacuity or hollow place in the Kidney, being cut on the hollow side, which contains in it a wheyish humor.

The **Carunculae Papillares**, are the nine little fleshy teats, through which the wheyish humor drops into the cavity of the Kidney.

The **Cribrum renum**, or **Kidney Sieve**; are the nine Pipes through which the said wheyish excrements drops.

The **Vessels of the Kidneys**, are the **Emulgent Veins**, and **Arteries**, proceeding from the Trunk of the **Vena Cava**, and **Aorta.**

Bladder.

The **Ureters**, or Channels of the bladder; are the conduit Pipes, which convey the Urine to the Bladder.

The **Piss Bladder**, is the receptacle of the Urine, and is a Membranous substance consisting of two Coats; it lyeth hid (hanging like a bottle with its bottom upwards) in the **Peritoneum**, which is a duplication of its Coats.

The **Musculum Detrusorem Vesicae**, is the external or thick outward Membrane of the Bladder, which by some Authors is held to be **Musculous.** Some call it the **Expulsorem**, or **expulsive Musc.e** of the Bladder.

The **Musculus Sphincter**, is that as shuts the **Orifice** of the Bladder.

The **Muscle Externus Spleniatus**, is a Muscle as broad as two Fingers, placed about the Neck of the Bladder, which the **Kernells** or **Glandules** rest upon, by which the Bladder is shut and opened.

The **Prostatae**, are the **Glandules** aforesaid.

Yard

The **Pannaculus Carnosus**, is the fleshy part of the Yard under the skin, which closely girds in the **Ligaments, Nerves, Veins**, and **Arteries.**

The **Pudenda**, are portions of the Veins and Arteries which are spread out into the external parts of the Yard.

The **Erectors**, are two Muscles, which arise from the tuberous part of the Huckle-bone, and are side long fastned to the Ligaments of the Yard, by which it is erected and made to stand.

The **Ejaculators**, are two Muscles springing out of the transverse Ligaments placed between the **Huckle-bones**: and serve to press the drops of water, or seed which happen to rest between the **Orifice**, and the **Bladder.**

The **Urethra**, is the Piss pipe, or Channel by which Urine issues forth.

The **Perinaeum**, the Seam parting the skin of the Testicles.

The **Preputium**, the prepuce, the fore skin that covers the Head or Nut of a Mans Yard; which the *Hebrews* used to cut off in Circumcision.

Cods.

The **Edartos**, is the fleshy Membrane, under the Cuticular or outmost skin which covers the Stones: and is a continuation of the **Membrana Carnosa** of the Belly.

The **Cavities of the Cods**, is the division of the said Membrane into two Cells, or Cavities, which receive the two Stones.

The **Vessells of the Cods**, are Veins and Arteries, which rise from the Privy parts, and Nerves from the **Os Sacrum.**

Stones.

The **Erythrois**, or **Erythroides**; is the first of the three proper Membranes of which the Stones are compounded and made: and hath its original from an expansion, or widening of the **Muscle Cremaster**, which holds and draws up the Stone.

The **Production** of the **Peritoneum**, which is the second Membrane that infolds the Testicle. Called **Elythrois.**

The **Nervea**, or **Nervous Membrane**; is the third which immediately covers the substance of the Testicle.

The **Testes**, **Testicles**, or **Stones**; which is a Glandulous or Kernellish body, white and pretty firm.

The **Epididymis**, is a small body like a Silk-worm, which is placed upon the Testicle (the Membranes being taken away) overthwart it.

The **Vas Spermaticum deferens**; is the spermatick, or seed vessel which enters into the substance of the Testicle at one end of it.

The **Vas Ejaculatorum**, or **Ejaculatory Vessel**; which is at the other end of the Testicle, which is in the beginning full of turnings and windings, as is the body of the **Epididymis.**

The **Seminal Vesica**, or seed Bladder, is that which contains the seed, made pure and fit for conception. The **Spermatick Bladder.**

The **Prostatae**, or **Auxiliary Testicles**; are Glandules which contain in them a Seminal, or seed like matter.

The **Spermatick Veins**, and **Arteries.**

The **Parastatae**, are two Kernels full of seed which in a Man doth grow at the end or neck of the Bladder and serves to receive the seed brought thither by **Vasa Deferentia.**

Matrix.

The **Vasa Spermatica deferentia**; the Spermatick or seed vessells, which proceed from the Stones to the bottom of the Womb. [ ]

The **Testicles** of a Woman have but one Coat, their substance is soft made up of little Bladders, which contains a wheyish matter.

The ———— **Horns**, or **Trumpit of the Womb**; it is a fistulous and hollowish substance in the Womb, which is jagged and torn in the lower part: it contains in it a certain hard, and round texture, with white seed within it.

The **Uter**, or **Alvua**; the Womb is the place of conception, it is seated in the lower part of the Belly; the body or substance of it is fleshy and spongy, and as thick as a Mans finger.

The **Cavities of the Womb**, are the Cells or partitions in the middle of it, which is the cause that some Women bring forth two or three or more Children at a birth.

The **Placenta**, or the **Womb Liver**; it is a mass or lump of flesh which is fixed to the side of the Womb, which doth often interpose it self between the Navel strings of the Child, and the vessells of the Mothers Womb.

The **Amnion**, is one of the Membranes that compasses the Child in the Womb.

The **Chorion**, is an other Membrane that compasses the Child.

Arse.

The **Intestinum Rectum**, or **streight Gut**; the outmost end comes to, and makes up the **Anus**, or **Arse hole**: which is shut and pursed together by a round Muscle, termed **Sphincter.**

The **Colon**, the **Tuell** or **Fundament**; is that by which the Excrements are expelled, and thrust out of the **Poder**, which are more hard and solid then ordinary.

The **Levatores**, are four Muscles by which the Tuel is releived and raised up, when it pouches forwards, or is ready to fall out, in the expelling of excrements.

Arms

The **Membrana Adiposa**, is the fatty Membrane in the Arm as far as the Rist; and in the Leg, from the Groin to the Anckle.

The **Glandules of the Arm pits**, are the Kernels under the Arm holes. They are termed the **Auxiliary Kernells**, and the close Stools of the Chest or Heart.

The **Medulla, Marrow of the bones**; is the Pith, Marrow, or congealed Oyly liquor, which is contained in the hollowness and **porosity** of the bones, which is three fould, as being red in the large bones, white in the smaller; and in the spungy bones, there is a Marrowy liquor.

The **Thuroides**, are the Oval holes in the Huckle bone.

The

Thighs

The **Groyns**, is the inward bendings of the Thigh, in which are the **Crurall Veins**, and **Arteries**, and **Nerves**; which descend into the Thighs.

The **Groyns Glandules**, are the Kernells both above and under the bend of the Thighs.

The **Fascialata**; the broad Muscle of the Thigh which compasseth it about like a swadling band: the broad swath Membrane.

The **Vestigium**, is the lump of flesh, which fills up the Cavity, or empty place or space of the first joynts of the toes. It is also termed **Massa Carnea.**

As all the **Senses** do derive their original from the Head, the seat of all. So I shall in the next place give the Reader some Terms of Art used by the naturallists in the handling of the said Senses; which say the most, are in number five: the first and cheifest place (as being the most excellent Sence) is assigned to that of touching, or feeling. *Aristotle* calleth it, the **Sense**; as if he should have said, **the Sense of Senses**: being the most excellent, and eminent Sense of all.

Terms of Art that the Learned use about the Sense of Touching, and Feeling.

Touching

A **Tactation**, or a touching; is that whereby we discern the difference of objects, and the nature of things: as by

A **Tactation**, or **Digitation**; which is a bare or simple touching of a thing, whereby we perceive the object touched to be either hot, cold, or luke-warm.

A **Palpation**, or **Palmation**, or **Tractation**; is the handling, or gentle stroaking of a thing, by which the object is discovered to be either rough or smooth, hairy or naked.

A **Manipulation**, is a griping touch by which we know a thing, to be either wet or dry; sollid or porous or spungy.

A **Depression**, or **Compression**; by pressing, thrusting together, we know the thing to be hard or soft.

An, **Ellevation**, or **Tollation**; is the lifting up of a thing, which shews it to be light or heavy.

Feeling

A **Sensibility** or **Sense of Felling**; is that feeling which is in our selves, and this is communicated to us in divers manners: as,

A **Titillation**, or a **Tickling**; which is when we are touched with a soft fine and gentle touch.

A **Puriginous**, or **tickling Itch**, is when we feel a pricking tickle, being a smart between both.

A **Punction**, or **Punctious feeling**; when we are pierced (as it were) with sharp pricks, or sharp pain.

A **Verminous feeling**; is when one is gnawed and pulled in the Belly with Worms.

A **Verberation**, or **Verberous feeling**; a smarting pain, as when we are beaten with rods, whips, or scourges.

A **Flamation**, or **Flamatious feeling**; as the pain of burning and scalding: or through hot raging distempers.

A **Dolorons feeling**; is any kind of paine or grief of the Body.

A **Torturous**, or **Tormenting feeling**; is when pains bring horror, and amazement: and that there is a continued grief without ease. This is that which the School Men term *Poena Sensus*, an **Intollerable painful feeling** which with patience cannot be undergon.

The Sense of Tasting.

A **Gustation** is the Sence of tasting, which proceeds from the Instrument of the Tongue, and Pallate; now there are several sorts of tasts: as,

The **Sapious**, or **Sapitious**, or **Savoury taste**; is when the Sense is pleased and delighted therewith: as in eating ripe fruit.

The **Dulceous**, **Luscious**, or sweet tast; as in Hony.

The **Amarous**, or bitter tast; as in Galls and Wormwood, *&c.*

The **Acerous**, or **Asterous tast**; is a sharp sowre tart tast as in Vinegar, and Verges.

The **Flamous**, **Keen**, **smart fiery**, and biting tast; as in Pepper and Ginger.

The **Harsh**, or **Crabbed tast**; in Crabs, and Wild fruit.

The Sense of Smelling.

An **Odorous**, or **Order**, and **Odoration**: the Sense of smelling which is distinguished by,

The **Odoriferous**, **Fragrant**, sweet, pleasant scent, a smell that pleaseth and refresheth the Sense.

The **Aramatick**, or sweet smell; is a pleasant smell.

The **Foetrous**, or **Puteous smell**; when it hath a stench and tainteth the Air.

The **Acidiuous**, or **Acid smell**; a sower smell, which is troublesome and disturbeth the Sense.

The **Luscious**, or **Fainty smell**; is that which is sweet, yet it hath a faintiness in it, that hurts the Sense.

The **Rancidiuous**, or **Mouldy scent**; which is a smell from things corrupted.

The Sense of Hearing.

An **Audiens**, or hearing of sounds; hath the Instrument of the Eears, and Head to receive the same: which are several, as

A **Sound**, is any noise.

An **Eccho**, is a sound beaten Back, or the rocoyling of a sound.

A **Song**, or a **Tuned Noise**; a Musical, or pleasant sound.

A **Crash**, a noise proceeding from a breach of a house or wall.

A **Crack**, or **Thunder clap**; is a sound from the squeezing or pressing of airy things together.

A **Voice**, is the noise or sound of speaking.

A **Tinckling sound**, is the sound of Mettles.

A **Rumbling noise**, is the sound that proceeds from a violent motion, or blast; as of Wind or Thunder.

The Sense of Seeing.

The **Visus**, or sight; proceeds from the Instrument of the Eye, which seeth according to the several distances, as the object is placed: for,

The **Lippeous**, or **Sand blind**, or **Pore blind**; sees not the object except it be near the Eyes.

The **Blinkard**, or he that looks **Asquint**; sees when the thing is at a small distance.

The **Lusciosus**, or **Luscitious**; a dimm sight, such as sees the object faintly, and in a mist: that sees a little by Day light, worse at Twi-light, and nothing at all in the Night.

The **Rolling Eyed**, or the **Gogle Eyes**; Eyes that are always in motion: which see neither near, or far off.

The **Nocturnal sight**, that sees the object in the Night.

The Sense of Generation, or Procreation.

I am not the first which have termed it a **Sense**, but it is set down to my Hands by that title, who from its delight in the act, give it that name. Its pleasure exceeds the delights of all the other Senses, and is contrary to them: hear what my Author saith concerning it, *Crook lib.* 8. *fol.* 648. Nature hath endued the parts of Generation with a most exquisite Sense of tickling pleasure, for the conservation of the species, or kinds of Creatures; so that the Creatures being ravished with an incredible kind of pleasures, do more readily apply themselves to venerial embracements: which otherwise is a thing filthy and abominable, and would not be done; were not the Sense of pleasure, in the case which is variable, according to its several Acts: as,

The **Delectation** of the Senses, the fountain of pleasure: it is the Sense of delight, that Creatures have in the conception of their species or kinds, whose instruments are the weapons of Procreation.

The **Aspection**, or beholding and assosiation, or accompanying of the Creatures, each with its desired Mate.

The **Osculation**, or kissing; and the **Amplectation**, or embraceings of the Creatures.

The **Surgation**, or rising of the instrument of Procreation.

The **Extention**, or **Prostitution**; the laying out of the Body, the humble of the Creature.

The **Jungation**, or **Copulation**; the joyning and coupling of the parts.

The **Stupification**, the dulling and besotting of all the other Senses in this act.

The **Ejection**, or **Ejaculation**; is the parting with of the Spermatick humour, or Semenical liquor which consummateth the action.

The **Titillation**, or tickling pleasure, in Procreation.

The Sense of Ease and Rest.

If this of Procreation, from its Pleasure, Delight, and Sweetness in the Act be counted a Sense; then I may add one more, to make the number seven; it shall not (as many of our skilful Anatomists, name several Arteries and Sinews, *Innominata*) be a thing that goes without a name, but it shall be termed

The **Quiescceous sense**, or **requies sensum**, the resting sense; it is the pleasure of rest, and sweetness of ease after labour and trouble: Now this sense of ease hath many branches in it, which makes it sweet, pleasant, and delightful; as

Ambulation, or **Walking**, it is contrary to the violent and laborious act of running, in which there is no little pleasure and delight; for when Men have toiled themselves in the ways of Sin, if after with *David*, they walk in the ways of Gods Commands, they will find much delight and sweetness therein, and rest to their Souls, *Psal.* 1. 1.

Station, or **Standing**, hath an ease and rest in it; that is, to stand to the Faith, and confess the Cross, when others are weary and burthened with walking in Iniquity.

Sedection, or **sitting**, is a sign of Rest and Pleasure for every Man that walks with God, hath that Blessing, to sit under his own Vine and Fig tree, and to eat and drink, and none to rise up against him, or make him afraid.

Cubation, or **lying down**, it is to take our rest, and ease our toiled and weary Limbs; the Bed to ly on, is

is termed by *Solomon* and the Prophet *Isaiah*, the place of rest, and pleasure, and delight, to them as ly therein.

Dormation or **sleeping**, it is a comfortable ease, rest and repose after toil; the Sleep of a Labouring Man is (saith *Solomon*) sweet to him; and Blessed are those that are asleep in the Lord, for they rest from their Labours.

Now as Physitians say, he that is born Deaf shall never speak; so those that do not enjoy this sense of ease and rest, have none of their other senses; so consequently without sense, senseless Creatures, stupified, infatuated, reprobated.

The various Voices of a Man.

A **Suspiration**, or **sighing**, that is, when he is sad.

A **Groaning**, when he is Sick.

Moans and **Wailes**, when outrageously grieved.

Roars, when he is tortured

Mutters, **Mumbles**, **Whispers**, when he speak softly.

Clamours, **Balls**, **Cryes out**, when he speaketh loud.

Cantcth, **Tuneth**, **Singeth**, when he is merry and glad.

Speaketh, **Confabulates**, when he discourseth, or tells his mind

Lisps, that speaks between his teeth, and makes half words.

Stammer, **Stut**, when the Voice, or Words come not freely, that hath an impediment in his Speech.

Dumb, is not to speak at all, but to make a **mutterting** and a **blathering** noise.

Hoarsness, that hath lost the sound of his Voice through cold, that speaks low, not easily to be heard.

Shrill, **sharp**, **acute Voice**, that is heard a great way off.

I. He beareth Azure, a **Peruque**, or **Perawicke**, Or. Born by the name of *Cobbe*. This is a counterfeit Hair which Men wear instead of their own, a thing much used in our days by the generality of Men, contrary to our fore-fathers, who got Estates, loved their Wives, and wore their own Hair; but in these days there is no such things.

A Cheveron between 3 such S. born by *Chartley*.

A Cheveron G. between 3 such S. is born by *Williams*, a *Welsh* Family.

II. He beareth Argent, a **Peruque**, Sable, with the **Crown** or top cut off, Gules. Some term it the **Border of a Peruque**, or a **Border of Hair**, see *chap.* 18. *numb.* 118. Women usually wear such Borders, which they call Curls or Locks when they hang over their ears.

Taures, when set in Curls on the forehead.

Perkins, when set about the lower parts.

2 hands holding the like, Sleeves O. turnings up A. is the Crest of *Hudleston*, of *Millam Castle*, in *Cumberland*.

Colours of Hair.

White, or **Light** coloured **Hair**, as in most young Children.

White, **Hoary**, when it is Snow white through Age.

Grey, is to have a mixture of white and black hairs.

Carrot colour, is between a red and yellow.

Fox colour, red hair, sandy colour.

Flaxen hair, whitish, with a tincture of red or yellow.

Brown, or hair colour.

Bright Brown, or light brown.

Black brown, or dark brown, a Mouse colour.

Black.

Coal Black, or Raven black.

Yellow colour, and a high or deep yellow, and a low or more faint, or whelmish yellow.

III. He beareth Gules, a **Mans Face**, proper, **crined** and **Bearded**, Or. Some term it a **Mans Face**, proper, and say no more.

☞ Now here note, that if the **Face be full**, and that both eyes are seen, then it is termed a **Man**, or **Woman**, or **Childs face**, and when it stands sideways, so that half the face and but one eye is seen, then it is termed a **Head of a Man**, or the like, and not a Face, as *numb.* 6. 7. &c. Some term these full faces, (having neither shoulder nor neck to be seen) a **Mans face Decollated**, or **Trunked**, or **cut off**: Others a **Mans Face couped**, (not mentioning any place, as over in the Neck or Shoulders) signifying thereby, that it was couped so close to the head, that no part was to be seen, as the small heads and faces set in the corners of this quarter, and the 7. doth also shew.

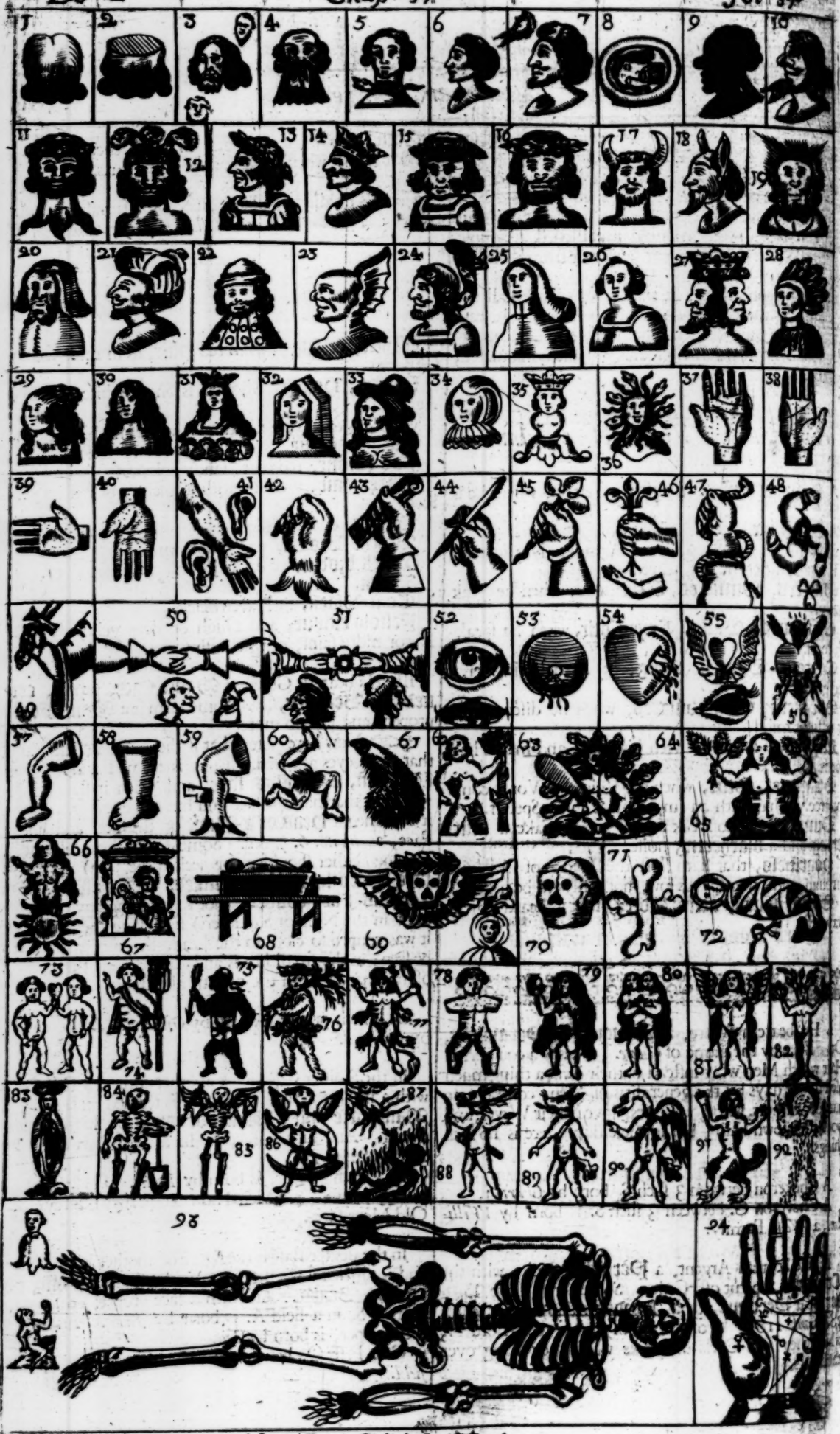
G. 3 such proper, is born by *Gillimere*. And them A. by *Lingard*.

In the Sinister Chief is set another sort of a **full Face** with a sharp pointed Beard, and is termed in Blazon, a **Mans face** with a **Pick-a-devant**, (or sharp pointed) Beard. And such a face A. in a field S. is born by *Parth* of *Austria*.

B. 3 such proper, is born by *Kettle*. These may be called middle Aged Mens Faces except they be grey; then Old Mens faces.

In the dexter Base is the figure of another kind of face, and is termed a **Mans face**, with a **Basket hilt**, (or **rough**) **Beard**. And such a face proper, crined and barbed S. in a field A. is born by *Jacks*. And B. 3 such proper, is born by *Tue*.

G. a Fesse O. between three such A. is born by *Highfield*.



P. M. Alleni Penington: Armig: D. P. et Gulielmi fil: eius.

IV. He beareth Or, an **Old Mans Face**, with a **broad Beard**, proper; **crined**, Sable. There are several sorts and fashions of Beards, as

The **Broad**, or **Cathedral Beard**, because Bishops and grave Men of the Church, antiently did wear such Beards, *n.* 4.

The **Pick-a-devant Beard**, when it ends in a point under the chin, and on the higher lip, chin and cheeks, as *numb.* 11. 12.

The **Forked Beard**, is a broad Beard ending in two points, as *numb.* 10.

The **British Beard**, hath long Mocheaos on the higher lip hanging down either side the chin, and the rest of the face being bare.

The **Mouse eaten Beard**, when the Beard groweth scatteringly, not together, but here a tuft and there a tuft.

S an Old Mans face A is born by *Bartt zu Kopephausen.*

G. the like proper, crowned O. is the Arms of the City of *Kunigsberg*, in *Preussen.*

V. He beareth Sable, a **Childs face couped** at the Shoulders, Argent, **crined** or **haired**, or his **Petruque**, Or, **entwrapped** about the Neck with a **Snake** or **Adder**, Vert, **Stinged**, Gules. Three such is born by the name of *Moreddic Warwyn*, being a person of great Account in *Northwales.*

S. a Cheveron A. between three such, born by *Vaughan.*

G. a Childs face so couped A. is born by *Van Lossitz.*

O. 3 such S. and one for the Crest is born by *Van Seydewitz.*

B. 3 such S. their Temples wreathed, with the end pendant, A. is born by *Van Metenwill.*

VI. He beareth Azure, a **Youths head couped** at the Shoulders, proper, **crined** Argent, by the name of *Wauris.* Why this is termed a head, and not a Face, see *numb.* 3.

B. 3 such A. crined proper, born by *Littlefield.*

VII. He beareth Vert, a **Mans head**, (or a **Pentlazes**, or **English Mans head**,) couped at the shoulders, proper, **crined** and **bearded**, Sable. In these foresaid figures you see the difference in the faces of

A **Child**, which is smooth and little hair, *numb.* 5.

A **Youth**, hair on the head, but none on the face, *numb.* 6. 26.

A **Young Man**, hair on the head, and little on the higher lip, a Muschatoe.

A **Man**, having a Beard, *numb.* 7.

A **middle Aged Man**, with a rough or round Beard, *numb.* 10. 3.

An **Old Man**, with a long broad Beard, and hoary or grey.

A **very Old Man**, or **Decripped** Age, or **Bald**, without any hair, and a wrinkled face, as *numb.* 50.

G. a Cheveron Er. between three such heads A. is born by *Edneveit Vichan*, a Noble Man in *Wales.*

*

The several Terms given to the outward part of the Head and Face.

Head.

Caput, the head, which is the back and hairy **scalp** all behind the face, which hath several parts, as

The **Sinciput**, or **forepart** of the head, the top of the head.

The **Verter** or **Vertical** part, the crown of the head, where the hair turns.

The **Occiput**, or hinder part of the head.

The **Tempora**, temples, or times of the head, are the lateral parts or sides of the head, so called because they first discover the Age of Man by their **hollowness**, **hoarineſs** and **baldness.**

The Hair termed **Crinis**, the **piles** or **threads** of hair on the head only.

In the dexter chief is set the form of an **Old Mans Head**, with a **forked Beard**, and is so termed in Blazonry; and such a head couped proper, in a Field B is born by *Prentice* or *Pentice.*

B. 3 such A. is born by *Widdows.*

Such an Head couped at the Shoulders proper, wreathed about the temples A. and S. is the Crest of *Stapleton.*

Face.

The **Facies**, Face, or smooth part of the head, without hair.

The **Epidermis**, or **Heart skin**, is the outward skin of the Face, or any other part of the body.

The **Frons**, **Frontall**, or forehead, the brow.

The **Palpebra**, or eye brows, or hairy places over the eye-lids.

The **Glabella**, the space between the Eye brows.

The **Eye-lids**, or covers of the eyes, which are Membrane skins.

The **Tarsus** are the extremities of the eye-lids, which is a **Cartilaginous** or gristle edging, in which the hair is set one by one.

The **Cilia**, the hairs of the eye-lids, the Brees, **Palpabrae**

The **Loca luminis**, the eye hole or socket, or sight of the eye.

The **Sinus**, or circles of the eyes, are the joining together of the upper and neather eye-lids, called the **angles** or **corners** of the eyes.

The **Mala**, or Cheek Ball. And **Bucca** the puff of the cheek.

The **Mentum**, or Chin.

The **Barba**, the Beard; all the hair on the higher and lower lips, chin and cheeks.

The

The **Collum** or Neck, which is the Stay or Pillar of the Head.

The **Truncus**, the trunk or Pillar of the Neck.

The **Jugulus**, the hollow or hole of the Neck; the **Nape** of the neck.

Eyes.

The **Canthus minor**, or **externus**, is the outer angle or corner of the eyes next the temples.

The **Canthus major**, are corners of the eyes next the Nose, or **canthus internus**, the inward corners of the eyes, termed also the **Fountain Angle**, because Tears proceed from thence. And the **Great corners** of the eye.

The **Puncta Lachrimalia**, the holes in the corners of the eyes, out of which the Tears proceed.

The **Eon**, the whole compass of the Eye; the **Ball** of the Eye.

The **Rhea**, is the little piece of red flesh in the great corner of the eye.

The **Albugo**, or white of the Eye; see Muscles of the Eye.

The **Iris**, and **Irides**, is the circle or circles that compass the **Pupil**, or black, or sight of the eye, called the **Rainbow**, or **great Circle of the Eye.**

The **Pupila**, or **Pupile**, the black or sight of the eye.

The **Nictation** of the Eye, is the winking and twinkling of the Eye-lids.

The **Orbita**, or socket of the eye, is the hole of the skull for the eye.

Nose.

The **Nasus**, **Naris**, or outward part of the Nose, as much as is visible, and to be seen, of which there are several sorts, as

The **Simus**, or **Silus Nose**, that have a **Camoise** Nose, whose Nose end turns upwards.

The **Sublimus Nose**, that turns somewhat upwards.

The **Gyphus**, or **Gyphale Nose**, that hath a Hawk Nose, or the end turning downward.

The **Roman** or **bunched Nose**, is that which hath a rise, ridg, or swelling up in the middle of the Nose.

The - - - - - - - - - wry or scue Nose, having a Nose standing awry either to the right or left Cheek.

The **Nasutus**, or great Nose.

The **Nasus externus**, the ridg of the Nose.

The **Nares** or **Nostrils**, the holes of the Nose, by which both the excrements and superfluities of the head do fall away; and is the Instrument of Smelling.

The **Basis of the Nose**, is that part which begins between the Angles or corners of the Eyes, and ends at the beginning of the lips.

The **Dorsum**, or the **Bark**, the **spine**, or **ridg** of the **Nose**, which is the upper part of the Nose towards the eyes, which is immovable.

*

The **globe**, or **tip**, or foot of the Nose, is the end of it.

The - - - - - or skin of the Nose.

The **Columna**, or **Pillar of the Nose**, which is the partition, or the rising, or prominent fleshy particle, near the top of the lip.

The **Vibrissi**, or **Capitis vibratio**, are the hairs that grow in the foresaid **fungous**, or thick **cartilage**, or gristly Pillar.

The **Muscles** of the Nose, are the two outsides of the Nostrils, which are for **dilatation** and **constriction**, to open and shut, that smells may be received, or kept out.

Mouth:

The **Os**, or mouth, is the slit in the skin in the lower part of the face, made of two lips.

The **Labrum**, or lip, is the extremity of the slit of the Mouth, that above termed the upper, the other the under lip.

The **Mustar**, or hair of the upper lip; the **Mustachoes**, or Mustchadoes. **Mystar.**

The **Chin**, termed **Mentum**, which is the utmost bound of the Face.

The **Barbula**, or **Pick-a-divant**, or the little tuft of hair just under the middle of the lower Lip.

The **Barba**, or the Barbe, or Beard, is all the hair of the higher and lower lips, with Cheeks and Chin.

The **Bucca**, or Cheeks, the fleshy part of the face, each side the Nose and Mouth.

The **Dentes Lactei**, the **Milk Teeth**, such as when Children have cast them, others grow again in their place.

The **Cutters**, are the sharp teeth in the forepart of the mouth, which are 8 in the whole.

The **Dog teeth** are next them, on each side two, called also the **Shearers.**

The **Grinders**, are the five furthermost teeth in the mouth, which have two roots or tangs.

The **Cheek Teeth**, are the inner teeth on both sides the upper Jaw.

The **Eye Tooth**, is the furthest tooth on the higher side, on each side one, which generally hath three roots.

The **Alveoli**, or the holes of the Jaws in which the teeth are set.

The **Basis** of the tooth, is the external part of the Tooth, which is seen out of the Gums.

The **root** or **internal** part of the tooth, which is covered in the Gums.

The **Gomphosis**, the skin or ligaments, by which the teeth are **Articulated**, or made fast to the Gums.

The **Fauces**, or **Gingiva**, the Gum or Jaw bone, in which the teeth are set.

Ear.

The **Lap of the Ear**, is the lower part of it; called the **tip** of the Ear; the handle of the Ear, in Latin **Fi-**

Sinus, or **Ansa Auriculae**; the loo of the Ear.

The **Helix** or circumference of the Ear, which turneth inwards.

The **Wing of the Ear**, is the circumference of the top of it.

The **Tragus**, or little gristle on the out side of the hole, which in ancient Men is haired. Called **Hyrcus**, or **Goats beard.**

The **Spinna**, the **Fin**, or **Gristle**, or Wing of the Ear: is the whole out side of the Ear, the compass of the Ear, as being the guid to convey the sound to the Ear.

The **Capreolus**, is the turn of the Wing of the Ear.

The **Scapha**, is the inner compass of the Ear.

The **Concha**, is the great Cavity of the Ear, which is so compassed.

The **Anventum**, is the Cavity which is next the hole of the Ear.

The **Anthelix**, is the interiour protuberation, or swelling of the Ear near the hole.

The **Anti-tragus**, is the place equal in a line with the Tragus, being a little gristly rising over against it.

The **Exterual hole** of the Ear.

The **Membrane** of the **Tympane.**

The **Cuticle**, or **Skarle skin**; is the skin which covers the whole Ear, which is somwhat thicker in the Globeous or Back-side, then in the **Concavous** or fore-side of the Ear.

The **Oval hole**, or the Window of the **Labyrinth.**

The **Auris Externa**, the outward Ear, as much as is seen.

So much for the several terms, of the visible parts of the Head and Face. We proceed now to other bearing in Herauldry of this Nature, *viz.* Heads of Men, and Women.

VIII. He beareth Sable, the **Head of St. John Baptist Decollated**, proper; laid in a **Dish** or **Platter**, Argent: Others term it more briefly, the Head of St. *John Baptist* in a Platter, proper. This in the hands of an Archangel issuing out of a Cloud is the Crest of the society or company of *Tallow-Chandlers.*

The like erected porper, in a Dish A. set in the Honor point between four quartered Coats, is born as part of the Town Arms of *Bresslaw* in *Germany.*

S. 3 such in Platters, is born for the Coat and Crest of *Platter.*

IX. He beareth Argent, a **Negroes head couped** at the shoulders, having a Jewel or Pendant hanging in his Ear, Or. Some term it a **Moores head**, a **Black-Moores head**, or an **Indians head couped**, proper. Which term proper may well be omitted, knowing that those kind of People are all black, as we are white. Three Negroes heads is born by the name of *Troutbecke.*

A. a Cheveron between three Moores heads couped, is born by *Jues.* Some term these **Black Boyes heads.**

O. on a fesse between three Black-Mores heads eraced: as many Cressants A. by the name of *Black-Moore.*

A. such an Head S. is born by *Schedell.*

[ ]

O such an Head couped in the Neck S. with a fillet about his temples, and tied in a **Bow-knot** behind A. is the Coat and Crest of *Spyffer*, and *Meancop.* And three such is borne by *Micho* of *Croscom.*

O. the like sans Arms, couped in the middle; with the ends of the Fillet flying each side the Head. Is the Coat and Crest of *Wildrich.*

The Black-Moors head is the Crest of the Lord *Conway.*

X. He beareth Gules, a **Sarazens head, couped** at the **shoulders, crined** proper: environed about the temples with a **Wreath** or **Torce**, Argent, and Sable.

☞ If the head be thus half faced, then there appears the Knot, or tying up of the Wreath behind: but if it be a full Face, then it is not seen; more over it is rarely set on the side of the head, being contraly to the use, and manner of wearing with the *Sarazens.*

G. such a head, born by the name of *Sordon.*

G. a Sarazens Head eraced A. wreathed about the temples A. and S. born by *Sarazen.*

B. the like proper, wreathed A. and G. is born by *Saville.*

XI. He beareth Azure, a **Sarazens Face, eraced in the Neck** proper: **environed about the Temples** with a **Wreath** or **Torce**, Or. and Gules. Some will say the head or temples adorned with a Wreath *&c.* which is no way blameable. This is born by *Wrath.*

G. such a Head, with a Torce A. and S. is born by the name of *Marchudd*, a great Person in *Wales*: and one of the fifteen Tribes, or Houses of chief account.

XII. He beareth Vert, a **Sarazens face couped** at the shoulders: **environed** about the temples with a **Wreath**, or **Torce**, Argent and Sable; his **Frontal adorned** with a **Plume**, or **fall of three Feathers**, of the second; shafts Or. This is the Crest of Sir *Peter Warberton* of *Arley* in *Cheshire* Baronet.

XIII. He beareth Argent, a **Ceasars head couped** at the shoulders proper, **cloathed** Gules, **lined** and **adorned**, or **imbrauthered**, Or. This is also blazoned a **Romans head**, or a **Roman Emperours head**: for it was a custom amongst them, thus to adorn their heads with **Laurel Garlands** in their triumphs, and victory over their enemies, and called a **Ceasars head** because the said Roman Emperours, from *Julius Cæsar* their first Emperour, were termed *Ceasars.*

The *Romans* are ever drawn with yellow **Carrusters** or **Tunica** imbrauthered with Silver; the **Labels** of their sleeves, and **Short hose**, of Watchet; the under sleeves, and long stockins, white; with a Laurel Wreath with a Silver Jewel before: and rays of Gold, issuing from the Wreath.

Such an Head I find to be the Crest of *Ba ainton.*

XIV He beareth Argent, a **Mans head couped** at the shoulders, and **crined**, proper: his head adorned with a **Coronet**, Or.

☞ Some blazon this a **Kings head**, and say no more: and it is generally to be noted, that if the head (or

The **Collum** or Neck, which is the Stay or Pillar of the Head.

The **Truncus**, the trunk or Pillar of the Neck.

The **Jugulus**, the hollow or hole of the Neck; the **Nape** of the neck.

Eyes.

The **Canthus minor**, or **externus**, is the outer angle or corner of the eyes next the temples.

The **Canthus major**, are corners of the eyes next the Nose, or **canthus internus**, the inward corners of the eyes, termed also the **Fountain Angle**, because Tears proceed from thence. And the **Great corners** of the eye.

The **Puncta Lachrimalia**, the holes in the corner of the eyes, out of which the Tears proceed.

The **Eon**, the whole compass of the Eye; the **Ball** of the Eye.

The **Rhea**, is the little piece of red flesh in the great corner of the eye.

The **Albugo**, or white of the Eye; see Muscles of the Eye.

The **Iris**, and **Irides**, is the circle or circles that compass the **Pupil**, or black, or sight of the eye, called the **Rainbow**, or **great Circle of the Eye.**

The **Pupila**, or **Pupile**, the black or sight of the eye.

The **Nictation** of the Eye, is the winking and twinkling of the Eye-lids.

The **Orbita**, or socket of the eye, is the hole of the skull for the eye.

Nose.

The **Nasus**, **Naris**, or outward part of the Nose, as much as is visible, and to be seen, of which there are several sorts, as

The **Simus**, or **Silus Nose**, that have a **Camoise** Nose, whose Nose end turns upwards.

The **Sublimus Nose**, that turns somewhat upwards.

The **Gypbus**, or **Gypbale Nose**, that hath a Hawk Nose, or the end turning downward.

The **Roman** or **bunched Nose**, is that which hath a rise, ridge, or swelling up in the middle of the Nose.

The - - - - - - - - - wry or scue Nose, having a Nose standing awry either to the right or left Cheek.

The **Nasutus**, or great Nose.

The **Nasus externus**, the ridg of the Nose.

The **Nares** or **Nostrils**, the holes of the Nose, by which both the excrements and superfluities of the head do fall away; and is the Instrument of Smelling.

The **Basis of the Nose**, is that part which begins between the Angles or corners of the Eyes, and ends at the beginning of the lips.

The **Dorsum**, or the **Bark**, the **spine**, or **ridg** of the **Nose**, which is the upper part of the Nose towards the eyes, which is immovable.

The **globe**, or **tip**, or foot of the Nose, is the end of it.

The - - - - - or skin of the Nose.

The **Columna**, or **Pillar of the Nose**, which is the partition, or the rising, or prominent fleshy particle, near the top of the lip.

The **Cirrisi**, or **Capitis vibratio**, are the hairs that grow in the foresaid **fungous**, or thick **cartilage**, or gristly Pillar.

The **Muscles** of the Nose, are the two outsides of the Nostrils, which are for **dilatation** and **constriction**, to open and shut, that smells may be received, or kept out.

Mouth:

The **Os**, or mouth, is the slit in the skin in the lower part of the face, made of two lips.

The **Labrum**, or lip, is the extremity of the slit of the Mouth, that above termed the upper, the other the under lip.

The **Mustar**, or hair of the upper lip; the **Mustachoes**, or Mustchadoes. **Mystar.**

The **Chin**, termed **Mentum**, which is the utmost bound of the Face.

The **Barbula**, or **Pick-a-divant**, or the little tuft of hair just under the middle of the lower Lip.

The **Barba**, or the Barbe, or Beard, is all the hair of the higher and lower lips, with Cheeks and Chin.

The **Bucca**, or Cheeks, the fleshy part of the face, each side the Nose and Mouth.

The **Dentes Lactei**, the **Milk Teeth**, such as when Children have cast them, others grow again in their place.

The **Cutters**, are the sharp teeth in the forepart of the mouth, which are 8 in the whole.

The **Dog teeth** are next them, on each side two, called also the **Shearers.**

The **Grinders**, are the five furthermost teeth in the mouth, which have two roots or tangs.

The **Cheek Teeth**, are the inner teeth on both sides the upper Jaw.

The **Eye Tooth**, is the furthest tooth on the higher side, on each side one, which generally hath three roots

The **Alveoli**, or the holes of the Jaws in which the teeth are set.

The **Basis** of the tooth, is the external part of the Tooth, which is seen out of the Gums.

The **root** or **internal** part of the tooth, which is covered in the Gums.

The **Gomphosis**, the skin or ligaments, by which the teeth are **Articulated**, or made fast to the Gums

The **Fauces**, or **Gingiva**, the Gum or Jaw bone, in which the teeth are set.

Ear.

The **Lap of the Ear**, is the lower part of it; called the **tip** of the Ear; the handle of the Ear, in Latin

Fossa, or **Ansa Auriculae**; the loo of the Ear.

The **Helix** or circumference of the Ear, which turneth inwards.

The **Wing of the Ear**, is the circumference of the top of it.

The **Tragus**, or little gristle on the out side of the hole, which in ancient Men is haired. Called **Hyrcus**, or **Goats beard.**

The **Spinna**, the **Fin**, or **Gristle**, or Wing of the Ear: is the whole out side of the Ear, the compass of the Ear, as being the guid to convey the sound to the Ear.

The **Capreolus**, is the turn of the Wing of the Ear.

The **Scapha**, is the inner compass of the Ear.

The **Concha**, is the great Cavity of the Ear, which is so compassed.

The **Meatium**, is the Cavity which is next the hole of the Ear.

The **Anchelix**, is the interiour protuberation, or swelling of the Ear near the hole.

The **Anti-tragus**, is the place equal in a line with the Tragus, being a little gristly rising over against it.

The **External hole** of the Ear.

The **Membrane** of the **Tympane.**

The **Cuticle**, or **Skarle skin**; is the skin which covers the whole Ear, which is somwhat thicker in the Globeous or Back-side, then in the **Concavous** or fore-side of the Ear.

The **Oval hole**, or the Window of the **Labyrinth.**

The **Auris Externa**, the outward Ear, as much as is seen.

So much for the several terms, of the visible parts of the Head and Face. We proceed now to other bearing in Herauldry of this Nature, *viz.* Heads of Men, and Women.

VIII. He beareth Sable, the **Head of St. John Baptist Decollated**, proper; laid in a **Dish** or **Platter**, Argent: Others term it more briefly, the Head of St. *John Baptist* in a Platter, proper. This in the hands of an Archangel issuing out of a Cloud is the Crest of the Society or company of *Tallow-Chandlers.*

The like erected porper, in a Dish A. set in the Honor point between four quartered Coats, is born as part of the Town Arms of *Bresslaw* in *Germany.*

S. 3 such in Platters, is born for the Coat and Crest of *Platter.*

IX. He beareth Argent, a **Negroes head couped** at the shoulders, having a Jewel or Pendant hanging in his Ear, Or. Some term it a **Moores head**, a **Black-Moores head**, or an **Indians head couped**, proper. Which term proper may well be omitted, knowing that those kind of People are all black, as we are white. Three Negroes heads is born by the name of *Troutbecke.*

A. a Cheveron between three Moores heads couped, is born by *Jues.* Some term these **Black Boyes heads.**

O. on a fesse between three Black-Mores heads erazed: as many Cressants A. by the name of *Black-Moore.*

A. such an Head S. is born by *Schedell.*

O such an Head couped in the Neck S. with a fillet about his temples, and tied in a **Bow-knot** behind A. is the Coat and Crest of *Spyffer*, and *Meancop.* And three such is borne by *Micho* of *Croscom.*

O. the like sans Arms, couped in the middle; with the ends of the Fillet flying each side the Head. Is the Coat and Crest of *Wildrich.*

The Black-Moors head is the Crest of the Lord *Conway.*

X. He beareth Gules, a **Sarazens head, couped** at the **shoulders, crined** proper: environed about the temples with a **Wreath** or **Torce**, Argent, and Sable.

☞ If the head be thus half faced, then there appears the Knot, or tying up of the Wreath behind: but if it be a full Face, then it is not seen; more over it is rarely set on the side of the head, being contrary to the use, and manner of wearing with the *Sarazens.*

G. such a head, born by the name of *Somdon.*

G. a Sarazens Head erazed A. wreathed about the temples A. and S. born by *Sarazen.*

B. the like proper, wreathed A. and G. is born by *Saville.*

XI. He beareth Azure, a **Sarazens Face, erazed in the Neck** proper: **environed about the Temples** with a **Wreath** or **Torce**, Or. and Gules. Some will say the head or temples adorned with a Wreath *&c.* which is no way blameable. This is born by *Wrath.*

G. such a Head, with a Torce A. and S. is born by the name of *Marchudd*, a great Person in *Wales*: and one of the fifteen Tribes, or Houses of chief account.

XII. He beareth Vert, a **Sarazens face couped** at the shoulders: **environed** about the temples with a **Wreath**, or **Torce**, Argent and Sable; his **Frontal adorned** with a **Plume**, or **fall of three Feathers**, of the second; shafts Or. This is the Crest of Sir *Peter Warberton* of *Arley* in *Cheshire* Baronet.

XIII. He beareth Argent, a **Ceasars head couped** at the shoulders proper, **cloathed** Gules, **lined** and **adorned**, or **imbrauthered**, Or. This is also blazoned a **Romans head**, or a **Roman Emperours head**: for it was a custom amongst them, thus to adorn their heads with **Laurel Garlands** in their triumphs, and victory over their enemies, and called a **Ceasars head** because the said Roman Emperours, from *Julius Cæsar* their first Emperour, were termed *Ceasars.*

The *Romans* are ever drawn with yellow **Carrusters** or **Tunica** imbrauthered with Silver; the **Labels** of their sleeves, and **Short hose**, of Watchet; the under sleeves, and long stockins, white; with a Laurel Wreath with a Silver Jewel before: and rays of Gold, issuing from the Wreath.

Such an Head I find to be the Crest of *Ba aïnton.*

XIV He beareth Argent, a **Mans head couped** at the shoulders, and **crined**, proper: his head adorned with a **Coronet**, Or.

☞ Some blazon this a **Kings head**, and say no more: and it is generally to be noted, that if the head (or if

if it be the whole Man) be crowned with an Imperial crown, it is termed a **King** or **Kings head**, although the **Garments**, **habit**, or other coverings, (as **Armour**, **Sircoat**, **Gown** & the like) be contrary to the **Robes of Mayesty**: yet in such cases they are termed **Kings**, though to avoid confusion, those habits are to be named, in the blazoning, as for example.

If the Head have an **Imperial crown**, it is termed a **Kings head**.

If the Head have a **Duckal crown**, the it is termed a **Dukes head**, and so according to the degrees of Crowns mentioned in *lib. 3. chap. 1. numb.* 1. to 14.

If it have a **Treble crown**, then it is blazoned a **Popes head**, and such an Head is the Coat of *Bastian Van Bolsenheim* in *Holland*.

If it have a **four cornered Cap**; a **Judges**, or **Doctors head**; and such an Head is the Crest of *Van Hopgar*.

If with a **Cardinals hat**, a **Cardinals head**; and with a **Miter**, a **Bishops head**: and so of the rest. The last of which *viz.* a Bishops head is born for the Crest of *Van Munderspach*, in the Palatinate of *Rhine*.

If with a **Fools cap**, a **Fools head**.

If with a **Turbote**, a **Turks head**; as the following example will further manifest.

Quarterly A. and G. 1 and 4 a Kings head issuant, the 2 and 3 a Dukes head issuant, respectant, proper. Is born by *Königsfelt*.

An old Mans Face blinded, couped at the shoulders proper, crowned O. is the Crest of *Ufford* Earl of *Suffolk* in time of *E.* the 3. Some blazon this a **blind Kings head**.

XV. He beareth Argent, **Bacchus face, couped** at the shoulders, **crined**: **environed** about the temple with a **Garland of Vine leaves**, and **Bunches of Grapes** proper; **Clothed** Gules. This is more briefly termed **Bacchus head**, and so in some blazoning I have seen it, & of other blazoned *Bacchus* the god of wine; who as the Poets say was the adulterous Son of *Hammon*, which is called *Jupiter Ammon* who for fear of his Wife *Rhea*, sent him to *Nysa* in *Arabia* where he set Vines, & made Wine: from whence he was called, the **God of Wine**. This Coat is born by the name of *Dutrell*.

A. 3 Bacchus Faces couped at the shoulder, cloathes G. is the Coat, (and one the Crest of *Brom ll*

XVI. He beareth Or, a **Wood-mans face, couped** at the shoulders, **adorned** with an **Oak Garland** about his temples, all proper. A **Wood-man** is ever drawn with an Oak Garland, fructed on his head, and another about his middle, if he be either a Demy, or whole Man, 3 such as this, is born by the name of *Woodman*.

A Demy one sans Arms cloathed S. is the Crest of *Ougsperg*.

XVII. He beareth Sable, a **Wittals face, couped** at the shoulders, proper: **Horns** Or. This may very well be a contented Cuckcold seeing his horns are made of Gold. Argent on a bend Sable, 3 Wittalls Faces Argent. Is born by the name of *Whittall*, *Wittall* or *Witwell* in *Yorkshier*.

There are three sorts of Cuckcolds: the **Ram Cuckcold**, the **Goat Cuckcold**, and the **Ass Cuckcold**. The first sees his horns and is contented with them. The second thinks he hath none, because he sees them not. And the last is jealous that his Ears are horns, when they are not.

A Mans Face proper, Horned A. couped below the shoulders cloathed per Pale A. and V. band S. is the Crest of *Utzingen*.

A Childs Face having the Forehead, Ears and horns of a Bull proper; couped below the shoulders, cloathed G. is the Crest of *Roesen*.

XVIII. He beareth Argent, a **Satyrs head, couped** at the shoulders, proper. This is also termed **Midas head couped**; who is fained by the Poets to be the Son of *Gordius* the Cow-heard, and King of *Phrygia*, who entertained *Bacchus* in his house, obtained of him that favour, that whatsoever he touched should be turned into Gold; insomuch that by his touch the house, tables, beds, yea his meat and drink were converted into Gold: but being ready to starve desired *Bacchus* to take his gift again: who counselled him to wash his Body in the River *Pactolus*, which he did, and returned again to his former condition; and ever since that River hath had Golden sands. Afterwards being desired to be Umpeer between *Apollo* and *Pan* (or as other say *Marsias*) contending for superiority in Musick, *Midas* passed his verdict against *Apollo*, at which *Apollo* being incensed gave him Ass ears, like *Pan* or the *Satyre*; which he hid so cunningly that none knew of them but his Barbar, who would not conceal it, but proclaimed it in a Ditch, which he covered with earth, but the Canes or Reeds which grew out thereof, divulged *Midas* his Ass ears to all the Country.

These are also born full faced; I have seen also a Childs face after this form, which only one long ear on the right side. Born by the name of *Grian-thall* in *Holland*.

O. a Childs face couped at the shoulders S. with an Ass ear on the right side A. is the Coat and Crest of *Van Brechendorf* of *Bavaria*.

A Satyrs head A. clothed, is the Crest of *Waldeck*.

Out of a Crownet, the like head A. cloathed S. is the Crest of *Greifen* of *Greifenstein*.

G. a Childs head to the sinister proper, with Ass ears A. cloathes ending in three parts S. is the Coat and Crest of *Van Horden*. Some term the clothes **triparted abellane-ways**.

A Satyrs head (sans beard) Sable, on a Torce of his colours Or. and Sable, was the Crest of Captain *de la Bouch*, made a Knight of the Order of the Garter; 5. *E.* 3.

The like Satyrs head proper: the Garments Gules, is the Crest of *Van Hesenburgh* in *Francovia*.

Argent a Satyrs head (of some called, a young Satyre because it hath no beard) couped at the shoulders proper: Garment Azure, collered Or. Is the Coat of *Van Lanorinskie* a *Silician*: and the the like out of a Crown between two Elephant Snouts A. is the Crest of the Earl of, *Traumansdorf* in *Germany*.

XIX. He beareth Azure, **Moses Face couped** at proper, the **Garment** purpure. In some ancient Bibles, and many pictures of our modern times, *Moses* is described with horns (or Rays of Glory like the Sun beams) the ground of which absurdity was a mistake of the *Hebrew* text on *Moses* descending from the Mount, upon the nearness of the words *Keren corau* a horn; and *Karan Luceo*, to shine. The vulgar translation of *Exodus* 34. 29. 30. 35. agrees with the former *viz. Ignorabat quod cornuta esset facies ejus*; He was ignorant (or wist not) that his Face was horned: but *Junius* and *Tremelius* have it thus, *ut ignoraret Moschè splendidum esse factam tutem faciei suæ*. Now *Moses* knew not that the skin of his Face shone right. And generally *Moses* was depicted by the ancients with bright hair, a very beautiful visage, with **Radiant Scintillations**, or **sparklings** up like fire in form of two Rays or horns: which in painting is called Glory.

After the like manner both our ancient Father, and our modern Artists, do delineate the Heads of all Saints, and Holy Men: some with the **Glory** of the **Sun**, others with bright shining and **Splendant circles**: but of these I shall have more occasion to speak in the Chapter of Saints: *lib* 3. *chap* 4. to which I refer you.

He beareth B. the like Face proper. Born by the name of *Fitz-Moses*.

XX. He beareth Argent, a **Jews head couped** at the shoulders, the **Cover of the Head** Or, **Garments** Gules. Born by the name of *Jewen*. The Jews cover for the head, I have seen termed a Cop, and Scarffed; or a Cop Scaffed: and so both *Upton* and *Legh* have it *pag.* 61.

A Jews head couped below the shoulders Cop and Scarfe O. Garment G. is the Crest of *Zeugen* of *Brunswicke*.

B. a Jews head, Beard pointed, Cop Wreathen, Scarfe or Towell pendant A. cloaths couped at the shoulders O. is quartered by *Hotz Schuher* of *Brunswicke*.

G. 3 Jews Heads couped A. born by *Thickens*

G. an old Head in the Jews fashion couped at the shoulders O. is born by *Otten*.

XXI. He beareth Gules, a **Turks head, couped** at the shoulders proper, **Cloathed** Azure. The *Turks* head is always known by his **Turbot**, or **Turkish Cap**, which is nothing else but a length of fine white Linen, towled up in form of a round Cap like a ball, those of the better sort have them adorned with Feathers, and Jewells of Gold, and precious stones.

So you may term the heads of other Men according to their Countreys and Kingdoms, and according to the several forms and fashions of things wherewith they usually cover, or wear upon their heads: as you may see further in *lib.* 3. *chap* 5. in the habits of Men of most places. Such an head out of a Crown between two Wings per Fesse counter-coloured O. and B. is the Crest of *Van Sunthausen*.

B. 3 Turks faces, Wreathing of the Turbots O. and G. by *Van Belo*.

XXII. He beareth Argent, an **Old Mans face**, proper; **Caped** Azure, **turned up** Or: **couped** at the shoulders with his Garment pally of six, Gules and Sable, on each two Plates. This is the Crest of *Brigges* Lord of *Chandoys*: Knight of the Garter in the Raign of Queen *Mary*. Mens heads are thus covered with variety of things: as **Caps, Cowles, Tankes, Mortions, Infulas, Hats** and **Hoods**, &c.

A. an old Mans face couped below the shoulders, proper: Cloathes and Cap per pale B. and G. turned up O. is the Coat and Crest of *Crapf Van Flugelsperg*.

S. a Mans head with Picked-devant beard proper Cloaths and Infula Cap O. turnings G. is the Coat and Crest of *Dischinger*.

O. the like head to the sinister, Cloathed and Caped S. turning up V. by the name of *Van Murthzburg*.

O. the like with the turning up of the Cap Imbatelled is the Coat and Crest of *Lochinger*.

XXIII. He beareth Sable, a **Mans head without any hair** proper, with two **Bats** (or **Dragons**) **Wings** each side his Head **expensed**, Or. Some term it a **bald Head couped** at the shoulders, with the **Ears coverted** into **Bats Wings expansed**: which is the most compendious blazon.

G. 3 such A. Wings O. is born by *Baddelegh*.

B the like O. is born by *Bawterley*.

The like head proper, Wings G. is the Crest of *Van Chorleton*.

XXIV. He beareth Sable, a **Sarazens head couped** at the shoulders, proper: **adorned** about the temples with a **Wreath** Argent and Gules, the ends turned over his head cloathed of the third, **Garnished** (or **faced** or **lined**) Or. This is the Crest of *Whittington* of *Whittington*, in *Cheshire*.

XXV. He beareth Vert, a **Womans face** proper, with a **Slop** on her head, and **Garment couped** at the shoulders, Argent. This is of some termed a **Nuns head, vailed** and **vested**: but the attire being round at the bottom makes me judge it to be rather some kind of **Slop** or **Maunch** for the head, because they used anciently such a kind of Pouch at the sleeve. Some term this a **French Hood pendant**, or hanging backwards, or fallen back: because the usual way of wearing them, is on the head; see *numb.* 34. Three such heads, as here is blazoned is the Coat of *Checkley*.

XXVI. He beareth Argent, a **Boys face** proper, **crined** Or: **couped below the shoulders, Cloathed** Gules; **Garnished**, Or.

☞ When the couping is below the shoulders, then some parts of the Arms, and Breast appears; but if the couping be at the shoulders then only the very top of the shoulders appears, and no more: therefore care must be taken in the term, **at**, or **below the shoulders**. This is born by the name of *Boyman*, alias *Bowman*.

B. 3 such is born by the name of *Wrinchill*.

XXVII. He beareth Argent, **Janus his head couped at the shoulders**, proper: **crowned** Or. This *Janus* is said to be the first King of *Italy*, who for his Wisdom and knowledge of things past, and to come: was

pictured with two Faces, one looking forward and the other backward. The first old, signifying ancient days past, the other young: shew the time to come. This Coat is born by a *German* Family called, *Luzenweise*.

XXVIII. He beareth Or, an **Indian head couped below the shoulders**, the Head and Body **adorned** with **various coloured Feathers.** Some term it an **Indian head** only, taking no notice of the Feathers, because it is their usual way, and custom to adorn, and cover themselves with diverse coloured Feathers. This is the Crest of Captain *Smith* an *Indian* Merchant.

XXIX. He beareth Azure, a **Maidens face, couped at the shoulders,** Argent: Her hair **attired** (or **platted up**) and locks **Curled,** Or.

☞ This is more often termed by our modern Heraulds a **Maidens head,** then a **Maidens face:** and all the reason as I can give for their so doing, is because Maids heads are generally born full Faced, and not half Faced, or three quarter Faced, and whole Faced as men usually are; as the example of Mens heads and faces doth demonstrate. If so, then let the Reader please to term them which he will either heads, or faces.

This is by some termed a **Damsel,** or **Damosills head:** that is a **Wench** or **Girdle** or **Countrey Lasses head;** because the hair is tyed up. The Maids hair being ever born lose, as in the next example. 3 Such is the Coat of *Rigmaden*.

XXX. He beareth Sable, a **Maids head couped at the shoulders,** proper; **crined,** Or. Born by the name of *Rigmaiden*.

G. 3 such heads A. is born by *Faut-le-Rov*.

Some term this, a **Maidens head, hair dischenelled,** others, the **hair pendant,** and others take no notice of the hair at all, because the Maids heads are always thus drawn with the **hair loose** and **hanging down,** if it be otherwise, then to express it.

S. a Cheveron O. between 3 such A. crined, and on a chief O. 3 Roses by the name of *Ellis*.

XXXI. He beareth Sable, a **Maids head,** proper; **Crined** and **Crowned** Or: **Cloathed** Azure, **issuing out of a Cloud.**

Such a head, in a Field Gules, bordured vary, is the Coat of the company *Mercers* of the Famous and Loyal City of *Chester*.

The like head, with **Beams of Gold issuing out of a Chaplet** or **Garland of Roses** about her Forehead in a Field Gules, bordured *Nebulæ* Argent, is the Arms of the Company of *Mercers* of the honourable City of *London:* which is by Mr. *Morgan* thus blazoned, *lib* 3. *fol.* 10. Gules, our **Ladies head** proper, with her **hair dischevelled** and **crowned** with a Crown Or, with a **Chaplet** of red and white Roses about the Forehead; and in a **Robe** of crimson, **Adorned** with Gold, all within a border of Nebule, Argent. A great company ought to have a large train, and he hath fitted them with a long blazoning accordingly; else a more compendiout blazon makes it more honorable.

G. the like, Crowned, Robe, B. between 3 Mullets of six points A. born by the name of *Gollenhofer*.

XXXII. He beareth Sable, a **Womans head couped, Attired** with a **three cornered Hood,** Argent. This kind of hood, or head cover, was used by Women in the time of King *Edward* the third; as may be seen by many Monuments made in those days, see *lib.* 3. *chap.* 1. *numb.* 81.

3 Such heads in a Field S. is the Arms of *Ladyvaile*, now commonly termed, *Ladvale*.

3 Like Heads and Hoods, with a pointed Caul (or Net-work) Head-tire A. in a Field S. is the Coat of *Langton*. See *chap.* 19. *numb* 122.

XXXIII. He beareth Vert, a **Womans head couped below the shoulders** proper, the **Hair dischevelled** (or **crined pendant**) Or: **Hat** Sable, and **Cloathes** Gules, **collared** of the second. This is the Crest (upon a Wreath of his colours) of Sir *Van Wasser*, of the order of the *Virgin Mary*.

XXXIV. He beareth Or, a **French Womans head in a Ruff,** all proper. This was formerly the attire for Womens heads, which were called **French-hoods:** they hung down behind the head, and then were turned up to the top of the Head even to the Forehead, and there ended in a round point, or **Peak:** and were generally black. A cheveron Gules between 3 such heads belongs to the name of *Frenchome*.

The like Head and Hood, the Garment couped below shoulders G. is the Crest of *Osterreicher*.

XXXV. He beareth Gules, a **Boys face crowned,** a little under the shoulders, **Converted into folding Leaves,** Or. Born by *Trailer*.

Such kind of **Antique foldings** is much used, by *Carvers*, and *Stone-cutters*, which is termed severally: as,

Fruitage, when such folding leaves have pendant from them, several sorts of fruit, as it were all in a cluster,

Flowerage, when Flowers and Leaves hang from them, as it were a Posey of several Flowers.

Foldage, when these kind of Leaves have several foldings and turnings, one from another: as in mantles. Some call them **Festune heads.**

S. the like Head, and foldage O. is born by *Van Sala*.

G. the like head with two Ass ears proper, Garment ending in such fouldage S. is born by *Van Horden*.

XXXVI. He beareth Sable, **Medusas head couped at the shoulders,** proper. It is by the Poets fained, that this *Medusa* was a beautiful daughter of *Phorchus*; who comparing her fine Golden hair to *Minerva's*, and also for commiting adultery with *Neptune* god of the Sea, in *Minervas Temple*, had her her hair turned into Snaks, and her body into an ugly monstrous Creatures: at length she was slain by *Perseus* being Armed with *Minervas* Shield, *Mercury's* Helmet and Wings, and *Vulcans* Sword. Her head being cut off and carried into *Affrica* hath filled that part of the World full of Serpents ever since.

XXXVII.

XXXVII. He beareth Argent, a **Main sinister** (or a **left hand**) Gules. This is the token, or badge of a Knight Baronet; being placed in the Honor point of the bearers Coat: or in the chief, in an Escochion of pretence, or on a Canton dexter. This is the Arms of *Ulster* in *Ireland*.

B. a Right and Left hand couped in the middle of the Arm O. born for the Coat and Crest of *Lauffen*. Some blazon it (because there is a part of the Arms to them) **two hands erected.**

A. cheveron B. between 3 such G. is born by *Mayner*.

XXXVIII. He beareth Argent a **Right hand**; Sable, of some only termed a **Hand**, if it be the right: if otherwise then to be named. It is also blazoned, a **Main dexter**, from the Latin word *Manus* a hand, or from the French word *Main*, a hand. This is the Coat of *Francis Manley* Esq; one of the Justices for the Principality of *North-Wales*. And since the writing hereof Knighted by his Sacred Majestie King *Charles* the Second: in the Year 1679. And born also by *Manley* of *Lach*.

Per Fesse G. and A. a Right hand couped, with the Back outwards proper, is born by *Van Domisch*. This is termed a **Right hand dorsed**, or **aversant**, or **turned backward.**

S. a Bend between two Right hands A born by *Brassy*.

B. a Cheveron between 3 such A. born by *Hardware* of *Peele* and *Monldsworth*.

A. a Right hand and Bordure engrailed S. by *Mandley* or *Manley* of *Manley* and *Poulton*.

G. a Right hand aversant (or dorsed) couped in the middle of the Arm, in bend sinister A. Sleeve S. born by *Kandiger*.

A. Fesse S. between 4 such G. born by *Quatermaine*,

XXXIX. He beareth Gules, a **Dexter hand Barwise**, Argent.

☞ Here you need not to mention couping at the Wrist, for the Hand ever hath some small part of the Wrist to it, a **Sinister hand barwise** hath the Fingers pointing to the sinister side of the Escochion; but if it point to the dexter side, the thumb is then downwards. This Coat is born by the name of *Baremaine*

B. 3 such hand in pale is born by *Trailman*.

The Hand thus born on a chief, or fesse; is by *Guillim* termed, a **Hand extended**, or born **transverse the Chief**; or **Fesse.** Or. on a chief Gules, a dexter hand extended, Argent. By the name of *Mainstone*.

XL. He beareth Azure, a **Dexter hand pendant**, Or. This is born by the name of *Pendelow*.

☞ Note this, that the hand open is ever born in Arms with the Palm in sight; if otherwise, then to be mentioned, as in *numb.* 38. when the Back is outward, which is rare.

[ ]

B. 3 such A. born by *Clarley*.

G. a Fesse between two erected, and one pendant A. by *Urgate*.

XLI. He beareth Sable, a **Sinister Arm** issuing out of the **Dexter chief, bendways**, Or: between two **Ears** the higher **foreshortned**, Argent. Mr. G. blazons it a **sinister Arm** and **hand**, issuing out dexter point, excending towards the sinister in form of a bend, all which totolagies he might as the Arms signifieth nothing of it self, but it is ever stood to have the hand fixed to it; except it **dismembred**, of its hand, which must the

A. such a Arm proper is born by the name *hill*.

G. the like between two Roses A. born by *Dodd.*

V. 3 Mans ears A. born by *Coolpilot*.

The Actions of the Hand.

The Hand with its **Actions** and **Gestures**, of all the Members of the Body, is best to be understood; for,

By the **motion** of the Right hand we crave **silence**: *Acts* 12. 18. and 13. 16.

By **clapping** the hands, we express a **Joy** and **Gladness**, and that we are well pleased at the thing done: 2. *Kin.* 11. 12.

By **laying** the hand **on the Breast**, in making of a Speech, or Protestation: we shew a **Truth** and **Earnestness** to be in us.

By **striking** our hand upon the **Thigh**, we are moved with **admiration**: *Jere.* 31. 19. *Eze.* 21. 12.

By **extending** the hand, we speak intentionally to such a person: *Deut.* 32. 40.

By **striking** of the Breast with the Fist, is a token of **Sorrow** and **Repentance**: *Luke* 18. 13.

By **exalting** and **shaking** of the right hand aloft, is usual with **Military Persons**, when they will notific any prosperous success: *Rev.* 10. 5.

By the **beck** of the hand we **Call a person** to us: *Acts* 24. 8.

By **pointing** out of the Finger, we give **directions**: *Isa.* 58. 9.

By **stretching** out of the hand **grippen**, is a token of **Revenge**, and of **Wrath** and **Fury**: *Ezek.* 16. 27.

By the **apposition** of the Finger to the **Mouth**, is a note of **silence craved**: *Prov.* 30. 32.

By **lifting up** of the hand, we **Bless**, or **Curse**; according to the Merrit, or Cause of Action: *Acts* 4. 30. *Numb.* 5. 21.

By **kissing** of the hand, we own **Obedience** and **Service**: *Ecclesiasticus* 29. 4. Of this Read more in *Selders* Titles of Honor, *pag.* 40.

By **putting** the hand **under the Thigh**, was an ancient custom of taking an **Oath** of the Servant, to perform matter of Importance for the Masters; as we may see in the case of *Abraham* and his Servant: *Gene.* 24. 2, 3.

By **laying** the right hand **on the Book**, we oblidge our selves by a **Solemn oath**, to declare the Truth of a matter, wherein a controversie lieth: *Heb.* 6. 16.

By

By laying the hand **on the Head**, is a token of a **Blessing and the Gift of the Holy Ghost**: *Mark* 10. 16. *Act.* 8. 17. 2. *Tim.* 1. 6.

The **Hand** as it is comely, so it is of most singular use, and the Instruments of all Arts, for by their help there is no invention of Mans wit left unattempted, and brought to perfection; and therefore it is of all other Members, the nimblest, and most universal. Yet it is no longer a part of Man, then it can perform its functions; as *Aristotle* Writeth.

Terms of Art used by Anatomists, for the Parts of the Arms and Hands.

Shoulder.

The **Scapula**, or of some called the **Omoplata**: is the shoulders, or shhoulder blade. Termed also **Humerus**, and **Homoplata**.

The **Brachium**, or **Arm** is from the shoulder to the fingers, which is divided into three parts, the **Scapula**, the **Cubitus**, and the **Manus**: that is the shoulder, cubit and hand. Now, though generally **Brachium** signifies the whole Arm, yet in this division it is ment only for that part of the Arm, as is from the shoulder to the elbow.

The **Axilla**, the Arm-pit, or Arm-hole; also **Ala**.

The **Glandebala** ------- is the hair growing in the Arm-hole.

The **Axillary Kernells**, are the Kernells, or Knots, which are under the Arm-pits.

The ---------- is the middle of the Arm, the place in which issues are usually made.

The **Gibber**, is the bending, or bowt of the Arm.

The ---------- brawny part of the Arm, the higher part next the shoulder.

Elbow.

The **Cubitus**, is that part of the Arm from Elbow, to the **Wrist** of the hand,

The **Galliaggones**, is the crookedness of the Arm, when the Cubit-bone is bent.

The **Ulna Interior**, the inner side of the lower part of the Arm.

The **Cubitus Exterior**, the out side of the lower part of the Arm.

Hand.

The **Manus**, or hand, which is divided into three parts; the **Brachiale**, the **Postbrachiale**, and the **Digitis**: that is, the Wrist, the After-wrist, and the Fingers.

The **Brachiale**, or the Wrist: called also **Carpus**.

The **Postbrachiale**, the after-wrist.

The **Radix Manus**, the root of the hand, the inside of the wrist.

The **Dexter**, or right hand.

The **Sinister**, or left hand.

The Hand shut is termed, **Pugnus** the Fist.

The Hand half bent, is called **Condylus**.

The **Stethos**, the fore part of the wrist, that part under the Thumb joynt.

The **Dorsum Manus**, the back part of the hand; also **Manus aversa**.

The **Thenar**, is the space between the thumb and the four-finger.

The **Hipothenar**, is the brawn at the wrist, under the thumb, and little finger.

The **Palma**, the Palm or inside of the hand.

The **Cola manus**, is the hollow of the hand, when it is crooked: the Cup of the hand.

The **Interstitium**, the middle part or partition of the hand.

The **Tubercle of the Thumb**, is the swelling part of the root, or bottom of the Thumb: the fleshy part under the thumb.

The **Digitus**, the finger taken generally for any of the Fingers.

The **Poller**, or the Thumb.

The **Inder**, the Fore-finger, or pointing finger, that next the thumb. called, **Inder Digitus**,

The **Medius** or **Famosus**, the middle finger; the long finger of the hand, the fool finger.

The **Annularis**, the **Annulary**, or ring finger; the the third finger. Called also **Medicus Digitus**.

The **Auricularis**, or **minus Digitus**, the ear, or little finger; because with it we cleanse our Ears.

The **Internodia**, the joynts of the fingers & thumbs, or knots.

The **Ungues**, Nails of the fingers.

The **Uvia**, or the Grapes; are the round ends of the fingers.

The **Nodi**, is the outward parts of knubby, or knotty joynts of the fingers; we call them **Knuckles**.

The **Phallaur**, is the order and ranks of the fingers.

The **Radix**, or **Oxus**; is the root of the Nails.

The **Extremitas**, the **Extremity**, or the top of the Nails; which is cut off.

The **Mendacia**, or the lies of the Nails; that is the white spots.

The **Percussio**, the **Ridge**, or side of the hand under the little finger; the **Percussion** of the hand, or striking or beating place of the hand.

XLII. He beareth Argent, a **Hand gripped, erazed**, Gules. This is also or some Authors termed a **Fist erazed**; signifying thereby, that it is gathered together: which kind of gripping, the hand is generally termed with us a **Fist**. Mr. *Guillims* terms this a **Fist clenched**. This is born by the name of *Fistock*.

B. an Hand gripped A. born by *Fausten*.

G. 3 Hands gripped A. born by *Coolmaine*.

B. a Fesse O. between 3 such A. born by *Dodcote*.

S. a Right hand pointing with the fore finger, the rest gripped proper, couped at the Elbow, sleeve A. is born by *Glencersheim*.

XLIII.

XLIII. He beareth Sable, a **Hand** proper, holding of an **Escroule** (or **Rowle** of Paper) Argent: **Sleeved** Gules, turning up Or. Some again term it an **Hand** and **Arm couped** (or **couped** near the **Elbow**) but to mention either Arm or couping is superfluity; for by the sleeve, an Arm is understood; and that it is couped is well known, otherwise it must be either **issuing**, or **eragen**. This is born by the name of *Clark*.

The like is the Crest of *Smeaton*.

XLIV. He beareth Vert, a **Hand** proper, **holding** of a **Pen**, (or a **Writing Pen**) Or, **Feather** Argent. Born by the name of *Scrivener*.

B. 3 such, is born by *Sandfich*.

XLV. He beareth Vert, a **Hand** proper, **holding** of a **Trefoile**, Or: **sleeved** Gules, **turned up** Argent. Some blazon this an **Hand** and **Arm couped**. This is the Coat of *Try le Main*.

The like hand holding 3 Trefoiles proper, Sleeve O. turning up A. is the Crest of *Edgeley* of *Marley*.

After this Exanple there are extent thousands of Coats especially Crest, of hands after this manner holding all manner of things, as **Leaves, Flowers, Fruit, Serpents**, parts of other **Animals, Working Instruments** &c. which were endless to describe.

XLVI. He beareth Gules, a **Hand bareways**, Argent: **holding** of a **Flower de lis**, Or. This is the Coat of *Mainleave* of *Mainleave*. Now corruptly and for brevity called *Menla*.

B. 3 such A. Flowers de lis O. born by *Wade*, also by *Lodmore*.

In the base of this square is a **naked Arm barways bowed** a little in the Elbow, which in a Field Gules is born by *Arme*.

Per Fesse G. and A. the like Arm in chief, born by *Van Weiting*.

B. 3 such in pale A. born by *Hodeson*, or *Hodgkinson*.

XLVII. He beareth Sable, a **Tawny Moores Arm, issuing out of base**, the hand **holding of a Serpent**, or **Adder, entwrapped** about it, Vert. So blazoned by most, but I hold it better explained to say, a **Tawny Moores hand** out of **base holding a Serpent**, the **Tail entwrapped** about the Arm, or a Hand holding of a Serpent enwrapped about the Arm, fixed in base. This is the Crest of *Leech* of *Carden* in *Cheshire*.

Such an Arm A. holding of a Rope, with a running Noose (at the higher end) the other part reflected O. is the Crest of *Fadley*.

XLVIII. He beareth Sable, three **Dexter Arms, conjoyned** at the shoulders, and **flexed in triangle**, Or. the turnings up Argent, with the **Fists** (or **Hands clenched**, or **gripped**) proper: see *numb.* 42. Born by the name of *Armstrong*.

G. the like A. is born by *Tremain* of *Colacomb* in Devonshire.

G. 3 Hands in Triangle close A. born by *Hanchet*.

S. 3 Arms in triangle **reflect**, (else reflected) proper; holding Mallets O. by the name of *Rightmale*.

In the base of this square, is three **Heart in triangle; in point** (or **point to point**) Gules, which in a field Argent. Is born by *Van Leschern*.

B. a cross between 4 such triangled hearts A. *&c.* Is born by *Holzapfel*. See *n.* 54. it is otherwise blazoned.

XLIX. He beareth Sable, a **Naked Arm imbowed issuant** from the sinister side proper: out of a **Sleeve**, Or. The hand holding of a **Sword, the point in chief** Argent; **Hilt** and **Pumel** of the second, by the name of *Armstrong*. Sir *John Fern* in his Glory of Generosity blazons it Gules, a **Naked Arm Naissaunt**, out of a **Sleeve of a Robe**, Or: holding of a **Sword point in chief** Argent, and is quartered by the *Count de Feria* of *Spain*.

G. a Lyon Rampant O. holding a Sword point in chief, was the banner of *Pompei* the Great.

G. out of a Cloud issuant from the dexter side an Arm imbowed sleeve B. holding of a fish with the Tail erect proper with an Annulet in its mouth, O. is born by *Proy Van Findelstein*.

O. the Arm from the sinister side sleeve B. holding of a Sword with the point reversed. Born by *Degenhart*.

G. the like sleeve A. holding of a Ladle O. born by *Koch*.

B. a Naked Arm imbowed, the Sleeve Or, turn up A. holding of the Jaw-bone of an Horse or Ass, O. born for the Coat and Crest of *Crato*. This may be termed **Samsons Arm holding the Jaw-bone of an Ass**, wherewith he slew a Thouland *Philistins*, *Judg.* 15. 15.

G. an Arm imbowed issuant from the sinister side, Sleeve A. the Hand holding of a Sone or Diamond Ring. Born by *Kotsnatz*.

A. the like Arm imbowed, holding of a *Coopers* Hatchet, the edge to the sinister (or to the Arm) sleeve G. Born by the name of *Sigristin*. The same holding a Key O. born by *Schleicher*.

L. He beareth Or, **two Hands conjoyned** (or **hand in hand**) proper: **Sleeves** fixed to the sides of the Escochion Gules, **turnings up**, Argent. Born by *Couple*. Others blazon it two Arms issuant in Fesse, with the hands joyned in hand proper: Sleeves Gules, turnings Argent

Two such hands issuant, and conjoyned on a chief O. in an Azure field. Is the Coat Armour of *Truelove*.

S 3 pair of hands joyned Hand in hand A. is born by the name of *Purefoy*.

In the base of this square I have (for want of Room) placed two head: the first termed a **bald Head**, or a Mans head **bald of hair**. 3 Such in a Sable field is born by *Balder*.

The second is a Mans head with a Picaed De-vant beard (or sharp pointed Beard) proper, with an Infula Cap imbowed G. botton and tasselled O. turned up A. This is the Crest of *Hagenbach*, and *Hoffleten*.

The

The like with Cap and Garment G. turned up O. is the Crest of *Lutolsdorfe*, and with the Cap and Clothes O. turns up B. by *Gagell*; with Cap and other Clothes S. turning up A. is the Crest of *Van Romerstall*.

The like to the sinister; Cap, Tassel, and Clothes, O. turns up A. is the Crest of *Van Vohenstein*.

LI. He beareth Azure, **two Hands holding of a Rose**, proper: the **Sleeves Wavy barry**, Or and Sable; **turnings up**, Argent; **issuing out of Clouds** fixed to the dexter and sinister parts of the Escochion Fesse wise, proper. More briefly thus, out of two Clouds, in Fesse two Arms, tho hands holding of a Rose. Born by the name of *Royval*.

The like Coat is thus blazoned by Mr *Morgan*: He beareth Ermine, on a bend Sable, out of **two Petit Clouds radiant**, as many **Arms** and **Hands** proper; renting of an Horseshoe Argent. The Arms of Doctor *Edmund Burlace* of *Chester*, Brother to Sir *John Burlace* Barronet.

In the base of this quarter, having no other Room: I have caused the figures of **Argus**, and a **Friers head endorsed**, to be Graven; of which two persons take this short description.

The Poets say that *Io* or *Isis*, was beloved of *Jupiter*, who that his Wife might not suspect, turned her into the shape of a lowly Cow: which *Juno* begged of *Jupiter*, and delivered her to be kept by the hundred-eyed *Argus*; whose Eyes did half sleep by turns, when the other waked, and watched; *Mercury* by *Jupiters* command, through the Melody of his Pipe, lulled all his Eyes asleep and so killed him, and took away the Cow: but *Juno* in revenge, sent a **Gad-bee** to sting her, which made *Io* run mad up and down the World, till she came to *Egypt*, where she recovered her own shape. *Juno* turned *Argus* afterwards into a **Peacock**, in whose Tail are *Argus* Eyes still to be seen. He is a Man whom the ancients did Paint his Body, and Face full of Eyes. *Argus* Head is the Crest of *Sewell* alias *Sawall*.

The **Fryer**, is not properly either a Priest, or Lay-Man, in the *Romish* Religion: he is ever drawn in loose Garments, with a girdle about his middle, being shaven or shorn bare of his hair, both on his head, and face; only a circle or ring of hair compassing about his head like a Garland: which custom of so wearing their hair was first taken from the Idolatrous Priest of the *Heatherns*, see the whole form of a Frier, *lib.* 3. *chap.* 4. *numb.* 29. 32.

G. a Cheveron between 3 Friers head couped A. is born by the name of *Frier*.

LII. He beareth Gules, an **Eye** Argent; in base a **Mouth** open proper. Both these are set forth as parts of Coats Armour, or Badges, and signes for habitations.

Barry Nebully of six Azure, and Argent, on a chief of the second 3 Eyes Gules. Is born by *De la Hay*.

There is an Inne in *London* whose cognizens is the Mouth. It is a great wide gaping mouth and teeth; some call it a **Gyant**, or **Sarazens mouth**. Somtime and in some places in *England*, the Sarazens head is drawn with a gaping and wide Mouth; which goeth also under the denomination of the sign of the Mouth, or the Mouth Inne: these are signs of houses of entertainment for strangers, and travellers.

LIII. He beareth Sable, a **Woman Dugg** (or a **Breast with the Pap**) **distilling Mops of Milk**, proper. They are also called the **Teats of a Woman**. Barry of six Or, and Sable, on a pale Gules; such a Dugg is born by the name of *Dodge* of *Stappon*, in *Chestire*.

LIV. He beareth Argent, a **Mans Hart Mulnet** (of *vulnus* a wound) or wounded, **distilling** on the sinister side, **Mops of Blood**, proper. Some call it a Heart wounded only: yet there is another Hart which is a Beast.

A. a heart proper, a chief S. born by the name of *Scambler*.

A. a Fesse and three such Wounded Heart, G. by the name of *Tote*.

G on a chief A. 3 hearts born by the name of *Heart*.

G. 3 Hearts reversed A. is born by *Erlebecken* of *Bavaria*.

B. 5 such reversed 3 2 A. a chief Nebulee A. by *Steubling*.

G. 3 hearts A chief O. born by *Wachendorf*.

A. 3 such G. chief O. born by *Zweifeln* of the *Rhyne* Palatine.

B. a cross between 12 hearts 3 and 3 in triangle A. in the chief of each quarter a Crown O. born by *Holtzapfell* of *Alsatia*.

LV. He beareth Gules, a **Mans Heart between two Wings displaid**, Or: **Pinions** Argent. Some say the **Heart Volant**; or between two **Wings conjoyned**, and **displaid**, or **Points elevated**. Born by *Hartley*.

Gules such a Heart between two Wings, Or. Born by the name of *Wingham*. Yet *Guillims fol.* 325. makes the Wings (of this Coat) come out from the sides of the heart, as if it were a **flying Heart**: and no other term can be given it in such a posture, but eithe a flying Heart, or two Wings conjoyned to the sides of a heart, for a heart between wings cannot properly be understood to joyne to it as you may see in the bearing of Crests.

In the base is a **Demy Eye**, or the half Eye, not so termed because it is cut off in the middle as in other kind of Demy bearing, but termed only a demy Eye because the one half of it is but seen.

Sable a Cheveron between two **demy Eyes**, **resplendant**, Argent: and a **Flame** of Fire, Or. Born by the name of *Watchman*.

G. 3 such Eyes A. is born by *Eye*.

LVI. He beareth Sable, a **Mans Heart enflamed**, proper; **pierced** with **two Darts Salterwise**, shafts Or. Heads and Feathers (or pheoned and feathered) Argent: **distilling Mops of Blood**. Born by the name of *Hotlove*.

B. a Heart pierced with two Darts Salterwise A. crowned O. by the name of *Patience*.

A. 3 **Mens Harts**, **reversed**, with the **Vein** therefrom **couped**, G. & for the Crest, the Heart G. with a

a tuft of Glass issuing out of it V. is born by *Van Maxen.* Some term them, Harts reversed with a part of the Vein issuing therefrom; see *chap.* 19. *numb.* 114.

LVII. He beareth Azure, a **Mans Leg couped in the Thigh,** (or **middle** of the **Thigh**) Argent. All couping above the Knee, have the Thigh part thus bending, or bowed backwards; as this is couped, so you shall have it often born **erazed:** as in these Coats. Yet *Gallians fol.* 257. draws the Legs thus **couped,** and **erazed, upright:** without any bending in the Knee, and holds it needless to mention the bearing thereof to be in pale, because it is natural for a Mans Leg to stand upright, but if it be born in any other sort, then to mention it.

O. such a Leg Azure; born by *Haddon.*

A. the like erazed S. born by the name of *Prime.*

And here give me leave as in other places (if Heads and Arms) to give the courteous Reader those terms of Art, which Anatomists have ascribed to the several outward parts of this Member of the Body.

Terms of Art used to the Thigh, Leg, and Foot outwardly.

Thigh.

The **Ischia** or **Ischium,** the **Hipps,** or place where the Huckle-bone is.

The **Bubo,** the **Groin,** the **Gainings,** or bending between the Thigh and the Body: the bending to the privy parts.

The **Cora,** or **Corendix;** is the whole Thigh without any distinction of parts.

The **Femen,** the back part of the Thigh: of some taken for the inner part of the Thigh, next the other.

The **Femur,** the outside, or forepart of the Thigh.

The ——— is the fleshy part of the Thigh.

The ——— is the fore part of the Thigh.

Leg.

The **Genus,** or the Knee.

The **Genu** ——— joynt or Bent of the Knne.

The **Poples,** or the **Ham;** or hollow of the Knee.

The **Tibia,** or **Crus;** is the Leg, or shanke.

The **Crea,** is the skin of the Leg behind, which is the calf skin.

The **Antetibia;** the shin, or forepart of the Leg.

The **Sura,** or **Calf of the Leg:** the fleshy part behind the Leg.

The **Leripes, Wry Leged;** that goeth with the Toes outward.

The **Valgus, bow Leged;** going with stradling Legs.

Foot.

The **Talus, Ancle,** or bending between the Leg and foot. Called also **Sura,** the Pastern or Hough.

The **Pes,** the Foot withall its parts.

The **Tarsus,** or the **Instep;** the joynt or bending of the Foot at the bottom of the Leg.

The **Malleolus externus,** is the outward Ancle, or outside Ancle.

The **Malleolus internus,** the Ancle on the inner side the Leg.

The **Dorsum Pedis,** is the top of the Foot, or back of the Foot. **Pectus pedis,** the Breast of the Foot.

The **Subtalaris,** is the place under the Ancle.

The **Tarsus exterior,** the outmost joynt of the Foot; the place where the Toes joyn to it. The **After-wrist.**

The **Digitus Pedis,** the Toe, the Finger of the Foot.

The **Allus,** or **Hallux;** is the great Toe.

The **Pedium,** or the Wrest of the Foot: the forepart is called the **Instep.**

The **Calx,** or **Calcaneus;** is the Heel, or hinder part of the **Pedium.**

The **Planta pedis,** is the Sole of the Foot: or **Ball** of the Foot.

The **Uola Pedis,** the hollow of the Foot; the middle of the Sole.

LVIII. He beareth Gules, a **Leg couped below the Knee,** Argent. Born by the name of *Leg.* There are Legs of diverse forms, and shapes: as,

The **long Legs,** or **Shaks;** Legs of an extraordinary length.

The **short Legs,** bunting thick and short.

The **slender Legs,** such as have no Calf: **Spindle Legs.**

The **crooked Legs,** that are wide between the Feet and Knees outward.

The **bow Legs:** that is wide between the Feet and Knees inward, being set together. **Shakle hammed.**

The **Lame Legs,** that cannot go stidfast and upright.

S. a Leg A. Born by *Shrigley* of *Cheshire.*

A. 3 such S. born by *Harelewyn.*

O. one in pale B. born by *Haddon.*

There are some Coats, which have the Foot only couped above the Ancle: as,

S. a Cheveron between three Mens Feet couped, A. Born by the name of *Shrigley* of *Boristall.*

G. on a Fesse V. 3 such to the sinister A. born by *Barfuse* alias *Barefoot.*

Feet Deformed.

The **Splay footed,** or broad Feet; or **Pansated,** whose Toes are outward.

The **Crump Footed,** whose Feet wants Toes: **club Footed,** having short Feet and Toes.

The ——— Footed, whose Toes turn inward.

The ——— Feet whose Toes turn backwards.

LIX. He beareth Gules, a **Leg couped in the Thigh, erazed** in the **Ancle,** Argent: thrust through the Calf with a **Culter,** proper. Born by the name of *Ball,* of *Tussingham,* and *Boughton,* in *Cheshire.* Som say that the

the term thrust through the calf, should be through the Leg, because it partly enters in the forepart of the Leg: and the place entred to be the place named. But this entring is through the calf, thereof is truly mentioned. Of old it was born thrust through the Knee, and the Thigh part more upright.

G. the like thrust through with a Turkish Semiter proper. Born by *Ball* of *Erby*.

G. the like, thrust through with the shavered blade of a Fauchion A. by the name of *Ball* of *London*,

LX. He beareth Azure, **three Legs conjoyned** at the **Thighs**, and **fixed in triangle**, Argent. Some will have them to be termed, **three naked Mens Legs**, or three **Legs of Man**: but that needs not, for were they either cloathed, booted, or Armed, then they ought to be so termed, and their colour or mettle: others say they ought to be blazoned Mans Legs, which also needs not, for Man being the Soveraign Creature, his part need no mention of whom; but the Members of all other creatures, are to be mentioned of what *Genus* they are. Others term them three **Legs with Feet, Thigh to Thigh in triangle.** By the name of *Trevet*: derived as I suppose from the ancient name *Treefeet*; or three Feet.

G. the like A. born by *Owen ap Edwyn*: a noble Man in *Wales*.

LXI. He beareth Vert, a **Satyrs Prick**, Argent. It is termed also, the **Testicles**, or **Stones of a Dog** or **Lyon**: and *Penis Hominis*, a **Mans Yard**, and **Testicles**. But the most proper term, in relation to the name as bears it, is to call it only a Prick. For Azure, a Cheveron between three such Argent. Is born by the name of *Prick*.

LXII. He beareth Argent, a **Man couped at the Knees**, his left hand on his side, and with his **right supporting** or **holding of a Hollyn Tree couped** at the **root**, and **Raguled** on the Stock, all proper. Some do term this a **demy Man Naked**, but he is more than a demy Man, being couped below, or the bottom of the Thighs, when as the **demy Man** is cut off in the middle at the lower Belly; but to term it naked or not, it is left to the Blazoners discretion, for either is good Blazoning.

The Graver hath mistaken this Figure, in setting it to the Sinister side, whereas it should look to the dexter, as the foresaid Blazon is. This is born by the name of *Woodville*.

G. 3 demy Men A. or proper. Born by *Midman*, or *Madman*.

LXIII. He beareth Argent, a **demy Man**, proper, **holding a Club** in both hands, in Bend dexter, or bendwise, Sable; covered all behind (or on his back and head) with Oak leaves, Vert. Some Blazon it a demy Man, holding a Club (or with a Club) in both hands over the right shoulder, with a Wood at his back. By the name of *Woodman*.

G. 3 such Men with Clubs (sans leaves) A. is born by the name of *Wood*.

LXIV. He beareth Or, a **demy Man, in a Wood**, or amongst Oak leaves, holding a Club over his Breast in Bend, all proper. You may take which of these Blazons you please.

LXV. He beareth Gules, a **demy Maid**, proper, **crined** and **holding** in each hand (with **Arms extended**, or **stretched** out) three Ears of Wheat, Or. Some say three Ears of Corn on their Stalks; but here it cannot be Judged they should want Stalks, because otherwise they cannot be held thus.

Such another demy Maid, in a Scarlet Coat, fretted Or, is the Crest of the Worshipful Company of Brewers.

O. on a craggy Hill, out of Base V. a demy Maid proper, in her right hand a pair of Stags horns S. the left on her side, born by *Perger zu Clamb*.

A demy Maid in Scarlet, in the right hand 3 slips of Caterfoil flowers, Gules and Azure, leaved Vert; and the other hand on her Breast, is the Crest of the Lord *Darcy* of *Chyche*.

Per Fesse S. and Chequie A and B. on the first a demy Maid issuant, holding of an Anchor O. is quartered by *Gortschacher*, of *Corinthia*.

Out of a Crown a Naked Woman Crowned, Arms extended, holding two Fishes by the tails, B. is the Crest of *Senus*. Also of *Van Freidenberg*.

O. a demy Woman to the Sinister, Hair tied under a Fillet, the ends Flotant (or flying out behind her) holding a Staff over her head with the left hand, the right on her side, is the Coat, and the same out of a Crown, is the Crest of *Mordeysen*.

LXVI. He beareth Azure, a **demy Maid**, proper, **crined**, and **issuing out of the Sun**, Or. Others give it a more large Blazon, thus; a demy Maid holding up the right hand, with the left set on her side proper, with side or long Hair, and proceeding out of the top of the Sun, Or.

LXVII. He beareth Azure, a **demy Virgin Mary**, with her **Babe in Swadling Cloths**, proper; under a **Canopy** (or **enthroned**,) Or. This is of some termed the **Lady Mary**, and the Blessed **Lady Virgin Mary**, and our **Lady with her Babe** in her right Arm. This on a Chief is a part of the Coat which belongs to *Lincoln Colledge* in the University of *Oxford*, and to *Brazen Nose Colledg* in the same place.

LXVIII. He beareth Sable, on a **Biere**, Or, a **dead Body**. (or **Corps**) in a **Shroud** or **Winding sheet**, Argent. This is born by the name of *Van Leichman*, in *Lower Germany*.

Sleep, the Emblem of Death.

To **Stretch** and **Yawne**, or **Gape**, is a Sign of Sleep.

To **Twinkle with the Eyes**, and **Nodd** with the Head, is to desire a Nap.

To **Slumber**, is a weak and short Sleep.

To **Snort** and **Dream**, is found Sleeping.

To **Sleep**, is a short Death.

To

To Dye, is a long Sleep.

LXIX. He beareth Gules, a **Deaths Head**, Or, adorned with a **Laurel Garland**, Vert; between two **Wings displaid**, (or **conjoined and displaid**,) Argent. Some term it a **Triumphant Deaths Head** **Volant**, this is the Emblem of Mortality, and is generally fixed on some part of the Tombs or Monuments erected for the Dead. Sometimes the **Scull** is fixed between two **Bats Wings**, and in some **invironed** with **Laurel Branches**, *&c.*

In the Sinister Base **issuant**, is the **Head and Shoulders** of a **dead Woman wound up in her Shroud** or **Winding sheet**, with a knot on the top of the head, and the **corners flotant** or opened. S. 3 such couped at the Shoulders, Argent, is the Coat of *Shroud*, of *Shroud*.

LXX. He beareth Sable, a **Dead Mans Scull**, (or a **Deaths head**,) Or. By the name of *Deaman*. Of the Bones of Man, and the several terms given to each particular, I shall treat in the end of this Chapter, therefore here shall say no more concerning it.

A. on a Cheveron G. 3 Sculls of the first, by the name of *Bolter*.

S. 3 dead Mens Sculls O. born by *Deadman*.

B. 3 such with a Cheveron between, A. born by *Quitman*.

LXXI. He beareth Gules, two **Shin-Bones in Cross**, that in Pale surmounting, Argent. There are diverse ways in Blazoning this Coat, and all superfluous, as a Shin-Bone in Fesse, **surmounted** of another in Pale, both in form of a Cross; and another says, a Shin-bone in Fesse, **debused** or surmounted of another in Cross (or in form of a Cross) And a third comes and Blazons it two Shin-bones in Cross, that in Fesse surmounted by the other in Pale; and these forms of Blazon are given hereunto, because one lieth nearer to the Field than the other doth; which makes it that they cannot be called a Cross of Bones, because they be not **Incorporated**, but are dividedly severed one from the other. This is born by the name of *Holdman*.

S. a like Cross, that in Fesse surmounting; by the name of *Baines*.

S. two Bones in Salter, the dexter surmounting, by the name of *Newton*, in *Derbyshire*.

B. 2 such in Salter, between 4 Mullets of 6 points O. by *Van Parson*.

LXXII. He beareth Argent, an **Infant**, or **Child in Swadling Cloths**, proper; **Mantle**, Gules, **Swadle Band**, Or. Some say the Mantle Scarlet, fretted, Or. By the name of *Innocent*.

Such an Infant, with an Eagle standing upon it, with its Wings expansed, Sable, in a Field Argent; is born by by *Calcheth* of *Calcheth*.

The like Infant, with such an Eagle, Or, is the Crest of the Right Honorable Earl of *Derby*, Lord of *Man*, and the Isles.

A. 3 such in Pale, the middlemost counterposed, is born by *Innocent*.

S. 3 such, the Swadling Clothes A. is born by *Infant*.

In the Base of this quarter is the figure of a **demy Woman sans Arms, Blindfolded** with a **Scarf** or **Fillet**, ends flotant A. in a Field B. and is the Coat of *Van Assall*. This kind of Bearing both of Men and Women to the middle, both naked and Clothed, sans Arms; is much used both for Coats and Crests among the *German* and *Dutch* Families, which ought to be termed **demy Men** or **Women** though they want Arms, because their couping or cutting off is below the Navel, or thereabouts. And also because the want of **Arms** in **many** Crests of theirs is **supplied by Wings, Fish, Stags Horns, Elephant Snouts, Bulls horns, Branches of Flowers**, which they could not, if it were not a demy Body; see *chap.* 16. 3. and 18. 143.

A demy Moor so blinded with a Scarf, the end flotant A. is the Crest of *Houghan*.

The like Moor so Blindfolded, out of a Coronett and Crowned, is the Crest of *Budten*.

LXXIII. He beareth Vert, two **Naked Boys respecting** (or **aspecking** each other) holding up of an **Heart**, proper. By the name of *Childe*. These are by Mr. *Bossel* termed **Twins**, and two **Naked Geminis**, and so ought to be termed (saith he) if there be more then one in an Escochion. A. two Twins with an heart between their hands. This is born by the name of *Childerley*.

Names according to a Mans Age.

An **Embryo**, or a shapeless Lump, when first Conceived in the Womb.

An **Abortive**, if Born before its full time.

A **Posthumus**, one Born after his Fathers Death.

Agrippa, is one that is Born with his Feet forward.

An **Infant**, a Child new Born, and so for two years. **Infancy**, *Anniculus*.

A **Babe**. or Baby, a young Child, and so to 7 years old. **Infantulous**.

A **Boy** or Lad at 7 years of Age. **Puerility**, *Ineptula*.

A **Stripling**, or young Boy from 7 to 14 years old. **Minority**.

A **Youth**, from 14 to 21 years of Age. **Adolescens**. **Juvenal**.

A **Young Man**, at his full growth and Stature, to 30 years, **Virility**.

A **Man**, at 30 years old to 40. **Vir, Homo**.

A **Middle Aged Man**, at 40 years.

An **Elderly Man** at 50 **Agerazia one growing Old**.

An **Old Man**, at 60. **Senex, Senectus**.

A **Drooping Old Man**, in his Old Age, at 70 to 80 years. **Decrepit Age**. **Grandaevity**. **Longaevitas**.

A **Dotard**, or **Dote-age**, or twice a Child, from 80

So to 100, and so to the end of his Life. **Bis Puer. Senecio.**

Names according to the Ages of Women:

Of the Female from a **Babe.**

A **Girl,** or Wench, or Virgin. **Virginity, Virgin-age.**

A **Damsel,** or Lass. **Puella, Adolescentula.**

A **Maid,** or Young Maid. **Virgo,**

A **Young Woman. Ancilla.**

A Woman at her full Age and growth. **Nubilis,** vel **Nuptialis Etas,**

A Middle Aged Woman.

An **Old Woman,** or an Aged Woman. **Anus.**

A **Decrepit** Aged Woman, *&c.* **Decrepita, Etas.**

Several sorts of Maids.

A **Virgin,** one that is free from Carnallity in Thought, Word and Deed.

A **Damsel,** one that is from Carnality in Word and Act.

A **Maid,** one that is free from the carnal act.

A **Maiden-Wife-Widow,** one that gave her self up to a Man that could never enjoy her Maidenhead.

A **Man like Maiden,** a **Virago,** one that fears not what Man can do unto her.

A **Chamber Maid,** one that hath been in *Venus* School, yet is known for no other than a Maid.

An **handmaid,** an **Harlot,** or common Woman, 1 *King.* 3. 16. 20. but in the best sense it is taken for a Wise discreet Woman, Matron, or Mother of Children, as 1 *Sam.* 25. 24. *Psal.* 86. 16. *Luke* 1. 38.

Lastly, the chief of Maids, is a **Good Wife,** who (as the Proverb saith) is a good Maid.

LXXIV. He beareth Vert, a **Naked Boy holding up his right hand,** and with his left **supporting a Wax Taper,** Or, flaming (or fired) proper, having a Scarf or Ribbon cross his right shoulder, Gules, with a **Mantle** or **Cloak** hanging at his back, Azure. This is the Supporter of the Right Worshipful Company of *Painters.*

B. a Naked Boy holding an Apple in his right hand, and his left upon his side proper, is the Coat of *Kiesewater,* a *German.*

A. a Black Boy in his right hand a Stone Ring O. born by *Winckler.*

G. a Mount out of Base V. a demy Boy issuant, holding in his Right Hand a round Mirror or Looking Glass, and the left upon his side, A. is the Coat and Crest of *Haugen.*

Per Fesse B. and G. on the first a Boy holding an Apple on the right, and his left on his side: On the second an Adder or Serpent torqued O. born by the name of *Kiesewater.*

Per Fesse B and Chequie A. and G. a demy Boy issuant, wreathed about the Temples, the ends flotant A. and G. is the Coat, and the like Boy, hands on his sides, out of a Coronet, is the Crest of *Van Loben.*

The like demy Boy to the Sinister S. Wreath flotant backwards A. and G. is the Crest of *Saecke.*

S. issuant from a Mount in Base V. a demy Boy to the Sinister, holding up his left, and his right hand on his side, born by *Jungen.* The Crest is five Peacocks Feathers out of a Coronet, with the like Boy issuant.

A demy Boy with his Arms (open or) extended, parted per Cheveron A. and S holding two flowers de lis, and one on his Belly counterchanged. This is the Crest of *Schlewiczer* of *Brunswick.* This answereth his Coat, which is, per Cheveron A. and S. three flowers de lis counterchanged.

LXXV. He beareth Argent, a **Negro,** (**Indian, Blackmoor,** or **Morocco**) **demy faced,** proper, environed about the Temples with a **Scarf** or **Ribbon,** Argent, holding an **Arrow** or **Dart** in his right hand, and an **Escochion** before his Belly with his left hand, Azure, charged with an Estoile or Star, Or. By the name of *Hunstersson.*

G. on a Hill out of Base, a Morocco crowned, holding of a Sword upright, and his other hand behind his Back, is the Coat of *Kuessteiner.*

O. a demy Moor to the Sinister, crowned, porting of an Halbert between his two hands, is born by *Rinen van Vrendorf.*

LXXVII. He beareth Argent, a **Wild Man,** (or a **Hairy Man,** or a **Wild Wood Man,** or a **Hairy Wood Man**) proper, with Oak leaves about his Temples and middle, with a **Dead Tree** (or a **Tree sans Leaves,** or a **Starved Tree**) plucked up by the root, on his Shoulder, Sable. This is of some termed a Wood Man invironed about the Temple and middle, with Laurel Garlands; but a Wood man is generally made with a smooth and naked skin; but being hairy must of necessity be thus distinguished, and be termed either a **Wild Man,** a **Hairy Man,** or a **Wild Wood Man;** though others, to make all sure, Blazon it a Wild Hairy Wood Man; the proper colour of these are generally of a tawny or swarthy flesh colour, whether they be smooth skinned, as **Wood men,** or hairy, as **Wild men.** This is the Crest of *Termite,* of *Shropshire,* now called *Terrick.*

A demy **Wood man,** proper, holding a Launce on his right Shoulder, Or, is the Crest of the Worshipful Company of *Joyners,* within the City of *London* and *Chester.*

Choromande, or **Choramnai,** are a people that have no Voice, but make a horrible noise; their Bodies are hairy, their eyes like Cats Eyes, and their teeth like Dogs teeth.

O. on a Mount in Base, a Woodman proper, holding an Oak tree mooted up by the root, and with his left hand holding up his left leg by the Ancle. Born by the name of *Hopfer.* The same is also his Crest.

B. a Wild Man to the Sinister, supporting an Oak Tree Irradicated, all prope. By the name of *Van Drachdorf.*

O. a Wild and Hairy Man proper, supporting a ragged Staff S. is the Coat of *Dochroden*.

A demy Woodman sans Arms, is the Crest of *Ougsbergs* of the Province of *Switzerland*.

Out of a Coronet a Wildman porting a Staff Bendways in his hands S. between two Elephants Snouts bowed endorsed O. is the Crest of *Stangell* of *Austria*.

Out of a Coronet a demy Wild Man in full Aspect, with both hands holding (or pulling) his long forked Beard, proper; on his head an Insula Cap Imbowed G. Tasselled and turned up with an open before (or in the front or frontall) O. is the Crest of *Reibing*, an *Aussurgerman*.

Here note, that both Wood Men, and Wild Men have always Laurels about their Temples; and also about their Middles, if born whole, which need not be expressed, but some are so curious as to do it.

LXXVII. He beareth Vert, **Hercules cloathed in a Lions skin**, proper, holding up both his hands, and in his left a **Club**, Or. Born by the name of *Hercule*. Thus the Ancients ever depicted *Hercules*, cloathed (after some) in a **Horse Skin**, others a **Lions skin**, Armed with a **Club, Bow and Arrows in his Quiver**. He was a Man of an Heroick and undaunted Spirit, and did many noble acts, the chief were these, 1. He killed two Snakes that were sent by *Juno* to Kill him in his Cradle. 2. Slew the Lion in the Wood. 3. Killed the Dragon *Hydra*. 4. He overtook and killed the Golden Horned Stag on the Hill *Menalus*. 5. And the Wild Boar in *Erymanthus*. 6. He slew the untameable Bull in *Crete*. 7. And also the Dragon that kept the Golden Apples in the Gardens of the *Hesperides*. 8. And the great Giant *Antæus*. 9. He tamed the *Centaure*. 10. He delivered *Hesion*, *Laomedons* Daughter from the Sea Monster. 11. He fetched the Dog *Cerberus* from Hell Gates. 12. He Travelled through the Torrid Zone, and Sands of *Libia*. 14. He cleansed *Augeus* Stable. And at last he was burnt to Death by an Inchanted Shirt sent him by his Wife, who he had forsaken.

Party per Fesse G. and Losengy A. and G. a demy Hercules issuant, proper, with a Club on his Shoulder, and his left hand on his side O. is the Coat and Crest of *Holtz-halben*.

A demy Hercules with a long forked Beard and Hair pendant to the Breast, clothed per pale G. and O. holding a Club in both hands before his Breast Bendways O. is the Crest of *VVoodhouse*. The same so cloathed holding his Club Bend sinister ways, is born also by *VVoodhouse*.

LXXVIII. He beareth Azure, a **Man dismembred**, proper. This is otherwise Blazoned, as a **Man dismembred of his Arms below the Shoulders**, and of his **Legs below the Knees**. By the name of *Membris*.

A demy Woman so dismembred per pale O. and B. an Hat tyed under her Chin, of the same. By the name of *Van Wedell*.

The Body of Man is divided into the **Trunk** and the **Limbs**.

The **Trunk** contains the Head, Breast and Belly.

The **Members** or **Limbs**, are the four Branches sticking out from the body, as two Arms and two Legs.

Terms given to the outward parts of the Trunk of the Body.

Th **Scapula**, the **Scapular**, or Shoulder part, that where the Trunk joins to the Arm, the **Shoulder-Blade**.

The **Ariila**, the top of the Shoulder backwards.

The **Pectus**, or **Chest**, or middle of the Breast, where the Ribs join.

The **Pectus dextrum**, or right Breast.

The **Papilla**, or Nipples of the Breast, the **Pap**.

The **Pectus Sinistrum**, or left Breast.

The **Scrobiculus cordis**, or trench of the Heart, that part between the lower Ribs, and the top of the Belly.

The **Umbilicus**, or **Navel**, or root of the Belly.

The **Umbilicalis**, or Region of the Navel. The **Calleo**, or rise of the Belly round the Navel.

The **Epigastirum**, or upper part of the lower Belly, the Belly above the Navel.

The **Praecordia**, or place just before, and a little under the Heart.

The **Hypochondria**, the same place on the right side against the Heart, to which place the outward Liver Remedies are applied.

The **Latera**, or sides equal to the Navel; called also **Lumbi**, and **Lumbaris region**, the **Loins** or Region of the Body or Kidneys.

The **Hypogastrium**, the lower part of the Belly; called also the **Aquaticulus**, or the **Watercourse**.

The **Ilim**, or the **Flanks**, the places each side, at the **Huckle** or **Hip-Bone**.

The **Pubes**, or the **Pecten**, is the place above the setting on of the Yard, the **Groin**.

The **Inguen**, or **Lesk**, or **Graintings**, or Bending of the Thighs.

The **Penis**, the Mans Yard or Prick, his Privity or Secrets.

The **Balanus**, the Nutt or Head, or end of a Mans Yard.

The **Praeputium**, the foreskin that covers the Head or Nut of the Yard.

The **Testes**, is the Stones or **Testicles**.

The **Scrotum**, or outward Skin as covers the **Stones**.

The **Cod** or Case of the Testicles.

The **Pubes**, is the Hair growing about the Privy parts.

The **Fraenulum**, the Band or Bridle which ties the foreskin to the bottom of the Nut of the Yard.

The **Cervix**, the Back part of the Neck; the nuke or Nape of the Neck.

The **Dorsum**, is the whole Back from the Neck to the Buttocks.

The **Spina Dorsi**, is the ridg of the Back; the middle of the Back where one may feel the Back-bone.

The

The **Corendix**, or **Corendices**, are the Hips.

The place of the **Os Sacrum**, or Holy Bone, is just over the clift of the **Buttocks** or Breech.

The **Coccyx**, is the place of the Rump, or clift of the Breech.

The **Nates**, is the **Buttocks** or Breech whereon we sit; the Arse.

The **Anus**, the Fundament, or Arse-hole; the **Podex**.

The **Cuticula**, or the **Epidermis**, is the outward or scarf skin, which is no way **porous**, but sticks close to the true skin, to shut its pores, and make it smooth, and beautiful, and even; the **Cuticle**.

The **Cutis**, is the true skin which covers the body, and is very full of Pores. **Spungy skin.**

The **Vulva**, or **Cunnus**, the Cunny or passage by which a Woman engendreth. The **Orifice of the Matrix.**

The **Valves**, or **Labia Cunni**, the Lips or Doors of the Water course.

The **Cunnus**, or Hair of the Matrix; this word is conceived to be derived from the Greek, *Connos*, a Beard, and therefore doth properly stand for the hair about a Females Privity, and not the Orifice it self; the share, or hairy part of the Cunny.

The **Nymphae**, are pretty firm Membranous Excrescences lying within the Lips or mouth of the **Sheath** or Orifice of the Cunny.

The **Clitoris**, is a little fleshy knob covered with a thin skin, lying at the top of the **Nymphae.**

The **Caruncula Myrtiformes**, are small portions of Flesh, like Myrtle Berries, at the entrance of the Sheath or passage to the Matrix; on each side, above and below, one.

The **Collum Uteri**, the Sheath, or Scabbard, or pass to the **Womb**; the neck of **the Matrix.**

The **Urethra**, or Piss Pipe, **by which** Water issues forth.

The **Hymen**, is a Membrane or thin skin after the **Nymphes**, and is drawn before the Orifice; it is the token of Virginity; and as long as it is to be seen, the **Caruncula Myrtiformis** appear not; but after it is vanished, they appear, and are swelled so big, that they fill the whole Orifice of the Womb.

The **Tentigo**, or the **Womans Yard** or **Prick**, because the same imitates a Mans Yard, as the Breasts of a Man resemble a Womans Dugs.

LXXIX. He beareth Argent, **Eva in her Innocency**, holding an Apple in her right Hand, all proper. Or else after others, **a Naked Woman with her Hair down to her knees**, in her right hand an Apple, and her left on her side. This Coat is born by the name of *Freewill*. The Fruiterers, alias Fructers, vulgarly Fructsers, or Fruit-sellers of the City of *London*, have **Adam and Eva** on each side the **Forbidden Tree**, with the **subtil Serpent entwrapped** about it, in a Landskip of Air and Earth, all proper, for their Coat of Arms; else I have very rarely found a Naked Woman in her Innocency, born for either Coat or Crest; but demy Naked Women very often are found in both and for both.

LXXX. He beareth Gules, a **Woman with two Heads**, Argent, **crined**, Or. Such a Monstrous Woman as this was in *Bavaria*, in *Italy*, having two Heads and a perfect Body, which lived for 20 years, till it was Banished the Countrey, lest Wives great with Child, by often looking on her, by strength of Imagination strongly moved; should make the like Impression on the Infants they should bear.

St. *Austin* saith in his time, in the East an Infant was born, having all the parts from the Navel upwards double, but from thence downwards single.

LXXXI. He beareth Gules, a **Cherub crined to the knees**, Or. This is Blazoned by the *Dutch*, a **Woman Naked, crined**, Or, **her Arms converted or metamorphized** into two **Wings**, and displaid, Argent; see *chap.* 1. *numb.* 27. This Blazon is born by the name of *Ryos*, or *Ryalls*.

B. 3 such demy Cherubims, O. born by *Grindlese*.

Out of a Crown, a demy one Crowned A. is the Crest of *Salisburg*.

The like demy Cherub, with a Wreath about her head, the ends flotant A. and G. is the Crest of *Suckerell*.

As this Woman hath Wings in place of Arms, so in many Coats, especially amongst the *Dutch*; the said Arms shall be **Fish Tails, Elephants Snouts**, and **Bulls Horns**, with such like; which Coats by these examples, the ingenious may easily know how to express such kind of Metamorphised Creatures with due and fitting terms.

LXXXII. He beareth Argent, the **Sister of Phaeton metamorphised into a Tree**, the **Body**, Or, **Branches**, Vert. The Sisters of *Phaeton*, because of their immoderate Mourning for the misfortune of their Brother (who was Slain with a Thunderbolt) were by the gods all turned into Trees: And as these came to such untimely Ends, so out of the Stories of the Poets, we find divers others were Metamorphosed and changed by the Gods, for some misdemeanour or other, from their own into other Created Shapes, as for example.

Women Metamorphosed.

Daphne, the Daughter of the River *Peneus*, which *Apollo* dearly loved; but because he could not obtain his desire of her, turned her into a **Laurel Tree**, from whence *Daphne* is termed a Laurel.

Io, or **Isis**, was the Daughter of *Inachus*, whom *Jupiter* loved; and that *Juno* might not suspect it, he turned *Io* into a **Cow**, which *Juno* begged of *Jupiter*, and delivered her to be kept by *Argus*. See *numb.* [illegible]

Syrinx, a Nymph of the Water, whom *Pan* the god of Shepherds fell in Love with; who running from him, was turned into a **Cane** or **Reed**, of which he made a Pipe.

Aedon, Wife of King *Zethus*, who envying the Wife of *Amphion*, because she had six Sons, she thought in the Night to slay one of them, and by chance slew her own Son, who finding the Mis-chance, died for greif, and was

*

was turned into a **Linnet**, or **Thistle Finch.**

Alcyone, the Daughter of *Neptune*, who going to the Oracle was drowned by Shipwrack, and was by the Gods turned into a Bird, called the **Kings-fisher.**

Antigone, the Daughter of King *Lacedemon*, who contending for beauty with *Juno*, was turned into a **Stork.**

Arachne, the Daughter of *Idmon*, was a skillful spinner, who contending with *Pallas*, for the excellency of her Art: who having her work broken, hanged her self, and was by *Pallas* turned into a **Spider.**

Arethusa, a Nymph of *Diana*, who was loved of *Alpheus*; whose violence when she could not escape: *Diana* turned her into a **Fountain.**

Asteria, the Daughter of *Cous*; on her *Jupiter* begat *Hercules*, with whom *Jupiter* afterwards being angry, the Gods turned her into a **Quaile.**

Atalanta, she was so swift, that she made an offer, that whosoever could over run her in a race, should marry her: *Hippomenes* ventured to run with her, having received from *Venus* three golden Apples, which he threw in the way, which while she was staying to take up, he wan the race; but because he lay with her in the Temple of *Cybele*, they were afterwards turned into **Lyons.**

Calisto, Daughter of *Lycaon* King of *Arcadia*, and the companion of *Diana*: being fallen asleep was gotten with Child by *Jupiter*, at which *Diana* being offended, turned her into a **Bear.**

Eumenides, these are the three furies, the Daughters of *Pluto*, and *Proserpina*; or of Hell, Darkness, Night and Earth: In Heaven they were called **Dirae, Fairies**; in Earth **Harpiae, Ravenous-birds**; in Hell **Furiae, Fiends.** They had Snakes instead of hair, brazen Feet, Torches in one hand, and Whips in the other, and Wings to fly with.

Hecuba, Wife of *Priamus* King of *Troy*; dreamed she had a Firebrand in her Belly, being with Child of *Paris*; which caused *Paris* after he was born, to be exposed to wild Beasts, and *Hecuba* cast her self off a rock into the Sea, and was turned into a **Dog.**

Leucothoe, she was the Daughter of *Orchamus* King of *Babylon*, with whom *Apollo* was in love, and at length obtained his desire of her, which when her Father knew, he buried her alive: which *Apollo* took heavily, and because he could not restore her to life, transformed her into a **Frankincense Tree.**

Lotis, was a fair Nymph the Daughter of *Neptune*, who being like to be surprized by *Priapus*; called upon the Gods for their assistance, who taking pitty on her, turned her into a Tree of her own name, **Lotis.**

Dirce, the Wife of *Lycus*, and step-mother of *Amphion* and *Zethus*; who for her cruelty to *Antiopa*, their Mother, whom *Lycus* had put away, they killed him, and tied *Dirce* to the Tail of a wild Horse, which being dashed, dragled, and torn on the Ground, was by the Gods turned into a **Fountain** of her name.

Myrrah, the Daughter of *Cynaras* King of *Cyprus*, who being in love with her Father; when he was drunk did lie with him, and was got with Child: when her Father knew what a wicked Act she had made him commit, ran at her with his naked Sword, she running away, was by the Gods pitried, and turned into the **Myrrh-tree.**

Niobe the Daughter of *Tantalus*, and Wife to *Amphion* King of *Thebes*, who because of the multitude, and beauty of her Children preferred her self to *Latona*: therefore *Apollo* and *Diana*, being angry at her insolency, with their Arrows killed all her Children, and she with grief was turned into a **Stone.**

Nyctimene, the Daughter of *Nycteus*, by the help of her Nurse lay with her Father; which wicked incest being made known, she went and hid herself in the Woods, and was by *Minerva* who took pitty on her, turned into an **Owle.**

Hecate, was the Daughter of *Night* and, *Hell*; she was of a huge stature, and deformed face: having Snakes instead of Hairs, and Serpents for Feet, she had three Heads, to wit of a **Horse**, of a **Dog**, and of a **Man**: some think she had the Head of a **Wild Boar.**

Syca, and **Staphilis**, two Nymphs on whom *Bacchus* was enamoured, were by the Gods turned into **Vines.**

Philemon an old Man, and his Wife **Baucis**, were for entertaining *Jupiter* and *Mercury*, made Priests: and after instead of Death, were turned into **Trees.**

Caeis, a *Thessalian* Virgin, being defloured by *Neptune*, obtained of him to be turned into a **Man**, and that no weapons might have power to hurt her.

Castalia, a virgin who flying from the Lecherous God *Apollo*, fell down headlong, and was turned into a **Fountain.**

Clytia, a Nymph of the Ocean, whom *Apollo* lusted after; who telling it to her Father, caused *Apollo* in anger to make her burn in love with the Sun, still looking after it, till she died, and was turned into a **Marygold**, or **Heliotropium.**

Galanthis, the waiting Maid of *Alcmen*, for telling of *Juno* a lye, that her Mistris was brought to bed, when *Juno* for hatred would not suffer her to be delivered, was turned into a **Ferret**, or **Weessel.**

Halcyon hearing of the Death of *Ceix* her Husband, cast her self into the Sea, and was turned into a **Sea-bird**, which layeth Eggs in the middle of Winter, in fourteen days when the Sea is calm, from whence came the Proverb: *Dies Halcyonij*, Halcion days, days of quietness.

Heliades, the sisters of *Phaeton*, bewailing the Death of their Brother, were turned into **Poplar Trees**, of whose tears gum issued out, which made Amber.

Hermione, the Daughter of *Mars*, and *Venus*; and Wife of *Cadmus*, who with him was turned into a **Serpent.**

Hippe the Daughter *Chiron*, being got with Child, did so displease her Father, that he turned her into a **Mare.**

Erigo the Daughter of *Icarius*; she died for grief of her Father, and was made a signe in the *Zodiak*, called **Virgo.**

Iphis the Daughter of *Ligdus*, and his Wife *Telethusa*; who commanded his Wife, if she brought forth a Daughter to kill it, she pittying to destroy the Child, told him it was a Boy, and so brought it up in Boys habit, till she was marriagable, upon her prayers to the Gods on her wedding day, she was turned into a **Man.**

Meleagrides, the Sisters of *Meleager*; who are fained all to be turned into **Ginnie**, or **Turkie Hens.**

Vera

Vera Daughter of *Lucio Prætus*, *Jove* fell in love with her, and got her with Child: *Diana* turned her into a **Dog**, or **Bitch**.

Veta the Daughter of *Erisichthon*, *Neptune* deflowr'd her & gave her a reward that she should turn her self into any shape; and so when her Father would have Money, he would sell her for an **Horse** or an **Ox**, or the like; and she would come home in another shape.

Nectymene, the Daughter of *Nycteus*, who would have slain her, because she did continually come to his bed: whereupon *Minerva* turned her into an **Owle**; (which Bird as conscious of such a wicked fact) cannot indure the light.

Phaethusa with her Sisters **Lampetia**, and **Lampetusa**; the Daughters of *Sol*, and *Neara*: they for over much weeping and bewailing the Death of their Brother *Phaeton*, were all turned into **Trees**: see *numb.* 82.

Phillis, *Lycurgus* Daughter, who was contracted to *Demophoon*, as he came from *Troy* War. He went home to set things in order, staying long, and she being impatient of delays, hanged her self, and was turned into an **Almond tree**; but bear no leaves: *Demophoon* returning, and seeing the mishape Imbraced the Body of the tree, and it presently shot forth leaves.

Pigmalion a cunning *Painter*, thinking all Women were nought, making a resolution to live solitary: but chanceing to draw a beautiful picture of a Woman, fell in love with it, and praying to *Venus*, she made it a **Woman**, so that he had Children by it.

Praetides the Daughter of *Prætus* King of *Greece*, who compared their beauty to *Juno's* were thereupon driven to such a franzie, that they thought themselves to be **Kine**.

Propontides the Daughters of *Amathunta*; they at first dispised venery: but after a while they became impudent strumpet, that the goddess *Venus* turned them into **hard Stones**.

LXXXIII. He beareth Sable, a **Woman erected, taped in her Shroud**, or **Winding sheet**; tied with a **knot**, or **bunch** at the Head, and Feet Argent. Born by the name of *Deadman*. A fit emblem to shew that if the Woman be dead, the Mans succeeding is not only half, but wholy dead; except recruted.

LXXXIV. He beareth Argent, the **Image of Death** leaning upon the **Head of a Spade**: or else blazon it, the **Scaleton**, or **Anatomy** of a **Man**, Gules: **resting** upon the top of a **Spade** with the **left Arm**, the **Right pendant**, Or, **Shooed** Sable. This is born by the name of *Skelliton*.

LXXXV. He beareth Or, **Death**, or the **Scaleton of a Man** Sable, **Winged displaid**, Argent; in the right hand **holding a Dart**, & in the left an **hour glass**, Or. This is the emblem of Mortality, and may fitly be the Coat of *Mort*, who as his name is, so it may ever warn and teach him, and us, to be in expectation of this King of Terrours, who no sooner sees our glass run out, but presently strikes his deadly Dart; against which stroak, no flesh can Arm himself.

In a Field Sable such a Scaleton Or, Winged Argent. Is the Coat of *Mortmain*.

LXXXVI. He beareth Vert, **Time moving** with his **Sythe**, proper. Some term it the **Image** or **Emblem** of **Time moving for Eternity**: for when Time hath cut down all things, then Tyme will be no more. Others not taking notice of the Emblem, blazon it a **Naked Man** proper, **Winged displaid** Argent: with a **Sythe** in a **moving posture** Sable, being bald behind, and a long forelock of hair on his Foreheap (or a lock of hair before) Sable. Thus is Time generally painted. In like manner hath our Fore-fathers depicted several other things, being part of Time, or dependents upon Time: as

Moment, movement the only Time, Now.

Minutes, whose Emblem, or Image was depicted by a Woman holding of a Sun Dial, with a minute ballance fixed in the middle of it.

Houres, is emblem by a Woman holding of a Clock between her hands, on which is drawn the 12 houres of the day,

Day, is emblemed, by a Woman holding the Sun between her hands, shews that the Sun courses the World about in a day.

Night, is emblemed with the Moon in her hands with black Garments spotted with Silver or Gold Stars: or a Woman in dark clothes holding her hand before a burning Candle.

Mounths, emblemed, as **January** is depicted in the shape either of a Man or Woman, all in white Robes, Vests and Mantle; like snow or hore-frost blowing his fingers, and the sign *Aquarius* or the Water-man standing by his side.

February mounth, is drawn in a dark sky colour cloathes, with the sign *Pisces*, or Fishes in his right hand.

March mounth, is drawn tawny, with a fierce look, a Helmet upon his head, leaning upon a Spade; in his Right hand the sign *Aries*, or the Ram (standing by him some have it) in his left hand Almond blossoms, and Scions, and upon his Arm, a Basket of Garden seeds.

April mounth, is drawn like a young Man, or Woman in green, with a Garland of Mirtle, or Haw-thorn-buds; in one hand Primroses, and Violets; in the other hand or standing or lying down by him, the sign *Taurus* or a Bull in his proper colours.

May mounth, is drawn with a sweet and lovly aspect, in a Robe of white and green, Embrauthered with Daffodils, Haw-thorn, and blew Bottle flowers; on his Head a Garland of white, red, and Damask Roses; in one hand a Lute, and upon the Fore-finger of the other a Nightingal, with the sign *Gemini*, or two naked Boyes playing, or sitting embracing one the other at his Feet.

June mounth, is drawn in a Mantle of dark grass green, upon his Head a Coronet of Bents, King-cobs, and Maiden hair, (which are the seeds, or tops of several sorts of grass) in his left hand an Angle, in his right hand the sign *Cancer*, or a Crab or a Cravice fish: and upon his Arm a Basket of Summer Fruit.

July

July mounth, is depicted in a Jacked, or short Coat of a light yellow, eating Cherries, with his Face and Bo som Sun burnt; on his head a Garland of Century and Tyme, on his shoulder a Sythe; with a bottle at his girdle, and the sign *Leo*, or a Lyon carried by him, or else lying down at his Feet.

August mounth, is drawn like a young Man, of a fierce look, in a flame coloured Robe; upon his Head a Garland of Wheat; upon his Arm a Basket of Summer Fruits, at his belt a Sickle, bearing the sign *Virgo*, or a Virgin at his side.

September mounth, is drawn in a purple Robe, with a chearful look, and on his Head a Coronet of white and purple Grapes; in his left hand a handful of Oates, with a Cornucopia of Pomegranates, and other Summer Fruits; and his right hand a Ballance, which is the sign *Libra*.

October mouth, is emblemed by a Man, or Woman in a Garment of the colour of decaying Flowers, and Leaves *viz.* brownish red, reddish yellow, dark green, *&c.* With a Garland of Oak leaves acorned, in his right hand a Scorpion, (which is the sign *Scorpio*) and in his left, a Basket of Services, Medlars, and Chestnuts.

November mounth, is painted in a Robe of changable green and black; upon his Head a Garland of Olive leaves, with the Fruit; in his right hand, or by his side the sign *Sagitarius*, or the Centaur Archer couched by him: and in his left bunches of Parsneps and Turneps.

December mounth, is drawn like an old Creature, with a grim, or horrid aspect; clad in an Irish rug, or course Freeze girt about him: upon his Head three or four night Caps, and over them a Turkish Turbant: his Nose red, the beard hung with Iceikles, or dew frosts; at his back a bundle of Holly and Ivy; holding in Mittens, the sign of *Capricornus*, or standing by him a Goat.

The four Quarters of the Year Described.

Ver or the **Spring**, is emblemed, by a young Man, or a Virgin in green Robes, with a Scarf over his shoulders, the Head adorned with variety of Flowers, with a Cornucopia unde his left Arm, and a Shepherds crook in his right hand.

Summer, Estas; is emblemed in light and loose Garments, naked Breasts, crowned with variety of Corn, and Graines: with a dish of Fruit in one hand, and a Sickle, or sheering hook in the other.

Autume, or the **Fall**, is presented by a fat well groan person representing *Bacchus*, with a Crown of Vine leaves, and Grapes; with a cup of Claret in his hand, and a bunch of Grapes in the other, and a Mantle cast about him carelessly.

Hyems, or **Winter**, emblemed by an old Man with grey long beard: with a Garland of Parsneps, Carrets, and Turneps, about his Head; standing or sitting before a Fier, with a Cat on his watch, and a Dog in his sleeping posture.

The **Year**, is emblemed by one of a middle age, either Male or Female in Robes of various colours, and the Mantle or Vail changable, having in one hand upon his Palm, a large Ring or Hoope, or the circle Zodiack adorned with the Celestial signes.

It is also embled by a Serpent turned round with her Tail in her Mouth, to shew that the Year goes round for no sooner is *December* ended, but *January* begins. The Year is in no stay: time tarrieth for no Man.

Time, is sometime emblemed in a running posture with an hour glass in one hand, his Sythe over his shoulder and his fore lock of hair straight before him, which those that are wise take hold off, those that are otherwise will find *post est occasio calva*: when they would have time he is fled away.

☞ Note here by the way that all the Emblems of time and part of time, as Days, Months, and Years, *&c.* are generally drawu with Wings, either displaid, or expansed; to signifie that they stay not but fly away.

Eternity, is emblemed and expressed in the form of a fair Lady, with three Heads, signifying, time past, time present, and time to come; in her left hand a circle, pointing with the Fore-finger of the right hand to Heaven: the circle signifies she hath neither beginning or ending. In the Medalls of *Traian* the Emperour she was figured red, sitting upon a Sphear, with the Sun in one hand, and the Moon in the other: and in the Medalls of *Faustina*, she is drawn with a vail, and in the right hand the Globe of the World.

Sleep, is emblemed by a slothful, and sluggish person sitting on a stool, leaning on its hand and arm; which is seated on a table, or on its knee. *Philostratus* makes her a sluggish old Woman, sleeping on her hand, cloathed with a white under Garment, and a black upper Garment, or Vest: holding in one of her hands, a horn pouring forth seed, signifying by the seeds, rest, ease, and quietness.

Silence, emblemed by a Boy, Man, or Woman, which holds one of his Fingers close to his Lips, as a sign of secrecy. Some portraict him without any Face, but covered all over with the skin of a Wolf painted full of Eyes, and Eares: shewing it to be good to see, and hear much, but to speak little.

Fate, is drawn by a Man in a fair long white Robe, looking upwards where are two bright stars encompassed with thick Clouds, from whence hangs a Golden chain.

Fortune, is emblemed by a naked Woman having an ensign, or sail overshadowing her, standing upon a Globe, or Ball. *Bupalus* of *Greece*, made her in shape of a Woman, with a round Ball on her Head, and a Cornucopia in one of her Hands, she is called the Partial Lady, or blind Goddess, by reason of her bestowing of her unconstant, and mutable Favours. *Macrobius* sets her forth with Wings. and a Rudder of a Ship by her side; standing upon a wheele, holding in her right hand a Golden Ball, and in her left a Whip.

Honor, is depicted like a Woman with two Wings, cloathed in purple, or Scarlet, with a Coronet or Wreath

of Laurel about her Head, holding Cupid by the Hand, who leads the Woman to the Godess *Venus*; which is depicted over against them.

Fame, a Lady clad in a thin light Garment, open to the middle of the Thigh, that she might run the faster: with two exceeding large Wings. The Garments are Embrauthered with Eyes, and Ears; and she blowing of a Trumpet.

Destiny, is emblemed by a vailed naked Woman, who with great fury, with an Iron Bow ready bent, and an Arrow in it, aimes to stick Fortune even at the very heart. Fortune and Destiny can never agree, and therefore as Fortune flyes from Destiny, so Destiny pursues Fortune: and where Destiny sets her Foot, there Fortune is as it were inchanted, as having no power.

Providence, is depicted like a Lady lifting up both her Hands to Heaven: with these words in an Escrowle, *Providentia Deorum*, or thus a Lady in a Robe; in her right hand a Scepter, in her left a Cornucopia, with a Globe at her Feet.

Victory, is exprested by a Lady clad in Gold, in one hand a Helmet, in the other a Pomgranate, in the Medals of *Augustus Cæsar*, she was drawn with Wings ready to fly, standing upon a Globe or Ball; with a Garland of Bays in one hand; in the other a Coronet of the Emperours, and in the Medalls of *Octavius Cæsar*, she is drawn in a loose Coat with Wings, standing on a base, in one hand a Palm branch, in the other a Crown of Gold.

LXXXVII. He beareth Sable, out of a **Cloud** in the Dexter point, a **Hand holding a flame of Fire**, from whence issues a **Thunderbolt**, by which **Death** is cast into the **Lake of burning Fier** and **Brimston**, all proper. This is also blazoned **Joves hand**, out of a **Cloud** in the **Dexter corner**, by which he destroyed Death, and cast him into the burning Lake of fire. This may be termed **Jupiters Victory** over the **Prince of Terrours**: and **Christ** the Saviour of the World, his **Conquest of Sin, Death, Hell**, and the **Grave**. All which may be understood by his saying, *Hosea* 13. 14. *O Death I will be thy Death: Reve.* 21. 10. 14. *And He cast the Devil, and Death, and Hell, into the Lake of Fire.* So that now all the Faithful may triumph over them, and say with the *Apostle*. *O Death where is thy Sting, O Grave where is thy Victory: Thanks be to God who hath given us the Victory*, through our Lord Jesus Christ. 1. *Cor.* 15. 55. 57.

Men Punished in Hell.

Tantalus, the Son of *Jupiter*, and the Nymph *Plota*, for his revealing the secrets of the Gods, and for the inhumane Act of Massacreing his Son *Pelops*, was judged to Hell to be punished with want, by seeing Meat, and to have none; and with fear of a falling Rock, which was placed over his head.

Ixion, the Son of *Plegias*, who for muthering his Father in law, turned a vagabond on Earth: *Jupiter* at length pitried him, and took him to Heaven, where he fell in love with *Juno*; which *Jupiter* perceiving presented him a Cloud in shape of *Juno*, of whom he beget the *Centaures*. Therefore *Ixion* was sent down to the Earth, where braging that he had lyen with *Juno*, was by *Jupiters* Thunder cast down to Hell; where being tied to a Wheel he is continually whirled about.

Oestes, the Son of *Agememnon* and *Clytemnestra*, who killed his Mother and *Aegestus* her Adulterer, which wickedness the Gods punished him for, by sending Furies to haunt him from place to place, that he could not be expiated, at last he was stung by a Serpent and dyed.

Tityus, a Great Giant, the Son of *Jupiter*; he is said to reach over three Acres of Ground, who attempting to ravish *Latona*, was struck dead by *Jupiters* Thunderbolt; and so sent him to Hell, where he was adjudged to have a Vulture to feed upon his Liver, that grew as it was eaten. He was said to reach over nine Acres of Ground.

Dcnus his punishment was to make Cords continually, and an Ass standing by him, bit the ends, as fast as he made it. This Labour and Punishment is fained from one that takes great pains to little purpose; or of one that would gladly grow rich, but he hath a shrewd Wife at home, that spends as fast as he gets.

Phlegyas, Father of the Nymph *Ixion*, whom *Apollo* deflowred in revenge he fired *Apollos* Temple in *Delphos*: *Apollo* in anger slew him, and sent him to Hell; where he was set upon a great rolling stone, ever in danger of a great fall.

Salomoneus, the Son of *Æolus*, who to shew his Subjects that he was a God, made a Bridge of brass over a great part of the City, and hurried his Waggons over it, to imitate Thunder; but *Jupiter* being angry for his insolent attempt, slew him with a Thunderbolt, and sent him to Hell.

Sisyphus, he was slain by *Theseus*, and for his robbing sent to Hell, and there set to rowl a great Stone to the top of the hill, which when it was on the top, would suddenly slide down again, and so he continually renewed his labour.

LXXXVIII. He beareth Azure, **Acteon, Metamorphosied** into the shape of a **Hart**. Some do blazon it a **naked Man**, with his **quiver** at his side, hung in a **Scarf** or **Ribbon** Sable, with a **Bow** in his **Right Hand** Or, his Head turned into the shape or form of a Stag, proper. And some again more briefly; a **Naked Man** with a **Stags head**, proper: with a Bow in his right Hand Or, and a quiver and scarf Sable. But in the term, or name of *Acteon*, all these expressions are understood. For this Man was a great hunter, who by mishap spied *Diana* washing her self, was by her (for fear of his discovering it) turned into a Stag, who was forth with set upon, and torn in peeces by his own Hounds.

☞ Here note that all Persons Metamorphosied (let the shape be what it will, whether **Dog, Cat, Lion, Wolfe, Bear**, or **Bull** &c.) in these draughts, and depictings in History or Armory, they still retain their name and Bodily shape, to shew that they were either Men or Women: and the Head only Metamorphosied, or changed into that shape, that they were by the Poets fained to be in the whole Body turned to.

LXXXIX.

LXXXIX. He beareth, Gules **Lycaeon Metamorphosied** into the shape of a **Wolf**, proper: or a Man with a **Wolves head** with a Scarf over his shoulders, Or. This *Lycaon* was King of *Arcadia*, whom *Jupiter* turned into a Wolf, because he had slain a Boy upon his Alter. But *Ovid* saith that *Jupiter* hearing an ill-report of wickedness reigning amongst Men, came down to see, and travelling the Countrey to see the truth; one Night he came to *Lycaons* Pallace, and told him he was a God, the People Sacrificed to him; but *Lycaon* denied them. In the Night he went to *Jupiter* his Chamber to have slain him, but being prevented; he wyed him another way, by slaying one of the pledges he had from *Molossus*, and dressed him and set him before *Jupiter*: which he seeing overthrew his Pallace with Thunder, and turned him into a **Wolf**.

A **Canicipite**, or **Cynocephali**; are certain People in *India* that have Heads like Dogs, and howle like Dogs.

XC. He beareth Sable, **Cygnus Metamorphosied** into a **Swan, Wings expansed**, proper: with a Scarf over his shoulder, Gules. Or thus, a naked Man with Swans Neck and Wings expansed, with a Scarf over his right shoulder. This *Cygnus* was King of *Lyguria* a near kinsman of *Phaeton*, who weeping at the Tomb of *Phaeton*, was turned into a **Swan**, which hath been the name of *Swan* ever since.

Men Metamorphosied.

Achanthus, a Boy transformed into a **Flower** of his name.

Adonis the darling of *Venus*, a very beautiful Boy, who was after his Death turned into the Flower **Adonis**, or **Anemone**.

Aesacus the Son of *Priamus*, who fell in love with *Hesperie*, and followed her into the Woods, who running from him, was slain of a Serpent; whereupon he went mad, and cast himself into the Sea; whom *Thesis* turned a **Didapper**, or **Moor-hen**.

Ajax, a valiant Warriour, because he had not *Achillis* Armour grew mad, and slew himself, and was turned into a **Flower** of his name.

Alectryon, a friend and one beloved of *Mars*, who was his watchman whilest he lay with *Venus*; but being heavy asleep, *Sol* came & espied him, & told *Vulcan* Husband of *Venus*: who made a net of Chains, and cast it about them that they could not get out. The matter was known to the Gods, *Mars* was angry with his friend *Alectryron*, and turned him into a **Cock**: who now remembring his old fault, by crowing he gives warning of *Sol*'s approach.

Amaracus, an *Appothecaries* Boy of *Cynara*, King of *Cyprus*, who by chance broake a Box of Oyntment, by which means it smelt more sweetly. After his Death he was turned into the Herb **Majorana, Sweet Margeram**.

Atys, a beautiful Boy beloved of *Cybele* the Mother of the Gods, she made him one of her Priests, and enjoyned him chastity, but he lay with a Nymph; she in anger made him Wood, or Mad, and then turned him into a **Pine-tree**.

Cadmus King of *Thebes* he killed a Dragon which kept a Well, the Teeth he sowed of whom came Armed Men; who by means of a stone flung amongst them, fell to quarreling and killed each other; after this he was turned into a **Dragon** and by *Jupiter* was sent into the *Elysian fields*.

Circe, the Daughter of *Sol*, turned all *Vlisses* fellows into **Swine**, but over him she had no power: she could not procure the good will of *Glaucus*, who loved *Scylla* better then her; she infected the water in which *Scylla* was wont to wash, that touching it, she was turned into a **Sea monster**.

Diomedes forsaking his own Countrey, by reason his Wife had committed Adultry; went to *Apulia*, and helped *Daunus* against his Enemies, and settled him in his Kingdom: but *Daunus* understanding that he was not beloved of the Gods slew him; whose companions did so much lament his Death, that they were turned into **singing Swans**, or rather **Herons**.

Hyacinthus, a beautiful youth, beloved both of *Apollo* and *Zephyrus*; but loveing *Apollo* better, and being one day playing with him at an exercise called, Discus; *Zephyrus* grew angry, and with a sudden blast of Wind, turned the Discus or Quoit, upon the youths Head, and killed him. The Earth drunk up his blood, from whence sprung the Flower **Jacinth**.

Lincus, or **Lynx**; the cruel King of *Scythia*, to whom *Ceres* sent a messenger to instruct him in Husbandrie, and the use of Corn: who out of an ambitious desire to be thought the Author of such an excellent invention, intended to murther the instructor in the Night; but *Ceres* being angry at his treachery, turned him into the Beast **Lynx**, a spotted Beast like a **Panther**.

Narcissus a beautiful youth, who at the age of fifteen or sixteen years; was doted upon by diverse of the Nymphs, but he slighted them all: at last being very dry and hot, he came to a Fountain of clear Water to drink, where seeing his own Face, was so much inamored with himself; that with grief, because he could not obtain his love pined away and dyed: and was turned into a **Flower** of his own name, *Daffodill*.

Tithonus who for his beauty was beloved of *Aurora*; and by her carried into *Aethiopia*: by her means he made immortal: but living so long till he was turned into a **Grashopper**, he grew weary of his life, and desired to dye.

Erych-thonius was a Man begotten of *Vulcans* seed shed on the ground, whilest he was offering violence to *Minerva*, his Feet were the Feet of a **Dragon**.

Minotaure, a Man with a Bulls head; the Son of *Pasiphae*, Wife of *Minos* King of *Creta*, gotten by a **Bull**.

Ascalaphus for discovering that *Proserpina* had eaten a grain or two of Pomgranate in Hell, was by *Ceres* turned into an **Owle** for telling of Tails. The Owle since hath been accounted the messenger of ill news.

Celinus one that *Jupiter* nourished, and loved; who because he said the Gods were Mortal, was turned into a **Diamond**.

Demarchus, a noble Champion who for tasting of a childs entralls offered in sacrifice, was turned into a **Wolf**.

Elpenor, the companion of *Ulisses*, who was by the enchantress *Circe*, turned into a **Hog**.

Epimetheus, Son of *Japetus*; *Jupiter* being grieved at him, turned him into an **Ape**.

Dæmon for marrying his own Daughter, the Gods turned them into **Mountains**.

Hermaphroditus Son of *Venus* and *Mercury*, was beloved of a Nymph to whom he would not hearken; she embracing him (being both naked in a Fountain washing) desired the Gods that both their Bodies might be turned into one: and so such persons as were both Man, and Woman, are called **Hermaphrodites**.

Hesperus the Son of *Japetus* being expelled his Kingdom, went to the top of the Hill *Atlas* to observe the course of the Stars, and was turned into a **Star**; which in the Morning goeth before the Sun, and is called **Lucifer**, and in the Evening follows the Sun, and is called **Hesperus**.

Hippomenes, for his unthankfulness to *Venus* for the three Golden Apples, whereby he won *Atalanta* his Wife, and because he lay with her in the Temple of *Mars*-*Cybele*, transformed him into a **Lyon**, and her into a **Lyoness**.

Icarius the Father of *Penelope*, had a Dog called *Mera*; who dying was by *Jupiter* turned into the sign Canicula: and *Icarius* was made the Star, **Bootes**.

Nisus a King of the *Magarenses*, who had golden Hair, to whom it was told that as long as he did wear that Hair, he would be victorious. His Daughter *Scylla* fell in love with *Minos* his Enemy with whom he had War, she to procure love again, cut off her Fathers Hair and gave it to *Minos*, who got his Kingdom. *Nisus* for grief dyed, and was turned into a **Hawk**, and *Scylla* into a **Lark**: from hence the Poets do ground the antipathy between the Hawk, and the Lark.

Onophrius, a Man that lived a solitary life for sixty Years, in which space he saw no Man: he was the Man most Metamorphosed of any I have read off.

Periclimenus, *Neptune* granted him that he should transform himself into any shape he would; when *Hercules* Warred against his Father, he transformed himself into a **Fly**; but *Pallas* told *Hercules* of it, who killed him with his Club; he was afterwards turned into an **Eagle**.

Atlas King of *Mauritania*, he was a famous Astrologer, or Astronomer, he is said to bear Heaven upon his shoulders; to wit, by maintaining of the Science; from hence he is fained to be turned into a **Stone**, or **Mountain** of that name, upon the sight of *Medusa's* Head, for denying *Perseus* Son of *Jupiter* by *Danae* entertainment.

Phalaus or **Phalachrus**, the Son of *Æolus*, who for deflowring his Sister *Arachne*, was turned into a **Serpent**.

Philomela King *Pandions* Daughter, was ravished by *Tereus* King of *Thrace*, whose Sister he had married, called *Progne*; which in revenge slew his Son *Itys*: *Tereus* in a rage would have slain the Sisters, but *Progne* was turned into a **Swallow**, *Tereus* into a **Lapwing**: *Philomela* for condoling the hainous fact, into a **Nightingale**, *Itys* into a **Pheasant**.

Polydectes the Son of *Magnetes*, he kept *Perseus* and sent him to overcome the *Gorgons*, which done *Perseus* at his return with *Medusa's* Head, turned him into a **Flyntstone**.

Proteus the Son of *Oceanus*, and *Thesis*; he was skilful in foretelling things to come, he could change his shape into the form of any Creature, somtimes to a **Bull** or **Serpent**, or to a **Flame of Fire**, *&c.*

Sciron a notable Robber, whom *Thesis* slew, and cast his Bones into the Sea, which became a **Rock**, which from thence Rocks in the Sea are called Scironrea, which we English from the sound of the word **Scaries**: that is shelvey Rocks.

Tiresias seeing two Serpents engendred, killed the Female, and was himself turned into a **Woman**; seven Years after he came to the like gendering, and slew the Male, and was presently restored to his former shape: *Jupiter* and *Juno*, arguing whether the Male or Female had the greater pleasure *in Coitu*, made him Judg, because he had the experience of both, who gave his award to the Woman.

Vertumnus a God among the *Romans*, who loving a Nymph, changed himself into all shapes to get her, but nothing at all prevailing, changed himself into a most **beautiful young Man**, and then offered her violence, to which she easily yeilded.

XCI. He beareth Vert, an **Homo-Cane**, or **Man-Dog**; and this is of some termed a **Boy** holding up his hands, naked to the Navil, from thence downwards the shape of a **Spaniel Dog**, Argent. Such a Monster as this was brought forth of a Woman, in the Year 1493. And was sent to the *Pope* that then reigned.

The **Homo-Sus**, or Man-Sow; is such another kind of Monster, whose foreparts is like a **Man**, and all the rest of the Body, and hinder parts like a **Sow**.

The **Corvocanus**, or **Dog** with a **Crows head**: such a Monster as this was brought forth at *Antwerpe* in the Year 1571, but the Head had no Feathers on it. It is also by Physitians termed, a **Corvocane**, a **Crow-dog**.

XCII. He beareth Or, a **Man holding** up his Hands with a **Glory** about his Head, **Umbrated**: or **shadowed** out. This is of some termed the **Image of Man**, or the **Soul**, or **Animal part of Man**, being the Soul without the Body, or **shadowed without the substance**. The invisible part, which ever lives, and hath a being though it hath a separation from the Body. The Soul of a Man can be no otherwise depicted, then by a shadow, being far more perfect then the Body, and nobler then the rest of that earthly mixture, and temper of the Elements; having a more divine offspring, even from the breath of God, which is life it self; from whose life the Soul lives, and puts life into the Body by which it acts by its faculties.

A **Faculty**, is a certain power, and efficient cause, proceeding from the temper of parts, and performance of some action of the Body. There are three principal Faculty which govern Mans body, as long as it enjoys its integrity The **Animal**, **Vital**, and **Natural**.

Of

Of the Animal Faculties.

Animal Faculty; is seated in the proper temperament of the Brain, from whence by Nerves it distributes Sense and motion into all parts of the Body: enduing it with that principal, which comprehends reason.

Sensative Faculty; is seated or rather consists in five Senses: as seeing, hearing, tasting, smelling, and feeling.

Moving Faculty; remains principally in the Muscles, Nerves, and Arteries; and is the chief instrument of voluntary motion: as going running, bending, or turning. The motion of the Heart, *&c.*

Principal Faculty; comprehends Reason, Understanding, Will Memory, Fancy, *&c.*

Emblems of the Animal Faculties: or Faculties of the Soul, depicted.

Senses.

Hearing, is depicted as a Man, or Womans, playing on the Virginal, or Lute, Violin, and any sort of musical Instrument; with a **Hart**, or **Stag** standing, by which is taken to be a Creature of a quick Ear.

Seeing is drawn like a Lady in a beautiful dress, having a looking Glass in one hand, and a prospective Glass in the other; with an **Eagle** standing by her: as being the quickest sighted of any Creature on Earth.

Tasting, is emblemed by a person taking Tobacco, and in the other hand a Glass of Claret; with an **Ape** sitting by eating of an Apple.

Smelling, is drawn with her Cloathes embrauthered with Flowers, and smelling at flowers in her hand, and a Basket of flowers on her Arm, and a Garland of flowers about her temples; with a **Blood-Hound**, or **Talbot** standing by.

Feeling, is depicted with a sad mourning aspect, having a **Parrot** on her hand, biteing it till the Blood trickle down.

Motion, is emblemed by a Man running, and a **Grey-Hound** after a **Hare**; and a **Hawk** after a **Fowl**.

Action, or **Imitation**; by a Child doing what his Father doth: a **Cockerell** crowing after the Cock; or a Man drawing one picture by another, with an **Ape** standing by with a Pencill, or Pallet in his hand.

Salutation, is emblemed by two persons bowing to one another, or embracing one another; or the Angel *Gabriel* bringing the glad tiding to *Mary*, that of her should be born the Saviour of the World: which is the sign of the Salutation Tavern in *London*.

Combust, or **Combustion**; depicted by two Men wrestleing, or strive one with another.

[ ]

Faculties of the Mind.

1. **Understanding**, is represented, by a Woman sitting on the basis of a Pillar, with the Sun in her left hand; with her right hand pointing to the Heavens.

Wisdom, is drawn in a white Robe, blew Mantle, set with Stars.

Prudence, is drawn with her Finger on her Mouth, and a Serpent wrapt about her Arm.

Law, is depicted with an old grave countenance, in a purple Robe, seeded or set with golden Stars; with a Mantle of Carnation fringed with Gold; the buskins purple, and yellow: holding a Scrowl, or Roul in his hand.

Government, is clad all in Armour.

Watchfulness, a person in a yellow Robe; with a sad Mantle fringed with Silver, poudered with Eyes: a Chaplet on its Head of turn-sole; in the right hand a Lamp, in the left a Bell: with a Cat, or Dog at her Feet.

2. **Will, Desire**, or **Affection**: is emblemed by a Woman holding the Moon between both her hands, in a Robe and Mantle of varions, or party colours: signifying as much unconstancy in the will, as light in the Moon. So our will and affection is now to this, and anon to that, never at one stay,

3. **Fancy**, is emblemed by a Painter working at his Easill, with Pallet and Pencills in the left hand, and a drawing Pestle, or Pen in the right hand; framing some devise on his Cloath. But in my judgment it is not better set out, then by a Taylor, or Semster, with a peece of Cloath on his left, Arm, a Yard in his hand, and a pair of Shears in his right hand, with a **Camelion** at his Feet.

4. **Memory**, is drawn like a middle aged Man, writing in a Book, upon a Table.

Animals Faculties, or the Passions of the Mind described.

Love, is depicted in the shape of a beautiful Woman, with a Laurel Garland about her Temples, her Breasts and Arms naked, with a loose Mantle flying over her shoulders, on her lef hand a pair of **Turtle Doves**, and in her right hand, an **Olive branch** fruited; at her Feet a **Lamp**.

Envy, is depicted with *Medusa's* head, the hair turned into Snakes: naked to the middle, with side hanging Breasts and Paps; in the right hand a **Serpent Wreathen** in it self, and the left a Heart held to her Mouth: at her Feet a fiery smoaking Furnice, or Founders melting Kill, or after some, an old lean Woman with a withered wrinkled Face.

Joy,

Joy, is depicted with a lixsome merry aspect, with a green Robe, and Mantle of diverse colour, embraudered with Flowers; a Garland of Mirtle on her head, in her right hand a **Cristal Cruise**, or Cross; in her left a **Cup of Gold.**

Sorrow, is represented by a Woman sitting on the Ground, wringing of her hands, weeping, and her hair hanging down about her Shoulders, in a black Garment.

Audacity or **Boldness**, is depicted with a Man fighting with a Dragon or any other terrible fiend or devilish Monster: the Lyon is the emblem of courage and boldness.

Fear, is depicted by *Cupid*, with a visard in his Face, a bow in his left hand, his quiver by his side, & a Thunderbolt in his right. Or as *Pansanius* saith, it is best set forth by the deformity of a Womans Faces and Body. The Hare is the emblem of Fear.

Mirth and **Pleasantness**, is emblemed by a Woman with a cheerful aspect, yet pale and lean Faced, in purple Robes trimed with Silver.

Melancholly, is a Man foulding of his Arms together, holding down his head, with his Hat covering a part of his Face: with an Hare at his Feet, or a Man with his back parts to sight, with the skirt of his Cloak cast over his left shoulder, his Face looking downwards. A **Cat** is the emblem of Melancholly.

Anger, Wrath, or **Fury**: is described by two Women chiding, or by a Man Armed, with a grim and stirn visage, his Mantle flying about his Shoulders, with a shield on his left Arm stretched out, and with his right hand drawing his Sword. Or by a Man in Garments, with one hand drawing, and the other hand on the Scabard: with an Ireful Bear at his side. A **Cock** is also the emblem of Collerick and Angry persons.

Now by these and such like emblems, may diverse other Faculties be set forth, which are all but Fancies, and are drawn several other ways according to the Will and Pleasures of the devisers.

Of the Vital Faculties.

Vital Faculties, are seated in the Heart from whence heat and life is distributed, by the Arteries to the whole Body. The prime action of the Vital Faculty, is the pulsation; and that is threefold, in the continued agitation of the Heart, the Arteries, and Belly; all which the Vital Spirit doth cheerrish by the Dilatation or benefit of the Air which is drawn in, and put out.

Dilatation of the Heart, is the motion and beating, or panting of the Heart.

Pulsation, of the Arteries, is the beating of the Pulse; at the Wrists, and Temples.

Agitation of the Belly, is the working, rising, and falling of the Belly, by reason of the air drawn in, and blowne out again, by the lungs, or lights, as with bellows.

Action, is the motion used in the performance of any thing: but an act, or work, is a thing done.

Motion, is the moving of any part or member by bending, or contracting, and extention, or stretching out: or else motion is said to be upwards, downwards, to the right, to the left, forwards, and backwards.

Respiration or breathing, is the motion of the Lungs; which we can at pleasure make more quick or slow.

Voice, or **Speech**; is the forcing of the Air as it comes through the rift of the Wind-Pipe, which makes a sound.

Words, is the various dashing of the sound, at the Tongue, Pallate, and the shapning of the Mouth.

Of the Natural Faculties.

Natural Faculty, is seated in the Liver, which doth spread and carry nourishment over the whole Body; which is distinguished into three other Faculties, which are **Generation**, the **Growing**, and the **Nourishing**; which are again attended by four servant Faculties, as the **Attractive**, the **Retentive**, the **Disgestive**, and the **Expulsive.**

Generative Faculty, is the Generation, or forming of the Child in the Womb.

Growing, or the **Increasing Faculty**, is the flourishing and thriving of the Child, from its forming, to its perfection, and perfect growth in the Womb; and after to its full groath.

Nutritive, or **Nourishing Faculty**; is the nourishing, replenishing, and repairing, whatsoeeer is wasted or emptied: which nourishing Faculty continues from the Infants forming in the Womb, to the end of its life.

Attractive Faculty, draws that juce from the Meat eaten, which is fit to nourish the Body.

Retentive Faculty, is that which retains the nourishment, untill it be fully concocted.

Disgestive Faculty, assimulates the nourishment, into the substance of that part where it is.

Expulsive Faculty, is the purging or puting away of the Excrements, that filth and dross which remains after disgestion.

Terms arising from the Faculties of the Animal, Vital, and Natural parts.

Good and Bad.

Fides, Faith, is to belive with understanding.

Intelligentia, Understanding, is the doing of a thing with reason.

Scientia, Science, Knowledge, is to do a thing by Sense, or experience.

Ratio, Reason, is the seeking out of things.

Oppugnitio, Oppugnition, or resolving against a thing.

Prascientia, a fore-knowledg, or the knowing of thing before.

Skillful, is the knowledge of things.

Experience, is the trial of things.

Practice,

Practice, is the settling of knowledg, and retaining of things.

Discretion, discreet, is the knowledg how to use things right.

Sage, wise, to do a thing rightly.

Crafty, is to misapply, or abuse a thing, do a thing to a contrary end, or for another purpose.

Careless, is to minde, or look after nothing that is good.

Blockish, is to perceive, or understanding nothing.

Perswasion, to credit a report heard, being likely of truth.

Assent, to credit a thing proved to be true.

Credulity, that believe any thing they hear; believe on trust.

Wonder, is not to understand the reason of things.

Error, to apprehend or hold a thing false, mistake of the understanding.

Opinion, is to apprehend a thing weakly.

Surmise, to hold a thing upon guess.

Suspition, to suspect or mistrust a matter or thing.

A **Doubt**, or **Wavering**, not to be settled in a thing or matter.

A **Mistake**, is the doing of a thing ignorantly: doing one thing for another.

Ignorance, that knowes not how to do it: knoweth nothing of the matter.

Conscience, is the recorder of our actions, in evil things is shaketh, quivereth, and becometh informer, Witness, Judg, and Executioner against it self.

Zeal, Jelousy, an over hot love; or the fearing of a thing to be done contrary to our mind or desire.

Will, Voluntas, Voluntary Affection, is an earnest desire, and choosing of things.

Affectio, Affection, or good Will; is the consent of an act, or likeing of a thing.

Minde, or **Purpose**; is the pursuing of those things which are loved, or desired.

Power, Force, Ability; is the freeness of the Will having no restrain, free choise.

Mischance, is the doing of an act contrary to purpose.

Deceipt of the Will, is when outward apperance is not real but semblances.

Dissimulation, is a shew of doing one thing, when they purpose to do another.

Fancy, Phantalia, is an inward Sense, and proceeds from the Crown: is the image of a thing conceived in the mind.

Putation, a thinking, as though, or fore-cast.

Imagination, that is to conceive a thing in the mind.

Fiction, or faining of a thing, is to counterfeit, or conceive a thing in the mind, but not indeed.

Vision, an idle toy, the representation of a thing that is not.

Phantasme, a Vision, or imagined apperance.

Contrivance, or **Invention**; is by and through ingenuity to do that was not done before, to find out a thing.

Inquisition, is an inquiry, or searching into a matter.

Industry, is pains taking: that is diligent, and studious in a business. Labour, and Travel carefully.

Craft, Art, Workmanship.

Common Sense, is to apprehend things taken from the outward Sense.

Dream, is the Fancy of sleep.

Ingenious, Witty, is to apprehend a thing readily, with ease.

Cunning, Shrewd, that devises or finds out a thing.

Dullard or a **Dunce**, that hath no Spirit, Activity, or ingenuity: but doth a thing slowly.

Inconsiderate, Unwary, or without **Fore-cast**: is not to weigh, or consider of things afore-hand, to think of nothing to come.

Fancy or **Reason depraved**, is **Dotage**, Extasies, Madness, &c.

Memoria, Memory, lyeth under the hinde part of the Head, and is the remembering of things, either read off, seen, or heard.

Study, is an earnest bending of the mind to a thing, an endeavour to retain things in the mind.

Observance, is to note, take heed, or mark how a thing is done, that it may be imitated.

Remembrance, is the practice, or experience of a thing.

Reminiscion, is the remembering a thing out of mind to call a thing to mind.

Recrute, is to refresh, strengthen, or enliven, weake weary, and decayed parts.

Memory Abolished, is forgetfullness, foolishness, dotishness.

Sleep, is the rest of the Senses, and Animal faculties.

Passion, is a disturbance, or disquieting of all the faculties of the Soul.

Love, is a delight in the thing seen, or enjoyed.

Envy, is to disdain and have no affection or delight to a thing, and a trouble of the thoughts with evil designs.

Joy, Jocund, applaus, is an embracing, and glading the Heart, through the enjoyment of a thing. To be merry and pleasant.

Dolor, Sorrow, Grief, Mourning, is when we are sad for the loss of a thing, or that it is taken away; or evils on us.

Desire, Wishes, is to have, or retain a thing sought after.

Fear, is the disapointment of a thing desired, or looked for.

Panick Fear, is a sudden fear wherewith one is distracted, not knowing any cause.

Dread, Abhor, is the forethought or expecting of an evil to come. The Terrours of Hell make me afraid.

Astonishment, Agast, shivers, sore afraid, is when a sudden and unexpected danger, or evil is come upon us.

Lamenting, Bewailing, is out of a Sense or feeling of evils upon us.

Mirth, Jollity, Frantick; is a lightness and gladness of the Heart, with the outward gesture of the Body, as Danceing, Leaping, Skiping, Talking, Jesting, Laughing, &c.

Melancholy, is a drooping of the Spirit, retiredness of Life, absenting from Company, and silence in Speech, an heavinesse or sadness of the Mind.

Loathing, is to cast a thing off, when glutted and laded with it.

Wrath, Anger, Fury, is a perturbation of the Mind, and an unsettling of the Animal Faculties.

Wearinesse of Mind, is the dulling of the Senses and Faculties by over much Labour, Watchfulness, or expectation of a thing, when it is perceived a delay.

Despair, is the desire of a thing, and yet never to be in hopes of attaining it; or to be afflicted with Repentance, and yet out of hope of the thing.

Sympathy, is a mutual agreement between things either living and dead, Love and Concord.

Antipathy, is a disagreement or hatred amongst the Creatures, one to or with another.

Shame, Shamefastness, is a certain affection, mixt of Anger and Fear; therefore if in that Conflict Fear prevail over Anger, the Face waxeth pale; if Anger prevail, the Face is red.

Symptoms, are Signs and Tokens by which we may discern the passions of the mind; it is the discovery of every Change or Accident that happens to Man besides his own nature.

XCIII. In this Figure I present to your view, the **Anatomy** or **Skeleton** of a Man, that is (to say) the Bones contained in the same, whose several names and terms given to each particular Bone are as followeth.

Osteologia, is the description of Bones.

Bones in the Head.

The **Scull** is all the Bones of the Head, as they are united and knit together, the whole head termed so, as **Cranium.** Its upper part is double.

Calva, or **Calvaria**, the Scull or upper part of the Head, which by Old Age grows bald first.

Diploe, is the thin Plate or Shell of the Scull next the Brain.

The **Brain Pan**, is the top of the head, where there are several Bones set together by **Sutures** nicked one into another, like the joining together of **Cockle Shells.**

The **Coronalis Suture** of the Scull, which passeth transversly from one temple to another.

The **Lambdoides**, is the hinder part of the head, called also **Os Occipitale**, knit to the Bone of the top of the Head by the **Lambdois** Suture.

The **Os Frontis**, or Frontal Bone of the Forehead called **Bregma**, or **Pregma**, which reacheth as far as the Coronal Suture: This Bone in Women is divided in the middle by the Sagittal Suture, and makes a cross on the head, by crossing of the two Sutures.

The **Sagittalis Suture**, is the Scheme which comes from behind the head, and goes to the top of the head to the **Coronal Suture**, and in Women crosseth it, and goes down the forehead even to the top of the Nose.

The **Suturae**, are the Scemes of the Scull, those **intervals** or connections, which knit and unite the Bones together.

The **Lambdois Suture**, is a Suture or Sceme in the hinder part of the head.

The **Os Sincipitis**, is the Bone on the top or fore-part of the head, which is divided into two by the **Sagittal Suture**, the one called the right side, the other the left side of the **Os Sincipitis.**

The **Os temporis**, the **Temple Bones**, each side the Head, which is divided from the Bones of the fore-part of the head, by a false or **Bastard Suture.**

The **Os Petrosum**, is the inside of the Bones of the Temples, so called from the hardness thereof.

The **Squamosa Suture**, the false or **Bastard Suture**, so called because it is not like any of the other Sutures: it joins the Bones of the Temple to the Bones on the top of the head.

The **Os Sphenoides**, called also **Os Cuneale** and **Basillare**, the Cuneal Bone or Wedg Bone, which lies between the head and the upper Jaw.

The **Colander Bone**, is the Spongy Bone of the Nose.

The **Os Ethmoides**, or **Spongoeides**, is the Bone of the Nose.

The **Os Hyoides**, is the Bone that supports the Larynx, Epiglottis and Tongue.

The **Apophyses**, are the several cavities or little holes in the Bones of the Scull, all which according to their scituation, have several terms or names.

The **Osbita**, or **Osbitary Bone**, is the Bone which the Eye-hole is made of.

The **Maxilla Superior**, or the higher Jaw which consists of several smaller Bones all joined together by Sutures, or **Harmonia.**

The **Melon Bone**, or **Os Zygomaticus**, is the Bones of the Jaw just under the holes of the Eyes.

The **Os Unguis**, or **Ossiculum lacrimale**, is the hole made in the Bone of the Nose, by which the matter that makes Tears passes to the Nostrils.

The **Os Maxilla superior**, the upper Jaw Bone, the Bone in the fore part of the Jaw, that contains the middle part of the Teeth. It hath 11 Bones belonging to it, 5 on each side, and one without a fellow; others say 12, six on each side.

The **Vomer**, is a Bone at the Pallat, which holds up the Bridg of the Nose.

The **Maxilla Inferior**, or **Mandibula**, the **Mandible** or under Jaw Bone, which is one entire Bone; yet hath several names for its parts, as

The **Aliformis**, a Bone made like a Wing, which is fixed in the Basis of the Skull. **Belenoides**, is the process or shooting forth of the said Bone.

The **Basis of the Jaw**, is the middle or fore part of it, which makes the Chin.

The **extremities of the Jaw**, are the Angles or ends of the Jaw where they are fixt to the Scull.

The **Corone**, is the sharp Angle of the end of the Jaw.

The **Condylus**, is the rounder end, and is called **Articulatoria**, because it serves for the Articulation of the Jaw; that is, for the joining or growing together of the Bones.

The **Gingiva**, is the Gum part where the Teeth be set, called the Sockets or Teeth holes in the Jaw.

The **Dentes** or **Teeth**, which have names according to their being or scituation in the Jaws; the outmost are **Cutters**; next each side them **Dog Teeth**; and those in the Mouth **Grinders**; and the furthermost **Eye Teeth**, being in number about 30 or 32.

The **Mammillary Production**, is that part of the Nose where Smelling is exercised.

The

Bones in the Trunk,

The Trunk, called **Truncus**; contains such Bones as in the Back, Breast and Loins.

The **Spondils** or **Vertebrae**, are the **Rack Bones**, or Back Bones, or the Chine Bones, which extend from the Head to the Breech, or **Os Coccyx**; in which there are generally 34 Rack Bones; of which seven are in the Neck, 12 in the Back, 5 in the Loins, four in the Holly Bone, and six in the Rump Bone.

The **Rachis** or **Back Bone**, as they are all joined together.

The **Os Sacrum**, is the Bone just under the Loins, the Holly Bone.

The **Os Coccyx**, is a Bone at the end of the Holly Bone, called the Crupper Bone, the rump or seat, or Tail Bone.

The **Chest** or **Breast**, called **Os Pectoris**, or **Sternum**, the Breast Bone to which the Ribs are joined.

The **Sternon.**

The **Clavicula**, or **Collar Bone**, is the top part of the **Sternon**, whose figure represents an S; these two bones each side one, retain the **Scapula**, or shoulder-bones in their proper seat; the **Chanel Bones.**

The **Mucronata**, called also **Ypphoides**; it is a cartilage or gristly Bone at the lower end of the **Sternon** or Breast bone, called also the **Sword like Cartilage.**

The **Cartilaginous** part of the Ribs, are the ends of all the Ribs that join to the **Sternon.**

The **Crag** or Neck Bone, the **Vertebres.**

The **Ribs**, called **Costa**, are in number 23 or 24, twelve on one side, and eleven or twelve on the other; all of them join to the **Rack Bones** of the Chin; of which the seven highest join to the Breast Bone or Sternon; the other five on a side are open, and are called **Bastard Ribs.**

The **Costae Nothae**, the **Bastard Ribs**, or short Ribs.

The **Spare Bone**, is the Bone over against the Seat or Rump Bone, the Bony Vault or Arch; which Bone Women have only, and is for a guard for their Womb, called also **Os Pubis.**

The **Hip-Bone**, called **Os Illium**, or **Ischium**, is the Bones each side the Flank Bone.

The **Acetabulum**, is the hollow Concave in the Hip-Bone, which receiveth the head of the Thigh Bone. The Socket of the Hip-Bone.

The **Scapula** or **Omoplata**, or shoulder Blade, which hath terms for the several parts of it, as

The **Coracois**, or **Ancyroides**; is the process in the Shoulder blade over the **Glenois**, where the Arm Bone is set, and the process over the hole. Called the **Mucrois**, or **Anchoralis.**

The **Spina Scapulae**, is a process of the Bone shooting out from the other part like a round Bone.

The **superiour** and **inferiour Angles** of the **Scapula** are the higher and lower points of the Shield or Shoulder blade.

The **Basis** of the **Scapula**, is the edges or extremities of the Bone.

The **Interscapulium**, is the pits, or hollowness of the Shoulder blade on each side the **Spina**, or **spinal part**, one pit is above the **prominence of the Spina**, the other pit below it.

The **Pterygium**, or **crest of the Spina**, is the middle part or prominence of the Spina.

The **Acromium**, is the broad extremity of the Shoulder bone, the broad end.

The **Glenoids**, is the cavity of the neck of the Bone at the **Coracois** process, where the head of the Arm-bone turns in.

The **Spina Vertebrae**, or **Spondilis**, is the spine or point, or the bunch of the **Spondile Bone** of the back; and is used for any point or bunch, or process of any Bone, with the name of the Bone, as **Spina Scapulae**, &c.

Bones in the Arm and Hand,

The **Omoplata** or **Scapula**, is the Shoulder Bone, which most Anatomists join to the Arm, as being a part of it; but I have joined it to the **Trunk**, as is before-said.

The **Brachium**, or the Arm, which contains all from the Shoulder to the Wrist.

The **Humerus**, is the highermost Bone in the Arm, that between the Elbow and Shoulder; the Arm Bone, the Bone in the Brawn of the Arm, which hath several terms for its diverse parts.

The **Head** is the round top of the Bone, which goeth into the hole **Glenois**, in the Shoulder Bone.

The **Neck**, is the orbicular narrow place, a little below the said head.

The **Trochlea** is the other extremity or bottom of the Arm bone which hath two cavities, of which the external is wider than the internal, and are termed

The **Condili inferior** or **interior**, the inner or least cavitie, for receiving of the **Coronal Apophyses** of the Radius, one of the Cubit Bones. **Condili exterior**, or **superior** for the other.

The **Cubitus** is the second part of the Arm, and is from the Elbow to the Wrist, and doth consist of two Bones; the **Shuttle Bones.**

The **Radius** is the **exterior** and lesser Bone in the outside of the Arm, called the **Wand Bone**, and **Focile minus.**

The **Ulna**, and of some called **Cubitus**, having the name of the whole, and is the greater and inner Bone of the lower part of the Arm; the **Ell** or **Cubit Bone**, or **Focile major.**

The **Sygmois**, or **Sygmoides**, are the cavities at the extremity of the **Ulna**, which embraceth the end of the **Troclea** of the Arm.

The **Olecranum**, is the **Coronal Bunch** or end of the Bone, which joins to the Wrist, called **Radius.**

The **Styloïs**, or **Styloides**, are the ends or bunches at the end of the Bones **Ulna.**

The **Ginglymus**, is the String or Sinew which holds the Bones together at the Elbow.

The **Carpus** is the Wrist, and it consists of eight Bones set in two Orders.

The **Arthrodia Diarthrodis**, is the first Order of the Wrist Bones.

Melancholy, is a drooping of the Spirit, retiredness of Life, absenting from Company, and silence in Speech, an heavinesse or sadness of the Mind.

Loathing, is to cast a thing off, when glutted and laded with it.

Wrath, Anger, Fury, is a perturbation of the Mind, and an unsettling of the Animal Faculties.

Wearinesse of Mind, is the dulling of the Senses and Faculties by over much Labour, Watchfulness, or expectation of a thing, when it is perceived a delay.

Despair, is the desire of a thing, and yet never to be in hopes of attaining it; or to be afflicted with Repentance, and yet out of hope of the thing.

Sympathy, is a mutual agreement between things either living and dead, Love and Concord.

Antipathy, is a disagreement or hatred amongst the Creatures; one to or with another.

Shame, Shamefastness, is a certain affection, mixt of Anger and Fear; therefore if in that Conflict Fear prevail over Anger, the Face waxeth pale; if Anger prevail, the Face is red.

Symptoms, are Signs and Tokens by which we may discern the passions of the mind; it is the discovery of every Change or Accident that happens to Man besides his own nature.

XCIII. In this Figure I present to your view, the **Anatomy** or **Skeleton** of a Man, that is (to say) the Bones contained in the same, whose several names and terms given to each particular Bone are as followeth.

Osteologia, is the description of Bones.

Bones in the Head.

The **Scull** is all the Bones of the Head, as they are united and knit together, the whole head termed so, as **Cranium.** Its upper part is double.

Calva, or **Calvaria**, the Scull or upper part of the Head, which by Old Age grows bald first.

Diploe, is the thin Plate or Shell of the Scull next the Brain.

The **Brain Pan**, is the top of the head, where there are several Bones set together by **Sutures** nicked one into another, like the joining together of **Cockle Shells.**

The **Coronalis Suture** of the Scull, which passeth transversly from one temple to another.

The **Lambdoides**, is the hinder part of the head, called also **Os Occipitale**, knit to the Bone of the top of the Head by the **Lambdois** Suture.

The **Os Frontis**, or Frontal Bone of the Forehead called **Bregma**, or **Pregma**, which reacheth as far as the Coronal Suture: This Bone in Women is divided in the middle by the Sagittal Suture, and makes a cross on the head, by crossing of the two Sutures.

The **Sagittalis Suture**, is the Scheme which comes from behind the head, and goes to the top of the head to the **Coronal Suture**, and in Women crosseth it, and goes down the forehead even to the top of the Nose.

The **Suturae**, are the Scemes of the Scull, those **intervals** or connections, which knit and unite the Bones together.

The **Lambdois Suture**, is a Suture or Sceme in the hinder part of the head.

*

The **Os Sincipitis**, is the Bone on the top or forepart of the head, which is divided into two by the **Sagittal Suture**, the one called the right side, the other the left side of the **Os Sincipitis.**

The **Os temporis**, the **Temple Bones**, each side the Head, which is divided from the Bones of the forepart of the head, by a false or **Bastard Suture.**

The **Os Petrosum**, is the inside of the Bones of the Temples, so called from the hardness thereof.

The **Squamosa Suture**, the false or **Bastard Suture**, so called because it is not like any of the other Sutures: it joins the Bones of the Temple to the Bones on the top of the head.

The **Os Sphenoides**, called also **Os Cuneale**, and **Basillare**, the Cuneal Bone or Wedg Bone, which lies between the head and the upper Jaw.

The **Colander Bone**, is the Spongy Bone of the Nose.

The **Os Ethmoides**, or **Spongoeides**, is the Bone of the Nose.

The **Os Hyoides**, is the Bone that supports the Larynx, Epiglottis and Tongue.

The **Apophyses**, are the several cavities or little holes in the Bones of the Scull, all which according to their scituation, have several terms or names.

The **Osbita**, or **Osbitary Bone**, is the Bone which the Eye-hole is made of.

The **Maxilla Superior**, or the higher Jaw which consists of several smaller Bones all joined together by Sutures, or **Harmonia.**

The **Melon Bone**, or **Os Zygomaticus**, is the Bones of the Jaw just under the holes of the Eyes.

The **Os Unguis**, or **Osiculum lacrimale**, is the hole made in the Bone of the Nose, by which the matter that makes Tears passes to the Nostrils.

The **Os Maxilla superior**, the upper Jaw Bone, the Bone in the fore part of the Jaw, that contains the middle part of the Teeth. It hath 11 Bones belonging to it, 5 on each side, and one without a fellow; others say 12, six on each side.

The **Vomer**, is a Bone at the Pallat, which holds up the Bridg of the Nose.

The **Maxilla Inferior**, or **Mandibula**, the **Mandible** or under Jaw Bone, which is one entire Bone; yet hath several names for its parts, as

The **Alisormis**, a Bone made like a Wing, which is fixed in the Basis of the Skull. **Belenoides**, is the process or shooting forth of the said Bone.

The **Basis of the Jaw**, is the middle or fore part of it, which makes the Chin.

The **extremities of the Jaw**, are the Angles or ends of the Jaw where they are fixt to the Scull.

The **Corone**, is the sharp Angle of the end of the Jaw.

The **Condylus**, is the rounder end, and is called **Articulatoria**, because it serves for the Articulation of the Jaw; that is, for the joining or growing together of the Bones.

The **Gingiva**, is the Gum part where the Teeth be set, called the Sockets or Teeth holes in the Jaw.

The **Dentes** or **Teeth**, which have names according to their being or scituation in the Jaws; the outmost are **Cutters**; next each side them **Dog Teeth**; and those in the Mouth **Grinders**; and the furthermost **Eye Teeth**, being in number about 30 or 32.

The **Mammillary Production**, is that part of the Nose where Smelling is exercised.

The

Bones in the Trunk,

The **Trunk**, called **Truncus**; contains such Bones as are in the Back, Breast and Loins.

The **Spondils** or **Vertebrae**, are the **Rack Bones**, or Back Bones, or the Chine Bones, which extend from the Head to the Breech, or **Os Coccyr**; in which there are generally 34 Rack Bones; of which seven are in the Neck, 12 in the Back, 5 in the Loins, four in the Holly Bone, and six in the Rump Bone.

The **Rachis** or **Back Bone**, as they are all joined together.

The **Os Sacrum**, is the Bone just under the Loins, the Holly Bone.

The **Os Coccyr**, is a Bone at the end of the Holly Bone, called the Crupper Bone, the rump or seat, or Rump Bone.

The **Chest** or **Breast**, called **Os Pectoris**, or **Sternum**, the Breast Bone to which the Ribs are joined. The **Sternon.**

The **Clavicula**, or **Collar Bone**, is the top part of the **Sternon**, whose figure represents an S; these two Bones each side one, retain the **Scapula**, or shoulder-bones in their proper seat; the **Chanel Bones.**

The **Mucronata**, called also **Ypphoides**; it is a Cartilage or gristly Bone at the lower end of the **Sternon** or Breast bone, called also the **Sword like Cartilage.**

The **Cartilaginous** part of the Ribs, are the ends of all the Ribs that join to the **Sternon.**

The **Crag** or Neck Bone, the **Vertebres.**

The **Ribs**, called **Costa**, are in number 23 or 24, twelve on one side, and eleven or twelve on the other; all of them join to the **Rack Bones** of the Chin; of which the seven highest join to the Breast Bone or Sternon; the other five on a side are open, and are called **Bastard Ribs.**

The **Costae Nothae**, the **Bastard Ribs**, or short Ribs.

The **Share Bone**, is the Bone over against the Seat or Rump Bone, the Bony Vault or Arch; which Bone Women have only, and is for a guard for their Womb, called also **Os Pubis.**

The **Hip-Bone**, called **Os Illium**, or **Ischium**, is the Bones each side the Flank Bone.

The **Acetabulum**, is the hollow Concave in the Hip-Bone, which receiveth the head of the Thigh Bone. The **Socket** of the Hip-Bone.

The **Scapula** or **Omoplata**, or shoulder Blade, which hath terms for the several parts of it, as

The **Coracois**, or **Ancyroides**; is the process in the Shoulder blade over the **Glenois**, where the Arm Bone is set, and the process over the hole. Called the **Mucrois**, or **Anchoralis.**

The **Spina Scapulae**, is a process of the Bone shooting out from the other part like a round Bone.

The **superiour** and **inferiour Angles** of the **Scapula** are the higher and lower points of the Shield or shoulder blade.

The **Basis** of the **Scapula**, is the edges or extremities of the Bone.

The **Interscapulium**, is the pits, or hollowness of the Shoulder blade on each side the **Spina**, or **spinal part**, one pit is above the **prominence of the Spina**, the other pit below it.

The **Pterygium**, or **crest of the Spina**, is the middle part or prominence of the Spina.

The **Acromium**, is the broad extremity of the Shoulder bone, the broad end.

The **Glenoids**, is the cavity of the neck of the Bone at the **Coracois** process, where the head of the Arm-bone turns in.

The **Spina Vertebrae**, or **Spondilis**, is the spine or point, or the bunch of the **Spondile Bone** of the back; and is used for any point or bunch, or process of any Bone, with the name of the Bone, as **Spina Scapulae**, &c.

Bones in the Arm and Hand,

The **Omoplata** or **Scapula**, is the Shoulder Bone, which most Anatomists join to the Arm, as being a part of it; but I have joined it to the **Trunk**, as is beforesaid.

The **Brachium**, or the Arm, which contains all from the Shoulder to the Wrist.

The **Humerus**, is the highermost Bone in the Arm, that between the Elbow and Shoulder; the Arm Bone, the Bone in the Brawn of the Arm, which hath several terms for its diverse parts.

The **Head** is the round top of the Bone, which goeth into the hole **Glenois**, in the Shoulder Bone.

The **Neck**, is the orbicular narrow place, a little below the said head.

The **Trochlea** is the other extremity or bottom of the Arm bone which hath two cavities, of which the external is wider than the internal, and are termed

The **Condili inferior** or **interior**, the inner or least cavitie, for receiving of the **Coronal Apophyses** of the Radius, one of the Cubit Bones. **Condili exterior**, or **superior** for the other.

The **Cubitus** is the second part of the Arm, and is from the Elbow to the Wrist, and doth consist of two Bones; the **Shuttle Bones.**

The **Radius** is the **exterior** and lesser Bone in the outside of the Arm, called the **Wand Bone**, and **Focile minus.**

The **Ulna**, and of some called **Cubitus**, having the name of the whole, and is the greater and inner Bone of the lower part of the Arm; the **Ell** or **Cubit Bone**, or **Focile major.**

The **Sygmois**, or **Sygmoides**, are the cavities at the extremity of the **Ulna**, which embraceth the end of the **Troclea** of the Arm.

The **Olecranum**, is the **Coronal Bunch** or end of the Bone, which joins to the Wrist, called **Radius.**

The **Styloïs**, or **Styloides**, are the ends or bunches at the end of the Bones **Ulna.**

The **Ginglymus**, is the String or Sinew which holds the Bones together at the Elbow.

The **Carpus** is the Wrist, and it consists of eight Bones set in two Orders.

The **Arthrodia Diarthrodis**, is the first Order of the Wrist Bones.

The **Authrodia Synarthrodis**, is the second Order of the Wrist Bones.

The **Metacarpus**, is the After Wrist, and is four bones, of which the back of the Hand is composed.

The **Poller**, or the Thumb, which is composed of 3 Bones.

The **Deltoides**, the Joints in the Thumb or Fingers.

The **Agcon** or **Ancon**, is the Elbow or Bending of the Arm.

The **Os Digiti**, the Finger Bones, each Finger consisting of three Bones.

The **Articulus**, the **Knuckles**, the joints at the back of the Hand, called also **condili manus**, the knots or **Knuckles** of the hand.

Bones in the Thighs and Feet:

The **Os Cora**, or the Thigh Bone, called also **Os Corendix**, it is from the Hips to the Knee.

The **Rotator**, is the greater outward process of the top of the Thigh Bone, called also **Trochanter**.

The - - - - - - - head, is the **round Coronal** that goes into the **Os Ilium**, or Hip-bone, the **superior Appendix**.

The - - - - - - neck of the said Appendix.

The - - - - - - Head of the inferiour Appendix, that as joins to the Leg Bone, and makes the Knee.

The **Hola**, or **Petella**, or Knee-Pan; the **Whirl Bone** of the Kne; the Joint Bone. Called also the **Epigonatis**, or **Ratuli**.

The **Tibia**, is the great Bone of the Leg; the **Shin-Bone**. **Radius**.

The **Os Parastrata**, or **Parastracia**, the Spindle Bone in the shank.

The - - - - - - cavity of the **Tibia**, that receives the Thigh Bone into it.

The **Fibia**, the small Bone that lieth along the outside of the Shin Bone, the Brace Bone, **Fibula**.

The **Malleolus**, or the **Ancle Bone**; the outer termed the exterior Ancle, and the inner the interior Ancle.

The **Tarsus**, the Wrest, or the seven Bones joined in three Rows or Orders; the first termed **Os Astragali**, **Os calcanei**, and **Os Cuneiformia**, or **Cymbiforme**, or **Os Cubiforme**, the Heel Bones; in Beasts the **Pastern**.

The **Metatarsus**, is the five Bones, of which the top and sole of the Foot is composed; the **Instep Bones**.

The great Toe Bones, **Os Hallus**, or **Hallux**.

The **Phalanx**, or row of Toe Bones.

The Toes, consisting of three Bones apeece. **Poller Pedis**.

The **Crus**, the Leg, the Shank, that as is between the Knee and the Ancle, consisting of two Bones, **Tarsus** and **Metatarsus**.

The **Sesamois**, or **Sesamoides**, the great and little Bones about the roots of the Toes; the **Seed Bones** of the Foot, called also **Ossicula Sesamina**.

The **Calx** or Heel, called also **Calcaneus**. **Calchoidea**, those Bones as succed the Ancle.

The **Talus**, or **Os Balistae**, the **Cockall Bone**, the Bone just under the Ancle Bone.

The **Os Naviculare**, the second row of Bones, order of the **Tarsus**, or Wrist Bones under the Ancle.

The **Pedium**, or **After Wrist**, the same as **Metatarsus**.

The **Metapedium**, the outmost Bones in the Toes.

A **Bone**, termed **Os**, or **Offeam part**, is the Pillar of the Body; they are strong and hard; some solid, others hollow, some firm Bone, others poary spongy.

A **Cartilage** or **Griffle**, is not so hard as a Bone, yet in Old Men sometimes degenerates into a **Bone**.

The Number of Mans Bones,

The number amongst Anatomists is very uncertain; some say there is 300, others 307, others 242; but in the Skeleton of a Man there are 256 necessary Bones for the Structure of it, which are thus numbred.

Of the Skull, 8	In the Omoplata, 2
In the upper Jaw, 11	In the Arms, 2
In the neather Jaw, 1	In the Cubits, 4
In the Os Hyois, 3	In the Wrists, 16
Teeth, 32	In both the Metacarpus, 8
In the Back Bone, 24	In the Fingers, 30
In the Os Sacrum, 3	In each Foot, 24
In the Coccyx, 3	In the Illium, 2
In the Clavicula, 2	In the Thighs, 2
Ribs, 24	In the Legs, 4
In the Sternum, 3	In the Knees, 2
In each Hand, 24	In the Toes, 28

The Muscles of the Body.

Face.

The **Muscles** are certain Ropes, or Links, or Sinews that run all over the Body from Head to Foot, to tie all the parts and Limbs together; of which Anatomists reckon 405 to be in every Man; they are also termed **Nerves** and **Tendons**.

The **Musculus Frontalis**, is the Frontal or forehead Muscle.

The **Musculus Latus**, the broad Muscle that covers the neck, face, and the fore and side parts of the head.

The **Musculus Ciliaris**, is that as compasseth the Eye-lids.

The **Orbicular Muscle**, is that as draws up the Eye-lid.

Eyes.

The **Musculus Ocularii**, is the Muscle of the Eye, about which parts there are reckoned six, as

The **Supernus** and **Attollens Oculum**, is the upper, and the Eye up-lifter Muscle.

The **Infernus** and **Deprimens Oculum**, is the lower, and eye depresser, which causes the Eye to look downwards.

The

The **Musculus Lectorius**, is the reader, or students Muscle, it draws the Eye sideways.

The **Indignatorius Musculus**; is the disdaigners Muscle, and is at the small corner of the Eye, and draws the Eye outward.

The **Musculus obliquus**, or **Trochleator**; is a Muscle that holds the Eye stiddy.

The **Musculus obliquus minor**; is a Muscle for the same purpose.

Ear

The **Musculus Auricularius**; the Ear Muscle, which lodgeth at the root of the Ear.

The **Musculus** ------- is that as is fastned to the auditory passage, or hole of the Ear.

The **Musculus** - - - - - - - is that Muscle as is in the Concha, and is fastned to the Mallet.

Nose

The **Musculus Nasi**, or Nose Muscles; in which partthere are six, whose actions are these, to dilate draw up and let down *&c.*

Lips

The **Musculus Labri**, is the Muscles of the Lip, which as they are two, so each hath its proper Muscles, as well as the common Muscles belonging to both.

Mouth

The **Musculus Communis**, or the common Muscles of the Lips, are such as serve the Mouth, which are

The **Zygomaticus Musculus**, is that as terminates in the meeting of the Lips.

The **Musculus Buccinator**, or the **Trumpet Muscle**; or the Cheek driver, it serves to open the Mouth.

The **Sphincter**, or **Musculus Pylorus**; is a Muscle as draws the Mouth together.

Jaw

The **Temporal Muscle**, is that as lifts up the Jaw.

The **Pterygoideus internus**, or **Masseter internus**; is an other Muscle which helpeth the temporal.

The **Musculus Digastricus**, or the **Twi-bellied Muscle**; is that as draws the Jaw down.

The **Musculus latus**, or the broad Muscle, is also a helper to draw the Jaw down.

The **Pterygoides externus**, or the **external wing fashioned Muscle**; is that as forceth the Jaw forward, when the higher teeth stands further out then the lower.

The **Masseter**, or **Chaw Muscles**; is that as draws the Jaw this way, and that way in Chawing.

Os Hyoides

The **Genio-hyoideus**; is a Muscle which is in the Chin, and is fixed in the **Os Hyoides**, to move and lift it up.

The **Mylo-hyoideus**, is a Muscle that assisteth the foresaid, and comes from the grinding teeth of the under Jaw.

The **Sterno-hyoideus**, is a Muscle from the Breastbone, and draws the **Os Hyoides** downwards.

The **Stylocera-hyoideus**, is a Muscle fixed to the horns of the **Os Hyoides**.

Tongue

The **Genyoglossus Muscle**, it forceth the tongue outwards

The **Basiglossus Muscle**, is that as draws the tongue backwards.

The **Styloglossus Muscle**, is it as moves the tongue to both sides.

Larynx

The **Hyothyoideus Muscle**, is it as moves the Larynx upwards.

The **Musculus Bronchius**, it moves the Larynx downwards.

The **Crico-thyroideus Auticus Muscle**, serves to dillate and widden, the **Thyroides**; which is a movable gristle in the Larynx.

The **Crico-thyroideus lateralis Muscle**, is that as contracts, and narrows the said **Thyroides**.

The **Thyro-Arytaenoideus Muscle**, is that as opens the gristle **Arytaenoides**, in the Wind-pipe, or Weazen.

The **Arytaenoideus Muscle**, is that as shuts the same gristle, and compasses about the **Glottis**, to make the voice sound the better.

Gullet

The **Muscles of the Pharynx**, or **Gullet**: are seven, of which three have fellows, and four are without companions.

The **Spheno-Pharingeus**, it draws the Gullet upwards.

The **Cephalo-Pharingeus Muscle**, covers the Gullet, and is as if it were the coat thereof.

The **Stylo-Pharingeus Muscle**, it widens the Gullet.

The **Muscle Oesophageus**, it draws up the Gullet, or closeth it.

Pallat

The **Muscle Ptery-staphylinus externus**; it lies, or is inserted into the side of the Uvula.

The **Ptery-staphylinus internus**; is a Muscle hath its original at the Pterygoides, and ends at the Uvula.

Head

The Muscles of the Head are proper, or common: and those are many, but these are only named.

The **Muscle Mastoides**; it serves to bow the head, and arises from the top of the Breast bone.

The **Extenders**, are six Muscles which extend the Head.

The **Splenius Muscle**, is in the hinder part of the Neck.

The **Complexus Muscle**, it ends in the after part of the Head.

The **Rectus Major**, and **Rectus Minor**; are Muscles that arise from the Back-bone, and run to the hinder part of the Head.

The **Muscles obliquus major** and **minor**, are those that arise from the Spine, or point of the second Vertebra, and end in the after part of the Head.

Neck

The Neck Muscles are eight, on each side four.

The **Musculus Longus**, or **Rotundus Major**: comes out of the third Vertebra, or Knucle bone of the Back, and ends in the first, which serves to bend the Neck.

The **Scalenus Muscle**, or the unevensided Muscle; it helpeth to bend the Neck.

The **Extenders**, are Muscles to stretch out the Neck.

The **Spinatus Muscle**, arises from the seaven uppermost Spondils or Vertebra's, and ends in the second of the Neck.

The **Transversarius Muscle**, riseth from the Back, and is planted in all the transverse eminencies in the Neck.

Shoulders

The Scapular Muscles, are four in number.

The **Muscle Levator proprius**, doth lift up the Shoulder blade.

The **Muscle Trapezius**, it causeth diverse motions, according to the direction of the Fibres.

The **Muscle Serratus minor**, is it that draws the Shoulder blade forwards.

The **Rhomboides Muscle**, draws it backwards.

The **Musculus Latissimus**, is said to draw the Shoulder blade downwards, although its own weight doth return it to its natural scituation.

Arms

The Muscles of the Arms are nine in Number.

The **Muscle Deltoideus**, and **Supra Spinatus**; is that as moves it upwards, called the Arm lifters Muscle.

The **Musculus latissimus**, and **Rotundus major**; also called the **Arm Depressers**; is that as sets the Arm fall.

The **Pectoralis**, and **Coracohyoides**; this Muscle draw the Arm forward to the left Shoulder.

The **Muscles Infra-spinatus**, **Roundus minor**, and **Imersus**; are three that move the Arm backwards.

Elbow

The Cubite, and Radius, have diverse motions, and are knit together by diverse Articulations. The Cubit guides the motion of bending, and extending; the Radius directs the motion of Pronation and Supination.

The **Muscles Biceps**, and **Brachieus internus**; are two Muscles seated in the internal part of the Arm, and bends the Arm: termed also the **Cubit Benders**.

The **Muscles Longus**; and **Brevis Brachieus externus**; and **Agoneus**, or **Cubitalis**: serve to extend, or stretch out the Cubit. Called also the **Cubit Extenders**.

The **Longus Spinator**, and the **Brevis Spinator**; are two external Muscles, which draw the Radius downwards.

Wrist

The **Wrist** is stretched forth, bended, and laterally moved, by two Muscles.

The **Muscles Cubitus**, and **Radius**; bend down he Wrist, and are termed, the **Wrist Benders**.

The **Radius externus**, or **Bicornis**; and the **Cubitus externus**: are the extenders of the Radius.

Palm

The Palmer Muscles are two.

The **long Palmar Muscle**, and the **short Palm Muscle**; serve to make the hand hollow, or make *Diogenes* dish, to drink out of.

Fingers

The **Musculus sublimis**, and the **Musculus profundus**; are two Muscles, which bend the four Fingers.

The **Lumbricales**, or the four **Worm Muscles**; are those that are carried to the first articulation of every Finger, where they unite themselves to the Inter-osseans.

The **Extensor magnus**, the great extender of the Fingers, which also cause other motion.

The **Interosseau Muscle**, serves to move the Fingers sideways: which motion is commonly termed, adduction, or a drawing to the Thumb: and abduction, a drawing from the Thumb.

The **Extensor Judicis**, the Muscle that stretcheth out the Fore-finger.

The **Extensor magnus Digitorum**; the extender of the great or long Finger.

The **Extensor Auriculis**, the stretcher out of the little, or ring Finger.

The **Hypothenar**, is a Muscle peculiar to the little Finger.

The **Extentive Muscle**, which is proper to the Fore-finger, to point withal.

Thumb

Thumb

The **Thumb** hath peculiar Muscles, by which it bends, extends, and moveth sideways: which are termed, the **Extenders, Benders,** and **Lateral movers.**

The **Thenar Muscle,** draws the Thumb from the Fingers.

The **Antithenar Muscle,** is that as draws the Thumb to the Fingers.

The **Hypothenar Pollicis,** this Muscle draws the Thumb, to the four other Fingers.

Breast

The Chest, or Breast hath in it five Muscles, as:

The **Muscles Subclavius,** and **Serrator Major;** and the **Triangularis,** or the **Pectoralis Internus Muscles:** which three lie before, and help the Breast to widen, and lift up.

The **Posticus Serratus superior;** is a Muscle seated behind.

The **External Intercostal Muscle;** which are eleven Muscles which holds the place of one.

The **Sacro-Lumbus;** the **Intercostalis internus;** and **Serratus Posticus inferior:** are three Muscles that contract and narrow the Breast.

The eleven **internal Intercostals;** are reckoned to be but one Muscle. It has Fibres contrary to those of the External, cross-wise intersected.

Midriff

The **Diaphragme,** or Midriff, is an admirable kind of Muscle, which is in continual action, and serveth as a Wall of partition to severe the things of the Breast, from the others of the Belly.

Back, and Loins.

The Back-bone, and Loins are bowed, extended, and drawn aside, by these Muscles.

The **Musculus quadratus,** is that as boweth the Back.

The **Semi-spinatus Muscle,** extends the Loins, and therefore called the **extenders of the Loins:** or moves them forward.

The **Musculus Sacer,** moves the Loins backward, as the aforesaid moves forward, in the Genial embracements, tending to Procreation.

The **Muscle Sphincter,** is that as shuts up the Fundament, and contracts the Bladder.

Testicles

The **Cremaster Muscle,** it draws the Testicles upwards, and there retains them in that posture.

The **Dartus Muscle,** is the Membrane of the Scrotum, or Cod.

The - - - - - - - - is the round fleshy Muscle, which being rouled back over the Prostata, doth shut the Neck of the Bladder; which being made broad it expels the Urine. [ ]

The **Internal Sphincter Muscle,** is the fleshy Neck of the Bladder which very exactly covers, or closes the Bladder.

Yard

The Yard hath four Muscles, which are these.

The **Musculus Erector,** is the Yards erector.

The **Accelerator Muscle,** it is that as [illegible] out the seed, and [illegible] out the drops of [illegible] of prime.

The **Levator Ani;** the exter[illegible] over, [illegible] by which the Fundament is [illegible] shut, and the Excrements are forced out. The [illegible] four of these Muscles, each doing his office, yet all have but one name.

Thigh.

The Thigh Muscles, are these following.

The **Musculus Glutei,** or **Glautij;** that is the Buttock Muscle, by which we stand, or extend the Thigh.

The **Gloutius Maximus,** & **Extimus:** the greatest, and outmost Buttock Muscle.

The **secundus,** and **medius Gloutius;** the second, and middle Buttock Muscle.

The **tertius,** and **intimus Gloutius;** the third, and innermost Buttock Muscle, by all which the Loins stand, and are extenuated.

The **Primus Lumbaris,** or **Loin Muscle,** called **Psoas,** or **Psoa,** and the **parvus Psoas:** by which and the two following Muscles, the Thigh is bended.

The **Iliacus Musculus,** the **Iliac Muscle;** is seated in the inner side of the Thigh.

The **Pectineus Muscle,** is seated on the out side, called the **Comb** Muscle.

The **Muscle Triceps,** or the **three headed Muscle;** hath three originals, and as many insertions: they are seated in the hinder part of the Thigh, and serve to move it to the inside; a drawer to, or inward.

The **Quadrigemini,** or **Quadrigeminal Muscles,** are four little Muscles interchangably placed upon the articulation of the Thigh, in the hinder part thereof: and serves to withdraw, or draw the Thigh to the outside, and to strengthen the Leg being stretched out.

The **Obturator External Muscle,** is that as helps the Thigh in an oblique way, to wheel about.

The **Obturator Internus,** or the internal wheeler; is a Muscle on the inner side the Thigh, whose act is to direct and govern the external wheeler; in the wheeling of the Thigh.

Leg

The **Sutorius Muscle,** draws the Leg inwards, or toward the other Leg.

The **Membranous,** or **broad Swath Muscle;** draws it outward.

The **Leg benders,** are Muscles to bend, or bow the Leg, which are four in number, *viz.*

The **Semi-Nervosus,** or half sinewed Muscle.

The

The **Semi-Membranosus**, or half **Membranary Muscle**, both these are seated in the inside of the Leg.

The **Biceps Muscle**, is seated on the outside of the Leg: having two Heads, or tendons, on the top where it proceeds from the thigh.

The **Gracilis**, or **Posticus Gracilis**; is a Muscle that arises from the Hip-bone, and goes the inside of the thigh: and is inserted or seated in the inner part of the Leg.

The **Muscle Popliteus**, is a bender of the Leg, and lies under the Ham; and is oblique inserted, in the hinder part of the Leg.

The **Membranous**, or **Membranary Muscle**; is in the forepart of the Leg, and girds in the Muscles of the Leg, like a Membranous Swath: it serves to extend, and stretch out the Leg.

The **Musculus Sutorius**, the crossing Muscle; taken from the *Taylors* sowing cross legged: the **Sowers** Muscle.

The **Rectus Gracilis**, is inserted in the fore-part of the Leg.

The **Vastus externus**, and the **Vastus internus**; are two Muscles that are inserted in the inner, and outsides of the Leg; a little below the **Patella.**

The **Musculus Cruræus**, or **Crural Muscle**; is in the forepart of the Leg: these are united altogether about the Knee, and produce, but one only tendon, which is very broad and strong.

Feet

The **Tibeus**, or **Tibeus Anticus**; is one of the Foot Lenders Muscle, whose end is slit into two tendons.

The **Peroneus**, or **Peroneus Anticus**; is a Muscle that helps to bend the Foot.

The **Gemini**, or **Twins Muscle**, or else called **Gastrocnemius**: which make the belly, or swelling in the calf of the Leg.

The **Plantaris Musculus**, is a Muscle under the Heel. by the inner Ankle-bone.

The **Soleus Muscle**, is a broad and thick one, and is inserted by a tendon mixt with the Gemini, into the hinder part of the Heel.

The **Chora magna**, is an exceeding thick, and strong **Tendon**, and is made of the **Gemini**, and **Soleus Muscles** mixt together in their inferior parts.

The **Tibeus Posticus Muscle**, and the **Peroneus Posticus**; are two hinder Muscles, by which the Foot is extended.

The **Peroneus Anticus**, and the **Peroneus Flexor**; are two Peronean Muscles, whose office is to extend the part, being scituated behind.

Toes

The **Musculus longus**, and **brevis**; are two Muscles, a long and short: by which the toes are stretched out. Called the **Toe-stretchers.**

The **Pedican Muscle**, or **Brevis Digitum Tensor**; or the short toe stretcher, is that Muscle whose tendons are inserted into all the joynts, or Articulations of the toes.

The **Pero-Dactyleus**, is a Muscle in the bottom of the Foot, whose tendons are inserted in the third joynt, of the four toes.

The **Pedicus internus**, or **Brevis Digitum Flexor**; or the short toe benders, whose office is to bend the toes.

The **Inter-ossean Muscles**, are eight in number, four external, and four internal; by them the toes move oblique, and sideways.

The **Lumbrical**, or **Worm fashioned Muscle**; has its original from the Heel.

The **Extensor Pollicis**, or the great Toe stretcher Muscle.

The **Abductor Pollicis**, is a Muscle which draws aside the great toe.

The **Tendon**, is used for a **Muscle** or **Nerve**; but the genuin and proper signification, is those Muscles which branch out into two, three, or four ends; those ends are the **Tendons**, of such and such a Muscle.

The Arteries of the Body.

An **Arterie**, is a Membranous Channel of the same Nature of a Vein, but harder and thicker.

The **Coronarae**, or **Crown Arteries**; are two springing out of the Ventricle of the Heart,; and compass the Heart like a Crown.

The **Trunk** of the **Aorta**, or **Arterie**; is the main Body of the **Arteries**: from whence others branch forth.

The **Ascendant Arterie**, and **Descendant Arterie**; are the two branches which come from the **Trunk**, or the **Trunk** is divided into, a little without the **Pericardium.**

The **Subclavia Dextra**, is the Arterie on the right side, proceeding from the ascendant Arterie.

The **Carotis Sinistra**, is that as issues from the ascendent, and ascends to the left side: called the **Sleepy Arterie**, or **Carotick** Arterie.

The **Subclavia Sinistra**, is another of the three Arteries, which proceeds from the ascendent Arterie, and goes upward in the left side.

The **Axillaris Arterie**, is near the Arm-pits.

The **Arteria Crevicalis**, is an Arterie near the Shoulder point.

The **Inter-costal Arteries**, are such as be in the Chest, or Breast.

The **Lumbal**, or **Loyn Arteries**, are such as be in the Belly.

The **Temporal Arteries**, are them in the Fore-head, and Temples.

The **Thoracica Arterie**, is from the Arm-pit, to the bending of the Arm, in which progress it bestows certain twigs, upon the bordering parts.

The **Ramus minoris**, the **Arteries** on the inside of the Arm, by the Radius bone, is felt to beat at the Wrist. Called the **Pulse**, or **Arterie of motion**, which sends forthe its twigs to the Thumb, and Fingers.

The **Arteria Cruralis**, or **Crural Arterie**; descends the Thigh without any division to the Ham, then brancheth into two parts, one runs the outside, the

the other the inside down the **Heel**.

The **Arteria Venosa**, is an Arterie in the Breast.

The **Celiacal Artery**, is seated in the higher Region of the Belly.

The Nerves of the Body.

A **Nerve**, or **Sinew**; is a Channel made to carry animal Spirits; and because this Spirit is most subtile, therefore the Cavity is so small, that it is not discernable. It is of a substance much harder, & more fibreous then an Arterie.

A **Nerve**, a **Tendon**, and a **Ligament**; are impertinently taken for one, and the same thing by some Chirurgeons.

Ten pair of Nerves proceeds from the oblongated Marrow within the Scull: though the Ancients only acknowledg seven therein. Below the Scull they reckon thirty pair; seven from the spinal Marrow in the Neck; twelve from the same in the Back; five from the Loins; and six from the **Os Sacrum**.

Belly

The **Diaphragmatius**, or **Diaphragmatick Nerve**; are two Midriff Nerves, which goes through the Neck, into the Arms.

The **Recurrentes**, or **Recurrent Nerve**, is of two branches, one bending back, where the **Aorta** is bowed in, and the bending of the right Nerve, at the right **Subclavian Arterie**.

The **Stomachicus**, or **Stomachick Nerve**; are also two, and lie beneath the Heart: and from them are ten, or twelve Sprigs or twigs, drawn into the Lungs. The **Stomachical Nerve**.

The **Nervorum mirabilis Plexus**, are the Nerves or small branches of the two Stomathick Nerves: which being folded, and fettered together, makes that contexture of Nerves, out of which, all the Nerves are derived, which are distributed into the lower Belly.

Head

The **Odoratory Nerve**, is that as preserveth the smell

The **Opthalmick** or **Optick Nerve**, or **Visorius Nervus**; is that which moves the Eyes.

The **Pathetick** or **Gustatory Nerve**, is that which perceiveth tastes, being inserted into the Tongue and Palat, for that purpose.

The **Timidus**, or fearful Nerve; is that as serves the Organ of hearing.

The **Parvagum Nerve**, is that which moves the Tongue and Muscles of the Neck.

The **Costales**, or **Costal Nerves**; are two Nerves proceeding from the Brain, to the Back: where it is made stronger by adding of three small Nerves: and after that by two more.

Arms

The **primus Nervus**, is beneath the shoulder, and runs below the bending of the Arm.

The **secundus Nervus**, or second Nerve; is undivided, and thicker, descending below the bent of the Arm.

The **tertius Nervus**, or third Nerve; is carried all along the Arm to the Wrist, and so to the little Finger; at the hand it is divided into four branches, and so spread into the outside, or back of the Hand, and to the Finger ends.

The **quartus Nervus**, or fourth Nerve; is the thickest of any of the other, and is carried all the Back of the Arm, and so is lost at the Wrist.

Thighs

The - - - - - - - are Nerves of the fore-side of the thigh distinguished in the originals but soon grow together, & become one **Cord**, which runs unto the **Groin**; where it is distributed into five branches.

The **Lumbal Nerves**, are from the **Loyns**.

The - - - - - - - - is a very great and thick Nerve, which glides along the hinder part of the thigh: which in its original, or beginning is made up of somtimes three, somtimes four small strings: it proceeds to the Ham.

The - - - - - - - - are the branches of the thigh Nerve, and they run down the calf of the Leg to the Heel, dealing out little Nerves in its passage: and at the sole of the Foot runs into as many branches, as there are toes.

The - - - - - - - - is a Nerve which is carried into the fore-part of the foot, and there brancheth to all the toes.

The **Conterture of Nerves**, or **Interterture of Nerves**; which are Nerves woven together of the **Stomachick**, and **Costal Nerves**: concurring on both sides the lower Belly, from whence are derived all the Nerves, which are distributed into the several parts of the lower belly.

The Veins of the Body.

Breast

A Vein, is a Membranous Vessel, round and hollow, alotted to contain Blood, and to distribute it, for the nourishment of the Body and Vital parts.

The **Vena Cava**, the trunk Vein, or hollow Vein, is the great Vein in the Breast, which hath many little Veins branching from it into all the parts of the Body.

The **Hepatica**, or **Hepatick Vein**; is a branch that riseth from the top of the Liver, and carries the Blood to the Cava.

The **Coronaria**, or **Crown Vein**; runs from the Trunk to the heart.

The **Vena Porta**, the Liver Vein; some say it hath no circulation: but extendeth its roots to the Liver, Spleen, Ventricle, Mesentery, Pancras, Cawl, &c.

The **Azygos**, or **Solitary Vein**; a Vein without a fellow which nourisheth the Ribs.

The **Valves**, or **Shutters** of the solitary Vein; which resists the blood flowing in abundantly.

The

The **Intercostales Venae**, or intercostal Veins, are two, each side one, proceeding from the **Vena Cava.**

The **Mammaria**, or **Dug Veins**; which are twofold. These run through the Breast to the Dugs.

The **Gastro Epiploon Vein**, is a branch from the **Vena Porta**, or Gate Vein, and runs into the Stomach.

The **Intestinal Vein**, is another branch which runs to the Duodenum, and from thence sends it to the Gall Bladder.

The **Splenical Vein**, and the **Mesenterical Vein**; are the two famous branches, which **Vena Porta** is divided into.

The **Hemorrhoida Vein**, is a branch of the **Mesenterical**, and passes to the right Gut.

The **Cecalis Vein**, passes to the Gut **Cecum.**

The **Gastrica Major Vein**, is a branch of the **Splenical Vein**, and passes to the left side of the Stomach.

The **Epiploica Vein**, and the left **Epiploica Vena**; is distributed into the **Omentus.**

The **Coronaria**, or **Crown Vein**; runs into the Stomach.

The **Vena Thoracica**, is a Vein that compasseth the Breast.

The **Capillary Vein**, is in the Head, and runs from the Eyes, to the **Adnata.**

The **Aorta Vein**, springing out of the Heart, and divids it self within the lower belly

The **Umbilicar Vein**, passes to the Liver.

The **Vena Lactea**, or the **Milky Vein**; it is a white Vein and carrieth Chyle in it.

The **Vena Arterosa**, an **Artery Vein**; which carries Blood from the Heart to the Lungs.

The **Vena Cystica**, or the Gall Bladder Vein.

The **Pluimonary Veins**, is a branch from the **Vena Cava** running into the Lungs.

The **Emulgent Veins**, are such as run in the Reins from the **Vena Cava.**

The **Lymphaticae** or **Lymphatick Veins**; those that discharge themselves either into the Sanguinary Veins or into the receptacle of the Chyle.

Arms

The **Cervicalis**, or **Crevical Vein**; is the Neck and Chin Vein.

The **internal Jugular Vein**, it ascends the Neck, and Head; and enters the Brain where it ends.

The **external Jugular Vein**; called **externa Jugularis**: which at the Head sends forth two twigs, one passeth under the Shoulder point, & is united to the **Vena Cephalica.** The other runs to the Jaws, where it is divided into two.

The **Vena Axilliaris**, a Vein by the Arm-pits.

The **Cephalica**, or **Cephalick Vein**, or Head Vein; it hath its course through the whole Radius.

The **Thoracica**, runs from the **Cephalick Vein**, to the external parts of the Chest. The Breast Vein.

The **Basilica**, or **Basilick Vein**; is the Vein which in the bending of the Arm, branches into two parts, the one on the inside the Cubitus, the other externally descends to the Hand.

The **Ramus Internus**, or **Inner Branch Vein**, called also **Mediana Vena**, or middle Vein; runs external to the Palm of the Hand.

The **Salvatella**, or **Salvatell Vein**; is a Vein betwen the Ring Finger, and the little Finger.

The **Vena Pollicis**, or the Thumb Vein; is between the Thumb, and the Fore-finger.

Thighs

The **Crural Vein**, it doth in the Groin produce a remarkable branch, which descends to the Ham.

The **Saphena Vein**, is the branch of the Crural Vein, which runs from the Ham to the Ancles; and branches to the Feet.

The **Vena Poplitea**, is the Vein that goes to the Ancles; before which it is divided into two parts, and slips to the two Ancles.

The **Ramus tertius**, called also **Ischiadicus**, is in the outward parts of the Ancle. Called the **Sciatica**, or **Sciatick Vein.**

The **Muscularis Vein**, runs to the Knee, all these Veins have twigs, and branches growing from them; which they contribute to their neighbouring parts, which in the whole amounts to three.

The **Urin Tunells**, the Veins of the Bladder, the white Veins. Called also **Ureters.**

The **Emulgent Veins**, such as convey nourishment from the Liver to the Kidneys.

The **Suralis**, or **Sural Vein**, runs to the calf, and inside of the Leg.

The **Ischias major**, or **great Ischiadick Vein**; hath two parts, one runs through the Muscles of the calf, spending it self into ten shootes, two to each Toe.

Veins for Bleeding.

There are 41 Veins chiefly for bleeding, *viz.* 17 in the Head, 3 in each Arm, 3 in each Hand, 4 in the Fundament, and 4 in each Leg

Head

1. **Vena Frontis**, or **Preparata**, or **Recta**; it lyes in the middle of the Fore-head.
2. **Vena Puppis**, or after ship Vein; it lies in the hinder part of the Head.
3. **Vena Temporalis**, or **Sterilis**; is the temporal, or the Temple Vein.
4. **Vena Auricularis**, or **Auricular Vein**; it lies behind the Ears.
5. **Vena Ocularis**, or **Ocular Vein**; it lies between the Eyes, and Nose.
6. **Vena Nasalis**, or **Nasall Vein**; the Nose Vein, which is in the middle of the Nose.
7. **Vena Ranalis** or **Ranal**, or **Ranular Vein**; it lies just under the Tongue.
8. **Vena Labieris**, the **Labal**, or **Lip Vein**; it lyeth on the inside of the Lip.
9. **Vena Jugularis**, or **Jugular Vein**; it lies in the Neck, and takes its original from the Ascendent Vein, of **Vena cava.**

Arms

Arms

1. **Vena Cephalica**, or **Cephalick**, or **Head Vein**; lyeth in the bent of the Arm, on the outer side.
2. **Vena Mediana**, or **Vena Matricis**, the middle Vein; it lyeth in the same place between the **Cephalick**, and **Basilick**.
3. **Vena Basilica**, or **Basilick Vein**; it lies in the bent of the Arm on the inner side. It is called **Vena Hepatica**, the **Hepatick Vein**, and **Vena interna**, the inward Vein.

Hands

1. **Cephalica Vena**, or **Ocularis**; is the Vein scituated between the Ring Finger, and the little Finger.
2. **Vena Salvatella**, or **Titularis**, or **Assellaris**; Veins between the Thumb and the Fore-finger
3. **Vena funus Brachii**, the Vein between the middle Fingers.

Back

Vena Vertebra, a Vein elevated above the top of the Back-bone, running down to the **Os Sacrum**.

Venae Hemorroidales, or the **Hemorroidal Veins** of the Fundament, which ly on each side the **Anus**, or Arse-hole.

Venae Varices, the Varick or black swollen Veins of the Thigh; but these are now rarely Blooded.

Legs.

1. **Vena Poplatica**, or **Poplatick Vein**, it lies in the ply or bent of the Ham, and comes from the **Vena Femoralis**, or Femoral Vein.
2. **Vena Saphena**, or **Saphenack Vein**, it lies above the Ancle, on the inside.
3. **Vena Sciatica**, or **Sciatick Vein**, it lies above the Ancle on the out-side.
4. **Vena Renallis**, or **Medium**, the **Renall**, or **Middle Vein**, it lies in the Sole of the Foot under the bending.

That Mans Life may vain appear,
He hath a Vein for each day in the Year.

The Conjunction of the Bones.

A **Juncture**, or **Junction**, or **Joint**, is the setting of the Bones, and joining of them together by Ligaments and Ties.

Articulus, or **Articulation**, is the joining of Bones together, which are divided amongst themselves; and that is defined three ways.

Synchandrosis, or **Synarthrosis**, is when the Joints are set together by obscure and no motion, which are all immovable, as in the Sutures of the Skull, **Harmonia**, and **Gomphosis**: or else the joyning of bones by a Gristle.

Diarthrosis, is when the Joints have manifest motion.

Amphiar-throsis, is a neutral Articulation, and it is so hidden that one cannot discern the motion, as is manifest in the joint of the **Ischium**, and the Ancle with the **Scaphois**.

Enarthrosis, is a kind of Joint when a large long head goes into a deep cavity.

Arthrodia, is when a depressed plain head, is put into a shallow and superficial cavity; as the Jaw Bone, with the Bone of the Temples.

Enarthrosis Diarthrodes, is when a Joint is large and deep, yet the motion is manifest, as in the joint of the **Ischium** or Shoulder.

Arthon, **Arthron**, is a joint or connection of Bones proper for the performance of motion.

Enarthrosis Synarthrosis, is when the joint hath a large head and deep Socket, yet the motion obscure, as in the Articularion of the Ancle with the **Scaphois**.

Arthrodia Diarthrodes, is a term shewing that the Joint is ebo, depressed and shallow, yet hath a quick and known motion, as in the conjunction of the Shoulder with the **Omoplata**.

Arthrodia Synarthrodes, is a shallow Joint, with an obscure motion; as in the Wrist with the **Metacarpus**.

Ginglymus, is a mutual ingress of the Bones, that as circles, and that as enters in, have a like reception; and this is seen in several joints, termed either simple or compound, as

Simple Ginglymus, is when it is made but of one only Articulation in the same part, as in the joint of the Elbow and Arm.

Compound Ginglymus, is when the Joint consists of a double Articulation in the same extremities, or in places distant of two or three Bones; the first is seen in the **Vertebrae** of the Neck; and the latter in the **Cubitus** and **Radius**, and of three in the **Vertebrae** of the Back and Loins.

Ginglymus Diarthrodes, is an even junction of even parts, with a motion, as in the Elbow.

Ginglymus Synarthrodes, is a joint of even parts, with an obscure or no motion, as in the Ancle to the Heel.

Trochois, or **Ginglymus Trochois**, is when the joints are even, yet the motion of conversion, or turning aside is apparent, as in joining of the first Vertebra of the Neck to the second; but this is referred to **Arthrodia**.

Harmonia, is a conjunction of Bones by simple touch-in, without mutual ingress, as the **Cubitus** and **Radius**.

Sutura, is the joining of Bones, as if the teeth of two Saws or two Combs were thrust one within another, and is altogether of one bigness and the same form, as in the seams of the Scull.

Gomphosis, is when one Bone sticks fast and immovable in another, like a Nail in a Post.

Symphysis, is an Immovable conjunction Bones, as though they were united, which nature brings forth at first divided, yet afterwards they grow together; some are united without any discernable Medium, others with a Medium interposed.

Syssarcosis or **Syssarodis**, is an immovable conjunction of the Bones, with a Nerve-medium, having a Nerve between the Bones.

Syneurosis, is a Symphysis, or immovable conjunction of Bones, with a fleshy medium, or flesh between them.

Anchyle, is a contraction of a Joint.

Synchondrosis, this is when the Cartilage gristle is the medium of the union, or immovable conjunction in the Symphysis aforesaid.

Neurochondrosis, is a mixt or compound Symphysis; and it is only one, of the conjunction of a Nerve, and Cartilage to the Bones.

Anatriplis, is the bruising or comminution of a Bone, or the Stone.

Exarthrema, is a Laxation or disjointing of the Bones, as when the head of the Bone is slipt out of its Socket.

Paratthrema, is an incompleat disjointing, when the Bone is in some measure only removed. an imperfect disjoining.

Anchylosis, is a fault in the Articulation of Bones, the cavity of the Bone which should receive the head of another Bone being filled up, thrusts out the Bone by little and little; this causeth a lameness either by bowing the joint, or holding it streight out.

Ligament, is a Bond or tye, fastned to the head of the Bone, and middle of the socket, to hold them fast in together, it is of a middle substance, between a Cartilage and a Membrane, softer than a Cartilage, and harder than a Membrane.

Membrane, a tough skin or Coat, yet soft and subject to dilatation, it is the covering of joints to keep them close in their place.

Fibra, is a thread or string stretched over a Membrane, or else interwoven therewith, to strengthen it, and help the motion of the Joints.

The four Humours of the Body.

A **Humour**, is the moisture of the Body.

Phlegm or **Spittle**, is a white moisture proceeding from the Stomach and Brain, which is without taste.

Choller, or hot humour, is yellow and bitter.

Melancholy, or black Choler, is a black and sower humour.

Sanguis, or **Sanguine**, or Blood, is a red and sweet moisture, running through all the parts of the Body.

The four Complexions of the Body.

The **Sangnine Complexion**, is cheerful, being hot and moist.

The **Cholerick Complexion**, is fierce and testy, being hot and dry.

The **Phlegmatick Complexion**, is sluggish and dull, being hot and moist.

The **Melancholy Complexion**, is sad and heavy, being cold and dry.

Outward shapes of the Body.

Complexion, is the outward shew or appearance of the Face, whether fair or not.

Ill, or **Evilly Complexioned**, is foul, ill favoured.

Good, or **Well Complexioned**, is Fair and Beautiful Faced.

Gross, or **Purfy**, or **Plump** Bodied, is to be fat and full Bodied.

Slender, **Slank**, or **Lank**, **Meager**, **Starveling**, is a lean and slender Body, only Skin and Bones.

Features, is the shape and proportion of the Face and Body, as

Well Featured, a handsome made Face, and proportioned Body.

Ill Featured, ill favoured, ill formed, or shaped.

Pale or **Bleak**, is when the Face is white, whitely coloured.

Ruddy, **Well coloured**, when the Face is White and red.

Meager, or thin faced, when it is thin, poor, and hollow.

Head

Wry Necked, when the Head stands crooked either to the right or left side.

Joult Headed, is to have a great head, of some termed a **Joller**, **Mould**, a **Logger head**, or **Block head**.

Coppe headed, or **copped Crowned**, is to have a high head.

Forehead

Peak Forehead, is when the Hair groweth down in a point.

High Foreheaded, when void of Hair.

Low Foreheaded, when the Hair groweth low down almost to the Eyes.

Beckle, or **Bettle Browed**, when Hair grows between the Eye-brows.

Nose.

Roman Nosed, to have the middle of the Nose Bunched, swelling up.

Hook Nosed, to be crooked, bending down at the end.

Bottle Nosed, to have it round at the end.

Flat Nosed, to have the Nose fallen down, or sunk in.

Sharp Nosed, to have a thin slender Nose, pointed at the end.

Saddle Nosed, to have the Nose crooked or bowed inwards.

Checks,

Cheeks

Chuffe, or **puff Cheeks, blob Cheeks**; great and swelling out.

Hollow Cheeked, they have them sung in, are slender and thin.

Dimple Cheeks, to have a certain kind of hole in the Cheeks.

Eyes.

Blind, is not to have Eyes, or not see.

Single Eyed, to have one Eye, or to see but with one Eye.

Goggle Eyed, is to have the Eyes rouling, or turning and always to be moving.

Squint Eyed, to sken or look awry, to see askew, or aslent.

Pink Eyed, is little small Eyes.

Sand blind, or purblind; that cannot see, or discern things, but near at hand.

Blinkard, or **Blinking**; is to have the Eye-lids ever moving: so that there is no perfect sight.

Bleere Eyed, whose Eye-lids are always red, and Eyes running water.

Down looked, is to have the brows hang over the Eyes.

Out Eyed, when they stand out of the sockets: stareing Eyes.

Lips.

Blopper Lips, is to have Lips standing out, and hanging down.

Thin Lips, to have little or no Lips.

Wry Mouth, whose Mouth is turned to one side of the Face, or the other; not to be streight, is Wry and crooked.

Teeth

Gubber Tushed, is when teeth stands out, and not in order.

Snaggle, or **Rake toothed**; is when the the teeth stands at a distance, one from the other.

Butter Toothed, is to have broad and great teeth before.

Chin

Crooked Chinned, is to have the Chin stand to the right or left side.

Long Chinned, to have a long & sharp pointed Chin.

Flat, or broad Chinned.

Short Chinned, when the Mouth and Chin is near together.

Dimple Chinned, is to have a kind of hollow in the middle of the Chin, in the lower part.

Ears

Loll Eared, that hath great slouch Ears, of some **Lob Eared**.

Prick Eared, whose Ears stand up, or are high above, and little below.

Flance, or **Lap Eared**; contrary to what is above-said.

Pin Eared, or **Pinified**; is to have no Ears, to have them cut off.

Back

Crook, or **Camel backed**; is to have the Back bunch, or stand out.

Arm

Dismembred, is to have any Member or part of the Body cut away.

Maimed, is to want the use of any Limb.

Withered, dryed up, having no moisture in that part.

Shortned, when they are not proportionable to the rest of the Body.

Hand

Withered Hand, whose Hand, and Fingers, are so bowed as the same cannot be stretched out.

Bunch Fingered, when the joynts stand out in knots: knotted Fingers.

Crook Fingered, that cannot bend the joynts of the Fingers; or any one of them.

Legs

Lame, is to want the use of the Legs or Feet.

Halt, or **Limp**; is not to go upright.

Long Shanked, is to have Legs longer then naturally, and what the proportion of the Body requires: of an extraordinary length.

Bow Legged, or **Shackle Hammed**; crooked Legs, bending outward.

Bow Legged, bending inward.

Feet

Crump Footed, that wants Feet, or Toes, or that they are not long stretched forth, as naturally they ought to be.

Splay Footed, to have great broad Feet.

Shammoe, to cast the toes outward in going.

Outward Diseases, and Distempers of the Body.

Kings Evil, is a running Ulcer, or Boil.

Ulcer, is a gathering of corruption, under the skin.

Scab, is a dry sore, proceeding from a Pouk, or waterish Blister.

Blister, is the parting of the skin from the flesh, through some Water, or corrupt Humor gotten between.

Wrench, or **Strain**; is the removing of a joynt bone either in the hollow socket, or out of it; more then nature will suffer it.

Bruise, is the receipt of a wound in the flesh, when no skin is broken, which happens by crushing, or a blow.

Wound, when the skin and flesh is cut, or slashed, stabbed, or bitten.

Wheale, is the mark of a strip in the flesh, made by the lash of a rod, skuch, or whip.

Skar, a mark in the skin, and flesh, remaining after the wound is healed.

Impostume, a large gathering together of corruption out of the Body, or in the Body.

Ringworm, a **Tatter**, or a **Wolf**; are little, and great Wormes in the flesh, that eats from place to place.

Canker, and **French-Pox**; a kind of sore that eats the flesh all round about it.

Gangreen, is the deadness of the flesh, which makes it past feeling.

Measles, **Swine-Pox**, and **Small-Pox**; sores like Blisters rising in any (or throughout) all the parts of the Body.

Rupture, is a gathering, or swelling of the Belly, or Cods; It is taken for the falling down of the Guts.

Scald, or **Scurf**; is a kind of dry scab in the Head.

Leprosie, a dry Scab, or Scurf, dispersing it self all over the Body; if not presented, yet not easily cured.

Mumps, a swelling in the Jaw, and Cheeks.

Itch, **Mange**, **Scurf**; a breaking out which causeth scratching.

Gout, a pain in the joynts, with a lameness of the Hands, and Feet: if the pain take there.

Sciatica, the Hip Gout, a pain in the Hips, causing lameness.

Cramp, a drawing together of the Nerves, and Sinews; a stiffness of the part grieved, with great pain.

Immoderate Fatness, which makes unweldy, and unapt to go, or stand.

Leanness, **Meager**; proceeding from bad disgestion: a leaness of Body.

Dropsie, a waterish Humor between the flesh and skin.

Defect in sweating, which is a kind of faintiness; by reason of the openness, or closness of the Pores.

Morphew, is a disease that dyeth the skin yellow, especially about the Mouth, and under the Eyes.

Water Bladders, and **yellow Blisters**; are Powks, or Tumors: the first containing Water, the other a kind of yellow Matter.

Carbunkle, or **Blain**; is the Boil, or breaking out of the Plague sore, or the Pestilence.

Elephantiasis, a swelling and cancerous tumor, over the whole Body.

Tisick, is a Haughing, and Choughing much together, a Cough without ceasing.

Suffocation, is a stoppage of the breath, difficulty of breathing.

Stich, or **Plurisie**; is a pricking of the sides.

[ ]

Inward Deseases, and Distempers in the Body.

Breast

The **Empyema**, a disease in the Cavity of a Womans Breast, by the collection of quitter.

The **Scirrhus**, is the knobbedness of a Womans Breast, as it were with the Kings-evil, by reason of the Kernels.

The **Cancer in the Breast**, which proceeds from the infection of the said Kernels.

The **Inflamation**, **Ulcers**, and **Tumors** of the Breast, proceeds from the crudling of the milk in the Breast.

The **Peripneumonia**, and inflamation of the Lungs, or pain on both sides.

The **Mediastium**, and **Pericardium**; are subject to inflamations which causeth swoning, quickning the Pulse, strong Feavors, and vehement thirsts. They are often filled with abundance of Humors, which causes Suffocations, and overwhelms the Heart.

The **Diaphragma**, or Midriff inflamation; causeth Franzies, and a slow Consumption.

The **Flurions of the Lungs**; infect them, which causeth the Consumption.

The **Uomica**, is an **Impostume** of the Lungs: a **Push**.

The **Asthma**, is difficulty of breathing, by obstructions of the Lungs.

The **Dyspnea**, the lesser disease of difficult breathing.

The **Orthopnea**, the greater disease of difficult breathing.

The **Cough**, either moderate, vehement, or weezing, by reason of the sudden shaking of the Lungs, and a Defluxion.

The **Catarrh**, is a sudden Defluxion, fierce, and cruel; which causeth a vehement Cough.

The **Ulcers of the Lungs**; happen through a fierce Cough.

The **Fevor**, is through the inflaming of the Heart; it is a hot, and burning disease: of which there is three kinds.

The **Spirituosa**, or **Spiritual Fever**; is the inflamations of the Vital Spirits. It is termed **Ephemera**, a days Fever.

The **Humoralis**, or **Humoral Fever**; is from the four humors.

The **Hectica**, or **Hectick Fever**; is an hot disease proceeding from the fixed Humors. But when they are all exhausted it is called **Hectica Marasmodes**.

The **Putrid Fever**, is when the humors are putrified.

The **Malignant Fever**, is through extream putrifaction.

The **Invasio**, the invasion, or beginning of the fit of a Fever.

The **Exacerbatio**, is the more then ordinary violence of continual Fevers.

The

The **Periodus**, or **Circuitus**; the Period, or Circuit of the Fever: it is the intermission, and accession, or space between fits, which are various: as,

The **Tertian Fever**, or **Ague**; is when the fit comes every third day, that is every other day.

The **Quartan Fever**, or **Ague**; is every fourth day, or every third day from the fit day.

The **Quotidian Ague**, is a fit every day.

The **Erratick Fever**; is when one fit is gone, another immediately follows, yet keep no certain course therefore called, the wandring giddy Agues.

The **Epiala Ague**, is both heat and cold.

The **Leippyria Ague**, the inward parts are hot, and outward cold.

The **Typhodes**, or **Eleodis**; is a sweating Ague.

The **Pestilential Fever**, or **Spotted Fever**; is a hot burning disease, through extream putrification: and causeth spots.

The **Epostosis**, is a swelling knot upon a bone, which rises from the **Venerial Pox**.

The **Caries**, are the rottenness, and putrifaction of the bones, which is from the same extraordinary cause.

The **Bedmata**, is a Defluction in the joynts, but especially infesting the Hip-bone.

The **Hydarthrosis**, and **Synovia**; is a continual Flux of a wheyish or bloody watry humor, out of exulcerated joynts. It is of some termed **Heliceria**.

Belly

The **Ventrosus**, or **fat Guts**; or **Collatibus Venter**, an Aldermans Belly: is a grose, full standing out of the Belly.

The **Apostheames**, are swellings in the **Abdomen**, through the Liver, by the **Umbilicar Vein**.

The **Caesariam dissection**, is to cut out the left side towards the **Hypogastrium**, to draw out a Child in difficult labour.

The **Lithotomia**, a **Cutting for the Stone**; out of the Bladder.

The **Assuage of Urine**, is the cutting, or pricking near the **Os Pubis**; by which it is drawn out, when a Catheter cannot be put in.

The **Ascites**, is the water of a Dropsie.

The **Paracentesis**, is the operation of peircing the bottom of the **Hypogastrium** near the Navel, to draw out the Dropsical water.

The **Cutaneous diseases**, are such as belong to the skin, which if they continue long; they will have their foundation in the Bell, and fatty Membrane, which causeth shivering, shaking, and trembling.

The **Inflamations**, and **Impostumes of the Muscles**; are pains arising by Winds.

The **Bastard Collick**, is the **Serosus**, & sharp Collerick humors, which get amongst the doubling of the **Peritoneum**, but have no foundation at all within the Guts.

The **Collick**, is a Wind in the Belly and small Guts; which disease is bitter, and of long continuance. Called the **Iliack Passion**.

The **Entero-cele**, is the smelling in the Groin; also called **Epiplocele**.

The **Entero-Epiplo-Cele**, is a kind of swelling, or Rupture in which both the Gut, and the Call do fall down.

The **Omphalocele**, is the Rupture, by which the **Peritoneum** being loose and broken towards the Navel, causeth the **Jejunum** to slip down.

The **Colon Collick**, is through sharp humors, or wind; in it Worms are bread, which creep into the Stomach, and are vomited out.

The **Tenasmus**, or right Gut; is subject to Ulcers, Inflamations, Impostumes, and Fistulas.

The **Peristaltick motion** of the Guts; is the perverting of the Guts that glisters, and Dung flows upward and are cast out of the Mouth.

The **Laxation of the Belly**, is to be Laxative, loose in the Belly, easily parting with the Excrements.

The **Costiveness** of the Belly, is the hard binding of the Belly, not to part with the Excrements, but with difficulty and pain.

The **Diarrhea**, or the **Flux**; is an extraordinary loosness, the Excrements are thin.

The **Ulcerations Flux**, is the Bloody-Flux; which comes with pain, and much Blood with the Excrements.

The **Hepetica**, or **Hepetick Flux**; is a kind of red, or Bloody water, and comes from the Liver without pain

The **Lienteria Flux**, is when it comes through the smoothness of the Guts.

The **Mesenterical Flux**, is when the Excrements come with quitter.

The **Tania**, or **Gut-worm**; is supposed to be the internal tunicle of the Guts, which is somtimes severed and lost, and is thought to be turned into a long Worm, two or three Cubits long.

The **Morbus Ructuosus**, is the beltching disease, it proceeds from an ostruction in the Stomach. It is called **Cholera sicca**.

The **Morbus Siccatorius**, a disease which dries up, or consumes all the humors and moisture of the Body. A Consumption.

The **Chylous Flux**, is a disease rising from the obstruction of the passage in the Milky Vein.

Stomach

The **Crudity** and **weakness of the Stomach**; is the over burthening it with meats and drinks, so as it cannot contract, or imbrace meat to turn it into a good Chyle.

The **Morbus Materiae**, is a great Laxity or loosness of the Stomach.

The **Lienteria**, is a loosness in the Belly, that the meat comes away unchanged, just as it was eaten: which through the extention of the Stomach, making it thereby smooth, which is naturally wrinkled.

The **Malacia**, or **Citta**; is the depraved Stomach, which cannot be satisfied, or desires evil things.

The **Apepsia**, is **Corruptio Chyli**; the corruption of the Chyle in concoction, or chilification abolished.

The **Bradu-pepsia**, is when meat is long in disgesting.

The **Depepsia**, is ill disgestion, when the meat is corrupted.

The **Cardiagmos**, or **Cardialgia**; is the Heart burning.

The

The **Syncope Stomachica**; the Stomach swounding.

The **Anxiety of the Stomach**, is the unquiet tumbling, and tossing, though pain of the Stomach; which is also called,

The **Ryptasmos**, or **Ass**, and **Assodes**; the name of a Fever which hath much unquietness to the sick person.

The **Hiccup**, is a distemper rising through the foulness of the Stomach: called **Hicchoc.**

The **Vomiting disease**, is the obstruction of the upper, or lower orifice of the Stomach.

The **Cholera Sicca**, is the frequent breaking up of Wind, and Belching.

The **Cholera Humida**, this is a plentiful, and violent voiding of choller upwards, or downwards, which kills in four days.

The **Noxius Cardiacus**, is an extream faintness of the Stomach, joyned with much sweating.

The **Ruminatio Stomachi**, the Rumination of the Stomach, is an inversion, or turning of it, as it were inside out.

The **Stomach distempers**, are also **Inflamations, Impostumes, Ulcerations.**

The **Hepatick**, is a similary disease of the Liver, and is a Laxity thereof, by voiding Excrementious Blood.

Liver

The **Diarrhea Hepatica**, is the Liver loosness, in which the Chyle is avoided.

The **Atrophia**, or the **Dropsie**; is the smelling of the Legs, and other parts of the Body, by the frustration of sanguination in the Liver, when insted of Blood, it produceth nothing but Water and Wind.

The **Ascites** and **Tympanites**, the **Timpany** or **Bottle bellied**, or the **Drum bellied Dropsie**; is the swelling of the Belly, which is by having the foresaid Water, and Wind emptied out of the Liver, into the Belly.

The **Anasarca**, or **Empneum-atosis**; a swelling in the Face, the **Bloat-faced, Puff-cheeked Dropsie**: which is by conveying the said Water, and Wind out of the Liver into the habit of the Body.

The **Atrophia**, is the falling away of the flesh; the **Atrophy** is the hinderance of the Bodies nourishment, through badness of Blood, of some termed **Tabes.**

The **Cacheria**, or **Cachexy**; is the evil colour through the habit of the Body, by reason of the badness of the Blood: as the skin to be blew, or white, or yellow.

The **Jaundice**, or **Yellow-Jaundice**; is a disease causeth weakness in the Limbs: the Head and Body skin to be dyed yellow, is from the simpathiseing of those part with the Gall and Liver.

The **Black-Jaundice**, is the colouring of the skin in the habit of the Body, with a black swarsy colour, which is by reason of the obstructions of the Spleen.

The **Spleen fallen**, is the Ligament of the Spleen being slakned, its weight bears it downward; or else being broke it falls into the Belly: where it is taken by unskillful Physitians for a **Mole**, or a **Scirrhus tumor** in the Womb of a Woman: or for a sort of **Glandulous tumor**, in a Man.

The **Hypochondriacal Melancholly**, a windy melancholly, which is bread of ach and soreness about the short Ribs; from whence a black Flegm arising doth hurt and trouble the Mind: a Dotage joyned with sadness.

The **Scorbus**, or **Scurvy**, or **Corbutick Distempers**; is the ill colour of Virgins, or others accasioned by the Malignant wheyish Humor that flows out of the Spleen; which hath other terms, as it spreads into divers parts of the Body.

The **Stomacace**, or **Oscedo**; is the flowing of the said wheyish humor into the Gums, and Mouth: which causeth sadness with loosness of the Teeth. The **Mouth Scurvy.**

The **Scelotyrbe**, is the Scurvy in the thigh, which is painful, sore, and spotted; or rising like blisters, red and Itching.

The **Rheumatisms**, is the Scurvy, as it is either fixed, or wandring through the Body; which is by the spreading of the said wheyish humor, into the said parts.

The **Cacochymia**, is the distemper of Body raised through the ill quality of Blood.

The **Plethora**, is a distemper of the Body, through the great quantity of Blood.

The **Varices**, are the swellings of the Veins, which happen most in the Thighs aud Legs.

The **Atonia**, is the want of the wonted Vigor of the Kidneys: it is an inpotency so that it cannot contract it self, from whence comes a Laxity or loosness in the substance of the Kidneys.

The **Diabetes**, is the **Pissing sickness**, a kind of disease, that one cannot hold his Water.

The **Ischuria**, or the **Stone in the Kidney**; it is a distemper that a Man or Woman cannot piss; a total suppression of Urine.

The **Strangullion**, or **Strangury**; a pissing of Blood.

The **Stone in the Bladder**, it is the evacuation of the Urin stopt, by the lying hid of some Stone in the Bladder, difficulty of pissing.

The **Hypersarcoses**, or the **Inflamations**, or **Obstructions of the Bladder**; is by a fungous Body, or spungy carnosities, that do arise either in the Bladder, or at the Neck thereof.

Yard

The **Priapismus**, is the disease of having the Yard continually to stand.

The - - - - - - - is the weakness, or defect of erection of the Yard, the Imbecility of the whole Yard, it arises from the weakness, or **Paralytick disposition** of the Muscles, or Nerves of the Yard.

The **Contersion**, or **Crookedness** of the Yard; is the bowing of the Yard, either upwards or downwards, on this side or the other, which is from a Convulsion of one of its Muscles.

The Yard is also subject to **Inflamations, Tumors, Ulcers**, and to be eaten with the **Noli me tangere**, or The **French-pox.**

The **Phymosis**, is to have the fore-skin so streight, and close, that it cannot be drawn from the Nut of the Yard, backwards.

The **Paraphymosis**, is when the fore-skin is depressed to the root of the Nut, that it cannot be drawn upwards.

The **Gonorhaca Chordata**, the cordell, or robe-stretched running of the Reins.

Fundament

The **Tenesmus**, is a hot distemper in the Fundament, with a great **Itching**, which causeth a continual desire of going to the stoole.

The **Falling of the Tuel**, is the coming out of the Tuell at the Fundaments, in the expulsion of the Dung.

The **Passe of the Fundament**, is when the Excrements come out, whether the patient will or not: and sometime so strait that he cannot void them.

The **Haemorrhoides**, is the swelling of the Veins, and their being knobbed, both within and without the Fundaments. This disease is more generally known by the name of the **Piles**, and **Emerades**.

The **Fistula Ani**, is an inflamation with an **Ulcer**, or **Impostumation** in the Fundament.

The **Kondylomata**, or **Mariscae**; is when the Fundament is made rough with Warts.

The **Rhagades**, is when the Fundament is exulcerated with small clifts.

The **Scurrhous Tumor** of the Fundament, which shuts up the passage of the Excrements, so that nothing is evacuated but at the Mouth. This proceeds from the twisting of the small Guts, or the closing up of the Fundament; which disease is termed **Miserere mei Deus**: for therein, there is no way but Death.

Cods and Womb

The **Hydrocele**, or the **Pneumatocele**; are Ruptures, or swellings in the Cods, by reason of Water and Wind flowing from the Cavity of the Belly.

The **Dicheocele**, it is a Rupture in the Cods, through falling of the Guts thereunto: **swelling of the Cods.**

The **Circocele**, is a tumor of thick Blood, that is intercepted in the Spermatick vessels; both deferent, and ejaculatory.

The **Sarcocele**, is a spongy flesh breed, and grown to the Membrane. called **Dartos**; and if the Testicle hang to the same spongy flesh, it is also so termed **Sarcocele.**

The **Rhagosis**, is the Laxity, or loosness, or hanging down of the Cods.

The **Trioxches**, is such a one which hath three Stones.

The **Eunuches**, are gelded Men, such as have their Stones cut away.

The **Hermaphrodites**, are Men that have the secrets of Women: it is to be both a Man, and a Woman.

The **Gonorhea**, is a venemous running of the Reins, occasioned by an unseasonable stopping of the seed Bladder. The Virulency or venom thereof is communicated to the whole Body, or flows back into the Stones, and causes a tumor there; it is termed **Gonorhea Virulenta**; the Venemous, poysonous, deadly, infectious running of the Reins.

The **Gonorhea Laxite**, or **Simpler**; is the simple, or single or Laxitive Gonorrhea, is the volentary shedding of the seed, through the Laxity, or loosness of the seed Bladder.

The **Dryno-Rigmos**, or **Nocturnal polution**; is the Flux of seed which comes away in time of sleep: and is from the abundance of hot, and spirituous seed.

The **Whores-Pox**, is an Inflamation or swelling Ulcer, in the Lips of the Matrix of Whores and Bands; proceeding from an extraordinary heat: and sore labour.

The **Thymi**, are Warts or Pushes, growing in the inner parts of the **Labra Matricis**, resembling the flowers of time.

The **Condylomata**, are certain tumors therein, resembing the joynt of a Mans finger.

The Distemper called the **Mother**, is a kind of choaking, strangling, and raiseth terrible and violent motions, and Convulsions in the Body: which is caused through the drawing a side of the Womb out of its place, which is carried this and that way, as far as the Ligaments, and connexions of the Womb will give leave.

The **Womans Flux**, generally called **Termes**, or **Flowers**, or **Courses**: it is the avoiding of the menstrual Blood, which is over and above what is necessary to nourish a Woman for a Months time.

The **Barrenness of the Womb**; is not conception, or misconception, and that by reason of its abolishing, or its distempers; as ill shape, hardness, distortion of the Orifice, *&c.*

The **Conception Depraved**, is a false conception; as Wind, a Mole, or an efflax of seed, or an abortion, which is an untimely birth.

The **Dispualgia**, or **Lumbago**; is the pain of the Loins.

The **Clumbis**, or **Clumbatus**; is he that is made weak through the pain of the Loins.

The **Rheumatism**, or **Flux of the Loins**; is an internal pain, and lieth between the skin, being a humor which flows from the Head.

Head

The **Ophiasis**, is a disease that causeth the hair to fall off.

The **Calvus**, or **Calvosity**, or **baldness**; is the want of hair, through an Hectical dry distemper, or the defect of Nutriment, or from a dry skin.

The **Dandruff**, is those little scales, or scurf in the Head, which is from a dry and invisible Ulcer in the skin. Some call it Dandrise.

The **Achor**, is a disease on the skin, between an Ulcer, and a Tumor.

The **Hydro-Cephalus**, or the Water head Dropsie.

The **Pthiriasis**, or **Louzie Evil**; a distemper that breed Lice, through a hot, and moist disease.

Brain

Brain

The **Obstructions of the Cavities**; is the stopping of the passages of the Brain so as the Blood cannot take its course, which is very oft the cause of an Apoplexie: and many deadly diseases.

The **Megrom**, is a giddiness, or dizziness in the Head, and Brain, it obstructs, and hinders the sight.

The **Apoplexy**, is the striking lame of all the Body: a **Dead Palsie.**

The **Siriasis**, or **Phrensy**, or **Dog day Madness**: is a distemper from the inflaming of the Brain, with its Meninges, and Coats.

The **Ecpleris**, is the stupidity of the Head, after a blow.

The **Sphacelisme**, is the Putrifaction of the Brain, after a blow.

The Distempers of the Brain, is the cause of depraving the faculties, which brings **Dotage**, **Melancholly**, **Ecstasies**, **Madness**; or else on the other side, it causes **Forgetfulness**, **Foolishness**, **Dottishness**, and **Blockishness**: as for example,

The **Cephalalgia**, is the Head ach; it is when the whole head is pained, and grieved.

The **Lyncanthropy**, a kind of madness, with a shouting, and raving.

The **Hemicrania**, if only half the Head is pained.

The **Clavus** or **Dvium**; is the Head ach in one part, as if a Nail were driven there.

The **Cephalea**, is the Head ach of a long continuance.

The **Deprivation**, of the fansie, and reason, is Raving.

The **Imminution**, of reason, is foolishness.

The **Oblivion**, or decay of Memory; is from the distemper of the Brain.

The **Dotage**, or **Raving**; is known by absurd thoughts, words and actions: the thoughts ridiculous, and Chymerical: the words of such as rave are estranged from truth and reason, and not to the point in hand: and their actions are either unusual or undecent.

The **Melancholly**, or the **Delirium**; is a raving with deprivation of the fancy; which is a false opinion of things past, present, or to come. The **Alienation** of the Mind.

The **Hypochondriaca Melancolia**, is that as proceeds out of the **Hypochondriacal** parts; which is either humoral, or flatulent: the former brings madness, and outrageousness.

The **Melancholly Ecstasie**, is an excess of Melancholly which is three fould.

The **Ecstasie**, so simply called, an **Ecstasie** with silence; and an **Ekstasie** with a frency.

The **Coma** or **Carus**; is a profounded, deep, dead sleep.

The **Coma Vigilans**, is a drawzy watch.

The **Typhomania**, is a sleepy disease, which hath a raving and idle talk, when he wakens.

The **Incubus**, or **Night Mare**; is an oppression of the Blood, it is a stiff lying on the back with the Eyes open, which when he comes to himself, remembers what was done to him.

The **Catalepsis**, is the abolishing of all the senses, save respiration, or breathing: called also **Catoche**, a frosen sleepy disease.

The **Lethargy**, is an imminuation of sense, and motion: and also of memory concerning necessary things: those that are in a **Lethargick** sleep, at last become **Apoplectick.**

The **Palsie**, is an obolation of sense, and motion.

The **Hemiplegia**, is the striking of half the Body with a dead Palsie.

The **Paraplegia**, is when only a part of the Body hath the Palsie.

The **Stupor**, or **Nothrotis**; is an imperfect Palsie, when sense and motion are only dulled.

The **Vertigo**, is a depravation of sense and motion, and makes the patient think as things go round.

The **Vertigo Tenebricosa**, or **Scotodinos**; it puts a darkness before the patients Eyes.

The **Convulsion**, is a violent pulling back of the Muscles toward the Head; which causeth loss of sense, and a drawing crooked a part of the Body, as Eyes, Mouth, Cheeks, &c.

The **Epysthotonos**, is when the Convulsion makes the Body to bend forward.

The **Opisthotonos**, is when the Body is draw backward.

The **Tetanos**, when both sids by the Convulsion, remains stiff.

The **Falling Sickness**, called an **Epilepsie**; it is a **Convulsion** of the Body by fits, hurting the Mind, and Senses.

The **Spasmus tremors**, is a trembling, and is a depravation of the motion through weakness.

The **Auxiety**, unquietness, or tumbling, and tossing this and that way; it is a disease, that make a sick person that he cannot rest in any place.

The **Sleep Walkers**, it is a disease of motion, and sense depraved, because it is not performed by judgment, and reason, called **Noctambulus.**

The **Catarrh**, is a distilation of humors, from the Head to other parts, from which it receives diverse appellations.

The **Coryza**, or **Gravedo**; if the humors fall into the Nostrils.

The **Branchos**, or **Hoarseness**, if it fall in the Throat.

Th **Ptyelismos**, or the **Spawle**; if the humor fall into the Mouth, or Pallat, which sorts of **Catarrhs**, are vulgarly comprehended under the name of **Rheum.**

The **Rheumatismus**, or **Rheumaticus**; is a **Catarrh**, or Rume fallen upon any outward part, called the **Rheumatick** pain. If it fall upon the joynt, it resembles the **Gout.**

Eyes

The **Ecpiesmos**, is the disease as makes the Eye fall, or swell without the hole, or socket.

The **Monoculus**, is a disease in the number, such a person having but one Eye.

The **Rhinsptis**, is the turning of the Eye, to one side or other; as in Squint eyed People.

The

The **Hypopyon**, is the inflamation of the whole Eye, which runs to a suppuration, or an **Impostume**, or gathering to a matter.

Eye-lids.

The **Emphysema**, is a moist distemper of the Eye-lids, with wind.

The **Hydatis**, is a wheyish humor, in the Eye lid, which doth so depress it, that it cannot be lifted up.

The **Scleroph-thalmia**, is hard Eyedness, and hot distemper in the lid.

The **Xeroph-thalmia**, is a dry distemper without humor in the Eye-lid.

The **Psoroph-thalmia**, is a dry Itching of the Eye-lid.

The **Phthiriasis**, or **Lousie evil** of the Eye-lid.

The **Prisosis**, is a hot distemper with a sharp humor. which causeth a redness, and pain, and falling of the hair: it is termed also **Milphosis**, or **Madarrhosis**.

The **Tracoma**, is the roughness of the inside of the Eye-lid.

The **Sycosis**, is when the roughness resembles small seeds.

The **Tulosis**, is if this disease be of of long continuance.

The **Crithe**, or **Barly Corn**; is a little tumor, or fleshy pimple on the Eye-lid, springing from a thick humor.

The **Chalasion**, or **Hail-stone**; if the same pimple be great, and moveable.

The **Anchilobie-pharo**, is a disease causing the Eye-lid, to stick to the Coat of the Eye, by a hot distemper, and dry sharp humor.

The **Lagoph-thalmia**, is the Convulsion of the Eye-lid, or the drawing of it back by reason of a Cicatrice, or some Seam.

The **Ippos**, is the trembling of the Eye-lid.

The **Ectropion**, is the inversion of the lower Eye-lid, caused by a scar without, or some excrestnce of flesh within.

The **Chalasis**, is the loosness of the Eye-lids, caused by a Palsie.

The **Trichiasis**, is the depravation of the hair of the Eye-lids

The **Dystichiasis**, is when there is more hair on the Eye-lids, then is ordinary: as two rows.

The **Phalangosis**, is when the hair is long, and inverted, which pricks the Eyes.

Kernels in the Eye.

The **Eucanthis**, a **Caruncle**, or little bit of flesh in the great corner of the Eye.

The **Rhyas**, is the diminution of the said Caruncle, which causeth a drooping of moisture from the Eye.

The **Anchilops**, is an Impostume, though inflamation in the said corner.

The **AEgylops**, is when the said Impostume is broken, and it is turned into a **Fistula**.

Coat of the Eye.

The **Tararis**, is a hot distemper of the conjunctive Coat, with a humor of Blood, and Choler.

The **Epiphora**, is the beginning of an Inflamation.

The **Opth-thalmia**, or **Oph-thalmia**; is the continuance of the same inflamation, being from an internal cause.

The **Chemosis**, is when the Inflamation is so great, that it hinders the coming together of the Eye-lids: termed also **Hiatus Oculi**.

The **Hypos-phagma**, is a collection of Blood, proceeding from a blow, or bruise.

The **Pterygium**, is a membratious eminency, reaching from the greater corner of the Eye to the Pupil, or sight of the Eye.

The **Phlyctena**, is a small tumor, or Pustle in the **Adnata**, or **Cornea**, which ends in the Ulcer.

The **Bothrion**, is when the said Pustle is hollow, called also **Fossula**.

The **Epicauma**, is when the said Pustle, or tumor becomes crusty.

The **Cheloma**, is a broad Ulcer of the **Cornea**; about the circle, or Iris of the Eye.

The **Argemon**, is when the said Ulcer is whitish.

The **Leucoma**, or **Albugo**; are the large Scars in the black of the Eye: and are so called beceuse of its whitness.

The **Nephelion**, or **Nebula**; the Cloud in the Eye, is when the Scar is but small.

The **Achlys**, or **Caligo**; is a mist, or darkness; that is when the Scar is thin.

The **Proptosis**, is the Rupture, or exulceration of the **Cornea**.

The **Providentia**, is when the Coat of the Eye **Uvea**; striks above the other, called **Cornea**.

The **Myocephalon**, or **fly Head**; is when the exturberance of the **Uvea** is small, it resembles a Fly's head.

The **Staphyloma**, so called when the said Fly head is great; because it resembles a grap stone: it is termed also **Melon**, as being like an Apple.

The **Elos**, **Clavus**, or **Nail**; is when there is any inveterate Ulcer on the **Cornea**, through which the **Uvea** falls out.

The **Cacinomata**, is the term for all malignant Ulcers in the **Cornea**, or **Adnata**.

Ball of the Eye.

The **Zinficis**, is a dry distemper which consumes the watry humor, and dissipates the spirits of the Eye sight.

The **Hypopium**, is an obstruction from a corrupted Flegmatick, or purulent Humor.

The **Hypochyma suffusio**, is an obstruction from Flegm: or concreasion of a thick humor.

The **Phthisis**, or **Corrugatio**; is when the Pupil, or circle of the Eye, is very narrow, from a dry distemper.

The **Hydriasis**, or **Platu-Coric**; is the dilatation of the Pupil, being stretched out, or made broad by a moist Humor, or from a Rupture.

The **Glaucosis**, or **Glaucoma**; is the thickness, or hardness of the christallin Humor; which causeth dimness of sight, and proceeds from a cold and dry distemper: it is familiar to aged persons.

The **Amblyopia**, or seeing spirit becoming thick, surrounds the christallan humor; with darkness and obscurity.

The **Gutta Serena**, or **Amaurosis**, is the Obstruction of the Optick Nerve, which causeth sudden blindness.

Sight

The **Caecitas**, is sight extinct, blindness, or sight abolished.

The **Amblyopia**, is sight diminished only.

The **Myopsis** is the Purblind sight, that must look close to the object, and half shut his eyes.

The **Nyctalops**, is to see only by day, and little or nothing by Night.

The **Paropsis**, or **Hallucination**, is Sight depraved, having a false reception before the Eyes; termed also **Amalops**; for so all things appear yellow to them as have the Jaundice.

The **Quittor**, is a watery humour over the eye, hindring the Sight.

Ear

The **Parotis**, is the swelling and inflamation of the Kernels beside the Ears, which happens in an Acute Feaver; of some it is termed **Dioscouros**, and of others **Castor and Pollar**.

The Diseases of the Ears ars chiefly these, **Obstructions** by a tumor; by a **Caruncle** or bit of Flesh growing up in the Ear; **Quittor** issuing out, or by filth; it is **Inflamed** and **Impostumated**, and **exulcerated** or hurt by some eating Medicine poured into the Ear, or by a Chollerick humor.

The **Sturditas**, is Hearing Abolished, Deafness.

The **Barucoia**, or thickness of Hearing, is Hearing diminished.

The **Paracousis**, is Hearing depraved, and consists in a noise, and ringing, or buzzing in the Ear.

The **Ehlai**, are Ear Worms, which are voided from the Ears.

Face.

The **Freckles** of the Face, are Spots caused through Choller stuck in the Pores of the skin.

The **Ephelis**, is to have the Face burnt in the Sun. Sun-burnt.

The **Gutta Rosacea**, is the setled redness in the Face.

The **Antirohei**, is to have the Face spotted or flect with red.

The **Palenes**, or **Green-sickness**, is to look pale and wan.

The **Liphaemoi**, or **Bloodless**, is such as look wheyish and sickly.

The **Caco-chroia**, is any bad colour in the Face, either of Sick persons, or of such as are well.

The **Ionthos**, is a hard push in the Face.

The **Carus**, is an harder knob, yet not so red as the **Ionthos**.

The **Ficus**, is a certain Wart, resembling a Fig; a **Mole**.

The **Lichen**, or **Impetigo**, or the **Darta**, are rough or scaly eminences, Warts, or Pimples in the Face, if they be dry, but if they be moist, they are **Exulcerations**, and run.

The **Naevi**, are Warts or smooth knobs, white or blewish.

The **Hypopium**, is the black and blew colour of the skin of the Face proceeding from a blow or bruise.

The **Spilloi**, are sooty Excrements of the skin, intruded into the pores thereof.

The **Pam**, are scars in the Face.

The **Hentagra**, or **Impetigo**, or dry Scab of the Chin, a Disease that troubled the *Romans* in *Plinies* time.

The **Cynicus Spasmus**, the action of the skin of the mouth, when it was drawn aside by the Palsy or Convulsion fits.

The **Commotice**, is the Painting or Plastering of the Face with Fucus's and such like; used by Panders, Bawds and Whores.

The **Cosmetice**, is the natural Beautifying and adorning of the Face, without laying any thing on.

Lips.

The **Rhagades**, are the chops of the Lips, or tumors, or little Bladders, which break out upon the lips, especially in Feavers.

The trembling of the lips, called **Seismos**, is from the badness of the Stomach, and when one is about to Vomit.

The **bad colour of the Lips**, it argues a fault in the Lungs or Blood.

The **Labeones**, is to have great Lips stretched.

The **Hare Lip**, is such as have, or are born with an imperfect cloven Lip.

The **Bzorhus**, is to have the inside of the Lip turned outwards.

The **Cheilo**, is to have great swelling Lips.

The **Meutones**, is to have a Chin sticking out.

The Lip Distempers are **Inflamations**, **Swelling**, **Ulcers**, the loss of them, which makes a Man look like a snarling Dog.

Nose

The **Ozaena**, is a filthy stinking Ulcer in the Nose.

The **Polypus**, is a Caruncle in the Nose, swelled, which falls into the Nostrils or Pallat of the Mouth.

The **Cancerous Polypus**, is a Caruncle, which when it is cut or cauterized, eats and devours the whole Face.

The **Obstruction** of the inward passages of the Colander Bone, is the cause of Smelling abolished and diminished.

The **Putrifying** of the Humor in the cavities of the Colander Bone and mammillary productions; is the depraving of the Smell, which smell is not discerned by the Patient, but by such as converse with him.

The **Coryza**, or **Gravedo**, is the Irregularity of excretions, and a **Flux of Serosities**; which is the Bleeding at the Nose, or a continual Nose Dropping.

The

*

The **Sneezing** of the Nose is done by vexing the Nostrils, and is a momentary concussion or convulsion of the Brain.

The Distempers of the Nose are **Inflamations**, **Bruises**, **Ulcerated** and troubled with other Sores, proceeding from Organick Diseases, springing from bad deformations.

Teeth.

The **Odarismos**, is the first sprouts of the teeth in Children, which causes the Gums to swell and be inflamed.

The **Odontophua**, is the breaking out of the teeth of Children.

The **Haemodia**, is the setting of the teeth on edge, so as they cannot chew any thing.

The **Odontagra**, or **Odontalgia**, is the Toothach, the shuting and pain of the teeth.

The Diseases of the teeth besides are scaly, rotten, or moulder away, broken, blackness, rustiness, stinking teeth by excrescence of Worms, Flux of Blood, Rheums, also dryness, loosness, when troubled with **Organick Diseases**; also by being too long, too short, more than ought to be, having two or three rows, in magnitude being too great, as when long gag teeth go out of their rank; else too little and worn away, or do not stand close; and that the upper and lower do not just meet; or to have but one Bone in place of so many teeth, *&c.*

The **Proud Flesh** of the Gums, is when the flesh of the Gums do cover the teeth.

The **Parulis**, is the inflamation of the Gums.

The **Epulis**, is if the swelling and inflamation grows to an Ulcer.

The **Cancerated Gums**, is when infected or eaten by the Cancer.

The **Aphthae**, is the eating of the Gums with Ulcers.

The **Stomachache**, or **Oscedo**, the Scurvy in the teeth, which is cause of loosness, and immoderate bleeding.

Palate

The **Morbus Gallicus**, or **Noli me tangere**, is a rottenness of the Palate Bone by the Whores Pox.

The **Staphyle**, is when the Uvula is inflamed, it represents a Grape.

The **Columella** or **Chion**, when the Uvula resembles a Pillar.

The **Chalasis Gargareonis**, is when the Uvula grows loose and slap by reason of Rheum.

The **Imantis**, is when the Uvula hangs down too much.

The **Gargareon**, or **Squeenizie**, is the swelling of it, and the throat.

The **Antiades**, and the **Paristhmia**, are the swellings, and also the names of the Kernels by the **Isthmus**.

The **Tonsills**, are swelling of the Throat Kernels, which swell so much that they descend into the Throat, and hinder the Patient from swallowing.

Tongue

The **Batrachium**, is a tumour under the Tongue, which causeth its inflamation.

The **Ulcer of the Tongue**, doth infect the Tongue, and is often malignantly putrified, eaten and consumed by those like distempers.

The **Anaudia**, is the abolition of Speech, Speechless, Dumb.

The **Traulotis**, is when some one Letter cannot be truly pronounced.

The **Psallotis**, or **Psellismos**, is when divers letters and words cannot be pronounced.

The **Ichnophonia**, or **Stammering**, is a stoppage of the tongue, so as the Discourse cannot be proceeded in.

The **Anchylo-glossois**, and **Mogilalia**, is when the tongue is tyed either too strait or too loose.

The **Vitiated taste**, is when there is no taste, being filled with some evil humor.

The **Palsy of the Tongue**, which takes away all motion; and diminished, when half the tongue is Palsied.

The **Trembling of the Tongue**, is a fore-runner of a **Phrensie**.

The **Squinsy**, is the swelling of the Larynx, which hinders Speech and Breathing, and strangles the Patient.

The **Aphonia**, is privation or abolishing of Speech.

The **Raucedo**, or **Hoarsness**, is the depravation of Speech.

The **Ischmo-phonia**, is the Imminution or diminishing of Speech.

The **Apnoia**, is the interception or respiration, or hindrance of Breathing.

The **Dispnoia**, is a diminishing of Breathing, so that Breath comes and goes, not freely but with pain.

The **Obstruction of the Gullet**, is the hard descent of solid meat into the Stomach.

Neck

The **Bronchocele**, is a swelling in the Neck near the Larynx.

The **Kings Evil**, is a swelling which proceeds from a flegmatick clammy matter, which drenches the Kernels, and make them swell; and therefore where the Kernels are the swellings arise.

The **Scirrhous Tumor**, is something of the nature of the Kings-evil; they happen in the Jaws, in the Groins, behind the Ears, and in all parts of the Body where there are Glandules or Kernels.

The **Gongroni**, it is a tumor among the external swellings of the Neck.

The **Angina** or **Squinsie**, is a tumor of the Neck, either external or internal.

The **Synanche**, is the external Squinsie, which is an inflamation of the Neck.

The **Cynanche**, is the internal swelling, in which the Patient can hardly fetch his Breath.

The Neck Distemper are many, as **Dislocation** of the

the Vertebra's, and **similar Diseases**, arising from tumors and **Humors Organical**, consisting in bad conformations.

Arms

The **Dislocation** or **Fraction of the Scapula**, is the putting out of Joint, or the breaking of the Shoulder Bone.

The **Galliaggones**, is the crookedness of the Cubit, after a disjointing of it by the retraction of the Muscles.

The **Rheumatisme**, the **Gout**, and the **tumor ganglium**, with **flegmatick Knobs**, are often afflicters of the Arm, from the Elbow to the Wrist.

The **Arm-pits** have the Kernel there to smell strong, or they cause the Arms to smell: It is often vexed in the Joint by the **Gout**, **Rhumatism**, and other **fluxions**.

Hands

The Hand is much subject to the distemper aforesaid.

The **Finger Blaine**, swelling of the Fingers between the joints in col seasons.

The Nails have a distemper called the **White louse** or **Felon**.

The **Reduvia** is a sore in the Nails.

The **Sappy ends** of the Fingers are often corrupted and putrified, and sometime loose a joint by reason of a **Sphacelation**.

The **Paronychia**, is the opening of the skin at the corners of the Nails.

The **Whitley**, or **Bustion**, are swelling in the joints of the Fingers, which often cause the loss of the Finger.

Thighs.

The **Cuboes**, are Diseases in the Kernels about the Loins, which are **Pestilential** and **Venerial**.

The **Sciatica**, or **Hip Gout**, is a pain in the joint of the Thigh, about the cavity of the Huckle Bone.

The **Phthisis Coxaria**, or the **Hip Consumption**, is by a sharp putrid humor, which corrodes and brings corruption into the Hip joint.

The **Notha Ischias**, or **Bastard Sciatica**, is the flowing in of a Humor into that part of the Thigh where the great Nerves arise.

Legs

The **Swelling of the Knees**, are from flegmatick humor, or from inflamations, which are dangerous, and of long continuance, and at last Kill the Patient.

The **Dolor Genus**, or the pain of the Knees, whether by Cold, Rheum, or Gout, are extream bitter, and make stout Men cry out.

The **Elephantiasis**, or **Elephants Leg**; it is the swelling of the whole Leg from the bending of the Groin unto the Toes, because it makes the Leg resemble an Elephants.

The **defluxions** of the **Shank** and **Foot**, is caused through Humors falling down, which are either Wind, Water, or a clammy flegmatick Rheum, and produceth the swelling called **Oedema**.

Feet

The **Fluxions of the Ancle**, are Rheums there, and are dangerous and hard to be cured.

The **Pernio** or **Kibe**, is a swelling in the Heel, proceeding from cold or fluxion.

The **Corns** of the Toes are hard Kernels seated in the several places of the Toes, sides of the Feet, and Soles.

The Bones are subject to **Fractures**, **Dyness**, **Disjointing** and **Rottenness**.

In the dexter corner of this long square *numb.* 93. I have caused (for want of other room) a demy Man to placed, having an upper part of the Body, but no Arms: a kind of Bearing it is which the *Germans* and *Netherland* Gentry much use in their Coats and Crests (and is generally whether clothed or naked, if the cutting off end in three parts, and those again turned or wrought into leaves folding this way and that way) It is termed a **demy Man**, (or **Woman**, or **Boy**) **sans Arms**, **Triparted** or **Folded Avellane** (as much as to say) the three parting are cut or carved into leaves turned after the manner of the Shull or cover of an Hasel Nut when growing on the Tree, which turns and bends several ways, and is called in Heraldry **Avellana**, that is a Philbert Nut, from whence the term is borrowed, because of its resemblance to it. Some term it more shorter, a **demy Man parted Avellane**, others only a **demy Man Avellane**: others a **demy Man ending in foldages**, as *numb.* 35.

G. the like A. is born by *Marlay*.
B. 3 such O. is born by *Horsall*.
G. one such to the Sinister S. face proper, born by *Horden*, alias *Morden*.

In the dexter base corner, is likewise set the figure of a **Naked Man**, **Kneeling** upon a hill with his left Knee, holding an Apple in his right, and his left on his side; and such a Bearing is the Crest of *Don Montralow*.

An Ape in the like posture, looking his Face in a round Glass O. is the Crest of *Thann* in *Rhine Palatinate*.

XCIV. I have caused this **Hand** to be set here, thereby to give the Reader some Account of the Order and Rules of **Chiromancy**, as much as consists in the rational demonstration of the Lines in the Hand, with their Names both appropriated to them, as also all the other parts thereof.

The Names of the several parts of the Hand according to the Rules of Chiromancy or Palmestry.

♀ **Mons Veneris**, is the root or Mount of the Thumb, at the first Joint next the hand, which the Ancients

cients have dedicated to Venus, and call it the **Root**, or **Mount of Venus**, the **Tubercle** or **Mount of the Thumb.**

♃ **Mons Jovis**, the **Mount of Jupiter**, it is the root of the Fore-finger.

♄ **Mons Saturni**, the **Mount of Saturn**, is the root of the middle or long Finger.

☉ **Mons Solis**, the **Mount of the Sun**, the root of the Ring Finger.

☿ **Mons Mercurii**, the **Mount of Mercury**, is the root of the little Finger.

☽ **Mons Lunae**, the **Mount of the Moon**, is the brawn of the Hand, near the Wrist, opposite to the Hill of the Thumb.

♂ **Locus Martis**, the place assigned to **Mars**, is the hollow of the Hand, called also **Cavea Martis**, the **Cave of Mars.**

Yet some have written, that these places are otherwise assigned, as the Thumb to **Mars**, the Forefinger to **Jupiter**, the middle Finger to **Saturn**, the Ring finger to **Sol**, the little Finger to **Venus**, the Thenar, that is the space between the Thumb and fore finger, to **Mercury**; and the Brawn of the Hand, near the Wrist, to the **Moon.**

The Lines of the Hand.

They are said to be fourteen, but three are principal, which are these; the other follow.

A. **Linea Vitae**, or **Vitalis**, or **Linea Vitafera**, the **Line of Life**, it is that Line as compasses the Hill, Mount, or Ball of the Thumb; it begins in the place between the Fore-Finger and Thumb, and ends at the Wrist; it is of some termed **Linea Temporalis**, the **Line of Time**, and others **Linea Jovis**, the **Line of Jupiter.** the **Cordiaca.**

C. **Linea Mensalis**, the **Mensall** or **Table Line**, is that Line as takes its beginning under the Hill of Mercury, or little Finger, and runs overthwart the hand, through the middle of the **Mola**, or **Cup**, and ends at the Mount of Jupiter, and sometimes shorter, at the Mount of Saturn. Others call it **Linea Lunaris**, the **Moon Line**; and **Linea Stellata**, the **Line of Fortune.**

b. **Linea Media Naturalis**, the **Natural Line**, or **Line of the Head**, the **Cephalick Line** or **Vein Line**, which Line takes its beginning at the middle space between the Thumb and fore Finger, sometimes joining to the the top of the Line of Life (and sometimes disjoint, and at a distance from it) and so running overthwart the hand, to the Hill of the Moon, its higher part; it is called **Linea Veneris**, the **Table**, or **Bed Line of Venus.**

* **Mensa**, the **Table**, is the space of the Hand between the Table Line, and the Natural Line.

♄ **Linea Saturnalis**, the **Line of Saturn**, is the upright Line, that riseth from the Wrist, and crosseth the Lines of the Liver and the Table, and is determined or ended at the root, mount, or hill of Saturn.

Linea Solaris, the **Line of the Sun**, is the foresaid Line rising from the Wrist, which is called the Line of the Sun if it end under the hill or root of the Ring Finger.

Linea Mercurialis, the **Line of Mercury**, if the said line end or point to the root of the little Finger, then it is so called.

Via Combusta, is the term of the **Saturnal Line**, when it is cut and parted, and not an entire line.

x. **Linea Epatica**, or the **Liver Line**, is that Line as ariseth from the Hill of the Moon at the Wrist, and compassing it, ends at the Mount of Mercury.

♂ **Via Lactea**, the **Milky Way**, or **Milky Line**, is a Line arising from the Wrist, at the foot of the Line of Life, and goes over to the Mount of the Moon.

B. **Soror Martis**, or the **Sister of Mars**, is a circular Line, running Parallel with the Line of Life, on the inside to the higher part of the Mount of Venus, called the **Sister of the Line of Life.**

☉ ♄ **Cingulum Veneris**, or the **Girdle of Venus**, is a piece or segment of a Circle, drawn from the interval or space between the first and middle Finger, and runs to the same place between the little and Ring Finger.

H. **Restricta**, or **Cauda Draconis**, the **restraint Line**, or **Dragons Tail Line**, or of some called the **discriminical Line**, is that Line which divides the Hand from the Arm, either by a single, double, or triple transcursion.

The several ways by which Fortunes are foretold.

Chiromantickes, are such as take upon them to tell Fortunes by the Lines of the hand. **Chiromancer.**

Chiromancy, is the Art of telling Fortune by such Lines.

Palmestry, is the Art of telling Fortunes by the Lines in the Hand.

Prognosticator, a Fortune Teller, one that declares things to come.

Prognosticate, or **Prognostication**, is a foretelling of what shall be and happen, or things before they come to pass.

Divination, a telling of things past, or to come, to predict, foretel, conjecture, or have the fore-knowledg of future things by a Divine Spirit or Revelation.

Physiognomy, the Art of Judging or conjecturing the Fortune of a Man, by the Lineaments of his Face and Body.

Diagnosticate. Diagnostick, a foreshew of Fortune, and things to come to pass, by the scituation of Moles on the Face, or other parts of the Body.

Physnomists, is the telling of Fortune by the Line in the Forehead. A contraction from **Physiognomy.**

Hieroglyphica, a pretence or vain curiosity of predicting things by the foldings or wrinkles in the hand, or Engraving or Drawing in Pictures before hand, Emblems of things that shall come afterwards to pass.

Dreamer, or **Dreams**, is a foretelling of things by Dreams, an **Interpreter** of the signification of Dreams, and what events will follow.

Astronomy, and **Astronomer**, is the Art of, and the foreteller of things done and past, and what shall happen to any person; a **Prediction** from Birth and Nativities, by the ruling of the Planets, when such and such things happened.

Cabalistical, or **Pythagorean**, or **Apollonian Invention** of numbers, by which the future event of things are and may be predicted.

Astrology, the Science of telling of things through the motion of the Stars and Planets; an **Astrologician**, **Astrologier**.

Constellator, and **Constellation**, is the teller, and the Art of telling of Fortune by Nativities; as whether the party born under such and such Constellations, shall have Health or Diseases, live long or die shortly; also what fortune or misfortune doth attend him, *&c.*

Auspicium, or **Soothsaying**, is the telling of good and bad Fortune by the flying of Birds.

Augury, is divination or Fortune telling by their Singing or Chirping or Crowing.

Aruspicana, is a kind of **Southsaying**, from the things that happen at Sacrifices, and by the things on the Altar.

Extispicium, a foretelling of the event of things, by the inspection of the intrails of Beasts Sacrificed.

Sortilegium or **Lottery**, is a telling of Fortune by casting of Lots or Dice, a Lottery or Fortune by Lots.

Oracles, are the telling of things to come, out of the mouth of dumb Images and Idols, by help of the Devil and Idolatrous Priests.

Magick, **Witchcraft**, **Inchanting**, **Conjuration**, is the doing or telling of the Fortune, and transforming the Body by the help of the Devil and Evil Spirits.

Prophecy, is the telling of things to come through the Gift of God, and **Inspiration** of his Spirit.

Tripudium, is a kind of conjecturing of things by Crums cast to Chicken in a Coop or Pen, which by their eating or not, they make their observation of good or bad luck: These are called also **Auspicium coactum**, or **Pullarius**, or **Tripudum Solistivum**.

Capnomantis, or **Smoak Augurers**, such as conjectured from the Flame and Smoak of the Altar, whether it rolled or tumbled in the Air, or continued long, which were unfortunate tokens, as the contrary were good. These kind of Augurers were called **Capnomentes**.

Hydromantia, is a Divination by Water, which is by calling of Spirits to appear in the Water.

Urim and **Thummim**, it was a Jewish kind of Revelation, by which God oft shewed the event of things; some write that they were two Ornaments in the High Priests Breast plate, but of what manner, or how they gave Answer is hard to resolve, *Exod.* 28. 30. 1 *Sam.* 28. 6.

Ephod, and **Teraphim**, were things also, by which the Jews and other Idolatrous People, as from an Oracle, sometimes received Answers to what was proposed Of these you may read *Judg.* 17. 5, and 18. 5. 6. 1 Sam. 30. 7, 8. *Zech.* 10. 2.

Observer of Times, one that distinguisheth Times and Seasons, saying such a day is good, such a day is nought, such an hour, such a week, such a month, such a year is lucky, such is unlucky for such and such businesses.

Inchanter, **Sorcery**, is a bewitching the senses and minds of Men, by changing the form of things, making them appear otherwise than indeed they are; these were such as resisted *Moses*, *Exod.* 7. 11.

Charmers, is a muttering, soft speaking, or writing of some Spell or Charm, that shall either suffer such and such a thing to be done, or not be done; as one by speaking some Words in a strange Language or otherwise, shall cure the Ague.

Witchcraft, or **consulter with Devils**, or **Familiar Spirits**, as Witches and Wizards do, or being possessed by such Evil Spirits, have them speak out of their Bellies, as out of a Bottle; such a Diviner was the Damsel, *Act.* 16. 16. as is thought by St. *Augustin*, and most Expositors.

Necromancy, is such Divination, as to consult with the Devil and Satan in the shape of a dead Man or Woman, as the Witch of *Endor*, who raised the Devil in the likeness of *Samuel*, to tell *Saul* the event of the ensuing Battel. 1 *Sam.* 28. 7. 8. *&c.*

Consulters by Staves, Rods, or Arrows, this is a doing of a thing by Lots; or else by measuring a Staff by the Thumb breadth, saying I will do so, and I will not do so, and as the last Thumb breadth falls out, so he determineth.

Visions or **Apparitions**, this is an extraordinary way by which things have been revealed, and made known to us, as by good Angels from God, and evil Angels also as Tempters, of which see the Scripture, *Exod.* 3. 2. *Josh.* 5. 13. 14. *Mat.* 4. 1. 3. and 2 *Maccab.* 3. 25. 33.

Voices or **Ecchoes**, by it is meant a Voice from Heaven, declaring the Will of God, this took place in the giving of the Law, *Exod.* 20 4. and took place in the second Temple, 2 *Macab.* 2. 21. *Mat.* 3. 17. when Visions and Inspirations were not.

Inspirations of the Holy Ghost, whereby the persons were enabled to Prophesy, and to speak with unknown Tongues, and Interpret, *Act.* 2. 3. 4.

Aeromantia, is a Divination, or telling of Fortune by the Air.

Aleuromantia, is a Divination by Corn, as Barley and Wheat mixed together.

Gastromantia, is a Divination sounding out of the Belly; the Devil speaking in a person possessed.

Oscinum, a South-saying by Singing, or Singing Birds.

Alectryomantia, Divination by the Crowing of a Cock, or from a Cock Stone, or a Stone found in the Maw or Gizard of a Cock, of the bigness of a Bean, and in colour like Christal.

Geomantia, is a kind of Fortune telling, by making of circles or pricks on Paper, or on the Earth, and so by their numbers conjecture the event of things, which is Englished **Geomancy**, *viz.* a Sorcerer, Enchanter, a Conjurer or Diviner by Pricks.

Pyromantia, is a Divination by Fire.

Aromantis,

Uromantis, is one that can divine somthing from the sight of Urines, a Urine Gaser, a Caster of Waters.

Prognosis, or **Signa Prognostica**; are signs and tokens in a patient whereby it is known what will become of him, whether for life or death. **Prophasis** is also a fore knowledg of Diseases, and in Diseases by antecedent and succeeding causes, to fore-tell the Event of things and what will undoubtedly happen to the sick party.

Terms of Art used by Anatamists, concerning the several Parts of the Body.

Alphebetically.

Anatomist, is one that dissects, and cut up dead Bodies, to make observations upon the several parts thereof.

Anatomy, is the Sceleton or Bones of a dead Body: the *Carkas*.

Anastomosis of the Veins, and **Arteries**; is the communitie, and fellowship between the *Veins*, and *Arteries*.

Anastentia, and **Additamenta**; see **Epiphisis**.

Aneurisma, is the *Delation*, or *Section* of an Artery in the external parts. The openning of the Arterie.

Auriety, unquietness, trouble, and painful tumblings, and tossing.

Appetite, a desire of Meat.

Action of the Stomach, is the *Coction* of the Meat therein, by melting and dissolving it into *Chyle*.

Apothedon, is a fraction, or breaking of a Bone all to *Shivers*.

Apophysis, is a bone standing out, or *Processes*, and *Knots* in bones.

Apophyades, are certain things hanging to the interials, or other parts, as Warts, Lobs *&c.*

Appendix, is an addition to a thing: a *Dependences*.

Aphorisme, a definition, a determination, the general rules of *Physick*, or *Physitians*.

Attract, or drawn unto.

Arterial Blood, the blood of the *Arteries*.

Aucio, is a *Nutrition*, whereby more soundness is restored then was lost by any disease or distemper.

Analysis, is the reduction of a Body into its first principle; also it is an Anatomical demonstration of the parts of Mans body, insisting upon the parts severally.

Mogginus, is one that hath both Man and Womans Members: also one that hath had his Members cut out.

Antagonista, is the opposite situation of Muscles, as between the *Adductor*, and the *Abductor*; that which contracts and expands any Member.

Apigma, is the thrusting of a bone, or other part out of its proper place.

Apanthismus, is the obliteration of a part of the body, that it cannot afterwards be found.

Apocope, is the cutting off of a part of the Body.

Apostrma, is the shaving away of the Skin, or Bone.

Artus, are Members growing to Cavities in the Body, and distinguished by joynts.

Atlas, is the first *Vertebre* under the head; so called because it seems to hold up the head.

Atomus, an **Atome**; is a Body so small, that it is not capable of being divided into lesser parts.

Atra bilis, is a *Sulphureous*, and *Saline*, earthly and black Blood which is bread in the Body, and gathered in the Spleen.

Blood, a red liquor, running in the *Veins*, and *Arteries*: see *Sanguis*.

Blood Congealled, is when the Blood is thick, and caked.

Buboes, or swelling, or other *Tumors*: which are not malignant.

Bosomes, or **Cavities**; are hollow places in bones.

Belenoides, is the process or shooting forth of a Bone, called **Aliformis**, made like a wing,, which is fixed in the basis of the *Scull*.

Bicipchnion, is natural heat which is communicated from the parent to the *Fœtus*, or Child in the Womb: but when it is brought forth the heat gradually decays, after the Blood and Spirit of the Child is altered by nourishment and nitrous Air.

Bienna, is a thick *Snot*, or corrupt humor which distills through the little hole of the **Pallat**, and **Nostrills**.

Bothor, are little Pimples in the Face which do not spread, but are easily suppurated and vanish. It is a general appalation for *Pimples* in any part of the Body.

Bregma, or **Pregma**; is the bone of the Fore-head.

Bucca, is the inferiour *Lax* part of the Face, which may be puft up: as in Trumpeters Cheeks.

Buccula, is the fleshy part under the *Chin*.

Concavons, made hollow, a hollow place.

Corrugated, wrinkled, made, unequal, or uneven.

Convex, or **Gibbous**, **Hollowness**, bending down on each side.

Concur, **Concurrence**; an agreement, a running together.

Condensed Humor, is a thick, or clammy, and dryed Humor.

Concretion, a congealing, waxing hard: growing together.

Congestion, is a heaping, or gathering together.

Compression, a pressing, or weighing down.

Contraction, a drawing or shutting up of a part. Drawn together.

Coarctation, is the shuting up of the *Stomach* after Meat.

Coctio, or **Concoctio**, is the *Disgestion* of the Meat in the *Stomach*.

Chyle, is the melted, and dissolved Meat, being turned into a substance like *Cream*, through the heat of the *Stomach*.

Cavitie, is any hollow place in the *Bones*, or *Holes* in the Body, or void, and empty place in the parts of the Body.

Cronical Diseases, are such as proceed from *Defluctions*.

Constitution, is the complexion, or temperament of the Body.

Conner, knit or joyned together.

Con-

Connection, sticking, or joyning gast together.

Capacious, large, big, great both for height, and breadth.

Contusio Ictus, a *Contusion*, a beating, or bruising.

Costive, hard bound, not apt, or often to go to the Close-stool.

Convolutions, wrapped together, wound about, compassed.

Callus, is a kind of swelling without plain, like skin contracted by too much labour.

Calva, is the *Scull*, or the upper hairy part of the Head, which either by disease or old age grows bald first. Called also *Calvaria*, or *Calvitium*.

Canales, are passages by which the Juices of the Body flow: as those that serve for the spittle, the Bile *&c.*

Canaliculus Arteriosus, is a vessel between the Arterious Veins of the *Lungs* and the great Artery in *Fœtus's* or new born Children: which is obliterated in *Adult* persons.

Canities, is an *Hoaryness* in the Head before the time.

Caries, is the corrupsion of a bone, through vitious humor, or bruise, or from some other cause.

Caro, Flesh, is a *Fibrous*, bloody, soft, thick similar part, which besides the bones, and that which covers the **Spermaticks** it is fivefold. 1. **Musculous, Fistulosus**, or **Fibrous**, as in the Muscles. 2. **Parenchymous**, as in Intrails, as Heart, Lungs, Liver, Spleen, *&c.* 3. **Ulcerous**, as in the Guts and Puddings. 4. **Glandulous**, as in the Pancreas, Sweet-breeds and carnels of the Breast. 5 **Spurious**, as those for spitting and avacuations, as the Gums, Lips, Nut, of the Yard, *&c.*

Catamenia, Womens courses or Monthly terms.

Catagma, is a breaking of Bones, or separation of the *Continuum* in the hard parts of the Body.

Cauledon, is the breaking of Bones a cross, when they are so seperated that they will not be laid direct.

Cartilago, is a white part, dryer and harder then a *Ligament*, and softer then a *Bone*. It is taken of some to be *Similar*, and *Spermatick*.

Caruncula Myrtiformes, are the wrinklings of the *Orifice* of a Womans *Vagina*, or *Membranous* inequalities; which in Women with Child, and after Childbirth are obliterated and inperceivable.

Catascheſis, is a good state of Body, opposite to an *Hetick*.

Catatasis, is an extention of the Body towards the lower parts.

Cavitates majores, are the greatest *Cavities* in the Body, wherein some principal part is contained, as the *Brains* in the Head; in the *Chest* or *Breast*, the Lungs, Heart, *&c.* In the *Abdomen*, the Live, Spleen, Reins, Stomach, *&c.* so that the three great Cavities are the Head, the Breast, and the Belly.

Cavitates minores, are the *Ventricles* of the Heart, and Brain.

Cellula Intestini Coli; the little Cavities of the Gut *Colon*, where the Excrements lodge some while, and then are *Ejected*.

Ceneangia, is an evacuation of the Blood vessels, by opening a Vein.

Centrum, is the middle of the Body, not Mathematically, but Phisically; and that they say is the Heart, from which as from a Center, the Blood continually *Circulates* round the most distant parts of the Body.

Cerumina, Ear wax, or the sweat and filth of the Ears, it is good to hinder Dust, Motes or little Animals from getting into the Ears.

Chyrurgia, Chyrurgery; it is an Art wherein by the help of our hands and instruments, is endeavoured the cure of hurts and diseases of the Body. It is a part of the Art *Theraputicus*, wherein diseases are cured by incision, burning and seting of joynts; it is a fivefold Art. 1. **Synthesis**, a setting together of things separate. 2. **Diaresis**, a separation of things that were continued before. 3. **Diorthosis**, a correcting of things contorted and squeed together. 4. **Exeresis**, a taking away of superfluities. 5. **Anapleroſis**, a restoring of that which was deficient.

Chyrurgas, a Chyrurgeon, one skilful in Anatomy, and Chyrurgery.

Choana, is a sort of *Cavitie* or *Tunnel* in the Basis of the Brain.

Choledochus, or **Ductus Bilarius**, or passage of the *Bile* or *Gall*; it is called *Common*: It is that wherein the Gall from its Bladder and the Liver is carried to the Gut *Duodenum*.

Chromatismus, is the natural colour or tincture, as of *Urine*, *Spittle*, *Blood*, and *Excrements*.

Chylificatio, is a natural action which makes *Chyle*.

Cicatrix, is a scar or mark left after great wounds or Ulcers: some are *Simple*, others accompanied with a *Cavitie*, *Diminutions*, or *Excrescence* in the part affected.

Circulatio Sanguinis, is a continued *Circulation* of the Blood through the Body, like the ebbing and flowing of the Sea.

Clitoris, is a part in a Woman resembling the Yard of a Man; its use is for *Titillation* it hath a *Nut*, and a *Prepuce*, and is capable of *Increase*, and *relaxation*, but is not *Perforated*. as in Men.

Colon, is the second of the great Guts.

Coarticulation, is a growing of bones together, so as to form a joynt, yet have no motion in them.

Condyloma, is the kniting or joyning of bones.

Condyle, are the joynts or knuckles, of the fingers, when thicker there, then in other place.

Corpus, the Body, is the whole frame of Man, with all its *Limbs*, and *Members*, whether alive or dead.

Crisima, are signs by which one may discern or judge of a matter.

Cruor, is the Blood in the *Veins*, **Sanguis** being the Blood in the *Arteries*, as some distinguish them.

Cutis, is the skin in a living Man; but *Pellis* is the skin being flead off.

Cyllum, a Leg put out of joynt outwardly.

Dissipation, a scattering a wasting of the *Spirits*.

Disgestion, is the disolving of the Meat in the Stomach.

Dilatation, is the stretching, or widening of any part.

Dislocatio, or **Dislocation**, is any bones out of joynt; or romoved out of its place.

Dissection,

Dentition, is the collecting, and ordering the Bones, in Sickness.

Dimensions of the Body, its magnitude, or bigness.

Diaulion, a pulling in peeces, or asunder, a dividing.

Diastole, is the *Dilatation*, or widening of the motion of the Heart, when it takes the blood into it.

Deprivation, a hinderance, a keeping back, with privation of a thing.

Deflurions, is the falling down of *Humors* into any part lower, a flowing down of humors, a *Loosness*.

Debilitated, made weak, *Disenabled* to perform an action.

Distorsion, or Wrenching a Member.

Deligatio, is a part of Chyrurgery, that concerns the binding up of *Wounds*, and *broken Bones*, &c.

Dejectio, is an evacuation of the Excrements by the *Peristaltick* motion of the *Guts*.

Defficatio, is an evaporation of superfluous moistures by heat.

Diapedesis, is an eruption of blood.

Diaphanum, is that which is transparent, as the Eye.

Diarthrosis, is a good constitution of the Bones, whereby they move easily and strongly.

Dicrotus, is a Pulse that beats twice.

Digestio, is digestion of meat in the Stomach.

Dispositio, is an habit whereby we are well or ill disposed to do an action.

Dissimulares partes, dissimular parts, are such as can be divided one from another into different parts, as the hand into Veins, Muscles, Bones.

Distentio, is when parts are puffed up, *Dilated* or *Relaxed* by any thing, as the Guts by wind.

Distopia, is when parts are ill placed, or ill figured.

Districhealis, is a double row of hair on the Eyelids.

Ductus, are little passages or *Channels*, which arise in one part of the Body or Intrels, and run to another, of which there are these principally. **Ductus Pancreaticus**, channel, which run from the Sweet-breads to the Guts. **Ductus Roriferus** or **Chyliferus**, which convey the Chyle and Lympha from the lower parts to the Heart. **Ductus Bilarius**, or **Porus Bilarius**, or **Hepaticus**, the passage of the Gall from the Liver to the Gut **Duodenum**. **Ductus Salivares**, passage for the Spittle. **Ductus Umbelicalis**, or **Intestinum**, or **Laqueus**, the Navel string, by which passage a *Fætus* is nourished in the Womb, *&c.*

Dodecadactilum, is the first of the small Guts, beginning at the Pylorus of the Stomach and end at the Gut *Jejunum*.

Dyscrasia, is an unequal mixture of Elements in the Blood, or *Nervous Juice*.

Dysodes, is any thing that smells ill, as *Excrements*.

Dystocia, is a difficulty of bringing forth, or a preternatural birth: as when the Child comes forth obliquely, transverse, or with its Feet foremost, or being very large, weak, fat, or dead: or when the passages are straitned by inflamation or otherwise.

Excretion, of **Excrements** of the Body, is any *Superfluous* thing which proceeds from, or is cast out of the Body, as *Choller*ick, and *Wheyish humors*, *Blood*, *Water*, &c. *Dung*.

Epiphora, the droping of the Eyes, by reason of *Rhume*.

Epipius, and *Appendance*, or addition to a Bone.

Epiphysis, an appendance, or addition to a bone, or one bone that grows to another, or in the *Cavities* of another, but without any *Motion* in them.

Enata, the end, or *Extremitie* of a bone, the round head of a *Bone*.

External parts, the outward, and visible part of the Body.

Exolution, a slackness or loosness of a part, or Member.

Evacuation, **Evacuated**; cast out, purged from.

Expulsion, expel, or drive away.

Eradication, a destroying, or pulling up.

Expiration, is the puting out of the air, or breath.

Extension, stretching, or drawing out, pulling a Member.

Excavated, hollowed, made like a cave.

Ebullition, or boyling of any part.

Ecphisis, is a process that coheres to a Bone.

Ecphisesis, is a breathing thick and short.

Ecrithmus, is a Pulse which observes no method, or number incident to any age.

Embryotomia, is an *Anatomical dissection* of a *Fætus* or Child.

Empneumatosis, is an alternate dilatation or motion of the Chest, Lungs and Belly.

Emunctoria, are cavities into which something is emptied, as the Pituitous humours of the Brain into the Nostrils; Ear-wax into the Ears, Excrements into the Bowels, and Urine into the Bladder.

Encheiresis Anatomica, is a readiness in dissection; when an Anatomist shews the parts of a Carcase dexteriously.

Encope, is an incision of any part, as in a Gangreen.

Engonios, is the bending of the Arm or Leg.

Entera, are long Membraceous winding Pipes or Guts annexed to the *Mesenterie*; that they be not confounded one with another: and they are six, the Gut *Duodenum*, *Jejunum*, *Ileum*, *Cæcum*, *Colon*, and *Rectum*; the three uppermost are called small Guts, the lower, great Guts.

Enterocele, or **Hernia Intestinalis**; is the fall of the Intestines, especially of the *Ileum* through the *Peritoneum* dilated, into the Groins or Skin that covers the Cods.

Ephelis, are dewy spots, or freckles in the Face, which proceeds from Sun burning.

Epididymus or **Paristata**, or **Supergeminalis**; it is a winding vessel, fixed to the back of the *Testicles*, about five ells long.

Epision, or **Aqualiculus**, is the place of the secret parts, or lowest part of the Belly.

Evacuatio, **Evacuation**, is either in blood when it abounds too much, where opening a Vein is requisite, or ill humors, which are drawn away by purging or Vomiting.

Euchroa, is a good colour, and temper of the skin.
Euchymia, is an excellent temper of the blood.
Eucrasia, is an excellent temper and constitution of the Body.
Exodes, is a sweet smell in Excrements.
Eupnoea, is a right natural respiration or breathing.
Eurythmus, is an excellent natural Pulse.
Euscarcus, is one that is well fleshed.
Excramanta, Excrements; are whatsoever is cast out of the Body after digestion and concoction, as Spittle, Snot, Milk, Bile, Sweat, Ear-wax, Dung, and Urine.
Exercitium, is motion or exercise whereby the Body is agitated in order to health.
Exomphalos, is a protuberance of the Navel common to Infants.
Exophthalmia, is a protuberance of the Eye, out of its natural place.
Expiratio, is an expiration or breathing in and out.
Exterpatio, is the cutting off of a part, by reason of a Canker or blasting.
Exeresinus, is a bringing of the Bones from the surface downwards.
Exostosis, is a protuberance of the Bones out of their natural place.
Eruvia, a dead Body, a stinking Carcase, a thing cast away or forsaken.

Fracture of a bone, is a division of a bone, made by some *External cause*, as *Cuting*, *Breaking*, *Bruising* of the same.
Flagginess, a loose hanging down.
Fluring, is anointing the Body with *Quick-Silver*.
Faculty, the nature disposition, power; promptness to do a thing.
Ferment, is the retaining the seed in the *Womb* thereby to proceed to conception, a borrowed word from the use of Leavened Meal.
Fuliginous Vapours, sootie smoakie, black Vapours.
Flux, and **reflux**; is a flowing, and returning again.
Fungous, or **Fungus**, or spungy substance.
Fluxions, the runnings of a sore: loosings of the Belly.
Flegmatism, Flegmatick, flemish, full of Flegm.
Fissura Ossis, is a *Fracture* of a Bone longways.
Facies Hyppocratia, is a Face that hath Nostrils sharp, Eyes hollow, Temples low, the Lips of the Ears contracted, and the Lobs inverted, the Skin hard and dry, the complexion pale, livid, Lead colour or black.
Falx, is a doubling of the *Dura Mater* like a *Sickle*, by which the Brain is divided into the right and left *Hemisphere*.
Fasciation, is the binding of swaths about a Limb that is to be cured.
Fodina, is the less *Labyrinth* in the bone of the Ears.

Glutinous humour, is a thick, tough, clammy humor.
Gibbous, round, bunched or bossed.
Gustus, Gustation, a tasting.
Gyratious, turnings about, *Gyre* a turne about.
Gena Mala, is part of the Face from the Nose to the Ears.

Generatio, is a natural action, whereby an Animal begets another like it of the same species, in *Generation* the first thing we see, is a *Red speck*, which is cloathed with a little *Bladder*; next a little *Heart*, whence flow Veins and Arteries, at the extremitie whereof you see a *Viscera*, the Bowels *&c.* afterwards the whole *Fœtus* is formed and cloathed with *Membranes* and *Skin*.
Gynaecomystax, is a tuft of hair at the upper part of a Womans secrets.
Glene, the Cavitie of a bone which receives another into it, it is the same to **Pupilla**.

Hermaphrodites, Monsters in nature such as have the Privities both of Man, and Women: called also *Will Gills*.
Humidities, moistures, wateristnes.
Habitus, or **Hexis**; is a habitude or habit of the Body, is ment all the internal parts thereof, into which either *Veins*, *Arteries*, or *Nerves* run.
Halo, is a red spot in the flesh that surrounds each *Nipple* in the Breast.
Hemeralopia, or **Acies Nocturana**; is when one sees better in the Night than in the Day.
Hydroa, are Pimples or excrescences about the Privy parts.
Humidum Primogenium, may be properly called the *Blood*, which is seen in *Generation* before any thing else.
Humores, Humours, of which there are four in the Blood, the **Bilious**, or *Gallick humor*; the **Pituitus**, or *Phlegmatick humor*; the **Melancholicous**, or *Melancholick humor*; and the **Sanguinous**, or *Bloody humor*.
Hymen is a Membrane, it is taken for the Privy Membrane of a Virgin, in the lower part of the *Vagina*.
Hystero-tomotocia, or **Sectio Cesaria**; is a cutting of a Child out of the Womb.
Hysterotomia, is an *Anatomical dissection* of the Womb.

Indigestion, Indigestion, or slow disgestion, is when the Meat eaten, is long before it be cast out of the *Stomach* into the Belly.
Infantes or **Infants**, are the issue (or ofspring of Parents) *Husband*, and *Wife*.
Interner, knit, or tyed between.
Insertion, a puting of things together: adding one thing to another.
Internal part, the inward part of the Body, such as are not seen.
Interexture, a weaving together.
Incisio, Incision, a cutting into the flesh, a *Lancing* the Skin, or Veins, or the like.
Impostumatio, Impostumation, the gathering together of matter, corruption, or noughty humor.
Influx, Influence, a running, or flowing into.
Irradiation, a casting out of light, an enlightning.
Intermediate, having somthing between, or in the middle between; a coming between two.
Inarticulated, joyned, or set together.
Inspection, the looking into a part, or thing.
Ile, is the Cavity from the *Thorax* to the bones of the Thighs: some hold that the Intestines in all Animals, except

a Man and a Sheep are called *Ile.*

Ilia, are the lower parts between the *Abdomen* or last Rib, and the secret parts.

Infundibulum Renum, is the *Pelvis* or bason through which the Urine passes to the *Ureters*, and the *Bladder*.

Inspiratio, is a breathing, or an *Alternate dilatation* of the Chest.

Isthmus, is that part as lies between the *Mouth*, and *Gullet*: also the *Ridg* that seperates the Nostrils.

Luxatio, or a **Luxation**, or disjoyning; removed out of its place: a displacing of a bone, so as to hinder *Voluntary* motion.

Laceration, a tearing, or pulling asunder; renting.

Laxative, loose in the Belly, purging; apt to go to the close-stool: *Laxity* a loosness, in a *Vacuating* condition.

Lac, Milk, the seed of nourishment, which after the Child is born, drops out of the Dugs, in the form of Milk, or a wheyish matter.

Loches, are Child-bed purgations; which is the squeezing out of that blood, which was shut up in the spongy sides of the Womb.

Labia Leporina, or **Rostra Leporina**; are such Lips as by reason of their ill make, will not come together. *Lagochylus*, Cloven Lips, or *Hare* Lips.

Labyrinthus, Laborinth; a part of the Body which is full of windings and turnings, as may be seen in the inner part of the *Ear*, and the outer surface of the *Brain*..

Lachrymale punctum, is the hole in the bone of the Nose, by which the matter as makes tears passes to the *Nostrils*.

Lachrymae, are tears, or a moisture which moistens the Eyes.

Lacuna, are little pores in the Pores or passages in the *Vagina* of the Womb, through which flows a certain serous *Pituitous matter*, which flows out in the act of *Coitus*.

Lentigines, Freckles or little spots in the Faces of Women, or any other parts exposed to the Sun or Air.

Leno, or **Lenon**, or **Torcular Herophili**; that part of the Brain where the third cavity is joyned to the *Meninx*.

Lepidoides, or **Vendosa Sarura**, or **Squamma**; scaly Sutures of the Scull, as may be seen in the bones of the Temple, and forepart of the Head.

Ligamentum, a Ligament is a solid and *Fibrous* part, proceeding for matter almost like a *Cartilage*, and designed by nature for the *connecting* part, especially bones to perform their motion.

Linea Alba, is a concourse of the *Tendons* of the Muscles of the *Abdomen*, excepting the *Tendons* of the straight ones.

Lithotomus, is a Chyrurgion that is skillful in cutting out the Stone.

Lochia, are those things that are *evacuated* by Women in Child-bed, after the birth of the *Fætus*, and the **Secundinae Vembranes.**

Longanon, or **Intestinum Rectum**, the last Gut.

Lordosis, is the bending of the Back-bone forward.

Morbifick Vater, a matter, or humor that causeth sores, or diseases.

Meanders, turning, and winding in any parts.

Mastication, a chewing.

Macula Epatica, is a spot of brown or of a sad red or yellow on any part, somtimes over the whole Body, which somtimes disappear, and then break out again.

Macula Matricalis, is a red or purple spot in the skin from the *Birth*.

Madarosis, is a baldness of the Head.

Mamma, or **Mammilla**; the Breast Dugs, the inner part of the Breast, the Latins call *Uber*, and *Ubera*, and the outward part *Mamma*.

Mammiformes processus, are two *Apophyses* or risings of the bone on the back part of the Scull.

Marmarygae, are the glistering and *Corruscations* of the Eyes.

Marmorata Aurium, Ear-wax, or a certain excrements of the Ears.

Meatus auditorius, the auditory passage of the Ear, which begins at the Cavity or inner part, and is cloathed with a thick skin to the brim of the *Tympanum*.

Meatus Urinarius, or **Urethra**, or **Fistula**; is the *Urinary* passage whereby both *Urine* and the *Seed* is discharged at the Yard in Man, and in the like manner in Women.

Mediastium, is a doubling of the *Membrane*, of the sides, which divides the Lungs and other *Viscera* of the Breast into two parts.

Medula Cerebi, is a soft substance, covered over on the outside with a barky substance: some assert that it consists of *Innumerable* threds or *Filaments*.

Medula oblongata, is the beginning of the *Spinal Marrow*, whence arise the Nerves of the Scull. It is called also the *common Sensory*, because it is the original of the *Nerves*.

Medulla Ossium, the Marrow in the Bones, it is kept in a thin Membrane, and is *Red* in the greater Cavities of the bones; *White* in the less, and soft and *Succulent* in spungy bones.

Medulla Spinalis, the spinal Marrow, or the tail of the Brain, is that part as goes down the middle of the Back by the *Vertebres*, and is terminated at the *Os Sacrum*.

Membrana, a Membrane, is a *Nervous*, *Fibrous*, broad, plain, white, and *delatable Substance* which covers the Bowels and great Cavities of the Body, *&c.*

Membrana Carnosa, or **Panniculus Carnosus**; is a fat sort of Membrane, in some part thick, in some thin, it covers the whole Body..

Membrana Urinaria, or **Allantois** vel **Allantoides**, is the *Urinary Membrane*, or *Tunic* that received the Urine that comes out of the Bladder, it is round and like a thin soft skin which wrappeth the Child in the Womb.

Membrum, a Member, or part of the Body, designed for *Voluntary Actions*.

Meningophylax, is that which preserves the *Meninx* or *Membrane* of the Head, as thin Gold or Silver Plates, which are applyed when the *Scull* is opened.

Mensa, is the broader part of the Teeth called *Grinders*, which chaw and mince the Meat.

Menses, the courses of Women, are *excretions* of Blood every month from the Womb: and not from its Neck or passage called *Vagina*.

Mesteraeum, or **Mesenterium**, and **Mesaraica Vasa**; is the Membrane of the *Peritoneum* doubled, enriched,

riched with *Glandules*, *Nerves*, *Arteries*, *Veins*, *Chylifatous* and *Lymphatick vessels*: from whence these are called *Mesaraick* and *Mesenterick vessels*.

Mesocolon, is that part of the *Mesentery* that continues to the great Gut.

Metapleurii, are the *Intercostal Muscles*, twenty two on each side, eleven external, as many internal.

Metalepticus, is a *Mitaliptick* or contrary motion of the *Muscles*.

Metaphrenum, is that part of the back which comes after the *Diaphragma*.

Metopum, is the Fore-head.

Microcosmus, Man is called the little World, as a compendium of the greater.

Microphthalmus, is one who hath little Eyes from his birth.

Mola Carnea, is a fleshy, or spungy substance, without Bones or Bowels, preternaturally brought into the World instead of a *Fœtus*.

Mola Patella, or **Rotula**, or **Mola Genu**, is a round and broad Bone at the joynting of the Knee, which of all other Bones is not begirt with a *Membranous Ligament*.

Monocolum, is the Gut *Cecum*.

Mons Veneris, is the upper part of a Womans secrets, sometimes higher then the rest.

Mortariola, are the *Caverns* wherein the Teeth are lodged.

Mucus, or **Mucus**, we call it snot, or a thick, liquid, *Viscous excrement*, which flows from the *Processus Papillares* to the Nostrils and Palat.

Mucro Cordis, or **Apex**; is the lower pointed end of the Heart.

Muliebria, or **Cunnus**; is a Womans Privy parts, consisting of a *Clytoris*, *Nymphæ*, &c.

Muscæ Caput, or **Myocephalum**, is the falling of the *Tunica Uvea*.

Myodes Playsma, is a broad Musculous *Expansion* in the Neck, proceeding from a fat Membrane.

Myologia, is a description of the Muscles.

Myteres, are the Nostrils, or Receptacles of *Pituitous humor* that distills from the Brain.

Mydriasis, is a too great dilatation of the Pupil of the Eyes, which makes the sight dim.

Myelos, is the Marrow of the bones, or of the *Spinal Marrow*.

Myoglossum, a pair of *Muscles* that goe about the grinding Teeth, and fixed to the *Ligament* of the Tongue, and turns the Tongue upwards.

Myops, is one that is purblind; from *Myopia* or *Myopiasis*, a certain dimness of sight in distant objects, and yet a perspicacity in things near at Hand.

Myrmecia, is a sort of *Wart*, they are harder, lower, and take deeper root, and occasion greater pain, than those fleshy tumors called **Thymus**; they breed in the Palms of the Hands or Soles of the Feet, some call them *Corns*.

Myrtum, is a little peece of flesh in a Womans secrets about the cleft, proceeding from a *Corrugation* of the *Vagina*.

Mystax, is the upper lip and the hair upon it, called *Muschatoe*.

Myurus, is a Mutilated *Pulse*, increasing and decreasing gradually.

Myxa, see *Mucus*.

Nervosus, or **Nervous**, like a Nerve, Sinewy: that may be drawn into strings.

Nauseant, loathing, disposed to vomit, inclined to spew.

Nævi, or **Notæ Maternæ**, Moles or certain *Native spots*, some are plain, others *Protuberant*, and differ much in shape and colours.

Nates Cerebri, are two round *Prominences* behind the beds of the *Optick Nerves*.

Nephelæ, are white spots or clouds upon the Eyes, and on the surface of the Nails.

Neurologia, is an elegant description of the Nerves.

Nervus or **Neuron**, a Nerve, it is a fibrous, round, long, white, porous substance. like an *Indian Cane*, they make the Animal spirits moveable and sensible.

Neurotomia, is an Anatomical *Section* of the *Nerves*, and a pricking of them.

Neurotomus, is a dissecter of the *Nerve Anatomically*.

Noctambulus, or **Noctambulo**; is one who walks in his sleep, opens doors and windows and goes over the highest and most dangerous places without perceiving it.

Nucha or **Cervix**, is the hinder part or nape of the Neck.

Nuciositas, see **Myopia**.

Nutrimentum, **Alimentum**, Nutriment or Nourishment, Meat and Drink well digested, which begets blood, and at last is assimilated into the nature of the Body. *Nutrition*, a natural increase and repair of corporal substance, by convenient nourishment.

Nyctalopia, a dimness of sight which is two-fold; the first is a dimness in the Night, or dark place, and no impediment in the light: the other is a dimness in the light, and a clear sight in the Night, or in shades.

Nymphæ, are little peeces of flesh in a Womans secrets; so called because the stand near the Water that comes out of the Bladder.

Nymphotomia, is the cutting off the *Nymphæ*, the too great *Protuberance* whereof hinders Marriage enjoyments, or renders it difficult.

Osteologia, or **Osteology**; it is the History, or way of dissecting, or Anatomizing of Bones: or description of Bones.

Organicus, or **Organical** parts of the Body; is the uniting, and concurring of parts together, that they may perform those various offices in which they act: and so all may be taken for the instrumental parts of the Body, because one helps and assists another, and every movable action belongs truly, and properly to an *Organ part*.

Obstructio, **Obstruction**; is a hindering in the way or passage: *Stoppage*.

Organum, the Organs of the Body, are the *Animal Spirits*, and the *Nerves* by which all actions and motions are performed.

Ocular inspections, is the seeing of a thing with one Eye.

Orifice, the outward hole of a wound; the Mouth, or Lips of a cut, or wound. The Mouth of any thing.

Obelea, is the *Sagittalis Suture* in the Scull.

Ochthodes, are Ulcers whose sides are Callous, or of the nature of Warts but not malignant.

Oculares Dentes, the Eye teeth.

Oculus,

Oculus, the Eye, it is the external Organ of sight.

Odontismus, is an Itching of the Gums, when Children breeds Teeth.

Odontoides, that which is like a Tooth, as the Tooth of the second *Vertebre*, and of other Bones.

Oesophagaeus, or **Sphincter**; is a Muscle that covers the Gullet.

Oesophagus, the Gullet, it is a *Membranaceous* pipe reaching from the Pallat to the *Stomach*. It hath three *Tunicks*, the outmost is *Membranous*, the innermost is *Musculous*, and the third is *Nervous*.

Olecranum, is the great process of the first bone of the Cubite called *Ulva*, also of the upper part of the Shoulder: It is also named **Ancon**.

Omentum, or **Reticulum**; the Cawl, it is a double Membrane spread upon the Intestines, Interwoven with fat and vessels like fishers Net.

Omoplata, or **Homoplata** or **Scapula**, the Shoulder blade, it is a broad triangular Bone, of some termed Spatula, and **Scoptula Aperta.**

Opticus Nervus, or **Visorius**; is the optick Nerve, which carries the visible *Species*, from the Eye to the *Sensory*.

Orchis, is a Testicle, whose substance in Men is a *contexture* of very little vessels, which makes the *Seed*: but the Testicles in Women are *Membranes*, and little fibres which breed *Eggs*, or little white bodies: therefore they are rightly called *Ovaria*, and *Testes*.

Orchotomus, a Gelder, one who takes away Testicles of Animals, that they cannot copulate.

Orgasmus, is an *Impetus* and quick motion of blood and spirits.

Orobodes, are the subsiding or sedements in *Urine*, like to a kind of Pulse called *Vetches*.

Orthocolon, is the preternatural rectitude of a joint.

Os, or **Osteon**, a Bone; is a hard dry and cold substance consisting of Earthy and Saline *Particles*, designed for the upholding of the Body, and to render its *motions* easie.

Osculum Uteri, is the *Cavity* where the *conception* is made, and the Mans Yard enters.

Oviducus; see **Tuba Fallopiana.**

Porositties, holelinesse, full of holes.

Particles, small things of the same substance: several parts.

Preternatural, above, or besides nature, more then nature.

Porey, holely, or full of holes: Porous.

Plethorick Body, a Body sick, (or full) with fulness: a Body full of superfluous humors.

Pathological discourse, is a treating, or speaking of that part of Physick, which concerns causes, and Symptoms of diseases.

Pathology, a discourse of passion.

Perforated, pierced, bored through, an *Hole* made in a part of the Body.

Prolifick, is to afford *Seed*, or have sufficient matter to *beget Children*.

Palpitation, or panting of the Heart, or *Pulse*.

Perspiration, is an *Evacuation* of spirit, or air, by the *Arteries*: which are dispersed into the habit of the Body: by receiving in of air, and *expelling fuliginous Vapours*.

Pulsation, is the action and *motion* of the *Heart*, and *Pulse*, and *Nerves*.

Peri-sistole, is the Pause, or resting time of the Hearts motion, between its *contraction* & *dilatation* of the Blood.

Parulent humor, a corrupt filthy humor, a sore full of corrupt matter.

Pione, or bending.

Palatum, the Pallat, or upper part of the Mouth; the roof of the Mouth.

Palpebrae, are the coverings of the Eyes: they are the upper, or under Eye-lids.

Palpitatio Cordis Naturalis, the natural Palpitation or beating of the Heart.

Pancreas, **Callicreas**, **Pancreon**, and **Lactes**; are all Synonimous terms for the *Sweet-breads*; it is a *Conglomerated Gladule* in the **Abdomen.**

Panniculus Carnosus, is a fat sort of *Membrane*, in some parts thick and *Musculous*, in other parts thin.

Papillae Intestinorum, are little Glandules wherewith the innermost *Tunick* of Intrails are full.

Papilla, is a red *Excrescency* in the middle of the Breast.

Papillarum processus, are the extremities of the *Olfactory Nerves*.

Paristymia, or **Amygdalae**, or **Tonsillae**; are two Glandules tied together by a broad and slender *production*, they have a large *Cavity* opening to the Mouth.

Parotides, are Glandules or *Kernals* behind the Ear.

Pars, a part, is the peece of a whole.

Partus, is the bringing forth, of a *Mature Fætus*, or young Child, in natural births.

Partus Cesarus, is when Children are forced for want of passage to be cut out: called also, *Partus difficilis*, see **Distotia.**

Patella, see **Mola Genu.**

Pathema, is all preternatural *Proturbations*, wherewith our Bodies are disturbed: **Pathos** the same.

Patheticus, is a Nerve of the fourth pair (some say the eight) within the Scull.

Pectus, is the fore-most part of the *Thorax* reaching from the Neck-bone to the *Midriff*.

Pelidnus, is a black and blew colour in the Face, frequent in *Melancholly* Men.

Pelvis, is the place of the bottom of the Belly, wherein the *Bladder* and *Womb* are contained.

Pelvis Aurium, or **Cochlea**, is the *Cavity* of the inner part of the *Ear*.

Pelvis Cerebri, or **Choana**; is the Cavity or Tunnel in the *Basis* of the *Brain*: by which its *Excrements* are *Evacuated*.

Penis Muliebris, see **Clytoris.**

Peptis, is the *Concoction* and *Fermentation* of Humors and Meat, in a Mans natural constitution.

Pericardium, is a Membrane that surrounds the Heart, and contains a liquor in it to *Refrigarate* the Heart.

Periodus Sanguinis, see **Circulatio.**

Periosteum, is a Membrane that incloses all the bones, except some few.

Peripheria, is the *Circumference* of the Body, or any *Entrail* thereof.

Peritoneum, is a Membrane that covers the inside of the *Abdomen*, and the out side of all its *Intrails*: it consists of two *Tunicks*.

Perona

Perona, or **Fibula**, is the outer, less or slender Bone in the Leg; whence the first & second Muscles of the Leg are called *Peroneus*.

Pili, the hair, are round, oblong, slender, hollow Bodies, and of a different colours according to the difference of the Constitutions. They grow out of the Pores of the skin, and have several terms or names according to the places of the Body they grow in.

Pneumatodes, is a short breathing.

Pneumatosis, is the *Generation* of *Animal Spirits*, which is performed by the *Brain*.

Pollinctor, or *Pollictor*, an Embalmer or an Anointer of dead Bodies.

Pollutio Nocturna, is an *Involuntary Pollution* in the Night, caused by Lecherous Dreams.

Politea Vena, a double *Crural Vein*, down the Back of the Leg to the Heel.

Pori, Pores, are little unperceivable holes in the skin, through which heat comes and hair grows.

Praecordia, are all the Intrails in the *Chest*, and *Thorax*.

Proparantia Vassa, preparing vessels, that go to the *Testicles* and *Epididymes* to prepare the seed.

Presbytia, a dimness of sight in things near, and tolerably well things at a distance: usual with old Men.

Priapismus, is a continual erection of the Yard without lust. And the Yard it self.

Primores Dentes, the Fore-teeth, by which we bite, and which we shew in laughing.

Procidentia Ani, is the falling of the *Gut Rectum*, by reason of its loosness.

Procidentia Uteri, is a *Relaxing* of the *inner Tunick* of the *Vagina* of the Womb, which falls through the privities.

Prolabia, the outward prominent parts of the Lips.

Prosphysis, is a *Coalition*, as growing together, as when two Fingers are *Connected* to each other.

Phacia, or *Phacos*, a spot in the Face like a *Nite*, called also **Lenticula** and **Lentigo**.

Phevomena, are preternatural appearances in the Body, any thing above nature.

Phalacrosis, is a falling off of the hair.

Phalangosis, is a fault in the Eye-lids when they are *double Haired*.

Phalanx, is the order and rank observed in the Finger bones.

Pharingetrum, is somtimes used for *Pharinx*, somtimes for *Os Hyodes*.

Pharinx, the upper part of the *Gullet*, consisting of three pair of *Muscles*.

Philtrum, is the hollow dividing the upper Lip.

Phlegma, is a *slimy Excrements* of the Blood.

Physiognomia, is the Art of knowing Natures by the Face.

Pinguedo, or **Adeps**, Fat, is a similar part to flesh and blood, yet white, soft, insensible, apt to preserve natural heat, and nourish the Body in time of need. The **round Adeps** flows from the blood, & is thicker, harder, and more firm substance. The **fat Pinguedo** be the quite contrary.

Placenta Uterina, is a red substance like the Liver, full of *Glandulous Kernals*, and outwardly stick to the Womb.

[]

Pleura, is a Membrane that incloses the Breast and its *Intrails*.

Plexus Choroydes, is a texture of small *Arteries* in the Brain like a Net. **Reticularis**.

Polytarcia, is corpulency or Fatness of Body.

Pomum Adami, is a protuberance in the fore-side of the Throat, so called, being thought a peece of the Apple stuck in his Throat as part of his punishment, and hence derived to his posterity.

Pozomphalus, is a brawny peece of flesh or a *Stone protuberant* in the *Navel*.

Porus, **Biliarius**, or **Hepaticus**, is a Channel that transmits the *Chyle* from the Liver, by the common passage to the Gut *Duodenum*.

Praesepia, the holes in either Jaw, wherein are contained the Teeth.

Prostethis, is the fore-side of the Breast, also the fleshy part in the Feet and Hands, and between the Fingers.

Prostesis, a part of Surgery which fills up what is wanting in the Flesh made by *Wounds* and *Ulcers*.

Pretuberantia, see **Apophysis**: is any thing in the Body or on Bones, and continues there, making the place (or stretching it self) beyond a plain surface. It is also called *Probole*, *Processus*, *Productio*, *Projectura*, *Ecphysis*.

Psoas, are Muscles of the Loyns which proceed from the *Vertebres* of the *Thorax*.

Psydraces, are little *Pimples* in the flesh by reason of cold Winter.

Pterygium, the Wing or round rising of the Nose or Eye: the *Process* of the Bone **Sphenoides**, also a *Membranous excrescence* above the *Tunick* of the Eye, called **Unguis**, or **Ungula**; also the **Nymphae** of a Womans secret parts.

Pterygoides, are the Process and Muscles of the *Wing-like* bone.

Ptylosis, when the lids grow thick, the hair of the Eye-brow falls off.

Ptyalon, or *Ptysma*, is Spit, or that matter which is brought up from the Lungs by coughing.

Pulmones, the Lungs, or *Organs* of *Respiration*.

Pulsus, the Pulse, or the immediate *Index* of the *Heart*, and tells the state and condition thereof, whither natural or preternatural, by it beating either *Strong*, *Weak*, *Swift*, *Slow*, *Equal*, *Unequal Intermittent*, &c.

Punctum Saliens, the growth of an *Egg*, first from a little *Speck*, called **Amnios**, grows a slimy matter, wherein is a speck that seems to leap (called *Punctum Saliens*) which after comes to an **Embryo**, just like a **Magot**, which tends every day to perfection.

Pupilla, or *Pupula*, is the opening of the *Tunick* of the Eye, called, **Uvea**.

Pustula, Pimples, they are the recrements of ill blood that shoot forth in the skin: of some termed *Pus*, and *Pyon*.

Pylorus, or **Janitor**, is the right *Orifice* of the *Ventricle* that sends the meat out of the Stomach.

Pyramideles Musculus, Muscles placed in the *Abdomen*, and lies upon the lower *Tendon* of the right Muscle.

Pira-

Pramudella, Vessels which prepare the seed for *Coition*.

Pyris, or **Acetabulum**, is the Cavity of the *Hip-bone*.

Quittor, a Whitish Whey like Humor, bred in the Bones.

Qualitas, Quality is a Disposition, or Contexture of little Particles, from whence our Bodies may be any way denominated of such a Quality.

Retentio, or Retentive, is to hold and keep fast. as the *Retentive facultie* of the *Veine*, is to hold the *Blood*: or the *Stomach*, *Meate*.

Reduplicated, Doubled againe, Foulded many tyms

Ruddyness, is the Redness of the Cheeks, or Face.

Rhumatisme, Rumes, or like Waterish rhumes, as causeth diseases and Infirmities.

Retractio, or a Retraction of Rhumes, is a drawing back of Rhumes.

Repletio, a filling, or fullness of any hollow Cavity.

Recurved, Recurverated: bowed, made Crooked.

Rabdoides, see **Sagitalis Suture.**

Rachitae, or **Rachiaei**, are Muscles belonging to the Back.

Rebavia, a light Cleft or Chap in the skin at the Root of the Nail.

Relaratio, a dilatation of parts or vessels, or a loosness or want of shuting the Stomach after eating of Meat, which hinders disgestion.

Respiratio, is a breathing, which is an alternate *dilatation* and *contraction* of the Chest.

Renes the Reins, or Kidneys.

Res Naturales, natural things are three, *Health*, the *Causes* of it, and the *Effects*. Others reckon seven, as the *Elements*, *Temperaments*, *Humors*, *Spirits*, *Parts*, *Faculties*, *Actions*.

Res non Naturalis, things that are not Natural, are six: *Air*, *Meat*, and *Drink*, *Motion*, and *Rest*, *Sleep*, and *Waking*, the *Affections* of the mind, things let *out off* and things *retained* in the Body; they are so called, because that if they exceed their due bound, they often occasion diseases.

Res pæter Naturam, things besids Nature, are *Diseases*, their *Causes*, their *Symptoms* and *Effects*.

Rete mirabile, the wonderful net in the Brain, is so called by reason of its admirable *Structure*.

Retiformis Tunica, is a certain *Expansion* of the inper substance of the *optick Nerve* in the Eye. Called also **Retina Tunica**, and **Amphiblestroides.**

Rhachitis or **Medulla Spinalis**; Spinal Marrow.

Rhagades, or **Scissura**, or **Fissura**, and **Rima**; is a chink, cleft, or chone, which often happen in the Hands, Feet, Lips and other parts of the Body.

Rhegma, is the breaking or bursting of any part, as of a Bone, the Rine of the Belly, or the Eye. Called also **Rheris.**

Rhomboides, a pair of Muscles proceeding from the three lowermost *Vertebres* of the Neck.

Rhythidosis, is a wrinkling of any part in the Body.

Rima pudendi, or **Fissura magna**, what it is you may know from its use, which is *Generatio*, *Excretion* of Urine, and bearing of Children, which by frequent *Coition* grows larger.

Ros, is the moisture of Bodies, whereby the parts are nourished, being contained in all places like a dew sprinkled on them.

Rotator major, and **minor**, are two *Protuberances* in the upper part of the Thigh bone called also **Trichanteres**, in which the *Tendons* of many Muscles are terminated.

Ructus, Ructatio, or **Bombus**, a Belching, which is a depraved motion of the Stomach.

Rugitus, is an *Effervescence* of *Chyle* and *Excrements* in the Blood.

Ryas, is a too plentiful and preternatural falling of *Tears*.

Sapour, the tast of things, *Savour*, the Sense of *tasting*.

Stimulated, moved, or stirred up.

Suffusio, a Suffusion, a spreading abroad, or powering upon; also a *Pin* or *Web*, covering the sight of the Eye.

Sudation of Blood, is bloody Sweats, a *Sweating* of *Blood*.

Spitting, and **Spawling**, or **Salivation**; is a superfluous humor, proceeding from the *Brain*, and falling into the *Stomach* causeth *Spawling* and *Spitting*.

Sterilis, or **Sterility**, Barrenness, unfruitfulness.

Structur, the manner, or form; frame or order, the building.

Symptoms, are sign, and tokens of a thing.

Superfluities of humors, an overflow, or abundance thereof.

Speculation, a seeing into a thing.

Sympathy, and **Sympathise**, an agreement in passion, whose nature agrees with another.

Serosity, a wheyishness, or Whey like Choler, which being shed into the habit of the Body, makes the Face look pale.

Sanguification, a making, or renewing, or purging the Blood.

Suppuration, a gathering of matter, or an Impostume.

Separation, a severing, parting, putting asunder.

Subluxation, is an unperfect *disjoyning* of a joynt, as when the bone is removed, or lengthned; yet out of the *Socket*.

Sacculus, Chyliferus, or **Roriferus**, is the lower part of the passage of the *Chyle*.

Sacculus Cordis, see **Pericardium.**

Sacrum Os, the holy Bone, consisting of the six lower *Vertebres*.

Saliva or **Salivum**, spittle, an insipid liquor that moistens the Mouth and Gullet.

Salvatella, a Vein that terminates in the little Finger.

Sanguis, Blood, is a *Red Florid Liquor* contained in the *Veins* and *Arteries*; it is that which gives nourishment, life and strength to all the parts of the Body.

Satyriasis, or **Priapismus**, is an immoderate desire of venery, which upon *Coition* vanishes.

Scalenum, those Muscles which extend the Neck.

Scarificatio, a Scarification or an *Incision* made into the skin with a Lancet or Penknife.

Sceletum, a Skeleton, is when the Bones are dried and put together according to Art in their natural order and position.

Schesis, is the disposition of the Body.

Schirrhus, is a callus in any part of the Body, either hard or soft.

Scoliasis, is a *Distortion* of the Back-bone to one or the other side.

Scobiculus Cordis, or **Anticardium**, is a Cavity of the Breast above the Region or place of the Heart. *Hollow Chested.*

Scotum, the Cod or Bag which contains the *Testicles* of the Male kind: in the middle is a line extended in the length which divides the right part from the left.

Scutum, Scutiforme, see **Vola**.

Scroptula, are preternatural *Glandules*, or swelling of them in the Neck, or Ears.

Secundina, the **Secundine**, or after birth, are the three Membranes, *Chorion*, *Alantois*, and *Amnion*, which with the *Placenta* are excluded after birth.

Semen, seed, is a *White*, *Hot*, *Spirituous*, *Thick*, *Clammy*, *Saltish Humor*, which is made out of the purest blood; and by proper passages is ejected into the Womb of the Femal. There is also in the Female a matter is called *Seed*, which frequently in their Act of venery is emmitted forth: the use of this, is to raise *Titillation*, and render the *Coition* more pleasant.

Sensus, Sense; that by which we *See*, *Hear*, *Feel*, *Taste*, or *Smell* any thing: *Coition*, and *Rest*.

Septum Lucidum, is a partition, upon the account of thinness of the *Diaphanous*, which distinguishes the *Ventricles* of the Brain: **Speculum Lucidum** the same.

Serum, is a watery, thin, yellowish and Salt Humor, which *Vehicles* or bears up the Blood.

Sesamoidea Ossa, are a quantity of loose small bones found in the joynts of the *Hands* and *Toes*.

Similares partes, Similar parts are such as are throughout of the same nature and texture.

Sinus Meninges, are those Cavities which are called the *Ventricles* of the *thick Membrane*: they supply the place of *Veins*, for they convey the blood from the *Brain* and *Cerebellum*, to the *Jugular Veins*, &c.

Sinus Ossium, are those cavities of the bones which receive the heads of other bones.

Sitis, thirst, or a desire of Drink.

Somnus, Sleep, it is a streightning of the Pores of the *Brain*, which causeth the rest of the *Animal Spirits*, from their *Operations*.

Somnolentia continua, is a constant *Drowsiness* and inclination to sleep.

Sarganosis, is a distention of the Breast occasioned by too much Milk.

Spermaticae partes, are those *Arteries* and *Veins* which bring to, and convey it from the *Testicles*: also those Vessels through which the *Seed passes*.

Sphagitides, are the *Jugular Veins* in the Neck.

Sphincter, is a Muscle that contracts the *Gullet*, *Annus*, *Bladder*, &c.

Spina Dorsi, are the hinder prominences of the *Vertebres*.

Spiritus, the Spirit or Life, which are reckoned of three sorts: the *Animal Spirits* in the Brain, the *Vital* in the Heart, the *Natural* in the Liver: but late Authors make only two, the Animal in the Brain, the Vital and Natural in the Mass of Blood.

Splen, or Lien, the Spleen, a receptable for the *Excrements* of the Blood.

Splenii Musculi, Muscles that arise partly from the lower *Vertebres* of the Neck.

Sputum, a Liquor thicker then ordinary Spittle, *Phlegme*.

Stegnosis, is a constriction, and stopping up of the *Pores*.

Stercus, is that excrements which is voided by Stool.

Sternum Os, the Breast-bone, that is joyned to the *Ribs*, in the foremost part of the Breast, it consists of three or four Bones; but at riper Years they grow into one. The lower part of it, is called **Cartilago Ensiformis**.

Sternohyoides, is that pair of Muscles, which goes from the Breast-bone, to **Os Hyoides**.

Sterilitas, or **Agonia**, is fear and sadness of Mind: also Barreness.

Sternothyroides, is a pair of Muscle of the **Cartilago Scutiformis** and draws it downwards.

Sternutatio, Sneezing.

Stigma, a Scar.

Stomachus, is properly the left orifice of the *Ventricle*, or *Stomach*, by which meats are received into it.

Strabismus, a squinting, is through the relaxation, *Contraction*, *Distorsion*, or too great length, or shortness of the Muscles which move the Eye. **Strabilismus**.

Stylocerathoides, are the Muscles of the **Os Hyoides** which draw upwards.

Styloglossum, Muscles that lift up the Tongue.

Styloides, are processes of bone fashioned backwards into the *Basis* of the Scull.

Stylopharyngeus, Muscles that dilate the *Gullet*.

Sublaxation, a dislocation, or putting out of joynt.

Sudamina, are little Pimples in the skin, **Sudationes**.

Sudor, Sweat, a watry Humor driven through Pores of the skin by heat, or *Weakness*.

Superfaetatio, is when after one *Conception*, another *Succeeds* so that both are in the Womb together.

Sutura Ossium, a Suture in the Juncture of bones, as in the *Scull*.

Satura, is a *Connection* of the sides or lips of a Wound, which is by stitching or sewing it up with Needle and waxed Silk.

Symptoma, is a preternatural disposition of Body occasioned by some disease.

Synthesis, is either the frame and structure of the whole Body; or more strictly the composure of the Bones. **Systema**, is the same.

Sysarcosis, is the *Connection* of Bones by flesh.

Sistole, is the *Contraction* of the *Ventricles* of the Heart, whereby the Blood is driven into the *Arteries*, a drawing together the Hearts motion.

Temper, or **Constitution**; it is taken for a *Healthful being*, or for a *Sickly*, and *Weak* inclination.

Tuberosity, or **Bunchiness**; the bunching out of any part of a Bone.

Tactus, a Touch, is a sense whereby the *Tactile qualites* of the Body are offered to the common Sensory, or

it is the Sense of a thing touching.

Tarsus, is a *Cartilaginous extremity* of the Eye-lids, whence the hair springs, called also **Cilium.**

Temperamentum, Temperament, is a quality that arisith from the *Union* and *mixture* of the Elements in Mans body. So **Crasis** is the same.

Tempus, the Temple, the place between the Eyes and Ears.

Tendon, a Tendon, is a similar *Nervous part* annexed to Muscles and Bones, by which motion of the Members is performed.

Testes Vulicbris, see **Orchis.**

Testes Virtiles, Mans *Testicles*, consists of several small *Vessels*, wherein the *Seed* is generated.

Testes Cerebri, are two backward *Prominences* of the Brain; called so from their likness to *Testicles*.

Testudo Cerebri, or **Fornix**, is the *Callous substance* of the Brain.

Tetanus, is a constant *contraction*, whereby a Limb grows *Rigid* and *Inflexible*. It is usually distinguished into *Particular*, which respects a certain Member, or particular Joynt; or *Universal* of which there are three sorts, as **Emprosthotonos**, which is a contraction of the Muscles of the Neck towards the fore-parts; **Opisthotonos**, which is a kind of Cramp or stretching of the Muscles backwards: and **Tetanos** a kind of seizing on the whole Body, either by Cramp, Gout, or Palsie, *&c.* Called also **Tonicus.**

Thermomethron, is a natural Heat, which is perceived by the *Pulses*.

Thlipsis, is a compression of Vessels.

Thorax, or **Medius Venter**, the Chest or Breast, is all the Cavity, which is circumscribed or compassed about, above by the *Neck*, below by the *Diaphragme*, before by the *Breast-bone*, behind by the *Back-bone*, on the sides by the *Ribs*. The Membrane with which it is covered within, is called **Pleura.**

Thrombus, is the coagulation of Blood or Milk, into clots or clusters. **Trombosis** the same.

Thymus, is a *Glandule* in the Throat, that separates the clear watry Humor called *Lympha* from the Blood. It is also taken for any fleshy tumor that hangs upon the Body like a Wart.

Thyroary-taenoides, are a pair of Muscles, which serves to contract and close the *Larynx*.

Thyroideae Glandulae, are two Kernels of a viscous solid substance, almost as big as an Egg, situate about the lower seat of the *Larynx*.

Thyroides, is the Cartilage called **Scutiformis**; also the hole of the **Os Pubis.**

Tinnitus Aurum, is a certain Buzzing, tingling or noise in the Ears.

Tophus, is a stony or hard concretion in any part.

Torcular Herophili, is that place where the four *Cavities* of the thick skin of the *Brain* is joyned.

Tragus, is the extream brim of the Ear.

Traulus, or **Traulotes**, is a stammering or fault in pronouncing the Letters L and R.

Trismus, is the grinding of the Teeth, or the Teeth gnashing, whether one will or no.

Trochlearis, is the upper and greater *oblique Muscle* of the Eye.

Tromos, is a trembling, or a *Depravation* of the voluntary motion of Members

Tubae Fallopianae, are two slender passages proceeding from the *Womb*, which from it grow gradually wider.

Tumor, **Tumour**, or swelling, is when the parts of Humane bodies are enlarged and extended beyond their due proportion, through any disease or distemper.

Tunica, see **Membrana.**

Tympanum, the Drum of the Ear, is a small thin, *Orbicular*, *Transparent Membrane*, stretched over the Cavity of the inner part of the Ear.

Tyrosis, is when Milk that is eated *Curdles* into a substance like Cheese.

Vitiated, hurt, made nought, spoiled.

Virulent, poysonous, full of poyson, and deadly matter.

Vitalitas, Vitality, a lively force of all the parts: of *Vital* living.

Viscous, tough, or clammy, like Bird-lyme.

Vagina Uteri, called also *Matrix*, *Uteri Ostium*, and *Uteri Cervix*: is that passage in which a Mans yard is sheathed as it were in *Coition*: It is of an oblong figure, and of different magnitude, according to the age of the Woman, and her use of Men.

Valetudo, is either a good or ill disposition of the parts of the Body.

Valvulae, **Valves**, are little thin *Membranes* in Vessels or *Fibres*, like folding doores as it were; they are found also in *Veins*, *Arteries*, *Lymphatick* and *Lacteal Vessels*. They are also in the *Intestines*, and in the small and great *Guts*.

Varicosum Corpus, is the *Contextures*, or joyning together of the *Spermatick vessels* which enters the *Testicles*.

Vasa, the vessels, are *Cavities* through which the liquors of the Body passes, as a *Vein*, an *Artery*, *Lymphatick vessells*, the *Ductus* that conveys the *Chyle*, and those of the *Spittle*.

Vasa Lactea, the Milky vessels.

Vasa Lymphae, or **Lymphatica**; are the vessels that receive the *Lympha*, or clear *Limpide humor*, consisting of Nervous Juice and Blood, from the *Conglobated Glandules*, which discharge themselves into the *Sanguinary Vains*, or the *Receptacle* of the *Chyle*.

Vena, a Vein, the species of them in brief: are thus termed, the *Vena Cava*, the *Vena Porta*, the *Lymbatick* and *Milkie Veins*. **Arteries**, are sometimes taken for *Veins*. The branches of the **Vena Cava** above the Heart are called *Jugular Viens*, which go towards the Head: those to the Arms, are called *Axillary Veins*; that about the Heart, the *Coronary Veins*; those in the Lungs, *Pulmonary Veins*; in the Liver, the *Hepatick* or *Liver Veins*; in the Diaphragme, the *Phrenica Veins*; in the Thighs, the *Crural Veins*; in the Reins, the *Emulgent Veins*; and so from its various *Ramifications* or spreading branches the others are variously denominated, as I have shewed before in the Veins of Mans Body, *fol.* 423. The **Vena Portae**, is only in the *Abdomen* and extends its roots or branches to the *Liver*, *Spleen*, *Ventricles*, *Mesentary*, *Intestines*, *Pancreas*, *Caul*, &c.

Vena Sectio, is the opening of a Vein.

Ventriculus, the Stomach, it is a *Membranous Bowel* in

in the *Abdomen*. It is called **Stomacus** and **Aquallculus**: It hath two Orifices on the right Hand, called **Pylorus** or **Janitor**, whereat the Meat is sent into the *Guts*: and another on the left Hand, at which the Meat enters.

Ventriculus Cerebri, the Ventricles of the Brain.

Ventriculus Cordis, the Ventricles of the Heart, are two, one receives the Blood, and sends it to the *Lungs*; the other receives it from the Lungs and sends it through the whole Body. In the **Systole**, or contraction of the *Ventricles*, the Blood is sent out: In the **Dyastole** or *Dilatation* it is let into the Heart.

Verrucae, or **Tubercula**, or **Porri**, Warts, they are an hard high *Callous swelling*, which break out of the skin in any part of the Body, and remains there.

Vesica, the Bladder, it is an *hollow Membranous* part, and holds any liquor, as *Urine*, *Gall*, and the *Seed*.

Veruculata. the same as *Sagittalis Sutura*.

Vespertilionum Alae, Bats Wings, are two broad *Membranous Ligaments*, wherewith the bottom of the *Womb* is tied to the *Flank-bones*

Vigilia, Waking or Watchfulness.

Virginale Claustrum, see **Hymen**.

Viscera, are *Organs* contained in the three great Cavities of the Body: they are called also **Extra** and **Interanea**.

Visus, sight, is a sense whereby light and colours are perceived.

Vitalis Facultas, the Vical faculty, is an action whereby a Man lives, such are the *motions* of the *Heart*, *Respiration*, &c. It is the same with *Natural Faculty*.

Vitalis Judicatio, is a way whereby strength and vigor are continually renewed and preserved.

Umbilicus, the Navel, is a boss in the middle of the *Abdomen* or Belly, to which the *Navel-string* is joyned, by it the Child is nourished in the *Womb*.

Unguis, the Nail, it is a similar, *Flexible*, *White* and *Hard* part, which defends the Fingers from external injuries. The several parts are thus distinguished, **Apices** or tops of the Nail, are they which grow beyond the flesh; **Sigmina** the parings of the Nails, - - - - - - the part under the Nails, the hidden parts; the **Rise** of the Nail, the white semilunar part next the Root; the **Root** of the Nail, is the first beginning that grows into the skin; the **Clefts**, the sides of the Nails; **Nubecula**, the little clouds or white spots in the Nails.

Urachus, is the *Urinary passage* of a Child in the Womb.

Ureter, is a *Fistulous Membranaceous vessel*, by which the *Urine passes* from the Reins to the Bladder.

Urethra, or **Fistula**, is the *Urinary passage*, whereby *Urine* is discharged at the *Yard* in Men, and in Women: It serves also for the ejection of seed. It is called **Urinaria**.

Uron, **Urina**, **Lotium**, is a *Serous Excrements* conveyed from the Blood.

Uterus, the Womb, it is an *Organical part* placed in a *Womans Abdomen*, which is divided into the *Bottom*, the *Neck*, and the *Sheath*: at the bottom there is a *Cavitie* whence the *Courses* flow, and *Generation* and *Conception* are made.

Xerophthalmia, is a dry *Bleardnes* or Blood-shot of the Eyes.

Xerotes, is a dry disposition of Body.

Xiphoides, is the pointed Cartilage of the Breast.

Zone, is that part of the Body where we are *Begirt*.

Zoogonia, is a Generation of perfect *Animals* born alive.

Zootomia, is an Artificial *Dissection* of Animals.

Zygoma, is the *Jugal-bone* about the *Temples*.

Zymoma, is a Ferment, as the Nitrous or moist Air, a *Watery Juice* in the Mouth, the *Acide Liquor* in the Stomach, the *Blood* in the Spleen, *&c.*

Whosoever desires further instruction in the Art of *Anatomy*, may peruse these Authors.

Johannes Riolanus Junior; his *Anatomical* description of the whole Body of Man, with their Diseases.

Helkiah Crook D. P. Professor in *Anatomy* and *Chirurgery*.

Ambrosius Pareus, and the same Author translated by *Tho: Johnson*, Printed 1634.

Stephen Blancard M. D. Professor of *Physick*, his *Physical Dictionary*, Printed 1684.

TO

The Right Worshipful

Sir *Roger Mostyn*, of *Mostyn*, Knight and Baronett.

Thomas Mostyn, of *Gloddeth*, Esq; his Son and Heir Apparent.

AND TO

Sir *Edward Mostyn*, of *Talacre*, Baronett.

AS Venerable Ros, *in his* Mystagogus Poeticus, *or*, The Muses Interpreter *hath unfolded many Historical Mysteries of the* Greek *and* Latine *Poets, which in themselves were hard to be understood; so it hath been my chief care and study in this* English Academy, *to bring to light and explain those various Bearings and terms used by* German, French, Spanish, Dutch, Italian, English *and* British *Heralds, and profound Masters of Sciences; from whence I hope many useful, delightful, and rare Observations and Instructions may be gathered, which may content the most curious, as well as they have pleased him in the collecting, who is*

Your most Humble Servant

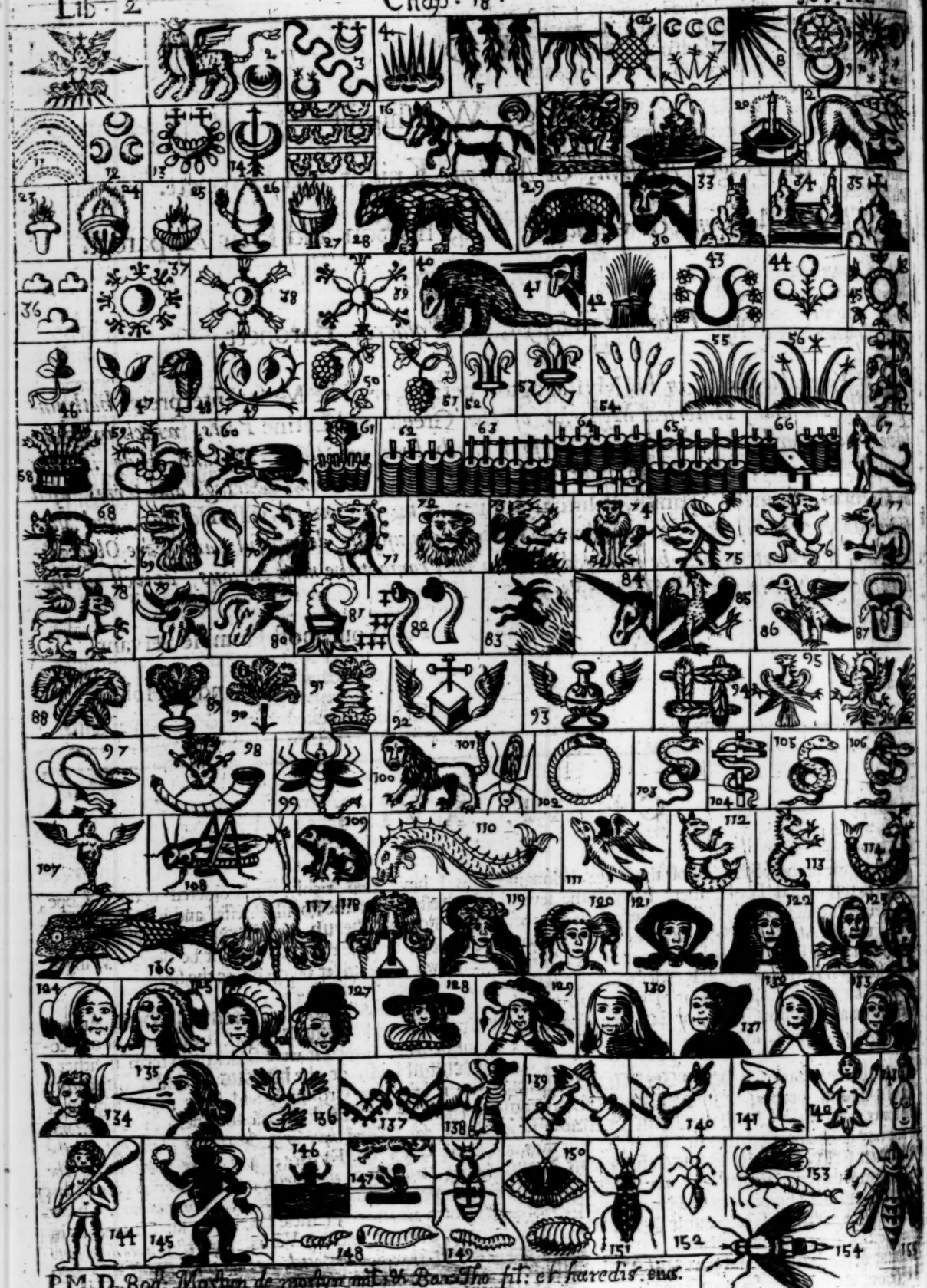
Randle Holme.

CHAP. XVIII.

SInce the accomplishment of the Plates belonging to this second Book, there hath come several other things to my Knowledg, which as they pertain to Arms, should have been set amongst them. But those being full, I have set these as additions to the former; desiring the kind Reader to accept of them in this Plate together, as well as if they had been in their right and proper Classes, or in those Chapters to which they do belong, as

I. He beareth Gules, a **demy Arch-Angel issuing** out of a **Cloud**, proper, **double Winged**, Or; from the lower part (of the Cloud) the **Sun Beams**. This is one way of Blazoning this Coat, others have it thus, a **Cloud in Fesse**, with the **Suns respiendent Rays** or **Beams** thereout **issuing**, proper, a **demy Arch Angel Naissant**, holding up its Hands on each side its head, Argent, **crined**, and **double Winged**, Or. But more briefly thus; out of a **Cloud**, a **demy Angel extending of its hands**, and the **Sun Beams issuing** out below, all proper. Such an Angel or Arch-angel as this I have seen richly Embroidered upon a Cope, the Vestment of the Popish Priests, and is by them termed a **demy Cherub**, or **Seraphim**, **flying** in the **Clouds**, because the Cherub if it be double Winged, hath two of them set on each side the head.

II. He beareth Sable, a **Locust of Hell**, Argent, **Crowned** and **Winged**, Or. If this were of one colour or Mettle, then it were sufficient to term it either a **Locust of Hell**, or the **hideous Monster Apollyon**, who is said to be Crowned, and have the Wings of a Dragon, as *St. John* doth describe them in *Revelations*, 9. 2. 3, *&c. And there arose Smoak out of the Pit, as the Smoak of a great Furnace, and there came out of the Smoak Locusts upon the Earth, and to them was given power, as the Scorpions of the Earth have power to hurt.* Now the form and shape of these Locusts he farther sets out in the 7, 8, 9, 10 and 11 Verses, *that they were like unto Horses prepared unto Battel, and on their Heads were as it were Crowns like unto Gold, and their faces were like the Faces of Men, and they had hair as the hair of Women,*



P.M.D. Rog. Mostyn de mostyn mil. & Bar. Tho. fil. et hæredis eius.

and their teeth were as the teeth of Lions, and they had Habergions like to Habbergions of Iron; and the sound of their Wings was like the sound of Chariots, when many Horses run unto Battel, and they had tails like to Scorpions, and there were Stings in their tails, and the King over them, which is the Angel of the Bottomless Pit, was named **Apollyon,** *and in the Hebrew* called **Abaddon.**

II. He beareth Argent, a **Cressant Ingrailed** on the inner side Gules. It is not only born Ingrailed, but Indented, and Inveck &c: on the inner side: But for the out part, I never found it otherwise than Plaine.

A. such a Cressant G. born by *Van Emoltzheim* of *Bavaria*. his crest the same held by 2 hands.

G. such A. born by *Johnson*.

III. He beareth Azure, a **Cost Nebulated** Or; between two **Cressants** Argent: at the Points of that in Chief the **Heads** of a **Flower de lis**; and that in Base with **Estoiles,** or **Stars.** some in stid of a Cost, term it a **Ridin,** or a **Wyer Nebulated**; Because it runs in and out in forme of the bending line, Called **Nebulae,** or **Cloudy** like.

And for the Cressants thus charged, those with the Heads of Flowers de lis at the points or **Horns,** are usually termed **Cressants,** the **Horns Flory,** or **Cressants** at each point an **Estoile.** And thus it is usuall amongst the *Duch* to have there Cressants at each point, to be adorned, Some with 3. 5. or more **Piles** of **Grasse**; or with **Flowers** of severall sorts, or **Leaves**; or Else with 1. 2. or 3. **Feathers,** and such like things, which are to be termed in Blazon as aforesaid.

A. a Cost nebulated S. by the name of *Zerkinden* in *Switzerland*.

B. a Cressant, the points adorned with feathers A. by *Van Warnsdore*.

B. a Cressant, the Horns flory A. is the crest of *Van Wintertur*.

A Cressant S. on each horn a coronet with a Plume of Feathers in it A. is the crest of *Van Hautzenberg*. The Cressant G. and Peacocks feathers out of the Crown, by *Van Pudberg*.

A. a cost nebulated, in the dexter chief a Mullett of six points S. born by the name of *Zerkinden*.

On the Horns of a Cressant O. tufts of Grass, is the Crest of *Commerer*, of *Brunswick*.

IV. He beareth Gules, a **Cloud,** with the **Sun Beams Ascendant.** This is contrary to the course or nature of the Bearing of the Sun Beams; for generally they are made **issuing** or **descending** from the Clouds, but in this it shineth upwards. This was the Badg or Cognizance of King *Edward* the Third of *England*.

V. He beareth Argent, a **Chief Nebula,** Sable (or a **Cloud in Chief,** Sable) with three **Piles waved,** and **flamant,** Gules. Some term these **Piles raisie,** or **Rayed,** others Blazon them three **flames** or **traines,** or **streams of Fire,** issuing out of the Cloud, or descending from it. This is born by the name of *Donersperg*, in *Switzerland*.

S the chief B. the Flames proper, in Base a Chapournet, or Shapournet O. born by *Donersperg*.

VI. He beareth Azure, a **Chief,** Argent, on the lower part thereof, the **Sun issuant.** Others will have it to be the **Sun in his Glory devised,** (or half covered) with a **Chief,** Argent, as if it were half gone under a white, bright, shining, Cloud. By the name of *Halflight*.

Party per Fesse A. and O. a demy Griffin issuant G. and the Sun Rays Eclipsed. Born by *Bockwit*.

a VI. He beareth Vert, a **Rundlet,** (or **round shield,**) Argent, **Fretted,** Sable, in the **Rays of the Sun,** Or. Some term it a **Shield Rayed,** or **Raisie.** This is the Crest of *Buern*, of *Brunswick*, in *Holland*.

Others V. in the Glory of the Sun a Plate Fretted S.

VII. He beareth Argent, three **Incressants** in chief, Gules, in base a **demy Spur rowel issuant,** the five **points adorned** each with 5 **piles** or **Blades of Grass,** Vert. Some Blazon the 3 **incressants Barways,** this is born by *Newcote* of *Berham*.

A. such a demy Spur rowel issuant in Base G. points adorned with Ostrich Feathers O. born by *Newendeck*.

S. 3 Incressants in Fesse O. born by *Van Gleysbach*.

VIII. He beareth Argent, the **Sun Eclipsed, issuing** out of the **Dexter corner,** the **Beams,** Or. Here though the Sun be hindred of its glorious light; yet we may suppose that the Body of the Moon, which is far less in quantity to the Sun (the same being in interposition) and coming betwixt us and the Body of the Sun, yet it doth not wholly divert the Beams thereof, and debar us of its Light, but something of the Glory will appear from the Beams, as in this example. The most miraculous Eclipse of the Sun that ever was, happened then when the Son of God was on the Cross; when all the Earth was benighted at Noon-day, *Matt.* 28. 45. so that *Dyonisius Areopagita*, then a Heathen in the City of *Athens*, cried out either the World was at an end, or the maker of it was suffering some great Agony. This is born by *Welday*, of *Wheelhurst*.

A. such a Sun Beams G. born by *Van Rainsburne*, in *Alsatia*.

B. such a Sun in its Glory, born by *Aldernam*.

IX. He beareth Azure, a **Cressant,** Argent, on the **Horns** thereof, the **Sun in its Glory, invironed** with a **Cloud,** Argent. Born by *Wilkinson*.

Others Blazon it, the **Sun invironed with a Cloud fired on the Horns of a Cressant.**

X. He beareth Sable, the **Sun,** the **Moon,** and the **Seven Stars.** *Gwillims* hath it thus, the **Sun,** the **Full Moon,** (or **Moon in her Complement**) in Chief,) and **Seven Stars** in **Orbicular form** in Base Others term them the **Sun** in his **Glory,** the **Moon** in her **full Splendor,** and the **Seven Stars** in their **Brightness.** This Coat pertained to *Johannes de Fontibus*

tibus (or *Fountains*,) sixth Bishop of *Ely*, who bore that after a sort, as *Joseph* had in his Dream, *Gen.* 37. 9.

Mr. *Morgan* Blazons it, the **Sun, Moon** and **Seven Stars**, the two first in Chief, and the last circularly in Base.

XI. He beareth Argent, three **Rain Bows**, proper. It is termed also a **treble Rain Bow**, or three **Rain Bows one within another**, or **under one another.** This is Born by *Rainsbourgh*, in *Alvatia*.

A. 2 Rainbows, born by *Weylheim*, in the Dukedom of *Brabant*.

G. 3 Rainbows, born by *Sariat*, of *Wetpoole*.

XII. He beareth Sable, three **Cressants endorsed in triangle**, [illegible] above, two below, Argent. Here I say one above, *&c.* because these stand contrary to all triangular Bearings, they generally standing two above, and one below, answering the three corners of the Escochion. This is born by *Jostel*, in *Switzerland*.

G. two such above, and one below, A. born by *Monaw*.

A. the like S. born by *Van Hanstein*.

A. the like O. born by *Van Puchberg*.

XIII. He beareth Gules, a **Cressant**, (or an **incressant**, with its horns in chief) **points adorned** with a **Cross patee**, and the bottom sides set with Feathers, all Argent. Besides the several sorts of things wherewith the points are beset (as I said before, *numb.* 3. so on the other side, the bottom in many *Dutch* Coats is set thus, with **Rundlets, Trefoils, Leaves**, *&c.* also the hollow, or middle, or inward part made like a Face, or raised into small Hills, or Invecked, as in this example.

A. such a Cressant adorned with Crosses Patee and Feathers, G. born by *Van Ernberg*, a *Dutch* Family.

S. such a Cressant (sans Crosses,) born by *Van Despar*.

XIV. He beareth Sable, a **Cressant**, Argent, with an **Arrow shot through it**, Or, **Feathered** and **Barbed** of the second. Else thus, a **Cressant pierced** with an **Arrow** (or **Dart**, or **Shaft**) **Debused** in the **top.** Born by *Thowlight* of *Wigland*.

G. the like **Cressant pierced** with a **Sword, debused** in the **bottom**, all proper. Born by *Monsword*. If the Sword had its point down, then it should have been termed **pierced** with a Sword (the point in base, or **reversed**,) **debused**, *&c.*

☞ For it is to be noted, that the Sword, as it is an Emblem of Majesty, Government and Justice, is ever born with the point upright, which needs no mentioning, if otherwise it be placed in the Shield, then to mention it.

XV. He beareth Argent, between **two Bars**, Gules, **nine semicircular Clouds issuant**, viz. 3. 3. and 3 Azure. By the name of *Leuthorst*, of *Brunswick* in *Germany*.

*

XVI. He beareth Gules, a **Wild Ass**, Or, **collared**, Sable Some call it an **Horned Wild Ass**: See it farther described in *c.* 9. *n.* 31. here I only give the true shape, with this further advice, that in all parts it doth resemble the Ass, save in the short Horn fixed upon his forehead between the two eyes, and another hooked Horn on his Nose, bending backward, both being smooth and sharp pointed: Besides, he hath a bunch or swelling on the middle of his back, rising into a point like a Cop, Piramidwise; some affirm, that it is whole hooted, and others say it hath no hoofs at all, but hath feet with Toes like a Dog. This is born by the name of *Wildman*.

A. such a Beast G. born by the name of *Littlegood*.

In the Sinister Chief, is set a **Cressant reversed**; others a **Decressant turned downwards.** Some Blazon it a **Cressant** with a demy face in it, **dejected** or cast down, as if it were out of its proper being.

Party per pale, A. and G. three Cressants subverted in pale O. by the name of *Schratenberg*, of *Tyrold*.

B. a Cressant reversed O. born by *Van Massenberg*.

XVIII. He beareth **Water in Base**, and a **craggy Rock extending** to all parts, with the Figure of an **Old Man crushed among the Clefts**, pouring Water from a **Fontall** or **Water-pot**, all proper. Others, He beareth in Base a **River**, at the Brink (or shore thereof) a **Craggy Rock extended throughout the Field, depressing of a Naked Man** *sciant*, his Knees open and making Water (or Pissing) having his left hand upon a **Fontall** (or **Water-pot**,) all proper. Others Blazon it, per base **Water** and a **Rock enclosing a Naked Man** with his left hand on a **Scatebra**. This is born by the name of *Rockwater*.

XIX. He beareth Argent, a **Grotto** (or **Garden Fountain**,) proper. But because Grotto's have certain devices in them, it is the most certain way to term the particulars, as thus a **Grotto** compassing of a **Craggy Rock** or **Hill, spouting** up **Water**, which falleth in three places into a **Fountain** made **Hexagon ways**, or **six square.** This is Born by the name of *Fountaindale*, of *Fountaindale*.

XX. He beareth Argent, out of the top of a **Pillar, Water spouting** on each side into a **Cistern**, made Hexagon ways, fixed on a **Ground plot**, issuing out of the Base, born by the name of *Sinkis*. Some say out of an Hexagon Cistern, a Pillar spouting Water.

G. the like A. about the Pillar a Garland O. is born by *Newpruner*.

XXI. He beareth Sable, a **Greyhound forestretching himself**, with his head to the Sinister side, Argent, see *numb.* 67. Born by the name of *Stretch*.

In the Sinister Chief is the true shape of a **Bupestis**, which the *French* call a **Fovillemerde**, it is a small Insect, and is a Beast or Creature that lieth in Grass, which kills Cows, Oxen, or Horses, if they eat it.

XXIII. He beareth Gules, a **Flame** out of the left socket

socket of a **Candlestick**, Argent. This Flame of the latter end of a Candle, is the resemblance of Old Age, for the Candle being consumed, the Socket is removed, and the glimmering Light extinguished, that a new and fresh Candle may be put in, and the Socket set again in its place; so one Generation passeth, and another cometh in his room. This is born by the name of *Lightfoote*.

B. three such A. on a Chief G. an Eagle displaid O. by the name of *Sayler*, of *Switzerland*.

B three such A. born also by the said name of *Sayler*.

XXIV. He beareth Sable, a **Lamp**, Or, with a **flaming Light** therein, having a **semicircle** or **reflexion** about it, proper: This is by some termed a **Lamp of the Sanctuary**, and well it may be so called, both because it is of that fashion, and also to distinguish it from other kind of Lamps. This is born by the name of *Holywood*.

S. 3 such O. born by *Proudman*.

XXV. He beareth Sable, a **Cresset**, Argent, **Flame**, proper. This is another kind of **Lamp light**, made with combustible Stuff fit for Burning, in a hollow Stone, or Brick, or Iron Dish, and is transported from place to place according as there is occasion to use its light. This Coat belongs to the name of *Heywood*, and is quartered by the Family of *Bowyer* of *Knipersley*: And in this I cannot but admire the Ignorance of some Painters, who pretend much skill in Heraldry, who in place of a **Dish** or **round Cresset Stone**, with a Concave; have made it a **Cressant** with a Flame in the hollow part of it; so taking a **Cresset** for a **Cressant**; which Error the principal of the Officers in the Heralds Office, would scarcely be convinced of.

XXVI. He beareth Azure, a **Goldsmiths Lamp**, Argent, **Flamed**, proper. This kind of Lamp goeth under several denominations; some call it a **Tin Lamp**, others a **standing Lamp**, or a **Lamp with a Foot**, a **Cup Lamp**; any of which may suffice. This is the Coat of *Ileave*.

An **Oyl Mans Lamp**, or a **Hanging Lamp**, hath no foot, but is generally round, or six square, with a Pipe out of the side, as this hath; or with two pipes, each side one, which is called a **Lamp with two Lights**, which they hang in their Shops in the Night time.

A. a Lamp of two Lights, S. Flames proper. Born by the name of *Oyleman*.

Party per Fesse S. and A. 3 standing Lamps counterchanged, by *Van Weisenberg*. Also by the name of *Bracken*.

XXVII. He beareth Sable, the **top of a Beacon couped** (or **cut off** from its **main Pole** or **Standard**) **Fired**, proper. These are a kind of Lights set upon high Hills, which are usually Fired upon the incursion and invasion of Enemies to put the Country in Arms. See the whole form of the Beacon amongst Military Fire Arms, *lib.* 3 *chap.* 18. *numb.* 47, 48. This is the Coat of *Care*.

A. 3 such S. Fired proper, is born by *Chetwardly*.

XXVIII. He beareth Vert, an **Armadillo**, Or. This is a Creature much like a **Sheep** for bodily shape, but in the head and feet it differeth; for it hath a sharp Nose, round set ears, resembling a Cup, or round dish; the feet are cloven into Toes like a **Dog**. It is from the Nose to the Feet covered with scales, only the tail is hairy, and shaped like a **Fox tail**, reaching to the ground. Other Authors say it is a long and slender bodied Creature with short legs, having only sharp claws for toes and feet; the back, sides and belly scaled with a Losenge like scales; all the rest of the Body, Legs and Tail, set (as it were) with round Stones like scalinesse. This is born by the name of *Armodell*.

A. the head couped G. born by *Stelletto*.

XXIX. He beareth Azure, an **Indian scaled Hedg-hog**, Argent; for shape and bignesse it much resembles our common **Hedg-hog**, only the Nose is more sharp, and the body covered with half round scales instead of pricks, and long sharp claws. This is born by *Gyram*, of *Gyram*. See *chap.* 10. *numb.* 56.

XXX. He beareth Argent, the head of a **Lion Goat issuing** out of the Sinister side, proper. This Beast hath the Face of a Lion with two short horns on the top of its head, bending backwards and smooth; the under chap, throat, and forepart of the neck, rough and hairy like a **Goat**; all the rest of the body, tail, legs, feet and hoofs like a **Goat**, but smoother haired. It is of a dark or dirty colour, the horns and hoofs more blacker. This is born by the name of *Nonsuch*.

Argent, the whole Beast, Sable, is born by *Lingate*, or *Liongate*, alias *Liongote*.

O. 3 heads of Lion Goats, proper, born by *Bloore*.

These are of some termed the heads of *Mantigers*.

XXXIII. He beareth Azure, a **Pyramid craggy Rock issuing** out of Base, Argent, on the top a **Castle** with two **Watch Towers**, Or. By the name of *Tirrell*, alias *Towerhill*.

O. such a Hill and Castle G. in chief a Stags horn S. is the Town Coat of *Alstenstaig*, under the States of *Holland*.

S. such a Hill, with two **Candlesticks**, O. with Candles in them **flamant**, is the Town Arms of *Liechtensels*. Some term it on **each side** the middle of a **Craggy Mountain** two **Candlesticks**, &c.

XXXIV. He beareth **triparted** per Fesse, **Air**, **Water** and **Earth**, the two **Rocks** called the **Streights** (or the **Streights Mouth**) on each a **Fort** or **Tower**, Gules. This is termed the **Streights**, being the resemblance of those two great Promontories or Rocky Necks of Land, between which Ships must Sail before they can enter the *Mediterranean* Sea; the one lieth on the Coast of *Spain*, the other on *Barbary*. Some term this, two **Rocks** in the middle of the Water, fixt to each

*

each side of the Escochian, *&c.* but term them how you will, they seem to me to answer those two dangerous places, scituated between *Italy* and *Sicilly*, the one called **Scylla**, opposite to it is **Charybdis**: the which as the Marriner endeavoured to escape one, he fell into the other. It is a happy thing to take a straight course between the two Rocks, **presumption**, and **despair**: for by sailing too near to either of them, millions of mankind have perished. This is born by the name *Carvile*.

The like is also born (with a **Man on Horseback armed Cape-a-pee**: carrying a Banner and shield proper) by the name of *Volckensdorf* in *Holland*.

Air and Water 2 such Rocks with a Ship between, in base on Horse-fish all proper, a chife ingrailed, is the *Turky* Marchant companies Arms.

XXXV. He beareth Argent, a **Mountain in base**, Vert: with a **cross potence** fixed on the top Gules. This is termed by St. *Luke* the Prince, or Patron of Heraulds, and Painter; the **Mountain of Prayer**, *Luke* 9. 28. 29. which St. *Peter* calls the **Holy Mount**, 1. *Pet.* 1. 18. It is a signification of that Rock Christ Jesus, against which the Gates of Hell shall not prevail, *Mat.* 16. 18. This is the Coat Armour of *Hill*.

G. the Hill A. and cross O. is the Arms of the Town of *Aldendorf* in *Germany*.

XXXVI. He beareth Argent, three **Shapournets Mounted**, and **removed**, Gules; see *lib.* 1. *chap.* 9 *numb.* 115, 116. These are called also three **French hoods**, because they are (by reason of a back turn) **Copped on the top**, but I should rather term them three **Mole-hills double cast up**, as if the Mole had cast up a new work on the old: or according to our own Country Speech a **Cop copped**: for we call every little Hill, a **Cop**. This is born by the name of *Copland*.

A. on a bend, G. three such A. is born by *van Helt* in *Saxony*.

XXXVII. He beareth Argent, a **French Escarbuncle**, Gules. This is made after the *French* fashion without any staves, but engrailed about, and at every other point, a **Flower de lis**, which to distinguish it from other sorts of **Escarbuncles** mentioned *chap.* 2. *numb.* 44, 45. I have blazoned it, a **French Escarbuncle**, else term it according to the *French*, an **Escarbuncle flourished**, or set wit **Flowers de lis**. This is born by the name of *Champagne*.

XXXVIII. an **Escarbuncle**, the **Staves**, or **Rays**, **Pommetie**; **adorned with Lillies**, or **Dulipa's**: this is the *Dutch* way of making them, and may very well be termed the **Dutch**, or **German Escarbuncle**: and is born by *Bucken*.

XXXIX. He beareth Argent, an **Escarbuncle**, Gules; the **Staves**, or **Rays**, **floxette**; Azure. Born by *Carbuncle*. There are by this, made known to you five sorts of **Escarbuncles**.

Paly Bendy sinister, B. and A. such an Escarbuncle O. is born by *Hohenpogen*.

A. such an other S. is born by *Bothor*.

[ ]

Sorts of Escarbuncles.

First, an Escarbuncle (of the old fashion) avoided, as *chap.* 2. *numb.* 44.

Second, an Escarbuncle, without any other addition, as *chap.* 2. *numb.* 45.

Third, an Escarbuncle flory, or set with Flowers de lis, as *numb.* 37.

Four, an Escarbuncle with Staves, or Rays Floretty, as *numb.* 39.

Fift, an Escarbuncle with Staves Flory and Pometty or Floretee and Pomettee, as *numb.* 38.

XL. He beareth Argent, a **Bear-mouse**, proper. This is the true shape of the Creature, which you may see further described, *chap.* 8. *numb.* 45. And is born by the name of *Barefoot*.

The **Sloth**, is a Beast of this form, having a Face like an **Ape** or **Marmoset**, long, rough, shadged hair over the Body, the foremost Legs much longer then the hinder: the Feet like an **Ape**, - - - - - - the Tail - - - - - It is termed a **Pigritia**.

XLI. He beareth Vert, the Head of a **Wild Goat** with **straight Horns**, issuing out of the Sinister side, proper. This Wild Creature, is haired and bodied in all parts answerabled to our **Common Goat**, only it is different in the horns, this having smooth straight sharp pointed Horns placed in the Fore-head, and little above the Eyes: it is of a more dusky dark or blacker colour, then the tame, or Country **Goat**. This is born by the name of *Wildblood*.

A. such a Head couped, S. born by *Gotherd*.

XLII. He beareth Argent, a **Grass Garb**, Vert. Some say a **sheaf of Grass**, or a **bundle of Grass** bound up in form of a **Sheaf**, or **Garb**: others a **Grass Cock banded**, but the most fit term is a **Fasce**, or **Faschicle of Grass**, see *chap.* 3. *numb.* 112. This is born by the name of *Grazer*, or *Grassier*. The same is his Cret.

A. 3 such is born by the name of *Greenal*.

XLIII. He beareth Argent, two **Horns of a Bull conjoyned at the bottom** (or **roots**) in one: **adorned** on the sides with three **Roses** set on short Footestalks all proper. Some term this a **Horshoe** the ends **reversed**: others a **twig** (or **sprig**) **embowed** in form of an Horse-shoo reversed Sable: each side adorned with three Roses, Gules; on short footstalks Vert. Some also I find to blazon this Coat by the name of a **Cressant**, the **Horns** (or **sharp points**) **revertant**, or turning outward: adorned as aforesaid, by the name of *van Hogen* in *Holland*. The like is born by *van Dalwick* a *Dutch* Family the Horns Sable, each side beset with four Roses Argent and Gules, every other counterchanged.

The like among the *Germans* and *Netherlands*, is born: having the Horns beset, with several other sorts of Flowers and Leaves; Feather, and the like: some having one number, and some another; all which are to be precisely mentioned.

Per

Per pale 2 Elephants Snouts so conjoyned each side set with 3 Roses counterchanged. Born by *van Gassberg*.

A. 2 Horns so conjoyned S. each side adorned with 4 Roses G. Born by *van Dalwigk*.

XLIV. He beareth Argent, a **Sprig** of an Apple tree with **three shuts**, each **fructed**, proper. Such a like bearing to this, belongs to one part of the Coat of the Family of *Putzen* in *Karndtische* alias *Carinthia* in *Holland*, viz. Party per Fesse Gules, and Argent, in chief three Roses, in base such a Sprig of an Apple tree.

Some term it a **Sprig of three ends**, each having an Apple. Others **Tree Apples**, with their **footstalks conjoyned**; (and others add to it) in form of a Branch.

XLV. He beareth Argent, a **Wreath** (or a **Withen**, or **Winding**, **Wreathen round**, in form of an **Anulet**) Or, the out sides set with six **Leaves treble pointed**, (else six **trefoile Leaves**) Vert, by the name of *van Lattorf*. This kind of Wreath, or Torce, or Winding, is born by other Names, being beset thus with Roses, Leaves, Feathers, Stars, and variety of other things, which are needless to express by examples; seeing by this, the ingenious reader upon sight, may easily know how to blazon such Coats.

A. the like set with 4 Heart leaves in cross, V. born by *Gritsmalt*.

O. the like set with Oak leaves, V. born by *Schonarbe*.

Per Fesse O. and G. in chief the like Wreath set with 4 Acorns and 4 Leaves contraripos'ed proper in base a Lyon Rampant to the Sinister, O. born by *Schoneych*.

XVI. He beareth Gules, a **Trefoile Leaf**, the **Stalk imbowed** at the end, and **fixed to a Twig slipt**, lying Fesse ways Or. Born by the name of *Brommell*, three such Trefoils A. is born also by *Brommen*.

A. such a slip with 3 Heart leaves so imbowed Vert, and fixed to a stock Fesse ways, couped at both ends, proper. Is the Coat of *van Holdaw* of *Misnian* in *Germany*.

S. on a Bend O. an Heart leave S. slipped and stalked V. is born by *van Puechhausen* of *Bavaria*.

Per Fesse G. and A. the like with the slip to the Sinister side V. is born by *Schutzen*: and also by *van Eytingenthal*.

In the dexter side of this square is placed a **Craggy Rock**: which besides it height doth occupy a considerable part of the base: and may be thus termed: in **base a Craggy Rock ascending** & **joyned** to the **Dexter side** of the Field.

B. from the middle of such a rock, a Munky Saliant to the Sinister chained to the Dexter point A. is born by *Dolchatzen*.

B. the like Rock, G. a Stag tripping to the Sinister O. born by *Dehem van Dehem*.

S. such a Rock to the Sinister side A. with a Goat ascendant bendways A. born by *van Franckenstein*.

[ ]

XLVII. He beareth Or, **three Leaves in triangle conjoyned** in the **Footstalks**, Vert. Born by the name *Trifole*. If the Leaves be smooth, they be called **Leaves**, or **Laurel Leaves**: if otherwise nicked, dented, or vecked, to mention what kind of Leaves they are.

A. 3 Heart leaves so conjoyned, V. born by *Meverlein*.

XLVIII. He beareth Argent, a **dented Leaf slipt, bowed in the top** (or point) Vert. Three such Leaves as this, is born by *Fitherfoil*. Leaves are usually born thus with the points bending downwards, but this my fancy hath made it rather to resemble a Feather, then a Leaf, by reason of the deap denting.

XLIX. He beareth Argent, tow **Twigs Irradiated** in Salter, the **tops imbowed inwards**, with each a **Leaf pendant**, proper. Born by the name *Trigge*. Thus among the *Dutch* and *German* Coates, it is usual to bear Twigs in Salter with Leaves, Fruit and such like: with the tops imbowed, both inward, and outward.

O. the like with Oak Leaves at at the ends, V. is born by *Ravag*.

L. He beareth Or, a **Vine Branch in bend sinister**, with a bunch of **Grapes pendant**, to the dexter, the **Leaves** with their **Footstalks fretting**, the **Main branch**, proper. This is blazoned also more briefly, a **clusters of Grapes pendant**, the **Leaves fretting the branch**. This is born by the name *Heysen*, or *van Heysen*.

A. the like in bend bowed or pendant to the sinister proper between two Pruning hookes endorsed, G. born by *Heysen*, also by the name of *Treise*.

LI. He beareth Argent, a **Cluster of Grapes pendant** with a **Leaf fretting the slip**, with its Footstalk, proper. By the name of *Zolier* in *Switzers-land*: such a charge is born in a Field Or.

G. the like O. is born by *Lant*.

B. 3 such Slips pendant O. is born by *Timmys*.

LII. He beareth Argent, a **Flower de lis slipt**, Gules. Some term is a **Flower de lis** the **stalk** or **bottom** part **waved**: but the first is best. A. three such V. is the Coat of *van Hissel* a *German* Family.

LIII. He beareth Argent, a **Flower de lis timbred**, Gules. Because the bottom part seem to be of a woody substance, and nature. The *Dutch* term it a **Flower de lis** the **bottom dupartet**, or **couped**. Some of our English pretenders to blazoning call it a **Greek Lamda**, the top **Pometee**, and **Flonetee**. Such is born by the name of *Zursonnen*, in *Switzers land*.

G. 3 such A. is born by *Jennings*.

LIV. He beareth Argent, five **Reed Speare heads couped in point**, proper. See *chap. 3. numb. 119. 120.* *van Guttenberg* hath for his Crest five of these, thus set within the Ermine turn-up, of a Cap of State.

A. on a Hill three **heights** or three **headed Hill** out of base G. 3 staves with **Trefoile heads**, (or **Bottony**

tony heads) S. born by *van Lygertz*.

On a Wreath or Torce two Reed Speare heads set between, or amongst nine Star Flowers on Stalks G. is the Crest of *van Schellenberg*.

LV. He beareth Argent, on a **Hill issuing out of base**, two **Piles of Grass contrary imbowed** between eight more **gradually bent**, Vert. Others term them, ten **Piles of Grass**; the half **gradually growing**, and **bowed contrary** to the other. These upon a Chepue Gules, turned up Argent, is the Crest of *van Volstedt*. Some Coats, and Crests, have them thus bowed, and fixed, all upon one Footstalk, as in *numb.* 7 59. and *chap.* 3. *numb.* 113. 120.

LVI. He beareth Or, three **Star Flowers** Gules, on three **Stalks**: **interposed** with four **Pile**, or **Blades of Grass, contrary**, and **gradually imbowed**. This on a like Cap as aforesaid is the Crest of *Stangen*. This **Interposing** and seting of Flowers between Leaves, is much in use among the *German* Gentry in their Coat.

LVII. He beareth Argent, a **Pole** (or **Vine Pole**) Or: sustaining the **Branch**, and **fructed**, proper. Born by *Wixted*. Some say a **Pole** in base **supporting a Vine branch fructed**. Others call it an **Endorse** (because it is fixed in the chief and base) with a **Vine fructed, flected** and **reflected** about it. This is quartered by the Marquiss *de Vignolls de la Hyre* in *France*, *viz.* Sable, the Pole Argent, the Vine Or.

Per pale A. and B. in the first an Eagle displaid S. in the second on a mount in base a Vine pole supporting of a Vine branch fructed, O. is the Town of *Winsperg* Coat of Arms.

LVIII. He beareth Argent, a **round Tub hooped**, proper: filled with Earth, from whence **springeth**, or **proceeds seven Dulipa's**, Gules; **Leaves** Vert. Some more shorter say **seven Dulip's** growing in an **Earth-tub**. This belongs to *van Tluck*, of *Silesia* in *Germany*.

A. out of a Morter (sans Ears) O. three Rose slips, G. Leaves V. is the Coat, and the same to the Crest, by the name of *van Ravia*.

A round Basket O. with 7 Piles of Grass **imbowed** and **gradually lessening** to the Sinister. Is the Crest of *van Kobitz*.

LIX. He beareth Argent, an **Oval Bazant** (or a **Plate**) charged with a **Rose** Gules; from the middle or center of it, a **Stock of a Tree Naissant**, with three **Arms couped** Or: at each five **Piles of Grass** upon one **Footstalk**, Vert. Born by the name of *van Zechau*. The like is born for the Crest of *van Kreutzen*.

LX. He beareth Or, a **Horned Beetle**, proper. This is the largest sort of **Beetles**, it is covered on the Head with a pure shining black hard Husk, or Case: on which groweth two horns, a little above the Eye place; and another crooked horny Husk from the Mouth: the Wings are also covered with two cases; but it seldom flyeth by reason of its bulky body. The Feet are long knotty and hard, being three on a side and all joyned together in the top part of the Belly: all to be seen else of this blind Creature, is of a reddish colour. *Pliny* I suppose calleth them **Blatta Flies**, they fly or creep abroad only in the Night

LXI. He beareth Argent, an **Oak Tree** Vert, **Piled**, or **Staked about**; the lower part **Nethered**, (or **enwraped** with **Twigs**) Tenne. Born by the name of *Armestreng*.

LXII. He beareth Argent, four **Poles**, or **Stakes**; **issuing out of the base**: **Nethered**, or **fretted with Osiers**, Vert. Such a Nethering in base, with a demy Bear issuant, is born by *Zaunriedt* of *Bavaria*, and in the Palatinate of *Rhyne*.

LXIII. He beareth Or, six **Poles**, or **Stakes**, **issuing out of base**; **Nethered**, or **Wrapped half way** with **Windings, Osiers**, or **Briers**: the top fixed to a **cross Barr**, all extending to the sides of the Escochion proper. Some term these kind of bearing, thus extending to the sides of the Sheild; a **fencing with stakes**, and **windings**; in other places, a **Hayment** of **Stoes**, or **Clifts**, filled with **Briers**, or **Thorns**. Some more brief, say a **Hayment staked**, and **Nethered** in base, and **railed** in the top or chief part. Born by the name of *Parkeeper*.

LXIV. He beareth Argent, five **Palets couped** at the top; **wrapped**, or **nethered with Osiers in Fesse**, Gules; **fretted in base**, with a **Serpent** Vert. This is born with three Roses in chief by the name of *Anguis*. *In stirpe latet Anguis*.

B. the Pallets couped at both end and enwrapped with Osiers Fesseways, with a Lyon to the Sinister statant thereon, O. is born by *Paungartner*.

LXV. He beareth Gules, five **Palets couped** at the top; **nethered in base**, Or: and **fretted** in the top with two **winding**, or **Osier Twigs**, Argent. Such a **Pale nethered**, in a Field Argent, with a **Tree** Vert, is the Coat of *Gartner* of *Nurnbrough* in *Germany*: which name we in *England* call *Gardner*.

B. the like Nethering in base O. compassing an Hillon which is a branch of Heart Leaves G. born also by *Gartner*.

LXVI. He beareth Sable, a fesse of **Pallets, nethered**, or **enwrapped** at the bottom with **Osiers**, or **Twigs** Or: the middle part lower, to which is joyned a **plank**, or **footstep** set upon two **stayes**, or **supports**, Argent. This is of some termed, a **nethering in fesse**, with a **foot passage** (or **foot bridg**) in the middle of it. Thus I have given you the several ways of **Pallets, Poles**, or **Stakes**; **wound** about or **fretted** with **Osiers, Twigs**, or **mindings**: and how they are diversly termed. See *lib.* 1. *chap.* 9. *numb.* 20 and *lib.* 2. *chap.* 2. *numb.* 39.

LXVII. He beareth Sable, a **Spaniel stretching out himself behind**, Argent. This is the usual action of **Dogs**, that are rising or rousing themselves from sleep:

sleep: in which they make three postures, as

First, the **Fore-stretch**, which is by standing upright in the stretch with the hinder Legs, and the Head, Neck, and Fore-feet extended out along upon the ground, which makes a hollowness between his Shoulders and Back, which is termed a **cringing, or bowing of the Back,** as *numb.* 21.

Secondly, the **Midle Stretch**; which is by standing on all his Feet, drawing them together, and so lifting up his Back: this is termed in a Dog, to **Rouse** or - - - - a Cat in this posture is said to be in his **Ire**, or is **Exasperated**, or made angry, as *chap.* 8. *numb.* 56.

Thirdly, the **Hinder stretch**, which is by standing upright with the Fore-feet, and stretching out the hinder part of the Body and Feet, backwards along the ground, at which time he also lifteth up, or stretcheth out his Neck, and Head: as in this figure, *numb.* 67.

In the chief of this quarter, is the Head or **Seed Pod** of a **Poppy**: which Artists term a **Poppy bole.** A. on a bend S. 3 such is born by the name of *Penky*, and *Penkyman.*

B. 3 such O. is born by *Noden*, or *Nodell.*

LXVIII. He beareth Argent, a **Cat standing upon a Mouse**, or **Rat**, proper. Born by the name of *Herisson.* The Cat is born somtyme with its foremost Feet upon the Rat, and by some with the Mouse in its right Foot.

A. a Cat holding up his right Foot with a Mouse in its Paw, S. is born by *Windson.*

LXIX. He beareth Argent, a **Lyons head** and **tail**, Gules. So most terms it, but the *French* say, a **Lyon Naissant**, as if it were coming out of the Womb into the Field; but this doth not agree with our term **Naissant**, which we use only to any kind of Beast or Bird, when it cometh out of the middle of an **ordinary**, and **extendeth** it self into part of the Field. Some again terms this a **Lyons Head shagged**, or **maned**; because it is neither couped, or erazed. This is born by *Caras*, a *French* Family: termed by them, *De la Cars.*

LXX. He beareth Azure, a **Lions head issuing out of base**, and **looking upward**, Or. Born by the name of *Lingase*, of *Low-town.*

LXXI. He beareth Or, a **demy Lyon issuant in base** Sable; the **Neck engrailed** Argent, at each point an **hawks bell.** Such a Lyon out of a Crown is the Crest of *Windterthur*, in *Bavaria*: as the points of the ingrails are here adorned with Bells, so you will find them in many *German* Coats beset with **Roundlets, Flowers de lis**, five **Grass piles, Feathers**, nay the **Quills** of them hung with **Bells, Roses, Leaves**, and **several sorts of Flowers**, &c.

LXXII. He beareth Gules, a **Lyons head caboshed**, Or. This is termed so, because it hath some part of it hairy Mane remaining, which if it had not, it were a **Leopards head**, or **face**; and to call it a **Lyons head gardant**, it cannot be, except some part of the Breast were seen, as it is in all those kinds of bearings. So then the best term is to blazon it either a **Lyons face**, or **Lyons head caboshed**, or **trunked.** Born by the name of *Lionhead*, or *Lionhard*: the same (I belive) which we now pronounce *Leonard*, or *Lenard.* Such an Head as this out of a Coronet O. is the Crest of *Manhode.*

LXXIII. He beareth Sable, a **demy Lyon** Or: **issuant out of a flame of Fire, clothed** in a **Monks Coole** (or **Coat**) or a **Monks-hood**, Argent. There are some who term this the **Evil Spirit Marbas, issuing out of Hell flames, clothed** in the habit of a **Fryer**, or **Jesuit.** Such a demy Lyon as this clothed in a Monks Coole, with two stones in his Paws, is the Crest of *Scoppen*, a *Dutch* Family.

LXXIV. He beareth Vert, a **Lyon Sejant in full view** or **aspect**, Argent. Some term it a **Lyon Gardant Sejant, in full aspect**: see *chap.* 7. *numb.* 83. 94. Such a Lyon as this between two Wings is the Crest of *Eissenberg* of *Holland.* On a Torce O. and B. such a Lyon B. is the crest of *Ward.*

Such a Lion **double queved** and crowned O. between two Elephants Snouts chequey, A. and B. is the Crest of the Duke of *Pfahltz*, *viz:* the *Palsgrave*, or *Count Palatinate.*

LXXV. He beareth Argent, a **Lyons head, issuant in base**, Gules; with a **China Hat tied under his Chin**, Sable: **buttoned** and **tassed**, Or. Some term this an **India**, or **Indians Hat**, or cover for their Head. The Lyons head Sable, and Hat Argent is the Crest of *Marschall van Ostheim*, of *Francovia*, in *Germany.*

LXXVI. He beareth Argent, a **Lyciske**, or **Wolf-Dog, rampant**, with **two Heads endorsed** (or set back one to the other) Gules; **Collered** Or. Born by *Ire.* A **Dog** with two Heads after this form to the sinister, Azure. Is the Coat of *van Strumpfensperg*, in *Bavaria.*

LXXVII. He beareth Argent, a **Gryffin headed Asker, conchant**, Gules; **casting fire** out of his mouth. Some call it an **Opinicus, sans Wings**, but that kind of Beast hath no Ears. This is born by the name of *van Salegast.* And a **demy Gryffin Asker rampant, swallowing**, or **devouring a Mans Arm**, by the Family of *Rentzen*, in *Germany.* Some term this an **Asker**, or **Lizard with Ears**, and an **Hawks** or **Gryffins Beak.**

LXXVIII. He beareth Or, a **Gryffin, sans Wings, holding up his right Foot**, Gules. Born by the name of *Mynner*, or *Vetter.* The like Argent, and Rampant with **Fire proceeding** out of the **Mouth** and **Ears**, in a Sable Field, is born by *Steyr.*

Per Fesse G. and O. such an head with Fire proceeding out of his Mouth and Ears, counterchanged. Is born by *Teufel van Pirckensee.* A **Devils head.**

The like head G. out off a Coronet. Is the Crest of *van Holtorf.*

Barry of 6 O. and B. the like Rampant G. is born by *Lechsegmundt*.

V. a Griffin sans Wings Rampant to the Sinister A. vomiting Fire. Is the Arms of the Dukedom of *Steyr*, which is under the Roman *Empire*.

Bendy of 6 G. and A. the same to the sinister O. born by *Eberwein*. And a demy one is his Crest. And S. the like O. by *Sigisberg*.

Out of a Corronet, a Demy such O. with fire out of his Mouth and Ears. Is the Crest of *Hander*.

LXXIX. He beareth Gules, a **Cows head, issuant** from the **Sinister side** of the Escochion, Argent; **Hornes**, Or. This is called also an **Irish Cows head** by reason that breed in former times was very small, and their horns grew generally forwards bending after this form: and somtimes the points, or one tip of the horn meeting to the other. This is born by the name of *Runtling*.

LXXX. He beareth Argent, a **Bonasus head, Rame horned, issuant** from the **Sinister side** of the Shield proper, see *chap. 9. numb.* 12. This is born by the name of *Scot*. It is termed **Rame horned** because they grow bending like a **Rams horn**, and contrary to their own kind.

LXXXI. He beareth Gules, a **Bonacons horn imbowed** at the end, and **erazed at the root**, Or: **Gorged** with a **Chaplet**, or **Collar** of Silver. Three of these with a Fesse between them is born by *Boniman*.

A. 3 such couped G. and the like out of a Coronet, is the Coat and Crest of *Pfafenlapper*.

A. such a kind of bearing **smooth** and **turning** to the **Dexter, triparted** in the **bottom** or **root**. S. is the Citty Arms of *Basell* in the Empire of *Germany*, also of the Bishoptick there.

LXXXII. The first Figure is Blazoned, a **Proboscide** (or **trunk**) of an **Elephant erected, issuant** out of base, **reflected**, Or: at a **file** proceeding out of the **Snowt**, a **Lambeaux crossed**, and the side with two more, the first **double**, the other **treble**, Sable. Thus by some approved Heraulds; yet others will say a **Trunk of an Elephant erected** and **reflected, fixed in base adorned** in the **Snout**, and **side**, with three Fillets, at the first one, second double, and the other treble **Lambeaux's crossed**. See *chap.* 8. *numb.* 69. and *Chap.* 9. *numb.* 43. This is born by *Don de Alfontoe*.

The second is Blazoned, an **Elephants Proboscide erected** and **couped, flected** and **reflected** Argent; with a **Ston**, or **Ball** in the **Snowt**, Sable. The like is born with a Pine Apple, a Pear, &c. in the Snowt.

LXXXIII. He beareth Or, a **Daemon**, (or a **Divel**, or an **Evil Angel**) in the shape of a **demy Goat**, Sable: **issuing out of Flames** in the Sinister point. This is the Coat of *Schronesteine*, and is quartered by the Earl of *Falkensteine*, in the Empire of *Germany*. The *French* Blazon it, an **Hee-Goat issuant from flames** in the Sinister point.

LXXXIV. He beareth Gules, a **Colopus head issuant** from the Sinister side, Argent; **horned** Or. This is a Beast of the shape of a **Stag** in all parts, saving the horns: which are two set together in the middle of the Fore-head, standing outward, having a little bending bending downwards to the Nose, the top side is **Serrat**, or cut in like a **Saw**: the rest smooth and sharp pointed. This is born by the name of *Colupe*, or *Cantelupe*.

A. the whole Beast G. horned O. is the Coat of *Vanderben*, of *Francovia*.

LXXXV. He beareth Argent, an **Eagle degenerate, at gaze aloft, Wings Surgiant**, holding up his **left Foot**, Gules. This is termed a **degenerate Eagle**, because it is going in a fearful manner out of the Field; not having courage to withstand the assault of its Enemy. Some term it a **dastardly Eagle**, with its Body in **full aspect**, &c. This is the Arms of Sir *John Coward*, or Sir *William Brag-much*, and *Doe Nothing*. A Coat fit for such worthy Gentlemen.

LXXXVI. He beareth Azure, a **Bustard tergiant, sergiant**, Or. This is the most proper term for Birds, or Fowl rising with their Backs to sight. Yet Mr. *Grillims fol.* 231. only terms it a **Bustard rising**. This posture cannot properly be said to be **volant**, albeit it seemeth to be (according to the opinion of some Blazoners) preparing to make its flight: besides the Feet are standing down, which were it flying, would be drawn up to its Belly. This is a kind of **running posture** for Birds, in which the **Wing are sails**, only to hasten them forwards, and mend their speed. 3 Such is born by the name of *Nevill*.

A. a Fesse between 3 such G. is born by the name of *Bustard*.

LXXXVII. He beareth Argent, a **Kettle** (or **Caldron**, by the *French* Armorist) Or: having the heads of three **Serpents issuing** out of it, Vert. 2 Such Caldrons in pale was born by *Don Diego Lopez Pacheco*, Duke *de Escalona*, Knight of the Golden *Fleece*, in time of *Charles* the fift in *France*. Some term these **Swans Necks** out of a **Kettle**.

XXXVIII. He beareth Gules, two **Ostriches Feathers** in Salter Argent, **Shafted**, Or. Some term them with their **falls backwards**; because the bending of the Feather is contrary to the usual way of bearing them, which is with the fall outwards.

☞ But this is to be noted that when the Ostrich Feathers are set any other way but upright, whether in bend or Fesse ways *&c.* The fall or doubling of the Feather, is drawn backwards; for therein it hath its own genuin and proper fall *viz:* Backwards, except there be several Feathers set together in triangles, quadrangles, or rounds, as in *chap.* 13. *numb.* 79, 80, 81. or with three falls in one Feather, as *chap.* 12. *numb.* 43. Two Feathers in this form, were the Badge of King *Henry* the eight of *England*.

XXXIX. He beareth Azure, out of a round bodied, and **Bell** or **wide mouthed Bottle**, Or: three **Ostrich Feathers** Argent, **Shafted** of the second. Some term

with this Bottle the head of a **Limbeck**, or the head of a **Distillatory reversed**, because they are of this form; but in this there wants the Receiver, or Pipe, by which the Water distilleth; however to give it that name (with the addition of (sans the **Receiver** or **Distilling Pipe**) may pass. This is the Crest of *Featherpot*, for breviaticus *Fossati*.

Per Fesse G. and A. the like Pot G. 3 Feathers A. is quartered by the Lord *Van Kaitschach*, in *Germany*.

XC. He beareth Argent, out of the top of a **Bat's Arrow head**, Sable, a **Plume of five Ostrich Feathers**, Gules, **shafted**, Or; as in this example and the precedent you have, the **Bottle** and **Phaon**, or **Bat's Arrow head**, adorned with Feathers, so in like manner you will very often find them born with **Leaves**, **Flowers**, **Fruit**, and the like. This is born by the name of *Featherstich*.

G. an Arrow or Dart on each side (where the Feathers should be) three Ostrich Feathers A. the Barbe or Phaon erected O. is born by *Borcken*, or *Bocken*.

XCI. He beareth Azure, out of a **Coronett**, Or, an **Infula**, Gules, **triple crowned**, of the second, the **top adorned** with a **Plume of Ostrich Feathers**. Such an Infula adorned with 5 Ostrich Feathers, white and red, **alternately**, is the Crest of *Ursenbecken*, in *Bavaria*.

XCII. He beareth Gules, on an **Altar**, Or, between two **Wings Elevated**, Argent, a **Cross Pomell Naissant**, of the second. Some term this a **Diamond** or **Losenge Altar**, because the top stands **Arras wise**, and the Cross to stand on the middle of the Altar, beginning first with it. This is born by the name of *Holyday*. Some call this a **flying Altar**, but that is no proper term, as the next example will manifest.

XCIII. He beareth Vert, a **Jugg Bottle**, (or a **Bottle** with a **foot**, and by some termed a **Flowerpot**,) Or, with two **Wings elevated fixed to its** sides, Argent. This Bottle cannot be said to be between the Wings, by reason they are not at the bottom or foot of it, but at the sides, from when some have termed it a **flying Jugg** or **Bottle**, especially from the name as beareth it, which is *Flybottle*.

Azure, such a Bottle Or, winged Argent; by the name of *Liebeck*, in *Switzerland*.

XCIV. He beareth Argent, four **Peacock Tail feathers**, **Fretted** in a **Quadrangle** (or **Quadrant form**) proper. Some term them **each fretting** or **crossing another**, in the quill or shaft part, in form of a square. By the name of *Pentzen*.

XCV. He beareth Gules, a **Pellican displaid**, **recurant** or **tergiant**; the **Wings crossing** one the other. This is also Blazoned an **Eagle backwards displaid**, the **Wings crossed**. Some term it a **Land Pellican**, or a **Pellican of the Wilderness**. This is born by the name of *Panton*, or *Van Panthon*, in *lower Germany*.

XCVI. He beareth Or, an **Eagle displaid**, **wounding** or **plunting** of his **Breast**, Sable. By the name of *Bambell*, a Family in the Dukedom of *Austria*, in *Germany*.

In the Sinister side of this square, I have caused an **old fashioned Wing** to be Engraven, only to shew the ancient manner of Drawing the Wing, each Feather standing at a distance from its fellow, having an **Haft** or **Filament** running between them, and so fixed to the **Pinion**; whereas our modern Wings are all drawn **close**, whether they be **pendant** or **elevated** in the points.

XCVII. He beareth Gules, a **demy Swan**, **sans Wings**, **issuant** in Base, Argent, with a **fillet** or **Riband** from its mouth, compassing the Neck (after the manner of a **Bridle Rein**,) Sable. Some term it a **Swans Neck with the feet**, some again call it a **demy Asket Swan Necked**, such a Creature as this, out of a Golden Coronet, is the Coat of *Buckbell*, a *Dutch* Family.

XCVIII. He beareth Sable, a **Peacocks tail**, proper, on the top of a **Scull** (or a **dead Mans Scull**) Argent, thrust through the **cavities** of the **Eye holes** (or **Orbitary Bones**) and out at the Basis of the **Jaw**, with two **Swords Saltertwise**) the points fixed to a **Bugle** or **Hunters Horn** in Base Or. This is the crest of *Mandelslow* of *Brunswick* in *Holland*.

XCIX. He beareth Vert, a **Winged Scorpion**, the **Tail Imbowed**, Or. Three such Scorpions is born by the name of *Stinger*, or *Stingwall*; as I find in an old Roll of Arms. Of the Scorpion you may read more, in *chap. 9. numb.* 87.

C. He beareth Argent, a **Man-Lion**, or **Monicon**, Gules. This is a Beast that hath the Face of a **Man**, the Mane and Body of a **Lion**, and the tail of a **Serpent**, **forked** at the end; or by some, the tail of a **Scorpion** divided by insect lines; what colour it is I cannot be yet informed, but that it is a cruel Beast, and delights much in **Mans flesh**.

CI. He beareth Gules, a **Dung fly reversed**, Or. This Fly in its proper colour, is a kind of Lion tawny, being between a red and a yellow; six of these **in point in fesse**, with a Bezant between them is the coat of *Dungale*. Yet some Blazon the **Bezant** to be in the Fesse, compassed with six **Dung flies**, the **heads in point**, (or **respecting** each other) that is, the heads all set towards the round, in what part of the Field soever they are placed.

CII. He beareth Argent, a **Viper** in a circle, Vert, this is the Emblem of **Time** here, and **Eternity** hereafter, *ut Annulus, sic Annus; sic etiam eternitas*,

The Ring is round, it hath no end,
So time for Eternity spend.

The *French* Blazon it a **Viper biting of his Tail**, and set in a **Circle** in a Field Or, three such Vipers, Sable, is the Coat of *Monsieur de la Ane*.

CIII. He

CIII. He beareth Argent, a **Peacock head Serpent** (or a **cristed Serpent**) the **Body torqued** (or **Torgant, close Imbowed,** or **wrapped** together in the middle, Vert, Born by *Cumbach*. Such a Serpent as this B. devouring a Child, is the Arms of *Maylandt*. Others do Blazon it a **Serpent Imbowed, the middle entrapped round,** or **knotted debused torqued,** else a **Serpent erected,** and **imbowed** at the head, **Tuberous** (or **Gibbous, knotted** and swelled out) in the middle, and **Torqued in Tail.**

O. the like Serpent Torqued S. is born by *Paradeyser*.

CIV. He beareth Azure, a **Serpent Torqued, Fretted** with a **long Cross,** Or. Others Blazon it **Christs Cross supporting the Brazen Serpent,** because it was an Anti-type of the Passion and Death of our Saviour, for as *Moses* lifted up the Serpent in the Wilderness, so must the Son of Man be lifted up, *Numb.* 21. 8, 9. *John* 3. 14. that all that behold him by a lively Faith, may not perish, but have Everlasting Life. This is the Cognizance or Crest of every true Believer.

Out of a Coronet a Staff Flory on the top, enwrapped with a Serpent B. between two Elephant Snouts G. is the Crest of *Sibenburger*, of *Carinthia*.

CV. He beareth Vert, a **Serpent Bowed, Imbowed, Debused,** the **head erected,** the **Tail Torqued,** Or. This is contrary to those mentioned *chap.* 9. *numb.* 4. 77, 78. those having their heads **extended,** this **elevated** or **lifted up.** This is born by *Bloore*.

CVI. He beareth Argent, a **Serpent double Nowed,** Vert, born by *Tmize*. This is termed **double Nowed,** to signifie its double fretting or winding it self over and under, more often than is used, as may be seen in the simple term **Nowed** or **Nodee,** *chap.* 9. *numb.* 73. 74. and *chap.* 12. *numb.* 81. This is born by the name of *Van Kobitz* or *Cobits*. turned to the Dexter side in a Field G.

CVII. He beareth Argent, a **demy Cherub,** with **Wings displaid,** fixed upon the **Leg of an Eagle** Or. This I term a demy Cherub, because some part of the Body is visible, and that the Wings are in the place of the Arms. This is a common practice of the *Dutch* and *German* Heralds, to fix one thing upon another, or the half of a thing upon another species, being both of different natures. This is the Coat of *Kotzaw*, of *Meychsniske*, in the *Netherlands*.

CVIII. He beareth Argent, a **Grashopper,** Vert. I have spoken of the Grashopper formerly, but there I did not give the true form; in this place I shall say no more, but refer you to *chap.* 9. *numb.* 70. This upon a Torce or Wreath of his colours, is the Crest of that Worthy Gentleman, Sir *Thomas Gresham*, Knight, the Builder of that famous Fabrick, called the *Royal Exchange*, in *Cornhill*, in *London*.

In the sinister side of this quarter, I have set that little Vermine like Worm, called (as I suppose) a **Weevile erected,** see *chap.* 10. *numb.* 59. though others say it is like a **Magott,** and all black; see *numb.* 148.

CIX. He beareth Vert, a **Frog,** Or. By the name of *Frogley*, of *Frogley*. This is the true shape of it, concerning which I have formerly written, *chap.* 10. *numb.* 15, 16. This is by some termed a **Frog sciant,** A. a Fesse between three of them Vert, is the coat of *Paddock*, a breviation from *Ap Addock*, a *Welsh* name Englished, as is very usual with them when they come to inhabit amongst the *English*, as *John ap Richard* to be called *John Pritchard*, *William ap Hugh*, to be called *William Pugh*, and the like.

CX. He beareth Sable, a **Dolphin Naiant, Bowed, Imbowed,** Argent. This is termed also a **Dolphin Naiant, Torqued,** and **Naiant flected** and **reflected.** Three of them thus set in Pale, is the Coat Armour of *Dolphinus*, or *Dolphin*, an *Italian*.

CXI. He beareth Azure, a **flying Fish,** in Bend, Argent, the **Wings expansed crosswise,** Or. Some say a **Salmon Winged expanced, crossing** each other. The *Dutch* (from the Bearer thereof) terms it a **Troutling** in Bend, **winged** Argent, in a Field Gules. By the name of *Truchling*.

G. the like A. Wings O. is born by *Knutesford*.
B. 3 such O. is the coat of *Lant*.

CXII. He beareth Argent, a **Wolf Fish Hauriant, Imbowed,** Azure.

☞ Note, That the **Bowing** or **Imbowing** of all Fish tails is ever bent inwards, which needs no other expression, but if the Bent be backwards, then to be mentioned, see *chap.* 16. *numb.* 12. 13. and *chap.* 15. *numb.* 51. except in the **Maremaid,** *&c.*

CXIII. He beareth Argent, a **Griffin Fish** (sans Wings) **Hauriant,** Gules, **Finned,** Or. Some term these kind of Bearings **Erected** and **Rampant,** because that part belonging to the land Creature is in that posture. As thus, Gules, a **Wolf Fish erected,** Or, Imbowed, Azure, by the name of *Gundriphen* in *Saxony*. The like with the Tail **Imbowed erected,** is his Crest.

Argent, a **Griffin Fish erected** sans Wings, Sable, the **Tail Imbowed,** Azure. These two last examples are misplaced by the Graver, which should have made them erected to the Dexter side. This is born by the name of *Mestich*, or *Van Mestich* in *Silesia*, a Province in *Higher Germany*.

Per Fesse A. and G. a Unicorn Fish erected Imbowed counterchanged, is born by *Niempscher*.

CXIV. He beareth Gules, a **Bugle** or **Hunters Horn,** Argent, **Fretted.** Sable, out of the **mouth** a **Salmons** or **Fish Tail,** and the open end a **Stags head,** Or. By the name of *Pogorsker* in *Germany*. Some Blazon this a **Fish imbowed** with a **Stags head; fretted,** or **netted** all over the Body; but I rather take it to be a *Horn*, mentioning that part first, which lieth next the dexter side, *viz.* the mouth of the *Horn* which hath the

*

the Fish Tail out of it, &c. But were it taken for a Fish, then it receives another kind of Blazoning, seeing its situation is contrary to all **Naiant fish**, having its head to the Sinister side, as thus, a Fish with a Stags head, the tail imbowed and erected to the dexter side, the Field Argent, is the Coat and Crest of *Rudizkie*.

CXVI. He beareth Azure, a **flying fish**, Or. I have *numb.* 111. and before *chap.* 16. *numb.* 16. *numb.* 44. given the figure of the flying Fish, according as *Conradus Gesner*, and *Amb. Parrets* hath it; but since seeing the true Fish itself, I must relinquish that, and take to this; whose description is as followeth, some call it a **Sea Bat**. The cover of the head is an entire Bone curiously wrought, as if it were pricked with the point of a Graver; it is depressed or flat on the top of the head, swelling out about the eyes, which are very large, and then compassing the eyes over the mouth and nose, ends in two sharp points under the roots of the Wings, on either side the Gills in the hinder part of the head, the said Bone ends in two such like sharp points, with a round or hollow between them, like a *Swallow* tail; down the back and sides runs many sharp ridges, which being cut by Diamond or Losenge incision lines, make every ridge line to be divided or cut into sharp pricks, so that it cannot be stroked up the back for its sharpness, but down it may. It hath two thorny Fins on its back, one on the Belly near the tail; the tail is long, and ends in thorny shafts, the Fin between each being like a thin, clear transparent skin; at the lower part of the Throat is two crooked Bones, which ends in three long and sharp points; the Wings are like the Wings of a Bat or Reremouse, the shafts are long and slender, the membrane thin and transparent, and coloured (if held between and the Light) like a Turky Feather divided into Bars, of a narrow, white, and a broader Bar, of a reddish grey, to look upon them otherwise, they are black above, and blewish under, with white shafts; they center all at the gills, and opening, are semicircular, with thorny points. From the setting on of the Wings comes forth two long and slender legs of a gristly (or Whalebone like) substance, as if four or five Sinews were all knit together, and at the end opening into so many toes or thorny points; with these feet, and the help of the two crooked Bones under the Throat, it makes shift, and are as feet to creep to the Sea again, if at any time it chance to fly on the Land; all the lower part of the Belly from the mouth to the tail is white, with soft scales, made by Losenge like incision lines; the top of the head and back is of a dark earthy colour; the whole Fish is about the bignes of a large **Mackarel**.

CXVII. He beareth Argent, a **Peruque**, or **Perawick**, (or a long **Perawick**, with a **Pole Lock**, Sable. This is the Sign or cognizance of the Perawick maker. This is by Artists called a **long Curled Wig**, with a **Suffloplin**, or with a **Dildo**, or **Pole-lock**. S. 3 such A. is born by *Capper*.

CXVIII. He beareth Sable, on a **Perawick Block**, fixed on a **Stand**, Or, a **Peruque** (or a **Campaign Wig**) with a **Curled Foretop**, and **Bobs**, Argent. This is a kind of Travelling Wig, having the side or bottom locks turned up into **Bobs** or **Knots**, tied up with Ribbons.

Sorts of Perawicks.

A **Border of Hair**, is only Locks to cover the Ears and Neck, and is fixed to a Cap, having no head of hair, *chap.* 17. *numb.* 2.

A **Short Bobb**, a **Head of Hair**, is a Wig that hath short Locks, and a hairy Crown, see *chap.* 17. *numb.* 1.

A **Long Perawick** with **Side Hair**, and a **Pole Lock** behind, which some term a Wig with a Suffloplin or with a Dildo, *numb.* 117.

A **Campaign Wig**, hath Knots or Bobs (or a Dildo on each side) with a Curled Forehead, as *numb.* 118. a **Travelling Wig**.

A **Graffed Wig**, is a Perawick with a turn on the top of the head, in imitation of a Mans hairy Crown.

Terms for several ways of Curling Hair.

A **Curled Hair**, is when a Lock of hair turns round and round in it self.

A **Crisped Hair**, is when it lyeth in a kind of Wave.

A **Frise** or **Frisled Hair**, is when the hair is full of small Crispings, and when one hair will not sort, or fall into order with another, but stand bunching out; yet some are more flying, others more close.

A **Curle** and **Frise**, is when the hair is neither Curle nor Frise, but both, or between both.

A **Snake Curle**, is when the Locks turn round many times, and hang down, as the Dildo or Pole lock doth.

A **Drake**, or **Drake Tail Curl**, when the ends of the hair only turn up, and all the rest hangs smooth.

An **Open Curle**, is when it turns round and wide in all the ends.

An **High Curle** is between both, and so keeps Curl.

Parts of a Perawick.

The **Bottom Locks**, are the side locks that hang down on the shoulders and back.

The **side Locks**, are those as cover and keep warm the ears and neck, being a degree shorter than the former.

The **Crown**, is that hair as compasseth about, to make the turn of the crown of the head.

The **Foretop**, is that as makes the forepart of the head.

The **Full Front**, is the frisled and curled hair of the topping or forehead, the Brow hair.

Terms of Art used by Perawick-Makers.

A **Thought of hair**, called also a **Latch**, a **Catch**, a **Draft** of hair, is a few hairs drown out of the knot, or bunch, or lock of hair tyed up, which is woven in the Silk.

A **Waft** of hair, is one of the foresaid Drafts Woven.

A **Round** of hair, is a length of Woven hair.

A **Thread Waft**, is when the hair is Woven with a single Silk Thread.

A **two Thread Waft**, when Woven with two Silk Threads.

A **three Thread Waft**, when Woven with three Silks.

A **four Thread Waft**, when Woven with four Silk Threads, which kind of Rounds are usually Woven to make up the crown.

Six Thread Waft, is when six Threads are used, which Weaving is beaten close with a Perawick makers Thimble.

Grafting of hair, is to make a Wigg with a Crown.

String the Frame, is to order the Silk threads in the Frame, to Weave withal.

Instruments used by Perawick Makers.

A **Frame**, or a Perawick Makers Frame.

A **Grafting Frame**, is a Frame where is used both Warp and Woof.

A **Finishing Block**, is a Wooden head set on a Stand, on which the rounds of hair are sowed on the Cawl.

A **Silk Cawl**, is a Nett Cap on which the hair is sewed, it is so ordered that it may be drawn open or closer, to fit any head.

A **Perawick Thimble** for Weaving.

Measures, are lengths of Paper or Parchment, with Figures on, by which the hair is Woven in the rounds, according as it is to fall in the Wig, whether long or short.

Needles, Ribbon, Silk Thread, things necessary to the making up of a Perawick.

A **Curling Stick**, to turn and curl the hair in its opening after the Wig is made.

A **Comb** for Perawicks, being wide toothed.

A **Drawing Comb**, a Wooden Board set full of Wyer Pins, like a Flax - - - - to draw hair through, to make it lie even and smooth.

The several ways Women wear Hair about their Faces.

In **Locks**, when the hair lyeth on each side the Cheeks.

In **Curles**, when the hair swells or puffeth out from the Cheeks.

In **falls** or **flats**, when the hair hangs loose down about the shoulders; having nothing to tie it up.

In **shades**, when it lieth plain and streight on each side the forehead.

In **cross shades**, when it lieth cross the Forehead, with a Silk Thread in the middle of it.

In a **short Fillet** or **Curl**, when it lieth so all the breadth of the forehead from one side to the other.

In a **Topping** or **fore-lock**, when a Lock is laid from the forctop to the Crown of the head, as little Children that have long hair are usually dressed.

In **Taures**, when the hair on the forehead is curled and standeth out.

In **Bull heads**, when the said curled forehead is much larger than the Taure.

CXIX. He beareth Argent, a **Womans face issuant to the Shoulders**, proper, **Vestment**, Gules, **collared** or **lined**, Or, with a **Taure** or **Curled forehead**, flaxen colour, **Hooded**, with the **ends pendant**, Sable. Some term this Curled Forehead, from the *French* word *Taure*, a Bull-head, because *Taure* is a Bull. This was the fashion of Women to wear **Bull-heads**, or **Bull like foreheads**, *Anno* 1674, and about that time. This is the Coat of *Taurell*, a *French* Monsieur or Seigneur.

CXX. He beareth Or, a **Womans face** and **shoulders issuant** proper, **her Neck-lace** Sable: **Quoiffed** Argent, adorned with a pair of **Locks** and **Curles**, hair colour. This was a great fashion about the Year, 1670. they are **false Locks** set on Wyers, to make them stand at a distance from the head: as the **Fardingales** made their cloathes stand out about their Breeches, in Queen *Elizabeths* Raign.

CXXI. He beareth Or, **Womans face** proper, **Quoiffed** Argent; covered with an **open set hood**, tyed under the Chin, and the **end flotant** (or **flying a hood**) Sable. This is born by the name of *Warris*.

3 Such heads, in a Field Argent, is born by the name of *Modesty*.

CXXII. He bearethe Argent, a **Womans face issuant** from the **base** proper: **Hooded** (or **Valed**) down **to the Shoulders**, Sable: after this manner the **ancient Nuns**, and **Abbasses** vailed themselves, this might be termed a **vailed Nuns head issuant in base**, proper. Three of them couped, is the Coat of *Nun* of *Nunly*.

CXXIII. The first Figure is termed a **Womans face to the shoulders, issuant in base**, proper; **cloathed** Azure, with a **Fore-head cloath**, and **hood** Argent, her **hair** both sides the Neck **flotant**, Sable: in a Field Gules. This is born by the name of *Rieolrer*, a *German* Family.

CXXIII. The second Figure is blazoned a **Womans face to the shoulders issuant**, proper: (or as some term it, **issuant to the shoulders**) with a **Boongrace** and

and a **Quoif**, Argent: in a Field Azure. This was a great wearing in the age, about 1594. as I have observed in Pictures, and Monuments of that time; which is by some old People, called an **Head Attire**, or **Head-tire**: which by the greater sort of Gentry, was adorned with Jewells, and Imbrauthered with Silver, and Gold. Some term it, a **Frontlet**.

CXXIV. He beareth Vert, a **Womans face issuant in base**, proper: **Quoiffed**, Argent.

☞ Here I make mention of no more, then what is properly seen to arise out of the base, *viz:* the Face with a small part of the Neck. Some blazon it, a **three quarter face**, with a **close Quoife**, looking to the sinister side.

CXXV. He beareth Sable, a **Face issuant in base** proper, **Quoiffed** with a **Laced turn up** (or **dressed, attired**, or **adorned** with a **Laced turn up Quoife**) Argent. Born by the name of *Maidenhead*, of *Madefan*.

Some term this sort of long Eared Quoif by the name of a **Pinner**, or **Laced Pinner**.

CXXVI. He beareth Sable, a **Head** to the **Shoulders issuant in base**, proper: with a **gathered**, or **drawing Quoife**, Or; **turned up**, Argent. This is a kind of **Quoife** which runneth upon strings, which may be made wider, or else closer, at the wearer pleasure; a Quoife made to fit all heads. A **running Quoife**: or a **Cap-quoife** as pertaking of both kinds. This is the Crest of *Waldthurne* of *Haylow*.

CXXVII. He beareth Argent, a **Womans face**, proper: **crined**, Or: with a **flat crowned Hat**, and a **narrow brim**, Sable. And by ancient Heraulds, called a **Womans head, adorned with an old fashioned Hat**. This kind of Taffaty Hat, and thick hatband was the only wear of the Gentry, about the Year, 1548.

CXXVIII. He beareth Or, a **Womans face** proper, **crined** Fox colour: with a **Ruff** about her Neck, Argent: and a **Hat** on her head, Sable. This is born by the name of *Midwife*, now corrupted *Midrif*.

CXXIX. He beareth Or, a **Dutch Womans head**, to the **shoulders, issuant in base**, proper; **Garments** Gules, **turning down**, and the **Head cloathes**, Argent: with a **Hat** Sable, **tassells** and **strings flotant**, of the second. This I have termed, a **Dutch Woman**; because of the **Dutch Hat**, and **Head cloathes**, used by them, and because much born in their Coats. This belongs to the name of *Vetter*, of *Nurnsburge* in *Holland*.

CXXX. He beareth Sable, a **Jewish Womans face, issuant in base to her shoulders**, proper; the **Cover** of her head, Argent.

Gules, a Fesse Argent: a demy Jewish Woman Jessant, (or over all) holding her right Hand on her Fore-head, and the left upon her side proper: Garments Azure, girded about the middle (or waist) Or: her **Head cover** or **Vail**, Argent. Born by the name of *Schwebell*: which we pronounce, *Skewbell*.

CXXXI. He beareth Argent, a **Womans face to her shoulders, issuant in base**, proper: **habited**, or **covered** with a **Monks Caule**, of the **Carthusian order**, Sable. Some term her, a **Nun**, or **Monks head of the Carthusians**; or a **Carthusian Monks head**. This is born by the name of *Muncham*, in *Bavaria*.

Such an Head below the Shoulders G. is the Crest of *Schalar*.

Such a Demy Monk sans Arms cloathed O. hood and shoulder cover S. is the Crest of *Helgenstein*.

The like Demy Monk to the Sinister clothed per Cheveron A. and G. Hood A. and Scapular (or shoulder part) G. is the Crest of *Brunighosen*.

CXXXII. He beareth Argent, a **Nuns head** to the **shoulders, issuant out of the base**, proper: **habited**, or the **Head covered** with a **Benedictan Monks hood**, Gules. Also termed a **Benedictan Monks head**; or a **Monks head** of the **order of St. Benett**, or **Benedict**. Others blazon it a **Head habited**, or **adorned with a French hood**, the **Peak pendant**, or hanging down backwards.

Such a Demy Monk to the Sinister A. is the Crest of *Marschalk*. The like Nuns head, barry, A. and G. is the Crest of *Monchen van Wildspere*.

CXXXIII. He beareth Azure, a **Roman Womans face issuant in base to the shoulder**, proper; **cloathed**, Gules; **turned** Or: the Head **attire** with a **Scarf** or **Vail flotant** backwards, and **revertant** to the Shoulder, Or. This is the Coat of *Romeshawgh*.

A. a Fesse Gules, in chief two such Face couped at the Shoulders, Attire and Vails Azure. Is the Coat of *Regeldorf*, of the Province of *Bavaria*.

CXXXIV. He beareth Argent, a **Mans face to the shoulders, issuant in base**, proper; **cloathed** Gules; **collared** Argent: **crined** (or the **forretop**) **curled**, and the **Ears Metamorphosied into Bulls**, or **Bisons horns**, Sable. Such a head as this out of a Coronet is the Crest of *van Wintersteten*: in lower *Germany*. Else you may blazon it, a **Mans Head** or **Face**, with a **Bulls Scalp, horned**.

The like Face and Cloaths S. collared A. horns O. is the Crest of *Scheneck*.

CXXXV. He beareth Argent, a **Mans head** (or a **Mans head demy faced**) with a **Woodcocks Bill**, or **Beak, issuing out of base, to the shoulders**, proper: **crined** Sable. *Rossheim* beareth such a Creatures head as this, in a Golden habit, imbrouthered with a Cheveron Gules; charged with three Roses. A Mans head Metamorphosied in the **Nose** and **Mouth** into a **Woodcocks bill**, as it is termed by some.

CXXXVI. He beareth Gules, a **Dexter** and **Sinister Hand couped**, pointing to the chief corners of the Escochion, and another of the first, in base bendways, Argent.

Argent. This is born by the name of *De la Mane*.

CXXXVII. He beareth Argent, two **Arms flected, or bowed**; **issuant** from the sides of the Escochion, the **Hands supporting**, or held up together, proper. The first the **Sleeve** Gules, **turned up**, Or; set with buttons all along the lower side, Sable: the other **Armed** Azure, **Garnish** of the fourth. Party per pale Gules & Argent, two such Arms counterchanged, is born by *Spigelfield*.

Per pale G. and A. such an Armed Arm, and the other with a sleeve counterchanged, is the Arms of the Lord *Weltzer* of *Spigelfield* in *Germany*. The same is born by *Weltzer van Eberstein*.

Some term them two **Arms issuant** in form of a Cheveron, the **Hands** held **together**.

CXXXVIII. He beareth Or, an **Arm issuant** from the **Dexter side, sleeved** Gules, **turned up**, & the **Hand holding**, (or **gripping**) of an **Handkerchief**, Argent. Some will say, the **Arm** with an **Hand holding of an Handkerchief, issuant** from the **Dexter side**, Argent: **sleeve** Gules, **turning up**, Or. This is born by the name of *Handkey*.

CXXXIX. He beareth Sable, two **Hands couped above the Wrist, conjoyned** in form of a Cheveron, proper: **sleeves** Or, **turned up** Argent. Born by the name of *Altrue*, alias *Altrew*. Some term it, two **Hands in Hand, couped** in the middle of the Arm, set in form of a Cheveron, or Cheveron-ways, *&c.*

Per Fesse G. and A. two such counterchange. Born also by *Altreuw*.

CXL. He beareth Azure, an **Arm imbowed, issuant** from the Dexter side, **sleeved** Gules, **turned up** Or; **round cufted**, and **Laced**, Argent: from the **Elbow naked**, with a **grippen Hand**, the **Fore-finger pointing** to the Sinister chief, proper. Born by the name of *van Wolfsgell*: a Family in the *Palatinate* of *Rhyne*.

This is also blazoned, an **Hand bear** to the **Elbow**, pointing to the sinister chief, the **Arm bowed** (or **reflected**) issuing from the sinister side, the **sleeve** Gules, *&c.* as aforesaid.

G. an Arm from the dexter side imbowed holding of an Hammer proper fleeved A. is born by *Kaufmanner*.

B. the like Arm imbowed and couped holding of a stone Ring proper Sleeve and Cuft A. Born by *van Wolfsgell zu Wolckeburg*.

CXLI. He beareth Sable, a **Mans Leg couped in the Thigh, flected**, and **biparted**, Argent. Others make an addition, and say; **flected** (or **bowed** in the **Knee**, and **crazed** into two parts (or crazed, and biparted) but this cannot be an crazing, because there is no sign of any renting, or tearing of the flesh, but (as it were) cut or nicked in, whereby two points, or ends are made in the couping. This is born by the name of *Flescheim*, in *Alsatia*.

B. 3 such to the dexter side A. is born by *Legge*.

CXLII. He beareth Argent, a **demy Man** naked **holding up his Hands**, with his **Arms imbowed**; and **crazed at the Hips**, or **below the Navel**, Gules. Born by *Gandey*. Such a demy Man holding two Swords Salterwise over his head, belongs to the name of *Krell*, a *German*, or *High Dutch-man*. Some say a **Demy naked Man, Arms bowed**, and **crazed** under the **Navel**; or **triparted** under the Navel Avellane, see *chap.* 17. 35.

Per pale B. and O. such a demy Man crowned, tassells and strings flotant each side: holding in his right hand a staffe flory on the top, O. resting the end on his side, the other hand at his girdle, clothes conterchanged, is the Coat and Crest of *Mayern*.

CXLIII. He beareth Gules, a **demy Man, sans Arms, couped below the Navel**, Argent. Such a bearing with a Garland of Roses about his Temples, Or; is the Coat Armour and Crest of *Schachner*, or *Skachner*, in the Arch-Dukedom of *Austria*.

A. a like demy old Man with a broad beard cloathed S. is the Crest of *van Dachsperg*.

O. a like demy Woman couped, hair flotant G. is both Coat and Crest of *van Polling*.

CXLIV. He beareth Vert, a **naked Man**, Argent; **holding** of a **Club in both Hands** over his **left Shoulder bendwise**, Or. Some say a **naked Man with a Club** in both hands, sinister bendways. Born by the name of *Wildman*, or *Woodman*.

G. 3 such demy naked Men so holding their Clubs, Or. Is born by the name of *Wood*.

A demy Man long beard, side hair with a Club on his Shoulder O. is the Crest of *Holtzhallen*.

CXLV. He beareth Argent, a **Negro**, or **Black Moor, wreathed** about his **Temples**, with a **Scarf**, or **Ribbon fired** there at, **flered** and **reflered** over his Belly, and about his Arm, holding the end in the right **Hand**, & a **Rose Garland in the left**, Gules. Born by the name of *Mornberganheim*, a Family among the *Suevi*. Some term the **Scarf flered** on the Back and **reflered over the Belly**, and the like **about his Arm**, &c.

O. on a Hill issuant V. the like Moor: the wreath about his Temples, the Scarf and the Rose Garland A. is the Coat of *van Mornberg*. The like demy Moor out of a Coronet is his Crest.

CXLVI. He beareth party per Fesse, **Air** and **Water**, a **demy Man issuant, lifting** up both his **Hands**, proper. Born by the name of *Relinger*. Some term this a **demy Man** in the **Water, preparing** to **Swim**.

Per Fess O. and B. the like demy Man S. is born by *Rehlinger*.

Pe Fesse O. and Wavey B. and A. a demy Lyon issuant G. born by the Earl of *Margg Baden*; as on so his quarterings.

Per Fesse O. and Water a demy Lyon to the Sinister issuant S. and Crowned G. with a Scarpe in chief (or Batune) A. is the States Coat of *Pilsack*.

CXLVII.

CXLVII. He beareth party per Fesse, **Air** and **Earth**, out of a **Cloud in chief**; two **Trumpets**, Or: and a **Dead Man** holding up both his hands towards the dexter side, **surgiant** out of a **Grave**, proper. Born by the name *Riseinghome*. This and the foregoing are emblem of the **resurrection** at the last day: *For the Trumpet shall sound, and the dead shall arise, and the Sea, the Grave, Death and Hell, gave up the dead, which were in them*, &c. 1. *Cor.* 15. 52. *Rev.* 20. 13.

CXLVIII. The first Figure is, a **Maggot**, or **Gentle** with a Tail: and that is through their age; for living in moist, washy places, they live so long that they will have thready Tailes, as long as the whole Body and little stump Feet.

The second is the Figure of a **Maggot**, or **Gentle** which is generally white, inclining to yellow. The head, or fore-part is sharp pointed, the Tail part is round and blunt, as if it were cut off. The Back is divided into several **Incisures**, by means whereof, it gathereth up its Body, and so forceth it self forwards. This kind of **Maggot**, in the Winter drieth up into a brown husk, or shell, and in the Summer following, turns into a **black Fly**, which bloweth Meat in the shambles, from whence proceeds little long Eggs, called **Fly blowes**: which turns to **Maggot** again.

The **Wievell** is a kind of **black Maggot**, which eateth and devoureth Corn in the Garners. They are of some People called **Bowds**, and are less then a **Maggot** or **Gentle**, & much of the same shape, see *numb.* 108

CXLIX. The first is the Figure of the **Blatta**, or **horn Bud**, or **painted Beetle**: this is another kind of those creeping Fly bodied Creatures, of which I have spoken formerly, *chap.* 10. *numb.* 56. and *chap.* 11. *numb.* 46. Some call this for distinction sake, the **crossed** or **cross-bearing horn Bud**, because its Tail part hath a kind of cross upon it, of a contrary colour from the rest of the Body. Some term them **earth Beetles**; because they have no Wings to fly, but creep upon the Earth, and are generally found in old, decayed, and rotten Foundations of Houses, and Walls.

The second, is a fruit Worm such as do breed in Apples, **Pears**, **Nuts**, and such like: which are all white generally, with either white, red, or black heads. They are full of **Incisures**, **wrinkles**, or **divisions** in the Body; with short stump Feet, in their crawling, they often lift their heads. They are of several bignes according to the largnes of the Fruit they breed in.

CL. He beareth Vert, a **Butterfly volant**, Or; **shewed with variety of colours**: **in base a Wood-louse**, proper. These are the true shapes both of the **Summer Butterfly**, and the **Wood-louse** of which I have formerly spoken, in *chap.* 9. *numb.* 63, 66, 67, 68. and sect. 7.

The Figure of the **Wood-louse**, this is the true shape: It is of a dark Earthy colour, the Back and Belly is full of **incisures**, or **insect lines**, with a kind of fring, or hairyness round about the edges of its sides. It hath ten Feet down to the middle of the Belly, which are scarce visible, but when it is going: It hath a round head, and two threedly crooked horns. If it be touched it draweth it self into a round Ball, so that nothing of it can be seen but the Back, which by drawing round, hath little of the lines, or wrinkles, discernable.

A. 3 such erected S. is born by *Woodlouse*, or by *Woodhouse*.

CLI. He beareth Argent, a **rough Legged**, **spotted horn Beetle erected**, proper. This is a third kind of these Creatures formerly mentioned, *numb* 149. and *chap.* 11. *numb.* 48. It hath rough hairy horns, and legs; the body is of a darkish yellow, the tail is diversly spotted, runing in a streight line-like order.

CLII. He beareth Argent, a **Hemp fly erected**, proper. This is a kind of **insect**, that is cut in the middle a **Bee**; whose Wings are covered with red **Husks**, or **Cods**: all the rest of the Body and Tail, is of a bright shining green; it hath four short feet, and two small hairy horns. This is born by the name *Hamsley*.

O. the same in bend B. is the Coat of the *Bishoprick of Schlesvigh*.

A. 3 such erected, G. is born by *Walsall*.

CLIII. He beareth Gules, a **Scorpion fly**, Argent: three of these are born by the name of *Flyat*. The **Scorpion fly** is an **insect**, bodied like a **Butterfly**, and winged like a **Gad-bee**, or **Breeze**, having four long Wings: and two slender, and long horns, like a **Butterfly**, and four long Feet. The Tail hath three or four **incision lines**, at the end is a round button, with a Mouth, or Claws like a **Scorpion**, or **Lobster**; with which he will both bite, & hold any thing. They are also generally of a whitish colour: some more dusky. It is termed a **Dragon fly**, see more of it in *chap.* 9. *numb.* 87.

CLIV. He beareth Argent, a **Horse Breese**, (or the **great Horse fly**) **in fesse**, Azure: **Wings** Sable. Born by the name of *Horsley*. This is a **Fly** much larger, and of a contrary make in the Tail, than the common **Horse fly**, in *chap.* 12. *numb.* 60. for though they be both **cut wasted Flyes**, yet the Tails are contrary: this having a tail of four parts, one joynt less then another, as if they were put in each to the other. The bodies of these are usually black with a gloss of green, the Wings and Feet blackish, as in other Bees: the Tail blackish.

CLV. He beareth Vert, a **Hornet erected**, proper. This is of the form of a **Wasp**, but twice as large, and of a more terrible, yet shrill Noise. The head and body is of a brown, or umber colour, inclining to a reddish yellow, and hairy: the Tail from the cutting in of the body, consists of six joynts, which he can draw in, and lengthen out, at pleasure: the husk of each joynt, at the top is black, and the bottom yellow; with an Umber spot on each side the joynts, under, and joyning to the black. The Feet are yellowish, and hairy, the Legs are of three joynts, or bendings: the **Wings** are transparent, made of a Membrane or fine skin of an hair colour, with running, and side Veins in them, like a leafe of a Tree. This is born by the name of *Hornet*. And a Fesse Argent, between three erected, Or: in a Field Gules. Is born by the name of *Formly* alias *Formby*.

TO

The Worshipful and ever Honored

ROBERT DAVIS of *Gosanna*, Esq;

High *Sherriff* of the County of *Denbigh*, Anno Domini 1687.

Worthy Sir,

YOur Zeal and forwardness in the Promoting the speedy Printing *of this* Academy, *hath not a little Encouraged me, but hath enflamed the like desires in others to put to their helping Hands, which Favor I cannot but most thankfully Acknowledg from You ever Subscribing my self,*

Your Dutyful and Obedient Servant *Usque ad Aries*,

Randle Holme.

CHAP. XIX.

COurteous Reader, I had thought to have concluded this second Book of the *Academy* of *Armory* with the end of the foregoing Chapter, but before it came to be Printed; some other varieties of bearings were presented me by perusing some Books and Authors, which I perceived I had omitted in the former Chapters, and not being willing they should escape my Hands, I have in this place, set them in orderly in classes by themselves, which you may please to add to those of the like nature in the former Chapters, as an *addenda* to them, and so I shall proceed.

I. He beareth Vert, **Mercurys Caduceus**, Or: **Winged**, Argent. Of the *Caduceus* or *Mercury's* Mace, I shall speak more of it hereafter in *lib.* 3. *chap.* 2. *numb.* 79. only here I set it as a snaky rod with Wings, as being in part belonging to Fowl and creeping things, and thus I find it born upon the Coyn of the Ancient *Romans* in the time of *Domitian* the Emperour, held in the right hand by one of the Pontifex or Priest, cloathed in a long vest gird about the middle, *Mercurys* Cap on his head, and an Oval Shield in the left; *Vespasian* the Emperour had the like **Rod**, held by the Goddess *Victoria* over a scrawling Adder; see *Jac. Guther page.* 337. and *Jo. Hendlary* Table of *Roman* Coyns, 1. 6. 11.

II. He beareth Argent, two **Serpents** in Fesse to the sinister; **wreathed, respecting**, each other, the Tails **extended**, Vert. Born by the name of *Stawney*. Somtime these are born weathed in pale as, *numb.* 4.

III. He beareth Argent, three **crested Serpents**, or **cockatrice Serpents imbowed** biting their Tails and **fretted** Azure. By the name of *Stonhewer*. This kind of bearing goeth under several ways of blazon, some say three Serpents in form of **Annulates fretted in triangle** or **fretting each other**. *Chassanaeus* in his *Gloria Mundi fol.* 43. calls them three **Snakes in form of three Annulets**, or **Rings**, or **Circles, intangled** or **bound** or **knit together** and turned over and over between themselves, having their Tails in their Mouths.

G. the like A. on a chief B. 2 Lyons heads respectant O. was the City of *Heduls* Coat, anciently the chief City of the *Celtes* in *France*.

IV. He beareth Azure, two **Snakes wreathed in pale**, the heads **endorsed**, and tails **extended**, O. by the name of *Pereley*. If more be in the Field then two thus twisted you shall say then 4 or 6 Snakes 2, 2, and 2, Wreathed, *&c.*

S. a Fesse between 3 such A. is born by *Cardinal*.

V. He

Robt Davie de Gosanna Armig: H. Dedicatus.

V. He beareth Sable, a **Nest of Serpents Eggs**, Argent; with their heads and tails **varioussly appearing** from amongst them, Or. Born by the name of *Dolte*. The aforesaid *Chassaneus*, *fol.* 44. blazons it thus, one **heap of little Snakes** (as if they were) **new born**, & the *French* term them, **Couchee de Serpens**, a **Couch of Serpents**.

B. in chief an Oak-tree couped below the Arms or Branches, and in base such a Nest of Vipers A. is the ancient Arms of the *Druides*, habiting the Mountain *Druid*, so called from them.

VI. He beareth Gules, a **Crested** or **Cockatrice Serpent Torqued** with the Tail **Annodated** or **Entwisted**, Or: holding a Trefoil lease slipt in his Mouth Vert. By the name of *Redridge*. By these foregoing examples you may perceive the difference between **wreathing**, and **twisting**, or **fretting**: the one being close turned together as *numb.* 2. 4. and this where the winding or turning is more open so that they be seen between, as *numb.* 12. 17. *chap.* 9. *numb.* 88. 74.

The Serpent in this posture, crowned, devouring of a Child, is the Arms of the City *Mediolan*. But the colours my Author informs me not.

VII. He beareth Argent, two **Adders in Salter respecting** each other, their Tails **Fretted** in form of a **True-loves knot**, Azure. Born by the name of *Hickham*. The *French* say two **Serpents bowed** at the heads to the joyning in the middle, from thence to the ends of the Tails **Retorted**, or turned or **Wreathed** one in another.

B. the like A. between two Lyons head **respectant** close couped O. is the Arms of the City *Bibractis*.

VIII. He beareth Or, a **Serpent Eared**, **crawling** in Fesse, with the head **elevated**, Gules. Born by *Hurstell*. This is termed **Crawling**, **Creeping**, or **Gliding**, being Fesse or Barwise, but **Torqued** or **Targant**, if in Bend, or Pale wise.

O. 3 such in Pale S. Semi de Torteauxe, or else 10 Torteauxes interposed, is the Arms of the King of *Egypt*.

IX. He beareth Gules, an **Adder nowed**, with the head and tail **extended**, Argent. Others say, **nowed** or **intricately knotted** with diverse infoldings in manner of a Fret; others say only the **Tail fretted**; some with this addition, **Fretted in form of a True-love knot**. This is born by the name of *Rodger*.

X. He beareth Vert, an **Adder nowed**, head and tail **extended**, Or. By the name of *Ducken*. This is **Nowed** or **Fretted** after the same manner as the aforesaid, only this hath in the **crossing** or **fretting** no more then two turns over its part, whereas that before in the **Fretting**, makes four manifest crossings.

☞ Therefore for distinction sake this may well be Blazoned an **Adder single Nowed**, or turned into a **single knot**. After the same manner is the **treble fretting** or **crossing** made, by drawing the Tail at a wider distance from the Neck part of the **Adder**, and then you will perceive there will be crossing in three places. And after the same manner the **double Nowed** will be, with the same turns cast into a Fret called a **True-loves knot**, by observing the first turn, so to be made after the manner of a figure of 8, and so crossing it through and through, as the examples themselves being perused will better instruct.

XI. He beareth Argent, two **Snakes in Salter respectant**, their Tails **contrary imbowed**, (or as some say, **contrary bowed to the Heads**) Azure. Born by the name of *Fumentory*.

XII. He beareth Argent, two **Snakes in pale**, **Torqued**, **respectant**: their Tails **Twisted** or **Annodated**, Azure. Born by the name of *Health*.

XIII. He beareth Azure, an **Adder** or **Serpent**, the Head **reversed regardant**, the Tail **imbowed** and cast over its body (making the form of a figure of 8 Fesswise) this is the Coat of *Foulder*, see *chap.* 9. *numb.* 72. another way of blazoning it.

This Serpents O. is the Crest of the Right Honorable *William Cavendish* Duke of *Newcastle*.

XIV. He beareth Argent, three **Tufts of Grass** 2 and 1 having one **Adder** or **Serpent crawled** or **crept** through the middle of them all, proper. Born by the name of *Tildesley* of *Garret* in *Lancashie*. This is better Blazoned thus, three **Grass Tufts in Triangle**, with a **Serpent** crept through them, the head and tail **extended**.

XV. He beareth Argent, a **Pearled Incisioned green Worm**, three such in pale is the Coat of *Worm*. There is such kind of Worm as this Figure, which was shewed me by a Friend; It was of a pure shining grass Green, having a depressed head, round and flat lying close to the Body, which consisted of eleven Incisions, each having six yellow spots rising up like Beads, with a border of black at the bottom of them, and growing out of them three or four black short hairs; under the Throat are six small Feet. all the rest are short round stumps of Feet, two on each Incision. The Worm doth turn it self into a round, as in the next Example.

XVI. He beareth Argent, a **Green Worm pearled inverted** or **turned round**, when it is thus turned in a Ring it looketh much more beautiful then when it is going all at length.

XVII. He beareth Or, two **Serpents**, the **Heads endorsed**, the **Bodies Annodated** or **Entwisted**, and the **Tails bowed** Azure. By the name of *Snaking*.

The Lord *Levynston* of the Isles in *Scotland*, hath 2 Serpents after this form, the one O. the other V. belonging to his Supporters.

O. 2 like S. is the Arms of the King of *Barbery*.

XVIII. In the dexter side of this square is the shape and figure *Echidna* the Mother of *Chimera* which I have formerly in brief described, *chap.* 9. *numb.* 75. But here with the shape take this blazon. He beareth Gules, the **Monster Echidna**,

Echidna, or **Virgin Viper,** having her Tail **imbowed, elevated** above the head, **reverted** and **enwrapped** open (or **Annodated**) Or. Some term this not minding the Poetical Fiction, a **Demy Woman** proper, having all her lower parts Serpentine, or in form of a Serpent, the **Tail erected** as high as her head, the end Wreathed downwards. Such a bearing as this I have seen as a Seal fixed to an old Deed, made between *Richard Bullough*, and two *Jo. Peeke*, both in *Lancashire*, but there was no writing about to shew which of them it belonged unto.

XVIII. In the Sinister side of this square is this Blazon. He beareth Gules, **Mercuries Caduceus** Or, **Winged** Argent. This is another way of making *Mercuries* Mace, which the ancient *Romans* Coined upon their Moneys; it is of another form and more rarely used then that formerly shewed in *numb.* 1. those being about the Rod, these **Torqued** above the Rod: yet in all kinds of drawing them, the Serpents are ever respecting each other. Thus made and held by two right **Hand conjoyned** was on the Money of *Antonius Pius* the *Roman* Emperour, and was an Emblem of Faith, Concord, and Peace. The same was on the Coin of *Claudius Cæsar*, in which the **Serpents crossed** on the other **respectant:** which *Pliny lib.* 29. *chap.* 3. terms, *Complexus Anguum*, an embracing of the Serpents, see *Jo. Hemelary* Table of *Roman* Coins, 25. 34. 46.

XIX. He beareth Or, an **half sheathed Beetle,** or **Scarab** Sable, the **Tail** Vert. 3 such is the Coat Armour of *Skarabo* of *Italy*. This I take to be a young **Scarab** having not as yet come to that Age or Maturity as to have the cases of its Wings grown to that length as to cover his Tail; like a young **Fly** that hath the Wings just springing forth.

XX. He beareth Sable, a **Silk-worm Moth,** Or. This is the standing posture of the **Moth,** having the Wings lying down to the Back, which is contrary to the **Papilian** or **Butter-fly** kind, which always have their Wings **elevated:** It is named as aforesaid, because it proceeds from the **Silk-worm.**

XXI. He beareth Argent, a **Stag Beetle** Azure, the **Cases** or **Covers** of his Wings raised, or **elevated** and **expansed** Sable; **Horns** and **Feet** of the second. Born by the name of *Stagbeet*. It is so named from its horns which are like the Stags.

XXII. He beareth Argent, an **Earwig erected** proper, 3 such is born by the name of *Earwigg*. It is naturally the feet and Body yellowish, the Head and Tail reddish brown, with two black horns at the end of the Tail.

XXIII. He beareth Gules, a **Moth erected** Argent. Born by the name of *Moath*. This is the form thereof when the whole Back part is seen. Some term it, the **great white Moth,** others the **Drone Moth;** because it flyeth very little or not at all, but goeth quavering its Wings.

XXIV. He beareth Argent, a **Sweet Scented Beetle erected,** proper. Born by the name of St. *Bee*.

XXV. He beareth Argent a **Sweet scented Beetle volant,** proper. This and the foregoing example sheweth the exact postures of this excellent sweet Creature both going and flying, which I have formerly described in *chap* 10. *numb.* 56. to which I shall refer you.

XXVI. He beareth Argent, a **Sheathed Cloth Worm,** (of some called a **Cruel Worm**) proper. This is also termed the **small Moath Worm** which breed in Wollen cloath, or any kind of thing wrought of Wostid or Cruel, fretting and eating the same, and in the Summer time leaves the husk and flyeth out in a little **small Moath,** whitish with the edges of the Wings blackish. The sheath in which the Worm lieth, is like a slender hooped Barrel, clouded with green, yellow and blew; out of one end proceeds two small haits, and the other end a round black head, and a Neck which is white, and these he can like a **Snail** draw in or put out at his pleasure.

XXVII. He beareth Argent, a **Horned Beetle,** Sable. Some term it a **rough** or **jagged horn Beetle** (or **Devils Cow**) Such a Creature I find born by the name of *Hornbee*.

O. the like crawling in bend Sinister S. is quartered by *Teisel* a *German* Family in *Tyrole*.

XXVIII. He beareth Argent, two **demy Bucks currant conjoyned** Gules, on a chief Or; a **Watch** or **Crab-Mouth Scarab,** or a **Fly** Sable. Though I set these together as one Coat, yet they are two distinct bearing, the first by the name of *Buckwist*. Some blazon this two half **Buck currant endorsed connected** or **joyned** together in their Bodies. Others two foreparts of a Buck joyned behind; such another kind of figure I find Coined upon the old *Roman* Money of *Augustus Vespasian* and *Titus* his Son which are termed by *Hemelary* in his description of the Coins, *Symbolus duplicati sive Gemini Capricorni*. Double or Twin Goats, signifying a twofould *Cæsar* or the Empire governed by two *viz.* the **Father** and the **Son.**

The second is a **Crab-Mouth Scarab,** of some termed a **Watch,** because about Country and other houses it is often heard to clack like the noise of a Watch, which some looketh upon to be Ominous and a foreteller of the Death of some relation. It hath a **Mouth** or **Pincers** like a **Crab** or **Lobster,** with which it will bite and hold any thing very fast. It is black and slender, having six joynted Feet and a Cut-wasted Body like a long Fly, from whence groweth two short Wings; I suppose its Wings are not to fly with, being but short, but it will run very fast. Some term it a **Crab-fish.**

XXIX. He beareth Or, a **Tree Irradicated,** or **Moulted** up by the **Root,** the **Stock** Gules, the **Branches** growing **Piramed wise** Vert; adorned with several **Clusters of Grapes** of the second. Such a Tree as this, is both the Coat and Crest belonging to the Family of *Die Tschudi* in *Switzerland*, in *Germany*. This Tree cannot be properly termed **Uprooted,** but rather **adorned;** because it groweth not as a Vine which beareth Grapes, but

but like the Cypress Tree, all in a Spire, and therefore may be a fit Emblem of one that maketh a shew, or bragseth of that which is not his own.

XXX. He beareth Argent, a **Box-tree,** containing three heights of **Branched Leaves** growing **Piramedwise** Vert, the Body **Couped** or **Serrated** above the Root, **Invironed** with a **Serpent,** the head and tail **extended,** Azure. Born by the name of *Boxtinell.*

The like Tree (sans Serpent) is the Crest of *Helbichen* of *Silitiars* a Province in *Germany.*

XXXI. He beareth Argent, a **Palm Tree of five Branches, couped,** Vert: Some by reason the Palm-tree beareth its Branches thick together, having long narrow Leaves, as may be seen *chap.* 3. *numb.* 70. and this being a Tree thin of Branches and open: do therefore term it a Palm of five or six, *&c.* Branches each **imbowed contrary** to other, or **counterimbowed.** This is born by the name of *Palmtree.*

Upon the Ball of an Emperial Crown, such a Palm-tree is the Crest of *Van Althann* of *Franckford* in *Germany.*

The like with a Bird in it is the Crest of *Van Tannwitz.*

The like issuing out of Base, is the States Arms of *Weiden* in *Germany.*

XXXII. He beareth Argent, a **Starved Tree couped,** Sable. Born by the name of *Starveling,* This is by some Authors termed a **Starved,** a **Withered,** or a **dead Branch:** But in my Judgment it hath two many Boughs on the Body, as to make it a **Branch,** but rather to be termed a **Tree**; see *chap.* 3. *numb.* 71. 82. 87.

G. on a Mount in Base V. such a Tree A. Born by *Pirker van Pirk.*

Out of a Coronet the like S. is the Crest of *van Heyne.*

XXXIII. He beareth Argent, on a **Mount in base,** a **Branched-Tree,** or a **Tree shot forth into five Branches,** Vert. Born by the name of *Baretrey.* Others when a Tree is thus made into **Branches,** and not close together as most Trees are; term it a **Tree Folio'd** as having nothing on it but Boughs and Leaves, see *chap.* 3. *numb.* 5.

O. such a Tree with 3 Main Boughs shot forth into other smaller Branches, Leaved and Irradicated V. is the Coat Armour of the State of *Lindaw* in *Germany.*

A grafted stock of a Tree with many single sprigs Leaved, is the Crest of *van Weidenbach.*

A. on a Mount issuing out of Base, a Branched Tree V. is born by *van Birckicht* of *Holland.*

XXXIV He beareth Argent, a **Tree couped,** proper. This is the general way of making Trees by all Herauld Painters, both in *England, France, Spain, Italy,* and *Germany,* whether **Folio'd** only, or **Fructed,** except they be upon some other remarks, as the few examples aforesaid. And Trees thus made, may be only termed **Trees,** but if they be Fructed, then they are termed Trees according to the Fruit they bear, as an **Apple-tree, Pear-tree, Cherry-tree, Plum-tree, Oak-tree, Hawthorn-tree Blossomed, Holly-tree, Berried,** *&c.*

Such a Tree with a Lamb standing under it, collered and Bell at it, is the Crest of *Schaf-Gotschen* of *Switzerland* in *Germany.*

G. on a Mount out of Base, such a Tree is born by *Oppler.*

A. on a Mount out of Base, such a Tree with two Bodies V. By *Biberbach.*

S. a Tree on a Hill in Base V. with a Greyhound standing under it A. collered O. isthe Coat and Crest of *van Nadelwitz.*

Party per Fesse S. and O. such a Tree Iradicated counterchange. Born by *Bucher.*

Such a Tree out of a Rain-bow reversed, is the Crest of *van Lauter.*

G. on a Hill in Base, two such Trees V. is the States of *Wildbad's* Coat of Arms.

XXXV. He beareth Argent, on a **Mount out of base,** a **round Branched** (or **Headed**) **Tree,** Vert, with the **Sun Rays** proceeding out of it, Or. Born by the name of *Bushborn.* This is of some termed on a **Mount,** *Moses* **Burning Bush,** or a **Bush on Fire,** as it is mentioned in Holy Writ, *Exod.* 3. 2.

Per Fesse B. and O. on a Hill in Base, such a Tree proper, Is born by *Meyenschein.*

XXXVI. He beareth Argent, a **Mount in the Dexter base,** set with a **Grove of Trees,** Vert. Born by the name of *Grove,* and *Groveby.* This is also termed a **Wood,** or **Shade of Trees:** a **Sylvan Grove,** see *chap.* 3. *numb.* 62.

B. the like Wood and Mount on the sinister side, with a Lyon passant issuant O. is born by *Van Busch.*

XXXVII. He beareth Argent, **three Piles** or **blades of Grass** each out toping the other, and **imbowed** in the heads towards the **Sinister,** Vert. Others term them three Piles of **Jagged,** or **Feathers Grass.** Others call them **Quill shafts,** or **Feathers with thin set Vains,** or **Fillaments** on the inner side; and such I chiefly take them to be by their bearing, and from their bearers. For *Schepsen* of *Silisia* hath for his Crest seven such, each **surmounting** and **imbowed** to the sinister Sable.

Out of a Coronet 3 such Feathers imbowed to the Dexter, 1 G. 2 A. and last S. is the Crest of *van Bischof* and *Bischof-heim.*

A Cocks Tail erected and imbowed to the sinister S. born by *van Keltsch.*

3 Such Feathers O. A. B. to the Sinister, is the Crest of *van Hagen.*

XXXVIII. He beareth Argent, a **Bunch of Sages** growing together **imbowed** to the **Sinister,** Vert. Born

born by the name of *Sagbach*. Somtimes you shall not only see **Sages**, but **Grass Piles**, and **Feathers**, born for Coats and Crest after this form, also **Flowers** on **Slips** or **Spriggs**, bending so either to the Dexter or Sinister side, and somtimes to both, as in the next example.

☞ But this is to be noted, that when many such things are thus set together at the bottom, if they either bend all one way, or bend both ways, one contrary to other, the outermost of them from those bent, must of necessity out-top the rest, and the others must fall shorter and shorter by succession, for they can be drawn no otherwise: therefore it is both vain and needless to use the repetition (of out toping one the other *&c.*) as I have following my Master too much in the precedent example, *numb.* 37.

XXXIX. He beareth Or, an **Hand in Fesse, couped** in the **Wrist, gripping of a Handful of Grass**, Vert. By the name of *Handfull*.

XL. He beareth Argent, eight **Leaves**, the **Stalks** conjoyned and **contrary bowed** (or **imbowed doxed**, or **endoxed imbowed**) Vert. By the name of *Lovefall* But the most compendious, is to blazon them **conjoyn'd doxe endoxe**: though good Artists will say, **conjoyned** and **vertant** to the **Dextre** and **Sinister**. And after this manner you may oft find Coats thus born, whose bearings may be with Flowers, Fruit, Piles of Grass, Sages, Feathers *&c.* or several other things that may or naturally are apt to bend.

14 Piles of Grass conjoyned in the bottom, **counter-bowed** V. between 2 Darts, the Points or Barbs crested A. is the Crest of *Lessell*.

8 Cocks tail Feathers the like S. born by *van Scheternwrang*: & a bunch of Bass leaves the like, O. is the Crest of *Bess*.

9 Feathers 5 to the Dexter, 4 to the Sinister imbowed, S. out of a Coronet, is the Crest of *van Schonfeld*.

13 Piles of Grass the like V. is the Crest of *van Billick*. And *Taubadel*.

On the Corwn of a Cap G. turned up O. a Tuft of 7 Feathers the like S. is the Crest of *van Hornaw*, and *van Rudickheim*.

XLI. He beareth Or, a **Fascicul**, or **Fascicle**, or **Bundle of Grass** Vert, **Banded** Gules. By the name of *Grasier*. But this may be better termed a **Grass-cock banded**, or **bound up**, saith one: or a **Garb of Grass**, the **top bowed to the Dexter**, saith another.

A. 3 such V. born by *Grasley*.

XLII. He beareth Argent, a **Race of long Pepper** **eraced**, Sable. Three such as these thus erected is born by the name of *Peper*, or *Peppers*. This is the true shape of the **long Pepper**, as it groweth together in the **Race**, or **Seed Pod**, which I have spoken of before, *chap.* 3. *numb.* 37. and 5. 48.

XLIII. He beareth Argent, a **Round bodied Bottle** Sable, out of the Mouth thereof a **Grass Spire**, of 12 **Piles** contrary **Bowed**, Vert. Born by the name of *Grassbottle*. Some term this a **Wine Bottle** with a long Neck, having **Piles of Grass issuing** out of it. It is a very usual thing to bear a **Grass Spire**, after this manner containing some 4, 6, 8, or 10, Piles imbowed one contrary from the other on Rings, Wheels, Flowers, or any other thing quick or dead, amongst the Gentry and Nobilities Coat and Crest in *Germany*. But if there be an odd Pile of Grass in the Spire or Shoot, that ever stands in the top or middle upright not declining either to the Dexter or Sinister side.

The like Bottle crowned A. with a Shoot or Spire of six Piles counter-imbowed V. is the Crest of *Florianer* a Noble Family in *Bavaria*.

The like Spire of 6 Piles set on a Ball B. belongs to the Crest of *Brandenburger*: and *Zu Riet*: also of *Magenbuch* the Ball being A.

The like on a Wheel G. is the Crest of *Klingenberg*.

The like on an Annulet O. is the Crest of *Guttingen*.

The like on the Points, or Horns of a Miter A. is the Crest of *Bochingen*.

The like on the Horns of a Cressant A. is the Crest of *Glanger*.

The like of 8 Piles out of a Bell, the Mouth erected G. by *van Nenningen*.

Some term this a **Stalk, Shoot**, or **Shaft** with (somany) Grass Leaves.

XLIV. He beareth Or, a **Torce** or **Wreath**, A. and G. **Flower de lised** B on the Top 3 Grass Spires, each containing seven Piles Sable. By the name of *Vanega*. Some term this **Wreath, Floy counter Floied** with one **de Lis**, others a **Flower de Lis Wreathed**, or in the middle Wreathed.

A. a Flower de lis so adorned G. is the Coat and Crest of *Bernheim* of *Frankford*.

XLV. He beareth Gules, the **Stock** or **Trunk of a Tree couped** at both ends; the sides **counter Raguled** by four Or, from between each, proceeds a Stalk, with a Rose Argent. Born by the name of *Rosetock*. Some term this a **Pale couped** and **Raguled, counter Raguled** of four. Some a **Ragged Staff** of four knots

A. the like in Bend S. the Roses G. born by *van Schachten*.

A. the like in Bend Sinister couped, counter Raguled of six and as many Elm Leaves interposing G. is born by *Stangen*. and *van Ober-Ledel*.

A. the like in Bend with 3 knots counterposed and as many Heart Leaves interposed is born by *van Pflugen*.

A. the like with 3 knots and 2 Elm Leaves G. born by *Veltheim*.

A. the like in Fesse 3 Ragules above, with Roses interposed, and one knot under G. born by *van Brederlow*.

O. the like couped in the top, and Moulted below, with 4 knots, and from each side an Heart leaf pendant S. by *Sambeleben*.

A. the like rent in the top, and couped in base, with 4 knots or Ragules set opposite, and 2 Leaves with Stalks pendant V. born by *Vanstock* and *Stockhavsen* of *Alsatina*.

A. a Stock of a Tree couped at both end, from each side proceeds 3 Heart Leaves S. belongs to *Stoufacher.*

XLVI. He beareth Argent, two **Ragged Staves couped** in the ends, **imbowed** one to the other, Sable. Born by the name of *Fitz Bomstock.*

A. 2 such conjoyned in Base S. and flamant proper. Born by *Weickardt.*

A. one imbowed to the Dexter S. is born by *Stockhrim.* The like to the Sinister, is born by *van Altem.*

Per Fesse G. and B. one to the Dexter O. is born by *Honrodt.*

A. the like rent in the top and knots B. is born by *van Lente.*

XLVII. He beareth Azure, a **Stock in Fesse, slipped** at both ends, and **Crenell on the higher side**, with two **Leaves** on **Footstalks** proceeding therefrom, Or. Born by the name of *Cropley.*

The like to this V. with an Eagle standing thereon A. is the Crest of the Lord *Lovelace Baron* of *Hurley* in the county of *Barks.*

XLVIII. He beareth Argent, two **Heart Leaves Pendant**, their **Stalks contrary flected & reflected crazed**, Vert. Born by the name of *Leaveby.* Some againe blazon them two Stalks **Bowed imbowed crazed**, the Leaves **Pendant respectant.** Others 2. leavs **reversed** their Stalks **contrary bowed** and **rebowed** crazed in Pale

G. the like A. is the coat & crest of the noble familey of *Stos vf Ramitz* in *Germanie.*

XLIX. He beareth Argent, two **Sprigs**, or **Water Sprouts leafed** and **slipped**, the one **contrary bowing** and **debruseing** the other, in forme of a **Laurell** or **Garland** Vert, **Tyed** above and below with a **Ribbon** Gules. Born by the name of *Laurell.* Some more briefly Blazon it, a **Laurel of two slips of a Tree tied together.**

Such a Laurel V. in a Field A. an Inescochion O. charged with 3 Stags Horns in pale Bar. S. is the States Armes of *Wayblingen* in *Germany.*

L. He beareth Argent, a **Water Sprig**, or **Sprout**, or **Shoot of a Tree folded imbowed** to the **Dexter**, Vert. Is born by the name of *Watspring*, or *Watsprig.*

Such a **Sprig** of the Flowers of **Cullumbines** B. and Leaves V. out of a Glove A. with a Falcon standing thereon Belled and Jessed, O. is the Crest of the Honorable Lord *Gray* of *Wilton.* Some blazon it a Falcon on a Glove, **over shaded** with the Sprig of a *Cullumbine.*

LI. He beareth Gules, a **Cornucopia Scalloped** Or, **Filled with diversity of Leaves**, Vert. This is born by the name of *Plenty.* This **Cup** or **Cornucopia** is made or wrought diversly from that mentioned *chap.* 4 *numb.* 112. that being Wreathen after the manner, of a Unicorns horn; but this is as if there were several horns joyned together, each being a degree in the folding less then the formed, like Chamfered or Chaised work, raised by the hand of a cunning Workman; such like **Cornucopiae's** as these, you shall often find Coined in the ancient *Romans* Money, from whence I took this figure, see *Gutherius de Veteri Jure Pontificio Urbis Romæ, pag.* 51. and *Hemelarius* on the *Roman* Coin, *Tabula* 4. 13.

LII. He beareth Argent, a **Laurel**, or **Chaplet of Leaves, adorned with Wreaths** and **Roses**, Gules. When a Laurel of Leaves is only set with Flowers, then the Flowers seldom exceed four *viz.* one above and below, and one on each side, as this example doth manifest: but if they exceed, then they are rather **Garlands** then **Laurells** or **Chaplets**, as you may see *chap.* 4. *numb.* 43, 44. and *lib.* 3. *chap.* 1. *numb.* 23, 24.

G. a such a Laurel V. Wreaths and Roses A. invironing a Frog erect O. is the Coat of *van Los.*

3 Garlands composed of the ends of the Eye Feathers in a Peacoks tail, and set 1. upon 2. is the Crest of *van Gaffron* of *Switzerland* in *Germany.*

LIII. He beareth Argent, a **Pink with two Leaves slipped**, Gules. This is born by the name of *Pink*: also three such Gules, Leaves and slips Vert, is born by the same name. This I have purposely set down here to shew the courteous Reader the old way of drawing Pinks, *viz.* with the Flower Leaves **pendant** or hanging down the side of the **Hose**, or **Socket** it groweth in contrary to what we now use, which I have set down *chap.* 4. *numb.* 49

The second Flower comprehended under the foresaid figure, is called a **Blewbottle pendant**, and is the very form as it was drawn by our Ancestors and is thus blazoned; Argent, a Cheveron Sable, between three **Blewbottles hanging down**, proper. Born by the name of *Coventry.*

The third Flower mentioned in this quarter figure, is a **Dulap** drawn after the old manner and writing, for in an old Manuscript I find three such Or, on a Fesse Sable, in a Field Argent. Born by the name of *Lee.*

LIV. He beareth Argent, a **Camphire Rose** Sanguine, **Leaved** and **Slipped**, Vert. This is of some termed, a **Cinquefoile Flower invecked** (or each Leave having an **Inveck**) and **Slipped.** This is born by the name of *Camphire.*

A bunch of these Flower containing seven O. in **Hose Husks** and Leaves V. is the Crest of *Lestwich* of *Lestwich*, as anciently that Family did bear it: although now of latter times they have turned them into Oak Leaves of that number.

LV. He beareth Gules, a **Saffron Flower** Or, of the shape and form of this Flower, is the **Crocus, Saffron, Son before Father, Lilly** &c. But of these I have spoken before, *chap.* 4. *numb.* 57. only set this here to shew how it was anciently made by *Legh, pag.* 80. and others,

LVI. He beareth Argent, a **Sprig** of the **everlasting Pea.** This is a kind of **Pease** that is ever **blossoming**

ing for the most part of the Year except in the deep Frosty Winter season. The Flower in make and shape is like unto the common Pease, only they grow in Spires, many on a stalk above one the other, so that the lower Flower will be ready to perish before the top come to **bloom**; the Flower is very beautifull being between a light purple and a Carnation.

LVII. He beareth Argent, **five Stalks conjoyned at the bottom,** each again **seperate** into a **Tuberous** or **knotty Root,** with a fiberous stringie Root proceeding there-from; the Leaves indented, each having a knot at the bottom at the seting on of the Leaf to the Stalks. This is a strange kind of bearing and hath not often been found in Arms, it belongs as above blazoned to the name of *Tollymond*..

S. a Cheveron between 3 such Tufted Roots with knotty Leaves and Roots A. is born by *Trenyn*.

LVIII. He beareth Azure, two **Trefoiles in pale,** the **Stalks** or **Slips bendwise counterposed,** the higher to the Sinister, Or. Some (of whom I took this example of bearing, not in this kind only, but in other sorts of Flowers and Fruit, whose stalks have been thus counterposed) have given a large blazoning thereunto as two **Trefoiles** in **Bend-pale,** the upper **reversed** with its **Stalk bendwise** to the Sinister chief, and the other **contrary** to the Dexter base. This is the Coat of *van Folebach* a *Netherlander*.

G. 2 Apples stalks so counterposed O. is born by *Appleheim*.

A. 2 Roses the stalk so, is by *Rose'ey* o. *Rojeberg*.

LIX. In this quarter is the form of two **Trefoiles** (as I may call them) which are contrary to those formerly treated off in *chap.* 4. *numb.* 3. to 8. none being like that on the Dexter side; which in blazon may be termed a **Trefoil fitched** (or the **Stalk fitched**) some call it a **Nail** with a **Trefoile head,** or a **Bottony head.** Such a bearing I find by the name o *Fisholme* of *Holdernes* in *Lancashire*, *viz.* A. a Fesse S. between 3 such G. where they were anciently called **Troyfoiles Playne Fery.**

The other may be termed a **Trefoile,** the **Stalk couped** and **Raguled,** see *chap.* 4. *numb.* 7. Others term it, the **Stalk crossed**; others term it a **Cross couped,** the top, or **higher Stem Bottony.** Such a bearing hath *Clopton*, or *Clapton*, *viz.* A. a Cheveron S. surmounted of another Losengy, O. between 3 such V. after the same manner may the **Stalks** or **Slips** of other **Leaves, Flowers,** or **Fruit**, be born in Arms which may be a sufficient difference to distinguish Coats of Families.

LX. He beareth Gules, a **Spaniel Dog in his Ire,** or **Incensed, passant** to the **sinister,** and **regardant,** Argent. Some term it a Dog, **Looking back and snarling.** This is a fit Badg to bestow upon such who are of a Dogged and curish-churlish disposition that nothing pleaseth, of which there is too many of that nature in the World.

B. such a Dog A. is born by *Doggire*.

[ ]

LXI. He beareth Or, a **Lyon Rampant** with hi Body **in full aspect,** to the sinister his four **Feet extended** (or in an **Assaulting,** or **Preying posture** with a full and open Body) Such a Lyon as this is born by the name of *van Saltenheim*. These two Creatures in these said postures *viz.* the Dog and Lyon, if they were in one Field might fitly be blazoned a Dog passing fearfully from a Lyon, yet so that by his looking back and **Snarling,** he indeavours to defend, and secure his posteriours: and on the other side the couragious Lyon at all oppertunities is ready to seize upon his Adversarie. These are fit Emblems of gallant Spirits, which though they have power or not to assault, yet have pollicy to defend and make a safe retreat.

LXII. He beareth Argent, a **Man-Lyon Rampant to the sinister, Honored** or **Crowed,** Or. Born by the name of *Manlion*. This is called a Man-Lyon, because of having a **Manly Face,** and **Beard**; of which kind of double or fixtious Creatures I have formerly spoken and shewed the cause of their so naming, *chap.* 9. *numb.* 18.

A. such a Manlion Rampant S. Face proper, Honored O. is the Coat and Crest of *Funcken* of *Ausperg*.

O. such another Rampant to the Sinister S. with Beard and Face proper, Wreathed about the Temples A. and G. Is born by the name of *Wenger* of *Bavaria*.

LXIII. He beareth Argent, a **Man-Leopard gardant passant** to the Sinister, Gules, **Face** proper, born by *Manpard*. This is also by some termed a **Man-Lion,** and such a Creature drawing up his right Paw Sable, **Gorged** with a **Crown,** Or, is the Crest, *ab Antiqo*, of the Lord *Pagett*, Baron of *Beaudefort*, in *Staffordshire*.

G. the like O. is born by *Dereux*.

LXIV. He beareth Sable, a **Lion sarcelled** (or **divided through out**) and set in Salter, the **Dexter surmounting.** This is born by the name *Sarcellon*. Thus the *Dutch* often bear Coats of Creatures sawed or cut through the middle from head to tail.

G. such a Lion divided in Salter A. crowned O. is born by *Ammon* of *Brunswick*.

A. a Goat so divided, and set in Salter, respectant, S. is born by *Halbachs* in the said Province of *Brunswick*.

LXV. He beareth Azure, a **Lion Rampant** to the **sinister,** having his tail between his feet, and elevated over his Shoulder, Argent. Born by the name of *Hartless*. This is also termed a **Lion Rampant coward,** carrying his **Tail upon his Shoulder,** see *chap.* 7. *numb.* 12. 13.

A. such a Lion G. is born by *Cordale*.

Per pale G. and O. such a Lion rampant, with his tail elevated as high as his head, and crowned counterchanged, is born by *Schetzel* of *Alsatia*, Also by *Zur Merxhausen*.

LXVI. He beareth Vert, a **Wolf** to the **sinister passant**, Argent, with a **Naked Man** in his mouth, proper. Or after others (and that more Artist like) holding a **Naked Man** by the middle, in his mouth: Or else, in his mouth a **Naked Boy**. This is born by the name *Wolfmaine*.

S. the like with a Naked Child A. is born by *Van Wolffachsen*.

The like all proper, is the Crest of *Strange*.

A Tiger, with a Mans Leg couped above the Knee, A. is the Crest of *Chicheley* of *Wimpley*.

A Cat Saltant to the sinister, A. with a Mouse in his mouth S. is born by *Katzen*.

LXVII. He beareth Gules, an **Hare Sejant** to the **sinister**, Or, playing on a pair of **Bag-Pipes**, Argent, by the name of *Harbell* or *Harebell*.

LXVIII. He beareth Argent, an **Ape sejant in his Pride**, or in **full Aspect**, proper. Born by the name of *Sedape*, or *Setape*. Of the several ways of Blazoning of Creatures in this manner, with the full Breast and Body towards one, I have declared formerly *cha. 7. n 8. and cha. 9. n 3.* to which I shall referre you.

LXIX. He beareth Sable, an **Amphisiben-Scorpion reversed**, Or. born by the name of *Duhed*. which in *Wales* is called *Di-Pen*, that is in *English Two-Heads*.

This **Scorpion** is of a different nature and makeing to that mentioned *cha 9. n 87. & cha 18. n 99.* This being double headed, a Head before and an other behind; Of these kinde of **Double Headed Creatures**, and why termed **Amphisiben creatures**, I have shewed it formerly, *cha 12. n 76.* Some in the blazoning hereof terme the Taile, **Imbowed & Debrused**, the Head to the Sinister.

The like Scorpion A. betw: 2 Horns Chequie A. & B. is the Crest of *Sherington*.

Also the like Reversed with the headed Taile Imbowed, or Circled A. is the crest of *Sherrington*.

LXX. He beareth Argent, a **Wivern Couchant**, to the Sinister, holding up his left foot, the Tail **reversed** (or **dejected**, **Imbowed**, Gules. By the name of *Weeverton*.

A. The like Wivern rampant to the sinister, his tail Torqued Imbowed V. casting Fire out of his mouth, is born by *Burghausen* of *Bavaria*. Also by the name of *Schall*.

LXXI. He beareth Argent, a **Mole**, proper, by the name of *Twisselton*, of *Craven*. This I have caused to be set here, being more exact and liker the **Mole** than that which is in *chap. 10. numb. 7.*

Also A. 3 such S. is born by the name of *Twisselton*.

A. a Cheveron between three such S. with the difference of a Third House, is the Coat of my very worthy Friend, which I am bound to honour for his many favours, *George Twisleton*, of *Llier* and *Clunock* in the County of *Caernarvan*, Brothers Son to Sir *Thomas Twisleton* of *Barlow*, in the East Riding of *Yorkshire*, Knight.

LXXII. He beareth Argent, a **Fox currant** to the **Sinister**, with a **Goose** on his Back, and the **Neck in his Mouth**, proper. This for brevity is Blazoned a **Fox and Goose**, and generally is thus drawn with the head in his mouth, and the body of the Goose cast over his back, that thereby he may be the more apt and abler to go or run away with his stollen Prey. This is born by the name of *Foxwist*.

B. the Fox thus Currant in Bend with a Goose A. is the Arms of *Foxfild*.

O. the like in Bend, with a Duck in his mouth, proper, is born by *Van Brantstein*.

LXXIII. He beareth Gules, two **Lions Paws couped under the Knees**, the **Claws endorsed**, Or. Of others Blazoned, two Paws of a Lion couped below the Bendings or Joints, and **counterposed**, (else turned one from the other) this is born by the name of *Baresan*.

A. the like S. is born by *Raffensberg*, of *Bavaria*.

O. 3 such couped in triangle, S. else couped, the Paws triangular, is born by *Murnhart*, of *Switzerland*.

A. 2 such erected, the paws or claws endorsed, or contrary flected S. by *Zur-Hoy* of *Bavaria*. And also by *Hortenberg*.

Out of a Crown two such erected and griped, one S. the other A. is the crest of *Ottenberger*.

Per pale A. and B. (on the first) a Lions Paw griped, erected and couped below the joint, of the second, is born by *Van Lutticz*.

A. 2 such erected in Saker, the dexter surmounting G. is born by *Zwingenstein*.

LXXIV. He beareth G. a **demy Wolf** to the sinister **issuant**, his **feet erected** each side his head, Argent, by the name of *Betwill*. Some term this Wolf issuant **displaid**, or **extending**, or **stretching** out himself. See *numb. 61.*

Out of a Coronett O. such a Wolf S. **gripping** in each foot a Ball of Gold, is the Crest of *Van Aeswein*, of the Palatinate of *Rhine*.

LXXV. He beareth Azure, a **demy Greyhound currant reversed**, **issuant** from the dexter side, meeting the Nose of another (or the like) proceeding from the Sinister, Argent. Born by the name of *Stretch*. Some Blazon them, two **demy Greyhounds issuant counter currant**, their heads or noses meeting in Fesse; but this doth not manifest a reversion, or a turning of the dexter on top-side down; but rather have said, two **Greyhounds issuant endorsed**, their noses meeting, for if they had passed by one the other in this posture or station, then they had been absolutely **Dogs en Dos**, or **Endorsed**, having back to back.

G. 2 Greyhounds thus **meeting Paleewise**, A. collared

lared S. is the Coat Armour of *Murhalmer* of *Bavaria*, which you may Blazon thus, 2 Hounds issuant from the Chief and Base, their Noses **contrary posed**, meeting in Fesse. Or 2 Hounds issuant, meeting in Fesse, one currant to the dexter, the other to the sinister; or the Back of one to the dexter, the other to the sinister, noses meeting; nameing the station of that in chief, or dexter side first.

After this manner you will often find Coats of many *Low Country* Families and Foreign Arms thus composed of other sorts of Beasts, and set also Bendways, as well as in Fesse or Pale.

LXXVI. He beareth Vert, a **Wolfs Head** to the sinister, **couped**, Or, **holding of a Lamb** (in his mouth) Argent. Born by the name of *Werrylame*.

The like S. collared O. Lamb A. is the crest of *Wolfstein*.

A Fox **sedant**, or Wolf **sciant**, A. with a Cock in his mouth S. Comb and Wattles, G. is the Crest of *Van Dikitsch*, of *Silicians*. And with a Lamb by *Van Berlichingen* of *Frankford*.

G. a Wolf passant to the sinister, his tail **debased**, Or, **Towelled**, (or girt about the body with a **Towel**) with a Duck in his mouth, A. in chief a Rose, is born by *Nobecken*.

Some term Beasts thus **wrapped** about the Body charged with a pale or palet.

B. a Fox saliant (or currant in Bend sinister) with a Goose in his mouth A. born by *Van Dresker*.

B. on a Mount out of the Base, a Wolf rampant with a Lamb in his mouth A. by *Van Gelsdorfe*.

LXXVII. He beareth Sable, two **Or Horns couped** (or cut off) the **tops**, or ends **contrary Bowed**, Argent. Born by the name of *Hornby*. Some term them **horns erected**, **endorsed**, counterpointed, which Blazon cannot be rejected or gainsaid; see *chap.* 8. *numb.* 46. Some call them **Horns flected** and **reflected**; this is a great Bearing, and very honourably esteemed both in *England*, and *France*, and in most *European* great Families, either singly themselves, on the skalp, as I have formerly shewn, or on the Beasts; but as they are themselves take these few examples.

Out of a Coronet Or, 2 such Horns Or, with three Peacocks feathers issuant on both sides proper, is the crest of the Kingdom of *Denmark*.

On a Torce A. and S. 2 Horns A. on a **Skalp**, O. is the crest of the Lord *Chenie* of *Toddington*.

2 Horns per Fesse S. and A. **contrary changed**, is the Crest of *Van Hornberg*, of *Alsatia*. And the like **contrary changed**, O. and B. is the crest of *Dettingen*. Also V. and A. by *Hohenfels*.

2 Horns triparted S. A. and G. is the crest of *Walsz*. And O. V. and A. by *Witstat* of *Hagenbach*.

2 Horns quadruparted S. O. G. A. is the crest of *Opfengen*.

2 Horns G. is the crest of *Reinhartswell*. And S. by *Wasenpach*. And A. by *Poppen*.

A. 2 such G. is the Coat of *Dortzer*, of *Bavaria*.

2 Horns, one G. the other A. is the crest of *Imthurn*. And one B. the other Barry G. and A. by *Holheim*. And one V. the other A. by *Waller*.

LXXVIII. He beareth Gules, an **Hounds Head** with a **Falcons Beak issuant** in Base, Argent, by the name of *Houndseck*.

O. the like S. Beak and Ear A. is quartered by *Aerburg*, a *German* Family.

LXXIX. He beareth Vert, a **Griffons head issuant**, Argent, the **Ears converted into Horns erected**, and **Tips Imbowed**, Or. Born by the name *Grifforne*. Some call this an **Oppinicus head Horned**; or a **Falcons head Horned**; but its proper name is a **Tragoponads head**, which is an *Ethiopian* Bird with horns; see *chap.* 12. *numb.* 84.

G. the like couped, A. is the coat of *Rambseider*, of *Bavaria*.

LXXX. He beareth Azure, a **Griffons head erazed** Argent, having **Flames** of Fire out of his **mouth** and **Ears**. Born by the name of *Divell*.

Per Fesse G. and O. the like to the Sinister **counterchanged**, is the Coat Armour of *Tevfell Van Pirckersee* in *Bavaria*.

LXXXI. He beareth Gules, an **Unicorns head couped**, Or. Three such is born by the name of *Paris* of *Chester*, quartered by *Hope*, of *Queen-Hope*, in *Flint-shire*, of whom is descended *George Hope*, of the said place, Esquire; this present Year High Sheriff of the said County, 1687. I have set this Unicorn down here only to shew the different ways between the Foreign Countreys and ours; they generally Draw the Horn down the Brow and Face of the Beast, and we lifted up from the forehead, as you may see *chap.* 9. *numb.* 30. 31. Of their Coats thus Drawn, I could give examples innumerable, only let these few suffice.

G. such a Unicorn saliant, A. is born by *Thengen*, a *Dutch* Family.

O. the like S. born by *Ruseck*, a Noble Family in *Germany*. And S. and O. by *Strolyn*.

Out of a Coronet, a demy one A. is the Crest of *Linggenthall*, of *Tyrole*.

B. a demy one saliant, O. is the Coat and Crest of *Van Croaria*; also by *Van Mont*.

LXXXII. He beareth Vert, a **Goats head couped**, Argent, **Horned**, Or. Born by the name of *Goater*. This is also the *Netherlanders* way of Drawing their Goats horns, not backward as we do, as you may see *chap.* 9. *numb.* 20. 22. 24, 25. but hanging down the neck to the back, as the example sheweth.

Per pale S. and A. such a head counterchanged, is the Coat and Crest of *Pucher*, of *Brunswick*.

Per Bend sinister B. and O. a demy one saltant, counterchanged, is born by *Van Stoten*.

Out of a Coronet, a demy such S. is the crest of *Van Castelmur*.

G. the like Goat saltant to the sinister A. is born by *Adelsfreidt*, a noble *German*.

LXXXIII. He

*

LXXXIII. He beareth Argent, a **Mantygers head Bearded**, to the sinister, and **couped**, Or, the **Face** proper, **Horns** of the first, **tipped**, Sable. By the name of *Elthree*. This is another kind of Mantyger, contrary to that mentioned *chap. 9. numb.* 17. 18. The like Creatures to this, are the Supporters (of old) to the Earl of *Hastings*; after that he bore them with Mens Ears; but now of late they are set forth (in the *Treatise of Honour and Nobility*, published by *Richard Blome*) only with **Mens Faces, Bearded**, and **Crined**, or **Curled Locks, Lion-like Bodies**, sans Mains; or **Leopards Bodies**, as *numb.* 63.

LXXXIV. He beareth Argent, a **Babons head** to the sinister, with a **curled or hairy scalp, couped**, by the name of *Babine*. These kind of Creatures are seldom born in Arms but with full Faces, yet some there are thus born, from whence I took this and the next Figures, and the rather because of their curled or hairy heads, which is contrary to the way we now draw them, as you may see *chap.* 10. *numb.* 1. 2, 3.

B. 3 such O. Faces proper, is born by *Bletzo*.

LXXXV. He beareth Sable, a **Curled Babons head**, to the sinister, **crazed**, Or, **Face** proper. By the name of *Bilston*.

The like proper, is the crest of *York*.

LXXXVI. He beareth Argent, a **Seales fore-foot**, issuant out of dexter chief, Sable. Born by *Sealsotheim*.

Or, 3 such couped Sable, is born by the name of *Dorsett*.

LXXXVII. He beareth Argent, the **Hinder foot** of a **Seale**, or **Sea Calf, erected** out of Base, Sable. Born by the name of *Salefoot*. Of these Feet see more *chap.* 10. *numb.* 19.

LXXXVIII. He beareth Vert, the **Horn** of a **Bonicon Bowed Imbowed**, the root end **Bottony**. Born by the name of *Morphaze* or *Moreface*. Some term it in pale flected and reflected; others in the form of a *Roman* S, and in many of the *Dutch* and *German* Coats who bear it much after this form, it is termed a Goats horn **curved recurved**, that is, a turning again contrary to another turn, or Bowing which it had before.

Per Fesse G. and A. such a Horn counterchanged, is born by *Siewein*, the crest the same.

A. two such **endorsed**, or **contrary Imbowed**, S. is born by *Van Fravenfelt*.

A. such a *Horn* bowed to the sinister S. tipt O. is born by *Van Adoltzheim*: And bowed to the dexter, is born by *Van Aulenbach*. And the *Horn* S. by *Van Fechenbach*.

Out of a Coronet O. two such **Horns Bowed**, the points turned inwards into a semicircle; the imbossing or swelling **Alternately** V. and A. is the crest of *Hellin*, or *Helln* of *Francford*.

LXXXIX. He beareth Argent, out of Base, two **Lions Legs erected, endorsed**, the Paws **counterbowed**, Gules. Born by the name of *Berlin*. See more of this kind of Bearing, *numb.* 73.

2 such **erected endorsed**, O. is the crest of *Zwingenstein*.

In the chief of this square, is the *English* manner of **conjoined Wings**, contrary to those drawn by the *German* and *Spanish* Heralds, as may be seen by comparing them *chap.* 13. *numb.* 76. and these together. and are by us Blazoned two **Cherubs Wings extended** and **conjoined**, on the dexter **Ponion** a Cross Patee, and the sinister an Eagles head. Born by the name of *Favourite*. Some Blazon this only a **Cherubs Wings** adorned with a Cross Patee and Eagles head on the point of the Ponion; and so it may without any other terms, if it be compared to the Cherubs Wings in *chap.* 1. *numb.* 24. which is the right and antient way of drawing the Cherub.

XC. He beareth Azure, a **Fork Fish**, (or a **Puffen Fish**) **erected**, the **Tail imbowed debruised**, Argent. Born by the name of *Fork-fish*. This Fish I have described formerly, *chap.* 14. *numb.* 28. only here in this Plate give you the form and shape of it.

XCI. He beareth Or, a **Sea Testicle**, or **Sea Mans Yard**, proper. This is so termed by *Randeletius* in his description of Fish, which *Gesner*, *fol.* 197. terms it a fourth kind of *Urtica*, or kind of **Sea Nettle**, or **Muskle Fish** representing a **Mans Yard**, which Pricks and Stings being touched. It is in Latine **Holothuria**, which we may English a **Prickly**, or **Prick-like Sea Fish**, the *Germans* call it a **Schnecknessel**, or **Meerschnecke schalen**, or **Stenderlich der Purperschnecken**. It is called the **Great Purple Shell Fish**, whose outward parts is hard, full of ridges, rough and stiff, being more gross, massive and closer together than in any of the other **Urtica's**, having tufts or locks of hair round about the head of it, like the hairy substance that cleaveth to **Oysters** and **Muskles**; from the interior or inward parts cometh forth long Threads of a purple colour. From this **Purple Fish** comes the best and most precious Dying stuff for dying of Silks; see *chap.* 14. *numb.* 12.

XCII. He beareth Azure, an **Antaceus**, Argent. Born by the name of *Mintleim*. This Fish is of the **Dolphin** species, which I described *chap.* 14. *numb.* 1. 2. only here shew you the exact shape of the Fish.

XCIII. He beareth Vert, a **Stork surgiant**, Argent, by the name of *Storkley*. This is by some termed a **Stork rising**, as having its Wings **disclosed** from each side the Body, and preparing for flight. See *chap.* 18. *numb.* 86. The difference between the two ways of rising of Fowl, some being drawn with the back to sight, others (as this) with the Belly to sight; some again are drawn with the Wings **complicated**; set so that the Ponion or outside of the Wing, shall be seen on the farther side of the body, standing (as it were,) that three parts of the Body or Breast may be seen, which is termed a Triam

*

Trian Aspect, as *chap.* 11. *numb.* 19. And B. such a Stork is born by *Dob.*

G. the like in trian aspect to the Sinister A. on a mount out of Base V. born by *Arnalt.*

B. the like to the Sinister A. Beak and Legs G. by *Van Vtzlingen.*

B. the like to the Sinister, with two necks Bowed Endorsed A. born by *Weiler.*

V. the like surgiant, with a Stone Ring in his Beak proper, born by *Crenchell.*

A Falcon **rowsant** to the Sinister, is the Crest of *Fuchsstein* of *Bavaria*; and *Heger* of *Brunswick*; and in these forelaid postures you shall often find **Swans, Geese, Ducks,** and several other sorts of Fowl born in Coats.

XCIV. He beareth Argent, a **Dutch pair of Wings conjoined, pendant**, Gules. Born by the name of *Grafen* or *Graften.* I have formerly treated of the several forms of conjoined Wings made after the *Dutch* and *German* mode, amongst all which mentioned *chap.* 13. *numb.* 75, 76, 77, 78. I find not any of this kind, it being absolutely like the English way of **pendant Wings conjoined**, as *chap.* 11. *numb.* 3. save this hath a **Button** or **Pomell** in the middle of the top of the Wings, which ours have not; therefore if it may not be termed a *Dutch* pair, yet we may well call them a pair of Wings **pendant, pometted, conjoined**; or **Bottony conjoined**, if it have three rounds together, as oft it is so drawn.

XCV. He beareth Gules, a **Lion Eagle displaid**, with an **hairy Tail**, Or. Born by the name of *Rucker.* Of the like to these (save in the jagged or hairy tail) I have given examples of several kinds, in *chap* 13. *numb.* 62. this I find Blazoned of old thus,

D'or un Eagle de d'argent, Test de Cane, *viz.* O. an Eagle A. with the head of a Dog. Born by the name of *John de Banlaco.*

XCVI. He beareth Azure, three **Pigeons**, Argent, their **Beaks** or **Bills in point**, (or **meeting in point**) at the Fesse, Gules. Of others it is Blazoned two **Doves respecting**, and the third **descending** from Chief. Or thus, three Birds **respectant in Triangle.** Or else a **Trien** of Birds meeting in triangle in Fesse, one in Chief, two in Base. This is born by the name of *Crober.*

A. 3 Cornish Choughs **encountring** with their Bills, is born by *Trelamere.*

XCVII. He beareth Gules, thre **Swans Necks issuant** out of Base to the Sinister, **surmounting** (or **demounting**) each other, Argent. Some term them joined side to side, others **corrected**, erected, or set together, one by the side of the other; so as to sight one stands before the other: which others term **collaterally disposed.** This is born by the name of *Tresvaine*, a *French* Family.

Out of a Coronett 3 such Necks A. is the crest of *Ranfwag.*

2 such Necks, one A. the other G. is the crest of *Van Schonaw.*

2 such to the Sinister, A. is the crest of *Homberg.*

XCVIII. He beareth Vert, out of the Base, two **Swans Necks Endorsed** and **Fretted**, Argent. By the name of *Swanick* or *Swansneck.* After this manner you shall find both Coats and Crests of Beasts and Fowls, which have long Necks thus **fretted**, or turning about one the other. *See chap.* 10. *numb:* 46.

Out of a Coronett O. two such Necks (or two demy Adders or Serpents) **Fretted open**, or at a distance A. is the Crest of *Liechtenfels.*

In the dexter Base of this square is a **Cross disjoint**, or **divided asunder** in the middle. Of which I have given examples in Crosses, *lib.* 1. *chap.* 5. *numb.* 36. which kind of Bearing is incident to most sorts of Crosses, either to be **disjoint**, or fixed to some round or square things as this example, which is thus Blazoned, Argent, a Torteaux between a Cross Patee double fitched of all four, and **disjoined**, Sable. Else a disjoint Cross, *&c.* fixed to a Roundlet. This is born by the name of *Harlingen*, see *numb.* 117. others term it **parted** in four in the middle.

XCIX. He beareth Azure, a **Galeus of Venice**, or a **Venetian Galeus**, (as *Gesner* calls it) it is of the **Dogfish** Species, of whom I have spoken before, *chap.* 14. *numb.* 55. and therefore only give you the form, which in this posture is Blazoned either a *Galeus* or *Galerus*, or a Sea **Dog Fish** of *Venice*, **Naiant**, the tail **Imbowed dejected.**

C. He beareth Gules, a **Mallet Dog Fish**, Argent. Born by the name of *Malvish*, a *Venetian* Family. This Fish I have described among the Dog-fish, *chap.* 15. *numb.* 42. and therefore shall say no more of it, only give you its shape.

CI. He beareth Azure, a **Trien of Fish** lying cross, the heads and tails **interchangably posed**, Argent, or according to Mr. *Morgans* term, three Trouts crossing-wise. *Teste a la queue*, that is lying so one upon the other, that the head of each Fish is between the tails of the other. Notwithstanding all these may pass for good Blazoning, yet give me leave to cast in my Mite of Judgment, which is to say, two **Trouts in Salter, debruised** or **surmounted** of another in **Pale**, the **Tail erected.** This is born by the name of *Trout.* These were also anciently Blazoned thus, **Pour d'Argent, tres Troutes paly-bendy-Barony de Sable.** By the name of *Troutbeck.* See *chap.* 14. *numb.* 18.

CII. He beareth Azure, the Head of a **Sea Pike**, (or more properly the head of an **Horn Pike**, or **Sea Needle**) Couped, Argent. The whole fish I have caused to be Engraven *cha:* 14. *numb:* 59. according as it was then described to me, but since I have seen the fish it selfe, whose under chop is much larger and longer then the higher, with sharpe small teeth set on both sides, below and above: The under chop is guttered haveing a thin

thin skinny membrane, that covers the hollowness between the side bones of the chop. The skin is smooth & coloured like a **Salmon**, with an Incision line on both sides the body; It hath a Fin at each side the Gills, two fins sharp pointed set together in the middle of the belly, and one large fin sharp pointed below the Neval, and an other on the back opposite to it; From which two fins runs two low small fins almost to the taile: The taile fin hath a part of the fish runing into the middle of it, & from thence the fin is forked.

CIII. He beareth Vert, two **Horts** in **Salter**, the **tailes erected** the Sinister **Surmounting**, Argent. by the name of *Mortmaine*. The like coat to this the field being Gules, is upon a Monument in St. *Mary's* Church in *Nottingham*.

CIV. He beareth Gules, a **Fish hauriant**, with **Three Bodyes**, Argent. Born by the name of *Horden*. Some terme this a **Fish Tricorporated**. Others three **Fishes hauriant Heads conioyned**. Or conioyned in the heads: or under one head.

B. 3 fish thus hanging by a String to the chief with their heads together O. is born by *Van Lotzkey*.

CV. He beareth Azure, a **Blow fish**, or a **Blower**, So called because of his continual Blowing, or rising and falling of a windy Blader under his Throat and Gills. This was shewed me by a *Fishmonger* of *Chester*, who gave it that name, But I rather take it to be a Fish of the **Chabott kind**, mentioned before *chap.* 14. *numb.* 22. all the head is of a rough bony substance, having two sharp pointed hooks on the Nose, and the like on the hinder part of the head; two skinny strings hanging down from the gills and throat; two Fins at the Gills, two round fins from the head almost to the tail, a fleshy fin below the Navel, and a streight finned tail. It is of a whitish colour, more dusky on the back, spotted with darker spots, having an incision line on both sides. This is born by the name of *Flator*, and may be a fit badg for such a person as is always venting out words, and brags of himself and the parts he is endued withal.

CVI. He beareth Gules, an **Adder Pike**, (of some called a **Sharpling** or **Netter**,) proper. It is a Fish of a soft smooth skin, with an Incision line on both sides; the belly is round, swelling out much more than the proportion of the tail requireth: It hath two smooth fins under the throat sharp ended; being rather fleshy than gristly; two triangular like fins, with sharp spines or thorns standing out at the gills; the like on the neck, from which to the end of the tail, and from the bottom of the Belly to the tail, runs a soft, short and close Fin; the tail fin round at the parting of the Fishiness, and streight at the extent of it, if it end in two or three points they are very small; it hath a short thick head and blunt nose, the under jaw being longer than the top; the mouth is not streight forwards into the head, but tendeth downwards.

CVII. He beareth Argent, a **Sea Hen Fish**, proper. This is born by the name of *Lumby*. This Fish is so called by our *Cheshire* Fishers, but for the shape and make of it, I take it to be of the **Dybe**, or **Lump fish** species, and doth exactly answer that called the **British Dybe Fish**, described *chap.* 14. *numb.* 29.

CVIII. He beareth Azure, a **Swine fish of the Sea** (or a **Mare Swine**) Argent. This is such a kind of Fish, and of such a Nature, that divers Authors have given it several and distinct names. By the *Greeks* it is called **Capriscus**, by the *Latines* **Caper**, **Aper**, **Porcus**, **Sus**, **Mus**, that is, either a **Goat**, **Boar**, **Pork**, **Sow** or **Mouse**; by *Randeletius* it is called **Porcus Piscis**, but *Gesner* doubts of it, thinking it rather to be a River Fish than of the Sea, or of the River *Nile*, which the *Germans* term the **Round Peatch**. *Bellonius* saith the **Aper** hath no scales, *Rondeletius* that it is full of scales, yet saith the **Aper** and the **Capriscus** almost come together as the same, or of a near relation as to Fishes; for the skin is hard and rough, which Workmen in Wood, use to polish and make smooth their work; it hath two fins on the back, the former fortified with pricks, the other more pliable; the gills not to be seen, having no appearance of such; the eyes rising out of the head, the Mouth small, in which are most strong and sharp teeth; the body is round almost, having some little flatness, the skin is lined Latise or crosswise.

There is another kind of this **Swine Fish** or **Goat Fish**, which hath also a hard and rough skin, or scaly, but not by incision lines; it hath a Nose long and obtuse, after the manner of a **Sow**, but wanteth Teeth; it hath many firm prickles or thorns in the fins of his belly, near the tail are three short and sharp ones. It hath its name from his snout, bristly fins, and grunting voice, of a **Sow Fish of the Sea**, or of the River *Acheloamae*.

CIX. He beareth Argent, a **Cephalus** or **Pollard**, proper. This Fish I have briefly described before *chap.* 15. *numb.* 68. to which add this Figure and farther relation. It is of the **Mugil** species for shape of Body and number of Fins, having a great head, and full of round scales from the nose end to the tail fin, with several incision lines down the sides of it. The *Germans* call it a **Meerallt**. This is a Fish, that being frighted hideth its head, then thinketh all the rest of the body is safe.

CX. He beareth Sable, the head of an **Attilus**, Argent. This is a Fish living in the River *Padus*, it is of the **Sturgion** kind, and grows to that bigness, that some of them weigh a Thousand Pounds; it with the **Starry Antaceus**, mentioned *chap.* 14. *numb.* 6. wants its under chop, three or four strings hanging down from the inside of the higher, the back is hooked, the Fin at the gills gristly, and so are the other on the lower part of the Back, Belly and Tail. The *Italians* call it **Storna** and **Attina**, the *Germans* call it the **grosser** sort of **Hausen** or **Stozen**.

CXI. He beareth Azure, a **Sea Flea**, Or. It is so called, not from its form and likeness to a **Land Flea**, but from its likeness in nature, in troubling and infecting the **Fish** in the Sea, as **Fleas** molest Animals on the Earth. It hath a human ridiculous Face like that of an Ape,

Age, the other parts are like to **Locusts** in a shell or crust, having many incisions; the *Germans* call this a **Herrstohe.**

CXII. He beareth Argent, a **Lock** or **Tuft** of brown **hair.** Born by the name of *Harvile.*

CXIII. He beareth Sable, a **Combe** Argent, on a **Lock of Golden Hair.** This Coat of old pertained to Sir *Le Bloud* Kt. one of the order of King *Arthurs* round Table.

G. 3 Combs O. the Locks A. belongs to *Combare.*

CXIV. He beareth Argent, an **Heart** (or **Mans-heart**) **couped** in the **Vein,** or having a part of the Vein; but the most skillful Artist term this, an **Heart,** couped in the **Coronary** or **Crown Vein,** or cut through the **Master,** or **Heart Vein.**

Parted per Cheveron A. and S. two such Hearts countrchanged. Is born by *Creby.*

CXV. He beareth Azure, a **Mans face, Hair pendant, Beard forked,** having three **Sun Beames** issuing from each side his head, proper. Born by the name of *Zur Sunberg.*

On a Torce or Wreath of his colours A. and B. such a head is the Crest of the Lord *Hilton.*

CXVI. He beareth Azure, a **Mans head couped below the shoulders,** with a **Fillet** about his **Temples, Cloathed** and **Garnished** Or, **Winged on the shoulders,** Argent. Born by the name of *Messenger.* This is by some termed **Mercuryes head couped at the shoulders,** his Temples **filleted,** and thus it is coyned on the old *Roman* Money, where my Author in his note upon the Coyns, call him **Mercury** the **Minister of the Gods,** and young **Priest of the People.** See *Jacobus Gutherius de Veteri Jure Pontifico Romæ, pag.* 222.

CXVII. He beareth Gules, two **Arms issuant out of Base bowed,** the **Sleeves** Azure, **Turned up** Argent, **Hands** holding of a **Roman Priests Lamp** or **Torch,** Or: **Flamant** proper. Born by the name of *Pestull.* This kind of burning light, the *Romans* called a **Facula,** or **Facul,** with which the grave Matrons and vestal Virgins, were wont to stand about the Alter to Sacrifice to the honor of *Augustus.* These were stamped upon the *Roman* Coyn, as Symbols of the Priests Function, and the Divinity of *Augustus:* see the *Roman* Coyns set forth by *Jo. Hemelarius, pag.* 17. *tab.* 4. 5.

In the Dexter chief of this square, is a certain form of **Crosse,** (or **Flower** if I may so call it) which I have very often found in Seals fixed to old Deeds, some made of **plain Leaves,** others with **Leaves** and **pointes,** others again with **Branches** only, **in crosse,** some with a **Ball** between them, and others again having **Pointes** or other **Flower on stalks** set between the branches as in this Example, which blazon thus. He beareth Gules, a **Roundlet** between four **Palm Branches in crosse,** (or 4 branches in crosse fixed to a Ball) Argent, between each a **Pointe,** Or. This was the Seal of *Ric. le Walens* to a Deed of *Sd:* and of *Agnes* the Relict of *Jo. de Derbey* of *Chester,* in *Ed.* 1. time with diverse more, both Men and Women.

In the Sinister chief of this square is set down the ancient form and fashion of a **Lilly,** or **Flower de lis,** as it was drawn in those days and engraven on Seals, as I have seen many; and according to our way of blazoning may be termed thus, a **Lilly,** or **Flower de lis, bloomed** or open in the top, and **couped** in the **bottom** with **Grassy threeds** proceeding from between the Leaves of the Flower: And was the Seal of *Andrew* the Son of *Ralph* a Priest, who lived in the time of King *Jo.* and *H.* 2. *Phillip de Orreby* being then Justice of *Chester.*

CXVIII. He beareth Argent, two **Arms issuing out of Base bowed,** and **crossing** at the Wrists, **Sleeves** Gules, **turnings up** Or: the Hands holding each a **Laurell Leaf,** Vert. Born by the name of *Lensenberge.*

Out of a Coronet O. 2 such **Arms crossed, Sleeves quarterly** O. and S. **turn up's** A. hands holding each a **Peacocks tail.** Is the Crest of the Earl of *Anhaldt* in *Germany.*

CXIX. He beareth Sable, a **Flame of Fire out of Base,** with an **Hand issuant** therefrom, proper. This is one manner of blazon; but the best is thus, an **Hand erected** out of a **Flame, issuing out of base:** or a **Hand** in a **Flame of Fire issuant** from the base. Born by the name of *Flamain.*

CXX. He beareth Gules, a **Mans Leg couped,** in the **Thigh reversed,** the **Knee bowed,** and the **Foot** in the **Ancle cut off,** or **removed,** Argent. Born by the name of *Slowman.* Some again gave it a more larger blazon, saying a **Leg couped reversed,** the **Knee imbowed,** and **Foot dislocated,** or **removed.** Others a **Leg in fesse,** the **Thigh couped** and **reverted,** and the **Foot serrated** & **removed:** this term (**remove**) is used to any thing that being whole, is either cut off, slipped down, or removed a little lower then it should be, as in *lib.* 1. *chap.* 6. *numb.* 28 where the thing is not **parted from;** but set together at the **extremity,** or **last partings.**

CXXI. He beareth Sable, a **Womans head, three quarters faced, couped,** in the Neck (or a Womans head **decollated,** or **cut off**) **dressed, adorned,** or **attired** with a plain **turn up Quoife,** Argent. This is born by the name of *Doll.*

S. 3 such proper, born by the name of *Shee* or *Shae.* The like I find quartered by *Holland* of *Clifton* in the County of *Lancaster,* and *Sutton* in the said county: which Heads I find drawn of old several ways, somtime only with **curled hair,** others with a **quoife** as this is, and others as *chap.* 17. *numb.* 32. and this next example following.

CXXII. He beareth Azure, a **Womans head** three **quarters faced, couped** in the shoulders proper, **attired** with a **Tail-hood,** the hinder part **Infula ways** Argent, **fretted** Sable. Is born by the name of *Orkell.* This hath anciently been blazoned a three **cornered Hood,** with a **Net work Tauil,** or **Head tire.**

The like was the old Crest of Sir *Richard Langton* Baron of *Newtown*, and Lord of *Walton* in *la Dale* in the county of *Lancaster*, *viz.* The Face proper, the Hood O. Fretted S.

CXXIII. He beareth Vert, three **Hand conjoyned hand in hand**, proper. This is the Impression of the Coyn set forth in the time of *Valerianus*, *Gallienus* and *Salominus*, three *Cæsars* at once; who in Memory of their co-partenship in the Empire, caused three naked Hands thus to be joyned with this inscription, CONCORDIA TRIUM AUGUSTORUM: which *Johannes Hemelarius* in his note upon the ancient *Roman* Coyn, terms three Right hands in one knot, fitted together.

3 such like A. in a Field G. is born by *Mainane*.

CXXIV. He beareth Azure, a **Womans head issuant out of Base** proper, **attired** with a knot of Ribbons on her Fore-head, and a **Coronet Settee**: the top of the Head, and hinder part set with the like Ribbons; a Neck-lace of Ruby, **cloathed** Gules **Garnished** Or. Born by the name of *Folly*. This kind of Hood or Head attire called a **Cornet** or **Coronet**, is that part of it as covers the Head, and by doubling it makes it stand at a great height both above and besides the Face; but the **Settee** is another dress entire from the Coronet, which hangs down from the top of the head below the breasts, and is generally laced on both sides and ends, or else all wrought with Needle-work, and edged with the same: This is a great fashion amongk *English* Gallants now, 1686. Some draw the **Settees** so as that part which compasses the Head to the Ears, shall stand up in Ruffs, as *numb.* 126. Somtimes with a corner Peak upon the top of the head, as this figure in *numb.* 124. Somtime standing out in the sides, and falling in the middle, as the example *numb.* 127. and somtimes standing round the head, and to the ears plain, or a little crisped, for 8 10 or 12 inches high, the higher the more Gallant.

CXXV. He beareth an **Heart** between the small of a **Mans** two **Legs**, with the **Hands erect & conjoyned** to them in the knee place, proper: in a Field Gules. Such a bearing as this is in the Parish Church of *Okeham* in the County of *Rutland*, in the Nave of the said Church, but whose Coat it is I find not. The **Legs** and **Hands** to be thus **connected** or **joyned together** is preternatural, yet in Arms it is no strange thing; seeing I have in former examples, *cap.* 11. 7. and 13. 1. and 18. 107. given Coats of such like bearings, as Legs and Wings in Fowl, which is one and the same as Legs and Hands in Men. Some blazon it a **Mans heart** between his Legs, with hand **erect connected**.

CXXVI. He beareth Gules, the **Model** of a **Roman Woman, seated in the Base, Pendants** in her Ears, **Pearls** or **Neck-lace** about her Neck, with a **Ruffle**, or **Ruff-like Quoif** on her head, and a **Ribbon** behind Argent. This I call a **Roman Model**, because after this manner they were used, & our stone Cutters do at this day cut the form of **Men** & **Womens face**, with a part of the Breast; either with a Mantle, Scarf, or Roman dress, without Arms, & so set it on a Basis, or Monumental Pillar, for sight or shew; as may be seen in many Models of the *Romans*, & **Monument** of the dead **erected** in our Churches.

CXXVII. He beareth Argent, a **Womans face**, her **Fore-head adorned** with a **knot of diverse coloured Ribbons**, the Head with a **Ruffle Quoif**, set in **Corners**, and the like Ribbons behind the Head. This is a **Fashion-mongers head, tricked** and **trimed** up according to the Mode of these times, wherein I am writing of it: And in my judgment were a fit Coat for such Semsters, as are skil'd in inventions; but what do I talk of Arms to such, by reason they will be shortly old, and therefore not to be endured by them, whose brains are always upon new devises and inventions! but all are brought again from the old, for there is no new thing under the Sun, for what is now hath been formerly.

CXXVIII. In this quarter I shall present you with two **pair of Hands, conjoyned** they are not, but in a **Salter form**, and in as civil and modest, comely & devout a posture, as possibly can be born: those pair in chief you may blazon thus. He beareth Sable, two Hands **reversed Salter-ways**, the **Dexter surmounting** Argent. These Hand supposing them joyned to the Arms, and thus crossed before the whole Body, will fall to be about the top of the belly under the breast, which is the place where both Maids, and modest Women, and Wives, usually bear their hands, and generally (nay universally) in this same posture; and therefore is a fit Coat, or Cognizance, for the name of *Gravity* or *Modesty*.

Them in Base you may blazon thus: He beareth Azure, two **Hands in Salter**, the **Dexter surmounting** Argent. These Hands (also as I said before) supposing them to be joyned to the Arms, and thus crossed their place of rest would be then just before the breast, in which place & posture, they are the emblem of Meekness, & Piety. And when gentle poverty the mother of Humility hath raised somuch Money, and gotten to the honor of being that, which the World calls a Gentleman, this will be a noble Coat well befitting the name.

CXXIX. He beareth Vert, a **Busiee** proper. This is a very strange kind of Creature much after the form of an **Ape**, and of a brown dusky colour, with a whitish Belly, and the inside of his Legs, and Jaws: with a white circle round the Eyes, which is over the Eyes black, as if a peak came down the top of the Nose; the Nostrils & all about the higher Chap is whitish. It hath a short Nose, round Ears, a thin Body, Feet like hands of a Man, with such Nails, and Table lines in the Palms, a very long tail, much too long for the bigness of the Body, and is like a Cat, which he draweth on the ground. This was shewed as a Raritie (with the next following) in our City of *Chester* at Midsummer, 1687. and was said to be brought from the Country of the Great MOGUL: it was so gentle that it might be managed by a young child.

CXXX. He beareth Gules, an **Anti-bear** proper. This Creature was bred in the *West-Indies*, and by his shape and proportion to be of the like quality to our **Ferrets** here in *England*; for it is of a long slender thin Body, no long Legs, but of a middle Station, the Feet are divided into short Toes, with long sharp Claws before, & on a Foot, which stands out from the Foot a great length, the Claws behind

behind are not so long: the Head is long, especially from the Eyes to the Nose, which turns up at the end like a Swins: the whole form of the Head resembles a Fox, save in the Ears which are round and peld like a Rats; the Tail is about thrice the length of the Body and is like a Cats, roade with a light grey and a black grey; the Head and Body is grey or Badger colour, the Belly Throat, and inner part of the Thighs is white. It is scarce so tall as a Cat, but longer bodied, and very Gentle and Tame.

There is a Creature called an **Ant-Bear**, described before in *chap* 10. *numb.* 51. but whether it be this there ment, I cannot rightly Judg.

Terms of *Herauldry* and *Blazon*, in these three last Chapters of this Book; with the Places Cited where Explained.

A

Alternately, 18, 19.
Aversant, 17. 37. *Attired*, 17. 32.
Anatomy, 17. 84. *Assaulting*, 19. 61.
Adorned, 17. 16. 69. 13. 12.
Ascendant, 18. 4.
Annodated, 19. 6. 12. 17, 18.
Aspect, 19. 61. 67. 68. 93.
Arras-wise, 18. 92.

B

Beard, 17. 4. *Biparted*, 18. 141.
Biting the Tail, 19. 3. & 18. 102.
Bowed, 19. 88. 117. 118. 120.
Botony, 19. 88 94.
Bowed Imbowed, 19. 88.
Burning bush, 19. 35.

C

Crowned, 17. 14. & 19. 62.
Couped at the Shoulder, 17. 26. 9. 10.
Couped under the Shoulder, 17. 26. 33.
Couped, 19. 30. 32. 45.
Crined, 17. 30. 31. 10.
Cloathed, 17. 31. 72. *Corps*, 17. 68.
Contrary Imbowed, 18. 55. 56. & 19 11.
Conjoyned, 18. 43. 44. & 19. 18 28. 40. 94. 89. 104.
Contrary posed, 18. 45. (14.
Close Couped, 19. 7. *Crawling*, 19. 8.
Creeping, 19. 8. 14. *Complexed*, 19. 18.
Contrary bowed, 19. 11. 49. 31.
Currant, 19. 28. 72. 75. 76.
Counter-Imbowed, 19. 31. 40. 43.
Counter Raguled, 19. 45.
Counter Flory, 19. 44
Contrary Flected, 19. 48. 73.
Counterposed, 19. 58. 73.
Contrary, 19. 58. 59.
Counter-Currant, 19. 75.
Counter-Pointed, 19. 77.
Counter-Changed, 10. 80. 82.
Couchant, 19. 70. *Converted*, 19. 79.
Counter-Charged, 19. 77.
Curved Recurved, 19. 88.
Complicated, 19. 93.
Coerected, 19. 97. *Connected*, 19. 125.
Collaterally Disposed, 19. 97.
Contrary Imbowed, 18. 51.

D

Dismembred, 17. 78. *Dorsed*, 17. 37.
Discrevelled, 17. 31. 30.
Decollated, 17. 8. 3.
Dislocated, 19. 120. 121.
Double Queved, 18. 74.
Distilling, 17. 53.
Double Nowed, 19. 10. & 18. 106.
Dorse en dorse, 19. 40.
Debrused, 19. 49. 101.
Dejected Imbowed, 19. 70.
Demy, 19. 74. 75. *Debased*, 19. 76.
Displaid, 19. 95. *Descending*, 19. 96.
Dexter side, 19. 37. 38. 41. 50.
Disposed, 19. 97.

E

Environed, 17. 10. 11. 12.
Entended, 17. 39. & 19. 4. 10. 13. 74.
Entangled, *see Intangled*.
Embowed, 19. 18. 70. *Erazed*, 19. 48.
Entwisted, 19. 6. 17.
Elevated, 19. 8. 18. 21.
Embracing, 19. 18. *Expansed*, 19. 21.
Embowed contrary, 19. 31.
Endorsed, 19. 73. 77. 98. 28.
Erected, 19. 73. 77. 98. 90. 103.
Erected endorsed, 19. 89.
Embowed debrused, 19. 90. 69.
Embowed dejected, 19. 99.
Encountering, 19. 96.
Enwrapped, 18. 62. 63. 64.

F

Front, *Frontall*, 17. 76. 12.
Flected, 18. 137. 141. & 19. 48.
Flotant, 18. 33. 121. 123.
Fouldage, 17. 35. *Fillet*, 17. 9.
Faced or Lyned, 17. 24.
Face, 17. 3. 7. 10. 11.
Fretted. 19. 3. 6. 7. *Foliated*, 19. 33.
Fructed, 19. 29. 34. *Flory*, 19. 44.
Flory counter Flory, *ibid.*
Flected reflected, 19. 48.
Full aspect, 19. 61. 67. 68.
Fretted open, 19. 98.
Flamant, *Flaming*, 19. 117. 119.
Facula, *Facul*, 19. 117.
Flying, 18. 92. 93.

G

Garnished, 17. 14. *Garment* 17. 19.
Gradually, 18. 55. 56. *Glory*, 17. 19.
Gliding, 19. 8. *Grove*, 19. 36.
Gorged, 19. 63. *Gripping*, 19. 74.

H

Head, 17. 3. 7. 10. 11.
Hand in Hand, 17. 50.
Holding, 17. 76. 63. 65.
Honored, 19. 62. *Horned*, 17. 17.
Horns tipt, *or tipt*, 19. 79. 83.

I

Imbrauthered, 17. 13. *Image*, 17. 48.
Indians head, 17. 75.
Imbowed, 18. 55. 56. *see Embowed*.
Interposing, 18. 56. & 19. 8.
Intangled, 19. 3. *Incisioned*, 19. 15.
Intricately knotted, 19. 9.
Inverted, 19. 16. *Irradicated*, 19. 29.
Invironed, 19. 30.
Imbowed to the sinister, 19. 37. 38.
Issuant, *Issuing*, 19. 43. 74. 97. 117.
In his Pride, 19. 68.
Incensed, 19. 60. *Ire*, 19. 60.
In point, 19. 96. & 18. 101.
Interchangeably posed, 19. 101.

K

Knit together, 19. 3.

L

Lined, 17. 13. 24.

M

Maine Dexter, 17. 38. *Mantle*, 17. 72.
Maine Sinister, 17. 37.
Maidens Head, 17. 29. 30. 31.
Metamorphosed, 17. 88. 89. 90.
Moors head, 17. 9.
Moulted up, 19. 29.
Moses Burning bush, 19. 35.

N

Negro's head, 17. 9. *Najant*, 19. 99.
Nowed, 19. 9. 10.
Nowed Single, or Double, 19 10
Nethered, 18 61. 62. 63.

P

Pendant, 18. 50. 51. & 17. 25. 30
Point in Point, 17. 48.
Peranick, 18. 117 118.
Piramed-wise, 19 29. 30.
Pometted, 19 94. *Pride*, *ib:* 68
Passant, 19. 60 *Posed*, *ib:* 101.
Pendant, 19. 94.

Q

Quadrisarted, 19. 77.
Quadrant, *Quaderangle*, 18. 94.
Queve, *Queved*, 18. 74.

R

Revertant, *Reverted*, 18 33 & 19
Radiant, 17. 9. (18. 120.
Radiant Scintillations, 17. 19.
Reversed, 18. 17. 101. & 19. 13. 69. 70.
Reversed Regardant, 19. 13. (75. 120.
Recursant, 18. 95 *Retorted*, 19. 7.
Reflected, 19. 48. 77. 88.
Respectant, *Respecting*, 19. 2. 7. 10.
Reguled, 19. 45. (11. & 18. 101.
Reguled, *Counter-Reguled*, 19. 45.
Ragged staves, 19. 46. *Rampant*, 19. 62
Rising, 19. 93. & 18. 86.
Rousant, 19. 93. *Recurved*, 19. 88.
Respecting in Triangle, 19. 96.
Removed, 19. 120.

S

Soul, 17. 92. *Scaleton*, 17. 84.
Shrouded, 17. 68. 83.
Sarazens head, 17. 10.
Shining, *Splendant circles*, 17. 19.
Swadling or Swadle band, 17. 72.
Subverted, 18. 17. *Supporting* 17. 62.
Starved Tree, 19. 32. (76
Single Nowed, 19. 10. *Shade*, 19. 36.
Serrated, 19. 30. 120. & 18. 84.
Surmounting, 19. 37. 38. 64. 97. 101.
Slipped, 19. 47. 48. (103.
Sejant, 19. 67. 68. *Gedant*, *ibid:*
Snarling, 19, 61. *Saliant*, 19. 76.
Semicircle, 19. 88. *Sans*, 18. 97.
Surgiant, 19. 92. & 18. 86.
Sinister, 18. 78. 97.
Statant, *Standing*, 18. 64.

T

Torce, 17. 10. 11. 12. & 19. 44.
Turning down, 18. 129. 133.
Tripartted, 17. 18. & 19. 77.
Transverse, 17. 39.
Triangle, 17. 48.
Turned up, 17. 22. *Trunked*, 17. 3.
Tergiant, 18. 86. 95. *Tyed*, 19. 49.
Twisted, 19. 4. 6. 12. *Torqued*, 19. 6. 11.
True Love knot, 19. 7. 9. 10.
Torqued imbowed, 19. 70.
Trian aspect, 19. 93. *Trien*, 19. 96.
Tesle a la quave, 19. 101.
Tricorporated, 19. 104.
Tipt. or Tips of Horns, 19. 79. 83.

V

Vested, 17. 25. *Vailed*, *ibid.*
Vulned, 17. 54. 56.
Variously appearing, 19. 5.
Volant, 19. 25. *Vertant*, 19. 40.

W

Wildman, 17. 10. & 17. 76.
Woodman, 17. 16. 76.
Wreath, 19. 44. *Wreathed*, 19. 24
Wreathed inter se, or one in another, 19.
Wreath, 17. 10. *Wood*, 19. 36. (7.
Wrapped, 19. 76.

Some Terms formerly omitted in their Blazonings, are here further Explained.

Alternately, Alternatively, time for time, or one after another, or one thing between another.

Counterposed, set together, or one to the other, or against one another.

Contrary posed, set contrary to its own standing or right position, or contrary to one another.

Counter or **Contrary pointed,** as on point of a thing set contrary to another, or past one another in their points: one point of a Sword set contrary to the other.

Counter-opposite, things set contrary one to another.

Counterchanged, or contrary changed, one colour set contrary to another, as in things that joyn not.

Counter-coloured, colours set interchangably one after another.

Collaterally disposed, when things are set side to side, so as to sight one stands before another.

Coerected, set up together, or by the side of one another.

Coambulant, walking together, or one by the side of another.

Conspicuus, Conspitiant, that is seen, or so set that it may be seen.

Coequal, things set equally together, so as they may be supposed to be, or are visibly seen.

Complicate, foulded together, or let down.

Circumflexant, bent, or bowed round, or about.

Curvant, bowed or bended.

Curved Recurved, bending of a thing one way, then another, like a Roman *S*.

Cosejant, sitting together.

Connected,

Connected, Conjoyned, things set together, joyned, made as one, see **Incorporated.**

Dejected, cast down, laid side-ways, turned downwards.
Dissevered, put or set asunder.
Doxed, things turned one from another, see **Endoxed.**
Despectant, Despiciant, a thing looing downwards.
Dovetised, one thing laid upon, or over another.
Dual, two, a pair or couple of things.
Dexter, to the **Dexter,** is a going or turning to the Dexter side.

Erected, set upright, or upwards.
Ejected, cast out.
Enter, between, as a thing to be between three or four other things.
Endoxed, things set back to back, or one from another.
Enterlaced, Fretted, Braced, Interwoven by several crossings of one another: **Imbraced.**

Fretted, things crossing and lying under and over with one another.
Fretted open, or at a **distance,** when they lye not close together, but so far off as may be seen between.
Flotant, flying abroad, as a thing blown with the Wind.
Flectant, Bowed or Bended.
Flected reflected, Bended and bended again another way.

Inverted, a thing turned inward, rowled in, see **Involvent.**
Introversion, a turning inwards.
Inversion, a turning inside out, or upside down, see **Subverted.**
Involvent, a wrapping or folding in of a thing. **Involved,** folded in.
Incurvant, a bending down of a thing.
Incorporated, made one, joyned to the same Body, see **Connected.**
Interposed, set between, or coming between one another.
Irradicated, rooted up, or pulled up by the root.

Main a Main Ambulant, Hand in Hand walking together.

Opposite side, on the contrary side, or one contrary to the side of another.
Oblique. Obliquely, side long or Eschew.

Parted, divided in the middle, or according to the number of divisions.
Plated in true Love, tyed in a Fretted knot where they go over and under one another.

Revertant, Reverted, a thing turned back to what it was turned before, see **Uertant.**
Retrogated, a thing going or turned backwards, or to have the back to sight only.
Respectant, things looking one another in the face, or looking back again.
Respicient, a looking back, looking to the sinister side, see **Regardant.**

[ ]

Reclinant, to bow or bend backwards.
Recurved, turned contrary to another turn before, turned again, see **Curved.**

Sinister, to the sinister, is a going or turning to the sinister side.
Subverted, turned downwards, or over turned.
Succedant, succeeding, following one another.
Swallowing, or **Devouring,** eating up of a thing.

Transposed, a thing set contrary to its right way, whether upwards or downwards.
Transfluent, flowing from or behind a thing.
Transverse the Fesse, over cross the Eschochion.
Trien of &c. three such or such things.

Urvant, Urved, turned or bowed upwards.
Uertant, turned.
Uertant revertant, turned and returned, like a Roman S, see **Flected.**

The Signification of the parts of Mans Body, used in Armory.

ARM, is signified Labour & Industry; in as much as that part of the Body is ordained for working having for that purpose fortified it with strong **Arteries, Nerves, Muscles,** and **Sinews:** Yet that no Man should rely on his own, or any other Mans power or industry too much, God hath forbidden us to trust to the Arm of Flesh.

Hand Gripped, signifies an offer for Revenge for some notable injury done to the person or fame of the first bearer: three Hands gripped signifies a treble revenge, but see more of the Hand, after *numb.* 41.

Hand open, signifies bounty liberality, and free heartedness ready and willing to assist in what lyeth in him, according to that of *David, Psal.* 104. 28. *Thou openest thy Hand and fillest with thy Blessings:* where freeness of Hand is, there is a Blessing.

Hand, signifies power, might, and assistance: *For God said to Moses is my Hand shortned?* as much as to say, am not I as able to save, deliver, and protect from danger now, as ever I did, *Numb.* 11. 23. *The Hand is the pledg of Friendship and Fidelity,* which was in ancient times confirmed by shaking of Hands, 2. *Kings* 10. 15.

Sometime the **Hand** signifies Vengance and the destruction and overthrow of the enemy, as *Exod.* 14. 30. 31. *And Israel saw the Egyptians dead on the Sea bank, and the great Hand which the Lord had shewed upon them:* signifying thereby the great punishment he laid on them for their sins.

Right Hand, signifies the right of succession, the Son of the Father, the Glory of the House and Family: also is the Emblem of Merrit and Strength, according to the saying of the great King. *He will send me help and deliverance by the saving strength of his right Hand, Psal.* 20. 6. & 89. 21.

Left

Left Hand, signifies a wicked noughty and rebellious Creature, a Reprobate, a Cast away, a Companion of Devils, *Matt.* 25. 33.

Finger, signifieth power, as *Exod.* 8. 19. being a part of the Hand by which it is strengthened, and enabled to work, *Luke* 11. 20.

Face, is the Emblem of Audacity and Boldness, Manhood and Courage, *Isa.* 50. 7. one that dare shew himself before the Face of his Enemy, without fear and terrour: whereas the hiding of the Face denotes fear and cowardize, horror and confusion, *Rev.* 6. 16. Somtimes it denoteth displeasure, Anger, and a forsaking of Friendship, as *Psal.* 30. 7. *Thou hid thy Face, (was displeased, took no notice of me, kept from me as an Enemy) and I was troubled.*

Eye, is an Emblem of vigilency, care and watchfulness; also of Providence and protection, *Psal.* 33. 18. *Matth.* 6 22. Direction and Instruction, *Psal.* 32. 8. as being the instrument of sight, and light of the Body, *Matth.* 6. 22.

Head, signifieth Rule, and Authority: a Supremacy over People Nations and Tongues, *Deut.* 28. 13. 44. *I will make thee the Head (chief in Power, the Governour and Ruler) and not the Tail:* (the last, or least of People) for as the Head is the highest of the Members, so it denotes a Goverment in the person, be it either in Church, State, or Family. *Psal.* 18. 43. *Ephe.* 5. 23.

Bald Head, or **uncovered**; is now in our days a sign of Servile-Reverence, Servitude and Subjection: but in ancient time was a token of freedom, and redemption from slavery; and to have the Head covered, to be in subjection, 1. *Cor.* 11. 4. 7. 15. The *Romans* made a publicke edict that the hair of Bondmen should be shaven in token of Bondage.

Covered Head, is a token of Worship and Honor in our modern times: though in former days was of slavery and subjection.

Body, is the receptakle and dwelling of the Holy Ghost, and therefore denotes purity of Life, & Holyness in conversation: and Righteousness to all, 1. *Cor.* 6. 19. So as it is not one Member but many, it signifieth a Union and Harmony in the visible Church, which in all ages and all parts of the World, make but one Body of which Jesus Christ is the Head.

Dismembred Body, signifies Rents, Divisions, Sects and Schismes in either Church or State; and denotes such a one, who delight to sow the seed of dissension amongst Brethren: thereby to deprive them of that power and strength which in Unity they enjoyed.

Blood, are drops of Humor wherein Life consisteth: and is originally from *Adam* as well in the poor as rich, and therefore those who boast most of their generous Blood, are not to price it so high a rate, but rather excell others in Virtue, since they cannot surpass them in that humour which is a like in all. **Blood** is the Emblem of Life, *Gene.* 9. 4. *Levi.* 17. 10. 11. 12. 13. 14. and therefore may signifie a person of Good disposition, whose virtues flourish most quick and lively, where iniquity inhabiteth.

Tears, are the Emblem of sorrow and heavinesse, *Lamen.* 1. 2. *Est.* 8. 3. as the wiping away of all tears, denotes a deliverance and freedom from misery and afflictions, to comfort joy and felicity, as *Isai.* 25. 8. *Psal.* 116. 8. *Reve.* 7. 17..

Hair long, is a token of Liberty and freedom, for *Clodius* (surnamed *Commatus* because of his long Hair) when he came to the Goverment of *France*, did institute a Law that the *French-men* should in common wear long Hair in token of liberty. So contrary to it, shaving (as you have heard before) off the Hair was a sign of Servile Bondage.

Skull, is the Emblem of Mortality, and therefore this kind of bearing may serve to put both the bearer and the serious spectators in mind of the frailty of their flesh, and of their last end.

Bones, as they are solid substances to sustain the Body: so they signifie a persons help and support, underproping and sustaining others, which without such help could not move from place to place.

Heart, is the Emblem of Manhood and courage, it being the Seat, Fountain, and Treasury of Life, from whence the whole Body receiveth the vital Spirits, which giveth thereto Vigor and Strength, enabling the same to perform every action: and as the Heart is long and not round; is to denote that all our thoughts and consultations ought to be seriously deliberated, and not hastily and unconsiderate, put in practice.

Heart Wounded, the Emblem of true Love: especially in that of our Saviour, who for love to his People, willingly gave his Heart to be pierced to the Death for our Demerits.

Dugs or **Womens breasts,** denoteth fruitfulness and fertility, seeing from them Men are nourished and brought up: somtime they signifie plentiful fields, vinyards, as *Isa.* 32. 12. *They shall lament for the Teats, even the pleasant Fields, and for the fruitful Vines.*

Leg, and **Thigh,** is a Member that denoteth strength, stability, expedition and obedience. It was a custom in ancient days that Servants and Children should put their hands under the thigh of him to whom they should be oblidged by Oath. So did *Abraham* cause his Servant to do; and *Jacob* his Son *Joseph.* *Gene.* 23. 2. 3. and 47. 29.

Foot couped, or **Leg couped**; as it looseth all its former strength being cut off from the Body: so Man cut off from God, looseth all his Grace Power and Felicity, which are only preserved by Union with him, but United to the Body denotes celerity and quickness, is the Messenger of News.

Things

Things of most Note in these three last Chapters concerning the Bodies of *Men* and *Women*, with the *Animal Parts*, as also of some Omissions set down in the two last especially: as,

1. Terms of Art for the several things in the Internal parts of Mans Body, mentioned in the Folio's before the Figures set down in the Copper-Plate, S. 1.

Head, 17. *fol.* 379. 380.
Eyes, 17. *fol.* 380. 381.
Nose, 17. *fol.* 381.
Mouth, *ibid.*
Tongue, 17. *fol.* 382.
Throat, *ibid.*
Ears, 17. *fol.* 382. 383.
Breast, 17. *fol.* 383.
Lungs, *ibid.*
Heart, *ibid.*
Belly, 17. *fol.* 384.
Bowels, *ibid.*
Stomach, *ibid.*
Liver, *ibid.*
Gall, 17. *fol.* 385.
Spleen, *ibid.*
Kidneys, *ibid.*
Bladder, *ibid.*
Yard *ibid.*
Cods, 17. *fol.* 386.
Stones, *ibid.*
Matrix, *ibid.*
Arse, *ibid.*
Arms, *ibid.*
Thighs, 17. *fol.* 387.

Senses as,

Feeling, 17. *fol.* 387.
Tasting, *ibid.*
Smelling, *ibid.*
Hearing, 17. *fol.* 388.
Seeing, *ibid.*
Generation, *ibid.*
Ease, *or Rest*, *ibid.*
Variouus Voices of Men, 17. *fol.* 389.

2. Terms of Art for the External parts of Mans Body: set down in the Numbers mentioned in the Copper-Plates or Section immediately following: as,

Heads, and Faces of Men, 17. 7.
Eyes, Nose, Mouth, Ears, ibid.
Hair and its colours, 17. 2.
False Hair how worn, 17. 1. 2.
Sorts of Perawicks, 18. 118.
Terms of Perawick-makers, *ibid.*
Beards fashions, 17. 4.
Arms and Hands, 17. 41.
Actions of the Hand, 17. 41.
Thighs, Legs, Feet, 17. 57.
Deformity of Legs, Feet, 17. 58.
Body, as Breast, Belly, 17. 78.
Bones in the Body, 17. 93. *with the Head*, 17. 93.
Trunk, 17. 93.
Arms, 17. 93.
Thighs, 17. 93.
Legs, 17. 93.
Feet, 17. 93.
Number of Bones, 17. 93.
Conjunction of Bones, 17. 93.

Terms for all the Veins, Muscles, Arteries in the Body: as,

Muscles, 17. 93.
Veins, *ibid.*
Veins for Bleeding, *ibid.*
Arteries, *ibid.*
Nerves or Sinews, *ibid.*

Terms for the Ages of Men and Women, 17. 73.

Men and Womens Heads how termed according to the Attire, 17. 14. to 22. 30. 31.
Sorts of Maids, 17. 73.
Sorts of Wittals and Cocolds, 17. 17.
The outward Diseases of the Body, 17. 93.
The inward Diseases of the Body, *ibid.*

The Emblems of the Animal Faculties, 17. 92. as,

Mind, 17. 92.
Will, *ibid.*
Fancy, *ibid.*
Memory, *ibid.*
Senses, *ibid.*
Passion of the Mind, *ibid.*
Vital Faculties, *ibid.*
Natural Faculties, *ibid.*
Humors, 17. 93.
Complections, *ibid.*
Outward shapes of the Body, *ibid.*
Of Sleep, 17. 68. 86.

Men Metamorphosed, 17. 88. 89. 90.
Women Metamorphosed, 17. 82.
Men punished in Hell, 17. 87.
Strange and Unnatural conceptions, 17. 91. & 18. 134. 135.
Palmestry or Chyromancy and the Lines of the Hand, 17. 94.
Several ways by which Fortunes are told, *ibid.*

Emblems of Time and part of Time, 17. 86. as,

Minutes, 17. 86.
Hours, *ibid.*
Days, *ibid.*
Night, *ibid.*
Mounths, *ibid.*
Year, *ibid.*
Time, *ibid.*
Eternity, *ibid.*

The

The description of the four Quarters of the Year 17. 87.

The Emblems of the Destinies of Man in his Life, as

Sleep, 17. 16. *Fortune, ibid.* *Destiny, ibid.*
Silence, ibid. *Honor, ibid.* *Providence, ibid.*
Fate, ibid. *Fame, ibid.* *Victory, ibid.*
The Anatomy or Scalliton of a Man, 17. 84. 85. 93. *The Emblem of the Soul*, 17. 92.
Several sorts of Escarbuncles, 18. 37. 38. 39. *Difference of Fruitage, Flowerage, Fouldage*, 17. 35.
An Alphabet or Explanation of the Terms of Art used by Anatomists at the end of the 17. Chapter.

Things mentioned in Chap. 19. under the following Numbers.

Serpents and Flyes.

Adders, numb. 2. 3.
Crested Cocatrice Serpent, numb. 6.
Beetle, numb. 19.
Green-Worm, 15. 16. 26.
Echidna, numb. 18.
Caduceus, numb. 1. 18.
Serpents, numb. 2. 3. 5. 7. 13.
Snakes, 4. 11. 13. 14.
Scarab, 19. 28.
Moth, 20.
Butterfly, 20.
Stag-Beetle, 21. 24. 25. 27.
Virgin Viper, 18.
Crab-Mouth Scarab, or Fly, 28.
Watch, 28.
Horned Beetle, or Devils Cow, 19. 22.

Trees and Plants, as

Tree, 33. 34. *Cypress*, 29.
Box, 30. *Palm*, 31.
Moses Bush, 35. *Woods*, 36.
Stocks, 45. *to* 47. *Starved Tree*, 32.
Grass, 37. 39.
Fascicul or Fascicle of Grass, 41.
Spires of Grass, 43. 44.
Leaves, 47. 48. 49. 50. 51. 52. 57. 58.
Sage, 38. *Trefoile*, 58. 59.
Sprigs, 49. 5.
Water Sprouts, 48. 50.
Flowers, 52. *to* 56.
Cullumbines, 50. *Roses*, 52.
Garland, 52. *Pink*, 53.
Blew bottle, 53. *Dulap*, 53.
Rose Camphir, 54. *Cinquefoile*, 54.
Saffron Flower, 55.
Flower de lis, 44. *Pease*, 56.
Everlasting Pea Flower, 56.

Fish, as

Seal, 83. *Sea Calf, ibid.*
Fork or Puffin-fish, 90.
Sea Testecle, 91.
Urtica. Sea Nettle, ibid.
Prick-like Sea fish, ibid.
Purple Sea fish, ibid.
Antacaeus, 92.
Galeus or Dog-fish, 99.
Mallet Dog-fish, 100. *(Needle ib.*
Sea-Pike. Horn-Pike, 102. *Sea-*
Trouts or Morts, 101. 103. 104.
Blow fish or Blower, 105.
Chalbot, 105. *Adder Pike*, 106.
Netter. Sharpling, 106.
Sea Hen fish, 107.
Brittish Orbe-fish, 108.
Swine-fish, ibid. Capriscus, ibid.
Boar-fish, ibid. Porck-fish, ibid.
Sow-fish, ibid. Mouse-fish, ibid.
Cephalus. Pollard, 109.
Mugil, ibid.
Attilus, Sturgion, 110.
Starry Antaceus, ibid.
Adena, Attina, Grosser Hausen, ibid.
Steren, ibid.
Sea-Fly. Meereflohe, 111.

Beasts in several postures.

Spaniel, 16. *(Paws*, 73. 89.
Lion, 61. *Coward*, 65. *Sarcelled*, 64.
Manlion, 62. *Mantiger of several*
Manleopard, 63. *(shapes*, 83.
Wolfe, 66. *Hare*, 67. *Ape*, 68.
Amphisiben Scorpion, 69.
Wivern, 70. *Mole*, 71. *Fox*, 72.
Wolfe, 74. 76. *Ox Horns*, 77.
Grey-Hounds, 75.
Tragoponades, 79.
Oppinicus horned, 79.
Griffin, 80. *Unicorn*, 81.
Goat, 82. *Baboon*, 84. 85.
Bonicon, 88. *Sheep*, 76.
Busiee, 129. *Anti-Bear*, 130.

Fowl.

Stork, 93. *Lion-Eagle*, 95.
Cherubs Wings, 94. 98.
Pigeons, 96. *Swans*, 97. 98.
Goose, 72

Men and Women.

Hair, 19. 112. 113. & 18. 117. 118. & 17. 1. 2.
Mans Face, & Heads, 115. 116. & 18. 134. 135. & 17. 3. *to* 8.
Arms & Hands, 117. 118. 119. 123. 125. 128. & 18. 137. *to* 140. & 17. 37. *to* 51.
Legs and Feet, 120. 125. & 18. 141. & 17. 57. *to* 60.
Heart, 114. 125. & 17. 54. 55. 56.
Womens Faces & Heads of divers fashions, 121. 122. 124. 126. 127. & 18. 119. *to* 133.
Naked Men, 66. & 18. 144. 145. & 17. 73. *to* 82.
Demy Men, Women, chap. 18. 142. 143. 146. 147. & 17. 62. *to* 67.

[ ]

GLORIA DEO PATRI DATUR.

THE THIRD BOOK OF THE ACADEMY OF ARMORY and BLAZON.

TO
The Right Honorable
THOMAS SAVAGE,

Earl Rivers, Viscount Colchester, and *Rock Savage*; and *Baron Darcy* of *Chich.*

AND

To the Right Worshipful *Richard Savage,* his Son and Heir apparent.

THough I cannot say I have exceeded others in what I have herein done, yet I may boldly affirm, that as yet none hath wrought to me; what after times may produce, I cannot tell, neither what measures they will then take, for Fancy and Invention rest in the Breasts of Ages; yet let me in the mean while be accepted into your Honours Family and Favour, and then I shall ever remain

Your most Humble, Dutiful and Observant Servant

Randle Holme.

CHAP. I.

THIS Third Book treateth of Coat Armours, which are formed of **Artificial** things, such as are Wrought or Invented by the Wit, Art, or Endeavours of Man, for the use and behoof of both Men and all living Animals.

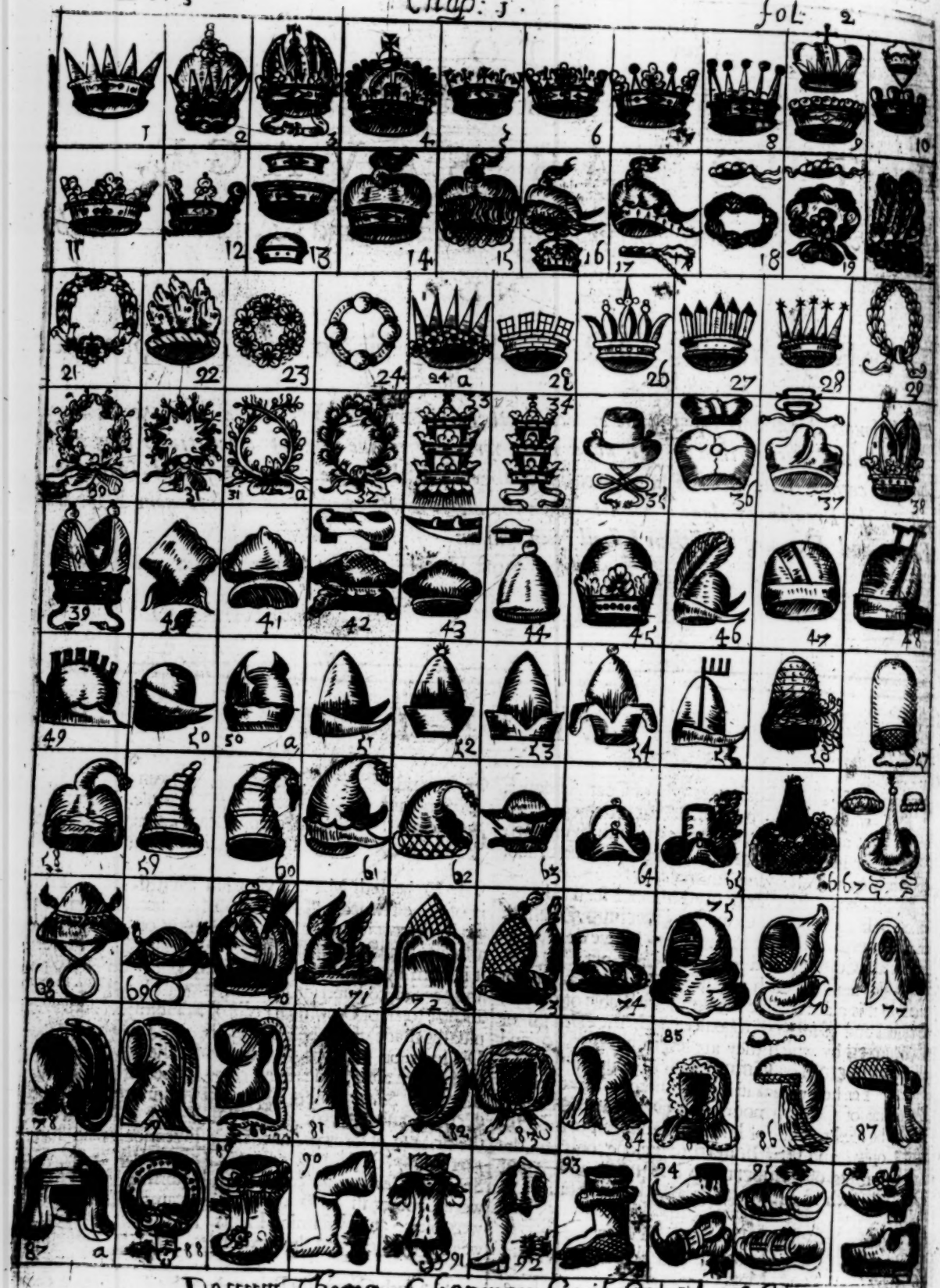
But because in this part of my Labour I shall take occasion to Blazon several Coats by **Precious Stones,** and **Planets,** as in the former part I have done it by Metals and Colours, and for brevity sake often by Letters, which stand for such and such colours: I hold it not amiss in this place to give the Reader a Table of the said **Stones** and **Planets** together, with the **Marks** or **Characters** by which they are severally expressed, and also what **Metals** or **Colours** they signify.

☞ Yet herewithal it is to be noted, That in the Blazoning of Coat-Armours with **Precious Stones,** it is to be used to none of Inferiour rank, but to the **Nobility** only; and the **Planets** to belong only to the Atchievements of **Emperours. Kings,** and **great Princes,** such as exercise Soveraign Jurisdiction.

♁	Topaz	☉ Sol	Yellow
☽	Pearle	☽ Luna	White
♈	Ruby	♂ Mars	Red
♐	Saphyre	♃ Jupiter, Jove	Blew
♑	Diamond	♄ Saturn	Black
♉	Emerald	♀ Venus	Green
♊	Amethist	☿ Mercury	Purple. Murrey
♍	Jacinth	☊ Dragons head	Tauney. Orange
♎	Sardonyx	☋ Dragons tail	Sanguine. Blood

I. He beareth Mars, a **Crown Regal,** Sol. This is of some termed a **Crown Spiral,** because from the circles thereof it runs up into sharp points or Spires. It is also called a **Crown Homager,** because of latter times it is worn by petty Kings or Princes, which do Homage and Service to Superior Powers; though it was the most ancient form of Crown we read of in Histories, and was usually made of the best of Metals, *viz.* Gold beset with Diadems or precious Stones about the circle; from whence in after time they came to be termed **Diademes.** *Selden* in his Titles of Honour, terms this a **Crown radiant,** or a **Royal Fillet Radiant,** of the first use of Crowns, and their Invention, read him *part* 1. *cap.* 8. *fol.* 156. to 173. *Laws of Nobility, fol.* 25. *Sphere of Gentry, lib.* 3. *fol.* 41. In former times they wore Crowns in form of the Sun Beams, because they were Suns, and as flaming Lights, for the whole World was led by them and their examples.

♃ 3 such Crowns in Pale ☉ born by *Bely Maure,* the last King of *Britain.*



Dominus Thomas Chapman Civit. Cent. Armigeri

B a Cross raguled and trunked betwen 3 such O. was born by *Cailus*, a Noble Man in *Wales*.

The great Duke of *Florence* in *Italy*, hath such a **Crown Radiant**, or pointed, with a Flower de lis raised in the front of it, set as an adornment to his Coat Armour.

II. He beareth Saturn, a **Crown Regal of Persia**, Sol, with a **Torce** or **Wreath about it**, Luna and Venus. This is also termed for brevity a **Crown of Persia**, or **Persian Crown**, being such a kind of Crown as it is said *Darius* King of *Persia* wore on his head when he marched against *Alexander* the Great, and is in the Persian Language called a **Cidaris**; and is no other than the foresaid **Crown Spiral** set upon an **Helmet Chased** or wrought with Imbossed work, having a rowl of Silk about the bottom of it, as the manner of **Diadems** and **Crowns** were in those ancient days.

Such a Crown O. with a Cap G. a Banner on a Staff set upon it of the same, charged with a Cressant O. supported by an Armed Arm and Hand proper, is the Crest of *Oppersdorf*.

B. 3 such Crowns is born by *Van Rodenham*.

III. He beareth Jupiter, a **Crown Mitral Imperial**, Sol, **garnished** and enriched with sundry precious Stones, proper. This is called an **Emperors Crown**, being composed both from the Sacerdotal and Regal covers of the head, the high rising Diadem of Kings, and the Priests Miter, and so partakes of both.

Such a Crown with two Penons out of it, double pointed B. charged with a Cross O. endorsed, is the crest of *Van Peischach*.

Parts of a Crown.

The **Diadem**, or **Royal Fillet**, is that part which compasseth the head, and is set with precious Stones.

The **Fillets**, are the two swellings on each side it.

The **Rising**, is the Flowers and Crosses, or what other work is raised up above the higher Fillet.

The **Arches**, are the Gold Bars turning Arch-wise from one side of the Crown, to the Flowers of the other, which Bars are set with precious Stones.

The **Pound**, is the round Ball or Globe, set on the top of the Arch.

The **Cross Patee**, which is fixed on the Globe, as an Emblem of Christianity.

The **Precious Stones** of all sorts, wherewith all the Gold Work is adorned and beautified for the Wearers Splendor and Glory.

IV. He beareth Saturn, a **Royal Crown**, Sol, **Cap**, Mars, **Lined**, Ermine. This is also called a **Crown Imperial**, and a **Kings Crown**, being a circle of Gold enriched with variety of precious Gems; from whence it is raised into eight Crosses Patee, and flower deluces interposing or intervening each other; the Cap being arched over with as many Bars of Gold, richly adorned with Pearls and Precious Stones, on the top is placed a Globe and Cross. This is the English Royal Crown, other Nations having their Crowns in form much different, as

The *French* Royal Crown hath the Circle only raised into Flowers de lis, and arches, and hath a Flower de lis on the top.

The *Spanish* Royal Crown, hath the Circle raised into blown or open spreading Roses; the Cap being archt crossways and no more, having a Globe and Cross on the top.

The *Denmark*, *Swethland*, and generally all other archt or close Crowns, which belong to our Neighbouring *Europian* Kings, are raised from the Circle with Roses blown, and open spreading, and have Globes and Crosses on the top.

G. an Imperial Crown O. is quartered by *Fynenberg* of the *Rhine*.

O. an Oak issuing out of the base proper, debrused with a Fesse G. charged with three Imperial Crowns, born by *Carles*, or *Carlos*.

☞ And here it may not be untimely noted that **Archt** and **close Crowns**, (commonly as they are in use at this day) call them whether you will, either **Royal** or **Imperial Crowns**, are not to be used to adorn any Coat Armour, but Supream Kings, such as exercise Sovereign Commands.

V. He beareth Venus, a **Princes Crown**, Sol. Some call it a **Princes Coronett**, or **Crownett**. It hath the **Circle** or **Chapeaux** raised into Crosses and Flowers de lis, as the Kings Crown, but worn by the Prince, it hath a Cap in it lined with Ermine, and a Button and Tassel of Gold on the top, but not Arched.

A **Dukes Crown** of the Blood Royal (as *Morgan lib.* 3. *fol.* 33. sets it out) is in all respects answerable to the Princes, both in the Chapeaux and raisings into Crosses and flowers de lis; yet others set it forth according to the Dukes Crown in the next example.

VI. He beareth Mercury, a **Ducal Crown**, Sol. This is a **Dukes Coronet** of the Blood Royal, as *Gwillim*, *fol.* 423. sets it forth, whose Circle or **Chapeaux**, is raised into Flowers de lis, with blown Roses interposing, and both set on an equal height.

The **Dukes Crown**, not of the Blood Royal (as Mr. *Morgan lib.* 3. *fol.* 22. and others describe it) hath the raising from the circle composed of four open or blown Roses, and as many small ones, or Pearls set between, but not exceeding the middle of the Roses in height; see *numb.* 11. yet *Carter* in his *Analysis* makes this **Crownett** all of an equal height, terming it a **Crownett Floreal**, as being composed all of Flowers.

The **Dukes Crowns** of *Naples*, which they put over their Coat Armour, is in form like to the **Earls Crown** in *England*, but the points or spires are not pearled.

VII. He beareth Saphyre, a **Marquess Crown**, Sol. The Marquess is a middle degree between a Duke and an Earl, and therefore the Crown partakes of the flower

Flower from the one, and the Pearl from the other, and both raised to an equal height. This is by some called a **Daffadile Coronett.**

The **Marquesses Crown** of *France* is made with three Pearls between each Rose; and they not much exceed the middle of the Roses.

VIII. He beareth Ruby, an **Earls Crown, Crownett,** or **Coronett,** Sol. The circle of this is raised into Spires like Sun-Beams, with Buttons between; each spire having a Pearl fixed on the point thereof; some describe the Crown to have small Roses between the Spires, but that is only the fancy of the Work-man, as a farther flourish or garnishing to the Crown, when the largeness of it will admit such curiosities, but the old way was Pearls, for the Earl being a degree higher than a Viscount, and lower than a Marquess, hath the Crown composed of both theirs.

IX. He beareth Diamond, a **Viscounts Coronet,** Topaz, **Pearled.** This kind of Crown when set on an Escochion, is only a **Circle** or **Chapeaux** of Gold, garnished with variety of Gems; the top of the circle set close together with **Pearls** or Buttons of Silver. If worn by the Noble man, it hath a Cap within it of Purple Velvet, or Scarlet, with a Gold Button and Tassel on the top, as all other Crowns have which are worn, which some term a **Circulet Coronett adorned** with Pearls, sans number.

In the chief of this quarter is the form of the Arch-Duke of *Austria* his **Crown**; which is a Circle of Gold raised into **Sun-Beams,** or **indented Points,** with a Cap; having only one Arch over the middle of it, whereon is set a **Mound,** ensigned with a **Cross Patee.** And such a Crown I find quartered by *Schurfi* of *Tyrold* in *Germany*; and out of a Coronett, is the like Crown cross Arched, lined with Ermine, his crest.

The like Arch-Dukes Crown O. Cap G. turning up Ermins, with a flower de lis on the top A. is the crest of *Mager van Fuchstat.*

X. He beareth Emerald, a **Barons Coronett,** Topaz and **Pearled.** This kind of Crown consists of a Circle or Chapeaux of Gold set with Gems, and raised into six Pearls. Some Blazon it, the **Crownet of a Baron** adorn'd with six Pearls. The Barons Coronet anciently was only a **Circle of Gold,** with a Cap, Button and Tassel, or a **Cap of Maintenance.** But at the Coronation of our Soveraigne, *Charles* the Second, it was permitted, nay Ordered, that their Chaplet or circle should be set with only four, others say six Pearls, since which time all Barons have their Crowns and Coat Armour adorned with a Coronett thus made, and set with six Pearls.

In the chief of this square, is placed a **Cap of Maintenance** or **Dignity,** with the Furr turned up into certain invecks, being **Tasseled** on both sides, with the **String pendant,** and turned into a round or circle in the middle: And such a Cap Argent, with a white Fur, Tassels and String, Or, in a Field Gules, is the Coat of *Meyer van Knonow,* and a demy Man sans Arms, grey broad Beard, clothed Gules, with such a Cap on his head Tasseled and Stringed, is his Crest. See c. 5. n. 38.

G. the like B. Turned A. sans Tassels and String, is the Coat of *Hudstocker,* of *Austria.*

XI. He beareth Saphire, a **Crown,** Pearl. This is also by *Boswell, pag.* 103. called a **Crownett,** a **Coronett,** a **Crownall,** and a **Crown Homager**; and is born either in Coat Armour or Crest, by any that are in Homage or Subjection to a Sovereign Prince or Potentate. This is the true form of the **Marquesses Coronett,** that is not of the Blood Royal, and consists of 4 large flowers, with as many **intervening** of a lower degree, set about the top of the **Chaplet.**

♃ a Cross Patee fitcht between 4 such ⊙. Born by *Rodrick* surnamed *Molmynock,* a Nobleman in *Wales.*

♃ 3 such ⊙ born by *Sigebert,* King of the East *Angles.*

G. 3 such O. born by *Kyhelyn ap Ynyr* of *Wales.*

B. one such O. is born by *Schaftenberg.*

Per Fesse G. and A. in chief 3 such O. is the Arms of the City of *Coln.*

XII. He beareth Pearl, a **Crown Homager,** or a **Coronett,** Ruby. This I find to be the ancient form of the **Coronett,** or **Crown Homager.**

Now that I may make the Crowns compleat to wear, let me say something of their Lining also: All the **Crowns of England** are lined, or have **Caps** within them of **Crimson Velvet** turned up **Ermine**; the Nobility having their turns up according to the lining of their Mantles.

Scotlands Crown for the King, hath the **Cap of Purple Velvet,** imbraudered with Pearl.

The *French* have their **Caps Purple,** semy de flower de lis's imbraudered with Gold.

The Duke having his head covered with a **Chapeau.**

The Baron weareth a round Cap lined, answerable to his Robe; but to wear either Cap or Bonnet in the Kings Presence, is an Honour afforded only to Companions of the Order of the Garter.

XIII. He beareth Saphyre, a **Chaplett,** or **Chapeaux,** or **Circle** of Gold, enriched with various coloured Gems. This was of old, the **Crown** or **Diadem** that did adorn the heads of Kings, and great personages, thereby to distinguish them from the rest of the people: In the time of the Haptarchy they called it in their Language **Cyneband,** the Kings **Head Band,** or **Royal Fillet.** But when Crowns and Diadems in after times began to be Archt, then this Circle was ascribed to the Barons of the Land, being a **Circle** of Gold wrought with Chased Work, without any Flowers or Pearls; if worn, then they had a Cap of Scarlet, with a Button and Tassel on the top, as in the next examples, *numb.* 14. 15.

In the chief is another form of making the **Chaplet** or **Golden Circle,** without the sight of any part of the round or hollowness contained: And 3 such in Pale O. in a Field G. is born by *Wasser.*

Also

*

Also in the Base of this same square is the fashion of **Circle** or **Chaplet** of Gold, having only one Fillet on the top side, and a round Cap in it, sans Button, Tassel, or any adornment with Stones. And 3 such O. Caps G. with a Fesse between B. in a Field A. is born by *Seltz*.

B. 3 such O. Caps A. is born by *Capell*, or *Caperell*.

XIV. He beareth Pearl, a **Chaplet garnished**, Topaz, Cap, Ruby, **Button** and **Tassel** of the second. This is the Barons Cap of Dignity, as it was formerly worn by them of that degree.

XV. He beareth Topaz, a **Cap of Maintenance**, Ruby, **lined** and **turned up**, Ermine, **Button** and **Tassel**, Pearl. This is termed also a **Cap of State**, a **Cap of Dignity**, and a **Cap of Honour**. This in former days was a Barons Cap, however it is diversly born in Arms, sometimes the turning up yellow, in others white, others the Fur is Indented, and others Engraled, as you will see in the following examples.

A. a Cheveron B. between 3 such caps, by the name of *Capper*, alias *Tipper*.

The Arch Duke of *Austria*, in *Germany*, hath the like **Cap of Dignity** set upon his Coat; having the Fur cut into **Dents** or **Spires**, with one **Arch** over the Cap, with a **Mound** and **Cross** on it. The like for the adorning the Coat Armour belonging to the Count Palatine of *Rhine*, and the Duke of *Bavaria* in the said Empire of *Germany*; see *numb.* 9.

Such a Cap as this, and the next following in *numb.* 16. are usually born in Coats, but especially for Crests, both for Quick or Dead things to stand upon; as multitudes of such Bearings might be produced; only take these for many.

A. 3 such G. Lined and Turned up, or Furred Er. is born by *Caps*.

On the like Cap, a Lion rampant O. is the crest of *Caplion*.

XVI. He beareth Or, a **Chapeau**, or **Cap of Estate**, Gules, **lined** and **turned up**, Argent, **Button** and **Tassel**, Or. This is by others (and that more properly, to distinguish it from the other round Caps) termed a **Cap of Estate**, or **Dignity open behind**, or **loose behind**; but if it be only Blazoned a **Chapeau**, and no other term given it; it is sufficiently expressed to be a **Cap of Estate**, that is thus open behind.

On a Chapeau, two Oxe-horns, from the turn-up, O. was an ancient crest born by *Peshall* or *Persall*, of *Oakley* in *Staffordshire*.

XVII. He beareth Sable, a **Chapeau**, Or, **turning up Engraled**, Ermine, **Button** and **Tassel**, Argent. This is another manner of turning up; and after the same fashion you shall have Caps born either in Coats or Crests, which have their Lining turned up with an **Invecked**, or an **Indented** form; but this one example shall suffice for such.

On such a Chapeau G. turned up Ermin, a Stag proper, is the crest of *Palesdon*, or *Pulston*, of *Emrall*.

On the like, a Weverne S. gorged with a Crown O. is the crest of *Trevor*, of *Allyngton*, in *Denbigh-shire*.

A Peacocks tail from the turn up of such a Chapeau, is the crest of the Lord *Molineux*.

In the Base of this quarter, is another kind of Wreath, which is termed a **Wreath** or **Torce**, with the **ends flotant**, A. and G. and a **Wreath** or **Twist pendant**, G. **Tasselled**, O. and such a Torce doth adorn the head of a naked demy Woman to the Sinister, sans Arms, for the crest of *Schmidmer*, of *Brunswick*.

XVIII. He beareth Vert, a round **Torce** or **Wreath**, Argent and Gules, born by *Wreath*. This is an ancient **Ornament** of the head, and much in use with *Turks* and *Sarazens*; but much more frequently used as an interposition between the Mantle and the Crest on the top of the Helmet. Sometimes it is Blazoned a **Wreath**, because it is made of two coloured Silks, or more wreathed together: sometimes termed a **Torce**, from *Torqueo*, to wind, or twist, wrest or wreath a thing together; the mixture of the colours in a Wreath, is most usually taken from the Metal and colour chiefly contained in the Paternal Coat of the Bearer.

☞ And for the orderly making of this Wreath, you are to observe this Rule, that the Twists be of an even number, as 4, 6, or 8, &c. that in placing the colours, you must evermore begin with the metal, and end with the colour. B. 3 such A. and G. is born by *Wreathall*.

The **Wreath** is thus made round, when born in Arms, but being set under crests, it is made like to the **Torce** or **Wreath** set in the chief of this square; but adorning the Heads or Temples of Men or Women, Moores or Saracens, they generally have the ends tyed up in **Bow knots**, or **flying loose** one way or both sides the head, as those in *numb.* 19. doth manifest.

B. three such, the ends flotant A. and S. is born by *Wrethburgh*.

B. the same in Pale, is born by *Torquell*.

XIX. He beareth Or, a round **Torce** or **Wreath tyed up**, the **ends pendant**, Argent and Sable. This is of most Blazoned a **Sarazens Towel**, by which term the Knot and loose ends that hang down are to be understood, for their Towels are ever so tyed; see *lib.* 2. *cap.* 17. *numb.* 10. 75. 3 such is born by the name of *Sarazine*.

In the chief is a **close Wreath**, making a little shew at the bottom of his roundness, with the two **ends flotant** on each side, and so 3 such in Pale A. and B. in a Field V. is the coat of *Van Roden*.

The like about a Moors Face, is the crest of *Van Dachroden* of *Thurland*.

XX. He beareth Argent, on a round **Wreath**, Or and Vert, a **Crown of Feathers**, Or, Azure, Argent, and Purpure; with this kind of Crown, the Savage People of *America* do adorn the heads of their Leaders. Some term

term it an **American Crown** or **Diadem**; others a **Crown of Feathers** of diverse colours; and is born by *Maccoe*.

B. 3 such, with a Fesse between A. is born by *Featherton*.

XXI. He beareth Argent, a **Chaplet** or **Garland of diverse Flowers**, proper. It is reported of some, that after this manner the Old World first instituted **Crowns** or **Garlands** for their Governours, which afterwards the *Egyptians* made of **Ivy, Bays, Lawrel,** and several other Flowers, Herbs and Leaves. But *Crœsus* the Rich, in his Pompous Plays and Sports made them of Gold, from whence they began to be in esteem, so that every Kingdom, Nation and People following that example, devised **Garlands, Crowns** and **Diadems** for themselves, of sundry sorts and fashions.

A. such a Garland, proper, is born by *Lossel*.

A. 3 such proper, is born by *Garland*.

XXII. He beareth Saphire, an **Egyptian ancient Crown** or **Diadem**, Topaz. The ancient People of this Country adorned the head of him that was their King and Ruler, with a Crown that was framed or wrought with the Images of Adders heads: And indeed from the beginning (as *Josephus* in his Antiquities affirmeth *lib.* 3. and 8.) *Moses* for the *Israelites*, and generally all Nations did by instinct of Nature adorn that person with a difference of Attire upon his head. whom they suffered to rule over them, which was as a sign or token of the preheminence of his Person and Office.

XXIII. He beareth Argent, a **Chaplet**, or **Garland**, or **Chapeaux of Roses**. This is born by the name of *Rosemore*.

B. the like A. is born by the name of *Crantz*, or *Krantz*. Out of the like Garland (Torce ways) a demy Boy sans Arms, clothed B. with the like about his Temples, is his Crest. Another of that name beareth the same, in a Field G.

There is another form of **Chapeaux**, or **Garland**, which is composed all of **Laurel Leaves**, having only **four Roses** set upon it at an equal distance, which is termed a **Laurel Chaplet**, or **Laurel Chapeaux**; and such a Garland, with a Rose within it, is the crest of *Van Hane*.

And another, wherein the Laurel hath four **wreaths** upon it at equal distances, some having the ends of the **Scarfe loose** or **flotant**, termed a **Laurel Garland wreathed**.

Per Fesse G. and A. in chief 2 such Garlands conjoined (or fretted one in the other) O. and in Base a Moors head to the Sinister, couped at the Shoulders, is born by *Van Meusbach*.

XXIV. He beareth Gules, a **Chaplett**, or a **Chapernon**, Or. As is the Blazon, so is his name that Beareth it, *viz. Chaplett*. This is the true form of that which we term a **Garland** or **Chaplet**, without any more additions to it, and is made in fashion of an Annulett, beset with four Roundlets, or four Roses set at an equal distance; others describe it to be a **round Circle** or **Royal Fillet**, or **Head Lace**, with four **Buttons** or **Knobs** of Gold (wrought or imbossed into the form of flowers) set on the sides of it.

A. 3 such V. born by the name of *Richardson*.
O. on a chief G. 3 such O. born by *Morison*.
A. 3 such G. born by *Lassels* of *Estrick* in *Yorkshire*.
G. 3 such O. born by *Shappell*.
Er. 2 such, and a Rose, is born by *Peche*.
Per Fesse A. and B. 3 Chaplets counterchanged by the name of *Duke*.

XXIV. *a.* He beareth Jupiter, a **Chapeaux** or **Chaplett of Roses**, Mars, **Radiant**, or **Spired**, Sol. This kind of Crown I find hath various terms of Blazon; for of some I find it called a **Rose Chaplet Crown**, and a **Rose Chaplet** with **Beams** of Gold. Others out of a **Chaplett of Roses**, a **Crown Regal**, or **Homager**. Mr. *Morgan*, *lib.* 3. *fol.* 10. terms it a **Crown with a Chaplett** of red and white Roses.

After this manner you shall often find in Coats Armour, especially in **Crests, Chaplets** or **Garlands**, composed of diverse sorts of flowers or leaves, and **radiant** or **spired**, as in this; crowning both the heads of Men and Women, which adornment may fitly be termed a **Chaplet** or **Garland of Roses** or **Laurel**, &c. **Radiant**; or after others, and that more briefly a **Chaplet crowned**, because in the Chaplet of flowers or leaves, generally no other Crown is used but this; yet if any other kind of Crown be set in the foresaid Chaplets, then you are to mention what sort of Crown it is.

XXV He beareth Pearl, a **Crown Mural**, Ruby. The circle of this Crown is raised with **Breteschies**, or **Parapects**, or **Battlements**, or tops of a Wall or Tower; and his head anciently was adorned with such a Crown who first mounted on the Walls of a Besieged City or Town, and there fixed the Standard belonging to the General of the Army.

XXVI. He beareth Pearl, a **Crown Naval**, Saphire: This kind of Crown was made with a Circle of Gold, relevated, or raised like **Prowes** or **Poupes**, or the forepast of a Ship, and his Head was adorned with it, who in a Sea Fight first grapled, and boarded the Ship that was their Enemies. Crowns of Gold were equally mixt with Shields, of old to adorn the Temples of the Victors, as we read in the Story of the *Maccabees*, 1. *Mac.* 4. 57.

XXVII. He beareth Diamond, a **Crown Vallatial**, Topaz. This is also termed a **Crown Castral**, or **Crown Pallizadoed**: which is a Crown of Gold raised into **Pales, Pikes**, or **Stakes**; and was given by the General of an Army to him that first entred into the Trenches of his Enemies Camp, and forced the **Pallizadoes**. The *French* call it a **Crown Vallour**, or **Pallee**.

Such a Kind of Crow (saith Mr. *Morgan*) doth encompass the Lion of *Holland*, which is Armed like *Apollo*, with

with his Arrows in his left, and his Sword in his right Paw.

XXVIII. He beareth Jupiter, a **Crown Caelestial**, *Sol.* This kind of Crown hath the Circle, or Chaplet thereof raised into **Spires** or **Sun-Beams**, with a **Star fired** upon the point of each Beam. Some term it a **Crown** composed of **eight Stars**, or **Constellations** of Heaven. Such a Crown is said to be made by *Vulcan*, who gave it to *Theseus*, and it was of such admirable refulgency, that it gave him light through the dark errours of the *Labyrinth* that he was to pass. A Crown of Stars we read also was worn by the Woman in Heaven, *Rev.* 12. 1.

XXIX. He beareth Sol, a **Crown**, or **Garland Triumphal**, *Venus.* This **Triumphal Chaplet** as some call it, was first made of Laurel, or Bays, platted together: and tied in the back part of the Head with Ribbons Jewels; being the signe and token of Victory: and soon after made of the purest Gold; whereupon it was named *Aurum Coronarium.* In was by the *Romans* given to the General that returned home with Victory from a dreadfull Enemy. And it was after worn by the *Roman* Emperors themselves, as their Images, and Figures in the Coins, put out in their several Reigns doth abundantly testifie.

XXX. He beareth Pearl, a **Crown** (Garland or Chaplet) **Civical**, Emerald: This hath several denominations, as *Corona civica*, the **Civil Crown**, or **Citizens Crown**: this was made of the flourishing branches of the **Oak fructed**, or **Acorned**, and tied behind the Head (as all the *Roman* Garlands usually were) and was given by the City of *Rome*, to their fellow Cittizens, who had saved a Citizens life, either in a Siege or Battel; counting it more Honor to save the Life of a Friend, than to destroy an hundred Enemies. But more especially it was given to them, who had well deserved of the publick Estate, and managed Matters well for the conservations of their civil Affairs. It is the Emblem of Valour and safty, as the *Royal-Oake* of *England* doth abundantly testifie; and therefore may not unfitly be termed the **Garland of Honor**, and **Protection.**

XXXI. He beareth Topaz, a **Crown Gramineal**, or **Obsidional**, Emerald. Others term it a **Garland of Fame** and **Honor**: this was made of Grass, or Herbs, or what else was found in the place besieged, and given to the Captain or General, that did by his Valour, and Wisdom, deliver that place from the besiegers, or save a whole inclosed Army, sharply beset on all sides by the Enemy.

XXXI. *a.* He beareth Sol, a **Garland Pacifical**, or **Crown Minerval**, *Venus:* This kind of Crown was made of the branches of the Olive-tree, which is the Symbole of Peace, therefore called the **Crown of Peace** and **Concord**; It was given to him that had managed a Peace and Union between two Mortal Enemies and by said discretion brought it to a Successful conclusion, [illegible] be dissolved. Some term it *Corona Minervalis*, or **Crown of Arts** and **Sciences**, by reason Peace, and Plenty; Unity and Concord is the Nurse of Arts.

A. such an one V. invironing an Escochion, O. charged with 3 Stags horns in pale, Sable. Is the Arms of the States of *Winenden.*

XXXII. He beareth Ruby, a **Crown** or **Garland of Ceres**, Topaz. This is also termed, **Ceres Coronet**, the **Honor of Agriculture**, or **Husbandry**; the **Crown of Plenty** and **Abundance**: being made of the Ears of Corn. This was given as a reward to him, who is a good Provider for the People, such as *Joseph* was in *Egypt*: It was, and is the Husbandmans Honor to be adorned therewith, by whose care and industry the Land florisheth with Plenty. This is called *Corona Alma* the **Virgins Crown**, which as *Pliny* writeth *lib.* 17. *cap.* 2. was the first Crown or Garland among the *Romans.*

The **Crown Popler**, or **Poputeal Garland**; is made of the Leaves of Poplar: and is given to such young Men, in whom was perceived the greatest towardness of Virtues.

There are several other sorts of Crowns or Garlands, made of diverse kinds of Leaves, and Branches; which to put in the Copper Plate, would have been chargable and not very material, seeing they may (by these) be as well understood by their description: which are as followeth.

The **Garland of Bacchus**, the **Crown Bacchanal**, or of **Friendship**: It is composed of the Branches and Fruit of the Vine, which is the Emblem of Amity, & true Friendship. Yet the Joyce thereof being immoderatly used, hath and doth daily manifest the contrary effect; being the only cause, and that too often, of the disunion of Brethren.

The **Garland of Olympick games**, called also the **Olympical Crown**, or **Crown of Victory**: This was made of the Branches of the depressed Palm, and was a reward given to those that obtained the Victory at the *Roman* Games, which were for the Exercise of Manhood, and activity of Body. They were called the *Olympian* games, from whence this Crown was called by them, *Corona Olympica.*

The **Crown of Ovation**, of some termed *Corona Ovationalis*, the **Crown of Joy** and **rejoycing** being Garlands used at the Death of Deceased Frinds, therefore also called the **Garland of Death.** It was made of Firr branches, and with these kind of Crowns the *Greeks* & *Romans*, having mantled their dead Friends in their winding-sheets, they adorned their Heads with such Crowns; signifying thereby, that the party deceased had run out his race, and won the price, having ended the troubles of a wicked Life, and vain World by Death. Hence it is that the custom of Garlands is used at the Funeral of young Persons, but to manifest that they have run a great race, and gained the goal in a little time.

The **Crown Spineal**, or **Crown of Thorns**: This was made of sharp thorns, platted or wound together, and was worn by our Saviour Jesus Christ, at the time of his Crucifixion: It is the Emblem of a Generous Soul, that lieth not in wait to deceive, yet it fights against fighters.

The **Crown Amarantheal**, or the **Garland of Amaranthus**, which are made of the Stemm Leafe and Flowe:

Flower of an Herb that will never wither. This is the Emblem of an everlasting flourishing fame; such a Garland was offered up at the Sepulcher of *Achilles*, thereby to eternize the fame of that Noble *Hero*.

The **Crown Mirtal**, is a Crown composed of the Leaves and Berrys of the Mirtle Tree, which are of a sweet Odour; and was given to him, which overthrew such an Enemy, as was a Vassal or Homager, to that Estate against whom he took up Arms.

The **Crown Hederal**, or **Garland of Ivy**, which is appropriated to Poets and excellent Musitions: whose Brains are not too much moistned with the Joyce of *Bacchus*.

He that desireth to read more of these several sorts of Crowns and Garlands let them peruse these Authors.

Seldens Titles of Honor, *part* 1. *chap*. 8. and *part* 2. *chap*. 1. 2.

Morgans Sphere of the Gentry, *lib*. 3. *chap*. 3. & 4.

Fernes Lacyes Nobility, *pag*. 26. 27.

Gwillims Display of Heraldry, *sect*. 4. *chap*. 16.

XXXIII. He beareth Saphir, a **Papal Infula**, Ruby: insignen with a **Treble Crown**, and a **Cross**, Topaz: having a **Cloud** and the **Sun-Beams** issuing out of the same, proper. This is of some blazoned only a **Treble Crown** with the **Cloud** and **Sun-Beams issuant** all proper.

✻ 3 such ☉ is the Coat Armour of the Worshipful Company of *Woollen-Drapers*.

XXXIV. He beareth Saturn, a **Papal Crown** (or a **Treble Crown**, or a **Popes Crown**) Sol: with two **Labells pendant** Luna. This is born by the name of *Crownall*.

XXXV. He beareth Pearl, a **Cardinals Hat**, with the **Strings pendant** and **platted**, or **fretted** in form of a **True-Loves knot**, Ruby: **Bobs** and **Tassells**, Sol.

Per Fesse G. and A. a pointed Skreen with an handle issuant A. and such an Hat G. born by *Reindorfer*. The like Skreen set on the top of the Hat is the Crest.

Such an Hat parted per Pale A. and G. is the Crest of *Van Groben*.

2 Hats supporting each other in form of a Cheveron G. is the Crest of *Hoppingen*.

XXXVI. He beareth Topaz, a **Cardinalls Cap** Diamond. This is their usual wearing Cap.

In the chief of this square is another sort of Cap made much after the form of a **Scotch-Bonnet**, or round Cap. A. 3 such S. banded O. is the *Cappers* Arms in *Chester*. See *numb*. 42. 43.

XXXVII. He beareth Pearl, a **Cardinalls Cap** of the order of St. *Austin*, Diamond. Others term it a **Monk**, or **Friers Cap**, of St *Austins* order.

In the Chief of this square is another form of drawing the **Cardinals Hat**, having the under side of the Brim and inner part of the Crown seen, with the **Strings Tasselled**, and only **crossed**. A. 3 such G. is born by *Bayrn zu Freidenfels*.

Such an Hat, with a Wing erected on it A. is the Crest of *Lantzen*, as also of *Van Liebenfels*.

The like Hat with the strings Fretted Wreathed, & treble Tasselled in a Field A. is born by *Van Dobeneck*.

A. 3 such B. is born by *Kayb* of *Switzerland*.

XXXVIII. He beareth Jupiter, a **Crown Mittered**, Sol: **Garnished** with variety of Gems, proper. Such a Crown Mittered is to be set upon the shield of Arms of such a Bishop, as doth exercise Soveraign Jurisdiction: doth manage both the Temperal Sword, and Spiritual staff, & keep all Courts within his Diocess in his own name. Such of old I have seen in a Manuscript over the Bishop of *Durhams* Arms, see *chap*. 5. *numb*. 104.

The like having the Coronet O. and the Miter G. charged with a Fesse Nebuletee A. and B. is the Crest of *Van Blumeneck*.

XXXIX. He beareth Mars, a **Miter** (or a **Bishops Miter** Sol: **Garnished**, or set with several stones proper; the **Cap** or **Lining** Venus, with two **Labells pendant** Luna, **Tassells** of the Second. If the Miter be all of one Mettle or Colour, you need say no more but a **Miter**.

♂ 3 Miters ⊙ by the Bishoprick of *Chester*.

a Miter A. charged with a Salter G. is the Crest of *Bochingen*.

a Miter B. Filletted or Garnished A. lined G. at each point a Peacocks tail. Is the Crest of *Taufkirchen*.

a Miter B. Fillet and Points buttoned A. is the Crest of *Dune*.

a Miter G. Fillet or Head band adorned with a Saphire Stone and Buttoned B. is the Crest of *Burglen*.

XL. He beareth Argent, a **four cornered Cap**, Sable. This is a chief Justice or **Judges Cap**, which he ever puts on his Head before he passeth Sentence on any Malefactor. This is also a **Master of Arts his Cap**, or a **Doctors Cap**, see the same born sideways *numb*. 44.

XLI. He beareth Or, a **three Cornered Cap**, Sable.

XLII. He beareth Argent, a **Bonet Cap**, Sable; **Lined** Or: in chief an **Egyptian Shooe**, Gules. This Cap is termed in the Schools, a **Students Cap**, or an under **Graduats Cap**.

XLIII. He beareth Or, a **Bonet** (or **Scotch Bonet**, or **Scotch Cap**) Azure: in chief a **Laplanders Shooe**, Sable. Before that the Invention of Hats were found out, this was the covering for the Head of all the Grandees, and Persons of note and quality in former Ages, and this many ancient Pictures remaining amongst us to this day, doth inform us.

XLIV. He beareth Argent, a **Cap** and **Button** Gules: **turned up**, Or. This is used now, and also was in our Forefathers days, by all Labourers and Handicrafts Men, who cannot conveniently work (especially in the Summer time) with their Hats on their Heads: and there-

therefore are fitly termed **Labourers Caps**, and without Buttons, **Caps** or **Night-Caps**, as *numb.* 47.

G. a Fesse between 3 Labourers Caps A. born by *Lakert.*
B. a Night-Cap A. born by *Sleeper.*
O. Cap G. turned up and on the Button A. 5 piles of Grass V. is the Crest of *Van Schaben.*

In the Chief of this square is the figure of a **Doctors four cornered Cap** set sideways, and in Heraldry thus drawn is term'd the **Master of Arts** (or **Doctors**) **Cap**; being the true form, the other mentioned *numb.* 40. not being so much to be understood for a Cap, as this: and three such S. in a Field O. I find born by the name of *Doctors.*

XLV. He beareth Vert, out of a **Coronet** Or, a **Steel Cap**, Argent. Some term it a **Coronet Cap**: and a Cap set in a Coronet.

☞ All round headed Caps are generally termed **Steel Caps**, or **Morions.**

B. 3 such O. Capped G. is the Coat of *Crownend.*
G. one such O. Capped A. is born by *Devent.*

XLVI. He beareth Topaz, a **Cap** Gules, **turned up and open behind**, (in form of a Chapeau) Pearl: **Deckt** with a Feather in the **Frontlet** or **Forepart**, Azure. Born by the name *Stoarigge.*

A. the like B. Feather G. born by *Kingston.*
The like S. turn up O. the Feather A. is the Crest of *Newkirch.*

XLVII. He beareth Topaz, a **Morion**, or **Steel Cap**, Saphire, charged with a bend, Pearl; **lined** and **turned up**, of the same.

G. a Cap O. turned up A. is both Coat, and Crest of *Stadeldorf.*

XLVIII. He beareth Argent, a **Morion**, or **Steel Cap**, Azure, **turned up in point**, Or: set on each side with a **Crutch**, Sable. Some term them a **Crutch Staff**, or a **Lame Mans Staff**, or a **Potence**: But I hold this to be best blazoned (for the better understanding of the Stations of the Crutches) to say, each side adorned, or set with a **Crutch expenced** bendwise Sinister, or a **Morion** between two **Crutches in bend**, Sinister **expenced.** By which terms it is made manifest that they are set in the middle of the Cap, and one appears by the side of the other, both bending one and the same way: which by the first and old way of blazon, the Cap might be taken to be between the Potences; and not the Potences to lie upon, or proceed from the cap.

Such a Cap S. Lined with 2 Ass Ears set in the turn up A. is the crest of *Kaevdell.*
Such a Cap V. turn up A. set with 2 Bonicans horns O. is the crest of *Schliderer Van Lachen.*
Such a Cap G. turn up A. set with 2 Feathers, one B. the other G. and a Feather on the Crown A. is the crest of *Pfork.*

Several ways of Bearing things on Caps.

So that Caps of this fashion are generally beset with things of all conditions, as Horns, Fearhers, Wings Flowers, Leaves, Branches, Staves, and such like: of which notice must be taken how, and after what manner they are set with the Cap: as,

First, a **Cap turned up**, with a thing set **on each side, expenced**: or such a thing set on each side from or under the turn up, expenced. Shewth the things to proceed from the turn up, and bend one way, or stand one behind the other, as this figure 48. manifests, and *numb.* 71. *lib.* 4. *chap.* 4. *numb.* 31.

Second, a **Cap with turn up**, hath a thing set in the forepart of it, which is term'd, such a thing placed, or proceeding from the turn up in the **Front**, or **Frontal**, or **Forehead**: as *numb.* 46.

Third, a **Cap turned up**, may have a thing set upon one side of it, which may be termed, the **side adorned** with such a thing from the turn up: as *numb.* 55.

Fourth, a **Cap, turned up**, with such a thing **on each side Endorsed**, that is when one of the things bend one way, and the other the contrary: if they be **Wings** they are termed **Displayd**: as *lib.* 4. *chap.* 4. *numb.* 30.

Fifth, a **Cap, turned up**, with any thing set or standing upon the top or Crown of it: then say, such a thing **standing on a Cap, turned up**: or on the cap, such a thing. *lib.* 4. *chap.* 4. *numb.* 19. 28.

Sixth, a **Cap, turned up**, between such and such things; is when the Cap is put between any things, and doth (as it were) not touch, or but touch the same, having nothing set on it, or in it, but near to it; and these sometimes are set **Expenced, Displayd**, or **Endorsed**: that is bending one way, or bending too, or from the Cap, or any thing else, thus set between things: *lib.* 4. *numb.* 30. 31. 32.

Last of all, a **Cap, turned up**, may have a thing on it, and yet be **between other things**; and then say thus, such a thing, on a **Cap, turned up**, between two such, or such things.

☞ Yet note here a further and nice distinction, which is to say thus: such **a thing between two such things, on a Cap turned up.** This shews that all before mentioning the Cap, to be set on the Cap: as *lib.* 4. *chap* 4. *numb.* 28. 32.

XLIX. He beareth Gules, a **Morion**, Azure; **turning up in point** (like a **Chapeau**) **engrailed**, Argent. Billetted, or set wth 6 Billets on the top, Sable.

L. He beareth Gules, a **Morion**, (of some called a **Copped Hat**, or **Cap**) Azure: **turned up**, in form of a **Chapeau**, Argent.

L. *a.* He beareth Vert, a **Morion** or **Steel Cap**, Sable; **turned up**, Argent: each side **beset**, or **adorned**, or **issuant** there from, two **Palms** or **Tops of Bucks Horns**, Or. Born by the name of *Garvile.*

LI. He beareth Argent, an **Infula**, Gules: **turned up Chapeau like**, Or. Some term them an **Infula Cap**, or a **Pyramide Cap**, or a high **copped Cap, turned up.** This is born by the name of *Van Skackin.*

LII. He beareth Or, an **Infula**, Gules; **turned up**, Argent: on the top a **Button** of the same. Born by the name of *Rusenbach.*

A. 3 such G. turned up and Buttoned O. born by *Hardyll.*

The like S. turn-up and on the Button A. 5 grass blades V. is the Crest of *Van Carben.*

A. 3 Boys Faces, with Infula's on their Heads, sans turnings up G. is Coat of *Grafenstein* of *Alsatia.*

The like Infula G. turned up A. on the top a Crownet O. out of which is a rose slip, proper. This is born by *Dier Von Schelen* of *Westpalia.* After this manner you will often find both *Dutch* and *Germans* Coats, and Crests; adorned on the top with **Balls**, and several sorts of devises fixed thereon, as **Flowers, Leaves, Feathers, Stars, Cressants**, &c. See *chap.* 5. *numb.* 69. these Infula's are also born out of Coronets, as *numb.* 45

LIII. He beareth Argent, an **Infula** Gules, **turned up** and **opened on the side**, Or. Born by the name of *Benperg* in *Francovia.*

An Infula Or. with the like turning up, Sable; adorned on the top with a tuft of Grass, consisting of 5 piles flected, Vert: is the Crest of *Lamprechen* in *Francovia.* After this manner you shall have Infula's born with other sorts of Leaves, Flowers, Feathers, and the like: which you are to mention in your blazon.

The Infula S. such a turn-up, with a Plum of 5 Feathers A. hanging bendways over the middle of the height of it, a Rose Garland. This is the Crest of *Curtzbach.*

LIV. He beareth Topaz, and **Infula**, Ruby: **turned up**, and **open on the side**, with a **Button** on the top Argent; **reverted** of the Second. There are some who term this an **Infula turned up**, and **turned down**; or **turned up**, and **reflected**; or **lined** and **reverted**; naming one only colour, and that of the turning up, by reason the turning down is ever taken to be of the same colour, as the Infula it self is off.

LV. He beareth Argent, an **Infula**, Tenne; **turned up in point**, Gules: **issuant** there from **erect the side**, a **Ropers Stake**, Sable.

Several ways of Turn ups.

☞ Here take notice in these few foregoing examples, of the several ways and manners of turnings up, as to say **turned up**; and no more signifieth the turning not much to exceed the compass of the bottom of the Cap: as *numb.* 44. 47. 50. 52.

Second, **turned up like** the **Chapeau**; which is open behind, and ends in two point: as *numb.* 46. 50. 51.

Third, **turning up** and **open**, or **opened on the side**, is when a slit is made in the side: as *numb.* 53. 54.

Fourth, **turning up, opened**, and **reverted**; when the lined part is turned up, and then turned down a gain as *numb.* 54.

Fifth, **turning up in point**, is when it is not open behind, but hang downward, and to sight ends as it were in a point, as to the turning up of the lineing: as *numb.* 48. 49. 50. 55.

LVI. He beareth Or, a **Sarazens Hat**, or an **Infula, Garnished**, Azure: **entwrapped with a Towel, tied in a knot with Nooses**, and ends **pendant**, Argent. This is born by *Artzet.*

O. 3 such G. Towels A. is born by *Lidlow.*

Out of a Wreath or Torce A. and S. an Infula of the first, with a Tuft of Grass on the top: is the Crest of *Nordtwein.* Some term it an Infula environed with a Torce: because here the Wreath is in the place of the turn-up, see *numb.* 67. 74.

LVII. He beareth Argent, a **Capped Tanke, Stringed**, Gules. This is a certain cover for the Head, which ancient Servile *Romans* used: It is in Coats of Arms (I find) born several ways, as **fretted** all over, or **circled** about, either in the whole, or in part, as the precedent, and subsequent examples shews you. The strings are to tie it under the Chin that it be not apt to fall of the Head, as otherwise it would be. Out of a Coronet O. a Tank pally A. and G. is born by the name of *Van Still.*

☞ The difference between an **Infula** and a **Tank** is this: The first riseth to a kind of a point in the top; the latter is directly round there. The one wide at the bottom and narrow upward, but the other is of one widness all along from the bottom to the top.

LVIII. He beareth Argent, a **Fools Cap** with a **Bell at the end of the Flap**, Or: **turned up** of the same. Three such is born by *Fool.*

LIX. He beareth Or, an **Infula gradually circled**, Sable. Born by the name of *Bubbell.*

A. a Cheveron between 3 such G. is born by the name of *Balvaire.*

LX. He beareth Or, an **Infula imbowed in the top**, Azure; **Garnished** and **Tasselled**, Argent. Born by name of *Melwaine.*

LXI. He beareth Argent, an **Infula imbowed at the end**, Gules: **turned up in form of a Chapeau**, and **engrailed**, with a **Button** and **Tassel** on the top, Or.

☞ Here note that when these Infula's are imbowed at the top, then they are made much smaller at the end then usually they are to be, when streight. This is born by the name of *Brunt.*

B. the like imbowed to the dexter side G. and turned up open in the side, A. Tasselled O. is the Coat and Crest of *Van Bornstedt.*

A. 3 such to Sinister and bowed to the Dexter G. turned

turned up and Tassells O. with Wreaths about the middle of the foldings A. set in the Field 1. and 2. Born by the name of *Van Ronstet.*

LXII. He beareth Argent, an **Infula imbowed,** Vert; **Button** and **Tassell,** Or: **turned up** of the first, **fretted,** Sable. This is born by the name of *Warner.*

3 Such with a Cheveron between S. is born by *Colner.*

LXIII. He beareth Argent, a **Munmouth Cap,** (or a **Ship Cap,** or **Boat Cap,** Sable; **turning up** Or. These Caps are often laced on the Crown, and Edges of the turn up: which you may either blazon **Edged** or **Imbrauthered,** so and so. This is also termed a **Mountaro Cap,** and a Munmouth Cap, as from the place where it was first made.

LXIV. He beareth Azure, a **Knit Cap,** or a **Wild Cap,** Argent; **banded** and **buttoned,** Or: **turned up on one side,** Gules. This is also termed a **Falconers,** or **Foresters Hat,** being in former times much in use with such, because they would bear out wet: but now are wholy left off. By the Gallants of those times, the under sides of the brim were richly adorned with Silver and Gold, and bands of the same.

LXV. He beareth Argent, an **Hat,** Sable; **band** Or. **turning up,** Purpure; **Decked with a Plum of Feathers,** Or, Gules, Argent, and Vert. It was a great fashion in King *Charles* the first time, to have the under side of the **brim** to be **lined** with Taffaty of variable colours.

A. a Cheveron G. between 3 such Hats, is the Coat of the Worshipful Company of *Feltmakers.*

LXVI. He beareth Argent, a **Womans Hat banded,** Sable. This is called a Womans Hat, because generally they wear their Hats higher in the **Crown** (**Sugar Loafe like**) and **broader** in the **brims,** then Men do. This is generally the *Feltmakers* Sign.

A. 3 such S. is born by the name of *Hatter.*

LXVII. He beareth Sable, an **Indian Hat,** (or a **China Hat,** and **String pendant,** Argent; **Button** and **Tassel,** Or. Three such is born by the name of *Chinence.*

A. 3 such Sable, is born by *Rysencross.*

The like A. tied on a Lions head S. is the Crest of *Van Ostheim.*

In the Chief of this square, is placed the fashion of two sorts of Caps, which I find used, and born in Coat Armour. The first is a kind of **Turks Turbot,** and the other a **Wreathed Cap,** or a Cap with a **Wreathed turn-up,** being another sort of Turks Caps.

Out of a Crown, a Demy Turk, sans Arms, between 2 Wings, having such a Wreathen Turbut, or Cap, is the Crest of *Sunthavsen.*

B. 3 Turks Faces, so attired G. and O. is both Coat and Crest of *Van Belo.*

LXVIII. He beareth Gules, a **Dutch Hat,** Argent; **Band, String, Crossed,** and **Tassells,** Or. They use (as I suppose) these strings to tie their Hats to their Heads. This is born by the name of *Schneeberg.*

O. 3 such parted per pale B. and A. Strings and Tassells and Bands G. is both Coat and Crest of *Van Der Wendt.* Also by *Van Wendte.*

LXIX. This is another manner of way, which the *Dutch* use in drawing their Hats in Coats Armour; with the side, or next part of the **Brim** to you, **turned up:** which is blazoned as before in the Hat, *n mb. 65.* This S. in a Field A. is born by *Windishmark.* The same with the turn-up O. is born by *Newkirch.*

There is another sort of *Dutch* Cap, as *chap. 5. numb. 38.* which is termed a **Dutch Cap** Sable, **turned up** Argent, the **Tassells** and **Strings crossed,** Or.

LXX. He beareth Vert, a **Turbot** (or a **Turks Cap**) Argent: having a **Sprig Feather** set in the side of it, Or. This is born by the name of *Turk,* or *Tueks.*

B. 3 such A. Feather O. is born by *Holtzern.* These may be termed **Turks Imperial Turbots:** being such as the Emperial *Sultan* himself doth wear, and none else but himself: all others wearing such as I have set down in the chief of *numb. 67.*

LXXI. He beareth Azure, **Mercurys Cap,** or **Hat,** Gules: **Winged** Argent. For to nominate the colours of the Wings, which be contrary to the Hat, or Cap: they must be named, else if they be made all of one colour, or mettle: then to say **Mercurys Cap** is sufficient to shew it to be Winged. This as before blazoned, is born by *Swift.*

G. 3 such O. Wings A. is born by *Speedwell.*

LXXII. He beareth Saphir, an **Infula** Amethist, **fretted** Topaz; the **turning up, opened before** (or on the side) and **reverted,** or turned down again below the Neck and Sides of the Face, Pearl. This may be termed an old Mans hood which covers him all about the Neck and Face to preserve him from cold. This is born by *Winter.*

The like upon an old Sarazens head is the Crest of *Mascho.* This kind of wear may be termed an **Infula Cap-hood,** or a **Cap-hood open before** with an **Infula top** or head.

LXXIII. He beareth Gules, two **Infula's,** the one, Or, the other Argent; **fretted** Sable: **Buttons** and **Tassells** of the second, both set in a **Wreath,** of the third, and fourth. Some blazon it an **Infula Jessant** of another, both **Invironed** within a Torce. This is born by *Burse.*

LXXIV. He beareth Or, a **flat Crowned Cap,** Sable: **Wreathed,** Argent, and Gules. Others blazon it, out of a **Torce,** or **Wreath,** Argent and Gules; a **Flat Cap,** Sable. 3 Such born by *Copley.*

Such a **Cap** with a **turn-up,** and open on the sides is a **Poland Cap,** and is so termed in blazon: and is born by a *Poland* Family named *Boyezan.*

LXXV. He beareth Sable, a **Monks-hood** or a **Monks Caule,** or else the **Hood** of a **Dominican Frier,** Argent. This is also the form of the **Cauls,** or **Hoods,** belonging to the **Cluniacens Friers** but of a different colour. Three of these are born by the name of *Porral.*

A Demy Monk sans Arms, cloathed G. thus hooded A. with a Wreath about the Head, ends flotant A. and G. is the Crest of *Pomer* of *Brunswick.*

LXXVI. He beareth Gules, a **Monks-hood,** or **Caule** of the **Carthusian Order,** Argent: this Coat belongs to *Die Krantzen Van Geispolitzheim,* in *Alsatia* in the Empire of *Germany.*

Such a Demy Monk sans Arms cloathes per Cheveron A. and G. the **Hood** A. and **Scapuler** or **Shoulder part** G. is the Crest of *Brunighofen.*

LXXVII. He beareth Argent, the **Hood,** or **Caule of a Benedictan Monk,** or **Frier,** Sable. This is contrary to the other Hoods, having a loose and hollow piece of cloth hanging backward, as it were a long bag, and fastned under the Chin, hanging loose down before.

LXXVIII. He beareth Sol, a **French Hood,** Saturn. This sort of Hood was much in request about 1568. and because it came first out of *France* to us, it was called a *French* Hood; it hung down with a long **broad Flap:** the end thereof being turned up to the top of the Head (for so it was usually worn) and there made fast, it did not exceed the shoulders in depth. This having the **Flap** or **Tippet** hanging down the wearers Back, may be termed a **Mourning hood,** or a **close Mourning hood;** for such great persons usually wear over their Heads and Shoulders in Funeral Obsequies and Solemnities.

LXXIX. He beareth Argent, a **Dutch-hood,** Sable. This may also be termed a **Mourning Hood,** being such as they of inferiour rank wear at the Solemnity of great Funerals; which are called **close Mourners,** and have only their Tippets extending from the Crown of the Head to the middle of the Back. This is born by the name of *Mourner.*

G. the like Hood A. is the Arms of the Town of *Guglingen* in *Germany.*

A Demy Man to the Sinister, sans Arms, Cloathed and Hooded A. is the Crest of *Marschalck.*

LXXX. He beareth Argent, a **close Mourning-hood,** for a **Person of Honor,** having the **Tippet reflected,** and laid under the Cloake or Shoulder part of the Hood, Sable.

☞ There is in these kind of Hoods three parts; the first is the **Hood** which covers the head all about the Face; the second is the **Cloake part,** which covers the Neck and Shoulders: the third is the **Tippet,** which hangs from the hinder part of the Crown, and reacheth backwards to the ground, and in some a yard on the ground, according to the quality and greatness of the Person which weareth it.

A. the like hood G. is born by the name of *Retzer.*

[]

LXXXI. He beareth Or, a **Cornered Hood,** or a **Ladies Caul,** Vert. Being only Silk Imbrauthered according to the Persons quality, and edged with Gold and Silver, and so cast over the head, it was a rich kind of Attire for the head in former days, see *lib.* 2. *chap.* 17. *numb.* 32.

LXXXII. He beareth Gules, a **Quoif** with a **Boongrace,** Argent. Some call it an **Head Attire,** or **Frontlet.** Three such is born by the name of *Front.*

LXXXIII. He beareth Argent, a **Womans Hood,** having the **tyes** or **flaps** tyed, and ends **flotant** or **pendant,** Sable. And is born by the name of *Hood.*

LXXXIV. He beareth Azure, a **Nuns Caule** or **Nuns Hood,** Argent: It is so termed, because their Hoods are all so deep, that the compass all about the Shoulders.

LXXXV. He beareth Sable, a **Set-hood, laced, conjoyned to a Night-raile,** Argent. This is a kind of dress which Women in Child bed usually wear, when they are for Christnings, and up-sittings. Some term this a **Hooded Night-raile.**

LXXXVI. He beareth Saphire, a **Veiled Quoif,** or a **Quoif with a Veil,** or **loose Scarfs** hanging each side of it, Pearl, imbrauthered in the **Frontlet,** Topaz. This was a great fashion for Head Attires in the elder times, see *numb.* 87.

In the chief of this square, is the form of a **Quoif,** or rather a **Cap,** compassed about the bottom with a **String of Pearls** or **Beads,** the **end extended;** and such is born by *Dwlocher,* as you may see *chap.* 5. *numb.* 142. *c.* after the same manner; a String of Beads are often made to proceed from Crowns either extendant or pendant, and also from head Tires.

LXXXVII. He beareth Ruby, a **Womans Circle** or **Head Tire,** Pearl, **Fretted,** Diamond, with a **Towel** or **Scarf cast over the back part of it,** and **pendant,** Topaz: Of the adorning of the head with circles of Gold, and Imbrauthered work after this manner about *E.* 1. time, by Men and Women of high account, is manifest by many Pictures and Monuments of those times. See Mr. *Dugdale* on *Warwick-shire, fol.* 121.

LXXXVII. *a.* He beareth Argent, an **Old Mans Cap,** Sable, **turned up,** Tenne, having **covers for the Ears** and **Neck** of the second. It may be termed also a **Jews head cover,** and such I find worn by a demy Man full faced, fork Bearded sans Arms, clothed and capped G. and is the coat and crest of *Welser.*

After covers for the head, of which I have given you divers examples and fashions both anciet and modern: I shall now proceed to give you some covers for the face, and through an omission here, I have caused them to be Engraven, *chap.* 5. *numb.* 63. 64. where you may see the form and manner of such things, but I shall treat of them here.

He

He beareth Argent, a **Mask**, Sable. This is a thing that in former times Gentlewomen used to put over their Faces when they Travel to keep them from Sun burning; it covered only the Brow, Eyes and Nose, through the holes they saw their way; the rest of the Face was covered with a Chin-cloth.

Of these **Masks** they used them either **square** with a **flat** and **even top**, or else the top cut with an **half round**; they were generally made of Black Velvet.

The second form of **Mask**, is the **Visard Mask**, which covers the whole face, having holes for the eyes, a case for the Nose, and a slit for the mouth, and to speak through; this kind of Mask is taken off and put on in a moment of time, being only held in the Teeth by means of a round bead fastned on the in-side over against the mouth, see *chap.* 5. *numb.* 64.

A **Visard** is another kind of cover for the Face, and it is made after the form of ugly ill shapen Faces; these are used in Interludes and Plays to make Mens Faces appear to what they act, as deformed Creatures, Apes or Devils.

B. a cheveron between 3 Visards A. born by the name of *Vissard*.

LXXXVIII. He beareth Argent, a **Garter Nowed** Azure, **Buckled, Edged** and **Studded**, Or, by the name of *Garter*.

G. 3 such A. born by the name of *Sydemers*.

LXXXIX. He beareth Argent, a **Roman Hose**, or **Stockin**, Sable, **turned down** and **garnished**, Or. They are by the *Romans* termed **Startops**, because they cover but half the Leg and Foot; of us they are called **Buskins** and **Gamashes**, and are either **Laced, Buttoned** or **Buckled** down the out-sides of the Legs, and reach only to the Instep of the foot, seldom past the middle.

XC. He beareth Vert, an **Hose**, Argent, **Gartered**, Or. born by *Hoseck*.

The **Hose** or **Stocken**, is a cover for the foot, leg, and thigh, to shield them from Summers heat and Winters cold.

A. an Hose S. is born by *Glyn* of *Glyn*, in an Escochion of Pretence.

A. a **Midlegg Hose**, the Toe to the Sinister B. charged with 3 Bends Sinister, O. is the coat of *Eckhart*. The crest is the same with the foot erected: this may be termed an **half Hose**, or an **Hose couped below the Knee**, for generally they are made to draw above it to the middle of the Thigh or thereabouts.

In the Sinister Base of this square, is placed a **Shoe sole**, or the **Bottom of the Shoe**, which is born in Arms; for I find that *Solestat* beareth Argent, 3 Soles of Shoes, Sable.

S. 3 Shoe Soles, the Toes erected A. born by *Solemain*.

XCI. He beareth Argent, a **Leg in full Aspect couped under the Knee**, proper, adorned with a **Roman Hose**, or **Startop**, Sable, **turned down** and **garnished**, Or. This is also more briefly Blazon, a **Romans Leg in full Aspect, couped under the Knee.** It is termed in full Aspect, because it is full to sight, and not standing sideways, as those before and after it do.

☞ And called a **Roman Leg**, by reason it is in the **Roman Dress**, and so all other Legs and Feet are to be termed according to the countrey fashion they are in, see *numb.* 90, 92, 93. *Legh* terms this Hose that is worn but to the middle of the Leg, and turned down again, a **Startuppes**, *pag.* 40.

XCII. He beareth Argent, a **Boot**, Sable, the **Top turned down**, Or, **Soled** Gules. By the name of *Boot*. In a Boot there is these several parts.

The **Top**, and it may be either large or narrow, it is of two pieces.

The **Boot Leg** is one entire piece, sowed up the Calf or Shin, or out-side of the Leg.

The **Spur Leathers**, and they are two, the over and under Leather.

A **Sashune** or **Shashune**, is stuffed or quilted Leather, to be bound about the small of the Leg, of such as have long heels, to thicken the Leg that the Boot may sit streight, and be without wrinkles.

The **Foot** of the Boot with its parts, see in the shooe, *numb.* 95.

The **Straps** are those Leathers sowed within the Boot on each side to draw them on.

A. 3 such S. turned down G. is born by the name of *Boote*.

XCIII. He beareth Or, a **Moors Leg couped below the Knee**, proper, the **Gamash, Buskin**, or **Startop**, Gules, **turned down**, Argent. In this Leg I do confess my Engraver was much mistaken, having made it I cannot tell what; but I did design it for this Blazon (which I hope the candid Reader will either understand what I mean, or pass it by as a Slip of the Tool (for as the Tongue and Pen hath its Errours, *sic Sculptor habet Scalpturum*, yet pardonable.) He beareth Or, a **Roman Leg couped** beneath the Knee, proper, **Sandall** Gules, **Startop**, Sable, **turned down** and **garnished**, Argent. This is born by the name of *Garmash*.

A. a Moors Leg, the Startop G. turned down O. by the name of *Morby*.

XCIV. He beareth Argent, an **Irish Broge**, Sable, and an **Island Shoe**, Gules. They are of some termed **Dutch Shoes**, for such **turnup Noses** their shooes have, which they use to slide and sler with on their **Skades**.

G. a Cheveron between 3 Irish Broges, O. born by *Arthur* of *Ireland*.

A. 3 Island Shooes G. born by *Gressy*.

XCV. He beareth Or, two **Sandals**, Sable, **Buckles** or **Tyes**, Argent. This was the ancient way of securing the feet of Travellers from the hardness of the Country passage; and consisted of nothing else; but a **Sole** (either of **Leather** or **Wood**,) to which was made fast 2 or 3 **Tyes** or **Latches**, which was Buckled

led on the top of the foot; the better sort adorned these Latches with Imbrauthered work, and set them with Stones.

A. 3 Sandalls S. Buckled and Adorned O. born by *Palmer*.

XCVI. He beareth Argent, a **Shoe**, Sable; **Sole**, Gules; the **Roses, Knots**, or **Tyes**, Azure; in base a **Clog** or **Countrymans shoe**, of the second, **Sole**, Or.

Parts of a Shooe.

The **Heel Quarters.**

The **Languides** or **Straps**, the one is tied with **Shootyes**, the latter with **Buckles.**

The **Vamp**, is all the piece that covers the top of the foot.

The **Instep**, is the top of the shooe at the tying place.

The **Toe**, and **Toe Lining**, is the lower part of the Vamp.

The **Rann**, the Leather as holds the Heel quarters and Vamp to the Soles.

The **In-sole**, The **Middle Sole**, The **Out-Sole**, } all the bottom Leathers of the Shooe that is trod upon.

The **Channel** of the Sole, is the Nick in the out-Sole, in which the Thread lieth, it being rubbed down, covers the thread.

The **Heel**, which is made either of Wood or Leather.

The **Lifts of the Heel**, are those whole pieces of Leather, of which the Heel is made.

The **Jumps for Heels**, are only shavings of Leather beaten together, of wich a heel is raised.

The **Top piece of the Heel**,

The **Pegs** that fasten the Leather of the heel together.

Shoes according to the fashion of the Toes, or Noses, are sometime round, others square, then forked, and others turned up like a hook.

Shoes in the fashion of the Heels, are some flat and low heeled, or with wooden high heels, broad and narrow; others Leather heels, which some term **Polony heels.**

Shoe soles, are either single sole shooes, or double Soles, or strong soled, that is with 3 soles.

The **size of Shoes**, is the length of them by such and such a number, as 1, 2, 3, *&c.* each size being the fourth part of an Inch.

A **Childs Shoe**, of one or two sizes, is five inches and a half long, and encreaseth to *numb.* 13. after that it begins to come into the sizes of a Man.

A **Man** or **Womans Shoe**, is eight inches and a quarter long, when it begins with the first or second sizes of a Man, what it exceeds that length every fourth part of an Inch is taken for a size larger, and so forwards to *numb.* 15.

Several sorts of Shooes.

Slap shoes, or **Ladies shoes**, are shooes with a loose Sole.

Gallothios, are false shooes, or covers for shooes, see *chap.* 5. *numb.* 70.

Pattanes, are Irons to be tied under shooes, to keep out of the Dirt.

Slippers, are shooes without Heel quarters.

Cloggs are shooes with thick Wooden Soles.

Pumps, are shooes with single Soles and no heels, some term them **Lacky-Boys, Foot-men**, or **running shoes.**

Pinked or **raised Shoes**, have the over leathers grain part cut into Roses, or other devices.

Laced shoes, have the over Leathers and edges of the Shooe laced in orderly courses, with narrow galloon Lace of any colour.

Imbrauthered shoes, are such as have the top of the shooe covered with Silk, Satin, or Velvet richly Imbrauthered.

Close Shoes, are such as have no open in the sides of the Latches or Languides, but are made close up like an Irish Brogue. These are to Travel with in foul and snowy weather.

A. 3 Shooes S. the Tyes G. is born by *Fack.*

S. a Cheveron between 3 Shooes A. Laced G. is born by *Shooman.*

A. 3 Cloggs (or shooes with thick Wooden Soles) S. Soles, O. is born by the name of *Clog.*

He beareth Or, a **Galotia**, Sable. This is a kind of false shooe, or a case for a shooe, to keep them clean in foul Weather, and is a very good Bearing; for 3 Galotia's Sable, Soles Gules, in a Field Argent, is the coat Armour of *Wargenberg*; see the form of the **Galotia**, *cap.* 5. *numb.* 70.

He beareth Azure, a **Slipper** (or a **Pantable**,) Argent, what a Slipper is, I need not much to describe, being a thing of so common a use amongst us; it is the coat of a worthy Family in *Italy*, called *Sandaliger.* See its form *cap.* 5. *numb.* 71.

B. 3 Slippers O. is born by *Slipper.* The same with the Toes erected, is born by *Sleeper.*

He beareth Argent, two (or a **pair** of) **Patens**, and a **Padle Iron**, Sable, is born by *Padmore*; what the Paten is, your Gentlewomen will tell you; it is a thing of Wood like a Shooe sole, with Straps over it, to tye over the shooe, having an Iron at the bottom, to raise the wearer thereof from the Dirt; by means whereof clean shooes may be preserved though they go in foul Streets; see its form and fashion, *chap.* 5. *numb.* 71.

TO

His Worthy Friend

Mr. *RICHARD BRERETON*, of *Chester*;

Son and Heir of *George*, Son of *Richard Brereton*, of *Broughton*, Gent. Lineally Descended of a younger Branch of a Second House, from the Ancient and Honorable Family of *Brereton* of *Brereton*, in the County Palatine of *Chester*.

WHEN I had finished the First and Second Books of the Academy of Armory, *I then stood at a stay, to consider whether I was able to encounter with so great a* Goliah *as the remaining part was; for the vast Expence past, and the far greater to succeed; and having so few Allies, and never a Champion to appear for my present Assistance, caused me to Despair of Victory, or ever overcoming so Potent an Enemy; till you like a little* DAVID *stood up for my Cause, and put life into my fainting Spirits, taking the Quarrel into your hands, and not as an Assistant, Co-helper, or Subscriber, but as an Undertaker, with a purpose (that if none others would) you would Tread the Wine-press alone, for the Benefit of Friends and Ages to come; which worthy Proffers and real Performances, deserves you to be Crowned with the Honor of this my next Dedication, before others who say and do not, acknowledging my self your real and obliged Servant in the highest degree*

Randle Holme.

CHAP. II.

HAving in the former Chapter treated of things for the **Head** and **Feet**, both as they are used in places of Honor and Majesty, and also for Domestick use and service; so in this I shall set down what Garment or other things are used for the Body and Hands, both for them of the higher powers in the Court, to the Peasant in the Fields.

I. He beareth Sable, a **plaine Band**, with **Band-strings pendant**, Argent. born by the name of *Band*.

B. 3 such A. born by the *Seamsters* as their coate.

This is an Ornament for the neck, which is of the finest white Linnen cloth, as Flaxen, Holland, Lawn, &c. & is made by the art of the **Seamster**, and Washed and Starched, Slickened and Smoothed by the care of the **Landrers**.

In the begining of the raigne of King Charles the first, **Yellow Bands** were much used, which were Dyed with Safron, and Supported round the neck by a **Picadill**, of which see more *numb.* 7.

II. He beareth Gules, a **Band Laced**, (or a Lace Band) the **Band strings Pendant**, Argent. Seamsters in a Band makeing, have severall termes.

The several parts of a Band.

The **Hollowing of the band**, the rounding it for the neck. And the **Rounding it about**.

The **Stock**, that as goes round about the **Neck**.

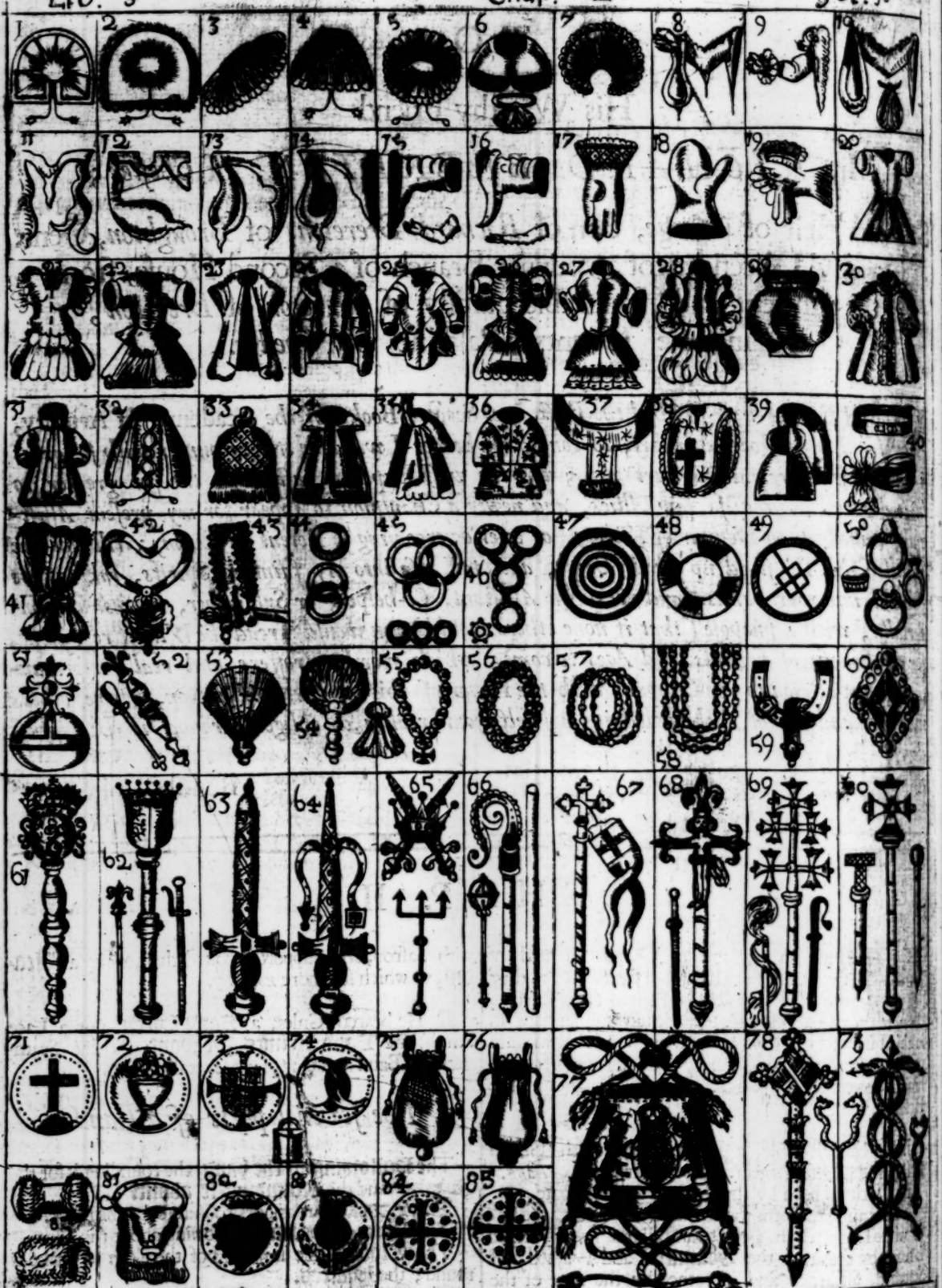
The **Hem** or **Seam**, the sowing about the edge.

The **Clocks**, the laying in of the cloth to make it round; the **Plaites**.

The **Strings** and **Buttons**.

The **Selvage**, the out-side of the Cloth before it be cut.

The



Donum Cuthberti Parker Eiusd Cestr: Gen:

The **Breadth** of the Band.
The **Depth** or **sideness** of the Band.
A **Collar Band**, is for the Collar of the Dublet only.
A **Minikin Band**, is of a middle size, not big nor little.
A **Cloak Band**, is so large, that it covered all the shoulders.

III. He beareth Gules, a **Spanish Ruffe**, Argent. This is born by *Don Roderrn* of *Spain*, or a **Ruffe in Bend Sinister**, B. 3 such A. is born by *Ruffe*.

IV. He beareth Vert, a **falling Ruffe**, with **Strings pendant**, Argent. This is born by the name of *Van Ruffey*.

V. He beareth Sable, a **round Ruff**, with **Strings pendant**, Argent. Three such is born by the name of *Ruffer*. Ruffs are generally Cloth folded by Art into sets, or turning, for two or three heights or doublings of Cloth.

A **Cravatt** is another kind of adornment for the Neck, being nothing else but a **long Towel** put about the **Collar**, and so tyed before with a Bow Knott; this is the Original of all such Wearings; but now by the Art and Inventions of the Seamsters, there is so many new ways of making them, that it would be a Task to name them, much more to describe them; see in the Rules of *numb.* 6, 10, 55.

VI. He beareth Gules, a **Womans Neck Whisk**, Argent. This is used both Plain and Laced, and is called of most a **Gorgett** or a **falling Whisk**, because it falleth about the Shoulders.

A **Right Rail**, is a **Ladies undress**, being made after the fashion of a **Whisk**, but with a larger compass, reaching from the Neck, round about the person down to the middle or waist; it is made **Plain** or **Laced**, or **wrought with Needle Work**, according to the Wearers Nobility.

A **Pinner** or **Tucker**, is a narrow piece of Cloth Plain or Laced, which compasseth the top of a Womans Gown about the Neck part.

In this square in the Base, is the shape of a **Cravatt tyed up** in a **Bow Knott**, of which I have spoken before in *numb.* 5.

VII. He beareth Azure, a **Neck Whisk** rounded and laced, Argent; or a Neck Whisk, which standeth round the Neck touching no part of the shoulders, but is supported by a **Pickadil**, which was a stiff Collar made in fashion of a Band; which kind of wear was much in use and fashion in the last Age by our *English* Gallants both Men and Women, as the Monuments of that time doth further manifest; for it is credibly reported that that famous place near St. *James* called the *Pickadilly*, took denomination from this, that one *Higgins*, a Taylor, who built it, got most of his Estate by *Pickadils*.

VIII. He beareth Argent, a **Dexter Arm habited** with a **Maunch**, Gules; the **Hand** proper. This is born by the name of *Maune*. The hand in the Maunch I have seen in other Coat Armours, to hold a **Cross crosslett**, a **Flower de lis**, or a **Rose Slip**, &c. with several other things, which in Blazon you may term a hand proper, holding such or such a devise.

G. a hand holding a flower de lis, O. in a Maunch, Er. is born by the name of *Mohune*, alias *Sapell*.
The like having the Maunch Varry, is born by *Manley*.

IX. He beareth Argent, a **Dexter Arm out of an Old fashion Wing of a Doublet**, Azure, **Ruff cufted**, or turned up in form of a **Ruffle**, Or, **Hand Griped**, proper. Born by the name of *Armestrong*.

G. out of the Sinister side, an Arm Bowed, Sleeve, A. with a deep and broad Turn-up, O. the hand griped, the fore-finger extended proper, is the Coat of the Bishoprick of *Seckaw*, in *Germany*.
G. the like Arm from the Dexter side, Sleeve and large round Wing thereat A. Turn-up, O. holding of a Fish, born by *Pray*.

X. He beareth Pearl, a **Maunch**, Diamond. This was the fashion of a Womans Sleeve in the time of King *Edward* the First and Second, or thereabouts; and is the **Maunch** now in use by our modern Heraulds, though in the days of our fore-Fathers, it was made according to the examples following, 11, 12, 13.

O. the like G. born by *Hastings*, Earl of *Pembrook*.
A. the like S. born by *Hastings*, Earl of *Huntington*.
B. the like A. born by *Delamare*.
B. the like O. born by *Conyers*.
G. the same A. born by *Marshall*.
Some draw the **Elbow** of this kind of **Maunch**, with a kind of **flap hanging down**, as is at the elbow of the Maunch, *numb.* 8. and the like to the bottom of the **Bag**, at the fore part of the **Sleeve**, but it is much more done without them.

In the base of this square is the form of another **Cravatt**, worn by Men about their Neck, of which see more in *numb.* 5.

XI. XII. XIII. **Maunches** were anciently made after these three fashions; they were then called by the name of **Maunchmale**, a **Maunchmale-tale**, and a **Monchee**.

XIV. He beareth, Or, a **Maunch fixed to the sinister side**, Gules. Others Blazon it a **Maunch issuant** from the sinister side of the Escochion; others leave out (the Sinister side, *&c.*) because it is proper to come that way into the Field, and only say a **Maunch issuant**. This is born by the name of *De la Mounch*.

XV. He beareth Vert, a **Dutch Maunch**, (others call it a **French Sleeve**) Argent. Thus the *French* and *Dutch* do draw their **Maunch** or **Sleeve**, which

name I take to proceed from *Manica* the Latin word for the Sleeve of a Garment. This is born by *Richden.*

In the Base of this Quarter, is an **Arm Imbowed**, and **couped** B. the **Hand extended**, and such an one is born by *Bondorf.*

O. such an Arm issuant, Sleeve G. holding of a Key bendways, born by *Skeleicher.*

O. such an Arm couped, Sleeve G. holding of a Boars head by the under Jawle, or Jaw S. is the Coat of *Van Michelsdorf.*

XVI. He beareth Gules, a **French**, or **Dutch Sleeve**, Or: **turned up**, Argent. This is another kind of their drawing sleeves with a **long Flap**, and **sharp pointed at the Wrists of the Arm.** Born by *Elkin.*

B. 3 such A. turning up O. is born by *Sleever.*

In the Base of this Quarter, is an **Arm extended**, and **couped**; the **Sleeves** G. **Buttoned** the whole length S. in a Field A. which is born by the name of *Armstrech.*

XVII. He beareth Argent, a **Glove pendant**, Sable; **Imbrauthered**, and **Fringed at the top**, Or. Some hold that being set Fesswise, needs no other term, but a **Glove**: but if the Fingers be upward, then a **Glove erected.** The *Glover* hath these several terms for the right making up of a Glove.

The **Thumb** part.

The **Opening of the Thumb**, the compass of it.

The **Under tong.** The **Space.**

The **Fingers.**

the **Forges**, the peeces between the Fingers.

The **Quirks**, the little square peeces at the bottom of the Fingers.

The **Points**, the peeces down the back of the Glove.

The **Inside** of the Glove, the Palm.

The **Out side**, the Back of the Hand.

The **Gauntlet**, all that reacheth behind the Hand to the Wrist.

Side Seam, the Sewing from the little Finger the whole length of the Glove.

XIX. He beareth Argent, a **Mitten** Gules. This is of some termed, an **Hedged Mitten**, or **Glove to Hedg with**: a **Tethering Glove.** This is born by *Mitten.*

2 Such erected A. is the Crest of *Wachendorf.*

XIX. He beareth Azure, a **Hand in Fesse couped**, proper; **griping of a Glove**, Argent: **Imbrauthered** and **Fringed**, Or. This is born by *Handglove.*

Such an Hand with a Cock standing on it G. is the Crest of *Handcock.*

XX. He beareth Argent, a **Jacket**, or **Loose Coat**, Gules: **Lined**, Azure. This Coat I have observed to be in a *London Sign*, which was only to show, and give notice that a Man-taylor lived in that same House.

XXI. He beareth Sable, a **Roman Garment**, Argent. Some call it a **Cowdy Robe Garment**, because it was the ancient fashion of the old *Romans* to have such Labells hanging at the shoulder Wings, and from under the skirts of their Body Garment, which they call **Codillans**, and **Cowdy Robes.** This is born by the name of *Roman.* This with an Head and Face is by the French termed an Harpey as you may see, *chap.* 5. *n.* 59.

G. 3 such Roman Coats O. is born by *Reydit.*

XXII. He beareth Azure, a **Boys Coat**, Or; **Lined**, Gules. This is the last of Coats used for Boyes; after which they are put into Breeches. If it had hanging Sleeves, then we term it a **Childs Coat.** This is born by *Boy.*

G. 3 such A. Lined O. born by the name of *Fitch.*

The Several Parts of a Boys *and* Girls, *Coat.*

The **Body** part, in which is the **Fore Body**, and the **Back part.**

The **Buttons**, and **Button holes.**

The **Laps**, of which there are the **Fore Laps**, the **side Laps** and **hinder Laps.**

The **Sleeves**, in which there is the **inside** and the **outside** of the Sleeve: and the **Wings.**

The **Turn-up** or the **Rose up**, at the Sleeve-hands.

The **Neck part**, or rounding of the Neck. The **Collar.**

The **Skirt**, and the **Under Coat.**

The **Girls Coat** differeth in these things: **Hanging Sleeves, Laced up behind.**

The **Skirt long** behind, and **open before**, having a **Peticoat** or **under Coat.**

The **Neck Square** before and behind.

XXIII. He beareth Argent, a **Vest**, Azure; **Lined**, Sable. This was the form of the *Russian* Embassadors loose Coat when he came first to *England*, shortly after King *Charles* the Seconds return from Exile, which Garb was so taken too, that it became a great fashion and wear, both in Court, City, and Country. The Several parts of this Fashion are these:

The **Vest**, a side deep loose Coat almost to the Feet with short sleeves.

The **Tunick**, a close bodied Coat, the skirts of it being down to the Knees.

The **Sash**, the Girdle by which the Tunick was tied to the Body, so called because it hath a round Button and Tassel hanging at the ends of it.

The **Zoan**, is a girdle of Silk. without Buttons and Tassels, which is tied in a bow knot before.

XXIV. He beareth Or, a **Mandilion** Azure; this was a kind of loose Coat worn upon a **Dublet** either **Buttoned**, or **open**: and much in use in the Reign of Queen *Elizabeth*: It had no Sleeves, but two broad **Wings** on the Shoulders, aud hanging Sleeves at the Back; with side **Skirts**, or **Laps.**

XXV. He beareth Gules, the **Body of a Woman's Gown** to open before, Or. Some term it a **Gown Body** with **close Sleeves**, a **Peak** down before, and **cowdy Robe Skirts.**

XXVI. He beareth Vert, a **Child**, or **Boys Coat** with

with round or **ruffed Sleeves,** Argent: This is the last of Coats that Boys about five or six Years of age use to wear, after which they are put into Breeches and Doublets. There is another fashion Coat as *numb.* 22. used for Children. Such Coats as these are often painted on signs, and on cloths, to shew where *Taylors*, *Salesmen*, and *Brokers* live, or keep their Shops.

XXVII. He beareth Argent, a **Semeare,** Gules; **Sleeves faced** or **turned up,** Or, **Petty-Coat** Azure: the **skirt** or **bottom** Laced, or Imbrauthered of the third. This is a kind of **loose Garment** without and stiffe Bodies under them, and was a great fashion for Women about the Year 1676. Some call them **Mantua's,** they have very **short Sleeves,** nay some of the Gallants of the times, have the Sleeves gathered up to the top of the Shoulders and there stayed, or fastned with a **Button** and **Loope,** or set with a **rich Jewel.**

XXVIII. He bearth Sable, an **High Winged Doublet** and **short Skirts** with **Trunk,** or **Sailers Breeches,** Argent. This was the fashion of the Gentry in the beginning of King *James* his Reigh: the **sleeves** being either **slashed** or **pinked** as they then called it; and the Breeches so full in the waist, that they fell into Pleats and Folds, and being gathered at the Knees, they swelled round out: as in many Munuments to be seen, where they are tied above the Knees, and the hose also gathered under the Knees.

XXIX. He beareth Gules, a **pair of Trunk Breeches,** Argent. These were much in use with the Gentry and Nobility in the time of King *Henry* the Eight, as pictures of those time manifest, and also the latter end of Queen *Elizabeth*, and beginning of King *James*. But now they are cast out of Door by them, and only worn by Pages of Honor, and Pages of great Estates.

XXX. He beareth Argent, a Kings **Parliament Robe,** Gules: **lined,** and **turned up** Ermine. This is more briefly blazoned, a **Kings Robe,** a **Robe of Estate,** or a **Parliament Robe**; the colour and furring being ever as aforesaid, if it be otherwise then to be mentioned, as in the next example.

Two such Robes, and a **Royal Tent**; pertaineth to the Coat of the Worshipful Company of *Merchant-Taylors* as a part thereof.

XXXI. He beareth Or, a **Robe** Purpure; **lined, turned up,** or **faced,** Argent. These are also termed **Robes of Estate,** only are a degree short of the other, being without Ermine.

XXXII. He beareth Luna, a **Mantle of Estate** Mars; **doubled** or **lined,** and **turned up** Ermine: **Ouched** and **Garnished** or **Imbrauthered** Sol: with **strings fastned** or **fixed** thereunto **pendant fretways** and **tasselled** of the same. These Arms do pertain to the Town of *Brecknock* in *Southwales*.

This kind of **Mantle** belongs to Emperours and Kings and free Estates when they appear to the People in their Royalty, Glory, and Splendor: anciently it was thus made, but the Mantle of Estate now in use hath a **round Cape** of Ermine, see *chap.* 3. *numb.* 1. 2. 3. 4.

XXXIII. He beareth Gules, a **Tassel,** Or: **Fretted** and **Purled** Azure. The **Mantle of Estate** shewed you before, is garnished with **strings tasselled,** which kind of tasselling is also used to diverse other **strings** or **Cordons of Creation, Robes,** or **Mantles,** as to the habits of the Prince of *Wales*, Knights of the Garter *&c.* when they have their whole abiliment upon them.

G. 3 such Tassels O. born by the name of *Wooler*.

XXXIV. He beareth Argent, a **Cloak** Gules, **Faced** and **Caped,** Or. Else as others term it, turned out, and down; because the faceing turns outwards, and the Cape down. The Cloak is round in compass, and by having a Cape is distinguished from another sort of covering without a Cape, called a **Rocket,** or a **Mantle.**

XXXV. He beareth Argent, a **Cloak hanging by its Button in chief,** Sable. Some term it a **Cloak hanging** per side, or **sideways,** by a string issuing out of chief. This if it be one colour, it needs no other term then a Cloak, of such a colour, *&c.*

XXXVI. He beareth Luna, an **Heralds Coat, Adorned** with the Soveraigns Coat of Arms; and **Fringed** about, all in the proper Mettles, and Colours. Three such Coats make an accomplished Herald, *viz.* the **Pursuivant,** the **Heraught,** and the **King of Arms,** after whom there is no Superior in that Colledge of Officers.

XXXVII. He beareth Pearl, a **Pall** Amethist; **edged, fringed,** and **imbrauthered with Estoiles,** Topaz. The Pall is the habite of Ecclesiastical Functions, and in the *Romish* Church is only worn by Archbishops, Bishops and Mitered Abbots; and not by them, but when they are in the Church about Divine Worship.

XXXVIII. He beareth Azure, a **Cope** (or a **Priests Cope**) Purpure, **Lined** Argent: **Fringed, Edged,** and **Imbrauthered** with a **long Cross** (or **Christs Cross**) and **four Estoiles,** Or. This is the Romish Priests Vestment, which was cast over the Serplice, when he served at the Alter.

XXXIX. He beareth Argent, a **Livery Mans hood,** or **Tippet,** Gules and Purpure: counterchanged in Pall. Some say, counterchanged, the one of the other, this was a kind of **Hood,** which the Masters and Stewards of Incorporated Societies, and Companies (about the beginning of *Henry* the Eight his Reign, and in former times) did wear upon their heads in publick meeting, and assemblies; to shew that they were the chief in office in those Societies. But about the beginning of Queen *Elizabeths* Reign, they then cast them off their heads, and hung them on their shoulders; in which order, the Masters, Livery Men, or Stewards of all Companys with us, wear them at all publick meetings to this day.

They are called a **Stewards Tippet,** or **Livery Hood:** a **Hood** from its being worn on the head, and a **Tippet** from the long tail or train which hanged behind almost to the Ground. These kind of hoods (but all

black) are to this day worn by close Mourners at the Solemnities of great Funerals, every person according to his degree, having the **Tippet** or **Trail** thereof, longer or shorter: some to the middle of the back, others to the thighs, others to the ground, and the chief Mourners, and assistance trailing on the ground.

XL. He beareth in Chief, a **Girdle** Sable, **Imbrauthered,** or **Garnish,** and **Hook** and **Hasp,** Or: in base a **Turks,** or **Russian Girdle,** or **Towel** tied in a **Bow knot,** the **ends pendant,** Argent: in a Field Gules. The first of these were a great fashion in the beginning of my days, but now clearly laid aside: the other in use in those Countrys to this day.

A. 3 such Girdles in pale G. hasped or hooked, O. born by the name of *Girdale*.

XLI. He beareth Argent, a **Scarfe** Gules, **tied up** and **Fringed about,** Or. Others do say, a **Scarfe,** tied up with a Ribbon of Gold, **Fringed** on the sides, or edges, and a broad or deep one at the **ends pendant,** Sol. But all this needs not, seeing both shoulder or middle wast Scarfs worn by Commanders, and Field Officers, have their Scarfs generally so Fringed with Silver or Gold, or both.

But such **Scarfes** as are worn at Funerals, have none at all, but tied up with Ribbon: the Scarfes being black at the Death of a married person, and white at an unmarried.

XLII. He beareth Argent, a **Garter** or **Ribbon,** Azure: with the **Badge** of St. *George* on horse back, slaying of a Dragon, thereat all proper: having **Drops,** or **Jewels pendant.** This is the sign or taken by which a Knight of the Garter is manifest, by having about his Neck a blew Ribbon, with the foresaid Jewel hanging thereat: but of this, and the order, I shall have occasion to speak hereafter; and therefore say no more of it in this place.

XLIII. He beareth Argent, a **Belt in pale** Gules, **Fringed** about the **edges, studded,** and **buckled,** having a **Sword** hanging therein **Fesswise,** Or: **Scabard,** Sable. See the terms of the several parts of a Sword Scabard and Belt in *chap.* 18. *numb.* 21.

XLIV. He beareth Vert, an **Annulet,** or **Ring,** Or; and in Base two **Annulets Imbraced** (or **double Annulets,** or two **Annulets coupled**) Argent: of some two **Annulets linked.** The Annulet is the diference of a fift Brother, therefore (as I conceeve) very rarely born singly in a Coat of Arms.

G. an Annulet A. born by *Coler* or *Koler*.
G. an Annulet O. born by the name of *Crampe*.
B. 3 such O. born by *Byset*.
A. 3 such V. born by *Argevile*. And 3 S. born by *Vasterheim*.
A. 6 Annulets S. born by *Luzer*.
O. 6 such S. born by *Lowther*.
O. on a Bend G. 3 such A. born by *Humprechten*.
G. 6 Annulet Imbaced 2 2 and 2 O. by the name of *Bracer*.

B. 3 double Annulets A. born by *Treyberg*.

XLV. He beareth Sable, three **Annulets fretted,** Argent. This is born by the name of *Anley*. I have seen a Coat with three of these thus fretted, which may be thus blazoned: Argent, on a Bend Sable **three times, three Annulets fretted,** (or **Braced** or **Imbraced**) Or; else **nine Annulets imbraced,** 3 3 and 3, else **three Annulets in three Imbraced.** *Morgan* in Sphere of the Gentry, *lib.* 3. *fol.* 21. terms them, **three Tripple Gimbal Rings:** born by the name of *Hawberke*.

In the Base of this quarter, is three **Annulets conjoyned Fesseways:** such a Bearing, I find in pale between 2 Ostritch Feathers A. to be the Creft of *Freydag* of *Westphalia*.

XLVI. He beareth Argent, an **Annulet** between three such, **each joyned** to it **by a Fillet,** Sable, Born by the name of *Berlinger*. This is blazoned several ways: some say a **Ring Filleted** to three others **in triangle:** and others **three Rings conjoyned** to another in the **Center,** see *lib.* 2. *chap.* 1. *numb* 7.

The Ring of Gold was expresly prohibited by the *Romans* to all Mecannick persons, except they were ranked with Souldiers: for as *Pliny* observeth the *Roman* Knights and those of the Millitary orders, were distinguished from the vulgar by the Rings they wore: and these were but Rings of Iron, those of Gold were given by way of prerogative to Ambassadors which they sent to Kings.

In the Sinister base is an **Annulet beset round with Stones,** and such a Ring O. set with Diamonds in a Field V. was born by *Danpert*.

G. 3 such O. debruised with an Escochion quarterly B. and A. is the Town Arms of *Newenstat*.

XLVII. He beareth Or, **four Annulets one within the other,** Sable. There belongs to a Ring, especially if it be made of Gold, first the **Posie,** being an inscription or Love-fancie engraven within.

The **Piercing,** is cutting it into Leaves and Flowers.

The **Enamelling,** is the puting of them into their proper colours.

The **Engraving,** is the hatching it in several places.

XLVIII. He beareth Argent, an **Annulet,** or **Ring Gobony,** Or, and Gules. Born by the name of *Shelding*

XLIX. He beareth Vert, a **Fret** Argent, within an **Annulet,** Or. Is born by the name of *Roundlove*.

L. He beareth Jupiter, **two Rings** Or, enriched with Ruby Stones. Here I have caused two Rigns to be set that the reader may understand the difference in the terms between a plain Stone Ring and on that hath the **Collet** and **Shanke** wrought. The first is a **plain Shanked** and **Collet Ring** with a Stone set in it: the later all over Enamelled, and cut or Engraven into Flowers, *&c.* Now the Terms to the several parts of the Ring are these.

The **Shanke,** is the Ring part.

Peirced Ring, is such as are hollow and engraven.

Branched

Branched Ring, is those that are engraven with Flowers, Leaves, and such like.

Enammeled Ring, is wrought on the Gold with diverse colours and annailed, or burnt in.

The **Collet** is the Socket in which the Stone is set.

The **Scallops,** or **Muscles** of the Collet, are the works on the side of it, like those shells.

The **Gaining of the Collet,** are little heads of Gold or enammel set at the Foot of the Scallops.

The **Foil,** is a certain coloured Tin foil set under the Stone in the Collet, to give it a colour answerable to it self.

The **Bessel,** is the top of the Collet, which being beaten to the Stone, holds it in.

The **Cressants,** are the half rounds which the Bessel is cut into.

The **Traps,** are the square cuts at the bottom of the Stone, from whence the contrary lusters and sparks do proceed.

The **Threeds** of the Stone, or Traps, are the edges between each square of the Stone.

The **Follet stone** or **Rose stone,** is cut into many squares ending in the Center, as *lib.* 2. *chap* 2 *numb.* 47.

The **Table stone,** is **flat** on the top, whether square or losenwise, *ibid. numb.* 46.

The **Pointed stone,** is such as rise out of the Collet, either round on the top, or sharp pointed, as these do.

B. a plain wrought Ring with a Ruby, is the Coat and Crest of *Van Entzberg:* and also of *Van Entzenberg.*

B. 2 Swans Necks respectant holding a Stone Ring between their Beaks, is both Coat and Crest of *Van Moldorf.*

V. on a Fesse A. a Spurrowell S. between 3 Stone Rings. Born by the name of *Wipperman.*

G. a plain Stone Ring is the Coat and Crest of *Van Dormentz.*

O. a plain Ring the Collet or Socket, sans a stone S is the Coat of *Edelbecken* of *Bavaria:* whose Crest is the like Ring the socket set with a Peacocks Tail.

G. a Stone Ring the Collet to the sinister chief, is the Coat of *Rusenbach* of *Franckford.*

B. 3 Collets set with Stones, or Rubys: is born by *Collet.*

In the Dexter and Sinister sides I have caused a **Collet,** and a **plain Ring** with a **Collet** to be set, that the Reader may see and understand them what they are.

LI. He beareth a **Mound Jupiter, Invironed** with a **Circle,** and **Insigned** with a **Cross Avellane,** Sol. Some term it, a **Globe with a Cross infixed:** all **Mounds,** or **Globes** upon the Crowns of all Christian Princes, have but one single Cross fixed upon them: except the **Papal Treble Crown,** which hath on the Globe a **Treble Cross,** like to his **Cross Staff,** *numb.* 69. It is termed *Pomum Imperiale,* an **Imperial Ball.** This is born by the name of *Chawlus.*

Per Bend B. and O. the like O. in base 2 Bendlets V. is born by the name of *Fletchensteiner.*

O. on a Ball parted per Pale B. and A. 2 Spurrowells counterchanged, ensigned with a Cross Bottony. Is born by *Van Beroldingen.* [ ]

LII. He beareth Jupiter, a **Royal Scepter in bend** Sol. The **Scepter** is a thing born by the Hand of a King, which needs not be termed, to be in Pale, as Mr. *Gwillims fol.* 274. hath it, being always born upright, as the Sword of State is: therefore let that term (in Pale) be omitted; but if it be in any other posture, as in this example then to mention how it is.

B. a Scepter in Pale insigned with an Eye O. born by *Osiris* Surnamed *Jupiter* the Just: Son of *Cham* the cursed Son of *Noah,* as saith my Author.

B 2 Scepters in Salter O. born by *Schurf.*

G. 2 Scepters in Salter A. quartered by *Ursenbecken.*

In this Quarter is the **Ancient form** of another **Scepter** which was in use then: the Monument from whence I drew it could be no younger then 300 Years, see another also in *numb.* 66. 62.

LIII. He beareth Ruby, a **Gentlewomans foulding Fan half opened** Argent, **Garnished** or **Adorned with variety of Fancies, Stones,** or **Landskips,** proper. Some term it a **Circle Fan,** becauſed being opened to its full extent, it is just the half of a Semicircle. This is born by the name of *Fane.*

B. 3 such A. is born by *Phirdten.*

LIV. He beareth Argent, a **Feathered Fan,** Sable; **Handled,** Or. This is also termed a **Matrons Fan,** being more comely and civil for old Persons then the former, which is stuft with nothing but vanity. This is born by the name of *Featherfoile.*

A. 3 such with a Fesse between S. is born by *Windall,*

On the division score between this 54. and *numb.* 55. is set another form or making of a Cravat, contrary to those spoken off, *numb.* 6. 10.

LV. He beareth Vert, a **Popish set of Beads with a Cross Patee fixed at the Bottom,** or ends there of, Argent. This is the mark or cognizance of a **Popish Saint,** whether Male or Female, being always drawn with such Beads, with a Cross at them; either in their hands, on their Arms, by their Girdles, or near to them after some way or fashion or other, as it pleasith the *Painter.*

LVI. He beareth Argent, a **Braslet** twice about of Curral, of some termed a **Neck-lace of Curral.** Now see the difference, if it be about the Neck, it is a **Neck-lace;** if about the Arm a **Braslet.** These Braslets are named generally according to their colour. If red, termed **Curral:** if yellow, **Amber:** if white, **Pearl:** if black, **Pomander:** *&c.* I find this born by the name of *Brassalet.*

LVII. He beareth Gules, a **Chain of Gold,** thrice turned about, crossing each other above, and below. Some blazon it a **three fold Chain,** or a **Chain three time about,** or of **three rounds.**

LVIII. He beareth Saphir, **three Chains,** the one within the other, **all issuant** out of the chief, Topaz.

Born

Born by the name of *Chaines* or *Chainee*.

LIX. He beareth Argent, the **Perclose of a Demy Garter Nowed**, Gules: **Buckled, Edged, & Studded**, Or. This is by some Heralds blazoned, a **Demy Garter**, (or a **Garter dimidiated**, or **Severed into the half**) **Nowed**, and **Garnished**. This is also said to be **Buckled** and **Interlaced** with the end or **Tab pendant**. This Coat thus blazoned, belongs to the Family of *Littlegood*.

O. 3 such B. Garnished of the first, belongs to *Narboon*.

LX. He beareth Azure, a **Locket**, Or: with a **Diamond set therein**. Others term it, a **Jewel** consisting of a **Losenge table Diamond**, set round about with small Rubys, all proper. Three such is born by *Jeweller*.

LX. He beareth Jupiter, a **Mace of Majestie in pale**, Sol. This is called a Mace of Majestie, to distinguish it from the Mace born by a common Sergeant: this having upon it a **Royal Crown Arched** with **Mound** and **Cross**; that only a plain Chaplet, or Circle raised into Flowers. Such a Mace as this is born before the King in all Solemn assemblies: as also before his Mejesties Vice-Roys: and also before the Lord Chancellor, Keeper, and Treasurer of *England*, and the Lord President of *Wales*, and the North parts; and the Speaker of the *Parliament*, in the time of Parliament. Mayors of Corporations, *&c.*

The Bearer hereof is called a **Seergeant at Arms**; whose office it is to attend the persons aforesaid, for the execution of their commands, for the arrest of Traitors, and the apprehension of Malefactors. A Man that is under the arrest of a Serjeant at Arms is protected all that time from all other arrests.

LXII. He beareth Sable, a **Virge** (or a **Bishops Mace**) Argent. Some term it, a **Cathedral Virge**, or **Mace**; and the Bearer thereof a **Virger**: In former times it was but a small Silver Rod, in Latin *Virga*, having a round head, but now it is crowned about like the common **Serjeants Mace**, yet neither arched, or crossed, only in this they differ, this is twice or thrice longer in the rod, then the Serjeants is. This is made of Silver, and is carried before the Bishop, and the Dean, within the precincts of his Cathedral.

In the Dexter side of this square is the form of an other **Scepter** formerly used, being only a plain Rod with a flory top, and in Heraldry is termed a **Virge** or **Rod Flory at the top**: This kind or Scepter is much born by the *Germans*: as,

A. 2 such in Salter G. born by *Van Venningen*.

Per pale G. and O. two such in Salter, born by *Wernsdorf*.

B. 2 such in Salter A. born by *Uttenheim* of the *Rhyne*.

On a Cushion G. 3 such A. is the Crest of *Stromer*, and *Nuczel*.

G. such a **Rod Flory** in bend sinister, surmounted of another with a **Pomel top**, A. issuing out of the Base, an hill O. born by *Erckell* of *Brunswick*.

G. two Rods flory in Salter A. a hill in Base O. born by *Schuler* of the same place.

In the Sinister side of this square is another form of a **Pilgrims Staff**, termed in Armory a **Pilgrims Staff with a rest**: or a **Pilgrims Staff of St. James**, or a **Palmers Staff of St. Jacob**: and 3 such Sable, the heads, rests and ends, Or: in a Silver Field is born by the name of *Palmer* of *Winthrop* in *Lincolnshire*.

LXIII. He beareth Pearl, a **Sword of Estate** in pale, the **point erected** Ruby; **Cheap, Hilt** and **Pomel**, Topaz: the **Scabbard enriched** with Stones of diverse kinds, set in *Goldsmiths* work proper. This is *Guillims* way of blazoning it, *fol.* 280. but in my judgment there is a many superfluous words used about the same: as to say, in Pale, and then the point erected; when either would have served, or both might have been omitted, because Swords are ever born with the points upright, whether in the **Scabbard**, or without: if otherwise then to be mentioned. And therefore to say no more thereof, let all these foresaid Emblems, and tokens of Honor (as **Sword, Mace, Virge, Purse**) be ever blazoned in short; for it is well known, that by the addition of the word (**Estate** or **Majestie**) to them, they are to be of those colours, and mettlets, which usually they are off: as for example.

The **Virge**, is Silver, and so is the **Serjeants Mace**.

The **Mace of Majesty**, or Estate is Gold.

The **Sword of Estate**, or Majesty Gold, the Scabbard Imbrauthered.

The **Purse of Estate**, Imbrauthered with the Kings Arms, *&c.*

☞ He that carrieth such Sword of Estate, is termed the Kings, or Citys **Sword-Bearer**; which it is here to be observed, that the manner of bearing it varieth according to the several Estate, and Dignities of the Persons, before whom they are born (as saith *Leigh*) *pag.* 94. Yet now there is no such observation, but all Officers of Corporate Cities, and Towns; which have the Honor of a **Sword**, have the point of it born up right, as the Charter of those places have, and still do allow of it.

LXIV. He beareth Saturn, a **Royal Sword**, the **Scabbard enriched with Imbrauthery**, having a **Belt nowed about the middle** thereof, Mars; **Edged Buckle**, and **Tab**, Sol. This is the Crest of that ancient Honourable and Loyal City of *Chester*, on a Torce of Sol, Mars, and Jupiter. In the Patent for the confirmation thereof, it is under *William Flower Norroy* King of Arms his Hand and Seal, thus blazoned: the **Symbole**, or **Badge of Regalitie**, and **Justice**, a **Sword erected sheathed**, and wholly **Girded**, or **compassed** with a **Girdle**, or **Belt of Gold**: and as it is termed a Royal Sword, or a Sword of Estate, so it may be called a Sword of Justice.

LXV. He beareth Argent, two **Swords of Regality** and **Justice in Salter**, through an Earls Coronet; the **Hilts, Handles, Pomels** and **Cheaps**, Or; **Scabbard**, Gules. This on a Torce, or Wreath of Argent,

gent, and Gules; is the Crest of that worthy person Sir *Robert Brerewood* of *Chester* Knight, Serjeant at Law, Justice of *North-Wales*, and Recorder of *Chester*: But blazon it, two **Majestie Sword in Salter, Gorged** in the middle with an **Earls Crown.**

In Base is a **Trident**, or **Neptune Mace**, Sable; It is also called a **three Toothed Fork.** It is fained by the Poets, that when *Neptune* the God of the Sea is drawn, he hath one of these in his Hand, by which he is said to still, or make quiet, the raging of the Sea, when the Waves roar, by striking or thrusting it into the bellows thereof.

A. the Head of a Trident S. is born by the name of *Van Ebnet*: and the Crest is the same with a Fish upon the points of it A.

G. a Flag spear head in pale and two in Salter A. Gorged with a Coronet O. a Bordure Nebulee O. and B. born by *Brevning*.

LXVI. He beareth Gules, a **Croysier Staff**, and a **Rod of Authority.** These are the two Emblems and Marks of Power and Authority, the first of the **Church**, and the other for the **Estate**: which as long as they go together the Kingdom will be happy, if divided both will be miserable.

For the **Croysier**, I have found it stiled, a **Staff Croysee**, a **Pastoral Staff**; a **Bishops Staff**, or **Croysier**; which the Bishop carrieth in his hand when he is in his Pontificke habit. This is much used in Coats of Arms especially in such, as concern Abbies, Priories, and Bishopricks. I shall give you some of them.

A. 2 in Salter ⦶ and ☽ on a chief ✻ 3 Mitres of the second: which is the Arms of the Sea of *Laudaffe*.

If one with a Scarf turned about it ☽ is the Coat of the Bishoprick of *Eystat* in *Germany*, *numb.* 69.

G. a Lion Rampant A. one in Bend Sinister O. born by *Odo* Bishop of *Bayon*, half Brother to *William* the Conqueror.

S. a Croysier with a Scarf or Gafanon, pendant A. is the Town Arms of *Murhart*.

Per pale O. and G. an Eagle Displaid S. a Croysier A. is the Arms of the Bishoprick of *Cheimsee*.

For the **Rod of Authority**, it is also called a **White Rod**, or **Staff**; a **Majestrates Staff of Authority.** I have rarely found it used in Coats of Arms, though its bearing is very Honourable: For it is carried as a Badge of their Authority under the King, by the Princes of *Wales*, and Dukes by Creation, Majors of great Corporations, Sheriffs of Counties, and the like.

O. a Lion Rampant S. Crowned: supporting such a Staff with both Paw, extending out of Base into the chief G. is born by *Van Milkaw*.

On the Dexter side of this square, is another **old fashioned Mace**, with a **round Head** and **Handle**: and such a Mace I find born in bend S. in a Field A. by the name of *Winchelhausen*.

LXVII. He beareth Vert, a **Crosse Staff**, Or; with a **Papal Gaufannon** (or **Banner** or **Flag**) of two **ends** or **points**, Azure; charged with the **English Cross.** If the Banner be square, then there needs no such addition (as two ends, or points; or of one end) but only say a **Cross Staff**, Or: to which is fixed a **Gaufannon** Argent charged with the Cross of *England*. This kind of Banner is not on the Staff as other **Banners**, **Penons** and **Gwyndons** are, with a Socket: but by a **string**, as the long **Streamer of Ships**, hang at the Mast yards. See the addition to this, *chap.* 5. *numb.* 68.

LXVIII. He beareth Gules, a **Crucifix**, Or. It is also blazoned a **Cross Floxy**, or a **long Cross flurt**, and **Bottony fitcht** in the foot of the fourth, Or: with a Man hanging, or nailed thereon, having a **Linnen Towel wrapped** about his middle, proper. Others more briefly term it **Christ on the Cross**: but by the *Romans*, it is generally termed a **Portable Crucifix**: and such a Cross as this is usually born before the Pope, and his Cardinals, and Archbishops, and Bishops in their respective Dioceses, when they go their Processions, the Carrier of such a Cross is called a **Crucifer**, and **Cruciger**, a **Cross Bearer.**

In this Quarter is another form of a **Pilgrims** or **Rectors Staff**, of which see more in *numb.* 62. 70. These are much used in Arms among the *Dutch* and *Germans*: as

S. 2 such in Salter A. born by *Die Haynolt*.

G. a Rectors Staff O. between 2 Escallops A. by *Thornamer*.

G. 2 such in Salter A. born by *Romer* of *Misnian*.

LXIX. He beareth Saphire, a **Treble Cross Staff**, Topaz. This is also term'd a **Staff**, on the top a **Treble Cross Patee**, each **Pearled**, or **Buttoned**; others term it, the **Papal**, or **Popes Cross Staff**: and the **Universal Bishops Treble Cross.** Now in the true way of blazoning, it may be termed a **Staff Pomette** and **Fitched**, the **Top Treble Crossed**, **Patee**, **Bottony.** Others, a **Treble Cross**, the second and third **Crossed Patee Bottony.**

☞ Here take notice there is diverse kinds of these **Cross Staves**, the Popes Staff is thus made with three Crosses: and so is the Cross on the Mound, on his Crown.

The **Cardinals**, and **Patriarchal Staves** are with a **Double Cross Patee**, the first **Single**, the other **Crossed.**

The **Bishop** hath but a **single Cross** on his Staff, as the next Example will make manifest, *numb.* 70.

In the Sinister side of this Quarter I have set a **Shepards Crook**: which as it is the Badge and Emblem of a Shepard, so it is the Coat Armour of *Pastor*, *viz*: Argent, three such Crooks, Sable.

In the Dexter side of this Quarter is set the fashion and form of another kind of **Croysier Staff**, which is somewhat different from that mentioned *numb.* 66. according to which the *Germans* draw theirs: though we do generally make them after the former. This is termed a **Crosier Staff** in Pale, **bound** about with a **Towel**; by Mr. *Morgans lib.* 3. *fol.* 69. Though others call it a **Scarf** or **Gafonon turned about it.**

LXX.

LXX. He beareth Diamond, a **Bishops Crosse Staff**, Topaz, between a **Crutch** and a **Pilgrims Staff**, Argent. Of the several names attributed to these I shall in their places give you notice, as

First, for the **Crosse Staff**, some term it not a **Bishops Staff**, but a **Staff**, on the head thereof a **Crosse Patee fixed** upon a **Globe**, and the foot **Botony fitcht**; though *Gwillim, fol.* 278. only terms it a **Staff** in **Pale**, with a **Crosse Pattee** thereon: and *Morgan, lib.* 3. *fol.* 67. a **Staff** in Pale, **ensigned** with a **Crosse Patee.**

The **Crutch** is of some termed (and that vulgarly) a **Crich**, but more usually a **Crutch Staff**, which by Old Sir *Geffrey Chaucer*, was called a **Potence.** It is a Staff with a Cross piece on the head of it, which Lame Persons put under their Arm holes, thereby to support and stay them in their going, without which they were not able to stir. Such are born by the name of *Crouch*, viz. Gules, three such, Or.

The **Pilgrims Staff** hath also been by old Heralds termed a **Rectors** or **Parsons Staff**, or a **Walking Staff**, or a **Burthen Staff**, and the last so called, by reason such as Travel with Burthens make use of such a Staff to lay on their Carriage, and so put it on their Shoulders. It is a plain long Staff with a round head on it, which Head I have seen several times to be of a contrary colour from the Staff, the first being Argent, the latter Sable.

The **Pilgrims Staff**, is made with another round below the head and the hand, at which is usually placed a hook to hang any thing on, and so carry it on the shoulder, as *numb.* 62.

LXXI. He beareth Gules, an **Italian Penny** or **Coin**, with the **Stamp of Mount Calvary**, with a **Crosse upon it**, with this Inscription about it, *Jesus Rex noster, & Deus noster.*

The like Stamp is on the *Portugal* Crown piece, having this Inscription, *In hoc signo Vinces.*

LXXII. He beareth Vert, a **Shekel of Israel.** This was a Coin of Silver used by the Kings of *Judah* and *Israel*; it contained in value of our Money 2 *s.* 3 *d.* on one side is the Impression of the Pot of Manna; on the other side *Aarons* Rod Budded; as you may see further hereafter in the *Jews* Coins.

LXXIII. An Old **English Penny**, having the stamp of an Escochion, with *France* and *England* Quarterly Quartered or Debrused, with a Cross Molyne.

Between these two squares on the division line, is placed another kind of **Palmers Scrip**, it is in shew something different from that mentioned, *numb.* 81.

A. 3 such S. is born by *Freunt.*

LXXIV. On a Silver **piece of Bullen**, is coined two **Incressants Fretting each other**: This piece of Money is passable here in *England* for Two Pence; and is the Coin set forth by King *Charles* the Second; his Three Pence hath the like Figure of **Three Cressants** raised on his Coin; but of the several sorts of Coins, I shall speak more hereafter.

LXXV. He beareth Argent, a **Purse closed**, Gules, **gorged with a Crownett**, Or. It cannot properly be called a Purse Crowned, because the ears or draughts of the Purse come through the Crown, in which respect the Crown is said to be about the Neck, not upon it.

G. Such a Purse A. Gorged O. born by *Obermer.*
B. 3 such O. is born by *Burserheim.*

LXXVI. He beareth Gules, a **Purse Overte**, Argent. This is also Blazoned a **Purse opened**, and the **Strings pendant, Buttons and Tassels**, Or. This is born by the name of *Purser.*

A. the like G. born by the Family of *Conradus Wittenbergensis*, an Earl in *Germany.*

LXXVII. He beareth Pearl, a **Purse of State**, proper; but more largely, if you will have it (though this is sufficient) take *Gwillims* Blazon, *fol.* 281. he beareth a **Purse open**, the **long Strings** thereof, **Fretted, Nowed, Buttoned** and **Tasselled**, Mars, all **Hatched**, Topaz; **Embrauthered** all over with the **Soveraign Ensigns of his Majesty**, ensigned with a **Crown Triumphant**, and **supported** of a **Lion Gardant**, and a **Unicorn**, underneath the same an **Escroll**; but if the first Blazon be too brief, as the latter hath too many Tautologies, see how a third person terms it; a **Purse Embrauthered** with the **Soveraigns Coat of Arms** in a **Garter, Crowned** and **supported**, with an Escroll under, according to his Bearing them; the **Strings Fretted** and **Tasseled**, and **Interwoven** answerable to the colours of his **Atchievement**; others have it thus, a **Purse of Estate**, the **Strings**, Mars, **Hatched**, Sol, Embrauthered with the **Kings Ensigns** or **Tokens of Majesty**, in their proper colours.

Such a Purse as this is born before the Lord Chancellor, and Lord Keeper of *England*, and also before the Lord Chamberlain of the County Palatine of *Chester*, as a peculiar Ensign of their high Magistracy, whose Office it is to mitigate the rigour of the common Laws of the Realm, according to the Rule of Equity.

LXXVIII. He beareth Sable, a **Staff Coronettee, fixt** on the top a **Losenge, imbossed with a Salter, the corners Bottony**, Or. The like Staff to this, I have seen cut upon Grave-Stones in several Churches, which makes me judg it to be a Staff of some **Ecclesiastical Order**, but whether for or belonging to a Dean or Dean Rurall, Abbot, or Prior, or Canon Regular, I have not as yet found out; but sure I am, it doth belong to some degree below a Bishop.

LXXIX. He beareth Argent, a **Caduceus**, or **Mercury's Mace**, proper. This is called also a **Snaky Staff**, and **Mercurys Soporiferous Rod**, by which he made Peace, and united Serpents at variance. It is no other than a slender Staff or Wand, having two **Serpents Annodated**, or **entwisted** about it, whose heads

heads meet together at the higher end, and the tails at the lower end or handle.

Beside this form of **Caduceus**, I have another stamped on the Ancient *Roman* Coin, made in form and fashion of that Engraven on the partition score of this quarter, *viz.* two **Serpents respectant Torqued**, joined together at the tails, fixed to the end of a **Wand** or **Rod**, Also this form, with **Wings** set to the Rod, is on some other *Roman* Coins; see *lib.* 2. *chap.* 19. *numb.* 1. 18. and sometimes the Snakes are made crossing one the other, as in the sinister side of this square.

LXXX. He beareth Argent, two **Muffs**, or **Hand Muffs**; the first is Sable, **turned up** at each end with a Furr of the same; the second is of the Furr Sable, which latter is the most usual way of making the Muff, be the Furrs of Dogs, Cats, Fitchets, and such like, and are lined within, with a Cony skin, or Furr, or Wool of the Rabbet. By this Sign or Cognizance hung out to publick view, you may easily know where a Furrier or Muff-maker dwelleth, and therefore is a fit Badg for one of such an Imploy.

LXXXI. He beareth Argent, a **Palmers Scrip**, or **Pilgrims Bag**, with its **Girdle**, Sable, **Buckles** and **Tabs**, Or. This is a kind of Bag or Purse, which Travellers carry at their sides by the Girdle, in which they put things necessary for their Journey; and is born by the name of *Scrip*. But 3 such G. with Golden Girdles, in a Silver Field, is born by the name of *Scripsulle*.

LXXXII. He beareth Gules, an **Irish Penny**, Argent. This hath the Stamp of the **Harp and Crown** upon it; or coined with the Badge of *Ireland*. Three such is born by the name of *Isle*.

LXXXII. He beareth Sable, a **Scotch Penny**, Argent, stamped with the **Thistle and Crown** upon it. These two Bearings may also be termed Plates charged or stamped, or coined, with a Thistle and Crown, or with the Badg of *Scotland*. Born by the name of *Scotsman*.

LXXXIV. He beareth Azure, a **Penny Yard Penny**, proper; it is stamped with a Cross Moline between 12 round Buttons, and are called **Penny-Yard Pence**, of the place where they were first Coined, which was (as is supposed) in the Castle of *Penny-Yard*, near the Market Town of *Rosse*, in *Herefordshire*.

B. 3 such A. born by *Spence*.

G. a Cheveron between 3 such A. born by *Penny*.

LXXXV. He beareth Sable, an **Henry the Sevenths Penny**, stamped with a Cross throughout the Bullen between 12 Buttons, with an Inscription about.

On the other side this Coin was the Kings Face crowned with a Ducal Crown; this is by most called a **Butt Penny**, and also a **Cross Penny**, from its stamp.

In respect we are now come to speak of **Stamps** and **Coins**; I hold it not impertinent (by the way) to give some little touch of the names of several pieces of Coins, now and in former time, together with their value, that the Reader upon the sight, or hearing thereof, may be able to judge of them.

Jews Silver Coin.

A **Gherah**, or an **Agorah**, or in some places a **Teshitah**, it was the twentieth part of a **Sicle**, or **Shekel**, and had upon it the Image of a **Lamb**, it is worth in our English money, a penny half penny.

A **Zuz**, or **Zuzim Shekel**, **quadrans sicli**, or the fourth part of a Sicle, it was worth a **Roman penny**, and in our money seven pence half penny; yet some say 1 *s.* 3 *d.*

A **Shelishih shekel**; **triens sicli**, the third part of a shekel, it is in our value worth ten pence.

Jews Gold Coin.

A **Bekangh shekel**, **dimidius sicli**, an half shekel, it was worth in our money one shilling three pence: It was for distinction of the Shekel, called the **common shekel**, and weighed a quarter of an Ounce, in Gold 15 *s.*

A **shekel**, or **sicle of the Sanctuary**, it contained precisely half an Ounce of Silver or Gold. This was called **Keseph**, or **Stigha**; which to distinguish it from the Kings Shekel, upon the one side was to be seen the Measure or Pot wherein they kept Manna in the Sanctuary, with this superscription, *The Sicle of Israel*; and on the other side the Rod of *Aaron* flourishing, with this Inscription, *Holy Jerusalem*; it is worth in our Money two shillings six pence, and in Gold 30 shillings: But after the coming of our Saviour, the Converted Jews changed their shekel, and on the first side stamped the Image of Christ, with the *Hebrew* Letters *Jod* and *Schin* at the mouth of the Image, and the Letter *Vau* in the Pole, which three Letters made his name *Jesu*. On the reverse side there was no Picture, but the whole rundle was filled with this Inscription in *Hebrew* Characters, which in *English* was thus, *Messias the King cometh with Peace, and the Light of Man is made Life*; but in some Coins for the latter clause of that Inscription is Read *God is made Man*.

The **Kings shekel**, was less than the Shekel of the Sanctuary, it was worth in *English* money, one shilling ten pence halfpenny; in Gold 22 shillings six pence; yet *Holyoake* in his Dictionary values it to no more than the half of the sicle of the Sanctuary, *viz.* one shilling three pence, this must be the common sicle.

A **Mina**, answereth to our pound weight, of which there is three sorts; as the **common Mina**, which is 15 of our half Ounces, and is worth in our *English* money 37 shillings sixpence; and in Gold 22 pounds 10 shillings.

A **Kings Mina**, or pound, weighed 20 half ounces, which amounted in our *English* Money to Fifty shillings, and in Gold to 30 pound.

A **Mina**, or **pound of the Temple**, weighed 25 half ounces, which in our money is three pounds two shillings six pence, and in Gold 37 pounds ten shillings.

A **Talent** or **Cicar**, was a certain Summ of Money with the *Hebrews* or *Jews*, as our Pounds, Nobles, or Marks is with us; it did amount to 3000 shekels, or half ounces; yet of these Talents there was three sorts, as

A **Common Talent** weighed 1500 half ounces, or **Common Sicles**, which is in our money 187 pounds 10 shillings, and in Gold 2250 *l.*

A **Kings Talent** weighed 3000 of the Kings Sicles and was in value with us worth 281 pounds 5 shillings, and in Gold 3375 pounds.

A **Talent of the Temple** or **Sanctuary**, weighed 3000 sicles of the Temple, which amounteth to 375 pounds; in Gold was worth 4500 pound *English.*

The **Keshita**, was a certain Coin amongst the *Hebrews*, on the one side whereof the Image of a Lamb was stamped. In the Judgment of the Rabbins, it was the same to **Obolus**; twenty of them went to a shekel; so that the value thereof was one penny half penny.

The **Ceseph**, which we render *Argenteus*, a piece of Silver; and often time is put absolutely for *Nummus*, Money; but if mentioned among the *Hebrew* Coins, it stands for a shekel, and valued at 2 *s.* 6 *d.* if it stand for a shekel of the Sanctuary or the common Shekel, then it is valued at 1 *s.* 3 *d.* But if it be mentioned in the *Greek* Coins, then it signifieth the *Attick Dracma*; which is in our Money a penny half penny.

A **Zuza**, it was a weight of Gold, which was also called **Daikemonim**; and of the *Caldeans* **Edarconim**; it was worth in our money seven shillings six pence; the *Persians* called it an **Adarkon**, and **Drachmon.**

A **Zahab**, is a certain piece of Gold of theirs, it was in value to our money 15 shillings; it was also called the **common shekel of Gold.**

Greeks Silver Coin.

The **Drachma**, or **Attick Drachma**, it is coined with a Burning Light, and is worth in *English* 7 pence half penny; four of these makes a shekel.

The **Drachma of Aeginea**, worth one shilling and ahalfpenny.

The **Stater**, which was also called the **Tetradrachma**, on the one side was the head of *Minerva*, upon the other an Owl; it is worth in *English* two shillings six pence. This was the **Attick Stater.**

The **Corinthian Stater** was worth 1 *s.* 8 *d.* 3 *q.*

The **Macedonian Stater** was worth 2 *s.* 9 *d.* *q.* two thirds of a *q.*

The **Didrachma**, it had the impression of a Bull or Oxe, it was worth one shilling three pence.

The **Tridrachma**, which is 3 **Drachma's**, worth 1 *s.* 10 *d. ob.*

The **Obolus** or **Attick Obolus**; so called, because it was oblong, and ended in a sharp point; it was worth 1 *d. q.*

The **Eginea Obolus**, was worth two pence half farthing, and the third part of a farthing.

The **Semiobolus** is worth a half penny farthing. This was the least of the *Greek* Silver Coins.

*

The **Diobolus**, it had on one side Jupiters Face, on the other an Owl, it was worth 2 *d. ob.*

The **Triobolus of Attick**, was worth 3 *d. ob. q.*

The **Aeginea Triobolus**, was worth six pence farthing.

The **Tetrobolus**, had on one side Jupiters Face, on the other two Owls coined; it was worth 5 *d.*

The **Siglus**, or the **Asiatick Siglus**, was worth 10 *d.*

The **Asiatick Cistophorus**, it was so called, because of the Image of one bearing of a Basket, or Chest upon it; it was worth in *English* 4 *d. ob.*

The **Asiatick Danaces**, it was a piece of Money, which the *Greeks* usually put into the mouth of their Dead, to pay *Charon* for their passage to *Elizium*, it was worth in *English* Money an half penny farthing, and two third parts of a Farthing.

Greeks Brass Coin.

The **Assarius**, it was a Brass piece of Coin, and was worth the quarter of a Farthing in English account.

The **Quadrans**, it was another Brass Stamp, worth a quarter of an half Farthing.

The **Quadrans Assis**, it was worth a Farthing and a half.

The **Ereolum**, it was a Brass Coin, worth a farthing and an half, and one third part of an half Farthing, or Mite.

The **Minute** or **Minutum**, it is the seventh part of an **Ereolum**, which is worth little more than half a Mite, or half a quarter of a Farthing and half.

Greeks Gold Coin.

The **Attick Stater**, was in Gold the weight of two **Drachma's**, and was worth 15 shillings.

The **Stater Daricus**, it was *Persian* Gold, it had the Impression of a *Sagitarius* upon it, and valued to 15 *s.* it was also called an **Adarchon.**

The **Stater of Macedonia**, it was worth of our Money 18 *s.* 4 *d.*

The **Stater of Cizycenus**, so called (as is thought) of *Cizycus*, a *Grecian* City, valued with them at 17 *s.* 6 *d.* but is worth in our *English* Money 1 *l.* 1 *s.*

The **Semistater** was worth the same price 17 *s.* 6 *d.*

The **Tetrastater**, was worth three pounds.

The **Cizycenus** was worth seven shillings six pence.

The **Attick Minas**, weighed 100 **Drachma's**, and was worth with us three pounds two shillings six pence.

The **Talent** was of diverse kinds, according to the Countrey where it was used; and for the most part 6000 **Drachma's** made the same, as

The **Attick Talent** contained 6000 **Drachmas** at *Attica*, and was worth in our money 187 pounds 10 shillings; but the **greater Attick Talent** was worth 250 pounds.

The **Syrian Talent**, was worth 46 *l.* 17 *s.* 6 *d.*

The **Egyptian Talent** was worth 250 *l.*

The

The **Euboian Talent**, worth 125 *l.*
The **Rodian Talent**, was worth 140 *l.* 12 *s.* 6 *d.*
The **Babylonian Talent**, worth 218 *l.* 15 *s.*
The **Eginea Talent**, worth 312 *l.* 10 *s.*
The **Alexandrian Talent**, was worth 375 *l.*
The old **Talentus siculus**, or **Shekel Talent** of the minor or lesser sort, was worth but 3 *s.* 9 *d.*
The **Neapolitan Talent**, was worth so much, *viz.* 3 *s.* 9 *d.*
The New **Talentum siculum**, and the **Sicilian Talent**, are all one, and is worth 1 *s.* 10 *d. ob.*
The **Regian Talent**, was worth but 3 *d. ob. q.*

Romans Brass Coin.

The **Minutum**, or **Mite**, it was the 8 part of a Farthing, it weighed half a Barley Corn, and was worth in our money three parts of one Farthing.

The **As**, or **Es**; for **Ereus**, was a Coin worth the tenth part of a *Roman* Penny, which with us is worth an half penny farthing. Some call it an **Assarius**, or **Assarium**, it weighed 4 grains of Barley, and contained eight Mites.

The **Semissis**, is as much as half an *Æs*, it is worth a farthing and a half.

The **Triens**, is the third part of an *Æs*, which is half a farthing.

The **Quadrans** or **Quadrant**, a Farthing, it weighed a grain of Barley, it consisted of 2 Mites, and was the fourth part of an *Æs*; it is by some Authors called **Triuncis** and **Triuntius**, because it was a diminution of the pound, containing three ounces, and is with us worth 3 Mites, or 3 quarters of a farthing.

The **Sextans**, or sixth part of an **Assis**, worth half a Farthing, or 2 Mites.

The **Uncia**, was the tenth part of an **Assis**, worth 1 Mite.

The **semiuncia**, worth half a Mite, or half of the fourth part of a Farthing.

The **Sextula**, the sixth part of an **Uncia**, or ounce, it is worth the sixth part of a Mite; these are the ancient Brass Money used among the *Romans*; but there were greater used in latter times, as

The **Decussis**, or **Decem Assis**, a *Roman* Penny, it is in our value 7 pence half penny.

The **Vicessis**, 2 *Roman* Pennies, worth with us 1 *s.* 3 *d.*

The **Tricessis**, 3 *Roman* Pennies, worth 1 *s.* 10 *d. ob.* and so they ascended higher and higher to 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10 *Roman* Pennies, the last of which they called a **Centussis**, behind which they went not with any Brass Coin.

The **Centussis**, or 10 *Roman* Pennies, was worth 6 *s.* 3 *d.*

The **Follis**, was a Brass Coin (or Iron as some say) and so called because thereon was stamped the similitude of a Leaf, and was worth a Farthing, half Farthing, and one third of a Farthing.

Romans Silver Coin.

The **Denarius Vetus**, or the old *Roman* Penny, was a Silver Coin, it weighed the seventh part of an Ounce, it was worth 10 **Asses**, and worth with us eight pence half penny, Mite, and one seventh part of a Mite.

The **Denarius Novus**, or **new**, or **common Roman Penny**, was worth in our money 7 pence half penny; but the Penny of the Sanctuary was worth 1 *s.* 3 *d.*

The **Bigatus**, and **Quadrigatus**, they are both all one with the *Roman* Penny; and were so called, because these words were stamped upon one side of them; they were worth 7 pence half penny a piece.

The **Victoriatus**, a Coin having the Image of Victory upon it, it was worth 3 pence half penny.

The **Miliarisimum**, weighed two **Drachmas**, and was worth 15 *d.*

The **Sestertius**, so called of **Sesquitertius**, it was 2 **Asses** and a half, and worth in our money 3 *d. ob. q.* Some say worth but 1 *d. ob. q.*

The **Obolus**, is the sixth part of a **Denarius**, and is worth in our money a penny farthing; though in these days the *Latins* and *Romans* use the word *Obolus*, but for an half penny.

The **Libella**, is the tenth part of a *Roman* Penny, and worth an half penny Farthing.

The **Sembella**, is so called, because its half the **Libella**, and was worth a farthing and a half.

The **Teruntius**, was the fourth part of a **Denarius**, and was worth 2 Mites and a half.

The **Ceratium**, and the **Siliqua Cornuta**, because there was stamped upon it the Moon increasing, by which it was known to be more than the common **Ceratium**, or **Siliqua**, and was worth 7 *d. ob.* the common but 5 *d.*

Romans Gold Coin.

The **Denarius Aureus**, the Gold Penny, so called, because such had the same Stamp, or was of the same bigness as the Silver Pennies, it was worth 17 *s.* 1 *d. ob.* such were called **Aureus Piscus**, and **Aureus Consularis**, being Coined in the time of the Consuls.

The **Aureus recentior**, or **Aureus Imperatorius**, these were pieces of Gold Coined about the beginning of the Emperours, and weighed 2 **Drachmas**, and was worth 15 *s.*

The **Semissis Aurei**, worth 7 *s.* 6 *d.*

The **Tremissis Aurei**, was worth 5 *s.*

The **Aureus Constantini**, of the weight of a **Didrachma**, and was worth 8 *s.* 6 *d. ob.*

The **Aureus Valentiniani**, Gold Coined by the Emperour *Valentinian*, it was also called **Sextuala**, because it was the sixth part of an Ounce, and worth 10 *s.*

The **Semissis Aurei**, of the said *Valentinian*, was worth five shillings.

The **Triens**, or **Tremissis Aurei**, worth 3 *s.* 4 *d.*

The **Scrupulum Aurei**, which was the fourth part of a Golden **Sextula**, and worth 2 *s.* 6 *d.*

The Ancient *Romans* numbered the sums of Money by these four ways;

By the **Sestertium**, which as it is put in the Neuter Gender, from *Sestertius* of the Masculine; then it contains a thousand Sestertios, and is as much as in our sum of Moneys 7 *l.* 16 *s.* 3 *d.*

By the **Libra**, or Pound Weight, containing 12 Ounces of Silver, which is worth 3 pounds.

By the **Talentum**, or **Talent**, which contained 24 **Sestertios**, or 6000 **Denarios**, and is worth 187 *l.* 10 *s.*

By the **Sportula**, which was a certain small Summ of 400 Quadrans, which maketh 10 Sestertios, and was as much as our 1 *s.* 6 *d. ob. q.*

See further of these Ancient Coins in these Authors.
Francis Holyoake, at the end of his *English* Dictionary.
The Travels of the Patriarchs, by *Hen. Bunting*, *p.* 375, *&c.*
Observations Natural and Moral, by *Jo. Weemse*, *pag.* 141. &c.
Goodwyn on the Jews Antiquities, pag 260.

English Brass Coin.

A **Farthing**, it is of Copper at this time, which in weight is the --- part of an Ounce, having on one side the Kings head, with a Laurel about his Temples, and this Inscription *Carolus a Carolo*; on the other side the Emblem of *Brittannia*, being a Woman with a Shield and Spear, holding a Star in her right hand, and written about *Brittannia*. 1673.

An **Halfpenny**, it containeth 2 Farthings, having the same Images and Superscriptions; these are all the Brass Moneys used in *England*.

English Silver Coin.

A **Half penny** Silver hath the Rose on one side, and the Thistle, or a Portcullis on the other.

A **Penny** in Silver *Car.* 1. Coin, was the same to his Royal Father, *Jac.* 1. *viz.* their heads on one side, with an I. and the Arms of *England*, *Scotland*, *France* and *Ireland* on the other, it containeth half an Inch, half a quarter in diameter. *Car.* 2. Coin hath his head on one side, and a Cressant on the other for a Penny.

A **Two Pence** of Queen *Elizabeth*, King *James*, King *Charles* the first, have their Pictures on one side, and the *English* Arms on the other, with this II. in diameter half an Inch, and two thirds of a quarter; *Charles* the 2. hath two **Cressants Braced**, as *numb.* 74.

A **Threepence** in all respects answereth the Twopence having this Token III. and in *Charles* the Seconds Coin three **Cressants Braced** or **Fretted triangular**; the diameter directly 3 quarters of an Inch.

A **Four pence**, or **Groat**, or an Old Groat, hath the *English* and *French* Arms quartered on one side, and

- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -

but the **Four Pences** of the foresaid Kings have their heads on one side, with the mark IIII, with the *English* Coats in a Compartment; but *Charles* the Seconds Mill'd Groat hath his head after the *Roman* manner on one side; and four **Cressants Fretted** in form of a Cross crowned between a Flower de lis, a Rose, a Thistle and Harp, with this Inscription, *Carolus* D. G. *Mag. Br. Fr. & Hib. Rex.* 1672.

A **Sixpence**, or **Tester**, answereth the Kings Four pence in all respects, having this mark VI or a Rose; if it have neither, it is a **half Faced Groat**, and goeth for no more. It is an Inch in Diameter.

A **Shilling** or **Twelve Pence**, it containeth in weight, the fifth part of an Ounce *Troy*; stamped on one side with the Kings head Crowned, with this mark XII. Inscription *Carolus* D. G. *Mag. Br. Fr. & Hib. Rex.* with the *English* Quarterings in a Compartment, with this about it, *Christo Auspice Regno*; in diameter it is an Inch and a quarter.

A **Mill'd Shilling** of *Charles* the Second, is in all respects like the **Mill'd Half Crown**, only less.

A **Philip and Mary shilling**, hath a Man and Womans head respecting each other, with a Royal Crown over them; on the other side the Arms of *Spain* and *England* Impaled.

Queen **Elizabeths shilling**, had her Effigies and Title on one side, and the Arms of *England* in a plain Escochion, *viz. France* and *England* quarterly, with a Cross throughout the Diameter of the Coin, ragged or railed at the end, with this Inscription, *Posui Deum Adjutorem meum*; the like Cross was in her **Six Pence** and **Groats**.

An **Half Crown**, or a *George*, so called, because it hath on the one side a *George* on Horse-back, or a Man Armed Cap-a-Pee, Brandishing his Sword, and his Scarf flourishing behind him, with this writing about *Carolus* D. G. *Mag. Brit. Fr. & Hib. Rex.* on the other side the *English* Quartered Coats in a Compartment, with the foresaid Inscription, *Christo Auspice Regno*; it weigheth about half an Ounce, and passeth for 2 *s.* 6 *d.*

The **Mill'd Half Crown** of *Charles* the Second, hath his Head in the *Roman* Garb, with this Inscription *Carolus II. Dei Gratia*; and on the other side four Escochions Crowned in Cross, between so many times two Cbraced; on the Escochions is 1. the Arms of *England*. 2. of *Scotland*. 3. of *France*. 4. of *Ireland*. The Inscription *Mag. Br. Fr. & Hib. Rex.* 1676.

A **Crown piece**, or **Five shilling piece**, is the largest Coin we have in Silver, it is an Ounce Troy, having the like Stamps as the **Half Crown**, some call them a **Double George** or **Hore-Man**.

The **Mill'd Crown pieces**, or **Five shilling pieces**, in all respects do answer the Mill'd Half Crowns; they are called Mill'd Pieces, because Coined round and Mill'd, with Letters on the Rim or edges of them, on the out side, by which they cannot be Clipped; the Inscription is * * *Decus & Tutamen Anno Regni Vicessimo Octavo.*

English Gold Coin.

A **Crown** or **five Shillings Gold**, is the least peece we have in *England*: It hath the Kings head on one side with

*

with his Royal Crown, and this mark *V.* the Inscription, *Globus D. G. Mag. BR. Fr. Et Hib.* REX. on the other side the *English* Arms in a compartinent Crowned with a C. and an R. Crowned, with this Inscription, *Cultores Sui ——Rotegit:* It weigheth about two penny Weight.

Henry the Eight, his first **Crown** was two Penny weight, and nine Grains: was worth seven Shillings.

Q. Elizabeth, and **K. James Crowns**; was two penny weight: and worth five shillings, six pence.

The **Double Brittain Crown**, is four penny weight, and is in value eleven shillings, three pence.

The **ten Shilling Peece** of *Charles* the first in all respects answered the five shillings peece for the Coinage, it had this X set on the Head side.

The **Angel,** or the **Noble Angel:** so called because *St. Michael* the Archangel slaying the Dragon, is on one side with the Inscription, *Henricus Viii. D. G. Ang. Et Fr.* and on the other side, a **Ship** with one **Mast** and **Tackles,** and an Escochion with *France* and *England* quarterly, and this writing about, *Per Cruce Tua Salva Nos:* It is three penny weight, seven Grains, and a quarter: and worth eleven shillings.

The **Half Angel,** hath the same Impresses, and is worth five shillings, six pence.

The **Old Angel Noble of England,** hath the same impression, but on the Ship side, it hath this writing *A. Dno: Factum Est Istud Et Est Mirabili:* it was four penny weight ten Grains: and passed for fourteen shillings, six pence.

The **Half of that Angel,** was so stamped, it contained two penny weight, four Grains, and is worth seven shillings six pence.

The **George Noble,** was three penny weight, and one Grain: it was worth nine shillings.

The **Rose Noble,** or **Rose Royal of England:** was four penny weight, thirteen Grains; worth fourteen shillings six pence: It hath a Rose with the Arms of *France* in the middle of it, with this writing about, *IHE: Autem Transiens Per Medium Illorum Ibat:* and on the other side, out of the Hul of a Ship, a Demy King holding a Sword in his right hand, and a Shield with the Arms of *France* and *England* quarterly: Crowned with a Ducal Crown, in the left hand; and written about *Henricus D. G. Rex Ang: Fr: Dns: Hib.* This peece is also termed, the Rose Royal, or the Royal of *England.*

The **Double Rose Noble,** Coined by King *Henry* hath a King Enthroned, in his right hand a Scepter, and left a Mound; with this writing, *Henricus D. G. Rex Ang: Et Fr: Dns: Hib:* on the other side the Arms of *France* and *England* quarterly in the middle of a double Rose, with this Inscription about: *Ihesus Autem Transients Per Medium Illorum Ibat.* This is ------- penny weight, and passes for thirty nine or Forty shillings.

The **Spare Royal,** or **Spare Royal of England,** it is four penny weight, twenty three Grains, and is worth sixteen shillings six pence.

The **Half Spare Royal,** is worth sixteen shillings three pence.

The **Salute of Eugland,** worth six shillings ten pence.

The **Soveraign,** Coined by *Henry* the Eighth, *Edward* the Sixth, Queen *Elizabeth,* King *James,* they all weighed between three and four penny weight, and passed for eleven shillings, they had their Images and Superscriptions, on one side: and their Arms Crowned on the other.

The **Great Double Soveraign** of King *James,* weighed six penny, six Grains: and passed for two and twenty shillings, had the figure of the King to the middle in Armour Crowned holding a Sword and Mound: on the other side the *English, Scotch, French,* and *Irish* Arms: with *Faciam Eos in Gentem Unam.* The **Great Triple Soveraign,** was ten penny weight, and passed for three and thirty shillings.

The **Half Soveraign of King Henry the Eight,** had a double Rose Crowned, with an H. R. Crowned on one side and his Arms Crowned, all with Ducal Crowns, and this Inscription; *Henricus Viii. Rutilans Rossin: Spp: Di. G. Ang: Fr: Et Hib: Rex.*

Note that what Coin soever was stamped in *Wales,* it ever had on one side, or in some part of the side, the three Feathers in the Crown impressed.

We Sum up our Money seven ways: as
By **Pounds** which is twenty shillings.
By **Marks** which is thirteen shillings, four pence.
By **Angels** which is ten shillings.
By **Nobles** which is six shillings, eight pence.
By **Crowns** which is five shillings.
By **Shillings** which is twelve pence.
By **Groats** which is four pence.

Scotch Brass Coin.

A **Penny Scotch,** twelve of these is worth one penny *English.*

An **Atchison,** is a Mettle peece, neither Silver, Copper, Brass, Lead or Tin, it is like Masline and is valued to be four Bodels, six of them is a Penny *English.*

A **Bodel,** three of them makes an half penny *English.*

A **Placke,** three of them makes a penny *English.*

A **Babee,** is an half penny *English.*

A **Shilling** of *Scotland,* is a penny *English.*

Scotch Silver Coin.

A **Scotch twenty pence,** it hath a Rose on one side, and Thistle on the other; it is marked with XX. and is worth in *English,* two pence. Some call it a two shilling peece.

A **Babee of Scotland,** is an half penny *English.* These peeces are Coined both in Copper, and Silver.

A **Forty pence peece Scotch,** ---- which is worth three pence half penny farthing *English:* It is called a quarter peece because it is the fourth part of a thirteen pence half penny peece, which the *Scotch* call a Mark peece.

A **Four Shilling and a Babee peece,** which in our Money is four pence half penny. It hath the Harp and Crown on one side, and this writing, *Tueatur Unit Deus,* on the other side a Kings head looking to the sinister side; and Inscription, *Jacobus D. G. Ang. Sco. Fran. Et Hib. Rex.*

A 6 **Shilling peece** and a **Babee**, or a half **Mark Scotch**, or half a thirteen pence half penny: It is called an **half peece**, it passeth with us for six pence, half penny farthing. It is Coined in all respects answerable to the Mark peece of *Scotland*, or thirteen pence half penny.

A **Nine Shillings peece Scotch**, --- in our Money nine pence: it hath the Harp crowned on one side with this Inscription, *Exurgat Deus Dissipentur Inimici*: on the other side the Kings head with a Royal Crown, Inscribed *Jacobus D. G. Ang. Sco. Fra. Et Hib. Rex.*

A **Ten Shilling peece**, and a **Babee** ---- of some called a Baldpate, it is in *English* Money ten pence half penny.

A **Mark** or **Scotch Mark**, in our Money worth thirteen pence half penny, on one side it hath a Thistle slipt with two Leaves, and Crowned: with this writing, *Reem Jova Protegit*, on the other side the *Scotch* Arms with a Royal Crown on it, and this Inscription, *Jacobus VI. D G. R. Scotorum.*

A 12 **Shilling Scotch**, or shilling *English*, that is twelve pence: It is in all things like to our *English* Coin, but that on the Arms side, the *Scotch* Coat is set in the first and fourth Quarters: and so they do in all their other Coins, whether six pence, half Crowns or Crowns, *&c.* that are Coined amongst them in *Scotland.*

A **Pound Scotch**, is 1 *s.* 8 *d.* or 5 Groats *English.*

A three **Pound peece in Scotland**, is in *English* sterling just five shillings.

Scotch Gold Coin.

The **Scotch Crown**, is worth five shilling six pence *English.* They call it **five Mark peece.**

A **Scotch Rider**, or **Horseman**; is worth eleven shillings, on one side a Man and Horse Cap a Pee, on the other the *Scotch* Arms Crowned *viz.* a Lion Rampant in a double Tressure flurt: with this Inscription, *Spero Meliora.* They call it also a **Ten Mark peece.**

The **Half Thistle Crown**, worth two shillings nine pence.

A **Scotch Angel**, it is worth ten shillings ten pence, having on one side the *Scotch* Arms Crowned, with *Jacobus VI. D. G. R. Scotorum*, on the other side a Sword and Scepter in Salter between two Thistles, and a Crown in chief; in base 1601. Inscribed *Salus Populi Suprema Lex.*

The **Twenty Mark peece of Scotland**, it is worth two shillings *English.*

The **Five Mark peece**, is worth with us five shillings six pence.

The **Ten Mark peece**, is worth eleven shillings.

The **Twelve pound Scotish peece**, is our twenty shillings.

The **Rix Pound peece**, is ten shillings *English.*

The **Unite**, a Coin peece of Gold, is worth six shillings eight pence.

Irish Coin.

An **half penny** hath the Kings Effigies in the *Roman* Garb half Faced to the Sinister side with a Laurel about his Head and this Inscription *Carolus* II. *Dei Gratia*, and on the other side an Harp Crowned with this, *Mag. Br. Fra. Et Hib. Rex*, 1680.

A **Patrick of Ireland**, was worth an half penny. It was Coined in the time of King *Charles* the Second Excile, and is yet in use with us for small change and passeth but for a farthing, it hath King *David* Crowned supporting his Harp with this Inscrption, ——— Rex, and on the other side, St. *Patrick* in a Bishops Pontifical habit, a Church behind him and written about *Quiescat Plebs.*

An **Half Crown peece**, hath on one side II *s.* VI. *d.*

A **Crown peece** hath on one side, V. and a small *s.* in the middle of the V.

The Names of Severall Coins *used in the Neighbouring Kingdoms, about us:* Alphabetical.

Brass.

An **Augster** of *Switzerland*, worth a Farthing.
A **Doite**, worth a farthing.
A **Dynelier**, worth a farthing.
A **Dyner** of *Genoa*, worth half a farthing.
A **Dyner** of *Turkie*, worth a farthing.
A **Holler**, worth a farthing.
A **Marvedes**, worth a farthing.
An **Oks**, worth a farthing, and half.
A **Penning**, worth a farthing, and half.
A **Pochanel**, worth a farthing.
A **Plack peece**, three makes a penny *English.*
A **Quatrener**, worth a farthing.
A **Turnour**, six makes a Penny.

Silver.

An **Aten** of *Muscovia*, is four pence *English.*
An **Aspers**, is *ob. q.* or three farthings.
An **Attin** of *Poland*, is worth four pence half penny with us.
A **Batz**, is three pence *English.*
A **Bemish** of *Switzer*, is two pence half penny *English.*
A **Biancco** of *Italy*, it is worth our eight pence.
A **Blanckes**, is worth a half penny farthing, *English.*
A **Boligneo**, is three farthings *English.*
A **Caveletto** of *Italy*, is worth three pence farthing.
A **Carlini** of *Italy*, is six pence *English.*
A **Crown** of *Turkie*, is six shillings *English.*
A **Crown** of *Italy*, is five shillings with us.
A **Cupstoke**, is one shilling.
A **Creitzers** of *Poland*, is an half penny farthing.
A **Cob** of *Ireland*, or a **Peece of Eight**, is worth four shilling eight pence. It is a *Spanish* Coin, not round but cornered or nuke shotten, and passeth according to its weight, for more or less.
An **Half Cob**, it is of the foresaid Coin, and is worth two shilling four pence, or more according to its weight.

A

A **Quarter Cop**, of Peru.

A **Rix Doller**, or **Rich Doller**; so called because it was Coined by Emperial command: It is worth five shillings *English*. Others say six shillings, three pence, of these there are several Impressions according to the places in which they were Coined: as,

A **Rix Doller of Luneborgh**, and **Brunswick**; which have the *Roman* Eagle on one side, and an hairy Man holding a burning Candle a Ragged Staff; with the Emperors name, and place of Coinage about the Rings of it, 1570.

A **Rix Doller of Campen**, the Emperial City of *Germany*: hath the Eagle with a Mound on its Breast, cross Patee betwen its heads, and Crown over: on the other side, a Castle Port open, treble Towered 1614. Superscription, *Mathias I. D. G. Elect Ro. Imp. Sem. Aug. Mun. No. Civitatis Imper Campensis*: another Impression Coined 1549. hath St. *John Baptist* with a Lamb on a Bible.

A **Rix Doller of Luneborgh**, Coined 1568: the the same as the aforesaid in the Port is an Escochion with a Lion Rampant.

A **Doller of Wismarie**, hath St *Laurence* on one side holding a Palm branch and supporting a Grid-Iron: with this superscription, *Moneta Nova Wismariensis*, on the other side, a Cross Patee extended to the out sides, with an Escochion, per Pale with a Demy Leopards Face Crowned, fixed to the Sinister side; and the other Barry of four. The first and third fretted, with *Spes Nostra in Do*, 1547.

A **Doller of the Netherlands**, or Low Countreys, called a Rick Doller or Rich Doller, is worth five shillings *English*, some say five shillings three pence, It hath a Demy Man in Armour holding a Sword and an Escochion, with this writing: *Mo. Arg. Pro Confoe. Belg.* and on the other side the *Dutch* Arms with a Ducal Crown upon it, *viz.* a Lion Rampant holding a Sword in his right Paw, and a Shaff of Arrows in his left: superscription, *Concordia Res parvæ Crescunt.*

A **Rix Doller of Gelderland**, hath on the Escochion held by the Armed Man, with a Laurel about his Temples; two Lions combitant, and the Letters added after *Belg. Gel.*

A **Rix Doller of Holland**, and **West Freisland**, hath on the Escochion, a Lion Rampant, and after *Belg. C. Hol.* and on the later two Lions Passant Gardant, and after *Belg. West. F.*

A **Rix Doller of Zeeland**, hath in the Escochion, a Demy Lion, issuant out of Wavee, and after *Belg. Zel.*

A **Rix Doller of Utrech**, hath on the Escochion, a Lion Rampant: and after *Belg. Tra.*

A **Rix Doller of Friesland**, hath two Lions Passant, and after *Belg. Fris.*

A **Rix Doller of Over-Issel**, hath a Lion Rampant debruised with a Fesse Wavey Waved, and after *Belg. Tran.*

A **Rix Doller, of the Netherlands**, or **Germany** of another Coinage, yet called the **Rix Doller**, or **Rick Daelder**: It is worth four shillings, eight pence. It hath the like Image of an Armed Man to the middle, Head Laurelled, holding a Sword in the right Hand, to his Shoulder (as all the other do) and a Shaff of Arrows in his left Hand, looking to the Sinister side, with this writing, *Concordia Res Parvæ Crescunt Hol.* on the other side, all the Coats mentioned in the Foresaid Dollers are quartered; with 1586, on the top of the Escochion: with this Inscription, *Mo. Ordin. Provin. Forder. Belgiæ. Ad Legem Imp.*

A **Doller of Nimengaine**, is worth four shillings eight pence: It hath the figure of a Demy Man in Armour, with Crown Royal and Scepter, on the other side the *Roman* Eagle, and Crown; with a Lion Rampant in an Escochion on its Breast: with this writing, *Insignia Urbis Imperialis Novi Mag.*

A **Doler of Groeninger**, worth four shillings, eight pence: It hath the Image of St. *John Baptist*, holding a Book and a Lamb on it, with this writing, *Sanctus Johannes Baptista An.* 1561. on the other side the *Roman* Eagle; with a Fesse in an Escochion on her Breast: and this Inscription, *Moneta Nova Argentea Groningensis.*

A **Half Doller of Gelderland**, is worth three shillings, nine pence: It hath a Demy Man Armed all to the Head holding a Scepter in his left Hand; Inscribed *Phs. D. G. Hisp. Et Rex Dux Gel. C. Z.* 1579. The other side a compartment Escochion, with Crown Royal on it, *viz.* 1. 2. Lions combitant, 2 a Lion Rampant (3 as 2) and 4 as 1) Inscribed *Concordia Res Parvæ Crescunt.*

A **Half Doller of Utrech**, hath a Lion Rampant holding a Sword and Shaff of Arrows, and on the other side an Escochion Crowned of four Quarters, 1. a Lion Rampant, 2. party per Bend *&c.* on an Inescochion, a Cross and Bordure: Inscribed, *Phs. D. G. Hisp. Rex Drs. Traiec.*

A **Doller of the Hollanders**, called the Lion Doller, it is worth four shillings *English*: It hath the Impression of a Man Armed Cap-a-pee, with a compartment Shield before his Feet with a Lion Rampant with this writing, *Mo. No. Arg. Grdin. Hol.* 1576. and on the other side a Lion Rampant with this Inscription, *Confidens Dno. Non Movetur.* The like was Coined 1606.

A **Lion Doller of West-Freisland**, hath the same impresses with two Lions Passant Gardant, and the Field Billettee; and after *Ordin.* Follows *West. Fri. Valor Hol.* and about the Lion side, *Deus Fortitudo Et Spes Nostra.*

A **Lion Doller of Zeeland**, with a Demy Lion issuant out of Waves and after the word *Ord. Zel.* and the other side the like Lion issuant out of Water with this writing, *Domine Serva Nos Perimus.*

A **Lion Doller of Utrech**, hath the Shield quarterly, a Cross and a Lion Rampant: and after, *Ord. Trai.* 1585.

A **Lion Doller of Over-Yssell**, hath a Lion Rampant on the Shield, and after *Arg. Pro Confoe. Belg. Tran.* the othe side, as that of *Holland.*

A **Half Doller** of all these foresaid Lion Dollers, are worth two shillings: and do in all respect answers the whole Doller.

An **Old Doller of Bohemia**, worth five shillings, three pence: having a Demy King in Armour holding of a Scepter, with *Fardinai. D. G. Boemie Hungarie & C. Rex.* on the other side an Escochion crowned with a Ducal Crown of four Coats quarterly, 1. a Lion Rampant Tail forked and Wreathed 2. Barry of six *&c.* an Inescochion per Pale a Fesse, a Castle: Inscribed, *Infans Hispaniarum Arch-Dux Austria.* There is another Coinage of them with a Royal

Royal Crown over the Arms.

The like **Doller of Bohemia,** having a Lion Rampant double Queved and on the other side a Pilgrim with S. I. and this Inscription, *Ludovicus Prim. D. G. Rex Boh. Ar. Domi. Sli. Stez. Fra. Com. D. Ba.*

A **Doller of Saxony,** worth five shillings three pence, a Mans Head to the Shoulders old, and a turned up Cap, a Sword on his Shoulder, with four Escochions on the Ring, 1. two Swords in Salter: middle two Lions Rampant, and the under Barry with a Bend Corone, writing *Ericeri Johan. Georgius.* On the Endorse two Mens Heads below the Shoulders respecting each other; writing, *Mone. Argen. Ducum Sazon.*

The like Peece to these, and of their value, I have seen of the Dukes of *Saxonies* Coin, having but one Head of a side, *Anno* 1537. and 1512. with their names about the Rings: and in the Year 1530 on one side, with the Arm of the Dukedom of *Saxony*, between four other Escochions one Lion Rampant, the other Lion Rampant to the Sinister side, and the lower two Pales: Inscribed *Nam. Muntz. Herzog. Georgenzus Saxe Nach. Dem. Alten Schrot. Vnd. Korn* 1530. and in a Coin seventeen Years after, it was Coined with twelve quartered Coats, under three Helmets and Crests Mantled, with this Inscription: *Maurius D. G. Dux Sax. Sa. Ro. Imperi. Archi-Marschal Et Elector*, 1547.

A **Doller of Brunswick,** and **Lutsenborgh;** a Mans Head below the Shoulders in Robs, and Chains about his Neck with a round Bonnet on his Head; superscription, *Henrick. D. G. Bruns. Et Lun. D.* on the Endorse, an Hairy Man supporting a Ragged Staff, and in the left a Flower slipped: writing *Non Vidi Just. M. De. Relictum*

A **Doller of the Dukedom of Bayrn,** and **Comespar:** worth five shillings three pence, having a Man in Armour to the middle, ancient, and bare Headed; with *Fridericus D. G. Comespar. The. Et Ba. Dux*, 1537. on the other side, the Arms in a Collar of the Golden Fleece, Crowned a Lion Rampant and Barrybendy quarterly: Inscription, *Non Mihi Dne. Sed Nomini Tuo Da Glo.*

A **Doller of Colonia** in *Germany*, is worth five shilling, three pence: It hath the *Roman* Eagle Mitral Imperial over its Heads, with this writing *Carolus V. Rom. Imp. Semp. August.* and on the other side, the Arms of the City, *viz.* 3 Crownets on a chief with Mantle, Helmet, and Crest: Superscription, *Mo. No. Argen. Civit. Colon.* 1548.

A **Doller of the Church of Colon,** (I suppose it is the Coin of the Archbishop of *Colon*) which hath St. *Peter* holding a Key and a Book under the left Arm, Inscribed *Antonius Elec. Ecclesie Colon*, on the other side the Arms of the Bishoprick *viz.* a Cross; then a Horse Saliant; then three Hearts of Men; and lastly an Eagle Displaid, with Mantle, Helmet and Crest, *viz.* on a Peacocks Tail, between two Penons an Escochion with a Lion Rampant written about, *Moneta Nova Argen. Tuici.* 1557. and in the Year 1558, there was a Coin stamped by *Johan. Gebhar. Elect. Eccle. Colon*, with St. *Peter* holding an Escochion before his Feet, with the Arms of the said *Johan:* the Endorse as the Coin aforesaid. The like 1568. by *Salentin.*

A **Doller of Hamborgh,** hath a Castle treble Towered with this writing, *Moneta, Nova Civitatis Hamburgens.* on one side, and on the other, Virgin *Mary* Crowned, holding of a Babe: with *Fiat Mihi Secundum Verbum tuum.*

A **Duccatoon** of *Spain*, worth six shillings.

An Half **Duccatoon,** is worth three shillings.

A **Doller of Spain** ------ or a **Phillip Doller,** is worth five shillings: It hath the *Spanish* Arms Crowned; with *Dominus Mihi Ajutor* on one side, and on the other a Mans Head to the Shoulders, with *Phs. D. G. Hisp. G. Z. Rex Bra* the **Half Philips Doller** hath the same Impression.

A **Doller of Suecia,** called a **Rix Doller** or an **Imperial Doller,** is worth five shillings two pence.

A **Doller of Suecia,** called a **Rekish Doller,** or the **Merchants Doller** of *Suecia* is worth five shillings three pence.

A **Doller** -------- called **Cross Doller,** worth four shilling, eight pence: It hath a Salter Ponette Avellen with a Crown Royal, and 1567. some 1585. with *N. Puc. Gel. Ad Legem Burgundici.* on the other side an Escochion Quarterly with Crown Royal, and adorned with a Collar of the Golden Fleece; with a Fesse, then a Bodure Goboy, then Lion Rampant, with *Dominus Mihi Ajutor.*

A **Cross Doller of Burgundie,** is of the same price, and the same Impressions, only the writing on the Cross side is thus: *Phs. D. G. Hisp. Rex Dux Brab.*

A **Half Cross Doller** of the same place is worth two shillings, four pence: It hath the same Impression and Superscription.

A **Quarter of a Cross Doller** of the same place, is worth one shilling six pence, or twelve Styvers; It hath the same Impression and Superscription, as the foresaid.

A **Doller of Albertus,** is worth four shillings, eight pence.

A New Silver **Peece of Albertus,** worth one shilling, ten pence half penny: It hath a Womans Face by the side, or behind a Mans, with Ruff Band; Inscription *Albertus Et Elizabe. Dei Gratia*, on the other side a Regged Salter, with an Eschochion on it, and Royal Crown over it, two Coats Impaled *viz.* a Fesse, with three Bends; and 1608. writing *Archid. Aust Duces Burg. Et Braban.*

A **Doller of Zeland** and **Freisland,** with the Impression of the Eagle, worth in *English* Money, two shillings ten pence: It hath nine quartered Coats in a compartment with 1602. and Inscribed, *Monet. Argen. Ordin. Zeelandiæ.* on the other side a *Roman* Eagle, with a Lion issuant out of Surges in an Escochion on its Breast, with this writing: *Si Deus Nobiscum Quis Contra Nos.*

A **Diken of** -------- or a **Diken of a Wing:** is worth one shilling four pence.

A **Dyer of** ------ is worth a half penny farthing.

A **Doit** of the *Netherlands*, is worth in *English* a half penny half farthing.

A **Flabben of Groningen** in *Freisland*, it is worth ten pence: It hath on it a Bishop in his Pontificals, with *Sanctus Martinus Ep.* 1591. Other side, a *Roman* Eagle with an Escochion on his Breast, charged with a Fesse; Inscribed, *Moneta Nova Argent. Groningensis.*

A **Half Flabben,** is worth four Stiver, or five pence; It hath the foresaid Eagle in an Escochion, and same Inscription: But on the other side is a conceited Cross, with such

such an Escochion, and a Fesse on the middle of it: Inscribed, *Sit Nomen Domini Benedictum.*

A **Flaves**, in the *Low Countrys*, is worth one shilling four pence *English.*

A **Flanks of Turky**, worth two shillings.

A **Finferline**, worth half a penny.

A **Francken of Poland**, worth two shillings one penny, half penny: It hath a *Roman* Head, with *Henricus III. D. G. France Et Pol. Rex*, on the other side is a Roman H in the middle of four double Flowers de lis, Inscribed, *Sit Nomen Domini Benedictum*, 1576.

A **half Francken**, hath the same Image, and Superscription.

A **Francken of Franckford**, is of the same value; It hath a *Roman* Head, with this Inscription, *Ants. Ppi. D. G. Alg. Et Port Rex*: the other side as the abovesaid, only PR. is in place of the H.

A **Florence of France**, hath an H Crowned interlaced with two Scepters in Salter, a Sword in pale over all, with this writing about the edge, *Duo Protegit Unus.*

A **Gulden** or a **Silver Gulden of Freisland**; called also a **Flemish Silver Gulden**, it is worth two shillings, some two shillings eight pence. It hath a Man in Furr with such a Cap, a little below the Shoulders with a Hand and Sword, withe *Nisi Dominus Nobiscum*, 1601. On the other side an Escochion Crowned, having two Lions Passant: the Inscription, *Florenus Arg. Ordinum Frisiæ.*

The **Half Gulden of Freisland**, is worth one shilling *English.*

A **Quarter of a Gulden**, is worth three pence: they have both of them the like Image and Superscription, as the whole Gulden hath.

A **Gilder** or **Gulden**, called **Charles his Gilder**, in Silver is worth three shillings ten pence. It hath an Imperial Head Crowned, with *Carolus D. G. Rom. Imp. Hisp. Rex*, on an other of the same is *Carolus D. G. Rom. Imp. Hisp. Rex. D. Burg. Com. Flan.* on the one side; and on the other an Escochion set on a Cross flourished having 1. a Fesse, 2. Semy de Flowers de lis, a Bordure Gobony: 3. Bendy, 4. Lion Rampant, on an Escochion, a Lion Rampant: Inscribed, *Da Mihi Virtute Con Hostes Tuos.* Another of the same, hath on Archducal Crown on the Escochion.

A **Gilder**, or **States Gilder**; is worth four shillings three pence. It hath the Arms abovesaid with a Royal Crown, and order of the Fleece, with *Pace & Justitia*, on the other side a Demy King in Armour holding of a Scepter, Inscribed *Phs. D. G. Hisp. Z. Rex. Dux Bra.* 1578.

An **half States Gilder**, is worth two shillings one penny half penny.

A **Quarter of the States Gilder**, is worth one shilling three farthings.

An **Eight part of a States Gilder**, is worth six pence farthing and half, all these have one and the same Impression and Superscription, *viz.* on one side a King to the Knees Armed holding a Scepter & an Escochion before him with the Arms aforesaid: and *Phs. D. G. Hisp. Rex Dux Bra.* on the other side, a Roman S. then four H. set in Cross, upon each of them a P Crowned: with *Pace & Justitia* 1577. in the ring about.

A **sixteenth part of the States Gilder**, is vvorth three pence half farthing, on one side it hath the Arms Crovvned, vvith Z. and S. on, on the other an H and P. on it, Crovvned; vvith four Branches about, and the Inscription as the rest before.

A **Gulden**, or Silver Gulden; vvorth three shillings ten pence.

A **Groshen**, or Silver Groshen: vvorth tvvo pence.

A **Groshen**, or a **Silver Misen Groshen**: It is vvorth three pence *English.*

A **Groshen Polished**, or Polish Groshen; vvorth one penny, half penny.

A **Groshen** called **Mary Groshens** vvorth a penny farthing.

A **Groshen** called a **Mesnish Silver Groshen**, vvorth tvvo pence half penny farthing.

A **Gagatta** of *Italy*, vvorth a penny.

A **Gubij**, or the **Popes Gubij**; is as much as six pence *English.*

A **Grot**, or **Grots** of *Germany*; valued at one penny farthing.

A **Justino** of *Italy*, vvorth one shilling six pence.

A **Lyre of Venice**, vvorth nine pence.

A **Lyra of Geroa**, is vvorth one shilling, four pence.

A **Mark of Denmark**, is tvvo shilling tvvo pence.

A **Mursenigo**, vvorth eleven pence.

A **Medine of Cairo**, it is valued to tvvo pence, farthing.

A **Pound**, or **Pound**; vvorth four pence, half penny farthing.

An **Orkey of the Netherlands**, it is the fourth part of a **Stiver**, or tvvo **Doits**: vvorth tvvo farthings, *English*, or a farthing half farthing, as others say.

A **Plappot**, vvorth tvvo pence half penny.

A **Poali of Italy**, in *English* Money vvorth six pence.

A **Quartidiescue**, is vvorth one shilling six pence.

A **Rider**, or **Horseman of Gilderland**; It is vvorth four shillings, three pence. It hath tvvo Escochions under an Helmet and Mantle, Crest a Lion Rampant on a Peacocks Tail; the other side a Man on Horse-back Cap-a-Pee, under his Feet in an Eschochion tvvo Lions Cambatant: vvith *Deus Constituit Regna*: the Superscription on the other side is *Mon. No. Gelr. Com. Zut.*

A **Rider**, or **Horseman of Silver in Freisland**; is vvorth the same rate, four shillings, three pence: It hath an Escochion Crovvned, vvith tvvo Lions passant, the Field Billettee. Subscribed, *Moneta Nova Ordinum Frisiæ*: The other side, an Horseman Cap-a-pee, bearing a Pennon slit in the end, under the Horse Feet an Escochion vvith a Lion Rampant: the Inscription *Nisi Dns. Nobiscum*, 1582.

A **Royal**, or **Real of Albertus**: hath the Coats of *Austria* with a Ducal Crown, and Collar of the Golden Fleece, *viz.* 1. Quarter, Barry, and Lion Rampant 2 quarter, Pally and per Salter, 3 quarter, three bends, on a chief, a Fesse: 4 quarter, per Fesse Semy de Flovvers de lis, and a Lion Rampant in Base; Inscription, *Albertus & Elizab. D. G.* on the other side, a Salter avalen vvith a Crovvn above, *A.* and *E.* on the sides, and the Golden Fleece at the bottom; Subscribed, *Archid. Aust. Duces Burg. & Brab.* this peece is vvorth six pence, half penny.

A **Half of the Royal Albertus**, is vvorth three pence, farthing: It hath the same Superscription, but on

one side, it hath his and her single coats Impaled, on a Salter ragged, with a Royal Crown over; and on the other side a with a Ducal Crown over it.

A **Reale**, is 5 *d. ob.*

A **Rousticke**, is 1 *d. ob.*

A **Royal**, or a **Royal of Eight**, of *Spain*, is valued at 4 *s.* 5 *d.* it hath the Arms of *Castile* and *Lions*, crowned on one side; and 2 Pillars crowned, with a scroule over them with S. PLUS. D. and about the sides in *Saxon* Letters, *Carolus & Joana Regis Ispania in Japo.*

A **Royal of Philip**, hath all the *Spanish* coats on one side, and *Castile* and *Lions* arched about on the other.

A **Royal of** called a **piece of four Royals**, and is 4 *s.* 3 *d.*

A **Royal**, or **piece of eight Royals**, is 8 *s.* 6 *d.*

A **Rappen Muntz** of is two pence half penny.

A **Settling**, worth three Farthings.

A **Stiver** of the **Low Countreys**, worth a Penny Farthing, it hath a Lion rampant, holding a Sword and a Sheaf of Arrows; on the other side in great *Roman* Letters FRISIA or TRS ISSULA 1614. and so of the rest of the Provinces where the Bullion was Coined.

A **Stiver**, called **Emden Stiver**, worth 1 *d. ob. q.*

A **Double Stiver** is worth 2 *d. ob.* there is of them in all the Provinces of *Holland* and the *Netherlands*, only in this they differ; on one side they have no Impression but great *Roman* Letters, on which side is set the name of the Province they are of, as *Gelria*, 1614. *Holand.* 1614. or *W. FRISIA. TRAIECTUM*, &c. on the other side, is a Lion rampant Brandishing a Sword, and in his left Paw a Sheaf of Arrows, towards the hinder feet, is a figure of 2 and an S. signifying 2 Stivers.

A **Stiver of Brabant**, is worth one Stiver, or eight 4. the **half Stiver of Brabant**, is half so much; both Coins have several sorts of conceited Crosses, some arched, others between Flowers de lis, and Lions, with *Moneta nova Duc. Brabant*; the other side the Arms throughout the Escochion, with *Brabant* Arms; others have the *Spanish* Arms, with a Crown Royal; and some with the Arch Duke of *Austria*, Duke of *Brabant* his Arms, &c.

A **Schaneberger**, worth 1 *d. ob. q.*

A **Shilling in Gelderland**, it is worth six Stivers, that is in our English Money six pence and six farthings, some say six half pence; it hath on one side a conceited Cross, made after the form of an Escarbuncle of the old fashion, each point set with Pomices and Avelens, with flying out Branches, with this Writing, *In nomine Domine Adjutorium nostrum*; on the other side a Compartment Escochion, crowned with two Lions Combatant, Inscribed *Mo. No. Duc. Belg. & Comit. Zut.* 1601.

A **Holland shilling** hath the same value and Cross, with this Writing, *Vigilla & Deo confidentes*, the other side hath the Impress of a Fold or round close made of Stakes and Osiers, with a Yate in the fore part of it, over which is an Escochion Crowned, with a Lion Rampant thereon. Inscribed *Mo. No. Com. Holandiæ.* 1601.

A **shilling of West Frieseland**, the same kind of Cross, with *Fortiet. Spes. Nostr. Deus*, and the *West Frieseland* Coat Crowned, with a Laurell about; inscribed *Mo. No. Ordin. West frisiæ*, 1601.

A **shilling of Zeeland**, worth 9 *d.* English; it hath the same kind of Cross, inscribed *Luctor & emergo*; the other side the Arms of the Province in a Compartment, crowned, inscribed *Mo. No. Arg. Comit. Zeelandia.*

A **shilling of Utrech**, worth 9 *d.* English, it hath the same Cross with this Motto, *Parvæ res Concordia crescunt*; the other side, a Lion Rampant in a Compartment crowned; with *Mone. Nova. Ordin. Trajecten.* 1601.

A **shilling of Nimiguen**, with a *Roman* Eagle, a Mound on its Breast, and a Crown between its heads, with *Rudol. II. D. G. Elec. Ro. Imp. Sem. August.* the other side the *Roman* Eagle in a Compartment, with a Crown Imperial; inscription, *Mo. Arg. Imperi. Civi. Novimag.* 1601.

A **shilling of Campen**, worth 9 *d.* English, hath the *Roman* Eagle, and Crown Imperial, with *Rudol.* &c. on the other side a Salter extended to the out sides Pomeme Avellane, debruised with his Arms, Crowned and thus Inscribed, *Mo. Arg. Imper. Civitá Campen.*

The **Half shillings** of these several places in *Holland*, and other places, are in all respects coined like to the shillings, and are valued at 3 Stivers, that is 4 *d. ob.* English.

A **shilling of Hamburgh**, worth in *England* 9 *d. ob. q.*

A **shilling**, called a **Flemish shilling**, is worth 7 *d. ob.*

A **shilling of Germany**, is worth 5 *d. q.*

A **shilling of Denmark**, or a **Danish shilling**, worth *ob. q.*

A **Lubicke shilling**, worth 1 *d. ob. q.*

A **shilling of Switzerland**, worth 12 *d.*

A **Sicherling**, is valued at 1 *d. q.*

A **Scalp of Turky**, valued at 6 *d.*

A **Scya of Turkey**, is 6 *d.* English.

A **Soulz**, is 1 *d. ob.* and called with us a **Souz**.

A **Soldi** of *Genoa*, is a half penny farthing.

A **Stuter** is a piece of Money in *Holland*, worth 2 Stivers and a half, that is three pence half farthing; it is the twentieth part of a **Netherland Real**; on one side is a *Roman* head, and on the other side a Shaffe or False of Arrows banded, the ends extended; with *Moneta Belgica*, 1586.

Gold

The **Angel of Flanders**, or **Flemish Angel**, is 9 *s.* 10 *d.*

An **Albertus** of the **Arch Duke of Austria**, is 11 *s.* 3 *d.* it is also called the **Arch Dukes Ducat**, it hath on one side 2 ragged Staffs in Salter, tied in the middle, and a Ducal Crown in the Chief 1600; the other side the Arms crowned, and set forth with the order of the Golden Fleece, *viz.* Quarterly, Barry, and a Lion rampant, then *Castile* and *Lions* quarterly, then *Cardona* and *Anjou* per Salter, then Barry, then 3 Flowers de lis, and a Bordure Gobony; then Bendy with a Bordure, and lastly, a Lion rampant. with this inscription, *Albertus & Elizabet. D. G. Arch Duces Aust. Duces Burg. & Brab.*

A **half Albertus**, or **Ducat of Austria**, hath the same

same Impression in all respects, and is 5 *s.* 5 *d.*

A **Double Albertus**, or **Double Duckat of Austria**, hath on one side the figures of a Man and Womans head crowned, respecting each other, in all other Impressions it is as the foresaid single Albertus; it is worth with us shillings.

An **half double Albertus**, the value is 8 *s.* and hath the same impression as the double.

A **Castilion**, or **Golden Castilion**, of *Castile*, is 9 *s.* 9 *d.*

A **Crusado**, or a **Crusadas** of *Portugal*, with the long Cross ✝ is 6 *s.* 8 *d.* see a Crown of *Portugal*.

A **Crusado**, with the short Cross 6 *s.* 10 *d.* see a crown of *Portugal*.

A **Crusado of Portugal**, is 7 *s.* it hath a Cross couped on one side, and the *Portugal* Arms on the other the first with *In hoc signo Vinces*; and the other *Phillippus D. G. Rex Portugalie L. B.* on one side, and II on the other of the Escochion; there is 2 pieces of like Coin, valued at 1 *l.* 6 *s.* and 13 *s.* 3 *d.*

The **great Crusado**, or **Portiguese**, is valued at 3 *l.* 12 *s.* and is coined in all respects like the abovesaid, only IIII on one side of the Escochion.

A **Crown of Spain**, is 6 *s.* 8 *d.*

A **Crown of Flanders**, a **Flemish Crown**, is 6 *s.* 8 *d.* on one side a Cross flurt, with a Rose on the middle, between two Towers and two spread Eagles, or two Lions; on the other side an Escochion crowned, with this inscription, *Da mihi Virtut: contra Hostes tuos.*

A **Crown of France** the value is 6 *s.* 8 *d.* there are several Coins of them, some have a Cross arched about, another a Cross flurt, and a Cross Avellane; on the other side the *French* Coat crowned, with the Kings name about, and this XPS VINCIT. XPS REGNANT. XPS IMPER:

The **four Crowns of Port**, a piece of Gold so called, it is worth 1 *l.* 6 *s.* 2 *d.*

A **Crown of Italy**, called the **Golden Crown**, it is worth six shillings.

A **Crown of Portugal**, is worth 6 *s.* 10 *d.* it hath a long Cross on one side, inscribed *In hoc Signo Vinces*, on the other the *Portugal* Arms, Crowned; inscribed *Jo.* 3. *Portu. & Al. R. D. G. C. N.*

A **Crown of Portugal**, with a Cross couped within the circle; it is worth about 7 *s.* all its other Impressions are as aforesaid.

A **Ducat of Spain**, called a **single Ducat**, is 7 *s.* 2 *d.* Some say worth 8 *s.* 2 *d. ob.* on one side there is 2 Faces respecting and Crowned, on the other the Arms of *Castile* and *Lions*, quartered with *Arragon*, and the Coats of *Cardona* and *Anjou*.

A **Double Ducat of Spain**, is worth 14 *s.* 4 *d.* and some of them 18 *s.* 5 *d.* some of them have one head some two on a side, and on the other the *Spanish* Arms as aforesaid; yet some have the single Coats crowned, as *Arragon* which is Pally, others the *Navarre* Knot.

A **Great Ducat of Spain**, is 1 *l.* 13 *s.*

A **Ducat of Rome**, is 7 *s.* 2 *d.* those of the Popes Coin are so various, that it is a matter of great difficulty to set them all down, only this in general, that they have the Popes Head or Arms in Quirpo, with his Name on one side, and on the other St. *Peter*, or St. *Paul*, or one Saint or other.

A **double Ducat of Rome**, is 14 *s.* 14 *d.* some have Bishops seated in their Pontificals; with *Mediola in Dux*; another St. *Peter* in his Boat casting out his Net; with *Sanctus Petrus Alma Roma*; another with Christ rising out of his Sepulcher, with *Surrexit Christus Rex Glie:* and the like; on the other side is the Popes Heard or Coat, with Crown and Keys, and his name inscribed.

A **Ducat of Florence**, is 7 *s.*

A **Ducat of Valence**, is 7 *s.* 2 *d.*

A **Ducat of Arragon**, is 7 *s.* 2 *d.*

A **Ducat of Portugal**, is 8 *s.* 2 *d.* it hath a Cross set about with Arches on one side, and *Portugal* Arms on the other, which is 4 Escochions charged with 5 Plates Salterwise on a Bordure 8 Castles or Towers.

A **Ducat of Hungary**, is worth 7 *s.* 10 *d.* these Ducats have some Saint, or Kingly Saint, in full proportion Armed and Robed, holding a Pole-Axe, on the one side the *Hungarian* Arms, which is Barry, (some Impaled with Lions, others with *Arragon* Arms) on the other side.

A **Ducat of Suevia**, is 8 *s.* 9 *d.*

A **Ducat of Turky**, is 9 *s.* 2 *d.*

A **Ducat of Hamborough**, is 7 *s.* 10 *d.*

A **Ducat of the Netherlands**, is 8 *s.* 2 *d. ob.* it hath a Man in Armour holding a Sword and a Shaffe or Shaft of Arrows on one side, and this Writing on the other *Mo. Aur. Provin. Confoe. Belg. Ad Leg. Imp.* The **double Ducat** hath the same, and is valued at 18 *s.* 5 *d.*

A **Dublion of Spain**, is 14 *s.* 6 *d.*

A **Denning of Muscovy**, is eleven pence.

A **Florens**, or **New Florens**, called also a **Gilden of St. Andrew**, is 5 *s.* 4 *d.*

A **Gilder** or **Gilden of Campaine**, it is worth 4 *s.* 3 *d.* It hath either Christ or an Apostle on one side with *Da Pace Do. in Dieb. Nostr.* and a Mound arched about, or a Cross in an Escochion; or 2 Lions Combatant, inscribed *Carolus Romanorum Imperator*; Some have an Eagle displaid in the Escochion.

A **Carolus Gilden**, or **Gilder**, is 3 *s.* 10 *d.*

A **Collen Gilder**, or **Gilden**, is 5 *s.*

A **David Gilden**, is 4 *s.* 4 *d.* others say 4 *s.* 10 *d.* so called from King *David*, with his Harp and Scepter, which is on one side, with *Memento Dom. David.* the other a Cross flourished between a D. I. V. I. inscribed *David de Burgundia est Trallectens*, there is a half and quarter piece of this stamp.

A **Horn Gilder**, is 5 *s.* 5 *d.*

A **Saxon Gilder**, is 5 *s.* 3 *d.*

A **Philip Gilder**, or **Gilden**, is 4 *s.* 6 *d.*

A **Half Philips Gilder**, is 2 *s.* 3 *d.*

A **Gilder Fly** of **Burgundy**, it is worth 10 *s.* 3 *d.* it hath a Cross flourished at the ends, in each quarter 2 Cressants braced; the inscription *Diligite Justitiam Qui Judicatis Terra*; on the other side the Arms of *Austria* in a Collar of the Golden Fleece, Crowned and Supported by 2 Lions, *viz.* a Fesse, then three flowers de lis and Bordure Gobony, then Bendy, the last a Lion rampant on an Escochion of Pretence; a Lion Rampant; the Inscription *PHS. D. G. Archd. Aust. Dux Burg. Co. Flan.*

A **Gulden of** *Holland*, called a **Golden Gulden**, it is worth 5 *s.* 9 *d.* there is above three score and ten several sorts of Coinage of this piece; the generallity having

ving on one side the Image of some Apostle, Popish Saint or Martyr; and on the other side either a Coat of Arms a Mound, 3 Escochions in triangle, a *Roman* Eagle or a Kings head, inscribed *Moneta Aurea Nova St.* or of such or such a place where coined.

The **double Gilder** or **Gulden of Netherland**, valued at 6 *s.* 3 *d.* it is also termed the **States Crown**; it hath a kind of Cross Moline turned round at the ends and on the Savved parts a Sprig of Grass, the Inscription *B. Pace & Justitia*, 1577. on one side; and an Escochion crovvned and collared vvith the Golden Fleece Order, *viz.* 1. a Chief. 2. three Flovvers de lis. 3. Bendy. 4. a Lion rampant: on an Intescochion, a Lion rampant, *PHS. D. G. Hisp. Rex. Dux. Bra.* on the other side.

An **Half Gilder** of the *Netherlands* is in all respects so stamped, and is valued at 3 *s.* 1 *d. ob.*

A **Gulden**, or **Renish Gulden**, or **Gold Renish Gulden**; is vvorth 7 *s.* 8 *d.*

A **Key**, or a **Flemish Real**, it is valued to 11 *s.*

A **Golden Lion of Burgundy**, worth eight shillings; it hath a Lion sedant, between two Pillars arched over after the manner of Church work, with *PHS. D.G. Dux Burg. Comes Flan.* on the other side the Arms of *Burdy* with *Sit nomen Domini Benedictum, Amen.*

A **double Lion**, called the **Dublion of Spain**, is 14 *s.* 6 *d.*

A **Third part of the Golden Lion**, at 2 *s.* 7 *d.* It is the same to the Golden Lion of *Burgundy* in all respects the Arms are 6 Coats, *viz.* 3 Flowers de lis, a Bordure Gobony, then Bendy, then a Lion rampant, then Bendy then a Lion rampant, then Bendy, then a Lion rampant, the last as the first.

A **Lion of Antwerp**, is worth eight shillings, some odd pence, it is termed the beaten Gold Lion of *Antwerp*, the Arms and Inscription as the *Burgundy* Lion, on the other side the Lion sedant between the foresaid two Pillars with this Inscription; *Mobra. Antiova. Virtute & Fide.*

A **Lion of Flanders**, it is of Beaten Gold, on the Escochion side is only a Lion rampant with this inscription *Moneta Aurea Comitus Flan.*

A **two third parts** of the **Golden Lion**, worth 5 *s.* 3 *d.* It hath also the same Impression and writing as aforesaid.

A **Mark of Bohemia**, is six shillings.

A piece called the **six Marks**, or **six Mark piece** of **Suecia**, is 4 *s.* 9 *d.*

A **Mill-Rays** of *Portugal*, is worth 14 *s.* 6 *d.* on one side is a Frier in his Robe, holding a Palm Branch, and in the other hand, a Ship, with *Usque ad Mortem Zelator Fidei*; on the other side the Arms of *Portugal.*

An **Half Mill-Rays**, is 7 *s.* 3 *d.* it is in all respects answering the whole Mill-rays of *Portugal*; yet some have a Cross Patee charged with another on one side, with *In hoc Signo Vinces.*

A **Noble**, or **Flemish**, or **Flanders Noble**, value 13 *s.* 4 *d.* hath a Cross Flory between 4 Lions; with *Nisi Dom. cust. Civitat. frustra vigilant*, 1582. on the other side a Man holding a Sword and Shield, with a Lion rampant on it.

A **Rose Noble** of the **Netherlands** and **Gelderland**, is 16 *s.* 8 *d.* on one side a Rose in a Star of many points, with *Concordia Res Parvæ Crescunt*; and a Man in Armour in the Hull of a Ship, in the Waves inscribed *Mo. Ordin. Provinc. fœder. Belgiæ.* 1586.

A **Pistol**, or a **single**, or **simple Pistol**, is valued to 6 *s.* 4 *d.*

A **double Pistol of Spain**, is at 12 *s.* 8 *d.* Some say 14 *s.* 7 *d. ob.* on one side is a Cross Potonce arched about; on the other side the *Spanish* Arms in full, crowned, with the Kings name about.

A **Double Pistole of Italy**, is worth 14 *s.* 2 *d. ob.* hath a *Roman* head on one side, and an Eagle with an Escochion on its Breast, on which is an Eagle displaid, the Wings debrused with two Pillars; the Inscription; *Mone. Aurea. Civit. Bisuntinei.*

A **Pistole of Italy**, set forth by the Popes, is generally worth 3 Gilders and 10 Stivers, which in English is six Shillings and ten pence; they have the Popes Arms on one side, with the Cross Keys and Triple Crown over the Escochion; with the name of the Pope inscribed, as *Paulus III. Pontifex Maximus*, and such like; but on the other, each Pope hath his sundry devise, which were endless to describe, only take these few; one hath *St. Paul* holding a Sword and Book, inscribed *Electionis. S. Paulus. Vas.* Another hath the Resurrection of Christ, and the Soldiers sleeping about the Sepulcher, with *Resurrexi & Adhuc tecum sum.* Another hath Christs Cross and Nails. Another *Mary* imbracing the Cross, with this Motto to the first, *In hoc Signo Vinces*; and the latter, *In te qui sperat. non confund.* Another hath Christ supporting the Cross. Another a Pope in his Chair. Another our Saviours head demy faced; the first with *cujus cruore Sanati sumus*; the latter *Via veritas & Vita*, &c.

A **Pistolet of Spain**, of 26 Ryals, is 14 *s.*

A **Portuguese**, or **great Crusado**, is 3 *l.* 12 *s.* See a Crown of *Portugal.*

A **Rider of Burgundy**, hath the same Arms and Writings, as the Lion piece of *Burgundy*, and a Horseman Cap-a-Pee on the other side.

A **Rider of Flanders**, called also **Horsemen of Flanders**, is 8 *s.*

A **Rider of Gelders**, and of **Friesland**, is 1 *l.* 3 *s.* on the one side a Man in Armour, on a Horse Galloping, brandishing his Sword over his head, with this Inscription, *Mo. Aur. Pro. Confæ. Belg. Westf.* on the other side, the *Dutch* Arms with a Dukes Crown, which is a Lion rampant crowned, holding in one Paw a Sword over his head, and in the other a Sheaf of Arrows, with *Concordia Res parvæ Crescunt.*

A **New Rider of Guelders**, is 7 *s.* others say 6 *s.* 9 *d.* it hath a Man on Horse-back Cap-a-Pee, with *Deus constituit Regna* on the other side an Escochion crowned, with 2 Bordures per pale, and 2 Lions combatant, with *Moneta. Nova. Av. Duc. Gelrif. Com. Ut.*

An **Old Rider of Gelderland**, is 4 *s.* 4 *d. ob.* It hath on one side, a Man in Armour Cap a Pee, holding up his Sword, inscribed *Carolus Dux Gelriul. c. Zut.* on the other side an Escochion vvith 2 Lions combatant, inscribed *Mone. Nova. Aurea. Ducis Gelrie.*

A **Ruble of Poland**, answers our Mark, *viz.* 13 *s.* 4 *d.*

A **Ruble of Muscovia**, is ten shillings.

A **Royal**, or **Real of Spain**, or the **Philip Real**, it is 5 *s.* 6 *d.*

A **Royal**, called the **Philip Real** vvith spread Eagle

gle, its value is 5 *s.* 6 *d.* It hath an Eagle, vvith the *Spanish* Arms quarterly on its Breast.

A **half Royal of Spain**, hath the head uncrovvned, and on the other side, the Arms crovvned, vvith *Dominus mihi adjutor.*

A **Royal of Flanders**, called the **Flemish Real**, or the **Rey**, it is 11 *s.*

A **great Royal of Germany**, is 1 *l.* 14 *s.* 3 *d. ob.* on the one side an Emperour Enthroned, vvith Scepter and Mound, vvith this inscription *Maximillius D. G. Romanorum. Rex. Sep. Aug.* on the other the *Roman* Arms crovvned, an Inescochion per pale, a Fesse on the one, and Bendy and a Bordure on the other; inscribed *Ex Mensuram & Respice finem* MCCCCLXXXVII.

A **half of the great Royal** aforesaid, hath a demy Emperour in a Ship, vvith this M. D. G. *Ro. Rex & PHS. Arch Duces Au. Bu. Co. Hol.* on the other side, an Escochion per pale, an Eagle displaid; the other a Fesse and Bendy in a Bordure, inscribed, *Mo. Ames Ro. Regis & Phi. Arch D. Au. B. Com. Hol.*

A **Shocke of Bohemia**, it is

*

A **Sultan of Turkey**, its value is 7 *s.* 6 *d.*

A **Zechines of Venice**, is 7 *s.* 6 *d.*

That Reader as desires further knovvledg in the foresaid Coins, let him peruse these Authors, in vvhich most of these said Moneys are set forth in Sculptures to the largeness of the Silver and Gold pieces themselves.

Peeldenear, *or a Book of Impresses of Coins, set forth by* Hillebrant Jacobsz, *Ordinary and Sworn Printer to the States of* Holland. *Printed at* Graven-Hague, 1619.

John Speeds *Chronicle of England, at the beginning of each Kings Reign.*

Observations, or a Comment on Cæsars Commentaries. *By* Clement Edmunds. 1655.

Johannis Hemelarius *Canonicus Cathedralis Ecclesiæ* Antuerp. *his Comment, or the Table of* Roman *Coins. Printed at* Antvverp, 1622.

Jacobus Gutherius *de Veteri Jure Pontificio Urbis* Romæ. *Printed at* Paris 1616.

TO

TO

The Right Worshipful

Sir *FRANCIS LEICESTER*, of *Tabley*, Baronett.

THAT which was intended to have been Dedicated to your Grandfather Sir Peter Leicester, Baronet, through his Decease descended to his Son and Heir Sir Robert, whose untimely Death was much Lamented by all Loyal Hearts, yet incouraged with so Loving, Pious, and Loyal an Off-spring, we are engaged through your forward Contribution to advance the Work, to devote this Chapter of our Labours to your Noble Consideration, hoping the good acceptation thereof, from

Your most Humble and Devoted Servant

Randle Holme.

CHAP. III.

FROM the several sorts of Habits (as they are born in their diversity of parts, we shall now proceed to shew you how they are born in whole, both as they pertain to Regallity, Nobility, Gentry, Husbandry, and Artificery; together with the fashions of People both in Court, City and Countrey: We shall begin with the first in Nobility, which is the Emperour.

An Emperour.

The Original of this Title amongst the *Romans*, denoted only a General of an Army, but *Julius Cæsar* Translated it to an Honorary Title, who being made perpetual Dictator, took also that of Emperator unto his Title, which hath continued in his Successors to this day, and so became Superiour to the Title of King.

This Title supplied that of a King, which not long before had been cast out by *Brutus* for Tyranny and Oppression, which *Cæsar* seeing was fresh in the Memory of the *Romans*, and odious amongst them, did not of a long time use any Title of Kingly Government, though his Power was as much, and the Ceremonies and Ensigns of Regality the same, and the Emperours Throne at *Rome*, was called *Sedile Regni*.

This Empire at length became to be divided, to *Constantinople* for the East parts, and to *Rome* for the West parts; and then again *Constantinople* being lost to the *Turks*, and *Rome* gotten into the hands of the Papacy, it was removed into *Germany*, which is now the Empire; and in the Reign of *Otho* the Third, the Election was granted to seven Princes of *Germany*, viz. the Arch-Bishops of *Mentz*, *Treves*, and *Collen*, the Count Palatine of *Rhine*, the Duke of *Saxony*, the Marquess of *Brandenburgh*, and the King of *Bohemia*, then called Duke of *Bohemia*.

He hath the Superiority allowed him by all Secular Princes; and whereas other Princes of Regal Authority are Crowned but with one Crown, he is Crowned with three, the first of Iron, which he receiveth of the Bishop of Collen at *Aquisgrave*; the second of Silver he receives at *Modena*, from the Bishop of *Millan*; the third of Gold, wherewith he is crowned at *Rome* by the Pope.

The Ensigns of his Imperial Dignity, are a King and Bracelet, a Cross, a Launce, a Sword, a Scepter, a Mound and a Crown, with Royal Robes, and is stiled *Sanctissimus*, *Clarissimus*, *Gloriosissimus*, *Eminentia & Magnificentia*, &c.

The Emperour of *Russia* is not crowned, but is adorned with a Rich Cap of Purple: Neither is the *Greek* Sultan, or Emperour of *Turkie*; but invested with a mighty Rich Tulipant; and though the Emperour have no Diadem, yet the Sultaness is adorned with a Rich Crown.

As for other matters of State and Regality pertaining to the Emperour, as the Ceremonies of his Coronation, Manual Servants and Officers of State, *&c.* being such will be treated on in the Office of a King, I shall therefore refer such things to that place.

I. He beareth Topaz, a **King in his Royal Robes** (or **Parliament Robes**, or **Robes of State**,) holding in his right hand a covered Cup, and in his left a Sword, all proper. In the Blazoning of Kings, to name a King, is sufficient; for it is to be supposed, that he is both Crowned, and in his Habiliments of State. Yet Mr. *Gwillim* to make all sure, Blazons it thus, a **Crowned King in his Robes**, Ruby, doubled Ermine, sustaining or holding a covered Cup in his right hand, and a Sword in his left, Argent: They are born sometime in Armour under their Mantle; and sometimes the Robes are of contrary colours to what our English Kings have them; then in such cases, the several parts of the Habiliments of State ought to be named.

G. 3 Beasants, each charged with such a King, is the Coat of *Tho. Lloyd*, alias *Lyld*, the 18 Bishop of *Ely*.

A. a Kings head with an Imperial Crown, couped at the Shoulders, is the Coat of *Graveneck*.

Out of a Coronet, a demy King with an Imperial Crown, Robes Gules, Lined, Ermin, holding a Scepter and Mound, proper, is the crest of *Van Herberstein*.

II. He beareth Topaz, a **King Enthroned**, in his **Robes**, with his **Ensigns of Majesty**, all proper. This is sufficient, if (as I said before) the Robes be Scarlet, and the Linings Ermine, as our King of *England* hath them; but if they be of any other colour, then follow *Gwillims* Blazoning, *viz.* He beareth Topaz, a **King Enthroned** on his **Seat Royal, Crowned, Sceptred**, and **Mounded** of the same, **Invested** or **Robed** Saphire, **Lined**, (or the cape and turnings up of his Robe) Ermine. A third Blazon take thus, a **King** in his **Robes of State**, Saphire, **Faced** or **Lined**, Ermine; **Crowned**, holding a **Sword** in his right hand, and a **Mound** in his left, of the first; Enthroned or set in his Seat Royal, proper; these are the Arms of the City of *Sivil*, in *Spain*.

This Coat may be yet shorter Blazoned, as a King in his **Throne of Majesty.**

The Robes and Ensigns of Kings.

A **Crown**, it is an ancient Ensign of Regal Authority, having a Cap of Dignity within it of Purple or Scarlet Velvet, turned up or doubled with Ermine. It is the Emblem of Triumph and Victory.

A **Scepter** is another Ensign of Soveraign Command, and is every where spoken of both in Scripture and Prophane Stories; and the extending thereof a special note of the Royal favour of the King, as we see in *Hester* 15. 14. It betokens Peace and Justice mixed with Mercy and compassion.

A **Ring**, which is put upon his Finger, as a sign of Faithfulness and Integrity.

A **Mound**, this is a third Ensign of Authority; it is a Globe with a Cross; it hath been in use amongst us since *Edward the Confessor*, and is placed in the left hand; the Cross denotes his Faith, and the Globe his Empire or Rule both by Sea and Land, as it is said of *Justinian*, who was the first Emperour that ever had it.

A **Bracelet** put about his Arm, denoting Charity and richness in good Works.

A **Mantle of Estate**, which is a long Scarlet Cloak or Mantle, Lined with Ermine Furr, which is so large as to draw some Yards on the ground, if the Train or Tail of it were not born up.

The **Cordals** or String of the Mantle, with its Buttons and Tassels, all made of Purple Silk and Gold Thread interwoven after the manner of a Cord.

A **Robe of Estate**, which is for Awfulness and Reverence.

A **Garter**, which is a Rich Jewel made after the form of St. *George* on Horseback slaying of the Dragon, all beset with Diamonds, and hung in a Blew Silk Ribbon, which is the Badge of his Knighthood of the Garter, or order of St. *George*.

A **Kirtle**, or loose Robe, worn under the Mantle of Estate, of Purple colour, overlaid with Borders, or Welts of Gold; and doubled with the Ermine Skins.

A **Surcote** or **Gown**, of Purple, lined and welted, or edged with Ermine Skins.

A **Belt** or **Girdle** of fine Silk, to tye the under Gown or Surcoat about the middle. This is called the **Girdle of Honour.**

A **Spur**, or a **Gilt Spur**, which was put upon his Heel in token of Knighthood.

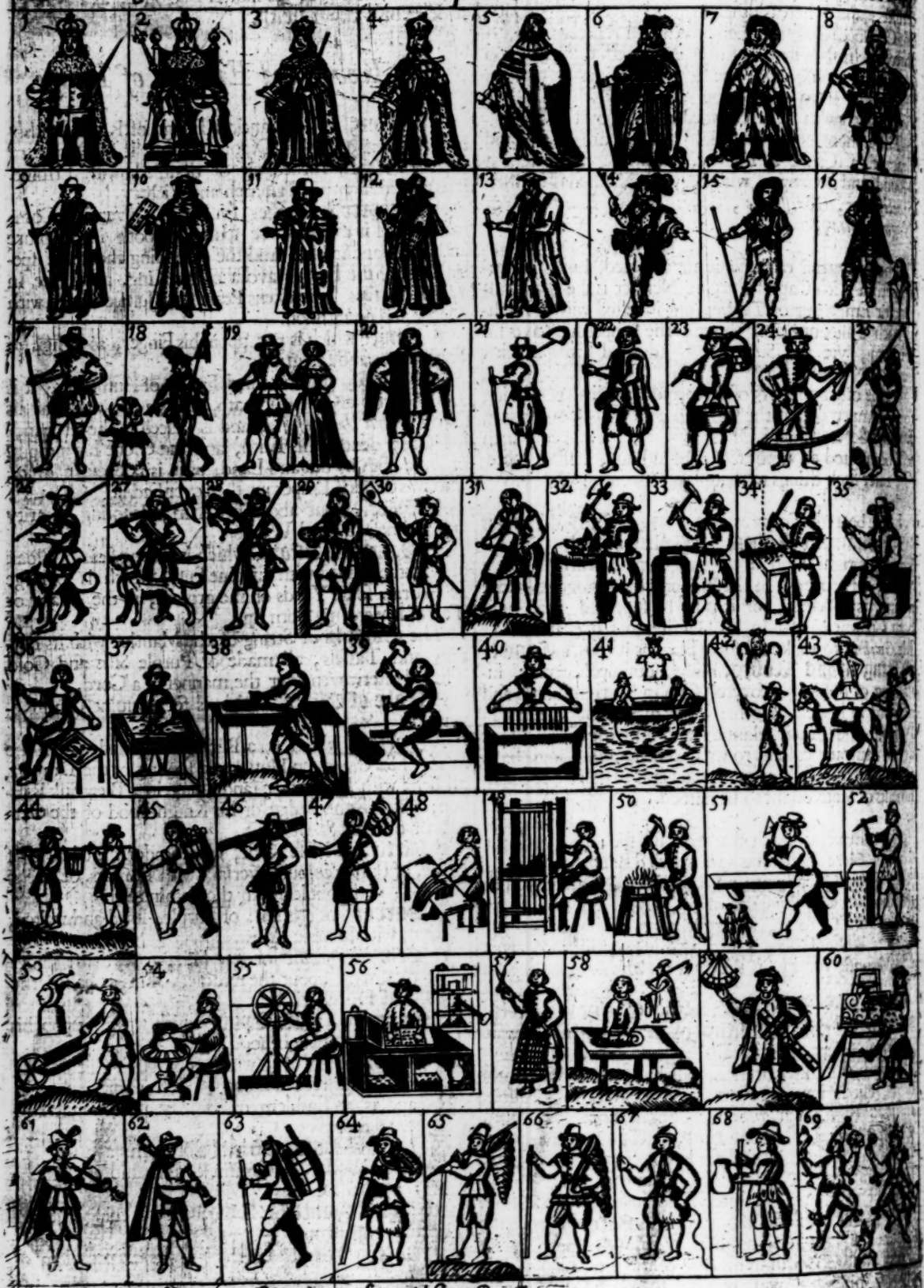
A **Sword of State**, which is a Rich Gilt Sword, with an Imbrauthered Scabbard which is born before the King, and is an Emblem of Majesty and Magistracy, Honour and Rule.

A **Naked Sword**, carried before him, as a token of Vengeance and the Punishment of Rebellion, 1. In the Laity. 2. In the Clergy.

A **Naked pointless Sword**, betokening Mercy, Pity and compassion.

A **Mace**, carried before the King is the Emblem of Justice.

A **Throne** or **Seat of Majesty**, is a Chair of Gold richly Imbossed, mounted upon Steps, or an Ascent of three



M. Dm ffrancisci Leicestrie de Tabley Bar.

three paces, with the Atchievements of the Soveraign set over head, and under a **Rich Canopy**, with **Valence and Curtains** Fringed and Imbroidered with Silk, Silver and Gold; and a Cloath of State under Foot to tread upon.

The Stile he speaketh in the plural number, We will and command, We by the consent and advice of Our Council, do so and so.

The Title given Him is, Majesty, Sacred Majesty, High and Mighty, *Dei Gratia*, Grace, or by the Grace of God, Defendor of the Faith; Supream Head and Governor, *&c.* Most Excellent, Illustrous.

Coronation Ceremonies used at the Crowning of the Kings of England.

The Crowning of King *Richard* the third, *Anno* 1483.

The Trumpeters.

The Heralds Marshalling the way.

A Priest or Fryer bearing the Cross.

Priests in fine Surplices and gray Amysses upon them.

The Bishops and Abbots in Rich Copes all of them Mitered with their Crosses in their Hands.

The Barons in their Robes.

The Viscount in their Robes.

An Earl Bearing a pair of Gilt Spurs.

An Earl bearing St. *Edwards* Staff, as a Relique.

An Earl bearing a naked Sword without a point.

A Lord bearing a Mace between two Earls which carried each of them a Naked Sword sharp pointed.

A Duke carrying the Scepter.

A Duke carrying the Mond. or Globe and Cross.

An Earl bearing the Sword of Estate.

Then Garter King of Arms, between the Usher of the Privy Chamber, on his left hand, and the Lord Mayor with a Mace in his hand.

A Duke bearing the Kings Crown between his hands.

Then the King himself in a Surcoat and Robe of Purple Velvet, bare Footed walking upon Ray Cloath; having over his head a Canopie born by the Barons of the Cinque-Ports. The Bishop of *Bath* on his right Hand, and the Bishop of *Durham* on his left.

A Duke bearing up the Kings Train.

The Queens Train of Attendants, followed: after whom,

Then one bearing a Scepter.

Then one bearing the Ivory Rod with a Dove.

One bearing the Crown.

Then the Queen Apparelled in Robs like the King. Under a Rich Canopie, at each corner a Gold Bell, on Her Head she had a Circlet, set full of Precious Stones.

A Countess bearing up her Train.

Two Dutchess's in their Coronets Attendans.

Twenty Ladies following orderly in rich Attire.

In this Order they passed from the Pallace to the Abby and ascending to the High Altar, there shifted their Robs, and having other Robs open in diverse places from the middle upwards, were both Anointed, and Crowned: He with St. *Edwards* Crown, having the Scepter delivered into his left Hand, and the Globe with the Cross into the right. The Queen had a Scepter given into her right Hand, and the Ivory Dove into her left.

Then after the Sermon, and the Sacrament received (having the Host divided between them) they both offered at St. *Edwards* Altar, or Shrine; where the King left his Crown, and put on his own: and thus done, in the same Order and State as they came, returned to *Westminster-Hall*, and there held a most Princely Feast.

The Earl Marshal (when all persons were set, and the Hall voided and cleared of the multitude) with the High Constable, Lord Steward, Lord Treasurer and Comptroller came in and served the King Solemnly with one Dish of Gold and another of Silver: and the Queen all in Gilt Vessels, and the Bishops all in Silver. At the Second Course of the Feast, a Champion in compleat Armour well mounted, comes into the Hall; one Riding before him, which carried his Lance: this Champion having his Sword drawn, Proclaims the King with a loud voice, to be the lawful and undoubted King, and Heir of the Crown of *England*: which if any did deny, he was ready to defend by Combate and Dint of Sword.

The Order of the Feast was thus in short, at the head of the Table the King is Seated by Himself at the lower end of the same Table, are placed the Embassadors of diverse Princes. Before the King stood the Carver, Sewer, Cup-bearer, with a great number of Gentlemen-waiters, Attending his Person; the Ushers making place to strangers that come to behold his Person.

At the side Table on the right hand near adjoyning to the King, are placed the Lord Chancellor, Chamberlain, Keeper of the Great Seal, Steward, Treasurer; being the five Great Peers of the Kingdom, with diverse other Honorable Persons.

At the side Table on the left hand, are placed the Lord Mayor and Aldermen, the Treasurer of the Houshold, Secretaries of State, Serjeant at Law, Master of the Revels, Kings at Arms, and the Dean of the Chappel.

At another Table at the other side are set the new made Knights of the Bath and others, the Master of the Game, chief Ranger, Masters of the Houshold, Clarks of the Green Cloath, and Exchequer: with strangers to furnish it.

At another Table over against it, are placed the Knights and Gentlemen of the Kings House, Lieutenant of the Tower, with diverse Captains and Commanders, both of Foot and Horse.

At a Table at the lower end of the Hall, are set the Butler, the Panther, Clarks of the Kitchin, and diverse others of the Kings House, furnished throughout with the Kings Guard, and at every course or mess, the Trumpets with other Musick, are to sound.

But to lay a side the formality of the Kings and Queens passage from the Pallace to the Abby (being a part of Marshalling, or Triumphal Progressions) is more proper for another place, the which I shall have occasion hereafter to treat off, in *lib.* 4. *chap.* 11.

Officers and Servants in the Kings Majesties Houshold with their Fees.

Chief Officers, and Attendants.

Lord High Steward, 383. 7. 8.
Lord High Constable,
Earl Marshal,
Lord High Chamberlain, 200.
Lord High Treasurer, 368 *l.*
Lord High Admiral,
Lord High Almoner,
Lord President of K. Council,
Lords of the Privy Council
Knight Marshal,

The Counting-House.

Treasurer of the House, 124. 14. 8.
Controller, 107. 17. 4.
Cofferer, 100 *l.*
Clerk of the Coffer, 20 *l.*
2 Clerks of the green Cloath, 44. 6. 8.
2 Clerks Controllers, 44. 6. 8.
A Serjeant or Yeoman, 6. 13. 4.
A Groom, 2. 13. 4.
2 Messengers,
Mr. of the House, 100. Marks.
Messenger of the Counting-House,

The Jewel-House.

Master, 50 *l.*
Treasurer,
Yeoman, 6. 13. 4.
Groom, 5. 6. 8.

The Robes or Ward-Robe.

Yeoman, 5 *l.*
Groom, 2. 13. 4.
Page, 2 *l.*

The Beds.

2 Yeomen each 10 *l.*
3 Grooms, each 3. 8. 4.
2 Pages, each 2 *l.*
Clerk, 10 *l.*

The Pantry.

Serjeant, 11. 8. 1. *ob.*
3 Yeomen, each 5 *l.*
4 Grooms, each 2. 13. 4.
2 Pages, each 2 *l.*
Bread-Bearer, 1. 10. 4.

The Buttery.

A Gentleman Pantler, or Bread-Keeper.
4 Yeoman, 5 *l.*
4 Grooms or Purveyors, 2. 13. 4.
2 Pages, each 2 *l.*
Napperer, or Keeper of the Table Linnen.

The Sellar.

Serjeant, 11. 8. 1. *ob.*
7 Yeoman, each 5 *l.*
Groom, 2. 13. 4.
2 Pages, 2 *l.*
8 Wine Porters.

The Ewrye.

A Serjeant,
Gentleman of the Ewry, 7 *d. ob. per diem*
3 Yeomen, each 5. *l.*
2 Grooms, each 2 *l.* 13 *s.* 4 *d.*
2 Pages, each 2 *l.*
3 Clerks, each 11 *l.* 8 *s.* 1 *d. ob.*

The Kitchin.

2 Mr. Cookes, each 11 *l.* 8 *s.* 1 *d. ob.*
6 Yeomen, each 5. *l.*
6 Grooms, each 2 *l.* 13 *s.* 4 *d.*
8 Children, each 2 *l.*
Gallapines, 50 *l.*
Surveyor of the Dresser, 22 *l.* 1 *s.* 3 *d.*
Cooks Largess at Easter, 6 *l.* 13 *s.* 4 *d.*
Idem to Scullery, 1 *l.*
Idem to Pastery, 2 *l.*

The Bake-House.

Serjant, 11 *l.* 8 *s.* 1 *d. ob.*
A Garnitor,
7 Yeomen, each 5 *l.*
2 Grooms, each 2 *l.* 3 *s.* 4 *d.*
6 Conductors, 3 *d. per Diem.*
- - - Purveyors,

The Spicery.

A Grocer.
Clerk of the Spicery, 20 *l.*
Yeoman, 5 *l.*
Serjeant, 11 *l.* 8 *s.* 1 *d. ob.*
Groom, 2 *l.* 13 *s.* 4 *d.*
Page, 2 *l.*

The Pitcher-House.

2 Yeomen, each 5 *l.*
3 Grooms, each 2 *l.* 13 *s.* 4 *d.*
2 Pages, each 2 *l.*

The Larder.

3 Yeomen, 5 *l.*
3 Grooms, each 2 *l.* 13 *s.* 4 *d.*
2 Pages, 2 *l.*
Clerk, 6 *l.* 13 *s.* 4 *d.*
Serjeant,

The Boyling-House.

Yeoman, 5 *l.*
2 Grooms, 2 *l.* 13 *s.* 4 *d.*
Clerk, 6 *l.* 13 *s.* 4 *d.*

The Acatrye, or Caterers Office.

A Serjeant,
6 Yeomen, each 7 *l.* 13 *s.* 4 *d.*
2 Grooms, each 2 *l.* 13 *s.* 4 *d.*
2 Pages, each 2 *l.*
Purveyors,

The Pastry.

Serjeant, 11 *l.* 8 *s.* 1 *d. ob.*
Clerk, 6 *l.* 13 *s.* 4 *d.*
2 Yeomen, 2 *l.* 13 *s.* 4 *d.*
4 Grooms, each 5 *l.*
4 Children, each 2 *l.*

The Poultry.

Serjeant, 11 *l.* 8 *s.* 1 *d. ob.*
Clerk, 6 *l.* 13 *s.* 4 *d.*
4 Yeomen Purveyors, 5 *l.*

The Scalding-House.

Yeoman, 5 *l.*
2 Grooms, 2 *l.* 13 *s.* 4 *d.*
2 Pages, or Purveyors.

The Squillery, or Scullery.

A Serjeant,
A Clerk,
3 Yeomen, each 5 *l.*
2 Grooms, each 2 *l.* 13 *s.* 4 *d.*
4 Pages, each 2 *l.*

The Chappel.

Dean, 200 *l.*
Sub-Dean, 100 *l.*
12 Priests, each 70 *l.*
12 Singing Boys,
A Vergero,
A Serjeant,
4 Yeomen,

2 Groom,
48 Chaplains in Ordinary.

The Almoury, or Eleemosinary.

Lord Almoner
Sub-Almoner, 6 *l.* 16 *s.* 10 *d. ob.*
4 Yeomen, each 2 *l.*
2 Grooms, each 2 *l.* 13 *s.* 4 *d.*
Gentlemen 7 *d. per Diem*, 11 *l.* 8 *s.* 1 *d. ob.*

The Chandlery.

A Serjeant,
2 Yeomen,
2 Grooms,
A Page.

The Confectionary.

A Serjeant,
2 Yeomen,
A Groom,
A Page,

The Laundry.

A Woman Laundress, 10 *l.*
2 Yeomen, 5 *l.*
2 Grooms, each 2 *l.* 13 *s.* 4 *d.*
2 Pages, each 2 *l.*
A Draper,

The Harbingers Office.

A Knight Harbinger, 20 *marks.*
3 Gentlemen Harbingers,
7 Yeomen Harbingers,

The Knight Marshalsea.

Knight Marshal,
6 Provost Marshal or Virgers.

The Kings-Gard, or Life-Gard.

3 Captains, 20 *s. per Diem.*
4 Lieutenants,
3 Cornets,
3 Guidon,
3 Quarter-Master,
12 Brigadiers of Horse, 4 *s. per Diem.*

The Band of Gentlemen Pensioners.

Captain, 1000 *l.*
Lieutenant, 260 *l.*
Standard Bearer, 200 *l.*
Clerk, 120 *l.*
100 Battle-Axes, or Pole-Axes, 100 *l.*

The Gard Chamber.

200 Ordinary Yeomen, 20 *d. per Diem.*
A Captain, 1000 *l.*
Leiutenant, 500 *l.*
Ensign, 300 *l.*
Clerk of the Cheque, 150 *l.*
4 Corporals, each 150.

The Wafftrey-House.

Yeoman, 5 *l.*
Groom, 2 *l.* 13 *s.* 4 *d.*
Serjeant, 11 *l.* 8 *s.* 1 *d. ob.*
Clerk, 6 *l.* 13 *s.* 4 *d.*

The Wood-Yard.

A Serjeant,
6 Cart Takers,
4 Yeomen, each 5 *l.*
4 Grooms, each 2 *l.* 13 *s.* 4.
2 Pages, each 2 *l.*
2 Wood-bearers, each 1 *l.* 10 *s.* 5 *d.*

Largess at Mid-Summer, 5 *l.*

The Hall.

6 Porters and Scoorers, each 2 *l.*
Largess to them all at Easter, 5 *l.*
A Serjeant Porter,
4 Marshalls of the Hall,
5 Sewers of the Hall,
12 Waiters,
A Bell-Ringer,
Cock of the Court,

The Stable.

Mr. of the Horse, 100 *l.*
Chief Avenor, 40 *l.*
14 Quirriers, each 20 *l.*
2 Riders, each 30 *l.*
Clerk, 11 *d. per Diem.*
3 Surveyors, each 11 *d.*
Serjeants of the carriage, 15 *d.*
3 Sadlers, 9 *d.*
Yeoman Coach-maker, 12 *d.*
Yeoman of the Stirrope, 9 *d.*
4 Yeomen Purveyors, 9 *d.*
3 Yeomen Granators, 9 *d.*
Serjeant Farrier, 13 *d.*
3 Yeomen Farriers, 6 *d.*
Yeoman of the Male, 8 *d.*
Yeoman Bit-maker, 3 *d.*
Yeoman of the Close-cart, 7 *d.*
64 Grooms, to all 584 *l.*
26 Footmen in Liveries.

So that all the Fees to the Officers of the Kings Houshold, amounts to 16868 *l.* 10 *s.* 1 *d.*

Per Diem.

A List of the Kings Officers in Ordinary that Attend His Person above Staires.

In the Bed-Chamber.

18 Gentlemen of the Bed-Chamber, each 100 *l.*
Groom of the Stool,
Servant of the Robe or Vestment,
Lord Great Chamberlain,
Vice-Chamberlain,
Keeper of the Privy Purse,
Treasurer of the Chamber,
Master of the Robes,
12 Grooms of the Bed-Chamber, each 50 *l.*
6 Pages of the Bed-Chamber,
Keeper of the Kings Cabinet Closet,
4 Gentlemen Ushers of the Privy Chamber,
48 Gentlemen of the Privy Chamber.
6 Grooms of the Privy Chamber,

The Presence Chamber, or Great Chamber.

4 Gentlemen Ushers,
4 Waiters,
8 Gentlemen Ushers that are quarter Waiters
14 Grooms,
4 Pages.
6 Gentlemen Waiters
5 Cup-bearers
Pincern Cup Waiters
4 Carvers for His Person,
3 Gentlemen Sewers to His Person,
6 Esquires of the Body,
8 Sewers of the Chamber,
Groom Porter,
16 Serjants at Arms,
42 Messengers of the Chamber,

The Ceremonies.

The Master of Ceremonies, 200 *l.*
An Assistant, 120 *l.*
A Marshall,

The Removing Wardrobe.

A Yeoman, 200 *l.*
2 Grooms, each 100.
3 Pages, each 100 *marks.*

The Officers of the Robes.

A Yeoman,

2 Grooms,
A Page,
A Purveyor,
A Brusher,
A Dyer,
A Taylor,
A Girdler,
A Clerk,
A Laceman,
A Cutter and Racer,
An Imbrautherer,
2 Silkmen,
A Shoomaker,
A Perfumer,
A Feather maker,
A Milliner,
A Mercer,
A Hosier,
A Draper,
A Surveyor,

Masters of the Game.

Mr. of the Fighting Cocks,
Mr. of the Bears,
A Serjeant,
Mr. of the Bulls,
A Yeoman,
Mr. of the Bowling Green,
Mr. of the Tennis-court,
Mr. of the Pall-Mall,
Keeper of the Theater,
Keeper of the Birds and Fowl,
2 Gentlemen of the Bows,
Chief Ranger, 9 *l.* 2 *s.* 6 *d.*

Other Officers of Court which Pertain to the Kings Houshold, with their Fees.

The Secretaries of Estate.

Principal Secretaries, 100 *l.*
Secretary of *French* Tongue, 66. 13. 4.
Secretary of the *Latin*, 40 *mar.*
4 Clerks of the Signet,
Clerk of the Council, 26 *l.* 13 *s.* 4 *d.*
Clerk of the Parliament, 40 *l.*
Clerk of the Market, 20 *l.*
Clark of the Privy Council, 40 *l.*

The Armory.

Lieutenant of the Ordinance,
Mr. of the Armory, 130 *l.* 10 *s.* 9 *d.*
20 other Officers, each 15 *l.* 5 *s.*
Lacksmith, 15 *l.* 12 *s.*
Labourer, 10 *l.*
Gilder, 5 *l.*
Brigender 10 *l.*

The Officers at Arms.

Garter King at Arms, 40 *l.*
Clarencieux K. at Arms, 20 *l.*
Norroy K. at Arms, 20 *l.*
6 Heralds, each 13 *l* 6 *s.* 8 *d.*
6 Pursivants, have 93 *l.* 6 *s.* 8 *d.*
25 Serjeants at Arms, 1 *s per Diem.*

The Mynt-House.

Treasurer, 100 *l.*
Controllor, 100 *mar.*
Assay Master, 100 *mar.*
Auditor, 44 *l.* 6 *s.* 8 *d.*
Teller of Money, 33 *l.* 6 *s.* 8 *d.*
Surveyor of the Melting-house, 26 *l.* 13 *s.* 4 *d.*
Clerk of the Irons, 20 *marks.*
Clerk of the Mynt, 10 *l.*
Chief Graver, 30 *l.*
Chief Finer, 20 *l.*
Sincker of the Irons, 10 *l.*
3 Melters, each 20 *marks.*
Purveyors, 10 *l.*
Pot-makers, 10 *l.*
Porter, 10 *l.*

The Buttlerage of *England.*

Chief Buttler, 50 *m.*
Under Buttler,

The Barges.

Mr. of the Kings Barge, 10 *l.* 8 *s.* 8 *d.*
Servants amongst them, 20 *l.*

The Great Wardrobe.

Master, 115 *l.*
Clerk, 18 *l.* 5 *s.*
Under Clerk, 4 *l.* 6 *s.* 8 *d.*
Porter, 6 *l.* 1 *s.* 8 *d.*
Rent gatherer, 5 *l.*
3 Taylors, each 9 *l.* 2 *s.* 6 *d.*
3 Imbrautherers, each 18 *s.* 5 *d.*

The Tents, or Povillions.

2 Masters, 30 *l.*
Controllor, 12 *l* 13 *s.* 4 *d.*
Clerk, 13 *l.* 7 *s.* 4.
Keeper of the Tents, 10 *l.*
4 Yeoman, 5 *l.*
Groom, 9 *l.* 2 *s.* 6 *d.*

The Revells.

Master of the Revells, 100 *l.*
Yeoman, 9 *l.* 2 *s.* 10 *d.*
Master of the Request, 100 *l.*

The Works.

Surveyor, 30 *l.*
Controllor, 30 *l.*
Clerk, 18 *l.* 5 *s.*
Purveyor, 24 *l.* 6 *s.* 8 *d.*
Keeper of the Store-house, 9 *l.* 13 *s.* 4 *d.*
Clerk of the Check, 15 *l.* 3 *s.* 4 *d.*
Carpenter, 18 *l.* 5 *s.*
Mason, 18 *l.* 5 *s.*
3 Joyners, each 18 *l.* 5 *s.*
Glasier, 18 *l.* 5 *s.*
Surveyors of the Mines, 36 *l.* 10 *s.*
Devisor of Building, 36 *l.* 10 *s.*

The Hunters Fees.

Master of the Hounds, 18 *l.* 5 *s.*
The Yeoman, 6 *l.*
Mr. of Buck-hounds, 50 *marks.*
2 Servants, each 20 *l.*
2 Yeomen Prickers, each 9 *l.* 2 *s.* 6 *d.*
Master of Otter Hounds, 13 *l.* 6 *s.*
40 others under them.

The Apothocary & Physician, &c.

6 Surgeons, all 196 *l.* 13 *s.* 4 *d.*
3 Physicians, all 260 *l.*
3 Apothocaries, all 64 *l.* 9 *s.* 2 *d.*
Astronomers, 20 *l.*
4 Physicians to His Majesty,
2 Physicians for the Houshold and Tower.
2 Barbers,

The Musicians and Players.

Serjeant Trumpeter, 24 *l.* 6 *s.* 8 *d.*
16 Trumpeters, all 389 *l.* 6 *s.* 8 *d.*
6 Sack-Buts, each 24 *l.*
8 Violls, each 30 *l.* 8 4 *d.*
3 Drumslades, each 18 *l.* 5 *s.*
2 Players on the Flute, 18 *l.* 5 *s.*
3 Players on the Virginals, 5 *l.*
8 Players of Enterludes, each 3 *l.* 6 *s.*
2 Makers of Instruments, 30 *l.*

The Artificers Fees.

Printer, 4 *l.*
Stationer, 10 *l.*
Cutler, 6 *l.* 1 *s.* 8 *d.*
3 Weavers, each 9 *l.* 2 *s.* 6 *d.*
Bowyer, 9 *l.* 2 *s.* 6 *d.*
Wheel Wright, 18 *l.* 5 *s.*
Cross-Bow maker, 6 *l.* 1 *s.* 8 *d.*
Clock-maker, 18 *l.* 10 *s.*
Feather Dresser, 13 *l.* 6 *s.*
Lock-Smith 2 *l.* 13 *s.* 4 *d.*
Arrow-Maker, 6 *l.* 1 *s.* 8 *d.*
Buckler-Maker, 3 *l.* 8 *d.*
Hand-Gun-maker, 1 *l.* 6 *s.* 8 *d.*

Stone Graver, 20 *l.*
Serjeant Painter, 25 *l.* 10 *s.*
Gardiner, 25 *l.* 10 *s.*
Sillers of Water, 40 *l.*
Clock keeper, 12 *l.* 13 *s.* 4 *d.*
Silkman,
Wollen Draper,
2 Taylors,
Sejeant Skinner,
Post-Master,
Tennis-Ball maker,
2 Imbrautherers,
2 Keepers of the Privy Lodgings,
Prospective maker,
Master Fencer,
Haberdasher of Hats,
Comb maker,
Silver-Smith,
Gold-Smith,
Jeweller,
Peruque-maker,
Joyner,
Watch-maker,
Cabinet-Maker,
Lock-Smith,
55 Water-men,
Upholster,
Cutler,
Spurrier,
Girdler,
Button-maker, &c.

The Falconry Office.

Master of the Hawks,
33 Under Falconers, or Officers.

The Kings Officers for Law.

4 Serjeants at Law.
Attorney General,
Sollicitor General,
Chief Justice of *Chester*.
2 Council at Law.
2 Advocates for the Civil Law.
2 Secretaries of Estate,
2 Clerks of the Council,
2 Masters of Request,
4 Clerks of the Signet,

Officers of Estate, and the Kings Houshold with their Allowances.

In the Exchequer of London.

Lord High Treasurer, 368 *l.*
Chancellor, 113 *l.*
Lord chief Baron, 100 *l.*
3 Barons, 40 *l.* 13 *s.* 4 *d.* apeece.
Kings Remembrancer, 55 *l.* 17 *s.* 4 *d.*
Treasurer, 63 *l.* 2 *s.* 1 *d.*
Clerk of the Pipe, 65 *l.* 4 *s.* 2 *d.*
5 Auditors, to each 10 *l.*
Clerk of the Extracts, 15 *l.*
Clerk of the Plees, 5 *l.*
2 Marshals, to each 2 *l.* 10 *s.*
Ushers in all, 140 *l.*
8 Porters, each 4 *l.* and Liveries.
Clerk of Talis, 41 *l.* 13 *s.* 4 *d.*
Clerk of the Peal, 61 *l.* 16 *s.* 8 *d.*
2 Chamberlains, each 52 *l.* 3 *s.* 4 *d.*
Under Treasurer, 173 *l.*
2 Deputy Chamberlains, 6 *l.*
6 Messengers, each 4 *d. ob per Diem.*
Besides other under Officers.

Custom-Houses.

Customer Fee and reward, 47 13 4
Controllor, 20 *l.*
Collector, 66 *l.*
Surveyor, 46 *l.*
Searcher,
16 Waiters, to each 44 *l.*
6 Clerks, to each 10 *l.*

Receivers of Crown Lands.

9 Receivers, each 200 *m.*
Clerks allowance, each 37 *l.* 8 *s.* 8 *d.*

Surveyor of Crown Lands.

One in each County, 13 *l.* 6 *s.* 4 *d.*

The Duchy Court of Lancaster.

Chancellor, 142 *l.* 16 *s.*
Attornies, each 45 *l.*
Receiver General, 38 *l.* 16 *s.* 4 *d.*
Clerk, 27 *l.* 10 *s.*
Messenger, 10 *l.*
Usher, 20 *s.*
4 Council at Law, each 7 *l.* 6 *s.* 8 *d.*
2 Auditors of the Revenue, each 197 *l.*
22 Receivers, each 5 *l.*
3 Surveyors, each 13 *l.* 6 *s.* 8 *d.*

Court of first Fruits.

Chancellor, 242 *l.* 6 *s.* 8 *d.*
Treasurer, 136 *l.*
Attorney, 26 *l.* 13 *s.* 4 *d.*
Auditor, 140 *l.* 3 *d.*
Clerk, 40 *l.*
Keeper of the Records, 20 *l.*
Messenger, 16 *l.* 13 *s.* 4 *d.*
Usher, 6 *l.* 6 *s.* 8 *d.*

Court of Wards.

Master of the Wards, 352 *l.* 6 *s.* 8 *d.*
Receiver, 70 *l.* 13 *s.* 4 *d.*
Attorney, 70 *l.*
Surveyor, 100 *l.*
Auditor, 145 *l.* 13 *s.* 4 *d.*
2 Clerks, each 24 *l.* 13 *s.* 8 *d.*
Messenger, 6 *l.* 2 *d.*
Usher. 5 *l.*
45 Feodaries, each 9 *l.*

So that the Fees of the Courts of Revenues to the said Officers and their Substitutes aforesaid, amounts to 13825 *l.* 8 *s.* 4 *d.. ob.*

The Court of Chancery.

Lord Chancellor, or
Lord Keeper of the great Seal, 1047 *l.*
Master of the Rolls, 71 *l.* 13 *s.* 4 *d.*
Clerk of the Hamper, 43 *l.*
Clerk of the Crown, 60 *l.*
Controllor, 10 *l.*
Prothonotory, 33 *l.* 6 *s.* 8 *d.*
Sealer, 6 *l.* 16 *s.* 10 *d. ob.*
Chaffer of Wax, 3 *l.* 16 *s.* 1 *d.*
Cryer, 6 *l.* 6 *s.* 10 *d. ob.*
Enroller of Evidences, 20 *l.*
12 Masters of Chancery,

The Privy Seal.

Lord Keeper his Fee 20 *s. pre Diem.*

The Kings-Bench Court.

Lord chief Justice, 228 *l.* 6 *s.* 5 *d.*
3 Lords Justices, each 148 *l.*
Clerk of the Crown, 10 *l.*
Prothonotory *nil.*
Keeper of the Records, *nil.*

The Court of Common Pleas.

Lord chief Justice, 182 *l.*
3 Lords Justices, each 148 *l.* 6 *s.* 8 *d.*
Keeper of the Rolls, 4 *l.*
4 Sejeants at Law, each 53 *l.* 6 *s.* 7 *d.*
Attorney General, 81 *l.*
Sollicitor General, 50.

The Council in the North.

Lord President, 1000 *l.*
7 Councellors, each 50 *l.*
Secretary, 33 *l.* 6 *s.* 8 *d.*
Messenger, 6 *l.* 13 *s.* 4 *d.*

The Marches of Wales.

Lord President, 1040 *l.*
7 Councellors, each 13 *l.* 6 *s.* 8 *d.*

The Admiralty Court.

Lord Admiral of *England*, 200 *m.*
Lieutenant, 230 *l.*
Treasurer, 220 *l.*

Mr.

Mr. of the Ordinance, 180 *l.*
Controllor, 100 *l.*
Surveyor, 70 *l.*
Clerk of the Ships, 60 *l.*
Clerk of the Store-House, 52 13 4
Victualler of the Navye, 128 *l.*

The **Principality of South-Wales.**

Chancellor, 20 *l.*
Secretary, 13 *l.* 6 *s.* 8 *d.*
Attorney, 13 *l.* 6 *s.* 8 *d.*
Sollicitor, 10 *l.*

The **Principallity of North-wales**
Chancellor, 20 *l.*
Attorney, 66 *s.*
Controllor, 12 *l.* 13 *s.* 4 *d.*
2 Justices, each 23 *l.* 6 *s.* 8 *d.*

The **Palatine of Lancaster.**

Clerk of the Crown, 6 *l.*
Clerk of the Common Pleas, 4 *l.*
Clerk of the Estracts, 1 *l.*
2 Barons of the Exchequer, each 2 *l.*
2 Attorneys, each 6 *l.* 31 *s.* 4 *d.*
Cryer, 2 *l.*
Messenger, 2 *l.*
Chamberlain, 20 *l.*

The **Palatine of Chester.**

2 Baron of the Exchequer, 9 *l.* 2 *s.* 4 *d.*
2 Serjeants at Law, each 3 *l.* 6 *s.* 8 *d.*
2 General Attorneys, each 3 *l.* 6 *s.* 8 *d.*
Escheator, 10 *l.* 10 *s.*

Justices of Oyer and **Terminer.**

From Trent Southward, 100 *l.*
From Trent Northward, 100 *l.*
Masters of Request, each 200.

III. He beareth Argent, a **Prince in his Parliament Robes** Gules, **Doubled** Ermin; the **Surcoat,** or **Vested,** Purpure: with a Girdle about his middle of the first; a **Charter** in his right Hand, and a **Rod of Estate** or Government in his left, and his Sword by his side all proper.

The Kings eldest Son in *England*, is called **Prince**, and the first that we read of was *Edward* eldest Son to King *Henry* the third, and after him the Eldest Son of the King hath been ever by Patent, and Ceremonies of Enstalment Created Prince of *Wales*, & Earl of *Chester*, being born Duke of *Cornwall*: and hath the Title of Illustrious, or Most Illustrious Prince.

The Prince or first Son of the King of *France*, is called the **Dolphin** of *France*. In *Spain* the **Infanta of** *Spain*: and in other Countrys there are **Princes** by Creation, as the **Prince of Piemont,** and the **Prince of Orange,** with several others which now become Hereditary: and in some Countrys all the Royal line are Stiled Princes, as in *Bohemia* the eldest Son called the **Palsgrave,** and all the other Princes. In *Denmark*, all the younger Sons are called **Princes.**

The Creation of a Prince.

When a Prince is to be Created, he is after diverse Solemnities, at length presented before the King in Princely Robes, who puteth about his Neck a **Sword** bendways, a **Cap** upon his Head, with a **Coronet** according to His Degree over it, a **Ring** on his middle Finger, and a **Verge** or **Wand** of Gold in his Hand, and his **Letters Patents** after they are read.

Henry the fourth bestowed the said Principalitie on his eldest Son *Henry*, with the Title of Earl of *Chester* and *Flint*, by the said Solemn Investures, and a Kiss in full Parliament.

Yet here is to be noted that the **Mantle of a Prince,** is once more doubled then the Dukes: and his **Cap of Estate** in its doubling is indented, having (as all Caps of Dignity have) a **Button** and **Tassel of Gold** on the Crown or Top of the Cap.

Besides he hath a **Surcote** and **Girdle** and the **Mantle** with **Cordals Buttons,** and **Tassels,** as the Kings Mantle of State hath.

The Revenues of the Prince of Wales.

Edward the Third in a Parliament held at *Westminster* in the 15 Year of His Reign, Created *Edward* His Son and Heir Surnamed the Black Prince, Prince of *Wales*: and for his better maintenance in Honourable Support, according to his State and Dignity, by Charter the 18 of *E.* 1. gave him all His Lordships and Lands in *North-Wales*, *South-Wales*, and *West-Wales* or *Powys*: which have since appertain to this Principalitie, as

1. The Lordship, Castle, Town and County of *Carnarvon*, 1134 *l.* 16 *s.* 2 *d. ob. q.*
2. The Lordship, Castle and Town of *Conway*.
3. The Lordship, Castle, and Town of *Crucketh*.
4. The Lordship, Castle and Town of *Benmaris*.
5. The Lordship, Castle and Town of *Harlagh*.
6. The Lordship, Castle, Towns and Counties of *Anglesey*, and *Merioneth*, 1581 *l.* 5 *s.* 10 *d. ob.*
7. The Lordship, Castle, Town and County of *Catermardin*, 406 *l.* 1 *s.* 7 *d.*
8. The Lordship, Castle and Town of *Llanbider-Vaur*.
9. The Lordship, and Stewardship of *Cantermaner*.
10. The Lordship, Castle, Town and County of *Cardigan*, 374 *l.* 11 *s.* 3 *d. ob.*
11. The Lordship, Castle and Town of *Emelyn*.
12. The Lordship, Castle & Town of *Buelt*, 113 *l.* 6 *s.* 8 *d.*
13. The Lordship, Castle and Town of *Haverford*.
14. The Lordship, Castle and Town of *Montgomery*, 56 *l.* 13 *s.* 4 *d.*

And all the Lands that were *Rice ap Meridick* which came to the hands of King *E.* 1. (who Rebelled against the *English* Crown after the Conquest of *Wales*) together with all the Lordships, Citties, Castles, Towns, Manners, Members Hamlets, Lands, Tenements, Knights Fees, Voidances of Bishopricks, Advowsons of Churches and of Abbies, Priories and of Hospitals, with Customs, and Prisages of Wines, the Exercise and Execution of Justice, and a Chancery, Forests, Chases, Parks, Woods, Warrens, Hundreds, Comots, *&c.* besides,

15. The Perquisites and Profits of the Sessions of the Justices of *North-Wales*.
16. The Prequisites and Profits of the Sessions of the Justices of *South-Wales*, 738 *l.* 6 *s.* 9 *d. ob.*
17. The Prequisites, of the Courts of *Haverford*, 41 *l.* 5 *s.* 3 *d. ob.*

Deduct

Deduct for the Fees of the Justices of *North-Wales* 40 *l.* and of *South-Wales* 50 *l.*

Then the Revenue of the Principality is clear 481 *l.* 12 *s.* 5 *d.* 1 *f.*

Officers about the Person of the Prince of Wales.

The Governor of the Princes Person.

The Council of the Prince were diverse Honorable and worthy Persons.

The Chamberlain, and chief Chamberlain.

The Attorney General.

The Clerk of the Princes Council, or Secretary and the Keeper of His Books of Records, *&c.* his Fee 100 *l.* *per Annum.*

The Usher of the Council-Chamber, his Fee 10 *l.*

The Gentleman Usher to the Princes Privy Chamber.

The Keeper of the Princes Ward-Robe, his Fee 51 10*s.*

The Treasurer or Receiver General.

The Princes chief General.

The Mr. of the Princes Horse, and the Equityes and such as teach him to Ride, besides many other interiour Officers and Servants not mentioned in any Record.

The Ancient Officers of State and other Places of Judicature, for the Principality of Wales; with their Fees Per Annum.

In every of the said Circuits or Counties, there is a Chamberlain, or Treasurers of the Revenue, and Keepers of the Seal, 20 *l.*

The Princes Attorney, and Princes Solicitor.

The Prothonotory or chief Register.

The Clerk of the Crown.

The Marshal to attend the Judges.

The chief Justices of *North-Wales* and *South-Wales*, 50 *l.* a piece, the latter 40 *l.* a piece.

The Cryer.

The Justices of the Peace, which are to preserve the Peace and to punish turbulent persons.

The Custos Rotulorum or chief Justice of Peace, that keeps the Records of their proceedings.

The Justice of Peace and Quorum, without him no Sessions can be holden.

The Clerk of the Peace and Sessions 5 *l.*

The Sheriffs of each county 2 *l.* 10 *s.* of some 5 *l.*

The Coroners.

The Constables in every Hundred in the Shire.

The Goaler.

The Bailiffs or catch-poles.

The Marshal and keeper of the Justice house in *Carnarvon*, 1 *l.* 6*s.* 8 *d.*

The chief Forester of *Snowden*, 11 *l.* 8*s.*

The Steward General of the Comots of the County of *Carmarthen*, 6 *l.* 13 *s.* 4 *d.* of *Cardigan* 10 *l.*

The Clerk of the County Courts and small Sessions, each 2 *l.*

The Cryers of the same, each 6 *s.* 8 *d.*

The Office of Penkeys in the Comots of *Widegada* and *Elvet*, 4 *s.*

The Steward of the same, 3 *l.* 13 *s.* 4 *d.*

The Clerk, 6 *s.* 8 *d.*

The Bailiff Itinerant, 5 *l.* and some 6 *l.* 13 *s.* 4 *d.*

The Auditors, each 10 *l.* *per Annum*, and 10 *s.* *per Diem* in executing his Office and making his accounts.

The Controllors of all Pleas *&c*, 12 *l.* 3 *s.* 4 *d.*

The Attorneys in each County, 2 *l.* 16 *s.* 8 *d.* in *South-Wales* each 8 *l.* 13 *s.* 4 *d.*

The Surveyor or Supervisors, each 10 *l.*

The Constable of the several Castles and Towns, 40 *l.* viz. *Carnarvon*, *Conway*, *Harddlagh*, *Beumaris*, *Carmarthen*, *Abeenstowith*, *Cardigan*.

The Captains 12 *l.* 3 *s.* 4 *d.* and every Soldier of the Gard, 4 *d.* *per Diem.*

The Porters of the Gates, 3 *l.* 10 *s.*

The Office of the Steward of *Newbrough* and *Roffaire*, 10 *l.*

An Arch-Duke.

This Title is not used in *England* but in *Germany*: and proper only to the House of *Austria*, though some others have assumed the title, as Mr. *Selden* inform us.

He taketh place of all other Dukes, and he is allowed at his creation, a **Surcoat**, a **Mantle**, and a **Hood** of Crimson Velvet: He hath also a **Chapeaux**, or **Ducal Cap doubled** Ermin, and indented with a **Coronet** about the same with one **Arch of Gold** with a **Globe** and **Cross** upon it: and a **Verge**, or **Wand** of Gold.

A Duke

A **Duke** was at the first a title of Office, afterwards Honorary, and since Feudal and Hereditory: and were at first created without any Ceremony, except the **girding of a Sword** about them. But *John* Son of *Edward* the third. had a **Cap of Furr** added to the Ceremony when created Duke of *Lancaster*: and succeeding time have to them added, **Surcoat**, **Mantle**, **Hood**, a **Verge** of Gold, a **Ducal Crownett**, with a **Cap** doubled Ermin, but not indented as that of the Princes is.

The **Duke**, **Marquess** and **Earl** at their Creation have a Sword put over their Heads to their shoulders, which the Viscount and Baron have not.

The Creation of a Duke.

The King being Seated in His Chamber of Salutation called the presence Chamber; the Heralds proceeded by two & two, then came Garter with the Charter in his Hand, after him came an Earl bearing the **Rod** of Gold, then another Earl carrying the **Cap of State** with the Ducal Crown on it, and after him another Earl bearing the

Sword

Sword with the Hilt upwards, then came the Person to be created between a Duke and a Marquess vested with an inner **Gown** or **Surcoat** (gird about the middle) of a Scarlet colour Fimbriated or Bordered with Ermine skins: coming before the King they made three obeisance, the Person then kneeled before the King, the Charter was Audiably read which at the word *Investiximus*, the King with his own Hands puts upon him the **Ducal Robe**: and at the Sword, *Gladio Cincturavimus*, the King puts the **Belt** and **Sword** over his Head: and at the word, *Capae & Circuli Aurei Impositionem*, the King with his own Hands, puts the **Coronet** on his Head; and at the word, *Virgae Aureae Traditionem*, the King puts the **Rod** into his Hands; and when the rest of the Charter is read over, the King declares him to be Duke of such and such a place, so giving him the Letters Patent, and thanks given for the great Favour, *&c.* They go out orderly as they came in: the rest of the Ceremonies in the Feast, see in the creation of a Baron.

A **Duke** is Stiled, and Esteemed Princely, and generally Gracious, and Excellent: the High and Mighty Prince, or Most High Potent and Noble Prince.

Dukes of the Blood Royal, as the Kings Son, Brother, Uncle, Nephew, ought to be repated as **Arch-Dukes**, and to have precedency before all other Dukes not of the Blood Royal.

A Marquess.

It was a word at first used to all Earls and Barons, that were **Lords Marchers**, or **Lords of Frontiers**: and came after to a Title of Dignity, and Hereditory: beginning in the time of *Richard* the Second, who Created *Robert de Vere* Earl of *Oxford*, Marquess of *Dublin*, by the girding on of his **Sword**, and puting on his Head a **Circle**, or **Crownet** of Gold. The Ceremony at these times are such, or much at one, with them of the Earls.

The Marquess is Honored with a **Crownet** of Gold, **Flowred** and **Pointed**, being both of equal height: his **Mantle** also lined with Ermine, the **Cape** or **Doubling** the same, having only five rows of Ermine, whereas the Earl hath but four.

The Creation of a Marquess.

The Rites and Ceremonies of a Marquess Creation differeth in nothing from the Dukes only he is conducted into the Kings presence between a **Marquess** and an **Earl**, neither hath he any **Rod** delivered to him.

He is Stiled as the Duke, Earl, and Viscount are by the King (*Consanguinei Nostri*) our cousins: and if he be written unto, he is titled the most Noble, and Potent Lord: or the Right Honorable and Grand (or puissant) Seignor.

IV. He beareth Luna, an **Earl in his Parliament Robes** holding a Charter in his right hand with the Seal pendant all proper. If you desire a more exact blazon, say an Earl in his **Creation Robes** Mars, **Lined** Ermine; **Surcoat** Mercury, **Girdle** Luna: having a **Sword** and **Belt** about his Neck, **Crowned** according to his degree, holding a Charter in his right hand, Seal pendant proper.

A Count, or Earl.

The word **Earl** is derived from the Saxons **Eaccelp** or **Ear-el**, which the *Dutch* called **Eorle**, and by abreviation we call it **Earl**. The Title and office, with that of *Thane*, we find both Honorary, and Feudal, or Hereditory, whose possessions were sometimes the whole Territories they derived their Title from; and sometimes not, but some particular part, or place of it.

At the coming in of the *Normans* this word was turned into **Comes**, or **Count**; since which time it hath remained: In the Empire of *Germany* there are sundry sorts of Earls, which they title **Graves**: as **Landgraves**, **Palsgrave**, **Margraves**, **Burgrave**, and **Rhingrave**, *&c.* that is **Earls of Regions**, or **Provinces**: **Earls Palatine**, or Priviledge places: **Earls of Marts**, Bounds, Limits, Fields or Towns: **Earls of Cities**, Towers, Forts, Castles, and **Earls of Rivers**, Waters, *&c.* Comes Rusticis.

And so this Title since the conquest hath continued with us, either Local, or Personal, from the denomination of some Country, Town, or City: or from some great Office, as Earl-Marshal and the like. But of Local Earls we have in our Kingdom but two kinds, **Earls Palatines**, and **Earls not Palatines**: of the first we have three of *Chester* and *Lancaster*, the Bishoprick of *Durham*, and *Ely*.

Chester-Palatine was given to *Hugh Lupe*, to hold of the Conqueror, as freely by the Sword, as he himself held *England* by the Crown; in which case he scarcely acknowledged a Superior, but was equal to the Prince, for he created eight Barons under him, he had his Chamberlain, Justices, Baron of the Exchequer, High Constable, Sheriff, and other Officers proportionable to those of the Crown at *Westminster*.

Lancaster was made a Palatine by K. *Edward* the third, and had Barons, a Chancery, and Seal, and so had the Palatinate Bishops of *Durham* and *Ely*. The Office of those Barons was to sit in Council and Judgment with the Earl.

Of those **Earls** that are not **Palatinate**, but have their Creation from places, these are as ancient as the conquest, for *William* the first by Patent Created *Alan Fergent* **Earl of Richmond**. Where we find many times in their Patents they had annual Rents, and sometimes Land granted them, for the support of their Title and Dignity.

The **Creation Robes** belonging to an Earl is a **Surcoat**, a **Mantle**; with the **Cape** of three rows, or turnings down of the Ermine Furr: a **Hood**, a **Coronet** of Gold with points, not Flowers; (*Circulus Aureus*) a **Sword**, and a **Cap** of Honor, with an Ermine turning up, and a Button, and Tassel of Gold on the top.

Earls that have their **Office Personal**, is only the Earl-Marshal of *England*, and the first was *Tho: Mowbray* Earl of *Nottingham*, made **Earl-Marshal** of *England*, or *Marescallus Angliae* for Life, and after to him and his Heirs Males, by King *Richard* the Second: but since the

the 14 of Queen *Elizabeth*, the Office hath been only for Life; and to these Earls (besides what is before said) belongs as an Ensign of Authority, a **Rod**, or **Staff** of Gold, Enamelled at each end with **Black**.

There is another kind of Earl, which is only nominal, *viz.* Earl *Rivers*, who takes his Title from the denomination of an Illustrious Family, as the rest do from some noted place.

The Creation of an Earl.

The King seated in State in the Chamber of Presence, the Trumpets sounding before, the Pursevants at Arms, the Heralds of Arms, and the two Kings of Arms *Clarentieux* and *Norroy* followed by two and two, after them came *Garter* the principal King of Arms alone with the **Charter of Creation** in his hand; after him followed an Earl bearing a **Cap of Dignity**, with an Earls Coronett on it; after him succeeded another Earl, bearing a **Sword** and **Belt**, with the Hilt and Pomel erected; after him came the person to be created, between two Earls, having on him a **Coat** or **under Garment**, called a **Surcoat** of Scarlet Silk, covered with a long **Mantle** or **Cloak** of the same colour, Lined with Ermine, they being all come into the Kings Presence, and having made three Obeisances, the person to be created kneels before the King, the rest standing round about; *Garter* gives the Charter to the King, and he to the Secretary of State, who reading it, at the word *Cinturiavimus*, the King puts the **Belt** (with the **Sword** hanging at it) over his head obliquely towards the left side; and at the reading of the word, *Cappæ & Circuli Aurei*, the King puts upon his head the **Cap and Coronet**; when the rest of the Charter is read over, he pronounceth the said person, that before was so called, is now Earl of such a place, to him and his Heirs Male, *&c.* then the Secretary delivers the **Charter** to the Chamberlain, and he to the King, and the King to the person created, who giving him humble thanks for his great favour, *&c.* in the same manner and order as they came in, they went out: For the rest of their Ceremonies, at and after Dinner, see in the creation of a Baron.

He is stiled the most Noble and Potent Lord, or the thrice honourable and puissant Seignior, *W.* Earl of *A.* Viscount *B.* Baron *F.* and *G.* Knight of the thrice Noble Order of the Garter, *&c.*

Officers of State and Domestical belonging to the Earl of Chester, *with their Fees.*

The Baron of *Halton.*
The Baron of *Montalto.*
The Baron of *Malbanck.*
The Baron of *Shipbrooke.*
The Baron of *Malpass.*
The Baron of *Dunham-Massey.*
The Baron of *Kinderton.*
The Baron of *Stockport.*
The Chief Justice of *Chester* 100 0 0
The General of his Army
The Constable of *Chester*
The Steward to the Earl
The Abbot of St. *Wereburg*, in *Chester*, now to the Dean and Chapter 19 10 0
The Chamberlain of *Chester* 22 0 0
The Sherriff of *Chester* 20 0 0
The Sewer, or Dapifer to the Earl
The Ranger of his Forests. Keepers 4 11 3
The Constable of the Castle 18 5 0
The Bailiff Itinerant 3 1 6
The Attorney General 3 6 8
4 Serjeants 14 6 8
8 Clerks or Attorneys 9 2 6
Clerk of the Sword, now of the Crown
Cryer of the Exchequer at *Chester* 3 15 0
Escheator 10 10 0
Feodary
Prothonotary, Keeper of the Rolls
Customers of the Port, as
Receiver
Surveyers
Searchers
Controller of the Counties 12 3 4
Houshold Servants, as
Controller
Steward of the House
Chamberlain
Vice Chamberlain, or Sub Chamberlain
Keeper of the Wardrobe
Gentlemen of his Chamber
Master of his Horse
Groom of the Stable
Pages
Captain of his Guard
Almoner, or giver to the Poor
Chaplain 2 0 0
Master of the Hospital 4 11 0
Pentions in Alms of the said Earldom of old 61 6 0
Porter. Janitor. Door Keeper 6 1 8
Cook and Scullions
Caterer. Purveyer
Butler. Brewer
Baker. Milner
Huntsman. Fisher
Falconer. Fowler.
Gardiner 4 11 3
Artificers several
Carpenter 9 12 6
Mason 8 12 6
Plummer
Surveyor of the Works 6 1 8

The Ancient and Modern Revenues of the Earldom of Chester.

In the time of the Conquest *Hugh Lupe.* Earl of *Chester*, held these Towns in *Cheshire* and *Flintshire.*

In **Roelau**, now **Edesbury** Hundred.
Weverham. Kenardesley. Dunham. Elton. Trafford. Manley. Helsby. Prodsham.

In **Bochelau**, now **Buckley** Hundred.
Ollarton. Alderley. Done. Edesbery. Antrobus.

In **Dudeston**, now **Wirton** Hundred.
Eaton. Lea. Coddington. Lea by Chester. Rushton. Upton. Budworth parva. Olton. Ouver.

In **Wilawestou**, now **Wirrall** Hundred.
Estham. Trafford.

In **Hamstan**, now **Marfield** Hundred.
Maxfield. Adlington. Merton. Gawsworth. (Hunger Wenitume.) Henbury. Capeston. Henshall. Tingweesel. Hollinworth. Wernith. Romiley. Laiton.

In **Mildestwic**, now **Northwich** Hundred.
Alsacher. Sandbach. Cliffe. Sutton by Middlewich. Wimbaldesley. Weever. Occleston.

In **Attiscros**, now **Flintshire** part.
Harden. Radington. Ledbrock. Wepper. Claiton. Marleston by Chester. Claverton. Dodleston. Aston by Harden. Broughton. Sutton.

The Revenues of the Earl of Chester, *taken* 50 E. 3.

Fee Farm of *Chester*, 100 0 0
Other Profits therefrom, 4 0 0
Farm of *Medwick*, 64 0 0
Farm of *Dee* Mills, 240 0 0
Mannor of *Draklow*, 49 1 10
Forest of *Mara*, 51 7 0
Northwich, 68 0 0
Mannor of Shotwick, 30 14 1
Mannor of Frodsham, 56 13 4
Profits of the Office of Sherriff of County *Chester* 124 7 4
Perquisites of Courts held by Justice of *Chester* 180 0 0
Profits of the Escheators Office, 100 0 0
Mannor of Hope and Hopedale, 63 0 0
Mannor of Ewlow and Mynes, 6 0 0
Profits of Constable of *Rothlan*, 8 14 0
Rent of *Flint*, 56 0 0
Colshull, 4 7 10
Carouse, 22 6 8
Bachagree, 14 3 4 *ob.*
Voynal, 13 6 8
Rothland Rent, 72 9 2
Mosten, 15 6 8
Escheator Office of *Englefield*, 56 0 0
Perquisits of *Flint* Sessions, 30 0 0
Escheators Office for *Flintshire*, 8 0 0
The Bloglot of the County of *Flint*, which consisted of the profits of the Hundred Courts, 72 11 9 *ob.*
Borough of *Maxfield*, 31 0 0
Profits of *Maxfield* Hundred, 31 14 0
Maxfield Forest, 88 0 0
Profits of the Store of *Maxfield*, 13 6 8
Herbage and Agistments of *Maxfield* Park, 6 0 0

Sum total 1694 9 8

The Revenue as it now stands. 1630.

The Farm of *Chester*, 22 2 4 *ob.*
Escheated Lands there, 0 7 0
Draklow and Rudheath, 26 2 6
Farm of *Medywick*, 21 6 0
Profits of *Mara* and *Mondram* Forest, 34 9 0
Shotwick Park, 23 19 0
Fulling Mills at *Dee*, 11 0 0
Frodsham, 48 0 0
Hundred of *Maxfield* profits, 6 1 8
Profits of the Forest there, 85 12 11 *ob. q.*
From Escheator of *Chester*, 24 19 0
Sherriffs Office, 43 12 3
Chamberlains Office, 55 14 0
Eulom Rent, 20 8 0
Farm of *Flint*, 33 19 4
Farm of *Carouse*, 7 2 4
Castle of *Ruthland*, 5 12 10
Rent and Profits of *Mostyn*, 7 0 0
Rent of *Colshill*, 2 14 10
Town of *Ruthland*, 44 17 6
Lands of *Englefield*, 23 0 10
Voynal profits, 5 9 0
Office of Escheator of *Flint*, 6 11 9
Mines of Coal and Wood in *Mostyn* 0 10 0
Office of Sherriff in Rents and Casualties, 120 0 0
Mines and profits of Fairs of *Northop*, 3 9 2

Summ total 699 7 2 4

But since this time Places have been sold, Castles ruined, and Offices laid aside, so that the Revenue is much shorter.

A Viscount,

It was a Name first substituted to Earls, but getting themselves in Power, got also to have the Title Honorary, and Hereditary, being between an Earl and a Baron, it is the same word in Latine (*Vicecomes*) which signifieth our Sherriff, and begun not with us till about the 18 *H.* 6. who then created *John* Lord *Beaumont*, **Viscount** *Beaumont*, by Letters Patent, though Sir *John Ferne* tells us of it in the time of *Henry* the First, and King *Stephen*.

To this degree is allowed a **Surcoat** and **Girdle**, a **Mantle**, a **Hood**, and a **Circulet** set only with Pearls, having neither flowers or points, as is to be seen in *chap.* 1. *numb.* 9. and is created with the same Ceremonies as the **Earl** and **Marquess** aforesaid are: Yet note, that the **Circulet** or **Chaplet** set with Pearl, hath a **Cap of State**, turned up with a White Furr, and a Button and Tassel of Gold, as Earls caps, and they have no Ermine on their Mantles, but three doublings of Miniver, or plain White Furr, the Baron having but two on the cape of his Mantle.

The

The creation of a **Viscount**, is answerable to that of a **Baron**, only the Viscount is conducted into the Kings Presence, between an **Earl** and a **Baron**, (if a Viscount be wanting) whereas the Baron is brought in between two Barons. And the Viscount is stiled, *The Right Honourable Lord*, or *The Right Noble and Potent Lord*, or *grave Seignior*, &c.

V. He beareth Argent, a **Baron in his Parliament Robes**, bare headed, holding a Charter in his right hand, all proper.

A Baron.

This word was used by the *Danes*, and was a Title of great Honour, being such as had not only Castles, and Towns, and a great part of Countreys in their Jurisdiction; but having under them *Valvasores majores & minores, Milites & libere tenente*, as Sir *Henry Spelman* in his Glossary saith, which should signifie an Honour of Command in the Common Wealth.

☞ It hath been a common Opinion, that antiently every Duke had under him Ten Earls or Earldoms, and every Earl had Ten Baronies, and every Baron had Ten Knights Fees, but that is uncertain.

A **Baron** hath not *Potestatem Principis*, yet he is numbred among Noble Personages, yet some Barons have such power over their **Vassals**, that if they conspire against them, that Offence is called Treason; in which respect the Title of Baron is so much the more honorable. But if he have *Jura Regalia*, then he is reputed equal to an Earl, notwithstanding the Earldom and Barony do differ in Dignity.

The greatest Estates in *England*, are generally called by the names of **Barons, Lords Spiritual** and **Temporal**; But of Baron indeed, which have the Title of **Barons**, there are several sorts; as Barons by name, yet not Noble, and Barons by name Honorable.

The **Barons in Name** not Noble, are the Barons of the Cinque Ports, Barons of the Exchequer, and the Barons of *London*; whom *Bractor* mentions in these words, *Sicut Barones London, coram me testantur:* Also the ancient Barons created by the Earls Palatines, though they have the Name and Cignity, yet they are not called Honorable.

The **Barons Honorable** are of three kinds, by Tenure, by Creation, by Writ. **Barons by Tenure**, are Bishops chiefly, who are called **Lords** or **Barons Spiritual**; and are ever reputed Honourable; not in respect of Noblenes of Blood, but for their Function and Office: They are Peers and Barons of the Realm; and were ever first in nomination (as *Lords Spiritual and Temporal*) and take place on the Princes Right hand in Parliament; they are stiled *Right Honorable Lords*, and *Reverend Fathers in God*; they have been capable of Temporal Dignities; and some of them be accounted Counts, or Earls Palatine in their proper Jurisdiction, as the Bishop of *Durham*.

There are also another kind of **Barons by Tenure**, and they are by Tenure Temporal, which are such as hold their Honour, Castle or Mannor as the head of their Barony *(per Baroniam)* which is **grand Serjancy**, by which Tenure they are not to appear in Parliament, except they be summoned to it; for he is no Lord of the Parliament, till he be called by Writ to the Parliament, as saith Mr. *Bracton, lib.* 5. *fol.* 351. 357. *Coke part* 2. *pag.* 5.

These **Barons by Temporal Tenure**, because of their numerousnes in the Conquest, and after, were distinguished into *Majores & Minores*, and summoned accordingly to Parliament, the *Majores*, by immediate Writ from the King, and these were termed **Barons by Tenure**, the *Minores* were summoned from the High Sherriff at the Kings Command, and these were termed **Tenants in Chief**, which were after quite excluded the Parliament in the Reign of *H.* 3. by a Law then made, that none of the Barons should assemble in Parliament, but such as were summoned by special Writ from the King, as saith Mr. *Camden, fol.* 122. *Selden, fol.* 712.

Barons by Writ, are such (as is aforesaid) as were by their proper Names and Surnames, as A. B. Chevalier, although he be no Knight; now this Dignity of Barons by Writ, was in the pleasure of the King, in that he did summon the Father, and omitted it in the Son, if he was not answerable to the Parent in Understanding; and that sometime **Private Gentlemen**, or **Knights**, and often, many **Secular Priests, Priors, Abbots, Deans**, and **Deacons**, were by the King called by Writ to Parliament; by reason whereof it was the Opinion of some, that this Title and Dignity was only Temporary, *pro termino Parliamenti*, but that cannot be, for the Ceremony of his Admittance signifies more than a Titular or Temporary Honour, which is this; He is first brought by *Garter* King of Arms in his Soveraigns Coat to the **Lord Chancellor**, between two of the youngest Barons, who bears the Robe of a Baron; there he shews his Prescript, which the Chancellor readeth, and then congratulates him as a Baron, and invests him with those Robes, and sends him to take his place, then the Writ is delivered to the Clerk of the Parliament, and the King of Arms then shews him to the Barons, and placeth him in the House.

Barons by Creation, or by **Patent**, hath a Dignity Hereditary established upon a person, which had its first beginning in the time of *Richard* the second, who created *John de Beauchamp* Steward of the Houshold, Baron of *Kiderminster*, to him and the Heirs Male of his Body for ever, which Hereditary Title and Dignity, is now in our times more used than those by Writ. These **Barons** are as **Lords of the Parliament**, reckoned amongst the Peers of the Realm, and priviledged among them in all these things.

First, In all Trials of Criminal Causes, he is not Tryed by a Jury, but by a Bench of Peers.

If he be Indicted for Treason, and stand Mute, he shall be Convicted, but not Prest; but if it be for Felony that he stands Indicted, his Silence shall not Convict him.

Upon any Trial of Peers, the Lords that are to give Verdict, are not like a Jury, put upon their Oaths, but do it upon their Honor.

A Peer of the Realm, is not to be Impannelled in any Jury, but what concerns the Kings Enquiry.

They are not to be Arrested by any Warrant of Justice of Peace, either for the Peace, or Good Behaviour.

They are not to be put upon their Oaths upon any appearance they shall make in any Court; but his Honour to be esteemed as Binding.

And whereas all Burgesses of the House of Commons are to take the Oath of Allegiance and Supremacy; the Barons of the Upper House of Parliament are not.

These, with many other Priviledges, the Barons do enjoy; but it is to be noted, that these are only meant to such as are Lords of the Parliament, not to the Sons of Dukes, Marquesses or Earls, during the life of their Father; nor to any Baron of another Kingdom, that liveth in this; nay, though he be under the same Allegiance, who are not tryable out of their own Kingdom, unless they enjoy some Honour or Seigniory, Mannor or Castle in this, in which respect they are according to their condition. Of these matters, see *Stamfords Pleas del Coronæ, lib.* 3. *cap.* 1. *Diar. fol.* 205. 300. 315. *Fitz Natura brreve, fol.* 165. *Lambert Justic. lib.* 2. *chap.* 1. *fol.* 17.

Though this Dignity at first was not allowed the Princely distinction of a **Coronet**, yet in after times it was allowed them to have a **Circle** of Gold round their **Caps of Dignity**, to which **Circle**, (at the Coronation of King *Charles* the Second) was added the adornment of six Pearl, and no more; so that there is this difference only between a Barons and Viscounts Coronet, the first having only six Pearls, the latter as many Pearls close together, as the circle will contain; their Caps Furred, Buttons and Tassels both alike.

The Creation of a Baron.

The form of the creation of a Baron, is in this manner; The King sitting in State in the Presence Chamber; first the Heralds by two and two proceed; then comes *Garter*, principal King of Arms, bearing in his hand the **Patent** of creation, next followeth a Baron bearing the **Robes**, and then the Person to be created between two other Barons; being entred the Presence Chamber, they make their Obeisance to the King three times; *Garter* then delivers the Patent to the Lord *Chamberlain of the Houshold*, and he to the King, and the King to one of his Secretaries of State, who reads it, and at the word **Investimus**, the King puts on him the Barons **Robe**, and at the word **Coronamus**, puts on him the Barons **Cap** and **Crown**.

As soon as the Patent is read, it is delivered to the King, who gives it to him that is created, then he returning Thanks for his great Honour, withdraws in the same order and manner as they came in, the Trumpets sounding, and so he goes to Dinner; where after the second Service is gone up, *Garter* with the rest of the Heralds coming near the Table, first Proclaiming *Largess* with a loud Voice, he declareth the Kings Stile in *Latin*, *French* and *English*; and then standing somewhat farther off, pronounceth *Largess* again, then declares the Stile of him that is new created *in hæc Verba*; The Right Noble Lord *A. B.* Baron *D*, &c. And so making Reverence to him, aftea 2 largess more, they retire and depart to their several places and abodes.

VI. He beareth Argent, a **Knight of the Garter**, all in his **Creation Robes**, proper. This is an Order of Knighthood established here in *England*, by King *Edward* the Third, *Anno* 1350; the Patron of which Order is St. *George*, unto whom it was first Dedicated, therefore called the Order of St. *George*.

The Sovereign is the King of *England*, the number of Knights doth not exceed 26; which when any of them Die, the number is made up; when they are out of their Robes, they are generally known by the Garter about their left Legg, and the *George* on Horseback hanging on their Breast in a Chain or Blew Riband; and on their outward Garment, as Cloak of whatsoever colour it is, hath a Silver Star Embrauthered on the left shoulder.

Creation of a Knight of the Garter.

First, for the Habit of these Knights, they have an **under Garment**, or **Gown** of Crimson Velvet, of some called a **Kirtle**; over which is worn a **Mantle** of Blew Velvet, **Lined** with White Sarsnet; on the left Shoulder thereof is Imbrauthered in a **Garter**, an Escochion of St. *George*, viz. Argent a Cross Gules; and over his right Shoulder hangs his **Hood** of Crimson Velvet **Lined** with White, the Cordons of the Mantle, Buttons and Tassels, are Purple Silk and Gold.

Above all which, about his Neck on his Shoulders, is a **Collar of his Order**, being of pure Gold, made of **Garters** and **Knots**, and enamelled with Roses, white in red; with the **Image of St. George** richly garnished with precious Stones pendant thereat.

About his left Leg, he weareth Buckled a **Garter** enriched with Gold, Pearl and Stones, whereupon these *French* Words are Imbrauthered HONI SOIT QUI MAL Y PENSE, which may be thus Englished, *Shame to him that Evil thinketh.*

They also wore **Caps and Feathers**, the Caps being of Black Velvet, made after the fashion of **Bonnets**, but the Crown part raised high, after the manner of a flat Crowned Hat, but laid in plaits or crisps; and the Feathers of three falls, all pure white.

☞ Here note also, that what Clergy are of this Order, they are to wear their **Hoods** over their left shoulder, according to old use and custom; but all the Lords of the Honourable Order, do wear their **Hoods** on the right shoulder, that the Cross being on the left shoulder, may better appear.

Them of this Order are stiled, the **Sovereign**, and **Companions of the Order of St. George**, or the **Garter**; of whom if any be dead, at a time when the Sovereign doth think fit, there is an Assembly called (which is termed a **Chapter**, at which **Chapter** they proceed to the Election of a new Knight, in room of him deceased; which generally is the 23 of *April*, being St. *Georges* day. The party elected, is thus first made choice of;

d; Nine are first nominated by the Soveraign, his Deputy, and six of the said Companions, *viz.* 3 Dukes, 3 Marquesses, Earls, or great Estates, 3 Barons or Bannerets, 3 Batchelor Knights; from which nomination the King doth choose one whom he thinks most Honourable; the partie thus Elected, is by two of the Companions of the Order led from the door of the **Chapter**, into the **Stall** in the Chappel, where being, he taketh an Oath as follows.

YOU being chosen to be one of the Companions of the most Honourable Order of the Garter, shall Promise, and by these Holy Evangelists by you manifestly touched, Swear Truly and Faithfully to observe and keep all the Statutes of the said Order, and every Article in the same contained, for so much as to you belongeth and appertaineth: And further, That you shall help to defend and maintain, so much as in you lieth, the Right and Liberties of the **Colledge** *of our Blessed Lady, and St.* George *the Martyr, wherein the Honourable Order of the* **Garter** *is founded.*

The Oath administred, the **Sovereign**, or his **Chancellor** giveth him the **Garter**, saying unto him these Words; *To the Laud and Honour of Almighty God, his Immaculate Mother, and St.* George *the Holy Martyr, tie or gird your Leg with this* **Noble Garter**, *wearing it to the increase of your Honour, and in token and remembrance of this most Noble Order, being admonished and encouraged thereby in all Just Battels and Wars, which you take in hand, you both Strongly Fight, Valiantly Stand, and Honourably to have the Victory.*

Then delivering to him the **Robe**, saith, *Take this Robe to the increase of your Honour, and in Token or Sign of the most Noble Order you have received, wherewith you being defended, may be bold, not only strongly to Fight, but also to offer your self, to shed your Blood for Christs Faith; the Liberties of the Church, and the just and necessary Defence of them that be Oppressed and Needy.*

Then giving him the **Mantle**, saith, *Take the Mantle of Heavenly colour, in token of the most Honourable Order you have received, and to the increase of your Honour, signed and marked as you may see, with an Escochion of the* **Lords Cross**, *to the intent, that you being always defended by the Virtue and Strength thereof, may pass through your Enemies, and them also Overcome and Vanquish; so that at the last, for your worthy and approved Acts, you may after this Temporal Chivalry, come to the Eternal Triumphant Joys in Heaven.*

Then putting the **Collar** about his Shoulders, saith, *To the Increase of your Honour, and in token of the most Honourable Order you have received, take this Collar about your Neck, with the Image of the Holy Martyr and Christs Knight,* St. George, *by whose Aid you being defended, may so pass through the Prosperities and Adversities of this World, that having here the Victory as well of your Ghostly as Bodily Enemies, you may not only receive the Glory and Renown of Temporal Chivalry, but also at the last, the endless and everlasting Reward of Victory.*

*

Orders and Statutes of the Knights of the Garter; Reformed by H. 8. Anno 1522.

That the King, his Heirs and Successors, Kings of *England*, shall be the **Sovereign** of the said **Order of St. George**, called the **Garter**; and that he shall be the Reformer and Interpreter of all Obscurities or Doubts contained in the Statutes of the said Order.

That none shall be Elected or chosen to be a **Fellow**, or **Companion**, or **Co-Brother**, and contrere Knight, except he be a Gentleman of Blood, a Knight, and without reproach, *viz.* not an Heretick, a Traytor, or a Coward in Fight.

That all the **Knights of the Order**, in what place soever they be, shall on St. *Georges* Vigil, or Even, and St. *Georges* day, wear all the **Robes of his Order.**

That every Knight that stayeth after the Soveraign, and giveth not his due attendance at the Chapter, and come too late to Mass, or Evening Service, shall for his **Pennance** kneel before his Stall in the place of the Choristers; and if he attend not on St. *Georges* day having no License to be absent, shall for his **Pennance** not come into his Stall the next Feast before his Soveraign, nor to his Stall in the Colledge of *Windsor*, but shall pay ten pounds to be bestowed to the use of the Ornaments of the said Colledge.

That the Soveraign may at his pleasure appoint the **Feast of St. George** to be kept any where in *England* as well as at *Windsor*.

That the Soveraign may appoint his **Deputy** at the Feast at *Windsor*, if he be not there himself.

That every Knight of the Order shall have his **Banner, Sword, Helmet** and **Crest** set over his Stall, there to remain during his life.

That if any Knight be seen to be without his **Garter**, if any of the **Five Officers** challenge him, he shall pay a Mark of Money except he be Booted to Ride, then a Blew Riband shall serve to be under the Boot, in signification of the **Garter.**

That in the going Procession, the **Knights of the Order**, shall go two and two before the Soveraign, as they are in their Stalls; but at any Offering the Soveraign shall go first, and the Knights follow, and the Officers after.

That at Dinner or Supper, they shall sit after their **Stall**, or **Creations**, not according to their States, except Children of Kings, Princes, or Dukes, that be Strangers.

That all Knights of the Order, shall leave their **Mantles** within the said Colledge, for any sudden chance of a **Chapter** that may be called.

That upon the Death of any of the **Knights of the Order**, all the **Companions** remaining, shall give to Works of Charity these Sums following. The Sovereign 8. 6. 8. A King of another Realm 6. 13. 4. The Prince 6. 1. 8. A Duke 5. 0. 0. A Marquess 3. 15 0

An

An Earl 2. 10. 0. A Viscount 2. 1. 8. A Baron 1. 13. 4. A Batchelor Knight 0. 16. 8. which the Dean and Register is to give an account how it is disbursed.

That every **Knight** at his first entrance shall give after their Estate for the maintenance of the **Channons**, and the **Poor Knights**, and for Alms Deeds as follows; the Soveraign 40 Mark. A Stranger King 20. 0. 0. The Prince 20 Mark. A Duke 10. 0. 0. A Marquess 8. 6. 8. An Earl 10 Mark. A Viscount 5. 16. 8. A Baron and Banneret 5. 0. 0. A Batchelor Knight 5 Mark; and not to have their **Banner**, **Sword**, or **Helmet** and **Crest**, set over their Stall till the same be paid, and the Sovereign is bound to pay for every Stranger.

That every **Knight** of the Order shall have **Copies** of the **Statutes** first collected and perused by the Register or King of Arms, which after his Death shall be re-delivered by his Heirs or Executors within 3 Months.

That none of the said **Order** shall go out of the Realm without the Kings License; and if they be sent any where, they are for the Order sake to be preferred before all others.

That two of this Order shall not Fight one against the other in any Foreign Wars, but he that was last entertained on the contrary party, shall excuse himself, and leave the Quarrel.

That all the Knights of the Order, shall wear on Solemn days, the **Collar**, with the **George hanging at it**, (as aforesaid) which shall not exceed 30 Ounces of *Troy* weight; but on the other days they shall wear a small **Chain of Gold**, or a **Blew Lace**, or **Riband**, with the **Image of St. George** killing of the Dragon hanging thereat.

That the same Admission and Ceremonies shall be used at the Stallation of the said **Noble Order**, to every Knight and Subject of the Realm, as are given to Foreign Kings, Princes and Nobles.

That a **Chapter**, according to the Statutes of the Order cannot be held without the number of six, till 1642, at which time four were ordered to be sufficient to hold a Chapter upon any immergent occasions.

The Five Officers belonging to the Chapter *of the Knights of the* Garter, *and their Signs or Tokens of Honour.*

The **Prelate of the Garter**, which is ever the Bishop of *Winchester*, he weareth the Order of St. *George* in a Collar of SS. about his Neck, as the other Knights do; and hath the Garter set about the Arms of his Sea, and his own, as they are Impaled.

The **Chancellor** of the Order of the **Garter**, doth wear about his Neck in a Gold Chain, the cognizance of a Rose of Gold, inclosed and compassed with the **Garter of the Order**. It is his Office to keep the Seal of the Order, with which all Commissions and Letters of License are Sealed, he is not to be 20 Mile from the King; but either deliver it to him, or to one he shall appoint.

The **Register**, or the Writer of the Atchievements of the Chapter of the Knights of the Garter, and who are made the Companions thereof, and when.

The **King at Arms**, called **Garter**, King of Arms for the said Order, doth wear in sign of the said Order, the Arms of the Soveraign within a Garter, and an Imperial Crown on the same, hung in a Gold Chain, or a Blew Riband about his neck.

The **Usher of Arms**, called the **Black Rod**, or **Usher of the Black Rod** for the Order of the Garter, as a sign of the said Order, shall wear about his Neck hanging at a Gold Chain or Riband, a **Knot** within a **Garter**, such a Knot of True Love, as is joined to the Roses in the great Collar of the most Honorable Order.

Besides the aforesaid, there belongs to this Noble Order for the Service of the Church, and Prayers for them of the Order.

A **Dean**, or Dean of *Windsor*.

A **Warden** of the Colledge.

12 **Channons Secular**, or Priests, in Orders of the Church.

8 **Petty Channons**.

13 **Vicars**, all Priests in Orders.

13 **Clerks**.

13 **Choristers**, or Singing Boys.

13 **Poor Knights**, called the **Knights of Windsor**, who having not wherewith to Live, have places provided for them in the Castle, and are maintained on the Kings Gifts, having every one of them a **Gown** and **Mantle of Scarlet**, with the Arms of **St. George** without a Garter, whose Office it is to Pray for the Prosperity of the Soveraign, and his Successors, and all the other Knights of the said Noble Order.

See Camdens Brittannia,
Segars Honor Military and Civil, fol. 65.
Selders Titles of Honour, Part 2. fol. 792.

Of the rest of the Ceremonies, Installments, Right, Ordinances, Statutes, Feasts at the day of *St. George*, with other things thereunto belonging; if any desire further knowledge, let them peruse the Book intituled *The Institutions, Laws and Ceremonies of the most Noble Order of the Garter; set forth by* Elias Ashmole, Esq; *Printed at* London 1672.

VII. He beareth Argent, a **Knight of the Bath**, in his **Creation Robes**, all proper. This hath been an Ancient Order of Knighthood in *England*, and generally made at the Kings Coronation.

The Creation, and Habit of a Knight of the Bath.

First, for the **Robes**, they have for their Watch, a Russet **Gown** and **Hood**, after the manner of an **Hermite**.

Secondly, For their **Creation Robes**, a Cap, or Coif

Coif of - - - a **Kirtle** of red Tartarine, with a **White Leather Girdle**, a **Mantle** of Crimson Silk lined with **White Silk**, tied with a long **Lace** of White Silk, with a pair of **White Gloves** at the end of the Lace. A **Sword** and **Belt**, besides **Spurs**, **Shield**, and **Helmet**.

Thirdly, After all is finished, he is to wear a **Long Robe** of Blew, with streight sleeves after the manner of a Priests, reaching almost to his Feet.

But in these days, a **Knight of the Bath** is only known by his wearing of a **red Riband** about his neck, with a **Medal** hanging at it, and his **Horse trapping** adorned with a Cross Patee on his Forehead and Breast.

When first he comes to be made a **Knight**, he is honourably received by the Officers of the Court, who conduct him to his Lodging (if he come before Dinner, he shall carry up one Dish of the first course, to the Kings Table) then be seen no more that day.

In the Evening, the **Barber** Trimmeth him, and prepareth him for the Bath, which is covered with Blankets to keep him from the cold; after which the **Esquires** and **Governours**, who have the charge of him, inform the King, that the person to be Knighted is fitted for the **Bath**, to whom he sends Minstrels, his Chamberlain, and several grave Knights, to inform him touching the **Order** and **Feats of Chivalry**, who Play, Sing and Sport to the Chamber door.

At the hearing of the Musick, he is undrest and put naked into the Bath; the grave Knights entring the Chamber, where saluting each other, to consider who shall instruct him in the order of the Bath, at length one kneeling down before it, saith with a soft voice, *Sir, Be this Bath of great Honour to you*; then shall he instruct him in the **Feats of the Order**, putting part of the Water on his Shoulders, and then takes his leave; and so the rest of the Knights shall wash him one after another, till all have done.

Then he is taken out of the Bath, and put in a **Bed** without Curtains till he be dry; then he is taken out of **Bed**, and over his **inner Garments** is put a **Robe** of Russet, to his feet, with a **Hood** like an **Hermits**, and **long Sleeves** to his hands; in this habit he shall be conducted to the Chappel by the grave Knights, with Minstrels and Trumpets before them.

The grave Knights and Esquires taking their leaves, he is to Watch and Pray in the Chappel all Night, Day breaking, the Priest and Chandler and Watch, having said and heard Mattins, and Mass or Morning Service; the Governour holding a Candle to the Reading of the Gospel, at which time the person to be Knighted shall hold it, and being ended, it shall be set down to Burn before him, till Prayers be ended.

At the Elevation of the Host, his Hood shall be taken from him, and a Taper put into his hand, which he shall Offer to the Altar with a Penny or more; that is, The Taper to the Honour of God, and the Penny to the Honour of him as shall make him a Knight.

This being performed, he is conducted to his Bed-Chamber, where he takes his rest till it be full day; at which time the Governour goes to the King and says, Sir, When doth it please you that our Master shall rise? whereupon the King shall command the Minstrels and grave Knights to go and dress him, and bring him before him into the Hall.

All things being in a readiness, the Knights shall enter the Chamber and say, *Good Morrow Sir, It is time to Rise, and make your self ready*; thereupon one gives him a **Shirt**, another his **Breeches**, the third his **Doublet**; another puts on him a **Kirtle** of red Silk or Tartarine; two others put on his **nether Stockings** with **Soles** of **Leather** sowed to them; another **Laceth his Sleeves**; another girdeth him with a **white Leather** without any Buckle thereon; another **Combs** his head and puts on his **Coif**; another his **Mantle** of Silk, putting it over his Kirtle) tying it with a Lace of White Silk, with a pair of White Gloves at the end of the Lace; all things thus done, the **Minstrels** going before, the **Heralds** and **grave Knights** orderly following; a young **Esquire** Riding after, Bare headed, carrying his **Sword** with the **Pomell** upward, and his **Spurs** at it, with a **White Leather Scabbard**, and **Girdle** without **Buckles**. Then follows the Esquire that is to be Knighted, on a Horse with **Black Bridle**, **Saddle**, **Brest Plate**, &c. with a **Gilt Cross** on his Forehead and Breast.

Thus Riding to the great Hall, he alighteth, and being conducted before the King; the King gives his **Spurs** to a Noble person there, and bids him put it on the Esquires Heel; that done he commands another to put the other **Spur** on the other Heel, who performing the same, makes a Cross on his Knee and Kisseth it, as the other did before: Then the King taketh the Sword and girdeth it about him, the Esquire holding up his Arms with his Gloves together in his hands over his Head; then the King puts his own Arms about the Esquires neck, and Kisseth him, saying, **Be Thou a Good Knight.**

Then the new Knight is conducted to the Chappel, where laying his Hand on the Altar, promiseth to Maintain the Right of the Church; then ungirding his Sword, Offers it there, with great Devotion, then having taken a draught of Wine, he departeth.

At the Chappel Door, the Kings Cook with his Axe in his hand, meets him, and saith, *I the Kings Master Cook am come to receive your* **Spurs** *for my Fee, and if you do any thing contrary to the Order of Knight-hood, I shall hack your Spurs from your heels.*

Then he is conducted to the Hall, and set at the higher side end of the Table, where he must neither Eat nor Drink, nor look about him, till the King be risen from the Table; then shall the Knight be conducted to his Chamber with Minstrels and **Musick**, where the Knights shall take their leaves of him.

Then is the **new Knight** disrobed, and clothed with a Blew Robe after the fashion of a **Priest**, with a Lace of white Silk hanging on his left shoulder, which he shall wear till he hath gained some Honour and Renown by Feats of Arms, *&c.*

He that desires a fuller account, let him peruse the
History of Warwick-shire, fol. 532. &c.
Honours Military and Civil, fol. 69, 70.
Bish, *his Notes upon* Upton.

Fees

Fees at a Knight of the Baths Creation.

The **Barber** hath the **Bath**, with whatsoever pertains thereunto, according to the custom of the Court.

The **Chandler**, hath for his Fee, all the **Garments**, with the whole array and necessaries wherewith he came Apparelled and Clothed on the day that he came to Court to receive Orders; also the **Bed** wherein he first lay after his **Bathing**, together with the **Singleton**, and other **Necessaries**. In consideration whereof he finds on his proper cost, the **Knights Coif**, the **Gloves**, the **Lace**, and the **Girdle**.

The **Marshal** of the Hall, when the Knight is lighted from his **Horse**, taketh him as his Fee, or else hath in Money five Pounds.

The **Master Cook** hath his **Spurs**, or a Fee for them.

The **Kings at Arms**, have for their Fees all the New **Robes** and **Mantle**, in which he received his Knighthood, with a Mark of Silver, but if he be a **Baron**, it is double to that; if an **Earl**, or of a superior rank double thereunto.

The **Watch** in the Chappel hath the **Russet Gown** and **Cap**, or else a Noble in Money.

He must provide 18 or 20 Ells of White Linnen Cloth to cover his Bath or Bawyne, the price 5 *d.* or 6 *d.* the yard; also he must have a Carpet or Mantle for the said Bawine, price 13 s. Some are accustomed to have five or six yards of red Say for the same use, which is the Fee for the **Serjeant of the Ewry**, with all that toucheth the Bawyne.

The Fee for the **Esquires of Honour**, 4 pounds, or according to pleasure; and rewards for the Officers of the Houshold, the Knights make a common Purse.

A Knight Bannerett.

Other **Orders of Knighthood** there are in *England*, but they wear no **Garments**, **Badge**, or **Sign**, to distinguish them from other Gentlemen, so that they are not known to Strangers; but we know them, because every one having such dignity, is stiled, or called Sir *Thomas*, Sir *John*, Sir *William*, Sir *Henry*, &c. But first of **Knights Bannerets.**

A **Knight**, that is to receive this Honour, shall be led between two other Knights, before the **King** or **General**, bearing his **Penon of Arms** in his own hands, and in the presence of all the Captains, the **Herald** shall say, *This* **Gentleman** *hath shewed himself Valiant in the Field, and therefore deserves to be advanced to the degree of a* **Knight Banneret**; *being worthy henceforth to bear a* **Banner** *in the War.*

Then the King, or General, causeth the point of his **Penon** to be cut off; then the new made Knight returns to his Tent (the Trumpets sounding before him) being conducted there between two Heralds.

A Bannerett thus made, may bear his Banner displaid with his coat of Arms thereon, as other degrees above him, and that in the setting forth of his **Atchievements** with **Mantle**, **Helmet** and **Crest**, he may, and anciently hath had the same **Supported**, as the Baron or Viscount hath.

This Order was of so great estimation, that diverse Knights Batchelors and Esquires served under them; and was a Title, as it seems in many ancient Writs, and written Monuments, hath been mis-writ *Baronetis* for *Bannerettis*; as in the Patent of Sir *Ralph Fane*, a Knight Bannerett under King *Edward* the Sixt, where he is called *Baronettus* for *Bannerettus*. And in the South Chappel of *Malpas* Church about the top of the Screen, cut in Wood, in *Saxon* Characters is this, ☞ **Pray God people for the prosperous estate of Sir Rondulph Brereton, Knight Baronet, of this Work Edificatour**, &c. which we may well suppose to be Banneret; being long before the time of King *James* the First; it being dated 1522, which was 14 *H.* 8.

Now although a Knight Baronett be an Honour given by Patent; yet it was by King *James*, in the tenth Year of his Reign, Decreed and Established, that all such Bannerets as shall be made by the King, his Heirs and Successors, under the Standard displaid in an Army Royal, in open War; the King personally present, such Bannerets shall for the term of their Lives, take place and precedency, as well before all other Bannerets, as younger Sons of Viscounts and Barons, and also before all Baronetts, but not otherwise.

A Knight Baronett.

This was a Title erected by King *James*, in the ninth year of his Reign, they are an Hereditary Dignity given by Patent, which are all of one form, the Proem or Argument at first, being for the Propagation of a Plantation of *Ulster* in *Ireland*, to which the aid of these Knights was required; the aid was to maintain 30 Soldiers in that Province for 3 years; their Title was to descend to the Heirs Males of their Body, and to take place before all **Knights Batchelors**, **Knights of the Bath**, and **Knights Bannerets** (the other Decree in the Knight Bannerett before specified, being afterwards made) and that to their Sir-name, Baronet should be added; and that the addition of **Sir**, should precede in all mentioning of his or their names, as the Title of **Lady** and **Madam** is to their Wives.

After this it was ordained in the Tenth year of his Reign, that they and their descendents, being of full Age should be **Knighted**, and that they should either in a **Canton** or an **Inescochion in Chief or Fesse**, bear the **Arms of Ulster** upon their own Coat Armour, which is Argent, a **Sinister hand couped**, Gules.

There is no other Ceremony at his Creation, but the delivery of his Patent, except he be **Dubbed a Knight.**

Officers Fees for the making of a Baronett.

In the Signet Office these Fees; for drawing the Bill, and discharging the Clerks pains, 3 *l.* For the Signett 3. 6. 8. To the Clerks 0. 10. 0. For the discharge 1. 6. 8. To the Clerks 0. 6. 8. For the Privy Seal 2. 6. 8. To the Clerks 0. 13. 4. For the discharge 1. 6. 8. To the Lord Privy Seal his Secretary 1. 0. 0. To the Lord Chamberlains Secretary 0. 5. 0. For Expedition. 0 11. 0.

In the **Tally Office,** For Poundage 18. 5. 0. For the Tally 1. 10. 0. For the Enrollment of the Privy Seal. 0. 13. 4 To the Clerk of the Master of the Tallies 0. 5. 0. To the other Master of the Tallies Clerk 0. 5. 0. To the Tally cutter 0. 3. 0.

In the **Office of Arms,** for Registring it 2. 0. 0.

Fees belonging to the **Great Seal.** For the Seal of the Clerk of the Hamper 2. 11. 8. For the Docket 0. 5. 0. For the Dividend and Enrollment. 2. 0. 0. To the Clerk of the Crown 3. 6. 8. For Vellom, and flourishing the Patent 1. 0. 0. To the Deputy Clerk of the Crown 2. 0. 0. To the Seal, if of Schake Wax 0. 15. 0. To the Gentlemen of the Lord Keepers Chamber 2. 0. 0. To the Officers of his House 1. 5. 0. To the Deputy Clerk of the Hamper 0. 5. 0. To the Gentlemen Usher of the Privy Chamber 2. 0. 0. To the Pages of the Bed Chamber 4. 0. 0. To the Gentlemen of the Buttery, Sellar and Robes 5. 12. 0.

The total Summ of all Fees, is 70. 10. 0.

A Knight Batchelor, or of the Spur.

This **Knight** is indifferently stiled, **Knight,** or **Miles,** and **Chivalier,** and sometimes **Miles Simplex,** to distinguish him from the other **Knight,** which is a **Bannerett.** It hath been a Soldier like title of great Antiquity, as *Selden* in his *Titles of Honour* testifieth, *part* 2. *fol.* 770. And for that cause they are called, having admittance to beautify their Horses with Caparisons of their Horses and their Armour with Gold) **Equites Aurati,** *Golden Knights*, or else from the Golden Spurs which they were created Knights withal, as you shall hear shortly.

The persons that gave this dignity in former times, are of two sorts especially; which we may call **Courtly Knighthood,** and **Sacred Knighthood.**

The first is performed by the **King,** or his **General,** or one commissionated by him; which was anciently performed by **Feasts, giving of Robes, Arms, Spurs;** and sometimes by **Horse and Armour**; but of late times there is a new Ceremony produced, by the Party kneeling before the King, who with a Stroak on the shoulder with a Naked Sword, saith *Sois Chevalier au Nom de Dieu,* **Rise up Knight in the Name of God;** though the putting on of the **Spur,** and the girding on of the **Sword** hath lately been observed as a Ceremony of **Knighting,** either by the King for the greater Honour, or else by some commissionated from him.

These **Knights** have their **Spurs and Swords** carried before them in their Funeral, the **Spurs** being hanged at the Staff of the **Standart,** if Knighted in the Field.

To the name of Knight was added the name of **Bachelor,** as it seems about the 33 *H.* 3. as *Math. Paris* informeth, and that such **Knights** were then known by a **Gold Ring** on their Thumb, a **Chain of Gold** about their Necks, and **Gilt Spurs** on their Heels; also we read of **Girdles,** and **Collars of Gold,** and **Swords** were delivered at making of Knights, with Garments of Scarlet, which things none were to wear but them of such degrees.

A **Knights** bearing a **Shield** and **Gauntletts,** sheweth him to be a Man at Arms; this creation is an Universal Honour, for a Knight is a Knight in all Kings Dominions; when as other degrees extend no farther than the Longitude and the Latitude of their own Countrey.

The second way of **Knighting,** is by **Sacred Ceremonies,** and it was a great use and custom in former times, by either **Bishops** or **Abbots,** so to receive the dignity of Knighthood, and this was done by a **solemn Confession** of Sin, a **Vigil** or **Watch** in the Church, then receiving of the **Sacrament** after that the person had first Offered his Sword upon the Altar, and redeemed it with a certain Summ, which the Bishop, or Abbot, or Priest girded about him, and so made him a **Knight**; using many Prayers, which they termed *Benedictiones Ensis,* Prayers of the Sword: But this (through the multitude of *Sir Knights* thus made) was at length forbidden, and appropriated only as the Priviledge of the Crown.

A **Clergy Man,** or any in the **Order of Priesthood,** is debarred the Honour of Knighthood of the Sword or Spurs, though anciently they have been allowed the same, but not without first laying aside their Spiritual Cures.

A Knight of the Green Cloth.

All such as have Studied Law, either Civil, or Common, Phisick, or any other Arts and Sciences, whereby they have become Famous and Serviceable to the Court, City, or State, and thereby have merited Honour, Worship or Dignity from the Sovereign, and Fountain of Honour; if it be the Kings Pleasure to Knight any such persons, seeing they are not Knighted as Soldiers, they are not therefore to use the Horsemans Title or Spurs; they are only termed simply *Miles & Milites,* **Knight,** or **Knights of the Carpet,** or **Knights** of the **Green Cloth**; to distinguish them from Knights that are Dubbed as Soldiers are in the Field; though in these our days, they are created or Dubbed with the like Ceremony as the others are, by the stroak of a Naked Sword upon their Shoulder, with the Words, *Rise up Sir T. A. Knight.*

Now, these Knights, of what degree or creation soever, according to their power, should excel in these accomplishments; they are to be **Faithful, Religious, Just** in Engagement, **Valiant** in Enterprises, **Obedient** to Superiours, **Expert** in Military affairs, **Watchful** and **Temperate, Charitable** to the Poor, Free from **Debauchery**, not a **Boaster**, ready to **Help** and **Defend Ladies**, especially the **Widows** and **Orphans**, and to be ever in a readiness with Horse and Arms, to attend the commands of his **Sovereign**, in all Wars both Civil and Foreign.

The degrading of a Knight.

The neglect of those Duties aforesaid, are in Knights Arrants, Crimes as great as to Fight against the Sovereign; and merits at the least a shameful degrading; and indeed, for these or any other notable Fact against **Loyalty and Honour**, the **Knight** was Apprehended, and caused to be Armed from Head to Foot, and on a high Scaffold in a Church, he was placed; and after the Priest had sung some Funeral Psalm, as though he had been dead; first they take off his Helmet, then by degrees his whole Armour, the Heralds crying, this is the Helmet of a Disloyal Miscreant, *&c.* and so with many other ignoble Ceremonies, he was by 12 Knights thrown down the Stage by a Rope, then was he brought before the Altar, and their laid groveling on the ground, where the Priest read over him a Psalm full of Curses.

This was the antient way of **Degrading**; the modern is not altogether so severe, of which we have many examples: He that **Dishonourably absents** from the **Kings Service**; and for other **Treasons**, hath all that he enjoys, seized on (except his Horse) because in all Countreys the Title of Knighthood relates to a Horse, and from serving on Horse-back; then hath he his Spurs cut off his Heels, and then is his Sword taken from him, and the Herald as a Traytor doth reverse his Coat of Arms.

A List or Catalogue of the several Orders of Knights Seculars.

A Knight, *Miles*, a **Carpet Knight.**

A Knight of the **Spur**, *Equus Auratus*, a Knight in the Field.

A Knight **Baronett.**

A Knight of the **Garter**, or Order of St. *George*, in *England.*

A Knight of the **Bath.**

A Knight **Bannerett.**

A Knight of St. **Andrew** of *Scotland*, or Order of the Thistle.

A Knight of the **Gennet** in *France.*

A Knight of the **Star** in *France.*

A Knight of St. **Stephen** of *Florence*, and in *Tuscany.*

A Knight of the **Porcupine** of *France* and *Orleans.*

A Knight of the **Cressant**, or Half Moon of *Anjou*, and *Sicily.*

A Knight of the Order of *St.* **Saviour** of *Arragon.*

A Knight of the **White Eagle**, in *Poland.*

A Knight of **Jesus Christ**, in *Portugal* and *Rome.*

A Knight of the **Birds**, in *Portugal.*

A Knight of St. **George**, in *Austria*, *Corinthia*, and *Genemey.*

A Knight of the **Lilly** of *Navarre.*

A Knight of St. **James** of the Sword in *Navarre.*

A Knight of the **Holy Bottle**, in *France.*

A Knight of the **Royal Crown**, in *France.*

A Knight of the **Broom Flower** in *France.*

A Knight of the **Order of the Ship** in *France.*

A Knight of St. **Michael**, in *France.*

A Knight of the Order of the **Holy Ghost**, in *France.*

A Knight of the Order of **Christian Charity.**

A Knight of St. **Lazarus**, and St. **Maurice**, in *Savoy.*

A Knight of our **Lady** and the **Thistle**, in *Bourbon.*

A Knight of the **Golden Shield**, in *Bourbon.*

A Knight of St. **Magdalen.**

A Knight of the **Hermine**, or **Ears of Corn**, in *Britaigne.*

A Knight of the **Band**, or **Red Scarf**, in *Castile* and *Lions.*

A Knight of the **Golden Fleece**, in *France* and *Burgundy.*

A Knight of the **Dove**, in *France*, and in *Castile.*

A Knight of **Our Ladyes Looking Glass**, in *Castile.*

A Knight of the **Dragon**, in *Hungaria.*

A Knight of the **Swan**, of *Cleveland.*

A Knight of the **Elephant**, in *Denmark.*

A Knight of the Order of **Cherubims**, or of **Jesus** in *Sweden.*

A Knight of the Order of the **Bear**, of St. *Gall*, in *Switzerland.*

A Knight of the **Annuntiation of the Virgin Mary** of *Savoy.*

A Knight of St. **Paul**, in *Rome.*

A Knight of St. **Anthony**, in *Rome.*

A Knight of the **Virgin Mary**, in *Italy.*

A Knight of *Mantua*, or of the **Blood of Jesus Christ.**

A Knight of the **Sword**, in *Cyprus* and *Lusignan.*

A Knight of the **Sepulcher** of *Jerusalem.*

A Knight of the **Temple**, in *Jerusalem.*

A Knight of St. **Lazarus**, in *Jerusalem.*

A Knight of St. **Katherine**, of *Mount Sinai.*

A Knight of **Mount Joy.**

A Knight of St. **John of Acres.**

A Knight of St. **Thomas**, St. **Gerion**, and St. **Blaze.**

A Knight of St. **Mark**, in *Venice.*

A Knight of St. **Mary de Mercede**, in *Arragon.*

A Knight of **Montesia**, in *Valentia.*

A Knight of the Order of **Christian Charity**, in *France.*

A Knight of St. **Julian**, or the **Pear Tree**, in *Leon.*

These

These Orders of Knights, whether instituted by the Emperours, Kings, Popes, or Princes, were all called *Chevaliers*, having permission (though they were under Religious Vows and Rules) to bear Arms, wear Swords, and Gilt Spurs; as well as the rest of Secular Knights, whose Habit and Badges of Honour, see fully described in *lib.* 4. *cap.* 10.

Thus have I in short given a touch of the several degrees in *England*, whosoever desires a larger Story of these things, let them peruse these Authors.

William Malmesbury de gestis Regnum.
Ingulphus Histor.
Segars Honour Military and Civil.
Dugdales Warwick-shire, fol. 531.
Seldens Titles of Honour.
Matthew of Westminster, in Anno 1306.
Glover Somerset de Nobilitate Civili, Anno 1414.
Carters Analysis of Honour.
Fernes Glory of Generosity.
Stows Annals, pag. 693. 694.
Mills Nobility.
Camdens Britannia, pag. 170.

VIII. He beareth Argent, an **Herald arrayed in his Soveraigns Coat of Arms**, proper, with a **Baskinado** in his right hand, Or; and his left upon his side, a **Cap of Dignity** on his head Azure, turned up of the first; **Breeches, Stockings and Shooes**, Sable; if it may be believed, these kind of persons called **Heralds**, are sometimes stiled **Dukes of Arms**; and so I find both *E. Chamberlain*, in his *Present State of England, pag.* 166. and *Carter in his Analysis of Armory*, speaking of **Heralds**, pag. 31. terms them **Dukes of Arms**, if so, then in great Solemnities, they ought to wear Crowns as well as the *Kings of Arms*; but of that I shall say no more.

This Figure set down in the Plate, is the representation of an **Herald**, that is the second degree of the Officers of Arms, *viz.* **Kings of Arms, Heralds of Arms, Pursevants of Arms**, which in regard of their Office and place, may be termed **Lords**, or **Barons of Arms**. If it had a Crown, such as Kings of Arms wear at great and pompious Solemnities, with a **Robe** under the **Heralds Coat**, it were then to be termed a **King of Arms**.

2 Angels clad in the Soveraigns Coat of Arms, holding two Banners of the same, are the Supporters of the *French* King, as *John Boissau*, in his Armorial sets it forth.

The Creation of the Kings of Arms.

I have in the First Chapter of the First Book, in brief said something of the **Name, Office, Fees**, &c. of **Heralds**, referring the Reader to other Authors which have spoken more largely on that subject; so that I shall in this place (which is only wanting there) give you the Ceremonies in short, of the manner of the Installment into those Offices.

When any is called to the Office of **Garter, principal King of Arms**, he is first by the **High Constable**, or **Earl Marshal** of *England*, commended to the King, by a Bill Signed with his Hand; which done, the King Signs the same, and so it passeth the Privy Seal, and Broad Seal; and that once obtained, he is to be Sworn and created by the King himself, or the Earl Marshal, in manner following.

First goeth the Pursevants, and then the Heralds in their Coats, carrying the several necessary Instruments, and things to be used; one the **Coat of Arms** wherewith the new King is to be invested; another the **Crown**; another the **Patent**; another a **Bole** of Water; another the **Book and Sword**; another the **Book** or **Bible**, whereon he receiveth his Oath; then followeth the King of Arms called **Garter**, led between a **King of Arms**, and a **Herald**, in their Coats of Arms; coming before the King, all make their several Obeisance; then he kneeleth down, with those two that conducted him; one of them holds the **Book** and **Sword** whereon he is Sworn, the other reads his Oath: Then his Patent is read, and at the words *Creamus & Investimus*, his Coat is put on; and at the words, *Nomen Imposumus Garter*, the **Water** is poured on his head, giving him that Name; and lastly, at the word *Coronavimus*, he hath the Crown put upon his Head; and then he is a perfect King of Arms.

Creation of Heralds and Pursevants.

The two other Kings of Arms, Stiled **Clarenceux**, and **Norroy**, are Created after the same manner, order, and ceremonies: the six **Heralds** being all of equal degree, only proceeding according to the seniority of their Creations, their Patents being all under the broad Seal of *England*, have the same ceremonies at their Creation, save they are not Crowned.

The **Pursevants** are all of the same manner, having their Patents under the broad Seal, and are Created as the **Heralds** are. Only *Leigh* saith that in the investing of them, the Coat of Arms is cast over thwart, the Manches or sleeves thereof to be on the Breast and Back, and so they are to wear the same as long, as they are Pursevants. But now there is no such thing observed both the Herald and Pursevant wearing them a like.

The **Chivaler of Arms**, are such saith *Leigh* and *Upton, pag.* 40. which have served and behaved themselves wisely and discreetly in an under office, as a Currot, or Foot messenger for the space of seven Years: at which time they were set on Horseback, and termed **Chivallers** or **Horsemen at Arms**, because they were then permitted to ride on their Soveraigns Messages.

Then were they clad in one coloured Garment, the Borders and Sleeves, garded of the colours of the Soveraign, bearing their **Bores** or **Badges** with the Kings Coat of Arms painted thereon, on the left Shoulder, and not elsewhere.

These are Created by the **Heralds of Arms** of the Province, first by ministring to the **Chivaller** an Oat'

the **Knight Chivaller** (for so he Stiles him) humbly kneeling upon his Knee, at which time he shall have no **Spurrs** on: then removes his **Badge** from his Breast, and placeth it upon his left Shoulder: setting him on Horseback to see if he can ride.

The **Currour at Arms**, or **Foot Messengers of Arms**, are such Foot Servants, as are imployed by the Heralds of Arms for the expedition of their business: whose Office is to pass and repass on foot, being clad in the **Princes colours** parted upright on the Back and Breast one side blew, and the other red: like as the **Serjeants at Law** do give their Liveries, in the time of their Feasts.

These are **Knights** in their Office, but not Nobles, and are called **Knights Caligates of Arms**, because they wear **Startuppes** (or half Hose turned down) to the middle of the Legs: and the Arms of their Soveraign painted on their **Boxes**, like **Badges**, are fixed to their **Backs**. It is not permited to them, to wear the Arms of their Lord, in any other sort.

There is also belonging to the Heralds Office, a **Register a Marshal**, and other Officers and Servants which are needless to mention. But amongst the rest, there are **Painters** called **Herald-Painters**, or **Arms Painters**: for every **King of Arms** hath power to commission, or depute in all Shires of his Province, one of that imploy, to officiate for him in such things as are appropiats to his Business.

IX. He beareth Argent, a **Major of a City in his Formalities**, with his **White Staff** in his right Hand all proper. Every City by their Charters or Priviledges, is a little Common-Wealth, governed by themselves, choosing their own Governor, (which is called a Mayor) out of 12 16 or 24 Aldermen. In some other Corporations, a Bailiff is chosen out of a certain number of Burgesses.

The Office of a Mayor of a Corporation.

The **Mayor** of a City is the **Kings Lieutenant**, and doth give place to none save the King and Prince, his Heir. He with the Recorder, Aldermen and common Council (as it were King, Lords, and Commons in Parliament) can make Laws, called By-Laws, for the Weal and good Government of the City. The Mayor is for his time (which is but for one Year) Justice of the Coram, Judge of the Court, a Determiners of Matters, and doth mitigate the Rigor of the Law.

The **Government of Boroughs** and other Towns corporate, is much after the same Manner. In some there is a **Mayor** and **Sheriffs**: In others a **Mayor** and two **Bailiffs**: In others a **Bailiff** and two **Serjeants**: and in other places two **Bailiffs**: which have equal power within their Limits to a Mayor and Sheriffs, and dureing their Office are Justics of the Peace, having the same power, as Justices of the Peace have in the Country.

The **Government of Villages**, is usually by the Lords of the said places who keep **Court-Leets**, and **Court-Barons** (because anciently such Lords were called **Barons**) that is Court of Freeholders to which they own suit and service, where they may be tried smaller matters happening within the Manner, as **Debts**, **Trespasses**, **Escheats** upon Felonies, **Wakes**, or other accidents, **Custody of Infants**, **Lunaticks**, power of **passing Estates**, admitting of **Tenants**, **Reliefs**, **Hariots**, &c. Under the Lord is a **Constable** or **Headborough**, or **Petty Constable**, chosen every Year, whose office is to keep the Peace, in case of quarrels, to search any house for Robbers, Murtherers, or other Malefactors, to raise hue and cry after such upon their flying, to seize on them, keep them in the Stocks, or other Prison, till they can bring them to a Justice of Peace, and so to carry them by their command to the common Prison.

The Officers of a Coporation with their Habits.

A **Mayor**, is a Person elected for the chief Governor of a civil Society or Body corporate, who is usually known by those Emblems of Magistracy carried before him: as Sword and Mace, &c. or by what he beareth himself, as a Virge, or white Rod, or Staff: and in most great Corporation, according to days, hath distinctions of Gowns, as a Morning or Walking Gown, which is a light loose Gown, made according to his own Fancie; a black Gown, a Murrey or Purple Gown, and a Scarlet Gown, all which are of one fashion, either Garded with Velvet, or lined with Furr, called **Foines**.

☞ **Sheriffs**, they are the *Posse Comitatis*, the conservers of the Peace, the Executioners of all Writs, and punisher of all offenders. They are in some places called **Bailiffs**: But in Cities and grand Corporations they wear **Gowns**, and **White Rods** in their Hands, like the Mayor.

A **Recorder** is the Mouth of the **Mayor**, and **Citizens**: and **Minister** of the Law for the distribution of Justice and Judgment. These are generally Men Learned in the Law, whose habit or fashion of **Gown** is after the manner of the figure set down, *numb.* 11.

An **Alderman**, and **Justice of the Peace**, is such an one, as hath born the Office of a Mayor of a City or Corporation, whose Gown is the like to that of the chief Magistrate, or Mayor.

An **Alderman** or a **Single Alderman**, is one that is called to that place but as yet hath not been Mayor, yet is capable of it, and in Election for it: His Gown is black, garded and faced with Velvet. But when the **Mayor** is in **Scarlet**, his **Gown is Purple**, faced with **Foines**.

A **Council**, in some places is called a **Livery Man**: is such a Person, as is of the House, in time of their meeting or Assemblies, for the Weal and behoof of the Corporation: with us they are called a **Forty Men**, because the common Council consists just of forty: out of which number all Superior Officers are chosen. Their Gowns have no Shoulders but open at that place, having the Sleeves hanging on the Back, garnished with tufted Buttons and Loops, and faced with Stuff or Silk, or Satinesco.

A **Treasurer**, is an office for the receiving of the Rents, and disbursing Money, for the concerns of the Corporation: which with us, is generally chosen out of such as are single Aldermen, or such as have been Sheriffs.

A **Leavelooker**, is an Office in *Chester*, but rare in any other City (as I could ever hear off) they are chosen out of the Forty: to gather and receive all customs due to the City, for goods brought there for sale, either by Sea or Land; which receits are disbursed for the City Affairs, but chiefly for the Repairs of the City Walls.

A **Murenger**, is one chosen out of the **Aldermen** and **Justice** of the Peace, whose Office aud care it is to look after the City Walls, to keep them in good repair, and if any breaches be, to built it up again: for which end, there is a **City Mason** to do the work, who besides his Wages daily hath an Yearly Sallery, and a **City Pavier** to keep the City Streets, Lanes and High-ways in good Repair, who hath also a City Sallery.

A **Crowner** or **Coroner**, whose Office is out of such as have been Sheriffs. They examine all Murtherers, *Felo de Se's*, accidental Deaths, *&c.* And accordingly bring in their Presentments.

A **Constable**, of which there are several in a Corporation; two or three in each division or ward, whose Office it is to preserve the Kings Peace, make hue and cry after Malefactors, search and fetch Offenders to the Seat of Justice, Imprison or bring to places of punishment such as deserve it. With an hundred other things whose Office it is to perform, but few know th power of their place.

A **Goaler**, is the keeper of the Prison, where all criminal Offender are secured, and Men for debt are Imprisoned.

A **Keeper** of the **House of Correction**, to keep the Poor on work, and to punish Stubborn and Rebellious Apprentices, Idle Rogues and Vagabonds: where they are bridled, stockt, and whipped.

A **Fraternity**, or **Society**, or **Brotherhood**, or **Company**: are such in a Corporation, that are of one and the same trade, or occupation, who being joyned together by oath and covenant, do follow such orders and rules, as are made, or to be made for the good order, rule, and support, of such and every of their occupations. These several Fraternities are generally governed by one or two Masters, and two Wardens, but most Companies with us by two Aldermen, and two Stewards, the later, being to receive and pay what concerns them.

A **Sword-Bearer**, is him that carrieth the Sword of State before the Mayor or his Deputy.

A **Mace-Bearer**, is him that carrieth the Mace of Authority before the said Mayor: both these Officers wear in the Execution of their Offices Silk Gowns, or Stuff Gowns trimed with Buttons and Loops, and faced with Silks, like to the Council or Freemans Gown.

A **Town Clerk**, who is the City Secretary, and Keeper of the Records of the Courts within the Corporation, Enters all Actions, and prepares causes to the pleadings, *&c.* We call such, the **Clerk of the Pentice.**

A **Officer**, or **City Attorney**, or **Mayors Officers**, are such as give Summons to Persons, and do Attach others, for their appearance in the City Courts in some places they are called **Catch-Poles**, or **Bailles.** But the Gentle name is **Serjeants at Mace.**

A **Sheriffs Officer**, doth (besides Summons and Arrest) serve all Writs of Execution, as Atachments, Judgments, Rebellions, *&c.*

A **Cryer**, is only in use in time of Court holding, to command silence, call Juries, swear them, and witnesses, with several other things belonging to his Office; he weareth a Gown, and carieth a Mace.

A **Porter**, his Office is to keep the Court, or Council-House Door, and the Mayors-House Door; he weareth a Gown of Cloth faced with black Furr, Fitchet or Coney Furr: and carrieth a Porters Staff.

A **Beadle**, or **Bang-Begger**; is to keep the City clear from poor strangers, and send such a packing to the places from whence they came, they have Coats gathered about the Waste, and a Badge of the Arms of of the Corporation on their left Arm.

A **Beadsman**, such as live in Hospitals, and have an allowance for their maintenance, being old and infirme: in some places called the **Poor Knights of Windsor**, or **Hospitallers**, and **Almesmen.** These with us go in Gowns, and go two and two before the Mayor on several Feastival Days in the Year.

A **Scavenger**, such as make the Streets clean, and carry away the Dirt.

X. He beareth Argent, a **Chief Justice** (or a **Judge**) in his **Robes** and **Square Cap**, holding a Charter in his right Hand all proper.

The **Chief Justice** is one set apart by the King for the executive power in all Temporal Affairs, under whose Commission he doth only act: for it is the **King Himself** who is the **Lord Chief Justice** of *England*: therefore all the Laws of *England* are called the **Kings Laws**, being made by Him, and without Him nothing can have the force of a Law, but what He will: so all the Courts of Judicature are called the **Kings Courts**, and all the Judges of those Courts, the **Kings Judges.**

The Highest Court in *England*, is the House of **Lords in Parliament**; being a Court of Judicature, consisting of **Lords Spiritual** and **Temporal**, and these assisted with the most Grave and Eminent **Lawyers** of *England*, both in Common and Civil Law.

To this Bar of High Court, may the House of Commons, as the **Grand Inquest** of *England*, Impeach the Highest Subject in the Nation, whether of the Clergy, or of the Laity: and Prosecute them till they come to Sentence, after which it lyeth in the Kings Breast whether to Punish or Pardon.

The next Court for the Execution of Laws, is the **Kings Bench** so called, because the King sometimes there set in Person on an High Bench, and his Judges on a low Bench at his Feet, to whom the Judicature belonged in the Kings absence. In this Court are handled all **Pleas of the Crown**, that is Matters between the King and the Subject, as **Treasons, Felonies, Breach of Peace, Oppressions, Mis-government, Loss of Life** or **Member** of any Subject, *&c.* It doth also examine and **Correct Errors** in *Facto*, and in *Jure*, of all the Judges in *England*, in their **Judgments**, and **Proceedings**; both in Pleas of the Crown, Pleas Real, and Personal, and Mix; except only in the Exchequer.

The

The Officers, and Habits of such as are Members of the Kings-Bench.

The **Lord Chief Justice**, the Judge of the Court; who ought to be a Serjeant of the degree of the Coife, that is a Serjeant at Law, who upon taking this High degree, is oblidged to wear a Lawn Coife under his Cap, for ever after.

The **Justices**, as Assistances, are three in number.

The **Clerk** of the Crown.

The **Prothonotary**, or Protonotary.

The **Marshal** or **Keeper** of the Kings - Bench Prison.

The **Custos Brevium**, two in number.

The **Clerks** of the Papers, two.

The **Clerk** of the Rules.

The **Clerk** of the Errors.

The **Sealer** of the Writs.

The **Clerk** for Filing the Declarations.

The **Head Cryer**, and two under Cryers.

The **Ushers**, two.

The **Filizars** for the several Counties in *England*, fifteen in number.

The Officers and their Habits in the Courts of Common - Pleas.

This is the Next Court, and is called the **Common-Pleas**, because there are debated the Pleas between Subject and Subject: Real Actions are pleaded in no other Court, nor Fines levied, or Recoveries suffered: none but Serjeants at Law plead in this Court.

The **Lord Chief Justice** of the Common - Pleas, or Common - bench.

The **Justices** three in number as Assistants: or the three Puisne Judges.

The **Custos Brevium**, is the first Clerk of the Court, whose Office is to receive and keep all Writs, and the Records of *Nisi Prius*, called **Pastea's**.

The **Prothonotories** in numbe three: they are to Enter and Enroll all Declarations and Pleadings.

The **Chyrographer**, doth Enter and Ingrose Fines acknowledged. All these Officers afore mentioned sit in the Court, their Heads covered with black round Caps or Bonnets, according to the Mode before Hats were Invented.

The **Clerk** of the Treasury, he keeps the Records.

The **Clerk** of the Inrollments of Fines and Recoveries, *&c.*

The **Clerk** of the Out - Lawries, who make the Writs of *Capias Utlegatum*, after Parties are returned Out-Lawed.

The **Clerk** of the Kings Silver, who receives the Money for the King which is agreed upon at all Sale of Lands.

The **Clerk** of the Warrant, who make all such Warrants of Attorney for Bailiffs, for the Plantiff or Defendant.

The **Clerk** of the Juries who makes out Writ for the Juries appearance either in this Court, or County Assizes.

The **Clerk** of Essoins, or Excuses for lawful cause of absence.

The **Clerk** of the Supersedeas.

The **Filizars**, for the several Counties of *England*, in number 15.

The **Prothonotary Filizar**.

The **Exigenters** five in number, who make out all Exigents Proclamations in all Actions where Out - Lawry doth lye.

The **Cryers** in number, four.

The **Porter**.

The Officers and their Habits belonging to the Eqchequer.

This Court is called the **Exchequer**, from a Chequer wrought Carpet, which covered the Great Table of the Court: as the Court of Green cloth in the Kings House is so called from the Green Carpet. In this Court, called the Court of Equity, are Trials of Debts accounts, Revenues, Disbursments, Customs, Fines unposed, *&c.*

The **Lord Treasurer**.

The **Chancellor** of the Exchequer.

The **Lord Chief Baron**.

The **Barons** of the Exchequer, three in number.

The **Cursitor Baron**, who gives Oaths to Sheriffs, Undersheriffs, Bailiffs, Searchers, Surveyors, *&c.* of the Custom - House.

All these **Judges** belonging to these three Courts aforesaid, sit in Scarlet Robes, and square Caps, like Doctors of Divity: because (as some say) they were anciently most commonly Clergy Men and Doctors, Bishops or Prelates that sat there.

The **Secretary**.

The **Seal - Keeper**.

The **Chamberlains** of the Exchequer.

The **Auditor** of Receipts, called *Scriptor Talliarum*. He hath five Clerks to manage the whole Estate of Monies received, disbursed and remaining.

The **Tellers** in number four, who receives all Monies due to the King.

The **Clerk of the Pells**, who enters every Tellers Bill in Parchtment (which in Latin is *Pellis*) whence the Office hath it name) he hath four Clerk to assist him.

The **Deputy Chamberlains** two, who sit in the Tally Court, cleave the Tallies and examin each piece apart.

The **Tally - Cutter**.

The **Ushers** of the Exchequer two, that look to it Night and Day.

The **Messengers** four.

Officers in the Higher or Upper Exchequer.

The Kings **Remembrancer**.

The **Clerks** of the Remembrancer eight in number: of which two are Secondaries.

The

The **Lord Treasurers** Remembrancer.
The **Clerks** of this Remembrancer, twelve: whereof the two first are called **Secondaries.**
The Clerk of the **Pipe.**
The under Clerks of the **Pipe Office,** eight.
The **Controllor,** or Comptrollor of the Pipe.
The Clerk of the **Pleas.**
The **Attornies** four in number.
The **Foreign Opposer.**
The Clerk of the **Estreates.**
The **Auditors** of the **Imprest,** two.
The **Auditors** of the **Revenue,** seven.
The **Remembrancer** of **first Fruits** and Tenches.
Th **Deputy Remembrancers,** two.
The Clerk of the **Parcells.**
The Clerk of the **Nichils.**
The **Marshalls.**

Officers belonging to the High Court of Chancery.

This Court is for the Mittigating the Rigor of that Law practized in the Court of Kings-Bench, and Common Pleas. It is called **Curia Cancellariae:** because anciently the Judge of the Court sat *intra Cancellos*, or *Lattices*: within Railes, Bars or Lattices, as the East end of out Churches being seperated *per Cancellos*, by Skreens or Lattice, Railes, *&c.* as peculiarly belonging to the Priest, were thence called Chancels.

This Court hath two in one, the first **in Latin** by which it grants out Writs Mandatory, and Remedial, Writs of Grace, or according to equity and conscienc. The second **by English** Bills, Answers and Decrees, *&c.*
The **Lord High Chancellor** of *England.*
The **Masters of Chancery,** twelve in number.
The **Masters of the Rolls.**
The **six Clerks.**
The **Examiners,** two.
The **Clerks** of the **Petti-Bag,** three.
The Clerk of the **Crown,** and his Deputy.
The Clerk of the **Hamper** or **Hanaper,** or Warden of the **Hanaper.**
The **Warden** or **Keeper of the Fleet Prison.**
The **Serjeant at Arms,** who bears the Mace before the Lord Chancellor, or Lord Keeper.
The Clerk of the **Subpena Office.**
The Clerk of the **Patents,** or of Letters Patents under the Great Seal of *England.*
The **Register** of the **Chancery.**
The **Deputy Registers,** three.
The **Registers** of the **Rolls.**
The **Clerk** of the **Reports.**
The **Clerk** for fileing **Affidavits.**
The **Cursiters** twenty four in number: these make out Original Writs.

Officers in the Marshes of Wales.

The **Lord President.**
The **President,** who is ever the chief Justice of *Cheshire.*

The **Judges Assistants.**
The **Councellors.**
The **Secretary.**
The **Attorneys.**
The **Sollicitor.**
The **Surveyor.**
The **Cryer.**
The **Clerk** of the Crown with other inferior Officers.

Officers in the Dutchy Court of Lancaster.

The **Chancellor.**
The **Attorney General.**
The **Receiver General.**
The **Auditors,** in number two.
The **Clerk** of the Dutchy.
The **Attorneys,** two.
The **Messenger.**

Officers of the Palatinate Courts in Chester.

Assizes.	Chancery.
The **Chief Justice.**	The **Chamberlain.**
The **Puisne Justice.**	The **Vice-Chamberlain.**
The **Kings Attorney.**	The **Baron of the Exchequer.**
The **Attorneys,** sans nu.	The **Deputy Baron.**
The **Sollicitor.**	The **Examiner.**
The **Petty Fogers.**	The **Bailiff Itenerant,** and his Deputy.
Constable of the Castle.	The **Kings-Attorney.**
The **Prothonotary.**	The **Seal-Keeper.**
The **Under Goaler.**	The **Filazar,** and Deputy **Filazar.**
Clerk of the Crown.	The **Attorneys.**
Clerk of the Indictments.	The **Cryer.**
The **Marshall.**	The **Messenger.**
The **Cryer.**	The **Clerks.**
The **Custos Rotulorum**	The **Bailiffs.**
The **Sheriff.**	The **Catch-poles.**
The **Justice of Peace.**	
The **Under Sheriff.**	
The **Clerk of the Peace.**	
The **Bailiffs.**	
The **Catch-poles.**	

XI. He beareth Or, a **Doctor of the Civil Law** in his **Gown,** with a Roll of Paper in his left Hand, and the right extended, all proper. This may also be termed a **Doctor of Physick,** their Gowns being in a manner one, and the same: also a **Chancellor,** or **Vicar-General.**

The **Civil Law,** is the Law of Nations, which for the executive Power, in Church Matters, there are diverse excellent Courts, the Highest for criminal causes, was the **High Commission Court:** the Commissioners whereof had power to exercise Jurisdiction throughout the Realm; to Visit, Reform, and correct Errors, Heresies

ſies, Schiſmes, Abuſes and Deliquiencies, that they be corrected and reformed.

The **Civil Affair** which concern the Church the Higheſt Court, is the **Court of Delegates**, to which Appeales may be made from the Higheſt Courts under the **Arch-biſhops**, and from this to none other.

The next is the **Arch-biſhops Courts**, where any Eccleſiaſtical Suite between any Perſons within their Province may (waving all Inferior Courts) be decided: among them the Higheſt Court is,

The **Court of Arches**, ſo called from the Arched Church or Tower of St. *Marys* in *London*, where it was wont to beheld: the Judge whereof is called the **Dean of the Arches**. To this Court belongs diverſe **Advocates**, all **Doctors** of the **Civil Law**: two **Regiſters** and ten **Proctors**.

The next is the **Perogative Court**, called alſo the **Spiritual Court**: which each Biſhop hath in his Dioceſs, which judgeth of Eſtates fallen by Will, or Inteſtates, giving **Probats** and granting **Adminiſtrations**, other cauſes belonging to **Eccleſiaſtical Courts**, are Blaſphemy, Apoſtaſie, Hereſies, Schiſmes, Ordinations, Juſtitutions of Clerks to Benefics, Cerebration of Divine Service, Rights of Matrimony, Divorces, Baſtardy, Adultery, Fornication, Inceſt, Pennances, *&c.* alſo Tithes Oblations, Mortuaries Delapidations, and Reparations of Churches, with ſeveral other Matters, which belongs not to the common Law of *England*.

The **Conſiſtory Court**, is a Court Commiſſionated by a Biſhop who hath a large Dioceſs, to a certain Perſon in a certain place, for the eaſe and benefit of the People.

The **Dean Rurals Court**, and the **Arch-deacons Court**, and **Dean** and **Chapters Court**: are Courts where ſmaller differences are pleaded which ariſe within their Limits, or Bounds of the Cathedral.

Laſtly there are certain Juriſdictions belonging to ſome Pariſhes, the Inhabitants whereof are exempt, ſome from the Arch-Deacons Court, and ſome from the Biſhops.

The Officers in a Perogative Court.

An **Arch-Biſhop**. A **Biſhop**.

A **Suffragan Biſhop**, or **Subſidiary Biſhop**, or **Titular Biſhop**; ſuch were of old Ordained for the eaſe of Biſhops whoſe Dioceſs were large. Theſe had the Name, Title, Stile and Dignity of Biſhops, and were conſecrated by the Arch-biſhop of the Province, and were to execute ſuch Power, Juriſdiction, and Authority, as are limited in his Commiſſion by the Biſhop or Dioceſan, whoſe Suffragan he is.

A **Dean**. A **Dean Rural**.
A **Chancellor**. An **Advocate**.
A **Proctor**. A **Parater General**.
A **Parater**, or **Promooter**.

Now the **Puniſhment** inflicted by theſe **Spiritual** or **Eccleſiaſtical Courts** are theſe as follow.

Firſt, the **Leſſer Excommunication**, which Excluds the Offender from the Church, or if not from the Communion of the Lords Supper: is diſenabled from being a Plantiff in a Law Suite. And this is generally for contempt, and not appear upon a Citation, or not obeying the Orders of the Court.

The **Greater Excommunication**, which excluds from the company of Chriſtians in Spiritual Duties, but alſo in temporal Affairs; and this is commonly for Hereſie, Schiſme, Inceſt, Perjury and ſuch Grievous Crimes.

The **Anathematiſmus**, is only inflicted upon an obſtinate Heretick, whereby he is declared a publick Enemy to God, rejected and curſed, and Delivered over to Eternal Damnation.

The **Interdictum**, wherein is prohibited all Divine Officers, as Chriſtian Burial, Adminiſtration of Sacraments, *&c.*

Penance publick, is for the Offender, to be compelled to confeſs his fault, and to bewail it before the whole Congregation in the Church, ſtand bare headed, and bare feet, in a white Sheet. But if the crime be not hainous, it may at the parties requeſt be commuted into a Pecuniary Mult, for the Poor, or ſome Pious uſes.

XII. He beareth Argent, a **Livery Man** of the City of *London* in his **Guarded Gown**, **Furred** down before with his Hood hanging behind his left Shoulder, all proper. As ſoon as the Apprentice hath by his ſervitude ſatisfied his Maſter, and that his freedom is now at hand; he is then brought by his Maſter to the Chamberlain of *London* his Office, where he is firſt made Free of the City, and enrolled to be ſo, that thereby he may enjoy a right and Priviledge to the Franchizes of the City, and to follow that (or any other) Trade he was bound Apprentice unto.

That finiſhed he is brought to the Hall-mote, the Place or Hall for the Aſſembling of every *Guild* or *Fraternity*, for regulating of what doth belong to each company or Trade in particular; where the new Freeman of the City is admitted a **Brother** of the ſaid Hall.

The Traders of *London* are divided into ſeveral companies or corporations, and are ſo many Bodies politique, all which have Aſſembly places (as I ſaid) called Halls, and each Company or Miſtery hath a Maſter (or two) annually choſen from amongſt themſelves, by which the ſaid Societies are Regulated and Governed, and all Miſdemeanors corrected and puniſhed, by Fines and Forfeitures: and in each Company there is other ſubordinate Officers, called Wardens (or Stewaads in ſome) or aſſiſtance; The remaining part of the Hall, or Member of the Trades are termed **Livery-Men**, or **Gown-Men**: So that each Brotherhood do exactly correſpond to the General Government of the City by a Lord Mayor, Aldermen, and common Council.

Now theſe **Livery-Men**, or **Gown-Men** are not admitted as Fellows of the Hall and to wear Gowns, as ſoon as made free of the Hall: but are counted as Freemen, and have liberty to follow their Trads for a conſiderable time, till they be Selected and by the Votes of the Hall, they be brought in to be **Gown-Men**, and (as it were) Council Men of their ſaid Societies. And out of theſe Livery Men in each Hall, is again ſelected ſuch Perſons as are thought fit to make Council-Men for the City: which by degrees advance higher and higher till they be Sheriffs, Aldermen, *&c.*

During

During their time of being Livery-Men they wear on the left Shoulder of their Gowns, an **Hood** behind with a long **Tippet** at it down before of two colours, one half Scarlet, the other green Silk: But when chosen to be of the City Conucil, they wear a **long Tippet** of the same colours about their Necks, reaching down before to the middle of the Belly.

XIII. He beareth Argent, a **Beads-Man**, or an old Man in and **Hospital** (or Poor Mans) **Gown**, with a **Bonnet** or **Cap** on his Head Azure; **Faced** and **Lined**, Or: with a **Palmers Staff** in his right hand, Sable. It hath ever been the minde and care of Pious People to be charitable to the Poor, and therefore for that end have either built Hospitals or Alms-Houses for the dwellings of poor old and indegent People, enduring them with Lands and Revenues for their livelyhood and maintenance when past their Labours: or else to bring up poor Fatherless and Motherless Children that cannot help themselves, till such times as they were able to do Service, and become Apprentices; of which kind of Hospitals this Kingdom through the bounty of Benefactors is well Stored.

Hospitals.

Hospitals are of several Natures according to the Institutions of their Benefactors, some are for Poor People and Orphan Children, in which they are brought up to Learning, have Meat, Drink and Cloaths providee for them, Men and Women Servants to look to them: besides other officers pertaining to the said Hospital or Almonary: as

The **Benefactors** that Builds, Erects and endues the place.

The **Trustees** or **Overseers**, to look after the Revenue, to place in, and put out.

The **Steward** and **Caterer**, that receives and layeth out for the necessaries of the place.

The **Cooke**, **Buttler** and **Baker**, that orders Meat and Drink.

The **Washers** and **House-Keepers**, to make and keep all clean.

The **Master** to teach, and his **Usher** to enter the Boys into the first rudiments.

The **Chaplain** to Pray and Preach, all which and more is necessary for a well Beneficed Hospital.

Other **Hospitals** are for old and aged Men: Others for old Women, and some for both, as the Hospital in *Chester*, called the Fraternity of the Brothers and Sisters of *St. Anns*.

Others for Sick, Sore, and Lunitick Persons, who are kept and maintained at the Hospital charge till recovery, then sent away: as the Hospital at the **Savoy** and **Bethelem** in *London*, and St. *Egitha* for **Lezars** near *Chester*.

These that are called **Alms-Houses**, are of another Nature, which have some of them **Houses to dwell in**, or Chambers to lodge in, and an **Yearly Stipend** to buy them their own Meat and Cloaths: of such we have several in our City.

Others of these Alms People have only **small Houses** to dwell in, and have no other provision made for them, but what they get by begging, of these kind are the, poor **Mendicants**, who get their living by going from Door to Door.

Others there are which have neither **House** nor **Harbour**, but what they Rent, yet have Yearly **Maintenance** for the Support in old Age, and **Caps** and **Gowns** every second or third Year, to keep them Warm; and these are generally called **Beadsmen**; or such as are lotted to have **Poor Mens Gowns**: which I have observed in several Towns upon Set, or Principal Days, to walk before the Magistrates, or Benefactors by two and two. And in some places to go in the same order before Dead Persons carried to their Funerals.

XIV. He beareth Argent, an **Esquire** in his Ruffe, or apparelled according to his Degree, standing in full aspect: thus in short he may be Blazoned, but if we must go to the particulars of his Habit then take it thus, an **Esquire** in his bravery standing in **full View**, having a **Beaver** with a **Feather of three falls** on his Head, a **Satin Pinked Doublet**, **Breeches** and **Cloak** cast over his left Arm, Scarlet: Imbrauthered with Gold, with Silk **Stockins**, **Gatters** and Roses at his Shoes: a **Belt** over his Shoulder with a **Sword Pendant** thereat: having a **Staff** in his right hand pointing to the **Dexter Corner**, and with his left to the **Sinister Base**. This was the habit of either a Knight or Esquire, or Ancient Gentleman of a considerable Rewenue, in King *Charles* the first his Reign: being then (as it is now in our Days) no distinction at all by their Garbs, every one going as it seemed best In his own Eyes: for now the Knight is not known from an Esquire, or an Esquire from a Gentleman by their Habits: nay it is a hard thing to distinctinguish a **Master from his Man**, but only that he goes after, and stands with his Head uncovered before him.

Now though fashion in apparel both in Men and Women do very much vary; yet as to the Principals of the Garments, they constantly stick to them; as **Doublet**, **Breeches**, **Hat**, **Hose**, and **Shoes**; and for their covering, it is a **Cloak**, or **Coat** with Sleeves.

Now the next below a Knight, is the degree of an Esquire, so called from the *French* word *Escuyers*, *Scutifer*, or *Scutigeri*: because they were wont to bear before the Prince in War, or before the better sort of Nobility a shield, or else because they bear a Coat of Arms as Ensigns of their descent; and by our Lawyers are called *Armigeri*.

Several Degrees of Esquires.

1. Of this Title (by the common Law of this Land) are all the Sons of **Dukes**, **Marquesses** and **Earls**, are Esquires, and no more.

2. The next of this Title are the **Eldest** and **Younger Sons** of all **Viscounts** and **Barons**: and the Eldest Sons of their Younger Sons, and their Elder Sons for ever.

3. Then

3. Then the **Esqires of the Kings Body**: which are mentioned among the Officers of the Kings Court. These are Esteemed before the Eldest Sons of Knights, and indeed in all Processions of Estate, they go before the Master of the Jewel house, and all Judges, and Serjeants at the Law.

4. The **Eldest Son of a Knight** claimes the next place, as an **Esquire by Birth**, which he and his Eldest Son for ever, have that Title, and taketh his place according to the Seniority of his Family.

5. The next are **Esquires Created** by the King, by by putting about their Necks a Collar of SS's, and bestowing on them a pair of Silver Spurrs: which Silver Spurs shewed a difference of Honor from the Golden Spurrs, given to a Knight: from whence these Esquires were called White-Spurrs, whose Eldest Son saith Mr. *Segar fol.* 224. i, an Esquire for ever.

6. An **Esquire by Office**, or that is in Superior publick Office, for the King, or State: such are Serjeants of the several Offices in the Kings Court, and other Officers of Rank and Quality; as Mayors of Corporations, Justices of the Peace, Sheriffs, Escheators, and such like.

7. An **Esquire by Repute**, is such a Person who hath been, and is of an ancient Family, and considerable Estate, though neither himself, or any of his Ancestors have born any publick Office, yet such by the curtesie of *England*, and out of respect to their Family, are called Esquires.

8. To these may be joyned Councellors at Law, Batchelors of Divinity, Law and Physick, who take upon them the Title of Esquire, are reputed Esquires, or equal to Esquires, although none of them are really so.

Of this Degree, with each particular circumstance about it, you may peruse these Authors.

Seldens Title of Honor, *fol.* 555.
Ferns Glory of Generosity, *pag.* 100.
Spelmans Glossary, *fol.* 51.
Salters Analysis of Honor, *pag.* 26.
Chamberlains Present State of *England*, *pag.* 280.

XV. He beareth Argent, a **Gentleman in a Hunting or Walking posture**, with his long Staff in his right Hand. This is termed either a **Hunting or Walking posture**, because in those time they cast of all outward Garments, as **Cloak** or **Coat**, that they may either go, or run with the more ease and dexterity.

Among the lower rank of Nobility are accounted the **Gentry**, which have no other Title, but **Gentleman or Master**, which are such as are descended of ancient Families, that have always born a Coat of Arms. The word **Gentleman** first rise from the word *Gens* or *Gentes*, **Gentiles**: which the Primitive Christians used for all such, and were neither **Jews nor Christians**, which the *French* called *Payons*, for **Pagans**; and the *Dutch Heyden*, or *Heydenen*, for **Heathens**. So that the *Romans* took it to be a distinction, or note of Honor to them, which the Christians had before in Scorn expressed them.

So then this Title, **Gentilhomme**, and **Genttlehomme** (which we received from the *French*, at the *Norman* Conquest; for till then we used no such word) as Gentleman, but the *Saxon* word, which was *Ædel*: then I say was the word made. And in all *Latin* Writs, pleading, and the like; the word **Gentleman** was generally used, till King *Henry* the Eights time, since which they have used the word **Generosus**, for a Gentleman; of what sort soever, as Mr. *Selden* testifieth *fol.* 858.

XVI. He beareth Argent, a **Gentleman** with his Cloak on the left Shoulder and cast about his middle, with his right Hand on his side, **Hat, Boots** and **Spurs** with his **Sword** by his side all in their proper colours.

In the Sinister Base of this Quarter, is a **Demy Man Gns Arms**, with a sharp **Pointed Beard**, Cloaths open at the Neck: which is a kind of bearing much used by the *Germans* and *Dutch*, both for Coats and Crests; some with **Hats**, some with **Caps**, others with **Chapews**, and others **Bare Headed**, *&c.* Others young Face, *Spanish* Beards, Bush Beards, or old Mens Faces: and with full Faces.

The Several Degrees of Gentility.

The first is a **Gentleman of Blood**, termed **Gentilitas Nativa**; to the making of which Gentleman perfect in his Blood, is required a Lineal descent on his Fathers side to the fift Generation, as Father, Grand-Father, Great-Grand-Father, Great-Grand-Father-Father, and Great-Grand-Fathers-Grand-Father: And as much on the Mothers side, this doth not only make a Gentleman of Blood perfect, but of Ancestors too.

A **Gentleman by prescription**, is when for a long time and many Years, to the beginning whereof the Memory of Man runneth not to the contrary, causeth him that can duely without intermission of time, challenge the same prescription, ought to be had and reputed as rightly Noble and Gentle, as him that can shew it by Blood. For this time **Immemorable**, hath the force of a Law, & is Masqued, with the Title of Justice, of Priviledge, and of Truth: for our Legist doth tell us, *Magis reluet, a Parentibus, per tempus immemoriale, Nobilitas recta, quam a Principe, sine Virtute Donata*; So that this Nobleness or Gentry by prescription, is as all one, agreeing with that Gentleness of Stock, or Linage.

Now this Gentility by Blood, if seconded by Merit and Virtue, is justly esteemed the most worthy & honorable: and certainly is the least if attended by vicious actions; for the Glory they shine in, being but the reflections of their Ancestors, and not their own proper Rays.

The second is **Gentilitas Dativa**, a **Gentleman made so** by the gift or bounty of the Prince: Examples of many of this Nature Mr. *Seldon* shews in King *Richard* the Second, *Henry* the Sixth, King *James*, and by Forreign Princes, the Emperor, King of *France* and others: *Titles of Honour*, *fol.* 832. 853. 870. Where Men have been ennabled by Letters Patents from their Princes, though they have no Superior Titles added: Yet thereby have been received into the State of Gentlemen, and are Stiled **Gentlemen of Paper and War**, *Gh: pag.* 61.

In General if any **Person** be **Advanced** by Lawful Commission of his Prince to any Office, Dignity or publick Administration, be it either Ecclesiastical, Military, or Civil; so that the said Office comprehend in it, *Dignitatem*, or *Dignitatis Titulum*, the Title or Stile of Dignity, he ought to be Matriculated into the rank of Gentility.

So the King may make or create a **Gentleman**, and give him a Coat of Arms, though he be a single Subject, or unworthy of the same: but this is a **Counterfeit Gentility**, and only shrouds him from the name of a *Plebeian*: Such not exercising the Qualities beseeming them, bring to the Purchaser but little more then the shadow of Honor, being excluded from the Priviledges of Gentility, nay ought, as saith Sir *William Segar*: to be deprived of his Title of a Gentleman, if he behave not himself virtuously according to his Title.

The third is **Atchieved**, or **Merited Gentility**: this is nobleness of proper Virtue, which is certainly to be esteemed above the other, for as Kingdoms happiness, and safety depends upon the Wisdom, Counsel, and Courage of the Virtuous, *Ecclesiastes* 9. 15, 16, 18. When the vain boasts of an ancient Stock or Linage, where Virtue fails; doth add nothing to the relief of a Country in time of need.

What these Virtues are, Sir *John Fern pag.* 30. 31. 96. 97. hath taken great care to set down: which we shall pass over and take notice only of these two Cardinal Virtue, **Prudence** and **Fortitude**; the merit Atchived by the **Pike** and **Pen**, **Learning** and **Soldiery**. Now to which of these the precedency should be allowed, hath ever been the despute, some gives it to the **Scholar**, others to the **Soldier**; one preferrs the **Doctor** before the **Knight**, yet most esteem the latter predominate to the former, to which I do rather adhere.

For to obtain the Estate of **Gentility by Learning**, and discovering the Secrets of Heaven is certainly very Honorable: But to **Atchive** it by Service in his Soveraigns Wars, the defence of the **Church**, **King** and **Country**, is of all most excellent and worthy: In as much as **War** is permitted by the Law of God, taught by the Law of Nature, and commanded by the Law of Nations, *Anal: of Honor pag.* 10.

For the **Soldiery**, they who by their Valour and Service done in the Soveraigns Wars, to defend the **Church**, **King** and **Country**, are worthy of their **Atchieved Honor** and ought to be Stiled Gentlemen, which is peculiar to all Listed, and are called **Gentlemen Soldiers**: of which these more especially (let their Original be what it will) may be admitted to bear Arms in the Military or Marshal Government, *viz.* The **General**, **High Constable**, **Lieutenant-General**, **Governers** or **Gardians of Frontiers**, and **Barth Countrys**, **Admirals**, **Vice-Admirals**, **Treasurers**, **Marshalls**, **Majors-general**, of Horse and Foot, **Masters** of the Artillery, **Collonells**, **Majors**, **Captaines**, **Provosts**, **Serjeant-Majors**, **Lieutenants**, and such commissionated Officers for Martial Affairs.

For the **State Ecclesiastical**, these in the Church being Officers of Dignity do merit **Gentleness**, and Coat Armour: as **Patriarches**, **Primats**, **Arch-Bishops**, **Cardinals**, **Bishops**, also all **Vicars-General**, **Gardians** or **Keeper of Spiritualities**, **Deans** of Cathedral Churches, **Arch-Deacons**, **Chancellors**, **Registers**, **Treasurers**, **Chantors**, **Advocats**, **Doctors**, likewise all **Rectors**, **Provosts**, **Deans** and **Governors** of Collegial Assemblies with diverse others in the Church, which are to this place, to be referred.

For the **Civil** or **Pollitical Estate**, diverse Officers of Dignity and Worship do merit Coats of Arms: as the **Chancellor**, **President**, **Treasurer**; with such as occupy the Seat of Judgment, as **Judges**, **Justices**, **Chief Officers** in the Soveraigns Pallace, **Secretaries** of the Estate: also all **Mayors**, **Sheriffs**, **Bailiffs** of Cities and ancient Burroughs or Towns Incorporated, **Prothonotories**, and **Chief Remembrancers**, to High Court of Justice, with many other to long to receit.

Also **Gentleness** or the bearing of Arms may be obtained by the **Service of the Soveraign**, or any of his **Superior Officers**, according to this Rule: *Adherentes lateri Principis & Officialis, & eis iem, in Officio quocunque minimo, Ministrantes nobilitantur.*

From which we may conclude that all the **Officers** in the King Houshold, as **Buttler**, **Cooke**, **Baker**, **Groom of the Chamber**, **Keeper of the Wardrobe**, and the like: also the Officers of Chief note belonging to Justices of Superior Courts, and Cities, as **Sword-bearers**, **Mace-bearers**, **Marshals**, **Ushers**, **Messengers**, **Serjeants at Mace**, and such like.

For the **Liberal Sciences** which are the Mistresses of all Vertues, Letters, and good Learning: the Excellencies whereof worthily deserve the Title of **Nobleness**, therefore merit a Coat of Arms. They are called Liberal Sciences, for four reasons. Because the study of them required a free and liberal mind. Because of puting a difference between them and other Servile Arts, called **Mechanical Arts**, which require more the service of the Body, then travail of the Wit. Because, Children of Freemen ought to be put to the learning of them. And lastly because they are lawful, and may be learned without servitude of Sin or Superstition. These Sciences whereby the Ancients termed seven, to which may be added an eight (saith Sir *John Fern*) *pag.* 32 and that is: Theologia a Science of God, and Heavenly things, surpassing Nature, and the capacitie of Nature: However we may pass it under the **Science of Letters** and **Learning**, the Professors thereof having received their Degrees, merited sufficiently (though they were ungentle born) to obtain Arms and have the Honor to be called a **Gentleman**: as **Masters of Art**, **Batchelers** of Divinity, **Doctors** of Divinity, Law and Physick; **Rhetorick**, **Logique**, **Mathematick**, **Musick**, **Geometry**, **Astronomy** and **Astrology**, also the **Poets**, **Historiographers** and such like, being most necessary in Cities, and common Weales, and accounted off amongst the Learned, are not excluded from the hope of Honor, therefore unto such must be due the Ensigns of Gentry, as the desert of their parts and callings shall require.

The fourth is **Gentilitas Adoptiva**, a Gentility arising from Adoption; this is, when a **Gentleman of Blood** and **Coat Armour**, for some special affection which

which he beareth to one, neither allied to him by Blood, nor a Gentleman otherways, adopteth a Stranger to be his Son, and constituteth him to succeed; as well in his Estate of Gentry, as to his name, Coat of Arms, and Possessions. This is termed a **Gentleman by Adoption.**

There is another kind of Gentility of this Nature, called *Nobilitas Feudalis*, or *Ratione Feudi:* a **Gentleman of Purchase,** as having a Possession bought by himself being both large and fair: as if a **Merchant, Artificer, Burgess** or **Farmer** purchaseth a Signiory or Lordship from the King. By reason the owner died without Heir, or fell to him by an Attenture; to this purchasing from the King, may also be confired by the Law of Arms, the **Coat Armour of the Owner of the Lordship:** which he may bear as his own to himself, and his Posterity.

For **Mechanical Sciences,** though their Professors in some respects be debarred the preheminence of **Gentry,** yet it will not be denied, but that some such notable and collateral Merits, and worthiness may appear in them that they shall duely obtain the name of **Gentles,** and have a **Coat of Arms:** of these Mechanick Trades (my Author Sir *John Fern pag.* 70) will admit but of seven, which have the Title of Necessity, Honesty and Laudableness; which are, first **Agriculture,** which is the **Tillage, Culture,** and **Manurance** of the Earth. This is Sowing of Corn and Seeds, Planting of Trees of all sorts: Grafting of Orchards, and making of Gardens: and Pasturing and Feeding of Cattle, which is all comprehended in the word Husbandry. The second is **Lanificium,** the skill in **Weaving** and **Makeing of Cloath,** or any such like Matter, in which is comprehended all the Arts of Spinning, Weaving, Fulling, Dressing and Sowing. The third is **Architecture,** or the skill in **Building, Frameing** and **Erecting** of Temples, Theaters, Pyramides, Castles, Forts, Bastilions, Pallaces, Houses, and all sorts of Edifices: which is divided into **Tementurie,** or **Masonrie,** and **Carpentary,** the first working in Stone, or Brick; the latter in Wood. The fourth is **Mercatura,** the Trade of **Merchandizeing,** or Buying and Selling: exchanging of Goods Forraign for Domestick: by which that Noble Art of **Navigation** hath been maintained, which did breed the two famous skills of **Cosmography,** and **Geometry.** The fift **Mechanick Art** is **Armatura,** the skill of **working** in all sorts of **Mettles:** as the Forging of Weapons, Armour, and of other Instruments for Artists: which is comprehended under these two Heads; **Malleatoria,** the skill to work with Hammers, and Files: and the other **Fusoria,** which is casting Mettles into Molds. The sixt is **Ars Venatoria,** the **Art of Hunting,** which is a **Gentlemans Occupation** in *England*, *France* and *Germany:* It is divided into three Arts, **Ferina,** the killing of wild Beast; **Aucupium,** the killing of Fowl: and **Piscatoria,** the taking of Fish. The seventh and last, is called **Theatrica,** the Art and skill of Plays practized in Theaters, or exposed to publick view: of which there are four sorts, as **Ludus Gymnicus,** the skill and activitie of Wrestling, Leaping, Running, Casting the Dart, *&c.* And **Ludus Circensis,** the Running of a Chariott, or Horse in a Ring swiftly: then **Ludus Gladiatorius,** the Art of Fencing, or skill to use any Weapon, either for the defence of our selves, or offence of our Enemies: And lastly **Ludus Torneamenti,** the Game and Play of Turney and Barriers, a most Warlike and Military Exercise.

Honors and Exemptions proper to Gentility.

The Lower Degrees of Nobility have less and fewer priviledges then those in other Monarchies, see *Glo: of Generosity, pag.* 77. *&c.* by which I mean Baronets, Knights, Esquires and Gentlemen.

If a **Knight** be under Age, yet he shall be out of Wardship, both for Lands, Body and Marriage.

A **Knight** is Excused from attendance at Court-Leets.

A **Knight and his Eldest Son,** not compellable to find pledges at the *Visus Franchi Plegij.*

A **Knight** by *Magna Charta, chap.* 21. are so freed that no demesn Cart of theirs may be taken.

A **Son,** or **Brother of a Knight;** by Statute Law, is capacitated to hold more then one Benefice Ecclesiastical.

A **Knight and his Son,** though he cannot spend 10 *l. per Annum*, nor be worth 200 *l.* may keep Grey-Hounds, Setting-Dogs, and Nets to take Pheasants and Partriges, *Stat.* 1. *Jac.*

Anciently if an Ignoble Person did strike a **Gentleman** in *England*, he was to loose his hand.

A **Gentleman** may not be compelled to serve in Husbandry.

A **Child** of a **Gentleman** brought up to sing, cannot be taken without the Parents consent to serve in the Kings Chappel, as others may.

An **Horse of a Gentleman,** may not be taken to ride Post.

A **Gentleman** having his Honor detracted by a Churle, his remedy is an Action of Trespass: but if one **Gentleman** shall detract from the Honor of another, then Combate was engaged.

The **Ungentle,** is bound to yield obedience to a **Gentleman** in these things, to keep silence whilst a Gentleman speaks, to stand while he is in presence, to give him the right hand in going, and the chief Seat in sitting.

A **Gentleman** to Write his Name in any Instrument, or Solemn Act, next after the **Bishop,** or Prelate.

If in **Common Elections** for Officers, Votes be equal, then them of the most **Gentlemen** shall prevail.

A **Gentleman** is Honored with the Attire of his Body, to whom it is lawful to bear Silk and Purple colour.

A **Gentleman** is Honored with a Title to his name, even as a **Bishop** and **Doctor** are not spoken too, but with this Title (most Reverend) so **Knights, Esquires,** and **Gentlemen,** without an Addition of Sir, Worship, or Master.

It is the Duty of the unnoble to Honor and Salute a **Gentleman** with the Gestures of his Body.

The word of a **Gentleman** is of as much Validity, as his Deed; confirmed with Witnesses and Seal. The Laws presuming they had or ought to have a reverent regard to the preservation of their promise in all sincerity.

A **Gentleman** ought to be preferred to Offices before the unnoble.

The Testimony of **two Gentlemen** by oath before the Judge as Witnesses, is of more Credence then a multitude of ungentle Persons.

A **Gentleman** might erect Images, and Statutes of their Ancestors and himself, which the Laws do mightily defend.

To deface the **Arms** of a **Benefactor** out of a publick work is punishable; but to wipe out the mark of a Merchant, or Artificer, is not.

The ungentle may not challenge a **Gentleman** to the Combate.

Vertues to be Imbraced by the Gentry.

All **Gentlemen** by the observing of nine **Vertues**, with the avoiding of nine **Vices** following, will leave an Honorable Memory of his Gentle conversation to all Men: and these extend not only to the **Simple Gentleman**, but to each degree of Nobleness, even to the Soveraign: because they bear Coat Armours.

1. To be Meek, Dutiful, and Obedient to Gods Laws.
2. To be Free from Oaths, Swearing, and Blasphemies.
3. To be Fearful, or Dreading to offend the King, and his Commands.
4. To know thy self and thy original Birth, and so accordingly to behave thy self towards all Men.

These are the **Soveraign Vertues**, which tend chiefly to the rectifying of the Soul. These following are called the **Amarous Vertues**, because they win Love, and a good Report at all Mens hands: a matter worthy the observation of all that desire, to seek to be **Gentlemen**.

1. To be of a Cheerful, and Lixam Countenance.
2. To be Affable, and Tractable in his Language.
3. To be Wise and Discreet in his Answers.
4. To be Just, and Perfect in his Rule, and Government.
5. To be Careful to bear good Will and Affection to Faithfullness.

Vices to be Eschewed by the Gentry.

Gentlemen are to fly from all **Vice** & **Wickedness** for that is a great Rebatement of his Honor, and Stains his **Coat of Arms**, making his Gentleness Ungentle and especially in these nine things.

1. To fly from his Severaigns Banner in the Field.
2. To Revoke or Forsake his own Challenge.
3. to Slay his Prisoner with his own Hands, when he humbly yeildeth himself.
4. To tell his Soveraign false Tails.

These are called **Terminata, Vices Terminable**, because they are determined by sharp Punishments according to the Law of Arms. and are such as will determine and end his Gentility. These following are **Indeterminable**.

1. To be full of Lechery, giving his Body to Whoredom, and Uncleaness.
2. To be a Subject of *Bacchus*, a Riotous, Drunken, and Intemperate Person.
3. To be Slothful in the Warrs, or about the Kings Business.
4. To be a Boasters of Man-hood.
5. To be Cowardly in the Face of his Enemy.

Of these things concerning the Gentry, peruse *Ferns Glory of Generosity, pag.* 14. *to* 98.
Chamberlains Present State, pag. 280.
Spelmans Glossary in Verbo, Generosus.

XVII. He beareth Or, a **Yeoman**, or **Countryman**, or a **Freeholder** of the Country with a **Staff** in his right hand, proper. This habit (as to their inner Garments) Yeoman usually did wear in King *James* his time, *viz.* **narrow brimed Hats** with **flat Crowns**, **Doublets** with **large Wings**, and **short Skirts** and **Girdles** about their Wasts, **Trunk Breeches**, with **Hosen** drawn up to the Thighs, and **Gartered** under the Knees.

Under the Title of **Yeoman**, in Latin *Villani*, is comprehended the **Husbandman**, **Country man**, a **Franklein**, a **Farmer**, or any other sort of People, busie in Culture, or Tillage of the Earth.

The next to the **lower Nobility**, and the first degree of the **Commons** or **Plebeans**, are the **Freeholders**; commonly called **Yeomen**: It is a name from the High *Dutch* (**Gemen** or **Gemain**) in *English* **Common**. In the Kings Court, it is an Officer set in a middle Station between a Serjeant and a Groom. And they are termed **Freeholders**, because they hold Lands and Tenements inheritable, by a perpetual right to them and their Heirs for ever. This Tenure is called a **Fee-Tail**.

Others **Freeholders** there are by **Copy-hold**, such are they who hold some Lands within a Manner or Lordship, only by Coppy of Court-roll of the said Mannor, *&c:* And have a perpetual right, and Lords Utileg; though no absolute Freeholders or direct Lord of what he holueth; seeing he holdeth by **Sute** and **Service**, **Herriots** and **Fines**; some rateable, others certain, and some customarie. This is also called a **Freehold by Law**.

An other sort of **Freehold** is by Lease for Lives, or **Lives Absolute**: These are such Freeholders as are capable of giving Votes for Election of Parliament Men; to serve upon Juries; to bear the Offices of Constable, and Church-Warden. This is called a **Freehold** by Deed, or for **Life**.

The

The next sort of commonalty is the **Farmer**, or **Racker**, or **Dairy-Man**, which are such as hold Lands and Livings, Farms and Demesnes, from the Lords thereof upon the Rack, or half Rack; that is upon the Yearly value, or half value: having no certain term of holding, but from Year to Year; or from three to three Years, avoiding at the Land-lords pleasure at such exspirations of times.

The next **Tradsmen** are reconned as of the commonalty of *England*, which are such as live by buying and selling, amongst whom **Merchants of Foreign Traffick**, have for their great benefit to the publick, and for their great endowments and Generous living, been of best repute in *England*, and have got great and vast Estates. But amongst **Tradsmen** there are **Wholesale-Men**, then **Retailers**, and lastly **Mechanicks** or **Handy-crafts-men**. These are all capable of bearing some sway, or office, in Cities and Towns Corporate. Yet notwithstanding, the Law of Arms hath forbidden these sorts of commoners, both from Honor, and the Ensigns of Nobility, till atchived by other mains, or offices, as is afore shewed.

The third sort of **People Ungentle**, and of the **Commonalty** also; are those which are called **Nativi** and **Servi**, Natives or home born People, yet **Servants** and **Slaves** to their Lords and Masters: in the *English* they are called **Villains**, such as live without Liberty and Freedom: Bondsmen, Apprencices: because during a certain time, they are bound to Service, for the attaining, and apprehending that Craft or Mistery, they are set unto: durcing which time they are little better in Quality and Condition then Servile Slaves, and Vassels.

The lowest Members, the Feet of the Body pollitick, are the **Day Labourers**; who have no constant Master, but follow labouring from House to House, for Daily Wages: but of these see more *numb.* 21.

The Liberties and Priviledges of the Commons.

The **Commons** of *England* for Hereditary fundamental liberties and properties are best above and beyond the Subjects of any Monarch in the World: for

No **Commoner**, or **Free Denisen** of *England*: is to be Imprisoned, or otherwise restrained without cause shewed, for which by Law he ought to be Imprisoned.

To him **Imprisoned** may not be denied a Writ of *Habeas Corpus* if it be desired.

If no cause of **Imprisonment** be alledged, and the same be returned upon the *Habeas Corpus*, then the Prisoner ought to be set at liberty.

No **Soldier** can be quartered in the House of a **Freeman**, in the time of Peace without his Will, though they pay for their quatters.

Every Man hath a **full** and **absolute property in his Goods**, that no Taxes, Loans or Benevolences, Ordinary or Legally can be imposed on them, without their own consent, by their representative in Parliament.

They may also **Dispose of all they have**, how they please, even from their own Children, and to them in what equality they will, without shewing any cause: which other Nations Governed by the Civil Law, cannot do.

No **Freeman** can be tried, but by his Peers or equals, nor condemned, but by the Laws of the Land, or by Act of Parliament.

No *English* Man can be **Prest** or **Compelled** (unless bound by his Tenure) to serve as a Soldier in the War, or March forth of his Country, except in case of an Invation by a Forreign Enemy, or a Rebellion at home.

Neither may he be sent out of the Realm **against his Will**, upon any Forreign Imployment, by way of an Honorable Banishment.

No **Freeman** may be **Fined** for any Crime, but according to the Merit of the offence, always *Salva sibi Contenemento suo*, in such a manner that he may continue, and go on in his calling.

In brief their **Liberties** and **Properties** must be acknowledged to be transcendent, and their wordly condition most Happy and Blessed: for if it be considered, they are ordinarily Subject to no Laws but what they make themselves, nor no Taxes but what they impose on themselves, and pray the King, and the Lords to consent thereunto.

XVIII. He beareth Argent, the Lord Mayor of *London*, his - - - - - - or **Boy in his Pride**; the Lord **Mayors Page** some term him; his Habit is constant, *viz* **Doublet and Breeches, Hose and Shoes**, all of a colour; with a **Loose Coat**, or **Jacket** of **Scarlet**, reaching to the middle of his Thighs, **without Sleeves**, but such as hang upon his back, being of the same length of his Coat; having a **Gold Chain** about his Neck, a **Velvet Bonnet** on his head, with a Feather therein: in his left hand he carrieth a **White Staff**, with an **Handkerchief** Laced, tied on the top of it, with a **Posie** of Flowers. In this habit doth a young Boy about 10 or 12 Years of Age, walks before the Lord Mayor every Easter, *&c.* when the Aldermen and Sherriffs in their Pomp, wait upon him to the *Spittle*.

A **Page**, is in some Sence taken to be an Office of of Servile Imploy and to follow business as in the Kings House, there are in several places Yeomen, Grooms, Pages, as in the Pantry, Cellar, Buttery, Pitcher House, *&c.* where they are to bear, and carry, and come and go at the Masters command. But Pages in the best acceptation, are young Youths of good Birth and Quality, which wait and attend upon Lords and Ladies, Kings and Princes, *&c.* none under the degree of a Lord having such a person, and by such a Title to attend him: Their Habit is Trunk Breeches, answerable to the figure of the Men before and after, *numb.* 17. 19.

A **Footman**, is generally, for the ease of his speedy going, clothed in light thin cloaths, and all in white, as Doublet slashed or open, Breeches or Drawers, and Stockings of the same, with thin soled Shoes called Pumps; these Men run by their Lords Coach, or Horses side, and are ready to wait on him, and fetch and bring on all occasions; and sometimes make and maintain Foot Races.

A

A **Querrie**, is an Officer or Servant under the Master of the Horse to the King, and none other; they are after the nature of Foot-men, whose Office is to attend the King in his Progress or Hunting, or on any occasion of Ridling abroad, to help his Majesty up and down from his Horse, they generally go in the Kings Livery, and are 12 in number.

A **Lacky**, is the same for Office and imploy as the precedent, only he hath not as yet attained his Age; yet for Archness he exceeds, for it is seldom known but such Boys are as full of Roguery, as an Egg is full of Meat: While they are Boys or Youths, they are generally termed Lacky; but when they come to riper Years, then Foot-men.

Upon the division score between these numbers 17 and 18, is fixed the figure of a **demy Man** to the sinister, **sans Arms, bare headed**, with a sharp pointed **Beard**, and two **Elephants Teeth** out of his mouth Argent, **Clothed**, Gules, a **Ruffe** about his Neck. This kind of Creature, out of a Coronett, is the crest of *Froschell von Martzel*, of *Bavaria*. This is termed a **demy Man** with **Elephants Teeth**, A. sans Arms, clothed G. ruffed, *&c.*

XIX. He beareth Argent, **two Lovers**, (or a **Man** and **Woman walking together** Arm in Arm in their proper colours: But if you will go to a farther description of them, then say thus, a **Man** and **Woman** walking, their **Arms Imbracing**, his **Hat** Sable, **Doublet** with **Broad Wings**, and **little Skirts**, and **Trunk Breeches**, and **Hose** Purpure; her **Hood** and **Gown** of the second, **Gorget** or **Whisk** and **Apron** of the first; *see numb.* 51. This is the Coat Armour of *Anthony John Valeire*, of *Spain*, as my Author in an old Manuscript tells me.

XX. He beareth Or, a **Serving Man**, or a **Gentlemans Servant** standing (with a full Body or) in **full Sheet**, with his two **Hands on his sides**, his **Head uncovered**, cloathed with **Breeches Doublet**, **Hose**, Azure, **Shooes**, Sable, overcast with a hanging or loose Coat, with the Sleeves hanging backwards, Gules. This kind of loose Coat with hanging sleeves cast over a Doublet or under Coat, was in the Reign of Q. *Elizabeth* termed a Mandilion, which is a loose Cassock, such as her Soldiers used to wear.

A **Waiting Man**, is such a person as goeth abroad with his Master or Mistriss as a Companion, Manning or taking her by the hand in all dangerous places, for fear of a slip or fall; the Waiting Man is a degree above a Servant or a Lacky, they following their Ladies and Mistresses, but he goeth before them.

A **Gentleman Usher**, is an Office belonging to him that attends, and waiteth on Persons of Quality, none under the degree of a Lady to have such a person as is termed a Gentleman Usher.

A **Servant**, is such an one as doth follow Manual Imploys, and do the Work of the House, and are under Wages for such Drudgery Work as belongs to Families; they are commonly Hired by the Year, at the end whereof they may be Free to go and do Service for another Master. It is accounted discourteous and unfriendly, to take another Mans Servant before he hath fairly parted with his Master; and indiscreet to take a Servant without Certificate of his diligence and faithfulness to his former Master.

A **Servant**, or an **Apprentice**, is a Servant for a certain space of time, as 5, 7, or 9 years, by Covenant, for the Exercise and Learning of Arts, Misteries, and Trades; these for that time carry the Mark of Villains and Bond Slaves, being subject to Correction for their Faults by their Masters and Mistresses; and resistance in a Servant, is punished with a severe punishment; and to take away either of their Lives, is Petty Treason, and hath a peculiar Punishment.

A **Slave**, from Foreign parts, we have none since Christianity, and any brought into *England*, are upon Landing, *Ipso Facto*, Free from Slavery, but not from Ordinary Service.

XXI. He beareth Argent, a **Labouring Man** with a **Spade** on his right **shoulder**, a **Staff** in the other hand, and an **Apron** before him, all proper. These kind of persons are such as work for Day Wages, either with Spade, Shovel, Mattock, Axe or Trowel, *&c.* of which there are several Operations.

The several sorts of Labouring Men.

The **Fundator**, a **Digger** of the Earth to lay a Foundation, or make a ground work to Build upon.

The **Fossor**, is a Digger of the Earth, to make **Ditches** and **Trenches**.

The **Pastinator**, a Labourer as Digs and Delves the Earth, to make it even and streight, such as delve Gardens, and such like Ground.

The **Puteatius**, a **Pit Digger**, and such as Dig Wells for Water.

The **Ablaqueator**, a **Digger** or **Delver** about the **Roots of Trees**, to make them more Fruitful, and such are they who keep Orchards, Dress Vinyards, and cure Hop-Yards.

The **Cunculator**, a **Miner**, or digger under the Earth, such are all them that dig in Mines of Silver, Gold, Brass, Iron, Tin, Lead, Coal, and the like. Such are termed Pioneers, that undermine Forts, Towers and Castles, to Blow them up.

The **Lapicidor**, or **Lapidary**, a **Cutter of Stones** a Digger of Stones, such are they as work in Quarries, Quarry Men, Hewers of Stone, Masons, getters of Stone.

The **Manuporter**, is him that bears or carries any thing by strength of hands; and such are Packing Porters, and them that carry with their hands by the help of Ways, Spikes or Putlocks, great Stones and Timber, which Masons and Carpenters use in large Fabricks.

The **Barrow Men**, such as carry on a Barrow between two; and they are Labourers in Brick and Stone Work; and carry Burthens of several natures by that means.

The **Wheeler**, is such as transport weighty things from place to place; *see numb.* 53.

The **Munginator**, is such as blend Clay and Water,

ter, of these kind of Labouring Men, are the Daubers, Mortar Temperers, Plaster makers, and the like.

The **Manufactor, or Workers** with the hand, and such as follow handy craft labouring, as Trowel Men, Axe Men, and seilers and coverers of Houses either with Straw, Shingles, Tiles or Slate; see *numb.* 38. 39. 51. 52, *&c.*

The **Lator, or Porter,** a **Bearer** or **Carrier** of Burthens on their Backs or Shoulders, and such are they that wait at Custom Houses, attend Merchants Cellars and Grocers Shops, to carry their Goods from place to place. A Miller, or Mill carrier, see *numb.* 45.

The **Marianus,** is a kind of **Traveller,** or **Wayfaring person,** which in his Journey carries or bears Burthens on his Back with the help of a Staff; and such Labourers I take Pedlars, Tinkers and Crate Carriers to be; and all such who bear Fardels or Trusses on Staves upon their shoulders; see *numb.* 46. 47. 63. 65.

The **Phalangary** or **Palangarij,** are **Porters** which bear Burthens on Slings, or in Ropes, with Ways, Hand-spikes, or Poles, as Beer-Brewers, Wine-Coopers, and such as bear Burthens, more than a Man or two is able to carry, see *numb.* 44.

XXII. He beareth Argent, a **Shepherd habited** or **clothed** in a **loose Coat,** and round or **close Kneed Breeches,** supporting a **Shepherds Crook** in his right hand, with his Hat in a **Complemental posture** in his left, all in their proper colours. A Shepherd is, and ever was esteemed a Noble Employ, it being the business of the Patriarchs *Abraham* and *Jacob*, Gen. 47. 3. and who knoweth not, that *David* from following his Ewes, was made King of *Judah*, and gave Laws unto *Israel*, *Psal.* 78. 70. 71. And *Tullius Hostilius* was a Cow-Herd, and *Premislaus* a Keeper of Cattel, the one attained the Government of *Rome*, the other of *Bohemia*. *Tamberlain*, in his Youth was a Hog-herd, or Swineherd, and after by his Vertues, a Stout Warriour and King of *Scythia*: And the Prophet *Amos*, a Herdman, yet called to be an Embassador of the Lord.

XXIII. He beareth Argent, a **Countrey Clown,** with a Staff on his right shoulder, with a Hand Basket hanging on it; and in his left hand, a Kettle or Pan, with a hanging Handle. This is the habit of a Country unbred fellow, which the *Dutch* term the **Boors** of the Countrey, such as have neither Learning, Wit, nor Manners.

A **Churl,** is one of a dogged and evil condition, that fears not God, nor reverences Man; such a person was that churlish *Nabal*, mentioned 1 *Sam.* 25. 3. &c. who though he was able, yet returned a reviling Answer, and was so wicked that none could speak to him; a cocovetous fellow, an inhumane person, one of no pity or manners.

A **Boor,** or **Swain,** is a Countrey Man that hath neither Breeding or Manners, one that lives in the countrey Villages, and knows nothing at all of Civil Behaviour.

A **Rustick Fellow,** one without City or School breeding, without cleanliness, and of a slovenly Speech; one born of mean Parentage, and without Learning, having neither been civilized or brought into good manners.

A **Plebeian,** is one of the meanest commoners, or lowest rank of people, and of a vulgar Speech or Language.

XXIV. He beareth Or, a **Mower,** or a **Man** holding of a **Sithe,** as if he were Mowing, his **Cloaths and Hat,** Russet, the rest proper. This is the crest of *Mower* of *Rushmorer*.

The like to this, having his **Suit per pale** from **Hat to Shoe,** each **counterchanged** from the other A. and S. is the crest of *Ashton* of *Ashton* in *Lancashire*; and of *Chatterton* in the same County. This Mower hath the point of his Sithe turned the wrong way, which if it were to the dexter side, the right hand then should be uppermost; but Pardon is desired for this fault, by the Graver.

Terms used by the Mower and Haymakers.

To **Mow,** is to cut down the Grass with a Sithe.

To **Mowe** with a **Crather,** is to cut Corn that is short in the Straw, with a Sith having a kind of Rack fixed to it for the Ears of Corn to fall on.

A **Day Math,** a **Days Mowing,** is as much as a Mower can cut down in a day.

A **Swaffe,** or **Sithe Swaffe,** as much as the Sithe cuts at one stroak of the Mower.

- - - - - the Sithe stroaks or marks, which are left in the Grass that the Sithe leaves growing.

The **Swarth** - - - - are the rows of the cut Grass as the Sithe leaves it.

Edgrewe, is the Grass left growing after Mowing; some term it the **Latter grass,** or **latter growing.**

Tedding, is with a Pitchfork or Pikill, throwing it abroad out of those rows in which the Sithe left it on the ground.

Turning, is to turn the Grass over, that the under part may wither and dry.

Making it into Wind-rows, is to gather it up with a Rake into long Rows.

Making it into **Grass Cocks,** is from the Windrows to gather it into little heaps, in which it lieth the first day to dry.

Breaking, is to throw the Grass Cocks all abroad.

Turning it again and again, is to cast it over several times, that is may wither and dry throughly: called **Casting** it.

Plecks, is to make it, or turn it into square Beds.

Making it into **midling Cocks.**

Brokeing it again, then putting it into Windrows again.

Making it into **Hay Cocks,** is to raise it into great heap when it is perfect Hay, and well dried; and so remains till it be taken away. Some term this **Cocking** or **Coileing.**

Raking the Bottom Stalls, is to Rake up all the scattered Hay about the Cocks, and cast it thereon.

Loading it, putting the Hay into the Cart.

Pitching it into the Cart.

Lead

Lead it Home, is to draw it to the place it must be kept in.

A **Course**, is every Fleece or turn of Hey laid on the Cart.

A **Binding Course**, is the top course of Hay, which is put on before it be bound on the Cart with the Cart-Rope.

Cast it off the Cart.

Pitch it into the Window.

Tread down the Hay, is treading with the feet the Hay sad down, when it is laid in the Barn, Stable or Hay loft.

A **Mow**, or **Hay Mow**, is several Loads of Hay laid together in a Barn or Stable.

A **Stack**, or **Hay Stack**, is several Loads of Hay laid about; and trodden close together about a Stack Pole, being shaped broad at the bottom and narrow at top; Pyramid-wise.

A **Rick**, or **Hay Rick**, is Hay Mowed without in the open Air, and made after the form of a Barn with a sheeling Ridg.

Treading it, is to sadden it down either in the Mow or Rick, *&c.*

Sweating of the Mow, when the Hay heats in the Mow.

Drawing it out, to draw it out of the Mow or Stack with an Hay hook, to give it to the Cattel, which Husband Men call Foddering of the Cattel or Beasts.

A **Lock of Hay**, as much as hangs together in ones hand.

A **Pikell of Hay**, as much as hangs together on the points or grains of a Pikell.

A **Truss of Hay**, as much as can be tied together in an Hay Rope, for a Man to carry on his shoulder.

A **Jagg of Hay**, is a small Load of Hay.

A **Load of Hay**, is a good Load, containing about 2000 Weight.

XXV. He beareth Azure, a **Thrasher habited**, or **apparelled**, or **cloathed**, of a party colour, each part **counterchanged** of the other Argent and Gules, with his **Flail**, or **Thrashing Instrument** raised over his head, and a **Carbe** at his right foot, Or. This is the crest of that worthy Family, Sir *Cecill Trafford*, of *Trafford*, in *Lancashire*.

Terms used by Husband Men, for the Tillage and Sowing of Corn.

Fallow ground, is ground not of a long time broken up with the Plough; Ground unbroken up.

Marled ground, is laid over with a kind of fat mellow clay.

Mucked grounds, is ground spread over with dung of Beasts.

Faugh ground, or ground lying Faugh, is to let it lie a year or more Unplowed; the same to Fallow.

Ploughed ground, is that as is broken up with the Plow.

Fallowing, is the first Plowing for Barley, or the breaking up of Fallow ground.

Stirring, is the second Plowing for Barley.

Cogling, or **Hurling**, is **Harrowing** after the second Plowing.

Sowing, is the third Plowing for Barley, and the Sowing of it just upon the Plowing.

A **Furrow**, is so much as the Plow turns up at a time, and may be either a broad or narrow Furrow.

A **Rick**, or **Ridges**, or **Buts**, are parcels of Land of several breadths and lengths.

Casting into Ricks or **Ridges**, is to make inch by Plowing.

A **Res-an**, is the distance between two Buts.

An **Headland**, or **Headland**, is the end of a Butt, which the Plow in Plowing turneth up.

Sowing, is the casting Corn upon the ground.

Harrowing, is the renting and tearing of the Earth, that the same may cover the Seed sowed, or Corn cast upon the Earth.

Breaking of Clods, is the bruising of the Earth, which is in hard clods, that in dry Seasons the Harrow cannot rent in pieces.

Weeding, is cutting up the Weeds, left the same overgrow, and so spoil the growth of the Corn.

Harvest time, the time when Corn is ripe.

Hay Harvest, **Barley Harvest**, **Wheat Harvest**, are the times for cutting of Grass, and those kinds of Grain.

Spritt, or **Blasted**, when it is beaten down by Rain, and through moisture begins to grow again.

Full Eared, when it is full and well grown Corn.

Reaping, is cutting down of Ripe Corn.

Laying in Rapes, is laying it in heaps to be bound up.

Gathering and Binding, is making them into Sheats.

The **Band**, is that as ties the Corn into Bundles.

A **Sheat of Corn**, is a Bundle tied together.

An **Hattock**, is three Sheats laid together.

Ridders.

Half Thraves, are 12 Sheats set up together.

A **Thrave**, is 24 Sheats of Corn set up together.

Pitching, putting the Sheats into the Cart, and out of the Cart.

Loading, is the orderly laying the Sheats in the Cart.

Laying, or **Carrying**, is to bring the Corn to the Barn.

Gleaning, or **Leesing**, or **Sengoing**, is gathering of the loose Ears of Corn, after Binding and Loading.

Cutting the Neck, is the last handful of standing Corn, which when it is cut down, the Reapers give a shout, and fall to Eating and Drinking; it being the end of that Mans Harvest for that year.

Housing, **Stacking**, or **Ricking of Corn**, as before in Hay.

Sweating, is when it is hot in the Mow, Stack, or Rick.

Threshing, is the beating of the Corn out of the husk.

Straw, that as the Ears of Corn growth upon.

Blade, the first springing of the Corn out of the ground, which is like Grass.

Chaff, the husk as covers the Corn, making them into Ears.

Winnowing, Winding, or **Haveing,** is to cast the Corn and Chaff into the Wind, to blow and cleanse the chaff from it.

Wanting, or **Wantie Wind,** is to make Wind with a Winnow sheet or course cloth held by two persons.

Ridling, is a sifting the corn from the chaff

Reeving, is to sift the Corn, to cleanse it from small seeds.

Knottings, or **Light Corn,** such as is thin, and not well grown.

Paling of Barley, is the beating of it, to get the beards from it.

Bagging, or **Sacking** of it, is to put the clean Corn into big or little Bags, to carry it into the Garners or Granaries.

XXVI. He beareth Argent, an **Hunter,** or **Hunster,** his **Horn** by his side, and **Staff** upon his shoulder, and **Grey hounds** at his right side, proper, his clothes Azure. This is the coat and crest of the Family of **Hunsters.** Some term this a **Courser,** but then he hath no Horn by his side.

The like Hunter with a **Blood Hound** on his left side, with a Collar and Liame in his left hand, is the Seal of the Town of *Huntington*, as Mr. *Speed* in his Map sets it forth.

A demy Hunter to the Sinister, holding his Staff Bendways before his Breast, with both hands each side his body, with an Insula Cap imbowed and clothed, Gules, is the crest of *Stanzen zu Cunitz.*

XXVII. He beareth Argent, a **Forester** all in green, with his **Steel Bow** on his right shoulder, his **Fauchion** by his side, leading an **Hound Collared and Liamed,** all proper. This is the crest of *Baskervile*, of *Old Withington*, in *Cheshire*. Some do term this a **Forrester** with an **Hound** on the near, or nearer side of him, *&c.* The **Hunter** (aforesaid) with his Greyhound on the farther side of him, *&c.*

The Excellencies which are contained in the Noble and Worthy Exercise of Hunting and Coursing with Greyhounds, is so well known to all Gentlemen who delight in this Pleasant Sport and Healthy Pastime, I shall pass over; and insist only upon some terms formerly omitted in *lib. 2. chap. 9. numb.* 58. And first for the Laws of Coursing, according as they were allowed and commanded by the Duke of *Norfolk* in the Reign of Queen *Elizabeth*, set down by Mr. *Markham.*

Laws of Coursing with Grey-Hounds.

1. It was Ordered, that the **Fewterer,** or Letter loose of the Greyhounds, shall receive the Greyhounds matched to run together, into his Leash, as soon as he comes into the Field, and follow next to the **Hare-finder,** till he come unto the Form; and that no Horseman of Footman, on pain of disgrace to go before them, or on any side, but directly behind, the space of 40 yards or thereabouts.

2. That the **Hare-finder,** shall give the Hare three Soho's before he put her from her Lear, to make the **Greyhounds** gaze and attend her rising.

3. That not above one Brace of Greyhounds do course a Hare at one instant.

4. That the Fewterer shall give the Hare twelve score Law, before he loose the Greyhounds, except it be in danger of loosing sight.

5. That Dog which gives the first **Turn,** if after the Turn there be given neither **Coat, Slip** or **Wrench** extraordinary; he that gives the first Turn shall be held to win the Wager.

6. If one Dog give the first **Turn,** and the other bear the Hare, then he which bore the Hare shall win.

7. If one give both first and last **Turn,** and no other advantage be between them, the odd Turn shall win the Wager.

8. That a **Coat** shall be more than two **Turns,** and a **Go-By,** or the **Bearing** of the Hare, shall be equal with **two Turns.**

9. If neither of the Dogs **Turn** the Hare, then he that **Leadeth** last at the **Covert,** shall be held to win the Wager.

10. If one Dog turn the Hare, serve himself, and Turn her again, those **two Turns** shall be as much as a **Coat.**

11. If all the Course be equal, then he that Bears the **Hare** shall win only; and if she be not **Born,** the Course must be adjudged dead.

12. If he that comes first in to the death of the Hare, takes her up, and saves her from breaking, cherisheth the Dogs, and cleanseth their Mouths from the Wooll, or other filth of the Hare; for such courtesie done, he shall in Right challenge the Hare, but not doing it, he shall have no Right, Priviledge, or Title therein.

13. If any Dog shall take a **Fall** in the **Course,** and yet perform his part, he shall challenge the advantage of a **Turn** more than he giveth.

14. If one Dog turn the **Hare,** serve himself, and give diverse **Coats;** yet in the end stand still in the Field, the other Dog **without Turn** giving, running home to the **Covert;** that Dog that stood still in the Field shall be adjudged to loose the Wager.

15. If any Man shall Ride over a Dog, and overthrow him in his **Course,** (though the Dog were the worse Dog in opinion, yet) the Party for the Offence shall either receive the disgrace of the Field, or pay the Wager; for between the **Parties** it shall be adjudged no Course.

16. Lastly, Those which are chosen **Judges** of the Leash, shall give their Judgment presently, before they depart the Field, or else he in whose default it lieth, shall pay the Wager by a general Vote and Sentence.

☞ Here note, that the Laws of Coursing, may and do often alter according to some Mens swaying Fancies; for it ever lieth in the power of him that hath the office of the **Leash** conferred on him, to make Laws according to the customs of Countreys, and the Rule of Reason.

Sou

Some other Terms and Descriptions relating to Forests and Forest Laws, and the different terms between Hounds and Greyhounds.

A **Forest**, is a place Priviledged by Royal Authority, and differs from a **Park**, **Warren** and **Chase**, and is purposely alotted for the nourishment of Beasts and Fowls thereunto belonging; for which there are certain Laws, Officers, and Orders; part of which are in the great Charter of the Forest.

A **Forester**, is an Officer of the Forest, sworn to preserve the **Vert** and **Venison** therein, and to Apprehend all Offenders, and present them to the Forest Courts, to the end they may be punished according to their misdemeanors.

A **Purlieu**, is all that ground adjoining to Forests, which being made Forest by the King; was afterwards by the King, severed again from the same Forest, and made Perambulations.

A **Purlieu-Man**, is he that hath ground within the **Purlieu** of 40 *s.* Freehold. And such an one with some caution may Hunt within his own **Purlieu**.

A **Regarder**, is an Officer in the Kings Forest, that is sworn to take care of the **Vert** and **Venison**, to view and enquire of all Offences committed therein, and of all Concealments, and whither all other Officers do execute their Office or not.

A **Raunger**, whose Office is to look after the **Purlieu**, and to drive back the Deer into the Forest again; and to see, hear, and enquire after Offenders, and to present their Offences.

A **Verderor**, is an Officer of the Kings Forest, and chosen by the Freeholders of the County where the Forest is, by the Kings Writ directed to the Sherriff for that purpose; such are chiefly to look after the Wood and Grass in the Forest.

An **Agistor**, is an Officer of the Forest, that takes in to Feed the Cattel of Strangers, and receives for the Kings use all such **Tack-Money** as becomes due from those Strangers.

Woodgeld, is the gathering or cutting of Wood in the Forest, or the Money paid for it to the use of the Forester, or an Immunity for this by the Kings Grant.

A **Chase**, is a place used for the Receipt of Deer, and Beasts of the **Forest**; it differs from a **Forest** and a **Park**; it may be in the hands of a Subject, which a Forest in its proper nature cannot be; neither is it inclosed as a Park always is; it hath a larger compass, more Store of Game, and more Keepers and Overseers than the Park.

Expeditate, is the cutting out the Ball of the foot of great Dogs in the Forest (as some say) yet others, that it is the cutting off the three fore-claws by the skin; and that the Owner of every such Dog unexpeditated in the Forest, shall forfeit 3 *s.* 4 *d.*

Fence Month hath 31 days, begins 15 days before *Midsummer*, and ends 15 days after; in which time it is unlawful for any to Hunt in the Forest, or to go among the Deer to disquiet them, because it is the time of Fawning.

Frank Chase, is a liberty of Free Chase in a circuit annexed to the Forest, whereby all Men that have ground within the circuit of the Forest are forbidden to cut down Wood, or discover, *&c.* within the view of the Forest, though it be his own Demesne.

Green Hue, or **Vert**, they both signifie every thing that doth grow or bear green Leaves within the Forest, that may cover or hide the Deer.

Over-Vert, is all manner of high Wood.

Nether-Vert, is all sorts of Under-wood.

Cablish, is all sorts of Brushwood.

Hongeld, is a Tax within the Forest for all manner of Horned Beasts.

Footgeld, is an Amercement on such as live within the Forest, for not **expeditating** their Dogs; and to be quit of **Footgeld**, is a priviledge to keep Dogs there unlawed, without Punishment or Controllment.

Pawnage, is Money taken by the Agistors for the feed of Hogs with the Mast or Acorns of the Forest: But (Mr. *Crompton* saith) it is most properly the Mast, Woods, Lands, or Hedged Rows, or Money due to the Owners of the same for it.

A **Scotale**, is where any Officer of the Forest keeps an Ale-house in the Forest by colour of his Office, causing Men to come to his House, and spend their Money there, for fear of having a displeasure; but this is forbidden by *Ch. rta Foresta.*

Perambulation, is the measuring and setting down the bounds and limits of the Forest.

Draft of the Forest, is an exact view and examination taken at certain times, as occasion shall serve, to know what Beasts are there; that none Common there but such as have right; and that the Forest be not overcharged with the Beasts of Foreigners.

An **Assart**, is a great Offence committed in the Forest, by grubbing up the Woods, Coverts and Thickets, and making them plain, as Arable Land, or the like.

Minoverie, is a Trespass or Offence committed by some Engine set up in the Forrest to catch Deer or the like.

Tritis, is a Freedom that one hath from holding a Greyhound in ones hand when the Lord of the Forrest is Hunting there, or be amerced for his default.

Protoforestarius, the first or chief Forester, this was a great Officer heretofore in *Windsor Forest.*

Stablestand, is when one is found standing in the Forest with his Bow ready bent, or Gun prepared to shoot at any Deer, or with his Greyhound in a Lease ready to slip.

Swainmote, or **Swanimote**, is a Court appointed to be held thrice in a year within a Forest, the first 15 days before *Michaelmas*, the second about *Martinmas*, and the third 15 days before St. *John Baptist.*

Chiminage, is taken by Foresters in Fee throughout their Bailywick for Bushes, Timber, *&c.* And signifieth the same with **Toll**.

Afforest, is to turn Lands into Forrest.

Disafforest, or **Disforest**, is to turn Land from being Forest to other uses.

Proper Terms used for the Noises of Hounds.

We say that Hounds, **They Challenge**, that is when they open and make a noise at first cast off, having found some Game or Chase.

They Bawl, when they are too busie before they find the scent good.

They Babble, if they be too busy after they find good scent.

They are in full Cry, if they run it endways orderly, making it good, and then hold in together merrily.

They Lapse, when Spaniels open in the String (or a Greyhound in his course.

They Plod, is when Hounds hang behind, and beat too much upon the scent in one place.

They Bay, is when they have earthed a Vermine, or brought a Deer, or Boar, or such like, to turn head against them.

Different Terms in Hunting, for Hounds and Greyhounds.

A **Brace** of Greyhounds, is two.
A **Couple** of Hounds, is two.
A **Leace** of Greyhounds is three.
A **Couple and half** of Hounds is three.
A **Kennel of Hounds**, or
A **Pack of Beagles**, when many together.

Entries, are such places where Deer have lately passed into Thickets or Underwoods, by which we judg their greatness; and there put in the Hounds or Beagles, to take their view.

They draw amiss, when Hounds have the scent of their Chase contrary, as to run it up the Wind, when they should it down.

Hunt change, when either Hounds or Beagles take fresh scent, hunting another chase, until they stick, and have it again.

Hunt Counter, when Hounds hunt it by the Heel.

Hunt the Foile, when the Chase goes off, and comes on the same ground again, traversing it over and over to deceive the Hounds.

Ringwalks, usually called **Dew-rounds**, which are things made by Huntsmen, when they go drawing in their Springs.

Pickhead, is the first head of a Fallow Deer.

Run Mute, when Hounds or Beagles run long without opening, or making any cry.

Run Riot, when Hounds run at a whole Herd of Deer.

Draw on the Slot, is when the Hounds touch the scent, and draw on till they rouze or put up the chase.

Deers Gate, or to know a Deers bigness by his **Gate**, is by the Huntsmans observing the **Slot** or footsteps of the Deer.

She carryeth, is when a Hare runneth on rotten ground, or in the Frost, sometimes it sticks to her feet.

Yearn, is when Beagles Bark and Cry at their Prey.

A **Spitter**, is by some called an Hart of the first Year.

A **Picker**, is an Huntsman on Horseback.

Wiles, are any kinds of Engines to take Deer withal.

A **Vauntlay**, is when Hounds or Beagles are set in a readiness, expecting the Chase to come by, and then cast them off before the rest come in.

A **Blemish**, is when Hounds or Beagles find where the Chase hath been, and made a proffer to enter, but have returned.

The Call, is a Lesson Blowed on the Horn to comfort the Hounds.

A Recheat, a Lesson also on the Horn.

The **Mort** or **Death**, is a Lesson blown at the Death of any Deer. There are several other Lessons Blown on the Horn, which you may find. See in the following notes, with the names of the Notes.

—	⌒	ȯ	⌒ȯ	⌒ȯ
Tone	*Ton*	*Tavern*	*Ton-tavern*	*Ton-ton-tavern*

To call the Company in the Morning, *Tone tavern tavern tavern tone ton-tavern.*

The Stroaks to the Field, *Ton-ton-tavern tone ton-tavern ton-tavern ton-tavern tone tavern tavern tavern tone.*

To uncouple the Hounds, *tone tavern tavern tavern tavern tavern ton-tavern tone.*

When the Hounds hunt a Game unknown, *ton-ton-tavern tone tavern tavern tavern tavern tavern, tavern ton-ton-tavern tavern tavern.*

A Recheat, when they hunt a right game, *ton-ton-tavern tone, ton-ton tavern ton-ton-tavern ton-ton-tavern tavern tavern tavern, ton-ton-tavern tavern ton-ton-tavern tone ton-ton-tavern ton-ton-tavern ton-ton-tavern tavern tavern tavern.*

A double Recheat.

The trebble Recheat.

The Earthing of a Fox if recoverable, *tone tavern tavern tavern tavern tavern ton-ton-tavern tone, ton-ton-tavern ton-ton-tavern ton ton-tavern tavern tavern tavern.*

If not to call away, *ton-tavern tone ton-tavern.*

The Death of an *Hare* *tone tavern tavern tavern tavern tavern tavern tavern tavern tavern tavern tavern tavern tavern tone.*

The Death of a Buck, *Tone ton-tavern ton-tavern ton-tavern ton-tavern ton-tavern ton-tavern ton-tavern ton-tavern ton-tavern ton-tavern ton-tavern ton-tavern tone.*

The Death of a Stag or Hart, *tone ton-ton-tavern ton-ton-tavern ton-ton-tavern ton-ton-tavern ton-ton-tavern ton-ton tavern ton-ton-tavern ton-ton-tavern ton-ton-tavern ton-ton-tavern ton-ton-tavern ton-ton-tavern tone.*

The Death of a Fox, *tone tavern tavern tavern tone tavern tavern tavern tavern tone tavern tavern tavern tone tavern tavern tavern tone.*

The Call for a Keeper in Park or Forest, *ton-tavern tavern ton-tavern, ton-tavern tone ton-tavern, ton-tavern*

ton-tavern tone tavern tavern tavern tone.

The Prize of a Heart-Royal, *tone tavern tavern tavern tavern tone tavern tavern tavern tavern tone tavern tavern tavern tavern tone tavern tavern tavern tavern tone tavern tavern tavern tavern tone tavern tavern tavern tavern tone tavern tavern tavern tavern.*

The Stroaks for the Terriers when the Fox is Earthed, *ton-tavern tone ton-ton-tavern ton-ton-tavern ton-ton-tavern ton ton ton tone.*

To draw the company out of the Field, *tone ton ton ton ton-tavern ton-ton-tavern tone.*

A Recheate or Farewell at the parting, *ton tone ton tone ton-tavern ton tone tone-ton, ton tone ton tone ton-tavern ton tone ton tone ton tone ton-tavern ton tone ton tone ton tone ton-tavern ton tone ton tone ton tone ton tone, ton tone ton tone ton-tavern ton tone tone.*

Ton tone ton tone ton-tavern ton tone tone-ton, ton tone ton tone ton-tavern ton tone ton tone tone ton ton-tavern ton tone ton tone ton tone ton-tavern ton tone ton tone ton tone.

XXVIII. He beareth Argent, a **Falconer Cloathed in Gray**; with a **Glove** on his right Hand, with a **Falcon** upon, his **Lewre** by his side, and his **Staff** in his left Hand holding it cross his Body in Bend sinister, all proper.

For the Terms of Art used by **Falconers**, and things necessary and useful for Hawks are set down to the full in *lib.* 2. *chap.* 11. *numb.* 62. *sect.* 7.

XXIX. He beareth Gules, a **Cooke** with a **Cap**, **Sleeves**, and **Apron**, Argent; **Waistcoat** and **Breaches**, Azure: **Hose** of the second, **Shoes** Sable, holding of a **Dish of Meat** between his Hands proper. A **Dresser** fixed to the Dexter side Or.

Cooks Dressers and **Tables**, are Emblems of **Good Housekeeping** and **Hospitality**; a thing in this age much commended, but little practized. And seeing I am fallen upon this subject, it will not be amiss to give some little touch by the way, of the bounty of some Princes and Nobles in their Feasts and Hospitality towards Strangers in former times: Whereof I find King *Solomon* to be the most famous President; for his daily expences, that I read off wherein he exceeded all others that preceeded or succeeded him, as we may see 1. *Kin.* 4. 22. 23 where it is said: *And Solomons Victuals for one Day were thirty Measures of fine Flower, and thirty Measures of Meal, ten fat Oxen, and twenty Oxen of the Pastures, and one hundred Sheep, besides Harts, and Roebucks, and Fallow Deer, and fatted Fowl.*

We read also of a notable Feast kept by *Josiah* King of *Judah*, *viz.* The Feast of the Passover, of which it is said that there was no such Feast as that from the Days of the Judges, nor in all the Days of the Kings of *Israel*, and of the Kings of *Judah*. For *Josiah* gave to the People, Sheep, Lambs and Kids for all the Passover, even to all that were present, to the number of thirty thousand, and three thousand Bullocks; and his Princes offered willingly to the Priest and People eight thousand Bullocks, and seven thousand six hundred Sheep, as we read 2. *Kin.* 23. 21. *&c.* 2. *Chro.* 35. 8, 9. 18.

And *Darius* who was the Soveraign Monarch of the *Medes*, *Persians*, and *Caldeans* in the third year of his Raign made a Royal Feast for all his Princes and Servants even all the power of *Persia* and *Media*, and for the Captains and Governers of an hundred and seven and twenty Provinces, which were before him. And for to shew the Riches and Glory of his Kingdom, and the Honor of his Great Majestie, this Feasting he kept for an hundred and fourscore days. And when those days were expired, the King made a Feast for all the People great and small that were in *Shushan* the Seat of his Royal Palace for seven days, as we may read in the Book of *Ester chap.* 1. Where he is called by the name of *Ahashuerosh*, and of some Historians is supposed to be *Artaxerxes*, Son of *Darius Hystaspis*.

From him we descend to the Hospitality of the ancient Kings of this Land: I find that King *Lud* commanded his Houshold Officers, to have the Table in the Hall daily covered from seven of the Clock in the Morning to seven in the Evening. His daily Diet was not much in rare and delicate Meats; but that he kept it constantly with good and wholsome Viands and such Cates as could then be gotten. And at the four great Feasts, he made Proclamation in the Country for all manner of People to come thither.

Also it is mentioned that King *Cassibelane* made a Royal Feast at the second triumph over the *Romans*: in which he gave out his Royal command to all the Gentiles of *Brittany*, to come with their Wives to Magnifie his Feast: for which he slew Forty thousand Kine, and Oxen, one hundred thousand Sheep, thirty thousand Deer, and other Wild Beasts of the Woods, besides the diverse kinds of Pullin, Coneys, Wild and Tame Fowl, both of Sea and Land, with much other purveiance of Victuals, with many Disguisings, Plays, Minstrelsie and sports too long to recite.

But to leave all others I shall only give a relation of one Feast more, made by *George Nevill* Arch Bishop of *York*; at the time of his Consecration, c[illegible] Installation, 7. *E.* 4. about 1466. at which there was provided this Provision,

Wheat, 300 Quarters.	Woodcocks, 400.
Ale, 300 Tuns.	Plovers, 400.
Wine, 104 Tuns.	Curlewes, 100.
Ipocras, 1 Pipe.	Quailes, 100.
Oxen, 80.	Egrets, 1000.
Wild-Bull, 6.	Rees, 200.
Muttons, 1004.	Harts, Bucks and Roes, 400 and odd.
Veal, 5300.	Pasties of Venison cold, 4000.
Porks, 300.	Pasties of Venison hot, 1500.
Geese, 3000.	Dishes of Gelly Pastel, 1000
Capons, 2300.	Plain Dishes of Gelly, 1000.
Piggs, 2000.	Cold Tarts, 4000.
Peacocks, 100.	Cold Custards, 4000.
Cranes, 200.	Hot Custards, 2000.
Kids, 200.	Pykes, 300.
Chickens, 2000.	Breams, 1300.
Pigeons, 4000.	Seales, 8.
Conies, 4000.	Purposes, 4.
Bitters, 204.	
Mallards and Teals, 4000.	
Hearnsewes, 400.	Chief Cooks, 62.
Pheasants, 200.	Servants and Broach-turners, 515.
Partriges, 500.	

The

The Officers of the said Feast.

The Earl of *Warwick* Steward.
The Earl of *Bedford* Treasurer.
The Lord *Hastings* Controller.
The Lord *Willoughby* Carver.
Sir *John Buckingham* Cup-Bearer.
Sir *Richard Strangways* Sewer.
Sir *Walter Morley* Chief Marshal of the Hall, with eight other Knights Marshals, besides Esquires and Grooms.
Sir *John Malvery* Panter.
Serjeant of the Kings Ewry, the *Ewer*.
John Grayslock and *John Nevill*, Keepers of the Cubbord.
John Braynock Surveyor through the Hall.

The Ordering and Sending up of the Grand Feast abovesaid.

First Course.	Second Course.	Third Course.
Brawn,	Gelly pacted Pottage.	Blanke Desire.
Furmenty viant Potage.	Rassens Pottage.	Dates in Compost.
Pennade purple Potage.	Venison Baked.	Bitters Roste.
Hare powdred.	Peacocks in Rapil.	Pheasants.
Roe Powdred.	Conyes Reverse.	Egrets.
Pheasant Intrail.	Lardis of Venison.	Rabbets.
Swans.	Partridges.	Quailes. Martins.
Capons in half Grease.	Woodcocks.	Great Birds.
Heronsewes.	Plovers.	Larks.
Carpet of Venison.	Breames in Spile.	Porpose Roste.
Pike in Harblet.	Pumis Verte.	Leach Blanke.
Leach Cant.	Leiche Sipers.	Fruter Crispin.
Frutters.	Fruter Napkin.	Quince Baked.
Venison Baked.	Dates in Molde.	Chamblett Vial.
Custard Planted.	Scatines Ryal.	Suttlety.
A Suttlety.	A Suttlety.	Wafers and Ipocras plenty.

Terms for Carving and Sewing.

To Carve, is to Cut up a Dish of Meat, but according to the Meats use these Terms for their **Carving**,

Break that Deer.
Leach that Brawn.
Unlace that Coney.
Thine that Salmon.
String that Lamprey.
Splat that Pike.
Sauce that Plaice and Tench.
Splay that Bream.
Side that Haddock.
Tusk that Barbell.
Culpon that Trout.
Fin that Chevin.
Transon the Eel.
Tranch that Sturgeon.
Tire that Egg.
Undertranch that Purpus.
Tame that Crab.
Barb that Lobster.
Dight that Crevis.
Rear that Goose.
Lift that Swan.
Sauce that Capon.
Spoil that Hen.
Frust that Chicken.
Unbrace that Duck or Mallard.
Dismember that Hern.
Display that Crane.
Disfigure that Peacock.
Unjoynt that Bittern.
Untach that Curlew, and Brew.
Allay that Pheasant.
Wing that Patridge, and Quail.
Mince that Plover.
Thigh that Pigeon, and Woodcock.
Cut up that Turky and Bustard.
Break that Teal or Sarcel.

Other Bills of Fare for Grand Feasts, and how to set the Meat in Order.

Novembers Feast.

Oysters.
Brawn and Mustard.
A Capon in Stewed Broth with Marrow-Bones.
A Goose in Stuffado, or two Ducks.
A Grand Sallet.
A Shoulder of Mutton with Oysters.
A Bisk Dish baked, or
A Chine of Beef roasted.
Minced Pies or Chewits of Capon, Tongue, or Veal.
A Chine of Pork.
A Pastie of Venison.
A Swan or two Geese roasted.
A Loyn of Veal.
A *French* Pie of diverse compounds.
A Roast Turkey.
A Pigg Roasted.
2 Brangeese Roasted, one larded.
Sowce Veal.
2 Capons Roasted, one larded.
A Custard double bordered.

The

The second Course.

Oranges and Lemons.
A Sowced Pigg.
A Young Lamb or Kidd roast.
2 Shovelers.
2 Herns, one larded.
A Potatoe Pie.
Duck and Mallard, one larded.
A Sowced Turbet.
2 Pheasants, one larded.
Marinated Carp, or Bream, or Pike.
Partridges, some Larded.
Made Dish of Spinage Cream Baked.
A Rowl of Beef.
Teales roast, some larded.
A cold Goose Pye.
A Sowced Mullet and Bace.
A Quince Pye.
Curlews, some larded.
Dried Neats-Tongues.
A Dish of Anchovis.
A Jole of Sturgeon.
Jellies and Tarts Royal.
Ginger-bread, and other Fruits according to the Season.

A Christmas Days Feast.

Oysters.
A Collar of Brawn.
Stewed Broth of Mutton and Marrow-Bones.
A Grand Sallet.
A Pottage of Capons.
A Breast of Veal in stuffado.
Boiled Partridges.
A Chine or Surloin of Beef roasted.
Mince Pyes.
A Jegote of Mutton with Anchovis Sauce,
A made Dish of Sweet-breeds.
A Swan roast.
A Pastie of Venison.
A Kid with a Pudding in his Belly.
A stake Pye.
A Haunch of Venison roasted.
A Turky roast, stuck with Cloves.
A made Dish of Chickens in puff Paste.
2 Geese roast, one larded.
2 Capons, one larded.
A Custard.

The second Course.

Oranges and Lemons.
A young Lamb or Kid.
4 Rabbits, two larded.
A Pigg sauced with Tongues.
Ducks, some larded.
2 Pheasants, one larded.
A Swan or Goose Pye cold.
Partridges, some larded.
A made Dish in puff paste.
Bolonia Sausages. } in a Dish.
Anchovis.
Mushroomes.
Cavieare.
Pickled Oysters.
Teales, some larded.
A Gammon of *Westphalia* Bacon.
Plovers, some larded.
A Quince or Warden Pye.
Woodcocks, some larded.
A Tart in puff paste.
Preserved Fruit and Pippins.
A Dish of Larks.
Neats-Tongues.
Sturgeon, and Anchovis, and Jellies.

Other Bills of Fare for every Season in the Year, also how to set forth Meat in Order accordingly.

First Course.

Oysters, Muskmelons.

1. Brawn and Mustard, Eggs and Collops, Hasty Pudding, Pudding Boiled, a Pot Ball or Dumpling or baked of Bread, or Rice, Puddings in skins of Blood and Oate-Meal.
2. Boiled Capon in stewed Broth, Fresh Neats-Tongues and Udder, Hens and Bacon, Beef and Cabbage, Capon pottage, Panado, Compound-posset or white Broth, Olio, Gruel, Furmenty, Honey Sops, Soops, Caudles of Oate-Meal or Eggs, Alebury.
3. Turkies in Stuffado, Hash of Rabbits, Ducks in Stuffado, Haunch of Venison Roasted, Scotch Collops of Beef, Mutton or Veal.
4. A Hash or a Shoulder of Mutton, a Grand Fricasee, Loyn of Pork, Hash Capons, Calves Head stewed, Bisk.
5. Geese boiled, a Grand Sallet.
6. A Boiled Meat of Ducks, Roast Pork.
7. A Marrow-Pudding baked.
8. A Surloyn of roast Beef, a Chine or Ribb of Beef.
9. Minced Pyes, Steak Pye, or Hare, Pumpion, Artichoke, Umble, Potatoes, an Oline or Pallate Pie, Chaldron Pye, Giblet Pie, Calves head or feet Pie.
10. Loyn of Veal, Roast Venison.
11. A Pasty of Venison or Mutton.
12. A Pig Roasted, Leg of Mutton Roasted, Hare Roasted.
13. Geese Roasted, Swan Roasted.
14. Capons or Hens Roasted.

Second Course.

Oranges and Lemmons.

1. Lamb or Kid, Sallet of Herbs, Pease and *French* Beans, Rabbits.
2. Sowced Pig, Capon, Swines head and feet.
3. Rabbits roasted and larded, Widgeons, Teal, Dotterells, Curlews, Ruffs.
4. Ducks roasted and larded, Shovellers, Gulls, Herns, Cranes, Bittorn.
5. Teal or other Fowle, Woodcocks, Quailes.
6. A made Dish or *Batalia* Pie, Sweet-bread Pie, Fried Fish or Buttered Fish of any sort: as Pike, Salmon, Dace, Mullet, Turbut, Ray, Lump Fish, Plaice, Flounders, Soals, Lampry, Eels.
7. Neats-Tongues, Florentine of Tongues.
8. Pigeons, wild or tame larded: Olines or Plovers, Sparrows, Black-birds, Thrushes, Fieldfare, Railes.
9. Sowced Capon, Sowced Eels or other Fish, Ray, Salmon, Conger.
10. Pickled Mushrooms, Oysters and Anchovis, Lobsters.
11. Orangado Pie, or Tarts of green Pease, Hips, Rice, Cheries, Goosberies, Plums, Prunes, Barberies with wet Suckers, Pippin Pie, Warden Pie, Quince Pie, Codling Tarts of diverse colours in puff paste, Quaking Pudding.
12. Stur-

12. Sturgeon, Collar of Beef, Turbut, Pickled Puffins, Scallops, Cockles, Muscles, Sprawns, Shrimps, Crabs, Tortoise, Craw-fish, Snails.
13. *Westphalia* Bacon, *Bolonia* Sausages.
14. Turkey or Goose Pie, Marinate Flounders, Artichoke Pie, Smelts, cold Hare Pie, Selsey Cockles.
15. Jelly of five or six colours, Tansies, Fritters, Pancakes, Balls toasted.
16. Creams made of Codlings, Quince, Plums, Goosberries or Almonds, Clouted Cream, Snow Cream, fresh Cheese and Cream, Sillabubs & Cream, Egg Pies.
17. Custards, White pots, Fools, Leach, Blamangers.
18. Lily Tarts of diverse colours, Tarts Royal, Codlings and Cream, Cheese.

Third Course.

1. March-pan set with several sorts of Sweet-Meats.
2. Preserves or wet Sweet-Meats in Plates as, Pears, Plums, Cherries, Quinces, Grapes Respass, Pippins, Oranges, Lemmons, young Walnuts, Apricocks, Peaches, *&c.* with their Syrup a-out them.
3. **Dried Sweet-meats & Sucketts** of Oranges Lemmons Citron: or, Conserves, or **Candies**, and **Rock-Candies** of Cherries, Apricocks, Plums, Damasius, Pippins, Pears, Angelica, Rosemary and Marygold Flowers, Pippins, Pears, Apricocks, Plums, Ringo roots: or **Marmalet** of Quinces, Damasins, Plums, Oranges, **&c.** **Pastes** made of Citron: Pippins, Apricocks, Rasbery, English Currans.
4. Bikets, Mackroons, naple Bisket, *Italian* Bisket, Comfeits round, Longs and Loseng like, Gingerbread, Almond Cakes, Apricock Cakes, Losenges, Quince Chips, Orange cakes, Marchpane, Collops.
5. Sugar cakes, Iamballs, Iemellocs, Sugar Plate, Plum and Rasbury cakes, Cheese cakes.
6. Tree Fruit as Apples and Pears of diverse kinds, Cheries, Plums, Strawberies, Currans, Raspes, Walnut, Chestnuts, Filbernuts, Dates, Grapes, Figgs, Oranges, Lemmons, Apricocks, Peech, Dried Raisins and Currans, Prunes, Almonds blanched

According as the season is for them, all which several things are mixt and interchangably set on the Table according to the discription of the Gentleman Sewer.

Cookery is an extraordinary, and an ordinary Art; the first exemplifieth in Dishes of such high Prices which none but Noble Hospitalities can reach unto, and those only Illustrate by new Terms of Art, more then any substantial sollid Dish-meats, which in truth for all their costlinesse are meer Kick-shews, rather to please the Pallet with a dellicate Ho-goo, then wholesome feeding. Whereas, the second may with less labour be better managed for the general good, and Treatments of meaner expences, given to Friends, Allies, and acquaintances; having handsome and relishing entertainment throughout all the Season in the Year: For I have found by Experience that some Country Cooks have out-gone, with mixtures easily prepared, and not too chargable to the Purse, those who have with cost made Hogg-podg Dish-meats, neither pleasing to the Pallet, or of credit to the Masters: But this is none of my business.

I have generally noted in great Feasts, Cooks have sent up their Dish-meats to the Table *ad Libitum*, according to their own will; some first Boiled Meats, then Baked Meats, then Roast Meats all together, *&c.* Other Cooks (but Gentlemen Sewers rather, whose Office it is to place Dishes on the Table) will send them, one Boiled, another Baked, another Roasted, *&c.* Alternately Dish for Dish till the Table be furnished: and for that end I have aforesaid gathered a Feast of twelve, fourteen, sixteen, or twenty Dishes for a considerable Feast for all times in the Year, noteing several Dish-meats under one and the same figure, in the first and second Course, intimateing thereby that if the Season of the Year will not afford one kind, it is probable it may another, except in cases of scarcity, or places of great distance.

But let Cooks study new Dish-meats, and work out their Brains when they have done all they can, there is but four sorts of Meat which they can properly, and with safety work upon, *viz.* Flesh of **Beasts**, Flesh of **Fowle**, Flesh of **Fish**, and Field **Fruits**: and these again are according to their kinds, either **Stewed**, **Boiled**, **Parboiled**, **Fryed**, **Broiled**, **Roasted**, **Baked**, **Hashed**, **Pickled**, **Souced**, or made into into Sweet-Meats. *Nil Ultra.*

Sauces of all sorts, and of what Compounded.

Also Sauces of all sorts, and for most Dish-meats of **Flesh, Fish or Fowl**, are by the Cooks Art compounded of these Ingredients.

Fatnings, as Butter, Gravey, Hogs-Grease, Sewet, Marrow, Lard.

Liquids, as Muskadine, Sack, Claret, White-wine, Sider, Vergis, Vineger, Aliger, Cream, Milk, Sallet-Oyle, Pickles of several pickled things, Water, Jellies of several sorts, Strong-Broth.

Thicknings, as Eggs, Bread or Sops, Biskets, Onions, Leeks, Chibals, Garlick, Artichoke bottoms, Sweet herbs chopped, Asperagus, Skerrets, Parsnips, Turnips, Green Pease, Colliflowers, Apples, Samphir, Anchovis, Blood, Capers, Olins, Mustard.

Sweetnings, as Sugar, Cinamon, Cloves, Mace, Pepper, Nutmeg, Salt, Goosberies, Barberries, Grapes, Raisins, Currans, Plums, Dates, Oranges and Lemmons and them candied, Mellacattors.

It is an easie thing to be a famous Cook, when he flows in all things to his desire; but he is the best Cook that shews his Art with small cost, and little expence of Fire.

But for Drink to these sorts of Meat we must go to the Buttler, Yeoman of the Wine-Sellar and compounder of Liquors, and they will tell us that they have in their Custody these several sorts of Drinks.

Table-Beer.	Mum.
Ale.	Sack.
Sage-Ale.	White-wine.
Wormwood-Ale.	Claret.
Scurvy-Grass, or Purle.	Curran Wine.
Mint-Ale.	Cowslip Wine.
Beer, mild and stale.	*Jamaica* Claret.

Punch.

Punch.
Ipocras.
Muskadin.
Meath or Mead.
Metheglin.
Usquebach.
Stomach - Water.
Aqua Mirabilis.
Aqua Vitæ.
Aqua Cœlestis.
Coffee.
Chacolet.
Tea.
Sharbett.
Raisin Wine.
Rasberry Wine.
Gillyflower Wine, *&c.*

A Bill of Fare for Lent - time, *or other Fish or Fast - Days.*

First Course.

Oysters if in Season.
A Pudding Pie.
Eggs and Butter.
Rice Pottage or Barly broth
Milk or Pease pottage.
Stewed Oysters, Muscles, Cockles, Wilks.
Buttred Eggs on Toasts.
Buttred Turnips, Carrets, Parsnips, Potatos.
Spinage Sallet boiled, or other cold or pickled Sallets.
Boiled Rochet, or Gurnnet, or Flounders.
A Jole of Ling.
Stewed Carp.
Oysters Chewits.
Boiled Pike.
Roast Eels, or fresh Herring.
Haddock, fresh Cod, or Whiting.
Eel or Carp Pie.
Made dish of Spinage.
Salt Eels.
Souced Turbut or Salmon.

Second Course.

Fried Soals.
Stewed Oysters in Scollop shells.
Fried Smelts.
Congers head boiled.
Baked Dish of Potatoes or Oyster Pie.
A Spitch - cock of Eels.
Quice Pie, or Tarts.
Buttred Crabs.
Fried Flounders or Flooks.
Jole of fresh Salmon.
Jole of Salmon.
Fried Turbet.
Cold Salmon Pie.
Fried Skirts.
Souced Conger.
Lobsters, or Crabs, or Spawn.
Sturgeon.

The Names of Several Dish - Meats and Cooks Terms Alphabetically.

Andolian, is a kind of Pudding made of Hogs Guts filled with Spices, and one Gut drawn over another: some writ it **Annolia.**

Almon Bread, bread made of Almon.

Angelot, is Curds made of Milk Cream and Runnet, into thin Cheese.

Alebury, Ale boiled with Sugar, Mace and Mancher.

A-la-Hugenotte, a Dish of Eggs dressed up with Gravey of roast Beef with boiled Mushromes and other Spices.

A-la-Sauces, Sauce made after the *French* Almaigne or *German* fashion.

A-la-Doode, is a *French* way of ordering any large Fowl, or Leg of Mutton, to be eaten cold with Mustard and Sugar: the thing is seasoned with Salt and Spice, Larded and Baked and kept cold.

A-la-Mode way, is the new or *French* way of dressing all manner of boiled or baked Meat.

Buttered Ale, is Ale boiled with Butter, Eggs and Sugar.

Batalia Pie, the same order of meat as in a Bisk, and put in a Pie.

Basting of Meat, is to Butter meat roasting at the Fire to keep it from burning, some do it with Butter, others clarified Suet, Claret Wine, Water and Salt, Cream and Eggs, *&c.*

Broth, is the liquor flesh is boiled in, being thickned with herbs and groats.

Beef, the flesh of Ox, Cow, or Bull.

Biskque or **Bisk**, a Dish-meat made of a Rack of Veal, a Knuckle of Mutton, Pigeons, Chickens, a Roast Capon minced: Sweet - breads, Marrow, Artichokes (and what you will) boiled or stewed together with Spices in water, and so Dished up by Art.

Bisque, or **Bisk Pie**; is made of the like Ingredients either of Flesh or Fish.

Bisket Bread or **Cakes**, is made of Flower, Sugar, Eggs, Carroway seeds, baked.

Blanch, is to take the skin of Almonds, also it is used for the taking off the top crust of Bread, and Lamb stones blanched, is to take the skin off, and blanch a Neats - Tongue.

Blanch Manchet, is a fried Pudding made of Eggs and grated Bread.

Boile, is to put any meat into water, in a Pot over a Fire.

Boile Meat, are all boiled Dish - meats.

Blanchmanger, a made Dish of Cream, Eggs and Sugar, put into an open puff paste bottom, with a loose cover.

Bodo Lardero, is an *Italian* term, and is the ordering of Tongues, Noses, Lips and Pallate of Beefs, by boiling and blanching them whole, by halfs or Gobbins: and served up in strong broth with Bacon interlarded.

Bolonia Sausages, these are only made in *September*, they are Beef Guts filled with minced Pork and stampt: to which mixt Pepper, Cloves, Nutmegs, Salt, and Salt - Peter, Caraway seeds, and Cinamon: tied about a Finger long.

Blamanger, is a Capon roast or boile minced small, planched Almonds beaten to paste, Cream, Eggs, Grated Bread, Sugar and Spices boiled to a pap.

Breading of Meat, is Grate Bread and mix it with Flower, or do each it sel: strowing it one meat roulled, and ready to draw of the spit.

Balls, those to fry are compounded, Flesh or Fish, old Cheese, Sugar Currans, made into paste: of which little Pasties, Toasts, Scallops and such like, are made for Garnishing: see **Ransoles.**

Balls or Pot Balls to eat, see **Dumpling.**

Batter, is Flower Milk, Eggs and Spices, for the making of Pancakes, Fritters, and several other things for Feasts.

Bovillon, is a kind of Broth or boiled meat made of several things.

Chips or *Italian* Chips, is a paste made of fine Flower Gum Dragon steeped in Rose Water, rowled thin and cut them in peeces, and speck them with diverse colours.

Collar of Beef, is Beef half boiled and rowled up with Spices and sweet Herbs chopped small in it, and then baken in a Pot: Eels or Congers are so collared and Souced.

Calves Chaldron, the Intrails of a Calfe.

Chine, the Back-bone of any Beast or Fish.

Clouted Cream, is Milk, Cream and Rose water, get over a soft Fire for a Day and Night and it will be thick, then Sugar it well; it is made of Cream alone gon thick, which in some places is called thick Milk, or Bono-thlober.

Capilotadoe, or a made Dish-meat, or kind of Custard, called a Fool.

Collops, slices of Bacon.

Custard, open Pies, or without lids, filled with Eggs and Milk: called also Egg-Pie.

Cheesecakes, a case of paste filled with Cheese Curds Currans, Eggs, Spice, with other Ingrediences made by Art.

Cream and **fresh Cheese,** is Cheese, Curds and Cream.

Cream, is the top or setiling of new Milk: there is Rice Cream, Piramidis Cream, Sack Cream, *&c.* made by Art with those ingradiences.

Cracknels, is a Bread made of fine Flower, Coriander seeds, Sugar and Currans, made in form of a Pie.

Carbolion, is a liquor of Wine Water and Salt to boile Fish in.

Caudle, is made of Ale, Oate-Meal (or Eggs) Mace, Sugar, and Sliced Bread.

Calver, is a term used to a Flook or Flounder, when it is to be boiled in Wine, Vinegar, and all sorts of Spices: and so kept in it.

Chewit, or small Pie; minced or otherwise.

Chiverids Pudding, is an Hogs longest and fatest Gut, filled with Nutmeg, Sugar, Ginger, Pepper, and sliced Dates boiled.

Carbonado, is to cut and slash any cold joynt of Meat and Salt it and then broiled it before the Fire: or Raw peeces of Meat thus broiled on the Fire, are termed of some **Carbonadoes** (of Beef because that is most used so) others call them **Rashers** of Beef.

Comfits, are round, long or square pellets of Sugar made by the Art of a Confectioner.

Champignions in Fricasee, is Mushrooms fried: they are also called Fungi and in English Toad Stools.

Deer, the flesh of Buck or Doe.

Dishmeat.

Dumpling, a Pudding of Meal or Grated Bread, Milk, Eggs, Suet, Currans *&c.* boiled in a cloth in a Pot: see Pudding.

Dredging, or breading of Meat.

Draw, as draw this Pullet, is to take the Guts out of its Belly.

Dress, is to prepare any Fowl for the Spit and Fire.

Eggs in Moon shine, are Eggs broken and boiled in Sallet-Oyle, till the Yolks become something hard, and so are eaten with slices of Unions fried in Oyle, Butter, Verjuice and Nutmeg, Salt: like Poached Eggs, with Butter, Vineger and Pepper.

Fricase, or **Fricasey,** or **Fricasse,** or **Fricate;** are variaties of Meat boiled together in a Broth.

Fritters, are small Pancakes, having slices of Apples, in the Batter.

Florentine, is a made Dish of any sort of Flesh, or Fowl, minced, with one part made in Balls, and the other part with Butter and Yolks of Eggs dressed up, which may be served in a Dish, Pie, or Patty-pan.

Furmetry, or **Furmety.**

Forced or **Farced,** a Forced Leg of Mutton, is to stuff or fill it (or any Fowl with a minced Meat of Beef, Veal *&c.* with Herbs and Spices.

Fry, is to order Flesh or Fish for eating, in a Pan with Butter.

Foole, is a kind of Custard, but more crudelly; being made of Cream, Yolks of Eggs, Cinamon, Mace boiled: and served on Sippets, with sliced Dates, Sugar, and white and red Comfits, strawed thereon.

Farcing, is stuffing of any kind of Meats with Herbs, or the like: some write it **Forsing** and Farsing. To **Farce** is to stuff any thing.

Fuel the Fire, see **Timber.**

Force Meat, is Meat with a stuffing of Herbs, or other things made to that purpose.

Fillet of Veal or Beef, is a round peece cut of a Leg of Veal or peece of Beef and stuffed with Herbs.

Flee, pull of the skin.

Ginger-Bread, is made of Grated Bread, Ginger, Cinnamon, Sugar, with other Spices made into a paste with Rose-water.

Giblets, the Entrals of any Fowl, especially the Goose, as Heart, Gissern, Liver, Head, and great Gutt.

Grewel, is a kind of Broth made only of Water, Grotes brused, and Currans, some add Mace, sweet Herbs, Butter and Eggs, and Sugar: some call it Pottage Gruel.

Grand Sallet, are of several sorts: some all sorts of pickles laid orderly in a great Dish, with a tree or some devise set in the middle of it, others of sorts of Souced Meats cut in slices, and others with all sorts of coloured Jellies.

Grand Dish-meat, is the chief, or Principal Dish in a Feast, whether it be Flesh or Fowl, which is generally filled with variety of things.

Gigget of Mutton.

Gobbin, or **Gobbet,** or **Gubbins;** Meat cut in large peeces, as large as an Egg.

Galendine, is a sauce for any kind of roast Fowl, made of Grated Bread, beaten Cinnamon and Ginger, Sugar, Claret wine, and Vineger, made as thick as Grewell.

Garnished, is to dress the sides of Dishes, to set them forth in great Feasts with Salt, Leaves, Flowers, Beets, Turnips, Carrots, and other kind of things, according to the Cooks ingenuity. Some say Garnish the Dishes.

Gammon of Bacon, or **Ham.**

Gravey, the fat as runs from Beef, or other Meat, in roasting.

Grilliade, is a Broiled Mess, or Meat broiled on a Grid-Iron.

Gelly, see Jelly.

Hash, is a Dish-meat made of any kind of flesh minced or in Gobbets stewed in strong broth with Spices, and served up in a Dish with Sippets: to Hash is to stew any Meat that is cold. The *French* call it **Hach** or **Hachee.**

Haggas

Haggas pudding, is either a Sheep, Calves, or Hogs great Gut, or Belly Gut filled with a Calves, or Sheeps Chaldron minced, Eggs, Cream, Sugar, grated Bread, Salt, Currans, Marrow, Sewet, and some sweet Herbs, and so boiled up: the ordinary way is with Blood, Grates, Herbs and Sewet,

Ham or *Westphalia* **Ham**, is a Leg of Pork (if right, of a young Cub, or Bear) Salted dried and made black.

Hachis, Hachee, or **Hach**, see Hash.

Hautgoust, a thing that hath an high taste, *viz.* a Ho-goo.

Jelly, a kind of oily or fat liquor drawn from Calves or Neats feet boiled.

Jumballs, a kind of sweet Bread, made up in rouls, compounded of fine Flour, Eggs, Cinnamon, and Sugar. Some call them **Jamballs**.

Ipocras, a compound Wine made of Sack and divers Spices.

Jegote, see **Giggett**.

Jemellocs, is a Paste made like Butter, of fine Sugar, Yolks of Eggs, Musk, Carraway seeds seatsed, Gum Dragon steeped in Rosewater and Flour run through a Butter squirt, and made into what fashion you please.

Interlarded, Bacon that hath Fat and then Lean, then fat and then lean, between one another

Jole of Sturgion or Salmon, is the two quarters of them, the head parts being at them.

Indoice, is to rub the in-side of the Coffin of a Pie, with Butter very thin.

Leach, a kind of Jelly made of Cream, Ising-glass, Sugar and Almonds, with other compounds.

Links, a kind of Pudding, the skin being filled with Pork Flesh, and seasoned with diverse Spices, minced and tied up at distances.

Liversdg puddings, is the Hogs gut filled with the Liver boiled, and grated, and sifted through a Cullender, to which add grated Bread, Milk, Herbs, Salt, and other Spices and Sugar.

Lumber pie, made of Flesh or Fish minced and made in Balls or Rouls, with Eggs and hard Eggs, and so Baked in a Pye with Butter.

Lyth, or **Lything**, is Oatmeal or bruised Groats that thickens Broth.

Lear or **Leir** of an Egg, the White after it is beaten into a foam.

Larded Meat, is when long slices of Bacon are run through several places of it; as a Duck or Turky Larded or interlarded in the Breast.

Mash, is to stamp and beat minced Flesh into a Paste almost.

Manchet, is White Bread made in Rouls, broad in the middle, and sharp at the ends.

Made Dish, is a Dish compounded or made of several sorts of Meat minced, or cut in pieces, stewed or Baked in paste, being liquor'd with Wine, Butter and Sugar.

Marchpane, is a round Cake raised in the edges with a Border, made of Almonds, Sugar, and Rose-water beaten to a paste.

Mead or **Meath**, a drink made of Ginger, Sugar, Honey and Spring water boiled together.

Metheglin, a drink made of all sorts of wholesom Herbs boiled and strained with Honey and Water, and set to work with Bearm, as Ale or Beer.

Mackerons, see **Mackrooms**.

Melacatons, a kind of Fruit.

Mince, is to cut and chop Flesh very small. **Mince-pies** are made of any Flesh cut small, and mixt with Raisins, Currans, Sugar.

Mustard, is a kind of sharp biting sauce, made of a small seed bruised and mixt with Vinegar.

Murine or **Marinate**, is to pickle any sort of Fish, for to keep them for half a year or a year together, by frying the Fish crisp in Oil, and putting them into a pickle of Wine, Vinegar, sweet herbs and Spices, with Lemon peels.

Marrow, the fat in large Beasts Bones. **Marrow-pies** are made with it, with several other Ingredients, as sweet-breads, Potatoes, Artichokes, Bacon, Eggs with Fruit and Spices.

Maremaid pies, is a round Pie to be eaten cold, and is made of a Pig Boned and Quartered, and Eels intermixt with Spices.

Mackrooms, a kind of roul of sweet Bread made of the same stuff as the Bisket is made of.

Milk pottage, is made of Water, Oat-Meal, a little Milk or Cream, Salt, and Fresh Butter; so of Rice Pottage, and other kinds.

Midcalf, the Intrals of a Calf, as Lights, Liver, Heart, and its appurtenances.

Neat, Beef of Oxe or Cow; but it is most used to the Tongue, as Neats Tongue.

Olio, is made of Flesh or Fish Minced, putting to it sweet herbs, grated Bread, Egs, Salt, Nutmeg, Pepper and Barberries, and make them into little Balls or Rouls; and so put into a Pie with variety of other Meats and Fruit.

Olio podrida, is a Rump of Beef, *Bolonia* Sausages, Neats Tongues boiled with Beef, Mutton, Venison, Pork cut in Gobbits as big as Eggs, also Carrots, Turneps, Onions, Cabbage, with a Faggot of sweet Herbs, *&c.* stewed together; then all sorts of Fowl stewed with Bread, Marrow, Artichokes, hard Yolks of Eggs all served together in strong Broth finely stewed up; others call it **Olla podrida**, an **Hotch-potch**.

Olives, or **Olines** of Beef or Mutton, are the same cut in thin slices, and hackt with a Knife; then with a farsing of sweet herbs, hard Eggs, Beef Suet, or Lard Minced, Spices and Salt strowed or laid, on the slices, and so rolled up, and Roasted or Baked, and served up with a sauce of the Stuffing, Verjuice, and Gravy, and Sugar.

Omlet of Eggs, is Eggs beaten together with Minced suet, and so fried in a Pan, about the quantity of an Egg together, on one side, not to be turned, and served with a sauce of Vinegar and Sugar. An **Omlet** or **Frotse**.

Olla, an Hotch-potch of several ingredients.

Poor Knights, are slices of White Bread dipt in Eggs, Cream and Sugar, fryed in Rose Water and Butter.

Puffe, is a roll of soft paste, made of Curds, Cream, Eggs and Flower, and so fryed in Suet purified.

Pomals of a sheep, is all the Intrals, see **Midcalf**.

Petipetes, are Pies made of Carps and Eels first roasted, and then minced, and with Spices made up in Pies.

Parmisan, or **Parmisant,** Old Cheese 7, 8, or 9 years of Age.

Parboile, is to half Boil any sort of Flesh or Fowl.

Po-tage, is strong Broth of Meat, with Herbs and Spices Boiled.

Pottage, is the Broth of Flesh or Fowl, with Herbs and Oatmeal boiled therein.

Paste, is fine Meal or Flower, Water and Butter mixed up.

Past Royal, is made of Flour, Sugar, Almond Milk, Butter, Eggs, Rose Water, Saffron, Ambergrise and Musk worked up all cold together.

Puffe-paste, is made of Flour, cold Water and Butter, and laid in fleeces, with Butter between each, which makes it rise and swell in the Baking.

Pelipate or **petite,** is a *French* way of Mincing meat for Pies, with Lard cut amongst the Meat.

Panado, is a kind of Caudle, made of Water, grated Bread, Currans, Mace, Cinnamon, Sack, or White Wine and Sugar, with Yolks of Eggs boiled.

Pap, of Nurses called **papes,** is Milk and Flour boiled together.

Pye, is any sort of Meat made up in a piece of fine Paste, made into diverse forms, as round, square cornered, *&c.* and called according to their filling, as Mince, Steak, Chaldron, Umble, Artichoke, or Eel Pies.

Pull, is to take the Feathers off Fowl; Pull off the Feathers.

Pine-Molet, is a Manchet of *French* Bread, with a hole cut in the top, and all the crum taken out, and filled with a composition of rost or boiled Capons minced and stamped to a Paste, with sweet Herbs, Eggs and Spices, *&c.* and so boiled in a cloth; and serve it in strong Broth, with several sorts of Fowls about it.

Posset, is hot Milk poured on Ale or Sack, having Sugar, grated Bisket, Eggs, with other ingredients boiled in it, which goes all to a Curd.

Puffs, are slices of Lemon dipt in a Batter made of Eggs and sweet herbs minced small and Fried, after Sugared.

Pudding pie, is made of Bread, or Flour, or Rice and Milk Baked in a Dish.

Pudding, made of Groats and Blood and sweet herbs, and put in Swine or Beefs Guts, and Boiled.

A **Pudding,** or **Ball,** or **Dumpling,** or **Pot-Ball,** is Flour, Bread, Milk and Eggs, with Sugar, Raisins, Currans, and Suet minced mixt together and put in a Bag, or made stiff into a Ball, and boiled. Some call this a **Bag Pudding.**

Press, is a cold Dishmeat made of a Swines Feet, Ears, Snout, and Cheeks boiled to a Jelly with Spices, make a lay of it, and press it square in a Cloth, then serve it up in slices.

Pancakes, is made of Batter fryed in a thin Cake in a Pan.

Poacht Eggs, are Eggs broken into boiling Water, and quickly taken out and eaten with Butter, Vinegar and Pepper.

Pickle, is a kind of drink that souced meats are kept in, and Fruit for Salleting is preserved with, generally it is made of Salt and Water, or Vinegar, Dill, and some other Spices.

Pistaches.

Pie-paste, is fine Flour, Butter, Eggs, Kneaden, or Moulden together.

Pasty, is paste rouled broad, and the Meat being laid in Order on it, it is turned over, and made up on three sides, with garnishes about.

Quaking pudding, it is made of crumbs of Bread, Cream, Eggs and Spices.

Quodlings, or **Codlings,** are green Apples boiled.

Quince pie, or **Coffin for Quinces,** is an open crust set in corners, into which Baked Wardens or Quinces Preserved are put.

Quelque chose, is a kind of Fricasee made of Eggs, Cream, Nutmeg, Salt, Rosewater; Sugar and Butter, and slices of Apples fried in Cakes.

Quiddony, is a kind of quaking Jelly made of fair Water and Pippins, or Quinces or Plums well sugared, and put into Boxes.

Rasher, is a slice of Beef Fried or Broiled.

Ransoles, are kind of small Balls rolled up in fine Past made of these compositions, Beet leaves beaten, Sweetbreads minced, Marrow, Herbs, Raisins, Dates, Naple Bisket grated and made in a paste.

Roast, is to turn Meat on a Spit before the Fire, till the Bloody part be taken away.

Roast meat, any thing roasted.

Rand or **Ran of Sturgion,** a thick piece out of the middle of the Sturgion.

Sauce; is any Liquor or liquid thing to be eaten with dry Meats, yet every Dish-meat hath its peculiar Sauce or Sallet.

Sallet, is either Sweet Herbs, or Pickled Fruit, as Cucumbers, Samphire, Elder-Buds, Broom-Buds, *&c.* eaten with Roasted meats.

Sausages, are Porket Gutts, or Hogs or Sheep Guts filled with Minced Pork, Suet, Salt, Pepper, and tied up in Links about a Fingers length.

Scotch Collops, are thin slices of Mutton or Beef, hackt and salted, then Broiled up quick; serve them up with Vinegar and Butter.

Stoffado, is a term for the Stuffing of any joint of Meat, or Belly of any Fowl, or the like.

Sops, are Broaths made diverse ways, according to the Cooks Art, or rather Sauces to be under Dish-meats, though such are generally eaten with spoons.

Sop, is Toasted Bread steeped in Sack, Wine, or Ale, *&c.*

Soops, a kind of sweet pleasant Broth, made rich with Fruit and Spices.

Souce, or **souce Drink,** is a Liquor made of Salt and Water, or Vinegar, to preserve Flesh and Fish in; each thing having (in a manner) a peculiar Souse liquor to preserve it from stinking or putrifying.

Souced Meat, is either Flesh or Fish boiled whole, or rouled up in Collars, or like Brawn, with sweet herbs and spices; and are to be eaten cold, and kept in Souce, Pickle, or the like.

Steaks, are the Breast, Loin, or Neck of Veal or Mutton cut into pieces, the Bones with the Flesh, and either Boil, Fry, or make them into Pies, seasoning them with

with Salt, Pepper, sweet herbs minced, Nutmeg, Ginger, *&c.*

Sugar plate, is White Sugar sifted, White of Egs, Gum Dragon and Rose Water beaten into a Paste, then moulded into any form, and so Print it.

Stewed Broth, is strong Broth boiled up with Raisins, Currans, Prunes, Mace, *&c.*

Stewed Meat, is to boil Meat gently over a soft fire.

Stink, a kind of Pottage made of Beef Broth with sweet Herbs, sorts of Spices, Marrow Bones, and thickned with grated Bread.

Snow Cream, is made of Cream, Eggs, Rose-water and Sugar, beaten into a Froth like Snow.

Syllibub, is made of Vinegar and New Milk, the Curd mixt with Cream, Sugar, Currans, Cinnamon.

Spitch-cock, is a dish of large Eels Fried cut into 3 or 4 pieces, with their skins on.

Sippets, are slices of Manchet, to set out dishes (as a Garnish) especially in Broths.

Slash, or **Scotch,** is to cut and scorch it cross with a Knife before it be Fryed.

Slice, a thin piece of Bread or Flesh.

Searce, or **Sift,** is to take fine Meal from the course.

Strain, is to force a liquid and soft thing through a Cloth, to keep it from dross and dreggs.

Salmagundi, an *Italian* dish-meat made of cold Turkey and other Ingredients.

Scald, is to put any Fowl or the like into hot boiling Water, and take it out again.

Spit such and such a thing, is to put the Broach through it.

Tansy Cake, is made of grated Bread, Eggs, Cream, Nutmeg, Ginger, mixt together and Fried in a Pan with Butter, with green Wheat and Tansy stamped.

Taffaty Tarts, are made like little Parties, round square, or long, the Paste being rolled thin, and Apples in Lays, strewed with Sugar, Fennel seeds, and Limon Peel cut small; then Iced in the Baking.

Cotelleti, or little Pasties.

Toasts, are shives of Bread, dried, and made hard and hot before a Fire.

Tripes, are the Belly of a Cow or Oxe, cut in pieces and souced, and after fried with Butter, and eaten with Mustard.

Trotter Pie, is an Apple Pie mash'd in the Crust after it is Baked, having Cream and Yolks of Egs beaten together, put in it and stirred up.

Triffel, is Cream boiled with Sugar, Mace and Cinnamon; when it is Blood warm, put in it a little Runnet which thickens it, being cold, serve it up with Sugar scraped on it.

Tarts, are Apples laid in Paste, in Dishes, Patty pans, or round Pies, Stewed or Baked with Sugar and Orangado, or Lemond in sucket cut small. Tarts are thus ordered of all other kind of Fruits.

Timber the Fire, is to mend the Fire, make it burn better, by putting more Fuel of Wood or Coles to it.

Truss, or **Trussing,** is the dressing and ordering of Fowl for the Pot or Spit, by turning up the Legs and Wings.

Turn round, is to keep an even hand in turning the Spit, by the Turn-spit.

Verjuice, is the juice of Crabs, or sour Apples.

*

Vinegar, is White or Claret Wine turned sour.

Umble Pie, is a Pie made of the Intrals of a Deer, as Heart, Liver, *&c.*

Wassell, is a drink of Ale, roasted Apples, Sugar and Cinnamon mixt. Of some called **Lambs-Wool.**

Whipt Cream, it is beaten thick with a Whisk, then eaten with Cream and Sugar.

White-pot, it is a kind of Custard, and is made in a Crust or Dish, with these compositions of Cream, Eggs, Pulp of Apples, Sugar, Mace, Cinnamon, and Sippets of White Bread.

Walm, a little seething or boiling up of any Liquor in a Pot.

Wivos me quidos, is the *Spanish* way of dressing Eggs, which is to set them over the Fire with Sack, Sugar, Nutmeg, Salt, and juice of Lemon, and let them heat till they be thick.

XXX. He beareth Sable, a **Baker,** with a **Peel** in his both hands Bendways, with a Loaf of Bread upon it, Or. Others who give a fuller description of it, Blazon it thus, a **Baker** with his Peel in his hands bendwise, with a Loaf thereon, Or, a **Cap** on his head, his **Wastcoat stripped** above his Elbows, Argent, **Breeches** and **Hose,** Grey, **Shooes,** Sable; having an Oven fixed to the dexter side, Gules. This was the ancient Crest of the Bread Bakers of *Chester,* which now they have relinquished.

Terms used by Bakers.

Grind the Corn, to put it on the Mill to crush and bruse it.

Dress the Meal, is to sift it through a Sive, to take the fine from the course.

Fine Flower, the Dant or Heart of the Corn.

Bran or **Scufting,** the Husk of the Corn.

Bolt the Meal, is to turn it through a coarser cloth, to make a coarser Flower. This is called a **Bolter.**

A **Batch,** is as much Flower made into Dough, as is baked at a time.

Season the Liquor, is to put Salt or Spices in the hot Water, that is to **Knad the Meal.**

Leaven, is Dough kept unbaked till it be Sower.

Leaven the Batch, is to put the Leaven broken in Water, and hide it into the middle of the Meal to sower the whole Batch.

Blend it up, is to mixt the Flower and Liquor to make it into a **Paste.**

Knead it, working the Flower and Liquor together.

Dough or **Paste,** is the Batch unbaked.

Beak it, is to beat it with a long round thick Beater.

Couch the Dough, is the taking of it up as the Breaking puts it abroad

Weigh the Dough, is to weigh it so and so according to the Prices of the Loaves.

Mould it, make it into Loaves, or Roulls.

Cut it, is the running the Knife round the Loafe, or Roul.

Pick

Pick the Loafe, is to make little holes on the top of the Loafe with a Bodkin.

Seal or **Mark the Loafe**, is to set the Bakers name or mark on it, that it may be known whose Bread it is if faulty, or not well made.

Set in, is the putting of the Loafe into the Oven.

Draw the Bread, when it is well Baken, then it is taken out of the Oven.

Fire the Oven, put Fire and Fuel in it, to heat

Sweep the Oven, is to make it clean from Ashes.

Ashes, is the out-cast of the Fireing.

Close the Oven, is to draw the stock before the Oven Mouth.

Stop the Oven, is to Lute about the Oven stock; with Clay or Dirt out of the Street, to keep the heat in.

Several sorts of Bread.

White Bread, in Loaves, Roulls or Cakes: which is of pure fine Flower.

Manchent, or Roul bread; called also a **Wigg**.

Boulted Bread, or **Wheaten Bread**; being courser then White, and worked up with Barme or Yest.

Brown Bread, or **Brown-George**: the blackest and coursest Bread, being the Meal and Bran totogether.

French Bread, a light spungy Bread kneaden with Eggs.

Leaven Bread, a close well made Bread, worked up with Leaven.

Jannock Bread, a Sower Bread made of Oates.

Jamballs, a sweet Bread made up in Roulls.

Cracknel Bread, Kneaden with Saffron & Currans.

Bisket Bread, a sweet Bread made of fine Flower, Eggs and Sugar.

Almond Bread, made of fine Flower, Sugar and Almonds.

Mackeron, a Sweet Bread made in Roulls.

Barra Pickled, a light Bread made in round Cakes.

Oate-Bread, made of Oate-Meal Leavened.

Bread made of Roots, as Ground-Artichoke, Potatos, Turnips, *&c.*

Horse Bread, made of Bean and Pease, *&c.* with Scuttings of other Corn.

XXXIII, He beareth Azure, a **Tanner** working at his **Beam**, on a Hill: Others term it a **Tanner** at his **Beam Fleshing** of an **Hide**, proper. But if the Reader will have the particulars of it, then thus: He beareth a **Tanner** (working at his **Beam**, or) **Fleshing** of an **Hyde**, his **Apparel** Purpure, his **Apron**, **Hose**, **Beam** and **Foot**, Or; **Fleshing Knife**, Argent: the rest proper. This is the Crest of the Worshipful Company of *Tanners* of the City of *Chester*.

Terms of Art belonging to Tanners.

Scutching the Bark, is cleansing it from Moss, and the rough, crusty outward Bark.

Hewing the Bark, is chopping it into small peeces.

Grinding the Bark, is putting it under the Mill to crush it very small.

Drying the Bark, is to dry it that it may Grind.

Setting down.

Stretching.

Laying down.

Ouse, is the Water in which the Bark hath been steeped: Tanners-Ouse is of some termed so, when the Bark and Waters is together.

Turfe or **Tanners** - - - - - - that is the Bark cast out of the **Tan-Pits**, which when it hath for a time lien for the Water to run out, it is wrought into Turfes, which dried is good fire Fuel.

The Wett-Glover.

The Trade and Occupation of a **Glover**, is in all respects answerable to the **Tanner**, both useing one and the same way of work, with the same kind of Instruments, only in this they differ; the *Tanner* is for Beasts **Hydes**, as **Oxen**, **Cows**, **Horses** and **Calves**, being thick and strong skins for which Tanning they use Oake Bark. The *Glover* is for **Sheep**, **Goats**, **Lambs** and **Castling skins** which are slender, thin and gentle: for the dressing whereof they use only Lime, and Bran; and this doth easily appear if you read the names of their Instruments, only I do confess they differ something in their Terms of Art.

Terms used in the Art of a Wett-Glover.

Lyming, piting the skins with Lime and Water.

Pigging, is hanging of many skins together.

Washing to pull, is cleansing them from Lyme.

Hanging, is to put them on a Horse or pale after they are washed that the Water may run off.

Pulling is stripping the Wooll of the skin.

Pelts, are the skins when the Wooll is taken off.

Working, is to lay them on the Beam and with the Fleshing knife and Vealing knife, to scrape off the lime and cleanse them from their Fleshyness.

Drenching, is the putting of the dressed skins into a liquor made of Barn and Water.

Drawing the Pits.

Pressing.

Alloming.

Drying, hanging them on ropes, lines, or laying them in the Sun on grassy Ground to dry.

Washing, is to scoure them in warm Water and Eggs to make them fast.

Plumping.

Withing, is to rub them on a Withen, bent Iron, which makes the Leather soft and plumpe.

Pareing.

Tawing, is the treading of the Leather in a Trough.

Frize-

Frizeing, is the working of the skin Woolly on one side.

Shammo, or **Shammo Frizeing**; is to make it Woolly on both sides like a peece of cloath.

The Currier.

This is the Dresser of Tanned Leather, for when the **Tanner** hath done his part, then the **Currier** he works the same so as it becoms soft, gentle, and serviceable for many uses and purposes; for without his Art, the **Shoomakers**, nor **Sadlers** and several other Trades could not make use of it, neither would it be good for any thing, save **Cloutt Leather.**

Terms used in the Curriers Art.

Scouring or **Washing.**

Shaveing, is the taking down of the thickness of the Leather.

Dying or **Liquoring.**

Dying.

Rowling and **Beating**, is the beating it on the Pin block.

Scowering, is to cleanse it with scowring.

Colouring, is to make it either black, red, yellow, blew, *&c.*

Graining, is to work it into rounds and squares by making small Crevices or Veins in the surface of the skin.

Slickenning, is to make the Leather smooth and bright as if it shined.

XXXII. He beareth Gules, a **Butcher** with an **Axe**, in his **right Hand** over his Head, and his **left** holding of a **Swines head** upon a **Block**, (as if he were about to cleave it) all proper. This is the Crest belonging to the name of *Slaughter*.

A Demy Butcher, with an Axe erected in his right hand, is the Crest of *Dashperg*; a *German.*

Terms used by Butchers in their Slaughtering.

Strike down, is the term of killing an Ox or Cow, which is by giving him a blow or two on the Forehead with the round end of the Ax.

Kill, or **Slaughter** Sheep, or Calf.

Slaughter-House, the place where they kill their Meat.

Shambles, the place where Butchers Meat is Sold and Bought.

Butchers Terms for the several Parts and Joynts in a Cow, or Ox.

Beef, is the Flesh of either Bull, Cow, or Ox.

The **four Quarters.**

The **further Quarter.**

The **hinder Quarter.**

The **Chin**, is the Back-bone.

The **Beast Cheek**, is one side of the Head.

The **Head**, is the whole Head.

The **Neats-Tongue**, is the Tongue of Cow, Bull, or Ox.

The **Roote** of the Tongue.

The **Neats Feet**, are the Feet cut off at the Knees and Cambrel Joynts.

The **Belly**, or **Tripp.**

The **Blood**, and **Puddings.**

In the Farther Quarter.

The **Shoulder**, is when it is cut long from the Breast and Ribs, which being again divided hath

The **Top** of the **Shoulder.**

The **Hogh.**

The **Marrow-Bone.**

The **Neck piece**, or **Bloody end.**

The **Breast**, is all under the Shoulders: which being cut through the middle is called.

The **Upper end** of the Breast.

The **Lower end** end of the Breast.

The **Sticking Draught**, is a part of the Breast when it is cut long-ways over cross the Bones: having part of the Neck at,

The **Ribs.**

The **Top** of the **Ribs.**

In the Hinder Quarter.

The **Sirloyne**, is the top part of the hinder Quarter cut through the middle longways, which being cut in two, they are called,

The **Maidens Bone.**

The **Tailick**; or **Rump**, if it have the Rump at it.

The **Lift** or **Buttock**, is the Fleshy part of the Thigh which being cut and opened: then it is termed,

The **Out-side** of the Lift, is that where the fat is.

The **In-side** of the Lift, or Buttock; is the inside of the Thigh.

The **Marrow Bone**, it is the Bone in the Buttock.

The **Bed of Beef**, is the Belly or lower part of the hinder Quarter cut long ways, which being divided is.

The **Flank**, is the bottom of the Belly, next the **Pissel**, or **Udder.**

The **Baking Draught**, is the higher side of the Bed.

The **Udder.**

The several Parts or Joynts of a Sheep or Calfe.

Veal, is the Flesh of a Calfe.

Old Veal or **Young Beef**, of some termed a

Runner

Runner or **Running Veal**, is the Flesh of a Calf a Year old, or thereabouts.

Mutton, the Flesh of a Sheep.

Lamb or **Kid**, is the Flesh of a young sucking Lamb.

Sheep Pumnices, is the Head, Heart, Lights, Liver and Wind-Pipe of a Sheep all hanging together.

Lambs Pumnices, is the same of a Lamb: or Lambs Head and Purtinences.

Lambs-Stones, **Sweet-Bread**, and **Kidney** or **Lully**.

Calves-Feet, eight Feet makes a pair.

Calves-Head, and **Midcaik**: is the Heart, Lights, and Liver, and its Appurtenances.

A **Side of Mutton** or **Veal**, is the half of a Sheep or Calf: the further and hinder quarter joyned together.

In the Farther Quarters.

The **Shoulder**.

The **Breast**.

The **Rack** either of Veal or Mutton; is the top part of the Breast that as is half of the Back-bone, this being cut in two, are called

The **Head end** of the Rack, it is that next the Head.

The **Lower end** of the Rack.

The **Calves Chaldron**, are all the Intrells, Belly, Puddings, Manifolds, *&c.*

In the Hinder Quarters.

The **Legg**.

The **Loyn**.

A **Rowl of Veal**, is a peece cut from the Fleshy part of the Leg of Veal.

Suett, is the fat that cleaves to the Loin.

Joynts, or parts of a Boar, Swine or Hogg,

Brawn, is the Flesh of a Boar.

Pork, is the Flesh of a Swine or Hogg.

Bacon, is Swins Flesh Salted and Dryed.

The **Cheeks**, or **Swins Cheek**, is the Head cut streight down the middle from Crown to the Snout.

Souce, is the Swins head, Ears, and Feet, boiled and pickled in Brine, made of small Bear, or Water and Salt.

The **Quarters**, two farther Quarters; two hinder Quarters.

A **Side of Pork**, is the half of the Swine, the farther and hinder quarter, having the Legs cut off.

Swines Grease or **Lard**, or Swines Leafe of fat.

A **Flitch of Bacon**, is the whole side of Pork, having the four Hoghs cut off, when it is Salted and Dried.

A **Gammon of Bacon**, is the Thigh and Buttock part of the Flitch of Bacon.

A **Ham of Bacon**, is when it is Salted and Dried with the Hogh or Thigh at.

Farther Quarter,

The **Hand of Pork**, is the farther Hogh.

The **Breast**.

The **Rack**.

The **Middle peece**.

The **Spar-Ribs**, the Ribs when they are cut from the sides of such Pork as is intended for Bacon.

Hinder Quarters,

The **Leg**, is the hinder Thigh or Hogh.

The **Loyn**.

The **Middle peece**.

XXXIII. He beareth Vert, a **Smith** with his **Hammer** working at his **Anvile**, all proper; or more particularly, a **Smith** with his **Hammer** in his **right hand elevated**, as high as his Head; in his **left hand**, a **Pair of Tongues** holding a peece of **Iron** on the **Anvile**, Argent: the **Anvile** or **Stiddy**, Or: **Cap** Azure, **turned up** Ermin: **Doublet**, **Breeches** and **Hose** gray, **Apron** of a dirty swarthy colour, **Shoos** Sable. And is born by the name of *Smith*, a *Dutch-Man.*

A Demy Smith, holding his broad faced Hammer in his right hand, Cloaths Gules: is the Crest of *Goldbeater.*

Terms used by Smiths in their Trade.

Blow up the Fire, is to make the Fire Burn, some say blow up the Coals.

Not Feel the weight of the Hammer, is when Iron is so cold that it will not beat forth.

Red Sear, is when Iron is too hot, that it breaks or cracks under the Hammer in working between hot and cold.

An Heat, is when the Iron is made of the colour of the Fire.

Blood red Heat, is when the Iron wants a little hammering to smooth it.

Flame or **white Heat**, is when it is ready to the forming of that thing it is intended for.

Welding or a **Sparkling heat**, is when it is to joyn with another peece of Iron.

Tew, is to **Batter** or draw out a peece of Iron.

Double up, is the laying of one peece of Iron on another, by turning the end up, and working it into one solid peece.

Up-set, is when at a heat the Iron is beaten back into the Body of the work; this is often done when a thing is made too thin, or too narrow.

Seat Rod, or **Punch Rod**; is With or Wreathen stick turned about the Head of a fire punch to hold it on the hot Iron, while it is striking through or making a hole in it.

Forgeing, is beating out hot Iron into any shape.

Brazing, is Sodering of two peeces of Iron together or the edges of any round thing, as a Hoope.

Loam, is a kind of mixture of Clay and Horse-dung, which is put about any peece of Iron that is to be soder, ed.

Cold Chissel, are all sorts of Chissels used to cut cold Iron.

Cold Punch, is such as is used to punsh holes through cold Iron.

Punching, is making a hole in any peece of Iron with a Punch.

Rivetting, is the battering of an Iron shank or pin, so that it fall not out of the hole it is put into.

Drill, is to bore a hole with an Instrument called a Drill.

Hammer-Harden, is hardning Iron or Steel with much beating it with a Hammer, the Iron being cold.

Screw, is a spindle of Iron cut into a Wreath.

Thrid of a Screw, is that part as stands up.

Grove of a Screw, is the hollow or sinking part between the Thrids.

Worm in a great Screw.

Nut, is the Screw box in which the Screw turneth.

Twisting of Iron, is the wreathing of a square bar when it is in a flame Heat.

Case Hardening, is the Hardning of Iron after the work upon it is finished: by heating it red hot and quenching it in Water, or by quenching it in Chamberley, or White-wine Vinegar wherein Bay Salt and the Powder of a Cows horn hath been put.

Nealing of Steel, is to make it soft, that it may File or be Engraven upon; is by heating it red hot, and let it coole.

Hardning or **Tempering of Steel**, is quenching it in Water being red hot.

Let it down, is the making of a Steel spring softer if it be too hard.

The Farrier.

This is a Kindsman of the **Black-Smith**, and therefore may well succeed him: he is described by either **Blooding**, **Shooing**, or **Dressing** of the Wounded back of a Horse: and sometime by giving him a **Drench** or Drink out of a Horn.

Terms used by the Farrier as to Horse-Shooing.

Pare the Hoofe.
Imperfect Hoofe.
Broad Hoofe and **Battle Hoofe**, or having a Raggedness on the out sides.
Long Hoofe.
Crooked Hoofe.
Pomise, or **Flat Hoofe.**
Hollow and over **Hollow Hoofe.**
Hoofe Wayne.

Seat the Shooe, fit it to the Foot.

The **Seat of the Shooe**, that part of the Hoof where the Shooe is set on the Hoofe.

Well seated Shooe, is well placed on the Hoof.

Parts of an Horse-Shooe.

Horse-Shooe.
Creft.
Calkin or **Caukin Shooe**, having tang ast the ends.
Spur.
Trim Light Shooe, is a Light Shooe. **Middle size Shooe.** An **heavy Shooe.**

False quarter shooe, is such as have a shoulder in the in-side of the shooe, to keep it from lying on a weak or sore heel.

Lunett, or shooe without heel parts, made to secure weak heels.

A **False quarter shoe**, with one heel part.

Hollow shooe, it is wrought so much outwards, that it toucheth no part of the Ball of the foot.

A **shooe disbord** without the hoof, is when it is broader out than the hoof.

Web of the shoe, is the breadth of the shooe. Broad **Web.** Narrow **Web.**

Welt of the shoe,

Welt of the shooe **indented**, made like the teeth of a Saw.

Sponges of the shooe.

Pearles, or **Pearled**, is the holes in the shooe: **Nail-holes.**

Deep pearled shoe, is when the holes of the shooe are made at a good distance from the outside, or near the middle of the shooe, which is often done for long hoofe Horses.

Middle part of the Web, is taken to be the inner part of the shooe that compasses the sole.

Out side of a shooe, where the nail holes or pearsings be.

Imbossed side of a shooe.

Drive in the Nails, is to nail the shooe on the hoof.

Horse-shooe Nails, Nails with foursquare heads.

Frost Nails, with sharp pointed heads.

Button Nails, with round heads.

Stump, a Nail overworn in a Horse-shooe.

Twitchings, ends of Horse-shooe Nails cut off. Some term them,

Pinchings, because pinched and writhed off from the out side of the hoof with the Pincers.

Tallon Nail, is that Nail driven in the shooe towards the Horse heel.

Cut off the Nails, twist or writh of the ends with the Pincers.

Clinch the Nails, is to beat that part of the Nail which remains out of the Hoof (after the end is cut away) with a Hammer on the hoof, to return it bendingly into the hoof.

Hide the Clenches, the clinches hidden in the hoof, when they are so beaten into the hoof, that they cannot discern where the points of the Nail came through the hoof in the shooeing of the Horse.

Unclinch the shooe, is to beat those clinched ends of Nails up again out of the hoof, that the shooe may be taken of.

Pair the Hoof round, that is with a Rasp, Rasp of the hoof as much as exceeds the breadth of the shooe.

Shod round, when a Horse hath four new shooes set on; **shoed round.**

Shod half round, when two shooes arce set on one side.

Shod behind,
Shod or **shoed before.**

Put on a Shooe.

A **Remove**, is when a shooe is taken off, and set on again with new Nails.

Removed round, when all the shooes are so set on again.

Rough shod, when the Nails are not yet worn that holds on the shooes.

Hoof Bound, is when the shooe is nailed too stret on the hoof.

Cast a shoe, is when the Horse looseth his shooe in Travel or otherwise.

Smooth shod, when the Nails are worn smooth.

Frosted, when the shooes are put on with Frost Nails.

Terms of Art used by Farriers *about the Cure of Horses,*

Accipum, a kind of **Drench**, and an **Ointment**, used about Horses.

Anodyna, or **Liogs**, are compositions of Simples to ease pains.

Baths, warm Waters to wash and bath Horses Limbs when stiff and benummed, or places for Horses to swim and wash themselves in.

Cauterize, is to Burn the sore place with a hot Iron.

Corrode, Burning hot sores. Inflamed sores.

Corrosives, Compositions made for Burnings; burning compositions.

Causticks, a Medicine that Burneth, which is used when a Disease cannot otherwise be mastered.

Conglutinate, to glew or set together.

Curtail, a **Docking** or cutting the Horse tail shorter.

Cordial, a Drink to cherish a Horse.

Crustick Medicines, strong Medicines inclining to Fire.

Drenches, Drinks or **Washes** given to Horses to cleanse them.

Diapente, a composition made of five Simples.

Dissolve, to make soft and supple that place which is hard or swelled.

Docking, see **Curtails.**

Fumigations, a smoaking, or operating through smoaky Perfumes.

Frictions, is the chafing and rubbing and fretting of any grieved place.

Incise, the cutting into Sores with a Knife or Lancet.

Launce, to cut open a swelling, or make a passage for coruption to issue forth.

Lyogs, see **Anodyna.**

Mundifie, cleanse.

Mollifie, make soft.

Narcotica, a composition of Simples to cause sleep; benumming.

Putrifaction, corruption.

Putrifactive Medicines, such as corrupt the complexion of a Member; or such as takes away dead Flesh as Carbuncles, Cankers, Ulcers.

Purgation with Glisters.

Rowelling of Horses, is putting of hair rings through the *Horse* skin to draw out Corruption.

Repercussive Medicines, are such as drive back humours.

Sorance, is any sort of sore in *Horses.*

Sellander, or Seliander a kind of dry scab in the ham of a *Horse* hinder Leg.

Sarcotica, compositions of Simples that incarnate or breed flesh.

The terms of Horse Diseases, and things concerning them, are formerly set in *lib.* 2. *c.* 7. *numb.* 113.

The Jewellers Working Instruments.

Gravers of all sorts large and small.	Wax Box
Flat Scalper	Using Stone
Half round Scalper	Corn Tongs
Round Scalper	Flint Morter
Plyers both flat and round	Inamell Grinder, or Muller, or Pestel
Sheers	Inamelling Point
Forging Hammer	Inamelling Bridge
Pinning or Rivetting Hammer.	Inamelling Tongs
	Inamelling Plate
Setting Hammer	Sothering Coal
Dividers	Blew Inamel solid
Compasses	White Inamell
Painting Pencills small and larger	Green Inamell
	Yellow Inamell, *&c.*
Cleansing Pencill	Blew Inamell transparent
Brush	White, *&c.*
Bollishing Brush	Foiles of all colours
Scratch Brush	Tripillo
Rough Pollishing Stone	Pumice
Smooth Pollishing Stone	Brimstone
Trippilo or Pollishing Stick	Borax
Crucible	Salt Peter
Boiling Pan	Mercury
Simmon Stick	Puttey
Muffler	Sandifer
Wax Stick	Salt

Terms of Art used by Goldsmiths and Jewellers.

Melting the Gold in a Crucible, some call it Smelting.

Casting it into a **Langet.**

Forging, beating it into a Form as the Workman will.

Pla-

Planishing,
Turning up, the raising or turning a part of it, as in the turning up of the shanks of Rings, or Collets and Bizells.
Sodering,
Shank, is that part as compasseth the Finger, the Ring part.
Jetning, is fitting the Stone into the Collett.
Cramping the Collets together.
Mounting, is fixing the Colletts all together to the shank of the Ring.
Filing, or Filing up.
Graving the shanks of the Ring, and Scallops or Musells on the sides of the Colletts.
Clearing and Boiling.
Inamelling, is laying on of the Colours. **Eamelling.**
Nailing, is burning the Inamell colours, to make them soder and stick to the Graving.
Using off, is the clearing of the Inamell of the work.
Graining, is the making of little pearls or heads at the foot of the scallops of the Colletts.
Boyling off,
Putting in the **Simmon.**
Fitting the **Stones.**
Laying in the Foil, which is to make the Stone to make a Luster according to the colour of the Foil.
Setting the Stone.
Cutting the Crestants about the Bissell, or top of the Collett, which being turned down, holds the Stone fast in; they are cut into Crestants or Escallops.
Polishing it, making it bright, clear and Lustrous.
Ueeving, is rubbing the Ring with Cork. **Ueiving.**
Wafking, is clearing the Stones from Dust with a Pencill.
Slat-ing of Inamell, is taking Inamell off a Ring, and Inamelling it with another colour.
Hasticking, is setting a Black between the Stones to set them aff.
Finishing,

The Needle Maker.

Sorts of Needles.

Pearl Needle, is the least size of Needles.
The **first, second** and **third** sort of Needles, according to their sizes; so numbred till you come to **ten.**
Ordinary Needles.
Bush Lane Needles.
Glovers Needles have square points.
Book Binders Needles are long and round point
Bow-Gelders Needles are flat pointed.
Chyrurgions Needles are the same, flat pointed.
Pack Needles, crooked at the point, and some flat, others three square; others with a Back and Edge (like a Knife) at point.

The Cutlers Trade.

He beareth Argent, a **Cutler** at his **Glassier** or **polishing Wheel, polishing** of a **Knife** upon it, all proper.

Several sorts of Weapons under the Notion of Swords.

A **Sword,** the general term of all Cutting Weapons, by which Mans Life is takerr away.
A **Back Sword,** having an edge on one side.
A **Two Edged Sword,** edged on both sides.
A **Waved Sword,** the Blade being uneven.
A **Back Rapier.**
A **Rapier,** with two edges.
A **Tuck,** a four square Blade.
A **Hanger,** or **Back Fauchion.**
A **Scimitar** or **Turks Fauchion.**
A **Hunting Hanger,** some have a kind of Saw on the Back.
A **Cutto,** is a small Hanger.
A **Dagger,** or short Sword.
A **Skean,** or **Irish Dagger,** it is broad at the handle, and goes taper all along to the point.
A **Baggonett,** a Granadeers Dagger, to thrust into the Mussel of his Firelock.

Terms used by the Cutler.

A **Forger,** is him that makes Sword and Knife Blades
A **Grinder,** is him that works them out of the rough.
A **Temperer,** is him that brings it to its right temper.
A **Furberer,** that polisheth and makes them up.
Burnish, to make bright.
Frubish or **Furbish,** to clean a Sword Blade, and take all rusty spots out of it.
Glase, to put a gloss upon a Blade or Hilt, of what colour is desired.
Repairing, a mending or furbishing up of an old Sword.
Punching, to hollow or make holes in the Hilt.
Chaising, to make devises on the Hilt.
Hatching, is to Silver or gild the Hilt and Pomell of a Sword or Hanger.
Damasking, is to inlay a Hilt and Pomell with Silver, Gold, Copper or Tin.
Sanguining, is to make it of a pure Purple colour.
Varnishing, is to anoint it with some Oil or Spirit, to keep it from Rust
Scabbard, is the Case for either Sword, Rapier, or Fauchion.
Sheath, is the cover for a Dagger, Skean or Knife.
False Scabbard, a Leather case to draw over it.
Draw out the Scale.
Rasp it even.
Lining of the Scabbard, is the Linnen or Woollen Cloth in the inner side of the Scabbard.
Bind it up and glew it, is to tye the two sides of the scale when lined, together, the Blade being between.
Cover it with Leather.

A **Chape**, is the Iron socket fastned at the end of the Scabbard or Sheath.

Hook and **Socket**, set at the top of the Scabbard to hang it by at the Belt. **Joyning** of it up.

Mounting of the **Sword**, which is either well or ill; **well mounted** when the Point upon the Welding or Brandishing of it, is not too heavy for the Hilt and Pomell, but equally ballanced; **ill mounted** when either is weightier than other, therefore it is, that a long and weighty Blade requires an heavy Pomell.

He beareth Sable, a **Plummer**, having a Ladle full of melted Lead, and pouring it into a Mould set at his feet, all proper. By the name of *Plummer*.

Plummers Terms of Art:

A **Pig** or **Sow** of Lead.
Melt it in the Furnace; some say **Smelt it.**
Put it into **the Pan.**
Plain the Mould, make the Sand smooth.
Set the Mould.
Cast it over, turn it out of the Pan upon the casting Frame.
Follow it with the **strickles.**
Catches, the waste Lead
Cut off the catches, cut it from the sheet.
A **Sheet** of Lead.
Selvage or **edge** of the Lead.
A **Joynt** in the Lead, where two edges meet together.
Soder a **Joint**, is to make them one.
Burn a **Joynt.**
A **Shem**, is when two edges are turned one over the other.
A **Crack** or **Flaw**, when the Lead is not well cast.

He beareth Argent, a **Card-Maker**, seated upon a **Block**, with a **Board** on his Knees, setting of a **Card Leaf**, all proper. This is the proper Crest belonging to the Card-makers, but now laid aside.

Terms of Art used in the way of Card-making.

The **Pattern.**
Open the **Wyre.**
Head the Wyer, beat the ends all even together.
Cut the Wyre.
Double the Wyre.
Crook the Card teeth.
Card Teeth.
The **Leaf**, the Leather to set the Teeth in.
Pricking the Leaf, is making holes in the Leather, into which the teeth are put.
Setting the teeth.
Nailing the Leaf.
Paring of the Card.
Stoning of it, is burnishing of it.
The **Lists**, are the narrow pieces of Leather which are Nailed about to hold the Leaf on the Board.
Cutting the Lists, is to make it even and streight, and cut off the ends.
A **Card**, when it is all finished; of which there are several sorts.
Wool Cards have close and short Teeth.
Flat Cards, have longer and wider Teeth.
Stock Cards, are large Boards, one being fastned to a form, and the other by a top handle, is drawn with both hands.

XXXIV. He beareth Azure, a **Sadler beating of his Hair** upon a **Table** or **Tressel**, Or; **Capped** Argent, **Clothed**, Gules. This is the crest of *Beatwell.*

The like to this with a Black Cap and **Bowing Table**, the rest Or, was the antient crest of the Hat-makers of the City of *Chester*, as I find in an old roul of the Companies made in the year 1579.

Terms used in the Sadlers *Art.*

A **Tree**, is the Wooden part of the Saddle, to which all the other things are fixed.

Narve, or **Narse**, are Sinews pulled to Threads, or long slender pieces, and glewed on the Tree to hold the Tree from cracking or breaking.

Gullet,

Gullet plate, is a crooked Iron plate nailed on the fore part of the Saddle Tree to strengthen it.

Hinder Plate, is a like thin plate of Iron nailed behind the Tree.

Barrs, the two sides of the Tree.

Civett, or **Civetts**, are square Buckles without Tongues, hung in Iron Plates or **Chapes**, and so nailed to the sides of the Tree, to hang the Straps and Stirrop Leathers at: Some call them **Civett Irons.**

Girth Webb, or Webb, is that Stuff as the Girths are made of.

Straining the Webb, is nailing the Girth Webb over the hollow of the Saddle Tree, that the seat fall not between the two sides.

Setting the Seat.

Shaping the Skirts, is the drawing out the form and fashion that the Skirts are to be of; which are generally streight, and go from the Pomell to the Crupper, or else round skirts, which ly under a Mans Thigh, and no where behind.

Cutting the Seat.

Pomell, is the top of the fore-part of the Saddle, and is usually in great and rich Saddles made of Brass or Iron silvered or gilt; it is round like the Pomell of a Sword.

Crupper Buckle, is a large square Buckle fixed to the Saddle Tree behind, to fasten the Crupper to, each Buckle having a **roller** or turn on it, to make the same draw easily.

Crupper, is a roul of Leather put under the Horse tail, and so drawn up by Leather thongs, or a Crupper Band, to the Buckle behind the Saddle, and keeps a Horse from casting the Saddle forward on his Neck.

Straps,

Strapps, are Leathers fastned to the sides of the Tree, to draw the Girths streight under the Horse Belly.

Pannel, is the under part of the Saddle, it lyeth between the Horse back and the tree, to keep his back from Gaulling; being made of strong Linnen cloth, welted about with Leather, and stuffed with soft beaten hair.

Stuff the Pannel, is to fill it with hair.

Tie the Pannel, is to make it fast with Leather ties or slices, to the Saddle tree, both behind and before: some term this, **Tie the points in.**

Buckling the Girth, is to fasten Buckles at both ends.

Buckle, or **Girth Buckle**; is a four square hoop, with a tonge: which is made stiddy with its going through a hole of Leather & fastned with a narrowthongs

Girth, is when it is Buckled, and compleat for use; else it is called no more then a Web, or Girth Web.

Sirsingle, or **Sursingle**; is a long peece of Web that will compass a Horse about his belly and back, having at one end a Buckle, and the other a long strap of Leather with holes punched in it, to buckle at what distance the Horse keeper pleaseth: by the help of this the Horse cloth is kept on, and the Horse is Wadded with straw.

Mounty, it is a peece of Leather of a yard and half or more, and four inches broad, having an Iron hook fastned to one end, and long robe at the other; with this they tie Panniers, Hampiers and great Packs on Horse back to keep them from falling of the Pack-Saddles.

Rowler, or **Body Girth**; this hath a kind of Pad called a **Rowler**, which slippeth too and again on the body Girth, or Sursingle, which is ever fixed upon the ridge of the Horse back, to keep the Girth from fretting of the hair, or hurting his ridge.

Stirrope, Irons to get ones Feet in.

Stirrope Leathers, and **Buckles.**

Breast-plate.

Trappings, these Leathers which hang on the Horse Buttock, which are generally set with white and yellow Stud-Nails.

A **Pad**, is a soft thing made like the seat of a Sadle and stuffed with Feathers, which is fixed on the Saddle seat, that old men which cannot sit hard may ride thereon.

Collars.

Male Pillen, is that which a Cloak-bag or Portmantu is fixed stiddy and sure on a Horse back part: to the Male belongs these things.

Male Stickes, the peeces of wood on the Male-pillen.

Male Strap, is to tie it behind the Saddle to two Leather Loopes.

Portmantu, vulgarly **Portmantle.**

Staples.
Chain.
Lock and **Key.**
Locking Flap.
The **Great Flap.**
} all belonging to a Portmantu.

Straps made fast to the great Flap.

Buckles, to keep down the great Flap by the straps.

Loopes, to put the ends of the straps through, to keep them from unbuckling.

Male Girths, are two long Leathers with a Buckle at one end, the other going through the Loopes on the Male sticks, and then through Iron Rings fixed behind the Saddle and so over the Portmantu all is buckled together.

[ ]

End straps for tying, or buckling the ends to the Belly Girths, that it lie not to one side more then another.

Bridle, it is so termed when it hath all its appurtenances fixed together, for the several parts of a **Bridle**: they are these.

The **Bit**, or **Snaffle**; is the Iron work put into the Horse mouth of which there is several sorts as you may see *chap. 7. numb.* 44. 45.

Head stall, are the two short Leather that come from the top of the Head to the rings of the Bit.

Fillet, is that as lieth over the Fore-head, and under the fore-top: if the Horse have trapping this is usually adorned with a Rose or such like of Leather set with studs.

Throat band, is that Leather as is buttoned (from the Head band) under the Throat.

Raines, is the long thong of Leather which comes from the rings of the Bit and being cast over the Horse head, the rider holds them in his hand by which he guides the Horse as he pleaseth.

Button and **Loope** at the end of the Rains by which it is fastned to the ring of the Bit: the other end of the rains having only a Button so large that it cannot go through the ring of the Bit on the other side, this is called a running Rains: by which a Horse is lead at a good distance, & hath liberty to leap a ditch or mount a hedge.

Nose band, a Leather that goeth over the middle of his Nose, and through Loopes at the back of the Head-stall and so buckled under the Cheeks. This is usually adorned as the Fillet, if the Horse be trapped & studded.

Trench.

Cavezan, a false Rien to hold or lead a Horse by.

Martingal, a thong of Leather, the one end fastned under the Horse Cheeks, and the other to the Girth between his Legs, to make him Reign well, and not cast up his Head.

Chaff Halter.

Side Saddle, is a Saddle for a Woman her self to ride upon. It hath these several things belonging to it, to make it compleat.

The **Tree** in which is the seat that is round.

The **Single Head**, hath one bow in the middle of the forepart of the tree.

The **Double Head** side Saddle, is with two bows one long the other short.

The **two Barrs** that are the side Barrs, to which is joyned the fore part and the hinder part of the tree.

The **Sivets**, which are square rings in Plates, three on each side the tree to put the straps too.

The **Straps**, which are long Leathers for the Girths.

A **Fore-Compass Plate**, a **Fore-Gullet Plate**, Plates to strengthen the tree.

A **Crown**, or little **half round Plate**; to secure the fore part of the tree.

Hind Gullet, or inside Plate; to strengthen the hinder part of the tree.

A **Plate half round** behind on the seat for the strengthning that part of the tree.

Two thin Plates on the fore part of the seat.

A **Crupper Sivet**, or **Swivel**; on the hinder part, to hold the Crupper.

Two Buckles on either side the fore part to hold the Breast-plate.

Narling,

Narling, are Beasts sinewes dried and beaten and Glewed on the tree for its strengthning.

Canvising the tree, also to strengthen it.

The **Pannel,** is Canvice stuffed with Wool to lie next the Horse.

The **Skirts,** the covers of the side of the tree, which are Fringed and wrought, and sometime plain.

The **Out side,** is the cover of the seat, which is Frinted round the Rimm.

The **Seat,** hath a **Boss** in the middle, and a **Rim** about it.

The **Quilting** of the fore parts of the skirts.

The **Rim** set together with a small seming Fringe.

The **Saddle Head,** sei together with a small seming Fringe.

False, or **loose Cover**; a cover to keep the Saddle clean.

The **Girths,** which are three; are Girth Web, with Buckles at each end.

The **Crupper,** that as lieth on the Horse buttock, with its garnishings, which are studded or tufted with Silk.

The **Dock,** that as goes under the Horse tail.

The **Breast-Plate,** for the stidfastnes of the Saddle, the fore part and two straps.

The **Footstoole,** with a **Sivet,** which is hung to the right side of the Saddle by a Leather strap.

The **Bridle** as a Mans Bridle, only this of a Womans is double Rained: see the figure of the side Saddle, *chap.* 9. *numb.* 168.

XXXV. He beareth Or, a **Taylor** sitting upon a **square Table** (**Stone** or **Humett,** as others term it) Argent, with his right Leg over the left, and **sewing** a **Garment** Gules: his **Cloaths** Purpure, **Hat** and **Shoes** Sable. This is a *Dutch* bearing, and is born by the name of *Cleermacker*, which in *English* is Taylor.

Terms used by Taylors.

In a **Womens Gown** there are these several parts, as

The **Stayes,** which is the body of the Gown before the Sleeves are put too, or covered with the outward stuff: which have these peeces in it, and terms used about it

The **fore Part,** or **fore Body:** which is the Breast part, which hath two peeces in it; as,

The **Right side** of the Fore-body.

The **Left side** of the Fore-body.

The **two side parts,** which are peeces under both Arms on the sides.

The **Back.**

The **Shoulder heads,** or **Shoulder straps**; are two peeces that come over the Sholders and are fastned to the Forebody: through which the Arms are put.

Scoreing, or **Strick lines** on the Canvice to sow straight.

Stitching, is sowing all along the lines with close stitches to keep the Whale-Bone each peece from other.

- - - - - - - - - - is the cleaving of the Whale-Bone to what substance or thicknes the workman pleaseth.

Boning the Stays, is to put the slit Bone into every one of the places made for it between each stitched line which makes Stayes or Bodies stiff and strong.

Cordy Robe skirts to the Staies, are such Stayes as are cut into Labells at the bottom, like long slender skirts.

Lining the Bodies, or **Stayes**; is covering the inside of the Stayes with Fustian, Linnen, and such like.

Binding the Neck, is sowing Galloon, at the edge of the Neck.

Eylet holes, or **Eiglet holes,** little round holes whipt-stitched about, through which laces are drawn to hold one side close to the other.

The **Waist,** is the depth of the Stayes from the Shoulders to the setting on of the skirts: now it is distinguished by the Back Waist, and the fore-body Waist, which is each side the Stomacher.

Side Waisted, is long or deep in the Body.

Short Waisted, is short in the Body.

The **Stomacher,** is that peece as lieth under the lacing or binding on of the Body of the Gown, which said body is somtimes in fashion to be.

Open before, that is to be laced on the Breast.

Open behind, laced on the Back, which fashion hath always a Maid or Woman to dress the wearer.

The **Peake,** is the bottom or point of the Stomacher, whether before or behind.

A **Busk,** it is a strong peece of Wood, or Whalebone thrust down the middle of the Stomacher, to keep it streight and in compass, that the Breast nor Belly shall not swell too much out. These Buskes are usually made in length according to the necessity of the persons wearing it: if to keep in the fullnes of the Breasts, then it extends to the Navel: if to keep the Belly down, then it reacheth to the Honor.

A **Point.**

Covering the Bodies or Stayes, is the laying the outside stuff upon it, which is sowed on the same after diverse fashious: as,

Smooth Covered.

Pleated or **Wrinkled** in the covering.

The **Wings,** are **Welts** or **peeces** set over the place on the top of the Shoulders, where the Body and Sleeves are set together: now Wings are of diverse fashions, some narrow, others broad; some cut in slits, cordy Robe like, others Scalloped.

The **Sleeves,** are those parts of the Gown, as covers the Arms: and in these there is as much variety of fashion, as days in the Year: I shall only give the terms of the most remarkable.

The **close,** or **narrow Sleeve**; which reacheth from the Shoulder to the Wrist of the Arm, and is not much wider then for the Arm: which were of old turned up at the Hand, and faced or lined with some other sort of stuff.

The **Wide,** or **full Sleeve**; is such as are full and long, and stand swelling out: such are tied about the Elbow close to the Arm with a Ribbon.

The **open Sleeve,** such are open the fore part of the Arm, that their bravery under may be seen whether it be a mock or cheat Waist-coat with Imbrauthery or the like; else their fine Linnens and Laces.

The

The **slasht Sleeve**, is when the Sleeve from Shoulder to the Sleeve hands are cut in long slices, or fillets: and are tied together at the Elbow with Ribbons, or such like.

The **Sleeve** and **half Sleeve.**

The **Sleeves** with **hanging Sleeves**, is a full Sleeve in any of the fashions aforesaid, with a long hanging Sleeve of a good breadth hanging from under the back part of the Wing down behind, even to the ground; in the greater sorts of Gallants trailing a good length on the ground.

The **half Sleeves** with **Hounds Ears**, are such as extend to the Elbow and there turn up, and being slit or open hang at the Elbow like Dogs Ears.

The **Rim** of the **Sleeve**, is that part which is at the Sleeve hand either lined or Edged or Welted: but of these sorts of Sleeves see their figures and shapes, *chap.* 5. *numb.* 130. 131. *&c.*

The **Facing.**

The **Skirt**, or **Gown Skirt**; is the lower part of the Gown, which extends from the body to the ground: these are made several fashions, as

Open Skirts, is open before, that thereby rich and costly Peti-coat may be fully seen.

Turned up Skirts, are such as have a draught on the Ground a yard and more long; these in great Personages are called Trains, whose Honor it is to have them born up by Pages.

Bearers, Rowls, Fardingales; are things made purposely to put under the skirts of Gowns at their setting on at the Bodies; which raise up the skirt at that place to what breadth the wearer pleaseth, and as the fashion is.

Skirts about the Waist, are either whole in one entire peece with Goares, or else cut into little laps or cordy robe skirts: Gowns with these skirts are called Waistcoat-Gowns.

Wastcoat, or **Waistcoat**; is the outside of a Gown without either stayes or bodies fastned to it; It is an Habit or Garment generally worn by the middle and lower sort of Women, having Goared skirts, and some wear them with Stomachers.

Goare, is a Cant or three cornered peece of cloath put into a skirt, to make the bottom wider then the top: so are Goared Peti-coats.

Peti-coat, is the skirt of a Gown without its body; but that is generally termed a Peti-coat, which is worn either under a Gown, or without it: in which Garment there are

Peating, that is gathering the top part in into Pleats or folding to make it of the same widenes as the Waist or middle of the wearer.

Lacing, is setting a Lace of Silk, Silver or Gold about the bottom of it; which in a Peti-coat is called the **Skirt.**

Bodering, is the lineing of the Peti-coat skirt or bottom in the inner side.

Binding, is the sowing of some things (as Ribbon, Galloon or such like) on both sides the Edge of the skirt to keep it from ravelling; sometime it is done by a Hem: the top part of the Peti-coat hath its Binding also; that is, it hath either Incle, Filleting, or Galloon, sowed about the Edges of it, when pleated: which keeps the Pleats in their Pleats, the ends helping to make it fast about the wearers Waist.

Hem, is the turning of the Edge of the cloath in; two fould or more, then sowing it up, keeps it from ravelling.

Tucking, is to draw up the depth of a Peti-coat being too side or long, and that is by foulding a part over another

Pocket, or Pocket holes; are little Bags set on the inside, with a hole, or slit on the outside; by which any small thing may be carried about, or kept therein.

A **Mantua**, is a kind of loose Coat without any stayes in it, the Body part and Sleeves are of as many fashions as I have mentioned in the Gown Body; but the skirt is sometime no longer then the Knees, others have them down to the Heels. The short skirt is open before, and behind to the middle: this is called,

A **Semmer**, or Samare; have a lose body, and four side laps, or skirs; which entend to the knee, the sleeves short not to the Elbow turned up and faced.

The **Riding Suite** for Women.

The **Hood.**

The **Cap.**

The **Mantle**, it is cut round, which is cast over the Shoulders to preserve from rain or cold.

The **Safegard**, is put about the middle, and so doth secure the Feet from cold, and dirt.

The **Riding Coat**, it is a long Coat buttoned down before like a Mans Jaket, with Pocket holes; and the sleeves turned up and buttons.

In a **Mans Suite** of cloaths there are these severa' parts: as

The **Doublet**, it is the whole covering for the upper part of the Man: in which there is these peeces and terms.

The two **Fore Bodies.**

The two **Back parts.**

The **Waist**, is the length form the shoulder to the middle, now in a Doublet it may be the fashion to be

Short Waisted.

Side Waisted.

The **Skirts** or **Laps**, because one lieth a little over another, they are distinguished by the fore skirts, side skirts and hinder skirts; sometimes the custom is to have them more or less, big and little: narrow or short, and large or deep.

The **Collar**, is that part as compsseth the Neck.

The **Belly peeces**, the inward stiffning of the Breast of the Doublet.

The **Linning**, is fine Flaxed or Linnen; called the out Lining.

The **Inner Lining**, is Canvice, Buckram, or such like, next to the cloth or stuff, between it and the foresaid Lining.

The **Waist-band**, is a - - - - - - - - under the skirts to which the straps are fastned.

The **Eyes**, or **Holders**; are small Wiers made round through which the Breeches hooks are put, to keep them from falling.

Straps, are peeces of Leather fastned to the Waist-band instead of Eyes, or holders.

Waistcoat, is a close Garment worn under a Doublet, and within the Waist-band of the Breeches.

A **Pacadile**, a thing put about Man or Womans Neck to support and bear up the Band, or Gorget.

The **Sleeves**, are the covers of the Arms and are of diverse

diverse fashions, as I have set down in Womens sleeves.

Sleeve hands, the lowest part of the sleeve next the Wrist.

Turn ups, or **Cuffs**; are the turning up of the end of the Doublet next the hand.

A **Slasht Doublet,** is when both sleeves, and back, and fore-body, are cut like unto long slices, or fillets.

Button holes, are such long slitt holes whipped about with a Loop at each end, as are in the left part of the Fore-body, and at the sleeve hands, to receive the Buttons on the right side, and to keep it close together.

The **Facing,** is to Face the sleeve hands, is to adorn the turn up, with some other sort of Stuff or Silk, then the suit of Cloaths is made off.

The **Breeches,** is that part of cloathing which covers a Man from his Waist to his Knees; of the fashion of them there is many extent, I shall tell of some few.

The **Spanish Breeches,** are those that are stret and close to the Thigh, and are buttoned up the sides from the Knee with about ten or twelve buttons: anciently called **Trowses.**

The **Sailers Breeches,** are full and gathered both in the Waist and at the Knees; standing full out.

The **Open Breeches,** are such as are full and wide and not gathered at the Knees, but hang loose and open.

The **Pantiloon Breeches.**

The **Trunk Breeches.**

The **Peticoat Breeches,** are short and wide Coats with Waist bands, having no petition, or sowing up between the Legs; but all open like a short Peticoat, from whence they are named.

Triming, is any thing put on, or about the Doublet, or Breeches: whereby they are adorned and made more Gent, whether it be by Ruffles, Laces, Ribbons, Buttons, Loopes, Scalloping, *&c.*

In the **Breeches,** there are these several parts.

The **Waistband.**

The **Hookes.**

The **Cottonings,** is that with which the cloth or outward stuff of the Breeches are Lined.

The **Drawers,** are Linnen Breeches worn under the Breeches which are tied about the Waist and either above or under the Knees.

The **Pockets,** are little bags set in the sides of the Breeches to put or carry any small thing in.

The **Seat,** the hinder part on which we sit; also the inner part which is at the Breech.

The **Out side** of the Breeches.

The **Cod-peece,** or open of the Breeches before.

The **Knees.**

Loose Garments usually worn over the Doublet and Breeches are such as these following.

A **Stret bodied Coat,** this is close to the Body and Arms, and is usually worn without a Doublet, having under it a Waistcote with side or deep skirts almost to the Knees. These kind of Waistcoats are called **Thates**; because they are to be seen rich and gaudy before, when all the back part is no such thing.

A **Cest,** is a kind of wide Garment reaching to the knees open before and turned up with a Facing or lining, the Sleeves wrought to the Elbows and there were turned up with a round facing: under it was worn another side skirted Coat made fit to the Body after the manner of a Doublet, which was called a **Tunick:** the sleeves of it were narrow, and rought below the Elbow to the middle of the Arm, where it was all beset with knots of Ribbons: about the middle was worn a Silken Girdle, which was called a **Zoan,** or **Sash:** *chap.* 3. *numb.* 23.

A **Jacket,** or **Jumpe,** or **loose Coat:** It extendeth to the Thighs is open or buttoned down before, open or slit up behind half way: the Sleeves reach to the Wrist having the turn-up sometime round, then with Hounds Ears, and an other time square.

A **Vandilion,** or **Vadilion,** or of old a **Vantevil:** It is a lose Coat without Sleeves it reacheth in the skirt to the seat of the Breeches, and is open before, it hath hanging Sleeves which hang down backwards, almost as side as the skirt: *chap.* 3. *numb.* 24.

A **Coat,** or **Riding Coat**; is a full Coat both wide and side with long and wide Sleeves to be drawn over other kind of Garments.

A **Coat** with a round Cape, is the same as afore having a Cape added to the neck part of it.

A **Mantle,** is a round thing made of any stuff, having a round hole in the middle, and so is cut through to the hole, which being put about the neck hangs round about the wearer: which according to the fashion, is large or little, faced or laced *&c. chap.* 3. *numb.* 32.

A **Rocket,** is a Cloak without a Cape.

A **Cloak,** is a peece of Cloth or Stuff cut round with a hole in the Center of it as the Mantle, on the back of it, is a Cape placed; some are deepe Capes, some narrow, others loose from the Cloak part at Cape ends: *chap.* 3. *numb.* 34. 35.

Several Terms used in Sowing of Cloath.

Basting, is a slight running of the Needle and thrid through two peeces of cloth to keep them together while they are sowed with some of these following stitches.

Back-stitch.

Fore-stitch.

Whip-stitch.

Pavy-stitch.

Fine Drawing, is sowing two peeces of Cloth together so curiously, that it shall not be seen where the sowing is.

Ravelling, is roveing or the loosing out of threds or Silk-thrids from the peece of Cloth or Silk.

Stuff, is the general term given to that, of which any Garment is made, whether of Hare Wool, or Silk.

An Upholdsterer.

He beareth Gules, an **Upholdsterer** covering of Stool, or else making up of a **Stool,** Or. Born by the name of *Upholder.* This may be termed an **Upholdsterer in his Shirt,** his **Breeches Tenne, Smiling** of a **Stool,** the **Cover** and **Frame,** Or.

Terms

Terms used about their Work in a Stool or Chair, Cushion or Bed, and Hanging of a Room.

Stool Terms.

Girth it, is to bottom it with Girth Webb stret drawn and crossed.

Canvice it, is to nail the Canvice on the top of the Stool or Chair Frame, over the Girth Webb.

Rowle it, is to put Rowls on the top edges.

Quilt it,

Stuffing, is to stuff it with Hay, Wool, Flocks or Feathers.

Fringing, is to Nail the Fringe about the Stool seat at the sides.

The **Seat,** is that place sitten upon.

Backing, is to Nail the Back on a Chair suitable to the Seat.

Garnishing, is the finishing it with Brass Nails.

Cushion and Bed Terms.

Bottom the Cushion, is to sow the lower part and top together.

Tuffs or **Tuftings,** are the Tassels at the corners of the Cushion.

Bed-Tick, to hold the Feathers.

Gumming, or **Glaring,** or **Sizing,** is to rub the in-side of the Bed Tick, with either Gum, Wax, or Size, to keep Feathers from coming through it.

Feathers, is the filling of the Bed-Tick, which are cleansed from Dirt and Foulness, these ways.

Dressing, making all clean from Quills.

Fanning or **Diving,** taking the Down away.

Stripping the Feathers from the Quills.

Clipping, is the cutting of the Feather part from the Quill with Scissars.

Down, is the Dant, or pure soft airy Feathers which have no Quills.

Quilting, is to put Cotton Wool of an equal thickness between two Silks, or a Callicoe or other Cloth undermost, and a Silk above, which is wrought in scrolls, flowers, *&c.* to keep the Cotton from shifting its place.

A **Mat** of Straw woven or platted together, to ly on the Bed Cords under a Feather Bed to preserve it from Fretting.

A **Matrice,** is a Quilted Straw or Flock Bed.

A **Flock Bed,** is Sack Cloth filled with Wool or Flocks, which is a course Wool.

A **Chaff Bed,** is filled with Oat or Wheat shoues.

Terms about Hanging of Rooms.

Hanging a Room, is to fix about it, either Cloth, Silk, Damask, gilt Leather, Arras, or Tapestry, or any other thing that will cover or hide bare Walls.

Hangings or **Rich Hangings,** are generally taken to be Silk, Arras, or Tapestry.

Plain Hangings, are such as have nothing on them of shape, but only plain Stuff or Cloth.

Pain Hangings, that are plain Cloth or the like, yet have gilt **Ropes** or **Staves** set down the hanging at a certain distance one from the other.

Wired Hangings, that is, when a Paine or Pillar of Gilt Leather, or painted Fruitages or Flowerages, are fixed between each breadth, either of cloth or stuffe.

A Seamster.

The Seamster or Seamstry work follows next in order to that of a Taylor; this being work to adorn the Head and Hands and Feet, as the other is for the covering of the Body; nay, very often the Seamster occupieth the room and place of a Taylor in furnishing the Nobility and Gentry with such conveniencies as serve the whole body, especially in the Summer season. I shall therefore give you the Terms used about their Imploy, and then the names of such pieces of work both in the whole, and in the parts, as is usually done by them.

Terms used by a Seamster.

Patterns, Paper cut in fashions according as the Work is to be made.

Cutting,

Shaping, the ordering the Cloth to be cut.

Laying down, is the edges of the cut Cloth laid down to be hemmed.

Hemming, is sowing up the edges of Linnen, to keep it from ravelling.

Selvage, the out-side of the Cloth.

Seaming, is sowing two selvages together, which is called a Seam or two Hems together; or a Hem and a lay down.

Ravell, or **Rovell,** vulgarly **Rove,** when threads come out of the edges of the cloth.

Ining, or sowing down the Seam.

Sowing, Stitching.

Names of things made by Seamsters.

Shirt, or **Shift** for a Man.

Smock or **Womans shift.**

Fenting, binding at the sleeve hands.

Sleeve hands.

Sleeves and **Gussets** at the Arm-holes

Neck, the gathering.

Open of the **Breast. Back. Skirts.**

Goar, or **Gussett,** the side pieces in a Smock.

Band, as Collared Band, Neck Band, Shoulder Band.

Hollowing, the rounding of it for the Neck.

Clocks of the Band.

Stock, or Neck piece.

Hinder part of the Band.

Fore part of the Band.

Ruffs, pleated Bands of two or three heights.

Round Robins, narrow Ruffs only about the Doublet Collar.

Fouids. Sets. Ruffles.
Cravatts. Half-shirts.
Cuffs, or sleeve cuffs.
Ruffles for the hands, both Plain and Laced.
Sleeves. Bibbs. Biggins.
Handkerchiefs for Womens Necks, both round and square.
Whisks, to be worn with a Gown.
Shapes for Mantua's.
Tuckers, or Dresses.
Gorgetts, round Dresses plaited to be deep about Womens Necks.
A **Band** for a Morning Gown.
A **Roman Dyes**, the Mantua cut square behind and round before.
Night-Rails, or Cover-sluts.

Womens Head Dresses.

Quoifs. Chin-cloth. Caul. Chapparon.
Crosslett, or Crosscloth.
A **Pinner** is with long flaps hanging down the side of the Cheeks.
Towers, curled hair on the forehead.
Ear Knots, Forehead Knots, Head Knots, and Crown Knots falling backwards.
A **Ruffled Quoif**, also with a Knot of Rubin in every fould.
Fillet and **Snood.**
An **Undyes.**
A **Coynett**, or Coif with long Ears, tyed under the Chin, and hanging down deep to the top of the Breast, made of Birds Eye or Gaues.
An **Head Roll.**
Hoods, made of either Gaues, Alamode, Lutestring, Sarsenet, Ducape, Vinian Sarsnet, Persia, Lindia Silk, or Gaues and Birds Eye flowered.
Womens Sleeves.
Half Sleeves with Hounds Ears, or Boat sleeves; these are made of Silk and Satin Imbrauthered, some with Puffs, or ruffled in the turn-up, or Fringed.
- - - - - Holland Sleeves with ruffle Cuffs tied about with Rubins.
House Cloths, or Linnen, as Sheets, Towells, Napkins, Table cloths, Cupboard cloths, Pillow bears.

Bone-Lace and Parchment-Lace Makers.
Laces, or **Bone-Lace** wrought with Pegs.
Scallops.
Golberteene or **Colbertain**, a kind of open Lace with a square grounding.
Point, a kind of Lace worked with a Needle.
Point of Venice, with raisings.
Point of Loyrain without raisings.
Purle Lace. Flanders Lace.
Lay it, is to stitch the seaming on the Parchment according to the Work drawn on it.
Overcast the laying.
Fill the Branches and Leaves with Diamond work overcast.
Loop-work. Purles.
Raise-work.
Buttons, Ilet holes.
Edged on the side with Cocks Comb.

*

Laundresses Terms of Art.

Soyting. Soaping. Soap Suds.
Scalding. Washing.
Wrenching, or **Bloyning.**
Boking or **Bouking.**
Batting, or beating the Cloths to get the Bucking Stuff out.
Starching. Wringing the Cloaths, to force the Water out.
Dying. Smoothing or **Ironing.**
Hanging up, to Air and Dry throughly.
To **Ladder**, is beating the Soap and Water together, to make it rise to a Froth, which the call **Suds.**

The School Mistris Terms, and things to work with.

Needles, of several sizes.
Cruel of all colours.
Silk for sowing of all colours.
A **Tent.**
A **Samcloth**, a cloth to sow on, a Canvice cloth.
Slave Silk. Naples Silk.
Fine white **Alcomy Wyre.**
Ising Glass. Gum Arabick. Gum Dragon.

The School Mistris Terms of Art for all her ways of Sowing.

A **Samcloth**, vulgarly a **Sampler.**
Plat-Stitch, or **single Plat Stitch**, which is good on one side.
Plat-Stitch or **double Plat-Stitch**, which is alike on both sides.
Spanish stitch, true on both sides.
Tent-stitch on the Finger.
Tent-stitch in the Tent.
Irish stitch. Back-stitch.
Fore-stitch. Queens-stitch.
Gold-stitch. Satin-stitch.
Tent-stitch upon Satin.
Fern-stitch. Finny-stitch.
New stitch. Chain-stitch.
Bread-stitch. Fishers-stitch.
Rosemary-stitch. Bow-stitch.
Whip-stitch. Cross-stitch.
Raised Work. Needle work Pearl.
Geneva Work. Virgins Device.
Cut Work. Open Cut Work.
Laid Work. Stitch-work, & Through stitch.
Lap Work. Rock Work.
Frost work. Nett work.
Purle Work Tent Work.
Finger Work, all which are several sorts and manners of Works wrought by the Needle with Silk of all Natures, Purles, Wyres, *&c.* which cannot be described.

Wast,

Waft, or **Finger Bread**, are kind of Purse-strings woven on the Fingers either round or broad, one side of one colour, the other of another; or wrought in Letters, Flowers, Chequy or Losenge ways.

Other Works performed by School Mistresses and their Scholars.

Gum Work, is by Gumming of several colours of sleeven Silk together, which being dry, they cut into shapes of Leaves and Flowers, and so tie them up upon Wyers.

Frost Work. **Transparant Work.**
Wax Work. **Pull Work.** **Quill Work.**
Paper Work, all which are the making of Leaves and Flowers of all the foresaid things, and binding them up in Branches or Posies.

XXXVI. He beareth Argent, a **Shooe-maker** upon his **Seat**, with his **Tools**, (or St. **Hugh's Bones**) on his **right hand** thereon, **sowing of a Shooe**, all proper. It is also Blazoned, a **Man on a Seat**, with St. **Hugh's Bones** by him; exercising of the **Gentle Craft**, all in their proper colours; where note, that the Shooe makers Apron is always green. This is born by the name of St. *Hugh*.

Terms used in the Gentle Craft.

Cutting out.
Closing the Heel Quarters and Vamp.
Rounding the Sole.
Setting the Sole on the Last.
Sowing on the Sole.
Beating down the **Rann.**
Stitching the Sole to the Rann.
Rounding the Soles on.
Channelling the **Sole**, is making a riggett in the outter Sole for the Wax Thread to ly in.
Sowing or **stitching** the sole round.
Rubbing it with a rubbing Stone.
Laying or **beating too** the stitch.
Sowing the Heel.
Pegging on the Heel pieces.
Slickening it off, polishing the upper Leather.
Pinking the over Leather, cutting the grain of the Leather into Roses, Knots, and orderly devices.
Colouring the soles, painting the edges with *India* red.
Burnishing the soles, setting a shining polish on the red.
Painting the stitches, laying the stitches which lie upon the Rann of the shooe with white.
Closing Thread, that as soweth the heel pieces and over leather.
Stitching Thread, is that as soweth the Soles to the Rann.

Leather or Heel thread, is that as sowes the heel to the shooe.

The **Size** of a shooe, is the measure of its length, which is in Children divided into 13 parts; and in Men and Women into 15 parts; the first of them being five Inches long before it be taken for a size, what the shooe exceeds that length, every fourth part of an Inch is taken for the size 1, 2, 3. and so forwards to 13 which is called the Boys or Girls thirteens, or the short thirteens, and contains in length 8 inches and a quarter, from which measure of 8 inches and a quarter, the Size of Men and Women, called the long size or Mans Size, begins at 1, 2, 3, *&c.* to the number 15, each size being about the fourth part of an Inch as aforesaid; so that a Shooe of the long fifteens is in length 12 Inches just. Some term it a **Gage** or **Shooe Measure.**

Grain of the Leather, the hairy side.

Flesh side of the Leather.

XXXVII. He beareth Argent, an **Imbrautherer sowing a piece of Work in a Tent**, the Table, Or, the **Imbrauthery** variable colours, **Hat** Sable, **Clothed** in Scarlet.

The Praise of the Needle, both for its Antiquity and Excellency, doth abundantly surpass all other Arts; for the use of Sewing is so old, that it took beginning with our first Parents *Adam* and *Eva* in Paradice, as we may read *Gen.* 3. 7. also we find that the coverings of the Tabernacle, *viz.* the Curtains had made in them Cherubims of Broidred work *Exod.* 26. 1. And that by the Almighties great Command, *Aaron* the High Priest was invested with Garments of Broidred work which were most glorious to behold, *Exod.* 28. 2. 3. *&c.* And King *David* doth show by an apt Similitude, the Majesty and Glory of our Mother the Church, by comparing it to a Kings fair Daughter brought forth to her Spouse in Garments wrought of Needle Work of Gold, *Psal.* 45. 13. 14.

Terms used by Embrautherers and School Mistresses of the Needle, I have before set down under *numb.* 35. in the School Mistris terms, to which I shall refer you.

XXXVIII. He beareth Argent, on a **Ground plot in Vast**, a **Joyner's Bench** with a **Workman** on the nearer side, **planing of a Board**, all proper. This is the crest or cognizance of *Don de Christierna*, a *Spanish* Family.

XXXIX. He beareth Or, a **Joyner seated** astride a piece of **Timber** with a **Mallet** in his right hand lifted up, and a **Chissel** in his left, making of a **Mortice** all proper; his **Waistcoat**, Gules, **Breeches** and **Hose** Grey. This is the Crest of *Mort le maine.* Some term it a **Joyner** set overcross a **piece of Timber**, with his Mallet and Chissell making a Mortice hole. This is born by *Don Liago* of *Spain*; he was an excellent Ship Carpenter, as my Author hath informed me.

Terms of Art used by Joyners *in their way of Working, and explained.*

First, for the Names of their Timber.

Raile, it is a piece of Timber, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10 foot or more long, and carrieth four inches broad, and an inch or more thick. A **Raile** is an half **Spare.**

Spare, is two inches thick, and four inches broad; in some places it is termed a **single Quarter.**

Joyce, it is four inches square. In some Counties called a **double Quarter.**

Bed posts, such as Beds either for Standards, Bed sides, or Beds feet are made of.

Stool feet.

Chair backs.

Hunton, the short down right pieces in Wainscot.

Stile, the over cross pieces in Wainscot, in the riget of which two, the Panell or middle pieces are fastned.

Boards of several sorts, as

Plank of any length, but never under 2, 3, or 4 inches thick.

Inch Boards.

Half Inch Boards.

Hallens, narrow Boards, about 5 or 6 inches broad, and half inch thick, and of all lengths.

Pannell, little cleft Boards, about 2 foot high, and 16 or 20 inches broad, of these Wainscot is made.

Shingles, cleft Wood about 6 or 8 inches long, and 4, or 5 broad; with these in Wood Countreys they cover their Houses.

Secondly, for their Words or Term.

Architrave, is a plain or flat border, at the bottom moulding of a Cornish or Cornice.

Arras ways, is any thing set or hung Diamond wise, having one corner of the square set upwards, the other downwards.

Base, the bottom, foot, or foundation of any work.

Bed moulding, is the smaller mouldings over a swelling Friese.

Bead, the inner part of any moulding, being only a square.

Batten, is the laying of a long narrow piece of Wood on a Door or the like, to counterfeit Wainscot, being moulded on each side.

Bevil, is any sloping Angle that is not a perfect square.

Bevil Joint; see Joint.

Capitull, is the top mouldings or cornish of any Pillar or Pillaster.

Cast, it is when any Boards, or other stuff, doth cast, warp, or bend, or any way alter from its own flatness and straightness.

Clamp or **Clampt,** is when one piece of Timber with the grain, is fixed to another cross the grain; thus the ends of Tables are commonly clampt to preserve them from wraping.

Cornice or **Cornish,** is the top and overseeling moulding on the top of a piece of Wainscot.

Cross grained, is that part of the Timber, in which a Bough or Arm of the Tree hath grown from the main Trunk of the Tree; in some Boards they are curled Knots, but in Deal perfect Knots.

Curling Grain, see cross grain. This is also called curling stuff, and knotty stuff.

Cypher, as to cypher of a square edge, making 2 edges for that one.

Door Case, is the Frame work about the Door, to which it hangeth by Hinges.

Draw the Saw through, is cut or slit such a piece of Stuff through.

Facia, is a plain square in a moulding, under a projected cornish.

Fence, is a part of the Plow Plain, to keep it from going deeper, or out of the place it is designed to groove.

Fine set, that is, when the Iron of a Plain is set so fine, and stands so shallow below the Sole of the Plain, that in working it takes off a thin shaving. See **Rank** set.

Friese, or **flat Friese,** is a plain and broad square between a Fillet moulding, and a Cornice moulding.

Friese Pannel, is the uppermost Pannel in the Wainscot.

Friese Rail, is the Rail as lieth next under the said Pannel.

Frowy Stuff, is such Timber as is soft and gentle, easie to be wrought, being neither too hard nor too soft.

Free Stuff, Timber of a good condition to work upon.

Frames, are those Wooden mouldings set about Pictures, or Frames for Door Cases.

Groove, or **Growing,** is the making of a long nick in a Spar, Board, or other Stuff with the **Plow Plain.**

Grain, is the running Veins, or breaking Lines which run all along the Wood, no Wood being without a certain Grain either more or less, wider or closer, longer or shorter.

Helve, or **Haft,** or **Handle,** the holding place for working of any Tool, as Chissels and Gouges. Some call them **Heads.**

Hard Stuff, is such Timber as is naturally hard, as Box, Lignum Vitæ, *&c.* or else so Curling and Knotty, that a Plain cannot take a shaving off it as thick as a Groat.

Heads of Tools; see **Helve.**

Husk, is a square Frame of Moulding, like to a Picture Frame or the like, set over the Mantle Tree of a Chimney between two Pillasters, having Capitalls, Friese, and a projecting Cornish.

Inch Board, is a full Inch breadth in its thickness, after it is sawed.

Inch prickt, wants of an Inch in the thickness of the Board, because the Saw Kerfe hath taken half its breadth away in Sawing; so all scantlins are called, as 1, 2, or 3 inch sawn or prickt.

Joynt, is the edges of two Boards Joined and Glewed together in an even and streight line; yet besides this there is other kinds of Joints made in Wood, as

The

The **Square Joynt**, which is, when two pieces of Wood are set sq together that it is the one half of a perfect square; four such Joynts making a square.

The **Nyter Joynt**, is the joining of two pieces of Wood, so as the Joynt makes but half a square and no more; three making a triangle frame.

The **Bevil Joynt**, is the joining of two pieces together, so as that they make any other sharp or acute angle; these Joynts are used in Frames that are made Pentagon, Hexagon, and Octagon, that is, with either five, six, or eight corners.

Kerf, or **Saw Kerf**, is the Sawn-away slit, which the Saw makes in any Board, or other Stuff.

Knot, is a hard place, or irregular part of a Board, which breaks the grain, or turns it in a round; being of a contrary nature to the freeness of the Wood.

Large Pannel, see Pannell.

Lying Pannell, see in Pannel.

Lower Raile, see Rail.

Lay a Kerfe in that piece, is to cut through such a piece.

Lining of Stuff, is to strike a Chalk Line upon it, to Saw it by.

Margent, the flat breadth of the Stile (of some called the **Munton**) between the moulding on each side, is called the **Margent of the Stiles.**

Miter Joynt; see Joyn.

Miter, an Angle that maketh a three square.

Mouldings, the several ways of wrought Work made with Plains on Wood, are generally termed altogether Mouldings, though each Moulding hath its peculiar name.

Mortels, is a long or square hole cut in a piece of Timber, to hold another piece, or entertain a Tenant made fit for it.

Ogee, is a moulding in a Cornish, wherein one part swells out, and the other turns in after the manner of a *Roman* S.

Over seile, is when one part of a Cornish stands further out than another. Some term it a **Project**, or Projecting.

Pannel, it is the flat, and either square or long long Boards in Wainscot, which have their several terms according to their positions, as

The **Lying Pannels**, are the lower rank of Boards next to the ground.

The **Large Pannels**, or **Middle Pannels**, are those that run through the middle of the Wainscot.

The **Friese Pannells**, are the top rank of Boards, which Pannells are generally according to Order of the Work set longways, and are not much more than a fourth part of the breadth of the other Pannells.

Par, or **Paring**, is the cutting of a thing, as a Joynt smooth with the Paring Chissel.

Pilaster, is the half of a Pillar set to a Wall, as in Doors and Chimney peeces, and their Basis and Capital also cut off by the half; this term is given to such Pillar whether they be round or square.

A Pit-Man, the Sawyer that works in or at the Pit for Sawing of great Trees into several sorts of Timber for the Joyners use, is called a Pit-Man, but generally with us Sawyers.

Planchier, is a great round out swelling, between other smaller mouldings.

Plinth, is a Bevil, flat, or plain mould, whether in the Head or Capital Moulding, or Basis.

Project, see **Over-seile.**

Plow a Groove, is the working of a Groove in a Stile or Rail, to lay the edges of a Pannel Board in.

Paring of a Joynt, is to make a Joynt fit, by cutting it even with the Paring Chissel; see **Shooting of a Joynt.**

Rack, is a part of the Instrument used in waving of Timber, and is a flat piece of hard wood about an inch and quarter broad.

Rail, is the overcross pieces in Wainscot, which have several names according to their places, as

The **lower Rail**, is that next the Ground; next it is the **Surbase Rail.**

The **Middle Rail**, is that in the middle of the Wainscot.

The **Friese Rail**, is that next to the top rail, or highmost rail.

The **upper Rail**, is the top Rail on which the Cornice is set.

Rank, or **Ranklet**, is when the Iron of the Plain, is set so far below the Sole of the Plain, that in the working it will take off a thick shaving; or the Teeth of a Saw set so wide that it makes a broad Kerfe.

Range or **Run-range**, is the side of any work that runs straight without breaking into Angles is said to run range; thus the Rails and Pannels of one streight side of Wainscoting being set to a straight corner of a Wall, is said to range or run range with the Wall.

Return, the side that falls away from the fore side or any straight or Range work, is called a Return, as in Corners of Chambers.

Riglet, is a flat, thin, square piece of Wood, fitted to be Mounded and Waved in the Waving Instrument.

Rub, that is, whet the Irons of the Plain when they are dull and blunt.

Scantlin, is the size that the Joyner intends to cut his Stuff to. Sometimes it is used to that piece of Stuff as will not hold out to do that piece of Work for which it is intended.

Scribe, is the drawing of a line or stroak with the point of the Compasses upon a piece of stuff that is straight, thereby to cut it so as it may join to an Irregular piece, whether bowed or cornered.

Shoot a Joynt, is the making of the two pieces to be joined, smooth and even with the Joynter Plain; that is the Joynts are made so exactly streight, that being put together, no Light can be seen between them; this is shooting of a Joynt.

Shoot a Board, is to make it have a straight edge; as in a Ruler, where the edges are shot straight, and one side shot off with a **cypherd** edge.

Stile, of some termed **Munton**, is all those upright pieces in Wainscot, in which the Pannels are fixed.

Stops.

Stuffe, all sorts of Wood that Joyners work upon, are generally called Stuff.

Sur-Base, is the next Rail to the bottom Rail in a piece of Wainscoting.

Swelling

Swelling Frize, is a round swelling between other smaller moulding: it is of some termed a **Planchier.**

Shaving, is the thin cutting of Wood that a plain take off.

Square Joynt, see **Joynt.**

Setting of a Saw, is the drawing of the Saw - teeth one one way, and the other another way, thereby to make the Kerfe broader or narrower, to cut the Timber more Rank.

Table, is a plain smooth board set about with Mouldings, whether it be round Oval or Square, or of what sort soever: but most used for those square Boards which have Frames about them for Pictures and Coats of Arms to be drawn and Painted upon.

Taper, is any sort of work that is smaller at one end then at the other: or diminisheth gradually from the biggest end, to the other.

Tennant, is a square end fitted into a Mortess made in another peece of Timber by which the two Peeces are closed and held together.

Top - Man, is the uppermost Man that is Sawing great Timber at a Pit; or on Trussels which are high Frames a little more then the height of a Man, on which the Wood is laid for want of a Pit.

Traverse, is working with the plain, or any other Tool cross the grain of the Timber.

Try, is to see by the help of a straight rule, laying it on a flat peece, whether the work be true, which it is if no light can be seen between the edge of the rule and the work.

Waws - Cornice, is any small Cornish lying under a great swelling out peece, as under a Planchier, or swelling Friese.

Upper Cornice, is the highest Cornish in any Moulded work.

Warp, see **Cast.**

Wedge, is a peece of Wood or Iron made taper, by which things are opened and made wide; or else to Wedge is to make a thing fast in another, by driving peeces of Wood so made between the open parts.

Whetting - block, is a peece of thick Timber having a Rigget in it, into which the blade of a new Saw is set and wedged that it cannot play whilest the Teeth are sharpning.

Wrest, is that by which Saw Teeth are set.

XL. He beareth Azure, a **Chandler on the further side of his Mould, Dipping of a Staff or Rod of Candles in Tallow,** all in their proper colours. This I have seen often times Painted on Sign - boards, to signifie the dwelling - house of a **Chandler,** or **Candle-Maker:** But as a Badge or Coat Armour for any Family I never saw it so born, Save by the *Chandlers* of *Dublin*, whose Crest it is, as I am informed by *G. Thompson*, my Author.

Terms used by Tallow - Chandlers.

Wind the Yard.

Candle Week, which is doubled Yarn, sometime four or six foulds, made either of Flax or Cotton loosely Spun.

Cut the week, is by a measure on a Board cut according to the length & bigness that the Candles is to be made.

Twist the Week, is to roul the several foulds into one.

Rod the Week, is to put it or the Rod.

Ruff Tallow, Tallow made up in Cakes come from the Butchers shambles.

Break the Cake, is to pull it into peeces.

Chop the Tallow, is to cut it small with a chopping Knife to melt the better.

Tallow the Pan, is to put it in the melting Pan.

Stir the Tallow, when it is melting in the Pan.

Settle the Tallow, is to receive or put it melted into a Tub.

Render the Tallow, is to poure it through a strained, to keep the Dross from the pure Tallow.

Graves, or **Cratchens;** is the dross of the Tallow.

Press the Cratchens, is to squise them in a press to get what pure Tallow can be gotten out.

Fill the Mould, poure the Tallow into the same.

Dipp the Week, is the first dipping it into the Mould, or warm Tallow.

Cool the Candles, or **Stage the Candles;** is to lay the Rod on the Stage to grow cold that then they may be dipt again and again for many times; for the oftner dipped, being cool the thicker is made the Candle.

Thrid the Candles, is to tie them by pounds.

Shop the Candles, is to hang them by pounds, dozens, two or three on the two ends of a strong staff, and so a Man on his shoulder brings them to the place where they are to be.

Week, is the burning part of the Candle, being still fed by the Tallow under it.

Snuff, the Week over burned which is Snuffed off, or cut away that the Candle may burn the better: or Snuff is the latter end when all the Candle is consumed and goeth out with a stink.

Drop, is the running away of a Candle, when it is made of Kitchin stuff, and not of good Tallow.

Thick, is when any thing is in the burning part of the Candle which makes it waste more then it would do.

Ends of Candles, as the bottom ends put out, and not suffered to burn any more.

Waste, is Tallow remaining unburnt about a Candlestick, or that as runs from the Candle into the Socket.

XLI. He beareth party per Fesse, **Air** and **Water** in a **Fishing Boat** (or **Cock - Boat,** as some term it) **two Fishers Drawing of a Salmons Nett out of the Water,** all proper. This is the Coat of Arms anciently belonging to the Company of *Fishers*, or *Drawers* in *Dee* (as we call them) in the City of *Chester*.

In the Chief of this square is a **Demy Woman Cloathed** Gules, **sans Arms;** havin the **Hands fixed at the Shoulders** proper, Crowned Or. Which is the Crest of *Van Koniefeld* of *Frankford*.

A **Demy Man sans Arms, wreathed about the Temples,** the **ends Florant,** A. and G. **Cloathed** with **short round Sleeves,** parted down the Breast of the said colours: Is the Crest of *Van Konitz*. Here I could not properly say the Cloaths parted per Pale, for then they should have come down with a streight line, when as this parting only bends out, as the Breast and Belly

belly doth: Yet in such cases all these kinds of parting are understood, and taken to be no other then per Pale, allowance being given for the bending of the Body.

Things necessary for Fishing or Drawing with Netts.

A **Fishers-Boat.**
Dares.
A **Pole** with Iron hook at the end.
Lanch out.
A **Draw Nett.**
A **Draught.**
Cast the Nett over.
Stall Nett.
Cords and **Corks.**
Packthrid.
Netting Needle.
Strong Hemp thrid.
Mask of the Nett.

XLII. He beareth Argent, on a **Grassy Plat in base** a **Piscator**, or **Fisher**, or **Angler**, with his **Rod lifted up**, and the **Line Pendant** from the same, all proper. This is born for the name of *Angelaer*, both for the Coat and Crest,

In this Quarter a **Demy Boy**, his Arms Metamorphosed into **Fish Hookes**, the **Beards Reversed**, Argent; **Cloathed**, Azure: on his Head a **Plume of feathers**, Argent. This out of a Coronet is the Crest of *Van Angelloch* of *Rhyne*.

Tackles belonging to an Angler.

A **Fishing Rod**, of which there are several sorts: as,
A **Trowling Rod**, or a **Trowler**: hath a ring at the end of the Rod for the Line to run through, when it runs off a Reele.
A **Whipper**, or **Whipping Rod**: is a slender top Rod, that is weak in the middle and top heavy, but all slender and fine.
A **Dopper**, is a strong long Rod very tite.
A **Snapper**, or **Snap Rod**: is a strong Pole, peculiar for a Pike.
A **Bottom Rod**, is the same with a **Dopper** but somewhat more plyable.
A **Snigleing**, or **Pyoking Stick**: is a forked stick, and a short long Line with a Needle Bated with a Lob Worm; It is only for Eels in their holes.
Lines, of which there are several sorts, and of diverse making: as,
Silk Lines, Fishing Lines made of several Silk thrids.
Hair Lines, made of the long hairs of an Horse Tail either single or twisted two together, sometimes three or four.
Thrid Lines.
Wire Lines.

[ ]

Hooks, or **Fishing Hooks** of several sizes, big and little, and of these some have peculiar names: as,
Single Hooks.
Double Hooks, Hooks that have two bending, one contrary to the other.
Snappers, or **Gorgers**; which are Hooks to Whip the Artificial Fly upon, or to bait with the natural Fly.
Springers, or **Spring Hooks**; a kind of double Hooke with a spring, which Flyes open being strucken into any Fish and so keeps its Mouth open.
Baits, are of several sorts, as **Worms** of diverse colours and kinds; **Flyes** Artificial and Natural according to the seasons: **Grashoppers**, and **Pasts** made up by Art.
Corks.
Quills.
Plumets of Lead, to stand at the bottom of the Line to make the Bait sink.
Reeles of several sorts to wind the Lines upon.
A **Trash-Bagg**, a little Bagg of Leather wherein is put Materials for all sorts and kinds of Fly fishing.
A **Landing Hooke.**
A **Landing Nett**, to put under large Fish when the Rod and Line is not of strength to pull them out.
A **Water-Dog**, is a round peece of Lead like a Ring: It is to unloose the Hookes if they be fastned at the bottom.
Swivells, turning Hookes in Rings to fasten Wyer Links to the Lines.
Baiting Needles.
A **Knife** and **Scissars.**
War Thrid, and **Silk**; for the whipping of the Lines to the Hooks.
An **Apron** with several Pockets to place the Anglers Implements in Order.
A **Bagg** to carry the Bait in.
A **Pewd**, or **Basket**, or **Pannier**; to carry the Fish in, when they are cought.

Terms used by Anglers.

A **Joynted Rod**, is a Rod that may be made longer or shorter at pleasure, by putting the end of one staff into a hoope fixed upon the end of another.
A **Top**, is the twigg or plying part of the higher end of the Rod to which the Line is fastned.
The **Noose.**
Gorge, is to swallow the Bait and Hook.
Bait the Hook, is to put a Worm, or other kind of Meat for the Fish on the Hook.
Bait, is any thing that is put on the hook, for the Fish to bite at.
Cast, Throw, or **Toss your Line**: is to fling it into the Water.
Bitt, is when the Fish take the Bait.
Trailes or **Drags**, when the Hook and Line touch-eth the Ground under Water.
It Bottoms, lies on the Ground in the River.
Mid-water Fishing, is to let the Bait Swims on the top of the Water.

Strikes.

Strikes, or **Lacing**: when the Hook is drawn into his Mouth or Gills by a sudden twitching of the Bait from him, and so pulleth it out of the Water.

Run or **Eagar**, when Fish run away with th Bait in his Mouth; **Take his Run.**

Plating or **Weaving**, is twisting the Hairs of the Line together.

Single, or **Double Water Knot** or **Noose**: the knots by which two, three, or four length of hairs are tied together.

Whipping, is both the fastning of the Line to the Hook. or to the Rod.

Cork Flotes, when the Cork swims above Water.

Dops, or **Dives**; when sinks under Water.

Whipping, is also taken for the casting in the Hook, and drawing it gently on the Water, as in **Fly Fishing.**

No Sport, is when the Fish will not bite, but lie a ground.

Good Sport, or **Play**; when Fish is eager at the Bait.

Sniggle, or **Proking**; is a kind of Fishing for Eels in their holes.

Dart, or **Spear**; is to take Fish by a fishing Dart, or Spear: as Eels by Eels-Spears.

Troull, is a kind of fishing for Pike with a Rod whose lines runs on a Reele.

Snap, is a kind of fishing for Pike with a strong Rod, with a double hook at the Line, called **Snappers.**

Snare, is to take Fish in Wyer Gryns, or Snares, Wills, or stall Nets.

Snickle.

Whip, is to fish with a Whipper Rod, for small Fish.

Dopp, is to Fish with a Dopper Rod, for Pike, or large and strong Fish.

Grope, or **Tickle**; is a kind of Fishing by Diving under Water, or in shallow Waters where Fish is seen, by putting ones hand into the water holes, where Fish lieth: and when felt tickle them about the Gills, they will lie so quiet, that you may take them in your hands and cast them a Land: or if great Fish thrust your Fingers into their Gills, and bring them out: to conclude,

For **Pike**, Dart, Spear, Troul, Snap, Gorge, Snare or Snickle,

For **Trout**, **Chub** and **Eel**: Whip, Dop, Sniggle, Grop or Tickle.

XLIII. He beareth **Air**, **on an Hill in Base**, an **Horse loaded with Water-Baggs**, with a **Man following** of him **bearing a Scoope upon his shoulders**, all proper. This is the Coat belonging to the company of *Water-Leaders*, in the City of *Chester*: which Coat in brief we blazon thus, a **Water Leader following of his Baggs.** But if you will go to the particulars then say a **Horse passant** Argent, bearing a pair of **Water-Baggs**, and **Bridled** Sable; the **Water-Man**, or **Horse-Driver**, in a russet **Suite**, with a Linnen **Apron** about him; **Hat** and **Shooes**, proper: holding a **Scope upon his right shoulder**, Or.

In the Chief of this Quarter is a **Demy Man** to the **sinister**, **respectant** or **looking backward**, with a **Laurel** about his Temples, his **left Hand on his side**, and with his **right pointing** to the **Dexter corner**, **Cloathed** and **Girded** about the middle: such a bearing cloathed Gules, is the Crest of *Van Waldendeck* of *Switzerland*. Some term this a **Demy Man to the Sinister**, **Regardant**, or **Face Revertant**, or **Respiciant**, or **Looking** to the **Dexter**: any of them are sufficient blazons. The like to the Dexter, is the Crest of *Van Bittenheim* of *Alsatia*.

XLIV. He beareth Argent, **on a Mount in Base**, **two Men** their **Waistcoats** Gules, **Aprons** white, **Breeches** and **Hose** Grey, **Hats** and **Shooes** Sable; bearing between them on their right shoulders a **Pole** and **Runge**, Or. These are another sort of **Water Carriers**, and do belong to the Occupation of Beer and Ale *Brewers*.

He beareth Argent, two **Beer-Brewers slinging** of a **Barrel**, is the Badge of the Apprentices, and Workmen at the *Brewers* Trade; and is a fit sign or cognizance for a *Brewer*, or a Brew-house: see the Additional Plate to this Chapter, *numb.* 146. after *chap.* 4.

Terms used by Beer-Brewers, and Ale-Brewers,

Comb the Malt, is to put it into the Comb.

Heat the Liquor, boil the water the first time.

Strike it over into Steuk, put it into the the Malt in the Comb.

Steuk.

Mash it up, blend or mixt the Malt and warm Water together in the Comb.

Soak, the steeping of the Malt in the Water, whereby its strength and vertue is drawn out.

Draw it into the Trough.

Wort, is the running of the Water from the Malt.

Best Wort, or **Wort of the first running**, or drawing is for strong Beer.

Wort of the second running, it makes small Beer.

Wort of the last drawing, it is thin and makes small drink, of some called, put up drink, shower-trough or penny prich: this is only the washing of Grains and the Brewers Aprons, and to give it its true term, it is no other then Water bewitched.

Pump it into the the drawing Comb.

Pump or **Guide** it into the Copper.

Boyle the Wort, is the second Boiling.

Fire the Copper, put Fire under the Brewing Pan.

Lead it into the Cooler.

Run it into the yelling Comb.

Put to the store, is to put Barm or Yest to it, to set it on working.

Working of the wort, is the frothing and swelling of it up to the top of the Comb.

Stirring of the wort, is to beat it about the Comb to make the working of it fall, that it run not over.

Sweet wort, the Wort boiled, and not as yet having any store put to it.

New Beer, or **New Drink**; so called whilest it is working in the Comb.

- - - - - - Wort that will not work in the Comb, when the Vessels have been long unused.

Pitch Drink, is drink that drinks sweet and sower, through a taint that it hath taken through the foulness of the Vessels.

Tunning, is powering it into the Barrels when it hath worked enough.

Working in the Barrel, is foming and frothing out of the Bung hole.

Sellar it, is to set the Barrels on Stillages in the Sellar.

Boxing of Beer, is the setting of one Barrel upon two, when the Sellerage and Stillage are two little to contain the Barrells one besides another.

Slinging of a Barrel, is to bear it up with Slings on Mens Shoulders.

Carrying it out, is to bring it to such Customers as are to have it.

Lecking, is when any Beer run though the joynts of the Barrel.

Flying of the Hoopes, is when a hoope come off, or breaketh.

Tap or **Broach the Barrel**, is to thrust the Spigot and Forcet into the Cork hole at the bottom of the Barrel end, thereby to draw the Liquor out.

Brewing Vessels, is the general term for all the things that a Brewer useth in his Trade.

A Malt - Makers Instruments for making of Malt.

A **Measure** and **Strickles**, to measure his Barley.
A **Large Cestern of Lead**, or Stone.
A **Kill**, with good Floores and Loft Floores.
A **Cockle**, the place where the Fire is made to dry the Malt.
A **Disperser**.
A **Sovel**, or Malt-- shovel, and Basket.
Ribbs on the drying Kill.
An **Hair Cloth** to dry the Malt on.
A **Fan**, to cleanse the Malt from its dust.

Terms used by Malt - Makers.

A **Malster**, is one that maketh and selleth Malt.
Malt, it is Barley wet and dryed again.
Wet the Barley, is to put it into a Cistern of Water.
A **Wetting of Barley**, is as much as the Cistern will hold at one time to Wet and swell up.
Couch the Barley, is to take it out off the wet and lay it on the Flooer a foot thick, for as large a compass as the Weeting will contain.
A **Couching Floore**, a Floor made of Plaister of Paris smooth and even which no water will hurt; where the wet Barley is laid to come.
The **Comeing of Barley**, or **Malt**; is the spritting of it, as if it cast out a Root.
Wither it, is to cast it abroad on the Kill Floor, when it is come, that the comeings may wither away; and for the Barley to dry. It must be turned every twelve hours.
Turning, is to cast it with a Shovel on a dry Floor, and laying it thin to dry.
Drying the Malt, is to lay it on a Hair cloth on Wooden Ribs, over a Fire made of Gorse, Sea - Coal or Coal Calcinde, or burned to Cinders, or Char - Coal.
Turning on the Kill, is to Shovel it over, that all parts may dry alikes
Fanning, is to clean it from dust and all small grains.
Malt Dust, is the comings of the Barley, which being dried on the Kill, when it runs through the Fan falls from the Malt into a kind of Dust, all small Corns falling through with it.

XLV. He beareth Gules, a **Man passant, his Shirt** or **Shift turned up** to his Shoulder, **Breeches** and **Hose** Azure, **Cap** and **Shooes** Sable, bearing on his Back a **Bread Basket** full of **Fruits** and **Herbs**, and a Staff in his left Hand, Or. This may be termed either a **Hurter**, or a **Gardiner, having his Fruts** and **Herbs on his Back for the Market.** This were a fit Crest for the Company of *Fruiterers*, or *Huxters*.

XLVI. He beareth Argent, a **Lath - Man** (or **Lath Cleever**) with a **Bundle**, or **Bunch of Laths** on his **right shoulder**, Or: **Doublett** and **Breeches** Azure; **Apron, Hat**, and **Shooes**, Sable.

A **Man** in a yellow **Waistcote**, and black **Breeches** close to the Legs and Thighs, with an **Knew Garland** about his **Temples**, carrying a **bundle of Bow-Staves on his Shoulder**, Vert. Is the Crest of the *Bowyers* in *Chester*.

Terms used by the Fletchers, or Arrow - Makers.

A **Staff**, the first cleeving out of the Timber, to make the Shaft.
Pointing of it out, is the first cutting of it round with a Knife out of the rough.
Ripping it, is to give it the first round.
Shaving, is round with an hollow Shave.
Smooth it, is to Polish the same smooth with a Fish-skin.
Sliting it, putting the Horn for the nick.
A **Cross slit**, making the nick of the Arrow.
Fitting the Head, cutting the end to put on the Pill head.
Heading the Arrow, is Gluing it on.
Drawing the Feathers.
Cutting, or stripping the Feathers of the Quills.
Parcing the Feathers, is to cut the backs to make them lie close.
Ribbing, is cutting the side skirts away.
Cutting them of a length, is to cut them to their shapes and breadth.
Pressing the Feathers, putting them in a wett cloth to keep them even and straight.

Pollishing, or **Glazing**, or **Garnishing** the Arrow with Glue; is to rub it over as far as the Feathers go with Glue, before they are set on.

Featheringe the Arrow, is to Glue on the Feathers.

Pareing or **Cutting them down**, is cutting the Feathers even and all of a length and breadth.

Poising the Arrows, is to know whether the pair of Arrows be of an equal weight as they are of a length.

Turning them, is to give them a Twerle in ones hand, to know whether they be straight.

Staff, the Bow-staff at its first cleft.

Hewing them with the Hatchet.

Pointing them.

Plaining them.

Set them to the right, is if they be crooked to set them straight.

Horn them.

Nick the Horns.

Plain them the second time.

String them to see whither they come right, one place as well as another.

Rasp them, to make them in a little shape.

Pollish them, to make them smooth.

Rub them with a Boars tooth and an Oyle cloth, to them shine and set a gloss on them.

XLVII. He beareth Argent, a **Stringer**, or a **Man in a side Skirted Coat** per Pale Argent and Vert, **Breeches** and **Hose** counterchanged, **Cap** & **Shooes** Sable: having a **Staff on his left Shoulder**, with a **Bugge of Bow-strings hung at the end thereof**, Or. This is the Crest of the *Bow-String-Maker*, commonly called the *Stringers* of the City of *Chester*.

XLVIII. He beareth Gules, a **Man sitting** on a **Block Apron** and **Waistcoat**, Argent: **Hatchelling** or **Dressing of Flax**, Or. This belongs to the *Flax-Dressers* Company: and is their Crest or Cognizance.

Things belonging to Dressing and Spinning of Hemp *and* Flax.

A **Gigge**, is a hole in the Ground where Fire is made to dry the Flax.

A **Flake**, or Hurdle of sticks laid over the Gigge hole on which the Flax is laid.

A **Brake**, or **Flax Brake**: is two pieces of Timber with Teeth made in them to bruse Flax stalks.

A **Swingle Foot.**

A **Swingle Hand**, corruptly a **Swingow Hond**: a thing like a Wooden Fauchion with a square hole or handle.

An **Hatchel**, of which there are several sorts one finer then another, these are long Iron Pinns set orderly in a Board with which Hemp and Flax is combed into fine haires.

An **Hurdle.**

A **Wheele** and **Distaffe**, a **Reel**, and **Reeling Pinn.**

Parringle blades, **Foot** or **Stand**, and **Parringle Pegs**, or **Pinns.**

The Sowing and Dressing of Hemp and Flax is a Branch of **Huswifery**: and is generally performed by **Good Houswives** at home, though other make a Trade of it abroad, however if at home or abroad, so the Country be supplied I shall be satisfied. Yet here give me leave to set down all the Terms of Art used by all Good Houswives, in this their work of Huswifery, from the first growing of these Herbs or Plants, *viz.* Hemp and Flax, till the same be made fit for the *Weaver* to make it into Cloth.

Terms of Art used by Hemp and Flax Dressers and Spinners.

Linseed, is the seed of Flax.

Hemp-seeds, groweth to Hemp.

Pulling, is to pull it up by the Roots, when at the full growth.

Bundling, is tying the Stalks up in Bunges.

Watering or **Diving**, is to lay the Bunges in water with weight on them to keep them from swimming.

Spreading, is to lay them abroad to dry.

Gigging, is to dry the Hemp or Flax over a Fire, made in a hole of the ground, which is called the Gigg or Gigg hole; and so laid upon a Flake, after the manner of a Kilne.

Braking, is the crushing, and brusing the Stalks, between peeces of Wood with Teeth like a Saw, made in them.

Pilling, is to Pill off the outward skin of the stalks of the Hemp, when they do not break it, reserving the stalk whole.

Swingowing, is the beating off the brused inward Stalk of the Hemp or Flax, from the outward pill, which as the Hemp or Flax.

Heading it, is to tie the said Hemp or Flax so swingled into small bundles, which they call **Heads of Flax.**

Hatchelling, is to comb with Iron pinns to make it finer.

Hemp Huerds, the couse that is drawn out of the dressed.

Hemp all one way, that is dressed.

Teer of Hemp, long and strong Hemp.

Steel Hemp, long and strong Hemp.

Kirtle Flax, is twelve heads in a bunch, and is about an hundred pounds in weight.

Rogisca, five heads is three pounds.

Pater Noster, ten handfulls in a strick, is 2 pounds.

Hemble, five heads, is two pounds.

Podola, three Bands is a bunch, & is forty two pounds.

Quinsborough, three Bands in a bunch, forty two pounds.

Elvens, three Bands in a bunch, forty two pounds.

A **Baile of Flax.**

A **Bunch of Flax.**

A **Head of Flax**, is twelve Stricks tied up to make a Bunch.

A **Strick**, is about ten handfulls made up together in a head.

A **Handful**, or hand of Flax, is an handful tied up.

Dyscoming,

Dyconing, is opening and drawing the Flax to put it on the Distaff.

Carding of Huerds.

Spinning, is to twist the Flax hairs into Yarn or Thrid.

Reeling, is to wind the Yarn of the Wheel Spool on a Reel.

Knotting, or **Helching**, is to make a Knot or Cagg at every hundred times winding the Yarn about the Reel.

Cagging with the made Hank.

A **Slipping**, is as much as is wond upon the Reel at a time, which is generally about a pound of Yarn.

An **Hank**, is a slipping made up into a Knot.

A **Lay-band**, is an Inkle or Packthrid as tieth the Hank in the middle, by which it is hung up.

A **Houswives pound of Yarn**, or **Teer**; is two Wax pounds.

A **Wax pound**, is sixteen Ounces.

Fine Hatchelling, and **Round Hatchelling.**

An **Hurle**, is the hair of the Flax, which is either fine or round.

Shoves, are the small breakings of the Hemp or Flax stalks which often sticketh in the courtest sort of them.

Huerds, is that as is pulled out of the Teere or fine Flax.

Fine Flax, or **Teere.**

Flax all one way, is Flax in the ruff, undressed.

Scalding, or **Steeping** the Yarn.

Bucking, is to make it something white by washing it in Lye made of Gorst Ashes.

Dying, is to hang it up in the Aire to dry after the Washing or Bucking.

Winding, is to make it out of Hanks into round Clues or Balls.

A **Clue of Yard**, is Yarn wond into a round Ball.

Yarn, is the single thrid of either Hemp or Flax.

Warping, is bringing to the Weavers to Lay for Cloth.

Weaving, is the Weavers work who make it into cloth, from whence it hath these Denominations, either.

Readings, is a course sort of Cloth.

Huswives Cloath, is the middle sort between fine and course.

Flaxen, is the finest sort of Cloth made of Flax.

Whitning, is to make the Cloth white, which is the last thing of this part of Good Huswifry.

XLIX. He beareth Azure, a **Weaver working at his Lomme**, all proper. This is the Crest of the *Silk Lace Weavers*, and *Ribbon Weavers*, for the City of *Chester* only: All other *Weavers* bearing the Coat and Crest belonging to the common *Weavers* of Woollen and Linnen.

The several Parts of a Loome, *or* Weavers *Frame.*

The **Frame**, is the four standing peeces with the cross peeces to hold them that they stand upright.

The **Yarn Beam**, is that as hath the Yarn rowled about it, at the end whereof is a Wheele with a catch or two or three on it.

The **Latch**, is an Iron or peece of Wood that falls into the Catch of the Wheel aforesaid, which holds the Yarn Beam from turning.

The **Leath**, that is a moving Frame in which the reed is placed by which the Woof is knockt or beaten into the Warp.

The **Reed**, is that like Barrs of a Grate through which the Warp or Yarn runs.

The **Coats**, are the thrids that the Yarn run through: they are lifted up and down by help of the tradles, by means whereof they Warp at every cast of the Shuttle is crossed, one contrary to the other.

The **Pullees**, or **Pullases**; are those turning things on the top of the Frame by which with the help of the tradles the Spring-staves are raised up and down.

The **Spring-staves**, are the rising and falling staves, which have the Coats or Thrids fixed to them.

The **Tradles**, are playing staves at the bottom of the Frame from whence there goeth Robes or small Cords to Pulles and Spring-staves, which being put down with the *Weavers* Feet by help of the said Pullees raise and fall the Spring-staves, which by means of the Coats or thridden Nuces fixed to them raises by turns. and falls every other thrid or yard in the Warp.

The **Breast Beam**, is that as the Workman sets his Breast unto when he is Weaving.

The **Cloth Beam**, is that as the cloth is rouled upon, as it is Woven: It hath an Iron Wheel full of Notches, and a Catch, that is to hold it fast from turning.

The **Thrum**, and a **Fent**; is the cuttings off of the cloth when it is Woven, the remaining being the ends of the Warp, which being so short cannot be Wover, hath only a narrow peece of cloth fixed to it.

Terms of Art used by Weavers.

Wind the Beam, is to turn the Beam that the Warp may wind about it.

Rod the Lace, is to put two Rods through the cross thrids which were crossed at the Warping.

Knit to the Thrum, is to tie the end of the Yarn to the end of the Thrid that hangs from the Fent of the Thrum.

Draw through the Coat, is to put every particular thrid, through a particular Nuce of Pack-thrid hangling at the Stick or Rod.

Draw through the Reed, is to put the same through every cleft of the cloven Reeds.

Cord the Rods, that is tie the Cords to the Rod that goeth through the Fent that holds the Thrum together.

Trade the Tradles, is to make one fall, and another rise, by setting the foot upon each.

Winding of Pinns, is the winding of Yarn upon a Reed or Pinn

Set the Pin, is to put it into the Trough or hole of the Shuttle.

Weave, is to cast the Shuttle through the cross Thrids or Yarn over cross the Loome.

Knock or **beat the Warp,** is the striking with the Reed the crossed Warp and Woose close together.

Beere, is nineteen ends of Yarn running all together out of the Trough upon the VVall, all the length of the cloth.

Warp, is all the Yarn that runs the length of the cloth, let it have either more or less Beers in, according as the breadth of the cloth is intended: for the broader the cloth is, the more Beers, or nineteen thrids must be warped into it.

Woofe, is that Yarn which is wrought out of the Shuttle, in the overthwart working.

L. He beareth Sable, a **Cooper in his Waistcote,** and **Cap,** Argent: **Breeches** and **Hose,** Russet: with an **Adds lifted up in his right hand,** and a **Diver in his left, trussing up a Barrell with Fire out of the top of it,** all proper.

Terms used in the Art of Coopery, *viz. making of Barrells.*

Trussing a Barrel, is putting it together from Boards or Staves within a Hoop.

Trussing Hoop, is a large strong Hoop which is first put about the Barrel staves to draw them to their compass.

Paring the Staves.

Fireing and **Dyving.**

Hooping or **Hoop.**

Twigging a Hoop, is binding the two ends together with cloven Twiggs of Withy, or Osier Twiggs.

Nocking of a Hoop, when the two ends are cut into two contrary cross Nochings or Nicks, which being put into the other, holds as fast as if it were Twigged.

Twiggs.

Barrel staves, or **Boards;** are long and slender or narrow Boards, which Barrells and other Vessels for liquor are made off.

Grooping, is the making of the Rigget at the two ends of the Barrel to hold the head in.

Heading, or **Head;** is to put in the round Boards fitted together into the Groop made to receive them.

Cross Barr, is the fixing of a Bar or two over the head of the Barrel to keep it firmly and strongly in its place.

- - - - - - - the Peggs as keeps the cross Barrs on.

Chine, or **Lag;** is a piece put into the top of a Barrel staff that is broken off at the Grooping.

Belly, is the round swelling bulk of the Barrell.

Bungg, is a large round hole in the side through which liquor is put into the Barrel.

Vent, is a small hole made to give Wind to the Barrel.

Tap, is the Forset hole made in the head of the Barrel to draw the Liquor out.

Several sorts of Vessells made after the Form and Fashion of Barrells.

A **Dyfett.**
A **Tunn,** is eight Barrells.
An **Hogshead,** is two Barrells.
A **Pipe,** is a Barrel and half.
An **half Pipe,** is three Firkins.
A **Barrel,** is four Firkins, or thirty six Gallons.
An **half Barrel,** is two Firkins.
A **Firkin.**
A **Kilderkin.**
An **half Firkin.**
A **Rundlet** of thirty six quarts, all other Vessels less are called Rundlets of twelve, ten, six, four quarts *&c.* till you come to a Rundlet for Oysters pickled, containing about a quart, or a pint and half.

Terms used by the White-ware Cooper.

Falling, is the falling of the Trees, to make the work with.

Cleeving, is the cutting it into length for the work, which are termed according to the work for which they are ordered: as Boards, Hoopes, Bottoms, Staves, Pinns, *&c.*

Hewing, is cutting it even from the running of the Grain.

Drawing, is putting the Wood into the pairing ladder, to shave and cut it to what thinness is fit for the work.

Joynting, is fitting the Boards or Staves, so that the joynts lie close and tite.

Heel Shaving.

Boxeing.

Grooping, is the making of the Rigget at the lower part of the Vessel to hold the bottom in.

Buckling, is the putting of the Vessel boards together with a Hoop about them, so making its compass.

Sawing, is to make the Staves all even at the ends, or top and bottom.

Hooping, is fastning the Hoops on the work made.

Quarter Cleeving, Trees cloven into four quarters.

Boults, the sawed pieces into lengths, out of which **Laths** or **Latts** are cloven.

Bottoms, are pieces of Wood to put in the bottoms of Vessels to make them hold any kind of Liquor: called **Bottom Boards.**

Staves, are cleft Wood, made either longer or shorter as the work requires.

Hoops, are long, slender, narrow peeces, cleft all the length of a Tree.

Pinns, short, round, or square pieces of Wood, about six, eight, or ten inches long, and an inch or more in Diameter: or much larger if they be for great Work, as Combs, Tubs, *&c.*

II. He beareth Azure, a **Carpenter squaring** of a long **piece of Timber**, lying on **two Rowlers**, Or: his **Waistcote** Gules, **Breeches** and **Hose** Russet, **Hat** and **Shooes**, Sable.

In the Dexter base of this quarter, is the Figures of a **Man** and **Woman walking together**: and such a like bearing I find to belong to the Coat Armour of the City of *Dantzig* in the Empire of *Germany*, *viz.* Or on a **Fesse** Vert, between an **Eagle Displaid** Sable: and a **Cross Patee** Azure: two **Spaniards** and their **Wives Walking together**, Argent. I might call them either *French*, or *Spanish*; because they contrary to us *English*, ever take the better hand of their Wives: as it is here to be seen. Some term them **Mutually walking**, or **Coambulant**, or **Main a Main Ambulant.**

Terms used in Carpentery.

Arch, is any work wrought circular, as the tops of Window frames, the top of Gates, and the Roof of Vaults.

Back, or **Hip Moulding**, is the Moulding in the back Hips, or Vally Rafters in the angle or corner of the back part of a Building.

Bannister, is the little Pillars set in a Balcony or Stair-case.

Base, is commonly the bottom of a Pillar or Column, or Pillaster, or the bottom of any Building; termed also the Basis or Foundation.

Batement, is to cut off or waste a piece of Timber to form it to the purpose designed; that a Workman instead of asking how much was cut off such a piece of Stuff, will say what Batement had such a piece.

Batter, is when the side, or part of the side of a Wall, or any Timber Bulges out from its foundation or bottom; this is said to Batter or hang over the foundation.

Battlement, is a flat Roof or Platform to walk on; but Battlements are more properly used for Walls built above the Plat-form to inclose it, as is seen in Towers and Castles of Defence.

Bauk, is a piece of Fir unslit, from four to ten inches square, and is of any length.

Bear, that is Timber is said to bear at its whole length, when neither a Prop, Wall, or any thing stands between the ends of it; but if any such things be under it, and that the Timber rests upon it, then it is said to bear only in that distance where it hath no support. Thus Carpenters ask what

Bearing such a piece of Timber hath? The Answer is 10, 12, 15, *&c.* foot, according to the length of the whole Timber unsupported, or distance between each end of the Timber.

Bearer, is a prop, post, or wall made up between the two ends of a piece of Timber to shorten its bearing, or help the weight that lyeth upon it.

Bond, is to make fast two or more pieces of Timber well together, either by good Tennanting and Mortesing, or by Duff-tailing and such like.

Brad, is a Nail without a head to floor Rooms withall, it is with us termed a Sprig, and is about the size of a ten penny Nail.

Bulge, see **Batter.**

Break in, is when with the Ripping Chissel Carpenters are forced to make a hole in a Brick or Stone Wall, to lay the end of a piece of Timber in it.

Bring up, is a term used by Carpenters to Bricklayers or Masons; that is to bring up such a Wall or Chimney, that is, build the Foundation so high, or build the Wall or Chimney.

Butment, is the support of a piece, or a stay of any thing that is laid against it; as a Summer in a Wall, which if the Wall be not strong to support it, but shrink or yield to its weight, it is said not to have good Butment, the Wall is not able to bear it.

Camber, is a piece of Timber cut Arching, so as when a considerable weight is laid upon it, it may in length of time be reduced to a straight.

Cantilevers, pieces of VVood framed into the front or sides of a House, to sustain the Moulding and Eaves over them; called also **Canteleverg.**

Carcase, is (as it were) the Skelleton or Frame of an House new raised, having neither Laths nor Plaster on it.

Cartouses, or **Catouses**, are VVooden Corbells ornamented, or wrought with turned Carved VVork.

Clear Story Window, are such VVindows that have no transum or cross piece in the middle of them to break the same into two Lights.

Coping over, is a sort of VVork hanging over its upright VVall, which is generall Bevelling on its under side.

Cornice.

Corbel, is a piece of Timber set under another piece to discharge its bearing.

Discharge a Wall, or piece of Timber, set up to another cross piece, that is not able to bear the weight laid upon it, is said to be a discharge to that bearing.

Double Quarter, see **Quarter.**

Draft, is the form and manner of an intended Building described on a Paper, wherein is laid down the devised divisions and partitions of every room in a due proportion according to its scale. Some term it a **Model** or **Ground Plot.**

Drag, as a Door is said to drag, when either by its ill hanging on its Hinges, or the ill Boarding of the Room, the bottom edge of the Door rides (in its sweep) upon the Floor.

Enter, is when the Tennant is put into the Mortess, they are said to enter the Mortesses.

Feather Edge, Boards or Planks that have one edge thinner than another, are called **Feather Edge stuff.**

Furrings, is the making good of the Rafters feet in the Cornice.

Flyers, are Stairs made of an oblong square figure, whose fore and back sides are Parallel to each other, and so are their ends. The second kind of these Flyers stand Parallel behind the first, the third behind the second, and so are said to fly off from one another.

Foot-pace, is a broad place in a pair of Stairs, whereon you may take two or three paces before you ascend another Step, which is looked upon to be a great ease to the

the Legs in ascending the rest of the Steps.

Flow, it is as well taken from the whole frame of the Floor, as the boarding of it over.

Gable, or **Gable End**, is the top end of an House, which reacheth just so far as the covering of the House, Eaves excepted, for they generally are lower.

Gain, is the letting of one piece of Timber Bevell-ways into another; that is, by shouldering or lapping of the end of a Joyce or Spar, *&c.* and then the cutting the thickness of the said shoulder in another piece bevilling it upwards, so that it may receive the Gain, and so the two pieces lie even and level upon their superficies.

Ground-plot, is the piece of Ground a Building is to be erected upon.

Hang over, see **Batter**.

Hand-spike, see **Lever**.

Jutters, are pieces of Stuff or Timber about 4 or 5 inches square, and of several lengths.

Knee, or **Knee piece**, or **Kneeler**, is a piece of Timber growing angularly or crooked; that is, a great Branch shooting out near the top of the Trunk of the Tree, and is so cut that the Trunk and the Branch makes an Angle. Some call it a **Crook**, or a **Knee-Rafter**.

Landing place, it is the uppermost step of a pair of Stairs; that is the floor of a room you ascend upon.

Lever, is the same piece in Wood as the Crow is in Iron; it is an Instrument whereby great Timber is lifted up; in some places called **Hand-spikes**.

Lintell, is a piece of Timber laid over a Window or Door-Case, either in Brick or Stone-work, to trim or fall even with the same Frames; and is as well to bear the thickness of the Wall laid over it, as to make a Bond, or be a binding to the sides of the VWall.

Modillion, see **Cantelever**.

Mouldings, are the running of several sorts of Plains upon the edges of Spars, Joyce or other Stuff to adorn it; as in Chimney pieces, the inward edges of VWindow Frames, Shelves, *&c.*

Modell, is the first draught, or frame, or fashion by which a House is to be Built.

Plate, is a piece of Timber upon which some considerable weight is framed; hence it is, that we call the place where any work is framed, Ground Plate, Window Plate, *&c.*

Profile, is the same with Ground Plot.

Projecture, is the Jetting over the upright of a Building with another Building; thus Balconies project into the Street; and one Story in a House projects that below it.

Puncheons, are short pieces of Timber placed under some considerable weight to support it.

Props, are longer pieces of Timber used to support a decayed Building.

Pudlaies, are short pieces of Stuff used instead of Handspikes.

Quarters, are Timber of two sizes, *viz.* Single Quarters are Sawn Stuff, two inches thick, and four inches broad.

Double Quarters are Sawn to four inches square, and are of any length as the Workman ordereth.

Quartering, in the Front or sides of the House, in each Story all the working in of cross pieces or cants, into the principal Posts, Jaums, or Window frames, *viz.* the upright Trimmings and the Braces as some call them, are called Quartering.

Quirk, is a piece taken out of any regular Ground Plot or Floor; which said piece so taken out, is generally of a square nature; a square being struck into four parts, one of those parts in Carpentry Terms is called a Quirk.

Rail, **Rails**, stand over and under Banisters of Balconies and Stair-cases, *&c.*

Raiser, is the Board set on edge under the foreside of a Step in a pair of Stairs, which makes the height of the Step.

Raising-piece, are such pieces that lie under the ends of Beams and Summers upon Brick or Stone Work, or upon Timber Wall Plats by the sides of Houses.

Rellish, see **Projecture**.

Return, is either of the adjoining sides of the front of an House, or Ground-plot, of some called a **Return side**.

Ridge, is the top of the House; where the meeting of the Spars or Rafters is on both sides of the House, is called the Ridge.

Roof, is the covering of the House; but the word is used in Carpentry, for the Timber work of the covering.

Scribe, see in Joyners Terms.

Shake, is such Stuff as is crackt either with the heat of the Sun, or Drought, or Wind, is called **Shaken Stuff**.

Shingles, small pieces of Wood used to cover Houses with instead of Tiles or Slates.

Shreadings, are the lower ends of the principal Rafters in the front of the House. Some term them **Furrings**.

Sills, or **Sells**, are either Ground Sells, which are the bottom pieces of Timber on which the House is Built; or Window Sells, which are the bottom pieces of Window frames. Some term these Sils.

Stair-Case, is the inclosure of a pair of Stairs, whether it be with Walls, or with Rails and Bannisters, *&c.*

Stancheons, see **Puncheons**.

Scale, is the measure of the ground Plot on the Paper draught, by which the work is made.

Skirts, are the projecting of the Eaves over the Wall plat, to secure the Wall from Rain.

Transom, is the piece that is framed a cross; a double Light Window.

Trim, is when Workmen fit a piece into another piece, they say they trim in a piece.

Tusk, is a Bevel shoulder made to strengthen the Tennant of a Joyst, which is let into the Summer or Girder.

Valley Rafter, see **Back Moulding**.

Well-Hole, is the void place in the middle of a square Stair-case, by which one may see from the bottom to the top of the Stairs.

Wall-plate, is the side of the Wall; or more peculiarly used by Workmen for the Timber in the Wall, whether upright or overthwart; all together makes but a Wall or Wall-plate.

LII. He bearcth Argent, upon an **Hill in Base**, Vert, a **Mason skabling of an Ashler**, Or, **Waistcoat**, Gules, **Hat**, **Breeches**, **Stockings** and **Shoes**, Sable, **Pick Axe**, Azure. By the help of Masonry the most glorious Structures in the World have been set up; as if their Art did endeavour to imitate the Handy Works of God, in making little Worlds in the great Fabrick of the Universe.

Terms of Art used by Free Masons Stone-Cutters.

Guttering, is to make Gutters or Furrows in the top of the Rock, thereby to loosen it from the rest of the Rock.

Rigalding, is to set in the Wedges.

Setting,

Driving, is to strike in the Wedges, to force up the Bed or Lift of Stone, or that great piece of the Rock which was guttered about, or on two sides.

Cutting, is to cut that great piece of the Rock into any piece or shape as the Workman gives Order for, whether it be into Ashlers, Perpins, Flags, Gravestones, *&c.*

Skable, is the first working of a Stone out of the rough, and making it into shape for the use it is to be put unto.

Broach, is to hew away the rough skabling stroaks.

Axe, is to work the Stone smooth, with a broad sharp Axe.

Rub, is to rub the wrought Stone with another, thereby to make it even, and wear away all the stroaks the Axe hath left in the Stone.

Cleanse, is to make the Joynts in a Wall or Floor even, so that one edge of a Stone shall not be higher than another.

Hewing, see **Skable**.

Levell, is to see that a Floor be laid streight and even.

Plime, is to be streight in Walls, which is tried by the Plime Rule.

Champher, is to take the square edge of a Stone off Bevile ways.

Names of Stons according to their bigness, and the use they are put to.

Rough Stone, or **Penny Stone**, such as are rough cut out of the Quarry, and are without any shape or form to make work of.

Perpin, are less than the size of Ashlers.

Ashler, is a Stone a Yard long, and 8, 9, or 10 inches square, according as the work will bear it.

Flag, Broad Stones for Floors of several breadths and lengths, and about three or four inches thick.

Grindle-stone, round Stones to sharpen Tooles upon

Mill-stone, a mixt stone of great and small Piples, made round for grinding of Corn.

Grave-stone, long and broad Stones to lay on Buried Bodies, which are about five or six inches thick.

Fractable, are the wrought stones that run up the Gable ends or Dormant Windows, which are made of Brick or Houses of Stones.

Crow-stone, is a Stone cut to rest upon the end, or point of the Gable end, on which a Pinacle of Stone is fixed.

Finishing, or **Pinacle-stones**.

Gutter-stone, is to have an half round cut in Stone, for water to run in, thereby to convey it away.

Crisis, are wrought Stones, either half round, or with Bottles, or triangular; to lay on Brick or Stone Walls to secure them from weather. Some call them **Top Stones**.

Corbills, Stones set out of Walls to hold things on.

Coin, or **Coin-end**; are Stones laid in a Brick Wall at the corners of a House: called also **Quine-stones**. They are a yard long, and three Brick in thickness.

Note that Sixty Ashlers is reconed for an Hundred.

There are several other terms used by the Free-Masons which belong to buildings, Pillars and Columbs, to which places I shall refer you, *lib.* 3. *chap.* 13. *numb.* 55, 56. *&c.*

Terms of Art used by Free-Masons.

Antiques or **Antique Work**, is Carvings, of several forms and figures either Men, Beasts, Birds, Flowers and the like; turning and Winding into fouldage, or Scrowles, or jagged leaves.

Architrave, is the bottom part of a Cornish or several ways of Mouldings.

Abacus, is any flat or square in a Cornish.

Annuletts, are all the small Rings or Fillets made in Pillars, or between Mouldings in Corniches.

Astragal, or **Astragolus**; are the round Rings with Fillets on each side, set at the bottom of Capitals, or Pillar Heads.

Buttresses, are square Pillars set at the out side of a Wall to support it from falling.

Butment, is good strong building on which Arches are built, or any part that other work is built against, which it must support.

Battlements, the top of Castle Walls.

Basis, or **Base**; the Foot of a Columb, or Bottom, or Foundation of a Wall or other building.

Breaking of a **Cornice**, when it runs not straight, but is made with returns: under which breakings are set Catouses, or hung Drops (or pendals in Wood work) for Ornament.

Collarino, the bottom Ring, with its Fillets in the foot of a Capital. The same to **Astragal**.

Cambia, the same to **Annulett**.

Cincture, the same.

Corona, is a flat in a **Cornice**, with a Channel or Rigget at the Bottom inwards.

Cima,

Cima, or **Cimatia**, or **Cimatium**; is a bending in the top of a **Cornice** in form of an S. but not so much bending: of some it is called an O. G. see **Scima.**

Capital, the Head, or Moulding, or Carved work on the top of a Columb or Pillar or Pillaster.

Chapiter, that which is set upon the Head or Capital of a Pillar to further Adorn or Beautifie the work, as Balls, Pine Apples, Beasts sitting holding Shields, with such like.

Cavetto, is an half round of a **Cornice** inward, in the Capital of a Pillar: the same to **Scotia.**

Cartouches, or **Catouces**; the turning Scrowles in form of an S. which are generally Carved, and set under the breaking of a **Cornice**, or support of a Beam, or such like.

Center, the middle of any round Body, or Circumference.

Columb, a round Pillar: see **Pillar.**

Cantilevers, Stones wrought into Scrowles, Corbills, on which a Wall may be further jetted out, for the benefit of some Room or Place of Easment.

Cornice, is any kind of Moulding work that over seileth or projects the place it stands upon.

Clarester Windows, that have no cross Barrs in them.

Dado, or **Dye**; is a flat in a Cornice or Pedestal, a square and broad Fillet.

Diametre, or **Diameter**; the breadth of any round from side to side over the **Center.**

Dentilles, are squares left on a square or flat part of a **Cornice**, to set out the work.

Echinus, the same to **Ovolo.**

Frize, is the second part of work in the bottom of a **Cornice** or **Capital**, and next after the **Architrave**: And it may be plain, or swelling out with a round.

Flutes, are the hollows, or channells in a **Corinthian Pillar.**

Fascia, are flats in a Cornish towards the Bottom: also termed a **Frise.**

Fillets, see **Annulets.**

Gutta, are Drops, or square pieces, or things like Bells, cut on the **Frize**, to set out the work.

Gradetten, are certain kind of Mouldings, or Carved work, on the flatts of **Cornices.**

Head, the top of a Pillar, or of a Window or Door.

Hypotra-chelium, is a **Frise** or **Freze.**

Impostes of Arches, are the Capitals of Pillasters, on which the springal of the Arch resteth,

Inter-columes, the distance of the Columb from a Wall.

Jaumes, the sides of a stone Window, or Door case: see **Peers.**

Liscella and **Ceincture**, the same to **Annulet.**

Mullion or **Munnions**, the upright stands of a Stone VVindow.

Modulle, the Patern by which a Fabrick or Building is wrought, a rule to make his work by.

Modillions, things like ends of Sparrs fixed on the **Cimatium** of the **Cornice.**

Metopa, the Frize or flat of a **Cornice**, or any other place wherein Dropps, Scrowles, Triangle peeces and such like are set to Adorn the **Cornice.**

Mouldings, the general terms for all the rounds, flatts, and other turnings in the parts of a **Cornice.**

Nowel, is the middle Pillar, or Post of a turning, or winding Stairs.

Ovolo, is a quarter round under a projecting square: a Moulding that is out at the top, and turns in at the bottom.

Oylo, see **Plynth.**

Project, or **Projecture**; is that as over hangs, or stands further out then the thing it stands upon; as the Capital doth the Pillar.

Plynth, is the bottom part of the Basis of a Pillar, and also of the Pedestal.

Pedestal, is the Foot or Foundation of a Columb, and its Basis.

Pillar, is that which is square in the Body; a Columb round.

Pillaster, is half a Pillar, or Columb fixed to a VVall.

Peeres, the sides of Windows or Doors.

Rustick, is in the Joynts of every stone, either for Fractable or Pillasters taken of square, so it looks like a square set on a square.

Revailed, is in the same way of work, but in this the joynts are but champhered, so that it is two edges of the joynt taken off.

Springall, is the foot or bottom of an Arch, or the place of its Foundation or beginning to rise.

Scima, see **Cima**, and **Cimatium.**

Scima Recta, is the top of a Cornice or Capital in form of an S.

Scima Reversa, is the bottom of the Basis or Pedestal and turns contrary to the former: an S the wrong way.

Stilobatum, is the Pedestal.

Scotia, is an inward half round, either in Capital, or Pedestal: see **Cavetto.**

Scrowles, see **Cartouches.**

Trigliffes, are triangle peeces set on the Frise, to set it out handsome to the Eye.

Torus, the same to **Scima Reversa**; but usually this is round: if two be in a Pedestal, they are called the upper and the lower **Torus.** Some call it **Torcus.**

Tenia.

Transome Window, that hath cross Barrs in it, to the third part.

Trasery, is the working of the top part of a Window to several forms and fashions.

Vausing, is to make the Jaumes, or sides of Stone Windows and Doors, to over sail the other part of the Wall they are set in: and this is performed with any kind of Cornice the Master pleaseth.

Zocco, the same to Plynth: called the **Zocco** of the Base or of the Pedestal.

See more concerning these Terms in their true shapes, *chap.* 13. *numb*, 65. 66. 73. 74.

LIII. He beareth Or, on a **Mount in Base**, a **Labourer rowling** of a **Wheel-Barrow**, Gules; **Clothen** Azure: **Hat and Shooes**, Sable. Some term him a **Barrow-Labourer**, as being only imployed in that work to fetch and bring Burthens: Some term him only a **Wheeler**: or **Barrow-Men** when it is carried between two Labourers.

In

In the Dexter side of this square, is the figure of a **Fools head couped at the Shoulders**, Or: **Cap**, and **Ass Ears**, Azure: **Belled**, Or. Which is the Crest of *Balschoff* of *Alsatia*. Some only term this a **Fools Head clothed** O. **Capped** B. the Fools Cap being ever drawn with long Ears, and round Bells hanging at the tip ends thereof: see *numb.* 69.

LIV. He beareth Gules, a **Potter sitting on a Stoole working at his Wheel**, Or; **Cap** and **Shift**, Argent: **Apron**, Vert: **Breeches** and **Hose**, Azure. This Crest belongs to the *Potters*, or sellers of *Earthen* or *Tickney Ware*.

LV. He beareth Argent, a **Rope-Makers Spinning** or **Twisting Wheel**, Tenne; with a **Man sitting thereat, Clothed** Azure: **Hat** and **Shooes** Sable. Some more short blazon it, a **Man sitting** and **turning of a Rope-Makers Wheel.** See in the addition Plate for this Chapter, *numb.* 42. the manner of Twisting several Ropes into one Gable.

Terms used by the Roper.

Spinning, is the Twisting of the Hemp into a Yarn, or single Thrid.

Rope Yarn, the Yarn spun by the Roper.

Warping, is the laying of so many Thrids or Rope Yarns together, as will make a Rope.

Tatring,

Laying, is the putting of so many Ropes into the Slead as will make a Gable; that is Laying a Gable.

Sarve or **Plat the Gable.**

Strands, the Twists of a Rope.

Fakes, one of the Ropes made into a Cable, or by Fakes is ment one of the lesser Thrids, or Rope Yarn; used to the making up of any small Cord, or Rope.

Sorts of Ropes.

Rope Yarn, the first spinning of the Hemp.

Packthrid, is 2 small yarns or thrids twisted together.

Small Cord, is two thicker or three twisted together.

Cord, Bed-Cord, or an Halter, a Pack-Cord: is also three large Fakes Twisted.

Rope, Cart-rope, Bucked or Well-rope, a Bell-rope: all aforesaid being a Degree one thicker then another.

Gable, a small Gable, middling Gable, or a great and thick Gable: which are used at Great and Tall Ships, Men of Warr, &c.

LVI. He beareth Argent, a **Printer Working at his Printing-Press**, all proper. Printing as some Authors have it, was used in *China*, and *Presser John*, above a 1000 Years since; though it was not known in this part of the World till about the Year 1430. In which instancie the Letters were cut in Wooden blocks altogether, by one *Laurensz Jansz Koster* of *Harlem*; who after left Wood off, and cut Letters in Steel, and cast them in Mettle: yet *John Gutenberg* of *Mentz* in *Germany* promotes his claim to the first invention of this Art by single Letters before *Koster*, and is more generally accepted to be so. After this it was practized in *Oxford* in the Year 1461. and in *London* 1471. and about 1480. it began to be received into *Venice*, *Italy*, *Germany*, and other places in these Western parts of the World: insomuch that it is now disputed whether *Tipography* and *Architecture* may not be accounted Liberal Sciences, being so Famous ARTS.

Persons Instrumental about Printing.

The **Master Printer**, who is the Soul of Printing; all other workmen about it, are as Members to the Body.

The **Letter Cutter** - - - -
The **Battrice** or **Mould-Maker**
The **Letter Caster** - - - -
The **Letter Dresser** - - - -
} all called **Letter Founders**

The **Compositer**
The **Corrector**
The **Press-Man**
The **Ink-Maker**
} all goe under the Notion of **Printers.**

Besides several other Trades they take into their assistance without whose help they could not work: as *Smith*, *Joyner*, *Wett-Glover*, &c.

The several Parts of a Press.

The **Press**, is a Machine consisting of many Members, as

The **Feet**, are the two bottom peeces on which the Cheeks are fixed by Mortess and Tennants.

The **Cheeks**, are the 2 upright standards of the Press.

The **Cap**, is the top peece, which fastens the Cheeks above.

The **Winter**, is a peece under the Carriage: to hold the two Cheeks at a due distance.

The **Head**, is that peece through which the top of the Screw goeth, having a Female Screw fixed in it.

The **Till**, is a Board about an Inch thick, through the middle whereof the Shank of the Spindle goeth.

The **Hose**, is that peece of Iron work through which the Shank of the Spindle goeth.

The **Hose Screws**, are Screws with ears to turn them, whereby the Platin Cords are made more loose or tyght.

The **Hooks on the Hose**, on which the **Plattin** hangs, are 4 Hooks on the out sides of the said Iron work.

The **Spindle**, is the thick peece of Iron on whose top is a Screw of three Worm.

The **Neck of the Spindle**, that part just under the square.

The **Eye of the Spindle**, the square hole in the middle.

The **Shank of the Spindle**, all from the square part to the end.

The **Toe of the Spindle**, is the very bottom of it, which is of an Hemispherical forth.

The **Worm**, is the out part of the Screw, of which one part lieth below the **head of the Press**, and the other lies in the **Nut** in the Head.

The **Nut** or **Screw Box**, in which the great Screw turneth.

The **Platin**, a square Planck with a Smooth Face, to press down on the Letters, and is tied on the Hooks of the Hose.

The **Platin hooks**, are four Iron Hooks at the four corners Wormed or Screwed into the said Plank on the upper side.

The **Platin Plate**, is an Iron fixed in the middle of the Plank, on which is an **Iron Frame.**

The **Stud of the Platin**, is a kind of a square Pan set on the middle of the **Iron Frame**, so as to take out and put in, in the middle whereof is a center hole, for the **Toe of the Spindle** to work in.

The **Platin Cords**, are them as tie the Hooks to the Hose Hooks.

The **Bar**, is the crooked Iron on which the handle of Wood is fixed.

The **Catch of the Bar**, it is a Bevile Piece of Wood to stay the Bar when it flies back.

The **Handle of the Bar**, is that by which the Workman turns the Screw.

The **Hind Posts**, are two upright Posts wrought with round tops, set behind the **Cheeks of the Press.**

The **Hinder Railes**, are them as fastens the Posts to the Cheeks, by **Mortess** and **Tennants**: There are six of them, two behind, and two on each side.

The **Wedges of the Till.**

The **Mortesses in the Cheeks**, are the square holes in which the **Tennants** of the head are placed.

The **Carriage**, is the sliding Plank on which the Marble Stone is laid.

The **Outward Frame of the Carriage,**

The **Tramp Irons**, are square Irons with battered Heads to nail on the under side of the **Plank** of the **Coffin** to make it slide the better on the **Iron Ribs.**

The **Iron Ribs**, are long Irons fastned on the Wooden Ribs, for the Carriage to slide upon.

The **Wooden Ribbs** on which the **Iron Ribbs** are fastned, they are four set at an equal distance, and so fastned by two end Railes.

The **Stay of the Carriage**, or the **Stay**; is the Girth fastned to the Carriage, to hold it that it shall go so far, and no further.

The **Coffin**, is a square Frame at the fore-end of the Carriage, and is the place where the **Marble stone**, or **Lignum Vitae plank** lieth; or is Beded.

The **Stone of Marble**, or **Plank of Lignum Vitae.**

The **Gutter**, is a peece of Wood three Inches larger then the **Coffin**, and is placed behind it: having a grove in the said Wood.

The **Plank**, is that on which the **Coffin** is placed.

The **Gallows**, is a thing of Wood like it, set on the hinder part of the Plank, and fastned thereon by two Male Dustaile groves.

The **Timpan**, is a square Frame, three sides are Wood and one Iron.

The **Hatcht Joynt**, is the Joynt or Hing fastned to the **Timpan** and hinder Raile of the **Coffin.**

The **Inner Timpan**, is a Frame three sides Wood, and one Iron.

The **Frisket**, is that as is laid on the Paperwhen it is Printing, to keep it clean.

The **Stay of the Frisket**, is that as holds it from falling back when it is opened.

The **Points**, are Iron Plates with a sharp point at one end of them.

[ ]

The **Point Screws**, is a square head with a square Shank at the end whereof is a Screw, on which is a Nut with a Female Screw with Ears to twist it about.

The **Studs**, the peeces of Wood that the Iron Pins of the Barrel turns in.

The **Rowler** or **Barrell**, with its shoulder on each side, for the Girth to run in.

The **Iron Wheel with Teeth**, which upon its turning is stopt against a clicker.

The **Turning Clasp**, is that as holds the **inner Timpan** close within the **outer Timpan.**

The **Clicker**, or stop for the Iron Wheel that it turn not.

The **Cube**, the square part in the middle of the **Spindle.**

The **Aris** or **Spindle**, is a long Bar of Iron on which the Girth Barrel is fixed.

The **Winch**, is the Iron by which the Barrel or Girth Rowle is turned.

The **Rounce**, is the handle of the Winch which is of Wood.

The **Sockets**, are two Irons in which the **Spindle** turns.

The **Garter** or **Coller**, is the round hoop in compassing the flat Groove, or Neck in the Shank of the Spindle.

The **Half Joynt**, and the **Hatch half Joynt**; are the hinges upon which the Frisket moves, and are taken asunder by taking out the Iron Pin.

The Terms of the Letters according to their Size or Bignes.

1.	Pearl,	184.	contained in 1 Foot
2.	Brompareil,	150.	
3.	Brevier,	112.	
4.	Long Primmer,	92.	
5.	Pica,	75.	
6	English,	66.	
7.	Great Primmer,	50.	
8.	Double Pica,	38.	
9	Two Lined English,	33.	
10.	Great Cannon,	17 and half.	

A **Body**, is the quantity of each Letter.

A **Fount**, or **Fund of Letters**; is so many as are cast of each Body, whither more or less; which are provided sutable to the Work he designs to do.

Terms Relateing to the Face of a Letter.

Here you must note that the Body of a Letter hath four principal lines passing through it (or at least imagined to pass through it) at Right angles to the Body; *viz.*

The **Top Line**, or the **Topping**; is the straight fine stroak or stroaks that in the top Line of ascending Letters, as b. d. f. h. k. l. f.

The

The **Head Line**, is that as ascends above the Body of the Letter.

The **Body**, is that part as is contained between two Lines, having neither Head nor Foot at it: as a. c. e. i. m. n. o. r. s. v. x. z.

The **Foot Line**, or **Footing**; is the straight descending part of the Letter which is below the Body of it.

The **Bottom Line**, or **Bottom Footing**; is the fine straight stroak or stroaks that lie in the foot Line of descending Letters, as p. q y.

The **Stem of a Letter**, is the straight down right stroak in every Capital or other Letters, as in B. the straight stroak on the left hand is the **Stem**: And in I. it is all **Stem**, excep topping and footing.

The **Fat Stroaks in a Letter**, are the thick and gross stroaks or crookes used in all the Capital Letters, in some part of the Letter.

The **Lean Stroaks**, are the narrow fine stroaks in a Letter, as the left hand stroak of *A*. and the right hand stroak of V. are lean: and so of all the other Capitals.

The **Beak of Letters**, is the fine stroak or touch that stands on the left hand of the Stem, either in the top line, as b. d. h. *&c.* or in the head line, as i. m. n. *&c.* or on the right hand the Stem, as f. s. t.

The **Tails of Letters**, is a stroak proceeding from the right hand side of the Stem, in the foot line, as in a. d. t. u. and most of the Italick small Letters have Tails: as also have most swash Letters, but several of their Tails reach down to the bottom line.

The **Swash Letters**, are *Italick* Capitals, which have generally long dashing squanging stroaks in them, either at the head or foot.

Note that all **Topping** and **Bottoming Lines**, in the *Roman* Letters pass at right Angles; bnt oblique Angles in the *Italick* through the **Stems.**

The **Stem** and other fat stroak of Capital Romans is 5 parts of 42 of the whole body, or a 6 part of the height of an ascending Letter (as all Capitals are ascendants) the Body.

The **Stem** and other fat stroaks of Italick Capitals is 4 parts of 42 the Body.

The **Stem** of English Capitals is 6 parts of 42 the Body.

The **Stem** of small Roman is 3 and an half part of 42 the Body.

The **Stem** of small Italick is 3 parts of 42 the Body.

The **Stem** of small English is 4 parts of 42 the Body.

Notes of Carrection made by the Corrector.

The Corrector in his first reading of the Printed Copy ought to be very carefull and vigilantly examine the proofe, and consider diligently the **Poynting, Italicking, Capitaling**, or any errour which through mistake is committed by the Compositor, which in the Margent he notes that they may be mended: using these following notes.

c| If he find one Letter instead of another, as tho for the word the, he dashes out the wrong Letter, & writts the Letter it should be in the Margent of the Page or Colume right against the same Line where the mistake is: Some making a dash behind it as afore is noted.

o| r | c| a If two or three or more words in the same line have faults in them, as an o for an a, or e instead of c, and t instead of r, and c in place of o, he marks in an orderly succession towards the same line, beginning near the end of the line with the first faulty Letter, and so the others after it.

smile| If one word be set instead of another, as Scoff instead of Smile, here he scores out scoff and writs smile in the Margent over against it.

^ If a word, or words, or Letter, or Comme, or Point be left out he makes such a mark between the Words or Letters where it is left out, for a mark of **Insertion** (as it is termed) and write in the Margent what must come in.

If a Space be left out between two words he makes the former mark of **Insertion** where it should come in, and makes this mark in the Margin.

out If a whole Line or Sentence be left out, too long to be writ in the Margent, he makes the mark of **Insertion** where it is left out and only Writs (out, or wants) in the Margent. If it be very long that is left, that it cannot be writ in the left hand Margent or under the Page: Some Correctors will write in the Margent, see the Coppy.

ʒ If a Word or Sentence be set twice as him him, he marks out one him, and makes this mark against it in the Margent, which is termed a **Deleator** of *Deleo*, to take out.

ꝺ If a Letter be turned or set up side down, he dasheth it out makes this mark in the Margent. It is termed a **Verter** or **Vertigon** from *Verto* to turn.

⌣ If Words or Letters are Transposed, (that is) one word stands in another words place, or thus; no I love Swearing, when it should be I love no Swearing: he marks this fault by drawing the crooked Line over the (no) and under the word (I love) to the place it should come in, this is Termed a **Transposition.**

ooo The like mark he makes in the Matter and in the Margin over against it, if two Letters are transposed; as shuold, where the u is before the o. Yet some Correctors will make a dash with a Pen through uo and make such a mark in the Margent.

| If a Space or an n or m Quadrate *&c.* stricks up and Prints black, as betwen these words, he makes such a mark in the Margin over against the Line it is in.

Ital. Eng. If the word be set in *Roman* Letters instead of *Italick* or *English* Letters, he makes a dash under the word, and Writs Ital. or Eng. in the Margent.

In the like manner, if a single Letter or more Letters be set in Roman Letter, and it should be in Italick or English Letter: or if in English or Italick and it should be Roman Letter, he dashes under the Letter or Letters, and Writs in the Margin what it should be, either *Ita. Rom.* or *Eng.*

— If words in Coppies are to be set in *Italick* or *English* or in Capital Letters, they are to have a line or lines drawn under them: for the *Italick* word a single line is to be drawn under it. If *English* words a double or two lines thus = under; and if the word must be all in Capitals, then a line of Pricks thus ..... is drawn under it, or else a line with red Ink.

[If there be cause to make a break where there is none, in such case he makes a Crotchet thus [at the word he would have begin his new Paragraph.

Cap. If lower Case Letters be set instead of Capitals, he dashes them underneath or upon the Letter and Writs in the Margin Cap.

After all this the Corrector examines that all the Signatures are right, and all the Tides and Folio's: a Proof of the mending of each particular fault by the Compositor being again given him, which is called a **Revise Sheet**, he examins in this Revise, fault by fault: if all the faults he marks in the first or second Proof Sheet were carefully mended, if not he marks them in the Revise.

Points used in Printing.

A **Comma** which is thus , and is used as a breathing place

A **Semi-Colon** thus ;

A **Colon** thus : it is used in the middle of the Sentence.

A **Period** or **full Point** thus . which is at the end of a Sentence.

An **Introgation Point** thus ? It is used in asking of Questions.

An **Admiration Point** thus ! when a thing is wondred at.

An **Apostrophe** thus ' this is used when some Vowel is cut off as 'twas, for it was.

A **Parenthesis** thus ( ) It is used between words in a Sentence, as a Sentence, without which the Sentence remains entire.

A **Brace** thus } which joyns one two or three Lines together.

A **Division Point** thus - or = it is when part of a word ends a Line, and the other begins a Line.

A **Crochet** thus [ ] It is used in Folio's instead of Parenthesis.

A **Section** thus § and stands generally for a Section.

A **Paragraph** thus ¶ or thus ¶ or thus ¶ which stands for a Paragraph.

A **Marginal Note** or **Mark**, thus * or † or ‖ which is a guide to direct in what part of the Margin answereth that part in the Verse or Paragraph.

Accent Letters, see in **Printers Terms.**

Several other things belonging to the Art of Printing.

Assidue or **Assidine**, is thin brass Plate, such as adorn hobby Horses: Founders use it to underlay the Body or Mouth piece of their Moulds, if they be too thin.

Balls, are those with which the Letters are inked or made black that they may Print.

Ball Knife, is a blunt Knife laid by, with which the Balls are scraped.

Ball Leather, is Pelts of Sheep skins, of which they cover the Balls.

Ball Nails,

Ball Stocks,

Beard Gage, a thing to try Angles, whether they be true or not.

Bearer, is a Riglet made Letter high and fastned to the Frisket, to keep the white Pages adjacent to the sides of the other Pages, from spots, and that they shall not cause the other to Print hard, as otherwise they will do.

Blankets, Woollen Cloth or white Bays to lay between the Timpans.

Blocks Groves, are hard Wood, made with taper Groves in to receive Wedges.

Blocks, are the Male Wedges fitted for the said Groves, to hold a thing fast in it.

Brace, is a Character cast in Mettle thus marked ∽ of which there are to be of them several breadths, to hook in or Brace so many Lines as is required.

Brass Rules, thin Plates the height of the Letter, which serves to make black Lines in Columes and Pages: **Printing Rules.**

Brayer, is a round wooden Rubber, flat at the bottom, it is used in the Inke-block to Bray and Rub Inke.

Bodkin,

Composing Stick, it is a wooden Rule with a back ledge for cast Letters to be **set up** in, that the Founder may scrape and dress them.

Case or **Cases**, are the Boxes in which each Letter is put, called the **Upper Case**, and the **Lower Case**; one holding the Capitals, the other the small Letters.

Chase, is an Iron Frame about 22 Inches long, and 18 broad, having a cross in the middle, in this are the Letters made fast when Printed.

Cards, is about a quire of Paper which Press-men use to lay upon a Form, when he hangs the Platin, see **Card.**

Composing Rule, is a thin Brass Rule cut the exact length as the sliding measures it set to make its Lines, it hath a small notch at one end to take it out of the Composing Stick.

Composing Stick, it is made of Iron, with sliding measures, in it the letters are set in that length of Lines as the Workman pleaseth.

Correcting Stone, is a Marble or Purbeck-Stone, large enough to hold two Chases, on which the Compositer makes up his Forms, and corrects them.

Counter Punches, are Punches to strike into the Face of Letters, to make them hollow or open from the body of the Letter.

Characters of Astronomical Sign, are Planet Characters, Aspects; also Physical and Chimical Characters.

Coyns, are also Quadrat high, and have one of their sides Beviled away, that they may Wedge or Lock up the Form, that the Letters fall not out of the Chase: their further office is to make Register at the Press, to

to keep the Form that it move not.

Cross long, and **Cross short**; are the cross pieces of Iron set in the middle of the Chase.

Distributing Stick, or **Riglet**; is that which the Distributer holds the Letters upon while he is distributing them into their several Boxes.

Dressing Block, and **Dressing Block-Groove**; are Male and Female Blocks one Wedging in another, by which Letters are held fast to be dressed.

Dressing Hook, Dressing Knife, and **Dressing Sticks**; are Instruments by which Letters are made smooth, even, and fite.

Distributing Frame, the Frame on which the Forms are set to be Distributed.

Female Gage, Screws, *&c.* are the hollow Gage or hollow Screw that receives its Match Gage, or Screw, *&c.* the **Screw Nut,** or **Bor.**

Flat Gage, is a flat piece of Box or hard Wood made square, wich several corners to hold a Rod of Steel or Body of a Mould.

Flat Table, is a Brass about an Inch and half square, to trie if the Shanks of Punches be exactly perpendicular.

Foot Step, is an Inch board nailed on a piece of Timber, set under the Press for the Press-man to stay his right Foot against when he pulls at the Press.

Foot-stick, see **Furniture.**

Furnice, the place where the Mettle is melted to cast the Letter with.

Funnel, is the place where the smoak goeth through from the Furnace Fire.

Furniture, by which is ment all the Wood work used in the Chase, to keep the Form of Letter fast Wedged therein, as **Head Sticks, Foot Sticks, Side Sticks, Gutter Sticks, Riglets, Quoins** and **Scabbords.**

Frame, is that on which the Case of Boxes rest; It is also taken for the out side of Case, which is stronger then the Boxes within, and is also an Inch broader at the bottom.

Face Gage,

Finger Stalls, Leather to put on Boys Fingers to secure them in rubbing of Letters.

Gage, Gages mentioned and used by Letter maker have an ajunct name as, **Flat Gage, Joynt Gage, Italick Gage, Long Gage, Male Gage, Short Gage, Steel Gage, Standing Gage,** which see in their respective Alphabets.

Gally, is a board with ledges on three sides of it, in which the Compositer emptieth his Stick full of Letters to compose a Page, it hath a handle to pull the board in the Grove in and out, see **Slice.**

Geat, is the little spout or gutter made in the brim of Founders casting Ladles.

Gutter Sticks, are Sticks with Gutters in, which are used to be set between Pages on each side of the crosses in the Chase.

Girth or **Girts,** are thongs of Leather cut out of a Horse Hide or Bull, these are nailed to the Barrel and the end of the Carrage, that by the turning of the Rounce, the said Carrage is drawn in and out from the Plattin.

Gage Plate, a Gage for the trial of Letters sides and heights.

Head Stick, see **Furniture**; those Sticks as are at the Head of a Form, in the Chase.

Horse, the Form or Bench Presmen set the heaps of Paper on.

Hammer, it is a large Hammer commonly use, but hath no Claws but a Pen.

Joynt flat Gage, this consists of two Checks fastned together at one end like a Carpenters Joynt Rule.

Italick Gage, and other standing Gages; are only to measure the slope of the Letter Stem.

Inke, of Printing Inke there are two sorts, weak Inke and strong Inke, one for to use in the Summer, the other for Winter.

Kerning Knife, is a strong piece of a broken Knife, set in a Wooden handle with which Founders kern their kerned Letters.

Kerning Stick, is a small stick according to the bigness of the Letter that is to be kerned or scraped.

Knife-Backt Sculptor, is a Sculptor or Graver with a thin edge on its back.

Knife File, a File with a thin edge.

Knot, is a small square piece of Box Wood, the one above, the other below the Tongue of the Plow, as a Stay for it, when it runs through the Block.

Ladles, are those things as the hot Mettle is taken out of the Melting Furnice and powred into the casting Moulds, see **Letter Ladles.**

Leather Grove, the Matrice being justified; there is a Grove filed round about it (or a Notch or Nick) in the top to tie a Leather fast to.

Letter Boards, are oblong squares, about two foot long, and eighteen Inches broad, plain and flat, with two ledges at the under side, to bear them off the Ground: on these the Letters are laid when **Unlocked** from the **Chase,** where they are ready to be **Distributed.**

Letter Ladles, differ nothing from common Ladles save in the size, of these the Caster of Letters hath many of several sizes, to fit the several sizes of Letters he has to cast, both for **Body** and **Thickness.**

Liner, is a straight Plate of Iron or Brass, made sharp and fine, that it may try the face of a Punch or other work, whether it be straight or no.

Lining stick, it is all made of Brass, having a plain, a side ledge, a bottom ledge and a Stilt: It is an inside square exactly wrought, and with small Rivets fastned on the side edge and bottom.

Long Cross, see **Chase.**

Long Gage, are Notches, or Gages cut into a thin Plate of Steel, Iron, or Brass: of which the long one is for long Letters, and the short Gage for short Letters.

Lower Case, is the lower Box for the smaller sort of Letters to be distributed into.

Lye-Trough, to wash the Letters in.

Letters of all sorts and sizes, of English, Roman, and Italick.

Lye-Kettle, it is to heat the Lye in, for the washing the black of the Letters.

Lye-Brush, is a long brissled Brush to scoure and rub the Lye upon the Letters.

Male Gage, the outward Gage or Screw, that enters or fits its Match Gage or Screw.

Ballet,

Mallet,

Matrice,

Mettle, that of which the Body of the Letter are cast.

Mould, is that in which the Letters are cast according to their shape.

Mouth Piece.

Notch of the Matrice, it is a stay on the back of it, to hold the point of a Wyer or Spring of the Mould in, that the Matrice start not back.

Nest Frames, these are Frames made to hold Cases, Letter Boards, *&c.* that lie out of present use.

Nails, *viz.* Ball Nails or Pumping Nails; having round or square heads.

Open Furnace, so called because the Aire blows in through all the sides to fan the fire.

Oyle, *viz.* Sallet Oyle to make the Press run easie; and Linseed Oyle to make Varnish for Printing Ink.

Pack-thrid, fine Pack-thrid it is to tie up the Pages when composed.

Pan, the great ladle that Founders melt their Mettle in, when they are casting Letters.

Paper Bench, see **Horse.**

Paper Board, see **Letter Boards.**

Peel, is an Instrument made of a Board with a long or short handle or stail, according to the height of the place where it is used; by this Printed Sheets are hung upon Cords, Poles, or Racks, to dry, and by them taken down again.

Pelts, Sheep skins untanted, used for Ball Leathers.

Plow, it is almost like a Joyners common Plain, sawe through the length of the Sole runs such a tongue as throw the **Male Block.**

Press, or **Printing Press.**

Paper Windows, which keep out heat and the Suns Glory in Summer, and Frost in the Winter.

Points, or marks in Printing, such as are used in Sentences, as Comme's, Colon's, full Points, *&c.* of which the particulars in Points used in Printing.

Partchment, or **Forrel,** or **Vellom.**

Punches,

Quadrates, large Spaces which make white lines

Quoins, are Wedges to lock the Form.

Quotation Quadrats, these are cast of different Bodies, that the Compositer may have choise of them to justifie his Notes and Quotations exactly against the designed line of the Page: they are cast the height of the Quotations.

Racks, to hang Printed Paper on to dry.

Riglets, is a sort of Furniture of an equal thickness all its length. It is Quadrat high of several thickness, *viz.* a **Nomparel, Brevier, Long-Primmer, Pica,** *&c.* thick.

Rincing Trough, the Trough wherein Forms are Washed and Rinced in.

Rules, *viz.* Brass Rules Letter height, by which black lines are made under the running Titles of Books, and on the sides of Pages, and between Colums.

Scabbord,

Shank, the square Mettle the face of a Letter stands on, is its Shank.

Sheeps Foot, that as the Press-man driveth Nails into his Ball-stocks, or any other thing he hath occasion to Nail: It hath at one end a Hammers face, and the other end a Claw to draw Nails.

Shooting Stick, it is made of Box or other hard Wood and tough, its shape is a perfect Wedge; with it are the Quoins knocked up in the Chase to lock the Form.

Short Cross, is the over cross piece of Iron work set in the middle of the Chase, in which long holes are made through, for the Points fixed on the Tympan to fall into.

Side Sticks, are the outer side sticks which are placed against the out sides of Pages; which are sloped, or made Wedge-wise from one end to the other, and are Quadrat height.

Slice, is a little thin Iron Shovel, through the handle whereof is fixed a cross piece about the thickness of a small curtain rod: It is principally used about the black on the Ink block. The **Slice** is also the Board with a handle that runs into the Galley.

Sliding Gage, it differeth but little from the Joyners running Gage: Its use is to set off distances between the Shoulder and the Tooth, and so to mark it.

Smoak Vent, is the hole in the Furnice through which the Smoak passeth.

Soft Ink, Ink or Varnish moderately boiled.

Solace, see **Customs of the Chappel.**

Spaces, are those Shanks which have no letter on the faces but lie below them, and are set between Word and Word to keep them asunder.

Stick, the composing stick is often so called.

Stirring-Pot, is a long strong Iron Pot, with an handle about two yards, with it being red hot, is stirred the Mettle and Lead together in melting Pots, till they be well incorporated.

Stoak Hole, a round hole out of which the fire in the Furnice proceeds.

Stoaking Rod, a Rod of thick Wyer put into such a handle as is the handle of a Letter Ladle, Founders use it to stir up the fire in the Furnace.

Stop, or **Stops**; these are kind of Matrices without any Letters sunk into them, by which are cast in the Mould Spaces thick and thin, N Quadrats, M Quadrats, Quadrats of several bigness.

Superior Letters, are Letters often set to Marginal Notes: they are Letters of a small face, high justified by the Founder in the Mould near the top line.

Sheers, are such as Taylors use, which are for cutting of Brass Rules, and Scabboard.

Stake, or **Anvil**; a great Iron for a Smith to Forge Iron or Steel work upon.

Tache, a small board with Noches in the fore edge, either nailed upon the fore edge of the Work-bench, or Screwed into the **Vice,** so as the Noches may stand forwards to rest the Shank of a Punch in.

Tympan Cloth,

Tympan Sheets, Paper Sheets fixed on it.

Underlays, are small slips of Scabbord put under letters to raise them higher for the Printing of red Letters or Words.

Varnish, a boiled Oyle with which Printing ink of diverse colours is made.

Vitriolum,

Visorum, this is used for direction to the Compositer to have his Eye quick upon his Coppy, by pricking the point of the Visorum upon the Frame at the & box, then fold the leaf of the Coppy so as it may rest on the square Shoulder near the bottom of the Visorum.

Wind Furnace, see **Open Furnace.**

Wind Hole, or **Air hole in the Furnace**; is a square hole to let in Air that the fire may burn the freer.

The Terms used in the Art of Printing *Alphabetically Explained.*

Abreviations, are Characters, or Marks on Letters to signifie either a Word or Syllable, as e over the Head of y signifies (**the**) and a t over y signifies **that.** And a straight stroak over the head of Vowels abreviates m or n.

Accents, are dashes or marks over the Vowels.

Accented Letters, are marked Letters of which there are these kinds: First the **Grave Accent** thus over a Vowels head marked ` The **Acute Accent**, thus marked ´ The **Circumflex Accent** thus marked ^ The **Decretis Accent** thus marked ¨

Aire-hole, a hole under the Hearth of the Founders Furnice, to let in the Aire, that the Fire may burn the freer.

Ash-hole, the place where the Ashes that fall from the Hearth are taken away.

Ashes, Letter Founders call the skimmings of their Mettle, and the sweepings of their Houses Ashes, and save both to be refined: the First or **Lean Ashes.**

Ascending Gage, is the Gage of Letters that rise above the Body.

Assidue or **Assidine**, is thin Brass Plate, such as adorn Hobby-horses; Founders use it to underlay the Body or Mouth piece of their Moulds, if they be too thin.

Back of the Composing Stick.

Back side of the Form, is the under side that touches the Correcting-Stone, or Press-Stone.

Bad Coppy, when a Book to be Printed is badly Written or imperfect.

Bad Work, any fault at the Case or Press, or at the Furnice, or at the Dressing-block *&c.* is in Workmens Language called so.

Bake, is when Letters stick together in distributing, which the Compositer cannot without great trouble get asunder: This is called the **Letter is Baked.**

Beam,

Beard of a Letter, is the outer angle or edge at the square shoulder of the shank, which reaches almost up to the Face of the Letter, and is commonly scraped off by the Founder.

Bearer, is a stay or support to any thing they work at: But it is generally taken for a Riglet of a convenient thickness put on the Frisket to keep the sides of white Pages from hard Printing.

Beat, is blacking the Letters with the Ink Ball, by beating upon the Face of the Letters set in the Form.

Beat Fat, if the Press-Man takes too much Inke on his Balls, they will make the Letters too black. Yet the black English faced Letters is generally beaten fat.

Beat Lean, is to take but little Inke and often: for all small Letters must be beaten Lean for fear of filling with Inke.

Benvenue, the ancient Customs of the Printers.

Bite or **Bites**, is when the Frisket Prints upon the sides of the Pages.

Body, is the shanke of the cast Letter, which they call the Body of the Letter.

Botthing of a Matrice, is to strike a Bur into the side of it, to make it stand of the Register, if in case it be too thin, or past a Paper or Card to the side to thicken it.

Bottom Line, is the lower place that a descending Letter can be made too.

Bottom of the Matrice, is the lower end of it, near which the Letter is Punched.

Break, is a piece of a line, or ending of the Paragraph.

Break, is also the Mettle that is contiguous to the Shank of a new cast Letter: this is made in the Mouth piece of the Letter Mould, and is called a **Break** because always broken off from the Shank of the Letter.

Breaking off, is breaking the said Break off the Letter.

Brevier.

Broad side, is a Form of one full Pape, Printed on one side of a whole Sheet of Paper, as a Sheet Almanack.

Broken Letter, by it is ment the breaking of the orderly succession the Letters stood in, either in a Line, Page or Form: Also it is used for the mingling of Letters together, which mingling is called **Pie.**

Bur, see **Rag.**

Bed the Stone, the Stone is well and evenly laid in the Coffin of the Carriage.

Burn Oyle, is to boil it, and then fire it, that the oylines may be consolidated and drawn out: but this must be done with Art, else they may fire the house in burning the Oyl.

Batter, when the face of a Letter is spoiled, they say it is Battered.

Botches, it is a kind of bad Workman-ship, that is, when it hath Pidgeon holes, thin Spaces, no Spaces before Capitals, short &'s, abbreviated words, and titled Letters, *&c.* with several other *Settings* are esteemed *Botches.*

Canon, the great Canon is the name of the largest Letter for Printing that is used in *England.*

Card, is when several Bodies of Letters are set in a Page, Compositers to justifie that Page to an exact length, put a Card to some white line, or other Break and lengthen out the Page the thickness of a Card. And Press-Men also use a Card sometime for an underlaying.

Case Lyes, is into what Box the several Letters are disposed.

Case is Low, when a Case grows empty of Letters, Compositers say the Case is low, the Boxes having but few Letters in them.

Case is Full, *viz.* a Case full of Letters, wanting no sorts.

Case stands Still, when the Compositer is not at Work at his Case, it is said the Case stands still.

Cassie

Cassie Quires, are the two out side Quires in a Ream, called also **Coyding Quires.**

Cassie Paper, are Quires made up by Paper-maker of Torn, Wrinkled, Stained or otherwise naughty Sheets.

Cast, is to cast Letters in the Moulds.

Cast off Coppy, or Counting of Coppy (for both Phrases are indifferently used) is to examine and find out how much either Printed or Written Coppy will come in into an intended number of Sheets, of a different Body or Measure from the Coppy.

Chappel, every Printing-House is Termed a Chappel.

Charge is to fill Paper with great Pages: It is also used for the filling of a Page with long and many Lines. Also to fill a Line with many Letters: And to fill a Pot with Stubs and Antimony.

Choake, if a Form be not washed in due time, the Inke will get into and dry in the hollows of the Face of the Letter, and that getting in of the Inke, is called **Choaking of the Letters**, or **Choaking of the Form.**

Clean Proofe, when a Proofe hath but few faults in it.

Close Matter, Matter that hath but few Breaks or Whites in it.

Close Work, the same.

Collation Books, or **Colationing of Books**; is first to examine whether the whole number of Sheets that belong to a Book are rightly gathered: Secondly to examine that two Sheets of one sort be not gathered into the Book. Thirdly to examine whether the proper Signature of every Sheet lie on its proper corner of the gathered Book.

Come, or **Comes**; when the Face and Shank of a Letter is cast perfect, Founders say, it comes well; If unperfect, they say, it does not come, or it comes not well.

Come Down, the Toe of the Spindle is said to come down by pulling the Bar; so the Bar is said to come down when it is pulled near the hither Cheek of the Press. Also the Press-Man is said to come down the Form with his Balls, when he beateth down the Form.

Companions, are two Press-Men working at one Press; the one, which is named the first hath his choise to Pull or Beat: the second take the refuse.

Comes off, a Form that receives a good Impression, is said to come off well: If a bad Impression, it comes off ill, or it comes not well off. Also it is used in gathering of Books, for a Heap that is gathered off, is said to come off.

Compositer, he that Composes or Sets the Letters.

Coyding-Quires, the outside Quires of a Ream.

Correct, when the Corrector reads the Proof, or the Compositer mend the faults he marked in the Proof, they are both said to Correct; that is, the Corrector the Proof, the Compositer corrects the Form.

Corrections, the Letters marked in a Proof, are called **Corrections.**

Counting of Coppy, see **Cast off Coppy.**

Cull Paper, are the good and whole Sheets picked out of the Cassie Quires.

Cutting the Frisket, is the cutting so much of the Partchment away from the Frisket cover, as the Form doth Print on the Sheet. [ ]

Chapter, the Head of a Matter: Books are commonly divided in Chapters, and Chapters into Sections, and Sections into Paragraphes or Breaks as *Printers* call them; which is the breaking off at a full Point, and beginning a new line.

Column, is when a Page or side of a Leaf Written or Printed, is divided into two or more parts along the Paper, those divisions are called **Columns.**

Dance, when the Form is locked up, if upon the rising of it from the Stone, he finds there are many Letters do not rise with the Form, but are ready to drop out, he saith the form Dances.

Dele,

Distribute, is putting the Letter into their several Boxes again after the Form is Printed off.

Devil, the Press-Man sometimes have a Week Boy to take Sheets as they are Printed off the the Tympan; or run of Arrants: These Boys do in a Printing-House commonly black and dawb themselves; whence the Workmen do jocosely call them Devils, and sometimes Spirits, and sometimes Flies.

Direction, is the word that stands alone on the right Hand in the bottom line of a Page, is the Direction word for the following side of the Leaf.

Direction Line, the Line the Direction stands in.

Double Letter, as æ st sh and several others cast on one Shank are called **Double Letters.**

Double, or **Doubling**; is a Sheet that is twice pulled and hath a double Impression, this Sheet is said to be double: or if the Pressman run him in so far, as the further side in some part of the Sheet Print with the first pull, or the hinder edges of the first pull, Print with the second pull, either of these twice Printings is called **Doubling.**

Dress a Chase, or **Dress a Form**, is all one: It is to fit the Pages and Chase with Furniture and Quoins.

Dressing Letter, is to make them straight and tire, that they may come well, and lie even both in the Face and Shank.

Drive out, is when a Compositer sets his Words wide, he is said to **Run out**, or to **Drive out**: Also in Founding, if Letter be cast too thick in the Shank it is said to **Drive out.** Also if it be cast too thick in any part of the Shank, as at the Head, Foot, Side, they say it **Drives out at Head, it Drives out at Foot, &c.**

Deep Cut, Letters that are deep cut and stand high above the Shank, Print clear the longer, and are less subject to entertain picks.

Dedication, the Patronizing or Presenting of a Book by the Author to some particular Person.

Doubling, or **Slurring**; is when Paper is double Printed, which oft happens by the removing of the Sheet on the Tympan at going under the Plattin.

Empty Case, see **Case is Low.**

Easie Pull, see **Soft Pull.**

Easie Work, is a Printed Coppy, or a fair Written Hand, and full of Breaks is that as pleaseth a Compositer, and is by them called, **Good Coppy, Light, Easie Work:** Also a great Letter and small Form, is called **Easie Work.**

Empty Press, a Press that stands by, which no Workman works at: most commonly every Printing-House hath one of them for a Proof Press, viz. to make Proofs on.

English

English Body, are the cast Letters of the English Alphabet.

English Face, are English face Letters.

Even Page, the first Page of a Sheet or Form is called an **Odd Page**, but the second, fourth, sixth, or any other even numbered Page, is called an **Even Page**.

Face of a Letter, is that flat part of the Punch on which letter is cut, to be stamped or sunk into the Matrice.

Face of a Page, or **Form**; the Superficies or top part of the Page or Form, where the Faces of every Letter lieth in the same plain.

Fat Ashes, Founders call their Ashes Fat, if they are considerable heavy, because then they have much Mettle in them.

Fat, see **Beat Fat**.

Fat Letter, or **Fat Face**; is a broad Stemmed Letter.

First, is the first or chief Workman at the Press, he that takes his choise whether he will Beat or Pull.

First Form, the Form the white Paper is Printed on, which generally by rule ought to have the first Page of the Sheet in it.

First Page,

First Pull, is the Pull that Prints the first running half Sheet under the Press, or the first pulled side of the Sheet.

Fly, see **Devil**.

Follow, *viz.* see if it follow, is a term as well used by the Corrector as by the Compositer and Press - Man, and it is to examine how the beginning matter of a succeeding Page, agrees with the ending matter of the precedent Page; and how the Folio's of those Pages numerically follow and succeed one another, least the Pages should be Transposed: and whether the Signature of the Pages follows orderly according to the Volume, least the Form should be laid wrong in the Press.

Foot of the Letter, the break end of the Shank of a Letter.

Foot Line, the bottom Line to which a letter extends.

Foot of a Page, the bottom or end of a Page.

Form, are the Pages of Composed Letters, when they are fitted to the Chase.

Foul Proof, is when a Proof Sheet hath many Letters and Faults marked in it.

Fount, is the whole number of Letters that are cast of the same Body and Face at one time.

Froze out, in the Winter when the Paper is Frozen, and the Letter Frozen, so as the Workmen cannot Work; they say, they are Froze out.

Fryer, is when the Balls do not take, the untaking part of the Balls that touches the Form will be left white; or if the Presman skip over any part of the Form, and touch it not with the Balls though they do take, yet in both these cases the white places is called a **Fryer**.

Full Form, or **Page**; is a Form or Page with few or no breaks or white lines.

Full Press, is when two Men work at the Press.

Furnace open, or **Wind Furnace**; is the pulling down of the out Furnace Wall where the Mettle is made, and rake away the fire that the Mettle may cool in the Pots.

Folio, is two Pages and comprehends both sides of a Leaf: Some confounds **Folio** and **Page** calling a large Volume, a Book by Folio's; others by Pages when it is a small or Quarto Book.

Form Rises, that is, it is so well locked up in the Chase, that in the raising of it up neither a Letter or Space drops out of it.

Fur up a Form, or **Choak the Letters**; is when the Inke is too thick and strong that it fills up in beating, the Hollow of the Letter.

Gathering of Books, is to take one Sheet off every heap of Printed Sheets, which make a Book.

Get in, that is, Matter is got in, in a Line, Page, Sheet or Book, if Letters be thinner cast then the Printed Coppy the Compositer sets by: or Matter is got in, if he sets closer: or if he widens his Measure; or puts more lines in a Page, then he is said to get in.

Good Colour, is Sheets Printed neither too black, nor too white.

Good of the Chappel, Forfeitures and other Chappel dues are collected for the good of the Chappel, *viz.* to be spent as the Chappel approves.

Good Work, is called so in a two fold sense: the Master Printer calls it so, when the Compositers and Pressmen have done their Duty. And the Workmen call it **Good Work**, if it be light, easie Work, and they have a good price for it.

Going up the Form, it is a Presman phrase, when he beat over the first and thrid rows or colums of the Form with his Ink Balls.

Great Numbers, above 2000 Printed of one Sheet are counted Great Numbers: see **Lay on**.

Great Bodies, or Letter termed English, and all above their bigness are accounted **Great Bodies**: But **Long Primmer**, and all downwards are **Small Bodies**.

Half a Line, when Letters drives out or gets in, in the body, in a number of lines, Founders say, it drives out, or gets in half a line, a whole line, a quarter of a line *&c.* *viz.* half a body, a whole body, a quarter *&c.* of a Body.

Half a Press, when but one Man works at the Press, it is called **Half a Press**.

Half Work, he that works but three days in a Week, does but **Half Work**.

Hangs, see **Letter Hangs**.

Hang the Plattin, is the tying of it with Whipcord to the end of the Spindle by the Hose - Hooks and Plattin-Hooks.

Hang up Paper, is to hang it upon Rails or Cords to dry after it is Printed.

Hard Ink, is Ink very well boiled.

Hard Justifying, when the line or lines in the Composing stick are too close Wedged in.

Hard Pull, that which makes a hard pull in the Press is putting into the Mortesses of the Cheeks solid blocks of Wood, which will scarce squeeze by the strength of a pull which makes the Press go hard to be pulled.

Hard Work. is so termed by Compositer when the Written Coppy is bad and hard to read, and hath but few Breaks: also small Letter and a large Form, Pressmen call hard Work.

Head Line, that part or line which the higher part of the body of a Letter toucheth.

Head of a Page, the top or beginning of a Page.

Heap, so many Reams or Quires as is set out by the Ware-house keeper for the Press-man to **Wet,** is called an **Heap:** but then it is a **Dry Heap,** when it is wet, then it is indeed called a **Heap.**

Heap holds out, when it hath its full inteded number of Sheets according to its Quiers.

Heighth, see **High against Paper.**

High against Paper, is when a punched Letter is not sunk deep enough into the Matrice, then the letter cast will not stand high enough against the Paper to make a good impression; And if it be sunk too deep, then the cast letter will be too high against Paper, and be apt to cut it.

Holds out, or **Holds not out;** these terms are applicable to the **Quires of white Paper,** also to **Wrought of Heaps,** and also to the **Gathering of Books.** If Quires have twenty five Sheets, they say the Paper holds out twenty five Sheets of wrough off Heaps, the Heap as comes off first in gathering or wants of the number of the rest, is said, **not to hold out.** And in the gathering of Books, if the intended number of perfect Books are gathered, they say, the **Impression holds out:** but if the intended number cannot be gathered off the Heap, they say the **Impression holds not out.** And so for sorts of Letter, either when it is in the Founding-House, or the Printing-House, are so said, if they hold or not, one Box with another in the Composing.

Hole, by it in Printing Dialect, is ment a place where privat Printing is used, *viz.* the Printing of unlicensed Books, or other Mens Coppies.

Hollow of a Letter, is the sinking in of the Counter-punch into another Punch which makes such holes or hollows, and so doth sculping into the face of a Punch.

Horse Flesh, is if any Journeyman set down in his Bill on *Saturday* Night more Work then he hath done that Week, that suplusage is called **Horse Flesh:** and he abate it in his next bill.

Hours, Press-Men reckon their Work by the Hours, accounting every **Token** to an Hours Work: also they make their prices of different Work by the hour, and passes currant for a **Token.** Also if two Men Work at the Press 10 Quires it is an hour; if one Man 5 Quires it is an hours Work.

Half a Body, it is in Founders and Printers Language, taken to be the driveing out of half a line, or a whole line, or more or less, in the Composing.

Imperfections of Books, are the latter end of the gathered Heaps, which other Heaps not holding out to them, make them imperfect, which are bundled up, and Written upon Impepfections of such or such a Book, and the Signature of the Sheet or Sheets wanting.

Imperfections of Letters, is when the Founder hath not cast a proportionable number of each sort of Letter, the want of any make the Fount unperfect: see **Sorts.**

Impose, Imposing is the placing of the Pages that belong to a Sheet, within the Chase and Furniture about them in order, that when the Sheet is wrought off at the Press, all the Pages may be foulded into an orderly succession.

Impression holds out, see **Holds out.**

In-page, see **Out-page.**

Insertion, if the Compositer have left Words or Lines, the Corrector inserts it, and makes a mark where it is left out; which is called the the mark of Insertion, see **Notes of Correction.**

Justifie, or **Justifying;** is first to make the face of a sunken letter, lie an exact depth in the face of the Matrice, and on all sides of an equal depth: this is called **Justifie a Matrice.** It is also to set or justifie the foot line of the letter exactly in line. It is likewise to set the sides of the Matrice to an exact thickniss.

Justifying a Mould, is the working it so exact that in casting of the letter, the Shank be Parallel, and sides of an even thickness; And also that the Mould be clear from Ragging; which without several proofs and tryings it cannot be expected to be perfectly true.

Justifie a Stick, *viz.* the Composing Stick, is the stiff or loose filling of his Stick with Letters; if it be filled very stiff with Letters or Spaces, they say it is hard justified; if loolely, it is loose justified.

Justifiers, are either Pasteboard or Seaboard or such like put into Mortesses to make the same more binding and close.

Keep in, is a caution given to, or resolved on by the Compositer, when there may be doubt of **Driving out** the Matter beyond his counting off, therefore he **Sets close,** to keep within his compass: this is to **Keep in.**

Keep out, is a caution of the Compositer, given or resolved upon, when there may be doubt of getting in Matter too fast for his **Counting off,** wherefore he sets his Words wide, to **Drive** or **Keep out.**

Kern, or **Kerned Letter;** such as have part of their face hanging over one side, or both sides of their Shanks: and that part hanging over is the Kern.

Knock up Balls, is the nailing of the Pelts or Sheep skins on the Ball stocks, with Wool under it, to make them stand round and full; they are well done when the Wool is equally dispersed about all the sides, and the middle smoothly covered with Leather, *viz.* not rising in Hillocks.

Knock up Books, is when they are gathered out of several Heaps, he take them between his hands and knock them on a Table to make them lye even and straight in the backs and edges.

Knock up a Letter, is when a Letter by working is worn so low in the face, that it will not Print well in the Page; which the workman takes out and puts a better in. But if Letters be scare and that another of the same be wanting, he takes out the old one and batters

ters its Shank to raise it higher against the Paper.

Lay in Sheets, is when the Press-man lays Sheets on the Timpan, it is stiled Laying in Sheets.

Lay out Sheets, is the taking the Sheets off the Timpan when they are Printed, and laying them on the Heap.

Lay on, a Phrase used for the number of Books to be Printed, thus they say, there is 1000. 2000. 3000. *&c.*

Laid on: see great numbers, see small numbers.

Lean Ashes, Founders call their Ashes Lean, if they be light, because then they have but little Mettle in them; see **Fat Ashes**.

Lean, see **Beat Lean**.

Lean Face, a Letter whose Stems and other stroaks have not their full widness.

Lean Stroaks, are the fine stroaks of a Letter.

Letter Hangs, if the Compositer hath been careless in emptying his composing Sticks, so as to let the Letters loosely down in the **Galley** so as that they stand not perfectly square and upright, they say the **Letter hangs**: or if after overrunning on the correcting Stone, the Letters are not set square and in a right position, before he **locks up the Form**; the matter standing thus out of square, is said to **Hang**.

Letter Break, see **Squabble**.

Light Work, see **Easie Work**.

Lock up, is to Wedge the **Form** fast in the **Chase**, that not a Letter or Space fall out.

Long Pull, is to give a stronger pull to a Form that is large and the Letters small; then to a small Form, and large Letters, which needs but a small pull, and it is in Printers Language called a **Short pull**, see **Hard Pull**.

Loose Justifying, see **Justifie**.

Low against Paper, see **High against Paper**.

Low Case, when the Compositer hath composed almost all his Letters out of his Case, he says his **Case is Low**.

M thick, is ment an M Quadrat thick.

Make a Measure, is to set the Composing Stick to that Measure or length of the Letter line he intends to Work by.

Make ready the form, is to put the composed Pages into the Chase, and lock them up, for the taking off of a Proof: besides all this under this pharse of **Making ready the Form**, is comprehended all thing to be done by the Press-man before he can go to work, as first to make Register, secondly to cut the Frisket, third to wet the Timpan, fourth lock up the Form well and fast, *&c.*

Matter, is the Series of the discourse of the Compositers Coppy which he doth compose by.

Measure, is the widenes of a Page, see **Make a Measure**.

Monk, when the Press-man hath not well be distributed his Ball, some spots or splotches of Ink may lie on one Letter, or more of them, which in beating he leaves upon the Form; so that the Sheet Printed on, hath a black blotch on it: which blotch is called a **Monk**.

Marginal Notes, are note set on the side (or sides if the Page have two columns.)

N thick, is ment an N Quadrat thick.

Naked Form, or **Page**; is when the **Furniture** is taken from about all sides of the Form or Page.

Neck of a Letter, so much of the Punch as is sunk into the **Matrice**, is called the **Neck**; and when that Letter is cast off in Mettle, it is so much as comes above the square of the **Shank**, *viz.* above the **Beard**.

Notes, are Quotations down the side of a Page.

Number laid on, see **Lay on**.

Odd Page, is the first, third, fifth, seventh *&c.* all unen numbred Pages, are odd Pages.

Off, a Press-man usually says **I am off**, meaning he hath wrought off his **Token**, his **Heap**, his **Form**.

Open Matter, is when Pages Printed are full of Breaks and Whites.

Open the Form, is removing the Quoins from about the Form till they stand loose: and then opens the Furniture, that is, takes the Head sticks, and the inner Side sticks and Gutter sticks from about the Form.

Open Work, see **Open Matter**.

Over-Run, is when a Word or more is left out in the correcting as cannot be put in, except he must put so much of the fore part of the line into the line above it, or somuch of the hinder part of the line into the next under it, as will make room for what is left out. Thus if he have left out much, he must **over-run** many line, either backwards or forwards, or both, till he come to a Break.

Out, a Compositer usually says, **I am Out**, meaning he hath **set out his Page, Form** or **Coppy**. Also **out** marked in the Margent of Corrections, denots that some Line, Sentence, or considerable part of the Matter is left out in composing.

Out-page, in Octavo's, Twelves, Sixteens *&c.* every out side Page in the Sheet is called an **Out-page**, the rest are called **In-pages**.

Out of Register, is bad Register, that is when the Printing on both sides the Sheet stands not even together both at head and foot; see **Register**.

Page, is the side of a Leaf in a Book; see **Folio**.

Paragraph, see **Chapter**.

Pale Colour, if there be not blacking enough in the Ink, or the Form be beaten with too lean Balls, the work will be said to have a pale colour.

Pick or **Picks**, is when either pieces of the skin or Film that grows on the Ink with standing by, or any Dirt get into the hollows of the face of the Letter, that Film or Dirt will fill and choak up the Letter and Print black: which is called a **Pick**, because the Press-man with the point of a Needle picks it out.

Paper the Case, is to put paper in every Box in the upper and lower Cases to keep the Letters from falling through the clifts of the Boxes.

Paper up Letters, or **Pages**; are two phrases indifferently used for the same meaning; for the Press-man having wrought off the Form and washed the Letters, the Compositer having **stript the Form**, whips Cords about every Page, to tie them up from falling, so puts them on papers folding up the corners or lappets of the paper, and sets them by, till they have occasion to use them again.

Pidgeon Holes, when whites between words are as great or greater then between line and line: these wide whites

whites are by Compositers (in way of scandal) called Pigeon Holes, and are no good Work, but in case of necessity.

Points, as these and other marks used by Founders and Printers , ; : . - = ? ! (') * [ ] *&c.* are all called Points, yet have different Terms.

Point Holes, the two holes the Points fixed on the Tympan pricks into the Printed Sheet of Paper.

Press-Man, is him that Works at the Printing-Press.

Press goes, when the Press-men are at work, the Press is said **to go.**

Press goes Hard or **Heavy,** or **It goes Easie** and **Light:** It is by the Justifying of the Mortesses of the Checks and Head of the Press either too hard or more loose which makes the Press goe either hard or easie.

Press stands still, is when the Press-men are not at work.

Preface, the beginning or interduction of Matter to follow.

Proof or **Proof Sheet,** is that as is to be corrected.

Proof Letters, are patters Letters by which the Founder or Maker of the Moulds doth justifie his Mould by. And also by them new Fount Letters are tried by setting them together in the composing Stick.

Print hand, are Letters of Sentences Written in the same or like Characters as the Letters printed.

Pull Easie, or **Hard, Short, Long** or **Soft;** see **Hard Pull.**

Pye, when a page is broken, those broken Letters are called Pye: see **Broken Letters.**

Printing-House, is taken for the House wherein Printing is used: but more peculiarly used for the Printing Tooles, which they usually call a Printing-House, as such a one hath removed his Printing-House, that is the Tooles used in his former House.

Printing in Quires, when quire work is Printed, according to the number of Sheets Quired one in the other, then the Signature of the first Page is A, then the Signature of the Sheet Quired next within the first Sheet A 2. so that the Signatures of all the Sheets in the first Quire is A. A 2. A 3 *&c.* according to the number of Sheets Quired together: the second Quire begins, B. B 2. B 3. *&c.* the third Quire is C. C 2. C 3. *&c.* according to the number of Quires.

Quarters, as Quarto's, Octavo's, and Twelves Forms are imposed in Quarters: they are called Quarters because they are lockt up apart. Also the short Cross in the Chase as in a Twelves Form, is called a Quarter, though it be but one sixth part of the Form.

Quires, is when Sheets are Printed one to go into another, whether they consists of two or three Sheets they are called Quires, and their Printing is termed, **Printing in Quires.**

Rag, when Letters cast hath a Bur or Selvage on any of its edges, that is called a Rag.

Register, is to Quoin up the Form on the Carrage of the Press, so that when the second Form of the same Sheet, Volume, Measures, and Whites, is placed in the same position, that all sides of each page shall fall exactly upon all the sides of the pages of the first Form. This is termed **True Register.**

Register Sheet, the Sheet or Sheets printed to make Register with.

Reteration, the second Form, or Form printed on the back side of the white Paper.

Revise, that is a proof Sheet taken off after the first or second corrected Sheet, wherein the Corrector examins in this **Revise,** all the faults, fault by fault, if all he marked in the last proof Sheet be carefully mended, if not he marks them in the Revise.

Rince the Form, the washing away of the Lie that Presman cleansed the Form withal, after he had done the Printing.

Rise, a Form is said to **Rise,** when in rearing it off the Correcting-stone, no Letter or Furniture drops out, or stays behind.

Rowl up the Ball Leathers.

Rub Letter, is dressing the Shanks by rubbing them on a stone.

Rubs not, when the Shank is cast too thin, that in **Rubbing,** part of the face, or topping, or footing **Rubs** away: Founders say **It does not Rub.**

Rub well, when the Shank of a Letter hath a proper thickness, Founders say, it Rubs well.

Rub out Ink, it is only to spread some part of the Ink pretty equally oven the top of the Ink-block, from the corner of it, where the Ink generally lieth in a quantity or Mass together.

Run in the Carrage, is by giving the Winch one turn round about, which runs it into the middle: the second **Run in,** is by another turn.

Runs on Sorts, is when Matter runs much on some few Letters, they say **it Runs on Sorts.**

Runs out from Coppy, see **Drives out.**

Register be out, is when the two Printed sides meet not even at head and foot.

Setting up, is putting the new Cast Letter into the Founders composing Stick.

Sliding Measure, is the inner part of the composing Stick.

Second at the Press.

Small Bodies, see **Great Bodies.**

Second pull, is the second pull of the Bar, when the Carrage at the second turn of the Winch is run under the Plattin.

Short pull, is also called an hard pull, because it is suddenly performed, and the Form quickly feels the force of the Spindle.

Set Letters, is the Compositers putting each Letter into his Stick.

Sets foul, see **Foul proof.**

Sets clean, see **Clean proof.**

Sets close, see **Get in.**

Sets wide, see **Drive out.**

Set out paper, is the counting so many Quires out, as the Heap requires: see **Token.**

Set the Rounce, is so to set or fix the handle of the Winch as with one turn round, it shall run in the Carrage to the just middle of it: for by the well setting of the Rounce contributes much to the Riddance in a Train of Work.

Sets off, work that is newly wrought off at the press often sets off, especially if it be fat beaten with soft Ink: that is when the said paper comes to be beaten, or hard

press

preſt by the Book-binder, the moiſt Ink ſpreads and delates it ſelf round about the face of every Letter, and Sullies and ſtains the white paper.

Short Page, having but little Printed in it.

Section, it a cutting or dividing of a Matter: ſee **Chapter.**

Signature, at the firſt page of the Sheet, at the bottom thereof is ſet a Capital Letter, as thus: If it be the firſt Page of the firſt Sheet of a Book, the Signature is A. If the firſt Page of the ſecond Sheet, it hath a B. If the firſt of the third a C. and ſo ſucceſſively till he come to W. which is alway skipt, becauſe the *Latin* Alphabet hath not that Letter, but next V. follows X. Y. Z. So that if the Book contains above 23 Sheets, the Signature of the 24 Sheet muſt be A a, if 25 B b, till in like manner he run through the ſecond Alphabet, and comes to the third which is A a a, and fourth which is A a a a. To the ſecond Page or any other even Page he ſets no Signiture, but to the third Page which is an odd Page he ſets an A 2. the figure 2 being no part of the Signature, but only an adjunct to ſhew the Book-binder the ſecond Leaf of that Sheet, that he may the ſurer ſould the Sheet right: ſee **Painting in Quires.**

Sinck Matrices, ſee **Sinck Punches.**

Sinck Punches, is the ſincking of the Letter Punches into the Matrices, which is done with the face of an Hammer fizeable to the bigneſs of his Punch, by cautions knocks on the end of the Punch, with reiterated blows, till he have driven the punch deep enough into the Matrice.

Small Number, under 1500. laid on is accounted a **Small Number,** ſee **Great Numbers,** and ſee **Lay on.**

Smout, Workmen when they are out of conſtant Work, do ſometimes accept of a day or two Work, or a Weeks work at another Printing-Houſe: this By-work they call Smouting.

Soft pull, or **Soaking pull;** is when the **Form** feels the force of the Spindle by degrees, becauſe it comes ſoft and eaſily down; ſee **Short pull.**

Sop the Ball, when a Preſs-man hath taken too much Ink on his Balls, he is ſaid to **Sop his Balls.**

Sorts, the Letters that lie in every **Box** of the **Caſe** are ſeperatly called ſorts in Printers and Founders Language; thus a is a ſort, b is a ſort, c is a ſort, &c.

Spirit, ſee **Devil.**

Squable, a Page or Form is Squabled when the Letter of one or more lines are got into any of the adjacent Lines; or that the Letter or Letters are twiſted about out of their ſquare poſition.

Stem, the ſtraight fat ſtroaks of a ſtraight Letter, is called the Stem of the Letter.

Stick full, is when the compoſing Stick is filled with ſo many Lines that it can contrain no more.

Stiff Juſtified, ſee **Hard Juſtified.**

Space thick, or **Space thin;** are ment the thickneſs or thinneſs of ſuch Spaces, ſee m and n thick, and thick and thin Spaces.

Spaces, are thin bodies ſet between words to keep them aſunder, which ought by a ſtrict orderly rule, and Methodical meaſure to be made the thickneſs of the ſeventh part of the body of the Letter is in height; though Founders make them indifferently thicker and thinner.

Strip a Form, is to take away all the Furniture from about it, and lett it ſo remain on the Letter board to be diſtributed.

Stroaks in Letters, are either fat, lean, fine, hair ſtroaks; that is thick or thin ſtroaks.

Taking off, is ment ſo many Lines on his rule, as he doth diſtribute at a time, they being taken off and put into the Boxes.

Take up, as many lines as he takes upon his Rule or Riglet at a time to diſtribute, is a taking up; and thus he takes up Letters and diſtributs by taking of his Riglet and putting into the Boxes till the **Caſe** be full.

Take Ink, when the Balls are neither Graſie nor too Wet, the Ink will ſtick to them and diſtribute it ſelf from one Ball to another, then it is ſaid to **Take Ink,** else **not to Take:** Alſo **Take Ink** is to dab one of the Balls on the Ink-block to furniſh the Form with blacking when the Balls are wanting, they ſay, **Take Ink.**

Teze Wool, or **Hair;** is to pull it aſunder or card it, that neither Dirt or hard Lumps remain in it to hinder the Balls ſoft working.

Thick Letter, a Fount of Letter that rubs not high enough into the Neck, is called **Thick Letter,** and conſequently will drive out Matter.

Thick Space, m and n Spaces are called **Thick Space.**

Thin Spaces, are then m or n Spaces, and are generally called **Space Thick,** that is one quarter ſo thick as the body of the Letter is high, though Spaces are ſeldom caſt ſo thick.

Token Sheet, a Sheet foulded down at the end of every Token Printed.

Token, when Quires are counted out for the Printing, as many as are for one and the ſame work is called an **Heap:** Now in every Heap whether greater or leſſer every 5 Quires is called a **Token,** that is an hours work for half a Preſs, *viz.* a ſingle Preſs-man. But if it be for a whole Preſs, then every Token in the Heap contains 10 Quires.

Turn for a Letter, it often happens that **Matter** runs upon ſorts, eſpecially in Capitals, or ſome ſorts ſeldom uſed, and that the Compoſiter wants that ſort the **Matter runs on:** And being loath to diſtribute Letter for that ſort, or perhaps his Caſe is otherwiſe full. Then inſtead of that Letter or ſort, he **Turns a Letter** of the ſame thickneſs with the Foot of the Shank, and the Face downwards: which turned Letter being caſie to be ſeen, he afterwards when he can accomodate himſelf with a right ſort, takes the **Turned Letter** out and puts the right Letter in its room.

Turn for it, it is a word uſed jocoſely in the Chappel (that is the Printing-Houſe) when any of the Workmen complains of want of Money, or any thing elſe, he ſhall by another Workman be anſwered, **Turn for it,** *viz.* make ſhift for it.

Three Worm Spindle, is a Screw with three thrids or riſing in it, all going by the ſide of one another.

Train of Work, is a great deal of Work of one and the ſame ſort.

Title,

Title, either the name of the Book, or content of a Chapter or Section is termed the **Title** of such a thing.

Transposed Page, is when one Page is set in the other Pages place.

Timpan Sheet, that Sheet as is pasted on the Timpan, which is to lay all the Printed Sheets in the Heap even by.

Vantage, when a white Page or more happens in a Sheet, the Compositer calls that **Vantage**, so does the Presman, when a Form of one pull comes to the Press. But this is when they are agreed for so much the Sheet.

Unlock the Form, is to beat the Quoins back, that the Form be loosly held in the Chase.

Underlay, a Phrase used by Presmen for the **Light** and **Easie**, or **Hard** and **Heavy** running in of the Carriage: thus they say, the **Press goes Light** and **Easie under Hand**, or **above Hand**, or **it goes Heavy** or **Hard under Hand.**

Upper Hand, when the Spindle goes soft and easie, the Presman saith, **it goes well under Hand** or **above Hand.** But the Contrary if it goes Hard and Heavy.

Wash the Form,

Weak Ink, see **Soft Ink.**

White Line, a line of Quadrats, which Print not the Paper.

White Page, a Page that no Matter comes in.

Well Currying of the Steel, is an operation of the *Smith*, in working Iron out of Steel, that the Steel may be sound and entire of it self.

White Paper, although the first Form be Printed oft, yet Presmen erronically call that Heap white Paper, till the reteration be Printed.

Whole Press, see **Full Press.**

Wood, that part of the Letter Mould as is of Wood.

Wooden Letters, great Capital Letters with Florishes about them, anciently uses to be set in the beginning of Chapters and Section, Dedications and Prefaces to Books.

Wetting of Paper, is to Wet it Quire by Quire in fair Water, to prepare it for the Press, laying it all on a Heap on the Paper Board.

Waste Sheet, is Paper laid on the Paper Board under the Wet Heap to keep the Board from foulding the first Sheet. Also it is Paper first Printed for a Proof which after Correction is termed **Waste Paper.**

Customs of the Chappel.

Every Printing - House is called a **Chappel**, in which there are these Laws and Customs for the well and good Government of the Chappel, and for the orderly deportment of all its Members while in the Chappel.

Every Workman belonging to it are **Members of the Chappel**, and the Eldest Freeman is **Father of the Chapel**; and the Penalty for the Breach of any Law or Custom is in Printers Language called a **Solace.**

1. Swearing in the Chappel, a Solace.
2. Fighting in the Chappel a Solace.
3. Abusive Language or giving the Lie in the Chappel a Solace.
4. To be Drunk in the Chappel, a Solace.
5. For any of the Workmen to leave his Candle burning at Night, a Solace.
6. If a Compositer fall his composing Stick and another take it up, a Solace.
7. For three Letters and a Space to lie under the Compositers Case, a Solace.
8. If a Press - man let fall his Ball or Balls and another take them up, a Solace.
9. If a Press - man leave his Blankets in the Timpan at Noon or Night, a Solace.
10. For any Workman to mention joyning their penny or more a piece to send for Drink, a Solace.
11. To mention spending Chappel Money till *Satur-Day* Night, or any other before agreed time, a Solace.
12. To play at Quadrats or excite others in the Chappel to play for Money or Drink, a Solace.
13. A Stranger to come to the Kings Printing - House and ask for a Ballad, a Solace.
14. For a Stranger to come to a Compositer and enquire if he had News of such a Galley at Sea, a Solace.
15. For any to bring a Wisp of Hay directed to a Press - man, is a Solace.
16. To call Mettle Lead in a Founding - House, is a Forfeiture.
17. A Workman to let fall his Mould, a Forfeiture.
18. A Workman to leave his Ladle in the Mettle at Noon or at Night, a Forfeiture.

And the Judges of these Solaces or Forfeitures and other Controversies in the Chappel or any of its Members was by Plurality of Votes in the Chappel; it being asserted as a Maxime, that the Chappel cannot Err. Now these Solaces or Fines were to be bought off for the good of the Chappel, which never exceeded 1 *s.* 6 *d.* 4 *d.* 2 *d.* 1 *d. ob.* according to the Nature and Quality thereof.

But if the Delinquent proved obstinate and will not pay, the Workmen takes him by force and lays him on his Belly over the correcting stone and holds him there whilest another with a Paper board gives him 10*l.* in a Purse *viz.* 11 blows on his Buttocks, which he lays on according to his own Mercy.

Customs for Payments of Money.

Every new Workman to pay for his Entrance half a Crown, which is called his **Benvenue**, till then he is no Member, nor enjoys any benefit of Chappel Money.

Every Journeyman that formerly worked at the Chappel and goes away, and afterwards comes again to work pays but half a **Benvenue.**

If Journeymen Smout one another they pay half a **Benvenue.**

All

All Journeymen are paid by their Master Printer for all Church Holy-days that falls not on a *Sunday* whether they work or no, what they can earn every working day, be it 2. 3. or 4 *s.*

If a Journeyman Marries, he pays half a Crown to the Chappel.

When his Wife comes to the Chappel she pays *6 d.* and then all the Journeymen joyns their 2 *d.* a piece to make her drink, and to welcome her.

If a Journeyman have a Son born, he pays 1 *s.* if a Daughter, *6 d.*

If a Master-Printer have a Son born, he pays 2 *s.* *6 d.* if a Daughter, 1 *s.* *6 d.*

An Apprentice when he is Bound, pays half a Crown to the Chappel, and when he is made Free, another half Crown: and if he continues to work Journeywork in the same House he pays another, and is then a Member of the Chappel.

It is Customary for all Journeymen to make every Year new Paper Windows about *Bartholomew-Tide*, at which time the Master Printer makes them a Feast called a **Way-Goose**, to which is invited the Corrector, Founder, Smith, Ink-maker, *&c.* who all open their Purses and give to the Workmen to spend in the Tavern or Ale-House, after the Feast. From which time they begin to work by Candle light.

The Printers, Journeymen, with the Founders and Ink-makers have every Year a general Feast, which is kept in the Stationers-Hall on or about *May-day*. It is made by 4 Stewards, 2 Masters, and 2 Journeymen; and with the Collection of half a Crown a piece of every Guest: the charges of the whole Feast is defrayed.

About 10 of the Clock in the Morning on the Feast day the Company invited, meet at the place apointed, and from thence go to some Church thereabouts in this following Order. First, 4 Whifflers (as Servitures) by two and two walking before with white Staves in their Hands, and red and blew Ribbons hung Belt-wise upon their Shoulders: these makes way for the Company.

Then walks the Beadle of the Company of Stationers, with the Companies Staff in his Hand, and Ribbons as afore.

Then the Minister, whom the Stewards have engaged to Preach the Sermon, and his Reader or Clerk.

Then the Stewards walks by two and two with long white Wands in their Hands, and all the rest of the Company follows in like order, till they enter the Church *&c.* Service ended, and a Sermon suitable for the occasion finished, they all return to their Hall in the same order, where upon their entrance each Guest delivers his Ticket to a Person appointed, which gives him admittance; where every one Feast himself with what he likes best, being delighted all the while with Musicks and Songs, *&c.*

After Dinner the Ceremony of Electing new Stewards for the next Year begins: then the Stewards withdraws into another Room, and puts Garlands of Laurel or Box on their Heads, and white Wands in their Hands, and are Ushered out of the withdrawing Room thus; first, the Companies Beadle with his Staff in his Hand, and Musick sounding before him, then followed one of the Whifflers with a great Bowl of White-wine and Sugar in his right Hand, and his Staff in the left, after him follows the eldest Steward.

Then another Whiffler as aforesaid, before the second Steward: in like manner another Whiffler before the third; and another before the fourth Steward.

And thus they walk with Musick sounding before them three times round the Hall, and in the fourth round, the first Steward takes the Bowl from his Whiffler and Drinks to one (whom before he resolved on) by the Title of Mr. **Steward Elect**: and taking the Garland of his own Head, puts it on the Steward Elects Head, at which all the Company claps their Hands in token of Joy.

Then the present Steward takes out the Steward elect, and Walks with him hand in hand, (giving him the right Hand) behind the three other Stewards another round the Hall; and in the next round as aforesaid, the second Steward Drinks to another with the same Ceremony as the first did; and so the third, and so the fourth. And then all walks one round more hand in hand about the Hall, that the Company may take Notice of the Stewards Elect: and so ends the Ceremony of the Day.

LVII. He beareth Argent, a **Barber bare Headed**, with a **pair of Cisers** in his right hand, and a **Comb** in his left, **cloathed** in Russet, his **Apron Cheque** of the first and Azure. A **Barber** is always known by his **Cheque parti-coloured Apron**, therefore it needs not mentioning; neither can he be termed a **Barber** (or **Poller** or **Shaver**, as anciently they were called) till his **Apron** be about him.

Instruments of a Barber.

The **Instrument Case**, in which are placed these following things in their several divisions.

The **Glass** or **seeing Glass.**

A **Set of Horn Combs**, with Teeth on one side, and wide.

A **Set of Box Combs.**

A **Set of Ivory Combs**, with fine Teeth, and toothed on both sides.

An **Ivory Beard Comb.**

A **four square Bottle** with a Screw'd head for sweet Water, or *Benjamin* Water, *&c.*

The like **Bottle** with sweet Powder in; but this is now not used.

A **Row of Razers.**

A **pair of Tweesers**, or **Twitchers**: with an Ear pick at the other end of it.

A **Rasp** or **File**, to file a point of a tooth that stands out.

A **Set of Cisers**, for the cutting of the Hair and Beard.

A **Curling Iron**, or Beard Iron, called the **Forceps.**

A **Hone**, to set or sharpen the Razers.

A **Bottle of Oyle**, or sweet Oyle, or Oyle Olive for the Hone.

A **Powder Box**, with sweet Powder.
A **Puff** or **Tuff**, to powder the Hair.
A **Barbers Candlestick**, to stick at his Girdle.
A **Barbers Apron.**
A **Bason** or **Barbers Bason**, having a circle in the brim to compass the Mans Throat, and a place like a litte Dish to put the Ball in after Lathering.
Wash Balls, and **Sweet Balls.**
Water made sweet with having Bay Leaves, or other Leaves heated therein.
A **Chafer** to heat Water in.
A **Small Chafer** to carry Water in, with a hanging or falling handle to hold it by.
Linnens of several sorts; as
Caps for the Head, to keep the Hair up
Trimming Cloaths, to put before a Man.
Napkins to put about the Neck, to dry the Face and Hands with.

Terms of Art used in Barbing and Shaving.

Take the Chair, is for the Person to be Trimmed, to sit down.
Clear the Neck, is to unbutton and turn down the collar of the Mans Neck.
Cloath him, is to put a Trimming Cloth before him, and to fasten it about his Neck.
Comb round the Hair, is to ready the Hair with a wide tooth Comb.
Powder the Hair, is to puff Sweet Powder into it.
Rub the Hair with a Napkin, is to dry it from its swettiness and filth in the head.
Comb out the Hair, and **Power it**; is to Comb the Hair straight with a wide tooth Horn Comb.
Comb it smooth and **even** with a Box Comb.
Comb it against the Grain, is to Comb it round the Head upwards to the Crown.
Walk your Combs, is to use two Combs in each Hand one, and so Comb the Hair with one after the other
Quever the Combs, is to use them as if they were scratting on each side the Temples.
Quever the Head round, is to scrat it with the Combs all over.
Divide the Hair, is to lay it straight, or part it on the top of the head, even with the Nose.
Cut it up in heights, that is to cut as each person will have it, for there is variety of ways in cutting of Hair, as
Cutting it all off the Top, and so they use it that wear Peruwicks.
Cutting it close, so that the remainder stands upright, this is called **Round Cutting**, and **Pick Eared Cutting**, because the hair is so short that it scarce covers the Ears.
Cutting in Falls, when the hair is cut to fall down each side the head, and extends it self to the shoulders. This is termed **Parting of the Hair.**

Jecimy the Hair, is to put Jecimin on the palms of your hands and rub it on the hair, and in the hair, by putting the locks between your hands, and rubbing the hands together.
Powder the hair.
Clap on the Cap, and divide the hair alike on each side.
Curle up the hair, is to rowle it about a pair of curling or beard Irons, and thrust it under the Cap.
Handle the Bason, and **Ball**; pour in the Water.
Lather the Face, is to wash the Beard with the Suds which the Ball maketh by chaffing it in the warm Water.
Hand the Razer, set it in a right order between the Thumb and Fingers.
Shave the Beard, is to take off superfluous hairs.
Wash the Face, with a Ball and Water, or a sweet Ball.
Clear the Face from the Ball, is to wash it over with clean Water to take off the sopiness.
Dry the Face, is airing of a Napkin (if cold Weather) and drying off the wet.
Trim the Beard, take away stragling hairs, and cut it thinner.
Take off the Cap, and fall the hair.
Comb out the hair.
Hold him the Glass, to see his new made Face, and to give the Barber instructions where it is amiss.
Take off the Linnens.
Brush his Cloaths.
Present him with his Hat, and according to his hire, he makes a bow, with your humble Servant Sir.

Other Terms used by Barbers.

A **Barber** from *Barba* a Beard, is a cutter of hair.
Poler an ancient term used for the cutter of hair.
Pole me, is cut my hair.
Shave, is to cut off the Beard with a Razer and Water.
Trim, is to cut the Beard (after shaving) into form and order.
Set the Razer, is to make it sharp and keen, on the Hone with Oyle.
Try the Razer.
Return the Razer, is to fould it up. and put it into the case.
Case, or **Box the Instruments**; is to put all the things into the case that was used about Trimming of a Person.
Fould the Cloaths.
Dry the Bason, wipe it with a Napkin after he hath done shaving.
Scoure the Dishes,
Instruments, a general Term for all the things that a Barber hath in his Case or Box.

LVIII. He

LVIII. He beareth Azure, on a **Ground Plot**, or **Mount in Base**, a **Feltmaker**, **Walking of a Hat on his Plank**, Or, **the Pot to receive his Liquor**, Argent, his **Shirt** or **Waistcoat** of the same. This is born by the name of *Feltman*.

Terms used in their Trade.

Bow the Wooll.
Bake the Wooll over.
Fly the Wooll out.
Make your **Bate.**
Go to **Bason.**
Set up the Hat.
Boil the Hat.
Cover it with **Stuff**, lay the Shagg upon it.
Water the Hat.
Walke the Hat.
Block the Hat.
Round it, cut the Edges and Brims round and even.
Colour, or **Dye** the Hat.
Dy it.
Stiffen it.
Glase it, or **Finish** it.

Sorts of Hats.

The **Felt**, it is made of Sheeps Wooll only.
The **Caster**, it is made of Coney Wool, mixt with Polony Wooll.
The **Beever**, it is made of Beever haire and Red Wool.
The **French-felt**, it is between a Felt and a Caster.
The **Cordiback Felt.**
The **Carolina Felt.**

LIX. He beareth Azure, on a **Ground Plot**, or **Mount** in Base, Vert; an **Astronomer** in his **short Gown**, Sable; **Cap** (or **Bonnet**) **Hose** and **Shoes** of the same; holding up a **Quadrant** in his right hand, and a **Jacobs Staff** in the left, Or. This is either termed an **Astronomer** or an **Astrologer**, both Sciences taking notice of the motions and effects of the Stars, and Heavenly Constellations.

Astronomy and Astrology described.

They are of the **Seven Liberal Arts** and **Sciences**, which though they be of a double Name, yet their Art tends to one and the same thing, *viz.* the measuring of the Heavens, observing the course and motions of the Planets, with all the moveable Constellations, only in this the words differ, **Astronomy** teacheth the Art of measuring the Heavens, the course and motion, setting and rising of the Planets; and **Astrology** telleth the future effect of things by their Motions, Conjunctions and Aspect, *&c.* they are both in one figure described, *viz.* either by Men, or Women, or both, with the Celestial Sphere before them with several Instruments belonging to that Art, drawn on Tables, or lying on the ground, as Books, Sun Dials, Quadrants, Jacobs Staff, and the Astrolabe, with such like.

As for the Terms of Art used in Astronomy and Astrology, I have formerly set them down (in some part) where I did speak of the Globe, or Celestial Sphere, to which I shall refer you, see *lib.* 2. *cap.* 1. *numb.* 77. and shall only take an occasion in this place to Treat so much of these Sciences as concern Heraldry and Antiquity, and that is of the course of the Sun, Moon, and Stars, as they manifest unto us Times and Seasons, Days, Months and Years, *&c.* the knowledge whereof I must confidently affirm to stand such in great use.

I shall begin first with the year, which consisteth of four Seasons or Quarters; each Quarter containing three Months, each Month four Weeks and some odd days; and every Week exactly seven days; every day being 24 hours, and every hour 60 minutes. Now how these several times were in former Ages distinguished, is the thing I am about to relate; and the ensuing Table will make to appear.

A Year hath by the course of the Sun 12 months, and by the course of the Moon 13 Months; of Weeks 52; and Days 365, except Leap-Year, and then it hath 366 days.

A Rule to know how many days each Month hath, and the Moveable Feasts.

Thirty days hath September, April, June and November; February hath 28 alone, and all the rest have Thirty one. But the Leap Year at that time, gives to February Twenty Nine.

How the Sundays or Sabbath days are reckoned throughout the Year.

Advent Sunday hath been by the Church in all Ages accounted for the first Sabbath or Lords Day in the year, which is the 5 Sunday before the Birth, or coming of Christ into the World, in his Humanity; after which followeth then this Account, *viz.*

The 1 Advent Sunday.
The 2 after Advent.
The 3 after Advent.
The 4 after Advent.
The 1 Sunday after Christmas day, which is 25 *December.*
The 2 after Christmas.
The 1 Sunday after Epiphany (or Twelfth day) which is ever on the 6 of *January.*

The 2 Sunday after Epiphany.
The 3 after Epiphany.
The 4 after Epiphany.
The 5 after Epiphany.
The 6 after Epiphany.

The Septuagesima Sunday, so called of seventy days, or the Sunday 70 days before the Passeover, or Feast of Easter, or 9 Weeks.

The Sexagesima Dominia, or Sunday 60 days before Easter, or 8 Weeks.

The Quinquagesima Sunday 50 days before Easter, or 7 Weeks.

The Quadragesima Sunday 40 days before Easter (but this falls out very seldom, but when Easter is high in the year) it is 6 Weeks before Easter.

The 1 Sunday in Lent.
The 2 Sunday in Lent.
The 3 Sunday in Lent.
The Midlent Sunday.
The 5 Sunday in Lent, called Carle Sunday.
The 6 Sunday in Lent, called also Palm Sunday.
The Paschal, or Easter Sunday.
The 1 Sunday after Easter, or Low Sunday.
The 2 after Easter.
The 3 after Easter.
The 4 after Easter.
The Rogation Sunday.
The Sunday after Ascention, or Holy Thursday.
The Whitsunday, or the day of Pentecost.
Trinity Sunday.
The 1 Sunday after Trinity.
The 2 after Trinity.
The 3 after Trinity, *&c.* to the 24, 25, or 26 Sunday after Trinity, if Easter fall to be in the beginning of the year, which is called a Low Lent or Easter.

To know the Moveable Feasts in the Year.

It is necessary for both an Herald, and an Historian amongst other things to know all the Moveable Feasts in the Year, and to whom and how Dedicated, thereby to give a true and exact account of the times; and this he may do if he observe these few heads.

Take notice that all the Moveable Feasts have their dependance on that day called **Shrove Tuesday**; now it is known by the first Change of the Moon in the Month of *February*, and the next Tuesday after the said first Change, is the undoubted Shrove Tuesday; But if it change on a Tuesday, then the next Tuesday following, is Shrove Tuesday.

Shrove Sunday, is the Sunday before the said Shrove-Tuesday.

Ash-Wednesday, is the day after Shrove-Tuesday.

Ember Week or **Ember days**, are the Wednesday, Friday and Saturday in the Week after the first Sunday in Lent, or Sunday after Shrove-Tuesday.

The **Fast of Lent**, is all the time from Ash Wednesday to the Feast of Easter, 40 days.

Midlent, or the Sunday in the middle of Lent, is the 4 Sunday after Shrove Tuesday.

*

Palm Sunday, is the 6 Sunday from Shrove-Tuesday.

Carle Sunday, is the second Sunday before Easter, or the fifth Sunday from Shrove-Tuesday.

Passion Week, is the Week after the 6 Sunday, or Palm Sunday, and before Easter.

Good Friday, is the Friday in the 6 Week, or after the 6 Sunday from Shrove-Tuesday.

Easter-day, or **Easter Sunday**, called also the **Paschal Sabbath**, or the **Eucharist day**, (because then the Celebration of the Lords Supper was chiefly performed) and the Resurrection of Jesus Christ; because on that day he rose from the dead; This day of Easter is (in memory thereof) kept annually the 7 Sunday after Shrove-Tuesday; or the first Sunday after the Full Moon which happens next after the 21 day of *March*; if it be on a Sunday, Easter is next Sunday after.

Low Sunday, is the Sunday after Easter.

Rogation Sunday, so called from their Catechising or manner of asking of Questions. It is the fifth Sunday after Easter.

Ascention day, from Christs going into Heaven in the sight of his Disciples, called also **Holy Thursday**; it is just the Fortieth day from Easter, Easter day being one of the account; or take it to be the Thursday in the Rogation Week.

Pentecost, or the Feast of Pentecost, or Whitsunday, is the 7 Sunday after Easter, vulgarly called Whitsuntide.

Ember Week, or days in Pentecost, are the Wensday, Friday and Saturday in Whitsun Week.

Trinity Sunday, is the 8 Sunday after Easter.

Advent Sunday, is always the nearest Sunday to the Feast of St. *Andrew* the Apostle, whether before or after it; and St. *Andrews* day is always the last of *November*; so that it is ever the fourth Sunday before the **Nativity of Christ**, called **Christmas day.**

The necessity of the knowledg of these days, and in what time of the year they happen to fall, is very useful to Antiquaries, and Keepers of old and antient Records; nay to all Gentlemen who delight in the Study of Antiquities, thereby to know the exact time of the date of their Deeds, Evidences, Records, Edicts, Charters, with other kind of Manuscripts: for you must know that in ancient times they did not date their Writing as we do now, such a day of such a Month in the Year of our Lord, so and so. But their manner of Dateing, was by the Days before or after such a Feast Day of Jesus Christ, or of a Day Dedicated to such and such a Saint: with the Year of the Kings Reign, or of the Popes Pontifical Chair, or Bishops and Archbishops time of their Consecration and Inauguration into their Cathedral Office: as thus.

Data Die Sabbathi proximum post Festum Epiphanie Anno Regni Regis Edwardi *Primi, Secundo.*

Data Die Martis proximum post Festum Ascentionis Domini Anno Regni Regis Johannis Decimo.

Inquisicio Capta Die Veneris ante Pascam Anno Regni Regis Edwardi *tertij post conquestum tertio,*

Data Die Pentecasta Anno Pontifici Domini Nostri Urbani Divini Providentiæ Pape Sexti, Secundo.

Data

Data Die Sabbathi in crastino ante Rogationis Dominicum Pontificatus Domini Nicholai *Pape Quarte, Anno Secundo.*

Data Nona Calendas Aprili Anno Primo Pontificatus Clementis Episcopi (aut Pape.)

Data V. Idus Marcij Anno Pontificati Honorij Pape tertij, quinto.

Rogerus *Dei Gratia* Coventrie *&* Litchfield *Episcopus, &c. Data* 14 *Calend. Maij Anno Gratiæ* 1277. *& Consecratione Nostri vicesimo.*

Bonificius *Episcopus Servus Servorum Dei, &c. Data* 12 *Calend. Julij Pontificatus Nostri Anno tertio.*

Thus much for Dates that are Moveable Feasts: I shall give some whose Dates are on Saints Days which are fixed to certain Days of the Month: as thus,

Data in Vigilo Sancti Egidij *Anno Regni Regis* Henrici *Secundi, post conquestum* Anglia *Secundo.*

Data Die Sabbathi in crastino omnium Sanctorum Anno Regni Regis Edwardi *Tertij post Conquestum tricesimo.*

Data Die Dominica proximum ante Festum Sancti Petri *in vincula Anno Regni Regis* Edwardi *Tertij post Conquestum Secundo.*

Data Die Lune in Festo Sanctorum Sabastini *&* Fabiani, *Anno Regni Regis* Edwardi *Primi, post Conquestum Decimo.*

Now for the certain knowledg of these Saints Days and Years, I have not thought it amiss in the next place to give you a Catalogue of the Kings of *England*, and the times of their Reigns, and the Calender of all the Saints Feast Days throughout the Year, which will be a great help to find out the very Day of the Date of an old Deed.

Kings Reigns.

William the Conqueror, began his Reign, 14. *Octo.* 1066.
William Rufus, began his Reign, 9. *Sept* 1087.
Henry the first, began his Reign, 1. *August* 1100.
King *Stephen*, began his Reign, 2. *Decemb.* 1136.
Henry the second, began his Reign, 25. *Octob.* 1154.
Richard the first, began his Reign, 6. *July* 1189.
King *John*, began his Reign, 14. *Octob.* 1199.
Henry the third, began his Reign, 19. *Octob.* 1217.
Edward the first, began his Reign, 16. *Novemb.* 1273.
Edward the second, began his Reign, 7. *July* 1307.
Edward the third, began his Reign, 25. *January* 1327.
Richard the second, began his Reign, 21. *June* 1377.
Henry the fourth, began his Reign, 21. *Sept.* 1400.
Henry the fifth, began his Reign, 20. *March* 1413.
Henry the sixth, began his Reign, 31. *August* 1422.
Edward the fourth, began his Reign, 4. *Mar.* 1461.
Edward the fifth, began his Reign, 9. *April* 1483.
Richard the third an Usurper, began his Reign, 22. *July* 1484.
Henry the seventh, began his Reign, 22. *August* 1486.
Henry the eigth, began his Reign, 22. *April* 1509.
Edward the sixth, began his Reign 28. *January* 1547.
Queen *Mary*, began her Reign, 6. *July* 1553.
Philip and *Mary*, began their Reign, 25. *July* 1554.
Queen *Elizabeth*, began her Reign 17. *Novemb.* 1559.
James the first, began his Reign, 24. *March* 1603.
Charles the first, began his Reign, 27. *March* 1625.
Charles the second, began his Reign, 30. *Jan.* 1648.
James the second, began his Reign, 6. *Feb.* 1684.

January hath XXXI. Days.

calend. Jan.	1	Circum. of Christ. New Years-day.
4. nonas	2	St. Stephen. (S. Basil the Great.
3. nonas	3	St. John the Divine.
prid. non. Jan.	4	Innocence - day.
nonas Jan.	5	St. Tho. Becknet. St. Simeon.
8. idus	6	Epiphanie, or Twelve - day.
7. idus	7	St. Felix.
6. idus	8	St. Lucian.
5. idus	9	St. Agapets the Virgin. S. Julianus
4. idus	10	St. Paul 1. Hermit. (Mar.
3. idus	11	St. Linus, and Higinus.
prid. idus	12	St. Archade the Martyr.
idus	13	St. Hillary Bishop.
19. calend. feb.	14	St. Felicia.
18. calend.	15	St. Maurice.
17. calend.	16	St. Marcel.
16. calend.	17	St. Anthony.
15. calend.	18	St. Prysea.
14. calend.	19	St. Wolstan, and Pontianus.
13. calend.	20	St. Sebastin, and Fabian.
12. calend.	21	St. Agnes.
11. calend.	22	St. Vincent.
10. calend.	23	St. Emerence.
9. calend.	24	St. Timothy. St. Babylas Bishop.
8. calend.	25	Conversion of St. Paul.
7. calend.	26	St. Policarpe Bishop.
6. calend.	27	St. Agnes the 2d. John Chrisostom
5. calend.	28	St. Valerius. (Bishop.
4. calend.	29	St. Theodore, and Char. the Great.
3. calend.	30	St. Batilde, and Marcellinus.
prid. cal. feb.	31	St. Victor, and Saturnus.

Badd and Evil Days in this Month are the first, second, fourth, fifth, tenth, fifteenth, sixteenth; of some the seventeenth, nineteenth, others say the twenty fift: as the *Egyptian* and *Caldean* Astronomers. *Innocence-Day* on what Day of the Week soever it lights upon, that Day of the Week is by Astronomers taken to be a Cross Day all that Year through.

The *Jews* call this their eleventh Month by the name of *Shebat*: and their Week Days, the first, second, third, fourth, fifth, sixth, the seventh Day the Sabbath: and the Christians the Lords-Day, and the first Day of the Week: *Zach.* 1. 7.

The *Romans* call it *Januarius* from *Janus* their first Heathen King, and God; and their Week Days, *Dies Lunæ, Dies Martis, Dies Mercurij, Dies Jovis, Dies Veneris, Dies Saturni, Dies Solis*: and from the Christians, *Dies Dominici.*

The *Saxons*, and *English*, call the Days of the Week, *Sunday, Moonday, Tuiscos* or *Tuesday, Woden's* or *Wednesday, Thorsday, Freasday*, or *Friday*, and *Seaterday.*

February hath XXVIII. Days, yet every 4 Year called the *Bissextil* or *Leap-Year*, hath XXIX. Days.

calend. feb.	1	St. Briget. Ignatius Bish. & Mar.
4. nonas	2	Purifi. of Mary, or Chandlemas day.
3. nonas	3	St. Blase.
prid. non. Feb.	4	St. Gilbert.
non. Febru.	5	St. Agatha Virgin.
8. idus.	6	Vedastus. Amandus. Dorothy.
7. idus	7	Angulus a Bishop.
6. idus	8	St. Paul a Bishop, and Lucius.
5. idus	9	St. Apolin.
4. idus	10	St. Scholastica. St. Will. confessor.
3. idus	11	St. Eufrastus.
prid. idus	12	St. Eulalie.
idus feb.	13	St. Wolston, and Wolfrane.
16. cal. mar.	14	St. Valentine.
15. calend.	15	St. Faustine, and Jonett.
14. calend.	16	St. Julian the Virgin.
13. calend.	17	St. Policron.
12. calend.	18	St. Simeon.
11. calend.	19	St. Sabinus.
10. calend.	20	St. Mildred.
9. calend.	21	69. Martyrs, *alii* 97. Martyrs.
8. calend.	22	St. Peter in Cathedra, or the Chair.
7. calend.	23	St. Policronius, a fast Day.
6. calend.	24	St. Matthias the Apostle.
5. calend.	25	St. Paul.
4 calend.	26	St. Nector, and Alexander.
3. calend.	27	St. Augustine.
prid. cal. Mar	28	St. Oswold.
	29	St. Romanus.

Bad and Evil Days in this Month are the fourth, but *Erra Pater* the *Jewish* Astronomer, saith the eigth, tenth, seventeenth.

The *Jews* calls this their 12. Month, and give it the name of *Adar*: *Est.* 9. 1. 17.

The *Romans* calls it *Februarius* from *Februa*, Feasts then Celebrated to *Pluto* the feigned God of Hell.

March hath XXXI. Days.

calen. March	1	St. David.
6. nonas	2	St. Chadd.
5. nonas	3	St. Martine.
4. nonas	4	St. Adrian.
3. nonas	5	St Eusebius, and Foce.
prid. non. Mar.	6	St. Victorine.
nonas.	7	St. Perpetua. St. Thomas Aquinas.
8. idus	8	St. Felix.
7. idus	9	40. Martyrs.
6. idus	10	St. Agapite.
5. idus	11	St. Quirion.
4. idus	12	St. Gregory Pope or Bishop.
3. idus	13	St. Theodore.
prid. idus	14	St. Candide, and Leo.
idus	15	St. Longius.
17. cal. Apr.	16	St. Boniface Bishop.
16. calend.	17	St. Patrick, and Gertrude.
15. calend.	18	St Edward Confessor and King.
14. calend.	19	St. Joseph Husband to Mary.
13. calend.	20	St. Cuthbert.
12. calend.	21	St. Benett or Benedict.
11. calend.	22	St. Aphrodosie.
10. calend.	23	St. Theodore.
9. calend.	24	St. Agapie, a fast Day.
8. calend.	25	Annun. of Mary, or Conception of Christ.
7. calend.	26	St Castor Martyr.
6. calend.	27	St. Drizipar.
5. calend.	28	St. Dorothy.
4. calend.	29	St. Quintine.
3. calend.	30	St. Quitrine.
prid. cal. Apr.	31	St. Adelme.

Bad and Evil Days in this Month, are the first, fifteenth, say the *Egyptians*: but the *Jews* say, the fifteenth, sixteenth, twenty first.

The *Jews* calls this the first Month, or the Month *Abib*, or *Nisan*: as *Exod.* 13. 4. and *Est.* 3. 7.

The *Romans* calls it *Martius* from *Mars*, feigned by the Heathens to be the God of War.

April hath XXX. Days.

calend. Apr.	1	St. Theodore.
4. nonas	2	St. Mary of Egypt.
3. nonas	3	St. Richard Bishop.
prid. non. Apr.	4	St. Ambrose.
nonas.	5	St. Martian.
8. idus	6	St. Sextus Bishop.
7. idus	7	St. Egisippus.
6. idus	8	St. Perpetuus.
5. idus	9	Passion of 7. Virgins.
4. idus	10	Ezekiel. Tiburcius and Valet.
3. idus	11	St. Julian Bishop.
prid. idus	12	St. Oswald Archbishop.
idus	13	St. Zenoni. St. Justinus Martyr.
18. cal. Maii.	14	St. Olyffe. Tiburtius.
17. calend.	15	St. Leonard.
16. calend.	16	St. Ysidore Bishop. Ireneus.
15. calend.	17	St. Cosmie, and Anicete.
14. calend.	18	St. Quintine, and Valerian.
13. calend.	19	St. Alphege Bishop, and Osmund.
12. calend.	20	St. Victor Martyr.
11. calend.	21	St. Simeon Bish. St. Anselme Bish.
10. calend.	22	St. Sother Virgin.
9. calend.	23	St. George Martyr.
8. calend.	24	St. Wilfride Bishop, and Adelme.
7. calend.	25	St. Mark the Evan. St Pauls Conv.
6. calend.	26	St. Clere, or Cletus Bish. St. Basil Bish.
5. calend.	27	St. Anastasius Bish.
4. calend.	28	St. Vitalis Martyr.
3 calend.	29	St. Peter Mediolensis.
prid. cal. Maii.	30	St. Arkenwald, a fast Day.

Bad and Evil Days in this Month, are the 10. 16. 21. as the *Caldeans* saith, but the *Jews* say only the 15. 21. Days are not lucky.

The *Jews* calls this the second Month, or *Zif*, or the Month *Ijar*: as in 1. *Kin.* 6. 1.

The *Romans* calls it *Aprilis*, as some affirm from *Aphrodites Venus*, the frothy and filthy Goddess.

May

May hath XXXI. days.

Calend. Maij	1	S. Phillip and Jacob Apostles.
6. nonas	2	S. Athanasie Bishop,
5. non.	3	Invention of the Holy Cross.
4. non.	4	Feast of the Crown of Thorns.
3. non.	5	S. Godard. St. Austins Conversion.
Prid. non. Maij	6	S. John Port Latin. S. John Damascen
Nonas.	7	S. John of Beverley.
8. idus.	8	Apparition of St. Michael Archangel.
7. idus.	9	Transl. S. Nicholas. S. Greg. Nazian.
6. idus	10	S. Gordian and Epimachy. (Bp.
5. idus	11	S. Anthony.
4. idus	12	S. Acheley, And Pancrace. Epiph. Bp.
3. idus	13	S. Boniface and Servatius.
Pridie idus	14	S. Isidore Martyr.
Idus	15	S. Brandon.
17. cal. Junii	16	Transl. of S. Barnard. and Adelgune
16. calend.	17	S. Diaicori Martyr.
15. calend.	18	S. Barnardine.
14. calend.	19	S. Dunstan.
13. calend.	20	S. Elen Queen.
12. calend.	21	S. Julian Virgin. Urbanus
11. calend.	22	S. Desiderius Martyr and Juliana.
10. calend.	23	Translation of St. Francis.
9. calend.	24	S. Adelme Bishop.
8. calend.	25	S. Austin of England.
7. calend.	26	S. Bede Presbyter.
6. calend.	27	S. Germane.
5. calend.	28	S. Coronia Martyr, and Monica.
4. calend.	29	S. Felix
3. calend.	30	S. Petronil.
Pridie Junii	31	S. Nertus.

Bad and Evil days in this Month are the 3, 7, 15. but the Jews say the 7, 15, 20.

It is by them called the 3 Month, or Month *Sivan*, *Est.* 8, 9. The *Romans* call it *Maius*, from *Maia*, a Heathen Goddess, called also *Flora*.

June hath XXX. days.

Calendas	1	S. Nichomede Martyr.
4. nonas	2	S. Marcelline and Peter.
3. nonas	3	S. Erasmus Martyr.
Pridie nonas	4	S. Petrosius Confessor.
Nonas Junij	5	S. Boniface Bishop.
8. idus	6	S. Wolstane.
7. idus	7	S. Midard and Gil.
6. idus	8	S. William Confessor.
5. idus	9	Translation of S. Edmund. Filician.
4. idus	10	Innocent Confessor and Onophrius.
3. idus	11	Longest day. St. Barnabas Apostle.
Pridie idus	12	S. Basil Confessor.
idus	13	S. Anthony and Filicula.
18. cal. Julii	14	S. Basil Bishop. Valerius.
17. calend.	15	S. Rowland.
16. calend.	16	Translation of S. Richard.
15. calend.	17	S. Botolph.
14. calend.	18	S. Marcelline.
13. calend.	19	S. Gervest and Pro.
12. calend.	20	Translation of S. Edward. Silverius.
11. calend.	21	Walburge Virgin. *
10. calend.	22	Alban Martyr.
9. calend.	23	Andre. a Fast day. and Etheldred.
8. calend.	24	S. John Baptists Nativity.
7. calend.	25	Translation of S. Elegi
6. calend.	26	S. John and Paul.
5. calend.	27	S. Crescent Martyr, and 7 Sleepers.
4. calend.	28	S. Leo Bishop, a Fasting day.
3. calend.	29	S. Peter and Paul Apostles.
Pridie Julii	30	Conversion of S. Paul.

Bad and Evil days in this Month are the 4, 7, 10, 16. but the Jews say that the 4, and 7, are only unfortunate.

This the Jews call the 4 Month, or the Month *Tamnuz*; it is not any where named in Scripture. The *Romans* call it *Junius* and *Junonium*, from *Juno* a Heathen Goddess.

July hath XXXI. days.

Calend. Julii	1	Octaves of St. John Baptist.
6. nonas	2	Visitation of our Lady.
5. nonas	3	Transl. S. Tho. Ap. S. Landfranc. Bp.
4. nonas	4	Translation of S. Martyn.
3. nonas	5	S. Zoe Virgin and Martyr.
Pridie nonas	6	Octaves of St. Peter.
Nonas Julii	7	Translation of S. Thomas Becket.
8. Idus	8	S. Chilianus.
7. idus	9	S. Cyrill Bishop.
6. idus	10	6 Brethren Martyred.
5. idus.	11	Translation of S. Bennet. Pius.
4. idus.	12	S. Nabor and Felix.
3. idus.	13	S. Private. Bonaventura Cardinal.
Pridie idus	14	S. Revell. Bonavent.
Idus	15	Translation of S. Swithine.
17. Cal. Aug.	16	S. Osmand.
16. calend.	17	S. Kenelme and Alexius.
15. calend.	18	S. Arnulphe Bishop. Rofina.
14. calend.	19	S. Ruffine and Justine.
13. calend.	20	S. Margaret Virgin.
12. calend.	21	S. Praxedis Virgin and Arbogast.
11. calend.	22	S. Mary Magdalen.
10. calend.	23	S. Apolin Bishop.
9. calend.	24	S. Christine Virgin, a Fast day.
8. calend.	25	S. James Apostle. S. Christopher Mar.
7. calend.	26	S. Anne. St. Vigilius Bishop.
6. calend.	27	The 7 Sleepers.
5. calend.	28	S. Sampson Bishop and Pantaleon.
4. calend.	29	S. Felix and Fellows. Beatrix. Olaus
3. calend.	30	S. Abdon and Senai. (King.
Pridie Augusti	31	S. Germane Bishop. S. Ignatius Lovola

Bad and Evil days in this Month are the 13, 20, 22. and the Jews say the 15, and 20, are only unfortunate. Also from the 19. day of *July*, to the 26. day of *August*, are called the *Canicular*, or *Canical*, or Dog-days, all which are days of great danger for any enterprise.

The Jews call this the 5 Month, and give it the name of *Ab*. The *Romans* anciently called it *Quintilis*, but afterwards in honour of *Julius Cæsar*, their first Pagan Emperour, they called it *Julius*. August

August hath XXXI. days.

Calen. Augusti	1	S. Peter in Avincula. Lammas day.
4. non.	2	S. Stephen Martyr. Moses.
3. non.	3	Invent. S. Stephen.
Prid.non.Aug.	4	S. Justin and Aristarchus.
Nonas Aug.	5	S. Oswald.
8. idus.	6	Transfiguration of Christ. Sextus.
7. idus.	7	The Feast of Jesus. S. Victrice.
6. idus	8	S. Ciriac and Socius.
5. idus	9	S. Roman Martyr.
4. idus	10	S. Laurence Martyr.
3. idus	11	S. Tyburtius Martyr.
Pridie idus	12	S. Clare Virgin.
Idus	13	S. Hipolite.
19. cal. Sep.	14	S. Eusebius.
18. calend.	15	Assumption of our Lady.
17. calend.	16	S. Roche.
16. calend.	17	Octaves of S. Laurence.
15. calend.	18	Agapite Martyr.
14. calend.	19	S. Magnus.
13. calend.	20	S. Lewes. S. Bernard Abbot.
12. calend.	21	S. Barnard. S. Augustin Bishop.
11. calend.	22	Octaves Assumption of our Lady.
10. calend.	23	S. Timothy.
9. calend.	24	S. Bartholomew the Apostle.
8. calend.	25	S. Lewis King.
7. calend.	26	S. Ireneus and Severine Martyrs.
6. calend.	27	S. Ruffe Martyr.
5. calend.	28	S. Augustine.
4. calend.	29	Beheading of S. John Baptist.
3. calend.	30	S. Felix Presbiter and Audact.
Prid. cal. Sept.	31	S. Cuthburge Virgin.

Bad and Evil days in this Month are the 19. 20.

The *Jews* call this the 6 Month, and name it *Elul*, *Neh.* 6. 15. the *Romans* of old called it *Sextilis*, but afterwards in favour of *Augustus Cæsar*, the second Heathen Emperour, it was named *Augustus*.

September hath XXX. days.

Calend. Sept.	1	St. Egidius.
4. nonas	2	S. Anthony and Veronica.
3. nonas	3	S. Gregory. Serapia.
Prid. non.Sept.	4	Transl. S. Cuthbert & S.Theodosia.
Nonas Sept.	5	S. Bertine. Zacharias. Martine.
8. idus	6	S. Eugenius and Magnus.
7. idus	7	S. Gorgan.
6. idus	8	Nativity of our Lady.
5. idus	9	S. Silvious and Gorgon.
4. idus	10	S. Prothy and Jacinet. Hilarius.
3. idus	11	S. Martian and Felix.
Pridie idus	12	S. Maurily and Guidon.
Idus Sept.	13	S. Amancio.
18. cal. Oct.	14	Exaltation of the Holy Cross.
17. calend.	15	Octaves of our Lady Mary. Nicodemus.
16. calend.	16	S. Edith and Euphemia.
15. calend.	17	S. Lambart.
14. calend.	18	S. Victor and Fereoldus.
13. calend.	19	S. Januarius Martyr.
12. calend.	20	S. Eustatius and Faustas.
11. calend.	21	S. Matthew the Apostle.
10. calend.	22	S. Maurice.
9. calend.	23	S. Teole Virgin. Esdras.
8. calend.	24	S. Androche Martyr. Samuel.
7. calend.	25	S. Firminus Martyr and Cleophas.
6. calend.	26	S. Cyprian and Justine.
5. calend.	27	S. Cosmin and Damian.
4. calend.	28	S. Erenpere or Exupera.
3. calend.	29	S. Michael the Archangel.
Pridie cal. Oct	30	S. Jerome, or Hierom.

Bad and Evil days in this Month are the 3, 6, 7, 21, but *Erra Pater* the Jew saith only the 6, 7, are cross.

This the Jews call the 7 Month, or the Month *Ethanim*, and also *Tisri*, 1 *Kings* 8. 2. *Levit.* 23. 34. New Wine being then, *Deut.* 16. 13. The *Romans* call it *September*, from *septem* seven, being the seventh from *March*, and *Imber* Rain.

October hath XXXI. days.

Calen. Octob.	1	S. Remigius Bishop.
6. nonas	2	S. Leodegar.
5. nonas	3	S. Candidus Martyr, and Maximian.
4. nonas	4	S. Francis Confessor.
3. nonas	5	S. Apolinarius. Constane.
prid.non.Octo	6	S. Faith.
Nonas Octob.	7	S. Marcus and Marcell. Sergius.
8. Idus	8	S. Pelagus.
7. idus	9	S. Dionice or Dionisius, or Denice.
6. idus	10	S. Gedeon and Victor.
5. idus.	11	S. Nicasius. Burchard.
4. idus.	12	S. Wilfride Virgin.
3. idus.	13	Translation of S. Edward.
Pridie idus	14	S. Calix.
Idus	15	S. Wolfran and Hedwig.
17. Cal. Nov.	16	S.Mich. in the Mount.Gallus.Wolfr.
16. calend.	17	Translation of S. Etheld. Florentius.
15. calend.	18	St. Luke the Evangelist.
14. calend.	19	S. Prideswide Virgin. Ptolomy.
13. calend.	20	S. Austrebert Virgin.
12. calend.	21	11 Martyrs Virgins. Ursula.
11. calend.	22	S. Mary Salome. Cordula.
10. calend.	23	S. Maglory. Beverius. Sever.Boethius.
9. calend.	24	S. Crispin and Crispiana. Salome.
8. calend.	25	Translation of S. John.
7. calend.	26	S. Ursula and Amandus.
6. calend.	27	S. Florence, a Fast day.
5. calend.	28	S. Simon and Jude the Apostles.
4. calend.	29	S. Narcissus Bishop.
3. calend.	30	S. Germane Bishop, and Theonestus.
Pridie Nov.	31	S.Quintine and Wolfgang.a Fast day.

Bad and Evil days in this Month are the 3, 7, 22. 25, but the Jew saith there is only the 6. an evil day.

The Jews call this the 8 Month, and give it the name of *Bul*, and also by *Marheshuan*, 1 *King.* 6. 38. The *Romans* call it *October*, as being the eighth Month from *March*, and eighth from the delivery out of *Egypt*, *Exod.* 12. 2.

November

November hath XXX. Days.

calend. Nov.	1	All Saints Day.
4 nonas	2	All Souls Day.
3. nonas	3	Winifride Virgin. Theophilus.
prid.non.Nov.	4	S. Amantius. Pierius.
nonas Nov.	5	S Lete Priest, and S. Richard.
8. idus	6	St. Leonard.
7. idus	7	S. Wilfrid Archbishop. Florentius.
6. idus	8	S. Claudius. Quatuor Corona.
5. idus	9	S. Theodore Martyr.
4 idus	10	S. Martin Bishop of K. Erastus.
3. idus	11	S. Martyn Bishop in Winter.
prid. idus	12	S. Paternie.
Idus Novemb.	13	S. Brice.
18. cal.Decem.	14	Translation of S. Erkin. Frederick.
17 calend.	15	S. Machute and Leopoldus.
16. calend.	16	S. Edmund Archbishop.
15. calend.	17	S.Avianus.S.Gregory Thaumaturgus
14 calend.	18	Oct.S.Martin.Gelasius. Martlemaile.
13. calend.	19	S. Elizabeth.
12 calend.	20	S. Edmund King. Agapite.
11. calend.	21	Presentation of Lady Mary.
10. calend.	22	S. Cicely Virgin.
9. calend.	23	S. Clement Pope and Martyr.
8. calend.	24	S. Chrisogonus Martyr.
7. calend.	25	S. Katherine Virgin.
6. calend.	26	S. Lyne and Conrade.
5. calend.	27	S. Agricola.
4 calend.	28	S. Ruffus and Thomas.
3. calend.	29	S. Saturn. a Fast.
prid. cal. Dec.	30	S. Andrew the Apostle.

Bad and Evil Days in this Month are the 5, 15, 19. others say only the 5, 19.

This Month by the *Jews*, is called *Kisleu*, or the 9 Month, as *Zech.* 7. 1. from *Kesil*, it bringeth Tempests.

The *Romans* call it *November*, from *Novem*, Nine; it being the ninth Month from *March*, which is reckoned to be the first Month or beginning of the Year, and the ninth from *Egypts* Bondage, *Exod.* 13. 4.

December hath XXXI. Days.

calen.Decemb.	1	S. Loy and Eligius.
4 nonas	2	S. Liban and Candidus. Longius.
3. nonas	3	Deposition of S.Osmond. Cassianus.
prid. non.Dec.	4	S. Barbara Virgin.
nonas Dec.	5	S. Saba Abbot, or Sabine.
8. idus	6	S. Nicholas Bishop.
7. idus	7	Octaves of S. Andrew.S.Ambrose Bp.
6. idus	8	Conception of our Lady.
5. idus	9	S. Cyprian Abbot. Joachim.
4 idus	10	S. Galalia Virgin, or Euralia.
3. idus	11	S. Damassin. Zintippa.
prid. idus	12	S.Paul Bishop in Winter.Epimachius.
idus Dec.	13	Lucie Virgin. Shortest day.
19 cal. Jan.	14	S.Othlie Virgin. Valerian.Nichasius.
18. calend.	15	S. Valery Bishop.
17. calend.	16	S. O. Sapientia.
16. calend.	17	S. Lazarus Bishop.
15. calend.	18	S. Gracian Bishop. S. Christopher.
14. calend.	19	S. Venium, or Venetius.
13. calend.	20	S. Julian, a Fasting day. Ignatius.
12. calend.	21	S. Thomas the Apostle.
11. calend.	22	30 Martyrs.
10. calend.	23	S. Victor Virgin.
9. calend.	24	S. Claudy, a Fast day.
8. calend.	25	Nativity Jesus Christ. Christmas day.
7. calend.	26	St. Stephen the Protho-Martyr.
6. calend.	27	S. John the Evangelist.
5. calend.	28	Innocents day.
4. calend.	29	S. Thomas of Canterbury.
3. calend.	30	Translation S. James. S.David King.
prid. cal. Jan.	31	S. Silvester Bishop.

The Vigil of any of these foresaid Feast days, is the evening before the said day.

Bad and Evil days in this Month are the 6, 7, 9, 22. but the Jew saith the 6, 7, 11. others say the 15, 16.

The Jews call this Month *Tebeth* or *Tobath*, the 10 Month, as it is in *Esther* 2. 16.

The *Romans* call it *December*, as being the 10 Month from *March*.

Halcyon days, *Dies Halcyonii*, days of rest and quietness, free from Storms and Tempests.

Climacterical Years, are the remarkable degrees, or great Steps, whereby Mans Life ascends or mounts to its appointed Period; and are some certain years which are usually attended with some great Mutation or Fortune, as the 7 year of a Mans Age, the 21 year, which is 3 times 7; the 49 year, which is 7 times 7; the 63 year, which is 9 times 7; and the 81 year, which is 9 times 9; which two last are called the grand Climacterical years; in which many famous Men havee been observed to Die.

In these Western parts of the World, are two accounts of the Years and Days, the first is the **Julian** account, so called from *Julius Cæsar*, who 40 years before the Birth of Christ observed then the falseness of the Account then in use, ordained the year to consist of 365 days and six hours, which six hours in four years made a day civil, which every 4 year was added to the end of *February*, which made that year to consist of 366 days, and was called the Bissextile or Leap Year, because the sixth of the Calends of *March* was twice written, which was called the Intercalation. This Account was and is still accepted by the Old English and us at this time; yet Pope *Gregory* by the advice and direction of *Antonius Lilius*, and other excellent Mathematicians in the year of Christ, 1582. corrected the Calendar, making the year to consist of 365 days, 5 hours 49 minutes, 12 seconds; and that the Vernal Equinox, which then was on *March* the 11, might be reduced to *March* 21, as it was at the time of the first *Nicene* Council; he commanded 10 days in *October* to be left out, *viz.* from the 4 to the 14, so as the 4 day of the Month was accounted the 14: Hence it comes to pass, that the new Foreign *Lillian* or *Gregorian* Account, is both in Festivals and all other Month days accounted 10 days before the old *English* or *Julian* Account.

A way to find what day of the Month every first Sabbath day is, by two Verses, knowing the Dominical Letter.

At Dover Dwells, George Brown Esquire,
Gr. at Christopher Finch, And David Frier.

Or thus,

All Do Die, God, Bad, End,
Get Christ First, A Dear Friend. } *Ric. Blackbourn, fecit.*

Now, I would know what day of the Month the first Sabbath day is in *October* 1687. Dominical Letter B.

First I count what Month it is in the Year, and find it the 10; then I run over my Verses till I come to the 10 Word which is *And*, which begins with *A*, and is the Letter for the first day of that 10 Month.

Then count all the Dominical Letters as they ly in Order, beginning with A, till you come to the Dominical Letter of the year, which is B. *viz. a, b, c, d, e, f, g,* and as many as it is to the said Dominical Letter, so many days in that Month is the first Sabbath day, *viz.* the second of *October*.

Again, I would know what day the first Sabbath day is in *August* 1688. the Dominicals AG. being a Leap-Year.

First note in every Bissextile or Leap year hath a double Dominical Letter, the first for *January*, and to *February* the 25 only; the second for the remaining part of the year: All other years there is but one single Letter.

Therefore in the Leap Year for these two Months take the first Dominical; and for *February* by the Verses you find that the first Letter ascribed to that Month begins with *d*; so count through all the Dominical Letters till you come successively to A; and that is the day of the Month for the first Sunday in *February*, viz. *d, e, f, g, a,* which is the fifth day.

Again, I would know what day of the Month the first Sabbath in *August* 1688. it being a Leap Year, and the Dominical Letters AG.

First, I count what Month it is in the year, and find it the 8; then I repeat my Verses till I come to the 8 word, which is *Christopher* or *Christ*; so *C* being the first Letter for *Christopher*, is the first Letter for the first day of the 8 Month *August*.

Then I count all the Dominical Letters in order, beginning with *c, viz. c, d, e, f, g,* till you come to the Dominical Letter for the year; and as many as it is to the said G, so many days in that Month is the first Sabbath, *viz.* the 5 day. So having the first Sunday in the Month, it is easie to know all the days of the Month after, reckoning from Sabbath to Sabbath.

*

Geometry.

The Noble Art and Science of **Geometry** or **Measuring the Earth**, is described by a Man or Woman in loose Garments (or as the Painter pleaseth) with Compasses in their hands, measuring the Terrestial Globe, with other sorts of Joyners, Masons and Carpenters Instruments of Working lying on the Ground, or laid on Tables, with Books and such like things; shewing thereby, that without Geometry no work can be brought to perfection, or have its due form and proportion; all Arts and Manual Occupations wholly depending upon it: Nevertheless, in this place I shall pass over all other Arts and Sciences which are and may be comprehended under this term Geometry, and only say so much in it, with the terms, as is usefull about the measuring of Land.

Terms or Names given to several parcels of Land according to their largeness, Alphabetically.

Acre, is a certain quantity of Land 40 Perches long, and 4 broad, or to that quantity, be the length or breadth more or less; and others write that 160 Perches square, makes but an Acre.

Butt, is half the quantity of a **Lon**.

Bovatt of Land, is as much as 15 Acres, in some places 20 Acres.

Barony in **Land**, is 20 Knights Fees, each Fee containing 680 Acres of Land.

Barly Corn, is the length of 4 Poppy seeds, and 3 Corns make an Inch or a Thumbs breadth.

Carucate of land, or **Carve** of Land, is a Plow Land, and contains as much Land as may be Tilled and Laboured in a Year and a Day with one Plough; it is also called a **Hyde of Land**.

Cubit, is the length of the Arm from the Finger end to the Elbow; of some termed a **Cube**, or **Ell**, being counted in exact measure half a Yard, or two Spans.

Ell, is three foot nine inches in length, or a yard and a quarter.

Earth, the whole massy Globe is said to be 21600 miles in compass; but the thickness of it is no more than 6873 miles.

Farundell, or **Fardingdale**, or a **Farthendell** of Land; it is the fourth part of an Acree.

Furlong, is a quantity of ground, containing 20 **Lugs** or **Poles** in length, and every Pole 16 foot and an half; eight of which Furlongs makes a Mile.

Fathom, is 5 foot, or as much as a Man can reach by extending both his Arms; some say 7 foot; the Sea men say 2 yards.

Foot, is 12 Inches in measure; three foot makes a yard.

Fall of Land, is six Ells long and six broad is a superficial Fall of measured land; otherwise a Fall is a lineal or line measure of 6 Ells long.

Furrow,

Furrow, is as much as the Plow turneth up at a time, which may be broader or narrower as the Plowman pleaseth.

Fingers breadth contains 2 Barley corns long, or 4 broad laid side to side.

Headland, see **Selion**; it is the end of the Buts which the Plow in Plowing turneth upon.

Hide of Land, it containeth an 100 Acres of Land, some places make 160 Acres go for a Hide.

Hand Breadth, two make a Span in a true proportioned Man; otherwise 3 inches is taken for the lesser Hands breadth. See **Span.**

Inch, is the breadth of 3 Barley Corns measured from end to end; 144 square inches makes a square foot, 12 inches make a foot in length.

Knights Fee in Land, anciently contained 8 Carucates, or 680 Acres of Land; of some 800 Acres.

Land, or **Lond**, or **Launde**, in some places called a **Loone**, it is as much as two large Buts.

League, is Sea measure, and is 3 Mile in length.

Lugg, the same to Pole.

Mile in *England* is 8 Furlongs, every Furlong 40 Perches, every Perch 16 foot and a half, which is more than the *Italian* Mile by 56 Paces; but our ordinary Miles exceed both the *Italian* and true *English* Mile.

Nail of a Yard, is 2 inches and a quarter, which is the 16 part of a yard.

Or-gang of Land, or an **Or-gate**, is 13 acres; of some it consists of 15 Acres; see **Bovate.**

Pearch, or **Perch** of Land, is 16 foot and a half long; some say 8, others 7 yards makes a Perch, and 49 a Perch square.

Pole, is the same to Perch, some say 40 makes but a furlong.

Pick of Land, is a parcel of Land that runs into a corner, containing half a Land.

Pace, is five foot, so that 100 Paces makes an *Italian* mile; but our *English* Pace is but 3 foot; see **Step.**

Plowland, is deemed to be the same in quantity as a Knights Fee; or as much as a Plough can Plow up in a Year, *viz.* 120 Acres.

Quarter of a Yard, is the 4 part of a yard, or 9 Inches in length.

Rood, is the 4 part of an Acre; a Rood in length is taken to be 8 yards; but a Rood of Land is as aforesaid 10 **Fall** in length, and 4 in breadth.

Rod, see **Perch**, it is a Staff or Pole of Wood to measure Land withal, of 16 foot and a half long; but a Geometrick Rod or Gad, is but 10 foot, and in some places but 9 foot.

Raipe, is the same to Fall, or Rod.

Ree-an, is the distance between two Butts.

Selion of Land, is no certain quantity, it sometimes contains an Acre, sometimes half, sometimes more or less, it is taken for a ridge of Land lying between two Furrows.

Span, is as much as can be measured from the end of the Thumb to the end of the middle or little Finger extended, and is in a true proportioned Man taken to be a quarter of a Yard; yet in Geometrick measure 3 hands breadth or 9 inches is reckoned for a Span: This is termed the **greater Hands breadth.**

Step, or the lesser Pace, which is two foot and an half; termed also a **Pace.**

Stride, or the greater Pace, which is 2 Steps or 5 Foot; from these the *Romans* counted their Mile, that is *Mille Passus*, a Thousand Paces, but our *English* Mile is 56 Paces more.

Virge, or **Virgate of Land** is 20 Acres, in some places 24 Acres, and in some 30 Acres.

Wareland, it is as much Land as containeth three Lands.

Yardland is the same to Virgate, and containeth 24 or 30 Acres.

Yard, is a Staff to measure by, which is three foot in length.

Geometrical Terms for their Plots, Figures, with their particular Compositions or Lines.

The **Doctrine of Projects**, is the knowledg of making a Figure.

Difinition, is a brief explanation of the Names and Terms.

A **Proposition**, is a Sentence propounded or set forth to be proved by reasoning and demonstrations.

Axioms, are Sentences so true that they cannot manifestly be contradicted.

The **Impetus**, is a natural and movable falling Line, a perpendicular or straight down Line: as let the **Impetus** be given, the meaning is, that the same be given so much as is required to throw the **Project** from its first point, to the highest Perpendicular point.

Petitions, are clear and intelligable demands.

A **Semicircle**, is a half round.

A **Tangent**, is a three cornered Figure, one side being circular, made by Lines touching or crossing one another in a Figure.

A **Parabola**, is the bending Line of the **Tangent.**

Lemma, is an Argument or Reason by which such a thing is prooted.

Vertex, a Turning Circle, a Vertical Round, see **Azimuth**; by it is ment principally the point in Heaven just over our Heads, perpendicular to the place where any one liveth. This point the *Arabians* call **Zenith.**

Amplitude, the largness of a Project, or Figure.

Machine, or form of a Figure made by Engine, or Instrument, or any other Frame or Tool.

Semi-Diameter, the half of the middle of a Circle, or half the Diameter.

Semi-Right,

Problem, is a Proposition or Sentence proposed, with a question annexed: in the *Mathematicks* it is opposite to **Theorm**, and signifie such a proposition as is referred to practise, or doing something.

Sines, or **Sine**; is the widness between two crooked Lines; hence *Geometricians* call the Halves of a Chords or Right Lines which shuts up the Cavity of an Arch, **Sines.**

Sublimities, the heights or highness of things.

Degrees, a Degree in *Astronomy* and *Geography* is sixty *English* Miles: though some hold that one Degree in Heaven, is sixty nine Miles on Earth.

Minutes, is the sixtith part of a Degree, and each Minute divided into sixty more, are called **Seconds,** and so to thirds, fourths, fifths, *&c.*

Superficies, is the plain of a Figure, all the Circumference or Square, with the Diameter, or Diagonal Lines in them: It hath length and breadth without depth. The **Surface** of a Figure.

Peripheria, a Circumference, or a Winding or going about.

Area of a Circle, is four times as much as the Circle: for multiply the Circle by four, and that is the **Area,** or Ground-Plot, or Compass of it: or as others describe it, a Triangle rectangle from the Circumference and Radius is the **Area** of a Circle; or from the whole Diameter and Semicircle, is the said **Area.**

Area of a Semicircle, is the plain of the Circle, or is from the Radius the fourth part of the Circle: a **Quandrant.**

Area Sectoris, is from the Radius and half of the base: it contains the half and the fourth part of the other half of a Circle: Note that as near as fourteen is to eleven, so the square of a Diameter is to the **Area** of a Circle. *Qia ratum* 14 *est* 196. *quo per* 11 *Multiplicato fit* 2156. *quo Diviso per* 14 *quotus est Area Circuli.*

Geometrical Conclusions, are such works as are brought to pass through that Art: **Propositions** of *Geometry.*

Theorines, or **Theoremes;** are the Proofs and Demonstrations of all *Geometrical* Works, or approved Truths in *Geometry:* a principal or undoubted rule in any Science or Art, it respects contemplation more then practice.

Scale, is taken to be parts divided in an Instrument, by which we measure a plate Form, according to the fixing of it for Degrees, Miles, Feet, or Inches.

Fractions, is the breaking or bursting of Figures or Measures into parts, or small fragments.

Radix, the Root, or square Root, or bottom of a thing.

Tabula, Table, places in which Figures are made.

Columes, or rows downwards of Figures: or things divided into parts.

Geometrical Terms used in Surveying and Measuring of Lands.

Geometry, is to search out the Magnitude of things, and to give the true estimate of its Measure in height, breadth, and depth.

Geodesia, or measuring of Land.

Mathematicks, is an Art that contains **Arithmetick** for Number, **Geometry** for Measure, and **Staticks** for Weight.

Survey, is that by which a Graphical description of a place is set forth.

Graphick, Graphical; is the Art of Portrature, or [illegible] be made: to set down the

Geography, (Geographer) is the description (or such a Person) as Writs the description of the Earth.

Feudigrapher, is a Surveyor of Farmes and Freehold Lands.

Symboligraphie, is the Clerkship or Penning of a Survey.

Speculator, is the Persons measuring: the diligent practizer of Survey.

Apomecometrie, is an Art teaching how to measure things at a distance, *viz.* how far they are off from him.

Chorography, called also **Topography;** It is a part of *Geography,* which describe only particular Provinces and Kingdoms.

Mathematical Operations, is a part of Survey by which the demensions of Grounds Plots, are performed.

Mechanical Operations, is the Manual acting or projecting of the Work of Survey: the handy labour of drawing and measuring of Ground.

Operation, is the setting forth a Plot of Ground.

Estimation, the value of Lands by the Year or otherwise, the rate of possessions.

Material part, the chief or principal part of a place Surveyed.

Legal part of Survey, it prescribes the Methodical and Juridicial confines to the whole course of Survey, as the Clerkship, or Penning of the Surveyed Lands and Tenements.

Method, Methodical, the rule, way, or manner by which the Survey is performed.

Confines, are the Limits, or Bounds of places.

Juridicial, the right, true, and uncontradictory draught of a place, or a true Survey of a place with its Bounds.

Particularize, to set forth every part of the place Surveyed.

Rectifie, is to correct or mend a thing done amiss.

Graphical Description, is to Write, set down, delineat, or give the portrature of Place, Town, or Farm: the Writing of a Survey.

Essential part, is the Matter and Form coincident to Possessions.

Species, the Form, Figure or shape of the Earth, that is to be Surveyed or Measured: the kinds of Earth.

Vulgar Soil, is common Earth, as Clay, Mould, Moore, Gravel, Sand.

Commixt Soil, is Creachie, Chalkie, Slayie, Sandy Earthe,

Liquable, is Juicy, concrete or soft Earth, as Salt, Alume, Bitumen, Vitrial, Salt Armonick, Sal-Gem, Sal-Niter, and *Indian* Salt Roch.

Mollable, the same to **Liquable.**

Unmollable, Earth not to be melted, Earth indurated into Stone, or Mettles.

Situation, the seat of a place either to its Goodness, or Badness.

Crust, is the upper Soil, or Soal of the Earth.

Habitude of the Earth, is the temperature of the same in respect of Heat, Cold, Moisture, or Dryness: whether it be Light, Loose, Fat, Oylie, Sliperie, Barren, Fertile, Wateric, or Soal-bound.

Base

Base of the Earth, is the Bowels of the Earth, whether it be Quarries, or Mines.

Perveſtigate, is to ſeek out, or diligently to obſerve a thing.

Content, is the compaſs and greatneſs of a thing, and what it contains in meaſure.

Craſſitude, the bulk or thickneſs of a thing.

Cubical Bodies, all ſolid things of Timber, or Stone, or Globes.

Flat Superficies, things of length and breadth, but no thickneſs, to be meaſured: **Flat Meaſure.**

Product of the Earth, what the Earth brings fourth, as Trees, Plants, Shrubs, Grain, Graſs, Herbs, Weeds, Moſſe, and other Vegitables.

Comorant, confined kept within Bounds.

Tranſient, a paſſing behind the Bounds.

Temperature of Ayr, as Pellucide, Mild, Subtil, Clear, Sweet, Pleaſant, Hot, Cold, Healthful, or contrarywiſe, Groſſe, Cloſe, Foggie, Sharp, Fenny, Vaporous, Unwholſome.

Ground Plots, are projectures and all Fundamental contrivances of things, and they are either Internal, as Vaults, Cellars, Caves, Sinks, *&c.* or External, as Groves, Harbours, Bowers, Manſion-Houſes, Allies, Mazes, Cock-Pits, Bowling-Greens, Moats, Ponds, Drains, Dames, and Sluces: the **Tricking** and **Delineating** of **Lands.**

Boundage, a deſcribing of Plots of Ground according to its Limits and Meres.

Meres, ſee **Boundage.**

Confrontage, is an abuting, heading, or facing ſuch and ſuch a place.

Collaterage, is Siding, Furrowing, Hedging, Girding, Bordering, Lying, Bounding, Extending between ſuch places.

Compound Boundage, ſignifies a Side-haying, as Bounded, Limitted, Compaſſed, Included, Terminated.

Remote Boundage, when the Plot is intercepted, or cut off by reaſon of the interpoſition of ſome Meere, Rile, Lane, *&c.*

Coaſtage, is the deſciphering of the Plot as it lies Eaſt, Weſt, *&c.*

Plot, ſee **Ground-Plots.**

Neighbourage, is the ſhewing how the Plot is accommodated with Wood, Water, Fewel, Fiſh, Fowl, Mannours, Lordſhips, Meadows, Paſtures, *&c.*

Confinage, is the competent diſtant of Cities, Towns, Ports, Havens, Seas, Forreſts, Waſts, Moores, Quarries, Mines, *&c.*

Proportion, it conſiſts in the general Model, and particular Modulets of the Plot.

Menſuration, is the Lineal extention of the Plot, the Meaſure of the Ground in length, breadth and circumference, *&c.*

Wadding, keeping in a right Line.

Calculation, the giving of an account or ſumme of a thing required.

Projection, the jutting or going out of a thing.

Delineation, the pourtraying or drawing of the Plot.

Magnitude, the greatneſs of a thing.

Geometrical Lines.

A **Point,** the Prick of a Pin or Pen.

A **Line,** a ſtraight Line, or a crooked Line, a mixt or compoſed Line, a Circular Line, a Spiral Line, a Livel Line.

A **Double Line, Parallel Lines, Oblique Lines, Perpendicular Lines.**

An **Angle,** a ſtraight or right Angle; an acute or ſharp Angle; which is leſſer then a right Angle: an Obtuſe or blunt Angle, which is greater then a right Angle.

A **Line Finite,** is a Line bounded, that muſt keep to its length, and not exceed it.

A **Line Infinite,** is a Line that hath no preciſe length.

Traced, or **Tricked;** is a Line drawn with Pen or Pencil.

Occult, or **White Line;** is a Line drawn out by points or pricks, called alſo the pointed Line, or Line with pricks.

An **Horizontal Line,** is that which is of an equal poize, and falls neither to one ſide of the Figure, or other.

A **Diagonal Line,** is that as paſſeth through a Figure, and findeth the two Angles.

A **Diameter Line,** is that as paſſeth or traverſeth any circular Figure by the Center, and ends at the circumference.

A **Cord, Chord,** or **Subtendant Line;** is a ſtreight Line which joyns to an Arch or Bow by its ends. It divides a circle into unequal parts.

A **Tangent Line,** is that as toucheth the ſide of any Figure, and doth not in any part divide it.

A **Line Secant,** is that which traverſeth, croſſeth or divideth any Figure.

Azimuth, or **Aziminths;** great Circles meeting in the Zenith, or Vertical point, paſſing through all the Degrees of the Horizon Line.

Geometrical Figures.

A **Circle,** a round or circumference.

A **Semi-Circle,** an half round.

A **Quandrant,** a quarter of a round.

The **Center,** is the point in the middle of a round.

The **Radius of a Circle,** is the diſtance from the Center to the circumference, or out ſide of the circle. The **Aris.**

The **Diameter,** the breadth of the Circle from ſide to ſide through the Center: It is the third part of the circle, as near as 3 times 7 is to 22.

The **Sector,** is either a ſingle or double Line, or ſuch as are made ſquare within a circle either over or under, or beſides the Center.

An **Oval,** an Eclipſe, or Egg Oval.

A **Concentrical Figure,** an excentrical Figure or Circle, or Oval.

A **Triangle,** an acute, or right triangled, a Triangle obtuſe Angled.

A **Quaterangle,** a ſquare or right four ſquare, an oblong

long square, a **Parallelogram**, a **Rombus** or **Losseng Square.**

The **Diagonal Line**, is the Line that goes from corner to corner of any square or cornered Figure, whether it run traverse, oblique, or perpendicular.

Geometrical Solid Bodies.

An **Dybe**, a **Globe** or **Sphear**, the **Convex**, the **Concave.**

A **Cylinder**, a **Turbe**, a **Cone** or **Conick.**

A **Cube**, a **Piramid**, or **Tetrahedron**, a **Pentagonal Piramide**, an **Hexahedron**, an **Octahedron**, : Balls of six or eight Triangles.

Icosahedron, and **Polyhedron**: are Balls or rounds of twenty Triangles, and many trigons upon them.

But of these Geometrical Lines, Figures and Solid Bodies: I have given the same to view in *chap.* 9. after *num.* 69. where you may see the Terms explained.

Arithmetick.

It is one of the seven Liberal Sciences, and is that by which a multitude of Unities is drawn up into a certain Number: **Arithmetick** diligently setteth, and seeketh out the reason of Numbers. And is described by a Man in loose Vestments according to the old mode, with Tables full of numeral Figures, with Pen or Pencil in hand Books about them, *&c.*

The *Jews* and *Hebrews* used their Alphabet Letters to express their numbers, which they divide into three Classes whereof every one contains 9 Letters, the first are the Scales or Marks of simple Numbers, as

9.	8.	7.	6.	5.	4.	3.	2.	1.
ט	ח	ז	ו	ה	ד	ג	ב	א

The second hath the Marks or Numbers of Tens, as

90.	80.	70.	60.	50.	40.	30.	20	10.
צ	פ	ע	ס	נ	מ	ל	כ	י

And the third hath the other 4 Letters, with the 5 final Letters, or such as end words, which are longer and deeper then ordinary, which are marks of Hundreds, as

900.	800.	700.	600.	500	400.	300.	200.	100.
ץ	ת	ש	ר	ק	ם	ן	ך	ק

Now every one of them if they be Marked with Great Characters signifies so many Thousands, as ג 3000. כ 2000. א 1000. *&c.* Yet there are some which do not use those final or ending Letters, but instead of them Write the Letters which stand for 100. and 400. for the Number Five Hundred, 200. with 400. for Six Hundred, 300. with 400. for Seven Hundred, 400. and 400. for Eight Hundred, and 100. 400. and 400. for Nine Hundred, & the great Aleph for 1000. as aforesaid.

The *Grecians* Numeral Notes or Marks were no other then the Letters of their Alphabet: as,

[ ]

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.	6.	7.	8.	9.	10.	11.	12.
α	β	γ	δ	ε	ζ	η	θ	ι	κ	λ	μ

13.	14.	15.	16.	17.	18.	19.	20.	21.	22.	23.	24.
ν	ξ	ο	π	ρ	σ	τ	υ	φ	χ	ψ	ω

And this is the first Order of Numbers amongst the *Greeks*. Secondly, the *Greeks* divide the whole Alphabet into three Classes, after the imitation of the *Hebrews*. Now because their Alphabet wants by rule three Letters, it is necessary to add to them three figures, and to interlace them with the Letters by which they explain the sixt, the ninetieth, and the nine hundred, as is manifest in the following Classes.

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.	6.	7.	8.	9.	10.	20.	30.	40.	50.	60.
A	B	Γ	Δ	E	ϛ	Z	H	Θ	I	K	Λ	M	N	Ξ

70.	80.	90.	100.	200.	300.	400.	500.	600.	700.	800.	900
O	Π	ϟ	P	Σ	T	Υ	Φ	X	Ψ	Ω	ϡ

Now if to any of these Letters there be subscribed the stroak of an Acute-tone, or a Comma at the foot, then it signifies so many thousands as the Letter stands for: as in these. A, 1000. I, 10000. P, 100000. And so in others.

But in after ages they from the example of the *Latins* used only Six Letters to signifie their numbers, by which any Sum in Arithmetick may be expressed. as I for 1. ⊓ for 5. △ for 10. H for 100. X for 1000. Where note that △. H. X. M. in the middle of the Letter ⊓ signifies five times more then that Numeral Letter stands for, as 50. 500. 5000. 50000. As for Example, X |H̄| H |△̄| △ ⊓ II which is 1667.

The *Romans* made use of seven Letters of their Alphabet which were, I. V. X. L. C. D. M. by which they expressed any Number as I have more fully shewed in *chap.* 10. after *numb.* 1.

The *Arabians* ingeniously found out ten Characters, Ciphers by which the most numerous things that are, even the sands of the Sea may be expressed, which were these, 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 0. every one of these Figures are termed signifying Figures, and hath his one value, as one, two, three, *&c.* being singly and found alone, or in the first place of any summe.

In the second place it signifieth its one value ten times as 70. seven times ten, which is seventy.

In the third place it signifieth a Hundred times its one value as 700. seven times a Hundred, which is seven hundred.

In the fourth place it signifieth its own value a thousand times, as 7000, seven times a thousand, which is seven thousand.

In the fifth place, it signifieth its own value ten thousand times, as 60000 is six times ten thousand, which in Arithmetick is sixty thousand.

In the sixth place it signifieth its own value a hundred thousand times, as 500000 which is five times a hundred thousand, that is five hundred thousand.

In the seventh place it signifies its own value a thousand thousand times, or a Million; as, 4000000, which is four thousand thousand, or four millions.

In the eight place it signifieth its own value ten thousand thousand, or ten millions of times, as 30000000 is three times ten thousand thousand, or ten times three millions, which is thirty millions, or thirty thousand thousand. In

In the ninth place it signifieth its own value a hundred thousand thousand, or a hundred millions of times, as 900000000 is nine times a hundred millions, which is in account nine hundred millions.

In the tenth place it signifieth its own value a thousand thousand thousand of times, or a thousand millions of millions of times, as 3000000000, is three times a thousand millions, that is three thousand millions of millions.

And so every place towards the left hand exceeds the former ten times; which for the more ready way to understand, and summ up any number, here followeth a brief rehearsal of the order and denomination of the places of Figures, which is sufficient for Numeration.

Tenth	Ninth	Eighth	Seventh	Sixth	Fifth	Fourth	Third	Second	First
4	3	2	1	0	1	8	3	4	5
Millions	Tens of Millions	Hundreds of Millions	Thousands of Millions	Thousands	Tens of Thousands	Hundreds of Thousands	Tens	Hundreds	Unites

The Order of Places.

The Denominations of their places.

So that to reckon up this number, it doth consist of Four Thousand Three Hundred Twenty One Millions, Eighteen Thousand, Three Hundred Forty Five.

But Country People and Farmers, reckon or count their numbers more simply: by Pairs, half Scores or Tens, Dozens or Twelves, and Scores or Twenty's.

At length a way was found out to cast up any summe by Counters, which was by four even Lines running Parallel on the lower Line, were Counters laid for Unites, or any summe not exceeding Ten: on the second Line or next to the lowest was Counters laid for Tens; the third Line Counters for Hundreds; and the highest Line for Thousands: as for Example,

Where Note, that every Counter set between the Lines signifies Five more then the Line of Number it stands over, and Five times short of that Number of that Line it is under.

So that to summe up this Number it is just Three Thousand, Eight Hundred, Ninty Eight.

Terms used in Arithmetick.

Arithmetick, is the Art of Numeration, the way of Numbering.

An **Unite,** it is properly no Number, but the original or beginning of Number.

Numerations, is that part of Arithmetick whereby one way rightly Value, Express, and Write any Number or summe propounded.

The **Characters of Numbers,** are these 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 by which any Number may be expressed.

A **Number,** is a multitude of Unites put together.

An **Even Number,** is such a Number as can be divided into two equal parts, as 2. 4. 6. 8.

An **Odd Number,** is such as cannot be diivided equally, as 3. 5. 7. 9.

A **Fraction** in a Number, is when a Number is broken, as one and an half. } 1. $\frac{1}{2}$

A **Place of a Figure,** is the Seat or Room, that a Figure stands in: so many Figures as are in a summe, so many places hath the whole Value thereof.

A **Dyget Number,** is all manner of Numbers under 10.

An **Article Number,** is any kind of Number which beginneth with a Cypher thus, 10. 20. 30. 40. 50. 100. and all such like, these are ever divided just by Tens.

A **Mixt** or **Compound Number,** is a Number consisting of diverse Digets, or Articles and Digets joyned together, as 11. 12. 13. 19. 22. 108. 1007.

A **Cipher,** is no certain Number, but by adding it to any Figure it signifies Ten times, a Hundred times, a Thousand times the value of the Figure, as 10. 100. 1000. This is a Cipher, 0.

A **Figure,** is a certain Character expressing a certain Number, which are Nine in the whole: as 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9.

Addition, is as much as to bring together one, two, three, or more Summs into one intire Number, or Sum.

Substraction, sheweth how to abate, or take a less Summe out of a greater, and what there doth remain. Now in **Substraction** there are three Numbers: as,

The **Number for Substraction,** is the Number which hath a part taken from it.

The **Number Substracted,** is the Number taken out.

The **Number Remaining,** is that as is left of the greater Summ, the lesser being taken out.

Multiplication, is a Rule to shew the Number or Summ of several Figures joyned together, having another Number so many times over added to it, as to know how much 7 times 96. or 123 times 648. or such Numbers, doth amount unto.

The **Multiplicands,** is the Number to be Multiplied.

The **Multiplier** or **Multiplicator,** is the Number by which the Summ is Multiplied: which is usually the lesser Number.

The **Product,** is the Summ which cometh of the Multiplication of the one by the other.

Division or **Partition,** is a Rule to seek and find out how many times one Number doth contain another.

The **Dividende,** is the Number to be divided, and that must needs be the greater Number.

The

The **Divisor**, is the lesser Number to divide the greater.

The **Quotien**, is the Number sought for in the Division, and is the summ contained so many times the Divisor, as it self is in value.

The **Remain**, is the summ remaining of the **Quotien**, which is ever less then the Number of the Divisor.

Progression, in Arithmetick, is a brief and speedy Rule to add or summ up together diverse Figures or Numbers, every one surmounting the other by equal differences: as 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. or 2. 4. 6. 8. or else by threes. as 3. 6. 9. 12. *&c.* and so of other Numbers.

The **Proof of Addition**, or of **Substraction**, or of **Multiplication**, or of **Division**; is to know by Rule or Method whether those Summs were well made, and truly cast up.

Progression Geometrical, is when the second Summ or Number contains the first in any proportion, either two, three, or four times: and so also the third Number contains the second, and the fourth the third, and the fift the fourth, *&c.* as 2. 4. 8. 16. 32. where the proportion is double: likewise, 3. 9. 27. 81. 243. where the proportion is trible: likewise, 2. 8. 32. 128. 512. where the proportion is quadruple.

Excess in Quantity, is when the following Figure or Number exceeds its former only double, which is **Progression Arithmetical.**

Excess in Proportion of Number, is when the following Number exceeds its former, either double, trible, or fourtimes as much, which is **Progression Geometrical.**

The **Rule of three**, or the **Golden Rule**, and after others, the **Rule of Proportions of Numbers**: It requireth three Numbers in its operation, and serveth to find out unto the third Number, the fourth Number to it proportioned, in such sort as the second is proportioned to the first.

The **Stile of the Rule of three**, is the down of the three Numbers in a certain Order thus, $\left\{\begin{matrix}1\\6\end{matrix}\right. Z^{2}$ and then to multiply the 3d. Number by the second, and the product thereof divide by the first Number, (or the first Number divide by the second) and the Quotient being multiplied by the third, gives the fourth Number which you seek for.

The **Denominator of a Number**, is the Number named by which there is a Multiplication to be made, it is set under the Line of Fraction.

The **Numirator**, is the second Number by which a first is to be Numbred. And in the Line of Fraction is to be set above the Line thus - - - - - - - $\frac{1}{2}\ \frac{1}{3}\ \frac{1}{4}$ that is, one part in two, one in three, one in four.

Fractions, are broken Numbers, as one divided into 10. 100. 1000. parts.

Reduction, is to bring together, or to put in semblance two, three, or many Numbers dissembling. But more properly, it teaches one to bring great Summs or Denominations into small, and small into great.

Fractions of Fractions, are broken Numbers of broken Numbers, as two thirds of three fourths of four fifths, or termed, broken Numbers of the parts of broken Numbers thus marked or figured. $\frac{2}{3}$ of $\frac{3}{4}$ of $\frac{4}{5}$

[ ]

Reductions of whole Numbers and **Broken** together into a **Fraction**, it is to reduce whole Numbers into broken Numbers, and broken into whole.

Abbreviation, of one great Number into a lesser broken, is as much as to set down or write a broken Number by Figures of less signification and not to diminish the value thereof: as $\frac{54}{81}$ being abreviated make $\frac{2}{3}$

Addition in broken Numbers, or **Fractions**; is the gathering them up into one entire Number or Summ. And so there is **Addition of broken Numbers of broken.**

Substraction of broken Numbers, is to take out a broken Number out or from a broken: as $\frac{2}{3}$ out or from $\frac{3}{4}$ the remainder is $\frac{1}{12}$

Multiplication in broken Numbers, is a Rule whereby to multiply the Numerator of the one Fraction by the Numerator of another Fraction, and then to divide, or abbreviate it.

Division in broken Numbers, is a Rule to know how many times $\frac{2}{3}$ contained in $\frac{3}{4}$ which is 1. $\frac{1}{3}$

Duplication, or **Triplication**, or **Quadruplication of broken Numbers**, are the doubling, trebling, or making any Fraction four times as much as it is.

Proof of broken Numbers, is the Rule to find out its true casting up.

The **Rule of three in Fractions**, as the Rule of three is in whole Numbers, so this is in broken.

The **Rule of Practice**, it is also termed the **Brieve Rules** or the **small Multiplication**, because the product is alway less in quantity then the number which is to be Multiplied; and is no other then to convert lesser and particulars Summs into greater, as three shillings the piece of any thing, what shall 684 pieces cost after the same Rate. It is also in uneven parts, as Penny farthing; or Penny three farthings, *&c.*

The **Rule of three Compound**, to this Rule there belongs 4 and 5 Numbers, as if 100 Crowns in 12 Mounths gain 15 Pounds, what will 60 Crowns gain in 8 Months.

The **Double Rule**, or **Double Rule of three**, or **the Rule of three at two times**; it is a Rule of proportion which hath its Denomination from its double working: because under this Rule is comprehended diverse Rules of pural proportion.

The **Rule of Fellowship**, is to find out what proportion of gain each party shall have according to their stocks laid together, as if one laid 500 Pound, another 250. the third 380. and they have gained 126 Pounds, how much each Man shall have according to his Money laid in.

The **Rule of Fellowship with time**, is to find the true gain of one, two, or three stocks of Money laid in at several times one after the other.

The **Rule of Company** between Merchants and their Factors.

The

The **Rule of Barter**, is to shew the value of Goods upon Exchange, that each receive his due proportion.

The **Rule of Alligation**, is so named, for that it teacheth to alligate or bind together divers parcels of sundry prices, and to know how much you must take of every parcel according to the numbers of the question. It is commonly divided into two parts, **Alligation Medial**, and **Alligation Alternate.**

The **Rule of Falshood**, or false positions, not so named because it doth teach any deceit; but that by feigned numbers taken at all adventures, it teacheth to find out the true number that is demanded.

The **Rule of Equation**, is for the equality of payment according to time, and teacheth to reduce the times of several particular payments to one time for the payment of the whole summ.

The **Rule of Rebate** and **Discount**, the use is either in damage of Goods, or payment of Moneys before the time it is due.

The **Rule of Exchange**, which teacheth to pay one sort of Money in one place or Countrey, and receive in another the like value or sum, with consideration of either Loss or Gain.

The **Rule of Loss or Gain**, teacheth what is lost or gained in the buying or selling of a Commodity, as to know what is gained or lost *per Cent*, *per Pound*, *per Ell*, *per Yard*, &c.

The **Rule of Interest**, or **Interest upon Interest**, it teacheth a brief and compendious way of working all manner of Questions upon Interest, or for Interest of Interest, being the sum hath been unpaid for several years.

Phylosophy.

A **Philosopher**, is a lover of Wisdom, **Philosophy** searcheth out the causes of things, what, whence, why and how every thing is.

A **Metaphysitian**, is a searcher of, and imployeth and busieth himself to find out and abstract Idea's of all things in the Universe; a Diver into supernatural causes and effects.

Metaphysicks, a Science which lifteth it self above the changeable nature of things. School Divinity is the highest part of it.

A **Naturall-Philosopher**, or a **Naturallist**, is such an one as busieth himself about natural bodies, and forms concreate with the things thereof.

A **Moralist**, is a Writer of the Manners and Behaviours of Men.

A **Philologer**, a lover of Learning and Eloquence, that studieth the reason of Speech, and definition of Words.

A **Magitian**, is the Naturallist highest pitch of understanding natural things in their effects, and he is such a person that hath skill of producing effects by a secret application of Actives to Passives. But the Monsters of this Art are **Sorcerers**, which perform things more by Spells and Inchantments, than sound Learning; such are **Hags** and **Witches** that deal with the mere delusions of the **Devil.**

A **Mathematitian**, one that by the **Mathematick** Art openeth the way to Philosophy; for he diligently searcheth out the reason of Numbers in Arithmetick, and of Measures in Geometry, and of Weights in Staticks.

A **Statick**, is a weigher or tryer of solid things, and then their worth by weighing the heavinesse of them by the force of Scales or Ballances and Weights.

Philosophers described.

Zeusippur, this Philosopher was Painted with a crooked Neck in a loose Coat, and a Mantle carelessly cast about him, as in old times all such were invested.

Aratus had his Neck bending, or bowed downwards.

Zeno is drawn with a wrinkled Forehead.

Diogenes with an hairy rough Beard, a loose Coat to his Feet, a Staff in one hand, and a Candle and Lanthorn in the other, with a Cloth copped head cover on his head. Some also do describe him sitting in a square hole made in the side of a great Tub or Barrell, or walking with a Candle and Lanthorn; As he did through the Citty of *Atheans* at noonday to find an honest man.

Democritus with his lipps open, as laughing: called the laughing Philosopher, who always laughed at the *Athenians* to se their eager pursuit after Riches, and to se the Chang of Fortune, and Follyes of Men.

Heraclitus with his eyes shut and weeping, wringing of his hands. He was the crying Philosopher, always weeping to se mens Follyes, and the miserys of the world.

Hippocrites an excellent Phisitian of *Cous*, Scholar to *Democrites*, whom *Artaxerxes* promised great Honors, if he would come and live with him in the *Persian Court*.

Socrates a Morall Philosopher; He in the Iudgment of *Apollo*, was the wisest man on earth: His enimyes accused him of contempt towards their *gods*, for which he was condemned to dye.

Aristotle is drawn with a stretched out Arme, he was a famous Philosopher *Alexanders* master; He was banished because he held not a right oppinion about the *gods*. He was the chief of the *Sect* of the *Peripateticks*.

Xenocrates a Philosopher, but of so dull a Capacity, That *Plato* his master said, *Aristotle* had need of a Bridle but *Xenocrates* of a Spur.

Chrysippus a Stoicall Philosopher, born at *Tarsus*, an acute Logician, had his hand open, pointing with his Fingers of the other hand to the open hand Fingers.

Euclid, a famous Geometrician, had his hand open, and his Fingers put asunder, to shew the space of measures.

Pythagoras is drawn with his Wheel in one hand, and a Quadrant in the other, with a Mantle cast carelessly over his Vestment or Coat.

Empedocles, who writ the nature of things, and that they were all composed of Love and Discord; that after Death he might be Feared and Honoured, he stole away

away from his Company by Night, and cast himself into the Burning Mountain *Ætna*.

Lucretius, a Naturallist, he writ six Books in *Latin*, his Wife giving him a *Philtrum*, or Love Cup to make him Love her, causing him to go Stark Mad, and so he Killed himself.

Agelastus, Grandfather of *Crœsus*, he never laughed but once in all his life, and that was when he saw an Ass eat Thistles; upon which occasion he said *Similes habent labra Lactucas*, like Lips like Lettice.

Antisthenes a Philosopher, who hearing of *Socrates* sold all that he had, and gave it to the Poor, and went every day six Miles to hear *Socrates*; he was *Diogenes* Master, and chief of the Cynick Sect.

Apollonius Tyaneus, a Pythagorian Philosopher, he was a great Magitian; some Heathens in malice of Christianity, affirm that his Miracles were as great as Christ and his Apostles.

Apuleius, a Philosopher born at *Madaura*, from whence he was called *Madaurensis*, he writ the Metamorphosis of the Golden Ass; he was accused for Magick, whereupon he writ his Apology.

Archytas, a Noble Philosopher, Master of *Plato*, whom he delivered from the Tyrant of *Sicily*; he was Captain of the Invincible Army.

Aristippus, an Auditor of *Socrates*; he was a Philosopher pleasing to all persons; he would use the pleasures he had, and despise those he had not: When he was to Travel to increase his Knowledg, he bid his Servants cast away their Money that they might Travel the better.

Athenodorus, an *Athenian* Philosopher, who taught *Augustus* this Lesson, that he should neither say or do any thing, but take respect while he may read over the Alphabet, that so he should not say or do any thing in rashness and Anger.

Thales Milesius, a Philosopher that first found out the cause of the Eclipses of the Sun and Moon.

Solon, one of the 7 wise men of *Greece*, and a Lawgiver to the *Athenians*, tould rich *Crœsus*, that *Tellus* a poore man, was more happy then he, being a good man and dyed well, and in a good age: For tell one be dead he cannot be said to be happy, as *Crœsus* found afterward true by wofull experience.

Byas, a Philosopher, one of the seaven Wise men of *Greece*.

Hermogenes, a Philosopher at *Tarsus*, when he was 18 yeares of age was a famous Scholar, afterwards alwayes went worse and worse: Of whom it was said, *Hermogenes inter Puros Senex: Inter Senes Puer*.

Hippias, a Philosopher singular in all Trades, Arts and Sciences; That he needed not the help of any man to supply his wants, so that the Buskins he wore were of his own makeing.

Homer, a great Philosopher and a very learned Poet He writt of the Warrs and Destruction of *Troy*.

Phocion a famous *Athenian*, honest and poore, and yet contemned Riches, when some perswaded him to provide for his Children, else they would come to need; answered. If they be like me, that which served me will serve them; if unlike, I will not seek to nourish their Luxury by providing Superfluity.

Pitticus, a Philosopher, and one of the 7 Sages of *Greece*, he challenged *Phryno* the *Athenian* Captain (in the Wars against them) to a single Combat; carried a Net privily, and so caught him and overcame him.

Seneca, a Stoick Philosopher, born at *Corduba* in *Spain*, he was both Consul and Senator of *Rome*; he writ Philosophy with so Divine a Quill, that some Fathers esteemed him as a good Christian. *Nero* caused him to drink Poison, and after his Veins to be opened, and he to be put into a hot Bath.

Stilpo, a Philosopher of *Megara*, who when his Wife and Children and Countrey were all Burnt, being asked by *Demetrius* what loss he had sustained, answered that he had lost nothing, for he accounted that only his own, which none could take from him, namely his Vertues.

Zenobia a Philosopher of *Cyrus*, the Father of the Stoicks, he compared Logick to a close hand, and Oratory to the same hand opened; he taught that Men having two Ears should hear much, and but one Mouth should say little, *Anno Mundi* 3698.

LX. He beareth Azure, a **Limner** (or a **Picture Drawer**, or a **Painter** working at his **Easill**, set on a **Stool**, with his **Pallet** on his left hand, all Or, **Clothed** and **Capped**, Argent. By the name of *Painter-Stainer*.

Painting is an Art so much imitating Nature, that by proportional Lines with answerable Colours; it represents to the Life the form of all Corporeal things; it is called in Latine **Pictura**, and in English **Painting** and **Limning**.

It consists in a sevenfold practice, as in **Drawing**, **Engraving**, **Etching**, **Limning**, **Painting**, **Washing** and **Colouring**; but principally the whole Art lyeth in these three things, *viz.* **Design**, **Proportion** and **Colour**; all which are expressed in three sorts of Painting, as **Landskip**, **History** and **Life**.

Instruments for Drawing, Limning, and Painting.

Charcoals, are Sallow Wood, or Withy Burnt and split into the form of Pencils, and sharpned to a point.

Feathers of a Ducks Wing, or such like, which is to wipe off a superfluous score made in a draught by the Charcoal.

Black and red Lead Pencills, which are to draw over your design the second time more exactly.

Pens, made of Ravens Quills, which are to finish and shadow your draught.

Rulers, to draw streight, or Perpendicular Lines, Triangles, Squares and Poligons.

Compasses of Brass, with Steel points, by which is measured the proportion of all things; as also to make Circles, Ovals, and Arches withal.

Coloured Paper or Parchment to draw upon.

Pastils, are rouls of Plaster or Clay, made of divers

vers colours, to draw withal on coloured Paper or Parchment.

Patterns or good Copies to draw by, without which it is impossible a young Artist should attain to any perfection in Drawing.

Gums, which are generally four, as Gum Arabick, Gum Lake, Gum Hedra, Gum Armonick, and Allome.

Colours of all sorts, the principal are these seven, White, Black, Red, Green, Yellow, Blew, Brown, out of which are made, mixed or compounded all sorts of colours.

Liquid Gold, and **Silver**, **Leaf Gold** and **Silver**, **Gold Armoniack.**

Grinding Stone and **Muller**, to Grind the colours upon, either in Water, with Gums, or in Oil; and a Lantern Horn or Knife to take them off.

Pencils of all sorts, big and little, and called by several names, as Duck Quill pointed and Fitched, Goose Quill pointed and Fitched, Swan Quill pointed and Fitched, Jewelling Pencills and Bristle Pencils, *&c.*

Brushes or **Tools**, are larger than Pencils, and are made of Bristles bound about Sticks, and in Nicks of Sticks, **Veining Tools.**

Tables and **Cloths**, to Limn and Paint upon.

Size, is Glew made weak with Water.

Shells, **Cups**, **Bladders**, or **Tins** to put the Colours in after they are ground, according as they are to be used either in Water or Oil.

An **Easel**, it is a frame of Wood made after the form of a Ladder, broader at the bottom than the top, with a Stay behind it; on this Frame Painters set their Cloth or Table while it is in working.

A **Pallet**, is a thin Board, on which Colours are laid for working, to temper them.

Streining Frame, is a Frame of Wood, to which with Nails is fastned the primed Cloth which is to be Painted upon.

Primed Cloth, is the Cloth to be Painted upon, which is first run over with any colour, which is called the Primeing.

Stay or **Mol Stick**, of some called a **Rest**; is a light yet strong Stick about a Yard long; it is to rest the Arm upon when working.

Stainshall, of some called a **Smuch Box**; it is a Tin with a bottom and three sides, in which Oil Pencils are put with their points in Oil to keep them from drying.

A **Cleanser**, is a Tin or Pot with a smooth edge, having Oil in it to make clean Pencils, that have worked colours in Oil.

Crucible of Earth or Iron to Burn colours in.

Oyls, as Nut Oil, Linseed Oil, Oil of Turpentine, Spike Oil, Varnish.

Terms of Art used by all sorts of Painters, Limners, Washers and House Stainers.

Arches, or Arch Work.

Angles, cornered Figures.

Artist, a Workman in his Calling or Trade.

Arteries, representations of Veins and such things in Naked Bodies.

Anatomy, or **Anatomical Figure**, draughts or Pictures of the Skelletons or Bones of Creatures, either Men or Beasts.

Aspect, of or belonging to the Face.

Antique, or **Antick Work**, is a Work for delight sake, being a general or irregular composition of all manner of compartments of Men, Beasts, Birds, Flowers, Fruit, and such like, without either Rule or Reason.

Active Prospective, is the right drawing of Prospective, by its Horizontal and Ichnographical and Geometrical Lines, without which the Active part of Prospective, must of necessity fail in its true proportion of things.

Altitude, the height of any proportioned thing.

Almagzum, or **Almagzium**, a kind of red Earth for Painting.

Arsenicum, **Orment**, a gold yellow.

Auripigmentum, the same.

Ash colour, a composition of much White and a little black.

Azure, a pure bright Sky colour.

Aquaducts, representations of Waters running in Rivers, or in falls from higher places.

Broken Radiation, a kind of By-light.

Base, the bottom or ground work of any thing.

Blew Black, Black made of Chatcoal.

Brown red, a red Earth.

Bize, **Blew Bize**, a delicate Blew.

Bole Armoniack, a red much like a Brick Stone, much used by Gilders.

Backside Work, is a kind of Painting and Gilding upon Glass on one side, to be seen and looked upon on the other.

Black Chaulk, a good transparent shadowing Black.

Colour, or **Colouring**, is any sort of Colour or Work done with Colours, see **Paint.**

Circle, a round thing.

Coppy, is the drawing of one Picture or the like from another.

Cones, a thing that goes Spirall, as Spire Steeples.

Cylenders, things that are round and of an equal size at its length, as **Pillars**, **Columns.**

Contraction, is the drawing of a thing into a less compass.

Crions, either White or Red Chalk cut into long pieces, and made sharp at the end to draw withall.

Circumference, the rounding or compassing of a thing.

Countenance of a Face.

Circular shadow, a shadow that turns round.

Contemplation of the Object, is the considering and well adviling with ones self, how to do, or perform the working of such a piece, as is shewed.

Catoptrick, **Catoptrica**, it is a second kind of **Prospective**, and proceeds from a reflected light, as reflection of the Sun Beams, or Looking Glass, where the resemblance alters not from the Original.

Ceruse, a pure white ground, white Lead refined.

Center, the middle of any circumference or round figure.

Cherry Stone Black, are the Stones Burnt.

Charcoal, Burnt Wood of Willow, or other soft Wood, which is used to draw withal.

Cullen Earth, a kind of dark brown Earth, Fullers Earth burnt.

Crimson colour, it is compounded of Lake and a little White.

Cataracts, falls of Water from high and steep places.

Catagraphy, is the Art of Painting.

Catagrapha, is a drawing of Pictures, so as that they are to be looked upon but one way, if turned they represent other forms.

Colour Man, he that sells Colours, or worketh Colours.

Cleanse, is the making clean either of old Paintings, or the making clean of the Muller, Grinding Stone and Pallet from their colours; or of the Pencils which have Colours in them.

Curved, is a thing drawn crooked or awry, and not according to its due station or proportion.

Cambuginm, a kind of Gum of a pure yellow colour.

Cole, or Orchall, a Blew colour for Limning.

Carmaine, a rich Red, far exceeding the Scarlet or Vermilion; it is a colour only for glasing.

Drawing, is that whereby in lines we represent the shape and form of any corporal substance.

Draught, is the thing so drawn in rude lines.

Drapery, is the imitating of cloathing, and Artificial setting off the outward coverings, habit and ornaments of the Body.

Drawing after the Life, is to draw the similitude of a thing from the thing it self, a Hand from an Hand, a Face from a Face, a Horse from an Horse, a Flower from a Flower.

Depict, Depicted, Drawn, Painted.

Distance, is the space of place between the painted work and the station of the Beholder. It is also taken and used in the working of Landskips, for to observe a due distance of things, and a universal measure in representing Nature.

Doelling, it is a certain besmearing of a draught with white or red Chalk sharp pointed, here and there, to set it off.

Dark, deep shadow, are shadows for inward parts of things, which are much from the Lights reflection.

Distances in a proportion, is the just length and breadth of one thing from another, as one Member from the other, without which it cannot be an exact draught.

Double shadow, is when one Hatching or Stroke in a piece of Work crosses another. This is called also a **Double Hatch**.

Delineate, is to describe a thing in lines according to its apparent or visible proportion.

Direct Radiation, is the streight Light which passeth between the eye and the object looked at.

Diapering, is a tracing or running over a work (when it is finished) with Damask Branches, and such like; it is the counterfeiting of Cloth of Gold, Silver, Damask, with either Branches, Flowers, or other antick devices, in what fashion is most pleasing; it is termed also **Damasking**.

Dioptrica, it is a kind of Prospective, which is seen by a broken radiation, or Sun Beams; the **Dioptick** or broken sight is rightly seen in a Tub of Water where the surface is cut.

Diagonal Lines, or lines of distance, are such as are drawn from the point of distance to any other point higher or lower than the Horizon line.

Dead colour, is the first colouring of a piece of Painting.

Degrees of colouring, is colouring according to the various forms and complexions, as Infants and young Children to be painted of a soft and delicate complexion. Virgins and fair Women, as curious, having their Muscles and Veins more perfect. Naked Bodies are to be Painted strong, lively and exact, shewing each Muscle, Nerve and Vein, fixing each Artery in its due place, giving each Limb its proper form and shadow. And old and aged Bodies are to be set forth with eminent, exact, and curious shadows, and all the marks of Antiquity or Age to be very apparent and formidable.

Design, is the depicting of a thing according to Fancy.

Designing Lines, are the first Stroaks which are made for the drawing of any piece of work, whether Life, History, or Fancy.

Dragons Blood, Sanguis Draconis, is a perfect deep Blood red, and is a good Water Shadow for Vermilion and Red Lead.

Distemper work, it is a working the colours with Gum Water or Size, as Oyl colours are wrought. This is called also working in Great.

English Inde or **Indicoe**, a deep Blew.

Exercise or Practice.

Equidistant, of an even distance.

Edefice or Building

Extention, the stretching out of a thing, **Extend**, make larger.

Experience, is the knowledge of a thing by often doing it. Practice brings Experience.

Emblem or **Empress** work, is drawing Faces from the Life, which is the most hard and difficult of all other works in this Art, and the most to be commended of all other works.

Foldage, is the folding of Garments in their natural and proper folds; or any thing that turns or crisps it self.

Folds, are the turnings and lapping over of any piece of Cloth in Vests or Garments; of which there are two sorts, the outward folds are them that lye outward and most in sight and to the light; the inward folds are such as have folds lying over them, and are most from the Light.

Figure, is any proportion of Man or Beast, either drawn or modelized. Also by Figures is understood the Geometrical Figures, called Angles, Triangles, Poligons, *&c.*

Fallings, either in loose Garments, as the folds fall off one from another; or in feathers, which in the falls bend themselves.

Flat,

Flat, is in Painting and Shadowing, and the term is used when the thing painted comes not round off, or riseth not by its shadow, but lieth flat down, as if it were of no body or substance.

Faint shadows, are such shadows as are scarce seen or discern'd.

Features, are the comely shapes and proportions of a Face.

Face, is the known and chief part for Grace in any reasonable Creature, it is often used in the Art of Painting, thereby to express its manner and form, as a full Face, when every part is seen at one and the same instant of time.

Three quarter Face, when one side and a part of the other side of the Face is only seen.

Half Face, when only the Nose and one side of the Face is seen.

Oblique Face, is when a part of the Face is not seen by reason of some motion, as looking back, upwards or downwards, side ways.

Flowy Blew, a colour used by Limners and Washers of Maps.

Finish, is the compleating or ending of a piece of Work.

Foreshortning, is the drawing of things as they appear to the eye, not to the full proportion of each part, but to shorten it according as it is obfuscated or hidden by other parts.

Fore-right side, is that side (in a piece of Prospective work) in which the Artist stood when he drew it from the Place it self; the front of the Work.

Finitor, or Horizon.

Fancy, is a Work done according to a Mans own Mind or Pleasure, or as his own Genius leads him unto.

Fiction or **Fantacy**, is the making of such Creatures as never were or shall be, upon probable conjecture. Forced Figures to express a Novelty, as Centaurs, Satyrs, Griffins, *&c.*

Frescoe, or Wall Painting; some call it **seiling**.

Festoons of Flowers or Fruit, are such things tyed or hung together in a long row, and so turned about Pillars, or set on the tops of seiled Work for Ornament.

Flowerages and **Fruitages**, are Flowers and Fruit hung and compact together, and proceeding out of an husk or bottom of a Cup Flower.

Fading Colours, such as will not continue long in their Beauty, but turn to another colour.

Fat or **clammy**, is when colours are old ground, and not fit for working.

Fat Oyl, is Linseed Oil grown thick, or made thick and clammy through Boiling.

Grotescoe, or Antique Work.

Gold Cise, is a colour made for to lay Gold upon.

Ground Plot, is the draught or design of a thing to be worked.

Geometrical Figures, are Lines, Angles, Circumferences, Ovals, *&c.*

Grind, is to make the colours fine on a Grinding Stone.

Green Bize, a green Colour used by Painters.

Green Verditer, a Welmish or Willow green.

Green Earth, a kind of green Clayie Earth used for a Colour.

Grey, a compound Colour made of much White, and little Black mixt.

Glazed, is to make a thing shine by Varnishing it. **Gloss** the same.

Ground or **ground Colour**, is the first Colour, called **Primer**.

Herbage, see **Flowerage**, Leaves and Herbs compacted together and hung along.

House Painter, such as only Paint Houses and Plastered Walls.

Hatches are stroakes of a Pen or Pencill, in imitation of a shadow, and they are threefold, as single Hatches, which is only one stroak; double Hatches, which is cross Hatches, for a deeper shadow, and a treble Hatch, which is three stroaks one crossing another, and is for a dark Hatch.

Hard shadow, is when a shadow is deep, or comes not smoothly off, but ends with an edge. **Harsh shadows**.

Horizon, is used several ways, as a fair Horizon, when the Heavens are Painted with a large sight, and shewed with cloudy and clear Air; or else it is taken for the Line in Prospective and Landskip work, equal to the height of the Eye, to which all other parts of the Work both above and under it do tend.

Homogene, is to have a work continued throughout with one and the same kind, not of various matters, as in Diapering and Damasking.

Harts Horn Black, is the Horn burnt in a Luted Crucible.

History, is the Painting of Stories taken from Histories.

Heightening, is to touch up a deep colour with a lighter, to lighten any colour with White.

Herald Painter, is such as Paints Coats of Arms on Escochions, Shields, Tables, Penons, Standarts, and such like.

Imitation, is to make one thing by and like to another.

Idea, a figure or form of a thing conceived in the Imagination.

Ichnography, **Ichnographick**, is the description of the plain, base, or bottom of any piece of Work or Building.

Ichnographick Geometry, is that as gives the sight of the bottom or base of any Work or Fabrick; as a Circle is the base of a Column, and a Square of a Pedestall.

Ivory Black, it is burnt in a Crucible close stopped.

Indian Lake, a pure Blood colour.

Indian Red, a kind of red Earth with Sparks of Silver in it.

Invention, the finding out of a thing, the first device of it, or the bringing out of that which was not before.

Indicoe, an hard, deep, or Black Blew.

Inde Baudias, a kind of Indico or Blew colour.

Limning, Painting in Water colours with Gum or Size.

Limner, a Painter in Water colours, whether by Life, or otherwise.

Lines, are long scores or strokes made with Chalk or the like, having length only without breadth or thickness.

Lineaments, are the several parts of the Body.

Landskip, is that kind of Painting as represents the Heavens and the Earth, Trees, Houses, Waters, &c. 1. in their distance. 2. in their mutual position. 3. in visible Aspect.

Light side, is that side of a thing where the Light takes it, and enlightens it by striking a lustre upon it, more there than elsewhere.

Lamp Black, it is the soot of Wood Burnt.

Lake, it is a Blood red colour.

Litmose or **Stone Blew**, it is a dark filthy Blew.

Life, or Painting from the Life, or thing it self which we imitate.

Lines of distance, Diagonal Lines.

Lay in colours, is the Painting with a Pencill or Brush.

Modell, is a Figure of a thing in kind, being made to do the like by it, and that either in big or little.

Master strokes, are the out or principal lines of any thing to be drawn, or that is drawn.

Measure, the bigness of a thing.

Magnitude.

Mastick, or **Masticote**, a fair yellow finer than fine Sand.

Murrey, a compound colour of Lake and Smalt.

Napery, the working of Linnen in Painting according to the foldings thereof.

Ovals, are long rounds.

Originals are pieces made from the Life, having no other pattern to work them by; what are worked from them are Coppies from the Originals.

Out-schetches, are the out-lines of any draught, or piece drawn.

Oblique Face, a Face that looks any other way than streight forward, as upwards, downwards, sideways.

Obfuscated, is when one Part or Member is hid by another.

Opticks, is a Prospective term, and signifieth a direct or streight Beam of Light, which pass between the Eye and the Object.

Object, is the thing on which we fix the Eye, or that Figure, Body, or Edifice intended to be expressed in its proportion.

Orthography, Orthographick, is the sight of the foreright side of any plain or superficies, which lies equidistant to a right line; so that **Perspective Orthography** is the delineation of the apparent right plain, or plat of Building drawn out in that Figure and Order as the whole Work is, the Pillars behind the fore right side or front declining even to the Visual point.

Obliquely, crookedly, awry, sidelong.

Orchal or **Cork**, a Blew colour.

Ocar de Luce, an Earth of a bright Hair or Mouse colour, which is a good shadow for Gold or Yellow.

Operation, a working with the hands. **Workmanship.**

Orment, a pure yellow, having glittering of Gold in it, called **Auripigmentum.**

Out-lines, see **Master strokes.**

Polygraphy or **Polygraphice**, is the Art of imitating Nature with proportional lines, and answerable colours to the Life.

Painter, one that follows the Art of Painting, of which there are several sorts according to the Figures or things imitated, as the **Painter by Life**, **History** Painter, **Landskip** Painter, **Prospective** Painter, the **Limner** or Water colour Painter; **Herauld** or **Arms** Painter; **Seiler** or **House** Painter; **Glass** Painter; **Backside-work** Painter; **Mather** of Maps and Prints; **Engraver** that works on Copper Plates; the **Etcher**; and the **Drawer** for Needle Work and Embrauthery; all which may be famous in their way, and yet Ignorant and unskilful in one anothers Art of Painting, or Drawing.

Perpendicular lines, down right lines.

Poligons,

Practice, is the use of doing of things, exercise in Drawing.

Paterns, Copies to draw by.

Polished, made smooth and shining.

Perspicous, that as is most visible and easie to be seen.

Pounce, is to prick holes in a Paper of any form, and then to dust the same with Lime or Charcoal (according to the ground colour, on which the Pricked Paper is to leave the impression of the thing Pricked) and being laid thereon and the Dust rubbed on the holes, leaves the Figure on the Paper or Cloth under it.

Proportion, is the giving each Figure drawn, its due shapes, not one exceeding another, but agreeing in magnitude, similitude and parts, lest it seem crooked and deformed.

Proportion at Distance, is to augment or lessen every thing to their distance from the Eye, making them accordingly.

Perspective, is the Art of well seeing, and is that by which we behold, contemplate, contract and draw the likeness of all Magnitudes and great Bodies, just in the same form and manner as they appear to the Eye; as the inside of Churches, Rooms, long Streets, and great Fabricks.

Prospect, or **Perspect**, is to see a Country round about, and at a great distance from us, a looking about.

Pinke, a kind of yellowish green, a colour used by Painters.

Purple, a compound colour of Red and Blew, Lake and Smalt.

Peeling, is the cracking and fretting of Colours in a Picture.

Primer, is the ground colour on which the Painting is wrought, a Primed Cloth is a Cloth made ready and fit to work on.

Painter Stainer, it is the general term given to him that any way dealeth in Colours, either in Selling, or working with them.

Paint seller, a seller of all sorts of Colours.

Pourtraiting, or Drawing.

Purling, **Hatching** with a Pencill, as Herald Painters finish up their Work. **Finishing.**

Prepare your Colours, is to grind them, and make them ready and fit to be used.

Rude Draught, the first drawing or touching out of

of a Figure, when there is a design to draw it: see **Out Schetches.**

Rectifie, mend what is amiss, help the place in Painting where there is an error, or fault: make it more perfect.

Reflection, is a returning of the light from one Figure to another.

Reflected Radiations, is when the beams or light, fall on any polished Body: and from thence conveyeth a shape in light to its opposite.

Radiation, is a beam of light conveying the likeness of a thing to the Eye or sight: and the knowledge thereof to the minde and understanding.

Return of the Foye-sight, this is a term in perspective, and is that side which declines from, or maketh an Angle with the right Line or Horizon, from the sight of the Eye.

Rayes, Sun light; see **Visual.**

Resemble, Resemblence, is the likeness of one thing to another.

Red lead, Lead burnt and made red by fire, and so becomes a colour.

Red Ocar, yellow Ocar burnt in a close Crucible or Iron Pot well luted.

Rosset, a Soft and fadeing colour which will not continue long, it is a rich Carnation, or Peach colour.

Ruines, Dicayed Houses, Monasteries, Towers, and Castles; Ruinous Places.

Squares, are Geometrical Figures with four corners.

Scale, is the square crossings of a Picture, with a Chalke, thereby to draw the like by the help of another Scale made on the cloath, paper, or tablet to be drawn upon. It helps the young Artist to draw a Figure bigger or lesser then the Pattern, and yet have in all parts its due form and proportion.

Schetches, are touches on a Paper with the point of a Charcoal in drawing out of any Figure, and so by little and little running over the whole Work. Some call these **Touches, Out Schetches.**

Scatch, Scotcht, the same: the out stroakes of a Figure or Draught.

Shadow, it is that as makes a Figure to rise, seem round, of which there are several ways of shaddowing, as faint, flat, deep, harsh and dark Shadows.

Shadow Lines, is to shadow by Lines, which are single Hatching, double Hatching, and treble Hatching.

Skew, a term in Herald-Painting, which is with a Wing, or Hares foot brush away all the loose edges of Silver and Gold that remains of the working of them. **Strike off** the loose Gold or Silver. **Brush off.**

Superficies in Painting terms, is a complication of Lines; that is, a length and breadth but without thickness.

Solid, is a complication of superficies; that is, length and breadth, having depth or thickness.

Scenography, Schenographick; It is the description of a plaine, or other Figure that declines from the apparent or foreright plain: that is of that plain or part which makes Angles with the said foreright plain.

Scenographick Vision, is that as shews the side or a Body, or Edifice which declines from or makes an Angle with the right Line, appearing, rising obliquely to the same side.

Spodium, a kind of white Paint, or Soote rising from the fining or trying of brass.

Spanish white, is chalke and Allome burned together.

Sinaper Lake, is a kind of deep blood colour, or purple.

Sap green, is the joyce of the Buckthorn Berries.

Saffron, is a yellow for washing of Maps.

Smalt, some call it **blew Starch;** because much used by Landresses in their Starch to make it blew.

Spanish brown, or deep blood red.

Scarlet colour, the purest and best of reds.

Steeped colours, such as require no grinding, but only put into Water, Vinager, or Gum.

Slickned, polished, or glazed.

Skin, Skinning of colours; is the skin that groweth on Oyle colours, if they be not quickly wrought up.

Sweetning, is the working one colour into another with a soft Pencil: that they will look as one colour, though they be diverse.

Sweet Shadow, is so finely worked into another colour that it seems to be no shadow.

Seileing, is House Painting, where Plaister Wall are made to look like Wainscate, or outlandish Timber.

Section, or Glass; is a plain of transparent or perlucid Matter, raised upright upon the plain of a base set before you, parallel to a straight Line: through which passeth the convex Centers of both Eyes.

Spruce Ocar, a reddish yellow or sand colour Clay or Earth much used in House Painting, some call it **English Ocar.**

Second colouring, is the Painting of a Face after the dead, or first colouring of it.

Triangle, is a Figure with three corners.

Trick, is the drawing of any Figure or Coat of Armes with Pen and Inke for a Pattern to Engrave by.

Treble shadow, see **Hatch.**

Terra Vert, a green Earth used in Painting.

Turn-sole, died Raggs, which refuse in Waters make it a pure Violet colour.

Tawny, a compound colour of red and much yellow.

Tempering of colours, is mixing of them one with another: or tempering them on the Pallet with a Knife to make them fit to Work, or such colours as need no grinding, are said to be tempered on the said Pallet with Oyle.

Turmarick, a transparent Water yellow.

Visual Point, is a Point in the Horizontal Line, wherein all the Beams of the Eyes unite: the center of the Horizon Line.

Visual Rays, are those Lines which proceed from the Visual Point, to any point higher or lower then the plain of the Horizon.

Vermilion, a pure Scarlet colour, it is both Natural and Artificial; having the resemblance of Silver Ore, before it be Ground.

Verditer, a soft and pure blew.

Verdigrease, a Sea Water green.

Amber,

Umber, an hair colour or brown Clayie Earth.

Venice Berries, boiled in Water make a transparent yellow.

Ultramarine, the richest and purest of all blews.

Washing, or **Wash with colours**; is Painting of Maps, Prints, and Papers with thin transparent colours: Some terms it colouring.

Wash colours, are all transparent colours, so that Writing and Printed Figures are seen through them.

Washer of Mapps, is the Painter of Mapps and the like.

Working in great with Water colours; see **Distemper Work.**

Graving or Engraving.

It is an Art which teacheth how to transferr any thing designed upon Copper, Brass, or Wood, by the help of sharp pointed and cutting Instruments. Now it is possible that a Man may be a good Painter, and yet not be able to draw well with the Pen; but it is impossible to be a good Graver or to Hatch well except he can draw well with the Pen, and have a curious and exact carriage of the Hand.

Gravers Instruments, and their Terms used in the Art of Engraving.

Gravers of all sorts, some call them **Graving Tooles**: some for hard Work, some for sweet work, some for smaller work, and some for greater work; some long, others short; some straight, others crooked; some formed square, others Loseng.

An **Oyle Stone**, to sharpen his Gavers on; and **Oyle Olive.**

A **Sand Bagg**, or round Cushion filled with Sand to Engrave upon: on which the Plate is turned at pleasure.

A **Burnisher**, is a smooth Iron which is used to rub out scratches and specks, or other things in the Plate.

A **Peece of Box** or **hard Wood**, to strike the point of the Graver into after it is sharpned, to take off all the roughness about the point, which was caused by whetting it on the **Oyle stone.**

Plates of Copper, Silver, Brass, and Pewter: but especially the two first, which must be exactly polished.

Pumice stone, and **Charcoale.**

Drawing Point, a Steele with a sharp point like a Needle to draw the Work designed on the Plate: a **Needle fixed in a Stick.**

Grinding Stone, to grind the Hammer stroaks out of the Copper-Plates.

Fine smooth Hoan, to rub the Plate smooth.

Smooth Charcoal, without Knots.

Planish the Plate, is to beat it on a smooth Anvile with a broad and smooth faced Hammer, to cause it to ile straight and flat upon a Table.

Annale, the Copper is to put it in the Fire several times at the beating of it out to keep it from cracks and flaws.

Polish the Plate, is to rub it smooth and bright that one face may be seen in it.

Hammer stroaks, are Marks which the Hammer leaves in the Plate at the plenishing of it: **Dints** or **Marks** of the Hammer.

Flaws in the Plate, are Scales rising up in the Plate, fire flaws.

Scratches, are slips of the Graver from the designed work, some term them slips of the Gravers.

Hatches, are stroaks or lines made with the Graver in the work designed, of which there are three sorts: the strong or largest Hatches, made by a square pointed Graver, the fine and delicate Hatches, made by a Losenge pointed Graver; and the faint and smallest Hatches, with a middle size or sharp pointed Graver.

Whet the Graver, is to sharpen it on the Oyle Stone, or to sharpen either the sides or points of the Graver, flat or sloping.

Soft or **Hard**, and without Pinholes; the Oyle Stone is not to be too hard or too soft, but between both, and free from holes.

Deep or **Gross Graved stroaks**, are black Lines.

Fine and **Faint stroaks**, are small Lines in Graving.

Burnish or make the Plate bright, clear, and shineing.

Tough Graver, is one of a good temper, neither too hard, and so brittle: nor too soft, and so never keep a Point.

Clear or **Clean your Graver**, is to strike it into a piece of hard Wood, to take off all the roughness out of the point which was caused through whetting.

Scrape your stroaks, that is after you have done the Hatching, with the sharp edge of the burnisher, or back of the Graver: run over the Plate to take off the roughness of the stroaks.

Traced or **Drawn**, is the first draught on the Plate with the drawing Point, or Needle.

Carved or **Graven on Wood**, is Figures cut on Wood for Printing, it is termed cutting of Wood Prints.

Coppy, is the thing designed to be Engraven on the Plate.

Large stroaks, lines made by a square Graver: see **Hatches.**

Dilicate or **Lively stroaks**, such as are made by Loseng point Graver.

Hold your Graver, is to keep your Hand and Arm stedfast, and hold the Graver fast in turning the Plate to make crooked and winding stroaks.

Guide your Graver, is to carry it rightly and even, that it makes no scratches with the Graver, called **Slipps.**

Hard Tempred, when the point of the Graver oft breaks, it shews it to be too hard tempered.

Blunt, is when the Graver becomes dull, and looseth its Edge, and yet breaks not, shews it to be nought and nothing worth.

Etching.

Etching.

It is an Imitation of Graving, but more speedily performed, being an Artificial way of Hatching or making stroaks in Copper Plates by the eating of *Aqua-Fortis*; and things may be expressed to the Life thereby, but not so sweetly as by the Graver.

Instruments and Terms used in Etching.

Hard Varnish, to Varnish over the Plate to be Etched.

Soft Varnish, for the same purpose.

Prepared Oyle, is to preserve the back of the Plate and other places from *Aqua-Fortis*, that it hurt not the same.

Aqua-fortis, to eat the Hatchings into the Plate.

Needles of all sorts and sizes set in sticks, after the manner of Prickers: called **Etching Tooles.**

Brush Pencil, to cleanse the Work, and wipe off the dust.

A **Frame** to fix the Plate upon: which is only a large Board.

A **Trough** to receive the *Aqua-Fortis* as it runs of the Plate.

Linnen Raggs to dry the Plate after its often washings.

A **Board,** with edges on three sides to lay the Plate upon; at the pouring on off the *Aqua-Fortis*: it must have six Wooden Peggs or Nails to rest it on.

An **Earthen pot** well leaded, it is to pour the *Aqua-Fortis* on the Plate.

Oyle Stone, Burnisher, and **Copper Plates** as is before said: and for the same use as in Graving.

Oval pointed Needles, are such as are ground sloping, and so fall to be Oval like: called also **Oval points,** which make large and thick stroaks.

Strike your stroaks, is to cut the Varnish through which is laid on the Copper Plate.

Tapping, is wipe or sliding ones hand upon the Varnish to make it smooth and even on the Plate.

Cover the plate, is to lay the prepared Oyle on those places where the *Aqua-Fortis* is to eat but faintly.

Wash the plate, to wash off with Water the *Aqua-Fortis* that it may eat no longer into the Plate.

Ground, or **Varnish,** which is laid on the Plate.

Rub off the Ground, take the Varnish off the Plate, that the Etching may be seen.

Blacking the Varnish, is to hold it over the smoak of a large Tallow-candle.

Dry or **Harden the Varnish,** is to set the Plate (when Varnished) on four Andirons, and to make a Charcoal Fire about it, till the Varnish smoak and it is done.

Brittle or **Hardned Varnish,** is through over drying it on the Plate.

Whetting the Needles, is to make the points sharp at the ends, either round or sloping.

Preserve the Varnish, is to cover that part of the Plate not working on, with Paper to keep it from dust and injuring.

Hatches, are lines of several sorts, some big, some small, some straight, some crooked.

Leaning hard on the Needle, is to make great thick stroaks in Etching.

Passing the Hatches over, is to make double stroaks crossing one another.

Stroaks in Etching, they are of three sorts, either all of bigness and thickness all along; or thick at one end, and small at the other; or else small at both ends, and thick in the middle.

Shaddow, or **Shaddowing in Etching,** is but a reiteration of the same stroaks close one to another, or crossing one another; which is termed a **Deep** or **Dark Shadow.**

Holes, or **Scratches** in the **Varnish,** cause the same in the Plate.

Oiley mixture, is Oyle and Grease melted together to cover the back of the Plate that the *Aqua-Fortis* touch it not.

Cast on the water, is the pointing on the *Aqua-Fortis* on the Plate.

Wash off, is to poure water on the Plate to keep the *Aqua-Fortis* for not eating any deeper into the Plate.

Faint Hatches, are small tender stroaks, of which there are several degrees and operations, such as represent a thing far off; then those as represents a thing somewhat nearer, which is done by stroaks yet less faint, or more blacker; and then such as shew a thing more plain and within the sigght of the Eye, which is by thicker stroaks, yet faint in respect of such which present things at hand, and near to sight.

Clots, or **Pumples,** are rising in the Varnish at the Grounding of the Plate therewith, if it be laid on too hot.

Border the plate, is to make a Brim of soft Wax either Red or Green about the Plate to keep the *Aqua-Fortis* from running of the Plate.

White Ground, is the making the Varnish white instead of black, which is done by Ceruse mixt with Starch and laid upon the Varnish hot with a soft Brush.

Grave, or **Re-grave,** to mend with the Graver those stroaks omitted or not eaten with the *Aqua-Fortis*. Some term it, to **Touch up,** or **Mend.**

Glass-Painting.

It is contrary to all other ways of Painting, of which there is three manners of Painting, the one is with Oyle colours, the second is by Burning and Annaling; and the third in Water colours termed Backside work: and seeing these have a near dependency one to the other, I shall set both their Instruments and Term in the same, altogether in one Class.

Instru-

Instruments for Glass-Painting.

is a brittle fastned in a stick, to draw on the Glass to shew how it must be cut.

A **Crucible**, to melt the colours in.

A **Pestil** and **Morter**, to beat the colours and jett withal.

A **Cerse**, to take the grosse from the fine pounded: for their is but few of these Painters but they make their own colours.

A **Copper Plate polished**, to grind these colours on; for they are so hard that they scratch other Stone.

A **Wooden Muller** with a Glass simoned at the bottom of it, to grind the colours on the Plate.

Colours, of which there is only seven used in Glass-painting.

White, which is made of a white Marble or Garden Stone burnt, and ground with powdered Jett, and Gum-water.

Yellow, it is made of Silver burnt in Brimstone, and ground with Gum-water, and six times as much yellow Ocar, or any other Earthy colour, which is only to Master it in the Annaling.

Blew, is made of the deepest and coursest Smalt, such as Painters call Strow blue, put to it a quantity of Salt-Peter and melt it in a Crucible, after bray it in a Morter, Cerse it and grind it as aforesaid.

Green, is made of Green Glass-beads, and Green Amel cersed, and ground with Gum-water: others make it of Red Lead, Copper-scales, White Marble burnt and powdered, to which add a third part of Salt-Peter, melt all in a Crucible, then grind it as afore.

Red, is made of Red Chalk ground on the Copper Plate (with Gum-water) having in it a third part of Jett.

Purple colour, is made of brown Stone, white Marble burnt, and Salt-Peter as the Green before.

Black, called **Painter** by them; it is made of either Iron or Copper Scales (the latter best for a shaddow, the other for a black) Jett and Gum-water ground extraordinary fine, almost to an Oyle on the Copper Plate.

Jett, is a thing used in all colours save yellow, and is made of Red Lead, and White Marble, or fine Sand and Salt-Peter melted in a Crucible, like a piece of Glass.

Pencills of several sorts, and Bristle Pencills.

A **Washer**, it is a large soft Brush to sweeten the Shaddows in a piece of Glass-work.

Gum Araback, that holds the colour on the Glass till it be Annaled.

A **Sharp pointed Stick** or **Skewer**, much used to give an heightning to a Shaddow, and to Damask on any colour.

A **Furnace**, to Annale or Burn the colours on the Glass: it is a square thing made of Brick.

Slacked Lyme, to lie between each parcel of Glass in the Furnace.

Glass that is white and pure, and free from blobbs.

Paterns for the work, which are always drawn proportionable to the thing made on the Glass, upon which the Glass is laid, and so is drawn on the Glass by the draught of the patern.

Watches, pieces of Glass painted with several colours put into a hole in the Furnace side to take out to see and know if the colours be well burned on the Glass, or not.

A **Tenedish**, which is a piece of Lead made like a Muscle shell, in which the black (called **Painter**) is kept moist to work withal.

Terms used in the Art of Glass-Painting.

Cut the Glass, make it suitable to contain the thing designed upon the several pieces.

Trace the Draught, draw the out Lines of it on the Glass as it lies on the draught of the designed work.

- - - - - - - - after the draught is made, then the Workman with Painter casts a thin watery colour like a mist on the Glass, which being dry, the Glass will receive a shaddow on it.

Shadow, is to put a thicker painter or black in the light or dark places.

Sweeten your Shaddow, is to breath on the Glass, and strike it lightly over with the **Washer Brush**.

Heighten the Shaddows, is to run it over with a deeper black Shaddow, which the darker they are the oftner they must be run over, and **sweetned**.

Touch up the lighter parts, is with the point of a stick, to scratch or scrape off the misty colour first laid on, that the plain and perfect Glass may be seen through, and thereby light in Shaddows do appear.

Lay in the colours, is to paint the several parts of the work with its suitable colours.

Annale, is to burn the Glass in a Furnace to make the colours stick fast on.

Lyme the Furnace, is to sift sleekt Lyme through a fine scive, on the Plate of Iron or blew stone laid in the Furnace.

Bed the Glass, is to lay the painted or wrought Glass on the said bed of Lyme piece by peice, but not to lie on one another, or touch.

Fill the Furnace, is to lay a bed of Lyme and a bed of Glass time for time one upon another, till it be full.

Watch Hole, is a hole made in the side of the Furnace to put the Watch pieces of Glass in, which is as many pieces as you lay beds of Glass.

Close or **stop the Furnace**, is to cover the top to keep the fire in, that it may burn the Glass both in the top, bottom and sides.

Fire the Furnice, soft Fire, is to make a Fire Gently, and to heat the Furnace by degrees, for an hot Fire too suddenly, is apt to break and crack the Glass.

Draw the Watch, is to take the lower watch Glass out of the hole to coole.

Try the Watch, is to scrape the painting laid upon it, which if it stick fast to the Glass, it is Annaled enough: if it come off, it hath not sufficient Fire as yet.

Colours run, that is, they melt with the Glass, and so incorporate or joyn one to another.

Smelt

Smelt together, the colours melt or run all at a time, else one that melts first is apt to be **over Burnt** and loose its colour, if the others be any long time before they run: for in this very thing lies the Art and Mystery of a good Glass Painter, so to order his colours as one be not **Harder** then another, but all of an **even Temper** to burn and run together.

Coole the Furnace, is to withdraw the Fire from under the Furnace, and to let the Glass coole by degrees.

Famous Men for Inventions, and Improvers of Arts.

Achates a *Trojan*, was the first that found out the way to strike fire out of a Flint.

Abraham and **Seth**, (as *Josephus* affirms) were the first that found out the Art of *Astronomy*.

Atlas, the first erector of a common Library.

Æolus the Son of *Jupiter* and *Acesta*, the first that made Observation of Winds, and the first that invented Sails for Ships.

Æsculapius the Son of *Apollo*, and the Nymph *Coronis*, he was famous for the first invention of Physick and Chirurgery.

Amphion, is (by *Pliny* said to be) the first inventer of Musick, and that he had such skill on the Lute, that by the sound he is fained to have built the Walls of *Thebes*.

Anacharsis, the inventer of Bellows, and the Potters Wheel.

Anarimander a Greek Philosopher, the use of the Sphear.

Apollo the Son of *Jupiter*, inventer of the Harp, and Bow and Arrows.

Aristeus, the first maker of Honey, and gatherer of Bees.

Artemon, invented the Warlike Engine called a Testudo: the **Mantles**, and **Target-roofs** for the assaulting of Cities.

Atlas King of *Mauritania*, the inventer of Astrology.

Augeas King of *Eis*, the first that taught Dunging and Manuring the Earth.

Bellerophon, from his bestriding of *Pegasus* in the Fight against *Chimera*, is by *Pliny* said to be the first that taught Riding.

Capaneus, the first inventor of scalding Laders at the Siege of *Thebes*.

Cadmus Son of *Agenor* King of *Phænicia*, first that brought Letters into *Greece*, but *Diodorus Siculus* saith *Mercury* first invented Letters in *Ægypt*: *Moses* first taught them to the *Hebrews*.

Chalcus, first inventer of Shield and Buckler.

Cleanthes a *Corinthian*, first inventer of Delineation, or making the rough draught of Pictures.

Cleophantus, that invented colours to paint with.

Closter, found out the use of the Spindle.

Crissibius, found out the *Clepsydra*, or Water Hour-Glass.

Cyclopes, the three Sons of *Neptune*, their Names *Bronthes*, *Steropes*, and *Pyracmon*, were the first inventors of Forges and Smiths work, finding out the use of Brass, Iron and other Mettals: which most ascribe to *Vulcan*, whose Servants they are said to be.

Daedalus, the first worker of Wood, and inventer of Carpenters Tooles, as Hammer, Hatchet, Saw, Level, *&c.* Augur and Wimble.

Danaeus, the first that found out Shipping, and taught Navigation after *Noahs* Arks: he first Sailed over Seas from *Ægypt* to *Greece*.

Dibutades, the inventer of *Plastick*, or the Potters Art.

Dircaeus, the inventer of the blazen Trumpet.

Draco, the first Law-giver (though a ridid one) to the *Athenians*.

Empedocles, the inventer of the Art of Rhetorick.

Epeus, invented the battering Rame, at the siege of *Troy*.

Erich-thonius, he sprung out of the Earth, where *Vulcan* spilt his seed; having Dragons Feet to hide their deformity: he invented the use of the Chariot.

Etholus the Son of *Mars*, invented the Dart or Javelin.

Eumolphus, the first Graffer or Inoculator of Trees.

Euryalus and **Hyperbius**, *Athenian* Brethren, that first built Houses of Brick.

Gyges, the first that drew Pictures in *Ægypt*. But **Euchir** in *Greece*.

Johannes Guttemburgus a *German* Knight, was the first that found out the Art of Printing.

Lycaon King of *Arcadia*, the first that brought in Truce and Cessation of Arms in War.

Lycurgus King of *Sparta* the Law-giver of *Sparta*, and the *Lacedemonians*: as **Moses** to the *Jews*, **Solon** to the *Athenians*, **Charandes** to the *Tyrians*, **Phoroneus** to the *Argives*, **Minos** to the *Cretans*, **Romulus** to the *Romans*, *&c.*

Lysistratus a Famous Artist, the first that found out the Art of *Proplastick*, or casting of Figures in Moulds.

Paulus Venetus, the first finder out of the Virtue of the Load-stone.

Marsyas, the inventer of the *Tibia*, and *Fistula*, two sorts of Pipes.

Mydas, the first inventer of the Coat of Mail, and Cuirasee.

Orpheus, he wonderfully inproved the Art of Playing upon the Harp and Lute, that he made Wild Beasts, Trees, and Rocks to Dance after the sound of his Lyre.

Osiris King of *Argos*, the first that propogated Husbandry in *Ægypt*.

Palamedes, invented Weights and Measures, and of using Calculy, or Counters: both for Computation, and Summing of Numbers, and Votes.

Pan, the Author of the *Fistula* or Musical Pipe, and the Recorder, both the single, and several of them joyned together in one: though the double or joyned *Tibia* is ascribed to **Terpander**.

Flavius Git of *Naples*, the first inventer of the Mariners compass and use of the Magnet, or Load-stone, in these parts of the World.

Perdix, was the first inventer of the Compass.

Filumnus, the first inventer of Mills for Corn, Baking, and ordering of Corn for Bread: others ascribe them to **Ceres**.

Pariteles, the first Carver in Marble, and inventer of Looking-Glasses, which he made first of Silver.

Pythagoras, the first inventer of Arithmetick, and the Art of Numbers.

Pythus, the first inventer of many Games at Ball: I do not say of Gaff, Tennis, or Paille-Maille.

Sesostris a King in *Ægypt*, first made Ships long, which before were round like a Shield.

Bartholdus Swarth or **Niger**, a *German* Frier; first found out the way and use of making Gunpowder, whence sprung the original of Pistols, Muskets, Cannons, Morter pieces, and all kind of fire murthering Engines, about the Year 1470.

Sythians, the first inventers of the War Engine, called a Catapulta.

Phygians, the inventer of the Chariots, called Bigæ and Quadriga, and of all sorts of Needle Works.

Phaenicians, the inventors of the Cross-bow, Balista or Brake, and Sling in War.

Lacedemonians, (as *Pliny* writs) were the first inventors of the Sword, Helmet, and Spear.

Athenians, first had the use and invention of making Wool into Cloth, and Oyle from Fruit, and to be Planters, Pruners, and Cutters of Vines.

Egyptians boast themselves to have the first invention of Letters, Astrology, Geometry, and the use of the Lamp: and particularly ascribed to the Person of **Menon**.

Theodorus de Samos, the inventer of the Norma or Ruler, Key and Lock, and the Turners Wheel, square and level.

Thessalians, the first People that addicted themselves to Horsman-ship and Riding, that brought in the use of Bridle and Saddle, and the custom of Fighting on Horseback.

Thracians, the first inventer of the Sithe.

Vulcan, the first discoverer of the use of all sorts of Mettals, and the inventer of Smiths Work.

Zoroaster, first King of the *Bactrians*, who was the only Person as made known the skill of Magick to the *Persians*.

Anaragoras, a Noble Philosopher, he by his skill in Astronomy foretold what time a great Stone should fall from the Sun; which accordingly came to pass in the sight of many: he was the first that Writ of the Eclips of the Moon.

Cecrops, the first King of the *Athens*, he first invented Marriage amongst the *Heathens*, found out Images, built Alters, and offered Sacrifice amongst the *Greeks*.

Cleostratus a Noble Philosopher, the first that Wrote of the Constellations.

Coroebus of *Athens* one who first invented the making of Earthen Vessels.

Diburades a Potter in *Corinth*, that first taught how to make Vessels with Figures & Pictures of Men on them.

Erythras the King, that found out the use of Shipping and Sailing in the Red Sea; as *Pliny* saith.

Eudoxus a Philosopher and great Geometrician, and the first among the *Grecians* that brought the Year to the course of the Moon.

Hipparchus, the first that found out Mathematical Instruments.

Laocoon the Son of *Priamus* by *Hecuba*, Priest of *Apollo*, he dissuaded the *Trojans* for taking the Wooden Horse into *Troy*: because he having run his Javelin into it, made the Armour of the Armed Men in it to make a clatter. But *Minerva* was angry with him for it, and caused a Serpent that came out of the Sea to slay him and his two Sons.

Naucrates taught the *Egyptians* to Write by the Pictures of Beasts and Trees.

Palamedes, he invenled the four Greek Letters, Θ Ξ Χ Φ adding them to the 16 invented by **Cadmus**. He first found out the Eclipse of the Sun, and the Month to the course of the Moon: He found out the skill of ordering an Army, and the giving of a Watch-word, which was said he learned of *Cranes*.

Perillus the inventer of the Brazen Bull, in which if a Man were put, there should proceed a noise like the lowing or bellowing of a Bull. **Phalaris** the Tyrant put him in first, and there being tried: he shewed the Experience of his Work with loss of his own Life. It was a good piece of Justice on such a Witty inventer of other Mens mischief.

Prometheus Son of *Japetus*, Father of *Deucalion*; He was the first that made Man of Clay or Earth: *Minerva* would give him his desire if he perfected it, being brought into Heaven, he saw all things lived by Heavenly fire; and having a little Ferula in his hand, he put it it to the Chariot Wheel of the Sun, and being kindled brought fire to the Earth, and therewith put Life and Soul into his Man made of Clay. *Jupiter* being angry thereat sent *Pandora* with a Box to her Husband, which after he had opened, the flew out thence all sorts of Diseases which infected and destroyed all Men made of Clay and Earth.

Simonides, he was the first that found out the Art of Memory.

Thrasymedes a Schollar to *Isocrates*, he first found out points in reading: as Comma, Colon, *&c.*

Triptolemus the Son of *Celeus* King of *Attica*, who first espied how Corn grew of its own accord, reaped it, and after that Plowed and Sowed more, he grew so skilful that he wrote Commentaries of Tillage, and sent them abroad into the World.

Trismegistus, a Ruler in *Egypt*, in the time of *Moses*, he first invented Characters for to Write by (not such as we use now) but shapes and pictures of Beasts, Birds, Trees, Fish, *&c.* whereby in brief they might express their minds: which Characters they called, Hieroglyphickes.

Zoroastes a King of the *Bactrians*, *Anno M.* 1951. whom *Ninus* slew; he first found out Magick, Writ of the nature of Precious Stones, of Astronomy and the seven Liberal Arts. At his birth, (it is said) he of all Men only laughed, and that he did so beat, that he did repell the Mid-wives hands.

Bacchus

Bacchus was the first inventer of the Royal Enfign and Ornament for the Head called, the Crown or Diadem, and for that was accounted a Prince.

Cinyra Son of *Agrippa*, first invented Pincers, Hammer, Anvil, Iron Crow, and the Sithe.

Thason the first builder of Stone Walls, Towers, and Fortresses.

Egyptians, first found the invention of Weaving.

Lydians, the first Dyers of Wool.

Closter the *Arachne*, the making of the Spindle for Wollen Yarn.

Niccas the *Megarean*, the Fullers Craft, the Milling of Cloth.

Boetius, the *Taylors* Craft in making of Garment.

Lydus the *Scythian*, the Founders Craft and Casting of Mettles.

Æcus, found the Mines of Silver and Gold, and worked in that Mettle, being the Master of *Gold-Smiths:* others say **Cadmus.**

Hydacritus was the first as brought Lead for the Plumbers to work with.

Carthaginians had the first Honor of being Merchants and following Traffique, and Trading in Merchandizes.

Anisius and **Praetus,** devised Shields, Bucklers, and Targets, when they Warred with each other.

Curians devised the Grieves, the Crest and Pennaches upon the Helmet.

Scythes Son of *Jupiter*, devised Bow and Arrows.

Ætolians, the Launce and Pike.

Pensethilia the *Amazon* Queen devised the Grieve, Bill, Halbert, and Battle-Axe.

Piseus, the Boar Spear, Chasing-Staff.

Certes, the Cross-Bow.

Piseus the *Tyrrhenian*, the Brason Trumpet.

Pelethromas, invented the Saddle, Bridle, and other furniture for the riding of the Horse.

Anarimander, invented the Sphere, or Celestial Globe.

Acastus in *Jolcum*, we are beholding unto for the first Solemnities of Funerals, and Funeral Ceremonies.

Trojans and **Mysians,** are said of some to be the first that sailed in Ships over Seas, passing from one Land to another.

Jason first used the Long Boat, or Ship, or Galley.

Copeans, divised the Oars.

Icarus, the Sails, and **Daedalus,** the Mast and Cross Yard.

Epalamus the Anchor, and **Typhis** the Helme or Rudder.

Men Famous for the Art of Painting.

Some disingenious Spirits will tell me, that Mechanical Arts, and those wrought with the Hand are for the most part base and unworthy, the practize of great Personage and Gentlemen: But let me tell such, that surely it can be no more a disgrace to a great Lord to draw a fair Picture, then to cut his Hawks Meat, or play at Tennis with his Page. Yea far more Honourable to exercise himself in this, then to spend his vacant hours in the sinful practizes of wickedness which tend to nothing but disgrace and destruction.

Quintus Fabius (whose Family was one of the Noblest in *Rome*, who after had the Surname of *Pictores*) with his own Hands painted the Walls of the Temple of *Salus*, and wrote his Name under his own Work.

Pomponius Atticus, a Man of singular Wisdom, who after he had composed a Poem of sundry devises, beautified the same with Pictures of his own drawing.

The **Emperour Constantine** got his living a long time by Painting: as *Sigebert* in his Chronicle relateth.

Parrhasius most of all others in his time excelled in drawing in black and white.

Apollodorus among the *Athenians* was the first that did express the Life in colours.

Pyreicus was only famous for counterfeitings of base things, as Earthen Pitchers, a Scullery, Rogues together by the Ears, Swine tumbling in the Mire, *&c.* Whereupon he was Surnamed **Rupographus,** that is Painter of base things.

Metrodorus an *Athenian*, was so excellent in Painting that he was well-nigh Honored as a God.

Aristides, was the most excellent of his time for expressing Sense and Passion.

Protogenes, was the first that could lay his colours so Artificially, that one being worn off, a fresh would succeed to the Number of four or five.

Apelles who lived in 1312 *Olympiade*, excelled all the rest, yet for Action he gave Place to *Amphion*.

Zeuris, L. **Manlius,** and **Pacuvius;** excellent Painters who have made many Artificial pieces.

Nothing inferiour to these rare Artists (in my Judgment) have been our Painters of late time *viz.* within these two Centuries, and many now living at this day in sundry parts of *Europe*, whose Works do and will remain as famous to Posterity, as **Apelles** or the best of them all have done to us.

Raphael Urbine, is ever to be admired for that excellent piece of his, in the Church of St. *Victore* in *Milane*.

Michael Angelo, his rare Workmanship of the last Judgment in the Popes Chappel in *Rome*.

Hercole di Ferrara, his Noble Art is seen in *Bononia*, and the beautifying the Church of *Laterane* in *Rome*.

Petro de Burgo, for Prospective.

Albert Durer, for Drapery.

Goltzius, for good standing and bold Action.

Hans Holben, for Sense and the Life.

Marcus de Siena, for Land-skips, with infinite others.

Andrea Mantega, so famous in his Art, that Pope *Innocence* the eight gave him 2000 Ducats for a Months Work.

Sir **Anthony Van Dike,** for draught and good postures, and lively Painting, none before him.

Mr. **Stennick,** for Prospective Work.

Mr. **Huck,** for Figures and Prospective to be loocked through a hole.

Vanderbus, for Pots and Kettles, *&c.* And **Bassano,** for Sheep, Cows, Doggs, *&c.*

Cornelius Johnson, for smooth Painting.

Adrian Hanyman, for a Face and smooth Painting.

Paulo Veroniza, Paulo Morello, Tician, Tintoret, Ruben, Zurst, Kneller Swiſick, and **Witeins,** all famous and great Maſters for Invention and Painting.

Humphrey Cumber, for ſweet ſhadows, and a true Complexion.

Van Colon, Van Somer, excellent for Flowers, Fruit, and Birds, *&c.*

Nor muſt I be unmindful of our one Countrymen who have been and are able to equal the beſt: as,

Mr. **Hilliard** and **Iſaac Oliver,** inferiour to none in Chriſtendom for the Face or Countenance in ſmall.

Mr. **Peak,** and Mr. **Marques,** for Oyle colouring.

Sir **Peter Lilly,** for Womens Faces.

Mr. **Houſman,** for Mens Faces.

Mr. **Hale** and Mr. **Wright,** for fine curious Painting.

Mr. **Richard Blackborne,** for a fleſhy Face ſcarce any before him, and an excellent Poet.

Mr. **Bloomer,** for Country Swain and Clowns.

Mr. **Walker,** Mr. **Dobſon,** who died in his prime, Mr. **Fuller,** and **Gaithorpe,** excellent Painters by the Life, with Inventions.

Mr. **Smith** for Fruite, Mr. **Moore,** for generall painting. **Pooley,** for a Face. **Lutorne,** for Landskip. And **Serville,** for Drapery.

Mr. **William Bumbury, Wilcock, Hodges** and **Hodgskis,** all good Painters by the Life, and otherwiſe: Mr **Poines** for Draught and Invention.

Mr. **Tho. Arundel** for good Draught and Hiſtory painting: with many more unknown to me.

Maſcy Tinter.

This is a New and Late Invention of taking from a Plate any form or ſhape of Creature without Etching or Engraving, and is performed by ſmooty ſhadows, as if the thing were painted or limed with black and white: Is is a very curious Art, and as report goeth, was firſt found out by Prince *Rupert*, Son to the King of *Bohemia* by the Princeſs *Elizabeth*, Daughter of King *James* the Firſt of *England*.

LXI. He beareth Argent, a **Muſicioner playing on a Treble Vial, cloathed** all in blew with a Scarlet **Cloak** hanging on his back, **Hat** Sable, **Feather** Gules. This is the Creſt of *Fidler* in *Countryton*.

LXII. He beareth Or, a **Bag-Piper** playing on his **Bag-Pipes** proper, **Cloathed** all in Scarlet, **Cloak** Azure: **Hat** and **Shooes,** Sable. Born by the name of *Piper*.

He beareth Or, a **Man ſitting** in a **Chair** with a **Baſe Vial** between his Knees playing upon the ſame all in their proper colours. This is the Badge of the Muſick Houſe, or Chamber in the City of *London*.

He beareth Vert, a **Woman** in a **Looſe Garment, Mantle flying** about, Argent: playing upon a **Lute,** Or. Born by the name of *Lutener*.

He beareth Gules, a **Man in a ſide Coat** of blew, laced in each Seam, Or: on his left Arm hangs a **Tabern** and a **Pipe** in his Hand, with a beaking ſtick in the other, Or. This in ſhort is termed a **Taberner,** or a **Man playing on the Tabern** and **Pipe;** which is no other then a ſmall Drum hung on his left Arm, on which he beats with his right hand with a Drum-ſtick, and a long Pipe or Whiſtle in his Mouth held by his ſaid left Hand. The *Jews* calls this the **Tabyet** and **Pipe;** the Vulgar a **Tabert** and **Whiſtle;** and **Tabern** and **Pipe.**

He beareth Azure, a **Turke ſkipping** or holding up one Leg, and his Arms playing or beating on a **Tamberbaſe,** Or. This is a Turkiſh Muſical Inſtrument, which they uſe in all their Dances, and Merry-hopping, and leapings.

He beareth Azure, an **Angel, Wings Sepulture,** Argent; playing on a **Recorder,** mounted up to the Dexter chief, Or. This is the Coat and Creſt of *Mount-Angello* of *Italy*: a Cognizance anſwerable to the name, and that Eluſion of the Pſalmiſt, whith Shawmes & ſound of Trumpets ſing loud before the Lord, *Pſal.* 98. 6.

Muſick Vocal or with Strings.

Whether it be **Vocal** or **Inſtrumental,** is a great rejoycer of the Heart, and a lifter of Dead, Drowſie and Melancholly Spirits; being an Art unſearchable, Divine, and Excellent: and is nothing elſe, but a true Concordance of ſounds, which produceth a ſweet and delightſome Harmony to the Ears of Men, with a pleaſing of the Phantaſie.

The **Scale of Muſick,** is to ſhew the Degrees by which a voice Natural or Artificial may either aſcend or deſcend.

Degrees in Muſick, are ſeven which are marked by theſe Letters: A B. C. D. E. F. G.

The **Gam-ut,** it is the naming of the Scale, or Notes in Muſick which were theſe ſix: *Ut, Re, Mi, Fa. Sol, La*; but now four are only in uſe, as *Sol, La, Mi, Fa*: ſo that *Ut*, and *Re*, are changed into *Sol*, and *La*.

Cliffs, or **Cleaves:** are the terms of the ſeven foreſaid Letters, and the Gam-ut or Syllables joyned to them are the names of the Notes or Keys.

Septenaries, are three degrees aſcending one above another, and by them is diſtinguiſhed the three ſeveral parts of Muſick: as,

The **Baſe,** which is the loweſt part of Muſick.

The

The **Mean**, or middle part of the Musick. The **Tenor**, or **Counter-Tenor**.

The **Treble**, or highest part in Musick. The **Cantus**.

The **Notes** or **Keys**, are the Syllables of the *Gam-ut*, which are 20 in Number: as.

E. la.
D. la. sol.
C. sol fa.
B. fa mi.
A. la. mi. re.
G. sol. re. ut.
F. fa. ut.
E. la. mi.
} called the **Alts**, the **Treble**, or **Highest Keys**.

𝄞

D. la. sol. re.
C. sol. fa. ut.
B. fa. mi.
A. la. mi. re.
G. sol. re. ut.
F. fa. ut.
E. la. mi.
D. sol. re.
C. fa. ut.
B. mi.
A. re.
G. ut.
} called the **Tenor Notes**, or the **Mean** or **Middle keys**.

𝄡

} called the **Base Notes**, or **Lowest Keys**.

The **Characters** of the Scale are in Number three, as

The **F Cliffe**, or **F fa ut Cliffe**, marked thus 𝄢 it is the lowest, and is peculiar to the Base, and set on the fourth Line

The **C Cliffe**, or **C sol fa ut Cliffe**, marked thus 𝄡 which is a fift upon the **F Cliffe**, and stands for all **Tenor**, or **inner part of Musick**.

The **G Cliffe**, or **G sol re ut Cliffe**, is marked thus 𝄞 and is the **Treble** or **Highest part**, and is a fift above the **C Cliffe**.

The **Lines** or **Spaces**, are those Lines made in Song and Musical Books, for the pricking of Songs and Lessons on; which are only five Lines together, they being sufficient for all Notes: if any exceeds higher, it is usual to add a Line in that place.

The **Staves of Lines**, or **Spaces**; for Organs, Virginals, Harps, and such like; have two Staves of six Lines together, one for the left hand or lower Keys, the other for the right hand and upper Keys: they are called a **Staff**, or **Stansa**.

The **Flat** in the Song is thus marked *b* which denotes that if it be in the beginning of a Song, it causes all the Notes in that line or space to be called **fa** throughout the Song: if in any other place, it serves for that particular Note before it is placed.

The **Sharp** in a Song is thus marked ♯ this is contrary to the other, for whereas the *b* take away a Semi-tone or part from the sound of the Note to make it more grave and flat; this ♯ doth add a Semi-tone to its Note before which it is set, to make it more Acute and sharp.

The **Notes** with their Names and Characters are these as follow.

The **Large Note** is thus marked ▭ or thus II which is a Double or Treble long Note, which the *Latins* called *Larga* or *Maxima Nota*, which is our large or highest Note.

The **Long Note**, is thus marked ▭ or thus I, containing the space between three Lines: this is in order to a Long Syllable.

The **Breve Note** is thus marked ▭, or thus I. being the space between two Lines.

The **Semi-breve Note** is thus marked ○ or I. on the lower side of a Line.

The **Minim Note** is thus marked ♩ or thus I fixed on the top of a Line.

The **Crochet Note** is thus marked ♩ or thus ↑. on the top of a Line.

The **Quaver Note** is thus marked ♪ or thus ↑. on the middle of a Line.

The **Semi-quaver** is thus marked. ♪

The **Demisemiquaver** is thus marked. ♪

The **Rests** or **Pauses**, are the stroaks or marks which are set over cross the Lines from outside to outside of the Staff, whether it consists either of five or six Lines: which are called **Long Rests**, **Breve Rests**, **Semi-breve Rests**, *&c.*

Modes or **Moods**, are the way of measuring of Notes and they are three; of some four, which are,

The **Perfect of the More**; it is the **Measure** or **Mode** in which (time and prolation being imployed) a Large contains three Longs; and a Long contains three Breves; a Breve three Semi-breves; and a Semi-breve three Minims: It is thus marked ⊙ 3.

The **Perfect of the Less**, it is the second Mode or Measure, and in it the Large contains two Longs: the Long two Breves, *&c.* the Time and Measure Note in this Mode is the Breve, and the Sign or Mark is thus, O 3.

The **Imperfect of the More**, is a Measure in which the Large contains 2 Longs; a Long 2 Breves; a Breve 2 Semi-breves; and a Semi-breve (which is the Time Note of this Mood) contains 3 Minims: it Sign or Mark is thus, C 3.

The **Imperfect of the Less**, (now called the common Mood, the other three being laid aside as useless) it is a Mood wherein 2 Longs makes a Large; 2 Breves a Long; 2 Semi-breves a Breve, *&c.* so that a Large contains 2 Longs, 4 Breves, 8 Simi-breves, 16 Minims, 32 Crochets, 64 Quavers, *&c.* The Sign or Mark of this Mood is thus, C or thus ¢

Time or **Measure**, is the motion of the Hand or Foot down and up, successively and equally divided.

The **Measure** or **Time Note**, it is the length of a Semi-breve in a Song, or Tune.

Bar or **Bars**, are the distance between the cross stroaks with the Lines, or Spaces between them in every **Staff** or **Stanza**, thus | or thus ||

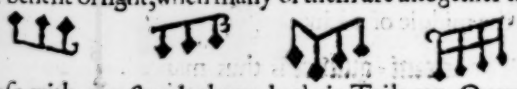
A **Director** is thus marked ✓ and it is set at the end

end of the five Lines, to shew where the first Note of the next five Lines doth stand: Some term it a **Direct Character.**

A **Tye, or Arch-stroake** thus ⌣ either over or under 2. 3. or more Notes: signifies in vocal Musick, so many Notes to be sung to one Syllable: and in Viols or Violins it signifies so many Notes to be play'd with one motion of the Bow.

A **Prick of Perfection** or **Addition,** is ever marked with a point or prick of a Pen on the right side of all Notes thus ◻. ◇. ♀. and is for the prolonging the sound of that Note it follows, to half as much more as it is of it self.

Tying of Notes, that is when Notes of 2 4 or more Quavers or Semi-quavers are tied together by a long stroaks on the top of the Tails; which though they be so, yet they are the same with the others, being so tied only for benefit of sight, when many of them are altogether thus,



those with one stroak through their Tails are Quavers, those with two stroaks are Semi-quavers, when have 3 or more stroaks, they are Demi-semiquavers.

A **Double Tying of Notes,** or the second sort of Tye is thus ⌣⌣⌣ and it is set over 2. 3. 4. or more Notes to shew they must be all played with once drawing the Bow on the Viol, or Violin.

Tablature, is the placing of Letters, or the Gam-ut Notes on the Lines or Spaces in Musical Books to play by.

A *b.* is to be observed, that where this Character *b.* is set before any Note of the Gam-ut, makes it stopt a **Fret higher.**

A ✱ or X. being set before a Note, makes it a **Fret lower.**

A **Sharp Note.**

A **Flat Note.**

A **Division in Musick.**

A **Strain in Musick.**

The **End of a Straine,** is marked with 2 stroaks through the Lines thus, ‖. which signifies the end of the Song.

The **Straine Repeated,** is thus marked ⁝‖ which signifies that part to be Sung over again.

A **Repeat** is thus marked 𝄇 and signifies a repetition of the Song from that place only where it is set.

A **Stay** or **Hold** is thus marked 𝄐 and is commonly set at one end of a Song or Lesson to signifie the close or conclusion thereof.

A **Syncope** or **Driving a Note,** is when after some short Note which begins the Measure, or half Measure, there immediately follows 2. 3. or more Notes of a greater quantity.

Odd Rests, are such as take up only some part or parcel of a Semi-breve, Time and Measure; and have always reference to some odd Notes, by which the Measure is made even.

The **Tripla Time,** it is marked at the beginning of a Song or Lesson thus 3 and signifies that the Time and Measure must be compted by threes.

The **Common Tripla,** signifies the common Measure of time: as 3 Minims.

A **Diminution,** it is the lessening or abateing something of the full value or quantity of Notes: the Sign or Mark is thus ☽ turning of the Sign of the Mood backwards: or else thus ¢ which requires each Note to be playd on sung twice so quick as when it stands the usual way.

A **Counterpoint,** is the composing of Descant or Tunes for Songs or Lessons by setting point against point, from whence it still retains the name of Counterpoint.

Intervals in Musick, is that distance or difference which is between any two sounds, where one is more grave, the other more Acute.

An **Unison** or **Octave,** is one and the same sound, or Tune, whether it be by one voice or diverse in the same Tune.

Semitone, the lesser Second, or half Note.
Tone, the greater second.
Semiditone, the lesser third.
Ditone, the greater third.
Diatessaron, the perfect fourth.
Tritone, the greater fourth.
Semidiapente, the imperfect fifth.
Diapente, the perfect fifth.
Hexachordon mi, the lesser sixth.
Hexachordon ma, the greater sixth.
Sept Minor, the lesser seventh.
Sept Major, the greater seventh.
Semidiaphason, the defective eighth.
Diaphason, the octave, or eight.

Semi, it is not to be taken for the half of such a Note or Interval in Musick, but only imports a dificiency, as wanting something of perfection.

Concords, is an agreement in Musick: called also **Cords.**

Discords, is a disagreement in Musick.

Composition, is the composing of Tunes.

Passage of the Concords, is when the parts of a Lesson pass into a contrary motion, as to pass from a 5th. to an 8th. or from an 8th. to a fifth.

The **Key,** or **Mood,** or **Tone;** of a Song or Lesson, is the sound or grace of a Song: which is said to be either flat or sharp, according to the flat or sharp 3d. that is joyned to it.

The **Closes** or **Cadences of Musick,** are falls or rising in Musick, which serves as Bounds and Limits to keep it in due Decorum: these Closes or Cadences in any Key or Tone is sometime used in the Middle of a Tone, as well as at conclusions.

Composition of parts, as 2. 3. or 4. parts; is the orderly composing of Tunes, so as 2. 3. or 4. may joyn together in one and the same Song or Lesson, to make a Concord.

Base and **Treble,** when two play together.

Base, Alt, and **Treble;** when three joyn in one consort.

Base, Tenor, Alt, and **Treble;** when the composition is in four parts.

Transition or the **Breaking of a Note,** that is to make smooth or sweeten the roughness of a Leap by a gradual passing to the Note next following.

Base,

Base, Tenor, Alt, Treble 2. Treble 1. when five are in a consort.

Base, Tenor 2. Tenor 1. Alt, Treble 2. Treble 1. when six are in a consort.

Base, Tenor 2. Tenor 1. Mean, Alt, Treble 2. Treble 1. when seven are in a composition of parts

Base 1. Base 2. Tenor 2. Tenor 1. Alt 2. Alt 1. Treble 2. and **Treble 1.** when it is of eight parts: and so they are termed according to their parts.

Diminution, is a discord in Musick yet admitted; that is, when 2. 3. or more Notes of one part are set against one Note of a diffeeent part: and this is done by a gradual Transition from one Concord to another.

Syncopation, is another way of Discord in Musick; and that is, when a Note of one part ends and breaks off upon the middle of the Note of another part: it is called **Syncops in Discord.**

Bindings or **Syncopations,** are sevenths with sixths: sixths with fifths: fifths with fourths: and fourths with thirds.

Passage of Discords, is the winding or bringing a Discord off, and that is by changing from thence into some imperfect Concord, into which more sweetness seems to be added by the Discord sounding before it.

Note against Note, is another way in which Discords are used in Musick, which is by setting Note for Note of the same quantity one against the other.

Inharmonical Relation, is a harsh reflection of flat against sharp in a cross form: that is, when the present Note of one part compared with the foregoing Note of another part, doth produce some harsh and displeasing Discord.

Diatonick Scale, is the rising in Musick, or Voice; to a fifth and to an eight by two Tones and one Semi-tone.

Chromatick Scale, rises to a fifth by a Tone, and five Semi-tones.

Enharmonick Scale, it rises gradually by Deises or quarter Notes, of which 24 makes an Octave.

Octave sound, is the sound of any Musical string stopt in the middle, if it be compared to the sound of the open string.

Greater and **Lesser Semi-tones,** are higher or lower sounds made on a Musical according to the distance of its stops from the Bridge of the Instrument.

Figurate Discant, is that wherein Discords are concerned as well as Concords: for in this are introduced all the varieties of Points, Fuges, Syncopes or Bindings, diversities of Measures, intermixtures of Discording sounds, or what else Art or Phancy can exhibit: some call it **Florid Discant.**

Counterpoint, is when each part doth orderly and ordinarily move within its own Sphear: they orderly pass through one another.

Disallowances, are when the higher parts in Musick skips to a fifth or eight, whilest the Bass removes but one degree, or when both parts together skip the same way.

Descant, is the Art of composing of Musick in parts.

A **Double Descant,** is when the parts are so contrived, that the Treble may be made the Base, and the Base the Treble.

Consecution, is a consequent or orderly following of Musical Notes, as fourths following fifths, *&c.*

Fuge or **Fuga,** this is some point consisting in 4. 5. 6. or more Notes; begun by a single Person one part, and then seconded by a following part, repeating the same or such like Notes: The leading part still flying before those which follow.

Per Arsin and **Thesin,** the inverting of points; that is, where it rises in one part, it falls in another: and so the contrary.

Double Fuges, is when the Musick begins with 2 or more different points, which the parts do interchange by turns.

Theory, or **Mathematick part of Musick;** is the contemplating, affecting, proportioning of sounds, with all their nice concerments.

Practick part of Musick, is to design contrive, and dispose those sounds into so many strange varieties.

Active or **Mechanick part of Musick;** is the bringing forth of those sounds, either by the excellent Modulation of the Voice: or by the exquisite dexterity of the hand upon some Instrument.

Several sorts of Tunes in Musick.

Vocal Musick, is the Harmony of the Voice, of which there are different kinds: as namely.

Madrigals, are grave and serious Sonets.

Dramatick or **Recitative Songs,** as Trills and Gruppo's used much in *Italy*, and now in *England*.

Cansonets, Villanella's, Airs: or what else Poetry hath contrived to be set or sung to Musick.

Canons, Catches, and **Rounds:** Songs designed for Mirth and Recreation.

Ditty, a Song or Tune: a **pleasant Ditty** or **Glee.**

Fancy, it is a chief and most excellent part of Musick, being the Art and contrivance thereof: **Fantasies.**

A **Pavan,** is the height of composition made only to delight the Ear: be it of 2. 3. 4. 5. or 6. parts, doth commonly consist of three straines, each straine to be played twice over.

A **Straine,** is an airy touch of 3 or 4 parts.

Aires, or **Ayrie Tunes.**

A **Galliard,** it is a lofty and frolick movement, it consists of two, sometimes of three strains: the Measure of it, always a Tripla of 3 Minims to a time.

An **Almaine,** it is of a more quick and airy movement: it commonly hath but 2 straines, the first ending most in a middle Key.

A **Corant,**

A **Saraband,**

A **Country-Dance Tune,**

A **Jigg,** all these are running Merry Tunes.

A **Nonupla,** is a quick time in Musick peculiar to Giggs and such like: having 9 Crochets between Bar and Bar.

The **Dorick Mood,** of singing consisted in sober slow tuned Notes counterpoint, where the composition of parts

part goes Note for Note together, be they of 2, 3, or 4 parts.

The **Lydian Mood**, was used to grave solemn Musick, the Descant or Composition being of slow time, and fitted to Sacred Hymns, Anthems, and spiritual Songs; either alone, or in 4 or 5 parts; also Psalms, Versicles, Responsaries, Motets, *&c.*

The **Æolick Mood**, is that which is of a more Airy and soft pleasing sound, as the Madrigals aforesaid, and Fa la's of 5 or 6 parts, composed for Viols and Voices.

The **Phrygian Mood**, is a Warlike and Couragious kind of Musick, expressing the Musick of Trumpets and other Instruments of old exciting to Arms and Activity.

The **Jonick Mood**, is a far more light and effeminate Musick, as pleasant Amorous Songs, Corants, Sarabands, *&c.* used for honest Mirth and Delight at Feasts and other merriments.

The **Graces** or **Flourishes** in Musick, are of several sorts, the **Shake** is the principal, of which there are two, as

The **Close shake**, is when the first finger stops the first fret, and shake with the second finger as close to it as can be.

The **Open shake**, is when the first finger stops the first fret, and shake with the third finger on the third fret.

Double Relishes, is thus marked ∴.

A **Backfall shake** is thus marked ⌣

Backfalls have this mark before its notes ⌣

A **double Backfall**, thus marked.

A **Beat**, is a grace or flourish thus marked before its Notes.

An **Elevation** is a flourish thus marked ⌐ +

A **Springer**, is a grace or flourish marked thus ∠

A **Cadent** or **Fall** is a flourish thus marked \.

A **shaked Beat**, is a grace in Musick thus marked

An **Elevation shaked**, is thus marked ⌗ /

A **Cadent shaked** is thus marked ⌗

A **Figure** thus 3 is often set at the beginning of a Song or Lesson, which signifies that the time or measure must be compted by threes, and the end of the Song is thus marked or thus

The **Musitian** or **Musitianer**, is one that hath the Skil and Art of Musick.

The **Principles** of Composition, is the Learning of all the Keys, Moods, Notes, and Characters and terms of Musick.

A **Consort**, is many Musitians playing on several Instruments together.

A **Doctor** in Musick.

A **Batchelor** in Musick.

The **Rudiments** of Songs or Musick.

The **Contrivance** of Canon.

They that desire farther knowledg in the terms of Musick for the Voice or Viols, let them peruse these Authors.

The Introduction to the Skill of Musick by Jo. Playford.

The Compendium of Practical Musick by Christopher Sympson.

Musick recreation for Viol Lyra way. And Apollo's Banquet *for the Treble Viol.*

Musicks Hand-Maid for the Virginals, in quarto.

Musicks delight for the Cithern, in Octavo.

Treasury of Musick for Cithern, Theorbo-Lute and Viol.

Wind Musick.

By **Wind Musick** I mean all sorts of **Piping Instruments**, as the **Flagellet, Flute, Hoboy, Psalter, Recorder, Tibia, Bag-pipes**, and such like, which receive sound from the Wind of the mouth.

Now the Directions for young Beginners to attain to to the Art of Playing on these said Instruments and several others (sounded by the Mouth, and having holes on the sides to be stopt with the Fingers) have all of them one and the same method and terms (in a manner) as to their Teaching, which said Terms take in short, as followeth.

Dots, are the Pricks upon the Lines of the Musick Book, which answer to the Holes on the Instrument, thus, 1

Lines for the Pricking of Tunes or Lessons are six in a Stave, which are the number of the Holes, each Line for a Hole.

Notes, are certain Characters placed over the Dots of the Lines for the expressing the measure of time, slow or swift.

A **Cypher** set upon the uppermost Line, signifieth that in that place or part of the Lesson all the holes are to be open.

Stopt, that is, the holes must be stopt by the Fingers answering the Dots or Pricks set on the six lines, as

The **Thumb** on the left hand stops the under hole of the Instrument according to the Dots on the first line.

The **first Finger** of the same hand, stops the hole on the top, as the Dots or Pricks are set on the second line.

The **second Finger** of the said hand stops the second hole on the top of the Instrument, according to the Dots set on the third line.

The **first Finger** of the right hand, is to stop the third hole on the top, according to the Dots on the fourth line.

The **Thumb** of the right hand, is to stop the second or lower hole under the Instrument, according to the dots set on the fifth line.

The **second Finger** of the same hand stops the fourth hole above, according to the Dots on the sixth line.

Tunes, or **Sounds**, or **Notes Ascending**, are the eight sounds an Instrument gives according to the several holes stopped, as first the six holes to be all stopt, then 5, then 4, then 3, then 2, then two again, *viz.* the Thumb and second Finger of the left hand, then 1 hole stopt, and lastly all the holes open.

Tunes,

Tunes, or **Notes**, or **Sounds descending**, are the eight sounds played back again in order downwards as they were raised, beginning with all the holes open, then to stop one hole, then two, *&c.*

Rising and **falling Notes**, are those ascending and descending as aforesaid; where note, that the taking up of a Finger raiseth the Note, and the stopping down falls it.

Pinching Notes, or **higher Notes**, are sounds that ascend 8 Notes higher than the plain notes, and are marked or distinguished from them by a dash drawn through the first or highest Dot, making it a cross; thus 1 +

The **Graces** in a Tune or Lesson are several, which be thus termed and marked.

A **Beat**, whose mark or character is thus) which if it be on the same line even with the dot, then you are to lift up that finger, and shake or quaver it on the said hole several times, and lay it down again, before you Play any other Note.

A **Shake** is thus marked) which if it stand alone upon any other line under a Dot, then with the Finger belonging to that line on which it is set, you must shake and quaver, taking it off again before you Play any other Note.

A **Slur** or **Slide**, which is thus marked ⌣ beginning at a line and falling back, riseth again and dasheth through it and the line above it; it is placed under the line that hath the dot, and is a tye of that Note to the next following, shewing thereby that those two Notes must be expressed together or with one breadth.

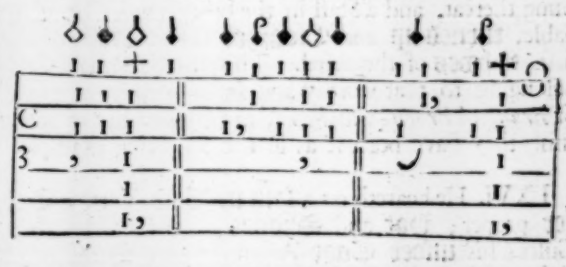
The **Mood for Common Time**, or **Proportion** of the Notes, either by two times, as one Semibreve makes two Minims; so one Minim makes two Crotchets; and one Crotchet two Quavers; and 1 Quaver makes 2 Semiquavers. This common time is thus noted ¢

The **Mood for Triple Time** is thus marked $\frac{C}{3}$ and is multiplied by 3.

The **Names** of the Notes of time are these, **Semibreve**, which is thus noted ◇ **Minims** thus ♩ ♩ **Crotchets** thus ♩ ♩ **Quavers** thus ♪ ♪ **Semi-quavers** thus ♪ ♪ any of these Notes having a prick added to it at the head on the right side, makes it three of the following Notes, as ♩: is three **Crotchets** in time, and a ♩. three **Quavers.**

The **Division** or **Parts** of a Lesson is marked with a long perpendicular stroke through all the six lines thus |; if the lesson consist of two parts, each is distinguished thus :||:

For the better light to these terms, take and peruse this one Pricked Lesson, having all its Lines, Dots, Graces, and Notes of time.



LXIII. He beareth Argent, a **Crate-Carrier**, with his **Crate** upon his back, Or: Cloathed in Rusted with a Staffe in his lift hand, Hat and Shoes Sable. This is the Crest belonging to the familey of *Wantherling.*

He beareth Vert, a **Porter carrying of a Pack**, Argent, **Corded** Sable; Cloathed in Tawney, Cap and Shoes of the third. This is the Badge and Cognizance of all Porters and Carriers of Burthens; they have ever a **Leather Girdle** about them, with a **strong Rope** of two or three fouldings hanging thereat, which they have in a readiness to bind the Burthen to their Backs whensoever called thereunto.

This is also termed a **Pedlar and his Pack**; only they differ in this, the **Porters Pack** reacheth over his head and so answerable below; but the Pedlars is a small **Truss, Bundle** or **Fardel**, not exceeding the middle of his head, as *numb.* 63.

LXIV. He beareth Argent, a **Tinker** with his **Budget** on his Back, **Hat, Apron** and **Shoes**, Sable; **Clothed** all in grey; having always in his mouth this Merry cry, **Have you any Work for a Tinker.**

After the Tinker, may follow the **Sow-Gelder**, and the **Bedlam**, being all Wandering Knaves alike, and such as are seldom or never out of their Way, having their Home in every place.

The first is described with a **Long Staff** with a head like to a **Spear** or a Half Pike; and a **Horn hung by his side** at a broad **Leather Belt** or **Girdle** cross his Shoulders.

The **Bedlam** is in the same Garb with a **long Staff**, and a **Cow** or **Ox-horn** by his side; but his Cloathing is more **Fantastick** and **Ridiculous**, for being a Mad-Man, he is madly decked and dressed all over with Rubins, Feathers, cuttings of Cloth, and what not; to make him seem a Mad-Man, or one Distracted, when he is no other than a Dissembling Knave.

He beareth Argent, a **Chimney-sweeper**, Sable; thus in short, but if more larger, term him a **Man** in a **Gown**, and **Broad Brimmed Hat**, with a **Bag** and his **poles** on his Shoulder, with a **Beazom** or **Brush** at the ends, all Sable. This is the Badge of a *Chimney Sweeper.*

LXV. He beareth Argent, a **Salter**, or **Salt-Man**, or **Wich-Man**, with a **Staff** on his right shoulder, with a **Salt Basket** (or **Salt Pannier**)

hung thereat, and a Staff in the other hand, Or, **Cap** Sable, **turned up** and **Cloathed** Gules, **Hose** of the first, **Shoes** of the third. This was the Antient Crest belonging to that worthy and antient Family of *Bruen*, or *Brun*, of *Bruen-Stapleford*, in *Cheshire*. But of latter times they have born it as in the following example.

LXVI. He beareth on a **Hill in Base**, Vert, a **Salter** proper; **Hat** and **Shooes**, Sable; **Cloathed**, Gules; his **under Coat** Argent, with a **Staff** in his right hand, and a **Salt Basket** hanging over his left shoulder, Or; the **Rope** or **Withe**, Sable.

LXVII. He beareth Azure, a **Sailer**, Argent, **Hauling** of a **Rope** out of the Chief, Sable. If you desire it more fully Blazoned, term him a **Sailer**, proper, his **Cap**, Gules, **turned up**, Or, a **Crevat** or **Sailors Scarf** about his Neck party coloured, in a **Waistcoat** and **Canvice Breeches**, **Hose**, Argent, **Shoes**, Sable; **holding of a Rope** in both hands, which proceed out of the Dexter chief, of the last.

O. to the Sinister, the like Sailer in a short Coat and Startops, and a Cap turned B. turning A. holding a Rope over cross him, with his left hand up and right down, which is the Coat and Crest of *Wideman* of *Meychnysch*.

Terms used by Marriners and Saylors.

And here as the Art pertains to the Ocean, so I see I must enter into an Ocean of Words; the Profundity and Mistery whereof few Men can attain unto; and for the multitude of them, they are able to make a Dictionary themselves, to which I must refer the Courteous Reader; only here give a touch of their most usual Terms, leaving those pertaining to Vessels and Ships to their proper places.

Aft, Go aft, go towards the Stern.

Abaft the Fore-Mast, go to the Fore-Mast.

Aloof, when the Ship falls off from the Wind, she goes aloof.

Amayne, is to do a thing as fast as may be.

Anchoring, or **Anchorage**, is to let fall the Anchor to stay the Ship.

Arm, is a word of an Allarum; a Ship well Armed is well provided for a Fight.

Bale, is to lade Water out of the Ships Hould.

Ballast, is Gravel, Stones, Lead, or any other Goods that is laid in the Belly of the Ship to keep her steady and stiff in the Sea.

Ballast shoots, when it runs from one side to the other.

Bear in, when a Ship sails into the Harbour.

Bear off, when a Ship keeps off the Land.

Bear up, when a Ship goes right before the Wind.

Belage, make fast any running Rope, when it is as high as you would.

Bent the Cable, tye it to the Ring of the Anchor. **Unbend** it, is to take it away from the Ring.

Berth, as take a good Berth, is a good distance, and room to Moor a Ship in.

Berthing, is the raising or bringing up the side of a Ship.

Bight, a Ropes end; hold by the Bight, is by one of the **Fakes**, which lies rolled one over another.

Bilge or **Bulge**, when the Ship strikes to a Rock and springs a Leak.

Bilge-water, it lieth at the bottom of the Ship, and cannot come to the Pump.

Bitter, is to fasten the end of the Cable about the Bitts, and so to stop the Ship at Anchor. **Bitter end**, is the Cable end which is within the Ship.

Blow, as, the Wind Blows home, or Blows through, is when it doth not cease till it comes past that place.

Blows into the Courses, when it is so high that they cannot bear any Top Sails.

Blows hard, fresh, stiff, are expressions of extraordinary Winds.

Board, as **Go aboard** is go into the Ship.

A **Board**, within the Ship. To make a **Board**, is to turn the Ship Windward. **Weather board**, is Windward.

Board and Board, is when two Ships touch each other.

Bowes, or **Bowes-hoa**, and **Bowse upon the Tackle**, is the Sailors Cry when they pull or haul any thing by Ropes.

Brieze Wind, is such as doth daily keep its course; it is also a **Sea Turn**.

Bowming, is when a Ship is brought a ground, or on the Careen to be Trimmed and Mended.

Bulk, as break Bulk, is to open the Hould, and sell out Goods.

Outward Bound, when they Sail from the Harbour or Haven.

Inward Bound, going into an Harbour.

Bound Homeward, Sailing home to their own Countrey.

Boyant, or **Buoyant**, any thing that is floating, or apt to float.

Buoy, as Stern the Buoy, is to put the Log of Wood fastned to the Anchor into the Water, before the Anchor fall.

Butt-end, is the end of a Plank. To **Spink a Butt**, is to have a Plank end loose, in the side of a Ship.

Calm, or **Becalmed**, is when the Sea hath no Wind.

Camber, or **Cambering**, is when a Deck lyeth higher in the middle than at each end, it is Camber Decked, or the Deck Cambers.

Camber Keeled, when the Keel is bent upward in the middle.

Capstain, a kind of Windlace to wind and hale up great Weights, as Ordinance, Anchors, *&c.* **Launch at the Capstaine**, is to heave no more at it.

Card, or Sea Card, is a Geographical description of Coasts, with the distance, height and Winds laid down in it, by which the Pilate guides the Ship to its Haven.

Careen, is the best way of Trimming a Ship under Water. **Careening**, is the laying of the Ship on one side, she being on float. To Sail on the **Careen**, is when a Ship lieth down much with the Sail.

Car-

Carnell Work, is to Build Ships first with their Timber and Beams, before they put on the Planks. **Clinch Work** is to Plank the Ship sides.

Caulk, Calking, is to drive Ockham into the Seams, Rends, or Treenels, throughout the Ship, to keep it Tire, and hold out Water.

Chafe, Chafed, is when any Rope or Cable is chafed or fretted.

Channel, is the deepest part of any River or Harbour mouth: It is also meant by narrow Seas. **Steer in the Channel**, is to Sail in the midst of the narrow Seas.

Chase, when a Man of War doth follow any other Ship out of his Course.

Chase pieces, are such Ordinance as lie streight, or right forward on the Head or Stern.

Choak, when a running Rope sticks in a Block or Pulliace so that it cannot be haled through.

Clinch, is to rivet or batter a Bolt head on a Ring, or to turn back the point of a Nail, so as to make it fast at that end.

Clinching, is a slight caulking at Sea, or to clinch the Ports, is to drive a little Ockham into the seams of the Ports when foul Weather is suspected.

Cloath, a Sail doth cloath the Mast, when it is so long that it doth touch the Hatches; a Ship spreads much Cloth when she hath broad Sails.

Coats, are pieces of Tarred Canvas put about the Masts to keep Water from running down by them.

Compass, is a moveable Instrument with a Fly, whereon are described the 32 Points or Winds, by which they direct their Course at Sea.

Cond, or **Cun**, to direct or lead the Ship which way she shall go.

Course, as alcir the Course, is to Sail on another Point of the Compass. **Mistake the Course**, is not to know the lying of the Land.

Craft, is any kind of Nets or Lines to catch Fish with.

Cradle, a Frame of Timber to hang by the Ship side, to Trim the Ship withal.

Crank sided, is when a Ship will bear but little Sail.

Culver Tail, is the way of setting one piece of Timber into another so as they cannot slip out.

Cut the Sail, is to let the Sail fall. **Cut the Cable**, is when the Ship rides in a Storm, and she desires to set Sail.

Dead Water, is the Water at the Stern of the Ship.

Disembogue, is to come out of the Mouth of any Gulph.

Dock, is the place where Ships are Built; of which there are two kinds; a **Dry Dock**, which is made with Flood Gates to let Water in and out; and a **Wet Dock**, which is any Creek or Place, where a Ship may call in out of the Tides way; where it is said the Ship hath Dockt her self, when made a place to ly in.

Daggs, are any thing that hangs over the Ship into the Sea, which hinders her Sailing.

Draws, or **Draught**, is meant so many foot as the Ship goes in Water. It draws much Water, it swims deep in Water.

Dregg, or **Dregging**, is to take a little Grapnel, and let it down into the Water to drag on the ground, to find a Cable which hath been let slip.

Drive, is when an Anchor is let down, and will not hold the Ship, but draws it after her. **Drives to Lee-ward**, or drives in with the Shore.

Duck up the Clew Lines, or Fore sail, and the like, is used when the same are to be drawn up.

Ease such a Rope, is slacken it; **Ease the Bowlings sheets**, make them slacker, strain them not so hard; but the proper term is, **Rise the Tack**, for the Tack being loosed, it rises the Bowling Sheats up from the Chestrees.

Eddy, is the running back of Water contrary to the Tide. An **Eddy Wind**, is that as returns back or recoils from any Sail.

End for End, is when a Rope runs all out of the Block; or the Cable after the Anchor out of the Ship.

Farsing, is the ravelling of a Ropes end.

Faddom, is six foot; all Ropes are measured by Fadoms, as a Cable or Hawsier, so many Fadoms long; and so many inches about; the deepness of Waters is sounded by Faddoms.

Fack, is a round of a Rope; how many Facks is in the Rope; how many rounds it hath; see **Quoyle**.

Fall off, is when a Ship under sail, doth not keep so near the Wind, as is appointed, but falls off another way.

Falls of a Ship, are the rising higher and lower of the Decks of a Ship.

Farthel a Sail, is when it is wrapped up close together, and so binds it with the Caskets to the Yard.

Fenders, are pieces of Timber, or the like hung over the Ship sides, to keep other Ships from rubbing their sides. **Fend the Boat**, is to save her from beating against the Ship side.

Fidd, is an Iron Pin made tapering, to open the ends of Ropes, and the strands when they are to be spliced two Ropes together.

Fidders, are made of Wood to splice Cables.

Floan, is when any of the sheats are not haled to the Blocks.

Flood, is the rising of the Water: Young Flood, Quarter Flood, Half Flood, are all terms commonly known.

Flote, is any thing that swims above Water. Ship is aflote, it toucheth no ground: A Floaty Ship is one that draws but little Water.

Flow, when the Water riseth and over-runs its Banks.

Flow, is the bottom of the Ship on which it stands.

Flush, is when a Deck is laid from Stem to Stern without any falls or risings, or in a right line.

Free, the Ship having Water, it is said, the Pump will free, or not free her. Free the Boat, is to get the Water out.

Fresh, is an extraordinary Land-water coming down a River suddenly. Some term it a **Fresh shot**.

Fore and Aft, is to come in before, and go out at Stern.

Fore-reach, a Ship that Sails with another, and outsails it, is said to fore-reach upon the other.

Foul, is when a Ship hath been long untrimmed, so that Grass or Filth grows on her.

Founder or **Foundred,** when a Ship hath sprung an extraordinary Leak, or else by any Storm great Seas have broken into her that she is half full of Water, so that it cannot be freed; it is said to be Foundred.

Furr, or **Furred,** is to double Plank the sides of a Ship; it is said to be Plank upon Plank.

Gage, is to measure what quantity of Liquor is either in or taken out, or wanting in a Cask. **Gaging a Ship,** is to know exactly what Water it draws when it is afloat.

Gale, is when the Wind blows not too hard, but so as a Ship may bear her Top-sails. A **Lom Gale,** is little Wind, or an easie. A **fresh stiff Gale,** when it is much Wind.

Girt, is when a Ship lieth cross the Tide.

Grave a Ship, is to lay her on dry ground, and so to Burn off the old filth and stuff; and the laying on of new, is termed **paying the ship.**

Grip, as a Ship doth grip, when she is apt (contrary to the Helm) to run her head or Nose to the Wind more than she should.

Ground a Ship, or **grounding the Ship,** is when on purpose she is brought to land to be Trimmed. See **Grave.**

Gull, or **Gulling,** is when the Pin of a Block doth eat or wear into the Sheever; or a Yard against the Mast; the wear of it is called Gulling the Mast; of some **Galling.**

Hale, or **over-hale,** is pulling at a Rope; over-hale is to pull a Rope contrary ways, to make it slacker and more gentle.

Hall, or **Halling of a Ship,** is calling to her to know whence she is, and whither she is Bound, and the like.

Hoa and **Hae,** the Call and Answer of one Sea Man to another, when they Hall each other in.

Hand, or **Handing,** is the passing or giving of a thing to another, to have it brought elsewhere. Hand this away, or hand it along.

Hatch-way, on the **Hatches.**

Hawses, the great holes through which the Cables run into the Sea with the Anchor. **Fresh the Hawse,** is to keep it from fretting the Cable. **Clear the Hawse,** is to undo the turns of the Cables which lie cross through the winding of the Ship. She rides upon the Hawse, another lies athwart her Hawse.

Head Sea, is when the Water goes one way and the Wind another.

Heave, or **Heave away,** is fling, or cast away.

Heele, is for a Ship to ly down on a side, whether she is afloat or on ground.

Heels to the **Starboard.**

Heels to the **Larboard.**

Heels to the **Shoarward,** lieth aside towards the shoar.

Heels to the **Off ward,** is to the Seaward, sideways.

Hitch, is to catch or take hold of any thing with a rope or hook.

Howlsom, is when a Ship will hull, try and ride well at Anchor, without rowling and tumbling and labouring much at Sea.

Hoyse, is to hale or pull any thing up into the Ship either with a Tackle or a dead Rope. **Hoyse up the Yard,** is pull it up.

Hulling, is when a ship is at Sea, and hath taken in all her Sails in calm weather; this is termed lying at Hull or Hulling.

Iron sick, is when the Bolts, Speeks or Nails are so eaten with rust and salt water, that they stand hollow in the Planks.

Junk, is a piece of a Cable that is cut off; any part of an old Cable is called a Junk; such as these they hang for Fenders by the Ship sides, or else untwist it to make Plats for Cables, Rope-yarn or Sinnet; if old, it serveth to make Ockham.

Keckle, or **Keckling,** is to turn small Ropes about Cables and Bolt-ropes to keep them from fretting in their several places as they lye; in other smaller Ropes this way of preserving of them, is termed **Serving** of them.

Kedg, or **Kedging,** is the staying of a Ship in a River by an Anchor, that she go not too near the shoar.

Keenke, is the crossing of a Rope when it runs in a Block, or runs double in a Cable.

Knittlidge, the same to **Ballast.**

Knots, as a Bowling Knot.

A **Wale Knot,** which is made round or knobbed with three strands of a Rope that it cannot slip.

Labour, as a Ship labours when she rouls and tumbles very much either a Hull, under Sail, or at Anchor; they labour and roul most when they lye between Wind and Tide.

Lade, is to fill the Ship with Goods or Provision; also some say lade the Water out of the Boat.

Landfall, is a falling to Land on the day assigned, if after the day then it is said to be a bad Landfall.

Land locked, is when a Ship is in a Road or Harbour so as the Land lies round about it, and the Sea lies not open to it.

Land-to, when a Ship is just so far off at Sea as we can see the Land.

Land-turn, is the same of the Land, as a Brieze from the Sea; a Land-wind by Night.

Large, is when a Ship goes neither before the Wind, nor by-wind, but between both; such a Wind is a large Wind.

Lash, or **Lashers,** is to bind any thing to the sides of the Ship; or Ropes as tye things together.

Lasking, as when we say the Ship goes Lasking or Veering, or Quarter Winds, or Large and Roomer; they are all one, for then the Ship neither goes by a Wind or before a Wind.

Launch, is to put out the Ship to Sea; as Launch a Ship out of the Dock, or out of a Key; also in stowing the Hould, they say Launch aft, or Launch forward, when they would have any thing brought further; when they have hoised up a Yard high enough, or the Top-mast, they cry **Launch hoa,** that is, hoise no more; and when they are Pumping, if the Pump sucks, then they cry **Launch-hoa,** that is, Pump no more.

Lay a-land, when a ship is sailed out of sight of the Land.

Leak, is when a ship lets in water; some say she hath sprung a Leak, or makes much water.

Let,

Lee, is understood to be that as is opposite to the wind, as

Lee-shoar, the shoar against which the Wind blows.

Lee the Helm, put the Helm to the Lee-side of the ship, that side as the Wind blows not on.

Lee-ward, is not fast by the Wind. To come by the Lee, or lay the ship by the Lee, is to bring her so that all her sails lie flat to the Masts and Shrowds.

Let fall, is the putting down of any of the Sails and Yards; but in the Top-sails they say heave out the Top-sails, and set the Missen sail, and not let it fall.

Lifts, as topping the Lifts, is the haling of the Top-sails lifts, as Top a Starboord, or Top a Port, that is hale upon the Star-board or Lar-board lifts.

Loom Gale, see **Gale**.

Loom, or **Looming of a ship**, is the Prospect of a Ship; as the ship Looms a great Sail, that is seems to be a great ship; she Looms but small, is or seems to be but a little ship.

Ly under the Sea, when in a Storm the Ship is a Hull, and makes fast the Helm a Lee, so as the Sea breaks upon the Bow and Broadside of the ship, then she is laid under the Sea.

Man, or **well Manned**, when a ship hath Men enough to guide and defend her.

Marling a Sail, is to fasten a ript Sail to the Bolt-rope: By Marling is also meant a small Line of untwisted Hemp to be gentle, to tye up the ends of Ropes from farsing out, or ravelling, or keep them from untwisting.

Marling Speek, is an Iron made of purpose for the spliting together of small Ropes.

Matts, are clouts or thrums to save things from galling.

Moor, or **Mooring**, is to lay out her Anchors, as is fit for to ride by, which is no less than two.

Moor a-cross, is to lay out 2 Anchors, one on one side, and the other on the other side the River.

Moor along, is to lay an Anchor in the Stream out at the head, and another at the stern.

Mooring Water-shot, that is quartering between both.

Neal too, is when the Water is deep down close to the shore, without any showling.

Neap, or **Neap Tide**, is a low Tide, or falling of the Tide.

Observe, is to take the height of Sun or Star with an instrument whereby to know in what Degree and Latitude the Ship is.

Off ward, is when a Ship is on shoar, and lies side-ward to the water, or if the stern lie to the Sea, it is said her stern lies to the off-ward (that is to the sea) and her head to the shoar-ward.

Over-set, when a ship with bearing too much Sail is torn over on a side, and so foundred in the sea.

Overthrow, when a ship is cast on one side to be Trimmed.

Oze, or **Ozie**, is a soft slimy muddy ground.

Pantch, the same to **Matts**.

Parcell, or **parcelling** a seam, is to seal it over with Canvas and Pitch and Tar made hot.

Pay a seam, is to Pitch and Tar it after it is caulked.

Pawle, is a little piece of Iron which is a stay or stop to the Whelps of the Wheel of the Capstain.

Pitching, is setting of the Main Mast in its place or step.

Plott, see **Card**.

Pointing the Cable, is to keep it from farsing or untwisting.

Purchase, is the fast drawing, caining, or coming in of Rope by haling with the hands.

Quoyle, or **quoyle of Ropes**, is a Rope laid up round, one take over another: A **Quoyle of Cable**, that is a Cable turned round up: A **Quoyle** is the whole Cable or Rope; if half be cut away it is called **Half a Quoyle**.

Quarter Winds, are when they come in A-bast the Main-Mast shrouds just with a Quarter.

Rabbet, is the hollowing of the Keel that the Planks may fit in.

Reach, is the distance of any two points of land, in a right line to one another.

Reeve, is to put in and put through, or passing through. Reeve the Rope in the Block; and unreeve the Rope, or Brases, Lifts or Sheats, *&c.* that is, take the Ropes and draw them out of the said Blocks.

Rides, or a Ship rides when her Anchors hold her fast.

Road, is any place where a ship may ride at Anchor.

Robbins, are little lines reeved or put into the eyloe holes of the sails to make the sails fast to the yards; **make fast the Robbins**, is to tye them; Land Men say tye a Rope, but Sea Men use the word make fast such a thing.

Round in, or **Rounding aft**, is to hale the sails of the Main and Fore-masts down, to keep them steady from flying up when the Wind larges upon them.

Rowse-in, is the drawing in of a Cable to make it streight when it lieth slack in the water. **Rowse in the Cable or Hawser**, but it is not used to the haling in of any other Rope.

Rumidge, is to remove any Goods or Luggage out of a place, as from between Decks, or in the Howld; **Running** the Howld, is to clear it.

Sail, at Sea they call a Ship a Sail, as when they descry a ship, they say a **sail**, a **sail**.

Sarve, is to put any thing, as Synnet, Thrum, Raggs, about a Rope to keep it from Galling.

Scarfe, is to let one end of Timber into another, as the making of a Keel from 3 or 4 pieces, which is called **scarfing**; so the stem is fastned into the Keel, which is called the scarfe of the Keel.

Sease, or **seasing**, is to bind or make fast any Ropes together, with some small Rope-Yarn, Marling or Line.

Seele, or **seeling**, is a sudden turning aside of a ship, forced by the motion of the Sea and fearful Winds.

Settle a Deck, is to make it lower.

Sew, or **sewing**, is when the Water is gone from the ship, so that it lies on dry land. The ship is sewed a-head, is when the Water is gone but from the head.

Shear, is when a ship goes in and out under sail, and is not steared steady. **Shear a-ground**, is strike a-ground in this unsteady course.

Sheath-

Sheathing, is cating of a Ship with thin Boards, and Tar and Hair laid between; it is to keep the Worms from eating through the Planks.

Sheep shanks, is two Poles set a cross near the top where a Block is hung; some call them a **pair of sheers.** by them they take a Mast out, and put it in, and hoise Goods in and out the ship.

Shoars, are pieces of Timber set under the side of a ship to support it from falling aside. Shoars shoaring her up.

Shore, is the Land near the Sea; Banks of the Sea; the **Lee-shoar** is that whereon the Wind Blows; **Weather shoar,** is that from whence the Wind comes.

Shot of Cable, two Cables splised together makes a shot.

Showle, or shallow, is when the Water grows deeper by degrees, and not suddenly.

Slatch, is when a part of the middle of a Rope or Cable hangs slack without the ship, then they say hale up the slatch of the Cable. A Slatch of fair or foul weather, is a little time of fair or foul.

Sound, is a great in-draught of the Sea between two Head-lands, where there is no passage through, is called a Sound; also to try and find out the depth of Water, is termed **sounding,** and that is with the lead and line; **sound the Pump,** is to know what water is in the Well of the Pump: And instead of bidding one sound, they often say, **heave the Lead,** that is cast it overboord.

Spell, is a working by turns at the Pump or Rowing; a fresh spell, is others to come to work; he will give him a spell, is to Row or Pump in his place. To **spell the Missen,** is to let the Wind out of a Sail for fear of wringing the Mast. **Spell the sail,** turn it out of the Wind.

Spend, as spent their Mast or Yard, is that the same is broke in foul Weather; but if it come by Fight, they say the **Mast is shot by the Board,** or carried away with a shot.

Splise or **splice,** is to make fast the ends of Ropes one into the other; this is the round splice. the **count-splice,** is when the ends of either Ropes are spliced into other Ropes some distance from the ends.

Split, is the breaking of a Sail or Mast; as the sail is split, the Carriage of a Gun is split; also when Sheevers break, they say it is split.

Spoon, or **spooning afore,** is to put a Ship right before the Wind and Sea without any sail. Spooning with the Fore-sail, is to open the same at such a time as the Ship is in danger.

Spring, or **sprung,** is a crack in any part of the Mast; they spring the Mast with bearing a Sail, that is, they crack it; but to **spring ones Loof,** is to clap the ship close by a wind when she is going at large. The **Spring,** or **Spring-Tide,** is when the Water riseth after a dead Neap.

Stocks, is the Timber and Posts which supports the Hull of the Ship while it is in Building; a **Ship in the Stocks,** is a ship in Building, not yet finished.

Spun-Yarn, is Rope-yarn, the ends scraped thin, and so spun one end to another with a wrench, to make it long.

Standing parts of running Ropes, are those parts of the Rope which are made fast to the ship sides or elsewhere.

Standing Ropes, are those Ropes which are not removed (as the shrowds) or to run in any Blocks.

Stay, or **Bring a ship a-stay,** is to make it stand before it Tack, or turn about.

Steer, is to govern the ship with the Helm. **Steer by Land,** is to observe any mark on the Land, and so to keep the ship even to that. To **Steer by Compass,** is to keep the ship on the point of the Compass. To **Steer by Direction,** that is to guide her according as the Channel or River runneth. This is to **Cond** a ship.

Steve, or stevein, is when the Bolt-sprit or Beak head stands too upright. **Steveing of Cotton,** is when a Deck is thrust full of it.

Stoaked, is when any thing is gotten about the bottom of the Pump, as Water cannot get to it, it is said the ship is stoaked, the Pump is stoaked, or the Limber holes are stoaked.

Stow, is to put any Goods into the Howld, or between Decks; and to **stow the Top-sail,** is to lay or place it on the top.

Strake, is a seam between two Planks.

Stretch, as stretch forward the **Hilliards** or Sheats, is to deliver that part as they must hale by into the hands of others, that they may be ready to Hoyse or Hale.

Strike, is to pull down the Sails; as **strike the sails, strike the Top-Mast,** and to strike down into the Howld, is to lower or put any thing from the Tackles into it.

Surge, a Wave or Billow of the Sea; the **Cable surges,** is when they heave at the Cap stain, and the Cable slips back again.

Swifting, is to ease and strengthen the Masts, when a ship is brought aground.

Tack a ship, is to bring her head about to ly the other way. **Tack about,** is to turn her about.

Tallee aft the sheats, is to hale off the sheats of the Main, or Fore-sail.

Tar-pawling, is a Canvas Tarred all over to lash upon a Deck or Grating to keep the Rain from soaking through.

Taunt Mast, is when it is too high for the ship.

Taught, is to set a Rope stiff and fast when they are slack.

Tempest, is when it blows so exceedingly, that it is not possible to bear any sail; it is a degree above a Storm.

Thight, a Ship is Thight when she is staunch, and makes but little water; when the water stinks the ship is sound.

Tide, is the Ebbing and Flowing of the water. A **Wind-ward Tide,** when the Tide runs against the Wind. A **Lee-ward Tide,** when the Water and Wind go both one way. A **Tide-gate,** is where the Tide runs strong. To **Tide it,** is to go up with the Tide.

Tire of Ordinance, is when the Decks have them fore and aft; some ships have two or three Tire of Guns, that is two or three Stories or Rooms one above another.

Tow, as **Tow the Boat**, is to drag it (or any thing) in the Water, at the stern of the ship.

Traverse, is the way and angles which the ship makes in going to and again. The **Traversing of a great Gun**, is to lay it streight upon the Mark.

Trise, is to hale or draw up any thing with a dead Rope by hands, not in any Pulleys or Blocks.

Trim of a ship, is her good swimming.

Trough of the sea, is the hollow between two Waves.

Tuck, is the gathering up of the ships quarter under the Water.

Veer, or **Veer out a Rope**, is to let a Rope run out by hand when it may be stopt.

Wast, is to guard any Ship or Fleet at Sea; Wasts are used for signs to call in the Boat, or to shew the Ship is in some extremity or distress, and this is a Coat or Gown, or the like hung up in the shrowds.

Wake, is the smooth Water which the Ship doth make a-stern her.

Walt, a ship is Walt when she wants Ballast.

Watch, a whole Watch is four hours, then others do relieve them.

Water-born, is when a ship is just off the ground, that she floats.

Weather, to go the Wind-ward of a place, is to Weather.

Wharfe, is the Sea shoar, or the place of Landing, the Sands by the River side.

Yawe, or **Yawning**, is when a ship is not steered steady, but goes in and out with her head.

LXVIII. He beareth Argent, a **Beggar** or a **Poor Man**, in a **ragged, patched**, and **torn suit**, of divers colours, with a **slouching Hat, Hose** and **shoes** of an Earthy colour; holding a **Staff** in his right hand, and a **Pitcher** or **Earthen Pot** in his left, proper. See here the only Man for Prowess in his time, *Bellizarius* by name, who (to the amazement of greatness) by Fortunes Wheeling, now stands by the High way side, and Begs, *Da Obulum Bellizario*, Give a Half-penny to Bellizarius.

O. a Beggar with a **Satchel** by his side, head uncovered, Knees bare, startops on his leggs, with a dish in one hand, and a Staff in the other, all proper, is the Coat of *Bettler Van Herderen*, of *Switzerland*.

He beareth Argent, a **Cripple**, or a **Man Lame** of one of his **Legs, Cloathed (and half Naked)** with **Tattered Rags** of divers colours; supporting himself with (or having two **Crutches**) or two **Crutch staves** under his Arms, all proper. After this manner **Cripples** or **Maimed persons** are thus described, some lame of their Hands, others of their Legs, others Blind; some with one Crutch, others with two, some again are drawn standing, others sitting or lying, with their Crutches by them; Begging and Craving for an Alms, or the Charity of Good People.

And seeing we are entred into the row of Rogues, Vagabonds, and wandring Beggars (for generally they are such) give me leave to give you the names (as in their Canting Language they call themselves) of all (or most of such) as follow the Vagabond Trade, according to their Regiments or Divisions, as

1. **Cursitors**, or Vagabonds.
2. **Faytors**,
3. **Robardesmen.**
4. **Draw Latches.**
5. **Sturdy Beggars.**

These were all above 300 years now last past; but since they are called upon their farther increase

Counterfeit Crankers, Rogues that are able, yet make themselves lame and sore.

Dommerats.

Glymmerers, Firers of Houses, thereby to Steal in Confusions.

Bawdy Baskets, such as prostrate themselves to any person.

Autem Morts, Wives that follow Rogues and Thieves.

Dories, Whores and Bawds.

Dells, Trulls, dirty Drabs.

Kitchin Morts, little young Queans.

Abram Coves, lusty strong Rogues, Bedlams.

Ben-Fakers, Counterfeiters of Passes and Seals.

Ruffelers, Rogues in the highest degree.

Upright Men, the same as Ruffelers.

Hookers or **Anglers**, such as draw Cloaths out of Houses with hook staffs.

Rogues, common Beggars that will not Work though they be able.

Wild Rogues, Mad Men, Bedlams, called also Mad Toms.

Priggers of Prancers, Horse, Mare, or Beast Stealers.

Pallyards, poor Beggars.

Faytors, or **Fraters.**

Priggs, Thieves, Night-stealers.

Swadlers.

Curtals.

Irish Toyles.

Swigmen, cheaters by changing of wears.

Jackmen, Counterfeiters.

Patri-coes,

Kitching-coes, little Rogues that first enter the Society.

Whip-Jacks.

Canting Terms used by Beggars, Vagabonds, Cheaters, Cripples and Bedlams.

Avile, a Town.
Autem, a Church.
Autem Mort, a Married Woman.
Abram Cove, a lusty Rogue.
Bien, brave.

Young,

Boung, a Purse.
Bowde, a shilling.
Half a Bowde, six pence.
Bugher, a Cur Dog.
Bleating Cheat, a Sheep.
Ben Fakers, counterfeiters of Passes and Seals. Good makers.
Belly Cheat, an Apron.
Bowse, Drink.
Bowsing Ken, an Ale-house.
Bene, good. **Benar**, better.
Beneship, very good fellowship.
Buke, a Dog. **Buffar**, Dog-like.
Bing a walk, get you hence.
Bing, go or come.
Crash, eat. **Crashing cheat**, Teeth.
Cuffin Quier, a Justice of Peace.
Cackling cheat, a Cock, Hen, or Capon.
Cheat, a stollen thing; but the word **Cheat** joined to others, hath then a variable signification, a **Nab cheat**, a Hat, or Cap, *&c.*
Canke, a Dumb Man.
Crackmans, Hedges.
Clapperdogion, a Beggar born.
Cloyers, Thieves, Purloyners.
Cannikin, the Plague.
Cleymes, sores on the body.
Cassan, Cheese.
Cove, or **Coke**, **Coffin** or **Cuffin**, a Man, a Fellow.
Coves, Fellows, Rogues.
Casser, a Cloak.
A **Commission**, a Shirt.
Chates, the Gallows.
To **cly the Jerk**, to be Whipt.
To **Cut**, to speak.
To **Cut bene**, to speak gently.
To **Cut bene Whiddes**, to speak good words.
To **Cut quier Whiddes**, to give evil Language.
To **Cant**, to speak.
To **Couch a Hogshead**, to lye down asleep.
Cly, Haunt, Molest.
Cramp-ring, Shackles, Bolts.
Confeck, Counterfeit.
Cackling, Prating, Talking.
Dimber Damber, a pretty Rascal.
Dommerer, a Madman, a Bedlam.
Drawers, Hosen.
Dudes, Cloaths.
Darkmans, the Night.
Deusea-vile, the Country.
Dub the Giger, open the Door.
Dell, a Trull, a Drab.
Dine, Spite, Malice.
Dorte, Sweet-heart, Chuck, Whore.
Dock agen, do it again.
Fambles, Hands.
Fambling cheat, a Ring.
Ferme, Hole, Cave, or hiding place.
Flagg, a Groat.
Filch, Steal or Rob. a Staff.
Filchers, Stealers.
Faker, maker.
Glasiers, Eyes.
Gan, a Mouth.
Gage, a Quart Pot.
Grannam, Corn.
Gybe, a Writing.
Glimmer, Fire.
Gigger, a Door.
Gentry Mort, a Gentlewoman.
Gentry Cokes Ken, a Noble Mans House.
Grunting cheat, a Pig. **Grunters**, Pigs.
Harman-Beck, a Constable.
Harmans, the Stocks.
Heave a Bough, rob a Booth.
Hearing cheats, the Ears.
Jerke, a Seal. **Jerk't**, Sealed.
Jybe, a License.
Jague, a Ditch.
Jocky, a Mans Yard.
Ken, a House.
Kinchin, little, or **Kitchin-coes**, little Rogues.
Lage of Duds, a Buck of Cloaths.
Libberdge, a Bed.
Lowre, Money.
Lap, Butter-Milk or Whay.
Libkin, a House to ly in. Lodging.
Lage, Water.
Light-mans, the day.
Long lib, long lying, last end.
Lib, ly, lye down.
Mynt, Gold.
A **Make**, an half-penny.
Margery Prater, a Hen.
Mawnding, Asking. **Mawnd**, Beg.
To **Mill**, to Steal.
Mill a Ken, Rob a House.
Mort, a Woman, a Punk.
Mawnders, Rogues, Beggars.
Musseling Cheat, a Napkin.
Mosegent, a Nun.
Niggling, accompanying with a Woman.
Nip, cut.
Nab, head.
Nab cheat, a Hat.
Nase Nabs, Red Noses, Drunkards.
Prat, a Buttock, Thighs.
Peck, Meat.
Poplar, Pottage.
Prancer, an Horse.
Prig, to Ride. **prigging**, riding.
Patrico, a Priest.
Priggers, Robbers, Stealers, High-way Men.
Pad, a way.
Pannam, Bread.
Pallyards, Beggars.
Pratling cheat, the Tongue.
Quaromes, a body. **Quarrons.**
Quier cuffing, a Justice of Peace, a naughty Fellow, a Churl.
Ruyer Ken, the Jayl, a Naughty House.
Quier, cruel, naught.
Quacking cheat, a Duck, a Calf, or Sheep.
Red-shanks, Mallards, Drakes.
Ruff-peck, Bacon.
Roger, or **Tib of the Buttry**, a Goose.

Rome-vile,

Rome-vile, London.
Rome bowse, Wine.
Rome Mort, the Queen.
Ruffe-Mans, the Woods or Bushes.
Ruffian, or **Ruffin**, the Devil.
Rome-coves,
Rome-pad, High way.
Rum Maunder, a Beggar Fool, slavering Fool.
Ruffeler, a brave strong Rogue.
Scowre, wear, put on.
Shove the Flogging Tumbler, to be whipt at the Carts Arse.
Stamps, Leggs.
Stampers, Shooes.
Slate, a Sheet.
Skew, a Cup or Dish. **Scue**,
Solomon, the Mass.
Staling Ken, a House to receive Goods stollen, or to Buy them.
Skipper, a Barn.
Strommell, Straw.
Smelling Cheat, an Orchard, or a Garden, a Nose.
To **scour the Cramp Ring**, to wear Bolts.
Stalling, making or ordaining.
Stow you, hold your peace.
Strawling, Brokers, Buyers of Goods.
Tatterdemallion, a Ragged Rogue.
Trine, Hang.
Trining, Hanging. **Trin'd**, Hanged.
To **Towre**, to see.
Tib a th' Buttery, a Goose.
Togmans, a Gown or Cloak.
Upright, highest.
Wyn, a Penny.
Whiddes, Words, Language.
Wap well, Kiss well.
Woune, stolne.
Yarrume, Milk.

LXIX. He beareth Argent, two **Morice Dancers** in their **Leaping, Dancing**, or **Fantastick postures**, **variously cloathed**, with **Handkerchers** in their hands, and **Bells** at their **Caps, Shoulders, Knees Elbows**, Or. Now some hold that to name **Morice-Dancers**, is as much as to name all that I have before said, because they are ever drawn and set forth in such antick Dresses and Postures.

In the Base of this quarter is another kind of **Fools head, cloathed**, Gules; the **Cap** with a **scapular**, or **shoulder cover**, Argent. Such a Monkish Fools head to the Sinister, is the crest of *Schopper* of *Brunswick*. This may fitly be termed so, because the Cap resembles the Monks Coul, see *numb.* 53.

The Art of **Dancing**, (though here set forth in its rustick and antick postures) yet oppertunely and civilly used, is a commendable and rare quality, fit for young Gentlemen and Gentlewomen; and hath formerly been honoured in the Courts of Princes, and it is much commended to be excellent for recreation after much Study, making the Body active and strong, graceful in deportment, and is a quality very much beseeming a Gentleman.

The several Terms used in Dances.

An **Honour**, it is in a Man to Bow the Body, setting the heel of one foot to the side of the other; and the Woman to bend or bow the Knees.

A **Salute**, a **Kiss**, or Kiss of the hand with a bow of the Body.

A **Double**, that is four steps forward and backward, closing both Feet; and in Dancing Books is thus marked D.

A **Single**, is two steps forward, closing both Feet; the single is thus marked S.

A **Set**, is all that Dance to make a stand.

A **Turn single**, is two steps to one hand, and two steps to the other.

A **Strain**, it is thus marked when but once to be Played —

A **double Strain**, when twice Played, and is thus marked ⸬

A **Back strain**.

The **Characters** in Dances for Men is thus ⊙; for Women this ☽ or this We; for a single Woman thus Wo:

A **Couple** is thus marked, Cu:

A **Contrary** is thus marked, Co·

The **second, third, fourth, &c.** are thus Figured 2, 3, 4, *&c.*

Rounds, or **a Round**, is when all that Dance take hands in hands, and so go round too and again.

Cast off, is for Men and Women to loose hands, and stand off one another, each facing his partner; or to cast off from the leading, to the lower part or last.

Lead forwards and **backwards**.

Sides all.

Arms all, is to take hands, or by the Arms, and so to turn about and change places; or else go in a single, *&c.*

Set and Turn single.

The **single Hay**, is turning too and again between each person.

Change,

A **Slip to the left**, or to the **right**.

A **double Back**, is four Steps backwards.

Turn off, or **Fall off**, or **Fall Back**, is when the Men and Women loose hands, and step back 3 or 4 steps off one another.

Longways, are Dances for 6, 8, 10, or more, by couples following one another.

Cross over, is an exchange of places from one side to the other.

A **Caper**, or leap up.

Whoever desires farther knowledg in this matter, let them peruse these Books.

The Dancing Master, set forth by J. P.

Apollo's Banquet, *in which you may have variety of Corants Sarabands, Jigs and Horn-Pipes.*

TO

GEORGE TWISLETON of *Llyer*, in the County of *CAERNARVON* Esquire.

SIR,

HAving Perused the Papers sent You, I can safely Avouch them Genuine, and not in the least Spurious: So that they need not fear to be brought to the publick Test, and look the Sun in the Face, though at first they were but short, and designed for the Satisfaction of some Private Friends: Yet now are sent on a little further Embassie for the common good, for which Travel You have shewed your self an Earnest Promoter, which is acknowledged by him who is,

Your most Ready and Devoted Servant

Randle Holme

CHAP. IV.

AS amongst Men there are manifold Degrees and Callings as to Temperal Imployments, so it is decent and necessary that each should be habited as it is fitting for that Estate, Call-in and Imployment: as the King in His Robes and Throne of Majesty, a Noble Man in his Vestments of Honor, a Shouldier in his Military Habit either on Foot or Horseback, the Artificer about his imploy with such cloathing as is requisite for such Manual Arts or Sciences: so shall all Degrees and Scocieties be distinguished that thereby they receive such Reverence as is answerable both to their Persons and Qualities, all which as to the Laity concern I have in the foregoing Chapter set forth.

We shall now in this give an account of the Habit and Vestments of Spiritual Persons, and how far such are born or used in Coats of Arms, Crests, Cognizens, Supporters, or other devices.

I. He beareth Saphir, **Our Blessed Lady** (or the **Virgin Mary**) with **Her Son** (or **Our Saviour**) in her right Hand, and a **Scepter** in her left, all Topaz. The Coat doth pertain to the Bishoprick of *Salisbury*.

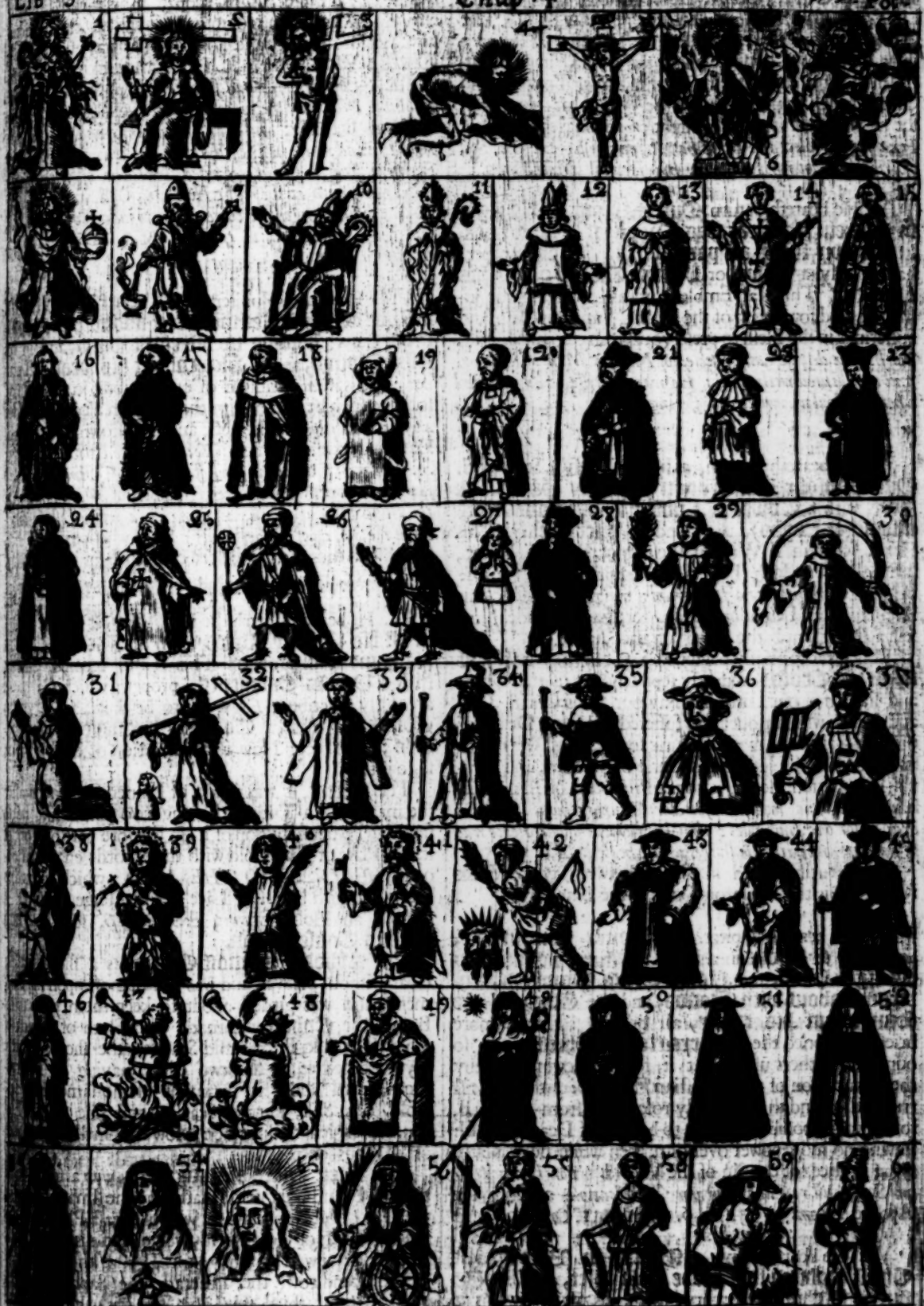
He beareth Ruby, **two Lions passant gardant** Topaz, on a **Chief** Saphir; on a **Tomb Stone Our Lady sitting Crowned with her Babe on her right Arm,** and a **Scepter in her left Hand,** of the Second. This Coat belongs to the Bishoprick of *Lincolne*.

☞ Mr. *Morgan* Blazons it, **Our Lady sitting with her Babe,** which doth import as much as if they were sitting by the side one of the other: therefore he is too short for the true description of the Arms.

Here note that if these Robes and Vestments were of contrary colours, then they ought to be mentioned; as **Habited in a long Robe,** and **Girded about the middle** Argent: **Vestment** (or **Her Vesture**) Or. &c.

II. He beareth Luna, **Our Saviour sitting on a Hymet** Sapeir, **Habited in a long Robe close Girt** Mercury; **Holding up his right Hand,** and with his **left Supporting a Mound** of the second, **Circled** and **Crossed,** Sol: in Chief behind his Head a **long Cross lying longways** of the last: see *lib. 2. chap. 1. numb. 12.* as the former is the Emblem of **Christs Birth** of the **Virgin Mary:** so this is the most certain Figure and lively description of his **Humanity,** and being in the **Flesh:** which is manifested by his Living in, and Preaching to the World.

III. He



M. Georgi Trinsiton de Hayer in Cornwallis Anglesey Armiger. H. Jones Pi

III. He beareth Mars, **Our Saviour in a Naked or Forlorne Estate, with a Towel about his Middle,** Luna; **Supporting of a long Crosse in his left Arm,** Sol: and his **right on his Breast.** This is a third Figure of **Christs** being in the World in his **Humanity,** and signifieth to us the Pains, Travels, and Crosses which he underwent in the World for our sakes: for he was poor that we might be made rich. *For the Foxes have Holes, and Birds have their Nests, but the Son of Man hath not whereon to lay his Head.* Matt. 8. 20.

IV. He beareth Saturn, **Our Saviour in his Agony wherein his Tears, Drops of Blood trickling down from all parts of his Body,** proper: having only a **Towel** or **Linnen Cloath about his Middle.** This is an Emblem of his satisfying the Justice of God for the Sin of the World; and his Pain and Sufferings in the Flesh to preserve us from eternal Miseries. *For he was despised and rejected of Men, a Man of Sorrows and acquainted with Grief: He was oppressed and afflicted when his Soul was made an offering for Sin.* Isa. 53. 3. 4. 7. 10.

V. He beareth Saturn, a **long Crosse,** Sol: with **Our Saviour Nailed upon it by his Hands and Feet,** with a **Towel** or **Linnen Cloath about his Middle** (or **Loyns**) Luna: and an **Escrowel** over his Head, wherein is Written these four Roman Letter, I. N. R. I. which Letters do signifie these Words: *Jesus Nazarenus, Rex Judæorum:* being the cause of his Accusation and Condemnation, for that he made himself a King, and the King of the *Jews.*

This is more briefly blazoned a **Crucifix,** or **Christ upon the Crosse:** and fitly represents to us the Death and Passion of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ, God and Man: who for our sakes suffered the bitter Death of the Crosse, and was made a Curse for us, that we might be freed from the Justice and Curse of the Law, and Eternal Damnation, wherein was that Prophesie of *Isaiah* fulfilled, *He was wounded for our Transgressions, he was bruised for our Iniquities: the Chastisement of our Peace was upon him, and with his stripes we are healed.* Isa. 53. 5.

A Crucifix fixed in Base, between two Whisk Rods, Pr. is the Emperors Coat of the *Indies.*

VI. He beareth Jupiter, on a **Tomb-stone in base,** Sol: **Our Saviour** in a **long Vesture, holding up his right Hand,** and a **long Crosse Pometed, Interwoven about with Clouds,** and **the Glory of the Sun** **about his Head,** all proper. This is more briefly blazoned the **Resurrection of Christ;** and so our Forefathers used to set it forth: shewing thereby the foundation of our Christian Faith, *viz.* that Christ truly died, and that he truly rose again from the dead, for it was impossible he should be held of Death: Death having no more power over him, then while he was satisfying Justice for the Sin of the World. *For he Died for our Sins, and rose again for our Justification,* as saith the Apostle. *Rom.* 4. 25. & 6. 9. 10. 1. *Cor.* 15. 3, 4.

VII. He beareth Sol, a **Mount in Base** Venus; **Christ Habited in a Robe close Girt,** and his **Vesture cast about,** Mercury: with his **Arms spread abroad,** a **Glory** about his **Head,** and **involved** (or **wrapt up**) in the **Clouds,** proper. This is the Emblem of our Saviours ascention into Heaven, as the ancients have set it forth; and for brevity may be termed, **Christs Ascention into Heaven** from the **Mount Olivet.** *For after he had shewed himself alive, by many Infallible Proofs for the space of Forty Days, he led them out as far as* Bethany, *and lift up his Hands and Blessed his Apostles, and while he Blessed them, he was taken up into Heaven, and a Cloud received him out of their sight: Where he sitteth at the right Hand of God, and will there personally remain, till he come again to judge both the quick and the dead.* Act. 1. 9. 11. & 3. 21. & 10. 42. Rom. 8. 34.

VIII. He beareth Jupiter, **Jesus Christ Habited in a Robe with his Vestment cast about his Shoulders.** Luna: **holding up his right Hand,** and in his **left a Mound,** and a **Glory about his Head,** all proper. This is the Emblem of our Saviour in his Glory, for though it be said of him that he hath ascended above all Principalities and Powers, and is set down on the right Hand of Majesty on high: *Yet when the* Protho-Martyr *St.* Stephen (*was ready to suffer for the Testimony of him*) *saw the Heavens opened, and the Son of Man standing at the right Hand of God, as being in a ready posture to receive the Spirits of his Servants:* from whence our Ancestors did in thus manner describe Christ Jesus in his Glory. *Act.* 7. 55.

IX. He beareth Pearl, the **High Priest of the Jews in all his Priestly Robes with an Incense Pot in his Hands,** all proper. This is also termed, **Aaron in his Priests Garments,** proper: which Garments are fully described, *Exod.* 28. to be these, a **Miter,** an **Ephod,** a **Robe,** a **Coat** and a **Girdle,** and **Sandals** for his Feet: Now the description of these rake as followeth.

The **Miter,** it was made of Linnen fine woven after the manner of a Turbet, having two points like horns standing up upon the top of it; in the fore part or front of it, is a Plate of pure Gold with these words engraven upon it, *HOLYNESS TO THE LORD;* which is fixed to the Miter with blue silk Lace. This Plate of Gold is termed an Holy Crown, *Exod.* 29. 6. see the **High Priests Consecration.**

The **Ephod** or **upmost Coat,** was a short straight Coat without Sleeves, and was put upmost upon his Garment, and was girded about to keep them close to his Body; the **Ephod** was made like Cloth of Gold: of Gold, blue Silk, Purple and Scarlet: the shoulders were joyned together by the two edges, having an imbrauthered gard about it, wrought of the same stuff, *viz.* Gold, blue Silk, Purple, Scarlet, and fine twined Linnen. It for length did reach below the Girdle the breadth of a Mans deep skirts.

The **Brest Plate of Judgment,** was a fore square piece of Brauthered work made like the Imbroidery of the Gard of the Ephod; in which Brast Plate was (in twelve sockets of Gold) fixed twelve precious Stones, *viz.* in the first row, the Ruby, the Topaz, the Carbuncle: in the second row, the Emerald, the Saphir, the Diamond: in the third row, the Turkeis, the Achate, the Amethist:

Emauhist; and in the fourth row, the Chrystolite, the Onyx, and the Jasper. This Breast Plate was set, or hung on the fore part of the Ephod, on the Breast of the Priest, by Chains of Gold of wrethen work fastned to Rings of Gold which are placed in the corners of the Breast Plate, and on the fore part of the said Ephod at the Shoulders, and near the girdling place.

The **Stones of Remembrance** on the Shoulders of the Ephod, are two Onix Stones having the names of the Children of *Israel* Graven upon them, six names on one stone, and six on the other, as they were in age: these stones were set and embossed in Gold and set on the Shoulders.

The **Urim** and the **Thummin** of the Breast Plate, which shall be on the High Priests Heart; that is, **Urim** Light, and **Thummin** Perfection; declearing that the stones of the Breast Plate were most clear, and of perfect Beauty: so by **Urim** is ment also Knowledge, and **Thummin** Holyness, shewing what Virtues are required in Priests.

The **Robe under the Ephod,** it was a long Garment with sleeves, and the hole for the head was in the middle of it. It had an edge or collar of woven work, like the collar of an Habergion that it rent not: the Robe was made of blue silk, and reached as far as to the Knees: at the skirt whereof was placed Pomgranates made of blue Silk, and Purple, and Scarlet round about, and Bells of Gold between them.

The **Coat** or **under Garment,** of some termed a **Tunicle**; it was under the Robe, and longer then it, reaching down to the Feet: it was without Sleeves, and made of fine Linnen richly Imbrauthered.

The **Girdle** as compassed the Ephod was a Girdle made of Needle work.

The **Linnen Breeches** of the High Priest were worn by all orders of Priests, and they reached from the Loyns to the Thighs to cover their Privities, that no nakedness, or filthiness appear in them by not covering themselves.

The **Sandals,** were soles of Wood or strong Leather with Lachets or Tyes and Buckles fastned to them, to make them sit close to the Feet, and to keep them slipping off.

The rest of the **Priests** and **Levites** in their Orders were cloathed in Linnen Coats down to the Feet, and Girdles about their middles; Bonnets on their Heads, and Sandals or Slippers on their Feet; which were richly Imbrauthered, both for Glory and Comelinesse.

The High Priests manner of Consecration.

The **Priest** to be **Consecrated** is brought to the Door of the Tabernacle or Temple, where he is washed with the Water in the Laver set before the entrance.

Then is put upon him, by the Hands of the Prince or King, the Tunicle, then the Robe, then the Ephod, then the Breast Plate; closeing all together with the broidered Gard of the Ephod.

Then is the **Miter** set upon his Head, and then is the **Holy Crown** put upon the **Miter,** and gird with a Girdle: after that the **Annointing Oyle** shall be poured on his Head, and he therewith annointed on the Breast, Shoulders, and Arms. This **Dyntment** or **Annointing Oyle of Consecration,** was compounded of Myrrh, sweet Cinamon, sweet Calamus, Cassia, Galbanum, all mixed together with Oyle Olive according to the Art of the Apothecary.

Then shall the **Priest** take a **Calf** and two **Ramms** without blemish, and unleavened Bread, and Cakes unleavened tempered with Oyle, and Wafers unleavened annointed with Oyle, all made of fine Wheat Flower, and put them in a Basket and present them as a Sacrifice before the Lord: that is the Priest shall severaly lay his Hand upon their Heads then shall they be slain, to be Sacrificed according to the Law: *Exod.* 29. 10. *&c.* The Calf for a Sin offering, one Ramm for a burnt offering of a sweet Savour: and the other Ramm for the offering of Consecration: and the Bread, and Cake, and Wafer, for a heave offering unto the Lord, with the Blood of this last Sacrifice shall the lapp of the High Priests right Ear, the Thumb of the right Hand, and the great Toe of the right Foot be touched, the rest of the blood cast about the Alter, and upon it: the Flesh of the Consecration is Seeth and Eaten with the heave Bread by the Priests; what remaineth is in the Morning burnt with Fire.

This for seven Days is performed, before the Consecration be accomplished.

All the Priests must be without blemish, all must be presented before the Lord in the Temple, all must be washed, all must be consecrated by offering certain Sacrifices: all must have the blood of the Ramm put on the tip of the right Ear, the Thumb of the right Hand, and the great Toe of the right Foot: only the High Priest was admitted to enter into the Sactuary, and that but once a Year: and to Marry none but a Maid, the other Priests might Marry a Widdow. The High Priest was not to mourn for the Death of his Kindred; the other Priests might.

Terms used in the Jewish Religion Explained.

Jewisme, the Jews Religion or way of Worshiping of God: or a Worship under a three fold Law, *viz.* Mosaical, Ceremonial, and Judicial.

Mosaical, is that Law which *Moses* prescribed to the Children of *Israel* distinguished into the

Moral Law, a Law of Manners and Civility, the summ of which is the Decalogue or ten Commandements, an unchangable rule of Worship or precept of Holiness, Righteousness and Temperance.

Ceremonial Law, is the Law for their outward Worship, consisting of many Typs and Ceremonies, shadowing out the truth to come.

Judicial Law, a Law of Penalty, and was such as kept under a refractary People, wherein capital punishments were inflicted according to the merit of the fact.

Deca-

Decalogue, the Ten Commandments or Words of God.

Revelation or **Inspiration**, is an extraordinary way of discovering some truth, which no human industry could of it self attain unto.

Redemption, a Deliverance, a Rescue or Ransom, is a freeing from a condition of slavery and servitude.

Patriarch, before the Law were the chief Administrators of Religious Services, or such as were extraordinarily called and gifted to foretell future things.

Prophet, or **Seer**, a Divine Predictor of Plagues and Judgments to come.

Priests, such as were appointed for the principal work of Divine Service.

Levites, such as in the time of the Law were subordinated and assistance to the Priests.

Psalms, Hymns, Anthems; is our thanks to God, or returning our acknowledgment of the good things we do enjoy, by Songs of Praise.

Consecration, is to Dedicate or Devote things, or Places for Holy uses, seperating them from common use.

Ordination, is the seperating of Persons to Holy and Divine Services.

Censure, it the regulating of abuses in Ecclesiastical Matters.

Suspention, is a Temporary privation of Church Privileges.

Anathema, Excommunication, Cutting off, or seperating a Person from all Church Communion and Priviledges.

Ordinances or **Institutions**, are such kind of things or Duties, set down for our Instruction and Learning.

Oblations, Offerings, is the giving things to God for his Service.

Sacrifice, are the offering of such thing by fire as were for food.

Incense, Censor, an offering made by Perfume.

Circumcision, the cutting of the Fore-skin in Male Children, and was a sign of Confirmation of them in the Jewish Religion.

Passover, Paschal Lamb, a Feast of the *Jews* kept Yearly in remembrance of their safty in the Land of *Ægypt*, and the slaying of the *Ægyptians* first born: called the Feast of unleavened Bread.

Vow, is the making of Solemn and Religious promises to God.

Divorce, is a dissolving of the State of Marriage and Wedlock.

Traditions, are unwriten Rules for Instructions in Religion, and somtimes writen.

Purim, the Feast of *Lot*, in the remembrance of the *Jews* deliverance, and *Hamon* their great Adversary hanged.

Publicans, were gatherers of the *Roman* publick payments or Tribute from the *Jews*.

Chief Publican, the chief receiver.

Proselyte, are Heathen People who disclaimed Paganism, and joyned themselves to the Church of the *Jews*.

Nethinims, were the *Gibeonites*, who were made Hewers of Wood, and Drawers of Water for the service of the Temple.

Wisemen, a Title attributed to all Doctors and Teachers of the Law.

Scribs, were the Scriveners or publick Notaries, imployed for Writing of Deeds and Contracts, but such as belongs to the Clergy, were expounders of the Law, and did Write, Read, and open the Law of *Moses* to the People: it was a Name of Office, not of a Sect. *Ezra 7. 6.*

Disputer, the most profoundest Interpreters of the Law, such as insisted on Allegories and Musical Interpretations of the Text.

Rab, Rabbi, Rabban, is as much as a Master or Doctor.

Nazarite, was a kind of Votarie, that seperated himself from three things, Wine, cutting his Hair, and pollution by the Dead.

Rachabites, such as would drink no Wine.

Pharises, a Sect amongst the *Jews* which had no Commerce with other People; nor the Apparel and Habit of other Men; and followed not the Customs and Manners of the World.

Phylacteries, or **Frontlers** for the Fore-head, and reached from one Ear to the other, and were tied behind with a Thong: and those for the Hands, were tied on the Palm of the Hand, or above the Elbow; and were Scroles of Partchment, on which was Writen the Ten Commandements: the making of them broad, was to make them appear more Holy then others: the *Rabbins* call them Prayer Ornaments.

Long Borders or **Fringes** on their Garments, which was to put them in minde of the commands.

Temple, the House of Prayer, and place to offer Sacrifices: the Holy of Holyes, is the inner part of it; the Sactuary, the body of the Temple, and the Court, the place of Sacrifice.

Synagogues, were the Schools or Houses of Prayer, for them as dwelt remote from the Temple.

Grove and **High Places**, were consecrated Woods, and Hills, for Idolatrous Worship: from whence their Idols many times took their Names.

Pentecost, was a Feast at the ending of their Harvest, being fifty days after the second day of of the Passover, then they offered two wave Loaves in token that the Harvest was finished.

Feast of Tabernacles, or dwelling in Booth made of Boughs and Branches, after the manner of Arbors and Bowers, a Feast of seven Days kept in remembrance of the *Israelits* liviving in Booths in the Wilderness.

Feast of Trumpets, was the first day of their first Month or New Years-day, which they kept Holy: it was also called the Feast of the New Moon.

Feast of Expiation, so called because then the High Priest did then confess to God both his own and the People sins, and by performing certain Rights and Ceremonies Expiate them, and make an atonement to God for them.

Jubilee, a Feast celebrated every fiftieth Year, in which all Servants were made free, all bought or Morgaged Lands returned to their owners.

Stoning, a punishment amongst the *Jews*, where the Witnesses cast the first stone, and then all the People after till he was dead.

Crucifying, hanging on a Cross, being nailed to it by the Hands and Feet, and there remain in Torture till the body be dead.

Tythes, was the tenth of all their increase, both of Cattle and Fruit which was given to the Priest for their maintenance.

Concubines, are secondary Wives, or half VVives, one kept in the House besides the VVife, else the general acception denotes an infamous Strumpet, a common Harlot, in the best sense it is a Lords Miss or VVhore.

Talmud or **Thalmud**, a Superstitious and Blasphemous Book containing the Body of the Jewish Law and Traditions of the Elders, composed by their *Rabbins*, and of great Authority among them.

Orders of the Officers in the Jewish Church.

The **High Priest**, the chief over all other Priests, who entred into the Holy of Holies once a Year.

The **Sagan** or **Suffragan**, who in case of the High Priests polution, performed his Office: in this sense they Interpret *Annas* and *Caiaphas* to be High Priests the same Year, *Luk.* 3. 2.

The **Chief Priest** of every one of the twenty four Ranks or Orders of Priests, was called *Summus Sacerdos istius Classis*, Chief Priest of that Rank: hence it is that we read of many High or Chief Priest assembled together, *Mar.* 14 1.

The **Priests**, they did their Service in their Orders, being twenty four in Number, which in their Ranks or course, served VVeekly in the Temple: and by lot they determined each particular Priests Service, who should burn Incense, who should slay the Beasts, who should lay them on the Alter, who should dress the Lamps, *&c.*

The **Levites**, in their journey to the promised Land, were to set up, take down and bear the Tabernacle, and the Vessels thereof: but being seated in the Land, *David* divided them into three Orders, one to have the charge of the Treasures of the Temple: the second to be Porters, and the third Singers.

The **Singers** in time of singing were clad in Linnen Robes or Surplesses, they were divided into four and twenty Orders.

The **Porters** waited at the Gates of the Temple, and were also divided into four and twenty Orders that they might supply weekly their turns by lott.

The **Nagnamad** or **Viri Stationarij**, the heads of all the People, or chief of the Families; and they were divided into four and twenty Ranks and Orders. Hence when an offering was made for all the People, because they could not all stand by, certain Select Persons chosen by the People for that purpose, supplied the stead of all the People, weekly to Minister in the Temple: every Rank had one Foreman chief above the rest, termed *Stationum Princeps*, the Chief or Prince of that Station.

The **Nethinims Office**, was to hew Wood, and draw Water for the Sacrifices and use of the Sanctuary.

[ ]

X. He beareth Saphir, a **Bishop seated in his Chair, habited in his Pontificals, extending** (or **holding forth**) **his right hand to the Dexter chief; sustaining his Crosier in his left Arm, stayed upon the Chair**, all Pearl. This was the Coat Armour of *Eberhard*, Bishop of *Lubrick* in *Saxony*. If you desire a more shorter blazon, say a **Bishop seated in his Cathedral Chair, extending his right hand**, and **holding his Crosier in his left**: We generally say a Man is a Man let him be covered with Clouts; but I am sure in Heraldry a **Bishop** is not a Bishop except he be in all his **Pontifical Vestments**: If so then Mr. *Guillims* had not needed to have used such a long prose, as is aforesaid, seeing the bearing was all of one Mettle, or of one colour: in which respect the shorter blazon is sufficient. But if the charge be of various colours or mettels then it is necessary to use a longer blazon: as,

He beareth Ruby, a **Bishop habited in his Pontifical Vestment** Amethists, **Imbrauthered** Pearl; **Mitered seated in his Chair, sustaining his Crosier in his left hand**, Topaz: **holding up his right**, proper. Born by the name of *Bishopworth*.

A Morroco Bishops Head, couped below the Shoulders Mittered A. is the Crest of *Kirchberg* of *Bavaria*.

A **Bishop** is an office of Dignity, not of Order; under which are comprehended, **Popes, Patriarches, Primats, Metropolitans, Archbishops**, and **Bishops**: which have nine priviledges above Priests namely, of Ordination, Benediction of Nuns, Consecration, Dedication, Degradation, Holding of Synods, Blessing of Chrism, Hallowing of Cloaths, Vessels, Water, *&c.*

A Bishops Vestments, or Pontifical Symbols of Ecclesiastical Regencie.

Caligae, which are long Hose or Stockins.

Sandalia, a kind of Shoes or Slippers.

Succinctorium, a kind of Girdle.

Tunica, a long Coat down to the Heels: called also **Talaris**.

Dalmatica, a Garment with long and large Sleeves representing the Cross: so called from *Dalmatia* the Countrey where it was first Woven.

Orale, a Linnen Vail to cast over his head.

Chirothecae, a pair of white Gloves of Kinds skins.

Mitra, is the Miter or Ornament for the head.

Annulus, is a Ring which the Bishop wears to shew he is betrothed to Christ.

Buculus pastoralis, is the Bishops Croisier Staff.

Pallium, or the **Pall**; it is the Ornament of Archbishops and Patriarchs: the Pall is not to be worn but in Church, yet Pope *Gregory* permitted it to be worn in Solemn Letanies out of the Church; upon it are four Crosses signifying the four Cardinal Virtues: as Justice, Prudence, Fortitude, Temparance. There are also in the Pall three

three Pinns or Bodkins, signifying the three Christian Virtues of Faith, Hope, and Charity.

Of the Election and Consecration of Romish Bishops.

The **Election** was anciently in the Laity and Clergy, till the Clergy shooke off the Laity. And the Pope excluded the Emperour, from him both the Pope himself and other Bishops were wont to receive their Investitures by delivering to them a **Ring, crosier Staff,** and **Miter**; not in reference to their spiritual Function, but to their temporal means which they enjoy by the munificence of Princes: but their Ordination is only from the Clergy.

The Bishop thus elect by the Pope and Clergy, is on the *Saturday* in the evening examined concerning his former Life, and the Trinity is three times called upon for a Blessing: the next morning he is conducted to the Church in way of **Procession**: First are born Banners with Crosses in them; then follow lighted Tabers born by so many **Acolyths**; then the **Deacons**; then the **Priors** in their Orders; then three **Acolyths** with Censers of Incense: after them a **Sub-Deacon** carrying the Gospel; then follows the **Elect Bishop**; after him followeth the **Bishops** that are to consecrate him; after whom followeth the **Porters, Readers, Exorcists** and **Singers**, in their Orders.

The Bishop Elect and the other Bishops as they ascend the Alter, **Bow** to the Ground and **Confesseth**: then is he **Examined** concerning his Conversation, and Faith; then is his Head (after some Prayers made) **Annointed** with Chrism, that is Oyle and Balsome; then are his Hands **Annointed**; then is he **Married** by the Ring put on his Finger to Christ; the **Crosier Staff** put into his Hand, to shew he hath taken upon him the charge and care of Christ Flock; and last of all is the **Miter** set upon his Head. After the Bishops had first laid their Hands upon his Head, and one of them poured out the Benediction, saying, *Receive the Holy Ghost; whose Sins you forgive they are forgiven, &c.* during which Blessing two hold the Bible over his Head, to signifie that he exceed in knowledg and good works. After all these Ceremonies and Mass ended they return home as they came, where the rest of the day is spent in Feasting.

Because the **Bishop** is a **Superintendent** and **Overseer**, therefore he hath the highest Seat in the Church: they are Consecrated ever on the Lords day, and at the third hour, because at that time the Holy Ghost descended on the Apostles, to whom Bishops have succeeded: and at their Consecration there must be present more, but no less then three Bishops.

XI. He beareth Diamond, a **Bishop holding his Crosier in his left Hand bendwise** (or **Cross his Body**) and **his right upon his Breast**, Topaz. This is the true shape and depiction of a **Bishop in his Pontificals**, as they have in former times been delineated, and set forth in Brass Sculptures, and Monuments of the dead: this is also the habit of the **Mitred Abbot**, who exerciseth **Pontifical**, or **Episcopal Jurisdictions**; as many **Abbies** formerly had such Priviledges, for their **Abbots** and **Priors**.

XII. He beareth Vert, a **Mitered Parson habited** in a **Tunick**, or **long Robe**, and **Surcoat** over it with a round **Cape**, all proper. This cannot be termed a Bishop, because he wants some of his **Pontifical Vestments**, as the **Pall** and **Crosier**, and **Crosier Staff**: without which there is no pastoral Power or Authority in Ecclesiastick Affairs. So that I may well term such a **Parson** an **Half**, or a **Nominal Bishop**, or an **Unconsecrated Bishop**; and the reason is because his Pall is not yet sent him from *Rome* (the place of Approbation, and Confirmation, in former times of all such as were made Bishops) till which come, and a great summ paid for it; it may suffice to blazon (a **Parson thus Vested**) but a **Bishop Elect**; or an **Abbot Mitered**, extending forth his hands, *&c.*

XIII. He beareth Azure, a **Dean in his Canonical Habit**, proper: This was the Ornaments of the Church used by **Deans of Cathedrals**, about the beginning of *H.* 8. Reign, but since the Reformation it much varieth, as you will afterwards see. This Figure hath only a **Gown** and **Surplice**, with a kind of Collar (but of what) I understand not, except some kind of Imbrauthery, to distinguish him from inferior Clergy, as **Cannons** and **Regular Cannons**, which I have seen in old Monuments in such kind of habits. see *numb.* 15.

XIV. He beareth Gules, a **Mass Priest**, or a **Priest in his Cannonical Vestments**, proper: **extending his Hands** each side. The mark of a **Priest**, or a **Mass Priest** in his Vestures: are the **Tunicle**, or **Vuder Coat**, or **Gown**, his **Surplice**, and his **Cope**, which is generally Velvet, either Red, Purple, or Crimson, Imbrauthered with Silver, Gold, and coloured Silks, very rich.

Or. a **Priest**, or **Master of Art, Gown** and **Cap**, Sable: with a **Linnen Albe** or **Vestment** cast over his Shoulders, (or a **Surplice sans Sleeves**) holding a Book in both Hands proper. Is the Coat and Crest of *Pfaffen* of *Swizerland.*

XV. He beareth Azure, a **Doctor of Law** in his **Tunicle**, with **wide Sleeves, Girded** about the middle, with a **Mantle** over his Shoulders, **Imbrauthered** down before, Or. This I find also to be the habit of **Doctors of Law** and **Chancellors**, and **Deans** also, in and about the Reign of *H.* 6. as the Sculptures of their Tombs to this day doth manifest.

XVI. He beareth Argent, a **Benedictan Monk** in the **Habit of his Order**, Sable. The **Monks of the Order of St. Bennet**, or **Benedict**, are clothed in a round Coat, and Hood called **Cuculla** or a **Coole**, which covered the Shoulders, in the Winter their Hoods are lined; they wear no Breeches but when they travelled into

into the Countrey. The colour of their upper Garment is **Black**, under it they wear a **White Woollen Coat** with **Sack cloth**, and they go **Booted**: they were also by their rules tied to lie in their Hoods and Coats, that they might be the sooner ready for Prayer at the ringing of the Bell. Their **Diet** was both simple and course as St. *Bennet* prescribed them, but now it is much changed, for they **Eat Flesh**, and **Drink Wine** Plentifully: this order of **Monks** came first into *England* about the Year 596.

Orders, and Rules of the Benedictine Monks.

First that the **Abbot** be careful of his charge, to be Holy, Just, Wise, and Charitable, Powerful in his Words to Correct, Exhort, Reprove without partiality: to beware of Dissimulation, Pride, Covetousness, and not to do any thing without advise of the Covent; that he use strangers with all Reverence, and Salute them with an holy Kiss.

That the **Monks** be obedient, silent, humble, and be Watchful to Prayer: that they should Praise God with *David* seven times a Day, to wit in the Morning at the first, third, sixth, ninth, hours, in the Evening, and completory, and at mid-night: that they must Pray with all reverence, that obstinate Persons be expelled the Covent.

That every one **Serve in the Kitchin** when his turn is, that they Eat and Drink sparingly: that from *Easter* to *Pentecost* the Brothers have their Refection or Meat at the sixth hour, and Supper in the Evening: that they fast in Summer every fourth and sixth day in the Week, to the ninth hour: that all *Lent* time they Eat not, till the Evening.

That every **Monk** have his one **Bed**, and a **Candle** to burn by him all Night: if any come short to Prayers or his Meat, he is to stand apart by himself, and to be last served and shortned in his Victuals: if any for some great offence be Excommunicated out of the Oratory, he shall make satisfaction by prostrating before the Oratory, who upon Repentance may be received three times, but never after the third offence.

That no **Novice** be admitted into the Monastery without sufficient trial of his constancy and patience: and that he shall not be shaved, or to have a Monks Garment till his time of probation be expired, and promise made by him of obedience: that no Noble Men shall put their Children into the Covent, but shall first swear to give them no part of their Estate, but to bestow the same on the Monastery.

That he shall be **Abbot** or **Prior** which the whole Covent or the greater or better part shall **Choose**: That the **Provost** or **Prepositus** be chosen by the **Abbot** to whom he must be subject.

That the **Porter** be a grave and discreet Man, who may receive and give answers, and that the **Monastery** be provided with **Water** and a **Mill**, and other Necessaries within it self, least the Brothers should wander abroad.

These with a 100 more Fobberies and Foolleries are further set down by *Rosse in his view of all Religions*, to which I referr the Reader.

Officers in a Monastery.

The Abbot.
The Prior, three in Number.
The Dean.
The Priest or Deacon.
The Steward.
The Confessor.
The Overseer of the Church.
The Sexton to keep the Church clean.
The Library Keeper.
The Reader chosen Weekly to Read all the time of the Refection.
The Provost, or Præpositus.
The Porter.
The Admonitor.
The Sacrist or Keeper of the Vestments, or Subprior.
The Visiter of the Sick; or Overseer of the Sick.
The Almoner, or giver of Alms.
The Butler, Sellar keeper, or under Butler, or Drawer.
The Cooks in number three, Overseers of the Kitchin.
The Refector, or **Usher** of the Dining Room.
The Controller.
The Monks or Friers to such a Number.
The Brewer.
The Baker.
The Miller.
The Keeper of the Wardrobe.
The Instructor, or Mr. of the Novices.
The Skullion of the Kitchin to make Fires, and wash Dishes, three in number.
The Overseer of the Works.
The Chamberlain to see the Chambers kept clean.
The Caterer, or Purveyer: that buyeth and provides Meat.
The Novices or Schollars, such as lately come into the Abby.
The Coajutor, or fellow helper, either in Spiritual, or Temporal things.

The Order of Receiving and Consecrating of a Monk.

In most Places anciently none were admitted into the Monastery till they were first tried by waiting 10 days together without the Gate, and patiently enduring all the Speeches that shall be uttered against them; then open the Abbot receive them with a long exhortation admonishing them to their Duties, and chiefly exhorting them to Mortification, Humility, Silence, Obedience, Meekness, Patience, Sobriety, Submission, Confession of their Infirmities, and such like Duties.

Then are these **Probationers** stripp'd of their own Garments, and clothed in **Monks Habit**, and are tried one whole Year under strict Discipline; if there be faults on either side, they receive their own cloathes

again

again from the Steward, and are dismissed the Monastery.

If they like the Rules and Discipline of the Monastery and will abide in the same, then are these **Novices** or **young Monks** to promise obedience, *&c.* Whereupon they are (after Prayer made for them, and Exhortation made by a Priest) each Monk to be received, is signed with the sign of the Cross, then is he shaved, or polled rather; then his old Garments are taken off, and he is cloathed in a Monastical habit, according to the order of the House, and then with other Holy Men present, is made partaker of the Divine Mysteries of the Eucharist.

The Election and Consecration of an Abbot or Prior.

In ancient times none was to be set over Monks, to be either their Abbot or Prior, but such as were Monks: and they were chosen by the Major part of the Votes of the Monks in the Abby or Monastery, or Friery: yet if the Covent chose an unfit Man for their Abbot, the Bishop of the Diocess with the Neighbouring Abbots, or the Prince of the place may depose him, and choose another. But now a days Princes do ordinarily choose such as they please, and impose them upon the Monks: when he is chosen, he is Consecrated by the Bishop of the Diocess, who hath power to visit the Monasteries within his Jurisdiction and to correct what is amiss.

On the Consecration day which is either a Festival or the Lords day, the Bishop and the Elect Abbot fast the day before, then the high Alter is set with a Cross, and four Candlesticks, the foot of the Alter is covered with Turky Carpets or Tapestry: also a Table is placed for the Bishop on which is clean Linnen, two Candlesticks, Basons, Towels, the holy Water Pot, with the Aspersory, the Censer, with the Bishops Mass Ornaments: there are also three Chairs, one for the Elect Abbot, and the other for his two assistant Abbots.

The Bishop with his Mitre on his Head ascends to the Alter and having Prayed, ascends his Chair of State, the Elect Abbot between his assistants sits in his ordinary Cloaths; then he riseth and boweth to the Bishop, who puts off his Mitre and Prayeth and Blesseth the Elects new cloaths, and sprinkleth them with Holy Water, then sits down, puts on his Mitre, uncloaths the Elect saying, the Lord take off from thee the old Man, and then cloaths him with a Monastical habit, saying, the Lord cloath thee with the new Man: then he kneeleth before the Bishop who Prayeth over him; the Elect promising Canonical obedience: after this the Elect withdraweth and is Habited like a Priest, and so brought between the two Abbots to the Bishop, who is desired to ordaine him Abbot of such a place, then the Popes Mandate is read, then the Elect Abbot sweareth on the Gospel, the Bishop asking if he will be Faithful over the Flock commited to him, if he will be subject and obedient to the Pope, *&c.* to which if he answers I will; then he Kisseth the Bishops Hand, the Alter and Gospel: after this he withdraweth, and is trimmed in the Abbots Ornaments, and so brought again before the Bishop, to whom he boweth himself, and then the Musick begins; then the Bishop takes the Pastoral Staff, Blesseth it, and sprinkleth it with Holy Water, and delivers it unto him, the Elect kneeling (the Bishop first having laid both his Hands upon his Head using the Prayer of Consecration, and given him the orders of the Abby whereof he is to be head) after he Blesseth the Ring and puttoth it on the Ring Finger of the right Hand; then he receiveth the kiss of Peace.

This done, he retireth again, and returneth with his two assistants, and presents the Bishop with two burning Tapers, two Breads, two Vessels of Wine, and Kisseth his hand: then Mass is said, the Sacraments are Administred, and the Abbot is Solemnly Blessed.

Then the Mitre is Blessed, and sprinkled with Holy Water, and put on his Head by the Bishop, saying, Lord we put on the head of this thy Servant, the Helmet of Salvation, that he having his head armed, may with the horns of both Testaments appear terrible to the adversaries of the Truth, *&c.*

And lastly the Gloves are Blessed and done with Holy Water, and put on the Abbots hands, who with the Mitre on his head, and Staff in his hand, is brought by the Bishop to the Quire, and seated in his Predecessors Chair, whence he riseth, and Blesseth the People present, and thanks the Bishop: so returns to the Monastery, where the rest of the day is spent in Hospitality and good Chear.

The Consecration of an **Abbatess** and **Nuns**, are much after this Manner.

The Names of all the Places in a Monastery or Abby.

The Lodge, or Porters Chamber.
The Hall, called the Refectory: because it is their Dining Place.
The Kitchin.
The Pantry.
The Skullery.
The Buttery.
The Parasceve.
The Chambers.
The Dorry or Dormitory, the place where the Monks slept.
The Vestry or Wardrobe, where their cloaths were kept.
The Mill.
The Bake-House.
The Brew-House.
The Sellars.
The Cloisters.
The Gardens, and Orchards.

After this Order of St. *Bennet* had flourished about 400 Years, out of this Root sprung up new Branches, who being offended at the loosness of the **Benedictines** which followed not their Rules and Orders; resolved to retaine

retaine the old, and so by adding some new Statutes, begot more Order of Monks, as:

The **Cluniacenses**, or **Monks** of **Cluniacum**, or **Clugny**; so called from the place where *Berno* first built them a Monastry: they were not called **Benedictins**, but **Cluniacenses**; by their Rules the Abbots is to Eat with the Brothers, and not always with Strangers: that a revolting Monk, may be received again after three times, they had the Custom of dipping the Consecrated Bread in the Cup, to these Monks *William* Surnamed the *Godly*, gave a Village in his Dukedom of *Aquitain*, called *Mastick*: *Anno* 916.

The **Camaldulensans**, or **Camalduenses**, or the **Monks** of **Camaldulum**; founded by *Romualdus* of *Ravenna*, who Dreamed that he saw a Ladder reaching from that place to Heaven, on which he saw Mortals cloathed in white, mounting upwards: these Monks wear white Hoods, and sit bare footed.

The Order of **Vallis Umbrosa**, or the **Vallis Umbrences**, or the **Monks of the shadowy Valley**: instituted about 1050. by one *John Gualbert* a *Florentine*, who followed St. *Bennets* Rule, which he enlarged by causing Lights to burn still in the Night both in their Chappels and Dormitories: and that they should wear no other cloaths, but what they made of the Wool of their own Sheep: their habit was of a purple, or as others write of an Ash colour.

The **Sylvestrinians**, or **Monks of Silvestrini**: so named from *Sylvester* who instituted this order after the rule and habit of the **Monks of Vallis Umbrosa**: This Order began in the *Marquisate* of *Ancona* in *Italy*.

The Order of the **Grandimontensans**, founded by one *Peter* a Disciple and Successor of *Stephen*, who in the Year 1076. erected this Order in *Gascony* on the Hill *Muretum*, they were called **Grandimontenses**, from a voice which he hard saying three times *Grandi Monte*: that is in the great Hill: he prescribed his followers a rule patched up of St. *Bennet*, and the Canons Regular of St. *Austin*: they were first governed by a Prior, after the Pope gave them an Abbot: their habit was a Coat of Mail, with a black Cloak thereon.

St. Anthonies Monks of Vienna, set up about 1095. by *Gastho* and *Gerondus* two Noble Men of that place, and were to live according to the Rule of St. *Austin*.

The Order of **Praemonstratensans**, or **Monks of Praemonstratum**: Erected by one *Robert* of *Lorrain*, Archbishop of *Magdenburge* in *Germany*, about the Year 1119. being fore shew'd of the same by St. *Austin* in a Vision; they are Titled Canons Regular: their Abbot is not to wear a Mitre, Gloves, or a Ring as other Bishops and Abbots do. These came into *England* *Anno* 1145. and seated in *Lincolnshire*.

The **Gilbertines**, so called from *Gilbert* of *Lincolnshire*, who in the Year 1148. instituted this Order, his chief Cloysters was at *Sempringham* in *Lincolnshire* where he was born, in which were 700 Friers, and 1100 Nuns, who observed Statutes collected out of the Rules of St. *Austin* and *Bennet*.

The **Monks**, or **Hospitalers of the Holy Ghost**; had their begining at *Rome*, about 1201. they had the same Rules and Priviledges of other Monks: their chief Officer was to take care of Sick, and to burie them being dead.

The **Trinitarians**, or **Monks of the Order of the Trinity**, begun *Anno* 1211, by *John Matta*, and *Felix Anachoreta*: they wear a white Cloak with a red and sky colour Cross on the Breast of it: they were called Brothers of the Holy Trinity, and Monks of the redemption of captives, for their charge was to gather Money for Redeeming of captive Christians from the Infidels. They came into *England* 1357. two parts of all their Revenues was for their own Maintenance, the third was for Captives. Their Governor or Procurator was termed Minister, who was chosen by common consent of the Brothers, and none to be admitted into their Orders till he were past twenty years of age: they must be shaven, but the lay Brothers may permit their Beards to grow. And at certain times in the Year they absolved the faithful that were dead in the Church yard.

The **Bethlemites**, or **Monks of Bethlem**; these had their first residence in *Cambridge* in the Year 1357. they were apparelled like the *Dominicans* or *Prædicants*, but on their Breasts they wore a red Star like a Comet, in Memory of that Star which appeared at Christs Nativity.

The **Order of the Scopetinians**, instituted by *Stephen* and *James* of *Sena*, and Confirmed by Pope *Gregory* the eleventh, about the Year 1408. These Professed to live after the Rule of St. *Austin*.

The Order of the **Frisonarians**, called also **Monks Lateranenses**: these sprung up in the Teritory of *Luca*, which *Eugenius* the fourth ratified. They also followed the Rule of St. *Austin*.

The Order of St. **George of Alga**, Instituted at *Venice* by *Laurentius Iustinianus*, *Anno* 1407. and Confirmed by Pope *John* the 22. these wear a blue Habit, yet professeth to follow the Rules of St. *Austin*: To these may be added the Brotherhood of the **Bygidians**; the Servants of the **Blessed Virgin Mary**; the **Crucierians**, or **Cross-bearing Monks**; the Brothers of St. **Peter the Confessor**; **Eremites** or **Hermits of St. Paul**; with diverse others, which followed the Rules and Statutes of St. *Austin*

The **Monte-livetenses** Order was set up by *Barnard Ptolomeus* at *Sienna* in *Tuscany*, *Anno* 1047. They wore all white Garments.

The **Bernardines**, so called from St. *Bernard* who was made Abbot of *Claravallis*, *Anno* 1098. whose Monks were all of the *Cistertian* Order, yet were from him stiled **Bernardines**. They wore a black Gown over a white Coat.

The **Celestinians**, so called from *Celestinus* the fifth, their founder whose former name was *Peter Moroneus:* This Order was Confirmed by *Gregory* the tenth, in the Council of *Lyons*. Their Habit was of a sky colour, without a Hood: they lived after the Rule of St. *Bennet*. These Monks came into *England*, *Anno* 1414.

The **Monks** called **Gerundinenses**, were after the Order of St. *Bennet*, instituted by *John* Bishop of *Gerundinenses* in *Portugal*, about the Year 610. who built them an Abby: he gave them a white Garment to wear, with his own Coat of Arms on the Breast thereof: they were ordered to wear four Ribbons, to wit, two Red, and two Green. This Order was erected under *Boniface* the fourth, Pope of *Rome*.

The **Monks of Cassinum**, are a Monastery of *Benedictins* where diverse rites were observed, which are not in St. *Benneis* Rules: the chief are these. Fourteen days before *Easter* all the **Alters** are stript of their Ornaments, and covered with black: the **Images** are Vailed: *Gloria Patri* is not Sung. Three Nights before *Easter*, the Night Service continueth till Morning, and is joyned to the *Mattins:* no **Bells Ring**, the **Candles** are put out.

On *Easter-Even* in the Night **Tapers** are kindled, and on *Easter-Day* before Mass, there is a **Procession** with burning Tapers and Holy Water, the Priests Singing and Praying. The two next days after, **Crosses, Holy Water**, and **Reliques** are carried about with the **Gospel** and **Burning Tapers**, with Singing and Saluting each other with Holy Kisses, the Priests being in their Rich Copes.

On the Evens they fast, they work not: nor kneel at Prayer: at other lesser Festival when they fast not, they work. Their Meat is given them by measure, at the Abbots discretion. When they receive New Garments, they march Singing with Tapers burning in their Hands into the Vestery or Wardrobe, where the Gospel is read to them: Be not careful what ye Eat, nor what you shall Drink; nor for your Bodies what you shall put on, *&c.* then having Prayed, they lay down their old Garments, and receive new.

They must not walk without the Convent with a **Staff**, except they be weak: they are shaven altogether on certain Days.

The **Monks of Vallis Scholarium**, begun 1217. by one *William Richardus* a Scholar in *Paris*, who betook him to the *Desarts* of *Champanie*, where he set up a new Order, but after the Rule of St. *Austin*, borrowing some things from the *Cisterians*.

The **Monks of the Order** or **Congregation of St. Marks**, Cannon Regulars begun in *Mantua*, *Anno* 1231.

The **Eremites of St. Paul** in *Hungaria*, were instituted 1215. after the Rule of St. *Austin*, by one *Eusebius* of *Strigonia:* these came into *England* and seated themselves in *Colchester*, *Anno* 1310.

The Order of **Boni Homines** or **Boni Viri**, that is good Men: these Monks good Men were instituted by *Edmund* Son of *Richard* Earl of *Cornwal*, who had been elected Emperour. These did follow St. *Austins* Rule, and did wear a sky coloured Garment.

The **Monks** or **Friers** called **St. Maries Servants**, they follow the Rule of St. *Austin*, they wear a short black Coat, and over that a long one, pleated about the Shoulders, it was instuted, 1282.

The **Monks** called **Jesuati**, begun at *Sena* by *John Columbus* and others, 1365. They were so called from using the word Jesus often in their Mouths: they were afterwards called **Apostolici**: they wear a white Garment, and cover for their Heads, a Leather Girdle, and to go bare footed, using only wooden soles. They were permitted to carry a Satchel or Bag to put the Alms in, which they begged.

The **Eremites of St. Jerome** in *Spain*, lived under St. *Austins* Rule, and were instituted 1366. They differ in their Habit, and other things little or nothing from the Monks of St. *Hierome*.

The **Canons of Saint Saviour** were instituted in *Italy*, *Anno* 1366. at a place called *Scopetum*, whence they were named **Scopetini**: these followed St. *Austins* Rule, and wear a white Cloak, with a white Hood, above a white Linnen Gown.

The **Monks** called **Albati**, so called from their wearing of white Linnen, these made profession of Sorrow for the Sins and Calamities of the times; they Eat together in the High ways, and slept all promiscuously together, like Beasts.

The **Monks of Mount Olivet**, called **Montolivetenses**: this Order begun, *Anno* 1407. when the Church was divided between three Popes. These professed St. *Bennets* Rule, and cloathed themselves all in white. There were others of the same name long before these, whose Author wore a Linnen cloath about his waste only, the rest of his Body naked.

The **Canons Regular of St. George**, called also **Apostolici**: instituted by *Laurence Iustinian* Archbishop of *Venice*, *Anno* 1407. They wear a Linnen Surplice over their Garments, and a black Hood, but out of the Cloysters they wear a black Cloak, with a black Hat.

There be two Orders more of this name, the one wears white, and the other blue: they abstain from Flesh, except in Sickness, and are not tied by vow to their Profession.

The **Monks** called **Mendicants** of St. *Jerome*, these were instituted *Anno* 1407. They Professed St. *Austins* Rule, they wear dark coloured cloaths. and over their Coat a pleated Cloak divided, they use a Leather Girdle, and Wooden Shoes.

The **Canons of Lateran**, makes St. *Austin* their Author: their Cloaks, Scapulars, and Hoods black.

The

The **Monks** of the **Order of the Holy Ghost** were instituted near *Venice*, *Anno* 1407. they use the same Habit which the Canons Regular do wear.

The **Monks** or **Brothers** of St. **Ambrose ad Nemus**, were instituted at *Milan*, and confirmed *Anno* 1433. they wear dark cloaths, and profess St. *Austines* Rule.

The **Monks** called **Minimi** of **Jesu Maria**, were instituted by one *Francis Paula*, a *Cicilian*, *Anno* 1471. he made 3 Rules, one for the Brothers, another for the Sisters, and the third for both Sexes called **Tertiarij**. He called the Brothers **Minimi**, and the Sisters **Minime**, to teach them Humility; they abstained altogether from Flesh, they wore only course Linnen, and wander up and down bare headed and bare footed.

The Order of **Poor Pilgrims**, these came out of *Italy* into *Germany* bare foot and bare headed, some covered their bodies with Linnen, others with grey cloth, carrying every one in his hand a **Wooden Cross**, but without Scrip or Bag, Staff or Money; drinking nothing but Water; feeding all the Week on Herbs and Roots, they abstained altogether from Eggs, Butter, Cheese, Milk, Fish and Flesh: In the Church they stretch out their Arms in manner of a Cross, and Praying fall flat on the ground; they stay not 24 hours in a place, and go by couples a Begging from door to door. These begun 1500.

The Monks of the **Order of the Indians**, so called because they took upon them the Conversion of the *Indians*; they wore black Coats, and over them white Gowns; these begun 1506.

The **Monks** of the Order of the **Society of Divine Love**, these were devout people who met in retired places, remote from the vulgar, where they Prayed, Sung, Administred the Sacraments, with other Acts of Devotion. They were called also **Theatini**, from *Theatinum*, they were much in esteem in the year 1537.

The **Monks** or **Friers** called the **Society of Jesus**, or more briefly **Jesuites**, so called because they took upon them to advance the Name, Doctrine and Honour of Jesus more than other Orders heretofore. It was Instituted in the year 1540. they wear a long black Philosophical Cloak instead of a Hood; their Cap resembles a Cross, which is called **Bareta**; but this they do not wear abroad; their **Cassocks** they call **Solanas**, which they tye with **Silk Girdles**.

This Order differs from all others, for besides the three Ordinary Vows of Poverty, Chastity and Obedience, they tye themselves to the Pope to undertake cheerfully, readily, and without charging him, any Journey he shall command, for the propagating of the *Roman* Faith.

Their Rules and Constitutions is to shew the end of their Society, which is to do good to their own Souls and the Souls of others, and that therefore they are bound to Travel too and fro in the World, which Constitutions ought to be heard and read every Month.

*

Their **General** and **Provincials**, are to rule diligently and faithfully, with Mildness tempered with Severity, not to alter any thing in the Rules and Customs of the Province without Consent.

The **Sub-Provincial**, is to act the same things in the Absence, and in Case of Sickness, as the Provincial.

The **Counsellors** are to advise with the Provincial in matters of weight, and not be rash in giving of Sentence.

The **Provosts** Office is to see that the Rules and Constitutions of the House be observed, that Confession be made at the appointed times, to impose Ordinary Penance on Offenders, as publick Reproof, eating under the Table, to Kiss the Feet of others, *&c.*

The **Rectors** of Colledges have the same Rules in a manner as the Provost, he must examine the fitness of such as desire admission into the Society.

The **Master of the Novices** is to help, comfort, and instruct them upon all occasions; he hath power in some cases to enjoin Penance on them, and also to Absolve them.

The **Minister** or **Controller** of the House is to assist the Provost and Rector, that all the Rules and Constitutions be duly observed, to visit every other day all the Offices and Chambers of the House, to see that all things be in good Order.

The **Admonitor** is tied by his Rule to put them in mind wherein any of them hath failed in their Office and Duty, and admonish them to be more careful.

The **Overseer** of the Church is to acquaint the Provost every Saturday, what Feast or Fast days are the Week following, that Notice may be given, and to set down what Ceremonies are to be used the next Week at the High Altar; he must have a care that Masses and Prayers be carefully performed for their deceased Founders and Benefactors: he must have an especial care of the Host, the Holy Oil, Crosses, Chalices, Reliques, and all the Church Moveables.

The **Priest** is to be devout, holy and reverent in the exercise of his Function, to observe all the *Roman* Rites, Uniformity and Customs; and to be diligent in hearing Confessions and Visiting of the Sick.

The **Preacher** is to Teach sound and wholesom Doctrine, not tending to Curiosity but to Edification; also they are to Confer, Catechise, Pray, Administer the Sacraments, Visit the Sick, Resolve Doubts of Conscience, Compose Differences, and be exemplary in their Lives.

The **General Proctor** is to entertain no Suits in Law if he can avoid them, to keep a List of all Church Benefices united to their Colledge; to have a great care of all the Writings, Popes Bulls, Records, and other Paper committed to his Charge.

The **Proctor of the House**, is to have a care of the Houses Records and Money, and to give an account how it is spent.

The **Proctor of the Colledge and House of Probation**, is likewise to be careful of their Records and Money, and to keep a good account of what is received and laid out.

The **Readers Office** is to Read at Table distinctly, those Lessons which by the Rules of the Colledg are set

set down to be daily Read, as Chapters in the Bible, *Ignatius* his Epistle of Obedience, the Matrilogy of the next day, *Eusebius* History, and the like Books.

The **Overseer, or Looker to of the Sick**, called **Infirmarius**, he is to see to their Diet, that they have a Physitian, and that they want nothing that concerns them; and that if the Sick party die, he be decently interred.

The **Library Keeper**, is to keep the place Locked, except to those who are admitted, to keep the Books clean, to lend none forth, and to have a Catalogue of them.

The **under Minister** or **Officer of the House**, is to look to the Chambers, Refectory, Kitchin, Buttery, and other places, that all things be fit, and in good Order.

The **Sexton** is to Ring the Bell to Mass, and Passing Bell when any of the Society dieth, keep the Church clean, Light the Wax Candle and Tapers, have a care of the Sacred Vestments, Linnens, Host and Wine, and never be wanting of Holy Water, and shut and open the Church Doors.

The **Porter** is to have a List of the Domesticks, and suffer none to go out without leave; none that returns from the Countrey are to be let in, till the Superiour know it: The Keys of the Gates are every Night to be delivered to the Provost.

The **Keeper of the Wardrobe**, is to have a List of all the Cloaths in the House and Linnen, and must every Week furnish each Chamber with clean Linnen, as Shirts, Towels, Napkins, and every three Weeks sheets for the Beds.

The **Steward of the House** must be careful of the Wine and Water and Diet of the Society, and to have the Wine Cask kept clean.

The **Usher of the Hall**, he hath Charge of the Hall, which they term the **Refectory** (from their refreshing of themselves by Dining and Supping in it) he is to see that there be no want of Water Towels, Napkins, Table Cloaths; that due hours of Refection be observed by the Ringing of a Bell; that he have a List of the Names of them in Commons.

The **Cook** must keep a List of all things belonging to the Kitchin, dress his Meat cleanly, frugally and diligently, not to be wasteful of the Fuel.

The **Excitator**, who wakeneth the Jesuites in the Morning, must sleep before the others because he must rise before the rest, Ring the Bell, and carry Lights to every Chamber; and at Night Ring to Bed, and see that every one be in Bed, and the Candles put out, if not to acquaint the Superiour.

The **Caterer** or Provider for the House or Colledge is to Buy all things necessary, imploying that Money delivered to him to the best advantage, giving an account of the same.

Jesuites Priviledges.

Pope Paul *the Third gave them power to make what and how many Rules and Constitutions they pleased towards the advance of the Society; and to take as many into their Order as their General would, when as in the beginning they were stinted to 60 only; he gave them power to Preach, Administer the Sacraments, hear Confession, and give Absolution.*

That they should have their Coadjutors *or* Fellow Helpers, *both Spiritual as Priests, and Temporal, as Cooks, Bakers, Butlers and Caterers.*

They are exempted from all Secular Power, *and from all Taxes and Tyths; and may disguise themselves into any Habit when they Travel; and to Exercise all Episcopal and Ecclesiastical Functions, Excommunicate and Imprison Delinquents, give Indulgences, Ordain, Anoint, Exorcise, Confirm, Consecrate and Dispence with Fastings and Prohibited Meats.*

They have a Priviledge to Erect Universities *where they please, to read publickly in any University they come to without leave, and none to hinder them; they have power to have* Conservators, Judges *and* Advocates *of their own, to Correct, Change, Expunge and Burn such Books as they dislike, to be the Popes Library Keepers, and are exempted from being necessarily present at Processions or Funerals.*

By reason of these and other Priviledges granted, this Order besides their own Industry, they have grown so numerous in the space of 75 years, that in that time there were 293 Colledges, besides 123 Houses of them; so that of their Society were reckoned 10581; out of their Colledges they raise a Revenue of Twenty Hundred Thousand Crowns yearly.

The **Monks** of the **Order** called **Capuchins**, whose beginning was about the year 1530. they were confirmed by Pope *Clement* the seventh, by the term *Capucini*.

There are divers more but of less note, as

The **Ambrosiani**, Monk of St. *Ambrose*, Ambrosian Friers, who wear red Cloaks over white Coats.

The **Capellanians**, whose Garments are partly black and partly blew.

The **Chalomerians** wear a White Cross on a white Cloak.

The **Cellarij**, from their living in Cells.

The **Brothers of Mercy**, so called from Visiting the Sick, and carrying the dead to the Grave; in the in-side they wear Black Linnen, on the out-side a sooty coloured Garment.

The **Clavigerans**, from *Clavigeri*, who wear on a black Cowle two Keys, intimating by this that they had power to open and shut Heaven; they make St. *Peter* Author of this Order. The **Fosciferi**, or **Sheet-bearers**, or **Sheet Brothers**, so called from wearing a pair of sheets on their Cloak, by which they shew that they clip off all carnal Lusts; they wear a black Cloak and Hood.

The

The **Brothers of St. Hellen,** they brag that they were instituted by *Hellen*, Mother of *Constantine* the Great, after she had found out the Cross; they wear white Garments with a yellow Cross on it.

The **Brothers of St. James,** wear a sandy coloured Garment, and Cockle or Escallop shells hanging at it, they make St. *James* their Patron.

The **Brothers of the Johannites,** is an Order differing from the former, for they wear a red Garment to represent Christs Blood, and on the Breast thereof is Woven a Chalice or Cup; to shew that in his Blood our Sins are washed away; they also hold a Book still in their hand.

The **Brothers** of the Order of the **Valley of Jehosaphat,** go in a Purple Garment; these appoint Judges to decide Controversies of Marriage.

The **Brothers of Joseph,** an Order erected in Honour of *Maries* supposed Husband; these wear Ash-coloured Garments and a white Hood.

The **Brothers of St. Egedius,** or **St. Lazarus,** of some called **St. Giles.** This Order wears a green Cross on a black Cloak with a Hood. There be two sorts of them, some contemplative, who wear black within and white without, using ordinary food; the others wear Tawny colour or Brown, and are Active, their food is only Herbs and Roots.

The **Order** or **Brotherhood** of St. **Ruffus,** these go like the Canons Regular wearing a scapular over a Linen Surplice, and a black Hood.

The **Brothers of the Looking Glass,** called **Specularij,** because they always carry them; their inward Garment is black, and the outward white, and on their Breast a black Cross.

The **Brothers** of the **Stars** called **Stellati,** some of them wear black Gowns and Hoods with Stars on; others have Cloaks without Hoods.

The **Orders** or **Brotherhoods of St. Anns, St. Ursulas, St. Georges,** and **St. Johns of Jerusalem,** and others that were small petty Fraternities, I find to be seated within our City of *Chester*, but whether their Rules tied them to any peculiar Habit I have not much sought after.

The **Brotherhood** or Order of **Ignorance**; these Men think it Mans greatest Happiness to know nothing; this is the Antientest and now the greatest Order in the World, and is like to swallow up all the other Orders and degrees of Learning; and the more happy will it be when it is fed with Tithes and Colledges, and Bishops Lands; but I hope God will send Wise *Josephs* to prevent and suppress its overgrowth.

XVII. He beareth Or, a **Monk** of the **Order of the Minorites.** These are termed **Friers minors, Begging Friers,** or **Gray Friers**; because their first beginning was to live on the Charity of others, as we see those beyond the Seas do at this day, going by couples with Wallets on their shoulders to receive Alms. This is the Order of St. **Francis,** whose Habit was a Hair shirt, and a plain single Wool Coat, girt about with a Cord; they wore a Coul and went bare footed; they first came into *England* about 8 *H.* 3. *Anno* 1224. and were called **Franciscans,** or **Franciscan Friers.**

Orders or Rules of the Gray Friers, or Frier-Minorites of St. Francis.

First, they were not to have **Granaries,** nor **two Coats,** that they meddle not with Money, nor appropriate any thing to themselves; that they shall be Chaste, Poor and Obedient to Christ, the Pope and their Superiours; to give themselves to Prayer, Modesty, Temperance, and other Virtues.

That the **Governors** of the Fraternity should not be called **Masters,** but **Ministers,** to put them in mind of their Humble Condition, and to follow Christs advice to his Disciples, *Whosoever will be great among you, let him be your Servant:* That they hold publick Meetings or Chapters; and that they choose their Provincial Ministers, and these chuse a general Minister over the whole Fraternity.

That the **Clergy** in their Divine Service, follow the Order of the *Roman* Church; and the Lay Brothers say 24 *Pater Nosters* for their Mattens, *&c.* That they Fast from *All Saints* till *Christmas*; not to enter into any House, but to say *Peace be to this House*, and then they may Eat of what is set before them.

That none be **Admitted** into their Order till they be duly examined and proved, and that Penance be imposed on such who Sin; that they shall not be called **Franciscans** from the name of the Author of this Order, but **Minors** or **Frier Minorites.**

This Order was divided into three **Classes** or **Ranks,** the first was **Friers Minorites,** who are to have nothing either in Common or in Property.

The second was **Nuns Clarissans,** from St. *Clara* their Founder, which were Ladies and poor Virgins, that spent their time in Contemplation only; their Order was not so strict as the former, for they had all things in common.

The third was of **Penitents,** instituted for Married Folks, who desired to do Penance; these are called **Friers Penitentes** of Jesus Christ; and **Saccij,** from the Sack Cloth which they wore; the Women are called **Sisters Penitents.**

XVIII. He

XVIII. He beareth Vert, a **Monk** of the **Order of St. Basil**, (because they first followed his Rules, though generally they are termed) **Frier Carmelites**, or **White Friers.** At first they wore a Mantle parti-coloured white and red, but Pope *Honorius* changed it to all white, calling them the **Family of the Blessed Mary.** This Order came first into *England* about the year 1240. Some write that they did wear a White Cloak and a White Hood; and under, a Coat with a scapulary of hair colour, which was confirmed to them by Pope *Nicholas* the fourth.

The Rules and Orders of the White Friers *or* Frier Carmelites.

They were to enjoy **no Possessions** or **Revenues**, but to Beg from Door to Door; they were tyed to Fasting, Silence, and Canonical hours, much after the Rule of St. *Basil*.

The Lay Brothers were tyed to the Orders of **Peter the Eremite**, as *Bedes*, *Prayers*, and *The Ladies Psalter*; they had no other Vow but that of Obedience to their Superior, the which was called **Prior** or **Master.**

That what was in their **Cloysters**, is to be enjoyed among them both in Common and in Property; but only such as Necessity required for Food and Rayment; and this is the Poverty both of these **White Friers** and **Augustinians.**

This Order was divided into two Sects, the first were called **Friers Carmelites Observantes**, because they lived according to the Rules prescribed them. This Order is held Meritorious, and three years Indulgence is promised to him that shall at any time call them **Brothers of St. Mary:**

The second are called **Friers Carmelites non Observantes**, because they live not according to the strictness of their Rules, but live in Riot and Voluptuousness; these have changed their Hair coloured Coat into Black.

XIX. He beareth in a Field Gules, a **Carthusian Monk**, in the **Habit** and **Cowl** of that Order, Argent. This Order lived a most severe Life, they wore a white loose Coat with a Cowl or Hood of the same; but when they went out a case of Black stuff was cast over them, they had hair shirts, and were shaved or shorn, or polled, just as the *Benedictines* are.

They were first brought into *England* by K. *H.* 2. *Anno* 1181. The Lay Brothers of the Convent, which were to bring the Meat to the **Hermites in their Cells**, were not shaven, but their hair on the head is cut round and short, their Habit being the same with the Monks, saving the scapular, which reacheth a little below the middle, and is girt close to them: They were called **Carthusian Monks** from the place *Cathusia*, in the Province of *Dolphine*, where this Order first begun.

Such an head couped below the shoulders, habited or clothed A. is the crest of *Brunigshafen*.

The like to the sinister, hood and clothed C. is the crest of *Walrus*, and also of *Zu Hautendorf* of *Bavaria*.

The like cloathed O. cowle or hood over his head and shoulders B. is the crest of *Helgenstein* of *Alsatia*.

The Orders and Rules of the Carthusian *Monks.*

Bruno the first Author of this Order, *Anno* 1080. instituted these Rules for himself and his Convent.

That they should **Eat no Flesh** at all; and that on Fridays they should eat nothing but Bread and Water.

That they should **live apart in Cells**, and there to have their Diet singly brought them, except on certain Festivals when they Dined together.

That they should **not Converse** with each other, but at certain times.

That none shall go out of the **Monastery** but the Superiour and Procurator, and they only but about the affairs of the Convent.

That at the hours of Publick Prayer they are to meet in the Quire: The diurnal and nocturnal Offices like the *Benedictines*.

That **no Women** are to come within the Precincts of the Monastery, nor they to speak with any of them, without special Licence given by the Superior.

That **the Cells** shall be **Ground Rooms**, and low Built, each having a Garden behind it, invironed with a high Wall.

They are limited to enjoy a certain **quantity of Land**, a certain **number of Sheep, Goats, Asses**, which they must not exceed.

There were to be in one Convent but 12 **Religious Men**, besides the **Prior**, and 18 **Converts** or lay Brothers with a few **Servants.**

The Monks of this Order have a **Meeting** or **Chapter** yearly at **Carthusia**, about their own affairs; thither two Monks out of every Cloyster do repair, where they stay 14 days.

XX. He beareth Azure, a **Cistercian Monk** in the **Habit** of his **Order.** The Monks of this Order wear no Leather nor Linnen, not indeed any fine Woollen cloth; except it be in a Journey do they put on any **Breeches**, and then upon their return deliver them fair washed: They have two Coats with a Cowl in the Winter time, which they are not to augment; but in the Summer if they please may lessen them; in which habit they are to sleep, and after **Mattens** not to return to their Beds; their Coats are white, nothing differing

differing from the fashion of the *Benedictane* Rule, except a Girdle, which these wear about their middle: they came first into *England* about 1132; or 26 *H.* 1. they are called **Cistertians**, from *Cistertium*, a place in *Burgundy*, where they first entred into the Order, to stick close to the Rules of St. *Benner*. In the beginning they were named *Grisei*, from their wearing of Grey.

Rules and Orders of the Cistertian *Monks.*

They were very abstemious in their Talk and Diet, not having above **two Dishes**, in which the Abbot assumed no more liberty to himself than the Convent; neither do they eat of **Fat** or **Flesh**, except in time of Sickness.

From the Ides of *September* till *Easter*, they **Eat but once a day**, no not on Festivals, except on Sundays.

That they should keep **strictly the Rules** of their Order, and cut off all the superfluities of Apparel and Diet introduced by the loose Monks of the Order of St. *Benedict*.

They were to **possess no Churches, Altars, Oblations, Tythes**, nor **Sepultures**, neither **Mills, Farms**, or to suffer Women to come into their Convent; but were to abandon all things, and to profess Poverty with Christ.

That the **Monastery** was to consist of 12 Monks and an Abbot; that they were to keep silent, except to the Abbot or Prior; if any Monk **run away**, he was not to be received after the third time.

They must be contented with **two Coats** and **two hoods**, they must **Work** with their hands, and observe strictly their Fasts; they must salute Strangers by bowing their head and body; and in imitation of Christ wash their feet.

The Abbots Table must be furnished for Strangers.

From this Order proceeded the **Bernardines**, or Monks of the **Order** of St. **Bernard**; but they wore a Black Cloak or Gown over a white Coat; yet on Festivals they wear the **Cistertians** Habit to shew from whence they came.

Also the Order of Monks caled **Humiliati**, they gave themselves to Prayer, Fasting, Meditation, and making of Cloth, they wear a plain Coat, a Scapular, and a white Cloak over it, and follow St. *Bennets* Rule in some part.

XXI. He beareth Or, a **Canon Regular**, of the **Order** of St. **Augustin in his Habit**, proper. These are also termed the Monks of St. *Austin*, or the Black Canons, or *Augustine* Hermits. Their Habit is a **white Coat** next to their Body, having under it a **Doublet** and **Breeches, white Hose**, and **Shoes** or **Slippers**; upon the said Coat is a **Linnen Surplice**, with narrow sleeves, which is girt about the middle, over which is worn a **black Cloak**, with a **Hood covering the Head and Neck**; which reacheth to the shoulders: When they walk out, they cast the Hood behind their Necks, and wear on their heads a **Black cornered Cap**, or a **Broad Hat**, and have their **Crowns shaven**, but not so much as other Monks: their first appearing in *England*, was in the year 1252. These were first called **Guile-helmites**, from *William*, Duke of *Aquitain*, who first erected them a Monastery: But Pope *Innocent* gave them the name of **Eremites of** St. **Augustine**.

The Rules of the Canons of St. Augustine *or Black Friers.*

St. *Augustine* living in *Hippo*, instituted a **Convent of Clerks**, which he caused to live according to the Rules Instituted and Preached by the Holy Apostles; instructing them in the Evangelical Profession, *Viz.* **Love of Poverty, Obedience** and **Chastity**; that they should be subject to one **General Prior**.

That they should **Live in Cities** to Instruct and Teach the People, and should wear a **Black Coat**, with a **Hood** of the same; and under a **short White Coat**, with a **Leather Girdle** and **Horn Buckles**. That they should have nothing in Property, but all things in Common: That they should not be Sollicitous what they should Eat, Drink, or wherewith they should be Cloathed.

That none be admitted without Trial; that **secret Faults be reproved**; if not **repented**, then **punished**; to observe the **Time** and **Manner** of **Praying** and **Singing**; the time of **Working, Reading** and **Refreshing**, with their Behaviour both at Home and Abroad: That there be no strife, envy, or evil words among them.

That the Superiour use not harsh words in reproving, but shew a good example to his **Brothers**; that he be **Humble, Wise**, and **careful of his Charge**.

These Rules are followed and observed not only by all **Canon Regulars** and **Eremites** of St. *Austins* Order; but also by the **Friers Mendicants, Dominicans, Canons Regular of** St. **George, Eremites** of St. **Jerome, Hospitelars**, St. **John of Jerusalem, Gilbertines**; with many more, who notwithstanding differ in their Habits, Exercises, and manner of Living.

XXII. He beareth Vert, a **Canon Secular** in the **Vestment pertaining** to his **Function**. These were a sort of Priests called **Secular Priests** or **Canons**, in regard they performed the Offices of such as served in the World, by Administring to Lay People upon all occasions, whereas those that lived Regularly did not so, neither had they their Diet and Lodging in common like **Monks, Friers**, and **Regular Canons**, but had Habitations apart, and their Maintenance several, by distinct shares called **Prebendaries**, and **Vicaridges**,

es, &c. as those in Collegiate and Cathedral Churches use to have.

For their Habit it was antiently the same to our **Canons** now, *viz.* a **Black Gown** reaching to the feet, and a **Surplice** extending to the Knees with wide sleeves, as may appear from divers Monuments of former Ages; about their Necks they wore a kind of a deep Ruff band, and have their Crowns shaven.

Of these kind of **Canons secular,** were those that in King *Edgars* time had got footing into diverse of our **Monasteries**; but through the advise of St. *Dunstan*, and the power of that devout Monarch, they were ejected and the Monks again restored, according to the minds of their Pious Founders.

These **Ecclesiastical Canons,** instead of an Abbot, had the **Bishop** for their Governour, and were seated as I said before near **Cathedral Churches,** which formerly were called **Monasteries,** but now corruptly **Minsters.** These Canons while they lived strictly according to their Rule, were named **Canons Regular**; but when they fell off from their strict way of Living, and medled with Worldly business, they received a new name of **Canons Secular.**

Degrees of Ecclesiastical Persons in the Romish *Cathedrals.*

They divide their **Church Officers** into three Ranks or Orders: As first Offices of Dignity which are these, the **Pope, Patriarch, Primate, Arch-Bishop** or **Metropolitan, Bishop, Arch Presbyter, Arch-Deacon** and **Provost** or **Prepositus**; of some of which I have spoken before in *numb.* 10. 11.

Those of less dignity are such as belong to the Quire and Chapter, as the **Dean,** the **sub-Dean, Precentor, Succentor, Treasurer, Organist, Singers** or **Queristers,** &c. of which some are Secular others Regular.

The second are Orders Sacred, which are the **Deacon, sub-Deacon** and **Priest.**

Those of the lesser Order which are not Sacred, are the **Dor-keepers, Readers, Exorcists, Acolyths** or **Taper-bearers**; of all which Order I shall give you a brief description of their Charge in Holy things, and the manner of their Habits and Ordinations.

Of the Vestments and Consecrations of the several Orders of Persons in the Romish *Cathedrals.*

The **Dor Keeper** or **Porter,** is instructed in his Office by the Arch-Deacon, who presents him to the Bishop, and he Ordains him, by delivering to him from the Altar, the Keys of the Church; saying, *So do and so live, as thou were to give Account to God of the thing Locked up by these Keys.*

The **Reader** or **Lecturers** Office is to pronounce and read clearly the Lessons appointed to be read in the Church; none must exercise this Function but he who is Ordained by the Bishop; which said person is presented to the Bishop in his Gown and Surplice or Alba, to whom after some Prayers said, in the presence of all the people, is delivered unto him the Book in which he is to read; saying, *Take and Read the Word of God; if thou art faithful in thine Office, thou shalt have a share with them who dispence the same Word.*

The **Exorcist,** is he who calling on the name of Jesus, doth by that name Adjure the Unclean Spirit to depart out of the Possessed, on whom he layeth his Hands; when the **Exorcist** is Ordained, he receiveth the Book of Adjuration from the Bishop, saying, *Take and Learn these by Heart, and receive power to lay thy Hands on the Possessed, whether he be Baptized, or a Catechumenus as yet.*

The **Acolyths,** or **Taper Bearers,** whose Office it is to Light the Tapers, and hold them while the Gospel is read, to provide Wine for the Chalice, and Vessels for the Eucharist; also his Office is to make the **Agnus Dei** of Consecrated Wax and Chrisme, which is distributed by the Pope in the Church; they are presented to the Bishop in White Garments, who doth instruct them in their Office and Function (using certain words) then doth the Arch-Deacon deliver them a Candlestick with a Wax Light in it, and an empty Tankard, to shew their Office is to provide Lights and Vessels for Divine Service.

The **Sub-Deacon,** whose Office it is to read the Epistle, to receive the Peoples Oblations, and to bring them to the Deacon; to carry also the **Patin** and **Chalice** to the Altar; to hold the **Bason** whilest the Bishop, Priest and Deacon wash their Hands before the Altar; to wash also the Altar Linnen: When the Bishop Ordains him, he is Presented to him in a Black Coat girt to him, over which is a Surplice and a Belt; to whom the Bishop delivers into his Hand the empty Patin and Chalice; saying, *See whose Ministration this is which is delivered to thee*; from the Arch-Deacon he receives then the Tankard with Wine and Water and the Towel.

The **Deacon** or **Minister,** whose Office it is to Preach to the People, and to serve or assist the Priest at the Sacraments; to **cover the Altar,** to lay the Oblation thereon, to read the Gospel and the Epistle also in the Sub-Deacons absence; in Processions to carry the Cross, to say the Letanies; to rehearse the names of those who are to be Ordained and Baptised, and to name the Holy-days, *&c.* they must not Administer the Sacraments but in case of Necessity, and by permission of the Bishop or Priest; nor must they without leave sit in the presence of a Priest. The Habit of a Deacon is his Coat girt to him, over it a Surplice of fine Linnen; thus being presented to the Bishop before the Altar, after some Prayers said, the Bishop alone layeth his Hands on him and Blesseth him; after that delivers to him (using certain

*

tain Words) the Book of the Gospel, and the Stola which he puts over his Shoulders, and so after the Blessing departeth.

The **Priest** is the highest Sacred Order, whose Office it is to Pray and Preach, to Administer the Sacraments, to say Mass, and offer Sacrifices for the Quick and the Dead: When he is to be Ordained, he is presented to the Bishop before the Altar in the Habit of a Deacon, where after some Prayers are said, the Bishop with some other Priests lay their Hands on his Head, then Anoint his Hands with Oyl; after that delivers into his Hands the Chalice with the Wine, and the Patin with the Host upon it, saying, *Receive Power to say Mass for the Quick and Dead, and to Offer Sacrifice to God in the Name of the Lord.* Then the Bishop Kisseth the Priest, to shew he is his equal in respect of Order; whereas the Deacon and Sub-Deacon Kiss the Bishops hand, to shew they are of an inferiour Order. The Priest must not say Mass till he have first Washed and Confessed his Sins, and have also Cloathed himself in his Priestly Garment, which are these following.

First, the **Amictus**, or **Superhumerale**, which like the **Ephod** of the Priests and Levites, or Vail covers the Head and Shoulders of the Priest.

The **Alba** or **Talaris** called also **Camisia**, which is a Surplice of White Linnen, reaching almost to the Heels.

The **Girdle** or **Belt**, with which the Priests Loynes are girt.

The **Stola** or **Orarium**, is a thing worn in form of a Chain about the Priests Neck, it covereth both his sides hanging cross way on the Breast down to the Knees; they habit **Diatoys** with this kind of Robe that Preach to, or Pray for the People.

The **Manipulus** or **Sudarium**, called also **Mappula** or **Phanon** (for all these names it hath) is a Towel or Handkerchief carried by the Minister or Priest in his left Hand, or on his left Arm.

The **Casula** or **Cappa**, or **Planon**, is an upper Garment which covereth all the Body, as it were a little Cottage which in Latine is called **Casa**.

Before the Priest be suffered to Preach, he is examined whether he be apt to Teach, and be well reported off by them who are without; then he must subscribe to the Articles and Confession of Faith, and Discipline of the Church, *&c.*

XXIII. He beareth Or, a **Canon Regular of St. Sepulcher** in his **Canonical Habit.** The Coat belonging to this Order of Priests is an under Robe of White, overcast with a Cloak or Mantle (not altogether so side as his Robe) upon the left shoulder whereof is fixed a Patriarchal Cross.

On their Heads they weared a **Tonered Cap** of the same colour to the Cloak, *viz.* Black; they are called **The Brothers of the Lords Sepulcher.**

The **Thabennesies** are a kind of **Eremites**, so called from *Thabenna*, an Island in the Province of *Thebais*; they wear Goats Skins which they must never put off, but when they Communicate, then they come only in their Hoods; they sleep not in Beds, but sitting in Chairs.

They live together in one House distinguished into divers Cell, and in each Cell 3 Monks, yet all eat in one Hall with their Faces covered, that they seem not to Eat; none of them is forbid to Eat or Fast.

That no Stranger must be admitted to their Order under 3 years Trial; they must Pray twelve times in the day, likewise in the Evening and in the Night, a Psalm preceeding each Prayer.

The **Hieronymians**, or **Monks** of the Order and Rule of St. **Jerome**, whose Garments were of a swart or brown colour; over their Coat they wore a plaited Cloak divided and girt about with a Leather Girdle, and wear Wooden Shooes: They spend their time in Devotion, Writing, Meditation, and Educating of Noble Youths.

The **Gregorian Monks**, erected by Pope *Gregory* the great, to whom he prescribed the Rules of St. *Bennet*; they do wear a red Cross on the Breast, these did not shave their Beards, like other Monks.

XXIV. He beareth Or, a **Dominican Frier** in the Habit of his Order. These are also called **Black Friers**, or **Preaching Friers**, and **Frier Mendicants** or **Begging Friers.** This Order first begun by St. *Dominick* a *Spaniard*, in the time of Pope *Leo* the Third, who being at first a Canon, with a few that he chose to be his Companions, instituted a new Rule of Strict and Holy Living; and lest they should grow sluggish in the Service of God by staying at home, in imitation of our Blessed Saviour, he appointed them to Travel far and wide to Preach the Gospel; they came first into *England* in the year 1221. the 2 *H.* 3. by the name of **Frier Pradicants.**

Their Habit was a White Coat down to the Heels, girded about the middle, having a Black Cloak cast over it; on their Heads they wore a Cowl or Hood, which came down below the shoulders; under it was a White Linnen Cap compassing the Face about.

Rules of the Dominican Monks, *or Black-Friers.*

These Monks or Friers had a **Prior** to their Governor, who followed the Rules and Orders prescribed by St. *Austin*, to which *Dominick* added some things; as to reject all kind of **Wealth, Money** and **Possessions**, to hold every year a **General Chapter**, to **Fast** 7 Months together from *Rood Day* in *September* to *Easter*; on *Fridays* to **abstain** from **Flesh**; to lye in Blankets, not in Sheets or on Feather Beds; to disperse themselves through the World to Preach the Gospel: they were **subject** to no Ordinary or Bishop, but to the Pope; had

liberty to Preach in any Mans Pulpit, they were exempt from all **Ecclesiastical Censures.**

XXV. He beareth Azure, a **Frier,** (or **Prior** or **Abbot**) of the Order of the **Holy Trinity,** for the Redemption of Captives. A **Trinitarian Monk,** or a **Monk** of the **Order of the Trinity,** as some call them: Their Habit was all white, *viz.* a Robe, a Cloak and a Cowl, with a Red and Blew Cross on the breast of the Robe, and on the left shoulder of the Cloak, that is, the traverse of the Cross Blew, and the ascent of it Red.

This Order was first instituted under Pope *Innocent* the third, who appointed, that all the Possessions which they should enjoy, might be equally divided into three parts, one for the entertainment and reception of Religious persons, another to relieve the Poor, and the third to redeem Christians kept in Captivity by the Infidels.

The **Monks of** St. **Bridget,** this Order was instituted about 1360, by one **Bridget** a Princess of *Sweden,* who had the Order as she said immediately from Christ himself; their number consisted of 13 **Priests,** according to the number of the Apostles, whereof St. *Paul* was one; four **Preachers** representing the four Evangelists, and eight **Lay Men,** the Priests **Garments** was course grey, on which was a **red Cross,** on the middle whereof was a round piece of white Cloth, to resemble the Host which they daily Offer; the Preachers carry on their Cloaks a **white Circle,** within the same are red pieces of Cloth like Cloven Tongues, to shew the incomprehensible Wisdom of the Evangelists which they represent, with their Learning and Eloquence. The **Lay Brothers** wear a **White Cross** on their Cloaks, on which is fixed five pieces of red Cloth, in token of Christs Innocency, and memory of his five Wounds.

The **Monks** of the **Order of** St: **Justina,** was Instituted by *Ludovicus Barbus* a *Venetian, Anno* 1409. after the antient discipline of *Benedict.* This Rule was enlarged by Pope *Eugenius* the fourth, and the Monks are very careful in washing the feet of Strangers, and do not eat out of their Convent with Secular Persons.

XXVI. He beareth Gules, a **Knight Templer** in the **Habiliments** of his **Order,** proper. They are called **Knights Templers,** because at the first institution of their Order, they lived and had residence in certain Rooms adjoining to the Temple sometime Built by King *Solomon.*

As for their Habit it was thus, on their heads they wore Linnen Coifs (like to the Serjeants at Law) and red Caps with turn ups over them; on their Bodies they wear **Shirts of Mail** both on Arms, Hands, Legs and Feet, over which they wore a **short sleeveless Coat** to the Knees, which was girded to them with a broad Belt and a Sword, over all which they had a **White** Cloak or **Mantle** reaching to the ground, with a **red Cross** on the left shoulder; they wear their Beards long, whereas most of the other Religious Orders do shave.

Their first setling in *England,* was in that Street called *Holbourn* in the Suburbs of *London,* but there they rested not long, for in King *H.* 2. time, that House which still retaineth the name of the *Temple* in *Fleet-street,* was erected by them, and the Church Built according to the form of the Temple at *Jerusalem,* in the year 1185.

The Orders and Rules of the Templars.

As touching their first Profession, they were in Order to the remission of their Sins, to their utmost power,

First to **defend Pilgrims** and **Strangers** from Spoil and Robbery by Thieves, in their passage to and from *Jerusalem.*

They had the same Rule prescribed to them as other Monks had, to wit **Obedience, Poverty, Chastity, Gravity, Piety, Charity, Patience, Vigilance, Fortitude, Devotion,** and such like, so that they lived in a manner after the Canons Regular, possessing nothing in propriety, but were sustained by the bounty of the Patriarch and Christian Pilgrims.

These for their Valour and Care of Pilgrims were exempted from the **Jurisdiction of Bishops** by Pope *Calixtus* the second, and from **paying of Tythes** by *Alexander* the Third; it was **Excommunication** to lay violent hands on any Templar.

This Order in the space of 200 years grew so rich and numerous, that in publick meetings 300 Knights have been together, besides infinite numbers of Brothers; they had above 9000 Manners in Christendom, where as the **Hospitallers** had but nineteen.

XXVII. He beareth Argent, a **Knight Hospitaller** in his **Habiliments** of that Order, proper. This Order of the **Hospitallers** had its first beginning as the Holy Land began to grow famous by the Expedition of the Christian Princes thither, whose chief seat at first was in the **Hospital** of St. **John Baptist** in *Jerusalem,* from whence they were stiled **Hospitallers,** and afterwards **Knights of Rodes,** and **Knights of Malta,** from their inhabiting in those places.

Their Habit was to be **Armed in Mail,** or otherwise, over which was a **sleeveless Coat** reaching to the Knees, with a **Sword** girded about them, with a Broad Belt; and over all they wore a **long Mantle** down to the ground, all black, with a white Cross fixed upon the left shoulder.

Their first beginning in *Jerusalem* was 1092, and in the year 1100 they were settled in *England,* by having a House Built for them in *Smithfield* in *London,* which was afterwards called the Hospital of St. *John* of *Jerusalem,* from whence they were named **Knights of St. John of Jerusalem,** but of old they were termed **Johannites.**

The Orders and Rules of the Knights Hospitalars, *or St.* John *of* Jerusalem.

The first Profession of this Order, was by a Religious Vow to **Entertain Pilgrims** coming to the Holy Land, and to defend them in their journey from Insursion of Robbers.

The followed the Rule of St. **Austin,** but instead of Canonical hours say so many **Pater Nosters.**

They have a **Master** over them which they choose themselves; and in every Province they have a **Prior.**

Every one that enters into this Order voweth to *God*, the Virgin *Mary*, and St. *John* Baptist; **Obedience, Poverty,** and **Chastity:** they are tied three times in the Year to receive the **Eucharist.** They must not use Merchandizes, be **Usurpers,** nor make Wills, or make any their Heirs or Alienate any thing without the consent of the great Master.

None born of **Infidels,** or **Jews,** or **Turks,** were to be admitted into this order: nor **Murtherers** nor **Married Men,** nor **Bastards,** except of Earls or Princes. They admit only such as are sound and strong of Body, Nobly descended, and at least eighteen Years old.

They were not to side with one Christian Prince against another, but stand Neutrals, and endeavours to reconcile them.

They were distinguished into three Ranks, *viz.* **Priests,** or **Chaplains,** secondly **Serving-Men,** thirdly **Knights,** which last must be of a Noble extraction. Pope *Hadrian* the fourth exempted them from paying of **Tythes** to the Patriarch of *Jerusalem* who claimed them as his due. Pope *Alexander* the third for their brave exploits against the Infidels exempted them also from **Tythes,** and the **Jurisdictions** of **Bishops.**

Religious Orders of Knighthood.

The **Tutonick Knights of St. Mary,** were a a mixt Order of **Johannites,** or **Hospitalers** and **Templars;** they were called **Teutonici** from their Country, for they were *Germans* that first undertook this Order, who living in *Jerusalem* bestowed all their **Wealth in Hospitality** to Pilgrims, and defending them in High-ways from Robbers: and from our Ladies Chappel which was given them, they were named **Mariani.**

Their Habit was a **White Cloak** with a black Cross, and their **Targets** white with a black Cross, they wear their Beards long.

None were admitted into this Order, except he were a **Teutonick** born, and Nobly descended. Their charge was to be ready on all occasions, to oppose the Enemies of the Cross; and were to say 200 *Pater Nosters*, *Creeds*, and *Ave-Maries*, in four and twenty hours. They set up three **Great Masters,** the one in *Germany*, the other in *Livonia*, and the third in *Prussia*; this was over the other two.

The **Knights of the Holy Sepulcher,** had their being *Anno* 1103. these with a Guardian who was their Governor had the charge to keep the Sepulcher. Their cloaths were all **White,** and on their Breasts hung in a black Ribbon the **Jerusalem Cross.**

The **Knights of Calatrava,** and Order so called from that Province in *Spain*, they were instituted about 1121. or as some say 1160. they followed the *Cistertian* Order, they wear a black Garment, with a red Cross; they had a Master over them, whose Revenue was forty thousand Crowns Yearly.

The **Knights Gladiators,** so called from carrying on their Cloaks 2 **Red Swords across,** or **Brothers of the Sword;** this Order begun in *Livonia* about the Year 1204. their habit was white: the Rule that they professed was that of the Templars: but by the Popes persuation, they and the *Cuciferi* incorporated themselves into the **Tutonick** Order.

The **Knights of St. James** in *Spaine*; these were instituted in the time of Pope *Alexander* the third, they were to follow St. *Austins* Rule: they are Governed by a **Great Master,** whose Yearly Revenue was an hundred and fifty thousand Crowns: he is next to the King in Power and State, they wear both in Peace and in War, a **Purple Cross** before their Breast, resembling the Hilts of a two-handed Sword, called **Spatha:** therefore these Knights are called, **Milites St. Jacobi de Spatha.**

The **Knights of St. Mary of Mercede,** or of the **Redemption:** because their charge was to redeem Captives, instituted by *James* King of *Arragon*, *Anno* 1232. They followed the *Cistertian* Order, and wear a white Garment with a black Cross on it.

The **Knights of Montesia,** so called from that place in the Kingdom of *Valentia*: they were instituted much about the time of the aforesaid Knights of St. *Mary* by the same King *James*: they follow the *Cistertian* Order, and wear a red Cross.

The **Knights of St. Julian,** or of the **Pear-Tree;** they were instituted in the Kingdom of *Leon*, *Anno* 1179. These Knights have the Pear-tree for their Arms: But after *Alphonso* the ninth King of *Leon* had taken the City *Alcantara* from the *Moors*, he bestowed it on the great Master, from whence they stiled themselves Knights of *Alcantara* and forsook their former Arms, and wore a green Cross Flower de lis on their Breasts: they lived under the Rule of St. *Benedict*, they first professed Chastitie, but Pope *Paul* the first permitted them to Marry.

The **Knights of Saint Saviour of Montreal,** called the **Order of Arragon;** was instituted *Anno* 1120. by *Alphonso* King of *Navarre*, and first of *Arragon*. These Knights wore a white Robe, and on the Breast an Anchored

Anchored red Cross, their Rule was like that of the templars to whom they succeeded in *Montreal*, but only that they had power to Marry.

The **Knights of the Order of Jesus Christ**, instituted by Pope *John* the 22. at *Avignion*, *Anno* 1320. They did wear a Cross of Gold, Enamelled with red, and inclosed with another Cross.

The **Knights of St. Stephen**, or the **Order of Florence**; instituted by *Cosmo de Medicis* first Duke of *Florence* 1561. in honor of Pope *Stephen* the nineth, Patron of *Florence*: they follow St. *Bennets* Rule, and have the same priviledges to the Knights of *Malta*. They wear a white Gown of Camblet, with a red Cross on the Breast, like that of *Malta*.

There are many Orders of Knighthood in Christendom, as the **Knights of St. Lazarus** of *Savoy*, **St. George** of *England*, **St. Andrew** of *Scotland*, **St. Michael** in *France*, of the **Lilly** in *Navarre*, *&c.* which are rather Secular then Religious Orders, therefore shall pass such over here, having given you a brief Catalogue of them in the Degrees of Knighthood, *chap.* 3. *numb.* 7. and more fully shall in *lib.* 4. *chap.* 10.

The manner of Installing Knights of Religious Orders.

The **Commentator**, or **great Master** of the Order; placeth him that is to be Knighted in the midst of the Knights, then asketh every one of them if they find any exceptions against him, either for his Body, Mind or Parentage.

Then the same is demanded of the party to be Knighted, and withal if he be skilful in any useful Art, if in **Debt**, if **Married**, or if he have any **Bodily Infirmity**, which if he hath he must not enter into that Order.

Then he is commanded to **Kneel down** and lay his Hand on the Gospel, and Rules of the Order, he voweth and promiseth **Obedience, Chastity, Poverty, Care of the Sick**, and **perpetual War** with the **Infidels**: which done the Master promiseth him sufficient Bread, Water, and course cloath for his Life time: then he riseth and kisseth his Master and each one of the Brothers, so sitteth down in the place appointed for him.

Then the Master exhorts all the Brothers to observe their **Rule carefully**: after which he is inaugurated in manner following.

He is conducted to the Church with his kindred attending on him, having a **Burning Taper** before him, in which are fastned thirty pieces of Silver, and a Gold Ring: then he kneels before the Alter, and rising again, hath a **Sword, Target, Spurs**, and a **Cloak** dilivered to him, (which were all consecrated before) then the Commendator draweth his Sword, with which he is Girt, and with it strikes his Target twice, saying, Knighthood is better then Service; and with the same Sword sticking him on the Back, saying, take this blow patiently, but no more hereafter. [ ]

Then the **Responsory** being Sung, and some **Prayers** said, they return from Church, where the rest of the day is spent in Feasting and Drinking.

In the Sinister side of this square *numb.* 27. I have caused to be set the figure of a **Demy old Man** with a **Bald Fore-head**, and a **Forked Beard** down to his Girdle, taking hold of each side of it, in the middle with both Hands: **Cloathed** Azure, **Sleeves** Gules: which is the Crest of *Reiffen* of *Alsatia*.

XXVIII. He beareth Or, a **Frier Heremite of the Order of St. Augustine**, as others call him, an **Heremite of St. Augustine**, or only **Heremite** from their single living at first in the Desarts or Solitary places: they were **Mendicants** by their Order and Rules.

As for their Habit, their did wear in their Cloyster a **White Garment** down to the Feet, **close Gird** to them, and when they went out they had a **Black wide Robe**, with wide Sleeves cast over it, with a broad **Leathern Girdle** buckled about them, with a **Cowl** behind their Neck, full low down past the shoulders, being shorn or shaven on the Head, as the *Dominican* Friers are, but have very long Beards, and a corner Cap on their Head, black.

These **Begging Heremits** first began to propagate here in *England* about the Year 1250. as did the **Friers Carmelites**.

The **Monks of St. Basil**, were an Order set up by St. *Basil Presbyter* of *Cæsaria* in *Cappadocia*; which most of the **Eastern Monks** imbraced, following his Rule. Their apparel is plain, simple, and homely, wearing a **Girdle** after the example of *John* Baptist and the Apostles. The **Novices** were to be instructed, and no Man debarred for entring into their Convent upon Trial and withal to give none offence. They wore **Sackcloath** for Humilation, and other **Garments** for necessity, which was **White** that they were by Order tied to wear.

The **Monks of St. Basil** in *Muscovia*, wear a **White Flannel Shirt**, over it is a long Garment, girded with a broad Leather Belt, the upper Garment is of Say of a sooty colours: his Crown is shorn, and on his Head he wears a Cowl or Hood.

XXIX. He beareth Vert, a **Frier in his Russet Coat, Gird** about the middle with a **Leather Girdle** and his **Beads** hanging thereat: his **Cowl** on his Back, and a **Shaven Crown**, with a **Birch Rod** in his right Hand, and the other on his Belly, all proper.

☞ Though I have here mentioned every thing as the figure doth express in the drawing, yet for brevity sake, to say, a Frier in such or such a coloured Garment, is sufficient: for Friers are thus depicted.

A. a Frier to the Sinister, a Staff in his Hand, and his Beads hanging therefrom S. is the Coat and Crest of *Monchsberg* of *Smithzerland*. This is a Frier standing sideways.

A.

A. a Frier in full aspect (or standing direct) with his Hands conjoyned, and elevated to his Breast, habited S. is both the Coat and Crest of *Monchen zu Ramspaw* of *Bavaria*.

A Demy *Morocco* King, sans Arms: habited in a Monk or Friers Weed, his Coul hanging backwards A. is the Crest of *Blenckell* of *Alsatia*.

On a Torce of his colours a Demy Monk, or Frier in full aspect holding up a Whip, the handle O. the other on his Breast: habited S. is the Crest of the Lord *Sturton*.

XXX. He beareth Gules, a **Frier**, or **Father Confessor** in his **Robe** or **Garment, close Girt about**; standing in **full aspect**, with his Arms extended, having a **Towel** (after the manner of a **Saile**) turned over his Head, and the two ends in his Hands, all proper. This is born by the name of *Van Scheterwang* a Family among the *Silesians* in *Germany*.

O. the like to this habited S. the Towel A. is born by *Van Weissen*.

XXXI. He beareth Or, a **Frier at his Devotion**, Sable; with a **Book** (or **Mass Book**) in both Hands, and his **Beads hanging therefrom** proper: or of same he is termed, a **Frier kneeling**, *&c.* This is born by the name of *Frier*.

A. a Frier to the Sinister kneeling on his right Knee, holding a Book open between both Hands, upon his left: Habited S. Is the Coat of *Fronheimer zu Malching* of *Bavaria*.

A. a Frier to the Sinister, Habited S. holding a Book in both Hands. Is the Coat and Crest of *Monchen van Monchenstein*.

A. the like Frier to the Sinister Praying, (or Hands conjoyned and lifted up) with his Beads pendant therefrom S. is born by *Schlegell van Munchsberg*.

A Demy Frier to the Sinister praying, Habited S. is the Crest of *Oschoven*.

XXXII. He beareth Gules, a **Cruched Frier**, a **Frier** (or **Father Confessor**) in his **Procession, bearing a long Cross**, or **Christs Cross** on his shoulder with his right Hand, all proper. Some term it thus, a **Frier carrying of Christs Cross** on his right Shoulder, holding or supporting it with the Hand: this more properly may be termed, a **Monk** or **Frier** of the **Order of Cross bearers**, which was confirmed 1197. by *Celestinus* the third Pope of that name; who called them **Crucifertans**, from *Cruciferi*, or *Crucigeri*, but of the vulgar called, **Cruched Friers**. They came into *England* in the Year 1244. they wear a sky coloured Habit: and alway carry a Cross in their Hands.

The **Crucigerans** of *Polidor*, is taken to be another Order of them, because they wear a black Cloak, and carried not in their Hands, but on their Breasts, a white and red Cross, and observed St. *Austins* Rules.

In the Sinister side of this square, is a **Monks Head** couped at the Shoulders, **sharp pointed Beard**, and his **Cowl** or **Hood** on his Head, with the **Top** hanging down, Argent. Is the Crest of *Marschalck* of *Switzerland*.

[ ]

XXXIII. He beareth Azure, a **Mass Priest**, or a **Romish Priest in his Preaching Gesture, standing in full aspect holding up both his Hands**, the **Arms** to the **Elbow** proceeding out of the middle of his **Gown Sleeves**, Sable; with an **Albe** or **Vest**, cast over the same hanging down before and behind, Argent. The **Albe** in Latin *Pedoris*, is a kind of long Garment almost down to the Feet, which Popish Priests use in their Offices and Devotion, it hangs down plain, and without Pleats or wrinkles: such formerly Souldiers used to wear in War over their Armour.

A. a Man in such a Posture with a wide Sleeve Gown S. Cape, turnings up before, and the Sleeves O. in his left Hand a Book, and a Bonnet on his Head G. is the States Arms of *Munchen*.

XXXIV. He beareth Argent, a **Palmer in his Palmers Weed**, with a **Staff** in his right Hand, and a **Book** under his left Arm, all proper. These are called either **Palmers** or **Pilgrims**, of which I find two sorts used in Coats of Arms, or Crests; whereof this example is one which may simply be termed either a **Pilgrim** or **Palmer**, or an **Hermite**; because of his Gown: and is the Crest of *Somerford* of *Somerford* in the County of *Chester*.

O. a Frier Pilgrim with his shaven Crown, Gown A. Cope S. passing to the Sinister, with a Staff in his left, and a Lanthorn in his right Hand. Is both the Coat and Crest of *van Munch-hausen* of *Brundswick*. This might very well have been termed **Diogones in his Travel**, (that is when he went through *Athens* with a **Lanthorn** and **Candle** at Noone day, to find an honest Man) had he not had a shaven Crown, but a Cap on: and also without Cope, which shews him absolutely to be a **Priest** or **Frier**, on such a like Pilgrimage: to see if he can find an honest Man amongst their whole Gange of Orders.

XXXV. He beareth Argent, a **Pilgrim of St. James**, that is to say, a **Pilgrim**, or **Palmer**, or **Traveller** having a **short Cloak**; his **Hat turned up**, with an **Escallop** thereon, and a **Staff** in his right Hand: which is the Habit of all such **Travellers**, and Escallop shell fixed on the Hat Brim, being turned up; is the Badge and Cognizence of such who have visited the **Sepulcher of St. James**: like them that go the great Voyage to *Jerusalem*, who at their return bring **Palms** with them: therefore called **Palmers**. This is born by the name of *Pilgrim*.

G. the like Pilgrim A. Staff O. I find in a *Dutch* Book (of the Coats of Arms belonging to their several Cities, and Towns) to belong to *Glaris*.

An ancient Pilgrim of St. *James* in a short Coat, gird about the middle, Knees bare, Hose turned down, with a Staff and Beads in his right Hand, and left upon his side: is the Crest of *Nagal von Diermstein*, in *Rhyne* Palatinate.

A Demy Pilgrim to the Sinister holding his Staff by the middle up to his shoulder with his left Hand. Hat S. Scapular A. Coat Girt V. Is the Crest of *Bilgrin* of *Alsatia*.

XXXVI.

XXXVI. He beareth Argent, a **Demy Pilgrim of St. James, sans Arms,** proper. Others blazon it, the **Head** of a **St. James Pilgrim couped below the Shoulders.** This is born by the name of *Kelbiner* of *Swits*.

The like A. with his left Hand from under his Cloak holding his Staff by the middle bendways. Is the Crest of *Kelbin* of *Alsatia*.

XXXVII. He beareth Azure, a **Demy St. Laurence,** proper. It is the **Cognizance of St. Laurence** to **Hold,** or **Support,** or have a **Grid Iron** by him; because it is said of him, that he was Fried on such a thing, rather then deny the Faith of Jesus Christ. But if you desire a more fuller blazon thereby to describe all the parts and things contained in this Figure, as it is delineated, then take it thus: **St. Laurence issuing out of the Base, Holding a Grid-Iron in his right Hand,** and a **Book in the left, upon his Breast** Or: **Habited** or **Cloathed** in a **Long Robe** or **Garment, close girded,** Argent: **Garnished** and **Turning up** of the Second. Born by the name of St. *Lawren.*

The like cloathed in an Azure Garment, is the Crest of the Company of *Girdlers* of the City of *London*.

The like to the Sinister, supporting of a Grid-Iron the Handle erected A. Habited G. the right Hand turned behind him. Is the Crest of *Ellerborn*.

XXXVIII. He beareth Argent, **St. Sebastine in his Vartridome,** proper; or more fuller, **St. Sebastine tied to the Body of a Tree Naked,** with a **Towel** or **Linnen Cloath** to cover his Privity, **Shot** into with **several Arrows,** all proper. Thus it is said that this Holy Man died by the Hands of Infidels. St. *Fabian* had also the like end.

This was the ancient Crest beloning to the Company of *Fletchers* or *Arrow-Makers* within the City of *Chester*, *Anno* 1579 But of late time they use that belonging to *London*.

Now seeing we are fallen into the discourse of Saints, I think it is not much amiss, if I give you a brief description of same of the Principal **Popish Saints,** who died either as Martyrs, or were through their Sanctity and Holiness of Life, otherwise translated to Heavenly bliss.

☞ For note this, that in the Description of Saints, if Martyred they have by them in some certaine posture or other, the Instruments of Cruelty by which they died; or else in such an action as in their lives they were very remarkable in, or Canonized for.

The Description of Men Canonized.

St. Martyn, he is drawn on a Horse with a Sword or Knife in his Hand cutting off a part of his Coat, and giving it to a poor naked Cripple.

St. Jerome, is drawn naked with a long Beard, and short curled Hair, and bald Fore-head, with a Mantle cast about him with a Pen in his Hand, and a Book before him, with a Cross or Crucifix by him, and a Lion Coucant at his Feet.

St. Thomas Aquinas, is drawn in Bishops Habit, with a Pen in his Hand, and a Chalice or covered Cup in his left, a Dove flying to his Ear.

St. John of Matta, the first founder of the Order of the Holy Trinity for the Redemption of Captives, he is drawn in a Friers Habit, with a Book in his Hand, with a Slave in Fetters and Chains at his Feet.

St. Francis, is drawn in a long Robe, tied about with a Rope: his Beads by his side, bare Footed with a Crucifix in his hand.

St. Sabinian, is drawn in his Cope and Vest, Celebrating Mass before an Alter, having a Faucion or Sword struck into the Crown of his head.

St. Bernard, in a white Surplice with a Pen in his hand, and several Books before him, with a Dove descending upon him.

St. Peter Martyr, is drawn in a Monks habit, with a Rapier run into his Breast, and a Fauchion struck into his head, having a Palm branch in one hand, and a Crucifix in the other.

St. Roch, is the habit of a Pilgrim, with a little Boy in his hand, and a Grey-hound by him.

St. Bennet or **Benedict,** in a Monks habit, with a Crosier in one hand, and a Book with a Cup standing on it, the Wine running out of it on the other hand.

St. Edward the Confessor, all in Kingly Robes, with Crown and Scepter.

St. Anthony, in a Monks habit tied about the middle with a Rope, a Book and Beads in his hands, with a Swine by his side.

St. Augustine, in a Bishops habit, Mitre and Crosier. with a Burning Heart in his hand.

St. William, an old grave Man, a with long Beard, a Hennet on his head, Arms all of Maile, yet bound with chains: clad in a long Robe with an Albe over it, bare footed, a long Staff with a round head in his right hand, and his Beads in the left: Sword, Spear, Shield, and other Warlike Weapons cast at his Feet.

St. Ambrose, an old Man no Beard, a Mitre on his head, and Pontifical Robes, his Crosier in his hand, and a Bee-hive by him: with many more too tedious to relate, which you may find in full in the *Romish Golden Legion of Saints*.

Country Saints, or Patrons.

St. George of *Capadocia*, the Patron Saint of *England*, he is drawn on Horseback, Armed Cap-a-pee, on his Shield a Red cross in a white Field, running his Launce through a great Dragon.

St. Andrew of *Burgundie*, the Patron Saint of *Scotland*.

St. Dennis, the Patron of *France*.
St. James, the Patron of *Spaine*.
St. Anthony, the Patron of *Italy*.
St. Patrick, the Patron of *Ireland*.
St. David, or **Davie** for *Wales*.
St. Peter, the Patron Saint of *Rome*.
St. Mark with his Lion, the Patron of *Venice*.

Tradsmen

Tradsmens Patron Saints.

St. Luke the Patron of *Painters*, he is drawn at his Easle working, with his Bull couched at his side.
St. Euloge, the Patron of *Smiths*.
St. Loy, the Patron of *Farriers* and *Black-Smiths*.
St. Stephen, the *Weavers* Patron.
St. Arnold, the Patron of *Millers*.
St. Goodman, the Patron of *Taylors*.
St. Crispin and **Crispianus**, the Patron of *Sowters*, *Cordwiners* and *Shoe-makers* Journey-Men.
St. Martin, Patron of the Masters *Cordwiners* or *Shoe-makers*.
St. Gore with the Devil on his Shoulder, and a Pot in his Hand, is the Patron of the *Potters*.
St. Dunstan, Patron of the *Goldsmiths*.
St. George, Patron of the *Cloathiers*.
St. Francis, Patron of the *Butchers*.
St. Wilfride, Patron of the *Bakers*.
St. Philip and **Jacob**, Patrons of the *Brick-layers*.
St. Andrew, Patron of the *Carpenters*.
St Clemence, Patron of the *Tanners*.
St. Leodegar, Patron of the *Drapers*.
St. Peter, Patron of the *Fishmongers*.
St. hillarie, Patron of the *Coopers*.
St. Florianus, Patron of the *Mercers*.
St. William, Patron of the *Hat-makers*.
St. Windeline, is the *Shephards* Saint.
St. Gallus, the Patron of *Gissards*, or Keepers of Geese.
St. Romane, an excellent Saint for curing of mad Men, and those possessed with Devils: with many more to the like purpose.

St Blaise Patron of ye Woolll-Combers.

XXXIX. He beareth Argent, a **Demy St. John Baptist**, or else blazon it **St. John Baptist issuant out of Base in full aspect, habited** in a **Hair Coat**, and **Girded** about the middle with a **Leather**, on his right Hand a **Bible** (or **Book**) with an **Holy Lamb Couchant** thereon: and his left Hand upon his Breast, all proper. This Holy Man is ever drawn in an **Hair Coat**, to his Elbows and Knees, the rest of his Body being naked, according to the saying of St. *Matthew cap.* 2. 4. This *John* had his Garment of Camels Hair, and a Girdle of a skin about his Loyns; and because he was the fore runner of the *Messias*, he is desciphered with a Book and the Lamb upon it.

This was the last of the Divine Prophets, and the greatest: as our Saviour himself testifieth of him, *Luke* 7. 28. whose Garment was rough according to the ancient use of the Prophets of old, as we may see *Zach.* 13. 4. which many false Prophets did Imitate, that thereby they might deceive: being Wolves in Sheeps cloathing.

A **Demy Angel** out of a **Cloud** with **Wings Displaid**, holding of a **Platter** or **Pewter Dish**, with a **Head** in it, (is termed the **Head of St. John Baptist** in a **Dish**, or **Platter**) and is the Crest belonging to the Worshipful Company of *Tallow-Chandlers*.

The four Evangelists Described.

St. **Matthew**, is ever drawn in a long Robe close girt to his Loyns, with a Mantle cast over it, turning and foulding according to the posture the Man is drawn in, whether standing, sitting, *&c.* with an Angel by him.

St. **Mark**, is drawn in the same kind of Robe and Mantle, but is known to be one of the Evangelists by having a Lion standing by him.

St. **Luke**, is the third Evangelist whose cognizance or token by which he is distinguished from the other, is by having a Bull drawn by him.

St. **John**, is delineated Writing, or with a Pen in his hand, and a Book in the other, or set before him, (as all the other Evangelists have Books) and an Eagle with open Wings by him: somtime the Eagle holdeth a Writers penner and Ink-horn in her Beak, by the strings of it.

XL. He beareth Azure, a **Saint**, or **Holy Man, habited in a long Robe**, Argent; with an **Albe** cast over it, Or: holding up his right Hand, and in his left a **Palm Branch** resting on his Shoulder, Vert. By the name of *Innocence*.

XLI. He beareth Argent, St. **Peter the Apostle holding the Key of Heaven Gates, habited** in a **long Robe** and **Mantle**, all proper. Some term him only St. **Peter** having a **Key** in his hand, and a **Book** in the other, or under his Arm (which Book all the Apostles are drawn with) from that saying of our Saviour to him; *Upon this Rock will I build my Church*, (*viz.* that Confession which he made of Christ to be the Son of God) *which the Gates of Hell should not prevail against. And I will give thee the Keys of the Kingdom of Heaven, that whatsoever thou shalt bind upon Earth, shall be bound in Heaven, &c.* Mat. 16. 16. 18. 19. This is the Arms of the City of *Trier* in *Germany*.

The Description of the twelve Apostles.

St. **Peter**, beside his Key, is somtimes drawn with a long Cross by him, because he was Crucified on such a like Cross as Christ died on; yet was not Crucified in the like manner, but with his Head downwards, as he himself desired, not counting himself worthy to die after the same manner as our Saviour did, with his Head upwards.

St. **Andrew**, hath drawn by him, or Supporting it, a Salter cross, being an Instrument of Wood made to Torment, and Rack the joynts, and tear the Body to pieces, upon which this Holy Apostle died.

St. **James** the greater, for there were two *James* and so they were distinguished by *Major* and *Minor*: this St. *James* is drawn with a Sword in one Hand, and a Book (as I said before) in the other: as being slain thereby, in having his head severed from his Body.

He is sometime drawn in a Pilgrims posture, with a broad brimed Hat, a Bottle by his left side, and a Pilgrims staff in his Hand.

O. St. *James* the *Major* issuant in Base in his right hand a Sword erected to his Shoulder, and in his left a Book proper: habited in a long Coat and Mantle G. Is the Arms of the Town of *Hemershavsem* in the *Low Countreys*.

St. **John,** called also St. **John the Divine,** or the **Beloved Apostle of Christ:** he is drawn fresh and young, because the Desciples thought he should never dye; as it is mentioned *John* 21. 23. for being cast into a Furnace or Caldron of hot boiling Oyl he came out again and was never touched: and had deadly Poison given him to Drink, and it wrought not upon him. So that he is made either to stand by a Caldron; or more generally holding of a Cup in his left hand, with a Cockatrice or Adder appearing out of it, holding up of his right hand as if he were Blessing it before he Drank thereof.

B. St. *John* naked, half out of a Caldron Gules, set on a Brandered with Fire under it, is the Coat of the Town of *Each* in *Holland*.

St. **Philip,** is drawn with a Spear in his hand: some with a long Cross pometted at the ends, because he was Crucified.

St. **Bartholomew,** is drawn with a Knife in his hand, because he died by the Infidels through their flecing him a live.

St. **Matthew,** is drawn with a Spear: sometime with a Carpenters square in his hand.

St. **Thomas** Surnamed **Didimus**; he is drawn with a Dart, it being the Instrument of his Martyrdom for the name of Christ.

St. **James the lesser,** or St. *Jacobus Minor*; his cognizance is a great Club, being that whereby he was slew by having his head broken to pieces, as he was Preaching to the People.

St. **Mathias,** is drawn with an Ax, or Heading-Ax, or Hatchet; by which his head was severed from his Body.

St. **Simon,** was sawed in two, and therefore is drawn with a long Saw in his hand, or Supporting it.

St. **Jude,** or **Judas Thadeus**; is set forth with an Halbert.

St. **Paul** the last of the Apostles, yet not least; is ever drawn like the other Apostles, in a long Robe, and and Vesture, or Mantle; with a Sword in his hand, or holding it by the Pommel, or handle, the Point resting on the Ground; by which Instrument he died, having his head severed from his shoulders.

XLII. He beareth Gules, a **Penitent,** or a **Man doing his Pennance;** having his **Body Naked** to his middle, which is wrapt about with a **Linnen Cloath;** his **Arms a cross,** with a **Whip of three Lashes** in his right hand, and a **Rod of Birch** in the left, all proper. This is born by the name of *Penant*.

In the Dexter base of this square, is cut the form of an **old Mans Face, side Hair,** with a **long forked Beard,** his **Head** covered with a **Cloud,** from whence proceeds the **Sun Beams,** all proper. Such a Crest I find to be born by Sir *William Hulton* an Alderman in *London* in the time of Queen *Elizabeth*.

The like Face sans Cloud, having only three Beams proceeding from each side the head: It was born as the Crest for the Lord *Hilton*.

XLIII. He beareth Or, a **Bishop of the Reformed Church,** in the **Habit** according to his **Function,** all proper. Some term him a **Bishop** in his **Gown,** and **Lawn Sleeves,** and **Cornered Cap:** Some say no more, but a **Protestant Bishop in his Habit.**

The Habit of a Protestant, *or Reformed* Church Bishop.

A **Cassock,** in Latin *Saga*, of some termed **Casula, a Casule** or **Planet,** a Priests Garment, or one of those attires wherewith he is invest ordinarily.

A **Sash,** *Zona*, or *Cingulus* in Latin; a Canonical Girdle made of Silk, with Buttons and Tassels at the end of it: with this he tieth his Cassock or open Coat close to to his Loyns.

A **Rochet,** in Latin *Rocus*, and *Rochetum*, a Surplice or white Linnen Garment with wide Sleeves tied close about the Sleeve hands; anciently it was one whole entire Garment, but now they are two distinct things: for that as comes before his Breast and reacheth to his Feet, is called an **Albe** of *Alba*. And the white Sleeves are of themselves, which are properly termed, **Lawn Sleeves.**

A **Ring,** by which he is Married to the Church.

A **Gown,** or **Vest** without Sleeves, which is his outward Habit, being open down before, this is generally of black Satin.

An **Hat** with a flat Crown and broad Brim, and twisted band of Silk: of some called a **Cathedral** or **Bishops Hat.** Doctor *John Bridgman* late Bishop of *Chester* in time of King *Charles* the first, wore his Bishops Hat all covered in pleats with Taffaty, from whence he was vulgarly termed **John with the Taffaty Hat.** Some wear their four cornered caps as they use in the University.

The Order of Election, and Consecration of the foresaid Bishops.

When the Bishops See is become vacant, the Dean and Chapter of that Cathedral gives notice to the King, who is Patron of all Bishopricks in *England*, requesting leave from him, to choose another: the King then grants to the Dean his **Conge de Esire:** a Writing in *French*, which signifieth leave to elect, then the Dean summons a Chapter or Assembly of the Prebendaries, who either elect the Person recommended by the Kings Letters, or shew cause to the contrary.

Next the Election is certified to the party elected, who doth modestly refuse it the first and second time, if he refuse it the third time, the King is certified thereof and another is recommended: but if accepted, then the King gives

gives his assent under the Great Seal of *England*, which is exhibited to the Archbishop of that Province, which command to Confirm and Consecrate him, whereunto the Archbishop subscribes his *Fiat Confirmatio*, and gives Commission under his Archiepiscopal Seal to his Vicar-General to perform all the Acts required for the perfecting of his Confirmation.

Then the **Vicar-General** sends forth his Citation summoning all in who oppose the Election, which is put on the Church Door. The day set, and no appearance of opposers, they are publickly called three times: then a Proctor exhibits the Election with the Royal assent, with the elected Bishops assent, desiring a Term presently to be assigned to hear final Sentence which the Vicar-General decrees.

Then the **Proctor** desires again all opposers to be called, which is done thrice, and none appearing or opposing, they are pronounced contumatious and a decree made to proceed to Sentence. Then the elect Person takes the Oath of Supremacy, Simony and Canonical obedience; which is no sooner done, but Sentence is subscribed: after which usually there is an Entertainment made for the Officers and others there present.

After the **Confirmation**, is the Kings Mandate for his Solemn Consecration, which is done by the Archbishop with the assistance of two other Bishops in manner following.

Upon some *Sunday* or *Holy-day* after Morning Service, the Archbishop begins the Communion Service, and after a certain Prayer appointed for this occasion, one of the Bishops reads the Epistle, 1. *Tim.* 3. and the other reads the Gospel, *John* 21. Then the Nicene Creed and Sermon, the elect Bishop vested in his **Rochet** or **Linen Garment**, is by two Bishops presented to the Archbishop or some other Bishop commissionated by him, sitting in his Chair, who commands the Kings Mandate for the Consecration, and causeth it to be read.

Then the **Elect Bishop** takes his Oath of Supremacy and Canonical Obedience to the Archbishop; and after diverse Prayers, and several interogatories put to the Bishop and his answers, the rest of the Episcopal Habit is put upon him, and after more Prayers, the elect Bishop kneeleth down, and the Archbishop and Bishops there present lay their hands on his head, and by a certain Pious, Grave form of Words, they Consecrate him: afterwards the Archbishop doth deliver to him a Bible, with other set form of Words, and so all proceed to the Communion Service, and having received the Sacrament and the Blessing, to repair homewards in a decent and comely order, as they came to Church.

Coming home, there is a Dinner prepared at the charge of the Bishop Elect, which is usually very splendid, and magnificent; the greatest of the Nobility, Clergy, Judges, Privy Counsellors, *&c.* Honoring it with their presence, the Expence hereof with Fees of Consecration, amounting to Six, or commonly Seven Hundred Pounds.

The next thing is **Instalment**, which is performed by a Mandate from the Archbishop to the Archdeacon of his Province to Instal the Bishop elect, which is almost the same in all Cathedral, the manner is usually thus.

Upon any day between the hours of nine and eleven in the presence of a **Publick Notary**, the Bishop himself, (or his **Proxy**, which is usual) is introduced into the Cathedral with the **Singing Boys, Petty Canons,** and **Canons, Prebends, Dean,** going before him up to the Quire, and there place him in a seat prepared for him, where the Dean, or Sub-Dean, or Archdeacon, as Commissionated from the Archbishop pronounceth these words in Latin: *Ego Authoritate mihi commissa Induco & Inthronizo Reverendum in Christo Patrem Dominum N. N. Episcopum & Dominus custodiat suum Introitum & Exitum ex hoc nunc & in seculum, &c.*

Then the **Sub-Dean** and **Petty Canons** sing the *Te Deum*: in the mean while the Bishop is **Conducted** from his own place to the Deans seat, and there in token of his taking real Possession, and stands till the *Te Deum* is ended, together with other Prayers, the Arch-Deacon reading some Versicles, as *The Lord save this thy Servant, N. our Bishop*: the People answering, *And send him Health from thy Holy Place, &c.* Then the Arch-Deacon reads a short Collect for the Bishop by name, and so concluds with a Sermon.

Now this new Bishop compounds with the King for the first Fruits of his Bishoprick, that is, agrees for his first Years Profis to be paid to the King, within two Years or more, as the King pleaseth.

After this the Bishop is brought into the **Chapter-House** and seated in an high seat where the **Dean, Arch-Deacon,** and all the **Prebends** and **Officers** of the Church come before the Bishop, and acknowledge **Canonical Obedience** to him; which is all noted down by a publick Notary in an Instrument of writing made for that purpose.

The Translation of a Bishop from one Bishoprick to another, differs only in this, from the manner of making a Bishop, that there is no Consecration. And the Translation of a Bishop to an Archbishop, differs only in the Commission, which is directed by the King to four or more Bishops to confirm him.

Where note that the difference between an **Archbishop** and a **Bishop** is, that the **Archbishop** with other **Bishops** doth Consecrate a **Bishop**, as a **Bishop** with other **Priests** doth Ordaine a **Priest**: the Archbishop visits the whole Province, the Bishop only his Diocess; the Archbishop can convocate a Provincial Synod, the Bishop only a Diocesan Synod. The Archbishop is ordinary too, and hath Canonical Authority over all the Bishops of his Province, the Bishop over all the Priests of his Diocess.

They are all **Barons of the Land**, and as **Peers of the Realm** have a place in the **upper House of Parliament**, and the **upper House of Convocation**: these are **Lords Spiritual.** Several of them having Diocess of a large extent, that it was provided by a Statute 26. *H.* 8. that they should have a power to nominate some to the King, to be with his approbation, **Suffragan** or **Subsidary Bishops**; but of these there are none at present in the Church of *England*.

Bishops Revenues.

Besides the **Income by Lands** and **Houses** which as **Glebe Lands**, are given and established to each Bishoprick, whereof some hath the Yearly Revenue of 600.

800. or 1000. *l. per Annum*: yet others have 6. 7. 8. and 10 Thousand Pounds *per Annum*, all which Lands they hold of the King, for which temporal Barony, they do him Homage; by kneeling down and putting his hands between the Kings hands, sitting in a Chair of State, and taking of a Solomn Oath to be faithful to his Majesty, and that he holds his Temporalities of him.

Donations, or **Presentations** of **Benefices**; such as belong to his Bishoprick, which thought it be simony to sell and against which they are sworn, yet they will not be against that Person which can satisfie them who was the Father and Mother of *Melchisedeck*.

Deanary Rents, paid Yearly from the Parson of each Parish Church in the Deanaries, a certain Rent according to the valuation of it in the Kings Book.

Pensions, are Yearly allowances from each Parson in the Diocess for the sustaincence of his Hospitality.

Procurations, Monies gathered from each Parsonage, as a Tenth: due and payable to the Bishop from the Priest, as the Easter Roll is due from the People to the Priest.

Synodals, Synod Money; Money raised for the Bishop to Maintain him at an Assembly or General Council: this is Yearly with the former, and is termed the Yearly dues for Procurations and Synodals.

Triennal Procurations, Monies allowed the Bishop by every Parson for his maintenance in travel while he is making his third Years Visitation through his Diocess.

Institutions and **Inductions**, are certain writings made by the Bishops, wherein he Confirms the presentation of the Patrons to the Parsons appointed to such and such Churches: which is a considerable benefit to him when it comes, but it is not certain yearly as others Incomes are.

Fees of the Perogatives, of which there are certain peculiarly belonging to the Bishop, as Lord of the Court.

The several Officers in a Cathedral, and Collegiate Church.

Next after the Lords Spiritual follow the Commons Spiritual consisting of these particular Members: the next to the Bishop is,

The **Suffragan Bishop**, or **Surrogates**; these are such as on the Bishops behalf and in his name exercise spiritual Jurisdiction in the Bishops absence: a Bishops Vicegerent, one that exerciseth the Function of a Bishop, but hath not the Title. The Statute 26. *H.* 8. ennables every Diocesan at his pleasure to elect two sufficient Men, *&c.*

A Dean.

The **Dean** is now next to the Bishop, called **Dean** and **Chapter**, which are assistants to the Bishop, upon his Summons in Matters of **Ordination, Deprivation, Condemnation, Excommunication**, and in such like weighty affairs of the Church. The **Dean** is usually a **Doctor of Divinity**, whose Habit is a - - - - - - a **Gown** and **Scarfe** about his Neck extending to the skirt of the Gown: But in his Ecclesiastical Function, the **Gown** is covered with a **Surplice** of fine Linnen, with a **Scarlet Hood** lined with - - - - - - Silk hanging on his Back. **Deans of the old Foundations** before the destruction of Monasteries, are brought to their dignity much like Bishops, the King first sending his **Conge de Estire** to the Chapter, they elect, the King grants his Royal Assent, the Bishop confirmes him, and gives his Mandate to Instal him.

But **Deans of the New Foundations**, upon the suppression of Abbies and Priories, transforming them into Dean and Chapter: are by a shorter course installed; that is, by virtue of the Kings Letters Patents, without either Election or Confirmation.

Sub - Dean.

He is equal in Power with the **Dean** as to Ecclesiastical Affairs, and in his absence exerciseth his place, being ever a **Doctor of Divinity**, and **Habited** in all respects according to the Dean.

The Arch - Deacon.

The next in the Government of the Church is the **Arch - Deacon**, whose office is to enquire of reperations and movables belonging to Churches, to reform abuses in Ecclesiastical Matters, and to bring the more weighty Affairs before the Bishop: they make their Visitations two Years in three, many of them having by prescription their Courts and Officials, as Bishops have.

The Dean Rural.

The next is **Dean Rural**, called in Latin *Archipresbyterius*; so stiled perhaps from his over sight of some ten Parish Priests, their Office is now upon Orders to convocate Clergy, and to signifie to them the Bishops will and pleasure. He also gives Probats of Wills not exceeding Forty Shillings, and keeps his Rural Court for all small and petty Matters, and Church-Wardens Presentments.

The Prebend.

Among the **Prebendaries** in the old Foundation, there were two kinds of them, **Prebends in Act**, and **Prebends in Mons**; the first were such as had Prebends seats in the Quire, and give their Votes in the Chapter, or Assembly: the other having a right to the next Prebendry that shall come void, and have already a stall in the Quire, but no Vote in the Chapter. Their Habit answereth the Dean, *viz.* a - - - - - - **Gown** and **Scarfe**: and in the Church a **Surplice** and **Hood** of black Cloath, lined with the same coloured Silk.

The

The **Dean** and **Chapter**, which are a certain number of **Prebends**, more or less according to the Revenue of the Cathedral whose Office is upon all Festival and Holy-days, to read **Divinity Lectures** in their turns, which is now turned into **Sermons**, or **Set Speeches** in the Pulpit, at due times to administer the Lords Supper, *&c.*

The Canon, and Petty Canon.

These are the next Order in the Church, and appertain to **Collegiate** and **Cathedral Churches**, only: they are of the Consecrated Deacons, and for their Office it is party Humane, party Divine, following exercises in the World, and officiating in Holy things: as to Ecclesiastical affairs, they are to take care off the Poor, read in the Church, Baptize, and assist the Priest at the Lords Supper, by giving the Cup only: their Habite is according to them of the Laity, there being nothing to distinguish them; save in the Administration of their charge in the Church, they wear a Linnen Surplice.

Other Members in the Collegiate and Cathedral Churches.

The **Choister**, or **Singing Men**, or **Boyes**; who sing the Psalms and Anthems of the Church, with the Versicles and Responces, as they are set down in our English Liturgy.

The **Praecentor**, or **Chanter**; he that teacheth and instructs the other Choristers, that begins first the Tune.

The **Organist**, or him that playeth on the Organs, who is assisted by another in blowing the Bellows, which is called a **Blower of the Bellows.**

The **Verger**, is a Man in a Gown with loose Sleeves, whose Office it is to conduct the Reader to his place, bearing before him a **Silver Verge**; also before the the **Dean** within the Liberties of the Church: they are also to look to the Goods, and Books, and to keep the Church clean and handsome.

XLIV. He beareth Argent, a **Doctor of Divinity in his Doctors Habit**; or as some term him, a **Doctor of Divinity in his University Robes**, proper. This is the Badge or Cognizance of a Doctor, and is born by the name of *van Docken.*

XLV. He beareth Argent, a **Minister, Pastor**, or **Preacher of the Gospel** in his **Gown**, with a **Walking or Rectors Staff** in his right Hand, and a **Book** under his left Arm, Sable. Some call such, an **English Priest**, or a **Parson**, or **Rector**, or **Curate**: whose Habits according to their Function being all one and the same.

Such a **Priest** belongs to every peculiar Parish Church, who are commonly called **Rectors**, unless the Tithes are Impropriated, and then they are called **Vicars**, but if they serve under a Parson for an Yearly Sallery, then stiled **Curates**; if to a Chappel, then a **Chaplain.**

Their Office is to take care of all their Parishoners Souls, and like good Shephards to look to their Flock, and handle every particular Person apart, to Preach, Teach, and Exhort with all diligence, *&c.*

The Habit and Vestments of a Parson, English Minister, *or* Divine.

A **Cassock**, or a **loose Coat**; which is bound about the Parsons middle with a Girdle; this Coat generally reach to the Knees, and is wrapped double over the Breast.

A **Sash**, or **Canonical Girdle** tied about his middle with Buttons and Tassels at the ends of it.

A **Gown**, of black Cloath or Stuff extending from his shoulders to his Feet, with his Arms at the Elbows coming out of the middle of the Sleeves: But most wear them tied about the Sleeve hands.

A **Surplice**, a white Linnen Garment cast over his Gown, when he goeth to Celebrate Divine Service.

A **Hood**, which hangeth over his Shoulders and down the middle of his Back upon the Surplice, and is of various colours according to the degrees the Parson or Rector hath taken in the **University.**

The Ordination of a Deacon, *and a* Priest.

They are by the Rules & Canons of the Church not to be admitted into the said Orders till they be of sufficient Years, *viz.* a **Deacon** to be three and twenty Years old, a **Priest** to be compleat four and twenty, and none to be **Bishop** till he be full thirty Years old, unless they have **Dispensations** to be admitted younger.

The Ordination of **Priests** and **Deacons** is four times in the Year, upon four several Sundays in the Ember Weeks first introduced by the Holy Martyr *Calixtus* Bishop of *Rome*, about the Year, 220. It is performed by a Bishop in a Solemn grave and devout manner, thus for Deacons.

After Morning Prayer, there is a Sermon declaring the Duty and Office of Priests and Deacons; then they being decently Habited, are presented to the Bishop by the Arch-Deacon or his Deputy, whom the Bishop asketh if he hath made due inquiry of them, and then askes the People, if they know any notable Impediment or Crime in any of them: after followeth certain godly Prayers, after which they take the Oath of Supremacy: so the Collect, Epistle and Gospel being read, they all kneel down, and the Bishop doth lay his Hands upon their Heads severally saying, *Take thou Authority to Exicute the Office of a Deacon in the Church of God committed unto thee; In the name of the Father, &c.*

Then

Then delivers to every of them the New Testament, and gives them authority to read the same in the Church, then one by the appointment of the Bishop reads the Gospel, then all with the Bishop receives the Communion, and so are dismissed with a Blessing pronounced by the Bishop.

The Ordination of **Priests**, is partly in the same manner, for after the questions and answers made, the Bishop puts up a peculiar Prayer for them, that ended, he desires the Congregation to recommend them to God secretly in their Prayers; for the doing of which there is a competent time of general silence.

Then follows *Veni Creator Spiritus* in meeter to be sung, then after another Prayer, they all kneeling, the Bishop with one or two of the grave Priests there present, lay their Hand upon the Head of every one of them severally saying, *Receive the Holy Ghost for the Office and Work of a Priest in the Church of God now committed unto thee by the Imposition of our Hands, &c. And be thou a faithful Dispenser of the Word of God and Sacrament: In the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost.*

The rest following is, as it is set down in the Ordination of Deacons.

The Patron of a Church.

After this brief account of **Ecclesiastical Persons**, somewhat may here not unfitly be spoken touching those Persons, who though not in Holy Orders, yet have a peculiar relation to the Church, as **Patrons of Churches**, such who first built Churches and endowed them with Lands, have obtained for them and their Heirs a right of **Advowson** or **Patronage**, whose Office and Duty it is, to impose a fit Clerk (when the Church is void) to the Bishop, to be by him Canonically Instituted, and to Protect the Church as far as he can from all wrong, and in case the **Clerk** prove unfit for the place, to give notice thereof to the Bishop.

The Church-Wardens, and Sides-Men.

The next are the **Guardians** of the Church, called **Church-Wardens**, anciently **Church-Reeves**: whose Office it is to see the the Church be in good Repairs, fitly Adorned, and nothing wanting for Divine Service, Sacraments and Sermons; that the Churchyard be sufficiently bounded or inclosed: to observe that that all Parishioners come duely to Divine Service, to present scandelous Livers; these are Officers elected every Week after *Easter* usually by the Parson and the Parishoners, if they so agree, if not, then one by the Parson, and one by the Parish, except the custome of the place be to the contrary.

The **Sides-Men**, they were anciently called **Synods-Men**, now corruptly Sides-Men who are to assist the Church-Wardens in great Parishes to gather Assessments, inquire into the Lives of Inordinate Livers, and to present Men at the Visitations.

The Collectors and Overseers.

The **Collectors for the Poor**, are Officers which gather Money for the Poor of the Parish, and distribute the same amongst them according to their necessities. These are chosen with the Church-Wardens Yearly.

The **Overseers of the Ways**, are Men chosen Yearly for to see, and put in repair all decayed Highways for Carts, Wagons and Horses, within the Bounds of the Parish.

The Clerk and Sexton.

The **Parish Clerk**, is a kind of Holy Order, though he be a Lay-Man; whose Office it is to help the People in the responses or answers, to those Versicles uttered by the Priest in Divine Service, to say Amen, and to Read Tune the Psalm; to Write the Parish accounts, *&c.*

The **Sexton**, anciently called the **Sacrishan**; whose Office was to serve at Church the Priest and Church-Wardens, and therefore ought to be twenty Years old, or above, of good Life, and that can Read, Write, and Sing. But this Office is now swallowed up in the Clerk, the Sextons Office being at this present only to Ring the Bells, clean the Church, and make Graves for the Dead, and to provide Water for the Font: and such like several things.

XLVI. He beareth Azure, a **Minister**, or **Master of Arts** in his **Surplice**, and **Hood** according to his Degree, proper. Some term this a **Master of Arts**, or a **Batchelor of Arts**, or of **Divinity**, in his Ordination Habit, or Offretory Vestments, as being now ready to Celebrate the Offices of the Church. This Coat pertaineth to the name of *Minister*.

The several degrees of persons in the University Colledges.

1. **Serviters**, such as Study, yet wait at the Table, and on some Gentlemen Commoners.

2. **Batlers** or **Fresh Men**, such as are new comers to the University; and these two degrees have Gowns with square Caps and hanging sleeves made of Black Cloth, Stuff or Crape; their Caps Black and round like Bonnets.

3. **Commoners**, are such as are at the University Commons, which till they come to some Degree or Preferment

ferment there, are distinguished according to their time of being there; as 1. **Fresh Men.** 2. **Sophy Mores.** 3. **Junior Soph,** or **Sophester.** And lastly **Senior Soph.** These have Gowns of the same shape as above-said, with an addition of six Buttons and Loops with Tufts set upon the hanging sleeves; the Gowns of Prunella, with round Caps of the same Stuff.

4. **Fellow Commoners,** or **Gentlemen Commoners,** these have Gowns like Commoners, with the addition of Tufts on the sides, bottom behind, and the top and bottom of the sleeves; a round Silk Cap of the Commoners fashion.

5. **Scholars,** they have the same Gowns as Batchelors, only the Border of their wide sleeves is on the outside, they have square Caps without tufts.

6. **Bachelors,** or **Bachelors of Art,** after they have been Students for 7 years, then they have a full Gown with wide sleeves open at the hands Surplice like, faced down before with any sort of Stuff, Silk, Prunella or the like; their Caps four cornered, with a Tuft on the top. But **Bachelors of Divinity** have Scarlet Gowns and Black Silk Hoods lined with stuff of the same colour.

7. **Bachelors of Civil Law,** have the same Gowns as Gentlemen Commoners, but with more Buttons and Tufts and larger, the same Caps, their Hoods Prunella Silk faced with white Furr.

8. **Bachelors of Physick** have much alike the same Gowns and Caps.

9. **Masters of Art** have their Gowns faced down before, and the Sleeves reaching to the Elbow, and from thence as long as to the Skirt of the Gown; the Hood is red Silk lined with Black; the Cap is four square of Black Cloth with a tuft on the top.

10. **Doctors of Divinity** have Scarlet Gowns, the sleeves faced and down before with Black Velvet; Hood Scarlet lined with Black Silk.

11. **Doctors of the Civil Law,** and **Doctors of Physick,** have their Gowns of Scarlet lined and faced with Red Silk and Hoods of the same; their Caps are Black Velvet and round Bonnets.

The common Servants to each Hall or Colledge in the University are these; the Porter, Scrape Trencher, Cook and his under Servants, Butler, Gardener, Brewer, Baker, Sweepers of the Hall, Bed-makers and Chamberlains, *&c.*

Officers of the University for its Government.

Junior Fellows, such as have Fellowships bestowed upon them, some of 20, 30, or 40 *l.* by the year.

Senior Fellows, such as have Fellowships, and are of a more Ancient standing in the University, and are Instructors of others that are Commoners, *&c.*

The Dean.

Junior Burcer, or **Boursier,** the younger Treasurer or Purse Keeper of the Colledge.

Senior Burcer, the head or chief Treasurer or Cash keeper of the University or Colledge.

Vice Principle, the second person in the Colledg, which in some particular Halls or Colledges are termed **Vice-Masters, Sub-Wardens, Sub-Rector, Vice-Provost, Vice-President** and **Sub-Dean.**

Principle, the chief Ruler of the Colledge or Hall, which as I said before are in some called **Principles,** as in *Jesus Colledge*; **Master** in *University Colledge, Baliol Colledg* and *Pembrook Colledge.* **Warden** in *All-Souls* and *Merton Colledge*, and *Wadham Hall.* **Rector** in *Exeter* and *Lincoln Colledges.* **Provost** in *Oriell* and *Queens Colleages.* **President** in *Magdalen, Corpus Christi, Trinity* and *St. Johns Colledges.* And **Dean** in *Christ-Church College*, in which they have two other persons in Office, called the **two Censors.**

The Officers over the whole University.

The **Chancellor,** who is generally one of the Noble Men of the Land, and is made by the King.

The **Vice Chancellor,** he always weareth a Doctors Gown, Cap, and Hood, and hath the Rule, Care and Charge of the University.

The **two Proctors,** Junior and Senior; they wore Black Gowns faced with Velvet, the wide sleeves with the same, Masters of Arts Caps, and a Tippet on the left shoulder.

The **four Pro-proctors,** wear Masters of Arts Gowns, sometimes with Tippets, whose Office it is to walk about in the Night, to see that the Scholars keep good Orders, and are not abroad in the Night, *&c.*

XLVII. He beareth Vert, a **Martyr in Flames,** tyed to a **Stake** or Body of a Tree, holding a **Trumpet** to his Mouth with his right Hand, and the left extended, proper. This is born by the name of *Marter.*

This is the Emblem of the Church Militant, who is here said to rejoice and sound the Trumpet of Gods Praise though it be in the midst of the Flames; no Affliction can alter his Affection, but in the same a Holy Man will be mindful of setting forth Gods Glory. *Though I be smitten into the place of Dragons saith David, yet will I not forget thy name,* Psal. 44. 19. 20.

XLVIII. He beareth Or, a **Martyr in his Triumph,** kneeling on a Cloud **cloathed all in Light,** and **Crowned,** with a **Palm** in his right hand, and a **Trumpet** held to his Mouth by his left, all proper. This is born by the name of *Triumph.* Here is the end and the Reward of all Christs faithful Servants and Soldiers, which is after the Victory of Sin, the World and Satan, they are received into the Clouds, are Crowned with Glory, and have Palms of Triumph put into their hands, and with Trumpets Royal Voice, for ever Sing *Hallelujah,* Praises and Joy beyond all thoughts or utterance.

XLIX. He

XLIX. He beareth Argent, a **Minister** in a **Pulpit**, with a **Purple Cloth Fringed before him.** Ministers of all Men are to be skilled in those two Noble Sciences, **Rhetorick** and **Logick**; the first teacheth to speak well, like an Orator, whose words come with a Grace; the second the Art of Reason and Disputation.

Rhetorick described.

This Noble Science, and one of the Liberal Arts, is set forth either by Man or Woman, or both; crowned with Bays, with a *Caduceus* Winged in one of their hands, and a Book and Scrowls by them.

Certain Terms used in the Liberal Science of Rhetorick.

Rhetorick and **Oratory** or **Eloquence**, is a quick and ready way of speaking well; wherein Words are adorned with Tropes, Sentences with Figures, and pronunciation or utterance with Gestures.

1. **Adornments of Speech**, are to set it out with these things.

Apologies or **Prologismes**, a defence or excuse, a speech or written Answer made in Justification of any thing.

Prologue, a Preface or fore-speech, and is that as either opens the state of a Comedy or Fable, or commends it; or else refutes the Objections and Cavils of Adversaries.

Sentences, Phrases, are concise and pithy pieces of Wit, containing much matter in few words.

Proverbs, Old sayings, an Adage or Wise saying.

Parables, Mysteries. dark sayings, a resemblance, similitude, or a comparison.

Fables, Tales of Untruth, yet have a likelyhood of Truth.

2. **Apothegme**, a brief and pithy Speech of some renowned personages.

Comparisons, are setting things together, to see the likeness or difference of them.

Similes, things like, or of the very same fashion, the similitude, likeness, or resemblance of kinds.

Examples, a President, Pattern, or Copy; a thing brought in for proof or declaration.

Hyerogiyphicks, Mystical Images, Letters or Cyphers, signifying Holy Sentences, or Predictions of things to come.

Demonstratives, are certain states in Oratory, wherein praises and dispraises of things are made evident and plain.

Deliberatives, are ways wherein perswasions and dissuasions are handled.

Juridicall, is the way whereby Accusations and Defences are managed.

Apologues, an apology, defence or excuse of a thing, the conclusion or ending of a Fable, Tale or Story.

Gesture, or becoming Actions to set forth Elocution, are in the Look or Countenance, Voice, and motion of the body; the first being as occasion requires, either erect or looking up, or submiss held down, cheerful or sad, with a forehead neither wrinkled or smooth: The Voice is also used Mournfull and Broken in the stirring up of Pitty, sharp and fierce in Anger; merry and pleasant in Joy; and for bodily motion is used the foulding of his hands to beseech; a decent and handsom clapping of them together upon occasions of Mirth; and at unworthy Passions stamping of his Foot.

3. **Figures** in a Speech or Sentence, are words or phrases contrived from a plain to a neat way of speaking, which are termed Figures of a Sentence.

Exclamation, is that whereby the Speech is heightned by Exclaiming, as *O Times! O Manners.*

Interrogation, is that whereby by Asking, we stir up the Hearers to Attention, as *Ought it to be so done? What doth let you in the Race?*

Reticence, whereby the Speech is made more sharp by the very breaking of it off; as, *But for this cause I will say no more. As concerning these things I will hold my Peace.*

Conection, whereby I call back something already said, that that which is to be said may be entertained more attentively; as *Shall I hold my Tongue, Nay I will speak.*

Preoccupation, is that whereby the interruption of the Hearer is fore-spald; as *Some one may say, &c. But I Answer.*

Concession, is a granting of that which might be suggested, that the Hearer may be compelled to grant another thing; as, *Let him be Poor, let him be of a low Parentage, yet he is Just or Honest*; so contrary, *Though he be Rich, he is a Knave.*

Apostrophe or **Aversion**, is whereby the Speech is turned from the Heavens to some other thing, as, *Hear O Heavens, ye shall be my Witnesses.*

Prosopopeia, or **Dissimulation**, is the dissembling of a person speaking, as, *I Sun shine not for this, that you being drowsie, should snore soundly.* All these figurative speakings are to stir up attention, and are noted Figures. But among the Figures of Speech there are these which do much excel, as

4. **Epizeuxis**, is the repeating of a thing over again in the same words, as, *we have won the day, we have won the day.*

Anaphora, a repeating in the beginning of a Sentence, as, *that proves to our Comfort, to our Honour, to our Profit.*

Epistrophe, a doubling of the same words in the end of a sentence, as, *we will go on, we will Fight on, we will Triumph on.*

Epanalepsis, a doubling of the same words in the beginning and ending, as, *much you promise, you will be bound to perform much.*

A **Clinar**, a gradual connection of several things, as, *Let*

Let a Good Cause put Courage in us, Courage Industry, and Industry Valour.

Epanodos, a redoubling of words backwards, as, *I do not live to eat, but I eat to live.*

A **Paronomasia,** an **illusion** of sound to sound, or thing to thing, as, *Destructions are Instructions.*

A **Polyptoton,** repeating the same words, only varying the Case, as, *he maketh one that is mindful unmindful. who minds him of that which he hath in his mind.*

5. **Tropes,** are Sentences or Words translated from their own signification, to signifie some other thing like, or contrary, or at least different; that is, in speaking mean one thing, and the words another.

Metaphor, is when we call one like natured, by the name of another thing like it, as, to call a *Dunce*, a *Block*, or *Ass*, signifies the thing so called, is like natured.

Ironie, is when a thing is set forth by the name of a contrary thing, as when I say *O Good Sir*, for *O Rogue*; hereby is a thing set forth sportingly or in Jest, by the name of a contrary thing.

Metonymie, when the cause of a thing is set for the effect; as to say, *Man is Clay*, or on the contrary, *Man is Mortal.*

Synecdoche, is when a part is taken for the whole, or contrary wise, the whole for a part: Now to these foresaid Tropes belongs these following terms.

Allegory, is that in which a Trope being once put, is continued, as, *an evil Crow hath an evil Egg*, that is, a *Wicked Father hath a Wicked Son.*

Hyperbole, is that by which the Trope is raised to a thing beyond Truth, as to say, *a Man to Man is a God*, an excess in advancing or repressing.

Biosis, is that by which the thing is shrunk and lessened below the Truth, as to say, *Man is a Shadow.* But to the more simple adorning of words belongs these terms.

Epithets, are when words be added to a Sentence for Ornament sake, as, *an Eloquent Orator speaketh powerfully.*

Antithetaes, wherein we seem to say something more than we do say, as, *he doth not speak, but Thunders*; or, *he doth not move but throws down.*

Synonymaes, are diverse words made use of being of one, or near the same in signification, that with a double stroke (as it were) the same thing may be set home more strongly, and stick more fast; as to say, *he Solicitetb, Adviseth, Perswadeth, Captivateth and Leadeth whither he will.*

Periphrasis, is that wherein we do not name the thing, but speak it about, as to say, *the Parent of Roman Eloquence*, meaning thereby *Cicero.*

Mages, or Proverbs.

Emphasis, is to speak with earnestness, thereby to express the signification of a Mans intention.

Hypallage, is a Figure when words are understood contrary.

Style, is a certain way of speaking or writing according to the Subject spoken of, and this is threefold; a low Style in speaking of ordinary and mean matters; indifferent, in things of a mean nature; and an high style in high, great, and lofty things.

Attick style, are words fitted accurately to the subject spoken of.

Asiatick, is a copious and large style.

Laconick, is a short and witty style, words spoken to the purpose.

Poetry described.

It is a Branch of the Liberal Sciences, having witty Inventions and Sayings from them all; it is confined to no Rule, but hath liberty (like the Kings Jester) to say what it will. to ly by Authority so it come off with a good Fancy and none to contradict. A Poet then is described sitting at a Table, or standing thereby, looking into the Sky, with the Finger of the right hand pointing to them of the left; and before him laid several Books, and all sorts of Instruments, Mechanick, Domestick, Military and Agriculture; as raising matter from all things that are seen, or heard, or understood.

Terms used in Poetry.

A **Poet,** is one that speaketh and writeth all in Rythm and Meeter.

Rythm, is the foundation of Poetry, or Rudiments of a Poet; where the number only of the Syllables, with the like cadence of the last is looked upon to make it Rythm.

Cadence, the ending words of the Verses which makes the Meeter.

Rudiments, the grounds or foundation of Poetry.

Meeter, is where all the Syllables are numbred or brought into feet, that they may run more pleasant in the Cadence; words set in measure.

Hypermeter, a Verse having one Syllable above measure, called by some a **Feminine** Verse.

Feet, or **Poetical Feet,** they are made of Syllables, each Syllable being a foot.

Verses, are made of Poetical Feet, or Syllables ending alike in the last words.

Odes, Songs Tuned to the Lute, or other Instrument.

Odelet, a small or short Song.

Poems, Verses made from Prose.

A **Spondee,** is two long Syllables together in a Verse, as *constans.*

A **Jambick,** is a short and long Syllable together, as *Boni.*

A **Trochee,** is a long and short Syllable together, as *semper.*

A **Dactyl,** is of one long and two short Syllables, as *flectere.*

Hemistiche, is half a Verse.

Hexasticke, is six Verses.

Epithalamium, is a Nuptial or Wedding Song.

Epicedium, a Dirge or Funeral Song.

Epitaph, is an Inscription upon the Tomb.

Propempticum, or *Penvoy*, a farewel or going away.

Epigram, merry Jesting Verses on the Letters of ones name.

Satyr, or **Satyrical Verses**, are such as give sharp rebuking words.

Elegyes, lamentable Verses, Verses on persons departed or dead.

Jambique Verses, a measure or foot in Verse, having the first Syllable short, the second long; also a Verse consisting of 4 or 6 feet.

Poets Laureat, are such who for their Wit, are had in great esteem, and were crowned with Lawrel by Kings.

Poetize, or Versifie, is to turn Poet, to make Verses.

Polemicks, Verses treating of War, or Treatises of War, Strifes or Disputations.

Epique Poem, is a Narrative of Heroick Actions.

Drammatique Poem, is Heroick Verse of Fights and Tragedies.

Scommatick Narrative, is harsh biting Verse.

Drammatick, is a Comedy or merry pleasant Verses.

Bucolique, is a Pastoral Narrative, or Verse pronounced by two or many persons.

Lyrique Verses, Verses made of diverse matters, variety of Verses sung to the Harp.

Euphonia, a Song sung by one.

Symphonia, a Consort, or a Song sung by many.

Logick described.

It is one of the seven Liberal Sciences, and is that Art by which is taught the way and method of Reason and Disputation; and is described by a Man or Woman, or both, in the antientest way of Habit, with long Coats, Vests, Mantles and Scarfs with Books before them, and putting the fore-finger of the right hand to the end of any finger of the left, as if they were scanning of Verses, or numbring the feet in a Verse.

Terms of Art used in Logick.

Logick, is the Art of Reasoning or speaking well, by clearing things that are dark, confuting mistakes, and ordering things out of Order.

Logician, is one that can reason and speak well.

Proposition, is the question or thing proposed, or put forth to be argued and disputed on; the first part of a Syllogisme.

Syllogisme, is a most perfect kind of arguing, which gathers a necessary conclusion out of two Premisses; as thus, *Every Vice is odious, Drunkenness is a Vice*; ergo, *Drunkenness is odious*.

Major, is the first part of a Syllogisme; the Proposition or Major is one and the same in Termino, the ground of reasoning.

Assumption or **Minor**, is the second part in the Syllogisme, or the lesser part in the proposition, from whence the conclusion or final determination is drawn. See **Minor**.

Conclusion, the third part or determination of the Syllogisme.

Subjectum, or the Subject of a Proposition, is the thing principally meant, as *Peter is a Man*; the subject is *Peter*.

Predicatum, or the Predicate of the proposition, or the Attribute, is the word *Man*.

Copula, or the coupling together of the Proposition is the Verb (is) which tyeth the Sentence together.

Position or **Sentences in Logick**, are for the affirming of a thing, or the denying of it; in which there must of necessity follow these adjuncts, else it is not rightly stated.

Sense, meaning or understanding of Sentence or matter; the judgment or reason of any Writing.

Reason, **Purpose** or **Design** of a matter; the cause or state of a thing proposed or written.

Circumstance, going about and about a thing, or standing about, or a delaying of a matter by impertinent Words or Acts.

Cause and **Effect**, is a thing made or procured; a work done or finished, from such a Cause, Suit, or Controversie, or matter in question; as *Heresie is the Cause, Controversie the Effect*; the first being the forerunner of the latter.

Adjunct, is a quality joined to another thing of the same nature, as Heat to Fire, Day to Light, Weight to Lead, *&c.* a thing joined or added unto another.

Definition, or declaration of a matter in few words the signification or nature of a thing plainly.

Description, Narration or explaining of a thing, a distribution into several parts or portions.

Division into parts, is to take every word of a Sentence by it self, and to Comment or Paraphrase upon it.

Distinction, or putting a difference between word and word, or thing and thing; a distinguishing, dividing or separating one from another.

Distribution, a dividing or parting; it is a Figure in Logick, wherein we give to single things their due propriety, or right.

Genius or kind, a Gender, a term in Logick, and the first of the five **predicables**, containing only a part of the question, the other being comprehended, it is called a Genus.

Species or sort; is when the predicate comprehends the full answer to the question.

Thesis, is a general or indefinite question, argument or position; see **position or sentences**.

Sentences, are concise and pithy pieces of Wit, containing much matter in few words. See **Position**.

Coherence, an agreement, or hanging together of one Sentence or Text with another, a joyning together.

Arionne,

Axiome, a Maxim or general ground in any Art, a short Sentence or Proposition generally allowed to be true, as in saying *the whole is greater than its parts.*

Maxime, a Rule that may not be denyed in any Art.

Apozisme, a Proposition or Principle in an Art not to be gainsaid.

Subject, is a matter treated of; also in Logick is that which **supports** qualities belonging to it; as, *The Body is the subject in which is Health or Sickness*; and *the Mind Vertue or Vice.*

Minor of the **Syllogism**, or lesser part of the proposition from whence the conclusion is drawn, as *Whatsoever is due by the Law of Nature cannot be altered: But Allegiance and Obedience of Subjects to the King, is due by the Law of Nature*; Ergo, *Allegiance and Obedience cannot be altered.* The first part of this Syllogisme is called the **Major**, the second beginning at *But*, is the **Minor**; and Ergo makes the Conclusion, that *Allegiance and Obedience cannot be nullified or made void*, Mark 7, 11. *&c.*

Term, or **Termination**, is the finishing, bounding or ending of a matter or thing, the limiting or defining of a cause.

Transposition, a removing from one place to another; to alter the order of a Sentence, Speech, or Thing.

Premised or granted.

Controverted, or disputed, debated *Pro* and *Con*; a disputing of a point in controversy, strife, variance, contention.

Argument, is the Theme, Matter, Summ or substance to speak or write upon.

Affirmative, the affirming, avouching, or standing to the certainty of a thing, to maintain a Truth against any opposer.

Negative, is to deny or gain say a thing: Two Negatives make an Affirmative, as, *he did not give nothing*, which implies that he did give something.

Method, is the bringing of things into Order, into generals and particulars; a well disposing of things into their proper places.

Perspicuous, clear Words or Sentences.

Ambiguous, doubtful words, not clearly demonstrated.

Sophism, **Quirks**, things hidden, or an obscure matter in a Sentence. **Sophister**, a Quibler, a Disputant that wrests or argues crattily; an eloquent and cunning speaking, whereby to make a false matter seem true.

Synthesis, is the composing or winding up of a matter; it is a Figure in a Sentence, wherein a Noun Collective Singular, is joined with a Verb Plural.

Analysis, the resolution or unfolding of an intricate matter, or a resolving or distribution of the whole into parts.

Syncrisis, a collating or comparing of one thing with another.

Syneresis or **Synerize**, is a contraction of two into one, as two Vowels into a Dipthong. œ æ.

Paraphrasis, is an Exposition or Interpretation of the same thing by other words, to give the sense of an Author plainly, and according to the true meaning; a **Paraphrase.**

*

XLIX.*He beareth Argent, a **Lady Abbess** in the **Habit of her Order**, with a **Crosier** on her left Arm in Bend, with her **hands conjoined** and **elevated** upon her Brest, proper. Some pronounce her an **Abbatess**, and a **Lady Nun.** This is born by the name of *Abbes*, or *Abbs.*

L. He beareth Or, a **Nun** in her **Nuns Weed**, or **Habit**, with a **Book** between her hands: Others make a farther addition and term her Vailed, because she hath her Hood or Vail on, but that is needless; for such Cloistered Dames are never seen abroad, but they are ever Vailed.

Nuns do profess Chastity, Contempt of the World, having an earnest desire of Heavenly things, and for that end are Cloystered up in Nunneries to live retired lives. It is by the Church of *Rome* held to be a Capital Sin either to Marry or Sollicit a Nun; such are Excommunicated, or perpetually Imprisoned, or put to Death.

Nuns are also enjoined to be modest and frugal in their Cloaths and Diet, not to converse with Men, nor to walk alone, nor to Bath except their Hands and Feet, to Fast and Pray often, to be Vailed, abstain from Wine, wash the Saints Feet, not to be Idle, but either Sing, Pray, Hear, or be working with the Needle, or Spinning.

LI. He beareth Argent, a **Religious Woman**, of a **Gild** or **Fraternity of Brothers and Sisters**, which are a kind of Religious Laity that Societ together, yet follow Worldly or secular Imployments. Some term her a **Religious Woman** of **Antwerp**, or a **Holy Sister** of St. **Georges Gild.** This is born by the name of *Sister.*

LII. He beareth Or, a **Vailed Virgin** or **Maid**; This is one that we may suppose is weary of the World as of her Virginity, and therefore to part with both, she is preparing her self for the **Nunnery**; for old Father *Lasher* is not so ancient, but he is both ready and willing to Confess and Shwive a young Girle, and Absolve her too from all her Offences of that kind.

The **Nuns** of St. **Benedicts** Order were first set up by *Scholastica* the Sister of St. *Benedict* or *Bennet*: They were by their Rule not permitted to be God-Mothers, or to go abroad, but in case of great necessity, and that with some Ancient Woman; they must give themselves to Prayer, Meditation, and observe the Canonical hours; they must not speak with any Man except in publick before Witnesses; if any be found unchast after 3 Whippings, she is fed with Bread and Water for a whole year in Prison.

The **Abbatess** must be no young Woman, but above 60 years of Age, and to be discreet, grave, religious, careful and vigilant over her Charge, not to go abroad without the Bishops leave and upon urgent occasion, and to leave in the mean time a Deputy to look to her Charge; and not to go abroad but to have some Nuns accompany her.

The **Nuns** of St. **Clara**; This Order of Nuns was instituted *Anno* 1225, by *Clare* the Daughter of *Ortulana*, who undertook Pilgrimage both to *Rome* and the *Holy Sepulcher* in her Childhood, and would never hear of Marriage. At the Church of St. *Damianus*, she set up the Order of **Poor Ladies**, called from her name *Clarissæ*, **Nuns Clarissans**; and from the place the Nuns of St. **Damian**; their Rule was that of the *Franciscans*.

The **Nuns of** St. **Bridget**, this Order was instituted by one *Bridget* a Princess in *Sweden*, about the year 1360. This Order came into *England*, *Anno* 1414, they were to have nothing in propriety, touch no Money, must lie upon Straw; they wore grey Coats and Cloaks with a red Cross thereon, and on their Vail they wear a white Linnen Crown, on which are sowed pieces of red Cloth representing drops of Blood, and so placed that they may resemble a Cross.

The **Nuns** of St. **Katherine**; this Order begun *Anno* 1372; others say *Anno* 1455. the Nuns wore a white Garment, and over it a Black Vail, with a head covering of the same colour. *Katherine*, born at *Senæ* in *Tuscany*, was the Founder thereof, who in her Childhood Vowed Virginity, and in a Dream saw *Dominick* with a Lilly in his hand, and other Religion-Founders, wishing her to profess some of their Orders; she embraced that of *Dominick*, in which she was so strict, that she abhorred the smell of Flesh, eat only Bread and Herbs, and drank Water; she lay in her Cloaths on Boards.

The **Nuns** of the Order of St. **Mary de decem Virtutibus**, that is, of the Ten Vertues; it consists only in repeating the *Ave Maria* ten times; they wear a black Vail, a white Coat, a red Scapular, and an Ash coloured Cloak. There be two other Orders of St. **Mary**, the one wears a white Coat and a Black Cloak like **Carmelites**; the others are all White. There is also an Order of Nuns of St. **Maries Conception.**

The Admittance and Consecration of a Nun.

None is to be received into the Nunnery without one years probation at the least, then she must be Examined and Consecrated by the Bishop after this manner. First, in her passage to the Church are carried two burning Tapers, after followeth one bearing of a Cross, with the Crucifix on one side, and the Virgins Image on the other; then followeth the Nun with other of her Fellow Nuns, so she is presented to the Bishop where she testifieth her constant resolution to that kind of life; she is with a consecrated Ring put on her Finger by the Bishop Married to Christ; then goes to the Altar and Offers, and so returns to her place; after a while she is called to come to the Altar bare-footed, where the Bishop Consecrateth her Nuns Cloaths, then puts on her the Coat of her Profession, her Shooes, Hood and Cloak, which he tieth with a Wooden Button; the Bishop at every Action Praying.

Being thus in her Nuns Habit the Musick Playing, the Bishop saith thus (having her Vail in his hands) *Behold Daughter, and forget thy People and thy Fathers House, that the King may take pleasure in thy Beauty*, to this the people Cry *Amen:* And so the Vail is cast over her, then all the Religious Matrons and Nuns do Kiss her, after the Priest hath Prayed for, and Blessed her.

So returning to her place, she is again called to the Altar, where she falls on her face, the Bishop and Priests read the Letany, Absolve her, and give her the Eucharist; then her Coffin, which during the time of the Mass stood there, is by four Sisters carried into the Convent sprinkling it with Dust: At the Gate stands the Abbatess with her Nuns to receive her, where she is brought by the Bishop having two Tapers carried before him, the Priests Singing, who recommends her to the care of the Abbatess, which she receives, shuts the Gate and brings her into the Chapter.

The Nuns were of old either Consecrated by the Bishop or Priest when they were 25 years of Age, but now they do it at 12 or before; the days for receiving of the Vail and Consecration, are the *Epiphany*, *Easter Eve*, and the Festival days of the Apostles, except in case of Death. The new Nun for the first eight days is tied to no Discipline; at Table and in the Quire she sits last.

LIII. He beareth Vert, a **Nun of the Carthusian Order**, in the **Habit** and **Vail** prescribed them. The Monks and Friers of this Order I have set down *numb.* 18. the Nuns or Sisters of that Order and Fellowship were in a manner tied to the same Austerity of Life and Habit as this Figure doth express. This Coat thus Blazoned, is born by the name of *Monkusho*, a *Spanish* Family.

G. a demy Carthusian Nun proper, holding an open Book in her right hand, is the Crest of *Don Pango*.

LIV. He beareth Gules, a **Nuns head couped** below the Shoulders, and **Vailed**, proper. This may also be termed a **Lady Abbess**, or **Lady Nuns head**; and three such is the Coat Armour of *Wagley*.

LV. He beareth Azure, the **Virgin Maries head couped** at the Shoulders, **Vailed** Argent; with the **Glory** about her Head, Or. Some term this a **Virgin Saints Head.**

☞ Where it is to be noted, that all **Saints**, whether Holy Men or Holy Women, are ever Drawn with a **Circle** about their heads; but few or none save the **Virgin Mary** and her **Son** with **Glorys** about theirs.

LVI. He beareth Argent, St. **Katherine** sitting with a **Palm Branch** in the right hand, and **supporting** a **Wheel** with her left. This is the crest (being cloathed in Purple) of the Family of St. *Katherine* in *Italy*.

The

The like St. Katherine habited in red, and a surcoat of Ermyne cast over it; and her Hair pendant, Or; holding up the right hand, is the crest of the Company of *Wax Chandlers* of *Ch ster*.

The Description and Cognizance of several Women Saints.

St. **Cecilly** is Painted with a Stop of Organ Pipes in her left Arm, with a Palm Branch in her right hand.

St. **Catherine** of *Sene*, in the habit of a Nun, a Crown of Thorns on her head, a Crucifix in one hand, and a Lilly with a long stalk leafed in the other.

St. **Mary the Virgin,** is Drawn in Robes and Mantles with the Angel *Gabriel* standing before her, she is in a Praying posture with a Book before her on a Desk or Table. She is also Drawn with a little Child in her Arms, and a Crown on her head.

St. **Christian** hath a Palm Branch in her hand, and a Book under her Arm, with a Sword and a Mill-stone at her feet.

St. **Anne** is an Old Woman Embracing the Virgin *Mary*.

St. **Mary Magdalen** is weeping and clasping her hands, her Hair loose hanging down, a Cup by her and a Crucifix before her.

St. **Agatha** carrieth a Palm and a pair of cutting Tongs.

St. **Victoria** is Drawn Embracing a Sword and a Palm.

St. **Julian** with a Palm and a Lilly.

St. **Joan** with an Imperial Crown on her head, and a Crucifix in her hand.

St. **Veronica** holdeth a Cloth like a Handkerchief, on which is our Saviours Head Crowned with Thorns.

St. **Barbara,** is drawn resting her hand on the cross Bar or Hilt of a Sword, and a Palm in the other hand, and a Crown on her head, and hair hanging down.

St. **Margaret** is leading of a great Serpent or Dragon in a Chain, and a Palm in the other hand.

St. **Agnes** clipping of a Lamb, with a Palm in her hand.

St. **Dorothy** with a Basket of Flowers and Fruit, and a Palm in her hand.

Having given some examples of Saints both Male and Female; I shall in the next place give you some Instruction whereby you may upon sight know the several Emblems of Virtue and Vice, as Faith, Hope, Charity, Prudence, *&c.* Sloth, Envy, Wrath, *&c.* which things are very oft born in Shields and Escochions, and are depicted under the form of Men and Women either in whole or to the middle.

LVII. He beareth the **Emblem of Faith.** Thus in brief, but in more general and distinct terms, a Woman **habited in a long Robe, close girt,** Gules; under Coat Purpure, **Vailed** and hanging behind her, holding of a long Cross in her right hand, Or. By the name of *Faithful*.

The Description of the seven Cardinal Vertues.

Faith, is Painted in white Garments in one hand a Cross, and in the other hand a Golden Cup or Chalice, and sometimes a Book.

Hope is a Woman in Blew Garments, with Mantle or Vail red, holding or supporting of a Silver Anchor.

Charity, a person in Yellow or Crimson Robes and Vail with a Child in her Arms, and one in her hand by her side; or an enflamed heart in the other hand, with a tyre of Gold and Precious Stones on her head.

Prudence is drawn with a Looking Glass in one hand; and in the other a Serpent by the Neck, with the Tail lapt about her Arm; or two Serpents in one hand, and her Finger at her Mouth with the other. Some have drawn her with two Faces, one looking in a Mirrour, to see things past; and in the other hand a Prospective Glass to see things before her, and to come.

Fortitude, is a Woman in Robes, with her right Arm embracing of a Stone Pillar or Collum; and with the other supports a Shield.

Temperance hath a Cup in the one hand, and a Bottle Urn in the other, pouring Wine thereout into the Cup; with loose Garments, Naked Arms and Feet, else clad with Sandals.

Justice, hath a Sword in one Hand, and a pair of Ballances in the other; some Paint her Blind folded: Or after others with a Silver Coronett on her head, white Robe and Mantle and Buskins.

LVIII. He beareth Or, a **Woman cloathed in a long Robe close girt, Head Attired,** Gules, **Garnished, supporting** with her right hand a **Shield,** Or, the other on her Belly. This may be termed the Emblem of **Safety** and **Protection,** as saith *David*, *Thou shalt defend me as with a Shield.*

After this manner our fore-fathers used to describe or represent the Graces, by Women in long Robes or loose Garments, after the old fashion, with Mantles and Vails foulding about, and flying aloft, according to the pleasure of the Painter; I shall give examples of some.

The Graces described.

Humility is described by a Woman holding up her Hands together to her Breast, having a grave and modest Countenance, eyes half shut, in a loose Garment slit up the Thighs, Naked Breast, Arms and Legs; having her foot upon a Sword and Shield, with other Worldly Vanities at her feet.

Penitence, a Woman in a vile, ragged and base attire,

attire, wringing her hands, weeping, deploring and bemoaning her Condition.

Chastity, by a Woman between two Men enticing her two Impurity; but more properly this Grace is described by the Story of *Susanna* and the two Elders, which when they could not allure to Unchastity, accused her for the same. Or else by chaste *Lucretia*, who stabbed her self with a Dagger, rather than to live infamous, being robbed of her Chastity by *Tarquine*.

Liberality, emblemed by a Woman with a Purse in one hand; and the other hand stretched out with another Purse, giving it to a poor Body, shewing thereby that to give all is Profuseness and Prodigallity; but so to give, as not to be a receiver ones self.

Love, as a Passion of the Mind I have described it before; but as a Vertue, it is by one very well Emblemed by a Woman with Wings flying upwards to Heaven, but she is Chained by the Leg to the Globe of the Earth; shewing that the Heart and Affections were on high though the Body was confined to the Earth.

Innocency, is described by a Woman all in white, or two Naked Children playing with a Lamb or Doves.

Religion, is drawn all in white, with a Silver Vail, a Censer or Dish for Sacrifice in one hand, and a Book in the other, to shew that we must not use any other Offerings than what is prescribed; she usually hath a Stork by her side.

Piety, is drawn like a Lady kneeling before an Altar with a flame upon it, holding up her hands; or she is depicted holding in her right hand a Sword stretched over an Altar, at her left side a Stork or an Elephant.

Truth, is represented by a Woman with the Sun on her right hand, and a Ballance in the other, or a Touch-stone, signifying that Verity is not ashamed of the Light, nor afraid to come to the touch.

Equity, or **Equality,** is Emblemed by a Lady lighting of two Torches in a Fire at one time.

Vertue is Drawn like a Pilgrim Woman, grave and austere, sitting on a four square stone, melancholy, and leaning her head on her hand upon her Knee.

Industry or **Diligence,** is depicted in a plain Dress or Garb with a Hat on, and a Sickle in one hand and a Rake in the other.

Opportunity, is drawn in loose Robes with a Bushy Forehead and Bald behind, and hath Wings to shew that let her slip, she soon flies away.

Labour, is depicted by a Man working at a Smiths Anvile, with a Forge by him and several sorts of working Instruments at his feet or set about him.

Watchfulness, is depicted with a Lamp in one hand, and a Bell in the other; or by a Man in compleat Armour standing on his Guard, with a Sword in one hand, and a Shield with a Cross on it in the other.

Patience, is drawn in a Praying posture, or sitting on the ground with her hands together, looking up towards Heaven; it is best set forth by the Troubles of *Job*.

Peace, is painted in the shape of a young Woman, holding between her Arms the Infant *Pluto*, the God of Riches, and Ruler of this lower Region: Or after others, a Lady holding a Rod downwards over a hideous Serpent of sundry colours, and with her other hand covering her Face with a Vail, as loth to behold Strife and War. In the Medals of *Trajan* it is set forth by a Lady, in her right hand an Olive Branch, and in her left a *Cornucopia*. In the Medals of *Titus*, Peace is emblemed by a Lady having in one hand an Olive Branch, the other leading a Lamb and Wolf coupled together by the Necks in one Yoke. Peace is also drawn like a Woman richly deckt, sitting or standing with an Olive Branch in one hand, and a Scepter, and Braceletts and Jewels in the other, Robes white, Mantle carnation, Fringed gold, Vail white, Buskins green.

Concord or **Unanimity,** is a Lady sitting in a sky coloured Robe, and a yellow Mantle with a Chaplet of blue Lillies, with a Palm in her hand: or sitting with a Charger in one hand for Sacrifice, and a *Cornucopia* in the left: or a fair Virgin, holding in one hand a Pomegranate, and in the other a Mirtle Branch.

The Palm, Olive and Mirtle, are ever Emblems of Concord, Peace, and Agreement.

Mercy is depicted in shape of a Lady sitting on a Lion, holding in one hand a Spear and the other an Arrow. In the Medals of *Vitellius* she sits with a sprig of Bays in her hand, and a Staff lying by her.

Works of Mercy described.

Giving Bread to the Hungry, by one giving a Loaf to a poor Creature. **Alms.**

Giving Drink to the Dry and Thirsty, by one giving Drink out of a Bottle or Jugg to a poor Naked person, who holds a Dish to receive it.

Cloathing the Naked, by a Woman putting a Shirt or Coat on a Naked Child; or one giving a Garment to a poor and half naked person. **Tender hearted.**

Visiting the Prisoner, by giving of a Fellow in the Stocks, Money; or a Man lying in Chains at the feet of one that stretcheth out his hand to relieve and help him; the taking off of the Prisoners Bonds. **Love.**

Entertaining Strangers, Hospitality, shewed by the bringing in of a Palmer or Pilgrim into the house, or emblemed by washing of the feet of another person.

Burying the Dead, which is the last Office, and is set forth by two Men laying of a dead Corps in the Grave.

The description of Vices and Wickednesses.

Envy, is Emblemed by an Old Man or Woman with a Mans heart in their hand, putting it to their Teeth as if they would eat it; at whose feet is a snarling Cur Dog, or *Medusa's* snaky head.

Wrath, is set forth by a Man drawing his Sword, and a Bear robbed of her Whelps, and Armies Fighting.

Sloth,

Sloth, by a Man lapped in his Cloak, and an Ass lying under his Burthen.

Gluttony and **Drunkenness**, by a Fat Man, a Bottle by his side, a Cup in his hand, and a Swine at his feet, or by a Man Vomiting, and a Swine eating it up.

Avarice or **Covetousness**, is a Man with Bags and Chests of Money; and a Wolf with his foot on a Lamb and a Goose by the Neck in his mouth.

Lust, by a Man looking at a Picture of a Naked Woman, and an He-Goat standing by him.

Pride, Emblemed by a Man or Woman in rich Attire, and by a Peacock in his Pride, having his tail lifted up.

Atheism, by a Man void of fear, running into all manner of Wickedness, because he thinks there is neither God nor Devil; and may well be depicted, a Man with an open Breast treading upon the mouth of Hell, as if he feared it not, and spitting against Heaven, as in defiance of the Almighty.

Disobedience or **Rebellion**, is set forth by *Pharaoh* drowning in the Red Sea. And *Absaloms* hanging by his Hair in a Tree, his Mule running from under him.

Idolatry, by any manner of person doing reverence to any Image, as the *Israelites* worshipping the Golden Calf.

Blasphemy or **Swearing**, by a Man foaming out of his mouth Fire and Smoak, and Fiends and Devils in the same, with a Sword in one hand, and a Rope in the other, with Stocks, Gibbet and Shackles by him.

Murther, emblemed by *Joab* friendly embracing of *Amasa*, and running him into the Belly with his Sword. Or by one killing of another.

Adultery, **Whoredom** or **Fornication** represented by *Zimri* the *Israelite*, and *Cozbi* the *Midianitish* Woman lying together in a Tent, whom *Phinehas* slew, by thrusting them both through with a Javelin.

Incest, by *Lots* being made drunk by his Daughters and lying with them.

Theft, or **Robbery**, by *Achans* hiding the *Babilonish* Robe, and Wedge of Gold in his Tent.

Forswearing, **Bearing False Witness**, or **Lying**, is Emblemed by a Woman shaddowing or hiding the Light of a Candle, and sitting in darkness, the Moon in the Sky clouded, signifying by extinguishing the Light (which is Truth) the Intention is by false words to deceive and pervert the right.

Sin, **Wickedness**, or **Iniquity**, is described by *Ovid* very well, by the Giants carrying and laying one Mountain upon another, to come to Heaven, and by their making War with the Gods.

Corruptions of the Flesh, or the deeds of the **Old Man**, is described by an old grave Man with a Bastinado in his hand, Fiends flying out of his mouth, and a Lustful Maid with Wings in his Breast.

Worldly Vanities, represented by a Woman in a Harlots Habit, offering to all Crowns, Sceptres, Treasures, nay all that the VVorld can or doth possess.

Temptation or **Sathan**, (the chief Captain of all this Hellish Train,) is drawn with a Dragons head and VVings, to the middle like a Man with slouch hanging Breasts, and the lower parts of a Goat, with a Serpentine tail, his right hand casting fiery Darts.

*

LIX. He beareth Argent, a **demy Sibylla Europea issuant** out of Base, a **Book** in the right hand open, and a **Branch of Laurell** in the left, a **Hat** on her head, the **Hair pendant**, all proper. These Sybils were VVomen Prophetesses which in several parts of the VVorld did foretell the coming of Christ into the VVorld; they are said to be Ten in number, who gave forth 600 Oracles, diverse of which Verses are rehearsed by *Lactantius Firmianus*, without making any particular mention who they are to be specially referred unto; notwithstanding it seems they are reputed to proceed from *Sibylla Samberta*, who wrote 24 Books in Verse, of the Coming, Miracles, and Life of Christ; whereunto the saying of all the other Sibylls are conformable.

Sibylla Persica, called **Samberta**, which among other Prophesies said, *That the Womb of a Virgin shall be the Salvation of the Gentiles.*

Sibylla Lybica, or **Sybil of Lybia**, one of her Prophesies were, *That the day shall come, that Men shall see the King of all Living Things.*

Sibylla Delphica or **Sybil of Delphos**, called **Themis**, she Prophesied, *That a Prophet should be Born of a Virgin.*

Sibylla Erythrea, born at *Babylon*; who especially Prophesied a great part of Christian Religion in certain Verses recited by *Eusebius*; the first Letter of every of which Verses being put together, makes these words, *Jesus Christ, Son of God, Saviour.* These Verses are Translated into *Latine* by St. *Augustine in libro Civitatis Dei lib.* 18. *cap.* 25. where they may be read at large.

Sibylla Samia, or **Sibyll of Samos**, which said in the Isle of *Samos* where she was Born, *That he who was Rich should be Born of a Poor Virgin; that the Creatures of the Earth should Adore and Praise him for ever.*

Sibylla Hellepontica, or **Hellespontiaca**, she was born at *Marmise* in the Territory of *Troy*, who said, *That a Woman should descend of the Jews, called* Mary, *and of her shall be Born the Son of God, and that his Kingdom shall remain for ever.*

Sibylla Tyburtina, or **Phrygiaca**; or the **Sibyl of Phrygia**, she Prophesied in the Town of *Ancire*; one of her sayings was, *That the Highest should come from Heaven, and confirm the Council in Heaven, and a Virgin shall be shewed in the Vallies of the Desarts.*

Sibylla Albunea, sirnamed **Tiburtina**, because she was born at *Tybur*, 15 Miles from *Rome*; she said, *That the Invisible Word shall be Born of a Virgin; he shall*

shall Converse among Sinners, and shall of them be despised.

Sibylla Cumea so called, she was born at *Campania* in *Italy*, who Prophesied, *That God should be Born of a Virgin, and converse among Sinners.*

Sibylla Cumana, so named from the place where she Prophesied, *That Christ Jesus should come from Heaven, and Live and Reign here on Earth in Poverty.*

LX. He beareth Or, a **Pauper** or **Poor Woman** in **Beggars Weeds,** with her **Staff** in the left hand all proper. This is born by the name of *Pauper.*

And here I shall conclude this Chapter with the Exhortation of *Solomon,* (*Prov.* 28. 27. and 19. 17.) to them that are Rich in the World, That when they see the like Objects to this set before their Eyes, that they turn not their Pity away, but give to them that need, and help them in distress, the Fatherless and Widdows, for *he that giveth to the Poor lendeth to the Lord, and layeth up for himself a Treasure in Heaven, neither shall he lack;* but the Churle, the Miser, and Hard hearted, that turns away his Eyes, shall have many Curses, Curses upon Curses shall be his portion; and to adde to their Calamities, *When they shall cry themselves, the Lord will stop his Ear against them, and mock when their Destruction cometh, for the Mercyless shall find no Mercy,* James 2. 13. *Therefore*

Remember the Poor,
Shut not thy Door.
In Almes be free,
Gods Pity 's on Thee.

TO

TO
EDWARD WILLIAMS of *Mullionidd*,
IN THE
County of *CAERNARVON*, Esquire.

SIR,

YOur Worth in Promoting of so Laborious a Design like the Filings and Fragments of Gold ought not to be lost, but most Thankfully to be Owned, and Highly Esteemed, with Pity that the World is not Stored with many such Genius Persons, for the further Promoting of so General a Good, which will keep Your Name in Memory when time shall Cease with You, which is the Endeavour of

Your Oblidged Servant and Indebted Friend,

Randle Holme.

CHAP. V.

HAving now Finished the two former Chapters which concern Temporal and Ecclesiastical promotions of Men, both for Church and State. I shall next proceed to give you some examples of Countrey fashions of both Men and Women, not of the Gallantry of those Countreys I shall treat upon (for that were endless as it is boundless, never continuing with such in one stay) but of the commonalty of such places, which are the only preservators both of the ancient Habits, and Languages, thereunto belonging.

Now these kind of Persons, I shall give a brief description of them, and their manner of Live, and such as I have found, either in whole, or in part, born in Coats of Arms, I shall unfold them to the Reader.

I. He beareth Argent, a **Green-lander** with a **Dart** in his right hand, with the **Head erected** (or upwards) proper. The **Greenlands** and **Freezlands** are cold Countreys lying in the North *Fridged Zone*, which makes the People there to be clad all in Furrs from Head to Foot. So this may be termed either a **Greenlander**, or a **Frizlander**, or a **Norwegian**.

These People professed the same Paganism that was in the other parts of the World, and is yet followed by them: for their Religion is **Idolatry**, their Knowledge **Magick**, and their Actions **Barbarous**. The chief Gods they Worship are the **Sun**, **Moon**, **Starrs**, **Elements**, **Rivers**, **Fountains**, and **Trees**.

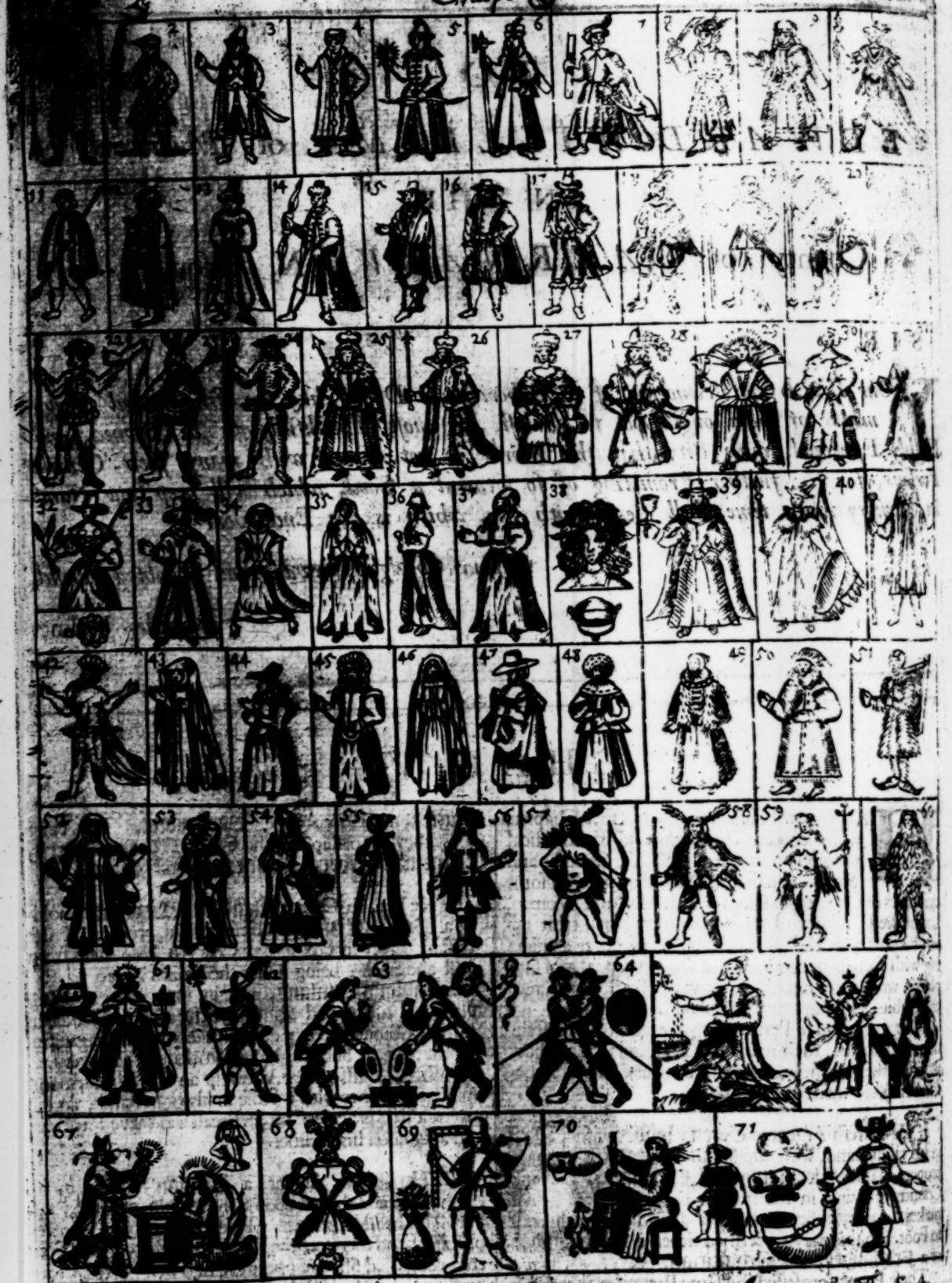
II. He beareth Or, an **Islander**, or **Laplander** holding a **Bow unstrung** in his right hand, proper. These are said to go in Fox furred Coats to keep them from Frost and Snow; being under the Frozen *Zone*.

In **Lapland**, **Finland**, and in some parts of **Norway**, **Lituania** and **Samagotia** with those Neighbouring Countreys, they do to this day profess Paganism, Worshiping the Sun and Moon, Stocks and Trees, *&c.*

In **Westphalia** they Worship an Idol in Armour, holding a Banner with a Rose in his right hand; and in his left a pair of Scales: on his Breast was carved a Bear, and a Lion on his Helmet.

III. He beareth Argent, a **Russian** holding up his right hand, and the left upon the **Handle of his Fauchion** by his side, proper. This is also a cold Countrey of *Russia*, and therefore the People to preserve them from cold congealed Showres, keep them to well Furred Coats, and use Stoves and hot Drinks, with good Fires. Their under Garment is Breeches, and a Coat to the middle of the Leg, gird about their middle, over which they wear

ano-



P: M: Edward Williams de Mullaniell in Com: Caernar: Armiger: F. Sculp

another Coat or Gown well Furred or Lined for the season of their Countrey.

The **Russians, Bussians, Aonia, Lituania, Samagotia** and the **Pomeranians, Danes,** and **Swedes**: are all Neighbouring Countreys, and Worship the same Gods or Images that the **Saxons** or ancient **Gauls** and **Germans** did. They used to kill nine Males of each kind of Creatures, to pacifie their Gods with the Blood thereof, then to hang up their Bodies in the Grove next to their Temple, called **Upsola.**

IV. He beareth Gules, a **Muscovian,** or a **Muscovian Man habited in his Countrey Attire** or **Habit,** proper: holding up his right hand, and the left on his side. This place lyeth under the temperate *Zoan*, yet in the Winter it is much colder then *England*, though it lies under the same degrees of Latitude: so that they wear commonly Furr'd Caps, and long Coats to their Feet, with another Furr'd Coat above that, yet not so long, buttoned or tied down before.

The ancient *Muscovites* adored an Idol called **Perun,** in the shape of a Man, holding a burning stone in one hand resembling Thunder: a Fire of Oaken Wood was continually mantained burning to the Honor of this Idol; and was death for the Priests if they suffered this Fire to go out.

In the Countreys about *Muscovia*, they Worshiped an Idol called **Zalota Baba,** the Golden Hag. It is a stature like an old Woman holding an Infant in her Bosom, and near to her stands another Infant; to this Idol they offer their richest Sable skins, and Sacrifice Staggs flesh: with the Blood whereof they annoint her Face, Eyes, and other parts: the Beasts entrails are devoured raw by the Priests.

V. He beareth Argent, a **Tartarian,** or a **Tartary Man** cloathed in his own **Countrey Habit,** holding a **Battle head, set with sharp picks** in his right hand, and a **Bow unstrung** Fesswise in his left, all proper. The **Tartars** wear two long Coats down to their Feet, the uppermost open all before, being buttoned or tied to the wast, and then girded about the middle: they live under the *Fridgid Zone*, and therefore lap themselves warm in good Furrs, and Furr Caps.

Some write that the **Tartars** generally are homely in Habit, & made of the courseſt stuff, & reacheth no lower then the Knees: and if they go to the charge of Furrs, contrary to the custom of other People, they wear the hairy sides outwards, and the skin next their own Bodies, only to shew the richness of their Apparel.

The Women suitable to the Men, scorning or wanting Ordaments to set them out: or when they do, they seldom go beyond Copper, Feathers, or such precious Gewgaws.

This is one of the greatest Counteys in the World, being as *Geographers* Writs 5400 miles from East to West, and 3600 from North to South: by which account it lieth from the beginning of the sixt clime where the longest day in Summer is 15 hours, till they cease measuring by climats; the longest day in the Northern parts thereof being full six Months; and in the Winter half of the Year, the night as long.

In Matters of Religion it is hard to say whether they be *Pagans*, or *Mahometans*: some parts being wholly one, and some other; and some mixt of both: and yet these have not so prevailed as to extinguish Christianity; having many Churches amongst them, being converted by St. *Andrew*, and St. *Philip*, two of the Apostles.

But the old Religion of the **Tartars, Scythians, Carthaians, Asiaticans, Zagathaians,** with the rest of the Provinces in *Tartary* generally Worshiped the **Sun, Moon, Stars, Fire, Earth** and **Water**; to whom they offer the first Fruits of their Meat and Drink before they Eat and Drink themselves: they set their Idols at their Tent Doors to preserve their Cattle and Milk. They believe there is a God that made all things, but Pray not to him, nor Worship him: but in Praying to their Silky or Felt Idols (for of such materials they make them) they lift up their Hands and smite their Teeth three times. They use to feed the Ghosts, or Spirits with Mares milk cast into the Air or poured on the Grounds: they have their Religious Votaries and Monasteries, amongst which there is an Order called **Sensein,** which Eat nothing but Bran steeped in hot Water. Their Priests on high Trees Preach to them, and after Sermon besprinkles the Auditors with Blood, Milk, Earth and Cow dung mixed together, and no less strang it is that they do not bury their dead, but hang them on Trees.

The Language is *Tartarian*, but intermixt with much of the *Arabick* and *Turkish* Tongues, and in Writing they use the *Caldean* and *Arabian* Characters.

The Inhabitants of **Nova Zembla,** are those which lie in the North parts of the World near the Pole; formerly known by no another name then *Terra Incognita*, because it extended Northwards to the *Scythick* or *Frozen Ocean*. The Men there are black haired, naturally beardless, and not to be discerned from Women, but that Women wear a long lock down to their Ears; clad from head to foot in Deer skins or Seal skins, with the hairy side out. These kind of People range about from place to place without any propriety of House or dwelling; the Leader of each company being their Priest whom they call **Popa.** They Worship the **Sun** as long as he is with them, and in his absence the **Moon** and **North Star,** to these they offer Yearly Sacrifices of Deer, which they burn all but the Head and Feet: they Sacrifice also for their Dead. And are all or most of their Priest given to Witchcraft, by whose Jugling delusions the People are much deceived.

The **Scythians** now a part, or Provincial People of *Tartaria*, are affirmed by most Writers to be the first Plantation of People which was made after the Flood; before the rest of the World was Peopled by the confusion of Languages. Their Countrey is that which is now known by the name of *Zagathai*: the Northern Limit being termed *Scythia intra Montem Imaum*, which extended to the *Frozen Zone*: the other part lying by the Borders of *Persia*, being under the Temperate Climate.

They had neither Images, Alters, nor Temples for any of their Gods except *Mars*, instead of whose Image they set up an old **Iron Sword,** to which they offer Yearly Sacrifice of Cattle and Horses, of Men every Hundred Captive, with whose Blood they sprinkled *Mars* his

Sword. They use no Vows, nor any other Ceremonies.

The **Cathaians**, another sort of People in *Tartaria*, whose Countrey called *Cathay*, is bounded on the East with *China*, on the West with the Mountain *Imaus*, on the North with *Altay*, and on the South with *India extra Gangem*: being 1500 miles long, and 960 broad. They of old Worshiped the Sun, Moon, Stars, Fire, Earth and Water: but in these Days they have the *Mahometan* Religion countenanced amongst them; but so that they retain *Moses* Law, observing many things therein commanded.

The several Terms used by the Heathen Gentiles *in their Religion.*

Heathenism, are such as Worship Animals for their Gods, as Dogs, Cats, or the first Creature that they saw in the Morning: or inanimate Creatures, as Sun, Moon, Stars, Trees and Stones.

Gentilism, the same.

Gods and **Demy Gods**, or **Canonized Saints**; are such as after their Deaths, their Names and Memories were highly Worshiped and Adored: whom the Gentiles held as Gods.

Idolatry, is Image Worshiping, or the adoring of any Creature above the Creator.

Archflamens, Chief Priests; such as our Archbishops.

Flamens, the inferior sort of Priests.

Groves, or High places; places where they Worshiped the Hoast of Heaven, as Sun, Moon and Stars.

Temples, the places of their Prayers and Worship which were general very Large, Rich, and Sumtuous.

Oracles, answers given by the Gods, but were meer illusions of the Devil, who gave answers in Idols, to questions demanded of them. There were two principal places of Oracles, the one at *Ammon* in *Libia* from *Jupiters* Image: the other at *Delphi* in *Bœotia* from *Appollo's* Image, which were said to give Doubtful and Ambiguous Answers: these Oracles ceased at the coming of our Saviour.

Sacrifices, the offering and burning of several sorts of Beasts upon Alters to Idols, and unknown Gods.

VI. He beareth Vert, a **Hungarian, or a Man of Hungary** in his proper **Countrey habit**: or else if you will make a further description of him, say a **Hungarian** in his long Coat down to his Feet, gird about the middle, over which they wear another short Coat lined with Furr, having hanging Sleeves: on his head a round Cap turned up with the like Furr, & a sprig Feather in the Front holding an **Halbert** or **Pole-Axe** in his right hand, and his left by his Girdle, all proper.

This Countrey was of old termed **Pannonia**, the higher and the lower till by the Conquest of the *Huns* and *Avares*, a mixt People of the *Scythian* Nation, from whom it was called *Hungaria*: it lieth in the Northren *Temperate Zone*, between the middle Parallels of the 7 and 9 Climates, the longest day being about 16 hours long, the People are strong, so that the Brand of a coward cannot be wiped off without the Death of an Adversary, after which they are privileged to wear a Feather, and by the number of their Feathers to shew how many Enemies they have slain in Battle.

The Language generally here spoken, is a kind of *Slavonian*, suffering only in Dialect from the *Poles*, and the parts adjoyning to *Germany*, the *Dutch* is spoken.

The **Goths**, were a People dwelling on the North part of the River *Ister* in *Hungary*, and were in the time of the Emperor *Valens*, forced to fly over the River, and supplicat for new Habitations in a part of *Germany*, *Anno* 373, and in *Spain* where they were scarce warm in their new Estate, but they were sent by *Zeno* the Emperor into *Italy* against *Odoacer*, where they finally settled, after which we hear no more of the *Goths* in *Pannonia*.

The **Huns**, are a People of *Asia* in the *Fen* Countrey of *Palus Mæotis* a poor and miserable People, till God thought fit to make use of them as a scourge to chastise the Christians of the West, then grown Luxurious by too much felicity: these People by following an Heart or Stag which they had in Chase, did shew them a safe passage into *Europe* through the *Fens* which they thought to be unpassable, fell suddenly on the *Goths* forced them away; and so possessed the *both Pannonians* by the slaughter of the *Romans* and *Pannonians* in two several Battles: till at length they were defeated by the *Spanish Goths*, after which we hear nothing of the *Huns* any where at all.

The **Longobards** a People Originally of *Scandia*, and so called from their **Long Bards**, the next invaded *Hungary* and a part of *Germany*, because of the scarcity of Victuals, and want of Habitations; first seized the Island *Rugia*, and the ajacent Countreys, then a part of *Germany*, then fell on a part of *Poland*, then on this of *Hungary*, where after 42 Years, went into *Italy*, and after the end of 206 Years they and their King were totally overthrown by *Charles* the Great the most Mighty Monarch of the *West*.

VII. He beareth Or, a **Polander**, or a **Polonian** in his **Countrey habit** holding of a **Baston** or **Bastinado** with his right Hand, and his left on his side, all proper. The Men of *Poland*, I mean of the commonalty, do wear **Shooes, Stokins, Breeches**, over which is a long Coat extending to the middle of the Leg, open down before, turned down at the Neck, like a square band; buttoned on the Breast, and gird about the middle with a Shash, or Towel, Fringed at the ends: the said Coat is shorter before then behind, and hath hanging Sleeves behind: on their Heads they wear Caps which are turned up, on which the greater sort place Jewels, and Feathers, they generally cut the hair of their Heads all off, or very short; but have Basket hilt beards and long Whiskers, or Murchadoes. The better sort of them as said before, have an over Coat, which hath half Sleeves reaching to the Elbow, and hanging Sleeves behind, which with the Coat fall as low as the Feet; this is worn loose, not gird, though it be adorned all to the bottom, and sides with buttoms and loopes. The Nobility have the upper Coat like a Robe, with a side Cape or turning down to the middle of the Back, and two long Sleeves hanging from under it.

The

Their Women are said to be **Proud** in their Garb, **Costly** in their Apparel, **Impatient** in their Humors, and **Delicate** in their Diet. Their Countrey is situate under the 8 and 12 Climates, so that they are in the like temperature to us in *England*.

In old time they Worshipped the Sun as their chief God, also the Fire, which they continually maintained by Priests set apart for that purpose: they also adored the Planets, and every thing they first met with in the Morning; observing the same Heathenish customs in their Marriages, and Burial, to other Idolatrous Nations: for burned the Bodies of their chief Friends with their Horse furniture and best Cloaths, and withal set down Victuals by their Graves, believing that the departed Souls in the Night time did Eeat and Drink there. They held that Marriage was not rightly Consecrated, except it were by striking of Fire with a Flint.

But when Christianity was planted therein, then their Groves were cut down, and at this time most of the Provinces were Governed by Archbishops and Bishops according to the Church of *Rome*, though over spread with new Sects, as *Lutherans*, *Calvinists*, *Sonnians*, and *Anabaptists*, *&c.* Yet amongst all these different Churches and forms of Government, yet there is this Conformity, that when soever the Gospel is read openly in the Congregation, the Nobility and Gentry use to draw their Swords (according to an ancient custome which they had amongst them) signifying their readiness to defend it against all opposers; which reason doubtless gave beginning to the standing up at the Creed and Gospel in the Primative times, retained still in the Protestant Churches: though some of late hold it for a relict of Popery, and therefore with greater Nicety then Wisdom, refuse to do it.

They speak generally the the **Sclavonian** Language, *Livonia* or *Leifland* being by them Conqered, and so generall took their Tougue.

VIII. He beareth Argent, a **Turk** or **Turky-Man** in his **Countrey Weed**, advancing a **Fauchion** above his Head, proper. The usual Habit of the *Turks*, is upon the Head to have a Turbut, or Cloath rowled round: a short Coat to the Knees, over which is worn a long Coat to the Heels, with short or half Sleeves, and gird about the middle with a Towel, or a Scarf Fringed at the ends: but the Nobler sort have their said Coat Laced, or Richly Imbrauthered, with their Simmiters or Fauchions hung by their sides.

Turks and Sarazens have their greatest part of the Empire lying under the Tropick Line of *Cancer*, and therefore in the *Torrid Zone*.

Their Religion is **Mahometism**, and the Book called the **Alcoran** is divided into 124 Chapters: their Law is composed in eight Commandments. The first, is to acknowledge only one God and one Prophet to wit *Mahomet*. The second, is concerning the Duty of Children to Parents. The third, is of Love of Neighbours to each other. The fourth, is for the time of Prayer in their Temples. The fifth, is of their Yearly fast of *Lent*, which is carefully to be kept for a Month of thirty Days. The sixth, is of their Charity, and Alms Deeds to the Poor and Indigent. The seventh, is of their Matrimony which every Man is bound to embrace at five and twenty years of age. The eighth, is against Murther.

To the observers of these commands is promised Paradize, in which is Golden Carpets, pleasant Rivers, fruitful Trees, beautiful Women, Musick, good Chear, and choice Wives, store of Gold and Silver Plate, with Precious Stones, and such like conceipts. But to such as shall not obey this Law, Hell is prepared with seven Gates, in which they shall Eat and Drink Fire, shall be bound in Chains, and Tormented with Scalding Waters.

The **Alcoran** prescribs diverse other Moral and Judicial preceps, as obstinence from Swines Flesh, Blood, and such as die alone: also from Adultery, false Witness, and to avoid Covetousness, Usury, Oppression, Lying, casual Murther, Disputing about the **Alcoran** or doubting thereof. Also of Prayer, Alms, Washing, Fasting, and Pilgrimage: he urgeth also Repentance, forbiddeth Swearing, will not have Men forced to Religion: yet no Mercy or Pardon to be shewed to Enemies. He urgeth Valour in Battle, promising rewards to the Couragious: and shewing that none can die till his time come, and then there is no avoiding thereof.

They hold it unlawful to Drink Wine, Play at Chess, Cards, Dice, Tables, or such like recreations: and that to have Images in Churches is Idolatry. They believe that all who die in their Warrs go immediatly to Paradize, which makes them Fight with such cheerfulness: they say that all who live good lives shall be saved, what Religion soever they Profess; therefore they affirm that *Moses*, *Christ*, and *Mahomet* shall in the resurrection appear with three Banners, to which all these three Professions shall make their repair. They say that the Angel *Israphil* shall in the last day sound his Trumpet, at which all living Creatures shall die, and the Earth shall fall into dust and sand: and that at his second sound all shall revive and rise again; then shall the Angel *Michael* weigh all Mens Souls in a pair of scales. They say that a Terrible Dragon is in the Mouth of Hell, and that there is an Iron Bridg over which the wicked are conveyed, some into everlasting Fire, some into the Fire of Purgatory.

They hold that the Sun at his rising, and the Moon at her first appearing should be reverenced: that it is unlawful to go into their Temples except they be washed from Head to Foot; and if after washing he piss, or go to stool, or break Wind upwards or downwards, he must wash again, or else he offends God. Such Honor they give to the **Alcoran** (which they in their Language call **Mulaph**) that none must touch it with bare Hands, but must wrap them in clean Linnen; when in their Temples it is publickly read, the Reader may not hold it lower then his girdle, and when he hath done he kisseth it, and layeth it to his Eyes.

Their Religious Orders.

The Order of the **Religious Brothers of Love**, called the **Imaller**; have for their Habit a long Coat of

of a Violet colour, without Seam, gird about with a Golden Girdle, at which hangs Silver Cimbals, which makes a jangling sound; they walk with a Book in their Hand containing Love Songs and Sonnets, for the Singing whereof they have Money given them; they are always bare Headed, wearing long Hair, Curled. These are wicked and irreligious, and worse then Beasts in their lusts, sparing neithe Women nor Boys.

The Order of **Calender**, they Profess perpetual Virginity, and have their own Temples and Chappels: they wear a short Coat made of Wool and Horse hair, without Sleeves, they cut their Hair short, and wear Felt-Hats, from which hangs tufts of Horse Hair about a hand breadth: they have Iron Rings in their Ears, about their Necks and Arms; they wear also in their Yard a Ring of Iron or Silver of three pound weight, whereby they are forced to live chastly: they go about reading certain Rimes and Ballads.

The Order of **Dervises**, these go about begging Alms in the name of *Haly*, Son in Law to their God *Mahomet*. They wear two Sheeps skins dried up in the Sun, the one they hang on their Back, the other on their Breast: the rest of the Body is naked, go bare headed, and burn their Temples with an hot Iron, in their Ears they wear Rings with precious stones. They Eat of a certain Herb called **Asserad** or **Hatslach**, which makes them mad, then they cut and slash their flesh: the madder they are the more they are Reverenced. They have a general meeting of this Order once a Year to the number of Eight or Ten Thousand, whose Superior called **Assambala** is President, after their Devotions are ended, they make themselves drunk with Asserad instead of Wine, then fall a dancing about a Fire singing Ballads, and cutting themselves: this Feast holds seven Days, which ended with Banners displaid, and Drums beating, they depart all to their several Covents, begging Alms all the way they March.

The Order of **Tozlachs**, are cloathed like the foresaid, but they wear also a Bears skin instead of a Cloak, go bare headed and shaven; they anoint their Heads with Oyl against cold, and burn their Temples against defluxions: they bear in their Hands a knotty Club, they are desperat Assassinates, will Rob, Steal and Murther, when they find occasion; for their Life is beastly and beggarly, living in ignorance and idleness; they are begging in every corner, they profess Palmestry like our wandring *Gipsies*. They carry about with them an old Man whom they Worship as a Prophet, and when they would get Money from any Rich Man, they repair to that House, and the old Man there Prophesieth sudden Destruction against that House, which to prevent the Master desireth the old Mans Prayers, and so dismisseth him to his Train with Money, which they spend wickedly.

There are many more Orders amongst them, but these are the most noted: for some Orders go naked except their Privities, seeming no ways moved with Summer heat or Winter cold, and can endure the cutting and slashing of their Flesh, to have their Patience the more admired: Some are admired for their obstinacie Eating and Drinking seldom: some Profess Poverty and will enjoy no Earthly thing: others again Profess perpetual Silence, and will not speak though urged with Injuries and Tortures: some avoid all Conversation with Men: others Brag of Revelations, Visions, Dreams, and other Enthusiasms: some wear Feathers on their Head to shew they are given to Contemplation: some have Rings in their Ears to note their Subjection and obedience in harkning to Spiritual Revelations: some bear Chains about their Necks and Arms to shew they are bound up from the World: with many such like Hypocritical Orders which they have amongst them, of whom you may read mor in *Ross his view of all Religions, page* 168. 169. &c.

Their Secular Priests.

In their **Priesthood**, they have Eight Orders or Degrees: the first is their **Mophti**, or their **Pope**, on whose judgment all depend, even the Great **Turk** himself, both in Spiritual and Secular Affairs.

The next is the **Caldelescher**, who under the **Mophti** is Judge of all causes, both in Civil and Ecclesiastical.

The **Cadi**, whose Office it is to teach the People.

The **Hoderis**, who have the charge of Hospitals.

The **Antiphi**, who publickly reads the Heads of the *Mahumetan* Superstions, holding a naked Sword in one Hand, and a Semiter in the other.

The **Imam**, who in their Temples have charge of their Ceremonies.

The **Meizin**, who on their Towers Sing, and call the People to Prayer.

The **Sophi**, who are the Singing Men in their Temples: the higher Orders are chosen by the *Grand Seignior*; the inferior by the People who have a small pension from the *Turk*, which being insufficient to mantain them, they are forced to Work, and use Trades. There is required no more Learning in them, but to read the **Alcoran** in *Arabian*: for they will not have it Translated. To strike any of these is the loss of a Hand in a Turk, but of Life in a Christian, in such esteem they have their Priests.

Their Devotion consists chiefly in their Multitudes of **Mosches**, or **Temples**; in their Hospitals both for Poor and Stangers; in their Monasteries and Schools: in their Washings, either all their Bodies, or their Private parts, or their Hands, Face, and Feet: in their Sacrifices, which is only to cut the Beast in pieces and give one part to the Priest, another part to the Poor, and a third part they take themselves: in the Adorning their Temples with multitude of Lamps burning with Oyl, and Writing on the Walls: in Praying five times a Day, and on *Friday* which is their Sabbath, because *Mahomets* Birth day; and in diverse ridiculous Ceremonies used by the Priests, as pulling of Shooes when they enter the Temple; in stretching out the Hands and closing them, in kissing the Ground, lifting up the Head, Praying towards the South, in observing a Lenten Fast, in Pilgrimage, and Circumcising of their Children, in Feasting at the Graves of the Dead, and in other vain Ceremonies.

Talismans and **Dervises**, are other inferior sorts of Priests among them.

B. a Demy Turk his Turbut wreathed O. and G. Vest of the third, turned up about his Neck of the second, his left Hand on his side, and in his right a Golden Branch. By the name of *Haydenbucher.*

Out of a Coronet between two Wings S. a Demy Turk to the Sinister, his right Hand on his side, and Brandishing his Simmiter aloft (or holding it over his Head) proper, Cloathed G. Born by the name of *Thumbirn.*

O. a Turk to the Sinister, the left Hand held up, and the right on his side G. By the name of *Westermaire.*

IX. He beareth Argent, a **Jew**, or an **Hebrew Man** in the Habit of his Countrey of *Juda* in the Land of *Israel*, proper. On their Heads they wear a **Cap** made of **Cloath**, with Ears hanging down to the Shoulders of the same: their **Top Vestments** was a loose **Coat** or **Gown**, with a **Cape** or with a side turning down about the Shoulders, and **hanging Sleeves** backwards: under which they had a **Coat** reaching sider down, even to the Feet; **Girded** about the middle with a **Sash** or **Towel.**

The Land of **Palestine**, the Countrey in which the *Jews* dwelt, so named from the **Philistins** a Potent Nation in those part, and so it is termed by the **Greeks** and **Romans.** But according to Scripture Phrase, it is called the Land **Canaan**, *Gen.* 12. 5. and *Zeph.* 2. 5. being first People by *Canaan* the Son of *Cham*: also the Land of **Promise**, because Promised to *Abraham* and his Seed, Gen. 17. 8. also the Land of **Israel** from the *Isralites* the Sons of *Jacob* whose Surname was *Israel*: Also it was stiled **Judea** and **Jewry**, from the *Jews* a People from the Tribe of *Judah.* And in the last place termed the **Holy Land**, because the Subject of a great part of Holy Writ, and that the Work of our Redemption was therein accomplished by our Lord and Saviour.

This Countrey is situate between the 3 and 4 Climats the longest Day not exceeding 14 hours and an half long: the Land 200 Miles long, and 80 broad.

For the Religion used amongst them, they were not known to have any settled Order and Government, more then **Moses Law** for Sacrifices, the Ark, and Tabernacle, with some other Divine, and Moral Precepts, till the time of *David* and *Solomon*: in whose time were chief and inferiour Priests, appointed for the Work and Service of the Tabernacle and the Temple; *Levites* ordered to bear the Ark, Singers and other Musitians, to Sing Praises to the God of Heaven, who Liveth for ever and ever.

The Religion of the *Jews* was made known unto them by God himself by delivering the Law by his own Mouth on Mount *Sinai*: sometimes he revealed things to them by Visions and Dreams; sometime by secret Inspiration; sometime by a Voice from Heaven; sometimes by Urim and Thummim, that is Light and Perfection, which proceeded from the Precious Stones on the Breast-Plate of the High Priest; but ordinarily he taught them by his Word, either Written by his Holy Pen-Men the Prophets: or unwritten, namely by Tradition; for God delivered his Will, and thus Instructed *Moses*, and he *Josuah*, who imparted it to the Elders and they to the Prophets, from the Prophets the great Synagogue received these Traditions, till at last they were committed to writing for the Benefit of the *Jews* in *Judea*; which they called the **Thalmud of Jerusalem**: but 500 Years after Christ, the *Jews* of *Babylon* made more exact Collection, and this they called the **Thalmud of Babylon**, which contains all their common and civil Laws, and is with them of no less authority then the Scripture. It is divided into six parts, 60 Books, and 532 Chapters.

Their Temples and Synagogues.

The outward Splendor of their Religion consisted in the Wealth and Magnificence of their Temple, which for the Beauty, Riches and Greatness thereof was one of the Wonders of the World; for besides the abundance of Iron Work, there was in it an incredible quantity of Brass, Silver and Gold Materials. *For the whole House was over laid with Gold, and the very Floore also: besides the Altar, the Table of Shew-Bread, the Candlesticks with the Flowers, Lamps and Tongs, with the Bowls, Snuffers, Basons, Spoons, Censers and Hinges, all of pure Gold.* 1. *Kin* 6. 20. *&c.* As for Silver *Josephus* tells us, *lib.* 8. *&* 9. that there was in the Temple Ten Thousand Candlesticks whereof most were of Silver, Wine Tankards Eighty Thousand, Silver Phials Ten Thousand, Ten Hundred Thousand Silver Trumpets, Forty Thousand Snuffers or Pot Hooks, besides an Incredible number of Silver Plates and Dishes, Silver Tables and Doors of Silver. And for Brass we find that these things were made of it, *viz.* the Great Alter, the Molten Sea or Caldron, the Basis, the Pillars before the Temple, the twelve Oxen, the ten Lavers, the Pots, the Shovels, the Basons, and other Utensils of the Temple: besides the Rich Woods, and Precious Stones therein, of which I need not to speak.

The Contriver of the Fabrick was God himself: the form was four square, the Courts before it were four, one for the Gentiles, in which our Saviour was conversant, It was called **Solomons Porch**, out of which he Whipped the Buyers and Sellers, accounting that a part of his Fathers House of Prayer.

The second was for the **Israelites**, into which the Gentiles might not enter, for that was counted a Prophanation of the Temple. The third was for **Women**: and the fourth Court was for the **Priests**, where stood the **Alter of Burnt** Offerings, and the Brazen Sea with several other Utensils for the uses of Sacrifices. And in the fourth place was the Sanctuary or Holy place which had no Windows, but therein burned Lights perpetually: behind which was the *Sanctum Sanctorum* the Oracle or most Holy place, because God from thence delivered his Oracles, it had no Light or Windows in it at all: into it the High Priest only had access, and that but once a Year, where he burnt Incense, so that he could neither see, nor be seen: in it stood the Ark, the Cherubims, the Censer; it was Death for any that entred there, even for the High Priest himself, if above once in a Year.

The

The **Temple** was to the *Jews* as their Chathedral or Metropolitan Church; their Synagogues did resemble our Parish Churches: in which the Scribes taught as the Priests in the Temple, and as there was an High Priest for the Temple, so there was a chief Ruler for the Synagogue. in them they had their distinct Courts, and an Ark for the Book of the Law and the same Holiness ascried to them: But yet they could Sacrifice now here, but in the Temple upon the Brazen Alter in the Priests Court.

The Orders, or Officers in their Religion.

The **Inferiour Offices** in their Church, were such as they sould yearly, or continued upon good behaviour which were these. The Office of looking to the Lamps and lighting of Candles; secondly, the office of furnishing the Consecrated Wine, which is spent in their Sabbaths, and other Festivals; thirdly, the Office of folding and unfolding the Book of the Law; fourthly, of lifting up, and carrying about the said Book, which if he did stumble that carried it, that was held very ominous; fiftly, of touching the Sacred Staves on which the Book or Parchment is rowled, young Men are greedy of this office, because they think the touching of these Staves will prolong their lives; sixthly, the office of Reading the Law, for when the **Praecentor** brings the Book out of the Ark into the Pulpit, then they sing these Words, *numb.* 10 35. *Let God arise, and let his Enemies be scatered*: and after some Anthems are sung, he who hath bought the office coms between the Chasan or chief Singer and him that bought the Office of carrying the Book, and kisseth the cloaths in which it is wrapt, then readeth a Chapter, and kisseth it again, with a Blessing of God for giving them the true Law. Then it is elevated on high, the whole Congregation shouting, this is the Law that *Moses* gave to *Israel*: so when the Book is wrapped up again both young and old kiss it, and while it is carried back to the Ark or Chest, they all Sing again, *numb.* 10. 36. *Return Lord to the many Thousands of Israel.*

Mr. *Goodwin* observeth that among the *Jews* Titles, the Word **Rabbi** sounded as Doctor, or Master; **Talmud** a Disciple, in respect he was Learning; and **Katan** a Junior in respect of Minority: and being admitted into Degrees by imposition of Hands, were made *Graduates*, *Priests*, *Levites*, and *Nethinims*: being parallel with *Ministers*, *Deacons*, and *Sub-Deacons*.

The **Levites Office**, was to help the Priests in their killing and ordering the Sacrifices: also to help them in gathering their Tythes, some did carry Water and Wood for the Service of the Tabernacle: to pitch and take it down while it was Moveable. But in *Davids* time some were Judges, some Treasurers, some Singers, and some Porters, 1. *Chro.* 23. 4, 5, 6. they were distinguished according to the three Sons of *Levi* viz. **Gershonites, Cohathites**, and **Merarites**: again, as **Singers** and **Porters**, they were divided into 24 Orders: under them were the **Gibeonites** and the **Nethinims**, whose Office was to draw Water, and hew Wood for the House of God.

The **Priests Office**, was to kill and slay the Sacrifice but of this I have spoken before *chap.* 4. *numb.* 9. to which I shall send you back, rather then make a double relation.

[ ]

The **Prophets** were not only such Men to whom God revealed his purposes in an extraordinary way: but were those also that expounded the Scripture; they were also called **Fathers, Doctors of the Laws, Rabbies** from their great Knowledge, **Disputers, Wise-Men**; their Schollars were called, **Children** and **Sons** of the **Prophets**.

The **Scribes** were Scriveners and publick Notaries: these were called **Scribes of the People**, *Mat.* 2. 4. some of which were Expounders of the Law, such a Scribe was *Esdras*, *Esdr.* 7. 6. they were also called **Doctors of the Law**.

The **Pharisees** or **Separatists**, so termed from their separating themselves from the rest of the People, to a strict kind of Life, and to the study of the Law, having no commerce with other People, nor communicating with them in Dyet, Apparel or Customs: they held a fatal necessity of Actions and things, and a Transanimation of Souls from one Body to another; they preferred Traditions before the written Words of the Law, and placed most of the their Holiness in washing; counting it a less Sin to commit Fornication, then to Eat with unwashed Hands. They were noted for holding it unlawful to eat with Sinners, *Mat.* 9. 11. for their Superstitious washing of Cups, Pots, Brazen Vessels and Tables, *Mar.* 7. 4. for Fasting twice in a Week, *Luke* 18. 12. and for their broad Phylacteries, *Mat.* 23. 5. which were Scrowls of Parchment wherein the Law was Written, which they wore on their Foreheads and left Arms, by which they kept the Law in their Memory: they were noted also for their large Borders and Fringes, *Mat* 23. 5. in which they used sharp Thorns, that by the pricking thereof they might be put in mind of the Commandments.

The **Nazarites** were Votaries, such as had vowed Temperance and Sobriety: for they seperated themselves from Wine and strong Drink, from coming near the Dead, and from the Razor. Some were *Nazarites* for their Lives, as *Sampson*, *John* Baptist, *&c.* others only for a time, *viz.* 30 Days as *Absalon* who cut his Hair the thirtieth day of his Vow, and such another was *Paul*, *Act.* 21. 24. they kept themselves Pure, Holy, and seperate from sinners. Those Hereticks were also called **Nazarites** who taught that the Law should be joyned to the Gospel.

The **Rachabites** so called from their Father *Rechab*, we read *Jere.* 35. 2, 3, 4. *&c.* These from a Commandment of their Father throughout their Generations neither Drink Wine, nor Sowed Seed, nor Built Houses, nor Planted Vineyards, but like Strangers lived all their days in Tents.

The **Essenes** or **Esseni**, so called from **Asa**, which signifieth to do: because they Laboured with their Hands, or else from **Asa**, to cure Diseases, being much given to the study of Physick: they ascribed all things to fate, and Sacrificed nothing but inanimal things, shunning Oaths, Pleasures, Wine and Marriage (though some did Marry for Procreation) their Apparel was mean, their Garments was white, and they had all things in common amongst them: they Worshipped towards the East, kept the Sabbath more strictly then others, and observed seven Pentecosts every Year, *viz.* every seven Weeks one; they were Silent at Meat: none were admitted into their Society without four Years approbation. It is thought *St. Paul* alludeth to their Tenets, when he adviseth *Timothy*

thy to make use of Wine, 1. *Tim.* 5. 23. and Glanceth upon those that Prohibit Marriage, 1. *Tim.* 4. 3. and condemned others in the use of Meat and Drink, *Col.* 2. 16.

The **Sadducees** were so called from *Isedeck* Justice, because they would be accounted the only Just Men in the World: or from *Sadock* the Author of this Sect. The occasion of this did arise from a mistake of *Antigonus* by his Scholar *Sadock*; who teaching that we ought not to serve God, as Servants for the hope of reward, but as Sons that love him, from whence they conceive that there was no reward for a godly Life; these were in a short time grown to that height that they denied all Traditions and Scriptures, except the five Books of *Moses*, denied the Resurrection, pains, or rewards after this Life, Angels or Spirits; also Fate and Destiny, ascribing all to Mans free will: and that the Soul died and perished with the Body. These were the most Capital of their Errours as appeareth, *Act.* 23. 6. *Mat.* 22. 3. *Luk.* 20. 20. 27. *&c.*

The **Samaritans** were a sort of People that lived in *Samaria*, which were neither Jews nor Gentiles in Religion, but had a mixture of both, for they entertained the five Books of *Moses*, by whom they came to know the God of the Land: yet they did not so embrace him, but they retained and adhered to the Gods of the Nations where before they dwelt, as *Nergal*, *Asbivah*, *Nibhan*, *Tartak*, and the rest of that rabble mentioned in the 2. *Kin.* 17. 24. 25. *&c.* for it is testified of them that they feared the Lord, because of the Lions which slew them, but served their Gods after the manner of the Nations. Beside the wicked policy of *Jeroboam* the Son of *Nebat* was so natural to them, that they would not suffer their People to go up to *Jerusalem* to Worship, but set up the Golden Calves, and ordained Priests amongst themselves thereby to divert the People from the Temple of God. They were so conceited on their own perfection, that they thought themselves defiled if in any company, but their own Sect: on the other side they so abhorred the Jews, and the Jews them, that they would not Eat and Drink together, nor have any commerce or dealing as appears, *Joh.* 4. 9. They held that there was no Scripture, but the Pentateuch or five Books of *Moses*, admit of no Traditions: they deny a Resurrection and Life Eternal, acknowledge Angels and Spirits, they Worship only on Mount *Garizim* in the Temple there.

The **Dositheans** so called from *Dositheus* or *Dosthai* supposed to be the first Priest sent to *Samaria* by the King of *Assyria*, 2. *Kin.* 17. 27. these agree with the Jews in Circumcision and the Sabbath and the Doctrine of the Resurrection; but they reject the Writings of all the Prophets as not inspired by the Holy Ghost: they Eat of nothing that had Life, abstain from Marriage, and in point of Sabbath keeping, outwent the Pharises: It being resolved among them that in what posture soever a Man was found on the Sabbath day Morning, in the same he was to continue without alteration the whole day after.

The **Sebvians**, so called from one of the Company of *Dosthai* named *Sebviah*: this Sect kept all the publick Feasts as the *Jews* and *Samaritans*, but not at the same time: for they transferred the Passover to *August*, the Pentecost to *Autum*, and the Feast of Tabernacles to the time of the Passover: not suffering for that cause to Worship in the Temple of *Garizim*.

The **Herodians** held that *Herod* was Christ, whose birth day was carefully observed by them of the *Herodian* Sect. It cannot properly be termed a Sect in Religion, but an opposite faction in the Civil State: being such as sollicited the paying of Tribute to *Herod*, thereby endeavouring his greatness, then the prosperity and liberty of their Native Countrey.

The **Gaulonites** were opposite to the *Herodians*, *Act.* 5. 37. for one *Judas* a *Gaulonite* or *Galilean* with other Jews of his confedricy denied all Tribute, telling the People it was a token of servitude, and that they ought to know no Lord, but the Lord of Heaven; drawing them on this ground to an open War, in which he and his adherents perished, and were brought to nothing. These *Galileans* were those poor Men, whose Blood *Pilat* is said to have mingled with their Sacrifices, *Luk.* 13. 1.

The Maintenance of the Priests, *and* Levites.

Besides certain Cities and shares in their Sacrifices and Oblations, they allowed them the first Fruits and Tithes: the first Fruit of the threshing Floor comprehending the first Fruit in the Sheaf in the Passover, and the first Fruit of Loaves at Pentecost, beside the first of the Dough, as *Numb.* 15 20. *Nehe.* 10. 37. *Rom.* 11. 10 when they brought their first Fruit up to *Jerusalem* they had a Pipe playing before them, and a Bull with gilded Horns, and a Garland of Olive branches on his Head. As for their Tithes the Husbandman as some have reckoned, that out of 6000 Bushels in one Year paid for his first and second Tyth and first Fruits 1121 Bushels, which is above a sixth part of the whole, besides the Tithe of their Cattle, and Fruit of their Trees: also the firstlings of Man, and Beast that were unclean which were redeemed with Money, *viz.* five Shekls of the Sanctuary: and the firstlings of clean Beasts were Sacrificed, the fat whereof was burnt, but the flesh was given to the Priests. And so strict were the Pharisees in payment of these Tithes, that they Tithed Mint, Annise, and Cumin, *Mat.* 23. 23.

From these Tithes paid to the Levites, was paid a Tithe out of them to the Priests. In the Year of Tithes which was every third Year, the Husbandman spent the second Tithe at home upon the Poor, and not sent to *Jerusalem* to the *Levites*, *Deut.* 26. 12. and though at this day the *Jews* have no Lands, yet they pay carefully the tenth of their increase.

Of their Sabbath and other Festivals.

Every **Seventh Day** as a day of rest from all their Labours they kept Holy to the Lord; theirs being the day before the Christians, and answers to our Saturday the day before was the preparation of the Sabbath which begun about the sixth hour, that is our twelfeth at noon: that day they might not travel about twelve miles least by coming home too late they might want time of prepa-

ration which began at six in the Evening, and for its Excellency was called the **Queen of Feasts**, on which day they must not travel about 2000 paces or cubits, for so far was the distance of the Ark from the Camp.

They were so Superstitious in the keeping of their Sabbath, that they would not fight that day, and so suffered *Jerusalem* to be taken twice: and to shew their Zeal for that day, they would keep some more hours then were enjoyned, which addition they called **Sabbathulum.** They proclaimed the preparation of the Sabbath by sound of Trumpet: at which time they would dress no Meat, but what was prepared before that they would Eat.

Beside the seventh day which was the Sabbath or rest for Men and Beasts; they had every **seventh Year a Sabath**, wherein the Ground rested from Tillage, so that all Vinyards, Orchards and what came out of the ground it self without Husbandry was all given to the Poor of the People, *Levi.* 25. 3, 4, 5. *&c.*

The **Jubile** or great Sabbath, they kept in the end of seven times seven Sabbaths, which was every fifty Year. In which Debters, Prisoners, bound Servants, and Morgagers of Lands were made free, and every Man returned unto his Possessions. This was proclaimed by sound of Trumpet throughout the Land, it was an hallowed Year, and kept Holy by them, for in it they did neither Sow, nor Reap that which grew of it self, neither gather the Grapes that were left unlaboured, *Levi.* 25. 9, 10. 11. *&c.*

The **Passover** was a Feast kept in Memory of the *Israelites* freedom from *Ægypts* bondage, they Eat the first Passover standing with their Loyns girt, Shooes on their Feet, and Staves in their Hands, to shew they were in hast to be gone; but in afterrimes when they were secured and out of danger, they did eat sitting or leaning after the *Roman* manner; which posture our Saviour observed when he Eat it, *Mat.* 26. 20. When the Passover fell upon a Sabbath (for it was ever Celebrated on the fourteenth of the Month *Nisan*, or first Month at Evening: which answereth to our part of March and part of April, *Exod.* 12. 2, 3. *&c.*) then it was called the **Great Sabbath**, and then there was a preparation for the Passover. *Joh.* 19. 14. otherwise there was none due to it but in respect of the Sabbath. The Beast to be eaten was a Lamb or Kid of an year old, and without blemish it must be Roasted whole, a bone of it was not to be broken, and to be eaten in the Evening with sower Herbs, and unleavened Bread. The Blood of the Lamb was sprinkled on the Door posts and the Thresholds thereof, and what remained of the Lamb was burnt next Morning. This was also called the **Feast of unleavened Bread**, and continued for seven days, albeit the Passover was only the first day on which they held an Holy Assembly, and the last day: all the others they did no Work or Servile Labour, save about that which every Man must Eat, *Exod.* 12. 16.

The **Feast of Pentecost**, was kept in memory of the Law given 50 days after the Passeover; the first Sabbath after the second day of the Passeover, is called the second first Sabbath, as *Luke* 16. 1. and because their Harvest begun at *Easter*, and ended at *Pentecost*, they were commanded to celebrate a Feast, *Levit.* 23. 10. by offering a Sheaf of the first Fruits of their Harvest upon the morrow or second day of their great Feast; and on Pentecost to offer two wave Loaves, in token of Thankfulness; in the old Law it was called the Feast of Harvest, and the Feast of First Fruits, *Exod.* 23. 16.

The **Feast of Tabernacles** was kept in memory of the *Israelites* abode in the Wilderness 40 years in Tents; it is also called the **Feast of Booths**, because seven days they celebrated the same living in Booths, and in the open Air, except in time of Rain; it was kept the fifteenth day of *Tisri*, or the seventh month, which answers to part of *September* and *October*: The first and last days were the chief days, especially the last, called therefore the great day of the Feast, *John* 7. 37. and in these long Feasts, the first and the last are called Sabbaths; in this Feast their Custom was to hold in their Hands Branches of Trees which they called *Hosanna*; during the Feast many Bullocks were offered: On the last day they read the last Section of the Law and begun the first; the next day after they compassed the Alter seven times with Palms in their hands, in memory of encompassing *Jericho*. This Feast was kept as a Thanksgiving to God for their Vintage.

The **Feast of New Moon**; that is, every New Moon was a Festival among the Jews, in which as on the Sabbath, the people repair to the Prophets for Instruction, 2 *Kings* 4. 13. on which day it was not lawful to Buy or Sell, *Amos* 8. 4. 5.

The **Feast of Trumpets**, was a Feast Celebrated in the first New Moon in the Month *Tisri*, or seventh month according to the Ecclesiastical account, but the first Month in their civil Computation. Now though other Feasts had the sound of Trumpets, yet at this there was more, *viz.* all the day, and was for the solemnity of the New year, from whence they reckoned their Sabbathical years and Jubilees, and dated all their Deeds and Bargains. As this Feast was a solemn Promulgation of the New Year, so it was a preparation for three ensuing Feasts in that Month. Of the Sacrifices to be Offered in the New Moons, read *Numb.* 28. 11. as for those words of *David*, *Blow the Trumpet in the New Moon*, *Psal.* 81. 3. they are most likely to be meant of the first New Moon or Feast of Trumpets.

The **Feast of Expiation**, it was kept the tenth day of the foresaid Month; and was so called because the High Priest then entred into the Oracle or Holy of Holies, to expiate his own and his Peoples Sins; for himself he took a young Bullock and a Ram; for the People a Ram for a Burnt Offering, and two He-Goats for a Sin Offering; the two Goats were presented at the Door of the Tabernacle, from whence one was sent into the Wilderness (which was called the Scape-Goat) upon whose Head the Priest laid all the Sins and Evils of the People, to be carried away by the Goat into the Wilderness, *viz.* the Land of Oblivion, the other Goat was Sacrificed. On this day was their great Feast, *Ait* 8. 9. wherein they abstained from all kind of work or delights, so that they might not kindle a Fire, or dress Meat.

The **Feast of Reconciliation**, is performed ten days, in which they Fast and Pray; on the Ninth, every Man young and old takes a Cock, and Women kind a Hen, and after some impertinent Sentences out of Scripture, each one whirles the Cock about the Priests head, saying, *This Cock shall die for me, his Throat is cut,*

*

cut, and roasted, and the Guts are cast upon the top of the House, that the Ravens may carry them away, and their Sins together. After this they go to Church and Confess their Sins, and give to the Poor the price of their Cocks, because of old they used to give the Cocks to the Poor: In the Evening they meet and reconcile themselves where any Offence hath been: If the party wronged be dead, he that did the wrong goeth to his Grave, and before 10 Witnesses confesseth his fault; and according to his demerit, while he is Confessing and beating his Breast, he receiveth by his fellow 39 Stripes on his Back, or less (never more) with a Leather Thong; having done, they return home and make merry with their roasted Cocks and Hens. Over their Cloaths they put on a white Shirt or Surplice, to shew they now are white and pure from Sin.

But that which seems most ridiculous is, that on the 9th. day the Men in the Synagogues, and the Women at home, about Evening, Light Wax Candles, over which they Pray, stretching out their Hands towards the Lights, which if they Burn clear, they take it for a good sign that their Sins are pardoned, and that they shall be happy; but if the Lights be dim, or the Wax melt, it is ominous; then they fast, go bare-footed, abstain from Oyl, Bathing, and Carnal Copulation, spending most of the Night in Singing and Prayer: When the Priest extendeth his Hands to Bless them, they all lay their Hands on their Faces, as not daring to look on those sanctified Hands of the Priest.

The **Feast of Dedication**, it was kept eight days together, in memory of the Consecration of the Temple by *Judas Macchabeus*, after it had been polluted by the *Grecians*, 1 *Mac.* 4. 36. 56. at that first Dedication was found a small Vessel of Consecrated Oyl, which of it self could not hold out above one Night, but by Miracle it maintained the Lights the whole eight days; it was yearly kept on the 25 of *November*. Christ honoured this Feast with his presence, *John* 10. 22. not to countenance the abuses thereof, but the Institution it self; for all places set apart for the Service of God, ought to be Consecrated and Dedicated to him by Prayer and decent Ceremonies. and so we read *Moses* Dedicated the Tabernacle and the Altar, *Numb.* 7. 84. and *Solomon* the Temple and Altar with great Solemnity and Prayer, 2 *Chron.* 5. 7, 8, 9. when the Temple was rebuilt after the Captivity of *Babylon*, it was Dedicated again, *Ezra* 6. 16. 17.

The **Feast of Purim**, or of **Lots**. This Feast was kept the 30 day of the 12 Month, which is *Adar* or *February*; it was in memory of the great deliverance the Jews had from the Treacherous Conspiracy of wicked *Haman*, for he had appointed the Jews to be Massacred all in one day through the *Persian* Kingdom, but the Plotters were slain themselves by the Jews, as may be read at large in the Book of *Esther*, 9. 1. 2. *&c.* therefore they kept this Feast two days, in Singing, Playing, Eating and Drinking, in which the Men wear Womens Apparel, and the Women Mens. In their Synagogues they set up Lights in the Night time, and the whole Book of *Esther* is read, and as often as they hear the name of *Haman*, they make a cruel noise and stamping with their feet; and that the Poor also may be merry, the Richer sort furnish them with Meat and Drink; and so with this riotous *Bacchanal* Feast, they conclude their Anniversary Feasts, for this is the last in the year.

Of the Jews Fasts.

They keep the **four Fasts** mentioned by *Zachary*, *chap.* 8. 19. to wit that on the tenth Month, on the tenth of *December*, in memory of **Jerusalems Besieging** that day by *Nebuchadnezzar*.

Secondly, They Fast the seventeenth day of the fourth Month, or *June*, in memory of the **Two Tables of the Law broken**, for the loss of their daily Sacrifice, for the Burning of their Law, for setting up of Idolatry in their Temple, for the Besieging of *Jerusalem* the second time, and for the breaking down the Walls thereof. They account the days from this, till the ninth of the next unlucky, so that they avoid all great Businesses; and School-Masters all that time will not beat their Scholars.

Thirdly, they Fast the ninth day of the fifth Month, or *July*, because the **Temple was Burnt**; therefore they go Bare foot, sit on the ground, read *Jeremiahs Lamentation*, in the Church-Yard amongst the dead they bewail the loss of *Jerusalem*; from the first to the tenth of this Month, they abstain from Flesh, Wine, Shaving, Bathing, Marrying, and Pleading, and from all manner of Delights.

Fourthly, they Fast the third day of *September*, because **Gadaliah**, Governour of those Jews that were not carried away into Captivity, was Treacherously Murthered, as we read *Jer. chap.* 40. and 41.

Besides these Fasts, they have others, but not so generally observed; for some of their preciser sort Fast every **Monday** and **Thursday**: some Fast 10 *March*, because *Miriam* died that day, and the People wanted Water in the Desert. Some Fast the 10 *April*, for the death of *Eli* and his two Sons, and the loss of the Ark. Some Fast the 18 of this Month for the Death of *Samuel*.

At *Jerusalem* the Jews used yearly to Fast in remembrance of the **Translation of the Bible** out of *Hebrew* into *Greek* by the Seventy Interpreters; and was observed the 8 day of *Tebbeth* or *December*, and was a day of much heavinesse to them; and certainly this must proceed from their Pride or Envy, or too much Superstition, disdaining that their Law should be imparted to the Gentiles, and that this Translation was a Prophanation thereof: In this Fast they read no passages in the Bible but such as are sad and sorrowful; as the destruction of *Jerusalem*, *Jeremiahs Lamentations*, *&c.* And their Fast is from all Meat and Drink till the Stars appear.

The only Fast that God commanded was that upon the day of **Expiation**, other Fasts were enjoyned by the Prince upon emergent occasions; as that commanded by *Jehosaphat*, 2 *Chron.* 20. 3. by *Joachim Jer.* 36. 9. by *Ezra*, *chap.* 8. 21. and other Princes.

Of their Circumcision.

In preparation to the Childs **Circumcision**, which was precisely to be performe l the eighth day, upon the penalty of being cut off from the people, *Gen.* 17. 14. which was Excommunication, or bodily Death of the Parents: There was the Child to be washed, twelve **Wax** Candles brought in, to represent the 12 Tribes; two Cups filled with Red Wine, the *Mohel* or Circumciser seated in his Chair, and the God father seated by him; the Circumcising Knife ready, with two Dishes, the one of Oyl, the other of Sand.

When the Child is brought to the Door by the Women, the Congregation riseth up, the God-Father takes the Child and sits down in his seat, giveth him his Name, which is usually after some of his Ancestors, *Luke* 1. 61. then being stript naked the *Mohel* first rubs the Præpucium or Foreskin, that it may be the less sensible, then Blesseth God for the Covenant of Circumcision; he cuts off the fore part of the Skin, and flings it into the Sand, in memory of the Promise *Gen.* 32. 12. *I will make thee as the Sand of the Sea*; then he spits red Wine on the Wound and washeth it, and some also on the Childs Face if he faint, then takes the Bleeding Member into his mouth and sucks the Blood from it, which he spits into the other Cup of Wine, then tares off the remaining skin with his sharp pointed Nails, and layeth the Clouts dipt in Oyl on the Wound and bindeth it up; then Blesseth God again, and the other Cup of Wine the God-Father drinks, Praying for the Child.

If the Child be sick or weak on the eight day, his Circumcision is deferred till he recover: If he die before the eight day he is circumcised at the Grave, but without Prayers.

Of their Reading and Praying.

They divide the **Pentateuch** into 52 **Sections**, according to the 52 Sabbaths of the year; the last Lesson which falls out on that day, that immediatly follows the Feast of Tabernacles (about 23 of *Septem.*) is accompanied with Singing, and the Priests Dancing: all the Books at this day are brought out of the Ark, with Dancing about it; and while they are out of the Ark, a Candle burns within it, to shew that the Law is a Light; being brought to the Reading Place, the carrier Kisseth it, and so leaves it, the chief Singer with much great Awe, Reverence and Devotion, unwraps it from its covering of Linnen, whose outside is with Silk, Velvet, or Tissue, then with a loud Voice he Blesseth God who gave them that Law, and so proceeds to the reading of a Portion of it, *Act.* 13. 27. and 15. 21. then is it kissed and wrapped up again within all its coverings, after young and old Kiss it (not the Parchment, for that is too great Presumption) touching it only with their two Fingers, returning it to the Ark with Singing.

Now in their Praying, the **Circumstances** and **Ceremonies** which they use are generally these: They Pray being girt, **standing upright**, with their **Faces towards Jerusalem**, laying their hand on their heart, and bowing their head; they must not touch their naked skin; they hold that sneezing in Prayer is a good Sign; but to Belch, Yawn, Spit, or break Wind is Ominous, because of the Angels that are there present; and they Believe that whosoever saith Heartily *Amen* to their Prayers, hasteneth their Redemption.

The time of their **Evening Sacrifice** or **Prayer** is about five in the Afternoon, where being met in the Synagogue, they sit down and begin their Service with these words, *Blessed are they that dwell in thy House*, Psal. 84. 4. then the Præcentor saith or Sings some Psalms, and the whole Synagogue saith 18 Prayers; after which the Præcentor Ascends the Pulpit, and falls on his Knees before the Ark, after the example of *Joshua*, *Josh.* 7. 6. and layeth his left hand over his face, which the people do likewise, and with their Faces covered and towards the ground, they say the sixth Psalm, so all is done: But if any have a Quarrel with his Neighbour, he takes the Liturgy Book and shuts it, clapping his hand upon it; intimating thereby that he would Pray no more till his Neighbour were reconciled to him.

Before their **Morning Prayer**, these Superstitious Ceremonies are observed by them; that they ought to rise from the 15 of June till Pentecost before day, because the Nights are long; and from Pentecost to the 15 of June, they may rise after day: If they Weep in the Night and let it fall down their Cheeks (they say) God is ready with his Bottle to receive them: They hold the Morning the best time to go into the House of God, because *David* saith, *Thou wilt hear my Voice betimes in the morning*, *Psal.* 5. 3. but no Man must offer to say his Prayers till first he hath eased himself at the Stool, and washed his hands, because upon them evil Spirits sit in the Night time, and the Face also, because made after the Image of God; that their right hand by which they touch the Law, and write the Name of God, be no way defiled.

Excommunication.

It was of **three sorts** among the Jews, the first was to **exclude Delinquents** out of their **Synagogue**, *Joh.* 9. 22. but not out of the Temple, for they might come to the Gate in time of Divine Service; this Censure lasted 30 days or more till the Party Repented; if he died without Repentance, he wanted the Ceremonies of common Burial.

The second was higher, which St. *Paul* calls (**a giving over to Satan**, 1 *Cor.* 5. 5.) such were not permitted to come near the Temple; but Curses were denounced against them, as 1 *Tim.* 1. 20.

Their highest degree was **Maran-atha** and **Anathemata**, that is, had in Execration, yea Excommunicated to Death, 1 *Cor.* 16. 22. the words signifie the Lord was coming with Vengeance against such; these were totally secluded from the people of God, which is called a cutting off from the people, and a Blotting or razing of their Names out of the Book of Life.

But they had a more particular way in the Excommunication

munication of the Samaritans, to wit by sound of Trumpet, and Singing of the Levites, who first by word of Mouth pronounced a Curse against them, and those that Eat or conversed with them; shewing that they shall never be Proselytes in *Israel*, or have any part in the Resurrection of the Just; then they wrote this Curse, and caused it to be read and pronounced in all parts of *Israel*.

How the Jews *Marry.*

Their Custome is before **Marriage** to be contracted and after some space to be Married, which contract was confirmed either by Writing, or by a piece of Money, or by Copulation: but this last was punishable.

They are Married in the open Aire, either in the Streets or Gardens, by their Rabbies: the Bridegroom wear about his Neck a hair cloath, the end of which the *Rabbi* puts on the Brides head, after the example of *Ruth* who desired to be covered with the skirt of *Boaz* his Garment, *Ruth* 3. 9. then the *Rabbi* takes in his Hand a Glass full of Wine, over which he pronounceth a Blessing, and Praiseth God for the Conjunction, then gives it to the Bridegroom and his Spouse to Drink.

Then he takes from the **Bridegroom** his Gold Ring, and asks of the standers by if it be good and worth the Money given for it, then puts it on the Brides Fingers: then are the Marriage Writtings openly read; then the *Rabbi* takes another Glass of Wine over which he Prayeth, and presents it to the Married couple to taste; but the Bridegroom takes the Glass and dasheth it against the Wall, in Memory of *Jerusalems* Destruction: so the Ceremony is ended.

But beside the **Principal Wife** they had others, which were **Subordinate,** which we may call **Concubines,** who have not the command of the Family, nor have Gift or Presents from their Husbands, nor Matrimonial Writing as the chief Wife hath, nor may their Children inherit, but receive gifts only: and so *Abraham* dealt with the Sons of his Concubines, *Gen.* 25. 6.

Of their Divorce.

When any Man was weary of his Wife, he Writs a **Bill of Twelve Lines only,** neither more nor less, who subscribes and seals the same, and gives it to his Wife before three Witnesses, thereby he gives her Power to go whether she will, and to dispose of her self as she pleaseth: but she must not Marry again till after 90 days, that it may be known whether she be with Child or not. The Woman may also give a **Bill of Divorce** to her Husband, of which our Saviour speaketh, *Mar.* 10. 12. and withal sheweth that such Bills of Divorce were not commanded, but tollerated by *Moses* for the hardness of their Hearts: and tells them plainly that whosoever puts away his Wife, except for Adultery, and Marrieth another, commits Adultery, *Mat.* 5. 32.

[ ]

Of their Sacrifices.

Sacrifices, Oblations, and **Free will Offerings** were such as these.

A **Meat Offering,** was a free Will offering, which was put up with Praises and Thanksgivings.

A **Peace Offering,** had Beasts slain and burnt on the Alter.

A **Sin Offering,** or an **Expiation,** or an **Attonement for Sin;** is a Burnt Offering.

A **Sin Offering,** is an Offering for the Sin of Ignorance.

A **Trespass Offering,** is an Offering for a Sin knowingly acted and done.

X. He beareth Argent, an **Ancient Roman Captain** in his **Roman Habiliments** or **Habit,** with his **Mantle** behind him; **Supporting of a Spear** with right Hand, and extending his left to the sinister side, all proper. The *Romans* were anciently depicted with their **Arms naked** above the Elbows, and their **Thighs** below the Knees: with a **Robe** on their Bodies, with **Coydy Robes,** or **Labells** hanging from the Shoulder Wings, and **Skirts** of the Waste and **Startops** from the top of the Feet to the middle of the Legg, turned down into Fouldings, Crispes, or Wreaths: the principal of them having **Mantles** hanging on their Shoulders, or carelessly cast about them.

The *Romans* were so named from *Rome* the chief City of *Italy*, which Countrey is a Peninsula joyned to the main contenent of *Europe*, being about a Thousand miles long, and in some parts 400. some 126. and other 25 miles broad; the whole Countrey lieth under the 5 and 6 Climats of the Northren Temperate *Zone*.

Italy is best divided into the Kingdoms of *Naples*, *Sicily*, and *Sardinia*. The Land and Patrimony of the Church: the Great Dukedoms of *Urbin*, and *Tuscany*. The common Wealths of *Venice*, *Genoa*, and *Luca*. The Estates of *Lumbardie*, which are the Dukedoms of *Millain*, *Mantua*, *Modena* and *Parma*, and the Principality of *Piemout*.

They were all a **Heathenish People** of old, Worshipping Stocks and Stones, the work of Mens Hands: with the Sun, Moon and Stars, the ancient Heroes, &c. till the Christian Faith was Preached there by St. *Peter*, and St. *Paul*, or the one of them with the Disciples.

The Religion professed by the ancient *Romans* and *Greeks* was in a manner the same, but under different Names: *Numa* taught the *Romans* to Worship their **Gods** by offering Corn to them, and to erect **Temples** to them. But *Tarquinius Priscus* many Years after according to the *Grecian* manner, taught them to set up **Images** to their God: Now their Religion I shall in brief set down to you under these Heads. 1. Their **Gods** and **Goddesses.** 2. Their **Festivals.** 3. Their **Sacrifices.** 4. Their **Priests.** 5. Their **Marriages.** 6. Their **Funeral Ceremonies.**

Roman

Roman Gods and Goddesses

Their chief Deities were 20 in Number, under which Names they did generally Worship the Sun, because of his diverse effects and operation: besides they Worship Forreign Gods which they borrowed of other Nations. Their Names as they are ranked up to my Hand are as followeth.

Dij Majores, the **Great Gods** or Principal Dieties, are

Jupiter or *Jove*, the God of Thunder.
Juno, Goddess of Riches.
Venus, Goddess of Beauty.
Minerva, Goddess of Wisdom.
Vesta, Goddess of the Earth.
Ceres, Goddess of Corn.
Diana, Goddess of Hunting.
Mars, God of Warrs.
Mercury, God of Eloquence.
Vulcan, God of Fire.
Apollo, God of Physick.
Neptune, God of the Sea.
Janus, God of Husbandry.
Saturn, God of Nativities.
Orcus, God of Hell.
Bacchus, God of Wine.
Tellus, God of Seeds.
Sol, the Sun, God of Light.
Luna the Moon, Goddess of the Night.

Dij Minores, **Lesser Gods**, or Deities of Lesser Note, are these.

Bellona, Goddess of War.
Nemesis, Goddess of revenge.
Gratia, Goddess of Thanks.
Penates, Mans Titular Gods.
Parcæ, Goddess of Destiny.
Fortuna, Goddess of Providence.
Victoria, Goddess of Victory
Cupido, God of Love.
Charites, Goddess of Gratuities.
Lares, Houshold Gods.
Furiæ and *Eumenides*, Goddesses of Punishment.

Indigites, these were Men who for their Merit were **Canonized** and made **Heathen Gods**, such were these following Hero's.

Hercules.
Faunis, God of Poets.
Evander.
Carmenta an *Arcadian* Goddess.
Quirinus.
Castor and *Pollux*, Gods of the Sea.
Æsculapius, a God of Riches.
Acca.
Laurentia.

Vertutes, **Vertues** of the Mind were also **Deified**, which had also their Temples, Sacrifices and Festivals Dedicated to them: as,

Anima, the Mind or Soul.
Virtus, Virtue or Grace.
Honor, Honor or Worship.
Pietas, Piety or Godliness.
Libertas, Liberty or Freedom.
Felicitas, Felicity or Happiness.
Spes, Hope or Trust.
Charitas, Charity or Love.
Chastitas, Chastity.
Pax, Peace or Quietness.
Concordia, Concord or Agreement.

Semones or *Semi-Homines*, **Half Men** or **Inferiour Gods**, whose Merits deserved not Heaven, nor scarce Veneration: such also were these Petty Gods which waited upon every servile Office, and Action: as,

Vertumnus, a God of Buying and Selling.
Nascio, Goddess of Birth.
Cunina, Goddess of the Cradle.
Rumina, Goddess of Sucking.
Vacana, Goddess of the after Labour.
Potina, Goddess of Drinking.
Educa or *Edusa*, Goddess of Eating.
Carnea. Goddess of Flesh.
Pisca, Goddess of Fish.
Juventus, God of Youth.
Voluptia, Goddess of pleasure.
Juzatinus, God of Joyning.
Domiducus, God of Bridgrooms.
Lubentia, Goddess of Lust or Desire.
Partunda, Goddess of Child Birth.
Egeria, Goddess of Bringing forth.

Dij Rusticij, **Rustick Gods**, or Gods of Countrey Creatures: as,

Robigus, the God of Smut.
Bubona, of Oxen.
Hippona, of Horses.
Mellona, of Honey,
Terminus, God of Bounds.
Pan, of Shephards.
Cloacina, of Sinks & Privies.
Sterculius, God of Dung.
Pomona, Goddess of Fruit.
Pales, of Fodder.
Flora, of Flowers.
Silvanus, of Woods and Fields.
Priapus, God of Seeds and Gardens.

Dij Activi, **Active Gods**, or Gods that governed Mens Lives, Actions or Passions: as,

Horta, Goddess of Exhortation.
Volumna, Goddess of Will.
Lavrna, of Stealing.
Pallor, God of Paleness.
Nænia, Goddess of Funerals.
Libitina, of Graves and Coffins.
Febris, of Feavers.
Pavor, God of Fear.

Forreign Gods they also Worship, which they borrowed of those Nations the Conquered: thinking thereby in serving all Gods they might by chance light on the true God: as *Isis*, *Serapis*, *Osiris*, the Gods of *Ægypt*. *Sanctus*, *Dius*, *Fidius*, the Gods of *Sabins*. With Innumerable more, all which said Deities though under several names, yet thereby they ment but one and the same thing: for the **Sun** was the chief God Worshipped among the Gentiles, which was termed of them: *Sol*, *Phebus*, *Apollo*, *Æsculiapius*, *Jove*, *Jupiter*, *Mars*, *Hercules*, *Liber*, *Mercurius*, *Pan*, &c.

To signifie the **Moon**, they used these Names: *Luna*, *Hecata*, *Diana*, *Juno*, *Lucina*, *Venus*, *Ceres*, *Cynthia*, &c.

To signifie the **Earth** and the benefits they received from it, they gave it these denominations: *Vesta*, *Ops*, *Sybelle*, *Rhea*, *Ceres*, *Berecynthia*, *Tellus*, *Magna Mater*, *Pales*, *Flora*, *Fauna*, *Proserpina*, *Bona Dea*, &c.

To signifie the **Water**, they have these Names: *Neptune*, *Nereus*, *Glaucus*, *Proteus*, *Triton*, *Consus*, *Oceanus*, &c.

And to signifie the **Infernal Deity**, they use these different Names which is one, and the same thing: as *Pluto*, *Plutus*, *Proserpina*, *Charon*, *Cerberus*, &c. which were all Worshiped under different forms, as I have shewed before, *lib. 2. chap. 1. numb. 9.*

But we must observe that although the ignorant multitude among the Gentiles did observe and Worship many Gods: yet the Wiser sort acknowledge but one **True God**.

God. Thus *Mercurius Trismegistus* the ancient of the Philosophers confesseth there is but one **Unitie** the root of all things; one **Goodness** of infinite Power, the Author of Life and motion in the World: So *Pythagoras* who first assumed the name of a Philosopher, saith that **God is one**, and all in all, the light of all power the beginning of all things, the Torch of Heaven, the Father, Mind, Life, and motion of all Universe: all which was confessed by *Empedocles*, *Parmenides*, *Thales*, *Anaxagoras*, *Socrates*, *Plato*, *Jamblicus*, *Proclus*, *Porphyrie*, *Cicero*, *Aristotle*, &c. which all owned a first infinite, and eternal Mover: and not only them, but the Poets assented to this Doctrin also.

For *Orpheus* Sings thus, *there is none other but this Great King, who sits in the Heaven, is compassed with Clouds, who seeth all things, and is seen of none*: to the same purpose is *Phocyllides*, *Homer*, *Virgil*, *Ovid*, and others: But this is already performed by *Justin Martyr*, *Eusebius*, *Plessis* and others, who likewise have inserted many Verses out of the *Sibylls* to the same purpose. But by the light of Nature they could not find out how to adore this True God, but Sacrificed to him either under a Heathenish name, or without a name, as the *Athenians* did, *Act.* 17. 22. 23.

As they acknowledged a **Dietie**, so they confess the the **Souls Immortality**, and that after this Life it went either to a place of pleasure and delight, or to a place of punishment: all which they set forth by the *Elyzium* Fields, *Pluto's* infernal Pallace, the River of *Styx*, and the *Stygian* Lakes.

It is set down by the Poets, that the **Souls** of dead Bodies which lie unburied, do wander up and down a 100 Years without rest: neither were they admitted into the Gates of *Pluto*, nor were they received by *Charon* the Ferry-Man of *Styx* to pass to the *Elisian* Fields. This made the *Pagans* careful in burying their dead, they accounting it a Work of Humanity, Clemency, Mercy, Piety, Justice and Religion.

Roman Feastivals.

Saturnalia, was a Feast Celebrated to the Honor of *Saturn*, about the Suns going to *Capricorn*: at this time the Servants were better then their Masters: this Feast they had from the *Greeks*.

Feriae Latinae, a Feast dedicated to *Jupiter*, it was kept upon the hill *Albanus*, the mid-way between *Alba* and *Rome*, by the *Romans* and *Latins*.

Quinquatria, was a Feast of 5 Days to the Honor of *Minerva*, it was kept after the *Ides* of *March*: the first day was for Sacrifice, the other three for Sword players, and the last for Lustration, or going about and viewing of places.

Natalitia, to the *Genius*, a birth Feast, in which it was held abominable to shed the Blood of some Beasts, and ominous, seeing they were wholly dedicated to Mirth and Joy.

Vertumnalia, were Feasts to *Vertumnus* the God of Merchandizing: It was kept in the Month of *October*.

Supercalia, dedicated to *Pan Lycæus* the God of Shephards, who kept the Sheep from Wolves, it is kept in *February*, at which time the Hoast (that is two Goats) were slain, two Noble Mens Songs being present, whose Foreheads were blooded with the Knives that had slain the Goats, which dried off the Boys Laugh: that done they cut the skins into Thongs, which the Boyes take in their Hands and ran with them about the City stark naked (save a cloath before their Privities) and strick with them all they met with: young Ladies use purposely to offer their naked Hands to be struck by them, thinking thereby to become Fruitful.

Agonalia, were Feasts kept in *January*, either to the Honor *Janus* or *Agon*, the God of Actions and Enterprizes.

Carmentalia, a Feast in *January* also to the Honor of *Carmenta*, the Mother of *Evander* who was a Prophetess.

Feralia, so called a *Ferendis Epulis*, from carrying Meat to the Graves of their Friends; this Feast was kept in *February* to the *Manes* or *Infernal Ghosts*.

Terminalia in *February* also, and dedicated to *Terminus* the God of *Marches* and *Bounds*; this Feast was observed to keep amity between Neighbours, that they might not differ about the Bounds of their Lands.

Saliaria in *March* to the Honor of *Mars*, whose Priests called *Salij*, went about Dancing with the *Ancilia* or Targets in their Hands.

Liberalia, which the *Greeks* call *Dionysia*, were Feasts kept in *March*, to the Honor of *Bacchus* or *Liber*, whose Priests did that Day Sacrifice with ivy Garlands on their Heads.

These *Bacchals* or Feasts of *Bacchus*, were so full of Disorders, Riot, Immodesty and Madness, that the Senate ordered that it should not be used in *Rome* or *Italy*.

Cerealia in *April*, in memory of *Proserpina* found again by *Ceres*: the Ceremonies of this Day were performed by the *Roman* Matrons, but originally this was a *Greek* Feast.

Palilia a Feast in *April*, to *Pales* the Goddess of Shephards.

Veneralia or **Vinalia**, a Feast in *April* too: so called because kept to *Venus* in whose Temple much Wine was poured out, the Gardens Dedicated and Sacrifices offered to her.

Robigalia, to *Robigo* the God of Smut, this Feast was kept in *April*, that the Corn might not be Smutty.

Campitalia, Feasts kept in *Campitis* Streets, Lanes and High-ways, to the *Lares* and their Mother *Mania*: to whom Children were wont to be Sacrificed, till *Junius Brutus* instead of them commanded the Heads of Poppies and Onions to be offered.

Lemuria Feasts in *May*, so called from the *Lemures* or Night Ghosts, which they pacified with this Feast, in which they used to fling Beans, thinking thereby they drove those Ghosts away out of their Houses.

Matralia in *May*, were Feasts to *Matuta*, which the *Greeks* called *Luchothea*: no serving Maids were admitted into this Feast, except one, whom each Matron was to smite on the Cheek, because *Matuta* was jealous that her Husband loved her Maid better then her self; whereupon she grew mad and drowned her self, with her Son *Melicerte*, and so was made a Godcess: she was also called *Ino*.

Neptunalia

Neptunalia in *June*, were Feasts Celebrated to the Honor of *Neptune*.

Portumnalia to *Portumnus* the God of Harbours, in *August*: this Feast was kept in the Harbour of the River *Tibur*.

Consualia in *August*, to the Honor of *Consus* God of Council: in this Feast both Asses and Horses were Crowned and kept from Work.

Vulcanalia Feasts to *Vulcan*, in the same Month of *August*.

Meditrinalia in *October*, to the Honor of *Meditrina* the Goddess of Physick: for in this Month they used to tast of old and new Wine for a Medicine.

Augustalia, in the same Month in Memory of *Augustus* his return to *Rome* from his Victories and Conquests.

Fontinalie, Feasts in *October*, in which all Fountains and Well were Crowned with Garlands, and Dressed with Flowers.

Mercurialia to *Mercury* in *November*.

Bumalia the same Month to *Bromus* or *Bromus*, that is *Bacchus*.

Saturnalia, Feasts to *Saturn*, which were kept in *December*: and also **Opalia** to his Wife *Ops*.

Angeronalia, to *Angerona* the Goddess of Anguish and Grief: in the same Month of *December* was also the Feasts of **Lourentalia**, in Honor of *Acca Laurentia*.

Besides these and many more set Feasts, they had others called **Conceptivae**, **Imperativae**, and **Nundinae**; of which you may read more in *Alexandrus ab Alexandro*, *Plutarch*, *Ross his view of all Religions*: with several other Authors quoted by him.

The Old Romans *Priests.*

Salij or the Priests of *Mars*, at their first Institution, they were but 12. afterwards they were made 24. which were chosen out of the **Patricij**, and they were in *March* to Dance Solemnly with their Targets called **Ancilia**, one of which fell from Heaven: these Festival Dances were dedicated to *Mars*.

Luperci the Priests of *Pan Lycæus*.

Duumviri at the first being only increased to three, called **Triumviri**, then to ten, named **Decemviri**, at last to fifteen, called **Quindecemviri**: these were Priests that had the charge of the Sibylls Books.

Epulones or other **Triumveri**, these were Priests that had the charge of all their Holy Feasts: after called **Septemviri Epulonum**.

Arvales, had the charge of the Fields.

Fetiales, an Order of Priesthood that had the charge of War, and proclaimed Peace.

Flamines *quasi Filamines*, Priest so called because they went always covered with Threaden Caps or Hoods, whereof there were diverse sorts, according to the number of their greater Gods.

Augures, or Diviners by chirping of Birds.

Diales, were the Priests of *Jupiter*.

Martiales, the Priests of *Mars*.

Quirinales, the Priests of *Romulus*.

[ ]

Rex Sacrificulus or the King of Priests, was him that had the charge of the Priests of the Sacrifices, and of the Games and Festivals: he was so called because anciently Kings did Exercise the Priests office: he was after termed **Pontifex Maximus**, and **Papa**: the first from his care and charge of the Bridg called *Pons Sublicinus*: and the Later for his Gravity, for **Papa** signifies a Father: he had more Priviledges and Honors then the Kings themselves; for he might ascend the Capital in his Litter, which was not lawful for others, and whatsoever criminal fled to him, he was that day free from Punishment; neither was he bound to give an account of any thing he did.

But above them all was the **Pontifical College**, which at first consisted only of eight, but *Sylla* enlarged them to fifteen, these were to assist the chief Pontifie or Pope, in whom alone was the Supream Power of Religion, of Sacrifices, Holy Days, Priests, Vestals, Vows, Funerals, Idols, Oaths, Ceremonies, and what ever concerned Religion.

Galli were the Priests of *Sybele* Mother to the Gods, whose Chief or Archbishop was called **Archi-gallus**.

Besides these every **Idol** had his Priest, and these had their under Officers or Servants which were termed **Camilli**.

Flaminei, were Servants to the Flamine Priests.

Ædituí, were a kind of Church-wardens for the Priests.

Tubicines and **Tibicines**, were Trumpeters and Sacbutters.

Popae, were those that bound the Sacrifices.

Vicimarij, was them as killed the Sacrifices.

Praeciae, were their Cryers that went before the Priests to enjoyn the People to forbear working during the time of Sacrificing.

Praeficae, were the Women that were hired to sing the Praises of the Dead.

Vespilones, were the Grave diggers.

Of the Roman *Monasteries*, Fraternities, *and Nunneries.*

The **Arval Fraternity**, which they termed **Fratres Arvales**; was a kind of Colledge or company of *Roman* Priests, the number being 12. eleven natural Brothers at their first institution, Sons to *Acca Laurentia*, Foster-Mother to *Romulus*. This Order was erected in Honor of *Ceres* and *Bacchus*, to whom they offered Wine, and Corn, and certain Sacrifices, that they may obtain Plenty: their Sacerdotal Ornament was a Garland of Wheat, bound up with a white Ribbon. This Brotherhood were appointed Arbitrators or Jupges to decide Controversies concerning Land-marks and Bounds of Fields.

The **Colledge of Pontifices**, of which four were appointed by *Numa* to be chosen out of the *Patricij* or Chief Nobility; afterward four more was added out of the Commons, they were called **Pontifices Majores**, or Chief Pontifices, to distinguish them from seven other, which afterwards *Sylla* added and called them **Pontifices Minores**. These were Priviledged from all allegi-

ance,

ance, giving no account to the Senate or commonalty of their Actions: they were to determin all questions concerning Religion: did punish any inferior Priest, if he either added or detracted from these religious rites prescribed him, the head of his Colledge was called **Pontifex Maximus,** the Great or Chief Pontifie.

The **Titij,** was another sort of Religious Men, which lived in the Suburbs of the City of *Rome*, and practized soothsaying: they were so called from the name of the Bird which they observed in their Auguration.

The **Septemviri Epulonum,** were seven Men appointed by the Pontifices in old time to have the oversight of the Feasts made at Sacrifices, which were of Religious Orders: at first they were only three, termed **Trium-viri,** at length they were made five, called **Quinque-viri,** and then to seven, called as aforesaid **Septem-viri.**

The **Nunnery of Vestal Virgins,** was a Religious House dedicated to the Goddess *Vesta*: where at the first were 4. after 6. Virgins or Votaries elected, who were to continue so 30 Years: the first 10 they were Learners; the second 10 Years practitioners in their Office; and the last 10 Years teachers of the Novices: If they committed Whoredome they were Burned or Buried alive. Their Office was to keep the **Sacred Fire,** which if it went out through their neglect (which was held ominous) they were Scourged by the chief Pontifex: a second part of their office was to work a reconciliation between parties at varience: if they Marry after their 30 Years Virginity, they were to lay aside their Scepters, their Fillets and other their Sacerdotal Ornaments: for they never walked abroad but with an Iron Scepter in their Hands. The eldest was called **Maxima Vestalis Virgo,** the Lady Priores or Chief Governess.

Fauna or **Fatua,** had her peculiar Priestesses or Women Priests dedicated to her Honor.

The manner of the Roman *Sacrifices.*

Whatsoever was Burnt or offered up unto the Gods upon an Altar, it had the name of a **Sacrifice:** and so was termed by several denominations according to the manner or thing offered: sometime it was called

Victima, from the Beast being bound to the Altar, ready to be Sacrificed: derived from the Latin Particible *Victus*, bound.

Hostia, the Oblation or Sacrifice so called from the Verb *Hostio*, which is to strike: because certain under Officers called in Latin *Popæ* (standing by the Altars, all their upper parts naked, and a Laurel Garland on their heads) did *Hostiare Victiman*: that is strike down and kill the Sacrifice.

Hostia Precidanea, was a kind of preparative Sacrifice, which were Sacrifices of less value which they offered a day before the Solemn Oblations: which fore Sacrifices if by any token they found unlucky, then would they offer up a second Sacrifice, which was termed

Hostia Succidanea, was a Sacrifice which succeeded, when the former was not satisfactory or proved unlucky.

Ambigni, were such Sacrifices as had Rams or Weathers led to be Sacrificed, with a Lamb on each side of them.

Bidentes, were Sheep Sacrificed which had two horns, and two eminent teeth.

Ambervales, were Sacrifices carried in their Procession about the Fields.

Amburbales, were Sacrifices carried about the City.

Injuges, were Heifers Sacrificed which had never been tamed or put under the Yoke.

Now every particular God had his Sacrifice; white Beasts were Sacrificed to the Supernal Gods, black to the Infernal.

The **Bull** was the proper Sacrifice to *Jupiter*, *Neptune*, *Apollo*, *Mars*, *Luna*, and the *Heroes*.

The **Ramm** to *Mars* and the *Heroes*: **Wine** was offered to *Ceres* and *Liber*.

The **Goat** to *Æsculapius* and *Liber*: **Milk** and **Hony** to *Ceres*.

The **Horse** to *Sol* and *Mars*: a **Dove** to *Venus*.

The **Lamb** to *Juno* and *Faunus*: an **Hind** to *Diana*.

The **Doe** to *Pan* and *Minerva*: an **Hogg** to *Silvanus*: a **Cock** to the *Lares*.

The **Sow** to *Sybelle* and *Ceres*: an **Hen** to *Æsculapius*: and a **Child** to *Saturn*: but this Feast was abolished by the *Romans*.

Also to each God they assigned his **particular Bird,** as the **Eagle** to *Jupiter*: the **Cock** to the *Sun*: the **Mag-pye** to *Mars*: the **Raven** to *Apollo*.

They had also their peculiar **Trees,** as the **Oak** to *Jupiter*: the **Olive** to *Pallas*: the **Mirtle** to *Venus*: the **Cypress** to *Pluto*: the **Vine** to *Bacchus*: the **Poplar** to *Hercules*: the **Laurel** to *Apollo*.

The **Manner of their Sacrificing** was as followeth: some certain days before the Priest did wash his Body, especially his Hands and his Feet: also he was to abstained from diverse kinds of Meats, and from his Marriage Bed: at his going to Sacrifice either himself, or an inferior Officer went before him with a white Rod or Wand in his hand, crying to the People, *Hoc Age*; attend this you are about.

The Priest after this **Preparation,** having brought the Sacrifice to the Altar, layeth his Hands on the Altar using some Prayers to the God *Janus*, and the Goddess *Vesta*: they being the only Persons by which they must have access to the other Gods, without whose Intercession they could not prevail: Musick in the mean time sounding.

Prayer ended, he layeth on the head of the Sacrifice Corn or a Cake, with Salt and Frankincense, from which Ceremony the act of Sacrificing had been termed *Immolatio* from *Mola* the Cake. Then followed *Libatio*, which was the tasting of Wine, and Sprinkling thereof upon the Beasts head: this done the hairs between the horns of the Beast being plucke off, were flung into the Fire: this they called *Libamina prima*, the first offering: one Cryed out with a loud voice, *Macta est Hostia*, that is, *Magis Aucta*: more Encrease and made more pleasing to the Gods.

After which voice of *Mactaria Hostiam*, the Beast was killed, the Blood received into Vessels, the Intrails searched by the Soothsayer and Priest, which having no ill tokens therein; at last the Beast was cut in pieces by the

under

under officers, called of some *Popæ:* others *Cultrarij* from their Knives: others *Victimarij* from the Sacrifice or Hoast: others *Agones* from their standing ready to strike down the Beast, which we in English may term, **Church-Butchers.**

Being so cut, these slaughter Men from each Bowel cut some part, which after they had rowled in Barley Meal, they delivered to the Priest who burned it on the Altar, this was termed by them *Litare* or, *Reddere:* which is, to satisfie by Sacrifice, or to pay the Sacrifice which was owing unto the Gods.

After the same was burnt, they went to Feasting, where they Sung Hymns and Songs in the Praise of their Gods: Dancing about the Altars, Playing on Cymbals.

The *Romans* Worshipped *Saturn* in all his Festivals and Sacrifices with their Heads bare; but all the other Gods with their Heads covered.

The Romans *Marriage.*

Their **Religious Rites** and **Ceremonies** used in their Marriages, as having dependance upon the Priest is of several Natures: first in their contracts, which by the *Romans* was called *Sponsalia*, because each did promise to other to live together as Man and Wife, which for the greater security was Written down and sealed by many Witnesses: the Man giving her a Ring which she was to wear on the next Finger unto the little of the left Hand, because unto that Finger alone is a certain Artery from the Heart.

The **Solemnity** of the Marriage was with Prayers before the Altar to the chief Wedding Gods, *viz. Jupiter, Juno, Venus, Diana, &c.* then Sacrificed an **Hogg**, the Priest flinging the Gall away, then were Married together, the Bride being sprinkled with Water, touching both Fire and Water, to shew her Purity, and that through all difficulties she must pass with her Husband.

The next day was a **Feast** prepared for the Bride and Bridegrooms Friends, who made merry together: now they may not Marry on unlucky days, such were the days after the Calends, *Nones* and *Ides*, these they called *Dies Atri*, **black Days:** nor on Funeral, Festivals, or Stormy, or Foul Weather Days.

There was several ways by which they became **Man** and **Wife**, as when the Woman is brought to the Man having a **Veil** over her Face, and so given him.

Or that the Man by a seeming violence takes away his Wife from the Bosome of her Mother or Friend and possesseth her, this is called his Wife, by **Prescription** or **long Possession:** especially being Wedded with consent of Overseers.

Or is his Wife by certain Solemnities used before the Priest, using set form of Words when the Woman is given to the Man: 10 Witnesses being present, and a solemn Sacrifice being offered, at which they eat of the Barly Cake used in the Sacrifice.

Or by Buying and Selling when a Woman becomes a Wife under a feigned Form of Sale, by giving him a piece of Coyn, or he to her.

Or by a kind of Lottery, where they became Man and Wife by a certain Coemption or Buying together: and she that was thus Married was properly called the **Mother** or **Mistris** of the Family: but if any of these Ceremonies were omitted, then was the Marriage accounted as no Marriage.

These Ceremonies ended, towards Night the Woman is brought to her Husbands house with Torches, where she annoints the Door posts with Oyl, then doth the Husband lift her over the Threshold, and by a seeming force carry her in, because with Modesty she would not seem to go in there without violence, where she should loose her Maiden-head: at her carrying in all the Company did cry out with a loud voice *Talassio, Talassio.*

Of their Divorce.

If after Marriage any discontents did fall out between the Man and his Wife, then both repaired to a Chappel Built in the Honor of a Goddess called *Dea Viri-Plus:* where after they had been a while, they returned Friends.

If not **Divorcements** upon Just cause were permitted, of which they had two ways: the first was called **Repudium**, which was a Divorce between parties only contracted: in which the party suing for the **Divorcement**, used the form of Words, *Conditione tua non Utor.*

The second was called **Divortium**, wherein the party suing for it, used these Words, *Res tuas tibi habeto*, or else *Res tuas tibi agito*, and both these were termed *Matrimonij Renuntiationes*, the refusal or renouncing of Marriage. In these **Divortes**, the Ceremonies were quite contrary to those in Marriage: the Just causes of **Divorce** being fore-signified to the Censors, the Marriage Tables were broken, the Dowry returned, the Keys of the House taken from the Woman, and she turned out of Doors.

All which Ceremonies are Treated more largly by *Tho: Goodwins Roman Antiquities, lib.* 2. *cap.* 1. to 21.

Tho: Dempsters Roman Antiquities, lib. 5. *cap.* 38.
Alex: Ross View of all Religions, sect. 4. *pag.* 121. *&c.*

Roman *Funeral.*

It was the Custom anongst the *Romans* that when they perceived a Body dying, the next of kinn should receive the last gasp of breath from the sick Body into his Mouth, as it were by way of kissing him: and likewise close the Eyes of the party deceased.

Being **Dead**, they keep it **seven Days**, **Washing it** each day with hot Water, and sometime with Oyl, hoping the Body is but in a slumber: all the Friends these seven days met, and make a great out cry or shout with their Voices, hoping the Body is but a sleep: this action of theirs is called a **Conclamation**, after which if it did not revive, was prepared for the Funeral.

The **Pollinctor**, for so was he called that Enbalmed, Dressed, and Chested the dead Body, which was invested with such a Gown as the parties place or office formerly had

had required, then was it set in a Bed by the House Gate, where an Alter was erected, which they called **Acerra**, on it his Friends offered Incense till the Funeral.

Every thing used at the Funeral was to be brought in the Temple of *Venus Libitina*, to shew that the same Deity as brought us into the World, takes us out: then was a common Cryer sent about the Town to call the People to the Funeral, in this form of Words: *Exequiis L. titi L. Filio quibus est commodum ire. Jam tempus est. Ollus ex edibus effertur.*

The Bed being covered with purple, or a rich covering was born by them of next kindred to the burial place, being followed by his Children, Friends and Servants in Mourning Apparel: the Corps thus brought into the great Oratory, called *Rostra*: where a Funeral Oration was made both of the commendation of him deceased, and his predecessors: that ended, the Corps was in old time carried home again, in manner as it was brought forth; but afterwards by the Law of the twelve Tables it was provided that none but the Emperor and Vestal Nuns should be buried within the City.

The manner of their **Burial** was not by interring the Corps, as in former times it had been; but **Burning** them in the Fire: the reason was, to prevent the cruelty of their Enemies, who in a revenge would at their conquest digg up the buried Bodies making them Subject of their Wrath.

This **Funeral Pile**, before the Burning was properly called *Pyra*; in the time that it Burned it was called *Rogus*, and after the Burning *Bustum*: the place appointed was by the *Pontifices* and *Augures*, the *Pyra* was made like a Tabernacle, or in form of a Pyremads on which the Corps being lay, the next of kinn fired the same with a Torch, turning his Face averse: while the Pile was burned, they used to **Sacrifice Captives** to pacifie the Infernal Ghosts: but this being held two cruel, **Gladiators** or **Fencers**, were appointed to fight, whose Blood served instead of Sacrifice to the infernal Gods: and for want of these **Women were hired to tear their Cheeks**, and make pittiful outcries: but these at length were forbidden.

After the Body was burnt, his nearest Friends gathered up his Ashes and Bones, washed them with Milk and Wine, put them into certain Earthen **Pitchers**, called **Aenae, Urns**: the Priests besprinkling the People three times with Holy Water, and the eldest of the mourning Women pronounced with a loud Voice, this word, *Ilicet*, it is lawful to depart: then did the company depart, taking their last farewell of the dead Body in this form of words, *Vale, Vale, Vale*; *Nos te Ordine quo Natura permiserit sequemur*: that is, Farewell, Farewell, Farewell; we shall follow thee in that Order which Nature shall permit.

If any of these Ceremonies had been omitted then it was termed, *Sepultura insepulta*, that is, Burial without Burial: the old and aged People after the Funeral were invited to a Feast or Funeral Banquet which was eaten upon an Alter of Stone, which they termed *Silicernium*: the poorer People received a Doal or distribution of raw Flesh, which they called *Visceratio*, and moreover there was a potation or drinking of Wine after the Burial, called *Murrata* or *Murrhina potio*: but this and several other things were prohibited for to void expences.

In like manner for the moderating of Grief it was ordered that this word *Lessum* in their mourning should not be used for Children under three years old, elder Persons may be mourned for so many days as they are years old: Wives for their Husbands, and Children for their Parents, were permitted to mourn ten Months, if they would; within which time the Widdow could not Marry without infamy and discredit.

But here note that the poorer sort which could not go to this expence, were put into Coffins or Chests, carried on a Beer, and Buried in the dusk of the Evening, or with Torches: and for the Funeral procession of the Richer sort, with all their Atchievements of Honor, because they do not properly belong to this place, I shall treat of the same elsewhere, see *lib.* 4. *chap.*

The Greek *Religion and Worship.*

The *Greeks* and the *Romans* differed but little in their **Superstitious** or **Idolatrous Worship**, the *Romans* Sacrificed to and Worshipped 20 principal Gods, and the *Grecians* but 12 of them: as *Jupiter*, *Saturn*, *Bacchus*, *Apollo*, *Mars*, *Minerva*, *Diana*, *Venus*, *Juno*, *Ceres*, *Mercurius*, and *Vulcan*. Their Alters were called the **Alters of the twelve Gods**: and by these they were wont to swear, though other Gods were in no less esteem amongst them; as *Neptune*, *Hercules*, *Proserpina*, *&c.* with innumerable more.

Greek Church Officers.

As they had multitude of Gods, so they had Priest; anciently the **Priests of** *Jupiter* & *Apollo*, were young Boys beautiful and well born.

The **Priests of** *Sybelle*, were gelded.

Ceres, *Bona Dea*, and *Bacchus*, had their **Women Priests.**

The **Priests of** *Bellona*, used to Sacrifice with their own Blood.

The *Athenian* **Priests**, used to eat Hemlock and Cicuta, to make them Impotent towards Women.

No Man was made a **Priest** who had any **Blemish** on his Body, their Garments were white, if they Sacrificed to *Ceres* for Purity: if they Sacrificed to the Infernal Gods, their Garments were black: but purple if they were Priests of the **Celestial Deities.** They used also to wear Crowns or Miters with Ribbons or Laces: their Office was not only to Pray and Sacrifice, but also to Purify with Brimstone and Salt-Water.

Their Chief Priests was called **Diero-phantae**, which were the same in Authority with the *Pontifices* at *Rome*.

The **Athenian noble Virgins**, were called **Canephori**, from bearing on their Shoulders the Kanes, which was a Basket or Chest of Gold, in which the first Fruits and other Consecrated things were carried in their *Panathenajan* Pomps to the Honor of *Minerva*: These Virgins did much resemble the **Vestal Virgins** of *Rome*.

The **Propolos**, or **Niphimthles**; was a Bishop or Overseer of their Sacred Mysteries.

The **Pyrphoros**, was he that attendeth the Sacred Fire on the Alter.

They had also their **Cerykes**, which were Cryers or Preachers.

And **Naophylaces**, Church-Wardens and other Officers which had the charge and care of their Temples.

Greek Temples.

At first these Gentiles had no Temples at all, but Worshiped their Gods either on **Hills** or in **Groves**: *Cecrops* was the first (as some think) who built a Temple in *Athens*, and *Janus* in *Italy*: or else they Sacrificed at the **Sepulchers** and **Monuments** of the dead.

Temples of the Celestial Gods were built upon the Ground, and on the highest part of a City: but of the Infernal Gods under the Ground. Their Temples were called **Melathra**, from the black Smoak of their Sacrifices and Incense. And **Naos**, or according to the *Attick*, **Neoos**, was the general Name of their Temples, because the Gods dwelt in them; and because they were Consecrated and Holy, they were named **Iera**.

Sethos, they called that place in the Temple where the Idol stood: the same the *Latins* termed **Delubrum**.

Temenos from the Greek word *Temnein*, to cut or seperate, did signifie the Temple as it was set apart, and seperated from other buildings: for such Honor they gave to their Temples, that they durst not tread on the Threshold, but leap over it; nor pass by a Temple without Reverence to it: nay it was held an **Impiety to walk** in the **Temple of** *Apollo*, and Punished with Death. It was termed **Apollo Pythius**, in Memory of *Apollo's* slaying the great Serpent *Python*: from *Apollo's* Temples, especially that at *Delphos*, were delivered the Oracles of the Gods, by audable voices, from the Mouths of the Images, or Idols.

In *Athens* the **Temple of Mercy** called *Asylum*, was a Sanctuary for delinquents to fly unto.

In the Countrey of *Sparta*, *Jupiter* had a **Temple** called **Scotitas** from the darkness thereof, being obscured with Groves.

They had also their **Ges-Jeron**, Chappel of the Earth: and their **Moiron**, the Chappel of the Destinies: which were places where they assembled and had Sermons; which kind of Preaching they called it **Schiada**.

Their Matrimonial and Funeral rites were the same in effect with the *Romans*, therefore I forbear to say any thing of them.

The Romans *Christian Religion.*

Upon the shining forth of Christianity, by the Industry of the Apostles and Disciples, *Rome* was after some certain Years converted to that Faith, rejecting Idolatry with all Heathen Superstitions: which Faith for near 600 Years they kept pure and uncorrupted, since which time many things have by degrees crept in amongst them, which the Protestant Christians have and do still oppose as Heretical, denying to be of their Communion.

[ ]

Doctrines and other Terms used in the Romish *Religion, and when admitted into the Church.*

Many things are evidently proved to be done contrary to the Rules of Scripture and Apostolical Doctrine, yet it is hard to find out exactly the time when, where, and by whom such Doctrines first crept into the Church, and such alteration began; to such therefore as a time is mentioned, I shall insert it, and for the rest leave it to others to find out their Original, as,

Merit of Works, that good Deeds merit Heaven, a Doctrine Taught about the year 1081. after which followed works of Superarrogation, that Man could do more than God required of him.

Transubstantiation, is the passing or conversion of one substance into another, as of Bread into the Body of Christ, by the Words of Consecration. This Doctrine was first brought into the *Romish* Church by *Innocent* the 3. about 1215. others say by *Nicholas* 2. at the *Lateran* Council in *Rome*, about 1216.

Auricular Confession, a Confession of our Faults in the Priests Ear, *Anno* 1254. a Tenent brought into the Church by the said *Innocent*.

Exorcism, Adjuration, Prayers used by the Exorcist, to cast the Devil out of him that is Possessed; the calling of foul Spirits out of the Bodies of Men; a thing brought into the Church at Baptism about the second Century.

Predestination, contrary to the Rules of Scripture they affirm to be a fore sight which God had, either of Mans good Works, or of their Faith.

Water mixed with Wine in the Sacrament of the Lords Supper first used, *Anno* 122.

Lent, a Time of Fasting for 40 days before Easter, first used *Anno* 142. by the institution of *Telesphorus* Pope of *Rome*; others say it was an Apostolical Tradition; but of the forbidding of Meats to be eaten at that time, came in about 380, not known in *England* till *Anno* 640.

Penance, a punishment of Offenders, first used and instituted for a Sacrament 157.

Marriage made a Sacrament in the Romish Church, and forbid to the Clergy and Priests, *Anno* 385.

Popes Bulls, Briefs or **Mandates** of the Pope, so called from the Lead, and sometimes Golden Seal affixed thereto, *Anno* 772.

Mass, the publick Service of the Church; and so the Mass Book is the Common Prayer Book of the *Latine* Church: It was first used in Latine about 394. and to us in *England* about 680.

Canonical Hours of Prayer instituted by *St. Hierome* 391. that is set Hours for publick Prayer, as

Nocturnal Prayer, Night Prayers, which are said at Midnight.

Matins, Morning Prayers.

Vespers,

Vespers, or Evening Prayers.

Completory Prayers, are such as end all the Diurnal Service for Night and Day, which are compleatly ended about the beginning of Night.

Extreme Unction, instituted by *Felix*, *Anno* 527. It is the Anointing of the Sick ready to die, or after they are dead.

Lamps ordained to be continually Burning in Churches by Pope *Sebirianus*.

Memento for the Dead, Prayers for the Dead, brought in by *Pelagius*.

Soul Masses or Masses applied for the Dead came in by *Gregory*, in which the Sacrament is delivered thus; in whose Commemoration the Body of Christ is taken, &c.

Mass to be said by the Priest with his Face towards the East, ordained by Pope *Vigilius*.

Masses help Souls out of Purgatory, an Opinion brought in by Pope *John* 19. by reason of a Dream, wherein he heard the Voices of Devils Lamenting and bewailing, that Souls were delivered from them by the saying of **Masses** and **Dirges**.

Dedication of Churches, and that none but a Bishop might Hallow them, so ordained by Pope *Felix* the third, *Anno* 492.

Canticle called, **Gloria Laus**, &c. in the Procession before the Mass on Palm Sunday was instituted by *Theodulphus* Bishop of *Aurelia*, *Anno* 483.

Eulogia, or the giving of Blessed and Holy Bread among the People by the Minister.

Oil and Cream for an Unction, brought in by *Silvester*, and not to be Hallowed but by a Bishop.

Baptism should be administred but twice in the year, *viz. Easter* and *Whitsuntide*, except to Infants in extremity; ordained by Pope *Sextus*, and that it should be required 40 days before.

Priests not to wear Beards, nor **long Hair**, appointed by Pope *Martin* the first.

Bells first ordered to be **Christned** by *Martin* aforesaid.

Psalms sung by Turns, that is, one side of the Quire one Verse, and the other side another Verse, and to end them with *Gloria Patri*, &c.

Corporas Case, see **Pix**; it is a kind of Shrine, wherein is put all sanctified things, as **Reliques**.

Patten, is the cover of the Chalice or Communion Cup.

Stole, is the Breast-Plate which goes about the Neck, and crosses the Priests Belly.

Versicles, are short Responces or Answers of the Priest and Clerk: as *Glory be to the Father*, &c.

Censor, is the Frankinceuse Pot or Box, by which they Perfume the Altar.

Suffrages of the Holy Mother the Church: the good Words or Voice of the Church, thereby understanding the Mind, Will and Pleasure of the Church, her Acts or Decrees which are not to be altered.

Decretal Epistles, Epistles and Letters of the ancient Fathers of the Church, which are allowed as Authentick, for the defence of the Doctrin, and Ceremonies in Religion.

Altars to be of Stone, Decreed by *Gelasius* I. and to have some Reliques of Saints in them.

Veneration, is a Worshipping or Bowing to a thing: see **Image**.

Sacrifices and **Oblations**, were of the old Christians, no other then Contribulations and Thanksgivings, *Heb.* 13. 15, 16.

Crossing of things, first invented by Pope *Gregory* the seventh, a notable Ceremony-maker: as saith *Breno* and *Cochleus*.

Dirges, or **Diriges** for the dead, signifies the Office or Prayer for the Dead, and the Souls in Purgatory: and is so called from the first word of the first Antiphon of the Office, which is **Dirige**.

Antiphon, a kind of Verse or Sentence which Church-Men Sing by course; an Anthem like, one singing one Verse, and another, another Verse: It is a Responsory Song.

Exorcisme, Ajuration; Prayers used by the Church of *Rome*, against the power of the Divel, and to cast him out of Bodies possessed.

Organs, a Wind Musick, first brought into the Church of *Rome* by Pope *Vitalianus*, to be used with Singing or Vocal Musick formerly used.

Cardinals made first in the Church by *Pascal*, being Priests of certain Parishes, that they might be near his Person, and be at Elections: Now they are Mates for Kings. Others say by *Leo* the fourth, *Anno* 853.

Matrimony forbidden the **Romish Clergy** (affirming it better to have a Whore private, then to keep a Wife openly) by *Nicholas* the First, which was so followed by his Successors, that a Priest of *Placentia* being accused for having a Wife and Children, was deprived of his Benefice, but on proof made she was Wife of another Man, and his Strumpet, he was restored again to it.

Election or **choosing the Pope**, was taken from the Emperour, by *Adrian* the third, and left to the *Roman* Clergy.

Candles first born in the Feast of the Purification of the Virgin *Mary*, thence called *Candlemas-day* by Pope *Sergius* the third, about *Anno* 905.

Consecration of Swords, Roses, Flaggs, &c. first by *Sergius* the fourth, to be sent as tokens of Love and Honor to such Princes as deserved best, so *Paul* the third sent a Consecrated Sword to *James* the fifth of *Scotland*, to ingage him in a War against *Henry* the eighth who had then cast off the Popes Supremacy.

Cursing with Bell, Book, and Candle; first invented by *Celestine* the second.

Pax or **Pix**, a Box or Vessel to put the Consecrated Bread in, and cover it first commanded by *Innocent* the third, and to be kissed *Anno* 683.

Indulgences and **Pardons for Sins** made saleable first by *Clemens* the fifth, others by *Bonifacius* the eight, *Anno* 1300.

Mitre of the Pope, adorned first with Diamonds, Saphirs, and other precious Stones, by *Paul* the second.

Cardinals Hat first given them by Pope *Innocent* the fourth, *Anno* 1243. to whom *Paul* the second gave them as an augmentation of splendor, their Scarlet Gowns.

Ladies Psalter, a Prayer Book wherein are diverse Prayers made to the Virgin *Mary*, and other Saints: first authorized by Pope *Sextus* the fourth, *Anno* 1089.

Beads

Beads to Pray by, brought in him by also: from whence sprung **Rosaries.**

Stews or **Brothel Houses** publickly allowed in *Rome* for both Sex; and built for Priest and others *ad Purgandos Ranos*, rather then to have lawful Wives, by the said Pope *Sextus* the Fourth.

Swearing by the Gospel, Instituted *Anno* 528.

Grand Masses or **High Masses,** are Masses said upon extraordinary days and times, as at *Easter, Christmas, &c.*

Petty Masses, short Prayers or Services, made for some small occasions.

Canon of the Mass, are Rules and Prayers used at the receiving of the Sacrament.

Secrets, are secret Prayers which the Priest saith to himself, which for the People to hear is a great Sin.

Sanctus, it is a kind of Prayer at the Lords Supper; which is a giving of thanks to the Lord.

Sanctus Sanctorum, the Holy of Holies, it is the inner part of the Temple, the place behind the Chore is so called.

Hosanna, save now, or O Lord save me, a kind of Salutation of old among the Jews, *Mat.* 21. 9.

Sabaoth, is a day of rest, but is by the Jews, an attribute given to God, as Lord of Sabaoth signifieth Lord of Hosts, Powers, and of Armies.

Anthems first used in the Church *Anno* 387. these are Responsory Songs, which Church-men sing by course, one singing one Verse, and another an other: others say about 371.

Alter, a Table to set the Bread and Wine on, ordered to be Alterwise, *Anno* 135. the place on which the Chalice and Hoast are placed.

Albe, a long white Linnen Garment wherewith Priests are cloathed when they say Mass: Instituted by *Silvester*, *Anno* 316.

Corporal, a Linnen cloath spread upon the Altar first used *Anno* 316. a cloath to cover the Eucharist by Pope *Marcus*, *Anno* 340.

Chalice, the Communion-Cup to be of Grass, then of Gold in time of Pope *Serverinus*.

Host or **Hoast,** Bread or a Wafer Cake that represents the Body of Jesus Christ.

Eucharists, the Sacrament of the Lords Supper, or Body and Blood of Christ, administred to none but fasting: so ordained *Anno* 397. the Word signifieth Thanksgiving, *Eph.* 5. 4.

Indulgence or Popes Pardons for Sins acted, first used by them to get Money was about 1300.

Limbus Patrum, the lower part of the Earth or place where the Souls of the ancient Fathers went unto, till the Resurrection of Christ, at which time they went with him into Heaven: which is a Popish oppinion.

Limbus Infantum, the like kind of place where the Souls of Infants were till Christs Resurrection.

Purgatory, a place of Purgation, or State of Purging; that the Souls departed this Life are detained there, because they died not in perfect Estate; to Purifie and Purge them there, that they may be fit for Heaven: and that Christian Prayers, Oblations, and the Charity of the Living may both ease such Souls, and deliver them from thence: This Doctrine was not well known till the Year, 250. and brought into the Church, *Anno* 593.

[ ]

Prayers for the Dead, and Sacrifices for them: *Anno eodem.*

Invocation, Prayers to Saints and **Angels;** brought in by *Gregory* the Great at the same time *viz.* 593. Invocation and Adoration.

Kirie Eleyson, is Lord have mercy on us; Words often repeated in the Mass and Litany, by the Priests and People: this was added to the Liturgy about the Year 591. **Christe Eleison,** is Christ have mercy on us.

Pilgrimage, a travelling into strange Countreys, commonly taken for going in Devotion to any Holy place, since it was Superstitiously and Meritoriously used and commanded, *Anno* 420.

Reliques of Saints and Holy Men, esteemed and adored: these are things left or remaining of some part of the Body, or somewhat which hath touched the Body, or been in Possession of such Men as were esteemed Saints.

Laity abridged the Sacrament; or since the People have been debarred from receiving the Sacrament of the Altar in both kinds, that is both Bread and Wine, *Anno* 1414.

Introite, an Entrey or place to go into: It is the first part of the Mass which begins *Introibo ad Altare Dei*, which is so called: it was made by Pope *Celestine.*

Incense, the burning of a perfume in a Pot, in Service time, was brought in by *Leo* the first: see **Censor.**

Agnus Dei, an Hymn beginning, the Lamb of God that taketh away the Sins of the World: put into the Mass by Pope *Sergius Anno* 688. but of late these Prayers are turned into round pieces of Wax with the Print of the Lamb on it: which being Consecrated, is held as a preservative against Tempests, Lightning, Fire, Earthquakes, and sudden death.

Shaving of Priests, first instituted by *Anicetus*, *Anno* 169.

Golden or **Tynn Vessels** ordered for the Service of the Altar, by *Urban* Bishop of *Rome*, *Anno* 225. or thereabouts.

Image Worshipping brought into *England* first *Anno* 714. which was in a Council at *Rome*, decreed to be set up in Churches, and also to be Worshipped and Adored: in time of Pope *Gregory* the third.

Maundy Thursday, that is the Eve or Day next before our Saviours Crucifixon, commonly called *Good Friday:* Instituted in the Year 1361. the last *Thursday* in *Lent.*

Caveats of the Mass, called also **Cautelae of the Mass;** are such things as the Priest must do before he say Mass, and observe in the time of Mass.

Introite, the entrance or beginning of the Mass, which is by a text of Scripture, or other Sentence: first brought in by Pope *Celestinus:* others by *Gregory* the great, *Anno* 594.

Preparation, the Preparation to Mass, which is by *Judica me Deus, Psal.* 43. 1. and two Prayers wherein the Intercession of the Blessed *Mary* the Virgin is desired, ordained first by *Celestinus.*

Confiteor, the Prayer of confession of Sins, brought into the Mass by Pope *Damasus:* the Confession in the beginning of the Mass.

Gloria in Excelsis, Glory to God on High, the Angels Song, *Luk.* 2. 14. was brought into the Mass by *Telesphorus*,

phorus, *Anno* 140. or 142. but then there was no Mass in the World: therefore more truer as others say by Pope *Symmachus*, *Anno* 510. to which was added.

Laudamus te, *&c.* We Praised thee O God, We acknowledge thee to be the Lord.

Dominus Vobiscum, the Lord be with you, and the answer, *Oremus*, let us Pray: with the Collects, or short Prayers: which have no certain Author named by whom they came to be used; but doubtless they were borrowed from the Greek Liturgy.

Collects, short Prayers gathered together and made by diverse and sundry Authors; but chiefly by *Gelersius* and *Gregorius*: they were called **Collects**, because in the City of *Rome*, they said them over the People collected or assembled together in their station days.

Gradual or **Responsary**, are songs used to be sung at the steps going up to the Altar or Pulpit with *Hallelujah*. It is said that St. *Ambrose* made them, but Pope *Gregory* ordained them to be used in the Mass.

Hallelujah, Praise ye the Lord: It is used as a sign of exultation, and signifieth a joy beyond all expression or utterance, it is much repeated in the Mass.

Sequencies, following songs, or things which follow in the Mass, these were sung on Festivals, and brought into the Mass by Pope *Nicholas*.

Epistle and **Gospel**, are the Writtings of the Apostle St. *Paul* and the four Evangelists, which were not used to be read in the Church service in the Primitive times, but brought into the Mass as some say by St. *Jerome*, others by *Damasus*, some to *Telesphorus*: but it is certain Pope *Anastasius* ordained to stand up at the hearing of the Gospel read about the year 406.

Credo, the Creed, or Christian Belief, or Articles of the Christian Faith, or Apostles Creed: It was ordained to be sung in the Mass by *Damasus*, others by Pope *Marcus*, *Anno* 340.

Offertory, were Oblations, or offerings made by the People entering the Church upon Festival Days and Sundays. This was ascribed to *Eutichianus*, about 280. others say it was ordained by the Synod of *Matiscon*, but it is uncertain by whom.

Elevation and **Adoration of the Host**, which is the Priests lifting up of the Wafer Cake in the Sacrament, and the Peoples falling down upon their Knees and Worshipping it: which was ordained by *Honorius* the third, *Anno* 1222.

Pater Noster, Our Father or the Lords Prayer, was by *Gregory* ordered to be said or sung of the People, after the Canon of the Host.

Ave-Maria, Hail *Mary* full of Grace: the beginning of a Prayer said to the Virgin *Mary*.

Distributio Communionis, the giving of the Communion; the distribution of the Bread and Wine amongst the People.

Post Common, are some Sentences & Collects used to be said after the Canon and Communion: which the Mass Book requires to be used in an odd number, as 1. 3. 5. but never to pass the number 7. the last post common, is the last Prayer.

Ite Missa est, is the Priests dismission, or sending of the People away, the Mass being then ended.

Corones, the end, or utmost extent of things.

Paschal Torch or **Taper**, first invented by Pope *Sozimus*, *Anno* 417. it is an hallowed Wax Taper, or Candle upon *Easter Even*, by distilling into it crosswise 5 hallowed grains, and so reserve it to the Ascention or Pentecost.

Private Mass, is Prayers whispered over by the Priest, which the lay People for to hear is counted profaneness.

Rosaries, a pair of Beads, called Fifteens, containing fifteen Pater Nosters and 150 Aves: Beads to pray by, much used by the Papists which are of the Arch-confraternity of the Rosary, Instituted by Saint *Dominick*.

Supremacy of the Pope, above the Emperour; and the Church of *Constantinople*, began about 607 till which time all general Councils were summoned by the Emperour, and the Bishop of *Constantinople* had the chief Prerogative of all Patriarchal Seats.

Jubile, or Year of rest, first appointed by Pope *Alexander* the sixth, *Anno* 1500. for travellers to come to *Rome* to receive pardons not only for themselves, but for other persons in any place wheresoever.

Holy Water brought into the Church by *Alexander* the first, *Anno* 123. others by his Successor Pope *Sextus*.

Altars Instituted by *Sextus*, *Anno* 135. and *Felix* after ordained them to be Consecrated *Anno* 271.

Catholick, first given to the *Romish* Christians, *Anno* 38. it signifieth as much as Universal.

Bells first used in Churches by *Paulin* Bishop of *Nola* in *Campania*, *Anno* 458. from whence Bells were called *Campanæ*, and Saints Bells called *Nolæ*: ordained to be rung in Churches by *Sebirianus* the Pope.

Consecration of Bells, *Anno* 968. first ordered by *John* the 14*th*.

Bowing the knees at the Name of Jesus *Anno* 1275.

Candles ordered to burn in Churches in the day time during Mass, by *Constantines* command, *Anno* 320. some say 409.

Churches first Built for Christians, *Anno* 224. and afterwards in *Anno* 253 came to be Consecrated places, set a part only for Divine Worship. *Anno* 228. and to have possessions. *Anno* 219 to have Church-Yards instituted, and laid to them. This is Doubtful.

Copes, that is, a Vestment to put over the Priests Shoulder that served at the Altar, Instituted by Pope *Stephen*, *Anno* 256.

Crosses first set on Steeples, by *Conwal* King of *Scotland*, *Anno* 568.

Crucifixes, Christ on the Cross painted in Churches, *Anno* 461. with other Church Histories out of the old and new Testament, by *Paulin* Bishop of *Nola*.

Ecclesiastical Degrees, or Offices in the Church, were Instituted by *Caius* Bishop of *Rome*, *Anno* 284. as,

Ostiarius, the Door Keeper.

Lector the Reader; one that reads Mass, a Priest.

Exorcista, Exorcist or one that adjures foul Spirits out of Mens Bodies.

Acholuthus, an Acholyte; a Minister to bring Water, Wine and Light to the Altar, a Candle or Taper bearer.

Subdiaconus, a Sub-Deacon, an under Servant.

Diaconus, a Deacon; one to oversee the Poor, and distribute Alms.

Presbyter,

Presbyter, a Presbyter or Preaching Minister.

Episcopus, a Bishop or Ruler of the Church in his Diocess.

Ember or **Fasts**, whereof four were appointed before the times of Ordination, by *Chalixtus*, *Anno* 219.

Gospel Reading, it was ordained by *Anastatius Anno* 398. that all Men should stand to hear it.

Saints Days or Festivals, Holy Days, when Instituted: as,

Advent Sunday, observed about 433 but the number of Sundays in Advent was instituted about *Anno* 1000.

All Saints, in Honor of all Martyrs; kept before the Year 835.

All Souls, ratified by Pope *John* the nineteenth, but Instituted by *Boniface Anno* 607. others say 993.

St. **Andrew**, his Bones translated to constance, and his Feast by all probalility instituted 359.

Annunciation, observed in the time of *Athanasius* 350.

Circumcision, in the fifth Century after Christ it was observed.

Conception of Mary, Instituted In *England* 1068. others 1120 and 1386 or 1368.

Corpus Christi, Instituted by *Urban* at the instance of *Thomas Aquinas*, 1264.

Exaltation of the Cross, Instituted upon the recovery of the Cross from the *Persians*, 629.

St. **John Baptist**, observed about 488 and commanded to be kept as well as other Feasts 813.

St. **Luke**, St. **Bartholomew**, and St. **Thomas Feasts**; Instituted in the seventh Century about 1130.

St. **Mark**, St. **Matthias**, St. **James**; Instituted about 1090.

St. **Martin** kept, 813.

St. **Michael**, Instituted by Pope *Felix* 487. others say 390 and 500.

Nativity of the Virgin, made a Feast by *Sergius* 695. others first observed by *Fulbert* Bishop of *Chartres* in *France*, 1007.

St. **Peter Vincula**, instituted 317. others say 440.

St. **Peter** and St. **Paul** kept 813.

Purification, Instituted at *Constantinople* upon a Plague and Earthquae, 542.

St. **Simon** and **Jude** about 1090.

Transfiguration, observed in many places about *Anno* 700.

Trinity, Instituted by *Gregory* 834.

Visitation of Our Lady, Instituted by *Urban* the sixth, *Anno* 1389. others 1441.

Triumph of the Cross, Instituted in *Spain* in Memory of a Victory over the *Moors*, 1213. with hundreds more of Popish Holy days, which many of them you will find mustered up together, and the days on which they are kept, in *lib.* 3. *chap.* 3. *numb.* 59.

Gloria Patri, Glory be to the Father *&c.* added to the Psalms by *Damasus*, *Anno* 369. and also Hallelujah.

Pope, first so called by the Bishop of *Rome*, *Anno* 154.

Godfathers and **Godmothers** at Baptism ordained by Pope *Hyginus*, *Anno* 153.

Hymns sung by turns, is ascribed to be an injunction of *Ignatius* about *Anno* 71. others say *Anno* 383. by *Flavian* and *Diodore*: others 387.

Consecratians of Virgins, by *Pius* the first, *Anno* 159.

Fonts, also Instituted by him about the same time.

Holy, Holy, Holy, Lord God of Sabaoth; Instituted by *Sextus* the first, *Anno* 132. See **Sabaoth**.

Kissing the Popes Feet, first begun in Pope *Constantine*, *Anno* 709.

Offerings, Instituted in the Council of *Mascon*, *Anno* 588. and confirmed in the Year 813 at the Council of *Mentz*.

Patronages of Churches, first begun *Anno* 401. in the Council of *Mela*.

Peter pence, first paid to *Rome* by *Ina* King of West *Saxons*, *Anno* 689. that was a Penny from every House, some say it was in 706.

Respondes and **Lessons** gathered out of Scripture for the Church use, *Anno* 441.

These things with hundreds more are in use in the *Roman* Christian Church, of which some are retained by the Reformed *Protestants*, *Calvenists* and *Lutherans*: but others rejected and expunged out of their Liturgy and Belief, as Frivelous and Superstitious: of which see more in *Henry Isaacson* Epitomized History of the Church.

And for conclusion to all, I have in the *Heathen*, *Turkish*, *Jewish* and *Romish* Religions given you a Taste of all the Grand known Religions that ever was (and less I hope will be) in the World; by which you may see generally the ways of all People, Languages, and Nations, which in their description I shall now forbear to speak any thing concerning it, but only give a brief account of their Situation and Habit, *&c.*

XI. He beareth Or, a **Wild Irish-man**, or an **Irish Tague**; holding an **half Pike** in his left Hand, in bend sinister, the **Head downwards**, all proper. The Habit of these kind of wild People, is to go bare headed, their **Mantle** about their shoulders, which they call a **Brackin**, or **Irish Mantle**: their Shooes, they call **Broges**: and Hose and Breeches made both together, and close to their Thigh, they call **Trouces**.

The place of their abode is called *Ireland*, it is scitued under the 8 and 10 Climats, the longest day being 16 hours in the South parts, and 17. 3 quaters in the North. It is an Island wholly invironed with the Salt Seas: some Historians say that the Soil, Air, the Habits and dispositions of the People differ not much from the old *Britains*, but more Barbarous, being Man-Eaters and Drinkers of the Blood of them they slew in Fight: neither were the Women free from such savage customs; the modern *Irish* are somewhat better by reason of their Commerce with civil Nations, but the Wild *Irish* of the poorer sort are termed **Kernes**.

Their Language is their own, having no affinity to any save the *Highlanders* and the *Hebrides* in *Scotland*: some hold it was originally *Brittish*, or a Dialect of it but by reason of their intermixture with *Norwegians*, *Danes*, *Easterlings*, and *English Saxons*, hath now but little affinity with the *Welsh*. The Characters or Letters used by them

them are directly the same that were used by our ancient *Saxons* in *England*.

The **Manks** or **Manings**, a people that inhabit the *Isle of Man*, which are supposed to be originally of the *Danish* and *Norwegian* Race, for their Language is mixt of the *Norwegian* and *Irish* Tongues, and in many things they can understand one another. It is now under the *English* Command, being taken from the *Scots*, who now follow generally the *English* Laws and Manners.

The **Redshanks**, a people that Inhabit the *Hebrides*, or *Western Islands*, scituate on the West of *Scotland*, which are in number 44; the People of them all, as well in Language as Behaviour resemble the *Wild Irish*, very rude, and without all shew of Civility.

The **Dicadians**, a People inhabiting the Isles of the *Orcades* or *Orkney*, in number 32, scituate over against the North of *Scotland*; the People use the *Gothish* Language, which they derive from the *Norwegians*, in whose Possession they once were, and of whose qualities they still have a smack.

XII. He beareth Argent, an **Egyptian**, or a **Gipsy**, or a **Man of Egypt**, in the **Attire** of his **Country**, with an Apple in his right hand, all proper. The **Egyptians** as well as the **Turks** and **Arabians**, the **Abissinans** and the **Sumatrans** do wear **Turbuts** on their heads; for the rest of the Habit, it is **Hose**, or **Gamashes** over the tops of their **Shooes**, **Doublet and Breeches**, with an upper Garment like a **Gown**, turned up about the Neck, and down before; having two Sleeves with slits or holes in the middle, whereby to put it on, either to the Elbow or Hands. These people lye near the Torrid or Fiery Zone, so that the heat of the Sun hath not the power to make them black, yet it doth very pitifully Sun-Burn, that they are generally called **Tawney Moors**, or **Gypsies**.

In the Province of **Moze-shogozo** the Inhabitants have a rough Skin, like unto **Buff Leather**, of which Kind and Complection there be many in those parts of **Guiana**.

The Inhabitants of **Florida** are of a colour like Brass, the reason is, that they anoint themselves with a certain Ointment, which seconded by the heat of the Sun proves effectual to their design.

The Inhabitants of **Libia** or **Marmarica**, a Province or part of *Egypt*, or near Neighbours to it, and consequently much of the same condition, for they be governed by the same Laws and Customs, but do differ from them in habit, being more dark and black of Complexion.

XIII. He beareth Azure, a **Chinensian**, or a **Man of China** in his Country Apparel, holding his two hands together upon his Breast, all proper. These are a vast people, whose Countrey is almost as large as all *Europe*, and lyeth in the East and by North parts; they are described to wear **Infula's** or high **copped Caps**, **furred** in the lining or turn-up; and to have **under Coats** girt about them, with a **Lose over Garment** with wide sleeves.

China lieth as say the most exactest Geographers from the 130 to the 160 degree of Longitude, and from the Tropick of *Cancer* to the 53 degree of Latitude, so that it lieth under all the Climes from the third to the ninth; so that the Longest Summer day in the South, is but 13 hours 40 minutes, but in the North 16 hours 3 quarters; those parts near the Tropick, the Air is somewhat of the hottest.

The people are for the most part of swarthy Complexions, but more or less according to their nearness to the heat of the Sun, short Nosed, black Eyed, and generally all of very thin Beards: They wear their Garments very long, with long loose Sleeves; and their Hair much longer than their Neighbouring *Tartars*, who wear their Hair exceeding short, and their Cloaths much closer.

Their Marriages they celebrate most commonly in the New Moon, and many times put them off till *March*, when the Year beginneth with them, as with us; in which Solemnity they spare no Cost or Charge for Musick, Stage Plays and good Chear many days together. They eat thrice a day, Drink their drink hot, and eat their Meat with 2 Sticks of Ivory or Ebony or the like, like, not touching their Meat with their Hands at all.

They have long enjoyed the use of Printing before it was known in *Europe*, but Print not as we do, from the left hand to the right, nor as the *Jews* from the right to the left, but from the top of the leaf downwards to the bottom. Guns also have been used by them Time out of Mind.

Their Women are for the most part of a fair Hair, of which they are very curious, binding it about their heads with Ribbands garnished with Pearls and Precious Stones; Neat in their Dress and very costly in their Apparel, with reference to their Estates and the degrees of their Husbands.

XIV. He beareth Or, an **Arabian**, or a **Man of Arabia**, in his **Countrey habit**, holding of a **Bow unstrung** in his right hand, all proper. *Arabia* is a kind of Peninsula, being encompassed on the West with *Mare Rubrum* or the Red Sea; on the South by the *Arabick* and *Indian* Seas, and on the North East by the *Persian* Waters. It hath several Provinces in it as **Arabia Deserta** or **Desert**, **Arabia Petrosa** or **Rocky**, and **Arabia Felix** or Happy: whose Inhabitants are adorned with **Turbutts**, having flat round Crowns set within them; they have **under Coats** down to the Knees, **girt** about the middle with a **Towel**; and their **upper Vestment** is a wide Bodied **Coat** or **Gown**, with Sleeves open in the middle. Some wear **Robes** (without Sleeves) which reach down to the Heels.

The people of *Arabia Deserta*, or *Kedar* as the Jews call it, are said to be of mean stature, raw boned, tawney or swarthy complexioned, having Feminine Voices, of a swift gate, of no set Dwellings, but dwell in Tents,

 which

which they remove like walking Cities, as the Pasture for their Cattel failed them; or else taking no more care for Houses than the Boughs of Trees to keep them from the Sun, or other extremity of Weather.

The *Saracens*, a People inhabiting *Arabia Petræa*, or the Mountainous, are said to be a mixt Generation descended from *Chus* and *Ishmael*, the *Midianites* and the *Amalekites*, which at the last united in the name of *Sarazens*: They are a Martial People, half Naked, clad as far as the Groin with Painted Cassocks, ranging up and down on swift Camels and Horses; they wander from place to place without House or Home, or use of Laws; nor can they long endure the same Air or Soil, living upon every Prey. Their Wives they hire only for a time, and for a shew of Matrimony they present their Husbands with a Spear and a Tent, but they part with them when they please.

Arabia Felix had a more Civil People than the rest of the *Arabians*, yet had many strange and Barbarous Customs: Adultery was punished by Death, and he was an Adulterer which enjoyed any that were not of their own Kindred, be she his Sister or Mother, and so they kept themselves in their own Families; Community of Wives or Women was esteemed no Crime, and thus they continued till the coming of the *Turks* amongst them.

XV. He beareth Argent, an **English Man**, with his **Cloak** on his Shoulders, and the Skirt of it cast over his right Arm, the rest of his Habit according to the **Mode** of the Countrey, all in their pleasing colours. *England* lieth under the Temperate Zone, Cold in the Winter, and Hot in the Summer, being between 50 and 60 Degrees to the North. The Ancient Habit used by them was a **loose Garment** called a **Cloak**, which they cast over their other Cloaths, which is **Breeches, Doublet, Hose, Shoes**, which are as variable in their Changes, as is the Moon; in which respect we are termed the **French Mens Apes**, imitating them in all their Fantastick devised fashions of Garbs: So that the Comely **Cloak**, altogether used in the beginning of my time, is now scarce used but by old and grave Persons; and in place thereof is come up **Jumps, Jackets, Wide Bodied Coats**, with Sleeves: they according to the fashions, being the only dress of *English* Men. So that now the Saying falls true, *He that will describe an* English Man, *must Draw him Naked, with a pair of Taylors Sheers in one hand, and a piece of Cloth on his Arm.*

The place *English* Men inhabit, is called *Great Britain*, one of the greatest Islands in the World, except *Java*, *Barneo*, *Sumatra*, and *Madegascar*. The longest day is 16 hours and some Minutes, but in the Northern parts it is 18 hours, where some observe that there is scarce any Night at all in the Summer Solstice, but a darker Twilight.

This Island is divided into 3 parts, *England*, *Wales* and *Scotland*, the first being the chief and principal part, of which we shall say no more, but leave her Commendation in these two Verses.

For Mountains, Bridges, Rivers, Churches fair,
Women and Wooll, England is past compare.

Their Language is the *Teutonick* or *German* refined, having many Hundreds of *Latin* and *French* words, with *Greek* and *Hebrew*, that their Primitive words of Monosyllables (of which their Ancient Language did much consist) is now much lost: And in Writing, their *Saxon* Characters, is within this 200 years, or thereabout lost, and the *Latine* Letters, with the *Italick* generally used.

The *Welsh* are the remaining Off-spring of the *Britains*, the Ancient Inhabitants of *England* and *Wales*, till they were forced out of their Countrey by the *Saxons* and *Danes*, into two corners of it, called *Kent* and *Wales*, where they remain to this day; and after several conflicts with the *Saxons*, *English* and *Normans*, were united to their Laws and manner of living, only retaining their own Native Language, which they call *Gomra*, and themselves *Gomri*, as being Originally descended from *Gomer*, the first Son of *Japheth* the Son of *Noah*, of whom the Isles of the Gentiles were Peoples, every one after his Family in their places, *Gen.* 10. 2. 5. These *Welsh* had an old Character used by them, of which you may see further *chap.* 10. *numb.* 6. but those being long since extinct, they now use the *Latin* Alphabet, but with an addition of several double Letters, which they pronounce suitable to their gutteral Language, as *Dd ethe*, *Ch egh*, *Ng ung*, *Ll ethl*, *Ph eve*, *Th eth*, *W oo*, &c.

The *Scots* and *Picts* were the antient Inhabitants of the North parts of *Britain*, called now *Scotland*; but in elder times it was the seat of the *Caledonians*, and by them called *Caledon*; and sometimes *Albian*, from *Albin*, a principal Province in the North. It is now divided into the **Highlands** and the **Lowlands**, the first inhabited by the *Irish Scots*, a Wild and Barbarous people, worse than the Wild *Irish*, the other by the *English Scots*, a more civil people, being of the Race of the *Saxons* and *English*, the first speaking the old *Irish*, and the other a broad Northern *English*, with a Dialect only proper to it. These people had a Custom, that took beginning in King *Ewen* the Thirds time, That the King and his Successors should have the Maidenhead or first Nights Lodging with every Woman whose Husband held Land from the Crown; and the Lords and Gentlemen from all those whose Husbands were their Tenants: This continued till the days of *Malcolm Connor*, who at the request of his Wife abolished the same, ordering that the Tenants should pay for such an Homage, a Mark in Money.

XVI. He beareth Or, a **French Man** in his Country fashion, with his **Cloak** hanging on his back, all proper. *France* is under the Temperate Zone, therefore the Inhabitants in cold Weather keep warm, and Muff them

themselves; but in Summer through Fantastick Dresses go almost Naked, and all because they will be in the Fashion; for as their Proverb is, *Pride feeleth no Cold*; and better be out of the World than not to follow the Garb in its Mode.

This people were anciently called *Gaules*, and the Countrey *Gallia* and *Galatia* or *Gaul*.

The now *French* take their name from the *Franks* a people of *Germany*, who Conquering the *Gauls*, call their Countrey *France*: So that they are at this day, a mixt people of old *Gauls* or *Britains*, *Franks* and *Burgundians*.

Their Language in the Original thereof, is a compound of the old *Gallick*, *German* and *Latine* Tongues.

XVII. He beareth Or, a **Spaniard** or **Spanish Man**, or a **Man of Spain**, in the Habit of his Countrey, proper. *Spain* is a Peninsula, being compassed on the West and North West, by the great Sea called the Western Seas; and by the Straights, and the Mediterranian Sea; the Neck of Land joining to *France*. The Inhabitants of this Kingdom of all the *Europian* People, are most happy, in not given to Change; for as it is reported of the *Spanish* Dominions that the Sun is never off some part of it (by reason of Foreign Isles and Plantations which they have all the World over,) so that the Change of the Moon is no Change for their Habits as in other places; for they are by all Historians said to wear high Crowned Hats with narrow Brims, short hair, sharp pointed and long Beards, and Whiskers up the Cheeks, Ruffs about their Necks; their Doublets with short and narrow skirts, and broad Wings at the shoulders; Ruff Cuffs at their Hands; their Breeches narrow and close to their Thighs; their Hose gartered, and Shoes with roundish Toes: They ever go Armed with a long Sword (let the Person be never so mean) with a short Cloak cast over their Shoulders.

XVIII. He beareth Gules, a **German**, or a **Man of Germany** in the Country Fashion, proper. This Empire or Kingdom lyeth between the 45 and 55 Degrees of the North Pole, and therefore must be tempered with Hot and Cold, being between both those Zones. They and all the Neighbours round about them, wear Doublets, Breeches, Cloaks, Hose and Shoes; varying in their Cuts and Shapes, as others of their adjoining Kingdoms.

XIX. He beareth Vert, a **Civilized Ancient Britain**, proper; his Coat without Sleeves, and reaching down to his Knees, Or; girt about with a **Belt** and a **Fauchion** hanging thereat, with his Hand upon the Hilt; holding or **supporting** an **Half Pike** in his right, of the Third.

A. such a Man with a short Coat girt about him G. with an Apple in his right Hand, and the left on his side, is a Coat quartered by *Schroten Van Kindtberg* of *Switzerland* in *Germany*.

G. such a Man Barry from Neck to Foot A. and B. holding in his hand a Garland of Bays, his left supporting a Hunting Staff Bendwise Sinister crossing the middle of his Thigh S. on his Head an Infula Cap turned up A. is the Coat of *Van Heinitz* of *Misnian* in the *Netherlands*.

XX. He beareth Gules, an **Ancient Britain**, with his Body **painted**, a **Chain** about his Neck and Middle, **supporting an Halbert** with his right hand, and a **Shield** on his left Arm, all proper.

The **Inhabitants of Mangi** in the *East Indies*, both Men and Women Paint and Embrauther their Skins with Iron Pens, putting indeliable Tinctures thereinto.

They of the Cape of **Lopo Gansalves**, both Sexes pink their Bodies in diverse forms strange to behold, wherein they put certain Grease mixed with colour made of Red Wood.

The **People of Candou Island**, and the Black People or **Canaires**, of the Land of *Mosambique* and *Ethiopia*, also the great *Gaga Calando* King of *Gagas*, are and have their Bodies cut and carved with sundry works, and anointed with Colours.

The **Atrytinians** are said to raise their Faces and whole Bodies with a sharp Iron, which makes a stamp in curious Knots, and draws the proportion of Flowers, Birds and Fish; then with Painting of sundry lively Colours they rub it into the Stamp which will never be taken away because it is dryed in the Flesh.

The **Egyptian Moors**, both Men and Women did stain their Skins into Knots and Flowers of Blew, made by the pricking of the Skin with Needles, and rubbing it over with Ink and the Juice of an Herb.

XXI He beareth Argent, a **Niger** or **Negro**, a **Blackmoor**, an **Indian**, an **Ethiopian**, or a **Morocco**, holding or supporting of a **Dart** or **Broad Arrow** with the **Head erected** (or the **Feathers dejected**) all proper. These Blackmoors in Blazon are termed by any of these names of their Countreys, because these parts of *Africa* in which they dwell, are all under the Torrid Zone, which Burns them. They are generally Drawn Naked, with a **Towell** about their Bellies, or in **short Coats** to the middle of the Thighs and to the Elbows, and **Wreaths** about their Temples sometimes, as in this example.

A Negroes head to the Shoulders, Clothed Gules, Garnished, the Ears Jewelled Or, Temples adorned with a Wreath Argent and Gules, the end tyed up in a Bow Knot, is the Crest of the Worshipful Sir *John Conway*, of *Potrothan* in *Flint-shire*, Barronett.

O. out of a Coronett A. a Negroes head couped below the Shoulders, Temples wreathed, the ends flotant each side, and on his Crown 3 Feathers of the first, is both the Coat and Crest of *Thumendorf* of *Silesia*.

A. a Negroes head couped at the Shoulders, Garment G. turned and crowned Ducally O. is the Arms of the Bishoprick of *Freysing* in *Germany*.

In the parts of *Barbary* are contained these several Kingdoms of *Fez*, *Morocco*, *Tunis*, *Tremesen* or *Algiers*, with the chief Isles, of which there are 16 in number, the whole Land of the *Negroes*, with *Æthiopia superiour* and *inferiour*; where the People generally are of a dusk-

ſh colour inclining to blackneſs, much of the ſame nature of the *Arabians*, and ſpeak the *Arabick* Language, except *Feſſe* and *Morocco*, which ſpeak the old *African* or *Punick* Tongue.

XXII. He beareth Sable, a **Braſilian**, or a Native of **Braſil**, according to the Climate of the Countrey in his uſual Habiliments, *viz.* a **Braſil Man**, with a **Crown of Feathers** on his head, a cover of the ſame over his Belly, **Chains** of Gold about his Neck, and under his Knees (or gartering places) ſupporting a **Club**, the head reverſed, in his right hand, and holding up the Leg of a Man couped at the Thigh and erazed in the Anckle in his left hand. This Countrey of *Braſil* is in the South part of *America*, which lieth under the Torrid Zone Southerly; therefore the People muſt be cruelly Sunburned, and of a Tawny Swarthy Complexion; ſuch as we uſually call Tawny Moors.

Some of theſe Natives cover their Bodies with the Skins of Beaſts; but moſt draw them thus, and ſo they are often made for Supporters for Noble Perſons Coats.

G. a demy Braſilian crowned with Feathers of variable colours, holding up his both hands, proper. Or a Braſilian in full Aſpect, his hand elevated, is the Coat of *Don Wien* a *Spaniard*.

There is in this South part of *America*, (being in it ſelf a Peninſula) theſe great and vaſt Provinces, as *Caſtella Aurea* or *Terra Firma*, *Granada*, *Peru*, *Chile*, *Paragney*, *Braſil*, *Guyana* and *Paria*. They were of old Eaters of Mans Fleſh, are Tall and of ſtrong Bodies, ſpending moſt of their time in Songs and Dances. The Women of a more white and clear Complexion in *Granada* than any of their Neighbour Countreys, and more handſomly Habited, being Apparelled in Black and party coloured Mantles, girt about their Middles, their Hair tyed up and covered with Chaplets of Flowers, altogether ignorant of Letters; having no Houſes but on the Tops of Trees, the Trees of *Braſil* being of that incredible bigneſs, that whole Families live on an Arm of one of them, every Tree being as populous as the moſt of our Villages.

XXIII. He beareth Vert, a **Virginian**, or a **Man of Virginia**, alſo a **Floridan** or an **American** in the Garb of his Countrey, or in his Country Dreſs, in his right hand a Bow ready ſtrung, in his left an Arrow held Bendways ſiniſter over his Breaſt, all proper. The Natives or old Inhabitants of *Virginia* and *Florida*, were only cloathed with a kind of Apron before the Belly; the Principals adorning their Heads with Feathers, their Necks and Legs with Chains or Bracelets, all the reſt of their Bodies are Naked; theſe parts of *America* lyeth under the 30 and 40 degrees of the North Pole, therefore as they are in the Temperate Zone, ſo they are White, as all the *Europians* are.

In the Provinces of *Jucutan* and *New Spain* with *Mexico*, the People or Natives of thoſe Countreys go almoſt all Naked, and adorn themſelves with Feathers, Beads, Chains, and ſuch like trivial things.

XXIV. He beareth Azure, a **Wild Man**, or a **Wood Man**, or an **Hairy Man**, with a **Garland of Laurel** about his head and middle, proper, **ſupporting** of a **Club** with his right hand, Or; and his left hand on his ſide. See *lib.* 2. *cap.* 17. *numb.* 76.

B. the like to the Siniſter, proper, ſupporting an Oak Tree mooted up by the Root with his left, the right hand on his ſide, all proper, is the Coat of *Van Drachſdorf* of *Miſnian*.

Out of a Coronett a demy Wild Man holding two Eagles feet G. on his Head 3 Laurel leaves is the Creſt of *Van Der Schulenburgh*.

Pliny and others make mention of many Hairy Nations, which are deformed with Hair growing all over their Bodies, except their Faces and Palms of their hands, as in the Iſland of *Buthnam*, where the Hairy men are very wild and fierce, and eaters of Human Fleſh.

In the Province of *Guacaia-Rina* there are alſo ſuch **Wild Men** which were firſt ſeen in *Bononia* with the Marchioneſs of *Soranum*, who brought there with her a Girl of eight years of Age all Hairy, being the Daughter of a Wild Man of 40 years old, born in the *Canaries*, who not only begot this Daughter, but another of 12 years, and a Son of 20 years of Age, whoſe Hairy Effigies *Aldrovandus* hath exhibited in his Hiſtory.

Some people that live towards the *Ancies*, in *Braſil* in *America*, are ſaid to be all over hairy like Beaſts.

There are ſeen both in the *Eaſt* and *Weſt Indies* **Wild Men** who are born ſmooth, as our Infants are, but in tract of time their Hair increaſeth mightily in moſt parts of their Body. And amongſt other Wild Men the *Cinnaminians* are to be admired for their prolix or large and long Beards, and the hairyneſs of their whole Bodyes, the Women alſo being all over hairy.

Many have been Born abounding with ſhagged hair like unto Dogs; we read firſt of *Eſau*, that he was of this Hairy Tribe, *Gen.* 25. 25. and 27. 11. *&c.* Alſo all rugged with Hair was one Born in the year 1282. and another *Anno* 1549. Moreover *Columbus* confeſſeth that in his Travels he ſaw a *Spaniard* beſet with hair in all parts of his Body except his Hands and Face. I my ſelf have ſeen a Woman all Hairy, no part of her Face free, having a long Beard, about the Year 1661.

2. HAving now given a brief deſcription of the Faſhion and Habits of moſt remarkable Kingdoms and Countreys uſed by Men; I ſhall now give as ſhort an Account of ſuch old faſhioned Habits as are worn by the Women of thoſe foreſaid places: And among the reſt give ſome account of Women in their Habits, as they are exerciſed either in Offices or Callings.

XXV. He beareth Argent, a **Queen** in the Robes of Majeſty, **Crowned**, with a **Scepter** in one hand, and a **Mound** in the other, all proper. She is alſo termed a **Queen** in her **Mantle of Eſtate**, &c. This is born by the name of *Queenhope*.

A demy

A demy Queen in her like Robes of Majesty, is the Crest of *Queenborow*.

XXVI. He beareth Argent, a **Queen** only adorned with her **Surcoat** and **Girdle of Honour**, Purpure, her **Robe** Gules, turned up Ermyne, **Crowned**, with a **Scepter** in one hand, and a **Mound** in the other, proper. These two are in different Habits of Estate; the first being a Queen in her Mantle of Estate, or Robe of Majesty, which hath only a Cape and no Sleeves, and is so long, that in her Procession it must and is born up, which is called her **Train**: But this Queen is only habited in a Robe that reached only to the Heels and hath no Cape, the Sleeves extending no farther than the middle of the Arm; after this form our Fore-fathers did Depict or set forth one of the four parts of the World called *Europe*.

A. a Queen of *Morocco* in her coat close girt with wide sleeves and hair pendant, holding of a Miter in her right hand, and her left on her side, is the Coat of *Kirchberg* in *Bavaria*.

XXVII. He beareth Argent, a **demy Queen** in her **Surcoat** and **Mantle of Majesty** turned off her shoulders, holding the Skirt in her left hand, and crowned, proper. I have found this also Blazoned a **Demy Queen**, and a **Demy Queen in her Vestments**, which is sufficient, for she cannot be said to be a Queen except Crowned and adorned in her Robes. This is born by the name of *Queendam*.

XXVIII. He beareth Or, a **Virago** (or a **Manly** or **Manlike Woman**) her **Scarfe** about her middle, the **ends flotant**, **Feathers** in her **Hat**, and a **Naked Sword** in her right hand resting on her Shoulder, and the left on her side, all in their pleasant and proper colours. After this manner are the Valiant Women of old described with Sword, Shield and Launce in their hand, or that by which they did Atchieve some Noble and Heroick Act.

The Ancient *Amazons*, of whom we read so oft in Learned Authors, were wont to sear off their Right Breast or Pap, both of themselves and their Daughters, and thereupon were called *Amazons*, which signifieth in the *Greek* Tongue *No Breasts*; and this they do, because it shall be no hindrance to them in their Shooting. The Chief of the Guard to the King of *Congo* are Left handed *Amazons*: Also they serve the Emperour *Monomotapa*, who after the manner of the Ancient *Scythians* or *Asiatique Amazons* have their Breasts cut off.

Worthy and Valiant Woman Described.

Judeth, who to free the City of *Bethulia* from the Siege of the *Assyrians*, ventured into the Camp, and slew *Holofernes* chief Captain of the Host, whereby she freed the City; so she is drawn with a Sword or Fauchion in her right hand, and the Head of *Holofernes* by the Hair in the other.

Esther, hazarded her Life to free the Jewish State from the Tyranny of Wicked *Haman*. She is drawn with Royal Apparel, a Scepter in her hand and a Crown Royal on head; both Young and Beautiful.

Deborah, a Prophetess, a Mother in *Israel*, and a great Commander, she overcame the Army of *Sisera*, the chief Commander of the *Canaanites*, and is drawn with a Head piece on her Head, a Shield on her Arm, and a Fauchion in her right hand, her Mantle flying about her.

Jael, the Wife of *Heber*, she invited *Sisera* the Captain of *Jabin* into her Tent, where with a Nail and Hammer she slew him, driving it into his Temples; she is described by a Hammer in one hand lifted up, and a Nail in the other, her Garments according to the old Fashion.

Elizabeth Queen of England, she defended her Kingdom against all the Power and Malice of her Enemies, which though never so many, were Vanquished by her. She is drawn in her Robes of Majesty, with a Scepter and Mound in her hands, and in a Fardingdale Dress or Gown with great Puffed Sleeves.

With many more which might be described, but I refer you for that matter to *Hen. Isaacksons* Chronology.

XXIX. He beareth Argent, a **Woman in a Fardingale Gown** holding a **Fan** in her right hand, and the other by her side. This was the fashion and manner of Attire for Ladies and them of the Nobility in the Reign of our late Soveraign Queen *Elizabeth*, and King *James* her Successor, of Happy and Blessed Memory: The Gowns were broad Shouldered, narrow Wasted, wide Breeched (set out with a broad Rowle which was called a **Fardingale**) and gathered in Plaits and Trusses to make it full in the Skirt. Their **Gorget** standing up being supported by Wyers and a kind of Roll which they called a **Peradile**: The Attire standing round the Head was a **Bongrace**: The Sleeves round and full set out in the manner of **Buffs** or **Wreaths**.

XXX. He beareth Or, a **Woman** with a **Coife** on her head, and **Gorget** or **Neckcloth** about her Neck, Argent; her **Gown** tyed up, Sable, **Petticoat**, Gules; the right hand pendant (or by her side, or hanging down) the left on her Belly, proper. This I have seen termed a **Gentlewoman**, and a **Merchants Wife**, all under those degrees, in our Fathers days, did wear Hats, or Caps with narrow Brims. This is born by the name of *Maiden*, or *Maiden*.

XXXI. He beareth Or, a **Maid**, or a **Damsel** in her becoming **Attire**, holding a Slip of three Leaves in her right hand, and the left upon her Belly, all proper.

In

In the days of old, when fair *England* did flourish: it was the Habit then of all unmarried **Girls**, **Lasses** or **Maids**, that were under the degrees of **Ladies** and Rich **Esquires Daughters** to dress themselves in this kind of Habit, *viz.* on her Head a **Coife** and **Crosset**, about the Neck a **square Handkerchief**, on the Body a **Waistcoat** and **Petticoat**, or a **Gown**, and an **Apron** or **Kirtle** before the Belly.

But now the matter is otherwise, that to see to, there is in the outward Garb no difference between the Maid and Mistris, Dame and Servant; the Children of Tradesmen and Esquires or Knights: a thing abominable in former Ages, but now not regarded, except their whole Portion be on their Backs at a time, and then by the Modester people scoffed at; indeed a fit Reward for Pride.

B. the like Maid to the Sinister close girt, and wide Sleeves O. holding in each hand a Salmon by the middle, A. is the Coat and Crest of *Roten Van Aurach* of *Franckford*.

XXXII. He beareth Argent, a **demy Shepherdess** with **three Ears of Wheat** in her right hand, all proper. As the Crown is the Token of a King, so the Shepherds Crook is a note by which the **Shepherd** and **Shepherdess** is known, without which they are but a Man and a Woman.

☞ Therefore in the naming it, you must understand he or she beareth that which is the principal Emblem of their Function or Occupation. This is the crest of *Shepard*.

In the Base of this square, is placed a **Womans Face in full Aspect**, which of the *Dutch* is thus Blazoned, a **Face compassed** about **with a Cloud**; But I should rather take it to be the **Moon in a Cloud**, or **invironed with a Cloud**; and such a Bearing I find amongst the *Dutch* and *Germans* Arms, viz. Argent, such a Face Gules, Nebuled about and a Chief of the same Azure; by the name of *Van Ratzenriedt* of *Swabidian* in *Germany*. Of others it is termed a **full Face**, G. **invecked**, B.

XXXIII. He beareth Or, a **Lady** with her **Hat and Feather**, broad **Shoulder Band**, and **Gown with Skirts** after the old Fashion, **Coat open**; holding up the right hand, the other on the Belly. This was a Fashion of old, which was again taken up in the Reign of King *Charles* the Martyr, till some Ministers put them out of Conceit with their Feathers, because they were greater than their Faith.

O. a demy Lady in this posture, is both the Coat and Crest of *Hirman* of *Swabisch*.

XXXIV. He beareth Gules, a **Woman Kneeling** on a **Cushion in full Aspect**, Or; the **Tassels** and **Bottom**, Vert; with a **close Hood** on her head Sable, a **Ruff** about her Neck, with a **Bibb**, or **Breast cloth**, Argent, her **Gown** with **Broad Wings** and **wide Sleeves**, Purpure, her **Kirtle** or **Apron**, Azure; holding up her hands together before her, proper. This is more shorter Blazoned, on a **Cushion**, Or, a **Woman** at her **Devotion**, habited after the old manner, Purpure; Ruff, Bib, and Apron, Argent; Hood, Sable. This latter Blazon with a Woman so Praying, is the Coat of *De la Voute*.

XXXV. He beareth Argent, a **Woman** standing in **full aspect** at her Prayers, **Habited** in a **long Robe close Girt**, with a **Mantle** thrown (or cast) over both Shoulders, and hooded to the same, all Sable. This is like one of the Pharisaical Women, taught by her Husband to Stand and Pray in the Market place, to be seen of the People. This is a compleat Bearing for such an Hypocrite as loves the Praise of Men more than the Praise of God.

Some term this a **Widdow** in her **Mourning Apparel**.

XXXVI. He beareth Or, a **Poor Woman demy faced** (or half Bodyed) or standing sideways) with a **Hat sans Brim**, and a **Patched Coat**, and **Apron** Grey; with a Staff in her left hand, Bendwise, Sable. Some term her an **Alms Woman**, a **Beggar Woman**, or a **decayed Old Woman**. By the name of *Poverty*.

XXXVII. He beareth Argent, a **French Woman**, in her Country Dress, *viz.* a **French Hood**, a Laced **Gorget** and **Bibb**; an **Apron** and **Gown** with **Open Sleeves**. That as made the *French* Women most remarkable to us, was their fashioned Hood, which was made with a long **Flap** or **Tippet** from the top of the head, and so hung down backwards, which end being turned up, was fastned to the top of the head. See *chap.* 1. *numb.* 78.

A demy Woman with a *French* Hood, is the crest of *De la Voue*.

XXXVIII. He beareth Argent, a **Roman Ladies Face** couped below the Shoulders, proper, **Adorned** with a **Laurel Garland** about the Temples, Vert; **Vested**, Gules; **Garnished** or **Trimmed**, Or. Born by the name of *Balicella* an *Italian* Family.

A. 3 such Heads proper, is born by *Maddame*.

In the Base of this quarter, for want of other room, I was forced to Engrave a **Dutch Mans Cap**, Sable; Turning up, Or; Strings crossed, and Tassels, Gules. See *chap.* 1. *numb.* 68. 69. Country People of *Holland* Caps.

G. the like Cap A. turned up of the same, Tassels and Strings V. born by the name of *Stamler* of *Auspurg*.

XXXIX. He beareth Argent, a **Gossipper**, or a **Hearty Jovial Woman**, a **Friend of Bacchus**, with a **Golden Cup** in her right hand; **Hat** Sable; **Ruffe**, and open in the **Sleeves**, Argent; the Gown with **Coody Robe Skirts**, and **hanging** or **loose Sleeves** down to the Heels, Gules; Garnished or Trimmed of the second. This is the Coat or Cognizance of *Skattergood*.

XL. He beareth Gules, an **Assirian Woman** in a **long Robe** turned down at the Neck, Argent; supporting

ing a **Spear** in the right hand, and a **Shield** with the left, Or. This is the Garb by which our Fore-Fathers did Emblem, or set forth one of the four parts of the World, called *Asia*. On her head is an **Infula** out of a **Crown Spiral**, with a **Scarf** or **Vail pendant** from the top of it.

XLI. He beareth Or, an **Ancient Native Brittish Woman**, in her **Civilized Garment**, with her **hair pendant**; **supporting** of an **Half Pike**, all proper. This is also termed a **Civil** Antient **Woman of Brittain**, a **Civilized Brittish Woman**, &c. whose Habit at the first, was only a loose Coat without any Sleeves; the Hair hanging down her Back.

XLII. He beareth Vert, an **American Woman** with a **Crown of Feathers** on her head; the like about her Belly, of various colours, with a purple **Mantle** over her right shoulder falling backwards: holding up both hands each side her head, proper. After this manner of Garb or dress did our ancient Fathers set forth one of the four quarters of the World, termed **America.**

XLIII. He beareth Argent, a **Woman** in a **long Robe girded** about the middle, with a **Vail** upon her head extending to her Feet, all Sable: Hands and Face Argent: After this manner the **Colonish Women go Vailed.** This is called a **Matron of** *Colonia*.

XLIV. He beareth Or, an **Austrian**, or a **Dutch Woman** in her Countrey Habit, *viz.* a **Hat** and **Quoife** on their Heads, **Ruffes** about their Necks, full bodied with **broad Wings** at the shoulders, and round **Peticoats.**

XLV. He beareth Azure, a **Franckford Woman** in her Countrey Habit: some termed them **Franconians**, and **Women of Frankenland.** This is one of the Habits that is used by them and that is by those of the better sort of the commonalty, the other see *numb.* 48.

XLVI. He beareth Argent, an **Holland Woman**, or a **Woman** of the *Low Countries* or *Netherlands*: a **Woman** of *Colonia*. This is the habit of such who are young Women and Wives: having **Gowns**, and **Gorgets**, and **Quoifs**, but when they walk abroad having **Vails** over their Heads extending to their Feet, backwards.

XLVII. He beareth Argent, a **Countrey Welsh Woman**, in her travelling habit; that is to say a **Quoif** and **Crosslet** with an **Hat** on their Head, **Waist-Coat** and **Petti-coat**, with a **short Cloak** hanging about her Neck, which at pleasure she doth cast over her shoulders.

XLVIII. He beareth Azure, a **Countrey Woman of Franconia** or a **Frankenland Countrey Woman**, in her Countrey dress, proper. This differs from the other habit, *numb.* 45. that wearing a **Ruff**, and a **Gown** with a **Peak** before; this is a kind of round **Handkerchief** about her Neck, and the **Waistcoat** with round and deep skirts, compassing the whole middle or waste: with an **Apron** proceeding from under the said skirts, or laps.

XLIX. He beareth Or, an **Austrian Woman**, or a **Woman of Austria**, in her Countrey habit: This *Austria* is an Archdukedom, and a very large Province in the Empire of *Germany* lying near or bordering upon *Hungaria*. It lieth in the Temperate *Zone*, and yet by the Countrey habit seems to be very cold in the Winter.

These People lying so near *Hungaria*, are also from their habits termed **Hungarian Women**, whose dress is also the same: for they wear **Quoifs** on their Heads, **Ruffs** about their Necks, **Waist-coats** and **Petti-coats**, and **Aprons**: about their shoulders they carry **short Cloak**, the Cape and turning up on the sides, are faced with Furrs, and skins of Beasts.

L. He beareth Gules, a **Russian Woman** in the habit of the Countrey, proper: whose Countrey dress is a **Cap Lined** and **turned up with Furr**: their Garment a **long Coat** down to the Heels and **Furred** at the Neck, Sleeve-hands, and bottom of the skirt: their **Shooes** do turn up at the Nose, after the manner of a hook.

LI. He beareth Argent, a **Woman of Lappia**, or a **Lapland Woman**, in the habit of that Countrey: the Women there are described to bear on their backs things like **Pedlars Creats**, in which the carry necessaries for their use, when they are in travel from place to place.

LII. He beareth Argent, an **Italian Woman** in the habit of the Countrey, proper. They were in former times said to wear an under **Robe** or **Gown**, over which was cast a kind of loose **Garment** or **Vesture** which hung loose and open before, the same reaching to the Feet: the **Sleeves** of it were **wide**, with a slit in it from the elbow down, so that at the elbow it was loose from the Arm: yet the inferiour sort had no slit at all, but the **wide Sleeve** came over the Arm almost to the Hand; on the head was a kind of **Quoife**, over which hung dangling down the back an **Hood** or **Vail**, so then you may blazon this Figure thus: an **Italian Woman in full aspect**, a **Fan** in her right hand, and holding up the left, proper: her **Gown** Azure, **Addorned** Or, **Vest** Sable, **Turned** or **Faced** up before, Tenne: **Hood** or **Vaile** of the same.

LIII. He beareth Argent, a **Spanish Lady**, or a **Woman of Spain** in the Countrey Habit; as I said before of the Men, so the Women do not in the least alter their fashions: for they constantly wear **Ruffs** about their Necks with a certain kind of **Head attire**, over an under **Robe** or **Gown**, they have a **loose Coat** down to the Feet, it hath large broad **Wings**, at the shoulders, with wide open sleeves reaching only to the Elbow, with **hanging Sleeves** behind, longer then the Arm.

LIV. He beareth Or, an **Egyptian Woman** in that Countrey habit, **Regardant** (or looking backwards) having an **Hood** on her head, **compassing her Shoulders**

ders & tied before on her Breast with a Ribbon, Argent: her **Petti-coat** Gules; he **Vest** or **Waist-coat** having a large skirts to the knee, and girded about the middle, of an hair colour: in such a kind of habit I have often seen them in *England* which pass under the name of **Gipsies**, because they are of a Dun Swarthy or Tawny complexion. Such of them as well in Cities, cover their Faces with black Cypres bespotted with red, their Arms and Ancles they **Garnish** with **Bracelets** and Hoops of Gold, Silver or some other Mettle. Those in the Countrey for a **Vaile** use some **Durty Clout**, having holes only for their Eyes, and both in the City and Countrey contrary to the custom of all places else, the Women use to make water standing, and the Men couring on their knees.

LV. He beareth Vert, an **Austrian Lady** or **Gentle Woman** in the attire of that Countrey, proper. I have before given you the description of an **Austrian Woman**, which dwelleth near to *Hungaria*: as they are relating one to the other and Neighbours, but this I take by itt attire to be either one that lives more remote from *Hungaria*, or one of the Nobler race. Yet if they be rightly considered, there is nothing differing in the **Fashion**, but in **Fineſs**, they have one **Attire** on the Head, both **Ruffs** abourt their Neck; this having a **Double Coat**, one sider then the other, and a kind of **Silk Mantle** about her shoulders to shew her Gallantry: the other a **Furr Cloak**, to express a Countrey Life.

LVI. He beareth Or, an **Indian Woman in full aspect**, proper: supporting of a **Joynted Cane**, with a **Dart head** on the top of it (some term it an **Indian Dart**, which have not Feathers as ours have, but only an Iron head) with the right hand, holding up the left: on her Head a **Crown of Feathers** of diverse colours, a **Linnen** about her Belly, **Wreathed** or **Rowled** up on the higher part, Argent: Neck, Arms and Wrists, gartering places and Ankles of the Feet **Adorned** with **Bracelets** of the same. After this manner was one of the four parts of the habitable World depicted, or set forth in Emblems, called **Africa.**

LVII. He beareth Azure, a **Brasilian Woman** or a **Woman of Brasil**, in the Garb of the Countrey, *viz.* the Body all **Naked**, of a black colour, or of a deep swarthy Sun burnt colour, with a **Cloath** before her Belly (or privy parts) Argent: a Bow held or supported in the left hand, and the right upon her side, at her shoulders a quiver of Arrows, hung by a Lace or Belt: and a Feather on the left side the head, all proper. Some of the Gallants of them dye their Thighs with a black colour, that seeing them afar off, they seem as if they were cloathed in Sacerdotal Breeches. But in most places they are Barbarous, going start naked, and on Festival Days (that is) when a company comes together to be merry, and rejoyce over a roasted fat Man, that they cut in collops, and Eat with great Greedines and much Delectation. The **Guaymares** disbowel Women with Children and Roast the Children: And that the Savage Nation of **Camucuiara** in *Brasil* have their **Paps** almost down to their Knees, which they tie about their Waste when they run, or go faster then ordinary.

LVIII. He beareth Or, an **Inhabitant of Seal Bay** with his Body **Interchangably coloured**, Argent and Sable. The Inhabitants that Sir *Francis Drake* found in 47 degrees and 30 minutes Southwards, whole Bay he called **Seal Bay**, their whole **Bravery** and setting out themselves standeth in Painting their Bodies with diverse colours and such works as they can devise. Some Paint one Shoulder black, and another white, and their Body, Sides, Thighs and Legs, interchangably with the same colours, one still contrary to the other: in some the black part hath set upon it white Moones, and the white part black Suns, being the Marks and Characters of their Gods: they wear their Hair very long, but in their travels, they knit it up with Ostrich Feathers.

The natural Inhabitants of *Jucata*, paint their Faces and Bodies black.

LIX. He beareth Vert, an **Old** or **Ancient Native of Brittaine**, a **Native Brittish Woman**, (as of old they used to adorn themselves) *viz.* all naked, their Bodies painted upon with diverse shapes of Birds, Beasts, Flowers, *&c.* the Hair **Flotant** or **Pendant** Or: a Chain about her middle, supporting a long Staff, with her right Leg **Crossed** or **Debruised of the left**, all proper.

Some think that the *Celique Poiteveins* called by the *Latins Pictones*; **Picts** of whom the *Scots* are descended had their Name given them from the same occasion of Painting themselves.

LX. He beareth Argent a **Woman of Cumanan**, holding of a long Staff in her left hand, and the right upon her side, all in their **Native Mode**; or **Painted** according to the Custom of the Countrey, *viz.* their Bodies all set with Feathers.

It is observed that the Barbarous People which go naked generally used, either to cover their Bodies with Paints, or Feathers of Birds: for in an Island near the Isle called *Pitan*, the People are all Feathered, but the Face and the Palms of their Hands.

The **Chtribichensians** annoint themselves with a certain slimy Matter, and putting Feathers thereon, they cover all their Bodies.

In the Island called **Ity**, the Inhabitants who go naked, not only Paint their Bodies with diverse colours, but they adorn them with diverse Feathers of Birds.

The **Brasilians** have many Hens like unto ours, from whence they pull the small white Feathers, which they strew upon their Bodies, being first annointed with strong Gums, or a tenacious Glue.

3. HAving now given some Examples of Countreys and Kingdoms fashions, with their Habits, both in single Men and Women; and how such are Born in Coat Armor, either in whole, or in Part. I shall now give some few Presidents of Coats that have Persons Born by pairs, by two or three, or more, in a Coat; or for a Crest, Badge, or Cognizance, or for Signs, and Seals and the like.

LXI.

LXI. He beareth Argent, the **Apostle St. Peter** in full aspect, **Cloathed** in a **long Robe**, or **Coat close** girt, Azure: **Mantled** and cast behind his back, Purpure: holding out his both Arms, on the right hand a **Book closed**, with a **Church** standing thereon; and in his left a **Key double Bited**, all proper. This is the form of the Seal, used by *Peterhouse* Colledge in the University of *Cambridge*, which was erected out of two ancient Hostels, or Hospitals, sometime belonging to the Brethren of the Sect, called *de Pœnitentia Jesu Christi.*

LXII. He beareth Argent, a **Serjeant of a Company of Foot Soldiers** in a **Directing** or **Instructing Posture** with his **Halbert**, all proper. This is the Coat of *Serjanter.*

The like to this *viz.* Or, the Serjeant Gules, standing upon an Hill or Mount in base, Vert. I find born by the name of *Die Magken*, a Family of *Switzerland* in *Germany*, only he is in his Counter-march, or turned about to his left hand.

LXIII. He beareth Argent, two **Men bowing each to other** with their **Hats** in their hands, and the others towards their Mouth, all proper. Beside this blazon I find two more used to this Coat or Cognizance, the one more shorter, the other more longer: as first, it is termed only the **Salutation**: or two **Friends** (or Men) **Greeting**: the other is, two **Men respecting** each other, the dexter bowing with his Hat in his right hand doing his **Obeyzance** with his left, **Clothed** Vert: the sinister, in the like posture, the Hat in his left hand, making the like Obeizance with his right, clothed Gules. This as being a Coat Armor, belongs to the name of *General*: but as it is the Sign or token of an House, it is called by the name of the **Salutation.**

Masters of the Dancing Schools, term these postures, their **honors**; now in performing the same, there are many Ceremonies and terms used by them; which are set down *chap.* 3. *numb.* 69.

In the Base of this square is set a **Womans Mask**, it is made sometimes in the form of a long square, with two holes in, for to see through when it is put over her Face: others are made round on the top part, or **Scallopped** according to the fantasie of the wearer. This was a devise borrowed from the **Numidians** who covered their Faces with a black Cloth hanging down to their Breasts, with holes to look through: which wear was to preserve their Faces and Beauties from the tauning of the Sun, see *numb.* 54.

A. 3 such in Pale S. born by *Maskil.*

LXIV. He beareth Azure, two **Men Embracing** each other, (or **Clipping** or **Clasping** one the other in their Arms) **Hats** Sable: the dexter **Clothed** in Grey, the other in Buff: **Sword, Scabbards** and **Shooes** of the second. This is the Coat Armour of *Welmen* of *Bavaria* in *Germany.*

A like Coat to this, of a Man and Woman walking together Or: in a green Field, is the Coat of *Ambular*, an *Italian*, a name I suppose derived from the Latin word *Ambulator* a walker, and so the Coat and name agreeth well together.

If these two were without Hats and Swords, they would then be termed **Wrastler**, or two **Men Wrastling**: and such I find born in a Coat of Arms by an *Italian* Family *viz.* in a field Vert, two **Men** in their **Wastcoats** Argent, **Breeches** and **Hose** of Grey, **Shooes** Sable; **Striving, Strugling** or **Wrastling** with each other. Born by the name of St. *Pee.*

Wrastling is a Game of activity, as well as strength, so that an Artist is able herein to give a fall, where strength is not able to prevail: and as all Gamsters have their terms, so this goes not without a name for every **Touch, Trip** or **Tye**, that are used by them, the principal whereof takes as followeth.

Terms used in Wrastling.

Catch & Hold, is a running catching of one another.

Trip, a striking with the Foot against his adversaries Leg.

Cross Trip, is when the Legs are crossed one within another.

Inturn, is when he puts his Thigh between his adversaries Thighs, and lifts up his Thigh.

Running Buttock, is when by Girdle and Elbow, he turns his Buttock on his adversary, and lifts him up on his side.

Hugg or a **Cornish Hugg**, is when he has his adversary on his Breast, and there holds him.

Collar, is to fix or take hold on the adversaries collar.

Elbow, is to fix on the Elbow, and so to turn and wind him.

Lock, is when the Legs are cross one the other.

Twist,

File, is to cast the adversary down on the hand and foot, or elbow, or breeches: this is looked upon to be no fair fall.

Fall, is when he is cast on his neck and shoulders; or thrown flat on his back.

In the Sinister side of this 64 square, is another sort of **Mask** called by our English Ladies a **Vizard Mask**: it is made convex to cover the Face in all parts, with an out-let for the nose, and 2 holes for the eyes, with a slit for the mouth to let the air & breath come in and out. It is generally made of Leather, and covered with black Velvet. The Devil was the inventer of it, and about Courts none but Whores and Bauds, and the Devil Imps do use them, because they are ashamed to shew their Faces.

A. 3 such S. is born by *Visard*

LXV. He beareth in a **Lanskip of Air** and **Earth**, on the dexter side a **Fountain**, with a **Blackmoor kneeling** thereat, and a **Woman washing her**, clothed in a Gown of Scarlet. This hath two other terms or blazons by which it is known; the first is, **washing the Blackmoore white**, or to make him white; the second saith, it is **Labour in Vain**: and by that name some Houses are cognotized, and known by such Signs, in the City of *London.*

The like with a Fountain Or, and a Moor standing by it: is the Coat of *Fonsmore.*

LXVI. He beareth Azure, the **Virgin Mary on her Knees** Argent, **Desk** or **Table**, and a **Book** open thereon, before her proper: with the **Archangel Gabriel** Saluting her. The Tavern in *Holborne* having such a Sign at, is better known by the name of **Salutation**, then by the foresaid term or blazon, and therefore in short it is best to say, the **Angels Salutation** to the **Virgin Mary**, or **Saluting of the Virgin.** Such a Coat as this I find quartered by *Monsieur Philip Guillaume*, Duke of *Luxembourg*, Knight of the order of the *Golden Fleece*, in *France*.

Some term this Coat, the **Virgin Mary kneeling at her Oratory** (which is a place used to Pray at) and the Angel Saluting her.

LXVII. He beareth Sable, the **Virgin Mary** presenting of her Babe to receive the **Covenant of Circumcision**, or more particularly the **Virgin** beside the Altar kneeling, and the **High Priest** with the Babe in his hands to give him the **Mark**, or **Seal of Circumcision**, all proper. This as a Coat of Arms, is thus born by *Trivlce* of *Germany*. This is termed the **Circumcision of Christ**, and is no otherwise blazoned: for as this, and the last aforesaid, are Emblems of **Christ Jesus his Conception** and **Circumcision**; so you shall oft find other Figures and draughts whereby several passages of his Life, and acts are set forth unto us: I shall describe some, by which the ingenious may conceive of the rest.

The **Salutation** by the Angel coming to her as is set in the Figure, 66.

The **Conception of Christ**, by a Glory over the Virgin Mary.

The **Birth of Christ** by his lying in a Manger or Cratch, the Virgin by him, and an Ox, and an Ass eating. The **Nativity of Christ.**

The **Declaration of his Birth by the Angels**, appearing to the Shepherds by night in their Glory.

The **Circumcision of Christ**, by the High Priest cutting off the Fore-skin of his Flesh.

The **three Wise-Men Worshipping him**, by three Kings offering presents out of their Treasures to him sitting on the Virgins knees.

The **Flight of Joseph, Mary** and **Christ into Egypt**, by the Virgin and the Babe riding on as Ass, and *Joseph* going beside them.

The **Murther of the Innocent** at *Bethlehem*, by Horsemen and Soldiers killing of Children, and pulling them out of their Mothers Arms.

The **Baptism of Christ Jesus**, by his being in the River, and *John* pouring Water on his Head, and the Dove descending on him.

The **Casting out of Devils**, by Devils flying out of the mouths of mad Men bound in Chains and Fetters: and a Herd of Swine running into the Water.

The **Curing of the Bloody Flux** or **Issue**, by a Woman stooping down behind our Saviour, and touching the hem of his Garment.

The **Transfiguration of Christ**, by his Glory in the Clouds, and *Moses* and *Elias* talking with him, and the three Disciples *Peter*, *James*, and *John* fallen to the ground.

The **Rising of Lazarus**, by his standing by a Grave, and a dead person rising out of it.

The **Riding in Triumph into Jerusalem**, by Christs riding on an Ass, and People before and behind him carrying of Branches of Palm.

The **Institution of the Lords Supper**, by his sitting at Table with his Disciples, and a Cup or a Loaf in his hand.

The **Agony of Christ**, by his Praying and an Angel coming to comfort him, and his Disciples asleep by him, *cap.* 4. *numb.* 4.

The **Betraying of Christ**, by *Judas* kissing him and Soldiers apprehending him.

The **Scourging of Christ**, by his tying to a Pillar, and two Men one with a Whip of three Lashes, and another with Birtch Rods laying blows on him.

The **Crowning of him**, by his sitting on a square Stone and a Purple Robe on him, and a Reed in his Hand, and two Men with Staves forcing a circle of Thorns on his Head.

The **Mocking** and **Deriding of Christ**, by his standing in the Purple Robe, with a Reed in his Hand, and a Crown of Thorns on his Head.

The **Bearing of the Cross**, by having a Cross laid on his Shoulder, and his sincking under it, or as *chap.* 4 *numb.* 3.

The **Crucifying of Christ**, by his Nailing on the Cross with a Superscription over his head, *chap.* 4. *numb.* 5.

The **Death and Burial of Christ**, by his lying along and *Mary* Mourning over him, and kissing his Hand.

The **Descending of Christ into Hell**, by his being naked, with a Mantle carelessly cast about him, with a Cross in his hand, and the Devil in a Flame under his Feet.

The **Resurrection of Christ**, by his standing on a Tomb-stone with a Mantle about him, and a Cross in his Hand, with Clouds about him: see *chap.* 4. *numb.* 6.

The **Ascention of Christ**, by his going into the Clouds from the top of a Hill, as in *chap.* 4. *numb.* 7.

The **Descention of the Holy Ghost**, by a Dove in a Glory and Fiery Tongues set upon the Heads of the Disciples.

In the Sinister Chief of this square is a *Dutch* bearing, which is thus Blazoned, *viz.* a **Demy Jew close Girt**, having his **right Hand on his Head**, and his left on his side, **Clothed** Azure, in a **Field** Argent. Born by the name of *Schwab*.

G. a Fesse A. over all the like Demy Jew, B. Born by *Schwebell* of *Bavaria*.

S. the like with a Wreath about his Temples A. clothed O. Turned up in the Breast (or Lined) G. holding an Apple in his right Hand, and his left on his side. Born by the name of *Schoner*. His Crest is the same sans Arms, between two Elephants Snouts S.

LXVIII. He beareth Argent, a **demy German Woman**, with her **Hands together** before her Waste, Garment

Garment Gules; with a **Plume** of 3 Feathers on her head, Or. The *German* Heralds do Draw all their Robed Women after this manner, with round **puffing Wings** at their Shoulders, and the same Ruffles at the ends of the Sleeves, which come no lower than the Elbow, Ruffs about their Necks, and a kind of Bonnet on their heads. Some term her a **Woman in full Aspect**, &c.

Per Fesse Argent and Barry of 6 G. and O. two such demy *German* Women issuant of the second, is born by *Schenbeck* of *Saxony* in the Empire of *Germany*.

The like demy Woman out of a Crown, and Crowned, Hair pendant or flotant, holding of a covered Cup, O. Garment A. is born by *Van Konigsmarck* of *Brabant*.

The like holding a Catherine Wheel on her right hand and Crowned, is the Crest of *Van Mollendorf* of *Brabant* in *Lower Germany*, or the *Low Countreys*, called the *Netherlands*.

Per pale A. and G. a *German* Woman issuant, her Garment counterchanged of the Field, by the name of *Van Andelbere*.

Per pale O. and G. the like to the sinister with her Hair pendant, holding of a Laurel Garland V. the Garment counterchanged of the Field, is the Coat of *Van Molkau*, of *Misnia* in *Saxony*.

A demy Youth cloathed with a Garment having short puffing Sleeves B. the Arms with close sleeves, O. the Hands before his Breast proper, is the crest of *Lonhern von Rosheim* of *Alsatia*. The Figure is in the Base of this square.

LXIX. He beareth Or, a **Carpenter** with his **Square** in the right hand, and his **Axe** on his shoulder held by his left, all proper. If you desire a further Explanation, say a Carpenter with a **Cap** on his head, Sable; **turned up** Argent; cloathed in a short Coat girt about the middle, Grey; Breeches and Hose, Russet; Shoes of the second, holding a Square in his right hand, and his Axe or Hatchet on his shoulder, supported with his left, proper. By the name of *Carpenter*.

O. the like in a short Coat girt, Knees bare, with Startops on his Leggs, Sable; a Rule in one hand, and his Axe or Hatchet on his shoulder, is the Coat of *Kropff* in *Bavaria*.

A demy Man with a high Crown Cap O. turned up A. holding an Axe on his left shoulder proper, cloathed G. is the crest of *Sigristin*.

The Infula crowned and adorned with a Rose slip out of a Crown, I have caused to be set in this quarter for want of other room, but I have treated of it *chap.* 1. *numb.* 52, 53.

LXX. He beareth Azure, a **Woman** in her **Smock Sleeves**, (or **Wastcoat** Argent, **Petticoat** grey; seated (or sitting) on a Stool, with a **Churn** before her, **Churning of Butter**, Or; and a **Spaniel** or **Cur-Dog** licking of the overcast **Cream** from the **Churn-side**, Sable. This is the Coat of *Butterall*.

The like to this (sans Dog) in her Smock to the middle, and a Petticoat Sable, is the crest of *Putterer* of *Switzerland* in *Germany*.

This is the **good Dairy Mans Wife**, who as he is looking to his Farm abroad, she is making Cheese and Butter at Home; so that between both there is nothing lacking which is necessary for good House-keeping, as these following.

Things necessary for a good Farm or Dairy.

Good Tillage and good Pasture ground.
Housing good and dry,
Good Corn,
Dairy of Butter and Cheese,
Cowhouse, Sheep Coat, Sty, Kennel and Roost.
Cabin for Boar.
Market to be near.
Good Shepherd and Cowherd,
Good Plowman, Sower, Harrower and Carter.
Good Men and Women Servants.
Pastures well Stocked and Fenced.
Ground Tillaged in time.
Horses, Oxen, Cows, Sheep and Swine.
Plows, Harrows.
Tumbrell, Cart, Wagon and Wain.

In the Barn.

Barn well Locked.
Pitchforks long and short.
Straw fork, Rake and Ladder.
Broom, Wing, Winnow sheet, and Sack with a Band.
Shovell, Peck, Bushell and Strickles.
Reeving Seives.
Seed Corn, Seed Hoppet.

In the Stable.

Stable well Planked, Locked and Chained.
Strong Walls and well Lined.
Good Stall, Cratch or Rack, good Hay and Litter,
Manger, Chaff and Provender.
Fork, Dungfork, and Hay hook.
Sieve, Skep, Bin, Broom and Pail.
Hand-Barrow, Wheel-Barrow, Shovel and Spade.
Spunge, Curry Combe, Main Combe, Whip.
Hammer, Nails, Buttrice and Pincers.
Bridle, Saddle, Pannel, Pad, Pack saddle.
Waunty, Whit-leather and Nall.
Slips, Collars, Harness, Halter, Headstall and Cord.
Crotches, Pines, Apron and Cisars.

In the Cow-House.

A **Boose**, *is the space between Range and Cratch.*
The **Boose Stake**, *to tye the Cows to.*
A **Range** *either for Oxe or Cow to which they are tyed.*
A **Cratch**,
The **Gwop**, *where they Dung.*
Ore Stalls, *when made up with Boards to hinder their striking.*
Soles *about the Cows Necks and* **Thromp Withs.**
The **Calpe** *for the Sole is the top of it which hath the holes in.*
A **Foake** *or* **Euill** *or* **Pelve.**

In the Cart-House.

Axel Tree well clouted and shod.
Cart-Ladder, Wheels and Geers.
Piercer, Pod, Pitchfork or Pikell.
White or Shave, Whiplash, Goad and Rope.
Pulling Hook, Hand Hook, Sickle and Sythe.
Tumbrell, Dung Crone, Pick-Axe.
Mattock, Bottle and Bag.
Plough, Chain, Coulters, Shares and Sucks.
Ground Clouts, side Clouts.
Plough Beetle, Staff and Slade.
Oxbows, Oxeyokes, Horse Collars.
Oxe-Teem and Horse-Teem.
Rake Iron Toothed, Harrow, Weeding Hook.
Hay-hook, Sickle, Fork and Rake.
Bush Sythe, Grass Sythe, Rifle and Cradle.
Rubbing Stone, Sand, Whetstone and Grindlestone.
Skuttle or Skreine or Sieve.
Tar, Tar-pot, Sheep Mark, Tar-Kettle.
Shearing Shears for Sheep.
Yoke for Swine, Twitchers or Rings.
Long and short Ladders, and a Lath Hammer.

In the Farmers House.

Trowell, Hod and Tray, Scales, Beam and all sorts of Weights.
Sharp Mole Spear with Barbes.
Sharp cutting Spade to cut the Hay Mow.
Soles, Fetters, Shackles, Horselocks, Padlocks.
Clavestock, Rabbet Stock, a Jack to Saw upon, and Pinwood Timber.
With a Didall and Crome to drain Ditches.
Hatchet, Bill, Aze, Ads and Nails of all sorts.
Iron Frower, and Wedges to cleave Laths and Wood.
Saws long and short, Beetle and Levers with a Roll for a Saw-Pit.

Bad Butter, That is

Of two Colours, of a bad Taste, too Salt, full of hairs, not well washed from the Milk, nor well Brined, and not well Potted, or Tubbs not sound, which will in a short time cause it to be tainted.

Bad Cheese, That is

White and dry, the Butter of it being in the Market when it is making; too Salt, full of Eyes, not well prest but hoven and swelling, tough, full of spots, full of hair, full of whey, full of mites and gentles, rotten and yellowish; made of Burnt Milk, and of stinking and bad Runnet or Steep.

All which good Dairy Women must endeavour to avoid, else they will spoil that at home which the good Man is careful to preserve abroad.

The Galotia set in this quarter, I have spoken of it elsewhere, see *chap.* 1. *numb.* 96. This is to shew you the true shape and form of it.

LXXI. He beareth Argent, a **China Man in full Aspect, Garment** Gules, holding forth both his Arms, and with his right hand supporting of a **China Trumpet,** Or.

On the partition score which divideth these quarters, *numb* 70. and 71. is placed a **Stone** or **Rock,** Gules, whereon is set an Old Man **Naked to the Thighs,** cloathed in a short Coat close girt, Sable; his hands before his Breast, on his Shoulders a **Mantle** (pendant backwards) or hanging behind him, Argent. This is the Crest of *Rein* of the *Rhine Palatinate.*

The **Slipper** or **Pantable** above, and the **Paten** under it, set on the dexter side of this last quarter, I was constrained to set here, to shew the form and shapes thereof, though I have treated of them, and by whom born elsewhere, as *chap.* 1. *numb.* 96.

In the sinister chief of this long square, is Engraven a **demy Woman sans Arms,** cloathed in a Coat close girt, with **short round puffed Sleeves;** the **Temples wreathed,** the ends **flotant.** Such a Blazoning as this with the Garment party per pale Gules and Argent, the Wreath of the same, is the crest of *Van Konitz* of *Tyrold.*

The like out of a Coronett O. the Garment G. Sleeves A. her Hair pendant, Temples Wreathed, whereon is set three Laurel leaves, is the Crest of *Tangell* of *Thurland.*

The like per pale O. and S. with a *Dutch* Hat tyed under her Chin, the Tassels pendant of the same, is the Crest of *Van Wedell* of *Brabant.*

There are several *German* and *Dutch* Families which bear **demy Women** in this kind of Habit, with Arms holding several sorts of Instruments, as

Van Rungen beareth for his Crest the like demy Woman in full Aspect, the like Garment with close Sleeves to the hands B. which support two Banners O. on her head a Broad brim'd Hat, set with a Plume of 7 Feathers A. and G. counterchangeably.

The like out of a Coronett O. Garment per pale A. and S. a Ruff about her Neck and Sleeve hands, Hair **pendant** or **dissevered,** holding a Ducal Crown on her head with both hands, is the crest of *Van Warnslet* of *Brabant.*

The like cloathed G. hair dissevered, on a Wreath about her Temples held by both hands, 3 Ostrich Feathers G. A. and O. is the crest of *Van Brederlow* of *Saxony.*

*

TO

TO

The Worshipful RICHARD LEIGH,

OF

EAST-HALL in HIGH LEIGH, Esquire.

TO Compile and Compleat a Work of this Importance, and have never a Slip or an Error, would necessarily require an Universal Knowledge, and the Conspiracy of many Learned Heads; yet that I may a little secure past Omissions, it hath been my purpose to make further Additions to the foregoing Chapters, which though they come to be as Children Born out of due time; yet they may be by the Ingenious ranked in their proper places, and accepted in good Kind, rather than draw an Oblique Censure from so Noble a Disposition as your self, who was in the Beginning so Zealous a promoter of the Design of him, who was and ever will remain

Your Obliged Servant and Indebted Friend,

Randle Holme

Additions to Chapter 1, 2, 3, 4, 5.

THIS Plate I have ordered, as an Addition of some things omitted in the foregoing Chapters of this Book, which the gentle Reader is desired to accept of them in as good part as if they had been inserted in their proper places.

CI. He beareth Gules, a **Saxon Crown**, Or. This I term a *Saxon* Crown, because such a fashioned Crown was then in use by our Kings, as most of the Coins and Seals of those Times doth abundantly testifie. This was in **Edward the Confessors** time; being a **Cap** or **Helmet**, and a **Crown** on it in this form, which is a strange one to us; yet in the time of *William the Conquerour*, it was the same, as his great Seal manifests: The Helmet or Cap thus adorned, they called the **Cyne-helme**, or Kings Helmet; as the Diadem without the Helmet, they termed the **Cyne-band**, or **Kings Band** or **Royal Fillet**, which was no other than a Golden Fillet or Rubin tied about the head, with a Bow Knot behind. See *numb.* 7. 8. which should have been set before this.

CII. This is another fashion of a **Crown**, which I drew out of the Glass Window in *Whitford* Church in *Wales*, which both for its Antiquity and Rarity I could not pass by; for I could judge the same to be no new thing, but rather the form of the Crown then used; but whether it be a device, or whence soever it doth proceed I know not; but this I have observed that the Crowns that are put on the heads of most **Ancient Kings**, in Pictures of the Holy Story of the Bible, rudely drawn near 1000 years since, are for the most part thus made, having the raised parts of the Circle no otherwise than Endents, or Flowers de lis, with a Towell or such like rouled about the same (as I suppose) to hold it stedfast upon the head.

CIII. This is another sort of **Circle raised into Roses** with Flowers de lis a little appearing above the Ring of the Circle, yet in part have some advanced above the heads of the Roses, as if it were a Flower set upon a Flower.

CIV. He

P·M·Rad Leigh de East Hall in High Leigh in Com Cestr Armiger

CIV. He beareth Sable, a **Miter** and an **Earls Crown conjoyned** Or, **Pearled** Argent. This kind of Ornament of a Coat of Arms belonging to a Bishop containing both Spiritual and Temporal Jurisdictions, I have seen drawn of old. Such a Bishop is he of *Cologne* in the Empire of *Germany*, and the Bishop of *Durham* in the Kingdom of *England*. It may be termed a **Lords Spiritual and Temporal Crown.**

CV. He beareth Argent, on the top of an **Infula** Azure, **turned up**, Or, and **divided in the Front**, and **reversed**, or turned down; a **Sprig of Cypress.** Born by the name of *Capper*.

The like B. Lined G. born by the name of *Eschenbach* of *Narenburge* in *Germany*.

The Earl of *Pommeren* in the Empire of *Germany* hath the reverting of the Turn-up, rolled up after the manner of a scroll A. the Infula G. Button on the top O. with a Peacocks tail proper for his Crest.

In the Sinister Chief, is a **Cardinals Hat** with a square Crown and Brim, of some termed a **Square Hat**, or a *Dutch* **four cornered Hat**, Strings crossed in form of the Figure of 8. The like is the Coat Armour for the Town of *Landshut* in *Germany*, *viz.* A. 3 fusils B. Strings G.

CVI. He beareth Vert, an **Infula**, Or; **turned up** in form of a **Battlement**, Argent; on the top a **tuft of Grass.** This is a part of that Bearing belonging to the Family of *Mangsreuter* of *Bavaria*, *viz.* Or, a **Blackmoor Woman** issuant in Base, clothed Gules, with such an Infula on her head, Argent; holding two Trumpets Salterwise over her Breast. Some Blazon this an **Infula out of a Crown Mural**, or **top of a Tower.**

He beareth Or, the like **Infula** Gules, **turned up** Azure, **adorned** in the **front** and **either side** with Feathers Argent, by the name of *Engelberg*. After this manner the rising sides are often beset with **Buttons, Roses, Leaves, Piles of Grass**, and with variety of other things; also **Fish, Horns** of Beasts and such like, which were endless to give examples of each particular.

CVII. This is the **Royal Crown**, or **Royal Ensign of the Head** as the *Saxons* call it, and such we find in the great Seal of *William the Conquerour*, and his Son *William Rufus*, which they wore on Caps, the raising from the Circle being **Fleurie**, and likewise high **Pyramid points** which have Crosses Bottony on them; some of these Crowns having Labels at each Ear, and something like an Arch that goes cross the Head.

The **Crown of King Henry the First**, is only made with Flowers de lis, which are raised but a little, having two Labels of Pearl or some such thing hanging at each Ear. King *Stephen* also had his Crown of the like form with *Henry* the second and third, Kings of *England*.

CVIII. This is the form of the **Eastern Imperial Crown** or **Diadem**, Antiently used by the *Constantinopolitan* Emperours: Thus the Diadem from a *Circulus Aureus*, a Golden Circle or Fillet compassing the head, which was the first adorning of the Kings and Emperours heads, encreased with the addition of other parts, as Rayes of Gold, Flowers de lis, and at length Arched, which went from Ear to Ear over the Crown of the Head; nay at last it was framed to go over a Golden Helmet or Cap, which made it somewhat like the close Crowns now in use. *Constantine* the great had his Diadem on his Helme, but the frequent joining of the Helmet or Cap to the Diadem, was not till about *Theodosius* his time.

And whereas the Tying was usually behind in the simpler Diadem; yet those of this latter fashion were either Tyed at both Ears (as we may guess by the **Labels** or **Fillets** that hang on both sides of their Heads) or else the Caps or Helmets had **Labels** hanging down, only as **Bishops Miters** and **Cardinals Caps** have: And in-diverse of these Crowns the Fashion is so frequently varied, that you would think they had as much change in their **Diadems**, as Ladies have in their **Dressings** or **Head Attires.**

But it is easier for any Man to satisfie himself by seeing these variety of Crowns together on the Medal, than for me to describe them, therefore I shall refer you to these Authors who have set them down.

Heraclius Medaills, in his *Lipsius de cruce.*
Gretser Tom. 1. *de cruce Christi. lib.* 2. *and Tom.* 3. *lib.* 1.
Opmerus Chronol. lib. 2. where there is not only the old Emperours Effigies, but very accurately depicted.
Crusius his Turgo-græcia.
Marcellus Corcyrensis Sacr. Ceremon. lib. 1. *sect.* 5.
Paschalius de Coronis lib. 9. *cap.* 17. &c.
Seldens Titles of Honour, cap. 8. *fol.* 156.

CIX. He beareth Azure, an **Infula reversed** Gules, **double turned up**, Or and Argent; in the front opened, and set with a Ciprus Branch. Others Blazon it an **Infula Cap turned over, Lined double** (or twice turned up) the first Or, the under or second Argent, with an **Indent** in the middle of both. This is born by the name of *Caphire*, or *Caphigher*.

Two Infula's reversed, one Gules the other Azure, turned up with an indent, counterchanged, is the crest of *Van Christwitz*. Some bear these with the opening before, others have it behind, as in the next Example.

CX. He beareth Or, a **Cap**, a **Morion**, or a **Steel Cap**, or a round **Scull Cap**, Azure; turned up, and **open behind**, Argent. Three such in Pale, is the coat of *Steelerd*. Sometimes you shall find them born with their Turn-up open before.

He beareth Sable, a **long Cap reversed**, Argent; **Lined** or **Turned up** Ermine. Born by the name of *Bruch*. In the Palatinate of *Rhine*, in the Kingdom of *Bohemia*. Some to express the length of the Cap call it a **capped Cap**; but I take it rather to be a **Capped Tanke.** See *chap.* 1. *numb.* 57. This Figure is in the Sinister Chief.

CXI. He

CXI. He beareth Argent, a **Russia Cap**, Gules; **Lined, Furred** and **Turned up**, Or. Three such Caps are the Coat of Arms belonging to the Family of *Rushworth*.

☞ Others Blazon it a **Muscovia Cap**, or a **Prussia Cap**, Gules; **Furred**, Or; signifying thereby that the edge or turning up thereof is a Fur.

In the chief of this square is an **Infula wreathed**, with the **Labels** or **ends flotant**; which kind is born by the name of *Artzet*. Viz. out of a Wreath A. and B. the ends **dissevered**, an Infula G.

Out of a Coronett O. an Infula parted per Salter O. and G. on the top a Button of the first, is born by *Bolsenheim* of *Alsatia*.

Crowns are also born with a **Scarfe**, the two Labels or ends flying backwards after this manner, of which I shall give one example, on a Moors head, a Ducal Crown with the ends of a **Scarfe** (or Towel) **flourishing** or flying back A. is the crest of *Van Landsperg* of *Alsatia* in *Germany*.

Out of a Coronett a Mans head wreathed the ends flotant A. and crowned O. is the crest of *Lincken* of *Auspurge*.

CXII. He beareth Argent, an **Infula Cap**, (or a **Pyramid Cap**, or a **Spiral Cap**) **Imbowed** or turning backwards, Gules; **Button** and **Tassel**, also **Furred** or **Lined** Or. This is born by the name of *Coplow*. Some term this **Infula Bowed** and **Imbowed**. The like Cap to this on a Mans head, hanging down his Back, and reverting in the end Sable, turned up Argent, is the crest of *Wisnang* in *Switzerland*. Others Blazon it an **Infula pendant** and **revertant**; or the **end reversed**.

Sometimes they are born Imbowed forward, as *numb.* 120. and **Imbowed** the **end erected**, as *numb.* 114.

In the dexter chief is the form of the **Bishops** and **Abbots Miter**, as it is drawn by the *High Dutch* and *German* Heralds; having in all ordinary Coats neither **Labels** nor **Fillets with Tassels**, or any other adornments with Pearls and Gems, as is used about Miters that are set over the Escochions of Arms belonging to Bishops, Arch-Bishops and Abbots. This is termed a **Miter Cap**, or a **Cap open** in the crown or top, like a **Miter** or **Miter-wise**.

The like A. with a tuft of Grass out of it, is the crest of *Van Vinningen* in the *Rhine Palatinate*.

The like Gyrony G. and A. on each point a Button O. with a tuft of Grass, is the crest of *Van Roggwell*.

The **Miter Cap** is sometimes born with a **Turn-up**, as other Caps are, with openings before or behind, or with Fur or Ermin.

In the Sinister chief is another form of a **Miter**, contrary to that mentioned *chap.* 1. *numb.* 39. this having neither Fillets, Labels, or any adornments by Gems or Pearls; and thus they are generally made when any thing is charged upon them, or are divided into diverse colours, as the like parted per Cheveron G. and A. 3 Balls counterchanged born by *Van Frawenberg*.

CXIII. He beareth Argent, a **Copped Tank** Argent, **turned up**, in form of a **Chapeau**, Ermin; **Crowned**, Or; with a Branch of **Palm issuant**. Others Blazon it a **Cyprus Branch** out of a Crownett, fixed on an Infula turned up, *&c.* This is born by the name of *Panholmez*.

G. the Infula B. crowned O. Furred Ermin; the Blanch proper, is the Coat and Crest belonging to the Family of *Buschen* in *Bavaria*.

In the sinister chief is a **Nuns Hood**, which have no Bag or - - - - - behind, as the **Friers Hoods**, or **Couls** have, as you may see *chap.* 4. *numb.* 32.

A. such a Nun (or Vestal Virgins) hood S. is quartered by *Van Dabertz-Hofen* of *Bavaria*.

CXIV. He beareth Or, a **China Womans Hat**, or a **Womans Hat of China**, Sable. Others term it a **Chinensian Umbrell** for a Womans head. Three of these is born by the name of *Shade*.

In the dexter chief is an **Infula Imbowed**, the **end erected** (or **Bowed Imbowed erect**) **turned up behind**, ending in a point (or to a point before) and such a kind of Head-tyre is born by *Kolben*.

Also out of a Coronett on an Old Mans head an Infula imbowed erected G. is the crest of Sir *John Bowser*, Knight of the Garter in R. 2. Reign.

In the Sinister chief is an example of **Turn-up Caps** out of Crowns, as well as Coronetts about Hat Crowns; of which see more *numb.* 119. 128. and of Caps and Crown out of one another, *chap.* 1. *numb.* 16.

Out of a Coronett O. a Cap G. turned up Er. on the head of it a Peacocks Tail erected proper, is the Crest of the Earl of *Preussen* in *Germany*. Some Blazon it thus, The Peacocks Tail on a Cap, turned up, out of a Coronett.

The like Cap out of the Crown (*ut Ante*) the Turn-up Furred A. and open before, with an Ostrich Feather erected on the top of it, of the same, is the Crest of *Poppell Van Lobcowitz*.

CXV. He beareth Gules, a **Jews Head cover**, Argent. Some term it a **Jews Bonnet**, or **Cop** and **Scarffed**. Thus on the head of a Man, is from the Garb or Fashion termed a Jews Head; but the covers themselves are called ; see *numb.* 25. Three such as aforesaid, is the Coat of *Jewin*.

B. a Jews head couped at the Shoulders, thus attired on the head A. is the Arms of *Gossenprot* of *Auspurgray*.

My Graver was mistaken in this Jews head cover, therefore let him be Pardoned, because he knew not what it was that he was making; see it right drawn in *numb.* 125.

In the chief of this square is an **Infula Bendwise**, with a **Scarfe** or **Tail pendant** from the top of it, in form of a Cheveron. This is an *Assyrian* Ladies Wear, and it is used generally to the Habit of that Queen which represents that part of the World called *Asia*, as you may see *chap.* 5. *numb.* 40.

G. a Woman to the Sinister, habited in a close Gown with

with hanging Sleeves from her Elbows; on her head an Infula with a Scarfe pendant A. holding a Cup covered in her left hand O. the right on her side, is the Coat and Crest of *Blasbelch* of *Carinthia*.

CXVI He beareth Argent, an **Head Scarfe**, or a **Tail for the Head, ends crost** and **pendant**, Sable. Born by the name of *Valewer*.

The like Hood or Scarfe Argent, in a Field Gules, is born by the name of *Scharffenohet*.

This kind of **Head Tire** or **Dress**, is oft found in Crests to hang loosely or carelessly on Womens heads, as in the examples *chap.* 4. *numb.* 55. and *lib.* 2. *chap.* 18. *numb.* 129. 130. though in this place it is made up and crossed after the manner of an Hood.

CXVII. He beareth Or, a **Copped Tanke** parted per pale Gules and Azure; **turned up** Argent, adorned with two **Pheasant Feathers** each side one, Bendways. Others thus, a copped Tanke between two **streight Feathers expenced** Bendways, from the turning up. Or thus, a Tanke between two Feathers set at the middle of the turning up, Bendwise. This is the Crest of *Van Winsberg*.

CXVIII. He beareth Argent, an **Infula** Gules, **Turned up** with two **Indents**, the **String crossed**, the **ends perforating** the Cap, Buttoned and Tassled Or. This is born by the name of *Garret*.

Party per pale B. and G. the like Cap or Infula counterchanged, Turned up, String, Buttons and Tassels O. is born by the name of *Mulegg zu Hugenang*.

A. 3 Infulas to the sinister, embowed and turned up to a point; the Strings intire and crossed G. is the Coat of *Melizing* of *Brunswick*.

CXIX. In this quarter are two sorts of **Infula Caps** which are only distinguished by their manner of turning up.

That in Chief is termed an **Infula to the sinister**, bound about with a **Scarfe** the **ends flotant, turned up** with a Furr to a point or **Chapeau wise**; such a Cap on a demy Mans head sans Arms G. Scarfe O. turning A. is the crest of *Van Cortenbach*.

O. a demy Man sans Arms to the Sinister, Garment G. on his head an Infula of the same, scarfed (or bound about with a Rubin) the ends **dissevered** A. turned up of the second, is the Coat of *Rehebock*.

The **Infula** in Base, is termed an **Infula turned up to a point before**, adorned with a Feather in the hinder part; the **Ears tyed** together, the **Strings Tassled** and **flotant** each side the Knot. This is of some termed an **eared Infula**, with **Strings and Tassels** fixed thereunto: yet some bear such **Stringed Caps** without Ears, as for Example.

A. a Demy Woman sans Arms cloathed, having on her Head an Infula with Ears tied under her Chin, the Strings, Tassels, Feathers, and Turn-up, all G. is quartered by, and is the Crest of *Thaimer* of *Tyrole*. But *Thaimer* of *Bavaria*, hath the Infula G. turned up to a **fox-point**, O. Tassels, Strings and Feather A.

A. 3 such (sans Feathers) the Strings pendant, G. is born by *Van Bothman*.

CXX. In the Base of this Square are two other kinds of Caps for the Head, that on the Dexter side, is a **Russian Cap Extended** and **Imbowed** to the right (or forewards) **Button** and **Tassel Erected**: and such is born by *Wesperman* of *Alsatia*, *viz.* a Demy Boy to the Sinister, sans Arms, Habited O. Turned down, A. on his Head such an Infula imbowed, of the first: Turned up of the second.

The like Demy Man to the Sinister, Cloaths and Cap Imbowed forwards (or to the Front or Forehead) at the point a Plume of three Feathers, B. born for the Crest of *Wilheimsdorf* of *Franckford*.

The Cap in the sinister Base, is termed an **Indians Feathered Cap**, with a **Button** on the top, set with two Ostrich Feathers **Contrary falling**. Three such as these Gules, in a Field Argent. Is born by *Calender*.

In the sinister Chief, is a **Boot** to the **Sinister**, (that is to say, the Toe is turned up to the left side of the Field, whereas generally all charges look towards, or set to the right side) the **Tops, Turned down**. But I should rather take this for a **Roman Star-top**: however by the name that beareth it, it should be no other then a Boot, for A. 3 such S. Tops O. is born by the name of *Boot*.

Per Fesse S. and Barry bendy A. and B. a Lion Rampant issuant O. and such a Boot S. Top O. is the States Arms of *Schwandorf*.

CXXI. He beareth Argent, a **Girdle** in form of a **Simicircle** (or **Crescant** as some say) the end **Pendant**, Azure: the **Buckle, Runner** and **Taps**, Or. Born by the name of *Girdler*.

G. the like **Girdle** A. Semy de Cross Bottony fitched in the Foot of the fourth, O. is the Coat Armor of *Van Beldersheim* in the Palatinate of *Rhyne*. Some term this a **Carriers Belt** or **Girdle**: but I rather take it to be the **Girdle of Honor** mentioned in Holy Scripture, which was bestowed upon Persons worthy and deserving Renown. *And Jonathan put off the Robe that was upon him, and gave it* David, *and his Garments, even to his Sword, and to his Bow, and to his Girdle*, 1. Sam. 18. 4. and 2. Sam. 18. 11. By the girding of the Girdle is signified Watchfulness and Care, and hast in Matters of weighty concernment, when on the other side the loosing of the Girdle of the Loins, is a token of Idleness, Sloth, and carelessness in business as the Prophet *Isaiah* informs us: *Isa.* 5. 27.

CXXII. He beareth Gules, a **Boot, bowed in the Knee** with one indent in the top, the **Toe sharp pointed**, and **Erected** or **Turned up**, Argent: the **Spur**, Or. Born by the name of *Kollesheim* of *Alsatia* in *Germany*. This may be termed a **Dutch Boot**, because all their Shoes, and Boots

for their **Skates** to slide upon, have all such hooked, or turned up pointed Toes.

In the Dexte side and Chief of this Quarter, is the Crest of *Crummell* of the *Nether Rhyne* Palatinate, *viz.* a **Boot couped below the Knee**, the **Sole erect**, Argent: **Spur**, Or. Some term it, a **Boot** the **Foot erected** and **couped under the Knee**: others call it a **Boot Leg**, the **Foot Elevated.**

CXXIII. He beareth Argent, two **Dutch Boots**, the **Soles erected, Imbowed in the Knees**, and **Endorsed**, Sable; **Issuant out of an Hill in Base**, Vert: **Spurred**, Or. Born by the name of *Boore*, in *High-Dutch Leersen.*

Two *Dutch* Boots Endorsed and Imbowed, one A. the other G. the Feet erected and Spurred O. is the Crest of *Kolbsheim* aforesaid, *numb.* 22.

CXXIV. He beareth Argent, a **Master** in a **side Coat**, Sable; Instructing of a **Boy** in his Coat how to Read: or a **Master teaching of a Scholar** who hath a Book in his left Hand, all proper. This is the Emblem or description of the first of the Liberal Sciences, which is called **Grammar.**

Grammar Described.

By Grammar is comprehended all sorts of Learning, the Art or Science of Grammar is the right way of Speaking and Writing with Reason and Authority. It is the Study and Profession of Letters and good Littrature or Learning, and is the product of all other Arts and Sciences whatsoever. It is described by Men and Women, or them singly reading in Books, having laid by them Volums, Tomes, Folio's, and Book of all sorts and sizes on Tables or Desks, and stands by them.

Grammar, as by it is understood all sorts of Learning, it may then briefly be defined under these several notions, *viz.* Letters, Words, Sentences.

LETTERS.

The first and more simple Ingredients required in Grammar, is the information and Instruction of Letters; of some termed the Elements of Learning, which is the Letters of the Alphabet, which consists in these several termed expressions.

Alphabet, which is all the Letters used in any Language or Tongue, of which every Nation and People have for the most part a variety, and a certain number: as the *Hebrew* have 22. The *Chaldee*, 23. The *Syriaque*, 22. each having five Vowels which are double expressed by certain pricks and Marks, either over or under the Letters. The *Tartarian* have to every of their Characters a Vowel joyned to it, as *la, le, li, lo, lu*, which makes long and troublesome Alphabet. The *Indians* have 47. The *Æthiopians* have 26 Letters, to which they apply their 7 Vowls, and add 20 other Aspirated Syllables, which makes no less then 202 Letters in their Alphabet. The *Egyptians*, 24. The *Greeks*, 24. The *Latins*, 23. The *Saxons* and *English*, 24. of which Characters I shall principally discourse in this place.

Consonant, is a Letter which cannot be sounded without a Vowel, all these are Consonants: *b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, w, x, y, z.*

Mutes, are Letters that are sounded with a kind of whisper: as *b, c, d, f, g, k, p, q, t.*

Liquides, are *l, m, n, r.*

Aspiration, is only the Letter *h.*

Numerals, are *I, V, X, L, C, D, M.*

Semi-vowels, are such as have the sound of Vowels in the name of the Letter: as *el, em, en, ar, es, ex, ez.*

Mutes of Semi-Vowels, are *be, ce, de, ge, pe, te, je.*

Spiritous or **Breathed Letters**, are such Consonants as require to the framing of them a more strong emission of the breadth either through the Nose, or Mouth: as *M, N, ng, hm, hn, hng, V, Dh, L, R, Z, zh, F, Th, hl, hr, S, sh, ch.*

Semi-Spiritous or **half Breathed Consonants**, are such as are accompanied with some kind of Vocal murmure: as *B, D, G.*

Non-Spirituous or **breathless Letters**, are such as are wholy Mutes: as *P, T, C.*

Sonorus Letters, sounded through the Nose, are such as require some Voice or Vocal sound to the framing of them: as *M, N, ng, V, Dh, L, R, Z, Zh.*

Mutes of Affinity to these Sonorous Letters: are *hm, hn, hng, F, Th, Hl, Hr, S, Sh.*

Compound Letters, are *ct, ps, sc, sch, tn, gn, gn, st.*

Double Consonants, as *ll, tt, rr, w, mm, nn.*

Compound Vowels, are commonly called Dipthongs, or Tripthongs.

Aspirated compound Letters, are *th, ps, Qu, Ph, Dh, Ds, Ts, Ch.*

Compound Letters and **Vowels**, are *Eng, Ev, edh, Ez, Ezh*, whose Mutes are *Hme, Hne, Hnge, Fe, The, Che, Hle, Hre, Se, She.*

Affinity of Letters, are *M* to *hm*, *N* to *hn*, *ng* to *hng*, *V* to *F*, *Dh* to *Th*, *Gh* to *Ch*, *L* to *Hl*, *R* to *Hr*, *Z* to *S*, *Zh* to *Sh*, *B* to *P*, *D* to *T*, and *G* to *C.*

Iotacismus, is when an *I* Letter fully is sounded: as *Jovi, Jota.*

Lambdicismus, is when a Letter in a Word is either taken away, or added to it: as *Ellucet, Sallvus* for *Elucet* and *Salvus*: or *Moultus, Faulsus* for *Multus* and *Falsus.*

Ischnotes, is when one Letter in a Word, is put for another: as *Nync, Tync*, for *Nunc* and *Tunc*: being for better grace in the sound.

Traulismus, is when through the stumbling of the Tongue, a Syllable too much is added to a Word: as *Cacacanit* for *Canit*, and *Tututullius* for *Tullius.*

Plateasmus, is when one Letter is changed for another: as *Vero* for *Fero*, *Argo* for *Ergo*, *Sparma* for *Sperma.*

Etymology,

Etymology, is the true Original or Derivation of a Word: as *Lepus, quasi Levipes*, a Hare from it light Feet.

Vowels, are letters which make a full sound of themselves, which are five in number: as *a, e, i, o, u*, whereunto is added the Greek Vowel, *y*.

Syllable, is the pronouncing of one Letter or more with one breathe: as, *I am*

Monosyllable, a word of one Syllable: as, *of, the, thing, strength*.

Dissyllable, a Word of two Syllables: as *A-ve, An-gel, Mih-ty*.

Trisyllable, a word of three Syllables.

Tetrasyllable, a word of four Syllables.

Polisyllable, a word that hath many Syllables.

Diphthong, is the sound of two Vowels together in one Syllable, and of them there are five: as, *æ, œ, au, eu, ei* or *ie*, but instead of *æ* and *œ* we do commonly pronounce *e*, also *ee, ea, eo, oo, ou*, of some they are called Bivocales, Tripthongs or Trivocales, if three be together.

Redundat or **Superfluous Letters,** are such as have one and the same power and sound: as, *C* and *K*, *F* and *PH*, *T* and *S*, *&c.* or by reckoning double Letters amongst the single: as *X* and *CS*, *Q* and *CV*, also *J* Consonant which is made up of *dzh*, or by assigning several Letters to represent one simple power: as, *th, sh, sch*.

Deficient Letters, are such as have not their true and proper power or sound: as *C* not to be named *See* but *Kee*, *h* which should be pronounced with an Aspiration or open Mouth like *ae*; so *G* not *Jee* but to have the sound *Gee* and of *eg*; so *R* not to be called *Ar*, but *er*; also *V* Consonant like *efe*, or *Eve*; an *Z* should be stilled *ez* not *zad*: besides our Letters are not always fixed or determined to the same signification, as *C* before the Vowels *a, o, u*, is pronounced like *K*, and before the Vowels *e, i*, as *S*, upon which Sir *Thomas Smith* calls it *modo Serpens, modo Cornix*, sometimes a Serpent, sometimes a Chough; also the Letters *C, S, T*, are often used alike, and *S* frequently used for *Z*. And which is more Irrational some Letters of the same shape and sound are sometimes used for Vowels, sometimes for Consanants, as *J, V, W, Y*, which ought not to be confounded.

Improper Letters, are such as are expressed by words of several Syllables, as in the *Greek* and *Hebrewe*, as *Alpha, Beta, Gamma, &c.* and thus it is in 15 several Alphabets mentioned by *Hermanus Hugo*: In which respect the *Roman* and *English* are much more convenient, each Letter being indifferently well named simply by his power and sound.

Orthography, is the true spelling of Letters, according to the true meaning of the word.

Orthoepia, is of kind to it, and is the Art of right speaking.

Time or **Pause** to be observed in the pronouncing of several **Words,** or **Sentences:** as *Comma, Semicolon, Colon, &c.* I have formerly spoken of them in the Art of Printing, *chap* 3. *numb.* 56. to which add these two or three.

Hyphen, is a mark of subunion either of two words, as Self-love; or of the connection of two Syllables at the end of a Line, and the beginnnig of the succeeding Line thus = [ ]

Explication, thus marked [ ]

Irony, thus marked | being a Derision or Dissimulation mark.

WORDS.

The joyning of one, two, three, or more Syllables together, is the production of Words and these are differently expressed, as may be gathered from what follows.

Words Distinguished by Writing not Pronunciation, these are Words of the same sound, yet by Writing signifies contrary things: as, *Boar, Bore*; *Done, Dun*; *Dear, Deer*; *Hear, Here*; *Heart, Hart*; *Son, Sun*; *Some, Sum*; *Toe, Towe*; *To, Too, Two*.

Distinguished Words in pronouncing not in Writing, as *Give*, to bestow a thing, and *Give*, a Bill or Bond: *is* and *his* in English, and *is* and *his* in Latin: *Get*, to obtain a thing, and *Get*, a stone: which some Writs *Jeat*, &c.

Equivocals, are Words of several significations, which renders them doubtful and obscure: as, *Malus*, which signifies both an Apple Tree, and Evil, and a Mast of a Ship: so *Populus*, signifies a Poplar Tree, and the People, with many more in the Latin: so in the English a *Bill* signifies a Weapon, and a Birds Beak, and a Written Scrowl: *Grave*, signifies Sober, Ancient, and Sepulcher, and to Carve on Mettle.

Ambiguous Words, which have doubtful significations, or hard to be translated, for every Language have some peculiar Phrases belonging to it, which to turn *Verbatim* into another Tongue would seem wild and insignificant, in which our English doth too much abound, Witness those words of *Break, Bring, Cast, Clear, Come, Cut, Draw, Fall, Hand, Keep, Lay, Make, Pass, Put, Run, Set, Stand, Take, &c.* none of which have less then 30 or 40, and some above a 100 several significations, according to their use in Phrases, as may be seen in the *Dictionary*.

Synonymous Words, are superfluity of Words for one and the self same thing, it is said that the *Arabick* have above a 1000 Words for a *Sword*, and 500 for a *Lion*, and 200 for a *Serpent*, and 80 for *Hony*. Examples of this kind in our *English* is innumerous, take this one Word for all: *Danger, Hazand, Peril, Jeopardy, Unsafe, Venture, Adventure, Endanger, Expose, Incur*.

Anomalisms, are Words of Irregularity, unliknes, and not to have the same in Grammatical Constructions, but varieth from its Primitive Word: as *Jupiter Jovis*, and in our Tongue *Buy, Bought*; *Seek, Sought*; *Have, Had, Hast*, &c.

Analogysms, are Words of an *Agreement, Harmony*, or apt answering of the thing applied thereunto.

Difference in Pronouncing, that is words Written contrary to what they are spoken, as it is said of the *French*, that they Speak not as they Write, nor Write as they Speak; which is proportionally true in our *English*, many Scribes having diversity of ways in Spelling.

Spelling, is a joyning or setting together somany Letters as doth make a Word.

Integrals, are principal words, such as signifie some intire thing or notion.

Particles, small little words containing generally one Syllable: as, *all*, *at*, *as*, *to*, *for*, *not*, *of*, *but*, *than*, *then*, &c. as of two, as *before*, *becomes*, *himself*, *yourself*; and such like, which serve and signifie a Circumstance to other words with which they are joyned.

Concrete, is any subject word which hath an accident word joyned together with it: See **Abstract**.

Abstract, is a word taken from another, as *Album white*, is a Concrete, signifying a subject (be it Man or Horse) and the *Accident Albedo whitness* is termed the **Abstract** word from that **Concrete**. So *Man* is the **Concrete**, and *Manhood* the **Abstract**.

Substantives, are words of things, or names which bear their own signification without the help of others: as, *Man*.

Adjectives, are words whose signification doth import their being when adjoyned to some thing else: as *Good what? Good Man*.

Verbs, are words mixt of two or more, namely a *Predicate* and *Copula*, to signifie the quality or affection of the Action or Passion. And to them belongs,

Genus, or the kind of Verbs wich are in number five: as *Active*, *Passive*, *Neuter*, *Deponent* and *Commune*.

Moods of Verbs, are six; as the *Indicative*, *Imparative*, (*Optative*, *Potential* and *Subjective*) and *Infinitive*.

Tenses of Verbs, are the *Present-Tense*, *Preterimperfect*, *Preterperfect*, *Preterpluperfect*, and the *Future Tense*.

Persons of Verbs are three, *I*, *thou*, *he*, Singular: *we*, *ye*, *they*, Pural.

Conjugations of Verbs, are four by which all Verbs are Conjugated, Formed or Declined throughout all Moods and Tenses.

Gerunds and **Supines Derived of Verbs**, and are so called from their double signification; viz. *Active* and *Passive* under one word, as *Amandum* to Love or to be beloved: *Amatum Amatu*, to love, or to be beloved.

Figure of Verbs, are simple Verbs, as *Facio*; or compound Verbs, as *Calefacio*.

Species or **Kinds of Verbs**, ar twofold, *Primitive Verbs*, as *Ferveo*: or *Derivative Verbs*, as *Fervesco*.

Derivative Verbs, are of five kinds, *Inchoatives*, Verbs ending in *sco*. *Frequentatives*, Verbs ending in, *to*, *so*, *xo*, or *tor*. *Apparatives*, Verbs ending in *ico*. *Desiderative*, Verbs ending in *urio*. *Diminutives*, Verbs ending in *lo* or *sso*. *Imitatives*, Verbs ending in *isso* and derived from some Substantive, as *Vulpinor* of *Vulpus*, *Bacchor* from *Bacchus*.

Compound Verbs, have generally a Præposition ed to it: as, *Do*, *Reddo*, *Obdo*, *Perdo*.

Defective Verbs, are such as have not their declining throughout all their Moods and Tenses, but only some particular Mood and Tense.

Impersonal Verbs, are such as are only Conjugated throughout the Moods and Tenses in the third person. All these I run briefly over because they are known to all indifferent Scholars.

Adverbs Derived, are words drawn from Verbs, and do signifie the same thing.

Predicate, is the word that preceeds, or goeth before that which is the *Copula*: It also signifies the latter part or word of a proposition, as *John is a Scholar*, the word Scholar is called the **Predicate**, because it is spoken or affirmed of the subject *John*.

Copula, is a word that couples or joyns other words in a Sentence together: see **Conjunction**.

Subject Word, is that as supports qualities belonging to it, as the *Body* is the *Subject*, in which is Health or Sickness: And the *Mind* the subject, that receives Virtues or Vices.

Participle, is a word that partakes of another of the same Sense, and is so called because it participiates of a *Noun* and *Verb*.

Pronoun, is a substitute word, set in the place of some Integral or Principal word, or of some Sentence, or some complex part of it: and these like Nouns have their *Accidence*, *Number*, *Case*, *Gender*, *Declension*, *Person* and *Figure*.

Antecedence, is a word that most commonly goeth before a *Relative*, and is generally rehearted again, or understood in the *Relative*.

Relative, is a word having relation to some word or words going before it, and is generally answered by the *Latin Qui quæ quod*, in the *English* by the words *That* and *Which*.

Interjection, is a word coming between otherwords, or amongst them, and betokneth a sudden passion of the Mind under an unperfect voice: whither it be through *Mirth*, *Sorrow*, *Marvelling*, *Dread*, *Disdain*, *Exclamation*, *Laughing*, and such like.

Preposition, is a ward proper to Substantives, being usually perfixed before them, either in Opposition, as *ad Patrem*, to the Father: or else in Composition, for compounding of words, as *Indoctus* untaught.

Articles, are words which serve for the more full and distinct expression of Substantives, and to shew of what Genus and kind they are, whither *Male*, *Femal*, or *Neuter*, &c.

Genders, are words that distinguish the *Male* from the *Female*, and the *Neuter* from both: as *hic Vir*, this Man, being the *Masculine* kind: *hæc Mulier*, this Woman, being of the *Feminine* Gender: and *hoc Saxum*, this Stone, being the *Neuter* Gender: the *Common* Gender, *hic et hæc Parens*, the *Common* of three, as *hic hæc et hoc Fælix*: the *Doubtful* Gender, *hic* or *hæc Dies*: the *Epicene* Gender hath under one Article both Male and Female comprehended, as *hic Passer*, *hæc Aquilla*.

Adverbs undeclined, are words or kind of Particles which are usually adjoyned to Verbs to signifie some kind of mode or circumstance belonging to them, of which some be of *Time*, *Place*, *Number*, *Order*, *Calling*, *Asking*, with many such like.

Conjunctions, are certain words which serve chiefly for the joyning of Sentences and Clauses together: called **Conjunctions Copulatives**.

Accent, is a prolongation of Vowels, or an elevation of Voice in the pronouncing of any Syllable.

Emphasis, is to distinguish such words wherein the force of the Sence doth most peculiarly consist.

Ironycal, is to denote the words to be intended to a contrary Sense, to what they naturally signifie.

Accidence of a Noun, are words that admit of a *Species*, *Figure*, *Number*, *Case*, *Gender*, *Declination*, and *Comparison*.

Species

Species of Nouns are twofold, *Primative* and *Derivative*.

Primative Nouns, are such as have no other word or syllable joyned to it: as *Donum*, *Datum*.

Derivative Nouns, are such as are compounded of two words together: as *Relatum*.

Figure of a Noun, is either the simple Noun it self as *Justus*: or compounded, as *Injustus*.

Numbers of Nouns are two, the Singular which speaketh but of one, as *Pater* Father: the Plural which speaketh of more, as *Patres* Fathers.

Cases of Nouns, are six in Number.

Nominative Case, so called from the right naming of the word: as *Magister*, termed by the Grammar Rules *Nominandi Casus*, briefly *Nominandi Casus*

Genitive Case, or *Gignendi Casus*, from its begetting; or *Interrogandi Casus*, from its asking of a Person.

Dative Case, or *Dandi Casus*, from its giving to a Person.

Accusative Case, or *Accusandi Casus*, from its accusing, or following its verbal Word.

Vocative Case, or *Vocandi Casus*, from its calling to a Person.

Ablative Case, or *Afferendi Casus*, from its offering to serve any sign of a Præposition.

Declination of Nouns, is the variation of words according to the Cases they are put in, of which there is five sorts of Declensions.

Heteroclites, are words excepted from the common Rules of declining.

Defective Nouns, of which some want a Plural Numbers, and others a Singular.

Aptota's, are words alike in all Cases: as *Nil*, *Nihil*.

Monoptota's, Nouns which have but one Case: as, *Natu*, *Jussu*.

Diptota's, Nouns which have but two Cases: as, *Fors Forte*, *Spontis Sponte*.

Triptota's, Nouns which have only three Cases: as *Opis*, *Opem*, *Ope*.

Redundantia's, Nouns that abound in their Cases, having more then the Declentions requireth: as, *Baculus*, *Baculum & Bacillum: Tignus*, *Tignum & Tepetum*.

Comparison of Nouns, are Adjectives of Nouns whose signification may be increased or diminished of which there are three Degrees.

Positive Degree, is absolute of it self: as *Durus*, Hard.

Comparative Degree, exceeds it: as *Durior*, Harder.

Superlative Degree, exceeds it in the highest Degree: as *Durissimus*, Hardest.

Comparatio Anomala, are Comparisons irregularly formed and not according to Rule: as, *Bonus*, *Melior*, *Optimus: Magnus*, *Major*, *Maximus*.

Comparisons Defective, are such as want one of their Degrees; as *Senex*, *Senior*, *Maximus Natu: Junus*, *Junior*, *Natu Minimus*.

SENTENCES.

Sentences, are the joyning of many words together whereby to give the generall description or knowledg of things, with all its Circumstances: Which may be done either in writing or speaking. Else it is more Scholastically defined to be, *Complex Gramaticall Notions*, delivered in speech or writting. And is of the Learned termed a *Period*, *Text*, *Aphorism*, *Axiome*, *Impress*, *Motto*, *Poesie*, *Phrase*.

Sentence absolute, is that which signifies a compleat sense.

Clause, is that as denotes only some part of the sense.

Verse, or **Staffe,** it doth consist of one or more Sentences.

Section, Scene, or **Paragraph,** they do relate to a greater number of Sentences, being an *Aggegate*, an Heape or Increase of words put together.

Chapter, or **Act,** is that as containes some principall matter or part of the thing treated off.

Book, Tract, Treatise, Volume, or **Tome,** is an intire discourse of a matter.

Prose, is a more loose and free way of puting words or *Phrases* together.

Verse, Lyrick, Pindarick, or **Ode,** is a way of writting or speaking, by which we are bound up to a certaine measure of Feete, *Words* and *Syllables*.

Rime, are measure of words, or that which doth suppose a similitude in the sound of the ending Syllables.

Proper Sentences, are such as proceed from the naturall forme or signification of words according to the first intention of them.

Tralatitious, or **Artificiall sentences,** or speech, are Borrowed words containeing a reference to some thing else of near Affinity or Similitude. Termed also a **Metaphor, Trope, Parable,** or **Simile.**

Homely, Pleane, Simple matter, framed for the capacity of Illitterate people.

Figurative, or **Ornate speech,** Eloquent, **Allegoricall** Sentences, as **Parables, Riddles.**

Defective Sentence, is when something is left out, or is understood, Implied, or Intimated.

Obscure Sentence, difficult to be understood, *Dark*, *Obtruse*, *Deep*, *Profound*, *Mysterious*, *Hard*, *Intricate Speech*.

Compler Notions of discourse, or Sentences which may be taken in a double or ambiguous Sense, which may be distinguished into these several terms.

Distinction, sheweth the different Senses which words are capable of.

Æquivocation, or **Ambiguous,** words spoken in a **Falatious Sense.**

Limitation, Restriction, stint or restraining a a Sense into a more proper and peculiar Sense.

Ampliation, is the enlarging of its sense and meaning to the full scope and comprehensiveness, as there may be occasion.

Difinition, is the declearing of a thing according to its nature, be it more or less, perfect.

Division, Partition, a dividing or parting of a Sentence.

Rule, Marim, Principle or **Canon;** are such common Principles of knowledg whereby Men are to be directed in their Judgment.

Exceptions, Restraint or **Exclude;** is the exemption of such particulars as do not properly belong to the General Rules.

Argu-

Argumentation, to *Dispute*, *Debate*, *Reason* or *Argue*, that is when from something already known and granted, we endeavour to prove some other: termed also, **Demonstration, Sophistry, Chop Logick, Polemic.**

Illation, Deduction, Sequel or **Conclusion**; is the taking of that thing as is by Argument proved to be so: term the **Inference, Consequence, Corollary** and **Result** of the Matter.

Induction, Particularize, the leading matter by which is signified the proving of a General, whether from many or all the particulars thereof.

Example or **Instance,** Exemplifie or Specifie.

Citation, or **Quotations** are Testimonies alledged from the Authority of some other Persons.

Allusion or **Glance,** a resemblance of some other thing.

Mixt Notions of discourse.

Propositions, denotes such a compleat Sentence, wherein something is either affirmed or denied: termed a **Thesis, Assertion, Point, Doctrine, Position, Problem.**

Adage, Proverb, Old Saying; are such kind of Sentences, as by common use and long experience have obtained to be of Authority amongst Men.

Oration, Speech, or **Declamation**; doth denote something to be spoken in presence of others.

Epistle, Letter, a thing Written to be sent to a Person.

Narration, a relation of things as to matters of Fact: termed also, **Story, History, Tale, Tidings, Report, Diary, Diurnal, Gazet, Chronicle, Legend, Intelligence.**

Rumor, Brute or **Report,** is that which denotes what is commonly said of many: *Common*, *Fame*, *Noise*.

Interpretation, is the Exposition or explaining of a Matter, Construction or unfolding the introcasie of a Sentence.

Translation, Words and Sentences put into another Language.

Paraphrase, is to put a Sentence into other Words of the same Language: termed **Descant, Metaphrase, Circumlocution.**

Commentary or **Annotations,** are to enlarge a Matter by putting several other Words thereto for further Explication.

Epitome, Abstract or **Synopsis**; is a contraction of Matter into fewer Words: termed also a **Compendium, Breviate, Breviary, Summary, Extract.**

Appendages of Discourse, which is Prologue or beginning of a Matter; or Epilogue the conclusion or end of it.

Transition, is a passage or intermediate Matter, that which is more necessary; whereby one part is to be connected to another.

Digression, by the by, by the way, a diversion, is such an additional part added to the Matter, as is less necessary, or nothing at all to the main scope of the discourse.

Modes of Discourse, may be reckoned to be such as concern the Business of proving or perswading.

[ ]

Question, Demand, Interrogate, or **Examin**; is a desire of being informed by others, to Expostulate or make inquisition.

Answer, Reply, Rejoynder; are returns made answerable to such forms of Speech: a **Responsal, Return.**

Affirmation, is a possitive saying of a thing to be so: to *Assert*, *Averr*, *Avouch*, *Profess*, *Asseveration.*

Negation or **Deny,** is to affirm a thing not to be so: to *Disavow*, *Gain-say*, *Refuse*.

Supposition, Admit, Presuppose; is a conditional allowing of a thing to be so for the present, that we may thereby the better judge of the consequence from it, termed an **Hypothesis**: *Proviso*, put case it were so.

Concession, is to *Grant*, *Yeild*, *Allow*, *Acknowledge*, *Admit*, *Agree too*, or *Owning* the *Truth* asserted by another.

Opposition, a saying of some against what another affirms; to *Thwart* or *Gain-say*.

Contradiction, to say what is most contrary to what another sayeth.

Objection, is an Arguing against another; to which is opposite, the shewing of an insufficiency in such Arguments.

Solution, Solve or **Resolve**; the giving of a sufficient answer to the thing proposed.

Probation, Prove, Evidence; is as in relation to our own Arguments or Opinions by shewing the truth of them, we adhere to them, and are confirmed in them, and established and ratified by them.

Confutation, Refute, or **Disprove**; is the shewing of the weakness of our Adversaries Arguments, or turning the force of them against themselves, by a **Retortion** or **Invertion.**

Posing, Puzzle, Baffle; is the rendring of an Adversary unable to defend his own opinion: to *Confound*, *Gravel*, *Run him down.*

Conviction, is to make one submit to the Truth of an Argument, to Satisfie or Evince him of his Error.

Confession, is a Verbal acknowledging the Truth of our oppinion; it is to *Own*, *Yeild*, *Grant*, *Profess*, and *Cry Mercy* for the former mistake.

Recantation, or Renouncing of an Error which own was formerly in, or imbraced.

Constructions of Words or Sentences, is the rendering of the same out of one Language into another.

Concords of Nouns, of *Nouns* and *Verbs*, *Substantives* and *Adjectives*, the *Relative* and *Antecedent*, are their right agreement one with another in *Number*, *Case*, *Gender*, and *Person*: else it is false.

Syntaxis, is the Rule or Order of Construction.

Figura Dictionis, the Figures of speaking are in number six: which are according to Grammar Instructions, these.

Prothesis, is the putting of a Letter or Syllable at the beginning of a Word: as *Gnatus* for *Natus*, *Tetuli* for *Tuli*.

Aphaeresis, is the abolishing of a Letter or Syllable at the beginning of a Word: as *Ruit* for *Eruit*, *Temnere* for *Contemnere*.

Epenthesis,

Epenthesis, is the putting of a Letter or Syllable at the beginning of a Word: as *Relliquias*, *Relligio*, where *l* is added: *Induperatorem* for *Imperatorem*.

Syncope, is the abolishing of a Letter or Syllable in the middle of the Word: as *Abiit* for *Abivit*, *Pitit* for *Pivit*, *Dixti* for *Dixisti*.

Paragoge, is the putting of a Letter or Syllable to the end of a Word: as *Dicier* for *Dici*.

Apocope, is the abolishing of a Letter or Syllable at the end of a Word: as *Peculi* for *Peculii*, *Dixtin* for *Dixtine*.

Figures in Constructions are eight in number:

Apositio, is when the cases of two or more Substantives meet together: as *Marcus Tullius Cicero*.

Vocatio, is when a first and second person, immediately calls to him a third, both are made the first or second persons to the Verb: as *Ego Pauper Laboro, Tu Dives Ludas*.

Sylepsis, or **Conceptio;** is a comprehending of a lesser thing under a greater, or one less in dignity under one of more dignity: as *Quid tu & Soror Facitis*, by which the first Person is more worthy then the second, and the second then the third: so in dignity of kinds, Male before the Female, the King before the Queen.

Prolepsis or **Presumption,** is when many, or the whole Congregation of Words are to agree with a *Verb*, or *Adjective*.

Zeugma, is when one *Verb* or *Adjective* answers to diverse Words, that is to one expressly, and to the other by way of suppliment.

Synthesis, is a Speech or Sentence agreeing in Sense, not in Voice.

Antiptosis, is put a Case for a Case, and that sometime not unpleasantly or unseemly.

Synecdoche, is that when of a part there is attribution to the whole.

Prosodia, Prosody, is the Art of **Accenting**; that is, the rule of pronouncing a Word truely long and short. It is divided into

Tonus, which is a note wherein a Syllable in a word is to be pronounced high or low according to the Accents: but of these I have shewed before in the terms of Printing.

Spiritus Prosodia, is the true life of pronouncing, of which there are two kinds: **Asper** or **Asperative,** is an Aspiration or low pronouncing of a Syllable when it hath no Accent.

Lenis, is to pronounce words very even and smooth without any ronghness, of which there are five Rules of sounds.

Differentia Tonum,
Transpositio Tonum,
Attractia Tonum,
Concisio Tonum,
Idioma, Tonum,

Tempus, or timing of a Word; is to pronounce it with measure, of which there is a short note thus marked ◡ and a long Note thus marked —

Foot of a Verse, is commonly of two Syllables, some of three or four Syllables, rarely of any more, and are measured by certain observation of times.

Spondaeus, a Sponde, or a foot consisting of two long Syllables.

Pyrrhichius, a Foot consisting of two short Syllables, in a Verse.

Trochaeus, a Foot in a Verse consisting of a long and short Syllable.

Iambus, a Foot of a short and long Syllable in a Verse.

Molossus, a Foot in Grammar Verse containing three long Syllables.

Tribachus, a Foot of three short Syllables.

Dactylus or a **Dactyle,** is one long and two short Syllables.

Anapaestus, a Foot of two short, and one long Syllables.

Bacchius, is one short and two long Syllables.

Antibacchius, is two long and one short Syllables.

Amphimacer, is a Foot that contains a long, a short, and a long Syllable in a Grammar Verse.

Amphibrachus, contains a Foot of a short, a long, and a short Syllable in it.

Choriambus, Choriambique, a Foot having first and last Syllables long, and two middle short.

Scansio, or the Scansing, or Scaning of a Verse; It is to prove the just and right Feet in a Verse, in which there are these five Accidence: as,

Synalaepha, is a contraction of two Vowels into one, in words following one another.

Eclipsis, is as often as an (m) with its Vowel doth follow a word beginning with a Vowel, in Scanding they are cut off, as if such words were Defective.

Synaeresis, is when two Syllables in a word is contracted into one.

Diaeresis, is where of one Syllable dissected or cut, there is made two: as *Evbluisse* for *Evolvisse*.

Caesura, is when a short Syllable after an absolute Foot is extended or lengthned in the end of a Word; an inlaying of a piece of a Verse.

Caesuria Species, the Accident, or Figure or form of the word **Casura,** is terminated in these four words: as,

Trieminmeris, which contains only one Foot and a Syllable.

Penthemimeris, is from two Feet and a Syllable.

Hepthemimeris, from three Feet and a Syllable.

Enneemimeris, persisteth to four Feet and a Syllable.

Genus Carminum, is the kinds of Verses used Grammatically, which are these following

Carmen Heroicum, Heroick or lofty Verse, which consists of six Feet, that is of two Dactyles and Spondes, fift a Dactyle, sixth a Sponde, the rest following as we will.

Carmen Elegiacum, called also **Pentametrum,** an Elegy or Verses of Mourning and Lamentation, these consists of a double **Penthemimeris,** whereof the two first Feet be Dactyles and Spondee's, with a long Syllable, the other two feet are altogether Dactyles with a long Syllable.

Carmen Asclepiadaeum, Asclepiad Verse, which consists of a **Penthemimeris,** that is, of a Spondee and Dactyle and a long Syllable and two Dactyles, and after some a Spondee, a Choriambick and two Dactyles.

Carmen Sapphicum, a Sapphick Verse, so called from *Sappho* a Famous Poetess held to be the first inventor

inventer of them; It consists of eleven Syllables, and hath a Trochee, a Spondee, and a Dactyle, and two Trochees immutably.

Carmen Phaleucium, or **Hendecasyllabum**, a **Phaleusick Verse**; It consists of eleven Syllables, a Dactyle, a Spondee and three Trochees.

Carmen Jambicum Archilochium, a **Jambick Verse**; It consists usually of either four or six Feet. This Verse is distinguished into two kinds: as,

Dimetrum, which consists of four Feet.

Trimetrum, or **Penarium**, which consists of six Feet.

Carmen Adonicum, **Adonick Verse**, which consists of a Dactyle and a Spondee.

CXXV. the Cap in the Dexter corner is thus termed, an **Infula Imbowed, Turned up Cheapwise**, with a **Wreath**, or **Twist**, and **Tassel pendant**. This with two Feathers in the fore part of the folding, on a Demy old Mans head sans Arms. Is the Crest of *Van Stuben* a *German*.

The like **Wreath** or **Twisted Cord** in some Crests proceeds from **Wreaths, Crowns, Mitres**, and **Caps**: of which I shall give an example or two.

Van Mulheim of *Alsatia* hath for his Crest a **Demy Moor** sans Arms, with **Ass Ears**, A. **Crowned** with a **Wreath pendant** S. a **Bell** at the end of it O. **Cloaths** G.

A Demy Woman (sans Arms) cloathed per Fesse, G. and O. Crowned, with Wreath pendant, of the second: Is the Crest of *Bravmen Van Reichenberg* of *Alsatia*.

The like Demy Woman, cloathed per Pale G. and A. a Laurel about her Temples V. with a Wreath pendant of the first and second; Button and Tassel O. is the Crest of *Crantzen Van Geispoltz-heim* of *Germany*.

The Cap in the Sinister chief corner, is called a **Jews Cap**, or a **Jews Head Cover**: which is a kind of a **Cap** with a **Copped Top**, bound about with a **Towel**, the ends **Pendant** on each side: see *numb.* 115. This is born by *Jew* or *Jue*.

That in the Base is another sort of **Cardinals Hat**, delineated so, as the inner part of the Crown and under side of the Brim is seen contrary to that set forth in *chap.* 1. *numb.* 35. and 37. to which is added a **Ducal Crown**, with **Strings** and **Tassels** crossing each other.

A. 3 such Hats G. the Coronets O. is born by *Rayben*.

Such an Hat with a Lion Rampant on it, O. is the Crest of *Horstel*.

Some term this a **Cap Hat**, or a **Faulconers Hat**, or a **Foresters Hat**, having a round low **Crown**, and a narrow **Brim**: of these see more *numb.* 128. and *chap.* 1. *numb.* 64.

CXXVI. This is a **Maunch** or **Sleeve of the newest Fashion**, being now in use by the great Gallants of our times, even in the present year at the writing hereof which is 1680. It consists of these several parts, which may fitly make it be termed the **Hounds Ear Maunch**.

The **Sleeve** and its **Turn up**.
The **half Sleeve**.
The **Turn up** which hangs like Ears.
The **Linnen Sleeves**.
The **Tyes** about the **Wrists**.
The **Ruffles**, or **Falls**.

CXXVII. This is the **Maunch** that was in great use about the Year 1548. and at those times it was only a plain close Sleeve, made fit for the Arm, with a plain or **Laced cuff close to the Wrist**, the **Shoulder Wing** being all the strangness of its fashion, which was a thick round quilted Roul, divided into lesser, as if it were a Raise or Wreath work.

Per Pale A. and G. a Woman issuant, clothed in a close Bodied Gown, with the Maunch's, or Sleeves Wreathed in the Shoulder, and a Wreath about her Temples Counterchanged of the Field. Born by the name of *Van Alderberg*.

CXXVIII. This **Maunch** or **Sleeve**, was in fashion about the Year 1520. and is in a manner the same to the foregoing: being a plain close and narrow Sleeve made fit to the Arm, from the top to the Shoulder, it had a kind of half or quarter Sleeve, or rather a kind of round deep Shoulder Wing, which was wrought after the manner of quilted work, some part rising, puffing, or swelling out, and then again other places (yet in Decent and Comely order) falling down, or inwards to the Sleeve.

In the Chief of this quarter, is a kind of **Cap Hat**, or **Mild Cap, Turned up** on the side, to two points on the out sides, adorned with a Crownet about the Crown: and such an one I find born for the Crest of *Don Cronetto*, a *Spanish* Family: see *numb.* 125.

A. 3 such S. Crowns O. is born by *Brandishfiel*.

In the Dexter base is an **Infula Crowned**, or **Adorned** with a **Coronet**, under the **Turn-up**: which kind of bearing I find doth belong to *Van Langeneck* as his Crest: *viz.* a **Spiral Infula**, S. **Surrounded** with a **Ducal Coronet**, O. with the **Turn-up** over it, ending in a **Point** behind (to the Sinister side) A. **Buttoned** on the top, of the second.

B. 3 such G. Crown and Button O. Turn-up A. is born by *Alten* an *Italian*.

These are often born with **Garlands** round the middle of the **Infula of Roses, Leaves, Buttons**, and such like.

CXXIX. This is another **Maunch** and of the same make in the **Sleeve**, only it hath a **side Wing**, or **half Sleeve** at the Shoulder: which I have observed in old Pictures which were in the Year 1432. and thereabouts: Of two fashions they weared them, the one with **whole Cloth** of a wide compass at the lower side or end of it, and then gathered into **Pleats** or **Foldings at the Shoulder**, where it was joyned to the other part of the Garment. The other fashion was **Cordi-rope like**, the same being cut through like so many little **Skirts**, or **Lapps of a Doublet**.

CXXX.

CXXX. This fashioned **Maunch** with a **close Sleeve** and **Cuft** was worn in and about the Year 1412. It was called the **deep** and **Indented Winged Maunch**, for the Wings on the shoulders were not only broad on the top of the Sleeve, but the Wing run deep down the Back almost even to the Waste; and of these kind of Wings some had them whole, making a division by sowing between each indent; others had them cut into so many pieces **Cordi-rope** like.

CXXXI. This was a great fashion for **Noble Persons Maunches** or **Sleeves**, in the Reign of Queen *Elizabeth*; most of her Pictures in her Elder days are drawn in this Garbe, that is to say about 1580. They were outwardly of the finest and purest white Laun or Holland, having an inward Lining stuffed with Cotton Bumbaste, and then by the Art of the Semstress wrought into **round Puffs**, which compassed the Arm, which again were subdivided into other lesser Puffes, which stood up in every round like so many **rising**, or **Imbossed swelling Ovals**. This may be termed the **Queens Maunch**.

A **Queens Maunch** erected A. Pinked or Slashed G. with an hand out of it holding of a Stone or Diamond Ring, is the Crest of *Gollatz* of *Swabish*.

CXXXII. This is the **Virago's Maunch**, I cannot ascertain any time to the principal use of this Sleeve, because it is so often drawn in all fantastick pieces, and Copper Cuts. It consists of a **full thick swelling sleeve** tyed up in the middle below, or above the Elbow, thereby to make the other part to swell the more out. These usually have ruffled or Ruff Cufts at the Hand Wrists, and a long, small and narrow Wing at the shoulder.

There is also another sort of these **Maunches**, which I well remember was in use, in King *Charles* the Firsts Reign, about the beginning thereof, which both Men and Women wore, and that was to have these said **Sleeves all slashed**, and **cut long ways** open, that either fine Holland shirts, or Silk or Satin, or that their rich Embrauthered under Wastcoats may be seen.

O. such a Virago's Maunch G. with an Hand holding of a Sword, point erected, with a Rose Garland about the point proper. Or after some, the point thrust through a Garland, is born by the name of *Vincent*.

CXXXIII. This Maunch answers the foregoing, only differs in this, that the face of the **Sleeve is open**, with **one slit**, being **tyed in the middle** as that before: At this open was seen either fine Holland or Cambrick inner Sleeves, or else Silk or Satin laid with Silver or Gold Lace, or richly Imbrauthered. The Cuft belonging to this fashion, was generally Ruffles, or falling Cufts.

CXXXIV. This is a **Maunch half Maunched**, being a **close sleeve**, with another **open** or **wide sleeve** coming over it, even to the bending of the Elbow. This was in fashion about the year 1620 and 1644. The **Wing** of this Sleeve was but narrow, yet it was **cut in laps** or **Cordi-ropes**; the Cuft in use with it, was a deep falling, or single Cuft gathered much in the Stock, with a Ruff or Ruffle at the VVrist.

This half Sleeve was also much worne open from the VVing to the Bent of the Arm, where the two corners were usually tyed together with a Rubin.

CXXXV. This is a **Maunch** or **Sleeve**, with a **loose hanging sleeve** on the **Back** of the **Wing** coming down to the Skirt of the Garment; it was much in use by old and grave Matrons in the days of K. *Charles* 1633. as it is a wear amongst little Children with us to this day; the Cuft was either a single Cuft fastned on the **Sleeve hand**, or **ruffe Cufts** about the Arm VVrist; and with the Richer and Nobler sort, both together as one Cuft.

Thus much for Womens Sleeves, now an example or two I shall give of the fashion of Mens Sleeves, especially those most remarkable.

In the dexter Base of this quarter I have caused to be set two **Hands and Arms embowed**, which as they are born in a Coat of Arms are thus Blazoned. He beareth Or, two **Arms and Hands lifted up, couped** below the Shoulders, and **contrary embowed**, proper, Sleeves Gules, turnings up Argent. Born by the name of *Rasp Van Laufenbach* of *Swabadin*.

Azure two **Hands and Arms** couped at the Elbow, **erected**, Or, is the Coat of *Lauffen* of *Switzerland* in the *Netherlands*. Others in the Blazon of these Coats term them the **Dexter** and **Sinister hands of a Man**, &c.

The like, the Sleeves S. is the crest of *Gundiger*.

Party per fesse S. & A 2 such couped, Sleeves of the first born by *Marxen* of *Ickwersheim* of *Alsatia*: Who hath for his Crest on a Cap S. Turn-up A. the like Arms.

Party per pale G. & S. the like Arms couped, Sleeves counter-changed, holding of a Ducall Coronet with a Mullet of 6 points out of it, O. is the Coat and Crest of *Van Berbisdorf*.

Two such Arms, the Sleeves one per fesse O. & G. the other contrary changed, is the Crest of *Van Der Hohen Landenberg*.

Two such, the Sleeve of one G. the other O. holding a Rose Garland of the first, is the Crest of *Van Schick*.

The **Arms** thus, are much used for crests, especially **holding something between the Hands**; as, on a Torce A. and S. two such Sleeves S. holding a **Stone Ring**, is the crest of *Mallinckrodt* of *Westphalia*.

Out of a Coronett 2 such naked to the Elbows, Sleeves and turn-ups A. (or Shirt sleeves) holding a Stone Ring, is *Ottens* crest.

CXXXVI. This is the fashion of a **Mans Sleeve**, as they were worne about the year 1640. the first part of it was either a **Doublet** or **Wastecoat sleeve**, made fit and close to the Arm, over which is cast another **loose Coat**, whose **sleeves** reach not much below, or about the bending of the Arm, where it is turned up and faced, and hangs down at the Elbow like a **Flap** or **Dogs Tongue**. Now the Fashion and Mode of this said Turn-up is various, and that only as makes so many ridiculous and fantastick mouldings in Garments; for sometimes

times the facing is direct round; others are slit open at the Elbow, and hang down like Dogs Ears; others have them open on the top of the Arm, with the corners pricking up like Asses Ears.

But for **Women** to wear their **sleeves** with such a large open is much more Antient; for in Old Monuments, Paintings and Prints, I have observed this used by them above 200 years since; and so I find in a Field Azure, a Woman with her **Hair dissevered** or **pendant**, habited in a **close Gown**, O. with such **wide sleeves**, holding in each hand, a Rose slip, proper, is both Coat and Crest of *Oldwoman*. See *numb*. 142. *c*. A. the like G. in each Hand a Mullet B. by *Ticks*.

CXXXVII. This is another fashion of a **Mans Maunch**, as it is now in fashion by the Gallants of our Age, for this present year 1680. but how long it will continue, the Taylor is the only knowing Man to judg of it; for indeed we are all his Apes, delighting in that Dress he puts us in, be it never so ridiculous, to put us out of our comely shapes. This Maunch consists of a **close sleeve** fitting the Arm, which is the **Waistcoat**, and sometimes but a **Counterfeit** or **Half sleeve**, made of some rich Stuff or Silk, being the same as the other Turn-ups of the Sleeve are faced withal, over this sleeve is drawn another, not much wider than the Arm, which hath with it a **double Turn-up**, which lyeth on the middle of the Arm between the Wrist and Elbow, and are open in the bottome, falling below the Arm, into corners. The Custs hereunto belonging are various according to the fancies of men, some haveing small edges of white about the wrist bands; others ruffe Custs, others Falls or long Custs to hang over the Hands, *&c*. and all these of several fashioned makings, which were endless to describe.

CXXXVIII. Is another kind of **Mans Maunch**, being in all respects answerable to the foresaid, only the **outward sleeve** of this is **cut open**, sometimes Buttoned down, that it may be opened at pleasure; this is only to shew that such Gallants wear not **Cheats** or **half Sleeves**, but that their **Waistcoats** are the same cleat throughout.

CXXXIX. He beareth Argent, two **Sleeves issuant** in Base **embowed** and **expansed**, Gules. Born by the name of *Mouwen*. The like **Sleeves expensed** or set one behind, or by the side one of the other, the first (or next the Field) Argent, the other Gules; is the crest of the Family of *Domantz* in the Province or Countrey of *Silitia*.

CXL. He beareth party per Fesse Gules and Azure; an **Arm** and **Hand issuant** out of the sinister side in chief, proper; the Sleeve Or, turned up, with a **Towel hanged over it**, Argent. Born by the name of *Portowell*.

The *French* Heralds Blazon it thus. He beareth Or, on a Chief Gules, an Hand and Arm issuant from the sinister side, proper, Sleeve Or; supporting of a **Gonfanon**, or **square Flag** over all, Ermine; which bearing belongs to *Pierre de Villiers*, Lord of the Isle *Adam*, and Grand Master of *France*.

CXLI. He beareth Or, out of a **Cloud in sinister Chief**, an **Hand and Arm**, the Sleeve Sable, holding a **Ladle skellet** over a **Fire of Faggots** in the dexter base, all proper. This is the Coat Armour of the Family of *Pean* or *Peanen* in *Brunswick*. Some make this short Blazoning of it, out of a **Cloud an Hand holding a skellet over a Fire**, all in **Bend sinister**, proper.

We shall in the next place give you an account of some particular Trades omitted in the third Chapter of this Book, which are to be added to them there already mentioned, as

CXLII. He beareth Argent, out of the **sinister side**, a **Hand issuant** from a **Cloud** proper, turning an **Hook** in a **Slead**, having a **Rope** or **Cable** on it, extending to the Dexter side, Sable. By the name of *Roper*. According to the terms of a Ropers Art this is thus Blazoned, an **Hand sarveing** or **Platting of a Cable**. Of the Ropers Terms I have said something before in *chap*. 3. *numb*. 55. to which you may turn back.

CXLII. *a*. He beareth Gules, a **Woman** in a **close Bodied Gown**, **Girt** about the middle, with **round Wings**, and **turned up** at the Elbows Or, **Apron** Argent, **Hair pendant**, holding up in her right hand a Garland Vert, and the left on her side, by the name of *Padding*. Some for shortness only Blazon it thus, a Woman with her Hair pendant (or dissevered) in a close Gown with puffed Sleeves holding of a Laurel Garland.

Party per pale O. and G. the like Woman to the Sinister, habit counterchanged, holding of a Garland or a Crown of Thorns S. is born by *Van Molkav*.

CXLII. *b*. He beareth Or, a **Pilgrim** in a **Gown** to his Heels, Sable, in his right hand a **Staff** and **Beads** with a **Cross pendant**, and his left holding a Rake with two Teeth on his shoulder, Sable, a **Capped Tanke** on his head, and Feet bare. Born by the name of *Pilgrim*.

O. the like Pilgrim to the sinister, his Gown and Cap B. with a - - - - - held on his shoulder, and a Staff and Beads in his left hand S. is born for the Coat and Crest of *Van Einsidell*.

CXLII. *c*. He beareth Argent, a **demy Woman in full Aspect**, her **Arms** to the Elbow **naked** (or bare) **Hands clasped** together before her Waste, habited in a close **Gown** or Coat with **wide sleeves**, extended Gules, her **Temples Wreathed**, with a **Twist** or **Label wreathed**, **pendant**, with a Button at the end, Or. Born by the name of *Meade*. The like G. habited O. is the Coat and crest of *Durlocher*.

The like sans Wreath, in a close Bodied Coat A. Girdle O. the Sleeves pendant (or hanging down from the

the Elbows,) the hands at his Mouth, is the creſt of *Glaburg*.

G the like to the Sniſter, with an Infula on her head and Scarfe pendant from the top of it A. holding a **Pair of Bellows** by the handles, the Wind Pipe erected, is the Coat and creſt of *Blaſbelch*.

CXLIII. He beareth Argent, a **Tankard Bearer**, in the dexter baſe, a **Spout of Water** running into a **Stone Cifterne**, all proper: This is the coat and creſt of *Wathame*. Others term this a Man with a **Tankard**, or a **Water Tankard** on his right ſhoulder, to diſtinguiſh him from a Woman, which is alſo a Tankard Bearer or a Water Carrier.

This is the manner of carrying Water from the **Conducts** in *London* to every particular Family, and is ſo born both by Men and Women on their Shoulders; and in other parts of the Kingdom it is born by Men with **Wooden Pokes** on their Shoulders, to which is hung ſmall **Barrels** or **Bags of Leather** full of Water, which they bear either from the Rivers or Conduits to what place they are required, and ſo as to the length of their way, are ſatisfied for their Pains accordingly. Of theſe ſee *chap. 6. numb.* 77, 78, 79.

CXLIV. He beareth Argent, behind a **Counter** or **Counting Table**, Or; **covered** with a Green **Carpet**; a **Gold-ſmith** with a pair of **Gold Scales** or **Ballances** poiſing in his right hand, and ſeveral pieces of **Bullen** or **Coin** before him, all proper. Others more ſhort, ſay a Gold-ſmith weighing of his Gold, behind his Counter, with **Shelfes of Plate** at his right hand, or in the dexter chief, all proper. Born by the name of *Goldings*.

Terms of Art uſed by the Gold-ſmiths.

Refining, is purging of the good Metal from its droſs.

Allay, is to prove if the Metal be good and right Sterling.

Allay, is to mix a ſofter Metal with the Brittle, to make it plyable.

Melting,

Tuffning, is to make it tough and fit to work without cracks or flawes.

Caſting, is when the Metal is melted, then to pour it out of the Crucible into an Ingot, a Skellet, Scuttle Bone, or Flask into Sand.

Nailing, to heat the Metal red hot, and cool it to make it ſoft to Beat.

Flapping, to make it clean from Aſhes.

Holding in the Tongs,

Forging, to beat it into the ſhape you will have it, in the flat, with an Hammer on an Anvile.

Pitching, is to find the center of the Plate to be worked.

Compaſsing, is to make it round.

Hollowing in the Block.

Deeping, is to thin the Plate on the Anvile from the edge or from the center.

Raiſing, is to make the Body higher.

Bouging, is to take the Pine ſtroaks out.

Swelling, is to give it its ſhape, and make it proportionable.

Planiſhing, is to make it ſmooth.

Chaſeing, is to make it into variety of works, as Flowers, Birds, Beaſts, *&c.*

Drawing, is to give to each thing its true ſhape.

Snarling, is to ſet or punch it out as the ſhape is drawn.

Filling with Simond.

Chiſſeling, its true Circumference.

Imboſsing, is giving every thing its due proportion, and to ſwell out.

Traceing, is laying the ground even and ſmooth, the Imboſſed parts being Hatched or Freeſed.

Freeſing, is to fill up all void places with Scrowles, Turns or Leaves, or making them full of pricks or holes.

Matting or **Hatching**, is to make a Beaſt or Lion Hairy, a Bird Feathers, Fiſh Scales, and Flowers and Leaves, Veins and Threads.

Moulding, is forming any thing to be caſt.

Swaging, is to put edges or Threads to the skirts or any part of a Plate.

Pitching, is to raiſe a Lid of a Can flat, and then to fall gently round of.

Fitting, is to ſet all its parts together, and to bind them with Wyer.

Charging, is to lay on the place to be Sodered both Soder and Burras.

Sodering, is to put the work into the Fire to make the Soder run.

Boiling, is to make it come to its colour.

Repairing, is to take away the Superfluities of Sodering by Filing, *&c.*

Burniſhing, is to make the work bright and ſhining.

Scales and Gold Weights, with a Box of Weights to lye on the Table with a Pue ſt Weights and cover. Beſides other Inſtruments are vety uſeful for them of this Profeſſion: Other things in this place I ſhall paſs by, only here give you an account of Weights and Numbers uſed in Merchandizing.

Of all ſorts of Weights in general.

There are two ſorts of **Weights** uſed in *England*, viz. **Troy Weight**, and **Avoir-du-pois**, corruptly called by us *Aboydepoſe*; by the firſt are Weighed Pearls, Pretious Stones, Gold, Silver, Bread, and all manner of Corn and Grain.

By **Avoir-du-pois** Weight is weighed all manner of Grocery-Ware, Fleſh, Butter, Cheeſe, Iron, Hemp, Tallow, Wax, Lead, with other Merchandizes, and all things whereof comes waſte.

Troy - Weight.

A **Grain**, is the weight of a grain of Wheat.
A **Penny Weight**, is 24 grains.
An **Ounce**, is 20 Penny Weight.
A **Pound** Troy, is 12 Ounces.
An **Hundred Pound** Weight, is five score pounds.

These are the general terms of the Troy Weight, from whence there is smaller and derivative Weights, yet all have their dependance on them aforesaid, as there is the

The **half grain.**
The **Scruple,**
The **Drachm.**
The **half penny** Weight.
The **Half Ounce.**
The **quarter** of a pound.
The **half** pound.
The **half** or **quarter** of an Hundred, *&c.*

But these terms are never used by the Goldsmiths, all their names of Weights being Grains, Penny Weights, and Ounces only.

Avoir-Du-Pois Weight.

An **Ounce**, it is - - - so that it is lighter than the Ounce Troy by almost one twelfth part, so that 60 pound Avoir-du-pois is equal to 73 pound Troy.

A **Pound** is 16 Ounces; But the Housewifes pound is twice so much.

An **Hundred pound**, is 112, which Merchants call the short hundred.

A **Long Hundred**, is 120 pounds.

But in all sorts of Merchandize the Buyer and Seller in all great Weights useth no other terms than **Hundreds, Quarters,** and **Pounds,** the smaller Weights are for retail Trading only.

As the Weight of such a Commodity is 4 hundred, 3 quarters, and 8 *l.* That is, 3 quarters of an hundred, which is 84 pound, after 112 pound to the hundred.

A **quarter** being 28 pound, 2 **quarters** or **half a hundred** 56 pounds, and 3 **quarters** (as aforesaid) 84 pounds.

The several Terms used about Merchants Goods.

All Goods bought and sold by Merchants are termed by **Whole-sale,** that is, great quantities together, whether in **Barrels, Hogsheads, Fats, Chests** or **Packs.**

Wine, Oyl, Honey.

A **Tun** contains 2 Butts.
A **Butt** or **Pipe** contains 2 Hogsheads.
A **Hogshead** containeth 2 Barrels.
A **Tierce,** is a Barrel and a half.
A **Barrel** is one Rundlet, and 3 parts of a Rundlet.
A **Kilderkin,** is the Half Barrel.
A **Rundlet** is 18 Gallons.
A **Gallon** is two Pottles: Now a Gallon of Wine contains 8 pound Troy Weight by which the foresaid Vessels are measured; so that 31 Gallons and a half is a Barrel of Wine, being less than Ale by half a Gallon, and Beer 4 Gallons and half in the Barrel.

Corn and other Grain.

A **Last,** is the greatest measure of any kind of grain or seeds, which contains 10 Quarters.

A **Quarter** is 2 Cornocks.

A **Cornock,** is 2 Strikes or 4 Bushels, which in our County is better known by **Measures** than either Strikes or Bushels.

A **Strike,** is 2 Bushels or Measures.

A **Bushel,** in most places is 4 Pecks; but that which we generally account a Bushel of Oats is 5 Measures, each Measure containing 4 Pecks; but a Bushel of Wheat and Rye, or other Grain and Cod ware, is but 4 Measures to the Bushel.

A **Peck,** containeth 2 Gallons, or 8 Quarts.

Iron, Lead, Tin, Copper.

These are numbred by the Tun, Hundred, Quarters and Pounds.

A **Tun** is 20 Hundred Weight.

A **Hundred** Weight is 112 pounds.

A **Fodder of Lead** is 19 Hundred Weight, each Hundred being 112 pounds.

A **Pig** or **Sow** of Lead, is generally about three hundred pounds apiece.

Fish and Flesh.

Ling, Cod, or **Haberdine,** have 124 to the Hundred.

Stock-Fish and **Herring** have 120 to the hundred, and 10000 to the **Last,** which is 12 Ale Barrels; some measure also **Salmons** and **Eels** by Ale Measure.

Hides, Skins, Furrs.

A **Last** of Tanned Hides, or Leather, is 20 Dickers.

A **Dicker,** is 10 Hides.

Calves skins, are reckoned by the **Dozen,** which is 12.

Sheep and **Lamb skins** are numbred by

Goat skins are reckoned by the **skip,** which is 50 Skins.

Grays, Martins, Sables, Jenits, Minks and Filches are reckoned by the **Timber,** which is 4 Skins.

Lamb

Lamb, Coney, Kid, Cat, Budge, have all five score to the **Hundred.**

Paper and Parchment.

A **Bale** of Paper is 10 Reams.
A **Ream** is 20 Quires.
A **Quire** is 25 Sheets.
A **Rowl** of Vellom or Parchment is 5 Dozen of Skins.
A **Dozen** is 12 Skins.

Wool, Flax, and Hemp.

A **Last** of Wool, makes 12 Sacks or Packs.
A **Sack** is 2 Weys, or 364 pounds.
A **Wey** contains six Tods and a half.
A **Tod** contains 28 pounds.
A **Stone** of Wool is 14 pounds, in some places 18 and 19 pounds.

CXLV. He beareth Argent, a **Bricklayer** behind a **Brick Wall** in Fesse, with a **Trowel** in his right hand, all proper. Some term this a Man Working, or making up a Brick Wall in Fesse. This is the Badge or Cognizance of a Brick-Man; and may well be good for his Coat that beareth that Name.

Terms of Art used by Brick-Makers.

Casting the Clay.
Tempering the Clay.
Wheeler, is him that carryeth the Clay from the Pit, to the Moulding Board foot, and there turns it off the Wheel Barrow.
Staker, is him that puts the Clay off the ground, upon the Board.
Moulder, is him that works the Clay into the Brick Moulds.
. . . . . is the striking of the superfluous Clay off the top of the Moulds.
Bearer off, is him that takes the Monld with the Clay in it, from the Moulder, and layeth it on the ground to dry.
. . . . . is the parting of the Clay from the Mould.
. . . . . is the putting of the empty Mould in the Tub of Water.
Sanding the Brick, is to riddle or cast dry Sand on the Wet Brick lying on the ground.
. . . . . is the raising of the Brick on one side, that they may dry the better and sooner.
Taker up of the Brick, is his work also to dress and smooth them from irregular edges.
Walling the Brick, is to lay them one on another after the manner of a Wall, to keep them from foul Weather, and that they may dry throughly.

*

Sod, or cover the Bricks.
Setting the Brick in the Kiln.
A **Kiln** of Brick.
Arches of the Kiln, are the hollow places at the bottom, where the Fire is.
Pigeon holes, holes in the Fire Arches.
Chequer course, is the lower row of Bricks in the Arch.
Tying course, them as cover the top of the Arch.
Binding course,
Breaking course, is the laying of Brick over the Joints of its under course.
. . . . . is the laying of Slack or Small Coal between every course or row of Bricks.
Dividing Course, is the division parts of the Kiln.
Flatting course, is the top of all the Kiln.
Daubing the Kiln, is the Claying of it all about and top to keep the Fire in, and secure the Kiln from Weather.
Firing, is to set the Fuel put in the Arches on Fire.
Pearthing, put Earth about it, to stop the Arches that the Fire may take upwards to the top of the Kiln.
. . . . . is the cooling of the Kiln after it hath done Burning.
Breaking the Kiln.
Middle of the Kiln.
Counting of the Brick.
Carrying the Brick, is to bring them to the place where they are to be used for Building, which is either on Horse-backs or Tumbrels.

Terms used by the Brick-layer.

A **Wall.**
A **Course,** is the thickness of a Brick, or a row of Bricks the whole length of the Wall.
Breaking of Band, or Joint.
Band, is the laying of Bricks so that one binds another.
Flemish Band.
Header, is the laying the end of a Brick in the outside of the Wall.
Stretcher, is the laying the Brick longways in the out-side of the Wall.
Closier, is a part of a Brick put in a Wall between two whole Bricks to make Band.
Coping, is the cutting off in the thickness of a Wall.
Scew or **Campher,** is the cutting off of a corner of a Wall.
A **Splay** or **Angle,** is the corner or turning of a Wall.
Queering, is the covering of a Wall when it is new Built, that Rain drive not into it.
Plinning, is to try by Rule whether the Wall stand streight and upright.
Battering, or the Wall Batters when it is not straight, but overcasts outwards.
Over-hangs, when the Wall bends inwards.
Bulges, when a Wall stands out with a Belly.

Quine

Quine or Quine Ends.

Stretch the Line, is to draw the Line streight to the side of the Work that the Brick may be laid streight by it.

Mortar, is Lime, Sand and Water mixt together by the **Muginator.**

Fat Mortar, as much Lime as Sand.

Lean Mortar, when it hath too much Sand in the Lime.

Filling Mortar, having small Stones in it to fill the middle of a Wall.

Pergery Mortar, having Horse-dung mixt in it, which is onely to plaster or daub the in-side of Chimneys.

Top a Chimney, is to make an handsom head upon it to set it forth.

Labourer, is such as carry the Brick and Mortar to the place where the Bricklayer or Work-Man is Building.

Scaffold, That as the Work-man stands upon to work up high VValls.

Putlocks, are pieces of Spars to put into the sides of the VVall to lay Boards on for the Brick-layer to stand and work up high VValls.

In the sinister chief of this square *numb.* 45. is an **Annulett crowned,** having a **Tuft of Grass** out of it; of which kind of Bearing after this nature, I find much variety; I shall only give 1 or 2 examples. This is the crest of *Reich.*

The like A. with a Plume of 5 Feathers out of the Crown S. is the crest of *Van Knoringen.*

An Annulet set with 7 Palm Branches at a distance contrary Bowed, is the crest of *Van Battendorf.*

An Annulet per pale A. and G. a Tuft of Grass contrary Bowed in the Piles, on it, is the crest of *Gundelfinger.*

CXLVI. These two **Beer Brewers stinging** of a **Barrel of Beer,** should have been in the Plate of Trades, but being there omitted, I shall here only give the draught of them, referring you to a farther Treatise of that Trade in *chap.* 3. *numb.* 44. This is the Sign or Cognizance of a *Beer Brewer.*

In the Chief of this square is a certain Bearing, which by the *French* is termed a **Chame,** it is an Annulet with a sharp rising side. Argent, 3 such Gules, is born by *Chamerell.* But from the name it should seem to be a small round Shell-Fish like a Cockle.

CXLVII. He beareth Argent, two **Men playing** at a **Billiard Table,** all proper. But if you will have a larger Blazon, than this, say, a Billiard Table lined with Green, on each side standeth a Man, the one cloathed in Scarlet, the other in Velvet, with a Tack in his hand, to push the Ball into an Hassard, or Hole.

Things used about Billiards.

The **Table,** which is four square, or rather something longer one way, with a Ledge about it to keep the Balls from falling off, which must be covered with fine green Cloth.

The **Hazzards,** the Holes in the four corners and sides of the Table, but not at the ends, from whence, and whereunto the Ball Plays.

The **King** is the little Pin or Peg standing at one end of the Table, which is to be of Ivory.

The **Port,** is the Arch of Ivory, standing at a little distance from the other end of the Table.

The **Tacks** are the two Sticks (or what else they are made of) with which the Balls are pushed forwards.

The **Balls** are round things made of Ivory, which will turn any way.

Some Boards have a **Bell** and a **String** instead of a King, but this is a Bungling Play, there being not that Art in it, as the King.

Orders for the Play at Billiards.

1. If the Leader touch the end of the Table with his Ball at the first stroak, he loseth one Cast.

2. If the Follower intend to hit his Adversaries Ball, or pass at one stroak, he must string his Ball, that is lay it even with the King, or he loseth a Cast.

3. He that passeth through the Port hath the advantage of touching the King, which is one Cast if not thrown down.

4. He that passeth the Port twice (his Adversary having not passed at all) and toucheth the King without throwing him down, wins 2 ends.

5. He that passeth not hath no other advantage but the Hazzard.

6. He that is a Fornicator (that is, hath past through the back of the Port) he must pass twice through the fore-part, or he cannot have the advantage of Passing that end.

7. He that hits down the Port or King, or Hazzards his own Ball, or strikes either Ball over the Table, loseth that Cast.

8. He that Hazzards his Adversaries Ball, or makes it to hit down the King, winneth the end.

9. If four Play two against two, he that mistakes his stroak, loseth one to that side he is of.

10. He that after both Balls Played, removes the Port without consent, or strikes his Ball twice together, or that his Adversaries Ball touch his Stick, Hand, Cloaths, or Playeth with his Adversaries Ball, loseth One.

11. He that sets not one Foot on the ground when he strikes his Ball, shall lose an end, or if he lay his hand or sleeve on the Cloth.

12. A Stander-by, though he Betts, shall not instruct, direct, or speak in the Game without consent, or being first asked; if after he is advertized hereof he offends in this

this nature, for every fault he shall instantly forfeit Two Pence for the good of the Company, or not be suffered to stay in the Room.

13. He that Plays a Ball while the other runs, or takes up a Ball before it lie still, loseth an end.

14. He that removes the Port with his Stick when he strikes his Ball, and thereby prevents his Adversaries Ball from passing, loseth an end.

15. All Controversies are to be decided by the Standers by, upon asking Judgment.

16. He that breaks the King Forfeits 1 s. for the Port 10 s. and each Stick 5 s.

17. Five ends make a Game by Day light, and three by Candle light.

The Game of Truck.

Truck is an *Italian* Game, and is not very unlike **Billiards**, the Table is something longer and covered with green Cloth, it hath 3 holes at each end, besides the corner holes.

The **Sprig**, which stands for the Billiard King, stands at the middle, near one end; it is a piece of Iron made fast in the Board.

The **Argolio**, which is as the Port at Billiards, stands against the middle hole at the other end; and is a strong hoop of Iron fastned to the Table.

The **Tacks** with which they play, are much bigger than Billiard Sticks, and headed at each end with Iron; from the middle is round taperwise to one end, the other is flat.

The **Balls** are of Ivory, as large as Tennis Balls.

In the Play they use the same Orders as in the Billiards, only they have these terms in the Playing.

Truck, that is the striking of the Ball to the Adversaries, to hole him.

Bank, is to lay the Ball at a certain place by striking it.

Fulkat, or **Fulkating** over hand, is to make your Ball jump over his through the Argolio, when his Ball lies directly in the way before you.

The Game because it is soon up, is either nine, eleven, fifteen, or as many as you please; for if you Truck your Adversary, it is one Cast: If after you have past, you Truck your Adversaries Ball, and hit the Sprigg, it is three: If you pass at one Stroak, Truck your Adversaries Ball, and hit the Sprigg you win four, but this is very rarely done.

CXLVIII. He beareth Or, on a **Table covered** with a Carpet, a **Chess Board** proper; on each side a **Man seated** in a Chair, exercising themselves at the **Game of Chess**, the one cloathed in Blew, the other in Red. Now you may say more shortly, Two Men seated in Chairs each side a Table, Playing at **Chess** or **Draughts**.

Chess is a Royal Game, and more difficult to be understood than any other Game whatsoever, and will take up some time in the Playing; Artists at the Game, have Played a Fortnight by times before it hath been ended: The Table is a four square Board divided into 64 squares, Chequer like, each contrary to other White and Black, the Chess-Men are these following.

The **Kings**, which is the first and highest, called

The **Queens**, which are the next in height, called also the *Amazons*.

The **Bishops**, which have cloven Heads, called the *Archers*.

The **Knights**, having their Heads cut aslaunt like a Feather in a Helmet.

The **Rooks** have a round Buttoned Cap on their heads, called also the *Rocks* or *Dukes*.

The **Pawns** are all alike, they are Serving Men to the Noble Men.

Terms used in Chess-Play.

A **Forke**, is when two of the Adversaries Rooks stand in the same Rank, and a House between them void; if a Pawn guarded with another, advance into the House before them, thereby one of them will commonly be taken; This is of some termed a **Dilemma**.

A **Stale**, is when a King hath lost all his Men, and hath but one place to fly unto, if he be Barred there without Checking him, so that being now out of Check cannot remove but into Check, is a Stale, and he that giveth it to the distressed King, loseth the Game.

A **Blind Mate**, is when one giveth Check Mate, but seeth it not, yet nevertheless it is a Mate, though a disgraceful one.

A **Dead Game**, is when only the two Kings are left, at which most Gamesters will draw Stakes; some will do it when they have but a Knight or Bishop left with their King; and the enemy only his King, for then it is not possible to give a Mate by force.

Take Guard or **Guards**, is the securing of the Men that they be not taken, by having others at their Back.

Check, is when pieces lie in the way, that neither the King, Queen, or any other cannot pass, but are forced to stand.

Pawn-Mate, is when the King cannot remove out of the Pawns way, but is taken by him, which is the end of the Game, and lost by him whose King is so Mated.

Mate, is when the like is done by a Rook, so that the King is taken, or that he can neither take the Checking piece, nor cover the Check, nor yet remove out of it.

Pawn-Check, is when a Knight hath checked a King of the adverse party, so that he cannot be covered, then the King must either remove, or course the Knight to be taken, for he himself cannot take the Knight that Checks him, or its Mate, and the Game is up.

House, is every one of the squares, whether they be white

white or black on the Chess-Board, which are termed 1, 2, 3, 4, of the one Gamester, and 1, 2, 3, 4, of the other Gamesters.

Field, is the whole square of the Board.

Scholars Check, a Check that might have been avoided, had not the Player been a young Beginner.

Scholars Mate, is a Mate that might be prevented, but is made by young Beginners.

Check Mate, is the end of the Game, which is by following the flying King, giving him Check as long as he hath any place to fly unto.

Laws of Chess - Play.

1. If you **Touch** your Man, you must Play it, and if you set it down any where, it must stand there.

2. If your Adversary Play a **False Draught,** and you spy it not before you Play the next Draught, it is then too late to be Challenged.

3. If by mistake, you Play a False Draught, and your Adversary let it alone for his **Advantage,** till he hath Played his next Draught, you nor he cannot then recall it.

4. If at first you **Misplace** your Men, and Play 2 or 3 Draughts, it lieth in your Adversaries choice whether you shall play out the Game, or begin it new again.

5. The King in **Changing,** may not go into Check, nor at any time remove into Check.

6. If your Adversary playeth or discovereth a Check to your King, and giveth you no notice of it, you may let him stand so for that Draught if you please.

7. If your King **standeth in Check,** and you remove a Draught or two, the Adversary may not give Check when he pleaseth, unless he remove the piece checking, or some other.

8. If you take up your **Adversaries Man,** and after think best to let it stand untaken, before you set your piece in place thereof, you must *Cry him Mercy*, or lose the Game.

9. The moving of a King, ought to be certain in his shifting, and not as you please to place him.

10. If any one **Wager** that he will give **Mate,** or **Win the Game,** and the Adversary brings it to a Dead Game, though he save the first Stake, yet he loseth the Wager.

11. He that **Gives Over** the Game before it is finished, without the consent of his Adversary, loseth his Stake.

Many more Observations might be inserted for the understanding of this Noble Game, but I am forced to avoid Prolixity.

Draughts.

Is a Play on a Chess-Board, or the back of a pair of Tables (which generally have four rows of Squares made upon it, *viz.* 4 of Black, and 4 of White interchangeably) and are set with the Table Men, one Party setting on the White, and the Adverse party on the Black.

The Play is, to remove each Man corner ways.

If they be not in Play well **Backed** or **Guarded,** but that a Man may leap over his Adversaries Mans Head to a Void square, that Man is **Huffed,** that is, he is taken up as a Slain Man.

Single Men must go all forwards, they cannot go or remove backwards.

A **King** is that Man which hath passed through the Board to the farther side, and being Crowned (that is, having a Table Man put upon him) is free to walk backwards or forwards as he pleaseth.

Thus they move and remove too and again, seeking to Huff one another, and him that stands longest without taking, wins the Game.

CXLIX. He beareth Gules, a **Man cloathed all in White,** with a **Racket** in his hand, **Receiving** (or **ready to strike**) a **Tennis-Ball.** Or say thus, a Man Playing with his Racket and Ball in the Tennis-Court.

The Game at Tennis is a most Princely Exercise; having its first Original (as I have been informed) or brought over to us from the *French* Court; it is a Gentile, Cleanly, Active, and most ingenious Recreation, exercising all the parts of the Body; therefore for its Excellency is much approved of, and Played by most Nations in *Europe*, especially by our great Gallants of *England*, where such Tennis Courts are Built.

The form of a Tennis Court is much after the manner of **Old Halls** in great Houses, all open to the top; they are generally Built . . . . . long, and . . . . . wide, and the **Gable ends** up to the Roof without any Windows, the sides . . . . . yards up to the Lights or Windows, which are only square Pillars of . . . . . yards high, on which the **Roof** is laid, the **Floor** even **Flagged**; on one side there is a **long Gallery** for people to stand in to see the Gamesters Play, over which is made a **Penthouse** of Boards evenly laid, that the Ball being cast upon it, may run smoothly, without any Rubs; the Lights are all hung with **Netts,** to keep the Ball from flying out.

The manner of the Play is so intricate that it is hard to describe, which I suppose is the reason none (as ever I could hear) have written concerning it, as of other Games; there being so many **turnings, windings** and **motions** of the Body; as also the several ways of **striking** the Ball both **backwards, forwards, under** and **over hand,** and from the **rebounds,** that they were endless to set down; yet according to that little understanding I have in the Play, I shall give you some few of those terms which is used therein, as

Serve, is the first casting out of the Ball upon the Pent-House, for him on the contrary side to strike at.

Stroak, is a Blow given to the Ball as it comes off the Pent-House.

Fault

Fault, is to miss a Blow or stroak at the Ball, which if it be twice missed, it is a Loss to that Player, which is 15.

Line, is a long Rope hung over-cross the middle of the Court about a Yard off the ground, with a Net on it to the Ground.

Stroak of the Ball into the Net, is a loss of 15 to the Player.

Ball struck into the square hole at the end of the Tennis-Court, is a place made up with Boards, with a Pent-house over it, into which place if a Ball be struck, it is a loss to the Striker.

Distances, are 6 figures made on the ground on the Service side, each a Yard asunder; on the other side there are only two Figures besides the Galleries.

Blew, is a Line drawn on the Flags overcross the Tennis Court on the Hazard side, over which the Player must serve the Ball, for the other Player to strike it.

Hazard side, is the side where they receive the Ball from the Pent-house.

Pent-house, the place on which they first cast out the Ball.

Chase, is to miss the second striking of the Ball back.

Bisk, is a stroak given by the better Player, that gains him a stroak, and is 15 when he pleaseth, and will save him from a Fault if he loseth one.

Stroak forwards, is a Cast in the Play.

Loss, it is more or less, sometimes a single loss; sometimes it mounts to 15.

Game, is a part of a Sett, and is generally wone by that side as gets the first 4 Stroaks.

Set, is either 4, 6, or as many Games as the Tennis Players agree upon.

Laws of the Tennis Court.

1. They that serve upon the Pent-house, are to serve behind the Blew on the Hazard side, else it is a loss.

2. If the Receiver miss two stroaks at his Serving, which is two Faults, it is a loss, which is 15.

3. They that get the first four stroaks, get the first Game of the Set, which may be as many Games as the Players order to be in the Set.

4. If 4 Games be the set (or what other number answerable) when they come to four all, then you must Play the first come to two Games, before you win the Set; or you may make it otherwise.

5. If it be agreed upon, you may Play as many as you please on a side.

6. You must observe that there is no changing sides without two Chases, or Forty one Chase, and then they may change sides, and the other serves upon the Pent-house beyond the Blew, and then the other is bound to play the Ball over the Line, between the Chase and the end Wall; and if the other side misses to return the Ball, he loses 15.

8. He that gets a Biske, makes him a stroak, which is 15, and saves him from a fault which is the missing of a stroak.

9. None is to be in the Court but the Players, and him that counts the Game, who is the Judge.

10. All Standers in the Galleries are not to speak a word in the Games, except they be asked, if they do, they lie liable to pay the Game that they plaid for.

CL. He beareth Argent, a **Slater** sitting on a **square Stone**, with another before him Gules, with his **Hewing Knife lifted** up in his right hand, and a **Slate** in the left, proper; cloathed Gules. This may more shorter be termed a **Slater dressing** of a **Slate**, cloathed Gules, the rest proper.

In the dexter chief of this quarter, is a Naked Man in **full aspect**, only **cloathed** in a short Coat, **close girt** B. his **Legs cross**, holding in each hand a Trefoile G. in a Field A. is the Coat of *Mendel van Steinfels* of *Bavaria*.

Slaters Working Tools.

A Slaters Hatchet.
A Trowel.
A Hewing Knife to cut the Slates even and square.
A Pick to make a hole in the Slate.
A Pinning Iron to widen the hole in the Slate to put the Pin in.
A Hewing Block, any square piece of Wood or Stone to cut the Slates upon.
A Lathing measure.
A Stone measure.
Pins, Stone Nails or Lath Nails, and Laths or Latts.

Names of their Slates according to their several Lengths.

Short Haghattee.
Long Haghattee.
Farwells.
Chitts.
Warnetts.
Shorts.
Shorts save one, or short so won.
Short Backs.
Long Backs.
Batchlers.
Wivetts.
Short Twelves.
Long Twelves.
Jenny why Jetteſt thou.
Rogue why Winkeſt thou.

The shortest Slate is about 4 Inches, all the rest exceed an Inch, one in length from the other; sometimes less or more, according as the Work-man pleaseth.

The several ways of covering Houses, or other Buildings.

Tyling, is a covering with long square Tiles, made of Clay and Burnt in a Kiln. **Pan-Tyle,** is when they Bend round in form of an ∽ and so lap over the edges one of another.

Leading, is by covering them over with Sheet Lead.

Flagging, is a covering made of very large broad Flaggs of fine Greet Stone, a Yard or more in height, and half in breadth. These are called broad Slates.

Slateing, is a covering of Houses with a kind of Blew Slaggy-Marble, which will split into thin pieces of all sorts of Sizes, acording to pleasure; some that are left thick, broad and long, are **double Slates.**

Shingling, is a covering with cleft Wood, made about 6 or 8 Inches broad, and 12 long, and pinned at one end to hang in the Laths: They are laid as Slates with Moss under them, which is termed **Mousing.**

Vaulting, is a cover made Arch-wise of great Hewn Stones, as Ashlers.

Thatching, is to cover them with Straw, Ferne, Rushes or Gorst, which is bound and held together by Laths, Windings and Thatch Pricks, done by the Art of the Thatcher.

Sodding, is the covering of little shourings and places of shade from Rain, with green Turfs or Grass Sods, or paring of the surface of Heathy Earth, which being laid on the Roof of a House keeps it dry.

CLI. He bearetb Sable, a **Man** in a **Frock** (or **Linnen** or **Canvas Coat,**) with a Cap upon his head, holding in his left hand a **Cart Whip** or **White** over his Breast in Bend Sinister, Sable. Some more shorter term him a **Carter in his Frock,** with his **Whip** in his left hand **Bendways.** Born by *Carter.*

In the precedent Chapters, *viz. chap.* 3. *numb.* 24. 25. I have given some small account of Husbandry, as much as concerns Hay Making, and Corn Reaping, with the Farmers Terms about the same; and in *chap.* 5. *numb.* 70. I have given an account of things needful and necessary for a good Farm, and what Husbandmen cannot be well without: And now in this place I shall give you an account of the Rules of Good Husbandry, both for House keeping, and their Monthly Observations for the good Ordering and Manuring of their Lands and Estates without Doors. All which, as it is the practice of Freeholders, Yeomen and Farmers, so it is not unworthy the Knowledge of the Gentry and Nobility of our Land, seeing the greatest of persons are maintained by the Field, and Kings have delighted in Husbandry Affairs, *Eccles.* 5. 9. 2 *Chron.* 26. 10.

Here I stand, with Whip in hand
To Slash all those, that do oppose } *Good Husbandry.*
For all they, that me gainsay
Shall soon run, and quickly come } *To Beggery.*

*

Observations of Husbandmen.

The way to Thrive, is to get a good Housewisely and careful **Wife.**

Careful **Husbands** are at Labour when others Sleep, and spend according to their getting and income.

It is a **Blessing** to have a good **Land-lord,** for under a bad, a Man shall never thrive.

In **Bargains** of Buying and Selling be careful and wise.

Unthriftiness, Slothfulness, Carelessness and **Rashness** in Business, are 4 Beggars that must be Lastly from the Door.

The **Officers of a good Husbands House,** is Money the **Drudge,** Work the **Servant,** Wisdom the **Controller,** good Order the **Clark,** Provision the **Caterer,** Skill the **Cook,** and **Steward** of all is Pen, Ink and a Book, Hunger the **Physician,** Thirst the **Butler,** the Masters Eye the **Usher,** and **Bolt and Lock** the Porter, Husbandry the **Bayliff** to provide abroad, and Housewifery the **Master** and **Mistress** to guide all daily at Home.

The **Armory of good Husbandry,** a sure House in good repair is his Castle; a Coffer fast Lockt his Storehouse and Treasury; a Ban-Dog the Scout Watch, to give notice of a Thief; Gun, Arrows and Bell, to give notice that the Chieftain is within.

The **Enemies to Thriftiness,** are too much credit given to Servants, ill usage of Goods, a bad, destroying and a scolding Wife, Graceless Children, Wretched Servants, a Ravening Mastive, Hogs that eat Poultry, and a giddy Brained Master, to be each day Feasting, and Building Houses for Glory, spending faster than it comes in, and delighting in Parasites, Harlots, and such like as Borrow but never pay.

Friends to Thriftiness, is good Husbandry to get and gain, good Housewifery to keep and save, to be seldom Surety, but never for much, to be pinching in lending and spending, never to crave but live of their own, if they Borrow to be just in keeping their time.

For, who lives but Lends? or Lent too he must,
Else Buying and Selling must ly in the Dust.

Not to Trust the Borrower if once or twice he hath cracked his Credit, except he bring his Surety; if he be Angry for asking, make even with him, and trust not anew.

Take **Weekly** and **Monthly Accounts** of thy Expences, first Reckon, then Write before you Pay, and Receive before you Write; Be sure to receive good Money.

Keep not **two Houses for Pleasure,** for that is double Charges, for the Rolling Stone can gather no Moss.

The **Masters Eye** makes the Horse Fat, and Work to go forwards, and the Mistresses Eye doth as much, which if they govern with Skill and Reason, their Servants are ever at their Will and Pleasure.

To

To **seek Revenge** for every Trespass or Wrong, shall not long live quiet.

Go not to Law, except on urgent occasions.

Say little to Hawkers and Hunters, neither be Rude, but rather open them a Gap than let them do it themselves.

Keep the Sabbath, and thy Servants from gadding abroad, observe Fish days and Fast days according to the Custom of the Church, pay thy Tythes and Offerings freely.

Pay Workmen weekly, to feed their Houshold, and Servants Quarterly, to Buy what they need, and be Charitable to the Poor, and give to cover the Naked.

Keep out Rascals and **Vagabonds** that are Slothful and will not Work, Purloiners and Filchers that lurk about Houses, and Lubbers that are loth to take pains.

Give thy **Children good Nurture** and Learning, and teach them how to live in the Fear of God, for this is the best Portion that can be given.

Do not pinch or spare, nor pine thy self to Chest Bags for thy Wife, for after thy Death they shall be open to such as sooth her, and so come to waste; but **good husbandry** to prevent these frailties in some; take part of Gods Blessings, and leave the rest to **Wife** and **Children** each one their part, as he thinks best.

Januaries Husbandry Observations.

When Christmas is gone, we must begin our Work to renew.

If the Weather serve bring Muck to your Field, and dig your Gardens, and break up Ground.

Ewes ready to Yean put in clean ground free from Stubble, Mire and Briers, and keep them from Dogs, Rear Lambs that are Twins, and they will breed Twins.

Rear Calves and geld them, let them be likely and fair, and Calved between Christmas and Lent, Sell such as fall between the Change and prime of the Moon.

A good Farrowing Sow is as profitable as a Cow, rear Pigs that are largest.

Geld all Cattel young, as Calves, Colts, Lambs and Pigs

Lambs soon sold, is best for old Ewes, but if you will have Milk from the Dam, let it suck till May, the like observe in the Goat.

Good to Lop and Prune Trees, and fall Wood.

Set or remove young Trees and Stocks, Vines and Grafts, set Willows, Muck Hop-yards with Pigeon Dung.

Set Chestnuts, Walnuts, Nuts, Filberds, Apricocks, Peaches, Plums and Cherries, with all other Stone Fruit; set the young Bay and Laurel, or the Berries.

Set the Kernels of Apples and Pears, and all other Trees that bear Gums.

In ridding of Pastures, fill every hole up, for that will be profitable.

Break up ground where Barly is sowed, and give the Land good Tillage.

Sow Oats now where you intend Pasture ground, and it will come the sooner, and the Oats be better, for he that sows them in May gets but little by them.

House the Rearing Calf, and suckle it twice a day, and after a while set by him Water and Hay, and a ragged Stake to rub on, and at 50 days end Wean it, so the older Weanid will teach the younger to drink and eat.

*

Februarys Observations.

Keep your Cattel well, if you will have them work.

Lay Muck a Month in the Field before it be spread from the Dung heap.

Make good Fence and Ditches about your Fields; but for want of Pasture, let Fields for a time be laid open for Cattel to feed and run about to fill their Bellies.

Dung Meadow Land, and cast abroad Molehills; But if Meadows be given to wet, the more Molehills the better, that Lambs may sit on.

Yoke Swine, Mew Hawks, and let Shepherds look to their Flocks, for now is busie both Wild Dogs, Wolf and Fox.

Sow Kernels of Haws, Mustard seed, and all sorts of Pot Herbs and Sallet Herbs.

Set all sorts of Flowers that can be got; Trim all sorts of Fruit Trees from Moss, Canker, and superfluous Branches.

Plow and Sow Pease the Moon past the Full, but sow fine Seed the Moon increasing.

Sow on Stubble for Fitches, Bean, Pease, and Runtivals; but sow not white Pease till St. Gregories day, all in the wain of the Moon, and Harrow them well.

Sow Hemp amongst Nettles, and the Nettles will die.

Set Clapper and Scare Crow, with Gun, Bow and Arrow, where such Seed and Cod-ware is sowed.

And now he that slacks his Tillage to follow a Cart, for a Groat gotten abroad, loseth three at home.

March Observations.

Sow White Pease, and Barly when the Hathorns are white, be it dry or wet, and follow the Plough with the Harrow, viz. March, April *and* May: *And roul the Barley after a Rain when first it appeareth, and it will grow better and Mow.*

If Clods in Wheat Land break not in Frost, roul it, or break them in dry Weather.

March dry or wet set Hop roots; it is also a fit Month for Grafting from Change of the Moon to the prime, regarding Wind and Weather.

Set Quicksets, and cut those of growth, cover the Roots of Trees (pened in December *and* January*) with fat Earth.*

In this Month also sow Garden Roots and Pot-herbs, slip Artichokes and Sage.

Spare the Meadow from eating, if you expect good Hay.

Spare Mores and Marshes till May if you expect good Pasturing.

Kill on the Clod the Pye, Rook, Crow, and Raven, and Pigeons fright away if you expect a good Crop.

Apnils Observations.

Make Fens, and spread Hillocks in Meadows for Hay.

Set Poles for Hops deep and strong.

Sow Flax and Hemp, set and sow all kind of Garden Herbs, yet this Rule do not forget, to Sow dry, and set wet.

Restore the liberty of the Laborious Bee by opening her Hive.

Now let good Wives look to their Gardens, and begin to think of their Dairies, for from April to St. Andrews tide Dairies do last.

Mays Observations.

This Month commands the Provident Wife and the prudent Artist to set their Skill on Work; in the beginning of this Month set and sow those tender Herbs that would not endure the former cold; also Buck, Pease, Hemp, Flax.

Weed your Hop-yards and Gardens, and Corn fields, Poultrey are their ill Neighbours.

Put Lambs from Ewes that are to be Milked, and Kids from the Goats; and keep Sheeps Tails from Maggots and Mads; put Calves to Grass.

If Corn be rank turn in Sheep to Wood-lands, never to Champion ground, or Mow it.

Drain Ditches and Fens, and twice Fallow thy Land, and gather up Stones.

Watch swarming of Bees, and thrash up thy Barn.

Fetch home Fuel, as Coals, Billets, Faggots and Turf, but Crop not till Michaelmass.

Junes Observations.

Wash Sheep to Shear, and Shear them the Moon increasing.

Repair thy Barn and Floor, keep all dry over head.

Marle and Slice thy ground, and mow thy Meadows.

Plow early, and have Cart and all things in order to bring in Fuel and Fodder.

At the Full of the Moon this Month and next gather your Herbs to keep dry for all the Year.

Set Rosemary and Gillistowers, and sow Lettice and Radish 3 or 4 days after the Full, and they will not run to seed.

Distilling of Roses and other Herbs, and making Syrups and Conserves are now in prime.

Julys Observations.

Get Rue, Wormwood, and Gall to strew on your Floors to destroy Fleas.

Now is the time for Hay-making, and make Hovels and Stacks for want of Barning.

Pull up thy Hemp, and dry Flax get in, Mow or pluck up thy Buck and Branke.

Thrice Fallow thy ground.

Gather ripe Pease and Beans to eat from thy Garden.

At the Full of the Moon gather Flowers and Seeds, dry your Flowers rather in the Shade than in the Sun, but to avoid Corruption let the Suns heat a little visit them.

Augusts Observations.

Gather Saffron and Mustard seed; and now with Thankfulness Reap your Harvest by day, and gather and Cart it dry in.

Get Gorse, Hamme, Heath, Turf and Furzin for Firing.

Break and Swingle Hemp and Flax.

Thrice Fallow Ground, sow Winter Herbs in Full of the Moon, and muck for Barly ground.

Esteem of fair Weather as precious, and misspend it not.

After Harvest Havock thy ground, let it lie Common if Town Fields.

Mend High ways, and provide Milch Cows for Lent, and Salt fish.

Septembers Observations.

Sow Rye in the Dust, the cleaner the Rye the better the Crop; Sow before Michaelmas.

Muncorn, mix Rye with Wheat to sow, and sow it neither too thick nor too thin, for Weeds grow where Seed is wanting; and endeavour to keep off Pigeon, Rook and Crow.

Now is the time to Trench, Hedg, Ditch, repair Mud-walls, scour Ponds, and mend Dams.

Geld Bulls and Rams, Sty the Hog and Boar, and ring the Swine.

Mast and Acorns for Hogs gather now.

Gather Crabs, pull Grapes, with other Michaelmas Fruit.

Karle Hemp up clean which before was green, beat out the Seed, and lay it to steep in a Pit.

The beginning of this and end of the last Month gather Hops in fair Weather, and new Dew.

Set Quick Sets, remove Trees from this time to February in the New of the Moon, and the Weather warm.

Sow Parsnips and Carrots, Set Roses, Raspes, Barberries, Gooseberries and Strawberries.

Now Old and New Farmers make Bargains and take Farms.

Octobers Observations.

Plow up and round ground for Barley.

Sow the best Wheat upon Pease; Edish is also good to sow Wheat.

Woodland and Manured Land will bear three good Crops, 1. Barley, 2. Pease, 3. Wheat.

Champion Land will abide but two Crops, 1. Barley and Wheat, or Barley and Rye, 2. Pease.

Fallow ground (to lye faugh) is good for Wheat, but Waterish Fields bad.

Gravel and Sandy ground is not the best, but rotten black Land is worth Gold.

Hard Barren Land doth bear a small Straw and Ear.

If Weather prevent not, Sow Wheat before Hallowmas Eve.

Much Wet causeth Thistles and Weeds.

Gravel and Sandy ground is good for Rye, Clay and rottener Land for Pease and Barley.

Lusty and strong Land for Wheat, which makes the Straw and Ear big and strong.

Light Land for White and Red Wheat.

Heavy Land is best for white and red Pollard, and Turkey and French Wheat.

Crop upon Crop of the same Grain, will bring Land soon to decay; therefore some use 1. To Fallow. 2. Barly. 3. Pease 4. Wheat. 5. Fallow again, or ly Lay for Cattel.

Upland new broken up or over Dunged is not best for Wheat.

Pease Sowed, and a Fallow after, requires no Dunging for Wheat.

Ground that hath Winter Water upon it, sow with Oats, Pease, Runcivals and Fitches.

In this Month sow Acorns and Hastings, set Quick-sets, sow Kernels and Berries.

No-

Novembers Observations.

Set Crab-tree stocks to graft on, and in the beginning of this Month remove young Plants and Trees about the new Moon, observing this as a seasonable secret, that in setting, you carefully place that side to the South and West, which was so before you took the Plant up.

In the old of the Moon set Pease and Bean, sow Parsnips, and Carrots, and Garlick.

Trench Gardens with Dung, and uncover the Roots of Apple-trees, and so let them remain till March.

Kill Swine in or near the full of the Moon, and the Flesh will prove the better, for now Hoggs, Pork and Souce, is good fare in a Country Farm, but much Bacon and long kept groweth Reasty.

If thou have it, Thresh Barley for Malt, but for thy own fare, no more than is to be used.

Till March Thresh not Wheat but as you Eat it, for fear of Pusting and Fustiness.

Rear no young Cattle in the Winter.

Lay Muck and Straw in a Muck-hill to Rott.

Fay foul and full Privies, and Rid Chimneys by good sweeping of Soot.

Spread Mold-hills, and Ring Swine.

An in Conclusion be careful of the Barn, for Threshers both early and late are apt to pilfer and fill their Bag and Bottle.

Decembers Observations.

In the later quarter of the Moon this Month and next, are best to fell Timber.

Cover your Artichoke Roots, and all your best Flowers and Herbs from cold and storms with Muck or Rotten Horse Dung.

Look well to the fodering of thy Cattle, and blood thy Horses if there be occasion.

Its no Season of Hedging and Ditching or any out Work, but to cleave Logs of Wood, and to carry in Fuel for Kitchin and Hall Fires.

Feed Bees with Hony, remove young Trees and Stocks: as Cherries and Plums, in open Weather.

Christmas Fare, for the Good Husbandman and Housewife, is good Bread, good Drink, good Fire in the Hall, and varieties of good Meat: as Brawn, Pork, Puddings, Souce, Beef and Mustard, Mutton, Pig, Veal and Pyes of the best, with Geese, Capons, Turkeys, and Ducks: also Cheese, Apples and Nuts, &c. with Masking and Mumming, Carols and Dancing good Store.

And of other Dainties I leave out a many,
which costs the Husbandman never a Penny.

CLII. He beareth Argent, a **Turner, Turning** (or **Throwing**) **at his Lath,** all proper. This is the Crest belonging to the Company of *Throwers*.

[ ]

A Turners, or Throwers Tools.

A **Lath** with all its appurtenances or members thereunto belonging which you will find named *c.* 8. *n.* 149.

The **Seat**, where the Turner sitteth when he is Turning.

Gouges of all sorts, bigg and little, wide and narrow.

Hooks or **Hook Gouges** of several sorts.

Grooving Hooks, and **Grooving Tools.**

Chisels, and **flat Chisels.**

A **Mandrel**, a **Broad flat Mandrel.**

A **Pin Mandrel**, and an **Hollow Mandrel.**

A **Screw Mandrel.**

Collars of several fashions, with the joynt and round Collars.

A **Mawl,**

An **Hatchet,**

A **Draw-Knife,**

A **Cleaving Knife,**

A **Chopping** or **Hacking Block.**

A **Pair of Compasses,**

The **Callippers,** Compasses with crooked shanks to measure the Diameter of any round body.

A **Drill-bench,**

A **Swash Board,**

The Brasiers turning Tools.

The **Brasiers Lath,** with its Members: see *chap.* 8. *numb.* 162.

An **Iron Vice,**

Hooks, or **Edge Tools.**

An **Iron Lath**, called a **Turn Bench.**

A **Drill-bow**, and **Drill-string,**

A **Graver** and a **Sculptor,** of these there are round and flat, great and small, to the intended Moldings, in the Work.

A **Turning Engin,** by which Oval Work is turned, also Rose Work, and Swash Work is made: *chap.* 8. *numb.* 143. 163.

Terms of Art used by the Throwers or Turners in their Exercises.

Axis, is the imagined straight Lines that passes through the two Center-points that turned Work is turned upon.

Crook or **Crank,** is the end of an Iron Axis, turned square down and again turned square to the first turning down, so that at the last turning down a Leather Thong is slipt, to tread the treddle Wheel about.

Female Screw, the Screw made in a round hole of a Nut, or Box.

Male Screw, the Screw made upon a Shank, or Pin.

Nut, a piece of Iron that the Female Screw is made in.

Swash,

Swash Work, is a Figure whose circumference is not round but Oval; and whose Moldings lie not at right Angles, but oblique to the Axis of the Work.

Wabble, is when a piece of Work is not pitcht true upon its Centers, it will in a revolution incline more to one side of its circumference than on its opposite side.

There are several other Terms used in the Exercises of **Turners** not mentioned here: which are used in the Trads of **Joyners, Carvers, Carpenters**; in which Occupations they are set down, to which I shall referr you.

CLIII. He beareth Argent, a **Mans Face couped below the shoulders**, proper; having three **Sun Beams** proceeding from each side his Head, Or: **Clothed** Gules. Born by the name of *Colmarshine*. The like to this **Clothed** Argent, having an **Escutchion** on his Breast parted per Pale Sable and Argent, two **Cheverons counterchanged**: is the Crest of the Family of *Wolfganesheim* in *Alsatia*.

A **Mans Face** with a forked **Beard**, and side or long **Hair**, with the **Sun Beams issuing** from his **Temples**, Or. Is the Crest of the Honorable the Baron of *Hilton*.

Some Blazon this a **Mans Face**, others a **Womans Face** with **Sun Beams each side the Head**; saying no number by reason such bearings have them always three in a Place from that part they do proceed; as a **Gryffin** (**sans Wings**) **Leggs, Beak** and **Gorged** with a **Coronet Chained**, Or: having the **Sun Beams** proceeding from each Shoulder and the lower part of the Back, is the Supporter of the Right Honorable the Earl of *Ormond*. The like is born by the Lord *Haundsdin*, with this difference that the **Gryffin** hath the like number of **Sun Beams** out off his Forehead; viz. three Beams, *Cum multis aliis*, &c.

☞ Now here is one thing to be noted, in the manner of the **couping** of such kind of Bodies: for to say, **couped at the Shoulders**; then it is to be understood that there is a part of the top of the Shoulders joyned to the Neck, as is shewed more largely, *lib.* 2. *chap.* 17. *numb.* 5, 6, 7. But to say **couped below the Shoulders**, then it is to be taken that the couping is to be at the Navel or lower then the Breast, though there be no Arms seen at the Body: for were there Arms, it would or could not be termed, a **Body Couped**; but a **Demy Man** or **Woman**, as you may see *chap.* 4. *numb* 59. and *lib.* 2. *chap.* 17. *numb.* 63, 64. Now this way of couping is much in use amongst the *Dutch* and *German* Heralds, as the Works published by *Johan. Sibmacher de Norimbergia, Anno* 1605. & 1609. doth abundantly Testifie: see *chap.* 3. *numb.* 16. and *lib.* 2. *chap.* 18. *numb.* 143.

CLIV. He beareth Argent, a **Wittals**, or **Cuckolds Face**, proper; **Band** Argent: his **Cloths below his Breast triparted**, or **turning into a fouldage**, Gules Born by the name of *Garvittal*.

☞ This way of bearing things triparted into fouldage (that is, into Leaves representing the three pointed Leaf, or Figg-tree Leaf) very rarely exceeds more then three Leaves, one on each side, and one in the middle, and these three again are subdivided each into three, else they could not be termed **Fouldages** but **Partings**, as in *numb.* 156.

CLV. He beareth Or, a **young Satyrs Head**, or **Midas Head** proper; **sans Arms, his Garment below his Navel, turning into Fouldage**, Azure; **Wings of the Garment and Girdle about his Loyns**, Argent. Born by the name of *Dotterille*, see *lib.* 2. *chap.* 17. *numb.* 18.

This manner of bearing may in short be as well blazoned a **Demy Satyr, sans Arms, his Garments Triparted** into a **Fouldage, Shoulder Wings** (or **Pieces**) and **Girdle**, so and so.

Midas Head couped below the Shoulders (or under the Breast) **Clothed** A. is the Crest of *Waldeck*, in *Rhyne* Palatinate.

CLVI. He beareth **Argent, a Womans Head, Muffled about the Face with a Cap**, Gules; **Turned up**, Or: **Crazed at**, or in the **Shoulders of the second**, by the name of *Vanglin*. This is the *Dutch* blazoning.

B. such an Head, the Shoulders ending in a Tripartine form A. is the Coat of *Van Neichen* in *Bavaria* in *Germany*.

☞ Some blazon this kind of parting by the term of **Triparted**, if it end in three points; and **Duparted** and **Biparted**, if it end in two points: as *lib.* 2. *cap.* 18. *numb.* 141, 142. for it cannot be said, to be **Crazed**, seeing there is no sign of a Renting, Tearing, or of a Raggedness of the parts, which **Crazing** signifies; when on the contrary these partings are smooth and plain, as the Examples shews.

CLVII. He beareth Azure, a **Satyrs Head couped at the Shoulders**, proper: with two **Dragons Wings Overture**, Or. Some term it a **young Satyrs Head between two Bats Wings**: but it cannot be said properly to be between the Wings, when the Wings are joyned to the Shoulders as these are; but rather to say a **Satyrs Head couped at the Shoulders, Winged like a Dragon** (or **Bat Overture**. This is the Coat Armor of *Glachiner*.

A Mans Head proper, with a **Cap on**, and **Wreathed about the Temples** Or, and Gules; **Mounted**, or **belet on each side with Ass Ears, between two Dragons Wings**: is the Crest of *Gaston Defoys* sometime a Knight of the Order of the Garter, as I find in an old Manuscript.

CLVIII. He beareth Or, a **Sea Satyrs Head couped at the Shoulders**, Gules; this is of some Heralds diversly called or blazoned, a **Mare-Mans Head**, and a **Sea King**, or **Devils Head**; others a **Sea-Apes Head**, and a **Sea-Monsters Head** with a **Humane Face**: but I hold it best termed a **Sea Satyr**, being the **Land Satyr** is drawn also with Ears like an Ass: as *cap.* 10. *numb.* 4. see *lib.* 2. *chap.* 15. *numb.* 48.

CLIX.

CLIX. He beareth Sable, an **Harpie Displaid**, Or: **Crowned**, and the **Face** or **Visage**, proper. This is a *French* Coat, and I have followed the *French* Heralds Blazon, who saith that this Coat belongs to *Monsieur Montmary*. However I find such a bearing *viz.* Sable, with an **Harpie Displaid** and **Crowned**, between four **Stoiles of six Rays**, Or. to be the Coat Armour of Monsieur *John Count Deostfrise* Lord *de Darbuy*.

But if I may give my thoughts of this blazon, I should not so term it (as is aforesaid) but rather, a **Demy Roman Soldier sans Arms, Crowned**: or thus, a **face Crowned out off a Roman Coat**: but above all, blazon it, a **Demy Brasilian**, or **Native of Brasil sans Arms**: for according to that Climate they go thus usually adorned with a Crown of Feathers on their Heads, Arms and about the middle, as you may see *chap.* 5. *numb.* 22. 42.

CLX. He beareth Argent, a **Frier** or **Monks** head, proper; **couped at the Shoulders**, with his **Monks Hood** or **Cowle hanging about his Neck**, Sable: **Monks, Friers** and **Popish Priests** are always born with **Bald** or **Shaven Crowns**, having only a circle of short Hair round about the lower part of the Head, and above the Ears. This is born by the name of *Monkby*.

A **Frier couped below the Shoulders**, with a white **Coat** and **Cowle**, or **Hood hanging behind his Head**; which some call a **Frier Carmalite, couped past the middle**. Is the Crest of Sir *Thomas Barrington*, who lived in the time of Queen *Elizabeth*.

CLXI. He beareth Sable, the **Virgin Marys Head couped at the Shoulders**; **Coife** and **Habit** (or **Clothing**) Argent, with an **Umbrel Hat on her**, Or. Antiquity did ever set forth the **Virgin Mary** after this form with her **Umbrel** or **Shady Hat**, when she was represented to us in any of her travelling postures, as when she went down into *Egypt* from *Herods* Bloody Massacry, *&c.*

CLXII. He beareth Argent, a **Womans Head couped below the Shoulders**, on her Head a **Capped Tank Embowed**, and **Tied under her Chin** Gules, **Turned up** Or: **Robe** and **Faced** answerable thereunto, (or after others) **Robed** or **Mantled** of the second, **Lined** of the third. This is the Crest of *Van Joansdorf*.

The like Head, **Cap** and **short Mantle**, with the **Strings Flotant on each side the Chin** Argent, **out of a Coronet** Or: Is the Crest of *Van Neiching* of *Bavaria*; whose Coat I had occasion to tell you before, *numb.* 56. Some take this to be a **Demy Woman Pilgrim in her short Cloak**, as *chap.* 4. *numb.* 36.

CLXIII. He beareth Argent, an **Annulet beset in Cross** with four **Buttons Tasselled**, Or. This is the Coat, and the like is the Crest of the Family of *Abdorf* in *Switzerland*. **Annulets** after this manner have (in the *German* Coats) very often things of this nature joyned to them; as **Balls, Leaves, Flowers, Feathers**, with other various charges, which if the same be not set close and full, then the number is to be mentioned and how they stand, whether in **Triangle, Cross**, or **Saiter**, *&c.* else number them not: see the three succeeding Examples.

CLXIV. He beareth Or, an **Annulet** with eight **Staves Floyt conjoyned there unto**, Sable. Born by the name of *Offerby*. The like **Annulet Staved** and **Floyt** Argent, over a **Bend** Sable, in a **Field**, Or. Is the Coat of *Reinboltlin* in *Alsatia*.

A. the like **Annulet Staved** and **Floyt**, having on the top of that **Erected**, a **Mullet of six Points**, Or: in a **Field per Fesse** Argent and Gules, belongs to the Family of *Asebenzeiler* of *Alsatia*, and also to *Virncorn* in the same Province or Countrey. Others term this, a **Mullet** on the **Point** of the **highest Staff**, or on the **Head** of the **upright Staff**.

CLXV. He beareth Azure, an **Annulet conjoyned to six Staves Patee in the Ends**, Argent. Others say, fixt to the ends of six **Staves Patee**. But it is best blazoned an **Annulet Staved**, the ends **Patee**. This is the Coat of *Pranthoch* of *Swabadia* a Countrey in the *Netherlands*.

CLXVI. He beareth Or, an **Annulet beset with three Boat-hooks in Triangle**, Sable. Born by the name of *Brobach* of *Brunswick* in *Germany*. These are termed **Fisher Boat-hookes**, see *chap.* 15. *numb.* 26.

CLXVII. He beareth Argent, a **Cross Taw** Gules, **Edged** and **Fitched at the Ends**, Sable. This is the Coat of *Gundersdorff* of *Bavaria*. What this Instrument is, or what rightly to term it, I have not yet better Learned; or only to call it else, a **Crouch** or **Crouch Staff, Hooped** and **Spiked** at all ends (till a better name be known) is not amiss.

In the Dexter of this Square, is such another like bearing, which at first sight were able to confound a young blazoner what to call it: I found it in *Abraham Ortelius* his *Theatrum Orbis Terrarum*, to be Impaled with Barry of 8, as the Royal Arms of the Kingdom of *Hungary*: and may be thus Blazoned, on a **Hill** or **Mount** of **three Cops**, a **Cross of Hungary**; this being sufficient to describe it, yet if you will be more curious in the thing, you may term it, a **Pale couped above**, and **Bretissed**, or the **upright Stem of a Cross thrice** or **Treble Crossed**: but from the Person or Place of its bearing, is its best Denominations, as you have had formerly Examples of the like blazonings, see *lib.* 1. *chap.* 5. *numb.* 6.

In the Sinister Base, is a kind of a **Drinking Cup**, or **Vessel** made off the higher end, or the small top of a **Bull** or **Cows Horn**, the **Tip end Reversed**, Supported by two Feet fixed on a Hoop, invironing the middle of it. It is by some Gentlemens Buttlers termed a **Souce**, or **Goglet**, or **Goblet**.

A. 3 such V. is quartered by *Risley* of *Risley*, as I find

find in an old Manuscript, but by what name I cannot understand.

CLXVIII. He beareth Gules, a **Papal Gonfanon, or square Banner Invecked at the Bottom,** Argent, the **Staff,** Or. This is an **Ensign of Triumph,** and is ever carried before the Popes Holiness, when he goeth, or is carried in Processions: therefore, (because they hang contrary to all other Banners) these kinds are ever termed **Papal Banners,** to distinguish them from others, see *chap.* 2. *numb.* 67.

The Ropemakers Instruments for making Ropes.

CLXIX. He beareth Argent, a **Ropers Hook,** and **Top,** Sable: by the first is the **Rope Yarn Spun,** or **turned in the Stead,** when it is **Laid** for the making of a **Cable**; and is generally termed a **Stead Hook.**

The second called a **Ropers Top,** is a round piece of Wood Taper wise, with three half round Gutters in the out sides, with an handle to hold and guide it; through these Gutters the Ropes run as they are **Sarved** or **Plicated** into a **Cable.** These are made of several sizes or bigness, according to the largeness of the Quoil, or thickness of the Rope or Cable made.

In the Sinister base is another Instrument of the Ropers, called a **Ropers Stake,** only of three Tangs, or Teeth to keep the **Fakes** or **Rope Yarn** in Spinning, that they neither touch or tangle one with another, when two, three, or four are working together, and set in a Basis, or over Thwart piece to keep it upright. But were it not amongst the Ropers Instrument, I should take the boldness upon me as to blazon it, a **Potence** or a **Crouch Lambeaux reversed,** as being contrary posed to that formerly mentioned, *lib.* 1. *chap.* 5. *numb.* 104. and *chap.* 9. *numb.* 42.

A the like G. is born by *Welldon.*

CLXX. He beareth Azure, a **Ropemakers Wince** or **Winch,** Or: when the Spinner hath drawn out his Rope Yarn to that considerable length he can, then it is taken from the Wheele Spindle, and Wound upon the **Wince** till it be as full as the cross staves will contain it. It is turned upon an **Iron Bolt** fixed in the Wall or the like, when it is full it is called a **Wince of Yarn.**

That marked (*a.*) in the Base is termed a **Ropers Stead,** a thing by which they **Twist** their Ropes, it is termed more properly the **Laying of a Rope,** when they make double, treble, or fourfold Cable Ropes: It hath these several parts.

Standards,
Plank,
Slot, to lay the weight on.

That in the Dexter chief is blazoned a **Ropers Whare** or **Wharve,** or **Wheele Spindle,** and is one of those little hooks, with a **Spindle** on its Shank, that turns or spinns the Hemp into Rope Yarn by the help of a Leather compassing the great VWheele and the Spindles.

CLXXI. In this Quarter are four Instruments very much used by the Roper.

The first in the Dexter chief is termed a **Turning Bass,** marked (*a.*) it is only a piece of Wood cut with handles having three holes in which are put the handles of the hooks, that Ropes are turned, where being well seated in the said holes by the help of this Engine in moving it up and down, too and again, one Person will with ease turn all the three hooks with long Ropes fixed upon the ends of them, which otherwise it would require two or three Persons to turn.

The next under it marked (*b.*) is termed a **Ropers Stake,** this is a Stay or Stake with many Teeth or divisions of its use, see before *numb.* 169.

That in the Dexter base, marked (*c.*) is termed a **Neptunes Mace,** or a **Trident inverted** or **Turned Inward,** this is by *Jo. Hemelarius* in his Comment or Explination of the Images on the *Roman* Coins, termed a **Trident Inversant** in form of the Letter T. and is an Emblem of the **Anchor,** being a sure and stedfast hold. It is on several of the old *Roman* Coins held in the hands of the Image *Tellus,* or the *Earth,* or *Mercury,* and such like Figures.

The third is the **Ropers Wheele,** marked (*d.*) by which the **Rope Yarn** is made or Spun: this Wheele is turned between two standards with an Head-stock on the top, wherein by the help of a Wheele-string or Band, is turned one, two, three or more **Whares** with hook: It hath these several parts.

Frame,
Wheele Stocks,
Wheele String,
Head of the Stocks, where the **Spindle** runs.

There is another way of fixing the **Wheele** between four **Standards** with **Cross Pieces** in the middle, after the form of two *Roman* H's, through the middle of which pieces turns the ends of the **Arle-Tree,** or **Spindle,** by which the **Wheele** is turned, having a **Semi-circle Board** on the top of either **Standard** (as the former Wheele) between which is turned two, three or four **Wharles** or **Whares,** with hooks at the ends of their **Arles** to **Twist** and **Spin the Rope Yarn**; being turned by means of a **Wheele-string** or **Leather** compassing them and the **Wheele.**

The last, is that on the Sinister side marked (*e.*) termed a **Distaff,** or a **Distaff full of Hemp,** from this the Spinner by going backwards draws the **Hemp** which the **Whares** turns into **Yarn.**

A **Pair of Nippers,** being the **under Nipper** and the **higher**; these are of **Iron,** and are to hold the **Rope** fast down in the **Tar Pan,** while it is drawn through the **Tar**: It is drawn out by a **Windlass,** such as **Buckets** are drawn out of a Well; yet it being turned but three times about the **Stock of the Windlass,** is drawn off it as fast as it is drawn through the **Tar.**

Upholsters

Upholsters Tools, by which they perform their Work.

There are several things which they use in their Trade, which are also Exercised in other Occupations, and therefore to avoid their double Engraving on Plates, I have omitted many here, which are set down else where, to which Plates I refer you, where their names are set down in particular, *chap.* 3. *numb.* 35.

CLXXII. In this Quarter I do present you with four sorts of Instruments chiefly used by the **Upholsters**, and by very few other Trades.

The first on the Dexter side is the **Stuffing Stick**, it is or may be made of tough Wood or Iron, being a little bent at the end, with a nick in it; by the help whereof, all parts of the seat of a Cushion, Chair, or Stool, are equally filled.

The second which occupieth the Fesse point (marked *b.*) is termed a **Prickal**: It is a kind of Aul with a great Box of other hard Wooden head; by the help of this, with the blow of an Hammer on the head is made an hole, to put and drive the shank of a Brass Nail into the Wood, which would not drive otherways.

A. 3 of these is born by the name of *Prickall*, or *Prickard*.

The third which stands on the Sinister side, is termed an **Upholsterers Rule**, or **square Rule**; the one part twice as long at the other end, with a Shouldering under it like to a Lase under a Beam which makes it much resemble a **Globet**, or of a **Testudo** in which the *Romans* of old used to sling their Battering Rame.

The fourth is that lying in the Base, (marked *a.*) and is called their **Pack** or **Matting Needle**; It is made of Iron or Steel with a **Long Eye**, bending upwards at the Point, the bottom side is flat, and the bending side round.

Things of most Note in the 1, 2, 3, 4, *and* 5, *Chapters of this third Book: Noted according to the Folio's.*

Several ways of Blazoning with the Characters for the Planets and Precious Stones, *fol.* 1.
Crowns of several fashions *fol.* 3. 4. 32. 245. 247.
Coronets or Crownetts for several Degrees of Persons *fol.* 3. 4.
Chapeaues, and Caps of Maintenance, Honor and Dignity, *fol.* 5.
Tortes, Wreathes, and Filletts of Honor, of diverse fashions, *fol.* 5. 6.
Chapletts, Circles of Gold, 4. 6.
Laurells, Garlands of several sorts, 6. 7.
Caps of several fashions, 8. 9. 10. 11.
Several ways of Bearing things on Caps, 9.
Infula's, Tankes, and Head Covers, several sorts, 10. 11.
Hatts of diverse Countrey fashions, 11.
Cowles, Hoods, Caules & Head Attires, diverse, 12. 13.
Parts of a Boot, 13.
Slippers, Shooes, Hose, Boots, 13. 14.
Parts of a Shooe, 14.
Sorts of Shooes, 14.
Parts of a Band, 15.
Bands, Ruffs, Cravatts, diverse fashions, 15.
Turnes up in Caps and Garments several ways. 10.
Maunches, Sleeves of men & women diverse fashions. 17
Robes, Coats, & other Garments, 18 19. (18
Parts of a Childs coat. 18.
Parts of a Vest, 18. Parts of a Ston-Ring, 20.
Several Cross-Staves. 23.
Coines, Bullen, Money of several Countreys, how called and of what value. 25 to 37.
Rings with the Terms for the several parts, 20. 21.
Several ways of couping, 270.
Emperours, Kings, Princes, with other noble Personages that rule & governe people, 40.
Robes and Ensignes of Majestie. 40.
Coronation Ceremonies of Kings, 41.
Officers & Servants belonging to Kings, & their Fees. (42.
Officers of State. 45
Officers of the Kings houshold, 43.
Creation of a Prince. 46 47.
Officers belonging to the Prince of Wales. 46.
The Princes Revenue. 47.
Creation & Stile of a Duke, 48.
Creation & Stile of a Marquiss, 48.
Creation and Stile of an Earle, 49.
Creation Robes of an Earle, 48.
Houshold Servants belonging to the Earle of Chester, 49.
Officers of Dignitie to the said Earle, 49.
Revenue of the Earle of Chester, 50.
Several Dignities in the title of a Baron, 51.
Creation and Robes of a Baron, 52.
Creation and Robes of a Knight of the Garter, 51.
Orders & Statutes of the said Knights, 53.
Officers of the Chapter to the Knights of Garter, 54.
Creation & Habit of a Knight of the Bath, 54 55.
Fees given at a Knight of Baths Creation, 56.
Several Degrees of Knighthood, 56 57 58.
Fees given at makeing of a Baronett, 56.
The maner of Dubing Knights, of old & moderne tymes. (56,
Degrading of disloyal Knights, 58.
Creation of a King of Arms, 59.
Creation of Heraulds & Pursevants, 59.
Office of a Major of a City, or Corporation, 60.

Officers of a Corporation, 60.
Several Courts of Judgment, 61.
Officers and Habits of them of the Kings - Bench, 62.
Officers and Habits of the Court of Common - Pleas, *ib.*
Officers and Habits of the Exchequer, *ibid.*
Officers in the Higher or upper Exchequer, 63.
Officers belonging to the High Court of Chancery, *ibid.*
Officers in the Marshes of *Wales*, *ibid.*
Officers in the Dutchy Court of *Lancaster*, *ibid.*
Officers in the Palatinate Courts in *Chester*, *ibid.*
Ecclesiastical Courts and their Officers, 64.
Punishment inflicted by Spiritual Courts, *ibid.*
Hospital of several Natures and Donations, 65.
Several Degree of Esquires, 66.
Several Degrees of Gentility, 66. 67. 68.
Honors and Exemptions proper to Gentility, 68.
Vertues to be Imbraced by the Gentry, 69.
Vices to be Eschewed by the Gentry, *ibid.*
Commoner of several Degrees and Qualities, 69. 70.
Liberties and Priviledges of the Commons of *England*, 70.
Pages or Footmen of several Degrees, *ibid.*
Several Degrees of Servants, 71.
Labourers of several sorts, 71. 72.
Several sorts of Countrey Clowns, 72.
Terms used by the Mower and Hay - maker, *ibid.*
Husbandmens Terms for Plowing and Sowing, 72. 73.
Laws of Coursing with Grey - Hounds, 74. 75.
Forest Laws and Terms, 75.
Proper Terms used for the Noise of Hounds, 76.
Different Terms between Hounds and Grey - Hounds Hunting, *ibid.*
The several Notes for sounding the Horn, *ibid.*
Terms of Falconry, 77.
What Great Feasts have been made by Kings and Great Persons of Honor, *ibid.*
Terms used for Carving and Sewing, 78.
The Order or sending of Grand Feasts, *ibid.*
Several Bills of Fare for Grand Feasts, and how to set Meat in Order, 78. 79.
First, Second, and Third Courses, 79.
Bill of Fare for every Season in the Year, and how to set them in Order, 79. 80.
Sauces of all sorts and of what made, 80.
Drinks of all sorts, *ibid.*
A Bill of Fare for Lent or Fish Days, 81.
Names of several Dishmeats, and other Terms used in Cookery, 81. 82. to 85.
Bakers Terms about his Trade, 85.
Several sorts of Bread, 86.
Terms used by the Tanners, *ibid.*
Wet - Glovers Terms, *ibid.*
Cutriers Terms, 87. Butchers Terms, *ibid.*
Terms for the several parts of an Oxe, Sheep and Swin, as cut in the Shambles, 87. 88.
Smiths Terms, 88 89.
Farriers Terms about Shooing of Horses, 89.
Several parts of an Horse - shoe, 90.
Farriers Terms about cure of Horses, *ibid.*
Jewellers working Instruments, *ibid.*
Jewellers and Goldsmiths Terms of Art, 91.
Needles of several sorts, *ibid.*
Sorts of Weapons under the notion of Swords, *ibid.*
Cutlers Terms used by them, 91. 92.
Brasiers Terms, 92.
Plummers Terms, *ibid.* Card - makers Terms, *ibid.*
Sadlers Terms, 92. 93.
Parts of a Saddle, Bridle, and Side - Saddle, 93. 94.
Taylors Terms for the parts of a Womans Gown, 94. 95.
Parts of a Mans Garments, 95.
Several Terms used in Sowing, 96.
Upholsterers Terms about making up of a Stoole, Chair, Cushion or Bed, 97.
Terms about hanging of a Room, *ibid.*
Semsters Terms, *ibid.*
Several things made by Semsters, *ibid.*
Linnens used by Men and Women, 97. 98.
Houshold Linnen, 98 Bonelace Weavers terms, *ibid.*
Landress Terms, *ibid.*
School - Misters Terms for all her ways of Sowing, *ibid.*
Other Works performed by School - Mistresses, 99.
Shoemakers Terms, *ibid.*
Joyners Terms in their way of Working, 100. 101. 102.
Chandlers Terms, 102.
Things necessary for Fishing or Drawing with Nets, 103.
Tackle belonging to an Angler, *ibid.*
Terms used by Piscators or Anglers, 103. 104.
Water - leader and Beer - Brewers Terms, 104. 105.
Malt - makers Instruments and Terms, 105.
Fletcher or Arrow - makers Terms, 105. 106.
Things belonging to Flax and Hemp dressing, *ibid.*
Flax Dressers and Spinners Terms, 106. 107.
Several parts of a Weavers Loome, 107.
Weavers Terms, *ibid.*
Coopers Terms, 108.
Several sorts of Vessels made after the form and fashion of Barrells, *ibid.*
Terms used by the White - wear Coopers, *ibid.*
Carpenters Terms, 109. 110.
Masons or Free - Masons Terms about Stone Cutting, 111.
Names of Stones according to their bigness and use, *ibid.*
Terms of Art used about the Works of Free - Masons, (111. 112.
Ropers Terms, 113.
Several sorts of Ropes, *ibid.*
Persons Instrumental about Printing, *ibid.*
The several parts of a Printers Press, 113. 114.
The Names or Terms of the Letters according to their size or bigness, 114.
Terms relating to the face of a Letter, *ibid.*
Notes of Correction made by the Corrector of the Press, (115.
Points or Stops used in Printing, 116.
Several other things belonging to the Art of Printing, 116. 117. 118. 119.
Terms of Art used in Printing Alphabetically explained, 119. 120. to 126.
Customs of the Chappel or Printing - House, 126.
Customs for Payment of Money among the Printers Prentices and Journeymen, 126. 127.
Barbers Instruments, 127.
Barbers Terms in Poling and Shaving, 128.
Other Terms used by Barbers, *ibid.*
Hat or Felt - makers Terms, 129.
Several sorts of Hats, *ibid.*
Astronomy and Astrology described, *ibid.*
A Rule to know how many Days are in each Month, *ib.*
How each Sunday or Sabath is reckoned through the Year, *ibid.*

To

To know the Movable Feasts in the Year, 130.
The Reign of all the Kings of *England* from *William* the Conqueror to this time, 131.
How the Days in the 12 Months were reckoned by the *Romans*, 131. 132. 133. *&c*
What Saints Days are in every Month, 131. 132. 133. *&c*
What Unfortunate or Bad Days are in each Month, 131. 132 133. *&c.*
How the Months were named by the *Jews* and *Romans*, 131. 132. 133. *&c.*
How the Days of the Week were named by the *Jews*, *Romans* and *Saxons*, 131. 132. 133. *&c.*
To know what Day of the Month every first Sabath in the Month is, 136.
The difference between the *Julian* and *Gregorian* Account of the Year, *ibid.*
Geometry Described, *ibid.*
Names of several parcels of Land according to their largeness Alphabetically described, 136. 137.
Geometrical Terms for their Plots, Lines, and Figures used in that Science, 137. 138. 139.
Geometrical Terms used in Measuring or Surveying of Land, 137.
Geometrical Solid Bodies how Termed, 140.
Arithmetick described, *ibid.*
Grecians, *Jews*, *Romans*, *Arabians*, way of Numeration, *ib.*
The way of Numbering any Summ by ten figures, 141.
The way to number by Counters, *ibid.*
Terms used in Arithmetick, 142. 143.
Philosophy and several Philosophers described, 143. 144.
Instruments used for Drawing and Painting, 144.
Painters and Limners Terms of Art Alphabetically, 145. to 150
Gravers and Etchers Terms of Art, 150. 151.
Their Instruments to work withal, *ibid.*
Glass-Painters working Tools, 152.
Terms used in the Art of Glass-Painting, *ibid.*
Men Famous for Inventions and Improvers of Arts, (153. 154.
Men Famous for the Art of Painting, 155.
Mizzy Tincture, a new Invention of Printing from Plates,
Musick described, 157. Vocal or String, *ibid.* (155.
The Scale of Musick, and Terms used in that Science, 157. 158.
Several sorts of Tunes, 159.
Wind Musick and its Terms, 160.
Marriners and Saylors Terms, 162. to 166.
Canting words & terms used by Beggars, Vagabonds, 168.
Names by which these Beggars are called according to their Imploy, 167.
Art of Dancing and the Terms used therein, 169.
Jesus Christ set forth in many of his Human Actss, 170. 172.
The Jews High Priest Robes or Garments, 172.
The manner of the High Priests Consecration 173.
Several words or terms in the Jews Religion explained,
Vestments belonging to a Bishop, 175. (174. 175.
Consecration and Election of a Romish Bishop, 176.
Dean, what his Canonical Habit is, *ibid.*
Orders and Rules of the Benedictine Monks, 177.
Of the Receiving and Consecrating of a Monk, *ibid.*
Election and Consecration of an Abbot or Prior, 178.
Several Officers in a Monastery, *ibid.*
Names of all the places in a Monastery or Friery, *ibid.*
The several Orders of Monks springing from the Benedictins, 179. 180. 181.
Orders and Rules of the Jesuits, 181.
The Colledge, and Officers, and what they are to do, 181. 182. Their Priviledges, 182.
Orders of Monks of less Note, 182. 188.
Orders and Rules of Grey Friers, 183.
What Orders sprung from them, *ibid.*
Rules and Orders of Frier Carmelites or white Friers, 184. What sprung from them, *ibid.*
Orders and Rules of the Carthusian Monks, *ibid.*
Orders and Rules of the Cistertian Monks, 185.
Rules of the Canons Regular of St. *Augustine* or black Friers, *ibid.*
Degrees of Ecclesiastical Persons in a Romish Cathedral, 186.
Vestments and Consecrations of several Orders in the Romish Church, *ibid.*
Rules of the Dominican Monks, 187.
Orders and Rules of Knights Templars, 188.
Orders and Rules of Knights Hospitalars, 189.
Several Religious Orders of Knighthood, 190.
Hermites of several Orders, *ibid.*
Several Saints and Men Canonized described, 192. 293.
The four Evangelists described, 193.
The twelve Apostles described, 193. 194.
Habite or Vestments of a Protestant Bishop, 194.
Orders of Electing and Consecrating such a Bishop, 194. 195.
A Bishops Revenues, 195.
Several Offices in a Collegial or Cathedral, 196.
Habite of an English Divine or Minister, 197.
Ordination of a Priest and Deacon, *ibid.*
Several Parochial Church Officers, 198.
Several Degrees of Persons in the University Colledges,
Officers in each Hall or Colledge, 199. (198. 199.
Officers over the whole University, *ibid.*
Rethorick described, 200.
Certain Terms used in Rethorick explained, 200. 201.
Poetry described. 201.
Terms of Art used in Poetry, *ibid.*
Logick described. 202.
Terms and Words used in Logick explained, 202. 203.
Nuns what they are enjoyned, 203.
Several Orders of Nuns, 203. 204.
The Admittance and Consecration of a Nun, 204.
Several Women Saints Canonized described, 205.
Description of the seven Cardinals Vertues, *ibid.*
The Graces described, 205. 206.
Works of Mercy described, 206.
Wickedness or Vices described, 206. 207.
The Sybilla's or Women Prophetesses, 207.
An Exortation to be Charitable to the Poor. 208.
Tartars Religion, and the several Terms used in Heathenish Worship, 211. 212. 213.
Turks Religion or Mahometism, 213.
The Religious Orders in Mahomets Religion, 214.
Their Secular Priests, *ibid.*
Jews or Hebrews Religion, 215.
Their Temples and Synagogues, *ibid.*
Orders and Officers in the Jewish Religion, 216.
Maintenance of the Priests and Levites, 217.
Their Sabaths and Festivals, 217. 218.

Their Fasts, 219.
Their Circumcision, 220.
Of their Reading and Praying, *ibid.*
How the Jews Marry, 221.
Of their Divorce, *ibid.*
Number of their Sacrifices, *ibid.*
Ancient Roman Religion with the Gods and Goddesses they Worshipped, 221. 222.
Their Feastivals, 223.
The old Roman Priests, 224.
Roman Monasteries and Fraternities, 224. 225.
Manner of the old Roman Sacrifices, 225.
Roman Marriages, 226.
Their Divorce, *ibid.*
Roman Funerals, 226. 227.
Greeks Religion and Worship, 227.
Their Church Officers of old, 227. 228.
Greek Temples, 228.
Roman Christian or Catholick Religion, *ibid.*
Doctrines and other Terms used in the Roman Religion, 228 229. to 232.
Valiant Women, several of them described, 237.
Womens Apparel used at several times, 238.
Terms used in Wrastling, 241.
Several Descriptions of Christs Actions, and Sufferings in his Life time, 242.
Things necessary for a good Farm or Dairy, 243.
Necessaries to be in a Stable, Barn, Cow-house, Cart-house, *ibid.*
What is needful to be in a Farmers house, *ibid*
What is the occasion of bad Butter and Cheese, *ibid.*
The Noble Science of Grammar or Learning described, 250.
Letters, Vowels, Words, Sentences in their parts explained, 251. 252.
Terms Insident to Grammar explained, 252. to 256.
Infula's of diverse manners, 247. to 250. 256.
Maunches or Sleeves of several fashions new and old, 256. to 258.
Several parts of a Sleeve, 256.
Goldsmiths terms about his way of Working, 259.
All sorts of Weights in general, *ibid.*
Avoir Dupois Weight what it contains, 260.
Troy Weight what it contains, *ibid.*
Several Terms used about Merchandize Goods, 260.
Wine, Oyle, Honey, how Termed in great Vessels, *ibid.*
Corn, and other Grain how Termed in great quantities, *ib.*
Iron, Tin, Copper; Lead, how termed in great weights, *ib.*
Flesh and Fish how termed in great numbers, *ibid.*
Hides, Skins, Furrs how numbred, *ibid.*
Paper, Parchment, how Termed in their bundles, and what number, 261.
Wool, Flax, Hemp, how their weights are Termed, *ibid.*
Bricklayrs, and Brickmakers Tools, and Terms of them both, *ibid.*
Billiards, and things used about that Play, 262.
Orders and Rules for the Play at Billiards, *ibid.*
The Game of Truck, and things used for the Play, 263.
Game at Chess, with the terms used in the Play, 263. 264.
Laws of Chess-Play, 264.
Drughts and how Play'd, *ibid.*
Tennis-Play, with the Terms used therein, 264. 265.
Laws of the Tennis-Court, 265.
Slaters working Tools, *ibid.*
Names of Slates according to their length, *ibid.*
Several ways of covering Houses, 266.
The Rules of good Husbandry and House-keeping, *ibid.*
Monthly Works and Observations of Husbandmen, 267. 268. 269
Turner or Thrower Tools, 269.
Brasiers Turning Tools, *ibid.*
Terms of Art used by Turners in their Trade, *ibid.*
Rope-makers Instruments for his working, 272.
Upholsters Tools to work with, *ibid.*

The Signification of such things as are Born in Arms mentioned in these Five Chapters.

Crowns, signifies Power, Splendor, & Magnificence.

Chapews, Caps, are Emblems of Honor and Dignity, and safety of Princes.

Garlands, are tokens of Prowess, Victory and Triumph.

Mitres, are Emblems of Holiness and Sanctity.

Hats, are signs of Liberty and Freedom.

Infula's, signifie Homage and Subjection.

Tanks, are Badges of Slavery, and signifies one to have been in Bondage or Tyranized over.

Hose, Startops, signifies Security.

Shooes and **Boots**, signifies Action, Motion, and Travail.

Garters, signifies Security and Stedfastness in Actions, without Wavering.

Cowles and **Hoods**, signifies a casting off the Vanities of the World.

Bands, signifies Comliness, and Civil Adornment.

Sleeves, Maunches, is the Emblem of unsetledness, given to Change.

Robes, Vests, Garments, signifies Majesty, Safty and Protection from Injuries.

Chains, Bracelets and **Jewels**, signifies Pomp Glory and Splendor.

Swords of Estates, Maces, are Emblems of Power, Justice and Regality.

Purses, Scrips, Pouches, are Emblems of Travellers, and signifies Men to be desirous to see Novelties in Forreign places.

Rods of Authority, Staves, Crosiers, and **Crooks**; shews Care, and Protection, and Defence against all Ravenous Creatures that would destroy the weak and helpless.

Tradsmen at Work, signifies Labour, Industry, and Gain: also Avancement to Honor.

Kings and **Princes** born in Arms, signifies their Imitation in Virtues, and Conquest of Vice, even as they Reign and Rule over their Enemies.

Bishops, Priesty, Abbots and **Friers**, and such as are in Religious Orders; are Emblems of Holiness, Zeal and Pure Religion.

Nuns, Virgins, Abbesses, are spotless Creatures, and therefore signifies Purity and Chastity.

An

An Alphabet of what Bearings are Blazoned in the 1, 2, 3, 4, 5. Chapters of this Third Book.

The first Figure stands for the Chapter, the second Figure for the Number or Numbers in that Chapter.

A

A Rched Crown, 1 4 13.
American Crown, 1 20.
Annulett, 2 44 45 48 49
Arch Duke, 3 3.
Angler, 3 42.
Arms, *ibid.*
Astronomer, 3 59.
Astrologer, *ibid.*
Arithmetitian, *ibid.*
Ascension of Christ, 4 7.
Arabians, 5 14.
Ancient Britaine, 5 20.
American, 5 23.
Amazon, 5 28.
Assirian Woman, 5 40.
American Woman, 5 42.
Austrian Woman, 5 44 49 55.
Affrican Woman, 5 56.
Arms and Hands, 5 140 141 142
Annulett Buttoned, 5 164.
Annulet Staffed, 5 164
Annulet, 5 163 164 165 166.
Abbot, 4 11 12 25
Abbess, 4 49 * 54.

B.

Blazon by Characters, 1 *s.* 1.
Barons Coronet, 1 10.
Buskins, 1 89 93.
Band, 2 1.
Band Strings, 2 1 2.
Band Laced 2 2.
Boys Coat, 2 22 26.
Belt, 2 43.
Beads, 2 56.
Bracelet, *ibid.*
Bishops Staff, 2 69 70.
Bullen, 2 74.
Baron, 3 5.
Beads man, 3 13.
Baker, 3 30.
Butcher, 3 88.
Bone-Lace Weaver, 3 35.
Beer-Brewer, 3 44 *and* 5 146.
Bowyer, *or Bow-maker*, 3 46.
Bow-string maker, 3 47.
Barrow-man, 3 53.
Barber, 3 57.
Bag-Piper, 3 62.
Bedlam Man, 3 64.
Beggar, 3 68.
Bishop in his Pontificals, 4 10 11.
Black Frier, 4 21.
Bishop in White Sleeves, 4 43.
Brussian, 5 3.
Brasilian, 5 22 60.
Britains, 5 15 19 20.
Brittish Woman, 5 41 59.
Brasilian Woman, 5 57.
Brasilian Woman, 5 57.
Black Moor, 5 65.
Boot, 5 120 122 123 *and* 1 92.
Brick-layer, 5 145.
Boat Hooks, 5 165.
Boon Grace, 1 82.
Baronet, 3 56 57.
Bannerett, *ibid.*
Broge, 1 94.
Breeches, 2 28 29.
Bishops Mace, 2 62.
Brasier, 3 33.
Black Moors, 5 21.

C.

Characters for Colours, 1 *s.* 1.
Planets, 1 *s.* 1.
Precious Stones, 1 *s.* 1.
Crown, 1 1.
Crown Regal, 1 1 2 4.
Spiral, 1 2
Homager, 1 11 12.
Radiant, 1 1.
Crown of Persia, 1 2.
Miterall Imperial, 1 3.
Crown of England, 1 4.
France, *Denmark*, 1 4.
Spaine, 1 4.
Coronet, *or Crownet*, 1 7 8 11 12 45.
Close Crown, 1 4.
Chaupeaux, 1 5 6 13 24 *a.*
Crown of a King, 1 4
Coronett of a Prince, 1 5
Arch Duke, 1 9
Duke 1 5 6
Marquess, 1 7
Earl 1 8.
Viscount, 1 9.
Baron, 1 10.
Circulet Coronet 1 9
Cap of Maintenance, 1 10 15
Cap of Dignity, 1 10.
Crownall, 1 11.
Chaplet, 1 11 21 23 24 *a.* 30 13 *tw.*
Caps in Crowns, 1 12.
Cap of Honour, 1 15 26.
State, *ibid.*
Circle, 1 13 24.
Chaplet garnished, 1 14.
Chapeau, 1 16 17.
Crown of Feathers, 1 20.
Close Wreath, 1 19.
Chaplet Crown, 1 24 *a.*
Crown Murall, 1 25.
Naval, 1 26.
Vallarial, 1 27.
Valoir, *ibid.*
Pailee, *ibid.*
Celestial, 1 28.
Of Stars, *ibid.*
Triumphal, 1 29.
Civical, 1 30.
Gramineall, 1 31.
Mitered, 1 38.
Obsidional, 1 31
Minerveal, *ibid. a.*
Pacifical, *ibid.*
Of Ceres, 1 32.
Of Virgins, *ibid.*
Populeall, *ibid.*
Poplex, *ibid.*
Olimpical, *ibid.*
Ovation, *ibid.*
Spineall, *ibid.*
Amaranthcal, *ibid.*
Mirtall, *ibid.*
Hederall, *ibid.*
Thorns, *ibid.*
Ovational, *ibid.*
Cardinals Hat, 1 35 37 125.

Cap-

Cardinals Cap, 1 36 37.
Corner Cap, 1 40 41 44.
Cap, 1 44 45 46 58 87.
Copped Hat or Cap, 1 50 51.
Copped Tanke, 1 57.
Cap Hood, 1 72 87 a.
Cowle or Caule, 1 75 76.
Cornered Hood, 1 81.
Cloggs, 1 96.
Cravatt, 2 6 10 54.
Cordilans, 2 21.
Cordy Robes, ibid.
Childs Coat, 2 22 26.
Cordons, 2 33.
Cloak, 2 33 35.
Cape, 2 33.
Cope, 2 38.
Chain, 2 57 58.
Crosier, 2 66.
Cross Staff, 2 67.
Cardinals Staff, 2 69.
Crutch. Crutch, 2 70.
Coin Stamped, 2 71 72 73 74 82 83 84 85.
Caduceus, 2 79.
Currours at Arms, 3 8.
Countrey Clown, 3 23.
Cooke, 3 29.
Currier, 3 33.
Cutler, 3 39.
Card maker, 3 33.
Chandlers, 3 40.
Coopers, 3 50.
Carpenters, 3 51 and 5 69.
Crate Carrier, 3 63.
Chimney Sweeper, 3 64.
Cripple, 3 68.
Christ sitting, 4 2
Naked, 4 3.
Standing, ibid.
in his Agony, 4 4.
on the Cross, 4 5 and 2 68.
Resurrection, 4 6.
Ascension, 4 7.
in his Glory, 4 8.
Crucifix, 4 5 and 2 69.
Chancellor, 4 15.
Carthusian Monk, 4 19 76.
Cistertian Monk 4 20.
Canon of St. Augustin, 4 21.
Canon Secular, 4 22.
Canons Regular, 4 21 23.
Church Wardens, 4 45.
Church Reeves, ibid.
Collectors for the poor, ibid.
Clerk, 4 45.
Cathaians, 5 5.
Chinensian, 5 13.
Civillized Britain, 5 19.
Colonish Woman, 5 43 46.
Cumanan Woman, 5 60.
China Man, 5 71.
China Trumpet, ibid.
Crown Torelled, 5 102.
Circle raised in Roses, 5 103.
Conquerors Crown, 5 107
Cap, 5 110.
Copped Tank, 5 113 117 162
China Hat, 5 114.
Chinensian Umbrel, 5 114.
Caps and Crowns out of one another, ibid.
Cloud, 5 142.
Chame, 5 146.
Carter, 5 151.
Crouch Staff hooped, 5 167.
Cross of Hungary, ibid.
Crown and Miter conjoined, 5 104
Curate, 4 45.
Chancellor, 3 11.
Chiribichensian, 5 60.

D.

Diadems, 1 2 and 5 108.
Daffadil Coronet, 1 7.
Dutch Hat, 1 68 69.
Dominicans Cowle, 1 75.
Dutch Hood, 1 79.
Dutch Maunch, 2 14.
Doublet, 2 28.
Duke, 3 3.
Doctor, 3 11, and 4 15 44.
Demy Woman, 3 41 and 5 71.
Demy Man, 3 43.
Dean, 4 13.
Dominican Frier, 4 24.
Demy Old Man, 4 27.
Deacon, 4 45.
Danish Man, 5 3.
Dutch Cap, 5 38.
Dutch Woman, 5 44
Demy Jew, 5 67.
Demy German Woman, 5 68.
Demy Woman, 5 142 c.
Demy Roman Soldier, 5 159.
Demy Brasilian, 5 159.
Distaff of Hemp, 5 171 c.
Dancers, 3 69.
Dutch Shooe, 1 94.
Drops, 2 42 60.
Demy Boy, 3 42.
Damsel, 5 31.

E.

Emperors Crown, 1 3 4.
Egyptian Crown, 1 22.
Emperial Turbut, 1 70 and 5 108.
Eared Cap, 1 87.
Emperour, 3 1.
Earl, 3 4.
Esquire, 3 14.
Etching, 3 60.
Ermites, 4 23 28.
Egyptian, 5 12.
English Man, 5 15.
Egyptian Moors, 5 20.
Ethiopian, 5 21.
Egyptian Woman, 5 54.

F.

Fools Cap, 1 58 and 3 53
Flat Crown Cap, 1 74.
Flat Cap, ibid.
French Hood, 1 79.
Fan, 2 44 53.
Foulding Fan, 2 53.
Falconer, 3 28.
Forester, 3 27.
Farrier, 3 33.
Founder, ibid.
Fishers, 3 41.
Flax Dresser, 3 48.
Free Mason, 3 52.
Fools Head, 3 53 69.
Felt Maker, 3 58.
Frier Carmelites, 4 18.
Frier, 4 25 29 30 31.
French, 5 16.
Floridan, 5 23.
French Woman, 5 37.
Francford Woman, 5 45 48.
Falconers Hat, 5 125.
Friers Head, 5 160.
Fish Hooks, 3 42.
Frier Dominicans Cowle, or Caule, 1 75
Cluniacens, ibid.
Carthusians,, 1 76.
Benedictans, 1 77.
Feather Cap, 5 120.
Fillet, 1 1 13 24.
Flag, 2 67.
Fidler, 3 61.

G.

Garland, 1 21 23 24 a 30
Garland of Honour, 1 30.
Death, 1 32.
Protection, 1 30.
Fame, 1 31.
Victory, 1 32.
Triumph, 1 29.
Joy, 1 32.
Peace, 1 31 a.
Concord, ibid.
Arts, ibid.
Plenty, 1 32.
Bacchus, ibid.
Olympick, ibid.
Garter, 1 88 90 and 2 42 59.
Gamashes, 1 89 93.
Galoia, 1 96 and 5 70.
Gown Wing, 2 9.
Glove, 2 17 19.
Garment, 2 21.
Gown Body, 2 25.

Girdle,

*

Girdle, 2 40 81. and 5 121.
Gimbal Rings, 2 45.
Globe, 2 51.
Gentleman, 3 15 16.
Glover, 3 31.
Glass Painter, 3 60.
Graver, ibid.
Grey Friers, 4 17.
Greenlander, 5 2.
Gutts, 5 6.
Greeks, 5 10.
Gaules, 5 16.
German, 5 18.
Gossipper, 5 39.
Gipsie Woman, 5 54.
Goldsmith, 5 144.
Gamester, 5 147 148 149.
Geometrician, 3 59.
Gardener, 3 45.
Gansammin, 2 67.
Goglet, or Goblet, 5 167.

H.

Head Lace, 1 24.
Hat, 1 65 66 67.
Hose, 1 90.
Heralds Coat, 2 36 and 3 8.
Huntsman, 3 26.
Huxter, 3 45.
Hat-maker, 3 58.
High-Priest, 4 9.
Hermites, 4 23 28.
Hospitallers, 4 27.
Hungarians, 5 6.
Huns, ibid.
Holland Woman, 5 46.
Hungarian Woman, 5 49.
Hands and Sleeves, 5 140 141 142.
Harpye displaid, 5 159.
Horn Cap, 5 167.
Head Band, 1 13.
Head Attire, 1 86 87.
Herauld of Arms, 3 8.
Hospital Man, 3 13.
Hood, 1 81 83 85.
Holy Man, 4 40.
Hebrew, 5 9.

I.

Judges Cap, 1 40.
Infula, 1 51 52 to 59 61 62 63 72 and 5 105 to 129 69.
Indian Hat, 1 67.
Infula Cap Hood, 1 72 87 a.
Irish Shooe, 1 94.
Jacket, 2 20.
Jewels, 2 42 60.
Imperial Ball, 2 51.
Judge, 3 10.
Justice, ibid.
Jeweller, 3 33.
Imbrautherer, 3 37.
Joyner, 3 38 39.
Islander, 5 2.
Jew, 5 9.
Indian, 5 21.
Italian Woman, 5 52.
Indian Woman, 5 56.
Jews Head cover, 5 115 125.
Indian Feather Cap, 5 120.
Irish Man, 5 11.
Jovial Woman, 5 39.
Island Shooe, 1 94.

K

Knit Cap, 1 64.
King, 3 1 2.
Knight of Garter, 3 6.
Bath, 3 7.
Barronet, 3 56 57.
Banneret, ibid.
Batchelor, ibid.
Templer, 4 26.
Hospitaller, 4 27.
Kings of Arms, 3 8.
Kings Band, 5 101 and 1 13.

L.

Ladies Vail, 1 81.
Lord Baron, 3 5.
Livery Man, 3 12.
Labourer, 3 21 53.
Leader of Water, 3 43.
Lath-Man, 3 46.
Lawyer, 3 10.
Lady Mary, 4 1.
Lady Abbess, 4 49 * 54.
Laplander, 5 3
Longobards, 5 6.
Lady, 5 33.
Lapland Woman, 5 51.
Labour in Vain, 5 65.
Lute Player, 3 61.
Loose Coat, 2 20 27.
Livery Hood, 2 39.
Locket, 2 60.
Limner, 3 60.
Lapland Shooe, 1 43.

M.

Mound, 1 3 4 and 2 15 51.
Miter, 1 38 39 and 5 112.
Morion, 1 47 48 50 a 50 & 5 110.
Monmouth Cap, 1 63.
Montara Cap, ibid.
Mercurys Cap, 1 71.
Mans Hood, 1 72 87 a.
Monks Hood, 1 75 76.
Mourning Hood, 1 78 79 80.
Maske, 1 87 and 5 63 64.
Moors Legg, 1 93.
Maunch, 2 8 10 to 15 and 5 129 to 139. Maunchmale-tale, 2 11 12.
Maunch Male, 2 11 12.
Monchee, ibid.
Mitten, 2 18.
Mandilion, 2 24.
Mantua, 2 27.
Mantle, 2 32 34.
Mantle of State, ibid.
Mace of Majesty, 2 61 62 65 66.
Majesty Sword, 2 63 64.
Mercuries Mace, 2 79.
Muff, 2 80.
Marquess, 3 3.
Major of a City, 3 9.
Mower, 3 24.
Malt-maker, 3 44.
Man and Woman walking, 3 51.
Mason, 3 52.
Musitianer, 3 61.
Morrice Dancers, 3 69.
Mitred Abbot, 4 11 12.
Mitred Parson, 4 12.
Mass Priest, 4 14 33.
Monks, 4 16 17 18 19 20.
Man in Penance, 4 42.
Minister, 4 45 46 49.
Master of Arts, 4 46.
Martyr, 4 47 48.
Muscovian, 5 4.
Manks. Mannings, 5 11.
Morocco, 5 21.
Moor, ibid.
Manlike Woman, 5 28.
Maid, 5 31.
Men Wrastling, 5 64.
Miter and Crown joined, 5 104.
Man Teaching a Child, 5 124.
Mans Face with Sun Beams, 5 151.
Muffled Head, 5 156.
Monks Head, 5 160.
Maid Veiled, 4 52.
Men Boxing, 5 62.
Midas head, 5 155 157.
Matting Needle, 5 172 a.

N.

Nuns Vail, 1 84.
Night-Rail, 1 85 and 2 6.
Neck Whisk, 2 6 7
Neptunes Mace, 2 65 and 5 171.
Needle Maker, 3 33.
Nuns, 4 49 * 50 52 53 54.
Nuns Head, 4 54
Nova Zemblans, 5 5.
Nigers, 5 21.
Nuns Hood, 5 113.
Nippers, 5 171. Necklace, 2 56.

O.

Old Mans Cap, 1 87.

Old Mans Face, 4 42.
Orcadians, 5 111.
Old Man set, 5 71.

P.

Parts of a Crown, 1 3.
Papal Crown, 1 33 34.
Popes Crown, 1 34.
Pyramid Cap, 1 51.
Poland Cap, 1 74.
Pantable, 1 96 and 5 71.
Patens, 1 96.
Pinner, 2 6.
Pickadill, 2 7.
Pettycoat, 2 27.
Parliament Robe, 2 30.
Pall, 2 37.
Priests Cote, 2 38.
Popish Beads, 2 56.
Pilgrims Staff, 2 62 68 70.
Pastoral Staff, 2 66.
Papal Gaufannon, 2 67 and 5 168.
Papal Staff, 2 69.
Papal Banner, 2 67. Papal Flag, ib.
Purse, 2 75 76.
Purse of State, 2 77. Prince, 3 3.
Pursivants, 3 8. Page, 3 18.
Plummer, 3 33. Pescator, 3 42.
Potter, 3 54. Painter, 3 60.
Player on the Viol, 3 61.
Player on Tabor and Pipe, 3 62.
Player on the Tamberlese, ibid.
Player on the Recorder, ibid.
Porter, 3 63. Pedlar, ibid.
Poor Man, 3 68.
Priest, 4 14 33 45.
Prior, 4 25.
Palmer, 4 34 36.
Pilgrim, 4 35 36 and 5 142 b.
Penitent, 4 42.
Parson, 4 45. Patron, ibid.
Pauper, 4 60.
Poor Woman, 4 60. and 5 36.
Polander, 5 7. Picts, 5 15.
Prussia Cap, 5 111 120.
Player at Billiards, 5 147.
Player at Chess, 5 148.
Player at Tennis, 5 149.
Prickall, 5 172. Pack Needle, ib.
Palmers Scrip, 2 81.
Printer, 3 56.
Piper, 3 62.

Q.

Quoife, 1 82 86.
Queen, 5 25 26 27.

R.

Royal Fillet, 1 1 13 24 and 5 101.
Roman Hose, 1 89 91.
Ruffe, 2 3 4 5. Ruff Cufted, 2 9.
Roman Garment, 2 21.
Robe, 2 31. Robe of Estate, 2 30 31.
Rocket, 2 34.
Ring, 2 44 45 48 49 50.
Rod of Authority, 2 66.
Rectors Staff, 2 68 70.
Roper, 3 55. Russian, 5 3.
Roman, 5 10. Redshanks, 5 11.
Roman Ladies Head, 5 38.
Russian Woman, 5 50.
Ropers Instruments, as
Hook. Top. 5 169.
Stake, 5 169 171 b.
Wince, 5 170.
Slead, ibid.
Whare, ibid.
Turning Braid, 5 171
Wheel, ibid.
Pair of Nippers, ibid.
Tar Pan, ibid.
Distaff, ibid. e.
Rector, 4 45.
Religious Woman, 4 51.

S.

Scotch Bonnet, 1 36 42 43.
Shooe, 1 43 94 96.
Set Hood, 1 85.
Startops, 1 89 91.
Stockins, 1 89 90.
Shooe Sole, 1 90.
Soled, 1 91.
Sandal, 1 93 95.
Slipper, 1 96 and 5 71.
Sleeve, 2 15 16.
Sash, 2 23.
Semeare, 2 27.
Strings, 2 32 33.
Scarfe, 2 41 and 5 115 116. and 1 86 87.
Stone Ring, 2 50.
Scepter, 2 52 62.
Sword of State, 2 63 64.
Justice, 2 64 65.
Regality, 2 65.
Shepherds Crook, 2 69.
Shekel, 2 72.
Staff, 2 66 69 78 79.
Staff Cronettee, 2 78.
Snakey Rod or Staff, 2 79.
Soporiferous Rod, ibid.
Scrip, 2 81. Servants, 3 20.
Shepherd, 3 22. Souce, 5 167.
Smith, 3 33. Sadler, 3 34.
Semster, 3 35 School-Mistris, ibid.
Shooe-maker, 3 36.
Stringer, 3 47.
Sow-gelder, 3 64.
Salter. Salt-Man, 3 65 66.
Sailer, 3 67.
St. Augustine, 4 21.
St. Laurence, 4 37.
St. Sebastian, 4 38.
St. John Baptist, 4 39.
St. Peter, 4 41 and 5 61.
Saint, or Holy Man, 4 40.
Sides Men, 4 45. Sexton, ibid.
St. Katherine, 4 56.
Swedes, 5 3. Scythians, 5 5.
Sarazens, 5 8 12.
Scots, 5 15. Spaniard, 5 17.
Shepherdess, 5 32.
Spanish Woman, 5 53.
Seal Bay Woman, 5 58.
Serjeant, 5 62.
Saxons Crown, 5 101 107.
Spiritual and Temporal Crown, 5 104
Slater, 5 150.
Satyres head, 5 155 157.
Sea Satyrs Head, 5 158.
Steel Cap, 1 47 48 50 a. and 5 110.
Steel Cap, 1 47 48 50 a.
Sarazens Hat, 1 56.
Staff Croysee, 2 66.
Square Banner, 4 169.
Staff Hooped, 5 167.
Stuffing Stick, 5 172 b.
Square Rule, 5 172 c.
Stake, 5 169 171 b
Slead, 5 170.

T.

Torce, 1 17 18 19.
Trebble Crown, 1 33 34.
Tanke, 1 57 and 5 113 117 162.
Turbut, 1 67 70. Turks Cap, 1 70.
Tucker, 2 6. Tunick, 2 23.
Trunk Breeches, 2 28 29.
Tassels, 2 33. Tippet, 2 39.
Turks Girdle, 2 40.
Trident, 2 65. Tooth-fork, ibid.
Trebble Cross Staff, 2 69.
Thrasher, 3 25. Tanner, 3 31.
Taylor, 3 35. Tinker, 3 64.
Taberner, 3 62. Tartarian, 5 4
Turk, 5 8. Tennis, 5 149.
Tankard Bearer, 5 143.
Trinitarians, 4 25. Top, 5 169.
Turning Braid, 5 171 a.

V.

Vaile, 1 81 84 86 and 5 115 116.
Visard, 1 87 and 5 64.
Visard Maske, 1 87.
Undress, 2 6. Vest, 2 23.
Virge, 2 62 66.
Viscount, 3 4.
Upholder, 3 35.
Vaile Virgin, 4 52.
Vailed Maid, ibid.
Virgin Marves head, 4 55 and 5 161.
Virago, 5 28.

Virgini-

Virginians, 5 20 23.
Virgin Mary praying, 5 66 67.
Umbrel Hat, 5 161 164.
Upholders or Upholsterers Tools, as
Rule, 5 172 c.
Square Rule, ibid.
Stuffing Stick, 5 172 b.
Prickall, ibid.
Matting Needle, 5 172 a.

W.

Wreath, 1 17 18 19.
Winter Cap, 1 72 87 a.
Womans Hood, 1 83.
Whick, 2 6 7.
Wing of a Gown, 2 9.
Wet Glover, 3 31.
Water Leader, 3 43.
Weaver, 3 49.
Wheeler, 3 53.
White Friar, 4 18.
Woman Cloathed, 4 57 58 59.
Welsh, 5 15.
Wild Man, 5 24.
Wood Man, ibid.
Woman in Fardingale, 5 29.
Woman, 5 30 35 43 70.
Woman Kneeling, 5 34.
Welsh Woman, 5 47.
Womans Mask, 5 63 64.
Wrastlers, 5 64.
Woman Churning, 5 70.
Woman close gird, 5 142 a.
Wittals Face, 5 154.
Womans head, 5 156 162.
Whare, 5 170.
Wince, ibid.
Wheele, 5 171 d.

Y.

Yeoman, 3 17.

Z.

Zemblans, 5 5.

Terms of Art in Blazon, mentioned in these five last Chapters.

Adorned, 1 48 53 95.
Annodated, 2 79.
Aspect, 1 91, and 4 29 33 39 and 5 32 35 61 71 142 c.
Attired, 5 53 and 4 58.
Ambulant, 3 51.

Bow Knot, 1 18.
Beams, 1 24 a.
Breteches, 1 25.
Battlements, ibid.
Between, 1 48.
Buttons, 1 67 68 73.
Buttoned, 1 89.
Buckled, 1 88 89 95 and 2 43 59.
Braced, 2 45.
Bowed, 5 122.
Bisparted, 5 122 156.

Circled, 1 57 59 and 2 51.
Couped, 2 15 16 and 4 54 55.
Coupled, 2 44.
Compained, 2 45 46 and 5 103 164.
Closed, 2 75.
Cronetted, 2 78.
Coambulant, 3 51.
Clothed, 3 43 53 69 and 4 27.
Crowned, 4 1.
Close girt, 4 2 7 58 and 5 67 71.
Compassed, 5 32.
Clipping, 5 64 142 c.
Crossed, 5 116 and 1 68 69.
Cheapue wise, 5 125 and 1 46.
Cordsrobe, 5 129 130.
Coupings several, 5 153.
Chapeau-like, 1 51 55 61.
Crutch, 1 48.

*

Deckt, 1 46 65.
Dissplaid, 1 48.
Double, 1 44.
Demy, 1 59 and 3 41.
Dimidiated, 1 57.
Divided, 5 105.
Duparted, 5 156.
Dexter, 3 43 62.

Ends flotant, 1 17 19 83.
Expanced, 1 48.
Each side Expansed, ibid.
Endorsed, ibid.
Each side Endorsed, ibid.
Enwrapped, 1 56.
Extended, 1 86 and 2 15 16 and 5 32.
Edged, 1 88 and 2 37 43 59.
Erected, 2 17 63 and 5 114 123.
Entwisted, 2 79.
Elevated, 4 29.
Envecked, 5 32 167.
Embracing, 5 64.
Erased, 5 156.

Flying loose, 1 18.
Fretted, 1 35 57 72.
Frontlett, 1 46 86.
Forepart, 1 46.
Front, 1 48 and 5 105 106.
Frontall, 1 48.
Full Aspect, 1 91 and 4 29 33 39 and 5 35 61 71 142 c.
Fringed, 1 17.
Fauldings, 1 28 57 and 4 58.
Fastned, 1 32.
Fixed, ibid.
Fretwise, ibid.
Faced, 1 34.
Fretted, 1 45.
Fesseways, ibid.
Filletted, 1 46.
Fixt, 1 78.
Forked Beard, 4 27.
Flames, 4 47.
Flying aloft, 4 58.
Full Face, 5 32.
Faced, 5 52.
Florient, 5 111 117 162 and 1 17 19 83.
Foliaage, 5 154 155.
Flori, 5 164.

Garnished, 1 38 39 56 91 and 2 40 59 and 4 37 58.
Gradually, 1 59.
Gripping, 2 19.
Gird, Girt, 3 43.
Glory, 4 7 8 55.
Girded about, 4 39 and 5 32.

Habited, 2 8 and 4 7 10.
Head attired, 4 58.
Honors, 5 63.

Invecked, 1 17.
Indented, 1 17 and 5 102.
Imbossed, 1 24.
Imbowed, 1 60 61 62 and 2 15 16 and 5 112.
Issuant, 2 14 and 5 139 140.
Imbraudered, 2 17 37.
Invironed, 2 51 and 5 32.
Imbraced, 2 45.
Involved, 4 7.
In Flames, 4 47.

In Triumph, 4 48.
Interchangeably, 5 58.
Issuing, 5 153.
Inverted, 5 171.
Jessant, 1 73.
Interlaced, 2 59.
Joined, 2 79.

Lined, 1 16 47 *and* 2 22 23.
Lined reverted, 1 54 55 72.
Laced, 1 89.
Linked, 1 44.
Long Robe, 4 12 40 58.
Label pendant, 5 142 *c*.

Mutually walking, 3 51.
Main a Main, *ibid*.
Metamorphised, 3 42.
Muffled, 5 156.

Nowed, 1 88 *and* 2 59 64 77.
Nebuled, 5 32.

Open before, 1 72.
Open behind, 1 46.
Open on the side, 1 53 54 55.
Overte, 2 76.
One in another, 2 47.
On the top, 5 105.

Parapects, 1 25.
Prowes, 1 26.
Poupes, *ibid*.
Pallizadoes, 1 27.
Pendant, 1 17 33 56 67 83 87 *and* 4 59 *and* 5 115 116 121.
Platted, 1 35.
Potonce, 1 48.
Pendant, 2 17 41 59
Pinked, 2 28.
Pleats, *ibid*.
Perclose, 2 59.
Pontifical Vestments, 4 10 12.
Puffed, 5 71.
Patee, 5 165.

Radiant, 1 24 *a*.
Reverted, 1 54 55 72.
Reflected, 1 54 55 72 80.
Ruffles, 2 26.
Ruffled, *ibid*.
Reversed, 3 42 *and* 5 105 109.
Respectant, 3 69.
Regardant, 5 54.
Round Sleeves, 5 71.

Spired, 1 24 *a*.
Spires, 1 28.
Strings Tasselled, 1 37.
Side adorned, 1 48.
Standing on, *ibid*.
Studded, 1 88 *and* 2 43 59.
Slashed, 2 28.
Severed, 2 59.
Sans Arms, 3 41 *and* 5 71.
Skipping, 3 62.
Sinister, 3 61. 62.
Scapular, 3 69.
Sitting, 4 2.
Supporting, 4 2 3 *and* 5 71.
Spread abroad, 4 7.
Set, 5 71.
Staves flurt, 5 164.
Staves Patee, 5 165.
Stayed, *ibid*.
Surcoat, 4 12.

Twist pendant, 1 17.
True Loves Knot, 1 35.
Turned up reverted, 1 54 55 72.
Turned in point, 1 55 *and* 5 119.
Turned down, 1 91 92.
Torce, 1 73.
Tippet, 1 80.
Turned up, 1 16 17 46 47.
Tassels, 1 67 68 73 37.
Tyed up, 2 40 41.
Triangle, 2 46 *and* 5 166.
Three rounds, 2 57.
Three foulds, *ibid*.
To the Sinister, 3
Tunick, 4 12.
Triumph, 4 48.
Turned, 5 52.
Turned up before, 5 119.
Twisted, 5 125.
Twist, 5 142 *c*.
Triparted, 5 154 156.
Tyed, 5 162.

Variously cloathed, 2 69.
Vestment, 4 14 33 10 12.
Vailes, 4 58.

Winged, 1 71.
Wreath, 1 73.
Wrapt up, 4 7.
Wreathed, 5 71 125.
Walking, 3 51.

TO

TO
PETER EDWARDS,
Major of the City of *Chester*, in the Year 1682.

AND TO
PETER EDWARDS, his Son and Heir.

SOME Men bring into the World with them such aspiring Souls, that even from the Cradle are Seeking after Dominion and Command: And for such it were the greatest Injustice to deny it them, that by their sudden rise, may see the folly of Self-Exaltation, which as it Regards none, is as little Regarded it self. But this appeared much contrary in you, who like the Wise Man in the Proverbs hath another to Praise him and not his own Lips, Pro 27. 2. *Others to Advance him and not his own Seeking, which signifies a mild Temper of Spirit, which were wished to remain in all Great Officers of Estate, according to your Example: which is the Prayers of him, who is*

Your Loving and Serene Friend

Randle Holme.

CHAP. VI.

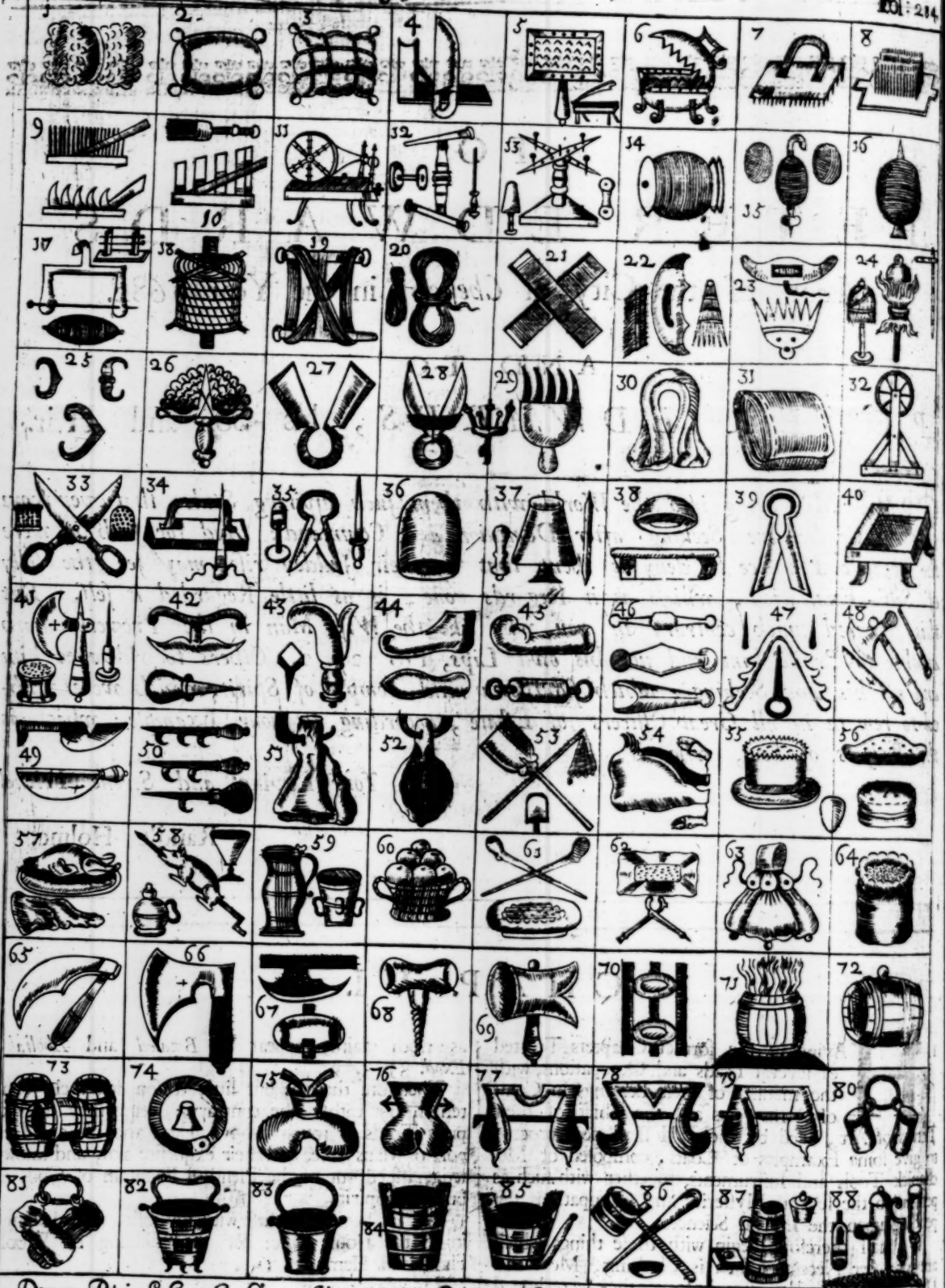
1. HAving in the former Chapters Treated of several Trads and Occupations, with the manner of their Bearings in Coats of Arms; as also the Chief of their Terms of Art, used by them. I shall now proceed to give some Examples of Coats, composed of Mechanick Tools and Instruments, together with such as pertain to the several Mysteries and Occupations depending upon the Liberal Sciences.

We shall therefore begin with those things which are for meer Necessity, such is Clothing, Meat and Drink, &c. which how meanly soever they be reckoned to the bearing of other things, yet nevertheless it is clear that these Tools and Instruments (no less then those) do proceed from the immediate Gift of God, as doth plainly appear by *Bezaleel* and *Aholiab*, *Exod.* 35. 3.

Therefore there is but little reason for their contempt, but rather the contrary; seeing they do express Trads so much behoveful for the use and support of Mans Life, and their exquesite skil, and knowledg, issued out of the Plentiful Fountain of Gods abundant Spirit.

We do begin then first with the Instruments belongin to the House-wife: for the Spinning of Wool, Flax, and Hemp.

1. He beareth Vert, a **Fleece of Wool**, Argent. This is born by the name of *Fleeck*.



Domum Petri Edwards Gen. Lic: civil: Cestr: 1674. Pet: Edwards junior Sculpsit.

A **Fleece**, is as much Wool as is taken of the back of one Sheep, therefore it is, that some are large, and other small: because it groweth better on one Sheep then another. So it is in the Wool, some are of a fine growth, Soft and Gentle; others are more harsh and hairy.

II. He beareth Azure, a **Wool Pack**, Argent. Born by the name of *Pack*.
V. 3 such A. is born by *Wolley*, or *Woller*.
S. one such A. is the Coat of the Company of *Woolpackers* of the City of *London*.
This is a great number of **Fleeces** made up together in a cloth tied up at the four ends or corners.

III. He beareth Gules, a **Wool-Pack**, Argent; **Corded**, Or. This is born by the name of *Woolsack*. The like bearing to this is born by the Company of *Dyers* in the City of *Chester*, viz. Sable a **Cheveron** between three such **Wool-Packs**: yet for that Company they are termed three **Bailes of Madder**; that being a kind of dying stuff which they use, and so being born according to other Trades it ought to be termed, as
A **Bundle**,
A **Trusse**,
A **Fardel**,
A **Baile of Madder**,
A **Pack of Wool, Cloth, Hops**.

IV. He beareth Sable, a **Swingle Hand erected, Surmounting** of a **Swingle Foot**, Or. This is a Wooden Instrument made like a **Fauchion**, with an hole cut in the top of it, to hold it by: It is used for the clearing of Hemp and Flax from the large broken Stalks or Shoves, by the help of the said **Swingle Foot**, which it is hung upon, which said Stalks being first broken, bruised, and cut into shivers, by a **Brake**.
S. 3 such erected in Fesse O. born by *Flaxlowe*.
G. 3 such in Pale A. born by *Swingler*.

V. He beareth Sable, a **Wool-Card**, Or. Three such is born by the name of *Cardingaon*. The Card in its parts is Blazoned thus, the **Card-Board**, Or; **Leafe** and **List**, Gules: **Teeth**, Argent. Some call it a **Cloath-Card**.
These are termed **Wool-Cards**, from their Carding of Wool, whose Teeth then are made short, and set thick together for strength.
Flax-Cards, requires no such strength in them, therefore the Teeth are set in longer, and thinner.
B. 3 Cards O. is born by the *Card-makers* of the City of *Chester*, as their Companies Coat.

The Parts of a Card.

The **Card-Board**,
The **Handle**,
The **Leaf**, is the Leather in which the Teeth or Wyer is set.
The **List**, is that as is nailed about to hold on the Leaf.
The **Teeth**, are the crooked Wyers.

[ ]

The **Tacks**, are the small Nails which Nails the List about the Leaf to hold it on the Board.

Terms used by Card-makers.

The **Skin** or **Tanned Leather**.
The **Pattern**,
The opening of the **Wyer**.
The cutting of the **Wyer** in length.
The **Doubling**, is the first bending of the Wyer for Teeth.
The **Crooking**, is the second bending the Wyer.
The **Picking the Leaf**, is making holes in the Leaf of Leather into which the Teeth of Wyer are set.
The **Setting**, is the putting the Teeth into the said holes.
The **Nailing of it**, is the making of the leaf fast on the Board with a List of Leather nailed about the edges.
The **Pairing** of the Card Board and Leaf even.
The **Stoning** of it, is burnishing it.
The **Cutting the Lists**, is making them even at the ends by cutting of the Superfluities.

In the Dexter base of this Quarter, is another sort of a **Flax** or **Hemp Brake**, made of a contrary way to that in the succeeding square, *numb. 6.* and in truth is the right shape of it, and is born as the Coat and Crest of *Van Habel* of *Alsatia*, viz. B. such a Flax Bake O.

VI. He beareth Argent, a **Flax Brake**, Gules. This is an Instrument of Housewifery, by which both **Flax** and **Hemp** are first broken from the strong **Stalks** into large **Shoves** or **Shivers**. This is a Coat Armor belonging to the name of *Hambrake*.
V. 3 such O. is born by *Nibler*.
A **Flax** or **Hemp Brake**, is a logg of Wood cut along with Teeth like a Saw; having a like piece of Wood cut into Teeth, which falls into the under Teeth being fastned at the end with a hinge, it hath liberty to rise and fall at one end, between which Teeth the Flax being put the Teeth bruise and breaks the hard husk of the stalk all into shivers.

VII. He beareth Azure, a **Stock Card**, Or: **Toothed**, Argent. Born by the name of *Flachier*.
A. 3 such G. Toothed S. is born by *Stockly*.
The **Stock Card**, is of the same nature as a **Wool Card**, only of a larger size, having a double handle fixt on the middle of the Board, by which the Workman holdeth with both Hands, and so Cards Wool (for it is only for Wool) upon another such like **Card**, but larger, fastned upon a Board or Bench set upon four strong and weighty Feet, not easily to be moved or drawn over.
The *London* Herralds draw the **Bowers Flote**, by which Bows are made, after the form of this stock Card, which is a great error: see it *chap.* 8. *numb.* 122. 215.

VIII. He beareth Sable, an **Hatchel** Or, Teeth Argent: if it were all of one colour or mettle then it may be termed only an **Hatchel** or a **Flax Comb**, or Flax Card.

Card. This is born by the name of *Machell* or *Hachell*, as I find in an old Written Manuscript.

There is several sorts of **Hatchels** used by Housewives for the making of **Flax**, from one degree of fineness to another; and that is by the fineness and closeness of the teeth set one to another: as,

The **Round** or **Course Hatchel**, which is long and wide toothed.

The **Fine Hatchel**, which is short and close toothed.

IX. He beareth Vert, a **Wool Comb** (or a **Jersy Comb**) Argent; the **Handle**, Or. This is born by the name of *Gersy*.

S. 3 such O. the Teeth A. is born by *Bromleygh* alias *Bromley*.

This **Jersy Comb**, is the way of drawing it by our modern Heralds, which hath some resemblance to the true shape of it, yet differeth, but not so much as the other Comb set forth in the Base of this Quarter, and also in number 10 following, which were the form and shapes of them drawn of old.

Terms used by a Jersey-Comber.

Jersey, is the finest Wool taken out of other sorts of Wool by Combing it with a Jersey-Comb.

Dyeing the Wool,

Ordering the Fire, is to make a Fire of Charcoal to heat the Combs teeth.

Heating the Combs Teeth, is to put a gentle heat into the teeth.

Wool the Comb, is to put Wool on the teeth of the Comb.

Combing the Wool, is to pull it through the teeth.

Drawing it out, is to strike one Combs teeth into another, thereby to draw it fine.

Cleansing the Comb, is to take the course Wool remaining, out of the Combs teeth.

Weighing the Jersey, is to put it in pounds or half pounds.

Rouling it up, either in **Hanks** or **Balls**.

Course or **Dyoly Wool**, such as is hairy that will not Comb fine, and is left of that which is Combed.

It is a stinking imploy, the workmen are fit Companions for Devils, for with them is heat, smoak, and stink, enough to stiffle a body while seeing of them.

X This is the old way of Drawing the **Wool**, or **Jersy Comb**, which I have caused to be set here, that it may be seen what a difference there is between them used of old, and those in our Days, as that set in the Chief of this Square which is the ture form of the **Jersy Comb** used now by those kind of Workmen.

G. 3 such erected O. the Teeth A. is born by the name of *Wolfercomb*.

XI. He beareth Argent, a **Spinning Wheele**, Sable. This is born by *Spinwell*.

S. 3 Spinning Wheeles O. is born by the name of *Spinner*.

[ ]

There are several sorts of these kinds of **Spinning Weeles**; some for **standing** or **going**, a second sort for **sitting**, and the lesser sort to be **carried**.

The first is the large **Spinning Wheele**, called a **long Wheele**, or a **going Wheele**, or a **Woollen Wheele**, because Woll is principally, nay only spun at it, and at none of the other sorts of Wheels. This Wheel consists in these parts.

The Stock standing on four Feet.

The Standard which bears the Wheel.

The Axle-tree on which the Wheele turns.

The Wheel in which there is the Nave, the Spokes, the Rimm.

The head Standard, or two Pillars which bears the Spool.

The Spool on which the Wheel string is put.

The Spindle on which the Yarn is turned.

The Wheel string that turns the Spool and Spindle.

The Wheel finger by which the Wheel is turned.

The second, is the **sitting Wheel**, generally called the **Spinning Wheel**; which is made after the form of the Draught set forth in this *numb.* 11. all that Spin at it use to sit, being the Wheel withal its appurtenances are not above a yard high.

And of these there are three sorts, first the Countrey **Farmers Wheel**, which is in all respects like the **long Wheel** abovesaid, only this hath the **Distaff** at it, which the other hath not; this a **Spool**, the other a **Spindle**.

The **City Wheel**, or **Gentle Womans Wheel**, because of its more curious making: this is adorned with many tricks and devises, more to shew the Art of the Turner, then to add any goodness to the working of the Wheel. In this Wheel there are these several parts, with their name given to them.

The Stock or Wheel stock, and Feet.

The Quill Box and Button with the Lid or cover.

The Standards or Stoops for the Axle-tree of the Wheel to rest upon.

The turned Pinns to keep the Wheel in the - - - - of the Standards.

The Axle-tree.

The Button of the Axle-tree.

The Nave, middle of the Wheel.

The Spokes.

The Rimm and Riget, to keep the string on.

The Spires, little turned Buttons with points set between the Spokes to adorn it.

The Screw Pin, and Screw Box in the stock, by which the string is drawn up or let down slacked.

The over-cross or handle of the Screw.

The Bosse or Cup.

The over-cross for the Maidens ar Damsels.

The Maidens or Damsels, the two Stands in which the Spindle turns.

The Leather that holds the Spindle in.

The Spindle, the Iron Pin with the hole or eye for the Thrid to pass through.

The Feathers or Fly, or Wing: is that which the crooked Wyres are set in.

[ ] The

The Quill, is that as the Yarn is spun upon.

The Whorl, or Wharve; is that as the Wheel string runs upon.

The **Jersy Wheel**, or **Double Spool Wheel**, by which Jersy is only spun; it hath a **Tradle**, or **Foot-tread**, by which the Wheel is turned about, so that an ingenious Spinner can and may work with both hands, and do as much in a Day as another at a single Wheel shall do almost in two.

The Jersy Wheel that is single differeth nothing from the foresaid Wheel save in the Tradle and Distaff which are turned to a Jersy Distaff, and an Instrument to turn the Wheel with the Foot, if the Spinner please to use it: and they are termed

In the Jersy Distaff, is the shank by which it is set in the over-cross, which is fixed to the Distaff body or stand, see it between *numb.* 29 and 30.

The Bowl on which the Ball of Jersy lyeth.

The six Pillars which keeps the Jersy from running off the Bowl, being fixed in it.

The Leather on the Bowl side, through which the Jersy is drawn to Spin.

For the Wheel to turn with the Foot, there is the Tradle on which the Foot is set.

The Tradle Staff, which goes from the end of the Tradle to the Axle-tree of the Wheel.

The Tradle Axle-tree hath an Iron Button at the further end on which the Staff hangs.

The third is the **Girdle Wheel** or the **small Wheel**; it is a Wheel so little that a Gentle-woman may hang it at her Girdle or Apron string and Spin with it, though she be walking about.

It is made and composed of **Wood, Brass,** and **Iron**: having two Wheels with Nuts on the Spindles with several other giggam bobbs pleasing to Ladies that love not to over toil themselves with this sort of work: therefore may fitly be termed the **Do-Little-Wheel**, whose parts are these.

The Stock to which all the other work is fixed.

The Frame.

The Feet.

The Pillars which holds up the piece in which the Brass Wheels are.

The greater Brass Wheel which hath Forty teeth in it, which turns.

The lesser Brass Wheel or Nut, which hath Twenty Teeth in it, which turns.

The small Wheel of Wood,

The Wheel string which comes from it to the Feathers.

The Feathers, Spool, Whorve.

The Distaff which hath a Standard, and Cross piece.

The Handle and Axle-tree.

The Hooks by which it hangs to the Apron string, or Girdle.

As for Antiquity of Spinning and the Necessary use of it, we have undoubted presidents, as *Exod.* 35. 25, 26. where it is said, *That all the Women that were Wise-hearted did Spin, with their Hands, and brought that which they had Spun, both of Blew, and of Purple, and of Scarlet, and of fine Linnen. And all the Women whose Hearts stirred them up in Wisdom Spun Goats Hair.* Nay it is a token of the most Honorable Women to follow the Spindle and distaff, as *Prov.* 31. 13, 19, 21, 22, 23, 24.

XII. He beareth Gules, a **Reel** between a **Quill** and a **Reel Pin**, Or. These are three very necessary Instruments of Housewifry, the **Quill** to spin the Yarn upon; as is manifested by Figure 14. and the **Reeling Pin** (which some call a **Knave**, or **Reeling Nick**) which is for the **Spool** to run or turn upon whilest it is Reeling upon the **Reel**, as *numb.* 19.

In the Wheel Quill there is these parts and terms.

The Feathers, and its Teeth.

The Spindle with its Holes and Screw.

The Spool, with its String nick or Gutter.

The Whorve with its Screw Plate and Gutter.

In the Reel there are these parts.

The Reel body or part which it is held by.

The Holding head, which is an over-cross end piece with a Button at each end.

The Slipping head, is another over-cross end piece set cross the other head, it hath a Button at one end, the other is to slip the Reeled Yarn off, having as much on, as the Housewife thinks convenient, which is called a **Slipping of Yarn.**

In the Reeling Pin, there is only the Handle, and the Iron Pin, on which the Quill Yarn turneth in the Reeling of it.

XIII. He beareth Vert, a **Pair of Yarringles with its Pins**, set upon its **Stock**, having a **Triangle Foot**, Argent. This Instrument is also of great use, with Housewives, by the help whereof **Yarn Slippings** or **Hanks** is wound (after their washing and whittening) into **Clews** or **round Balls**, as in *numb.* 15.

Some term these a **Pair of Yarringles**, or **Yarringle Blades** which are nothing else but two sticks, or pieces of Wood set cross with a hole in the middle to turn round upon a Wood, or Iron Pin, set in the stock: the ends are full of holes to put the Pins in lesser or wider according to the compass of the slipping of Yarn put upon it. Some have these joynted with hinges, to turn treble, they being the easier for portage; but such are more for curiosity, then necessity.

The **Stock**, is made of diverse forms, some hath a **Square** on the top, with a **Wharle** in the middle, and **Edged** about like the sides of a Box, in which the Clews are put as they be wound: and this is set upon three or four Wooden Feet. Others have them thus, being in form of a Pillar fixed into a square, three cornered or round foot, either plain or wrought with turned and carved work to shew the Ingenuity of the Workman, or the Glory of the Possessor: so that belonging to them there are all these.

The Yarringle Blades.

The four Pins for the Blades.

The Stock with a Pin in the top on which the Blades turn.

The Box.

The Foot on which it stands.

The Bobbin or Nogg, a piece of round Wood with an handle to begin to wind or make the Clew on.

The

The Bead, to draw the Yarn through, that it cut not the winders Fingers.

On the Dexter side the Yarringle foot, is an Instrument used by Housewives to wind their Yarn upon before they can bring it into a Clew, and this they call a **Mogg**, a **Bobbin**, or **Handle**; by which they prepare a Bottom for a Clew.

That on the Sinister side the foresaid Foot, is called a **Bead**, it is a piece of Box, or other hard Wood, turned round, with a hole through, in which the Yarn runs when it comes off the Yarringles, that the Yarn do not cut the Winders Finger, in making the Clew: the first winding of the Clew on this **Mogg**, is called the bottom (or Bothom vulgarly) of the Clew: and from hence, in many places it is named (when all made up) a Bothom of Yarn, and a Bothom of Thrid.

XIV. He beareth Azure, a **Quill of Yarn** (or **Loaded with Yarn**) Or: this is born by the name of *Spoole*. But if you will go to the exact term of it, it is by all our best Blazoners termed a **Quill**, or a **Wheel Quill** filled with Gold thrid, and so it is born by the Company of *Imbrauthers* in their Coat Armor: as G. 2 Imbrauthers Broches in Salter between 2 Quills of Gold thrid erected O. on a Chief A. a Lion passant of the first.

XV. He beareth Gules, a **Wharrow Spindle** Or: charged with a **Fusile** or **Spool of Woollen Yarn**, Argent: between two Clews of Silver thred. *Housewife* is the name of that Family that owneth this Badge of Honor, and by the good Women of that name, these rounds of thrid, have several denomination, either from the largeness of them, or from the matter they are made off: for they call them,

A **Bottom**, or Bothom of thrid.
A **Clew of Yarn**, Linnen or Wollen.
A **Ball of Silver**, or Gold thrid.

Argent 3 such with a Cheveron between, Sable: is the Coat of *Trefues*.

XVI. He beareth Argent, a **Fusile**, or **Clew of Yarn**, Gules: on a **Slipper** or **Spindle**, Sable. This is by the Housewives best blazoned when they term it a **Spool of Woollen Yarn** on its **Spindle**, with the **Point Erected**. This is born by the name of *Fusil-slipte*

A. 3 such G. is born by the name of *Hobby*.

S. 3 such transposed, or the Points downwards A. (as *Gwillim* terms them) is a Coat quartered by *Knowell* of *Standford*.

These are called **Fusiles**, from *Fusus* a **Spindle Yarn**: this sort of Spindles are used at long or going Wheels; but the foregoing is of a different nature being used by Women at a Distaff put under their Girdle, so as they ofteni times Spin therewith going: the round Ball at the lower end, serveth to the fast twerlling, and the long turning of it, to twist the thrid, & is called a **Wharrow**, and therefore is called a **Wharrow Spindle**.

XVII. He beareth Argent, a **Spool Knave**, with the **Spool Pin** therein, Sable: In the Base a **Spool of Woollen Yearn**, Azure.

S. 3 Spools of Yarn erected A. is born by *Spinberg*.

This Instrument is made of Iron, with a hook to hand it by the Girdle, so that the good Housewife may walk about, yet be at her Work. But there is another sort of **Spool Knave** made of Wood, with two Standards mortized in it, standing upright, in which there is holes made according to the length of it, for two, three, four, or more **Spools** to be wound off into Clews, by several Persons: but especially it is used when a thrid is to be made two or three Yarns together; and to be wound off upon one Bottom, or Clew together: see the Figure in the Sinister Chief of this Quarter, *chap.* 20 *numb.* 31.

XVIII. He beareth a **Roper Winch** filled with **Rope Yarn**, but of this I have spoken before *chap.* 5. *numb.* 170.

XIX. He beareth Sable, a **Reel** Or, charged with a **slipping of Yarn**, Argent. This is born by the name of *Reeler*.

If in the Reeling of the Yarn upon the Reel, they chance to lay a thred cross or contrary to the true way of Reeling: it is in our Countrey termed a **Mare**.

A **Knot**, is a Hundred threds round the Reel, at which place Housewives make a **Halch**, as some call it, or a **Knot**, or an **Hank**.

When it is taken off the Reel and tied up with a **Lay Band**, (to keep it from ravalling or running into Snigsnarles or Knotted up it is termed a **Slipping of Yarn**: which generally contains a pound Weight.

XX. He beareth Or, a **Hank of Yarn** or **Thred**, Gules. Born by the name of *Hankley*. This Hank according to the several bearers name, hath diverse Denominations; as when it is blazoned for *Cotton* of *Cotton* Coat, it is termed an **Hank of Cotton**: In *Yarbanks* Coat, an **Hank**, or **Slipping of Yarn**: And in *Lyam* Coat, it is called a **Dog-lease**, or a **Lyam tied up**: see *chap.* 7. *numb.* 81.

B. a Cheveron between three such A. born by *Cotton* of *Cotton* in *Cheshire*, and of *Cumbbermare*, within the said County.

A. 3 such and a Chief G. born by *Yarnhanke*.

S. such an one A. born by *Lyam*.

White thred, or Silk thred, when they are made up into **Skain**, are then tied at the top, leaving a small head, but a long bottom or tail as is set forth by the Figure on the Dexter side of this square.

2. When the Wool, Flax, and Hemp, hath run through the good Wifes hands, then it is time to set the Weaver to handle his Instruments, and by his Art and Skill of single threds, to make Woven Cloth, which he doth by the help of these Tools following.

XXI. He

XXI. He beareth Gules, two **Weavers Reeds** in Saltier, Or. Born by the name of *Reeue*.

This is an Instrument belonging to the Trade of a Weaver, not for made of the Cane, for the Weaving of ordinary course Cloth, but for fine Cloths, of Reeds. It hath these parts belonging to it.

The **Brier**, are the two out sides to which the middle Reeds or Canes are fixed.

The **Whipping**, is the Pack-thred turned round about the Brier to hold them together.

The **Reed**, is the middle part of it, where the Cane is set one by one at a little distance.

The **Cope**, is the two flat and smooth ends.

XXII. He beareth Azure, a **Weavers Shuttle** **Tipped**, Or: between a **Thrum** and a **Preme**, Argent. These are things belonging to the Weavers Occupation, and of great use: A. 3 such Shuttles S. Noled or Tipped O. born by *Shuttler*.

The **Thrum**, is that as the Web is tied too (or knit too, as they term it) which is only ends of Yarn coming out above five or six Inches or more, of a narrow piece of cloth, in which these ends are Woven: which narrow piece is termed the **Fent of the Thrum.**

The **Preme**, is made of white Wands, this is for the opening of the Yarn from the Beam on which it is rowled, if it comes off thence foulded, or run one upon another: so that each thred may pass clearly through the Reed.

S. 3 Premes O. is born by the name of *Preame*.

XXIII. He beareth Sable, a **Weavers Shuttle**, Argent: **Tipped** and **Furnished** with a **Quill of Yarn**, the **Threds pendant**, Or. Others say thus, a **Shuttle Tipped** and set with a **Quill** or **Pin of Thred**, the end **pendant.** This is born by the name of *Weaver*.

A. 3 such S. Tipped and charged with a wound Pin, O. Is born by the name of *Shuttleworth*.

The parts of a **Shuttle** are, the **Shuttle Trough**, or **Box**, is the square hole on the top of it, in which the **Pin** or **Shuttle Pick** is set within two holes, having Yarn winded or wound about it to Weave withal.

The **Ring**, is an Iron Hoop or Ring fixed in the side of the **Shuttle** in a hole through which the **Yarn** runs through from the **Pin**, when it is cast through the **Web**: this Ring is to keep the hole from wearing.

The **Nose**, is either ends of the Shuttle which are ever tipt with Iron.

The **Sole**, is the Bottom of it, which is smooth shod with Iron Plates that it may run swiftly away.

In the Base of this Quarter I have caused a **Weavers Preme** to be set, to shew the difference of its draught, this being the form in which it was anciently made, the foregoing being our modern one, and in use now: which is born by the name of *Kemmat*, viz. S. a Preeme erected O. the like is also his Crest.

XXIV. He beareth Sable, a **Distaff**, with a **Distaffing of Flax tied about it**, Or. This is our Countrey way of tying Flax about the Distaff, and thus I find it born by the name of *Diskeff*.

G. 3 such tied about with Flax O. is born by the name of *Distaff*.

To the Distaff there belongs a **Stand**, to which it is fixed by those as Spin at the sitting Wheel; the form of it I have set at the sinister side of its Distaff: It is constantly fixed in an hole, made purposely behind the **Bosse** or **Cup**, which holds the **Spindle** and **Maidens** on, near the corner of the Wheel stock: all the parts are thus termed.

The **Distaff Body**, is the Standard set in the Wheel stock.

The **Over-crois Piece**, is that fixt into an hole of the top of it.

The **Distaff Shank** or **Arse**, is set in a hole of the over crois piece.

The **Distaff Head**, that as hath the Tow rowled about it.

The **Button on the Head**, at which an **Inkle**, or **Fillet**, or **String** is tied for to rowle about the **Flax** or **Tow**, to keep it on.

In the Dexter Base of this Quarter, is another way of drawing the **Distaff tied** about with **Flax**, or **Hemp**: the **Distaff String** or **Fillet** drawn orderly about it, to keep the Flax in a Handsome equipage, for its drawing out to Spin: this A. being set on a round Foot, or Basis, issuing out of the Base of the Escutcheon V. is the Coat of Arms for the Abby of *Rockenburg* in *Germany*, the Field being G.

XXV. He beareth Sable, two **Havits Endorsed**, and another in Base, Argent. Here I have purposely set three **Havits** (or **Tudern Irons**, or **Clothiers Bench Hooks**) to shew the several ways I have seen them made in Coats of Arms, and yet none right for the hooks at the ends should stand more streighter out, not turning inwards.

S. 2 Havits A. and a Tassel slipt, O. with the Cheveron Ermin between them; is the Coat of the Worshipful Company of *Cloth-workers* and *Shear-men*.

G. 3 Havits A. born by *Havid*.

XXVI. He beareth Gules, a **Clothiers working Tassel**, Or. It is so termed of old, but the Workmen themselves call it (being thus furnished and set with Tassels) an **Handle**: and having no Tassels, is termed an **Handle Stock.** This is born by the name of *Eppin*.

B. 3 such, the Stocks O. Tasselled A. Born by the name of *Sermanbers*.

O. a Saltier between 4 such Transposed G. is born by *Tashal*.

XXVII. He beareth Argent, a **Pair of Shearmans Shears**, the **Points open**, and **Erected**, Sable.

☞ Some say that all sorts of Shears and Cizers are to have their Points born upright, in which posture

ſture they need not to be termed **Upright** or **Erected**, or with the **Points upward**: but term this a **Pair of Shearmans** or **Cloth-workers Shears, open at the Points.**

O. the like S. is born by *Van Schaumberg* of *Frankford*.

B. the like A. born by *Van Hagen* of *Tharland*.

A. 2 ſuch B. born by *Van Kellech* of *Tharland*.

A. one in Bend Siniſter G. born by *Haldenberg* of *Bavaria*.

A. ſuch like erected S. born as Coat and Creſt for *Manſhem*.

XXVIII. He beareth Gules, a **Pair of Wool Shears, the points open**, Argent. There are ſeveral ſorts of **Wool Shears**, theſe being the ſhape of them which are generally uſed by the *Wet-Glovers* for the cutting of thoſe **Knots** and **hard Locks**, which they find in their **Fleeces of Wool.**

A. ſuch a like pair G. is born by *Van Langen* in the Province of *Weſtphalia*.

Theſe **Shears** upon conſtant and daily uſe, are by a **Leather band** kept cloſe together, elſe they are apt to fly too much open by reaſon of the ſtrength of the head, which is a ſpring; which would in a little time of working, ſtrain and benum the hand. But by this Leather Socket, it puts a check to it, and keeps it from flying out, as you ſee in the Figure, which may be termed a **Pair of Wool Shears Bridled**: and ſuch a Pair A. the **Bridle** G. in a Field S. is born by *Cerlſhall*.

XXIX. He beareth Azure, a **Preene** Or: this is an Inſtrument uſed by the *Clothworkers*, and is for their **Handle Dreſſing**, or **picking of the Wool Flocks**, which comes off a piece of Cloth in the **Rowing of it**; It is an half round piece of Wood, with a handle at it, the ſtreight ſide being ſet with Wyers like teeth about an Inch and halt long. This is born by the name of *Preener*.

S. 3 ſuch, the Handles O. Teeth A. born by *Prendorf*.

XXX. He beareth Or, a **Piece of Cloth Imbowed, the ends pendant**, Gules. This is by ſome only termed a piece of Cloth, and no more; and ſo I have found it anciently blazoned in the *Merchant-Taylors* Coat, but now the ſame is converted into **Parliament Robes.**

This piece of Cloth is (as it were) caſt over the Arm, as ſerving Men do their **Napkins** when they waite at the Table, in feaſting time: ſo that if it be born white it may not unfitly be termed either a **Towel** or a **Napkin**: if Red a **piece of Scarlet Cloth**, *&c.*

A. a Tent between two pieces of Scarlet, on a Chief B. a Lion Paſſant Gardant O. born by the Worſhipful Company of *Merchant-Taylors* of the City of *London*.

In an old Pennon made for the Company of *Taylors* of the City of *Cheſter*, *Anno* 1579. I find the ſame Coat ſave on the Chief Azure, there was an **Holy Lamb Couchant**, Argent: on a **Bible**, Gules.

XXXI. He beareth Argent, a **piece of Cloth foulded up**, Gules: the **Liſt** or **Selvage**, Azure. Born by the name of *Cloath* or *Cloather*.

A. 3 ſuch pieces G. Welted S. is born by *Don Walden* a *Spaniſh* Family.

XXXII. He beareth Vert, a **Button makers twiſting Wheel**, Or. This is alſo termed a **Rope-makers Wheel**, but that is more exactly ſet forth, *chap. 5. numb.* 171.

V. 3 ſuch O. is born by *Gympeller*.

3. WE come now to give ſome Examples of *Taylors* Tools, or Inſtruments of working: which in themſelves are but few in number, though thereby moſt rich and coſtly Apparels are made: and being the fewer, the leſs fear there is of a *Taylors* breaking, for to be an unthrift and ſo run away he may, but break he cannot: for at the next Town he comes too, he is ſet up again, if he have but a Needle, Thimble, his Goole and Shears.

XXXIII. He beareth Azure, a **pair of Taylors Shears**, or **Cizars**, opened Salter wiſe between, a *Taylors* and a Semſters **Thimbles**, Argent.

O. a like pair of Taylors Shears G. is born by *Shrnberg* of *Franckford*.

Such a pair B. with a Leopards head between the cutting part O. this was the ancient Creſt belonging to the Company of *Taylors* in the City of *Cheſter*, as I find in an old Roll of their Arms with others of the ſame City made about the Year 1579. from the fancie of this earing, comes that Proverb, or by Word (as I ſuppoſe) uſed to the *Taylors*.

Snip ſnap quoth the Taylors *Shears*,
Alas poor Louſe beware thy Ears.

Some unhappy Wagg, being pur-blind, taking the Leopards head, for a Lowſe head.

XXXIV. He beareth Sable, a **Taylors preſſing Iron, ſurmounted of a Needle**, with **Thred** in the **Eye** thereof, Argent. 3 Such preſſing Irons S. in a Field A. is born by *Preſſe*, or *Preſſing*.

G. 3 Needle A. with Gold threds in the Eyes pendant. Is born by *Neeller*, or *Nedler*.

XXXV. He beareth Gules, a **pair of Wool Shears, tranſpoſed**, (ſome term them **Sheep-Shears**) between a **Taylors Scorer**, and his **Bodkin**, Argent: **Handles** or **Haft**, Or. Such a pair of Shears is only born by the name of *Shearman*, as for the other charges in this Quarter take this deſcription.

The **Scorer**, is a round piece of Iron-plate fixed in another long piece ſlit in the middle like the neck of a Spur, in which the round is faſtned that it cannot move; the long Iron is after faſtned in a round handle, or Haft, or Halve, to hold the better, with this *Taylors* ſcore, or make an impreſſion or mark on Cloth before they venture to cut it. 3 Such B. Halves O. in a Field A. would

would be an Honorable Badge for one that is a good orderer and fore-casser of Business.

The **Bodkin**, is a blade or round Pin of Iron fixed in a Halve, it is not very sharp at the end: by its help, is Eye lid holes, and all other holes (which are not very large) made.

B. 3 *Taylors* Bodkins A. Handle O. is born by *Bodkins*.

4. FROM the *Taylor* which arrays the Body, we can produce no more working Tools, that are worth taking any notice off: therefore shall leave that mistery, and see what Instruments the **Felt-maker** or **Hat-maker** can shew us, to be fit bearing in Coats of Arms.

XXXVI. He beareth Argent, a **Hatters Block**, or a **Felt-makers Block**, or **Hat-makers Block**, with a **round Top**, Sable. There are **Blocks** of all fashions, as high and low, round and square, or flat on the Crown; and Sugar-Loaf like, *&c.*

Within the block at the **Flat Bottom**, is an hollow turned with an Handle, or rather Button, by which the block is put in, and taken out of the **Hat Crown**, as oft as there is occasion so to do.

A. a Cheveron between 3 such S. is born by the name of *Blocklig*.

XXXVII. He beareth Or, an **Hatters Block Sugar-Loaf fashion**, with a **flat Top**, between a **Felt-makers Bow-stick**, and his **Walking-pin**, Sable.

The **Bow-stick** is that wherewith he striketh the string of his **Bow** to make it play amongst to Wool, thereby to rent and tear it to a Downy substance.

The **Walking-pin**, is a four square Iron, a foot or more long, with pointed ends; upon this the Workman rowls his Hat often times, and makes use of it as a rowling-pin, to lay is stuff close together in the walking of the Hat.

XXXVIII. He beareth Gules, an **Hatters Scull Block** (or **low Crown Block**) and his **Bow**, Or. Some term it a **Wool-Bow**, because it is an Instrument by which Wool is rent and torn and beaten very fine, much like to Down, before it can be worked into Hats. It is a long Pole, with - - - - - - like the Bridges of Musical Instruments to bear up the strings, so these bear off the string from the Pole.

XXXIX. He beareth Sable, a **pair of Shearmans Shears**, the **points Pendant**, Argent. Born by the name of *Shearman*.

The other **Shears** on the Dexter side, are the form of such as are used in *Spain*, *Holland*, and *Germany*: they making the points of the shearing place longer then the Back part, and we make them either all of a length, as *numb.* 27. or the Back a little longer, as afore in this figure.

A. 3 such in Pale, bendways S. born by *Eysenhover*.

Per Pale G. and O. a Cheveron A. and Clothiers Shears S. born by *Van Der Deck* of *Franckford*.

A. 2 such G. is born by *Marschalk* of *Gotsman-Schausen* in the Province of *Thurnigian* in *Germany*.

XL. He beareth Azure, a **Weavers Trough**, Or. This is a kind of low footed **Stool**, or **Cricket** (as some call it) with a ledge or border of Board nailed about the top of it, after the manner of a **Swallow Box**: It is used to put the **Clews of Yarn** into, when they are to be wound upon the **Pins**, that are set into the **Shuttle**.

A. 3 such S. born by the name of *Hagenberg*.

5. WE are now to give some Examples of the Tools or Instruments belonging to the **Cordwainers** *alias* **Shoe-makers**, which are born in Coats of Arms, or are set forth as Signs, Tokens, or Cognizance of Persons, Families, or Houses.

XLI. He beareth Sable, a **Shoe-makers cutting Knife**, between a **Punching Lead** and an **Aule**, Argent: the **Halves** or **Hafts**, Or. Though these be set here together, yet their bearing is different: for I find that S. such a Cutting Knife, is born by *Spoonise*.

G. 3 such, is born by *Skinger*.

This is the old way of making their **Cutting Knife**, with an **Haft**: which many would rather take to be a **Poll-ax**, an Instrument of War, than to belong to a *Shoe-maker*.

The **Punching Lead**, is for the Punching of Holes in the instep and Langetts of a Shoe for the ties to go through: the softness of which Lead secures the edge of the Punch, which otherwise would be soon blunted if it struck into an harder thing.

V. a Cheveron O. between 3 such Leads A. born by *Leadbate*.

The **Aule**, is also termed a **stitching Aule**, or a **sowing Aule**: which then it should bend something in the blade, and not be so streight: however an **Aule** this is, and is used in Coats of Arms: as,

S. 3 Aules points erected A. Hafts O. born by *Aule*.

☞ Some hold that the point of the **Aule** being downwards needs no mentioning, it being the proper posture for it: yet others affirm that all Instruments having **sharp points**, are generally born with points upright.

XLII. He beareth Azure, a **Shoe-makers cutting Knife**, and a **pegging Aule**, proper.

☞ Any Instrument made of Silver, Tinn, Steel or Iron: for the use of the Workman, is born in Arms of that colour, *viz.* white. They may be said to be proper, or the colour, or mettle, not mentioned: also note that all **Hafts** or **Halves**, naturally made of Wood (as of the **Aule**, **cutting Knife**, **paring Knife**, or other

Tradesmens Tools) if they be born in Arms, are generally made of Gold; In such things there needs no mentioning them, but if they be born otherwise coloured, then nominate the same. This is the **Cutting Knife**, now in use, the blade and handle being all Iron and Steel: about which is usually sowed some foulds of Leather, either red, black, or yellow, to secure the Hand, and for its more stedfast and stedy holding.

B. 3 Cutting Knives A. handle G. is born by *Cutt.*

S. 3 Pegging Aules is born by *Pegallin.*

XLIII. He beareth Argent, a **Paireing Knife** Azure, Handle or **Haft**, Or: and an **Heele Tack**, Sable. The point on the back of the Shoomakers pareing Knife is to **Score** or **Trace** out the Leather before he venture to cut it, according to the saying, *Score twice before you Cut once*; else they will cut themselves out of Doors.

There is also two sorts of **Tacks** used by them, the **Sole Tack**, it is only with a single nick about the square head: and the **Heel Tack**, which is much larger and longer, it having a double, some a treble nick about the head.

A. a paring Knife B. Handle O. is born by *Dalmate.*

G. 3 such A. Handle O. is born by *Cobler.*

A. a Cheveron between 3 Shoomakers Tacks S. by *Nalbrug.*

XLIV. He beareth Gules, a **Shoomakers Last**, Or: and a **Shooe-sole**, Argent. Some term this, a **Pattern** for a **Shooe-sole**; of the first I have read that a *Cobler* call'd to Death to bring him his Aule, but he reached him his Last.

B. 3 Lasts O. born by *Last.*

S. a Fesse between 3 Shooe-soles A. born by *Sole*, or *Soley.*

G. 3 Shooe-soles erected O. born by *Polis*, or *Police.*

S. 3 in Triangle, the Toe parts pointing to each corner of the Field O. is born by *Soler.*

XLV. He beareth Argent, a **Shooemakers polishing stick**, (or **Hollin stick**) and a **Bakers Brake, Ringed at the Ends**, Gules. This is one of St. *Hughes* Bones (as they term all their Tools) and it is that wherewith they polish and slicken their Leather, when the Shooes are wrought up.

XLVI. He beareth Sable, a **Petty Boy**, or a **Shoomakers petty Boy**, between a **Mounter** and a **Dresser**, in Pale, Or. These are all Instruments belonging to the *Cordwiners* Occupation: and are used generally for their burnishing and smoothing down the **Stitches**, and to pair pieces of Leather upon.

For other Instruments for Shoomaking, see the Plate following *chap.* 8. *numb.* 112. to 117.

6. BEing now outwardly furnished by means of such Instruments as serve for our necessary covering: let us see what Tools are used in Arms by such Trades as support our being, and without which there is no subsistance; these are principally three, the first is the *Butcher*, whose Instruments of Slaughter, Blood, Wounds, and Death are as followeth.

XLVII. He beareth Gules, a **Butchers Cambyll**, Or: between two **Scuers**, and a **Raising pick**, Argent. This is born by the name of *Buncher.*

B. a Cambrel between 3 Knives O. Blades A. is born by *Bucher.*

A. 3 Cambrels in Pale G. born by *Cambwell* alias *Cambell.*

G. a Fesse between 3 Raising Pricks A. Born by *Prickett.*

XLVIII. He beareth Azure, a **Butchers Axe**, between his **Steel** and **Knife bendwise**, proper. The Butcher or Slaughter-man in the Slaughter-house useth the **Axe** to strike down Beasts, as Bulls, Cows, Heifers and Oxen, and by the same Instrument doth divide, cut and break their Bones: also at the Shambles where they sell their meat, both the **Axe** and **Cleever** are used to cut the quarter of Beasts into smaller and more vendable pieces.

B. 2 such Axes in Salter, between 3 Bulls-heads couped, Argent: Horned and on a Chief O. a Boars-head G. between 2 Garbs V. is the Coat Armour of the Company of *Butchers.*

A. 3 Butchers Steels, and Rings B. Halves O. born by *Sherpiv.*

B. 3 Knives A. Halves O. born by *Knife.*

The **Butchers Steel** hath a round turning Ring at the head of the handle by which he hangs it at his Apron strings on the left side, which is his only badg of being a **Slaughter-Man**: upon this Steel, by a nimble and dexterous way they whet and sharpen the dull edge of the **Slaughter-Knife.**

XLIX. He beareth Vert, a **Dutch Butchers Cleever**, and a **Chopping Knife**: the **Chopping Knife** is to mince and shread Flesh off the Bones, small for Pyes, and such like use, *&c.*

The **Dutch Cleever** or **Chopping Knife**, so called by reason it is much born by them in Arms, (and is termed an **Hacker**, or **Hack-mes**) but seldom or never born with us.

S. 3 Dutch Cleevers in Pale A. born by *Hacker.*

G. 3 such in Pale O. born by *Slawgrist.* These are also termed in **Pale pointing to the Sinister**: because their cuttings are in that way.

L. He beareth Sable, three **Punching Hooks** in Pale, the first **treble**, the second **double**, and the third

third **single Hooked**, proper. By the help of the Punching Hook, the Skin is with much ease taken off any Beast, by striking and pricking between the Skin or Hide, and the Flesh, which causeth a separation between them. This is born by the name of *Butcher*.

G. 3 Punching Hooks in Fesse A. handles O. is born by *Skilmere*. The usual Hook used by the Butcher, hath but one Bend, but if it have more, then term it double or treble as aforesaid.

LI. He beareth Argent, on an **Hook, issuing** out of the Chief, a **Leg of Veal**, proper. Some term it a **Leg of Veal** or **Mutton** hung by the Ham String on a Hook out of the chief, Gules. This is a Cognizance belonging to the Shambles, and for most Cooks Shops, either by the thing it self hung in the Window, or by its shape and figure in a Sign over the Door.

LII. He beareth Or, a **Westphalia Ham**, hung in an **Iron Staple**, proceeding out of the chief, Sable. Some term it an **Ham of Pork**, or a **Leg of Bacon ham-like**. The sweetest of Bacons is that which is said to come from *Westphalia*, because there they are fed with Walnuts and Chestnuts; many of our *English* Cheats with their feeding of Swine, with Pease, Corn and Acorns (to sweeten the Flesh) besides their Art used to colour them red, have come very near the **Westphalia Ham**, both in colour and taste, yet could never attain the full Skill, and the reason is very plain; for that as we take for *Westphalia* Bacon, is no other than the **Ham of a Cub**, or **young Bear**, the delicate taste of whose Flesh, our Bacon cannot attain unto by any Art.

7. THE Instruments of the second Occupation, very necessary toward Mans Support, is the **Baker**, whose Tools are such as these which follow.

LIII. He beareth Or, a **Bakers Peel** and **Maukin**, in Salter, Sable. Or as others more fully Blazon it, a **Maukin in Bend sinister, surmounted** of a **Peel Salterwise** or **Bendwise**. This is the Coat of *Van Baker* of *Switzerland*

A. on a Peel S. 3 Manchets proper, born by the name of *Pistor*.

A. 2 Peels in Salter S. born by *Peele* of *Peele*.

The **Maukin** is a foul and dirty Cloth hung at the end of a long Pole, which being wet, the Baker sweeps all the Ashes together therewith, which the Fire or Fuel in the heating of the Oven, hath scattered all about within it.

The **Peel** is that which puts the Batch of Bread into, and takes it again out of the Oven, when Baked; it hath but two terms about it: The **Peel Board** is that on which the Bread is set.

The **Peel staff** or **handle**, which is the long Pole, to which the Board or Peel is fastned.

*

Peels are sometimes made of **Iron Plate**, fixed to a Staff by a **Socket**, having the further part made roundish, whereas the Wooden Peele is large and broad before, and narrow or round to the Staff. See that in the Base of this square.

O. 3 Peel Plates with Sockets S. born by *Schoneck*.

LIV. He beareth Vert, an **Haunch of Venison**, Argent. Born by *Hanch*.

LV. He beareth Azure, on a **Dish** or **Platter**, Argent, a **Round Pye**, Or. By the name of *Pye*.

The rearing of Paste to make **Pies**, are the works of the Cook, who as he hath several forms and shapes, so the matter is variable.

For there are Round, Square, Triangled, Escallop, Eele, Goose, many cornered, and flat Pies.

With several others, whose form is generally made answerable to the filling, or at leastwise according to the ingenuity of the Pastry Man.

The **Goblet** or **Country Pye**, is made of large pieces of Flesh, as Beef, Mutton, Pork, *&c.* which large or square pieces, are termed **Goblets**.

The **Mince Pye**, is made of Flesh and Suet finely shred together, which Cooks term **Mincing**.

LVI. He beareth Gules, a **Rowl** or **Manchet**, and a **Loaf of Bread**, Or. These are the two sorts of Bread generally moulded by Bakers for their Sale. Of which one I find born with an Ordinary between, *viz.* A. a Fesse between three **Boulted Loaves**, or Wheaten Loaves, proper. Born by *Kungbeau*.

A. on a Peel, S. 3 Manchets proper. Born by *Pistor* of *Lincolnshire*.

The Baker hath several ways of making Bread, which according to the form hath several denominations; as **White**, **Boulted** and **Brown**, are the sorts, except **House Bread**, which is made of Bran, Pease and Bean.

French Bread, is a light Spungy White Bread, made in the form of a round Cake, but thick or copped in the middle

A **Rowle**, a **Manchet**, a **Wigg**, is White Bread moulded long ways, and thick in the middle.

A **Loaf** is round, and flat on the top.

A **Jannock**, is Bread made of Oats, Leavened very sour, and made round but not very thick, with a Cop on the top, for it can be made no otherwise, by reason it is Ovened very soft, the sides will fall thinner than the middle.

A **Dumpling**, or **Pot-Ball**, is made either long or round, as the maker pleaseth, with ordinary flour and suet minced small, and mixed up with Milk or Water.

A **Simnell**, is a thick copped Cake, or Loaf made of white Bread, Knodden up with Saffron and Currans.

Bara-Piklett, is Bread made of fine flour, and knodden up with Bearm, which makes it very light and spungy, it form is round about an hands breadth.

Buff-Coat, a soft Bread eaten hot with Butter.

Oaten

Oaten Cakes, are made of Oat meal, and Leavened very well, and knodden flat and round, and Baked on a Back Stone, of which there are 2 sorts, **hard** and **soft**.

In the division score between 55 and 56, is set the form of an Egg, which according to the colour of its Shell it is termed, if white an Egg, that is its proper and most usual colour, as coming from a Hen, Goose, or Ostrich; if green, it is termed a Duck Egg; if green peckled, a Ravens Egg; if white or brown peckled, a Turkey Egg, *&c.*

G. 3 Eggs, or 3 Ostrich Eggs, is quartered by *Eyrl of Thurland* or *Tyrole* in *Germany*.

LVII. He beareth Vert, on a **Dish**, a **Roasted Pullet**, and in Base a **Shoulder of Veal**, all proper; but of these in their Order.

B. a Dish or Platter, A. with a Roasted Fowl thereon O. is born by the name of *Pullet*.

G. 3 such, the Dishes A. Fowl roasted, proper. Born by *Roastell*.

S. 3 Shoulders of Veal proper, is born by *Veal*.

LVIII. He beareth Or, a **Broach in Bend**, Sable; thrust through a **Dressed Pig**, Gules, between a **Cup** and a **Jugg**, Sable. This is the reward of all them that Travel to *Merry Land*, and the *Isle of Lazy*, where such Fellows get half a Crown a day for Sleeping, and when they awake, are fed with Roasted Pigs and good Ale as long as they can gape; after they may sleep and rest again: Sir *Lawrence Lazy* is the Governour of that place.

S. 3 Cups A. is born by the name of *Cup*.

LIX. He beareth Argent, a **Quart** and **Pot** Sable. This should be looked upon by all good Artists to be the most ignoble and dishonourable Bearing; but as the Custom takes away the sense of dislike; so the frequent use takes away the dishonour, which is seen by those multitudes that have it for their Cognizance; insomuch that it is Painted over their Doors by the way side, to shew that the Inhabitant is a lover of the Black Art, and a Friend of Transgressors, as all such are who too much frequent such places, and keep not within the Bounds of Chastity and Sobriety.

S. 3 Quarts A. is born by *Berkins*.
S. 3 Quarts their Lids open A. born by *Quaffer*.
A. 3 Black Pots or Earthen Cups. Born by *Potts*.

LX. He beareth Vert, a **Basket full of Apples**, proper. Others term it a **Twiggen Basket** with two **Ears** or **Handles**, Or; filled with **Fruit**, proper. This is born by the name of *Fructster*.

LXI. He beareth Vert, two **Tabacco Pipes** in Salter, and a **standing round Trencher** or **Plate**, with **Tabacco** on it, all proper. This is the Badge of all Tobacconists; yet is Born as the Coat Armour of the Company of *Smoakers*.

V. 2 such Pipes in Salter, between four Roses, is born by *Piple*, or *Peepell*.

LXII. He beareth Gules, a **Paper of Tobacco opened**, and a **Shoemakers pair of Nippers** or **Pincers**. This is a sure Token, therefore an Admonition in it, that he who smoaks away the chief of his time, shall be foully nipt and pinched in the base or latter end of his Life. This then may be a fit Coat for Mr. *Prodigality*, to put him in mind of what shall come after.

LXIII. He beareth Azure, a **Trebble Purse**, Argent. This is more properly termed, an **Hosts Purse**, a **Victuallers Purse**, or an **Inn-keepers Purse**, being threefold, in which they keep their single Pence, and lesser Moneys, for readiness of Change to Customers. This then is a sure Token to know an Ale-woman by, *viz.* by her **Pouch** or Bag by her side.

S. 3 such Purses A. is born by *Pu. hoft*.

LXIV. He beareth Sable, a **Sack** or **Bough**, or **Bag full of Corn**, the **mouth open**, and rouled down, Argent. Some term it, a **Bag** full of **Meal**, or **Flower of Wheat**. This is born by the name of *Sack full*.

G. 3 such is born by *Wolfsacker*.

8. THE third and last necessary Trade for the support of a Mans Life, is the **Beer-Brewer**, an Occupation very needful, if the Fruit of their Labours were not too much abused by intemperate persons, such as care not which End goes first so they can get Drink; and though the Wife and Children Starve at Home, they will be full Abroad.

LXV. He beareth Gules, a **Coopers Hatchet**, Argent, the **Hawme**, Or. This was the old way of shaping it, and in this form I find it born by the name of *Hacklett*.

LXVI. He beareth Argent, a **Coopers Hatchet**, Azure; the **Hawme** in the Base, Or. This is the modern way of proportioning it, and is much more agreeable to the truth of a right Drawn Hatchet belonging to a Cooper than the foregoing.

G. 3 such the edges to the Sinister A. Hawmes O. born by *Van Steten*.

B. one so stared, is born by *Gienger van Wolfseck*.

O. the like in Bend sinister B. is born by *Hiltgartshausen*. And in Bend dexter, and contrary coloured, by *Messenhausen*, both in *Bavaria*.

A. the like in Bend sinister, G born by *Cammer*, and contrary coloured. G. the Axe in Bend A. born by *Cammerberg*, both of *Bavaria*.

LXVII. He beareth Or, a **Coopers Axe** in Chief, Azure, and a **Drawing Block Charged** with its **Iron**, Sable. This is the old way of Drawing their Axe, and is thus used without any alteration, in the Coopers Coat of Arms to this time, *viz.* Party per Salter

ter Gules and Azure, on a Cheveron between three **Annuletts** (or **Hoops**) Or, a Drawing Board, Sable, between two Axes of the second.

A. 2 such Axes endorsed G. born by *Van Rucker's-hausen* of *Alsatia*.

And B. the like O. by *Sturmf der* of the *Rhine*.

LXVIII. He beareth Gules, a **Wine Piercer**, Argent, the **Handle**, Or. This goeth under several names, as, a **Gimblet**, a **Nail Piercer**, an **Hand-Bit**: It is only to make Holes in the Heads and Sides of Barrels and such Vessels, to give Vent to the Liquors contained in them, or to draw the same out into other things.

G. 3 such is born by the name of *Pierson*.

LXIX. He beareth Sable, a **Coopers Mallet**, Argent. This Instrument they used in former times to drive on the **Hoops** of their Vessels, but now it is wholly laid aside as useless, in room whereof they employ the **Adice**.

B. 3 such O. born by the name of *Coope*.

S. 3 such A. born by *Mareylle*.

LXX. He beareth Argent, a **Gage**, or **Raising Stow**. This is a kind of Instrument composed of Hoops and upright Stands or Feet, to hold them at a distance; into which Hoops the new Barrel Boards are placed (after they are **paired** or **backed**) to hold them up together, till one end of them be hooped with the **raising** hoops. This they term **Raising a Barrel.**

A. on a Cheveron G. between 3 such Sable, 3 drawing Boards, A. is the old Coat of the Company of Coopers within the City of *Chester*, used about 1590. but now it is wholly rejected, and that of the City of *London* is used by them.

LXXI. He beareth Argent, on a **Mount** or **Hill in Base**, Vert, a **Barrel erected**, Tenne; **Fire issuing** out of it, proper. Some only term it a **Barrel fired**, and a Barrel firing for the driving on of the Hoops; for after this manner they use to heat their Barrel Staves with a Flame, to make them pliable, and bow to the Hoops. This was the Ancient Crest of the Company of Coopers within the City of *Chester*, as aforesaid.

LXXII. He beareth Vert, a **Tun** with a **round Bung**, Or. This hath several terms according to the Persons or Occupations which bear it, as a **Tun**, an **Hogshead**, a **Terce**, a **Barrel**, a **Firkin**, or a **Rundlet**; but whatsoever it is called, it it ly in this posture, it is in its proper Station, and so needeth no other expression to shew it lying, but if it be otherwise set, then mention the same.

B. 3 Tuns O. the Sign of the 3 Tun Tavern.

S. a Cheveron between 3 Tuns A. is the Company of *Vintners* Coat.

B. a Tun with a Bird Bolt through it. Born by *Bolton*.

G. on a Cheveron A. 3 Barrels S. Hooped O. between six Garbs 2 2 and 2 Salterwise O. is the Coat of the Company of *Beer Brewers*. *

V. a Rundlet with 3 Leaves out of the Bung O. is born by *Kilderkin*.

The Measure of these kind of Vessels.

A **Tun** contains 8 Barrels.

A **Hogshead**, is two Barrels.

A **Terce**, is a Barrel and an half.

A **Barrel** is 36 Gallons, but of Ale it is 32 Gallons.

A **Kilderkin** or **Half Barrel**, is 2 Firkins.

A **Firkin** is the fourth part of a Barrel, containing nine Gallons.

A **Rundlet**, is any Vessel under a Firkin, and of any measure from a Pint to 9 Gallons, which are called Rundlets of such or such a measure or quantity.

LXXIII. He beareth Gules, 2 **Tuns standing upright**, (or **erected**, or **turned an end**, as the Vintners term them) surmounted of another reileways, Or. Born by the name of *Tuns*.

The several parts of a Barrel, Hogshead or Tun.

A **Cask**, the general term for all such kind of Vessels.

The **Staves**, is the Timber of which the Cask is made.

The **Head**, the round Boards at the ends of the Vessel.

The **Chow** or **Crewes**, the nick in which the Barrel Head is fastned.

The **Raising Hoops**, the first strong Hoops that holds them together.

The **Over Run Hoops.**

The **Bilge** or **Bulge Hoops.**

The **Quarter Hoops.**

The **Hoop Twigs**, are Withen Twigs Cloven.

The **Leg** or **Chime**, that part above the Barrel head.

The **Cross Bar**, the cross piece over the Barrel Head.

The **Bar Pins**, the Pins that holds it on.

The **Vent hole**,

The **Bung** and **Bung hole**,

The **Forcet hole.**

LXXIV. He beareth Argent, a **Coopers Driver**, within a **Barrel Hoop**, both proper. That Hoops or Rings are Born in Coats of Arms, is not to be doubted, therefore shall here forbear to give any example of them; only tell you that there are two sorts of Hoops, as,

White Hoops made of Ash cloven

Barrel Hoops, made of Hassel Staves cloven, and Twigged together.

LXXV. He beareth Or, a **Water Bowget**, Sable. This is the form of the **Bowget** in ancient times, and was called a **Water Budget**, or **Water Baggs**; and for a distinction may be termed **Horse Water Bowgets**, by reason Water was at first carried on Horse

Horse Backs, before that poor People carried it in **Tankards**, or in **Leather Bags** or **Buckets**, which the Bowgetts do signifie. These were also of old termed **Oges** or **Gouges**.

In a Field paved with Azure Stones, a Water Bowget Sable, on the Back of a Horse Argent; followed by a Man in a red Wastcoat, with a Scoop on his Shoulder, Or. Is the Coat of the Company of *Water Leaders* in the City of *Chester*. This is more shorter termed a **Bag-horse** followed by a man with a Scoop on his shoulder. See *chap.* 13. *numb.* 43.

LXXVI. He beareth Argent, a **Water Bowget**, Gules. This is another way of our Fore Fathers making the **Horse Bags**, or **Bowgets**, as is to be seen in several old Monuments, and other Draughts of Coats of Arms. These may according to our modern terms be called the **Horse Water Bags**, because carried on Horses Backs. See these now in use *chap.* 7. *numb.* 122, 125.

A. 3 such S. born by *Waterman*.

O. 3 such S. a Bordure B. is born by *Ladewater*.

LXXVII. He beareth Azure, a **Gouge**, (or **Budge**, or **Bowget**,) Argent. This is the Water Bowget now in use by our modern Heralds, and is the representation of no other thing than two **Leather Bags** or **Buckets** hung at a piece of Wood, cut with a semi circle in it to go about a Man or Woman's Neck, so resting on the Shoulders; by means whereof the Bags are born and carried with much more ease than otherwise by the strength of Arms and Hands; and the Staff through the middle, is to keep the Bags from Swagging or Flying out in the Carriage. These in our modern time may be termed **Water Bowgets**, because carried by Men or Women as aforesaid. See *Leigh's Accidence*, pag. 127. 176. See also *chap.* 20. *numb.* 33.

G. 3 such Er. by the name of *Ros of Ridney*.

A. 3 such S. by the name of *Ros*. Also of *Ilderton*.

B. 3 such A. by *Kirkton*, and O. by *Boucher*.

O. 3 such S. born by *Parre*.

LXXVIII. LXXIX. These are two other sorts of **Bowgetts**, in which Foot people carried Water, and was the old manner of Drawing them; though some good Arms Painters and excellent Workmen, do to this day delineate the Water Bowgets according to the form of the first of these two. Some call them **Bowges**.

Some mistake these for a certain *Aquifolia*, which hath its nourishment in the Water, as being the proper Element thereof; so that he that would discern the Rudimental stroak of a Plant which they take it to be, may behold it in the original of **Duckweed**, in Mr. *Browns* Garden of *Cyrus*. But Mr. *Gwillim* defines them to be (as indeed they are no other) Vessels made of Leather or such matter to carry Water in, for an Army, or other Domestick uses.

LXXX. He beareth Argent, two **Water Bags**, Sable; **Hooped** together, Or. Some term them **Cuts joyned** to an **Annulett**. However by the help of this Ring or Hoop put about the persons neck, the Bags were carried with much more ease, than by the strength of Hands. This is born by the name of *Banister*.

LXXXI. He beareth Sable, two **Water Bags fixed** to an **Annulet hanging Salterwise**, Argent. This between 3 flowers de lis, Or, is the Coat Armour of *Banister of Derwyn*.

LXXXII. He beareth Argent, a **Bucket**, Sable, the **Handle** and **Hoops**, Or. This is termed for a distinction, a **Well Buckkt**, or an **Hooped Bucket**. See *chap.* 16. *numb.* 102. Three such is born by the name of *Pemberton*.

LXXXIII. He beareth Or, a **Fire Buckt**, (or a **Leather Bucket**) Sable. This is also called a **Siphon**, which is a kind of Vessel made of Tanned Hydes to carry Water in, to quench Fire that is raging amongst Dwelling Houses.

A. 3 such S. is born by *Taine*.

LXXXIV. He beareth Argent, a **Tub** or **Runge**, Sable, **Hooped**, Or. Born by *Tresken*.

Also G. the like A. is born by *Van Budler*.

A. the like O. is born by *Multberg*.

O. the same with 3 small Feet S. hooped O. born by *Saltz*.

LXXXV. A **Runge** with a **Pipe** on the side of it Or, in a Field Gules, is born by *Rangey*.

A. the like S. hooped O. is born by *Saltzer* of *Switzerland*.

LXXXVI. He beareth Azure, a **Brewers Mash** in Bend sinister, **surmounted** of a **Scoop** salterwise, Or. These are two Instruments belonging to the Trade of Brewing, the one to stir up the **Malt** in the Cumbe, while it is soaking in the Liquor, which is termed **Mash it up**, and the Pole is termed a **Mash-Staff** or **Pole**, or a **Washing Staff**; And the **Scoop** is to lade the Liquor from one Vessel to another, till from Water it is made Beer, as before I have shewed in the Beer-Brewers Terms of Art. This is born by the name of *Scopemash*.

V. 2 Scoops in Salter O. born by the name of *Scope*.

G. 2 such in Salter O. is a part of the Coat or a quartering of the Town Arms of *Schwabach* in *Germany*.

In the Base of this quarter, is a **Brewing Dish** or **Bowle**, it is of Wood, with which **Wort** is stirred about when it is working in the Combe. *Van Linsingen* beareth G. on 3 Bars B. 7 Bowle Dishes 3, 3 and 1 A.

LXXXVII. He beareth Sable, a **Tankard**, (or a **Water Tankard**,) Argent: In the Sinister chief a **Pump** or **Water-sucker**, and in dexter Base a **Cistern**, Or. These are all used about Water Works, the two last being least known, I shall inform you what they are.

The **Sucker**, is an Instrument fixed in a round Pipe or **Pump**, to draw or suck up Water into it; and is nothing else but a round piece of Wood with a hole through it, on the top a piece of Leather nailed on one side

side over the hole, having a piece of Lead fastned on the same to make it lie close, so that neither Air nor Water can pass the hole downwards; but what comes through the hole upward, hath liberty to come in, by reason it raiseth the Leather up, one side thereof being not close Nailed to the Wood.

The **Clack**, is the term of that foresaid square or round piece of Leather, with the Lead fixed on it. Some term the Sucker thus prepared, a **Bucket** for a **Pump**.

B. 3 Water Tankards A. is born by *Tankerberg*.

The **Milk Tankard** is the same, wide at bottom, and narrower at the top, sans handle and mouth spout, being they are carried on a Horse like Panniers. See *chap.* 2. *numb.* 32.

LXXXVIII. He beareth on a **Hill issuing** out of Base Vert, a **Pump** Sable, in a Field Argent. This is the Coat of Arms belonging to the name of *Pumpell*.

A. the like, the Hill B. **Pump** G. the **Sweep**, O. born by the name of *Pumperg*.

The **Pump**, is an Instrument wherewith Water is drawn out of a deep Well to the surface or superficies of the Earth, in which to make it a compleat Drawer is contained these parts or members.

The **Pump tree**, is that part as stands above the earth, or top of the Well.

The **Lead pipe**, or the **Bottom Trees**, are pieces of Timber boared through, and set one in an other, so long as will reach to the bottom of the Well.

The **Suckers**, are as is aforesaid *numb.* 87. which be set in the bottom of the pipe, or tree, or near the same, to suck the water in, as it is drawn up the Pipe.

The **Bucket** of the **Pump**, is the like Sucker fastned to an Iron rod, which is moved up and down by the help of the Sweep, or Swafe, or Handle.

The **Sweep**, is the handle of the Pump, which is made of Iron: The **Pump Brake**, by which people pump up water.

The **Water Passage**, is the pipe by which the water runs out of the Pump into other Vessels.

On the Dexter side of the Pump, is the **Bucket** of the Pump, which is a round piece of wood with a hole through it to the middle, and then open on both sides with a long slit. At the bottom of the open slit is fastned a **Clacke** upon the hole which goeth through the bottom of the Wood. The Wood is Leathered about that it fit the hole of the **Pump tree** that neither Air or water come between them.

In the Sinister side is a **Water forcer**, which is only a round piece of wood fixed to an Iron rod; having leather about it to fit the hole of a Pipe. By the motion of this in a pipe, water is forced to any height the Pipe is of length.

There are three sorts of **Pumps**. The first is this **Common** or **Land Pump**.

The next is the **Bur-Pump**, or **Bilge-Pump**, because they hold much water. The maner of these are to have a staffe 6 7 or 8 foot long with a **Bur** of wood, where unto the Leather is nailed, this serveth in stead of a **Box**. And so two men standing over the Pump do thrust down this staffe to the middle whereof is fastned a rope for 6 8 or 10 to hale by, and so they pull it up and down the water.

The third sort are **Chaine Pumps**, these have a Chaine full of Bars and a Wheel. These are soonest of all other mended, having spare **Esses**, if any chance to give way.

There are also **Pumps** made of a **Cane** or **Latin**, which *Sea men* put down into the Caske, to pump up the drink; for they use no Spickets.

TO

The Right Worshipful

SR. JAMES POOLE,

Of *Poole*, in the County of *Chester*, Barronett.

SIR,

ARTS and Sciences were never esteemed Heavy or Troublesome to the Possessor; neither is it below a Gentleman to exercise himself for his Recreation, in Mechanick Exercises, a Worthy Patron of which we had in that Noble Prince Rupert *lately Deceased, who did not only Exercise himself therein, but was an Improver of several Mysteries: In imitation of which Noble Patron, you are said to Exercise your self; to whom I make bold to Present You with a Plate of Tools and a Chapter of Works, without which no Art can truly be Accomplished. So not doubting of its Acceptation, I Subscribe my self*

Sir, Your Real Friend and Kinsman,

Yet Devoted Servant,

Randle Holme.

CHAP. VII.

1. HAVING exemplified such Bearings of Arms as are borrowed from the several Arts of Nourishing, and Cloathing our Bodies, the next place may be justly Challenged by that Occupation or Science which we call **Armature**; Trades by the help whereof we are defended from all outward Injuries, either of Foes or Weather: And first for Metal Workers, where I shall begin with the **Smith**, or **Black Smith**, whose working is in the Fire, the product of all Arts, for till it was found, Arts lay asleep.

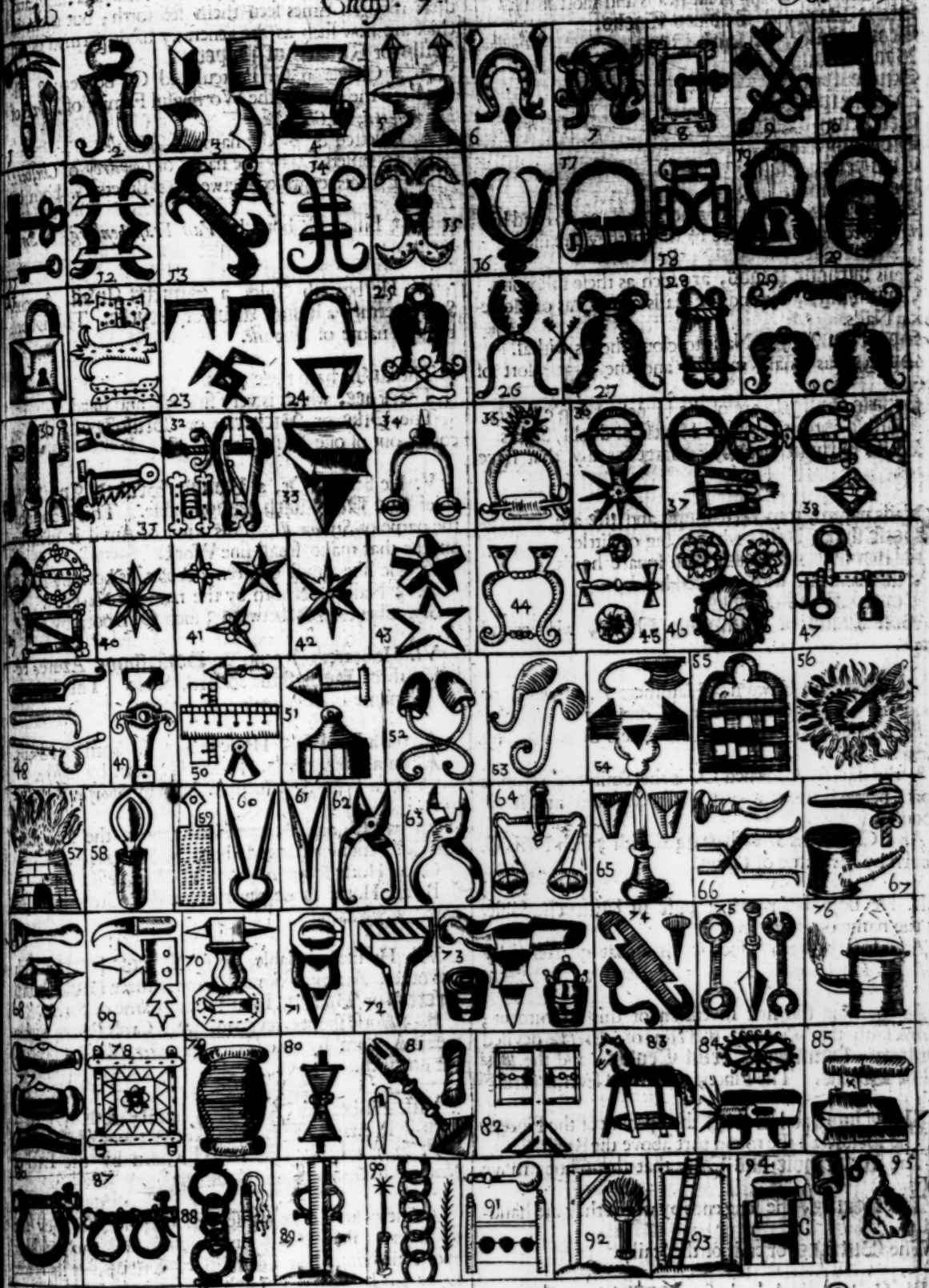
I. He beareth Argent, an **Hammer**, or Smiths **showing Hammer**, Sable; on the Sinister side, a **Nail**, (of some termed a **Spyig Nail**, because without a Head.)

Or. The Hammer is the Smiths chiefest Instrument for Forging and Forming of things Malleable for necessary use.

All **Hammers** that have not a **Claw** to draw out a Nail, but have a **Pen** or solid end, have other terms given them according to their bigness, as you may see *numb* 128. This fashion in Heraldry being only called the **Hammer**, without any other addition to it.

The **Nail** hath its use in Military Service, as well as Domestick uses, of which there are several and distinct sorts, some are named from their proportion, one bigger than another, others have their denomination from their shape and fashion, whither big or little, as for the first sorts, there are **with Heads**.

Tack



D P M Doni Jacobi Poole de Poole in Com Cestr Baronetti H D E

Tack Nails, or Card-makers Tacks.
Hob Nails, having great heads and short shanks.
Stake Nails, or Sadlers Tacks.
Stout Nails, or Lath Nails.
Boat Nails.
Single spikes.
Double spikes.
Tenpenny Nails.
Sixpenny Nails.
Two-penny Nails.
Pe[illegible] Nails.
[illegible] Nails, which are made of all lengths and bigness, according to the place to which they are used.

Nails without Heads, are such as these following.
Clinchings, the ends of Nails cloven, as of Horse-shoe Nails.
Spatter Bills, Nails to clout Shoes withal.
Spings, as small as needles and the largest sort of Spting[illegible]
Single Spings, are of the bigness of single Spikes.
Double Spings, of the bigness of double Spikes.
Nails without heads, as large as any that have heads.

Nails named from their shape and use are,
Horse-shoe Nails, whether big or little.
Shoemakers Tacks, with square heads.
Glass Nails, with crooked heads.
Tenty Nails or hooks.
Ball Nails or Pumping Nails, with round heads.

S. a Cheveron between 3 Hammers A. crowned or honoured O. is the Arms of the Company of Smiths.

A. a Cheveron between 3 Hammers S. is born by *Hammers*.

S. the like A. Crowned O. is the Smiths Companies Coat, being between a pair of Pincers and an Horse-shoe.

A. 2 Cheverons S. each charged with 5 such Nails O. is born by the name of *Clowell*.

II. He beareth Argent, a **pair of Pincers**, Sable. by the name of *Pyncerne*.

A. a Fesse between 3 such G. is a coat quartered by *Russel* of *Thornhaw*.

As touching the first Invention of this Instrument; *Pliny* saith that *Cyrnus*, the Son of *Agrippa* devised **Pincers, Hammers, Iron Crows**, and the **Anvil** or **Scythe**. The Pincers have these several parts.

The **Chops** and **Teeth**, the opening of the Pincers.
The **Head**, all the round part above the Revit.
The **Revit hole and Pin**, that the Chops move upon.
The **Stailes**, the long ends by which they are handled.
The **Buttons** or ends of the Stailes.

III. He beareth Argent, four **Billets** or **Gads** of **Steel**, Azure. I do here in this quarter set four sorts of Gads, being the four ways I have both anciently, and these modern times seen them set forth; but them in chief are now such as are generally used, termed of old **Bills** or **Rowles of Paper**.

A. a Cheveron G. Particulized O. between 3 Billets B. is the Coat of the Worshipful Family of *Delves* of *Doddington*, in *Cheshire*.

A. Billettee S. by the name of *Belvale*.

G. 10 Billets O. by the name of *Cawdrey* of *Cheshire*.

A. a Cross engraled between 12 Billets G. born by *Heath*.

II. O. 3 Billets G. born by *Van Frankenberg*, of *Switzerland*.

IV. He beareth Gules, a **Smiths Anvil**, Argent. Some term it a **square Anvil** or **Scythe**. This is born by the name of *Awaile*.

The **Anvil** hath these parts.
The **Face**, which is very smooth and hard.
The **Pike** or **Bickern**, or **Beak Iron**, that as comes out of one end of it.

V. He beareth Or, a **Round Beaked Anvill**, in chief **two Nails with heads**, Sable. This is born by the name of *Stybnall*. This kind of Anvil is used by Smiths that make small fine Work.

A. the like Anvil between 3 Roses, is born by *Kaign*.

A. 3 Nails S. is born by the name of *Naylor*.

S. a Cheveron A. between 3 such O. is born by *Sussall*.

VI. He beareth Argent, an **Horse shoe** Azure, between three **Horse-shoe Nails**, Sable. This is born by the name of *Shughsale*.

A. on a Bend S. 3 Horse-shooes, A. born by *Ferrars*.

A. on a Cheveron S. 5 such O. born by *Crispe*.

O. on a Bend S. 3 such A. born by *Shoyswell* of *Sussex*.

Per pale G. and A. two Horse shoes, the sore parts conjoined counterchanged, born by *Schyromsky*.

G. an Horse shoe A. born by *Hertenfelden*.

B. an Horse shoe reversed, and a Cross patee A. born by *Sobitz*.

VII. He beareth Sable, an **Horse shoe fretted** with two other, Argent. Some Blazon it three **Horse shoes Fretted** or **Braced**. Born by the name of *Sureby*.

B. 3 Horse shooes reversed, with Cross Patees within them A. born by *Geraldow*. But *Geraldowsky* beareth but one such.

VIII. He beareth Argent, a **square Lock**, with a **Key** in it, Azure. This is the Coat Armour of *Kylock*.

A. such a Lock, sans Key B. born by the Earl of *Neuhaus* in *Germany*.

As there are Locks for several purposes, so they are of several shapes and inventions, in the making and contriving their **Wards** or **Gards**, as in Street Door Locks, called **Stock Locks**; Chamber Door Locks, called **Spring Locks**; **Cupboard Locks**, **Chest Locks**, **Trunk Locks**, **Hanging Locks** or Pad-

Padlocks, &c. in all, or most of which there [illegible] the same things for Terms.

In a **Lock** there are these several Terms.

The **Main-plate.**	The **Key-hole.**
The **Top-hoope.**	The **Cross-wards.**
The **Bolt** or **Shoot.**	The **Bolt-rod,** or [illegible]
The **Tumbler.**	The **Pin of the Tumbler.**
The **Cover-plate.**	The **Pin.**
The **Main-ward.**	The **Cross-wards.**

The **Staples,** those as holds the Bolt to the Plate.
The **Main-back Spring.**
The **Step-ward,** or **Dap-ward.**

IX. He beareth Gules, two **Keys Endorsed,** the **Bows Interlaced,** Or: **Fretted** with a **Sword Salterwise,** proper. This Coat belongs to the See or Bishoprick of *Winchester,* which I find blazoned thus: He beareth Ruby, two **Keys Endorsed in Bend,** and United in the Heads, Topaz: with a **Sword Extended in Bend Sinister,** Pearl: **Pomelled** of the second, and dividing between the **Keys.** Now take another Blazon as short: two **Keys Endorsed** and **Bitted,** with a **Sword Salterwise Fretting** them.

Per Pale O. and B. 2 Keys Endorsed and Conjoynd at the Bows Counterchanged. Born for the Coat and Crest of *Van Beber.*

X. He beareth Azure, a **Key,** Argent: others say a **Key in pale,** yet I never saw the Key born but it ever stood thus, upright; except it were born **Fretted,** or in **Salter** with some other thing. This is the Coat Armor of *Goaler.*

A. 3 Keys G. is born by *Jolley.*
G. a Key in Bend Sinister O. is born by *Van Rolitz.*
G. 2 Keys endorsed A. born by *Giteldie.*
G. a Key the Bit to the Sinister A. born by *Froberg.*
G. a Sword in Pale, proper: Surmounted of 2 Keys in Salter O. is the coat of the Bishoprick of *Exeter.*
G. 2 in Salter A. in the Chief a Cross patee fitched O. the Bishoprick of *Bremen.*
G. 2 Keys in Salter A. in chief a Crown Royal O. is the Coat of the See of *York.*
S. 2 Keys in Salter O. the See of *Glocester.*
G. 2 Keys in Salter between 4 Crosses Bottoned Fitched O is the Arms of the See of *Peterborough.*
S. 2 Keys in Salter A. is the Bishoprick of St. *Asaph.*
A. 2 in Salter G. in Base a Shapourner O. born by *Sluselberg.*
G. 2 in Cross A. is the Bishoprick of *Brandenburg.*

The **Key** is a very Honorable Bearing, the parts of it are these as follow.

The **Bow,** the **Round** or **Handle** of the Key.
The **Shank,**
The **Pin-hole,** or **Drill-hole.**
Pot or **Bead,** is the round under the Bow, at the top of the Shank.
The **Bite,** is all the flat part of the Key, in which the Wards are.
The **Bowward,** is the distance between the two ends of the Bow.

[ ]

The **Wards,** are all the nicks in the Bite.
The **Dap,** or **Stepward,** that next the end of the Key.
The **Hookward,** is any cross Ward that comes out from it.
The **Middle** or **Main cross Ward,** is the straight ward running into the Bite on the side next the Shank: which is generally set in the middle of the Bite.
The **Cross ward** of the **Maine,** is that as crosseth the Maine cross ward.
The **Maine ward,** is that on the lower side the Bit.
The **Cross ward** of the **Maine ward,** is that as crosseth it.

XI. He beareth Azure, a **Key double Bitted in Fesse,** Or. It is also termed a **Key double Claver,** as much as say a **Key double Keyed,** for *Clavis* is the Latin Word for a Key: It may then as well be termed a **double Key.** This is born by the name of *Bitis.*

Such a Key A. is the Crest of *Froberg.*

G. the like Key A. is the Town Arms of *Walde* or *Under-Walden* in *Germany.*

In the Base of this Square, is the **Key of a hanging Lock:** or as some term it, a **Key with the Bite separted,** A. 3 such in Pale, Bar-ways B. is born by *Horatike.*

A. 2 such Endorsed S. is born by *Van Falckenberg.*
A. 3 Keys in Pale, Bar ways the Bits upwards G. born by *Schuczen* of *Frankford.*

XII. He beareth Gules, a **Cramp cramped,** Or. It is also termed, a **Double Cramp,** O.

XIII. He beareth Argent, a **Cramp,** or an **Iron Cramp in Bend,** Sable. These are strong Barrs of Iron made to hold Timber work together in old decayed Houses, which kind of Work is termed **Cramping,** from whence these Irons had the name of **Cramps.**

In the Sinister chief is placed a **Barnacle** made after the *German* manner with the Teeth on the outside: with a Ring to run it close together. And such an one G. in a Field A. is born by *Lissberg* of *Franckford:* See other fashions of them, *numb.* 25, 26. 27. 28, 29, 31.

XIV. This is another form of a **double Cramp** which I have seen very ancient in Draughts of Coats of Arms. O. such a Cramp S. is born by *Van Breidenbach* of *Alsatia.*

XV. This is also the Delineation of a **Cramp,** as it was made by our Fore-fathers: of which I shall say no more but give you their Forms.

XVI. He beareth Azure, a **Crampette,** or a little **Cramp,** Or. Some term this a **Crampnett.** This is the Badg of Baron *Frost,* Knight of the Garter: who bore it in memory of his takeing the *French King* prisoner in a field fight. *Leigh, pag.* 50.

XVII. He beareth Argent, a **Horse-Lock,** Azure. It is also termed a **Fetter-Lock.** This is born by the name of *Horsley.*

V. 3 such A. is the Coat of *Fitlock*.

Such a Lock with a Falcon Displaid A. Brak and Legs O. standing upon the lock part, was the Badge of King *Edward* the sixth, Queen *Mary*, Queen *Elizabeth*.

Shakle, that as compasseth the Horse-foot.

Turn of the Shackle, where it is made fast to the Socket.

Socket or Barrel.

Ward-hole, the hole at the end of the Shackle.

Ward, and his round head, that as is put into the Socket, to hold in the Shackle.

Key and Wards, in the bended end.

XVIII. He beareth Sable, three **Horse, or, Fetters-Locks interlaced**, Argent. By the name of *Holtzen*.

XIX. He beareth Azure, an **half round Padlock**, Or. Born by *Rodenbach*.

XX. He beareth Gules, a **Pad-Lock**, Argent: as is the bearing so is the name of the Bearer *Padlock*.

☞ If it be round it is generally termed a Padlock without any other addition; yet sone have called it a **Round Padlock**, or a **Port-mantle lock**, because most used for their Security.

XXI. He beareth Sable, an **Hanging lock**, Argent. Born by the name of *Locker*.

Of these sorts of Locks for the hanging upon Shop-Doors, and Gates in Fields, and such like places: You shall find them Born in Coats of Arms in various forms, some **round**, some **half round**, some **square** as the foresaid Examples. Others also are born in the shape of **ovals**, three **square**, and in the form of an **Heart**, *&c.* which are to be named accordingly.

All these **Locks** are opened with **Keys**, having in them all those things which belong to other Locks which I shall not need to mention again.

XXII. He beareth Sable, a **Door Hinge** between a **Dove-Tail**, and an **Hach Hinge**, all in Pale, Argent. These are the three sorts of Hinges which are generally used in all things that require an opening or turning: and are all born in Arms as I shall shew presently.

The first is the **Door Hinge**, which is used to all great Doors of Houses, Barns, Stables, Gates of Towns and Cities, Parks and Fields, *&c.* which for length and fashion made and adorned at the ends, and on the sides, according to the fancy and pleasure of the maker, with Flourishes, Catoses, Scrolls, and heads of Flowers de lis, and such like; which being fastned on the Door or Gate, is by the Eye thereof hung upon an hook droven into a Post on which it turneth: from whence it is termed a **Hook** and **Hing**, or a **Hinge** for a **Hook**.

O such a Gate Hinge in Bend, the Eye or Loop reversed B. is born by *Van Brunk*.

The second is called a **Dove-Tail Hinge**, because it is broad at the ends like a **Dove** or **Pigeons Tail**. It is used for all small Doors of Wainscot, Cubbards, Boxes and Trunks; where nailing may be on both sides.

A. 3 such B. is born by *Hinge* or *Hinges*.

[ ]

The third is the **H. Hinge**, being in the form of the Roman H. this sort of Hinge is used to such kind of Doors, Cubbards, or Presses, which will not admit of breadth, but of height, to have them made fast: and that is through the narrowness of the Timber, or Stiles on the Edges of the Doors and Places where they are fixed: See another fashion of them, *numb.* 32.

To these three may be added a fourth, which is a **Composed Hinge**, both of a Door, and a Dove-tail Hinge; or of a Door, and H. Hinge: and this sort of Hinge is by Workmen termed, a **Cross Garnet Hinge**.

The several parts are these.

The **Tail**, or **long part of the Hinge**.

The **Cross**.

The **Joint**, one being a Notch.

The **Pin-hole**.

The **Pin**.

The **Nail-holes**.

XXIII. He beareth Or, two **Iron Staples**, (or two Stables Sable) and as many **Fretted Salterwise** of the second. These are things of Iron made of several forms, as **half round**, **square** and **triangular**: and are droven into wooden Work against the **Bolts of Locks**, and **Door Bolts**: to shoot into, to keep them fast and close together. This is born by the name of *Stables*.

A. a Fesse between 3 square Staples S. is born by *Holdfast*.

O. 2 Staples Fetted S. born by *Plumer*.

XXIV. He beareth Argent, an **half round Staple**, and a **triangular Staple**: or a **Staple** in form of a three square.

Farriers Instruments.

2. FROM the *Smith* take a view of what Instruments is born in Coats Armor, which is used by his Brother the **Farrier**, and they are such as these.

XXV. He beareth Sable, a **pair of Barnacles**, Or: **Laced** and **Fretted**, Gules. These are called also, **Horse Twichers**, or **Bracks**: which are used to put on Horses Noses, when they will not stand quietly to be Shooed, Blooded, or Dressed of any sort of sore, or such like occasions: for although the nature of the Horse is not to be tame, yet this Instrument made by Art, maketh him obedient. G. the like A. Lace O. is born by *Barnacle*.

Per Fesse O. and V. 2 such S. and 3 Roses A. born by *Leitte*.

XXVI. He beareth Vert, a **pair of Pincer-Barnacles**, Argent. These are termed so, to distinguish their form from the fore-going; this having handles at them like **Pincers**, to hold a Horse with ones hand by them, whereas the other is bound to his Nose, with a Lace or Cord. This is born by the name of *Tame*.

A. 3 such G. born by *Barnack*

XXVII.

XXVII. He beareth Gules, a **pair of Brackes**, or **Barnacles**, Or. This is a third sort of Barnacles, which if you take notice, differs from the first, though but very little; for this is held together at the top by a Ring inclosing the Buttons; the first having the top Buttons held together by an Iron Pin ravetted through them.

XXVIII. He beareth Azure, a **pair of Roller Barnacles**, Or: **Corded**, Argent. Some term them **Wood-Twitchers**, being only two Roller of Wood bound together with the Horse Nose between them, which for want of better serveth in place of **Iron Barnacles.**

XXIX. He beareth Gules, two **Barnacles**, Argent: in Chief another **Extended** (or laid open) Or. These are the several ways that **Barnacles, Brackes**, or **Twitchers** have been drawn by the Heralds of old: see another sort *numb.* 31.

The *Dutch* draw them with the Teeth on the out side of which I have shewed before, *numb.* 13.

A. 3 Barnacles G. born by *Barnickell.*
B. 3 Barnacles extended, in Pale O. on a Chief Er. a Demy Lion Rampant G. is born by *Genevyle.*
A. a Barnacle G. the string crossed in Base the ends Buttoned and Tasselled and Erected S. is born by *Tungfeldt* of *Franckford.*

XXX. He beareth Argent, a **File** (or a **Smiths File**) between an **Horse-lock Key**, and a **Farriers Buttrice**, Azure: the **Handles**, Or. These are severally born in Arms, as I shall shew presently.

First, the **File** is an Instrument used by *Smiths* for the cutting off, and smoothing of the Irregularities and **Hammer strokes**, made in the **Forging** out of any *Smiths* work: and for the several sorts of Work, there is different sizes of Files, big and little: even from two Inches square, with length answerable to them as small as a Wyer: and besides there are of them of divers forms and fashions; as **round Files, half round, three square, square,** and **flat Files**; which have their denominations answering their form: but from the roughness, and smoothness of their cutting, and from their use in Work they have other names: as,

The **Common**, or **Rough File**, called a **Rubber**: It is cut with large and deep Teeth, to take off the first roughness of any Forged piece of Iron Work.

The **using File**, is a long and broad File, exactly flat on both its cut, or teeth sides: but the teeth not half so rough as the common File: with this work is made more smoother and brought to a nearer perfection.

The **Jack File**, is a broad File somewhat thin in both edges, and stronger in the middle: with this **Jack Wheels** have their Teeth cut in them.

The **smooth File**, this makes work smooth and fine, and ready to the pollishing: and hath the teeth cut very ebb and fine upon it as if it were almost plain.

Thus you see Files are of several cuts, for the **Rough toothed File** cuts faster then the **Bastard toothed File**; and it, faster then the **Fine toothed File**; and it, faster then the **smooth toothed File**: one succeeding another, till the Work is so smooth as can be Filed, yet it may be made smoother with **Emerick, Tripoli**, and such things.

A. 3 Files in Fesse B. Handles O. born by *Howsker.*
S. a Fesse between 3 Files, A. Handles O. born by *Phivall.*

The **Buttrice**, is that wherewith the *Smith* pierces the Sole that is over grown, and the hoof of a Horse: to fit the Shoe to it, and to cut of the skirts of the said Sole, which over casts the Shoe, making both even.

A. 3 such in Fesse Sable, born by *Bruttris.*
O. the same between 2 Horse-shoes S. born by *Butsery.*

The **Horse-lock Key**, is for the opening of a Horse or Fetter-lock, and therefore is more, and generally by Countrey Men termed a **Fetter-lock**, or **Chain-lock Key.** It is an Iron Plate square bent at one end, having a square hole and nicks in that part of it, to answer the Springs and Wards within the **Bolt**: the other end is bent half round, with a small turn at the end, to make it look handsome.

XXXI. He beareth Or, a **pair of a Smiths Tongs**, and a **pair of a single tooth Barnacles**, Sable. Others blazon it to be **Barwise.**

These Tongs goe under diverse Denominations, some term them, **Smiths Tongs**, others **Smithy Tongs**, and **Forging Tongs**, but generally they are called **straight nosed Tongs**: to distinguish them from another pair which they commonly used, called the **crooked Nosed Tongs**, in *numb.* 129 The first used to hold in the Fire short things, or whatsoever is flat, as Plate Iron. The latter used for the Forging of small Barrs, and such Work as will be held between their Chaps: in which there is these terms, as

The **Chaps**, which is the holding part.
The **Joynt**, and **Ravet**, the place where it turns to open and shut
The **Handles**, by which the *Smith* holds them.

These are another sort of **Barnacles**, which have the Teeth on the out side, being made stretter, or loser by the running of a Ring higher or lower, on the Teeth towards the Joynt, see the others *numb.* 25. to 29. of this sort I find one born in **Bend** Gules, in a **Field**, Or. by the name of *Ketteler* in *Westphalia.*

The like is born by the Earl of *Churlandt* in *Germany*, on an Escochion of Pretence.

XXXII. He beareth Argent, a **Hand-Vice**, Azure. Born by the name of *Handby.*

There are two sorts of Hand Vices, the one called the **Broad Chapt Hand Vice**, having the same Chaps as the **Large Vice** fixed to the *Smiths* Board hath: as *numb.* 49. 128. The other is called, the **square Nosed Hand Vice**, which is this: Now the Office of both are to hold small Work in, which in the Fileing requireth often turning about. The latter is seldom used but for Filing of small **Gobukous Work**, as the heads of Pins, that round off towards the edges. The several parts of these Vices are these following.

The **Face**, the top part of it

The

The **Chaps**, the holding part, which is nicked or cut with a Bastard cut.

The **Screw-pin**, which is cut with a Worm or Thread.

The **Nut**, or **Screw-Box**, which hath also a Worm in it.

The **Spring**, which forceth the sides to open, being unscrewed.

The **Joynt and Rivet** at the bottom, on which it turns in the opening and shutting.

In this quarter I have set another form of an H hinge, of which see more *numb.* 22.

XXXIII. He beareth Gules, a **Planishing Anvil**, Argent. Others term it a **smooth faced**, or a **square Anvil**; on such an one set in a Hole in the Smith-Bench, he points and straightens his Horse shoe Nails when he is about to use them, thereby beating off all the loose Scales which cleave to the Nail.

S. 3 such A. is born by the name of *Planisher*.

Spurriers and Lorrinors.

3. FROM the Smith and Farrier, we proceed to the **Spurrier** and **Lorriner** or **Bit-maker**, whose Tools are the same, and therefore shall onely give some examples of what Works of theirs are born in Arms, and what Terms of Art they use about them.

XXXIV. He beareth Gules, a **Scotch Spur**, Or. This is an old way of making Spurs, Rowels not then being in fashion, as may be seen in many ancient Seals of men on Horse-back, where their Spurs were only armed with a sharp point like a Cocks Spur, the Buckles being solidly fixed to the Heel-piece.

XXXV. He beareth Vert, a **Spur**, Or; **Leathered**, Argent.

☞ Some term it a **Spur** with the **Rowel erected**, which is superfluous, seeing the Spur cannot in a Coat be born in a better posture, considering it is a part of Offencive Arms, having sharp points, as I gave you an Item of before; but if it be set contrary, then say a **Spur reversed**, or the Rowel downwards.

S. 3 such A. Leathers G. is born by *Spurrier*.

O on a Wing elevated S. a Spur O. is born by *Van Spor*.

In the Spur there is these nominal parts.

The **Rowel**, the **Neck**, the **Eye** or **Rivet hole**, and **Rivet**, the **Shank**, the **Button holes**, the **Button** and **Hooks**, and the **Buckles**; which are all so well known that they need no farther description, but the last named, hath several terms in it, which you may see *numb.* 37.

XXXVI. He beareth Sable, a **Buckle**, with a **Spur Neck** and **Rowel fixed** thereunto **pendant**, Argent. Born by the name of *Buckrowel*.

B. 3 such O. is born by *Ingamer*.

XXXVII. With in this Quarter, and the two next Succeeding, I do present you with nyne severall sorts of **Buckles**, which I have found, and seen born in coats of Armes: The terms of each and by whom owned, shall in their due places be manyfested.

The first is Azure a **Buckle**, or **Fermale**, Or. this form of Buckle being round, needs not to be mentioned that it is so, but if of any other form, then to add its proper term, or its use; for several Buckles are named from their several uses: Buckles are called **Fermales** or **Fermaults**, but more generally in the Plural Number **Fermaulxes**.

G. the like A. born by *Gräffwein* of *Steinrich*.

A. 3 such the Tongues reversed S. or more properly 3 Buckles reversed. This is born by *Graniz*.

The Second is termed a **Spur Buckle**, which hath more to it than any other Buckle that is born in Arms by those things called, a **Chape**, which holdeth the **Tongue** of the Buckle in its proper place: And the **Cross Barr** in the Diameter of it, to which they are fixed. When it is blazoned a **Spur Buckle**, the end of the Chape is turned up into a **Hook**. If it be blazoned a **Garter Buckle**, the Chape hath a **Button** fixt on the end of it; and such Buckles are made on the Garter of Honour, as you may see *chap.* 1. *numb.* 88. and *chap.* 2. *numb.* 59. This Buckle is also made square.

The third is a **Girth Buckle**, or of some termed a **Square Buckle**. And such is the coat of *Garside*. *viz.* B. 3 such A.

XXXVIII. The first in this Square is termed an **Halfe round Buckle**, Some blazon it, a **Semiton** (or **Semi round**) **Fermale**.

A. 3 such S. born by *Johnson* of *Chester & Alvanley*.

G. on a Chapurnet O. the like erected A. by *Ringgeberg* in the Low countreys

The Second is termed, a **Triangle Buckle**, or a **Three square Buckle**, which I drew from an ancient coat of Arms thus blazoned; Three **Fermaulxes Semi-Losenge like**, Or: In a Bloody field. born by the name of *Sempeir*.

The third is termed either a **Losenge**, or **Mascle Buckle**, or **Fermale** (or **Fermale**, as some write it)

B. the like garnished A. is born by *Wedischmill*.

S. the like A. by *Schencken*.

B. the like, flory in the corners, with the Tongue set in the side, pointing to the dexter O. is born by *Peersheim*.

A. on a Pale G. a Mascle Buckle O. born by *Bukleghe*

XXXIX. He beareth in the first place, a **Fermale** or **Buckle**, the **Tongue pendant**, Argent, in a Field Gules, by the name of *Flaklowe*. The like form of Bearing the Buckle thus, is by *Faudrell* of *Yardesley* in *Cheshire*,

Cheshire, a Family of high esteem there, *viz.* Sable three such Buckles with the Tongues pendant, Argent.

☞ Now know there is a difference between the **Tongues pendant**, and the **Tongues reversed** or turned downward.

The second is termed a **Buckle garnished** and **studded.** Now of these sorts of adorning Buckles, take notice that **Garnishing** is to have them chased or wrought over with Flowers, Branches, Leaves, and such kind of work: But **Studding** is to have them plain wrought up, and set with spots resembling Stones or Button heads.

O. 3 such G. born by *Sapye.*

O. a Fesse G. between 3 such B. born by *Bradley.*

Party per Fesse G. and A. two Cinquefoils and a Buckle counterchanged is born by the name of *Swynburne.*

The third is a **square Fermale, Buttoned** at each corner, the **Tongue Bendwise.** In this Buckle we must suppose the Tongue is slipt out of its place, for want of a **Chape**; for a Buckle of this form is looked upon to be very useless, if the supposition aforesaid be not granted. This is born by *Van Dascheim.*

XL. He beareth Gules, a **Spur Rowel of eight points,** Or.

☞ You need not name pierced, for the Spur-Rowel is ever so; yet in the Spur-Rowel you must ever name the number of its points, whither under or above five; for the number five needs not, by reason the Rowel is generally made with so many, as the next examples manifest.

Per Fesse G. and O. the like A. born by *Zornen Lappen*; and also by *Zornen van Bulach*, in *Alsatia.*

A. the like Rowel S. is born by *Steernenberg.*

A Spur Rowel of 9 points O. is the crest of *Van Wenns.*

XLI. He beareth in this quarter 3 sorts of **Rowels**; the first is a **Rowel of four points**; the like to which is born by *Van Roweller*, viz. Vert three Spur Rowels of four points (or four pointed) Argent. By the name of *Scrivenberg.*

The second is a **Spur Rowel,** which some term a **Mullet pierced.**

☞ But in my Judgment when it is Blazoned a Mullet, it ought to be plain, though it be pierced, and not **quarterly quartered** and **hatched,** as the Rowel is to be: Though many good Heralds do Blazon all **Rowels** by the name of **Mullets** of such and such points pierced; yet by reason the Rowel is ever born pierced, and the Mullet not, it were best and most proper to term them Mullets when not pierced; and Spur Rowels when pierced.

A. 3 such G. born by *Mitler.*

The third is a **Rowel of three points,** which some take to be a **Galthrope,** but such are mistaken in their Judgment, that being quite another thing; and this no other than a three pointed Rowel; though I confess I have very rarely seen such born in Coat Armour: However I take it here for the Coat of *Tripoints. Viz.* G. 3 such O.

XLII. He beareth Sable, a **Spur Rowel of six points,** Or. Born by the name of *Rowell.*

V. 3 such O. born by *Spurstowe* of *Spurstowe* in *Cheshire.*

B. a Fesse between 3 such O. born by *Van Wenns* of *Alsatia.*

B. 3 such A. born by *Kossboden* of *Franckford.*

Party per Fesse G. and Watery a like Rowel O. by *Strudell.*

A. 3 such S. born by *Grandell.*

O. one such S. born by *Waldeck* of *Bavaria.*

B. the like O. by *Knockhen* of *Brabant.*

Per Bend Sinister O. and B. such a Mullet counterchanged by *Van Wiermitz.*

XLIII. The first is termed a **Spur Rowel blemished** or **rebated.** Others Blazon it a **Mullet perforated** or **pierced** and **rebated.** A. 3 such G. is born by *Van Martberg.*

The second bearing in this quarter, is termed a **Mullet.**

☞ Now the difference between a **Mullet** and a **Spur Rowel,** I have shewed *numb.* 41. But as the Rowel exceeds in points, so doth the Mullet, which are to be numbred, if they be less pointed, or exceed the number of five points: Again, a Mullet cannot properly be a Rowel, by reason they want that finishing on the sides, which the Rowel hath.

A. a Mullet S. born by *Ashton* of *Ashton*, in *Lancashire.*

B. a Mullet O. born by *Welshe.*

A. a Mullet G. born by *Harpenne.*

B. a Mullet of 6 points A. born by *Haggard.*

A. the like G. born by *Harpdon.*

Per Fess O. and B. a Mullet of 8 points counterchanged, born by *Scotto.*

S. 3 Mullets A. born by *Pulston* of *Emrall*, a worthy Family in *Wales.*

B. 3 Mullets O. born by *Crofton* and *Ibard.*

A. 3 Mullets G. born by *Gedding* and *Knorville.*

A. 2 Bendlets between 2 such S. by *Browne* of *Nether-Legh*, in *Cheshire.*

V. a Cheveron between 3 such O. by *Acton* of *Alderley* and *Chester.*

There are 3 sorts of Mullets, one is the **Celestial Mullet,** and is that Meteor or shooting or falling matter in the upper Region. The second is of the **Sea,** which is a Shell having a kind of Life in it. And the third is a **Terrestrial Mullet,** a kind of a Stone, which hath also a kind of motion with it, especially if it be put in Vinegar.

XLIV. He beareth Gules, an **Horse Bit,** Argent. Some do call it a **Bit** or **Snaffle,** a **Bridle Bit,** or an **Half Cheek-Bit.** Mr. *Morgan* calls these **Curbs** or **Curb Bits.** It is the Hieroglyphick of a rational and well governed and temperate person, as was seen in

David, who kept his Tongue as with a Bit and Bridle while the Wicked were in sight, *Psal.* 39. 1. Again, it is the Emblem of a Curb and Stay to unrulinesse, being the only means by which Head-strong and untamed Horses are brought to Servitude and Subjection, *Psal.* 32. 9.

There are several sorts of **Bits**, as

The **Upset Mouth**, with one **Plight** within another.
The **Mustrose Snaffle.** The **Whole Port.**
The **Broken Port** The **Canon Bit.**
The **Cats foot Bit.** The **Halfe Bit.**
The **Scache Bit.** The **Halfe canon Bit.**
The **Halfe scach**, or **Halfe cheeke Bit.**
The **Mellon Bit.** The **Bastonet Bit.**
The **Campanell** or **Bell Bit.** The **Peare Bit.**

The several parts of a **Bit**, or **Snaffle**, or **Curb Bit.**

The **Mouth-peece**, or Bit, or Canon Bit.

The **Cheeks**, and the **Eyes** thereof, the Upper and Lower Eyes, that is the Holes therein.

The **Gaffe** of the **Cheek**, is that part which extendeth from the nether Eye, sustaining the leiue downwards.

The **Head** of the **Cheek**, which the *French* call **Stanghetta**, containeth the great Eye where the leiue is fastned, and a little Hole above that, for the Water Chain; And the Upper eye, whereto the Portsmouth is put and there made sure and fast.

The **Port**, is the Mouth peice made whole with a square or half round in the middle, therefore called the Port Bit.

The **Cacites.**

The **Campanell.**

The **Corb**, and **Hook**, is the Chain and Hook under the Horse Chops.

The **Bosses**, are Brass Bobs set to the Cheeks, for an Adornment to the Bit.

The **Bolsters**, and **Rabbets**, are them as beare the Bosses of the sides or Cheeks of the Bit, and Ravets them fast to the Cheeks.

The two **Water Chains**, or Water Chain, and the Neher Chain.

The **Side Bolts.**

The **Bolts** and **Rings**, for the Bridle raines: or Rolls, Rings, and Buttons.

The **Kirbles** of the Bit, or Corbe.

The **Trench.** The **Flap.**
The **Top Roll.** The **Leiue.**

XL. He beareth Azure, a **Bit** or **Snaffle in Fess**, Argent; between two **Bosses**, Or. born by the name of *Snafler.*

A. on a cheveron B. between 3 Curbs *S.* as many Bosses O. is the coat Armour of the Company of *Lorinors* or *Bit-makers*, in the City of *London.*

G. 3 Snaffles in pale A. born by *Bitts.*

Per fesse G. & B. a Bitt or Snaffle pendant O. is born by *Van Wierrandt Vogten* of *Austria.*

The *Poets* tell us that the first men which tamed wild horses with the Bit and Bridle, were the *Pelethronians*, a people in *Thessalie.*

XLVI. He beareth Azure, three **Bosses**, Or. The Bosses of Bits are only an adornment to them, being for no other use; and therefore in their round and swelling form the Workman maketh what figures and devises he pleaseth, as these with severall others of like nature will witness the truth thereof.

G. 2 Bosses imbossed pointed to the center, in fesse towards the sinister, A. is born by *Musenlo* of *Frankenford.* Some call them Shields, see *numb.* 45. But I take them rather to be Bosses turned sideways.

G. 4 such O. with 2 Barrs Interposed *S.* 2. 1 & 1. by the name of *Biffenhusen* of *Brunswick.*

O. on a pale B. a Boss chased with a Flower de luce A. born by the name of *Ellenhosen* of *Alsatia.*

Per fesse G. & O. 2 such imbossed O. by *Ascheberg.*

Founders Tools.

4. THE next Trade in Order to be Handled, is the **Founders**, or **Melters** of Mettle: Under which is comprehended the **Plumers**, **Pewterers**, **Silver Smiths**, **Brassiers**, and **Glass makers**, with such like; severall of whose working Tools are to be found born in coats of Arms, as in these examples.

XLVII. He beareth Sable, a pair of **Draughts**, or **Brasiers Ballances**, Or. This is a small thing to look upon, and by the help of it any considerable Weight may be certainly known by the equal poising of it with that small Weight running on the **Beam**, the thing to be weighed hanging at the contrary end, at the hook: The spots are the number of pounds marked on the Beam, which encrease more and more from the Rings to the end of it.

And by turning of the Beam, and holding the Ring next the Hook, the weight is doubled and trebled, to that of the holding which is now up.

XLVIII. In this quarter there is three Instruments, which severally take thus.

The first is termed an **Ingot** or **Lingate**, which is an Iron, Brass, or Copper Instrument, with an hollow place made in it, to receive and hold any sort of Metal cast into it; which being cold, is from the thing it is cast in, termed an **Ingot** or **Lingate** of Silver or Gold, *&c.*

Argent 3 such in Pale or Barwise, Or, is born by *Lingate.*

The second and the third are two sorts of **Blowpipes** or **Blast-pipes**, which the Silver and Goldsmith, as also the Brasier useth, which is to Blow the Flame of a Candle or Lamp, upon any small thing (laid on a Charcoal) which requires sodering.

XLIX. He beareth Azure, an **Hand-Vice screwed up**, Or. This is born by the name of *Littlehold.* The Hand-Vice, as I told you before, is to hold small things in

in it, which in the Filing requires often turning. See *numb.* 32. 49.

L. He beareth Sable, a **Cross Staff** in Fess, between a **Plummers shave Hook,** and a Leaden **Plummet,** proper. These are a part of the Coat belonging to the Company of *Plummers*, as you will see in *numb.* 54.

S. 3 Plummers Shave-hooks, A. Handle O. is born by *Shavock* or *Shavux*.

LI. These are another manner of ways, which of old I have seen the **shave Hook** and **Plummet** drawn.

First, the **shave Hook,** is to scrape the old scurf, either of Lead or Pewter off, that the Soder may hold the Joint more firm.

The second, being a **Plummet**, is used for the making of things level by the help of that which is called a **Plum-rule** or **Plym-rule,** a Rule to work by the level falling of a Plummet, or Bullet hung in a Thread.

A. a Cheveron G. between 3 such Plummets S. born by *Jennings*.

LII. He beareth Sable, two **Soddering Irons** in **Salter,** Argent. Some term them **Plummers** or **Glasiers Sodering Irons.** These Sodering Irons are only used about Lead Workings, other Soddering Irons there are used by other Trades, but of different forms to these, which are to be termed according to the Trade they are occupied in, as examples afterward will manifest. This foresaid Blazon is the Coat Armour of *Sodderings*.

LIII. These are the forms of **Plummers Sodering Irons,** as anciently they were made, of whom I shall say no more in this place, but shew you their form and fashion.

LIV. He beareth Sable, a **Plummers Plym-rule reversed,** Argent; in chief a **Cutting Knife,** Or. Born by the name of *Plummer*.

These are two Instruments very necessary for the Plummer, the **Plym-rule** to set the **Shafts** of his **Casting Frame** even, true and level; and also to prove the Sand cast upon, that it be of the same levelness, else the Sheet of Lead will not run true, but be thicker in one place than another: Now that all these mentioned in the five last quarters belong to Coats of Arms, take this Blazoning, *viz.*

Or, on a Cheveron Sable, two Soddering Irons in Salter, between a Cutting Knife and a Shave-hook, Argent. In chief two Plummets Azure, interposed with a Cross Staff, and in Base a Plym-rule, Sable; which is the Coat Armour of the Company of *Plummers* of the City of *London*.

The **Cutting Knife** is for the cutting of Cast Sheets of Lead into fit lengths and breadth, according to use; and to cut off the **Catches** or **Catcht Lead,** at the end of them, with the **selvages** or edges, which are over thick.

LV. He beareth Azure, an old fashioned **Limbeck,** Argent. This thing I could not tell what to name it, until an ancient Brother of that Society to whom it did belong, did assure me that it was made for a Limbeck, but ignorant Drawers of old have made it thus, and so it continues to Posterity, as many other Erroneous things do, which ought to be mended. This may rather be termed a **Latice** from its shape.

B. on a Cheveron O. 3 Roses between 3 such A. is the Coat belonging to the Society of *Pewterers*, in all the Incorporated places in *England*.

LVI. He beareth Sable, a **Furnace of Metal surrounded** with a **Flame** of Fire, with a **Ladle** therein, all proper, born by *Siron*. Some term it a **Melting Pot** or **Crucible in a Flame of Fire.** The like Bearing to this, *viz.* out of a Cloud is two hands proper, Sleeves Gules, turnings up, Or, holding of a pair of Tongs, by which a Melting Pot is taking out (or turning about) within a Flame of Fire, is the Crest or Cognizance of the Company of *Brasiers* or *Founders*.

LVII. He beareth Azure, a **Furnace** of **Brick-work,** flaming out at the top, all proper. This is termed **Nebuchadnezzars hot Fiery Furnace,** in which he caused the Three Children to be cast, for refusing to Worship his Golden Image, *Dan.* 3. 20. 21.

S. the like G. Flame proper, is born by *Castorall*.

LVIII. He beareth Argent, a **Glass Axe,** Azure, **Handle,** Or. It is used for the taking out of any Engraving, and to help there where a File cannot conveniently come to do its work. This is born by *Grasex*.

LIX. He beareth Or, a **using File,** Sable. It is to flat any piece of Plate, by rubbing it thereon.

LX. He beareth Argent, a **pair of Fire Tongs,** Sable. The use of these Tongs are to take out, or put any thing into the Fire. They ought rather to be termed the **Gold** or **Silver Smiths Fire Tongs,** or a **Plate Workers Fire Tongs.** The round head is of the nature of a Spring which makes them fly open of themselves. This is born by the name of *Lugdorf*.

LXI. He beareth Azure, a pair of **Coding Tongs,** Or. They are of some termed **Charging Tongs,** whose use is to take any small thing up, and to lay it upon a place.

LXII. He beareth Gules, a pair of **Gold-smiths Shears,** Argent. These are to cut Wyer, and other Irregularities in the Hammering of Silver or Gold Plate. 3 such A. in a Field B. is born by *Workman*.

LXIII. He beareth Sable, a **pair of Plyers,** Or. These are termed **round Plyers**; for of these there are several kinds, as round and flat pointed. This is born by the name of *Parply*.

LXIV. He beareth Azure, a **pair of Scales** or **Ballance,** Or. By the name of *Ballance*. That the

Ballance or Gold Scales are oft used in Coats of Arms, no one will deny; seeing the Bakers cannot without them make and perform that just Size put upon them; who for their Coat Bear Gules, a Chief Or, charged with two Bars Wavey Sable, out of a Cloud in Chief, a Naked Hand and Arm, holding a pair of Ballances, between three Garbs of the second.

Out of a Cloud, an Arm and Hand erected holding or poising a pair of **Scales**, all Or; was the old and ancient Crest belonging to the Bakers of the Loyal City of *Chester*.

B. 3 pair of Ballances O. is born by *Wrighby*.

If the **Scales** with all its appurtenances be of one Colour, or Metal; then to term them a pair of **Scales** or **Ballances** is sufficient; if otherwise, it hath these several parts, which term with the Colour it is of accordingly.

The **Beam.**

The **Eyes**, or holes of the Beam.

The **Axel Tree.**

The **Needle** or **Poise, and its center.**

The **Checks**, in which the Beam turns, the handle and its cleft.

The **Ring** to hold it by.

The **Play** or **Stay**, that which hangs and playeth at the Checks under the Axel-tree, and keeps them at their due distance.

The **Hooks** and **Rings**, to keep the Cords to the eye or holes at the ends of the Beams.

The **Cords** and **Tassels.**

The **Scales** or **Brass Dishes.**

LXV. He beareth Gules, two **Crucibles**, and a **Graver**, the **point erected** Argent, **Haft**, Or. By the name of *Potgrave*. **Crucibles** are a kind of Earthen Pots, made of a Whitish Clay or Soil that will abide Fire and much heat; in them Gold-smiths melt their Silver and Gold; and Brasiers their Metals.

G. 3 Crucibles A. born by the name of *Firepot*.

S. 3 Gravers A, Handles or Hafts O. born by *Graver*.

LXVI. He beareth Argent, an **half round Graver**, Azure, the **Haft**, Or; and a pair of **Holding Tongs**, Sable; both **Barwise**, the first with its **point** to the **sinister** side. There are two principal sorts of Gravers, besides the larger sort, called **Scalpers.**

The one is the **long Graver**, which is streight and long, used for the Graving of any flat thing, as Plate.

The other is the **short Graver**, which turneth up somewhat at the end, whose use is to Engrave Letters and Escochions in Seals, of Plate or other Metal.

The **Scalper**, is a kind of **Graver** with a flat point; its use is to take away, and clear the bottoms of broad Letters or Escochions sunk into the Metal, which the sharp pointed Graver cannot do. Now of them there are these sorts, the **flat pointed** Scalper; the **half round** Scalper, and the **round** Scalper.

All Gravers and Scalpers have round Knobs at the end of the Haft, which the Artist calls the **Pummell** of the **Haft** or **Handle.**

The **Holding Tongs** are generally used to hold any piece of Plate, or other Metal, while the Workman beateth it out on the **Anvil**, when it is hot.

A. the like Tongs in Bend G. is born by *Harschkircher* of *Bavaria*. The same in Bend Sinister, is born by *Zangberger*, in the same Province.

LXVII. He beareth Sable, a **Wooden Hand-Vice, closed**, with the **Chaps** to the Sinister side, Or, **Screw** Argent. And a **Borax Box**, the Pipe to the **sinister**, of the second. For the use of the Hand-Vice, see *numb.* 32. 39. together with the several forms and fashions of them; of which I shall say no more.

The **Borax Box**; of some termed a **Borace Box**; but more vulgarly a **Burras Box**, is a Brass or Copper Box with a Pipe in the side, in which bruised Borax is put, to scratch it by little and little out of the Knobbed Pipe, on the place intended to be Soddered.

S. such a Box A. is born by *Borax* or *Borraux*.

G. a Fesse between 3 Borace Boxes O. born by *Boswel*.

S. 3 such Hand Screws or Vices O. is born by *Screw*.

LXVIII. He beareth Vert, a **Stone Burnisher** Azure, **Haft** or **Handle**, Or; and a **Gold-smiths Sparrow Hawk**, Argent. The first is to polish and make bright any piece of Silver or Gold. The latter is of some called a **Beak Iron**, others a **Sparrow Hawk**, having a Beak on each side, and a kind of Tang at the bottom of it to be fixed upon a Block or Bench that hath a Hole in it. Mr. *Morgan* calls these **Anvils**, but rather termed the Gold-smith or Brasiers Anvile.

A. 3 such Burnishers erected S. Handles G. is born by *Burnish*. Some term them **Aggat Burnishers**, which are generally the Aggate Stone, and sometime a Polished Steel, as in the next.

LXIX. He beareth Gules, a **Steel Burnisher**, Azure; **Handle**, Or; and a **Beakett** or **Anvile** with a **square face**, and **double Triangular Billed**, Argent. Of the latter of these two Bearings, *viz.* the Beaket, or small double Beak Iron or Anvil, I found born by a *German* or *Dutch* Family in the foresaid colours, named *Ichgan*.

A. 2 such Burnishers erected S. Hafts O. and a Rose G. by the name of *Trasaber*.

LXX. He beareth Sable, a **Beak Iron** with a flat bottom, Argent; set upon an **Octagon** (or eight cornered) **Trencher**, or Board, Or. born by *Beak*.

LXXI. He beareth Azure, a **Spoon Anvil**, Argent. This is a kinde of hollow, or halfe round Anvil in the face; on which Mettle men work ony thing half round and hollow; both Concave and Convex, as Ladles & Spoons with such like. 3 such is born by *Spoonall*.

LXXII. He beareth Gules, a **Swage**, Argent. born by the name of *Swaggeley*. In the face of this kinde of Anvil are smal halfe round nicks, which are termed **Swages**,

ges, and they are of severall widnesses, according as the workman will have the Ring to be.

B. 2 Trefoiles O. & a Swage A. born by *Tercent.*

LXXIII. He beareth Sable, a **Bowl Anvil,** Argent; between a **Pile** of **Weights.** and the **Case** of them Or. this is born by the name of *Aurifaber.* This is termed a Goldsmiths Pile, being *Troy weights,* and gradually set one within the other, as *Merchants* smal weights are set one upon another Pyramid wise.

Glasiers Tools.

4 ALTHOUGH Glass be not a Natural mineral, yet we may take it for an Artificial mettle, and therefore put the Instruments of the **Glasmakers,** and the Tools of the Glass workers, *viz:* the **Glasiers,** into the same *Classis* of Mettle founders.

LXXIV. He bearete Argent, a **Glasiers Nipper,** or **Grater** in Bend, between a **Naile,** and a **Sodering Iron,** Sable. born by the name of *Van Gratex.* The Nipper is by Mr: *Vpton* termed a **Sheering Tool,** of which I finde several coats of Arms that have them.

A. 2 Nippers in Salter, betw: 4 Nails S. on a Chief a demy Lion of *England,* The Crest, on a Wreath of the colours; 2 Sodering Irons in Salter, S. Was the ancient coat & crest of the worshipfull Company of Glasiers in the Citty of *Chester* used Anno 1579.

A. 2 Nippers in Salter S. born by the name of *Taunt.*

A. the same S. betw: 4 Pears G. by *Kelleway* of *Hamsler.* The same coat with a Bordure engtailed S. is born by the same name of *Kelleway.*

LXXV. He beareth Argent, a **Glasiers Cutter,** or **Cutting Tool** Reversed: between his **Fire Iron,** and his **Anciant Nipper,** Sable. Before the use of the *Diamond* for cuting of Glass was found out, these were the Instruments, or Tools which the Glasiers used for that purpose: for with them, with the help of a little fire and water, Glass was cut into what form the Glasier pleased. This was the ancient coat Armour of the *Glasiers.*

LXXVI. He beareth Sable, out of the Chief hung by a **Wyer** a **Lamp** of one light, **Flamant,** Argent. this is born by the name of *Lampe,* alias *Lamperin.* This is called a **Tyn,** or **Tyn-mans,** or an **Oyl-mans Lamp** *&c.* according to the trades which make use of it. By the help of this Lamp the Goldsmith and other Mettle workers, Sodder small things together.

Lamps are also born with **Double Lights,** the one contrary to the other. As in the coat of *Dilucks,* which is an *Italian* family, who beareth Gules, a Lamp Or: double flamant.

LXXVII. He beareth Vert, a **Forging hammer head,** a **Spoon hammer Head,** and a **Planishing hammer Head,** in Pale Argent. These are three sorts of Hammers used by Goldsmiths, and other mettle workers, as Pewterers, Copper Smiths, and such like.

The **Forging hammer** hath a round Flat face, and a Round ball Pen. The **Spoon hammer** hath round Buttons at both ends. And the **Planishing hammer** is Square in the face, and long in the Body, with a smaler Square in the Pen, or contrary end. Some of which with their Handles in them I have found and seen born in coats of Arms.

S. a Spoon hammer A. handle O. betw: 2 Lillyes. is born by the name of *Stethamer,* a familey in *Italey.*

A. 3 Planishing hammers S. born by *Hammerton.*

G. one such O. is born by *Don Malleato* of *Spain.*

Embrautherers Tools.

6. THese few belong to the Trade of an **Imbrautherer,** beside which I know not, nor can learn of more of any concernment.

LXXVIII. He beareth Argent, an **Imbrautherers Tent,** with a piece of Cloth **strained** therein, and **Imbrauthered** with a Rose all proper. By the name of *Imbrautherer.* In the Working Tent, or Straining Frame, there are these parts.

The **Frame** or **straining Tent.**

The **Mortised pieces,** which have square holes cut through at each end.

The **Running pieces,** which go through the Mortises, to make the Frame wider or closer together.

The **Holes and Pins,** they hold it at its distance.

The - - - - - - - - or List about the Imbrauthered work.

The **Pack-thread,** by which it is strained.

Some Tents have all the four pieces of the Frame with a Mortise at one end and the other plain, by which means the straining part may be so drawn together, that it may be made fit for any piece of Imbrauthery, big or little, long or square.

LXXIX. He beareth Gules, a **Quill of Silver.** Others term it a **Quill** Or, **filled** with **Silver Thread.** By the name of *Silverquile.*

Gules two Imbrautherers Broaches in Salter, between 2 such Quills of Gold Thread, Or; on a Chief Argent a Lion passant Gules, is the Coat of Arms now born by the Company of *Imbrautherers,* of the City of *Chester.*

LXXX. He beareth Sable, a **Quill emptied** of its Thread, Or. This I take to be the ancient way of drawing the **empty Quill,** and so I find it born in the Coat Armour belonging of old to the Company of *Imbrautherers* of *Chester, viz.* Paly of six Ermin and Azure, on a Fess Gules, two Embrautherers Broaches in Salter, and two such Quils, Or; between three Lions Passant Gardant, or 3 Lions of *England.*

A. 3 such G. is born by *Van Haren* of *Thuringrans.*

In

In the sinister side of this square, is placed a **Ball of Silver** or **Gold Thread**, which some term a **Ball Fusil wise**, because it is rather long than round; and thus the Imbrautherers bear it in their Coat at *London*.

LXXXI. He beareth Azure, an **Embrautherers Broach** in Bend Or, between an **Hank of Gold Thread**, and a **Needle** with a **Silver Thread** in it. Some Blazon it between a Hank of Thread Or, and a Needle with a Thread in it Argent. This is born by the name of *Brauther.r* corruptly, but rather *Imbrautherer*.

The **Broach** is a piece of Turned Wood of what sort the Master pleaseth, but the solidest is the best, having a nick or notch at one end, and 3 square at the other, which is to keep it from turning about; on this they use to roll or wind their Gold Thread or Silk Twist which they Imbrauther withal. see *numb.* 80.

The **Hank** of **Silver**, and **Gold**, and Silk **Twist**, are generally made up close after this manner; but Thread or Yarn more open at the ends, as in *chap.* 6. *numb.* 20. Some term this a **Roll** or **Knot** of Gold Thread.

Instruments of Torture, or Goalers and Marshals Tools.

7. IF a Vertuous mind do not induce to a good Occupation, whereby the Life and Being of a Man is supported; but that with the Idle and Slothful he will sit down and Sleep; or with the Vagabond spend his Time in Wandering about, choosing rather to do any thing than Labour: For such Fools *Solomon* hath provided places of Reward, and Tokens of Triumph, that these persons may be distinguished from those of the Industrious sort of people.

LXXXII. He beareth Azure, a **Pillory**, Or. This is the reward of Cheaters, Coseners, Forgers of Deeds, and Mens Hand Writing, Treasonable and Seditious Words, with several misdemeanours not punishable by Death. And that is by having a Mulct or Fine set upon the Offender, and he to stand on the Pillory for so many Market days, with Papers of his Offence set on his Back, there to be mocked, derided, and made a common Spectacle, that all Beholders may see, and beware of the like Offences, and do no such Wickedness. Grand Rogues have sometimes their Ears Nailed to the Pillory, where they are forced to leave them, being cut off.

LXXXIII. He beareth Gules, a **Wooden Horse**, Argent; the **Mane** and **Tail**, Sable. The Riding of this Horse, whose Back is only two Boards set together like the Ridge of a House, is a kind of Punishment used among Soldiers, and Men under Martial Laws; the sharpness of which ridge doth so gall and cut the Riders Thighs and Breech, that he shall be scarce able to go or stand for a certain time after; especially if his Offence require his Punishment to have Spurs at his heels, (that is a Musket or two tied at each Legg) and his Hands bound behind him.

Besides this there are several other Punishments used by Military Officers for the Chastising of Offending Soldiers, as Tying Neck and Heels, running of the Gauntlet, the half Strappado, the whole Strappado, and Hanging or Shooting.

The least of which is Commitment either to the Guard, or Imprisonment with the Marshal, which is no bodily hurt, but a confinement from Publick Imploy, and a restraint of Liberty, which after a time may be purchased by a Pecuniary Mulct.

The **Tying Neck and Heels**, is a Punishment of decrepiting and benumming the Body, by drawing it all together, as it were into a round Ball, by Ropes, or Match-ropes; that is the Heel to the Breech, and the Head between the Knees, and the Arms tyed backwards; and thus to lye tumbling for a certain time, according to the hainousness of the Soldiers Offence.

The **Running of the Gauntlet**, is to be stript down to the Waist, and so to run through a Company or Regiment of Soldiers, each giving him a Blow with a Whisk or Swich Rod.

The **Half Strappado**, is to have the Mans hands tyed cross behind his Back, and so by them to be drawn up to a considerable height, and so let down again; this in the least of it, cannot but pull either the Shoulders or Elbows or both out of Joynt.

The **Whole Strappado**, is when the person is drawn up to his height, and then suddenly to let him fall half way with a jerk, which not only breaketh his Arms to pieces, but also shaketh all his Joynts out of Joint; which Punishment is better to be Hanged, than for a Man to undergo.

A like **Torture** to this is for an Offender to sit stride-legged over a great Gun (as a Culverin or Demy-Cannon) and so to have it Fired, the very shake whereof will shake a Mans Joynts all out of their places, and make him that he shall be fit for no manner of Service for the time to come.

The Punishment of Death is two ways, either by **Hanging** by the Neck till the Body be Dead, which is looked upon to be an Ignominious or Dogs Death; or to be **Shot to Death** by either Musket or Pistol, which is a Soldiers, and more Honourable leaving the World.

LXXXIV. He beareth Gules, a **Torturing Wheel** in Chief Or, and a **Torturing Plank**, or **Wrack**, or a **rouling Torturing Wheel**, fixed on a **long Plank with Feet**, Argent. These are two kinds of Instruments made to Torture Malefactors and Transgressors upon; the first being a **Wheel**, called a **Katherine Wheel**, because say some, St. *Katherine* was Racked

Racked and torn in pieces, and all her Bones broken to shivers upon such a kind of Wheel; and thus the Tyrants of old used to Martyr the Saints and Christians, by tying them on a Wheel with their Legs and Arms wide open, and then the Tormentor by degrees, with a great Maul or Club dashes their Bones to pieces.

The other is a **Wracking Plank**, with a **Rowling Wheel** of so many Spokes fixed to a thick Rowler to turn it about. This Figure I drew from the manner of one Tortured upon it; which was thus, he was laid all along the Plank, his Arms tyed behind him, and a Man with a Fulling Dish pouring Liquor into his Belly till it be swelled like a Tun; at the other end of the Plank is fix'd a Wheel or Winder to the Rowler; at the other end of the Rowler is an Hook to which a Rope was fastned and to the Mans Feet, and a Man (as it were) turning the Wheel about. Now what kind of Punishment to the Body, or by what People or Nation used, I can give no farther a description.

LXXXV. He beareth Gules, an **Heading Axe, fixed** on a **Block**, proper. This in former times, and yet is, the way of taking off the Lives of great and honourable persons, as have been any way accessary to Plots, Rebellions, Treasons, and such grand Offences against their Prince or Sovereign; and that is by a sudden and quick severing of the Head from the Shoulders; a Death easie, and of some counted honourable, but never so esteemed by Royalists, till made so, by the Death of that Worthy and Pious Prince, King *Charles* of Blessed and Happy Memory, who by Rebels and Traytors, was made his Peoples Martyr, by suffering willingly his Head to be cut from his Body, rather than see his People brought into Egyptian and Tyrannical Slavery and Bondage.

LXXXVI. He beareth Sable, a **Shackle-Bolt**, Argent. This is born by the name of *Shackle*. These are called of some **Prison shackles, or Prisoners Bolts**; they are Irons fastned about the Legs of Prisoners that are cast into Prison for Theft, Robbery, Petty Larceny, Burglary, Murther, and such like, thereby to keep them the more safe and secure.

A. the like S. born by *Nothalk* of *Cheshire*.

S. three such born by *Anderton*.

LXXXVII. He beareth Sable, a **double shake-bolt**, or **shackle-bolt**, Argent. Two single Shackle-Bolts, and one double one, is born by *Anderton* of *Lostock* in *Lancashire*. The **Bolt** is the streight Bar of Iron, with a Nut or round head at one end, and a hole at the other.

The **shacke**, or **shackle**, is the round Iron with two eyes or holes, through which the Bolt runs; and is made fast by an **Iron Feather** (as they call it) put through the hole of the Bolt, bent both ways that it cannot fall out.

LXXXVIII. He beareth Argent, a **pair of Shackles chained** in Pale Sable, and a **Whip** of **three Lashes**, Gules. By the name of *Whipstock*.

There is a manifest difference between these two sorts of **Shackles**, the first having a **Bolt** through them these without, being made fast about the Legs with an Iron Pin revitted in the holes, which keeps them close and firm together, having a Chain at them of such a length, as will only permit the person shackled, liberty to walk. These are also termed **Fetters** being all made fast together, when as of right they should be Blazoned **Shackles Fettered**, or **Shackles and Fetters**.

S. 3 such A. is born by *Anderton* of *Clayton*.

The **Whip** is an Instrument for the Backs of Fools, to Whip and Chastise them for their Folly, as *Solomon* tells us: It is a Punishment inflicted upon all Vagabonds, Wandering Beggars, and Idle Rascals, to bring them if possible to some Labour: Also by our Law, all Petty Theft, Pilfering and Purloyning, is punished by **Whipping** such persons at the Whipping Stock, or through the Market place by the Common Goaler, of Master of the House of Correction.

The *Jews* at their **Whips** for Punishment, had three Lashes or Thongs of Leather, with which by their Law, they were apt to give the Offender above 13 Blows, which made so many times three Stripes, *viz.* 39. which amounted to that saying of St. *Paul*, *Five times received I Forty Stripes save one*, which was just Thirteen Blows with the Whip, and one less than the Law allowed, shewing thereby that they would not be so cruel as to correct according to the severity of the Law; yet that they would shew such an Offender no favour, they Whipped him within a Blow to the full extent of it. *Deut.* 25. 3. *2 Cor.* 11. 24.

The Abby of *Crowland*, before its dissolution, had for its Coat of Arms. Quarterly G. 3 Knives A. Hafts O. And B. 3 Whips with many Strings O.

A demy Frier, cloathed A. holding such a Whip in his right hand O. the Lashes double knotted S. is the crest of the Lord *Starton*.

LXXXIX. He beareth Azure, on an **Hill or Mount** issuing out of Base, Vert, a **Whipping Post**, (or **Whipping Stock**,) On the **Hand Cuffs**, or **Hand Irons**, Argent. To this Post is Offenders and Petty Rogues and Vagabonds made fast while they are Whipt, by making fast their Hands in the Irons that are fixed to the Post.

XC. He beareth Argent, a **Chain in pale**, from **Chief** to **Base**, between a **Burning Iron**, and a **Whisk** or **Scuch Rod**, Sable. This Coat consists of three parts, as

First, the **Burning Iron**, which is an Instrument by which Thieves and Robbers, that are Condemned by Law to dye, yet having the Benefit of the Clergy, escapeth with Life, but is **marked** in the hand with an **hot Iron**, or on his shoulder, for a Rogue. See an other *chap.* 16. *numb.* 129.

A. 3 such with Annulets or Rings at the Handles or Bottoms, all meeting in point G. is born by *Haller*, the general Master-Master of *Brunswick* in *Germany*.

The

The **Chain** is an Emblem of Servitude; however much born in Coats, Crests, and with Supporters: Of the two latter I shall take no notice in this place.

S. a Chain of 3 Links in Pale A. born by *Newenhof*.

G. on a Fesse A. a Chain of 3 Links in Bend S. by *Schopper*.

B. on a pale A. an Anchor, and in Base Watery B. between 2 Chains of 5 Links a piece of the second. Born by the Earl of *Hoyos zur stixen-stein*, in *Germany*.

The **Whisk Rod** is used to correct Rebellious Youths, and such as run the Gauntlet, as I have beforesaid.

3 such V. in a Field A. is born by *Scucher*.

An Ape sciant A. with his Collar about his middle G. holding in his right hand a Switch or Whisk Rod S. and in his other an Apple, proper, is the crest of *Kotzelberg*.

XCI. He beareth Vert, a **pair of Stocks**, Or; in chief, a **Ferrular**. The first is a Prison or place of security, to keep safe all such as the Constable finds to be Night Walkers, common Drunkards and Swearers, that have no Money, and such like; also petty Thieves, Strippers of Hedges, Robbers of Hen-roosts, and light Fingered persons, who can let none of their Masters or Mistresses Goods or Cloaths lye before them; also Wandring Rogues, Gipsies, and such as love Begging better than Labour; but which of all these *Job* was, when he complained that his Feet were made fast in the Stocks, *Job* 13. 27. I leave to others to judge; however it may safely be said, that he was then Gods Prisoner, and that his hand did press him so sore, that he could stir neither Hand or Foot.

Like to this, there is another like place of Punishment in our House of Correction in *Chester*, (the like to it I have not heard in any other place) it is called the **Little Ease**, a place cut into a Rock, with a Grate Door before it; into this place are put Renegadoes, Apprentices, *&c.* that disobey their Parents and Masters, Robbers of Orchards, and such like Rebellious Youths; in which they can neither Stand, Sit, Kneel, nor lie down, but be all in a ruck, or knit together, so and in such a Lamentable Condition, that half an hour will tame the Stoutest and Stubbornest Stomach, and make him have a desire to be freed from the place.

The **Ferrular** is an Instrument used by School-Masters to correct their Scholars for petty Faults, by giving them slaps on the Palm of the Hand. A Hand holding a Ferrular O. is the crest of *Vanvan*.

G. 3 such O. is born by *Ferrular*.

XCII. He beareth Azure, on a **Hill issuant**, Vert; a **Gibbet**, Or; and a **School-Masters Rod**, Argent. Some term it a **Gibbet** with the **Cross** part **turned** to the **sinister** side.

Here the **Gibbet** is set as an Instrument of Punishment, being that on which Malefactors for Murther, Rebellion and Treason are Hanged in Chains, till their Bodies are consumed to nothing, and therefore may be thought to be a Badge of Infamy and disgrace; but see *chap.* 18. *numb.* 48. and this kind of Gibbet having a **Lamp** hanging at it (being a **Beacon**, is a thing more honourable, and of greater esteem, and usually born for either Coats or Crests.

A. on 3 Mole-hills V. 3 Gibbets S. born by *Gibbet* or *Gibbott*.

The **School-Masters Rod**, or a **Birch Rod**, is for the punishing of Scholars for great faults in the School, as the Gibbet for great enormities in the State.

A. 3 such Rods G. born by *Rod*.

From the middle of a Bugle horn G. such a Rod A. is the Crest of *Van Falckenhein*, of *Silitia*.

XCIII. He beareth Vert, on a **Hill issuing** out of Base, a **Gallos** or **Gallows**, Or; with a **Ladder mounted** thereunto **Bendwise sinister**, Argent. But I have heard of a Merry Blazoning of this devise, which is thus, on a Hill two **Trees mountant**, with a **cross Bar couchant**, a **Ladder ascendant**, with a **Rope pendant**, and a **Thief** at the end on't: An ignominious Bearing for such a person as so claims a Right to it. Yet though it be so taken to him, in *chap.* 18. *numb.* 40, 41, 42. having a Battering Ram hung to it, it is and may be reputed a very honourable and worthy Bearing, and is used in Coat Armour.

B. a Ladder in Bend O. is born by *Kratzen van Langenpruck*.

G. 3 Ladders A. born by *Kadiver ap Dinwall*, a Noble person in *Wales*.

XCIV. He beareth Gules, an **Heading Block fixed between** two **Supporters**, with an **Axe** placed therein, on the Sinister side a **Maule**, all proper. This was the *Jews* and *Romans* way of Beheading Offenders, as some write, though others say they used to cut off the Heads of such with a sharp two handed Sword: however, this way of Decollation was by laying the Neck of the Malefactor on the Block, and then setting the Axe upon it, which lay in a Rigget in the two side Posts or Supporters; the Executioner with the Violence of a Blow on the head of the Axe with his heavy Maul, forced it through the Mans Neck into the Block.

I have seen the draught of the like **heading Instrument**, where the Weighty Axe (made heavy for that purpose) was raised up, and fell down in such a like **rigetted Frame**, which being suddenly let to fall, the weight of it was sufficient to cut off a Mans Head at one Blow.

XCV. He beareth Argent, a **Rock** Gules, with a **Chain fixed** to the top thereof, Sable. This is born by the name of *Holdby*. It is the custom of Goalers, that when they meet with sturdy and unruly Prisoners, to Lock and Chain them to some strong Post, or unsupportable Block, or Timber Log, or Massy Stone prepared for that purpose, that such evil doers shall not exceed their limited bounds.

It is Feigned by the Poets, that *Andromeda* was thus fixed to a Rock, when she was to be devoured by the Sea Monster, but *Perseus* by the help of his Flying Horse (called *Pegasus*) slew the Monster, and so preserved the Lady, who he Married.

TO

The Worshipful *AUSTIN LEGH*,

Of *West Hall*, in *High-Legh*, in the County of *Chester*, Esquire.

SIR,

I May boldly affirm, nothing makes a compleat Gentleman more than Reading, which I may term the Theorick; and Discourse, which is the Practick part, in which I make no question but you are well grounded, being so forward in the promoting of this Work, which is so abundantly stored with things of all Natures, Arts and Sciences. This part whereof is a Token of Thankfulness, is Dedicated to your Generous Consideration, by him who is

Your Servant to Command

Randle Holme.

CHAP. VII.

COURTEOUS Reader, I have added a Plate more to this Chapter, because I was wanting therein in the two former, to which I desire these following may be added.

Butchers Instruments.

XCVI. In this quarter is set down the shape of four **Butchers Instruments** all lying in Pale; I shall begin with the highermost, and so proceed to the lowest.

The first is termed a **Staff**; it is only a Stick about an Inch in Diameter with two sharp ends cut with shoulderings, and serveth to keep open a Beasts Belly, and stretch out its Legs when it is slain, till it be cold, and ready to be cut down, or cut into Quarters.

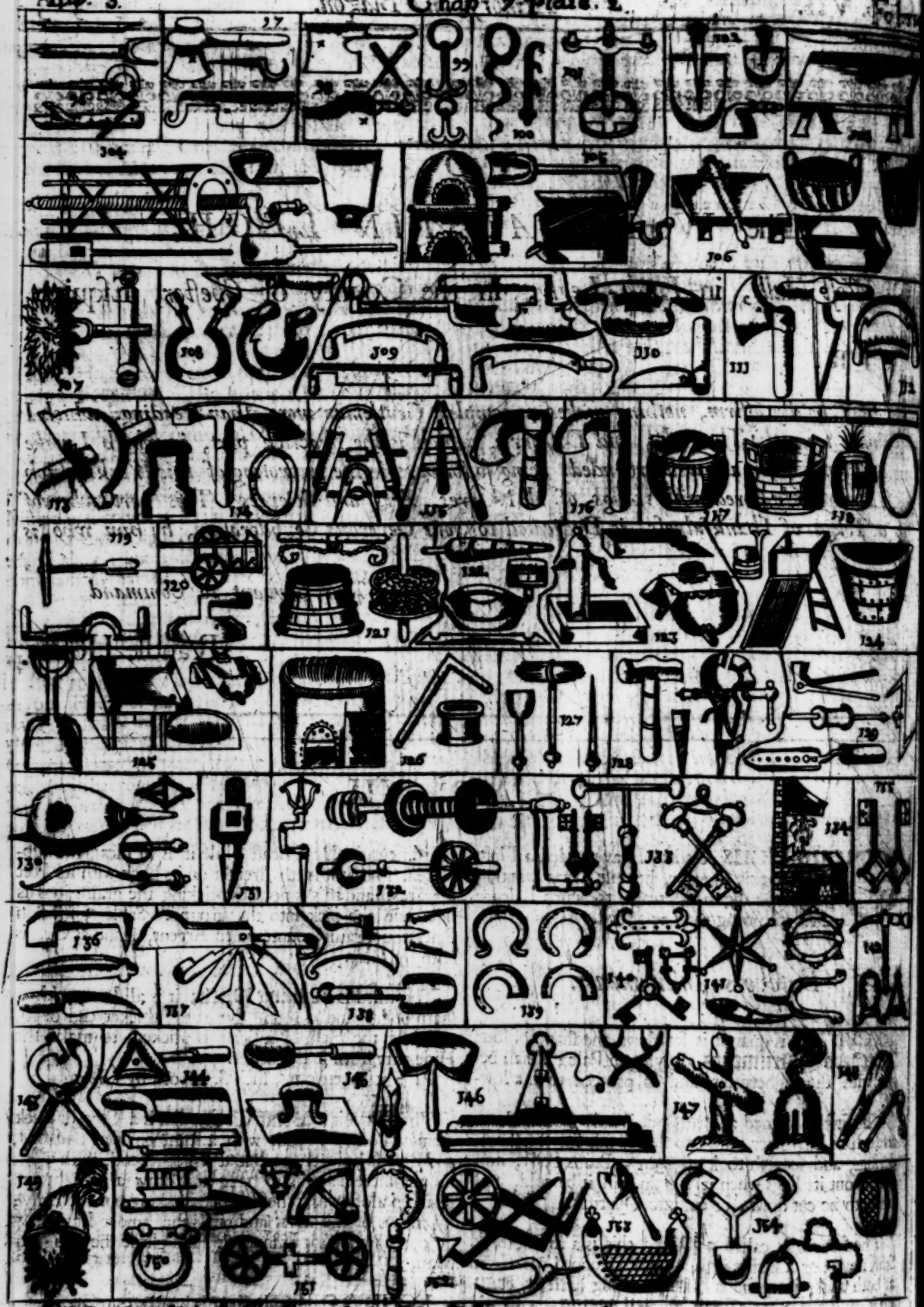
The second is called a **Pick**; this is a strong thick Staff neat 3 or 4 Inches in Diameter, Hooped with Iron at both ends; into one is fastned a long **Pill or Iron pick**, and the other a small **Pickell grains**; with this Instrument the Dead Beast while it is in cleaning is supported, so that it lyeth streight on its Back with its Feet upwards; and this is done by sticking the grains into its side, and the pick into the ground. Sable 3 such in Pale, the Grains counterpoled Argent, Handles Or, is born by *Pick*.

The third is a **raising Pick**; it is all Iron, with a sharp point, and a round Eye at the thicker end of it; with this the Flesh of a Beast is pricked, to make the Hide part from it the better.

A. a Fesse between 3 such S. is born by *Leigh*.

The fourth is a **Beast Tree**, that is a Tree, or thick Arm or Post of Wood, with a **stag** on it at one end, and diverse holes through it at the other end, with a **pill** to put therein: It is to hang and draw a Slaughtered Beast up aloft, while the Butcher is taking out the Belly; by means of the holes and pins the hinder Legs may be opened to what distance it shall please the Slaughter Man.

XCVII. A **Shamble-hook** between an Axe and a Cleaver,



P.M Augustini Legh de west Hall in Legh Superiore Armiger.

Cleaver, Argent, the **Handle,** O. in a red Field, is born by the name of *Slayer*.

The **Hook** is a thing known by every one seeing they are so common in all Shambles (and other private places) to hang their Meat upon.

The **Axe,** which is the right form of the Butchers **Knocker Down,** is thus made; it is to strike down great Beasts when the Butcher is to Blood them and tickle them out of their Lives, and with the sharp end Bones and Joints are to be cut in pieces.

G. 3 Axes A. Handles G. is born by *Axall*, or *Axeson*.

☞ The Axe is generally born **upright,** and the face of the Axe to the dexter side; if otherwise, then to be mentioned how **transposed.**

The **Cleaver** is in a manner for the same use as the **Axe**; only with this difference, it is used to cut the small Bones, and the Axe for the cutting of the great and large Bones, being it hath weight and substance in it, whereas the other is light and slender, and the **Handle** Iron, of one and the same piece with the cleaving part.

G. 3 such in Pale Barwise A. is born by *Cleavall*.

XCVIII. He beareth Azure, two **Skewers** or **Flesh picks** in Salter **points reversed,** between two *Dutch* **Cleavers** or **Chopping Knives,** Argent. These I call so, because they are generally thus drawn by the *Dutch* and *German* Heralds; yet for distinction sake, if the higher be termed an **Hatchet** like **Cleaver,** or a **Chopping Knife** of an Hatchet shape, it were not much wide of the mark.

Such an **Hatchet** like **Cleaver,** or **Wood Axe,** having a longer **Helve** or **Hawme,** I judge is termed by them a **Schave,** that is a Broad Axe, or **Chip Axe.** The *Germans* call it a **Schaab,** or an **Hovell**; and a little Axe with a short Handle or Hawme, a **Flein Hovle:** And so it may be termed, *Viz.* Per Fesse G. and A. 2 German Chip-Axes in Salter A. and a Lim of a Tree Raguled and Trunked in Fesse G. is born by the name of *Van Axt*.

B. 3 such A. Hawmes O. is born by *Axtell*.

And the other an **Hulch** or **round Backed Cleaver;** Those that have the Backs bending inwards, are termed **down** (swaid, or broken) **Backt Cleavers.** And such an one B. handle G. in a Field A. is born by the name of *Altnach*.

☞ All Instruments of this nature are generally born erected, and the edge to the dexter side.

XCIX. Here are two sorts of **Drag Hooks,** the one for high places, the other for low Rooms, the one having a long **shank** in a **Twirle,** and the other a short, with a **double Hook** at the bottom; upon these are hung two Veals or Muttons at a time in their **Cambrills:** But in Heraldry the one is as the other, no difference in either; for I find that *Shamble* beareth A. 2 such Hooks S. and a Cleaver B.

C. Is a **Butchers Rope,** with a **Noose** at one end, and the other **pendant;** with this great Beasts are held or tyed to a Post, while they are Knocked on the Head, or stricken down to be Blooded. 2 such O. in a Field B. is born by *Noose*.

G. 3 Ropes in Nooses, their ends pendant O. by *Roper*.

The second thing in this quarter, is a **Trebble Hook** fixed all in order upon one **Stem** or **Bar;** some call it a **Krii hook,** but for what use it is, I understand not yet, except to hang Spits on in Kitchins; or Arms, as Muskets and Pikes on. as in Noblemens and great Persons Halls, and then the hooking part is to be **erected;** however three such as these in Fess S. in a Field O. is the Town Arms of *Kreilsheim* in *Germany*.

CI. He beareth Sable, a **Screw Candlestick,** with **double sockets,** Argent. Born by the name of *Night*. This is a kind of Iron Candlestick set on a round hoop, stand, or foot, the main Stem being an Iron Rod with a screw on the middle, on which is screwed a Female screw with two Candle sockets, each side one of it; so that by the help of the Screws the sockets are raised or lowered according to pleasure; see another kind in *chap.* 19. *Plate* 2.

Bakers Instruments.

9. THese few Working Tools belonging to the Bakers Craft, being omitted in the former Chapter, I desire the Courteous Reader to accept of them in this place, as if they were there *chap.* 6. *numb.* 53. altogether.

CII. In this quarter is two Instruments used by the **Bakers,** the one is termed an **Iron Cake Peel,** or a **Cake** or **Bisket Peel;** they are usually made of Iron Plate with a Socket fixed to it, for a Staff to be put in, to thrust it into the Oven: Of these they generally have two sorts, the one long, and the other short, as the two Figures in this square doth manifest: Some term them **Pioneers Spades sans Handles;** and so the *French* Heralds term them. *Viz.* G. three such O. born by *Leonar Elfrid*, Count de *Meggau*, Baron of *Creuzen*, Knight of the Golden Fleece, in the time of *Philip* the fourth, King in *France*.

In the dexter Base, is a **Dough scrave,** or a **Grater:** It is a kind of **Paddle** with a **Bended handle,** set into a **Wooden Haft,** with this they scrape and cleanse the sides and bottom of the **Kneading Trough** from the Dough that sticks to it.

A. 3 such B. handles O. is born by *Graterx*.

CIII. He beareth Sable, a **Molding Board,** or **Moulding Table,** Argent; in chief a **Dough Knife,** proper. Born by the name of *Kneter*. The one of these is a large **Tressel** or **Plank** set upon strong feet, upon which Loaves of Bread are made or **molded** up; The other is a **long Bladed Knife,** with a very **long**

Haft, half a Yard or three quarters long, with which Dough is cut into ſmaller pieces from the large Lump.

CIV. He beareth in this Quarter five Bakers Inſtruments, the firſt and largeſt is the **Ark Wheel**, which is a **long Beam** with **Hoops**, **Croſs pieces** and **Ribs**, ſet at a diſtance from it, and covered with a kind of Canvas; by the help of this Engine more Meal will be taken from its Bran in one hour, than a perſon can **ſearce** or **ſift** in a whole day. Such an Ark Wheel in Feſs between 3 round Twiggen (or Bakers) Baskets O. in a Field S. is born by *Boulter*.

The next to it in the chief point, is the **Cuſtard Diſh** or **Cuſtard Filler**; by the help of this Cuſtard **Batter** is put into the Caſes, as they are in the Oven, being no other than a Wooden Diſh made faſt upon the end of a Staff. In ſhape this may ſerve for the Chyrurgions Silver Uvula Spoon, as in *chap.* 11. *numb.* 26.
S. 3 ſuch O. born by *Filler*.

That in the ſiniſter chief, is termed a **Braide**, or **Braed**, which is a broad long Board, with a hole in one end of it to hold it by. Upon this Cooks, and all Houſhold Servants carry Bread unbaked, Pies, Paſties, and all other ſorts of Baked Meats, to and from the **Bake-houſe**.
B. 3 ſquare Braids erected O. born by *Pybrade*.
G. one in Bend, the holding part erected O. on the middle a round Loaf, is born by *Hechlingen* of *Holland*.

That in the dexter baſe is termed a **Peel ſhod**, or a **ſhod Peel**, being a Peel made of Wood, but by reaſon Wood will not carry ſo thin an edge as to go under little things with tender ſides and bottoms, therefore it is plated with Iron like a Shovel to take ſuch things out without hurting them.
S. 2 ſuch in Salter O. between 4 Roſes, is born by *Holmon*.

That in the Siniſter Baſe, is termed a **Bakers Peel**, without either addition to, or ſubſtracting therefrom; it is all Wood, by it all ſorts of Bread and Diſhmeats are taken out of the Oven, without hurt or danger.
S. 2 ſuch in Salter O. is born by *Peelſhall*.

CV. He beareth in this quarter on the dexter ſide, an **Oven** with an **Aſhes hole** under it; ſome term it a **double Oven**, or one Oven **mounted** upon another, having a ſtay or ſtand on the left ſide of it, to reſt or ſet any thing out of the Oven thereon.

In the ſiniſter ſide is placed the **Bakers Ark**, with its **Lid** or **Leaf open**, the **Wheel** ſet therein, with its **Hopper** ſet upon it, into which the Bolted Meal was put to fall into the Wheel, and ſo from the Wheel, the Bran to run out at the - - - - - - - - - into Tubs or Veſſels ſet to receive it; and the pure Dant, or ſecond ſort of Meal to fall into the Ark.

In the chief is a Bakers **half round ſhovel**, or a **Meal ſhovel**, being a Shovel with riſing ſides to take Meal out of the Ark; theſe kind of Shovels have no head or croſs piece at the top, as others have; for there needs none ſuch, being it hath no ſtrength laid to it, to go into any hard thing.
V. 3 ſuch, one having the ſhovel part reverſed, between the other two erected (in Feſs as ſome will ſay, but that is needleſs the former expreſſions ſufficing) O. born by the name of *Shovell*.

CVI. He beareth in this quarter three neceſſary Inſtruments belonging to the Trade of a Baker. The firſt is that on the Dexter ſide called a **Brake**; it is that wherewith Dough is knodden and beaten together, ſo long till it be fit to be **Moulded** into Loves. It is a thick Plank ſet upon four or more ſtrong feet, then at the farther ſide of it is faſtned a **thick Pole** fixed with a **Bolt** into a **turning Staple**, ſo that the nearer end of the Pole, (which is made ſmall to hold it by) may be turned to any ſide, or part of the Plank. And ſuch an Inſtrument O. between 2 Martlets and a Bread Basket A in a Field S. is the Coat of *Bakeman* or *Brakman*.

In the Baſe, is that which they call a **Kneading Trough**, being made all of Plank or ſtrong Boards; in this they **Knead** all their Dough, or mix it in the Trough, and after bring it to the Brake to Knead it, or beat it well together.

In the chief is a **round** large **Basket with Ears**, or with **Handles**, as ſome have them, they are generally called by the name of a **Bakers Basket**, or a **Bread Basket**. And 3 ſuch I find born by the name of *Wisket*, (which name alludeth to the thing, for in ſome places theſe kind of Baskets are called **Wiskets**, and **Burthen Wicker Baskets**.) *Viz.* V. 3 ſuch A.

The other kind of Basket in the Siniſter chief, is called a **flat Bottom Bread Basket**, theſe are generally made of Oſier Twigs with a cloſe wound bottom, with a Wreath about the middle and top with two Ears, all the reſt being ſo open, that any thing may be ſeen that is put into it. Theſe kind of Baskets or - - - are altogether uſed by Hat-makers to put their Wood, and carry their Hats in, to be dryed. The *Netherland Dutch* term theſe kind, a **Wande** or **Roſe**, an open **Wicker Basket** or **Pannier**.
G. 3 ſuch O. is born by *Gevlochten*.

CVII. On the dexter ſide, is a **Kid** of **Goſe** or **Goſs**, with a **Pikill thruſt into** the middle of it Feſsways, all proper, in a Field Sable. **Goſs** is a Fuel wherewith Bakers heat their Ovens; and this is now in a ready poſture to be caſt into the Oven to be Burnt. The like to this erected in a Field Gules, is born by the name of *Fuell*.

The Handle or Staff of the Pikell or Pitchfork debruſeth a Bakers Break in Pale: Some Maſters have the Break made thus, being a long round Rowler with Rings and Staples faſtned at each end. And ſuch in Feſs O. between 3 Annulets A. in a Field S. is born by *Break* or *Break*.

Bakers

Bakers Terms in their Art.

Beat, Pound, Bray, is to pulverize or make Spices into Pouder with Pestel and Mortar.
Ptisan, or Husk of Corn.
Gurgin, or Bran.
Groats, Cutlings, Oats husked.
Gist, Meal unsifted from the Bran.
Starch, it is made of fine Dant or flower of Wheat,
Frumentie or Furmentie is Hulled Wheat
Sift, is to part the Meal from the Bran by a Sieve.
Musty, Fusty, Foisted, Pust Corn.
Light, Spungy Bread, swift for an Houshold Family.
Sad, heavy, close Bread.
Livered, tough Bread.
Crust, the out-side of Bread.
Crum, the in-side of a Loaf of Bread.
A **Scowel**, a Maukin, an Oven sweep.
A **Bake-House**, where an Oven is to Bake Bread.
A **Hair searce**, to sift Meal from Bran.
A **Slice**, to cut Dough into pieces, called a **Beater**, a **Peak**.

Coopers Instruments.

10. UPON a farther Enquiry after several sorts of Tools, I find these following to be wanting in those of the **Coopers**, formerly treated of, which I desire may be added to them *chap. 6. numb. 65.*

CVIII. In this quarter are three Coopers Instruments which are born in Arms.

The first is termed a **Thwittel**, or the **Coopers Thwittel**; It is a large strong Knife. And *Thwitle* beareth Azure, 3 such the points erected Argent, the Hafts, Or.

Them in the base are termed **Heele Shavers**, of which (as you may see) there are two kinds; one having the **handles** streight with the Edge of the Tool. The other having the **Handles** side-ways. The first with the cutting part of the Tool, but half the compass, and then cut off into corners: The latter having the cutting part thereof of the same breadth to the handles, before it be diminished.

CIX. In this quarter also are five useful Tools belonging to the **White Coopers**, *viz.* on the dexter side in Pale is three, the **Churn Shave**, the **Drawing Knives** both **crooked** and **streight**, and on the sinister side the **Broad Axe**, and the **Heading Knife**; all which I find born in Coats of Arms, of which I shall speak in their order as they lye, and I have named them.

First, the **Churn Shave**, is a long Staff about a yard and half or more long, with Hoops of Iron at both ends; into which is fixed an Iron **Ring** or **Hoop**, with a **Tange** at the side of it which goeth into the **Hoop** or **Socket** at one end of the Staff, and into the other end after the same manner with a Tange is put an half round Instrument of Iron like a large and open **Auger**.

Secondly, the **Drawing Knife**, or more properly the **White Coopers Drawing Knife**, because they only have it thus rounded in the back, and cutting part; and therefore as the **White Cooper** and **Barrel Cooper**, (termed by the name of **Wine Cooper**) are two distinct Trades, and their Tools different; so their ought to be a distinction in their Instruments.

B. 3 such in Pale A. Handles O. is born by *Sagan.*

B. 2 such, and an Adds A. Handle O. is born by *Cooperage.*

Thirdly, the **Wine Coopers pareing Knife**, or **drawing Knife**; with this he shaves and fits his **Barrel stave** or **Boards**, to such a breadth and thickness, as is needful for the making them up into a Barrel. S. 3 such in Pale A. handles O. is born by *Sharplinger.*

Fourthly, the **Coopers Axe**, or the **Broad Axe**, so termed, because they use no another kind of Axe much like to an **Hatchet**. This is contrary to all other Workmens Axes both for shape and usage, having a large Iron **Socket**, into which the handle is fixed, which is but short.

V. 2 such endorsed A. Hawme O. is born by *Heudman.*

Fifthly, the **Heading Knife**, or **Wine Coopers Heading Knife**, it is a **crooked** Instrument with two **handles**, one standing inward to the edge, and the other streight along, answerable to the back of the Knife.

S. 3 such in pale, the hafts contrarypoised, is born by the name of *Bechburg.*

CX. In this quarter are two Instruments belonging to the Cooper; that in chief is a **Spoke shave**, the other **Lat** or **Lath Axe**.

The first called a **Spoke shave**, is an Iron with a sharp edge set in a piece of Wood with two handles after the manner of a **Plain**, with this any round body is made smooth and round.

The second termed a **Lath Axe**, is an Iron Instrument like a **Knife Blade**, with a round thick back, having an **Eye**, into which a thick **strong Handle** is put, the edge standing outwards: With this, great Timber after it is cloven with the Maul and Wedges into small pieces, it afterwards cleaves them into **Laths**, **Barrel Boards**, and **Panneis**. It is ever born thus as in its proper station. And 3 such B. handles O. in a Field A. is born by *Latax.*

CXI. He beareth in this quarter a **Coopers Hatchet**, and a **Bung Auger**, of the first I have spoken formerly *chap. 6. numb. 66.* only here give you the exact form of the Instrument, being more like the Original Tool than that.

The second is the **Bung Auger**, which hath its name generally from its Bigness, the shape and form being all one and the same: If a large one, it is a **Bung Auger**; if less, a **Tap Auger**; if lesser, then a **Vent Auger**, or **Vent-hole Bit**; But with other Workers in Wood and Timber, this Instrument is termed a

Taper Bit, because they make all holes wider at the top than at the bottom

G. 3 such A. handles O. born by *Bungall*, or *Bongholl*.

CXII. He beareth in this Square two Instruments of the wine Coopers; the one called a **Round Shaft,** the other a **Drawing Iron.** The first is contrary to the **Shaves,** or **Shafts** mentioned *numb.* 108 this haveing the Blade round with the edge inwards, and the handles streight forwards.

B. 3 such A. handles O. is born by the name of *Couper*.

G. 2 such, and a Drawing Iron A. born by *Fillet*.

The second termed a **Drawing Iron,** is an Iron made after the form of a Roman T the top part broad, and cut into teeth like a Saw, and the lower part Taper, ending in a point. This Iron set in an halfe **Round Board,** as *numb.* 113. is shewed, maketh the **Groop,** or nick in the top parts of a Barrel, for the **Heads,** or ends to be fastned in.

A. 3 such S. is born by the name of *Groop*.

A. a fesse betw: 3 such B. is born by *Grapling*.

CXIII. The Instrument in this quarter is termed a **Drawing Board** as it is ready fixed for the work: It is an half round Board near an Inch in thickness, with a square piece of Timber fixed in the middle of it, which is to move up and down as occasion serveth, in this square piece is the Drawing Iron fixed. This may be termed the **Coopers Grooping Tool,** being the **groop** or **nick** for to fasten the **Barrel head** in, is made by it. This I take to be the Instrument expressed in the Coopers Coat of Arms made anciently of another fashion, as you may see *chap. 6. numb.* 67. but it ought to be this, with the round part of the Board set upwards, and the square piece in it **erected.**

CXIV. He beareth Azure. an **Adds** or **Addice,** Argent; **Handle,** Or; between a **Driver,** and an **Hoop** of the third. Born by the name of *Cooper*. These are severally born in Arms, of which take these few examples.

The first is the **Driver,** a piece of Wood cut in the form of a **Wedge,** broad and slender below, and narrow and thick above, or in the head; with this by the help of Blows with the Addice, all sorts of Hoops are driven fast upon Barrels, and other such like Vessels.

A. 3 such O. on a Fesse S. is born by *Driver*.

The second, is the **Addice,** called more properly the **Longnate Addice;** it is like a square faced Hammer with an indifferent long Neck at one end; and the other like an Hatchet, with the edge turned crossways, and bending a very little to the handle; so that it is serviceable to drive or cut any flat thing.

A. 3 such B. Handles O. is born by the name of *Addice*.

The third, is the **Hoop,** of which there are two sorts, the one (which this Figure doth decipher) is termed the **White Ware Hoop,** these are made broad and slender, and are held fast together, and about the Vessel that it is put on, with holes and notches cut into it, which they term the **Notching of a Hoop.** The **Barrel Hoop** is an half round Hoop, whose ends are made fast one over the other with **Osier** or **Withy Twigs,** which they term **Twigging of a Hoop.** Such an one you may see *numb.* 118.

S. a Cheveron O. between 3 such A. is born by *Hooper*.

B. 3 such Hoops A. is born by *Saring*.

CXV. In this Quarter are other three Instruments of the Coopers Trade, as the **Compasses,** the **paring Ladder,** and the **Runging Addice;** of all which in their Order, with the Coats I find them born in.

First, the **Compasses,** are made of Wood, round in the **shanks,** and half round in the turning part, or head; the ends are **hooped** with Iron, and Iron Pins put into them: Now by the help of a piece of Wood, with a screw at both ends, and put through screw holes in the midst of the said Compasses, the same are made wider open, or closer shut, by turning of the said Screw in it: And such a pair of Coopers Compasses I find born by the name of *Compell. Viz.* B. the like O. hooped and pointed A. between 3 Roses.

Under these great Compasses I have caused another fashion of Compasses to be made, yet not much differing from them though of an Elder standing.

The second, is the **paring Ladder,** or **Coopers Ladder,** with a **pareing Staff** in it: By the help of this all Barrel Staves or Boards are held fast and sure while the Work-man is paring or shaving them fit for his purpose.

A. the like S. between 2 Lions heads couped G. born by *Ladderhead*.

This is the Instrument now in use for that purpose; but in our Fore-fathers time they made use of another thing called a **Lathe,** which I have described in *chap 6. numb.* 70. but not knowing what it was, I gave a wrong name and description of it, which here be pleased to take notice that it is termed a **Lathe,** whose use was to shoot Staves in, and to join them and truss them without any Fire, or very little Fire: It hath Screws at the two ends, to draw the middle rounds together, or set them farther off, as the Work required. It is now quite laid aside by our Coopers, not one of them scarce knowing what it meaneth.

The third, is the **Runging Addice:** This is in all respects like an **Hatchet,** save the edge part stands cross to that of the Hatchet, turning back towards the Handle.

A. 3 such B. Handles S. on a chief G. a Mullet O. is born by *Don Adrungo*, a *Spanish* Family.

CXVI. He beareth Gules, a **Runging Addice,** Argent; **Handle** Or, born by the name of *Van Rundage*. This is another sort of those Addice, and by the *Dutch* and *German* Heralds are generally made thus, with round **eyes** or **holes** for the **haume** or handle.

CXVII. He beareth Gules, a **Round Bellied Rung covered,** Argent, by the name of *Van Langkhosen* of *Bavaria*.

G. on an Hill in Base V. the like A. hooped O. is quartered by *Die Ligsaltz* in *Bavaria*.

CXVIII. He

CXVIII. He beareth in this square three things which are the Workmanship of the **Cooper**, or **White Ware Cooper.** The first is termed a **Rung**, or a **Tub**, or a **Washing Tub**, such as Laundresses wash their Linnens in.

S. Such a Tub O. between 3 Soap Balls A. is the Arms of the Company of *Linnen Washers*, or *Laundresses*.

B. 3 Washing Tubs A. is born by the name of *Tub*.

The second is a **Barrel erected**, and **hooped**, or **double hooped** at both ends, with a square **Dow opened** in the middle of it; on the head of it a Tuft of Grass. Such a kind of Bearing I find is a part of the Crest of *Van Schonstein* in *Bavaria Viz.* Out of a Crown, such a Barrel crowned with a Tuft of Grass on it. Some term the Barrel with a **Window**, or Glass **Window opened** in the side of it. Or **Diogenes Tub**, with the **Dow opened** to the sinister side.

The third is a **Barrel hoop**, or a **Twigged hoop.** These in Arms are generally drawn with a longer round than broad, oval like, according to the name which beareth them. *Viz.* S. a Cheveron between 3 Twiggen Hoops, O. born by *Owall*.

In the chief of this square lyeth a Geometrical Rule, or Gaging Rod; it is for length 3 foot, and hath four scales described upon it, the one is an ordinary scale of Inches, numbred by the Figures 1, 2, 3, to 36. and that divided into halfs, quarters, and eighths. The second Scale (if you turn the Rod) is divided each 7 inches into ten equal parts, and those into lesser parts. The third Scale (still turning the Rod towards you) is of Wine Measure, which is from Gallons into eight parts representing Pints. The fourth is the Scale of Ale Measure, which is again subdivided into Pints and Quarters; whose use see *Clerks Tutor for Arithmetick*, p. 95. I am only to tell you that 3 such in Fess O. in a Field G. is the *Gugers* Coat of Arms.

CXIX. Here is in this quarter the form of an **Auger** rightly drawn, and an **Hollowing Knife**; the first used altogether in Carpentry Work, and but seldom with a Cooper, yet it is used by them, therefore may come amongst their Tools. Of this Bearing in Arms I have this example only remarkable, *Viz.* V. an Auger A. Handle O. the shank wrapped about with an Adder B. born by the name of *Augerworme*.

A. 3 such Augers S. born by *Auger*.

The **Hollowing Knife** is a Tool much like the paring Knife, one part of the cutting being streight, the other end rises into a semi circle or half round, by means whereof any round body either with an Invex or Convex may be wrought, provided it be of length Cilender like.

CXX. In the Base of this Quarter is the true shape of the **Coopers Axe**, none of those before mentioned being drawn true, the Graver having overlooked them all: This is made sans **Hawme**, and therefore is to be Bazoned so. A. a Fess between 3 such B. is born by *Handaxe*.

Beer-Brewers Instruments.

II. I Must again Beg an excuse for the neglect of omitting some Instruments belonging to the **Ale** and **Beer-Brewers** Art or Mistery, which I have set here together, what was wanting in the former place, *chap. 6. numb.* 75.

CXX. He beareth Argent, a **Trowe**, or **Beer-Brewers Trow** or **Dray**, Sable; or a **Trow** in Fesse born by the name of *Trowle*. This is a thing drawn by an Horse, having only sides and Axel-tree and Wheels, with overthwart pieces to hold all together, between which pieces Barrels of Beer are usually laid to be carried from the Store-house to the Customers house.

A Trowe in Fesse S. between 3 Barrels G. in a Field A. is born by *Bierburgh*.

CXXI. He beareth Azure, a **Comb**, or a **Brewers Working Comb**, or **Pelling Comb**, Argent; in chief the **Slings** with the **Chains extended**, proper. The **Pelling Comb** or **Tub** is that Vessel into the which the Wort is put to Work with the **Yeast**, or **Bearm**.

B. a Cheveron between 3 Brewing Combs O. by the name of *Combs*.

B. the like Comb with 3 Ears of Barley on their Stalks out of it, contrary Bowed O. by the name of *Mout*.

The **Slings** are a strong thick, yet short Pole, not above a yard and an half long, to the middle is fixed a strong Plate with a hole in which is put a Hook with an head, which will turn any way after the manner of a **Tweel**: On this Hook is fastned two other short Chains with broad pointed Hooks, with them clasping the ends of the Barrels above the heads, the Barrel is lifted up, and born by two Men to any place, as is shewed, *chap.* 5. *numb.* 146.

The third thing in this quarter, and set in the sinister side, is termed the **Brewers Thorn** with the **Cap Staff** through the middle of it. This is a thing set over the hole in the bottom of the **Brewing Comb**, with the Staff in the hole to keep that no Liquor run out, but when the Master pleaseth; the Thorn keeping that none of the **Grains** run out with the Wort: It being (as it were) a strainer over the hole, to keep the Wort from the Malt, at the drawing of it out into the **Trough** or **Drawing Comb**.

CXXII. He beareth in this quarter, an Instrument belonging to the Vintner or Merchant, called a **Valentia**; and three other belonging to the Brewer, the **Turning Dish**, the **Cooling Vessel**, and the **Bearing Staff**.

The first being the **Valentia**, is a Pipe made of Silver or Tin, round and taper, and hollow withal, with a small

small Pipe at the large end, and an hole at the bottom: This being put in at the Bung-hole of either Wine or Beer, or any other Liquor will fill it self immediately, which being stopped with your Thumb in the higher hole, will keep it in the said **Valentia**, hold it never so much down; till you give it Air by removing your Thumb off the hole, then it will run into a Taster or Glass, or what else you please, till you stop the hole again with your Thumb, as before said.

S. a Chevron between 3 Valentia's A. born by *Tapster*.

The second is a **Tunning Dish**, some term it a **Fulling** or **Filling Dish**; for by the help of it Liquor is poured into Vessels with small holes, without the least shew of spilling, by putting the Pipe of the Dish into the hole of the Vessel, and so pouring the Liquor into the Dish, which immediately runs into the Vessel. This A. between 3 Roses O. in a Field B. is born by *Tunnigen*.

The third is a kind of a **cooling Vessel**, having an oval like broad bottom with ebb sides; I draw this from an Ancient Coat of Arms, but by whom it was born, or how properly to term it, I know not; except an **oval painted cooler**, for all coolers have an hole at one side in the bottom.

The fourth is a **Bearing Staff**, by which empty Barrels are carried by Servants from place to place, by fixing the ends of the Staff into the Barrels at the Bung-holes, and so putting the middle of the Staff on his Shoulder.

CXXIII. He beareth in this quarter, a **Brewers Pump** set in a **Stone Trough**; and the use is this, when the **Malt** in the Comb is sufficiently **mash't** and **soked** with the Boiled Water, then it is drawn out from the Grain into the Stone Trough set under the Comb, out of which place it is Pumped into a **Wooden Trough**, through which it runs into the **Drawing Comb**, or into the **Copper Brewing Pan**, to have a second Boiling.

A. the like G. is born by *Pump*. Also by a *German* Family called *Van Pumperell*.

The second is the form or fashion of the **Brewers running Trough**, or **Gutter Trough**, by which the Liquor is conveyed from one Vessel to another, as you heard before.

The third is the **Brewers** or **Water-Leaders Water-Baggs**: They are only used in *Chester*, and not any other place as ever I saw or heard; they are carried upon Horses, and was a part of the Antient Coat, and is still owned to this day of the Company of *Water Leaders* in the City of *Chester*, as you may see *chap.* 3. *numb.* 43. See *numb.* 125. another.

A. a *Chester* Water Bouget (or Water Bags) S. in chief 2 Scopes in Salter B. is born by *Waterman*.

CXXIV. In this part of the Plate under the Figure before set, is three other Brewers Instruments; the first on the dexter side towards the chief, is termed a **Gawn**; it is a Vessel made after the form of a **Piggen**, but hath a long handle or hook thereby to reach to the bottom of deep Brewing Vessels to fetch out the Liquor, it is most used by Ale-Brewers.

A. 3 such O. is born by *Gaune*.

The second is called a **Fane**, it is used both by Malsters and Brewers, that make their own Malt, to Fan or cleanse the **Malt** from Dust and **Comings**, and all small Light Corn.

The third is the **Brewing Pan**, of some called a **Brewers Copper**, from the Metal which it is made of. This is usually set upon a **Furnace** or **Fire place** made either of Brick or Stone, which is termed the **setting of the Pan**; the top that goes out wider than the bottom, is called the **Flang** of the Pan.

CXXV. In this quarter is the Instrument used about Malt called a **Shovel**; it is to cast Malt into the **Mesture**, turn it in the **Kilne**, and is a Servant for several uses about the Lady *Ceres*; of which there are several fashions as they are set down *chap.* 8. *numb.* 3. 4. but this is the only and peculiar form of them and most used.

B. 3 such O. born by *Shoule*, or *Shovel*.

The second is termed a **Cooler**; it is only made flat with Boards in the bottom, and so close jointed, that no Liquor can run out; the height is a Board also of about a foot high: it stands upon Posts or Pillars, under one corner of it (where the hole is to set out the Wort) is set the **Pelling Comb** into which the Liquor runs, when the Brewer judgeth it cold enough, he puts Barm to it to set it a working; it hath its name **Cooler**, from its Office, which is to cool the Hot Wort, and that it doth sooner by having the liquor broad and shallow, or ebb in it, than if it were altogether in a deeper Vessel.

In the sinister chief is another kind of **Water Bags**, with the **Leather** under it which covers the Horse Back, and keeps him from the continual running of the Water upon him, which might do the Horse hurt to be always wet; but by means of this cover he is very rarely wet on his Body, and when the Bags wax old, and the neck of them weak, so that they fall together, then they are kept open with two **Sticks set cross** the mouth of them, as the Figure sheweth.

CXXVI. He beareth Argent, a **Brewing Pan** set, with three **Steps** by the side of it, Gules, with Fire under it, proper. The Pan thus set in the place for Brewing hath many terms about it; as

To **Set the Pan**, is to compass it about with Brick or Stone, that the Fire may more speedily Boil its Liquor.

The **Barrs** in the Furnace.
The **Dam** of the Furnace.
The **Furnace** or Fire place.
The **Vent holes** and **Chimney**.
The **Furnace hole**, or place where the Ashes fall.
The **Steps** to rise to it.
The **Flange** of the top.

In the Sinister side, is a **Drawing Pipe**, of some called a **Crane**, or **Crane Pipe**. It hath one end almost twice as long as the other, let the short end be put into any Liquor, and the longer end hang lower out from it, and but suck the Liquor through the long end, and upon your withdrawing your mouth, all the rest of the Liquor will follow till it come equal to the end of the Cane which is in the Vessel of Liquors. By this means the Brewers by a **Leaden Crane**, draw their Wort from one **Cooler** to another, till it be cool enough for them to put it together for Working.

Smiths Tools.

THere are such variety of these Tools and Instruments pertaining to the **Iron Workers**, and made works of Iron, that it is impossible to Learn out the Thousandth part of them; what I have mentioned before, let these out of a Candid respect to their wants, be added as a Supplement to *chap. 7. numb.* 1.

In the Sinister part of the square, *numb.* 126. is set a Smiths **Bolster**; it is a thick piece of Iron generally round, with an Hole in the middle of it; it is to ly under another hot or cold peece of Iron, that must have a hole Punched through it, to save the **Punch** from breaking.

CXXVII. In this quarter are three things very useful and necessary about a Smiths Forge, which may be thus Blazoned; He beareth Sable, a **Washer** between a **Slice** and an **Hearth Staff**, and may be a proper Coat or Devise for him that hath risen by the Forge or working in the Fire.

The **Washer**, is a Bundle of Rushes set in an Iron, with an Iron Stail to it; with this Water is sprinkled out of the Trough into the Fire to make it burn the hotter; and also to sweep up the scattered Coals up to the Fire.

The **Slice**, is a broad Iron Plate like a Shovel, with an Iron handle; with this they shovel up Coals to the Fire, and clap the Fire close together.

The **Hearth Staff**, is a long round piece of Iron with a round head, and something sharp at the further end; it is to open and stir up the Fire, and cast out the Cinders that come from the Iron, that the Fire may burn the better.

CXXVIII. In this quarter are three necessary Instruments belonging to the **Black-Smith**, the **Hammer**, the **Screw Pin**, and the **Vice**.

The **Hammer** hath several names, according to its bigness, yet all after this form and fashion: The first and least is the **Rivetting Hammer**, it is very rarely used at the Forge, unless the Work be very small; but upon cold Iron it is used for Rivetting, or setting streight, or crooked, small works. The next is the **Hand-Hammer**, which is bigger or lesser, according to the strength of the Workman; but it is a Hammer of such weight, that it may be welded or governed with one hand at the Anvil. The third is termed the **up-hand Hammer**, or **up-hand Sledge**, of some termed the **Foye-Hammer**; It is used to indifferent or middle sort of Work, wherein the under Workman, in helping to Batter or Draw out a piece of Iron, seldom lifts this Hammer higher than his head. The fourth sort of Hammer is the **about Sledge**, or the Smiths **great Forging Hammer**; he that useth this, holdeth the further end of the Hammer in both his hands, and swinging it about his head, he at Arms length lets fall as heavy a Blow as he can upon the Work that is to be Battered or Drawn out. All these sorts of Hammers have no **claw** or **slit** in the **Pen**, as those that are for drawing out of Nails, as *chap. 7. numb.* 1.

Parts of an Hammer.

The **Face**, that part it is beaten with.
The **Pen**, is the small end of it.
The **Eye**, the hole into which the handle is put.
The **Head**, or **Hammer Head**, is all the Iron part.
The **Checks**, or **Plates**, or **Tangs**, the Irons which hold the Head on.
The **Handle**, is the Wood by which it is held.
The **Hammer**, when it is all furnished and made compleat.
A. 3 Sledge Hammers S. is born by *Forger*.

The second, is the **Screw Pin**, of some termed a **Tap**: Some Taps are made **Taper** others not; with the help of this a Screw is forced and turned or cut in an hole of an Iron Plate, to receive a **Screw-pin**. Three such B. in a Field A. is born by *Screwer*.

The third is the **Vice**, called the **Bench Vice**, because set up very firm to a Bench that it shake not, but stand upright; this holdeth all sorts of Iron work that requires Fileing. In it there are several parts and Members which are termed by Workmen as followeth.

Parts of a Vice.

The **Face**, the top part of it.
The **Chaps**, that as holds the work, which are cut rough with a Bastard cut to hold the faster.
The **Screw-Pin**, which is cut with a square strong Worm or Thred.
The **Nut**, or **Screw Box**, which hath also a square Worm in it.
The **Spring**, that lyeth between the Chaps, in the lower parts, and forceth them open.
The **Shanks**.
The **Handle**, is that which turneth the Screw in the Nut.
The **Foot**, the long shank that stands upon the ground.

CXXIX. Hath in it, in Pale, the Smiths Tools called

led the **Crooked Nose Tongs**, the **Drill**, and the **Screw-Plate**, of which in particular.

First, the **Crooked Nose Tongs**, these have their chaps placed near the Joint, because that considering the length of the handles, they hold the Iron faster than they could do, were they placed farther from the Joint: These kind of Tongs are for to hold small Bars, or such thicker work as will go between the Chaps. In these Tongs there is

The **Chaps**. The **Joynt**.
The **Rivet**. The **Handles**.

The second is the **Drill**, it is a **shaft** or long Pin of Iron with a Steel point, much like a Spear head, the other end round; on the middle of it is fastned a **Barrel** like a Jack Barrel. There are Drills of several sorts according to the bignes of the work; they are used for the making of such holes as Punches will not conveniently do, as in the shank of a Key and such like. The **Drill**, the **Drill Bow**, and the **Drill Plate**, go all together as one entire Instrument of three parts; but for two of them see the next following Figure. In the Drill there is

The **Point**. The **Shank**.
The **Drill Barrel**. The **round** or **turning end**.

The third is the **Screw Plate**, it is a Plate of well Tempered Steel, with several holes in it, of diverse sizes, each less than other, and in these holes are threads of Screws **grooved** inwards, into which grooves the **taps** or **screw-pins** respectively fit. By this Plate Screws are cut upon Iron Pins, to be screwed into any hole that will fit them. The **Tap** before mentioned is to go along with this **Plate**, being one Instrument of two parts. There is in this no more but the **Plate**, the **Holes**, and the **Handle** to turn it about.

A. 3 such in Fess the Plate parts erected B. Handles O. is born by *Lavaunt*.

In the sinister side of this quarter is a Smiths Flame, as it was anciently made in our fore-fathers days, of which you may see a very like form in *chap.* 11. *numb.* 30. yet much differing if compared together. This I drew from a *Dutch* or *German* Coat Armour.

O. 3 such (without the middle square and half round) S. is born by *Die Schelen* of *Westphalia*.

B. the like in Bend O. is born by *Gilleis*.

CXXX. In this quarter is the Smiths **Bellows**, the **Drill-Bow**, and the **Drill-Plate**, of which in their Order.

First, the **Bellows**, or **Smiths Bellows**, or **Forge Bellows**; these are placed behind the Back of the **Forge**, where they do the Office of Blowing the Fire for the Smiths use. These large Bellows, and the small House Bellows have one and the same shape, and therefore one and the same terms in all its parts, which are as followeth.

Parts of a Pair of Bellows.

The **Ears** of the upper Board.

The **upper Board**.

The **Leather**.

The - - - - - - - that fastens the Leather round the Boards.

The **under** or **lower Board**, in which is placed

The - - - - - - - - or square hole to suck in the Air.

The **Flap of the sucker**, a piece of flat Leather as covers the hole in the in side, and keeps the Air it cannot go out again that way.

The - - - - - - - that part to which the Blow-Pipe is fixed.

The **Pipe**, is that through which the Wind comes.

A. a pair of Forge Bellows erected, between 3 Horse-shooes S. born by *Ventall*.

The second is the **Drill-Bow**, it is that by which the Drill is turned about, when it is to Drill an hole in any peece of work; it is made of a peece of well Tempered Steel, or of an old broken Sword or Rapier Blade, having a hole at one end, and a handle fastned at the other, with a String of Cats-guts fastned to it: Now as Smiths are provided of several Drills according to their work, so must they be of diverse Drill-Bows, or at least of variety of Strings, as the strongest Strings for the largest Drills, and the smallest Strings for the smallest Drills; for the **String** and **Bow** must both be accommodated to the size of the **Drill**, else the same will not be carried briskly about: But be they big or little, they have but one name, which is the thing I only take notice of, and so leave it.

A. a Drill Bow furnished with a String erected S. between 2 Drill Plates, proper. Born by *Drilbowrge*.

The third is the **Drill-Plate**, or **Breast Plate**, it is only a piece of flat Iron fixed upon a flat Board with an handle at it (some none) which Iron hath 2 or 3 holes punched a little way into it, to set the blunt ends according to the bignes of the end of the Drill into, when a hole is to be Drilled.

In the Sinister chief of this square, is a Losenge Female, or a **Mascle Buckle Bottony**, with the Tongue fixed on a Cross Bar; this differs much from those Buckles mentioned in the precedent *numb.* 37. 38. 39. being like to none of them: This is generally termed by the name of a Losenge or Mascle **Shoe Buckle**; if it were called a square Buckle, then the Bar cross the middle should go from side to side, which this doth not, but from corner to corner.

O. a Fess G. in chief such a Buckle B. is born by *Van Bodelswing*.

O. the like B. is born by *Vanath*.

CXXXI. He beareth Sable, a **Screw of a Printing Press**, Argent; by the name of *Worm*. The like things, *viz.* Azure three such Printing Press Screws Argent, is found to be born by *Van Werckhuys*. Of this see more *caap.* 20. *numb.* 62. where it is termed a **Spindle of a Printing Press**, with the names of its other parts.

CXXXII. He beareth Argent, an **Iron Wimble** with

with a square **Bore** in it, Sable, is born by the name of *Wimbler*. This is an Instrument by which Smiths use to open or widen a hole; it is all generally termed a **square Bore**, being a square Steel point or shank, well tempered and fitted into a square **Socket** in an Iron Wimble; in this are these parts.

The **square Bore**, or **Steel point**.

The **Socket** that holds it.

The **handle**, by which it is turned.

The **Head of the Wimble**, in which the handle turneth.

Or, 3 such S. born by *Wimblesdorf* in *Alsatia*.

The second Figure in the chief of this quarter, is termed the **Main Wheel** and **Barrel of a Jack**, with all its appurtenances belonging to that one Wheel, which are as followeth.

The **Main Spindle**, is the Iron Rod that goeth through the Wheel and Barrel, and hath the **Pulley** at the end of it.

The **Wind up peece**, the end of the Spindle that the Jack Key turns the Barrel about withal; this is fastned into the Barrel.

The **Barrel**, the Wood on which the Rope is wound about, on the end whereof next to the Wheel, are these things fastned.

The **Barrel** Plate.

The **Tumbler**, the Center whereof moveth upon the Center Pin, which is fastne' into the Iron Plate behind the Barrel.

The **Collar**, which is upon the Main Spindle, from which proceeds a **Tong**, this Tong serves for a Check to the Tumbler, that it cannot turn backwards.

The **Main Wheel**, wherein are the **Crosses**, the **Center**, the **Rim**, and the **Teeth**, of the Wheel, which some term the **Notches**.

The **Key**, or **Jack Winder**, in which are, the **eye**, the **shank**, and the **handle**. Some term the whole a **Winch**.

The **Struck Wheel**, or **Pulley**, that about which the Chain or Rope goes to turn the Broach about.

These as they are in their several parts, are often found to be born in Coats of Arms, but not as they are here joined together, as

B. 3 Jack Wheels O. born by *Wheeler*.

G. a Fess between 3 such Wheels A. born by *Lastoull*.

S. 3 Jack Pulleys O. a Fess between A. by *Pulleger*.

The third figure, is the **Worm Wheel**, or **Bevil tooth'd Wheel**, with its **Spindle** and **Nut**; whose terms are as the other Wheels, therefore shall say no more of it, only the Teeth of this Wheel are Filed Bevil, for the Worm to fall in.

CXXXIII. In the dexter side of this quarter, is the **Worm Spindle**, and its **Fly**, in which there are these Members.

The **Spindle**, the **Worm** upon the Spindle, the end of the Spindle, which turns upon a **Stud** or Stand; the hollow of the Spindle which turns in a Loop.

The **Fly**, is the cross piece, in which is the **Socket**, where it is made fast to the top of the Worm Spindle; the **Shanks** or Arms, and the **Poises** or Lead Balls at the ends.

The parts of a Worm-Jack.

A **Jack**, when it is all fixed together.

The **Jack Case** or **Frame**, in which there are these parts.

The **Sides**, *Viz.* The **Forside**, The **Backside**, The **Top peece**, The **Bottom peece**.

The **Stud** of the Worm spindle, is that whereon the end of the Spindle turns.

The **Worm loope**, that which holds it above.

The **Stayes**, or Back fastnings, by which it is nailed to its place.

The **Maine wheele**, The **Spindle**, **Barrel**, and the **Truck wheele**.

The **Worm wheele**, **Spindle** and **Nut**.

The **Worm**, **Spindle**, and **Fly**. All which are so commonly known that they need no Explanation.

In the dexter side of this quarter are two Keys endorsed, the Bows held together with an Annulett; and such a Bearing I find belongs to the Family of *Slappane*. *Viz.* Gules 2 Keys endorsed, the Bits erected, and the Bows braced with an Annulet, Or. See *numb.* 135.

On the sinister side of this square, He beareth Azure, two **Keys in Salter**, the **Bits reversed** and **inverted**, or **counterposed**, Or; **tyed** in the top with a **Scarlet Ribbon**. Such a Coat as this I find did belong to *Geerbert*, or *Gerberi*, Arch-Bishop of *Rhemes*, Tutor to *Robert* Son of the *French* King, about *Anno* 1003.

The like to these in Salter, with the **Bits erected** and **endorsed**, Argent; the **Bows** tyed with a **Lace** or **Ribbon** in form of a **True Loves Knot**, with the **ends pendant**, in a Field Gules; is the States Arms of *Regensburg*.

CXXXIV. He beareth Argent, a **Smiths Forge**, and **Trough** before it Gules, with **Fire** on the **Hearth**, proper.

The several parts of a Smiths Forge.

The **Hearth**, or Fire place of the Forge.

The **Arches**, are hollow places under the Hearth to put things in.

The **Back of the Forge**,

The **Hovel** or **Covel of the Hearth**, which ends in a Chimney to carry the Smoak away.

The **Tewel**, or **Tewel Iron**, is a thick Iron Plate, with a Taper Pipe in it about 5 inches long, which is placed in the back of the Forge against the Fire place, through which the Bellows Blows the Fire.

The **Trough**, is a Stone Trough right against the Fire place.

The **Bellows**, placed behind the Forge, so as the lower Board can move neither up nor down.

The **Chain**, or **Rope**, or **Thong**, or **Rod**, is that as is fastned to the upper Ear of the Bellows, and so to the end of the Staff or Beam which the Smith handles to Blow the Bellows withal; called,

The **Rocker**, is that the Smith handles, which moves up and down, being fastned to another piece crosswise; called,

The **Rock Staff**, which is set between two Cheeks upon two Center-pins, in two Sockets; so that by drawing down the handle, the upper Board of the Bellows riseth, and by a considerable weight set upon the Board sinks it down again; and so by this agitation performs the Office of a pair of Bellows.

Things belonging to the Forge.

The **Tongs**, with both streight and crooked Noses.

The **Slice**, it is to put Fire Coals to the Fire.

The **Washer**, to sweep up the Hearth, and sprinkles Water on the Fire.

The **Hearth Staff**, to stir up the Fire, and throw Cinders out of it.

The **Anvil**, **Hand Hammer** and **Sledge**, the **Seat Iron**, and **Rod** to hold it in; a **Block**.

CXXXV. He beareth Gules, two **Keys endorsed** and **conjoined** in the **Bows**, Argent; is the Coat Armour of *Van Griplaw* of *Alsatia*. The **Keys double Bitted** and **conjoined** O. in a Field B. is born by *Keyes*. Some are so nice that they will term the **Bows Vascle-like**, **conjoined** and **Bottoned** in the corners; though it matters not whether they be round or square, except it should stand for a difference or distinction between Families.

Farriers Instruments.

13. SOME Instruments and Tools belonging to a Farrier, which before I was ignorant of, having now found out, I desire them to be added to *chap. 7. numb.* 25. as followeth.

CXXXVI. In this square are three Farriers Instruments; the first is termed an **unclenching Knife**; this loosens the points of the Nails which are clenched upon the top of the Hoof to take the Shooe off, or to remove it; the point is to raise up the Nail if it be deep in the Hoof.

A. 3 such in Pale S. is born by *Moverage*.

B. a Fess betw. 2 and a Rose O. is born by *Seldonar*.

The second is termed a **paring Hook** or **Knife**, with this the Hoof is cut when it exceeds the breadth of the Shooe.

The third is termed a **Knife**, or Farriers **Incision Knife**; with it all sorts of Sores are Lanced and cut open in all the parts of an Horse Body.

CXXXVII. This is termed a **Case of Flames all laid open**, in which there is six sorts of Instruments; the two outmost which are hooked are termed **Drawers**; another is a **Pen Knife**; and another with a sharp point, called a **Lancet**; and the two middlemost are **Flames**, one sharp, the other broad pointed: These are for several uses about Diseased Horses or Beasts, as the Drawers are to scrape out Corruption in a Wound or Bruise; the Knives and Lancers to make Incisions, and open Wounds and Bruises, and the Flames to let Blood.

CXXVIII. In this square are three other sorts of Farriers Instruments; the first is termed a **Buttrice**, with this the sole of the Foot, and the Heel is pared when it is overgrown, also the bottom of the Hoof, to make the Shooe sit ease and streight on the foot.

3 such in Fess the Handle erected A. in a Field B. is born by *Buttrisch*.

The second is termed a **Cauting Iron**, or a **Cautering Iron**, or **Searing Iron**; with it the parts of an Horse whose Disease requires Burning, are seared with it.

The third is termed a **Bloding Stick** or **Striker**; it is an heavy piece of Wood, wherewith the **Fleme** is smitten or driven into the Horse Neck Vein, when he is Blooded. A. a Fess between 3 such the handle reversed G. born by *Bloodman*.

CXXXIX. These are four sorts of **Shooes** used for infirm and Diseased Horses, which go Lamely or ill-favouredly; not that such are born in Arms, but are set down here for their term sake, which is the principal thing in such matters, which I aim at.

The first is termed a **Patten Shoe**; this hath both **Caukins** to secure sore Heels, and also a **Shoulder** before, to raise the foot from the ground.

The second under it, is termed a **false quarter shoe**, this hath one of the Heel Taps cut off, and is for an Horse that hath a sore side Hoof.

The third in the sinister chief, is termed also a **false quarter shoe**, with a shoulder in the side.

The fourth under it, is called a **Lunet shoe**, having both ends cut off. This kind of Shooe is used to Horses that have weak Heels.

There is another **flat** or **pomised shoe**, having one side thick and the other thin; and is used for flat and **pomised Hoofs**.

Also a **Cross Bar Shooe**, that hath a straight Bar from one Heel of the Shooe to the other; and is for Horses that have sore Soles.

CXL. In the chief of this square, is another piece of Smiths work, which may be termed either a **Cramp** or

*

or **Plate Floy** at both ends, having holes therein in order to its fastning. These are generally Nailed from one piece of great Timber to another, to keep them from shrinking or leaving the place where set.

S. the like in Bend Sinister O. is quartered by *Van Spangstein* of *Carinthia* in *Germany*.

G. 3 such in Fess A. by *Crampellom*.

On the dexter side of this square, is an Escochion Buckle, or rather an Orle like Fermale, having the Tongue turned to the Sinister and broke in two in the middle, the corners Bottony. Such another A. in a Field G. is born by *Van Zedlitz* in *Switzerland*.

G. a Mascle Buckle each point Bottony, the Tongue broken in the middle Bendwise Sinister A. is born by *Van Wallenrodt* of *Francovia*.

G. the like Mascle Fermale, with the Tongue parted in the middle A. is born by *Van Wallenrodt Streitzver*, the difference of these Coats is one hath the Tongue Bendwise Sinister, and the other in Bend.

In the dexter side, and to the Base, is another form of a Key or Trebble Key rather, or three at one Bow, termed by some a Key Trebble shanked in Triangle; or three Keys in Triangle fixed in the head to an Annulate or one Bow.

A. the like B. is born by *Van Trikens*.

Per Fess A. and S. the like with the higher Bits endorsed, counterchanged, is born by the name of *Schlussel-feider* of *Brunswick*.

Spurriers Instruments.

14 THere are some few more of their Tools, which I have seen, and the Works by them made, which you may add to them mentioned, *numb.* 24.

CXLI. He beareth Argent, a **Spur Rowel**, at **each point a Toxeure**, born by the name of *Spurgall*. Some Blazon this a **Rowel of six points**, at each a **pomell** or **Button**, Gules. After this manner the *Netherlands* and *Germans* beset the Rowel points, with Roses, Leaves, Tufts of Grass, and with diverse other things, which are termed in their Blazoning, as abovesaid.

The second is Blazoned, a **Buckle** or **Fermale**, the **sides adorned with Buttony heads**; some term it **Floy** on the **out-side**, and such another is born by the name of *Die Nagel* of *Westphalia*. *Viz.* Argent such a Buckle with the Tongue to the Sinister side, Gules.

The third is termed a **Peel** with a **Spur**, or **Cock Spur**; some call it a **Spur shank**, with a **Nail** or **sharp point**: such a like shank of a Spur was found in the *Watergate Street* in the City of *Chester*, in the Digging of a Cellar about the year 1670. in a Bed of Sand. which was shewed to me as a great rarity, and so it was, for I laid it on an half Sheet of Paper, and scored it out according to its proportion, being as large almost as the half Sheet would contain. Surely that Sand must be brought there by the Deluge, or some great Inundation of Waters, at what time no one knoweth; but that the Spur did belong to some of the Giants in the beginning or elder days, cannot be denyed; for Men were never (by any Writing known to be) so large in these latter Ages for many Centuries. Some term it a **Gag Spur**, others a **Pick Spur**.

In the chief of this square is placed the **Farriers Drench Horn**, a Horn that they put Horse Drenches or Drinking Potions into, thereby to pour it down the Horses Throat. B. one such A. between 3 Spur Rowels O. is born by *Kuhorn* of *Frankenfort*.

B. 3 such in Pale A. born by *Hornby*.

CXLII. He beareth Sable, a **Pick Hammer**, with a **rebate** about or behind the face of it Argent, **Handle** or. This is born by the name of *Hammerhed*. This is so termed, because it represents an Hammer at one end, and a Pick at the other.

G. the like between 2 Spur Rowels O. is born by *Thummell*.

A. 3 such S. is born by *Smethell*.

In the Base of this square, is the form and fashion of two other kinds of **Barnacles**; that on the Dexter side doth resemble some of those mentioned in *numb.* 25. 29. something varying in that it hath a **Runner** or Ring to make it wider or closer together, as the Runner is drawn up it.

Per Fess O. and V. in chief the like dejected or cast down on the side, S. in Base 3 Roses G. is born by *Van Aschenbruch* of *Westphalia*.

That on the sinister side I have mentioned before in *numb.* 31. and by whom born, to which I shall refer you; this is the most properest Barnacle, and in most use with our Grand Farriers, and is termed the **Ring Barnacle**, having Teeth only on one side, the other plain.

Plummers Instruments.

15. THere are some of their Tools which since my former Engraven ones I have procured, which you may please to add to the former mentioned at *numb.* 50. *&c.*

CXLIII. He beareth Sable, a **Plummers Pincers** or **Shewing Pincers**, Argent; born by the name of *Plumage*. By these Pincers two edges or Skirts of Lead are turned one over the other, without cutting or bruising the Lead; this kind of Rolling of Lead one within another, is termed a **Shein**.

CXLIV. In

CXLIV. In this quarter are three Plummers Instruments, the **Shave Hook**, the **Dresser**, and the **Strickle**; of all which in their places.

First for the **Shave Hook**, it is that that scrapeth and cuts off the Surface of Lead, either old or new cast, to make it clean and bright, that it may thereby hold the Sodder that is melted upon it; by means whereof two edges of Lead are sodered together and made one; and this is called the **Soddering of a Joynt**: Yet there is another way of joining the two edges together in one, and yet not sodder them, but melt the edges by running hot Lead along it, which is termed the **Burning of a Joynt**. This is set down before *numb.* 50. but not so exactly like as this.

The second is a **Dresser**, by which Instrument a Sheet of Lead is either beaten streight or crooked, or into any form of work without bruising it; it being only a **Bat** of Wood made with a handle, flat at the bottom, and rounded off at the top-side.

The third is the **Strickle**; it is a slender Spart, **rabated** in the ends answerable to the breadth of the **Casting Frame**, whereon the Plummer runs his Lead when it is new Cast; by this he beats down the Sand in the Frame, and keeps it of an even height; and when the Lead is cast over to run in the Frame, the Plummer followeth the Lead with this Instrument, to drive it forwards, and keep it that the **Sheet** be all of a thickness: Each breadth of a Sheet must have a **Strickle** answerable to it.

CXLV. In this is two useful Tools or things belonging to the Plummer; as the **Ladle** and the **Plaine**. The **Ladle** is made of Iron thick and strong, with a long **Iron Stale**, and an **Handle** of Wood fastned upon it; with this the Melted Lead is taken out of the **Furnace**, and put into the **Pan** for Casting.

S. 3 such Ladles A. Handles O. is born by *Ladle*.

The **Plaine**, is a flat peece of Brass or Copper with an handle of the same; with this Instrument the Sand in the **Frame** is smoothed, that the Lead running on it, may have no Pimples or roughness on the sheet.

G. 3 such as these I find born by *Van Rosen*.

CXLVI. In this quarter is three Instruments of the Plummers, *viz.* a **Sheming Mallet**, a **Graver**, and a **Level**.

The **Sheming Mallet** is made of light Wood, not very hard, having a square face on one end, and worked off taper to the other end; with this Sheets of Lead are **Beaten** or **Battered**, without any danger of Bruising the same.

B. 3 such O. is born by *Mallett*.

B. a Fess between 3 such A. is born by *Myrall*.

The second in the dexter Base, is termed a **Graver**, with it they usually Engrave Letters or Devises upon the Lead to **Adorn** their Work; it is also used for many uses about the Plummers Profession, but it is not for me to Teach their Art, but to inform you of their Terms.

The third is the **Level**; with it the **Frathe** of the **Casting Board** is set streight and level; by the help of this Instrument also, being made a **Water Level**, that is, having a **Rigget** running streight through the bottom part of it (as in this Figure cut in the Plate you may see) by it, the level of a place at a distance from you may be known, whether higher or lower than the place where you stand; and that is by turning the bottom of the Level up, and setting a **Triangle** upon it, and looking to the place designed through the Rigget of the Level; and the Triangle will presently manifest whether the place be higher or lower than your Eye.

A. such a Level with its Water Level in Fess B. between 3 Plummers Plains, is born by the name of *Levelberg*.

In the Sinister Chief of this long square is 2 Pitch-Forks in Salter, the Grains erected, the Handles bowed and reverted O. these in a Field G. is the Coat of *Leskovez van Lobskirch*. Some call these 2 **Forken Staves** with **crooked Stailes** or **Handles**.

G. the like O. is born by *Gabelkhofer* of *Switzerland*.

Marshals and Gaolers Instruments.

16. UPON further Perusal of some Books and Notes, I have found some other Instruments of Torture and Cruelty, which you may be pleased to add to *numb.* 92. *&c.*

CXLVII. He beareth in this quarter the Instruments of Torture, Cruelty and Death. The first is on an Hill Vert, a **Cross Crucifix**, of some termed a **Cross to Crucify** upon, or a **Tormenting Cross**, being such a Cross as is said St. *Peter* and other Primitive Christians were put to Death upon, under the *Jewish* and *Roman* Persecutions, a **Crucifying Cross**. And such a like Bearing I find belongs to the Family of *Crucoferier* in *Italy*. *Viz.* A. on a Mount V. such a Cross G.

The second on an **Hill**, an **Hot Fiery Furnace**, or a **Furnace** with the **Fire** and **Smoak Ascendant**. This is said to be that kind of Furnace into which the Three Children of *Israel* were cast by the Command of *Nebuchadnezzar* King of *Babylon*; because they would not Worship the Golden Image which he had set up, as it is mentioned *Dan.* 3. from whose Tyranny God delivered them, suffering the Fire to have no power of them, nor the smell of Fire to be about them. B. the Hill V. the Furnace O. Fire and Smoak proper, is born by the name of *Furnivall*. See *numb.* 57. one of another fashion.

CXLVIII. He beareth in a Field of Blood, **St. James his Club**, in Bend Sinister, Or. This is set forth to be the form of that **Club** or **Bat**, by which it is said St. *James the Lesser*, one of the Apostles of our Lord

Lord was Beaten to Death withal. This is born by the name of *Club*. A **Club** or **Kible**; it is termed in *chap.* 17. *numb.* 82.

In the Sinister base is a **Whip**, or **Lash**, it is made of a **Fox tail**: A thing to punish Offenders that have full Bags, whose purses do Penence for their persons; they haveing onely a flap with the tail, when they deserve to loose their heads. The *Romans* term this an *Aspergillum*, a thing to sprinkle water with; an **Holy water stick**. A thing that the ancient *Roman Priests* used in their Sacrifices to besprinkle their Alters and people, as is manifest by the Medalls and Coines of those old tymes. se *Hemelarius* his *table n.* 37.

G. 2 such in Salter throw an Annulet O. is born by *Van Eybeswaldt* of *Austria*.

CXLIX. He beareth Gules, a **Caldron** set on a **flaming Fire**, the **Smoak ascendant**, with *St. John* **Boyling** therein, all proper. This is born by the name of *Martyr*. It is recorded of St. *John* the Divine, that Beloved Disciple of Jesus Christ, on whose Breast Jesus leaned at his last Supper; that in the Persecutions of the Church, when Deadly Poison was given him to Drink, though Killed others, yet it did him no hurt; and when he was cast into a Caldron of Boiling Oil, yet he came out again without any sign of hurt; which made that saying good which the Disciples had of him that he should never Die; but it was their wrong Interpretation of our Saviours words to him *John* 21. 22. 23. for he died at *Ephesus Anno* 102. 60 years after Christ, in his Bed, when he had lived above 100 years, notwithstanding all the Persecution and Tyranny used to the Church and People of God.

B. out of a Pot or Caldron set upon 3 Feet and Rings on the sides and before on the Belly O. with a Fire of Fagots Flaming about it; a demy *St. John* Naked, holding up his Hands together before his Breast, or in a Praying Posture in full Aspect, proper; is the Town Arms of *Fach* in the *Netherlands*.

Husbandry.

17. HUsbandry is that by which we all live, then it is good reason that nothing pertaining thereunto should be omitted that tends to Honour as well as Profit; therefore I have made here an Addition of some things that were omitted in *chap.* 8.

CL. In this quarter is three Instruments belonging to Husbandry, a **Roof Ladder**, a **Turf Spade**, and a **Sowe**, of all which according as they lye.

First, the **Roofe Ladder**, of some called a **Stoze Chamber**, or a **Cock Loft Ladder**; it is a Ladder usually made with broad **Ganges** to go into the higher Storyes of Country Houses, where they have not room or conveniency to set up a pair of **Stairs**; and for that end to secure them from slipping or sliding from their Station, have Hooks at the top to hold them to the Place or Floor whereunto they are set; and from them are termed **Hook Ladders**.

B. such another in Bend O. born by *Storn Van Ostrach* of *Schwabisch* in the *Netherlands*.

S. 3 such A. on a chief G. a Tower, is born by *Kadiver ap Difnall*, Lord of *Gilvach Wen* in *Cardiganshire*.

The second is termed a **Turf Spade**, or - - - - - Some term it a **Jews Cleaver**, or **Battel Axe**, being an Instrument used by them for Fighting, being broad and sharp edged, set into a Wooden handle after the manner of a **Halbert**. And such is born by *Avancogin*, I suppose of a *Jewish* Extraction.

B. 3 such in Fess A. Handles O. is born by *Himane*.

The Third is called by Dairy Men a **Sow**, it is a Wooden Instrument made half round, and the ends fastned in another streight piece, which may be taken off and put on the ends at pleasure. This Husbandmen use to put about their **Cows** and **Oxens** Necks, when they tye them to their **Bowles** in the Cow Houses, or such like places.

S. a Fess between 3 such O. is the Arms of the *Dairymen*.

G. 3 such A. is born by *Melckmane*.

CLI. In this quarter is also the Fragments of some **Broken Instruments** of Husbandry, as an **half quarter**, and a **quarter** of a **Wheel**, and **whole Wheels** conjoined by other sorts of Bearings, all which are found born in Coats of Arms.

First, for the half **quarter part** of a **Wheel**, I find it born by the name of *Randerjacke* of *Frankenford*. *Viz.* Or, a **Felloe**, and two **Spokes** fixed to a peece of a **Nave**, Sable. Some term it a **peece of a Wheel** with **two Spokes**. Also *Truchses van Rinck* beareth the same with the Felloe turned to the Sinister corner.

The second is a **Quarter** of a **Wheel**, and this I find to be born by several *Low Country* Gentlemen, as Azure, a Quarter of a Wheel Or, is born by *Van Blanckstein*. And Or, the like with the tops of 3 Spear Reeds on the Felloe, Sable, is born by *Van Kunheim*, both in *Silisiars* in *Germany*.

A. the like G. born by *Van Zeutsch* of *Tyrole*.

A. the like, the Felloe turned to the dexter chief S. born by *Radeck* of *Switzerland*.

The third is Gules, in **Bend two Wheels conjoined**, with a **Cross Patee**, Argent. This belongs to the Town or City of *Maintz*, which in *English* is termed *Mons* or *Monts*.

A. the like in Fess S. between 3 Roses, is born by *Wheelman*.

This is of some termed **two Wheels on an Axle Tree**, crossed in the middle, or an **Axel Tree crossed** with a Wheel at each end.

CLII. The first in this quarter is that on the dexter side which is thus Blazoned. He beareth Azure, a **Sickle**, the **edge Toothed** like a Saw Argent, the Handle Or. Born by the name of *Muckschick's*.

G. two

G. two such, the **points respecting** each other, on the back of them three **Tufts of Grass**, the Handles Or. Born by *Van Liticham* of *Misnian*.

A. 3 such in Pale, the **points reversed** G. born by *Handt* of *Frankford*.

The second in the Sinister chief, is termed a *German* **Wheel-Barrow**, or an Instrument whereby **Petards** are set to Gates over a Moat to Blow them open; for just such a Bearing as this in Bend Or; in a Field Gules, is the Coat Armour of the City of *Straubing*, alias *Strausborow* in *Lower Germany*. If I have not given this its right Blazon let me Beg Pardon, I know not what else to make of it, except it be a **Dyug**, or **Dutch Dyug**, which they call a **Knecht**. See *chap.* 8. *numb.* 146..

The third in the Sinister Base, is the **Graines** of a **Pikell** or **Pitch-Fork**; and A. 3 such S. is born by *Castil*.

☞ I have several times informed you that all pointed things are to have their right and true points erected; if otherwise, then to mention what way the point stands.

CLIII. He beareth Gules, in Bend a **Pack** or a **Turf Spade**, Argent; the Handle Or.

G. 2 such in Salter A. is born by *Van Creit*, or *Kreit* of *Bavaria*. S. the like O. by *Hevgell* of *Silitiars*.

*

A demy Man clothed S. holding the like on his right shoulder with both hands A. is the crest of *Grarodt* in *Rhine* Palatinate.

The second, is an **half Sieve**, or **Riddle**; the cutting off made up into a **point**, and **Bottonied**. The like A. in a Field S. is born by the name *Ridledorf*, or *Rideldorf*. Broken Riddles and Wheels are much born in *Dutch* Arms.

CLIV. He beareth Argent, three **Spade Soles conjoined** in their **Shanks**, in Triangle, Sable, born by the name of *Van Greysneck* in *Switzerland*. Some term them 3 **Spades conjoined** (or in Triangle conjoined) in the shanks.

The second in the Sinister chief, is Blazoned Azure, a **Sieve erected**, Or. Some term it a **Sieve standing on**, or **set on its Rime**. This is born by the name of *Ridler*. A Golden Sieve thus set on a Cushion with two Tassels Gules, is the crest of *Ottinger* of *Alsatia*.

The third is a **Cow** or **Dre Sow**, Or; in a **With** or **Rope imbowed** and **debused**, Argent, and **fired** to a **Pin**, with a demy potent head of the first. This I find to be the old crest of *Laurence* in *Lancashire*. Some term it a **Sow fired** to a **Boosee Stake**, with a Withe or Rope turned in a round.

TO

TO

The Right Worshipful

SIR ROBERT DUCKINGFIELD,

Of *Duckingfield*, Knight and Baronett.

THE End of Divine Reading and Contemplation, is for the Weal of the Spirit, and its Everlasting Happy Being; which as your Honoured self is much conversant with and instructed in; yet it may not seem much amiss, at some vacant Hours (as a time of Liberty, and set apart for Recreation) to cast an Eye upon the Rude and Unpolished Lines contained in this Academy, wherein is laid before you variety of Objects, things for Labour of Body, Study of Mind, and Pastimes for both: So hoping you will with a favourable Construction peruse that which with earnestness you have so highly promoted; and excusing the Errours, I shall ever Study how to serve you. In the interim I subscribe my self a Well-wisher of your Family and its happy estate, and your bounden Servant whilest

Randle Holme.

CHAP. VIII.

AMONGST all the Tools or Instruments used in Mechanical or Illiberal Arts or Trades, those of **Agriculture** should have precedency, it being the chief Nurse of Mans Life.

For **Husbandry** was in the time of the Ancient *Jews* and *Romans*, an Estate not unbefitting their greatest Kings, Princes and Dictators, as may appear by Holy and Prophane Writ. **Tillage** and **Husbandry** consists not only in Plowing, Sowing, Mucking or Dunging, Reaping and Threshing and such like; but also in **Pasturage, Vintage, Planting, Pruning**, with all other Terms for the increase of Cattel, or Fruit for Food: As for example, *Abel* was a Keeper of Sheep, and *Cain* a Tiller of the ground, and *Noah* a Planter of Vinyards, all which went under the Title of Husbandmen, Gen. 4. 2. and 9. 20.

Therefore **Husbandry** as it is the Ancient, so it is the most Noble, and Honorable Profession; seing it is the very life and support of all other Arts, and Misteries, without which they could not subsist. For where the increase of the field is wanting, there all other occupations cease.

Husbandry.

1. NOW many are the Instruments belonging to Husbandry, and many thereof are found in frequent use in Coats of Arms, which take as followeth.

I. He beareth Sable, a **Spade**, Argent, **shod**, Or. By the name of *Spade*.

G. one in Bend Sinister S. by *Van Sigenhosen*.

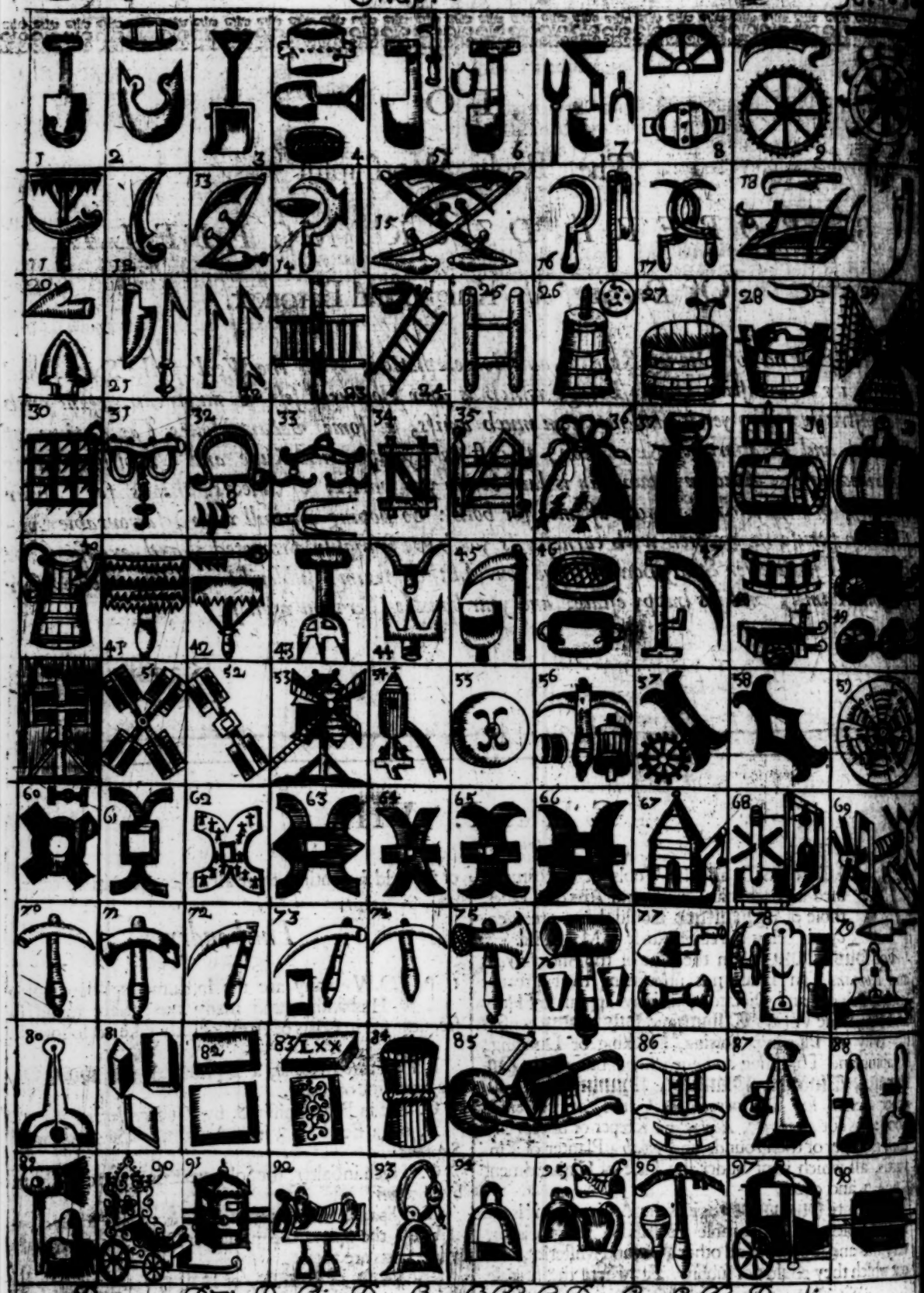
A. on a Bend V. 3 such A. born by *Swettenham* of *Swettenham*.

G. 2 such in Salter, the Soles erect or upwards A. born by *Grabner*.

G. a Spade, Handle reversed A. born by *Van Graben*.

With the Spade the ground is Digged and Delved, whose parts are these.

The **Head**, or **Handle**, or **Raspe**.



Donum Dni: Rob^ti Duckingfeild de Duckingfield Bar^ti

The **Shank** or **Staffe**.
The **Sole**, or broad plate on which the Iron is fixed.
The **Shoe**, or Spade Iron.

He beareth Vert, a **Spade Iron**, Argent (some shew for a **Spade**) in chief a **Plain Slade**, or Spade, O. born by *Blowman*.
Such Spade Irons O. born by *Bechton* of *Bechton*.
A Slade in Bend G. born by *Schwanden* of *Schwanden*.
The like in Bend G. born by *Vasam* of *Franckford*.

II. He beareth Gules, a **Shovel**, or a **Corn Shovel**, or **Malt Shovel**, Argent. by the name of *Sho*

The Handles of these kinde of Shovels used about have them over three square, or contered, and about Iron shooing.
There is an other kinde of **Shovel** used for *Garden*-which hath the Handle crosseways like a Spade and square with Iron.

III. He beareth Azure, a **Round foot Shovel** in Argent; between a **White bottom Measure**, & **Reeving Sieve**, Or. by the name of *Granhagger*.
There is an other kind of Shovel that is Square at the rounded off at the Shank, with an Head like And two such in Salter handles reversed A. in G. is born by *Van Iberg*. See *numb.* 45.
Per Pale O. and B. 2 Shovels with round soles in the (or bottom) counterchanged born by *Van Schwan*-

2 Sieves, and a Measure (or Corn Measure) O. by *Reeve*.

Measure is also termed in diverse places an a **Strike**, a **Bushel**. This being Blazoned a **Bottom Measure**, or a **Double Measure**, distinguish it from the single; this having in the the middle Division, to shew that by it Corn measured either in the top part for a full Mea-, or with the bottom part for half a Measure.

The **Reeving Sieve** is to cleanse Corn at the time Winnowing from the dreggs of Chaff, and the small of Tares and Lintels which are in it, which is ter-**Reeving of Corn**.

He beareth Vert, an **Half Spade**, Argent, born *Sheffer*. The like is born by *Smettenham* of *Somer-* in the County of *Chester*, *viz.* A. on a Bend V. A.

In this quarter being disappointed of other Room, I graven a **Cline Hook**, or a **Cline Dressers Hook**, this is another kind of **Pruning Hook**, differ to that mentioned after, *numb.* 14. G. 2 such en-with a Bunch of Grapes pendant between O. is by *Van Gorlitz*.

VI. He beareth Sable, an **Half Spade**, with a whole Handle Argent, **shved**, Or. This is another way of bearing the Half Spade, which I find anciently used by the Ancestors of *Smettenham* of *Somerford* aforesaid.

In the dexter side, is a **Spade Sole**, the shank broken away. And three such with a Fess between B. in a Field O. is born by *Semus Van Freidenberg*.

VII. He beareth Gules, an **half round footed Shovel**, and on the dexter side, a **Pickfork**, (or a **Pikel**, or **Pitchfork**) issuing out of the Base, Or; the Grains Argent. This is a third way I have seen the Ancestors of *Smettenham* aforesaid bear the Half Spade.

For the **Pitchfork** (or **Pikel**, which we vulgarly call it) it is an Instrument much used in Husbandry for their Loading and Stacking of Hay and Corn; much used also in Coats of Armour, because in former times I suppose used in War, being an excellent thing for the Defence of a Wall: Some are made with a **Socket** for the **Staff** to go into; but the general way of making them is with a **Tang** and a **Shoulder**, to go into a hole made in the Staff hooped about with Iron: Examples of both is in this quarter, and *numb.* 28.

A. 3 Pitchforks S. born by *Walley* of *Middle Wich*, in *Cheshire*.
A. a Pitchfork in Bend S. born by *Ramsdorf*.
A. on a Hill in Base, the like G. born by *Van Gera*.
G. a Cheveron between 3 Pitchfork grains, the points dejected A. a Border O. is born by the name of *Museler* in *Alsatia*. See *chap.* 9. *numb.* 134.

VIII. He beareth Or, a **Wheel Nave**, Gules; in chief a **demy Wheel**, Sable Born by the name *Naviall*. Some Blazon it a demy Wheel and a Nave, &c. naming them as they lie in the Field, according to the rule formerly given in the case of two things born as the charge of the Coat.

Per pale G. and A. the like Nave in Fess S. born by *Haydenaber*.

IX. He beareth Argent, a **Sythe Blade**, Azure; and a **Cart Wheel**, Sable. This is the Coat of *Sithall*.
G. 3 such Sythe Blades in Pale A. born by *Kempley*.
O. 3 such in Pale, Backs reversed S. quartered by *Van Biberstain*.

The **Wheel**, hath the **Rim** or **Felloes** of it plain, with 6 or 8 **Spokes**. as *numb.* 8.
The **Cart Wheel**, hath the Rim set with round Nails.
The **Catherine Wheel** hath it set with Hooks. *n.* 10.
The **Clock Wheel** is set with square Notches, called Teeth, and but 4 Spokes; see *numb.* 57.
The **Water Mill Wheel**, set with square Ladles, and many Spokes.

Wheels are born in Arms whole, or by half, or by quarters as the examples following manifest.
G. 3 Wheels O. this was the Coat of Sir *Payne Roet*, Knight, whose Daughter Married to the famous *English* Poet Sir *Geffrey Chaucer*.
B. a Wheel A. semy de Trefoils O. born by *Pollandt* of *Bavaria*.
A. the like S. born by *Vargule*. And is the crest of the

the Earl of *Reipolitz kirch* in *Germany*.

A. a Cart Wheel G. born by *Handel*.

B. a Wheel A. born by *Van Rodern*.

S. the like A. born by *Syberg*.

A. the like G. born by *Grechel* of *Alsatia*. Also by *Kutchlin*: And by *Van Hoberhausen*.

G. the like A. is the Coat of the Archbishoprick of *Maintz*.

G. a demy Wheel turned to the dexter side A. by *Rusetz Ker*.

S. 2 demy Wheels endorsed O. born by *Uberacker*.

G. 3 Wheels A. born by *Kochen*.

The parts of a Wheel.

The **Nave**, the round piece in the middle of the Wheel.

The **Bushes** are Irons within the hole of the Nave to keep it from wearing.

The **Frets** are Iron Hoops about the Nave.

The **Spokes**, are the Wheel Staves, to hold all its parts together, which are twelve in number.

The **Felloes** or **Felloes**, are the pieces which compass the Wheel, the Wheel Rim, which are - - - - - - in number.

The **Stroke**, is the Iron Rim about the Felloes.

The **Cart Nails**, great Nails with great heads, to Nail the Stroaks on the Felloes.

A **Wheel shod**, with **Strokes** and **Nails**, a compleat Wheel.

X. He beareth Gules, a **Katherine Wheel**, Or. This is a kinde of Wheel used to rent and tear in peeces grand Malefactors, and upon such an one it is said that *St. Katherine* dyed for the Faith of *Iesus Christ*, in memory of whose death it hath ever since been termed *St.* Katherins Wheel. This is born by the name of *Reden*.

S. the like O. is the Company of *Turners* Coat.

O. on a Bend B. 3 such A. born by *Rudhall*.

A. a Cross G. in the first quarter the like Wheel G. born by *Robert de Stone*.

In the Chief of this square is a kinde of **Pitch Fork** the **Grains** whereof are bent outward **Pometted** at the end. Which is termed, the **Grains contrary Bowed**, or **Bowed** and **Dorsed**. The like in Salter Grains erected A. in a field G. is born by *Waldstromer* in the Kingdom of *Bohemia*.

G. 2 Staves in Salter, the head of the dexter Flory; and the top of the sinister with a Fork Grains counterbowed A. is born by *Behaim* in *Holland*.

XI. He beareth Vert, a **Rake**, or an **Hay Rake**, O. surmounted of a Sythe blade in fesse A. by the name of *Housbott*. Others blazon it a Rake Debrused with a Sythe Iron, the edge upwards.

B. a Rake O. a Bordure G. born by *Van Skelen*.

S. on a Hill in base a Rake erected O. by *Rechen Van Hohen Leinach* of *Switzerland*.

A. 2 such in Salter S. fixed on a hill out of base V. born by *Witsendorf*.

G. a Rake O. born by *Rechenberg*.

A. 2 in Salter G. born by *Truchses Von Waldeck*.

XII. He beareth Argent, a **Sythe blade** with the **Point erected** Azure. Born by the name of *Denton*. The Sythe is an ancient bearing, and is not only used to cut down Grass and Corn, but hath been used in the Warrs. For *Alexander Magnus* had such Engines for his Souldiers to defend themselves against the force and fury of Elephants.

V. 3 such A. with the **Points ascendant**, as *Mr. Boswell* blazons them, is born by *Grasmore*. But in my Iudgment such a coat is better blazoned 3 Sythe blades in Fess, **points erected**; though some have termed them Pale-wise in Fess.

XIII. He beareth Argent, a **Sythe**, Sable. By the name of *Snayd* or *Snade*. Thus you se the Sythe completely fited and furnished for the worke of Moing, or cutting down of Grass. Whose several parts or members are thus nominated as followeth under

Parts of a Sythe.

The **Sythe**, it is that which we call the Sythe blade, or that as cutts the grass; Though when it is all furnished for the worke it is then called but a Sythe.

The **Swath**, is the long crooked Staff or Pole it is fixed unto.

The **Syth Hoop**, and **Clat**, are those that fasten the Sythe to the Swath.

The **Noggs**, are the handles of the Sythe.

The **Ripp**, is that as the Mower whetteth his Sythe withal, of some called the **Strickles**.

The **Sythe stone**, and **Horn** of Grass.

A. the like with a flower de lis S. is born by *Snead* of *Keele* in *Staffordshire*.

G. a Sythe A. born by the name of *Praers*.

A. on a Fess G. an Escallop O. between 3 Sythes S. born by *Alcock* of *Chester*.

XIV. He beareth Vert, an **Hedging Hook**, (or a **Pruning Hook**,) Argent, the **Handle**, Or. Born by the name of *Hedgham*. The like Instruments are born by *Van Larisch*, as I have set it down *chap.* 16. *numb.* 121.

In the Sinister side hereof is another Instrument of Husbandry used by them who use Oxe Wains; it is called a **Goad**; and is nothing else but an **Iron pin** put into the end of a **long Stick**, and made sharp at the end, whose use is to prick forward the Oxen in the draught. The *Philistines* when they would not suffer a Smith to live amongst the *Hebrews*, lest they should make them Swords and Spears, yet permitted them to have a File for to sharpen their Goads, which was strange (knowing that *Shamgar* not many Ages before had slain 600 of them with an Oxe Goad) that they would suffer it, 1 *Sam.* 13. 21. and *Judg.* 3. 31.

In the dexter side between the bending of the Hook is a little broad flat Dish made of Wood, called by Dai-

ry

ry Women a **Scimming Dish**, it is to scum the Cream of the Lew Milk to Churn for Butter. B. 3 such A. is born by *Cream*.

XV. He beareth Gules, two **Sythes counterpoised** and **Bilded** one in the other Salterwise, the Blades Argent, the rest Or. born by the name of *Willinger*.

B. 2 in like posture A. born by *Walbecheim*.

XVI. He beareth Sable, a **Sickle**, Argent, and a **Flail**, Or. These are two Instruments used by Husbandmen, the first to Reap or cut down Corn when it is ripe; the users whereof are termed **Reapers**, vulgarly **Shearers**: The second is to **Thrash** or Thresh the Corn, or beat it out of its Chaffy Husk; the worker therewith is called a **Thrasher**; To these Instruments Scripture doth alude, when the Angel cryeth aloud, that the Harvest of the World was ripe, thrust therefore in the Sickle, *Rev.* 14. 15. 16. and Reap: And the Sickle was thrust in, and the Earth was Reaped; meaning thereby the end of the World, and last Judgment, where the Flail shall not only make a separation between the Chaff and the Corn, but is said to be the Judgment and Punishment of all Wicked persons, *Isa.* 41. 15. 16. *Jer.* 5. 33. *Hab.* 3. 12.

The parts of a Flail or Threshal.

The **Hand Staff**, that as the Thresher holds it by.

The **Swiple**, that part as striketh out the Corn.

The **Cap-lings**, the strong double Leathers made fast to the top of the Hand-staff, and the top of the Swiple.

The **Middle-Band**, that Leather Thong, or Fish Skin as tyeth them together.

A **Threshall** or **Flail**, some corruptly a **Frail**, when all compleated together.

B. 3 Sickles (or Sheering or Reaping Hooks) A. born by *Sickler*.

G. 2 endorsed A. Handles O. born by *Gridensingen*.

Per Fesse S. and A. 2 respecting each other in Base S. Handles O. by *Van Husinden*.

A. 2 Flails in Salter S. born by the name of *Tribule*.

XVII. He beareth Gules, two **Sickles Imbraced**, Argent, the **Handles**, Or. By the name of *Sladey*.

2 such B. Handles G. is the crest of *Reicharting*.

XVIII. He beareth Vert, a **Plough**, or **Plow**, Or; the **Suck** and **Culter**, Argent. By the name of *Plusher*. And B. 3 Plows A. born by *Smeton* of *York-shire*.

Azure, a Plough in Fesse (as Mr. *Gwillims* terms it) Argent, is born by the name of *Kroge*.

It was wont in Antient times, when Cities were to be Built, to limit out the Circuit thereof, by drawing of a **Furrow** with a **Plough**; so it was also used when they intended the final Destruction of a City to Plow it up, and to sow it with Salt, as we may Read *Judg.* 9. 45. But now it is an Instrument used only for Husbandry, as Agriculture or Tillage of Land.

The Terms of all the parts of a Plow.

The **Sough** or **Suck**, is that as Plows into the ground.

The **Culter**, is that as cuts the Clod.

The **Throck**, is the piece of Timber on which the Suck is fixed.

The **Reest**, is the Boards on the side of the Plow that turns over the Furrow.

The **Shell Board**.

The **Mould Board**.

The **Plow Beam**.

The **Sheath**, is that which holds the Beam and Throck together.

The **Buck**, is the Iron which the Horses are tyed unto.

The **Plow Cock**, is the Iron to tye the Oxen to the Plow.

The **Foot**, is the piece of Hooked or Bended Wood, at the end of the Plow, under the Suck; which is to keep it from going too deep in the Earth.

The **Plow tails** or **Stilts**.

The **Plow Handles**, are them by which the Man guideth the Plow.

The **Master Handle**, is that on the left hand, which he holdeth while he cleareth the Plow from clogging earth.

The **Plow Staff** and **Paddle**, by which he cleanseth the Plow from the said clogged Earth or Mould.

Wedges, to wedge the Culture, and hold it fast.

The **Plow Clats**, a kind of Wedge to raise the Beam higher or lower, to make it strike accordingly into the ground.

Terms used in Plowing.

Tillage, comprehends generally all manner of Husbanding of Ground.

Vertillage, is a preparing of Ground to receive its Seed by stirring, tossing or turning the same.

Delvage, see **Vertillage**.

Carvage, is Plowing of Ground, either Ordinary for Grain, Hemp and Line, or extraordinary for Woad, Diers Weed, Rape, Punick and such like.

Scaphiage, is Digging and Delving of Ground, and preparing of Soil with Spades and Hand Instruments, for Sowing, Setting and Planting of Seeds, Herbs, Plants, Trees, *&c.*

Fictilage, is an ordering of Clayie ground for what use we would have it.

Fertilage, is an enriching of Soil.

Share, is the Earth next under the first Crust, turned up by Spade or Plow.

Sweard, of some called **Swarth**, the Turf or upper Crust of Heath Ground.

Broovage or **Browsage**, is feeding of Sheep and Goats.

Crust cling, or **Soil Bound**, is an hard sticking

ing together of the Earth, that nothing will grow on it.

Chapping, is ground full of Chinks and Cravises by reason of Drought.

Mucking or Manuring of Ground, is several ways, as with Ashes, Lime, Malt Dust, Horn shavings, Soot, Dung of Horses, Cows, Birds, Doves, Poultry, Mans Excrements, Sheep, Swine, putrified Litter, Chaff, Bean Stalks, Leaves of Trees laid to rot, Marl, Chalk, Fullers Clay, Oyster shells, *&c.*

Fallow ground, Land unplowed.

Tithes,

Forage,

Glebe Land, Land given to the Church for the Ministers Maintenance.

Intersoiling, is laying one kind of Soil or Earth upon another as Clay and Sand, or Sand and Earth, *&c.*

Arable Ground, that as is Plowed and Sowed.

Flats, ground having no ridges.

Tessel, in good Tessel, ground in good Order for Plowing and Sowing.

Pin Fallow, is a Plowing twice for Pease, first in *Christmas*, then in *March*.

Compost, compound or mixt grounds.

Earing of Ground,

Brise, is a kind of ground lyen long untilled.

Grazing Ground, that which is eaten of Cattel.

Meadow Ground, that as is let grow for Hay.

Third Earing, the third time Plowed.

Carse, the Ground unbroken.

Balk, waste Ground between two Butts or Ridges.

Dezy, or wet ground.

Trenches, or Water Furrows.

In the chief of this quarter is the head of an **Hedging Bill sans Handle,** which is made generally with a **Socket** to put it in; such Bearings are ever erect, though for want of room I have made it Fesswise. Per pale A. and S. 2 such counterchanged born by the Count *Jorger* in *Germany*. See *chap.* 17. *numb.* 83.

XIX. He beareth Sable, a **Culture** (or a **Plow Culter,** or **Cooter** vulgarly; or a **Plow Knife**) Argent. Born by the name of *Cultman*.

A. a Cheveron between 3 such S. born by *Leversage* of *Whelock* in *Cheshire*.

B. 2 **Culters endorsed** and **points erected,** O. born by *Bissing*.

A. 3 in Pale G. born by *Kohler*, and also by *Van Crosig*. The same is born with the points to the sinister side by *Aus Dem Winckell*, all Families in *Saxony*.

G. 2 in Salter endorsed A. born by *Runge*.

S. 2 endorsed points erected A. by *Von Rastelwitz*.

XX. He beareth Sable, a **Sough** (or **Suck**) the **point erected,** Argent. This is a **Sough** in its **full Aspect,** in which you may see the rising on the sides; the other Sough in the Chief, being set sideways to sight, wherein no more but the rising of the sides is visible, which kind of draught of a Sough, is termed a **Sough fore-shortened.**

A. a Sough G. born by *Mosheim* of *Frankford*.

O. a Sough in Bend sinister, the point upwards B. is born by *Van Bul'ing* of *Bavaria* in *Germany*.

2 erected, **coerectant,** or set together O. is the crest of *Van Krosig*. Some term it **expansed,** or set beside one the other.

XXI. He beareth Azure, a **demy Sough,** and an **Hay hook,** Argent; the **Handle,** Or. By the name of *Speedwell*.

The **Hay Hook,** is an Instrument that is used in Husbandry for the pulling out of Hay made either in a **Rick, Stack,** or **Hoth,** when they are about to Fodder their Cattel and Beasts. The *Dutch* make their Soughs flat, without any turning up in the edges.

A. 3 demy Soughs in Pale G. born by *Cohler* of *Saxony*. Also by *Van Krosig*.

S. 3 in triangle, their heads conjoined to a Rose A. by *Grolandt*.

A. 3 such points erected G. born by *Hagken*.

B. 2 Hay hooks **in point,** the **Hooks reversed** and **endorsed,** A. by the name of *Saurzapfen* of *Bavaria*.

B. an Hay Hook reversed, the handle after the shape of a Falcons head, and semy de Billets O. born by *Forstmeistr van Geilhavsen*.

B. 2 in Salter O. born for the Arms of the Town of *Hewbach*.

G. 3 Staves one in Pale the other in Salter, headed with Hay Hooks O. born by the name of *Kehling* of *Austria*.

B. 2 such in Salter, the Hooks endorsed, in Base a Shapournet shapournated O. born by *Weisen*.

B. the like in Salter, with a Forked Handle O. with the like Shapournet. Born by *Van Ploben*.

XXII. These are two other ways of drawing the **Hay Hook,** which in *Dutch* and *German* Coats I have often seen so made, of whom I shall say no more, but tell you one is a **plain Staff,** the other with an **Handle made by Nature,** which is a little Branch growing out of the side Fork like.

XXIII. He beareth Azure, on a **Pole extending** from the **Chief to Base,** a **Turning Cratch,** Or. Born by *Derhud*.

O. the like G. in chief 2 Roses. Born by *Van Hasbergen*.

XXIV. He beareth Sable, a **Ladder in Bend sinister,** Or. By the name of *Montesball*.

B. the like A. born by *Van Ebra* of *Thurnegrans*. Also by *Waysen*.

B. a Ladder erected supported by 2 Hands couped in the Arm, Sleeve G. turned up A. born by *Van Steige*. The like is his Crest.

In a **Ladder** there is only the **two sides,** and the **overthwart pieces,** which are termed **gangs,** or **staves,** or **foot staves**; the length of a Ladder is mentioned by its Staves, as a Ladder of 6, 8, 10, or 12 gangs or staves; not to say of 3, 4, or 5 yards or foot long.

In the dexter chief is a kind of Wooden Dish with a large

large round hole in the bottom of it with a Rim about it, which is by Milk Women called a **Seigh**; and having a Cloth tied about the hole, Milk runs through it, which takes away all hairs from the Milk; this in our Country is termed Seighing of Milk. B. 3 such O. is born by *Purlate*.

XXV. He beareth Gules, a **Cheese Ladder**, Argent. This is a thing in frequent use with Dairy people; and without it Cheese cannot be conveniently made, for it serveth to lay over the **Cheese Tub** for the **Cheese Fat** to rest upon, while the Dairy Woman presseth the **Whay** out of the **Cruds** in the Cheese-Fat, into the Tub. This is born by the name of *Gadriffe*. V. 3 such O. is born by *Latherchesse*.

XXVI. He beareth Vert, a **Churn covered**, with the **Staff** therein. By the name of *Buttman*. That the Churn and Churn-Staff are of old born in Coats of Arms, I have shewed before, *chap.* 5. *numb.* 70.

In the Sinister chief, is the bottom of a Churn-Staff.

XXVII. He beareth Azure, a **Milk Pail**, Argent. This is the Badge and Cognizance of the Milk Maids, whom I have heard give this sort of Vessel several denominations; of some it is called a **Pail**, a **Truck**, an **Ethon**, of others a **Bouk**. This is born by the name of *Peel*, or *Paile*.

XXVIII. He beareth Sable, a **Cheese Tub covered**, Or. Born by *Van Taubman*, of *Saxony*.

In the chief is set a Pikel grains, with a Tang, which is only to shew you the form of both this, and that mentioned *numb.* 7.

All the Terms used by Dairy People about making of Cheese and Butter.

Runnet or Steep, Renish
Clotted, cruded Milk.
Cruds.
Break the Cruds.
Whay.
Thruching.
Whay Cream.
Fleeting.
Sweet Cheese.
Sage, or Mint, or Marygold Cheese.
New Milk Cheese.
Flet and unflet Milk Cheese.
Two Milk Cheese.
Flet Milk Cheese.
Faded Cheese, when it is either Rotten, full of Mites, or Green.
Parmazine, or old Cheese.
Thruch them in the Cheese-Fate.
Press the Cheese.
Salt the Cheese.
Dry the Cheese.
Turn the Cheese.

Milk the Cows.
Seigh the Milk.
New Milk.
Scum the Milk.
Cream. Top of Milk.
Good Milk.
Lew Milk.
Boni Thlobber, is good Milk gone thick.
Cracked Milk.
Churn Milk. Butter Milk.
Thick Milk, is Churned Milk gone thick.
Whigg, is the bottom or breaking of thick Milk.
Wash the Butter.
Knife the Butter.
Salt it. Pot it.

A Print of Butter.
A Dish of Butter.
A Pot or Tub of Butter.
Whay Butter.
Cream Butter.

XXIX. He beareth Argent, three **Harrows conjoined** to a **With** or **Wreath**, Sable. By the name of *Husbandry*. The like Coat is born by *Harrow*, *viz.* Erm. three Harrows conjoined in the Nombrill of the Escochion with a Wreath Argent, and as the second, Toothed, Or; so Blazoned by Mr. *Grillim*, *fol.* 291. but much of his terms might have been spared, for it cannot be any where else but in the **Fesse point conjoined**, except more of them be set in the Field. Some term these **Triangle Harrows**. B. one such with a Ring at the top A. Teeth S. is born by *Eglingen* of *Bavaria*.

XXX. He beareth Vert, an **Harrow**, Argent, **pitned**, Sable. By the name of *Harrompin*. In former times Husbandmen made all these Instruments three square, as in the foregoing example; but now this form is only in use, whose several parts are,

The **Harrow Bulls**, the holes where the Nails go in.
The **Slotes**, the cross pieces.
The **Harrow Tiles**, or **Pins**, or **Tushes**, are the Iron Nails.
The **Hook**, is that as fastens the Horse to them.
Couples, are when two Harrows are tyed together.

XXXI. He beareth Vert, a **Yoke**, (an **Ore Yoke**) Or; with a **Chain** and **Hook pendant** thereunto, Argent. By the name of *Yokely*. This is an Instrument of Subjection, by which Oxen used to the Yoke are tyed together to Draw either in the Plough or Cart) It is an Emblem of Servitude and Patience, Submission and Obedience; so on the contrary, the refusing or casting off of the Yoke is a token of Freedom, as we find mentioned in several places in Scripture, as *Gen.* 27. 40. *Lev.* 26. 13. *Isa.* 10. 27. Sometimes of Rebellion and Disobedience, as in *Jer.* 5. 5. *Psal.* 2. 2.

Leo the Tenth bore the Yoke for his Impress, with the word *SWAVE*; to signifie that to Serve well, was to Reign well.

The parts of a Yoke.

The **Yoke**, the thick piece of Wood which lyeth on the Oxens Neck.
The **Bowes**, that as compasses the Necks about and goeth through the Yoke of Wood.
The **Stickings** and **Wreathings**, are them hold the Bowes fast in the Yoke.
The **Yoke Ring**, and **Ore Chain**.

XXXII. He beareth Gules, a **Cop-sole** and pitch with its **Chain pendant**, Argent. By the name of *Cop*
A. a Cheveron between 3 such A. is born by the name of *Anderton* of *Anderton*, in *Lancaster*.

T

This is very often by old Heralds termed a **Dog-Couple**, but very improperly. I should rather take it for a **Shakle** and **Bolt**, with the Chain hanging at it, for that is *Andertons* proper Coat, though some for want of Skill, not of Ignorance, have made it thus; see *chap. 7. numb.* 86.

In the dexter Base of this square, is the form of a **Pelve** or **Dung Fork**, the **Tangs Imbowed, sans staile and handle.** A. 3 such is born by the name of *Dunhill.*

A. 2 such S. the Staves in Salter O. born by *Van Hopgarten* of *Hassia.*

XXXIII. He beareth Sable, the **Swingle Tree** of a **Coach Pole**, Argent. born by the name of *Springal.* These are made of wood and are fastned by Iron hooks stables chains and pinns to the Coach pole, to the which Horses are fastned by their **Parnish** when there is more then two to draw the Coach. *se cha. 9 num* 162 *

Some call this the **Pin Swingle Tree**, with its **Spying Trees.**

G. the like A. born by *Van Mengersfrevt* of *Bavaria.*

In the Base of this quarter is set a **Pikell** or **Pitch-fork Grains**, with **three points**; and such an Instrument I find born with the points erected Or. in a Field Argent, by the name of *Van Der Gabell*, of the Province of *Tyrold* in *Germany*; or term it a **Pitchfork** of three **Tangs** or **Grains.**

XXXIV. He beareth Vert, an **Hatch**, (or a **Field Hatch**) Or. This is a diminutive **Field Gate**, which is placed in the Hedge to open and shut, only to let a single Beast in and out of the Field, whether Horse, Cow or Oxe, and to secure the Pasture from all Tres-passes in that place; Also for Milk Maids to go in and out safely without climing or going over **Stiles.** And such an Hatch I find born in Bend Sinister A. in a Field G. by the name of *Van Haxthusen* of *Brunswick.*

V. 3 such O. is born by *Hatcher.*

XXXV. He beareth Argent, a **Field Gate**, (or a **Pate**) Gules, born by the name of *Cargate.*

G. a Fess between 3 such G. born by *Yates* of *London.*

A. a Fess between 3 such S. born by *Yates* of *Oxon.*

Party per Cheveron O. and B. 3 Yates counter-changed, born by *Yates* of *Middle Wich* in *Cheshire.*

XXXVI. He beareth Gules, a **Setchal** or **Leather Bag**, born by the name of *Stretall.* This is the Plow Mans Pantry, in which his Provision is put, and carried on his Shoulder, when he is for the Plow and Harrow.

V. 3 such O. born by *Vachen* or *Machen*, or *Machell.*

XXXVII. He beareth Sable, a **Sack**, or **Pough of Corn tyed up**, the **Strings extended** Argent. By the name of *Poughten.* It is termed a **Sack** when it contains about 4, 5, or 6 Measures of Corn; a **Pough** when it holds 1, 2, or 3; but a **Bag** when it can hold but 1, 2, or 3 Pecks.

B. 3 such A. born by *Sackell.*

*

Per pale A. and G. 2 such counterchanged, born by *Montsax* of *Bavaria.*

XXXVIII. He beareth Vert, an **Harvest Bottle**, Or. By the name of *Bottle.* These Bottles are made of Coopers Ware, Timber and Hops; and such I find also to be born by the name of *Rothen. Viz.* G. 3 Harvest Bottles O. See them made another manner or way *numb.* 39.

In the Chief of this quarter is a **Rack** of 5 **Staves**, the midle-most **Erected** and **Pointed** or **Fitched.**

Of some it is termed a **Turning Hatch**, or **Turn-style gate:** Others give it the Denomination of a **Grid Iron**, the **Handle pointed** and **erected:** Which in my Iudgment it most resembleth.

S. 3 such O. is born by the name of *Mildeck.*

The like Gold, is the Crest of *Von Der Deck* of *Frankford.*

XXXIX. He beareth Argent, a **Leather Bottle**, Sable. Some term it an **Harvest Bottle** of Leather. This and the foresaid are kind of Bottles, which Coopers and Mowers use to carry their Drink or Milk in, when they are about such Harvest Work. This is born by the name of *Leatherbottle.*

A. a Cheveron V. between 3 such S. by the name of *Voydall.*

In the base of this square is another form of an **Harvest Bottle**, with a kind of **Ridged Top** towards the drinking place; and thus the *Germans* make them; for *Van Vohenstein*, in a Field A. beareth 3 such O.

XL. He beareth Gules, an **Harvest Tankard**, or **Harvest Can**, Or. born by *Harvister.* Some blazon it a Tankert with a **Mouth peece**, or **Mouth pipe**, because by it Harvest people may drink with more ease then by lifting the whole vessel to their heads.

S. 3 such O. is born by *Tankervile.*

XLI. He beareth Sable, a **Curry Comb**, or an **Horse Comb**, Argent; the **Handle**, Or. by the name of *Curryeume.* Also *Maner*, or *Maineere*, beareth G. 3 of them A. handles O.

Parts of a Curry-Comb.

The **Barrel**, or Back of the Comb, that part which is plain without teeth. The **Plate**, The **Teeth**. The **Shank**, that which holds the Barrel to the Handle. The **Handle.** The **Ring**, that as it hangs by.

XLII. The Field is Azure, an **Open Curry Comb** Argent, Handle Or. born by *Horsten*, or *Horstell.*

This is an other way of drawing the Horse Comb, haveing no back, and but one rowe of Teeth. That also in the Chief I take to be an other sort of Curry Comb used by *Grooms*, and *Ostlers* of Stables; to comb and lay smooth the horse Manes and Tailes: And therefore is fitly termed the **Grooms Mane Comb**, or an **Horse Mane Comb.**

G. 3

G. 3 mane Combs in Pale, Bendwayes Sinister, A. is born by *Spetten* a *Duch* familey.
B. 3 such Erected A. born by *Pallatt.*

XLIII. He beareth Argent, a **Worthing Forke,** or a **Dung Fork,** Gules; **Shooed** or **Pointed,** Sable. by the name of *Worthingford.* This is an Instrument, by which Husbandmen **Peron** or **Peron,** that is, cleans their Stables, and Cowe houses from the Beasts dung, casting it out to the Muck hill: And from thence with the same Forke, or **Pelve,** (or **Evill** as some call it) cast it into Carts to carry it a way to muck, or manure the ground that is for either Pasture or Tillage.

Parts of a Yelve.

The **Barr,** or Cross Bar. The **Tangs,** or Forks
The **Socket,** for the Stail to go in. The **Staile.**
Te **Kaspe,** is the top part on which the man holds.

There is an other sort of these Dung Forks with only two ends or points, and without a **Kaspe,** or **Potent,** on the head. Which I find thus blazoned, G. 2 Dung forks in Salter, the Irons **Bi-forked, Barred** and **Sockets,** A. the Stailes, O. Born by the name of *Van Gabelthosen* of *Bavaria.* se it in the chief of *num* 44

XLIV. He beareth Or, two **Dung forks, sans handles;** as some term them. But I should rather give them the names of one, a **Dung Iron** with 2 **Forks** or Points; else a **Pelve Iron** with **two Ends.** And the other **Treble pointed,** and **Erected.**

A. on a Pile G. a Dung Iron of 2 forks (or a Dung fork **Graines**) of the first. born by *Van Gabelentz.*
O. 3 such S. born by *Byforke.*

A. a Yelve Iron head S. born by *Beastire.*
G. 3 such points erected O. born by *Moxmaine.*

XLV. He beareth a **Shovell bottome erected,** and a **Pick** or **Pioneers Pick,** Or: in a field Sable. born by the name of *Miner.* These are also distinct coats of themselves as
V. 3 such Picks O. is born by *Fotner.*
G. a Pick A. handle Q. born by *Dilling.*

Per pale A. & B. a Shovell Bottom, or a Shovell sans shanke, square at the foot and round above B- is born by *Hochsleter.*
G. the like erected party per pale A. & B. is the Coat & Crest of *Schutensam* of *Franckford.*
G. 3 such O. born by *Count Meggaw* in *Germanie.*

XLVI. He beareth Argent, a **Sive** or **Ridle,** the **Rim** Or, **Bottomed** Sable, and an **Hoop** Tenne, **handles** Azure. Born by the name of *Winnowist.* this last is also termed a **Bushel, Measure,** or a *Winchester* Measure, or **Strick.**
A. 3 Ridles S. is born by the name of *Weisen.*
S. an Hoop measure O. handles A. born by *Iustice.*

Sives or Riddles.

There are severall sorts of **Sives,** and all have a Denomination from the Bottoms which are put in them, and to the fineness or coursness of the things to be sifted through them. as for example,

The **Coale** or **Lyme Sive,** hath wide square holes made in the Bottoming, that a mans finger may be thrust throw each hole, and the bottom made of Split wood.

The **Garden Sive,** it is Bottomed with strong wyer the squares being as large as the former. These two are generally termed **Ridles,** and so are all wide bottomed Sives.

The **Reeveing Sive,** of it *see numb:* 4.

The **Meale Sive,** or **Bolting Sive,** it is bottomed with a kinde of fine haire cloth which is so wide in the holes, that meale or fine flore of ground corn will go throw it, but the course Bran remaine behind.

The **Fine Sive,** or **Silke Sive,** it is so fine a tiffinie bottom, that nothing but the pure Dant of corn ground will go through it, all maner of Bran staying behind within the Rim.

The **Searce,** or **Searcer,** it is a fine Sieve with a Leather cover on the top and bottom of the Sieve Rim, to keep the Dant or Flower of any Pulverized Substance that nothing be lost of it in the Searceing.

Corn Measures.

A Pint, or Cup, or Can. is the least of dry measures.
A Quart measure, is two Pints.
A Pottle, is two Quarts. A Gellon, is 2 Pottles.
by these all greater **Measures** are Measured, as
An Halfe Peck, of old it contained 5 Quarts, but by *Winchester* Measure to which by the *Statute of the Land* all others now conforme, is but 4 Quarts and a Pint.
A Peck, is 2 Gallons and a Quart. In some parts of the Kingdom it is called a Bushel of which 4 maketh a Measure of any kinde of graine.
A **Measure,** an **Hoop,** or a **Strick,** is 4 Pecks, or 9 Gallons. Yet some reckon but 8 gallons to the Measure, which in some places is also called a Bushel.
A **Bushell,** is 4 Measures of Corn, and 5 of Oates, with our countrey people.
A **Quarter,** is 8 Measures, or 2 **Cornocks.**
A **Cholldron,** is 36 Measures *&c.* But of these see more in *lib:* 3 *chap:* 5 *numb:* 144.

The **Strickles,** is a thing that goes along with the **Measure,** which is a straight Board, with a Staffe fixed in the side, to draw over Corn in measureing, that it exceed not the height of the **Measure.** Which measureing is termed **Wood and Wood.**

Now seeing we are entered the discourse of these dry Measures, it will not be amise to set down in this place, the names and quantities of the *Hebrew, Greek,* and *Roman* Measures, with what proportion they bear to our *English* assizes, either for Weight, or Measure.

Hebrew Measures.

The **Kab**, is a quart *English*.
The **Omer**, is three pints and an halfe.
The **Seah**, or **Satum**, a gallon and halfe.
The **Ephah**, halfe a Bushell and a pottle.
The **Lethec**, 2 Bushell, 6 gallons and a pottle.
The **Cor**, or **Homer**, is 41 gallons. *viz:* 10 Epha's or 30 Stata's.
The **Log**, is halfe a Pint.
The **Hin**, is three Quarts.
The **Bath**, or **Bathus**, is 4 gallons and an half.
The **Cadus**, is 10 or 12 gallons, or 6 Congius's.
The **Bad**, or **Badat**, is 12 congius's or 72 sextaries.

Greek Measures.

A **Tetarton**, the 4 part of a Sextarius. a Gill.
A **Xestes**, is a Pint. or a pint and an halfe.
A **Cotula Attica**, the halfe of a Xestes. *viz:* halfe a Pint and a quarter.
A **Cotula Georgica**, is 20 ounces & 19 graines.
An **Drypaphon Attica**, the 8 part of a Xestes.
An **Drypaphon Georgica**, is 2 ounces an half and four grains
A **Cyathos attica**, is 2 charats 15 graines and an half.
A **Cyathos Georgica**, the 6 part of a Cotula.
A **Medimnos Attica**, a Bushel 1 gallon 3 pints & 18 penny weight.
A **Medimnos Georgica** a Bushel 7 gallons 5 ounces 3 quarters 2 Charats and 8 graines.
A **Chaenix Attica**, a pint 8 ounces 1 charat and 19 graines.
A **Chaenix Georgica**, a quart, also 6 ounces 2 charats 18 graines and an halfe.
A **Metrates**, or **Metrata**, is a firkin gallon 3 pints & 18 penny weight. also 118 pounds. It is diversly taken by Authors for 10 12 or 13 gallons
A **Chus Attica**, is 3 quarts. *viz.* 6 Sextarius's.
A **Chus Georgica**, is a gallon & a pint.
An **Amphoreos Georgica**, is 5 gallons and a pint.

Roman Measures.

A **Cotyla**, or **Cotula**, is half a *Sextarius*, *viz.* a Pint, or a pound weight *Troy*, that is 12 ounces.
A **Sextarius**, is 2 *Hemina's*, a Quart, or a Pint according to the place, *viz.* 20 ounces.
A **Hemina**, is 4 *Acetabulum's*. or *Semi Sextarius*. *viz.* 10 or 12 ounces.
An **Acetabulum**, is halfe a *Cyathus*, or 2 ounces and an halfe ounce.
A **Cyathus**, is 4 *Lygula's*. or the 6 part of a *Cotyla*. *viz.* halfe an ounce a Drachma or Drame and a Scruple.
A **Ligula**, is 3 Drams and a Scruple.
A **Sextarius Castrensis**, is in the Camp or Army a Quart. But **Sextarius Urbicus**, is in the Citty only a Bint or 2 ounces 3 quarters.
A **Quartarius**, is the 4 part of a *Sextarius*. or a *Congius*. *viz.* an halfe pint.
A **Charat**, 24 maketh an ounce weight.
A **Drachma**, or a Drame.
A **Scrupulus**, or Scruple.
A **Congius**, is a Pottle a quart and a pint. also 5 ounces and a quarter in weight.
A **Modius**, is a Bushel, or a Peck. It containeth 26 pounds 8 ounces
A **Semodius**, is 8 *Sextarius's* or 13 pound 4 ounces
A **Trimodius**, is 3 Bushels.
An **Urna**, is 3 gallons 1 pottle and 1 pint. also it is 9 ounces in weight.
An **Amphora**, is 7 gallons 1 quart 1 pint & halfe.
A **Culeus**, or **Culleum**, is 148 gallons 1 pottle and a quart.
A **Cochlea**, is 2 spoons full, or 6 drams.

The *Chalchus*, is 2 graines. or 36 part of a dram.
The *Siliqua*, is 4 gr: or 6 part of a scruple.
The *Semiobolus*, is 6 graines.
The *Bissiliqua*, is 8 graines.
The *Obolus*, is 12 gr: or 6 part of a dram.
The *Scrupulus*, is 14 gr: or 3 part of a dram.
The *Semidrachma*, is 36 graines.
The *Drachma*, is 72 gr: or 8 part of an ounce.
The *Tremissis*, is 32 gr: or 18 part of an ounce.
The *Sextula*, is 4 scruples. or 6 part of an ounce.
The *Siclus*, or *Sicilicus*, is 2 drams, or the 4 part of an Ounce *Troy* weight.
The *Duella*, is 2 drams & 2 thirds of a dram, or the 3 part of an ounce.
The *Assarion*, or *Assarius*, is half an ounce.
The *Vncia*, is an ounce, or 8 drams.
The *Sextans*, is the 6 part of a pound *Troy*. 2 ounces.
The *Quadrans*, is the 4 part of a pound. *viz.* 3 ounces
The *Triens*, is 3 part of a pound, or 4 ounces.
The *Selibra*, or *Semissus*, is half a pound. 6 ounces.
The *Bes*, *Bessis*, is 8 parts of a pound, *viz.* 8 ounces
The *Dodrans*, is 9 ounces, or 3 quarters of a pound.
The *Dextans*, is 10 parts of a pound, or 10 ounces.
The *As*, *Assis*, or *Libra*, is a pound weight.
The *Mina*, or *Nona*, is 12 ounces & an halfe.
The *Zygostatica Libra*, is a pound of 16 ounces.
The *Xesta*, or *Sequilibra*, is a pound & an halfe.
The *Dipondium*, is 2 pound weight.
The *Tressis*, is 3 pound weight.
The *Quadrussis*, is 4 pound weight.
The *Quintussis*, is 5 pound weight.
The *Decussis*, is 10 pound weight.
The *Vicessis* is 20 pound weight.
The *Tricessis*, is 30 pound weight.
The *Quadricussis*, is 40 pound weight.
The *Semicentussis* is half a 100. or 50 pound weight.
Their *Centussis*, is 100 pound weight.
The *Quingenarius*, is 500 pound weight.
The *Mille Pondium*, is 1000 pound weight. *&c.*

In the reduceing of these ancient Measures into our *English* Assize, I have had respect only to this proportion *Viz.*

Half Gill. which is 4 Spoonfulls. Gill. or Quidran, is 4 to a pint. Half Pint, is 2 gills. Pint is 4 gills. Quart is 2 pints. Pottle is 2 quarts. & Gallon is 2 pottles, *&c.* as aforesaid *se cha. 11 n. 91*

And so of Weights, I have had respect to that of *Troy* only, as a Graine, which is the weight of a Wheat corn, which is sometymes divided into halfes, quarters *&c.*
A Charat is 6 graines, or 4 part of a scruple.
A Scruple is 14 graines, or 3 part of a dram.
A Penny Weight is 24 graines.
A Dram is 72 graines, or 8 part of an Ounce.
An Ounce is 20 penny weight, or 24 charate, or 24 scruples, or 8 drams, or 576 graines.
A Pound is 12 ounces *Troy.*

The **Strickles** go along with this **Measure**, which is a straight board with a staffe fixed in the side, to draw over the Corn in the measureing, that it exceed not the height of the Measure.

XLVII. He beareth Purpure, a **German Sythe**, Argent, the **handle** or **Staffe**, Or. Born by the name of *Van Delough.*

This I term a German Sythe because they draw them in their books of Herauldry, after this forme. Else you may term it, an **Ancient Syth**, with the end of the **Swath**, and one **Nogg**, **Potent.** Some only give it the name of an Old fashioned Sythe. se others much like this. *chap. 9 num.* 135.

XLVIII. He beareth Gules, a **Slade**, Or, and a **Cumbrell**, Argent. These are things used by Carters and Husbandmen, for the carriage of Commodities from place to place.

The first is drawn along the ground by the streugth of horses. from whence it is termed a **Slade**, or **Sladge**, because it Slides away. Some call it a **Plow Slade.**

The **Dragg**, is a thing also for carriage, and is of the same nature to the Sladge: only it hath a Back of cross peeces to stay any thing on it from sliping off, when the forepart is raised up. For the two side peeces are so long, that they will reach to the sides of an horse, where the ends are made fast to the **Trill sadle**, and **Collar**; That when the horse goeth forward it will Dragg after him, from whence it tooke its name. Of the Welsh men that follow husbandry it is much used, because they can goe on the hills with them, where Wheels cannot turn. It is like a Wheel Barrow without a wheel, some I have also seen with two smal wheels as the hinder end of them iust under the back.

The second termed a **Cumbrell**, or **Muck Cart**, or an **Horse Cart**, it is the least sort of Carts, it hath two wheels, of which I have spoken before *num.* 9. the remaining part of such Carts are these.

Parts of a Cart or Tumbrel, and Wain or Team.

A **Cart**, is when it is drawn by horses, and hath two sides called the Trills.

A **Waine**, or **Ore Taime**, when drawn by Oxen, and hath a Waine Cop.

The **Trills**, or Sides of the Cart, which the horse is to stand between.

The **Waine Cop**, that part which the hinder Oxen are yoked unto to draw the Waine.

The **Trill Hooks**, and **Back Band**, which hold the sides of the Cart up to the horse.

The **Belly Band**, which is fastned to one of the sides and goeth under the horse belly to the other side.

The **Arle tree**, that on which the Wheel turneth.

The **Arell tree Pins**, two long Irons with round heads, which holdeth the Axell tree to the Cart body.

The **Clouts**, or **Arell tree Clouts**, the Iron plates nailed on the end of the Axell tree to save it wearing.

The two **Cross trees**, which holds the Cart sides togather.

The **Washers**, are the Rings on the ends of the Axell tree. The **Linn Pin**, is to keepe the wheel on the Axell tree.

The two **Cart Raers**, the Railes on the Cart top.

The **Cart Staves**, are those that hold the Cart & the Raers together, which maketh the Cart Body.

The **Cart Body**, is all that part where the loading is layd for carriage.

The **Cart Lathers**, are the Crooked peeces set over the Cart wheels to keepe Hay and Straw loaden off them In an Oxe Teeame they are termed **Tripies.**

The **Slotes**, are the vnder peeces which keepe the bottom of the Cart together.

The **Waine Cop**, is the long peece that cometh out from the Cart body to which the Oxen are fastned.

The **Cop-loie** and **Pin**, are Irons that fasten the Chain with other Oxen thereat to the end of the Cop.

A **Trigen**, is a thing to stop the wheel of a Cart when it goeth down a steep place.

Things that belong to Carts and Wains for Horses and Oxen.

Geeres, or **Chains**, are the generall terms for all things that belongs to draught horses or oxen.

The **Trill Homes**, are the peeces of wood made fast to the collar about the horse neck, to which hooks and the chains are fixed.

The **Homes**, are the wooden peeces themselves.

The **Collar**, is that put about the horse neck, made of Canvis and Leather stufed with straw or wooll.

The **Chains**, or **Ropes**, are them as all the Horses or Oxen draw by, all the length of the draught.

The **Street Staffe**, is the Staffe fixed between the Chains or Ropes, to keep them from gauling the Horse sides. The **Throat band**, and **Buckles.**

The **Back band**, and **Belly band.**

The **Trill** or **Cart Sadle**, is that on the Hinder horse, on which the Back-band of the Trill resteth to hold up the Cart.

The **White**, or **Carters Whip**, a lash of Leather and small Cord, tyed at the end of a long stick, to whip forwards his horses.

The **Goad**, is a long stick with an Iron point set in the end of it. By this the Oxen are pricked to go forward. this is only used for an Ox-teame. *see n.* 14.

The **Fore-horse**, that as leadeth the rest of the drawing Horses. The **Trill Horse**, that next the Cart, and beareth the sides up with a Back band lying on the **Trill** Sadle.

A **Good Teame**, or a **Bad Teame**, are terms usen according to the goodness, or badness of the Horses or Oxen, which draweth the Cart or Waine.

XLIX. He beareth Argent, a **Waggon** Sable, and the **Wheels** and **Carriage** of a **Waggon** of the same. Though I have set these in one square, yet they are two distinct Coats, as for example.

A. the Waggon G. Wheels S. is born by *Wagner*.

O. the Waggon Carriage S. is born by *Hirmane*. Some call this a Coach Carriage, but then it ought to have but one Pole.

A. 3 such in Pale to the Sinister S. born by *Kirberg*.

The several parts of a Wagon.

The **Shafts**, are the two pieces which the hinder Horse beareth up.

The **Wields**,

The **Slotes**, the cross pieces which hold the Shafts together.

The **Bolster**, is that on which the fore-Wheels with the Axle-tree turn in Wheeling the Waggon a cross Road.

The **Chest** or **Body** of the **Waggon**, having the Staves and Rails fixed thereon.

The **Busles** or **Hoops**, which compass the top.

The **Tilt**, is the place covered with Cloth in the end of the Wagon to sit in, and keep from foul Weather.

All the remaining parts about the Wheels and Axle Trees, are termed as before in the Cart or Wain.

Millers Instruments.

FROM the Instruments of Husbandry, which are useful for the increase of Corn, we proceed next to the **Millers** Instruments, which bruiseth and grinds the Corn, to make it useful for the good of Mankind.

L. He beareth Argent, a **Wind Mill Post erected** and **supported** with **Laces** or **Binding Beams**, Sable. This is born by the name of *Milpostle*.

A. the like G. is born by *Van Millerberg* of *Alsatia*.

LI. He beareth Gules, the four **Sails** of a **Wind-Mill** in Salter, Argent. Born by the name of *Windall*.

Parts of a Wind-Mill Sail.

The **Sail Rods**, the 4 long Poles which are fixed a cross in the Mill Shaft.

The **Rails**, or **Shrouds**, on which the Cloth is spread forth.

The **Sail Cloths**.

LII. He beareth Vert, the two **Shafts** of a **Wind-mill Sailes** in Bend, Or. by the name of *Sailesch*

On a Cap B. turned up A. 2 Wind-mill Saile Shafts S. is the Crest of *Duven vAri* of the *Rhyne Palatinate*.

LIII. He beareth Azure, a **Wind-mill** Or, **Sails Displaid**, or Spread Argent, fixed on an hill Issuant in base Vert. by the name of *Windmile*.

A. a Wind-mill S. born by *Miller*, or *Molendinare*.

The parts of a Wind-Mill.

The **Sill**, on which the Mill-Post is fixed, lying cross on the ground.

The **Spurs**, them as support the Mill-Post.

The **Mill-Post**, or **Main Post**, that on which the Carcass or Body of the Mill stands and turns.

The **Stairs**, **Lather** and **Wheel** to turn the Mill about.

The **Stair Tree**, is the Post on which the Wheel turns.

The **Body** or **Carcase**, or out-side of the Mill, as *numb.* 54.

The **Sides**.

The **Port** or **Porch**.

The **Sail** or **Wind end**.

The **Cover** or **Roof**.

The **Fan**, to shew how the Wind blows.

The **Shaft**, that on which the Sail Rods are set.

The **Cog Wheel**.

The **Rowne Wheel**, that turns the upper Mill-stone.

The **Mill-stones**.

The **Brandyet**, or **Mill-rinde**, a cross like Iron laid in the upper Stone to turn it.

The **Spindle**, which is fixt in the Mill Rinde and the Rown Wheel.

The **Hopper**, that holds the unground Corn in.

The **Show** or **Shough**, the Corn by its shaking drops down into the Mill.

The **Rack-staff**, that shakes the Shough.

The **Ring**, the Wood as keeps the Corn in grinding between the Stones.

The **Spout**, the place where the ground Corn cometh out.

The **Troagh**, which receives the Corn ground.

The **Lift**, that which raiseth the Mill-stones higher or lower.

LIV. He beareth Argent, the outward **Carcase** or **Bulk** of a **Wind-mill** Sable. this is born by *Schiden*. Or blazon it a **Wind-mill Sans Sails**, or haveing lost it Sails, or without Sails. I have heard it termed a **Decayed Wind-mill**. B. the like O. is quartered by *Von Mitelbiber-bach* of *Swabische*.

LV. He

LV. He beareth Sable, a **Mil-Ston** Argent. By the name of *Milstone*.

B. 3 such A. is born bp *Milinton* of *Milinton*.

G. one such A. born by *Ermreicher* of *Franck ford*.

A Peacocks taile on the top of a Millstone A. is the crest of *Van Mettich* of *Saxony*.

The like A. set with a Plume of 6 Feathers contrary alling and enterchanged G. & A. is the crest of *Spiler*.

LVI. He beareth Argent, a **Mill-Pick** Sable, and a **Rounce Wheel** of a **Mill** Azure. These severally I find born in coats of Arms of diverse famileys, as

S. 3 Milpicks A. by the name of *Maudesley*, or *Mosley*, alias *Pigot*.

The same with a Cheveron betw: is born by *Mosley* of *Mosley* in *Lancashire*.

A. 3 Rounce wheels S. born by *Cogge* or *Coggey*.

B. one such O. is born by *Hichack*.

In the dexter bale of this Square are erected two Mill stones one by the other, turning to the Sinister; which I find thus Blazoned. Two **Mill stones** to the Sinister, **Coerectant**, or **Covertant** A. in a field S. which is born by the name of *Erbach*.

Two such with a Plume of 3 Feathers between them on the higher sides, one contrary-posed to the other, G. and A. is the crest of *Van Eberspach*.

LVII. He beareth Azure, the **Ink** of a **Mill-stone** in **Bend**, Or; and a **Mill Wheel**, or a **Clock Wheel**, Argent.

☞ This and the succeeding Inke of a Mill being things of length cannot supply the whole contenant of the Escochion, therefore are very often removed to and fro therein, according to pleasure, and serve in place of a Bend, a Pale, or a Fess between other Charges; as for example, the Gentleman as beareth it, hath it in a Bend between two Martlets Argent, by the name of *Martmille*.

A. the like in Bend S. between 2 Martlets G. born by *Mollin*.

There is some difference between a **Water Mill Wheel**, and a **Clock Wheel**, the first having many Spokes to make it strong and firm, whereas the latter being all Steel, Iron, or Brass, hath never more than four, which stand directly cross in the middle of the circumference of them, whose Nave is generally square, see *numb.* 9. and squares at the joining to the out-rim, as *numb.* 169.

B. a Water Mill Wheel, or an Under shot Water Wheel A. is born by *Mulner* of *Brunswick*.

G. 3 such O. born by *Watermile*.

V. a Clock Wheel O. born by *Maller* of *Alsatia*.

O. the like S. born by *Van Wedel*.

G. the like A. by *Muller Van Aspach*. The like Wheel is the Crest of *Loselin*.

LVIII. This is another form of drawing the **Inke** of a **Mill-stone**, which our modern Heralds call the **Inke** or **Rinde** of a Mill. Millers term it in English a **Brandyet** or **Mill Rinde**.

LIX. He beareth Azure, the **Wheel** of an **Over-shot Water Mill**, Or. This is termed but erroniously a **Water-Mill Wheel**; in which Blazon we cannot understand what sort of Water-Mill Wheel, for there is a great difference between the Wheel of an **Over-shot Mill**, and an **Under-shot Wheel**; the first having the **Ladles** of the Wheel within the Rim, and made close like so many Wooden Troughs fixed about to retain the Water, by the weight whereof it is forced about. But the **Under-shot Wheel** hath the **Ladles** or **Scopes**, set on the out-side or top of the Rim of the Wheel, and stands open, as all the **Spokes** and **Fallows** of the Wheel do; so that in short, one is a **close Wheel**, and the other an **open Wheel**. This is the Coat Armour of *Nicholas de Moline*, a Noble Senator of the State of *Venice*.

LX. He beareth Argent, a **Ferre de Moline Nowy** (or rounded) Gules. This is born by the name of *Mollinow*. This is also termed a **round Mill Rinde**, or **Inke** of a Mill, and cannot have a better term than round, given it; because it is both pierced and formed round, and is the antiquest of any of these forms that ever I read of, or saw depicted, which was also thus of old Blazoned, a **Saulter Fervon**, **couped** and **pierced**.

In the chief of this square, is fixed another kind of Mill Rinde, Nowy in the middle pierced, the ends Potent; and therefore may fitly be termed the Inke of a Mill stone Fess ways, Nowyed and Potent.

B. 3 such in Pale A. is born by *Zachines* of *Venice*.

A. the like erected S. is born by *Van Koten*.

LXI. He beareth Argent, a **Quadrant Ferre de Moline**, Sable. This may well bear this Blazon, because of its quarter piercing; being also of a four square form of making. This is born by *Quatermoll*.

A. 3 such S. is born by *Ferriall*.

LXII. He beareth Sable, a **Cramp Mill Rinde**, Ermin. This is so termed in respect of the resemblance it hath to an Iron Cramp, another Instrument used amongst Mills. Some call it a **Cramp Salter like**; this is very Ancient, and is born by *Milrine*.

A. 2 Mill Picks, and such a Cramp Rinde S. is quartered by *Holme* of *Holme*, in *Redish*, in *Com. Lanc.*

LXIII. He beareth Vert, a **Crab Ferre de Moline** Argent. Born by *Molcrab*. So termed from its likeness to the Crab Fish; in which respect it may be also Blazoned, a **Frog Ferre de Moline**, because of its resemblance to that Creature; these are all of the old way of depicting them, the modern are these as follow.

LXIV. He beareth Azure, a **Ferre de Moline**, Or. Born by *Molyneux*. This is one way of drawing the modern **Mill Rinde**, or **Inke** of a Mill-stone; and is of all others the nearest in form to the true Mill Rinde used by Millers, according to the which all Heralds ought to delineate those, whom they at any time to come, have occasion to make.

B. 3 such O. born by *Mollyneux*.

Er.

Er. one such B. by *Molynex* of *Yalers*.

LXV. He beareth Gules, the **Inke of a Mill, poked,** Or. So I have seen it termed, but I take this to be of no great note, worthy observation from the other; if there be, in precisenes of Blazon, then let it be called a **Mill Rinde molined,** because the ends turn like the Cross Moline.

These are also born Barways, or traverse the Escochion, as G. 3 Fer de Molins Barways S. which is a *German* Coat, and quartered by the name of *James* of *Wilsborow* in *Kent*.

LXVI. He beareth Sable, a **Mill Rinde pointed,** Argent. This is way of the modern drawing of them.

☞ Now here it is to be noted, that these **Ferre de Molines, Mill Rindes, Inkes of Mills,** or **Mill Standerts,** call them which you will, all which names signifie one and the same thing; they are ever pierced square, but that you need not to mention in their Blazoning, because it naturally belongs to them.

Builders Instruments.

3. NOW for a few Instruments and Tools belonging to Labouring Artificers, as **Masons, Bricklayers, Pavers, Slaters** and **Plasterers.**

LXVII. He beareth Azure, on a **Ground Plot** fixed to the **Dexter Base,** Vert, an Engine called a **Crane,** Argent. This is a thing like a Wind Mill House, fixed near to the Key of a great or Navigable River, by the help whereof great and massy weights are taken off the Shoar, and laid in Ships; and so on the contrary from the Ship to the Land, by the strength of one Man.

LXVIII. He beareth Argent, an Engine called a **Turne,** or the **Turne Engine,** Gules. This is another thing by which great Weights are lifted up, and is much used for the taking up of large **Mill-stones** of the Mill, when they are to be new Picked.

LXIX. He beareth Vert, a **Windlass,** Argent. This is a third sort of Engine, used much by Masons, Carpenters, Plummers, Brick-layers, and such like Artificers, for the lifting up of massy Weights to the top of Houses, Churches and Steeples, by the help of Ropes and Pulleys fixed on high.

LXX. He beareth Argent, a **Pick** Azure, **Handle** Sable. This is also termed a **Pavers Pick;** and of some a **Pick-Axe.** It hath a long head and back part, that it may strike deep into the ground: There are other sorts of them as they have been made of old, as *numb.* 72, 73, 74. but this is the modern shape of them.

S. 3 such A. born by the name of *Pigott*.

A. one such S. Handle O. born by *Newenstein*, of *Francford*.

S. the like A. born by *Reinsperger*.

G. 3 such A. Handle O. by *Stoltzen*, and *Van Bickelaheim*.

LXXI. He beareth Azure, a **Mattock,** Argent, **Haume,** or **Handle,** Or. This is an Instrument by which Labourers do dig and sink into the Earth withal, when it is hard and stony, or of a Clay like substance; the one end of it being broad, and the other sharp pointed. This is born by the name of *Mattock*.

Per Fess A. and S. 2 such counterchanged, born by *Diggerall*.

LXXII. He beareth Argent, a **Pavers Pick;** Azure, **Handle,** Or. This is an **Ancient Pavers Pick,** having the handle to go into a **socket** at the head end of the Iron. Three such as is before Blazoned is born by the name of *Van Pavarge*.

And A. 3 such S. Handles O. by *Pickall*.

LXXIII. He beareth Argent, an **old** fashioned **Pavers Pick,** with a short flat face, Sable. This I drew from an old Coat but could not learn the name of the Bearer.

In this square I have caused a **Billet** to be set, of which I shall say more, *numb.* 82. This is by Mr. *Guillim* taken to be a **Paper folded** up in form of a **Letter.**

G. 10 Billets O. by the name of *Comdrey*.

A. Billetee S. by the name of *Belvale*.

A. 4 Billets G. born by *Stoltzen*.

LXXIV. He beareth Gules, a **Pavers Pick pointed** at both ends Argent, **Handle,** Or. This much resembles the **Mill Pick,** only this difference there is, that goes through the **Stock** or **Handle,** and is there wedged; this the handle goeth into the **eye** or **socket** of the Iron, and is secured there that it move not.

S. 3 such A. with a Cheveron between charged with 3 Mullets, is born by the name of *Maudesley* of *Staffordshire*.

LXXV. He beareth Azure, a **Slaters,** or a **Plasterers Hatchet,** Argent; the **Handle,** Or. This is a kind of **Hammer-Hatchet,** the one end being made like the **Hammer-face,** cross nicked, like a rough File, and the other end like an **Hatchet;** so that it is made both to drive Nails, and cut Laths or other small Timber. An Hand holding such an Hammer-Hatchet, Sleeve Gules, turned up Argent; is the Company of Plasterers Crest; they bear the like also in their Coat, as you may see *numb.* 89.

LXXVI. He beareth Argent, a **Masons Mallet,** Gules; between two **Wedges,** Sable. By the name of *Maulwegge*.

A. 3 Mallets G. by the name of *Forte*.

O. 3 such S. born by *Gamull* of *Chester*, a Worthy Family there, the last of the principal Line was Sir *Francis Gamull* Knight and Barronett, Governour of that Loyal City for the King in the Wars 1643.

The **Mallet,** when it is **large,** and a long Stail or Handle,

Handle, is termed a **Maull** by Wood Men; but a **Commander** by Masons and Stone Getters: Also that Carpenters give it, who use it with an handle about 3 foot or more long, to knock on the corners of Framed work, to set them into their places.

LXXVII. He beareth Gules, a **Trowel**, Argent, **Handle**, Or; and a **Brick-Axe** of the second. By the name of *Brickman*. The Brick-layers have several names for this kind of Axe; it is called a **Salter**, a **Cutting Axe**, with the denomination of Bricklayers added thereunto; else by the term, it would be taken for a contrary thing.

G. a Cheveron between 2 Bricklayers Salters A. and a Mallet O. is the Company of *Marblers* Coat.

LXXVIII. He beareth Gules, a **Brick-layers** or Masons **Plumb-Rule**, Argent; with **Line** and **Plummet pendant**, Sable; between one of their **Joynters**, and a **Cutting Axe** or **Salter**, Or. These are all Instruments and Working Tools belonging most especially to Brick-Men.

The **Plumb-Rule** sheweth him whether his Walling doth both range straight, and stand upright; which if neither, there may be a timely mending.

The **Joynter**, is to make smooth the Joints between the laying of each Brick or Stone. And 3 such A. in a Field G. is born by *Joynter* or *Joyner*.

The **Salter** or **Brick Axe**, or **Cutting Axe**, is to cut the rough and knotty places of Bricks, to make them lye flat and even in the Bed of Mortar; but more especially it is used for the **Camphering** or cutting of Bricks, for **Cornishes** and **Splaying** of an **Angle**, or **rebating** of a **Corner**, and such like, where Bricks are sometimes cut half or quarter round, sometimes square, *&c.*

B. a Cheveron O. between 2 Brick Axes A. and a Bunch of Faggots of the second; in chief a Flower de lis of the third, is the Arms of the Company of Bricklayers in the City of *Chester*.

LXXIX. He beareth Or, a **Level**, Gules; with its **Line** and **Plummet**, Sable; in chief a **pointing Trowel**, Azure; **Handle**, Or. This is called also a **Water Level**; the use is to lay all ground Plots streight and even, and therefore much esteemed by Carpenters, Pavers, and other Trades-men, which have occasion to lay any **Flats**, that they may be laid without swellings or fallings.

A **Pointing Trowel**, is long and narrow in the flat or face part, with which Joints and Creeks and Crevices, are filled with Plaster and Mortar. A. 3 such points erected G. is born by *Trowell*.

LXXX. He beareth Azure, a **Level**, Or, with the **Line** and **Plummet pendant**, Sable. This is the only Level without any other Addition or Substraction, being an Instrument that will plainly declare the fall and rising of the parts it stands upon, thereby to make it even with less difficulty. This is born by the name of *Leveller*.

*

LXXXI. In this quarter I have placed three sorts of **Billets** or **Stones** for Masons work, as I have seen them drawn of old, which for distinction may be thus termed.

The first a **square Billet**, or a **square Stone Billet**, or a **square Ashler**, because it is four square in its breadth, and being long makes it to be Blazoned a **Billet**, which is any thing, be it Paper, Wood, or Stone, or any Metal that is square and long; or a **long square**.

The second is a **Billet**, or a **Stone Billet**; Masons and Brick layers in their terms will call it either an **Ashler**, or a **Brick**, or **Brick-Bat**, because the breadth is larger than the thickness, and the length more than the squareness.

The third is a **Billet** made after the old manner, rather square than long; and hath been termed, as thus it stands, both a **Billet**, and a **Stone Billet**. This is by Artists called a **Parallel side Billet**, or a **Bevile Billet**, because the sides are of an equal length, but the ends run askew.

LXXXII. He beareth Argent, a **Brick** and a **Tile**, Gules: These are severally termed by Work-men, both ancient and modern, as

The first is called a **Brick**, or a **Brick-Stone**, or **Brick-Bat**, whose thickness is not half that of the breadth, being a long square, having the Angles right but not of equal length, the sides oblong to the ends.

The second is a **Tile**, or a **square Tile**, whose superficies is of an equal breadth, but much short of it in the solid or thickness.

☞ Some term this a **Delfe**, because of its squareness, but in a Delfe there is nothing or a thickness to be seen as there is in this; for in these things you are to take notice that there is a great difference in things of thickness or substance, and the like things which carry no thickness at all; as in this of the **Tile** and a **Delfe**, a **Fess couped** and a **Humett**; as *lib.* 1. *cap.* 4. *numb.* 63. 64. and of a **Billet** and a **Stone**, and a **Billet** or an **Ashler**, as *numb.* 73. 81 82.

LXXXIII. He beareth Argent, a **Roman Tile** and a **Stone-Billet**, Gules, the latter charged with an Imbossed Work of Flowers and Branches.

The first is termed a **Roman Tile**, by reason such have been often found in the Earth with *Roman* Letters upon them, made as is very certain by the *Roman* Legion Soldiers when they inhabited these parts: Several have been found in Vaults and Cellars in *Chester*, having these Letters moulded thereon, LEG. XXV. V. signifying *Legio*, *Vicesimus Quintus*, *Victrix*; that the 25 Legion called *Victrix* was Quartered here. These Tiles are generally a foot or 14 Inches square.

A. 3 Roman Tiles G. born by *Roman*.

The second is a **Stone Billet** adorned with **Carved Work**, which kind of Billets are often born by the *Germans* and *Dutchmen*: As Argent, three Stone Billets, Carved, Gules. Born by the name of *Billing*.

O. such

O. such a Stone-Billet G. born by *Bellgerve*, or *Van Bellgerven*.

LXXXIV. He beareth Azure, a **Fasce**, or **Bundle**, or **Bunch** of **Laths**, Or. By the name of *Falscer*. See *lib.* 2. *cap.* 3. *numb.* 86. How this is severally termed according to the Coat it belongeth unto.

B. a Cheveron between 3 such O. is born by the Slaters Company.

LXXXV. He beareth Argent, a **Wheel-Barrow**, Gules. This is an Instrument used much by Workmen of the Trowel, for the Transporting of their Materials (for the work) from place to place; and though the thing carried be of a great Burthen, yet by the help thereof, and the Labour of one Man, it is with much ease brought to the place designed.

In the chief of this square, is another kind of **Pick** than what is mentioned formerly, having nothing but a **sharp point**, and an **eye** at the contrary end to fix an **Handle** in; this hath the only term of a **Pick**, and no more. Three of these A. in a Field S. is born by *Pigott*.

LXXXVI. He beareth Argent, a **Barrow**, Gules. By the name of *Barrow*. This is also termed a **Bearing Barrow**, because Burthens are carried on it between two persons: Also an **Hand-Barrow**, being supported by hands, to distinguish it from the Barrow that runneth upon a Wheel.

S. the like between 3 Roses O. is born by *Bearwell*.

G. 3 such in Pale A. born by *Corbitz*.

LXXXVII. He beareth Azure, a **Pavers Maive**, or **Maule**, Or; the **Staple** and **Ring**, Sable. This I found among a parcel of *Dutch* Coats, by the name of *Van Stonsour*: And I could give it no fitter a term, seeing it hath the near resemblance of the **Pavers Mauls** used in our Country; if it be any other thing, pardon my mistake; as I take it, they term it **Houten Beytel**, or **Houten Hamer**, a Wooden **Maul** or **Beetle**, by means whereof the Paved Stones are beaten and driven close together into the ground.

LXXXVIII. He beareth Argent, a **Pavers Maul**, or **Mall**, or **Mallet**, of some termed a **Driver**.

Here I have set two forms of making them, the one a solid piece of Timber with a handle set on the side, for the more easie lifting of it, having a place on the top for the other hand, to hold it also by.

The other being a **Chub** or **Log of Wood**, with a **Staile** or **Stake fired** therein, and a **Handle** on the side, to lift it up thereby, but the former is more used.

A. the like S. born by *Maullet*.

G. the like O. is born by *Paverheim* of *Holland*.

LXXXIX. He beareth Gules, a **Plasterers Whitening Brush**, Argent. These kind of Artificers have generally two sorts of **Brushes**, the one set crooked or bending on the end of a Staff, which is put into it, according to that length the Work-Man is to reach.

The other is an **Hand Brush**, having an Handle about half a yard, or longer (for shorter they are not to use) by which they lay Whiting and Russet, within their own compass or reaching, which kind of Brush is here set in the second place of this quarter, and belongs to their Coat, *Viz.* Azure on a Cheveron Argent, a Rose Gules, and two Flowers de lis of the first, between as many Hammer-Hatchets and a Whiting Brush of the second, their Handles Or. See *chap.* 9. *numb.* 160.

Sadlers Instruments.

4. THE next is the Ingenious **Sadler**, whose Workmanship and Tools by which such Works are wrought, shall follow in their order; some here, the defects will be made up in the latter end of this Chapter, with what hath been short of other Trades, already spoken of.

XC. He beareth Gules, a **Triumphant Chariot**, Or. This kind of open Chariot, the *Roman* Emperours and Generals were wont to Ride in, when they had their solemn Triumphs, after the obtaining of great Conquests. This is born by the name of *Victor*.

B. 3 such O. is born by *Verblyden*.

XCI. He beareth Argent, a **Sedan**, with its **Poles** or **Staves** in their places, Sable. This is a thing in which Sick and Crasy persons are carried abroad, which is born up by the Staves by 2 Lusty Men. This is quartered by *Voyten* of *Bavaria*.

A. 3 such (sans Staves) S. is born by the Sedan or Coach-makers of *London*. Some call them **Carrying Chairs**.

XCII. He beareth Sable, a **Saddle Stirroped**, Or. By the name of *Sadler*. The Saddle is very often born in Arms without the **Stirrops**; as the **Stirrops** are without the **Saddle**; and therefore when both are fixed together they are to be mentioned. Now if the several parts be of diverse colours, then Blazon it thus, a **Saddle** of such a colour; the **Seat** such a colour; the **Pomell** and **Stirrops** so or so; for in the Blazoning of them, there is no more parts used of contrary colours in Armory.

A. 3 such Saddles Stirroped S. born by *Gwalchmay* of *Wales*.

O. a Saddle the Pomel to the Sinister G. born by *Sattelin*.

B. a Cheveron between 3 Saddles Stirroped O. is the Company of *Sadlers* Coat of Arms.

The Ancient *Romans* had no such use as **Saddle** and **Stirrops** for their Horses, as we have, neither was any put in practice until the time of *Constantine*, *Anno* 341 as we may learn of the *Greek* Historian *Zonaras*, who (throughout

(throughout his whole History) maketh not any mention of a Saddle for a Horse, before such time as *Constans* seeking to deprive his Brother *Constantine* of the Empire, made head against his Army, and entring into the Squadron where himself was, cast him beside the **Saddle** of his Horse.

As for **Stirrops**, termed in Latine *Stapedes* and *Stapphia*, the Antient *Romans* had never any knowledge of them, as to contain and keep a Man fast on Horseback: but such of them in *Rome*, as were Noble Men by extraction and Knights, and others besides, that made use of Horses Service in Actions of War; they never had any Stirrops whereby to mount upon their Beasts, but leapt up lightly upon their Backs, without any other help or advantage. This was termed a **Mount on the Coyne.**

The several sorts of Saddles.

A **Running Saddle**, is a small one with round Skirts.

A **Burfrid Saddle**, hath the Seat plain, and the Skirts plain and streight.

A **Pad Saddle**, of which there are two sorts, some are made with **Burs** before the Seat, others with **Boulsters** under the Thighs.

A **French Pad Saddle**, the Burs of it come wholly round the seat.

A **Portmantle Saddle**, hath a **Cantle** behind the seat to keep the Portmantle or other Carriage off the Riders back.

A **War Saddle**, hath a Cantle and Boulster behind and before; also a **Foye-Boulster.**

A **Pack-saddle**, see *numb.* 95.

The parts of a Saddle.

The **Tree**, or **Saddle Tree.**

The **Narfe**, is the Sinews glewed on the Tree to strengthen it.

The **Gullet Plate.**

The **Hinder Plate.**

The **Bars**, are little Staples fastned to the Saddle Tree, to hang the Stirrops, and the Leathers to Girth withal. Some have for them

The **Stivetts.**

The **Straps.**

The **Web** fixt on the hollow of the Tree to keep the Seat up.

The **Seat.**

The **Skirt** of the Saddle some are round others plain.

The **Crupper Buckle**, or Crupper Loops.

The **Pomell**, or fore-part of the top of the Saddle.

The **Pannel.**

A **Pad**, a soft Seat fixed on the Saddle for old Men to Ride upon.

The Appendances of a Saddle.

The **Girths**, and its **Buckles.**

The **Crupper**, its - - - - - - - and the Trappings.

The **Stirrops**, and Leathers and Buckles.

The **Breast Plate**, with its Pendell.

The **Bridle**, with all its Appendents, as Bit or Snaffle, the Head Stall, the Fillet, the Throat Band, the Nose Band, the Rains with its Button and running Button and Loop.

XCIII. He beareth Gules, a **Stirrop**, Or; **Leathered** and **Buckled**, Sable. By the name of *Stirropach.*

B. 3 such O. born by the name of *Gifford.*

G. the like O. born by *Scudamore* of *Overton.*

XCIV. He beareth Azure, a **Stirrop**, Or. By the name of *Hirronbough.* Three such in the like Field, is born by the *Stirrops* of *Cheshire.*

G. 3 Stirrops A. born by *Stafast.*

B. 3 such O. born by *Onely* of *Onely.*

XCV. He beareth Gules, a **Pack-Saddle**, Argent. Born by the name of *Carrier.*

S. 3 such O. born by *Malbeck.*

In the chief of this square, is the form of a Saddle, which Sadlers term a **Pad-Saddle**, or **Travelling Saddle**, of which form the *French*, *Dutch* and *Germans* make all their Saddles in Coats of Arms; whereas we generally make them after the mode of the **Great Saddle** or **War Saddle**, which is accounted the chief of Saddles. G. 3 such O. is born by *De la Dampe.*

XCVI. He beareth Sable, a **Sadlers Hammer**, Argent; the **Handle**, Or; on the dexter side of it, a **Buckling Awl** of the second, the **Head** of the third. By the name of *Hammerall.*

S. 3 such Hammers A. Handles O. is born by *Sandamer.*

G. one such A. is born by *Kekkell.*

B. 3 Buckling Awls A. Heads O. born by *Pennall.*

XCVII. He beareth Argent, a **Shalmne**, or - - - - turned to the **sinister side**, Sable. This is a kind of **Diminutive Coach**, which runneth upon two Wheels, and holdeth two people; it is drawn with one Horse, and is guided by him that sits in the Shaloon, by a long **pair** of **Reins** from the Horse **Bridle Bit.**

XCVIII. He beareth Or, an **Horse-Litter fired in its Carriage**, Sable. This is a thing to carry Sick and Infirm people in, from place to place; it is supported and carried between two Horses. This thus in Fess is born by *Lotter.*

The like S. between 2 Martlets, and a Dog G. in a Field A. is born by *Wasch*, or *Van Wascher.*

TO

His Dear Kinſmen

Mr. *WILLIAM BIRD*, of *London*, Merchant.

AND

Mr. *THOMAS BIRD*, of the City of *Cheſter*, his Loving Brother.

TO whom the Dedication of this ſecond Plate of the eight Chapter of the Academy of Armory, as contributes to ſo great a Work, is moſt heartily Preſented, from him who is their Loving Couſin in the firſt degree.

Randle Holme.

CHAP. VIII. Plate 2.

Weavers Tools.

5. IN the Sixth Chapter of this Book there is an omition of ſome Inſtruments belonging to the **Weavers** and **Shoe-makers**, which I thought good to put in the latter end of this Chapter before I proceeded to other Societies.

XCIX. He beareth Sable on a **round foot** or **ſtand** of two heights Argent, a **pair of Broad Parringle Blades** at each end and in the middle, the **pins heads** in form of the leaves of a **Flower de lis**, Or. This is born by the name of *Currey*. This is of ſome termed a **Croſs Parringle**, the **Pins Flurt**.

Out of a Crown the like Croſs with Flower de lis pins, Or, is the Creſt to the Duke of *Burgundy* in *France*. This is alſo Blazoned a **Saſſer couped, perforated** through the middle with a round headed **ſtaff**, fixt on a **Block of two Gutters**; at each end a Leaf of a **Flower de lis, Naiſſaut.**

C. He beareth Sable, a **Weavers Warping Trough**, Or; in Baſe a **Shearmans Burling Iron** Feſſeways Argent. The Weavers Trough is that in which he puts his Clews of Yarn, when he runs them off for Warping; it is a long Box or Cheſt, with 19 Partitions in it, with 3 Standards or more, and two over-croſs peeces, to which is fixed as many Rings as there is partitions, through which the Yarn runs.

CI. He beareth Azure, a **Weavers Raeth tapped**, Or; between 2 Shearmans **Burling Irons**, Argent. Born by the name of *Goodaker*. The **Raeth** is a thing like a **Rake**, with the Teeth ſet upright, and the **Cap** is a Staff full of holes in which the Teeth of the Raeth are put: The Raeth keeps the Yarn in Warping, that they ſhall not tangle or twiſt one with another; and the Cap keeps the Threads of the Beere from flying out of their places.

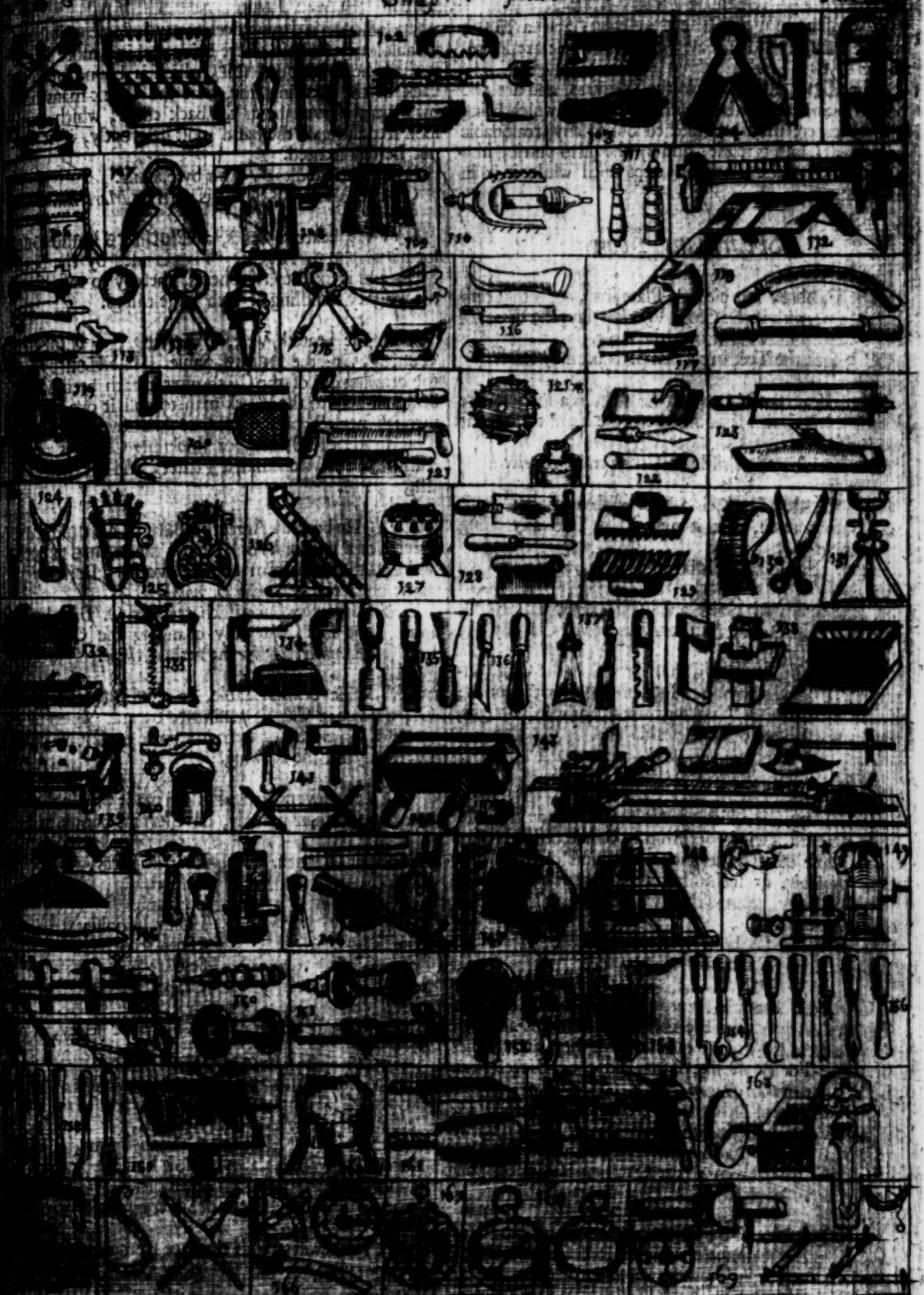
The **Burling Irons**, are kind of **Tuiſers**, which fly open of themſelves, with them Knots and over large Threads are picked from the Cloth by the Shearman before he do any other kind of work at it. These Irons are made of three ſeveral faſhions, all which I have ſet down under this and the precedent Figure.

S. a Cheveron between 3 Burling Irons A. is born by *Burland*.

G. 3 ſuch A. is born by *Burler* or *Burlinger*.

CII. He beareth Argent, a **Weavers Temples** in Feſs,

*



[illegible] Engine [illegible] Wire [illegible] Instruments [illegible]

Fess, Or; between a **Ribbis** in chief; and a **Brush** and **Tentry hook** in Base Argent. These are Instruments of two Trades.

The **Tenters** belong to the Weavers, and are two Staves with broad ends set with sharp Pins; which being laid together, may be stretched out to any reasonable breadth as Cloth is made; and by the **pins** putting into the selvage of the Cloth it is kept open while it is in Weaving.

Shearmans Tools.

The **Ribbis**, is a piece of Plate Iron, cut with Teeth like a Saw; with it the Cloth Worker lays the Wool of the Cloth by drawing it over the same.

A. 3 such the Teeth reversed S. is born by *Ribbisk*.

The Weavers **Starching Brush**, is a long square Bristle Brush; with it he Starcheth the Yarn to make it work the better.

A. 3 Brushes G. Bristled O. is born by *Sexeux*.

The **Tentry hook**, is a Nail with a crooked head, yet sharp pointed, that it may strike into any thing hung upon it.

A. 3 such Hooks S. is born by *Tentrym*.

CIII. He beareth Gules, a **Clothiers Frise Board**, and his **Whisk dejected** or cast down, Or. By the name of *Friswike*.

The **Frise Board**, is that by which the Cloth after it is sheared, hath a **Nap** or **Curl** put upon it; from which kind of Working, the Cloaths so wrought, are termed Frises, or Frise-cloth.

A. 3 such S. born by *Frishall*.

B. 3 such Whisks erected. Born by *Wiske*.

The **Whisk** is a kind of White Rod made of Birch, or other small Twigs stript from its Rinde or Bark, and bound up close together, with this kind of Brush any Dust or Hair, or such like, will sooner be Beaten or Whisked away, than with any other sort of **Brush**. See *chap. 7. numb. 92.*

G. a Whisk O. born by *Haslings*.

S. one such A. born by *Whiske*.

CIV. He beareth Azure, a pair of **Clothiers Shears**, Argent; and the **Shear handle** Or. Though they be here set in one quarter, yet they are distinct Bearings: For B. the like Shears with the ends erected A. is the Coat of *Van Hagen*

A. two pair of such, points erected G. is born by *Die Marschalgk van Gosmanshavsen*. And A. the like two pair S. is born by *Van Kellech*.

O. a Salter between 4 pair Clothiers Shears G. born by *Gennep*.

The **handle** of the **Shears** is much used in Arms, and if they be but narrowly looked into, I believe there will be but little difference found between the old fashioned **Clarion**, or **Rest**, which some take for this thing, and others for that, and many for I do not know what; whereas if I may declare my Judgment, it should be absolutely for this, there being nothing more like to it than the **Shear handle**, which is bound upon the back of the Shearing side, that the Work-mans hand may be preserved from the back edges, which would soon fret and gall the hand most grievously, if it were not hereby secured.

S. 3 such Handles A. born by *Sarrait*.

G. 2 such and a Rose A. is born by *Martymart*.

CV. He beareth Gules, a **Clothiers hand hook** for his **Shears**, Argent. This is used by the Shear-Men, and is fixed to the Shears, thereby to ease him in the weighty handling of such large things.

CVI. He beareth Vert, a **Tentry** or a **Clothiers Tentry**, Or; the **Hooks**, Sable. The **Tentry** is for the drawing out of the Cloth after it hath been Milled; being an help to the Work-man to pull it out again, if through neglect of the Mill he hath over thickned it. This Trade of **Milling** or thickning Cloth is termed **Fulling**, the Workman a **Fuller**, and the Mills **Fulling Mills**.

CVII. He beareth Argent, a **pair of Wool shears**, Azure, or a pair of Wool Shears, the **points reversed** and **extended** in form of a Cheveron. Born by the name of *Cubeck*. See *chap. 6. numb. 28. 35.*

A. a Salter between 4 such reversed G. Born by *Mekern*. The like Coat only changing the Colours, is born by *Spannerbock* of the nether *Rhine*.

CVIII. He beareth Sable, on a **Clothiers Pirch** Or, a peece of **Cloth pendant**, Argent. Born by the name of *Rower*. Some term it a peece of **Cloth Pirched**, ready for the Rowing.

There are several sorts of Cloth made of Wool, which according to their making, have several names, as

Flannel, or Glannen.	Drap de Berry,
Bays,	Fustian,
Kersey,	Bumbast,
Penyston,	Linsey Woolsey,
Frise,	Cloth Serge,
Broad Cloth,	Sey,
Spanish Cloth,	Crape,

Cloths made either of Silk, Hair, or Jersey, or mixt together.

Silk, as Linsey Silk.	Sattins,
Sarsnet,	Velvets,
Persian,	Damask,
Taffaty,	Cobweb Lawne,
Ducape.	Mow hair,
Padua Seys,	Camblet.

Tissue, Cloth of Silver or Gold.

Housewifes Cloth made of Hemp or Flax.

Course Cloth.	Sack cloth,
Reedings,	Tick for Beds,
Canvice,	Dowlas,

Scotch

Sloteh Cloth,	Lawne,
Callicoe,	Holland,
Kenting,	Tiffany,
Muslin,	Gawse,
Cambrick,	Birds Eye.

CIX. He beareth Jupiter, a **peece of Cloth over a Yard**, Sol. This was the Coat or Devise of *Saladach* Emperour of *Turky*. Other Masters of the Art, Blazon it a **Yard** in chief, with a **peece of Cloth cast over it**, and **pendant** towards the Base.

CX. He beareth Argent, a **Wheel Feathers** or **Fly**, with its **Quill** and **Wharve** fixt on the **Spindle**, Gules. By the name of *Whorse*. This is a part of the Spinning Wheel, of which I have formerly spoken *chap. 6. numb.* 11.

CXI. In this square are two sorts of Peggs, the first is termed a **Bone Lace Peg**, with which Bone Lace, Flanders Lace, and Silver and Gold Lace is Woven upon round Cushions, by Bone Lace Weavers sitting on the Breech.

The second is a **Bobbin Peg**, with which all your Bobbin or round Laces are Woven, whether they be of Thread, Silk, Silver or Gold.

S. 3 Bone Lace Pegs O. is born by *Bonlace*.

G. 3 Bobbin Pegs O. Hooks S. is born by *Peggs*.

Shoomakers Tools, or St. Hugh's *Bones.*

6. LET not any of my Fellows or Masters of the **Gentle-Craft**, take it in ill part, that all their Tools were not set together, seeing St. **Hughs Bones** ought not to be separated; for I do declare, it was not mine, but the Informers Fault, that gave them to me so mincingly, as if he had been afraid I should have robbed him of his Art; ; in which I did rest satisfied, till a more Ingenious person informed me of the whole, which take as follows.

CXII. In this quarter is, the **Shoomakers seat fixed** on a **ground Plot** in Base. On this seat upon the right hand of the Work-man, is made several Divisions, whereof one is for his Wax and Thread, another for his Awls, and another for the rest of his Tools, so that what he wants he can easily put his hand to without confusion or tumbling of the rest.

In the chief is the **Shoomakers Measure**, by which he taketh the length or size of all feet, whether Children, Men or Women: As for the Terms of each length I have spoken of them elsewhere, *chap.* 3. *numb.* 36. to which place I refer you, only here shewing you the said Measure, which is so made that it runs one piece into another, that the Feet at each end coming together, makes one perfect Shooe.

S. the like in Fess between 3 Awls O. Blades A. is born by *Mensure*.

In the Sinister Base is a **Punch**, which is only to make holes in the upper Leather for Shooties or Buckles, to make the Shooes fast on the feet: There is two sorts of them, the common, of which this is a figure, and the more gent and neat Punch, of which you have the shape of one, *numb.* 114.

G. a Cheveron between 3 such A. born by *Puncher*.

S. 3 such A. born by *Holer*.

CXIII. In this quarter are three sorts of **Hollin Sticks** used by **Cordwainers**; not that they are made of Hollin Wood, but a peculiar name so given them, with them they burnish and polish the upper Leather, and sides of the Sole Leather; also by the sharp ends they run Riggets, and score the Leather with what Devises they please.

B. 2 Hollin Sticks O. and a Ball of Wax A. born by *Stitchell*.

In the Sinister chief is a **Ball of Shoomakers Wax**, to Wax their Thread, which they call **stitching Thread**, and Stitching or **Tatching ends**; without which they cannot work, or set a Stitch in a Shooe; only this perplexity it hath with it, in the Winter it is so hard that it works none but before a Fire, and in the Summer it is so soft, that it must constantly be kept in Water.

CXIV. He beareth Sable, a **pair of Pincers**, or rather **Nippers**, and a **Punch**, Argent. These are to be termed **Shoomakers Nippers**, being contrary in the Shanks to common Pincers, as having a sharp **point** in the end of one; and a **fist** in the other, to strain up a Tack or Nail: There are two sorts of them, as in the text, *numb.* 115.

In this square is the Figure of the **genteel Punch**, of whom I spoke before *numb.* 11. and this may not unfitly be born by the greatest Subject, being an Emblem of Safety, for by the help thereof both Sandals and Shooes are made secure on the Feet, by which means we may Go, Run, or Leap, without Jeopardy.

CXV. He beareth Gules, a **pair of Pincers**, or **Hammer Pincers extended** or laid open, Argent. Born by the name of *Pinch*. This kind of Instrument (as the Nippers aboveſaid) doth perform the office of an **Hammer**, both to drive a Nail with the flat place at the pinching part, and also to pull out a Nail or Tack by the bottom nicked part; so also it can with its point either Bore a hole, or prize up a Nail sunk too deep into the Sole or Last, besides the pinching part which is **Toothed** for diverse uses, as to draw out the Leather, force out a Tack.

S. the like extended in form of a Cheveron A. between two **Awls**, and a **Rowl** or **Knot** of a **Tatching Thread**, is the Arms of the Company of Journeymen Shoo-makers in the City of *Chester*.

In the Sinister chief is a **pair of Wedges**, these are to

*

to raise up a Shooe in the In-step, when it is too streight for the top of the foot: **Shoomakers** love to put Ladies in their Stocks; but these **Wedges** like Merciful Justices, upon Complaint soon do ease and deliver them.

In the Sinister Base, is placed the **Lead** or **Cistern**, that being filled with Water, and set in a cool place, keeps their Balls of Wax from running about, and makes them so indifferent hard that they may be wrought with.

CXVI. He beareth in a Field Azure, three Wooden Tools of the Shoomakers in Pale, *viz.* the **Stitching Stick**, the **foze-part Stick**, and the **long Stick**; all three useful for them, but seeing I can find none such in Arms, I pass them over.

CXVII. He beareth Argent, an **High Heel shooe Pinked** Sable, **Soled**, Gules. Born by the name of *Shoe* or *Shone*. This is a Shooe of the Gentest fashion, which I have set amongst the Tools, because my Engraver did not do his part, in making those Shooes in *chap.* I. *n mb.* 96. B. 3 Spanish Leather Shoes A. born by *Calshue*.

A. a Fess G. between 3 such S. Soles and Pinked of the second, by the name of *Pinsorf*. That is termed the **Pinking** of a Shooe, when the grain of the Leather is raised by a sharp pointed Tool, that the inner part is seen; which is done in a certain order, and also into Roses and Flowers, as they fancy.

In the Base of this quarter, is placed the **Shoo-makers Trees**, they are for the stretching out of the Leg of a Boot that pincheth, or is too straight for the Leg and Calf; it goes with a Running **Wedge** in a **Rigget**, between two other peeces of Wood cut in the shape of a Leg.

Tanners Instruments.

7. WE shall give you some examples of the **Leather Tanner**, and the Instruments by which such Works are performed.

CXVIII. He beareth Vert, a **Tanners Working Knife**, and a **Pilling Knife**, Argent; **Handles**, Or. These are severally born in Arms, and therefore a word of each of them.

The **Working Knife** is a crooked Knife with two streight out handles, having a thick back; this raiseth the grain.

The **Fleshing Knife**, is of the same form and make, only this Knife hath no back, but is edged on both sides: This takes off all the Flesh that the Butchers leave on the Hide. 3 such in a Field S. is born by *Pillerheim*.

G. a Cheveron between 3 such A. Handle O. born by *Tanner*.

The **Pilling Knife**, of some called a **Pilling Iron**; this takes off all the Hair of the Hide; being a four square Iron set in two **Handles**, **Hooped**, B. The like in Pale (or erected) between 2 Lions rampant endorsed A. the handles O. is born by *Wallderbach*.

CXIX. He beareth Argent, a **Tanners Mill**, or generally called by them the **Ring and Mill**. It is for the grinding and crushing of their **Bark**; being a round large Wooden Trough with a large Stone set on the edge, or turning part, with sharp strong Knives Leaded into the Stone, which Stone being turned in the Trough with its Weight causeth the Irons to cut the Bark very small.

CXX. He beareth Azure, a **Tanners Pooler** (or **Poler**) a **Fisher**, and a **Lyme Hook**. These are three Instruments used about Tanners Pits; the **Pooler** to stir up the **Dusc**, or Bark and Water; and when it is sufficiently soaked, and the strength gone out of the Bark, then comes the **Fisher**, which is an Iron with Nett-work, made from side to side of it with strong Iron Wyers, with this the Bark is taken out of the Water; and the **Lime Hook** to draw the Hides out of the Pits.

B. a Tanners Fisher, and Lime hook in Salter A. is born by the name of *Fish-lime*.

CXXI. In this quarter are three other useful Instruments belonging to the Tanners Trade; the first is a **scutching Knife**, by it all the roughness and exorbitances, and filthy excrescences growing to the out-side of the Bark, are cut away, and the Bark is also by this Knife cut into smaller peeces to go into the Mill-Ring, to be ground to small pieces.

The second is a **shaving Knife**, by which Tanned Skins are shaved and cleansed from their filthy Excrescencies of Flesh, Hair, and end of the Skins.

S. 3 such in Pale A. Handles O. born by *Shavering*.

The third is a **hewing Knife**, and used for the Hewing of the Bark small, and to prepare it for the Mill. Azure 3 such erected, Argent; Handles, Sable. Is born by *Dowdrell*.

CXXI. * He beareth Argent, a **Tanners Mill-stone**, O. set with its **Knives**, S. This hath been a late devise of setting sharp Iron or **Steel Knives**, upon the edge of the Mill-stone to cut the Bark, which doth perform that work in less time and with more ease than formerly it was done only by the weight of the Stone, sans Irons. They have been here in use with us not above a Dozen years from this time, 1688.

Fletchers, or Arrow-makers Tools.

8. THE most Skilful **Archer** may not always hit the Mark, and the best **Artist** hath his intervals,

vals, which is the only end to inform us, that in this Life there is no perfection of parts, or satisfaction of Tools, for what is in use to day, may be cast aside to Morrow as useless, through the invention of a more fit and ingenious Instrument found out for that purpose, as is seen by many Antient Tools, now laid aside by several Trades, by reason of others new found out, that are more profitable or more active in their Operations: However as I find them, take them, new and old together.

CXXII. In this square are three **Arrow-makers Tools.** The first and chief is termed a **Flote,** it is an Iron Instrument all Teeth on the lower side, streight cross the same (as in the **Curriers** Instrument shewed *numb.* 129.) with an Iron crooked handle on the top: Its operation is for the working off the Timber, to make it in the shape of a **Bow.**

S. on a Cheveron between 3 such O. 3 Mullets S. is the Bowyers Companyes Coat.

S. 3 such A. born by *Flote.* And also by *Floterage.*

The second is termed a **Piercer,** it is a kind of a square **Head Bit,** and is set in a **Bush,** and is to be used in a **Brace,** (as the Joyners use their Bit and Brace.)

B. a Bend between 2 such erected A. the Bushes O. is born by *Pierce.*

S. 3 such erected A. Bushes O. born by *Mampeercer.*

The third is a **Polisher,** which is to set a gloss and brightness upon their work.

CXXIII. In this is two Instruments, the first is termed a **Framing** or a **Slitting Saw**; a slender Saw set in an **Iron Frame,** with an **Handle** to take off and on; with this the Notch or Nick in the Arrow, for the Bow String to go in, is made. This Argent, with the handle reversed, Or; in a Field Vert, is born by the name of *Bayrner.*

S. the like in Fess between 3 Roses A. Handle O. is born by *Sawnch.*

The second, is a kind of a small half round Plain, of which the Fletchers have two sorts; the first is termed a **Ripper**; it is to make the rough work something fashionable, and put it in some form; the next is the **Shaffe,** or **Hollow Shaffe,** it worketh the same smooth and round, and fit to be made up into an Arrow.

CXXIV. He beareth in this square, first a Tool of theirs called a **Graver**; it is a long smooth Iron like a **File** set into an **Handle,** one of the sides thereof having Teeth like a Saw throughout the flat side, as I shewed you before in the **Flote.**

G. a Fess between 3 of these A. Handles O. is born by *Van Gravenberg.*

The second is the form of a **Cross-Bow shaft head,** such as was used in old Time: Of this Bearing I find one *Healy* to give for his Coat of Arms; Gules, three such Shaft heads Argent, the points erected.

G. a Fess O. between 3 such A. born by *Shafted,* alias *Shafthead*; see more in *numb.* 130.

CXXV. He beareth in this square two kinds of **Roman Quivers,** for the Archers to keep their Darts and Arrows in: I call them *Roman* Quivers, because I find them so Coined on the Antient *Roman* Medals or Moneys then in use; for in the Victory obtained against the *Armenians*, in the time of *Augustus* and *Claudius Nero*, these Quivers were stamped thereon, as a Memorial of their Captivity with this Writing ARMENIA CAPTA, which for distinction sake we may term the **Armenian Long Quiver,** and the **Armenian** or **Parthians Round** or **Bottle Quiver,** with Strings to hang them on their Shoulder. See others of another fashion *chap.* 17 *numb.* 76. 77.

CXXVI. He beareth Azure, a **Cuck-stool,** or a **Ducking Tumbrel,** Or. Born by the name, or rather known for the Cognizance of a Scold, being an Instrument to cool Hot Fiery Tongued Women, which have their Tongues set on Fire by the Devil, which nothing can Tame except it be well Ducked.

Curriers, or Leather-Dressers Tools.

9. WE come now to the **Currier,** or **Dresser of Tanned Leather,** from which Profession arose that Proverb, *I will Curry your Hide*; when one Threatned another to Beat him sufficiently, to his own Hearts Content.

CXXVII. He beareth Vert, a **Pin Block,** Argent; by the name of *Owlerhead.* This is a Block set full of Wooden Pins, about 2 or 3 inches high, upon which they beat their Leather to make it pliable and gentle, being rouled up.

CXXVIII. He beareth Sable, a **Whetting Steel,** between a **pareing Knife** and a **Smoother,** Argent; the Handles Or: Born by the name of *Curriers.* That in chief is termed a **Curriers pareing** or **shaving Knife**; it is edged on both sides, streight and broader in the Blade, than any of the Leather Workers before-mentioned; the handles stand one contrary, or cross to the other. S. a Cross Engraled Or, between eight such Knives 2 and 2 in Salter, A. the handle of the second, is the Coat Armour of the Company of Curriers in the City of *London.* Some term the Cross between 4 Salters of (or composed of) Curriers shaving Knives.

The second lying in Fess, is called a **Curriers Steel** or **Whetting Steel**; it is round and set in a **Haft Hooped**; with this they whet or sharpen their Shaving Knife when it is dull; as the Butchers do their Knives on their **Steels.** S. 3 such A. Hafts O. born by *Sharples.*

The

The third and last of this quarter, is termed a **Smoother**, with which all their Leather is **sickened**, as they call it, that is made bright and shining; it is all of Iron with a round top or handle to hold it by, and a flat smooth bottom, but not very broad. G. 3 such A. born by *Slickner*.

CXXIX. He beareth Gules, a **Graining Board**, Or; the **Handle**, Argent. This is a Board with Nicks in after the manner of a **Saw**, if you look sideways at it, but turn it up and you will perceive the Nicks, Teeth or Riggets (call them which you will) run quite athwart the Board; it hath a Leather fastned on the top to put the hand through, thereby to hold it more steady, and to work with it the more easie. 3 such in Pale is born by the name of *Grainberg*, as the Blazon is aforesaid.

The second Figure in this square is the foresaid **Graining Board turned** up side down, which I caused to be set so, that you may see how the Teeth run streight through it. If it be born after this manner, which is a good Bearing, then term it a **Graining Board Transposed.**

CXXX. In this square is the **Bowyers Flote** with the **Teeth** side **outward**, or to sight; and the **Fletchers Cissars**: Of the first I find the **Flote** thus made, and born by the Company of Bowyers in the City of *Chester* about the year 1579, and is the properest way of making it, that the Teeth or sharp Rigget thereof may be seen as they are; which some have Blazoned a **Flote erected** and in full Aspect. *Viz.* Gules on a Cheveron between 3 such A. as many Bows stringed proper.

The second is the **long Cissars**, with which the Feathers of the Arrows are cut streight and even; and that Cissars are born in Arms will not be disputed, but whether such long cutting Cissars as these are, I will not take upon me to satisfy that curiosity; see *chap.* 6. *numb.* 33.

V. 3 pair of Cissars open A. born by *Van Schaerkens*.

Joymens and Carvers Tools.

10. WE come now to **Joynery**, which is an Art Manual, whereby several pieces of Wood are so fitted and joined together by streight lines, squares, Miters, or any Bevile Line, that they do seem one intire piece.

CXXXI. He beareth Sable, a **semi-circle**, with its **Line** and **Plummet** set upon a **Standard**, Or. This is an Instrument by which true Levels are taken, as also Heights and Distances; the semi-circle is generally made of Brass, being divided into 90 equal parts from the line of Level, to each side where the Sight holes are fixed. The Standard is made of Wood, being three feet, which are so framed in the head, that they may be set wider or closer together, according as the place requireth.

CXXXII. In the chief, or front of this square, is placed one of the Joyners working Plains, called a **Plow**, which is a narrow **Rabbet-Plain** with some Additions to it, *viz.* two square Staves, set stiff through two square Mortesses in the Stock, which are about 7 or 8 inches long, and stand streight and square on the further side of the Stock, which have shoulders on the out-side of the Stock reaching down to the Wooden sole of the Plain, to the Wooden sole there is added an Iron sole of the thickness of the Plow Iron. The Plow is to make a narrow square Groove on the edge of a Board or Rail.

The parts of a Plow.

The **Plain Stock.**
The **Sole of Iron.**
The **Plow Staves.**
The **Mortesses.**
The **Shoulders.**
The **Fence**, is that as sets the Plow at his distance from the Iron plate of the Plow that you intend the Groove shall be off the edge of the Board in which you intend to made it.

The second in this square, is termed a **Joynter**, which of some is made after this manner, contrary to that described *chap.* 9. *numb.* 19. but all the difference is in the **Tote** or **Handle**, which every Workman maketh according to his own Fancy, all other parts in the Stock agreeing.

The **Strike Block**, is a Plain shorter than the **Joynter**, having its sole made exactly flat and streight, and is used for the shooting of a short Joynt, because it is more handy than the **long Joynter**: It hath neither Handle or Tote on it, but like the Smoothing Plain, in *numb.* 134.

CXXXIII. He beareth Argent, a **Pit Saw** in a **Frame**, Azure: This kind of Pit-Saw with a Frame, is not in use with us, but in the Up Countreys, it is altogether made use of, but for what Fancy I judg not, but think it much easier and better without it. This is born thus by the name of *Sawyers*, or *Sawers*. See more of this kind of Saw *chap.* 9. *numb.* 2.

CXXXIV. In this quarter is set three other Instruments necessary in Joyners Work. The first is a **Joyners square** of another form, than what is mentioned *chap.* 9. *numb.* 15. It is made of two adjunct sides of a **Geometrical square**; that is two pieces of Wood, the one about an Inch thick, the other a quarter of an Inch, the one is fastned into the other with a Mortess with Glew and Wooden Pins, so as the two out-sides and the two inner sides stand at Right Angles one with another.

B. a Cheveron between 3 such O. is born by *Richer*.

The second in the Sinister chief, is called the **Joyners**

and **Bench Hook**, or the **Work-Bench Hook**, which is an Iron with a long Tang to go through a hole in the Bench, and a flat half round head, with Teeth on the streight side, to hold any thing that should be set against it: So that in it there is the foresaid parts, *Viz.* the **Tang** or tail, the **Head** or flat, and the **Teeth**, and all but one **Bench Hook**.

The third thing that is placed in the Base, is termed a **Smoothing Plain**, one of a contrary fashion to that following in *chap. 9. numb.* 21. this having a more flatter bottom and turned down in the ends, each Workman using his own fancy in the fashion of the **Stocks**.

CXXXV. These are three sorts of **Chissels**, the first is the **Paring Chissel**, this hath a very fine smooth edge; its office is to follow the **Former**, and to pare off the Irregularities the **Former** doth make; but of this see more *chap. 9. numb.* 1.

The second is termed a **Former**, it is a Chissel used before the **Paring Chissel** in all works, even as the **Fore Plain** is used before the **Smoothing Plain**, when it is used the Helve of it is knockt upon with the **Mallet**, to drive the edge of it into the Stuff: There are several Sizes of these kind of Chissels, from a quarter of an Inch, to an Inch and half broad.

The third is another kind of Chissel of the nature of a **Former**, only it is broad at the **Basil** or edge part, and groweth taper all along after till it comes to the **shouldering**; of these there are diverse Sizes, from half or quarter of an Inch, to an Inch and half, and have their terms according to their breadth, as an half Inch Former, an Inch Former, *&c.*

☞ The proper posture for these kind of Tools are to have their edges or cutting part downwards, if otherwise then to be mentioned.

S. a Fess between 2 such the Basils erected, and a third A. Hafts O. born by the name of *Former*.

CXXXVI. In this quarter in the first place, is a **Skew Former**, having the edge deeper down in one part than another: It is seldom used by Joyners, but for the cleansing of acute Angles, with its acute angles on its edges, where other angled Chissels will not so well come, and also for making of long and narrow Mortesses in Rails, Stiles and Muntons, *&c.*

The second in this quarter, is termed a **Gouge**, which is a **Chissel** having a **round edge**, and is for the cutting of such Wood as is to be rounded or hollowed: Of these there are several sorts from a quarter of an Inch Gouge, to an Inch and half, some being almost half round, others more open, as in the next Figure. G. 3 such A. Hafts O. by the name of *Gouger*.

CXXXVII. The first Instrument or Tool in this square, is called an **Inch Gouge**, without any **Handle** or **Helve**, with these sorts and sizes of Chissels Joyners are accommodated to do all kinds of Works both big and little. S. 3 such A. Handles O. is born by *Gouge*.

The second Tool is termed an **Auger Bit, sans Handle**; it is an half round Tool in the working or cutting part of it, with the bottom edge turned inwards, one corner thereof being set a little above the other, which occasions the sinking or cutting deep into the Wood, and so by degrees cuts a hole through.

The third Tool is the **Saw Wrest**; it is an Instrument of Iron either set in a handle or not, for it may be used as well without; in the edge of it are made three or four, or more Nicks; with this (the Joyner having Filed the Teeth of his Saw) he sets the said Teeth; that is, he puts one of the Nicks or Notches of the Wrest between the first two Teeth of the Blade of the Saw, and then turns the **Wrest**, and it will turn one Tooth to you, and the other from you; and so do all along the Saw: This **setting of the Teeth** of the **Saw** (as Work-men call it) is to make the **Kerfe** wide enough for the Back to follow the edge; and is set ranker (that is, more bending outwards) for soft and course cheap Stuff, than for hard and costly Wood. A. 3 such B. the Handle erected O. is born by *Shawrest*.

CXXXVIII. The first Tool in this square is termed a **Miter square**, of a contrary form to the following, mentioned *chap. 9. numb.* 17. It hath an **Handle** (or top part) an Inch thick, and three broad, with a **Tongue** of the same breadth, and for length 5, 6, or more inches, according to the breadth of the Work: it is to be Glewed into the Handle by a Mortess and Pinned. V. 3 such O. is born by *Mitterall*.

The second Instrument is a **Gage**, or **square Gage**, from the square piece that runs upon the Staff; but of this see more *chap. 9 numb.* 18. The parts of it are these, the **Staff**, the **hinder end** of it; the **fore-end** in which the **Tooth** is, the **Tooth**, and the **square** or **oval**, which is that as slips up and down upon the Staff. B. 3 such O. a Chief A. is born by *Gagger*.

The third is termed a **Miter Box**, it is composed of pieces of Wood, of an inch thick each, then nailed together, the one an upright piece, and the other a bottom piece, and on the upright piece, on its upper side are the **Miter Lines** strucken with the **Miter square**, from the middle to the right hand, and on the left, which are sawed down to the bottom of the said upright piece. This is a way used by joyners that make many Frames, to save themselves the Labour of drawing out of **Squares**, **Miters**, and several **Bevils** upon their Stuff.

CXXXIX. In this quarter is set forth the form of the **Joyners Working Bench**, with all the **Appurtenances** belonging thereunto, as

First, the **Plank** or Board for the top, in which are made several round holes for the **Bench Hook** and the **Hold Fast**, as they have occasion to hold the Work on it.

The **Bench Feet**, those of the Workmans side being made full of holes, in which are Pins put for the Board or other thing to rest upon, while its edges are

to be wrought, either by shooting with the Plain, or otherwise, which Pins are to be removed to higher or lower holes, as the breadth of the Board shall require.

The **Bench Screw**, set on its higher side, to screw Boards to the Bench side, while their edges are plaining or shooting, that they shake or tremble not, but remain steady while they are in working.

The **Hold-fast**, which is to keep the Work fast upon the Bench while the Joyner either Saws Tenants, or or cuts Mortesses, or doth any other Work upon it.

The **Bench Hook** in it, which is to stay or hold Boards, or any other Stuff that is laid flat against it, while they are Trying or Plaining.

The **Double Screw**, is sometimes fixed to the side of the Bench, and sometimes the farther Cheek is laid an edge upon the flat of the Bench, and fastned there with an Hold-Fast, and sometimes two are fastned to the Bench, to hold fast some sorts of Stuff, that are to have their edges wrought.

The **Mallet**, it is always to rest or ly on the Bench, because of its continual use.

CXL. In chief lyeth that which is called the **Bench Screw**, it is made of Wood, the out part flat, which lieth or is nailed to the Bench side, the other part opened by degrees or steps wider and wider, to fit Boards of all thicknesses that shall be put between the Bench and it, through the higher **Tang** or **Lip** is put a Wooden **Screw**, the same being screwed through the hole, its end holds the Board fast to the Bench side.

That in the Base is called the **Glew Pot**, it is commonly made of good thick Lead; that by its substance it may retain a heat the longer, that the Glew **Chill not**, (as Work-men say when it cools) when it is to be used: It hath a strong Bended Wyer put through two holes in the sides of it, by which it is transported and carried from one place to another. A. 3 such B. born by *Glew pott.*

CXLI. In this quarter in the chief part of it are the fashion and forms of two sorts of **Joyners Mallets**, made and used by Joyners, the one **square**, the other **Bevil wrought**; Of this see more *numb.* 76. and *chap.* 9. *numb.* 4.

In the Base, is a thing called the **Sawing Tressel**, or a **Tressel**, which Joyners and Carpenters use to lay large and great pieces of Timber upon, when they have occasion to cut them into Tenants, or for other kinds of peecings, or if they purpose to cut it into lesser or shorter pieces: It is two pieces of Joyce set Salterwise, whose Angles will hold any thing fast being put between the two upper ends.

CXLII. These are the forms of the **double Screws**, mentioned before in the Joyners Bench, *numb.* 139. they are made of Spar, the Screws are fitted with holes or **Screw Bores** in the Spars fit to receive them, which being turned, the two pieces are drawn together so hard, that they hold firmly any thing set between them.

In the Sinister Base is set the form of a **Plain Iron**, (such Plains I mean) as are to plain Boards smooth; for other Plain Irons are cut with squares and half rounds and after the form of an ⊖ according to their Operations.

CXLIII. In the chief of this quarter is an Engine called a **Whetting Block**, or a **Block** to **Whet**, or **File** a **Saws Teeth** in: It is an end of a Spar, or such piece of Wood, with a Bevil or taper Groove, or Mortess cut from side to side, and in depth half through the Wood; to which is fitted a **Wedge** answerable to the Groove or Mortess; Into this Groove the Blade of the Saw is put, which is wedged hard in, that it cannot play or quaver under the File, when the Teeth are Filing sharp with a three square File.

The Figure in the Base of this quarter is termed the **Waving Engine**; it is a thing wherewith **Waved Work** is generally made upon small Frames for Pictures and Looking Glasses, and such like work; and is in the bottom a long Plank of about seven Inches broad, and an Inch and half thick: On the middle of the Plank runs a **Rabbet**, and upon the Rabbet rides a **Block** with an **Handle** through it, of about an inch in the diameter; and at the further end of the Block is fastned a **Axe**, or a **Great Hand Axe**. At the other end of the Plank is erected a square strong piece of Wood about six inches high, having a square Mortess in it on the top, and bound about with an **Iron Collar** somewhat loosely fitted on, having two **Male Screws** fitted in two Female Screws, to screw against that part of the Wood unmortessed, thereby to hold the Iron that worketh the Moulding, whose lower end is cut into the form of the said Moulding you intend the work shall have. On the other side the square wooden piece is fitted another **Iron Screw** having a round Plate fastned at the end of it; and at the farther side is placed a Wooden Screw called a **Knob**, with a flat piece of Iron coming through the farther and higher side of the square piece standing edgewise with the higher edge rounded off or Filed round.

The several parts of the Waving Engin.

a the **Plank** or bottom of the Engine.
b the **Block** with a Groove on the bottom.
c the **Rabbet** on which the Block runs.
d the **Handle** to draw the Block by.
e the **Hand screw**, with its Key to wind the screw.
f the **two Screws** Male and Female.
g the **square** upright **piece** of Wood, with the Mortesse on the top having a square flat Iron Collar on the higher part.
h the **Iron** which cuts the Waves, whose bottom is cut into the form of the Moulding the work is intended.
I the **Wooden Screw** or **Knob**, on the farther side of the square piece of Wood, with a flat piece of

of Iron about 3 quarters of an inch broad, and a quarter of an inch thick, ſtanding an edge, coming through the ſides.

k the **Iron ſcrew**, with its Nut, having a round Iron Plate made faſt at the end of its ſhank.

l the **Rack**, is a thin flat piece of hard Wood about an inch and quarter broad, and as long as the Rabbet.

m the **Mouth**, is a ſquare hole in the foreſide, and through the ſquare piece of Wood, under the Iron which hath its end cut according to the moulding, through which the Board to be moulded is drawn.

The **Riglet**, is the Board either Moulded, or prepared to be Moulded.

Carpenters Tools.

II. THE Rules and Tools which **Joyners** and **Carpenters** work by, are ſo near the ſame, that I need not here again to deſcribe them; only there is this difference, the Carpenters Tools are made ſomewhat ſtronger for their uſe than they need to be for the Joyners: Yet there are many Tools requiſite and proper for a Carpenter (eſpecially a Maſter Carpenter) that a Joyner need to take little notice of. Therefore I ſhall here deſcribe ſuch Tools belonging to that Trade, which are not expreſſed among the Joyners.

CXLIV. In this quarter are three Inſtruments uſed by the **Carpenter**, two whereof are never mentioned to be any ways belonging to **Joyners**: The firſt is the **Level**, of theſe there are uſed ſeveral bigneſſes, even from two to ten foot long, that it may reach over a conſiderable length of the Work; its uſe is to try whether a Floor be exactly ſtreight and even, and that one part be not higher than another; for if the Plumb-line hang juſt upon the Perpendicular line, being ſet flat upon the Work, then the Work is level, elſe not.

In the **Level** there are theſe parts. The **Level.** The **Plummet.** The **Plumb-Line**, and the **perpendicular Line**, which is marked from the top to the bottom of the Board; all which things are ſo common, that there needs no further explaining of their parts.

The ſecond that lies in the Baſe, is called a **Crow**, or an **Iron Crow.** Some are made of this form, others directly round in the ſhank, only with a pike end, or a flat end: This is uſed by them as a **Lever**, to lift up the ends of great Trees and heavy Timber, when either a **Bauk** or a **Rowler** is to be laid under it. The parts, as Workmen term them in this form of **Crow**, are the **Claws**, the **ſhank**, and the **Spike end.**

The third in the *Siniſter* chief is uſed by both Joyners and Carpenters, and is termed a **Joyners Saddle** It is an end of a *Spar* or Joyce cut into the ſide with an Indent or Beviled on each ſide, ſo that any ſquare piece will lye ſteady in it with one of its edges up.

CXLV. The firſt is the **Hammer**, whoſe chief uſe is for the **Driving** Nails into work, and **Drawing** Nails out of work. Of the ſeveral parts of the Hammer, ſee *chap.* 7. *numb.* 128.

The ſecond is a Carpenters **Chiſſel**, or a **ſocket Chiſſel**, as moſt Chiſſels uſed by Carpenters are, becauſe of ſtrength; this is to have a **Wooden Head** put into it, which ſome call the part as goes into the ſocket the **Spyg**; of theſe *Socket* Chiſſels they uſe ſeveral ſorts, yet not ſeverally diſtinguiſhed by names more than to call them an half inch, three quarter inch Chiſſels; inch, and inch and half, two inch, to three inch Chiſſels.

The third is termed a **Jack**; it is an Engine uſed for the removing, and commodious placing of great Timber: By the help of this, the ſide of a Timber Houſe ſhrunk from its Morteſſes are raiſed up again to their places. It is a Wooden Caſe with a large Morteſs in it, wherein is placed a **Rack**, which mounteth up any thing placed upon it, by the help of a **Nut Wheel** on a **Spindle**, and turned about with a **Windlaſſe.**

CXLVI. He beareth in this quarter ſeveral ſorts of Engines uſed by Carpenters. The firſt are two **Levers** in the chief; theſe are **ſquare** or **round Poles**, ſome call them **Wayes**, by which the **Rowler** of the **Craw Engine** is turned about, to draw up heavy Timber to a conſiderable height: They are termed alſo **Pudlaies** or **Hand-ſpikes.**

The **Ten Foot Rod** or **Rule**, is an Inſtrument of Wood like one of theſe, being no other than the **Rib** of a ſlit Deal plained ſtreight, by which Ground Plots are meaſured, for the laying of Foundations of Houſes; it is divided into ten parts, each containing a Foot.

The ſecond Tool, which is ſet on the dexter ſide is termed a **Ripping Chiſſel**; it is a **Socket Chiſſel**, about an inch broad with a **blunt Edge**, not having a **Baſil**, as almoſt all other Chiſſels have, and therefore would more properly be termed a **Wedge** than a Chiſſel; but moſt commonly Carpenters uſe an old caſt off Chiſſel for a Ripping Chiſſel. Its Office is not to cut Wood, but to rip or tear 2 pieces of Wood faſtned together from one another, by entring the blunt edge of it between the two pieces, and ſo forcing them aſunder, by Blows with the Mallet.

The third, which is in the Feſs point, and ſtandeth Bendways, is termed a **Drag**; it is an Engine ſet upon two Wheels, made ſomewhat like a low narrow **Cart Bottom.** It is uſed for the Carriage of Timber, and then it is drawn by the handle by two or more Men, according as the weight of the Timber may require. Gules, the like to this in Bend Or, between two Pheons Argent, is born by *Don Lazallo* a *Spaniſh* Family.

The fourth in the *Siniſter* chief, is a **Pulley hung** by the **Hook** in the **Houſe of a Rope** out of the chief. This being ſingle is termed only a **Pully**, but if

if it have more than one **turn** or **little Wheel** in it, for the Rope to run in, it is termed by most a **Snatch Block**, or **double Snatch Block**; but of the several parts and terms belonging to these Drawing Blocks, see *chap.* 15. *numb.* 45.

CXLVII. In this quarter on the dexter side, is an upright **Pale** of strong Timber set an end, having many **Pins** put through it, made of sound Wood, or else of Iron. This is an appurtenance belonging to the **Crab**, mentioned *numb.* 148. and is to hang a **Pulley** or **Snatch Block** thereon, by which heavy Timber is drawn to a considerable height. Such an **Engine** as this with **Pins all along it**, was in former times used for to scale or clime up an Enemies Wall, and thereby to surprise a Town or Fort.

A. 3 such in Bend Pale-wise S. is born by *Commander.*

The second is a **Snatch Block**, or a **double Snatch Block**. With this Engine, with the appurtenances belonging to it, as **Ropes** and **Tackles**, great Trees of Timber are drawn up to a considerable height.

CXLVIII. He beareth Argent, a **Crab Engine**, Or. This is born by the name of *Crable.* This is an Engine used in Carpentery for the management of their heavy Timber, and to ease an hard Labour: It is only a square Frame of strong Timber, with a thick Plank 4 or 5 inches thick, fastned on the top of the frame, and the like on the bottom, through which goeth a strong **Rowler**, which is turned in the holes of the Planks, by the help of **Hand-spikes** or **Levers**.

CXLIX. In the Dexter side is an **Hand assistant**, holding of a **Plumb line**, with a **Line towle**, at the end of it. This is the coat of Arms of *Plumbley*, being in an Azure field. This is a way that Carpenters use to try the upright standing of Posts, or other works that are to stand perpendicular to the ground plot; by holding the end of the line between the finger and the thumb, a little distance from the corner of the post, or work, and if the line and corner of the post be parallel to each other, the work is upright, else not.

The Second figure is a paire of **Great Screws**, of some called **House Screws**, for by the help of them, an house whose sides stand crooked, or have the **Wall Plates** sunk, are raised up and set streight by screwing up every peece into the place from whence it is fallen. *Se numb.* 142. are the like for form, but in these the screw goeth through but one Plank, the other plank the Screw ends, only turn in a round hole made Concave.

In the Sinister side, is an other manor of **Engine**, and I suppose made for the same use as that mentioned in *numb.* 145. though it be of an other fashion on the top. Such a **Jack Engine**, with a Bended Head, I find to be an ancient Badg belonging to the Earle of *Oxford.*

*

Turners Tools.

12. AS There are different Matters, and Substances to be Turned, so there is also diverse ways, & different Tooles to be used in each different Matter; As Soft wood, Hard wood, Ivory, Brass, Iron, *&c.* Each of which I shall successively discourse upon each of their working Tooles.

CXLIX*. The **Lathe**, it is the **Turners**, or **Throers Engine**, by which they make all their Turned Works. This Machine Instrument is so vulgarly known, though it cannot be described in a Draught so as all its parts shall appear at one single view, yet I have set down enough of it to give you the names of its several members and their uses.

Parts of a Lathe.

The **Leggs**, or **Stiles**, are two thick Square peeces of timber about 3 Foot long, and 6 Inches broad, which are set upright, to them the other parts by mortesses are fastned; Haveing **Braces** at the bottom by which they are fastned to the floore.

The **Cheeks**, or **Sides**, are the two side peeces, fastned on each side the Leggs at the upper end by Tennants and so pinned; or else by a strong **Iron Screw**, made with a square Shank at the head, to go through the Cheeks and Stiles, and so by turning on the end of it an Iron nut, the two Cheekes will be drawn close to the tennants, or upper ends of the leggs.

The **Puppets**, are the square peeces of wood rounded of at the head, which have the **Pikes**, or **Iron Pinns** in, upon which the work is turned. At the lower end each hath a **Tennant** to slid between the two Cheeks, with a **Mortess** throwe them, for to put **Taper wedges** to keep the Puppets close to the Cheeks.

The **Screw**, and the **Pike**, are the two Irons upon the points whereof the centers of the works are fixed, & after screwed hard that the work slip not off. The Screw hath a **Nut** in the Puppet, and an **Iron handle** fixed into the hinder end of the Screw by which it is turned forwards and backwards as the use of it shall require.

The **Rest**, is a Square peece of timber one corner of it rounded off: upon this the workman layeth his tooles in working to keep them stiddy while he is useing them.

The **Stays for the Rest**, are two peeces of wood fitted and fastned under the **Shoulders** of the Puppets, upon these the Rest is set at any distance from the Pikes, by the meanes of **Wooden Screws** set in wooden **Nuts** against the Rest.

The **Side Rest**, is a Rest disjunct from the Lathe, and used by Turners when they turn the flat sides of Boards, which standing athwart the Pikes they can the more conveniently rest their Tools upon it. It is a peece of Oaken plank firmely nailed on a square peece of timber standing upright, which as a tennant slideth into an **Iron Collar** that reacheth through the Cheeks and

*

and is wedged under as the Puppets are.

Some Turners to the square tennant set on one end of it a long round Iron **Cilindrick Socket**, into it is put a long round **Iron Shank**, on the top whereof is made the **Side Rest** which turneth any way in the Socket, and kept fast therein by a **Screw Pin** going through the side of the Socket.

The **Treddle**, and **Cross Treddle**, are peeces of Timber which are nailed to the ground with a Leather that they may rise and fall, to the other end is the String fixed which goeth to tht **Pole**.

The **Pole**, is a peece of timber that will bend and go to it place againe, by this the worke is turned about in the Lathe.

The **Pole Rests**, are Sparrs or other timber nailed to the top of the Seiling, with an overthwart peece from them on which the Pole playeth.

The **Rowler**, is a round peece of wood made use of when the Rome is not high enough for a Pole to play up and down. It is moved on two **Iron Pins** fastned at both ends, with a **Pole** set either before, or behind the Lathe, with a **string** from it to the Rowler.

The **Bow**, which is an Archers Bow, and is used by some Turners that work in small, and that seldom remove the Puppets of their Lathe. It is fastned over head and from the midle of the String another hangs down & comes to the Treddle.

The **Great Wheel**, it is used when heavy worke is to be turned, such as the Pole and Treddle will not command. The Wheel is set in a moveable **Frame** consisting of wooden **Standards, Lying, Overthwart,** & **Cross peeces** mortessed together. The String lyeth in the **Grove** of the wheel and turned cross is put into a Grove of the worke, or a **Mandrile or Pulley** fixed to the side of the worke, and is turned about with one or two **Iron Handles**.

The **Treddle Wheel**, is a wheel made of a Board with a grove in for a string, which goes cross to the grove in the worke. It is under the Lathe on an **Iron Axis** with a **Crooke** at one end, on it is hung the noose of a Leather thong, and the other end fastned to the Treddle, which by exact treading on, carryeth the wheel about without intermission.

The **String**, it is made of the Guts of Beasts as sheep &c. though the generall name of it is **Cats Guts**.

The **Seat** of the Lathe, it is made of wooden Bearers, with an overthwart peece, with Iron pins at the ends to fasten it: against this the workman supports himselfe to stand the stiddier to his worke. In the sted of this Seat some Turners make use of a strong **Gerth web**, fastned to the Leggs of the Lathe, against which he stays himselfe and keeps him steddy at his work.

The **Horn**, is the tip end of an Horn, hung on the out side the puppet, or else a round **Wooden Box**, pinned under the Cheek to hold, oyle or grease in, to liquour the centers of his work to make it run easie.

CL. Turners have several sorts of **Mandrels**, and the sizes of them also differ, according to the sizes of the Work; however their Names are, yet their principal fashions are these.

The first and principal is that as lyeth in the Base, which is termed the **Broad Flat Mandrels** it is set on the broad side with 3 or 4 **Iron pins** or **pegs**, near to the Verge of it flat; these are used to be fastned into the backside of a Board while the other is turning or working upon: Behind the back of this flat (and indeed in all Mandrels) is fitted a long **shank** or **Rowler**, for the String to be wound about while the Work is Turning. In the Mandrel are these parts.

The **Face**, or round Flat of the Mandrel.

The **Rowler** or Shank.

The **Shoulder** of the Rowler, to keep the String from slipping off.

The **Pegs**, or Points, or Pikes.

B. 3 such in Pale O. the middle having the Pike contrary pointed S. born by the name of *Mandrell*.

The second is that in the chief, which is termed the **Screw Mandrell**, the **shank** or **screw** is made of Iron having the two ends round, and in the middle between the round ends a square the length of the Rowler, and this square is fitted stiff into a square hole made through the middle of the Rowler that it turn not about. In each flat end of this Shank or Spindle is made a center hole, whereinto the Pikes of the **Puppets** are pitcht when this Mandrell is used. By this several Screws of diverse Diameters are made; that next the end of the shank is the smallest, which makes a **Male screw** of the **finest Thread**; the next a Male screw of a **coarser Thread**; and the third makes a Screw coarser than it; so that you may make the shank as long as you will, thereby to make more variety of sizes for screws.

The **Sockets** or **Chocks** belonging to the **Screw Mandrels**, are so many as there are several sizes of screws on the Shank; these hollow Sockets have female screws in them made before the Notch to slip over the male Screw; which being fitted one to another, are pinned with a pin, put through two opposite holes made for that purpose in the Cheeks of the Wooden Sockets that it shake not. The parts of a Socket are these.

The **Socket** or Chock.

The **Wooden pin**.

The **Stay**.

The **Notch** to slip over the Male Screw.

CLI. In the chief is another sort of Mandrel called a **Pin Mandrell**. This is made with a long **Wooden shank**, to fit stiff into a round hole that is made in the Work that is to be Turned. These are also termed **Shank Mandrels**; which Mandrels with Iron Shanks are much used by Turners that turn **Bobbins** and such like Work; because a Wooden shank to fit the small hole through the work, would not be strong enough to carry the work about.

There is another Mandrell called an **Hollow Mandrel**, it is both hollow, and used to turn hollow things in it: It hath but one center hole belonging to it, which is at the **Rowler end** or **Neck**, but it hath a shank that supplies the office of another Center hole, which is put into one of the holes of the **Joint Collar**, described in *numb.* 153.

The second Instrument in this quarter is termed a **Sweepe**, or a Mathematicall Instrument called a Sweep.

It is a long Bar of Iron, and is termed the **Beam** of the Sweep, which hath in the center point of it (in a **Center hole**, made in a square Stud of Metal) a center fixed; also a **Socket** to ride on the Beam, which is removed at pleasure, nearer or farther from the Center; to this is Filed a Tooth of Steel with such roundings and hollows in the bottom of it, as is intended there shall be hollows or rounding in the work; then removing the **Socket** till it Tooth stand upon the intended place, on the Verge of the work, is there screwed fast on the Beam, it is prepared for the work, which if the Workman hold the head of the Center in his left hand, and with his right draw about the Beam and Tooth, it will cut and tear away great Flakes of Metal, till the thing worked upon hath received the whole form of Mouldings the Tooth will make.

The same Instrument with a Moulding Plain fixed on it, will do the same work on Wood, making round Mouldings.

CLII. There are several sorts of fashioned **Collars**, of which these two in this quarter are apart. The first on the dexter side is termed a **Round Collar**, so called from the roundness of the head of it, it is to be fastned in a Lathe by a Wedge as the Puppets are under the Cheeks; **Hollow Handrels** are often turned in the Collars of this form, but then the Spindle is made of Iron, and hath a Screw just at its end, upon which is screwed a Block with a hollow in it, made fit to receive the Stuff to be worked upon.

The second in this quarter hath the simple name of a **Collar**, without any other Addition, except you call it a **Turners Collar**, to distinguish it from other things termed **Collars**. It is also made fast in a Lathe by a Wedge, as the former is to be.

CLIII. This is termed by Turners, a **Joynt Collar** which is made of two **Iron Cheeks**, which move upon a **Joynt** with a **Button**, so that they may be set close or open, like a Joynt rule; on the inner edge of each Cheek is formed as many semi-circles or half round holes as the length of the Cheeks will conveniently bear, they are made of different Diameters that they may fit the necks or shanks of different sized **Handrels**. Near to the top of one of these Cheeks is fastned with a center pin, a square Iron Collar with a small handle or button to it, which is to put it on and take it off the Cheeks when they are to be opened. This holds them so fast together that they cannot start asunder, and yet is made so fit that it may easily slip off and on. In this Instrument there are these parts.

The **Cheeks**,
The **Joynt** at the bottom.
The **Semi-circles** in the Cheeks.
The **Diameters**, circumferences or round holes in which the Cheeks are closed.
The **square Collar** that holds the Cheeks together.
The **Handle**, by which the said Collar is taken off or put on.
The **Center pin**, on which the square Collar turns.

CLIV. In this square are five sorts of Turners Tools, useful in their way of Turning either of soft or hard work, round or hollow, whose names are Gouges in general, but more particular.

The first is termed a **Grooving Hook**, or a **single pointed Grooving Hook**, or the **Point Grooving Hook**; this cuts on the side or flat of a Board a fine hollow circle or swage; these Hooks or Tools have their Teeth of different forms according to the fashion of the groove to be made on the plain of a Board; for sometimes their Teeth are flat edged, sometimes round edged, sometimes a point only, and sometimes two points, or of other forms; all which sorts of **Blades** are made much stronger than the **Gouge** or **Chissel**, and have the sides of their edges more obtuse to make it the stronger; also they are 10 or 12 inches long without the Handle.

The second is called a **Gouge**; now Gouges do the Office in Turning (as a **Foye-Plain** in Joynery, and the **Jack-Plain** in Carpentry) they serve only to take off the Irregularities the **Hatchet**, or sometimes the **Draw Knife** leaves after the work is Hewed or drawn pretty near the round; and that it may commodiously do it, the **Blade** is formed about half round in the edge, and the two extream ends is a little sloped off: They are in their Blades of a long Size, with long Handles (as all other Turning Tools are so long, that the Handles may reach (when they use them) under the Arm-pit of the Workman) that he may have more stay, and steadily manage them. The **Blade** of the Gouge is of several Sizes both for length and breadth, some as long as the Shank, others shorter, even from an inch to 3, 4, or 5 inches in the length; and from a quarter of an inch to a whole Inch; and sometimes for very large work two inches over: Most Gouges have in them these several parts, as in other Joyners Chissels and Gouges.

The **Basil**, is that part as is ground to an edge.
The **Blade**, the roundish part above the Basil.
The **Shank**, the long Iron Stail.
The **Shoulder**, that as the Hast rest upon.
The **Tang**, that part as goes into the Hast.
The **Hast**, the Wooden handle.
The **Hoop** or Brass about the bottom of the Hast.

The third is named a **Grooving Hook** or **Tool**; or the **Triangular** (or three Tooth) **Growing Hook**.

The fourth is termed a **round edge Growing Hook**.

The fifth is called the **three pointed growing Tool**.

☞ All these Tools when born in Arms are to have the edge or Basil, or working part erected, because they are so in their proper place; if otherwise, then to be mentioned, either reversed, dejected, &c.

CLVI. In this quarter are three other sorts of Tools useful for **Throwers** both for smooth and Engine work.

The first is termed by the name of the **two pointed Growing Tool**.

The

The second by the name of a **Growing Tool**, or the **sharp pointed Growing Tool**, or **triangular pointed growing Tool.**

The third by the name of a **Chissel**, which is a Tool that follows the **Gouge**, making smooth the extuberanties and irregularities lying upon the work, which the Gouge hath left; from whence some term it the **Smoothing Chissel**: Both the **Blade**, **Shank** and **Handle**, are near twice the length of those used by Joyners for the reasons aforesaid.

CLVII. In this Square are three other Tools used by the same manuall occupation, which by Artists are termthus

The first is called a **Square Hook**

The Second is termed an **Hook**, Now as the Gouge and Chissel is used to work that which lyeth before the workman: So this tool, and the precedent, are used to work that as stands on the right, or left side of the workman, as the flat sides of Boards, which must be turned unto, and upon.

The third is termed a **Chissel**, or a **Flat Chisse**, for it is to be noted, that the edge of all Turners Chissels are **Bassled** away on **both sides**, so that the edge lyeth in the middle of the tool. Of these flat Tools there are severall sorts, from a quarter of an Inch broad, to one two or three Inches broad, according to the largness of the Work to be done

CLVIII. In this quarter is also three other Throwers, or Turners tools. The first whereof is a **Gouge**, or a **Groodeing Gouge**, with the Blade bended.

The Second is named a **Hook**, but is of an other fashion then the other in *numb:* 157. that being in a maner round, and this not above a quarter round, with the tip end a small thing bent.

The third hath the Denomination of a Throwers **Round Gouge**, or **Groove Gouge.**

All these sorts of Chissels, Gouges, Hooks, *&c.* used by Throers or Turners, I have caused to be engraven here, more to shew their fashion, then any use I have observed or seen them in Honorable Arms; therefore cannot say much for them, either *pro* or *con.*

CLIX. This Instrument is used by some Turners, and called a **Drill-Bench**, being only a board about two Inches thick, with two Stiles placed upright upon it, in the hither-most **Stile** is a **Collar**, and in the further Stile is a peece of Steele with a **Center hole** in the middle of it. Between is a **Rowler** which hath a **Steele pin**, and a **Piercer-bit** fastned therein. When it is used it is made fast in the Cheeks of the Lathe with a wedge as the Puppets are. This Drill is for the turning or boreing of an hole in wood of what length they please.

The parts of a Drill-Board.

The **Drill board.**

The **Stiles**, or Standing peeces.

The **Collar**, is the hole in the hither-most Stile.

The **Square flat Steele**, with it center hole in.

The **Rowler**, with its **Axis.**

The **Steele pin.** and **Piercer bit** at the end.

The **Iron Collar**, at the bottom of the Board.

The **Wedge**, to fasten it to the Lathe Cheeks.

CLX. He beareth Sable, a **Turners Chopping Block**, Or. born by the name of *Chopping.* this Block is made of *Elme tree*, or some other Soft wood set on three feet. Some Turners use in stead of it a peece of a trunk of a tree of a foot and halfe high or more from the flore.

CLXI. In this Square are two Instruments usefull also for Turners, for their cuting and cleaving of wood to what thickness they have occasion to worke it.

The first is that in the Chief, which they terme a **Cleaveing Knife**, it needs no further description then the figure; being a kind of **Cleaver**, with a strong and thick back, able to abide blowes of the Maule: haveing an **Handle** of the same mettle.

S. 3 such in pale A. is born by *Cleft*, or *Cleave.*

G. 3 such erect A. born by *Peysingberg.*

In the Base is the other called a **Maul**, being no other but a thick peece of wood, with an **Handle** to make it the more handy and quick to use; which is to knock & unknock the **Wrouges** of the Puppets. Also to beat on the Cleaveing Knife, when they split their wood for their worke. Use hath made it more ready then a **Mallet.**

B. 3 such O. is born by the name of *Maule.*

V. a Cheveron betw: 3 such Handles erected O. is born by *Van Maulselsheim* of *Bavaria.*

CLXII. In such a **small Lathe** as this Figure expresseth, they use to work small work in Metal; it is made either of Iron or Brass; and is by Work-men termed a **Turn-Bench**, or rather a **Vice Lathe**, because when it is used, it is Screwed into the Chaps of a **Vice**, and having fitted the Work upon a small Iron Axis with a Drill Barrel fitted upon a square shank; with a Drill Bow and String carry it about with the Drill Bow in the left hand, and the Tool in the right hand: The Tools for these small Works are commonly a **Graver**, and sometimes a **Scalper**, both pointed, round, and flat; also great and small.

The parts of a Turn-Bench, or Vice Lathe.

The **Axis.**

The **Drill Barrel**, fitted on its square Shank.

The **Drill Bow and String.**

The **Wrest**, with its Screw.

The **Puppets.**

The **Screws** with their Pikes.

The **long Bar**, on which the Puppets are fastned by the Screws, or else are to slip further or nearer together, according as the work requireth.

CLXIII. In

CLXIII. In this quarter is presented to your view the **Head** of the **Turning Engine**, for the turning of **Oval Work**, **Rose Work**, and **Swash Work**, with other kind of Work not yet named, because not found out, for no Man hath yet sought out the depth of that Instrument, or what it can or is able to perform. It hath so many parts that I know not either how to describe or tell their use; only as in other Tools I shall give you what names each Member hath, if I be rightly informed.

The parts of the Turning Engine.

The **Bow**, which is a strong Steel Bow fastned to the middle part of the farther side of the Puppet; having a **Gut String**, and to the middle of it, a Noose is fastned another strong Gut String with a Noose at the end of it.

The **Moving Collar**, is an Iron Collar fastned on a Center pin on the forside of the **Puppet**; this moves between the **Iron Shackle** and the forside of the Puppet; though properly the **Collar** is only the hole in which the **Aris** is set. The **Neck** of the Collar is that part under the Shackle.

The **Socket** in which the Collar is moved; some term it the **Shackle** round hole.

The **Stop Screw**, which is to take out when the **hollow Aris** moves in the moving Collar; else it holds them together that the **Collar** moves not.

The **Hollow Aris**, which is hollow, having a **shoulder** on it, on which is fixed all the **Guids**.

The **Head**, or **Case**, or **Bar**, in which is contained the several **Guides**, which is hollow, and termed the **hollow in the Puppet**.

The **great Diameter of the Guide**.

The **small Diameter of the Guide**.

The **Aris of the Guide**.

The **Center head**.

The **Button**.

The **String Pulley**.

The **Wheel Pulley**, is the Pulley to which the String comes from the **Treddle Wheel**, called also the **Pulley** of the **Aris**.

The **Treddle Wheel**.

The **Guide Pulley**, this is slipped to any of the **Guides**, as the Work-man pleaseth; it is of Brass, having a Groove in the edge of it to receive the edge of the Guide, which turning together with the assistance of the strength of the **Steel Bow**, forces the **Guide** and the **Hollow Aris**, to move backwards; and then an edge Tool held to the work in the **Vandyell** screwed in the hollow Axis, will describe the same Figure on the work, as is on the outer edge of the **Guide**.

CLXIV. In the chief of this quarter is the figure of a **Draw Knife**, an Instrument used by both Carpenter and Turner; it is a Knife with two handles turned down to the edge, much like in form to Wet Glovers **Fleshing Knives**, when they use it, one end of the work is set against a Wall, and the other to his Breast, and then with both hands draws Chips off the work till it be brought to their shape, and then smooth it.

S. 3 such Draw Knives A. Handle O. born by *Chipping*.

In the Base of this square is placed a Book-binders **Plow**, or cutting Knife by which the leaves of Books are cut even and smooth. It consists of these parts.

The **two Stocks**, one having the Knife on it, the other movable by the turning of the Screw, which hath a Groove or square hollow in the sole of it.

The **two square Staves**.

The **Screw** and **Handle** to turn it.

The **Knife**, which is held to the sole of the Stock by an Iron Pin.

The **Iron Screw**, and its Nut with Ears.

Dry Glovers Tools.

13. THere are many Instruments of Working belonging to the Dry Glover, which because they are described in other Trades I shall say nothing of them here, besides the giving of their Names, referring you to such places where they are more fully spoken unto, only such as are peculiar to their Trade, accept of here in this ensuing Discourse.

The **Shears**, or **Glovers Shears**.

The **Thimble**.

The **Needle**.

CLXV. On the dexter side is a **Glovers With**, fixed to a **Post**. This is a square Iron, writhen (as it were) like a Wreath and made fast with Nails and Iron Staples to a strong Post. Upon this they use to rub and fret their Leather Skins to make them soft and plump; which kind of work from the name of the Instrument, they term **Withing**.

In the Sinister side, are the **Glovers stretching Sticks** in Salter; these they use to thrust into the Thumbs and Fingers of Gloves, to make them wider for the better fitting of them who are to wear them.

G. 2 Stretching Sticks in Salter O. between 4 Roses, A. is born by the name of *Stretch*.

Mathematical Instruments.

14. HAving had some perusal of Books of Astronomy and Geography; I had the good Fortune as to find some Mathematical Instruments, which formerly I was ignorant of, which I shall set down in this place, to which may be added those mentioned in the succeeding *chap. 9. numb. 46. 47. &c.*

CLXVI. In this square, in the dexter chief, is placed an appurtenance of the Globe, whether Celestial or Terrestial, without which there can no right Judgment be

be given of several things; It is by all or most Artists nominated or called the **Hour Circle** and its **Index**; it is small Brasen Circle, fixed on the Meridian of the Globe, whose Center is the Pole of the World; it is divided into 24 hours of the Day and Night, and each is again divided into halfs and quarters, which in the Revolution of the Globe are all pointed at with an Index, which to that purpose is fixed on the Axis of the Globe. The use of this Hour Circle, is for shewing the time of the several Mutations and Configurations of Celestial appearances.

S. one such O. is born by the name of *Circle*.

B. 3 such O. is born by *Index*.

In the Base of this square, is the **Globes Quadrant of Altitude**, it is a thin long Brass Plate divided into 90 degrees, and marked upwards with 10, 20, 30, *&c.* to 90. It is Rivetted to a Brass Nut, which is fitted to the Meridian of the Globe, and hath a screw in it to screw on any degree of the Meridian: When it is used, it is screwed to the Zenith; its use is for measuring the Altitudes, finding Amplitudes and Azimuths, and describing Almicantaraths.

In the Sinister chief is another sort of **Quadrant**, with a **Moving Index**; they are generally made of hard Wood, as Box, but the best are of Brass, whose use is to find out the Altitude of either Sun, Moon, or any Star, by holding the lower side Parallel to the Horizon, and moving the Index till the Object be seen through the holes or slits of the sight placed on the Index, and where it falls then on the Figure of the Limb, that is the elevation required.

B. the like with the Center erected (or the Index pendant) O. is born by the name of *Quarant*.

The parts of a Quadrant.

The **Center**, the Angle where the Label is fixed.
The **Sides**, the streight which makes the Angle.
The **Limb**, the round part on which the Figures and lines are made.
The **two Sights** fixed on the moveable Index.
The **Index**, or **Label**, that which moves on the Center pin.
The **two Sights** for observing the Horizon, them on the side.
The **Handle**, that by which it is held.
The **Pin** of the Index.
The **Figures** and Altitude Lines.

CLXVII. He beareth Azure, an **Astrolabe**, Or, born by the name of *Astroll*. This is a round Instrument made of Brass, with a Level and Perpendicular pieces fixed in the middle thereof, wherein is a Center with a **moveable Label** or **Ruler**, whereon is placed two Sights; upon one of the flat or plain sides of the Circle is described or divided into 360 equal part or degrees, 6 in each quarter; upon the Perpendicular, on the out-side the Circle is fastned an eye with a Ring in, by which the Instrument hangs, with the line of Level parallel to the Horizon: The use is to take Altitudes or Heights, by moving the Label so that the Sun Beams may pierce through the upper and nethermost **Vane** or Sight at one time, and where the points of the Label lies on, is the degree and part of the degree that the Sun is high above the Horizon. The further use of this Instrument is set forth at large by Mr. *Wright*, in his division of the whole Art of Navigation, annexed to his Correction of Errours.

G. 3 such O. is born by *Astrilbergheim*.

S. 2 Stars and one such O. is born by *Horison*.

The parts of an Astrolabe.

The **Circle** or **Ring**, about which the Figures are made.
The **Perpendicular Line**, the Down Bar in the Circle.
The **Level Line**, or **Horizon Line**, the over-cross Bar.
The **Degrees**, the Figures and the Lines about the Limb.
The **Center**, the middle of the Circle.
The **moveable Label** or **Rule**.
The **Sights** or **Vanes**, the holes to look through.
The **Points** of the Rule.
The **Eye**, that in which the Ring hangs.
The **Ring**.

CLXVIII. In this square is the shape of two Sun Dials, which are generally cast in Brass.

The first is called an **Hoop**, or **Circle Dial**; it hath the hours of the Day made within the Hoop, and on the out side the days of the Month, and the Months, with an Eye and Ring to hang it by, which are moveable, and will be set to any day of the Month, where the hole for the Sun to shine through, being placed, the Sun will cast a Light through it upon the Figure, which is the absolute hour of the day.

B. the like O. is born by *Van Hopesdall*, of *Rainesford*.

The second is called an **Horizontal Sun Dial**; it is made of Brass after the manner in all respects to the aforesaid Hoop Dial; with this addition to it, of a Meridian or Horizontal line of Brass fixt in the middle of the Hoop from one side to the other, in the Center whereof is set a **moveable Needle**, like the Needle of a **Mariners Compass**.

S. the like O, is born by the name of *Pansello de Alvo*, a *Spaniard*.

CLIX. In this square are some **Geometrical Instruments** which are to be transmitted to the next chapter, as

First in the dexter Chief is another form of a **Jacob Staffe**, This is an Instrument diversly made, them only and chiefly made, doth consist of a Staff about a yard long and about an Inch square, upon it is fitted a **Vane**, (or sometimes two or three) so as it may slide pretty stiff upon the staff, and stand at any of the divisions it is set too. The use of it is for the taking of *Altitudes*, which is done by putting the end of the cross-staff

 (which

(which is next 90 degrees) to your cheek, upon the outter corner of your eye, and holding it there steddy with your right hand, and with your left, you must move the Vane, or Cross peece; till you see the Horizon joyned or Level with the lower end thereof, and the Sun or Star with the higher end; Then the degree and part of the degree, which the Vane cuteth upon the Staffe, is the height of the Sun or Star. se *chap. 9 num.* 48.

V. one in fesse O. betw: 2 Castles A. is born by the name of *Distance*.

S. 3 such erected O. is born by *Crostaffe* or *Croxstaffe*.

The Second in the dexter base; is termed the **Ballance Wheel** of a **Clock**, this is the *Primum mobile*, the first moveing wheel by which all the others are set on going; If it stand, the Clock is silent. Some call it the **Watch Wheel**, or **Motion Wheel**.

A. 3 such S. is born by *Van Hunlerschiese*.
B. 3. Such O. by *Grempenberg*.
G. on Such O. by *Van Turmile*.
O. Such a Wheele B. is the Coat of *Die Payer Im Hoft* in *Switzer-land* in *Germany*. Such a Wheel with teeth is born for the Coat and Crest of *Bestchen*, or *Betschen*.

The third is an Instrument used for Draft, or drawing; and is termed a **Paralaligreme**: by the several motions, and moveing of the Pins of this Instrument, and the observation of its station; it will do several kinds of works in drawing of Figures: either bigger then the patern, as big as the patern, or less then the patern, to what degrees in each (as bigger or lesser) as the Workman pleaseth. It hath several parts which I shall name onely.

Parts of a Paralaligreme.

The four **Rules**, which are marked with figures Holes.

The four **Pins**, that holds them together.

The four **Nuts**, that holds the Pins in their places.

The **Center Pin**, which is an Iron pin made fast in a place that it comes not out, but let the Ruler turn upon it.

The **Black lead Pencil**, which is to draw on a fair Paper which it is moved too, it is fixt at the end of one of the long Rulers.

The **Point**, being an other wooden Pin with a sharp end: The Instrument being thus fited and fixt; if you lay a Printed draught under the Point and trace the figure over, what you do on the print, the other end with the Black lead will draw the like on a Paper layed under it, which an Artist or any person by sight, with a litle Instructions may be able to draw any thing by a Patern, big or litle as I have aforesaid.

In the Sinister chiefe is a **Semi Circle Instrument**, with a **Plumet and Line** fixed to it, with this, as well as with the Quadrant, Levels Heights Depth and distances of places are taken and known; of which See more *chap. 9. numb.* 46. 47. This is also called a Geomatrical, or Mathematical Semi-circular Instrument.

TO

TO

The Right Worshipful

EDWARD LEGH, of *Baggaley*, Esquire.

SIR,

IN this Treatise you may reasonably expect to have some delight in the Reading, and to be informed in the Knowledge of things; therefore to avoid all curious Flowers of Eloquence, I made it my whole Business to please you and other Readers with an abundance of variety of Excellent Fruits, and that in a brief and Laconick Stile, that so there might be seen Magnum in Parvo, *many things in one Tract; which as you were very Instrumental in its Publishing, so I hope will receive satisfaction in every particular, without the Trouble and Charge of a great Library, which hath been the only aim of your most abundantly Obliged Servant.*

Randle Holme.

CHAP. IX.

1. IN the beginning of this Chapter we shall give you all sorts of Instruments and Tools used in Armory pertaining to the several Trades of Joyners, Carpenters, Mill-wrights, Wheel-wrights, Turners and Coopers, *&c.* or whatsoever other Trade, whose use consisteth, and is exercised in working or framing of Timber, or any sort of Wood.

I. He beareth Gules, a **Saw** (or **Hand Saw**) the **point depressed**, between a **Gimblet** or **Hand Bit**, and a **Paring Chissel**, Argent, the **Handles**, Or; of each of which in particular.

The **Hand-Bit**, of some called a **Gimblet**, a **Piercer**, or **Nail Piercer**, it hath a Worm at the end of the Bit, or half round with sharp edges like the Auger, some for small holes are square in the Bit; of these there are several Sizes.

A. 3 such S. is born by the name of *Gimblett.*

G. a Cheveron between 3 A. Handles O. born by *Van Holler.*

The **Saw**, called also a **Hand-saw**, or a **Board-saw**; is used by Joyners and other Wood-men, to cut or slit small Timber, as Boards, Spars, Rails, *&c.* though indeed the Saw cannot properly be said to cut or slit, but rent, break, or tear away such part of the Wood as the points of the Teeth strike into.

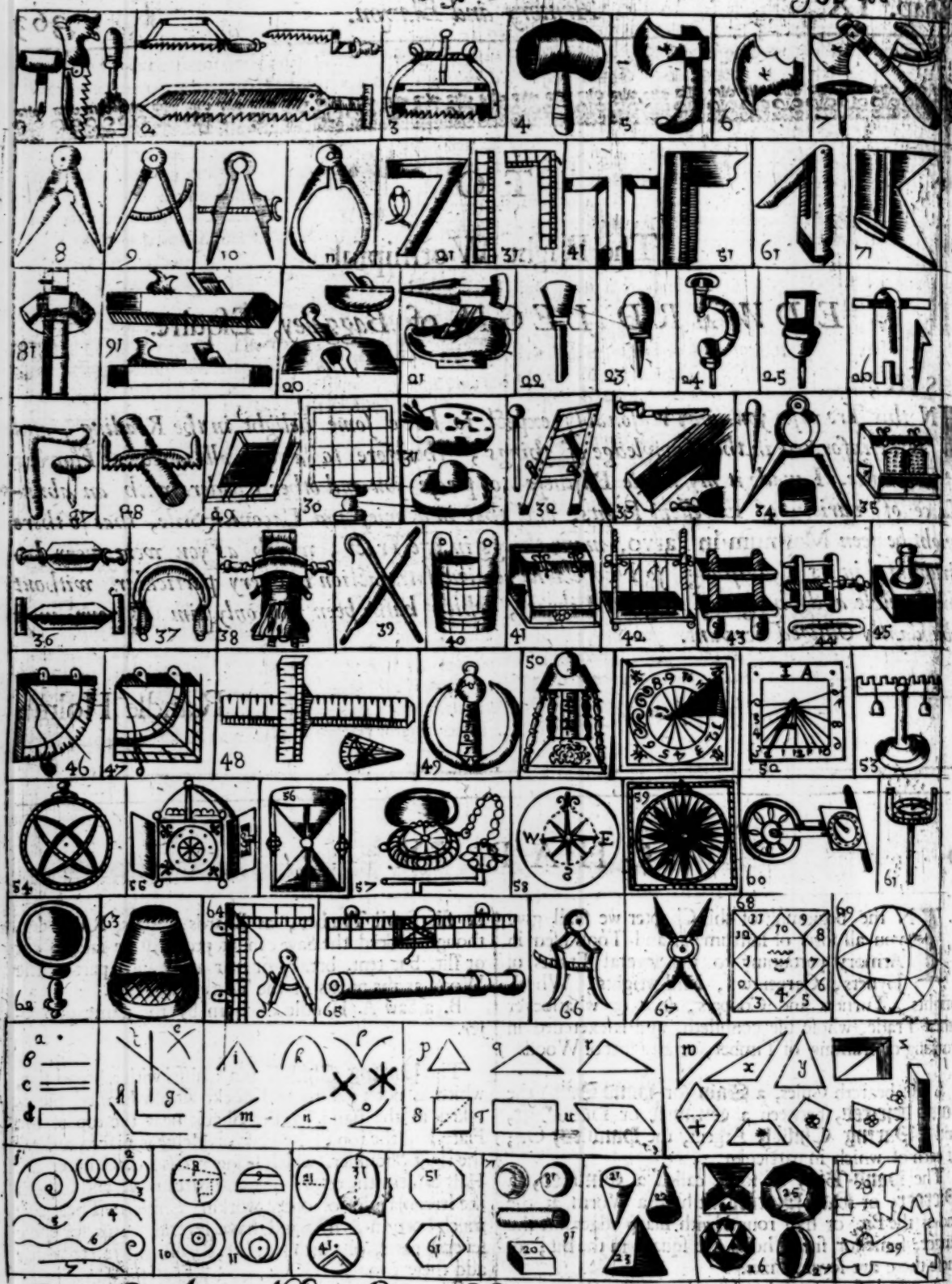
B. a Saw A. Handle O. born by the name of *Sawyer.*

The **Paring Chissel**, is a Chissel with a broad flat, which is not used to be Knockt with a Mallet, but is taken in the hand by the Shank near the top of the Flat, and the top of the Haft or Helve is placed against the right Shoulder, which being pressed hard upon the Haft causeth the edge to cut and pare away, and smooth the Irregularities of other working Chissels: These are much born in Arms, and have several terms for their several parts, of which see *chap.* 8. *numb.* 154. to which add these two.

The **Flat**, is all the broad part of the Chissel, which is ground away by often Whetting.

The **Head**, the top of the Handle.

G. a Chissel between 2 Roses A. the Helve O. born by the name of *Chisselrose*



Clomum Ja: Amyon Aldermi lignii = fabri Civit Cestr:

will blurolare again three other sorts of **Saws**, which are used by Wood-men.

The first is a **Tenant Saw**, this is a thin Saw, and therefore hath a Back of Iron to keep it from bending; it is for one hand use, and cuts forward, as all other Saws do. Some term this sort of Saw, a **Fancering** or **Inlaying Saw**, being so small and thin that the Plate of the Saw is only a slarted Wyer cut with Teeth, which is termed also a **Bow Saw**.

G. the like in Bend A. Handle S. born by *Malkas*.

The second is a **Lock Saw**, whose use is to make Key holes in Doors, and to Saw any hole in the middle of a Board where other Saws cannot get in: Some are made thus with a bended or square shouldering; others are streight to the handle.

This kind of Saw is by some Artificers termed a **Compass Saw**, because it is used to cut a round or any other Compass Kerf, and therefore the edge where the Teeth are is made broad, and the back thin, that the Back may have a wide Kerf or Nick to turn in.

O. a Stags Horn to the Sinister S. and such a Saw to the Dexter Barways G. is the Town Arms of *Winlingen* in *Germany*.

The third is a **Pit Saw**, or **Sawyers Saw**, with which great Timber is slit or Sawed into Boards, Rails, Spars, Joyce, or any other sort of Building Timber: This Saw is managed by two Men who stand one upon the Timber (called the **Top-Man**,) and the other under the Timber in a Pit, or laid upon Tressels, above Mans height (called the **Pit-Man**,) where with this large Saw they rent the Tree into what manner of Stuff the Work-man pleaseth; having an Instrument fixed at the end of the Saw, to take off, and put on at pleasure, called a **Box**, by help whereof he doth with ease pull the same down, and lift it up in Sawing. The **Frame Saw** see *chap.* 8. *numb.* 133.

III. He beareth Sable, a **Frame Saw**, or a **Framing Saw**, Argent, the **Cheeks**, Or. The use of this Saw is to cut Miter and Bevile squares for Frames and Cornishes on the top of Wainscot. The use of the Cheeks to the sides of this Saw, is to keep and strain the Blade streight, which of it self is thin and slender, and cannot do its work without such an help. It is also termed a **Bow Saw**, and a **Tenant Saw**.

IV. He beareth Sanguine, a **Joyners Mallet**, Argent. By the name of *Mallet*. There is much difference between the Masons, and the Joyners or Carpenters Mallets, the first being round and heavy; the others square both in the face and sides; though in this place my Graver hath not performed his part; yet elsewhere you may see the true shape of them *chap.* 8. *numb.* 141.

S. 3 Mallets A. born by *Von Schleyer* of *Alsatia*.

A. 3 such G. born by *Van Falcken*.

V. He beareth Argent, an **Hatchet** Azure, the **Hawme** Or: The Bearer goes by the name of *Hatchetface*.

S. a Fess between 3 Hatchets A. born by the name of *Wrey*.

B. 2 such endorsed O. born by *Sturmfeder* of the *Rhine*.

G. one in Bend O. born by *Trzinsky*.

The use of the Hatchet is to hew the Irregularities of such pieces of Stuff, which may be sooner Hewn then either cut with Chissels or Sawn; for that end it is used as an Instrument of Execution for the Beheading of great Offenders, and Rebellious and Irregular Livers: The right side of it (in its use of cutting) is ground down to a Bevil, or edge, which is afterwards set or made more sharper, with a Whet-stone, as other Working Tools.

VI. He beareth Vert, an **Hatchet Head**, Argent. Some term it an **Hatchet sans Hawme**, or **Halve**.

O. the like, the Basil or edge erected G. born by *Franckenstein*.

A. the same in Bend Sinister G. born by *Finchen* or *Fincken*.

VII. He beareth Argent, an **Axe**, (or **Carpenters Axe**) in Bend Azure, the **Hawme**, Or; between a **Ginnet** and an **Auger** of the same: These are three Tools used principally by the Carpenters of which in their order.

First, the **Axe** used by the Carpenter, is the same in form to the **Hatchet**, only larger in the head, and longer in the Hawme, because it is to be used with both hands, and is for Hewing and Squaring of great Timber, to make it fit for use.

The **Ginnet** is used to cut and take off Irregularities in all sorts of work lying under hand or flat, which the Axe or Hatchet cannot be handled to touch: Some term it an **Addice** or **Adz**.

Of these **Ginnets** or **Addices**, there is another sort also used by Carpenters, which hath its Blade made thin and somewhat arching (as this doth) but the other end is faced or headed like to a great Hammer. These Instruments as they have their edge athwart the Handle, so their Grinding to a Basil is on the in-side to the out-edge, which is the cause, when it is Blunt, it cannot be ground, unless the **Helve** be taken out of the **Eye** of the **Addice**.

B. 3 such with a Fess between A. the Hafts O. is born by *Ginnett*.

G. 3 such O. born by *Froburgh*.

The **Auger**, or **Augre**, or **Oger**, as some call it, hath in it, the Handle, which is of Wood, and the Shank, and the Bit which Boreth; its office is to make great and round holes suitable to the rotundity of the Bit; and when it is used, the Stuff worked upon, is commonly laid below under you, or set equal to your Breast; that ones strength may be the easier used for the twisting the Bit about by the force of both hands.

There are several sorts of them from a quarter of an Inch Bore, to 4, 5, or 6 inches in the Diameter, but big or little, their form and make is all one and the same.

A. an Oger B. Handle O. born by *Neber*.

A. 3 such S. Handles O. born by *Oger* or *Auger*.

VIII. He

VIII. He beareth Argent, a **Pair of Compasses,** Sable. This is born by the name of *Compashale.*

A. a Cheveron engrailed between 3 Compasses S. is the Coat Armour belonging to the Company of Carpenters; the same is born in the Joyners and Masons Arms.

☞ Some Blazon them **Compasses dilated,** or **opened;** but that term needs not; because in Coats of Arms, they are ever one of three parts, or thereabouts, opened to their extention.

The **Joynt** is the place where the Compasses move and turn.

The **Cheeks of the Joynt,** is where they go in one to the other.

The **Shanks,** The **Points.**

IX. He beareth Gules, a **Pair of Sliding** or **Circle Dividers,** Or. These are Compasses which open upon a Brass semi-circle, and by a small Screw is made fast at any station.

B. 3 such O. pointed S. is born by *Bonny.*

G. one pair of such O. born by *Bartten.*

X. He beareth Gules, a **Pair of Screw Dividers,** Or; **Pointed,** Sable. Born by *Distance.* These are Compasses opened and shut with a screw, so that there is noe danger of their moveing from their station. By all these foresaid Compasses, are described Circles Ovals *&c.* and also Distances are measured and set off from the Rule, or from any other divided Rod or Staffe, to the thing to be wrought upon.

V. a paire of Dividers A. born by *Port.*

A, 3 such S. born by *Dividend.*

XI. He beareth Or, a **Paire** of **Callippers,** Sable born by *Dimmiter.* As common Compasses are for measuring Distances upon a plain Superficies; so the Callippers measure the distance or Thickness of any Cilindrick or Orbicall body, either in their extremity, or any part lesse then the extremity. So that the just Diameter is known by the distance of the points of the Compasse, be the same either Feet or Inches.

A. 3 such S. born by *Scalpper.*

XII. He beareth Sable, a Ioyners **Bevil Square,** Or. Born by *Bevill.* of this kind of bearing in Arms, see more *lib.* 1. *chap.* 9. *numb.* 78.

B. 3 such O. is born by *Ressen.*

In the base of this square is a **Pair** of **Callippers** with their **Points Crossing** one another, Sable; in a field Argent. is born by *Van Slogan.*

XIII. He beareth Gules, a **Joyners Rule,** or a two Foot Rule, Or; and a **Carpenters Square,** Argent. The Rule is equally divided into two foot, which is againe subdivided into 24 Inches, these also brought into halfe and quarters of Inches; And are for the best use, generally made of Box or Peare tree, or some other hard wood. This may also be termed a **Geomatricall Staffe,** or a **Yard,** when it is thus divided.

The **Carpenters Square,** is made generally of Iron. the shorter part being a foot, and the longer part two foot, both ends being divided into Inches, half and quarter inches. Its use, besides Measuring, is to strike or draw streight Lines, and to try the squareness of the work, whether it be true or not.

An Hand and Arm holding such a square O. Sleeve G. turned up A. is the Crest of the Carpenters Company of the City of *Chester.*

A. a Cheveron between 3 such S. born by *Atlow.*

XIV. He beareth Azure, two **Carpenters Squares endorsed** and **issuant,** Or. By the name of *Getzell.*

XV. He beareth Vert, a **Joyners Square,** Or; it is made of two pieces of Wood, the one Mortessed into the other, and so shot exactly streight as to make a square within, and by the help of the side lying Parallel to another streight piece, either a streight Line or a square Angle may be drawn.

The **Handle,** is the Mortessed piece.

The **Tongue,** is the piece put into the Mortess.

The **outward Square.**

The **inward Square.**

There is another way of making the Joyners Square, whose Figure you may see *chap.* 8. *numb.* 134.

B. 3 **Squares,** 2 endorsed, the 3 to the Sinister A. born by *Vetzer* of the *Rhine.*

XVI. He beareth Gules, a **Bevil moving square,** Or; or else a **moving Bevil square:** This Square upon the moveableness of the **Tongue** upon a Center, may be set to strike Angles of any greater or lesser number of degrees; according to the opening it, too or from the Handle; when as all other fixed Bevil squares take the Angles at 45 degrees only, as in the **Miter square** following.

S. 3 such O. a Border A. is born by *Movere.*

XVII. He beareth Sable, a **Miter square,** Or. This Square hath also an **Handle** and a **Tongue,** as that mentioned *numb.* 15. whose use is to strike either Square or Miter Lines according as you apply the ends of it to the out-sides of the Quarter or Batten you are to work upon: By the help of this, Miter or Bevil Lines are Cut or Sawed so exact, that two being joined together, it will make an Angle; thus square Frames for Pictures, Looking Glasses, and such like are commonly made.

S. the like points reversed O. in Chief a Lion passant A. born by *Parly.*

XVIII. He beareth Argent, a **Gage,** or **Dial Gage,** or **Joyners Gage** (of some termed a **Swage**) Gules. It is made of either a square, or six square piece of Wood, fitted by a square hole through the middle very stiff upon a **Staff,** that it may be set nearer or farther off the **Tooth** at the side end of the said Staff. Its office or use is to strike a Line Parallel to any streight side; it is used for the Gaging of Tenants, or any Stuff to be Cut or Plained to an equal thickness.

Some **Gages** have a **Screw** through the Square, that if it slip too easie on the Staff, the Screw by turning

ing it to the Staff doth keep it from moving.

XIX. He beareth in this quarter two sorts of **Joynters Plains**; that in the chief is termed a **Joynter**, it is the largest sort of Plains by them used, it is perfectly streight from end to end; its office is to follow the **Fore-Plain**; and to shoot those things perfectly streight, and to take off those irregularities which remain in the first taking off the Saws roughness in Boards or any other sorts of Timber: It is also used to try all sorts of Tables great or small, by Plaining them Traverse, Angularly, Cornerwise, as well as with the grain, that the Workman may be well assured of the flatness and streightness of the work. Carpenters term this their **Long Plain**.

V. such a Joynter in Fess between 3 Flowers de lis O. is born by the name of *Joyner*.

The parts of a Joynter Plain.

The **Stock**.

The **Sole**, is the bottom of the Stock which shoots upon the work.

The **Handle**, by which it is held and thrust forwards. The **Tote**.

The **Bitt**, is the Iron as cuts.

The **Wedge**, it keeps the Bitt fast in its place.

The **Mouth of the Stock**, is the hole where the Bitt is wedged.

The **Breech of the Stock**, is the end from the hole or mouth.

The **Head of the Stock**, from the handle to that end it is at.

The **Tote**, or **Dote**, is the handle abovesaid.

A **Plain**, when all its parts and Members are together.

The second sort of Plain is called the **Fore-Plain**, and of some the **Former**, or the **course Plain**; because it is used to take off the roughness of the Timber before it be worked with the **Joynter**, or **smooth Plain**; and for that end the edge of the Iron or Bit, is not ground upon a streight as other Plains are, but rises with a Convex Arch in the middle of it; and is set also more Ranker and further out of the mouth in the Sole of the Stock, than any other Bits or Irons are.

The **Jack Plain**, called so by the Carpenter, is the same that Joyners call the **Fore-Plain**.

XX. In this quarter is first the **round Smoothing Plain**, whose Sole is not streight but convex.

The second is the **Rabbet Plain**, which hath the sides of the Iron not inclosed in the Stock as the foregoing Plains, but the Iron is full as broad as the Stock is thick, that the very Angles of the Iron edge may not be born of the Stuff it is to cut; nor doth it deliver the Shavings at a **Mouth** on the top of the Stock, as the other Plains do; but it hath its mouth on the sides of the Plain, and delivers them there; the Iron is about an Inch broad in the flat, but is much thinner because of its wedging in the Stock; its office is to cut a Square down into a Board or other Timber, for another like piece to fall into it; also to strike a **Facia** in a piece of Molding.

XXI. He beareth Gules, a **Taper Bit in traverse**, Argent; the **Head** and a **Smoothing Plain**, Or. Born by the name *Plainhale*. Of these Instruments more particularly.

The **Taper Bit**, is for the making of a small hole wider and larger, being in the mouth half round whose edges are sharp, and by reason of its being taper as it goeth into a hole with the small end and is turned about therein, the edges cut it wide by taking shavings or pairings from the hole side.

S. 3 such is born by the name of *Tapler* or *Tapley*.

The **Smoothing Plain**, is a little short Plain, which hath its Iron set very fine, and to take off very thin shavings, because its use and office is only to smooth the work from those Irregularities which the Fore-Plain and the Joynter have left behind them. There is another way of making them with a **streight flat Sole**, as in other Plains.

A. a Cheveron S. between 3 such proper, born by *Smoother*.

The several sorts of Plains.

The **Strike Block**, is a Plain shorter than the Joynter, having the Sole made exactly flat and streight, and is used for the shooting of a short Joint; because it is more ready for the hand than the long Joynter: It is also used for the fitting and framing of Miter and Bevil Joynts.

The **Miter Plain**.
The **Revaile Plain**.
The **Scurging Plain**.
The **Moulding Plains**, are for the working off of several sorts of Moulding works. which Plains have names according to their several Operations; as
The **Hallow Plain**.
The **Round**, or **Half Round Plain**.
The **Selection Plain**.
The **D-gee Plain**.
The **Back D-gee Plain**.
The **Cornish Plain**.
The **Phalister Plain**.

XXII. He beareth Argent, a **Mortess Chissel**, Azure, the **Helve**, Or. By the name of *Chizell*.

This is a Chissel broad in the sides and thick in the face part, so consequently stronger than other Chissels, that it may abide heavyer Blows with the Mallet; it hath a deep Basil, and is used to cut deep square holes called **Mortesses** in a piece of Wood: They are of several bignesses answerable to the breadth of the Mortesses they are to make.

XXIII. He beareth Or, a **Spyg Bitt**, Sable; **Handle**, Argent. Three such is born by the name of *Hile*. This is a thing like an **Awle**, having a four square

square Blade, with which holes are made in thin and narrow Stuff, to drive in small and slender Nails called Sprigs; Nails without heads.

XXIV. He beareth Azure, a **Brace** and **Bit**, Or. This hath several denominations as I find amongst Workmen; for of some it is termed a **Brace**, others a **Wimble**, others a **Wimble-Brace**, and a **Wambrace**; in *London* it is generally termed a **Piercer**. It is used in Boring of Holes to drive Wooden Pins through Mortesses and Tennants in Joyners work.

Two such **Braces erected** and **endorsed**, or conjoined with a Girdle Gules, is the Crest of *Bracegirdle*, of *Bracegirdle Green* in *Cheshire*.

The parts of the Brace and Bitt.

The **Head**, is the round top, flat Button, which turneth in a hole in the Stock.

The **Socket**, of the Brace head, the place where it turns.

The **Handle**.

The **Bush** or **Pad Hole**, a four square hole in which the Bit is placed, so as it cannot turn.

The **Stock**, is all the turning part of the Brace.

The **Bush** or **Pad**, is the square piece of Wood in which the Bit is fixed, which is taken out and put into the **Brace** as often as it is used.

The **Bit**, is the Iron as bores the hole, which that you may see the parts more exactly view the next Figure.

XXV. He beareth a **Bit**, fixed in its **Bush** or **Pad**. The Bushes being made fit for the square hole of the Brace may serve for several sorts of Bits, both to make small and large holes, also ebb or deep according to the length of the **shank** of the Bit. The **Bush** hath its **hold**, which is the square; the **Shoulder** for the Brace to rest upon; and the **round** or **bottom**, where the Bit is put in.

XXVI. He beareth Sable, a **Cording Augre**, (or **Auger**) and **Pin**, Or. These are Instruments of Wood, whose use is only for the Cording of Beds, to strain the Ropes streight, for Matts and Beds to ly upon. The Carpenter useth such a like Pin to this of Iron, or sometime of Wood, which is called an **Hook-pin**, whose office it is to pin the frame of a Floor, or frame of a Roof or Wall-plate together while they are fitting each piece to its place; it is taper in the shank, therefore easily taken out of the hole, with a Hammer striking either under the hook, or at the bottom of it.

XXVII. He beareth Argent, an **Hold-Fast**, and a **Gimblet**, Sable. This is another fashioned Gimblet in the head, than that formerly mentioned *numb.* 1. that having the handle round and cut off at each end, but this hath the handle direct oval or like an Egg; the **Bitt** being in the end like the Bitt of an **Augre** or **Oger**.

The **Joyners Hold-Fast**, is an Instrument of Iron, which being put into a loose hole of a **Joyners Bench**, and the Beak set upon any piece of Timber, with the Knock of an Hammer or Mallet upon the head of it, will cause the Work to ly fast upon the Bench till the Work-man either Saw, Tennant, Mortess, or Plain it; in the Hold-Fast there are these several terms.

The **Shank**, which is round, and goes through the hole of the Bench.

The **Head** is the square, on which the Mallet striketh.

The **Beake**, the flat end which is crooked downwards, the very point being either round or square, is made flattish, which is called the **Beak end**.

XXVIII. He beareth Sable, a **Stock of a Tree in Bend, couped** at both ends, Or; cut half through with a **Whip** or **Framing Saw**, Fess wise, Argent, **Handles** of the second. This is a *Dutch* Coat born by the name of *Van Saugesbergh*. This is also Blazoned thus, a **Whip Saw sitting** or **cutting** in two a **Stock** of a **Tree couped** in the ends; but the first is much better termed.

The **Whip Saw**, of some termed a **Framing Saw**, is a long Saw used between two persons to Saw such great pieces of Timber or other Stuff that the Hand Saw will not easily reach through; when they use it, the Timber is laid upon a Trussel, and the Men stand on either side of it, and so Saw it through; he to whom the Teeth of the Saw points, draws to him, the other thrusts from him.

The remainder of the Joyners Tools for working, you will see *chap.* 8. *numb.* 132. to 143. to which place I must now refer you and fall to another employ.

2. THE next to Joyners, fall (according to the course of the Engravers work) the Instruments and Tools belonging to the Art, Mistery, and Science of Painting; of which I shall say little here, but give you the form of several Instruments used by them; having already given their terms in the third Chapter of this Book.

Painters Instruments.

XXIX. He beareth Argent, a **Drawing Desk**, Gules. This is a kind of open Desk by meanes whereof any unskilfull in the Art of Drawing, may draw the exact form of any thing printed from copper plates, be it man or beast, or any Sollid Image, or figure of a thing; and that with great facility. It is a frame made with hinges joyned to an other board of equall bredth to it, haveing two Stays at the top to raise it higher or lower as need shall require.

The maner of useing it is thus, fasten the printed figure fast upon the frame of the Desk; upon it fasten a sheet of clean paper, which upon the raising of the frame up upon the

the stars, you will see on your white paper the whole draught of the print so perfectly, that with your pen you may draw it as accurately as any Limmer whatsoever.

XXX. He beareth Azure, a **Drawing Frame**, Or; Luted, Sable. This is a square Frame fixed upon a round foot, made and crossed into equal squares (as many as you please) with Lute Strings, or fine Pack Thrid which is to be figured at the end of each String, with figures alike; as the two sides to have the same, and the top and bottom answerable. Also there must be a sheet of paper (or less, as you intend your draught) divided by lines drawn cross it, with just somany equall squares as the frame containeth; having the like figures at the end of the Lines, as is upon the frame.

The use is thus, lay the frame on any printed figure as a man, woman, bird, beast or landskip &c. then with a black lead Pen, draw the same by little and little on the paper, passing from square unto square, with the same lines, as you see the Strings of the frame cross the lines of the Print, or Picture, you are drawing after. It is used also to be set before an Image, or the face of a man, or woman, to take the direct dimentions and proportions of them. And also to draw little shapes from big ones, by makeing the Squares less on the paper to be drawn; and so on the contrary.

XXXI. In this Quarter in the Base is placed a Painters **Grinding Stone**, with a **Muller** upon the superficies thereof. By these two said Stones all sorts of Painters colours are ground fine, either for water or oyl painting; not by Rubbing the colour by the strength of Arms, but rather by a slight mannagement of the muller upon the Grinding Stone.

The other in Chief is the **Painters Pallet**, with severall sorts of **Colours** layd thereon; with a quantity of **Pencills fixed** on their **Sticks**, set in the **Pole** of the **Pallet**, or holding place thereof. After this manner a Painter when he riseth from his **Easell**, or Work, he ever puts his Pencills and Pallett thus together, till he take them into his hands again.

The **Pallet**, is a thin peece of Board, of Cedar wood, Walnut, or Pear tree, or of Horn; about a foot long &c. 8 or 9 Inches broad, almost like an Egge, at the narrow end of which is made an hole to put the Thumb of the left hand in, near to it is cut a Noch on the outside, by means whereof he may hold both the Pallet on the thumb and the **Pencills** and **Rest** in the fingers of the same left hand, without trouble. Its use is to hold, mix, and temper colours upon, as the Painter hath occasion to use them.

A **Pencill**, is a small quantity of Hair, either of Fitchets, Squirrells, or Hogs haire, and such like Stuffe, tyed orderly up, and put into Quills, which quills have Sticks (termed **Pencill Sticks**) put into them of severall lengths according to their ules; by which the pencill is held to work withall. Of these **Pencills** there are of all bignesses, from a small Pin, to the compass of a finger or a thumb: what exceeds are generally known by the name of **Trenches, Tools, and Laying Brushes**, according to their making.

XXXII. The first is a thing called a **Stay** or a **Rest**, of some termed a **Mol stick**; it is a slender or thin stick made round, either of Brazill, or the like, of a yard long, having at one end thereof a little Ball of Cotton, fixed in a piece of Leather of the bignes of a Walnut; its use is, when you are at work, you are to hold it in your left hand, and laying the end which hath the Leather Ball upon the Cloth or Frame worked upon, you may rest your right Hand or Arm upon it, for the more steadiness thereof whilst you are at work.

The second is termed an **Easel**; it is a Frame made of Wood (much like a **Ladder**,) somewhat broader at the bottom than at the top, having a **Stay** at the back, the sides flat and full of holes one even with the other, for which there are to be two Pins of Wood to set your work upon, and to raise it higher or lower at pleasure; if the work or frame be small that it will not reach the Pins, then there is a narrow Board laid over the Pins, and so the work rests upon it.

The **Easell**, is altogether.

The **Stay**, is that as sets it more upright, or sloping.

The **Pins** or **Peggs**.

The **Easel Board**.

XXXIII. He beareth in this quarter, a **Stenchal** between a **Priming Knife**, and a **Painters Laying Brush**, but of these in their Orders.

First, the **Stenchall** is a thing made of Tin, about 8 or 10 inches long, and as broad as you please (according to the number of Pencils laid in it) Three sides of it is raised and the fourth is turned downwards, by means whereof in its standing it is raised up higher on one end than the other, which doth make the Oyl put into it, to run all to the lower end: Now the use it is for, is to keep all those Pencils which have been wrought in Oyl soft and molliable, by laying of their points in Oyl contained in the said Tin, which otherwise lying out of Oyl would soon dry and grow hard, and so become good for no use.

The **Priming Knife**, it is a kind of Knife with a broad Blade, and about a Foot or 10 inches long, made slender and apt to bend; from the Blade cometh a **crooked handle** (much like a **Trowel**,) on which is fixt an **Helve** or **Hafft**. By this Instrument are all sorts of Cloths laid over with their first colour, which is called **Primer**, from thence this is termed a Priming Knife.

The Painters **Laying Brush**; it is of a contrary nature to **Pencils**, they being made of fine Hair pointed, and put in **Quills** or **Tins**: But these Brushes are made broad in the Foot, and of **Hogs Bristles** tyed up together about a **Handle** or **Stick** to hold them by, while the Colour is laying; of these there are several sorts; as big, and little, answerable to the work they are to do.

V. a Priming Knife between 3 such Brushes O. by the name of *Painter*.

Per Bend B. and A. on a Bend G. 3 such Brushes A. Handles O. born by *Van Borstell*.

XXXIV. In this quarter is set a **Cross pair of Compasses**, a **Pastill**, and a **Cleansing Pot**, of which in their order.

First, the **Cross Compasses**, of some termed **Cross Dividers**, and so called because they are contrary to other Compasses, which are pulled open by the Tangs, but these are opened by squeesing of them together at the head.

S. the like O. is born by *Whirley*.

G. a Cheveron between 3 such A. is born by *Darlington*.

The **Pastill**, is that which is set on the dexter side of the Compasses; it is an Instrument used in drawing the first or rude draught of any designed peece before it be coloured; some make them of Chalk, others of Tobacco Pipe Clay, others of Plaster of Paris, or of Alabaster Calcined, and with Water made into a Paste then rolled into long pieces (like **Black Lead Pencils**,) and dryed in the Air, and when you use them, scrape them to a point with a sharp Knife.

Pastills are thus made of several colours to draw withal upon coloured Paper or Parchment; adding that colour [illegible] to the foresaid composition, which in working is [illegible] the Faces of Men and Women, the Colours of Clouds, Sun Beams, Building and Shadows.

The **Cleansing Pot**, is either made of Glass, Earth, or Tin, and hath Oyl in it at all times, to be ready for the Masters use, and is principally for to cleanse and purify Pencils from the Dregs of such Colours as remain in them after Oyl work; which is by dipping the ends into the Oyl, and then gently drawing the same between your finger and the edge of the Pot or Cup; (and the Oyl will loosen the Colour out of the Pencil, and by degrees make it as clean as if no colour had been in it.

XXXV. He beareth Argent, a **Desk**, or a **Writing Desk**, with an **Open Book** upon it, all proper. Born by the name of *Stuart*. The Desk is not only to Write and Read upon, but also to keep things in; having a Drawer in the end, or side thereof, in which is the **Standish** or **Inst**, the **Dust Box**, and a place for **Pens**, **Pen-knife**, and **Wax**, &c.

B. the like O. Book A. in each 3 Estoils, born by *Vigilent*, or *Vigilency*.

Tanners and Glovers Instruments.

3. THIS Section Treateth of Coats of Arms, made or formed of Artificial things, wrought by the Wit and Industry of these several Trades and Occupations to whom they belong, *viz.* **Tanners**, **Wet Glovers**, **Curriers**, and such like, whose employments are in and about ordering of Leather; the Instruments and Tools of which said Professions in some part I shall give you here, the remainder are to be found *chap.* 8. *numb.* 118. *&c.*

XXXVI. He beareth Azure, a **Glovers Fleshing Knife**, Argent, the **Handles**, Or. Though I mention but one Knife, yet in this quarter I have placed two, only to shew the several ways I have observed them to be drawn, especially in the fixing of the Handles, some setting them streight from, others cross to the Knife. Some term them **Glovers scraping Knives**, or **Working Knives**, or **Codding Knives**.

A. 3 such A. Handles O. born by *Flestings*.

XXXVII. He beareth Argent, a **Fleshing Knife**, Azure, Handle, Or. This is generally made with a thick Back, and the edge made with an hollow, as in the next example.

B. the like A. Handle G. born by *Van Schaben*, of *Alsatia*.

A. 2 such, the Tangs sans Handles, erected and endorsed, G. born by the name of *Winfelden*.

XXXVIII. He beareth Sable, upon a **Tanners**, or **Glovers Beam**, an **Hide** or **Skin**, Argent; with a **Fleshing Knife** cross the middle of it, proper. This is fixed upon the Beam, just as if the Man were working at the same in full prospect before you, as you may see *chap.* 3. *numb.* 31.

XXXIX. He beareth Gules, a **Rung way**, (or **Runge Pole**) in Bend Sinister; surmounted of an **Hook**, (or **Tanners Lime hook**) Or. By the name of *Poller*.

XL. He beareth Azure, a **Runge** (or **Glovers Runge**) Or. This is a Vessel (like a large Tub) with two Ears or Stouks, (as some call them,) having a round hole in each, through which a long **Weigh** or **Pole** is thrust, and so it is born between two Men. It is to carry Water in, for the Benefit of their **Washing**, and filling their Pits.

A. 3 Runges S. Hooped O. born by *Rungen*.

Book-Binders Tools.

4. NOW the **Stationers** and **Book-Binders** Instruments or Tools of their Occupation are next to be handled, of which accept of these few, till I be better stored with the rest.

XLI. He beareth Argent, a **Writting Desk**, proper, **Lined** or covered with Green Cloth, or **Lirk**, Vert. The use of this I have said before *numb.* 35. the several parts of it may be said to be these.

The **Back** and **Sides**,

The **Ledge** or **Stay**, to hold any thing on it.
The **Side Drawer**, to keep the Writers Necessaries in.
The **inner part**, for to keep Writings and Papers therein.
The **Drawers within**, fixt to the back part.
The **private Drawers**, to keep Rings, Jewels and Money in.

XLII He beareth Argent, a **Binding Press**, proper. This is for the Binding and Stitching of single Sheets of Paper into Books.

Parts of a Binding Press.

The **Bottom Board.**
The **Passage**, the place through which the Bands are put.
The **Press Keys**, those which make the Bands fast under the Board.
The **Bands** of Leather, to which the Book is sowed.
The **two Screws.**
The **Nuts**, that turn on the Screws to streighten the Bands.
The **Over-cross piece**, with its **eyes**, through which the Screws run.

XLIII. He beareth Gules, a **Stationers**, or **Book-Binders Screw-press**, Or. When the Books are stitched together, then these do their office, which is to press on their covers, and keep them together for cutting.

Parts of the Screw-Press.

The two **Screws**, the heads of the Screws with their cross holes.
The two **Cheeks**, with their two Female Screws apiece through them.
The **Press Pin**, an Iron to turn the Screws.
The **Cutting Boards.**
The **Pressing Boards.**
The **Plow Stay** or **Rigiet**, on which the Plow runs steady.

XLIV. He beareth Argent, a **Stationers Cutting Knife** or **Plow**, proper; and a **Folding Stick**: The first being to cut the Leaves of the Books even and smooth; and the other is used for the folding of the Leaves to prepare them for the Press, it being nothing else but a flat piece of Ivory or hard Wood with sharp edges. Of the Plow or Cutting Knife, see it better Engraven and farther described, *chap.* 8. *numb.* 164.

In the chief is the form of the **Knife** belonging to the Book-Binders **Plow**, it is made of Steel, square, with a square hole in the middle to hold it; from the out side of which square, proceeds a Tang which ends in a three square, being Basiled off to a sharp point, and two edges, which cuts the Paper Leaves as it runs along with the Plow, on the Rigget of the Press, in which the Book is held or screwed to be cut.

XLV. He beareth Argent, a **square Beating Stone**, Azure; with a **Broad Faced Hammer** upon the Superficies thereof, Sable, the **Handle**, Or. This is born by the name of *Beater*.
S. 3 such A. Handles O. born by *Rutten.*

Mathematical Instruments.

5. FROM the Study of Books we shall proceed next to those Noble Sciences which are gained by their Instructions, which though but a Dead Letter, yet gives Life to all manner of Arts. Now the Instruments which we shall treat upon, are principally such as do measure forth to us both Place and Time; and such as these are used and made for Astronomy, Astrology, Geometry, Navigation, the Art of Dialling, and Clock-work.

XLVI. He beareth Azure, a **Quadrant**, Or; the **Line** and **Plummet pendant**, Sable. This is of some called the **Compass Quadrant**, or **Geometrical Quadrant**, because the same hath its circumference quarter round, and divided into 90 parts or degrees, being the fourth part of a circle; by the help of this Instrument the height, depth and distance of places are taken and certainly known, and that either by the Plumb-line, or shadow of the Sun.
B. 3 such corners erected O. is born by *Quadran.*

XLVII. He beareth Azure, a **Quadrangle**, or a **Geometrical square**, or **Quadrant**, Or. The **Lines**, or **Degrees**, & **Plummet**, Sable. In this Instrument there are three **principal Lines**, all the rest are called the **scales** or **degrees.**
The first is the **Line of Level**, which is the Line where the Plummet hangs, and so down the side.
The second is the **Line of Height**, and is from the Plumb hole to the opposite corner of the Angle, or runneth cross the Quadrant.
The third is the **Line of Height upright**, which is from the Plumb hole, to the corner against it, all along the Line, where the Sight holes are.
The **contrary Shadow**, is that from the corner of the Line of Level to that of the Line of Height.
The **Left Shadow.**
The **Right Shadow**, is the distance between the Line of height, and the Line of upright.
The **Sight holes**, are two small Brasses with each a hole in, to see through, set on the edge of the Quadrant.
The **Scale** or **Degrees**, are the dividing of the circular compassed Lines, and the quarter lines, each into 12 parts, called degrees.

XLVIII. He beareth Gules, a **Jacobs Staff**, or a **Cross Staff** in Fess, Or; and a **semi Quadrant**,

of some called a **demi-Quadrant**, or an **Half Quadrant.**

The **Jacobs Staff**, of some Writers called the **Profitable Rod** or **Staff.** It is a Princely Instrument being set forth in its Perfection; it is a Rod four square, about 3, 4, or 5 foot long, divided into inches all its length; having another cross peece on it, about a foot or two foot long, having a square hole in the middle, to move too and fro on the long Rod or Staff, and made to tarry on any division, as occasion requireth. By the help of this Instrument, heights, lengths, and breadths of places are taken, see *chap.* 8. *numb.* 169.

B. a Jacobs Staff in Bend between two Estoiles O. born by *Highall.*

In the Base is another sort of **semi-Quadrant**, or **Octodrant**, which I have seen drawn in Mathematical and Geometrical Tables of Instruments; it contains the fourth part of a semi-circle, but of its use I have not yet read.

XLIX. He beareth Sable, a **Circular Weather Glass**, Argent. This is a Glass of two pieces, the **Shank**, which is divided, is put into a **Neck** in the middle of a **Circular Glass**, which being three parts filled with a Water made by Art (as Mr. *Bate* describeth *pag.* 35.) and rarified in the head of the Glass, both being well Luted together, and hung up by a String; then the Water will in Cold Weather ascend the Glass or Shank divided, to 8, 9, or 10 degrees, and with heat it will descend the Shank and mount into the horns of the round Glass.

L. He beareth Argent, a **Perpendicular Weather Glass**, Azure, set in a **Frame**, Sable. This is a like Glass with a **long shank**, and a **round head**, which shank is put through the hole of the Frame, on the top, and so is fixed and Luted into another, at the bottom or foot of the Frame, which is broader below than above; the compound Water (as aforesaid) being rarified in the head of the Glass, will ascend and descend, according to the temperature of the Season.

There are **double** and **trebble Glasses**, made and set in one Frame, and according to the composition of the Water and rarifying the Air, some Waters will ascend in Cold, and others will ascend in Heat.

LI. He beareth Gules, a **Sun Dial** with its **Gnomon**, or **Cock**, Or. There are several sorts of Sun Dials, some for Pillars or Posts, others for Walls, as the following example.

LII. He beareth Azure, a **Sun Dial** for a **Wall**, Argent, the **Cock** or **Stile**, or **Gnomon**, Sable.

Of the sorts of Sun Dials, and the Terms used about them.

An **Horologiographian**, a Dial maker.

Horologiography, is the Art of Dialling.

An **Horizontal**, or **Spherical**, or a round hollow Dial.

An **Erect South Dial**, declining Eastward or Westward.

A **South** and **North** Erect Declining Dial.

An **Erect North Dial**, declining Eastward or Westward.

A **South, North, East**, or **West** Erect Direct Dial.

A **Polar Dial.**

A **Horizontal Dial**, is such a Plate as cuts no Angle with the Horizon; this is termed a **Plain Dial**, a Dial for a Pillar or top of a Post.

A **Declining Dial**, is such Dial Plates as behold not some part of the World directly, are called **Declining.**

A **Reclining Dial**, is when the Plate stands not upright, but maketh an obtuse or blunt Angle with the Horizon; now it is said to Recline according to its degrees of Reclination.

An **Inclining Dial**, is when the Angles which the Plate maketh with the Horizon, be acute and sharp, which Inclination is known by its quantity of degrees.

A **Reclining** and **Declining Dial**, or a Declining and Inclining Dial.

A **Direct Reclining** or Inclining Dial.

A **Dial on the Cieling of a Room**, where the direct Beams of the Sun never come.

A **Ball**, or **Globe Dial**, to shew the Hour without a Gnomon.

A **Glass Globe Dial**, whose Axis shall cast a shadow on the hour of the day.

An **Equinoctial Dial.**

The **Stile** or **Rod** of the Dial by which the Shadow is cast, it hath one end directly placed towards the North, and the other end to the South. See **Gnomon.**

The **Sub-stile**, is the Line or place over which the Stile or Gnomon of the Dial hangeth; and the space between the Stile and Sub-stile is just the height thereof.

The **right** and **equal Angles**, is when one Line in a Dial cutteth another squarewise.

The **Contingent**, or **Touch Line**, is that which is drawn by any point of another Line or Circle, so that it toucheth the same; and this Line commonly in all Dials is drawn squarewise to the Sub-stile.

The **Quadrant Line**, is the fourth part of a Circle.

Parallel Lines, are those that are every where off at a like distance one from another; as in the East and West Dial all the Lines be Parallel.

Erect, is when the Plate stands upright, and maketh a right Angle with the Horizon.

Direct, is when the Plate stands full upon the East, West, North, or South, and toucheth no other point; such is termed an **Erect Direct North** (or South, &c.) **Dial.**

Elevation of the Pole, is the knowledg of the degrees, or height the North Pole Star is at such or such a place required.

The **Center**, or Center of the Stile.

The **Gnomon**, the **Cock**, or **Stile**, which casts the shadow of a Dial set flat on a Pillar or Post.

The **Equator**, is a semi, or whole Circle drawn about

bout the Stile, Center, or Horizontal Line, to mark the Hour Lines by.

The **Hour Lines**, are those from the Center to the Figures, which shew the hours of the day both morning and evening.

The **Equinoctial Circle**,

The **Meridian Line**, is the middle day or 12 of the Clock Line, over which the Stile is placed.

The **Horizontal Line**, is the Line which goeth cross the Dial, on which the Center is made for the end of the Stile or Gnomon to be fixed in.

The **Sine** of the Complement of the **Declination**.

The **Sine** of the Complement of the **Elevation**.

The **Ark of the Stile**, or the Ark whose Complement is the height of the Stile, or the distance of the Line of the Sub stile from the Meridian; the height of a Circle.

Declination, a Bending or Declining to some one point of the Winds more than another.

Reclination, a Bending downwards, or leaning forwards towards one side, or to such a point of the Compass.

Inclination, is a Bending to, or inclining to such or such a point or part of the World, whether East, West, North, or South.

An **Equal Hour**, or **Vulgar Hour**, is an hour consisting of 60 minutes; at the Equinoctial the day consists of 12 equal, and 12 unequal hours.

An **unequal** or **Planetary Hour**, is meant the twelfth part of a day, be it a long or short day. These be called also the Hours of the Planets; so that in the Winter Solstice the unequal hours are less.

Equidistant, at even distance one from the other.

Gnomonical Semi-Circle, a semi-circle set in a declining reclining Dial Plate, whereby to make the Stile its true height.

They that desire the Studying of these things, and to be proficients in the Art of Dialling may peruse these Authors.

Jo. Moxons *Tutor to Astronomy and Geography*, Lib. 5. *Art of Dialling*.

LIII. He beareth Gules, the **Minute paces of a Clock** set on a Stand, Or. By the name of *Pastime*.

S. on a Hill in Base O. the Stand and Minute Paces A. is born by *Van Virmuhell*, or *Vhrmuhl*, as they Spell it in *Bavaria*, where the Family abideth.

LIV. He beareth Vert, a **Meridian Spherical Dial**; of some termed a **Plantsphearal Sun Dial**. The use of this Geometrical Instrument, besides the telling of the hour of the day by the height of the Sun, is farther described by Mr. *Moxon* in his *Tutor to Astronomy*, *Lib.* 5. to whose Works you are referred.

This is another sort of pendant Dials, which are hung by the hand, and turned towards the Sun, that by his Beams darting through small Pin-holes made for that purpose, the hour of the Day or Night may be found. These are commonly called Equinoctial or Universal Dials, and are most used by Sea-Men and Travellers that oft shift Latitudes.

LV. He beareth Sable, a **Clock**, or an **House Clock**, Or; the two **side Lids** or **Windows open**, the **Finger Board** or **Figure plate**, Argent. This is born by the name of *Clockman*.

The Clock consists of two parts, *viz.* the **Watch part**, which is always in motion, and the **striking part**, which only goeth about when it striketh the Hours, of which several parts take the denominations of them from the Watch, as in *numb.* 57.

LVI. He beareth Vert, an **Hour Glass**, Argent, **Frame**, Or. By the name of *Time*.

Per Cheveron O. and G. 3 Roses counterchanged, Slipped V. on a Chief G. 3 Hour Glasses O. born by the name of *White*, a Doctor of that name who was Bishop of *Winchester*.

B. 3 such O. Glasses A. born by *Cuvier*.

LVII. He beareth Gules, a **Watch**, (or an **Hour Watch**,) with its **Cover open**, and the **Key** in Base **Chained** to the **Watch**, Or.

The parts of the Watch outwardly.

In the upper Plate side.

The **Ballance.**
The **Cock.**
The **Cock Screw.**
The **Rock Wheel.**
The **Silver Plate** to raise the Spring by.
The **Endless Screw**, one sort hath a Catch; another hath a Spring, the other a Worm Screw.
The **Steel pieces**,
The **Steel pieces Screw**, and back hand and Screw.
The **Count Wheel**,
The **Rock Wheel**, the Nut for its Stop.

In the Dial Plate side.

The **Dial Plate.**
The **Finger**, or Hand, or Slide Wheel, the Dial Wheel and Axel Tree.
The **Mounth Wheel**, or Slide Wheel.
The **Motion Wheel**, between the Pillar Plate and Dial Plate.

In and between the Pillar Plates.

The **Pillars** and **Pin.**
The **Movement**, is all the work set together, as
The **Main Wheel**, its Axel Tree, Cleck, Cleck Spring, Fusee, Catch of the Fusee, the square which it is wound up by; the Pinion report or Mousefoot.
The **Barrel**, its Axel Tree, Spring in the Barrel, and Catch to hold the Spring.
The **second Wheel**, Axel-Tree, Pinion or Wrongs.
The **Countred**, or **Counter Wheel**, its Axel-tree, its Pinion.
The **Ballance Wheel**, its Axel tree, and its Pinion.
The **Ballance Spindle**, and the two Pellets on it.
The **Pottance**, or Main Pottance,

The

The **Counter Pottance**, which stands in the countred Wheel.

The **Follower**, which is fixed in the Counter Pottance, for the end of the Ballance Wheel to go in.

The **Gard Cord Stud**, and the Gard Cord, which stops the Fusee from over-winding.

The **Gard Cord Spring**.

In the Clock or Striking part.

The **Main Wheel**, Axle-tree, and Cleck.

The **Cleck Spring**, and the Fusee.

The **Barrel**, the Axle-tree, and main Spring.

The **second Wheel**, the Pinion and Pins of the Wheel to catch at the Hammer.

The **third Wheel**, and the Pinion in it.

The **Warning Wheel**, and the Pin to catch at the Detton.

The **Wind Fly**.

The two **Dettons**, with their **Notches**, that strike into two Wheel Detton Latches.

The **Hammer**, the Hammer Spring, the Gard Spring to keep it off the Bell.

The **Hour Wheel**, with twelve points.

The **Bell**, and the Screw.

☞ *Note, that all the Nicks or Notches in the Wheels are termed* **Teeth**, *and those in the Pinions are called* **Warings**.

Incase or Box and Cover.

The cut cover, or Lunett, the Lining, Hook and Button.

The **Inner Case**, or Box.

The **Joynts** or Hinges.

The **Pendant**, that as it hangs by.

The **Ring of the Pendant**, which the Key and Chain hangs at.

The **Scallop**, as covers the Winding hole.

The **Key**, and its **Bow**.

LVIII. He beareth Sable, a **Mariners Card**, or **Compass**, Argent; signed with the names of the four principal Winds, *viz.* North, East, South and West, Gules.

The Compass contains four principal points, East, West, North and South, one opposite to another, and these are again subdivided into as many more parts, which makes 8 points, and they are North East, South West, North West and South East; each of which points are again subdivided into 3 parts, which 8 times 3 being added to the former 8 makes 32 points, the whole number of the Compass, the names of each see in the next.

LIX. He beareth Gules, on a **Table** with a **Frame** Argent, a **Mariners Compass** with all its points, Sable. Some Blazon it in short a **Mariners Compass**, or a **Chart** of all the **points** of the **Wind**; which points are by Navigators and Sea men said to be 32 in number, which they name thus, beginning in the North, and so turning round by the East.

*

The names of all the Points of the Compass.

1. NORTH.	17. SOUTH.
2. North and by East.	18. South and by West.
3. North North East.	19. South South West.
4. North East and by North.	20. South West & by South.
5. North East.	21. South West.
6. North East and by East.	22. South West and by West.
7. East North East.	23. West South West.
8. East and by North.	24. West and by South.
9. EAST.	25. WEST.
10. East and by South.	26. West and by North.
11. East South East.	27. West North West.
12. South East and by East.	28. North West & by West.
13. South East.	29. North West.
14. South East and by South.	30. North West & by North
15. South South East.	31. North North West.
16. South and by East.	32. North and by West.

Where note that the two Poles North and South, have the greatest denominations of all the other points, being each eleven, *viz.* the full North, and 10 Northerly points; and the full South and 10 Southerly points; whereas the East and West have their full points, and each four Easterly and Westerly points.

LX. He beareth Sable, a **Perambulator**, Or, with its **Needle** and **Wheel**, Argent. This is an Instrument used by Geometritians, by which they measure the distances between place and place; for the Man as runs the Wheel before him hath this observation; that the Wheel hath such a Compass, and at every hundred turns of it, is such a distance, at which time the Finger of the Compass Board, shews by its pointing at the Figures on it, how many times it turns.

LXI. He beareth Azure, a **Circumferentor**, Or, Figured Sable. This is an Instrument that is constantly used with the Perambulator, and is carried in the hand of him that is the Geometritian or Cosmographer, to note upon it the several turnings and distances of places as the Wheel of the Perambulator gives an account of. This I suppose is so called, because it is fit and easie to be carried about with one.

LXII. He beareth Azure, a **Mirror** or **Looking Glass**, Argent; the **Frame** and **Handle**, Or. This thing hath several denominations according to the use it is put unto; as for example if it be looked upon, as to see the Face in, it is Blazoned a **Mirror**, a **Seeing Glass**, or **Looking Glass**, in Latine *Speculum*, and so it is termed when held by a Maremaid, as *lib.* 2. *chap.* 16. *numb.* 2. and *chap.* 7. *numb.* 98. when looked upon by a Tyger.

It is called a **Magnifying Glass**, when looked through to behold another thing behind it; in which respect these kind of Glasses (being thick in the middle and thin in the sides) will make any thing on the farther side of it to appear twice or thrice, or more times, bigger

bigger than they are; of this Nature are **Spectacles** which are made for Old Ages.

It is termed a **Burning Glass**, being held at a certain distance from any combustible matter, and in a direct Line between the Sun and the said matter, it will in a short time Fire the same.

Several sorts of Seeing Glasses.

Loking Glasses, to see ones Face therein.
Spectacle Glasses, Eyes for Old People.
Perspective Glasses, to see things afar off.
Optick Glasses, which represents things several ways.
Magnifying Glasses, that makes things great.
Diminishing Glasses, that makes things seem small.
Multiplying Glasses, that makes one things seem many.
Prismes Glasses, which represent things of diverse colours, as red, green, yellow, like a Rain-Bow.
Burning Glasses, that Fires any thing by the Sun.
Convex Glasses, which shew things upside down.

LXIII. He beareth Gules, a **Multiplying Glass**, Argent. This is a Glass cut or ground into so many squares as it will contain, which Glass being fixed in a Box of Tin, or Wood, or the like, being narrow at one end, and broad at the other; if you put your Eye to the narrow end, and look through the Glass at any thing; that you look at, will appear to your sight, as many more as there is squares in the said Glass.

LXIV. He beareth Sable, a **Mathematical Square**, Or; the **Sights**, **Line** and **Plummet**, Argent. This is called Mathematical, because of its Sights, Line and Plummet, otherwise it is no other than a **Carpenters Square**; by the help of these things added to it, and for want of other Instruments, a shift is often made to take the height of places, with the distance, breadth and depth of them.

In the Sinister side is a pair of pointed Compasses, with a sliding semi-circle; these though they be termed pointed, yet they are contrary to them mentioned numb. 10. those having a Spring Head, and this a revitted Head, besides the Shanks are rebated, having points set in them.

A the like reversed, or points erected G. is born by *Gossfelden*.

The same with the semi-circle to the Dexter side, is born by *Petzlinger* of *Bavaria*.

LXV. He beareth Vert, a **Mathematical Rule**, Or. This is no other but a Joyners Rule, or two Foot, brought into a Mathematical order, and by the help of the Sights, a Line and Plummet, having a Quadrant drawn on the side of the Rule, it is made a Geometrical Instrument; by means whereof it is used to take heights, breadth, and distances of places, as before is said of the square.

A **Gunners Scale**, one side being divided into inches, quarters, and half quarters, with a Gunners Quadrant described upon it; the other side having the names of all sorts of Ordnance, Length, Diameter, and Weight of Ball and Pouder to charge each Peece. It is made of Box or Brass, and not above 8 Inches long.

The second thing in this square, is called a **Prospective Glass**, but more properly a **Prospective extended**, or drawn out at length. This is a thing in the outward shape round like to a Cylinder, running one degree into another, for 3, 4, or 5 lengths; at the utmost ends (being drawn out) are two Glasses fixed, through which if one look at a thing for a Mile or two distant from us, we may discern the same as perfect as if it were at the end of the Glass.

There are **Prospectives** that are used by Marriners, and are of such a length, that they will discover any thing at 7, 8, or 9 mile distance, having three Glasses, one at each end, and one in the middle, when drawn at length. These Prospective Glasses have two contrary properties, and that according to the ends looked through; one end contracts a great distance into a little space, making the object appear at the end of the Glass; the other end looked through at a thing near at hand, maketh the same appear both small, and at a great distance, yet seen perfect in all its proportions.

LXVI. He beareth Azure, a **Concave pair of Callippers**, Or. These are Compasses having the points bending outwards, as the Callippers bend inward, the use of these are to take the Diameter, or distance of places in any Concave, or hollowed body, having a sliding Compass, by which the thing required is made manifest, as the Figures on the semi-circle doth note. Some of them have no sliding Circle at all, but are made plain.

LXVII. He beareth Gules, a **pair of double pointed Compasses**, Or. These have been drawn amongst other Mathematical Instruments and Mathematical Tables, but for what use they are I am yet to be Taught, neither have I ever found such to be born in Honors Armory.

LXVIII. He beareth Sable, a **Scheme**, or Figure of the **Houses of Heaven**, Argent. The Houses are in number 12, which are 12 equal parts; but in an Oblique Sphere they are unequal parts, and that more or less, according to the quantity of the Obliquity.

By these Astrologers Calculate Nativities, foretell Future Events, and do many wondrous things through that Art, and by the course of the Stars, which are said to work strangely on the Bodyes of Men and Women.

The names of all the Houses in a Scheme.

The Twelfth part of the Heavens considered in scituation of the World, is called an Hou-

nomers divide the whole Sphere into four equal parts, by the Meridian and by the Horizon, and each of these Quadrants are again sub-divided into three other parts, thereby making 12 Divisions of the whole, which are called Houses, and reckoned in Order, contrary to the motion of the *Primum Mobile*.

The 12 Houses of Heaven are numbred from the Ascendent or Angle at the East downwards, as the Figures 1, 2, 3, 4, &c. doth shew.

The four Houses called Cardinals, are the 1, 10, 7, and 4.

The **Ascendent**, is the first House, or Angle of the East, being the first Cardinal House.

The **Medium Cœli**, or **Culmen Cœli**, is the second Cardinal, or Tenth House, called also the Angle of South.

The **Descendent**, is the Seventh House, or Angle of West, and third Cardinal.

The **Imum Cœli**, is the Fourth House, or Angle of North, and fourth Cardinal.

The **second House**, Succedent to the first.

The **third House**, Cadent.

The **fifth House**, Succedent.

The **sixth** and **eighth Houses**, Cadent.

The **ninth** and **eleventh Houses**, Succedent.

The **twelfth House**, Cadent.

The **Horoscope**, is here taken for the Ascendent or first House, but more properly the Sign and Degree on the Cusp of that House, or that part of the Ecliptick that lyes in the East.

The **Cusp of each House**, is the beginning or first point of each of the 12 Houses.

The **Ecliptick**, are here meant to be the several lines which cut one another, of which the Houses are composed, and stand in position one to another.

The **Cadent Houses**, are them next from the Angles of an Astrological Figure, as 3, 6, 9, 12.

The **Succedent Houses**, are them as follow the Angles in a Celestial Figure, as 2, 5, 8, 11. So the 12 Houses are distinguished by semi circles of Position.

LXIX. This is another manner of drawing a **Scheme**, or an **Astrological Figure**, by which results are given concerning Questions proposed; but of this I have spoken before; it being no business of mine to talk of such Mysteries, which of all other Arts I have least minded to read: But if any desire a further reason for this division of the Heavens, and why such a signification is ascribed to each House, he may apply himself to these Authors or the like.

Morine in Astrologia Gallia.
Coley *his Key to Astrology New Filed.*
Moxon *his Tutor to Astronomy and Geography.*
Eland *his Tutor to Astrology, or Astrology made easie.*

Geometrical Terms for Lines.

6. THE definitions of the Principles of Geometrical Lines are here next to be described, and these teach the Drawing, Measuring and Proportion of Figures, with all their terms and denominations; for there is no Figure but it hath its certain bounds and inclosures of Lines; and every Line is begun or ends at some certain Prick; therefore it is needful to know these smaller parts of a Figure, that thereby the whole Figure may be better judged and distinctly named asunder.

a is a **Point** or **Center** of any circumference; it is a thing that hath neither breadth nor length in it: A **Prick** or small print of a Pen or Pencil which is not moved from its first touch.

b is a **Line** which hath length in it, but no breadth, and called a **pricked Line**, when thus ..... if numbred, called a **Linear number**.

c is a **Parallel** or **Parable**, or **equi distance**, or **Genoue Lines**, they are lines as run together at an equal distance one from the other, whether they be streight or crooked; termed **Bought Lines**, when one end is wider than the other, thus =

d is the **Superficies**, or out side, or overmost part of any thing; it hath length and breadth, but no thickness, termed a **plain Platform**.

e the meeting of two Lines cross, **Lines Contingent**, see *b*.

f is a **perpendicular** or **plumb Line**, a Line down right. And an **Oblique Line**, which runs Byas, or athwart.

g is a **right Angle**, or straight corner, a square angle, it is composed of a ground line, and a perpendicular or plumb line.

h is an **obtuse Angle** or corner, having one Line running backwards from the corner. A **Blunt** or **Broad Corner**.

i is an Angle **recti-linear**, an Angle made of right or equal lines, a **sharp angle** or corner, being less than a square Angle.

k is an Angle **curvi-linear**, or **curvi-linea**, an Angle made of two crooked Lines bending inwards or outwards.

l is an Angle **curvi-Linear**, having the crooked Lines bending outwards.

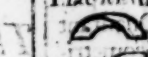
m is an **Acute Angle**, having the Lines longer than their distance between the two ends, therefore called a sharp Angle, and the reason is because one Line is often streight, and the other Bevil inwards.

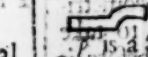
n is an **Angle mixt-Linear**, or an Angle composite, having an Angle made of a streight line, and a crooked one bending inwards, after the same manner there is

o an **Angle commixt**, or an Angle composed of mixt Lines, streight and bending outwards.

A **Section**, or a **point secant**, are the points where cross Lines do generally meet, and intersecate places.

☞ Now as of many Pricks is made a Line, so of many Lines are made diverse forms of Figures and Plat-forms; as in example.


a crooked Plat-form.


a mixt Plat-form.

p is a **Trigon**, or a **Triangle Oxigone**, and a **Triangle equilateral**, when the Lines are of an equal length, and make 3 sharp angles.

q is

is a **Triangle Isosele**, a Triangle made of two even lines, and one longer.

is a **Triangle Scalene**, it is a Triangle composed of 3 uneven Lines, each longer than other, which makes 3 unlike corners.

a **Tetragone**, or a **Quadrangle**, a **Square**, it hath all the Lines even and of one length, therefore called a four square; a Square superficial, having breadth but no thickness.

The **Diagonal Line**, is the pricks which goeth from corner to corner of this or any other cornered figure, whither it run transverse, oblique, or perpendicular; called also the **Diagone Line.**

t is an **Oblong square**, or a **long square**, that hath its angles right but not equal in length; the sides longer than the ends.

u is a **Parallelo-grame square**, or a square side figure, the sides being Parallels, but the ends having obtuse corners.

w is a **Triangle Rect-angled**, as having a right angle in one part of it. It is also termed an **Orthogone**, or **Rectangle Trigon.**

x is a **Triangle Ambligone**, when it hath an obtuse Angle, which is drawn into a Triangle, by a long Line to the points of it.

y is a **Trigonal Pyramid**, a Pyramid of three squares.

z is a **Gnomon square**, which is the excess, or rising of the Parallelo-grame square, upon another of the same; framed upon a **Diagonal**, as the Hatched part is, and doth demonstrate.

✠ is a **Rombus**, a **Rhomb**, or a **Losenge** or **Fusil**, this is a quadrangle having equal Lines, yet have two **oblique angles** or corners sharper than the other.

The **Diagonal Line**, is the prickt Line as runs from corner to corner, of which I have spoken in the figure *s*. It is also called the **Axis.**

✱ is a **Romboid square**, **Rhomboides**, a kind of square that hath two equal sides; but the opposites are Lines of unequal lengths.

✠ is a **Trepeze square**, this is composed of two equal Lines, and the other two unequal to them and themselves

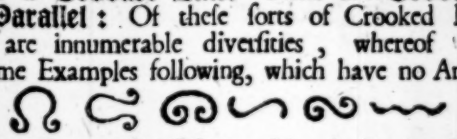
✠ is a **Trepezo-de square**, or a square made all of uneven or unequal Lines.

✠ is a **Prisme**, a square which hath breadth, length, and thickness.

1. is a **Spiral Line**, or **Worm Line**, a Line that begins in the Center, and turns round, going further off as it doth turn.

2. is a **Volute Line**, or a **Twist Line**, it is like the Worm of a Screw.

3. is a **Crooked Line.** These are **Crooked**, also **Parallel**: Of these sorts of Crooked Lines there are innumerable diversities, whereof these are some Examples following, which have no Angles.



4. is a **Composed Line**, a Line that is almost half round.

5. is also termed a **mixt** or **Composed Line**, a **Torturouse Line**, it bends contrary ways with the two ends: These are oft drawn Parallels, and termed **Gemowes Torturouse.**

6. is a **Circular** or **Waved Line.**

7. is a **Mixt Line**, that is part streight and part crooked.

8. is a **Circle**, a **Circumference**, a round.

The **Diameter**, is the Line that goeth from side to side, through the center or middle part.

The **Axis** or **Altitude Line**, of some termed **Radius**, the **Raie** or **Spoke**, is the Line as runs from the center to any part of a circular body.

The **Cord** or **String Line** goes cross the circle, but not at the center.

The **Sine Line**, in Geometrical Rules is called the half of the Cord or String Line, or right Lines in a center, as those Lines which make a square are termed **Sines**; those which exceed it and run to the edge of the round, are termed the **Versed Sine Lines**, or **Sine compleat.**

The **Tangent Line**, is when a Line in a circumference runs from the center to another Line in the circumference not at the center, and only toucheth it and there ends.

The **Secant Line**, is that as runs through or crosseth other Lines in the Round, or the parts of the circumference it self.

9. is a **Semi-circle**, a **Demy-circle**, the **Horizon**; if it be less than the semi-circle it is called a **Cantell**; as the **Greater Cantell**, the greatest part; and the **lesser Cantel**, the least part of it.

The **Arch** or **Bow Line**, is the Compass Line of the Cantel of a Circle.

10. is a **Concentrical Figure**, that is when many Lines are drawn by the means of one and the same center; in like manner may many squares be drawn one within another by the help of a Diagonal Line. This is also termed **Parallel Circular.**

11. is an **Excentrical Figure**, that is when one or more Lines are made within one another, by means of diverse centers.

12. an **Eclipse** or **Egge Oval**, is a long round, having one end more sharp than the other: If long and small at both ends alike, then it is termed a **Tun Oval**, or **Tun Form**; if sharp at both ends, an **Eye Form.**

13. is an **Oval**, it is an oblong round, that is longer than broad; it contains in length three half circles, and in breadth but little more than the circle.

The **Axe Line**, or **Axe Tree**, is the Line drawn through the middle either length or broad ways.

14. is a **Sector**, which is either a streight or Parallel Line, or such as are square, made within the compass of a semi-circle, or over or under the Diameter Line, as you see in this round. The bottom part taken out of the Circle, is termed a **Nook**, or **Nook Cantle.**

15. is an **Octagone**, an eight square, a round having eight corners or points.

16. is a **Sexagone**, **Hexagone**, or **Exagon**, is the same having six squares.

Pentagone, is a circle of five squares or corners.

Heptagon, or Eptagone, a 7 square, or having 7 corners.

Nonagone, or Enneagon, that hath 9 squares or angles.

Decagone, a square of 10 corners.

Endecagone, that hath 11 corners.

Dodecagone, a twelve square; or that hath 12 corners.

Polygones, or Polygons, a general term when the Figure hath many corners; and sometimes **Multi Lateret,** a square of many sides.

☞ And as many Lines make one **Plat-form,** which are Figures or Shapes without depth or thickness, being only long and broad; so many **Plats** is made a body, which containeth length, breadth, and deepness.

By **Deepness** is to be understood the thickness or solidity of the substance it containeth; not deepness as in a Well or Cup, but the breadth of its sides.

By **Bound,** is meant the beginning, end, and side of any solid form or substance; as much and more than the Eye seeth at a time, the rest understood.

By **Form, Figure** or **Shape,** is meant that thing that is inclosed within one Bond or Bound, or many Bounds, so that you understand the shape that the eye discerneth, but not the substance of the Body.

17. is a **Globe, a Sphere, a Ball,** or a **Bowl;** any thing that is round. **Globical,** round as much one way as another.

18. is an **Dybe,** an **Hoope,** or any round body that hath not the like in thickness.

19. is a **Cylinder,** a **Rowler,** or **Rolling Pin,** a thing round and long. **Cylindrical,** any thing like such things.

20. is a **Cube, Die-like,** four square every way; a **Square solid.**

21. is a **Turno,** or Top-like, broad at the top, and taper towards the bottom.

22. is a **Cone** or **Conick, a Spire,** any thing broad at the bottom, going **Taper** towards the top. **Conical** or **Spiral,** is any thing like to such a Figure.

23. is a **Pyramide, a Tetragonal Pyramide,** or a **Tetrahedron,** any thing foursquare below, and so riseth to a pointed square at the top.

24. is an **Octahedron,** or a square of 8 triangles.

25. is a **Pentagonal Pyramide,** a Spire that riseth up in five corners or squares.

26. is an **Icosahedron,** a Ball, or round of 20 Triangles.

Hexahedron, is a round of six Triangles.

Decahedron, is ten Triangles.

Dodecahedron, is 12 Trigons or Triangles.

Polyhedron, a Ball with many Trigons upon it, a Ball of many three squares.

27. This is a figure of an half round, yet hollow; each side with Artists, hath its particular term, as

The **Convex,** is the outward round of any Globical Figure.

The **Concave,** is the inward part, or hollow of such things as have no substance within them, called the **Concave Superficies,** and the **Convex Superficies.**

28. is a **Regular Figure,** or a Figure of an equiangle, that is alike in all parts.

29. is an **Irregular Figure,** a Figure unequal, having both the angles and sides unlike.

They who desire a farther insight into these Geometrical Lines and Figures, may peruse these Books.

The Institutions of P. Peter Galtruchius *of the Mathematicks. Printed* 1683.

The Conclusions and Theormes of Geometry, 1. and 2. Parts.

Leonard Diggs *his Art of Measuring.*

*

TO

TO

The Worshipful

EDWARD BRERETON, *of* Bursham, *in the County of* Denbigh, Esquire.

And to Edward Brereton, *his Son and Heir.*

SIR,

AS you have been a promoter of Loyalty and Justice in your County, so you have also given your self to the Study of Antiquity and Arms, which make a Gentleman Compleat; therefore as a Token of your Worth, I do herewith Dedicate the ensuing Plate, and Discourse upon it, to your Serious Consideration: Subscribing my self

Your Obliged Servant

Randle Holme.

CHAP. IX.

Pewterers Tools.

7. THE next Trade is the Pewterers, whose Instruments both for Shape and Variety are not short of any; it being a Trade that requireth many Tools, because from it proceeds much invention, as also diversity of shapes.

LXX. There are two sorts of **Burnishers** used by Pewterers. The first in Chief, is termed a **Hand Burnisher**, it is the least sort, and is used with one hand, the work being held in the other, while it is Burnishing.

The **Graver**, is an Instrument or Tool directly of this form; but it is much larger, having a double edge, or edged on both sides, one **Bassill** standing contrary sided; and the handle is of a great length.

S. 3 Pewterers Burnishers erected in Fess A. by the name of *Burnisch.*

The second Tool in the Base, is termed an **Hawks Bill Burnisher**; and such is used for all Crooked work both inward and outward.

LXXI. In this quarter is set forth two sorts of Pewterers **Studdys** or **Anvils**, of which in particular, as they are set in the Field. The first is termed a **Bussing Studdy**, or **Studdy**; it hath a square taper end, with a shoulder at the foot of the shank, to be set either on a Block or Bench (as all other small Anvils and Stiddy's have, that are removed from place to place, and one used after another, as the work requireth) and a round head to work upon.

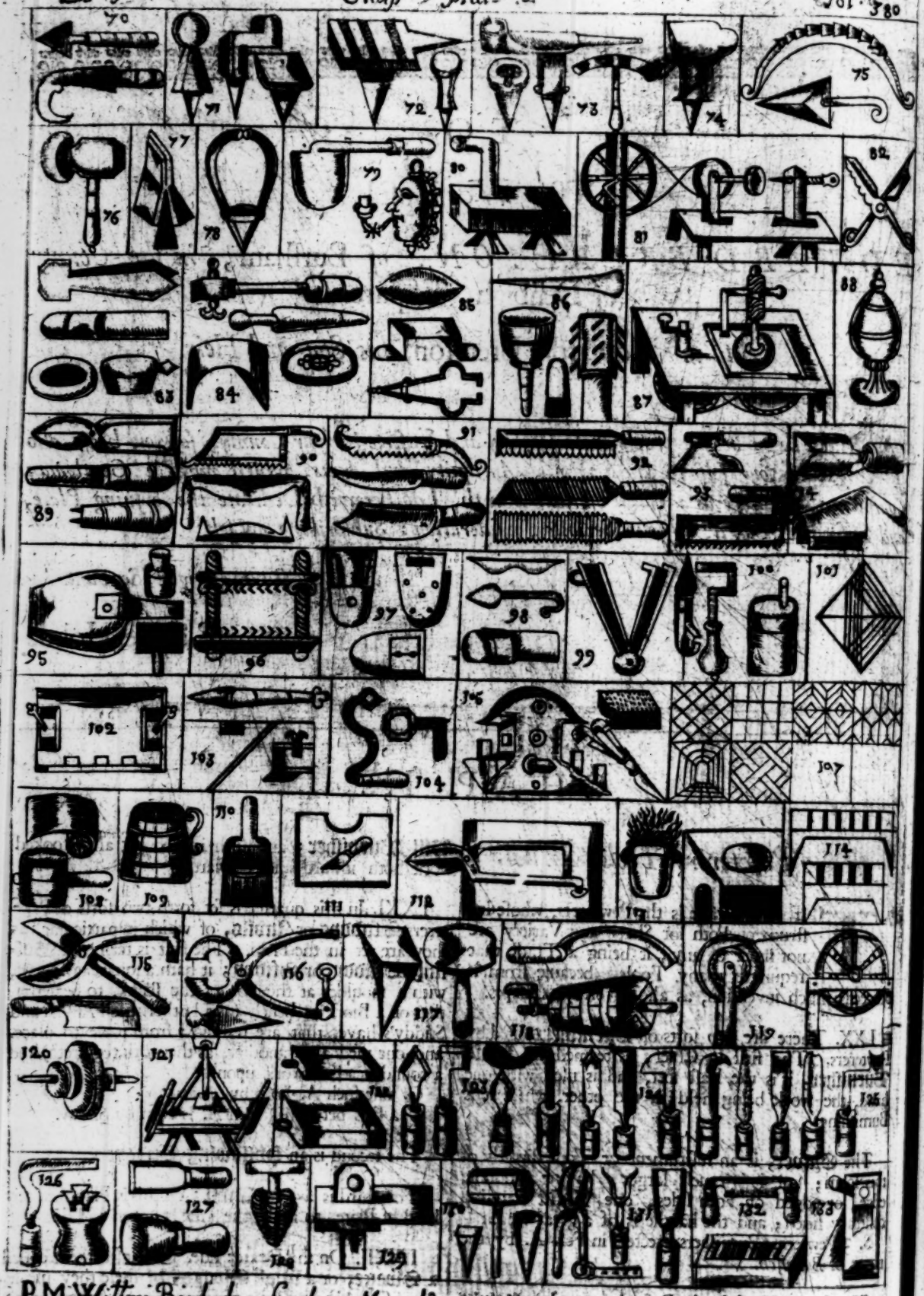
G. one such A. born by *Armoul.*

S. a Fess between 3 such A. is born by *Stiddy.*

The second is an **Hollowing Stiddy.**

The third is a **Flat Anvil**; on this is Planished any kind of Plate, to make the same lye even and flat.

LXXII. On the Dexter side, is an Instrument called a **Swage**, or a **small Swage**; of these they use several sorts big and little, so that they give them names accordingly.



P M Wittm Bird de Londono Mercat?

accordingly. This O. in a Field B. I find born by the name of *Annulse*.

The second is a **Planishing Stake**; of this kind of Anvil I find nothing in Arms.

The **Raising Stake**, is like unto this in the shank, but the face instead of being flat is round, it hath a round top.

The **Bullet**, or **Batting Stake**, hath a round top, but it is longer and smaller than the **Raising Stake**.

LXXIII. In this quarter are also three Tools very useful for the said Occupation. The first on the Dexter Base side, is a **Spoon Stamp**; on this they beat out and hollow Spoons.

The second is called a **Beak Iron**.
V. a Beak Iron in Chief, between 2 Roses A. is born by *Bellisaire*.

The third is termed a **Boug Hammer**; this is round at one end and flat at the other, tending towards an edge, but of a roundness.

The **Bordering Hammer** is the same in shape, but much larger.

LXXIV. He beareth Azure, a Pewterers Instrument, or kind of Studdy, called a **Calfs Head Stake**, Argent. Three such as these I find born by the name of *Van Promstakein*.

LXXV. In the chief of this quarter, is a Tool called a **Flatte**, or **Flote**; it is an half round Iron with Teeth like a Saw all the breadth of the out-side of it.
3 such in Pale A. the Field S. is born by *Birsin*, or *Basin*.
S. a Flote in Fess A. between 3 Beazants, belongs to the name of *Crokesley*.

The second is the **Pewterers Soddering Iron**; it is made directly three square in the place where the handle is fixed, and so runs tapering to an end or sharp point, all in a three square; the handle is streight, with a little turn at the further end, like a Button.
A. 3 such Soddering Irons points erected G. born by the name of *Simcocks*.

LXXVI. He beareth Gules, a **Pewterers Raising Hammer**, Argent; the **Handle** Or. Born by the name of *Nicksons*.
3 such in a Field B. is born by the name of *Spooner*.

The **Spoon Hammer**, is made after the same form, but it is larger than the raising Hammer, for their way and use in working.

☞ So that in Blazoning things of this nature having names (not from the shape) but, from their bigness, may be termed either after the bigger or lesser.
A. 3 such B. Handle S. is born by *Bosson*.

LXXVII. He beareth in this quarter a **pair of Clams**, with a **Wedge** in them; they are Iron Cheeks, with a Rivet Pin to hold them together; between which if a Wedge be put, it will hold any thing so firmly in the upper Claws, that it cannot be moved out.

LXXVIII. This is another fashioned **pair of Clams** which they use, and is made fast together in the **Lips**, or place where it holds, by running down of the Leather, but principally of an **Horn Hoop**, which the nearer it goes to the end, the faster it holds the thing put between the Lips.

LXXIX. In this quarter, in the chief thereof, is another Tool of the Pewterers, called an **Hollowing Hook**; this in the Hook part is of the middle shape, being longer than round; for some of these Hollowing Hooks, are in the Bent just **half round**, others are longer than this; some are **three square** in the Bent, and some are only sharp and long having no breadth; which is the most proper term for the Hollowing Hook, the foresaid being either **round** or **square Hollowing Hooks**, and so are to be termed.
B. 3 round Hollowing Hooks in Pale, the middle counterpointed A. Handles O. is born by *Bosigast* of *France*.
S. a Fess between 3 square Hollowing Hooks erected A. Handles O. born by *Hollow*.
S. an Hollowing Hook in Fess A. between 3 Flowers de lis O. born by *Carmerus*.

In the Sinister side of this square, is an **Hanging Candle-stick**, with its **Branch** to the dexter, proceeding out of the mouth of a Leopards face. The forms and fashions of these kind of **Wall** or **Hanging Candlesticks**, which in some Countreys in *England* are termed **Sconces**, are numberless; some having them with Faces, others with Birds, Beasts, Fish, Trees and Flowers; some with round or oval imbossed works, swelling out according to the fancy and ingenuity of the Workmen. S. the like O. with a Candle burning in the Socket proper, is the Badge of the *Sconcemakers*.

LXXX. In this quarter, is a kind of **Studdy**, called by the Pewterers an **Horse Head**, fixed upon a **Plank** or **Block** set upon four feet. This is now as it ought to be fixed or set up for the Work-man, the **Tang** or square point at the bottom of the **Shank** being set into a hole fit for it, where it stands firm to work upon.
As this is set, so the lower Tangs of all the foresaid **Anvils**, **Studdys**, **Swages**, **Beak Irons**, and the rest, are fixed on **Blocks** or Benches to work upon, before they can be used.

LXXXI. This is the form of the **Pewterers Wheel**, by which he polisheth his Dishes, and other works of his.

LXXXII. He beareth Sable, a pair of **Snuffers**, or a pair of **Toppers** extended or opened Or. By the name of *Snuffer*. These are Instruments by which the exor-

exorbitant and over-burnt Wick in a Candle which make the Flame dim and dark, is taken away, that the Flame may give a more clear and pure Light.

Lapidaryes and Jewellers Instruments.

8. IN this Section I shall present you with such Tools and Instruments I find usually used by Stone or Jewel Cutters, called **Lapidaryes** and **Jewel Workers**, or makers up of Stones into Rings, Lockets, Jewels, and such like, which Trade is termed a **Jeweller.**

LXXXIII. In this quarter is four things useful in Jewelling, the first and that in chief, is termed the **Coyn Tongs.**

The second is the **Inamel Grinder**, or the **Inamel Pestel**, or **Enamel Muller**, it bears those names, and is no other thing than an Agate Stone set in a Brass hoop or socket with a wooden handle; it is to Grind all sorts of Inamels in a **Flint Mortar**, there being no other and safer way to Grind it.

The third is a **Flint Mortar**; it is a piece of Flint about the bignes of an ordinary Apple, having a round hole cut in it and polished; in it Inamel is ground.

The fourth is a **Boyling Pan.**

LXXXIV. Also in this quarter are likewise four other sorts of Tools used by Jewellers. The first lying in chief is a **Setting Hammer.**

The second in the Fess part, is termed a **War Stick.**

The third in the Dexter Base, is called a **Muffler.** It is a long square piece of Copper Plate turned direct half round, standing like an Arch.

The fourth is a **War Box**, with a **seven Stone Ring** set in it.

LXXXV. In this is first, the **Using Stone**; it is a flat smooth Stone shooting out into two angles or points on each side.

The second is the **Inamelling Bridge**; it is a long piece of Copper about an Inch or more broad, and three or more on the top, having the ends bent down into a perfect square, and then bent out again for its more steady standing.

The third is, the **Inamelling Tongs.**

LXXXVI. In this quarter are three Instruments in Base, and one occupying the room of the chief, which I shall first name, and is by the Artist termed an **Enamelling point**; It is for the ordering and serling Inamell (when ground) in its place, upon the Ring to be Enammelled.

The first in the Base is termed a **Simmon Stick**; it is an handle with a round head, turned flat, yet hollow inwards, which hath a certain Simond clapt upon it, or into it; in the same a Signet Ring is put, or on it a Plate is fixed, while any thing is to be Engraven on the same; it being not to be held any other way.

The second in the Base is a **Brush**, or a **Bissle Brush**, such as Old Men formerly were wont to Brush their Beards with.

The third in Base is termed the **Hockt Wyer**; of some the **Hook Wyer.**

LXXXVII. In this square is a certain Engine or Mill, called the **Lapidaryes Polishing Mill.**

The parts of a Lapidaries Polishing Mill.

There belongs to it first a strong **Plank Table Cover**, four square, set upon a strong **Frame** with four **Feet.**

Under the Table is two **round Wheels** with Riggets on the out edges, to keep the Wheel string in, that turns cross from one Wheel to the other.

The **Axis** of the **Left Hand Wheel** comes through the Table, and is turned about with the Lapidaries left hand, with a **Winch** fitted on the end of it.

The **Right Hand Wheel**, hath also an Axis which comes through the top of the Table, upon which again is fixed another **round Wheel**, or rather a **round flat** piece of **Lead**, fitted into a round **cavity** upon the superficies of the Table, where it turns, having the higher end of the Axle-tree set in a round **Socket of Iron**, which bends from it after the manner of a Gibbet, and so is seated firmly on the Table, that it waver or shake not in its running about.

About the **Table Mill** is fixed a **square Frame**, about an inch and half high, which is only to lay Stones to be ground therein, that thereby they may not be scattered abroad on the Table in time of working.

LXXXVIII. He beareth Gules, a **Lapidaries Sand Box**, or **Dust Box, covered**, Or. Born by the name of *Musbox*, or rather *Musk-box*. In such kind of Boxes with covers, Lapidaries keep their fine Dust of Diamond, or of other kinds of Stones made into a kind of Sand, by which with the help of their Mill and Water or Oil, they cut or grind a Stone or Diamond into what form or fashion (used in Rings and Jewels) he pleaseth, afterwards he polisheth them.

Also in Boxes covered after this or any other fashion, the Jeweller keepeth several sorts of Stones for his work, not singly but promiscuously, of all sorts, sizes and colours mixt together.

Comb

Comb and Card-makers Instruments.

9. THE Card-makers Trade is next to be handled, whose Tools though they be few yet several Coats Armour have made them Honourable; to which misapprehension were the Combmakers instruments Direct. Yet though the mistake was great, it shall not be a mistake in me, but I shall inform you in such particular Trade, what are their proper Tools, though interchange in the Draughts of the Plate.

LXXXIX. In this square are three Tools belonging to the **Card-maker.** In the chief are the **Cutting Sheers**, or the **Wyer Sheers**, by these the Workmen cut lengths of Wyers many double together.

The second is the **Card-makers Graver**, it is a polished Iron or Steel, set in an Hooped handle.

G. 3 such erected in Fess A. Handles O. by the name of *Van Graverdolfe.*

The third is the **Card-makers Prickell**, being two sharp points of Wyer set at a little distance, on the flat of an Handle made of Hard Wood; with this he maketh holes in the Leather to set the Teeth in.

G. 3 such O. points A. is born by *Prickett.*

XC. In this quarter are three sorts of Tools belonging to the **Comb-maker**, that in chief is termed a **rounding Saw.**

S. 3 such Saws in Pale A. is born by *Redforne.*

The second is the **Comb-makers Shave**, it is a Tool with a roundish edge and a streight back, with two handles turning to the edge.

S. one such in Fess between 3 Trefoils A. Handles O. is born by *Dilon.*

The third is termed a **Comb-makers Bonder**, an Iron streight on the one side, and then flat, and roundish on the other side, with the ends turning up hook like.

XCI. In this square are three other Tools belonging to the **Comb-maker**; the first in the chief, is a **Ulther**; it is like the Blade of a Saw, with the farther end of it turning up half round in a sharp point, with an handle bending as in Country Saws. This in Bend A. the Field G. is born by *Ebles.*

S. 3 such in Fess erected O. is born by *Didier.*

The second is termed a **Redishing Knife**; it is a Knife with a long Blade, and sharp pointed like a Scotch Bibby, with a little bending in the back towards the point.

The third is termed a **Rounding Knife**, being a short yet broad Blade, with the end like to a *Turkish* Scimitar, a thick back, and a short strong handle.

B. 3 such erected A. Handles O. born by *Esselberg.*

G. a Fess between 3 such A. Handles S. by *Combault.*

XCII. In this quarter are three Comb-makers Tools; The first is a **Cutter**, an Instrument three square, whereof the smooth side is up, and one of the Teeth side seen; thus it is drawn with the back up. S. 3 such in Pale A. Handle G. is born by *Clodoulfe.*

The second is the **Cutter with the Back downwards**, where you may see the Teeth of two sides meet in a point both in one upon the third corner, or acute Angle. S. one in Bend, the Back reversed A. between 2 Eagles displaid O. by the name of *Cogan* or *Cagan.*

The third is a **Comb-makers Grail**; it is a long, flat, and broad Tool on the Back, and the other side wrought into Teeth like a Saw, the whole breadth from one side to the other, and set with a Tang into a strong handle streight out; and such an one in Pale (or erected) O. between 2 Plates in a Field G. is born by *Barnard.*

XCIII. In this square, is first the form and fashion of the **Comb-makers Hatchet.**

The second is an Instrument called a **Gwanett**; it is flat backed, and toothed on the other side, like to the Graile; only the **Handle** of this turns backward, over the Back of the Tool where the handle rests. O. 3 such in Pale, the middle contrary pointed S. Handle G. born by *Erpon.*

XCIV. In this quarter are also these two Tools belonging to a Comb maker, *viz.* the **Turn-File**, and the **Staddow.** The first is in the chief, called a **Turn-File**; it is like a Joyners smoothing, or **paring Chissel**, but with a thick back riting up three square, with a thick strong hooped Handle.

The second termed a **Staddow**,

XCV. In this quarter, is a **pair of Glans**, which belong to the Trade of a **Comb maker**, and a **Tenting Pipe**, and a **Card Board**, belonging to the **Card-maker.**

The first is in the Fess part, that is termed the Glans which is two pieces of Wood, square at top, and rounded off below, with an Iron Pin through both, yet so as they may widen a little; in the square top Horn is held fast, if a Wedge be put in at the bottom, and worked up into a Comb.

The second in the Sinister Chief, is termed a **Tenting Pipe**, it is a round Socket of Iron set in a thick and round handle of Wood, which the Card maker useth for

The third is a **Card Board** or **Leaf**, only brought from the Wood-man that made it, being as yet without Leather or Teeth set upon it. V. 3 such O. is born by *Carboard.*

XCVI. In

XCVI. In this quarter is the **Card-makers Tents**, or a **pair of Tents**, as they term it. It is two **Boards** having two **Screws** going through them, with two **Screw Nuts**, which draws one Board to the other, or further off the other, according to the breadth of the Leather he puts on the **Tentry Hooks** fastned in the Boards.

XCVII. In this part of the Plate is Engraven three Tools of the **Card-maker**; the first in the dexter chief, is termed a **Cutter**, by the help of this, The Wyers for the making of the **Card Teeth**, are cut all of an even length. It is of Iron for the hollow square, the rest being Wood.

The second in the Sinister chief, is termed a **Doubler**; with this the Wire is bent into the form of a Greek Π *Pi*, the top part is a Plate of Iron nailed on a piece of Wood rounded, for the easie holding of it in the hand.

The third in the Base, is called a **Crooker**; by the help of this a double Bent is put upon the foresaid Wire which is in the form of a Π with two ends put into the two holes of this Plate, and with the Thumb bent down to the Plate, makes it have a four-fold bending, at which time it is prepared for the **Setting**, as they term it; that is, putting it into the **Pitcheled Leather**.

Glasiers Instruments.

10 GLASS wrought by the Glasier, doth not so much benefit an House by Light, as with that Light, freeing the place, with its in-dweller, from Stormy Winds and Rain; Therefore as the benefit is double, so let us Praise the God of Lights, that we enjoy not only Light, but live in Safety in it; I mean the Gospel the Word of Light.

XCVIII. In this square are three **Glasiers Tools**; the first is in the chief, which is termed a **Laperkin**. It is a short piece of Wood made streight on one edge, but the contrary side endented, or rounded, or how the Work-man pleaseth for an adornment: With this, being a kind of Ruler, he cuts Quarries of any Size, and how he will, to fit them for the place he intends to set the same.

The second is a **Soddering Iron**, by which the Leaden Joints in a **Pane** of Glass are Soddered together. In Soddering, there is used a **Tile Stone**, or any such thing a little hollow, having a little Rosin on, upon which the Soddering Iron is often rubbed, to make it take up the **Sodder** on the point of it.

The third in the Base, is termed a **Glasiers Chissel**, or a **Working Knife**; it is a piece of a Knife ground round at the end, and set in an Hast short and strong, with an heavy **Leaden Poop** about it; with the Blade the Turned Lead is cut off, to its length in the seuing of the Glass in the Lead; and also by the weight of the Leaden handle, Nails are driven into the Bench, to keep it in, till it be Soddered; also with it old Lead is opened, to take out broken Quarries, and put in whole ones, from which employ it is termed a **Stopping Knife**.

XCIX. In this quarter is the **Glasiers Moulds**, they are made of Iron with long **Riggets** in, for the casting of the Leads for to be drawn out by the Vice; the Leads thus cast in these Moulds are termed **Caums**.

In the partition score between this and the next square, is placed an Instrument used by the Glasiers, being a **Working** or **Stopping Knife** at one end, and a **Nipper** at the other, and is termed a **Knife**, and **Groling Iron conjoined** in one. See *numb.* 105.

C. In this quarter is the **Glasiers Clams**, or **Hold-fasts**. It is a square bended Iron, set in a strong **hooped Handle**, by help whereof it is held and made to squeese the two sides of the Moulds close together, that no Lead run out of the sides.

The second is the **Rosin Box**; it is a long Wooden Box with a hole in the cover, wherein is a Quill set. It is filled with Pulverised Rosin, which is Knocked out of the Box through the Quill upon the Joints in a Pane of Glass when they are to be Soddered.

CI. In this part of the Plate, is the form of a **Quarry Mould**; it is a Blew Slate, whereon are drawn the several sorts or sizes of Quarries of Glass, either **Diamond Quarries** or **Pointed Quarries**, with their direct halves; the Sizes of their Quarries are from **Eighteens** to **Tens**; Eighteens being the least sort of Quarries, and Twelves and Tens the largest sort of Quarries.

CII. In this square, is that thing which the Glasiers call their **Cleaving Board**; it is a streight smooth Board, where 3 or 4 pieces of Iron are set up an edge, near the **Verge** of the Board on one side; at each end is a **square Iron** with a **Screw** through it, which runs too and fro in an Iron Rigget, which being set at their distances (according as the breadth of the Squares or Quarries are to be cut out of the **Table** of Glass) are Screwed fast that they cannot be moved; and so the Screw shanks are a guide to keep the Ruler to his due breadth of the Glass.

CIII. In the chief of this quarter is the **Glasiers Diamond**; it is that by which he cuts his Glass, both out of the Tables into **Lengths** or **Clifts**; and from such long pieces or Clifts, into shorter pieces, as **Squares** or **Quarryes**; or otherwise, according to the form of his work.

In and joined to the Base is another **Cutting Board**, used by the Glasier, which he terms a **Flinting Board**, or a Cutting Board: On this Glass according

cording to its largeness, is cut into several forms, as Square, or Quarry, or Fret-work, *&c.* It is a flat Board with a long square piece of Iron in two Riggets to move up and down, further and nearer, and to be fastned with a Screw (as in the other Board.

CIV. In this square are the two Engines by which the Glasiers Vice is set on work, the first on the Dexter side is the **Handle of the Vice,** which turns it about when it draws the Lead. It hath these terms in it.

The **Eye.**
The **Shank.**
The **Handle.**
The **Rivett** and **Iron** at the end of the handle.

The second, is the **Vice Key**; it hath an eye 6 or 8 square, by which with the help of its **Handle,** are screwed on all the **Nuts** upon the Spindle ends, which keeps the Case altogether.

CV. In this quarter is the **Glasiers Vice.** It is made all of Iron work, and covered with a **Case** of the same; so that it cannot be set forth by any draught: however I shall give you the Terms of all its parts and members, as workmen say.

The **Case.** The **Coggs,** of which there are two. The **Wheeles.** The **Spindles.** The **Cheeks.** The **Stayes,** the Irons that hold the Vice to the Board. The **Vice Board.**

The **Nuts,** are those that screw on the ends of the Spindles to hold the Case fast together.

The Second thing in this qarter is the **Oyle,** or **Simoning Brush.** By the helpe of this Brush, the Leading of the glasse is not only oyled and Simoned to keep out foule weather, but old glass new leaded is clensed and purifyed from filth, but made bright as if it were new: This way of clensing old glass quaries, is of some Glasiers termed **Rubbers.**

In the sinister base of this square is the forme of a **Double Grosier,** and a **Stoping Knife** all in one peece; a devise for curiosity, but for much imply a meer Drough: for he that worketh hard with it one day, will cast it aside next. Such an other-like toole you have engraven on the partition score betw: *numb.* 99 & 100.

CVI. In this square are set forth the severall ways that of old, Glassiers worked, or Leaded their glass Panes, whither great or smal, which they termed as followeth.

1. **Quarse** Worke. 2. **Square** Worke.
3. **Frett** Worke. 4. **Prospective** worke.

CVII. In this square are foure other sorts of Pane work to which they gave these denominations.

1. **Dimon,** or **Loseng** Worke.
2. 3.
4.

Glasiers Terms of Art.

A **Load** of Glass, is 2 Kribbs.
A **Krib,** is 100 or 150 Foot of cut Glass.
A **Case** of Glass, is 16 Bunches of broad Glass.
An **Halfe Case,** is 8 Bunches.
A **Bunch** of Glass, is 3 Tables.
A **Table,** is a broad peece of Glass neere a yard, some more square. it is also called a **Tablet.**
A **Quarry** of Glasse, is a square peece [of any size from twenties to twelves as they call them] set Arras like with the point upright.
A **Square,** is a peece set with the flat side upwards.
An **Halfe quarry,** is that part cut perpendicularly from point to point. these are called **Halves.**
End Halves, are the over thwart tops and bottoms of Quarrys
A **Snip,** is the upper halfe, and sometymes a quarter or lesse of a Quarry, Three Snips goes for a quarry.
Fretten, is waste cut, and broken glasse fit for noe worke. Castaway glasse.
A **Pointed Quarry,** is one much higher then broad
Cleeveing, is the cuting of the Tables of glasse into long peeces the length of the Glasse.
Flinting, or **Cutting,** is the cutting of the Clift glass into Squares or Quarryes.
Casting, is the melting of Lead and poureing it into the Moulds to make Caums Calves, or Bands.
Caums or **Calves,** are the new cast Leads before they be put to the Vice.
Bands, or **Tyes,** are those Leads as hold the Panes to the Window rods
is the cuting away the rough Skirts or Selvages from the sides of the Calves, or Bands.
Drawing, is the runing of the lead through the Vice
Stretching, is to pull the drawn lead streight out.
Glazeing, is the working of flat glass into any kinde Panes, or window lights.
Cloreing, Setting, or **Leading,** is the makeing of the cut glass up into Panes.
Joynt, is the crossing of the lead at every corner of the glass in a Pane.
Sodering, is tying the Ioynts fast together with hot melted Pewter being first **Rosined.**
Simoning, is the rubing of the Pane all over with burnt Allablaster & oyle mixt, that the Ioynts may keep out raine and other kinds of foule weather.
Pane of Glass, is (be it great or little) as much Clored glass as is set between two window Stages.
Querke, is a nook shoten Pane: or any pane whose sides and top run out of a square form.
Window, are severall Panes set together in a range with Stages of Wood or Stone set between them.
Casements, are Panes of glass set in frames of wood or Iron, and hung on hooks or hinges to open & shut.
Pining of Casements, is the Sodering the Panes fast in the frames.
New Leading, is seting old decayed Panes of glass with new turned Lead.
Stoping, is the puting of whole Quarries in a Pane in the place of broken ones.
Rubbers, are old Panes or Quarries made cleane.
Knots, are the Soder Ioynts of an old glass Pane, cut from the other Lead.
Cope Lead, Knot lead, or **Knaping lead,** is the old lead remaineing after the Knots are cut away.

Heart of the Lead, is the midle of it after the turning thereof in the Vice.

The **Cover**, the Sides of the Turned Lead.

Seting up, is the nayling or fastning the Panes in their places where they should be.

Smelting, or **Refineing**, is drawing of Lead from its Dross, and Ashes, *&c.*

Felt-makers Instruments.

11. IN this Section I do present you with some few more Tools and necessary Instruments, which are used, and very behooveful in the Trade of an **Hat-maker**, whether they be Felts, Casters, or Beavers, which should have been mentioned before in *chap.* 6. *numb.* 36. but I confess my self (at the Engraving of that Plate) to be ignorant of them, and many other Trades-mens Tools, which now are come to my Knowledge.

CVIII. In this quarter are the **Felt-makers**, (or more generally termed **Hat-makers**) Instrument called a **Stamper**; It is made of Iron after the manner of a Rowl or Scrowl; one part turned in, the other out.

The second is the **Hatters Mallet**, a thick short round Wooden Mallet.

CIX. He beareth Argent, an **Hatters Wall-Can**, Sable. This is born by the name of *Shellwall.* This is a Can by which the Felt-maker treats his Liquor from the Furnace to the Bench, as he hath occasion to use it. A. 3 such S. is born by *Walcanberg.*

CX. He beareth Argent, a **Felt makers Stiffning Bush.** This is born by the name of *Folingworth*; The Field Or, with three such Sable, is the Coat Armour of *Watson.*

CXI. In this quarter is the **Hatters rounding Trencher and Knife**, this is an Instrument by which the Hat-brim is cut directly round after it is Blocked; it is only a square Board, with an half round cut out of the side of it, and a Knife thrust through it at such a distance as the Brim is to be broad; so turning the hollow of the Board round the Hat Crown, the Knife cuts the edge of the brim round, at its due breadth.

CXII. In this square is the form and fashion of the **Hatters Shears**, as they are fixed in the hole of a **Narrow Plank**; these cut the Wool small, before it goeth to the **Hatters Purdle**, to be **Bowed**, or beaten into a dawny substance.

CXIII. He beareth on the Dexter side a pan or pot of Coals fired. and out of the Base conjoyned to the Sinister side, the **Basoning Furnace**: But of these in perticular.

The first is only an Earthen Pot, or Pan Mugg, filled with Coals, and a spark of Fire put under them, which being set in the Wind, and open Air presently takes fire; This is to save Prentices a labour in making and blowing the Fire under their Furnices; this doing it to their hands, only putting it into the fire place.

A. 3 Such G. Coals fired proper by the name of *Van Muggel.*

The Second is the Basoning Furnace, it is a close square place made of Brick and Clay, with a Fire and vent hole made in the side, to put the aforesaid fired Coals therein; on the top it hath a round hole upon which is laid and made fast a round large Iron Plate, near 2 foot in the Diameter, which receiving heat from the Fire; *Bazom* (as they term it) there Hats: that is,

Needle-makers Instruments.

12. UPON finding out of the **Needle**, proceeded the Invention of many curious works; before which time our Fore-fathers are said to make use of an **Hap-thorn**, or a Thorn Prick.

CXIV. In this square is a **Needle-makers** Instrument called a **Marking Staple.** It is a thing like to an Iron Staple that is square, having a flat and smooth face, with divers **round incisions** made into it; Of these marking Staples they have two sorts, the one narrow and long, with **long deep Shanks**, and the **Incisions** small. The other marking Stable is thick and deep, both in the Face and Belly, the Shanks thick and short, tapering; having the incisions deep and broad, as the two examples in this quarter will further manifest.

CXV. In this quarter are two other working Tools of the **Needle-makers.** The first is their **Stock Shears**, with these they cut the Wyer to that length as the Needle is to bear.

The second is termed by them a **Guttering Knife**, with this the small **Gutter** (in which the **Eye** is placed) is made: which is made for the more easie threding of the Needle, by the gliding of the thred into them, which if they were not, it would be more difficult to perform. B. 3 such in pale to the Sinister. A. handles. O. is born by *Van Emerick.*

CXVI. This Instrument is termed, a **pair of Guttering Tongs**: They are made after the form of a pair of **Smiths Pincers**, but the holding part broader. It hath an **Iron ring** fixt to a long peice of Iron, and Revetted to the end of the **Shank**, but with liberty to move: the said Ring being put over the end of the other Shank into a Nick or Gutter, holds it fast together with what it hath between them.

In

In the dexter base lyeth the **Needlers Punch**: It is made after the form of a long Willow leaf, tapering from the **Shoulders** to the **Head**, with a flat **Face**; and from the Shoulders to the **Point** long, yet tapering. With this Tool the Eye of the Needle is made. S. 3 of these in *Fesse*. A. is born by *Dimais*.

CXVII. He beareth in this Square, the **Needlers Anvil**: It is four square in the **Face**, from whence it grows taper in the **Shank**, till the four sides end in the point. G. a bend. O. between 2 such. A. is born by Gaudier.

The Second is an **Hammer**; It is a kind of a round thick **Trunchen head**, with two flat or **Face** ends; the handle indifferent long; they may be termed **Iron Mallets**, or Mallet Hammers, if they were used in any other profession. 3 such. *S.* the Field. *A.* is the Arms of *Giside*.

CXVIII. In this Quarter is two other Instruments of the **Needle-makers**; the first is a **Streightning file**. It is a long peice of Iron or Steel, with a thick back, and an edge bending something: It is fixed in a strong **Hooped Helve** or **Handle**. B. 3 such in pale, to the Sinister A. handles. O. born by *Landryg de la Tour*, a *French* Family.

The Second is a **Washing Tub**: It is made in form of a **Churne**, wider at bottom then the top; being strongly hooped; having cross peices at each end, through which goeth an **Iron Spindle** upon which it rests in two **Socket holes**, or Semi-circles cut on the ends of two standing or uptight posts, upon which it is turned about with a Winch or Winder. When they Wash or Boyl their Needles; their rubbing one upon an other, in the turning about of the Tub, doth scoure themselves.

CXIX. In this Quarter is set forth the form of the **Needle-makers Grinding Stone** and **Wheel**. As for the Wheel, it is a large strong Wheel, turned about with a Winch as it is set in middle of a four square frame, turning on the over-thwart peices, fixed to the uprights, or standing peices; at a distance from this Wheel stands the **Grinding-stone**; of which there are two sorts, the one of a **fine Greet**, or **Free-stone**, and the other of **Wood**; Which with oyle and Tripillo, or such like, hardens it so, that any hard substance may be burnished upon it, and not in any considerable tyme wast it. By the side of this Grinding ston and Burnisher, is fixed on the same **Spindle**, a **Pulley** (like a Jack Pulley) to it there comes a String from the wheel which causeth it & the Grinding-stone to turn.

CXX. I have here caused the true form of the **Grindle stone** and the **Pulley** to be drawn for the fore-sight, that you may see how it is fixed on the Spindle. This is termed a **Grind-stone** (or Grindle-Stone) and its **Pulley** on a **Spindle**.

CXXI. In this Quarter is the **Needle-makers** Engine termed the **Scouring-block**: this is for the Scouring and cleansing of the Needles, when they are all made and finished, as to the working part of them. It is only a **Plank** or **Tressel**, about half a yard or more broad set upon three or four strong feet; on this is laid another Plank or thick Board, with two **Handles**, having a long peece of Timber fastned with a **moveing tweel** or **Hinge**, to the top of the work-room, coming down to the middle of the board, and fixed there in a Block, or thick piece of Timber, and stayed with two **Side-risers**. Now Needles laid between these boards, or planks, and two persons shuffling the higher boards two and again, by the ends handles; will in a very short time scowr and cleanse a great quantity of Needles.

CXXII. He beareth in this Square two sorts of Needle Drawers, or Boxes, in which the Needle maker puts his several sorts and sizes of Needles, that he may with dexterity find any sort that is required of him, of which there are several sorts, as ye may see in the Trades mentioned in *Chap.* 3. *Numb.* 33.

Ink-horn-maker.

13. SInce the use of Pen, Ink, and Paper, or Parchment, the Ink-horn hath not been uninvented: and that the first making of them was of **Horn**, is evident from its name; for let it be for Gallantry, made of Gold, Silver, Pewter, Lead, or Tin; yet it is but an **Ink-horn**. Now the Tools of these **Ink-horn-makers**, as of Horn, are these.

CXXIII. In this Quarter are four Tools belonging to the **Turner** of **Ink-horns**: the first on the dexter-side is termed a **Boer**, it is a Tool in form of a Loseng, with a long **Shank** set in an handle, the point is **Basiled** both side the point, to make it have an edge.

S. 3 of these. A. handle O. is born by *Boer*.

S. a Fesse betw. them. A. is born by *Boerberg*.

The Second an **Hollin Chissel**; this is a Tool having a square on one side the end of the **Shank**, which is **Basiled** to an edge on 2 sides, and so set in a long **Handle**. This. O. in pale, betw. 2 Ink-horn makers Spindles. A. in a Field. G. is born by *Cortland*.

The Third is nominated, a **Spindle**, it is a leaf like Tool, set in a Handle with edges on both sides of it: the Handle hath a round head. V. 3 Ink-horn-makers Spindles A. handle O. is born by *Woadleford*.

The Fourth is called, an Hollin Hook: It is a kind of a hook, as it is set to a long Shank, having a Basile or grinding to a sharp edge on 2 sides of the crooked square: the end of the Shank is fixed in a round long handle.

CXXIV. In this Square are three of the said Tradesmens Tools, useful for their turning. That on the dexter side

side is termed a **Point**: being broad and flat in the tool, yet ending in a sharp point, three square-like, so put hath a small **Tongue** into a long **Handle**.

B. 3 such in pale, A. is born by *Floocate*.

The Second or middle, hath the name of a **Round-tool**; yet it is all along 3 square to the **shank** that goes into the Handle.

The Third is called, an **Hollin round-tool**. Having a long **Shank**, with a quarter round circle at the side of the end of the said Shank: and an **Handle**.

CXXV. In this Long-square, are the Figures of five useful Tools belonging to the **Ink-horn Turner**. The first on the dexter side, is called a **Cutting Tool**. It is made with a long four **square shank, hook'd** in the end, with a sharp edge the breadth of the Shank; and so set in an Handle by a tang.

The Second is termed a **Flote**, or **Screw-Rasp**. It is three Square, smooth on one side, and toothed like a Saw on the other two; and set in a handle like a three square File.

V. one such A. between 2 Ink-horn hold-fasts. O. born by *Sabrewsbott*.

The Third hath the name of a **Chissel**; the **Blade** and the **Shank** are much more longer then the **Carbo Cutter**.

☞ These in the drafts of the Plate, having their handles and Shanks made too short for the Blades, which ought to have been drawn much longer, as to the true proportion.

S. 3 such in pale bend-wise. A. handles. O. born by *St Leonard*.

The Fourth is the Ink-horn-makers Tool called a **Gouge**; but the Shank and Handle should have been made longer and slenderer.

☞ For both in this, and the foregoing Chissel, the **Flats** are about twice the length of the **Shank**; and the **Shank** and the **Handle**, to be much about the same length. And Note also, that the Flats of all the Tools, aforesaid, are to be much longer, then the Plate for their proportion sets them forth.

The Fifth is termed an **Hand-screw**: It hath a long **Shank** set in an **Handle**, the further end bent two ways, over thwart, and then streight forwards, again; which last bent is wrought into a kind of a Screw.

CXXVI. In this Square are two other Tools of the **Horn-turners**; the first is called an **Hollin Point**; whose **Shank** must be much longer then the bending part. It is set in a long round handle of Wood.

The Second is callled a **Claw-foot**: This is a piece of turned **Wood** with a **flat top** in which are fixed three peices of Iron with broad flat heads; which, being fastned in any piece of work holds it to be turned, the string in the Leth runing in the bollow part of it; as it doth in the **Hold-fast** following.

CXXVII. In this is the Figures of two Instruments for working in Horn: The first is named a **Steel**, being a broad flat Tool, like a Joyners **Pairing-Chissel**, but without a Shank, it is beveled on one side in all the three edge; having a thick short handle.

O. one of these B. handle. S. is born by *Dumere*.

The Second is an **Hold-fast** for an **Ink-horn**: It is hollow, into which the Head of an Ink-horn is put, for the turning of it hollow, and to the Work-mans purpose

CXXVIII. He beareth Argent, a **Running Screw** Azure, the **Handle** Sable, born by the name of *Bigham*, and Gules, three such Argent, handles Sable: is born by the name of *Nickson*. By this Instrument Screws are made in any sort of Ink-horns, that have a Screw to go into them.

CXXIX. This is the form of an **Engine**, or Instrument, which Horne Turners use to Turn Horn in; which they call a **Coiler**. It is the Head part of the Leth, where the Horn turns in while it is working.

Lanthorn-maker.

14. THE Lanthorn, as it is a good guid for them as walke in darknes; so the makers Tools may give Instructions to the Armorist, that each perticular thing may receive its proper terme, now his Tools are these which follow.

CXXX. In this square is the figure of a **Beetle** between two **Wedges**: The Beetle is a kind of a Wooden **Mall**, or **Mallet**, being eight square, and the length of it is as long, if not longer then the **Handle**; the work this is put unto, is to drive in the Wedges into the Press.

G. 3 such. A. is born by *Mall*.

A 3 such. S. is born by *Beetle* or *Betell*.

There are two sorts of Wedges, used by them, the **Wedge** (as they call it) that is the larger Wedge, and the small Wedge; these are used to wedge the flat Horns, made hot, between the Plates fast in the Press, thereby to make the Horn lye open and flat.

A. 3 Wedges. S. born by *Wedge*.

CXXXI. In this Square are three Tools in much use with the **Horn-maker**; the first is the **Streightening Tongs**: by these the Horn is made streight. G. the like in bend, with the **Stay** or **Holder** Pendant, Argent, is born by *Hurbes*.

The Second is termed the **Roasters**, or **Roasting Tonges**: These should have been drawn much longer in the Fork part, before the points do open. A. 3 such S. Handles. O. is born by *Duache*.

The

The Third is called the **Smooth Shaving-knife.** It is a long flat Iron tool, set in an **Handle** at one end, and **Edge** at the other; it hath both sides worked off into a Basile, which shaveth of the thickness of the Horn.

S. 3 such in pale, proper is born by *Macaire.*

CXXXII. This is the form of the **Horners shaving knife** with which they shave their opened Horns, till they be clear, and transperant. 3 such proper in a Field. B. is born by *Monmol.*

In the Base of this Square is the **Horn-workers Press** in which with the Horn wedged, and Plates of Iron between each Wedges are droven, by means whereof the Horns being slit, are made to lye flat and streight out. I can give you no other Description of it, you may see the Figure, which is ever made in the ground, so that the Work-man needs not to fear the bursting out either of sides, or ends, with over hard wedging.

CXXXIII. In this Square is the form of their Instrument, which holdeth the Horn in it, while it is working thin with the Shaving knife; this they call the **Clamps**; and of some work-men called a **Rough shaving board**, It is two Boards, a long and a square one fixed together by a loose playing Iron, or Wooden Pin, between which towards the top, if you thrust in a Wedge, it will bind the two Boards so fast together that they will hold any thing secure between them, as the thing itself doth manifest; between which is held an Horn: it hath a Triangle slit made in the bottom Board or Plank, to hold it stedfast to a peg droven into the Ground.

The rest of the Horn-workers Tools, *See Chap. 19. Numb 79.* I having not room in this Plate to set them together.

TO

TO
The Worshipful
DAVID PARRY of Llwynyn *in the County of* Denbigh, Esq;

SIR,

Considering the many favours I have received from you and your Dear Father William Parry, *and your Grandfather* Gabriel Parry *Esquires, and their Vertuous Consorts; doth oblige me to the Dedication of this Plate and Chapter to you, who am*

Your Obliged Servant

Randle Holme.

CHAP. IX.

15. COurteous Reader, I pray thee add these few Husbandry Tools to *chap.* 8. *numb.* 15. they coming after those to my hands.

Husbandry Instruments.

CXXXIV. In this quarter are four Instruments, or things pertaining to Husbandry; the first which is in the dexter side, is termed a **Taper Ladder of 4 Staves.** It is a kind of a **Ladder,** or **Cheese Rack,** having one end wider or broader open than the other. Some term it a **Ladder broader** at the **Foot** than the top-part.

A. such a like in Pale S. is born by the Family of *Die Vogt van Castell* in *Switzerland.*

B. the like O. is born by *Van Malenstein* of *Carinthia.*

G. the like with two Talbots rampant to the sides of it A. Collared and set with Forks S. is born by the name of *Van der Leiter zu Behrn,* a Dutch Family of great Account.

The second in the middle of the Chief is an Instrument that is termed **round Scalipers.** It is two crooked Irons with sharp points revited together at the broader end, so as that they may turn one upon another; they are for the taking the circumference of any round body. Such I find born in Arms.

A. such an Instrument S. is born by *Van Flossel.*

The third in the Sinister side is termed a **Carpenters long Ginnet**; some call it a **Turf Spade**; it is to cut and flea up the surface of any thing flat, or of the Earth into Sods, Turfs or Fleeces, to lay on the Ridges of Thatched Houses in Country Towns or small Cottages, when they are first cut out by a Shovel. This Instrument is like the Carpenters Adds, for as that Chips the Wood, so this flees up the Earth both with Moss and Grass, and Moorish ground. See *chap.* 16. *numb.* 140. another form of Turf Spade.

V. the like in Bend Sinister the edge reversed A. Handle O. between 3 Turfs or Billets of the second. By *Digby.*

The fourth in this quarter is that as lieth in the Base, which is called a **Socket Pickfork,** or **Socket Pickell.** Such an Instrument Azure, the Stail or Staff Or, with a Pickel Gules, is born by the name of *Curry.*

B. 3 such in fesse O. is born by *Holmett.*

CXXXV. In this square is also foure other Instruments belonging to husbandry, some of them though they beare the name, and something of the shape of others mentioned in *chap:* 8. yet upon perusall of both, there will be found a difference in them; therefore ought according to their beareing have a distinct term used for them. that thereby one be not taken for the other.

The first is a kind of **Dutch** or **Germane Sythe,** much like to that *cha:* 8 *numb:* 47. Yet there is some distic-

Dessus parcy de Cuynyn. Armig. H:D:E.

difference. I call that a Germane or Dutch Sythe, by reason there Heraulds draw them so; this also being of the same workmen, may then for distinction sake be blazoned, a **Sythe** with a **Nog**, or **Handle** on the contrary side of the **Swath**, **Potent**. Some call it a **Sythe** with one **Nog** (or **Contrary posed**) **Potent**. Others a **Socket Sythe**.

Such a Sythe A. in a Field V. I find born by the name of *Die Weisnage*.

The Second in the same quarter, is termed by most a **Woodmans Cleeving Knife**, By the strength of it and weighty blows to force it in, great trees are rent and cloven through, the length of the **Handle** assisting to prise and forceing them to fly open. It hath the resemblence of a **Pioners Pick**, mentioned *chap.* 8 *numb.* 45. or the **Pavers Pick**, as anciently it was made; set down in the same *chap.* 8 *num.* 72. Yet this differs from both haveing an edge on the inner side, with a **Socket** for the **Hame**, or **Staile** to be fastned in; and being much more streighter within. The roundnes of it only appearing on the outside to make the back the stronger, and the point or end the sharper.

B. the like A. betw: 2 Beazants. is *Mammung's* coat.

The third is termed an **Poppet**, or **Hobbet**, It is a Vessel of wood to carry corn in, by him that soweth the same. Being made of one entire broad hoop nailed to a bottom, haveing three Feet to stane on, and an Handle to hold it by.

S. the like A. is born by the name of *Hobbett*.

The fourth Instrument represents the Similitude of the first in this quarter, and is termed a **Socket Sythe**, with a **Square Handle**, only contrary-posed on the **Swath**. And such a Sythe A. the Swath & Handle O. in a feild S. is born by the name of *Seyffen*.

CXXXVI. In this quarter on the dexter side is a **Shovel** with a **Spade Handle**, it is of some called a **Flat** or **Streight soled Spade**. Two such in Salter Argent, in a feild Gules is born by *Van Rolshavisen* of *Alsatia* in the Empire of *Germanie*.

The Second is a **Spade** without a top or **Handle**, and is born as a part of the Coat Armour of the State or Town of *Schorndorf*, in the *Netherlands*. viz. G. 2 such in Salter the soles erect. O. on a chief. O. a Stags Horn Fesseways. S.

The Third is a **Lubom**, this is a *Dutch* and *German* beating, and I give it their term.

S. 2 such endoursed. O. is born by *Van Lubowsker* of *Silisiars*; the like is for his Crest on a Crown party, per pale G. and A. 2 such endorsed counter changed, born by *Graffinger* of *Thorald*: and the same with the crook head reversed, is born by *Van Zollock*.

The Fourth and that on the Sinister side, is termed a **Beater**, it is a broad plank, with a stail put into it, whose office it is with the help of a Labourer, to beat smooth and even Garden Walks and Alleys, or any other uneven Grounds.

The Fork lying in the base, is termed a **Dung Fork with 2 points**, or a **square Worching Fork** with 2 points. Some term it a **double barred Dung Fork**; and a **Foot Pelue**; because on the top or square part (as on a Spade) a man may set his Foot to force it the better and deeper into the Muck-hill. This is of a contrary form to the Velvet before mentioned, *Chap.* 8 *Numb.* 43, or some call it a **Socket pickel double barred**; or a **square Dung-Fork**.

B. 3 such in Fesse. A. Staves. G. born by *Rawenel*.

S. the like in bend. born by *Van Haymet*.

CXXXVII. In this Square are four other sorts of Instruments, most appertains to the good Ordering of Grounds, used both by Gardeners and Husband-men. The first on the dexter side, is by the Artists termed a **Pareing-Spade**, or **Dividing Iron**, and such a Spade Argent handle Or, in a Field vert, is born by *Spade* of *Spade-hill*. This is termed also a **Turf-Spade**, the **Bit** or **Shoes** being twice as broad as our ordinary Spades, and broader at the neather end, or point, then at the upper end by an Inch.

The Wheel on the sinister side is termed a **Mullen Wheel**, it hath a **square Nave** for its Axis, and for Spokes like the **Ballance Wheel** of a **Watch** or **Clock**, on the rim of the Wheel are placed triangular pieces much after the manner of **Cogg-Wheels**. But Mullen ends, as the examples in the following square will shew.

O. Such a Wheel. S is born by *Van Mulepen* of *Shambish*; the Crest the same on a Corronet, party per Fesse, S. and O. the like counterchanged., born by *Mulner* of *Nuremberge*.

The Third is termed, a **single Wheel Trenching Plough**: This is an Engine by which Trenches and Furrows are made in waterish Grounds, thereby to drain, or draw away the Water. It is made of a piece of Wood about the bignes of a Spade Stayl, somewhat strait, but bending a little at the neather end, in which part must be placed a **Coulter**; the **Sole** plated with Iron, through which the Coulter must come and be fastned with a **Cotter**, through a hole made in the side of the Wood and Coulter; the use is to cut out one side of a Trench, and then the other, and so turn up the sod or turf with a Spade. This is made with a small Brass Wheel about 4 Inches high, which will make the Foot to run more pleasantly. Some have these **Trenching Ploughs** without a **Wheel** and some have them **Mule Wheeled**, as in *Numb.* 140. whose use is the same to to this, therefore shall there say no more of them, than only give you their names and Forms.

In the Base is the fourth thing of the Square, which is called a **Gardiners Weeding Dog**. It is made with a **Taper Fork**, and a **Cross bar** of Iron, some six or eight Inches above, and then hath a strong Socket, into which is fixed a Staff with a **Spade head**, as thick or thicker then the **Spade shank**; The cross is for the Foot of the Workman to force it into the Earth, on each side a strong Weed Root, and so having hold of it, draws it out of the Ground, as an Hammer draws out a Nail by the Head.

B. 3 such O. is born by *Tineck*.
The like Dog. S. is born by *Naylheim*, also by *Dog*.

CXXXVIII. In this square are two sorts of Millstones, yet Mill-stones, yet by reason of several positions are diversly to be termed; the first a **Mill-stone** with three square **Calthrops**, equally dispose, or set in triangle upon the edge thereof, and such a like I find born by *Van Liechenbach* of *Silitiers*. viz. Azure, such a Mill-stone Argent.
On a Coronet. O. a Mill-stone. O with 5 Tufts of Grass on the edge of it; is the Crest of *Ermeither* of *Frankford*.

The Second is a **Mill-stone** set **with Noches**, much like the **Tanners knife** mentioned *Chap.* 8. *Numb.* 119. * only this hath a **Rigget** cut into it for an **Ink**, or **Wolyne** to be fixed in it, which the other hath not.
G. such a Mill-stone. A. is the Coat Armour of *Van Liechtenhan* of *Thuringrans*.

CXXXIX. In this quarter is two Instruments of Husbandry, The first is called a **Trenching Gouge**, this is made after the manner of a **Spade**, but that it riseth up in the sides, and is **Round** in the **Sole** or **shooe**. The use of it is the very same to the use of the **Tucking Spade**, to make trenches in Morish and wet lands to draw away the waters, as in the next square 140.

The Instrument on the sinister side is termed an **Hay hook** with an **Eagles head**, this is an adornment only added to the handle to make it the more prospicuous, as in the handles of things of this nature, workmen are apt to do, else I take the Hay hook mentioned *chap* 8 *numb* 21 22. to be the same for use as this is.

☞ These kind of beautifying works, with men, women, Lions, Apes, and such like heads cannot properly be said to alter, but rather **Illustrate** the Bearing, as is often seen in the **Harp** and other musicall Instruments.
B. Billertee & the like with the hook reversed O. is the coat of *Die Forstmeistr van Geilhavsen*.
B. 3 such in pale A. heads O. is born by *Wendeck*.

CXL. In this square are placed foure sorts of Husbandry Instruments by which their grounds are Drained, & got into good Tessel. The first is a **Turfe Spade**, or a **Turving Spade**.

The second is a **Plain Trenching Plough**, or **Coulter**. This hath only a **Flat sole** to run on the ground without any other thing but it Coulter fixed in a **Cottrel hole** by an Iron **Cottrel**.

The third is the **Trenching wheel Plough**, or the **Two wheel trenching Coulter**. But of these (only to give you here their form and shape) I have spoken elsewhere, *numb.* 137.

The fourth is the **Bottom**, or **Shooe** of a **Trenching Spade**. It is all Iron and put on the **Staffe** or **Statle**, with a good strong **Socket**. The Spade shooe must be made with two sides or **Langets** up from the end of the **Bit**, as if they were two **Strong Knife Blades**, set to turn or look upwards with their points upon a common Spade, from the end of your Spade bit, as the figure sheweth. If it be made exact, with the force of a man pushing it forward, it will work forth the **Coat** and **Furrow** clearly, and make a Trench at one tyme.

Masons Tools.

16. I Cannot but Honor the Fellowship of the **Masons** because of it Antiquity; and the more, as being a Member of that Society, called **Free-Masons**: In being conversant amongst them I have observed the use of these severall Tools following, some whereof I have seen born in coats Armour.

CXLI. In this Square are three **Free Masons tools** very usefull in there trade. The first is a **Shovel**: It hath hath a square bottom, and sole; else it is in all other parts like the **Spade**. With this their Morter is tempered, and foundations for Walls are digged. This is an honorable bearing, A. one S. shood O. born by *Sabrait*
B. 3 such O. shooed A. is born by *Shoveberg*.

The second is the **Hand Hamer**, which is both long and strong in the head, with an Iron hoop on the end of the handle to keep it from bruising or wearing, because the end is very oft used by them, as well as the hammer part. This may be well termed a **Masons Hammer**, because there is no other tradsmans like it, haveing the face long, and the hinder part flat and broad to the Halve side.
S. 3 such A. handles O. born by *Masoner*.
G. 2 such A. halves O. & a Rose. by *Strongmaine*.

The third is the **Chissel**, now this is a Chissel contrary to all others used in Ioynery or Carpentry; for this is all Iron strong and thick, the edge not very sharp but well made, and of good tempernd Steel. Of these they have severall sorts, big and little, according as the nature of the work requireth.
G. 3 Masons chissels A. born by *Chistett* or *Chiste*.
S. one betw: 3 Martlets A. born by *Dachell*.

CXLII. He beareth Gules, a **Masons Pick**, or **Pick Axe**, between a **Former** or **Clenser**, and a **Punch**, Argent; the **Haum** and **Handles**, Or. By the name of *Nason*. The **Axe**, it is the first tool they use in ston work, which is for the takeing off of all irregularities of the ston, and to bring it into some forme for what it is intended before other tools are used.

The **Clenser**, or **Former**, is a broad ended Iron Plate, or **Old Chessel**, with a broad bottom, set in an Handle; with which Tool they smooth and make even the Stone after it is cut into that form and Order, as the Work-man will have it.

The **Punch** is a sharp pointed Iron, or Steel, set in

an Handle; with this they draw out lines for to cut their Work by.

CXLIII. In this square is three other Free Masonry Tools the first is the Mallet; which is a round piece of heavy Wood with an Handle put through it; the Chissel though not very sharp, yet with the weighty blows of the Mallet cuts any part of the Stone, he pleaseth; or worketh any sort of Figure, or Mouldings, that he is capable of performing, that this is born in Armes I have shewed before, in *Chap.* 8. *Numb.* 76. and *Chap.* 9. *Numb.* 4.

B. 3 such O. with a Rose between. A. born by *Maulebirg.*

The Second is the Mattock: It is an Instrument for the breaking up of Ground, to lay Foundations; and also is much used with Stone Getters in Quarries. Some Mattocks have one end like a Pick, and the other end broad, the same turning to the Handle.

The Third is called a Tronel; it is a flat Iron of an Oval form, having a sharp point proceeding from one part or end of it, and the like from the other end, but one turns up in the point, like to a Square, or Centry-Hook.

CXLIV. He beareth in this Quarter four Masons Instruments, or working Tools; the first is called a Commander; which is no other than a great Mallet with a long handle, some call it a Maul or Mait; the Mallet being the diminitive of it. This is used in Quarries, for the getting of Stone, it driving in (with the Help of the great Hammer) wedges into the clefts of the Rocks.

G. the like. A. betw. 2 Lions Rampant Combitant (or supporting it) O. is born by *Mallion.*

The Second is the Triangle; it is an Instrument made of a Board, cut into a triangular form; which by the help of a Line and Plummet, gives instructions to the Work-man, whether his work be true, either on the flat, or in the upright.

The Third is an Axe, or Masons Axe; this having a broad sharp end, doth cut away and make smooth the Stone, from all its irregular blows and dents made by the Pick-Axe, in hewing it to its form, that it should be, the first working is termed, Brocking; the latter Areing. V. 3 such A. Halves, or hawme O. is born by *Mayax.*

The fourth is termed a Square: It is made generally of Wood, by the use of it all Stones are cut square, so that one may lye by an other, and joyn to an other, either in Floars or Walls, in a fit decorum; that these are in Coates Armour, see *Numb.* 13. 14. 15.

CXLV. In this quarter are four Instruments of the Masons: The first is in the dexter side, and is termed a Rule, or a Ten foot Rod; the use of this is to measure the length and breadth of a ground plot into feet, and if there be odd Inches they are measured with a two Foot Rule; thereby to order the model of the building, it is also for divers other uses.

The Second is the Instrument in chief, which is called the Water-level; it is a long Rule with a Rigget in the middle of it, from one end to the other: by the means of this, with a Level set upon it, the height of a place may be known at a distance, and whether it be higher then that, place from whence you take your aim.

The third and fourth are termed Temple Moulds; they are Boards cut in that for as the Stone is to be cut as for Example, a Mould that is convex, having the swellings outwards, make the Stone the same; if it be Concave, the Stone is cut away inwards, this under Mould being a fit one for a Gutter-stone.

CXLVI. These are another sorts of Moulds, for the cutting of Mouldings in Stone work; the first is a square with a swelling Frize. And the second is a square with a swelling Frize, and revale, with a square Foot.

CXLVII. This is a moulding that hath in it two Squares, or one Square and Fillet; a swelling Frize, with a Square Foot, and two Fillets, or Annulets.

CXLVIII. This is the moulding of an other sort of Cornice, which is termed (beginning at the bottom as all workmen) Arche-trave, Frize, and Cornice. But more perticularly for the names of each part, we will begin at the top, and come downward, where there is a Square, a Fillet, and an O.G moulding for the Cornice; two Fillets or Squares, for the Frize; and a Plain with a Square for its Archetrave; these are the plain and ordinary term amongst the Vulgar sort of Hewers of Stone, that know no better things: but the more engenious, and learned work-men, have other terms, for which I shall refer you to *Chap.* 13. *Numb.* 65. 66, 67, 73, 74.

Slaters Tools.

17. THere is four sorts of Trades, that formerly used to cover Houses, that they might be kept dry, *viz.* the Plumer, with Lead; the Tyler with burnt Clay; the Shingler with clift Wood; and the Thatcher with Reed, Rushes, or Straw; to which we may now add the Slater, which though the last in time, yet the best for duration, considering the cheapness; his Tools are these which follow.

CL. In this square is contained four of the cheif Instruments belonging to the Slater, for twice as many more, he scarcely useth. The first on the dexter side is, a Pining Iron; this is a long four square pointed Iron set in an Handle over cross it: This is for the opening of an hole in the Slate to put the pin into it. B. 2 such and a Slaters Hatchet. A. Handles. O. is born by *Slater.*

The second is the Slaters Hatchet; it is both an Pam-

hammer with a **File-like Face**, and an **Hatchet**, and serveth to beat in Nails; and also to cut off the ends of extravagant Laths in the Lathing of the tops of Houses to Slate upon.

The third extended in Fesse, is termed a **Stone measure**, or a **Lathing measure**; by this measure Slates are all fitted to their sizes, and so laid together, for their readiness to work.

The fourth in the base is termed a **Pewing Knife**, it is made after the form of a Meat Knife in the blade, but at the **Haft** it turns up after the manner of a **Trowel**; with this he squares, and cuts his Slates to what breadth and form he pleaseth, according to the measure aforesaid. V. 3 such in pale to the sinister pointed. A. handle. O by the name of *Hewer*.

CLI. In this quarter is placed on the dexter side, the **Slaters pick**; it is crooked long and sharp pointed at both ends, and set in a **Handle** as an **Hammer**; with this is only the hole made in the Slate for the pin, it serves for no other use in the Trade. A. 3 such with a bend betw. S. is born by *Morbit*.

Brick-maker, and *Brick-layers Tools*.

18. THIS was a very ancient Trade, for it took begining in the begining of the second world, or age of the world. For no sooner was the flood gon from off the face of the earth, and men begun to multiply thereon, but come (say they) let us build a Citty, and a Tower, whose top may reach to Heaven, that we may get us a name: and this they made of Brick burnt in the fire, as we may read *Gen.* 11. 3. 4. And those famous Piramedes built in *Egypt* by the *Israelits*, in the tyme of their bondage (which are said to remaine to this day) were all made of **Brick**. as may appeare from *exod*: 5 7 8 *&c.* Now the Instruments of a **Brickman** are these which follow.

CLII. He beareth Argent, a **Brick hamer** between two **Brick Ares**, Azure, handle Sable. is born by the name of *Briaxe*. The **Brick hamer** is longer in the face part, and much stronger then other tradsmens hamers, haveing a long pick at the contrary end of it, and a strong wooden handle.

The two **Brick Ares** are of two contrary formes which I caused to be set soe, that the Reader may se the several wayes they are drawn, to which may be added others mentioned in *chap.* 8. *numb.* 77, 78.

CLIII. In the chief is a **Bricklayers Joynter**, this is to rub and pollish the loynts of brick work, after the wall is made, to make it look tite and trim. This is a long peece of Iron about a quarter of an inch thick, and smooth; in the end from the haft, it turneth up; the handle is fixed on an Iron proceeding from the midle of it, bending back like to that of a **Trowell**. se an other fashion loynter, *chap.* 8. *numb.* 78. *

G. a cheveron betw. 3 such A. handles O. by *Thiery*

In the base is a **Brick, or Brick bate**, as some term it; others a **Ston Billet**, as *chap.* 8. *numb.* 81, 82, 83. The size for makeing of Brick are 10 Inches long, 5 road, and 3 thick; and some tymes a little either over or under that measure, as the Maister of them pleaseth. A. a rose betw. 3 such G. born by *Bricks*.

CLIV. In the Dexter chief of this quarter is two **Line Pins**, with a **Line lapped** or **raped** about part of both: or a **Bricklayers line rowled** upon the **Pins**, on each a part by the help of the line the Bricklayer runs or layeth the range of a wall by the severall courses.

On the Sinister side is a **Brickmakers Moulding Board**, with the **Tub** by the side of it; upon such a the board, with a stay upon it, to keep the **Brick Mould** from sliping away, doth the Brickmaker mould bricks.

In the Dexter base is the **Brick-makers Plain**, or **Slice**, which is a streight peece of a Board: with it he striketh over the top of the Mould when it is filled with Clay, thereby takeing away all that is superfluous, or lyeth higher than the mould.

CLV. In this quarter is a pair of **Brick Moulds**, in which Bricks are made; work men term the several parts of them thus. Brick Moulds when all compleated, if they be plated, they are Moulds shod; if otherwise they are Bare-foot Moulds.

CLVI. He beareth Gules, an **Hod** Argent, by the name of *Hodder*. The **Hod** is a kind of three square trough made up at one end, and open at the other; haveing a staffe fixed to its bottom. Within this Clay is usually carryed from the Pit to the moulding board, or else Brick or Morter is brought in it by a labourer to him that worketh them.

In the dexter base, is a **Crist mould**; such Crists as we use to lay upon the Ridges, or top parts of Slated houses, to secure the first pieces, from the weather.

In the Sinister base, is a Brick-makers Tub; which they call the dropper, or dropping Tub: It is nothing else but an Hogshead, or Terse Barrel, cut through the middle, which makes two of them. A. 3 such. G. is born by *Brickman*.

CLVII. He beareth A. on a **Mount** in Base. V. a **Brick-kiln** of four **Tunnitts, Benches**, or **Stories** high, one above and less than another G. in the corners of the second and top, a **flame flumant**, proper. some term it a Brick-kiln of 4 **Orieces**; the sides and top **Flamant** and **Fumant**, others 3 **Vapours** of **smoak**, this is born by the name of *Brickill*. A. the like Brick-kiln with 2 Tubbs in chief. G. is the Arms of the Company of Brick-makers in the City of *Chester*. In some places these heights are called Arches.

Plasterers Tools.

19. IN the Eighth Chapter of this Book, I gave a touch of some Tools of the Plasterers, but here take them more at large, being as many as I can find out that belongs to them in particular, and not to other Trades; others they have, but they are set down in other places.

CLVIII. In this square are three Tools belonging to the Trade of Plastering, and Daubing: the first whose Head is in chief, is termed a **Pick-hammer**, and 3 such Argent, Handles Or; in a Field Sable, is born by *Mosby* of *Mosby*.

The second on the dexter side, is the **Plasterers hand-brush**; it is made of Hogs Bristles, whose **Staile**, or **Handle**, according to the Statute, it is to be a yard long, and that they may by these, and such other, as are described in *Chap.* 8. *Numb.* 89. Whitten, Russet, or Black any Posts, or parts of an House within or without, in water Colours only, but not to meddle in Oyl,

B. 3 such. A is born by *Aigleberg*.

The third is the **Plasterers hand-board**: or a round hand board belonging to the Plasterer: These kind of Boards are by them, made either round or square, and therefore it is necessary to mention of what fashion or form it is; in the middle of it is fastened a Wooden Pin, or handle, by which it is held: on this board they use to temper and turn their Plaster, before they clap, and spread it with their Trowel on the Wall, or what place soever is to be Plastered.

CLIX. In the chief of this quarter is the **Plasterers Beater**; it is a long piece of Wood cut after the manner of a **Slice**, which Deary-women use about their Butter, or a **Wooden knife**; having a broad Back and declining toward an edge; with this the Labourer beats his Lime and Hair together, till they be well mixt, and fit for working.

The next is the **Beating-board**, which is either 3 or four boards joyned together, or some old door, or such like, laid upon Stones or Timber beating height, upon which the Morter (as aforesaid) is beaten with the foresaid Beater.

CLX. This is the form of a Plasterers Mould, called a Round and Fillets, it makes a moulding in Plaster that is an half round with a Fillet or Square on each side.

In the partition score between this square, and that of *Numb.* 159. is placed the form of a **Plasterers whiting Brush**, such as he useth with a long staff; and this I conceive to be the Brush that should be set in their Arms, and not that with an handle, it being rather an House Painters Brush, see *Chap.* 8. *Numb.* 89.

CLXI. This is an other sort of Mould by which a cornice is run about a Room, or Mantle-trees of Chimneys. It is termed an O. G. Mould with Fillets, or Squares. See *Numb.* 147.

Sadlers Tools.

20. I Have in the former Chapter spoken to some things of the Sadlers work, as **Sadles**, **Bridles**, &c. but of their working Tools I was then Ignorant, save the **Hammer** and **Aul**; which you may see *Chap.* 8. *Numb.* 96. the rest follows in this place.

CLXI.* He beareth Argent, a **Coach** Sable, **Wheels** and the **Back Rails**, Or. this is the Coat of Arms belonging to the Coach-makers.

CLXII. In this quarter are three Instruments of the Sadlers; the first on the dexter side is termed a **Strainer**; it is made of Wood, with a triangular piece to fit into such a like hole, made in the middle of it, which is hung by a thread, that it lose not; having a Leather loop in the handle of it, only that hangs it up by; with this the **Girth web** is fastned, and drawn streat upon the **Sadle trees**; or in such places, where the Girth requires straining.

The second in the chief is termed the **Pannel Aul**, or the **Pannel Bodkin**, and such I find born in the coat of *Tassy. viz.* S. 3 such Pr. Also G. 1 such reversed A. and a chief O. is born by *Pannelsorf*.

The third in the base is called a **Pricking** or **Garnishing Aul**, this is for to make holes to adorn and to garnish Sadle Skirts with Silk, Silver, or Gold thrid.

G. an Annulet betw. 3 such erected O. is born by *Van Solagest* of *Holland*.

CLXIII. He beareth two sorts of **Auls** in this quarter, The first hath the name of an **Aul**, or **Sadlers Aul**, because they have broder Blads than the Auls used in other Trads. Its use is so common, that I need say no more of it B, a cheveron betw. 3 such points reversed A. hafts O. is born by the name of *Aules*.

The second is termed a **Buckleing Aul**, in the blads these differ but little, but the hafts are much contrary one to the other; the first being a **slender**, this a **strong haft**, such as is fit to abide a blow on the head of it, when in the working with it, a necessity urgeth, and a force is required.

V. 2 such the blades Saltered A. hafts O. is born by *Don Tassillon a Spaniard*.

CLXIV. Within this square is foure usefull tooles for the adorning of the Sadlers work, three in chief, and one in base, we shall first give the names and use of them

matter, and that according to their position towards the dexter part. The first is named a **Peging Iron**, it is a kind of an **Iron Punch** haveing five points all in a straight line; there is of them that have only two points, some three, some foure points, according as the work is.

S. 3 such A. is born by the name of *Peggings*.

The middlemost is termed a **Larg Scallop Iron**, these have broad **handles**, rather **flat** then round, being a kind of **Punch** to cut Leather Scallop wise, but more narrowed. one such A. a chief O. in a field V. born by *Dunny* or *Dunnygs*.

The third is of the same nature, only differ in the bigness of the compass of the **Scallop**, and in the **handle**, for generally all the handles of the smaler sort of **Scallop Irons** have them either round, or six square.

The fourth which occupieth the base part is termed a **Scoaring Iron**, it is an Iron with three dents in the edge of it, haveing a long Iron **Stail**, which is fixed in a wooden **Handle**, or **Haft hooped** with Iron. With this Iron being alittle heated, they Scoare and run Veines on the Leather which is about the Sadles, and also on bridle raines, and head-stalls, to make them look handsome, & pleasing to the eye.

A. 2 such in salter S. handles O. is born by *Narcey*.

CLXV. In this quarter is three necessary Tools belonging also to the Sadler; the first in the dexter cheif, is called a **Scallop peging Iron**.

A. 3 such B. is born by *Round*.

The Second is termed a **Cressa**, or **Veining stick**: It hath one end round with a nick therein, one side of the wood being broader then the other; the contrary end hath it round on one end, and sharp at the other: the name of this Tool tell you the use of it, *viz.* to Vein and Score Leather, to adorn it for the sight of the Eye.

The Third is named an **Hair hook**, or a **Stuffing Iron**: This is a long slender Iron, with an Hook at one end, and a kind of a Fork at the other: As it hath two names, so it hath a double Imploy, the one to hook or draw out the old stuffing of a **pannell**; and the other end, to put new Hair again into it, or to any part of it.

S. 3 such in pale A. is borne by *Harebock*.

CLXVI. He beareth Sable, a **Sivett** in it **plate** Argent. Three such is borne by the name of Civett. The Sivett, is a square barr of **Iron**, or **square-Buckle**, without a **tonge**, set to the sides of the Sadle-tree, with a plate of Iron: Both to hang the Straps at for the Girth; and the Leathers for the Stirrops.

CLXVII. In the dexter side of this quarter, is a **Girth-Buckle pendant**, **cooped** or cut off below the fastning of the **web** to it. This is broken, or cut from the **Girth-web**: And such I find borne by *Girthback*, *viz.* 3 such O. in a field G. Also G. a chevron between 3 such tongs erected: O. is the Arms of the *Buckle-makers*.

The second, is the **Sadle-Tree**, which is all made of Wood, which according to the terms of the framer and maker thereof, hath several parts in it.

B. 3 such O. is the Sadle-tree-Makers cognizance.

In the Base of this square, is a **Sliding seat**, or a **Gliding chaire**, a thing much used in Frosty-Countreys for Gallants, and the great Gentry of the Countrey to sit in, while others draw them along the Ice: they are usually drawn either by Men or Horses.

A. the like S. is born by the name of *Van Schlitsted* of *Bavaria*.

CLXVIII. He beareth Argent a **Side-Sadle**, or a **Woman-Saule** with Skirts Gules, **Imbrauthered** and **fringed**, Or. This is borne by the name of *Van Rabotter*.

In former times the Side-sadle had only a Pillen fastned upon the Tree of the Sadle, all the other parts of the Sadle being furnished up as the Mans Sadle is: over which Pillen and Tree was cast a **Sadle-cloth** called a **Side-sadle-cloth**, or a **Pillen-cloth**, which covered the Side-saddle, and hung down below the Horse belly. But of latter time there hath been a better and easier way found out (especially for the Horse) by covering the Pillion, and setting Skirts to the Tree after the manner of a Mans Saddle, as the example doth demonstrate.

The several parts of this Saddle you may see, if you look back to Chap. 3. Numb. 34.

CLXIX. He beareth Sable, a **Roman S. Wreathed** in the midle, with **Leaves** proceeding therefrom, & a **Scarfe florishing**, Or. Born by the name of *Goddicar*. Some term this an S. **adorned** with **Leaves**, and **wreathed** with a **Scarfe**, the ends **flotant** in fesse. The Roman Letters are usually thus made, and born adorned with Wreaths and Leaves in their streight, or the bending parts of them.

O. an S contrary turned, (or to the dexter turned) wreath & scarfe thus, A. is born by *Van Dobritsch*.

CLXX. He beareth Argent, a **Roman S.** Sable; **Imbossed** in the midle, and the ends [illegible] into leaves Or. This is born by the name of *Sandh*.

Such an S. the ends converted into Leafage A. field G. is the coat of *Seyboli* or *Brunswick*.

CLXXI. He beareth Azure, a **Roman C.** **rebated** in the **back**, and the **ends** turned into **Leafage**. Argent. Born by the name of *Chanell*, *Cammell*, as it is vulgarly termed. For the adorning of these Capitall letters I have often seen them drawn with **Rebatements** in the sides; but especially in the brord ends, to make them look either strange, more promisciously, or to shew the fancie and devise of the workman.

Chirurgions Instruments.

21. THERE being an omission of some of the Instruments in the succeeding Chapters, I did think good to treat of them in the latter end of this, which may be added to those mentioned in *chapters* 11. & 12

CLXXI. In this square is first a Chyrurgical Instrument called the **great Speculum Matricis**, this is used to take out a dead child out of the womb, or cut it, or else to view some Ulcer that lyeth within the Belly.

The second in the sinister chief of this square is termed a **Draught**, or **Draughts** with a **screw**, this is an Instrument to draw out acheing teeth; it is a more safer way of drawing with this than that mentioned *chap.* 11 *numb*, 29. by reason the screw keeps it at that distance that the ends of the draughts shall not upon the fast holding cut the tooth, which the other Draughts are apt to do, especially if the tooth be much decayed.

CLXXIII. Within this square in the chief is a **Stitching Quill**, This is an Instrument by means whereof a wound that gapeth is drawn together, or **stitched up**, as they term it, or sewed up, to keep it as much as may be from being a scar in the flesh, and to heal it the sooner.

The second instrument in the base part is called an **Infuser**, or a **Glass Body** with a **long neck**, and a **string** the ends **fired** thereto, and **fretted**. This is also named a **Distillatory** with a Round Body and long Neck, see *chap* 11 *numb.* 4. 6. But I rather take it to be some kind of a **Ventosis**, or **Cupping glass**, the like in this Station, or rather **dejectant**, A. in a field G. is born by the name of *Hohoner*.

CLXXIV. He beareth Azure, a **Barbers Chaser** Or This is a small Chaser (which they use to carry about with them when they make any Progress to Trim, or Barb Gentiles at a distance) to carry their sweet water (or countrey mans broth) in; the **round handle** at the mouth of the Chaser is to fall down as soon as their hand leaves it. This is born by *Truchses Van Vttinggen.*

A. the like S. is born by *Truchses Van Diesenhofen.* Also by *Pfersheim* in *Germanie.*

A. the like with 3 feet S. is born by *Balshofen*

The like **sans** handle A. set on a square Cushion tasseled G. with a tuft of grass out of the mouth of it, is the crest of *Lobenstein* in *Bavaria.*

CLXXV. Within this square are four Chyrurgical Instruments for the Barber Surgeon, that in the dexter chief is termed a **Single Beak Pellican** with a screw, of some it is called a Screw'd tooth Forcer, it is an instrument to draw out corrupt and faded teeth.

The second which is under it, is termed a **Single tooth Pincer**, of some a **Forcer**, or **Puller** with a **tooth Levitor** at the contrary end, this is also to draw acheing teeth, and if they chance to break in the pulling, the Levitor helpeth to prise out the roots.

The third lying in the base is nominated a Chyrurgions **Graver**, it is used sometimes to scale and clean bones, and old corrupted teeth.

The fourth in the sinister chief is a Barbers **Wide tooth Comb**, or an **Horn Comb** with single teeth, or toothed on one side, this is for the combing and readying of long thick and strong heads of hair, and such like Perriwigs. S. 3 such A. born by *Combey.*

CLXXVI. Upon the dexter side is a **Filter**, or **Distilling bag**, with two **Rings** in the open of it. This is something contrary to that *chap.* 11. *numb.* 13. where, of the use of this, you may read more.

B. such a like. O. is born by *Die Fahler* or *Pfahler* of *Bavaria.*

The second is a **Potion Cup**, or a **Cup with a Physicians potion** in it, **covered** with a **Napkin**: and such a bearing I find by the name of *Tellet*, viz. G. the Cup, O. Napkin. A.

The like is the crest of *Truchses Van Vttingen.*

G. 3 such, O. is born by *Stauffen*

A. on a hill Shapournet. B. the like Cup with 2 covers over it at an equal distance. G. born by *Van Stauffenberg.*

CLXXVII He beareth Sable, a Pair of **Barbers Cisers opened Salterwise**, Argent. Some only say a pair of **Cisers** in **salter**, but there are many sorts of Cisers, so that they ought (by reason of their diverse shapes) to be named what kind of cisers they are, whether **Hair cisers**, such as these are; or **Beard cisers**, with short nippers, and larg handles; or **Taylors cisers**, with blunt points, which they carry in their pockets to cut out their measures, or any small thing; or the **Seamsters cisers**, which for their smallness differ from both, some cisers having the ring for the thumb onely for to fit it, and the contrary Ring or Bow to be so large as two or three fingers may go into it; *see cap.* 12. *n* 13.

A. 3 such opened B. born by *Majorianberge*

B. a cheveron betw. 3 such A. born by *Walder.*

CLXXVIII. He beareth Azure, a **Druggist Basket** Argent, **wreathed** about the middle, having an **Annulet** or Ring on the sinister side, Or. This is born by the name of *Van Stotzingen* of *Schwabische* in *Germanie.* This or the like made of Wickers or Osier twigs is much used by Drupsters, Apothecaries, Chyrurgions and the like, to keep empty Pots, Bottles, Boxes, *&c.* in them, to be ready for their use. But some take this for no other than a kind of **Bakers bread Basket**, which he carryeth on his shoulder, by the help of the rope that is made fast about it, and the ring to hold it by.

CLXXIX. Within this quarter are three Instruments of the **Barber Chyrurgions**. The first on the dexter

ner side is their **Candle stick**, it is a wooden turned stick, haveing a **Socket** in the Sureight peece, and an other in the cross, or over-thwart peece: this he sticketh in his Apron strings on his left side, or breast when he useth to run by night.

The second is and lying at the foot of the Candle stick, is termed the **Presenter** of the **Semitrant**, for its use you may perule those books of Chyrurgiry formerly mentioned at the later end of my second Book.

The third is called a **Tooth Pincer**, this Instrument usually pulls out teeth, when the **Pelican**, or **common Pincers**, or **Draughts**, cannot take hold of them. se an other fashion of their makeing. *ca* 11 *n* 20.

CLXXX. This is an Engine used by a **Perunque Maker**, which he calleth by the name of **Table** or **Board Screws**, or their **Holdfast**, this they use to screw the one end upon the edge of a table, and in the other screws locks of haire, while they comb them out to put them in sorts to curle.

CLXXXI. In the chief of this quarter is an Instrument called a **Paire** of **Tizars**, or **Tillers** with a **spring**. With these the Artist cuts away Grisly and Brawny parts that disturbeth the Pacient, or hinders the cure of any place grieved or diseased.

The second that lyeth in the base is termed the **Barnacle Pincers**, or Pincers that fasten themselves, by it (with a pen knife,) an Incision is made for a Seton.

The third is a **Point**, or **Tag**, to which is fastned a long round **Line** or **Seton**, (as they term it) this is to run throw a wound, and be tyed in it, for the corruption to be drawn out, which causeth the swelling of that part.

CLXXXII. He beareth Vert, a **Castle wall** with 2 **Towers**, over the gate a Square **Watch tower**, Argent; **Rooted**, Azure: beweene an **Hook** to take out **Bullets**, and a **Turning Pen-knife**, with a Crooked **Blade**, of the third, **Hafts**, or **handles**, Or. By the name of *Gibbins*. But of these more perticularly.

Some term this a **Castle wall** with a **Square chamber**, or **Gate house** upon it, between (or conjoyned to) two **Round towers Battelled**. And such a beareing belongs to *Koburger* of *Brunswick*. *viz*: O. on a fesse G. such a Wall and Towers A.

A. the wall plaine, or a **wall** with one **Battlement** over the Gate, conjoyned to 2 towers G. by *Welhausen*.

a Plain wall cornished betw: 2 towers B. is the crest of *Van Warburge*. a plain wall, is without **Masoning**.

The second thing is the **Hook**, which may be termed the **Forked hook**, this is used to take Bullets out of the flesh, and such as stick in the bons of those as have received any small shott from Musket or Pistel.

The third is a **Crooked Pen-knife**, which is used to Launce wounds, and cut out dead flesh, and for many other uses besides; it is set in a **Foulding** or **Turning haft**, after the maner of a **Rasor**.

*

Houses and Towers.

FROM the Chyrurgions Instruments it is not necessary I should now wander a little astray, to give you some other examples of **Building**, which I have since the engraving of the Plate for the Twelfth chapter, found out amongst the beareings of some ancient coats. Which I desire may be added to them in their places mentioned in *Chapters* 12. & 13.

CLXXXIII. He beareth Argent, a **Tomb stone** Gules. Three such is born by the name of *Albon* or *Albin*. Such a beareing I find in the coat belonging to the *Bishoprick of Chichester*, *viz*. Saphire, a Priest sitting on such a Tomb stone, a Mound in his right hand, his left extended, Topaz: with a Sword in his mouth, proper.

This was the ancient maner of laying a Tomb stone over the bodys of deceased friends, whereof many are extent to this day; others, tyme and malignant persons, have devoured and destroyed.

In the chief of this quarter is placed an Instrument of the **Chyrurgions**, called a **Chorar pipe**, and its **Stile**; the stile when used is to be put into the Pipe, and so thrust up the Yard to ease such who are troubled with the Stone in the blader.

CLXXXIV. He beareth Argent, on a **Hexagon Mount**, or **Bull work**, vert: a **Tower Towered**, Gules, born by the name of *Hiltore*, or *Hiltore*, as I find in an old Book of Armes. B the like in Base. A. having an Escochion on the Hill, per fesse: B. and O. a Spurr rowel of six points. A. is the Town Arms of *Stavesenburg* in *Germany*.

CLXXXV. He bareth Sable, a **square Tent**, the **Curtains** for the entrance, **doubled** or **turned up**, Argent; is the Coat and Crest of *Van Hutte zu Hessfach* in *Bavaria*; by the name, it should seem the *Dutch* and *Germans*, term this an **Hut**.

In the Sinister side of this quarter, is a **Tower** with **Battlements** and a **Roof** with a **Ball**, or **Globe** on the top. and a **Pile** at the **Foundation**. Such a Tower Gules (Impaled with Or, a bend Gules) in a field Or. is the coat Armour of the city or States of *Enkhuysen* in one of the united Provinces.

In the chief of this square is placed a **Cataract needle** and it **Case**, this is a sharpe Needle with a Screw towards the head of it to keep it fast in the Case. it is used to draw up the Cataract off the sight of the eye while it is cuting away.

CLXXXVI. He beareth Argent, the **Fore-front** of a **Steeple**, with the out lets of the **Roof** of the Church and **Wall** to the sight of the eye, Gules; **covered** Azure. This is born by the name of *Van der*

Wenge

Wenge, of *Westphalia*. This is also termed the **West End** (or side) of a **Steeple** and **Church**; for no more can be seen of a Church, when you stand to look at it, before the **Steeple Down**. This I have seen Blazoned also, a **square House**, with a **shouring** on each side.

CLXXXVII. He beareth Gules, a **Turret in a Turret**, Argent. This is born by the name of *Van Hartheim* of *Francovia*. This is also termed a **Tower** in (or on) the **top of a Tower**; and a **Tower** in a **Turret**, for a Turret is the proper term for the top Battlements, or walk about a Tower.

The second example of Bearing of Towers in this square, is thus Blazoned; He beareth Argent, on a **Mount** Vert, a **Wall corniced**, with **two Towers upon it**, Gules. Born by the name of *Day*. Some Blazon it two **Towers** on a **Wall**, set upon a **Hill**. And others, on a **Mount**, a **Breast Wall** before two **Towers**.

G. only the Wall and Towers A. is born for the Coat and Crest of *Kossowsky*, of *Silitiars*.

O. a Wall with a Battlement at each end, with one Tower on it B. is born by *Rupperspeg*, in the Palatinate of *Rhine*.

O. two Towers conjoined with a Wall imbattelled, behind a Brest Wall, between three Mullets of six points in chief G. and a Mount issuing out of Base V. born by the name of *Frislberg* of *Switzerland*.

In the Dexter Base is another form of bearing Towers, which is a **plain Cornish** of a **square**, and **Fillets** on the top of an **Arch**; whereon is fixed two **Gices** or **Step**, between as many **Towers**. And such is born by the name of *Van Rumrodt zu Holzheim*, of *Alsatia*. Viz. O. an **Arch Cornished**, whereon is two **Gates**, between two **Towers**, S.

CLXXXVIII. He beareth Argent, a **Wall**, (or a **Brest wall**) with three **Arched doors** and a **water table** in it **basis**, and a **cornish** on the top; before an **Peragon**, or six square **gate house**, between two **square towers** Gules; **Roofes over ceiling** (or with Eaves) Azure. is the Arms of the Town of *Speyr* in *Germanie*. Some term it a **Wall** with 3 **windows**, a **cornered tower** or **chamber**, between 2 square **turrets** all **loover roofed**.

CLXXXIX. He beareth Or, on an **Hill** or **mount** Vert, a **Round tower**, between and advanced above two other, **turreted**; (or Imbatelled on the tops) Gules. born by the name of *Tomrhill*.

G. on an hill in base **treble headed**, 3 such towers A. is the Stats Arms of *Prag* in *Germanie*.

B. on the surface of an hill in base V. (an escochion A. charged with a Lion rampt B crowned O.) 3 **towers** A. the **Turrets roofed**, and on the top or spires **Capitals**, or round balls G. thus the Arms of *Immenhausen* a place of great account in *Germanie*.

CXC. He beareth Argent, a **Column**, or Round Pillar with its **basis**, fixed on the middle of a **triangular Pedestal**, or three square Foundation; the **Chapiter pyramid wise**, after the form of a **Pine apple**, Gules. born by the name of *Colne*. Some term it a Pillar fixt on a Triangle or three corner stone, Capital battled, the head adorned Pine apple like.

A. 3 such G. born by the name of *Eger*.

G. a Pillar mounted on **Orieres triangular wise**, A. the chapiter spired like a pine apple, O. is the Town Arms of *Luttich*. some take this for a Tower.

CXCI. He beareth per fesse Argent and Vert, on a **Bridg** of three **Arches** extended throughout the field, as many Round **Towers**, **Poveled** or Roofed, Gules; the **water transfluent** (or proceeding therefrom) divideth it selfe (or runs to the base) in three **Streams**, or chanells proper. by the name of *Towerton*. This is the Blazon I finde with this coat, yet it may be done shorter, as thus, on a Bridg in fesse of 3 Arches, as many Towers, the Streams divided there after, to the base.

G. the like A. Streams B. is the quartered coat belonging to the town Arms of *Zrickaw* in *Germanie*.

CXCII. He beareth Argent, a **Gate** or **Port in a Wall**, with a **Pedement Imbattelled** between two round **Towers**, with top **Turrets**, Gules. In chief a Chirurgions Instrument Fesswise, called a **Cataract Needle** with two points, by the name of St. *Leerade*. This Instrument is two **Silver Needles** or sharp points, set at each end of an **handle**: Its uses are to put down a Suffusion, which is the first beginning of a Cataract, and seems to be little Clouds, Moats or Flyes before the Eyes, which after grows to a thin skin over the pupil of the eye, and so hinders its sight, which by the help of this Needle is taken away. See numb. 185.

G. 3 such Handles with Needles in Pale, A. is born by *de le Lotaire*, a *French* Family.

The Town of *Ravenspurg* beareth such a Wall with a Port, sans Gates, between two Towers B. Portcullice S.

G. on a Wall Battelled, with a Port sans Gates, between 2 Towers A. a demy Woman holding of a Lawrel Garland in her right hand, the left upon her side, Habited B. is the Town Arms of *Magdeburg*.

A. a Cheveron S. between 3 Walls with Pedements Imbattelled with Towers conjoined G. born by *Van Glavburg*.

In the Sinister side of this square is another Instrument of a **Chyrurgion**, termed a **Crow-Bill**; it is a kind of **Forceps** or **Pincers**, with a sharp point like a Crows Bill, from whence it hath the name of the Surgions **Crow-Bill**; it hath a **Spring** between the **handles**, that keeps it open in the Beak; its use is for to take out Splinters and pieces of broken Bones that are in Wounds.

TO
The Worshipful
EDMUND JOYDRELL, of YARDSLEY, Esquire.
And *EDMUND* his Son and Heir.

SIR,

THough by others I am like to run the risque of Rubs and Jubs, and go under hard Censures for my Undertakings; yet I shall little care for an Army of incensed --- but resolutely stand their Legions of Pikes and Swords under your Protection; and I hope through your Fortitude to Laugh at their feeble Weapons, which can do no more hurt than Pot-guns, make a noise to no purpose. Sir I shall say no more, but shrowd my self under your favourable Aspect in the perusing of this ensuing Treatise, which is most humbly Dedicated to your serious Consideration: And I shall ever give you that due Reverence, and pay you that Devotion that becomes him who is

at your Service, whilst

Randle Holme.

CHAP. X.

1. LETTERS and Learning are the Foundation of all Arts and Sciences, neither could they Flourish, till the same were perfectly found out. The first knowledge thereof was derived unto us from the **Jewish Tongue**, which we must acknowledge to be the Original of all humane learning; And Letters were so highly valued by them, that the mistaking of a Letter in the SACRED WRIT (as they say) destroyeth the World.

The *Jews*, and also the *Phœnicians*, and the most Eastern Parts, do Write from the left to the right hand; all the Western Parts of the World, do Write from the right to the left; and the reason as some give, is because the first were left-handed men; and the latter, Men that used the Right hand in all exercises.

But the *Ethiopians*, *Chinensians*, and those parts of the Globe writ down from head to foot. The *Caballists* of the Jews Trading most in numbers; and the *Massorites* in Vowels and Accent; the *Egyptians* in Hieroglyphicks; the *Greeks* in Letters; and the *Europians* in Arms and Ensigns of Honour; the first Letters being those tha God writ with his own hand.

Pliny thinks that Letters were always with the *Assyrians*, yet believes they were invented in *Egypt* by *Mercury*. *Athanasius* thinks that the *Phœnicians* were the first Inventers thereof. And *Pliny* concludes that *Cadmus* first brought them into *Greece*. *Josephus* is of the mind that Letters were before the Flood.

1. Is the **Roman Alphabet**; which Letters are of great use in all the Western parts of the World, and were dispersed abroad by them dureing the Government, and Rule of the *Roman Monarchie*. Now as to our purpose, I shall set down each perticular **Letter** which are born, or used in coats of Arms. Secondly, what each **Letter signifieth** as to Names, or Words, or Numbers in Antiquity. And lastly give some notes of **Brevications** of words with their explanation: For it was the *Romans* way to use great Letters for proper names, for names of Arts, for places of Office and Dignity; and for whose

1 The Roman Capitall Alphabet.

A B C D E F G H I K L M N O P Q R S T
V W X Y Z & ⸗ ℞ IHS XPS

2 the Saxon Alphabet Or Ancient English.

A A B B C C D D E E F F G G H H I I
K K L L M M N N O O P P Q Q R R
S S T T U U W W X X Y Y Z Z Æ Æ Ð Ð Þ Þ

3 The German or text Alphabet.

A B C D E F G H I K L M N
O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z

4 The Greeke Alphabet.

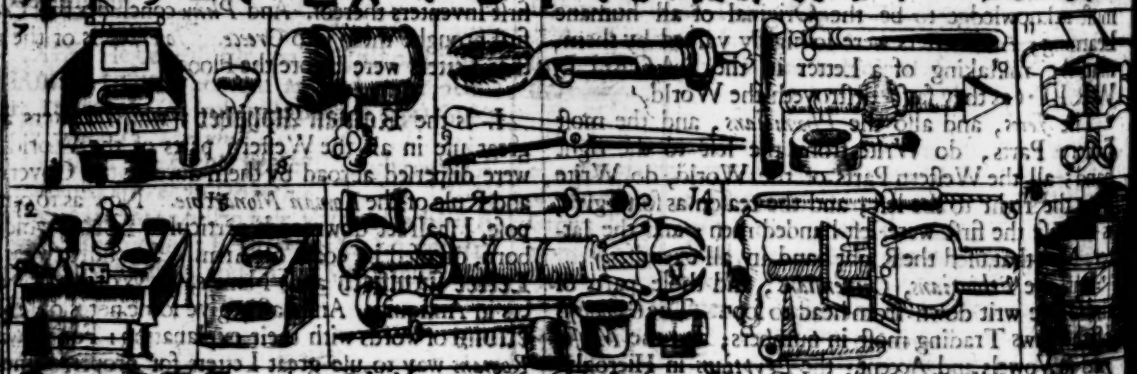
Αα Ββ Γγ Δδ Εε Ζζ Ηη Θθ Ιι Κκ Λλ Μμ
Νν Ξξ Οο Ππ Ρρ Σς Ττ Υυ Φφ Χχ Ψψ Ωω

5 The Hebrew Alphabet.

א ב ג ד ה ו ז ח ט י כ ל מ נ
ס ע פ צ ק ר ש ת

6 Ancient British Alphabet.

A A B B C C D D E E F F G G H H I I L L M M N N H H O O P P
R R S S T T U U V V Y Y W W X X Y Y Z Z



Domum Rite Formosa Cum A Gestu Conforta Cum Ingenio Nitida

whole Sentences, which Rules we after their Copy followed, as will be manifested.

A IT is the first Letter of the *Roman* Alphabet, amongst them it was the Letter of Absolution and Salutation; and the *Germans* bore it in their Arms, as Gules the Letter A. on a Fess Argent; born by the name of *Althann*.

G. on a Fess A. the word AVE. born by the name of *Nadler*. Here I do not mention the colour of the Letters, for they are ever Black, except they be in a coloured Field.

The Signification of A. in Notes of Antiquity.

A. signifies *Augustus. Aulus. Assolet. Annus. Absolvo. Absolutio. Agit. Aiunt. Aliquando. Aut*, &c.
A. C. *Augustus Cæsar. Alius Civis. Acta Causa.*
A.A. *Augusti. Augusta. Augustalis. Apud Agrum. Ante Audita. Æs Alienum.*
AMS. *Amicus.*
ANN. *Anni. Annorum. Anniles.*
AMM. *Amantissimus.*
A. T. *Authoritas Tua.*
ATR. *Autor.*
ACO. *Acculatio.*
AM. NT. *Amicus Noster.*
AMN. *Anima.*
AP. *Apud.* AP. N. *Apud Nos.*
ANT. *Ante. Antea.*
AVC. *Authoritas. Author.*
A.S. *A Suis.*
AT. *Aut.* A. TE. *A Tergo.*
ATQ. *Atque.*
A. A. A. *Æs Argentum Aurum*, for *Tres Augusti.*
A. AV. *Alter Ambove.*
AL. *Alius.* A. L. *Alia Lex. Ad Locum.*
ÆDIL. *Ædilis.*
ÆDIL. PL. *Ædilis Plebis.*
ÆQ. P. *Æqualis Persona.*
ÆR. COL. *Ære Collato.*
ÆR. P. *Ære Publico.*
Æ. D. *Ædem Dedicavit.*
ÆDIL. CVR. *Ædilis Curulis.*
ÆG. *Æger.*
AB. *Abnepos. Alia Bona.*
AD. *Adnepos. Adest. Adjutor.*
A. D. *Anno Domini. Ante Diem.*
ABS. *Absolutus.*
AB. V. C. *Ab Urbe Condita.*
AF. *Affectus.* A. E. *Also Facto. Ante Factum.*
AG. *Agrippa. Ager. Agrei. Agit.*
AC. *Actio. Actor.* AGB. *Actionibus.*
ADQSR. *Adquestorem.*
A. C. *Alius Civis.* AGM. *Actionem.*
ACC. *Acceptat. Acceperat.*
AC. D. N. *Action Domini Nostri.*
A. COSS. *A Consulibus.*
A. CL. *A Consiliis Civitatis.*
A. T. M. D. O. *Aio Te Mihi Dare Oportere.*

A. TP. *Annuo Tempore.*
ÆD. *Ædes.* AFR. *Africa.*
A. I. *A Judice.* A. M. *Anno Mundi.*
AM. *Amicus. Amabilis.* AN. N. *Ante Noctem.*
AN. *Ante. Annis. Anniles.*
A. P. R. C. *Anno Post Romam Conditam.*
ARM. P. *Arma Publica.* ARM. E. *Arma Ejus.*
ARC. *Arca.* A. S. T. *A Supra Tecto.*
A. S. L. *A Suo Lege.* AVG. *Augustus.*
A. V. *Amplitudo Vestra.* A. X. *Annis Decem.*
A. G. *Aulius Gellius.* A. H. *Alius Homo.*
AO. *Auro.* A. O. *Alij Omnes.*
AP. *Apud.* AR. *Ac. Ad.*
AVC. AVT. or AVTS. *Author. Authoritas.*

B Is *Proxima Prima*, the next Letter to the first, so that a private person may be next his Prince, as *Iosbua* to *Moses*, and *Haman* to *Ahasuerus*. Yet the lesser sort of this letter hath diverse varietions to shew that HONOVR is not alway in one stay; in which respect b d p q being the same, removed are not the same.

This letter B being placed on a Silver Cross, in a field Azure, is a signe of the *Beatitudes*.

B. *Brutus. Balbus. Bonus. Bene. Beatus.*
B. A. *Bonam Actionem. Bonis Auspiciis. Bonis Avibus. Bonis Amabilis. Bonis Auguriis.*
B. C. *Bonorum Concessum.*
B. E. *Bonorum Emptor Bona ejus*, or *eorum.*
B. F. *Bene ficium. Bonum factum. Bona fide, famina, fortuna*, or *filia.* B. FR. *Bona fortuna.*
B. G. or B. GR. *Bona Gratia.*
B. H. *Bonus homo. Bonorum hæres. Bona hereditas*, or *hereditaria.*
B. I. *Bonum Iudicium.* B. L. *Bona Lex.*
B. LB. *Bonorum Liberi.*
B. M. *Bona memoria. Bona materia. Bene merentis. &c.*
B. MN. *Bona Munera.* B. M. F. *Bene merita fecit*
B. M. P. *Bene merenti posuit.*
BN. *Bona. Bene.* B. N. *Bona Nostra.*
B. O. *Bene Optime.*
B. P. *Bonum Publicum. Bona Paterna. Bona possessio. Bonorum Possessor. Bonorum Potestas.*
BR. *Bonorum.* B. R. *Bonorum Rector*
BR. SI. *Bonorum Servi.*
B. RP. N. *Bono Reipublicæ Natus*
BRT. *Brittania. Brittanicus.*
B. S. *Bene Satisfecit.* B. T. *Bonorum Tutor.*
B. V. *Bene Vixit. Bonus Vir. Bonorum Venditor. Bona Vestra.*

C It is a Numeral Letter, and stands for an Hundred; and among the *Romans* was the Letter of Condemnation.

C. signifies *Condemnatio. Cajus. Causa. Comitia. Centum.*
CA. AM. *Causa Amabilis.*
CCC. T. P. *Tot Centum Trere Pedes*
C. M. *Cæsarea Majestas.* CEL. *Celeres.*
CEN. PP. *Censor Perpetuus.*
CEN. A. *Censoris Arbitrium.*
CENT. *Centuria Centuria*

CENTV. *Centuriones.* C. F. *Caij Filius.*
C. H. *Custos Hæredum.*
CM. *Comis.* C. M. *Centum Millia. Civis Malus. Causa Mortis. Clarissima Memoria.*
CIC. *Cicero.* C. I. C. *Cajus Julius Cæsar.*
CIP. *Cippus.* That is the end of a matter, after which follows Punishment.
C. IV. *Causa Justa.* CIV. *Civis. Civitas.*
CL. *Claudius. Clarissimus.*
CL. V. *Clarissimi Viri.* CL. F. *Clarissima Filia.*
CN. *Cneius.* C. N. *C. Neveus. Cajus Noster. Civis Noster*, or *Cæsar Noster.*
CO. *Conjux. Conjungi controversa.* C. O. *Civitas Omnis.*
CON. *Consularis.*
CON. SEN. OR. PQ. R. *Consensu Senatus Equestis Ordinis Populique Romani.*
COL. or CL. *Colonia. Coloni.* COH. *Cohors.*
COS. COSS. *Consul. Consules.*
CONS. *Consiliarius.* COS. QVAR. *Consul Quarto.*
COS. DES. *Consul Designatus.*
C. R. *Civis Romanus.*
CR. *Creticus. Crispus. Contractum.*
C. R. C. *Cujus Rei Causa.*
CS. *Cippus. Consularius. Consiliarius. Communis. Causas. Cæsar.* CSI. *Controversia.*
C. S. S. *Cum Suis Servis.* STR. *Citra. Caterum.*
CTR. M. *Citra Mirum.*
CTO. *Contrarium. Contractum.*
CT. *Civitas. Caput.* C. T. *Certo Tempore.*
CTR. *Cæterum.* CT. R. *Civitas Romana.*
C. V. *Centum Virum. Celsitudo Vestra. Clarissimus Vir. Causa Virginum.* CIV. *Cujus.*
CIV. *Civitas.* C. S. *Cives Servatus.*
C. S. L. *Comes Sacrarum Largitionum.*

D IS the fourth Letter in the Roman Alphabet, it is a Numerall, and stands for five hundred: And is oft born in coats of Arms.

S. on a fesse A. a Roman D is born by the name of *Schermeir* a *Nether-land* familey.

D. signifieth *De. Decius. Doctor. Dominus. Divus. Diebus. Devotus. Diutius. &c.*
DD. *Dedicat. dedicavit.* D. D. *Dominus Deus. Doctor Divinitas. Dono Dedit.* D. A. *Divus Augustus.*
D. AVG. *Divo* or *Deo Augusto*
D. Æ. *De Æraria* D. B. M. *Do bene merentibus.*
D. B. I. *Diis bene Iuvantibus.*
DDD. *Dedicaverunt.* D. D. D. *Dat Dicat Dedicat.*
D D. D. D. *Dignum Deo Domum Dedit.*
DE. *Decurro. Decius* DICT. *Dictator.*
DIG. M. *Dignus memoria* or *more.*
DIL. *Dilectus. Dilectissimus.*
D. N. *Dominus Noster.* DN. or DNS. *Dominus.*
D. M. A. *Deo Magno Æterno.*
D. O. *Deo Optimo. Diis Omnibus.*
D. O. M. *Deo Optimo Maximo.*
D. P. *Divus Pius. Diis Penatibus. Votum Pelit. Devota Persona. Decretum Principis.*
D. PEC R. *De Pecuniis Repetundis.*
D. P. ORT. *De Parte Orientis.* DQ. *Denique.*
D. Q. R. *De Qua Re.* D. Q. *De Quo.*
D. Q. S. *Die Quo Supra.* DR. *Drusus.*
DR. P. *Dare Promittat.*
D. RS. *De Regibus.* D. RM. *De Romanis.*
D. RP. *De Republica.* DS. *Deus.*
D. S S. P. *De Sapientia sua Perficit.*
DT. *Duntaxit. Durat. Dicit. Duxit.*
D. T. G. Q. S. *De tuo genio quod Sentis.*
D. V. *Devotus Vir. Diis Volentibus. Dies Quintus.*
DV. or DVS. *Devotus.*
DVL. DOL. or DVLC. *Dulcissimus.*

E THE fift Letter in the Roman Alphabet, and is of like shape to the *Greek* Epsilon, the fift letter in their Language. That it is used in Arms I have shewed before in the letter A also I finde that G. on a cheveron A. betw. 3 trefoiles O. 3 Roman E's. is born by *Elfoils.*

E. *Est. Ejus. Ens.* EE. *Esse. Ex edicto.*
E. B. *Ejus Bona.* E. AE. *Ejus Ætas.*
E. C. *E Comitio. E Capitolio.*
E. D. *Ejus Domus.* or *Dominus.* E. F. *Ejus Filius.*
E. H. *Ejus Hæres. Ex Hæredibus.* or *Hæreditate.*
EIM. or EIMO. *Ejusmodi* E. L. *Edita Lex.*
EM. *Ejusdem. Ejusmodi.* E. M. *Ex More.*
E. N, *Etiam Nunc. Est Noster. Et Non.*
EOR. *Eorum.* E. P. *Edendum Parce. E Publico.*
EP. M. *Epitaphium.* E. P. M. *Epistolam misit.*
EP. *Epistola. Epulatio.* EPS. *Episcopus.*
EQ. *Eques. Equestris.* EQ. P. *Eques Publicus.*
EQ. R. *Eques Romanus.*
ER. *Erit. Ernnt.* E. R. *Ea Res.*
E. S. *E Senatu.* E. T. *Excellentia Tua.*
ET. *Etiam.* ET. NC. *Etiam Nunc.*
EV. *Ejus.* EX. *Ejus. Exigitur. Exactus.*
EX. B. *Ejus Bona.*
EXC. or EX. C. *Ex Consuetudine. Ex Concione. Ex Conditione.*

F IS the sixth Letter in the Alphabet, it is a diminitive of the E having the foundation Stroke taken away, and is like a person of Worth yet is Eclipsed in a part of his ancient Inheritance.

A. a rose betw: 3 Roman F's is born by *Flatur.*
B. on a fesse A. an F is the coat of *Effbeim.*

F. signifieth *Filius. Flavius. Fœlix. familia. fides. fit. fuit. fecit feria. fur. Festa. figura. &c.*
FA. *Filia.* FD. *fides.* FD. M. *fides munda.*
FC. or F. C. *Fidei Commissum. fiduciæ causa. fidei causa. fraude creditoris. faciendum curavit.*
F. being thus inverted was anciently written for V.
F. E. *Filius ejus. factum est. fundaverunt. fortem. fame.*
FEA. *Fœmina.* FEB. *Februarius.* (bis.
F. F. *Fratris filius.* F. FA. *filius familias.*
F. I. *Fieri Iussit.* FI. B. *Fide Bona.*
FID. *Fides.* FID. D. *Fide Dignus.*
FID. SER. *Fidelis Servus.* FL. *Flavius. flumen.*
F. M. *Fieri Mandavit. factum memoratum.* (filius.
F. M. I. *Fati munus Implevit*
FN. *Fines.* F. N. *Fides nostra.*
F. N. C. *Fidei nostræ Commissum.*
FO. *Forum.* FOR. *Fortuna. forat. forte. fortis.*
FR. *Frater. fronte ferum.* F. R.

F.R. *Forum Romanum. Finium Regundorum.*
F.V.C. *Fraudis Ve Causa.*
FVNC. *Functus.* FV. *Fraudisve.*

G is the seventh Letter in the Alphabet: It hath a various Sound according to the word it is in.

G. a Roman G. Argent, born by the State of *Gotting* and the State of *Glogau* in *Germany*.

G. *Gaudium. Gratia. Gens. Genius. Gellius. Garus. Gajus.* GENS. *Gentes.*
G.F. *Gula Filiorum.* GG. or GS. *Gesserunt.*
GEN. CORN. *Gente Corneliorum.*
GER. *Germanicus.* GL. *Gloria. Gallus.*
GL. P. *Gloria Parentum. Gloria Patriæ. Gloria Populi.*
G.M. *Gens Mala.* GN. *Gens. Genus.*
G.I.E.D. *Gloria in Excelsis Deo.*
GL.P.R. *Gloria Populi Romani.*
G.P. *Gula Parentum.* GOTH. *Gothicos.*
G.T. *Gravitas Tua.* GT. *Gentes. Gentem.*
G.R. *Genus Regium. Genus Rerum.*
GR. *Gerit. Gerens. Gratia. Gratis.*
GR.D. *Gratia Dedit. Gratis Datum.*
GR.E. *Gratia Ejus.* G.S. *Genio Sacro.*
GS. *Gesserunt. Gravitas. Genus.*
GV. *Genius.* G.V. *Gravis Valerius.*
GX. *Grex.*

H the eighth Letter in the Alphabet; it hath little Sound in any word, being only an Aspiration, yet so significant as the *Hebrews* say, that if it had not been added to *Abram*, he had remained fruitless: So also if *Eva* had not been called *Evah*, she had not been the Mother of the Living.

H. signifies *Hic. Hæc. Hoc. Hujus*, &c. *Honestas. Heredes. Homo. Hora. Honor. Hadrianus. Habet.* &c.
H.D. *Hic Dedicavit.* HC.V. *Huic Vitæ.*
H.D.D. *Hoc Dono Datur.*
HC.AM.N. *Hunc Amicum Nostrum.*
HC.L. *Hunc Locum.* HER. *Heredes.*
H.F. *Hic Fundavit. Honesta Femina. Honesta Fortuna.*
H.I. *Hereditatis Jure. Hercle Juravit. Hic Invenie.*
H.L. *Honesto Loco. Hic Locus.*
HIC.LOC.HER.NON.SEQ. *Hic Locus Heredes Non Sequitur.*
HL.N. *Honesto Loco Natus.*
H.M. *Honesta Mulier. Hora Mala. Hora Mortis.*
H.M.D.A. *Hoc Mandavit Dari Augustus.*
H.M.P. *Hoc Monumentum Posuit. Hic Memoriæ posuit.*
H.M.S.M. *Hic Mater Sua Mortua. Hora Mala Sumpsit Moram.*
HO. *Homo. Honestas.* HO.N. *Homo Honestus.*
HOM. *Homo.* H.HON. *Homo Honestus.*
HOR. *Hora.*
H.P. *Honesta Persona. Honestus Puer. Hora Pessima. Hic Posuit. Hæreditatis Possessio.*
H.R.I.P. *Hic Requiescit in Pace.*
HR. *Hæres.* H.R. *Honesta ratio.*
HS. in the numbring of Money stands for ten hundred thousand *Sestertius.*
HS. *Hic* or *Hæc Sit. Hoc Satis. Hora Sacra. Hercules Sacrum.*

H.S.E. *Hic Situs* or *Sepultus Est.*
H.S.F. *Hoc Sacellum Fecit.*
H.S.V.F.M. *Hoc Sibi Vivens Fieri Mandavit.*
HV. *Hujus.* H.V. *Honesta Vita.*
H.V.B.P. *Herus Verus Bonorum Professor.*
H.V.H.P. *Hæres Verus Honorum Possessor.*

I is the ninth Letter in the Alphabet, and is a Numeral standing for the number One, to which if you add nothing, *viz.* a Cypher or more, it signifieth ten times as much as it is in it self.

I. *In. Inter. Intra. Julius. Junius.*
I.C. *Juris Consulti. Julius Cæsar.*
IA. *Jam.* IAD. *Jamdudum.*
I.B. *In Brevi.* I.C. *Juris Consultus.*
I.C.E.V. *Justa Causa Esse Videtur*
ID. *Index. Idus. Idem.*
I.D. *Inferis Dijs. In Dimidio. Juris Dicendi.*
I.F. *Julii Filius. In Foro. Inter Fuit.*
IFT. *Interfuerunt.* I.G. *In Agro.*
IG. *Igitur.* IHS. *Jesus Hominum Salvator.*
I.H. *In Honestatem. Justus Homo.*
I.J. *In Jure. Jus Jurandum. Juste Judicavit.*
I.I. *Inibi.* J.J.J. *Justas Judicavit. Judicia.*
IL. *Illustris.*
I.L. *In Loco. Jure Legis. Justa Lex.*
IM. *Jam. Hymnus.*
I.N.R.I. *Jesus Nazarea Rex Judearum.*
IN. *Intercisus.* I.N.EE. *Justum non esse.*
INT. *Initio.* IN B.M. *In Bona Memoria.*
I.O.M. *Jovi Optimo Maximo.*
I.V. *Justus Vir.* the number *Quatuor.*
IVC. *Judicium.* IVRD. *Jurisdictio.*
I.P. *In Publico. In possessione. Intra Provinciam. Iusta Persona. Iustus Possessor. Ius Prætoris.* or *Pontificium.*
I.S. *In Senatu. Iudicium Solvi.* or *Solius.* or *Senatus.*
I.S.C. *In Senatu Consulto. Iudex Sacrarum Cognitionum.*
I.S.S. *Infra Scripta sunt.*
IT. *Intra.* I.T. *Intra Tempus. Iure Testamenti.*

K IS the tenth Letter in the Alphabet and hath a place also among the Shields of the NOBLES, as well as in the Calender.

B. 3 Roman K's A. is born by the name of *Kocks.*

G. on the breast of an Eagle displaid with 2 heads, S. an escochion B. charged with a Roman K. is the coat of the Towne of *Kempten* in the States of *Holland.*

K. signifieth *Calendæ. Caput. Cardo. Castra. Cælius. Carissima.* KAR. *Carthago.*
K.AVG. *Calendas Augusti.*
KDD. or K.DD. *Castra Dedicavit.*
K.FEB. *Calendas februarii.*
KL. *Calendæ. Calendis.*
KL.SEP. *Calendis Septembris.* KL.OCT. *Calendis Octobris.* and so of the other mounths.
KM. *Carissimus.* K.MR. *Cara Memoria.*
KO. *Carolo.* KP. or K.P. *Carolo Positus.*
KQ. or K.Q. *Calendas Quintilis.*
KR.AM.N. *Carus Amicus Noster.*
KRM. *Carmen.* KRN. *Carus Rex noster.*
KS. or K.S. *Calendæ Sextilis.*

L THE eleventh Letter in the Alphabet, it is a Numeral, and stands for Fifty. It was born in the Ensigns of the *Lacedemonians*, as saith my Author; but I rather take it to be the Greek Letter *L* or *Lambda*, which answers the Roman V. reversed thus. Λ

L. *Quinquaginta. Lucius. Lælius. Libens. Libertas. Locus. Lex. Lector.*
L.A. *Lex Alia.* L.AN. *Quinquaginta Annis.*
L.D. *Laudandum.* L.D.D. *Locum Diis Dicavit.*
L.DIV. *Locus Divinus.*
LEG. E. D. *Lege Ejus Damnatus.*
LEG. XXV. V. *Legio Vicessima Victrix.*
LEG. *Legio.* L. F. *Lucius Filius.*
LG. F. S. *Legem Fecit Suam.*
LG. *Legavit. Leges. Legio.*
L.H. *Locum Hunc. Locus Hæredum.*
L.I. *Lex Julia.*
L.I.D.A.C. *Lex Julia De Adulteriis Cœrcendis.*
LITR. *Litera.* L.J.I. *Locus In Jure. Locus Monumenti*, or *Mortuorum.*
L.M.D. *Locus Mortuis Dedicatus. Locus Manibus Dicatus.*
L.M.E. *Lex Mecum est.*
L.M. *Libens Merito.*
L.M.D.C.Q. *Lubens Merito Dicat Consecratque.*
L.N. *Latini Nominis.* LOC. *Locus.*
L.L. *Lingua Latina. Lælius. Lucius. Libertus.*
LLS. *Duas Libras Æris.*
LONG. P. VII. LAT. P. III. *Longum Pedes Septem. Latum Pedes Tres.*
L.P. *Latini Patres.* L.R.I. *Lex Regia Justa.*
L.S. *Laribus Sacrum. Locus Sacer.*
L.P. *Locus Proprius. Locus Publicus. Locus Privatus. Latini Prisci. Lege Punitus.*
LVD. SEC. *Ludi Seculares.*
LVD. AP. *Ludi Apollinares.*
L.V. *Lex Vetus. Quinquaginta quinque.*
L.VAL. *Lucius Valerius.*
LX. *Sexaginta.*

M the middle Letter of the Alphabet, and a Numeral Letter standing for a Thousand. Argent on a Gross Azure, a *Roman* M, crowned Or. Born by *Symon* of *Sudbury*, the 58 Bishop of *Canterbury*. It is said that the *Messonians*, a Warlike People, did bear in their Ensigns, the Letter M, or *Greek My*.

M. signifies *Mille. Marcus. Martius. Monumentum. Merito. Mihi. Mulier. Miles. Meum. Meam. Mutius. Molestus. Mors. Modo. Munus.*
MAG. EQ. *Magister Equitum.*
MAG. MIL. *Magister Militum.*
MB. *Mulier Bona.*
M.D.O. *Mihi Dare Oportet.*
M.E.M. *Manceps Ejus Mancipii.*
MENS. *Menses.* MENS. IAN. *Mensis Januarii.*
MER. S. *Mercurii Sacrum.*
MA.F. *Manifestum Fecit.*
MAF. *Manifestum.* M.H. *Malus Homo.*
M.F. *Marci Filius. Mala Fide.*
M.H.E. *Mihi Hæres Erit.*
MES. *Menses. Mensibus.* MMN. *Matrimonium.*
MMT. *Monumentum.* M.I. *Maximo Jovi.*
ML. *Miles. Maleficus.* MLT. *Milites.*
MM. *Militem.*
MN. *Meo Nomine. Mille Nummorum.*
MNF. *Manifestus.* MNF.L. *Manifestus Locus.*
MO. *Modo. Modii. Mors.*
M.R. *Miles Romanus.*
MS. *Manuscriptum. Menses. Mensibus. Molestus.*
M.P. *Male Positu. Marcus Pacuvius. Maximus Princeps. Mille Passus. Male Posuit*, or *Positus.*
M.P.D. *Majorem Partem Dici.*
MSI. *Manuscripti.* M.S. *Memoriæ Sacrum.*
M.S.P. *Memoriæ Suæ Posuit.*
M.T. *Mortis Tempore.*
M.T.C. *Marcus Tullius Cicero.*
MV. *Mutius. Mulier.*
M.VI. *Mensibus Sex.*
MVL.B. *Mulier Bona.*
MVL.M. *Mulier Mala.*
MVL.P. *Mulier Pessima.*

N THE middle Letter of the declining part of the Alphabet. It being Transposed, will convert it self into a Z; but in *Germany* it is born in its own situation; the Field being parted Per Fess Gules and Argent, in chief the Roman Letter N. of the first. Born by the name of *Kladrubsker*.

G. 3 Annulets Bottoned round O. in the first an N and second an S. over all an Escochion of Pretence quarterly S. and A. is the Town Arms of *Nevenstat an der Aysch* in the *Netherlands*.

N. signifies *Num. Nec. Non. Nomen. Nepos. Nonius. Noster. Nostri. Nostrum. Numerator. Nota. Numisma. Numerum*, &c.
NO. *Nobis. Nostrum.* NBL. *Nobilis.*
N.L. *Non Liquet. Non Licet. Nominis Latini. Non Longe.* NEG. *Negotiator.*
NEP. *Nepos.* NVS.E.P. *Natus Est Puer.*
N.F.C. *Nostræ Fidei Commissum.*
N.F.N. *Nobili Familia Natus.*
N.H. *Notus Homo.*
N.C.C. *Non Calumniæ Causa.*
NOBB. *Nobilibus.*
NOB. G. *Nobilis Generatus. Nobilis Genere.*
NOB. F.N. *Nobilis Familia Natus.*
NON. *Nonarum.*
NON. APR. *Nonis Aprili.*
NON. DEC. *Nonis Decembri*; and so of the other Months. NOR. *Nostrorum.*
N.P. *Nihil Potest. Non Potest.*
NQ. *Nusquam. Neque. Namque. Nunquam.*
NR. *Noster.* N.S.E. *Non Sic Est.*
N.T. *Nominatus. Novum Testamentum. Nostri Temporis.*
N.V. *Non Vis. Non Vocat. Non Valet.*
NV. or NVP. *Nuptiæ.*

O THE first after the middle, and the fourteenth in the order of the Alphabet: It is a Letter of great signification. For in Arithmetick it stands for a Cypher; In Geometry for a Circle; In Astronomy for the Sun; And in Herauldry for an Annulet. To the first you may add what you please, in the second there is perfect

ction; The third is a Symbole; And in the fourth it is an Honor both to Princes and Nobles, Knights and Esquiers. And that it is frequently used in coats Armour, I have formerly shewed *chap. 2 numb.* 44. to 50.

O. *Omnia. Ob.* OB. *Obriacum. Orbem. Obiter.*
OB. M.E. *Ob merita ejus.* (*obiit.*
O.BO. *Omnia Bona.*
OB.ME.P.E.C. *Ob merita Pietatis et Concordiæ.*
OD. *Ordo.* O. D. M. *Opera Domus munus.*
O.E.R. *Ob Eam Rem.*
O.H.S.S. *Ossa hinc Sita sunt.*
O.L. *Operas Locavit.*
OM.V.F. *Omnibus Vivis Facit.*
OM. *Omnium.* O. M. *Optimus Maximus.*
OMA. *Omnia.* OMIS. *Omnibus.*
ON. *Omnino.* ONA. *Omnia.*
ONT.IMP. *Ornimentum Imperiale.*
OO. *Oportuit. Oportebit. Omnino.*
O.O. *Omnes* or *Omnia omnium. Ornamentum omnia.*
O.O.TS. *Ornamentis omnibus tetxus.*
OP. *Optimus. opitur. oportere.* OPP. *Oppidum.*
OP.PRIN. *Optimo Principi.* ORD. *Ordinis.*
OR. *Ordo. ornatus. ornamentum.*
ORB.PAR. *Orbati Parentes.* OS. *Omnes.*
OR.M. *Ordo Militum.*
ORN.IMP. *Ornamentum Imperiale.*
OS.C. *Omnes Conciliant.* OT.FN. *Ostium Fenestræ.*
O.V.D. *Omni Virtuti Dedicus.*
O.V.F. *Optimo Viventi Fecit.*

P IS the fifteenth Letter in the order of the Alphabet, and answereth the forme or shape but not the sound of the *Greek* Rho.

A. on a fess O. 3 Roman P's (or 3 Greek Rho's) is the coat of the Count, or Earle of *Vohlin zur Dissen* in *Germanie.*

P. signifieth *Publius. Pius. Pupillus. posuit.*
PA. *Pax. Pace.* P.A. *Pluviæ Arcendæ.*
PAC.P.R. *Pace Populo Romano*
PAR. *Parentum.* PAT. *Patritius.*
PA.DIG. *Patritiatus Dignitas.*
P.C. *Pactum Conventum. Pecunia Constituta. Patres Conscripti. Palatinus Comes. Præfectus Castrorum.*
P.D. *Patritiatus Dignitas. Publice Dedit.*
PEC. *Pecunia. Peculium.* PP. *Pius Pater.*
PE.F. *Publice fecit.* P.H. *Positus hic.*
P.H.C. *Publicus Honor Curandus.*
PICEN. *Piceni.* PIENT. *Pientissimus.*
P.IR. *Publicus* or *Populus Irrogavit.*
P.I.R. *Populum Iure Rogavi.*
P.I. or P.IV. *Principi Juventutis.*
P.L. *Publii Libertus. Poeta Laureatus.*
P.M. *Pie Memoriæ. Princeps Militiæ. Pontifex Max-*
POM. *Pompeius* POP. *Populus.* (*imus.*
PON.M. *Pontifex Maximus.* POT. *Potestus.*
POSTH. *Posthumius. Posthumius.*
PP. *Papa.* P.P. *Pater Patriæ.*
PQ. *Postquam.* P.R. *Populus Romanus.*
PR. *Prætor. Prefectus. Prætorium.*
PRÆ.VRB. *Præfectus Vrbis.*
PRÆ.PRÆS. *Præfectus Præsidii.*
PRIN.IVVEN. *Princeps Juventutis.*
PROCOL. *Procensul.* PRÆF. *Præfectus.*
PRÆ.VIGIL. *Præfectus Vigilum.*
PR.PER. *Prætor Peregrinus.*
P.R.S. *Prætores.* or *Prætoris Sententia*
PRID.NON.APR. *Pridie nonas Aprilis.*
PKID.K. or KAL. *Pridie Kalendas.* (des
PRON. *Pronepos. Pronepotis.* PRS. *Prases. Præsi-*
P.S. *Posuit Sibi. Publica Salus.* PS. *Plebiscitum.*
P.S.F. *Publice sibi fecit. Publicæ Saluti fecit.*
P.S.F.C. *Publicæ Salati faciendum curavit. Publico* or *Proprio Sumptu faciendum curavit.*
PSC. *Phebiscita* PV. *Pupilla* PVB. *Publicus.*

Q IT is a Letter of small use, and put only in stead of C. in such Words as V followeth with an other Vowell, which makes the Pronunciation easier than with C. I have not yet found it born in any Coat.

Q. signifies *Quintus. Quintius. Quæstor. Quintilius. quirites. quartus. Quartarius. quantus. quare. Quandoque. qui. que. &c.*
QV. *Quartus.* QM. or Q.M. *Quomodo.*
QAM. *Quemadmodum.* QVÆS. *Quæstor.*
Q.S.S.S. *Quæ Supra Scripta Sunt.*
Q.N.A.N. *Quandoque neque ais neque negas.*
QVIR. *Quirites.* QVR.BF. *Quare Benefactum.*
Q.E.R.E. *Quanti ea res erit.* Q.F. *Quinti filius.*
Q.B.M.V. *Quæ Bene Mecum Vixit.*
Q.L. *Quinti Libertus.*

R IS the seventeenth Letter in the Alphabet, it is a letter of Ire; much like a Dog that Snarleth but biteth not to hurt, except it be fised in the hand of a Runagado Rogue.

Quarterly Gules & Or, in the 1 & 4 a Roman R Argent, in the 2 & 3 an Olive Branch. Born by the name of *Die Reding* of *Switzerlandt.*

R. signifieth *Roma. Rabbi.* REG. *Regio.*
R.C. *Romana Civitas.* R.D. *Regis Domus.*
REI.M. *Rei Militaris.*
R.F.E.D. *Recte factum esse dicitur.*
R.F.E.V. *Recte factum esse videtur.*
RGF. or RG.F. *Regis filius* R.R. *Re Rustica.*
R.P. *Res Publica.* R.P. *Regis Professor.*
R.P.C. *Rei Publicæ Constituendæ.*

S IS the eighteenth Letter in the Alphabet, and is of great Dignity, being the Knights Ensigne in the Collar of SS. Denotting them to be Sirs, that is *Heroes*, or Great Lords, and Men of Renown.

B. a Roman S. triparted Sable, Argent and Gules. By the name of *Van Mesenan.*

G. the like A. born by *Seyboltage.*

S. *Sanctus. Senatus.* SEX. *Sextus.*
SC. *Sacer.* S.C. *Senatus Consultum.*
S.O. *Sine Occasione.*
S.P. *Spiritus Sanctus. Sine Pater.* SP. *Spurius.*
S.P.D. *Salutem Plurimam Dicit.*
S.P.Q.R. *Senatus Populusque Romanus.*
S.S. *Sacro Sanctus.*

S. TR. *Signati Treviris.*
S. V. L. M. *Salut Votum Lubens Merito.*

T is the 19 Letter in the Roman Alphabet, it is a mute Letter, and sounded through the Teeth. This Letter is often born in Arms, and is used for the Cross Commiss, or Cross Tau, vulgarly called Saint *Anthonies* Cross.

O. an Eagle displaid S. on her Breast an Escochion G. charged with a Roman T Argent. Born by the Town of *Tull.*

A. on a Chief V. 3 such O. Born by *Drury* of *Norfolk.* Some make it a Taw between 2 Mullets.

T. signifies *Titus. Titius. Tutillus. Tutilla. Tutor.*
TI. *Tiberius.* T.C. *Tua Clementia.*
T. VES. *Titus Vespatianus.*
T M. *Tantum. Terminus,* or *Thermæ.*
TR. P. *Tribunitia Potestate.*
TR. *Trans. Tribunus. Tribunitius.*

V IS both a Vowel and Consonant; in the latter it hath for the most part the sound of F: It is a Numeral Letter, and stands for Five.

B. the Roman V. reversed between 3 Cups covered O. by the name of *Christian,* of the *Isle of* Man.

B. the same reversed A. in Base a Mullet of 6 points O. by *Preisschurch.*

O. the like between three Crows. Born by *Hombrich* of the *Rhine.*

V. signifies *Valerius. Vitellius. Victoriati. Quinarii. Quinque. Vir. Victor. Vrit.*
VV. *Valeria Victrix.*
V. A. *Veteranus assignatum.*
VB. *Verba. Vobiscum.* V. B. *Vir bonus.*
V. C. *Vir consularis,* or *Clarus.*
V. CC. *Volaverunt consules.*
V. C. C. F. *Vale Conjux Clarissima Feliciter.*
V. D. *Vivus dedit.* V. D. A. *Vale dulcis Amice.*
V. DD. *Vivo dedicatus.* V. L. *Vir Justus,* or *Illustris.*
V. D N. U. *Vale decus Nostræ Urbis.*
V. E. *Verum etiam. Vir Egregius.*
VM. *Vestrum. Verum.*
V. M. M. *Votum Merito Minervæ.*
V. S. L. M. *Votum Solvit Lubens Merito.*

W Is two V's conjoynt.

A W. is born in base by the State of *Wildperg* in *Germany* viz. party per fesse Argent and Gules, bordered in chief Sable, and a Roman W. in base of the first.

O. an Eagle disp. with 2 heads, S. on an Escochion. B. a Roman W. born by the State of *Schwebisch-worth.*

A. an Eagle disp. S. on an Escochion, G. a Roman W. born by the Town or State of *Wangen* in *Germany.*

O. a W. is quartered by the Town of *Bresslaw.*

X The Twenty second Letter in the Alphabet, and is composed of two V's inverted, which is two fives, making the X. a numeral Letter, and to stand for Ten: With the *Romans* in their Ensignes, this was called *Crux decussata,* a Cross cut in the form of an X. which is commonly called Saint *Andrews* Cross. This Letter hath had the honor to Tipifie our blessed Lord and Saviour in a Mystical Symbole, as you shall see a little after.

A. 3 X. is born by Essexall. als Exall.

X. *Decem. Christus* XC. *Novaginta.*
XL. *Quadraginta.*
XPS. *Decussatur populum Salvare. Christus populi Salvator.*

Y The Twenty third Letter in the *Roman* Alphabet, which in part hath the resemblence of the Cross, which was always in use by the *Egyptians,* and was after the manner of an *Andrew* or *Burgundian* Cross, Signing and Anointing their Priests with this like Character.

A. on a pale, S. a Roman Y. O. by the name of *Clark.*

Z The Twenty fourth and last Letter in the Alphabet.

G. a Roman Z. Argent, by the name of *Soterne.*
S. the like, A. born by *De Komantzky* of *Silicia.*

From single Letters, we come now to double Symbolical Characters, such as in one letter express and signifie to us a whole word, and sometimes a Sentence as these Examples following.

&. this is the Roman Character for the word et, or and, and is much in use in all parts where the Roman letters are in use, let the Language be what it will; either *English, French, Spanish,* or *Italian,* &c. In all petty Schools it is taught little Children to pronounce it (A per C and) or S per C and.

A. a Cheveron, S. betw. 3 Roman &. by the name of *Last.*

G. a Roman &. Argent, by the name of *And.*

Or, ☧ a P and X conjoyned, Sable, by the name of *Darware*: Some term this an X surmounted of the foot, or lower part of the P. others the Sybolical Character, PX. in one; signifieing thereby Christ and his People, which are made one, according to his own words, *I am in you, and you in me; for Christ, and the People of his Catholick Church are but one body, John* 14. 20. *Eph.* 5. 30. Some term this the Symbolical Characters of Christs name, being the two first letters thereof conjoyned; but I rather take it to be *Christus & Populi,* Christ and his Church in one Body as aforesaid.

℞ Gules on a chief Argent, two Roman R's endorsed and conjoyned, by the name of *Ruall*; this is another Symbole of Christs regality, where (as it were) in one Character, is expressed the words REX REGVM, King of Kings, and Lord of Lords; as having a Supremicy over all Earthly potentates, for by him alone all Kings Raign; he raised them up, and put them down according to his own will.

G. the like A. born by *Die Langen-Mantel,* in *Saxony.*

IHS. and XPS. I have explained in the noted letters of Antiquity, which I have also seen born in Arms, as it is mentioned formerly, *Lib.* 2. *Cap.* 1. *Numb.* 2, 7.

Besides

Besides particular Letters born in Coats, you shall often find Arms having Words and Sentences contained in them as parts or branches thereof.

The City of *Oxford* beareth Azure, a Book open, proper; with seven Seals between three Crowns Or; on the Leaves is written these two words. SAPIENTIA FÆLICITAS.

Emanuel Colledge in *Cambridge* beareth Argent, a Lion Rampant Azure, holding in his Paw a Triumphal Crown of Lawrel, and an Escrole proceeding from his Mouth, and turned over his Head Or; with the word EMANUEL written therein.

S. on a Fess A. in Text Letters this word LIEB. O. is quartered by *Van Startzhavsen* of *Bavaria*.

On a Wreath or Torce of his Colours, a Stags Head couped with an Escrowl from his mouth Argent; having this Motto in it. LIVE TO LIVE, is the Crest of *Whitley* of *Aston*, in the County of *Flint*.

On a Torce an Armed Head, the Bever open, from whose mouth proceeds an Escrowl with this Motto in it; *A funo Duw a Deruydd*; which is the Crest of *Edwards* of *Chirke*, in *Denbighshire*.

Having now done with the *Roman* Letters, whereof they framed words to interpret their minds each to other: I shall now shew you how they numbred and cast up their Accounts, which way of Reckoning is not unnecessary to be known of all Historians, Antiquaries and Heralds; and their way was thus.

I. One.	XI. Eleven.
II. Two.	XII. Twelve.
III. Three.	XIII. Thirteen.
IIII. IV. Four.	XIV. XIIII. Fourteen.
V. Five.	XV. Fifteen.
VI. Six.	XVI. Sixteen.
VII. Seven.	XVII. Seventeen.
VIII. IIX. Eight.	XIIX. XVIII. Eighteen.
IX. Nine.	XIX. Nineteen.
X. Ten.	XX. Twenty.

Thus much for their smaller Numbers, where you are to note, that it was their manner, that when they set a Letter of a smaller number, before one signifying a greater number; it is to give us to understand, that there is a deduction out of its full number, even as much as the lesser number stands for; which I shall farther signifie; as for Example I before a V thus IV, shews that One is taken out of Five, so then it must be the number Four. Again in the same manner I before X thus.

IX. is one out of Ten, which makes the number Nine.

IIX. hath two taken out of Ten, which makes this number Eight.

XIX. Hath the first Letter its full number, which is Ten, but the second following being less than the next after, doth deduct so much out as it is, which is one from Ten making it Nine; so that the first Ten and this Nine, make Nineteen, the just number this stands for: And this Rule is to be observed in all Numeral Letters of what number soever, that when smaller are set before the greater, then there must be so much deducted from the greater number as the lesser signifieth, and that stands for such a Number; example hereof you will see following.

XX. Twenty.	CCC. three Hundred.
XXX. Thirty.	CCCC. four Hundred.
XL. Forty.	D. Ɔ Five Hundred. D is *Demi ium Mille.*
L. Fifty.	DC. ƆC. Six Hundred.
LX. Sixty.	DCC. Seven Hundred.
LXX. Seventy.	DCCC. Eight Hundred.
LXXX. XXC. Eighty.	CM. DCD. Nine Hundred.
XC. Ninety.	M. CƆ. $\overline{I}$ ∞ a Thousand. M signifies *Mille.*
C. LL. Hundred. C is *Centum.*	
CC. ∞. two Hundred.	

M. CƆ. $\overline{I}$ ∞. a Thousand.
MM. CICCƆ. $\overline{II}$. two Thousand.
MMM. CƆCƆCƆ. $\overline{III}$. three Thousand.
CƆƆƆ. $\overline{IIII}$. $\overline{IV}$. Four Thousand.
ƆƆ. $\overline{V}$. Five Thousand.
ƆƆCƆ. $\overline{VI}$. Six Thousand.
ƆƆCƆCƆ. $\overline{VII}$ Seven Thousand.
CƆCƆCCƆƆ. $\overline{VIII}$ Eight Thousand.
CƆCCƆƆ. $\overline{IX}$ Nine Thousand.
x
M CCƆƆ. $\overline{X}$. ƆMC. or IMI. Ten Thousand.
CCƆƆCƆ. $\overline{XI}$. Eleven thousand.
CCƆƆCƆCƆ. $\overline{XII}$. Twelve Thousand.
CCƆƆCƆCƆCƆ. $\overline{XIII}$. Thirteen thousand.
CCƆƆCƆƆƆ. $\overline{XIV}$. $\overline{XIIII}$. Fourteen thousand.
CCƆƆƆƆ. $\overline{XV}$. Fifteen thousand.
CCƆƆƆƆCƆ. $\overline{XVI}$. Sixteen thousand.
CCƆƆƆƆCƆCƆ. $\overline{XVII}$. Seventeen thousand.
CCƆƆƆƆCƆCƆCƆ. CCƆƆCƆCƆCCƆƆ. $\overline{XVIII}$. Eighteen thousand.
CCƆƆCƆCCƆƆ. $\overline{XIX}$. Nineteen thousand.
xx
M. CCƆƆCCƆƆ. $\overline{XX}$. XX$\overline{\infty}$. Twenty thousand.

CCƆƆCCƆƆ. $\overline{XX}$. XX$\overline{\infty}$ Twenty thousand. $\overline{MM}$.
CCƆƆCCƆƆCCƆƆ. $\overline{XXX}$. Thirty thousand. $\overline{MMM}$
CCƆƆƆƆƆ. $\overline{XL}$ Forty thousand. $\overline{MMMM}$.
ƆƆƆ. $\overline{L}$. L$\overline{\infty}$ Fifty thousand. $\overline{IMI}$.
ƆƆƆCCƆƆ. $\overline{LX}$. Sixty thousand. $\overline{IMIM}$.
ƆƆƆCCƆƆCCƆƆ. $\overline{LXX}$. Seventy thousand. $\overline{IMIMM}$.
ƆƆƆCCƆƆCCƆƆCCƆƆ. CCƆƆCCƆƆCCCƆƆ. $\overline{LXXX}$. Eighty thousand. $\overline{IMIMMM}$.
CCƆƆCCCƆƆ. $\overline{XC}$. Ninety thousand. LXXXX ∞.

CCCƆƆ. $\overline{C}$. $\overline{CM}$. C∞ Hundred thousand
CCCƆƆCCCƆƆ. $\overline{CC}$. Two hundred thousand.
CCCƆƆCCCƆƆCCCƆƆ. $\overline{CCC}$. Three hundred thousand.
CCCƆƆƆƆ. $\overline{CD}$. Four hundred thousand.
ƆƆƆƆ. $\overline{D}$, $\overline{ID}$ D∞ Five hundred thousand

IↃↃↃↃCCCIↃↃↃ. $\overline{DC}$. Six hundred thousand.

IↃↃↃↃCCCIↃↃↃCCCIↃↃↃ. $\overline{DCC}$. Seven hundred thousand.

IↃↃↃↃCCCIↃↃↃCCCIↃↃↃCCCIↃↃↃ. $\overline{DCCC}$. Eight hundred thousand.

CCCIↃↃↃCCCCIↃↃↃↃ. $\overline{CM}$. $\overline{DCCCC}$. Nine hundred thousand.

CCCCIↃↃↃↃ. $\overline{M}$. a Million, ten hundred thousand.
DD M
M. M. the same.

2. THis is the form of the Letters or Characters used by the Ancient **Saxons** and **Angles** within **Germany** and **Brittain**; which by old writtings, Printed Books, and Monuments of the dead, are yet extent; and in some parts are yet used amongst us to this day.

I do only give you the Alphabet, to which in perticular I shall say but little, more than give you (as from the Romans, so from these our Ancestors) there way of writting with such Abreviations as I have observed in Manuscripts, Deeds, Evidences, and Records of Antiquity, used peculiarly amongst us; the knowledge whereof is very necessary for lovers of Antiquity, Heralds, and Keepers of Offices of Record; especially that great Record called Dooms day, alias *Domus Dei* Book.

Amongst Coats of Arms, I find these Coats adorned with Letters of the *Saxon* Alphabet, *viz.*

Argent on a Cross Gules, a *Saxon* ɖ Or. by the name *Holyman.*

Azure, a fesse between 3 *Saxon* ɖ's. Argent by the name of *Coclacoé.*

Argent, 3 *Saxon* ɛ's. Sable, by the name of *Elrond.*

Argent, a Cheveron betw. 3 *Saxon* þ's. Sable, by the name of *Highill.*

Azure, a Castle with two Towers Argent, in chief a Mullet of six points, and in base a *Saxon* ȝ, Or. born by the City or States of *Monsterberg* in *Germany.*

Azure, a *Saxon* þ with a Crown over it (or Crowned) Or. by the name *Gessen*, or *Giessen.*

G. a *Saxon* ɢ. A. born by the Town of *Glogaw.*

G. 2 Wheels, and 2 *Saxon* ȝ. A. contrary posed by the Town of *Miltonberg.*

A. on fesse, S. 3 *Saxon* ƒ's A. born by *Vohlin.*

Breviations of Words beginning with A.

A.

A Ad. *Adam. Andrew. &c.*
Agñ. *Agnes.* Al. *alijs.*
Apd. *apud.* Abb. Abbs. *Abbas.*
co c9.
A. *Aliquo.* A *Alicujus.*
Añ. *Ante.* Añdca. *Antedicta.*
Aū. *or* Aut. *Autem.*
o t
A. *or* Año. *Anno.* A. *Aut.*
Acr. *Acra.* Acetm̄. *Acetiam.*
And. *Andreus, Andrew.*
Ai9. Aīe. Aīo. *Animus. Animæ.*
Aia ⅄. *Animarum.* (*Animo.*
coo Abbis. *Abbatis.*
Am. *Aliquomodo*
Aptus, Aptoꝝ. *Apostilus. Apostilo-*
Aptica. Aplicis. *Apostolica* (*rum*
Apostolicis.

B.

B9. Bē. *Beatus. Beate.*
B. *Bis.* Btūs. Bs. *Beatus.*
Bñ. *Bene.* Bñdic. *Benedictus.*
Bre. Brīs. *Breve. Brevis*
Bribꝯ. *Brevibus.* Bō. *Bovata.*
Boūar. *Bovarij*
Bord. *Bordarius.* (*Ballvum.*
Bīts. Bīts. Bīm *Ballivus. Ballivis.*

C.

Cū c̄. *Cum.* r
c̄qꝫ. *Cunque* C. *Cur*
9
Cca, *Circa.* C. *Cujus.*
Com̄: *Comes. Comitatus.*
Com̄ibꝯ, *Comitibus. Comunibus.*
a a
9. Con̄. Cōt. *Contra.*
Cā, Cāis. *Causa. Causis.*
Cam̄er. *Camererius.*
c̄tilag. Cūtit: *Curtilage.*
Car: *Caruca. Carucata.*
3 9
Ccñq̄qꝫ. Ccūquaq. *Cujuscunquaq;*
Civit. *Civitas. Civitate.*
Cestr'. Cestensꝭ. *Cestria. Cestriensis.*
a c̄q; c̄q. *Cunque.*
9triū. *Contrarium.*
r
Ctis. *Certis* c̄tis, *Ceteris.*
Clic9. Ctico. Clicis. *Clericus. Clerico. Clericis.*
Cōa. Cōi. *Communa. Communi.*
Cōis, Cōem: *Communis. Communem.*
Cōitas. *Communitas.*
Cūr'. Curm̄. *Curia. Curiam.*
a a
Cōtdcōe. 9dcōe. *Contradictione.*
r 9
Ctū. *Certum.* 9. *Conventus.*

Chap: Cap. *Chapter. Caput.*
r
Cōsꝫvat. 9sꝫvat. *Conservater.*
u
Ca. Ca. Cāu. *Causa. Casu.*
m m o
Ca. C. C. *Capitulem. Capitulum.*
a (*Capitulo.*
9ir: *Contraire.*
ts tis
Cari. Cari. *Caritas. Caritatis.*
Cli. Clis. *Clerici. Clericis.*
Cuiqliꝫ. *Cujuslibet.*
Cuilꝫ. *Cuilibet.*

D.

DD. dd. *Davidus. David.*
D'. *De.* Den̄. denar. *Denarius.*
D9 Dm̄. Dō. *Deus. Deum. Deo.*
Dño: Dō: *Domino.*
Dm̄cis. Dm̄co. *Dominicis. dominica*
Don̄oe, Don̄coē. *Donacione.*
Dice. *Dicere.* D'e. *Dere.*
Dcūs. dcd. dcō. dcm̄. *Dictus. dictum. Dicto. dictum.*
Dilci. dilco. *Dilecti. dilecto.*
Dat. *Datus, data, datum.*
Dimid. dimidꝫ. *Dimidium.*
Dcōe. *Dictione.*
Dūt. dīn. dīnt. *Dicunt, dicuntur.*

x t
Dup. *Duplex.* D. *Dicit. dixit.*
Dix. *Dixit.*

E

E et Ed; Edw: *Edwardus.*
ē̄t, eē, *etiam.* eꝯ ē *est.*
eē, ēſſ; eēt, eēnt, *esse. esset. essent.*
Epc Eps Epus Epꝯ *Episcopus.*
Epi, Epo, *Episcopi. Episcopo.*
Eccē, Ecclie, *Ecclesiæ.*
Eccia, Eccis, *Ecclesiam. Ecclesiis.*
Excōicaōe, *Excommunicatione.*
Excōicaōis, *Excommunications.*
eiꝯ, Eoꝝ, *ejus. Eorum.*
eiꝯd, eod, *ejusdem. eodem.*
Erm, *Ermen. a womans name.*
a ēx, *extra.*
Ex, *Extra.* Exta, *Excepta.*
c tis
Expt, Ex *Exceptis.*
effēm, *effectum.*
Elēo, Elēois, *Electio. Electionis.*
Est, Estē, *Escaetor.*
Exēitu, *Exercitu.*
ʒ
Extnsvso, *Extransverso.*
Exect, Exector, *Executores.*
& & *et. and.*
&c. &c. *&c.* etē. *etcetere.*

F.

Fr, Frm, *Frater. Fratrem. fratrum*
Frib9, frib3, *Fratribus.*
Fs fm fō fis. *Festus festum festo festis.*
Fc9, fcūs, fcm, fcō, *Factus. factum. facto.*
fil, *filius. filia.* filab3, *filiabus.*
Filil9, filło, *Filliolus. filliolo.*
9 o
Fi fi *Filius. filio.*
Feias, *Feminas.*
a a
For fo, form, *Forma.*
u u
Fctts, fctū, *Fructus. fructum.*
t t
Fac, fec, *facit. fecit.*
Furt, furth, *Further.*

G.

o
G, Gro, *Grono. a welsh name.*
i Geld. *Geldebilis*
Gff; Griff, *Griffith. Gruffidd.*
Gla, Glam, Glose, *Gloria. Gloriam. Gloriosa.*
Gra, Gram, *Gratia. Gratiam.*
o c
G, *ergo.* Ggr, *Gregorius.*

le
Ge, Genlis, *Generale. Generalis.*

H.

H. *Hic. hac. hoc.*
9
H, Hi9, Hiʒ, *Hujus.*
9 i i 9
Hiino, Hiu9, Hiod, *Hujujmodi.*
Hūr, Hen. Hnc9, *Henricus.*
Ham; *Hamon.* Hug, *Hugo*
Ho, Hois, Hoi, *Homo. Hominis. Homini.*
Hoes, Hoies, *Homines.*
Hoib9, Hoibʒ, Hoibus, *Hominibus*
Hes, Her, *Hæres. Hæredes.*
hed, heb, *hæredes. hæredibus.*
Huc, hac, hc, *Hunc. hanc. hoc.*
ht, *habet. habuit.*
Hes, Het, *Habes. Habet.*
Hre, Here, *Habere.* heret *haberet.*
Hntes, Heat, *Hebentes. habeantur.*
Hndi, hendum, *Habendi. Habendum.*
hitum, *Habitum.*
Hieot, *Heriota.*
Hmlit, Hmlr, *Humiliter.*

I.

Io; *Iohannes. Ionathan. &c.*
Ios; Ioseph, *Iosuha. Iosephus. &c.*
Ihus, Ihs xpt, *Iesus. Iesus Christ.*
i, *in. inter. intra.* in, *inde.*
ia, *Iam.* iad, iadum, *Iamdudum*
ilt, *ille. illa. illis.*
iltd, ilt9, iltʒ, *illud. illius.*
ipe, ipa, ipd, *ipse. ipsa. ipsud.*
ipi9, ipi, *ipsius. ipsi.*
ipm, ipam, ipis, *ipsum. ipsam: ipsis*
ipoꝝ, *Ipsorum.* ide, *Inde.*
ibm, *Ibidem.* it, *Inter.*
a i r
I, *Ita.* g, g, *Igitur.*
igr, *Igiter.* ido, *Ideo.*
iaʒ, iacʒ, iact, *Iacet.*
impm, impm, *Imperpatuum.*
impdtm. impdto, *Impedimentum.*
It, itm it *Item*
Isd, *Isdem* ibm, *Ibidem.*
9 a
Ite, *Iuste.* iux, iux; *Iuxta.*
Irr, Irrʒ, *Irrotulatur.*
Iur: Iurat, *Iuratores.*

K.

Knn, *Carissimus.*
Kt: *Kalendis. Calendis.*

L.

Lau: *Laurencius. Laurence.*

LLn: Lln, LLew: *LLewellin.*
t, *vel.* tt, *velut.*
Lib; libe; libo; libis; *Liber. libere. libero liberis.*
libnt, *libenter* Lenn: *Lenua.*
Lre, lras, *Litteræ. litteras.*
tb, tbis, *libris.*
lʒ liʒ licʒ licʒ *Licet.*
tg: tt: *longa. lata.*

M.

Mad Madd Madc *Madocus. Mad dock.*
mn, *meus. inde.*
Mich, *Michael.*
M: maner, manrio, *manerium. manerio.*
mltʒ, mlta, mltū, *multus. multa. multum.*
ms, mi, *meus. mei.*
i 9 ʒ
M, *mihi.* M, m, *manus.*
o
M, *modo. monacho. millisimo.*
mr, *mater. Magister. matter.*
magr, mr, *magister.*
mro, magro, *magistro.*
magrm, magrū, *magistrum.*
mllm, *millium.* mod; *modo.*
mesʒ, mess: *messuagia.*
molm, *molinum. molendinum.*
mia, miam, *miserecordia. miserecordiam.*

N.

n, *non.* nūc, nuc, *nunc.*
Nich, *Nicholas.*
c i
N, *nec.* N, *nisi. nihil.*
ncō, *Incicio.* nāʒ, *namque.*
nich: *nichil. nihil.*
nr, nra, *noster. nostra.*
nrm, nrm, nroꝝ, *nostram. nostrorum.*
c
Nno, *necnon.*
ns, nob, nobcū, *nos. nobis. nobiscum.*
nout, nout, *nouerit.*
nōie, nōia, *nomine. nomina.*
nōiatū, *nominatum.*
noīānda, noīāndū, *nominanda. nominandum*
nlls, nllm, *nullus. nullum.*

O.

Ow: *Owen.* Obed: *Obedia.*
oēs, oīs, ōs, *omnes. omnis.*
ōi, *omni. omnini.*
ōie, ōnie, omne, *omnie.*
oīo, *omnino.* oibʒ, *omnibus*
orōes, orōnes, *orationes.*

o s
oim, *omnimodo.* oblone. *oblatio*
oiodas, *omnimodas.* (*res.*
ofo, ord, ordis, *ordo. ordinis.*
omno, oiño, *omnino.*
oclo, oclz, ocli, *oculus. oculi.*
offo: offico, offm, *officio officium.*
op se m. *opponit se versus.*
occoe, occone, occione, *occasione.*

P.

Phs, Pha, *Phillipus. Phillippa.*
Pet: *Pet, Petrus. Peter.*

o r
Pet, *Petro.* p, cp, *pro*
cppe, *propter* p, *per.*
z w Pr, *Pater.*
p, P, p. *pre. pra.*
t 9 9 9
P, P, Pt, *post.* Pea, *postea.*
9 a pot, *potest pos-*
ptqm, *postquam.* (*ut.*
Pris, Pribz, *Patris. Patribus.*
pts, pūntes, *presentes.*
pūtum, *presentium*
Ph: *Phillipus. Phebianus.*
z z
Phita, *prehibita.* Pbr *Presbiter.*
z
Pmissz, *premisses premissis.*
ptiu, *pertinenciis.* pz, *patet.*
cpx, pxio, cpxm, *proximus*
(*proximum.*
e t r
P P *the that* Pying *praying.*
r z
Pti, *prati.* ptz, pt, *preter,*
z z
Pdco, pdca, pdcm, *predictus.*
z (*predicta. predictum.*
Pdco, pdcis, *predicto. predictis.*

i i
cpo, ppum, *proprio. proprium.*
w a
pp, pp, ppm, *Papa. Papam.*
ppm, ppm, *perpetuum.*
z a
ppoitis, *Prepositis.* p, *Persona*
ppls, ppło, *populus. populo.*
pplon, *populorum.*
pctis, *peccatis.* pls, *plus.*
plimo, plima, plimu, *plurimus.*
plurima. plurimum.
possonem, *possessionem.*
z
Pdecz, *Predecessor. predecessores,*
po lo suo, *ponet in loco suo.*
plo, plite, *placito. placite.*
pp, *proper. Papa.*
t
ptate, *potestatem.*

*

puc, puca, *publicus. publica.*

Q.

i e d
q, q, q, *qui. que. quod.*
q2, qz, qz, qz, *qui. que.*
qd, q, qd; *quod.* qdm, *quodam.*
q, q, qm, *quem. quam.*
i w
Qi, Qs: *quia. Quas.*
i i
qbz, *quibus.* qzd, *quibusdem.*
o i
qu, *quorum.* qcqz, *quicunque.*
, , i a
qiqd. *quicquid.* qcq, *quicqua.*
to
Qwarr: *Quowarranto.*
a
qlt, qlz, *quolibet. qualibet.*
z
qre, *quarter.* quer *queritur.*
o o oo o
qm, qqm, *quomodo. quoqnomo-*
z z (*do.*
qr, *quare.* quer, *querela.*
a
qmlz, *quamlibet.*
o o
qmliz, *quomodolibet. quomodolicet.*

R

Rān: Rañus, *Ranulphus. Randulphus. Randuph. Randle.*
Rad: Rađus, *Radulphus. Raph.*
R. *Rex. Recipe.* Rgni, *Regni.*
RR. *Regni Regis,*
z
r: rrz, *rotulator.*
Rndit, rnsum, *Respondit. respon-*
rnt, *respondunt.* (*sum.*
rndens, rndere, *respondens respon-*
rnd, rndm, *respondendum.* (*dere.*
retēto, *retenento.*
roñalr, roñabilit, *retionabiliter.*
roñalis, roñibz, *rationalis. retio-*
reszvat, *reservatur.* (*nalibus.*

S

Sb, *Sub.* Sz, *Sir. Ser. set.*
Sm: Sym: *Symon.* (*sed*
i t
S, *sibi.* S, St, *sit. sunt.*
Scus, sca, scm, *Sanctus. Sancta.*
sanctum. Scon, *Sanctorum.*
Sco, Scis, *Sancto. Sanctis.*
Scdo, scdm, *Secundo. secundum.*

t
Sn, Sn, *Sine.* Sic, Sic, *Sicut.*
Salt, Saltm, *Salutem.*
Saltco, *Salutatio.*
Sube, *Substantie.* Sclz, *scilicet.*
Scptq, Scptu, *Scriptus. scriptum.*
c
Sptes, Spectats, *Spectantes.*
r z
Suico, Suicis, *Servicio. serviciis.*
w
Sccm, Scco, *Scacarium. Scacario.*
a
Sm, *Summa.* Sbtq, *Subtus.*
Sol, *Solii. Solidus. solidos.*
Smmois, *Summonis.*
Sumoñe, *Summonitione.*
Sal, Salm, *Salutem.*
Succ, *Successores. Successoribus.*
Sum, Sumu, *Summons. Summum.*
i
Sscus, Scisz, *Seisitus.*
Silr, *Similiter.* Sil, *Simul.*
Spialrz, *Spicialiter.*
Spt. Spus, *Spiritus.*
s
S Spc, Sps sts. *Spiritus Sanctus.*
c o
S, *sic.* Solum, *Solummodo.*
Sabi, *Sabbathi.* Scds, *Secundus.*
Scipm, Sibipi, *Seipsum sibiipsius.*
a a
Sdcs, Sdco, *Supradictus. supradi-*
a a (*cto.*
Spli, *Spacieli.* S, *Supra.*
r
Seq *Sequitur.*

T

Tho: Thos, Thoa, *Thomas. Thoma.*
tc, tuc, *tunc.* trs, *tres.*
i z
Tu, Trm, *trium.* tr, *terra.*
tra, tre, tris, *terra. terre. terris.*
tnd, tend, *tenendum.*
tps, tpis, *tempus temporis.*
tpe, tmpe, *tempore.*
tpou, tmpibg, *temporum. tem-*
Tz, *Testes. testibus.* (*poribus*
Test, *Testes. testibus.*
tm, *tantum.* tm, *tamen.*
w o
tns, *trans.* tatom, *tantomodo.*
w z
tm, ta, *tam.* tam, *tamen.*
o Tle, tlis, *Tale. talis.*
tmmo, *tantummodo.* (*cressione.*
tusgr, tusgre, *transgressio. transgre-*
ten: tem, *tenet. Tenementum.*

*

ꝫ r
nari, *terminari.* tio. *termino.*
tot, tot, *totum.*
riorio, *teritorio.*
T.R.E. *Tempore Regis Edwardi.*
a
tanqm tanqm tanqm, *tanquam.*

Testm, Testi, *Testamentum. Testa-*
i
T, tbi, *Tibi.*

V

Val: Valn: *Valentinus.*
vra. vrm, *vestra. vestrum.*
vr, ur, *Vester.* Vill: *villa. villæ.*
videl, vidlꝫ: vidꝫ, viz: *videlicet.*
i r vob, vobꝫ, *vobis.*
Vtg, Vtute *virtus. virtute.*
i vilto, uilli, *villanus.*
Vꝫ, ulibꝫ *ulibus.* (*villani.*
ꝫ s t
ul, vꝫ, *versus.* U *ut.*

Vic: vic, vicmibg, *Vicecomes. Vicecomitis. vicecomitibus.*
w m
Vlt: *vltra.* Vtqꝫ, *Vtramque.*
vat: vatb, vatt, *valet. valebat.*
t o o (*valut.*
ven:, *venit.* v. u. *vero.*
i i
V. U, *Vir. Vbi.* uſꝫ, *uſque.*
r ꝫ vt, ut, *vel.*
V. u, *Vir. uersus.*
vx: vxi, vxibꝫ. *Vxor. Vxori. Vx-*
uqm, *unquam.* (*oribus.*
a e m vltio, *Vltimo.*
vlt, vlt, vlt, *vltima. ultime. ul-*
o (*timam.*
VIII. *Octo.*

W

o
W. Witt: Willmo. *Willielmo.*
William. Willielmus.
o
Warr: *Warranto.*

th n t th
W, W, W, W, *with, when, what,*
(*which.*

X

o o i Xps Xpus *Christus.*
X. X. X. *Christus. Christo. Christi.*
Xpan, *Christian.* Xpher. *Christi-*
Xpiano, *Christianorum* (*pher.*
XX. *Viginta. vicessimus.*
X. *Decem. Decimus*
ce o
X *Decem.* X *Decimo.*

Y

e t
Y. ꝑ *the.* Y. *that.*
ꝫ r
Y. *there.* Yto. *thereto.*
s w
Y. *this.* Y. ꝑ *you. thou.*
r ꝫ Ycr, *yeare.*
Y. Y. *your.*

With the Alphabet, they used these Characters, which stood for double Letters, as these.

ꝫ which signified And; and answered the *Roman* &c.

Æ and Œ which are two Dipthongs, and stand for AE.

Ð this is the *Saxon* Thong, and stands for *Th*, like the *Greek* Theta, which answers to *Th.*

ꝥ this also stands for *th.*

Þ this stands also for *th.*

Þ this signifieth the word *that.*

Besides these our Ancestors way of abbreviating words, yet in all their Writings with their Alphabetical Letters they used certain Characters and Dashes, by which words were expressed, and sometime only a Letter, as for example, any of these Letters, or marks *a e i o u* ꝰ ꝯ ꝱ ꝳ being set over the head of any of these Consonants, *b c d f g p t w*, signifieth that an *r* is to be pronounced as immediately following the said Consonant, as *transverso transverse*, C, *cra, cras, crater,* a ꝳ
p, pre, 8, 8, *gri, gra,* 8, *gro, in Grono,* &c. But if they be set over the head of *q*, then they express only the *u* to follow the *q*, as *q, q, q, q,* which signifieth, *qua, qui, quo.* u a i o

If any of these Characters ꝛ ꝝ ꝭ be set at the end of a word, it stands for *rum*, as *trio*ꝝ, *eorꝝ* and such like words.

If these Characters ꝯ ꝯ ꝯ ꝯ ꝯ are placed at the beginning of a word, they express the Syllable *con* or *com*, according to the sense of the word, as *coraia, prehendo, otra*, and the like, but if they be set at the end of a word, or any of these following ꝫ ꝯ ꝯ ꝯ, they express the Syllable *us*, as for example *tribo, emu*

fratribꝫ, &c. but if after a *q*, then it signifieth *que.*

When any of these dashed marks, are set over the head, or proceed from any Letter ꝭ ꝭ ꝭ ꝭ ꝭ they signifie that *er* is to proceed after the said Letter, to which it is over, or fixed unto as *tre terre, libꝫal, terminated, diffꝫence,* &c.

When these marks ꝏ ꝏ are over a Consonant, it signifieth *ur* is to follow that Consonant, as *Cro,* ꝏ ꝏ
curro. fure, Ciaciria.

These Dashes being placed over a word, express the Letter *m* or *n*; and sometimes they stand for many Letters taken away in the middle and end of words, they are these, — ⌣ ⌢ ⌣ as for example cm̄, cōes, cōra, *cum, comes, contra.* anedcā *antedicta,* pdcī *predicti* cōm. *comes.* vic. *vicecomes.*

These Character dashes joined to the last Letter of a Word or Syllable, and turning upwards, or over the head of the Letter, signifieth a cutting short of the words, they are these ꝛ ꝭ ꝭ ꝭ ꝭ ꝭ ꝭ as Dm̄ De ꝭ
Deum. aut. *autem,* an. *ante,* nō. *non,* den. *denarii,* Llewllt *Llewellin,* and the like.

Besides there are other Dashes joined to the last Letter, which serve for the cutting off or shortning of words, as these ꝛ ꝭ ꝭ ꝭ ꝭ which all of them are strucken downwards to the foot of the Letter as thus, ijdꝭ *ijdem,* modꝭ *modo,* ext ꝭ *extra,* cetenꝭ *ceteris,* &c. and very oft these dashes stand for (*is*) in the end of a word, as uxorꝭ *uxoris,* talꝭ *talis.*

By these few Examples of Abreviations, the Ingenious practitioner may by Exercise find out of himself the sense and meaning of other shortehand words, used in many Manuscripts. And for his further instructi

*

he be desirous, he may peruse these following Authors, where he may find multitudes of such short writting.

Saint *Jeroms* Bible in a MS. and other old Bibles, which are extent in Written hand before Printing was found out.

Valerius Probus, set forth with Annotations, by *Erastius*, and *Tiliobraga*.

Paulus Diacanus.

Aldus Manutius, Junior.

Franciscus Holtomanus.

Fredericus Lindembrogius.

Michael Minieras.

Thomas Reinesius.

Johannes Mabillon de re deplomatica Lutetiæ, Parisiorum printed, 1681.

Sertorius Urgatus, a modern learned Antiquary of *Padua*, who hath Published a small Volumn Book of that subject; and is somtimes bound up with the Book Entituled, *Monumenta Patavina*, set forth by him.

Claudius Hansquejus, in his Learned work *De Orthographia*, hath given very useful Instructions for the Reading of Ancient writtings in the Lattin Tongue and how to judge of the Antiquity of them and guess at the age wherein they were writ.

Traite des Inscriptions faux & Reconnuci sauces d' Escriture & Signatures, published by a famous Writting-Master of *Paris*, 1666.

Thresor de l' Histore des Langues de le Univers, in *Quarto*. published by a learned President of one of the Parliaments in *France*, Anno 1619. wherein he gives the Alphabet of the most general known Languages, with Discourses upon the same.

But of latter years, our *English* Nation hath wholly lost both their Ancestors Letter, and way of short Writting for publick concerns and make use of the *Roman*, *English*, and *Italick*, in all sorts of Printing: But for Writting Hands, Scriveners, Clerks, and Lawyers, make use of these several sorts of Letters, viz. Secretary or Mixt hand, Chancery or Set hand and Court hand: Which are those set down in the beginning of the following Engraven Plate.

To those are added two sorts of Hand writting more, which have the name and shew of *Roman* and *Italian*, as they are Printed, yet are of a different cut, as those Examples will manifest. These are usually taught Women for their Writting.

The names of which Letters, we *English-men* do thus pronounce.

A.	J. je.	S. es.
B. bee.	K. ca.	T. tee. cee.
C. cee. kee. ch. ca.	L. el.	U.
D. dee.	M. em.	V. ve. ife. eef.
E.	N. en.	W. oo.
F. ef	O. oo.	X. ex.
G. gee. jee. gn. gin.	P. pe. ph. ef. eef.	Y. yi. ooi.
H. ache. he.	Q. cu.	Z. zed. ussed. es.
i.	R. ar.	&c. A per se and.

*

Now the usual Breviated words used in our *English* way of writting, are only these few; some standing for words, others for parts of words, and others for double Letters, as Mr. *Butler* in his English Grammer, informeth us more fully, *&c.*

th t n e t w r
W. W. W. Y. Y. Y. Y.
Ð *th.* ð *th.* ȝ Ꝥ *th.* Ꞓ *ch.* Ꞡ *gh.* Ꝑ *ph*, or *f.* Ꞩ *sh.*
Ꝡ *wh.* Ꝁ *kh.* ſ *sh.* Ꞣ *ee.* which are called Aspirats.

III. These are the form of the Letters or Alphabet, Characters used by the *Germans*; and are termed the Text Hand Letters; many whereof I have seen used both in and for Coats of Arms.

Argent, three Text R's Sable, born by the name of *Pate* of *Leicester*.

Gules, three Text S's. Or, born by the name of *Keber More*.

Argent, a Cheveron betw. three Text T's, Sable, born by the name of *Tost*, of *Tost* in *Cheshire*.

In the German or High Dutch, they are thus pronounced.

A au.	J ee.	R r ?
B ba.	K K kau.	S S S ſ s
C e.	L L ela.	T Z Z T t.
D de.	M M ema.	U U evo.
E e.	N N ena.	W W w.
F f.	O o.	X esca.
G ge.	P pa.	Y ive.
H hatt.	Q quivo.	Z zade.

In the Nether Dutch Language they are thus pronounced.

A ah.	J ee.	R er.
B bea.	K ka.	S es sch. sk.
C ce sea.	L el.	T te.
D dea.	M em.	U ou.
E ea.	N en.	W ow.
F ef.	O o.	X er.
G ge iea.	P pea.	Y ij.
H ha.	Q qu. cu.	Z ze.

Dipthongs.			Tripthongs.
ae	ei ey	oe ou ow	aeu
ai ay	eu	oey	ieu
au	eeu	oy ooy	oey
aeu	euy	ou	uae
aeuw	ieu	ue	yeu
ee	ieuw	uy uu	

The *Polanders* use a Character much like the *Germans*, being a kind of Text Letter, or between a Text and Secretary Hand Writing; only this they make b for *f* or Consonant *v*; and cz for *ch*; and ł for ll; and nʷ for *gn*; ann *sz* for *sh*; and rz for *rh*.

The *Swedes* use also a kind of Secretary Character, and in their words make use of these double Letters *gh dh th ch sk*.

The

Secretarie	Chancery	Court	Roman	Italian
A.a.	A. a. a. a.	A a a a	A A a	A a
B.b.B.	B. b. B.	B b b	B b	B b
C.c. c.	C. c. c. C.	C c	C c	C c
D.d. d.	D. d. d. d.	D d d d	D d	D d
E e e	E. e. ee.	E e e e e	E E e e	E e e
F f f f f	F. f.	F f	F f	F f f
G G g g	G. G. g. g.	G G g G	G g E	G g
h h h h	h. h.	h h h	H h	H h h
I J i	I J i	I J i	I i	I i
k k k	k k	k k	K k k	K k
L L l l	L l l	L l l	L L l l	L l
M m m m	M m m m	M m m m	M m	M m
N n m	N n m	N n m	N n	N n
O o o o	O o o	O o o o	O o o	O o
P p p p	P p p	P p p	P p	P p p
Q q q	Q q q	Q Q q	Q Q q q	Q q q
R r r	R r r r	R r r r r	R r r	R r
S S s s s s	S s s	S S s s s	S s s s s	S s
T t t t	T t t	T t t T	T t t	T t t
V v u v	V v u	V v u b v	V v u	V v u
W W w w	W w w	W W w	W w	W w
X x x x	X x x	X x	X x	X x
Y Y y y	Y y	Y y	Y Y y	Y y
Z z z z	Z z	Z z	Z z z	Z z
& &	& & &	& & &	& & &	
	& & & &	& & & &		

Set this in Book 3: betweene Fol: 414: & 415:

The *French* Letters are these, which they thus pronounce.

A au.	I i ee.	S ess.
B be.	L el.	T te.
C ce. ç es.	M em.	V v.
D de.	N en.	X ex.
E e.	O o.	Y y Greek.
F ef.	P pe.	Z zed ezede.
G ge.	Q qu.	& etranche.
H ash.	R err.	

Vowels.	Dipthongs.
a é long. e short. i o u	ai ae ao au.

The *Italian* Characters are these, and thus pronounced.

A a	J jod sh ee.	R
B	K	S sc like sh.
C k ç z thf.	L ll like li.	T c.
D dh.	M	V v like oo ou.
E e	N ñ like ni.	W
F	O	X sh j.
G sh j	P	Y
H ache.	Q che chi ke ki.	Z t s.
Ch cha.		

Dipthongs.

ai ay	au	eu	ie ye	iu	ue
ao	ei ey	ia	io yo	oi oy	ui uy

Tripthongs.

iay yay	iue yue	uei uey.	
iey yey	uai uay		

The *Spanish* also borrow the Latine Alphabet, being a Language of Broken or Corrupted Latine, which they pronounce thus.

A	G g j.	M	S z.
B v.	H ache ha.	N	T
C k.	I ee.	ñ gn or ni.	V vf.
ç thf ch.	J sh hi.	O	U ou.
D dh.	K c.	P	X j ch sh
E	L	Q qu che chi	Y
F ph.	Ll li.	R	Z zeta uf.

Each Language hath a certain Idiome or Tone in their Words and sounding of their Letters, which if not rightly Learned, their speaking cannot be understood.

IV. Is the **Greek Alphabet**, where I have set down both the Capital Letters and the small; which Letters I have often seen written in Motto's under Atchievements and other Devises, but for their Bearing in Coats, I do not remember that I have seen any.

The names of the Letters, because they are contrary to those delivered in the former Alphabets, take them as they are termed thus.

Α α Alpha.	Η η Eta.	Ν ν Ny.	Τ τ Tau.
Β β Beta.	Θ θ Theta.	Ξ ξ Xi.	Υ υ Ypsilon.
Γ γ Gamma.	Ι ι Iota.	Ο ο Omicron.	Φ φ Phi.
Δ δ Delta.	Κ κ Kappa.	Π π Pi.	Χ χ Chi.
Ε ε Epsilon.	Λ λ Lamda.	Ρ ρ Rho.	Ψ ψ Psi.
Ζ ζ Zeta.	Μ μ My.	Σ σ Sigma.	Ω ω Omega.

*

They use seven Vowells as (a ē ĕ i ō y ŏ) Also 12 Dipthongs, which are according to our English letters, as (ai au ei eu oi ou ui eeu oou) these are termed Proper; and (a eo oo) are Improper Dipthongs. Besides which, they use in their way of writing certain double letters, or characters for double and treble letters, contrary to the letters of the Alphabet, which are calld **Legators**: which I have indevoured to set together in the Plate of the *Eastern* and *Western* Alphabets, under the Columb with this mark. ✱

They also used in their writings, several sorts, and wayes of accenting their letters, to set forth their proper Sounds; which are these, and thus termed.

⸌ *Grave.*	´ *Accute.*
⸍ *Lenis.*	⸜ *Asper.*
⸎ *Lenis grave.*	⸏ *Lenis accut.*
⸜ *Asper grave.*	⸝ *Asper accute.*
⸝ *Circumflex.*	⸎ *Lenis Circumflex.*
⸜ *Asper Circumflex.*	¨ *Dieris.*
⸎ *Dieris grave.*	´ *Dieris accute.*

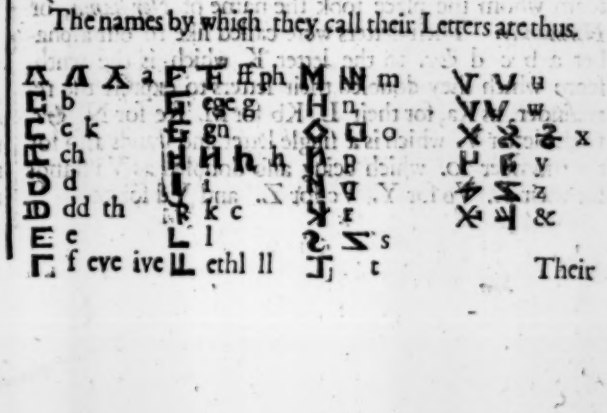
V. This is the **Hebrew Alphabet**, in whose Tongue is the Original of all Human Learning (I mean the Sacred Bible) which by them is valued so highly, that the mistaking of a Letter in it (say they) destroys the World: The *Jews* who use this Alphabet, and the most *Eastern Tongues*, as the *Phœnicians*, *Arabians*, *Assyrians*, *Chaldeans*, &c. do write from the right hand to the left, contrary to the *Europians*, who generally write from the left hand to the right; contrary to both which Writings are the *Ethiopians*, *Indians* and *Chinensians*, who write downwards from the head to the foot.

The names of the Letters are thus expressed.

א Aleph.	ט Teth.	פ Pe Fe.
ב Beth.	י Jod.	צ Zade. Tzade.
ג Gimel.	כ Caph.	ק Quph. Koph.
ד Daleth.	ל Lamed.	ר Resch.
ה He.	מ Mem.	ש Schin.
ו Vau.	נ Nun.	ת Thau. Tau.
ז Zain.	ס Samech.	
ח Heth.	ע Ain.	

VI. I come now in the last place to give you the Alphabet of the Ancient **Cymra's** or **Britains**, which was used by them about the *Romans* Government, though at this day they are wholly lost, they now using the *Roman* Alphabet or Characters, yet by other names (for the most part) than what the *Romans* call them. This Catalogue I carefully gathered from the Impressions or Stamps of their Coin then used, and other old Manuscripts.

The names by which they call their Letters are thus.



Their

Their ancient figures for numeration were these.

J 1. 7 2. 3 3. 8 4. 5 5. 6 6. Λ 7. 8. 9. & 10

But the *Brittaines* or *Welsh* have now lost their ancient Characters and do altogather use the *Roman* Letters, yet keep their old pronounciation of them, especially of their double Consonants, which are these, and thus expressed in sound.

ch *egh.*	dd *ethe*	ff *ive*	gh
gn *gin*	ll *ethl* or *lh*	ng *ung*	ph *eve*
th *eth.*			

2. SEING We have entered a discourse of these Ancient and Forraine Characters, It may not be amiss, and hope not troublesome to the Courteous Reader to take a short view of some other National, Provinciall, and Monarchicall Letters, used in the severall parts of this Sublunary Globe of the Earth: Such Letters I meane whose form and shape are contrary to the *Romans Greeks* and *Hebrews*. And as in letters, so they differ in their Names, Pronounciations, Vowels, Dipthongs, and Abbreviations. As the Instructions following will make more manifest.

☞ Now for the better findeing out of these following Characters according to their names, I have in the first Columb set the figure against it in the engraven Plate, from which stricking over into the said Letter Columb after mentioned, you will there se the Character which is here so named, of such or such a people; as for example.

The Goths *Letters.*

A. Hath under it columb, the anciant *Goths* letters a people Inhabiting between *Swethland* and *Norway* called *Scandia* (of some taken to be the *Scythians*) and were first invented by *Vlphilas* their first Bishop, upon their receiveing of the Faith. Their letters were named after the *Latines* as a b c d *&c.* Which were afterward as is supposed to be altered by those that went inte *Italy*, and mode a conquest of that Countrey. For I finde two alphabets of their Characters. In this columb after Z followeth their (&) as also all their Dipthongs expressed by contrary characters to the alphabet, which from the figure 24. downwards signifie & au eu ei oi oe ae and so much for their Letters.

The Celts *and* Normans *Letters*

B. Hath under its Columb, the anciant *Celts* and *Norman* Characters; a people of the northern parts, who first came into *France* and seated in *Neustria* and *Armorica*, from whom the place took the name of *Normania*, or *Normandy*. Their letters were called like to our alphabet a b c d *&c.* to the letter K. which is the tenth, from which they doubled their letters to express the remainder, as Ka, for their L. Kb for M. Kc for N. *&c.* to the letter V. which is a single letter and stands also for the number 20. which being also doubled as Va stands for their X. Vb for Y. Vc for Z. and Vd for &.

The Franks *Letters*

C. Hath under it the columb of the ancient *Franks*, or *French* letters. A people of *Franconia* in *Germane*, who at the declineing of the *Roman* Monarchy possessed themselves of it, calling themselves, *Franks*, to shew that they were free from that Yoak and Slavery which the *Romans* would have imposed on them. Their letters were different from the *Almans*, or *Germans*, yet went alphabeticallv according to the *Greek*, as Alpha, Beta, Gamma, Delta, Epsilon, *&c.* of which you may se the order in *numb.* 4. though now they have wholly lost them, and make use of the *Roman* letters as is beforesaid in *numb.* 3.

The Irish *and* Manks *Letters.*

D. Columb hath under it the *Irish* and *Manks* alphabet, these were a people descended of the ancient *Brittaines*, whose Language was originally Brittish, or a Dialect of it; But in after ages, through their intermixing with *Norwegians*, *Danes*, *Easterlings* and *English Saxons*, hath now but little affinitie with the *Welsh*, but use a Language of their own, yet speak it so, as a *South Wales* man understands several hundreds of their words, also they do the same, in *Manks* or the *Ile of Man*, in the west of *Scotland*, and the *Hibredes*. The same form of character to the *Saxons* is used by them, in which I finde little or no difference, and go alphabetically as theirs do, as a b c d e *&c.* But how they pronounce them single, by being double, or by the accenting of them; I cannot yet Learne, though I have made diligent enquiry, especially their Vowels, which are set down under their Alphabet with their accents, and the Dipthongs in the three last lines.

The Phænician *Letters.*

E. In this Columb you are presented with two Alphabets of the Phænicians, the first the more ancient, the other now in use. These people were originally *Canaanites*, but called by the *Greeks*, *Phænice*, from the aboundance of Palme trees growing therein. It is a Countrey lying on the north of *Iudea*. Their alphabet runs litterally with ours as a b c d *&c.* but are thus named.

1 Asuz.	7 Gith.	13 Nichoim.	19 Toth.
2 Bem.	8 Huth.	14 Oliph.	20 Vr.
3 Cem.	9 Iothim.	15 Phisai.	21 Xith.
4 Dimi.	10 Kasum.	16 Quenu.	22 Yn.
5 Ethimi.	11 Lathim.	17 Rophi.	23 Zilph.
6 Fetim.	12 Momi.	18 Sith.	

The Egyptian *Letters*

F. Under this Lettered columb, is three of the *Egyptian* Alphabets, those of antiquity is in the first row downwards, the other now in use. It is reported of them that they were the first Inventers of Letters, and that they taught the use of them to their neighbours the *Phoenicians*

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	K	L	M	N
1													
2													
3													
4													
5													
6													
7													
8													
9													
10													
11													
12													
13													
14													
15													
16													
17													
18													
19													
20													
21													
22													
23													
24													
25													
26													

Ex dono Reverendissimi Episcopi Dublinensis

P·M·D· Jacobi Arderne ·D·D·
Decani Cestrie ·H· Dedicat̃.

ans, and they to the *Greeks*. But this is most certaine that at first, to express their minds, and conception of words; they did it by the shapes of Things, both in Heaven, the Earth, and Waters. Which they termed **Hierogliphicks**. These people have their letters Alphabetically in the same order to ours. *viz:* a b c d *&c.* and are named according to the *Phenicians* aforesaid. In the bottom of the column there are three characters which stand for double letters, *viz:* Th. Gh. Ps.

The Tuskish *Letters.*

G. This Column hath the *Tuscan* alphabet, a people of *Tuscania* a great Province in *Italy*: of some Authors called the great Dukedom of *Tuskany*, or *Florence*, they were formerly called *Hetruria*. Their characters run in the same order to the *Italians*, or *Latins*, as a b c d *&c.* though the were of a contrary shape; but how pronounced I am yet to be a learner. The two last letters stand for Ch. and Is.

The Ancient Greek *Letters.*

K. Hath under it in one Column, three sorts of the *Greeks* characters used by them of old; all which are in some part contrary to the Modern Alphabet now in use, as you may see if you compaire them with those set down in *numb.* 4, yet their pronounceing of them both old and new, are after one and the same way or maner. and therefore I shall say noe more of them.

The Maronian *Letters.*

L. In the column soe marked, is the *Maronits*, or the *Maronians* alphabet, a people inhabiting a countrey in *Syria*, it is a *Chaldee* letter, used by them when conversent and in league with the *Greeks*; because they are called after the names of the *Greekish* letters, as Alpha Beta Gama Delta *&c.* Which makes me iudge that they were used by the *Greeks* also in their commerce with these kind of people, and read to the right hand as all the *Western* parts doe.

The Ethiopian *and* Phrygian *Letters.*

M. Under this letter is placed the Characters of the *Ethiopick* Language, the first rowe downwards in the column, is the letters now in use with them, and all Scholars which desire to read or learn that tongue use them. The other is the more ancient character, both consists of 26 letters, each also being a numerall and stands for a certaine number in Arethmatick as the name of each letter doth manifest.

Hoi 1.	Kaf 8.	Wawe 15.	Pait 22.
Law 2.	Bet 9.	Ain 16.	Nadai 23.
Haut 3.	Tawi 10.	Zai 17.	Zappa 24.
Mai 4.	Harm 11.	Iaman 18.	Af 25.
Saut 5.	Nahas 12.	Dent 19.	Psa 26.
Ryys 6.	Alph 13.	Gemul 20.	
Sat 7.	Kaf 14.	Bait 21.	

The other alphabet runs thus, each haveing its figure for which it is used in numeration.

A 13	Hhath 3.	Sa 15.	Ta 10.
Ba 9.	Tha 11.	A 16.	Guo 23.
Ga 20.	Iud 18.	Pa 21.	Huo 24.
Da 19.	Ka 8.	Tza 22.	Kuo 25.
Ha 1.	La 2.	Cha 14.	Chuo 26
Va 5.	Ma 4.	Ra 6.	
Za 17.	Na 12.	Sha 7.	

Besides these they use certaine characters, much resembleing the *Greeks* first 10 letters, makeing dashes over & under them; with the which, by double and trebleing of them (after our way of Arethmatick) they can set down any number whatsoever.

Their Vowels are Seven, *viz:* ă u i ā e y o they are noted or expressed by certain marks or characters ioyned to the top, sides, or bottom of the precedent letter.

Also five Dipthongs which are these va ui ua ue uy which by characters are so marked. All which you may in the bottom of the column at *numb.* 27. 28. 29 *&c.*

The *Phrygians* a people inhabiting that large country of *Phrygia* (and in part Bordering on *Ethiopia*) which for its greatness is divided into two parts, one *Phrygia Major*, the other *Phrygia Minor*. They are said to use the same characters, but set them after the *Greek* order.

The Georgianian *Letters.*

N. Under this Capital is the *Georgianians* characters, They are a people dweling in *Iberia* in *Asia*, of whom the name of the countrey is termed *Georgiana*, from St. *George* of *Cappadocia*; whom they have in great Honor, as their Countrey Patron, or titular Saint. Their alphabet consists of 31 letters, which they thus pronounce.

1 Alpha.	9 Theta.	17 P i.	25 Omega.
2 Veda.	10 Toda.	18 Rou.	26 Schi.
3 Gamma.	11 Cabda.	19 Sigma.	27 Vue.
4 Delda.	12 Lamda.	20 Ta.	28 Comi.
5 E.	13 My.	21 Hie.	29 Or. r.
6 Tzo. sti.	14 Ny.	22 Phi.	30 Gimsa.
7 Zieta.	14 Lxi.	23 Chi.	31 Tee.
8 Elomi.	16 O.	24 Ipsi.	

The Iacobites & Cophtites *Letters.*

O. Under this title or Letter, is the column of the *Iacobites*, and the *Cophtites*; neere borderers as it should seem at their first begining, by the letters names: for although their characters be something different, yet their nameing them is one and the same. The *Iacobites* are a people dweling in *Babylonia* and *Mesopotamia*, which took their name from *Iacob Syrus*, for mantaining a certaine Heresie in the Christian faith. The *Cophtites* were the names of the Christians of *Egypt*, who there in an abomdant maner, as they increased to used that character (as is in the second rowe of the column downwards) as it were amongst themselves. They were 35 in number & were thus alphabetically named.

1 Alpha.	5 E.	9 Theda.	13 Me.
2 Weda.	6 Zso.	10 Ioda.	13 Nyd.
3 Gamma.	7 Sveta.	11 Caba.	15 Axi.
4 Delta.	8 Heda.	12 Lauda.	16 Off.

17 Pi.	22 Phi.	27 Vey.	32 Sima.
18 Ru.	23 Chi.	28 Cha.	33 Dy.
19 Sigma.	24 Epsi.	29 Chy.	
20 Taff.	25 O.	30 Hori.	
21 He.	26 Schey.	31 Gausa.	

The Illyrick & Slavonian *Letters*

P. In this column is the *Illyrick* or *Slavonian* characters, a countrey of a great extent: The Slavonian language being a Universal Lingua in those East and West parts (anciently called the *Sarmatian* tongue) for it is generally spoken in the Empire of *Russia*, *Livonia*, *Poland*, *Silesia*, *Bohemia*, *Moravia*, part of *Hungaria*, *Dacia*, *Histria*, and *Epirus*: Also *Georgia*, and *Mengrelia*, both in *Asia*. And by all the Captains Officers, and the Souldiers of the *Turkish* Empire. *Illyrick* or *Slavonia*, for so they are indifferently called, contained 18 of the *Roman* Provinces. They have amongst them two alphabets, the first called the *Illyrick*; The second called the *Slavonian* alphabet: they are set in order downwards after the *Roman* letters, as a b c d e f *&c.* But how they are pronounced according to that order, or whither after the *Greek*, or *Hebrew*, is yet by me to receive Instructions.

The *Illyrick* use no *y*. but in the lines 24 25. have two characters by which they express *Sh.* and *Sp.* And the *Slavonians* have for double letters, in line 25 that as standeth for *Sp.* in line 26 for *Gh.* 27 *Ch.* or *Sch.* 28 *Th.* This is all I can informe the curteous Reader of them.

The Croatick & Dalmatian *Letters.*

Q. Hath under it the *Croatick* and *Dalmatia* characters, them of *Croatia*, or *Croatian* people, are all those that inhabite the Inland or midle parts of the great Countrey of *Illyricum*, and are mentioned in our modern Histories by the name of the *Crabats*. And *Dalmatia* being also an other Province in *Slavonia*, and is of a larg extent. these are said to use a contrary character to them of *Slavonia*, which are set down in the column, in the alphabet order of a b c d e f *&c.* but how pronounced it is left to others to inform. They use only three double letters, as their *T* also for *Th.* And their *X* for *Sh.* & their *Q* for *Ch.* as is sheved in the three last lines in the Column above said, to which I refer the Reader.

Thus much for such as writ from the left hand to the right. Now for such characters as are written by the left handed men from the right to the left hand.

The Israelites *Letters.*

Z. In this column is presented to your view two sorts of characters used by the *Israelites* and *Jews* of old: The first being the most ancient; The other was used by the *Jews* at the tyme of the *Babilonish* Captivity, or thereabout. The were thus of old pronounced.

1 Aleph	5 He.
2 Beth	6 Vau. Vuaff.
3 Ghimel. Gomel.	7 Zain. Zoy.
4 Daleth. Dolath. *	8 Cheth. Hheth. Heth.
9 Teth.	17 Pe. ffa. Phe.
10 Iod. Ioch.	18 Ysade. Zsade. Tsadai. Zadai. *and* Sade
11 Caph. Kaph.	19 Coph. Koff. Quoph.
12 Lamed. Lamech.	20 Res. Resh.
13 Mem. Mym.	21 Shin. Syn. Zin.
14 Nun.	22 Tau. Chaf. Thau.
15 Samech. Zamicat.	
16 Ain. Oin. He. Aghin.	

To which second alphabet, they used five litteral vowells, which are set down in the foot of the column, and express the vowels a e i o and uo.

There are also other sorts of characters anciently used by the *Israelites*, and the *Iudaians* or *Iews*; as two invented and used by King *Solomon*: A third by *Esdras*, or *Iesus* the son of *Syrach*, which is the common Hebrew letters (or very nigh them) which we now use. Besides the *Celestial* Characters (as they called them, because delivered by an *Angel*) used by them before, and in the tyme of the Law. All which I could set down, but I forbeare them, as but little to our purpose.

The Samaritan *Letters.*

V. The alphabet of *Samaria* is set down in this column they were a mixt people brought into that countrey, after the leading away Captive the Kings of *Israel*: as it is mentioned 2 *king* 17 23 24 *&c.* These were contrary to the *Iews*, they haveing no commerce one with the other; they had also a different character from the *Hebrews* yet were called by the Hebrew Names, as Aleph Beth Gemal Daleth He *&c.* being 22 in number, and read to the left hand, with pricks or marks over and under the letters for vowels. They had also an other kind of Alphabet, which I suppose they might bring with them out of *Assur*, *Babilon*, *Cuthah*, *Ava*, *Hamath*, or *Sephervaim*, places from whence they came to inhabite the Countrey of *Samaria*.

The Chaldean *Letters.*

W. In this column are the two alphabets used by the *Chaldeans*, a people that inhabit a part of *Asia*. *Chaldea* being anciently called *Chasdim*, from *Chesed* fourth son of *Nachor* the Brother of *Abraham*. It was afterwards called *Babilonia*, from *Babylon*, the chief City of it. It hath in it the Countreys of *Assyria* and *Mesopotamia*. Their Language and Letters were different from the *Hebrews* in their primitive purity, that the generallity of the *Jews* did not understand it, till Sanctified by the Holy Ghost, some Chapters of *Daniels* Prophecy was written in it: They used two forms of Letters, the first while they were conversant with the *Medes* and *Persians*, the other now in use by all those that Learn and Study that Language in its Antiquity, though now they use the Hebrew Alphabet with some small difference therein at this day. They name their Letters of old and now, thus

1. Olaph.	5. He.
2. Beth.	6. Vau.
3. Gomal.	7. Zain.
4. Dolath.	8. Hheth.

9. Teth

9. Teth.	16. Sanchath.
10. Jud.	17. Ain.
11. Coph.	18. Phe.
12. Lomad.	19. Zzode.
13. Lomad.	20. Quoph.
14. Mim.	21. Ris.
15. Nun.	22. Scin.
	23. Thau.

They used also another Alphabet, which they read after the manner of the Greek, and to the right hand, like that of the *Maronites*, mentioned in the Column L.

The Syriack *Letters.*

X. Under this Letter is the *Syriack* or *Syria* Characters, whose Original was the *Chaldee* both in Language and Letters; but afterwards when the *Jews* in their Captivity came to live amongst them, out of the long Commerce they had with them, both Nations lost their proper Language, and fell upon a third, made out of both which was called the *Syriack*. Anciently in the Scripture this Country was called *Aram*, and the people *Aramites*. The first row downwards in this Column is their Character Letters, as they are modernly used, the other Letters after them being more antiently used of those people, being threefold, or of three sorts of Characters: They are named thus, with the number fixed to each Letter, as it is a number in Arithmetick; and also how each Letter answereth to the sound of our English Alphabet.

Olaph a e i o u 1	Lomad l 30.
Beth. b or v consonant 2	Mim m 40.
Gomal. g 3.	Nun n 50.
Dolath d 4.	Semchath s 60.
He h 5.	Ae a e i o u 70.
Vau u w 6.	Phe ph 80.
Zain z ds 7.	Zzode zz or ts 90.
Cheth ch 8.	Quoph q and k 100.
Teth t 9.	Risch r 200.
Jud j consonant 10.	Schin sh sch 300.
Coph c or k 20.	Thau th 400.

They have no Vowels, but have them expressed two ways, first by certain pricks, the other by marks or characters placed over or under the foregoing Letter, as the bottom lines of the Collumn sheweth. Line 23 the Vowel a. 24 e. 25 i. 26 o. 27 u.

The Indian *Letters.*

Y. in this Collumn, and the next adjoining to it, are the *Indian* Characters, the first used by them of *India* within *Ganges*, and the other *India* without *Ganges*; so named as being scituated on the other side, or else on this side of *Ganges*. This Countrey is conceived to be the largest of any of one name in the World, except *China* and *Tartaria*: It hath five sorts of People inhabiting it, *viz.* the Original Natives, the *Moors* or *Arabians*, *Jews* scattered and dispersed into all parts of it, and *Portugueze*, who have many Collonies and Factories in the Ports and Islands. But notwithstanding, considering that the natural *Indians* are by far the greater number, we must have relation only to their Characters, which are thus nominated.

Alepha	Zain	Memin	Cophu
Bethu	Hhethu	Nun	Resu
Gamelie	Tethu	Sachmucheth	Sahnun
Denleztine	Jodo	E	Thauvuo
He	Caphu	Pse	
Vuauf	Lamedu	Zacde	

which may be judged they learned from the *Jews*, because they follow the Order of that Alphabet, though they may pronounce them in their own Dialect.

But for the *Indians* more remote, and without the River *Ganges*, which lying on the further side of *Ganges*, not so well known to the *Jews*, they have a Character of their own, whose Alphabet consists of forty and seven Letters, whose Order and names are these following.

a	dah	he	la	thu	esu
le	le	thu	me	me	re
phu	zthu	the	du	mum	su
beth	he	thu	do	e	sach
beth	vima	io	nun	pse	num
ga	muf	du	sach	zah	tha
me	za	ka	mum	de	vuuo
lie	ju	phu	the	co	

The Sarsinians *Letters.*

Z. Within the Verge of this Collumn, is the *Sarsinians* Alphabetical Characters, by which in Writing, they express their minds one to another; a people which though they have their Letters named Alphabet like with the *Romans*, as a, b, c, d, *&c.* yet they read and writ to the left hand, as all the Eastern people do, and name them according to the Etymology of their own Language, as thus

Alemoxi or Alomon.		Nabelot.	Nabeloti
Bendi		Oithi	
Cati.	Cathi	Perseth.	Porzeth
Delphin		Quithoath.	Quitolath
Efothi.	Epdoti	Rati.	Rasith.
Foithi.	Foiti	Salaty	
Gaipoi		Tothin.	Tothimus
Hetivi.	Hethim	Vzototh.	Valhlith
Ioithi.		Xirconi.	Xiroam
Karthi.	Kithi	Yronothi.	Yaronith
Lechimi.	Lechim	Zozim.	Zocium
Melatil			

The Arminian *Letters.*

AA. The people of *Armenia*, a Country divided into two parts, called *Armenia Major* and *Armenia Minor*; the greater and lesser Countreys of *Armenia*; the greater borders on the lesser, and was so called to distinguish them asunder, but it is now called *Turcomania*, as being the first seat in which the *Turcomans* or *Turks* did fix themselves, after their eruption out of *Scythia*, and from hence made their first Expedition for the Conquest of *Persia*. The lesser is separated from it by the River *Euphrates*; and is situated in the great Country of *Anatolia*, or *Asia* the less; they have two sorts of Characters,

racters, one is said to be invented by St. *Chrysostom*, which is still in use amongst them; the other I suppose more Ancient; however in the two different Characters they had two different ways of reading, for the first downright Row, which runs after the order of the Hebrew, as Aleph, Beth, Gimel, Daleth, *&c.* they both writ and read to the left hand; and the second row downwards, they writ and read to the right hand; but how they nominate either, whether after the Greek or Hebrew, or how else, I am not yet throughly informed.

The Arabick *Letters.*

AB. Under this Collumn is the *Arabian* Characters, a Country of a vast Circuit, insomuch that it is sub-divided into three parts, as *Arabia Deserta*, *Arabia Petrea*, and *Arabia Felix*, the two first so named from the vast Deserts and Wildernesses, and Rock and Stonyness of the Soil in them: These were the places in which the *Israelites* wandred so long, little of them beautified with Grass, or adorned with Trees, except the Palm, nor furnished with Water but by Rain or Miracle; but the latter more pleasant and fruitful, not behind any Country in those parts of *Asia*, rich in Corn and plenty in Cattel, *&c.* Their Language and Letters are *Arabick*, so called from its Country, and not spoken and written here only, but in all places where *Mahometanism* hath got any footing, the *Alcoran* and the publick Offices and Prayers of their Religion being writ in it; nay it is made the natural Language of *Syria*, *Palestine*, *Mesopotamia*, *Arabia*, *Egypt*, and all *Barbary* except *Morocco*. They use 22 Letters, which run Alphabetically like the *Hebrew*.

3. HAVING now done with Letters and Learning, we shall now proceed to the Operations and works of it, for there is no Faculty but they must (in some measure) more or less be endued with it, else they are but Novices in their pretended Arts.

Now next to Divinity, there is none more required to be Scholars than **Physitians, Chyrurgians** and **Apothecaryes**; for as the Minister studyes for the good of Souls, so these ought to be knowing for the good of Bodies: I shall therefore in the next place give you the form and use of such Instruments as are used by such Sciences, and who doth bear such for their Coat Armours.

Chirurgions Instruments.

VII. He beareth Sable, a **Physitians Bath**, Or; the **Pan** Argent. This is nothing else but a Close-stool made with a Back and sides like a Chair, under which is placed a Pan or Stool pan, with a long Pipe at it, whose use is for such as are Blooded in their Fundaments to sit on, with their Posterior parts bare, to which their cometh a hot Steam from the heat of the Water put into the Pan, that it causeth Blood to proceed from the Orifice made either by Leeches, or a sharp Instrument: Now as the Water in the Pan cools, it is drawn out at the short Pipe, and hotter put in again by the long Pipe with a Fulling Dish as the Figure sheweth.

VIII. He beareth Gules, a **Chyrurgions Scarificator**, Or.

IX. He beareth Sable, a **Drawing Goose-Bill**, and a **Dilator**, Argent. These are two useful Instruments for Chyrurgions, of which in particular.

First for the **Drawing Goose-Bill Instrument**, called in Latine *Rostrum Extrahens*, the Drawing Bill; it is for the drawing out of Bullets shot into any part of Mans Body that is gross and fleshy.

Secondly, the **Dilator**, is an Instrument to open or stretch out a thing to its breadth.

X. He beareth Azure, a **Catheter** and a **Cerebellum**, Argent. These are Instruments of Chyrurgery, of which *Ambrose Parry* in his rules of Surgery gives this description.

The **Catheter**, of some termed a **Cataput**, and **Cataputia**; it is an Instrument long, narrow, and round, save on one side a little hollow, spoon like, it is to search a deep wound, and also by the help of its hallow, to pour or squirt in liquid Oyntments and Salves to the farthest part of a Wound.

The **Cerebellum**, which in English may be termed the **Chyrurgions little Piercer**; it being an Instrument to take up broken or bruised Skulls.

In the Dexter Base is a **Bed-Pan**, it is used about Sick, Weak, and Infirm people, that cannot rise out of their Beds to ease Nature, out of which it may be cast forth without any trouble; and taken therefrom by means of an Handle screwed to it which is hollow. B. 3 such, handles rected O. born by *Pan*.

XI. He beareth Gules, a **Speculum Oris**, with a **Screw**, Argent. This kind of Speculum Oris (for there are several sorts and forms, every Chyrurgion pleasing himself with what he best liketh) is by *A. Parry* much approved of before others, either with or without Screws: It is an Instrument to thrust between the Teeth of such as are in a Swoon, or have their Teeth set so close, by reason of some distemper upon them, that they cannot be opened. It is also termed a **Spathomela**, and a **Speculum Latum**, which is an Instrument for the opening or extending of parts that are closed, that the Surgeon may apply remedies. See *chap.* 11. *numb.* 26.

XII. The Field is Sable, a **Table covered** with a white Cloth, whereon is set **variety of things** belonging to Physick and Surgery, all proper. This belongs to the name of *Surgeon*.

The like Table with 3 Bottles upon it proper, in a Field Gules, is born by the name of *Botteller*.

This

This for brevity sake is termed a **Surgeons Table**, or a Table furnished with **Apothecaries Drugs.**

XIII. He beareth Argent, a **Close Stool**, Sable. Of some termed a **Physical Stool**, or a **Doctors Close Stool**: It is used in Purging of Sick and Infirm Bodyes.

XIV. Here in this division is presented to your view in the Fess part, an Instrument used by Midwives and Chyrurgion, that follow the Occupation of Midwifery. It is termed a **Griffons Foot** in *English*, but according to the terms of Art, Blazoned **Pedes Gryphii.** It is to draw out false Conceptions out of the Wombs of Women. See *numb.* 15.

The other two in the chief, belong to the **Perawick makers.** First the **Curling Pipe**, is that in the dexter chief, which is only a rowl of Tobacco Pipe Clay burnt hard, or a turned piece of Wood, for Want broken Tobacco Pipes stand in the like stead, which are for no other use, than turning the hair of a Perawick upon, while it is either Boyling or Baking, to put it into a Curl.

The other is a **Curling Stick**, which is only a handsom Turned Stick Taperwise, about which the hair is set in its orderly Curls, when it is finished up.

That in the Sinister Base, is termed a **Perawick Thimble**, which is no other than an Iron Hoop to put on the Finger, having a piece of Iron coming out from it, with the which Iron striking between the Threads of the Waft, the Hair is woven close and strongly together.

The other two long Instruments lying in the Base, the uppermost with an handle, is termed a **Fontanel**, or a small **Pipe Fontanell.**

That under is an **Iron to Burn a Fontanel**; it is made to go through the hole of the abovesaid Pipe. Some Surgeons have it made streight, not thus bending, with a Screw in the end to put into a handle.

XV. He beareth Gules, a **Pedes Gryphii** with two Hooks Argent. This is another sort of the Instrument called a **Griffyns Foot**, of some termed a **Just**; of this and that before mentioned *numb.* 14. there is of them made, which have 2, 3, and 4 hooks. It is much used in such desperate cases, to pull dead Infants out of the Womb, when there is neither strength or power to deliver them.

The two Instruments in chief and base, are termed an **Dzaena** and its **Stile**, these are to burn infected places. That in base is the **Dzaena**, which is an hollow Iron with a Screw on the side to put a handle on; it is named so from the Disease it helpeth to cure by Burning, which is a stinking Disease in the Nose.

The other is the **Stile**, which is a round Iron to be set in an handle, to be made hot and so thrust into the Ozæna.

XVI. He beareth Argent, a **Doctors Tub**, (otherwise called a **Cleansing Tub**,) Sable; **Hooped**, Or. In this Pockifyed and such Diseased Persons, are for a certain time put into, to Stew, not to Boyl up to an height, but to Par-boyl; from which Diseases of *Morbus Gallicus*, *Noli me tangere*, *Miserere mei*, &c. and from such a **Purgatory**, *Libera nos Domine*; let it be the Prayers of all good people to be delivered from such a **Poudering Tub.**

The **Insessus** is a Bath wherein the Patient sits up to the Navel, which is proper only for Diseases in the Belly and lower parts; and is for easing of pain, softning of parts, dispelling flatulent matters, and frequently for exciting of Womens Courses: It is also termed a **Semicupium** and **Nisessus.**

The **Lotio**, is a particular Bath, wherein the Head, Arm-pits, Hands, Feet, and natural parts are washed, and that with Physical Decoctions.

The **Laconicum, Caldarium**, and **Assa**, or **Balneum Ereum**, was formerly a Cellar without any Water, made to provoke Sweat, which was done by an hot Vapour, or a dry Heat included therein. A **Stove** or Hot House. **Balaneum.**

The **Psammismus**, is a Bath of dry and warm Sand, wherewith the Feet of Men in a Dropsie are dried.

Therma, are natural Baths, either hot or cold.

Vapozarium, is a kind of Sweating or Bathing, when the Patient doth not sit in Liquor, but receives Vapours through an hole, under which there is placed a Pot full of apposite and boyling hot Ingredients, which growing cold, hot matter is added, to continue the heat.

TO
The Worshipful
Sir *THOMAS POWELL* of *HORSLEY*, Baronet;
And to
FRANCIS POWELL of *BIRKENHEAD*, Esq; his Grand-Child, Son and Heir of *Thomas Powel*, Esq; late Deceased.

SIR,

IN a Subject so multiform as this, where so many Varieties are aimed to be treated off, no wonder if in some the Author *hath not hit the Mark; But wheresoever there is Appearance of Omissions, let him beseech you to pass it over in Silence, and impute it to want of Information, more then want of Will, which he doth most Humbly Dedicate to your Serious Thoughts, accounting himself,*

Your endebted Servant,

Randle Holme.

CHAP. XI.

I. HE beareth Gules, a **Still** Argent, **fired** upon it's **Bottom**, Sable, by the name of *Stiller*.

The like to this is the **Crest** of *Winington* of *Eaglesage* in *Cheshire*.

This is termed the **Common**, or only **Still** for the drawing of Waters from **Flowers**, **Leaves**, and **Herbs**, by heat of Fire.

II. He beareth Argent, a **Strong-water Still**, with its **Tub**, and **Receiver**, all proper; by the knowledge of this in a Sign, you may easily smell out a Strong-water-man, or his Shop.

The **Refrigeratorium**, is the wooden vessel full of water, with a Streight or Spiral pipe in it of tyn or lead, which the distiled water is to flow through to keep it cool.

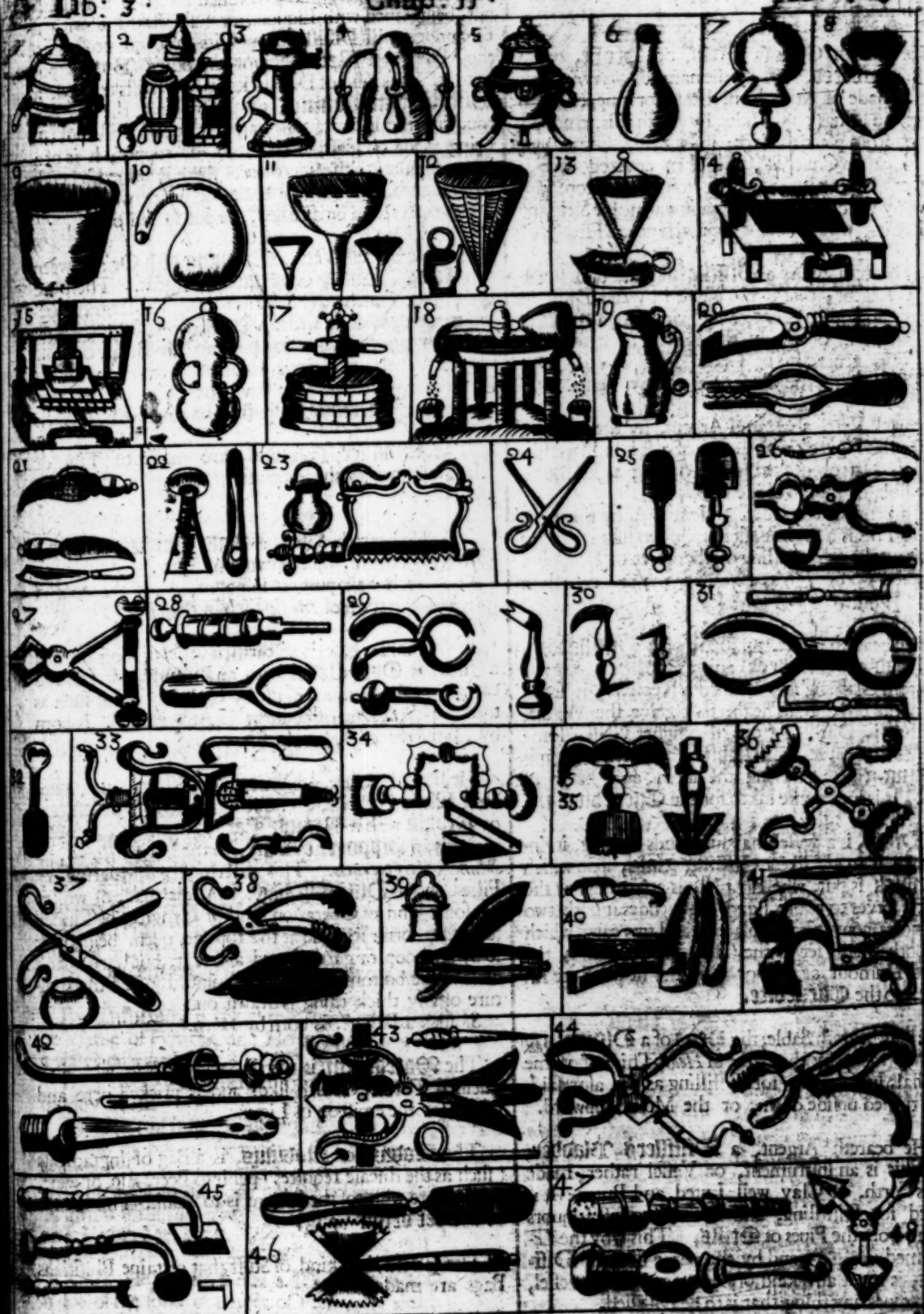
The **Reverberium**, or a **Reverberatory**; Is a Chymical Furnace, or Oven, wherein bodyes that are to be burned, or distiled; are first Calcined.

In the dexter chief of this Square, is another form of a **Still**, of **Distillatory Instrument**, having a **Pyramed** or **Spire-like Head**, fixed on its **Bottom**, contrary to that in *Numb.* I. which may thus be distinguished, the first with a round Head and Receiver: this with a Spire. G. 3 such. A. is born by the name of *Stiller*.

III. He beareth Azure, a **Limbeck** Argent, by the name of *Limbeck*.

This is an other sort of **Strong-water Still**, by which the Spirits of many Things are drawn out into waters, being a Still only for small quantities, as the other is for great.

IV. He beareth Sable, the Head of a Distillatory, with 3 pipes; having as many Receivers, or Bottles set to



Donum Tho: Davenport Civit Cestr. Chirurgi. Admi Pictorum. vop. scul

to them. This is another kind of way of Distilling Waters, by heat of Fire.

V. He beareth Gules (a **Stew**, or **Stove**, or) a **Stew pot covered**, Or. by the name of *Stovera*. This is a Vessel made of either Iron, Brass, or Copper, with high Feet and Rings on the sides, by which it is removed, or carried from place to place; in which a Fire is put, either of Coal or Charcoal, and then covered with a close cover, having some few Air holes on the top: this is a thing by which Rooms are made warm, for Sick and Crazy Bodies, which cannot approach near a Fire.

VI. He beareth Azure, a **Distillatory narrow necked body**, Argent; this is also termed by the Distillers of Waters, and other Chimical preparations, a **narrow necked Infuser**, or a body with a long neck to distill withal: it is generally of Glass. See *Chap. 9. Numb.* 173. **Oscula** is the mouth or open of any Vessel.

He beareth Vert, a **Urinal** Argent, by the name of *Uriter*; see the Figure *chap.* 4. *num.* 48. It is in shape like the fore said Narrow necked body, having a **Rime** about the hole or mouth of the neck.

O. on a bend Geotized. S. 3 Urinals A. by the name of *Phial*. This is a Glass Vessel fit for two uses; the one Distillation, the other casting of the water of Sick, and Distempered Bodies. Mr. *Bosnell* pag. 131. calls it a **Ital** and **Phial**.

VII. He beareth Gules, an **Head** of a **Distillatory**, (or the **Head** of a **Limbeck**) and a **Receiver**, Argent. This bottom Glass, which is called a Receiver, is set to the end of the other Glass head, to receive the Water, or Oyl that is Distilled from the higher Glass; some call it a **Urinal**, and a **Cucurbite**, and a **Ital**, and a **Cupping-glass**, having the form and shape of them all. It is sometyme taken for the **Cucurbitula**.

The **Dish**, is a vessel that surrounds a thing, its inferiour parts is made like a **Cupping glass**, upon which an **Alembick** is put, wherein there is a Channel at the top, which serves to poure liquor in; besides it hath two crooked holes conveniently placed (and two eares which inviron both) (is set to the side) which convey the condensed Humour or Liquor from the head of the Instrument into the **Cucurbite**.

VIII. He beareth Sable, the **Head** of a **Distillatory reversed**, Argent, by the name of *Head*. This is the same kind of Glass Instrument for Distilling as the aforesaid, save it is turned upside down, or the Mouth upward.

IX. He beareth Argent, a **Distillers Bladder**, Gules. This is an Instrument, or Vessel rather, made of Potters Earth, or Clay well Luted and Burnt: It is much used for Distilling, and receiving of Liquors proceeding from the Pipes of **Stills**. This is by the *Latinists* termed **Cucurbita**, and by the name **Cucurbita Distillatoria**, is ment any kind of Brass or Copper vessel, which containes any thing that is to be Distilled.

X. He beareth Sable, a **Stillers Retort**, or a **Retort Glass**, Argent. This is much used for Distillations, being filled with Liquors, and set in *Sand* with a Fire under, will Distill through its crooked neck, into the Mouth of a **Receiver**, or any other **Bottle** put unto it. This kind of Distillation is by Artists termed, a **Distilling in Balnio**; that is by heat, the Fire not touching the Retort. In Latine it is called **Retorta**, being made of glass, stone, Iron, or copper; it is of a Round figure, to the side thereof there is fastned a bended, retorted, and hollow beak, or nose; whereby the things that are to be distilled, are put in and out.

XI. He beareth Vert, a **Tunning dish** Or: between two **Funnel dishes**, or **Funels**, Argent. These are the sorts of Funels, as I have seen used, the large one being made of Wood, with an **Iron**, or **Copper Pipe** at the bottom; which being put into the Bung, or hole of great Vessels, as Barrels, Hogsheads, and Tuns: Having Liquor poured into the Bowl, or Dish, it is conveyed into the Vessel without spilling, or running beside the Vessel.

The **Smaller Funnels**, are made of Tin, or Glass, and are for the same use in filling small Vessels, and Bottles.

XII. He beareth Sable, a **Salt Basket**, or **Salt Purger**, Argent. by the name of *Salter*.

G. 3 such Salt purgers in poynt, A. is the coat of Arms for the town of *Midlewitch* in *Cheshire*.

In the Sinister base, is an earthen vessel of most termed a **Jare**, or **Oyle Vessel** with an **Handle**, (or Bend to carry by) this is much in use by Oyle-men and such as trade in those kind of liquors. A. 3 such B. is born by *Holtzheim* of *Bavaria*.

He beareth Azure, a **Philter**, or **Filter** hanging upon a **Nasle** in cheife, Or: distilling into a **Pottenger**, or **Pipkin** with a **Round Eare**, Argent. Some blazon this an **Hippocrite Bag**, in the Latin *Filtrum*, or *Manica Hippocratis*. This is termed a distillation by Filter, and a **Distilling bag**: which is made of woollen for some kind of Operation, and of Canvice, or Linnen for other sorts: Its wide at the top and open, being kept so by an hoop or garth sewed about it, but narrow and close at the bottom ending in a point. By this the moisture of any thick thing is drawn out.

S. such a Bag A. is born by *Wein*.

The **Matrasum**, is a little Sack, or Bag, wherein is calcined Tartar, or such like; and is pricked here and there, for the emission of Liquor.

The **Nodus** or **Nodulus**, is a Bag of Ingradients (such as the disease requires) put into Beer, Ale, or wine, the tincture whereof the Patient is to drink. This is called a **Diet drink Bag**.

The **Petrinum** kind of Stuff that certaine Phisitians Bags are made off.

There are two sorts of **Pipkins**, that which is for this use, and for the ordering of Sauces by Cooks. The other

other the **Fire Pipkin**, used only to boile things in; it haveing such a mouth, a short streight handle, and three short feet, with a round flattish bottom. Some call them the one a **Sauce Pan**, and the other a **Fire Pan.**

B. 3 such Pipkins O. born by the name of *Pipkine.*

XIV. He beareth Argent, a **Cold Press** set on 4 feet with its **Spout**, and the **Receiver** under it, all Gules. This is an hand Press being double Screwed, the **Nuts** thereof being to be turned with the Hands; whereas the following Press is to be turned about with an Iron Bar. This is to draw liquor out of any kind of moist Ingredience, by presing it onely.

XV. He beareth Azure, an **Oyle Press**, with its **Spout**, and **Receiver**, Or. This is a Press that goeth with one Screw, and is for the drawing of Oyles by pressure, out of any sort of Ingredient through heat, or by the means of hot Plates.

XVI. He beareth Gules, a **Distillers Pellicanus**, or **Pellicane**, Argent. By the name of *Pelleyard* This is a Glass vessel which serveth the Distiller for no other use than Circulateing of the Quintessence of Things. There are but these ways of drawing and distilling of Liquors, *viz*: by Vessels, by Presses, and by Stills, which are of most use; what other things are imployed about Distillings, are for the same purpose, and uses, as these aforesaid are. This is of some termed a **Circulatorium**, from the ascending and descending of the Liquor about it, as if it were in a circle.

The **Diploe**, or **Diploma**, is a kind of double vessell used by Chymists.

The terms of drawing forth of Oyls & Waters

By **Expression**, that is by pressing the Ingredients from whence a Liquor is drawn in Presses

By **Impression**, by drawing it out through heat, in pressing it between hot Plates.

By **Distillation**, or **Solution**, is an extracting of Liquors by force of heat.

By **Ascension**, is to raise the Vapours on high by the force of qualifyed heats.

By **Descension**, is to cause the Vapours to fall downwards.

By **Infusion**, is the extracting of the Quintessence, or Virtue of Flowers, and Herbs, and draw them into a water or wine.

By **Filtre**, is to Seperate the Cleare from Gross and muddy water.

By **Purgation**, or **Deliquium**, is a purging or a draining by fire, or a melting of Calx into Lixivious Humour.

Which Operations are performed by a **Retort**, the **Balneo Mariae**, **Sand**, **Vapours**, **Dung**, **Sun**, or a **Reverberatory.**

XVII. He beareth Gules, a **Wine Press**, Or. This is one of the sorts, or maner of Presses, by which the Liquor, or Blood of the Grape is Squeesed out; and that is by Trading. Such Presses are mentioned by *Job* and *Nehemia*; and the People blamed, because they Trod in them on the Sabbath day. *neh.* 13 15. *job.* 24 11. for which they had a curse of thirst, as a punishment layd upon them. A. the like G. is born by *Anhault.*

XVIII. He beareth Azure, on a **Mount** in base, a **Wine Press** fixed upon five **Standards**, or **Bearers**, Or; with a **Rouling Stone** therein, Gules: the **Liquor Distilling** into **Vessels**, or **Receivers**, of the Second. This is termed also, the **Mill-Press**, the **Grape-Mill**, or **Rowling Wine press**, because the liquor of the Grape, Apples, or Peares, are Squeesed out by means of a weighty Stone rowled over them. This is in blazon called a **Cyder** or **Perry mill**, a **Varges** or **Crab mill.**

There is an other kind of Mill which I have seen, for the crushing of all sorts of Fruit, to get out the juice: it is made after the maner of a **Tanners mill**, haveing a great round Stone (like a Mil-stone) turning round, in a wooden Trough: haveing Spouts in the sides, out off which the liquor runs into vessels set to receive it.

He beareth Sable, a **Quart** Argent. By the name of *Littlegood.* This is a vessel by which all liquid things are measured, which according to it Size, hath a several denomination: the least is an **Half Gill**, for

2 Half Gills makes a **Gill**, or **Quadran.**
2 Gills makes an **Half Pint.**
2 Half Pints makes a **Pint.**
2 Pints makes a **Quart.**
2 Quarts makes a **Pottle.**
2 Pottles makes a **Gallon.**

By these measures, Wine, Water, Ale, and Beer, are measured; yet with this difference, that the Barrel of Beer is 36 gallons, all other Liquors, but 32 gallons.

B. 3 Quarts A. is born by *Hernack.* The same with their Lids or Covers open. is born by *Seater*

XX. He beareth in cheif a **Levitor** with an **Pandle**, and in base a **Vollella**, or **Puller.** These are two Chirurgicall Instruments and of great use.

The **Levitor**, it is used to take up depressed Skulls, or to raise the Skull impressed. Imitateing Coopers, who are wont to reduce the boards of their wine vessels that are crushed in, with the like Instrument: It is called in Latine **Elevator**, or **Elevatorium.**

The **Vollella**, or **Puller**, or **Tweezers**, it is an Instrument for manuall operation; it hath double teeth at the end of it, by which they take forth a peece of a bone which is corrupt and moueable; also Darts, Bullets, and the fragments of them: and all tents and hairs, with all other extraneous things of that kind, which are found in wounds: are by the toothed part of this Instrument taken forth. By this also women pull out hairs by the roots in their eye-brows, and from other parts of the body, if superfluous. The broader end of this will serve to spread Plasters on linnen cloth, or leather, for want of a **Spatula.** see *numb* 28 *& chap* 12 *numb* 10. It is also written **Vulsella**, which is the Chyrurgions Little Tongs, and are made of different shapes according to the diversity of their uses.

XXI. He beareth Gules, a **Dismembering Knife.** and an **Incision Knife,** the Points Counterposed, Argent; **Hafts** Or. Born by the name of *Blood.*

The **Dismembering Knife,** is a crooked **Blade,** especially towards the point; it is to cut the flesh so far as the bone when a part is to be Sawed off: and is necessary before the amputation of the Leg or Arm. Some Chyrurgions have the blade of this kind of Knife almost of a Semicircle form, or **Sickle** like.

The **Scolopoma-chaerion,** is a Chyrurgions knife with which wounds in the Thorax are widened; tis also used in the opening of larg Swellings; as also the opening of the Abdomen.

The **Incision Knife,** the Latin name it **Scalpellum,** it is a small **Pen knife** with a bending point, and some are streight pointed, slender, and narrow bladed, from whence they are terned **Woodcocks bill knives** With these Incision knives wounds are opened, and such as are too narrow are dilated. And also great Impostumations are cut, and Laneed.

The **Syringomata** are Chyrurgions knives which they open Fistua's withall.

The **Scalpellum Umbilicarium,** is the Navell-knife, where with Midwives do cut the Navell strings of new born children.

The third sort of knife is termed the **Myrtle Leafe pointed knife,** these are double knives, sharp on both sides, which at the end resemble the fashion of a Mirtle leafe, it is used to cut off Wens, and Womens breasts as are Cancerated. see *chap.* 12 *numb.* 26.

B. 3 such in pale A. hafts O. born by *Elbing.*

The **Amphismela,** is a kind of an Anatomical knife, or Instrument, usefull in the Dissection of Bodyes.

The **Novacula,** is a Chyrurgions knife, the shape thereof differs according to the difference of the Operation, and therefore can hardly be described.

XXII. In this quarter are two other Instruments that belong to a Chyrurgion, The first is the **Dismembering Chizell,** which is used to cut of Toes and Fingers, and also the tops of the Arm, and of the Radius.

The second is the **Probe,** the Latine from its office term it **Ulnerum Explorateriumi,** which is a long slender Instrument round, with a kind of knob, or button at one end, an eye like to a Needle at the other. Yet in stid of an eye, some have a round flat end (a little turning) after the maner of a **Spatula.** Some make them bending at both ends, others have them streight all along. It is for that end generally made of Silver, that it may be bended upon necessary occasions; the round end is used to search out the state of wounds, and Fistula's; and also with Lint rowled about the end, to cleanse wounds from matter and corruption drawn out by Plasters. The broad end is called, the **Probe tobacco pott,** and is used to apply powder, and plagets annointed with ointments, to wounds. see *chap.* 12 *numb.* 12.

XXIII. He beareth Sable, a **Dismembering Saw** Argent, **Handle,** Or. born by *Nimicane.* also by *Saw.* This is in forme and fashion like the Ioyners **Tenant Saw,** onely this hath the handle and the back all made of Iron worke: with this bones are Sawed asunder, when either a Legg, or Arme is to be taken off. By the benefite of a Screw, the Saw plate is made either strait, or more loose, in the iron frame.

B. the like A. is born by *Membraine.*

In the dexter chief is the **Barbers Chaffer,** (or as in our refined speech some call it a **Chaffern,** and a **Caldafer,** from the latine *Calda ferens*) wherein is carried hot water, for the triming and shaveing of such as desire to go according to the mode. And such is born by the name of *Grimold. viz:* S. the Chaffer A.

XXIV. He beareth Sable, a Chyrurgions **Forceps,** Argent. by the name of *Forces.* these born in Arms are ever extended. haveing the points erected, or dejected, which is to be mentioned. This is an Instrument like to **Cizers,** save the cuting part is flat, and fall one to an other, the backs being round; or to say more properly a paire of **Pincers,** which are used by the Thumb, and Fore or midle Finger, to take off a plaster; or used for severall other operations. They are of severll shaps and sizes as long, crooked, with teeth, with beaks, in fashion of an half moon, which according to their different shaps have different names

XXV. In this Square you are presented with two sorts of **Spatula's.** The first hath only the simple name of a **Spatula,** whose use is to mix and temper Salves of several sorts upon the ball of the hand, to prepare the same for **Tents** to put in deep, and **Lints** (which are termed **Plagets**) to lay upon ebb wounds. As also to spread plasters either on cloth or leather. Some term them a **Spatula,** or **Splatter.** see *numb.* 46.

The Second is the **Spatula Linguae,** or a Tongue Spatula; it is principally used to hold down the tongue when the mouth is to be looked into, in case of sores, or other distempers arifeing from upward causes. See an other kind of them in *numb.* 44.

S. a fesse betw: 3 such A. is born by *Spatlinge.*

XXVI. He beareth Gules, a **Speculum Oris** in fesse between a **Great or Strong Levitor,** and a **Abula Spoon,** Argent. but of them in perticulare.

The **Speculum Oris,** is an Instrument for the opening of the mouth when the teeth are so strongly set together, that noe ordinary meanes will open them, see *cap* 10 *numb.* 11. For distinction sake this may be termed the **Pincer-like Speculum Oris.** There is another kind of them in the next Square, *numb.* 27.

The **Great or Strong Levitor,** It is an Instrument by which depressed Skulls are raised, and in both its office with more force then that described *numb.* 22 & *chap* 12. *numb* 3. Because it hath not only the strongnes of it in the hand of him that raiseth it, but also in the head of the Patient.

The **Abula Spoon,** is an Instrument made of Latine or Silver, and is applyed to the Uvula that is fallen; being

ing a small Spoon, whose handle is hollow, and about 8 or 9 inches long, and is joyned to the lower part of the Spoon; this Spoon being filled with Pouders that are drying and digesting, and put under the Uvula relaxed, the Surgion takes the lower end of the Pipe in his mouth, and by blowing, scatters the pouder all about upon the Uvula, and the Palate.

XXVII. He beareth Sable, a **Spatulum Oris** with a **Screw**, Argent. This is another kind of Instrument to open the mouth wide with a Screw, when the Teeth are fastned and joined forcibly together, yet by the help hereof they are drawn asunder, that Meat or other Remedies may be applyed to Sick persons that they perish not. This is an Instrument highly commended by *Amb. Parey*, and others, for that use.

XXVIII. He beareth in this quarter two necessary Instruments used by Doctors and Chirurgions. The first is termed a **Syringe**, or **Clyster Syringe**; a **Mouth** or **Ear Syringe**; so called, because used chiefly about those parts: It is made of Pewter or Silver, and serveth to draw out any Liquid matter, or to squirt in any thing to the Organs of Hearing, or to the Larinx in the Throat, to cleanse and heal Swellings and Ulcers in those parts: It hath several names, as **Syphon, Syringa**, and **Enterenchyta.** Sometimes the streight Pipe is taken off, and a **Crooked Pipe** screwed in its place, which is used in some cases when the streight Pipe is not convenient to draw forth, or cast in any Liquor. See *chap.* 12. *numb.* 33.

V.a Cheveron betw. 3 such erected A.born by *Gaucer.*

The **Enchyta**, is an Instrument wherewith Liquids are instilled into the Eyes, Nostrils or Ears, called also **Otenchyta** and **Degin.**

The **Rhinenchytes**, is a little Syringe to inject Medicines into the Nostrils.

The second Instrument is called a **Twitcher**, or **Twitchers**; by them Hair superfluously growing in any part is pulled up by the Roots, especially on the Eye-Brows, Eye-Lids, and the Nose; the other end serveth for a small **Spatula**; see *numb.* 20.

XXIX. These Instruments are called **Draughts**, or **Pincers** for the Teeth; with them are drawn all sorts of Teeth, whether Dog, or Gum Teeth; but more particularly. The first is termed **Draughts** for the Teeth, or **Teeth Pincers**, which hold a Tooth fast between them, and by a sudden Wrench or Twitch, takes the Root and all together away with it. Some term this the **Pacis** or **Forfex**, or **Dvontagra.**

The next as lyeth under it, is termed a **Forcer**, or a **Toothed Pincer**, whose use is to pull out Teeth, which neither the **Pellican** or **Common Draughts** can draw forth. See another *chap.* 9. *numb.* 179.

The third is termed a **Tooth Levitor**; some have them with three Teeth, but most use them of two Teeth; with the help of this Instrument, the roots and pieces of Rotten Teeth are prised out of the Gums Some give these kind of Instruments the name of **Punchers** or **Forcers**; see *chap.* 12. *numb* 23.

A. 3 such in Fess S. over all a Bar Gemell of the second, is born by the name of *Palvern*, of the *Nether Rhine.*

XXX. Here are two sorts of **Flegmes**, which some term **Fleams**, or **Tooth Rippers** and **Tooth Pickers**; with these the Gums are separated from the Teeth, that they may be pulled out with less danger and trouble. They are made after several fashions, and called by the Learned *Phlebotomus*, or *Phebotomus*, which is also a Blood Letter.

Argent a Cheveron between 3 such Fleams Sable, is a part of the Barber Chirurgians Coat of Arms.

B. one in Bend A. born by *Bayrn Van Caldif*, of *Thorile.*

G. 3 such A. born by *Van Galen.* Also O. and them G. by the same name.

O. 3 such S. is born by *Schelen.*

XXXI. In this Square is a **Pair** of **Dismembering pincers**, between two **Flegmes.** For the first, which is the **Dismembring Nippers**, as some term them, are things like **Pincers** with sharp edges at the closeing place; they are used for Amputation chiefly, and are appointed to the cutting off of the Fingers and Toes, as greater Instruments are used for the dismembring of the Armes, and Leggs.

In the chief and base, is set down two other forms of **Flegmes** for the riping of the Gums: the first haveing a **flat edge** at the contrary end, to cleanse the teeth from Scales. And the other hath a **sharp point** to pick the teeth. Some draw the Flegmes with a plaine **shank** with out any work upon it; and so do the *French & Germans.*

And as these **Flegmes** are the vulgar, or common way of making them; yet some have a sharp pointed hooke at one end, and flat at the other, for the scrapeing and cleansing of teeth from scales, and other hard substances which useth to fix themselves to the teeth. And others make the **Phlegmes** crooked at both ends. others one end crooked, and hook like; and the other flat, yet ending in a sharp point, after the form of a leafe: and are termed **Gravers**, or **Flegmes** with **Gravers**, which are for the same use as the flat end Flegmes. The crooked end being made sharp doth serve not only for tooth drawing, but also to Launch and cut the Gums, to let them blood, or to cut oftentymes the superfluous flesh away, which over groweth the teeth. From whence many call them **Launcets**, or **Teeth Lancets.**

The **Cyclisci**, are Chyrurgions Instruments wherewith they scrape away corrupt flesh, or the like; they are made in the form of an half moon. see *numb.* 33.

XXXII. He beareth Sable, an **Eare picker**, or an **Eare pick**, Argent. By the name of *Yarwicke.* The use of this Instrument is to cleanse the eares from waxe, which often causeth a Deafness in the party: the other end is used to cleanse the teeth. see *numb.* 46.

S. 3 such A. is born by *Gangray.*

B. 3 in fesse O. is born by *Gibbert*.

XXXIII He beareth a **Cerebellum**, betw: a **Scraping Spatula**, and a **Lavitor**. But of these severally. The **Cerebellum**, or **Cerebellum** with a **Screw**, is an hollow pipe, with a square shouldering and two handles like to the **Forceps**, through wich **Pipe** goeth a long **Piercer**, with a most sharp **Worm**, or **Screw** at the end, which being conveyed into a wound made by a Gun-shot by the help of the Pipe in which it is hiden, when the Bullet is felt in the wounds, then the Piercer is Screwed out of the Pipe into the Bullet, by which meanes it is drawn out, and the wound healed.

The **Scraping Spatula**, so termed because the one end is made with a **Scraping hook** to cleanse wounds, and take of Splenters from Bones: and the other end haveing the forme of a **Spatula**, it is used for the spreading of Plasters, and takeing out of Unguents, to mix and temper them, and to put them on Lint. a **Cyciisci**, see *numb.* 31.

The **Levator**, or **Levatorie**, some write it **Leviter**, it is an Instrument by which a depressed or bruised Scull is elevated or raised up. There are several forms of this Instrument, as *numb.* 26 29 *&* *cha.* 12 *num.* 3 23. The lesser sorts are termed **Levers**.

O. the like in bend B. is born by *Gosse*.

G. 3 such A. is born by *Leviter*, or *Levator*.

XXXIV. There are two sorts of **Trepans**, or **Head Saws**, the one is the **Male Trepan**, the other the **Female**, now all the difference in them, is that one hath a **Pin** in the middle, the other hath not. They are fixed either in a **Brace** made of Iron fit for its use; or else in an **Handle**, or thing to turn it by after the maner of an **Auger**, or Carpenters **Oger**. So that this Trepan being thus furnished for use, is termed a **Trepan fitted in** its **Brace**: whose operation is to cut away a part of the Skull that is broken or bruised down into the head, but it is seldome used, and the less the better, seeing other Instruments will perform it work with less danger, when there are fractures in the Cranium.

A. a Trepan in a Brace B. is born by *Tripan*.

O. on a bend B. 3 Female Trepans A. by *Van Hacken* a *Dutch* familey

The Instrument under the Trepan is called a **Lancet**, it is a sharp pointed and slender blade made of Razor mettle, and sharp in both edges; fixt in a **Tortoise case**, or such like, to preserve it point, and keep it cleane. It use is to make an Orifice in a Vein for blood letting: as also to cut the Vessels, and open Impostumations in the Skin, and other incisions more in the flesh as need requireth. It is in latin *Lanceta*, and *Scalprum Chyrurgicum*.

The **Pyulcus**, is such a kinde of Instrument, where with *Pus*, or other corrupted matter, is evacuated, or let forth from a sore part.

XXXV. This is the other form of the **Male Trepan** set in it **Handle**, or hold no turn it by. Of its use I have said some thing before, it being only to take up broken and bruised Skulls. see *chap.* 12 *numb.* 4 5.

Mr. *Woodall* in his Surgeons Mate, called this a **Trefine**, *a tribus finibus*, from its three ends, the one performing the office of the **Trepan**, the Handle being at one end toothed serves for the **Levitor**; and the other smooth, for a **Smooth Levitor**. see *cha.* 12 *num.* 7.

G. the like A. handle B. is born by *St. Ioane*.

The Instrument called a **Lentell**, or a **Lenticular**, in *English* a **Cleanser**, or **Smoother**: this is an other kinde of **Trepan** which is put into the **Handle** aforesaid when it is to be used, in which there is a square hole so made in it, by meanes whereof the end of the Trepan being wrapt about with Cotton, is easily put in, and taken out, as need requireth the chang of these round Saws. It is used to cleanse away all small shivers and raspings of bones, proceeding from the operation of excision; as also for the removeing of what wilbe offencive to the *Dura Mater*, or hinder the healing of the wound, as those very little small Erosions, Scrapings, dust, or Spills of bones are very apt to do.

XXXVI. He beareth Azure, a Paire of **Plain Pelicans**, these being toothed at the ends are made fit by a smal boulster to fit it to the tooth, will by the wrench or turnt of a strong and nimble hand (not by pulling) raise and force up out of the Gums, any tooth it can take hold on; and that with much ease to the Patient. see *chap* 12 *numb* 16. an other kinde of Pellican.

XXXVII This is the right or **Streight Pincers** for the **Polipus**, being for no other use, the same is of Steele, and is in the tentive part, or **shank** that holdeth, made outwardly **convex**, but inwardly **concave**, haveing an **edge** inwardly bent backwards. So that it can cut nothing but the Polipus, which it layeth hold on. see the Crooked one, *chap* 12 *numb* 15.

In the base of this Square, is that which is called a **Cuping Glass**, by the Chyrurgions term'd **Ventosa**. It is a round Glass, bottle like, but without a neck. It is applyed to the body with Scarrification, or without it; to draw out the blood, and flatulent matter, or to divert it into other parts. It is also called a **Cucurbita Cacca**, or **Cucurbitula**. Some are made of Brass, Tin, or Horn, *&c.*

XXXVIII This is the **Toothed Crane bill Pincers**, by some Chyrurgions the Beakes are made bending, as in these; yet others make them **streight beakes**, the bent being only in the ioynt, or reveting part, directed to an obtuse angle: thereby fit to take any thing that is smal out of wounds, and to draw them forth.

The under Instrument in this quarter is a **Razour** in it **haft**, this is very sharp in the **edge**, with a broad and thick **back**, by which meanes it is fastned in a bone, horn or tortice shell haft, like a **foulding knife**. Its use is well known to most, which is chiefly to shave away haire where and when necessity requireth, which is the Barbers office. But the Surgion useth it very often about his imploy, especially when there is no feare of hurting the parts un-

under the place where Incisions and Scarifications are to be made, or such like operations wrought.

XXXIX. Here in this Square, in the dexter corner is set a **Barbers Chaffeing dish**, or a **Fire pan**, or **pot**, with a **Turning handle**. This is much used by Barbers in the winter tyme, especially in those Shops that have no fire places: It may by the handle be transported from place to ylace, but generally it is set under a Brass or Copper Bason with a flat and broad bottom, which is called the - - - - - - - - - - - on which if their linnen clothes be rubbed, or let thereon ly, in a little tyme it will make them hot, or warme for their use.

S. such a Chaffeing dish A. is born by *D: la Toure.*
B. 3 such O. is born by *Barber.*

The **Furnus**, or **Furnace**, is the Oven or place that a fire is conveniently kept in for Chymicall uses; and it is either open or covered. a **kiln**, or **still hole**.

The other Instrument is a **Razour**, raised out of the **haft**, and **tipped** with Silver; that is, Silver plates engraven are fixed upon each end of the haft, to make the same look more gent and rich: as it is very oft done by yong proud Artist's who adorne their Instruments with Silver Shrines: more then seting themselves forth by the glory that attends their Art; or praise obtained by Skill.

XL. This is a **Speculum Ani**, to be opened by the thrusting of the ends together with the hand: of some it is termed a **Speculum Matricis**, which is the same for the effects; for both names declare its use, which is to open the Fundament, or Matrix, as occasion shalbe offered upon any grief, or disease happening therein: neither can the grief in those parts be well seen without it. It is also called a **Dilatorium**, because it dilates or opens such parts. And also **Dioptra**, that through the enlarging of the Matrix a dead *Fœtus* may be extracted out of the womb.

The Instrument above it, is called a **Scraping tool**, with an **handle**. Of these there are diverse sorts, as some are only bent in the end and flat, but sharp in the edge: others three parts round; some round in the bent; some long; others pointed. *&c.* Whose use is generally for the Scraping away the fissures of the Skull, as smal as hairs, or Scales of rotten and decayed bones. Some of the Learned term them **Raspatorium**, Rasping hookes; or **Scalprum Rasorium**, Pareing Tools, Scraping Instruments. to shave and scrape filthy and scaly bones. Its called also **Pyster**. See *numb.* 31.

XLI. This Instrument is termed a **Seton**, or **Seton pincers**, or Pincers to burn a Seton in the neck. see *cha.* 12 *num.* 8 10. other forms of them. With these is the skin and flesh in any part of the body taken up, so as an hole (which the Artists term a Seton) may be burned through, and the other parts adioyning shall receive no hurt, or be inflamed. It opens & shuts like the **Forceps**

In the chief of this square, is an other forme of a **Needle**, with a broad and flat point, like to a Willow leafe; which Surgions use in some kinde of operations.

XLII. In this quarter is a **streight Needle**, between a **Catheter**, and a **Siringe pipe**. Of the use of these in perticular, take as followeth.

First the **Needle**, it is long and streight, and called by the Artists a **stitching needle**, because with it, and the **stiching quill**, wide and gapeing wounds, or cuts are sowed or drawn together, which they term (Stitching up of a wound) it serves also for the sowing of Rollers of cloth together; for makeing the readier, and more convenient Ligatures in wounds and ulcers, as occasion is.

Celsus informs us that the Ancients used for this operation an Instrument called **Fibula**, or **Sutures**, which was no other then a Needle full of soft untwisted Silk or Thread, wherewith they sowed the Gapeing Lipps of a wound together. Some call it **Acia**, or this needle full of thread they term **Cinculum**, **Ligatura**, **Colligatio**, **Obligatio**, or **Ligamentum**, all which signifieth a tying or binding. See *Rhodius* in his discourse about the word **Acia**.

The **Catheter**, or **Urine probe**, as some term it, is a long pipe with some few holes at one end, the other wide and open; into which pipe is put a Pin called the **Itinerarium**, haveing a turned or hooped head to hold it by, when it is taken out, or put in. The Instrnment is Made of silver, that it may be bent as occasion is. If this be thrust into the passage of a mans yard, and into the bladder, it removeth the Stone that lyeth in the neck thereof and giveth liberty to Urine upon the Itinerarium, or Pin drawing back. Now the pin is for no other use in the Pipe, but to keep the Urine that it do not presently run forth till the Cutter of the Stone, or Phisitian have found how the Stone lyeth. This is of some termed a **Fistulus Instrument**.

The **Itinerarium**, or Pin which is thrust into the cavity of the Pipe, being fixt in the Urinary passage, shews the neck of the Sphincter of the Bladder, that an Incision may be more surely made to find out the Stone.

The **Syringe pipe**, or more properly a **Glister pipe** though it will serve for either uses: If for to Syring the mouth, throat, or any deep wound, it is then Screwed on the end of a Syring (as mentioned *numb.* 28.) for the pipe is to be put on and taken off at pleasure; besides the pipes are diversly made, some hollow streight through, for to force or squirt a liquor forwards; others with severall holes in the end (as in this) to Squirt round about, for the cleansing and washing of deep sores. see *ch.* 12 *n.* 33.

If for the **Clyster** or **Glister pipe**, as vulgarly called, then it is fixed into the mouth or bottom of a blader (wherein Glister ingredients are tyed up) and so thrust up the Fundament to inject the same into the Bowells.

That which stops the Glister Pipe that the medicine runs not forth, is termed the **Endiacum**. Which is no other thing else but a cloth or cork hung in a thread, & put into the pipe; by which thread the same is drown out, when the pipe is put into the fundament.

XLIII. Here you are presented with three Instruments more belonging to Chvrurgicall operations. a **Speculum Matricis** haveing a **screw**, between a **Bodkin**, or **Needle** for a **seton**, and a **Spatula occuli**. Of all which

which take this short description.

First for the **Speculum Patricis,** or **Screw'd Speculum Ani,** this is an inspecting Instrument, yet contrary to that mentioned *numb:* 40. but for the same uses to that, though it be of an other forme or shape: This being opened and shut with a Screw, haveing four pointed Plates with cavities, to dilate or open that part into which it is put, as the thing it selfe doth more plainly manifest, then by words can be described.

The second is a **Bodkin,** or a long and sharp **Needle** set in an **Haft,** or **Handle** to hold it by: the Artists call it a **Seton Needle,** or Needle to burn a Seton. Which is done by help of the **Pincers** mentioued in *numb.* 41. and *chap,* 12 *numb.* 8. 10. And this Needle being made answerable to the holes in the said Piucers, and heated red hot, is thrust through the said holes the Skin and flesh held in them, it passeth most nimbly, and makes a Seton, or perforates the flesh almost painelefs.

The third is a **Spatula Oculi,** which is an Instrument like a Ring fixed on the end of a **pin,** or strong silver **wyer**; Oculists use to put it over the Ball of the eye to keep both the eye and the lids stiddy, and firm from motion, while the Haw, or Cataract, or the like, is cutting of the sight of the eye; and also for other operations to be performed on the same. Some Chyrurgions have the Ring open above, like the figure in *numb.* 28.

XLIV. The first of these Instruments is termed the **Speculum oris,** or rather the **pincer-like Spatula Linguae**: with it the Tongue and lower Chap is pressed down, by takeiug hold on the Tongue, and under the Chin at once: And is very necessary to hold open the Mouth for the better applying of medicines to the Roofe, and Throat: And also that the diseases of the Mouth may be seen exactly, and handled with convenient Instruments. But it was chiefly made to preserve the teeth of Furious, and Astonished men, when drawn asunder; untill such tymes as they have swallowed down meate and drink Sufficient.

The second Instrument is called a **Crane Bill Pincers** with a **spring,** this is an other way of makeing them, which is contrary to that before mentioned, being much shorter and rounder in the Beak, whose operation and the use hereof see *numb.* 38.

XLV. These are several sorts of **Cauteres,** that is to say **Cautering Irons,** or **Searing Irons,** with which persons are burned behind in the Neck, when there is in them any tokens of an Apoplexy, Epilepsy, or Vertigo; that is the Dead Palsy, the Falling Sickness, and the Giddiness or turning in the Head: Also they are often used to Cauterize any Vein or Artery in strong Fluxes of Blood, which cannot otherwise be staid; and to Burn the whole end of the stump of an Arm or Leg when cut off. They are in Latine called *Cauterium,* and *Escharoticum.* *

The first a **square Cautery,** of which they have several sizes, and round.

The second a **round Cautery**; of them there is diverse proportions.

The third a **hook end Cautery**; there is also of them in the form of an Heart, and like Plummers and Glasiers Soddering Iron Heads, set thus in Hafts or Handles.

That in the Sinister Base, is the form of another hook end, of such kind of Irons to Cauterize withal.

O. 3 Hook end Cauterys S. debrused with 2 Barrulets B. is born by the name of *Balvernberg.*

XLVI. Is a **Spatula** with an **Ear-pick** at the end of it. Of the double use of this Instrument; see in *numb.* 32. how it is used to cleanse the Ears; and in *numb.* 25. how used for the mixing of Salves.

S. 3 such in Pale A. is born by *Gill,* or *Gillon.*

The second is an **Head Saw** set in an Handle; it resembles a double edged Axe or Hatchet, one fixed to the head of the other, and set in a round handle, save the edges are toothed like a Saw. Its use is to cut the Skull in case of Fractures, and for divers other Operations where small Saws are to be used.

G. the like erected A. Handle O. is born by *Langansfield.*

XLVII. Are the two **Pipes** of the Instrument, called **Enema Fumosum,** or **Fistula Fumosa**; the **Fumous Clyster pipe,** with which a Clyster is given by Smoak, or of Smoak; the Stopples thereof (as to its parts) are seven in number, all screwed one into another; then the same is set in the hole of the **Clyster pipe,** the bignes whereof ought to be of ordinary length, or according to Art, either bigger or lesser, as the present occasion may urge.

The **Stopple** (which is the higher Figure) hath a **large Head,** which contains the fumous Medicine, and hath a cover screwed upon it full of holes for the better inflation or blowing of the Smoak down the Pipe, and so through the **Clyster Pipe** placed in the Fundament, as in the manner of other Clysters.

XLVIII. Is the Figure of a **Trefine,** or a **three-fold Trepan,** of some termed a **three formed Trepan.** It is an Instrument made of Iron, which hath three diverse sorts of **Trepans**; the use whereof is necessary in the pricking of the Skull, that doth not penetrate both the Tables; that with them the print made upon the Skull may be taken away. The Triangular part of this Instrument may also be used for the **small Trepan,** with which the first Table of the Skull is almost perforated or pierced, before the **Triploides** with a **Screw** be applyed to his Operation. See *chap.* 12. *numb.* 6. 7.

TO
The Right Worshipful
Sir *RICHARD MIDLETON*, of *Chirk Castle*, Baronet.

SIR,

WHen Work-men are to raise a piece of Work, they generally consult their own Genius, and ponder their Brains; not only so, but they ask Counsel of the Dead, viz. *Books, whereunto access may be had at all times without much Cost or Trouble: But in this Work (especially in the raising of the Third Story, a Work never before seen) the Living were only to be Treated, and the Choisest amongst Professions and Arts were to be advised withal, whereof some were far distant, others seldom at home or at leisure, some unwilling to communicate their knowledge, others not at all affable, as fearing to have their Mistery discovered; however through Labour that is obtained, which is presented to your Noble Consideration, and Bounteous Acceptance, from him that you may Command whilst on Earth.*

Randle Holme.

CHAP. XII.

1. IN this Chapter is the continuance of such Instruments as were omitted in the precedent Chapters: and are herein farther illustrated, and set forth in their due shapes, and described as to their peculiar uses.

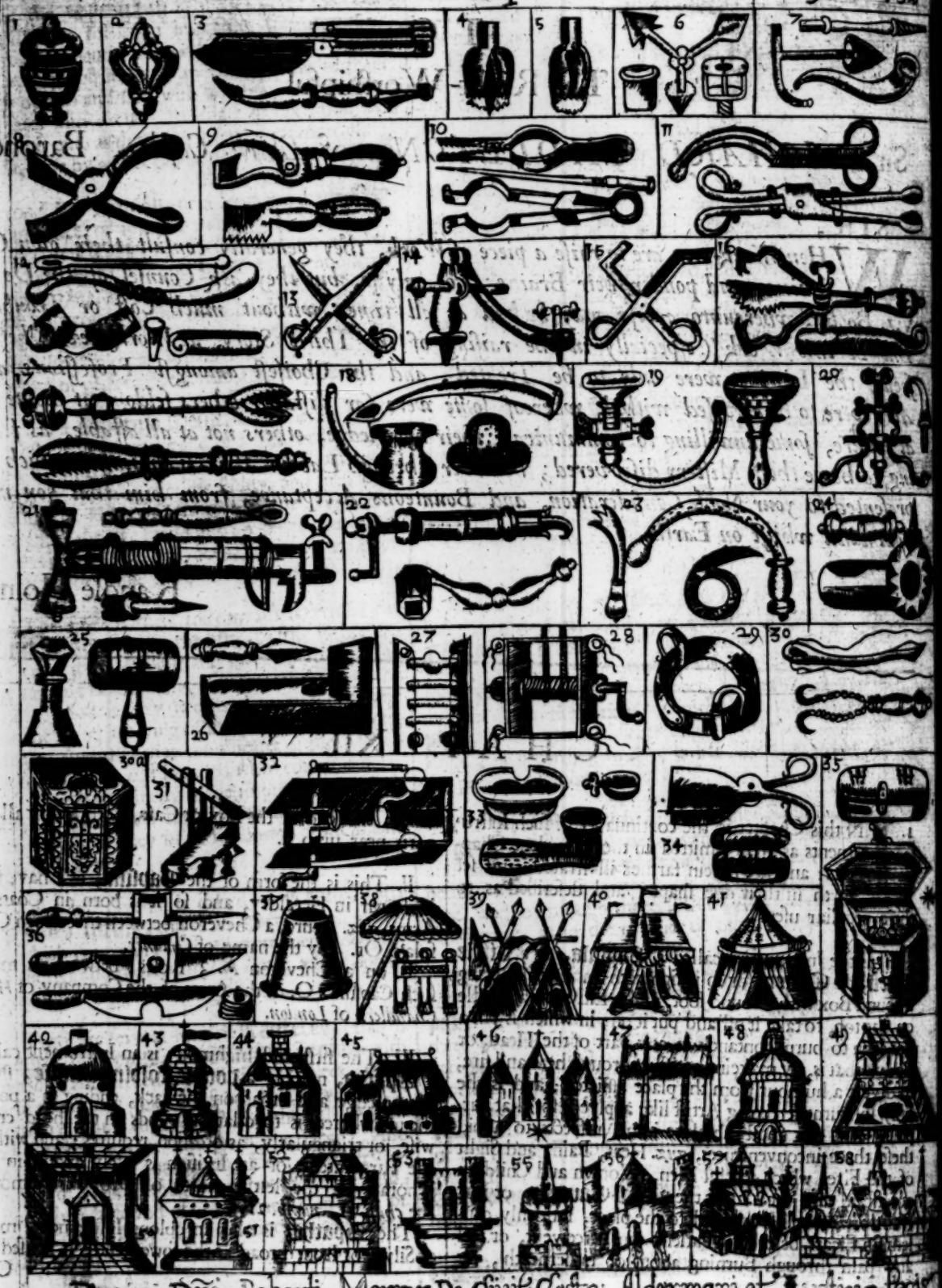
I. Is the Instrument called a **Capsula**, or a **Little Chest**, or **Coffer**, for so it signifieth in *English*, being a round Box with a round foot, and a Lid with a handle on the top, to take it off and put it on; in which is put a hot Iron to burn Fontanels in any part of the Head, or Body: that is, by makeing an issue through heat and fire, to divert a humour from the place afflicted; and is the only Instrument (being Artist like applyed) for that purpose; and the most absolute in all respects to avoid these three inconveniences, *viz.* Heat, Pain, and Sight of the Fire, which fearful Men, Women and Children are afraid off; for it hides the **actual Cautery**, or **hot Iron**; and being applyed to the place, suddenly causeth an Escar, before the Patient can perceive it, or feel any pain through Burning about or underneath, by reason the end of the Box or Case, doth secure all the parts near unto it.

II. This is the form of the **Capsula**, as I have seen it drawn in Heraldry, and so it is born in Coats of Arms, *viz.* Azure, a Cheveron between three such Capsula's, Or. By the name of *Chauner*.

B. on a Cheveron A. 3 Roses, between as many such Capsula's O. is the Arms of the Company of *Wax Chandlers* of *London*.

III. The first and highmost, is an Instrument called a **Spatha**, namely a **notible folding Knife**, sharp on the edge and broad on the back, ending in a point, the use whereof is to dilate Wounds on the head crosswise, or triangularly, as occasion requires; and with it the Paracentesis, or an Incision is safely made in the Thorax for the letting forth of Dropical humours. See *chap.* 11. *numb.* 21.

The **Spatha**, is also an oblong Instrument, made of Silver or Iron, broad at the lower end: It is used by Con-



Domum Dñi Roberti Moræy De Cuit: Cestr: Aldermani et Iusticiæ Pacis Major eiusdem Año: 1669

Confectioners to take up Conserves and Electuaries, without fouling of the hands. A **Slice**, to spread plasters withall. Or a **Spatula**, see *chap.* 11 *num.* 25 31 46.

The Instrument in base is termed a **Lenticular**, or a **Scraping Levitor**, as being compounded of a Scraping Tool, and a Levitor. Therefore serveth for two uses: The **Levitor**, at the end of the Perforation of the Skull, is thrust in between the lipps of the bone cut forth, to move the same up and down. that it may grow loose, and may be taken forth with the toothed part of the Pincers (mentioned *numb.* 10) also it is used to raise mean depressions of the Skull. The **Lentel**, or **Scraping part**, fixt at the head of the Instrument, serves to take away all roughness, and to scrape it off, and to make it smooth, after the cuting forth of the bone removed. See other sorts of Lavators, *chap.* 11 *numb.* 26 29 33.

IV. This is the **Male Trepan**, or a **Modiolus**, of some Authors called an **Abaptista**, or **Anabaptiston**, an Instrument made hollow and round, and at the utmost brims nicked like a **saw**; and it hath four **shoulders** on that part of the **Trepan** that must be turnded about the bone: It hath also a **pin** in the middle, that when it begineth first to de turned, it may stand fast on the Cranium or bare Skull, and that the parts about it (which are most Sensible) may be preserved the more safe from hurt. For if the Trepan to be first used have no Pin, at the begining of it work the trepaning of the Skull would be performed with the greatest danger, and with vehement pain.

The **Decussorium**, is a Chyrurgions Instrument wherewith the Dura Mater being pressed, which is most acuratly ioyned to the Scull; then the Puss or Snotty matter gathered between the said Scull and Skin, is evacuated by a hole made with the said Trepan.

V. This is the **Female Trepan**, now there is no difference between the male and female Trepan, but for the Pin in the middle which the female wants, and for that cause called **Females**. there is ever made some print upon the Skull by the male Trepan, that the female may stand the faster upon it. The use of them is as I said before in *chap.* 11 *numb.* 34 35. to Saw out round peeces of the Skull, where it is broken or brused into the head; and cannot otherwise be raised up by Instruments These are in Latine called *Trepannum.*

VI. This is the Instrument called a **Trefine**, or a **Threefold Trepan**, or **Triangular Trepan**. Of its use I have spoken before *chap.* 11 *numb.* 48. This Instrument and the two first mentioned in this *chapter numbers* 9 10 are set here againe upon an oversight, the which were before *chap.* 11 *numb.* 20.

In the dexter base is an **Hollow open Cauterizing Iron**, haveing a shoulder at the top to keep it that it do go no further into the hole where it is put. And in the sinister base is the **Fundal Case** haveing an hole in the uper side, and Barrs of Steel round, and a tang at the bottom to Screw an **handle** on to hold it by; the Iron being made hot, is put into the said Fundall hole and so applyed. Whose use and operation is in a maner the same to that **pipe** and its **stile**, mentioned *numb.* 24.

VII. This is **Woodalls Trefine**, I give it that name to distinguish it from the other Trefine beforesaid, it was an Instrument much used and approved off by Mr. *Iohn Woodall* and prescribed in his *Surgeons Mate.* Of which I have spoken before *chap.* 11 *numb.* 35

The Instrument in the chief, is the **Trepan end** of the said **Trefine**, which is used in the place of a **Trepan** being fixed in an **Handle**, as is described before.

The thing in base, is called a **Tunnell**, being made either of Horn, or other mettle, besides Silver; which the most ablest Chyrurgions, usually have it made off. It is to convey drink, or other liquid medicines into the Throat of such whose teeth are sett, and cannot be opened; The narrow end of the **Tunnell** or **pipe** of Silver being thrust between the outmost Gum of the Patient.

VIII. This is a Paire of **Seton pincers**, having holes through the **Chops** of them, each against the other; so that being closed, an iron pin may be thrust through both together. With this Instrument they take hold off leane peoples necks untill there be made a Seton, or the Skin perforated with a red hot iron as sharp as a needle, delivered to the Chyrurgion by his servent. All which is done by runing it through the holes in the Chops of the Pincers. See an other sort of Pincer *ca.* 11 *n.* 41.

G. the like erected & extended A. is born by *Haraul*

IX. The Instrument in the chief is a **Levitor** with an **Handle**, if whose use I have said something before, see *chap.* 11 *num.* 20. only this is truer drawn than that.

In the base is a **short Saw** with an **handle**, which Surgeons use to cut away the distances between the holes made in the Skull with the Trepan. And also to abolish Rafts like haires that do not penetrate, and to scrape away the rottedness of the Cranium. This is also called a **streight Hand Saw**, and is sometyme set in an iron frame after the maner of a **Dismembering Saw.**

X. This Instrument in chief is a **Volsella**, or **puller**, which should not have bine here, because I have treated of its use *chap.* 11 *num.* 20. This is called by some latin Authors an **Acantabolus.**

In the base is an other kinde of **Seton**, or **Burning pincers**, by meanes whereof Setons without pain, or danger are burnt in the nape of peoples necks, when occasion requireth. This Instrument neere to the holding or pinching part (in which are two holes like the Pincers in *numb.* 8) hath in the shanks a wide and circular cavity, and an **Iron ring**, or **socket**, which being thrust forwards on the shanks binds fast the Pincers with the fleshy part of the neck between the **chops**. These Pincers are only necessary when the Chyrurgion hath no servant to deliver him the needle, or bodkin very red hot, to make a Seton, but he must fetch it from the fire himselfe.

There is an other sort of **Fire**, or **Seton pincers**,

like these in the Chapps, and circular cavity; but for the want of a ring to hold it fast together, hath round **handles** like to the **Forceps**, to put the fingers and thumb therein to hold them close. These are generally used when that part behind the neck (which is to be perforated) is very fleshy and fatt; by which the Skin laid hold on, when it is thick, goeth within the circle, that it cannot slip away.

In the fesse part between the two foresaid Instruments, is the **Seton needle**, of which I have spoken before *chap.* 11 *numb.* 43. but this is of an other fashion and made much longer.

XI. In the chief of this Square, is an Instrument called a Paire of **Crooked Forceps**, it is to pull forth, or thrust down, smal bones or any thing else, that chanceth to stick in the Throat. They are smal slender Pincers bended into a Semicircle with teeth, and a little Button at the points; the **handles** like a paire of Barbers **Cizars**. Some term them **Forceps Thoracis**, or the **Thorax pincers**.

That in the base is termed, a **Goose bill Pincers**, or **Bullet Forceps**, and of some a Pair of **pincers** with **Goose beaks**, with these a Bullet is taken out of a deep wound.

There is an other sort of these **Goose bills**, which have a **Screw** above the **Revit**, which is to screw the Beaks close together, and so hold them when the bullet is in the concaves of them; and so is taken forth without danger of falling out. Others have these **Screwed Goose bills** with one **streight handle**, with a **button** at it end, and the other bent to put either the finger or thumb into, as the **Forceps**.

The **Stone Forceps**, they are made of Steele, and very strong, that they may pull a Stone out off the blader; are like these kinde of Instruments.

XII In this Quarter are severall things usefull for Surgeons. The first is the **Streight Probe** with a **needle Eye**, this is much used as namely, it hath dry Lint wrapped about the **button end**, which keeps it from sliping off; which is by the Artist termed, **Armed with dry Lint**, or **Arm the Probe**, by which the wound is mundified and cleansed from matter and filth. And being so Armed with Lint, and dipt in some Lotion, oyle or other Liquor; doth Bach or Drench, Corrode or Supple a wound, to heale and asswage it paine. Also by it is enquired the depth of a wound, fistula, or Ulcer: thereby to apply Tents, and Medicaments accordingly. See *chap.* 11 *numb.* 22.

The Instrument in the fesse or middle part of the field, is called the **Crooked Probe**, or **Spatula Probe**, being broadish at one end, whose use is for the Searching of wounds; and the other end to put powders on wounds, and anoynt Plagets with oyntments.

The Probe hath severall denominations, of some termed a **Mela**, others a **Specillum**, the vulgar call it **Tenta**, a Tent, from trying. It is made for the most part of Silver or Ivory, and that to Probe **Ulcers**, or to draw the Stone out of the Yard *&c.* They are of different shapes according as they are diversly used.

That in the dexter base, is termed a **Swathe Band wrapt up**, or Rowled at both ends. Of some called a **Rowller**, or a Linnen Rowller. These serve only to bind about a wound, or broken bone, or Ioynt. Some call it a **Fascia**, they are made diversly; as long, or short, others broad or narrow.

The **Funda Galeni**, is a Swathe divided into four parts; usefull in accidents that happen about the Jaws.

The **Laqueus**, is a Swathe or Band so tyed, that if it be attracted, or pressed with weight, it shuts up close: Its use is to extend broken and disioynted bones, to keep them in their places when set, and to bind the parts close and firmly together.

The **Vitella**, is a Swathe, or Scarf to hold up, or to carry the Arme in, that is hurt or wounded, shot or otherwise broken.

A **Platisma**, is a broad linnen cloth layd on Sores.

The **Plenia**, or **plumaceolus**, or **plegula**; are Bolsters of linnen 3 or 4 or 5. tymes double, euen to the thickness of the Spleen; they are used upon wounds, Ulcers, and Fractures. We call it in *English* a **plagilet**.

The **Stupa**, or **stupea**, a Stupe is a peece of linnen cloth dipt in a liquor, and applyed to bath and supple a place griefed.

A **Pittacium**, is a linnen cloth spred with a medicine, to be applyed to the part afflicted or diseased. We call it a **Plaster**.

The **Sparadrapum**, is a peece of linnen Ting'd or touched on both sides with either a thick oyntment, or Plaster; by diping it in the medicament mested, then extended to coole, and kept for use. a **Seare cloth**.

The **Ferula's**, are little light Chips, or Splents, or the like; made of different matter according as the nature of the thing requireth, as Barks of trees, Firr, Paper glewed together, Leather, Whale bone, *&c.* And are bound about with a Rowller to bones that are Rosened, or disjoynted, after they be set. Some call them an **Assula medica**, a Phisicians Chip or Lath.

That in this square between them aforesaid, is called a **Tent**, it is made of old linnen cloth scraped woolly, called **Lint**; which is rowlled gently up like a naile, and the end being dipt in Salve suitable for the Sore: It is thrust into a deep wound, or Ulcer, to cleanse and heale it within. Of the learned it is termed **Carpia**, **Tenta**, or **Turunda**, and **Turundula**.

A **Botos**, is a peece of linnen cloth teezed like wool, or fine flax, which is put into Ulcers, and stops a flux of blood, or runing Sores.

XIII. This is a Paire of **Cissers**, or **Barbers Sizzars**, or **Sissers**, Extended Salterwise. The Scissers as they are diversly written so diversly used by the Barber-Chyrurgions, as namely for cuting of haire, Emplasters, loose Skins *&c.*

S. the like betw. 4 Roses A. is born by *Godegrane.*

XIV. This is a **Remora**, which is an Instrument used for the helping of a dislocated Shoulder, or that is out

out of joynt, by puting it under the Arm-pit, that the knot of the Shoulder may be answerable to the head; the instrument being made fast by the bottom Screws. Although some do much commend this Instrument, for the foresaid purpose, yet others affirme, that the laxation of the Shoulder is far more happily reduced by the **Spatha of Hippocrates**, if in case it cannot be set with the hand.

XV. This is the Bowed or Crooked Instrument used for the Polypus, called the **Polypus pincers**, wherewith the Polypus a disease in the nose, of a fleshy substance, and like the Sea Polypus; is cut away and drawn forth, which otherwise by the holes of the nostrils hangs in the Palate to the Throat, and there threatens to stifle and choake a man. It is used also to cut off the Clitoris. See *chap.* 11 *numb.* 37.

XVI. This is an Instrument called a **Screw Pelican**, which are a kinde of **pincers** to drave out the gum or grinding teeth withall. Mr. Woodall terms them **Pullicans**, with these kind of **Draughts** the teeth are drawn out with far more ease, then with any of their other Instruments. See *chap.* 11 *numb.* 36.

That in the base is the **Stitching Quill**, by the help of which Instrument, and the **Needle**, and **Waxed silk**, gapping wounds are sowed up; it is for no other use, but to keep needles in the hollow part thereof, and therefore shall say no more of it. See *numb.* 30 *de cha.* 11. *numb.* 41 42.

XVII. This is an Instrument called a **Piercer**, which is a fit toole for the takeing forth of Bullets proceeding from great or small gun shot; by Screwing the Piercer into the bullet, and so to draw it out of the wound. The Instrument consists of three parts, namely of a **piercer**, which is most sharp, and screwed at the end, and longer then the **pipes** it goeth through. The next to the piercer is an **Inward pipe**, which at the end divideth into two **Spoons** of Iron, which openeth of its one accord; over it is thrust an **Outward pipe**, which is shorter then the other, and shuts and opens the Spoon of the inner pipe, as it is drawn neere or further from them; upon the pipe within (which some term the **Stile** of the Instrument) on the head of the inner pipe, is Screwed an **Nut** and **Button**, through all which the Piercer goeth, and is turned, to be screwed into the Bullet, while the spoons with their teeth hold it, that it cannot turn or move.

S. 3 such the Piercers reversed A. is born by *Hurbes*

The other Instrument is termed an **Alphonsine**, a thing made fit to take a Bullet out of a wound. It is a Paire of **Pincers** set in an **handle**, whose opening is broad and **hooked** in the **tips**, like a **Goose bill**; consisting of three points or ends, all falling into the side teeth of one another, and opening againe as the **Ring** is thrust neerer or further off, from the end of the **beake**. This Alphonsine hath a Bullet in it.

G. one such in Bend the teeth part erected O. born by the name of *Roster*.

B. 3 such in pale bend wise A. born by *Loraine*

XVIII. Is called a **Syringotomus**, which is no other but a **Crooked knife**, which on the inside is very sharp, and on the outside is blunt, and rising like the back of a **Sythe**, which at one end is sharp pointed, and will both pricks and cuts the other blunt, and (as it were) broken off. With this Instrument Fistula's having but one passage, by having a ball of white wax fastned on the point, that being put into a Fistula to the bottom, it doth not hurt, but the sore may be perforated, and afterwards the space between one hole and another may be cut asunder.

There are the like **Pen knives** to this, which are blunt at one end, and a **Bullet** of Iron well pollished at the other: with these the whole passage of deep Fistulaes are to be cut.

In the dexter base is a **Nipple pipe**, or **Sucking bottle**, it is an hollow, long, narrow glass, haveing an hole or mouth at one end, which is as larg as to receive the nipple of a Womans brest; from the bottom, or other end of the glass is a smal hole with a **Long pipe** as it: with this the Patient her selfe (being put on her brest) may by sucking at the smal pipe, draw forth her nipples that ly secret: so that an Infant may lay hold on them with its mouth, and draw out the mothers milk.

S. 3 such A. is born by *Mac Suklow*, or *Sucklyn*.

On the sinister side is a **Brest Cap**, or **Nipple Cap**, it is made of silver in shape like an Hat, and full of holes on the top or head, which thing is applyed to the Ulcerated nipples of a Nurses brest, so that they may suckle their Infants without any trouble. This **Cap** is also used for wounds in the Thorax: being put upon it that the matter and corruption almost every moment, may sweat through the holes of it by degrees, and without any lose of strength.

XIX. On the dexter side of this Square, is an Instrument called an **Enter enchyta**, or a **Clister pipe**, (vulgarly a Glister pipe) with a **lock**, or **screw**. By means of this Crooked pipe made of Latten, a man or woman (who out of modestie will not admit off others to give them Clisters) may inject Clisters into their own selves. The parts of this, is the **Pipe** to be thrust into the Fundement which hath holes at the end of it. The **Lock** and **Key**, that turns round in it, haveing an hole through the middle, to let the Clister proceed from the Bladder tyed on the mouth of the pipe (as in common Clisters) when the Patient pleaseth to turn the Key. The **Nail** with a broad **head** which is **screwed** into the other end of the key, is both to hold it in the lock, and to keep that no liquor come out of the lock that way. See *numb.* 133.

That on the sinister side, is termed a **Fistula**, a **pipe** or a **Clister pipe**, of some written **Clyster pipe**. This a Pipe by which Clisters are commonly given to Sick and diseased persons; that is Phisicall medicins through the Fundament as is before mentioned, *cha.* 11 *numb.* 42.

B. 3 such O. is born by *Fistule*.

Is an Instrument called a **Tripoides**, from the threefold basis, or triple basis, or three feet. This is a thing by by which the depression of the Skull is raised, when

it is so great, that the **Levitors** are too weak to serve the turn. That which perforates the Skull is termed the **Pierce** of the **Trepoides**.

In the sinister chief is the **Levitor** of the **Trepoides**, which is used by Screwing it into the **Socket** of the **Great Screw**, which if there be room enough to put it in between the depressions, it will raise the bone upright or perpendicularly, that was pressed down: but if there be no room for this Levitor, the middle depression must then be perforated with the streight **Pierce** in the Trepoides.

XXI. In this division are three Instruments, whereof that in the middle is termed the **Parrats bill pincer, or Pincers with a Parrats beak**, upon which outward beak, towards the sinister side, is fastned a **Screw** with a broad **Head** at the end of it, which is by the said Screw drawn higher, or let down lower towards the end of the Beak as occasion requireth, which is to restraine & keep back the Bill that it go not so far as the Dura Mater. The said Bill hath a **Long Screw** at the end of it, which is put through a **Socket** with the other **chap** of the Bill, which coming through the Socket is screwed upon an **handle** (like an Auger handle) which is to turn the Instrument about. This is used in Fractures of the Skull, by which any smal peeces of bones in the cure of wounds of the head are taken forth, partly by breaking, and partly by cuting into them. Some say this may fitly be termed a **Baptise**.

Lying in the chief, is the Instrument called a **Spatula** with a **Gouse bill**, this is always to be ready at the hand, and provided to receive, and to take forth smal bullets out of a wound.

In the base is an Instrument that consists of a **Needle** with a three **square point**, with a **Pipe** having a shoulder put over it; it is called **Acus Hydropis**, and of the vulgar a **Taping pipe**. With which needle thus fited is the navel of Hydropicall persons, and the Scrotum in a watery Hernia, or Rupture are opened, to let out the water. This Instrument is thrust in as far as the **Asterism**, or begining of the **pipe**, after that the needle is drawn out, and the smal pipe thrust into the Orifice (as the needle made) up to the Shoulder, and so is left in the Abdomen, or Belly without feare or danger. This is by some termed the **Tapping** of the Belly to draw out Dropsicall humours, from thence termed the **Tapping Needle** and **Quill**.

XXII. Within this square is the Pincers, called the **Vultures bill Pincers**, which Bill hath a **Long** and **strong screw** at the contrary end, so that after it is thrust through it **Pipe**, is by the helpe of an **handle** as is fixed on the end, the beak is moved or turned about.

In the base is the **Key**, or **handle** of the foresaid Instrument, whereby both it, and others of the same nature are turned about. Also severall Instruments are divided into their parts, and put together againe with the helpe hereof. They generally term it, a **Key** for a **Screw Head**.

A. 3 such in pale S. is born by *Odoacre*, or *Odocre*.

XXIII. On the dexter side is a three **Toothed Levitor**, or a **Levitor divided** into three **parts**. with this commonly is thrust forwards, and taken out, the cuting teeth and the dog teeth, which are fastned in the holes of the gums with one root or tang only. See more *chap.* 11 *numb.* 29.

B. 3 such A. handles O. is born by *Lavytoure*.

In the chief bending to the sinister side, is the Instrument called a **Throat pipe**, It is a Silver pipe, made crooked that it may be put into the throat; and is as thick as a Swans quill, and a foot and halfe long, or there about: it is full of holes, and at the end of it is made fast a peece of Spong, as big as a smal nut. This is used to draw Thornes, or Bones, out of the middle of the Wesand pipe, or any thing that sticks in the throat.

In the base part of this square, is the **Incision Ring**, which is a smal **crooked blade** of a **Pen knife** set in a **Ring**, to rise and fall according to pleasure, so that the patient cannot perceive it. With this Impostems are cut in the face, of cheeks of children, and in the breasts of timorous women; lest seeing the knife they should be affrighted, and so not suffer such Impostums to be opened.

XXIV. This is an Instrument with its **handle** to be **screwed** upon it, called a **Fundament pipe**, which is to burn an Ulcer. It is a long hollow pipe, close or shut up at the bottom with an hole on the side (according to the scituation of the Callous, or deep Ulcer, which will not yield to topicall medicaments) haveing an **handle screwed** to it for to guid it accordingly. This Instrument is thrust into the Fundament to the shoulders, into which is thrust a red hot iron to burn the said distemper, the pipe securing the sound parts from the touch of the hot iron, that being only opposite to the hole, which is the Ulcered part, which is touched twice or thrice with the fire, and no other place.

There are also **Solid pipes**, haveing no hole in the side and close at the further end, and shouldred; in all respects answering this figure, which is used after the same maner, haveing an hot iron thrust up it. Which is to dry up the internal Emrods and Piles, of those that are swoln, or do superficially exulcerate the intestine parts.

The Iron that is to be heated hot for the foresaid Pipe, is termed the **Stile**, which is a round long iron made fit to go into the **Pipe**, which is set in an **haft**, or wooden **handle**, the better to hold and use it.

XXV. This is the shape of their **Dismembering Chissell**, and **Mallet**. But of the Chissell I have said something before *chap.* 11 *numb.* 22. This being only an other mode of makeing them.

The **Mallett** is ever used with the **Chizzell**, and is for to force the same by great and weighty strokes, to to cut through the member it is set upon. For that end it is made of the hardest and heavyest wood, that may be had, and to make it the heavier it is often bound, or Lead put into it. Some term it a **Surgions hammer**.

V. a

V. a Mallet O. and a Chissel A. is born by *Monmale*.

XXVI. Is the **Mirtle Leaf Pen-knife**, it is a Pen-Knife with two edges, resembling a Mirtle Leaf, or rather a **Javeline head**, with this Instrument a Seton is cut in the Neck; the Pincers wherewith this Knife is used, is described elsewhere *numb.* 8. 10. and *chap.* 11. *numb.* 41.

B. 3 such A. Hafts O. born by *Mallard*.

A **Capsula** for a broken or disjointed Leg or Thigh; it is a **hollow Trunk** of Wood, wherein the Leg or Thigh being broken or dislocated, is laid, being filled with Tow-hards, the **hole** in the bottom is to receive the heel, and at the end a **long Board** for the sole of the foot to rest against.

XXVII. This is a **Chyrurgions Ladder**, whose uppermost **round Staff** hath a **round Body** or **Ball**, of some hard substance fixt on the middle of it, it ought to have six or seven **Staves**, and the sides inward, at each end hath a **Pulley**; with this a dislocated shoulder is put into its right place: As thus, the Arm-pit resteth on the Ball, then the Chyrurgion draws the Arm downward on one side of the Ladder, and another his Body down on the other side, and a third layeth hold of his Neck and top of his Shoulder, drawing that way till it be found that the Ball striketh the Bone into its right place.

Such a Ladder is also used for the reducing of the Thigh out of Joynt, or the Hip; upon which the Party must sit astride, with one Leg and Thigh which is whole, lightly tyed to the Staves, and the other hanging down loose with a great weight hung at it.

Scamnum Hypocratis, *Hypocrates* Bench, is an Instrument of 6 Ells long, which is used in setting of Bones.

XXVIII. This is a Drawing Instrument called a **Plintheum Milei**; it is made after the pattern of those which are called long and square **Wind-lasts**: It is four hand breadths long, and the **transorus** one hands breadth, in the which is holes for the Cords to go through, and the sides have holes for the **Axle-tree** to pass; it hath also 4 **Iron Rings** fastned to the corners at the sides with Leather Strings to fasten it withal. With this Instrument an Arm out of Joynt is extended and drawn out, when it cannot be reduced either by a Band, or other Linnen Cloaths put under the Arm-pit.

There is a sort of a **Cord** or Halter used by Chyrurgions, to bind Bodyes or Members withal, called **Brochi**.

XXIX. The **Drawing Girdle**, it is a little Girdle, wherewith the Arm is compassed in about the Wrist, or the Thigh above the Knee, and Leg above the Ankle, having two Iron hooks thereat, to which Cords are fastned when the Arm or Leg is to be drawn out, that the dislocated Bones may be set in their right places. See the Instrument at large *numb.* 32.

Amma, or **Bracherium**, is a sort of Girdle useful to those who are troubled with a Rupture or Bursting of the Belly, wherewith the Privy parts are closely connected or tyed to the Ribs and Loyns, lest the Intestines should fall out. Some call it **Brachile**, or **Brachiale**, or **Rebrachiatorum**.

XXX. In the chief of this square, is a long **strong Needle**, with a **square sharp point**, something bending; with this the Breasts of Women, which are corrupted, are pierced through at the bottom or root, thereby to cut them off.

There is a like Instrument without an **Eye**, having the like point, with a **double edge**, which is used by Abaters of Courage, *alias* Sow-Gelders, in taking away the Testicles: Also the same is used for the cure of the *Hernias*, of swelling of the Cods, by the perforating of the Wound, that the corrupt matter may issue forth.

This is an Instrument with a **handle** and two **short Chains**, having each an **hook** at the end, wherewith a Dead Child is drawn forth of the Womb, either whole, or cut in peeces. The Learned term it an **Uncula**, saying it is an Hooked Instrument to draw a dead *Fœtus* out of the Womb.

XXX*a*. He beareth Argent, a **Barbers Case of Instruments closed** Gules, **Garnished** and **Lock** and **Handle**, Or. By the name of *Trim*. Of this I shall speak further in *numb.* 35*. to which I shall refer you.

XXXI. This an Instrument termed an **Ambi**, or **Spatha**, for the reducing of a Shoulder fallen below the Arm-pit, which is divided into these parts; the **foot** whereon it stands, the **pillar**, which holds the turning **Ambi** or **Spatha**; the **pin** on which it turns; and the **Ambi**, being long and round at one end, and square at the other, and about a yard or less in length; the Operation is thus, the end of the **Spatha** is set under the Arm-pit of the Shoulder out of Joynt, and the Arm tyed all along on the Plank, at the Shoulder, Elbow, and Wrist; so the Surgeon with the Plank pulling the Arm downwards, and his Man at his Neck and Shoulders pulls him the other way, then the end of the Plank being round, moves the head of the Shoulder Bone to its proper place. In Latine it is called *Ambe* or *Ambonæ*.

XXXII. Is the form of the Instrument called a **Glossocoman**, which is made of **Wood Planks** in manner of a **Trough open** at both ends, near to which is an **Axis** at one end, to which is tyed the **Strings** that extend diverse ways; those Strings that are below, turn upon the Axle-tree immediately; but the Strings for the higher draught, proceed from the out ends of the Axis, and so go through the holes perforated in the higher end of the **Glossocoman** upon **pulleys**, where they are fastned to a Girdle described *numb.* 29. which two little Girdles fixed about the Thigh and under the Knee, one turning the Axis, it will equally extend both Strings, that downward which is bound to the lower part of the broken Bone, but the other upwards, so the Thigh and the Leg, notwithstanding its Fractures, are kept fast held together. It is called in Latine *Glossocomium*, from the

the shape of a Merchants little Casket, which was formerly carryed upon the Back.

XXXIII. The first of these in the dexter chief place, is a **Barbers Washing Bason, or Trimming Basou.** Such a like Bason as this, Valiant *Don Quixott* took from a Bloody Enchanting Barber, which he tancied to be a Golden Head-peece. These sorts of Basons generally have rounds cut in the rim or edge thereof, to compass about a Mans Throat or Neck.

The second in the Sinister chief, a **Blood Porrenger.** These are small little things, that will hold about an ounce, some two, of Blood, by which the Chirurgion guesseth what quantity of Blood (at one Breathing of a Vein) he taketh from his Patient.

The third Instrument is called a **Metrenchyta,** or **Metrenchytam,** or a **Syringe-pipe** for the **Matrix.** This is a crooked Pipe made of Pewter or Silver, to be screwed on the **Spouts** end of the **Syringe,** which is full of small holes at the contrary end; wherewith Women that will not easily give way to others, for shame, to cast a Clyster into their Matrix, conveniently use this Instrument; by which they can easily inject divers Liquors to cure divers afflictions in the Womb, and take away the causes thereof. See *chap.* 11. *numb.* 42.

XXXIV. In chief lieth a pair of **Crisping** or **Curling Irons,** some term them **Crisping Tongs;** In former times these were much used to Curl the side Locks of a Mans head, but now wholly cast aside as useless. It openeth and shutteth like the **Forceps,** only the ends are broad and square, being cut within the mouth with Teeth, curled and crisped, one tooth striking between another.

In the Base lieth the Surgeons **Salvator** or **Salvatory,** or his **Box of Unguents;** It is a Box with a Lid made generally of Latin or Tin, some more Rich have them of Silver, but that is for shew, more than good Profit; it hath six or more several divisions in it, which are furnished with so many several Unguents, which though each hold but a small quantity, yet it is sufficient for the present use, which are generally these.

Unguentum Linamentum Arcei.
Unguentum Basilicon.
Unguentum Apostolorum.
Unguentum Aureum.
Unguentum Diapompholigos.
Unguentum Dialthea.
Unguentum Populeon.
Unguentum Album.

XXXV. Is a **Chirurgions Plaster Box** with the Lid shut Azure, **Garnished** and **Lock** and **Hinges,** Argent. This Box consists of three parts.

1. The **Box** it self, in which lyeth such Instruments as serve for present use, which are small ones only, as followeth.

The Spatula. The Probe of several sorts.
The Spatula Linguæ. The Stitching Needle and Quill.
The Flegme. The Launcet.
The Directorie. The Burras Pipe.
The Scissars. The Levitor or Levitory.
The Forceps. The Uvula Spoon.
The Spatula Oculi.

2. The **Box Lid,** in which there is placed a loose Lid or cover, under which in the said place is kept the Lint, which Surgeons use both for the cleansing of Wounds, as also to make Tents and Plagets, to lay in or upon deep Sores, before the Plaster is put on.

3. The **Drawer** at the bottom of the Box, in which are kept all the Plasters ready made, and are for any sudden occasion; now these Emplasters which this lower Box or Drawer doth contain, are at the least three or more several kinds, as

Emplastrum Stipticum Paracelsi.
Emplastrum Diachalcitheos.
Emplastrum de Lapide Calaminari.
Emplastrum de Minio.

XXXV. Is the **Barbers Instrument Case,** with the cover open, in the which is kept and preserved all the Instruments for Barbing, Shaving, and Polling or Cutting of Hair; now the things of use kept therein, are generally these.

Razors 3 or 4. Sweet Water in Bottles.
Scissers 2 or 3 pair. Turning Instruments and Sponge.
Combs 3 or 4. Powder Bottle, or Puff Bag.
Comb Brush. Musset or
Ear-picker. Gravers and Scrapers, or Tooth-picker.
Twitcher.
Curling Irons. Flegme.
Looking Glass. Paring Knives.

I find a Chyrurgical Instrument called a **Phacotos,** but what it is I have no exact description.

Names of Medicines.

I HAVE In the 17 *Chapter* of the 2 *Book* of this my *Academy of Armory* and *Blazon,* Set down the Inward and Outward Diseases and Distempers Incident to us Human and Mortall Creaturs; and haveing now in these *Chapters* occasion to treat of Instruments, and other things belonging to Phisick, Chyrurgery, Chymistry, & Druggists, as they are used and pertaine to Arms. I hope the Courteous Reader will not be offended, though I go a little astray out of the rules of Herauldry, and inform you with the terms of Art used by the foresaid Artists, (which is that promised in the *Title Page* of the *Book,*) and from which I cannot go back. In the first place, for the healing of those Distempers, take the names of such Medicines and Unguents, as are inwardly and outwardly applied to them for their cureing. Alphabetically.

Acopium, a medicine applyed by fomentation, is compounded of wearming and molifying things.
Acoslica, a med: to help the hearing.
Aeromeli, is Manna, or Aerial honey.
Alcali, Salt extracted from Ashes by boiling its *Lixivium* or Lie.
Alexipharmacum, or *Acta,* a med: to expel Poison.
Alexiterium, a med: to preserve the body against poison.
Alkahest, a menstrum or liquor which resolves bodies. It is taken of some to be prepared *Mercury* or *Tartar.*

Allicticum,

Alliaticum or *Alternitia*, a med: which by fermentation cleanseth the blood.
Alchymia, see *Chymia*.
Abortiva, or *Diuretica*, whores phisick to cause abortive (births
Ambrosia, a med: pleasant to take.
Amblyzaxis, a med: that defiles nothing that toucheth it.
Amygdalatum, Artificiall milk, an emulsion of Almonds.
Ana, a like quantity of each ingredient in the compound.
Anacathirsis, a medicine to cause Vomiting, Neesing, Salivation or Spitting.
Analeptica, med: that cherish and renew strength.
Anamnestica, med: to restore the memory.
Anastomotica, med: to open the pores and passages.
Anodinum, a medicine to allay paine.
Antemetica, things that hinder too much vomiting.
Anthypnotica, medicins to hinder sleep.
Anthysterica, med: against fits of the Mother.
Anacollema, a dry medicine applyed to head or nostrils to stop bleeding
Antarchiticum, a medicine for the Gout.
Antasthmatica, a medicine for the *Asthma*, that have the cough and hissing respiration.
Antepileptica, a med: against the falling sicknes.
Antidotum, or *Antipharmacum*, an Antidote, or medicine against Poison.
Antinephritica, medicines to cure the distemper in the Reines, or begining of *Morbus Gallicus*.
Antipluriticum, any med: against the Plurisie.
Antispasmodum, a med: to hinder contraction.
Antiptasticum, medicines that diverts distempers to other parts of the body.
Aperientia, opening medicines.
Apochylism, or *Apothermus*, or *Robub*, is a boiling of any juice with sugar & honey to a thick substance or hard.
Apomeli, or *Oxymel*, a decoction of honey & viniger.
Apocrusticum, any thing that helps by virtue of binding, or repelling the distemper.
Apodacryticum, a medicine that provkes tears.
Apozema, a decoction of roots, barks, herbs, flowers, fruits, seeds *&c.* which is either purging or drying.
Arteriotomia, an artificiall opening of an arterie for the leting of blood in an inveterate head ach, madness, falling sicknes *&c.*
Astringentia, Astringent or binding medicines.
Attrahentia, drawing things.
Attenuantia, or *Incidentia*, things that open the pores, and cut the humours.
Azoth, a universall remedy for all diseases.

Bamma, is a liquor, or tincture in which any thing is tinged or moistned.
Basilicum, a rich precious medicine excelling all others.
Bechica, a medicine good against a cough.
Bolus, a med: taken inwardly as thick as honey, one dose being a mouthfull.
Bacilli, are those medicines, or plasters, which are long & round, like a stick or pillar.
Balsamus, or *Balsamum*, Ballam, it is a thick consistance like an ointment.

Cardiacum, a medicine that corroborates the heart.
Catapotium, or *Pillula*, purging pills.
Catheretica, a medicine against superfluities.
Catharma, or *Catharticum*, medicines to purge the Stomach, and the Gout.
Catholicum, a common medicine that expels all humours.
Cataplasma, is a topicall medicine of the consistence of a Pultise.
Cementium, a Powder by which Cementatory calcination is performed. a *Cement*.
Cephalica, or *Cephalartica*, med: to purge the head.
Ceratomalagma, a softning composition made of Wax and other Ingradiences.
Ceratum, or *Cerelæum* a medicine made of Wax, Oyle, *&c.* and outwardly applyed, it is thicker then ointment, softer then a plaster.
Cerevisia medica, Phisick or Diet drink, wherein medicines proper for the disease are infused.
Chalastica, medicines of a moistning quality, which relax the parts that are hard bound.
Cholagoga, medicines that purge Sulphureous and Bilious humours.
Chymica, or *Chymicalia*, med: prepared of the Chymists.
Cicatrisantia, are such things as bind, dry up, and contract wounds, and fill up Ulcers with flesh.
Clyster, or *Clysterium*, or *Enema*, a flüid med: given inwardly, and injected into the Bowells by the funda- (ment.
Codia, the tops of Poppies, of them Syrup is made.
Cohobatio, a distilled liquor, distilled againe.
Colletica, med: that conglutinate. From *Colla*, glue.
Collyrium an oblong medicine taken from the distemper of the eyes.
Composita, are med: made up of many simple ingredients.
Conditum, a Lectuarie, or composition of conserves powders and Spices.
Coprocritica, are medicines which purge away excrements in the guts.
Cordialia, a Cordial or med: to comfort the heart.
Corrosivum, or *Corrodentia*, Corroding things which eate up excrescent flesh. *Corrosio*, the same.
Cosmetica, medicines which whiten & soften the skin.
Crama, or *Croma*, or *Chrama*, a mixture of any thing of medicines.
Cucupha, a cover for the head made of Odoriferous and Cephalick Spices beaten to powders, and worn within a cap for a disease in the head.
Cylindrus, or *Magdalea*, is an oblong plaster.
Cystica, med: against distempers in the Bladder.

Deleterium, a Poisonous medicine.
Diuretica, med: that part, dissolve, and fund the blood.
Diacopræga, a medicine against Tumors, made of goats (dung.
Diapasma, a med: made of dry powders.
Diaplasma, is an ointment or fomentation.
Diapyetica, a medicine to ripen the Pus, or crass snotty matter.
Diapalma, a white unguent for cooling an heat.
Dropacismus, an ointment to loosen and extenuate the members, which is of two sorts, Simple & compound.
Dropax, the same kinde of ointment.
Ecbolia a medicine to help labour in childbearing, also to cause Abortion.
Eccarthartica, or *Ecchoprotica*, see *Carthartica*.
Electuarium, a medicine between a Syrup and an Oppiate, & applyed inwardly. It is diversly called as a *Linctus*, *Illinctus*, *Loch*, and *Lohoch*.

Ecphracticum,

Ecphractica, medicines against obstructions in any part, opening and cutting medicines.
Ectillotica, medicines which consume callous parts, and pull out hair.
Elaterium, medicines to purge the Belly.
Electuarium, an Electuary, a Confection made up of many pleasant ingredients with Syrup and hony.
Eleosaccharum, distilled oyle mixt with sugar.
Elixir, or *Tinctura*, the essence of any thing extracted with the spirit of wine.
Emetica, or *Vomitoria*, medicines to cause Vomiting, or an ejection at the mouth what offends the stomach.
Emmenagoga, medicines which excite the Courses.
Enmoion, medicines to inject into Ulcers.
Emollientia, softning medicines, which dissolve the parts, and make them loose and gentle.
Emulsio, an Emulsion, or drinking Medicine that hath Seeds infused in it.
Enemon, a Medicine which stops the Blood.
Epsema, a decoction of new Wine half boiled away.
Essentia Quinta, Quintessence, a Medicine made of intire energetical ingredients.
Emplastrum, a Plaster, a Medicine applyed outwardly to the sores of the Flesh, spread upon Cloth or Leather.
Emplattomena, or *Emplastica*, are Salves that constipate and shut up the Pores of the Body, that Sulphurous vapours cannot pass.
Epicarpium, a medicine like a Plaster applied to the Wrist, to drive away intermitting Feavers.
Epicerastica, medicines which obtund and temperate sharp humours.
Epithama, a medicine applied to the noble parts of the Body, as Head, Heart, Liver.
Epomphalum, a Plaster applied to the perturberances of the Navel.
Erodentia, medicines that gnaw and prey upon the flesh
Errhium, or *Nasale*, a medicine made like a Pyramid, and put up the Nose to cleanse the Head.

Fæcula, a powder which subsides to the bottom in certain strainings of Vegitables.
Fomentum, any thing which is applyed to the body to cherish and warm it, whether wet or dry.
Frontale, a medicine applyed to the head for a heat or pain.

Galreda, or *Galatina*, a Gelly made of Calves feet, *&c.*
Gargarisma, a Gargarism, a liquid medicine to cleanse the mouth, any pellucid glutinous Juice.

Hepatica, medicines for the Liver.
Hermetica Medicina, a noble medicine made from Vegetables, Animals, or Minerals.
Hidrotica, things that provoke sweating.
Hiera Picra, is a bitter kind of Electuary.
Holippa, Cakes or Wafers made of Medicinal infusion.
Hydropica, medicines that expel watery Humours in Dropsies.
Hydrosaccharum, a Syrup made of Water and Sugar.
Hysterica, medicines against the Diseases of the Womb.
Hordeatum, a liquid medicine made of beaten Barley, and other Ingredients.

Humectantia, liquid or moistning medicines, such as can insinuate into the pores of the Body.
Hydragoga, medicines which by fomentations purge watery humours.
Hydroleum, a mixture of Water and Oyl.
Hydromel, Mead or Meath, a mixture of Water and Honey.

Ischæma, medicines to stop the Blood, which by cooling close up the Veins.
Inceratio, is a medicine made of moist and dry things to the consistence of soft Wax.
Incrassantia, thickning things mixt with liquid Juices.
Ischuretica, medicines to thicken the Blood, so that the Urine is stopped.
Julepus, a Julep, a sweet Potion, or a liquid medicine of a grateful taste made of Syrups, Sugar, *&c.* *Julapium*, or Juleb.

Laudanum, a medicine to allay insupportable pains and stop any Flux, called also **Opiate Laudanum.**
Laxantia, loosening medicines.
Leptunica, cutting medicines which part the gross and viscous humours.
Leucophagum, a medicine or drink for a Consumption, of Almonds macerated in Rose water, and boiled Capons, *&c.*
Lithrontriptica, medicines to break the Stone.
Loch, *Lohoch*, see *Eclegma*.
Losengæ, Losenges, see *Morsuli*, *Tabella*.
Localia Medicamentum, are such things as are applyed outwardly, as Plasters, Salves, Ointments.
Linimentum, an Ointment thinner than an Unguent.

Magisterium, a powder prepared by Solution and Precipitation; properly called **Extract.**
Magistralia Medicamenta, medicines prescribed for several uses; called also **usualia**, common and usual, taken once a Week, or twice a month.
Malthacode, a medicine softned with Wax.
Malagma, a Pultice, see *Cataplasma*.
Malactica, see *Emollientia*.
Marmaleta, Marmalet, the Pulp or Juice of Quinces or other Fruit, made into a Gelly with Sugar.
Masticatorum, a medicine of Mastick to provoke Spitting.
Meconium, Opiate, or the condensed Juice of Poppies.
Medicamentum, a Medicine, any thing whereby Diseases are repelled, and health preserved.
Medicina, a Medicine, Phisick, a remedy for Health.
Melanagoga, a medicine that expels black Choler.
Melicratum, a drink made of Honey and Rain water.
Miva, see *Marmaleta*.
Moretum, a sort of Drink used by Women conceived with Child, to strengthen a true Conception.
Morselli, *Morsuli*, *Tabella*, sweet Spices powdered, and Sugar dissolved mixt to a Paste; or poured on a Stone to be consolidated. See *Losengæ*.
Mucago, a viscous extraction made of Seeds, and Water. *Mucilago*.
Mylphe, a medicine against the falling off of the hair.
Myron, see *Unguentum*.
Myracopum, an ointment that takes away wearines.

Nar-

Narcotica, medicines to stupify and allay pains.
Nascalia, little globular bodies, to put into the neck of the Matrix to cure a Disease. See *Pessarium*.
Nectar, a medicinal drink, of a delicious tast and smell.
Nepenthes, a remedy to expel Sorrow, and make one merry.
Opiate Laudanum, a medicine worthy of praise.
Nephritica, a medicine against a disease in the Reins.
Neuretica, a remedy against the diseases of the Nerves. *Nevritica*.

Oblate Laxativæ & Purgantes, purging Ingredients.
Oxhema, a liquor or vehicle wherewith medicines are mixt.
Odontica, against pain in the Teeth.
Odoramentum, a medicine applied for its smell.
Oenoides, is dilated Wine, or such a kind of liquor.
Oenomel, is Wine and Honey.
Oligophoros, a small Wine, with few Spirits.
Opiata, *Electuarium*, are medicines made up of bitter things.
Opiatum, an Electuary with Opium, Mithridate, or Diascordium mixt in it.
Opium, condensed Juice of Poppies.
Optica, medicines against distempers of the Eyes.
Otica, medicines against distempers of the Ears.
Oxeleum, a mixture of Vinegar and Oyl.
Oxycratum, a mixture of Vinegar and Water, called *Pusta* or *Posca*.
Oxydercica, a medicine to quicken the Sight.
Oxymel, Vinegar and Honey made into a Syrup.
Oxyrhodium, Vinegar of Roses mixt with Rose-water.

Pachuntica, medicines of a thickning nature.
Palliatio, *cura Palativa*, a medicine (as much as is possible) to help incurable Diseases, by present application.
Panacea, a general sort of Physick for all Diseases.
Panchymagoga, purging medicines that expel corrupt humors.
Pandalea, a solid Electuary, taken like a Lambative, or in Morsels.
Paracelsistica Medecina, see *Hermetica*.
Pastillum, sweet Balls to smell at.
Pectoralia, Pectoral medicines, which allay Coughing.
Pepasmus, a Concoction, or fermentation, or ripening of preternatural humours.
Pepasticum, medicines to allay and digest crudities.
Periamma, a medicine tied about the Neck to expel Diseases, especially the Plague. *Periaptum*.
Pessarium, *Pessus*, *Pessulus*, oblong medicines thrust up the Neck of the Womb, to cure Diseases there.
Pharmacum, any sort of medicine against a Disease.
Phlegmagoga, medicines to drive away the Flegm.
Phænigmus, a medicine that makes the Skin red.
Pilula, Pills, Balls, solid medicines made of Pouders and glutinous liquor.
Plerotica, medicines that breed flesh, and fill up Wounds.
Polygophora, Drinks or Wines full of Spirits.
Propoma, a drink made of Wine, Honey and Sugar.
Psilothron, medicines to take Hairs out of the Body. *Psilothrum*.

Psorica, medicines against the Scab.
Psyctica, a cooling medicine.
Ptisana, *Ptisan*, a decoction of Barly, Liquorish, and Raisins.
Pyrotica, or *Urentia*, hot and burning medicines, which cause redness, raise Blisters, pull up hair.

Resolventia, dissolving medicines, such as dissipate and scatter Particles.
Rhodium, Rose Vinegar, or any thing made of Roses.
Rhyptica, scouring medicines which cleanse away Filth.

Succuli Medecinales, is a Bag quilted with several simples compounded and beaten together, put in and applyed to the place grieved.
Sarcotica, medicines which fill up and heal Wounds.
Sclerotica, sclerotick medicines, such as heal, cool, or are astringent. *Sclerunica*.
Simplicia, are simples uncompound, or unmixt.
Sinapismus, a medicine applied to the head.
Somnifera, sleeping medicines.
Spasmodica, medicines against Convulsions.
Splanchnica, medicines for Diseases in the Intestines.
Splenica, medicines against the Spleen.
Stagma, Juices of Plants mixt together in order to distillation.
Sparadropum, a piece of Linnen Cloth dipt or drawn through a thick Ointment or Plaster, a Seat-cloth.
Suffitus, *Suffimentum*, pouder of Odoriferous things, which Burnt, produce a pleasant Smell.
Sumitates, the tops of Herbs.
Supplantalia, Plasters applied to the feet.
Suppositorium, a Suppositor, a compound of Honey and pouders, and made up into a Roll to thrust up the Fundament.
Synactica, medicines that contract any part.
Syncritica, are relaxing or loosening Medicines.
Syrupus, Syrup of any thing, or Flowers extracted, and the Quintessence brought into a Liquor boiled up with Sugar.

Tabella, a solid medicine, see *Losenga*.
Theriaca, Treacle, a Medicine to expel Poison.
Thorexis, a generous Wine that warms the Breast.
Traumatica, a potion or decoction, which fetches sharp humors out of the Body.
Trochisci, Troches, round marked things, made of Pouders into Paste. *Pastilli*.
Tetrapharmacum, a medicine consisting of 4 ingredients, as *Unguentum Basilicum*.
Thermantica, healing Medicines.
Tinctura, see *Elixir*.
Tonotica, things externally applied, and rubbed into the Limbs to strengthen the Nerves.
Topica, medicines applied outwardly, as a Plaster or Cataplasm.
Toxica, a poisonous Liquor wherein *Barbarians* use to dip their Arrows.
Turunda, *Turundula*, a Tent put into a Wound.

Vesicatoria, medicines which act upon and rarify the Spirits.

Vinum Cos, wine of a good colour smell and taste.
Vinum Medicatum, vine with medicines infused for sick and weak people.
Vinum Hypocraticum, wine with Sugar and Spices infused therein, a most pleasant liquor.
Unguentum, an Unguent, an Oyntment thicker then a Linimentum, it is outwardly applyed.
Vomitorium, a medicine to provoke Vomiting.
Usnea, a mos that groweth on bones and trees.

ALL which variety of Phisical names may be reduced into English termes, under these three heads; thereby to avoyd a multitude of unheard off words, which rather confound then give Instructions.

1. *Inward Medicines to Comfort.*

Pectoralls.	*Cordialls.*	*Stomachicalls.*
Hepaticalls.	*Spleneticalls.*	*Cephalicalls.*
Iulips.	*Syrups.*	*Electuaries.*
Infusions.	*Emulsions.*	*Confections.*
Conserves.	*Preservei.*	*Losenges.*
Pills.	*Balls.*	*Rolls.*
Troaches.	*Bolus's.*	*Loches.*
Potions.	*Opiates.*	*Diet Drinks.*

2. *Medicines to Purge.*

Vomits.	*Purges.*	*Vrines.*
Sweats.	*Sneesings.*	*Suppositers.*
Glisters.	*Gargarismes.*	*Antidotes.*

3. *Outward Medicines.*

Oyles.	*Oyntments.*	*Unguents.*
Frontalls.	*Caputalls.*	*Pastills.*
Salves.	*Plasters.*	*Searcloaths.*
Liniments.	*Pultesses.*	*Embroches.*
Dentifrices.	*Eye-Waters.*	*Frictions.*
Fomentations.	*Amulets*, or *Spells.*	

Apothecaries marks explained

℞. *Recipe. Take.* This is ever set down at the begining of a Doctors bill, and is as much as to say, Take such & such things as follow, of each such a quantity as these marks sinifie.
℔. *Liber.* A pound weight.
ß. *Semis.* Halfe a pound, or Ounce.
℥. *Vncia.* An Ounce weight.
ʒ. *Drachma.* A Dram, is 3 Scruples.
℈. *Scrupulus.* A Scruple, it is 10 graines.
g. *gr. Granum.* A Graine in weight.
g. *Gutta.* A Gut, or a Drop.
g. *iij.* Is 3 Drops.
P. *Pugillus.* A Pugill, a little Handfull.
P. j. Is halfe an Handfull.
m. *Manupulus.* A Manuple, or great Handfull.
ana. As much of each Ingredient.
ʃ. *Siliquus.* A Siliqua, or 4 Graines.
ob. Obolus. An English halfe Penny, formerly marked after this maner ~
x. A *Roman* Penny, it is a Dram.
nº. or *num. Numerus.* A certaine number.
℥ ß. *Semi-Vncia.* Halfe an Ounce.
℥ j. *ij. iij.* or *iiij.* Ounces 1 2 3 or 4.
℥ j ß. An Ounce and Halfe &c.

Other Practical Terms used by Phisicians, Chyrurgions, and Apothecaries.

Abstemius, he who abstaines from such meat & drink as is forbidden him.
Ablution, is exaltation or reduceing of unclean things to more puritie of substance.
Abscission, is a cutinf off a part of the body.
Acme, the height of a disease. Every distemper haveing 4 periods; the begining, the growth or increase, the full or complear, and the decleusion or decrease. It is of Some termed *Acros.*
Agonia, is feare or sadness of minde.
Agyrta, a Mountebank.
Agrypnia, a watching or dreaming slumber.
Alcohol, Alool, is the pure substance of any thing seperated from the impure. a *Rectified spirit.*
Allogotrophia, a disproportion of the body, some part being larger then the other.
Albation, is the Brushing away of dust or gret wich a feather or Hares foot.
Alcolismus, is an operation by calcination, reduceing a matter into Alcool, the finest powder that is.
Amputation, is the cuting of a member that the whole body be not infected or corrupted.
Amalgamation, is puting of other mettals into Quick-Silver. Gold, Copper, &c.
Amulatum, Spells, that by which Witch-crafts are wrought, or driven away. see *Periamma.*
Amethodicum, a thing done without any rule or orderly prescription therein.
Anaplerosis, a restoreing by Art, that which is decayed in nature.
Anabasis, is the increase of a disease. (ease.
Antecedentia signa, signes observed coming before a dis-
Antipasis, a revulsion of a disease out of one part into an other part of the body.
Antipathia, a loathing and abhoring of a thing without any ground or iust cause.
Aponia, a want of voice.
Apepsia, when the Stomach hath no concoction.
Apharesis, a part of Chyrurgery which teacheth to take away all superfluities in the body,
Arche, the begining of a disease.
Aromatization, is an Artificial preparing of medicines.
Asitia, a loathing of meat.
Asaphia, a loudness of voice.
Assuefaction, things taught by use and custom.
Astringentia, binding things, such as close together the parts of the body.
Atomus, a body so small that it cannot be divided.
Attrition, is a preparing of an ingredient by grinding it on a stone to powder.

Au-

Automatos, that which moves of it selfe, as the heart and bowells. *&c.*

Balanæum, *Balneum*, Baths, or a washing in such waters which are made of Phisicall decoctions.
Balsamus, Balsame, or sweet perfumes.
Benignus Morbus, a favourable disease such as have no dreadfull Symptoms in it.
Blæsas, *Blæsitas*, a stammering in the speech.
Brachylogus, *Brachylogia*, is a giver or giveing of a positive oppinion in few words.
Branchus, an hoarsness in the throat.
Bulimus, an extraordinary appetite or desire of meat.
Buccellation, is dividing a thing into gobbets or peeces.

Calx, is that which by Calcining is either turned to *Alcool*; or that which is made friable as Harts horn burnt.
Calcination, is a solution or dissolving of a mixt body into powder by fire, or any corroding things.
Calfaction, is a preparing Simple and compound medicines by a moderate heat, or the Sun.
Catapasma, is fragrant powder which by reason of it scent is put amongst clothes.
Catalepsis, or *Catochus*, the abolishing of all the animal faculties.
Cathaterismus, one that Administers any thing into the Bladder by a Cathater.
Cementation, a cementing of things by degrees.
Ceratio, is a mollification of an hard thing, till it be like wax before the fire or in the Sun.
Chymia, the Art of Chymistry, or drawing of Spirits.
Chymia, or *Chemia*, is also a resolution of Sublunary bodyes into their Elements; and by a Coagulation of the same Elements, turn them into their own bodyes again. It consists in Solution and Coagulation. This Art is also termed *Alchymia*, *Spagiria*, *Hermetica Ars*, and *Ars Segregatoria*, *Seperatoria*, or *Distillatoria*.
Chyrurgia, the Art of Chyrurgery or cureing of wounds.
Circulatio Chymica, is the exaltation of pure liquor by a circular distillation.
Cicatrix, are Scars or marks in the flesh after great Ulcers and wounds are healed.
Clarificatio, *Clarification*, is when juyces or thick decoctions become fine and cleare.
Coctio, Concoction or good disgestion of meat.
Collution, the washing of the mouth to scour the teeth.
Colcothar, is the dry substance that remaines after distillation, commonly called *Caput mortuum*.
Colatura, is that which after boiling or infusion is percolated or strained through a Sive or cloth.
Contagium, is a poison or disease, which from one subject is propogated into an other.
Continens Causa, the internal cause of a disease.
Consolidantia, are those things which cleanseth and takes corruption out of a wound moderately.
Confecta, *Confectures*, Comfits, Seeds covered over or crusted with dry Sugar.
Confectio, is a composition of Powders Gums Sugar Hony Syrups *&c.* made into one substance.
Conserva, a Conserve, a Composition of Flowers and Herbs beaten together with Sugar.
Conformatio, is the essential part of Health or Sickness.
Corrodentia, Corroding things, such as eate excrescent flesh in wounds.
Corroboratio, a strengthning of the heart.
Corrosio Chymica, a Calcination of bodyes by Corrosives.
Corrosivum, Corrosives, corroding or eating things.
Crisis, a sudden chang in a disease either for life or death.
Critici Dies, Dayes which cause a chang in diseases.
Critica Signa, Signes foregoing a Crisis.
Cinefactio, is a converting of Vegetables and Animals into ashes by heat.
Coadunation, see *Coagulation*.
Coagmentation, a glutination, whereby liquids are made hard by dissolved powders.
Coaction, a congealing of medicaments.
Coagulation, is that whereby disagreeing things are perfectly United.
Cohobation, is a drawing of liquor from any dry thing by the Art of distillation.
Colation, see *Colatura*.
Colliquation, or *Colliquefaction*, is the conjunction of many Liquids, or Solids, to make one Compoune.
Coloration, is whereby perfect Gold Silver *&c.* being obscured by sulphurous vapours, is renewed.
Combustion, is Ignition or burning of bodyes into Calx.
Comminution, is the reduceing of any matter into fine Powder, euen as meal.
Compositio, is compounding, or mixing many things together into one body.
Concretio, see *Divaporation*.
Confriction, is a slight powdering of a thing by rubing it between the fingers and thumb.
Confusio, is a mixture of liquid things together, as are of the same nature, as Oyls with oyls, waters & waters.
Congelation, is a congealing of things made by decoctions as Jelly, Glue, also Coperas, Salt peter *&c.*
Contusion, is the beating of grosser bodies into smaller.
Cribration, a preparing things by a Sive or Searce.
Condensed, made thick.

Declinatio morbis, is the declining of a disease.
Deligatio, is a part of Chyrurgery that concerneth the binding up of wounds.
Deliquium Chymicum, a distillation by fire, or a melting of Calx into a Lixivious humour.
Debilitas, a weakness proceeding from fainting.
Diagnosis, the knowledg of present signs, whereby a distemper is found out.
Diæta, Diet, moderate feeding.
Diaclisma, a washing or cleansing of the mouth, to help and strengthen the teeth and gums.
Dilutum, see *Infusio*.
Distillatio, Distilling, a drawing of water or liquor out of other Simples.
Disgestio, a Disgestion of meat in the Stomach by the natural heat therein.
Descensio, is the descending of juyce or other liquids.
Despumatio, the Scuming of Spume or froth that floats on the top of boyled liquor.
Distractio, a disagreeing of things mixt together, each retaining its own nature.
Divaporation, is an exhaltation by fire, till the vapour be evaporated, flowne or vanished away.
Dulcifie, a correcting of harsh medicines by sweet things.
Decoction, the boyling of a thing.
Duration, things mollified by fire, yet wax hard by cooling, or so hard by boyling.

Ecchymoma, see *Extractum*.
Elementa Principia, meer simple bodyes without any mixture of other ingredient.
Empirica Medicina, Quacking, or Mountebanks way of cureing the sick by guess.
Epidemicus, an Epidemical or common disease, proceeding from a common cause.
Essentia, the Essence or quintisence of a thing.
Exaltatio, is when a thing is changed in his one nature, and brought to a higher degree of virtue. or when the Spirit of any thing is elevated through heat, and vanisheth into the aire.
Extractum, an Extraction of some purer part from a more grosser body.
Emollientia, Softning things, such as with a moderate heat dissolve the parts which were close.
Emetologia, a description of things that provoke vomits.
Exulceration, a solution of continued parts proceeding from Gnawing matter.
Embrion, the rudiments of a child in the womb.
Embrocha, is a distilling of a Bath water gently and by drops upon any grieved part of the body.
Enchiresis Anatomica, a readiness in dissection, when the Artist shews the parts of a Carcase dexterously.
Elaboration, a manual operation whereby the Ignoble part is removed, for the more excellent matter.
Elevation, is when the spiritual part is drawn from the corporall, the Subtill from the gross.
Elution, is the preparing of several Ingedients, whither it be by Powdering Calcineing or Washing.
Evaporation, see *Divaporation*.
Expression, is the extract of Iuyce out of herbs by a Press.
Extension, the drawing out of a dislocated joynt to put it in its right place againe.
Eliquation, a melting to mix things together.

Facultas, the facultie or action of a man, which is performed with the body and minde, or either.
Fasciculus, an Arme full of any sort of Herbs.
Fasciation, the binding of Swathes about a limb that is to be cured of wounds or being broken.
Fecula, the dust or dross that subsides in the squeesing of certaine Vegetables.
Ferula, Chips or Splents made to tye about broken bones when set again in their places.
Fermentatio, a motion in the body tending to the perfection or chang of it.
Filtratio, is the Percolateing, Straining, or runing of any liquor through a cloth to clatifie it.
Fomentatio, a Foment or Sweet smell that cherish the spirits and revives the sences.
Formula, is the Phisitians prescription, which the Apothecary prepareth accordingly.
Frictio, a rubing or chafeing of some part of the body.
Fusio, is a melting with heat.
Fumigatio Chymici, is an Erosion of mettle by Smoak or Vapour.
Ferrumination, the ioyning together of a fracture in one and the same peece of mettle.
Fission, see *Section*.
Fixation, is preserving volatill and Spirituall bodyes to the fire, that they endure it, and not fly away.
Fluid, Liquid moist or flowing matter for medicines.

Fraction, is the breaking of any thing with ones hand.
Frixion, is the quallifying of some harsh medicines with oyle Butter or wine &c.

Gradation, is an exaltation of mettles to the height of their fineness and purity.
Granulation, is the casting of mettles into small drops or graines, like Hail shot.
Gerconia, is part of that part of Phisick which is for the preservation of health.

Haustus, a liquid thing taken inwardly.
Hedisma, any thing that gives a medicine a good scent.
Hygieia, soundness of Health.
Hydrocritica, Critical Judgings of Distempers.
Humectation, see *Irrigation*.
Humidity, a moistness.

Ignition, see *Combustion*.
Illiquation, is a commixture of Terrene Bodies with Metalline, earthy with metal.
Imbibition, is when a liquor is forced from a Body, and not finding vent to elevate, it falls on the body again, and bedews it with drops.
Incinaratio, is the reducing of the Bodies of Vegetables and Animals into Ashes by Fire.
Incorporatio, is a mixture of moist things with dry into one Body.
Indicantes Dies, are such days in which a Crisis will happen in a distemper, which usually are the 4, 11, 17, 24.
Indicatio, is that as demonstrates what is to be done in Diseases.
Infusio, is an extraction of the virtue of medicinal things with a convenient liquor.
Injectio, is a forcing of any fluid medicine into the Bowels at the Fundament. See *Clyster*.
Intercalares Dies, or *Intercidentes*, or *Provocatorij dies*, those days in which through the vehemency of the Fit, the Sick expels their Excrements unseasonably.
Incisio, incision, a cutting of the skin and flesh.
Incineration, is a mixture of liquid and dry things to the consistence of mollified Wax.
Inhumation, is a distillatory transudation by descending of the liquor, through a circular Fire made about the Pots in which the body or matter is put to be distilled.
Insolation, is a preparing of Simples or Compounds in the heat of the Sun in Summer.
Irrigation, is an aspersion of moisture on things to be dissolved, to make them more liquid.

Laquens, Bands or Tyes to bind up broken Bones.
Levigatio, is the reduction of hard and ponderous things by beating, into fine pouder.
Limation, the Dust or Filings of Metals.
Liquation, is that which being in one Body is dissolved, that it can flow abroad like water.
Liquefaction, is the dissolution of Metal by gentle fire.
Lotion, a preparation of Medicaments by Water or other liquor, to remove some hurtful thing in them.
Loimographia, is a description of Contagious Diseases.
Lutatio, Luration, a Cementing of Chymical Vessels.

Luxatio, a disjointing, or a Bone going out of its place.
Lyteria, a sign of the loosening of a great Disease.
Lithotomus, a Chyrurgion who is skilful in cutting out the Stone.
Libra Medica, a Phisicians pound, which is 12 ounces

Manupulus, an handful of any sort of Herbs.
Manna Christi, a sort of fine refined Sugar put into Cordials for very weak people.
Mastication, the action of chewing Meat.
Maceratio, a preparation of things by infusion or steeping in Liquor for a certain time.
Maturatio, is of a rude and crude substance, to exalt it to a mature and perfect Body.
Meconologia, a description of Opium.
Medicus, a Phisician, a Man practising Phisick.
Medicinales Dies, see *Critici Dies*, are the vacant days between the Crisis fit to administer Medicaments.
Menstruum, a liquor that dissolves Metal or Stone, or the dregs after distillation.
Magma, dregs left after the straining of Juices.
Metasyncrisis, the operation of a Medicine externally to fetch out humours.
Metallurgus, or *Metallicus*, a Chymist, or one that searcheth after Metals.
Metaptosis, is the degenerating of one Disease into another.
Methodus, the method or rules whereby Phisick and Medicines are found out for preservation of Health.
Metastasis, is the removing of a Disease out of one part into another.
Mitella, a swathe that holds up the Arm when it is hurt or wounded.
Mistion, a composition of Bodies, as in *Incineration*, *Incorporation*, *Colliquation* and *Contusion*.
Mineralogia, a description of Metals.
Mixtura, is a solid or liquid substance of several Medicines mixed together.
Morbus, a Disease, such a Constitution of Body, as renders it unapt to perform any action.
Mollition, is the beginning of bringing matter to a Liquation.
Mollification, a softning of any thing.
Mundification, the purging of any thing from that which is sordid and vicious.
Mutilated, a wounded part by putrifying.
Myologia, a description of the Muscles.
Myropola, one that sells oyntments.

Naturalis facultas, natural endowments of the mind.
Natura, the natural inclination of a man to any thing.
Noctambulo, *Noctambulus*, one that walks abroad in his Sleep.
Nosologia, see *Pathologia*.
Nutrimentum, Nutriment, nourishment through good digestion.
Nutrition, is a parmistion of moist matters by little and little to alter the quality of the Medicament.

Obstructio, is a shutting up of the passages of any part of the body.
Oligotrophia, a decrease of Nutrition.
Oligotrophus, meat that affords little nourishment.

Opiologia, a description of Opium.
Orexis, a natural appetite to meat.
Organum, or Organ, is a part that performs a right action to its constitution, and according to its office.
Oxyregmia, is an acid sour Belch from the Stomach.

Panicus, is a sudden fear or consternation.
Pathologia, that part of Phisick that teacheth the constitution of Mans Body.
Pepansis, a rectifying or bringing to order corrupt humours.
Politrophus, meat that affords much nourishment.
Pepasmus, a concoction or fermentation, or ripening of preternatural humours.
Pepsis, a concoction or fermentation of Humours and Meat in a mans natural Constitution; a good digestion.
Periodus Morborum, the space between the coming of Fits in intermitting Sicknesses or Diseases.
Periodus Sanguinis, a continued Circulation of the blood through the whole body.
Pharmacia, the Art of an Apothecary in compounding of medicines.
Pharmacopæus, the Doctrine or description of Phisicall and operative medicaments.
Phlegmatici, those much troubled with Phlegme.
Phthisicus, a man in a Consumption.
Physiognomica, signes whereby things are conjectured by the countenance of a person.
Physiognomia, the Art of knowing natures by the face.
Physiologia, or *Phytologia*, that part of Phisick which teacheth the nature and constitution of persons.
Plastica Virtus, that which can form and fashion any thing. That which could not be explained, the Ancients called a *Plastick Virtue*.
Pollutio Nocturna, Nocturnal pollution, an ejection in the night through Lecherous dreams.
Potio, a Potion, any liquid medicine taken inwardly.
Pori, Pores, little unperceiveable holes in the skin.
Præservatoria Iudicatio, a way to prevent diseases.
Prognosis, or *Signa Prognostica*, Signes whereby it is known what will become of the Patient.
Prægumena, is an antecedent internall cause of a disease, occasioned by an other.
Prophasis, a fore knowledg of diseases.
Pugillus, a handfull of any herbs, or as much as three fingers can hold.
Prophylactica, or *Prophylaxis*, that part of Phisick that respects the preservation of health.
Provocatorij Dies, see *Critici Dies*.
Pulpa, the pulp or substance of fruit or roots boiled and strained from its grosser parts.
Purgatio, Purging, an extraordinary and quick motion and frequent sending forth Excrements out of the body.
Pyretologia, a description of Fevers.
Plagula, a Plaglet. see *Splenia*.
Pulvis, see *Species*.
Phantasia, or *Phantisma*, Fancy, an internal sence or Imagination, whereby a thing is represented to the minde, as if the thing were really true.
Phlegma, or *Pituita*, Phlegme, or those clouds scume and froth, which appeareth on distilled waters, or other kinds of liquors.

Pul-

Pulsus, the Pulse, the beating or motion of the heart.
Percolation, a straining through either a cloth or Sive.
Precipitation, is when bodyes corroded and dissolved into water are reverbarated into calx.
Probation, is the proof of things, and to discerne what is good what is bad.
Projection, is giving mettle an other tincture by casting a medicine on it.
Prolectation, an extraction by parts, by which a rarified nature may be altered from the grosser.
Purgation, is a seperation of the pure liquor from thick Sediments or Spume.
Putrifaction, is the resolution of a naturall Putritude, to make it more excellent.
Parmistion, an equall and euen mixture of things.
Pollinctor, or *Pollictor*, an embalmer of dead bodyes.

Quartation, is the seperation of Silver and Gold mixt.
Quinta Essentia, a pure and well disgested medicine drawn from any Substance.
Qualitas, quality disposition or contexture of particles according to qualities whereof our bodyes are denominated or known to pertake thereof.
Quid pro quo, is when a medicine of one nature is altered and changed into an another.

Rarefacientia, Ratifying medicines.
Recidivus morbus, a relapse into a disease.
Rectificatio, a repeated distillation of liquors, to make them more pure. a double distilling.
Remissio Febrium, a remitting of fevers.
Repellentia, stoping or driving Humours another way.
Reverberatio Chymica, the Calcining or burning of bodyes or things by fire in a furnice.
Respiratio, a breathing, a delatation and contraction of the Chest or breast.
Revulsoria, is the drawing of blood to a convenient place, that gushes out in an other, which is by opening a vein.
Ructatio, or *Ructus*, a Belching, or depraved motion of the Stomach.
Rhegma, is a breaking or bursting of any part.
Rhodinum, Rose viniger, any thing made of Roses.
Ryas, is a too plentiful and preternatural falling of teares.
Rasion, is the Scraping or pareing of a thing.
Reduction, a restoring of a thing to its former condition.
Repurgation, whereby any thing is purged and cleansed from superfluities.
Resolution, is when things mixt, part one with another.
Restrinction, is a Gradation, whereby mettles Candified by fire, are drawn into a liquor of exaltation, and the more excellent by the Tincture or Gloss set on them.

Scarificatio, the cuting or incision of the skin with a Penknife, or such like Instrument.
Sedementa, a Sedement, or a thick settling of dreggs in the bottom of any liquor.
Semeiotica, that part of Phisick which treats of Health and of Sicknesses.
Signum morbis, the signes and Symptomes of a disease.
Solutio Chymica, a resolving any body into its Chymical Principles, which are Spirit, Salt, Sulpher, water, earth.
Species, the powders, or those simples, designed to make compounded medicines off.
Spasmologia, a Treatise of Convulsions.
Spasmus, is any Convulsion motion.
Sphygmica, that part of Phisick which treats of Pulses.
Splenia, or *Plagula*, are bolsters made of linnen 3 or 4 double to be laid on wounds Ulcers or Fractures.
Sputum, a liquor thicker than ordinary Spittle.
Stalagma, is that which is distilled from the Juyce of many herbs mixed together.
Sternutation, a Sneezing, or driving out of the head some sharp matter that disturbs it.
Stigma, a Scar, Stigmatize, or set a marke on a person.
Stratificatio, a Corroding or eating of mettles by Corrosive powders.
Superfœtation, a double conception with Child.
Subsidentia, see *Sedementa*.
Stupor, Numness, a lack of sense or feeling.
Stymma, the thick mass or dross as remaines after the pressing out of Juice or Oyle.
Sublimatio, is an extract, or moisture raised up above the drossy mass of things, and sticks to the sides or necks of the distilling vessells.
Symptoma, a Symptome, it is a preternaturall disposition of the body occasioned by some disease. Or a signe and token of such an approaching thing.
Syncope, a sudden depravation of sense and motion.
Syndrome, is a concurrence of severall Symptomes in the same disease.
Synteretica, that part of Phisick which gives Rules to preserve health.
Setaceum, a Seton, a hole made in the skin of the neck, and a Silk tyed therein, for ill humours to vent out.
Sectio Cæsarea, the cuting of a child out of the womb.
Section, is the cuting of great things into lesser parts.
Segregation, the solution of that which was whole and perfect; divided into parts.
Separation, whereby things distracted and not agreeing are seperated one from anoeher.
Siccation, is the drying up of excrementall moistures in bodyes, either in the Sun or before the fire.
Subduction, is a drawing of Juyces, Oyles, or other Liquors downwards, by percolation, filturation *&c.*
Sphacelus, the effect of a part or member already utterly corrupt and putrified.
Subtiliation, is dissolution, a seperating the Subtill part from that which is gross.
Stratification, or *Stratum super Stratum*, is a Cementing by strewing Corroding powders on plates of Mettall by Course or degrees.
Spume, the Froth or Scume of any boyled liquor.

Tecmarsis, a conjecture of diseases.
Temperamentum, the Temper of the body.
Terra Mortua, is the earthy body that remaines after the Elixivation, or essence thereof is taken away. A thing good for nothing.
Theorema, *Theoria*, *Theoretica*, the Speculative part of Phisick, or Chyrurgery.
Therma, a naturall Bath.
Tregema, *Tregea*, things not beaten so small as powder, yet differs not much from Pulverizing.
Trituration, a powdering of things thereby the better to mixe them up into one body.
Thrombus, *Thrombosis*, a coagulation of milk and blood in

lain humane bodyes.
Tabum, a thin sort of matter that comes from a wound.
Therapeutica, is that part of Phisick which delivers the method of healing.
Torrefaction, it is drying a thing speedily, Parching or scorching it over the fire.
Transmutation, is the changing of the colour, quality & substance of a thing.
Transudation, is the discensory distillation, the essence drop by drop falling into the Receiver.

Varii dies, those dayes wherein an imperfect or ill *Crisis* frequently happens, and those are the 6 8 10 12 16 18 to which some adde 22 23 25 29 30 32 33 35 38 39 called *medicinal dayes*, being fit to be given in.
Valetudo, either a good or ill disposition of body.
Venæ Sectio, the opening or breathing of a Vein.
Vesica Distillatoria, any vessel of Brass or Coper that liquor is distilled into.
Victus Ratio, a way of liveing whereby health is preserv'd
Vitalis Facultas, the vitall faculty, is the Action by which man liveth, which is Respiration, and Motion of the Heart. *&c.*
Vitalis Iudicatio, a way whereby Vigor and strength is renewed and preserved.
Vomitus, a Vomiting, a violent sending out at the mouth what is in the Stomach
Urocriterium, *Urocritica*, or *Uromantia*, is Iudgment or signes observed from Urine.
Uroscopia, the Inspection of Urine.
Ulceratio, see *Exulceratio*.
Urina, *Uron*, *Lotium*, Urine, or Piss.
Usnea, moss that groweth on Bones and Trees.
Ulomelia, is a Soundnes of the whole Body.
Vitrification, is converting Calx and Cineres into transparant Glass like Christall.
Ustion, is a preparation of things for powdering, by the burning of them in a Crucible.
Volatill, Spirits that will fly away, airy, & vanishing.

Xerotes, a dry disposition of Body.

Zootomia, an Artificial dissection of Animals
Zoogonia, a generation of perfect Animals born alive.
Zymoma, the Ferment or watery Juice in the mouth or in the Stomach.

Leger De Main Implements.

2 THE Art of Leger De Main, or Iugling, otherwise called *Hocus Pocus*. Was a thing first by certaine *Egyptians* brought into this Kingdom, that were transported hither; Who dispersed themselves through most parts thereof, and being most Dexterous and expart in this Art, and *Palmestrie*, cousened the people in all places wheresoever they came. To whom diverse Vagrant *English* joyned in Society and in tyme learnt their Language and Cousening delusions, whereby they were at length discovered, and a Law enacted against such Idle Rogues and Vagabonds.

It is an Operation by which one may seem to work wounders, Impossible and Incredible things, and all by the agility and nimblenes and slight of the Hand. The Parts of this Art are principally two, The one in conveyance of Balls, Cards, Dice, Money *&c.* The other in Confedracie; yet neither can be well done without the help of Instruments leading thereunto.

For the Operator must have his Implements made of purpose to play withall, as Brass or Tin Cups, a long round Stick about a foot, small Balls of Cork, and great ones of Leather, Cards, Dice wooden Boxes, Knives, & Bodkins, Piles of Counters, Rings, Locks, Fulling dish *&c.* Of which I shall give you an example of some, for the rest I referr you to *Hocus Pocus Iunior*, Printed by him in the yeare 1634.

XXXVI. Within this Square is three Instruments used by Iuglers, a Science much practized amongst a pack of wandering Rogues and Knaves, who delight in nothing more then to Cosen and Cheat money out of the purses of harmless and simple people, who think that what they do is by the helpe of the Devill, or through Conjuration and Witchcraft; when there is no such thing, only a *Deceptio visus*, deceiving the eyes, by the quick and cuning motion of the hand.

The first is a **Iuggling Bodkin**, by the helpe of this Instrument they will seem to thrust a Bodkin throwe their Arm, as if it were really so; whereas there is nothing of hurt, for the **haft** is on one side the Arm, and the **point** on the other, which are held close to the Arm by the **arched peece** coming from them, which is hid under the Jugglers sleeve.

A. 3 such in pale, points to the sinister *S.* by *Juggler*.

The Second is a **Iuggling Knife**, by which they do seem to run a Knife through the Arm, or Legg, but it is don with the like fallacy as aforesaid in the Bodkin.

The Third is an other sort of **Cheating Knife**, by which they seem to strik or cut a deep slash in the Arm, or to cut off halfe the Nose, whereas the **semicircle** in the **blade** of the Knife being set on the Arm, or Nose, shews it to be but a deceipt of sight, through a want in the knife blad.

B. 3 such in pale to the sinister pointed, A. hafts O. born by the name of *Procade*.

XXXVII This is a **Iuggling Cup**, or **Box**, with which by the dexterity of the hands, **Balls** are conveyed under, and from under them, at pleasure; also from place to place invisibly, which causeth much admiration and wonder. These **cups** are made of Brass or Tyn, the Bottom whereof must be set a little within the Cup, and made taper from the open to the said bottom, which in the figure is turned upside down, for so they are generally played withall in shewing their activity.

S. 3 such A. in chief an *hic veribus* stick O. born by the name of *Sucob*.

The **Iuggling Pudding**, is a thing made of Tin, consisting of diverse little **Hoops** made taperwise, so as they may almost fall one through an other, having a **ring** at the wide end thereof, that it may be the better held

held in the teeth. This being conveyed into the mouth. upon the holding down the head, will fall out to a great length to admiration; which with the palme of the hand may several times be struck up into the mouth againe. see the shape of it *cha.* 16 *numb.* 72. in the base point.

The **Juggling pile of Counters** and **Cover**, are diverse Brass Counters glued together, somany as will make a pile, each having a square hole cut therein as to containe a Die, then a whole Counter is glued on the top, then they have a Box made of thin Latin or a round Cover of cloth to put easily over them. Then they will cast a Die on the table, and cover it with the box or cloth cover having the pile of Counters therein, which will fall on the Die and cover it, take of the cover there appeares the Counters, cover them againe, and take it off againe pressing the sides of it, and it will keep the pile from falling out, so there will be nothing to be seen but the Die. Which to them as know not the falacy, it will cause admiration. see the figure in the sinister base of *numb.* 36.

The **Juggling Ring**, made to hang in a bodys nose, or through the mouth and cheek, is made with a noch, or cut through in one place of it, which being clapt into the mouth will stick to one side of the Cheek, as if it were put through it. Now to do this nimbly, there must be (as in other such like tricks) two **rings**, one whole to shew, the other cut to do the trick withall. see the figure *numb* 36.

After the same manner a **Juggling Pad Lock** is hung upon ones mouth; the one halfe of the **Bow** is made immovable, the other half movable, and made in such a manner that by the meanes of a spring within the Lock part, that movable part will open wider, or be closer as the spring is pressed: this is a trick must be done also with two locks one to shew the people, the other to work by. See the form of it *cha.* 16 *numb.* 72.

B. such a like A. is born by *Fallock.*

G. 3 such A. is born by *Locker* or *Looker.*

The trick called the *Nuntius Invisibilis*, or *Bonus Genius*, which is to convey a figure of a man cut in wood invisibly away, and none can imagin how: the figure is to be about the bignesis of ones little finger, the head is to be taken off and put on by a wyer. Also they have a cloth Cap with a little hole in the Crown of it, which has a little bag within it, to convey the head into, which is to be neatly made that it be not perceived when the Cap is turned. Now here lyeth the Art, first in shewing the figure, then in puting the same under the Cap and shewing the head only through the hole, then to convey the body away and the head into the bag, which being done and the Cap turned inside out, all is gon: which upon the right turning of the Cap, with a whistle or call, the head is taken out of the bag, and appeares through the Crown hole againe, to admiration. See *c* 16 *n* 57 62.

G. the like out of a Cap betw: 2 pillars A. is born by *Bilerhiet* of *Germanie.*

Such an Head out of a Cap G. is *Egilsperg's* Crest.

the like the Cap S. is the crest of *Van Mergetheim.*

the Cap G. is the crest of *Van Buren.* also of *Teuffel.*

By the same Fallacy three Cards shewed to one, shall by turning them, be three contrary Cards, or be changed into Flowers, Birds, Beasts Men or Womens faces *&c.* all which is done by makeing the three Cards from corner to corner, longways, one half like a Card with 5 6 or 7 Hearts or Spades; and the other half with what devises best pleaseth. As it is further shewed *cha.* 16 *num* 64 how they are held to be seen. And *numb* 65. how deceitfully made, that being turned upside down and opened are an other thing, to admiration of the ignorant.

And to drink any liquor out of a *Tunnell* in sight of others, and yet after to make it seem to com out of an eye, eare, or mouth, and run through the Tunnell on the ground. Which is performed by a **Tunnell** made of **Tyn** with a **double side**, as the figure in *ca* 16 *n* 73. The inward part filled up to the brim, fills the false bottom, so the hole in the top of the brim being stoped with the finger end, it will not run out. So that the inner part may be drunk off, and the Tunnell shewed to be empty though the double part remaine ful full; which may be let forth upon any fancy as aforesaid.

These and some scores more of Iuggling feats there are which be able to beguile not only the Simple but the wise, insomuch that I have heard some discreet persons (upon seeing off their tricks) affirm that such things were impossible to be don, except it were by Conjuration or some other unlawfull assistances: when as in truth it is nothing but by the nimblenes of the hand, and the deceipt of the things they use. I could produce their fallacies in variety of other tricks, done by foulding of Papers, tying of Knots, that will loose of themselves; or cuting of a Rubin in two, and peeeing it againe; make a six peuce goe through a Table, or to melt it in ones hand; to swallow a Knife, or thrust a Bodkin into ones Forehead; to breath out fire and smoak, to vomit or to pull many round Copper Plates out of ones mouth; to draw severall colours of Rubin out of ones mouth by yards; to cause Balls put in each hand come into one; to make two or three Eggs go up and down a Staffe; put a Ring or Beadstone on a staffe or cord and strik them off, others holding the ends of the staffe or cord; *&c.* which as they pertaine nothing to our purpose, I pass them over: wishing such as desire further knowledg here in, to finde out such *Authors* as *treat* thereof.

3 AMONGST The Sundry Works of the aforesaid Artizans, We shall now have occasion to speak of such as are fixed and permanent, as **Buildings**; either Prophane, for ordinary use of dwelling: as **Halls, Houses, Manors,** *&c.* or Sacred, as **Temples, Churches,** *&c.* for Gods service: and some others which are moveable, as **Tents, Tabernacles,** *&c.* Examples of all which we will now produce in this and in the Succeeding Chapter.

Houses' Temples, Tabernacles.

XXXVIII. He beareth Argent, an **Umbrella** in chie

chief Azure, the **Staffe** or **Stay**, Sable. This is born by the name of *Vmbrell*. This is a thing much used in hot Countreys where the Sun is Scorching; the people to preserve themselves from such heat, use this to shadow them from the Sun. It is termed an *Vmbrella* a little Shadow, or any other thing to shelter one from heat or raine, of *Vmbra* a Shadow. Some call it a **Skonce**, which Gentlewomen, or their servants beare up in their hands to keep and shadow them from heat.

In the sinister base is a **Fane Pendant**, some terme it a **Fane** of **three points**, or **ends pendant**: this is a thing fixed upon an Iron **Rod**, and set on high, as on Towers, Steeples, *&c.* to shew by it turning about, in what Ever, or part of the Heavens the wind bloweth. see other fashions of drawing these Fanes, for each Countrey hath its perticular way *chap* 13 *numb* 20 21 22 30.

O. the like G. is the town Arms of *Tubingen*.
The contrary in colours & mettle, is the Town Arms of *Herbenberg*, both in *Germanie*.
A. the like G. is born by *Montfort*.

XXXIX. He beareth Azure, an **Put**, or **Souldiers Tent**, or **Cabine**. This hath severall denominations, as **Suttlers Cabine**, or **Booth**, which is nothing else but foure Pikes set a Cros in maner of two Salters, and there bound; having a fift Pike laid overthwart the same: over which is cast a **Tilt**, or **Booth**, or **Tent Cloth**, which is to preserve both the Souldiers, and all under the said Cloth, from the violence of the weather, whither raine or wind.

If it be a **Tent** in which the Ensigne of a Foot Company lodgeth, then the Ensignes Colours is hung forthiin the Front of it; In which respect it is termed in Armory an **Ensignes Tent**.

XL. He beareth Or, a **Pavilion**, or **Tent Royall**, Gules, **Lined**, **Fringed**, and **Faned**, Argent. By the name of *Pavilion*. This is also called a **Princes Pavilion**, or **Papilion**, from the latine *Papilio* a Butterflie, shewing that it is framed of Stretched out Clothes, or Curtaines; like the opening of the Wings of a Butterflie. Some term it a **Sanctuary**, a place of Refuge.

S. on a Cheveron O. 3 Roses G. born 3 such A. fringed O. is the Company of *Vpholders*, or *Vpholsterers* Coat of Arms.

A. 3 such G. lined fringed & faned O. is the Arms of the Company of *Tentmakers*. Of this Society was St. *Paul* as we may read Act 18 3.

XLI. He beareth Argent, a **Tent**, or **Tabernacle**, (or Moveing House) Gules, **Lined**, **Fringed**, and **Pinnisled**, Or. Born by the name of *Tendalle*.

The like between two **Parliament Robes**, in a field Argent, on a Chief Azure, a Lion of *England* is born by the worshipfull Company of *Merchant Taylors* of the City of *London*.

S. 3 Tents Er. trimed with B. & G. an Holy Lamb couchant A. on a Cushion tasselled O. over his back a Cros patee fitched G. This was anciently the Arms of the *Vpholders* of the City of *London*. This in the Patent or Grant of the Coat to that Society by *William Hawkslow Clarencieux* 5 E. 4. It is thus blazoned, the field Sable, three **Spervers** Ermin, a Lamb Silver couchant and, on a **pillow** of Gold. Blazoning was then but in its Infancie.

S. 3 such A. Lyned Er. was of old the *Vpholders*, or *Vpholsterers* Arms of *Chester*.

B. such a Tent A. Lyned O. with the *Virgin Mary* and the *Babe* in her Arms therein, of the Second; Fringed of the Third, Covered G. is the Town Arms of *Otting* in *Germanie*

This is of some termed also a **Tent Royall**; yet it is necessary that Heraulds should make a distinction between the one and the other: For the **Pavilion**, or **Princes Tent**, or **Tabernacle**, are all said to be of a Squre form, from the example of the **Tabernacle** of the **Congregation**, in and upon which the God of *Israel* did so often appeare to his people, and to *Moses* & *Aron*. which was Square as we may read *Exo* 26 1 2 3 *&c.* and 36 23 24 *&c.* All the rest of the Peoples being Round, whose Seting up of their Tents, is termed, the **Pitching the Tent**, or Camping. And the takeing them up to march, the **Removeing the Tents**, or **Raiseing the Campe**. And the entrance, is called the **Tent Dore**, or Curtaines.

The several names given to these Moveing Houses.

A Tabernacle.	A Sanctuary.
A Pavilion, or	A Papilion.
A Tent, or	A Sperver.
A Hutt.	A Booth.
A Cabine. or	A Kitt.
A Shade, or	An Umbrell.
A Hovell.	A Sentry house.

Such as are drawn or born

A Coach.	A Chariot.
A Waggon.	A Litter.
A Close carriage.	A Shallown.
A Sedan	A Rallash.

XLII. He beareth Argent, a **Dove house** Gules, **Covered** or **Thatched**, Or. by the name of *Columbell*. This was the old way of depicting a Dove, or Pigeon house; but of later tymes, the tops of them are covered, which is termed the **Louer** of the Pigeon house, by which they fly in and out.

Some have the **Dove house Square**, others with **Foue Gable ends**, with a Cros **Ridge**, haveing a **Lover** on the top of the Roofe.

A. the like G. cover & lover B. born by *Dovehouse*.

XLIII. He beareth Argent, a **Tower Arched** on the top, with a **Fane**, Gules. Born by *Tomeridge*.

There are also born in Arms **Towers** with **Battlements Arched**, which are so distinguished from this cut in the Plate. See *chap.* 9 *num.* 185 190.

O. a Tower Battled and Arched G. born by *Caml.*

S. the like A. arched & Faned O. born by *Tower*

XLIV. He beareth Argent, a **Dwelling house**, Gules; **Covered**, **Tyled**, **Slated**, or **Rooed**, Azure haveing a **Chimney** in the midle. born by *Housley*.

This is likewise termed an House of one **Bay**, or a **Countrey house**, or a **Farmers house**, or a **Dary house**, or a **Cottage**, because it stands of it selfe without any other houseing joyned to it.

Several pieces of Timber belonging to a Wood House.

The **Sels**, or **Groundsels**, or **Ground plate**.

The **Posts**, or **Corner posts**, **Standards**, **principal posts**, **Main pieces**, are all the upright strong pieces.

Threshold or **Dor Sel**.

Dor Cheeks, the Jaums of the Door.

Lintal, or **Transom**, the top of the Door Frame, or Window, the Door head.

Props, **Stays**, **Shores**, **Undersets**.

Pillars,

Wall-Plates.

Transomes, or **Side Posts**.

Beams, **Girders**.

Summers, **Myer Trees**, **Bressummer**, the great pieces on which the Floors ly in every Story.

Side Raisers.

Rests for Beams.

Laces, or binding Beams.

Purlaces.

Doors.

Wainscot.

Folding Doors.

Sieling Timber.

First pieces, the highest pieces on the Roof.

Window Stools. **Introducers**.

Window Posts, **Prick Posts**, the sides of the Window.

Joyce, pieces on which the Boards of a Floor is Nailed.

Spars, **Bankries**, **Hongzells**, of which the Roof is made.

Flows, **Boards**.

Laths or **Latts**.

Braces or **Strutts**, short pieces that bind the upright Posts.

Roof Beam, or **Girder to the Garret Flow**, the Summer on which the Gable end is raised.

Rafters, or **principal Rafters**, those pieces that run up the sides of the Dormant or Gable end.

Kings piece, **Crown post**, or **Joggle piece**, that which stands upright in the middle of the Gable end.

Struts, or **Bunspars**, pieces that go from either side the Kings piece to the Rafter of the Gable end to support them, they are made like a Cheveron reversed.

Knees of the principal Rafters, pieces set from the Roof Beams to the lower end of the said Rafter, which make a kind of Triangle.

Collar Beam, **Strout Beam**, **Top Beam**, or **Wind Beam**, is the over cross pieces on the top of the Gable End.

Sleepers, the two out pieces of the Dormant, which carrieth the Roof to overseil the Gable end, to secure it from Weather.

Bun-spars, the short pieces that hold the Rafters and Sleepers at distance.

XLV. He beareth Azure, a **Stable**, with each side a **Shouring**, Argent; **Covered** or **Thatched**, Or; **Ridged**, Vert. By the name of *Stables*.

Some term it a **Stable** or **Ore-house**, or a **Cow house**, with two **Cotes** or **Calf Kids** on the sides. Others Blazon it a **Barn** with its **Out-Lets** or **Side Cotes**.

XLVI. He beareth Azure, three **Cottages set in triangle**, Argent, **covered**, Or; with an Estoil in Base. Others term it a **Tower** in chief, between two **Cottages** in Fess (in manner of a triangle) in Base an Estoil. By the name of *Coats* or *Cottrel*.

B. 3 such A. in Base an Escochion O. a Lion rampant holding a Tower between his Paws G. on a Chief B. 3 Marygolds slipt issuane, is the Town Arms of *Liebtenaw* in the *Netherlands*.

B. a covered or Roofed Tower with two Houses on each side conjoined, between 2 such sans Houses A. is the Coat Armour of the Town of *Homburg*. Some have it with a Lion rampant to the Sinister O.

XLVII. He beareth Argent, a **Cart house fired** upon an **Hill** or **Mount issuing** out of Base, all proper. By the name of *Carthouse*.

B. on the like Hill V. the Supporters or corner posts G. covering O. is the Coat and Crest of *Van Lesebitz*.

This is a kind of open House, having nothing else but a cover, made either of Straw, Rushes, or Gorst; And is for no other use, then for Husband men, and other Countrey men to put their **Geers** in which belong to Husbandry; as Carts, Tumbrels, Plows, Harrows, and the like; to keep them from the foulness of the weather. Some term it a **Sheep-Cote**, into which they will fly in Tempestuous and Stormy times to secure themselves.

XLVIII. He beareth Azure, a **Theater issuant in Base**, Argent. Born by the name of *Player* or *Players*.

This is a place built round like a **Tower**, but every Story is a degree less than that it stands or is mounted upon; on the top whereof there is a Lanthorn which giveth Light to the Foundation. In the time of the *Roman* Empire it was their general place of meeting, to consult the good of the Government, and to choose Officers of State. But in these our days it is looked upon to be no other than a **Play house**, a place for people to go to hear Acts, and to see Stage Plays and Interludes, and to spend their precious Time in Vanity and Idleness.

XLIX. He beareth Argent, a **Garden in Prospect**, proceeding from Base to the Fess, **Pedged** and **Paled Quadrangular**, with a **Garden House** or **Bower** at the farther side, all proper.

Things proper for Gardens are

Mazes. Labyrinths. Beds. Borders.
Walks. Alleys. Arbours.

L. He

L. He beareth the **inward prospect** of a **Room extended** all over the Field; the **sides** Argent, the **ground Tiled** Gules; and the **Roof** or **Cieling**, Or.

The several Rooms in the inside of an House.

Entry.	Hall.	Parlar.
Buttery.	Sellet.	Pantery.
Stove.	Wash house.	Larder.
Pastery.	Skullery.	Brew-house.

Above Stairs.

Street Room.	Dining Room.	Drawing Room.
Chambers.	Bed Chambers	Lodging Rooms.
Dressing Room.	Closets.	Nursery.
Stairs case.	Gallaries.	Garrats.
Sallars.	Roose Rooms.	Store Chambers.
Lofts	Cock lofts.	Lanthern. &c.

LI. He beareth Or, the **Pedestall** of a **Pillar**, with its **Plynth**, and lower **Basis**, **Issuant**; whereon is fixed an **Peragon Pyramed**, betweene two Square **Pillars Spired**, with **Crosses** thereon, Gules. By the name of *Pedestall*. Thus it is termed by most, yet the Artists Blazon it, a **Dado** (**Dye**, or **Square Pedestall**) fixt on it **Lower Plynth**, in Base; with it **higher Plynth Bevile**, both **Bottoned**: on the **Zocco** (or Plaine thereof) is placed an **Peragon**, betweene two **Square Pillars**, their tops **Pyramed** and **Crossed**.

This is a contrary beareing to what I formerly shewed you *cha. 9 num.* 188. That being a Wall before 3 Towers; this being a kinde of Tomb Stone, or a large Pedestall of a Pillar with three pillars set upon it, as if it were erected for some kinde of Monument. And therefore in short, it may not unfitly, or improperly be Blazoned, on a **Tomb-stone 3 Pillars erected**: or else erecter on a **Tomb-Stone**, a **Pyramed** betweene two **Pillars**.

LII. He beareth Argent, on a **Square Tower** issuant out of the Base, Surmounted by an **Open Port** or **Arch** joyned to two **Towers**, Gules: the **Roofe quadrangular**, or Divided into foure **Gable ends**, or **Dorments**, Azure. Born by *Bridghouse*. And therefore from the Bearer, it may better be termed a **Bridg** in Base, with one **Arch**; thereon an **House** with two **Towers, Turretted**. For it must be presupposed, as no House is built upon a Bridge, but it hath a large and Spacious **Gate Arched**, for the benefite of transportation of Goods through.

LIII. He beareth Vert, on the **Capital**, or head of a **Corinthian Pillar**, a **Wall** with a **Port**, betweene two **Towers**, Argent. This is the Coat and Crest of *Don Popon* of *Spaine*.

A. the like G. or on the Battlement of a Tower, two Turrets. is born by the name *Bebenburg* of *Franckford*.

LIV. Is wanting being overslipped in the figureing.

LV. He beareth Argent, out of a **Square Tower** issuant, a **Round Turret, Spired**, Gules. This is also termed; the **Tower** of a Church, **Towered** and **Spired**, or a **Steeple Towred** and **Spired**. This is born by the name of *Walkis*.

LVI. He beareth Argent, a **Bridge** in Bend sinister of three **Arches**, **Imbattled**, at each end a **Tower** Conjoyned to the sides of the Escocheon, with an **House** in the middle, Gules; and through each Arch runs a **Stream** or **Currant** of **Water**. This is a long Blazon, but it is according to the *Dutch* way; otherwise you may term it, On a **Bridg** of three **Arches**, an **House** between two **Towers**, with three **Streams** of **Water** flowing into the Base; all Proper. see *cha. 9 num.* 191 This Coat is born by the name of *Tomerich* or *Towerbridg*.

LVII. He beareth Argent, an **Hall**, or **Mansion House**, or a **Mannour House**, with a **Gate house** and **Walled** about, Gules; the **Roofe** Leaded, or **Covered**, Azure; with a **Lanthern** on the top Proper. This is born by the name of *Mannor*.

The out sides of an House.

The *Draught* or	*Model.*
The *Basis* or	*Fo ndation.*
The *Front* or	*Forefront.*
The *Court* or	*Entrance.*
The *Staires* or	*Greeces.*
The *Porch* or	*Portall.*
The *Gate. Doore* or	*Wicket.*
The *Walls* or	*Banks.*
The *Juttings out* or	*Over Seelings.*
The *Water Tables* &c	*Butterefes.*
The *Quines* &c	*Cornishes.*
The *Dormants* or	*Gable Ends.*
The *Finishings* or	*Pinicles.*
The *Fractables* &c	*Corbells.*
The *Arches* or	*Vaults.*
The *Roofe* or	*Covering.*
The *Eaves* or	*Easeings.*
The *Gutters* or	*Water Spouts.*
The *Pavement* &c	*Posts* with *Rails.* *Pales.*
The *Belcony* &c	*Tarras Walk.*
The *Turrets* &c	*Chimneys.*
The *Lanthern* &c	*Windows. Casements.*
The *Pillars* or	*Columns.*
The *Barrs* &c	*Latices. Graies*

LVIII. He beareth Argent. a **Walled Citty**, or **Towne**, **Issuant** and **Extended** through the Field, all Proper. Some term it the **Prospect** of a **Citty**, or **Walled Towne**; because it is not to be looked upon as a Citty, if without Walls; And it is but a Prospect, by reason the Tops of the Houses, and the Steeples are only to be seen.

Principal

Principal Edifices or Buildings for the Commonalty are these.

A **City**, *Metropolis*, the Chief or Mother City in a Kingdom or Nation.

A **City**, *Urbs*, a Walled Town, or a place for defence of a Countrey, fortified with a Castle, Towers, Gates and Bars.

A **City**, *Civitas*, a place with or without Walls, being Franchised and Inhabited by an Assembly of People; the See of a Bishop and a Cathedral.

The **Suburbs**, the Houses built on the out-sides of a Walled City, or near to it.

A **Town**, *Oppidum*, a Walled Town, such as for its strength of Walls and largeness may be reputed a City, but hath not the Franchises or Freedoms and Priviledges belonging to it.

A **Town** or **Borough**, *Municipium*, a place of Freedom like to a City, an Incorporation of Mayors and Bailiffs.

A **Barony**, *Baronia*, a place of Priviledg, having many Towns within the Circuit thereof.

A **Lordship**, *Pagus*, a Countrey Town wherein is a Court Leet, having divers Hamlets and Demain Houses in its Bounds.

A **Demaine**, *Dominicum*, Houses belonging to a peculiar person as Lord thereof.

A **Colony**, a City or Town where people are sent to dwell or inhabit, purposely to people or plant a place.

A **Cittadel**, a place Built for the Defence of a City, Town or Country.

A **Village**, *Villa*, a Town with many Houses joined together.

A **Little Village**, *Villula*, a place wherein is a few scattering Houses.

A **Hamlet**, *Hamletta*, a little Hamme or Home, or Town within the boundary of a greater Town.

A **Countrey**, *Rus*, a place where Husbandry is exercised.

A **Street**, *Publicum*, the common way, or publick Street in a City; Houses being Built on each side. *Urbis Via.*

A **Great Street**, *Platea*, a large broad Street, or way between Houses.

A **Short** or **Little Street**, *Viculus*, a Street quickly turning into another Lane.

A **Street in a Town**, *Vicus*, *Vicinium*, the joining of Houses one to another.

A **Lane**, *Angiportus*, a little narrow Street, which generally hath many windings or turnings.

A **By-Lane**, *Diverticulum*, a Turning way, or by-side, which cuts off much in the common ways or passages.

A **Court**, or inward part of a Street or Lane, where Houses are Built round about, either in a Quadrant or oblong Figure, or otherwise; a place that is neither Lane or Street in a Town.

An **Alley**, *Ambulacrum*, a narrow passage, through which it is hard to carry any Burthen, a place only to walk in.

In-land Towns, such as have no considerable River flowing near them.

Publick places within Citys and great Towns.

A **Court** or **Pallace**, for the King, Senate, Bishop or chief Magistrate.

A **Town Hall**, **Guild-Hall**, or **Moot-Hall**, for Trial of all Law Cases.

A **Goal**, or Prison House for Debtors.

A **House of Correction**, to punish Vagabonds.

A **Treasury**, to keep the publick Stock.

An **Armory**, to keep Arms in for the defence of the place.

A **Library**, a place to keep Books in for such as desire to Read.

An **Exchange**, for Merchants and Trades-men to make their Bargains in.

A **Cathedral**, and other Congregational Churches for the people to meet at.

Walls, **Gates**, and **Bars**, for the defence of it.

Baths, **Hot Houses**, to cleanse the Body from Sweat and Filth.

Alms-Houses, for poor decayed persons.

Hospitals, for Sick, Diseased and Wounded Persons.

Inns, or **Guest Houses**, to entertain Strangers.

Victualling Houses, places to Buy Meat and Drink ready for the Belly.

Taverns and **Ale-Houses**, to bring up young Drunkards before the old ones Die.

Market-place, where all sorts of Goods for Back and Belly, for pleasure or profit are sold.

Shambles, where Butchers sell their Meat.

Shops, where Tradesmen sell all sorts of Wares.

Conducts, or **Conduits**, Wells, Fountains, for to serve the place with Water.

River, **Rivulet**, **Beck** or **Rill**, **Brook** or **Pond**, to supply the place with Water, but especially to carry Commodities to the place, as generally for that purpose all great Towns are seated by great Rivers.

Jakes, or **Privy Houses**, Houses of Office.

Skaven places, there where the Dirt and Filth of the place is laid together.

Principal Edifices for peculiar persons, are these.

Court, or Kings Houses; for wheresoever the King doth reside, that place is called the Court. And it is generally termed **Up to the Court**, not Down to the Court.

Pallaces, or Bishops dwellings, are the names or titles given those places where their Diocess is.

Councel or **Court** or **Common Halls**, Places of Judicature, there where the *Pretour* or Judg sitteth to to give Judgment. And is generally the place which *pro tempore* they lodge in.

Castles, Stone Houses, Places of Strength, Fortified with Walls, High Towers, Battlements, Barbicons, Portcullaces, Gates and Barrs, Compassed with deep Trenches, or built on Steep Hills.

Halls,

Halls, Larg and vast Buildings with a Court in the middle, Lords and Noble Mens dweling houses.

Mannours, Houses of the Gentry, and not inferior to Halls in some Places; Yet the are generally taken to be Large houses without the Walls of a Citty; or the chief House of the Lord of a Town, in that Town.

Mansion Houses, the chief Houses belonging to the Nobility and Gentry, or others, which they dwell in, or inhabite to tarry.

Summer Houses, Bowers, Places to which the Gentry resort, and abide there dureing the Summer season, for their Recreation and pastime.

Lodges, Houses built in Forests Chases and Parks, for preservation of the Deere; Also for recreation, and to see the game hunted.

Messuages, Countrey Houses, Freehoulders, and Farmers dwelling places.

Farmes, Houses that have Lands, and Possessions annexed to them.

Cottages, or **Cotes,** Small little low Houses, in which the Vulgar and Common people dwell.

Edifices for Pleasure or Profit are these.

Bowers, Booths, Tents, Butts, Places to take the Summers pleasure and recreation.

Banqueting Houses, Places to Eat and Drink, to Feast and rejoyce in.

Garden Houses, Places to preserve Fruit and Flowers therein.

Towers, or **Watch Towers,** Places to look about, and see things afarr off.

Theaters, Places where Interludes or Playes are acted, being built half round, that people there assembled may the more conveniently behold what is done.

Amphitheaters, or Play Houses, as a Cock Pit, a Tennice Court, a Billiard Table, a Bowling House, & all other sorts of Gameing Places.

Cloysters, are Walks within Cathedrals, or Abby Churchs, Arched over; for Monks and Friers to take their pleasure and repass.

Rows, Gallaries, or **Walks,** Places to stand in and look about; or to exercise ones feet therein.

Edifices or Buildings appendant to great Houses.

Dary Houses.	*Bake Houses.*	*Brewhouses.*
Water Houses.	*Fountaines.*	*Barnes.*
Stables.	*Granaries.*	*Dog Kennells.*
Cow Houses.	*Oxe Stalls.*	*Calfe Kitts.*
Foulds. or	*Sheep Cotes.*	*Cart Houses.*
Kills. or	*Malt Houses.*	*Swin Styes.*
Water Mills.	*Wind Mills.*	*Horse Mills.*
Pigeon or	*Dove Houses.*	*Hovels,* or *Sheads.*

Houses of Office, or *Easement. &c.*

All which are so commonly known what they are, that they need no further Explanation.

TO
The Right Worshipful
Sir *PHILIP EGERTON*, of *Oulton*, Knight,
And to *JOHN EGERTON*, Esq; his Son and Heir.

IN the Erecting of such a large, spacious, and various Edifice, the Spectators at first View, will hardly conceive how much pains was bestowed first in Digging the Foundation, preparing the Materials, contriving the Architecture, raising the Scaffolds, and in removing the Rubbish, with Twenty things more; besides the greatest of all, which is Coin to pay off the Labourers, might cause one to stand in a Maze; however through the Great Providers help, it hath all along been carried on: Wherein if you reap in few Hours the fruit of many years Labour, and receive Content thereby, the Author will be much satisfied and encouraged through your Bounty to Subscribe himself

Your Worships most Obliged Servant

Randle Holme.

CHAP. XIII.

1. THIS Chapter is a prosecution of the latter end of the foregoing; for as that in part treated of Houses, Cottages, Towns and Cities; so this will set forth to us all sorts and forms of Castles, with the parts and members thereof, as they are born in part or in whole, in Coats of Arms. Also of all manner of Churches, Chappels and Cathedrals; with all the Parts, Utensils, and Sacred Goods Dedicated, and of Holy Use thereunto belonging.

I. He beareth Argent, a **Tower**, Sable, with a **Scaling Ladder raised** against it, Gules. Or. This is the Coat of *Cadivar ap Dinwall*, Lord of *Aberfet*, in *South Wales*.

A. the Tower G. and Ladder S. is born by *Sealing*. Mr. *Legh*, in his *Accidence of Armory*, will have it, that if there be more than one of these Towers in a Coat of Arms, then they are termed Towers; else one is ever to be called a Castle: But by his favour, these following examples will shew there is a vast difference between a Castle and a Tower.

G. a Tower A. is the States or Town of *Bietickhaims* coat in the *Netherlands*.

G. on a Hill V. a Tower A. belongs to *Waldthurn* of *Bavaria*.

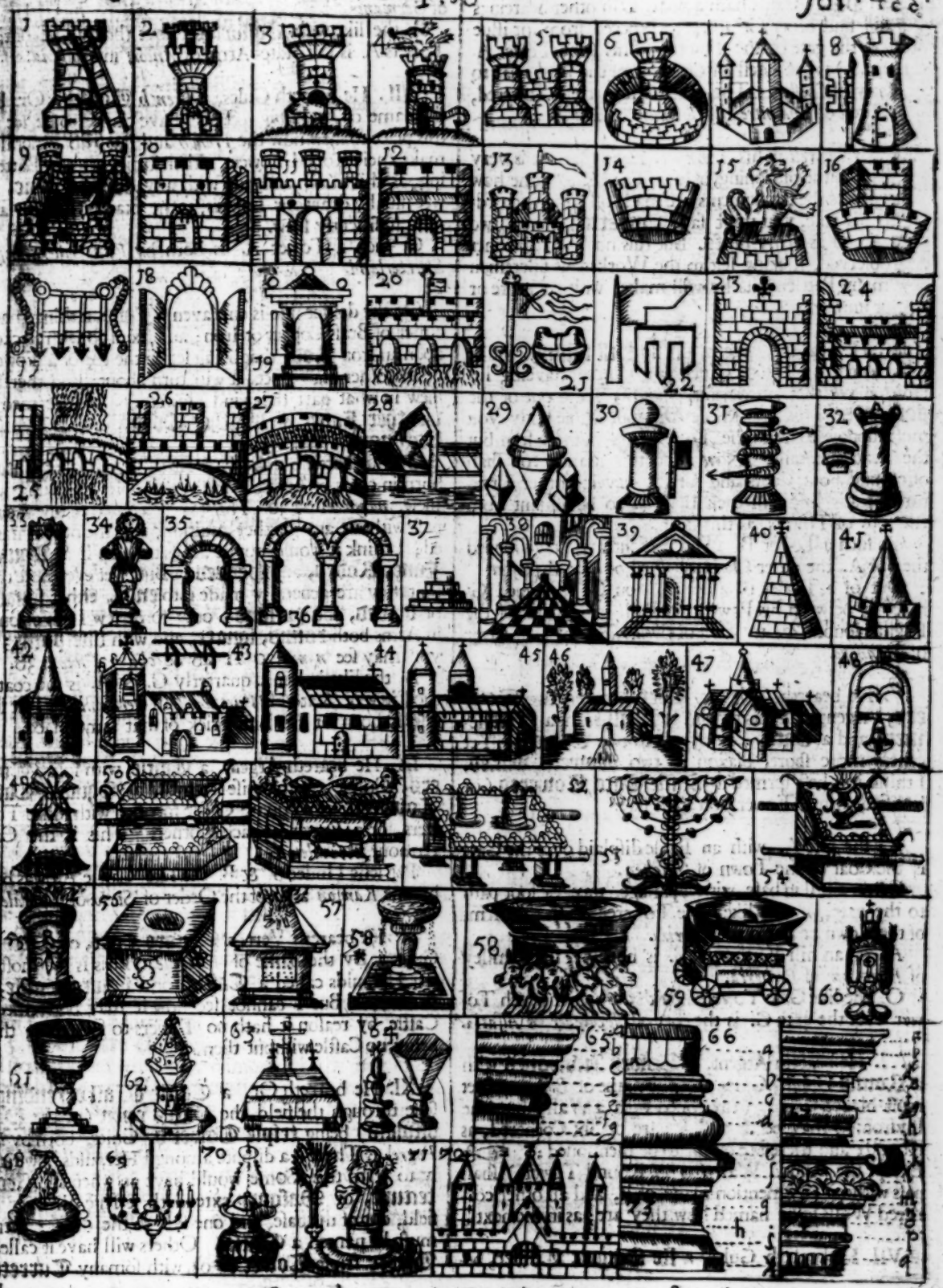
II. He beareth Argent, a **Tower Triple Towered**, Gules. By the name of *Tonrall*. Some term this a **Tower** with three **Turrets**.

A. such a Tower S. Charged Transverse the Port O. born by the name of *Old-castle*.

G. such a Tower A. on an Hill in Base V. with an Portchion before the Gate or Port O. charged with a Lion rampant, is the Coat of the State or Town of *Frankenhaus*.

S. a Plate between 3 such Towers A. is born by *Carleon*.

III. He



Domum Caroli Wilson de Knutesfordia in Com Cestr: Gen:

III. He beareth Argent, on a **Hill** in base, Vert; a **Tower** with the **Port open**, Gules: having a Boare issueing out of it, Or. others more shorter do blazon it, a **Boar issuing** out of the **port** of a **Tower**, set upon an **Hill**. As this hath a Boar, so in other bearings you will find other Creatures to proceed from, or issue forth off the gate of the Tower. This (the Tower A. & Boar S.) is the Crest of *Chantrell* of the *Bach* near to the Citty of *Chester*. The same being triple Towered, is the Crest of *Chauntrell* of *Chauntrell Ballin*.

☞ Mr *Boswell* in his *Armory of Honor*, saith it is very necessary in the blazoning of such Towers, to name how many peeces the Battlements are made off; then according to his rule, you must say, **Imbattelled** with two **peeces** and as many **halfs**. But this no other Blazoner ever observed, it being left to the Workmans discression how many Battlements he will make, whither more or less for number.

IV. He beareth Argent, on an **Hill issuing** out of base, Vert; a **Tower** Gules: a **Dragon** haveing his Head above the Battlements, and his Taile out of the **port**, Or. This is a whole Dragon, whose body you must suppose to be in the Tower, and nothing seen but the head and taile. Now after this maner you shall often find both Coats and Crests, haveing other Creatures Heads and half their Bodyes, to be issuant from the tops of Towers, as this doth.

On such a Tower B. 2 Penons contrary Disvellopped the one A. the other O. is the Crest of *Van Eysenstat*.

Out of a Tower B. a demy Lion O. Crowned G. holding between his Paws a fire Ball. is the Crest of the Right Honorable, the Earl of *Chesterfield*. by the name of *Stanhope*.

V. He beareth Gules, a **Port** between two **Towers**, Argent. Others term it a **Wall** with a **Battlement** and a **Gate**, Conjoyned to two **Towers**. Yet others more short, blazon it, two **Towers walled**. I think it is best termed a **Castle Gate Towered** (or fortified with a Tower) on each side.

B. the like A. with an Eagle displaid over the Gate is the Coat of the Town of *Teschen*.

G. on a hill in base, with a passage, way, or foot path to the gate, V. the like Gate Towered A. is the Arms of the Town or stat of *Beschheim*.

A. on an hill V. the like G. is born by the familey of *Burgomer* of *Bavaria*.

O. the like Gate Towered, wit' an higher watch Tower over the gate G. is the coat of *Newweller* of *Alsatia*.

VI. He beareth Argent, a **Tower Invironed** with a **Round Wall**, Gules. by the name of *Burgma*. Yet most blazon it only (Invironed with a Wall) but the Invironing may be as well Square or Six Cornered, as Round; and therefore ought to be mentioned; ☞ Except the Round Wall (as in Round Towers) shall pass without any mention made of it, and all other cornered Walls to be named how they are; as in the next.

VII. He beareth Gules, a **six Square Tower**, betweed two **Square ones**, **Invironed** with an **Hexagone Wall**, the **port** haveing a **Chamber** over it, Argent: all **Covered** (or leaded) Azure. This is the Arms of the Citty or Town of *Saltzburg* in the Empire of *Germanie*.

B. the like with **Gallaries** about the middle of the Towers A. is the States Arms of *Antorf* in *Holland*.

VIII. He beareth Gules, a *French* **Tower**, Or. by the name of *Burganny*. This I have caused to be set in this place to shew how the *French* and *Duch* do generally make their Round Towers, either straight up, or Battering, as this doth: and not with any **Water table**, as wee usually draw our Towers, as the examples afore said doth sufficiently shew.

G. such a Tower A. is born by *Van Castermur* of *Switzerland*.

On the dexter side is engraven a **Fane**, a thing made either of Brass Copper or Iron; and fixed so with Sockets upon an Iron **Rod**, that being set on the top of a Tower, or any other high place, it will turn about: and thereby shew in what part the wind bloweth. It is termed a **weather Fane**, or **weather Cock**, of the *French* a **Gafonon**.

☞ But because there is so many veriaties of **Fanes** born in coats of Arms, as in the examples following will shew, *numb.* 21 22 30. That except a Square Fane should pass without any further addition, and the others named; I think it would not be amiss to term it a **Square Fane**, **Roded**, and **Headed**. But, yet ever note this, that they are generally made into **ends**, either **square**, or **waved**, and **pointed**; only some few I have found in Arms both **round**, **square**, and with **one point**; as you may see *num.* 20 21 48 & *cha* 12 *num.* 38.

B. the like in Bend, quarterly G. & A. is the coat of the Citty or State of *Wurtzburg* in *Germanie*. The like also is born for the Bishoprick of that same place.

IX. He beareth Argent, a **Castle** with foure **Towers**, Gules. Otherwise termed, a **Square Castle Towered**, or a Square Castle fortified with foure Towers, or a Tower at each Corner. This is the Coat Armour of *Castleton*.

Per fesse Undee S. & B. the like Castle A. was born by one *Ramson* a Kt of the Order of *St Io.* of *Jerusalem*.

X. He beareth Vert, a **Square Fort**, or **Cittadel** Gules. By the name of *Fortresse*. This is by most of our Heraulds called a **Castle**, or a **square Castle**, or **Tower**. But I cannot see how it may be termed a Castle, by reason it hath no Towers to fortifie it, there being no Castle without them.

XI. He beareth Or, a **Castle Wall extending** it selfe through the field, the **Gates open** (or the **Port displaid**) being **triple Tower'd**, Gules. born by *Van Pogrel*. There is a dispute amongst Heraulds how rightly to term this, Some would have it when the **Architecture**, or **Masonry** extendeth it selfe all over the field, out of the base, and one side to the other; then it must be named a **Castle**. Others will have it called a **Tower triple Tower'd**, or with somany **Turretts**.

But

But then what terms they would give to the foregoing examples, I shall leave to such to determine.

Note that when the **Gates** are **open** or **displaid** it must be conceived that the **field** must be **transparent** so as it may manifestly **shew** itself through the same: so that all the **port** is to be Or, if the conceived shadow representing the thickness of the Wall, did not extenuate a part of the same.

G. the like A. with an Escochion on the Port charged with 3 Nayls between a smaby Mulberry leaves all meeting in Point. belongs to the Citty of *Hamburgh.*

A. the like wall (Sans port) with one Turret betw. 3 Roses G. is the Arms of the Town of *Cronach.*

A. the like wall (Sans port and towers) G. with an Eagle issuant S. is the coat of the Town of *Ilsenheim.*

B. on the top of a wall so extended O. a demy man with an hatchet or polax in his right hand, & the other on his side P. clothed O. born by *Voyten* of *Aspurg.*

XII. He beareth Argent, a **Castle Wall**, with a **port** or **Gate** in the same Gules; haveing a **Portcullis** over it Sable. Born by the name of *Wall.* This cannot properly be called a Castle (though of old it hath bine so) by reason there is not any sides, Ends, Towers, or the like, Visible; which are insident to Castles, and without the which they cannot be Castles: but are taken for **Forts, Holds,** or **Cittadels.** *&c.*

Walls how several ways made.

Walls of Castles, Churches, Houses, or Forts, both now and in former ages have bine made these wayes.

1. That way called **Reticulate**, or **Net Worke**, walls made Net-wayes or Loseng-wise, whose Foundation, Coignes, and Cornices, were Square Stone.

2. A **Quadrell Wall**, that is a wall of Artificiall Stone, as Brick, Tyle, *&c.* And it is made either a **Single wall**, that is of a Brick length. or a **Double wall**, which is of a Brick and an half in length. or a **Nogged wall**, being only of a Brick breadth.

3. A **Cement Wall**, that is a wall made of River Pebbles, or Marble Stones Split in the middle, that side Smooth being layd outward, makes even walls; Of this kind of work a part of *White Hall* in *London* built by Cardinal *Wolsey*, with other ancient Fabricks, are made. Whose Foundation, Coignes, and Cornices, generally are Free Stone, Greet Stone, or Brick.

4. A **Rough Wall**, that is a wall made of Irregular stones, Rubish stones, and Stones never hewed, or made even. Such kind of walls are mnch used for the fence of Gardens Orchards *&c.* being **pointed**, and made even with Cement, Morter, or Clay.

5. A **Square Wall**, is a Stone wall made of squared stone, hewed wrought and smoothed. Of these square stones is made the **Rustick wall**, of which there are two sorts, as **Revealed rustick**, that is when the edges of the Stones are **ciphered off**, or worked Bevile. Or a **Rabbat rustick**, that is when there is a **Rigget** or a **Channel** in every joynt of the square Stones. A **perpin wall**, is a Single stone wall.

6. A **Rampiar Wall**, of some called a **Riempiut pall**, or **Coffer worke**; this is made of Planks set edgewayes the thickness of the wall, and so bound up with pieces of Timber, then filled with Morter and Stones of all sorts mixt togather, and so on from Course to course, till it be made the height agreed upon. After this manner are walls made of only Earth, or Sodds, or else Clay and Straw mixt; commonly called **Mud walls.** So **Baskets** filled with earth, are good defence in tymes of warr and hostility.

XIII. He beareth Or, a **Triangle Castle**, or **three square Castle** at each Corner a **Tower**, the **Port open**, Gules. is the Arms of the Citty or State of *Marsburg.* Thus you have the blazon which I found with it, Yet on the other hand it may as fitly be termed a **Castle with three Towers**, the **Port open**, (or the **leaves** of the **Gates displaid**) having a **Penon**, or **Stramer** fixed in the middle Tower **warbling** or **waved.**

A. the like G. is born by the name of *Trecastile.*

XIV. He beareth Argent, a **Turret**, or **top of a Tower**, Gules. by the name of *Trovile.* When this is born in a coat of Arms it is so termed; but in Crests & Cognizence belonging to Arms, it is generally called a **Crown Murall**, as you may see *chap. 1 num* 25. as out of a Crown Murall such or such a thing.

B. 3 such O. born by the name of *Turrett.*

XV. He beareth Vert, the **Turrett** or **Top** of a **Tower Reversed**, Argent; with a demy Lion Issuant, Or. born by the name of *Procade.*

XVI. He bearth Gules, out of a **Crown Murall**, or the **Turret** of a **Tower**, Or; a **Square tower** (or a Square One) Argent. born by the name of *Towering.*

B. 3 such O. by the name of *Van Derostheim.*

XVII. He beareth Azure, a **Portcullis**, Or; **Chained** (or with Chaines Pendant) Argent. born by *Porcull.* Some term this a Portcullis of 9 **pieces**, but to number the Squares of things of this nature it is needless; for they may as well mention the number of the Links in the Chain. See *n.* 102. and 104. other kind of Portcullis's.

G. 3 Portcullis's chained O. is born by the name of *Macfast* an *Irish* Family.

XVIII. He beareth Argent, an **Arch** of a **Gate**, or a **Gate**, Gules; the **Leaves open**, or **Gate displaid**, Or. Some term it, the **Gate opened** with **Leaves**; for a Gate when it openeth double after this maner, is by Workmen called **Leaves**, each side being a Leave of a Gate or Doore, which thing is a very common term amongst us to all double, or soulding Doors.

XIX. He beareth Or, a **Portal** with the **Leaves**, or **Double Doors** Displaid, or Opened; fixed or **Mounted** on three **Degrees**, or **Grices**, and adorned with a **Pedement** and **Capitals**, Gules. This is taken to be no other then the adornment of a Door that leadeth into some principal Room in a noble mans house, which are generally called **Portals**, or **little porches**;

For as the great and wide Porch is at the entrance into the Hall, or Mansion house; so the Portall is the outward enterance into the principall Rooms. Therefore in short to term it a **Portall**, is sufficient, the other adornments being dependant thereunto.

Perty per fesse G. & A. in each part such a Portall countercharged. is the coat of *Van Der Port*.

A. the like Sans Pedement S. which is by the *French* blazoned, the Porch or **Portal** of *St. Vincents* **church**. Born by *George* King of *Russia* and *Muscovia*, whose daughter *Anne* married *Henry* the first king of *France*.

XX. He beareth Or, on a **Bridge** of three **Arches** extending it selfe throughout the field (or to the sides of the Escocheon) Gules **Baloned**, Sable, the **Streams Transfluent**, Proper; a **Fane** Argent. This I have seen blazoned a **Fesse in form** of a **Bridge**. This is born by the name of *Fanbrige*.

The like is born by *Stowbridge*, haveing the water runing in three Courses, or Streams

Also *Trowbridg* of *Trowbridge* beares the same coat.

XXI. He beareth Azure, a **Fane** of three **points**, **waved**, Or; the **Rod** or **Stem garnished** Argent. This is also termed a **Fane** of three **pennons**, or a **Banner** of three **pennons**, or with somany **ends**. It is born by the name of *Fane*, or *Vanen*.

The other **Fane** set on the sinister side of this quarter is termed a **Fane**, or **Gaufanon**, or (after some Authors) a **Conferon**, or a **Guydon**, rounded in the corners, and **Pendant**; but more short blazon it, a **Round Fane**, pendant.

☞ When they are Pendant, or hanging down, it is always supposed to be without a **Rod** or **Stem** in the **Sockets**: But to be the Fane it selfe, without any other thing belonging to it. see *num.* 22. and *c.* 12. *n.* 38.

B. such a Fane O. is the Town Arms of *Keysersberg* in *Germanie*.

XXII. He beareth Gules, a **Dutch Fane**, Argent born by the name or familey of *Die Maler Van Heytzenstein* in *Bavaria*. This I term a Duch Fane, because the Heraulds in those parts do ever draw them after this maner, which may firly be blazoned a **Fane pointed** & **square**, as being a pertaker of both. Some term it a **Bandart**, or a **Penon Banner**.

Seaven such, the half Endorsing, or set Contrary to the others Azure; Stems, Or. Being the Crest or *Van Bendorf* in *Germanie*.

Out of a Coronett 2 such endorsed with a Peacocks Taile between: is the Crest of the Count *Starckenberg*.

In the base of this quarer is placed an other fashioned **Fane**, haveing neither Sockets for to turn upon a Rod, or regular ends; but Bevilled of from the Square on both sides, by reason whereof the two out points or ends, are much shorter then the middlemost, which is made sharp through the Beviling of the lower corners or angles.

This Fane thus made is blazoned, a **Plain Fane** of three ends **pendant**, and **Rebated** on each side per **bevile**. or the points Bevile-wise. or the middle point **pointed**, and the outwards **counter bevileb**.

G. the like A. is born by *Die Eberhardt* of *Switzerland*

A. the like Fane with 3 Sockets G. is the Arms of the Town of *Bolingen*.

XXIII. He beareth Azure, a **Castle Wall** with an **Open Arch Batteled Imbatteled**, a Trefoile on the the top Battlement, Argent; **Baloned** Sable. Born by the name of *Wallrch*. This is also blazoned in short, an **Arched Wall double Imbatteled**; or Battlement raised into **Grices**. &c.

☞ If there be more Arches then one in a Wall, it is termed a **Wall double** or **trible Arched** &c.

S. a Wall extending it selfe throughout the fesse and base part of the field, double Battelled, & in chief 3 flowers de lis A. is born by *Die Kellner* of *Frankenford*.

XXIV. He beareth Argent, a **Bridge** of 3 **Arches**, extended to two **Towers**, fixed to the **dexter** & **sinister sides** of the Escocheon, Gules. born by the name of *Towerbridge* or *Turbridge* of *Ruthyn* in *Wales*. This is also blazoned a **Bridge** with 3 Arches in fesse, **conjoyned** to 2 **Towers** extending to the out sides of the field. But others more short, a Bridge with 2 Towers **Canopy rooked**, extended through the middle of the Sheild. Yet the *Welsh* Bards term it no otherwise then a **Bridg Tower'd** at the ends.

XXV. He beareth Vert, a **Square Tower** with a **Bridge** of three **Arches** Extending to the sinister side, Argent; with a **Streame** of **water** palewayes, Issueing through the same, Proper. The *Welsh* blazon it thus and not improperly, Vert, a **Watery Pale**, with a **Bridge treble Arched** extended over it, & a **Tower** at the end, (or at the dexter end) Gules. This is the coat of *Tourbridge* of *Caervalen* in *Northwales*.

XXVI. He beareth Argent, an **Arch** of a **Bridge extended**, and **triple Towered**, Gules; in base, **Water** with three Shipps therein, all Proper. Born by the name of *Bridgwater*.

G. a Bridge of 3 Arches extendant, triple Tower'd A. haveing somany Streams proceeding, and runing into the base, Bendwise, Proper. This is the quartered coat belonging to the Town or State of *Zwickaw*.

XXVII. He beareth Air and Water, a **Bridge** of **three Arches extendant** in fesse, Gules. The *Germans* Blazon it Azure a Bridge of 3 Arches with **Water transfluent** into all parts of the base, Proper. And is the coat Armour belonging to the Town of *Kitzing* in the Empire of *Germanie*.

XXVIII. He beareth Azure, over a **Water** in base, a **Planked** or **Wooden Bridge** extendant in fesse, in the middle thereof a **Draw Bridge** a part drawn, or a little lifted up, Or. And is born by the familey of *Angermund Van Bruck*. Some term this no more then a **Draw Bridge** over a **Water**.

XXIX. He beareth Gules a **Pillar Fusilee**, Argent. of some termed, a **Column Fuse** or **Fusile**; so are they blazoned by Mr: *Boswell pag.* 116. Who saith that such Pillars were erected by *Charles* the *Great* in his Palace of *Ingelheim*; which were removed by the Prince Pa-

Palatine to his Castle in *Heidelberge*, as testifieth *Munster*; which were erected by them, *In perpetuum Artis Fusorii Memoriam*: In perpetuall remembrance of the Spinners craft. Some call them **Fussile Pillers.**

In the dexter base, is set another kind of these **Fussile Pillars** of Stone, which I find born in Arms; *viz.* Sable three **Fusils** in fesse **Quarterly Squared,** Argent; a Bordure Or. is born by the name of *Van Bansleten* of *Switzerland*. Some call this a **Square Fussile,** or a **Stone Fussile,** or **Pillar fussile** 4 square.

In the sinister base is set an other sort of a **Stone Fussile,** or rather the **Basis** or Foot of a **Square Pillar,** which Workmen call the **Pedestall** of a Pillar, or the **Plinth,** or *Plinthus*, of a Pillar: that is the nether part of a Pillars foote, bearing the form of a foure square Stone.

A. the Plinth, Pedestall, or Foot of a square Pillar B. is the coat & crest of *Enningen* in the *Netherlands*.

XXX. He beareth Or, a **Column,** or Round Pillar with a **Chapiter,** Azure. This is born by the name of *Columvile*. The Colmn or Pillar is often born with and without it Chapiter, and as often without its Pedestall. Of each I shall give some examples. as

B. a Pillar on the further side of an Horse Currant to the sinister A. born by *Van Konige* of *Thurlinglans*.

G. a Boys face Couped below the Shouldes, between 2 Demy Pillars A. born by the name of *Bilerliet* of *Frenhern* in *Germanie*.

S. 3 Pillars in fesse, the middle Crowned O. by the name of *Van Ezell* in *Silicia*.

A. a Column in Bend S. born by *Van Kutzieben*.

The Parts of a Pillar.

The **Pedestall,** that is the Foot or Bottom of a Pillar, whither it be round or Square.

The **Pillar,** is the Body or middle part between the Head and Foot, be it round or Square.

The **Capitall,** is the Top of the Pillar, or Head, on which the round Ball stands.

The **Chapiter,** is the Ball or any other kind of work that is made to adorne the Capitall, is a Chapiter of such and such a thing.

There are other terms used for the severall Mouldings about Pillars, Columns, and Pillasters; which I shall in *numb. 66 67.* at the end of this Plate shew and further describe unto you

In the sinister side is an other sort of Fane, called only (a **Fane**) as having neither Points, or Waves, but is Square. G. 3 such in bend A. is the Quartered coat of *Raidenbucher* of *Bavaria*.

XXXI. He beareth Or, a **Pillar,** Sable; **Enwrapped with an Adder,** Argent. By the name of *Mynture*. After this manner Pillars are Enwrapped with **Branches,** haveing **Flowers,** and **Fruit,** hanging thereat.

A. a Pillar enwrapt with a Vine Branch, Fructed, P. born by the name of *Vinyard*.

Tunat of *Italy*, beareth B. the Column A. the Pedestall & Chapiter, O. enwrapped with a Serpent. G.

XXXII. He beareth Sable, a **Pillar mounted** on **Grices,** or Steps, and **Crowned,** Or, born by the name of *Joab*. The Pillar is often Crowned, and not set on Steps, but standeth upon its owne Pedestall. as

S. a Pillar Crowned A. by the name of *Kilspurg*, *alias Kilsperg* of *Bavaria*.

G. the like A. born by *Hennenberg*.

The use of Pillars.

PILLARS Are the Hieroglyphicks of **Fortitude** and **Constancy,** and were erected for diverse ends and purposes; Some tymes to Limit out the Bound, and the Possessions of People that Bordered one upon an other *pro.* 22 28.

Some tymes for **Memory of Vowes** made; as that which was erected by *Jacob* at *Bethel gen.* 28 18.

Some tymes for **Ornament,** as those of the Temple, 1 *king* 7 15 And of Kings Houses, as those of the *Forest of Lebanon ver* 2 3.

Some tyme for **Testimony of Covenants,** as that which was erected by *Jacob*, for a Memoriall between him and *Laban. gen.* 31 44 45.

Some tymes for **Monuments** to extoll the Valour, Worth, and Merits of well deserveing Men; as those that were decreed by the SENATE and People of *Rome* to Men of Special desert, and approved Virtue. see *numb.* 101.

Some times set on the **Sepulchres,** or **Graves** of dead Relations; and so *Symon* the High Priest built 7 Pillars on the Tombs of his Father, Mother, and foure Brethren. 1 *macc* 13 27 28 &c.

Sometimes they were set up for **Preservation** of the **names** of Families from Oblivion, of which sort was *Absalons*, mentioned 2 *sam* 18 18

Some time for a **Mark** of **Rebellion,** or **Disobedience,** and a Memoriall for Offenders: Witness the Pillar of Salt. *gen* 19 26 *wisdom* 10 7 8 & 2 *macc* 15 33 And *Hamons* high exhited one. *ester* 7 9.

On the dexter side is the **Capitall** of a **pillar,** and is the Crest of *Remsdyck*, in the Nether Palatinate of the **Rhyne,** it being adorned with a Chapiter of a Plume of 5 Feathers G. & O. enterchangably.

XXXIII. He beareth Gules, a **Broken Pillar,** or **Column,** Argent. Others term it the **Pedestall** with the **Pillar broken,** or **Shaven** in the middle. Or an Half Pillar set on its Basis, or Pedestall. This is born by the name of *Lackirk* of *Poland*.

XXXIV. He beareth Vert, a **Pillar,** or **Column** of the **Compositive Order.** Or a **Pillar Composed** in the **Capital** part, after the form of a **Demy-Woman.** Or, a **four square Pillar** set on its **Pedestal,** whose head resembles a demy Woman. These are kind of **Pillasters** and **Pillars,** which work men usually adorn **Portals, Jaums,** and **Gantle Chimney peeces,** more than Pillars for Support; though in

uoble and rich carved Buildings, they are sometimes used for that purpose. See *numb.* 100.

XXXV. He beareth Argent, an **Arch**, Gules. This is born by the name of *Gruber van Hulstet* of *Bavaria*. The Arch is ever to stand upon two Pillars either round or square, whose particular parts (if of contrary colours) are thus Blazoned; two **Pillars**, or two **square Pillars** Sable, **Arched** Gules, **Capitals** and **Pedestals**, Or.

G. 3 single Arches (as some term them) O. by the name of *Archer*.

XXXVI. He beareth Or, a **double Arch**, Gules. By the name of *Mesanick*, a *Poland* Family.

This is termed a **double Arch** (as the former example) a single Arch; but here is no consideration of what kind of Pillars the Arches are framed with.

☞ For it is ever a term amongst Work-men of the Free Masons Science, to put a difference between that which is called a **Column**, and that which they name a **Pillar**; For a **Column** is ever round, and the Capital and Pedestal answerable thereunto.

The **Pillar** with its Capital and Pedestal square.

Therefore though this be all of one colour, yet for distinction sake there ought to be some mention of the Columns or Pillars on which the Arches are raised; so then I should hold this to be best Blazoned **Three Pillars Arched**; by reason they are square; and **Three Columns Arched**, if round.

Now as you see this is double Arched, so you may sometime meet with Coats with Triple Arches, *&c.*

XXXVII. He beareth Argent, the **Grieces**, or **Degrees**, or **Steps** by which we ascend to the Cross, Gules. Thus it is Blazoned by some; yet others term it three **Grieces** on the **Top**, the **Foot** or **Base** of a **Pillar**. See *lib.* 1. *cap.* 5. *numb.* 45. 46. 47. This is born by the name of *Grice*.

B. a Wall in Base having two Grieces A. Masoned S. is the Coat of *Riehen* of *Switzerland*. Though this might be Blazoned a **Wall** with one **Battlement Imbattelled**.

XXXVIII. He beareth the **Prospect** of the **inner part** of a **Church** or **Cathedral**, **extended** all over the Field, Argent; the **Ground** or **Ile**, **contrary Tiled** or **Flagged**, Sable and Gules. This is born by the name of *Altery* an *Italian*.

XXXIX. He beareth Azure, the **Front** of a **Temple**, or a **Temple Porch**. Others term it a **Porch supported** by **six Pillars**, Argent. In some rare Structures the Pillars are Carved, and wrought into the shapes and forms of diverse sorts of Creatures, as I give an example, *numb.* 34. This may fitly be termed **Solomons Porch**, raised upon 3 **Grieces**. See *chap.* 20. *numb.* 42.

XL. He beareth Vert, a **Pyramid**, Or. This is also Blazoned a **Pyramid of Egypt**, because it is said that the Kings of *Egypt* set the Children of *Israel* at work in the making and Building of these, and such other needless works, to keep them under, and hold them in Bondage.

B. on a Mount in Base A. a Pyramid O. born by the name of *Die Rolandt* in the Palatinate of *Rhine*.

XLI. He beareth Azure, a **Steeple Spired**, (or a **square Tower** with a **Spire**) Or. Born by the name of *Saxton*.

As the Tower or Steeple is either round, square, six or eight cornered, so is the Spire after the same form, as you may see in the next Bearing.

XLII. He beareth Gules, a **Tower** or **Steeple of six Cants** or **six square**, **Spired** Argent. Some term it an **Hexagon** or **Octagon Tower**, that is six or eight cornered; but Master Masons generally term it **six** or eight **Cants** or **Corners**.

XLIII. He beareth Argent, a **Church**, or **Mother Church**, with a square **Tower**, or **Steeple**, Gules, with a **Porch** at the side; and a **Chancel** at the East end, **Leaded**, Azure. Born by the name of *Churchman*. The Steeples to Churches and Chappels are often drawn and made after the form of the foregoing Steeple, with Spires and Cants, which ought to be taken notice of in the Blazoning, as *numb.* 86.

The several parts of a Church.

The Church Yard.	*The Middle Iles.*
The Turn Gate or Stile.	*The Cross Ile.*
The Walls of the Yard.	*The Reading place or Desk.*
The Church Body.	*The Chief Seats.*
The Bellfree.	*The Pews.*
The Clock house.	*The Galleries.*
The Chime-Loft.	*The Pulpit.*
The Porch and Door.	*The Organ Loft.*
The Steeple.	*The Screen.*
The Turning Stairs.	*The Chancel.*
The Roof and Leads.	*The Vestry.*
The Windows East, West, North and South.	*The Altar or Communion Table.*
The Side Doors.	*The Rails.*
The Iles.	*The Tabernacles.*
The Side Iles.	*The Turn or folding Seats.*

In the chief of this square is set a **Biere**, a thing by which Dead Bodies are carried to their Sepulchers, Graves, or Burial places. That such are born in Arms, I have formerly shewed, *lib.* 2. *cap.* 17. *numb.* 68.

A. a Biere between 3 Skulls S. is born by the name of *Didmane*.

XLIV He beareth Vert, a **Chappel**, or **Chappel of Ease** Argent, **Seiled** or **Tiled**, Gules. Born by the name of *Chapler*.

A. the like G. Covered or Roofed B. born by *Coleuva*, a *Polander*.

The **Steeples** of Churches and Chappels (if they have Steeples) are ever set on the dexter side of the Escochion,

cochion, and there the Church or Chappel is joined to it, so as but one half of the end of the Church, *&c.* can be visible, the other being hid by the Steeple; and thus they are always drawn except a Church be adorned and beautified with 2 Steeples, then they are set each side the end of the Church, and so the East end comes to be seen, as *numb.* 45. and *chap.* 20. *numb.* 40.

The difference between a Church and a Chappel of Ease.

There are three sorts of **Chappels**, the principal is a **Parochial Chappel**, which is endued with a certain Revenue by the Founder thereof; it is Consecrated by the Bishop of the Diocess as a place for Gods Service, where Reading, Praying and Preaching is exercised, and the Sacraments Administred, the Dead solemnly Interred; where no Duty is given to the Mother Church, the Parson or Minister, farther than payment of Tyths, in lieu whereof there is a yearly Sallary or Stipend, (as his Curate) offered to the Chappel Priest.

The next is a **Chappel of Ease**, which is a Chappel that hath no Endowment but from the Benevolence of the people, and a Stipend yearly from the Mother Church under whom it is; in these Chappels they have nothing but Reading, Praying and Preaching, there being no Administration of the Sacraments or Burials, so consequently not Consecrated: These Chappels are built purposely by adjacent Towns, and habitations for the peoples ease, being at a great distance from the Mother Church, and where Parishes are wide and large, therefore called Chappels of Ease.

The last is a **Domestick Chappel**, which is a Chappel, or other Room set apart by great persons, either in or near their Mansion Houses or Halls, for Reading, Praying, and Preaching, for the ease and benefit of his own Houshold Servants, and such as are Neighbours; these are rarely Endowed or Consecrated, seeing the Chaplains ever stand to the Benevolence of the Lords: And therefore by some are termed rather **Oratories** or School-houses than Churches or Chappels.

XLV. He beareth Azure, a **Church** with **two Steeples** Argent; **East end** seen, **Covered** or **Leaded**, proper; **mounted** upon **Grieces** or **Steps**, Gules. This is the Coat Armour of the City of *Munster*, in St. *Georgenthall.*

A. on Grieces or Steps, a Church with two Steeples, G. Windows, Doors and Covering proper. This is the Arms of the Town of *Kirchen am Neker.*

☞ Note that in **Churches** and **Chappels**, the Steeples are ever fixed at the West end; so that by the Steeple standing to the right side of the Escochion, we must suppose it to be the West part; and then the foresaid Coats may be Blazoned, Church or Chappel with Steeples at the West end; or Churches, *&c.* with either round, square, or Cant Steeples, Spired (if Spired) else not.

XLVI. He beareth **Air** and **Earth**, a **Chappel** with a **square Steeple**, or **Spire Steeple** on the middle of the **Roof**, seated in the middle of **Prw Trees**, proper, having a **way** or **path** from the Door to the Base. This is the Coat belonging to *Wakicapell*, a Town in *Germany.* And but for the name it belongs unto, I should rather have termed it a **Collegiate Church** than a **Chappel**, by reason the Steeple stands in the middle of the Fabrick, as it doth in all **Cathedral**, **Minsters**, **Collegiate Churches** and **Chappels**; and not at the end like **Parochial Chappels**, or at the West end on the Roof, as most **Chappels of Ease** and **Oratories** have them, where they are made of Timber and Boards, after the manner of **Lanthorns** on **Halls**, or **Lovers** on **Dove Houses**, in which the Bell or Bells are hung to be rung when the people are to meet together; or on a Frame of Wood, or in an Arch of Stone, as is shewed *numb.* 48.

XLVII. He beareth Argent, a **Minster** or a **Cathedral**, with a round **Steeple**, (**Tower** or **Lanthorn**) **Spired**, Gules; **Windows** or **Lights**, **Doors** and **Covering**, proper. This is the Coat of *Hollyston*, of *Hollyston.*

Some term this a Cathedral Church.

XLVIII. He beareth Argent, a **Bell** Azure, hanging by its **Headstock** and **Gudgions** in an **Arch**, or a **frame** of Wood and **Faned** Sable; Fixed on a **mount** in Base, Vert. This is the Crest of the familey of *Porter.* After this manner Bells are hung in little Churches and Chappels in the Wall, or Arch in the wall, on the West end thereof; either under the Roofe, or above the roofe, on the top of the Gable end; after this example.

XLIX. He beareth Argent, a **Bell**, or a **Campain**, Azure, **Garnished** and **Imbossed**, Or. by the name of *Campane.* This is termed a Campan, or **Campany**, from the *French* word, **Campaine**; or *Latine*, *Campana*, a Bell.

S. a Cheveron betw: 2 Spur Rowells & a Bell, O. by the name of *Die Rosenhart.*

S. a **Saint Bell**, or **Hand Bell**, A. born by the name of *Die Freyteg.* This is called a St. Bell, because it hath not **Canons** on the head to fasten it to the **stock**; but one only **Ring**, by which it is held in a mans hand, and soe rung, the bearer going on.

The like A. Garnished O. is the Crest of *Indenkirch* in the Palatinate of *Rhyne.*

Bells in these later ages have bine made of severall vast weights, and many hung together in one Tower or Steeple, which we term a **Ring of Bells**, in some is 2 3 4 5 6 7 or 8 few places exceeding the last number, for more cannot be for **Round ringing**, except they be rung in **Changes.**

There are in *England* Bells of a great and vast weight as the **Great Bell**, or **Tom** of *Tonge* in *Shropshire*; which requires 10 or 12 men to ring it, so as to make it strike on both sides, or half raise it; its weight is computed to be about 7000 pound weight.

The **Great Tom** of *Lincoln*, is judged to be 9500. weight or upwards.

The

The **Great Tom** of *Westminster*, whose weight is above 6300 pounds; it is not to be rung, but hangs in a Tower alone, for the Hammer of a Clock to strike the hours upon.

The **Great Tom** of *Oxford*, it is the largest Bell we have in our Kingdoms; its weight is 16400 pounds, or much there about; its Diameter in the Skirt is 7 foot and 9 Inches.

Yet these are far exceeded by the **Great Bell** of *Roan* in *France*, whose Circumference is so larg (as travilers who have seen it, did informe me) that 50 men & upwards are able to stand together within the same as it hangeth up.

But the **Greatest Bell** (without doubt in the Christian world) is in the Great City of *Moscow* in the Empire of *Russia*, or *Moscovia*. It is hung in a great and wide Tower, it weighes three hundred ninty & foure thousand pounds; and the Clapper, Ten thousand pound, the Diameter thereof is twenty three foot, and two foot solid mettle. It is as much as fifty men can move, and that only so as may be perceived. It is seldome rung, and that only on great festival dayes, or when any forreign Prince or Minister of State requireth it. When they intend to ring it, they make proclamation through the Citty, by which warning they take down all their Glasses and Earthen ware, for it maketh all to tremble and Shake.

The severall Parts of a Bell.

The **Cannons**, those by which the Bell hangeth.

The **Crown**, the round top of the Bell.

The **Rings**, or **Filets**, are the curious molten work and Garnish cast on the out side the Bell, some tymes names and sentences are cast between the filits.

The **Sound Bow**, the inner part of the Bell, from the lower ring to the top.

The **Skirt**, the bottom of the Bell.

The **Crown Stable**, that to which the Clapper is hung.

The **Baudrick**, that as tyeth the Clapper to the Stable.

The **Clapper**, that as makes the Bell sound, which hath in it these parts.

The **Eye**, that as the Clapper is hung by.

The **Shank**, the length of it to the Ball.

The **Leggs**, are peeces of wood bound about the Clapper to keep it from rowling.

The **Ball**, the round Bob at the Clapper.

The **Flight**, that from the Ball to the Clapper end.

Things for Hanging of a Bell.

The **Frame**, is that in which the Bell hangeth, it is made of strong Timber, fastned together with Mortesses and Tenents, Pins, Cramps, Bolts and Nails. *&c.*

The **Head Stock**, a great Square peece of Timber to which the Bell Cannons are fastned.

The **Guggions**, great Iron pins put in the Head stock, for the Bell to turn with.

The **Brasses**, which are square with an hollow in the middle, and fastned in the Frame, for the Guggions to play in.

The **Bolts**, that goe through the Stock.

The **Cramps**, Irons that Clip the out side the Stock.

The **Cottereis**, and **Fithers**, are the Rings and slender Bolts to bend any way, thereby to keep the great Bolts and Cramps fast in their places.

The **Wheel**, by the help thereof the Bell is easily rung. There are three kinds of them; the **Whole Wheel**, which is direct round.

The **Three Quarter wheel**, is three parts round.

The **Half Wheel**, is only two parts of a round. In a Wheel there is these terms;

The **Rim**, that as the Rope turns in.

The **Staves**, the cross peices that supports the Rim.

The **Rowler**, which guideth the Rope to the Rim.

The several wayes of Ringing Bells.

1. Is the **Under Salley**, that is when the Bells are raised but Frame high, so as the Clapper strikes on both sides the Bell.

2. Is the **Hand Salley**, when they are rung almost up, and one hand is put to the Rope to raise it.

3. Is **Round Ringing**, when the Bells are up at set, that is with their mouths upright, both in the Fore stroak and Back stroak, and so ring 1 2 3 4 5.

4. Is Ringing in **Set Changes**, that is, the Bells being Set, they order which Bell shall lead away & what to follow, as thus, 1 2 3 5 4. Or 1 2 5 3 4. Or 1 5 2 3 4 *&c.* as they please.

5. Is in **Changes**, or **Tunes**, when they are rung to Immitate the airy sound of a Psalme, or Song.

6. In **Chimes**, when the Bells Strik, or are stricken on one side only, either in Times or Round.

☞ Note there are two sorts of Changes, as the **single Change**, is when all the Bells ring, and one is changed only from round Ringing, as 2 1 3 4 5 *&c.*

The **double Change**, is when two Bells are rung out of the order of round Ringing; as 2 1 3 5 4 *&c.*

Note also that Three Bells will make 6 Changes.

Foure Bells makes 4 tymes asmany, *viz.* 24. changes.

Five Bells makes 5 tymes asmany *viz*; 120.

Six Bells makes 6 times asmany changes *viz*; 720.

Seaven Bells maKes 7 times asmany *viz*; 4040.

Eight Bells makes 8 times asmany *viz*; 32320 *&c.*

A **Round Peale**, is to ring the Bells what space of the Ringers please.

A **Peale in Changes**, is to ring the three Bells the six Changes over. Or the foure Bells, the 24 Changes over. and so of the other Bells.

The First or **Treble Bell**, it is termed the **Hunt**, and the Second Bell, the **half Hunt**, because they run from the round Ringing, through all the change of Bells backwards and forewards, before they come to round Ringing againe.

The Great Bell, is termed the **Tenour**; the others, the Second, Third, Fourth Bell, *&c.*

L. He beareth Azure, an **Altar** (or a **Jewish Altar**, a **Levitical Altar**, or an Altar for **Burnt Offerings**, with its **Bars** and **Staves**, Or. This was the form of the Altar which the *Israelites* used in their passage, or Travelling through the Wilderness towards the

the Land of *Canaan*. But when they were Inhabiters of that Land, and King *Solomon* had Built a Temple, we hear of no further use of this, for then an **Altar** of Stone was made with Steps fixed to the side thereof to ascend to it, as is mentioned *Ezek.* 43. 13. &c.

The Description of the Jews Altar for Burnt Offerings.

The **Altar** for the Burnt Offerings or Sacrifices was made of Shittim Wood, and hollow between the Boards, it was five Cubits long, and five broad, and three Cubits high, it had Horns of the same Wood, made at the four corners, and was all covered with Brass: It had also a Grate, like Net-work of Brass made unto it, which had four Brass Rings at the corners, this was put under the compass of the Altar beneath, that the Grate might be in the midst of the Altar, through the Rings of the said Grate were put 2 Bars or Shittim Staves covered with Brass, which remained by the sides of the Altar to bear it by, as you may read *Exod.* 38. 1. &c.

LI. He beareth Gules, the **Ark of the Covenant**, or the **Ark of God**, or the **Jews Ark**, with its Staves or Bars, having the **Mercy Seat fixed** upon it, Or.

The Description of the Jews Ark of the Covenant.

The **Ark** was made of Shittim Wood, 2 Cubits and an half long, and a Cubit and an half broad, and a Cubit and an half high, and was overlaid with pure Gold both within and without, it had a Crown, or a Circle and a Border of Gold round about, with four Gold Rings in the four corners thereof, having Bars of Shittim Wood overlaid with Gold, put into them, which were not to be taken away from the sides of the Ark, but to bear the Ark by them.

Upon this said Ark was placed a **Mercy Seat**, it was of pure Gold, two Cubits and an half long, and a Cubit and half broad, that was as a Covering for the Ark, on which was placed two **Cherubims** (all of pure Gold, of work beaten out with the Hammer) at the two ends of the Mercy Seat, with their Faces one towards another, and their Wings stretched out on high to cover therewith the Mercy Seat. In this Ark was only laid up, for a perpetual Testimony and Remembrance, the Tables of Stone with the Law written upon them, *Arons* Rod, and a Pot of Manna; of which you may read further, *Exod.* 25. 10. 11, &c. Therefore it was called the **Ark of the Testimony**, because it kept the Law in it, *Exod.* 26. 33. 34.

LII. He beareth Vert, a **Table** Or, whereon is placed 2 **Dishes**, each having **Twelve Cakes** or **Loaves** of **Shew Bread**, covered with **Goblets** or **Incense Cups**, proper. In brief it is termed the **Table of Shew Bread**. It was used in the Jewish Ceremonies of their Religion, and according to the Almighties appointment, it was made of Shittim Wood, two Cubits long, a Cubit broad, and a Cubit and an half high, it was overlaid with fine Gold, and had a Crown of Gold round about, with a Border under the Crown a hands breadth all of pure Gold: Also it had 4 Rings of Gold fixed to the feet under the Border, through which were put Bars of Shittim wood, overlaid with Gold, to bear the Table.

All the Instruments for the Table were of pure Gold, as the Dishes on which the Shew Bread was set, and the Goblets and Incense Cups which covered the Bread, were all of Gold, as you may read *Exod.* 37. 10. 11, &c.

LIII. He beareth Sable, a **Candlestick** of seven **Shafts** or **Branches**, with **Lamps fixed** thereon Or. this was a Candlestick of Gold with the Lamps thereof, which was to burn continually in the Tabernacle of the Congregation of *Israel*. It was set without the Vail on the South side, over against the Table of Shew Bread, which stood upon the North side.

This **Candlestick** was of pure Gold, of work beaten out with the Hammer; the **Shaft** and the **Branches**, the **Bowls**, **Knops** and **Flowers** were all of one piece, six Branches came out of the sides of the Shaft, three on one side, and three on the other, each Branch having 3 Bowls like Almonds, a knop and a flower; and upon the Candlestick shaft were 4 Bowls like Almonds with knops and flowers, that is, under every two Branches a knop: Also the Lamps for the Branches were made of pure Gold, with the **Snuffers** and **Snuff Dishes** belonging thereunto. The foot of the Candlestick branched out four ways, being all of Gold, garnished with Imbossed work of knops and flowers, as you may see *Exod* 37. 17 and 25. 31, 32. &c. This they termed the **Golden Candlestick** with its **seven Lamps**.

Per Fess G. and B. a Candlestick of three Branches O. in each Socket a Banner of two points A. is born by the name of *Van Crage*.

LIV. He beareth Gules, the **Altar for sweet Incense**, or **sweet Perfume**, having the **Incense pot** burning thereon, Or. This Perfume Altar was made of Shittim Wood, the length and breadth alike, a Cubit square, the height two Cubits, the horns of the same Wood, all overlaid with Gold, both the top and sides thereof round about, having a Crown of Gold round about, and Rings on the sides, that they may be as places for the Bars to bear it withal, which were made of Shittim wood and covered with Gold. This Altar and the other beforementioned, *Numb.* 50. were in *Solomons* time, made all of pure Gold, without any thing of Wood, as we read 1 *King.* 7. 48. 49. This Altar was set before the Vail of the Tabernacle, or in the Sanctuary (over against the Mercy Seat.) but not in the most Holyest of all.

LV. He beareth Vert, a **Roman Column Altar** Argent, with a **Flame** upon it. The antient *Romans* had two kinds of **Altars**, the one **round**, the other **square**, and therefore to distinguish it from the common Altar, which was usually made square, I could not give it a better Title than a **Column Altar**, or a **Caesars Altar**, because when they dedicated any Effigies, or set up any Statue of their Emperours, whither in whole

whole, or in part, they generally fixed the same upon such a round kind of Basis as this is.

A. the like G. Fire proper, is born by *Polata*, an *Hungarian*.

A. 3 such G. is born by *Mandalio*, of *Poland*.

He beareth Or, a **Roman Altar**, Gules. The concave in the middle of this Altar, shews that it was erected for the burning of Incense, and Sweet Odours therein, as their manner was; for Frankincense was much used in those times of Idolatry.

Such an Altar as this was in the yeare 1653. found upon the occasion of digging a Seller under an house in the *Foregate Street* in the Citty of *Chester*; haveing an hollow on the top, and a double **Caterfoile** on one side, and a **Sacrificing Vessell**, like a **Jugg**, or **Cruse**, on the other side (as the figure represents) haveing this Inscription on the face side, that opposite haveing nothing thereon: so that I judg it to have stood to a wall. It is about a foot Square, and a Yard high.

I.O.M.TANARO.T.ELVPIVS.GALER.
PRAESENS.GVNA.PRI.LEG.XXV.V.
COMODO.ET.LATERANO.COS.
V.S.L.M.

Which may Questionless be read thus.

Jovi Optimo Maximo Tanaro. Titus Elupius Galerus Præsens Guna (i) Gubernator) *Primi-Pilus Legionis Vicesimæ Valentis Victrilis. Commodo et Laterano Consulibus. Votum Solvit Lubens Merito.*

Which may be thus Englished.

To Jupiter the Best and Greatest, the Thunderer. Titus Elupius Galerus the present Governour (of the Roman Garrison here) and first Leading Captaine of the Twentith Legion called Valens Victrix, in the yeare as Commodus and Lateranus are the Roman Consuls, he doth willingly pay his Vow to him, who hath deserved it at his hands.

For it was an usuall Custom among the *Romans*, for Persons of greater quality, when they undertook any great enterprise, or what was difficult and dangerous; or were pressed with some extraordinary evil: To make a Solemn Vow to *Jupiter*, that if he would give good Success to their Attempts: Or deliver them from their Peril and Pressure they were under, they would in token of Gratitude erect an Altar to him for a perpetual remembrance of the Divine benefit received.

In the foresaid Inscription the late *Dr Usher* Archbishop of *Armagh* takes the word GVNA to stand for *Gubernator*, (i) the present Governour here. And so we read in *Herodian lib.* 3. That *Brittaine* was divided *in duas Præfecturas sive Gubernatores*, into two Goverments.

Upon which place of *Herodian* a late Writer both in Learning and of much reading, affirmeth: the one Governour to have been placed at *York* in the *Lower Brittaine*, with the Sixt Legion: and the other Governour to have been placed at *Chester* in the *Higher Brittaine* with the Twentith Legion, which had the titles of *Victrix & Valens*.

Then the letters LEG. XXV. V. as it is upon the Stone might seem to contradict, and import the Twenty fift Legion called *Victrix* to have lay'n here: But doubtless by oversight of the unlearned Graver, the former V. is writ too near the XX. and a prick omitted, which should have been betwixt them. For it doth not certainly appeare, that ever there was any Legion called the Five and Twentith; especially in the time of the Emperour *Antoninus Pius*, under whom this Inscription was made.

For if we consult that accurate Catalogue of the *Roman* Legions, which *Dion Cassius* reciteth of the *Roman History pag.* 564. As also in those severall Catalogues of the Legions, both which were under *Augustus*, and which were added by the following Emperours, out of sundry Authours: And out of that Marble Pillar, as was kept at *Rome* in the Capitol. all recited by *Panciroles*, in *Comment: in Notitiam Dignitatum utriusq: Imperij. pag.* 61 62 63. there is no mention at all made of any Legion called the Five & Twentith. *Ptolomie* also who lived and writ in the very time of *Antoninus Pius*, affirmeth plainly, that three Legions only came for *Brittaine. viz:* the Sixt Legion, the Twentith Legion, and the Second Legion, called *Augusta*.

Also *Panciroles* asserteth the same *pag:* 142. And our Learned *Camden* speaking of the Citty of *Chester*, hath these words: That the twentith Legion called *Valens & Victrix* resided in this Citty. And an ancient piece of Coin of *Septimius Geta*, doth prove that *Chester* was a *Roman Colonie*, on one side it hath this Inscription,

COL. DIVANA. LEG. XX. VICTRIX.

And also not many yeares since (even in my time) upon opening the ground of a Back side in the *Bridgstreet* in *Chester*, a Vault was discovered, from whence was digged up certaine goodly Tile stones, having on them, this Inscription in full words.

LEGIO VIGESIMA VICTRIX.

others more short thus.

LEG. XX. V. V. & LEG. XXV. V.

Where we see the two V's in some at a distance from the XX's and in others joyned to them. Hence it was that this Citty was called *Caer-Leon*, that is the Citty of Legions: and *Cestria* from *Castra*, by reason the *Romans* Camped there.

This Inscription was Engraven upon this Stone in the seventeenth year of *Antonius Pius*, in which year *Lucius Ælius Commodus*, and *Sextilius Lateranus* are Registred to be Consuls; which according to the best Historians is said to be 154 years after the Birth of Christ, which shew our City to be of no small Age and Account in those days, having the 20 Legion quartered in and about the same.

LVII. He beareth Azure, a **Roman Sacrificing Altar**, with a **Flame** thereon. This Altar was much larger than the former, being made long and high, of many Stones, that it might be able to contain the thing Sacrificed, to be Burnt thereon, whither Sheep or Oxe: on the sides of their Altars, they used to Engrave the names of those Gods to whom it was Dedicated, as appeareth from *Acts* 17. 23. and that abovesaid *numb.* 56.

LVIII. He

LVIII. He beareth Sable, a **Laver**, or a **Brazen Laver**, or the **Jews Laver** of the **Tabernacle** or **Temple**. This was set in the Tabernacle of the Congregation between the Altar and the Door, and afterwards set in the Temple, with water put therein; which was for the High Priest and his Sons to wash their hands and feet, before they went to burn the Sweet perfume, or did minister in the Holy Place. This answereth to our **Font** under the New Testament, wherewith Children are washed, by Dipping or Sprinkling, before they are admitted into the Christian Church.

G. the like O. is born by *Lavier*.

LVIII * He beareth Gules, the **Braken or Molten Sea** of the **Temple**, Or. Else according to it form you may term it, a **Sea**, or **Caldron**, set upon the backs of **Twelfe Bulls**. This was set in the Temple Court on the right side, Eastward toward the South. It was called a **Sea**, from the great quantity of water as it holdeth; for it was ten Cubits wide from Brim to Brim, and five Cubits high: Under the Brim was rows of knobs like wild Cucummers, round about. At which part by reason of its declineing narrower from the Brim, a line of 30 Cubits did compass it about. It was an hands breadth thick (or a Span as some say) and the Brim was wrought with Flowers of Lillies, it contained two thousand Baths of water; each Bath being as much as ten Pottles of our measure. see 1. *k.* 7. 23. *&c.*

It was set upon twelfe **Brass Bulls**, three towards the North, 3 towards the South, 3 towards the East, & 3 towards the West, and their hinder parts were inward. This Sea was for the Priests to wash themselves in. 2. *chro.* 4. 6. *&c.*

LIX. He beareth Azure, a **Caldron** set upon it **Base**, Or; the **Wheels**, Argent. These were for the service of King *Solomons* Temple, and were set 5 on the right hand, and 5 on the left hand of the Temple Court, for the Priests and Levits to wash in them, and to cleanse in them that which appertained to the burnt offerings. The fashion of them was thus, the Caldrons were round like somany hollow Basons, foure Cubits over, they held 40 Baths apeece, which was set upon a foure Square Base; that is, one Caldron on a Base.

The work of the Bases was on this manner, The had Borders between the Ledges, which were carved with Lions, Bulls, and Cherubims, and every Base under the Borders had foure Wheels, and the **Axle trees** of the wheels joyned to the Base, and the height of a Wheel a Cubit and an half, their fashion was like a **Chariot Wheel**, their **Axle trees**, their **Naves**, **Felloes**, & **Spokes**, were all of Molten Brass. And foure **Under-setters** were upon the corners of one Base, which upheld the Caldron on the Base, on whose top there was a round Compass of half a Cubit high round about, which was called the **Pillar**, or **Chapiter**, or **Small base** of the Caldron.

LX. He beareth Gules, the **Pott**, or **Pott Cup**, **Covered**, Or. This is a rich Chased, and Imbossed Golden Cup, with Spirall tops, wrought on the Cover thereof; with figures of Saints, and Crucifixes round about, very richly made. In which the Popish Priests in great Cathedrals administer the Sacrament of *Christs* Blood: Which they carry also in great state in their Processions: Also with the same they go to give the Sacrament to any that is sick or diseased.

This blazoned as abovesaid, is born by the name of *Hostell*. The same also by *Don Cazaro*, a *Spaniard*.

G. 3 such A. born by *Alberine* of *Italy*.

LXI. He beareth Gules, a **Cup** Argent. Born by the name of *Cup*. This as it is set amongst the Utensils of the Church, may be termed, a **Communion**, or a **Sacrament Cup**.

S. 3 Cups A. is born by the name of *Cupler*.

A Demy man holding a Cup in one hand, and an Arrow with the Head or point erected P. Clothed B. is the Crest of *Schencken* of *Bavaria*.

LXII. He beareth Sable, a **Font** set upon its **Basis** with **Grieces**, and **Covered**, Argent. Born by the name of *Fontall*. This is by some only termed a **Covered Font**, and no more.

The Font Uncovered set upon a Pillar, or Pedestal, fixt on three Grieces, or Staires, Or; in a field Azure. is born by *Fontley*.

LXIII. He beareth Azure, a **Popish Altar**, or an **high Altar**. But to name the perticulars say, an **Altar**, or **Table Covered** with an **Altar cloth**, whereon is placed a **Crucifix** between two **Candlesticks** with **War Lights** or **Candles burning**, all Proper.

If it were a Table Covered, with a Dish Cup and Flagon on, it is it is termed a **Communion Table**.

Things pertaining to an Altar.

The **Linnen**, is that with which the Altar is covered.

The **Crucifix**, is the Image of Christ on the Cross, & other Saints pictures, and their holy reliquets, hung on the back and over the Altar.

The **Tapers**, are wax Candles set in Silver or Gold Sticks, to burn dayly thereon.

The **Patina**, the Dish for the makeing of the body of Christ; or Plate on which the Wafers are put.

The **Corporal**, the Linen, or Napkin to cover it from dust.

The **Chalice**, a Cup for the blood of Christ, or Sacramental Wine.

The **Pix**, of some called the **Ciborium**, or **Eucharistial**, is a Box wherein Christs body in form of wafers is kept, as in a Sepulchre.

The **Capsae**, are Coffers or Chests in which the Bones of Saints are kept; and other Reliques of theirs which are laid under the Altar.

The **Censer**, and **Incense**, are Pots in which perfumes are burnt.

The **Cross**, the figure of Christs Passion.

The **Bason**, the **Holy Water**, and holy water **Sprinkle**, that as holds the water, and also that with which the people are sprinkled.

The **Flap**, or **Fann**, to drive away Flies from the Chalice.

The **Railes**, to inclose the Altar.

Utensils of a Romish Church.

Reliques, are Bones or Gifts of Saints departed, placed in some part of the Church; especially neere those Altars dedicated to them.

Images, Pictures of God the Father represented as an old man, with a treble Crown on his head, because *Daniel* calls him the Auncient of dayes.

Pictures, as Christ either at his Birth, on his Travails, with his Apostles, in his Preachings, or Disputs, in his Agonie, or Passion, his Crucifying, Death, and Buriall, also his Resurrection, and his Ascention. All which the Walls and Windows are adorned with, to admire the Simple, and the Ignorant to Adore.

Holy Ghost, set forth in the figure of a Dove with a glory about it.

Statues, Figures of Saints, and Angels, set within and without the Church to be Idolized.

Tapers, and **Candles** in Sticks, which they burn to the honor of Angels and Saints by day.

Lamps, Lights burning to them all the night.

Odors, Perfumes burnt to expell bad vapors.

Organs, Musick to stir up, and excite the minde to quick and lively devotion.

Baptisteria, the Font of Stone which keeps water in for Baptizing of Children.

Ools, or **Flagons**, for to keep Oyle and Chrisme in for Baptisme.

Aquimanaria, of some called **Amula**, or **Situla**, Holy water Pots of Stone, or Marble, to which is fastned with a chaine, the Holy water **Spung**, to Sprinkle it.

Bells, to call the people together to heare Mass.

Ropes, to Ring, Toll, and Chime the Bells.

Clock, or **Diall**, to tell or shew how tyme and the day passeth away.

St Bell, a little Bell rung in the Mass, to give the people notice when to beat their Breast, and make a mutter with *mea Culpa &c.*

Mass Books, **Psalters**, and **Singing books**, for the Canting over of their Services, and Anthems.

Vestments, the Priests Habits, which are diverse according to their Orders in the Church, which I have shewed you before. These with other needless and foolish toyes, in which they place much of their Religious worship, being not worth mentioning, I pass them over.

LXIV. He beareth Vert, a **Challice**, Or. born by the name of *Callice*, or *Challice*. This is a Common **Sacrament Cup**, used generally in all Popish churches, being either six or eight Squares in the Bowl part, growing smaler and smaler from the top to the bottom; the Foot is in some Square according to its top, others of a Circular form. It hath its name **Challice**, borrowed from *Calix*, which is the same word for a Cup, Pot, or Goblet, or such like to drink in.

B. 3 such A. is born by *Lewart*.

In the Dexter side is a **Candle Stick** with a **Candle burning** in it. Or term it a **Candle** in a **Candle stick Flamant**, or **Lighted**, or **Flameing**. Born by the name of *Loetza* a *Polander*. This is an Altar Light without which the Popish Priests cannot see (tho it be in the day time) to read their Masses, the Epistles or Gospell. Such lights are also Superstitiously used in the Execrations, Curses, and Bulls of Excommunication; *viz:* to Curse with Bell, Book, and Candle.

S. 3 such A. Flamant Pr. born by *Lightman*.

Four Candles, the one burning the other 3 extinct, was the Devise of the great Turk *Solimannus*, to signifie that other religions were nothing light in respect of his.

LXV. This is the **Cornice** of a **Wanscote rome**, or the **Capital** of a **Pillar**, or **Column**, the terms used by Work-men for each perticular Moulding, as the are noted by the letters, take as followeth.

Terms of the parts of a Cornice, or a Capitall.

a is the **Fillet**, of the Cimatium.

b is the **Cimatium**, or Crown of the Cornice, it bends like an S.

c is the **Abacus**, or **Dado**, or Dye of the Cornice.

d is the **Dyolo**, or **Echinus**, it is round at the Bottom but not on the top, being half of an half round.

e is the **Frize**, or **Sophorus**, or **Dynotra-chelium**, it is a moulding that Swells out half-round. It is called a **Swelling Frize**.

f is the **Architrave**, which is a plaine and Straight thing between other mouldings.

g is the **Fillet**, or **Celiquire**, or **Lestella** of the Architrave. And so all the little Edges, or Fillets between the other mouldings are generally so called: Also this Cornice in short and generall terms, is called by **Architrave, Frize, & Cornice**. as *f* the Architrave. *e* the Freze. *a b* or *c d* the Cornice, as the workman pleaseth to order the work.

LXVI. Now for the better understanding of all the parts of a **Pillar**, or **Column**, with the several terms, which Artists have given to the diverse Mouldings about the same; I shall in two examples, set forth all their words of Art, used about them; by which any Gentleman may be able to discourse a Free-mason, or other workman, in his own terms.

The Order of Columns and Pillars.

In Architecture work, where there are either Columns, or Pillars, or Membretes. You are to know that there are five Orders of work in them.

1. The **Tuscan Order**, which is the plainest of all Orders, and is to have the **Pillar**, or **Column** plaine, the **Capital** and **Pedestal**, without any manner of carved work. and to consist only of a **Fillet**, a **Cimatium**, or Crown of the Cornice, and an **Astragal**, or Collarino. as *numb.* 71 81.

2. The **Dorick Order**, in this the Column is divided, or wrought into many little Columns, round and swelling out (as the Pillar of the **Jonick Order** is fluted, or cut found inwards) as the examples of this see *numb* 66 & 74. marked with the letters *a b*. The **Capital** and **Pedestal** plaine, as above said. The Capital of this Order is called, a **Dynastilas Column** or Pillar. see *numb* 81.

3. The

3. The **Ionick Order**, whose **Pillar**, or **Collumn** is **Fluted**, that is, cut round inward, from almost the top to almost the bottome of the collumn. The **Capital**, having the **Fillet** of the **Cimatium** turned into an **Eserowl**, round or a **Catuile head**, which is called an **Eustrilos Collumn** or **Pillar**.

4. Is the **Corinthian Order**, which is the same to the **Ionick**, only the **Capital** is **Carved**; the **Cimatium** is **Carved** into Flowers, Leaves and such like, having a **Collarino** under the said Carved head, or a **Freze** between two **Astragalls** or **Collarinos**, which Capital is termed a **Systilos Pillar**.

5. Is the **Composita**, or **Compositive Order**; it is a **Collumn** or **Pillar** with its **Capital** and **Pedestal** framed and composed from all the other Orders, according to the fancy and discretion of the Work-man, as the Capital of the Corinthian and Ionick Orders; the Column of the Ionick and the Dorick Orders; and the Pedestal of them all; see *n m*. 34.

A **Membretto**, or a **Pillaster**, is a swelling or projecturing out of a main Wall, with cut or carved work, after the manner of a **Pillar** or **Collumn**; having both **Pedestals** and **Capitals** answerable to the several Orders from whence such Membretto's are composed.

An **Articurge Collumn**, is a square Pillar.

The Terms given to the Feet of Collumns, or Basis of Pillars.

a is the Body of the **Dorick Pillar** or **Collumn**, cut into rounds a little above the Basis.

b is the upper **Torus**, being a round outward.

c is the **Scotia**, being an half round inward.

d is the lower **Torus**, swelling outwards.

e is the **Plinth** or **Zocco**, being Bevile, with a flat, to which place is the Basis of a Dorick Column.

f is the **Cimatia**, or **Cimatium** of the Pedestal, which turneth in the form of an S.

g is the **Dado**, **Dye**, (square or plain of the Pedestal) the **Stylobatum**.

h is the **Annuletts** or small Rings between each moulding, if two together, then double Annulets. They are also by some Artists termed **Cimbia**, and **Listella**, and **Fillets**.

i is the **Corona** of the Base, being made like an 2 wrong way.

k is the **Dylo** or **Profile**, or **Plynth** of the Base.

The **Basis** or **Base** of the **Pillar**, is so much of it as projectures the body or thickness of the Pillar or Collumn, as you may see from the place marked *b* to the letter *e*.

The **Pedestal** or foot of the Pillar, is as much as draweth back again, and so down till it run as much out again, that is from the Fillet of the **Cimatia**, marked *f* to the Letter *k*.

The **small Rings** (as I shewed before) between each of the mouldings are termed **Annulets** or **Fillets**, as the higher **Annulet** of the **Torus**, the **lower Annulet** of the **Torus**, or the **Scotia** with its **Annulets**, that is the Rings both above and below it.

LXVII. As before I have given you the Terms used by Artists for the several parts of the **Basis** and **Pedestal**; we shall now proceed to do the same, for the **Capital** or head part of the **Pillar**.

Terms used about the Capitals or Heads of Pillars and Collumns.

a is the **Cima recta**, which turns after the form of an S.

b is the **Cima reversa**, which is streight above, but round under.

c is the **Corona**, which is first streight, then fluted or channelled under.

d is the **Cimatium** of the **Modilions**; the Modilions being square ends or peeces, representing the ends of Spars laid in the Floors. In this place, and in the **Cima recta**, is usually Carved work if the Master will go to the Charge.

e is the **Ovolo**.

f is the **Cavetto**, which is hollow inwards.

g is the **Swelling Frize**, if it were streight, then it is termed only a **Frize**.

h is the **Cimatium** of the **Architrave**, or **Capital** of the **Triglyph**.

i is the **Fasia**, or **Architrave**, if there be more rebates than one they are termed the **primary Fasia**, the **secondary Fasia**.

k is the **Scroul** on the Capital of the Ionick Order.

l is the **Corinthian head** with Carved work, both which makes the **Composita Order**, or **Roman Capital**.

m is the **Cimatium**, or **Crown** of the Capital. This is the head of the Collumn of the **Dorick Order**.

n are **Annulets** or small **Fillets**; termed also **Listella's** or **Cinctures**.

o is the **Frize**, or **Hypotrachelium**, which part in Composita work is usually Carved.

p is the **Astragall** or **Collarino**, which is a round, with one or two **Annulets** under it.

q is the body of the **Corinthian Pillar**.

Note that from the Letter *a* to the foot of the Letter *i*, is in short termed **Architrave**, **Frize** and **Cornice**. These are the kind of Mouldings that are most used on the top of Wainscot Rooms, or on the **Heads** of **Pillars** and **Pillasters**.

Also from *k* to the Letter *n* is the **Capitals** of all the foresaid **Orders** of Collumns, if to each of them, (for the more grace of the work) there be added the **Astragall** or **Collarino** with its **Annulets**, markt *p*.

Those that desire farther instruction in the Theorick part of Free Masonry, they may peruse.

Sebastian Serley, Printed 1611.

Peter de le Muet. And

Andrew Palladio. Both Englished by *Golfrid Richards.*

Vitruvius. And others.

LXVIII. He beareth Or, on a **Nail**, or **Pin fired** in chief, a **Lamp fired** (or flamant, or on a flame) hanging

hanging by a Chain Sable. By the name of *Lampe*. Some say thus a **Lamp fired, Chained,** and **hanged on a Nail** Sable. Three such A. Flames proper, in a Field S. is born by *Labee* of *Italy*. See *lib.* 2. *chap.* 18. *numb.* 24. 25.

LXIX. He beareth Sable, a **Chain** out of the chief, with an **hanging Candlestick** thereat, containing six **Branches,** Or; in each **Socket a Candle fired** or burning proper. Born by the name of *Chandler*. It is termed an **hanging Candlestick** with its **Branches, Knops** and **Sockets.** This is born by the name of *Cussaban*.

LXX. He beareth Argent, hanging in chief at a **Chain** of **three ends,** an **Incense Pot,** Or. This is termed a Popish **Sweet Incense,** or **Perfume Pot.** This is born by *Angelo* or *Angellico*, an *Italian*.

LXXI. He beareth Azure, a **Statue** or **Colosse** of the **Virgin** and **her Babe,** set upon a **Pedestal, mounted** on **Grieces** or **Steps,** Or. These kind of Images or Idols are termed **Statues** from *Statuo* to stand, because they alway stand to, and keep the place to which they are Dedicated, without shew of removing. A **Statue** is a solid Body representing the Image of a person. A **Colosse** is a very high and huge Pillar or Tower, or a very great Image made for the Honour of a person; as at *Rhodes* was one set up seventy Cubits high, being termed one of the Worlds Wonders.

Of the Worlds Wonders.

First, is the Walls of *Babylon*, built by *Semiramis*, it was foursquare, and Threescore Thousand Paces about, as *Pliny* saith *l.* 6. *cap.* 26. two hundred foot in height, fifty foot thick, so broad that six Chariots might go abreast without offending one another. It had an hundred Gates of Metal, very admirable. She kept daily at the work three hundred thousand men, the City being so great and large, that in aftertimes when it was taken by the Enemy, they that dwelt at the one end or side of it, had no advertisement thereof till three whole days after. *Diodorus Siculus* in *lib.* 3. saith that the Compass of the Walls was 360 Stades, each Stade containing 200 Paces, and *Quintus Curtius* saith it was 100 Cubits in height.

Second is the *Colossus of the Sun*, set up at *Rhodes*, it was a Statue or Figure of a Man, all of Brass 70 Cubits in height, it was cast down by a Quaking or Trembling of the Earth, 56 years after its Erection, few Men could embrace the great Finger of this Statue, it lay ruined a very long time till *Anno* 600, at which time they carried away the Reliques of it, which Loaded 900 Camels.

Third, is the *Pyramids of Egypt*, which are Buildings of a Quadrangle form, and so raised up into a Spire or sharp point; at one whereof was daily working three hundred and threescore thousand Men for 20 whole years. *Pliny lib.* 36. *cap.* 12. saith, that the ground work of this Pyramid contained 8 days Journy of ground, others seven, but most agree on six, and as many in the height, the Stones were of Marble brought out of *Arabia*, most part of them 30 foot large. Another of a lesser size *Peter Martyr* the Ambassador of *Spain* to the *Soldane* of *Egypt*, *Anno* 1501. saith that one square of it was 315 paces, and on the top was one entire Stone that 30 Men might stand upon.

Fourth, is the *Mansolea*, or the Tomb of *Mansolus* King of *Caria*, a Province in *Asia*, it was all of Marble 411 foot in circuit, and 25 cubits high; it had about it 26 Collumns of admirable Stone and famous Sculpture, it was open on all sides with Arches 73 foot wide.

Fifth, is the Temple of *Diana* in the City of *Ephesus*; it was built by the Amazons, and was 425 foot long, and 220 broad, it had 107 Collumns or Pillars of excellent Marble, each made by the Kings of *Asia*, for it was 220 years in perfecting; all the Coverings, Doors and Wainscot work was of Cedar Wood and Cyprus.

Sixth, is the Idol or Image of *Jupiter*, set in the Temple of *Achaia*, in the place where *Hercules* instituted the *Olympian* Pastimes of Running, Wrastling, *&c.* it was excellent for its greatness, being made of Porphiry, some say of Ivory, knit and united together of small pieces.

Seventh is the Tower in the Isle of *Pharos* near *Alexandria* in *Egypt*, erected by the Kings of *Egypt*, of Marble, marvelous in height and cunning workmanship, invironed with water; it cost 800 Talents, which *Budæus* by computation, makes to amount to four hundred and eighty thousand Crowns. Some do not insert this as one of the Seven Wonders; but the Obelisk of *Semiramis*, which was of one entire Stone made Pyramid wise, for that is all the difference between them; a **Pyramid** is of many, but the **Obelisk** of one only Stone, of a vast and incredible bigness, brought from one place and set up in another, as this which was said to be 150 foot high and 24 foot square, and in circuit 90 foot, taken whole out of the Mountains of *Armenia*, and brought to *Babylon* of the *Chaldeans*.

Though that of *Stonehenge* in the County of *Wilts*, in our Kingdom be not reckoned as a Worlds Wonder, yet we may look upon it as a Wondrous Monument; the matter thereof are Stones of a great bigness being 28 foot and more in height and ten in breadth, these are set in the ground by 2 and 2, and a third laid Gatewise overthwart, and fastned with Tenants and Mortises wrought in the same; the form these Stones are set in, is round, and as it seemeth hath been circulated with three ranks of them, many whereof are now fallen down, and the uttermost standing containeth in compass 300 foot, they are all rough and of a grey colour, standing within a Trench that hath been much deeper: They were erected by *Aurelius Ambrosius* King of the *Britains*, in memory of the Treachery of the *Saxons* under *Vortigern* their King, who slew in a day of Parley all the Nobility and Buried them there, about *Anno* 475.

In

In this place also the forelaid King *Aurelius* and 2 more of the *British* Kings his Successors, have been interred, with many more of their Nobility. Now the great Wonder is how these Stones came hither, seeing the Country thereabout, and for many Miles distant afford none such; the Learned *Camden* therefore thinks that they were made by Art, of pure Sand, Lime, Vitriol, and some Unctious Cement, because there was Anciently such an Art of making Stone which is now lost; but the *Britains* have a Tradition amongst them that their great Prophet (or Conjurer) *Merlin* who then lived, was assisting in the work, and by his Art it was performed. In this place under little Banks, to this day, are found by Digging, Bones of mighty Men, and Armour of large and ancient fashion.

Another remarkable work, is that high and long Wall made as a bound between *China* and the Eastern *Tartars*, built by *Tzaintzon* the 117 King of *China*, to hinder the inroads and incursions of those Enemies; its height is - - - - - - and in length over Hill and Dale is extended 405 Leagues, according to the *Spanish* or *Portugueeze* measure, which makes 23 Degrees and 10 Minutes, after 17 Leagues and a half to a Degree, which according to *English* measure is above 1410 miles, and this we must understand to run in a streight line, for should it be taken with all its turnings and windings of the Mountains, it would amount to above 500 *Portugal* Leagues, and so thick that several Wagons may meet and pass one by another, and the Stones so close joined together that the edge of a Knife could not be put between; within and without this great Wall are 3000 Towers or Castles, where are kept Guards and Watches all the Year long to give the Alarm so soon as an Enemy appears, having the number of 68008 Soldiers in them, as saith *F. Jo. Rodriquez*; though others say 92054, which *F. Magaillans* also testifieth in his *Hist. of China.*

Not much inferiour to this was that great and magnificent performance of an Emperour of *Tartaria*, about 400 years ago, upon the Conquest of *China*, who employed Workmen without number, and at vast expences, and with an unparallell'd industry, opened a Canal 3500 *Chinese* Furlongs, or 245 *Portugal* Leagues in length, through several Provinces and through many Cities and Towns, till it come to the most famous Sea Port Town in all the Empire, thereby to convey Victuals and other Necessaries to his chief City of *Pekim* in *China*, where he made his principal residence.

On the dexter side of this quarter is an **Holy Water Sprinkle**; it is a thing much used in the *Romish* Church, for with it (being dipt in a Bason of Holy Water) the Priest besprinkles the people before they hear Mass, or do partake of the Church Service and Ceremonies.

B. 3 Water Sprinkles O. borr by *Holyman.*

LXXII. He beareth Azure, a **square Castle**, the **Towers** and **Roof Spired**, between two **Towers** the like Or; **Debused** (or **Out-walled**) with a **Wall** in Base, **extendant**, having a **Port Portcullis'd**, with the Battlement over it raised **Bevil ways**, to a corner Argent. Others Blazon this a **Wall** in Base **extending** to the sides, with a **Port and Portcullis** before, or compassing of a **Castle between two Towers**, all **Spired.** The *Dutch* term it a Castle Wall in Base, raised over the Port with an Indent: But workmen term the **Port** with a Rise over it, or a **Pedement Cap** or Head with two **Kneelers.**

LXXIII. The **Pedestal** of a **Pillar**, of this I have spoken when I Treated on the same Subject in *numb. 66.* to which for the Terms of Art I refer you.

LXXIV. The **Capital** of a **Corinthian Pillar**, the terms peculiar to the **Mouldings** in this quarter, I have treated of *numb. 67.* to which place I refer you.

TO

TO
The Worshipful
NATHANIEL BOOTH, of *Mottram Andrew*, Esquire,
AND TO
The Worshipful *George Booth* of *Woodford* Esq; Prothonotary for the County Palatine of *Chester*.

YOur Signal Favours upon several Occasions, cannot (without Ingratitude) but Extort from me a Return of Thanks, which be pleased to accept from these my small Labours, which are Dedicated to you, by him who shall ever Subscribe himself

Your Devoted Friend and Servant

Randle Holme.

CHAP. XIII.

2. IN this Plate I shall present you with some other sorts of rare pieces of Architecture, both for their form and inventions, which I have found born in Coats, together with their several terms used by those kind of Workmen, which I hope will be no less pleasing to the Fancy than to the Eye of the Beholder; and in the end shall close all such kind of Buildings, with some extravagant Bearings, in which though I have placed them in some Order, yet could not properly put them in any sort of working Instruments

LXXV. In this Square are the fashions of two sorts of Roofed or Covered Towers, which I find born in Arms.

The first is terned a **Tower covered**, or **Arched over**; which is always taken to be Round Roofed, if it be otherwise Covered then to be mentioned, whither it be **Ridg Roofed, Spiral Roofed, Square Roofed,** or **Seragon Roofed**; or else any of these sorts of coverings with **Eves**, or **Overseeling** the Tower. As you may see diverse examples in *cha.* 9 *numb.* 184 186 190 *&* *cha.* 12 *numb.* 52 55 56 *&* this *cha.* 13 *numb.* 16 41 42 47 72 *&c.*

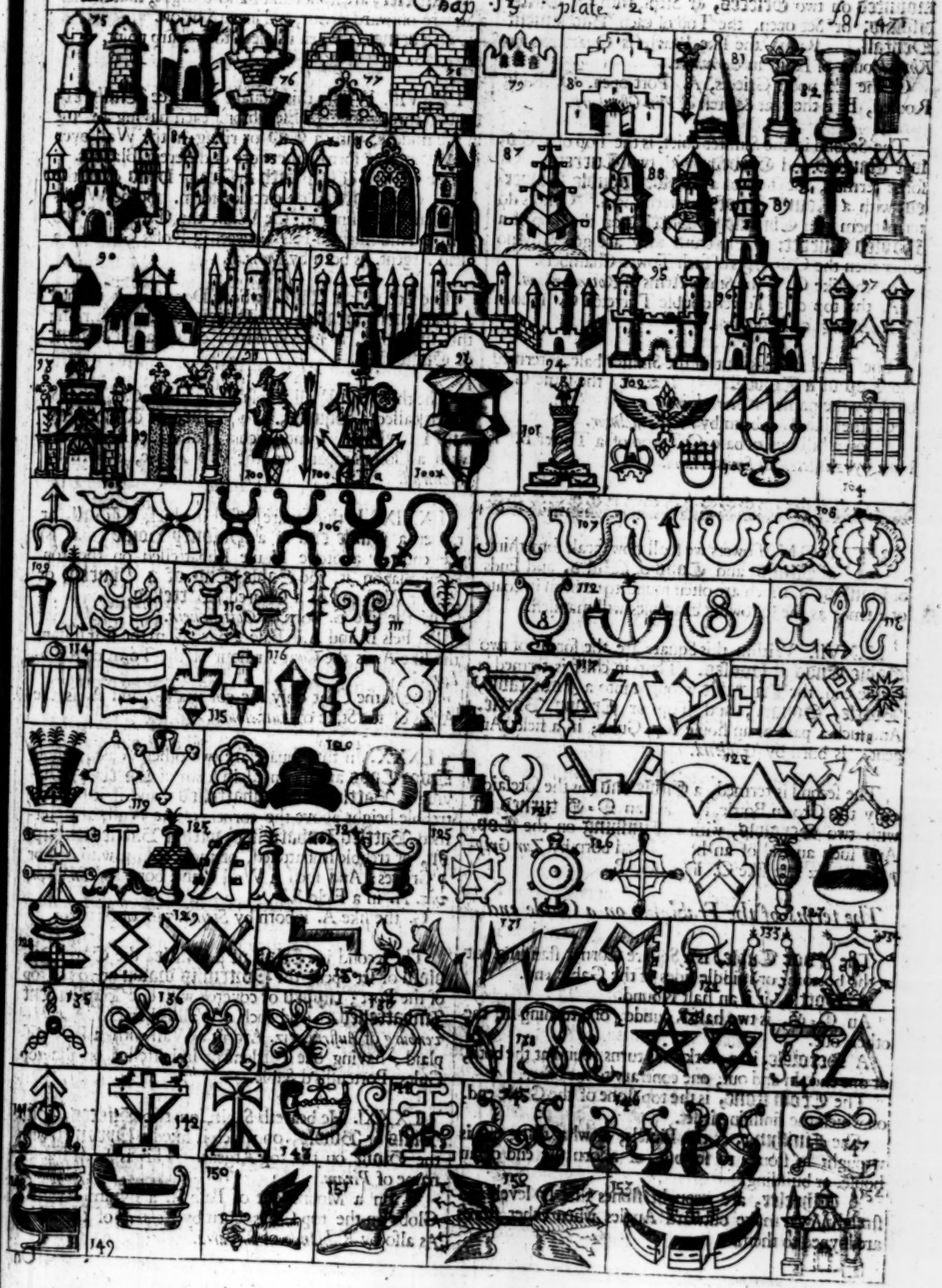
He beareth G. on a **Mount** a **Tower** A. **vaulted** B. with a **Ball** or **Globe** on the top O. is born by *Van Hohenwart* of *Austria*. And out of a Coronet, the like Tower, between 2 Wings S. is his Crest. Some term this tower, **Sans Port**, or **Gate**: and so in deed it may be, for I find no such thing in the Coat, and therefore may well be termed a **Mured Tower**, or a Tower Shut, or **Closed up**.

O. a Rose betw: 2 Towers G. Spire roofed B. is the coat Armour of the Town of *Rospach*.

The second is termed a **Tower** with a **plain Battlement**; that is, the Battlement is not made with **Wheelers** and **Kneelers**, but is streight, and even in the Walk of the Wall. Yet there are some which because it wants Battlements, calls it a **Dove** or **Pigeon house**. G. the like A. is born by *Van Keonath*.

G. on a Mount out of base such a Tower **sans port**, A. betw: 2 Trees V. is the Town Arms of *Garttach*.

LXXVI. In this Square are the **Tops** or **Turrets** of three Sorts of Towers. The first is called a **Tower mounted**



mounted on two **Grieces**, or Steps, with the **Gates displaid**, or Set open, the Top of each **Battlement Dentall.** Ruby, the like Pearl, is Quartered by *Khun* Count of *Belasy* in *Germanie.*

G. the like upon Grieces, A. Port open, O. Ridg Roofed, B. is the coat & crest of *Van Offenburg.*

The Second in the Sinister chief, is the Top of a **Tower Vaulted** and **Gloved**, with two **Turrets.** Of some termed, the Top of a **Tower double Towered**, with a **Round Roofe** between them. Others do term them two **Chimneys Battled** on the Top of a **Roofed Turret:** and in truth they are generally no other then the Chimneys of such Tower Chambers.

A. the like G. is the States Arms of *Rotenburgam.*

A. the top of a Tower double Turreted G. is born by *Bebenburg* of *Frankford.*

The Third issueing out of the Sinister base, is termed the **Top of a Tower.** *Viz.* A. the same G. is born by the name of *Towrheim.*

G. the like A. is born by *Van Castelmur.*

A. on a hill out of base O. a top of a Tower B. is born by *Altsteten* of *Switzerland.*

3 FROM Towers we shall now speak something of **Walls**, and **Tops** of **Walls**, and Ends of **Houses**, for such are often found to be born in coats of Arms; as the following examples will manifest.

LXXVII. Within this Square are the forms of two **Gable Ends** of **Houses.** That in chief is termed a Gable end, the **Fracable** wrought into a **Foot table, Bottle, Square**, and Top or **Crown Bottle.** And such a part of an house top, Gules; in a field Argent. Is born by *Gabiend.*

The second is termed, a **Gable end** (as the foresaid) only the Crown Bottle, is called an **D. G turned off** with two **Scrowls**, with a **Finishing** on the **Top.** And such an end of an house I find born by *Zur Grippach.* *viz.* the like O. in a field B.

The terms of the Fracable on a Gable end.

The **Foot Table**, is a Square Corner standing out at the bottom, or middle sides of the Gable end.

A **Bottle**, it is an half Round.

An **D. G**, is two half Rounde, one turning in, the other out.

A **Scrowle**, is a work that turns round at the both, or one end, In and out, one contrary to the other.

The **Crow stone**, is the top stone of the Gable end, on which the finishing is set.

The **Finishing**, is the Pinacle, or what thing else is wrought in stone; to set out, or adorn the end of an house, or building.

A **Wheeler**, are wrought stones that ly levell and streight, yet make outward Angles when other stones are ioyned to them.

A **Kneeler**, are stones that stand upright, that makes a Square outward aboue, and inward below.

A **Pedement**, when is riseth to a Sharp point. as in *numb.* 78.

LXXVIII. Within this Square are three **Walls extended** throughout the Escochion, each having a **Dore** in the middle, with a **Cap** or rising in the Wall over it, of contrary forms, therefore of different Blazons.

The first is a **Wall with a Cap** or **Pedd** over the Door, of a **Bottle**, or circular form. Some Workmen call the rising of the Wall, the **Cover of the Dore:** And such in Fess between 3 Roses Gules in a Field Argent, is born by *Dormall.*

The second is a **Wall**, whose Door Cap is termed a **Pedement Head** of two **Kneelers**; all such rising thus in a point, is by Workmen called a **Pedement** or **Gable End.**

The third is a Wall whose Door head, Cap, or Cover is called a **Square**, or a **Cover of Wheelers and Kneelers**, Argent. Such a Wall out of Base Gules, with a Lion rampant on the Cap Azure, is born by *Lionwall.*

LXXIX. In this square is first in chief, a **Wall**, or rather a **Gable end** of a **Masonry House** (that is) the end of a Stone House Imbattelled on the top. Some Blazon it, the **Gable End of a Church**, or East or West end of a Church, **Battelled.**

A. the like G. born by *Cottenheim.*

Per Fess B. and A. in Base 2 Bar, from the first issuant the like A. is the Coat Armour of the Town of *Aldenburg.*

The same Coat only the colours G. and A. is the Arms of the State of *Lutzelburg.*

LXXX. In this square are two other Walls, whose **Door Caps** are mounted in form of **Grieces**, or having a **Battlement Imbattelled**; and if it be of a trebble height above the corners of the Wall, then termed **Battled Imbattelled**, with a **Battlement upon**, or trebble Imbattelled, or mounted up with 2, 3 or 4 Grieces: And such a Wall I find born by *Turheim*, *viz.* A. in a Field S.

G. the like A. is born by *Steinhausen* of *Austria.*

The second is a **Wall of a Castle**, the **Gates displaid** or set open, the **Portcullis drawn up** to the top of the **Port**; **capped** or covered with one **Battlement Imbattelled.** And such a Wall is born by *Van Havenburg* of *Austria*, viz. Argent a Wall with a Port displaid, having one Battlement-Imbattelled on the top Gules, Portcullis'd Sable.

LXXXI. He beareth Sable, on two **Grieces**, four **Balls** or **Bowls**, on which is fixed a **Pyramid** with the **Globe** on the top Argent. This is born by the name of *Piram.*

B. on a Mount out of Base A. a Pyramid with a Globe on the top O. is born by *Rolandt* of the *Rhine.* As also by *Ruhlandt* of *Bavaria.*

On

In the dexter side of this Square is set the true form of the **Legionary Eagle**, which is an Eagle set on the top of an high Pole, which the *Romans* used in sted of a Banner or Ensign to Guid and Conduct their Souldiers; of these they had severall sorts and fashions. See *cha.* 18 *numb.* 11 12 13.

LXXXII. In this Square are the forms of three sorts of **Pillars** which I have found born in coats of Arms. The first is a **Composed Pillar**, framed of foure round pillasters; the **basis**, or foot thereof is fixed in base: the **Capital** wrought into Leaves, with a **Chapiter** after the form of a Crown. This I confesse may well pass for Common Heraulds-Painter Blazoning: but the more knowing Artists will say as followeth. Argent out of the Base a **Pillar**, or **Column** of the **Doric Order**, & a **Corinthian Capital, crowned**; Gules. which is born by the name of *Van Genheim.*

The Second we generally call by the name of a **Column**, or **Pillar**. And the reason is, because all Pillars in coats of Arms are usually drawn by the *English* after this manner, with plain **Pedestals** and **Capitals**: But now where variety of Orders of Pillars are born, there ought a due distinction to be given, that accordingly they may be truly delineated; then each person shall have his due right.

He beareth Gules, a Pillar of the **Tuscan Order**, Or. born by the name of *Colmore.*

The third is the Top part, or **Capital** of a **Pillar**; or more properly the half of a **Column** of the **Jonick Order**, or a **Pillar Fluted**, with a **Tuscan Capital**, and a **Globical Chapiter**. And such a demy Pillar Sable, in a Field Argent, is born by the name of *Van Wildenberg.*

S. 3 such O. is born by *Ringerb.*

LXXXIII. He beareth Azure, a **Square Castle**, at the corner of the Wall in Base, a **Tower** with a **Port, double Belconyed**, and **over Seeling** or **Eve Roof**, at the Dexter and Sinister corners, the like Towers **Single Belconyed**, Argent. This belongs to the States of *Anterf* in *Germany.* Some term this a **Castle**, with its corner pointing to the Chief and Base dexter and sinister sides, at each a Tower, *&c.* Now by reason of it thus scituation there can but 3 Towers be seen, that behind being hid by the principal Tower in the Front of the Castle; which had it stood directly **four square**, (and not **Arras** or **Losenge wise**, or the corners upwards) then all the Towers would be seen, as *numb.* 9. or a triangle, as *numb.* 13.

LXXXIV. He beareth Or, on **Grieces** three **Towers** in Fess, **Eave Rooks**, the back parts from the two outward (Towers) compassed with a **Circular Wall Battlemented**, Gules; is born by the name of *Towerwall.*

O. on Grieces a square Tower with a Port open, and a Man standing in it, Battlemented and Ridg-roofed, between 2 round Towers, with a circular Wall behind them, Gules, is the State Arms of *Hallim Henegave*, in *Germany.*

LXXXV. He beareth Argent, on a **Mount** out of Base Vert; a **double Wall** before two **Towers**, Skirt or **Eave Roofed Debusing** of two (**Serpents** or **Snakes** or) Cocatrice Serpents, **conjoined** in the back, heads **endorsed**, and the Bodies turned into the form of *Roman* S's of the second. This is born by the name of *Snakenburger* of *Brunswick.* Some will also Blazon it two **Serpents** in form of an S **conjoined** and **endorsed surmounted** by two **Towers** upon a **double plain Wall** on a **Hill** in Base; beginning first with the Serpents, because they lie next to the Field.

A. on a Mount out of the Base V. such a Wall and Towers conjoined to others, fixed to the sides G. This may also be termed a Bevile Wall with 2 Turrets or small Towers, between two high or lofty Towers, extended to the sides of the Escochion. This is born by the name of *Sidebottom*, of *Nab-Top*, in *Marple*, in the County of *Chester*, an Antient name in that County, from whence hath Branched forth many Families into *Ireland*, and other places.

LXXXVI. Here are two things in this Square pertaining to a Church. or Temple, which I find born in Coats of Arms. As first, He beareth Argent. a **Window**, or **Church window**, Gules, Glased Proper. which is born by the name of *Light.* or *Lightman.*

O. 3 such G. Glased A. Leaded S. by *Thorlight.*

Masonry terms about a Window.

The **Sole**, is the Foot or bottom of the Window.
The **Mullions**, the uprighth Stands of a Window, of some termed **Munnions**.
The **Jaumes**, or **Peers**, the window Sides.
The **Head**, the top of the Window.
A **Clarester window**, hath no Cross barrs in, having only a Sole, Mullions, and Head.
A **Transome window**, hath Cross barrs in it, at the third part of it height.
The **Trasery**, is the makeing of the Top part of the Window into severall Forms and Fashions.
The **Clausing**, is to make the Jaumes to over sale the Mullions, and that is wrought into several kind of Mouldings, and adorned with other worke, as the Mr: pleaseth to put on.
The **Rebates**, or **Rigets**, the places cut in the sides of the Mullions to set the Glass in.

Secondly, He beareth Argent, out of base, a Foure **Square Steele**, each corner Supported with a **Buttrice**, the Top set off with **Moulded Battlements**, and the Corners with **Carved Finishings**, or **Pinicles**, with a **Spiral Roofe**, ensigned with a **Cross**, all Proper. Born by the name of *Steeplehouse.* This may in short be Blazoned, a Square Steeple, or Parochiall, or **Mother Church Steeple**; all the other appurtenences usually belong to such Steeples.

LXXXVII. He beareth Argent, a **China Steeple**, Gules. All the Steeples in that Countrey are made after this form, riseing one Story above another, and

each less then other, and this they do for many heights. which when they would shew Magnificence in their Buildings, they adorn the out sides, and top, with a multitude of Fanes, or Square Banners.

LXXXVIII. He beareth Azure, on a **Pedestall**, or **Water-table**, or **Basis** of an **Peragon Square**, the like **Tower** with an **Eve**, or **Cant seileing Roofe**; on the top whereof, is an other **Tower**, with the like **Covering**, Argent. This is the States Arms for the Town of *Newenburg*.

A. on an Hill G. such a Round Tower, the top part with Battlements, B. is born by *Hohonwarht* of *Bavaria*.

Per fesse A. & G. the like counterchanged. is born by the name of *Frolich*.

The Second Figure in this Square, is termed a **Close Peragon Tower, Eve Roofed**, haveing a **Vine Branch Enwraped** about it: and such a Tower I find born by the Town of *Marpach*. *Viz*: Per Pale, Or; three Staggs hornes in pale Sable: and Or, such a Tower, Azure, the Vine Proper. These I take originally to be two Coats, and therefore I give them two blazons.

LXXXIX. Within this Square I have placed three sorts of Towers, all which are used in Arms. The first is a **Spiral Tower**, such an one as is larger at the bottom than the top, (Built Taper, or Battering, as workmen term it) being **Double Belconed**, with a **Battlement**, and **Arch Roofed**, with a **finishing** or **ball** on the top. A. the like G. belconyes & roofe O. is born by the name of *Belcony*.

B. the like with a belcony A. is quartered by *Griespecken* of *Thorland*.

The Second is termed a **Tower** with a **plaine Battlement**, and a **Spire**, on each side the top is placed a **Bestilleon**, or **Bastil**, like roofed. Some term these **Barbicans**, which are out Nooks in Walls or Towers; which serve for diverse uses, as to shoot out at an enimy. Some take it for a **Sentinal house**, or **Scout house**. Sir *Gefforey Chaucer* useth the word **Barbican**, for a Watch Tower, of the *Saxon* Ber-ic-ken (*i*) I ken or see the Borough. Some Towers have these kind of out lets for **houses of easement**, and so I have seen them in several Castles and Forts. Some term them **Parapets** which are a kind of Jetting out walls, breast high to defend from the enimies shot.

B. on a Hill in base V. such a Tower with Barbicans, A. is born by *Van Cassell* of *Bavaria*.

G. on a Hill. O. the like A. is born by *Harstorfer*.

The third is termed a **Tower** (*sans port*) with a plain **Battlement**, and three **Spires**. As other Towers are blazoned treble Towered; so this may be termed **Triple Spired** with **Balls** or **globes** on the points, and such I find born for the coat and crest of *Van Eych holtz*. viz: O. the same G.

A. on a mount, V. the like G. triple Spired B. balls O by the name of *Triemish*.

XC. In this square is set down two sorts of **Dove-houses**, which are found born in coats of Arms. The first is termed, an **House**, or **Cote** set upon a **square Pillar**. In the perticulars blazon it thus: Azure, on a **Tomb** or **Grave stone**, a **Square pillar**, whereon is fixed a **Cote**, **Barne**, or **Dove house**, Argent. born by the name of *Romray*. This is an excellent way to secure Pigeons or Pultrey from destructive Vermine, being no way able to get into the same. Such a Building as this, a larg Barne of severall Bayes is set up neere the Citty of *Chester* upon stone pillars, into which neither Rott or Mouse can gett; and though they may be brought in with the Shaves out of the fields, yet they must out for water, and being out there is no returning againe to that quarters.

B. the like O. between 2 Escocheons each parted per fesse G. & O. is the Town Arms of *Butzbach* in the Empire of *Germanie*.

The Second is a **Dove house** of foure **Cants**, or **Cornerd Bayes**, with a **Lower** on the Roofe. Such a Dove house Gules, Covered with Slates Azure; in a field Argent. Is born by the name of *Cullomus* an *Italian*. This may likewise be termed, a **Gentlemans house**, or an **Hall**; a **Mansion**, or **Mannor house** built in form of a Cross, with a **Lanthorne** in the middle of the Roofe.

A. 3 such G. is born by *Mannours*.

XCI. He beareth per Fess **Air** and a **Ground Flow** laid with **square Tile counterposed**, Argent and Sable; a **round Tower Arched**, between four others **Spired**, two and two joined together with a **Wall Battelled**, Gules. Another way of Blazoning this Coat is thus, five **Towers covered**, in **Prospect**, the two dexter and the same Sinister **conjoined** by a **Wall Battelled**; the **Ground Chequered** according to Art, *&c.* This is born by the name of *Foresight*.

B. the like A. the ground A. and S. on an Escochion of pretence B. a Lion rampant O. is the Towns coat of *Hirsch-felt* in the *Low Countreys*.

XCII. He beareth Azure, out of the **Base**, a **Tower Towered** and **Arched**, with a **Pinnacle**; from each side runs a **Bevile Wall Battelled**, to the extent of the Field, which incloseth four other **Turrets** or **small Towers**, two on the dexter side, one **Spired**, the other **round** (or **Cap**) **Roofed**, the like on the Sinister, all Gules. This with a *Saxon* A. in Base of the second, is the Town Arms of *Allendorf* in *Germany*.

B. the like Towers and Wall A. is the Town or State Arms of *Franckenburg*.

B. a Wall with an Arch and Cross Patee on the top, the sides extending throughout the Field Bevile, enclosing two Towers A. is the Town Arms of *Gudensperg*.

O. out of Base, a Wall the sides to the extent of the Field, each a Port or **Sally Port**, enclosing of a square Tower, between two round ones, Arched A. is the Town Arms of *Witzenhausen*.

B. the like Wall out of the Base, with a Tower between 2 Turrets, all Spired A. in the Gate an Escochion O. charged with a Lion rampant, is the Town Arms of *Liebenaw*.

XCIII. He

XCVIII. He beareth Gules, a **Wall extending** it self from Base to the Fesse throughout the Field, **Arched marched**, whereon is raised a **Tower Battelled**, with a part of **Arched Roofs**, between two other **Turrets** of the same. This is born by the name of *Bringmore*. This is the old way of Blazoning it; but I should rather say thus, a **Wall extended in Fess Archee enarched**, on the top a Tower, &c.

G. on a Wall extended into the Fesse, 3 Towers roofed; in Base, in an Arch A. our Lady with the Babe in her Arms, crowned, her hair **flotant**, all proper; is the Coat Armour of the Town of *Trendelberg*. This is supposed to be but an Arch in the Wall, not through the Wall, in which the Effigies of the Virgin *Mary* and the Babe are placed; as is and might lately have been seen, in many Churches where such Images have been set up.

XCIV. He beareth Argent, a **Castle Wall** with a **Port**, the sides **Bevile**, to the extent of the field; **Introding a Tower Battelled**, and **Ridg Roofed**, between two small **Turrets**, with **Spires Eaved**, (or having Sheals, or Easing) This is born by the name of *Van Wolik*.

Per Cheveron B. and G. a **Castle Wall Archee** with square **Redoubts** before a Tower between two **Turrets** with Spires, A. in Base a Lion Rampant O. is the Town Arms of *Bidencapp*.

XCV. He beareth Azure, a **Wall Battelled** with an open **Port** and **Portcullis pendant, conjoined** to 2 **Towers**, each **Towered** and **Arch Roofed**, Argent. This kind of Castle with a Mullet of six points in chief, and a *Saxon* ꝯ in Base, is the Town Arms of *Monsterberg*.

B. a like Wall fortified with two Towers, the Battlements Spired A. in chief an Eagle displaid O. is the Town of *Teschens* Arms.

Some term this a **Castle** with the **Towers Turretted**. See more *numb* 5.

XCVI. He beareth Argent, three **Towers conjoined**, the **middle Towered**, the **Battlement Spired**; the other with **Square Turrets Eave Roofed**, G. This is born by the name of *Tresort*.

B. a Tower between 2 square ones, each the Ports or Gates shut, and Towered with Spires A. two Escochions between the Turrets of the second, one charged with 2 Cheverons the other with a Cross. This is the Arms of the Town of *Umbstat*.

Some Blazon this a **Tower** with the **Gate shut**, with a **Wall** on each side, having **Battlements** and **Galley Ports**, standing before three **Watch Towers Spired**.

XCVII. He beareth Gules, an **Arch** with a **Pedement Cap** or **Head**, conjoined to two **Towers double Battlemented**, and **Spire Roofs**, Argent. This is the Coat and Crest of *Ravenspurger* of *Austria*. This is also Blazoned, two Towers joined by a Pedement or pointed Arch.

XCVIII. He beareth Vert, a **Triumphant Arch** of diverse **Gradual heights of Towers**, with **an open passage** through the same, Or. Born by *Triumphe*. Such a Triumphal Arch was Consecrated to *Jupiter* in honour of the Emperour *Trajanus*, and was erected by the publick Decree of the *Roman* Senate, as the Coins of those times do make manifest. See *Jo. Hemelarius* his Table 17.

XCIX. This is another kind of **Triumphant Arch**, set up by the Emperor *Claudius Cæsar*, in memory of his Conquest of *Britain*, as the foresaid Author hath set it forth in his 6 Table; with many more of the like nature, which you may see if you peruse his 3, 4, 5, 6, *&c*: Tables.

These kind of Triumphant Arches are much in request by our *English* Nation at the Coronation of their Kings, as those yet fresh in Memory, set up at King *James* the First, and King *Charles* the First and Second of Happy Memory, when they rode in Triumph through the City of *London*, the day before their Coronation.

C. He beareth Argent, an **Hermathena**, Or. This is a kind of Statue consisting of two sorts of Figures, the upper part representing a Man to the middle, and the lower part either a Collumn or a Pillar; and sometimes the Figures of two persons joined together one looking one way, the other another way; as the Image of *Minerva* and *Mercury* joined together. So **Hermheracles** is the Statue of *Mercury* with the head of *Hercules*. And **Hermaphroditus**, the Body of a young Man and a Nymph joined together: These kind of Figures are much used in the Coins of the antient *Roman* Emperors, as an Emblem of an excellent Union, as to Affection, Interest and good Understanding, as well for the management and Conduct of Civil Affairs, as Military. see *numb*. 34.

C *a*. In the sinister side of this square, are the form and fashions of the *Roman* Trophies of their Victories, which are the Arms, Ensigns, and other Hostile Weapons set upon high Poles, or hung on the Bodies of Trees in Memory of a Victory obtained against a Potent Enemy in that place where they are set up; and not only in the place, but also on their Moneys and Medals such Trophies of Victory were generally Engraven, in Memory of such and such a Victory, over such and such Kingdoms, in this or that Emperors time, as you may see in *Hemelarius* Tables 16, 28, 47, 51, 56, *&c*.

C. * He beareth Gules, a **Pulpit** with its **Cover**, Or. This is born by the name of *Godspell*. The like I find born by the name of *Vockmen*, *viz*. A. 2 Roses and a Pulpit covered, out of Base, G. It is also born by that name sans **Cover**.

CI. He beareth Vert; The Emperor **Trajans Column**, Argent, Beautified and adorned with variety of **Figures** and **Mouldings**, Or. This I call his Column, because it was erected and set up in memory of him, in this Order as is set forth, having his Statue on the top of it, and 4 Eagles about the base of it. See *Hemelarius* Tables 17. 25. 51, where diverse sorts of Columns and Pillars are erected in memory of diverse Emperours,

perors, and also stamped upon their Coin and Medals. see *numb* 32.

CII. He beareth Sable, in chief a **Thunderbolt** proper, in base the top of a **Brittish flask**, and a **Portcullis reversed**. Or. born by the name of *Tandon*; although these be here born as one entire Coat, yet being taken asunder they are distinct bearings: as

First, the **Thunderbolt** after this form was born by *Marcus Antonius* the *Roman* Emperor, and was stamped upon his Coin, signifying thereby the undertaking of the War against the *Parthians*; that he would in that expedition make a thundering and dismal destruction of them, for their miscarriage against the *Romans*: Some Authors call this kind of Thunderbolt, a **Cutarcom**.

The second is the top or head of a **Brittish Flask**, or **Power Flask**, this being the part by which the Charge of the Gun is tightly made; the whole Flask you may see *chap* 18. *numb*. 60. Some term them the head of a **Charging Flask**.

S. 3. such A. is born by the name of *Flaskendorf*.

The third is called a **Portcullis reversed**, with a **round top**: others term it the head of a Dart Spear such as they strike great Fish withal; and the same I find born by one *Roger de Acton*, that lived in King *Henry* the Eighth's days; being A. in a Field G.

CIII. He beareth Gules, a **Candle-stick** of **three Branches**, Or, in each **Socket** a **Penoncell** Argent. born by the name of *Crager*.

Per fesse G. and B. the like, O each Socket having a penon double pointed, B. and A. is born by *Van Krage*.

CIV. He beareth G. a **Portcullis armed**, with one **Ring** in the **Top bar**, Argent. This is born by *Hessen* 2. *Wipdorf* of *Hassia* in *Germany*, and G. the like O. is quartered by *Schelen* of *Westphalia*.

This may be termed a **single Portcullas**, because it is drawn up and let down by one **Ring**; whereas the great Portcullas is double ringed, and is drawn up by several persons; some call it a **Sally port Portcullas**, see *numb*. 17.

4. HAving now given you as large an account of the works of **Masonry**, with the several sorts of such bearing, as I have found in Arms. It now remains, that in the remaining part of this Plate, I give you some Examples of bearing, which indeed cannot properly be mustered under any certain Head; having neither Head nor Tail, but things of a confused confusion; many whereof I must plead Ignorant in, not knowing properly what term to give them, having only seen them in *French*, *Dutch*, *German*, *Poland*, *Spanish*, and *Italian* Coats, with the bearers names, but no otherwise. Therefore I must term them Heteroclites, or Extravagant things, that are under no rule, or order; but are rules to themselves.

CV. The first bearing in this quarter, is termed an **Old fashion Trepan**, as I take it to be a Chirurgions Instrument. See *chap*. 11. *numb*. 47. and this *chap*. *numb*. 122.

G. the like A. is born by *Van Buchten*, and *Van Lassota*; the like with the half round shanks, each side towards the top Nowy, is born by *Sedlnitzky*.

A. the like in bend, the dart end erect, S. is born by *Zircken-dorfer* of *Bavaria*.

The second is called a **Pearch**; but the Latines name it *Sella Curulis*, which the *Italians* take to be the Ivory Chair, so often expressed in the *Roman* Medals and Coined peices. See *chap*. 20. *numb*. 50.

B. the like A. born by *Valdaro* a *Spaniard*.

G. the like, O. on the top two Popinjaes, or Parrots respectant, V. Collered, O. born by *Van Vttersharsen* of *Alsatia*.

The third is termed a **Foulding stool**, or **Seat** to set in. This may also be termed another of the *Roman* Ivory Chairs, which is oft found stamped on the *Roman* Medals of old.

A. the like, B is born by *Ziany*.

A. 3 such, G. is born by *Monsort*, of the *Nether-Rhine*.

CVI. The first mentioned in this quarter is blazoned, two Heel Spurs endorsed, and conjoyned by the two Necks. Some call this a double **Trampet**.

A. the like, S. is born by *Eckenbrecht* of *Switzerland*.

B. the like, O. is born by *Vasany* an *Italian*.

The second I can term nothing nearer to it, then the **Shanks** of two **Spurs conjoyned** in one **Neck**: or two Spur Shanks, or Heel parts **endorsed** and ioyned in the Neck.

A. the like, S. born by *Alcalk*.

O. the like transposed in fesse. S. is born by *Van Hatzfeldt*.

The third is two **Spur shanks**, **conjoyned** at the Heel parts: or the **Shanks**, or Heel parts of two **Spurs endorsed** and **conjoyned**. Some term them **Horse-shoes** conjoyned in the fore parts; and some calls **Tramp**, or **Iron Tramp**.

A. the like. S. is born by *Van Durckheim* of *Rainford*.

Two **Cressants endorsed and conjoyned**. O. is the Crest of *Godemischen* of *Brunswick*.

The fourth is stiled a **Tramp Iron**, in form of a Circle, the **ends contrary bent** and **double barbed**.

A. the like S. is born by *Van Lohe*, in the *Palatine* of *Rhine*.

CVII. In this square on the dexter side, is first that which is called an **Iron Tramp**, in form of an **Horse-shoe**; some term it a **Semi-Circle**, the **ends reverted**, or turned back again to the like Figure, and pointed

A. Such

A. Such 2 like. S. is born by *Turner*.
S. the like reversed. A. is born by *Pressich*.
G. the like reversed with a Cross pattee, fitched between the ends. A. is born by *Lestwitz*.

The second is termed, with the same Denomination, a **Semi-circle**, the **ends turne** again, and **rebated**; and after some **2 Semi-circle reversed**, the **ends reverted** and **rebated**.
A. the like. S. is born by *Vitzer*.
G. the like with a Cross pattee fitched in the same. A. is born by *Van Wandritsch*.

The third is called a **Cramp**, in form of a **Serpents tail**, the **Sting erected**, the contrary end **round** and **peirced**.
B. the like A. is born by *Tratz* of *Bavaria*.
A. 3 such. S. is born by *Tratells*.

CVIII. In this Square are three other sorts of bearings; the first is called a **Cramp Iron**, the one end **rounded** and **peirced**.
A. the like. S. is born by *Kreisilly* of *Italy*.

The second is termed a **Round envecked and peirced**, it hath the shape of an **Annulate envecked** on the out side, with a **Lace** or **Rubine** proceeding from the inner side both ways after the manner of a Roman Q.
B. 3. such. O. is born by *Poliny* of *Italy*.

The third is Blazoned a **Roman I. double Nowy** on the sides, fixt on an **Annulate envecked**.
A. the like. B. is born by *Aveck Degarling* an *Almaine*.
G. 3 such. O. is born by *Dorgam* of *Rome*.

CIX. In this quarter are three other bearing, which when I know how better to term you shall have it, in the main time rest satisfied, that the first is called a **Candle Socket**, or a **loose Socket**, for a **Candle-stick**, or else the wide end of a **Recorder** or **Hobby**.
Three such in point. A. with tufts of Grass out of them, is the Crest of *Van Kain* of *Meysnich*.

The second is called a **Chive**, from the name of the bearer, it is a thing representing a Garlick head, and the body part downwards increaseth thicker to the end which is triparted. Some term it a **Chive**, the **head erected**, or a **Garlick head**, the **Leaves Reversed**.
A. 3 such in Fesse. V. is born by the name of *Chaves*.
O. one such, G. with the tuft. V. born by *Cleffs*.
G. 2 such in Salter. A. born by *Schilling*.

The third is by the *French* Heraulds blazoned a **Crequier**, or a **Cerisier Nain**: the same we may in *English* render a **Rattle** or a Childs toy to play with, or according to the latter, it is a **Dwarfe Cherry tree**: But how like it is to either, I leave to the Reader to judge. I shall rather take it for an **Apple roaster**, being made of an Hay-thorn branch or Iron, with so many hooks, or forked ends, to stick into Apples and so to hang them before the fire to Roast.
O. the like. G. is born by *Crequi* Earl of *Bermieule* in *France*. The Marquess *de Crequi* in *France*, doth bear the same Coat, save that it hath a Root proceeding from the middle of the bottom between the two stems, which makes it look there like a Cherry tree.

CX. The first in this quarter I find by some to be named a **pale Gringolee**: but then the pale should be plain; therefore I hold it best termed, a **Staff, Pillar**, or **Pale**, the ends **cornished**, and **adorned** with two Wolves heads endorsed. B. the like in bend. A. is born by *Hanseller*. B. the like in bend sinister. O. is born by *Reffa*, both in the Nether Palatinate of *Rhine*.
Bellinghusen beareth a like Coat, *viz.* A. a Staff in bend **cornished**, in the middle and both ends (of some termed **Pomettee**) Moline. G. others call it a bend **Cottony Moline**; but if we will go to the pure terms, according to a workman in these things: then say a Staff double (or treble or more) adorned with an **Astrical**, or more properly a **Collarino**) which is a round swelling out, with one or two fillets on each side it.
B. 2. Staves in Salter, adorned with Collarino's, the tops floury. A. born by *Ramstein*.

The second is a bearing of the same nature, being a **Collarino mollined**: but our modern Heralds according to their Art, term it, a **Pomette Sarcelled**. It hath the resemblance of the out leaves of the Flower de luce, yet the head and bottom of both is wanting, which is a defect, else it were best blazoned, a **Collarino flurt**, nevertheless it is by some presumed to be a Flower de lis, Sans Crown or middle leaf, and stalk; or a Flower de lis defective, or wanting in her head and foot.
Per fesse. S. and A. the like counter-changed; is quartered by *Van Kienburg* of *Carinthia*, and *Bavaria*.
A. the like G. born by *Van Hoyte* of *Westphalia*.

CXI. Three things are here also presented to the view; the first is a **Staff treble barbed** and **Pometty** on the top. *Weiler* of *Frankford*, beareth for his Crest out of 2 Caps reversed and turned up. G. six such staves barbed and pomelled. V.
4. Such A. between 2 Peacocks tails, is a Crest belonging to the great Duke of *Pommerna*.

The second is two **Rams Horns conjoyned** in one at the **Scalpe**, whose bottom is **flourt**: and are generally blazoned, two Rams, or **Bonicons hornes endorsed conjoyned** and **flurt**, in the bottom.
A. the like. S. is born by *Lirheim*.

The third is called a **Chest Rook**, with a Cypress sprig in the hollow of it; some term it a **German Rook**.
The like, A. with a Grass tuft from the middle of it: is the Crest of *Zwicken* of *Bavaria*.

CXII. In this square are three other like sorts of bearings, which are of strange names, and unheard of terms. the first is like the **Proboscides**. **Trunkes**, or **Snouts** of Elephants, **reflected**, **endorsed** and **conjoyned**, fixed upon a **Foot** of a **Cup**: Others will have these to be **Cunnets Horns** conjoyned in one at the wide ends, bowed in the form of a Cresslant, then

then contrary reflected; take them for which you will, Snouts or Horns, thus delineated, is born by *Rousillum* a *Polander*, *viz.* A the same, S. Foot, O.

B. 2 Ox Horns, the points or tip ends rebated, fixed on a square foot. O. is born by the Earl of *Thorland*.

S. the like O. with a Rectors Staff between them A. is born by *Preissbuch* of *Auspurge*.

The second is blazoned the **Fellow** of a **Cart wheel** having one **Spoke** Argent; on the end of it an *Escochion*, Azure; on the top of it a **Grass tuft**. This is the Crest of *Eglingen* of *Bavaria*. The points at the ends of the Fellow, are to pin, or hold fast the Fellows together, which are in the Wheel rim, or whole compass of the Wheel.

The third is termed a **Shield**, in form of a **Cressant**, with the **handle fretted** into two Annulates: And this I take to be such a thing, because the like is named to me by our English Heraulds, as you may see *chap.* 17. *numb.* 41, 42, 43, 44.

The like A. is the Crest of *Brackot* a *Salitian*.

G. three such Argent, is born *Shielder*.

CXIII. The first in this square is termed by the *French* a **Roch** or **Rock**, if for the **Chest board**; then it is not to be moline at both ends, but rather to call it a **Staff Moline** or **Sarcelled**, **Pometty** in the middle; yet in regard of the bearers name, and worth, which was *Robert Rochester* Knight of the noble Order of the Garter, in *Henry* the Eight's Raign: I shall let it go with the *French* term, viz. Argent, 3 such *Roch's* Sable. See such a like bearing, I have mentioned before, *numb.* 110

The second is termed a **Cooks Golding-Iron**, it is made of Brass or Iron, by which they Cut and Carve their Past, for to adorn their Pyes and Pasties, with variaty of Leaves and Flowers.

G. 2 such in Salter, A. is born by *Gollnitz*, a *Dutch* Family.

The third I take to be a **double Hook Iron**, or an **Iron** with a Hook at each end **contrary bowed**; such as these are oft made use of to hang things on, and so to hang the opposite Hook on Pins, or in Stables.

Per pale, A. and S. two such endorsed, or top Hooks contrary reflected, counterchanged, is born by *Guthen Van Sultz*.

A. 3 such, S. born by the name of *Hockall*.

CXIV. He beareth Gules, a **Raft or Float removed**, (or taken out of its right place) Or, this is the *French* Blazoning of it; and is born by the name of *Bretvill* of *Normandy*.

CXV. In this quarter are four bearings, resembling yet not like one another. The first is termed a **Muersteen**, that is a **Wall Stone**, for so the *Dutch* name it.

A. 3 such in pale, G. is born by *Brickley*.

The second is a **Wil-Iron**, **een Wolen-yser**, as the *Dutch* term it, which we term the **Millrind**, or **Ink** of a **Mill**; which they use after this form.

G. the like Fesse-ways, A. born by *Eysenreich* of *Bavaria*, also by *Muleysen* of *Auspurgeay*.

G. 2 such erected, A. is born by *Letscher* of *Brunswick*.

The third is a **square Tile**, **perforated**, or thrust through the middle with a **Brick Ax**.

A. the like, G. is born by *Stemple*, or *Stumpel* of *Westphalia*.

A. 3 such, G. born by *Stempellin*.

The fourth is called a **Turners Mandril**, made after the old fashion; what it is, and for what use, I shall refer you to the Turners working Tools, *chap.* 8. *numb.* 150, 151.

A. 3 such, G. is born by *Van Haren* of *Westphalia*.

CXVI. Here are in this Square, four several sorts of bearings in Arms: The first is termed a **Nail** the **point rebated**, others the top of a **Spear head**.

The like quarterly, B. and A. is the Crest of *Van Etzdorf*. Per bend S. and A. 6. such of the first, born by *Spiznasen*.

G. 3 such between 2 bendlets, A. born by *Zwickel* of *Stenrick*.

The second is Blazoned a **Staff** in pale **Pomette** and the **top Pomel**.

G. 3 such, O. is born by *Mire*.

The third is called a **Pale Nowy couped**; and such is born by the name of *Nowel*, viz. A. the like S.

The fourth is a **Pale couped nowy-pierced**, ends **Patee**.

O. 3 such, G. is born by *Cullenburg*, a Count in *Germany*.

B. one such, O. is born by *Van Nowpersdorf*.

CVII. Here are also five sorts of bearings in this square which are as the Proverb saith of *Gib's* Children of *Leen*, none like an other; yet all makes Coats of Arms of like Honor.

The first may be termed a **Fesse couped** with one **Battlement** on the top. But in the Coat of *Newkirchen* of the *Lower Rhine*, it is best termed a **Crow-stone**, or **Mould board**, who beareth Argent, a Fesse Sable, in the sinister chief the like, G.

A. 3 such, G. is born by *Crowstein*.

The second is Blazoned a **Triangel voided** each **comer Bottony**. *Van Vlersdorf* beareth Azure, the like Argent.

B. 3 such, O. is born by *Bistrigle*, some bear the corners **Pometty floury**.

The third is by the *French* blazoned, a **Trespan**. I suppose it is ment for that Chirurgions Instrument called a **Trepan** mentioned, in *chap.* 11. *numb.* 48. See *numb.* 122.

O. the like, S. is quartered by *Michael Asinar de Virle*, and

and *de Orbassa*, a Noble Seignior or Lord in *France*.

The fourth is an **old British A.** or a **Tressel on** two Feet, Argent; the like Sable, is quartered by the Earl of *Awersberg* in *Germany*.

The Fifth is taken to be an **Old British R.** and three such (I once saw, and took notice of the same, entering it in my Book) Sable; in a Field Argent; impaled with Azure, a Bend cotized between 6 Crosses Patee Or. but whose Coat it is, I have not yet found out.

CXVIII. Those in the beginning of this number, I take to be old Alphabet Letters, such as now are worn out of use, yet not of Memory. The first is an **Old Saxon F**; and is born in Arms, for the Bishoprick of *Chamin* in the Province of *Saxony*. Viz. Azure, the like F Or.

The second I take to be a **Roman V reversed,** (or a Greek Lamda) the sinister side **crossed patee,** and such a Bearing Argent, in a Field, Gules; belongs to *Gastinare*, a *French* Family.

A. the like B. is born by *Van Mayrhofen* of *Bavaria*.

The third is termed, an Instrument angled in form of a U, the **dexter end quarter pierced,** the other with a **Spur Rowel** of diverse points. The like A. is the Crest of *Van Obisch* of *Alsatia*.

G. on a Mount with 3 heads, or tops, out of Base O. a like neck of a Spur erected with a Rowel of diverse points A. is the Coat and Crest of *Radlek'ofer* of *Bavaria*.

CXIX. The first thing in this quarter, is thus Blazoned, out of a **Lamp,** Barry of six A. and G. 3 **Grass Tufts,** in a **Crown,** O. which is the Crest of *Quernfort* of *Bavaria*. Some term this a **Log of Wood** out of a Crown, with 3 Tufts of Grass growing thereon.

Van Logaw of *Alsatia*, hath for his Crest the like, Paly Bendy B. and A. on the top a Tuft between 2 Roundlets the one G. the other A.

The like Lamp Chequy G. and A. the sides adorned with 4 Feathers S. is the Crest of *Liebdaler*.

Out of a Coronet, one **Lamp within another** Losengy O. and G. is the Crest of *Sanhebe de Dabrigecourt*, one of the Knights of the Garter, about the first institution thereof.

The second is an **Infula** or **Copped Cap,** Gules, with a **Button** on each side, and top, **Tasselled** or **Tufted,** Or. **Issuant** out of the bottom thereof a **demy plate.** This is the Crest of *Mountall* or *Mountball*, an *Italian* Family.

The third is termed a **Dutch** or a **Triangle Coulter, Bottony,** (or at each corner Bottony, as some term it) or a **Coulter,** the point **reversed Bottony.**

G. the like A. is born by *Haydenreich* of *Bavaria*.

CXX. In this square are three bearings of near resemblance, yet of different terms. For the first is by the *Dutch* Blazoned a **Kramberg**; that is in English a **Crooked Hill** or **Mountain.** The *French* term it a **Chaperon Shapournet,** which is a Hood with a little Hood upon it, or a Hood with a Turn-up. Of these I have spoken elsewhere, *lib.* 1. *chap.* 9. *numb.* 115. but these being different to those, give me leave to tell my Judgment what I take these to be, and that by reason of their edgings with another Metal, or colour; which make them no other than **Hills over-cast** with **Dew, Gold Dye,** or some other **Metal** or **Mineral,** according to its colour; being cast up upon the top or surface by **Miners** and **Pioneers,** and that they are no other the example following will further manifest.

B. 3 such surmounting one another in Pale G. edged, (or topped, or turned up) O. born by *Drieberghen*; that is in English Three Mounts, or Hills.

The second is a **Mountain,** or **Mount Trebble mounted,** or a **Hill** of **three ascents**; and that it is so, may in some patt appear from the names which own such bearings, as

A. the like S. is born by *Schwartzberg*, that is *Black-hill* in English.

O. the like S. is quartered by the Earl or Count of *Freundsberg* in *Germany*. *Freunds-Berg* is a Friends-Hill, or Hills joined in Friendship.

A. the like V. is born by *Van Auffstehenberg* in *Bavaria*; which name also signifieth an high rising Hill, or an ascending Hill; a **Hill upon a Hill.**

G. 10 **Mounts gradually surmounting** each other 4, 3, 2, 1, A. which is born by *Friesenberg*. See *lib.* 1. *chap.* 9. *numb.* 85.

The third is termed by the *Dutch* also, a **Mole-hill on an Hill,** or a **Cop-Hill,** and are made of any Colour or Metal. See *lib.* 1. *chap.* 9. *numb.* 84. 116. where the *French* term it a **Shapournet Crested.**

A the like V. on each a stream or Flame of Fire, born by *Prennberg* of *Bavaria*.

A. on a Bend Sinister G. 3 such Hills copped O. is born by *Van Hovelt*, which may be taken for a little Hill being derived from *Hugel*.

A. the like B. born of *Brincken* of *Westphalia*. And G. is born by the Count *Liebeistein* in *Germany*.

A. the like out of Base S. born by *Ajcham*.

A. a Cop Hill surmounted of the like G. born by *Mayr Van Wasenneck*.

Sometimes the 3 rounds are **severed,** having (as it were) a round Vally between them, which makes it shew like a **Coronet** with 3 Pearls, yet it is no other than a **Hill** or **Mount,** with three **Cops,** or with 3 **Mole Hills** on the top. And such is born by *Hornberg*, Count *Horberg*, and other *German* Families. Viz. Or 2 Hunters Horns, the Mouths fixed on such an Hill, the wide ends counterposed, Sable.

CXXI. In this square are, first **three Grieces** or **Steps,** where a place may be mounted or ascended to: Some term them Stairs, each diminished, one less than another from the Foundation; and that they must needs do being circular ascents.

G. the like A. is the Coat and Crest of *Steinach* in *Swabish*.

B. 3 such O. is born by *Grisshall.*

The second is termed a **Crumpett**; It is a thing on the out-side, much after the form of an Heart, but hollow within, so that it appeareth like 2 Horns conjoined.

A. 3 such G. is quartered by the Duke of *Luxenburg.* And also by the Duke of *Saxony*; which Coat I find doth belong to the name of *Bremen* of *Bavaria.*

Sometimes the points on the top are made by the *Dutch* so close, that by their touching, they represent an **Heart**, and as it were charged with a **Trefoil Leaf reversed.** And so it is born in the same colours as aforesaid, by *Van Seebach* of *Tyrold*; as if the closing were a sufficient distinction (as it is) for the Coats.

The third is a **Fess couped**, with one **Battlement** on the middle of the top, from each side proceeds a **Rod** with a **square Fane** endorsed. Some take these to be the **Minutes** or **Stops**, to the **Ballance Wheel** of a Watch or Clock.

A. the like O. is born by *Alnekhoven* of *Bavaria.*

B. two such Minute Stops or Fans in Salter, and a Rose in chief, is born by *Van Rungen* of *Misnian* in *Germany.*

CXXII. In this square are several sorts of **Triangles**, yet none like his fellow. The first is termed a **Quadriant**, the **Angle Curvi-Linear**, or having crooked Lines bending inwards.

A. a Fess Dauncett S. between 3 such G. is born by *Dollinger* of the *Rhine Palatinate.*

A. 3 such S. is born by *Gomer.*

The second is a **Triangle**, which being born in Arms, hath ever a **point** or **Angle Erect**; as Gules three such Or; is born by *Hosen*

The like G. charged with the **Boss** of a **Curb Bit**, O. is the Crest of *Hofenhusen* of *Brunswick.*

The third, is an **old fashioned Trepan**, an Instrument belonging to Chyrurgery. Of these there hath of antient time been several sorts and ways of making them, but now they are out of use; only kept in memory by their use in Arms: As Azure, the like, Or, is born as the coat and crest of *Van Dlubomil*, of *Saxony.* See *numb.* 105.

The fourth is another fashioned **Trepan**, two ends thereof being **adorned with Roses.** And such a like, with the piercing part erected, I find born by *Meleschker van Tschelo*, of *Silitiars*, Viz. Azure, a Trepan the point erected Argent, the Roses Gules. See *chap.* 12. *numb.* 6.

CXXIII. The first thing in this Quarter is termed the **Inside Main Posts**, or Stays of a **Wind-Mill**; or if it so like you, Blazon it a **Crouch Staff** out of Base, twice **crossed**, with **Roses** on the ends, the middle **fretted** with a **Triangle voided**, the Base **supported** with 2 **Stays** or **Laces.** This I have seen born in an Escochion, *viz.* Azure, the like Or, Roses Argent; but it had no name set to it.

The second is the figure or shape of a **Crouch** or **long Cross**, or **Potence**, the bottom thereof converted into **foldage**, or turned Leaves: Or as some term it a **Crouch Staff** with a **Vine Leaf** at the end of it, Argent; such a Potence Leafed, Gules; is born by *Crook foile.*

The third is a **Pillar**, in the middle whereof is the **Roof** of an **House**, **Tiled Escallop-wise**, (or with Scallop work) and a **Tuft of Grass** on the **Capital.** The like to this is the Crest of *Ziegler* of *Carinthia.* Viz. the Pillar A. Roof G. Tuft V.

The fourth is termed a **Rammer**, or an Instrument to **Drive Piles** into the Ground. Thus the *Dutch* make them, but the *French* draw them with streight bottoms.

A. the like G. is the coat of *Van Ramyn* of *Saxony*, his Crest being likewise two such endorsed, or contrary Bowed.

A. the **Rammer** part G. the **pins** or **handles**, O. is born by *Van Bredaw* in *Brandenburg.*

CXXIV. The first in this square is thus Blazoned. He beareth Azure, a **Pillar triparted** in the **Basis**, Argent, the **Capital**, Or; with a **Tuft of Grass** growing thereon, is the coat of *Pilsche.*

B. 3 such A. Tufts O. is born by *Bascoe.*

The like A. Capital O. Tuft V. is the Crest of *Van Draschvitz* of *Mentz* in *Germany.*

The second is termed a **Tankerd** or **Milk Tankard**, charged with 2 Piles.

The like O. charged with 2 Piles B. between as many Beavers Tails erected, of the second; is the Crest of *Symon de Beverley*, a Knight of the Garter in the time of King *Richard* the second.

The third is termed a **Chest Bishop.** This is one of those kind of Rooks or Chest men called a **Bishop**; having a kind of **Miter** on his head: This could I have told, what it had been before it was Engraven in this Plate, it should have been set amongst its Fellows, in *chap.* 16. *numb.* 31. But the Collar of the Order of the Golden Fleece in *France*, hath it composed of such things and a Fire Stone or Flint Stone; but they call them a **Ferris** or **Fire Steel**, having no ring about the bottom and top part. See *numb.* 128.

B. the like O. is born by *Schurfe* of *Tyrold*, whose Crest is the same out of a Coronet, with a Plume of Feathers on the point S.

Per pale A. and B. the like **Ferris** or **Fire Steel** counterchanged. Born by *Bogner* of *Alsatia.*

G. the same in Bend A. is born by *Schurffeysen* of *Bavaria.* The like in Bend is his Crest.

CXXV. He beareth Argent, an **Octagon**, (or an eight square) each point **Pomettee**, Azure; charged with a **Cross Patee**, Or. Born by the name of *Flanken.* Some say an **Octagon Pomelled.**

CXXVI. The first in this square, from the name who beareth it, I take it to be an **Horsemans Flask**, or Powder

Powder Box, wherewith Troopers charge both their Pistols and Carbines. Some have them with Feet, some without; others with 2 Loops on the sides, and others but with one, which is to hang them by their sides. See of these sorts of Flasks after the *English* mode, *chap.* 18. *numb.* 60.

A. the like Flask, or round Flask G. is both the Coat and Crest of *Flaschen* of *Brunswick*; which name in the *Low Dutch* Language signifieth a **Flask** or **Bottle-maker.**

The second is termed an **Octagon curvi-linear**, (or an eight square, the lines bending inwards) **Voided**, over it a **Cross**, having at each end an **Ostrich Feather.** This is the Crest of *Van Ostter.* Viz. the Square and Cross, Or; the Feathers Argent.

On a Cap of Dignity, the like square **A.** with the Cross quarterly crossed G. the Feathers of a Peacock, proper, is the Crest belonging to the Archbishoprick of *Triers* in *Germany.*

The third is termed a **Five Square**, the two higher **invecked.** Some will term it a **Miter in full Aspect** or sight, the sides Invecked. Some are charged with Crosses, Fesses, Cheverons, Roses, Branches, *&c.*

S. the like A. charged with a Cheveron O. is quartered by the Count or Earl of *Madruz* in the Empire of *Germany.*

CXXVII. He beareth in this square, two sorts of things, the first is an **old fashioned Mitrour, Floy** on the top, and Handle Pomettee.

The second is Blazoned a **Caldron reversed**, with 2 **demy Annulets issuant.** Of this kind is the Coat belonging to *Seavaunce.* Viz. Azure three such Or.

S. one such O. Rings G. born by *Nottow.*

CXXVIII. He beareth a **Steel Ferris**, or **Fire Steel.** This is the true form of it, as is set forth by the *French* and *German* Heralds, of which I have spoken before in *numb.* 124.

In the Base is a **Cross pointed**, but generally termed a **Cross Urdee parted**, the **middle quartered.** Some of old have termed it **quartered** and **parted** Argent and Gules.

CXXIX. In this square is two bearings much alike. The first is a **Losenge** between **two demy ones, conjoined** in Pale. This is by most termed a **pale Losengy couped**, but then it should have more then one Losenge. Argent 3 such Azure, is born by *Gabell.*

The second is a **Losenge conjoined** to two **demy Mascles Fesswise.** And three such in Pale are born by *Muchmall.* Viz. B. 3 such O.

CXXX. In this square are four other manner of Bearings used in Coats Armour: The first is termed a **Clenser** or **Strainer**, a **Cullender.**

B. the like O. is born by *Schaler.*

G. 3 such A. is born by *Spangler* of *Alsatia.*

The second, which is that more near the chief, is named a **Goldsmiths Jigging Iron**, this is used by all Chasers of Plate. See *chap.* 20. *numb.* 121.

G. 2 such A. is born by *Kelderer zu Hoke* of *Bavaria.*

B. 3 such in Pale A. born by *Hohelleck.*

The third is Blazoned a Beazont and three Leaves conjoined in Triangle. Others say 3 Bay Leaves in Triangle fixed to a Beazont.

A. the like G. is quartered by the Count *Van der Recke* in the Empire of *Germany.*

A. 3 Olive Leaves in Triangle G. fixed to an Annulet O. is born by *Van Ronberg* of the *Rhine.*

The fourth is by the *French* termed an **Ancient Club** or **Mace**; but how to shape it to such a thing, I must leave it to others, for I cannot.

O. 2 such Maces in Salter G. is born by *Giles*, or *Gille* or *Gilon* a Senator of *Rome.*

CXXXI. The first and second Charges in this square, I take to be one and the same, only transmutation of place, which cannot alter its essence; yet in these positions, they are born in Arms, as to the first, I find *Van Bidenfield* of *Alsatia*, to bear Sable the like in Bend Sinister, Argent.

A. the like in Bend G. is born by *Emerckingen.*

A. the like in Bend Sinister S. is born by *Schenck van Wintersteten.*

O. the like in bend sinister, S. charged with 3 trefoils, A. is born by *Van Dersf zu Vitermunden* of *Hassia.*

A. the like rebated, or the points cut off, is born by *Van Tettenborn.*

The second, which I take to be its right position, or station, is born in Arms, by diverse Gentry; and is by such termed an old, or **Ancient Flegme**, or **Fleame**, or an Instrument used by Chirurgions, for the ripping of Teeth. See *chap.* 11. *numb.* 30.

S. the like, A. is born by *Van Sotern* of *Rhine.*

A. the like to the sinister, G. a bordure, B. is born by *Schemelgen* of *Schwabish.*

S. 3 such rebated (or points blunted, or cus off) A. is born by *Van Prabeck* of *Westphalia.*

The third is by the French termed an **Ancient M**, but in what Language my Author informs me not; but that *Avitus* Governor of *Gauls*, did bear Gules such an **Antique M**, Or.

CXXXII. He beareth Argent, out of the dexter base side, a **Pile flected** and **reflected** in form of a **Swans Neck, fretted** with a **pointed Nail**, proceeding from it self, Sable; is born by the name of *Bois.*

CXXXIII. He beareth Argent, two **Horns** of a **Bull**, with **Nails** or **pointed Pins** on the respecting Sable sides tips having **Balls tufted**, Or; born by *Manstein.* Some take them to be the two sides of a **Lobsters Claw issuing out of Base**, and that the more nearly resemble, then Bulls Horns.

The like, A. balls and tufts, B. is the Crest of *Brandenburger zu Ri et* of *Swabidia* in *Germany.*

The like out of a Coronet (sans Balls) A. is the Crest of *Van Teutleben* of *Tirold*.

Out of a Coronet the like dented on the inner sides, O. is the Crest of the great Prince of *Margger* and *Baden*, under the *Almaine* Empire.

CXXXIV. He beareth out of a **Coronet**, Or; an **Octagon** rectilineat (or **Curval**, or **Crooked lineo**) Argent edged or **bordered** Gules, set in the middle (or the **Center adorned** with a **Ruby**, between 4 **Diamonds**, the points (or each point) set off with a **Botton tufted**, Azure. This is the Crest of *Don Alphro* of *Arragon*.

These are born also six, eight, or ten square, with the points set with **Bobs, Tassels, Feathers, Slips**, or **Leaves** and **Flowers**, &c. And upon the flat parts are usually made some chief or principal part of the Bearing of his Arms, who hath it for his Crest, I shall give some few examples.

An Octagon Buttoned and Tufted G. charged with a Buckle A. This is the Crest with the Arms upon it, belonging to *Grasswein* in *Switzerland*.

An Octagon with Hawks Bells, charged G. on a chief A. 3 Ravens, is the Coat upon the Crest belonging to *Bugg van Stromburgg* of *Bavaria*.

An Octagon A. Flurry S. charged with a Lion rampant of the second, is the Crest of *Anerthall*.

An Hexagon pointed with Peacocks Feathers, per Pale O. and G. 3 Bends counterchanged, is the Crest with the Coat upon it belonging to *Korbler* of the *Switz* Family.

A Sexagon, or six square A. points with Bobs and Tassels O. charged with a Goat Saliant S. is the Crest of *Chur* of *Bavaria*.

3. WE shall now give some few examples of the bearing of Lines, Threads, or Laces, as they are cast into Turns, Frets, and Love Knots, of which kind of Coats Armour composed of such Devices, I have found these following.

CXXXV. He beareth Argent, three **True Lovers Knots** in **Triangle fired** to an **Annulet**, Sable. This is born by the name of *Truman*.

B. the like O. is born by *Zygner* of *Saltiars*.

B. the like O. one in chief, the other pendant in triangle: And for his Crest he hath 3 such Love Knots erected. Born by *Kerminsker* of *Switzerland*. Some term these 3 **Cordals** or Cords, cast or woven in True-Love Knots.

CXXXVI. The first thing presented in this quarter is thus Blazoned, He beareth Argent, two **Annulets**, Gules; **Fretted** with a **Lace** or **String quadrangular**, having a **Bow** (or round turn) at each corner, and the **ends Tasselled**, Azure. This is born by the name of *Knott*. Others say a **Rubin** in **Lozenge form** 3 **corners turned** into **Bows** or rounds; **interlacing** 2 **Annulets** in Fess, the **ends crossed extended** or **flotant**. Some call it a **True Lovers knot fretting** 2 **Rings** in Fess. See *lib.* 1. *chap.* 6. *numb.* 08.

The second charge, is Blazoned Azure, a **Pear** or **Quince**, Or; **surrounded** with a **Lace** or **Rubin**, the **ends** in chief **Gorged** or run through an **Annulet**, and **reverted** into the Base (or **pendant** and **tasselled**) Argent. I have seen it also termed an **Annulet** and **Pear**, Or; with a **Lace** through the one and round the other, the ends pendant and tasselled Argent. This is born by *Telluke*.

CXXXVII. In this square are three sorts of Frettings, one contrary to the other; the first is Blazoned Argent, a **Rubin fretted** and **crossed** into 5 **Bows** with the **ends pendant**, or **extended**, Gules. Born by the name of *Reken* or *Recell*. This I may say is the form of the Knot, or turnings of the Rubin; but the true term for its various crossing, I judg the Artist in those kind of devices, hath other expressions, which as yet I am unacquainted with.

The second is a **Lace** or **Rubin** compassed into a **Round**, the **ends crossed, reverting** and **fretting** the same in chief. Others say, a **Rubin** in a **Circle, fretted** by the **ends erected** to the chief. And such a Bearing I find to belong to the name of *Drill*. Viz. the like Argent in a Field, Vert. Some bear this kind of Knot, with the end running in the Base. As O. the like B. born by *Gener*. In Serpents Tails this kind of **turning** or **winding**, is termed **Nowed** or **Nodee**, the **ends erected** or **reversed**, according as the end lyeth. See *lib.* 2. *chap.* 9. *numb.* 73. 74.

If this were drawn close together, it would be a perfect Knot; so then it may be termed a Lace in an **open Knot**, the ends erected.

The third is a **Lace** or **Rubin** (sans ends) cast into **three Bows**, or pointed rounds, **fretting** each other. Some say 3 **semi-circles**, or **demy annulets fretting** each other and **conjoined** in the **points**. Others a **Triangle Fret**.

Such a Fret O. in a Field G. is born by *Endless*.

CXXXVIII. He beareth Azure, two **Rubins**, the **ends contrary posed, wreathing** or **twisting** each other, Or. Most have it, the ends wreathed in pale; because it may as well be born with the **Twisting in Fess**. Then I hold the properest term is to say, two Rubins **contrary Imbowed** in Pale, the ends **wreathed** and **extended**. This as aforesaid, is born by the name of *Writhall*, or *Rithall* of *Poland*.

CXXXIX. In this is the shapes of 2 **Mullets**, one of 5 the other 6 points, yet no such thing; for the first is Blazoned, Argent, an **Embated Mullet**, or a **Mullet voided** and **fretted**, or a **Mullet parted** and **fretted**.

G. the like A. is born by *Degel or van Wangen*, a *Dutch* Family. The same is his Crest with a Tuft on each point.

G. the like O. born by *Staffer*.

The second is two **Triangles voided** and **fretted**, in

in form of a **Mullet of six points.** This is born by the name of *Tridolt. Viz.* Argent the like Gules. This by our Ancients hath been termed *Ternarius Sacer & Potentissimus*, the Holy and most powerful Ternari. And *Numerus Perfectus*, the perfect number of Three in One. But this Answereth not to our Method of Blazon.

CXL. In this square, in the dexter chief, is the Bearing or Charge of a Coat quartered by *Van Petschach*, of the Dukedom of *Austria*, which is thus Blazoned. He beareth Gules, a **Staff** in Fess with a **String** at each end, that on the **dexter side** is cast over, with a **True Loves knot pendant**; the other **overturned**, the end waved, Or. Yet the *Dutch* give it a briefer cut, terming it a **Whip** with a **Lash** at each end, **debusing the handle**, (or turned over the handle) one **cast** into a **True Loves Knot**, the other **pendant.**

The second is a **Triangle voided**, or a **Triangle edged**, or **bordured**, if it be solid; for so I have seen them both ways born in Arms. Viz. Argent 3 such Gules. Born by *Tridorf.*

G. the like, with three **Keys Fretted** by the **Bows** in Triangle A. born by *Beheim* of *Switzerland.*

B. a Triangle A. bordered O charged with a Rose, is born by *Naswitz.*

CXLI. He beareth Gules, a **Garbow**, Argent. This I found thus drawn amongst other Old Coats in an antient Book of Arms Collected together about the Reign of King *Henry* the Sixth, but it had no name assigned it. I gave it the name aforesaid, being it is composed of an **Arrow** in the top, with a kind of Barbed head, and the end or bottom fixed to an **Indian Bow**, the **Shaft** of the Arrow fretted with an **Annulet.**

CXLII. In this square is two kind of Crosses. The first is thus termed. He beareth Gules, on a **long Cross fixed** on a **Basis issuant** out of the Base, two Birds, Or; the **overthwart Stem supported** from the middle of the **Standard**, with two **Laces** or **Binding pieces** tyed about with a Rubin, the ends extendant Argent. This is born by the name of *Brainecross.*

The like bearing (sans Rubin) is upon the Tomb of *George Chamberlain*, late Lord of the Mannors of *Wereton* and *Anseley*, in the Parish Church of *Langar*, in the County of *Nottingham.*

* The second he beareth Azure, a **Cross Patee fitcht** and fixed in a **Basis in Base**, **supported** by two **Laces**, Or, is born by the name of *Crosby.* Such a like Bearing is in an high Window in the middle of the South Ile; and on an old Tomb in the Parish Church of St. *Marys* in *Nottingham*, but no name mentioned, which my Author thus Blazons, Azure a **Cross Patee**, with a Basis, and **supporting** 2 **Laces** between 4 **Mullets** of 6 **points**, within a **Bordure engrailed**, Or.

CXLIII. He beareth Or, a **China Trumpet**, Sable, the **Mouth piece** and **Garnishings** Argent; the **Strings** in form of a **True Loves Knot**, Gules.

In the sinister side of this square, is a **Wand** or **Crooked Staff**, or **Stick** much used on the old *Roman* Coins, and was by the *Latines* termed **Lituus**, an **Augural Stick**, or an **Augurs Crooked Staff**, because they used to carry such in their hands, when they went about their Divinations. See *Hemelarius* Table 37 *&c.*

CXLIV. He beareth Vert, a **Long Cross Potence Pomelled**, **fixed** on a **Basis**, Or; the **Standard tyed** about with a Rubin, the ends turned round and pendant, Argent. In the beginning of Christianity amongst the *Roman* Emperours, they did upon their Coin cause such kind of Crosses as these are to be Stamped; as may be seen on the Stamps of *Flavius Focas*, and *Flavius Heraclius*, both *Roman* Emperours, set forth by *Jo. Hemelarius*, in his 64 Table of their ancient Coins.

CXLV. He beareth Argent, out of Base the **Proboscides** of two **Elephants erected**, **reflected** and **endorsed**, Sable; **linked** or **held** by 2 **Cross Links** put about the middle of them, Gules. Some will have these to be **Ox Horns**, and not Elephants Snouts, to whom I do much incline; for the Elephant hath two passages in the Snout, but here is but one, and that round and mouthed (in the erected end) much like a **Trumpet**; so that they may be fitly termed **Jews Trumpets**, or **Trumpets** made of **Ore Horns.** See *chap.* 16. *numb.* 17. 51. 56.

The foresaid Blazon belongs to *Van Brommagen.*

On the Crown of a Cap G. turned up Er. two such Trumpets of Ox horns erected, reflected and endorsed A. **Stringed** and **Garnished**, the **Bows** (or rounds) **conjoined** O. is the crest of *Zum Jungen* of *Franckford.*

On a Torce or Wreath O. and S. two **Horns** of a Bull A. **Stringed**, the **Bows interlaced** or **Fretted** S. which is the Crest of *Van Rotberg* of *Switzerland.*

CLVI. He beareth in the dexter side of this quarter, *viz.* out of the Base 2 **Proboscides**, or **Elephant Snouts**, **erected**, **reflected**, and **endorsed**, Or. in the middle linked with 2 round **Links** of a Chain, S. is the Crest of *Van Frendsberg* an Earl in *Germany.*

Now to Blazon them **Jews Trumpets** (as fitly they may be so termed) the **Strings** are then termed either **Braced**, **Imbraced**, or **Coupled**, one being within the other.

The second is out of Base, two **Jews Trumpets** the **Mouths erected**, **reflected**, and **endorsed**, **fretted** or **embraced** with a **string plated**, or turned **long** a **True-love knot.** Here the string is not fastned to the horns, but is turned about them as the knot (which is endless) is formed in True love, accordingly the crossing, and fretting is. This is born by the name of *Galeob.*

Two such Horns one O. the other G. 2 Strings fastned from one to the other, and in the middle **fretted** or **nowed in True love**, S. is the Crest of *Jalbach* of *Bavaria.*

Two such A. the **Strings in True love**, B. is the Crest of *Matsch* of *Bavaria.*

Two such **Horns**, A. Strings and fretted in True love. S. is the Crest of *Weisenhorn* of *Bavaria*.

Two such Horns, per fesse, A. and S. contrary changed one from the other: **Strings nowed in True love**, A. is the Crest of *Hohen-hawen*.

CXLVII. Here is in this square, in the Chief, is a bearing which goes under several denominations; as first I find it called an **Annulet crushed together** and **Wreathed twice** about: others call it the **Link** of a **Chain wreathed**: others a **String** or **Cord** (Saus end) **twisted** one over the other. Some will have it to be 3 Annulets conjoyned.

A. 3. such in pale, S. is born by *Trybeck*.

Per pale, O. and G. the like in pale, or erected B. is born for the Coat, and in the Crest between 2 Wings of the Field, by *Knippinck* of the *Nether-Rhine*.

The second in the base, is belonging to the Coat Armour of *Schwanfel* of the Palatinate of *Rhine*, viz. Argent, 3 such Sable, but what to term them I know not, (except **Dutch Skits**, to Slide withal) when I can I shall, tell then rest satisfied with what you see of it; and so I shall end with these extravegant bearings.

CXLVIII. In this Square are two things much stamped upon the *Romans* Ancient Coins. The first is termed the **Prow** of a *Roman* Ship; and is also in some Coined with the riseing part wrought into the form of Lions and Dalphins Heads.

The Second is the **Hollow** of the **Prow of a Ship**, as if it were so set, that a person may see into the inner side of it; these were in the Coins of *Augustus* and of Victorious *Pius Felix*, *Aug. Cæsar*; and in those of *Valentinian* and *Gratian* his Brother, as *Jo. Hemelarius* hath set them down in the 3 45. and 58. Tables of the *Roman* monies.

CXLIX. He beareth Azure a *Roman* **Hull of a Ship**, Or, in those Elder days before Masts and Sails were used to Ships, they made a benefit of Oars to guide and conduct their Ships from place to place, very rarely venterring into the main Ocean, but still keeping within sight of Land, or going where they could see or perceive Land. And that was the cause of their coming into *Brittain*, because they perceived the Land from *Gauls*, now called *France*. Such a Ship is on the Coin of *Gerdianus*, the third of that name Emperor of *Rome*, and of *Valentinian*: As is described by the Author aforesaid in the 41. and 58. Tables.

CL. He beareth Gules, and **Arm extended** in Fesse **winged** at the **Wrist**, and Sleeve Or, the Hands holding a Sword, the Point erected proper, born by the name of *Manuel de Belmont* a *French-man*. This may in short be termed **Mercuries Arm** holding a Sword, for any thing with Wings pertaining to a man, as Head, Arms, Cap, Feet, or Shooes, are ascribed to him as being a part of his appurtenences as in the next example and *chap.* 1. *numb.* 71.

CLI. He beareth a **Talaria** or **Mercuries shooe** Sable, Winged Argent, in a Field Azure, by the name of *TILLIER*; if the Shooe and Wings had been all of one Colour or Mettel, then there had been no need of mentioning the Wings, for all things belonging to him are supposed ever to be winged.

G. 3. such, O. is born by *Messenger*.

CLII. He beareth one of **Joves double Thunder-bolts**, flying in Fesse Or, in a field Sable; this I have not seen born in Arms, yet it may be a fit Coat for such an Embassador, as pronounceth War, and Terrible ruin and destruction to a people or Kingdom. It was a Trophy of some Victory obtained by *Antonius Pius*, for he Coined the like upon his Money with these words PROVIDENTIA DEORUM; and is by the Latine termed *Fulmen telum Jovis*, a **Dart Thunder-bolt** of *Jupiter*, which in short we may call *Jupiters* Darted Bolt.

CLIII. In this square I present you with the form of the **Romans Boats**, which they carried from place to place, to transport the Souldiers over broad and narrow Rivers, which they were in their Travels to pass: They called them, *Naves dissolubiles*, as *Fluvius Vegetius* in his book *De re Militari*, *lib.* 3. *cap.* 7. doth inform us; the like doth *Godescalcus Stewechius* in his Comments upon *Vegetius* affirm, that their Boats or Ships where so contrived, that they could readily be taken into several peices and quarters for their easily land Carriage; and could in a short time be fixt together again, by Iron Hooks, Hinges, Clasps, Bolts and Staples; and so firm that they would transport great Burdens over considerable large Rivers, Or Armes of the Sea. In these two Figures you may see how they are joyned, and how seperated, or taken to peices.

CLIV. He beareth Argent, a Castle-gate-house, Imbattelled with Pedement Heads, Globed: conjoyned to two Towers, spired: the Roof Pyramid with a Lanthorn, or watch Tower on it's top, Gules. born by the name of *Porthall* or *Portall*.

G. the like Gate-house Towered, A. spired and roofed, B. with an Escochion in Base quarterly, with an Inescochion charged with a Lion Rampant; is the State or Town Arms of *Schmalkaldn*, in the *Netherlands*.

Things

Things of most Note from Chapter 5. to the end of Chapter 13. according to the Folio's.

Instruments belonging to the Housewife, Folio 283.
Packs of several denomination, 285.
Parts of a Wool Card, ibid.
Card-makers Terms, ibid.
Sorts of Hatchels, or Flax Combs, 286.
Jersey Combers Terms, ibid.
Several sorts of Wheels to Spin, ibid.
The parts of Spinning Wheels, 286, 287.
The parts of a Wheel Quill, 287.
Parts of a Tarringles, ibid.
Weavers Instruments, 288.
Taylers Instruments, 290.
Felt, or Hat-makers Instruments, 291.
Butchers Instruments, 292, 313.
Bakers Instruments, 293, 315.
Sorts of Bread, 293.
Eggs of divers colours, 294.
Beer brewers Instruments, 294, 319.
Barrel Measures, 295.
Several parts of a Barrel, ibid.
Parts of a Pump, 297.
Smiths Instruments, 298, 321.
Sorts of Nails, 300.
Sorts of Locks, ibid.
Parts of a Lock, 301.
Parts of a Key, ibid.
Sorts of Files, 303.
Parts of a Vice, 303, 304.
Spurriers Instruments, with Lorriner, and Bit-maker. 304, 325.
Parts of a Bit, 306.
Sorts of Bits, ibid.
Founders Instruments, ibid.
Parts of a Ballance or Scales, 308.
Embrothers Tools, ibid.
Instruments for Punishment, 310.
Several ways of punishing Offenders, ibid.
Beakers terms of Art, 317.
Coopers Instruments, ibid.
Part of a Furnace, 320.
Parts of a Hammer, 321.
Parts of a Vice, ibid.
Several parts of Bellows, 322.
Parts of a Jack Barrel and Wheel, 323.
Parts of a Worm Jack, ibid.
Parts of a Smiths Forge, ibid.
Things belonging to a Forge, 324.
Farriers Instruments, 302. 324.
Sorts of Horse Shoes, ibid.
Plummers Instruments, 325.
Goalers Instruments, 326.
Husbandry Instruments, 327, 329, 390.
Parts of a Spade, ibid.
Sorts of Wheels, 331.
Parts of a Wheel, 332.
Parts of a Sythe, ibid.
Parts of a Flail, 333.
Parts of a Plough, ibid.
Terms used in Plowing, ibid.
Terms used about Butter and Milk, 335.
Parts of a Yoke, ibid.
Parts of a Harrow, ibid.
Parts of a Curry Comb, 336.
Parts of a Yelve, 337.
Sorts of Sieves, or Riddles, ibid.
Quantites of Corn Measures, ibid.
Hebrew, Greek, Roman Measures, 338.
Roman Weights, ibid.
Parts of a Cart or Wain, 339.
Things belonging to Carts, ibid.
Parts of a Wagon, 340.
Millners Instruments, ibid.
Parts of a Wind-mill, ibid.
Parts of a Wind-mill Sail, ibid.
Builders Instruments, 342.
Sadlers Instruments, 344 396.
Sorts of Saddles, 345.
Parts of a Saddle, ibid.
Appendances of a Saddle, ibid.
Weavers Instruments, 346.
Sorts of Cloth, 348.
St. Hugh's Bones, Shooe-makers Tools, Gentle Craft, Cordwiners, 291 349.
Tanners Instruments, 350.
Fletchers Instruments, ibid.
Arrow-makers Tools, ibid.
Curriers, or Leather-dressers Instruments, 351.
Joyners, Carvers Instruments 352.
Parts of a Plain, ibid.
Parts of a Waveing Engine, 354.
Carpenters Tools, 355
Turners Tools, 356.
Parts of a Lathe, ibid.
Parts of a Mandrell, ibid.
Parts of a joynt Collar, 358.
Parts of a Chissel, or Gouge, 358, 363.
Parts of a Drill-bench or Board, 359.
Parts of a Vice Lathe, ibid.
Parts of a Turning Engine, 360.
Glovers Tools, ibid
Mathematical Instruments, ibid. 371.
Parts of a Quadrant, 361.
Parts of an Astrolobe. ibid.
Parts of a Paralaligrem, 362.
Parts of a Joynter Plain, 367.
Sorts of Plains, ibid.
Parts of a Bit and Brace, 368.
Painters working Tools, ibid.
Book-binders Tools, 370.
Parts of a Desk, ibid.
Parts of a Binding Press, 371.
Parts of a Screw-press, ibid.
Terms of Lines in a Quadrant, ibid.
Sorts of Sun-dials, 372.
Parts of an Hour watch, 373.
Names of the Points in a Mariners Compass, 374.
Sorts of seeing Glasses, 375.
Names of the Horses in a Scheme, ibid.
Geometrical Terms for Lines, 376.
Pewterers Tools, 379.
Jewellers Instruments, 382.
Parts of a Lapidaries Polishing Mill, ibid.
Comb, and Card-makers Instruments, 383.
Glassiers Tools, 309. 384.
Sort of ways for Leading of Glass, 385.
Glassiers Terms of Art, ibid.
Felt-makers Instruments, 386.
Needle-makers Instruments, ibid.
Ink-horn-makers Instruments, 387.
Lanthorn makers Instruments, 388.
Masons Tools, 393.
Slaters Tools, 394.
Bricklayers Instruments, 395.
Plasterers Tools, 396.
Chirurgions Instruments, 398. 420.
Sorts of Cissors ibid.
Houses and Towers, 399.
Letters when first Invented, 401.
Signification of Letters in Notes of Antiquity, 403, &c.
Breviations of words antiently used, 410.
Terms in drawing forth Oyl, 425.
Medicines for all Distempers, 438.
Medicines to Comfort, 442.
Medicines to Purge, ibid.
Medicines to Strengthen, ibid.

Apothecaries

Apothecaries marks explained, 442.
Terms of Art used by Apothecaries, Chirurgions, and Doctors, ibid.
Leger de main Implements, 447.
Several Juggling Tricks, 448.
Houses, Temples, Tabernacles of diverse kinds, ibid.
Several Names given to moveing houses, 449.
Names of the Timber in a Wood house, 450
Things proper for Gardens, ibid.
Several rooms in an House, 451.
Out-sides of an House, ibid.
Several edifices for the Commonalty, 452.
Publick places in Cities, and great Towns, ibid.
Principal edifices for peculiar persons, ib.
Edifices for pleasure. 453.
Edifices or Buildings belonging to great Houses, ibid.
Walls how many ways made, 457.
Parts of a Piller, 459.
Use of Pillars, ibid
Several parts of a Church, 460.
Differance between a Church, and Chappel of ease, 461.
Several great and vast Bells, ibid.
Several parts of a Bell, 462.
Things useful for the hanging of Bells, ib.
Several ways of Ringing of Bells, ibid.
Description of the Jews Alter, 463.
Description of the Jews Ark, ibid.
Description of a Roman Alter, 464.
Things pertaining to an Alter, 465.
Utensils of a Romish Church, 466.
Terms for the parts of a Cornice, ibid.
Several orders of Pillars, or Columns, ibid.
Terms for the parts of the Basis of a Pillar, 467.
Terms for the parts of the Capital of a Pillar, ibid.
The Worlds Wonders, 468.
Terms for Fractable Gable ends of Houses, 472.
Masonry Terms about Church Windows, 473.
Several ways of Roofing Towers, See Roofe.

Terms of Blazoning used in Chapter Six, to the end of the Thirteen Chapter; the first Figure shews the Chapter, the second the number of that Chapter in which they are mentioned.

Adorned, 7 141 146. *and* 8 83 *and* 13 101 110 122
Ascendant, 7 147 149. *and* 8 12.
Aspect, 8 20 130. *and* 13 126.
Air and Earth, 13 91.
Arched Enarched, 13 93.
Archee, 13 94.
Armed, 13 104.

Braced, 7 7 9. *and* 8 15. *and* 13 146.
Buttoned, 7 39.
Bendwise, 7 39.
Bendwise sinister, 7 93.
Blemished, 7 43.
Barwise, 7 66. *and* 8 65.
Bottony, 7 130 140 153. *and* 13 110 117 119.
Bowed dorsed, 8 10.
Battled Imbattelled, 13 27 37.
Bevil ways, 13 72. *and* 13 85 94 92.
Bowed, 8 10.
Battled, 13 9.
Buttony floury, 13 18.
Barbed, 13 106.

Counterposed, 7 133. *and* 8 15 56 *and* 10 21. *and* 13 91 138.
Conjoyned, 7 135 151. *and* 8 29 99. *and* 13 23 95 96 106 111 112.
Contrary bowed, 8 10. *and* 13 106 113 138.
Counterchanged, 8 35.
Coerectant, 8 55.
Covertant, 8 55.
Couped, 8 60. *and* 13 30 116.
Covered, 13 45 91.

Coupled, 13 146 129.
Chequered, 13 91.
Cornished, 13 110.
Crissed Pattee, 13 118 125
Curvi-Linear, 13 122 126 134.
Curval, 13 135.

Dorsed, 8 10.
Displayed, 8 53. *and* 13 11 13 18 19.
Dexter base, 8 67.
Dejected, 8 103 154. *and* 9 1.
Dilated, 9 8.
Dejectant, 9 173.
Doubled, 9 185.
Demy, 13, 11 30.
Dexter side, 13 24.
Debrused, 13 72. *and* 7 154. *and* 13 85 140.
Dental, 13 76.
Double Barbed, 13. 106.
Double Nowy, 13 109.

Endorsed, 7 7 9 10 22 133 135 *and* 8 19 21.
Extended, 7 29 121. *and* 8 37 107 65 *and* 13 85 93.
Eight points, 7 40.
Erected, 7 98 133 146 152 154 *and* 8 130 154, *and* 13 107 109 122 137.
Ends perdant, 7 133.
Extending from Chief to Base, 8 23.
Erected Supported, 8 24 50.
Extendant, 13 11 23 26 27 38 72 136 142 150.

Endorsing, 13 22 85 106 111 112 145.
Enwraped, 13 31 88.
Embraced, 13 146.
Enclosed, 13 92.
Envecked, 13 109 126.
Edged, 13 140.
Erected Reflect Endorsed, 13 145 146.

Fretted, 7 7 9 10 22 140 154. *and* 9 173. *and* 13 112 136 137 139 146.
Fixed, 7 36 140. *and* 8 98, *and* 13 68
Flame, 7 56.
Flamant, 7 76. *and* 9 157. *and* 13 64 68.
Full Aspect, 8 20 130. *and* 13 126.
Fore shortned, 8 20.
Flame sumant, 9 157.
Fortified, 13 95.
Flurt, 13 111.
Florishing, 9 169.
Flotant, 9 169, *and* 13 93 136.
Flory, 7 141.
Fitched, 8 38. *and* 13 142.
Finished, 13 86 89.
Flected Reflected, 13 132.

Garnished, 7 39. *and* 13 21 49.
Grices, Grieces, 13 37 39 45 62 71 80 81.
Gradual, 13 98 120.
Grincolee, 13 110.
Gorged, 13 136.

Hatched,

Fitched, 7 41.

Interlaced, 7 9 18. *and* 13 136
Interwinered, 7 78.
Issuant, Issuing, 7 92 93. *and* 9 14. *and* 9 14. *and* 13 142 119.
Inverted, 7 133.
In Salter, 7 10 52 146. *and* 8 51 21.
In triangle conjoyned, 7 154. *and* 8 21. *and* 13 130 135.
Imbowed, 7 154. *and* 8 32. *and* 13 138.
Imbraced, 8 17. *and* 13 146.
In Pale and in Salter, 8 21.
In Bend Sinister, 8 24.
Imbossed, 9 170 49.
Invoned, 13 6 7 49.
In losenge form, 13 136.

Losengy couped, 13 129.
Laced, 7 25.
Lapped, 9 154.

Mouldings, 13 101.
Masonry, 13 11.
Masoned, 13 20 23.
Mounted, 13 71.
Moline, 13 110.

Notching, 7 14.
Nowy, 8 60 *and* 13 109 116.
Nowved potent, 8 60.
Naissant, 8 99.
Nowy pierced, 13 116.
Nodee, Nowed, 13 137.

Octagon, 7 70.
Out-side Flory, 7 141.
Open, 8 130, *and* 13 11 18 19 137.
Open Saltermise, 9 177.

Potence pomelled, 13 144.
Pendant, 7 36 39 100 133. *and* 8 22 31 108 109. *and* 9 167, *and* 13 21 22 38 95 136 137 140 144.
Point erected, 7 65, *and* 8 12 19 20 21 124.
Point to Sinister, 7 66.
Points reversed, 7 98 152.
Points bottomed, 7 153.
Pointed or Fitched, 8 38.
Pierced, 8 60 66, *and* 13 107 108 119.
Perforated, 8 99. *and* 13 116.
Points Crossed, 9 12.
Prospect, 13 38 91.
Pometted, 8 10. *and* 13 110 111 113 116 125.
Points, 7 40 42.
Pomel, 13 116 125.
Patee, 13 118 125.
Patee fitcht, 13 142.
Parted, 13 127 139.

Quarterly quartered, 7 41,
Quartered, 13 127.

Reflexed, 13 112.
Reversed, 7 39 54 133, *and* 8 107 154, *and* 13 15 102 107 109 118 119 121 127.
Rebated, 7 43 142 144, *and* 9 171, *and* 13 22 107 116.
Respecting, 7 152. *and* 13 133.
Reversed endorsed, 8 21.
Reflected, 13 132 145.
Reverted, 13 107 136 137.
Removed, 13 114.

Saltermise, 7 22, *and* 8 15, *and* 9 177.

Studed, 7 39.
Surrounded, 7 56, *and* 13 136.
Stained, 7 78.
Sans, 7 102 120, *and* 8 32 44, *and* 13 11 91.
Smoak Vapours, 9 157.
Set contrary, 13 22 38.
Sinister side, 13 24.
Shavered, 13. 33.
Supported, 13 39, *and* 8 24 50 *and* 13 142.
Seiled, 13 44.
Six points, 7 42.
Sarcelled, 13 110 113.
Surmounting, 13 85 120.

Triparted, 7 11. *and* 13 124.
Triangular billed, 7 69.
Transposed, 7 97, *and* 8 129.
Triangle, 7 140. *and* 13 138 139.
Tyed up, 8 37.
Traverse, 8 65, *and* 9 21.
Turned, 9 185.
Transparent, 13 11.
Transflnent, 13 20 27.
Tiled, 13 44.
Three points, 7 42.
Turned round, 13 144.
Twisted, 13 147.

Upright, 7 97.
Voided, 13 117 118 139 140.
Vrdee, 13 127.
Vnnerated, 13 139.

Wreathed, 9 169 178, *and* 13 138 147.
Wrapt up, 9 154. *and* 12 12.
Warbling, 13 13.
Waved, 13 13.
Watery Pale, 13 25.

The several particular things born in Arms, and mentioned in Chapter 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, The first Figure signifieth the Chapter, and the second the number in which such things are Treated off.

AUL, 6 41. 42, and 8 115, and 9 23 162 163.
Axe, 6 48 67, and 7 58 85 94 97 98 120 144.
Addice, 6 69, and 7 114, and 9 7 134.
Anvile, 7 4 5 33 68 69 71 73 and 9 117.
Ark wheel, 7 104.
Ark, 7 105, and 13 51.
Adds, see Addice, 7 115 116.

Auger, 7 111 119, and 9 7 16 and 11 34.
Aspergill, 7 148.
Axel-tree, 7 151.
Asmer, 8 81.
Auger-bit, 8 137.
Astrolabe, 8 167.
Axe, 9 7 152, and 7 109 150, and 8 70 77 78, and 13 115.
Ancient Greek Alphabet, 10 6.
Accents, 10 4.

Arminian Letters, 10 6.
Arabic, Letters, 10 6.
Assa, 10 16.
Apothecaries Druggs, 10 12.
Alembeck, 11 7.
Amphismeta, 11 21.
Acia, 11 42.
Abaptista, 12 4.
Abaptiston, 12 4.
Acantabolus, 12 10.
Assula Medica, 12 12.

Alphonsine,

Alphonsine, 12 17.
Acus Hydropis, 12 21.
Amma, 12 29.
Ambi Amboae, 12 31.
Arch of a Gate, 13 18.
Arhed, 12 43.
Arch, 13 20 35 36 48 97 98 99 and 9 191
Altar, 13 50 54 55 56 63 57.
Ark of God, 13 51.
Angles Alphabet, 10 2.
Aggat Burnisher, 7 68.
Arch Roof, 13 89 92 93 95.
Annulet, 13 108 135 136.
Appie Roaster, 13 109.
Annulet crushed, 13 147.
Arm Winged at Wrist, 13 150.
Augural Stick, 13 143.
Axe, 9 142 144.
About Sledge, 7 128.
Annulets, 13 137.

B.

Bodkin, 6 35. and 11 43. and 9 162. and 12 36.
Block, 6 36 37 38. and 8 143 146 147.
Bow Stick, 6 37.
Brake 6 45. and 7 25 27.
Broach, 6 58. and 7 81.
Basket, 6 60. and 7 106. and 9 178. and 11 12.
Bag, 6 64 75 76. and 8 36 37. and 11 13.
Bough, 6 64.
Barrel Fired, 6 71.
Bench hook 6 25.
Barrel, 6 72. and 7 118 132.
Bowget, 6 75 76 77 78.
Budges Bowges, 6 77 78.
Bags, 6 80 81. and 7 123 125 and 9 176.
Bucket, 6 82 83 88.
Brewing dish, 6 86.
Billets, 7 3. and 8 73 81 83. and 9 153.
Bills, 7 3.
Beacon, 7 92.
Beaked Anvil, 7 5.
Barnacles, 7 13 25 26 27 28 29 31 142. and 9 181.
Bolts, 7 23 86.
Brakes, 7 25 27.
Buttrice, 7 30 138. and 13 86.
Broad Chapt Vice, 7 32.
Buckle, 7 36 37 38 39 130 141. and 9 166 167.
Bit, 7 43 45. and 9 21 24.
Ballance, 7 64.
Bridle bit, 7 43 45.
Bosses, 7 46. and 13 122.
Brasiers Ballances, 7 47.
Borax Box, 7 67.
Birch Rod, 7 92.
Beak Iron, 7 68 70.
Beaker, 7 69.
Booses, 7 150.
Bolster, 7 126.
Bowle Anvil, 7 73.
Ball of Silver Thread, 7 80
Burning Iron, 7 90.
Beast Tree, 7 96.
Bisket Peel, 7 102.
Barr, 7 100.
Bench Vice, 7 128.
Break, 7 106 107.
Bolt, 7 106. and 8 32.
Bread Basket, 7 106. and 9 178.
Broad Axe, 7 109.
Bung Auger, 7 111.
Bearing Staff, 7 122.
Brewing Comb, 7 121.
Brewing Pan, 7 124 126.
Brewers Copper, 7 124.
Bellows, 7 130.
Breast Plate, 7 130
Bevil Tooth Wheel, 7 132.
Blooding Stick, 7 138.
Button, 7 141.
Battel Axe, 7 150.
Bouk, 8 26.
Bushel, 8 46.
Brandret, 8 66 58.
Brick, 8 81.
Brick batt, 8 81 82. and 9 153.
Bevil Billet, 8 81.
Barrow, 8 85 86 and 7 152.
Bearing Barrow, 8 86.
Beetle, 8 87 88, and 9 130
Brush, 8 89 102. and 9 85 105 110 159 160 31 33.
Buckling Aule, 8 96. and 9 163.
Burling Iron, 8 100
Block, 8 99 127 132 143 160, and 9 80 121, and 7 85 94.
Bone-lace peg, 8 111.
Bobbing peg, 8 111.
Ball of Wax, 8 113.
Boot Trees, 8 117.
Bush, 8 122.
Bushel, 8 4.
Bow, 8 122.
Bow strings, 8 130.
Bence hook, 8 134 139.
Bench Screw, 8 139 140.
Bevil Mallet, 8 141
Broad flat Mandril, 8 150.
Book-binders Plow, 8 164.
Ballance Wheel, 8 169, and 9 137.
Brest wall, 9 188.
Board Saw, 9 1.
Bow Saw, 9 2 3.
Bevil Square, 9 13 16.
Bevil moving Square, 9 16.
Bit, 9 23 24 25.
Brace, 9 24, and 11 34, and 8 122.
Black Lead Pencils, 9 34.
Book open, 9 35.
Binding Press, 9 42.
Beating Stone, 9 45.
Broad face Hammer, 9 45.
Burning Glass, 9 62.
Burnisher, 9 70, and 7 68 69.
Bossing Stiddy, 9 71.
Bullet, 9 72.
Baiting Stake, 9 72.
Beak Iron, 9 73.
Boug Hammer, 9 73.
Bordering Hammer, 9 73.
Bristle Brush, 9 86.
Border, 9 90.
Basoning Furnice, 9 113.
Boer, 9 123.
Broad foot Ladder, 9 134.
Beater, 9 136 159.
Barred Dung-Fork, 9 136.
Brick Hammer, 9 152.
Brick Axe, 9 152, and 8 77 78 and 13 115.
Brick-kiln, 9 157.
Brick Moulds, 9 155.
Beating board, 1 159.
Back-rails, 9 161.*
Bridge, 9 85, and 13 20 24 25 26 27 28.
Beard Cissars, 9 177.
Board screw, 9 180.
Barnacle Pincers, 9 181.
Bridge Arched, 9 191, and 13 24 25 26 27.
Brittains Alphabet, 10 6.
Brittish ancient Figures, 10 6.
Bath or Stew, 10 7 16.
Bed pan, 10 10.
Balneum Ereum, 10 16.
Bottle, 11 4, and 8 38 39, and 12 18.
Broad point Needle, 11 41.
Burning Pincers 12 10.
Bullet Forceps, 12 11.
Bullet Hook, 9 182.
Barbers Cissars, 12 13.
Bullet Pen knife, 12 18.
Breast cap, 12 18.
Baprist, 12 21.
Brochi, 12 28.
Bracherium, Brachile, 12 29.
Barbers Case, 12 30 35.*
Blood Poringer, 12 33.
Box of Unguents, 12 34.
Bason, 12 33.
Box, 9 84 88 100 122, and 12 35 37, and 8 142, and 13 126.
Balls, 12 37, and 13 81.
Bonus Genus, 12 37.
Booth, 12 39.
Battlements Arched, 12 43.
Bay, 12 44.

Bower,

Bower, 12 49.
Banner of 3 Penons, 13 21.
Bandoll, 13 22.
Bridge Towered, 13 26.
Broken Pillar, 13 33.
Biere, 13 43.
Bell, 13 48 49.
Basis of a Pillar, 13 67 142.
Battlement, 13 75 116 121 86 89.
Bowls, 13 81.
Brewing Comb, 7 121.
Bunch. Bundle of Laths, 8 84.
Bastilleon, 13 89.
Bastil, 13 89.
Barbican, 13 89.
Barn, 13 90, and 12 45.
Bevile Wall, 13 92 94.
Battlement Spired, 13 95.
Brittish Letter, A, 13 117.
Brittish Letter, R, 13 117.
Bonicons Horn, 13 111.
Beazont, 13 130.
Ball. Balls, 13 133.
Bobs, 13 134.
Buttons, 13 134.
Branched Candlestick, 13 103.
Boats, 13 154.
Birch Rod, 7 92.
Braide, 7 104.
Binding Beams, 8 50.
Bottle Quiver, 8 125.
Belcony, 13 83 89.
Barbed, 13 106 111.
Broken Wheel, 7 151, and 8 8.

C.

Cissars. Cizars, 6 33, and 8 130. and 9 177 181, and 11 24, and 12 13.
Cutting Knife, 6 41 42, and 7 54 and 9 44.
Cleever, 6 49, and 7 150 97 98.
Cambril, 6 47.
Common Still, 11 1 2.
Cup, 6 58.
Corn, 6 64.
Clack, 6 87.
Cramp cramped, 7 12.
Cramp, 7 13 15 140, and 13 106 107.
Crucible, 7 56 65.
Crampets, Crampnet, 7 16. and 13 106.
Cross Garnet Hinge, 7 22.
Celestial Musser, 7 43.
Cross Staff, 7 50 and 9 48.
Cording Tongs, 7 61.
Charging Tongs, 7 64.
Curb Bit, 7 43 45.
Cutter, 7 75.
Cutting Tools, 7 75.
Chaine, 7 88 95 90. and 8 32. and 13 68 69 70.
Cake Peel, 7 102.
Custard Dish, 7 104.
Custard filler, 7 104.
Churn shave, 7 109.
Compasses, 7 115. and 9 8 34 64 67, and 8 168.
Comb, 7 121. and 8 41 42. and 9 175, and 6 8 9 10.
Cooling Vessel, 7 122.
Cooler, 7 125.
Crane Pipe, 7 126.
Crooked Nose Tongs, 7 129.
Case of Flames, 7 137.
Cauting Iron, 7 138.
Cauteting Iron, 7 138.
Cock Spur, 7 141.
Casting Frame, 7 144.
Casting Pan, 7 145.
Cross. Crucifix, 7 147 and 13 63.
Crucifying Cross, 7 147.
Club, 7 148, and 13 130.
Caldron, 7 149.
Cart, 8 48
Cart Wheel, 8 9.
Culter, 8 18 19 21. and 9 137 140.
Cheese Ladder, 8 25 and 9 134.
Cheese Tub, 8 25.
Cheese Fat, 8 25.
Cruck, 8 26.
Cheese Tub covered, 8 27.
Copsole, 8 32.
Coach, 8 97. and 9 161.*
Carriage, 8 49 98.
Coach Carriage, 8 49.
Chariot, 8 90.
Coach Pole, 8 33.
Curry Comb, 8 41 42.
Carcase of a Windmill, 8 54.
Clock Wheel, 8 57.
Close Wheel, 8 59.
Cramp Mill Rinde, 8 62.
Cramp Salter like, 8 62.
Crab Ferr de Moline, 8 63.
Cistern, 8 115.
Cann, 8 40.
Crane, 8 67.
Commander, 8 76, and 9 144.
Cutting Axe, 8 77 78.
Carrying Chairs, 8 91.
Cross Yarringles, 8 99.
Clarion, 8 104.
Cloth Pitched, 8 108 109.
Cloth, 8 108 109, and 6 30 31. and 12 42.
Cross-Bow Shaft-head, 8 124.
Cuck-stool, 8 126.
Chissels, 8 135 145 146 156 157. and 9 22 98 125 141.
Crow, 8 144.
Crab Engine, 8 146 148.
Cart bottom 8 146.
Chocks, 8 150.
Cratch, 8 23.
Collar, 8 48 152 153. and 9 129.
Chopping Block, 8 160.
Cleaving Knife, 8 161. and 9 135.
Circle Dial, 8 168.
Compass Saw, 9 2.
Circle Dividers, 9 9.
Callippers, 9 11 12 66 134.
Carpenters Square, 9 13 14.
Course Plain, 9 19.
Cording Auger, 9 26.
Cording Pin, 9 26.
Cross Compasses, 9 34.
Cross Dividers, 9 34.
Cleansing Pot, 9 34.
Cleanser, 9 142, and 13 130.
Compass Quadrant, 9 46.
Clock, 9 55.
Circumferentor, 9 61.
Concave Callipers, 9 66.
Calves head stake, 9 74.
Corn Tongs, 9 83.
Cutting Sheers, 9 89.
Carlet, 9 92.
Card Board, 9 95.
Chair, 9 167, and 13 105.
Circular Weather Glass, 9 49.
Circle Compasses, 9 64.
Crooker, 9 97.
Caums, 9 99.
Clams, 9 100 133 77 78.
Cleaving Board, 9 102 103.
Cutting Diamond, 9 103.
Churn, 9 118.
Chiming Tool, 9 125.
Claw foot, 9 126.
Cheese Rack, 9 134.
Cog Wheel, 9 137.
Card, 9 58, and 6 5.
Can, 9 109.
Concave Mould, 9 145.
Crist Mould, 9 156.
Cresta, 9 165.
Civet Plate, 9 166.
Cupping Glass, 9 173.
Chaffer, 9 173.
Candlestick, 9 79 179, and 13 53 63 64 69, and 7 101.
Cissars with a Spring, 9 181.
Castle Wall Towered, 9 182.
Crooked Pen Knife, 9 182.
Case, 9 185, and 13 30 4.
Cataract Needle, 9 185 187.
Capitals, 9 189, and 13 31 32 65 54 123 82.
Column, 9 190.
Cophthites Alphabet, 10 6.
Crow Bill, 9 192.
Celts Alphabet, 10 6.
Cyprus Alphabet, 10 6.
Croatick Alphabet, 10 6.

Chaldean Alphabet, 10 6.
Catheter, 10 10, and 11 42.
Chyrurgions Table, 10 12.
Close Stool, 10 13.
Curling Pipe, 10 14.
Curling Stick, 10 14.
Cleansing Tub, 10 16.
Caldarium, 10 16.
Cucurbite. Cucurbitula, 11 7 37.
Cupping Glass, 11 7 37.
Cold Press, 11 14.
Crab Mill, 11 18.
Cyder Mill, 11 18.
Chaffer. Chaffron, 11 23.
Caldafer, 11 23.
Clyster Syringe, 11 28 42.
Cyclisci, 11 31.
Cleanser, 11 35.
Chaffing Dish, 11 39.
Colligatio, 11 42.
Clyster Pipe, 11 42 47. and 12 9.
Crane Bill Pinters, 11 44.
Cauteres, 11 45.
Cautering Irons, 11 45. and 12 6.
Cauterium, 11 45.
Capsula, 12 1 2 26.
Crooked Forceps, 12 11.
Cissars, 12 11 13.
Crooked Probe, 12 12.
Carpia, 12 12.
Crooked Knife, 12 18.
Clyster Pipe with a Screw, 12 19.
Chissel, 12 25 and 11 22.
Case of Instruments, 12 30 a.
Crisping Irons, 12 34.
Curling Irons, 12 34.
Cup, 12 37. and 13 60 61 64. and 9 176.
Cover, 12 37. and 13 60.
Cabin, 12 39.
Cards, 12 37.
Cushion Tasselled, 12 41.
Covered, 12 44 42 45 46. and 13 91.
Countrey House, 12 44.
Cottage, 12 44 46.
Cote, 12 45. and 13 60.
Cheating Knife, 12 36.
Calf Kid, 12 45.
Cart House, 12 47.
Castle Gate Towered, 13 9.
Castle with Towers, 13 9.
Cittadel, 13 10 12.
Castle Wall, 13 11 12 86 94.
Castle, 13 11 13 9 13 77 83.
Capital, 13 19.
Crown Mural, 13 14.
Conferon, 13 21.
Castle Wall Arched, 13 23 94.
Column Fuse, Column Fusile, 13 29.
Column and Chapiter, 13 31 38 86
Chapiter of a Pillar, 13 31 38 88.
Composed Pillar, 13 34 82.
Cant Steeple, 13 42 44.
Church, 13 38 43. and 9 186.
Church end, 9 186.
Chappel, 13 44 46 47.
Chappel of Ease, 13 44 46.
Church with two Steeples, 13 45 86
Collegiate Church, 13 46 47.
Cathedral, 13 46 47.
Campain, 13 49.
Candlestick with Branches, 13 53 69 103.
Column Altar, 13 55.
Caldron, 13 58 59 127.
Communion Cup, 13 61 64.
Covered Font, 13 62.
Communion Table, 13 63.
Challice, 13 64.
Colosse, 13 71.
Castle between Towers,
Chimney, 12 44 and 13 34 76.
Cap head, 13 78.
Capped with Grieces, 13 80.
Chopping Knife, 6 49. and 7 98.
Common Draughts, 11 29.
City 12 52.
City Walled, 12 52.
Chip Axe, 7 98.
Column, 13 82 101.
Capital wrought, 13 82 19.
Chapiter Crown, 13 82.
Corinthian Pillar, 13 82.
Church Window, 13 86.
China Steeple, 13 87.
Cant Seiled Roof, 13 88.
Close Tower, 13 88.
Cap Roof, 13 92.
Casarcom, 13 102.
Clothiers Shears, 8 104.
Cressants, 13 106.
Candle Socket, 13 109.
Candle stick Socket, 13 109.
Chave. Chive, 13 109.
Crequier, 13 109.
Chamber, 13 7.
Cerisier Nain, 13 109.
Chest Rook, 13 111.
Cup foot, 13 112.
Crowstone, 13 117.
Coulter, 13 119.
Copped Cap, 13 112.
Crooked Hill, 13 120.
Chaperon Shapourner, 13 120.
Cop copped, 13 20.
Crumpett, 13 121.
Crouch Staff, 13 123 124.
Chest Bishop, 13 124.
Cullender, 13 130.
Chivall 13 134.
China Trumpet, 13 143.
Cross Links, 13 145 146.
Chain Link wreathed, 13 147.
Castle Gatehouse, 13 144.

D.

Dresser, 6 46. and 7 144.
Dish, 6 55 57 86. and 7 122. and 11 11. and 13 52 53 69.
Dressed Pig, 6 58.
Drawing Board, 6 67. and 7 113.
Driver, 6 74. and 7 114. and 8 88. and 13 123.
Double Cramp, 7 12 13 14.
Door Hinge, 7 22.
Draughts, 7 47. and 9 179. and 11 29. and 12 16.
Drag hook, 7 99 100.
Dough Scrape, 7 102.
Dough Knife, 7 103.
Drawing Knife, 7 109. and 8 154 164
Drawing Iron, 7 112.
Diogenes Tub, 7 118.
Drawing Comb, 7 121.
Drawing Trough, 7 121.
Drawing Pin, 7 126.
Drill, 7 129 130
Drill Bow, 7 129 130.
Dove Tail Hinge, 7 22.
Drill Plate, 7 130.
Drawers, 7 137.
Drench Horn, 7 141.
Drug, or Dutch Druge, 7 152. and 8 146.
Demy Wheel, 8 8.
Demy Sough, 8 21.
Dog Couple, 8 32.
Dung fork, 8 32 43. and 9 136.
Drag, 8 48.
Decayed Wind-mill, 8 54.
Diminutive Coach, 8 97.
Ducking Tumbrel, 8 126.
Double Screw, 8 139 142.
Drill Bench, 8 159.
Dividers, 8 9 10. and 9 9 10.
Drawing Desk, 8 29.
Drawing Frame, 8 30.
Desk, 8 35. and 9 41.
Double pointed Compasses, 9 69.
Dust Box, 9 88.
Doubler, 9 97.
Double Groser, 9 101.
Dutch Sythe, 9 135.
Dividing Iron, 9 137.
Dropping Tub, 9 158.
Dropper, 9 158.
Draughts with a Screw, 9 172.
Distillatory Glass Body, 9 174.
Distilling Bag, 9 176.
Druggist Basket, 9 178.
Double Letters, 10 1 2.
Dipthongs, 10 3.
Dutch Alphabet, 10 8.
Dalmatian Alphabet, 10 9.
Drawing Goose Bill, 10 9.

Doctors

Doctors Tub, 8 36.
Dolatory, 11 2 6 9.
Distillatory Head, 11 4 7 8.
Distillers Bladder, 11 9.
Distilling in Balneo, 11 10.
Distilling Bag, 11 13.
Dipplor 11 16.
Diploma, 11 16.
Dismembring knife. 11 21.
Dismembring Chissel, 11 22, and 12 25.
Dismembring Saw, 11 23, and 12 9.
Dismembring Pincers, 11 31.
Dismembring Nippers, 11 31.
Dilatorium, 11 9 40.
Digestrum 11 40.
Double foulding knife, 12 3.
Decussorium, 12 4.
Drawing Girdle, 12 29.
Dove house thatched, 12 42, and 13 75 90.
Dwelling house, 12 44.
Dary house, 12 44.
Double doors, 13 19.
Degrees, 13 19 23.
Draw-bridg, 13 28.
Double Arch, 13 36.
Door head Pedement, 13 78.
Door head Battelled, Imbattelled, 13 80
Distaff, 6 24.
Delfe, 8 82.
Dorick Pillar, 13 82.
Double Belcony, 13 83 89.
Double Wall, 13 85.
Dove house, 13 19. and 12 42.
Dart Spear, 13 102.
Double Barbed, 13 105.
Dwarfe Cherry-tree, 13 109.
Demy Losenge, 13 129.
Demy Mascle, 13 129.
Demy Annulets, 13 137.
Dutch Skits, 13 147.
Dart Thunderbolt, 13 152.
Double Lamp, 7 76.
Down back Cleaver, 7 98.
Double Oven, 7 105.
Dray, 7 121.
Dial, 8 1 68, and 8 51 52 54.
Drawers, or drawing Boxes, 9 122.
Dilator, 10 9.
Diota, 11 7.
Double Shakle Bolts, 7 87.
Empty Quills, 7 88.
Escochion Buckles, 7 140.
Dunnocks Dish, 9 32.
Enamilling point, 9 86.
English Alphabet, 10 2.
Egyptian Alphabet, 10 6.
Ethiopian Alphabet, 10 6.
Ear pick, 11 32 46.
Escaroticum, 11 45.
Enema fumosum, 11 47.
Ensigns Tent, 12 39.
Eves, 13 75 83 84 85 88 96.
Eshions, 8 26.
Emperors Column, 13 101.
Easell, 9 31 32.
Enter-enchyta, 12 19, and 11 28.
Evil, 8 43.
Enamel grinder, 9 83.
Endiæum, 11 42.
Elephants snouts, 13 112.
Engine, 8 68 143 149* 163.

F.

Flax break, 6 5 6.
Flax Comb, 6 8.
Fusile, 6 15 16 17, and 13 29.
Fruit, 6 60.
Firkin, 6 72.
Fire Bucket, 6 83.
Tetter lock, 7 18.
File, 7 30 59, and 8 124, and 9 94 118.
Fermale, 7 37 39 130 140 141.
Fermaulxes, Fermaulxes, 7 38.
Furnice, 7 56 57 124 125, and 11 39, and 9 113.
Fire Tongues, 7 60.
Fire Iron, 7 75
Forging Hammer, 7 77 128.
Forging Tongs, 7 31.
Fetters, 7 88.
Ferrular, 7 91.
Fulling dish, 7 122.
Fore Hammer, 7 128.
Flame, 7 129.
Flesh prick, 7 98.
Flein Hobble, 7 98.
Fly, 7 133.
Forge, 7 134.
Flemes, 7 137 138, and 13 131.
Forked staff. 7 146.
Fiery Furnace, 7 147.
Flaming Fire, 7 147 149.
Fayots Fires, 7 149.
Flail, 8 16.
Fork, 8 32 43, and 9 136.
Field gate, 8 35.
Ferre de Moline, 8 60 61 63 64.
Ferdon, 8 60.
Flat Chissell, 8 157.
Frog ferre de Molise, 8 93.
Fasce, 8 84.
Frise, or Frize board, 8 103.
Fore-part stick, 8 110.
Fleshing knife, 8 118 164, and 9 15 38.
Field Hatch, 8 34.
Fisher, 8 120.
Flote, 8 122 124 130, and 9 75 125 and 13 114.
Framing Saw, 8 123, and 9 2 3.
Former, 8 19 135 136, and 9 142.
Fore plain, 8 135 154, and 9 19.
Fancering Saw, 9 2.
Frame Saw, 9 2 3.
Framing Saw, 9 28.
Foulding Stick, 9 44.
Flat Anvil, 9 71.
Flint Morter, 9 83.
Fainting board, 9 103.
Foot Yelve, 9 136.
Foot, or ten Foot Rule, 9 145.
Forcer, 9 175, and 11 29, and 6 88.
Filter, 9 176. and 11 13.
Forked hook, 9 182.
Forceps, 9 192, and 11 24 33 41, and 12 10 11.
French Alphabet, 10 3.
Figures of Number, 10 6.
Fontanel, 10 14.
Fontanel Iron, 10 14.
Funet Dish, 11 11.
Fire Pan, 11 13 39, and 9 113.
Forfex, 11 29.
Flegmes, Fleames, 11 30 31, and 13 131.
Foulding Knife, 11 38, and 12 3.
Fire pot, 11 39.
Furcus, 11 39.
Fibula, 11 42, and 12 19.
Fistulus Instrument, 11 42.
Female Trepan, 12 5, and 11 34 35
Funeal Case, 12 6.
Fire Pincers, with handles, 12 10.
Forceps Thoracis, 12 11.
Forceps, 12 11 34.
Fascia, 12 12.
Funda Galeni, 12 12.
Ferula, 12 12.
Fundament Pipe, 12 24.
Fundament pipe Screw, 12 24.
Fane of three points, 12 38.
Fane, 12 43, and 13 8 20 21 22 and 7 114. and 13 121
Forts, 13 112.
Fane of three Penons, 13 22.
Fane pointed and Quare, 13 22.
Fusible Pillar, 13 29.
Font covered, 13 62.
Fumous Glister pipe, 11 47.
Fistula fumosa, 11 47.
Farmers house, 12 44.
Foot or Stand, 8 99.
Foulding stool, 13 105.
Fellow, 13 112.
Ferris, 13 124.
Fire Steel, 12 105 128.

Five

Five Square, 13 126.
Flask, 13 102 126.
Frame, 7 94.

G.

Gimblet, 6 68, and 9 1 7 27.
Gage, 6 70. and 8 138, and 9 18.
Gorge, 6 77 78.
Gads of Steel, 7 3.
Girth Buckle, 7 37, and 9 167.
Galthrop, 7 41, and 9 138.
Grafs Axe, 7 58.
Graver, 7 65 66 146, and 8 124 162 and 9 70 89 175, and 11 31.
Grater, 7 74 102.
Gibber, 7 92.
Gallows, 7 92.
Gofs, 7 107.
Grooping Tool, 7 113.
Geometrical Rule, 7 118.
Gaging Rod, 7 118.
Gutter trough, 7 123.
Gawn, 7 124.
Grains of a Fork, 7 146 152, and 8 7 27 33.
Garden Shovel, 8 3.
Goad, 8 14.
Grid-Iron, 8 38.
Genteel Punch, 8 114.
Great Saddle, 8 95.
Grices, Griecces, 8 99, and 13 19 84 121.
Ground plot, 8 112.
Graiving board, 8 129.
Geometrical square, 8 134, and 9 47.
Gouge, 8 136 137 154 158, and 9 125.
Glew pot, 8 140.
Great house screws, 8 148.
Grooving hook, 8 154 156.
Grooving goug, 8 158.
Glovers with, 8 165.
Globes, 8 166.
Geometrical Semy-circle, 8 169.
Geometrical Staff, 9 13.
Geometrical Yard, 9 13.
Grinding Stone, 9 31 119 120.
Geometrical Quadrant, 9 46.
Gunners Scale 9 65.
Grail, 9 92.
Gwanet, 9 93.
Glans, 9 95.
Glosing Iron, 9 99.
Glafs Panes, 9 106 107.
Glafs Body, 9 173.
Grofier, 9 105.
Guttering knife, 9 115.
Guttering Tongs, 9 116.
Grindle Stone, 9 120.
Gutter Stone, 9 145.
Garnifning Awl, 9 162.
Girth Web, 9 167.
Gate, 9 192, and 13 5 12 13 72, & 8 35.
German Alphabet, 10 3.
Greek Alphabet, 10 4.
Greek Accents, 10 4.
Goth Alphabet, 10 6.
Georgianians Alphabet, 10 6.
Griffins Foot, 10 14 15.
Grape Mill, 11 18.
Gill, 11 19.
Gallon, 11 19.
Glifter pipe, 11 42 47, and 12 19
Goose Bill Forceps, 12 11.
Goose Bill Pincers, 12 11.
Girdle, 12 29.
Goose Bill with Screws, 12 11.
Goose Bill, 12 17, and 10 9.
Glofocoman, 12 32.
Garden, 12 49.
Garden houfe, 12 49.
Gallary, 13 7.
Gate open, 13 11.
Gates difplaid, 13 76 80.
Gaufanon, 13 21.
Gwydon, 13 21.
Gable end of a Houfe, 13 77.
Gable end of a Church, 13 79.
Globe, 13 81.
Ground plot, 8 67.
Globical Capital, 13 82.
Grave Stone, 13 90.
Gate fhut, 13 96.
Golding Iron, 13 113.
Garbow, 13 141.
Gate houfe, 13 144, and 9 190.
Garter Buckle, 7 37.

H.

Hatchel, 6 8.
Hank of thread, 6 20.
Havits, 6 25.
Handle Stock, 6 26.
Heel Tack, 6 43.
Hollin Stick, 6 45, and 8 113.
Hacker, 6 49.
Hook, 6 25 50 51, and 7 99 100 136 144, and 8 5 6 7 14 21 22 31 97 106 120 139 146 154 156 157 158, and 9 39 79 123 165.
Ham, 6 52.
Hanch of Venifon, 6 54.
Hofts, Hoftelles purfe, 6 63.
Hatchet, 6 65 66, and 7 109 111, and 8 75 154.
Hoops, 6 67 74 80, and 8 4.
Hand Bit, 6 68, and 9 1.
Hogshead, 6 72.
Horfe Bags, 6 76.
Holding Tongs, 7 66.
Hammer, 7 128 142, and 8 96 145 and 9 45 73 76 84 117 152.
Horfhoe, 7 6 7 139, and 13 106.
Hanging Lock Key, 7 11 30.
Horfe Lock, 7 17.
Half round Buckle, 7 38.
Hanging Lock, 7 21.
Hinge, 7 22.
Hatch hing, 7 22.
Hack, 7 153.
Horfe Twitchers, 7 25 29.
Hand Vice, 7 32 67.
Half round Graver, 7 66.
Horfe Bit, 7 43 45.
Half Cheek Bit, 7 43 45.
Hand Vice Screwed, 7 49.
Hank of gold Thread, 7 81.
Heading Ax, 7 85 94.
Hand Cuffs, 7 89.
Hand Irons, 7 89.
Heading Frame, 7 94.
Hulch, 7 98.
Hatchet-Cleaver, 7 98.
Heel fhave, 7 108.
Hopper Wheel, 7 105.
Heading knife, 7 109.
Hollowing knife, 7 119.
Hearth Staff, 7 127.
Hand hammer, 7 128, and 9 141 158.
Hearth, 7 134.
Heel Spur, 7 141.
Holy Water Sprinkle, 7 148, & 13 71.
Halfe Spade, 8 5 6.
Half round Shovel, 8 7.
Hedging hook, 8 14.
Hay hook, 8 21 22, and 9 139.
Harrow, 8 29 30.
Hatch, 8 34 38.
Harvefl Bottle, 8 38 39.
Harvefl Can, 8 40.
Harvefl Tankard, 8 40.
Horfe Comb, 8 41.
Horfe Mane Comb, 8 42.
Hoop, 8 46.
Houfe Screws, 8 148.
Horfe Cart, 8 48.
Haume, 8 71, and 9 6.
Hammer-hatcher, 8 75, and 9 150.
Hand Barrow, 8 86.
Houten Beytel, 8 87 88.
Houten hammer, 8 87 88.
Horfe Litter, 8 98.
Hand hook, 8 105.
Hand Brufh, 8 89.
Hammer Pincers, 8 115.
High heel Shoe, 8 117.
Hewing knife, 8 121, and 9 150.
Half round Plain, 8 123.
Hallow Shaff, 8 123.
Hold-fafl, 8 129, and 9 27 100 137 180.
Hand Spikes, 8 146 148.

Hollow

Hollow Mandrill, 8 155.
Hour Circle, 8 166.
Hoop Dial, 8 168.
Horizontal Dial, 8 168.
Hand Saw, 8 1.
Hatchet, 9 5 93.
Hatchet head, 9 6.
Haft. Halve, or Handle, 9 6 135 137. and 8 43 104. and 11 20 22 46.
Hide, 9 38.
Hour glass, 9 56.
Hawks Bill Burnisher, 9 70.
Hollowing Studdy, 9 71.
Hollowing hook, 9 79.
Hanging Candlestick, 9 79. and 13 69.
Horse head Sriddy, 9 80.
Hookt Wyer, 9 86.
Hatters Maller, 9 108.
Hatters Shears, 9 112.
Hurdle, 9 112.
Haythorn, 9 114.
House Clock, 9 55.
Hay Rake, 8 11.
Hovell, 9 191.
Hollin Chissel, 9 123.
Hollin hook, 9 123.
Hollin Round Tool, 9 124.
Hand Screw, 9 125.
Hollin point, 9 126.
Hoppet or Hobbet, 9 153.
Harp, 9 139.
Horn Press, 9 132.
Hatchet-hammer, 9 150.
Hod, 9 156.
Hand Brush, 9 158.
Hand Board, 9 158.
Hair hook, 9 165.
Hair Cissars, 9 177.
Hook, 9 96 125 143 182. and 10 15 and 8 5 6 7 14 102 134. and 11 33 40.
Hexagon Mount, 9 184.
Hexagon Gatehouse, 9 190.
Hebrew Alphabet, 10 5.
High Dutch Alphabet, 10 3.
Hippocrise Bag, 11 13.
Head Saw, 11 34 46.
Hook Cautery, 11 45.
Hooked Pincers, 12 17.
Hedged, 12 49.
Hexagon Steeple. 13 42.
Hand Bell, 13 49.
Host Cup covered, 13 60.
High Altar, 13 63.
Hexagon Roof, 13 75.
Hot House, 10 16.
Hippocrates Bench, 12 27 34.
Hexagon Pyramid, 12 51.
Handle for a Vulters Bill, 12 22.
Hook Ladder, 7 150.
Houses of Heaven. See Scheme.
Hand Burnisher, 9 70.
Hexagon Tower, 13 88.
House, 13 90 79. and 9 186. and 12 41.
Holds, 13 12 72.
Hall, 13 90.
Hermathema, 13 100.
Hermheracles, 13 100.
Hermaphroditus, 13 100.
Howboy, 13 109.
Hunters Horns, 13 112.
Hook Iron, 13 113.
Hill overcast, 13 120.
Hill on a Hill, 13 120.
Hill, 13 120.
Heart, 13 121.
Horsemans Flask, 13 126.
Horns, 13 133 145 111.
Hull of a Ship, 13 149.

I.

Jersey Comb, 6 9 10.
Jug, 6 58.
Ingate, 7 48.
Jack Barrel, 7 132.
Jews Cleaver, 7 150.
Inke of a Mill, 8 57 58 60 64 65.
Inke of a Mill hooked, 8 65.
Joynter, 8 78 132. and 9 19 153.
Inch Gouge, 8 137.
Joyners Bench, 8 139.
Iron Screw, 8 143.
Iron Crow, 8 144.
Jack Engine, 8 145 149.
Joint Collar, 8 151 153.
Jack Plain, 8 154. and 9 19.
Index of a Globe, 8 166.
Jacobs Staff, 8 169. and 9 48.
Inlaying Saw, 9 2.
Joyners Rule, 9 13.
Joyners Square, 9 15.
Joyners Gage, 9 18.
Joyners Plain, 9 19.
Inamel Pestel, 9 83.
Inamel Muller, 9 83.
Inamelling Brush, 9 85.
Inamelling Tongs, 9 85.
Iron Maller, 9 117.
Inkhorn, 9 123.
Inke, 9 138. and 13 115.
Iron Punch, 9 164.
Infuser, 9 173. and 11 6.
Irish Alphabet, 10 6.
Jacobites Alphabet, 10 6.
Illyrick Alphabet, 10 6.
Italian Alphabet, 10 6.
Israelites Alphabet, 10 6.
Indian Alphabet, 10 6.
Iron, 10 14.
Just, 10 15.
Iosephus, 10 16.
Jard, 11 12.
Incision Knife, 11 21. and 7 136.
Itinerarium, 11 42.
Incision Ring, 12 23.
Instrument Case, 12 35 * 30 & 12.
Javelin pointed Knife, 12 26.
Juggling Bodkin, 12 36.
Jugling Instruments, 12 36 37.
Invisible Messenger, 12 37.
Jews Altar, 13 50.
Jews Ark, 13 51.
Incense Cups, 13 52.
Incense Altar, 13 54.
Jews Laver, 13 58.
Incense Pot, 13 70.
Iron Staple, 6 23.
Jaums, 13 34.
Infula, 13 119.
Jgging Iron, 13 130.
Jews Trumpet, 13 145 146.
Imbattled Pedement wise, 13 144.

K.

Knives of several sorts, 6 41 42 43 48 49. and 7 54 98 103 109 134 119. 136 137 139. and 9 98 99 33 36 44 91 98 99 105 111 115 131 132 150 164 182. and 12 18 23 26 36. and 11 21 36 38.
Key, 7 9 10 133.
Key double Bitted, 7 11.
Kneading Trough, 7 102 106.
Kid of Gorse, 7 107.
Key Treble Bitted, 7 140.
Key with 3 Shanks, 7 140.
Kible, 7 148.
Knecht, 7 152.
Kaspe, 8 43.
Knives, 8 121. *
Kiln, 11 39.
Key of a Vulters Bill, 12 22.
Key of a Screw Head, 12 22.
Kramberg, 13 120
Knot of Silver Thread, 7 81.
Kril hook, 7 100.
Korf, 7 106.
Katherine Wheel, 8 10.
Knot of Tatching Thread, 8 115.
Knot, 13 135 136 140 143 146.

L.

Last, 6 44.
Loat of Bread, 6 56.
Lock, 7 8 17 18 19 20 21. and 12 37.
Limbeck, 7 55. and 11 3.
Ladle, 7 56 145.
Lamp, 7 76 92, and 13 119.
Little Easy, 7 91.
Lath, 7 148.
Lath or Lat Axe, 7 110.

Lathe, 7 115. and 8 149. * 164.
Ladder, 7 92 115 150. and 8 24 25. and 12 27. and 9 134 32. and 13 1.
Losenge Formale, 7 130.
Lancer, 7 137.
Losenge Buckle, 7 38.
Level, 7 146. and 8 78 79 80 144. and 9 145.
Leather Bottle, 8 39.
Laces, 8 50.
Laths, 8 84.
Letter, 8 73.
Leathered Stirrup, 8 93.
Long Stick, 8 116.
Lead, 8 115.
Lyme Hook, 8 120. and 9 39.
Long Quiver, 8 125.
Line, 8 131 148 169. and 9 46 154 181 144.
Long Joynter, 8 132.
Lever, 8 144 146 148.
Line Rowle, 8 148.
Lock Saw, 9 2.
Long Plain, 9 19.
Looking Glass, 9 62.
Lapidaries Mill, 9 87.
Leaf, 9 95.
Laperkin, 9 98.
Long Ginnet, 9 134.
Lubow, 9 136.
Lath Measure, 9 150.
Line Pins, 9 154.
Letter Alphabetically, 10 1 2 3 4 5 6.
Letters for Numbers. 10 1.
Letters for Words. ibid.
Letters made double. ibid.
Low Dutch Alphabet, 10 3.
Little Piercer, 10 10.
Lotio, 10 16.
Laconium, ibid.
Limbeck head, 11 7.
Levitor with Handle, 11 20. and 12 9.
Lints, 11 25.
Levitor, 11 26 29 33 35. and 12 3 20 23.
Launcett, 11 31 34.
Levitory, 11 33.
Lentell, 11 35. and 12 3.
Lenticular, 11 35. and 12 3.
Ligatura. Ligamentum, 11 42.
Little Chest, 12 1.
Laqueus, 12 12.
Lint, ibid.
Levitor divided, 12 23.
Leaves of a Gate, 13 13 18 19.
Levitical Altar, 13 50.
Laver, 13 58.
Lamp fired, 13 68.
Legionary Eagle, 13 81.
Loover, 13 90.
Lanthorn, ibid.
Lace, 13 108 123 136 142.
Loose Socket, 13 109.
Lamp in a Lamp, 13 119.
Log of Wood, ibid.
Loaf. Loaves, 13 52.
Losenge, 13 129.
Lobsters Claws, 13 133.
Long Cross, 13 142 144.
Lingate, 7 48.
Link wreathed, 13 147.
Long Needle, 12 30.
Leather Bag, 8 36.
Label, 8 167.
Laying Brush, 9 31 33.
Lituus, 13 143.
Link, 13 147 145 146.

M.

Mounter, 6 46.
Mutton, 6 51 57.
Mawkin. Maukin, 6 53.
Manchett, 6 56.
Mallet, 6 69. and 7 146. and 8 76 135 139 141 161. and 9 4 117 130 108 143. and 12 25.
Mash, 6 86.
Milk Tankard, 6 87. and 13 124.
Meal, 6 64.
Mascle Buckle, 7 38 130.
Mullets, 7 41 43.
Melting pot, 7 65 56.
Maule, 7 94. and 8 76 87 88 161 and 9 130 144.
Moulding Table, 7 103.
Moulding Board, 7 103. and 9 154.
Meal Shovel, 7 105.
Mande, 7 106.
Malt Shovel, 8 3. and 7 125.
Measure double bottom, 8 4 46.
Milk pail, 8 26.
Muck Cart, 8 48.
Mill Stone, 8 55 56 121 * and 9 138.
Mill pick, 8 56.
Mill wheel, 8 57.
Mill Rinde, 8 58 62 64 66 and 13 115.
Mill Rinde Molined, 8 65.
Mill Rinde pointed. 8 65.
Mattock, 8 71.
Masons Mallet, 8 76.
Mawe, 8 87 88.
Measure, 8 46 112 & 9 150.
Miter Square, 8 138 and 9 16 17.
Miter Box, 8 138.
Male Screw, 8 143.
Mandrels, 8 150 151. and 13 115.
Moveable Label, 8 167.
Marriners Compass, 8 168. and 9 58.
Motion Wheel, 8 169.
Mortess Chissel, 9 22.
Muller, 9 31 83.
Mortar, 9 83.
Moll stick, 9 32.
Minute paces, 9 53.
Meridian Spherical Dial, 9 54.
Marriners Card, 9 58.
Marriners Chart, 9 59.
Mirror, 9 62.
Magnifying Glass, ibid.
Multiplying Glass, 9 63.
Mathematical Square, 9 64.
Mathematical Rule, 9 65.
Muffler, 9 84.
Mill, 9 87 138. and 11 18. and 8 119.
Moulds, 9 99 146 147 148 160 161 101 145.
Marking Staple, 9 114.
Moving Twerl, 9 121.
Mullen Wheel, 9 137.
Mollin, 9 138.
Masons Hammer, 9 141.
Mattock, 9 143.
Male, 9 144.
Moulds for Cornishes, 9 146 147 148.
Moulds for Stone Works, 9 146 147 148.
Mount, 9 184 189.
Manks Alphabet, 10 6.
Maronian Alphabet, ibid.
Matracium, 11 13.
Mill Press, 11 18.
Myrtle leaf pointed Knife, 11 21. and 12 26.
Mouth Syringe, 11 28.
Male Trepan, 11 34 35. and 12 4.
Mela, 12 12.
Mitella, ibid.
Mediolus, 12 4.
Motos, 12 12.
Metrenchyta, 12 33.
Metrenchytam, ibid.
Matrix pipe, 12 33.
Moving House, 12 41.
Mantle Chimney pieces, 13 34.
Mother Church, 13 43 86.
Minster, 13 46 47.
Mercy Seat, 13 51.
Molten Sea, 13 58 *
Mured Tower, 13 75.
Masonry House, 13 79.
Moulded Battlements, 13 86.

Mansion,

Mansion, 13 90.
Mannour house, 13 90.
Muer Steen, 13 115.
Mill Iron, ibid.
Molen Yfer, 13 15.
Mould Board, 13 117.
Mountain, 13 120.
Mount treble mounted, ibid.
Mount, ibid.
Mole hill, ibid.
Minute stops, 13 121.
Miter, 13 126.
Mace, 13 130.
Mullet umbrated, 13 139.
Mercuries Arm, 13 150.
Mercuries Shoe, 13 151.
Moveing square, 9 16.

N.

Nogg, 6 13.
Napkin, 6 30.
Needle, 6 34, and 8 165, and 9 185 192. and 11 41 42 43, and 12 10 16 21 30.
Nippers, 6 62, and 7 74 75, and 8 114, and 9 99, and 11 31.
Nail Piercer, 6 68, and 9 1.
Nail, 7 1 5 6 74, and 13 116 132 133.
Nut of a Spindle, 7 132.
Noose of a Rope, 8 146, and 7 100.
Needle box, 9 122.
Needle Drawers, ibid.
Noches, 9 138.
Numeral Letters, 10 1.
Numeral Figures, 10 6.
Norman Alphabet, ibid.
Narrow neck Distillatory, 11 6.
Narrow neck Infuser, ibid.
Nodus, Nodulus, 11 43.
Nipple Pipe, 12 18.
Nipple Cap, ibid.
Nuntius Invisibilis, 12 37.
Novacula, 11 21.
Nave of a Wheel, 8 8.

O.

Oven, 7 105.
Orle Fermale, 7 140.
Oxe Sowe, 7 150 154.
Oxe Yoke, 8 31.
Open Curry Comb, 8 42.
Open Wheel, 8 59.
Over-shot Mill Wheel, ibid.
Oval gage, 9 18
Octodrant, 9 48.
Oyl Brush, 9 105.
Oger, 9 7. see Augre.
O. G. Mould, 9 19.
Ozeana, 10 15.
Ozeana's stile, ibid.
Oscula, 11 6.
Oyl Vessel, 11 12.
Oyl Press, 11 15.
Otenchyta, 11 28.
Oegin, ibid.
Odontagra, 11 29.
Open Cauterizing Iron, 12 6.
Open Trough, 12 32.
Oxe house, 12 45.
Out-lets, ibid.
Oratories, 13 46.
Out-Wall, 13 72.
Over-seiling Roof, 13 75.
Old fashion Trepan, 13 105.
Old fashion M. 13 131.
Octagon, 13 125 134.
Octagon Steeple, 13 42.

P.

Preme, 6 22 23.
Preen, 6 29.
Peece of Cloth, 6 30 31.
Pressing Iron, 6 34.
Punching lead, 6 41.
Pegging Aul, 6 42.
Pairing Knife, 6 43.
Pollishing stick, 6 45.
Petty-boy, 6 46.
Punching hook, 6 50.
Peel, 6 53, and 7 102 104.
Platter, 6 55 57.
Pye, 6 55.
Pullet roasted, 6 57.
Plate, 6 61, and 9 166.
Paper of Tobacco, 6 62.
Pipes, 6 61. and 9 183, and 11 42 47, and 12 21 23 24 33.
Pincers, 6 62, and 7 2 143, and 8 114 115, and 9 116 181 179 192.
Purse, 6 63.
Piercer, 6 68, and 8 122, and 9 1 24 175, and 11 33.
Pump, 6 87 88, and 7 123.
Pump Bucket, 6 88.
Paper Rowles, 7 3.
Pad-lock, 7 19 20, and 12 37.
Pincer Barnacles, 7 26.
Plume Rule, 7 51 54.
Plumet, 7. 50, 51, and 8 78 79 80 169, and 9 46 144.
Plyers, 7 63.
Pomel of the Handle, 7 66 141 & 8 92.
Pile of Weights, 7 73.
Planishing Hammer, 7 77.
Pillory, 7 82,
Prick, 7 96 98, and 8 45 70 85 131, and 9 142 143 151.
Prisoners Bolts, 7 86.
Pioners Spade, 7 102.
Paddle, 7 102.
Peel shod, 7 104.
Pickel, 7 107, and 8 7, and 9 134 136.
Pitch-fork, 7 107 146 and 8 7 10 and 9 134.
Pareing ladder, 7 115.
Piggen, 7 124.
Punch, 7 126, and 8 112 114, and 9 116 142 164.
Pareing hook, 7 136.
Pareing knife, 7 136, and 8 128.
Pen knife, 7 137, and 9 182, and 12 18 23.
Plate flory, 7 140.
Pick-Hammer, 7. 142, and 9. 158.
Plummers Pincers, 7 143.
Plain, 7 145, and 8 123 132, and 9 19 20 21 154.
Pan, 7 145, and 9 7, and 11 13 39.
Plow Slade, 8 2 48.
Pruning hook, 8 5 14.
Plow, Plough, 8 18 132 164, and 9 44 137 140.
Pole, 8 23 91 147, and 7 106, and 9 39 40.
Pickel Grains, 8 27.
Pin, 8 32 127 147, and 6 13, and 9 26 95 154, and 11 42 43.
Pin Swingle Tree, 8 33.
Pioners pick, 8 45, and 9 135.
Paviers pick, 8 70 72 73 74, and 9 135.
Pick Axe, 8 70, and 9 142 144.
Paper foulded, 8 73.
Plasterers Hatchet, 8 75.
Plumb Rule, 8 78.
Parallel-side Billet, 8 81.
Pitch, 8 108.
Pearch, 13 105.
Pinked shoe, 8 117.
Pack Saddle, 8 95.
Pad Saddle, ibid.
Pilling knife, 8 118.
Pilling Iron, ibid.
Pooler, Poler, 8 120.
Pollisher, 8 122.
Pareing Chissel, 8 135, and 9 127.
Plank, 8 139.
Pail, 8 26.

Plain

Plain Iron, 8 142.
Pudlaces, 8 146.
Pulley, 8 146 148, and 9 119 120, and 12 32.
Plumb line, 8 131 148.
Pin Mandril, 8 151.
Pointed Groving hook, 8 154 156.
Post, 8 165.
Paralaligrem, 8 169.
Pareing knife, 7 109.
Pit Saw, 9 2, and 8 133.
Pallet, 9 31.
Pair of Tents, 9 96.
Pencills, 9 31 34.
Priming knife, 9 33.
Pastill, 9 34 83.
Pairing Spade, 9 137.
Profitable Rod, 9 48.
Perpendicular Weather Glass, 9 50.
Paces of a Clock, 9 53.
Planispheral Sun-dial, 9 54.
Perambulator, 9 60.
Prospective Glass, 9 65.
Planishing stake, 9 72.
Plank, 9 80.
Poiling pan, 9 83.
Pot, 6 59 and 9 34, and 11 5 39.
Prickel, 9 89.
Pewterers Wheel, 9 81.
Pair of Glans, 9 95.
Pan of Fire, 9 113.
Pot of Fire, ibid.
Point, 9 86 124 125 183, and 13 133.
Press, 9 42 43 132, and 11 14 15 17 18, and 7 131.
Pining Iron, 9 156.
Plaster Moulds, 9 160.
Port in a Wall, 9 192.
Pannel Aul, 9 162.
Pannel Bodkin, ibid.
Pricking Aul, ibid.
Pair of Clams, 9 77 78.
Peging Iron, 9 164 165.
Puller, 9 175, and 11 20, and 12 10.
Potion Cup, 9 176.
Preserver of the Membrane, 9 179.
Pellican, 9 175 179, and 11 10 29, and 12 16.
Pile, 9 185.
Pedement Imbattelled, 9 107, and 13 19.
Poland Alphabet, 10 6.
Phinitians Alphabet, ibid.
Phrigian Alphabet, ibid.
Phisitians Stool, 10 13.
Pedee Gryphij, 10 14 15.
Perawick Thimble, 10 14.
Pipe Funtanel, ibid.
Purgatory, 10 16.
Powdering Tub, ibid.
Psammismus, ibid.
Pot covered, 11 5.
Phial, 11 6 7.
Philter, 11 13.
Portinger, ibid.
Pipkin, ibid.
Petia, ibid.
Pint, 11 19.
Pottle, ibid.
Probe, 11 22 42, and 12 12 30.
Pincers, 11 24 29 31 37 41 44, and 10 10. and 12 8 10 11 15 17 20 21 22.
Plagets, 11 25, and 12 12.
Pincer like Spetulum Oris, 11 26.
Pipe, 11 28. and 12 7 17 18 19, and 6 85.
Pacis, 11 29.
Punchers, ibid.
Purger, 11 12.
Phlegms, 11 31.
Picker, 11 30 31.
Pyulcus, 11 34.
Plain Pelicans, 11 36.
Polipus Pincers, 11 37, and 12 15.
Pareing Tools, 11 40.
Pincer like Spatula Linguæ, 11 44.
Pincer with Spring, ibid.
Pin, 12 4, and 13 133, and 6 12.
Pletisma, 12 12.
Plenia, ibid.
Plumaceolus, ibid.
Plegula, ibid.
Plagilet, ibid.
Pitracium, ibid.
Plaster, ibid.
Pullicans, 12 16.
Parrot Bill pincer, 12 21.
Pointed knife, 12 26.
Plintheum Nilei, 12 28.
Pointed Probe, 12 30.
Plaster Box, 12 35.
Puddling, 12 37.
Pile of Counters, ibid.
Pavilion, 12 40.
Papilion, ibid.
Parliament Robes, 12 41.
Play House, 12 48.
Pillar, 12 51, and 13 31 33 34 35 36 62 66 82 90 110 123 134.
Palled, 12 49, and 13 29.
Pyramid, 12 51, and 13 40 8 144.
Prospect of a Rome, 12 52.
Prospect of a City, 12 52.
Ports, 13 3 4 5 72 75 84 92 94 95 96 104.
Portoppen, 13 3 4 84.
Port with Chamber over, 13 7.
Port displaid, 13 11 13 12 72.
Portcullis, 13 12 72 95 102 104.
Portcullis chained, 13 17.
Porch, 13 19 39.
Portall, 13 19 24.
Pedement, 13 19 78 97.
Penon, 13 13 21 103.
Penon Banner, 13 22.
Pillar Fusilee, or Fuse. 13 29.
Pedestal of a Pillar, 13 29 35 73 88 and 9 190.
Pillasters, 13 34 82.
Pillars Arched, 13 35.
Prospect of the Inside of a Church, 13 38.
Parochial Chappel, 13 46 47.
Popish Altar, 13 63.
Plain Battlement, 13 75 89.
Port portcullised, 13 72 144.
Pigeon House, 13 75.
Pillar fluted, 13 82.
Plain Wall, 13 85.
Pedement Cap Head, 13 97 144 78.
Pulpit, 13 100. *
Portcullis Armed, 13 104.
Penoncel, 13 103.
Penon double pointed, 13 103.
Proboscides, 13 112 145 146.
Potonce, 13 123.
Powder Flask, 13 102.
Powder Box, 13 126.
Pile flected, 13 132.
Pale, 13 110.
Prow of a Ship, 13 148.
Portable Boats, 13 153.
Planishing Anvil, 7 33.
Pannier, 7 106.
Pough, 8 37.
Potent, 8 43.

Q.

Quarr, 6 59, and 11 19.
Quill of Yarn, 6 12 14.
Quill of Silver, 7 79.
Quill, 7 80. and 8 110, and 9 173 and 11 42, and 12 16 21.
Quadrant ferre de Moline, 8 61.
Quivers, 8 125.
Quadrant, 8 166, and 9 46 48, and 13 122.
Quadrant of Altitude, 8 166.
Quadrant with moving Index, ibid.
Quadrangle, 9 47.
Quarry Mould, 9 101.

R.

Reel, and Pin, 6 12 19.
Rovers Winch, 6 18.
Reed, 6 21.
Raling Prick, 6 47, and 7 96.
Rowl, 6 56, and 7 3.
Raling Stool, 6 70.
Rundlet, 6 72.

Rung,

Rung, 6 84 117 118. and 9 40.
Rung with a Pipe, 6 85.
Rowl of Paper, 7 3.
Rowler Barnacles, 7 28.
Rowel, 7 36 37 40 41 43 141. and 13 118.
Roll of Silver Thread, 7 81.
Rod, 7 92. and 8 146. and 9 48.
Rope, 7 100 154. and 8 146.
Round Back Cleaver, 7 98.
Round Shaft, 7 112.
Runging Addice, 7 115 116.
Rung covered, 7 117.
Running Trough, 7 123.
Rivetting Hammer, 7 128.
Ring Barnacle, 7 142.
Runner or Ring, 7 142. and 8 87 88.
Roof Ladder, 7 150.
Riddle, 7 153. and 8 46.
Round Shovel, 8 4 7.
Reeving Sieve, 8 4.
Rake, 8 11 101.
Rack, 8 38 145.
Rounce Wheel, 8 56.
Rinde of a Mill, 8 58 60 66.
Roman Tile, 8 83.
Raeth Cap, 8 101.
Ribbis, 8 102.
Rest, 8 104. and 9 31.
Rowl of Tatching Thread, 8 115.
Running Wedge, 8 117.
Ring and Mill, 8 119.
Ripper, 8 123 146.
Roman Quivers, 8 125.
Rabbet Plain, 8 132. and 9 20.
Rowller, 8 144 150 146 148. and 12 12.
Rule, 7 51 54. and 8 146. and 9 13 65 145.
Ruler, 8 167.
Ripping Chissel, 8 146.
Round Collar, 8 152.
Round edge Grooving hook, 8 154.
Round Gouge, 8 158.
Round Smoothing Plain, 9 20.
Rung way, or Pole, 9 39 40.
Raising Swage, 9 72.
Raising Hammer, 9 76.
Round hollowing hook, 9 79.
Ring, 9 84. and 12 23 37.
Rounding Saw, 9 96.
Redishing Knife, 9 91.
Rounding Knife, 9 91 111.
Rosin Box, 9 100.
Rounding Trencher, 9 111.
Round Tool, 9 124.
Rasp, 9 125.
Rasping Hook, 11 40.
Running Screw, 9 128.
Roasters, 9 131.
Roasting Tongs, ibid.
Rough shaving Board, 9 133.
Round Scallipers, 9 134.
Roman S. wreathed, 9 169.
Roman S. imbossed, 9 170.
Roman C rebated, 9 171.
Roman V 13 118.
Round Chaffer, 9 174.
Round Tower, 9 189.
Roman Alphabet, 10 1.
Rostrum Extrahens, 10 9.
Receiver, 11 2 4 7 14 15 18.
Refrigeratorium, 11 2.
Reverberium, 11 2.
Retort, 11 10.
Retort Glass, ibid.
Perry Mill, 11 18.
Rippers, 11 30.
Razour, 11 38 39.
Ridged House, 12 45.
Remora, 12 14.
Rebrachiatorum, 12 29.
Roman Altar, 13 55 56.
Round Altar, 13 55.
Roman Sacrificing Altar, 13 57.
Ridg roofed, 13 75 84 94.
Round roofed, 13 75.
Redoubts, 13 94.
Rubin, 13 108 136 137 138 144.
Recorder, 13 109.
Rattle, 13 109.
Rams horns, 13 111.
Rock or Roch, 13 113.
Raste, 13 114.
Rammer, 13 123.
Roman Boats, 13 153.
Rock and Chain, 7 95.
Rhinenchytes, 11 28.
Raspatorium, 11 40.
Royal Tent, 12 40 41.
Roofs of several manners, 12 44. and 9 184 188 189 191. and 13 75 76 83 84 85 86 88 89 91 92 93 94 95 96 97 123 144.

S.

Swingle hand, 6 4.
Swingle foot, ibid.
Stock Card, 6 7.
Spinning Wheel, 6 11 32.
Spool of Yarn, 6 15 16 17.
Spool Knave and Pin, 6 17.
Slipping of Yarn, 6 19.
Skain of Thread, 6 20.
Shuttle, 6 22 23.
Stock, 6 13 26. and 8 134.
Shear Handle, 8 104.
Shears, 6 27 33 35. and 7 62. and 8 104 107 165. and 9 89 112 115.
Shears Bridled, 6 28.
Shi circ 6 33. see Cizars.
pents ta
Sheep Shears, 6 35.
Scorer, ibid.
Shearmans Shears, 6 39.
Shooe Sole, 6 44.
Stick, 6 45. and 7 98. and 8 4 46 116 161. and 9 81 84 165.
Scuers, 6 47.
Steel, 6 48. and 8 128. and 9 127.
Stool, 6 70. and 10 13. and 13 105.
Syphon, 6 83. and 11 28.
Scope, 6 86.
Sack, 6 64.
Sprig Nail, 7 1.
Stythe, 7 4.
Square Lock, 7 8.
Staple, 7 23 106. and 8 37 38 114.
Single toothed Barnacles, 7 31.
Smithy, ibid.
Smiths Forge, ibid.
Streight Nose Tongs, ibid.
Square Anvil, 7 33.
Smooth face Anvil, ibid.
Scotch Spur, 7 34.
Spur, 7 141.
Spur shank, 13 106. and 7 141.
Spur and Leather, 7 35.
Spur Buckle, 7 37.
Semiton, 7 38.
Spur Rowel, 7 40 41 43 141. and 13 118.
Snaffle, 7 43 45.
Shave hook, 7 50 51.
Screwed Vice, 7 49.
Staff, 7 50 121 127 146. and 8 91 169. and 13 110 111 113 116 140 143 123 124.
Soddering Iron, 7 52 53 74. and 9 75 98.
Scales, 7 64.
Scalpers, 7 66. and 8 162.
Stone Burnisher, 7 68.
Smiths Sparrow Hawk, 7 68.
Steel Burnisher, 7 69.
Spoon Anvil, 7 71.
Swage, 7 72. and 9 18 72.
Sheering Tool, 7 74.
Spoon Hammer, 7 77. and 9 76.
Shakle Bolt, 7 86 87. and 8 32.
Shackles Chained, 7 88.
Skuch Rod, 7 90.
Stocks, 7 91.
School-Masters Rod, 7 73.
Stan, 7 96.
Shamble Hook, 7 97.
Shave, 7 98.
Swaid back Cleaver, ibid.
Stem, 7 100 131.
Screw, 7 101. and 8 139 140 142 143. and 9 43 125 128 172 180 and 11 27 48.

Spade, 7 102 150 153. and 8 1 6 5 and 9 134 136.
Shovel, 7 105 125. and 8 3 4 7. and 9 136 137 139 140 141.
Spoke shave, 7 110.
Shaft, 7 112. and 8 124.
Slings, 7 121.
Stone Trough, 7 123.
Smiths Bolster, 7 126.
Slice, 7 127. and 9 154 159. and 12 3.
Screw Pin, 7 128 129.
Sledge, 7 128. and 8 2 48.
Screw Plate, 7 129 130.
Shoe Buckle, 7 130.
Spindle of a Press, 7 131.
Square Bore, 7 132.
Spindle, 6 15 16. and 7 132 133. and 8 110. and 9 118 119 123.
Searing Iron, 7 138. and 11 45.
Striker, 7 138.
Spur shank with a Nail, 7 141.
Sheming Pincers, 7 143.
Shave Hook, 7 144.
Strickles, 7 144. and 8 46.
Sheet Lead, 7 144.
Sheming Maller, 7 146.
St James's Cross, 7 148.
Sowe, 7 150 154.
Sickle, 7 152. and 8 16 17. and 11 21.
Saw toothed, 7 152.
Sieve, 7 153. and 8 4 46.
Spade sole, 7 154. and 8 6.
Sieve Rim, 7 154.
Spade shod, 8 1 6.
Spade Iron, 8 2.
Shooe for a Spade, 8 2 6.
Sythe Blade, 8 9 12.
Sythe, 8 13 47. and 9 135. and 12 18.
Skimming Dish, 8 14.
Suck, 8 18 20.
Sough, 8 21 22.
Seigh, 8 24.
Swingle Tree, 8 33.
Springtree, ibid.
Stiles, 8 34. and 12 17 24.
Satchel, 8 36.
Sack, 8 37.
Stile Gate, 8 38.
Shovel Bottom, 8 45.
Slade, 8 48.
Saddle, 8 48 92 95 144. and 9 168.
Sails of a Windmill, 8 50 51.
Shafts of a Windmill, 8 52.
Salter Ferdon, 8 60.
Slaters Hammer, 8 75.
Salter, 8 77 99.
Stone, 8 81. and 9 84 85 98. and 13 29.
Stone Billet, 8 83. and 9 153.
Square Tile, 8 82.
Sedan, 8 91.
Stirrop, 8 92 93 94.
Shaloon, 8 97.
Starching Brush, 8 102.
Stand, 8 99.
Shoomakers Sear, 8 112.
Shooe measure, ibid.
Sandals, 8 114.
Shooe, ibid.
Stitching Stick, 8 116 117.
Scutching Knife, 8 121.
Shaving Knife, 8 121 128. and 9 131 132.
Steel Knives, 8 121 *.
Slitting Saw, 8 123.
Saw, 8 123 129. and 9 1 2 3 28 90. and 11 23 34 46. and 12 4.
Shaffe, 8 123.
Shave, 9 90.
Shaft head, 8 124.
Smoother, 8 128. and 11 35.
Semi-circle, 8 131 169
Standart, 8 131. and 13 144.
Strike block, 8 132.
Saw in a Frame, 8 133.
Square, 8 134 138. and 9 13 14 15 16 144 47 64.
Smoothing Plain, 8 134 135. and 9 21 19 20.
Skew Former, 8 136.
Saw Wrest, 8 137.
Square Gage, 8 138.
Square Maller, 8 141.
Sawing Tressel, ibid.
Socket Chissel, 8 145.
Snatch Block, 8 146 147.
Screw Mandrel, 8 150.
Sockets, ibid.
Shank Mandrel, 8 151.
Sweep, ibid.
Sharp pointed Grooving Tool, 8 156.
Smoothing Chissel, ibid.
Square Hook, 8 157.
Small Lathe, 8 162.
Stretching Sticks, 8 165.
Sun Dial, 8 168. and 9 51 52.
Semi-circle Instrument, 8 169.
Sawyers Saw, 9 2.
Sliding Dividers, 9 9 20.
Sprig Bit, 9 23.
Stock of a Tree, 9 28.
Stay, 9 31 32. and 13 123.
Stenshall, 9 33.
Scraping Knife, 9 36.
Skin, 9 38.
Screw Press, 9 43.
Semi Quadrant, 9 49.
Spherical Dial, 9 54
Seeing Glass, 9 62.
Sliding Semi-circle Compasses, 9 64.
Scheme, 9 68 69.
Studdy. Stiddy, 9 71 80.
Small Swage, 9 72.
Stake, 9 72 74.
Spoon Stamp, 9 73.
Square Hollow Hook, 9 79.
Sconce, 9 79. and 12 38.
Snuffers, 9 82. and 13 53.
Setting Hammer, 9 84.
Stone Ring, ibid.
Simmon Stick, 9 86.
Sand Box covered, 9 88.
Staddow, 9 94.
Stopping Knife, 9 98 99 105.
Simmoning Brush, 9 105.
Snuff Dishes, 13 53.
Stamper, 9 108.
Stiffning Brush, 9 110.
Stock Shears, 9 115.
Streightning File, 9 118.
Scouring Block, 9 121.
Square Shank Hook, 9 125.
Screw Rasp, ibid.
Streightning Tongs, 9 131.
Smooth shaving Knife, 9 131 132.
Shaving Board, 9 133.
Socket Pick Fork, 9 134.
Socket Pikel, 9 134 136.
Socket Sythe, 9 135.
Spade Handle or Head, 9 136 137.
Streight Sole Spade, 9 136.
Square Worthing Fork, ibid.
Socket Pikel Barred, ibid.
Shooe of a Trenching Spade, 9 140.
Stone Measure, 9 150.
Strainer, 9 162.
Saddle Tree, 9 162 167.
Sadlers Aul, 9 163.
Scallop Iron, 9 164.
Scoring Iron, ibid.
Scallop Pegging Iron, 9 165.
Stuffing Iron, ibid.
Square Buckle, 9 166.
Sliding Seat, 9 167.
Sliding Chair, ibid.
Side Saddle, 9 168.
Scarf, 9 169.
Speculum Matricis, 9 172. and 11 40 43.
Stitching Quill, 9 173. and 11 42. and 12 16.
Single Beak Pellican, 9 175.
Screwed Tooth Forcer, 9 175.
Single Tooth Pincer, ibid.
Seamsters Cissars, 9 177.

Seton

Seton, 9 191. and 11 41.
Stile for a Thorax Pipe, 9 183.
Square Tent, 9 185.
Square House, ibid.
Shourings, 9 186. and 12 45.
Saxon Letters, 10 2.
Swedes. Swedland Alphabet, 10 3.
Spanish Alphabet, 10 3.
Sclavonian Alphabet, 10 6.
Samaritan Alphabet, ibid.
Syriack Alphabet, ibid.
Sarsinian Alphabet, ibid.
Scarificator, 10 8.
Speculum Oris, 10 11.
Spathomela, ibid.
Speculum latum, ibid.
Stile of the Ozæna, 10 15.
Stove, 10 16. and 11 5.
Still, 11 1 2.
Strong Water Still, 10 2 3.
Stew, 11 5.
Stew pot covered, ibid.
Salt Basket, 11 12.
Salt Purger, ibid.
Strainer, 13 130.
Sawce Pan, 11 13.
Spout, 11 14 15.
Spatula, 11 20 22 25 28 33 46 and 12 3 21.
Scolopoma-chaerion, 11 21.
Syringomata, 11 21.
Syringotomus, 12 18.
Scalpellum Umbelicarium, 11 21.
Splatter, 11 25.
Spatula Linguæ, 11 25 44.
Spetulum Oris, 11 26 44.
Spatulum Oris with Screw, 11 27.
Spoon, 11 26. and 12 17.
Syringe, 11 28. and 12 33.
Scraping Spatula, 11 33.
Scraping Hook, ibid.
Smooth Levitor, 11 35.
Streight Pincers, 11 37.
Still Hole, 11 39.
Speculum Ani, 11 40 43.
Scraping Tool, 11 40.
Scalprum Rasorium, 11 40.
Seton Pincers, 11 41. and 12 8 10.
Syringe Pipe, 11 42. and 12 33.
Sutures, 11 42.
Speculum Matricis with Screw, 11 43.
Seton Needle, 11 43. and 12 10.
Spatula Oculi, 11 43.
Saw in a Handle, 11 46.
Stopple, ibid.
Spatha, 12 3 14 31.
Scraping Levitor, 12 3.
Short Saw, 12 9.
Streight hand Saw, 12 9.
Stone Forceps, 12 11.
Streight Probe, 12 12.
Spatula Probe, ibid.
Specillum, ibid.
Swathe Band, ibid.
Stupa. Stupea, ibid.
Sparadrapum, ibid.
Sear-cloth, ibid.
Spatha Hippocrates, 12 4.
Screw Pellican, 12 16.
Sucking Bottle, 12 18.
Spatula with Goose Bill, 12 21.
Screw head Key, 12 22.
Screw of a Fundement Pipe, 12 24.
Solid Pipe, ibid.
Scamnum Hippocratis, 12 27.
Square point Needle, 12 30.
Square pointed Probe, ibid.
Squirt, 12 33.
Salvator, 12 34.
Salvatory, ibid.
Sutlers Cabine, 12 39.
Sanctuary, 12 40.
Square Dove house, 12 42.
Slated house, 12 44.
Stable, 12 45.
Sheep Cott, 12 47.
Spire, 12 51 and 13 41 42 46 86 89 96.
Scaling Ladder, 13 1.
Six square Tower, 13 7.
Square Castle Towered, 13 9.
Square Fort, 13 10.
Stramer, 13 13.
Square Tower, 13 16 25.
Streams of Water, 13 20.
Stone Fusile, 13 29.
Square Fusile, ibid.
Shavered Piller, 13 33.
Solomons Porch, 13 39.
Steeple Spired, 13 41 42.
Square Steeple Spired, 13 41 42 46.
Sacraficeing Alter, 13 57.
Sea, 13 58 *
Sacrament Cup, 13 61.
Statue, 13 71.
Spiral Roof, 13 75 86 96 97.
Square Roof, ibid.
Sans Port, 13 75.
Square door Head, 13 78.
Square Castle, 13 72 83.
Square Steeple, 13 86.
Steeple, 13 41 42 45 46 86 87. and 9 186.
Spiral Tower, 13 89.
Saints Bell, 14 49.
Sentinal House, 13 89.
Square pillar, 13 90.
Sally-port, 13 92 96 104.
Spires eved, 13 94.
Sally-port Porculis, 13 104.
Seat, 13 105.
Semi circle, 13 107.
Serpents tail Cramp, ibid.
Snouts of Elephants, 13 112.
Shield, ibid.
Spoke of a Wheel, ibid.
Square Tile, 13 115.
Speare Head, 13 116.
Saxon F. 13 118.
Shapournet Crested, 13 120.
Steps, 13 121.
Skits, 13 147.
Strings, 13 136 140 143 147.
Ship, 13 148.

T.

Thrum, 6 22.
Towel, 6 30, and 9 33, 150 153.
Twisting wheel, 6 32.
Tassell, 6 26, and 13 134 136.
Trough, 6 40, and 7 102 106 121 123 134, and 8 33 100, and 12 32.
Tack, 6 43.
Thread, Thrid. 6 34.
Twiggen Basket, 6 60.
Trencher, 6 61, and 7 70, and 9 111.
Tun, 6 72 73.
Terce, 6 72.
Tankard, 6 75 87, and 8 40, and 13 124,
Twitchers, 7 25 28 29. and 8 101 and 11 28.
Tongs, 7 31 61 66 129. and 9 116 131.
Triangle Buckle, 7 83.
Terristial Muller, 7 43.
Tool, 7 74 75, and 8 156, and 9 31 125.
Tent, 7 78, and 9 96, and 11 25, and 12 12 39 40 41.
Torturing wheel, 7 48.
Twirle, 7 99 100 121.
Tressel, 7 103, and 8 141, and 9 121, and 13 117.
Turning Staple, 7 106.
Thwittel, 7 108.
Tap Auger, 7 111.
Tap Bitt, ibid.
Tap, 7 129.
Tub, 6 84, and 7 118, and 8 25 27, and 9 118 154 156, and 10 16. and 11 2.
Trowe, 7 121.
Thorn, ibid.
Tap staff. ibid.
Tuning dish, 7 122, and 11 11.
Torteux, 7 141.
Triangle, 7 146, and 9 144, and 13 117 119 122 123.
Tormenting Cross, 7 147.
Turfe Spade, 7 150 153, and 9 134 137 139.
Thrashal, 8 16.

Turning

Turning Gratch, 8 23.
Turning Hatch, 8 38.
Turn-Stile, ibid.
Turning gate, ibid.
Tankard with a Mouth pipe, 8 40.
Tumbrel, 8 48 126.
Trill Saddle. 8 48.
Turne, 8 68.
Turn Engine, 8 68 168.
Trowel, 8 77 79.
File, 8 82 83. and 9 98. and 13 115.
Triumphant Chariot, 8 90.
Travelling Saddle, 8 95.
Temples, 8 102.
Tenty hook, 8 102 106. and 9 96 143.
Tanners Mill, 8 119. and 9 138. and 11 18.
Tanners Beam, 9 38.
Tore, 8 132.
Ten footrod, 8 146.
Buckles, 8 147.
Throers Engine, 8 149 *.
Triangular Grooving hook, 8 354 356.
Three pointed Grooving Hook, 8 154.
Two pointed Grooving Tool, 8 6 15.
Turn Bench, 8 162.
Thimble, 8 165. and 10 14.
Tenant Saw, 9 2 3. and 11 23.
Trenches, 9 31.
Turn File, 9 94.
Tenting Pin, 9 95.
Taper Bit, 9 21.
Tile Stone, 9 98.
Trenching Plow, 9 137 140.
Trenching Gouge, 9 139.
Trenching Wheel Plow, 9 140.
Trenching Spade, ibid.
Tronell, 9 143.
Temple Mould, 9 145.
Taylors Cissars, 9 177.
Tooth Pincers, 9 179.
Table Screw, 9 180.
Turning Pen Knife, 9 182.
Tomb Stone, 9 183.
Thorax Pipe, 9 183.
Tower Towered, 9 184 and 13 92 95 96.
Tower Roofed, 9 184.
Tower, 9 184 187 189 191 188. and 12 46 48. and 13 1 24 6 7 9 16 25 72 75 88 89 91 95 96.
Turret in a Turret, 9 187.
Turrets roofed, 9 189.
Triangle Pedestal, 9 190.
Tower Hovelled, 9 191.
Tower Loover Roofed, 9 188.
Text Letters, 10 2.
Tripthongs, 10 3.
Turkish Alphabet, 10 6.
Terebellum, 10 10. and 11 33.
Table of Physick, 10 12.
Table, 13 52 63.
Table with Shew Bread, 13 52.
Therma, 10 16.
Tweezers, 11 20.
Tooth Levitor, 11 29. and 12 23.
Tooth Pincer, 11 29.
Tooth Rippers, 11 30.
Tooth Pickers, 11 30.
Trepan, 11 35 and 12 5. and 13 105 117 122.
Trefine, 11 35 48. and 12 6 7.
Threefold Trepan, 11 48.
Triploides with Screw, ibid.
Triangle Trepan, 12 6 7.
Tunnel, 12 7 37.
Thorax Pincers, 12 11.
Tenta, 12 12.
Turunda. Turundula, ibid.
Treploides, 12 20.
Three pointed Needle, 12 21.
Tapping Pipe, ibid.
Tapping Quill and Needle, ibid.
Throat Pipe, ibid.
Transorus, 12 28.
Trimming Bason, 12 33.
Tent Royal, 12 40 41.
Tabernacle, 12 41.
Tower Arched, 12 43. and 13 75 91.
Tiled House, 12 44.
Thatched House, 12 45.
Theater, 12 48.
Tower triple Towered, 12 2 11 26.
Turrets, 13 2 11 14 15 16 76 85 94.
Tower Port open, 13 3 4
Two Towers and Port, 13 5.
Tower Compassed with a Wall, 13 6.
Tower sans Water table, 13 8.
Triangle Castle, 13 13.
Three square Castle, ibid.
Tower top, 13 14 15 16 76.
Temple Porch, 13 39.
Temple, ibid.
Towers Spired, 13 72 91 144.
Tower Vaulted, 13 75 76.
Tower closed, 13 75.
Tops of Towers, 13 76.
Tuscan Pillar, 13 82.
Tower Battled, 13 94.
Tower Turretted, 13 95.
Tower double Battlemented, 13 97.
Triumphant Arch, 13 98 99.
Trophies of Victory, 13 100 a.
Trajans Column, 13 101.
Thunderbolt, 13 102 152.
Trunks of an Elephant, 13 112.
Trespan, 13 117.
Treble mounted, 13 120.
Tips, 13 133.
True Loves Knot, 13 135 136 140 143 146.
Triangle Frett, 13 137.
Triangle voided, 13 139.
Trumpet, 13 143 145.
Talaria, 13 151.
Taper Ladder, 9 134.

V.

Veal, 6 51 57.
Vice, 7 32 67 128. and 9 105.
Useing File, 7 59.
Vent hole Bit, 7 111.
Vent Auger, ibid.
Valentia, 7 122.
Vessel, ibid.
Uphand Hammer, 7 128.
Uncleansing Knife, 7 136.
Vice Lath, 8 162.
Vine Hook, 8 5 6 7.
Vambrace, 9 24.
Vealing Knife, 9 36.
Universal Dial, 9 54.
Using Stone, 9 85.
Vither, 9 91.
Vice Handle, 9 104.
Vice Key, ibid.
Veining Stick, 9 165.
Ventosis, 9 173.
Vaporarium, 12 16.
Urinal, 11 6 7.
Vial, ibid.
Vesica, 11 9.
Verjuice Mill, 11 18.
Vulsella. Vulsella, 11 20, and 12 10.
Vulnerum Exploratorium, 11 22.
Uvula Spoon, 11 26.
Ventosa, 11 37.
Vinculum, 11 42.
Urine Probe, ibid.
Ungula, 12 30.
Umbrell. Umbrella, 12 38.
Vultures Bill Pincers, 12 22.

W.

Wool Fleece, 6 1.
Wool Pack, 6 2 3.
Wool Card, 6 5.
Wool Comb, 6 9.
Wheel, 6 11 32. and 7 132. and 8 9 10 57 59 169. and 9 81 119 120 137 161 *.
Wharrow Spindle, 6 15 16.
Winch, 6 18.
Wool Shears, 6 28. and 8 107.
Walking Pin, 6 37.
Wool Bow, 6 38.
Westphalia Ham, 6 52.
Wig, 6 56.
Water Bowget, 6 75 76.

Water

Water Bagge, 6 75 76 80 81, and 7 123 125.
Water Bucket, 6 82.
Well Bucket, ibid.
Water Tankard, 6 87.
Water Forcer, 6 88.
Wire Pincer, 6 68.
Wooden Switchers, 7 28 29.
Wooden Hand Vice, 7 87.
Wooden Horse, 7 83.
Wrack, 7 84.
Whip, 7 88 148, and 9 28.
Whipping post, 7 89.
Whisk, 7 90, and 8 103.
Wood Ax, 7 98.
Wickets, 7 102.
Wicker Baskets, 7 106.
Washing Tub, 7 118, and 9 118.
Wooden Comb, 7 121.
Washer, 7 127.
Wimble, 7 132, and 9 24.
Worm wheel, 7 132.
Worm Spindle, 7 133.
Water Level, 7 146, and 8 79, and 9 145.
Wheel broken, 7 151, and 8 8.
Wheel Barrow, 7 152, and 8 85.
With, 7 154.
Wheel Nave, 8 8.
Worthing Fork, 8 43, and 9 136.
Wind-mill post, 8 50, and 13 123.
Wind-mill Sails, 8 51.
Wind-mill, 8 53 54.
Waggon Carriage, 8 49.
Water Mill wheel, 8 57 58.
Wheel of an Over-shot Mill, 8 59.
Windlass, 8 69 145, and 12 28.
Wedges, 8 70 115 117 146 161, and 9 77 78 130.
Whiteing Brush, 8 89, and 9 160.
War Sadle, 8 95.
Warping Trough, 8 100.
Wheel Feathers, 8 110.
Wheel Fly, 8 110.
Wharve, ibid.
Working Knife, 8 118, and 9 98 99.
Whetting Steel, 8 128.
Whetting Block, 8 143.
Weaving Engine, 8 143.
Wayes, Waiss, 8 14[illegible] see Weigh.
Wheel of a Clock, 8 169.
Watch, 8 169, and 9 55 57.
Wyer Saw, 9 2.
Wimble Brace, ibid.
Weigh, 9 40.
Writting Desk, 9 41.
Weather Glass, 9 49 50.
Wall Candle stick, 9 79.
Wall Sconce, ibid.
Wax Stick, 9 85.
Wax Box, ibid.
Wall Can, 9 109.
Weeding Dog, 9 137.
Womans Sadle, 9 168.
West end of a Church, 9 186.
Wall cornished, 9 187.
Words Breviated Alphabetically, Fol. 410, &c.
Wine Press, 11 17.
Washing Bason, 12 33.
Walled City, 12 52.
Walled Town, ibid.
Wall with a Gate, 13 5.
Wall, 13 6 11 23 78 80 84 85 63, and 9 188.
Water Table, 13 8 88.
VVeather Cock, or Fan, 13 8.
VVall trible Towered, 13 11.
VVall double or trible Arched, 13 23.
VVooden Bridge, 13 28.
VVanscot Cornish, 13 65.
VVall Battlemented, 13 84 91 92.
VVall double, 13 85.
VVall plain, ibid.
VVindow, 13 86.
VVatch Tower, 13 96.
VVall Stone, 13 115.
VVand, 13 143.

X.

Xyster, 11 40.

Y.

Yarringles, 6 13, and 8 99.
Yarringle Blades, 6 13.
Yarringle Pins and Stock, ibid.
Yelling Comb, 7 121.
Yelve, 8 43, and 9 136.
Yelve, bi forked, 8 44.
Yoke, 8 31.
Yate, 8 35.
Yard, 8 109.

FINIS.

TO THE

READER.

Courteous Reader,

HItherto I have through great Pains and Charges caused to be Printed *The Academy of Armory*; the remaining part (according to the *Contents* of the Chapters mentioned in the beginning of the first Book) is all ready for the Press, and wants nothing but Encouragers for the Work; for I must acknowledg my self not at present able, or sufficent to carry on so great a Work without Assistance, for the Times are so Hard, Trading so Dead, Money scarce, Paper wanting (else at Double, if not Trebble Rates to that I first begun) Wages great, and daily Layings out so much, and above all Gentlemens Coldness of Zeal in promoting the same, that amongst the many Thousands of Noble Families, and Rich Estates in our parts of the Kingdom, viz. *Cheshire*, *Lancashire*, and the Six Counties of *North Wales*, not above Twenty have advanced Money to the Work, whose Names I have Dedicated Chapters unto: Others I have mentioned, who have promised to have it when Published, but nothing to encourrage it forwards; so that by reason of my own vast Layings out (above what Received, *which is above Six Hundred Pounds*) I am resolved to go no further, but send *Pen Feathered Birds* into the World, to *gather Crums* to *Nourish* and *Bring* up the rest, else they are like to *Die in the Nest*; which if the *Gentry* suffer, it will be more their *Loss* than mine; I shall say no more, but *commit* it to the *Censure of many*, but to be *Understood by few*, neither indeed can it be, till it arrived to its full *Plumage*; at which *time* I shall not care who *Censures*, but Answer such as once a Grave *Senior* did, *Find not Fault till thou hast done a Better*; or as a *French* General said to such as Envyed his *Greatness*, *Do as I have done and receive my Honour*. And so Farewel:

Randle Holme.

XUM